

# BNF

*for Children*

---

2018  
2019

---

September 2018–19

**bnf.org**

<https://nhathuocngocanh.com/>  
downloaded from www.medicalbr.com

Get more medical books and resources at

[www.medicalbr.com](http://www.medicalbr.com)



## Medicines Information Services

### Information on drug therapy

Information on any aspect of drug therapy can be obtained from Regional and District Medicines Information Services. Details regarding the *local* services provided within your Region can be obtained by telephoning the following numbers.

<b>England</b>	
<b>Birmingham:</b>	(0121) 424 7298
<b>Bristol:</b>	(0117) 342 2867
<b>Ipswich:</b>	(01473) 704 431
<b>Leeds:</b>	(0113) 206 5377
<b>Leicester:</b>	(0116) 258 6491
<b>Liverpool:</b>	(0151) 794 8113/7, or (0151) 794 8118
<b>London:</b>	
● Guy's Hospital	(020) 7188 8750, or (020) 7188 3849, or (020) 7188 3855
● Northwick Park Hospital	(020) 8869 2761, or (020) 8869 3973
<b>Newcastle:</b>	(0191) 282 4631
<b>Southampton:</b>	(023) 8120 6908/9
<b>Wales</b>	
<b>Cardiff:</b>	(029) 2074 2979, or (029) 2074 2251
<b>Scotland</b>	
<b>Aberdeen:</b>	(01224) 552 316
<b>Dundee:</b>	(01382) 632 351, or (01382) 660 111 Extn 32351
<b>Edinburgh:</b>	(0131) 242 2920
<b>Glasgow:</b>	(0141) 211 4407
<b>Northern Ireland</b>	
<b>Belfast:</b>	(028) 9504 0558
<b>Republic of Ireland</b>	
<b>Dublin:</b>	(01) 473 0589, or (01) 453 7941 Extn 2348

### United Kingdom Medicines Information (UKMI) website

[www.sps.nhs.uk/](http://www.sps.nhs.uk/)

### UK Teratology Information Service

Information on drug and chemical exposures in pregnancy.

0344 892 0909

[www.uktis.org](http://www.uktis.org)

### UK Drugs in Lactation Advisory Service (UKDILAS)

Information on the compatibility of drugs with breastfeeding.

(0116) 258 6491, or (0121) 424 7298

Email: [ukdilas.enquiries@nhs.net](mailto:ukdilas.enquiries@nhs.net)

[www.sps.nhs.uk/articles/ukdilas/](http://www.sps.nhs.uk/articles/ukdilas/)

### Medicines for Children information leaflets

Medicines information for parents and carers.

[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk)

### Patient Information Lines

NHS Urgent Care Services 111

### Poisons Information Services

UK National Poisons Information Service (for healthcare professionals only)

Tel: 0344 892 0111

[www.toxbase.org](http://www.toxbase.org)

### Travel Immunisation

Up-to-date information on travel immunisation requirements may be obtained from:

- ▶ National Travel Health Network and Centre (for healthcare professionals only) 0845 602 6712 Monday and Friday: 9–11 a.m. and 1–2 p.m., Tuesday to Thursday: 9–11 a.m. and 1–3:30 p.m.  
[travelhealthpro.org.uk/](http://travelhealthpro.org.uk/)
- ▶ Travel Medicine Team, Health Protection Scotland (0141) 300 1100 (2–4 p.m. weekdays)  
[www.travax.nhs.uk](http://www.travax.nhs.uk) (for registered users of the NHS website Travax only)
- ▶ Welsh Government Switchboard English language 0300 0603300 (9 a.m.–5:30 p.m. weekdays only)
- ▶ Welsh Government Switchboard Yr Iaith Gymraeg 0300 0604400 (9 a.m.–5:30 p.m. weekdays only)
- ▶ Department of Health and Social Services (Belfast) (028) 9052 2118 (weekdays)

### Medicines in Dentistry Specialist Advisory Service

Information on drug therapy relating to dental treatment.  
Liverpool (0151) 794 8206

### Sport

- ▶ Information regarding the use of medicines in sport is available from UK Anti-Doping:

[www.ukad.org.uk](http://www.ukad.org.uk)

Tel: (020) 7842 3450

[ukad@ukad.org.uk](mailto:ukad@ukad.org.uk)

UK Anti-Doping  
Fleetbank House  
2–6 Salisbury Square  
London  
EC4Y 8AE

- ▶ Information about the prohibited status of specific medicines based on the current World Anti-Doping Agency Prohibited List is available from Global Drug Reference Online: [www.globaldro.com/UK/search](http://www.globaldro.com/UK/search)

### Proprietary Manufacturers

Telephone numbers and email addresses of proprietary manufacturers listed in BNF Publications are shown in the Index of proprietary manufacturers p. 1061

### List of Registered Medical Practitioners

Details on whether doctors are registered and hold a licence to practise medicine in the UK can be obtained from the General Medical Council.

Tel: (0161) 923 6602

[www.gmc-uk.org/register](http://www.gmc-uk.org/register)

# Access the BNF *your way*

The *British National Formulary (BNF)* and *BNF for Children* are updated monthly online via MedicinesComplete, ensuring healthcare professionals always have the latest prescribing advice.



## ONLINE



### **BNF on MedicinesComplete**

Access *BNF* and *BNF for Children* on MedicinesComplete and receive the very latest drug information through monthly online updates.



**FormularyComplete** Create, edit and manage your own local formulary content built upon the trusted prescribing advice of the *BNF* and *BNF for Children*.

### **BNF on Evidence Search**

Search the *BNF* and *BNF for Children* alongside other authoritative clinical and non-clinical evidence and best practice at [www.evidence.nhs.uk](http://www.evidence.nhs.uk) from NICE.

## PRINT

Eligible health professionals will now receive one print copy a year – the September issue – to supplement online access. If you are entitled to an NHS copy please refer to page ii for full details on distribution, call 01268 495 609 or email [BNF@wilmingtonhealthcare.com](mailto:BNF@wilmingtonhealthcare.com).



## PRINT SUBSCRIPTION



**BNF subscription** – Take advantage of our print subscription option. We will send you the new *BNF* as soon as the book is published. One or two year packages (including or excluding *BNF for Children*) are available. Discounted pricing is also available on bulk sales.

## MOBILE



**BNF app** – Stay up to date anywhere with the BNF app available for iOS and Android.

**BNF eBook** – Available as an ePDF.  
See [www.pharmpress.com/bnf](http://www.pharmpress.com/bnf).

**BNF on MedicinesComplete** – Now mobile responsive.

## How to purchase

www

**Buy direct from Pharmaceutical Press** by visiting  
[www.pharmpress.com/bnf](http://www.pharmpress.com/bnf)

@

For enquiries about the *BNF* or *BNF for Children* in print, contact  
[direct@macmillan.co.uk](mailto:direct@macmillan.co.uk)  
Tel: +44 (0) 1256 302 699



For enquiries concerning MedicinesComplete,  
FormularyComplete, or bulk orders of the print edition, contact  
[pharmpress-support@rpharms.com](mailto:pharmpress-support@rpharms.com)  
Tel: +44 (0) 20 7572 2266



Download mobile apps by visiting your appropriate app store.  
Available for iOS and Android

For pricing information please visit the website at  
[www.pharmpress.com/bnf](http://www.pharmpress.com/bnf)

For international sales contact your local sales agent.  
Contact details at [www.pharmpress.com/agents](http://www.pharmpress.com/agents)

**BNF**

Stay up to date – sign up to the BNF  
eNewsletter at [www.bnf.org/newsletter](http://www.bnf.org/newsletter)  
<https://nhathuocngocanh.com/>  
downloaded from [www.medicalbr.com](http://www.medicalbr.com)

**BNF**  
for Children

# BNF

*for Children*

---

# 2018 2019

---

September 2018 – 19



## Published jointly by

### BMJ Group

Tavistock Square, London, WC1H 9JP, UK  
and

### Pharmaceutical Press

Pharmaceutical Press is the publishing division of the Royal Pharmaceutical Society.

66-68 East Smithfield, London E1W 1AW, UK

### RCPCB Publications Ltd

5-11 Theobalds Road, London WC1X 8SH, UK

Copyright © BMJ Group, the Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain, and RCPCB Publications Ltd 2018.

ISBN: 978 0 85711 336 8

ISBN: 978 0 85711 335 1 (NHS edition)

ISBN: 978 0 85711 333 7 (ePDF)

Printed by GGP Media GmbH, Pößneck, Germany

Typeset by Data Standards Ltd, UK

Text design by Peter Burgess

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, without the prior written permission of the copyright holder.

Material published in the *BNF for Children* (BNFC) may not be used for any form of advertising, sales or publicity without prior written permission. Each of the classification and the text are protected by copyright and/or database right.

## Requesting copies of BNF publications

Paper copies may be obtained through any bookseller or direct from:

### Pharmaceutical Press

c/o Macmillan Distribution (MDL)  
Hampshire International Business Park  
Lime Tree Way  
Basingstoke  
Hampshire  
RG24 8YJ

Tel: +44 (0) 1256 302 699

Fax: +44 (0) 1256 812 521

direct@macmillan.co.uk

or via our website [www.pharmpress.com](http://www.pharmpress.com)

For all bulk orders of more than 20 copies:

Tel: +44 (0) 207 572 2266

pharmpress-support@rpharms.com

BNFC is available as a mobile app, online ([bnfc.nice.org.uk/](http://bnfc.nice.org.uk/)) and also through MedicinesComplete; a PDA version is also available. In addition, BNFC content can be integrated into a local formulary by using BNFC on FormularyComplete; see [www.bnf.org](http://www.bnf.org) for details.

## Distribution of printed BNFCs

In **England**, NICE purchases print editions of BNFC for distribution within the NHS. For details of who is eligible to receive a copy and further contact details, please refer to the NICE website:

[www.nice.org.uk/about/what-we-do/evidence-services/british-national-formulary](http://www.nice.org.uk/about/what-we-do/evidence-services/british-national-formulary). If you are entitled to a shared copy of the BNFC, please call (0)1268 495 609 or email:

BNF@wilmingtonhealthcare.com.

## In Scotland, email:

nss.psd-bnf@nhs.net

## In Wales, contact NHS Wales Shared Services Partnership—Contractor Services:

Tel: 01792 607420

## In Northern Ireland, email:

ni.bnf@hscni.net

## About BNFC content

The *BNF for Children* is for rapid reference by UK health professionals engaged in prescribing, dispensing, and administering medicines to children.

*BNF for Children* has been constructed using robust procedures for gathering, assessing and assimilating information on paediatric drug treatment, but may not always include all the information necessary for prescribing and dispensing. It is expected that the reader will be relying on appropriate professional knowledge and expertise to interpret the contents in the context of the circumstances of the individual child. *BNF for Children* should be used in conjunction with other appropriate and up-to-date literature and, where necessary, supplemented by expert advice. Information is also available from Medicines Information Services.

Special care is required in managing childhood conditions with unlicensed medicines or with licensed medicines for unlicensed uses. Responsibility for the appropriate use of medicines lies solely with the individual health professional.

Please refer to digital versions of *BNF for Children* for the most up-to-date content. *BNF for Children* is published in print but interim updates are issued and published in the digital versions of *BNF for Children*. The publishers work to ensure that the information is as accurate and up-to-date as possible at the date of publication, but knowledge and best practice in this field change regularly. *BNF for Children's* accuracy and currency cannot be guaranteed and neither the publishers nor the authors accept any responsibility for errors or omissions. While considerable efforts have been made to check the material in this publication, it should be treated as a guide only. Prescribers, pharmacists and other healthcare professionals are advised to check [www.bnf.org](http://www.bnf.org) for information about key updates and corrections.

## Pharmaid

Numerous requests have been received from developing countries for BNFCs. The Pharmaid scheme of the Commonwealth Pharmacists Association will dispatch old BNFCs to certain Commonwealth countries. For more information on this scheme see [commonwealthpharmacy.org/what-we-do/pharmaid/](http://commonwealthpharmacy.org/what-we-do/pharmaid/). If you would like to donate your copy email: [admin@commonwealthpharmacy.org](mailto:admin@commonwealthpharmacy.org)

# Preface

*BNF for Children* aims to provide prescribers, pharmacists, and other healthcare professionals with sound up-to-date information on the use of medicines for treating children.

A joint publication of the British Medical Association, the Royal Pharmaceutical Society, the Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health, and the Neonatal and Paediatric Pharmacists Group, *BNF for Children* ('BNFC') is published under the authority of a Paediatric Formulary Committee which comprises representatives of these bodies, the Department of Health for England, and the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency.

Many areas of paediatric practice have suffered from inadequate information on effective medicines. BNFC addresses this significant knowledge gap by providing practical information on the use of medicines in children of all ages from birth to adolescence. Information in BNFC has been validated against emerging evidence, best-practice guidelines, and crucially, advice from a network of clinical experts.

Drawing information from manufacturers' literature where appropriate, BNFC also includes a great deal of advice that goes beyond marketing authorisations (product licences). This is necessary because licensed indications frequently do not cover the clinical needs of children; in some cases, products for use in children need to be specially manufactured or imported. Careful consideration has been given to establishing the clinical need for unlicensed interventions with respect to the evidence and experience of their safety and efficacy; local paediatric formularies, clinical literature and national information resources have been invaluable in this process.

BNFC has been designed for rapid reference and the information presented has been carefully selected to aid decisions on prescribing, dispensing and administration of medicines. Less detail is given on areas such as malignant disease and the very specialist use of medicines generally undertaken in tertiary centres. BNFC should be interpreted in the light of professional knowledge and it should be supplemented as necessary by specialised publications. Information is also available from Medicines Information Services (see inside front cover).

It is **important** to use the most recent BNFC information for making clinical decisions. The print edition of *BNF for Children* is updated in September each year. Monthly updates are provided online via the BNF Publications website [www.bnf.org](http://www.bnf.org), MedicinesComplete and the NHS Evidence portal. The more important changes listed under Changes p. xix are cumulative (from one print edition to the next), and can be printed off each month to show the main changes since the last print edition as an aide memoire for those using print copies.

The website ([www.bnf.org](http://www.bnf.org)) includes additional information of relevance to healthcare professionals. Other digital formats of BNFC—including versions for mobile devices and integration into local formularies—are also available.

BNF Publications welcomes comments from healthcare professionals. Comments and constructive criticism should be sent to:

British National Formulary,  
Royal Pharmaceutical Society,  
66–68 East Smithfield  
London  
E1W 1AW  
[editor@bnf.org](mailto:editor@bnf.org)

The contact email for manufacturers or pharmaceutical companies wishing to contact BNF Publications is [manufacturerinfo@bnf.org](mailto:manufacturerinfo@bnf.org)

# Contents

<b>Preface</b>	page iii
<b>Acknowledgements</b>	v
<b>How BNF publications are constructed</b>	ix
<b>How to use BNF Publications in print</b>	xii
<b>Changes</b>	xix
<b>Guidance on Prescribing</b>	1
<b>Prescription writing</b>	5
<b>Supply of medicines</b>	7
<b>Emergency supply of medicines</b>	8
<b>Controlled drugs and drug dependence</b>	9
<b>Adverse reactions to drugs</b>	13
<b>Guidance on intravenous infusions</b>	16
<b>Prescribing in hepatic impairment</b>	17
<b>Prescribing in renal impairment</b>	17
<b>Prescribing in pregnancy</b>	19
<b>Prescribing in breast-feeding</b>	19
<b>Prescribing in palliative care</b>	20
<b>Drugs and sport</b>	24
<b>Prescribing in dental practice</b>	24

## NOTES ON DRUGS AND PREPARATIONS

<b>1 Gastro-intestinal system</b>	page 25
<b>2 Cardiovascular system</b>	75
<b>3 Respiratory system</b>	145
<b>4 Nervous system</b>	191
<b>5 Infection</b>	300
<b>6 Endocrine system</b>	432
<b>7 Genito-urinary system</b>	488
<b>8 Immune system and malignant disease</b>	517
<b>9 Blood and nutrition</b>	562
<b>10 Musculoskeletal system</b>	638
<b>11 Eye</b>	665
<b>12 Ear, nose and oropharynx</b>	688
<b>13 Skin</b>	712
<b>14 Vaccines</b>	770
<b>15 Anaesthesia</b>	803
<b>16 Emergency treatment of poisoning</b>	832

## APPENDICES AND INDICES

<b>Appendix 1</b>	
<b>Interactions</b>	845
<b>Appendix 2</b>	
<b>Borderline substances</b>	1012
<b>Appendix 3</b>	
<b>Cautionary and advisory labels for dispensed medicines</b>	1053
<b>Dental Practitioners' Formulary</b>	1056
<b>Nurse Prescribers' Formulary</b>	1057
<b>Non-medical prescribing</b>	1060
<b>Index of proprietary manufacturers</b>	1061
<b>Special-order Manufacturers</b>	1066
<b>Index</b>	1068
<b>Medical emergencies in the community</b>	inside back cover

## Acknowledgements

The Paediatric Formulary Committee is grateful to individuals and organisations that have provided advice and information to the *BNF for Children* (BNFC).

The principal contributors for this update were:

M.N. Badminton, S. Bailey, G.D.L. Bates, H. Bedford, M.W. Beresford, R.M. Bingham, L. Brook, K.G. Brownlee, I.F. Burgess, A. Cant, R. Carr, T.D. Cheetham, A.G. Cleary, A.J. Cotgrove, J.B.S. Coulter, B.G. Craig, J.H. Cross, A. Dhawan, P.N. Durrington, A.B. Edgar, J.A. Edge, D.A.C. Elliman, N.D. Embleton, A. Freyer, P.J. Goadsby, J. Gray, J.W. Gregory, P. Gringras, J.P. Harcourt, C. Hendriksz, R.F. Howard, R.G. Hull, H.R. Jenkins, S. Jones, B.A. Judd, E. Junaid, P.T. Khaw, J.M.W. Kirk, E.G.H. Lyall, P.S. Malone, S.D. Marks, D.F. Marsh, P. McHenry, P.J. McKiernan, L.M. Melvin, E. Miller, S. Moledina, R.E. Morton, P. Mulholland, C. Nelson-Piercy, J.M. Neuberger, K.K. Nischal, C.Y. Ng, J.Y. Paton, G.A. Pearson, J. Puntis, J. Rogers, K.E. Rogstad, J.W. Sander, N.J. Scolding, M.R. Sharland, N.J. Shaw, O.F.W. Stumper, A.G. Sutcliffe, E.A. Taylor, S. Thomas, M.A. Thomson, J.A. Vale, S. Vijay, J.O. Warner, N.J.A. Webb, A.D. Weeks, R. Welbury, W.P. Whitehouse, A. Wright, M.M. Yaqoob, Z. Zaiwalla, and S.M. Zuberi.

Members of the British Association of Dermatologists' Therapy & Guidelines Subcommittee, D.A. Buckley, N. Chiang, M. Cork, K. Gibbon, R.Y.P. Hunasehally, G.A. Johnston, T.A. Leslie, E.C. Mallon, P.M. McHenry, J. Natkunarajah, C. Saunders, S. Ungureanu, S. Wakelin, F.S. Worsnop, A.G. Brain (Secretariat), and M.F. Mohd Mustapa (Secretariat) have provided valuable advice.

Members of the Advisory Committee on Malaria Prevention, R.H. Behrens, D. Bell, P.L. Chiodini, V. Field, F. Genasi, L. Goodyer, A. Green, J. Jones, G. Kassianos, D.G. Lalloo, D. Patel, H. Patel, M. Powell, D.V. Shingadia, N.O. Subair, C.J.M. Whitty, M. Blaze (Secretariat), and V. Smith (Secretariat) have provided valuable advice.

The MHRA have provided valuable assistance.

Correspondents in the pharmaceutical industry have provided information on new products and commented on products in BNFC.

Numerous doctors, pharmacists, nurses, and others have sent comments and suggestions.

The BNFC has valuable access to the *Martindale* data banks by courtesy of A. Brayfield and staff.

The BNF team are grateful for the support and access to in-house expertise at Pharmaceutical Press and acknowledge the assistance of A. Lourie, J. Macdonald, N. Potter, H. Sondh and their teams.

E. Hagos, A. Pryde, M. Smith and K. Sproston provided considerable assistance during the production of this update of BNFC.

# BNF Staff

## BNF DIRECTOR

Karen Baxter *BSc, MSc, MRPharmS*

## SENIOR EDITORIAL STAFF

Kiri Aikman *BPharm (NZ), PGDipClinPharm (NZ)*

Rebecca Bloor *BPharm (NZ)*

Alison Brayfield *BPharm, MRPharmS*

Catherine Cadart *BPharm (AU), BA(Hons), GradDipHospPharm (AU), MRPharmS*

Kristina Fowlie *MPharm, CertPharmPract, MRPharmS*

Mahinaz Harrison *BPharm, DipPharmPract, IP, MRPharmS*

Rebecca Luckhurst *BSc, MSc*

Alexander McPhail *MPharm, PGDipClinPharm*

Claire McSherry *BPharm (NZ), PGCertClinPharm (NZ)*

Claire Preston *BPharm, PGDipMedMan, MRPharmS*

Kate Towers *BPharm (AU), GCClinPharm (AU)*

## EDITORIAL STAFF

Naimah Callachand *MPharm*

Lucía Camaño Sáez *MPharm (ESP), PGDipClinPharm, PGCertPsychTherap, MRPharmS*

Kiran Cheema *MPharm*

Thomas Corbett *BScPharm (IRL), MPharm (IRL)*

Hannah Giles *BPharm (NZ)*

Holly Hayne *BSc (Pharmacology) (NZ), BPharm (NZ)*

Stephanie Jones *MPharm, MSc (Genomic Medicine), MRPharmS*

Elizabeth King *MAPharmT*

Marta Leon-Alonso *MPharm (ESP), MRes (ESP), MSc ClinPharm, MRPharmS*

Jean MacKershan *BSc, PgDip*

John Martin *BPharm, PhD, MRPharmS*

Angela McFarlane *BSc, DipClinPharm*

Deirdre McGuirk *BComm, MPharm, MRPharmS*

Anna McLachlan *BPharm (NZ), PGCertClinPharm (NZ)*

Nafeesa Mussa *BPharm (NZ), PGCertClinPharm (NZ)*

Kere Odumah *MPharm*

Heenaben Patel *MPharm, DipClinPharm, MRPharmS*

Stephanie Powell *MBioSci*

Rebekah Raymond *BSc, Dip Pharm Prac, MRPharmS*

Harpreet Sandhu *MPharm, MRPharmS*

Anna Sparshatt *MPharm, CertPharmPract, CertPsychTher*

Jacob Warner *BPharm (AU)*

Melissa Watters *BSc (Pharmacology)*

Julia Webb *MPharm, PGCertPharmPrac*

## SUPPORT STAFF

Darren Chan *BSc, MSc*

Lauren Cheetham *BA(Hons)*

Filsane Haji *BSc, MSc*

Philip Lee *BSc, PhD*

Aisling McGarry *BSc*

Jannah Ryan *BSc*

Nikolaos Tsimplis *BSc, MRes*

## Paediatric Formulary Committee

### CHAIR

David Tuthill  
*MB, BCh, FRCPC*

### DEPUTY CHAIR

Neil A. Caldwell  
*BSc, MSc, MRPharmS, FFRPS*

### COMMITTEE MEMBERS

Indraneel Banerjee  
*MB BS, MD, FRCPC*

Martin G. Duerden  
*BMedSci, MB BS, DRCOG, MRCGP, DipTher, DPH*

Emily Lam

James H. Larcombe  
*MB, ChB, PhD, FRCGP, DipAdvGP*

Alison Lockley  
*Cert Ed, MA, MA (Econ)*

John Marriott  
*BSc, PhD, MRPharmS, FHEA*

E. David G. McIntosh  
*MB BS, MPH, LL.M, PhD, FAFPHM, FRACP, FRCPC, FFPM, DRCOG, DCH, DipPharmMed*

Angeliki Siapkara  
*MSc, MD, CCST (Ortho)*

Adam Sutherland  
*MPharm, MSc, FFRPS, MRPharmS*

## Dental Advisory Group

### CHAIR

Sarah Manton  
*BDS, FDSRCS Ed, FHEA, PhD*

### COMMITTEE MEMBERS

Andrew K. Brewer  
*BSc, BchD*

Alexander Crighton

Kristina Fowlie  
*MPharm, CertPharmPract, MRPharmS*

Michelle Moffat  
*BDS, MFDS RCS Ed, M Paed Dent RPCS, FDS (Paed Dent) RSC Ed*

Kate Towers  
*BPharm (AU), GCclinPharm (AU)*

### SECRETARY

Arianne J. Matlin  
*MA, MSc, PhD*

### ADVICE ON DENTAL PRACTICE

The **British Dental Association** has contributed to the advice on medicines for dental practice through its representatives on the Dental Advisory Group.



## Nurse Prescribers' Advisory Group

### CHAIR

Molly Courtenay  
*PhD, MSc, Cert Ed, BSc, RGN*

### COMMITTEE MEMBERS

Kristina Fowle  
*MPharm, CertPharmPract, MRPharmS*

Penny M. Franklin  
*RN, RCN, RSCPHN(HV), MA, PGCE*

Matt Griffiths  
*BA (Hons), FAETC, RGN, Cert A&E, NISP, PHECC*

Tracy Hall  
*BSc, MSc, RGN, DN, Dip N, Cert N*

Penny Harrison  
*BSc (Hons)*

Julie MacAngus  
*BSc (Hons), RGN, RM, PGCE*

Joan Myers  
*MSc, BSc, RGN, RSCN, Dip DN*

Fiona Peniston-Bird  
*BSc (Hons), NIP, RHV, RGN*

Kathy Radley  
*BSc, RGN*

Kate Towers  
*BPharm (AU), GClinPharm (AU)*

# How BNFC Publications are constructed

## Overview

The BNFC for Children (BNFC) is an independent professional publication that addresses the day-to-day prescribing information needs of healthcare professionals involved in the care of children. Use of this resource throughout the health service helps to ensure that medicines are used safely, effectively, and appropriately.

Hundreds of changes are made between print editions, and are published monthly in some digital formats. The most clinically significant updates are listed under Changes p. xix.

BNFC is unique in bringing together authoritative, independent guidance on best practice with clinically validated drug information.

Information in BNFC has been validated against emerging evidence, best-practice guidelines, and advice from a network of clinical experts. BNFC includes a great deal of advice that goes beyond marketing authorisations (product licences or summaries of product characteristics). This is necessary because licensed indications frequently do not cover the clinical needs of children; in some cases, products for use in children need to be specially manufactured or imported. Careful consideration has been given to establishing the clinical need for unlicensed interventions with respect to the evidence and experience of their safety and efficacy.

Validation of information follows a standardised process. Where the evidence base is weak, further validation is undertaken through a process of peer review. The process and its governance are outlined in greater detail in the sections that follow.

## Paediatric Formulary Committee

The Paediatric Formulary Committee (PFC) is responsible for the content of BNFC. The PFC comprises pharmacy, medical and nursing representatives with a paediatric background, and lay representatives who have worked with children or acted as a carer of a paediatric patient; there are also representatives from the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) and the Department of Health for England. The PFC decides on matters of policy and reviews amendments to BNFC in the light of new evidence and expert advice.

## Dental Advisory Group

The Dental Advisory Group oversees the preparation of advice on the drug management of dental and oral conditions; the group includes representatives from the British Dental Association and a representative from the UK Health Departments.

## Nurse Prescribers' Advisory Group

The Nurse Prescribers' Advisory Group oversees the list of drugs approved for inclusion in the Nurse Prescribers' Formulary; the group includes representatives from a range of nursing disciplines and stakeholder organisations.

## Expert advisers

BNFC uses about 80 expert clinical advisers (including doctors, pharmacists, nurses, and dentists) throughout the UK to help with the clinical content. The role of these expert advisers is to review existing text and to comment on amendments drafted by the clinical writers. These clinical experts help to ensure that BNFC remains reliable by:

- commenting on the relevance of the text in the context of best clinical practice in the UK;
- checking draft amendments for appropriate interpretation of any new evidence;
- providing expert opinion in areas of controversy or when reliable evidence is lacking;
- advising on the use of unlicensed medicines or of licensed medicines for unlicensed uses ('off-label' use);

- providing independent advice on drug interactions, prescribing in hepatic impairment, renal impairment, pregnancy, breast-feeding, neonatal care, palliative care, and the emergency treatment of poisoning.

In addition to consulting with regular advisers, BNFC calls on other clinical specialists for specific developments when particular expertise is required.

BNFC also works closely with a number of expert bodies that produce clinical guidelines. Drafts or pre-publication copies of guidelines are often received for comment and for assimilation into BNFC.

## Editorial team

BNFC clinical writers have all worked as pharmacists or possess a pharmacy degree and further, relevant post-graduate qualification, and have a sound understanding of how drugs are used in clinical practice. A number of the clinical writers have specific experience of paediatric practice. As a team, the clinical writers are responsible for editing, maintaining, and updating BNFC content. They follow a systematic prioritisation process in response to updates to the evidence base in order to ensure the most clinically important topics are reviewed as quickly as possible. In parallel the team of clinical writers undertakes a process of rolling revalidation, aiming to review all of the content in the BNFC over a 3- to 4-year period.

Amendments to the text are drafted when the clinical writers are satisfied that any new information is reliable and relevant. A set of standard criteria define when content is referred to expert advisers, the Joint Formulary Committee or other advisory groups, or submitted for peer review.

Clinical writers prepare the text for publication and undertake a number of validation checks on the knowledge at various stages of the production.

## Sources of BNFC information

BNFC uses a variety of sources for its information; the main ones are shown below.

## Summaries of product characteristics

BNFC reviews the summaries of product characteristics (SPCs) of all new products as well as revised SPCs for existing products. The SPCs are a key source of product information and are carefully processed. Such processing involves:

- verifying the approved names of all relevant ingredients including 'non-active' ingredients (BNFC is committed to using approved names and descriptions as laid down by the Human Medicines Regulations 2012);
- comparing the indications, cautions, contra-indications, and side-effects with similar existing drugs. Where these are different from the expected pattern, justification is sought for their inclusion or exclusion;
- seeking independent data on the use of drugs in pregnancy and breast-feeding;
- incorporating the information into BNFC using established criteria for the presentation and inclusion of the data;
- checking interpretation of the information by a second clinical writer before submitting to a content manager; changes relating to doses receive a further check;
- identifying potential clinical problems or omissions and seeking further information from manufacturers or from expert advisers;
- constructing, with the help of expert advisers, a comment on the role of the drug in the context of similar drugs.

Much of this processing is applicable to the following sources as well.

## Literature

Clinical writers monitor core medical, paediatric, and pharmaceutical journals. Research papers and reviews relating to drug therapy are carefully processed. When a

difference between the advice in BNFC and the paper is noted, the new information is assessed for reliability (using tools based on SIGN methodology) and relevance to UK clinical practice.

If necessary, new text is drafted and discussed with expert advisers and the Paediatric Formulary Committee. BNFC enjoys a close working relationship with a number of national information providers.

In addition to the routine process, which is used to identify 'triggers' for changing the content, systematic literature searches are used to identify the best quality evidence available to inform an update. Clinical writers receive training in critical appraisal, literature evaluation, and search strategies.

### Consensus guidelines

The advice in BNFC is checked against consensus guidelines produced by expert bodies. The quality of the guidelines is assessed using adapted versions of the AGREE II tool. A number of bodies make drafts or pre-publication copies of the guidelines available to BNFC; it is therefore possible to ensure that a consistent message is disseminated. BNFC routinely processes guidelines from the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE), the All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG), the Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC), and the Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN).

### Reference sources

Paediatric formularies and reference sources are used to provide background information for the review of existing text or for the construction of new text. The BNFC team works closely with the editorial team that produces *Martindale: The Complete Drug Reference*. BNFC has access to *Martindale* information resources and each team keeps the other informed of significant developments and shifts in the trends of drug usage.

### Peer review

Although every effort is made to identify the most robust data available, inevitably there are areas where the evidence base is weak or contradictory. While the BNF has the valuable support of expert advisers and the Paediatric Formulary Committee, the recommendations made may be subject to a further level of scrutiny through peer review to ensure they reflect best practice.

Content for peer review is posted on [bnf.org](http://bnf.org) and interested parties are notified via a number of channels, including the BNF e-newsletter.

### Statutory information

BNFC routinely processes relevant information from various Government bodies including Statutory Instruments and regulations affecting the Prescription only Medicines Order. Official compendia such as the British Pharmacopoeia and its addenda are processed routinely to ensure that BNFC complies with the relevant sections of the Human Medicines Regulations 2012.

BNFC maintains close links with the Home Office (in relation to controlled drug regulations) and the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (including the British Pharmacopoeia Commission). Safety warnings issued by the Commission on Human Medicines (CHM) and guidelines on drug use issued by the UK health departments are processed as a matter of routine.

Relevant professional statements issued by the Royal Pharmaceutical Society are included in BNFC as are guidelines from bodies such as the Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health.

### Medicines and devices

NHS Prescription Services (from the NHS Business Services Authority) provides non-clinical, categorical information (including prices) on the medicines and devices included in BNFC.

### Comments from readers

Readers of BNFC are invited to send in comments. Numerous letters and emails are received by the BNF team. Such feedback helps to ensure that BNFC provides practical and clinically relevant information. Many changes in the presentation and scope of BNFC have resulted from comments sent in by users.

### Comments from industry

Close scrutiny of BNFC by the manufacturers provides an additional check and allows them an opportunity to raise issues about BNFC's presentation of the role of various drugs; this is yet another check on the balance of BNFC advice. All comments are looked at with care and, where necessary, additional information and expert advice are sought.

### Market research

Market research is conducted at regular intervals to gather feedback on specific areas of development.

### Assessing the evidence

From January 2016, recommendations made in BNFC have been evidence graded to reflect the strength of the recommendation. The addition of evidence grading is to support clinical decision making based on the best available evidence.

The BNFC aims to revalidate all content over a rolling 3- to 4-year period and evidence grading will be applied to recommendations as content goes through the revalidation process. Therefore, initially, only a small number of recommendations will have been graded.

### Grading system

The BNFC has adopted a five level grading system from A to E, based on the former SIGN grading system. This grade is displayed next to the recommendation within the text.

Evidence used to make a recommendation is assessed for validity using standardised methodology tools based on AGREE II and assigned a level of evidence. The recommendation is then given a grade that is extrapolated from the level of evidence, and an assessment of the body of evidence and its applicability.

Evidence assigned a level 1- or 2- score has an unacceptable level of bias or confounding and is not used to form recommendations.

### Levels of evidence

- **Level 1++**  
High quality meta-analyses, systematic reviews of randomised controlled trials (RCTs), or RCTs with a very low risk of bias.
- **Level 1+**  
Well-conducted meta-analyses, systematic reviews, or RCTs with a low risk of bias.
- **Level 1-**  
Meta-analyses, systematic reviews, or RCTs with a high risk of bias.
- **Level 2++**  
High quality systematic reviews of case control or cohort studies; or high quality case control or cohort studies with a very low risk of confounding or bias and a high probability that the relationship is causal.
- **Level 2+**  
Well-conducted case control or cohort studies with a low risk of confounding or bias and a moderate probability that the relationship is causal.
- **Level 2-**  
Case control or cohort studies with a high risk of confounding or bias and a significant risk that the relationship is not causal.
- **Level 3**  
Non-analytic studies, e.g. case reports, case series.

- **Level 4**

Expert advice or clinical experience from respected authorities.

- **Grades of recommendation**

- **Grade A: High strength**

NICE-accredited guidelines; or guidelines that pass AGREE II assessment; or at least one meta-analysis, systematic review, or RCT rated as 1++, and directly applicable to the target population; or a body of evidence consisting principally of studies rated as 1+, directly applicable to the target population, and demonstrating overall consistency of results.

- **Grade B: Moderate strength**

A body of evidence including studies rated as 2++, directly applicable to the target population, and demonstrating overall consistency of results; or extrapolated evidence from studies rated as 1++ or 1+.

- **Grade C: Low strength**

A body of evidence including studies rated as 2+, directly applicable to the target population and demonstrating overall consistency of results; or extrapolated evidence from studies rated as 2++.

- **Grade D: Very low strength**

Evidence level 3; or extrapolated evidence from studies rated as 2+; or tertiary reference source created by a transparent, defined methodology, where the basis for recommendation is clear.

- **Grade E: Practice point**

Evidence level 4.

# How to use BNF Publications in print

## How to use the BNF for Children in print

This edition of the BNF for Children (BNFC) continues to display the fundamental change to the structure of the content that was first shown in BNFC 2015–2016. The changes were made to bring consistency and clarity to BNFC content, and to the way that the content is arranged within print and digital products, increasing the ease with which information can be found.

For reference, the most notable changes to the structure of the content include:

- Drug monographs – where possible, all information that relates to a single drug is contained within its drug monograph, moving information previously contained in the prescribing notes. Drug monographs have also changed structurally: additional sections have been added, ensuring greater regularity around where information is located within the publication.
- Drug class monographs – where substantial amounts of information are common to all drugs within a drug class (e.g. macrolides p. 328), a drug class monograph has been created to contain the common information.
- Medicinal forms – categorical information about marketed medicines, such as price and pack size, continues to be sourced directly from the Dictionary of Medicines and Devices provided by the NHS Business Services Authority. However, clinical information curated by the BNF team has been clearly separated from the categorical pricing and pack size information and is included in the relevant section of the drug monograph.
- Section numbering – the BNF and BNFC section numbering has been removed. This section numbering tied the content to a rigid structure and enforced the retention of defunct classifications, such as mercurial diuretics, and hindered the relocation of drugs where therapeutic use had altered. It also caused constraints between the BNF and BNFC, where drugs had different therapeutic uses in children.
- Appendix 4 – the content has been moved to individual drug monographs. The introductory notes have been replaced with a new guidance section, Guidance on intravenous infusions p. 16.

## Introduction

In order to achieve the safe, effective, and appropriate use of medicines, healthcare professionals must be able to use the BNFC effectively, and keep up to date with significant changes in the BNFC that are relevant to their clinical practice. This *How to Use the BNF for Children* is key in reinforcing the details of the new structure of the BNFC to all healthcare professionals involved with prescribing, monitoring, supplying, and administering medicines, as well as supporting the learning of students training to join these professions.

As with previous editions, the BNFC provides information on the use of medicines in children ranging from neonates (including preterm neonates) to adolescents. The terms infant, child, and adolescent are not used consistently in the literature; to avoid ambiguity actual ages are used in the dose statements in BNFC. The term neonate is used to describe a newborn infant aged 0–28 days. The terms child or children are used generically to describe the entire range from infant to adolescent in BNFC.

## Structure of the BNFC

This BNFC edition continues to broadly follow the high level structure of earlier editions of the BNFC (i.e. those published before BNFC 2015–2016):

**Front matter**, comprising information on how to use the BNFC, the significant content changes in each edition, and

guidance on various prescribing matters (e.g. prescription writing, the use of intravenous drugs, particular considerations for special patient populations).

**Chapters**, containing drug monographs describing the uses, doses, safety issues and other considerations involved in the use of drugs; drug class monographs; and treatment summaries, covering guidance on the selection of drugs. Monographs and treatment summaries are divided into chapters based on specific aspects of medical care, such as Chapter 5, Infections, or Chapter 16, Emergency treatment of poisoning; or drug use related to a particular system of the body, such as Chapter 2, Cardiovascular.

Within each chapter, content is organised alphabetically by therapeutic use (e.g. Airways disease, obstructive), with the treatment summaries first, (e.g. Asthma, acute p. 150), followed by the monographs of the drugs used to manage the conditions discussed in the treatment summary. Within each therapeutic use, the drugs are organised alphabetically by classification (e.g. Antimuscarinics, Beta 2-agonist bronchodilators) and then alphabetically within each classification (e.g. Formoterol fumarate, Salbutamol, Salmeterol, Terbutaline sulfate).

**Appendices**, covering interactions, borderline substances, and cautionary and advisory labels.

**Back matter**, covering the lists of medicines approved by the NHS for Dental and Nurse Practitioner prescribing, proprietary and specials manufacturers' contact details, and the index. Yellow cards are also included, to facilitate the reporting of adverse events, as well as quick reference guides for life support and key drug doses in medical emergencies, for ease of access.

## Navigating the BNF for Children

The contents page provides the high-level layout of information within the BNFC; and in addition, each chapter begins with a small contents section, describing the therapeutic uses covered within that chapter. Once in a chapter, location is guided by the side of the page showing the chapter number (the *thumbnail*), alongside the chapter title. The top of the page includes the therapeutic use (the *running head*) alongside the page number.

Once on a page, visual cues aid navigation: treatment summary information is in black type, with therapeutic use titles similarly styled in black, whereas the use of colour indicates drug-related information, including drug classification titles, drug class monographs, and drug monographs.

Although navigation is possible by browsing, primarily access to the information is via the index, which covers the titles of drug class monographs, drug monographs and treatment summaries. The index also includes the names of branded medicines and other topics of relevance, such as abbreviations, guidance sections, tables, and images.

## Content types

### Treatment summaries

Treatment summaries are of three main types;

- an overview of delivering a drug to a particular body system (e.g. Skin conditions, management p. 712),
- a comparison between a group or groups of drugs (e.g. beta-adrenoceptor blockers (systemic) p. 103),
- an overview of the drug management or prophylaxis of common conditions intended to facilitate rapid appraisal of options (e.g. Hypertension p. 98, or Malaria, prophylaxis p. 386).

In order to select safe and effective medicines for individual children, information in the treatment summaries must be

used in conjunction with other prescribing details about the drugs and knowledge of the child's medical and drug history.

## Monographs Overview

In earlier editions (i.e. before BNFC 2015–2016), a systemically administered drug with indications for use in different body systems was split across the chapters relating to those body systems. So, for example, codeine phosphate p. 276 was found in chapter 1, for its antimotility effects and chapter 4 for its analgesic effects. However, the monograph in chapter 1 contained only the dose and some selected safety precautions.

Now, all of the information for the systemic use of a drug is contained within one monograph, so codeine phosphate p. 276 is now included in chapter 4. This carries the advantage of providing all of the information in one place, so the user does not need to flick back and forth across several pages to find all of the relevant information for that drug. Cross references are included in chapter 1, where the management of diarrhoea is discussed, to the drug monograph to assist navigation.

Where drugs have systemic and local uses, for example, chloramphenicol p. 354, p. 677, p. 690, and the considerations around drug use are markedly different according to the route of administration, the monograph is split, as with earlier editions, into the relevant chapters.

This means that the majority of drugs are still placed in the same chapters and sections as earlier editions, and although there may be some variation in order, all of the relevant information will be easier to locate.

One of the most significant changes to the monograph structure is the increased granularity, with a move from around 9 sections to over 20 sections; sections are only included when relevant information has been identified. The following information describes these sections and their uses in more detail.

## Nomenclature

Monograph titles follow the convention of recommended international non-proprietary names (rINNs), or, in the absence of a rINN, British Approved Names. Relevant synonyms are included below the title and, in some instances a brief description of the drug action is included. Over future editions these drug action statements will be rolled out for all drugs.

In some monographs, immediately below the nomenclature or drug action, there are a number of cross references used to signpost the user to any additional information they need to consider about a drug. This is most common for drugs formulated in combinations, where users will be signposted to the monographs for the individual ingredients (e.g. senna with ispaghula husk p. 47) or for drugs that are related to a drug class monograph (see Drug class monographs, below).

## Indication and dose

User feedback has highlighted that one of the main uses of the BNFC is identifying indications and doses of drugs. Therefore, indication and dose information has been promoted to the top of the monograph and highlighted by a coloured panel to aid quick reference.

The indication and dose section is more highly structured than in earlier editions, giving greater clarity around which doses should be used for which indications and by which route. In addition, if the dose varies with a specific preparation or formulation that dosing information has been moved out of the preparations section and in to the indication and dose panel, under a heading of the preparation name.

Doses are either expressed in terms of a definite frequency (e.g. 1 g 4 times daily) or in the total daily dose format (e.g.

6 g daily in 3 divided doses); the total daily dose should be divided into individual doses (in the second example, the child should receive 2 g 3 times daily).

Doses for specific patient groups (e.g. neonates) may be included if they are different to the standard dose. Doses for children can be identified by the relevant age range and may vary according to their age or body-weight.

## Selecting the dose

The dose of a drug may vary according to different indications, routes of administration, age, body-weight, and body surface area. The right dose should be selected for the right age and body-weight (or body surface area) of the child, as well as for the right indication, route of administration, and preparation.

In earlier editions of the BNFC, age ranges and weight ranges overlapped. For clarity and to aid selection of the correct dose, wherever possible these age and weight ranges now do not overlap. When interpreting age ranges it is important to understand that a child is considered to be 11 up until the point of their 12<sup>th</sup> birthday, meaning that an age range of child 12 to 17 years is applicable to a child from the day of their 12<sup>th</sup> birthday until the day before their 18<sup>th</sup> birthday. All age ranges should be interpreted in this way. Similarly, when interpreting weight ranges, it should be understood that a weight of up to 30 kg is applicable to a child up to, but not including, the point that they tip the scales at 30 kg and a weight range of 35 to 59 kg is applicable to a child as soon as they tip the scales at 35 kg right up until, but not including, the point that they tip the scales at 60 kg. All weight ranges should be interpreted in this way.

A pragmatic approach should be applied to these cut-off points depending on the child's physiological development, condition, and if weight is appropriate for the child's age.

For some drugs (e.g. vancomycin p. 325) the neonatal dose varies according to the *corrected gestational age* of the neonate. Corrected gestational age is the neonate's total age expressed in weeks from the start of the mother's last menstrual period. For example, a 3 week old baby born at 27 weeks gestation is treated as having a corrected gestational age of 30 weeks. A term baby has a corrected gestational age of 37–42 weeks when born. For most other drugs, the dose can be based on the child's actual date of birth irrespective of corrected gestational age. However, the degree of prematurity, the maturity of renal and hepatic function, and the clinical properties of the drug need to be considered on an individual basis.


Many children's doses in BNFC are standardised by *body-weight*. To calculate the dose for a given child the weight-standardised dose is multiplied by the child's weight (or occasionally by the child's ideal weight for height). The calculated dose should not normally exceed the maximum recommended dose for an adult. For example, if the dose is 8 mg/kg (max. 300 mg), a child of 10 kg body-weight should receive 80 mg, but a child of 40 kg body-weight should receive 300 mg (rather than 320 mg). Calculation by body-weight in the overweight child may result in much higher doses being administered than necessary; in such cases, the dose should be calculated from an ideal weight for height.


Occasionally, some doses in BNFC are standardised by *body surface area* because many physiological phenomena correlate better with body surface area. In these cases, to calculate the dose for a given child, the body surface area-standardised dose is multiplied by the child's body surface area. The child's body surface area can be estimated from his or her weight using the tables for Body surface area in children (image) p. 1110.

Wherever possible, doses are expressed in terms of a definite frequency (e.g. if the dose is 1 mg/kg twice daily, a child of body-weight 9 kg would receive 9 mg twice daily).

## Typical layout of a monograph and associated medicinal forms

### 1 Class Monographs and drug monographs

In most cases, all information that relates to an individual drug is contained in its drug monograph and there is no symbol. Class monographs have been created where substantial amounts of information are common to all drugs within a drug class, these are indicated by a flag symbol in a circle: 

Drug monographs with a corresponding class monograph are indicated by a tab with a flag symbol:  1234

The page number of the corresponding class monograph is indicated within the tab. For further information, see How to use BNF Publications

### 2 Drug classifications

Used to inform users of the class of a drug and to assist in finding other drugs of the same class. May be based on pharmacological class (e.g. opioids) but can also be associated with the use of the drug (e.g. cough suppressants)

### 3 Review date

The date of last review of the content

### 4 Specific preparation name

If the dose varies with a specific preparation or formulation it appears under a heading of the preparation name

## Class monograph 1

### CLASSIFICATION 2

 1234

### Drug monograph 1

3 01-Jun-2017

(Synonym) another name by which a drug may be known

- **DRUG ACTION** how a drug exerts its effect in the body

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

Indications are the clinical reasons a drug is used. The dose of a drug will often depend on the indications

#### Indication

- ▶ ROUTE
- ▶ Age groups: [Neonate/Child]  
Dose and frequency of administration (max. dose)

#### SPECIFIC PREPARATION NAME 4

#### Indication

- ▶ ROUTE
- ▶ Age groups: [Neonate/Child]  
Dose and frequency of administration (max. dose)

**DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS** dosing information when used concurrently with other drugs

**DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT** dosing information for patients who are overweight or underweight

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION** information around the bioequivalence between formulations of the same drug, or equivalent doses of drugs that are members of the same class

**PHARMACOKINETICS** how the body affects a drug (absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion)

**POTENCY** a measure of drug activity expressed in terms of the concentration required to produce an effect of given intensity

- **UNLICENSED USE** describes the use of medicines outside the terms of their UK licence (off-label use), or use of medicines that have no licence for use in the UK

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Information produced and disseminated by drug regulators often highlights serious risks associated with the use of a drug, and may include advice that is mandatory

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** circumstances when a drug should be avoided
- **CAUTIONS** details of precautions required
- **INTERACTIONS** when one drug changes the effects of another drug; the mechanisms underlying drug interactions are explained in Appendix 1
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** listed in order of frequency, where known, and arranged alphabetically
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** for drugs that carry an increased risk of hypersensitivity reactions
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** potential for a drug to have harmful effects on an unborn child when prescribing for a woman of childbearing age or for a man trying to father a child; information on the effect of drugs on the efficacy of latex condoms or diaphragms



- **PREGNANCY** advice on the use of a drug during pregnancy
- **BREAST FEEDING** EvGr advice on the use of a drug during breast feeding A B
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** advice on the use of a drug in hepatic impairment
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** advice on the use of a drug in renal impairment
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** covers one off tests required to assess the suitability of a patient for a particular drug
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** specifies any special monitoring requirements, including information on monitoring the plasma concentration of drugs with a narrow therapeutic index
- **EFFECTS ON LABORATORY TESTS** for drugs that can interfere with the accuracy of seemingly unrelated laboratory tests
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** specifies whether further monitoring or precautions are advised when the drug is withdrawn
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** practical information on the preparation of intravenous drug infusions; general advice relevant to other routes of administration
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** practical information around how a drug can be prescribed and dispensed including details of when brand prescribing is necessary
- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** includes information on drugs that can cause adverse effects to those who handle them before they are taken by, or administered to, a patient; advice on storage conditions
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** for drugs with a special need for counselling
- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION** provides details of the restrictions certain professions such as dental practitioners or nurse prescribers need to be aware of when prescribing on the NHS
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS** details of NICE Technology Appraisals, SMC advice and AWMSG advice
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** preparations that are considered by the Paediatric Formulary Committee to be less suitable for prescribing
- **EXCEPTION TO LEGAL CATEGORY** advice and information on drugs which may be sold without a prescription under specific conditions

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

##### **Form**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS if applicable  
 EXCIPIENTS clinically important but not comprehensive [consult manufacturer information for full details]  
 ELECTROLYTES if clinically significant quantities occur

- **Preparation name** (Manufacturer/Non-proprietary)
- Drug name and strength pack sizes** PoM B C D E Prices

**Combinations available** this indicates a combination preparation is available and a cross reference page number is provided to locate this preparation

#### B **Evidence grading**

Evidence grading to reflect the strengths of recommendations will be applied as content goes through the revalidation process. A five level evidence grading system based on the former SIGN grading system has been adopted. The grades A B C D E are displayed next to the recommendations within the text, and are preceded by the symbol: EvGr

For further information, see How BNF Publications are constructed

#### PoM **Legal categories**

PoM This symbol has been placed against those preparations that are available only on a prescription issued by an appropriate practitioner. For more detailed information see *Medicines, Ethics and Practice*, London, Pharmaceutical Press (always consult latest edition)

CD1 CD2 CD3 CD4-1 CD4-2 CD5 These symbols indicate that the preparations are subject to the prescription requirements of the Misuse of Drugs Act

For regulations governing prescriptions for such preparations, see Controlled Drugs and Drug Dependence

**Not all monographs include all possible sections; sections are only included when relevant information has been identified**



Occasionally, it is necessary to include doses in the total daily dose format (e.g. 10 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses); in these cases the total daily dose should be divided into individual doses (in this example a child of body-weight 9 kg would receive 30 mg 3 times daily).

Most drugs can be administered at slightly irregular intervals during the day. Some drugs, e.g. antimicrobials, are best given at regular intervals. Some flexibility should be allowed in children to avoid waking them during the night. For example, the night-time dose may be given at the child's bedtime.

Special care should be taken when converting doses from one metric unit to another, and when calculating infusion rates or the volume of a preparation to administer. Where possible, doses should be rounded to facilitate administration of suitable volumes of liquid preparations, or an appropriate strength of tablet or capsule.

#### Other information relevant to indication and dose

The dose panel also contains, where known, an indication of **pharmacokinetic considerations** that may affect the choice of dose, and **dose equivalence** information, which may aid the selection of dose when switching between drugs or preparations.

The BNFC includes **unlicensed use** of medicines when the clinical need cannot be met by licensed medicines; such use should be supported by appropriate evidence and experience. When the BNFC recommends an unlicensed medicine or the 'off-label' use of a licensed medicine, this is shown below the indication and dose panel in the unlicensed use section.

#### Minimising harm and drug safety

The drug chosen to treat a particular condition should minimise the patient's susceptibility to adverse effects and, where co-morbidities exist, have minimal detrimental effects on the patient's other diseases. To achieve this, the *Contra-indications*, *Cautions* and *Side-effects* of the relevant drug should be reviewed.

The information under Cautions can be used to assess the risks of using a drug in a patient who has co-morbidities that are also included in the Cautions for that drug—if a safer alternative cannot be found, the drug may be prescribed while monitoring the patient for adverse-effects or deterioration in the co-morbidity. Contra-indications are far more restrictive than Cautions and mean that the drug should be avoided in a patient with a condition that is contra-indicated.

The impact that potential side-effects may have on a patient's quality of life should also be assessed. For instance, in a child who has constipation, it may be preferable to avoid a drug that frequently causes constipation.

Clinically relevant *Side-effects* for drugs are included in the monographs or drug class monographs. Side-effects are listed in order of frequency, where known, and arranged alphabetically. The frequency of side-effects follows the regulatory standard:

- Very common — occurs more frequently than 1 in 10 administrations of a drug
- Common — occurs between 1 in 10 and 1 in 100 administrations of a drug
- Uncommon — between 1 in 100 and 1 in 1,000 administrations of a drug
- Rare — between 1 in 1,000 and 1 in 10,000 administrations of a drug
- Very rare — occurs less than 1 in 10,000 administrations of a drug
- Frequency not known

An exhaustive list of side-effects is not included, particularly for drugs that are used by specialists (e.g. cytotoxic drugs and drugs used in anaesthesia). The BNFC also omits effects

that are likely to have little clinical consequence (e.g. transient increase in liver enzymes).

Recognising that hypersensitivity reactions can occur with virtually all medicines, this effect is generally not listed, unless the drug carries an increased risk of such reactions, when the information is included under *Allergy and cross sensitivity*.

The *Important safety advice* section in the BNFC, delineated by a coloured outline box, highlights important safety concerns, often those raised by regulatory authorities or guideline producers. Safety warnings issued by the Commission on Human Medicines (CHM) or Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) are found here.

Drug selection should aim to minimise drug interactions. If it is necessary to prescribe a potentially serious combination of drugs, patients should be monitored appropriately. The mechanisms underlying drug interactions are explained in Appendix 1, followed by details of drug interactions.

#### Use of drugs in specific patient populations

Drug selection should aim to minimise the potential for drug accumulation, adverse drug reactions, and exacerbation of pre-existing hepatic or renal disease. If it is necessary to prescribe drugs whose effect is altered by hepatic or renal disease, appropriate drug dose adjustments should be made, and patients should be monitored adequately. The general principles for prescribing are outlined under *Prescribing in hepatic impairment* p. 17, and *Prescribing in renal impairment* p. 17. Information about drugs that should be avoided or used with caution in hepatic disease or renal impairment can be found in drug monographs under *Hepatic impairment* and *Renal impairment* (e.g. fluconazole p. 374).

Similarly, drug selection should aim to minimise harm to the fetus, nursing infant, and mother. The infant should be monitored for potential side-effects of drugs used by the mother during pregnancy or breast-feeding. The general principles for prescribing are outlined under *Prescribing in pregnancy* p. 19 and *Prescribing in breast-feeding* p. 19. The Treatment Summaries provide guidance on the drug treatment of common conditions that can occur during pregnancy and breast-feeding (e.g. Asthma, acute p. 150). Information about the use of specific drugs during pregnancy and breast-feeding can be found in their drug monographs under *Pregnancy*, and *Breast-feeding* (e.g. fluconazole p. 374).

A new section, *Conception and contraception*, containing information around considerations for females of childbearing potential or men who might father a child (e.g. isotretinoin p. 757) has been included.

#### Administration and monitoring

When selecting the most appropriate drug, it may be necessary to screen the patient for certain genetic markers or metabolic states. This information is included within a section called *Pre-treatment screening* (e.g. abacavir p. 416). This section covers one-off tests required to assess the suitability of a patient for a particular drug.

Once the drug has been selected, it needs to be given in the most appropriate manner. A *Directions for administration* section contains the information about intravenous administration previously located in Appendix 4. This provides practical information on the preparation of intravenous drug infusions, including compatibility of drugs with standard intravenous infusion fluids, method of dilution or reconstitution, and administration rates. In addition, general advice relevant to other routes of administration is provided within this section (e.g. fentanyl p. 279) and further details, such as masking the bitter taste of some medicines.

Whenever possible, intramuscular injections should be avoided in children because they are painful.

After selecting and administering the most appropriate drug by the most appropriate route, patients should be monitored to ensure they are achieving the expected benefits from drug treatment without any unwanted side-effects. The *Monitoring* section specifies any special monitoring requirements, including information on monitoring the plasma concentration of drugs with a narrow therapeutic index (e.g. theophylline p. 169). Monitoring may, in certain cases, be affected by the impact of a drug on laboratory tests (e.g. hydroxocobalamin p. 575), and this information is included in *Effects on laboratory tests*.

In some cases, when a drug is withdrawn, further monitoring or precautions may be advised (e.g. clonidine hydrochloride p. 102); these are covered under *Treatment cessation*.

### Choice and supply

The prescriber, the child's carer, and the child (if appropriate) should agree on the health outcomes desired and on the strategy for achieving them (see *Taking Medicines to Best Effect*). Taking the time to explain to the child (and the child's carer if appropriate) the rationale and the potential adverse effects of treatment may improve adherence. For some medicines there is a special need for counselling (e.g. appropriate posture during administration of doxycycline p. 352, or recognising signs of blood, liver, or skin disorders with carbamazepine p. 196); this is shown in *Patient and carer advice*.

Other information contained in the latter half of the monograph also helps prescribers and those dispensing medicines choose medicinal forms (by indicating information such as flavour or when branded products are not interchangeable e.g. modified-release theophylline p. 169), assess the suitability of a drug for prescribing, understand the NHS funding status for a drug (e.g. sildenafil p. 120), or assess when a patient may be able to purchase a drug without prescription (e.g. loperamide hydrochloride p. 49).

### Medicinal forms

In the BNFC, preparations follow immediately after the monograph for the drug that is their main ingredient.

In earlier editions, when a particular preparation had safety information, dose advice or other clinical information specific to the product, it was contained within the preparations section. This information has been moved to the relevant section in the main body of the monograph under a heading of the name of the specific medicinal form (e.g. peppermint oil p. 35).

The medicinal forms (formerly preparations) section provides information on the type of formulation (e.g. tablet), the amount of active drug in a solid dosage form, and the concentration of active drug in a liquid dosage form. The legal status is shown for prescription-only medicines and controlled drugs, as well as pharmacy medicines and medicines on the general sales list. Practitioners are reminded, by a statement under the heading of "Medicinal Form" that not all products containing a specific drug ingredient may be similarly licensed. To be clear on the precise licensing status of specific medicinal forms, practitioners should check the product literature for the particular product being prescribed or dispensed.

Details of all medicinal forms available on the dm+d for each drug in BNF Publications appears online on MedicinesComplete. In print editions, due to space constraints, only certain branded products are included in detail. Where medicinal forms are listed they should not be inferred as equivalent to the other brands listed under the same form heading. For example, all the products listed under a heading of "Modified release capsule" will be available as modified release capsules, however, the brands listed under that form heading may have different release profiles, the available strengths may vary and/or the

products may have different licensing information. As with earlier editions of the BNFC, practitioners must ensure that the particular product being prescribed or dispensed is appropriate.

As medicinal forms are derived from dm+d data, some drugs may appear under names derived from that data; this may vary slightly from those in earlier BNFC versions, e.g. sodium acid phosphate, is now sodium dihydrogen phosphate anhydrous.

Children should be prescribed a preparation that complements their daily routine, and that provides the right dose of drug for the right indication and route of administration. When dispensing liquid preparations, a sugar-free preparation should always be used in preference to one containing sugar. Patients receiving medicines containing cariogenic sugars should be advised of appropriate dental hygiene measures to prevent caries.

Earlier editions of the BNFC only included excipients and electrolyte information for proprietary medicines. This information is now covered at the level of the dose form (e.g. tablet). It is not possible to keep abreast of all of the generic products available on the UK market, and so this information serves as a reminder to the healthcare professional that, if the presence of a particular excipient is of concern, they should check the product literature for the particular product being prescribed or dispensed.

Cautionary and advisory labels that pharmacists are recommended to add when dispensing are included in the medicinal forms section. Details of these labels can be found in Appendix 3, Guidance for cautionary and advisory labels p. 1053. These labels have now been applied at the level of the dose form.

In the case of compound preparations, the prescribing information for all constituents should be taken into account.

### Prices in the BNFC

Basic NHS net prices are given in the BNFC to provide an indication of relative cost. Where there is a choice of suitable preparations for a particular disease or condition the relative cost may be used in making a selection. Cost-effective prescribing must, however, take into account other factors (such as dose frequency and duration of treatment) that affect the total cost. The use of more expensive drugs is justified if it will result in better treatment of the patient, or a reduction of the length of an illness, or the time spent in hospital.



Prices are regularly updated using the Drug Tariff and proprietary price information published by the NHS dictionary of medicines and devices (dm+d, [www.dmd.nhs.uk](http://www.dmd.nhs.uk)). The weekly updated dm+d data (including prices) can be accessed using the dm+d browser of the NHS Business Services Authority ([apps.nhsbsa.nhs.uk/DMDBrowser/](https://apps.nhsbsa.nhs.uk/DMDBrowser/) [DMDBrowser.do](https://dmdbrowser.do)). Prices have been calculated from the net cost used in pricing NHS prescriptions and generally reflect whole dispensing packs. Prices for extemporaneously prepared preparations are not provided in the BNFC as prices vary between different manufacturers.

BNFC prices are not suitable for quoting to patients seeking private prescriptions or contemplating over-the-counter purchases because they do not take into account VAT, professional fees, and other overheads.

A fuller explanation of costs to the NHS may be obtained from the Drug Tariff. Separate drug tariffs are applicable to England and Wales ([www.ppa.org.uk/ppa/edt\\_intro.htm](http://www.ppa.org.uk/ppa/edt_intro.htm)), Scotland ([www.isdscotland.org/Health-Topics/Prescribing-and-Medicines/Scottish-Drug-Tariff/](http://www.isdscotland.org/Health-Topics/Prescribing-and-Medicines/Scottish-Drug-Tariff/)), and Northern Ireland ([www.hscbusiness.hscni.net/services/2034.htm](http://www.hscbusiness.hscni.net/services/2034.htm)); prices in the different tariffs may vary.

## Drug class monographs

In earlier editions of the BNFC, information relating to a class of drug sharing the same properties (e.g. tetracyclines p. 352), was contained within the prescribing notes. In the updated structure, drug class monographs have been created to contain the common information; this ensures such information is easier to find, and has a more regularised structure.

For consistency and ease of use, the class monograph follows the same structure as a drug monograph. Class monographs are indicated by the presence of a flag  (e.g. beta-adrenoceptor blockers (systemic) p. 103). If a drug monograph has a corresponding class monograph, that needs to be considered in tandem, in order to understand the full information about a drug, the monograph is also indicated by a flag  1234 (e.g. metoprolol tartrate p. 107). Within this flag, the page number of the drug class monograph is provided (e.g. 1234), to help navigate the user to this information. This is particularly useful where occasionally, due to differences in therapeutic use, the drug monograph may not directly follow the drug class monograph (e.g. sotalol hydrochloride p. 80).

## Evidence grading

The BNF has adopted a five level evidence grading system (see How BNF Publications are constructed p. ix). Recommendations that are evidence graded can be identified by a symbol appearing immediately before the recommendation. The evidence grade is displayed at the end of the recommendation.

## Other content

### Nutrition

Appendix 2 includes tables of ACBS-approved enteral feeds and nutritional supplements based on their energy and protein content. There are separate tables for specialised formulae for specific clinical conditions. Classified sections on foods for special diets and nutritional supplements for metabolic diseases are also included.

## Other useful information

### Finding significant changes in the BNFC

- **Changes**, provides a list of significant changes, dose changes, classification changes, new names, and new preparations that have been incorporated into the BNFC, as well as a list of preparations that have been discontinued and removed from the BNFC. Changes listed online are cumulative (from one print edition to the next), and can be printed off each month to show the main changes since the last print edition as an aide memoire for those using print copies. So many changes are made for each update of the BNFC, that not all of them can be accommodated in the *Changes* section. We encourage healthcare professionals to review regularly the prescribing information on drugs that they encounter frequently;
- **Changes to the Dental Practitioners' Formulary**, are located at the end of the Dental List;
- **E-newsletter**, the BNF & BNFC e-newsletter service is available free of charge. It alerts healthcare professionals to details of significant changes in the clinical content of these publications and to the way that this information is delivered. Newsletters also review clinical case studies, provide tips on using these publications effectively, and highlight forthcoming changes to the publications. To sign up for e-newsletters go to [www.bnf.org](http://www.bnf.org).
- An e-learning programme developed in collaboration with the Centre for Pharmacy Postgraduate Education (CPPE), enables pharmacists to identify and assess how significant changes in the BNF affect their clinical practice. The module can be found at [www.cppe.ac.uk](http://www.cppe.ac.uk).

## Using other sources for medicines information

The BNFC is designed as a digest for rapid reference. Less detail is given on areas such as malignant disease and anaesthesia since it is expected that those undertaking treatment will have specialist knowledge and access to specialist literature. The BNFC should be interpreted in the light of professional knowledge and supplemented as necessary by specialised publications and by reference to the product literature. Information is also available from medicines information services.

## Changes

Monthly updates are provided online via Medicines Complete and the NHS Evidence portal. The changes listed below are cumulative (from one print edition to the next).

### Significant changes

Significant changes that appear in the print edition of *BNF for Children* 2018–2019:

- Side-effects and their further information sections have been reviewed against the current product literature and terms used to define these have been standardised across all drug monographs in this edition of the *BNF for Children*.
- Acute porphyrias p. 603: updated guidance.
- Adalimumab p. 642 for treating plaque psoriasis in children and young people [NICE guidance].
- Adrenaline/epinephrine auto-injectors p. 136: updated advice after European review [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Asthma, chronic p. 146: updated guidance on management.
- Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder p. 225: updated guidance on management.
- Cerebral palsy and spasticity p. 255: new guidance on management.
- Clozapine p. 250: reminder of potentially fatal risk of intestinal obstruction, faecal impaction, and paralytic ileus [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Controlled drugs and drug dependence p. 9: updated guidance.
- Corticosteroids [see Corticosteroids, general use p. 434]: rare risk of central serous chorioretinopathy with local and systemic administration [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Cystic fibrosis p. 184: updated guidance.
- Dacizumab (*Zinbryta*®) — marketing authorisation withdrawn for safety reasons.
- Diabetes, pregnancy and breast-feeding p. 451: updated guidance on management.
- Dihydrocodeine with paracetamol p. 278 (co-dydramol): prescribe and dispense by strength to minimise risk of medication error (January 2018) [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Dihydrocodeine with paracetamol p. 278 [formerly co-dydramol].
- Drug name confusion: reminder to be vigilant for potential errors between clobazam and clonazepam, atenolol and amlodipine, propranolol and prednisolone, risperidone and ropinirole, sulfadiazine and sulfasalazine, amlodipine and nimodipine, mercaptamine and mercaptopurine, zuclopentixol acetate and zuclopentixol decanoate [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Emergency contraception p. 496: updated guidance on management.
- Erythropoietins (epoetin alfa p. 565, epoetin beta p. 566, epoetin zeta p. 567, darbepoetin alfa p. 564): risk of severe cutaneous adverse reactions [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Etanercept p. 643 for treating plaque psoriasis in children and young people [NICE guidance].
- Gabapentin p. 200 (*Neurontin*®): risk of severe respiratory depression [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Gentamicin p. 312: potential for histamine-related adverse drug reactions with some batches [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Guidance on prescribing p. 1: updated guidance on multimorbidity and deprescribing.
- Immunoglobulins p. 770: updated guidance for Varicella-zoster immunoglobulin.
- Immunosuppressive therapy for kidney transplant in children and young people (see antithymocyte immunoglobulin (rabbit) p. 518, basiliximab p. 526, mycophenolate mofetil p. 527, sirolimus p. 521, and tacrolimus p. 522) [NICE guidance].
- Isotretinoin p. 757 (*Roaccutane*®): rare reports of erectile dysfunction and decreased libido [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Loperamide hydrochloride p. 49: reports of serious cardiac adverse reactions with high doses of loperamide associated with abuse or misuse [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Malaria, prophylaxis p. 386: update to country recommendations and guidance.
- Methylprednisolone p. 441: injectable medicine containing lactose (*Solu-Medrone*® 40 mg): do not use in patients with cows' milk allergy [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Mycophenolate mofetil p. 527, mycophenolic acid: updated contraception advice for male patients [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Neural tube defects (prevention in pregnancy) p. 637: updated guidance.
- Non-medical prescribing p. 1060: updated guidance.
- Noradrenaline/norepinephrine 0.08 mg/mL (4 mg in 50 mL) solution for infusion p. 124 association with potential risk of medication errors.
- Quinine p. 397: clarification of parenteral dose for the treatment of malaria [dose reduction necessary if parenteral treatment is required for more than 48 hours].
- Quinine p. 397: reminder of dose-dependent QT-prolonging effects [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Recombinant human erythropoietins (epoetin alfa p. 565, epoetin beta p. 566, epoetin zeta p. 567, darbepoetin alfa p. 564, methoxy polyethylene glycol-epoetin): very rare risk of severe cutaneous adverse reactions [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Skin infections p. 720: head lice eradication products: risk of serious burns if treated hair is exposed to open flames or other sources of ignition [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Sinusitis (acute) p. 697: updated guidance.
- Terbinafine p. 726: clarification of hepatic monitoring advice.
- *Tivicay*® (dolutegravir p. 411), *Triumeq*® (dolutegravir, abacavir, lamivudine), *Juluca*® (dolutegravir, rilpivirine): neural tube defects reported in infants born to women exposed to dolutegravir at the time of conception [MHRA/CHM advice].
- Urinary-tract infections p. 369: updated guidance on management in children.
- Ustekinumab p. 748 for treating plaque psoriasis in children and young people [NICE guidance].
- Vaccines p. 777: updated guidance for Hepatitis A Vaccine.
- Vaccines: updates to Public Health England's Green Book on use of live attenuated vaccines [see updated MHRA/CHM advice for all vaccines, and PHE advice for rotavirus vaccine in rotavirus vaccine p. 801].
- Vaccines for travel p. 787: updated guidance on Hepatitis A.
- Valproic acid p. 213 and sodium valproate p. 208: valproate medicines contraindicated in women and girls of childbearing potential unless conditions of Pregnancy Prevention Programme are met [MHRA/CHM advice].

### Dose changes

Changes in dose statements that appear in the print edition of *BNF for Children* 2018–2018:

- Abatacept p. 641 [update to dosing advice].
- Adalimumab p. 642 [doses for plaque psoriasis, polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis, enthesitis-related arthritis].
- Amitriptyline hydrochloride p. 238 [dose for depression deleted].
- Chloroquine p. 395 [clarification of dose equivalence statement].
- Co-codamol p. 275 [doses for children aged 12 to 15 years].
- Elvitegravir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide p. 418 [age-range extension].
- Ferrous sulfate p. 572 (*Ironorm*®) [clarification of maximum daily dose for iron-deficiency anaemia]

[therapeutic] in children aged 1 month–5 years and 6–11 years].

- Ganciclovir p. 407.
- Hydroxycarbamide p. 552.
- Lacosamide p. 201.
- Levonorgestrel p. 508 [higher dose in emergency contraception].
- Levonorgestrel p. 508 [update to effective duration for *Levosert*® intra-uterine device].
- Levonorgestrel p. 508 [update to timing for emergency contraception].
- Lisdexamfetamine mesilate p. 230 [dose for children updated].
- Lopinavir with ritonavir p. 425 [update to age-range — now licensed from 14 days].
- Macrogl 3350 with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride p. 42.
- Naloxone hydrochloride p. 842 [clarification of maximum initial dose in children aged 1 month–11 years for overdosage with opioids].
- Papaveretum p. 287 [clarification of dosing].
- Raltegravir p. 411 [all doses updated].
- Sodium nitrite p. 839.
- Sodium thiosulfate p. 839.
- Teicoplanin p. 325 [all doses updated].
- Tramadol with paracetamol p. 290 [clarification of dosing].
- Ustekinumab p. 748 [moderate-to-severe plaque psoriasis].
- Vancomycin p. 325.

### Classification changes

Classification changes that appear in the print edition of *BNF for Children* 2018–2019:

#### New names

Name changes that appear in the print edition of *BNF for Children* 2018–2019::

#### Deleted preparations

Preparations discontinued in the print edition of *BNF for Children* 2018–2019:

#### New preparations

New preparations that appear in the print edition of *BNF for Children* 2018–2019:

- *Cetraxal*® [ciprofloxacin ear drops p. 690].
- *Chenodeoxycholic acid* [chenodeoxycholic acid capsules p. 64].
- *Cubicin*® [daptomycin p. 355].
- *Cystadrops*® [mercaptamine p. 605].
- *Emend*® [aprepitant p. 263].
- *Galafold*® [migalstatat p. 607].
- *Harvoni*® [ledipasvir with sofosbuvir p. 401].
- *Hemlibra*® [emicizumab p. 83].
- *Infanrix Hexa*® [diphtheria with tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis b, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine p. 790].
- *Kyleena*® [levonorgestrel intrauterine device p. 508].
- *Mylotarg*® [gemtuzumab ozogamicin p. 528].
- *Neomags*® [magnesium glycerophosphate chewable tablets p. 596].
- *Otosporin*® [hydrocortisone with neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate p. 693].
- *Ravicti*® [glycerol phenylbutyrate p. 615].
- *RoActemra*® preparations [tocilizumab p. 640].
- Rupatadine [rupatadine tablets p. 177].
- *Simponi*® [golimumab p. 645].
- *Sovaldi*® [sofosbuvir p. 402].
- *Spinraza*® [nusinersen p. 647].
- *Spiriva Respimat*® [tiotropium p. 153].
- *Stelara*® [ustekinumab p. 748].
- *Strensiq*® [asfotase alfa p. 608].
- *Symtuza*® [darunavir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide p. 424].
- *Tasigna*® [nilotinib p. 560].
- *Thealoz Duo*® [sodium hyaluronate and trehalose p. 674].

- Trospectrum chloride p. 490.
- *Trumenba*® [meningococcal group B vaccine (rDNA, component, adsorbed) p. 792].
- *Truvada*® [emtricitabine with tenofovir disoproxil p. 420].
- *Valcyte*® [valganciclovir p. 408].
- *Vemlidy*® [tenofovir alafenamide p. 400].
- *Xaggitin*® XL [methylphenidate hydrochloride p. 227].
- *Xylonor*® [lidocaine with cetrimide p. 827].
- *Yervoy*® [ipilimumab p. 529].



# Guidance on prescribing

## General guidance

Medicines should be given to children only when they are necessary, and in all cases the potential benefit of administering the medicine should be considered in relation to the risk involved. This is particularly important during pregnancy, when the risk to both mother and fetus must be considered.

It is important to discuss treatment options carefully with the child and the child's carer. In particular, the child and the child's carer should be helped to distinguish the adverse effects of prescribed drugs from the effects of the medical disorder. When the beneficial effects of the medicine are likely to be delayed, this should be highlighted.

**Prescribing competency framework** The Royal Pharmaceutical Society has published a Prescribing Competency Framework that includes a common set of competencies that form the basis for prescribing, regardless of professional background. The competencies have been developed to help healthcare professionals be safe and effective prescribers with the aim of supporting patients to get the best outcomes from their medicines. It is available at [www.rpharms.com/resources/frameworks/prescribers-competency-framework](http://www.rpharms.com/resources/frameworks/prescribers-competency-framework).

## Multimorbidity

The presence of two or more long-term health conditions in a child (multimorbidity) is generally associated with reduced quality of life, higher mortality, higher rates of adverse drug reactions, greater use of the health service, and a higher treatment burden (due to polypharmacy or multiple appointments). **EvGr** Treatment decisions should involve consideration of the child's needs, preferences for treatment, health priorities, and lifestyle with the aim of improving quality of life by reducing treatment burden, adverse events, and unplanned or uncoordinated care. All clinicians involved (including primary and secondary care) should work together to minimise the risk of harm. The use of a care plan within a multidisciplinary team with an identified clinical lead, is recommended.

Prescribers should consider the risks and benefits of treatments recommended in guidance for single health conditions, when applied to children with multimorbidity; evidence for these recommendations is commonly drawn from children without multimorbidity or who are taking fewer prescribed regular medicines.

Treatments intended to relieve symptoms should be reviewed for clinical response, including reducing or stopping treatment that is no longer effective or necessary. Alternatively, non-pharmacological treatments may be offered or treatments of limited benefit can be considered for discontinuation. **Ev**

## Transitional services for chronic conditions

The process of moving from paediatric to adult services can lead to a loss of continuity in care and provoke anxiety in children and their carers. **EvGr** Practitioners should start planning for adult care when the child reaches the age of 13 or 14 at the latest and a child-centred approach should be taken. Consider designating a named practitioner among those providing care to the child to take a coordinating role and to act as an advocate for the child, maintaining a link between the various practitioners involved in care (including a named GP). **Ad**

## Deprescribing

**EvGr** Discontinuing or reducing the dose of medicines, under supervision, should be considered regularly to improve outcomes and reduce burden. Deprescribing should be undertaken as part of routine clinical care involving careful counselling alongside shared decision-making with the child and their carers. **Ev**

## Taking medicines to best effect

Difficulties in adherence to drug treatment occur regardless of age. Factors that contribute to poor compliance with prescribed medicines include:

- difficulty in taking the medicine (e.g. inability to swallow the medicine);
- unattractive formulation (e.g. unpleasant taste);
- prescription not collected or not dispensed;
- purpose of medicine not clear;
- perceived lack of efficacy;
- real or perceived adverse effects;
- carers' or child's perception of the risk and severity of side-effects may differ from that of the prescriber;
- instructions for administration not clear.

The prescriber, the child's carer, and the child (if appropriate) should agree on the health outcomes desired and on the strategy for achieving them ('concordance'). The prescriber should be sensitive to religious, cultural, and personal beliefs of the child's family that can affect acceptance of medicines.

Taking the time to explain to the child (and carers) the rationale and the potential adverse effects of treatment may improve adherence. Reinforcement and elaboration of the physician's instructions by the pharmacist and other members of the healthcare team can be important. Giving advice on the management of adverse effects and the possibility of alternative treatments may encourage carers and children to seek advice rather than merely abandon unacceptable treatment.

Simplifying the drug regimen may help; the need for frequent administration may reduce adherence, although there appears to be little difference in adherence between once-daily and twice-daily administration. Combination products reduce the number of drugs taken but at the expense of the ability to titrate individual doses.

## Drug treatment in children

Children, and particularly neonates, differ from adults in their response to drugs. Special care is needed in the neonatal period (first 28 days of life) and doses should always be calculated with care; the risk of toxicity is increased by a reduced rate of drug clearance and differing target organ sensitivity. The terms infant, child and adolescent are used inconsistently in the literature. However, **for reference purposes only**, the terms generally used to describe the paediatric stages of development are:

Preterm neonate	Born at < 37 weeks gestation
Term neonate	Born at 37 to 42 weeks gestation
Post-term neonate	Born at ≥42 weeks gestation
Neonate	From 0 up to 28 days of age (or first 4 weeks of life)
Infant	From 28 days up to 24 months of age
Child	From 2 years up to 12 years of age
Adolescent	From 12 years up to 18 years of age

In *BNF for Children*, the term neonate is used to describe a newborn infant aged 0–28 days. The terms child or children are used generically to describe the entire range from infant to adolescent (1 month–17 years). An age range is specified when the dose information applies to a narrower age range than a child from 1 month–17 years.

### Administration of medicines to children

Children should be involved in decisions about taking medicines and encouraged to take responsibility for using them correctly. The degree of such involvement will depend on the child's age, understanding, and personal circumstances.

Occasionally a medicine or its taste has to be disguised or masked with small quantities of food. However, unless specifically permitted (e.g. some formulations of pancreatin p. 72), a medicine should **not** be mixed with large quantities of food because the full dose might not be taken and the child might develop an aversion to food if the medicine imparts an unpleasant taste. Medicines should not be mixed or administered in a baby's feeding bottle.

Children under 5 years (and some older children) find a liquid formulation more acceptable than tablets or capsules. However, for long-term treatment it may be possible for a child to be taught to take tablets or capsules.

An oral syringe should be used for accurate measurement and controlled administration of an oral liquid medicine. The unpleasant taste of an oral liquid can be disguised by flavouring it or by giving a favourite food or drink immediately afterwards, but the potential for food-drug interactions should be considered.

Advice should be given on dental hygiene to those receiving medicines containing cariogenic sugars for long-term treatment; sugar-free medicines should be provided whenever possible.

Children with nasal feeding tubes in place for prolonged periods should be encouraged to take medicines by mouth if possible; enteric feeding should generally be interrupted before the medicine is given (particularly if enteral feeds reduce the absorption of a particular drug). Oral liquids can be given through the tube provided that precautions are taken to guard against blockage; the dose should be washed down with warm water. When a medicine is given through a nasogastric tube to a neonate, **sterile water** must be used to accompany the medicine or to wash it down.

The intravenous route is generally chosen when a medicine cannot be given by mouth; reliable access, often a central vein, should be used for children whose treatment involves irritant or inotropic drugs or who need to receive the medicine over a long period or for home therapy. The subcutaneous route is used most commonly for insulin administration. Intramuscular injections should preferably be **avoided** in children, particularly neonates, infants, and young children. However, the intramuscular route may be advantageous for administration of single doses of medicines when intravenous cannulation would be more problematic or painful to the child. Certain drugs, e.g. some vaccines, are only administered intramuscularly.

The intrathecal, epidural and intraosseous routes should be used **only** by staff specially trained to administer medicines by these routes. Local protocols for the management of intrathecal injections must be in place.

### Managing medicines in school

Administration of a medicine during schooltime should be avoided if possible; medicines should be prescribed for once or twice-daily administration whenever practicable. If the medicine needs to be taken in school, this should be discussed with parents or carers and the necessary arrangements made in advance; where appropriate, involvement of a school nurse should be sought. *Managing Medicines in Schools and Early Years Settings* produced by the

Department of Health provides guidance on using medicines in schools ([www.dh.gov.uk](http://www.dh.gov.uk)).

### Patient information leaflets

Manufacturers' patient information leaflets that accompany a medicine, cover only the licensed use of the medicine. Therefore, when a medicine is used outside its licence, it may be appropriate to advise the child and the child's parent or carer that some of the information in the leaflet might not apply to the child's treatment. Where necessary, inappropriate advice in the patient information leaflet should be identified and reassurance provided about the correct use in the context of the child's condition.

### Biological medicines

**Biological medicines** are medicines that are made by or derived from a biological source using biotechnology processes, such as recombinant DNA technology. The size and complexity of biological medicines, as well as the way they are produced, may result in a degree of natural variability in molecules of the same active substance, particularly in different batches of the medicine. This variation is maintained within strict acceptable limits. Examples of biological medicines include insulins and monoclonal antibodies. **EvGr** Biological medicines must be prescribed by brand name and the brand name specified on the prescription should be dispensed in order to avoid inadvertent switching. Automatic substitution of brands at the point of dispensing is not appropriate for biological medicines. **⚠**

### Biosimilar medicines

A **biosimilar medicine** is a biological medicine that is highly similar and clinically equivalent (in terms of quality, safety, and efficacy) to an existing biological medicine that has already been authorised in the European Union (known as the reference biological medicine or originator medicine). The active substance of a biosimilar medicine is similar, but not identical, to the originator biological medicine. Once the patent for a biological medicine has expired, a biosimilar medicine may be authorised by the European Medicines Agency (EMA). A biosimilar medicine is not the same as a generic medicine, which contains a simpler molecular structure that is identical to the originator medicine.

**Therapeutic equivalence** **EvGr** Biosimilar medicines should be considered to be therapeutically equivalent to the originator biological medicine within their authorised indications. **⚠** Biosimilar medicines are usually licensed for all the indications of the originator biological medicine, but this depends on the evidence submitted to the EMA for authorisation and must be scientifically justified on the basis of demonstrated or extrapolated equivalence.

**Prescribing and dispensing** The choice of whether to prescribe a biosimilar medicine or the originator biological medicine rests with the clinician in consultation with the patient. **EvGr** Biological medicines (including biosimilar medicines) must be prescribed by brand name and the brand name specified on the prescription should be dispensed in order to avoid inadvertent switching. Automatic substitution of brands at the point of dispensing is not appropriate for biological medicines. **⚠**

**Safety monitoring** Biosimilar medicines are subject to a black triangle status (▼) at the time of initial authorisation. **EvGr** It is important to report suspected adverse reactions using the Yellow Card Scheme (see Adverse reactions to drugs p. 13). For all biological medicines, adverse reaction reports should clearly state the brand name and the batch number of the suspected medicine. **⚠** UK Medicines Information centres have developed a validated tool to determine potential safety issues associated with all new medicines. These 'in-use product safety

assessment reports' will be published for new biosimilar medicines as they become available, see [www.sps.nhs.uk/home/medicines/](http://www.sps.nhs.uk/home/medicines/).

**National funding/access decisions** The Department of Health has confirmed that, in England, NICE can decide to apply the same remit, and the resulting technology appraisal guidance, to relevant biosimilar medicines which appear on the market subsequent to their originator biological medicine. In other circumstances, where a review of the evidence for a particular biosimilar medicine is necessary, NICE will consider producing an evidence summary (see *Evidence summary: new medicines*, [www.nice.org.uk/about/what-we-do/our-programmes/nice-advice/evidence-summary-new-medicines](http://www.nice.org.uk/about/what-we-do/our-programmes/nice-advice/evidence-summary-new-medicines)).

**National information** In England, see [www.nice.org.uk/Media/Default/About/what-we-do/NICE-guidance/NICE-technology-appraisals/biosimilars-statement.pdf](http://www.nice.org.uk/Media/Default/About/what-we-do/NICE-guidance/NICE-technology-appraisals/biosimilars-statement.pdf).

In Northern Ireland, see [niformulary.hscni.net/ManagedEntry/bios/Pages/default.aspx](http://niformulary.hscni.net/ManagedEntry/bios/Pages/default.aspx).

In Scotland, see [www.scottishmedicines.org.uk/About\\_SMC/Policy\\_statements/Biosimilar\\_Medicines](http://www.scottishmedicines.org.uk/About_SMC/Policy_statements/Biosimilar_Medicines).

In Wales, see [www.wales.nhs.uk/sites3/Documents/814/BIOSIMILARS-ABUHBpositionStatement%5BNov2015%5D.pdf](http://www.wales.nhs.uk/sites3/Documents/814/BIOSIMILARS-ABUHBpositionStatement%5BNov2015%5D.pdf).

**Availability** The following drugs are available as a biosimilar medicine:

- Adalimumab p. 642
- Enoxaparin sodium p. 94
- Epoetin alfa p. 565
- Epoetin zeta p. 567
- Etanercept p. 643
- Filgrastim p. 579
- Infliximab p. 33
- Insulin glargine p. 459
- Insulin lispro p. 456
- Rituximab p. 530
- Somatropin p. 475

## Complementary and alternative medicine

An increasing amount of information on complementary and alternative medicine is becoming available. Where appropriate, the child and the child's carers should be asked about the use of their medicines, including dietary supplements and topical products. The scope of *BNF for Children* is restricted to the discussion of conventional medicines but reference is made to complementary treatments if they affect conventional therapy (e.g. interactions with St John's wort). Further information on herbal medicines is available at [www.mhra.gov.uk](http://www.mhra.gov.uk).

## BNF for Children and marketing authorisation

Where appropriate the *doses, indications, cautions, contra-indications, and side-effects* in *BNF for Children* reflect those in the manufacturers' Summaries of Product Characteristics (SPCs) which, in turn, reflect those in the corresponding marketing authorisations (formerly known as Product Licences). *BNF for Children* does not generally include proprietary medicines that are not supported by a valid Summary of Product Characteristics or when the marketing authorisation holder has not been able to supply essential information. When a preparation is available from more than one manufacturer, *BNF for Children* reflects advice that is the most clinically relevant regardless of any variation in the marketing authorisation. Unlicensed products can be obtained from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies.

As far as possible, medicines should be prescribed within the terms of the marketing authorisation. However, many children require medicines not specifically licensed for paediatric use. Although medicines cannot be promoted outside the limits of the licence, the Human Medicines

Regulations 2012 do not prohibit the use of unlicensed medicines.

*BNF for Children* includes advice involving the use of unlicensed medicines or of licensed medicines for unlicensed uses ('off-label' use). Such advice reflects careful consideration of the options available to manage a given condition and the weight of evidence and experience of the unlicensed intervention. Where the advice falls outside a drug's marketing authorisation, *BNF for Children* shows the licensing status in the drug monograph. However, limitations of the marketing authorisation should not preclude unlicensed use where clinically appropriate.

**Prescribing unlicensed medicines** Prescribing unlicensed medicines or medicines outside the recommendations of their marketing authorisation alters (and probably increases) the prescriber's professional responsibility and potential liability. The prescriber should be able to justify and feel competent in using such medicines, and also inform the patient or the patient's carer that the prescribed medicine is unlicensed.

## Drugs and skilled tasks

Prescribers and other healthcare professionals should advise children and their carers if treatment is likely to affect their ability to perform skilled tasks (e.g. driving). This applies especially to drugs with sedative effects; patients should be warned that these effects are increased by alcohol. General information about a patient's fitness to drive is available from the Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency at [www.dvla.gov.uk](http://www.dvla.gov.uk).

A new offence of driving, attempting to drive, or being in charge of a vehicle, with certain specified controlled drugs in excess of specified limits, came into force on 2nd March 2015. This offence is an addition to the existing rules on drug impaired driving and fitness to drive, and applies to two groups of drugs—commonly abused drugs, including amfetamines, cannabis, cocaine, and ketamine p. 820, and drugs used mainly for medical reasons, such as opioids and benzodiazepines. Anyone found to have any of the drugs (including related drugs, for example, apomorphine hydrochloride) above specified limits in their blood will be guilty of an offence, whether their driving was impaired or not. This also includes prescribed drugs which metabolise to those included in the offence, for example, selegiline hydrochloride. However, the legislation provides a statutory "medical defence" for patients taking drugs for medical reasons in accordance with instructions, *if their driving was not impaired*—it continues to be an offence to drive if actually impaired. Patients should therefore be advised to continue taking their medicines as prescribed, and when driving, to carry suitable evidence that the drug was prescribed, or sold, to treat a medical or dental problem, and that it was taken according to the instructions given by the prescriber, or information provided with the medicine (e.g. a repeat prescription form or the medicine's patient information leaflet). Further information is available from the Department for Transport at [www.gov.uk/government/collections/drug-driving](http://www.gov.uk/government/collections/drug-driving).

## Oral syringes

An **oral syringe** is supplied when oral liquid medicines are prescribed in doses other than multiples of 5 mL. The oral syringe is marked in 0.5-mL divisions from 1 to 5 mL to measure doses of less than 5 mL (other sizes of oral syringe may also be available). It is provided with an adaptor and an instruction leaflet. The 5-mL *spoon* is used for doses of 5 mL (or multiples thereof).

## Excipients

Branded oral liquid preparations that do not contain *fructose, glucose, or sucrose* are described as 'sugar-free' in *BNF for Children*. Preparations containing hydrogenated glucose



syrup, mannitol, maltitol, sorbitol, or xylitol are also marked 'sugar-free' since they do not cause dental caries. Children receiving medicines containing cariogenic sugars, or their carers, should be advised of dental hygiene measures to prevent caries. Sugar-free preparations should be used whenever possible, particularly if treatment is required for a long period.

Where information on the presence of *alcohol*, *aspartame*, *gluten*, *sulfites*, *tartrazine*, *arachis* (peanut) oil or *sesame oil* is available, this is indicated in *BNF for Children* against the relevant preparation.

Information is provided on *selected excipients* in skin preparations, in vaccines, and on *selected preservatives* and *excipients* in eye drops and injections.

The presence of *benzyl alcohol* and *polyoxyl castor oil* (polyethoxylated castor oil) in injections is indicated in *BNF for Children*. Benzyl alcohol has been associated with a fatal toxic syndrome in preterm neonates, and therefore, parenteral preparations containing the preservative should not be used in neonates. Polyoxyl castor oils, used as vehicles in intravenous injections, have been associated with severe anaphylactoid reactions.

The presence of *propylene glycol* in oral or parenteral medicines is indicated in *BNF for Children*; it can cause adverse effects if its elimination is impaired, e.g. in renal failure, in neonates and young children, and in slow metabolisers of the substance. It may interact with metronidazole p. 333.

The *lactose* content in most medicines is too small to cause problems in most lactose-intolerant children. However in severe lactose intolerance, the lactose content should be determined before prescribing. The amount of lactose varies according to manufacturer, product, formulation, and strength.

**Important** In the absence of information on excipients in *BNF for Children* and in the product literature (available at [www.medicines.org.uk/emc/](http://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/)), contact the manufacturer if it is essential to check details.

### Health and safety

When handling chemical or biological materials particular attention should be given to the possibility of allergy, fire, explosion, radiation, or poisoning. Care is required to avoid sources of heat (including hair dryers) when flammable substances are used on the skin or hair. Substances, such as corticosteroids, some antimicrobials, phenothiazines, and many cytotoxics, are irritant or very potent and should be handled with caution; contact with the skin and inhalation of dust should be avoided. Healthcare professionals and carers should guard against exposure to sensitising, toxic or irritant substances if it is necessary to crush tablets or open capsules.

### EEA and Swiss prescriptions

Pharmacists can dispense prescriptions issued by doctors and dentists from the European Economic Area (EEA) or Switzerland (except prescriptions for controlled drugs in Schedules 1, 2, or 3, or for drugs without a UK marketing authorisation). Prescriptions should be written in ink or otherwise so as to be indelible, should be dated, should state the name of the patient, should state the address of the prescriber, should contain particulars indicating whether the prescriber is a doctor or dentist, and should be signed by the prescriber.

### Security and validity of prescriptions

The Councils of the British Medical Association and the Royal Pharmaceutical Society have issued a joint statement on the security and validity of prescriptions.

In particular, prescription forms should:

- not be left unattended at reception desks;
- not be left in a car where they may be visible.

- when not in use, be kept in a locked drawer within the surgery and at home.

Where there is any doubt about the authenticity of a prescription, the pharmacist should contact the prescriber. If this is done by telephone, the number should be obtained from the directory rather than relying on the information on the prescription form, which may be false.

### Patient group direction (PGD)

In most cases, the most appropriate clinical care will be provided on an individual basis by a prescriber to a specific child. However, a Patient Group Direction for supply and administration of medicines by other healthcare professionals can be used where it would benefit the child's care without compromising safety.

A Patient Group Direction is a written direction relating to the supply and administration (or administration only) of a licensed prescription-only medicine (including some Controlled Drugs in specific circumstances) by certain classes of healthcare professionals; the Direction is signed by a doctor (or dentist) and by a pharmacist. Further information on Patient Group Directions is available in Health Service Circular HSC 2000/026 (England), HDL (2001) 7 (Scotland), and WHC (2000) 116 (Wales); see also the Human Medicines Regulations 2012.

### NICE, Scottish Medicines Consortium and All Wales Medicines Strategy Group

Advice issued by the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE), the Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) and the All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) is included in *BNF for Children* when relevant. Details of the advice together with updates can be obtained from: [www.nice.org.uk](http://www.nice.org.uk), [www.scottishmedicines.org.uk](http://www.scottishmedicines.org.uk) and [www.awmsg.org](http://www.awmsg.org).

# Prescription writing

## Shared care

In its guidelines on responsibility for prescribing (circular EL (91) 127) between hospitals and general practitioners, the Department of Health has advised that legal responsibility for prescribing lies with the doctor who signs the prescription.

## Requirements

Prescriptions should be written legibly in ink or otherwise so as to be indelible (it is permissible to issue carbon copies of NHS prescriptions as long as they are signed in ink), should be dated, should state the name and address of the patient, the address of the prescriber, an indication of the type of prescriber, and should be signed in ink by the prescriber (computer-generated facsimile signatures do not meet the legal requirement). The age and the date of birth of the patient should preferably be stated, and it is a legal requirement in the case of prescription-only medicines to state the age for children under 12 years. These recommendations are acceptable for **prescription-only medicines**. Prescriptions for controlled drugs have additional legal requirements.

Wherever appropriate the prescriber should state the current weight of the child to enable the dose prescribed to be checked. Consideration should also be given to including the dose per unit mass e.g. mg/kg or the dose per m<sup>2</sup> body-surface area e.g. mg/m<sup>2</sup> where this would reduce error. The following should be noted:

- The strength or quantity to be contained in capsules, lozenges, tablets etc. should be stated by the prescriber. In particular, strength of liquid preparations should be clearly stated (e.g. 125 mg/5 mL).
- The unnecessary use of decimal points should be avoided, e.g. 3 mg, not 3.0 mg. Quantities of 1 gram or more should be written as 1 g etc. Quantities less than 1 gram should be written in milligrams, e.g. 500 mg, not 0.5 g. Quantities less than 1 mg should be written in micrograms, e.g. 100 micrograms, not 0.1 mg. When decimals are unavoidable a zero should be written in front of the decimal point where there is no other figure, e.g. 0.5 mL, not .5 mL. Use of the decimal point is acceptable to express a range, e.g. 0.5 to 1 g.
- 'Micrograms' and 'nanograms' should **not** be abbreviated. Similarly 'units' should **not** be abbreviated.
- The term 'millilitre' (mL or mL) is used in medicine and pharmacy, and cubic centimetre, c.c., or cm<sup>3</sup> should not be used. (The use of capital 'L' in mL is a printing convention throughout the BNF; both 'mL' and 'ml' are recognised SI abbreviations).
- Dose and dose frequency should be stated; in the case of preparations to be taken 'as required' a **minimum dose interval** should be specified. Care should be taken to ensure children receive the correct dose of the active drug. Therefore, the dose should normally be stated in terms of the mass of the active drug (e.g. '125 mg 3 times daily'); terms such as '5 mL' or '1 tablet' should be avoided except for compound preparations. When doses other than multiples of 5 mL are prescribed for *oral liquid preparations* the dose-volume will be provided by means of an **oral syringe**, (except for preparations intended to be measured with a pipette). Suitable quantities:
  - Elixirs, Linctuses, and Paediatric Mixtures (5-mL dose), 50, 100, or 150 mL
  - Adult Mixtures (10 mL dose), 200 or 300 mL
  - Ear Drops, Eye drops, and Nasal Drops, 10 mL (or the manufacturer's pack)
  - Eye Lotions, Gargles, and Mouthwashes, 200 mL
- The names of drugs and preparations should be written clearly and **not** abbreviated. Using approved titles only:

**avoid** creating generic titles for modified-release preparations).

- The quantity to be supplied may be stated by indicating the number of days of treatment required in the box provided on NHS forms. In most cases the exact amount will be supplied. This does not apply to items directed to be used as required—if the dose and frequency are not given then the quantity to be supplied needs to be stated. When several items are ordered on one form the box can be marked with the number of days of treatment provided the quantity is added for any item for which the amount cannot be calculated.
- Although directions should preferably be in **English without abbreviation**, it is recognised that some Latin abbreviations are used.

## Sample prescription

Pharmacy Stamp	Age 1yr 3mths	Title, Forename, Surname & Address Master Peter Patient
	Date 2/4/2010	Flat 1 50 Stanhope Street Newtown TE22 1ST
Please don't stamp over age box		
Number of days' treatment N.B. Ensure dose is stated	5	
Endorsements Amoxicillin oral suspension 125mg/5ml sugar-free 125mg three times daily Supply 100ml (No more items on this prescription)		
Signature of prescriber <i>[Signature]</i>		Date 02/07/11
For dispenser No. of Prescrib. on form		
Anyborough Health Authority Dr D O Good 345543 7 High Street Anytown KB1 CD2 Tel: 0111 222 333		
NHS		FP10NC0105

**Abbreviation of titles** In general, titles of drugs and preparations should be written in *full*. Unofficial abbreviations should **not** be used as they may be misinterpreted.

**Non-proprietary titles** Where non-proprietary ('generic') titles are given, they should be used for prescribing. This will enable any suitable product to be dispensed, thereby saving delay to the patient and sometimes expense to the health service. The only exception is where there is a demonstrable difference in clinical effect between each manufacturer's version of the formulation, making it important that the child should always receive the same brand; in such cases, the brand name or the manufacturer should be stated.

**Non-proprietary names of compound preparations** Non-proprietary names of **compound preparations** which appear in *BNF for Children* are those that have been compiled

by the British Pharmacopoeia Commission or another recognised body; whenever possible they reflect the names of the active ingredients. Prescribers should avoid creating their own compound names for the purposes of generic prescribing; such names do not have an approved definition and can be misinterpreted.

Special care should be taken to avoid errors when prescribing compound preparations; in particular the hyphen in the prefix 'co-' should be retained. Special care should also be taken to avoid creating generic names for **modified-release** preparations where the use of these names could lead to confusion between formulations with different duration of action.

# Supply of medicines

## Overview

When supplying a medicine for a child, the pharmacist should ensure that the child and the child's carer understand the nature and identity of the medicine and how it should be used. The child and the carer should be provided with appropriate information (e.g. how long the medicine should be taken for and what to do if a dose is missed or the child vomits soon after the dose is given).

## Safety in the home

Carers and relatives of children must be warned to keep all medicines out of the reach and sight of children. Tablets, capsules and oral and external liquid preparations must be dispensed in a reclosable *child-resistant container* unless:

- the medicine is in an original pack or patient pack such as to make this inadvisable;
- the child's carer will have difficulty in opening a child-resistant container;
- a specific request is made that the product shall not be dispensed in a child-resistant container;
- no suitable child-resistant container exists for a particular liquid preparation.

All patients should be advised to dispose of *unwanted medicines* by returning them to a pharmacy for destruction.

## Labelling of prescribed medicines

There is a legal requirement for the following to appear on the label of any prescribed medicine:

- name of the patient;
- name and address of the supplying pharmacy;
- date of dispensing;
- name of the medicine;
- directions for use of the medicine;
- precautions relating to the use of the medicine.

The Royal Pharmaceutical Society recommends that the following also appears on the label:

- the words 'Keep out of the sight and reach of children';
- where applicable, the words 'Use this medicine only on your skin'.

A pharmacist can exercise professional skill and judgement to amend or include more appropriate wording for the name of the medicine, the directions for use, or the precautions relating to the use of the medicine.

## Unlicensed medicines

A drug or formulation that is not covered by a marketing authorisation may be obtained from a pharmaceutical company, imported by a specialist importer, manufactured by a commercial or hospital licensed manufacturing unit, or prepared extemporaneously against a prescription.

The safeguards that apply to products with marketing authorisation should be extended, as far as possible, to the use of unlicensed medicines. The safety, efficacy, and quality (including labelling) of unlicensed medicines should be assured by means of clear policies on their prescribing, purchase, supply, and administration. Extra care is required with unlicensed medicines because less information may be available on the drug and any formulation of the drug. The following should be agreed with the supplier when ordering an unlicensed or extemporaneously prepared medicine:

- the specification of the formulation;
- documentation confirming the specification and quality of the product supplied (e.g. a certificate of conformity or of analysis);
- for imported preparations product and licensing information should be supplied in English.

## Extemporaneous preparations

A product should be dispensed extemporaneously only when no product with a marketing authorisation is available. Every effort should be made to ensure that an extemporaneously prepared product is stable and that it delivers the requisite dose reliably; the child should be provided with a consistent formulation regardless of where the medicine is supplied to minimise variations in quality. Where there is doubt about the formulation, advice should be sought from a medicines information centre, the pharmacy at a children's hospital, a hospital production unit, a hospital quality control department, or the manufacturer.

In many cases it is preferable to give a licensed product by an unlicensed route (e.g. an injection solution given by mouth) than to prepare a special formulation. When tablets or capsules are cut, dispersed, or used for preparing liquids immediately before administration, it is important to confirm uniform dispersal of the active ingredient, especially if only a portion of the solid content (e.g. a tablet segment) is used or if only an aliquot of the liquid is to be administered. In some cases the child's clinical condition may require a dose to be administered in the absence of full information on the method of administration. It is important to ensure that the appropriate supporting information is available at the earliest opportunity.

Preparation of products that produce harmful dust (e.g. cytotoxic drugs, hormones, or potentially sensitising drugs such as neomycin sulfate p. 690) should be **avoided** or undertaken with appropriate precautions to protect staff and carers.

The BP direction that a preparation must be *freshly prepared* indicates that it must be made not more than 24 hours before it is issued for use. The direction that a preparation should be *recently prepared* indicates that deterioration is likely if the preparation is stored for longer than about 4 weeks at 15–25°C.

The term **water** used without qualification means either potable water freshly drawn direct from the public supply and suitable for drinking or freshly boiled and cooled purified water. The latter should be used if the public supply is from a local storage tank or if the potable water is unsuitable for a particular preparation.

## Emergency supply of medicines

### Emergency supply requested by member of the public

Pharmacists are sometimes called upon by members of the public to make an emergency supply of medicines. The Human Medicines Regulations 2012 allows exemptions from the Prescription Only requirements for emergency supply to be made by a person lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business provided:

- a) that the pharmacist has interviewed the person requesting the prescription-only medicine and is satisfied:
  - i) that there is immediate need for the prescription-only medicine and that it is impracticable in the circumstances to obtain a prescription without undue delay;
  - ii) that treatment with the prescription-only medicine has on a previous occasion been prescribed for the person requesting it;
  - iii) as to the dose that it would be appropriate for the person to take;
- b) that no greater quantity shall be supplied than will provide 5 days' treatment of phenobarbital p. 216, *phenobarbital sodium*, or Controlled Drugs in Schedules 4 or 5 (doctors or dentists from the European Economic Area and Switzerland, or their patients, cannot request an emergency supply of Controlled Drugs in Schedules 1, 2, or 3, or drugs that do not have a UK marketing authorisation) or 30 days' treatment for other prescription-only medicines, except when the prescription-only medicine is:
  - i) insulin, an ointment or cream, or a preparation for the relief of asthma in an aerosol dispenser when the smallest pack can be supplied;
  - ii) an oral contraceptive when a full cycle may be supplied;
  - iii) an antibiotic in liquid form for oral administration when the smallest quantity that will provide a full course of treatment can be supplied;
- c) that an entry shall be made by the pharmacist in the prescription book stating:
  - i) the date of supply;
  - ii) the name, quantity and, where appropriate, the pharmaceutical form and strength;
  - iii) the name and address of the patient;
  - iv) the nature of the emergency;
- d) that the container or package must be labelled to show:
  - i) the date of supply;
  - ii) the name, quantity and, where appropriate, the pharmaceutical form and strength;
  - iii) the name of the patient;
  - iv) the name and address of the pharmacy;
  - v) the words 'Emergency supply';
  - vi) the words 'Keep out of the reach of children' (or similar warning);
- e) that the prescription-only medicine is not a substance specifically excluded from the emergency supply provision, and does not contain a Controlled Drug specified in Schedules 1, 2, or 3 to the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 except for phenobarbital p. 216 or *phenobarbital sodium* for the treatment of epilepsy: for details see *Medicines, Ethics and Practice*, London, Pharmaceutical Press (always consult latest edition). Doctors or dentists from the European Economic Area and Switzerland, or their patients, cannot request an emergency supply of Controlled Drugs in Schedules 1, 2, or 3, or drugs that do not have a UK marketing authorisation.

### Emergency supply requested by prescriber

Emergency supply of a prescription-only medicine may also be made at the request of a doctor, a dentist, a supplementary prescriber, a community practitioner nurse prescriber, a nurse, pharmacist, or optometrist independent prescriber, or a doctor or dentist from the European Economic Area or Switzerland, provided:

- a) that the pharmacist is satisfied that the prescriber by reason of some emergency is unable to furnish a prescription immediately;
- b) that the prescriber has undertaken to furnish a prescription within 72 hours;
- c) that the medicine is supplied in accordance with the directions of the prescriber requesting it;
- d) that the medicine is not a Controlled Drug specified in Schedules 1, 2, or 3 to the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 except for phenobarbital p. 216 or *phenobarbital sodium* for the treatment of epilepsy: for details see *Medicines, Ethics and Practice*, London, Pharmaceutical Press (always consult latest edition); (Doctors or dentists from the European Economic Area and Switzerland, or their patients, cannot request an emergency supply of Controlled Drugs in Schedules 1, 2, or 3, or drugs that do not have a UK marketing authorisation).
- e) that an entry shall be made in the prescription book stating:
  - i) the date of supply;
  - ii) the name, quantity and, where appropriate, the pharmaceutical form and strength;
  - iii) the name and address of the practitioner requesting the emergency supply;
  - iv) the name and address of the patient;
  - v) the date on the prescription;
  - vi) when the prescription is received the entry should be amended to include the date on which it is received.

### Royal Pharmaceutical Society's guidelines

1. The pharmacist should consider the medical consequences of not supplying a medicine in an emergency.
2. If the pharmacist is unable to make an emergency supply of a medicine the pharmacist should advise the patient how to obtain essential medical care.

For conditions that apply to supplies made at the request of a patient see *Medicines, Ethics and Practice*, London, Pharmaceutical Press, (always consult latest edition).

# Controlled drugs and drug dependence

## Regulations and classification

The Misuse of Drugs Act, 1971 as amended prohibits certain activities in relation to 'Controlled Drugs', in particular their manufacture, supply, and possession (except where permitted by the 2001 Regulations or under licence from the Secretary of State). The penalties applicable to offences involving the different drugs are graded broadly according to the *harmfulness attributable to a drug when it is misused* and for this purpose the drugs are defined in the following three classes:

- **Class A** includes: alfentanil p. 818, cocaine, diamorphine hydrochloride p. 277 (heroin), dipipanone hydrochloride, fentanyl p. 279, lysergide (LSD), methadone hydrochloride p. 299, 3, 4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDMA, 'ecstasy'), morphine p. 282, opium, oxycodone hydrochloride p. 284, pethidine hydrochloride p. 287, phencyclidine, remifentanyl p. 819, and class B substances when prepared for injection.
- **Class B** includes: oral amfetamines, barbiturates, cannabis, *Sativex*®, codeine phosphate p. 276, dihydrocodeine tartrate p. 278, ethylmorphine, glutethimide, ketamine p. 820, nabilone p. 261, pentazocine, phenmetrazine, and pholcodine p. 188.
- **Class C** includes: certain drugs related to the amfetamines such as benzphetamine and chlorphentermine, buprenorphine p. 274, mazindol, meprobamate, pemoline, pipradrol, most benzodiazepines, tramadol hydrochloride p. 287, zaleplon, zolpidem tartrate, zopiclone, androgenic and anabolic steroids, clenbuterol, chorionic gonadotrophin (HCG), non-human chorionic gonadotrophin, somatotropin, somatrem, and somatropin p. 475.

The Misuse of Drugs (Safe Custody) Regulations 1973 as amended details the storage and safe custody requirements for Controlled Drugs.

The Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 (and subsequent amendments) defines the classes of person who are authorised to supply and possess Controlled Drugs while acting in their professional capacities and lays down the conditions under which these activities may be carried out. In the 2001 regulations, drugs are divided into five Schedules, each specifying the requirements governing such activities as import, export, production, supply, possession, prescribing, and record keeping which apply to them.

- **Schedule 1** includes drugs not used medicinally such as hallucinogenic drugs (e.g. LSD), ecstasy-type substances, raw opium, and cannabis. A Home Office licence is generally required for their production, possession, or supply. A Controlled Drug register must be used to record details of any Schedule 1 Controlled Drugs received or supplied by a pharmacy.
- **Schedule 2** includes opiates (e.g. diamorphine hydrochloride (heroin), morphine, methadone hydrochloride, oxycodone hydrochloride, pethidine hydrochloride), major stimulants (e.g. amfetamines), quinalbarbitone (secobarbital), cocaine and ketamine. Schedule 2 Controlled Drugs are subject to the full Controlled Drug requirements relating to prescriptions, safe custody (except for quinalbarbitone (secobarbital) and some liquid preparations), and the need to keep a Controlled Drug register, (unless exempted in Schedule 5). Possession, supply and procurement is authorised for pharmacists and other classes of persons named in the 2001 Regulations.
- **Schedule 3** includes the barbiturates (except secobarbital, now Schedule 2), buprenorphine p. 274, mazindol, meprobamate, midazolam p. 223, pentazocine, phentermine, temazepam p. 821, and

tramadol hydrochloride p. 287. They are subject to the special prescription requirements. Safe custody requirements do apply, except for any 5,5-disubstituted barbituric acid (e.g. phenobarbital), mazindol, meprobamate, midazolam, pentazocine, phentermine, tramadol hydrochloride, or any stereoisomeric form or salts of the above. Records in registers do not need to be kept (although there are requirements for the retention of invoices for 2 years).

- **Schedule 4** includes in Part I drugs that are subject to minimal control, such as benzodiazepines (except temazepam and midazolam, which are in Schedule 3), non-benzodiazepine hypnotics (zaleplon, zolpidem tartrate, and zopiclone) and *Sativex*®. Part II includes androgenic and anabolic steroids, clenbuterol, chorionic gonadotrophin (HCG), non-human chorionic gonadotrophin, somatotropin, somatrem, and somatropin p. 475. Controlled drug prescription requirements do not apply and Schedule 4 Controlled Drugs are not subject to safe custody requirements. Records in registers do not need to be kept (except in the case of *Sativex*®).
- **Schedule 5** includes preparations of certain Controlled Drugs (such as codeine, pholcodine p. 188 or morphine) which due to their low strength, are exempt from virtually all Controlled Drug requirements other than retention of invoices for two years. Since the Responsible

Pharmacist Regulations were published in 2008, standing operation procedures for the management of Controlled Drugs, are required in registered pharmacies.

The Health Act 2006 introduced the concept of the 'accountable officer' with responsibility for the management of Controlled Drugs and related governance issues in their organisation. Most recently, in 2013 The Controlled Drugs (Supervision of Management and Use) Regulations were published to ensure good governance concerning the safe management and use of Controlled Drugs in England and Scotland.

## Prescriptions

Preparations in Schedules 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 (and subsequent amendments) are identified throughout the *BNF* and *BNF for children* using the following symbols:

(CD1)	for preparations in Schedule 1
(CD2)	for preparations in Schedule 2
(CD3)	for preparations in Schedule 3
(CD4-1)	for preparations in Schedule 4 (Part I)
(CD4-2)	for preparations in Schedule 4 (Part II)
(CD5)	for preparations in Schedule 5

The principal legal requirements relating to medical prescriptions are listed below (see also Department of Health Guidance at [www.gov.uk/dh](http://www.gov.uk/dh)).

**Prescription requirements** Prescriptions for Controlled Drugs that are subject to prescription requirements (all preparations in Schedules 2 and 3) must be indelible, must be *signed* by the prescriber, include the *date* on which they were signed, and specify the prescriber's *address* (must be within the UK). A machine-written prescription is acceptable, but the prescriber's signature must be handwritten. Advanced electronic signatures can be accepted for Schedule 2 and 3 Controlled Drugs where the Electronic Prescribing Service (EPS) is used. All prescriptions



for Controlled Drugs that are subject to the prescription requirements must always state:

- the name and address of the patient (use of a PO Box is not acceptable);
- in the case of a preparation, the form (the dosage form e.g. tablets must be included on a Controlled Drugs prescription irrespective of whether it is implicit in the proprietary name e.g. *MST Continus*, or whether only one form is available), and, where appropriate, the strength of the preparation (when more than one strength of a preparation exists the strength required must be specified); to avoid ambiguity, where a prescription requests multiple strengths of a medicine, each strength should be prescribed separately (i.e. separate dose, total quantity, etc);
- for liquids, the total volume in millilitres (in both words and figures) of the preparation to be supplied; for dosage units (tablets, capsules, ampoules), state the total number (in both words and figures) of dosage units to be supplied (e.g. 10 tablets [of 10 mg] rather than 100 mg total quantity);
- the dose, which must be clearly defined (i.e. the instruction 'one as directed' constitutes a dose but 'as directed' does not); it is not necessary that the dose is stated in both words and figures;
- the words 'for dental treatment only' if issued by a dentist.

A pharmacist is **not** allowed to dispense a Controlled Drug unless all the information required by law is given on the prescription. In the case of a prescription for a Controlled Drug in Schedule 2 or 3, a pharmacist can amend the prescription *if* it specifies the total quantity only in words or in figures or if it contains minor typographical errors, provided that such amendments are indelible and clearly attributable to the pharmacist (e.g. name, date, signature and GPhC registration number). The prescription should be marked with the date of supply at the time the Controlled Drug supply is made.

The Department of Health and the Scottish Government have issued a strong recommendation that the maximum quantity of Schedule 2, 3 or 4 Controlled Drugs prescribed should not exceed 30 days; exceptionally, to cover a justifiable clinical need and after consideration of any risk, a prescription can be issued for a longer period, but the reasons for the decision should be recorded on the patient's notes.

A prescription for a Controlled Drug in Schedules 2, 3, or 4 is valid for 28 days from the date stated thereon (the prescriber may forward-date the prescription; the start date may also be specified in the body of the prescription). Schedule 5 prescriptions are valid for 6 months from the appropriate date.

Medicines that are not Controlled Drugs should not be prescribed on the same form as a Schedule 2 or 3 Controlled Drug.

See sample prescription:

Pharmacy Stamp		Age 1yr 3mths	Title, Forename, Surname & Address Master Peter Patient
D.O.B 2/4/2010		Flat 1 50 Stanhope Street Newtown TE22 1ST	
Please don't stamp over age box			
Number of days' treatment N.B. Ensure dose is stated			
Endorsements		Diamorphine 10mg injection 6mg daily by subcutaneous infusion over 24 hours Supply 6(six) ampoules [No more items on this prescription]	
Signature and date		Date 02/07/11	
For dispenser No. of Prescrip. on form		Anyborough Health Authority Dr D O Good 345543 7 High Street Anytown KB1 CD2 Tel: 0111 222 333	
NHS		FP10NC0105	

**Instalments and repeatable prescriptions** Prescriptions for Schedule 2 or 3 Controlled Drugs can be dispensed by instalments. An instalment prescription must have an instalment direction including both the dose and the instalment amount specified separately on the prescription, and it must also state the interval between each time the medicine can be supplied.

The first instalment must be dispensed within 28 days of the appropriate day (i.e. date of signing unless the prescriber indicates a date before which the Controlled Drug should not be dispensed) and the remainder should be dispensed in accordance with the instructions on the prescription. The prescription must be marked with the date of each supply. The instalment direction is a legal requirement and needs to be complied with, however, for certain situations (e.g. if a pharmacy is closed on the day an instalment is due) the Home Office has approved specific wording which provides pharmacists some flexibility for supply. For details, see Medicines, Ethics and Practice, London, Pharmaceutical Press (always consult latest edition) or see Home Office approved wording for instalment prescribing (Circular 027/2015), available at [www.gov.uk/](http://www.gov.uk/).

Repeatable prescriptions are prescriptions which contain a direction that they can be dispensed more than once (e.g. repeat  $\times$  3). Only Schedule 4 and 5 Controlled Drugs are permitted on repeatable prescriptions.

**Private prescriptions** Private prescriptions for Controlled Drugs in Schedules 2 and 3 must be written on specially designated forms which are provided by local NHS England area teams in England (form FP10PCD), local NHS Health Boards in Scotland (form PPCD) and Wales (form W10PCD); in addition, prescriptions must specify the *prescriber's identification number* (or a NHS prescriber code in Scotland).

Prescriptions to be supplied by a pharmacist in hospital are exempt from the requirements for private prescriptions.

## Dependence and misuse

The most common drugs of addiction are **crack cocaine** and **opioids**, particularly **diamorphine hydrochloride p. 277 (heroin)**. For arrangements for prescribing of diamorphine hydrochloride, dipipanone, or cocaine for addicts, see *Prescribing of diamorphine (heroin), dipipanone, and cocaine for addicts* below.

Along with traditional stimulants, such as amphetamine and cocaine, there has been an emerging use of methamphetamine and a range of psychoactive substances with stimulant, depressant or hallucinogenic properties such as lysergide (lysergic acid diethylamide, LSD), ketamine or gamma-hydroxybutyrate (sodium oxybate, GHB).

**Benzodiazepines and z-drugs** (i.e. zopiclone, zolpidem tartrate) have their own potential for misuse and dependence and are often taken in combination with opiates or stimulants.

**Cannabis (Indian hemp)** is a Schedule 1 Controlled Drug with no approved medicinal use, and doctors cannot prescribe it. It remains the most frequently used illicit drug by young people and dependence can develop in around 10% of users. Cannabis use can exacerbate depression and it may cause an acute short-lived toxic psychosis which resolves with cessation, however paranoid symptoms may persist in chronic users; withdrawal symptoms can occur in some users and these can contribute to sleep problems, agitation and risk of self-harm.

## Supervised consumption

Supervised consumption is not a legal requirement under the 2001 Regulations. Nevertheless, when supervised consumption is directed on the prescription, the Department of Health recommends that any deviation from the prescriber's intended method of supply should be documented and the justification for this recorded. Individuals prescribed opioid substitution therapy can take their daily dose under the supervision of a doctor, nurse, or pharmacist during the dose stabilisation phase (usually the first 3 months of treatment), after a relapse or period of instability, or if there is a significant increase in the dose of methadone. Supervised consumption should continue (in accordance with local protocols) until the prescriber is confident that the patient is compliant with their treatment. It is good practice for pharmacists to alert the prescriber when a patient has missed consecutive daily doses.

## Prescribing drugs likely to cause dependence or misuse

The prescriber has three main responsibilities:

- To avoid creating dependence by introducing drugs to patients without sufficient reason. In this context, the proper use of the morphine-like drugs is well understood. The dangers of other Controlled Drugs are less clear because recognition of dependence is not easy and its effects, and those of withdrawal, are less obvious.
- To see that the patient does not gradually increase the dose of a drug, given for good medical reasons, to the point where dependence becomes more likely. This tendency is seen especially with hypnotics and anxiolytics. The prescriber should keep a close eye on the amount prescribed to prevent patients from accumulating stocks. A minimal amount should be prescribed in the first instance, or when seeing a patient for the first time.
- To avoid being used as an unwitting source of supply for addicts and being vigilant to methods for obtaining medicines. Methods include visiting more than one doctor, fabricating stories, and forging prescriptions.

Patients under temporary care should be given only small supplies of drugs unless they present an unequivocal letter from their own doctor. Doctors should also remember that their own patients may be attempting to collect prescriptions from other prescribers, especially in hospitals. It is sensible to reduce dosages steadily or to issue weekly or even daily prescriptions for small amounts if it is apparent that dependence is occurring.

Prescribers are responsible for the security of prescription forms once issued to them. The stealing and misuse of prescription forms could be minimised by the following precautions:

- records of serial numbers received and issued should be retained for at least three years;
- blank prescriptions should never be pre-signed;
- prescription forms should not be left unattended and should be locked in a secure drawer, cupboard, or carrying case when not in use;
- doctors', dentists' and surgery stamps should be kept in a secure location separate from the prescription forms;
- alterations are best avoided but if any are made and the prescription is to be used, best practice is for the prescriber to cross out the error, initial and date the error, then write the correct information;
- if an error made in a prescription cannot be corrected, best practice for the prescriber is to put a line through the script and write 'spoiled' on the form, or destroy the form and start writing a new prescription;
- prescribers and pharmacists dispensing drugs prone to abuse should ensure compliance with all relevant legal requirements specially when dealing with prescriptions for Controlled Drugs (see *Prescription requirements and Instalments* above);
- at the time of dispensing, prescriptions should be stamped with the pharmacy stamp and endorsed by the pharmacist or pharmacy technician with what has been supplied; where loss or theft is suspected, the police should be informed immediately.

## Travelling abroad

Prescribed drugs listed in Schedule 4 Part II (CD Anab) for self-administration and Schedule 5 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 (and subsequent amendments) are not subject to export or import licensing. A personal import/export licence is required for patients travelling abroad with Schedules 2, 3, or 4 Part I (CD Benz) and Part II (CD Anab) Controlled Drugs if, they are carrying more than 3 months' supply or are travelling for 3 calendar months or more. A Home Office licence is required for any amount of a Schedule 1 Controlled Drug imported into the UK for personal use regardless of the duration of travel. Further details can be obtained at [www.gov.uk/guidance/controlled-drugs-licences-fees-and-returns](http://www.gov.uk/guidance/controlled-drugs-licences-fees-and-returns) or from the Home Office by contacting DFLU.ie@homeoffice.gsi.gov.uk. In cases of emergency, telephone (020) 7035 6330.

Applications for obtaining a licence must be supported by a cover letter signed by the prescribing doctor or drug worker, which must confirm:

- the patient's name and address;
- the travel itinerary;
- the names of the prescribed Controlled Drug(s), doses and total amounts to be carried.

Applications for licences should be sent to the Home Office, Drugs & Firearms Licensing Unit, Fry Building, 2 Marsham Street, London, SW1P 4DF.

Alternatively, completed application forms can be emailed to DFLU.ie@homeoffice.gsi.gov.uk. A minimum of 10 days should be allowed for processing the application.

Patients travelling for less than 3 months or carrying less than 3 months supply of Controlled Drugs do not require a personal export/import licence, but are advised to carry a cover letter signed by the prescribing doctor or drug worker.



Those travelling for more than 3 months are advised to make arrangements to have their medication prescribed by a practitioner in the country they are visiting.

Doctors who want to take Controlled Drugs abroad while accompanying patients may similarly be issued with licences. Licences are not normally issued to doctors who want to take Controlled Drugs abroad solely in case a family emergency should arise.

Personal export/import licences do not have any legal status outside the UK and are issued only to comply with the Misuse of Drugs Act 2001 and to facilitate passage through UK Customs and Excise control. For clearance in the country to be visited it is necessary to approach that country's consulate in the UK.

### Notification of patients receiving structured drug treatment for substance dependence

In **England**, doctors should report cases where they are providing structured drug treatment for substance dependence to their local National Drug Treatment Monitoring System (NDTMS) Team. General information about NDTMS can be found at [www.nta.nhs.uk/ndtms.aspx](http://www.nta.nhs.uk/ndtms.aspx). Enquiries about NDTMS, and how to submit data, should initially be directed to:

EvidenceApplicationteam@phe.gov.uk

In **Scotland**, doctors should report cases to the Substance Drug Misuse Database. General information about the Scottish Drug Misuse Database can be found in [www.isdscotland.org/Health-Topics/Drugs-and-Alcohol-Misuse/Drugs-Misuse/Scottish-Drug-Misuse-Database/](http://www.isdscotland.org/Health-Topics/Drugs-and-Alcohol-Misuse/Drugs-Misuse/Scottish-Drug-Misuse-Database/). Enquiries about reporting can be directed to:

nss.isdsubstancemisuse@nhs.net

In **Northern Ireland**, the Misuse of Drugs (Notification of and Supply to Addicts) (Northern Ireland) Regulations 1973 require doctors to send particulars of persons whom they consider to be addicted to certain Controlled Drugs to the Chief Medical Officer of the Ministry of Health and Social Services. The Northern Ireland contact is:

Public Health Information & Research Branch  
Department of Health  
Annexe 2, Castle Buildings, Stormont, Belfast BT4 3SQ  
028 9052 2340  
phirb@health-ni.gov.uk

Public Health Information & Research Branch also maintains the Northern Ireland Drug Misuse Database (NIDMD) which collects detailed information on those presenting for treatment, on drugs misused and injecting behaviour; participation is not a statutory requirement.

In **Wales**, doctors should report cases where they are providing structured drug treatment for substance dependence on the Welsh National Database for Substance Misuse; enquiries should be directed to:

substancemisuse-queries@wales.nhs.uk.

### Prescribing of diamorphine (heroin), dipipanone, and cocaine for addicts

The Misuse of Drugs (Supply to Addicts) Regulations 1997 require that **only** medical practitioners who hold a special licence issued by the Home Secretary (or Scottish Government's Chief Medical Officer) may prescribe, administer, or supply diamorphine hydrochloride p. 277, dipipanone, or cocaine for *the treatment of drug addiction*. Medical prescribers, pharmacists independent prescribers, nurses independent prescribers and supplementary prescribers do not require a special licence for prescribing diamorphine hydrochloride p. 277, dipipanone, or cocaine for patients (including addicts) for relieving pain from organic disease or injury.

# Adverse reactions to drugs

## Yellow card scheme

Any drug may produce unwanted or unexpected adverse reactions. Rapid detection and recording of adverse drug reactions is of vital importance so that unrecognised hazards are identified promptly and appropriate regulatory action is taken to ensure that medicines are used safely. Healthcare professionals and coroners are urged to report suspected adverse drug reactions directly to the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) through the Yellow Card Scheme using the electronic form at [www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard). Alternatively, prepaid Yellow Cards for reporting are available from the address below and are also bound in the inside back cover of *BNF for Children*.

Send Yellow Cards to:

FREEPOST YELLOW CARD

(No other address details required).

Tel: 0800 731 6789

Suspected adverse drug reactions to any therapeutic agent should be reported, including drugs (*self-medication* as well as those *prescribed*), blood products, vaccines, radiographic contrast media, complementary and herbal products. For biosimilar medicines and vaccines, adverse reaction reports should clearly state the brand name and the batch number of the suspected medicine or vaccine.

Suspected adverse drug reactions should be reported through the Yellow Card Scheme at [www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard). Yellow Cards can be used for reporting suspected adverse drug reactions to medicines, vaccines, herbal or complementary products, whether self-medicated or prescribed. This includes suspected adverse drug reactions associated with misuse, overdose, medication errors or from use of unlicensed and off-label medicines. Yellow Cards can also be used to report medical device incidents, defective medicines, and suspected fake medicines.

### Report all suspected adverse drug reactions that are:

- **serious, medically significant or result in harm.** Serious events are fatal, life-threatening, a congenital abnormality, disabling or incapacitating, or resulting in hospitalisation;
- associated with **newer drugs and vaccines**; the most up to date list of black triangle medicines is available at: [www.mhra.gov.uk/blacktriangle](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/blacktriangle)

If in doubt whether to report a suspected adverse drug reaction, please complete a Yellow Card.

The identification and reporting of adverse reactions to drugs in children and neonates is particularly important because:

- the action of the drug and its pharmacokinetics in children (especially in the very young) may be different from that in adults;
- drugs may not have been extensively tested in children;
- many drugs are not specifically licensed for use in children and are used either 'off-label' or as unlicensed products;
- drugs may affect the way a child grows and develops or may cause delayed adverse reactions which do not occur in adults;
- suitable formulations may not be available to allow precise dosing in children or they may contain excipients that should be used with caution in children;
- the nature and course of illnesses and adverse drug reactions may differ between adults and children.

Even if reported through the British Paediatric Surveillance Unit's Orange Card Scheme, any identified suspected adverse drug reactions should also be submitted to the Yellow Card Scheme.

Spontaneous reporting is particularly valuable for recognising possible new hazards rapidly. An adverse

reaction should be reported even if it is not certain that the drug has caused it, or if the reaction is well recognised, or if other drugs have been given at the same time. Reports of overdoses (deliberate or accidental) can complicate the assessment of adverse drug reactions, but provide important information on the potential toxicity of drugs.

A freephone service is available to all parts of the UK for advice and information on suspected adverse drug reactions; contact the National Yellow Card Information Service at the MHRA on 0800 731 6789. Outside office hours a telephone-answering machine will take messages.

The following Yellow Card Centres can be contacted for further information:

### Yellow Card Centre Northwest

2nd Floor, 70 Pembroke Place, Liverpool, L69 3GF

Tel: (0151) 794 8122

### Yellow Card Centre Wales

All Wales Therapeutics and Toxicology Centre, Academic Building, University Hospital Llandough, Penlan Road, Penarth, Vale of Glamorgan, CF64 2XX  
Tel: (029) 2074 5831

### Yellow Card Centre Northern & Yorkshire

Regional Drug and Therapeutics Centre, 16/17 Framlington Place, Newcastle upon Tyne, NE2 4AB  
Tel: (0191) 213 7855

### Yellow Card Centre West Midlands

City Hospital, Dudley Road, Birmingham, B18 7QH  
Tel: (0121) 507 5672

### Yellow Card Centre Scotland

CARDS, Royal Infirmary of Edinburgh, 51 Little France Crescent, Old Dalkeith Road, Edinburgh, EH16 4SA  
Tel: (0131) 242 2919  
YCCScotland@luht.scot.nhs.uk

The MHRA's database facilitates the monitoring of adverse drug reactions. More detailed information on reporting and a list of products currently under additional monitoring can be found on the MHRA website: [www.mhra.gov.uk](http://www.mhra.gov.uk).

**MHRA Drug Safety Update** *Drug Safety Update* is a monthly newsletter from the MHRA and the Commission on Human Medicines (CHM); it is available at [www.gov.uk/drug-safety-update](http://www.gov.uk/drug-safety-update).

## Self-reporting

Patients and their carers can also report suspected adverse drug reactions to the MHRA. Reports can be submitted directly to the MHRA through the Yellow Card Scheme using the electronic form at [www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard), by telephone on 0808 100 3352, or by downloading the Yellow Card form from [www.mhra.gov.uk](http://www.mhra.gov.uk). Alternatively, patient Yellow Cards are available from pharmacies and GP surgeries. Information for patients about the Yellow Card Scheme is available in other languages at [www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard).

## Prescription-event monitoring

In addition to the MHRA's Yellow Card Scheme, an independent scheme monitors the safety of new medicines using a different approach. The Drug Safety Research Unit identifies patients who have been prescribed selected new medicines and collects data on clinical events in these patients. The data are submitted on a voluntary basis by general practitioners on green forms. More information about the scheme and the Unit's educational material is available from [www.dsru.org](http://www.dsru.org).

## Newer drugs and vaccines

Only limited information is available from clinical trials on the safety of new medicines. Further understanding about

the safety of medicines depends on the availability of information from routine clinical practice. The black triangle symbol identifies newly licensed medicines that require additional monitoring by the European Medicines Agency. Such medicines include new active substances, biosimilar medicines, and medicines that the European Medicines Agency consider require additional monitoring. The black triangle symbol also appears in the Patient Information Leaflets for relevant medicines, with a brief explanation of what it means. Products usually retain a black triangle for 5 years, but this can be extended if required.

Medication errors

Adverse drug reactions where harm occurs as a result of a medication error are reportable as a Yellow Card or through the local risk management systems into the National Reporting and Learning System (NRLS). If reported to the NRLS, these will be shared with the MHRA. If the NRLS is not available and harm occurs, report using a Yellow Card.

Adverse reactions to medical devices

Suspected adverse reactions to medical devices including dental or surgical materials, intra-uterine devices, and contact lens fluids should be reported. Information on reporting these can be found at: [www.mhra.gov.uk](http://www.mhra.gov.uk).

Side-effects in the BNF for Children

The *BNF for Children* includes clinically relevant side-effects for most drugs; an exhaustive list is not included for drugs that are used by specialists (e.g. cytotoxic drugs and drugs used in anaesthesia). Where causality has not been established, side-effects in the manufacturers' literature may be omitted from the *BNF for Children*. Recognising that hypersensitivity reactions (including anaphylactic and anaphylactoid reactions) can occur with virtually all drugs, this effect is not generally listed, unless the drug carries an increased risk of such reactions or specific management advice is provided by the manufacturer. Administration site reactions have been omitted from the *BNF for Children* (e.g. pain at injection site). The *BNF for Children* also omits effects that are likely to have little clinical consequence (e.g. transient increase in liver enzymes). Drugs that are applied locally or topically carry a theoretical or low risk of systemic absorption and therefore systemic side-effects for these drugs are not listed in the *BNF for Children* unless they are associated with a high risk to patient safety. Infections are a known complication of treatment with drugs that affect the immune system (e.g. corticosteroids or immunosuppressants); this side-effect is listed in the *BNF for Children* as 'increased risk of infection'. Symptoms of drug withdrawal reactions are not individually listed, but are collectively termed 'withdrawal syndrome'.

Description of the frequency of side-effects	
Very common	greater than 1 in 10
Common	1 in 100 to 1 in 10
Uncommon [formerly 'less commonly' in BNF publications]	1 in 1000 to 1 in 100
Rare	1 in 10 000 to 1 in 1000
Very rare	less than 1 in 10 000
Frequency not known	frequency is not defined by product literature or the side-effect has been reported from post-marketing surveillance data

For consistency, the terms used to describe side-effects are standardised using a defined vocabulary across all of the

drug monographs in the *BNF for Children* (e.g. postural hypotension is used for the term orthostatic hypotension).

Special problems

**Symptoms** Children may be poor at expressing the symptoms of an adverse drug reaction and parental opinion may be required.

**Delayed drug effects** Some reactions (e.g. cancers and effects on development) may become manifest months or years after exposure. Any suspicion of such an association should be reported directly to the MHRA through the Yellow Card Scheme.

**Congenital abnormalities** When an infant is born with a congenital abnormality or there is a malformed aborted fetus doctors are asked to consider whether this might be an adverse reaction to a drug and to report all drugs (including self-medication) taken during pregnancy.

Prevention of adverse reactions

Adverse reactions may be prevented as follows:

- never use any drug unless there is a good indication. If the patient is pregnant do not use a drug unless the need for it is imperative;
- allergy and idiosyncrasy are important causes of adverse drug reactions. Ask if the child has had previous reactions to the drug or formulation;
- prescribe as few drugs as possible and give very clear instructions to the child, parent, or carer;
- whenever possible use a familiar drug; with a new drug be particularly alert for adverse reactions or unexpected events;
- consider if excipients (e.g. colouring agents) may be contributing to the adverse reaction. If the reaction is minor, a trial of an alternative formulation of the same drug may be considered before abandoning the drug;
- obtain a full drug history including asking if the child is already taking other drugs *including over-the-counter medicines*; interactions may occur;
- age and hepatic or renal disease may alter the metabolism or excretion of drugs, particularly in neonates, which can affect the potential for adverse effects. Genetic factors may also be responsible for variations in metabolism, and therefore for the adverse effects of the drug;
- warn the child, parent, or carer if serious adverse reactions are liable to occur.

Drug allergy (suspected or confirmed)

Suspected drug allergy is any reaction caused by a drug with clinical features compatible with an immunological mechanism. All drugs have the potential to cause adverse drug reactions, but not all of these are allergic in nature. A reaction is more likely to be caused by drug allergy if:

- The reaction occurred while the child was being treated with the drug, or
- The drug is known to cause this pattern of reaction, or
- The child has had a similar reaction to the same drug or drug-class previously.

A suspected reaction is less likely to be caused by a drug allergy if there is a possible non-drug cause or if there are only gastro-intestinal symptoms present. The following signs, allergic patterns and timing of onset can be used to help decide whether to suspect drug allergy: **Immediate, rapidly-evolving reactions** (onset usually less than 1 hour after drug exposure)

- Anaphylaxis, with erythema, urticaria or angioedema, and hypotension and/or bronchospasm. See also Antihistamines, allergen immunotherapy and allergic emergencies p. 171
- Urticaria or angioedema without systemic features

- Exacerbation of asthma e.g. with non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)


*Non-immediate reactions, **without** systemic involvement* (onset usually 6–10 days after first drug exposure or 3 days after second exposure)

- Cutaneous reactions, e.g. widespread red macules and/or papules, or, fixed drug eruption (localised inflamed skin)

*Non-immediate reactions, **with** systemic involvement* (onset may be variable, usually 3 days to 6 weeks after first drug exposure, depending on features, or 3 days after second exposure)

- Cutaneous reactions with systemic features, e.g. drug reaction with eosinophilia and systemic signs (DRESS) or drug hypersensitivity syndrome (DHS), characterised by widespread red macules, papules or erythroderma, fever, lymphadenopathy, liver dysfunction or eosinophilia
- Toxic epidermal necrolysis or Stevens–Johnson syndrome
- Acute generalised exanthematous pustulosis (AGEP)

**EvGr** Suspected drug allergy information should be clearly and accurately documented in clinical notes and prescriptions, and shared among all healthcare professionals. Children and parents or carers should be given information about which drugs and drug-classes to avoid and encouraged to share the drug allergy status.

If a drug allergy is suspected, consider stopping the suspected drug and advising the child and parent or carer to avoid this drug in future. Symptoms of the acute reaction should be treated, in hospital if severe. Children presenting with a suspected anaphylactic reaction, or a severe or non-immediate cutaneous reaction, should be referred to a specialist drug allergy service. Children presenting with a suspected drug allergic reaction or anaphylaxis to NSAIDs, and local and general anaesthetics may also need to be referred to a specialist drug allergy service, e.g. in cases of anaphylactoid reactions or to determine future treatment options. Children presenting with a suspected drug allergic reaction or anaphylaxis associated with beta-lactam antibiotics should be referred to a specialist drug allergy service if their disease or condition can only be treated by a beta-lactam antibiotic or they are likely to need beta-lactam antibiotics frequently in the future (e.g. immunodeficient children).  For further information see Drug allergy: diagnosis and management. NICE Clinical Guideline 183 (September 2014) [www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg183](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg183).

## Defective medicines

During the manufacture or distribution of a medicine an error or accident may occur whereby the finished product does not conform to its specification. While such a defect may impair the therapeutic effect of the product and could adversely affect the health of a patient, it should **not** be confused with an Adverse Drug Reaction where the product conforms to its specification.

The Defective Medicines Report Centre assists with the investigation of problems arising from licensed medicinal products thought to be defective and co-ordinates any necessary protective action. Reports on suspect defective medicinal products should include the brand or the non-proprietary name, the name of the manufacturer or supplier, the strength and dosage form of the product, the product licence number, the batch number or numbers of the product, the nature of the defect, and an account of any action already taken in consequence. The Centre can be contacted at:

The Defective Medicines Report Centre  
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency,  
151 Buckingham Palace Road, London, SW1W 9SZ  
Tel: (020) 3080 6574  
[dmrc@mhra.gsi.gov.uk](mailto:dmrc@mhra.gsi.gov.uk)

# Guidance on intravenous infusions

## Intravenous infusions for neonatal intensive care

**Intravenous policy** A local policy on the dilution of drugs with intravenous fluids should be drawn up by a multi-disciplinary team and issued as a document to the members of staff concerned.

Centralised additive services are provided in a number of hospital pharmacy departments and should be used in preference to making additions on wards.

The information that follows should be read in conjunction with local policy documents.

## Guidelines

- Drugs should only be diluted with infusion fluid when constant plasma concentrations are needed or when the administration of a more concentrated solution would be harmful.
- In general, only one drug should be mixed with an infusion fluid in a syringe and the components should be compatible. Ready-prepared solutions should be used whenever possible. Drugs should not normally be added to blood products, mannitol, or sodium bicarbonate. Only specially formulated additives should be used with fat emulsions or amino-acid solutions.
- Solutions should be thoroughly mixed by shaking and checked for absence of particulate matter before use.
- Strict asepsis should be maintained throughout and in general the giving set should not be used for more than 24 hours (for drug admixtures).
- The infusion syringe should be labelled with the neonate's name and hospital number, the name and quantity of drug, the infusion fluid, and the expiry date and time. If a problem occurs during administration, containers should be retained for a period after use in case they are needed for investigation.
- Administration using a suitable motorised syringe driver is advocated for preparations where strict control over administration is required.
- It is good practice to examine intravenous infusions from time to time while they are running. If cloudiness, crystallisation, change of colour, or any other sign of interaction or contamination is observed the infusion should be discontinued.

## Problems

**Microbial contamination** The accidental entry and subsequent growth of micro-organisms converts the infusion fluid pathway into a potential vehicle for infection with micro-organisms, particularly species of *Candida*, *Enterobacter*, and *Klebsiella*. Ready-prepared infusions containing the additional drugs, or infusions prepared by an additive service (when available) should therefore be used in preference to making extemporaneous additions to infusion containers on wards etc. However, when this is necessary strict aseptic procedure should be followed.

**Incompatibility** Physical and chemical incompatibilities may occur with loss of potency, increase in toxicity, or other adverse effect. The solutions may become opalescent or precipitation may occur, but in many instances there is no visual indication of incompatibility. Interaction may take place at any point in the infusion fluid pathway, and the potential for incompatibility is increased when more than one substance is added to the infusion fluid.

**Common incompatibilities** Precipitation reactions are numerous and varied and may occur as a result of pH, concentration changes, 'salting-out' effects, complexation or other chemical changes. Precipitation or other particle

formation must be avoided since, apart from lack of control of dosage on administration, it may initiate or exacerbate adverse effects. This is particularly important in the case of drugs which have been implicated in either thrombophlebitis (e.g. diazepam) or in skin sloughing or necrosis caused by extravasation (e.g. sodium bicarbonate and parenteral nutrition). It is also especially important to effect solution of colloidal drugs and to prevent their subsequent precipitation in order to avoid a pyrogenic reaction (e.g. amphotericin). It is considered undesirable to mix beta-lactam antibiotics, such as semi-synthetic penicillins and cephalosporins, with proteinaceous materials on the grounds that immunogenic and allergenic conjugates could be formed.

A number of preparations undergo significant loss of potency when added singly or in combination to large volume infusions. Examples include ampicillin in infusions that contain glucose or lactates.

**Blood** Because of the large number of incompatibilities, drugs should not be added to blood and blood products for infusion purposes. Examples of incompatibility with blood include hypertonic mannitol solutions (irreversible crenation of red cells), dextrans (rouleaux formation and interference with cross-matching), glucose (clumping of red cells), and oxytocin (inactivated).

If the giving set is not changed after the administration of blood, but used for other infusion fluids, a fibrin clot may form which, apart from blocking the set, increases the likelihood of microbial growth.

**Intravenous fat emulsion** These may break down with coalescence of fat globules and separation of phases when additions such as antibacterials or electrolytes are made, thus increasing the possibility of embolism. Only specially formulated products such as *Vitlipid N*® may be added to appropriate intravenous fat emulsions.

**Other infusions** Infusions that frequently give rise to incompatibility include amino acids, mannitol, and sodium bicarbonate.

## Method

Ready-prepared infusions should be used whenever available. When dilution of drugs is required to be made extemporaneously, any product reconstitution instructions such as those relating to concentration, vehicle, mixing, and handling precautions should be strictly followed using an aseptic technique throughout. Once the product has been reconstituted, further dilution with the infusion fluid should be made immediately in order to minimise microbial contamination and, with certain products, to prevent degradation or other formulation change which may occur; e.g. reconstituted ampicillin injection degrades rapidly on standing, and also may form polymers which could cause sensitivity reactions.

It is also important in certain instances that an infusion fluid of specific pH be used (e.g. **furosemide** injection requires dilution in infusions of pH greater than 5.5).

When drug dilutions are made it is important to mix thoroughly; additions should not be made to an infusion container that has been connected to a giving set, as mixing is hampered. If the solutions are not thoroughly mixed, a concentrated layer of the drug may form owing to differences in density. **Potassium chloride** is particularly prone to this 'layering' effect when added without adequate mixing to infusions; if such a mixture is administered it may have a serious effect on the heart.

A time limit between dilution and completion of administration must be imposed for certain admixtures to guarantee satisfactory drug potency and compatibility. For admixtures in which degradation occurs without the

formation of toxic substances, an acceptable limit is the time taken for 10% decomposition of the drug. When toxic substances are produced stricter limits may be imposed. Because of the risk of microbial contamination a maximum time limit of 24 hours may be appropriate for additions made elsewhere than in hospital pharmacies offering central additive service. Certain injections must be protected from light during continuous infusion to minimise oxidation, e.g. sodium nitroprusside.

### Drugs given by continuous intravenous infusion to neonates

The information provided in *BNF for Children* covers dilution with *Glucose intravenous infusion* 5% and 10% and *Sodium chloride intravenous infusion* 0.9%. Compatibility with glucose 5% and with sodium chloride 0.9% indicates compatibility with *Sodium chloride and glucose intravenous infusion*. Infusion of a large volume of hypotonic solution should be avoided, therefore care should be taken if water for injections is used.

## Prescribing in hepatic impairment

### Overview

Children have a large reserve of hepatic metabolic capacity and modification of the choice and dosage of drugs is usually unnecessary even in apparently severe liver disease. However, special consideration is required in the following situations:

- liver failure characterised by severe derangement of liver enzymes and profound jaundice; the use of sedative drugs, opioids, and drugs such as diuretics and amphotericin p. 373 which produce hypokalaemia may precipitate hepatic encephalopathy;
- impaired coagulation, which can affect response to oral anticoagulants;
- in cholestatic jaundice elimination may be impaired of drugs such as fusidic acid p. 357 and rifampicin p. 364 which are excreted in the bile;

- in hypoproteinaemia, the effect of highly protein-bound drugs such as phenytoin p. 205, prednisolone p. 442, warfarin sodium p. 97, and benzodiazepines may be increased;
- use of hepatotoxic drugs is more likely to cause toxicity in children with liver disease; such drugs should be avoided if possible;
- in neonates, particularly preterm neonates, and also in infants metabolic pathways may differ from older children and adults because liver enzyme pathways may be immature.

Where care is needed when prescribing in hepatic impairment, this is indicated under the relevant drug in *BNF for Children*.

## Prescribing in renal impairment

### Issues encountered in renal impairment

The use of drugs in children with reduced renal function can give rise to problems for several reasons:

- reduced renal excretion of a drug or its metabolites may produce toxicity;
- sensitivity to some drugs is increased even if elimination is unimpaired;
- many side-effects are tolerated poorly by children with renal impairment;
- some drugs are not effective when renal function is reduced;
- neonates, particularly preterm, may have immature renal function.

Many of these problems can be avoided by reducing the dose or by using alternative drugs.

### Principles of dose adjustment in renal impairment

The level of renal function below which the dose of a drug must be reduced depends on the proportion of the drug eliminated by renal excretion and its toxicity.

For many drugs with only minor or no dose-related side-effects, very precise modification of the dose regimen is unnecessary and a simple scheme for dose reduction is sufficient.

For more toxic drugs with a small safety margin dose regimens based on glomerular filtration rate should be used.

When both efficacy and toxicity are closely related to plasma-drug concentration, recommended regimens should be regarded only as a guide to initial treatment; subsequent doses must be adjusted according to clinical response and plasma-drug concentration.

The total daily maintenance dose of a drug can be reduced either by reducing the size of the individual doses or by increasing the interval between doses. For some drugs, although the size of the maintenance dose is reduced it is important to give a loading dose if an immediate effect is required. This is because it takes about five times the half-life of the drug to achieve steady-state plasma concentration. Because the plasma half-life of drugs excreted by the kidney is prolonged in renal impairment, it can take many doses at the reduced dosage to achieve a therapeutic plasma concentration. The loading dose should usually be the same as the initial dose for a child with normal renal function.

**Nephrotoxic drugs** should, if possible, be avoided in children with renal disease because the consequences of nephrotoxicity are likely to be more serious when the renal reserve is already reduced.

Glomerular filtration rate is low at birth and increases rapidly during the first 6 months. Thereafter, glomerular filtration rate increases gradually to reach adult levels by 1–2 years of age, when standardised to a typical adult body surface area (1.73 m<sup>2</sup>). In the first weeks after birth, serum creatinine falls; a single measure of serum creatinine provides only a



crude estimate of renal function and observing the change over days is of more use. In the neonate, a sustained rise in serum creatinine or a lack of the expected postnatal decline, is indicative of a reduced glomerular filtration rate.

Dose recommendations are based on the severity of renal impairment. This is expressed in terms of **glomerular filtration rate** (mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>).

The following equations provide a guide to glomerular filtration rate.

Child over 1 year:

Estimated glomerular filtration rate (mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>) =  
 $40 \times \text{height (cm)} / \text{serum creatinine (micromol/litre)}$

Neonate:

Estimated glomerular filtration rate (mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>) =  
 $30 \times \text{height (cm)} / \text{serum creatinine (micromol/litre)}$

The values used in these formulas may differ according to locality or laboratory.

The serum-creatinine concentration is sometimes used as a measure of renal function but is only a **rough guide** even when corrected for age, weight, and sex.

**Important** The information on dose adjustment in *BNF for Children* is expressed in terms of estimated glomerular filtration rate. Renal function in adults is increasingly being reported as estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) normalised to a body surface area of 1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; however, eGFR is derived from the MDRD (Modification of Diet in Renal Disease) formula which is not validated for use in children. eGFR derived from the MDRD formula should **not** be used to adjust drug doses in children with renal impairment.

In *BNF for Children*, values for measures of renal function are included where possible. However, where such values are not available, the *BNF for Children* reflects the terms used in the published information.

### Degrees of renal impairment defined using estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR)

Chronic kidney disease in adults: UK guidelines for identification, management and referral (March 2006) defines renal function as follows:	
Degree of impairment	eGFR <sup>1</sup> mL/minute/1.73 m <sup>2</sup>
Normal: Stage 1	More than 90 (with other evidence of kidney damage)
Mild: Stage 2	60–89 (with other evidence of kidney damage)
Moderate <sup>2</sup> : Stage 3	30–59
Severe: Stage 4	15–29
Established renal failure: Stage 5	Less than 15
1. Estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) derived from the Modification of Diet in Renal Disease (MDRD) formula for use in patients over 18 years 2. NICE clinical guideline 73 (September 2008)–Chronic kidney disease: Stage 3A eGFR = 45–59, Stage 3B eGFR = 30–44	

Drug prescribing should be kept to the minimum in all children with severe renal disease.

If even mild renal impairment is considered likely on clinical grounds, renal function should be checked before prescribing **any** drug which requires dose modification.

Where care is needed when prescribing in renal impairment, this is indicated under the relevant drug in *BNF for Children*.

### Dialysis

For prescribing in children on renal replacement therapy consult specialist literature.



## Prescribing in pregnancy

### Overview

Drugs can have harmful effects on the embryo or fetus at any time during pregnancy. It is important to bear this in mind when prescribing for a woman of *childbearing age* or for men *trying to father* a child.

During the *first trimester* drugs can produce congenital malformations (teratogenesis), and the period of greatest risk is from the third to the eleventh week of pregnancy. During the *second* and *third trimesters* drugs can affect the growth or functional development of the fetus, or they can have toxic effects on fetal tissues.

Drugs given shortly before term or during labour can have adverse effects on labour or on the neonate after delivery. Not all the damaging effects of intra-uterine exposure to drugs are obvious at birth, some may only manifest later in life. Such late-onset effects include malignancy, e.g. adenocarcinoma of the vagina after puberty in females exposed to diethylstilbestrol in the womb, and adverse effects on intellectual, social, and functional development. The *BNF* and *BNF for Children* identifies drugs which:

- may have harmful effects in pregnancy and indicates the trimester of risk
- are not known to be harmful in pregnancy

The information is based on human data, but information from *animal* studies has been included for some drugs when its omission might be misleading. Maternal drug doses may require adjustment during pregnancy due to changes in

maternal physiology but this is beyond the scope of the *BNF* and *BNF for Children*.

Where care is needed when prescribing in pregnancy, this is indicated under the relevant drug in the *BNF* and *BNF for Children*.

### Important

Drugs should be prescribed in pregnancy only if the expected benefit to the mother is thought to be greater than the risk to the fetus, and all drugs should be avoided if possible during the first trimester. Drugs which have been extensively used in pregnancy and appear to be usually safe should be prescribed in preference to new or untried drugs; and the smallest effective dose should be used. Few drugs have been shown conclusively to be teratogenic in humans, but no drug is safe beyond all doubt in early pregnancy. Screening procedures are available when there is a known risk of certain defects.

**Absence of information does not imply safety.** It should be noted that the *BNF* and *BNF for Children* provide independent advice and may not always agree with the product literature.

Information on drugs and pregnancy is also available from the UK Teratology Information Service [www.uktis.org](http://www.uktis.org). Tel: 0344 892 0909 (09.00–17.00 Monday to Friday; urgent enquiries only outside these hours).

## Prescribing in breast-feeding

### Overview

Breast-feeding is beneficial; the immunological and nutritional value of breast milk to the infant is greater than that of formula feeds.

Although there is concern that drugs taken by the mother might affect the infant, there is very little information on this. In the absence of evidence of an effect, the potential for harm to the infant can be inferred from:

- the amount of drug or active metabolite of the drug delivered to the infant (dependent on the pharmacokinetic characteristics of the drug in the mother);
- the efficiency of absorption, distribution, and elimination of the drug by the infant (infant pharmacokinetics);
- the nature of the effect of the drug on the infant (pharmacodynamic properties of the drug in the infant).

Most medicines given to a mother cause no harm to breast-fed infants and there are few contra-indications to breast-feeding when maternal medicines are necessary. However, administration of some drugs to nursing mothers can harm the infant. In the first week of life, some such as preterm or jaundiced infants are at a slightly higher risk of toxicity.

Toxicity to the infant can occur if the drug enters the milk in pharmacologically significant quantities. The concentration in milk of some drugs (e.g. fluvastatin p. 132) may exceed the concentration in maternal plasma so that therapeutic doses in the mother can cause toxicity to the infant. Some drugs inhibit the infant's sucking reflex (e.g. phenobarbital p. 216) while others can affect lactation (e.g. bromocriptine). Drugs in breast milk may, at least theoretically, cause

hypersensitivity in the infant even when concentration is too low for a pharmacological effect. *BNF for Children* identifies drugs:

- which should be used with caution or which are contra-indicated in breast-feeding for the reasons given above;
- which, on present evidence, may be given to the mother during breast-feeding, because they appear in milk in amounts which are too small to be harmful to the infant;
- which are not known to be harmful to the infant although they are present in milk in significant amounts.

Where care is needed when prescribing in breast-feeding, this is indicated under the relevant drug in the *BNF for Children*.

### Important

For many drugs insufficient evidence is available to provide guidance and it is advisable to administer only essential drugs to a mother during breast-feeding. Because of the inadequacy of information on drugs in breast-feeding, absence of information does not imply safety.

## Prescribing in palliative care

### Overview

Palliative care is the active and total approach to the care of children and young adults with life-limiting and life-threatening conditions, embracing physical, emotional, social, and spiritual elements of their care. It focuses on enhancing the quality of life for the child and support for their family, and includes the management of distressing symptoms, provision of respite, and care following death and bereavement.

Effective palliative care requires a broad multidisciplinary approach that includes the whole family, and ideally should start as soon as possible after diagnosis or recognition of a life-threatening condition.

**Drug treatment** The number of drugs should be as few as possible. Oral medication is usually appropriate unless there is severe nausea and vomiting, dysphagia, weakness, or coma, when parenteral medication may be necessary. For further information on the use of medicines in paediatric palliative care, see the Association for Paediatric Palliative Medicine (APPM) Master Formulary available at [www.appm.org.uk/10.html](http://www.appm.org.uk/10.html).

### Pain

Pain management in palliative care is focused on achieving control of pain by administering the right drug in the right dose at the right time. Analgesics can be divided into three broad classes: non-opioid (paracetamol p. 271, NSAID), opioid (e.g. codeine phosphate p. 276 'weak', morphine p. 282 'strong') and adjuvant (e.g. antidepressants, antiepileptics). Drugs from the different classes are used alone or in combination according to the type of pain and response to treatment. Analgesics are more effective in preventing pain than in the relief of established pain; it is important that they are given regularly. Paracetamol or a NSAID given regularly will often be sufficient to manage mild pain. If non-opioid analgesics alone are not sufficient, then an opioid analgesic alone or in combination with a non-opioid analgesic at an adequate dosage, may be helpful in the control of moderate pain. Codeine phosphate or tramadol hydrochloride p. 287 can be considered for moderate pain. If these preparations do not control the pain then morphine is the most useful opioid analgesic. Alternatives to morphine, including transdermal buprenorphine p. 274, transdermal fentanyl p. 279, hydromorphone hydrochloride p. 282, methadone hydrochloride p. 299, or oxycodone hydrochloride p. 284, should be initiated by those with experience in palliative care. Initiation of an opioid analgesic should not be delayed by concern over a theoretical likelihood of psychological dependence (addiction).

**Bone metastases** In addition to the above approach, radiotherapy and bisphosphonates may be useful for pain due to bone metastases.

**Neuropathic pain** Patients with neuropathic pain may benefit from a trial of a tricyclic antidepressant, most commonly amitriptyline hydrochloride p. 238, for several weeks. An antiepileptic such as carbamazepine p. 196, may be added or substituted if pain persists. Ketamine p. 820 is sometimes used under specialist supervision for neuropathic pain that responds poorly to opioid analgesics. Pain due to nerve compression may be reduced by a corticosteroid such as dexamethasone p. 439, which reduces oedema around the tumour, thus reducing compression. Nerve blocks can be considered when pain is localised to a specific area. Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) may also help.

### Pain management with opioids

**Oral route** Treatment with morphine p. 282 is given by mouth as immediate-release or modified-release preparations. During the titration phase the initial dose is based on the previous medication used, the severity of the pain, and other factors such as presence of renal impairment or frailty. The dose is given either as an immediate-release preparation 4-hourly (for starting doses, see Morphine), or as a 12-hourly modified-release preparation, in addition to rescue doses. If replacing a weaker opioid analgesic (such as codeine phosphate), starting doses are usually higher. If pain occurs between regular doses of morphine ('breakthrough pain'), an additional dose ('rescue dose') of immediate-release morphine should be given. An additional dose should also be given 30 minutes before an activity that causes pain, such as wound dressing. The standard dose of a strong opioid for breakthrough pain is usually one-tenth to one-sixth of the regular 24-hour dose, repeated every 2–4 hours as required (up to hourly may be needed if pain is severe or in the last days of life). Review pain management if rescue analgesic is required frequently (twice daily or more). Each child should be assessed on an individual basis. Formulations of fentanyl p. 279 that are administered nasally, buccally or sublingually are not licensed for use in children; their usefulness in children is also limited by dose availability.

Children often require a higher dose of morphine in proportion to their body-weight compared to adults. Children are more susceptible to certain adverse effects of opioids such as urinary retention (which can be eased by bethanechol chloride), and opioid-induced pruritus. When adjusting the dose of morphine, the number of rescue doses required and the response to them should be taken into account; increments of morphine should not exceed one-third to one-half of the total daily dose every 24 hours. Thereafter, the dose should be adjusted with careful assessment of the pain, and the use of adjuvant analgesics should also be considered. Upward titration of the dose of morphine stops when either the pain is relieved or unacceptable adverse effects occur, after which it is necessary to consider alternative measures.

Once their pain is controlled, children started on 4-hourly immediate-release morphine can be transferred to the same total 24-hour dose of morphine given as the modified-release preparation for 12-hourly or 24-hourly administration. The first dose of the modified-release preparation is given with, or within 4 hours of the last dose of the immediate-release preparation. For preparations suitable for 12-hourly or 24-hourly administration see modified-release preparations under morphine. Increments should be made to the dose, not to the frequency of administration. The patient must be monitored closely for efficacy and side-effects, particularly constipation, and nausea and vomiting. A suitable laxative should be prescribed routinely.

Oxycodone hydrochloride p. 284 can be used in children who require an opioid but cannot tolerate morphine. If the child is already receiving an opioid, oxycodone hydrochloride should be started at a dose equivalent to the current analgesic. Oxycodone hydrochloride immediate-release preparations can be given for breakthrough pain.

**Equivalent doses of opioid analgesics**

This table is only an **approximate** guide (doses may not correspond with those given in clinical practice); children should be carefully monitored after any change in medication and dose titration may be required.

Analgesic/Route	Dose
Codeine: PO	100 mg
Diamorphine: IM, IV, SC	3 mg
Dihydrocodeine: PO	100 mg
Hydromorphone: PO	2 mg
Morphine: PO	10 mg
Morphine: IM, IV, SC	5 mg
Oxycodone: PO	6.6 mg
Tramadol: PO	100 mg

PO = by mouth; IM = intramuscular; IV = intravenous; SC = subcutaneous

**Parenteral route** Diamorphine hydrochloride p. 277 is preferred for injection because, being more soluble, it can be given in a smaller volume. The equivalent subcutaneous dose is approximately a third of the oral dose of morphine p. 282. Subcutaneous infusion of diamorphine hydrochloride via a continuous infusion device can be useful (for details, see Continuous Subcutaneous Infusions). If the child can resume taking medicines by mouth, then oral morphine may be substituted for subcutaneous infusion of diamorphine hydrochloride. See the table *Approximate Equivalent doses of Morphine and Diamorphine*.

**Rectal route** Morphine is also available for rectal administration as suppositories.

**Transdermal route** Transdermal preparations of fentanyl p. 279 and buprenorphine p. 274 [not licensed for use in children] are available; they are not suitable for acute pain or in those children whose analgesic requirements are changing rapidly because the long time to steady state prevents rapid titration of the dose. Prescribers should ensure that they are familiar with the correct use of transdermal preparations (see under fentanyl p. 279) because inappropriate use has caused fatalities.

The following 24-hour oral doses of morphine are considered to be *approximately* equivalent to the buprenorphine and fentanyl patches shown, however when switching due to possible opioid-induced hyperalgesia, reduce the calculated equivalent dose of the new opioid by one-quarter to one-half.

**Buprenorphine patches are approximately equivalent to the following 24-hour doses of oral morphine**

morphine salt 12 mg daily	≡ buprenorphine '5' patch
morphine salt 24 mg daily	≡ buprenorphine '10' patch
morphine salt 36 mg daily	≡ buprenorphine '15' patch
morphine salt 48 mg daily	≡ buprenorphine '20' patch
morphine salt 84 mg daily	≡ buprenorphine '35' patch
morphine salt 126 mg daily	≡ buprenorphine '52.5' patch
morphine salt 168 mg daily	≡ buprenorphine '70' patch

Formulations of transdermal patches are available as 72-hourly, 96-hourly and 7-day patches, for further information see buprenorphine in BNF. Conversion ratios vary and these figures are a guide only. Morphine equivalences for transdermal opioid preparations have been approximated to allow comparison with available preparations of oral morphine.

**72-hour Fentanyl patches are approximately equivalent to the following 24-hour doses of oral morphine**

morphine salt 30 mg daily	≡ fentanyl '12' patch
morphine salt 60 mg daily	≡ fentanyl '25' patch
morphine salt 120 mg daily	≡ fentanyl '50' patch
morphine salt 180 mg daily	≡ fentanyl '75' patch
morphine salt 240 mg daily	≡ fentanyl '100' patch

Fentanyl equivalences in this table are for children on well-tolerated opioid therapy for long periods; fentanyl patches should not be used in opioid naive children. Conversion ratios vary and these figures are a guide only. Morphine equivalences for transdermal opioid preparations have been approximated to allow comparison with available preparations of oral morphine.

**Symptom control**

**Unlicensed indications or routes** Several recommendations in this section involve unlicensed indications or routes.

**Anorexia** Anorexia may be helped by prednisolone p. 442 or dexamethasone p. 439.

**Anxiety** Anxiety can be treated with a long-acting benzodiazepine such as diazepam p. 220, or by continuous infusion of the short-acting benzodiazepine midazolam p. 223. Interventions for more acute episodes of anxiety (such as panic attacks) include short-acting benzodiazepines such as lorazepam p. 222 given sublingually or midazolam given subcutaneously. Temazepam p. 821 provides useful night-time sedation in some children.

**Capillary bleeding** Capillary bleeding can be treated with tranexamic acid p. 82 by mouth; treatment is usually continued for one week after the bleeding has stopped but it can be continued at a reduced dose if bleeding persists. Alternatively, gauze soaked in tranexamic acid 100 mg/mL or adrenaline/epinephrine solution 1 mg/mL (1 in 1000) p. 136 can be applied to the affected area. Vitamin K may be useful for the treatment and prevention of bleeding associated with prolonged clotting in liver disease. In severe chronic cholestasis, absorption of vitamin K may be impaired; either parenteral or water-soluble oral vitamin K should be considered.

**Constipation** Constipation is a common cause of distress and is almost invariable after administration of an opioid analgesic. It should be prevented if possible by the regular administration of laxatives. Suitable laxatives include osmotic laxatives (such as lactulose p. 41 or macrogols), stimulant laxatives (such as co-danthramer p. 45 and senna p. 46) or the combination of lactulose and a senna preparation. Naloxone hydrochloride p. 842 given by mouth may help relieve opioid-induced constipation; it is poorly absorbed but opioid withdrawal reactions have been reported.

**Convulsions** Intractable seizures are relatively common in children dying from non-malignant conditions. Phenobarbital p. 216 by mouth or as a continuous subcutaneous infusion may be beneficial; continuous infusion of midazolam p. 223 is an alternative. Both cause drowsiness, but this is rarely a concern in the context of intractable seizures. For breakthrough convulsions diazepam p. 220 given rectally (as a solution), buccal midazolam, or paraldehyde p. 221 as an enema may be appropriate. See *Continuous subcutaneous infusions*, below, for the use of midazolam by subcutaneous infusion using a continuous infusion device.

**Dry mouth** Dry mouth may be caused by certain medications including opioid analgesics, antimuscarinic drugs (e.g. hyoscine), antidepressants and some antiemetics;

if possible, an alternative preparation should be considered. Dry mouth may be relieved by good mouth care and measures such as chewing sugar-free gum, sucking ice or pineapple chunks, or the use of artificial saliva, dry mouth associated with candidiasis can be treated by oral preparations of nystatin p. 710 or miconazole p. 516, alternatively, fluconazole p. 374 can be given by mouth.

**Dysphagia** A corticosteroid such as dexamethasone p. 439 may help, temporarily, if there is an obstruction due to tumour. See also *Dry mouth*, above.

**Dyspnoea** Breathlessness at rest may be relieved by regular oral morphine p. 282 in carefully titrated doses. Diazepam p. 220 may be helpful for dyspnoea associated with anxiety. Sublingual lorazepam p. 222 or subcutaneous or buccal midazolam p. 223 are alternatives. A nebulised short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist or a corticosteroid, such as dexamethasone or prednisolone p. 442, may also be helpful for bronchospasm or partial obstruction.

**Excessive respiratory secretion** Excessive respiratory secretion (death rattle) may be reduced by hyoscine hydrobromide patches or by subcutaneous or intravenous injection of hyoscine hydrobromide p. 266, however, care must be taken to avoid the discomfort of dry mouth. Alternatively, glycopyrronium bromide p. 751 may be given. Hyoscine hydrobromide can be administered by subcutaneous or intravenous infusion using a continuous infusion device.

**Fungating tumours** Fungating tumours can be treated by regular dressing and antibacterial drugs; systemic treatment with metronidazole p. 333 is often required to reduce malodour, but topical metronidazole is also used.

**Gastro-intestinal pain** The pain of bowel colic may be reduced by loperamide hydrochloride p. 49. Hyoscine hydrobromide p. 266 may also be helpful in reducing the frequency of spasms; it is given sublingually as *Kwells*® tablets and also by subcutaneous infusion. Gastric distension pain due to pressure on the stomach may be helped by a preparation incorporating an antacid with an antilutulent and a prokinetic such as domperidone before meals.

**Hiccup** Hiccup due to gastric distension may be helped by a preparation incorporating an antacid with an antilutulent.

**Insomnia** Children with advanced cancer may not sleep because of discomfort, cramps, night sweats, joint stiffness, or fear. There should be appropriate treatment of these problems before hypnotics are used. Benzodiazepines, such as temazepam p. 821, may be useful.

**Intractable cough** Intractable cough may be relieved by moist inhalations or by regular administration of oral morphine p. 282 every 4 hours. Methadone hydrochloride linctus p. 299 should be avoided because it has a long duration of action and tends to accumulate.

**Mucosal bleeding** Mucosal bleeding from the mouth and nose occurs commonly in the terminal phase, particularly in a child suffering from haemopoietic malignancy. Bleeding from the nose caused by a single bleeding point can be arrested by cauterisation or by dressing it. Tranexamic acid p. 82 may be effective applied topically or given systemically.

**Muscle spasm** The pain of muscle spasm can be helped by a muscle relaxant such as diazepam p. 220 or baclofen p. 649.

**Nausea and vomiting** Nausea and vomiting are common in children with advanced cancer. Ideally, the cause should be determined before treatment with an antiemetic is started. Nausea and vomiting with opioid therapy are less common in children than in adults but may occur particularly in the initial stages and can be prevented by giving an antiemetic. An antiemetic is usually necessary only for the first 4 or 5 days and therefore combined preparations containing an

opioid with an antiemetic are not recommended because they lead to unnecessary antiemetic therapy (and associated side-effects when used long-term).

Metoclopramide hydrochloride p. 262 has a prokinetic action and is used by mouth for nausea and vomiting associated with gastritis, gastric stasis, and functional bowel obstruction. Drugs with antimuscarinic effects antagonise prokinetic drugs and, if possible, should not therefore be used concurrently.

Haloperidol p. 245 is used by mouth or by continuous intravenous or subcutaneous infusion for most metabolic causes of vomiting (e.g. hypercalcaemia, renal failure). Cyclizine p. 260 is used for nausea and vomiting due to mechanical bowel obstruction, raised intracranial pressure, and motion sickness.

Ondansetron p. 264 is most effective when the vomiting is due to damaged or irritated gut mucosa (e.g. after chemotherapy or radiotherapy).

Antiemetic therapy should be reviewed every 24 hours; it may be necessary to substitute the antiemetic or to add another one.

Levomepromazine p. 268 can be used if first-line antiemetics are inadequate. Dexamethasone p. 439 by mouth can be used as an adjunct.

See *Continuous subcutaneous infusions*, below, for the administration of antiemetics by subcutaneous infusion using a continuous infusion device.

**Pruritus** Pruritus, even when associated with obstructive jaundice, often responds to simple measures such as application of emollients. Ondansetron p. 264 may be effective in some children. Where opioid analgesics cause pruritus it may be appropriate to review the dose or to switch to an alternative opioid analgesic. In the case of obstructive jaundice, further measures include administration of colestyramine p. 129.

**Raised intracranial pressure** Headache due to raised intracranial pressure often responds to a high dose of a corticosteroid, such as dexamethasone p. 439, for 4 to 5 days, subsequently reduced if possible; dexamethasone should be given before 6 p.m. to reduce the risk of insomnia. Treatment of headache and of associated nausea and vomiting should also be considered.

**Restlessness and confusion** Restlessness and confusion may require treatment with haloperidol p. 245. Levomepromazine p. 268 is also used occasionally for restlessness.

## Continuous subcutaneous infusions

Although drugs can usually be administered by mouth to control symptoms in palliative care, the parenteral route may sometimes be necessary. Repeated administration of *intramuscular injections* should be avoided in children, particularly if cachectic. This has led to the use of portable continuous infusion devices such as syringe drivers to give a *continuous subcutaneous infusion*, which can provide good control of symptoms with little discomfort or inconvenience to the patient.

Indications for the **parenteral route** are:

- inability to take medicines by mouth owing to *nausea and vomiting, dysphagia, severe weakness, or coma*;
- *malignant bowel obstruction* for which surgery is inappropriate (avoiding the need for an intravenous infusion or for insertion of a nasogastric tube);
- refusal by the child to take regular medication by mouth.

**Syringe driver rate settings** Staff using syringe drivers should be **adequately trained** and different rate settings should be **clearly identified and differentiated**; incorrect use of syringe drivers is a common cause of medication errors.

**Bowel colic and excessive respiratory secretions** Hyoscine hydrobromide p. 266 effectively reduces respiratory secretions and is sedative (but occasionally causes paradoxical agitation); it is given in a *subcutaneous or intravenous infusion*. Glycopyrronium bromide p. 751 may also be used.

Hyoscine butylbromide p. 62 is effective in bowel colic, is less sedative than hyoscine hydrobromide, but is not always adequate for the control of respiratory secretions; it is given by *subcutaneous infusion* (**important**: hyoscine butylbromide p. 62 must not be confused with *hyoscine hydrobromide*, above).

**Confusion and restlessness** Haloperidol p. 245 has little sedative effect. Levomepromazine p. 268 has a sedative effect. Midazolam p. 223 is a sedative and an antiepileptic that may be suitable for a very restless patient.

**Convulsions** If a child has previously been receiving an antiepileptic drug or has a primary or secondary cerebral tumour or is at risk of convulsion (e.g. owing to uraemia) antiepileptic medication should not be stopped. Midazolam is the benzodiazepine antiepileptic of choice for *continuous subcutaneous infusion*.

**Nausea and vomiting** Levomepromazine p. 268 causes sedation in about 50% of patients. Haloperidol p. 245 has little sedative effect.

Cyclizine p. 260 is particularly likely to precipitate if mixed with diamorphine hydrochloride p. 277 or other drugs (see under *Mixing and compatibility*); it is given by *subcutaneous infusion*.

**Pain control** Diamorphine hydrochloride p. 277 is the preferred opioid since its high solubility permits a large dose to be given in a small volume (see under *Mixing and compatibility*). The table shows approximate equivalent doses of morphine p. 282 and diamorphine hydrochloride.

**Mixing and compatibility** The general principle that injections should be given into separate sites (and should not be mixed) does not apply to the use of syringe drivers in palliative care. Provided that there is evidence of compatibility, selected injections can be mixed in syringe drivers. Not all types of medication can be used in a subcutaneous infusion. In particular, chlorpromazine hydrochloride p. 244, prochlorperazine p. 268, and diazepam p. 220 are **contra-indicated** as they cause skin reactions at the injection site; to a lesser extent cyclizine p. 260 and levomepromazine p. 268 also sometimes cause local irritation.

In theory injections dissolved in water for injections are more likely to be associated with pain (possibly owing to their hypotonicity). The use of physiological saline (sodium chloride 0.9% p. 589) however increases the likelihood of precipitation when more than one drug is used; moreover subcutaneous infusion rates are so slow (0.1–0.3 mL/hour) that pain is not usually a problem when water is used as a diluent.

**Compatibility with diamorphine** Diamorphine can be given by *subcutaneous infusion* in a strength of up to 250 mg/mL; up to a strength of 40 mg/mL either *water for injections* or *physiological saline* (sodium chloride 0.9%) is a suitable diluent—above that strength only *water for injections* is used (to avoid precipitation).

The following can be mixed with *diamorphine*:

- **Cyclizine**, may precipitate at concentrations above 10 mg/mL or in the presence of sodium chloride 0.9% or as the concentration of diamorphine relative to cyclizine increases; mixtures of diamorphine and cyclizine are also likely to precipitate after 24 hours.
- **Dexamethasone**, special care is needed to avoid precipitation of dexamethasone when preparing it.

- **Haloperidol**, mixtures of haloperidol and diamorphine are likely to precipitate after 24 hours if haloperidol concentration is above 2 mg/mL.
- **Hyoscine butylbromide**
- **Hyoscine hydrobromide**
- **Levomepromazine**
- **Metoclopramide**, under some conditions infusions containing metoclopramide become discoloured; such solutions should be discarded.
- **Midazolam**

Subcutaneous infusion solution should be monitored regularly both to check for precipitation (and discolouration) and to ensure that the infusion is running at the correct rate.

**Problems encountered with syringe drivers** The following are problems that may be encountered with syringe drivers and the action that should be taken:

- if the subcutaneous infusion runs *too quickly* check the rate setting and the calculation;
- if the subcutaneous infusion runs *too slowly* check the start button, the battery, the syringe driver, the cannula, and make sure that the injection site is not inflamed;
- if there is an *injection site reaction* make sure that the site does not need to be changed—firmness or swelling at the site of injection is not in itself an indication for change, but pain or obvious inflammation is.

#### Equivalent doses of morphine sulfate and diamorphine hydrochloride given over 24 hours

These equivalences are *approximate only* and should be adjusted according to response

ORAL MORPHINE	PARENTERAL MORPHINE	PARENTERAL DIAMORPHINE
Oral morphine sulfate over 24 hours	Subcutaneous infusion of morphine sulfate over 24 hours	Subcutaneous infusion of diamorphine hydrochloride over 24 hours
30 mg	15 mg	10 mg
60 mg	30 mg	20 mg
90 mg	45 mg	30 mg
120 mg	60 mg	40 mg
180 mg	90 mg	60 mg
240 mg	120 mg	80 mg
360 mg	180 mg	120 mg
480 mg	240 mg	160 mg
600 mg	300 mg	200 mg
780 mg	390 mg	260 mg
960 mg	480 mg	320 mg
1200 mg	600 mg	400 mg

If breakthrough pain occurs give a subcutaneous injection equivalent to one-tenth to one-sixth of the total 24-hour subcutaneous infusion dose. With an intermittent subcutaneous injection absorption is smoother so that the risk of adverse effects at peak absorption is avoided (an even better method is to use a subcutaneous butterfly needle). To minimise the risk of infection no individual subcutaneous infusion solution should be used for longer than 24 hours.



## Drugs and sport

### Anti-doping

UK Anti-Doping, the national body responsible for the UK's anti-doping policy, advises that athletes are personally responsible should a prohibited substance be detected in their body. Information regarding the use of medicines in sport is available from:

UK Anti-doping  
Fleetbank House  
2-6 Salisbury Square  
London  
EC4Y 8AE  
(020) 7842 3450  
ukad@ukad.org.uk  
[www.ukad.org.uk](http://www.ukad.org.uk)

Information about the prohibited status of specific medications based on the current World Anti-Doping Agency Prohibited List is available from Global Drug Reference Online: [www.globaldro.com/UK/search](http://www.globaldro.com/UK/search)

### General Medical Council's advice

Doctors who prescribe or collude in the provision of drugs or treatment with the intention of improperly enhancing an individual's performance in sport contravene the GMC's guidance, and such actions would usually raise a question of a doctor's continued registration. This does not preclude the provision of any care or treatment where the doctor's intention is to protect or improve the patient's health.

## Prescribing in dental practice

### General guidance

Advice on the drug management of dental and oral conditions has been integrated into the main text. For ease of access, guidance on such conditions is usually identified by means of a relevant heading (e.g. Dental and Orofacial Pain) in the appropriate sections.

The following is a list of topics of particular relevance to dentists.

Prescribing by dentists, see Prescription writing p. 5  
Oral side-effects of drugs, see Adverse reactions to drugs p. 13  
Medical emergencies in dental practice, see BNF  
Medical problems in dental practice, see BNF

### Drug management of dental and oral conditions

**Dental and orofacial pain, see Analgesics p. 269**

Neuropathic pain p. 293  
Non-opioid analgesics and compound analgesic preparations, see Analgesics p. 269  
Opioid analgesics, see Analgesics p. 269  
Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs p. 650

### Oral infections

Bacterial infections, see Antibacterials, principles of therapy p. 300

Phenoxymethylpenicillin p. 339  
Broad-spectrum penicillins (amoxicillin p. 339 and ampicillin p. 341)  
Cephalosporins (cefalexin p. 317 and cefradine p. 318)  
Tetracyclines p. 351  
Macrolides (clarithromycin p. 330, erythromycin p. 331 and azithromycin p. 329)  
Clindamycin p. 327  
Metronidazole p. 333  
Fusidic acid p. 357

### Fungal infections

Local treatment, see Oropharyngeal fungal infections p. 709  
Systemic treatment, see Antifungals, systemic use p. 370

### Viral infections

Herpetic gingivostomatitis, local treatment, see Oropharyngeal viral infections p. 711  
Herpetic gingivostomatitis, systemic treatment, see Oropharyngeal viral infections p. 711 and Herpesvirus infections p. 403  
Herpes labialis, see Skin infections p. 720

### Anaesthetics, anxiolytics and hypnotics

Sedation, anaesthesia, and resuscitation in dental practice p. 804  
Hypnotics, see Hypnotics and anxiolytics p. 293  
Sedation for dental procedures, see Hypnotics and anxiolytics p. 293  
Anaesthesia (local) p. 822

### Minerals

Fluorides p. 705

### Oral ulceration and inflammation p. 706

Mouthwashes and gargles, see Mouthwashes and other preparations for oropharyngeal use p. 703  
Dry mouth, see Treatment of dry mouth p. 701  
Aromatic inhalations, see Aromatic inhalations, cough preparations and systemic nasal decongestants p. 187  
Nasal decongestants, see Aromatic inhalations, cough preparations and systemic nasal decongestants p. 187

Dental Practitioners' Formulary p. 1056

# Chapter 1

## Gastro-intestinal system

### CONTENTS

<b>1 Chronic bowel disorders</b>	page 25	4.4 <i>Helicobacter pylori</i> diagnosis	page 60
1.1 Coeliac disease	25	<b>5 Food allergy</b>	60
1.2 Inflammatory bowel disease	25	<b>6 Gastro-intestinal smooth muscle spasm</b>	61
1.3 Irritable bowel syndrome	34	<b>7 Liver disorders and related conditions</b>	64
1.4 Short bowel syndrome	35	7.1 Biliary disorders	64
<b>2 Constipation and bowel cleansing</b>	36	7.2 Oesophageal varices	66
2.1 Bowel cleansing	36	<b>8 Obesity</b>	67
2.2 Constipation	39	<b>9 Rectal and anal disorders</b>	68
<b>3 Diarrhoea</b>	47	9.1 Anal fissures	68
<b>4 Disorders of gastric acid and ulceration</b>	50	9.2 Haemorrhoids	68
4.1 Dyspepsia	50	<b>10 Reduced exocrine secretions</b>	71
4.2 Gastric and duodenal ulceration	53	<b>11 Stoma care</b>	73
4.3 Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease	59		

## 1 Chronic bowel disorders

### 1.1 Coeliac disease

#### Coeliac disease

25-Jul-2016

##### Description of condition

Coeliac disease is an autoimmune condition which is associated with chronic inflammation of the small intestine. Dietary proteins known as gluten, which are present in wheat, barley and rye, activate an abnormal immune response in the intestinal mucosa, which can lead to malabsorption of nutrients.

##### Aims of treatment

The management of coeliac disease is aimed at eliminating symptoms (such as diarrhoea, bloating and abdominal pain) and reducing the risk of complications, including those resulting from malabsorption.

##### Non-drug treatment

**[EVGr]** The only effective treatment for coeliac disease is a strict, life-long, gluten-free diet. A range of gluten-free products is available for prescription (see *Borderline substances*). **[A]**

##### Drug treatment

**[EVGr]** Children who have coeliac disease are at an increased risk of malabsorption of key nutrients (such as calcium and vitamin D). Supplementation of key nutrients may be required if dietary intake is insufficient.

Careers of children who have coeliac disease should be advised **not** to medicate with over-the-counter vitamin or mineral supplements. Initiation of supplementation should involve a discussion with a member of the child's healthcare team in order to identify the individual needs of the patient and to allow for appropriate ongoing monitoring. **[A]**

##### Useful Resources

Coeliac disease: recognition, assessment and management. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Clinical guideline 20. September 2015.  
[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng20](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng20)

## 1.2 Inflammatory bowel disease

### Inflammatory bowel disease

Chronic inflammatory bowel diseases include *ulcerative colitis* and *Crohn's disease*.

#### Drugs used in inflammatory bowel disease

##### Aminosalicylates

Sulfasalazine p. 31 is a combination of 5-aminosalicylic acid ('5-ASA') and sulfapyridine; sulfapyridine acts only as a carrier to the colonic site of action but still causes side-effects. In the newer aminosalicylates, mesalazine p. 29 (5-aminosalicylic acid), balsalazide sodium p. 29 (a prodrug of 5-aminosalicylic acid) and olsalazine sodium p. 31 (a dimer of 5-aminosalicylic acid which cleaves in the lower bowel), the sulfonamide-related side-effects of sulfasalazine are avoided, but 5-aminosalicylic acid alone can still cause side-effects including blood disorders and lupus-like syndrome also seen with sulfasalazine.

##### Drugs affecting the immune response

Folic acid p. 574 should be given to reduce the possibility of methotrexate toxicity. Folic acid is usually given once weekly on a different day to the methotrexate p. 543; alternative regimens may be used in some settings.

##### Cytokine modulators

Infliximab p. 33 and adalimumab p. 642 are monoclonal antibodies which inhibit the pro-inflammatory cytokine, tumour necrosis factor alpha. Cytokine modulators should be used under specialist supervision.

## Crohn's disease

20-Dec-2016

### Description of condition

Crohn's disease is a chronic, inflammatory bowel disease that mainly affects the gastro-intestinal tract. It is characterised by thickened areas of the gastro-intestinal wall with inflammation extending through all layers, deep ulceration and fissuring of the mucosa, and the presence of



granulomas; affected areas may occur in any part of the gastro-intestinal tract, interspersed with areas of relatively normal tissue. Crohn's disease may present as recurrent attacks, with acute exacerbations combined with periods of remission or less active disease. Symptoms depend on the site of disease but may include abdominal pain, diarrhoea, fever, weight loss, and rectal bleeding.

Complications of Crohn's disease include intestinal strictures, abscesses in the wall of the intestine or adjacent structures, fistulae, anaemia, malnutrition, colorectal and small bowel cancers, and growth failure and delayed puberty in children. Crohn's disease may also be associated with extra-intestinal manifestation: the most common are arthritis and abnormalities of the joints, eyes, liver and skin. Crohn's disease is also a cause of secondary osteoporosis and those at greatest risk should be monitored for osteopenia and assessed for the risk of fractures.

Up to a third of patients with Crohn's disease are diagnosed before the age of 21 years but there is a lack of evidence regarding treatment for children. Paediatric practice is often based on extrapolation from adult studies.

### Fistulating Crohn's disease

Fistulating Crohn's disease is a complication that involves the formation of a fistula between the intestine and adjacent structures, such as perianal skin, bladder, and vagina. It occurs in about one quarter of patients, mostly when the disease involves the ileocolonic area.

### Aims of treatment

Treatment is largely directed at the induction and maintenance of remission and the relief of symptoms. Active treatment of acute Crohn's disease should be distinguished from preventing relapse. The aims of drug treatment are to reduce symptoms and maintain or improve quality of life, while minimising toxicity related to drugs over both the short and long term. Drug treatment should always be initiated by a paediatric gastroenterologist.

In fistulating Crohn's disease, surgery and medical treatment aim to close and maintain closure of the fistula.

### Non-drug treatment

**[EvGr]** In addition to drug treatment, management options for Crohn's disease include smoking cessation and attention to nutrition, which plays an important role in supportive care. Surgery may be considered in certain children with early disease limited to the distal ileum and in severe or chronic active disease. **⚠**

### Drug treatment

#### Treatment of acute disease

##### Monotherapy

**[EvGr]** A corticosteroid (either prednisolone p. 442 or methylprednisolone p. 441 or intravenous hydrocortisone p. 440), is used to induce remission in children with a first presentation or a single inflammatory exacerbation of Crohn's disease in a 12-month period.

Enteral nutrition is an alternative to a corticosteroid when there is concern about growth or side effects.

In children with distal ileal, ileocaecal or right-sided colonic disease, in whom a conventional corticosteroid is unsuitable or contra-indicated, budesonide p. 32 [unlicensed] may be considered. Budesonide is less effective but may cause fewer side-effects than other corticosteroids, as systemic exposure is limited. Aminosalicylates (such as sulfasalazine p. 31 and mesalazine p. 29) are an alternative option in these children. They are less effective than a corticosteroid or budesonide [unlicensed], but may be preferred because they have fewer side-effects. Aminosalicylates and budesonide are not appropriate for severe presentations or exacerbations. **⚠**

### Add-on treatment

**[EvGr]** Add on treatment is prescribed if there are two or more inflammatory exacerbations in a 12-month period, or the corticosteroid dose cannot be reduced.

Azathioprine p. 518 or mercaptopurine p. 543 [unlicensed indications] can be added to a corticosteroid or budesonide to induce remission. In children who cannot tolerate azathioprine or mercaptopurine or in whom thiopurine methyltransferase (TPMT) activity is deficient, methotrexate p. 543 can be added to a corticosteroid.

Under specialist supervision, monoclonal antibody therapies, adalimumab p. 642 and infliximab p. 33, are options for the treatment of severe, active Crohn's disease, following inadequate response to conventional therapies or in those who are intolerant of or have contra-indications to conventional therapy. **⚠** See also *National funding/access decisions* for adalimumab and infliximab.

**[EvGr]** Adalimumab and infliximab can be used as monotherapy or combined with an immunosuppressant, although there is uncertainty about the comparative effectiveness. **⚠** There are concerns about the long-term safety of adalimumab and infliximab in children; malignancies, including hepatosplenic T- cell lymphoma, have been reported.

### Maintenance of remission

**[EvGr]** Children, and their parents or carers, should be made aware of the risk of relapse with and without drug treatment, and symptoms that may suggest a relapse (most frequently unintended weight loss, abdominal pain, diarrhoea and general ill-health). For those who choose not to receive maintenance treatment during remission, a suitable follow up plan should be agreed upon and information provided on how to access healthcare if a relapse should occur.

Azathioprine or mercaptopurine [unlicensed indications] as monotherapy can be used to maintain remission when previously used with a corticosteroid to induce remission. They may also be used in children who have not previously received these drugs (particularly those with adverse prognostic factors such as early age of onset, perianal disease, corticosteroid use at presentation, and severe presentations). Methotrexate [unlicensed] can be used to maintain remission only in children who required methotrexate to induce remission, or who are intolerant of or are not suitable for azathioprine or mercaptopurine for maintenance. Corticosteroids or budesonide should not be used. **⚠**

### Maintaining remission following surgery

**[EvGr]** Azathioprine or mercaptopurine can be considered to maintain remission after surgery in children with adverse prognostic factors such as more than one resection, or previously complicated or debilitating disease (for example, abscess, involvement of adjacent structures, fistulating or penetrating disease). Aminosalicylates can also be considered as an option, however budesonide or enteral nutrition should not be used. **⚠**

### Other treatments

**[EvGr]** Loperamide hydrochloride p. 49 can be used to manage diarrhoea associated with Crohn's disease in children who do not have colitis. **⚠** Colestyramine p. 129 is licensed for the relief of diarrhoea associated with Crohn's disease. See also *Diarrhoea (acute)* p. 47.

### Fistulating Crohn's disease

Perianal fistulae are the most common occurrence in children with fistulating Crohn's disease. **[EvGr]** Treatment may not be necessary for simple, asymptomatic perianal fistulae. When fistulae are symptomatic, local drainage and surgery may be required in conjunction with medical therapy.

Metronidazole p. 333 or ciprofloxacin p. 348 [unlicensed indications], alone or in combination, can improve symptoms of fistulating Crohn's disease but complete


healing occurs rarely. Metronidazole should be given for at least 6 weeks but no longer than 3 months because of concerns about peripheral neuropathy. Other antibacterials should be given if specifically indicated (e.g. in sepsis associated with fistulae and perianal disease) and for managing bacterial overgrowth in the small bowel.

Either azathioprine p. 518 or mercaptopurine p. 543 [unlicensed indications] is used to control the inflammation in perianal and enterocutaneous fistulating Crohn's disease and they are continued for maintenance.

Infliximab p. 33 is recommended for children with perianal and enterocutaneous active fistulating Crohn's disease who have not responded to conventional therapy (including antibacterials, drainage and immunosuppressive treatments), or who are intolerant of or have contraindications to conventional therapy. Infliximab should be used after ensuring that all sepsis is actively draining.

Abscess drainage, fistulotomy, and seton insertion may be appropriate, particularly before infliximab treatment.

Azathioprine, mercaptopurine or infliximab should be continued as maintenance treatment for at least one year.

For the management of non-perianal fistulating Crohn's disease (including entero-gynaecological and enterovesical fistulae) surgery is the only recommended approach. 

### Useful Resources

Crohn's disease: management in adults, children and young people. Clinical guideline 152. October 2012 (updated May 2016).

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg152](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg152)

## Ulcerative colitis

20-Feb-2017

### Description of condition

Ulcerative colitis is a chronic inflammatory condition, characterised by diffuse mucosal inflammation—it has a relapsing-remitting pattern. It is a life-long disease that is associated with significant morbidity. Ulcerative colitis is more common in adults; however in children it predominately presents between the ages of 5 and 16 years.

The pattern of inflammation is continuous, extending from the rectum upwards to a varying degree. Inflammation of the rectum is referred to as **proctitis**, and inflammation of the rectum and sigmoid colon as **proctosigmoiditis**. **Left-sided colitis** refers to disease involving the colon distal to the splenic flexure. **Extensive colitis** affects the colon proximal to the splenic flexure, and includes pan-colitis, where the whole colon is involved. Child-onset ulcerative colitis is classified as extensive in 60–80% of all cases. Common symptoms of active disease or relapse include bloody diarrhoea, an urgent need to defaecate, and abdominal pain.

Ulcerative colitis is classified as **subacute** if it is moderate-to-severely active disease which can be managed in an outpatient setting, and does not require hospitalisation or consideration of urgent surgical intervention.


Complications associated with ulcerative colitis include an increased risk of colorectal cancer, secondary osteoporosis, venous thromboembolism and toxic megacolon. Growth and pubertal development can be affected in children.

### Aims of treatment


Treatment is focussed on treating active disease to manage symptoms and to induce and maintain remission.

### Drug treatment


#### Overview

 Management of ulcerative colitis is dependent on factors such as clinical severity, extent of disease, and the child's preference. As limited distal disease is uncommon in children, paediatric treatment strategy depends mainly on


disease severity rather than the extent of disease. Clinical and laboratory investigations are used to determine the extent and severity of disease and to guide treatment. Severity is classified as mild, moderate or severe (or in remission) by using the Paediatric Ulcerative Colitis Activity Index to assess bowel movement, limitations on daily activity and the presence of abdominal pain or melaena—see the NICE guideline for Ulcerative Colitis for further information (*Useful resources* below).



The extent of disease should be considered when choosing the route of administration for aminosaliclates and corticosteroids; whether oral treatment, topical treatment or both are to be used. 

If the inflammation is distal, a rectal preparation is adequate, but if the inflammation is extended, systemic medication is required. Either suppositories or enemas can be offered, taking into account the child's preferences.


 Rectal foam preparations and suppositories can be used when children have difficulty retaining liquid enemas.

Diarrhoea that is associated with active ulcerative colitis is sometimes treated with anti-diarrhoeal drugs (such as loperamide hydrochloride p. 49 [unlicensed under 4 years]) on the advice of a specialist; however their use is contraindicated in acute ulcerative colitis as they can increase the risk of toxic megacolon.

A macrogol-containing osmotic laxative (such as macrogol 3350 with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride p. 42) may be useful for proximal faecal loading in proctitis. 

Oral aminosaliclates for the treatment of ulcerative colitis are available in different preparations and release forms.  The preparation and dosing schedule should be chosen taking into account the delivery characteristics and suitability for the patient. When used to maintain remission, single daily doses of oral aminosaliclates can be more effective than multiple daily dosing, but may result in more side-effects. 

### Treatment of acute mild-to-moderate ulcerative colitis


 Acute treatment to induce remission generally consists of an aminosaliclate with or without a corticosteroid.



**Aminosaliclates** are recommended as first-line treatment for children at first presentation or with an exacerbation. Oral aminosaliclates (balsalazide sodium p. 29 [unlicensed], mesalazine p. 29 [unlicensed under 6 years], olsalazine sodium p. 31 [unlicensed under 12 years] or sulfasalazine p. 31 [unlicensed under 2 years]) are recommended as first line **except** in children with **proctitis** or **proctosigmoiditis** where a rectal aminosaliclate (mesalazine or sulfasalazine [both unlicensed under 6 years]) is more effective. A rectal corticosteroid (budesonide p. 32 [unlicensed], hydrocortisone p. 440 [unlicensed under 2 years] or prednisolone p. 442) or oral prednisolone [unlicensed under 2 years] alone can be considered in children with proctitis or proctosigmoiditis who are intolerant to or decline treatment with aminosaliclates, or in whom aminosaliclates are contra-indicated.



Addition of oral beclometasone dipropionate [unlicensed] or a rectal aminosaliclate to oral aminosaliclate treatment may also be considered in children with **left-sided** or **extensive disease**. Oral prednisolone [unlicensed under 2 years] alone is recommended for children who cannot tolerate or who decline aminosaliclates, or in whom aminosaliclates are contra-indicated.

Oral prednisolone [unlicensed under 2 years] should be considered for the treatment of children with subacute proctitis or proctosigmoiditis.

In all extents of disease, if there are no improvements within four weeks of initial treatment or if symptoms worsen, addition of oral prednisolone to aminosaliclate therapy can be considered (discontinue beclometasone dipropionate if adding oral prednisolone). If there is still no response after 2–4 weeks of treatment with prednisolone,

consider adding oral tacrolimus p. 522 [unlicensed indication] to prednisolone to induce remission. 

 Alternatively, on specialist advice, infliximab p. 33 [unlicensed indication; can be used in children over 6 years] or intravenous tacrolimus [unlicensed indication] can be added, if there is no response after 2–4 weeks of treatment with prednisolone. 



 Evaluation of response should be done early to allow tapering of corticosteroids and ongoing treatment. Unnecessary corticosteroid exposure is to be avoided to minimise growth retardation and other corticosteroid-related side effects. 


#### Treatment of acute severe ulcerative colitis

Acute severe ulcerative colitis of any extent can be life-threatening and is regarded as a medical emergency.


 Immediate hospital admission is required for treatment.


Intravenous corticosteroids (such as hydrocortisone or methylprednisolone p. 441) should be given to induce remission in children with acute severe ulcerative colitis (whether it is a first presentation or an inflammatory exacerbation) while assessing the need for surgery. If intravenous corticosteroids are contra-indicated, declined or cannot be tolerated, then intravenous ciclosporin p. 519 [unlicensed indication], or surgery should be considered. A combination of intravenous ciclosporin with intravenous corticosteroids, or surgery is second line therapy for children who have little or no improvement within 72 hours of starting intravenous corticosteroids or in children whose symptoms worsen despite treatment with a corticosteroid.

  Alternatively, infliximab can be used on specialist advice in children over 6 years, if there is little or no improvement within 72 hours of starting intravenous corticosteroids or in children whose symptoms worsen despite treatment with a corticosteroid.


In patients who experience an initial response to steroids followed by deterioration, stool cultures should be taken to exclude pathogens; cytomegalovirus activation should be considered. 

#### Infliximab for ulcerative colitis


 Infliximab p. 33 can be used to treat acute severe active ulcerative colitis in children over 6 years who have had an inadequate response to conventional treatment (including corticosteroids and azathioprine p. 518 or mercaptopurine p. 543) or if conventional treatment is not tolerated or contra-indicated. Treatment with these agents is continued into the maintenance phase if effective and tolerated. See also *National funding/access decisions* for infliximab.


Infliximab can also be used to treat acute exacerbations of severely active ulcerative colitis in children over 6 years, if ciclosporin p. 519 is contra-indicated or clinically inappropriate. 




#### Maintaining remission in mild, moderate or severe ulcerative colitis

 To reduce the chances of relapse occurring, maintenance therapy with an aminosalicylate is recommended in most children. Corticosteroids are **not** suitable for maintenance treatment because of their side-effects.

After a mild-to-moderate inflammatory exacerbation of proctitis or proctosigmoiditis, a rectal aminosalicylate can be started alone or in combination with an oral aminosalicylate, administered daily or as part of an intermittent regimen (such as twice to three times weekly or the first seven days of each month). An oral aminosalicylate can be used alone in children who prefer not to use enemas or suppositories, although, this may not be as effective.



A low dose of oral aminosalicylate is given to maintain remission in children after a mild-to-moderate inflammatory exacerbation of left-sided or extensive ulcerative colitis. 

Oral aminosalicylates are available in different preparations and release forms.  The preparation and dosing schedule should be chosen taking into account the delivery characteristics and suitability for the child. When used to maintain remission single daily dosing of oral aminosalicylates can be more effective than multiple daily dosing, but may result in more side-effects.

Oral azathioprine or mercaptopurine [unlicensed indications] can be considered to maintain remission, if there has been two or more inflammatory exacerbations in a 12-month period that require treatment with systemic corticosteroids or if remission is not maintained by aminosalicylates, or following a single acute severe episode.   Oral azathioprine or mercaptopurine is usually required in these cases as an aminosalicylate alone may be ineffective in more severe disease. 

There is no evidence to support the use of methotrexate p. 543 to induce or maintain remission in ulcerative colitis though its use is common in clinical practice.

#### Non-drug treatment

 Surgery may be necessary as emergency treatment for severe ulcerative colitis that does not respond to drug treatment. Patients can also choose to have elective surgery for unresponsive or frequently relapsing disease that is affecting their quality of life. 

#### Useful Resources

NICE. Ulcerative colitis: management in adults, children and young people. Clinical guideline 166. June 2013.  
[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/CG166/](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/CG166/)

### AMINOSALICYLATES

## Aminosalicylates

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Arthralgia · cough · diarrhoea · dizziness · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · leucopenia · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Alopecia · depression · dyspnoea · myalgia · photosensitivity reaction · thrombocytopenia
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · bone marrow disorders · cardiac inflammation · hepatitis · neutropenia · pancreatitis · peripheral neuropathy · renal impairment · respiratory disorders
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · eosinophilia · haemolytic anaemia · nephritis tubulointerstitial · oligozoospermia (reversible) · ulcerative colitis aggravated

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** A blood count should be performed and the drug stopped immediately if there is suspicion of a blood dyscrasia.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in salicylate hypersensitivity.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Monitoring** Renal function should be monitored more frequently in renal impairment.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Renal function should be monitored before starting an oral aminosalicylate, at 3 months of treatment, and then annually during treatment.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Blood disorders** Patients receiving aminosalicylates, and their carers, should be advised to report any unexplained bleeding, bruising, purpura, sore throat, fever or malaise that occurs during treatment.

## Balsalazide sodium

F 28

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Treatment of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis, acute attack

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 2.25 g 3 times a day until remission occurs or for up to maximum of 12 weeks

#### Maintenance of remission of ulcerative colitis

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 1.5 g twice daily (max. per dose 3 g), adjusted according to response; maximum 6 g per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 18 years.
- **CAUTIONS** History of asthma
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: balsalazide
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Acute kidney injury · blood disorder · cholelithiasis · lupus-like syndrome
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Diarrhoea may develop in the infant. **Monitoring** Monitor breast-fed infants for diarrhoea.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid in moderate to severe impairment.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21, 25

- Colazide (Almirall Ltd)  
Balsalazide disodium 750 mg Colazide 750mg capsules | 130 capsule [Pom] £30.42 DT = £30.42

## Mesalazine

F 28

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### ASACOL<sup>®</sup> MR 400MG TABLETS

#### Treatment of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis, acute attack

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 800 mg 3 times a day

#### Maintenance of remission of ulcerative colitis and Crohn's ileo-colitis

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 400–800 mg 2–3 times a day

#### ASACOL<sup>®</sup> FOAM ENEMA

#### Treatment of acute attack of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis affecting the rectosigmoid region

- BY RECTUM
- Child 12–17 years: 1 g daily for 4–6 weeks, to be administered into the rectum

#### Treatment of acute attack of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis, affecting the descending colon

- BY RECTUM
- Child 12–17 years: 2 g once daily for 4–6 weeks, to be administered into the rectum

#### ASACOL<sup>®</sup> SUPPOSITORIES

#### Treatment and maintenance of remission of ulcerative colitis affecting the rectosigmoid region

- BY RECTUM
- Child 12–17 years: 250–500 mg 3 times a day, last dose to be administered at bedtime

### ECTASA<sup>®</sup>

#### Treatment of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis, acute attack

- BY MOUTH
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 2.4–4 g daily in divided doses

#### Maintenance of remission of ulcerative colitis and Crohn's ileo-colitis

- BY MOUTH
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 1.2–2 g once daily, alternatively daily in divided doses

### PENTASA<sup>®</sup> GRANULES

#### Treatment of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis, acute attack

- BY MOUTH
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): 10–20 mg/kg 3 times a day
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 1–2 g twice daily, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3–4 divided doses

#### Maintenance of remission of ulcerative colitis

- BY MOUTH
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): 7.5–15 mg/kg twice daily, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 2 g once daily

### PENTASA<sup>®</sup> RETENTION ENEMA

#### Treatment of acute attack of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis affecting the rectosigmoid region

- BY RECTUM
- Child 12–17 years: 1 g once daily, dose to be administered at bedtime

### PENTASA<sup>®</sup> SUPPOSITORIES

#### Treatment of acute attack, ulcerative proctitis

- BY RECTUM
- Child 12–17 years: 1 g daily for 2–4 weeks

#### Maintenance, ulcerative proctitis

- BY RECTUM
- Child 12–17 years: 1 g daily

### PENTASA<sup>®</sup> TABLETS

#### Treatment of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis, acute attack

- BY MOUTH
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): 10–20 mg/kg 3 times a day
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 1–2 g twice daily, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses

#### Maintenance of remission of ulcerative colitis

- BY MOUTH
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): 7.5–15 mg/kg twice daily, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 2 g once daily

### SALOFALK<sup>®</sup> ENEMA

#### Treatment of acute attack of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis or maintenance of remission

- BY RECTUM
- Child 12–17 years: 2 g once daily, dose to be administered at bedtime

continued →

**Salofalk® GRANULES****Treatment of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis, acute attack**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): 30–50 mg/kg once daily, dose preferably given in the morning, alternatively 10–20 mg/kg 3 times a day
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 1.5–3 g once daily, dose preferably given in the morning, alternatively 0.5–1 g 3 times a day

**Maintenance of remission of ulcerative colitis**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): 7.5–15 mg/kg twice daily, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 500 mg 3 times a day

**Salofalk® RECTAL FOAM****Treatment of mild ulcerative colitis affecting sigmoid colon and rectum**

- BY RECTUM
- Child 12–17 years: 2 g once daily, dose to be administered into the rectum at bedtime, alternatively 2 g daily in 2 divided doses

**Salofalk® SUPPOSITORIES****Treatment of acute attack of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis affecting the rectum, sigmoid colon and descending colon**

- BY RECTUM
- Child 12–17 years: 0.5–1 g 2–3 times a day, adjusted according to response, dose to be given using 500 mg suppositories

**Salofalk® TABLETS****Treatment of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis, acute attack**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): 10–20 mg/kg 3 times a day
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 0.5–1 g 3 times a day

**Maintenance of remission of ulcerative colitis**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): 7.5–15 mg/kg twice daily, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 500 mg 3 times a day

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- There is no evidence to show that any one oral preparation of mesalazine is more effective than another; however, the delivery characteristics of oral mesalazine preparations may vary.

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Asacol*® (all preparations) not licensed for use in children under 18 years. *Pentasa*® tablets not licensed for use in children under 15 years. *Pentasa*® granules and *Salofalk*® tablets and granules not licensed for use in children under 6 years. *Salofalk*® enema not licensed for use in children under 18 years. *Salofalk*® suppositories and *Pentasa*® suppositories not licensed for use in children under 15 years. *Salofalk*® rectal foam no dose recommendations for children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Blood clotting abnormalities
- **CAUTIONS** Pulmonary disease
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: mesalazine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- Rare or very rare Flatulence, hepatic disorders, nephritis

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- Rare or very rare
- With rectal use Constipation
- **PREGNANCY** Negligible quantities cross placenta.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Diarrhoea reported in breast-fed infants, but negligible amounts of mesalazine detected in breast milk.  
**Monitoring** Monitor breast-fed infant for diarrhoea.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution. Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**  
**PENTASA® GRANULES** Granules should be placed on tongue and washed down with water or orange juice without chewing.  
Contents of one sachet should be weighed and divided immediately before use; discard any remaining granules.  
**PENTASA® TABLETS** Tablets may be halved, quartered, or dispersed in water, but should not be chewed.  
**SALOFALK® GRANULES** Granules should be placed on tongue and washed down with water without chewing.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** There is no evidence to show that any one oral preparation of mesalazine is more effective than another; however, the delivery characteristics of oral mesalazine preparations may vary.  
Flavours of granule formulations of *Salofalk*® may include vanilla.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** If it is necessary to switch a patient to a different brand of mesalazine, the patient should be advised to report any changes in symptoms. Some products may require special administration advice; patients and carers should be informed.  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Mesalazine (oral) for inflammatory bowel disease [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mesalazine-oral-for-inflammatory-bowel-disease](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mesalazine-oral-for-inflammatory-bowel-disease)  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Mesalazine foam enema for inflammatory bowel disease [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mesalazine-foam-enema-for-inflammatory-bowel-disease](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mesalazine-foam-enema-for-inflammatory-bowel-disease)  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Mesalazine liquid enema for inflammatory bowel disease [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mesalazine-liquid-enema-for-inflammatory-bowel-disease](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mesalazine-liquid-enema-for-inflammatory-bowel-disease)  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Mesalazine suppositories for inflammatory bowel disease [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mesalazine-suppositories-for-inflammatory-bowel-disease](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mesalazine-suppositories-for-inflammatory-bowel-disease)

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Modified-release tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21 (does not apply to *Pentasa*® tablets), 25 (does not apply to *Pentasa*® tablets)

- **Pentasa** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Mesalazine 500 mg** *Pentasa* 500mg modified-release tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £30.74 DT = £30.74

**Mesalazine 1 gram** *Pentasa* 1g modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £36.89 DT = £36.89

**Foam**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), disodium edetate, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), polysorbates, propylene glycol, sodium metabisulfite

- **Salofalk** (Dr. Falk Pharma UK Ltd)

**Mesalazine 1 gram per 1 application** *Salofalk* 1g/application foam enema | 14 dose [PoM] £30.17 DT = £30.17

**Gastro-resistant tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5 (does not apply to *Octasa*®), 25

- **Asacol MR** (Allergan Ltd)

**Mesalazine 400 mg** *Asacol* 400mg MR gastro-resistant tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £27.45 DT = £27.45 | 168 tablet [PoM] £54.90

- **Octasa MR** (Tillotts Pharma Ltd)

**Mesalazine 400 mg** *Octasa* 400mg MR gastro-resistant tablets | 90 tablet [PoM] £16.58 DT = £16.58 | 120 tablet [PoM] £22.10



**Mesalazine 800 mg** Octasa 800mg MR gastro-resistant tablets | 90 tablet [PoM] £40.38 | 180 tablet [PoM] £80.75 DT = £80.75

► **Salofalk** (Dr. Falk Pharma UK Ltd)

**Mesalazine 250 mg** Salofalk 250mg gastro-resistant tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £16.19 DT = £16.19

**Mesalazine 500 mg** Salofalk 500mg gastro-resistant tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £32.38 DT = £32.38

### Suppository

► **Asacol** (Allergan Ltd)

**Mesalazine 250 mg** Asacol 250mg suppositories | 20 suppository [PoM] £4.82 DT = £4.82

**Mesalazine 500 mg** Asacol 500mg suppositories | 10 suppository [PoM] £4.82 DT = £4.82

► **Pentasa** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Mesalazine 1 gram** Pentasa 1g suppositories | 28 suppository [PoM] £40.01 DT = £40.01

► **Salofalk** (Dr. Falk Pharma UK Ltd)

**Mesalazine 500 mg** Salofalk 500mg suppositories | 30 suppository [PoM] £14.81

**Mesalazine 1 gram** Salofalk 1g suppositories | 30 suppository [PoM] £29.62

### Modified-release granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25 (does not apply to Pentasa® granules)

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

► **Pentasa** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Mesalazine 1 gram** Pentasa 1g modified-release granules sachets sugar-free | 50 sachet [PoM] £30.74 DT = £30.74

**Mesalazine 2 gram** Pentasa 2g modified-release granules sachets sugar-free | 60 sachet [PoM] £73.78 DT = £73.78

► **Salofalk** (Dr. Falk Pharma UK Ltd)

**Mesalazine 1 gram** Salofalk 1g gastro-resistant modified-release granules sachets sugar-free | 50 sachet [PoM] £28.74 DT = £28.74

**Mesalazine 1.5 gram** Salofalk 1.5g gastro-resistant modified-release granules sachets sugar-free | 60 sachet [PoM] £48.85 DT = £48.85

**Mesalazine 3 gram** Salofalk 3g gastro-resistant modified-release granules sachets sugar-free | 60 sachet [PoM] £97.70 DT = £97.70

### Enema

► **Pentasa** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Mesalazine 10 mg per 1 ml** Pentasa Mesalazine 1g/100ml enema | 7 enema [PoM] £17.73 DT = £17.73

► **Salofalk** (Dr. Falk Pharma UK Ltd)

**Mesalazine 33.9 mg per 1 ml** Salofalk 2g/59ml enema | 7 enema [PoM] £29.92 DT = £29.92

## Olsalazine sodium

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Treatment of acute attack of mild ulcerative colitis

► BY MOUTH

► Child 2–17 years: 500 mg twice daily, dose to be taken after food, then increased if necessary up to 1 g 3 times a day, dose to be increased over 1 week

#### Maintenance of remission of mild ulcerative colitis

► BY MOUTH

► Child 2–17 years: Maintenance 250–500 mg twice daily, dose to be taken after food

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: olsalazine

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Uncommon** Paraesthesia · tachycardia

► **Frequency not known** Palpitations · vision blurred

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk.

### ● BREAST FEEDING

**Monitoring** Monitor breast-fed infants for diarrhoea.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; manufacturer advises avoid in significant impairment.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Capsules can be opened and contents sprinkled on food.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Olsalazine sodium (Non-proprietary)**

**Olsalazine sodium 500 mg** Olsalazine 500mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £161.00 DT = £161.00

### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Olsalazine sodium (Non-proprietary)**

**Olsalazine sodium 250 mg** Olsalazine 250mg capsules | 112 capsule [PoM] £144.00 DT = £144.00

## Sulfasalazine

(Sulphasalazine)

07-Feb-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Treatment of acute attack of mild to moderate and severe ulcerative colitis | Active Crohn's disease

► BY MOUTH

► Child 2–11 years: 10–15 mg/kg 4–6 times a day (max. per dose 1 g) until remission occurs; increased if necessary up to 60 mg/kg daily in divided doses

► Child 12–17 years: 1–2 g 4 times a day until remission occurs

► BY RECTUM

► Child 5–7 years: 500 mg twice daily

► Child 8–11 years: 500 mg, dose to be administered in the morning and 1 g, dose to be administered at night

► Child 12–17 years: 0.5–1 g twice daily

#### Maintenance of remission of mild to moderate and severe ulcerative colitis

► BY MOUTH

► Child 2–11 years: 5–7.5 mg/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 500 mg)

► Child 12–17 years: 500 mg 4 times a day

► BY RECTUM

► Child 5–7 years: 500 mg twice daily

► Child 8–11 years: 500 mg, dose to be administered in the morning and 1 g, dose to be administered at night

► Child 12–17 years: 0.5–1 g twice daily

#### Juvenile idiopathic arthritis

► BY MOUTH

► Child 2–11 years: Initially 5 mg/kg twice daily for 1 week, then 10 mg/kg twice daily for 1 week, then 20 mg/kg twice daily for 1 week; maintenance 20–25 mg/kg twice daily; maximum 2 g per day

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 5 mg/kg twice daily for 1 week, then 10 mg/kg twice daily for 1 week, then 20 mg/kg twice daily for 1 week; maintenance 20–25 mg/kg twice daily; maximum 3 g per day

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for juvenile idiopathic arthritis.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

#### SAFE PRACTICE

Sulfasalazine has been confused with sulfadiazine; care must be taken to ensure the correct drug is prescribed and dispensed.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Child under 2 years of age

● **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · G6PD deficiency · history of allergy · history of asthma · maintain adequate fluid intake · risk of haematological toxicity · risk of hepatic toxicity · slow acetylator status

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sulfasalazine

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Insomnia · stomatitis · taste altered · tinnitus · urine abnormalities
- ▶ **Uncommon** Face oedema · seizure · vasculitis · vertigo
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Anaemia · appetite decreased · ataxia · cyanosis · encephalopathy · haematuria · hallucination · hepatic disorders · hypoproteinaemia · idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis · lymphadenopathy · macrocytosis · meningitis aseptica · methaemoglobinemia · myocarditis allergic · nephrotic syndrome · parotitis · periorbital oedema · pseudomembranous enterocolitis · serum sickness · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · smell disorders · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) · yellow discolouration of body fluids

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Incidence of side-effects increases with higher doses.

**Blood disorders** Haematological abnormalities occur usually in the first 3 to 6 months of treatment—discontinue if these occur.

- **PREGNANCY** Theoretical risk of neonatal haemolysis in third trimester; adequate folate supplements should be given to mother.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Small amounts in milk (1 report of bloody diarrhoea); theoretical risk of neonatal haemolysis especially in G6PD-deficient infants.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Risk of toxicity, including crystalluria, in moderate impairment—ensure high fluid intake. Avoid in severe impairment.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ **Blood disorders** Close monitoring of full blood counts (including differential white cell count and platelet count) is necessary initially, and at monthly intervals during the first 3 months.
- ▶ **Renal function** Although the manufacturer recommends renal function tests in rheumatic diseases, evidence of practical value is unsatisfactory.
- ▶ **Liver function** Liver function tests should be performed at monthly intervals for first 3 months.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Contact lenses Some soft contact lenses may be stained.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 14  
EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol

#### ▶ Sulfasalazine (Non-proprietary)

Sulfasalazine 50 mg per 1 ml Sulfasalazine 250mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 500 ml **[PoM]** £42.76 DT = £42.76

#### Gastro-resistant tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 14, 25

#### ▶ Sulfasalazine (Non-proprietary)

Sulfasalazine 500 mg Sulfasalazine 500mg gastro-resistant tablets | 112 tablet **[PoM]** £8.43 DT = £8.43

#### ▶ Salazopyrin EN (Pfizer Ltd)

Sulfasalazine 500 mg Salazopyrin EN-Tabs 500mg | 112 tablet **[PoM]** £8.43 DT = £8.43

#### ▶ Sulazine EC (Genesis Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Sulfasalazine 500 mg Sulazine EC 500mg tablets | 112 tablet **[PoM]** £6.74 DT = £8.43

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 14

#### ▶ Sulfasalazine (Non-proprietary)

Sulfasalazine 500 mg Sulfasalazine 500mg tablets | 112 tablet **[PoM]** £9.00 DT = £7.83

#### ▶ Salazopyrin (Pfizer Ltd)

Sulfasalazine 500 mg Salazopyrin 500mg tablets | 112 tablet **[PoM]** £6.97 DT = £7.83

### Suppository

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 14

#### ▶ Salazopyrin (Pfizer Ltd)

Sulfasalazine 500 mg Salazopyrin 500mg suppositories | 10 suppository **[PoM]** £3.30

## CORTICOSTEROIDS

F 436

21-Dec-2017

### Budesonide

- **DRUG ACTION** Budesonide is a glucocorticoid, which exerts significant local anti-inflammatory effects.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### BUDENOFALK® CAPSULES

**Mild to moderate Crohn's disease affecting the ileum or ascending colon | Collagenous colitis**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 3 mg 3 times a day for up to 8 weeks, reduce dose for the last 2 weeks of treatment

#### ENTOCORT® CAPSULES

**Mild to moderate Crohn's disease affecting the ileum or ascending colon**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 9 mg once daily for up to 8 weeks; reduce dose for the last 2–4 weeks of treatment, to be taken in the morning

#### ENTOCORT® ENEMA

**Ulcerative colitis involving rectal and recto-sigmoid disease**

##### ▶ BY RECTUM

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1 enema daily for 4 weeks, to be administered at bedtime

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for Crohn's disease, collagenous colitis or ulcerative colitis.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

#### ▶ Common or very common

- ▶ With oral use Muscle twitching · oedema
- ▶ With rectal use Diarrhoea · gastrointestinal disorders
- ▶ **Rare or very rare**
- ▶ With oral use Fatigue · malaise

### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Monitoring** When used in autoimmune hepatitis liver function tests should be monitored every 2 weeks for 1 month, then at least every 3 months.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Capsules can be opened and the contents mixed with apple or orange juice.

### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

**ENTOCORT® CAPSULES** Dispense modified-release capsules in original container (contains desiccant).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Gastro-resistant capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 10, 22, 25

#### ▶ Budenofalk (Dr. Falk Pharma UK Ltd)

Budesonide 3 mg Budenofalk 3mg gastro-resistant capsules | 100 capsule **[PoM]** £75.05 DT = £75.05

#### Modified-release capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 10, 25

#### ▶ Entocort CR (Tillotts Pharma Ltd)

Budesonide 3 mg Entocort CR 3mg capsules | 100 capsule **[PoM]** £84.15 DT = £84.15

#### Enema

#### ▶ Entocort (Tillotts Pharma Ltd)

Budesonide 20 microgram per 1 ml Entocort 2mg/100ml enema | 7 enema **[PoM]** £33.66



**IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > TUMOR NECROSIS FACTOR ALPHA (TNF- $\alpha$ ) INHIBITORS****Infliximab**

31-May-2016

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Severe active Crohn's disease**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child 6–17 years: Initially 5 mg/kg, then 5 mg/kg after 2 weeks, then 5 mg/kg after 4 weeks, then maintenance 5 mg/kg every 8 weeks, interval between maintenance doses adjusted according to response; discontinue if no response within 10 weeks of initial dose

**Fistulating Crohn's disease**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child 6–17 years: Initially 5 mg/kg, then 5 mg/kg after 2 weeks, followed by 5 mg/kg after 4 weeks, if condition has responded consult product literature for guidance on further doses

**Severe active ulcerative colitis**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child 6–17 years: Initially 5 mg/kg, then 5 mg/kg after 2 weeks, followed by 5 mg/kg after 4 weeks, then 5 mg/kg every 8 weeks, discontinue if no response within 8 weeks of initial dose

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for fistulating Crohn's disease in children.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

Adequate resuscitation facilities must be available when infliximab is used.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Moderate or severe heart failure • severe infections
- **CAUTIONS** Demyelinating disorders (risk of exacerbation) • dermatomyositis • development of malignancy • hepatitis B virus—monitor for active infection • history of malignancy • history of prolonged immunosuppressant or PUVA treatment in patients with psoriasis • mild heart failure (discontinue if symptoms develop or worsen) • predisposition to infection (discontinue if new serious infection develops) • risk of delayed hypersensitivity reactions if drug-free interval exceeds 16 weeks (re-administration after interval exceeding 16 weeks not recommended)

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ **Tuberculosis** Manufacturer advises to evaluate patients for active and latent tuberculosis before treatment. Active tuberculosis should be treated with standard treatment for at least 2 months before starting infliximab. If latent tuberculosis is diagnosed, treatment should be started before commencing treatment with infliximab. Patients who have previously received adequate treatment for tuberculosis can start infliximab but should be monitored every 3 months for possible recurrence. In patients without active tuberculosis but who were previously not treated adequately, chemoprophylaxis should ideally be completed before starting infliximab. In patients at high risk of tuberculosis who cannot be assessed by tuberculin skin test, chemoprophylaxis can be given concurrently with infliximab. Patients should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of tuberculosis develop (e.g. persistent cough, weight loss and fever).
- ▶ **Hypersensitivity reactions** Hypersensitivity reactions (including fever, chest pain, hypotension, hypertension, dyspnoea, transient visual loss, pruritus, urticaria, serum sickness-like reactions, angioedema, anaphylaxis) reported during or within 1–2 hours after infusion (risk greatest during first or second infusion or in patients who discontinue other immunosuppressants). Manufacturer

advises prophylactic antipyretics, antihistamines, or hydrocortisone may be administered.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: monoclonal antibodies
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Abscess • alopecia • anaemia • arrhythmias • arthralgia • chest pain • chills • constipation • decreased leucocytes • depression • diarrhoea • dizziness • dyspnoea • eye inflammation • fatigue • fever • gastrointestinal discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • haemorrhage • headache • hepatic disorders • hyperhidrosis • hypertension • hypotension • increased risk of infection • infusion related reaction • insomnia • lymphadenopathy • myalgia • nausea • neutropenia • oedema • pain • palpitations • respiratory disorders • sensation abnormal • sepsis • skin reactions • vasodilation • vertigo
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Anxiety • cheilitis • cholecystitis • confusion • drowsiness • healing impaired • heart failure • hypersensitivity • lupus-like syndrome • lymphocytosis • memory loss • neoplasms • nerve disorders • pancreatitis • peripheral ischaemia • pulmonary oedema • seborrhoea • seizure • syncope • thrombocytopenia • thrombophlebitis
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis • circulatory collapse • cyanosis • demyelinating disorders • granuloma • haemolytic anaemia • hepatitis B reactivation • meningitis • pancytopenia • pericardial effusion • sarcoidosis • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • transverse myelitis • vasculitis • vasospasm
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Bone fracture • dermatomyositis exacerbated • hepatosplenic T-cell lymphoma (increased risk in inflammatory bowel disease) • myocardial infarction • myocardial ischaemia • ulcerative colitis aggravated • vision loss
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises adequate contraception during and for at least 6 months after last dose.
- **PREGNANCY** Use only if essential.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount probably too small to be harmful.
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Tuberculosis Patients should be evaluated for tuberculosis before treatment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Monitor for infection before, during, and for 6 months after treatment.
  - ▶ All patients should be observed carefully for 1–2 hours after infusion and resuscitation equipment should be available for immediate use (risk of hypersensitivity reactions).
  - ▶ Monitor for symptoms of delayed hypersensitivity if re-administered after a prolonged period.
  - ▶ Manufacturer advises periodic skin examination for non-melanoma skin cancer, particularly in patients with risk factors.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion* reconstitute each 100-mg vial of powder with 10 mL Water for Injections; to dissolve, gently swirl vial without shaking; allow to stand for 5 minutes; dilute required dose with Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a final volume of 250 mL and give through a low protein-binding filter (1.2 micron or less) over at least 2 hours; start infusion within 3 hours of reconstitution.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Infliximab is a biological medicine. Biological medicines must be prescribed and dispensed by brand name, see *Biological medicines* and *Biosimilar medicines*, under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Tuberculosis Patients and carers should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of tuberculosis (e.g. persistent cough, weight loss, and fever) develop.

**Blood disorders** Patients and carers should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of blood disorders (such as fever, sore throat, bruising, or bleeding) develop.

**Hypersensitivity reactions** Patients and carers should be advised to keep Alert card with them at all times and seek medical advice if symptoms of delayed hypersensitivity develop.

An alert card should be provided.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

#### ► Infliximab for Crohn's disease (May 2010) NICE TA187

In children over 6 years of age, infliximab is recommended for the treatment of severe active Crohn's disease that has not responded to conventional therapy (including corticosteroids and other drugs affecting the immune response, and primary nutrition therapy) or when conventional therapy cannot be used because of intolerance or contra-indications.

Infliximab should be given as a planned course of treatment for 12 months or until treatment failure, whichever is shorter. Treatment should be continued beyond 12 months only if there is evidence of active disease—in these cases the need for treatment should be reviewed at least annually. If the disease relapses after stopping treatment, infliximab can be restarted.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA187](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA187)

#### ► Infliximab, adalimumab and golimumab for treating moderately to severely active ulcerative colitis after the failure of conventional therapy (February 2015) NICE TA329

Infliximab is an option for treating severely active ulcerative colitis in children whose disease has responded inadequately to conventional therapy including corticosteroids and mercaptopurine or azathioprine.

Infliximab should be given as a planned course of treatment until treatment fails (including the need for surgery) or until 12 months after starting treatment, whichever is shorter. Treatment should be continued only if there is clear evidence of a response. Patients who continue treatment should be reassessed every 12 months to determine whether ongoing treatment is still clinically appropriate.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA329](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA329)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Powder for solution for infusion

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

#### ► Flixabi (Biogen Idec Ltd) ▼

**Infliximab 100 mg** Flixabi 100mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £377.00 (Hospital only)

#### ► Inflectra (Pfizer Ltd) ▼

**Infliximab 100 mg** Inflectra 100mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £377.66 (Hospital only)

#### ► Remicade (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Infliximab 100 mg** Remicade 100mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £419.62 (Hospital only)

#### ► Remsima (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd) ▼

**Infliximab 100 mg** Remsima 100mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £377.66 (Hospital only)

either diarrhoea, constipation, or alternating diarrhoea and constipation. Constipation presents with straining, urgency, and a sensation of incomplete evacuation. Before a diagnosis of IBS is made, the symptoms should be present at least once per week for at least 2 months and other potential pathological causes of the symptoms should be excluded. IBS symptoms are often aggravated by psychological factors, such as anxieties, emotional stress, and fear.

### Aims of treatment

Treatment of IBS is focused on symptom control in order to improve quality of life, including minimising abdominal pain and normalising the frequency and consistency of stools.

### Non-drug treatment

**[EvGr]** There is no evidence of the effectiveness of any form of dietary advice or increased fibre intake in children and it is not known whether dietary advice recommended to adult patients is of benefit to children. **⚠**

**[EvGr]** Eating regularly, limiting fresh fruit intake, and reducing intake of 'resistant starch' and insoluble fibre (e.g. bran) can be recommended. If an increase in dietary fibre is required, soluble fibre such as oats, ispaghula husk p. 40, or sterculia p. 41 can be recommended. Ensuring a sufficient intake of fluids can also be recommended. **⚠**

### Drug treatment

**[EvGr]** Clinicians should only prescribe drugs for children with IBS in cases of severe symptoms that have not responded to non-drug approaches. Treatment options include laxatives, antimitility drugs or antispasmodic drugs. **⚠**

**[EvGr]** A laxative can be used to treat abdominal pain if the underlying cause is suspected to be constipation. An osmotic laxative, such as a macrogol or lactulose p. 41, is preferred; lactulose may cause flatulence during the first few days of treatment. Loperamide hydrochloride p. 49 may relieve diarrhoea and antispasmodic drugs may relieve pain. **⚠**

#### Other drugs used for Inflammatory bowel disease

Alverine citrate p. 63 • Mebeverine hydrochloride p. 63

## ANTISPASMODICS

### Mebeverine with ispaghula husk

04-Feb-2016

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, mebeverine hydrochloride p. 63, ispaghula husk p. 40.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Irritable bowel syndrome

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 1 sachet twice daily, in water, morning and evening, 30 minutes before food and 1 sachet daily if required, taken 30 minutes before midday meal

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Contents of one sachet should be stirred into a glass (approx. 150 mL) of cold water and drunk immediately.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer ispaghula husk with mebeverine granules.

## 1.3 Irritable bowel syndrome

### Irritable bowel syndrome

24-Feb-2016

#### Description of condition

Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) is a gastrointestinal disorder characterised by abdominal pain or discomfort that may be relieved by defaecation. It can also be associated with the passage of mucus, bloating, and disordered defaecation:

<https://nhathuocngocanh.com/>  
downloaded from www.medicalb.r.com

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Effervescent granules**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13, 22

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Potassium

▶ **Fybogel Mebeverine** (Reckitt Benckiser Healthcare (UK) Ltd)

Mebeverine hydrochloride 135 mg, Ispaghula husk

3.5 gram Fybogel Mebeverine effervescent granules sachets orange sugar-free | 10 sachet **P** £4.64 DT = £4.64

## Peppermint oil

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### **COLPERMIN®**

**Relief of abdominal colic and distension, particularly in irritable bowel syndrome**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Child 15–17 years: 1–2 capsules 3 times a day for up to 3 months if necessary, capsule to be swallowed whole with water

● **CAUTIONS** Sensitivity to menthol

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: peppermint oil

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Ataxia · bradycardia · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastroesophageal reflux disease · headache · nausea · paraesthesia · rash erythematous · tremor · vomiting

● **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Significant levels of menthol in breast milk unlikely.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Capsules should not be broken or chewed because peppermint oil may irritate mouth or oesophagus.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Modified-release capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 22, 25

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Arachis (peanut) oil

▶ **Colpermin** (McNeil Products Ltd)

Peppermint oil 200 microtitre Colpermin gastro-resistant modified-release capsules | 20 capsule **GSL** £3.77 | 100 capsule **GSL** £14.33 DT = £13.09

of the bowel resection. Deficiencies in vitamins A, B<sub>12</sub>, D, E, and K, essential fatty acids, zinc and selenium can occur.

Hypomagnesaemia is common and is treated with oral or intravenous magnesium supplementation (see under *Magnesium*, in *Minerals* p. 596), though administration of oral magnesium may cause diarrhoea. Occasionally the use of oral alfacalcidol p. 630 and correction of sodium depletion may be useful. Nutritional support can range from oral supplements to parenteral nutrition, depending on the severity of intestinal failure. **A**

#### **Diarrhoea and high output stomas**

Diarrhoea is a common symptom of short bowel syndrome and can be due to multiple factors. **EvGr** The use of oral rehydration salts can be considered in order to promote adequate hydration. Oral intake influences the volume of stool passed, so reducing food intake will lessen diarrhoea, but will also exacerbate the problems of undernutrition. A child may require parenteral nutrition to allow them to eat less if the extent of diarrhoea is unacceptable.

Pharmacological treatment may be necessary, with the choice of drug depending on the potential for side-effects and the degree of resection. **A**

#### **Antimotility drugs**

**EvGr** Loperamide hydrochloride p. 49 reduces intestinal motility and thus exerts antidiarrhoeal actions. Loperamide hydrochloride is preferred over other antimotility drugs as it is not sedative and does not cause dependence or fat malabsorption. High doses of loperamide hydrochloride [unlicensed] may be required in children with a short bowel due to disrupted enterohepatic circulation and a rapid gastro-intestinal transit time.

Co-phenotrope p. 48 has traditionally been used alone or in combination with other medications to help decrease faecal output. Co-phenotrope crosses the blood–brain barrier and can produce central nervous system side-effects, which may limit its use; the potential for dependence and anticholinergic effects may also restrict its use. **A**

#### **Colestyramine**

**EvGr** In children with an intact colon and less than 100 cm of ileum resected, colestyramine p. 129 can be used to bind the unabsorbed bile salts, which reduces diarrhoea. When colestyramine is given to these children, it is important to monitor for evidence of fat malabsorption (steatorrhoea) or fat-soluble vitamin deficiencies. **A**

#### **Antisecretory drugs**

**EvGr** Drugs that reduce gastric acid secretion reduce jejunostomy output. Omeprazole p. 58 is readily absorbed in the duodenum and upper small bowel, but if less than 50 cm of jejunum remains, it may need to be given intravenously. Use of a proton pump inhibitor alone does not eliminate the need for further intervention for fluid control (such as antimotility agents, intravenous fluids, or oral rehydration salts). **A**

#### **Growth factors**

Growth factors can be used to facilitate intestinal adaptation after surgery in children with short bowel syndrome, thus enhancing fluid, electrolyte, and micronutrient absorption.

Teduglutide p. 36 is an analogue of endogenous human glucagon-like peptide 2 (GLP-2) which is licensed for use in the management of short bowel syndrome in children aged one year and over. It may be considered after a period of stabilisation following surgery, during which intravenous fluids and nutritional support should have been optimised.

#### **Drug absorption**

For *Prescribing in children with stoma* see *Stoma care* p. 73.

**EvGr** Many drugs are incompletely absorbed by children with a short bowel and may need to be prescribed in much higher doses than usual (such as levothyroxine, warfarin, oral contraceptives, and digoxin) or may need to be given intravenously. **A**

## 1.4 Short bowel syndrome

### Short bowel syndrome

31-Aug-2016

#### **Description of condition**

Children with a shortened bowel due to large surgical resection (with or without stoma formation) may require medical management to ensure adequate absorption of nutrients and fluid. Absorption of oral medication is also often impaired.

#### **Aims of treatment**

The management of short bowel syndrome focuses on ensuring adequate nutrition and drug absorption, thereby reducing the risk of complications resulting from these effects.

#### **Drug treatment**

##### **Nutritional deficiencies**

**EvGr** Children with a short bowel may require replacement of vitamins and minerals depending on the extent and position

Several factors can alter the absorption of drugs taken by mouth in children with a compromised gastrointestinal system. The most important factors are the length of intestine available for drug absorption, and which section has been removed. The small intestine, with its large surface area and high blood flow, is the most important site of drug absorption. The larger the amount of the small intestine that has been removed, the higher the possibility that drug absorption will be affected. Other factors such as gastric emptying and gastric transit time also affect drug handling.

**[EvGr]** Enteric-coated and modified-release preparations are unsuitable for use in patients with short bowel syndrome, particularly in children with an ileostomy, as there may not be sufficient release of the active ingredient.

Dosage forms with quick dissolution (such as soluble tablets) should be used. Uncoated tablets and liquid formulations may also be suitable. **[A]** **[EvGr]** Before prescribing liquid formulations, prescribers should consider the osmolality, excipient content, and volume required. Hyperosmolar liquids and some excipients (such as sorbitol) can result in fluid loss. The calorie density of oral supplements should also be considered, as it will influence the volume to be taken. **[E]**

## AMINO ACIDS AND DERIVATIVES

### Teduglutide

15-May-2018

● **DRUG ACTION** Teduglutide is an analogue of human glucagon-like peptide-2 (GLP-2), which preserves mucosal integrity by promoting growth and repair of the intestine.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Short bowel syndrome (initiated under specialist supervision)**

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 1–17 years: 0.05 mg/kg once daily, dose to be administered to alternating quadrants of the abdomen; alternatively the thigh can be used, for optimal injection volume per body weight, consult product literature. Review treatment after 12 weeks

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active or suspected malignancy · history of gastro-intestinal malignancy (in previous 5 years)

● **CAUTIONS** Abrupt withdrawal of parenteral support (reduce gradually with concomitant monitoring of fluid status) · cardiac insufficiency · cardiovascular disease · colo-rectal polyps · hypertension

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Colo-rectal polyps Manufacturer recommends faecal occult blood testing in children before initiation of treatment and yearly thereafter. Manufacturer also advises colonoscopy or sigmoidoscopy in children aged 12 years and older before initiation of treatment, after 1 year of treatment and then every 5 years thereafter. Colonoscopy or sigmoidoscopy should be performed in all children with unexplained blood in stool.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anxiety · appetite decreased · congestive heart failure · cough · dyspnoea · fluid imbalance · gallbladder disorders · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · headache · influenza like illness · insomnia · nausea · pancreatitis · peripheral oedema · respiratory tract infection · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Syncope

● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Manufacturer advises caution in patients with tetracycline hypersensitivity.

● **PREGNANCY** **[EvGr]** Specialist sources indicate use if necessary—no human data available. **[D]**

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—toxicity in animal studies.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises use half the daily dose in moderate or severe impairment and end-stage renal disease.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Manufacturer advises monitoring of small bowel function, gall bladder, bile ducts and pancreas during treatment.

● **TREATMENT CESSATION** Caution when discontinuing treatment—risk of dehydration.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients with cardiovascular disease should seek medical attention if they notice sudden weight gain, swollen ankles or dyspnoea—may indicate increased fluid absorption.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

SMC No. 1139/16

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (April 2018) that teduglutide (*Revestive*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of short bowel syndrome, initiated in paediatric patients aged 1 to 17 years. Patients should be stable following a period of intestinal adaptation after surgery. This advice is contingent upon the continuing availability of the patient access scheme in NHS Scotland or a list price that is equivalent or lower.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Powder and solvent for solution for injection

► **Revestive** (Shire Pharmaceuticals Ltd) ▼

**Teduglutide 1.25 mg** Revestive 1.25mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 28 vial **[PoM]** £7,307.70

**Teduglutide 5 mg** Revestive 5mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 28 vial **[PoM]** £14,615.39

## 2 Constipation and bowel cleansing

### 2.1 Bowel cleansing

**Other drugs used for Bowel cleansing** Bisacodyl, p. 45 · Docusate sodium, p. 44

## DIAGNOSTIC AGENTS > RADIOGRAPHIC CONTRAST MEDIA

### Meglumine amidotrizoate with sodium amidotrizoate (Diatrizoates)

● **DRUG ACTION** Meglumine amidotrizoate with sodium amidotrizoate is a radiological contrast medium with high osmolality.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Uncomplicated meconium ileus

##### ► BY RECTUM

- Neonate: 15–30 mL for 1 dose.

##### Distal intestinal obstruction syndrome in children with cystic fibrosis

##### ► BY MOUTH, OR BY RECTUM

- Child 1–23 months: 15–30 mL for 1 dose
- Child (body-weight 15–25 kg): 50 mL for 1 dose
- Child (body-weight 26 kg and above): 100 mL for 1 dose

##### Radiological investigations

- Child. Dose to be recommended by radiologist

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in distal intestinal obstruction syndrome.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hyperthyroidism
- **CAUTIONS** Asthma · benign nodular goitre · dehydration · electrolyte disturbance (correct first) · enteritis · history of allergy · in children with oesophageal fistulae (aspiration may lead to pulmonary oedema) · latent hyperthyroidism · risk of anaphylactoid reactions increased by concomitant administration of beta-blockers

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain · cardiac arrest · consciousness impaired · diarrhoea · dizziness · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · face oedema · fever · fluid imbalance · gastrointestinal disorders · headache · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · hyperthyroidism · hypotension · nausea · pneumonia aspiration · pulmonary oedema · respiratory disorders · shock · skin reactions · tachycardia · toxic epidermal necrolysis · vomiting

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ With oral use Oral blistering
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Hypersensitivity to iodine.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises caution.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount probably too small to be harmful.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Intravenous prehydration is essential in neonates and infants. Fluid intake should be encouraged for 3 hours after administration. *By mouth*, for child bodyweight under 25 kg, dilute *Gastrografin*® with 3 times its volume of water or fruit juice; for child bodyweight over 25 kg, dilute *Gastrografin*® with twice its volume of water or fruit juice. *By rectum*, administration must be carried out slowly under radiological supervision to ensure required site is reached. For child under 5 years, dilute *Gastrografin*® with 5 times its volume of water; for child over 5 years dilute *Gastrografin*® with 4 times its volume of water.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Disodium edetate

##### ▶ *Gastrografin* (Bayer Plc)

Sodium amidotrizoate 100 mg per 1 ml, Meglumine amidotrizoate 660 mg per 1 ml *Gastrografin* oral solution sugar-free | 1000 ml [P] £175.00 (Hospital only)

## LAXATIVES > OSMOTIC LAXATIVES

### Citric acid with magnesium carbonate

(Formulated as a bowel cleansing preparation)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Bowel evacuation for surgery, colonoscopy or radiological examination**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 5–9 years: One-third of a sachet to be given at 8 a.m. the day before the procedure and, one-third of a sachet to be given between 2 and 4 p.m. the day before the procedure
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 0.5–1 sachet, given at 8 a.m. the day before the procedure and 0.5–1 sachet, given between 2 and 4 p.m. the day before the procedure

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute severe colitis · gastric retention · gastro-intestinal obstruction · gastro-intestinal perforation · toxic megacolon

- **CAUTIONS** Children · colitis (avoid if acute severe colitis) · debilitated · hypovolaemia (should be corrected before administration of bowel cleansing preparations) · impaired gag reflex or possibility of regurgitation or aspiration · patients with fluid and electrolyte disturbances

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Adequate hydration should be maintained during treatment.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: bowel cleansing preparations

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Gastrointestinal discomfort · nausea · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Dehydration · dizziness · electrolyte imbalance · headache

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Abdominal pain is usually transient and can be reduced by taking preparation more slowly.

- **PREGNANCY** Use with caution.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in hepatic coma if risk of renal failure.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—risk of hypermagnesaemia.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Renal function should be measured before starting treatment in patients at risk of fluid and electrolyte disturbances.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** One sachet should be reconstituted with 200 mL of hot water; the solution should be allowed to cool for approx. 30 minutes before drinking.

#### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Reconstitution of one sachet containing 11.57 g magnesium carbonate and 17.79 g anhydrous citric acid produces a solution containing magnesium citrate with 118 mmol Mg<sup>2+</sup>.

Flavours of oral powders may include lemon and lime.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Low residue or fluid only diet (e.g. water, fruit squash, clear soup, black tea or coffee) recommended before procedure (according to prescriber's advice) and copious intake of clear fluids recommended until procedure. Patient or carers should be given advice on how to administer oral powder.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Effervescent powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13, 10

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Magnesium

##### ▶ *Citramag* (Sanochemia Diagnostics UK Ltd)

Magnesium carbonate heavy 11.57 gram, Citric acid anhydrous 17.79 gram *Citramag* effervescent powder sachets sugar-free | 10 sachet [P] £18.92

### Macrogol 3350 with anhydrous sodium sulfate, potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride

(Formulated as a bowel cleansing preparation)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Bowel cleansing before radiological examination, colonoscopy, or surgery**

##### ▶ INITIALLY BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 2 litres daily for 2 doses: first dose of reconstituted solution taken on the continued →



evening before procedure and the second dose on the morning of procedure, alternatively (by mouth) initially 250 mL every 10–15 minutes, reconstituted solution to be administered, alternatively (by nasogastric tube) initially 20–30 mL/minute, starting on the day before procedure until 4 litres have been consumed

#### Distal intestinal obstruction syndrome

► BY MOUTH, OR BY NASOGASTRIC TUBE, OR BY GASTROSTOMY TUBE

► Child 1-17 years: 10 mL/kilogram/hour for 30 minutes, then increased to 20 mL/kilogram/hour for 30 minutes, then increased if tolerated to 25 mL/kilogram/hour, max. 100 mL/kg (or 4 litres) over 4 hours, repeat 4 hour treatment if necessary

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Klean-Prep*® not licensed for use in children.
  - **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute severe colitis · gastric retention · gastro-intestinal obstruction · gastro-intestinal perforation · gastro-intestinal ulceration · toxic megacolon
  - **CAUTIONS** Children · colitis (avoid if acute severe colitis) · debilitated patients · fluid and electrolyte disturbances · heart failure · hypovolaemia (should be corrected before administration of bowel cleansing preparations) · impaired gag reflex or possibility of regurgitation or aspiration
  - **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: bowel cleansing preparations
  - **SIDE-EFFECTS** Angioedema · arrhythmia · chills · confusion · dehydration · dizziness · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · fever · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · malaise · nausea · palpitations · seizure · skin reactions · thirst · vomiting
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Abdominal pain is usually transient and can be reduced by taking preparation more slowly.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise use only if essential—no information available.
  - **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturers advise use only if essential—no information available.
  - **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Renal function should be measured before starting treatment in patients at risk of fluid and electrolyte disturbances.
  - **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** 1 sachet should be reconstituted with 1 litre of water. Flavouring such as clear fruit cordials may be added if required. After reconstitution the solution should be kept in a refrigerator and discarded if unused after 24 hours.
  - **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Each *Klean-Prep*® sachet provides Na<sup>+</sup> 125 mmol, K<sup>+</sup> 10 mmol, Cl<sup>-</sup> 35 mmol and HCO<sup>3-</sup> 20 mmol when reconstituted with 1 litre of water.
  - **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Solid food should not be taken for 2 hours before starting treatment. Adequate hydration should be maintained during treatment. Treatment can be stopped if bowel motions become watery and clear.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 13

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Bicarbonate, chloride, potassium, sodium

► *Klean-Prep* (Norgine Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Potassium chloride 742.5 mg, Sodium chloride 1.465 gram, Sodium bicarbonate 1.685 gram, Sodium sulfate anhydrous 5.685 gram, Polyethylene glycol 3350 59 gram *Klean-Prep* oral powder 69g sachets sugar-free | 4 sachet [P] £10.48

## LAXATIVES > STIMULANT LAXATIVES

### Magnesium citrate with sodium picosulfate

(Formulated as a bowel cleansing preparation)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### PICOLAX® SACHETS

**Bowel evacuation on day before radiological procedure, endoscopy, or surgery**

► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 year: 0.25 sachet taken before 8 a.m., then 0.25 sachet after 6–8 hours
- Child 2-3 years: 0.5 sachet taken before 8 a.m., then 0.5 sachet after 6–8 hours
- Child 4-8 years: 1 sachet taken before 8 a.m., then 0.5 sachet after 6–8 hours
- Child 9-17 years: 1 sachet taken before 8 a.m., then 1 sachet after 6–8 hours

##### PHARMACOKINETICS

► Acts within 3 hours of first dose.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute severe colitis · ascites · congestive cardiac failure · gastric retention · gastro-intestinal obstruction · gastro-intestinal perforation · gastro-intestinal ulceration · toxic megacolon
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac disease (avoid in congestive cardiac failure) · children · colitis (avoid if acute severe colitis) · debilitated patients · fluid and electrolyte disturbances · hypovolaemia (should be corrected before administration) · impaired gag reflex or possibility of regurgitation or aspiration · recent gastro-intestinal surgery
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · nausea
  - **Uncommon** Confusion · electrolyte imbalance · gastrointestinal disorders · seizures · skin reactions · vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Caution.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Caution.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in hepatic coma if risk of renal failure.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—risk of hypermagnesaemia.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** One sachet of sodium picosulfate with magnesium citrate powder should be reconstituted with 150 mL (approx. half a glass) of cold water; patients should be warned that heat is generated during reconstitution and that the solution should be allowed to cool before drinking.
- **PICOLAX® SACHETS** One sachet should be reconstituted with 150 mL (approx. half a glass) of cold water.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral powder formulations may include lemon.
- **PICOLAX® SACHETS** One reconstituted sachet contains K<sup>+</sup> 5 mmol and Mg<sup>2+</sup> 87 mmol.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Low residue diet recommended on the day before procedure and copious intake of water or other clear fluids recommended during treatment. Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer sodium picosulfate with magnesium citrate oral powder.

**PICOLAX® SACHETS** Low residue diet recommended on the day before procedure and copious intake of water or other clear fluids recommended during treatment.

Patients and carers should be given advice on how to administer oral powder; they should be warned that heat is

generated during reconstitution and that the solution should be allowed to cool before drinking.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 13  
ELECTROLYTES: May contain Magnesium, potassium  
▶ **Picolax** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Sodium picosulfate 10 mg, Magnesium oxide 3.5 gram, Citric acid anhydrous 12 gram** Picolax oral powder 16.1g sachets sugar-free | 2 sachet [P] £3.39

## 2.2 Constipation

### Constipation

06-Jun-2017

#### Description of condition

Constipation is defaecation that is unsatisfactory because of infrequent stools, difficult stool passage, or seemingly incomplete defaecation. It can occur at any age and is common in childhood.

#### Overview

Before prescribing laxatives it is important to be sure that the child is constipated and that the constipation is not secondary to an underlying undiagnosed complaint. Early identification of constipation and effective treatment can improve outcomes for children. Without early diagnosis and treatment, an acute episode of constipation can lead to anal fissure and become chronic. In children with secondary constipation caused by a drug, the drug should be reviewed.

#### Laxatives

##### Bulk-forming laxatives

Bulk-forming laxatives include bran, ispaghula husk p. 40, methylcellulose p. 40 and sterculia p. 41. They are of particular value in children with small hard stools if fibre cannot be increased in the diet. [EvGr] They relieve constipation by increasing faecal mass, which stimulates peristalsis; children and their carers should be advised that the full effect may take some days to develop. Adequate fluid intake must be maintained to avoid intestinal obstruction, though this may be difficult for children. ⚠

Methylcellulose, ispaghula husk and sterculia may be used in patients who cannot tolerate bran. Methylcellulose also acts as a faecal softener.

##### Stimulant laxative

Stimulant laxatives include bisacodyl p. 45, sodium picosulfate p. 47, and members of the anthraquinone group, senna p. 46, co-danthramer p. 45 and co-danthrusate p. 46. Stimulant laxatives increase intestinal motility and often cause abdominal cramp; they should be avoided in intestinal obstruction.

The use of co-danthramer and co-danthrusate is limited to constipation in terminally ill patients because of potential carcinogenicity (based on animal studies) and evidence of genotoxicity.

Docusate sodium p. 44 is believed to act as both a stimulant laxative and as a faecal softener (below). Glycerol suppositories act as a lubricant and as a rectal stimulant by virtue of the mildly irritant action of glycerol.

##### Faecal softeners

Faecal softeners are claimed to act by decreasing surface tension and increasing penetration of intestinal fluid into the faecal mass. Docusate sodium, and glycerol suppositories p. 46 have softening properties. Enemas containing arachis oil p. 44 (ground-nut oil, peanut oil) lubricate and soften impacted faeces and promote a bowel movement. Liquid paraffin has also been used as a lubricant for the passage of

stool but manufacturer advises that it should be used with caution because of its adverse effects, which include anal seepage and the risks of granulomatous disease of the gastro-intestinal tract or of lipid pneumonia on aspiration.

##### Osmotic laxatives

Osmotic laxatives increase the amount of water in the large bowel, either by drawing fluid from the body into the bowel or by retaining the fluid they were administered with. Lactulose p. 41 is a semi-synthetic disaccharide which is not absorbed from the gastro-intestinal tract. It produces an osmotic diarrhoea of low faecal pH, and discourages the proliferation of ammonia-producing organisms. It is therefore useful in the treatment of hepatic encephalopathy. Macrogols (such as macrogol 3350 with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride p. 42) are inert polymers of ethylene glycol which sequester fluid in the bowel; giving fluid with macrogols may reduce the dehydrating effect sometimes seen with osmotic laxatives.

Macrogols are an effective non-traumatic means of evacuation in children with faecal impaction and can be used in the long-term management of chronic constipation.

##### Bowel cleansing preparations

Bowel cleansing preparations are used before colonic surgery, colonoscopy, or radiological examination to ensure the bowel is free of solid contents; examples include macrogol 3350 with anhydrous sodium sulfate, potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride p. 37, citric acid with magnesium carbonate p. 37, magnesium citrate with sodium picosulfate p. 38 and sodium acid phosphate with sodium phosphate p. 43. Bowel cleansing preparations are not treatments for constipation.

#### Management

[EvGr] The first-line treatment for children with constipation requires the use of a laxative in combination with dietary modification or with behavioural interventions. Diet modification alone is not recommended as first-line treatment.

In children, an increase in dietary fibre, adequate fluid intake and exercise is advised. Diet should be balanced and contain fruits, vegetables, high-fibre bread, baked beans and wholegrain breakfast cereals. Unprocessed bran (which may cause bloating and flatulence and reduces the absorption of micronutrients) is **not** recommended.

If faecal impaction is not present (or has been treated), the child should be treated promptly with a laxative. A macrogol (such as macrogol 3350 with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride) is preferred as first-line management. If the response is inadequate, add a stimulant laxative or change to a stimulant laxative if the first-line therapy is not tolerated. If stools remain hard, lactulose or another laxative with softening effects, such as docusate sodium can be added.

In children with chronic constipation, laxatives should be continued for several weeks after a regular pattern of bowel movements or toilet training is established. The dose of laxatives should then be tapered gradually, over a period of months, according to response. Some children may require laxative therapy for several years.

A shorter duration of laxative treatment may be possible in some children with a short history of constipation.

Laxatives should be administered at a time that produces an effect that is likely to fit in with the child's toilet routine.



##### Faecal impaction

[EvGr] Treatment of faecal impaction may initially increase symptoms of soiling and abdominal pain. In children over 1 year of age with faecal impaction, an oral preparation containing a macrogol (such as macrogol 3350 with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride) is used to clear faecal mass and to establish and maintain soft well-formed stools, using an escalating dose



regimen depending on symptoms and response. If disimpaction does not occur after 2 weeks, a stimulant laxative can be added or if stools are hard, used in combination with an osmotic laxative such as lactulose. Long-term regular use of laxatives is essential to maintain well-formed stools and prevent recurrence of faecal impaction; intermittent use may provoke relapses.

Suppositories and enemas should not be used in primary care unless all oral medications have failed and preferably only then following specialist advice. If the impacted mass is not expelled following treatment with macrogols and a stimulant laxative, a sodium citrate enema p. 44 can be administered. Although rectal administration of laxatives may be effective, this route is frequently distressing for the child and may lead to persistence of withholding. A sodium acid phosphate with sodium phosphate enema may be administered under specialist supervision if disimpaction does not occur after a sodium citrate enema. Manual evacuation under anaesthetic may be necessary if disimpaction does not occur after oral and rectal treatment, or if the child is afraid. Children undergoing disimpaction should be reviewed within one week. Maintenance treatment should be started as soon as the bowel is disimpacted. ⚠

### Useful Resources

Constipation in children and young People: Diagnosis and management of idiopathic childhood constipation in primary and secondary care. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Clinical guideline 99. May 2010.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg99](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg99)

## LAXATIVES > BULK-FORMING LAXATIVES

### Ispaghula husk

24-Feb-2016

- **DRUG ACTION** Bulk-forming laxatives relieve constipation by increasing faecal mass which stimulates peristalsis.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Constipation

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–5 years: 2.5–5 mL twice daily, dose to be taken only when prescribed by a doctor, as half or whole level spoonful in water, preferably after meals, morning and evening
- Child 6–11 years: 2.5–5 mL twice daily, dose to be given as a half or whole level spoonful in water, preferably after meals, morning and evening
- Child 12–17 years: 1 sachet twice daily, dose to be given in water preferably after meals, morning and evening

##### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- 1 sachet equivalent to 2 level 5 mL spoonful.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Colonic atony · faecal impaction · intestinal obstruction · reduced gut motility
- **CAUTIONS** Adequate fluid intake should be maintained to avoid intestinal obstruction
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal distension · bronchospasm · conjunctivitis · gastrointestinal disorders · hypersensitivity · rhinitis · skin reactions
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Dose to be taken with at least 150 mL liquid.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of soluble granules formulations may include plain, lemon, or orange.
- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Ispaghula husk contains potent allergens. Individuals exposed to the product (including those handling the product) can develop hypersensitivity reactions such as rhinitis, conjunctivitis, bronchospasm and in some cases, anaphylaxis.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Manufacturer advises that preparations that swell in contact with liquid should always be carefully swallowed with water and should not be taken immediately before going to bed. Patients and their carers should be advised that the full effect may take some days to develop and should be given advice on how to administer ispaghula husk.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Effervescent granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

##### ► Ispaghula husk (Non-proprietary)

**Ispaghula husk 3.5g** Ispaghula husk 3.5g effervescent granules sachets gluten free sugar free | 30 sachet [P] [S] DT = £2.72

##### Granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

##### ► Ispaghula husk (Non-proprietary)

**Ispaghula husk 3.5g** Ispaghula husk 3.5g granules sachets gluten free | 30 sachet [GSL] £2.72

Combinations available: *Senna with ispaghula husk*, p. 47

## Methylcellulose

- **DRUG ACTION** Bulk-forming laxatives relieve constipation by increasing faecal mass which stimulates peristalsis.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Constipation | Diarrhoea

###### ► BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

- Child 7–11 years: 2 tablets twice daily
- Child 12–17 years: 3–6 tablets twice daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** No age limit specified by manufacturer.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Colonic atony · difficulty in swallowing · faecal impaction · infective bowel disease · intestinal obstruction
- **CAUTIONS** Adequate fluid intake should be maintained to avoid intestinal obstruction
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal distension · gastrointestinal disorders
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** In constipation the dose should be taken with at least 300 mL liquid. In diarrhoea, ileostomy, and colostomy control, avoid liquid intake for 30 minutes before and after dose.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and their carers should be advised that the full effect may take some days to develop. Preparations that swell in contact with liquid should always be carefully swallowed with water and should not be taken immediately before going to bed.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

###### ► Celevac (AMCo)

**Methylcellulose "450" 500 mg** Celevac 500mg tablets | 112 tablet [GSL] £5.31 DT = £5.31

## Sterculia

19-Feb-2016

- **DRUG ACTION** Sterculia is a bulk-forming laxative. It relieves constipation by increasing faecal mass which stimulates peristalsis.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Constipation

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–11 years: 0.5–1 sachet 1–2 times a day, alternatively, half to one heaped 5-mL spoonful once or twice a day; washed down without chewing with plenty of liquid after meals
- Child 12–17 years: 1–2 sachets 1–2 times a day, alternatively, one to two heaped 5-mL spoonfuls once or twice a day; washed down without chewing with plenty of liquid after meals

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Colonic atony · difficulty in swallowing · faecal impaction · intestinal obstruction
- **CAUTIONS** Adequate fluid intake should be maintained to avoid intestinal obstruction
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Diarrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · nausea
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** May be mixed with soft food (e.g. yoghurt) before swallowing, followed by plenty of liquid.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and their carers should be advised that the full effect may take some days to develop. Preparations that swell in contact with liquid should always be carefully swallowed with water and should not be taken immediately before going to bed.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25, 27

- **Normacol** (Norgine Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Sterculia 620 mg per 1 gram** Normacol granules 7g sachets | 60 sachet [GSL] £6.67 DT = £6.67  
Normacol granules | 500 gram [GSL] £7.92 DT = £7.92

## Sterculia with frangula

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, sterculia above.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Constipation

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–11 years: 0.5–1 sachet 1–2 times a day, alternatively, 0.5–1 heaped 5-mL spoonful once or twice a day; washed down without chewing with plenty of liquid after meals
- Child 12–17 years: 1–2 sachets 1–2 times a day, alternatively, 1–2 heaped 5-mL spoonfuls once or twice a day; washed down without chewing with plenty of liquid after meals

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and their carers should be advised that the full effect may take some days to develop. Preparations that swell in contact with liquid should always be carefully swallowed with water and should not be taken immediately before going to bed.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Granules

- **Normacol Plus** (Norgine Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Frangula 80 mg per 1 gram, Sterculia 620 mg per 1 gram** Normacol Plus granules 7g sachets | 60 sachet [GSL] £7.12 DT = £7.12  
Normacol Plus granules | 500 gram [GSL] £8.45 DT = £8.45

## LAXATIVES > OSMOTIC LAXATIVES

## Lactulose

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Constipation

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–11 months: 2.5 mL twice daily, adjusted according to response
- Child 1–4 years: 2.5–10 mL twice daily, adjusted according to response
- Child 5–17 years: 5–20 mL twice daily, adjusted according to response

#### Hepatic encephalopathy (portal systemic encephalopathy)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Adjusted according to response to 30–50 mL 3 times a day, subsequently adjusted to produce 2–3 soft stools per day

#### PHARMACOKINETICS

- Lactulose may take up to 48 hours to act.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for hepatic encephalopathy.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Galactosaemia · intestinal obstruction

- **CAUTIONS** Lactose intolerance

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · diarrhoea · flatulence · nausea · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Electrolyte imbalance

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Lactulose for constipation

[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/lactulose-for-constipation](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/lactulose-for-constipation)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral solution

##### ► Lactulose (Non-proprietary)

- **Lactulose 666.667 mg per 1 ml** Lactulose 10g/15ml oral solution 15ml sachets sugar free sugar-free | 10 sachet [P] £2.51 DT = £2.51  
**Lactulose 680 mg per 1 ml** Lactulose 3.1-3.7g/5ml oral solution | 300 ml [P] £1.39-£2.73 | 500 ml [P] £4.55 DT = £2.32

##### ► Duphalac (Mylan)

- **Lactulose 680 mg per 1 ml** Duphalac 3.35g/5ml syrup | 200 ml [P] £1.92

##### ► Lactugal (Intrapharm Laboratories Ltd)

- **Lactulose 680 mg per 1 ml** Lactugal 3.1-3.7g/5ml oral solution | 500 ml [P] £4.56 DT = £2.32 | 2000 ml [P] £16.42

## Macrogol 3350 with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride

18-Apr-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Chronic constipation (dose for 'paediatric' sachets) | Prevention of faecal impaction (dose for 'paediatric' sachets)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 1–11 months: 0.5–1 sachet daily
- Child 12–23 months: 1 sachet daily, adjust dose to produce regular soft stools; maximum 4 sachets per day
- Child 2–5 years: 1 sachet daily, adjust dose to produce regular soft stools; maximum 4 sachets per day
- Child 6–11 years: 2 sachets daily, adjust dose to produce regular soft stools; maximum 4 sachets per day

#### Faecal impaction (dose for 'paediatric' sachets)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 1–11 months: 0.5–1 sachet daily
- Child 12–23 months: 2 sachets on first day, then 4 sachets daily for 2 days, then 6 sachets daily for 2 days, then 8 sachets daily, total daily dose to be taken over a 12-hour period, after disimpaction, switch to maintenance laxative therapy
- Child 2–4 years: 2 sachets on first day, then 4 sachets daily for 2 days, then 6 sachets daily for 2 days, then 8 sachets daily, total daily dose to be taken over a 12-hour period, after disimpaction, switch to maintenance laxative therapy
- Child 5–11 years: 4 sachets on first day, then increased in steps of 2 sachets daily, total daily dose to be taken over a 12-hour period, after disimpaction, switch to maintenance laxative therapy; maximum 12 sachets per day

#### Chronic constipation (dose for 'half-strength' sachets)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 2–6 sachets daily in divided doses usually for up to 2 weeks; maintenance 2–4 sachets daily

#### Faecal impaction (dose for 'half-strength' sachets)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 8 sachets on first day, then increased in steps of 4 sachets daily, total daily dose to be drunk within a 6 hour period, after disimpaction, switch to maintenance laxative therapy if required; maximum 16 sachets per day

#### Chronic constipation (dose for 'full-strength' sachets)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 1–3 sachets daily in divided doses usually for up to 2 weeks; maintenance 1–2 sachets daily

#### Faecal impaction (dose for 'full-strength' sachets)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 4 sachets on first day, then increased in steps of 2 sachets daily, total daily dose to be drunk within a 6 hour period, after disimpaction, switch to maintenance laxative therapy if required; maximum 8 sachets per day

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Each 'paediatric' sachet contains 6.563 g of macrogol 3350; each 'half-strength' sachet contains 6.563 g of macrogol 3350; each 'full-strength' sachet contains 13.125 g of macrogol 3350.

### MOVICOL® READY TO TAKE SACHETS

#### Chronic constipation

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 1–3 sachets daily in divided doses usually for up to 2 weeks; maintenance 1–2 sachets daily

#### Faecal impaction

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 4 sachets on first day, then increased in steps of 2 sachets daily, total daily dose to be drunk within a 6 hour period; patients should also take an additional 1 litre of fluid daily, after disimpaction, switch to maintenance laxative therapy if required; maximum 8 sachets per day

### MOVICOL® LIQUID

#### Chronic constipation

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 25 mL 1–3 times a day usually for up to 2 weeks; maintenance 25 mL 1–2 times a day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Macrogol 3350 with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride may be used as detailed below, although these situations are considered outside the scope of its licence:

- **ExGr** chronic constipation/prevention of faecal impaction in children aged under 2 years;
- dose for chronic constipation/prevention of faecal impaction in children aged 6 years;
- faecal impaction in children aged under 5 years;
- dose titration schedule for faecal impaction in children aged 12–17 years 

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Intestinal obstruction · intestinal perforation · paralytic ileus · severe inflammatory conditions of the intestinal tract (including Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis and toxic megacolon) · use of 'paediatric' sachets for faecal impaction in impaired cardiovascular function (no information available)

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular impairment (should not take more than 2 'full-strength' sachets or 4 'half-strength' sachets in any one hour) · impaired consciousness (with high doses) · impaired gag reflex (with high doses) · reflux oesophagitis (with high doses)

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · nausea ·

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise may be used—limited data available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise avoid use of 'paediatric' sachets for faecal impaction—no information available.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturers advise dissolve contents of each 'half-strength' sachet of oral powder in 62.5 mL of water, and each 'full-strength' sachet of oral powder in 125 mL of water; after reconstitution the solution should be kept in a refrigerator—for further information consult product literature.

Manufacturers advise dissolve contents of each 'paediatric' sachet of oral powder in 62.5 mL of water; after reconstitution the solution should be kept in a refrigerator—for further information consult product literature.

**MOVICOL® LIQUID** Manufacturer advises dilute 25 mL of oral concentrate with 100 mL of water; after dilution the solution should be discarded if unused after 24 hours.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be counselled on how to take the oral powder and oral solution.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Movicol for constipation

[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/movicol-for-constipation](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/movicol-for-constipation)

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Bicarbonate, chloride, potassium, sodium

► **Movicol** (Norgine Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Macrogol '3350' 105 gram per 1 litre, Potassium 5.4 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 17 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 53 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 65 mmol per 1 litre Movicol Liquid sugar-free | 500 ml [P] £5.41 DT = £5.41

Macrogol '3350' 13.125 gram, Potassium 27 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 85 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 267 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 325 mmol per 1 litre Movicol Ready to Take oral solution 25ml sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [P] £7.72

### Powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 13

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Bicarbonate, chloride, potassium, sodium

► **Macrogol 3350 with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride (Non-proprietary)**

Macrogol '3350' 52.5 gram per 1 litre, Potassium 5.4 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 17 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 53 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 65 mmol per 1 litre Macrogol compound half-strength oral powder sachets NPF sugar free sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] [N] DT = £4.38

Macrogol '3350' 105 gram per 1 litre, Potassium 5.4 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 17 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 53 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 65 mmol per 1 litre Macrogol compound oral powder sachets sugar free sugar-free | 20 sachet [P] £2.63-£4.45 sugar-free | 30 sachet [P] £6.68 DT = £3.95

Macrogol compound oral powder sachets sugar free plain sugar-free | 20 sachet [P] £2.63 sugar-free | 30 sachet [P] £3.95 DT = £3.95

► **CosmoCol** (Stirling Anglian Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Macrogol '3350' 52.5 gram per 1 litre, Potassium 5.4 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 17 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 53 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 65 mmol per 1 litre CosmoCol Paediatric oral powder 6.9g sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £2.99 DT = £4.38

Macrogol '3350' 105 gram per 1 litre, Potassium 5.4 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 17 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 53 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 65 mmol per 1 litre CosmoCol Orange Lemon and Lime oral powder sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [P] £3.95 DT = £3.95

CosmoCol Plain oral powder sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [P] £3.95 DT = £3.95

CosmoCol Orange Flavour oral powder sachets sugar-free | 20 sachet [P] £2.75 sugar-free | 30 sachet [P] £3.95 DT = £3.95

CosmoCol Lemon and Lime Flavour oral powder sachets sugar-free | 20 sachet [P] £2.75 sugar-free | 30 sachet [P] £3.95 DT = £3.95

► **Laxido** (Galen Ltd)

Macrogol '3350' 52.5 gram per 1 litre, Potassium 5.4 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 17 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 53 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 65 mmol per 1 litre Laxido Paediatric Plain oral powder 6.9g sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £2.99 DT = £4.38

Macrogol '3350' 105 gram per 1 litre, Potassium 5.4 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 17 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 53 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 65 mmol per 1 litre Laxido Orange oral powder sachets sugar free sugar-free | 20 sachet [P] £2.75 sugar-free | 30 sachet [P] £3.95 DT = £3.95

► **Molative** (Mylan)

Macrogol '3350' 52.5 gram per 1 litre, Potassium 5.4 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 17 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 53 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 65 mmol per 1 litre Molative Paediatric oral powder 6.9g sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £4.30 DT = £4.38

Macrogol '3350' 105 gram per 1 litre, Potassium 5.4 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 17 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 53 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 65 mmol per 1 litre Molative oral powder 13.8g sachets sugar-free | 20 sachet [P] £2.85 sugar-free | 30 sachet [P] £4.27 DT = £3.95 sugar-free | 50 sachet [P] £7.17

► **Molaxole** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Macrogol '3350' 105 gram per 1 litre, Potassium 5.4 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 17 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 53 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 65 mmol per 1 litre Molaxole oral powder sachets sugar-free | 20 sachet [P] £3.78 sugar-free | 30 sachet [P] £5.68 DT = £3.95

► **Movicol** (Norgine Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Macrogol '3350' 52.5 gram per 1 litre, Potassium 5.4 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 17 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 53 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 65 mmol per 1 litre Movicol Paediatric Plain oral powder 6.9g sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £4.38 DT = £4.38

Movicol Paediatric Chocolate oral powder 6.9g sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £4.38 DT = £4.38

Macrogol '3350' 105 gram per 1 litre, Potassium 5.4 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 17 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 53 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 65 mmol per 1 litre Movicol Plain oral powder 13.7g sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [P] £8.11 DT = £3.95 sugar-free | 50 sachet [P] £13.49

Movicol Chocolate oral powder 13.9g sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [P] £8.11 DT = £3.95

Movicol oral powder 13.8g sachets lemon & lime sugar-free | 20 sachet [P] £5.41 sugar-free | 30 sachet [P] £8.11 DT = £3.95 sugar-free | 50 sachet [P] £13.49

► **VistaPrep** (Tillotts Pharma Ltd)

Macrogol '3350' 105 gram per 1 litre, Potassium 5.4 mmol per 1 litre, Bicarbonate 17 mmol per 1 litre, Chloride 53 mmol per 1 litre, Sodium 65 mmol per 1 litre VistaPrep oral powder 110g sachets sugar-free | 4 sachet [P] £7.92

## Magnesium hydroxide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Constipation

► BY MOUTH

- Child 3-11 years: 5–10 mL as required, dose to be given mixed with water at bedtime
- Child 12-17 years: 30–45 mL as required, dose to be given mixed with water at bedtime

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute gastro-intestinal conditions

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: magnesium

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in hepatic coma if risk of renal failure.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Increased risk of toxicity in renal impairment.

Dose adjustments Avoid or reduce dose.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** When prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Magnesium Hydroxide Mixture, BP consists of an aqueous suspension containing about 8% hydrated magnesium oxide.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral suspension

► **Magnesium hydroxide (Non-proprietary)**

Magnesium hydroxide 79 mg per 1 mL Magnesium hydroxide 7.45-8.35% oral suspension BP | 500 mL [GSL] £5.15-£5.31

Magnesium hydroxide 80 mg per 1 mL Magnesium hydroxide 8% oral suspension | 200 mL [GSL] £3.22 DT = £3.22 | 500 mL [GSL] £7.99-£8.05

► Brands may include Phillips' Milk of Magnesia

## Sodium acid phosphate with sodium phosphate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Constipation (using Phosphates Enema BP Formula B) |**

**Bowel evacuation before abdominal radiological procedures, endoscopy, and surgery (using Phosphates Enema BP Formula B)**

► BY RECTUM

- Child 3-6 years: 45–65 mL once daily
- Child 7-11 years: 65–100 mL once daily
- Child 12-17 years: 100–128 mL once daily

#### FLEET® READY-TO-USE ENEMA

**Constipation | Bowel evacuation before abdominal radiological procedures | Bowel evacuation before endoscopy | Bowel evacuation before surgery**

► BY RECTUM

- Child 3-6 years: 40–60 mL once daily
- Child 7-11 years: 60–90 mL once daily
- Child 12-17 years: 90–118 mL once daily

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Conditions associated with increased colonic absorption · gastro-intestinal obstruction · inflammatory bowel disease
- **CAUTIONS** Ascites · congestive heart failure · electrolyte disturbances · uncontrolled hypertension
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: bowel cleansing preparations
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Chills · dehydration · electrolyte imbalance · gastrointestinal discomfort · metabolic acidosis · nausea · pain · vomiting
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in cirrhosis.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** When prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Phosphates Enema BP Formula B consists of sodium dihydrogen phosphate dihydrate 12.8 g, disodium phosphate dodecahydrate 10.24 g, purified water, freshly boiled and cooled, to 128 mL.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**  
There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

## Enema

- ▶ **Sodium acid phosphate with sodium phosphate (Non-proprietary)**  
Disodium hydrogen phosphate dodecahydrate 80 mg per 1 mL, Sodium dihydrogen phosphate dihydrate 100 mg per 1 mL Phosphates enema (Formula B) 128 mL long tube | 1 enema [P] £27.93 DT = £27.93  
Phosphates enema (Formula B) 128 mL standard tube | 1 enema [P] £3.98 DT = £3.98
- ▶ **Fleet Ready-to-use** (Casen Recordati S.L.)  
Disodium hydrogen phosphate dodecahydrate 80 mg per 1 mL, Sodium dihydrogen phosphate dihydrate 181 mg per 1 mL Clean Ready-to-use 133 mL enema | 1 enema [P] £0.68

## Sodium citrate

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

MICOLETTE®

#### Constipation

- ▶ BY RECTUM
- ▶ Child 3–17 years: 5–10 mL for 1 dose

MICRALAX®

#### Constipation

- ▶ BY RECTUM
- ▶ Child 3–17 years: 5 mL for 1 dose

RELAXIT®

#### Constipation

- ▶ BY RECTUM
- ▶ Child 1 month–2 years: 5 mL for 1 dose, insert only half the nozzle length
- ▶ Child 3–17 years: 5 mL for 1 dose

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute gastro-intestinal conditions
- **CAUTIONS** Sodium and water retention in susceptible individuals
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sodium citrate

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**  
There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution, eye drops

## Enema

- ▶ **Micolette Micro-enema** (Pinewood Healthcare)  
Sodium citrate 90 mg per 1 mL Micolette Micro-enema 5 mL | 12 enema [P] £4.50
- ▶ **Micralax Micro-enema** (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)  
Sodium citrate 90 mg per 1 mL Micralax Micro-enema 5 mL | 12 enema [P] £4.87

- ▶ **Relaxit** (Supra Enterprises Ltd)  
Sodium citrate 90 mg per 1 mL Relaxit Micro-enema 5 mL | 12 enema £5.21

## LAXATIVES > SOFTENING LAXATIVES

### Arachis oil

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### To soften impacted faeces

- ▶ BY RECTUM
- ▶ Child 3–6 years (under close medical supervision): 45–65 mL as required
- ▶ Child 7–11 years (under close medical supervision): 65–100 mL as required
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (under close medical supervision): 100–130 mL as required

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Inflammatory bowel disease
- **CAUTIONS** Hypersensitivity to soya · intestinal obstruction
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if history of hypersensitivity to arachis oil or peanuts.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Warm enema in warm water before use.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**  
There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

## Enema

#### ▶ Arachis oil (Non-proprietary)

Arachis oil 1 mL per 1 mL Arachis oil 130 mL enema | 1 enema [P] £47.50 DT = £47.50

## Docusate sodium

(Diocetyl sodium sulphosuccinate)

20-Apr-2016

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Chronic constipation

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 6 months–1 year: 12.5 mg 3 times a day, adjusted according to response, use paediatric oral solution
- ▶ Child 2–11 years: 12.5–25 mg 3 times a day, adjusted according to response, use paediatric oral solution
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Up to 500 mg daily in divided doses, adjusted according to response

- ▶ BY RECTUM
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 120 mg for 1 dose

#### Adjunct in abdominal radiological procedures

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 400 mg, to be administered with barium meal
- ▶ BY RECTUM
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 120 mg for 1 dose

#### PHARMACOKINETICS

- ▶ Oral preparations act within 1–2 days; response to rectal administration usually occurs within 20 minutes.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Adult oral solution and capsules not licensed for use in children under 12 years.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in intestinal obstruction
- **CAUTIONS** Do not give with liquid paraffin · excessive use of stimulant laxatives can cause diarrhoea and related effects such as hypokalaemia · rectal preparations not indicated if haemorrhoids or anal fissure

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare**
  - ▶ With oral use Abdominal cramps · nausea · rash



- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful—manufacturer advises caution.
- **BREAST FEEDING**
  - With oral use Present in milk following oral administration—manufacturer advises caution.
  - With rectal use Rectal administration not known to be harmful.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For administration *by mouth*, solution may be mixed with milk or squash.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral solution

- **Docusate sodium (Non-proprietary)**  
**Docusate sodium 2.5 mg per 1 ml** Docusate 12.5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 300 ml [P] £7.79 DT = £7.79  
**Docusate sodium 10 mg per 1 ml** Docusate 50mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 300 ml [P] £7.99–£8.01 DT = £8.01
- **Docosol** (Typharm Ltd)  
**Docusate sodium 2.5 mg per 1 ml** Docosol Paediatric 12.5mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 125 ml [P] £4.46

##### Enema

- **Norgalax** (Essential Pharma Ltd)  
**Docusate sodium 12 mg per 1 gram** Norgalax 120mg/10g enema | 6 enema [P] £28.00

##### Capsule

- **Dioctyl** (UCB Pharma Ltd)  
**Docusate sodium 100 mg** Dioctyl 100mg capsules | 30 capsule [P] £2.09 DT = £2.09 | 100 capsule [P] £6.98
- **DulcoEase** (Sanofi)  
**Docusate sodium 100 mg** DulcoEase 100mg capsules | 30 capsule [GSL] £3.20 DT = £2.09

Combinations available: **Co-danthrusate**, p. 46

## LAXATIVES > STIMULANT LAXATIVES

### Bisacodyl

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Constipation

- **BY MOUTH**
  - Child 4–17 years: 5–20 mg once daily, adjusted according to response, dose to be taken at night
- **BY RECTUM**
  - Child 2–17 years: 5–10 mg once daily, adjusted according to response

##### Bowel clearance before radiological procedures and surgery

- **INITIALLY BY MOUTH**
  - Child 4–9 years: 5 mg once daily for 2 days before procedure, dose to be taken at bedtime and (by rectum) 5 mg if required, dose to be administered 1 hour before procedure
  - Child 10–17 years: 10 mg once daily for 2 days before procedure, dose to be taken at bedtime and (by rectum) 10 mg if required, dose to be administered 1 hour before procedure

##### PHARMACOKINETICS

- Tablets act in 10–12 hours; suppositories act in 20–60 minutes.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute abdominal conditions · acute inflammatory bowel disease · intestinal obstruction · severe dehydration
- **CAUTIONS** Excessive use of stimulant laxatives can cause diarrhoea and related effects such as hypokalaemia · risk of electrolyte imbalance with prolonged use
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Gastrointestinal discomfort · nausea
  - **Uncommon** Haematochezia · vomiting

- **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · colitis · dehydration

- **PREGNANCY** May be suitable for constipation in pregnancy, if a stimulant effect is necessary.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, suppository, enema

##### Gastro-resistant tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 25

##### ➤ Bisacodyl (Non-proprietary)

**Bisacodyl 5 mg** Bisacodyl 5mg gastro-resistant tablets | 60 tablet [P] £5.13 DT = £5.13 | 100 tablet [P] £5.40 | 500 tablet [P] £25.73–£50.00 | 1000 tablet [P] £51.45–£100.00

##### ➤ Dulco-Lax (bisacodyl) (Sanofi)

**Bisacodyl 5 mg** Dulcolax 5mg gastro-resistant tablets | 40 tablet [P] £2.44 | 100 tablet [P] £3.60

##### Enema

##### ➤ Bisacodyl (Non-proprietary)

**Bisacodyl 333.333 microgram per 1 ml** Fleet Bisacodyl 10mg/30ml enema | 1 enema [PoM] [S] DT = £30.38

##### Suppository

##### ➤ Bisacodyl (Non-proprietary)

**Bisacodyl 10 mg** Bisacodyl 10mg suppositories | 12 suppository [P] £3.53 DT = £3.53

##### ➤ Dulco-Lax (bisacodyl) (Sanofi)

**Bisacodyl 5 mg** Dulcolax 5mg suppositories for children | 5 suppository [P] £1.04 DT = £1.04

**Bisacodyl 10 mg** Dulcolax 10mg suppositories | 12 suppository [P] £2.35 DT = £3.53

## Co-danthramer

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Constipation in terminally ill patients (standard strength capsules)

- **BY MOUTH USING CAPSULES**
  - Child 6–11 years: 1 capsule once daily, dose should be taken at night
  - Child 12–17 years: 1–2 capsules once daily, dose should be taken at night

##### Constipation in terminally ill patients (strong capsules)

- **BY MOUTH USING CAPSULES**
  - Child 12–17 years: 1–2 capsules once daily, dose should be given at night

##### Constipation in terminally ill patients (standard strength suspension)

- **BY MOUTH USING ORAL SUSPENSION**
  - Child 2–11 years: 2.5–5 mL once daily, dose should be taken at night
  - Child 12–17 years: 5–10 mL once daily, dose should be taken at night

##### Constipation in terminally ill patients (strong suspension)

- **BY MOUTH USING ORAL SUSPENSION**
  - Child 12–17 years: 5 mL once daily, dose should be taken at night

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Co-danthramer (standard strength) capsules contain dantron 25 mg with poloxamer '188' 200 mg per capsule.
- Co-danthramer (standard strength) oral suspension contains dantron 25 mg with poloxamer '188' 200 mg per 5 mL.
- Co-danthramer **strong** capsules contain dantron 37.5 mg with poloxamer '188' 500 mg.
- Co-danthramer **strong** oral suspension contains dantron 75 mg with poloxamer '188' 1 g per 5 mL.
- Co-danthramer suspension 5 mL = one co-danthramer capsule, **but** strong co-danthramer suspension 5 mL = two strong co-danthramer capsules.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute abdominal conditions · acute inflammatory bowel disease · intestinal obstruction · severe dehydration
- **CAUTIONS** Excessive use of stimulant laxatives can cause diarrhoea and related effects such as hypokalaemia · may cause local irritation · *rodent* studies indicate potential carcinogenic risk
- **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - ▶ Local irritation Avoid prolonged contact with skin (as in incontinent patients or infants wearing nappies—risk of irritation and excoriation).
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal cramps · asthenia · gastrointestinal disorders · hypermagnesaemia · skin reactions · urine red
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise avoid—limited information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturers advise avoid—no information available.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 14 (urine red)

##### ▶ Co-danthramer (Non-proprietary)

Dantron 5 mg per 1 ml, Poloxamer 188 40 mg per 1 ml Co-danthramer 25mg/200mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM] £169.28 DT = £168.93

Dantron 15 mg per 1 ml, Poloxamer 188 200 mg per 1 ml Co-danthramer 75mg/1000mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM] £337.73 DT = £337.05

## Co-danthrusate

20-Apr-2016

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Constipation in terminally ill patients

###### ▶ BY MOUTH USING CAPSULES

- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 1 capsule once daily, to be taken at night
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1–3 capsules once daily, to be taken at night

###### ▶ BY MOUTH USING ORAL SUSPENSION

- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 5 mL once daily, to be taken at night
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 5–15 mL once daily, to be taken at night

##### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Co-danthrusate suspension contains dantron 50 mg and docusate 60 mg per 5 mL.
- ▶ Co-danthrusate capsules contain dantron 50 mg and docusate 60 mg per capsule.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute abdominal conditions · acute inflammatory bowel disease · intestinal obstruction · severe dehydration
- **CAUTIONS** Excessive use of stimulant laxatives can cause diarrhoea and related effects such as hypokalaemia · may cause local irritation · *rodent* studies indicate potential carcinogenic risk
- **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - ▶ Local irritation Avoid prolonged contact with skin (as in incontinent patients or infants wearing nappies—risk of irritation and excoriation).
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Gastrointestinal disorders · skin reactions · urine orange
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise avoid—limited information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturers advise avoid—no information available.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 14 (urine orange)

##### ▶ Co-danthrusate (Non-proprietary)

Dantron 10 mg per 1 ml, Docusate sodium 12 mg per 1 ml Co-danthrusate 50mg/60mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 200 ml [PoM] £154.40 DT = £154.40

##### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 14 (urine orange)

##### ▶ Co-danthrusate (Non-proprietary)

Dantron 50 mg, Docusate sodium 60 mg Co-danthrusate 50mg/60mg capsules | 63 capsule [PoM] £

## Glycerol

### (Glycerin)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Constipation

###### ▶ BY RECTUM

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 1 g as required
- ▶ Child 1–11 years: 2 g as required
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 4 g as required

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Moisten suppositories with water before insertion.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** When prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Glycerol Suppositories, BP consists of gelatin 140 mg, glycerol 700 mg, purified water to 1 g.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Glycerin (glycerol) suppositories for constipation [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/glycerin-glycerol-suppositories-for-constipation](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/glycerin-glycerol-suppositories-for-constipation)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: suppository

##### Suppository

##### ▶ Glycerol (Non-proprietary)

Glycerol 700 mg Glycerol 1g suppositories | 12 suppository [GSL] £1.75 DT = £1.04

Glycerol 1400 mg Glycerol 2g suppositories | 12 suppository [GSL] £1.78 DT = £1.70

Glycerol 2800 mg Glycerol 4g suppositories | 12 suppository [GSL] £1.31 DT = £1.16

## Senna

20-Jul-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Senna is a stimulant laxative. After metabolism of sennosides in the gut the anthrone component stimulates peristalsis thereby increasing the motility of the large intestine.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Constipation

###### ▶ BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

- ▶ Child 2–3 years: 3.75–15 mg once daily, adjusted according to response
- ▶ Child 4–5 years: 3.75–30 mg once daily, adjusted according to response
- ▶ Child 6–17 years: 7.5–30 mg once daily, adjusted according to response
- ▶ BY MOUTH USING SYRUP
- ▶ Child 1 month–3 years: 3.75–15 mg once daily, adjusted according to response
- ▶ Child 4–17 years: 3.75–30 mg once daily, adjusted according to response

##### PHARMACOKINETICS

- ▶ Onset of action 8–12 hours.



- **UNLICENSED USE** Tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years. Syrup not licensed for use in children under 2 years.

Doses in BNFC adhere to national guidelines and may differ from those in product literature.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Intestinal obstruction · undiagnosed abdominal pain
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Albuminuria · diarrhoea · electrolyte imbalance · fluid imbalance · gastrointestinal discomfort · haematuria · pseudomelanosis coli · skin reactions · urine discolouration
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Prolonged or excessive use can cause hypokalaemia.
- **PREGNANCY** [EvGr] Specialist sources indicate suitable for use in pregnancy. ⬢
- **BREAST FEEDING** [EvGr] Specialist sources indicate suitable for use in breast-feeding in infants over 1 month. ⬢
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Medicines for Children leaflet: Senna for constipation [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/senna-for-constipation](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/senna-for-constipation)
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS** NHS restrictions Senokot® tablets are not prescribable in NHS primary care.
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Senna is on sale to the public for use in children over 12 years; doses on packs may vary from those in BNF Publications.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral solution

- ▶ **Senokot** (Forum Health Products Ltd, Reckitt Benckiser Healthcare (UK) Ltd)  
Sennoside B (as Sennosides) 1.5 mg per 1 ml Senokot 7.5mg/5ml Syrup Pharmacy sugar-free | 500 ml [P] £4.76 DT = £4.76

##### Tablet

- ▶ **Senna (Non-proprietary)**  
Sennoside B (as Sennosides) 7.5 mg Senna 7.5mg tablets | 20 tablet [P] £1.00 | 100 tablet [P] £2.15

## Senna with ispaghula husk

24-Feb-2016

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, senna p. 46, ispaghula husk p. 40.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Constipation

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 5–10 g once daily, to be taken at night, 5 g equivalent to one level spoonful of granules

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid during first trimester. To be used only intermittently and only if dietary and lifestyle changes fail.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Take at night with at least 150 mL liquid.
- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sucrose

- ▶ **Manevac** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Senna fruit 124 mg per 1 gram, Ispaghula 542 mg per 1 gram Manevac granules | 400 gram [P] £9.50 DT = £9.50

## Sodium picosulfate

06-May-2016

### (Sodium picosulphate)

- **DRUG ACTION** Sodium picosulfate is a stimulant laxative. After metabolism in the colon it stimulates the mucosa thereby increasing the motility of the large intestine.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Constipation

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 1 month–3 years: 2.5–10 mg once daily, adjusted according to response
- ▶ Child 4–17 years: 2.5–20 mg once daily, adjusted according to response

##### PHARMACOKINETICS

- ▶ Onset of action 6–12 hours.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Sodium picosulfate doses in BNF Publications adhere to national guidelines and may differ from those in product literature.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Intestinal obstruction · undiagnosed abdominal pain
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sodium picosulfate
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ Common or very common Diarrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort
  - ▶ Uncommon Dizziness · nausea · vomiting
  - ▶ Frequency not known Angioedema · skin reactions · syncope
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Prolonged or excessive use can cause diarrhoea and related effects such as hypokalaemia.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer states evidence limited but not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** [EvGr] Specialist sources indicate suitable for use in breast-feeding in infants over 1 month—not known to be present in milk. ⬢
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Medicines for Children leaflet: Sodium picosulfate for constipation [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sodium-picosulfate-for-constipation](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sodium-picosulfate-for-constipation)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol

##### ▶ Sodium picosulfate (Non-proprietary)

**Sodium picosulfate 1 mg per 1 ml** Sodium picosulfate 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 100 ml [P] £2.37 sugar-free | 300 ml [P] £7.10 DT = £7.10

##### ▶ Laxoberal (Sanofi)

**Sodium picosulfate 1 mg per 1 ml** Dulcolax Pico 5mg/5ml liquid sugar-free | 100 ml [P] £1.94 sugar-free | 300 ml [P] £4.62 DT = £7.10

## 3 Diarrhoea

### Diarrhoea (acute)

01-Aug-2017

#### Description of condition

Diarrhoea is the abnormal passing of loose or liquid stools, with increased frequency, increased volume, or both. Acute diarrhoea is that which lasts less than 14 days, but symptoms usually spontaneously resolve within 2–4 days. It can result from infection, as a side-effect of a drug, or as an acute symptom of a chronic gastro-intestinal disorder (such as Inflammatory bowel disease p. 25 or Irritable bowel

syndrome p. 34). It may also occur when intestinal motility or morphology is altered.

Prompt investigation is required to identify or exclude any serious underlying cause if the child has any red flag symptoms as such unexplained weight loss, rectal bleeding, persistent diarrhoea, a systemic illness, has received recent hospital treatment or antibiotic treatment, or following foreign travel (other than to Western Europe, North America, Australia or New Zealand).

### Aims of treatment

The priority in acute diarrhoea treatment, as in gastroenteritis, is the prevention or reversal of fluid and electrolyte depletion and the management of dehydration when it is present. This is particularly important in infants, when excessive water and electrolyte loss and dehydration can be life-threatening.

### Treatment

Most episodes of acute diarrhoea will settle spontaneously without the need for any medical treatment. **[EvGr]** Oral rehydration therapy (ORT, such as disodium hydrogen citrate with glucose, potassium chloride and sodium chloride p. 591; potassium chloride with sodium chloride p. 588; potassium chloride with rice powder, sodium chloride and sodium citrate p. 591) is the mainstay of treatment to prevent or correct diarrhoeal dehydration and to maintain the appropriate fluid intake once rehydration is achieved—see Fluids and electrolytes p. 583.

However, in children with severe dehydration and in those unable to drink, immediate admission to hospital and urgent replacement treatment with an intravenous rehydration fluid is recommended—see Fluids and electrolytes p. 583.

ORT is recommended for children at *increased risk of dehydration* and for those with *clinical dehydration* (including hypernatraemic dehydration). If the child is unable to drink the ORT, or vomits persistently, consider giving the solution via a nasogastric tube.

In infants, after rehydration, encourage breast-feeding, other milk feeds and fluid intake. In older children, after rehydration, give full-strength milk straight away, reintroduce the child's usual solid food, and avoid giving fruit juices and carbonated drinks until the diarrhoea has stopped.

In children with gastroenteritis, but *without clinical dehydration*, encourage fluid intake, continue breast-feeding and other milk feeds, and discourage the drinking of fruit juices and carbonated drinks.

In general, antidiarrhoeal drugs have no practical benefit for children with acute or persistent diarrhoea and their use is generally not recommended (side-effects include drowsiness, abdominal distension and ileus). **[A]**

Racecadotril p. 49 is licensed, as an adjunct to rehydration, for the symptomatic treatment of uncomplicated acute diarrhoea in children over 3 months; it should only be used when supportive measures, including oral rehydration, are insufficient to control the condition.

### Antibacterial drugs for acute diarrhoea

**[EvGr]** Antibacterial treatment is **not** recommended *routinely* for children with acute diarrhoea. Antibacterial treatment is recommended in cases of extra-intestinal spread of bacterial infection; *Clostridium difficile*-associated pseudomembranous colitis; giardiasis, dysenteric shigellosis, dysenteric amoebiasis, or cholera; in children under 6 months with salmonella gastroenteritis; in children who are malnourished or immunocompromised; and in children with suspected or confirmed septicæmia. For children who have recently been abroad, seek specialist advice about antibacterial therapy. **[A]**

### Related drugs

Other drugs used for diarrhoea: codeine phosphate p. 276, colestyramine p. 129, methylcellulose p. 40.

## ANTIDIARRHOEALS > ANTIPROPULSIVES

F 273

### Co-phenotrope

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Adjunct to rehydration in acute diarrhoea

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–3 years: 0.5 tablet 3 times a day
- Child 4–8 years: 1 tablet 3 times a day
- Child 9–11 years: 1 tablet 4 times a day
- Child 12–15 years: 2 tablets 3 times a day
- Child 16–17 years: Initially 4 tablets, followed by 2 tablets every 6 hours until diarrhoea controlled

##### Control of faecal consistency after colostomy or ileostomy

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–3 years: 0.5 tablet 3 times a day
- Child 4–8 years: 1 tablet 3 times a day
- Child 9–11 years: 1 tablet 4 times a day
- Child 12–15 years: 2 tablets 3 times a day
- Child 16–17 years: Initially 4 tablets, then 2 tablets 4 times a day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 4 years.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Gastro-intestinal obstruction · intestinal atony · myasthenia gravis (but some antimuscarinics may be used to decrease muscarinic side-effects of anticholinesterases) · paralytic ileus · pyloric stenosis · severe ulcerative colitis · significant bladder outflow obstruction · toxic megacolon · urinary retention

- **CAUTIONS** Presence of subclinical doses of atropine may give rise to atropine side-effects in susceptible individuals or in overdosage · young children are particularly susceptible to **overdosage**; symptoms may be delayed and observation is needed for at least 48 hours after ingestion

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: atropine · opioids

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal discomfort · angioedema · angle closure glaucoma · appetite decreased · arrhythmia · cardiac disorder · depression · dry skin · dysuria · fever · gastrointestinal disorders · lethargy · malaise · mucosal dryness · mydriasis · restlessness · vision disorders

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises caution.

- **BREAST FEEDING** May be present in milk.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in jaundice.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For administration by mouth tablets may be crushed.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** A mixture of diphenoxylate hydrochloride and atropine sulfate in the mass proportions 100 parts to 1 part respectively.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Co-phenotrope 2.5/0.025 can be sold to the public for adults and children over 16 years (provided packs do not contain more than 20 tablets) as an adjunct to rehydration in acute diarrhoea (max. daily dose 10 tablets).

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

###### ► Co-phenotrope (Non-proprietary)

Atropine sulfate 25 microgram, Diphenoxylate hydrochloride 2.5 mg Lomitol 2.5mg/25microgram tablets | 100 tablet **[PoM]** **[S]** **[CD5]**  
Lofenoxal 2.5mg/25microgram tablets | 20 tablet **[PoM]** **[S]** **[CD5]**

## Loperamide hydrochloride

11-Oct-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Symptomatic treatment of acute diarrhoea

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 4–7 years: 1 mg 3–4 times a day for up to 3 days only
- Child 8–11 years: 2 mg 4 times a day for up to 5 days
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 4 mg, followed by 2 mg for up to 5 days, dose to be taken after each loose stool; usual dose 6–8 mg daily; maximum 16 mg per day

#### Chronic diarrhoea

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–11 months: 100–200 micrograms/kg twice daily, to be given 30 minutes before feeds; increased if necessary up to 2 mg/kg daily in divided doses
- Child 1–11 years: 100–200 micrograms/kg 3–4 times a day (max. per dose 2 mg), increased if necessary up to 1.25 mg/kg daily in divided doses; maximum 16 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: 2–4 mg 2–4 times a day; maximum 16 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for chronic diarrhoea. *Capsules* not licensed for use in children under 8 years. *Syrup* not licensed for use in children under 4 years.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: REPORTS OF SERIOUS CARDIAC ADVERSE REACTIONS WITH HIGH DOSES OF LOPERAMIDE ASSOCIATED WITH ABUSE OR MISUSE (SEPTEMBER 2017)

Serious cardiovascular events (such as QT prolongation, torsades de pointes, and cardiac arrest), including fatalities, have been reported in association with large overdoses of loperamide.

Healthcare professionals are reminded that if symptoms of overdose occur, naloxone can be given as an antidote. The duration of action of loperamide is longer than that of naloxone (1–3 hours), so repeated treatment with naloxone might be indicated; patients should be monitored closely for at least 48 hours to detect possible CNS depression.

Pharmacists should remind patients not to take more than the recommended dose on the label.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active ulcerative colitis · antibiotic-associated colitis · conditions where abdominal distension develops · conditions where inhibition of peristalsis should be avoided
- **CAUTIONS** Not recommended for children under 12 years
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: loperamide
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Gastrointestinal disorders · headache · nausea
  - **Uncommon** Dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · gastrointestinal discomfort · skin reactions · vomiting
  - **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · consciousness impaired · coordination abnormal · fatigue · miosis · muscle tone increased · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · urinary retention
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise avoid—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount probably too small to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Risk of accumulation—manufacturer advises caution.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

**Palliative care** For further information on the use of loperamide in palliative care, see [www.palliativedrugs.com/formulary/en/loperamide.html](http://www.palliativedrugs.com/formulary/en/loperamide.html)

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Loperamide for diarrhoea [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/loperamide-for-diarrhoea](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/loperamide-for-diarrhoea)

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Loperamide can be sold to the public, for use in adults and children over 12 years, provided it is licensed and labelled for the treatment of acute diarrhoea.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

- **Loperamide hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Loperamide hydrochloride 2 mg** Loperamide 2mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £2.93 DT = £2.93

- **Norimode** (Tilomed Laboratories Ltd)

**Loperamide hydrochloride 2 mg** Norimode 2mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £2.15 DT = £2.93

#### Oral solution

- **Imodium** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

**Loperamide hydrochloride 200 microgram per 1 ml** Imodium 1mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £1.17 DT = £1.17

#### Capsule

- **Loperamide hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Loperamide hydrochloride 2 mg** Loperamide 2mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £2.99 DT = £0.68

#### Orodispersible tablet

- **Imodium** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Loperamide hydrochloride 2 mg** Imodium Instant Melts 2mg orodispersible tablets sugar-free | 12 tablet [P] £4.38 sugar-free | 18 tablet [P] £5.85 DT = £5.39

## Loperamide with simeticone

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, loperamide hydrochloride above, simeticone p. 52.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Acute diarrhoea with abdominal colic

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 1 tablet, then 1 tablet, after each loose stool, for up to 2 days; maximum 4 tablets per day

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: loperamide

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

- **Imodium Plus** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Loperamide hydrochloride 2 mg, Dimeticone (as Simeticone)** 125 mg Imodium Plus caplets | 12 tablet [P] £4.21

## ANTIDIARRHOEALS > ENKEPHALINASE INHIBITORS

## Racecadotril

11-Feb-2016

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Adjunct to rehydration, for the symptomatic treatment of uncomplicated acute diarrhoea

##### ► BY MOUTH USING GRANULES

- Child 3 months–17 years (body-weight up to 9 kg): 10 mg 3 times a day until diarrhoea stops; maximum duration of treatment 7 days
- Child 3 months–17 years (body-weight 9–12 kg): 20 mg 3 times a day until diarrhoea stops; maximum duration of treatment 7 days

continued →

- ▶ Child 3 months–17 years (body-weight 13–27 kg): 30 mg 3 times a day until diarrhoea stops; maximum duration of treatment 7 days
- ▶ Child 3 months–17 years (body-weight 28 kg and above): 60 mg 3 times a day until diarrhoea stops; maximum duration of treatment 7 days

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Antibiotic-associated diarrhoea
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Skin reactions · tonsillitis
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · erythema nodosum · eyelid oedema · face oedema · oral disorders
- **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Severe skin reactions have been reported—discontinue treatment immediately.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Granules may be added to food or mixed with water or bottle feeds and then taken immediately.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and carers should be given advice on how to administer racecadotril granules.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium*, has advised (July 2014) that racecadotril (*Hidrasec*®) is **not** recommended for use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of acute diarrhoea in children because there is insufficient evidence that it improves the recovery rate.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**  
There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Granules

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sucrose

- ▶ **Hidrasec** (Lincoln Medical Ltd)

**Racecadotril 10 mg** Hidrasec Infants 10mg granules sachets | 20 sachet (PoM) £8.42

**Racecadotril 30 mg** Hidrasec Children 30mg granules sachets | 20 sachet (PoM) £8.42

## 4 Disorders of gastric acid and ulceration

### 4.1 Dyspepsia

#### Dyspepsia

##### Overview

Dyspepsia covers upper abdominal pain, fullness, early satiety, bloating, and nausea. It can occur with gastric and duodenal ulceration, gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, gastritis, and upper gastro-intestinal motility disorders, but most commonly it is of uncertain origin.

Patients with dyspepsia should be advised about lifestyle changes (avoidance of excess alcohol and of aggravating foods such as fats); other measures include weight reduction, smoking cessation, and raising the head of the bed. Some medications may cause dyspepsia—these should be stopped, if possible.

A compound alginate preparation may provide relief from dyspepsia; persistent dyspepsia requires investigation. Treatment with a  $H_2$ -receptor antagonist or a proton pump

inhibitor should be initiated only on the advice of a hospital specialist.

*Helicobacter pylori* may be present in children with dyspepsia. *H. pylori* eradication therapy should be considered for persistent dyspepsia if it is ulcer-like. However, most children with functional (investigated, non-ulcer) dyspepsia do not benefit symptomatically from *H. pylori* eradication.

#### ANTACIDS

### Antacids

#### Overview

Antacids (usually containing aluminium or magnesium compounds) can often relieve symptoms in *ulcer dyspepsia* and in *non-erosive gastro-oesophageal reflux*; they are also sometimes used in functional (non-ulcer) dyspepsia but the evidence of benefit is uncertain.

**Aluminium- and magnesium-**containing antacids, being relatively insoluble in water, are long-acting if retained in the stomach. They are suitable for most antacid purposes. Magnesium-containing antacids tend to be laxative whereas aluminium-containing antacids may be constipating; antacids containing both magnesium and aluminium may reduce these colonic side-effects.

Complexes such as **hydrotalcite** confer no special advantage.

**Calcium-containing** antacids can induce rebound acid secretion; with modest doses the clinical significance of this is doubtful, but prolonged high doses also cause hypercalcaemia and alkalosis.

#### Simeticone

Simeticone (activated dimeticone p. 728) is used to treat infantile colic, but the evidence of benefit is uncertain.

Simeticone is added to an antacid as an antifoaming agent to relieve flatulence. These preparations may be useful for the relief of hiccup in palliative care.

#### Alginates

**Alginates** taken in combination with an antacid increases the viscosity of stomach contents and can protect the oesophageal mucosa from acid reflux. Some alginate-containing preparations form a viscous gel ('raft') that floats on the surface of the stomach contents, thereby reducing symptoms of reflux. Alginate-containing preparations are used in the management of mild symptoms of dyspepsia and gastro-oesophageal reflux disease.

The amount of additional ingredient or antacid in individual preparations varies widely, as does their sodium content, so that preparations may not be freely interchangeable.

#### ANTACIDS > ALGINATE

### Alginate acid

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### GAVISCON INFANT® POWDER SACHETS

##### Management of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate (body-weight up to 4.5 kg): 1 dose as required, to be mixed with feeds (or water, for breast-fed infants); maximum 6 doses per day.

- ▶ Neonate (body-weight 4.5 kg and above): 2 doses as required, to be mixed with feeds (or water, for breast-fed infants); maximum 12 doses per day.

- ▶ Child 1–23 months (body-weight up to 4.5 kg): 1 dose as required, to be mixed with feeds (or water, for breast-fed infants); maximum 6 doses per day
- ▶ Child 1–23 months (body-weight 4.5 kg and above): 2 doses as required, to be mixed with feeds (or water, for breast-fed infants); maximum 12 doses per day

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Intestinal obstruction · preterm neonates · where excessive water loss likely (e.g. fever, diarrhoea, vomiting, high room temperature)

**GAVISCON INFANT® POWDER SACHETS** Concurrent use of preparations containing thickening agents

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** In patients with fluid retention, avoid antacids containing large amounts of sodium. Avoid antacids containing magnesium salts in hepatic coma if there is a risk of renal failure.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** In patients with fluid retention, avoid antacids containing large amounts of sodium.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Each half of the dual-sachet is identified as 'one dose'.

To avoid errors prescribe with directions in terms of 'dose'.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Powder**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

▶ **Gaviscon Infant** (Forum Health Products Ltd)

**Magnesium alginate 87.5 mg, Sodium alginate 225 mg** Gaviscon Infant oral powder sachets sugar-free | 15 dual dose sachet **£4.82** DT = £4.82

## Sodium alginate with potassium bicarbonate

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, alginate p. 50.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Management of mild symptoms of dyspepsia and gastro-oesophageal reflux disease**

▶ **BY MOUTH USING CHEWABLE TABLETS**

- ▶ Child 6–11 years (under medical advice only): 1 tablet, to be chewed after meals and at bedtime
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1–2 tablets, to be chewed after meals and at bedtime

▶ **BY MOUTH USING ORAL SUSPENSION**

- ▶ Child 2–11 years (under medical advice only): 2.5–5 mL, to be taken after meals and at bedtime
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 5–10 mL, to be taken after meals and at bedtime

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include aniseed or peppermint.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Oral suspension**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Potassium, sodium

▶ **Acidex Advance** (Pinewood Healthcare)

**Potassium bicarbonate 20 mg per 1 mL, Sodium alginate 100 mg per 1 mL** Acidex Advance oral suspension peppermint sugar-free | 250 mL **£2.05** sugar-free | 500 mL **£4.10** DT = £5.12  
**Acidex Advance** oral suspension aniseed sugar-free | 250 mL **£2.05** sugar-free | 500 mL **£4.10** DT = £5.12

▶ **Gaviscon Advance** (Reckitt Benckiser Healthcare (UK) Ltd)

**Potassium bicarbonate 20 mg per 1 mL, Sodium alginate 100 mg per 1 mL** Gaviscon Advance oral suspension aniseed sugar-free |

150 mL **£3.23** sugar-free | 250 mL **£2.56** sugar-free | 300 mL **£5.82** sugar-free | 500 mL **£5.12** DT = £5.12  
**Gaviscon Advance** oral suspension peppermint sugar-free | 250 mL **£2.56** sugar-free | 300 mL **£5.82** sugar-free | 500 mL **£5.12** DT = £5.12

##### **Chewable tablet**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Potassium, sodium

▶ **Sodium alginate with potassium bicarbonate (Non-proprietary)**

**Potassium bicarbonate 100 mg, Sodium alginate 500 mg** Sodium alginate 500mg / Potassium bicarbonate 100mg chewable tablets sugar free sugar-free | 60 tablet **£3.07** DT = £3.07

▶ Brands may include Gaviscon Advance

## ANTACIDS > ALUMINIUM AND MAGNESIUM

### Co-magaldrox

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, aluminium hydroxide p. 598, magnesium hydroxide p. 43.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **MAALOX®**

##### **Dyspepsia**

▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child 14–17 years: 10–20 mL, to be taken 20–60 minutes after meals, and at bedtime or when required

##### **MUCOGEL®**

##### **Dyspepsia**

▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 10–20 mL 3 times a day, to be taken 20–60 minutes after meals, and at bedtime, or when required

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antacids · magnesium

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Co-magaldrox is a mixture of aluminium hydroxide and magnesium hydroxide; the proportions are expressed in the form x/y where x and y are the strengths in milligrams per unit dose of magnesium hydroxide and aluminium hydroxide respectively.

**MAALOX®** Maalox® suspension is low in sodium.

**MUCOGEL®** Mucogel® suspension is low in sodium.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Oral suspension**

▶ **Maalox** (Sanofi)

**Aluminium hydroxide 35 mg per 1 mL, Magnesium hydroxide 40 mg per 1 mL** Maalox 175mg/200mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 250 mL **£2.33** DT = £2.33

▶ **Mucogel** (Chemidex Pharma Ltd)

**Magnesium hydroxide 39 mg per 1 mL, Aluminium hydroxide gel dried 44 mg per 1 mL** Mucogel oral suspension sugar-free | 500 mL **£2.99** DT = £2.99

### Co-simalcite

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Dyspepsia**

▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child 8–11 years: 5 mL 4 times a day as required, to be taken between meals and at bedtime
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 10 mL 4 times a day as required, to be taken between meals and at bedtime

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hypophosphataemia · infants · neonates

**CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Aluminium-containing antacids should not be used in neonates and



infants because accumulation may lead to increased plasma-aluminium concentrations.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid; can cause constipation which can precipitate coma. Avoid in hepatic coma; risk of renal failure.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Aluminium-containing antacids should not be used in children with renal impairment, because accumulation may lead to increased plasma-aluminium concentrations.  
**Dose adjustments** Antacids containing magnesium salts should be avoided or used at a reduced dose because there is an increased risk of toxicity.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** *Altacite Plus*® is low in Na<sup>+</sup>.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral suspension

- ▶ **Altacite Plus** (Peckforton Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Simeticone 25 mg per 1 mL, Hydrotalcite 100 mg per 1 mL Altacite Plus oral suspension sugar-free | 100 mL [P] £4.00 sugar-free | 500 mL [P] £5.20 DT = £5.20

## Simeticone with aluminium hydroxide and magnesium hydroxide

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, simeticone below, aluminium hydroxide p. 598.

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Dyspepsia

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 2–4 years: 5 mL 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 5–10 mL 3–4 times a day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 5–10 mL 4 times a day, to be taken after meals and at bedtime, or when required

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antacids

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral suspension

- ▶ **Maalox Plus** (Sanofi)  
Simeticone 5 mg per 1 mL, Magnesium hydroxide 39 mg per 1 mL, Aluminium hydroxide gel dried 44 mg per 1 mL Maalox Plus oral suspension sugar-free | 250 mL [GSL] £2.91

## ANTACIDS > MAGNESIUM

## Magnesium trisilicate with magnesium carbonate and sodium bicarbonate

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, magnesium trisilicate, magnesium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate p. 586.

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Dyspepsia

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 5–10 mL 3 times a day, alternatively as required, dose to be made up with water
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 10–20 mL 3 times a day, alternatively as required, dose to be made up with water

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hypophosphataemia · Severe renal failure

- **CAUTIONS** Heart failure · hypermagnesaemia · hypertension · metabolic alkalosis · respiratory alkalosis
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antacids · sodium bicarbonate
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** In patients with fluid retention avoid antacids containing large amounts of sodium. Avoid antacids containing magnesium salts in hepatic coma if there is a risk of renal failure.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Magnesium trisilicate and magnesium carbonate mixtures have high sodium content; avoid in patients with fluid retention.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** When prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Magnesium Trisilicate Mixture, BP consists of 5% each of magnesium trisilicate, light magnesium carbonate, and sodium bicarbonate in a suitable vehicle with a peppermint flavour.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral suspension

- ▶ **Magnesium trisilicate with magnesium carbonate and sodium bicarbonate (Non-proprietary)**  
Magnesium carbonate light 50 mg per 1 mL, Magnesium trisilicate 50 mg per 1 mL, Sodium bicarbonate 50 mg per 1 mL Magnesium trisilicate oral suspension | 200 mL [GSL] £1.65 DT = £1.65

## ANTIFOAMING DRUGS

## Simeticone

### (Activated dimeticone)

- **DRUG ACTION** Simeticone (activated dimeticone) is an antifoaming agent.

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### DENTINOX®

##### Colic | Wind pains

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 2.5 mL, to be taken with or after each feed; may be added to bottle feed; maximum 6 doses per day.
- ▶ Child 1 month–1 year: 2.5 mL, to be taken with or after each feed; may be added to bottle feed; maximum 6 doses per day

##### INFACOL®

##### Colic | Wind pains

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 0.5–1 mL, to be taken before feeds.
- ▶ Child 1 month–1 year: 0.5–1 mL, to be taken before feeds

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

**DENTINOX®** The brand name *Dentinol*® is also used for other preparations including teething gel.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**INFACOL®** Patients or carers should be given advice on use of the *Infacol*® dropper.

- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING**

**DENTINOX®** *Dentinol*® colic drops are less suitable for prescribing (evidence of benefit in infantile colic uncertain).

**INFACOL®** *Infacol*® is less suitable for prescribing (evidence of benefit in infantile colic uncertain).



**Recommended regimens for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication**

Age range	Acid suppressant	Antibacterial		
		Amoxicillin	Clarithromycin	Metronidazole
Child 1-5 years	Omeprazole 1-2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 40 mg)	250 mg twice daily	7.5 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) twice daily	–
		125 mg 3 times a day –	– 7.5 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) twice daily	100 mg 3 times a day 100 mg twice daily
Child 6-11 years	Omeprazole 1-2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 40 mg)	500 mg twice daily	7.5 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) twice daily	–
		250 mg 3 times a day –	– 7.5 mg/kg (max. 500 mg) twice daily	200 mg 3 times a day 200 mg twice daily
Child 12-17 years	Omeprazole 40 mg once daily	1 g twice daily	500 mg twice daily	–
		500 mg 3 times a day –	– 500 mg twice daily	400 mg 3 times a day 400 mg twice daily

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oral suspension**

- ▶ **Infacol** (Teva UK Ltd)  
Simeticone 40 mg per 1 ml Infacol 40mg/ml oral suspension sugar-free | 50 ml [GSL] £2.71 DT = £2.71

**Oral drops**

- ▶ **Dentinox Infant** (Dendron Ltd)  
Simeticone 8.4 mg per 1 ml Dentinox Infant colic drops | 100 ml [GSL] £1.80 DT = £1.80

Combinations available: **Co-simacite**, p. 51 • **Simeticone with aluminium hydroxide and magnesium hydroxide**, p. 52

for eradication failure or for a child who has been treated with a macrolide for other infections. There is usually no need to continue antisecretory treatment (with a proton pump inhibitor or H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonist); however, if the ulcer is large, or complicated by haemorrhage or perforation then antisecretory treatment is continued for a further 3 weeks. Lansoprazole p. 57 may be considered if omeprazole is unsuitable. Treatment failure usually indicates antibacterial resistance or poor compliance.

Two-week triple-therapy regimens offer the possibility of higher eradication rates compared to one-week regimens, but adverse effects are common and poor compliance is likely to offset any possible gain.

Two-week dual-therapy regimens using a proton pump inhibitor and a single antibacterial produce low rates of *H. pylori* eradication and are **not** recommended.

See under **NSAID-associated ulcers** for the role of *H. pylori* eradication therapy in children starting or taking NSAIDs.

**Test for *Helicobacter pylori***

<sup>13</sup>C-Urea breath test kits are available for confirming the presence of gastro-duodenal infection with *Helicobacter pylori*. The test involves collection of breath samples before and after ingestion of an oral solution of <sup>13</sup>C-urea; the samples are sent for analysis by an appropriate laboratory. The test should not be performed within 4 weeks of treatment with an antibacterial or within 2 weeks of treatment with an antisecretory drug. A specific <sup>13</sup>C-Urea breath test kit for children is available (*Helicobacter Test INFAI for children of the age 3–11*<sup>®</sup>). However the appropriateness of testing for *H. pylori* infection in children has not been established. Breath, saliva, faecal, and urine tests for *H. pylori* are frequently unreliable in children; the most accurate method of diagnosis is endoscopy with biopsy.

**NSAID-associated ulcers**

Gastro-intestinal bleeding and ulceration can occur with NSAID use. Whenever possible, NSAIDs should be **withdrawn** if an ulcer occurs.

Children at high risk of developing gastro-intestinal complications with a NSAID include those with a history of peptic ulcer disease or serious upper gastro-intestinal complication, those taking other medicines that increase the risk of upper gastro-intestinal side-effects, or those with serious co-morbidity. In children at risk of ulceration, a proton pump inhibitor can be considered for protection against gastric and duodenal ulcers associated with non-selective NSAIDs; high dose ranitidine p. 54 is an alternative.

NSAID use and *H. pylori* infection are independent risk factors for gastro-intestinal bleeding and ulceration. In children already taking a NSAID, eradication of *H. pylori* is unlikely to reduce the risk of NSAID-induced bleeding or ulceration. However, in children about to start long-term

**4.2 Gastric and duodenal ulceration**

**Peptic ulceration**

**Overview**

Peptic ulceration commonly involves the stomach, duodenum, and lower oesophagus; after gastric surgery it involves the gastro-enterostomy stoma. Healing can be promoted by general measures, stopping smoking and taking antacids and by antisecretory drug treatment, but relapse is common when treatment ceases. Nearly all duodenal ulcers and most gastric ulcers not associated with NSAIDs are caused by *Helicobacter pylori*.

***Helicobacter pylori* infection**

Eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* reduces the recurrence of gastric and duodenal ulcers and the risk of rebleeding. The presence of *H. pylori* should be confirmed before starting eradication treatment. If possible, the antibacterial sensitivity of the organism should be established at the time of endoscopy and biopsy. Acid inhibition combined with antibacterial treatment is highly effective in the eradication of *H. pylori*; reinfection is rare. Antibiotic-associated colitis is an uncommon risk.

Treatment to eradicate *H. pylori* infection in children should be initiated under specialist supervision. One week triple-therapy regimens that comprise omeprazole p. 58, amoxicillin p. 339, and either clarithromycin p. 330 or metronidazole p. 333 are recommended. Resistance to clarithromycin or to metronidazole is much more common than to amoxicillin and can develop during treatment. A regimen containing amoxicillin and clarithromycin is therefore recommended for initial therapy and one containing amoxicillin and metronidazole is recommended

NSAID treatment who are *H. pylori* positive and have dyspepsia or a history of gastric or duodenal ulcer, eradication of *H. pylori* may reduce the overall risk of ulceration.

If the NSAID can be *discontinued* in a child who has developed an ulcer, a proton pump inhibitor usually produces the most rapid healing; alternatively the ulcer can be treated with an  $H_2$ -receptor antagonist.

If NSAID treatment needs to *continue*, the ulcer is treated with a proton pump inhibitor.

## GASTROPROTECTIVE COMPLEXES AND CHELATORS

### Chelates and complexes

#### Sucralfate

Sucralfate below is a complex of aluminium hydroxide and sulfated sucrose that appears to act by protecting the mucosa from acid-pepsin attack; it has minimal antacid properties.

### Sucralfate

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Benign gastric ulceration | Benign duodenal ulceration

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–1 year: 250 mg 4–6 times a day
- Child 2–11 years: 500 mg 4–6 times a day
- Child 12–14 years: 1 g 4–6 times a day
- Child 15–17 years: 2 g twice daily, dose to be taken on rising and at bedtime, alternatively 1 g 4 times a day for 4–6 weeks, or in resistant cases up to 12 weeks, dose to be taken 1 hour before meals and at bedtime; maximum 8 g per day

##### Prophylaxis of stress ulceration in child under intensive care

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–1 year: 250 mg 4–6 times a day
- Child 2–11 years: 500 mg 4–6 times a day
- Child 12–14 years: 1 g 4–6 times a day
- Child 15–17 years: 1 g 6 times a day; maximum 8 g per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 15 years. Tablets not licensed for prophylaxis of stress ulceration.

- **CAUTIONS** Patients under intensive care (**Important:** reports of bezoar formation)

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Bezoar formation** Following reports of bezoar formation associated with sucralfate, caution is advised in seriously ill patients, especially those receiving concomitant enteral feeds or those with predisposing conditions such as delayed gastric emptying.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sucralfate

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Constipation
- **Uncommon** Dry mouth • nausea
- **Rare or very rare** Bezoar • rash
- **Frequency not known** Back pain • bone disorders • diarrhoea • dizziness • drowsiness • encephalopathy • flatulence • headache • vertigo

- **PREGNANCY** No evidence of harm; absorption from gastro-intestinal tract negligible.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount probably too small to be harmful.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; aluminium is absorbed and may accumulate.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Administration of sucralfate and enteral feeds should be separated by 1 hour and for administration by *mouth*, sucralfate should be given 1 hour before meals. *Oral suspension* blocks fine-bore feeding tubes. Crushed *tablets* may be dispersed in water.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include aniseed and caramel.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, oral suspension

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5

► **Sucralfate (Non-proprietary)**

Sucralfate 1 gram Sulcrate 1g tablets | 100 tablet 

## H<sub>2</sub>-RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS

### H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonists

#### Overview

Histamine  $H_2$ -receptor antagonists heal *gastric and duodenal ulcers* by reducing gastric acid output as a result of histamine  $H_2$ -receptor blockade; they are also used to relieve symptoms of *dyspepsia and gastro-oesophageal reflux disease*.  $H_2$ -receptor antagonists should not normally be used for *Zollinger–Ellison syndrome* because proton pump inhibitors are more effective.

Maintenance treatment with low doses has largely been replaced in *Helicobacter pylori* positive children by eradication regimens.

$H_2$ -receptor antagonist therapy can promote healing of *NSAID-associated ulcers*.

Treatment with a  $H_2$ -receptor antagonist has not been shown to be beneficial in haematemesis and melaena, but prophylactic use reduces the frequency of bleeding from *gastroduodenal erosions in hepatic coma*, and possibly in other conditions requiring intensive care. Treatment also reduces the risk of *acid aspiration* in obstetric patients at delivery (Mendelson's syndrome).

$H_2$ -receptor antagonists are also used to reduce the degradation of pancreatic enzyme supplements in children with cystic fibrosis.

### H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonists

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Constipation • diarrhoea • dizziness • fatigue • headache • myalgia • skin reactions
- **Uncommon** Confusion • depression • erectile dysfunction • gynaecomastia • hallucination • hepatic disorders • leucopenia • nausea • tachycardia
- **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis • alopecia • arthralgia • atrioventricular block • fever • galactorrhoea • pancytopenia • thrombocytopenia • vasculitis

### Ranitidine

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Benign gastric ulceration | Duodenal ulceration

###### ► BY MOUTH

- **Neonate:** 2 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 3 mg/kg 3 times a day), oral absorption is unreliable.

- **Child 1–5 months:** 1 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 3 mg/kg 3 times a day)
- **Child 6 months–2 years:** 2–4 mg/kg twice daily

- Child 3–11 years: 2–4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 150 mg)
- Child 12–17 years: 150 mg twice daily, alternatively 300 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night

### Prophylaxis of stress ulceration

► INITIALLY BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: 0.5–1 mg/kg every 6–8 hours.

- Child 1 month–11 years: 1 mg/kg every 6–8 hours (max. per dose 50 mg), may be given as an intermittent infusion at a rate of 25 mg/hour
- Child 12–17 years: 50 mg every 8 hours, dose to be diluted to 20 mL and given over at least 2 minutes, then (by mouth) 150 mg twice daily, may be given when oral feeding commences

### Reflux oesophagitis and other conditions where gastric acid reduction is beneficial

► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 2 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 3 mg/kg 3 times a day), oral absorption is unreliable.

- Child 1–5 months: 1 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 3 mg/kg 3 times a day)
- Child 6 months–2 years: 2–4 mg/kg twice daily
- Child 3–11 years: 2–4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 150 mg); increased to up to 5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 300 mg), dose increase for severe gastro-oesophageal disease
- Child 12–17 years: 150 mg twice daily, alternatively 300 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night, then increased if necessary to 300 mg twice daily for up to 12 weeks in moderate to severe gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, alternatively increased if necessary to 150 mg 4 times a day for up to 12 weeks in moderate to severe gastro-oesophageal reflux disease

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: 0.5–1 mg/kg every 6–8 hours.

- Child: 1 mg/kg every 6–8 hours (max. per dose 50 mg), may be given as an intermittent infusion at a rate of 25 mg/hour

- **UNLICENSED USE** Oral preparations not licensed for use in children under 3 years. Injection not licensed for use in children under 6 months.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: H2 receptor antagonists

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

#### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare** Bone marrow depression · bradycardia · breast conditions · dyskinesia · erythema multiforme · hepatitis cholestatic · nephritis acute interstitial · pancreatitis acute · vision blurred
- **Frequency not known** Dyspnoea

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare**
- With parenteral use Anaphylactic shock · cardiac arrest
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential, but not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Significant amount present in milk, but not known to be harmful.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For slow intravenous injection dilute to a concentration of 2.5 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over at least 3 minutes.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** In fat malabsorption syndrome, give oral doses 1–2 hours before food to enhance effects of pancreatic enzyme replacement.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Ranitidine for acid reflux

[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ranitidine-for-acid-reflux](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ranitidine-for-acid-reflux)

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Ranitidine can be sold to the public for adults and children over 16 years (provided packs do not contain more than 2 weeks' supply) for the short-term symptomatic relief of heartburn, dyspepsia, and hyperacidity, and for the prevention of these symptoms when associated with consumption of food or drink (max. single dose 75 mg, max. daily dose 300 mg).

### ● MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, infusion

#### Tablet

- **Ranitidine (Non-proprietary)**

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 75 mg** Ranitidine 75mg tablets | 12 tablet [GSL] £0.36

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 150 mg** Ranitidine 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £1.27 DT = £0.76

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 300 mg** Ranitidine 300mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £1.27 DT = £0.75

- **Gavilast** (Reckitt Benckiser Healthcare (UK) Ltd)

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 75 mg** Gavilast Heartburn and Indigestion 75mg tablets | 12 tablet [GSL] £2.79

Gavilast 75mg tablets | 12 tablet [GSL] £2.80

- **Ranicalm** (Bristol Laboratories Ltd)

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 75 mg** Ranicalm 75mg tablets | 12 tablet [GSL] £2.25

- **Ranitil** (Tilomed Laboratories Ltd)

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 150 mg** Ranitil 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £18.13 DT = £0.76

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 300 mg** Ranitil 300mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £17.64 DT = £0.75

- **Zantac** (Omega Pharma Ltd, GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 75 mg** Zantac 75 Relief tablets | 6 tablet [GSL] £1.48 | 12 tablet [GSL] £2.71

Zantac 75 tablets | 24 tablet [P] £5.16 | 48 tablet [P] £7.75 DT = £7.75

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 150 mg** Zantac 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £1.30 DT = £0.76

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 300 mg** Zantac 300mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £1.30 DT = £0.75

### Solution for injection

- **Ranitidine (Non-proprietary)**

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 25 mg per 1 mL** Ranitidine 50mg/2mL solution for injection ampoules |

5 ampoule [PoM] £2.69–£5.00 DT = £2.69

- **Zantac** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 25 mg per 1 mL** Zantac 50mg/2mL solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £2.82 DT = £2.69

### Effervescent tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- **Ranitidine (Non-proprietary)**

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 150 mg** Ranitidine 150mg effervescent tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £36.50 DT = £34.98

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 300 mg** Ranitidine 300mg effervescent tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £36.50 DT = £34.98

### Oral solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol

- **Ranitidine (Non-proprietary)**

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 15 mg per 1 mL** Ranitidine 75mg/5mL oral solution sugar-free | 100 mL [PoM]

£2.07–£2.43 sugar-free | 300 mL [PoM] £21.55 DT = £6.24

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 30 mg per 1 mL** Ranitidine 150mg/5mL oral solution sugar-free | 150 mL [PoM]

£5.50 DT = £5.50

- **Zantac** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Ranitidine (as Ranitidine hydrochloride) 15 mg per 1 mL** Zantac 150mg/10mL syrup sugar-free | 300 mL [PoM] £20.76 DT = £6.24

## PROTON PUMP INHIBITORS

### Proton pump inhibitors

#### Overview

Omeprazole p. 58 is an effective short-term treatment for *gastric and duodenal ulcers*; it is also used in combination with antibacterials for the eradication of *Helicobacter pylori*. An initial short course of omeprazole is the treatment of choice in *gastro-oesophageal reflux disease* with severe symptoms; children with endoscopically confirmed *erosive, ulcerative, or stricturing oesophagitis* usually need to be maintained on omeprazole.

Omeprazole is also used for the prevention and treatment of NSAID-associated ulcers. In children who need to continue NSAID treatment after an ulcer has healed, the dose of omeprazole should not normally be reduced because asymptomatic ulcer deterioration may occur.

Omeprazole is effective in the treatment of the *Zollinger-Ellison syndrome* (including cases resistant to other treatment). It is also used to reduce the degradation of pancreatic enzyme supplements in children with cystic fibrosis.

Lansoprazole p. 57 is not licensed for use in children, but may be considered when the available formulations of omeprazole are unsuitable.

Esomeprazole below can be used for the management of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease when the available formulations of omeprazole and lansoprazole are unsuitable.

### Proton pump inhibitors

- **DRUG ACTION** Proton pump inhibitors inhibit gastric acid secretion by blocking the hydrogen-potassium adenosine triphosphatase enzyme system (the 'proton pump') of the gastric parietal cell.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA ADVICE: PROTON PUMP INHIBITORS (PPIS): VERY LOW RISK OF SUBACUTE CUTANEOUS LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS (SEPTEMBER 2015)

Very infrequent cases of subacute cutaneous lupus erythematosus (SCLE) have been reported in patients taking PPIs. Drug-induced SCLE can occur weeks, months or even years after exposure to the drug.

If a patient treated with a PPI develops lesions—especially in sun-exposed areas of the skin—and it is accompanied by arthralgia:

- advise them to avoid exposing the skin to sunlight;
- consider SCLE as a possible diagnosis;
- consider discontinuing PPI treatment unless it is imperative for a serious acid-related condition; a patient who develops SCLE with a particular PPI may be at risk of the same reaction with another;
- in most cases, symptoms resolve on PPI withdrawal; topical or systemic steroids might be necessary for treatment of SCLE only if there are no signs of remission after a few weeks or months.

- **CAUTIONS** May increase the risk of gastro-intestinal infections (including *Clostridium difficile* infection) • patients at risk of osteoporosis

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Risk of osteoporosis Patients at risk of osteoporosis should maintain an adequate intake of calcium and vitamin D, and if necessary, receive other preventative therapy.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain • constipation • diarrhoea • dizziness • dry mouth • gastrointestinal disorders • headache • insomnia • nausea • skin reactions • vomiting

- **Uncommon** Arthralgia • bone fractures • confusion • depression • drowsiness • leucopenia • malaise • myalgia • paraesthesia • peripheral oedema • thrombocytopenia • vertigo • vision disorders
- **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis • alopecia • gynaecomastia • hallucination • hepatic disorders • hyperhidrosis • hyponatraemia • nephritis tubulointerstitial • pancytopenia • photosensitivity reaction • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • stomatitis • taste altered
- **Frequency not known** Hypomagnesaemia (more common after 1 year of treatment, but sometimes after 3 months of treatment) • subacute cutaneous lupus erythematosus
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Measurement of serum-magnesium concentrations should be considered before and during prolonged treatment with a proton pump inhibitor, especially when used with other drugs that cause hypomagnesaemia or with digoxin.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** A proton pump inhibitor should be prescribed for appropriate indications at the lowest effective dose for the shortest period; the need for long-term treatment should be reviewed periodically.

↑ above

### Esomeprazole

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (in the presence of erosive reflux oesophagitis)**

##### ➤ BY MOUTH

- Child 1–11 years (body-weight 10–19 kg): 10 mg once daily for 8 weeks
- Child 1–11 years (body-weight 20 kg and above): 10–20 mg once daily for 8 weeks
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 40 mg once daily for 4 weeks, continued for further 4 weeks if not fully healed or symptoms persist; maintenance 20 mg daily

##### ➤ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 1–11 years (body-weight up to 20 kg): 10 mg once daily, injection to be given over at least 3 minutes
- Child 1–11 years (body-weight 20 kg and above): 10–20 mg once daily, injection to be given over at least 3 minutes
- Child 12–17 years: 40 mg daily, injection to be given over at least 3 minutes

**Symptomatic treatment of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (in the absence of oesophagitis)**

##### ➤ BY MOUTH

- Child 1–11 years (body-weight 10 kg and above): 10 mg once daily for up to 8 weeks
- Child 12–17 years: 20 mg once daily for up to 4 weeks
- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child 1–11 years: 10 mg once daily, injection to be given over at least 3 minutes
- Child 12–17 years: 20 mg once daily, injection to be given over at least 3 minutes

- **UNLICENSED USE** Tablets and capsules not licensed for use in children 1–11 years.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: proton pump inhibitors

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Uncommon** Encephalopathy
- **Rare or very rare** Aggression • agitation • bronchospasm • increased risk of infection • muscle weakness

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare**
- With parenteral use Renal failure
- **Frequency not known**
- With parenteral use Electrolyte imbalance • vitamin B12 deficiency

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** 1–11 years max. 10 mg daily in severe impairment. 12–17 years max. 20 mg daily in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in severe renal insufficiency.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, dilute reconstituted solution to a concentration not exceeding 800 micrograms/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 10–30 minutes.
  - ▶ With oral use Do not chew or crush capsules; swallow whole or mix capsule contents in water and drink within 30 minutes. Do not crush or chew tablets; swallow whole or disperse in water and drink within 30 minutes. Disperse the contents of each sachet of gastro-resistant granules in approx. 15 mL water. Stir and leave to thicken for a few minutes; stir again before administration and use within 30 minutes; rinse container with 15 mL water to obtain full dose. For administration through a gastric tube, consult product literature.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Counselling on administration of gastro-resistant capsules, tablets, and granules advised.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Gastro-resistant capsule

##### ▶ **Esomeprazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Esomeprazole (as Esomeprazole magnesium dihydrate)**  
**20 mg** Esomeprazole 20mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £12.95 DT = £2.64

**Esomeprazole (as Esomeprazole magnesium dihydrate)**  
**40 mg** Esomeprazole 40mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £17.63 DT = £3.30

##### ▶ **Emozul** (Consilient Health Ltd)

**Esomeprazole (as Esomeprazole magnesium dihydrate)**  
**20 mg** Emozul 20mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £2.64 DT = £2.64

**Esomeprazole (as Esomeprazole magnesium dihydrate)**  
**40 mg** Emozul 40mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £3.30 DT = £3.30

##### ▶ **Ventra** (Ethipharma UK Ltd)

**Esomeprazole (as Esomeprazole magnesium dihydrate)**  
**20 mg** Ventra 20mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £2.55 DT = £2.64

**Esomeprazole (as Esomeprazole magnesium dihydrate)**  
**40 mg** Ventra 40mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £2.97 DT = £3.30

#### Gastro-resistant tablet

##### ▶ **Esomeprazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Esomeprazole (as Esomeprazole magnesium trihydrate)**  
**20 mg** Esomeprazole 20mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £18.50 DT = £2.32

**Esomeprazole (as Esomeprazole magnesium trihydrate)**  
**40 mg** Esomeprazole 40mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £25.19 DT = £2.91

##### ▶ **Nexium** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd, Pfizer Consumer Healthcare Ltd)

**Esomeprazole (as Esomeprazole magnesium trihydrate)**  
**20 mg** Nexium 20mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £18.50 DT = £2.32

**Esomeprazole (as Esomeprazole magnesium trihydrate)**  
**40 mg** Nexium 40mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £25.19 DT = £2.91

#### Powder for solution for injection

##### ▶ **Esomeprazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Esomeprazole (as Esomeprazole sodium) 40 mg** Esomeprazole 40mg powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £3.13 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £3.07

##### ▶ **Nexium** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Esomeprazole (as Esomeprazole sodium) 40 mg** Nexium 1V 40mg powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £4.25 (Hospital only)

#### Gastro-resistant granules

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

##### ▶ **Nexium** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Esomeprazole (as Esomeprazole magnesium trihydrate)**  
**10 mg** Nexium 10mg gastro-resistant granules sachets | 28 sachet [PoM] £25.19 DT = £25.19

**F 56**

07-Jun-2017

## Lansoprazole

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Benign gastric ulcer

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 30 kg): 0.5–1 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 15 mg once daily), doses to be taken in the morning
- ▶ Child (body-weight 30 kg and above): 15–30 mg once daily, doses to be taken in the morning

##### Duodenal ulcer

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 30 kg): 0.5–1 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 15 mg once daily), doses to be taken in the morning
- ▶ Child (body-weight 30 kg and above): 15–30 mg once daily, doses to be taken in the morning

##### NSAID-associated duodenal ulcer | NSAID-associated gastric ulcer

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 30 kg): 0.5–1 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 15 mg once daily), doses to be taken in the morning
- ▶ Child (body-weight 30 kg and above): 15–30 mg once daily, doses to be taken in the morning

##### Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 30 kg): 0.5–1 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 15 mg once daily), doses to be taken in the morning
- ▶ Child (body-weight 30 kg and above): 15–30 mg once daily, doses to be taken in the morning

##### Acid-related dyspepsia

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 30 kg): 0.5–1 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 15 mg once daily), doses to be taken in the morning
- ▶ Child (body-weight 30 kg and above): 15–30 mg once daily, doses to be taken in the morning

##### Fat malabsorption despite pancreatic enzyme replacement therapy in cystic fibrosis

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 30 kg): 0.5–1 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 15 mg once daily), doses to be taken in the morning
- ▶ Child (body-weight 30 kg and above): 15–30 mg once daily, doses to be taken in the morning

#### ● UNLICENSED USE Not licensed for use in children.

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: proton pump inhibitors

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Dry throat · fatigue
- ▶ **Uncommon** Eosinophilia · oedema
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Anaemia · angioedema · appetite decreased · colitis · erectile dysfunction · fever · glossitis · oesophageal candidiasis · pancreatitis · restlessness · tremor

#### ● PREGNANCY Manufacturer advises avoid.

#### ● BREAST FEEDING Avoid—present in milk in *animal* studies.



**● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Use half normal dose in moderate to severe liver disease.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Orodispersible tablets should be placed on the tongue, allowed to disperse and swallowed, or may be swallowed whole with a glass of water. Alternatively, tablets can be dispersed in a small amount of water and administered by an oral syringe or nasogastric tube.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Counselling on administration of orodispersible tablet advised. Medicines for Children leaflet: Lansoprazole for gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD) and ulcers [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/lansoprazole-for-gord-and-ulcers](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/lansoprazole-for-gord-and-ulcers)

**● MEDICAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, powder

**Gastro-resistant capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 22, 25

► **Lansoprazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Lansoprazole 15 mg** Lansoprazole 15mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £12.92 DT = £0.57

**Lansoprazole 30 mg** Lansoprazole 30mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £23.63 DT = £0.89

**Orodispersible tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 22

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

► **Lansoprazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Lansoprazole 15 mg** Lansoprazole 15mg orodispersible tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.99 DT = £2.55

**Lansoprazole 30 mg** Lansoprazole 30mg orodispersible tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £6.99 DT = £4.26

► **Zoton FasTab (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Lansoprazole 15 mg** Zoton FasTab 15mg | 28 tablet [PoM] £2.99 DT = £2.55

**Lansoprazole 30 mg** Zoton FasTab 30mg | 28 tablet [PoM] £5.50 DT = £4.26

F 56

**Omeprazole**

21-Mar-2018

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

***Helicobacter pylori* eradication in combination with amoxicillin and clarithromycin; or in combination with amoxicillin and metronidazole; or in combination with clarithromycin and metronidazole**

► **BY MOUTH**

► Child 1–5 years: 1–2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 40 mg)

► Child 6–11 years: 1–2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 40 mg)

► Child 12–17 years: 40 mg once daily

**Treatment of duodenal ulcers including those complicating NSAID therapy | Treatment of benign gastric ulcers including those complicating NSAID therapy**

► **BY MOUTH**

► Neonate: 700 micrograms/kg once daily for 7–14 days, then increased if necessary to 1.4–2.8 mg/kg once daily.

► Child 1 month–1 year: 700 micrograms/kg once daily, increased if necessary to 3 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 20 mg)

► Child 2–17 years (body-weight 10–19 kg): 10 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 20 mg once daily

► Child 2–17 years (body-weight 20 kg and above): 20 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 40 mg once daily

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

► Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 500 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 20 mg), increased if necessary to

2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 40 mg), injection to be given over 5 minutes

► Child 12–17 years: 40 mg once daily, injection to be given over 5 minutes

**Zollinger–Ellison syndrome**► **BY MOUTH**

► Neonate: 700 micrograms/kg once daily for 7–14 days, then increased if necessary to 1.4–2.8 mg/kg once daily.

► Child 1 month–1 year: 700 micrograms/kg once daily, increased if necessary to 3 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 20 mg)

► Child 2–17 years (body-weight 10–19 kg): 10 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 20 mg once daily

► Child 2–17 years (body-weight 20 kg and above): 20 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 40 mg once daily

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

► Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 500 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 20 mg), increased if necessary to 2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 40 mg), injection to be given over 5 minutes

► Child 12–17 years: 40 mg once daily, injection to be given over 5 minutes

**Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease**► **BY MOUTH**

► Neonate: 700 micrograms/kg once daily for 7–14 days, then increased if necessary to 1.4–2.8 mg/kg once daily.

► Child 1 month–1 year: 700 micrograms/kg once daily, increased if necessary to 3 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 20 mg)

► Child 2–17 years (body-weight 10–19 kg): 10 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 20 mg once daily, in severe ulcerating reflux oesophagitis, maximum 12 weeks at higher dose

► Child 2–17 years (body-weight 20 kg and above): 20 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 40 mg once daily, in severe ulcerating reflux oesophagitis, maximum 12 weeks at higher dose

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

► Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 500 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 20 mg), increased if necessary to 2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 40 mg), injection to be given over 5 minutes

► Child 12–17 years: 40 mg once daily, injection to be given over 5 minutes

**Acid-related dyspepsia**► **BY MOUTH**

► Neonate: 700 micrograms/kg once daily for 7–14 days, then increased if necessary to 1.4–2.8 mg/kg once daily.

► Child 1 month–1 year: 700 micrograms/kg once daily, increased if necessary to 3 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 20 mg)

► Child 2–17 years (initiated by a specialist) (body-weight 10–19 kg): 10 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 20 mg once daily

► Child 2–17 years (initiated by a specialist) (body-weight 20 kg and above): 20 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 40 mg once daily

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

► Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 500 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 20 mg), increased if necessary to 2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 40 mg), injection to be given over 5 minutes

► Child 12–17 years: 40 mg once daily, injection to be given over 5 minutes



**Fat malabsorption despite pancreatic enzyme replacement therapy in cystic fibrosis**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 700 micrograms/kg once daily for 7–14 days, then increased if necessary to 1.4–2.8 mg/kg once daily.
- Child 1 month–1 year: 700 micrograms/kg once daily, increased if necessary to 3 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 20 mg)
- Child 2–17 years (body-weight 10–19 kg): 10 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 20 mg once daily
- Child 2–17 years (body-weight 20 kg and above): 20 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 40 mg once daily
- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 500 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 20 mg), increased if necessary to 2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 40 mg), injection to be given over 5 minutes
- Child 12–17 years: 40 mg once daily, injection to be given over 5 minutes

● **UNLICENSED USE** Capsules and tablets not licensed for use in children except for severe ulcerating reflux oesophagitis in children over 1 year. *Injection* not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: proton pump inhibitors

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Rare or very rare** Aggression · agitation · bronchospasm · encephalopathy · gastrointestinal candidiasis · muscle weakness

● **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but not known to be harmful.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** No more than 700 micrograms/kg (max. 20 mg) once daily.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For administration by mouth, swallow whole, or disperse *Losec MUPS*<sup>®</sup> tablets in water, or mix capsule contents or *Losec MUPS*<sup>®</sup> tablets with fruit juice or yoghurt. Preparations consisting of an e/c tablet within a capsule should **not** be opened.

For administration through an *enteral feeding tube*, use *Losec MUPS*<sup>®</sup> or the contents of a capsule containing omeprazole dispersed in a large volume of water, or in 10 mL Sodium Bicarbonate 8.4% (1 mmol Na<sup>+</sup>/mL). Allow to stand for 10 minutes before administration.

For intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution to a concentration of 400 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 20–30 minutes.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of omeprazole is required, the following strength is used: 20 mg/5 mL.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

► With oral use Counselling on administration advised. Medicines for Children leaflet: Omeprazole for gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD) [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/omeprazole-for-gord](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/omeprazole-for-gord)

● **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

Dental practitioners' formulary

Gastro-resistant omeprazole capsules may be prescribed.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Gastro-resistant capsule**► **Omeprazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Omeprazole 10 mg** Omeprazole 10mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £9.30 DT = £0.59

**Omeprazole 20 mg** Omeprazole 20mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £13.50 DT = £0.60

**Omeprazole 40 mg** Omeprazole 40mg gastro-resistant capsules | 7 capsule [PoM] £6.96 DT = £0.36 | 28 capsule [PoM] £1.44-£19.72

► **Losec** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Omeprazole 10 mg** Losec 10mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £11.16 DT = £0.59

**Omeprazole 20 mg** Losec 20mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £16.70 DT = £0.60

**Omeprazole 40 mg** Losec 40mg gastro-resistant capsules | 7 capsule [PoM] £8.35 DT = £0.36

► **Mepradec** (Discovery Pharmaceuticals)

**Omeprazole 10 mg** Mepradec 10mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £0.58 DT = £0.59

**Omeprazole 20 mg** Mepradec 20mg gastro-resistant capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £0.59 DT = £0.60

**Gastro-resistant tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

► **Omeprazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Omeprazole 10 mg** Omeprazole 10mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £18.91 DT = £7.90

**Omeprazole (as Omeprazole magnesium) 10 mg** Omeprazole 10mg dispersible gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.30 DT = £9.30

**Omeprazole 20 mg** Omeprazole 20mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £28.56 DT = £6.39

**Omeprazole (as Omeprazole magnesium) 20 mg** Omeprazole 20mg dispersible gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £13.92 DT = £13.92

**Omeprazole 40 mg** Omeprazole 40mg gastro-resistant tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £14.28 DT = £6.42

**Omeprazole (as Omeprazole magnesium) 40 mg** Omeprazole 40mg dispersible gastro-resistant tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £6.96 DT = £6.96

► **Losec MUPS** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Omeprazole (as Omeprazole magnesium) 10 mg** Losec MUPS 10mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.30 DT = £9.30

**Omeprazole (as Omeprazole magnesium) 20 mg** Losec MUPS 20mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £13.92 DT = £13.92

**Omeprazole (as Omeprazole magnesium) 40 mg** Losec MUPS 40mg gastro-resistant tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £6.96 DT = £6.96

► **Mezzopram** (Sandoz Ltd)

**Omeprazole (as Omeprazole magnesium) 10 mg** Mezzopram 10mg dispersible gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £6.58 DT = £9.30

**Omeprazole (as Omeprazole magnesium) 20 mg** Mezzopram 20mg dispersible gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.86 DT = £13.92

**Omeprazole (as Omeprazole magnesium) 40 mg** Mezzopram 40mg dispersible gastro-resistant tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £4.93 DT = £6.96

**Powder for solution for infusion**► **Omeprazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Omeprazole (as Omeprazole sodium) 40 mg** Omeprazole 40mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 5 vial [PoM] £32.45 (Hospital only) | 5 vial [PoM] £26.00

## 4.3 Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease

### Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease

#### Management

Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease includes non-erosive gastro-oesophageal reflux and erosive oesophagitis. Uncomplicated gastro-oesophageal reflux is common in infancy and most symptoms, such as intermittent vomiting or repeated, effortless regurgitation, resolve without treatment between 12 and 18 months of age. Older children with gastro-oesophageal reflux disease may have heartburn, acid regurgitation and dysphagia. Oesophageal inflammation (oesophagitis), ulceration or stricture formation may develop in early childhood; gastro-oesophageal reflux disease may also be associated with chronic respiratory disorders including asthma.

Parents and carers of *neonates* and *infants* should be reassured that most symptoms of uncomplicated gastro-oesophageal reflux resolve without treatment. An increase in the frequency and a decrease in the volume of feeds may reduce symptoms. A feed thickener or pre-thickened formula feed can be used on the advice of a dietician. If necessary, a suitable alginate-containing preparation can be used instead of thickened feeds. A thickening agent should be tried for up to 2 weeks before considering other treatment.

*Older children* should be advised about life-style changes such as weight reduction if overweight, and the avoidance of alcohol and smoking. An alginate-containing antacid can be used to relieve symptoms.

Children who do not respond to these measures or who have problems such as respiratory disorders or suspected oesophagitis need to be referred to hospital. On the advice of a paediatrician, a **histamine H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonist** can be used to relieve symptoms of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, promote mucosal healing and permit reduction in antacid consumption. A **proton pump inhibitor** can be used for the treatment of moderate, non-erosive oesophagitis that is unresponsive to an H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonist.

Endoscopically confirmed *erosive*, *ulcerative*, or *stricturing* disease in children is usually treated with a proton pump inhibitor. Reassessment is necessary if symptoms persist despite 4–6 weeks of treatment; long-term use of an H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonist or proton pump inhibitor should not be undertaken without full assessment of the underlying condition. For endoscopically confirmed *erosive*, *ulcerative*, or *stricturing* disease, the proton pump inhibitor usually needs to be maintained at the minimum effective dose.

Motility stimulants, such as erythromycin p. 331 may improve gastro-oesophageal sphincter contraction and accelerate gastric emptying. Evidence for the long-term efficacy of motility stimulants in the management of gastro-oesophageal reflux in children is unconvincing.

For advice on specialised formula feeds, see Enteral feeds.

#### Pregnancy

If dietary and lifestyle changes fail to control gastro-oesophageal reflux disease in pregnancy, an antacid or an alginate can be used. If this is ineffective, ranitidine p. 54 can be tried. Omeprazole p. 58 is reserved for women with severe or complicated reflux disease.

#### Other drugs used for Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease

Esomeprazole, p. 56 · Lansoprazole, p. 57

## ANTACIDS > ALGINATE

### Sodium alginate with calcium carbonate and sodium bicarbonate

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, alginic acid p. 50, sodium bicarbonate p. 586, calcium carbonate p. 592.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Mild symptoms of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease

- **BY MOUTH**
- Child 6–11 years: 5–10 mL, to be taken after meals and at bedtime
- Child 12–17 years: 10–20 mL, to be taken after meals and at bedtime

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium salts · sodium bicarbonate

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include aniseed or peppermint.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Gaviscon for gastro-oesophageal reflux disease [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/gaviscon-gastro-oesophageal-reflux-disease](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/gaviscon-gastro-oesophageal-reflux-disease)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral suspension

**ELECTROLYTES:** May contain Sodium

► **Sodium alginate with calcium carbonate and sodium bicarbonate (Non-proprietary)**

Calcium carbonate 16 mg per 1 mL, Sodium bicarbonate 26.7 mg per 1 mL, Sodium alginate 50 mg per 1 mL Alginate raft-forming oral suspension aniseed sugar-free | 500 mL [GSL] [S] DT = £1.95  
Alginate raft-forming oral suspension sugar-free | 500 mL [GSL] [S] DT = £1.95

Alginate raft-forming oral suspension peppermint sugar-free | 500 mL [GSL] [S] DT = £1.95

- Brands may include Acidex, Entrocalm Heartburn and Indigestion Relief, Gaviscon, Gaviscon Cool, Gaviscon Liquid Relief, Peptac

## 4.4 *Helicobacter pylori* diagnosis

### DIAGNOSTIC AGENTS

#### Urea (13C)

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Diagnosis of gastro-duodenal *Helicobacter pylori* infection

- **BY MOUTH**
- Child: (consult product literature)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Soluble tablet

► **Pylobactell** (Torbet Laboratories Ltd)

Urea [13-C] 100 mg Pylobactell breath test kit | 1 kit [PoM] £20.75

##### Powder

► **Helicobacter Test INFAI** (INFAI UK Ltd)

Urea [13-C] 45 mg Helicobacter Test INFAI for children breath test kit sugar-free | 1 kit [PoM] £19.10

Urea [13-C] 75 mg Helicobacter Test INFAI breath test kit sugar-free | 1 kit [PoM] £21.70

##### Tablet

► **Diabact UBT** (HFA Healthcare Products Ltd)

Urea [13-C] 50 mg diabact UBT 50mg tablets | 1 tablet [PoM] £21.25

## 5 Food allergy

### Food allergy

15-Dec-2016

#### Description of condition

Food allergy is an adverse immune response to a food, commonly associated with cutaneous and gastro-intestinal reactions, and less frequently associated with respiratory reactions and anaphylaxis. It is distinct from food intolerance which is non-immunological. Cow's milk, hen's eggs, soy, wheat, peanuts, tree nuts, fish, and shellfish are the most common allergens. Cross-reactivity between similar foods can occur (e.g. allergy to other mammalian milk in patients with cow's milk allergy).

#### Management of food allergy

**[EvG]** Allergy caused by specific foods should be managed by strict avoidance of the causal food. Sodium cromoglicate p. 167 is licensed as an adjunct to dietary avoidance in children with food allergy. Educating the child or their carer about appropriate nutrition, food preparation, and the risks

of accidental exposure is recommended, such as food and drinks to avoid, ensuring adequate nutritional intake, and interpreting food labels. For children in whom elimination diets might affect growth, a consultation with a nutritionist is recommended to identify alternative dietary sources. ⚠

### Drug treatment

**[EvGr]** There is low quality evidence to support the use of antihistamines to treat acute, **non-life-threatening** symptoms (such as flushing and urticaria) if accidental ingestion of allergenic food has occurred (see *Antihistamines*, under Antihistamines, allergen immunotherapy and allergic emergencies p. 171). Chlorphenamine maleate p. 178 is licensed for the symptomatic control of food allergy. In case of food-induced anaphylaxis, adrenaline/epinephrine p. 136 is the first-line immediate treatment (see also *Allergic emergencies*, under Antihistamines, allergen immunotherapy and allergic emergencies p. 171). Carers and children (of an appropriate age) who are at risk of anaphylaxis should be trained to use self-injectable adrenaline/epinephrine. ⚠

### Cow's milk allergy

**[EvGr]** Parents of infants with suspected allergy to cow's milk should be informed about the most appropriate hypoallergenic formula or milk substitute. Cow's milk avoidance is recommended for the mothers of breast-fed infants who have cow's milk allergy. Children who are allergic to milk should receive alternative dietary sources of calcium and vitamin D. ⚠

### Useful Resources

Food allergy in under 19s: assessment and diagnosis. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Clinical guideline 116. February 2011  
[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg116](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg116)

## 6 Gastro-intestinal smooth muscle spasm

### Antispasmodics

#### Antimuscarinics

The intestinal smooth muscle relaxant properties of antimuscarinic and other antispasmodic drugs may be useful in *irritable bowel syndrome*.

Antimuscarinics (formerly termed 'anticholinergics') reduce intestinal motility. They are occasionally used for the management of *irritable bowel syndrome*.

Antimuscarinics that are used for gastro-intestinal smooth muscle spasm includes the tertiary amine dicycloverine hydrochloride below and the quaternary ammonium compounds propantheline bromide p. 63 and hyoscine butylbromide p. 62. The quaternary ammonium compounds are less lipid soluble than atropine and are less likely to cross the blood-brain barrier; they are also less well absorbed from the gastro-intestinal tract.

Dicycloverine hydrochloride, may also have some direct action on smooth muscle. Hyoscine butylbromide is advocated as a gastro-intestinal antispasmodic, but it is poorly absorbed; the injection may be useful in endoscopy and radiology.

Other indications for antimuscarinic drugs include asthma and airways disease, motion sickness, urinary frequency and enuresis, mydriasis and cycloplegia, premedication, palliative care and as an antidote to organophosphorus poisoning.

### Other antispasmodics

Alverine citrate p. 63, mebeverine hydrochloride p. 63, and peppermint oil p. 35 are believed to be direct relaxants of intestinal smooth muscle and may relieve pain in *irritable bowel syndrome*, and *primary dysmenorrhoea*. They have no serious adverse effects but, like all antispasmodics, should be avoided in paralytic ileus.

### Motility stimulants

Domperidone is a dopamine receptor antagonist which stimulates gastric emptying and small intestinal transit, and enhances the strength of oesophageal sphincter contraction. The MHRA/CHM has issued restrictions on its use because domperidone is associated with a small increased risk of serious cardiac side effects.

A low dose of erythromycin p. 331 stimulates gastro-intestinal motility and may be used on the advice of a paediatric gastroenterologist to promote tolerance of enteral feeds; erythromycin may be less effective as a prokinetic drug in preterm neonates than in older children.

### ANTIMUSCARINICS

F 489

#### Dicycloverine hydrochloride (Dicyclomine hydrochloride)

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic relief of gastro-intestinal disorders characterised by smooth muscle spasm**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 6–23 months: 5–10 mg 3–4 times a day, dose to be taken 15 minutes before feeds
- ▶ Child 2–11 years: 10 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 10–20 mg 3 times a day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Child under 6 months

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: dicycloverine

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Appetite decreased · fatigue · sedation · thirst

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful; manufacturer advises use only if essential.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—present in milk; apnoea reported in infant.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Dicycloverine hydrochloride can be sold to the public provided that max. single dose is 10 mg and max. daily dose is 60 mg.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral solution

- ▶ **Dicycloverine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
 Dicycloverine hydrochloride 2 mg per 1 ml Dicycloverine  
 10mg/5ml oral solution | 120 ml [PoM] £196.36 DT = £179.73

##### Tablet

- ▶ **Dicycloverine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
**Dicycloverine hydrochloride 10 mg** Dicycloverine 10mg tablets |  
 100 tablet [PoM] £201.22 DT = £184.25  
**Dicycloverine hydrochloride 20 mg** Dicycloverine 20mg tablets |  
 84 tablet [PoM] £203.42 DT = £196.69

## Dicycloverine hydrochloride with aluminium hydroxide, magnesium oxide and simeticone

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, dicycloverine hydrochloride p. 61, aluminium hydroxide p. 598, simeticone p. 52.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic relief of gastro-intestinal disorders characterised by smooth muscle spasm**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 10–20 mL every 4 hours as required

### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: antacids · dicycloverine

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral suspension

- **Kolanticon** (Peckforton Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Dicycloverine hydrochloride 500 microgram per 1 mL, Simeticone 4 mg per 1 mL, Magnesium oxide light 20 mg per 1 mL, Aluminium hydroxide dried 40 mg per 1 mL Kolanticon gel sugar-free | 200 mL [P] £4.00 sugar-free | 500 mL [P] £6.00

F 489

## Hyoscine butylbromide

13-Mar-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic relief of gastro-intestinal or genito-urinary disorders characterised by smooth muscle spasm**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 6–11 years: 10 mg 3 times a day
- Child 12–17 years: 20 mg 4 times a day

#### Acute spasm | Spasm in diagnostic procedures

- INITIALLY BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child 2–5 years: 5 mg, then (by intramuscular injection or by slow intravenous injection) 5 mg after 30 minutes if required, dose may be repeated more frequently in endoscopy; maximum 15 mg per day
- Child 6–11 years: 5–10 mg, then (by intramuscular injection or by intravenous injection) 5–10 mg after 30 minutes if required, dose may be repeated more frequently in endoscopy; maximum 30 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: 20 mg, then (by intramuscular injection or by slow intravenous injection) 20 mg after 30 minutes if required, dose may be repeated more frequently in endoscopy; maximum 80 mg per day

#### Excessive respiratory secretions in palliative care

- BY MOUTH
- Child 1 month–1 year: 300–500 micrograms/kg 3–4 times a day (max. per dose 5 mg)
- Child 2–4 years: 5 mg 3–4 times a day
- Child 5–11 years: 10 mg 3–4 times a day
- Child 12–17 years: 10–20 mg 3–4 times a day
- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child 1 month–4 years: 300–500 micrograms/kg 3–4 times a day (max. per dose 5 mg)
- Child 5–11 years: 5–10 mg 3–4 times a day
- Child 12–17 years: 10–20 mg 3–4 times a day

#### Bowel colic (in palliative care)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 1 month–1 year: 300–500 micrograms/kg 3–4 times a day (max. per dose 5 mg)
- Child 2–4 years: 5 mg 3–4 times a day
- Child 5–11 years: 10 mg 3–4 times a day
- Child 12–17 years: 10–20 mg 3–4 times a day

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child 1 month–4 years: 300–500 micrograms/kg 3–4 times a day (max. per dose 5 mg)
- Child 5–11 years: 5–10 mg 3–4 times a day
- Child 12–17 years: 10–20 mg 3–4 times a day

### PHARMACOKINETICS

- Administration by mouth is associated with poor absorption.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years. Injection not licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: HYOSCINE BUTYLBROMIDE (*BUSCOPAN*®) INJECTION: RISK OF SERIOUS ADVERSE EFFECTS IN PATIENTS WITH UNDERLYING CARDIAC DISEASE (FEBRUARY 2017)

The MHRA advises that hyoscine butylbromide injection can cause serious adverse effects including tachycardia, hypotension, and anaphylaxis; several reports have noted that anaphylaxis is more likely to be fatal in patients with underlying coronary heart disease. Hyoscine butylbromide injection is contra-indicated in patients with tachycardia and should be used with caution in patients with cardiac disease; the MHRA recommends that these patients are monitored and that resuscitation equipment and trained personnel are readily available.

### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

- With intramuscular use or intravenous use Tachycardia

### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: hyoscine

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Uncommon** Skin reactions
- **Frequency not known** Dyspnoea · mydriasis

### ● PREGNANCY Manufacturer advises avoid.

### ● BREAST FEEDING Amount too small to be harmful.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- With oral use For administration by *mouth*, injection solution may be used; content of ampoule may be stored in a refrigerator for up to 24 hours after opening.
- With intravenous use For *intravenous injection*, may be diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over at least 1 minute.

### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

**Palliative care** For further information on the use of hyoscine butylbromide in palliative care, see [www.palliativedrugs.com/formulary/en/hyoscine-butylbromide.html](http://www.palliativedrugs.com/formulary/en/hyoscine-butylbromide.html)

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Hyoscine butylbromide tablets can be sold to the public for medically confirmed irritable bowel syndrome, provided single dose does not exceed 20 mg, daily dose does not exceed 80 mg, and pack does not contain a total of more than 240 mg.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Solution for injection

- **Buscopan** (Sanofi)  
Hyoscine butylbromide 20 mg per 1 mL Buscopan 20mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £2.92 DT = £2.92

#### Tablet

- **Buscopan** (Sanofi)  
Hyoscine butylbromide 10 mg Buscopan 10mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £3.00 DT = £3.00

F 489

## Propantheline bromide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic relief of gastro-intestinal disorders characterised by smooth muscle spasm**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years: 300 micrograms/kg 3–4 times a day (max. per dose 15 mg), dose to be taken at least one hour before food
- Child 12–17 years: 15 mg 3 times a day, dose to be taken at least one hour before food and 30 mg, dose to be taken at night; maximum 120 mg per day

● **UNLICENSED USE** Tablets not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: propantheline

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Arrhythmias · bronchial secretion decreased · mydriasis · photophobia · urinary hesitancy

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available.

● **BREAST FEEDING** May suppress lactation.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 23

- **Pro-Banthine** (Kyowa Kirin Ltd)  
Propantheline bromide 15 mg Pro-Banthine 15mg tablets | 112 tablet [PoM] £20.74 DT = £20.74

## ANTISPASMODICS

## Alverine citrate

24-Feb-2016

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic relief of gastro-intestinal disorders characterised by smooth muscle spasm | Dysmenorrhoea**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 60–120 mg 1–3 times a day

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Intestinal obstruction · paralytic ileus

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Dizziness · dyspnoea · headache · jaundice (reversible on discontinuation) · nausea · skin reactions · wheezing

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—limited information available

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—limited information available.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Dizziness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Capsule

##### ► Alverine citrate (Non-proprietary)

Alverine citrate 60 mg Alverine 60mg capsules | 100 capsule [P] £19.49 DT = £4.78

Alverine citrate 120 mg Alverine 120mg capsules | 60 capsule [P] £23.28 DT = £23.28

##### ► Audmonal (Teva UK Ltd)

Alverine citrate 60 mg Audmonal 60mg capsules | 100 capsule [P] £14.80 DT = £4.78

Alverine citrate 120 mg Audmonal Forte 120mg capsules | 60 capsule [P] £17.75 DT = £23.28

##### ► Gielism (HFA Healthcare Products Ltd)

Alverine citrate 60 mg Gielism 60mg capsules | 100 capsule [P] £19.48 DT = £4.78

##### ► Spasmonal (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Alverine citrate 60 mg Spasmonal 60mg capsules | 100 capsule [P] £16.45 DT = £4.78

Alverine citrate 120 mg Spasmonal Forte 120mg capsules | 60 capsule [P] £19.42 DT = £23.28

## Mebeverine hydrochloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Adjunct in gastro-intestinal disorders characterised by smooth muscle spasm**

#### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 3 years: 25 mg 3 times a day, dose preferably taken 20 minutes before meals
- Child 4–7 years: 50 mg 3 times a day, dose preferably taken 20 minutes before meals
- Child 8–9 years: 100 mg 3 times a day, dose preferably taken 20 minutes before meals
- Child 10–17 years: 135–150 mg 3 times a day, dose preferably taken 20 minutes before meals

#### Irritable bowel syndrome

#### ► BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 12–17 years: 200 mg twice daily

● **UNLICENSED USE** Tablets and liquid not licensed for use in children under 10 years. Granules not licensed for use in children under 12 years. Modified-release capsules not licensed for use in children under 18 years.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Paralytic ileus

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Angioedema · face oedema · skin reactions

● **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful—manufacturers advise avoid.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturers advise avoid—no information available.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on the timing of administration of mebeverine hydrochloride tablets and oral suspension. Medicines for Children leaflet: Mebeverine for intestinal spasm [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mebeverine-for-intestinal-spasms](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mebeverine-for-intestinal-spasms)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral suspension

##### ► Mebeverine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

Mebeverine hydrochloride (as Mebeverine pamoate) 10 mg per 1 ml Mebeverine 50mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM] £187.00 DT = £187.00

#### Modified-release capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

##### ► Mebeverine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

Mebeverine hydrochloride 200 mg Mebeverine 200mg modified-release capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £6.92 DT = £6.92

##### ► Aurobeverine MR (Milpharm Ltd)

Mebeverine hydrochloride 200 mg Aurobeverine MR 200mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £6.92 DT = £6.92

##### ► Colofac MR (Mylan)

Mebeverine hydrochloride 200 mg Colofac MR 200mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £6.92 DT = £6.92

#### Tablet

##### ► Mebeverine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

Mebeverine hydrochloride 135 mg Mebeverine 135mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £20.00 DT = £4.35

##### ► Colofac (Mylan)

Mebeverine hydrochloride 135 mg Colofac 135mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £9.02 DT = £4.35

Colofac IBS 135mg tablets | 15 tablet [P] £2.83



## 7 Liver disorders and related conditions

### 7.1 Biliary disorders

#### Cholestasis

01-May-2017

##### Description of condition

Cholestasis is an impairment of bile formation and/or bile flow, which may clinically present with fatigue, pruritus, dark urine, pale stools and, in its most overt form, jaundice and signs of fat soluble vitamin deficiencies.

##### Treatment

**[EvGr]** Ursodeoxycholic acid p. 65 [unlicensed] and colestyramine p. 129 [unlicensed under 6 years] are used to relieve cholestatic pruritus in children, even if evidence to support their use is limited.

Colestyramine is an anion-exchange resin that is not absorbed from the gastro-intestinal tract. It relieves pruritus by forming an insoluble complex in the intestine with bile acids and other compounds—the reduction of serum bile acid levels reduces excess deposition in the dermal tissue with a resultant decrease in pruritus.

**Under specialist supervision**, other drugs which may be used as an alternative treatment for **intractable** cholestatic pruritus include rifampicin p. 364 [unlicensed indication], phenobarbital p. 216 [unlicensed indication] and opioid antagonists [unlicensed indication]. However, they should be used with caution and under expert guidance as these children usually have severe liver disease—careful monitoring is required. **⚠**

#### Inborn errors of primary bile acid synthesis

27-Apr-2018

##### Description of condition

Inborn errors of primary bile acid synthesis are a group of diseases in which the liver does not produce enough primary bile acids due to enzyme deficiencies. These acids are the main components of the bile, and include cholic acid and chenodeoxycholic acid.

##### Treatment

Cholic acid p. 65 is licensed for the treatment of inborn errors of primary bile acid synthesis due to an inborn deficiency of two specific liver enzymes. It acts by replacing some of the missing bile acids, therefore relieving the symptoms of the disease.

Chenodeoxycholic acid below is licensed for the treatment of inborn errors of primary bile acid synthesis due to a deficiency of one specific enzyme in the bile acid synthesis pathway when presenting as cerebrotendinous xanthomatosis.

Ursodeoxycholic acid p. 65 [unlicensed indication] has been used to treat inborn errors in primary bile acid synthesis, but there is an absence of evidence to recommend its use.

#### Primary biliary cholangitis

30-May-2017

##### Description of condition

Primary biliary cholangitis (or primary biliary cirrhosis) is a chronic cholestatic disease which develops due to progressive destruction of small and intermediate bile ducts

within the liver, subsequently evolving to fibrosis and cirrhosis.

##### Treatment

**[EvGr]** Ursodeoxycholic acid p. 65 is recommended for the management of primary biliary cholangitis, including those with asymptomatic disease. It slows disease progression, but the effect on overall survival is uncertain. **⚠**

#### Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome

30-May-2017

##### Description of condition

Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome is an inborn error of cholesterol synthesis. It is characterised by multiple congenital anomalies, intellectual deficit, growth delay, microcephaly, and behavioural problems. The disease is present at birth, but may be detected in later childhood or adulthood in mild forms. Hypoglycaemia due to adrenal insufficiency can present as an acute manifestation.

##### Aims of treatment

There is currently no cure for Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome. Management is aimed at symptom relief and alleviation of functional disabilities.

##### Treatment

**[EvGr]** Children with Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome are treated with dietary cholesterol supplementation, including high cholesterol foods (such as egg yolks) or a suspension of pharmaceutical grade cholesterol p. 66 (available from Special-order manufacturers p. 1066 or specialist importing companies) to help improve growth failure and photosensitivity. **⚠** However, it is not clear who will benefit most from cholesterol treatment or how long it should continue.

**[EvGr]** In some cases bile acid supplements, such as chenodeoxycholic acid below [unlicensed] and ursodeoxycholic acid p. 65 [unlicensed indication] have been also used for this condition, but their use is not generally recommended. **⚠**

#### BILE ACIDS

#### Chenodeoxycholic acid

05-Apr-2018

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

###### ► Cerebrotendinous xanthomatosis (specialist use only)

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Initially 5 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, adjusted according to response; maximum 15 mg/kg per day; maximum 1000 mg per day

###### ► Defective synthesis of bile acid (specialist use only)

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Initially 5 mg/kg 3 times a day, reduced to 2.5 mg/kg 3 times a day.
- Child: Initially 5 mg/kg 3 times a day, reduced to 2.5 mg/kg 3 times a day

###### ► Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome (specialist use only)

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 7 mg/kg once daily, alternatively 7 mg/kg daily in divided doses.
- Child: 7 mg/kg once daily, alternatively 7 mg/kg daily in divided doses

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for defective synthesis of bile acid. Not licensed for Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Non-functioning gall bladder • radio-opaque stones



- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: chenodeoxycholic acid
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Constipation
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—fetotoxicity reported in *animal* studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises monitor—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises monitor—no information available.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Manufacturer advises to monitor serum cholestanol levels and/or urine bile alcohols every 3 months during the initiation of therapy and dose adjustment, and then at least annually; liver function should also be monitored during initiation of therapy and then at least annually; additional or more frequent investigations may need to be undertaken to monitor therapy during periods of fast growth or concomitant disease.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For administration by *mouth* in patients who are unable to swallow capsules and/or need to take a dose below 250 mg, manufacturer advises to add capsule contents to sodium bicarbonate solution 8.4%—for further information, consult product literature.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Capsule

- ▶ **Chenodeoxycholic acid (non-proprietary)** ▼

**Chenodeoxycholic acid 250 mg** Chenodeoxycholic acid 250mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £14,000.00

## Cholic acid

21-Mar-2016

- **DRUG ACTION** Cholic acid is the predominant primary bile acid in humans, which can be used to provide a source of bile acid in patients with inborn deficiencies in bile acid synthesis.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Inborn errors of primary bile acid synthesis (initiated by a specialist)**

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 10 kg): 50 mg daily, then increased in steps of 50 mg daily in divided doses; usual dose 5–15 mg/kg daily in divided doses, dose to be given with food at the same time each day
- ▶ Child (body-weight 10 kg and above): Usual dose 5–15 mg/kg daily; increased in steps of 50 mg daily in divided doses if required, dose to be given with food at the same time each day; Usual maximum 500 mg/24 hours

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cholic acid
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Cholelithiasis (long term use) · diarrhoea · pruritus
- **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Patients presenting with pruritus and/or persistent diarrhoea should be investigated for potential overdose by a serum and/or urine bile acid assay.
- **PREGNANCY** Limited data available—not known to be harmful, manufacturer advises continue treatment.
- **Monitoring** Manufacturer advises monitor patient parameters more frequently in pregnancy.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but not known to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
- **Monitoring** Manufacturer advises monitor closely.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Manufacturer advises monitor serum and/or urine bile-acid concentrations every 3 months for the first year, then every 6 months for three

years, then annually; monitor liver function tests at the same or greater frequency.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises capsules may be opened and the content added to infant formula, juice, fruit compote, or yoghurt for administration.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Counselling advised on administration.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

- ▶ **Orphacol** (Laboratoires CTRS) ▼

**Cholic acid 50 mg** Orphacol 50mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]

£1,860.00 | 60 capsule [PoM] £3,720.00

**Cholic acid 250 mg** Orphacol 250mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]

£6,630.00

## Ursodeoxycholic acid

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Cholestasis

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 5 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 10 mg/kg 3 times a day), adjusted according to response.

- ▶ Child 1-23 months: 5 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 10 mg/kg 3 times a day), adjusted according to response

**Improvement of hepatic metabolism of essential fatty acids and bile flow, in children with cystic fibrosis**

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child: 10–15 mg/kg twice daily, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses

**Cholestasis associated with total parenteral nutrition**

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 10 mg/kg 3 times a day.

- ▶ Child: 10 mg/kg 3 times a day

**Sclerosing cholangitis**

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child: 5–10 mg/kg 2–3 times a day (max. per dose 15 mg/kg 3 times a day), adjusted according to response

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for the treatment of cholestasis, sclerosing cholangitis, cholestasis associated with total parenteral nutrition or the improvement of hepatic metabolism of essential fatty acids and bile flow in cystic fibrosis.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Non-functioning gall bladder · radio-opaque stones
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ursodeoxycholic acid
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · pale faeces
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Cholelithiasis calcification · skin reactions
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Nausea · vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** No evidence of harm but manufacturer advises avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Not known to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in chronic liver disease (but used in primary biliary cirrhosis).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients should be given dietary advice (including avoidance of excessive cholesterol and calories).

Medicines for Children leaflet: Ursodeoxycholic acid for cholestasis and sclerosing cholangitis [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ursodeoxycholic-acid-for-cholestasis-and-sclerosing-cholangitis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ursodeoxycholic-acid-for-cholestasis-and-sclerosing-cholangitis)

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Ursolfalk** (Dr. Falk Pharma UK Ltd)

**Ursodeoxycholic acid 50 mg per 1 ml** Ursolfalk 250mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 250 ml **[PoM]** £26.98 DT = £26.98

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Ursodeoxycholic acid (Non-proprietary)**

**Ursodeoxycholic acid 150 mg** Ursodeoxycholic acid 150mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]** £19.02 DT = £19.02

**Ursodeoxycholic acid 300 mg** Ursodeoxycholic acid 300mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]** £47.63 DT = £47.63

► **Cholurso** (HFA Healthcare Products Ltd)

**Ursodeoxycholic acid 250 mg** Cholurso 250mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]** £15.49 DT = £15.49

**Ursodeoxycholic acid 500 mg** Cholurso 500mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]** £45.00

► **Destolit** (Norgine Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Ursodeoxycholic acid 150 mg** Destolit 150mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]** £18.39 DT = £19.02

► **Ursolfalk** (Dr. Falk Pharma UK Ltd)

**Ursodeoxycholic acid 500 mg** Ursolfalk 500mg tablets | 100 tablet **[PoM]** £80.00 DT = £80.00

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Ursodeoxycholic acid (Non-proprietary)**

**Ursodeoxycholic acid 250 mg** Ursodeoxycholic acid 250mg capsules | 60 capsule **[PoM]** £31.50 DT = £15.75 | 100 capsule **[PoM]** £26.25

► **Ursolfalk** (Dr. Falk Pharma UK Ltd)

**Ursodeoxycholic acid 250 mg** Ursolfalk 250mg capsules | 60 capsule **[PoM]** £30.17 DT = £15.75 | 100 capsule **[PoM]** £31.88

## LIPIDS > STEROLS

### Cholesterol

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 5–10 mg/kg 3–4 times a day.

► Child: 5–10 mg/kg 3–4 times a day, doses up to 15 mg/kg 4 times daily have been used

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed.

#### CONTRA-INDICATIONS

##### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

For contra-indications, consult product literature.

#### CAUTIONS

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For advice on cautions, consult product literature.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Cholesterol powder can be mixed with a vegetable oil before administration.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, powder

## 7.2 Oesophageal varices

### PITUITARY AND HYPOTHALAMIC HORMONES AND ANALOGUES > VASOPRESSIN AND ANALOGUES

#### Terlipressin acetate

##### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

###### GLYPRESSIN® INJECTION

**Adjunct in acute massive haemorrhage of gastro-intestinal tract or oesophageal varices (specialist use only)**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 12–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): Initially 2 mg every 4 hours until bleeding controlled, then reduced to 1 mg every 4 hours if required, maximum duration 48 hours

► Child 12–17 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 2 mg every 4 hours until bleeding controlled, reduced if not tolerated to 1 mg every 4 hours, maximum duration 48 hours

###### VARIQUEL® INJECTION

**Adjunct in acute massive haemorrhage of gastro-intestinal tract or oesophageal varices (specialist use only)**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 12–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): Initially 1 mg, then 1 mg every 4–6 hours for up to 72 hours, to be administered over 1 minute

► Child 12–17 years (body-weight 50–69 kg): Initially 1.5 mg, then 1 mg every 4–6 hours for up to 72 hours, to be administered over 1 minute

► Child 12–17 years (body-weight 70 kg and above): Initially 2 mg, then 1 mg every 4–6 hours for up to 72 hours, to be administered over 1 minute

● **UNLICENSED USE** Unlicensed for use in children.

● **CAUTIONS** Arrhythmia · electrolyte and fluid disturbances · heart disease · history of QT-interval prolongation · respiratory disease · septic shock · uncontrolled hypertension · vascular disease

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Abdominal cramps · arrhythmias · diarrhoea · headache · hypertension · hypotension · pallor · peripheral ischaemia · vasoconstriction

► **Uncommon** Chest pain · cyanosis · fluid overload · heart failure · hot flush · hyponatraemia · intestinal ischaemia · ischaemic heart disease · lymphangitis · myocardial infarction · nausea · pulmonary oedema · respiratory disorders · seizure · skin necrosis · uterine disorders · vomiting

► **Rare or very rare** Dyspnoea · hyperglycaemia · stroke

● **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless benefits outweigh risk—uterine contractions and increased intra-uterine pressure in early pregnancy, and decreased uterine blood flow reported.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid unless benefits outweigh risk—no information available.


● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in chronic renal failure.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

► **Glypressin** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Terlipressin acetate 120 microgram per 1 ml** Glypressin 1mg/8.5ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule **[PoM]** 

- **Variquel** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Terlipressin acetate 200 microgram per 1 ml Variquel 1mg/5ml  
solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £89.98 (Hospital only)

## Vasopressin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Adjunct in acute massive haemorrhage of gastrointestinal tract or oesophageal varices (specialist use only)**

► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- **Child:** Initially 0.3 unit/kg (max. per dose 20 units), dose to be administered over 20–30 minutes, then 0.3 unit/kg/hour, adjusted according to response (max. per dose 1 unit/kg/hour), if bleeding stops, continue at same dose for 12 hours, then withdraw gradually over 24–48 hours; max. duration of treatment 72 hours, dose may alternatively be infused directly into the superior mesenteric artery

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Chronic nephritis (until reasonable blood nitrogen concentrations attained) • vascular disease (especially disease of coronary arteries) unless extreme caution
- **CAUTIONS** Asthma • avoid fluid overload • conditions which might be aggravated by water retention • epilepsy • heart failure • hypertension • migraine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain • angina pectoris • bronchospasm • cardiac arrest • chest pain • diarrhoea • flatulence • fluid imbalance • gangrene • headache • hyperhidrosis • hypertension • musculoskeletal chest pain • nausea • pallor • peripheral ischaemia • tremor • urticaria • vertigo • vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Oxytocic effect in third trimester.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Not known to be harmful.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intravenous infusion (argipressin); dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a concentration of 0.2–1 unit/mL.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

- **Vasopressin (Non-proprietary)**

Argipressin 20 unit per 1 ml Argipressin 20units/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £800.00 (Hospital only)

## 8 Obesity

01-Jun-2016

### Obesity

#### Description of condition

Obesity is directly linked to many health problems including cardiovascular disease, type 2 diabetes, and obstructive sleep apnoea syndrome. It can also contribute to psychological and psychiatric morbidities.

In children and adolescents, body mass index (BMI) should be used as a practical estimation of body fat. However, it should be interpreted with caution as it is not a direct measure of adiposity. Assessing the BMI of children is more complicated than for adults because it changes as they grow and mature, with different growth patterns seen between boys and girls.

Public Health England advises that the British 1990 (UK90) growth reference charts should be used to determine the weight status of children. A child  $\geq$  the 91st centile is classified as overweight, and as obese if  $\geq$  the 98th centile. Waist circumference is not recommended as a routine

measure, but should be used as an additional predictor for risk of developing other long-term health problems. Children who are overweight or obese and have significant comorbidities or complex needs should be considered for specialist referral.

### Aims of treatment

Children who are overweight or obese and are no longer growing taller will ultimately need to lose weight and maintain weight loss to improve their BMI. However, preventing further weight gain while making lifestyle changes, may be an appropriate short-term aim.

### Overview

**[EvGr]** The goals of management of obesity should be agreed together with the child and their parents or carers; parents or carers should be encouraged to take responsibility for lifestyle changes of their children. Referral to a specialist can be considered for children who are overweight or obese and have significant comorbidities or complex needs (e.g. learning disabilities). Children should be assessed for comorbidities such as hypertension, hyperinsulinaemia, dyslipidaemia, type 2 diabetes, psychosocial dysfunction, and exacerbation of conditions such as asthma.

An initial assessment should consider potential underlying causes (e.g. hypothyroidism) and a review of the appropriateness of current medications, which are known to cause weight gain, e.g. atypical antipsychotics, beta-adrenoceptor blocking drugs, insulin (when used in the treatment of type 2 diabetes), sodium valproate, and tricyclic antidepressants.  $\Delta$

### Lifestyle changes

**[EvGr]** These children should be encouraged to engage in a sustainable weight management programme which includes strategies to change behaviour, increase physical activity and improve diet and eating behaviour. These changes should be encouraged within the whole family. Any dietary changes should be age appropriate and consistent with healthy eating recommendations. Surgical intervention is not generally recommended in children or adolescents.  $\Delta$

### Drug treatment

**[EvGr]** Drug treatment is not generally recommended for children younger than 12 years, unless there are exceptional circumstances, such as if severe comorbidities are present. In children over 12 years, drug treatment is only recommended if physical comorbidities, such as orthopaedic problems or sleep apnoea, or severe psychological comorbidities are present. Drug treatment should **never** be used as the sole element of treatment and should be used as part of an overall weight management plan. Orlistat p. 68 [unlicensed use] is the only drug currently available in the UK that is recommended specifically for the treatment of obesity; it acts by reducing the absorption of dietary fat. Treatment should be started and monitored in a specialist paediatric setting by experienced multidisciplinary teams. An initial 6–12 month trial is recommended, with regular review to assess effectiveness, adverse effects and adherence.

Treatment may also be used to maintain weight loss rather than to continue to lose weight. A vitamin and mineral supplement may also be considered if there is concern about inadequate micronutrient intake, particularly for younger children who need vitamins and minerals for growth and development.  $\Delta$

### Useful Resources

Obesity: identification, assessment and management. Clinical Guideline 189. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. November 2014.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg189](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg189)

Measuring and interpreting BMI in Children. Public Health England.  
[webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/20170210161227/www.noo.org.uk/NOO\\_about\\_obesity/measurement/children](http://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/20170210161227/www.noo.org.uk/NOO_about_obesity/measurement/children)

## PERIPHERALLY ACTING ANTI-OBESITY PRODUCTS > LIPASE INHIBITORS

### Orlistat

- **DRUG ACTION** Orlistat, a lipase inhibitor, reduces the absorption of dietary fat.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Adjunct in obesity

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years (initiated by a specialist): 120 mg up to 3 times a day, dose to be taken immediately before, during, or up to 1 hour after each main meal, continue treatment beyond 12 weeks only under specialist supervision, if a meal is missed or contains no fat, the dose of orlistat should be omitted

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Cholestasis · chronic malabsorption syndrome
- **CAUTIONS** Chronic kidney disease · may impair absorption of fat-soluble vitamins · volume depletion

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Vitamin supplementation (especially of vitamin D) may be considered if there is concern about deficiency of fat-soluble vitamins.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: orlistat
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Abdominal pain (may be minimised by reduced fat intake) · anxiety · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal disorders
  - **Frequency not known** Anorectal haemorrhage · bullous dermatitis · cholelithiasis · diverticulitis · hepatitis · oxalate nephropathy · pancreatitis · renal failure
- **PREGNANCY** Use with caution.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—no information available.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Capsule

###### ► Orlistat (Non-proprietary)

**Orlistat 120 mg** Orlistat 120mg capsules | 84 capsule [PoM] £35.43  
 DT = £15.90

###### ► Alli (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

**Orlistat 60 mg** Alli 60mg capsules | 84 capsule [P] £30.70

###### ► Beacita (Actavis UK Ltd)

**Orlistat 120 mg** Beacita 120mg capsules | 84 capsule [PoM] £31.63  
 DT = £15.90

###### ► Orlos (Crescent Pharma Ltd)

**Orlistat 60 mg** Orlos 60mg capsules | 84 capsule [P] £9.89

###### ► Xenical (Cheplapharm Arzneimittel GmbH)

**Orlistat 120 mg** Xenical 120mg capsules | 84 capsule [PoM] £31.63  
 DT = £15.90

## 9 Rectal and anal disorders

### 9.1 Anal fissures

#### Anal fissure

31-Aug-2016

##### Description of condition

An anal fissure is a tear or ulcer in the lining of the anal canal, immediately within the anal margin. Clinical features of anal fissure include bleeding and persistent pain on defecation, and a linear split in the anal mucosa. Constipation (passage of hard stools) is the most common cause in children. The majority of anal fissures are posterior, and an underlying cause should be considered (secondary anal fissure) if fissures are multiple, occur laterally, and are refractory to treatment.

**[EvGr]** Suspect sexual abuse if a child has an anal fissure, and if constipation, Crohn's disease or passing hard stools have been excluded as the cause (see also *Useful resources* below). ⚠

##### Aims of treatment

The aim of treatment is to relieve pain and promote healing of the fissure.

##### Drug treatment

**[EvGr]** Initial management of acute anal fissures should focus on ensuring that stools are soft and easily passed. Osmotic laxatives, such as lactulose p. 41 or macrogols (macrogol 3350 with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride p. 42), are recommended. A simple analgesic (such as paracetamol p. 271 or ibuprofen p. 655, may be offered for prolonged burning pain following defecation.

Children should be referred to a paediatric specialist if the anal fissure has not healed following two weeks of initial management, or earlier if there is significant pain. ⚠

##### Useful Resources

Child maltreatment: when to suspect maltreatment in under 18s. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Clinical guideline 89. July 2009.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg89](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg89)

### 9.2 Haemorrhoids

#### Haemorrhoids

01-Dec-2016

##### Description of condition

Haemorrhoids, or piles, are abnormal swellings of the vascular mucosal anal cushions around the anus. Internal haemorrhoids arise above the dentate line and are usually painless unless they become strangulated. External haemorrhoids originate below the dentate line and can be itchy or painful. Haemorrhoids in children are rare but may occur in infants with portal hypertension.

##### Aims of treatment

The aims of treatment are to reduce the symptoms (pain, bleeding and swelling), promote healing, and prevent recurrence.

##### Non-drug treatment

**[EvGr]** Stools should be kept soft and easy to pass (to minimise straining) by increasing dietary fibre and fluid intake. Advice about perianal hygiene is helpful to aid healing and reduce irritation and itching. ⚠

## Drug treatment

**[EvGr]** If constipation is present, it should be treated, see Constipation p. 39.

A simple analgesic, such as paracetamol p. 271, can be used for pain relief. NSAIDs should be avoided if rectal bleeding is present.

Symptomatic treatment with a locally applied preparation is appropriate for short periods. **[E]** Manufacturer advises preparations containing local anaesthetics (lidocaine, cinchocaine, and pramocaine [unlicensed]) should only be used for a few days as they may cause sensitisation of the anal skin—local anaesthetic ointments can be absorbed through the rectal mucosa (with a theoretical risk of systemic effects) and very rarely may cause increased irritation; excessive application should be **avoided** in infants and children.

Topical preparations combining corticosteroids with local anaesthetics and soothing agents are available for the management of haemorrhoids. Manufacturer advises long-term use of corticosteroid creams can cause ulceration and permanent damage due to thinning of the perianal skin and should be avoided. Continuous or excessive use carries a risk of adrenal suppression and systemic corticosteroid effects (particularly in infants).

**[EvGr]** Topical preparations containing corticosteroids must not be used if infection is present (such as perianal streptococcal infection, *herpes simplex* or perianal thrush).

Recurrent symptoms, should be referred to secondary care for further investigation and management. **[E]**

## Related drugs

Topical preparations used for haemorrhoids: lidocaine hydrochloride p. 826, benzyl benzoate with bismuth oxide, bismuth subgallate, hydrocortisone acetate, peru balsam and zinc oxide below, cinchocaine hydrochloride with fluocortolone caproate and fluocortolone pivalate below, cinchocaine with hydrocortisone p. 70, cinchocaine with prednisolone p. 70.

## CORTICOSTEROIDS

### Benzyl benzoate with bismuth oxide, bismuth subgallate, hydrocortisone acetate, peru balsam and zinc oxide

21-Dec-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Haemorrhoids | Pruritus ani

##### ► BY RECTUM USING OINTMENT

- Child 12–17 years: Apply twice daily for no longer than 7 days, to be applied morning and night, an additional dose should be applied after a bowel movement

##### ► BY RECTUM USING SUPPOSITORIES

- Child 12–17 years: 1 suppository twice daily for no longer than 7 days, to be inserted night and morning, additional dose after a bowel movement

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See *Corticosteroids, general use* p. 434.

- **CAUTIONS** Local anaesthetic component can be absorbed through the rectal mucosa (avoid excessive application, particularly in children and infants) · local anaesthetic component may cause sensitisation (use for short periods only—no longer than a few days)

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** A proprietary brand *Anusol Plus HC*® (ointment and suppositories) is on sale to the public.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Ointment

- **Anusol-HC** (Church & Dwight UK Ltd)

Hydrocortisone acetate 2.5 mg per 1 gram, Bismuth oxide 8.75 mg per 1 gram, Benzyl benzoate 12.5 mg per 1 gram, Peru Balsam 18.75 mg per 1 gram, Bismuth subgallate 22.5 mg per 1 gram, Zinc oxide 107.5 mg per 1 gram Anusol HC ointment | 30 gram **[PoM]** £2.49

##### Suppository

- **Anusol-HC** (Church & Dwight UK Ltd)

Hydrocortisone acetate 10 mg, Bismuth oxide 24 mg, Benzyl benzoate 33 mg, Peru Balsam 49 mg, Bismuth subgallate 59 mg, Zinc oxide 296 mg Anusol HC suppositories | 12 suppository **[PoM]** £1.74

### Cinchocaine hydrochloride with fluocortolone caproate and fluocortolone pivalate

21-Dec-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Haemorrhoids | Pruritus ani

##### ► BY RECTUM USING OINTMENT

- Child: Apply twice daily for 5–7 days, apply 3–4 times a day if required, on the first day of treatment, then apply once daily for a few days after symptoms have cleared

##### ► BY RECTUM USING SUPPOSITORIES

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 1 suppository daily for 5–7 days, to be inserted after a bowel movement, then 1 suppository once daily on alternate days for 1 week

##### Haemorrhoids (severe cases) | Pruritus ani (severe cases)

##### ► BY RECTUM USING SUPPOSITORIES

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 1 suppository 2–3 times a day for 5–7 days, then 1 suppository once daily on alternate days for 1 week

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See *Corticosteroids, general use* p. 434.

- **CAUTIONS** Local anaesthetic component can be absorbed through the rectal mucosa (avoid excessive application) · local anaesthetic component may cause sensitisation (use for short periods only—no longer than a few days)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Ointment

- **Ultraproct** (Meadow Laboratories Ltd)

Fluocortolone pivalate 920 microgram per 1 gram, Fluocortolone caproate 950 microgram per 1 gram, Cinchocaine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 gram Ultraproct ointment | 30 gram **[PoM]** £8.27

##### Suppository

- **Ultraproct** (Meadow Laboratories Ltd)

Fluocortolone pivalate 610 microgram, Fluocortolone caproate 630 microgram, Cinchocaine hydrochloride 1 mg Ultraproct suppositories | 12 suppository **[PoM]** £4.06



## Cinchocaine with hydrocortisone

21-Dec-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### PROCTOSEDYL® OINTMENT

##### Haemorrhoids | Pruritus ani

- TO THE SKIN, OR BY RECTUM
- Child: Apply twice daily, to be administered morning and night and after a bowel movement. Apply externally or by rectum. Do not use for longer than 7 days

#### PROCTOSEDYL® SUPPOSITORIES

##### Haemorrhoids | Pruritus ani

- BY RECTUM
- Child 12–17 years: 1 suppository, insert suppository night and morning and after a bowel movement. Do not use for longer than 7 days

#### UNIROID-HC® OINTMENT

##### Haemorrhoids | Pruritus ani

- TO THE SKIN, OR BY RECTUM
- Child 1 month–11 years (under medical advice only): Apply twice daily, and apply after a bowel movement, apply externally or by rectum, do not use for longer than 7 days
- Child 12–17 years: Apply twice daily, and apply after a bowel movement, apply externally or by rectum, do not use for longer than 7 days

#### UNIROID-HC® SUPPOSITORIES

##### Haemorrhoids | Pruritus ani

- BY RECTUM
- Child 12–17 years: 1 suppository, insert twice daily and after a bowel movement. Do not use for longer than 7 days

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See *Corticosteroids, general use* p. 434.

- **CAUTIONS** Local anaesthetic component can be absorbed through the rectal mucosa (avoid excessive application, particularly in children and infants) · local anaesthetic component may cause sensitisation (use for short periods only—no longer than a few days)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Ointment

- **Proctosedyl** (Sanofi)  
Cinchocaine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 gram, Hydrocortisone 5 mg per 1 gram Proctosedyl ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £10.34 DT = £10.34
- **Uniroid HC** (Chemidex Pharma Ltd)  
Cinchocaine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 gram, Hydrocortisone 5 mg per 1 gram Uniroid HC ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £4.23 DT = £10.34

#### Suppository

- **Proctosedyl** (Sanofi)  
Cinchocaine hydrochloride 5 mg, Hydrocortisone 5 mg Proctosedyl suppositories | 12 suppository [PoM] £5.08 DT = £5.08
- **Uniroid HC** (Chemidex Pharma Ltd)  
Cinchocaine hydrochloride 5 mg, Hydrocortisone 5 mg Uniroid HC suppositories | 12 suppository [PoM] £1.91 DT = £5.08

## Cinchocaine with prednisolone

21-Dec-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Haemorrhoids | Pruritus ani

- BY RECTUM USING OINTMENT
- Child: Apply twice daily for 5–7 days, apply 3–4 times a day on the first day if necessary, then apply once daily for a few days after symptoms have cleared
- BY RECTUM USING SUPPOSITORIES
- Child 12–17 years: 1 suppository daily for 5–7 days, to be inserted after a bowel movement

#### Haemorrhoids (severe cases) | Pruritus ani (severe cases)

- BY RECTUM USING SUPPOSITORIES
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 1 suppository 2–3 times a day, then 1 suppository daily for a total of 5–7 days, to be inserted after a bowel movement

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See *Corticosteroids, general use* p. 434.

- **CAUTIONS** Local anaesthetic component can be absorbed through the rectal mucosa (avoid excessive application) · local anaesthetic component may cause sensitisation (use for short periods only—no longer than a few days)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Ointment

- **Scheriproct** (Bayer Plc)  
Prednisolone hexanoate 1.9 mg per 1 gram, Cinchocaine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 gram Scheriproct ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £3.23 DT = £3.23

#### Suppository

- **Scheriproct** (Bayer Plc)  
Cinchocaine hydrochloride 1 mg, Prednisolone hexanoate 1.3 mg Scheriproct suppositories | 12 suppository [PoM] £1.52 DT = £1.52

## Hydrocortisone with lidocaine

21-Dec-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Haemorrhoids | Pruritus ani

- BY RECTUM USING AEROSOL SPRAY
- Child 2–13 years (under medical advice only): 1 spray up to 3 times a day, spray once over the affected area
- Child 14–17 years: 1 spray up to 3 times a day for no longer than 7 days without medical advice, spray once over the affected area
- BY RECTUM USING OINTMENT
- Child: Apply several times daily, for short term use only

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See *Corticosteroids, general use* p. 434.

- **CAUTIONS** Local anaesthetic component can be absorbed through the rectal mucosa (avoid excessive application) · local anaesthetic component may cause sensitisation (use for short periods only—no longer than a few days)



### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Ointment

##### ► Hydrocortisone with lidocaine (Non-proprietary)

Hydrocortisone acetate 2.75 mg per 1 gram, Lidocaine 50 mg per 1 gram | Lidocaine 5% / Hydrocortisone acetate 0.275% ointment | 20 gram [PoM] [S] DT = £4.19

##### ► Xyloproct (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)

Hydrocortisone acetate 2.75 mg per 1 gram, Lidocaine 50 mg per 1 gram | Xyloproct 5%/0.275% ointment | 20 gram [PoM] £4.19 DT = £4.19

#### Spray

##### ► Germoloids HC (Bayer Plc)

Hydrocortisone 2 mg per 1 gram, Lidocaine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 gram | Germoloids HC spray | 30 ml [GSL] £5.20

##### ► Perinal (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

Hydrocortisone 2 mg per 1 gram, Lidocaine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 gram | Perinal spray | 30 ml [P] £6.11

## Hydrocortisone with pramocaine

21-Dec-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Pain and irritation associated with local, non-infected anal or perianal conditions**

#### ► BY RECTUM

- Child 12–17 years: 1 applicatorful 2–3 times a day and 1 applicatorful, after a bowel movement, do not use for longer than 7 days; maximum 4 applicatorfuls per day

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See *Corticosteroids, general use p. 434*.

- **CAUTIONS** Local anaesthetic component can be absorbed through the rectal mucosa (avoid excessive application) • local anaesthetic component may cause sensitisation (use for short periods only—no longer than a few days)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Foam

##### ► Proctofoam HC (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Hydrocortisone acetate 10 mg per 1 gram, Pramocaine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 gram | Proctofoam HC foam enema | 40 dose [PoM] £6.07 DT = £6.07

## 10 Reduced exocrine secretions

### Exocrine pancreatic insufficiency

14-Dec-2016

#### Description of condition

Exocrine pancreatic insufficiency is characterised by reduced secretion of pancreatic enzymes into the duodenum.

The main clinical manifestations are maldigestion and malnutrition, associated with low circulating levels of micronutrients, fat-soluble vitamins and lipoproteins. Children also present with gastro-intestinal symptoms, such as diarrhoea, abdominal cramps and steatorrhoea.

Exocrine pancreatic insufficiency can result from cystic fibrosis, coeliac disease, Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, and gastro-intestinal or pancreatic surgical resection.

### Aims of treatment

The aim of treatment is to relieve gastro-intestinal symptoms and to achieve a normal nutritional status.

### Drug treatment

[EvGr] Pancreatic enzyme replacement therapy with pancreatin p. 72 is the mainstay of treatment for children with exocrine pancreatic insufficiency. [A]

Pancreatin contains the three main groups of digestive enzymes: lipase, amylase and protease. These enzymes respectively digest fats, carbohydrates and proteins into their basic components so that they can be absorbed and utilised by the body. [EvGr] Pancreatin should be administered with meals and snacks. The dose should be adjusted, as necessary, to the lowest effective dose according to the symptoms of maldigestion and malabsorption. [A]

Fibrosing colonopathy has been reported in children with cystic fibrosis taking high dose pancreatic enzyme replacement therapy (in excess of 10 000 units/kg/day of lipase). Possible risk factors are gender (boys are at greater risk than girls), more severe cystic fibrosis, and concomitant use of laxatives. The peak age for developing fibrosing colonopathy is between 2 and 8 years. Manufacturers of *Pancrease HL*® and *Nutrizym 22*® recommend that the total dose of pancreatin used in patients with cystic fibrosis should not usually exceed 10 000 units/kg/day of lipase. Manufacturers recommend that if a patient taking pancreatin develops new abdominal symptoms (or any change in existing abdominal symptoms) the patient should be reviewed to exclude the possibility of colonic damage.

There is limited evidence that acid suppression may improve the effectiveness of pancreatin. [EvGr] Acid-suppressing drugs (proton pump inhibitors or H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonists) may be trialled in children who continue to experience symptoms despite high doses of pancreatin.

Levels of fat-soluble vitamins and micronutrients (such as zinc and selenium) should be routinely assessed and supplementation recommended whenever necessary. [A]

#### Pancreatin preparations

Preparation	Protease units	Amylase units	Lipase units
Creon® 10 000 capsule, e/c granules	600	8000	10 000
Creon® Micro e/c granules (per 100 mg)	200	3600	5000
Pancrex® granules (per gram)	300	4000	5000
Pancrex V® capsule, powder	430	9000	8000
Pancrex V '125'® capsule, powder	160	3300	2950
Pancrex V® e/c tablet	110	1700	1900
Pancrex V® Forte e/c tablet	330	5000	5600
Pancrex V® powder (per gram)	1400	30 000	25 000

#### Higher-strength pancreatin preparations

Preparation	Protease units	Amylase units	Lipase units
Creon® 25 000 capsule, e/c pellets	1000	18 000	25 000
Creon® 40 000 capsule, e/c granules	1600	25 000	40 000
Nutrizym 22® capsule, e/c minitables	1100	19 800	22 000
Pancrease HL® capsule, e/c minitables	1250	22 500	25 000

## Non-drug treatment

**[EvGr]** Dietary advice should be provided. Food intake should be distributed between three main meals per day, and two or three snacks. Food that is difficult to digest should be avoided, such as legumes (peas, beans, lentils) and high-fibre foods. Alcohol should be avoided completely. Reduced fat diets are not recommended. **[A]**

Medium-chain triglycerides (see MCT oil, in *Borderline substances*), which are directly absorbed by the intestinal mucosa, were thought to be useful in some children. However evidence has shown that MCT-enriched preparations offer no advantage over a normal balanced diet.

## PANCREATIC ENZYMES

### Pancreatin

08-Mar-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Supplements of pancreatin are given to compensate for reduced or absent exocrine secretion. They assist the digestion of starch, fat, and protein.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### CREON<sup>®</sup> 10000

##### Pancreatic insufficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Child: Initially 1–2 capsules, dose to be taken with each meal either taken whole or contents mixed with acidic fluid or soft food (then swallowed immediately without chewing)

##### CREON<sup>®</sup> 25000

##### Pancreatic insufficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Child 2–17 years: Initially 1–2 capsules, dose to be taken with each meal either taken whole or contents mixed with acidic fluid or soft food (then swallowed immediately without chewing)

##### CREON<sup>®</sup> 40000

##### Pancreatic insufficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Child 2–17 years: Initially 1–2 capsules, dose to be taken with each meal either taken whole or contents mixed with acidic fluid or soft food (then swallowed immediately without chewing)

##### CREON<sup>®</sup> MICRO

##### Pancreatic insufficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Neonate: Initially 100 mg, for administration advice, see *Directions for administration*.

- Child: Initially 100 mg, for administration advice, see *Directions for administration*

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- For *Creon<sup>®</sup> Micro*: 100 mg granules = one measured scoopful (scoop supplied with product).

##### NUTRIZYM 22<sup>®</sup> GASTRO-RESISTANT CAPSULES

##### Pancreatic insufficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Child 15–17 years: Initially 1–2 capsules, dose to be taken with meals and 1 capsule as required, dose to be taken with snacks, doses should be swallowed whole or contents taken with water, or mixed with acidic fluid or soft food (then swallowed immediately without chewing)

##### PANCREASE HL<sup>®</sup>

##### Pancreatic insufficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Child 15–17 years: Initially 1–2 capsules, dose to be taken during each meal and 1 capsule, to be taken with

snacks, all doses either taken whole or contents mixed with slightly acidic liquid or soft food (then swallowed immediately without chewing)

##### PANCREX<sup>®</sup>

##### Pancreatic insufficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Child 2–17 years: 5–10 g, to be taken just before meals, washed down or mixed with milk or water

##### PANCREX<sup>®</sup> V

##### Pancreatic insufficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Child 1–11 months: 1–2 capsules, contents of capsule to be mixed with feeds
- Child 1–17 years: 2–6 capsules, dose to be taken with each meal either swallowed whole or sprinkled on food

##### PANCREX<sup>®</sup> V CAPSULES '125'

##### Pancreatic insufficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Neonate: 1–2 capsules, contents of capsule to be given in each feed (or mixed with feed and given by spoon).

##### PANCREX<sup>®</sup> V POWDER

##### Pancreatic insufficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Neonate: 250–500 mg, dose to be taken with each feed.
- Child: 0.5–2 g, to be taken before or with meals, washed down or mixed with milk or water

##### PANCREX<sup>®</sup> V TABLETS

##### Pancreatic insufficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Child 2–17 years: 5–15 tablets, to be taken before meals

##### PANCREX<sup>®</sup> V TABLETS FORTE

##### Pancreatic insufficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Child 2–17 years: 6–10 tablets, to be taken before meals

#### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

- **NUTRIZYM 22<sup>®</sup> GASTRO-RESISTANT CAPSULES** Should not be used in children aged 15 years or less with cystic fibrosis
- **PANCREASE HL<sup>®</sup>** Should not be used in children aged 15 years or less with cystic fibrosis

- **CAUTIONS** Can irritate the perioral skin and buccal mucosa if retained in the mouth · excessive doses can cause perianal irritation

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: pancreatin

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal distension · constipation · nausea · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Skin reactions
- **Frequency not known** Fibrosing colonopathy

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Pancreatin is inactivated by gastric acid therefore manufacturer advises pancreatin preparations are best taken with food (or immediately before or after food). Since pancreatin is inactivated by heat, excessive heat should be avoided if preparations are mixed with liquids or food; manufacturer advises the resulting mixtures should not be kept for more than one hour and any left-over food or liquid containing pancreatin should be discarded. Enteric-coated preparations deliver a higher enzyme concentration in the duodenum (provided the capsule contents are swallowed whole without chewing). Manufacturer advises gastro-resistant granules should be mixed with slightly acidic soft food or liquid such as apple juice, and then swallowed immediately without chewing. Capsules containing enteric-coated granules can be opened and the granules

administered in the same way. For infants, *Creon*® Micro granules can be mixed with a small amount of milk on a spoon and administered immediately—granules should not be added to the baby's bottle. Manufacturer advises *Pancrex*® V powder may be administered via nasogastric tube or gastrostomy tube—consult local and national official guidelines.

#### ● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

Preparations may contain pork pancreatin—consult product literature.

#### ● **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Hypersensitivity reactions occur occasionally and may affect those handling the powder.

#### ● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on administration. It is important to ensure adequate hydration at all times in patients receiving higher-strength pancreatin preparations. Medicines for Children leaflet: Pancreatin for pancreatic insufficiency [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/pancreatin-for-pancreatic-insufficiency](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/pancreatin-for-pancreatic-insufficiency)

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Gastro-resistant capsule**

###### ▶ **Creon** (Mylan)

**Protease 600 unit, Amylase 8000 unit, Lipase 10000 unit** Creon 10000 gastro-resistant capsules | 100 capsule [P] £12.93

**Protease 1000 unit, Amylase 18000 unit, Lipase 25000 unit** Creon 25000 gastro-resistant capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £28.25

**Protease 1600 unit, Amylase 25000 unit, Lipase 40000 unit** Creon 40000 gastro-resistant capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £47.55

###### ▶ **Nutrizym** (Merck Serono Ltd)

**Protease 1100 unit, Amylase 19800 unit, Lipase 22000 unit** Nutrizym 22 gastro-resistant capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £33.33

###### ▶ **Pancrease** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

**Protease 1250 unit, Amylase 22500 unit, Lipase 25000 unit** Pancrease HL gastro-resistant capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £40.38

##### **Gastro-resistant tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 25

###### ▶ **Pancrex** (Essential Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Protease 110 unit, Amylase 1700 unit, Lipase 1900 unit** Pancrex V gastro-resistant tablets | 300 tablet [P] £38.79

**Protease 330 unit, Amylase 5000 unit, Lipase 5600 unit** Pancrex V Forte gastro-resistant tablets | 300 tablet [P] £48.11

##### **Gastro-resistant granules**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

###### ▶ **Creon** (Mylan)

**Protease 200 unit, Amylase 3600 unit, Lipase 5000 unit** Creon Micro Pancreatin 60.12mg gastro-resistant granules | 20 gram [P] £31.50

###### ▶ **Pancrex** (Essential Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Protease 300 unit, Amylase 4000 unit, Lipase 5000 unit** Pancrex gastro-resistant granules | 300 gram [P] £57.00

##### **Powder**

###### ▶ **Pancrex** (Essential Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Protease 1400 unit, Lipase 25000 unit, Amylase 30000 unit** Pancrex V oral powder sugar-free | 300 gram [P] £58.88

##### **Capsule**

###### ▶ **Pancrex** (Essential Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Protease 360 unit, Lipase 2950 unit, Amylase 3300 unit** Pancrex V 125mg capsules | 300 capsule [P] £42.07

**Protease 430 unit, Lipase 8000 unit, Amylase 9000 unit** Pancrex V capsules | 300 capsule [P] £53.20

## 11 Stoma care

### Stoma care

24-Feb-2016

#### Description of condition

A stoma is an artificial opening on the abdomen to divert flow of faeces or urine into an external pouch located outside of the body. This procedure may be temporary or permanent. Colostomy and ileostomy are the most common forms of stoma but a gastrostomy, jejunostomy, duodenostomy or caecostomy may also be performed. Understanding the type and extent of surgical intervention in each patient is crucial in managing the patient's pharmaceutical needs correctly.

#### Overview

Prescribing for patients with stoma calls for special care due to modifications in drug delivery, resulting in a higher risk of sub-optimal absorption. The following is a brief account of some of the main points to be borne in mind.

Enteric-coated and modified-release medicines are **unsuitable**, particularly in patients with an ileostomy, as there may not be sufficient release of active ingredient. Soluble tablets, liquids, capsules or uncoated tablets are more suitable due to their quicker dissolution. When a solid-dose form such as a capsule or a tablet is given, the contents of the ostomy bag should be checked for any remnants.

Preparations containing sorbitol as an excipient should be avoided, due to its laxative side effects.

#### Analgesics

Opioid analgesics may cause troublesome constipation in colostomy patients. When a non-opioid analgesic is required, paracetamol is usually suitable. Anti-inflammatory analgesics may cause gastric irritation and bleeding; faecal output should be monitored for traces of blood.

#### Antacids

The tendency to diarrhoea from magnesium salts or constipation from aluminium or calcium salts may be increased in patients with stoma.

#### Antisecretory drugs

The gastric acid secretion often increases stoma output. Proton pump inhibitors and somatostatin analogues (octreotide p. 467) are often used to reduce this risk.

#### Antidiarrhoeal drugs

Loperamide hydrochloride p. 49 and codeine phosphate p. 276 reduce intestinal motility and decrease water and sodium output from an ileostomy. Loperamide hydrochloride circulates through the enterohepatic circulation, which is disrupted in patients with a short bowel; high doses of loperamide hydrochloride may be required. Codeine phosphate can be added if response with loperamide hydrochloride alone is inadequate.

#### Digoxin

Children with a stoma are particularly susceptible to hypokalaemia. This predisposes children on digoxin p. 81 to digoxin toxicity; potassium supplements or a potassium-sparing diuretic may be advisable.

#### Diuretics

Diuretics should be used with caution in patients with an ileostomy or with urostomy as they may become excessively dehydrated and potassium depletion may easily occur. It is usually advisable to use a potassium-sparing diuretic.

**Iron preparations**

Iron preparations may cause loose stools and sore skin in these patients. If this is troublesome and if iron is definitely indicated, an intramuscular iron preparation should be used. Modified-release preparations should be avoided for the reasons given above.

**Laxatives**

Laxatives should be used in children with stoma only under specialist supervision; they should be prescribed with caution for those with an ileostomy as they may cause rapid and severe loss of water and electrolytes.

Colostomy patients may suffer from constipation and whenever possible it should be treated by increasing fluid intake or dietary fibre. If a laxative is required, it should generally be used for short periods only.

**Care of stoma**

Patients and their carers are usually given advice about the use of cleansing agents, protective creams, lotions, deodorants, or sealants whilst in hospital, either by the surgeon or by stoma care nurses. Voluntary organisations offer help and support to patients with stoma.

# Chapter 2

## Cardiovascular system

### CONTENTS

<b>1 Arrhythmias</b>	page 75	4.1b Hypertensive crises	page 118
<b>2 Bleeding disorders</b>	82	4.1c Pulmonary hypertension	118
2.1 Coagulation factor deficiencies	84	<b>4.2 Hypotension and shock</b>	121
2.2 Subarachnoid haemorrhage	87	<b>5 Heart failure</b>	125
<b>3 Blood clots</b>	88	<b>6 Hyperlipidaemia</b>	128
3.1 Blocked catheters and lines	88	<b>7 Myocardial ischaemia</b>	135
3.2 Thromboembolism	89	7.1 Cardiac arrest	136
<b>4 Blood pressure conditions</b>	98	<b>8 Oedema</b>	138
4.1 Hypertension	98	<b>9 Patent ductus arteriosus</b>	143
4.1a Hypertension associated with phaeochromocytoma	117	<b>10 Vascular disease</b>	144

## 1 Arrhythmias

### Arrhythmias

#### Overview

Management of an arrhythmia requires precise diagnosis of the type of arrhythmia; electrocardiography and referral to a paediatric cardiologist is essential; underlying causes such as heart failure require appropriate treatment.

#### Bradycardia

Adrenaline/epinephrine p. 136 is useful in the treatment of symptomatic bradycardia in an infant or child.

#### Supraventricular tachycardia

In supraventricular tachycardia adenosine p. 79 is given by rapid intravenous injection. If adenosine is ineffective, intravenous amiodarone hydrochloride p. 78, flecainide acetate p. 77, or a beta-blocker (such as esmolol hydrochloride p. 106) can be tried; verapamil hydrochloride p. 110 can also be considered in children over 1 year. Atenolol p. 106, sotalol hydrochloride p. 80 and flecainide acetate are used for the prophylaxis of paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardias.

The use of d.c. shock and vagal stimulation also have a role in the treatment of supraventricular tachycardia.

#### Syndromes associated with accessory conducting pathways

Amiodarone hydrochloride, flecainide acetate, or a beta-blocker is used to prevent recurrence of supraventricular tachycardia in infants and young children with these syndromes (e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome).

#### Atrial flutter

In atrial flutter without structural heart defects, sinus rhythm is restored with d.c. shock or cardiac pacing; drug treatment is usually not necessary. Amiodarone hydrochloride is used in atrial flutter when structural heart defects are present or after heart surgery. Sotalol hydrochloride may also be considered.

#### Atrial fibrillation

Atrial fibrillation is very rare in children. To restore sinus rhythm d.c. shock is used; beta-blockers, alone or together with digoxin p. 81 may be useful for ventricular rate control.

#### Ectopic tachycardia

Intravenous amiodarone hydrochloride is used in conjunction with body cooling and synchronised pacing in postoperative junctional ectopic tachycardia. Oral amiodarone hydrochloride or flecainide acetate are used in congenital junctional ectopic tachycardia.

Amiodarone hydrochloride, flecainide acetate, or a beta-blocker are used in atrial ectopic tachycardia; amiodarone hydrochloride is preferred in those with poor ventricular function.

#### Ventricular tachycardia and ventricular fibrillation

Pulseless ventricular tachycardia or ventricular fibrillation require resuscitation, see Paediatric Advanced Life Support algorithm. Amiodarone hydrochloride is used in resuscitation for pulseless ventricular tachycardia or ventricular fibrillation unresponsive to d.c. shock; lidocaine hydrochloride p. 826 can be used as an alternative only if amiodarone hydrochloride is not available.

Amiodarone hydrochloride is also used in a haemodynamically stable child when drug treatment is required; lidocaine hydrochloride can be used as an alternative only if amiodarone hydrochloride is not available.

#### Torsade de pointes

Torsade de pointes is a form of ventricular tachycardia associated with long QT syndrome, which may be congenital or drug induced. Episodes may be self-limiting, but are frequently recurrent and can cause impairment or loss of consciousness. If not controlled, the arrhythmia can progress to ventricular fibrillation and sometimes death. Intravenous magnesium sulfate can be used to treat torsade de pointes (dose recommendations vary—consult local guidelines). Anti-arrhythmics can further prolong the QT interval, thus worsening the condition.

#### Anti-arrhythmic drugs

Anti-arrhythmic drugs can be classified clinically into those that act on supraventricular arrhythmias (e.g. verapamil hydrochloride), those that act on both supraventricular and ventricular arrhythmias (e.g. amiodarone hydrochloride), and those that act on ventricular arrhythmias (e.g. lidocaine hydrochloride).

Anti-arrhythmic drugs can also be classified according to their effects on the electrical behaviour of myocardial cells during activity (the Vaughan Williams classification) although this classification is of less clinical significance:



- Class I: membrane stabilising drugs (e.g. lidocaine, flecainide)
- Class II: beta-blockers
- Class III: amiodarone; sotalol (also Class II)
- Class IV: calcium-channel blockers (includes verapamil but not dihydropyridines)

The negative inotropic effects of anti-arrhythmic drugs tend to be additive. Therefore special care should be taken if two or more are used, especially if myocardial function is impaired. Most drugs that are effective in countering arrhythmias can also provoke them in some circumstances; moreover, hypokalaemia enhances the arrhythmogenic (pro-arrhythmic) effect of many drugs.

Adenosine is the treatment of choice for terminating supraventricular tachycardias, including those associated with accessory conducting pathways (e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome). It is also used in the diagnosis of supraventricular arrhythmias. It is not negatively inotropic and does not cause significant hypotension. The injection should be administered by rapid intravenous injection into a central or large peripheral vein.

Amiodarone hydrochloride is useful in the management of both supraventricular and ventricular tachyarrhythmias. It can be given by intravenous infusion and by mouth, and causes little or no myocardial depression. Unlike oral amiodarone hydrochloride, intravenous amiodarone hydrochloride acts relatively rapidly. Intravenous amiodarone hydrochloride is also used in cardiopulmonary resuscitation for ventricular fibrillation or pulseless ventricular tachycardia unresponsive to d.c. shock.

Amiodarone hydrochloride has a very long half-life (extending to several weeks) and only needs to be given once daily (but high doses may cause nausea unless divided). Many weeks or months may be required to achieve steady state plasma-amiodarone concentration; this is particularly important when drug interactions are likely.

**Beta-blockers** act as anti-arrhythmic drugs principally by attenuating the effects of the sympathetic system on automaticity and conductivity within the heart. Sotalol hydrochloride has a role in the management of ventricular arrhythmias.

Oral administration of digoxin slows the ventricular rate in atrial fibrillation and in atrial flutter. However, intravenous infusion of digoxin is rarely effective for rapid control of ventricular rate.

Flecainide acetate is useful for the treatment of resistant re-entry supraventricular tachycardia, ventricular tachycardia, ventricular ectopic beats, arrhythmias associated with accessory conducting pathways (e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome), and paroxysmal atrial fibrillation. Flecainide acetate crosses the placenta and can be used to control fetal supraventricular arrhythmias.

Lidocaine hydrochloride can be used in cardiopulmonary resuscitation in children with ventricular fibrillation or pulseless ventricular tachycardia unresponsive to d.c. shock, but only if amiodarone hydrochloride is not available. Doses may need to be reduced in children with persistently poor cardiac output and hepatic or renal failure.

Verapamil hydrochloride can cause severe haemodynamic compromise (refractory hypotension and cardiac arrest) when used for the acute treatment of arrhythmias in neonates and infants; it is contra-indicated in children under 1 year. It is also contra-indicated in those with congestive heart failure, syndromes associated with accessory conducting pathways (e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome) and in most receiving concomitant beta-blockers. It can be useful in older children with supraventricular tachycardia.

**Other drugs used for Arrhythmias** Metoprolol tartrate, p. 107. Propranolol hydrochloride, p. 104

## ANTIARRHYTHMICS > CLASS IB

### Lidocaine hydrochloride (Lignocaine hydrochloride)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Ventricular arrhythmias | Pulseless ventricular tachycardia | Ventricular fibrillation

► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAOSSEOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: Initially 0.5–1 mg/kg, followed immediately by (by intravenous infusion) 0.6–3 mg/kg/hour, alternatively (by intravenous injection or by intraosseous injection) 0.5–1 mg/kg repeated at intervals of not less than 5 minutes if infusion is not immediately available following initial injection, until infusion can be initiated; maximum 3 mg/kg per course.

► Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 0.5–1 mg/kg, followed immediately by (by intravenous infusion) 0.6–3 mg/kg/hour, alternatively (by intravenous injection or by intraosseous injection) 0.5–1 mg/kg repeated at intervals of not less than 5 minutes if infusion is not immediately available following initial injection, until infusion can be initiated; maximum 3 mg/kg per course

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 50–100 mg, followed by (by intravenous infusion) 120 mg, dose to be given over 30 minutes, then (by intravenous infusion) 240 mg, dose to be given over 2 hours, then (by intravenous infusion) 60 mg/hour, reduce dose further if infusion is continued beyond 24 hours, if infusion not immediately available following initial injection, the initial injection dose may be repeated at intervals of not less than 5 minutes (to a maximum 300 mg dose in 1 hour) until infusion can be initiated

#### Neonatal seizures

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: Initially 2 mg/kg, dose to be given over 10 minutes, followed by 6 mg/kg/hour for 6 hours; reduced to 4 mg/kg/hour for 12 hours, then reduced to 2 mg/kg/hour for a further 12 hours, preterm neonates may require lower doses.

• **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 1 year.

• **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** All grades of atrioventricular block · severe myocardial depression · sino-atrial disorders

• **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 (consider infusion with glucose for its anti-porphyrinogenic effects) · congestive cardiac failure (consider lower dose) · post cardiac surgery (consider lower dose)

• **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiarrhythmics

• **SIDE-EFFECTS** Anxiety · arrhythmias · atrioventricular block · cardiac arrest · circulatory collapse · confusion · dizziness · drowsiness · euphoric mood · headache · hypotension (may lead to cardiac arrest) · loss of consciousness · methaemoglobinaemia · muscle twitching · myocardial contractility decreased · nausea · neurological effects · nystagmus · pain · psychosis · respiratory disorders · seizure · sensation abnormal · temperature sensation altered · tinnitus · tremor · vision blurred · vomiting

• **PREGNANCY** Crosses the placenta but not known to be harmful in animal studies—use if benefit outweighs risk.

• **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but amount too small to be harmful.

• **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Caution—increased risk of side-effects.



- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Possible accumulation of lidocaine and active metabolite; caution in severe impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor ECG and have resuscitation facilities available.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

#### **Solution for injection**

##### ▶ **Lidocaine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Lidocaine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml** Lidocaine 50mg/10ml (0.5%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £7.00  
**Lidocaine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Lidocaine 100mg/10ml (1%) solution for injection Mini-Plasco ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £11.21  
 Lidocaine 100mg/10ml (1%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £4.40 DT = £4.40  
 Lidocaine 100mg/10ml (1%) solution for injection Sure-Amp ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £8.80  
 Lidocaine 200mg/20ml (1%) solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £19.00  
 Lidocaine 200mg/20ml (1%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £7.00-£9.63 DT = £9.63  
 Lidocaine 50mg/5ml (1%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £2.59-£3.10 DT = £2.59  
 Lidocaine 20mg/2ml (1%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £3.50 DT = £2.20  
 Lidocaine 50mg/5ml (1%) solution for injection Sure-Amp ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £6.00  
**Lidocaine hydrochloride 20 mg per 1 ml** Lidocaine 100mg/5ml (2%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £2.70-£3.80 DT = £2.70  
 Lidocaine 400mg/20ml (2%) solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £19.50  
 Lidocaine 200mg/10ml (2%) solution for injection Mini-Plasco ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £14.95  
 Lidocaine 40mg/2ml (2%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £4.00 DT = £2.37  
 Lidocaine 100mg/5ml (2%) solution for injection Sure-Amp ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £6.00  
 Lidocaine 400mg/20ml (2%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £8.00-£9.90 DT = £9.90

## ANTIARRHYTHMICS > CLASS IC

### Flecainide acetate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Supraventricular arrhythmias**

▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 200 mg daily

**Resistant re-entry supraventricular tachycardia | Ventricular ectopic beats or ventricular tachycardia | Arrhythmias associated with accessory conduction pathways (e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome) | Paroxysmal atrial fibrillation**

▶ BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- ▶ Neonate: 2 mg/kg 2–3 times a day, adjusted according to response, also adjust dose according to plasma-flecainide concentration.
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 2 mg/kg 2–3 times a day, adjusted according to response, also adjust dose according to plasma-flecainide concentration,; maximum 8 mg/kg per day; maximum 300 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 50–100 mg twice daily; increased if necessary up to 300 mg daily, maximum 400 mg daily for ventricular arrhythmias in heavily built children

▶ INITIALLY BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

▶ Neonate: Initially 1–2 mg/kg, dose to be given over 10–30 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 100–250 micrograms/kg/hour if required until arrhythmia controlled, transfer patient to oral treatment following intravenous treatment.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 2 mg/kg, dose to be given over 10–30 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 100–250 micrograms/kg/hour if required until arrhythmia controlled, maximum cumulative dose of 600 mg in the first 24 hours, transfer patient to oral treatment following intravenous treatment
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 2 mg/kg (max. per dose 150 mg), dose to be given over 10–30 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 1.5 mg/kg/hour if required for 1 hour, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) reduced to 100–250 micrograms/kg/hour until arrhythmia controlled, maximum cumulative dose of 600 mg in the first 24 hours, transfer patient to oral treatment following intravenous treatment

#### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- ▶ Manufacturer advises reduce dose by half with concurrent use of amiodarone.

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Patients stabilised on 200 mg daily immediate-release flecainide may be transferred to modified-release medicines.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 12 years.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Abnormal left ventricular function · atrial conduction defects (unless pacing rescue available) · bundle branch block (unless pacing rescue available) · control of arrhythmias in acute situations (for modified-release forms only) · distal block (unless pacing rescue available) · haemodynamically significant valvular heart disease · heart failure · long-standing atrial fibrillation where conversion to sinus rhythm not attempted · second-degree or greater AV block (unless pacing rescue available) · sinus node dysfunction (unless pacing rescue available)
- **CAUTIONS** Atrial fibrillation following heart surgery · patients with pacemakers (especially those who may be pacemaker dependent because stimulation threshold may rise appreciably)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiarrhythmics
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ Common or very common Arrhythmias · asthenia · dizziness · dyspnoea · fever · oedema · vision disorders
  - ▶ Uncommon Alopecia · appetite decreased · constipation · diarrhoea · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting
  - ▶ Rare or very rare Anxiety · confusion · corneal deposits · depression · drowsiness · flushing · hallucination · headache · hepatic disorders · hyperhidrosis · insomnia · memory loss · movement disorders · peripheral neuropathy · photosensitivity reaction · respiratory disorders · seizure · sensation abnormal · syncope · tinnitus · tremor · vertigo
  - ▶ Frequency not known Altered pacing threshold · atrioventricular block · cardiac arrest · chest pain · heart failure · hypotension · myocardial infarction · palpitations · QT interval prolongation
- **PREGNANCY** Used in pregnancy to treat maternal and fetal arrhythmias in specialist centres; toxicity reported in animal studies; infant hyperbilirubinaemia also reported.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Significant amount present in milk but not known to be harmful.

### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Avoid or reduce dose in severe impairment.

**Monitoring** Monitor plasma-flecainide concentration.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose by 25–50% if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 35 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Monitoring** Monitor plasma-flecainide concentration.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Plasma-flecainide concentration for optimal response 200–800 micrograms/litre; blood sample should be taken immediately before next dose.
- ▶ With intravenous use ECG monitoring and resuscitation facilities must be available.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ With oral use For administration *by mouth*, milk, infant formula, and dairy products may reduce absorption of flecainide—separate doses from feeds. Liquid has a local anaesthetic effect and should be given at least 30 minutes before or after food. Do not store liquid in refrigerator as precipitation occurs.
- ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous administration* give initial dose over 30 minutes in children with sustained ventricular tachycardia or cardiac failure. Dilute injection using Glucose 5%; concentrations of more than 300 micrograms/mL are unstable in chloride-containing solutions.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Flecainide for arrhythmias  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/flecainide-for-arrhythmias](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/flecainide-for-arrhythmias)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

##### ▶ Flecainide acetate (Non-proprietary)

Flecainide acetate 50 mg Flecainide 50mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM]  
 £7.68 DT = £7.46

Flecainide acetate 100 mg Flecainide 100mg tablets |  
 60 tablet [PoM] £8.06 DT = £7.68

##### ▶ Tambacor (Teva UK Ltd)

Flecainide acetate 50 mg Tambacor 50mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM]  
 £11.57 DT = £7.46

Flecainide acetate 100 mg Tambacor 100mg tablets |  
 60 tablet [PoM] £16.53 DT = £7.68

#### Solution for injection

##### ▶ Tambacor (Teva UK Ltd)

Flecainide acetate 10 mg per 1 ml Tambacor 150mg/15ml solution  
 for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £21.99

#### Modified-release capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

##### ▶ Tambacor XL (Teva UK Ltd)

Flecainide acetate 200 mg Tambacor XL 200mg capsules |  
 30 capsule [PoM] £14.77

## ANTIARRHYTHMICS > CLASS III

## Amiodarone hydrochloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Supraventricular and ventricular arrhythmias (initiated in hospital or under specialist supervision)**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Neonate: Initially 5–10 mg/kg twice daily for 7–10 days, then reduced to 5–10 mg/kg daily.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 5–10 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg) for 7–10 days, then reduced to 5–10 mg/kg once daily; maximum 200 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12 years: 200 mg 3 times a day for 1 week, then 200 mg twice daily for 1 week, then usually 200mg daily adjusted according to response

### ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

▶ Neonate: Initially 5 mg/kg, then (by intravenous infusion) 5 mg/kg every 12–24 hours, dose to be given over 30 minutes.

▶ Child: Initially 5–10 mg/kg, dose to be given over 20 minutes to 2 hours, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 300 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response; (by continuous intravenous infusion) increased if necessary up to 1.5 mg/kg/hour; maximum 1.2 g per day

**Ventricular fibrillation or pulseless ventricular tachycardia refractory to defibrillation (for cardiopulmonary resuscitation)**

### ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

▶ Neonate: 5 mg/kg, dose to be given over at least 3 minutes.

▶ Child: 5 mg/kg (max. per dose 300 mg), dose to be given over at least 3 minutes

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 3 years.

### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

#### GENERAL CONTRA-INDICATIONS

Avoid in severe conduction disturbances (unless pacemaker fitted) · avoid in sinus node disease (unless pacemaker fitted) · avoid rapid loading after cardiac surgery · iodine sensitivity · sino-atrial heart block (except in cardiac arrest) · sinus bradycardia (except in cardiac arrest) · thyroid dysfunction

#### SPECIFIC CONTRA-INDICATIONS

- ▶ With intravenous use Avoid bolus injection in cardiomyopathy · avoid bolus injection in congestive heart failure · avoid in circulatory collapse · avoid in severe arterial hypotension · avoid in severe respiratory failure

### ● CAUTIONS

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · conduction disturbances (in excessive dosage) · heart failure · hypokalaemia · severe bradycardia (in excessive dosage)

#### SPECIFIC CAUTIONS

- ▶ With intravenous use avoid benzyl alcohol containing injections in neonates · moderate and transient fall in blood pressure (circulatory collapse precipitated by rapid administration or overdosage) · severe hepatocellular toxicity

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiarrhythmics

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

#### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · hepatic disorders · hyperthyroidism · nausea · respiratory disorders · skin reactions
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Bronchospasm (in patients with severe respiratory failure) · headache · idiopathic intracranial hypertension · nerve disorders · SIADH
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · confusion · delirium · pancreatitis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common**
- ▶ With oral use Constipation · corneal deposits · hypothyroidism · movement disorders · photosensitivity reaction · sleep disorders · taste altered · vomiting
- ▶ With parenteral use Hypotension (following rapid injection)
- ▶ **Uncommon**
- ▶ With oral use Cardiac conduction disorders · dry mouth · myopathy (usually reversible on discontinuation) · peripheral neuropathy (usually reversible on discontinuation)

### ► Rare or very rare

- With oral use Alopecia · aplastic anaemia · epididymo-orchitis · erectile dysfunction · haemolytic anaemia · pulmonary haemorrhage · thrombocytopenia · vertigo
- With parenteral use Hot flush · hyperhidrosis
- Frequency not known**
- With oral use Altered smell sensation · appetite decreased · parkinsonism · vasculitis
- With parenteral use Agranulocytosis · libido decreased · neutropenia

### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Corneal microdeposits** Patients taking amiodarone may develop corneal microdeposits (reversible on withdrawal of treatment). However, if vision is impaired or if optic neuritis or optic neuropathy occur, amiodarone must be stopped to prevent blindness and expert advice sought.

**Thyroid function** Amiodarone contains iodine and can cause disorders of thyroid function; both hypothyroidism and hyperthyroidism can occur. Hypothyroidism can be treated with replacement therapy without withdrawing amiodarone if it is essential; careful supervision is required.

**Hepatotoxicity** Amiodarone is also associated with hepatotoxicity and treatment should be discontinued if severe liver function abnormalities or clinical signs of liver disease develop.

**Pulmonary toxicity** Pneumonitis should always be suspected if new or progressive shortness of breath or cough develops in a patient taking amiodarone.

- **PREGNANCY** Possible risk of neonatal goitre; use only if no alternative.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid; present in milk in significant amounts; theoretical risk of neonatal hypothyroidism from release of iodine.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Thyroid function tests should be performed before treatment and then every 6 months. Clinical assessment of thyroid function alone is unreliable. Thyroxine (T<sub>4</sub>) may be raised in the absence of hyperthyroidism; therefore tri-iodothyronine (T<sub>3</sub>), T<sub>4</sub>, and thyroid-stimulating hormone (thyrotrophin, TSH) should all be measured. A raised T<sub>3</sub> and T<sub>4</sub> with a very low or undetectable TSH concentration suggests the development of thyrotoxicosis.
- Liver function tests required before treatment and then every 6 months.
- Serum potassium concentration should be measured before treatment.
- Chest x-ray required before treatment.
- Pulmonary function tests required before treatment.
- With intravenous use ECG monitoring and resuscitation facilities must be available. Monitor liver transaminases closely.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- With intravenous use Intravenous administration via central venous catheter recommended if repeated or continuous infusion required, as infusion via peripheral veins may cause pain and inflammation. For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of not less than 600 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5%. Incompatible with Sodium Chloride infusion fluids; avoid equipment containing the plasticizer di-2-ethylhexphthalate (DEHP).
- With oral use For administration *by mouth*, tablets may be crushed and dispersed in water; injection solution should **not** be given orally (irritant).

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Because of the possibility of phototoxic reactions, patients should be advised to shield the skin from light during treatment and for several months after discontinuing amiodarone; a wide-spectrum sunscreen to protect against both long-wave ultraviolet and visible light should be used.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Amiodarone for abnormal heart rhythms [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/amiodarone-for-abnormal-heart-rhythms](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/amiodarone-for-abnormal-heart-rhythms)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 11

- **Amiodarone hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Amiodarone hydrochloride 100 mg** Amiodarone 100mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £4.25 DT = £1.63

**Amiodarone hydrochloride 200 mg** Amiodarone 200mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £7.80 DT = £2.02

- **Cordarone X (Sanofi)**

**Amiodarone hydrochloride 100 mg** Cordarone X 100 tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £4.28 DT = £1.63

**Amiodarone hydrochloride 200 mg** Cordarone X 200 tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £6.99 DT = £2.02

#### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

- **Amiodarone hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Amiodarone hydrochloride 30 mg per 1 ml** Amiodarone 300mg/10ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection **[PoM]** £13.80 DT = £13.80

**Amiodarone hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Amiodarone 150mg/3ml concentrate for solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule **[PoM]** £7.75 | 10 ampoule **[PoM]** £15.00

- **Cordarone X (Sanofi)**

**Amiodarone hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Cordarone X 150mg/3ml solution for injection ampoules | 6 ampoule **[PoM]** £9.60

## ANTIARRHYTHMICS > OTHER

### Adenosine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Used in conjunction with radionuclide myocardial perfusion imaging in patients who cannot exercise adequately or for whom exercise is inappropriate**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult product literature)

**Termination of supraventricular tachycardias, including those associated with accessory conducting pathways (e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome) | Diagnosis of supraventricular arrhythmias**

- BY RAPID INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg, then increased in steps of 50–100 micrograms/kg every 1–2 minutes (max. per dose 300 micrograms/kg) if required, dose to be repeated until tachycardia terminated or maximum single dose given.

- Child 1–11 months: Initially 150 micrograms/kg, then increased in steps of 50–100 micrograms/kg every 1–2 minutes (max. per dose 500 micrograms/kg) if required, dose to be repeated until tachycardia terminated or maximum single dose given
- Child 1–11 years: Initially 100 micrograms/kg, then increased in steps of 50–100 micrograms/kg every 1–2 minutes (max. per dose 12 mg) if required, dose to be repeated until tachycardia terminated or maximum single dose given
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 3 mg, followed by 6 mg after 1–2 minutes if required, followed by 12 mg after 1–2 minutes if required, in some children over 12 years 3 mg dose ineffective (e.g. if a small peripheral vein is used for administration) and higher initial dose sometimes used; however, those with *heart transplant* are **very sensitive** to the effects of adenosine, and should **not** receive higher initial doses

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Adenocor*® licensed for treatment of paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia in children; not licensed for diagnosis in children; *Adenoscan*® not licensed in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Asthma · decompensated heart failure · long QT syndrome · second- or third-degree AV block and sick sinus syndrome (unless pacemaker fitted) · severe hypotension
- **CAUTIONS** Atrial fibrillation with accessory pathway (conduction down anomalous pathway may increase) · atrial flutter with accessory pathway (conduction down anomalous pathway may increase) · autonomic dysfunction · bundle branch block · first-degree AV block · heart transplant · left main coronary artery stenosis · left to right shunt · pericardial effusion · pericarditis · QT-interval prolongation · recent myocardial infarction · severe heart failure · stenotic carotid artery disease with cerebrovascular insufficiency · stenotic valvular heart disease · uncorrected hypovolaemia
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiarrhythmics
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal discomfort · arrhythmias · atrioventricular block · chest discomfort · chest pain (discontinue) · dizziness · dry mouth · dyspnoea · flushing · headache · hypotension (discontinue if severe) · pain · paraesthesia · throat discomfort
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Asthenia · back discomfort · bradycardia (discontinue if asystole or severe bradycardia occur) · hyperhidrosis · limb discomfort · nervousness · taste metallic
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Drowsiness · nasal congestion · nipple tenderness · respiratory disorders · respiratory failure (discontinue) · tinnitus · tremor · urinary urgency · vision blurred
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Apnoea · cardiac arrest · loss of consciousness · nausea · seizure · syncope · vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Large doses may produce fetal toxicity; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available—unlikely to be present in milk owing to short half-life.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor ECG and have resuscitation facilities available.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For rapid intravenous injection give over 2 seconds into central or large peripheral vein followed by rapid Sodium Chloride 0.9% flush; injection solution may be diluted with Sodium Chloride 0.9% if required.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection, infusion, solution for infusion

#### **Solution for injection**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

##### ▶ **Adenosine (Non-proprietary)**

**Adenosine 3 mg per 1 ml** Adenosine 6mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £7.00 (Hospital only) | 6 vial [PoM] £26.70–£29.24 (Hospital only)

##### ▶ **Adenocor (Sanofi)**

**Adenosine 3 mg per 1 ml** Adenocor 6mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 6 vial [PoM] £6.45 (Hospital only)

#### **Solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

##### ▶ **Adenosine (Non-proprietary)**

**Adenosine 3 mg per 1 ml** Adenosine 30mg/10ml solution for infusion vials | 5 vial [PoM] £12.00 (Hospital only) | 6 vial [PoM] £70.00–£85.57 (Hospital only)

##### ▶ **Adenoscan (Sanofi)**

**Adenosine 3 mg per 1 ml** Adenoscan 30mg/10ml solution for infusion vials | 6 vial [PoM] £16.05

## BETA-ADRENOCEPTOR BLOCKERS > NON-SELECTIVE

F 103

### Sotalol hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Life-threatening arrhythmias including ventricular tachyarrhythmias**

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 80 mg once daily, alternatively initially 40 mg twice daily, then increased to 80–160 mg twice daily, dose to be increased gradually at intervals of 2–3 days; higher doses of 480–640 mg daily may be required for life-threatening ventricular arrhythmias (under specialist supervision)

##### **Ventricular arrhythmias, life-threatening ventricular tachyarrhythmia and supraventricular arrhythmias (initiated under specialist supervision)**

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 1 mg/kg twice daily, increased if necessary up to 4 mg/kg twice daily, dose to be increased at intervals of 3–4 days.

##### **Atrial flutter, ventricular arrhythmias, life-threatening ventricular tachyarrhythmia and supraventricular arrhythmias (initiated under specialist supervision)**

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 1 mg/kg twice daily, then increased if necessary up to 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 80 mg twice daily), dose to be increased at intervals of 2–3 days
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 80 mg once daily, alternatively initially 40 mg twice daily, increased to 80–160 mg twice daily, dose to be increased gradually at intervals of 2–3 days

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Sotalol may prolong the QT interval, and it occasionally causes life threatening ventricular arrhythmias (**important:** particular care is required to avoid hypokalaemia in patients taking sotalol—electrolyte disturbances, particularly hypokalaemia and hypomagnesaemia should be corrected before sotalol started and during use).

Reduce dose or discontinue if corrected QT interval exceeds 550 msec.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Long QT syndrome (congenital or acquired) · torsade de pointes
- **CAUTIONS** Diarrhoea (severe or prolonged)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta blockers, non-selective
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Anxiety · arrhythmia · chest pain · dyspepsia · fever · flatulence · hearing impairment · mood altered · muscle spasms · oedema · palpitations · presyncope · sexual dysfunction · taste altered · torsade de pointes (increased risk in females)
- **BREAST FEEDING** Water soluble beta-blockers such as sotalol are present in breast milk in greater amounts than other beta blockers.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
**Dose adjustments** Halve normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; use one-quarter normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Measurement of corrected QT interval, and monitoring of ECG and electrolytes required; correct hypokalaemia, hypomagnesaemia, or other electrolyte disturbances.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For administration by mouth, tablets may be crushed and dispersed in water.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

##### ► Sotalol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Sotalol hydrochloride 40 mg** Sotalol 40mg tablets |

28 tablet [PoM] £1.53 DT = £1.53

**Sotalol hydrochloride 80 mg** Sotalol 80mg tablets |

28 tablet [PoM] £3.75 DT = £1.08 | 56 tablet [PoM] £1.81

**Sotalol hydrochloride 160 mg** Sotalol 160mg tablets |

28 tablet [PoM] £6.25 DT = £5.25

##### ► Beta-Cardone (Focus Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Sotalol hydrochloride 200 mg** Beta-Cardone 200mg tablets |

28 tablet [PoM] £2.40 DT = £2.40

##### ► Sotacor (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Sotalol hydrochloride 80 mg** Sotacor 80mg tablets |

30 tablet [PoM] £3.28

## CARDIAC GLYCOSIDES

### Cardiac glycosides

#### Digoxin-specific antibody

Serious cases of digoxin toxicity should be discussed with the National Poisons Information Service (see further information, under Poisoning, emergency treatment p. 832). Digoxin-specific antibody fragments p. 841 are indicated for the treatment of known or strongly suspected life-threatening digoxin toxicity associated with ventricular arrhythmias or bradyarrhythmias unresponsive to atropine sulfate p. 810 and when measures beyond the withdrawal of digoxin below and correction of any electrolyte abnormalities are considered necessary.

#### Digoxin

Digoxin is most useful in the treatment of supraventricular tachycardias, especially for controlling ventricular response in persistent atrial fibrillation. Digoxin has a limited role in children with chronic heart failure.

For the management of atrial fibrillation, the maintenance dose of digoxin is determined on the basis of the ventricular rate at rest, which should not be allowed to fall below an acceptable level for the child.

Digoxin is now rarely used for rapid control of heart rate, even with intravenous administration, response may take many hours; persistence of tachycardia is therefore not an indication for exceeding the recommended dose. The intramuscular route is **not** recommended.

In children with heart failure who are in sinus rhythm, a loading dose may not be required.

Unwanted effects depend both on the concentration of digoxin in the plasma and on the sensitivity of the conducting system or of the myocardium, which is often increased in heart disease. It can sometimes be difficult to distinguish between toxic effects and clinical deterioration because the symptoms of both are similar. The plasma-digoxin concentration alone cannot indicate toxicity reliably, but the likelihood of toxicity increases progressively through the range 1.5 to 3 micrograms/litre for digoxin. Renal function is very important in determining digoxin dosage.

Hypokalaemia predisposes the child to digitalis toxicity and should be avoided; it is managed by giving a potassium-sparing diuretic or, if necessary, potassium supplements.

If toxicity occurs, digoxin should be withdrawn; serious manifestations require urgent specialist management. Digoxin-specific antibody fragments are available for reversal of life-threatening overdosage.

### Digoxin

16-Jun-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Digoxin is a cardiac glycoside that increases the force of myocardial contraction and reduces conductivity within the atrioventricular (AV) node.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Supraventricular arrhythmias | Chronic heart failure

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate (body-weight up to 1.5 kg): Initially 25 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours, then 4–6 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses.

- Neonate (body-weight 1.5–2.5 kg): Initially 30 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours, then 4–6 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses.

- Neonate (body-weight 2.6 kg and above): Initially 45 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours, then 10 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses.

- Child 1 month–1 year: Initially 45 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours, then 10 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses

- Child 2–4 years: Initially 35 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours, then 10 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses

- Child 5–9 years: Initially 25 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses (max. per dose 750 micrograms) for 24 hours, then 6 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses; maximum 250 micrograms per day

- Child 10–17 years: Initially 0.75–1.5 mg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours, then 62.5–250 micrograms daily in 1–2 divided doses, higher doses may be necessary

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate (body-weight up to 1.5 kg): Initially 20 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours, then 4–6 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses.

- Neonate (body-weight 1.5–2.5 kg): Initially 30 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours, then 4–6 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses.

- Neonate (body-weight 2.6 kg and above): Initially 35 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours, then 10 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses.

- Child 1 month–1 year: Initially 35 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours, then 10 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses

- Child 2–4 years: Initially 35 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours, then 10 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses

- Child 5–9 years: Initially 25 micrograms/kg in 3 divided doses (max. per dose 500 micrograms) for 24 hours, then 6 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses; maximum 250 micrograms per day

- Child 10–17 years: Initially 0.5–1 mg in 3 divided doses for 24 hours, then 62.5–250 micrograms daily in 1–2 divided doses, higher doses may be necessary

#### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- Manufacturer advises reduce dose by half with concurrent use of amiodarone, dronedarone and quinine.

continued →



**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- ▶ Dose may need to be reduced if digoxin (or another cardiac glycoside) has been given in the preceding 2 weeks.
- ▶ When switching from intravenous to oral route may need to increase dose by 20–33% to maintain the same plasma-digoxin concentration.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Digoxin is licensed for use in heart failure and supraventricular arrhythmias.
  - **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Constrictive pericarditis (unless to control atrial fibrillation or improve systolic dysfunction—but use with caution) · hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (unless concomitant atrial fibrillation and heart failure—but use with caution) · intermittent complete heart block · myocarditis · second degree AV block · supraventricular arrhythmias associated with accessory conducting pathways e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome (although can be used in infancy) · ventricular tachycardia or fibrillation
  - **CAUTIONS** Avoid hypercalcaemia (risk of digitalis toxicity) · avoid hypokalaemia (risk of digitalis toxicity) · avoid hypomagnesaemia (risk of digitalis toxicity) · avoid hypoxia (risk of digitalis toxicity) · severe respiratory disease · sick sinus syndrome · thyroid disease
  - **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: digoxin
  - **SIDE-EFFECTS**
    - ▶ **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · cardiac conduction disorder · cerebral impairment · diarrhoea · dizziness · eosinophilia · nausea · skin reactions · vision disorders · vomiting
    - ▶ **Uncommon** Depression
    - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Appetite decreased · asthenia · confusion · gastrointestinal disorders · gynaecomastia · headache · malaise · psychosis · thrombocytopenia
- Overdose** If toxicity occurs, digoxin should be withdrawn; serious manifestations require urgent specialist management.

● **PREGNANCY**

**Dose adjustments** May need dosage adjustment.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful.● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate is 10–50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> and use a quarter normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Monitoring** Monitor plasma-digoxin concentration in renal impairment.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ For plasma-digoxin concentration assay, blood should be taken at least 6 hours after a dose.
- ▶ Plasma-digoxin concentration should be maintained in the range 0.8–2 micrograms/litre.
- ▶ Monitor serum electrolytes and renal function. Toxicity increased by electrolyte disturbances.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- ▶ With intravenous use Avoid rapid intravenous administration (risk of hypertension and reduced coronary flow). For *intravenous infusion*, dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Glucose 5% to a max. concentration of 62.5 micrograms/mL; loading doses should be given over 30–60 minutes and maintenance dose over 10–20 minutes.
- ▶ With oral use For *oral* administration, oral solution must not be diluted.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for digoxin elixir (use pipette).

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection

**Tablet**▶ **Digoxin (Non-proprietary)**

**Digoxin 62.5 microgram** Digoxin 62.5microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.99 DT = £1.23

**Digoxin 125 microgram** Digoxin 125microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £4.99 DT = £1.22

**Digoxin 250 microgram** Digoxin 250microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £4.99 DT = £1.22

▶ **Lanoxin** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)

**Digoxin 62.5 microgram** Lanoxin PG 62.5microgram tablets | 500 tablet [PoM] £8.09

**Digoxin 125 microgram** Lanoxin 125 tablets | 500 tablet [PoM] £8.09

**Digoxin 250 microgram** Lanoxin 250microgram tablets | 500 tablet [PoM] £8.09

**Solution for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol, propylene glycol

▶ **Lanoxin (Imported (United States))**

**Digoxin 100 microgram per 1 ml** Lanoxin Injection Pediatric 100micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £

**Solution for infusion**▶ **Digoxin (Non-proprietary)**

**Digoxin 250 microgram per 1 ml** Digoxin 500micrograms/2ml solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £7.00

▶ **Lanoxin** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)

**Digoxin 250 microgram per 1 ml** Lanoxin 500micrograms/2ml solution for infusion ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £3.30

**Oral solution**▶ **Lanoxin** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)

**Digoxin 50 microgram per 1 ml** Lanoxin PG 50micrograms/ml elixir | 60 ml [PoM] £5.35 DT = £5.35

## 2 Bleeding disorders

## Antifibrinolytic drugs and haemostatics

**Overview**

Fibrin dissolution can be impaired by the administration of tranexamic acid below, which inhibits fibrinolysis. It can be used to prevent bleeding or treat bleeding associated with excessive fibrinolysis (e.g. in surgery, dental extraction, obstetric disorders, and traumatic hyphaema) and in the management of menorrhagia; it may also be used in hereditary angioedema, epistaxis, and thrombolytic overdose. Tranexamic acid can also be used in cardiac surgery to reduce blood loss and to reduce the need for use of blood products.

Desmopressin p. 432 is used in the management of mild to moderate haemophilia and von Willebrand's disease. It is also used for fibrinolytic response testing.

## ANTIHAEMORRHAGICS &gt; ANTIFIBRINOLYTICS

## Tranexamic acid

26-Apr-2017

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Inhibition of fibrinolysis**▶ **BY MOUTH**

▶ Child: 15–25 mg/kg 2–3 times a day (max. per dose 1.5 g)

▶ **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

▶ Child: 10 mg/kg 2–3 times a day (max. per dose 1 g), dose to be given over at least 10 minutes



## ► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 45 mg/kg, dose to be given over 24 hours

**Menorrhagia**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 1 g 3 times a day for up to 4 days, to be initiated when menstruation has started; maximum 4 g per day

**Hereditary angioedema**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 15–25 mg/kg 2–3 times a day (max. per dose 1.5 g), for short-term prophylaxis of hereditary angioedema, tranexamic acid is started several days before planned procedures which may trigger an acute attack of hereditary angioedema (e.g. dental work) and continued for 2–5 days afterwards

## ► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: 10 mg/kg 2–3 times a day (max. per dose 1 g), dose to be given over at least 10 minutes

## ► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 45 mg/kg, dose to be given over 24 hours

**Prevention of excessive bleeding after dental procedures (e.g. in haemophilia)**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child 6–17 years: 10 mg/kg (max. per dose 1.5 g), dose to be given pre-operatively

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–17 years: 15–25 mg/kg (max. per dose 1.5 g), dose to be given pre-operatively, then 15–25 mg/kg 2–3 times a day (max. per dose 1.5 g) for up to 8 days, dose to be given postoperatively

**Prevention of excessive bleeding after dental procedures (e.g. in haemophilia) with mouthwash 5% solution (specialist use only)**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–17 years: 5–10 mL 4 times a day for 2 days, rinse mouth with solution; the solution should not be swallowed

**Reduction of blood loss during cardiac surgery**

## ► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for reduction of blood loss during cardiac surgery; injection not licensed for use in children under 1 year or for administration by intravenous infusion.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Fibrinolytic conditions following disseminated intravascular coagulation (unless predominant activation of fibrinolytic system with severe bleeding) · history of convulsions · thromboembolic disease

- **CAUTIONS** Irregular menstrual bleeding (establish cause before initiating therapy) · massive haematuria (avoid if risk of ureteric obstruction) · patients receiving oral contraceptives (increased risk of thrombosis)

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- Menorrhagia Before initiating treatment for menorrhagia, exclude structural or histological causes or fibroids causing distortion of uterine cavity.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tranexamic acid

**SIDE-EFFECTS****GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Diarrhoea (reduce dose) · nausea · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Allergic dermatitis
- **Rare or very rare** Colour vision change (discontinue) · embolism and thrombosis
- **Frequency not known** Seizure (more common at high doses) · visual impairment (discontinue)

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- With intravenous use Hypotension · malaise (on rapid intravenous injection)
- **PREGNANCY** No evidence of teratogenicity in *animal* studies; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—crosses the placenta.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Small amount present in milk—antifibrinolytic effect in infant unlikely.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment. **Dose adjustments** Reduce dose in mild to moderate impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Regular liver function tests in long-term treatment of hereditary angioedema.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous administration*, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium chloride 0.9%.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Tranexamic acid for heavy bleeding during periods [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tranexamic-acid-for-heavy-bleeding-during-periods](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tranexamic-acid-for-heavy-bleeding-during-periods)  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Tranexamic acid for treatment for prevention of bleeding [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tranexamic-acid-for-treatment-or-prevention-of-bleeding](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tranexamic-acid-for-treatment-or-prevention-of-bleeding)

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Tablet**► **Tranexamic acid (Non-proprietary)**

Tranexamic acid 500 mg Tranexamic acid 500mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]** £32.10 DT = £12.85

► **Cyklokapron** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Tranexamic acid 500 mg Cyklokapron 500mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]** £14.30 DT = £12.85

**Solution for injection**► **Tranexamic acid (Non-proprietary)**

Tranexamic acid 100 mg per 1 ml Tranexamic acid 500mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule **[PoM]** £7.50 (Hospital only) | 5 ampoule **[PoM]** £7.50 | 10 ampoule **[PoM]** £13.99–£15.47 (Hospital only)

► **Cyklokapron** (Pfizer Ltd)

Tranexamic acid 100 mg per 1 ml Cyklokapron 500mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule **[PoM]** £15.47

**ANTIHAEMORRHAGICS > HAEMOSTATICS****Emicizumab**

09-May-2018

- **DRUG ACTION** Emicizumab is a monoclonal antibody that bridges activated factor IX and factor X to restore function of missing activated factor VIII, which is needed for haemostasis.

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Prophylaxis of haemorrhage in patients with haemophilia A (initiated by a specialist)**

## ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child: Initially 3 mg/kg once weekly for 4 weeks, then maintenance 1.5 mg/kg once weekly, administer into the thigh, abdomen or upper arm

- **CAUTIONS** Children under 1 year · concomitant bypassing agent · risk factors for thrombotic microangiopathy

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- Concomitant bypassing agent Manufacturer advises discontinue bypassing agents the day before starting emicizumab; if a bypassing agent is required—consult product literature.

**SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Arthralgia · diarrhoea · fever · headache · myalgia · thrombotic microangiopathy

- ▶ **Uncommon** Cavernous sinus thrombosis · skin necrosis · thrombophlebitis
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception during and for 6 months after treatment in women of childbearing potential.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** Manufacturer advises to avoid intrinsic pathway clotting-based laboratory tests or use with caution as results may be misinterpreted—consult product literature.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises max. 2 mL per injection site; rotate injection site and avoid skin that is tender, damaged or scarred. Patients or their caregivers may self-administer *Hemlibra*® after appropriate training.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Emicizumab is a biological medicine. Biological medicines must be prescribed and dispensed by brand name, see *Biological medicines* and *Biosimilar medicines*, under Guidance on prescribing p. 1; manufacturer advises to record the brand name and batch number after each administration.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
**Missed doses** Manufacturer advises if a dose is missed by more than 5 days, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose administered at the normal time.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

##### ▶ **Hemlibra** (Roche Products Ltd) ▼

**Emicizumab 30 mg per 1 mL** Hemlibra 30mg/1mL solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £2,415.30

**Emicizumab 150 mg per 1 mL** Hemlibra 150mg/1mL solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £12,076.50

Hemlibra 105mg/0.7mL solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £8,453.55

Hemlibra 60mg/0.4mL solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £4,830.60

- **CAUTIONS** Disseminated intravascular coagulation · history of myocardial infarction or coronary heart disease · postoperative use · risk of thrombosis · vaccination against hepatitis A and hepatitis B may be required

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Fever · headache · hypersensitivity
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Disseminated intravascular coagulation · nephrotic syndrome · thromboembolism
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Monitoring** Monitor closely in hepatic impairment (risk of thromboembolic complications).
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Dried prothrombin complex is prepared from human plasma by a suitable fractionation technique, and contains factor IX, together with variable amounts of factors II, VII, and X.  
 Available from CSL Behring (*Beriplex*® P/N), Octapharma (*Octaplex*®).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

## Factor VIIa (recombinant) (Eptacog alfa (activated))

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment and prophylaxis of haemorrhage in patients with haemophilia A or B with inhibitors to factors VIII or IX, acquired haemophilia, factor VII deficiency, or Glanzmann's thrombasthenia**

- ▶ **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**
- ▶ **Child:** (consult haematologist)

- **CAUTIONS** Disseminated intravascular coagulation · risk of thrombosis

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Uncommon** Embolism and thrombosis · fever · hepatic disorders · intestinal ischaemia · skin reactions · therapeutic response decreased
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angina pectoris · cerebrovascular insufficiency · coagulation disorders · headache · myocardial infarction · nausea · peripheral ischaemia
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · flushing

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

##### ▶ **NovoSeven** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)

**Eptacog alfa activated 50000 unit** NovoSeven 1mg (50,000units) powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £525.20 (Hospital only)

NovoSeven 1mg (50,000units) powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £525.20 (Hospital only)

**Eptacog alfa activated 100000 unit** NovoSeven 2mg (100,000units) powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,050.40 (Hospital only)

NovoSeven 2mg (100,000units) powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £1,050.40 (Hospital only)

**Eptacog alfa activated 250000 unit** NovoSeven 5mg (250,000units) powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £2,626.00 (Hospital only)

NovoSeven 5mg (250,000units) powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £2,626.00 (Hospital only)

**Eptacog alfa activated 400000 unit** NovoSeven 8mg (400,000units) powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £4,201.60 (Hospital only)

NovoSeven 8mg (400,000units) powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £4,201.60 (Hospital only)

## 2.1 Coagulation factor deficiencies

### BLOOD AND RELATED PRODUCTS > COAGULATION PROTEINS

## Dried prothrombin complex (Human prothrombin complex)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment and peri-operative prophylaxis of haemorrhage in patients with congenital deficiency of factors II, VII, IX, or X if purified specific coagulation factors not available | Treatment and peri-operative prophylaxis of haemorrhage in patients with acquired deficiency of factors II, VII, IX, or X (e.g. during warfarin treatment)**

- ▶ **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- ▶ **Child:** (consult haematologist)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Angina · history of heparin induced thrombocytopenia · recent myocardial infarction (except in life-threatening haemorrhage following overdosage of oral anticoagulants, and before induction of fibrinolytic therapy)

## Factor VIII fraction, dried

(Human coagulation factor VIII, dried)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment and prophylaxis of haemorrhage in congenital factor VIII deficiency (haemophilia A), acquired factor VIII deficiency / Von Willebrand's disease**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult haematologist)

- **CAUTIONS** Intravascular haemolysis after large or frequently repeated doses in patients with blood groups A, B, or AB—less likely with high potency concentrates - vaccination against hepatitis A and hepatitis B may be required (not necessary with recombinant preparation)

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Uncommon** Angioedema · cardiac discomfort · chills · flushing · headache · hypersensitivity · hypotension · lethargy · nausea · paraesthesia · restlessness · skin reactions · tachycardia · vomiting · wheezing
- **Rare or very rare** Fever

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor for development of factor VIII inhibitors.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Dried factor VIII fraction is prepared from human plasma by a suitable fractionation technique; it may also contain varying amounts of von Willebrand factor. *Optivate*®, *Fanhdī*®, and *Octanate*® are not indicated for use in von Willebrand's disease.

Recombinant human coagulation factor VIII including octocog alfa, moroctocog alfa, and simoctocog alfa are not indicated for use in von Willebrand's disease.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

- **Advate** (Baxalta UK Ltd)  
**Octocog alfa 250 unit** Advate 250unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £177.50  
**Octocog alfa 500 unit** Advate 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £355.00  
**Octocog alfa 1000 unit** Advate 1,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £710.00  
**Octocog alfa 2000 unit** Advate 2,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,420.00
- **Elocta** (Swedish Orphan Biovitrum Ltd) ▼  
**Efmorotocog alfa 250 unit** Elocta 250unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] (Hospital only)  
**Efmorotocog alfa 500 unit** Elocta 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] (Hospital only)  
**Efmorotocog alfa 1000 unit** Elocta 1,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] (Hospital only)  
**Efmorotocog alfa 1500 unit** Elocta 1,500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] (Hospital only)  
**Efmorotocog alfa 2000 unit** Elocta 2,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] (Hospital only)  
**Efmorotocog alfa 3000 unit** Elocta 3,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] (Hospital only)
- **Fanhdī** (Grifols UK Ltd)  
**Factor VIII high purity 500 unit** Fanhdī 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £165.00 (Hospital only)  
**Factor VIII high purity 1000 unit** Fanhdī 1,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £330.00 (Hospital only)  
**Factor VIII high purity 1500 unit** Fanhdī 1,500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £495.00
- **Haemoctin** (Biotest (UK) Ltd)  
**Factor VIII high purity 250 unit** Haemoctin 250unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £150.00 (Hospital only)  
**Factor VIII high purity 500 unit** Haemoctin 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £300.00 (Hospital only)

**Factor VIII high purity 1000 unit** Haemoctin 1,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £600.00 (Hospital only)

- **Helixate NexGen** (CSL Behring UK Ltd)  
**Octocog alfa 250 unit** Helixate NexGen 250unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £139.50  
**Octocog alfa 500 unit** Helixate NexGen 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £279.00  
**Octocog alfa 1000 unit** Helixate NexGen 1,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £558.00  
**Octocog alfa 2000 unit** Helixate NexGen 2,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,116.00
- **Kogenate** (Bayer Plc)  
**Octocog alfa 2000 unit** Kogenate Bayer 2,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,260.00
- **Kogenate Bayer** (Bayer Plc)  
**Octocog alfa 250 unit** Kogenate Bayer 250unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £157.50  
**Octocog alfa 500 unit** Kogenate Bayer 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £315.00  
**Octocog alfa 1000 unit** Kogenate Bayer 1,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £630.00
- **Nuwiq** (Octapharma Ltd) ▼  
**Simoctocog alfa 250 unit** Nuwq 250unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £190.00 (Hospital only)  
**Simoctocog alfa 500 unit** Nuwq 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £380.00 (Hospital only)  
**Simoctocog alfa 1000 unit** Nuwq 1,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £760.00 (Hospital only)  
**Simoctocog alfa 2000 unit** Nuwq 2,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,520.00 (Hospital only)
- **Octanate** (Octapharm Ltd)  
**Factor VIII high purity 500 unit** Octanate LV 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £300.00 (Hospital only)  
**Factor VIII high purity 1000 unit** Octanate LV 1,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £600.00 (Hospital only)

#### **Powder and solvent for solution for infusion**

- **Advate** (Baxalta UK Ltd)  
**Octocog alfa 1500 unit** Advate 1,500unit powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,065.00  
**Octocog alfa 3000 unit** Advate 3,000unit powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £2,130.00
- **Kogenate** (Bayer Plc)  
**Octocog alfa 3000 unit** Kogenate Bayer 3,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,890.00

## Factor IX fraction, dried

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment and prophylaxis of haemorrhage in congenital factor IX deficiency (haemophilia B)**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult haematologist)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Disseminated intravascular coagulation
- **CAUTIONS** Risk of thrombosis—principally with former low purity products - vaccination against hepatitis A and hepatitis B may be required (not necessary with recombinant preparation)

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anxiety · back pain · dyspnoea · hypersensitivity · nausea · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · vasodilation
- **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · cardiac discomfort · chills · disseminated intravascular coagulation · embolism and thrombosis · headache · hypotension · lethargy · myocardial infarction · tachycardia · vomiting · wheezing
- **Frequency not known** Nephrotic syndrome

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Dried factor IX fraction is prepared from human plasma by a suitable

fractionation technique; it may also contain clotting factors II, VII, and X.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder and solvent for solution for injection

##### ► AlphaNine (Grifols UK Ltd)

**Factor IX high purity 1000 unit** AlphaNine 1,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £390.00

**Factor IX high purity 1500 unit** AlphaNine 1,500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £

##### ► Haemonine (Biotest (UK) Ltd)

**Factor IX high purity 500 unit** Haemonine 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £300.00 (Hospital only)

**Factor IX high purity 1000 unit** Haemonine 1,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £600.00 (Hospital only)

##### ► Repleneine-VF (Bio Products Laboratory Ltd)

**Factor IX high purity 500 unit** Repleneine-VF 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £180.00

**Factor IX high purity 1000 unit** Repleneine-VF 1,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £360.00

#### Powder and solvent for solution for infusion

##### ► BeneFIX (Pfizer Ltd)

**Nonacog alfa 250 unit** BeneFIX 250unit powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £151.80 (Hospital only)

**Nonacog alfa 500 unit** BeneFIX 500unit powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £303.60 (Hospital only)

**Nonacog alfa 1000 unit** BeneFIX 1,000unit powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £607.20 (Hospital only)

**Nonacog alfa 2000 unit** BeneFIX 2,000unit powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,214.40 (Hospital only)

**Nonacog alfa 3000 unit** BeneFIX 3,000unit powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,821.60 (Hospital only)

## Factor XIII fraction, dried

(Human fibrin-stabilising factor, dried)

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Congenital factor XIII deficiency

- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult haematologist)

- **CAUTIONS** Vaccination against hepatitis A and hepatitis B may be required

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

- Rare or very rare Anaphylactoid reaction · dyspnoea · skin reactions

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder and solvent for solution for injection

##### ► Fibrogammin P (CSL Behring UK Ltd)

**Factor XIII 250 unit** Fibrogammin 250unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £106.58

**Factor XIII 1250 unit** Fibrogammin 1,250unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £532.90

## Fibrinogen, dried

(Human fibrinogen)

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Treatment of haemorrhage in congenital hypofibrinogenemia or afibrinogenemia

- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult haematologist)

- **CAUTIONS** Risk of thrombosis

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

- Common or very common Fever · thromboembolism

- **Frequency not known** Chest pain · chills · cough · dyspnoea · nausea · skin reactions · tachycardia · vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises not known to be harmful—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Fibrinogen is prepared from human plasma.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder for solution for infusion

##### ► Riastap (CSL Behring UK Ltd)

**Fibrinogen 1 gram** Riastap 1g powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £400.00

## Protein C concentrate

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Congenital protein C deficiency

- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child: (consult haematologist)

- **CAUTIONS** Hypersensitivity to heparins · vaccination against hepatitis A and hepatitis B may be required
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- Rare or very rare Dizziness · fever · skin reactions
- **Frequency not known** Haemothorax · hyperhidrosis · restlessness
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Protein C is prepared from human plasma.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder and solvent for solution for injection

##### ► Ceprotin (Baxalta UK Ltd)

**Protein C 500 unit** Ceprotin 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £2,000.00

**Protein C 1000 unit** Ceprotin 1000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,000.00

## BLOOD AND RELATED PRODUCTS > HAEMOSTATIC PRODUCTS

## Factor VIII inhibitor bypassing fraction

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment and prophylaxis of haemorrhage in patients with congenital factor VIII deficiency (haemophilia A) and factor VIII inhibitors | Treatment of haemorrhage in non-haemophilic patients with acquired factor VIII inhibitors**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child: (consult haematologist)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Disseminated intravascular coagulation

- **CAUTIONS** Vaccination against hepatitis A and hepatitis B may be required

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

- Common or very common Dizziness · headache · hypersensitivity · hypotension · skin reactions
- **Frequency not known** Abdominal discomfort · anamnestic reaction · angioedema · chest discomfort · chills · cough · diarrhoea · disseminated intravascular coagulation · drowsiness · dyspnoea · embolism and thrombosis · fever · flushing · hypertension · ischaemic stroke · malaise · myocardial infarction · nausea · paraesthesia · respiratory

disorders • restlessness • tachycardia • taste altered • vomiting

#### ● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

Preparations with factor VIII inhibitor bypassing activity are prepared from human plasma.

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

► **FEIBA Imuno** (Baxalta UK Ltd)

Factor VIII inhibitor bypassing fraction 500 unit FEIBA 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM](#) £390.00

##### **Powder and solvent for solution for infusion**

► **FEIBA Imuno** (Baxalta UK Ltd)

Factor VIII inhibitor bypassing fraction 1000 unit FEIBA 1,000unit powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM](#) £780.00

## **BLOOD AND RELATED PRODUCTS > PLASMA PRODUCTS**

### **Fresh frozen plasma**

#### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Replacement of coagulation factors or other plasma proteins where their concentration or functional activity is critically reduced**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: (consult haematologist)

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid use as a volume expander • IgA deficiency with confirmed antibodies to IgA

● **CAUTIONS** Cardiac decompensation • need for compatibility • pulmonary oedema • severe protein S deficiency (avoid products with low protein S activity e.g. *OctaplasLG*®) • vaccination against hepatitis A and hepatitis B may be required

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Common or very common** Nausea • skin reactions

► **Uncommon** Oedema • vomiting

► **Rare or very rare** Agitation • arrhythmias • bronchospasm • cardio-respiratory distress • chills • fever • hypersensitivity • hypertension • thromboembolism

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Fresh frozen plasma is prepared from the supernatant liquid obtained by centrifugation of one donation of whole blood.

A preparation of solvent/detergent treated human plasma (frozen) from pooled donors is available from Octapharma (*OctaplasLG*®).

Children under 16 years should only receive virucidally inactivated preparations of fresh frozen plasma, sourced from 'low prevalence BSE regions' such as the USA.

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Infusion**

► **OctaplasLG** (Octapharma Ltd)

Human plasma proteins 5.75 mg per 1 ml OctaplasLG Blood Group

A Infusion 200 ml bags | 1 bag [PoM](#) [S](#) | 10 bag [PoM](#) [S](#)

Human plasma proteins 5.75 mg per 1 ml OctaplasLG Blood Group

AB Infusion 200 ml bags | 1 bag [PoM](#) [S](#) | 10 bag [PoM](#) [S](#)

Human plasma proteins 5.75 mg per 1 ml OctaplasLG Blood Group

B Infusion 200 ml bags | 1 bag [PoM](#) [S](#) | 10 bag [PoM](#) [S](#)

Human plasma proteins 5.75 mg per 1 ml OctaplasLG Blood Group

O Infusion 200 ml bags | 1 bag [PoM](#) [S](#) | 10 bag [PoM](#) [S](#)

## **2.2 Subarachnoid haemorrhage**

### **CALCIUM-CHANNEL BLOCKERS**

**F 108**

#### **Nimodipine**

07-Feb-2018

● **DRUG ACTION** Nimodipine is a dihydropyridine calcium-channel blocker.

#### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Treatment of vasospasm following subarachnoid haemorrhage (specialist use only)**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 15 micrograms/kg/hour (max. per dose 500 micrograms/hour), increased after 2 hours if no severe decrease in blood pressure; increased to 30 micrograms/kg/hour (max. per dose 2 mg/hour), continue for at least 5 days (max. 14 days), use initial dose of 7.5 micrograms/kg/hour if blood pressure unstable

► Child 12–17 years (body-weight up to 70 kg): Initially 0.5 mg/hour, increased after 2 hours if no severe decrease in blood pressure; increased to 1–2 mg/hour, continue for at least 5 days (max. 14 days)

► Child 12–17 years (body-weight 70 kg and above): Initially up to 1 mg/hour, use dose if blood pressure stable; increased after 2 hours if no severe decrease in blood pressure; increased to 1–2 mg/hour, continue for at least 5 days (max. 14 days)

**Prevention of vasospasm following subarachnoid haemorrhage**

► BY MOUTH

► Child: 0.9–1.2 mg/kg 6 times a day (max. per dose 60 mg), started within 4 days of haemorrhage and continued for 21 days

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

#### **IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

##### **SAFE PRACTICE**

Nimodipine has been confused with amlodipine; care must be taken to ensure the correct drug is prescribed and dispensed.

● **CAUTIONS** Cerebral oedema • hypotension • severely raised intracranial pressure

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium channel blockers

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Uncommon** Thrombocytopenia • vasodilation

► **Rare or very rare** Bradycardia • ileus

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk.

#### ● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Monitoring** Elimination reduced in cirrhosis—monitor blood pressure.

#### ● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Monitoring** ► With intravenous use Manufacturer advises monitor renal function closely in renal impairment.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Avoid concomitant administration of nimodipine infusion and tablets.

► With oral use For administration by mouth, tablets may be crushed or halved but are light sensitive—administer immediately.

► With intravenous use For continuous intravenous infusion, administer undiluted via a Y-piece on a central venous catheter connected to a running infusion of Glucose 5%, or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; not to be added to an infusion



container; incompatible with polyvinyl chloride giving sets or containers; protect infusion from light. Polyethylene, polypropylene, or glass apparatus should be used. PVC should be avoided.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Solution for infusion

##### ► Nimotop (Bayer Plc)

**Nimodipine 200 microgram per 1 mL** Nimotop 0.02% solution for infusion 50mL vials | 5 vial [PoM] £68.00 (Hospital only)

#### Tablet

##### ► Nimotop (Bayer Plc)

**Nimodipine 30 mg** Nimotop 30mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £40.00

## 3 Blood clots

### 3.1 Blocked catheters and lines

#### ANTITHROMBOTIC DRUGS > TISSUE PLASMINOGEN ACTIVATORS

### Fibrinolytic drugs

#### Overview

Alteplase below, streptokinase p. 89 and urokinase p. 89 are used in children to dissolve intravascular thrombi and unblock occluded arteriovenous shunts, catheters, and indwelling central lines blocked with fibrin clots. Treatment should be started as soon as possible after a clot has formed and discontinued once a pulse in the affected limb is detected, or the shunt or catheter unblocked.

The safety and efficacy of treatment remains uncertain, especially in neonates. A fibrinolytic drug is probably only appropriate where arterial occlusion threatens ischaemic damage; an anticoagulant may stop the clot getting bigger. Alteplase is the preferred fibrinolytic in children and neonates; there is less risk of adverse effects including allergic reactions.

### Fibrinolytics

• **DRUG ACTION** Fibrinolytic drugs act as thrombolytics by activating plasminogen to form plasmin, which degrades fibrin and so breaks up thrombi.

• **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute pancreatitis • aneurysm • arteriovenous malformation • bacterial endocarditis • bleeding diatheses • coagulation defects • neoplasm with risk of haemorrhage • pericarditis • recent haemorrhage • recent surgery (including dental extraction) • recent trauma • severe hypertension

• **CAUTIONS** Conditions with an increased risk of haemorrhage • hypertension • risk of bleeding (including that from venepuncture or invasive procedures)

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Anaphylactic reaction • angina pectoris • cardiac arrest • cardiogenic shock • chills • CNS haemorrhage • ecchymosis • fever • haemorrhage • haemorrhagic stroke • heart failure • hypotension • ischaemia recurrent (when used in myocardial infarction) • nausea • pericarditis • pulmonary oedema • vomiting

► **Uncommon** Aphasia • mitral valve incompetence • myocardial rupture • pericardial disorders • reperfusion arrhythmia (when used in myocardial infarction) • seizure

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Serious bleeding calls for discontinuation of the thrombolytic and may

require administration of coagulation factors and antifibrinolytic drugs.

• **PREGNANCY** Thrombolytic drugs can possibly lead to premature separation of the placenta in the first 18 weeks of pregnancy. There is also a risk of maternal haemorrhage throughout pregnancy and post-partum, and also a theoretical risk of fetal haemorrhage throughout pregnancy.

• **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe hepatic impairment as there is an increased risk of bleeding.

► above

### Alteplase

#### (rt-PA; Tissue-type plasminogen activator)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Intravascular thrombosis

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► **Neonate:** 100–500 micrograms/kg/hour for 3–6 hours, use ultrasound assessment to monitor effect before considering a second course of treatment (consult local protocol).

► **Child:** 100–500 micrograms/kg/hour for 3–6 hours, use ultrasound assessment to monitor effect before considering a second course of treatment; maximum 100 mg per day

##### ACTILYSE CATHFLO®

#### Thrombolytic treatment of occluded central venous access devices (including those used for haemodialysis)

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► **Child:** (consult product literature)

• **UNLICENSED USE** Actilyse® not licensed for use in children.

• **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Oesophageal varices • recent delivery • recent ulcerative gastro-intestinal disease • stroke

• **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: alteplase

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Haemorrhage

► **Uncommon** Cerebral embolism • haemothorax

► **Rare or very rare** Agitation • confusion • delirium • depression • epilepsy • psychosis • speech disorder

► **Frequency not known** Brain oedema (caused by reperfusion)

• **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if history of hypersensitivity to gentamicin (residue from manufacturing process).

• **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion* (Actilyse®), dissolve in Water for Injections to a concentration of 1 mg/mL or 2 mg/mL and infuse intravenously; alternatively dilute further in Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a concentration of not less than 200 micrograms/mL; not to be diluted in Glucose.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

#### Powder and solvent for solution for injection

##### ► Actilyse (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)

**Alteplase 10 mg** Actilyse 10mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £172.80

**Alteplase 20 mg** Actilyse 20mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £259.20

#### Powder and solvent for solution for infusion

##### ► Actilyse (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)

**Alteplase 50 mg** Actilyse 50mg powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £432.00



F 88

## Streptokinase

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Intravascular thrombosis

##### ► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 2500–4000 units/kg, dose to be given over 30 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 500–1000 units/kg/hour for up to 3 days until reperfusion occurs
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 250 000 units, dose to be given over 30 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 100 000 units/hour for up to 3 days until reperfusion occurs

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in children who have had streptococcal infection in the last 12 months

● **CAUTIONS** Atrial fibrillation · cavernous pulmonary disease · cerebrovascular disease · mitral valve defect · recent delivery or abortion · septic thrombotic disease

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: streptokinase

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

● **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · asthenia · diarrhoea · epigastric pain · headache · infarction · malaise · pain

► **Uncommon** Haemorrhage · respiratory arrest · splenic rupture

► **Rare or very rare** Arthritis · eye inflammation · hypersensitivity · nephritis · nerve disorders · neurological effects · pulmonary oedema non-cardiogenic (caused by reperfusion) · shock · vasculitis

● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if previous allergic reaction to either streptokinase or anistreplase (no longer available). Prolonged persistence of antibodies to streptokinase and anistreplase (no longer available) can reduce the effectiveness of subsequent treatment; therefore, streptokinase should not be used again beyond 4 days of first administration of either streptokinase or anistreplase.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intravenous infusion, reconstitute with Sodium Chloride 0.9%, then dilute further with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% after reconstitution. Monitor fibrinogen concentration closely; if fibrinogen concentration less than 1 g/litre, stop streptokinase infusion and start unfractionated heparin; restart streptokinase once fibrinogen concentration reaches 1 g/litre.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

F 88

## Urokinase

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Occluded arteriovenous shunts, catheters, and indwelling central lines

##### ► TO THE DEVICE AS A FLUSH

- Neonate: 5000–25 000 units, inject directly into occluded catheter or central line, dilute dose in sodium chloride 0.9% to fill catheter dead space **only**. Leave for 20–60 minutes then aspirate the lysate and flush with sodium chloride 0.9%.
- Child: 5000–25 000 units, inject directly into occluded catheter or central line, dilute dose in sodium chloride 0.9% to fill catheter dead space **only**. Leave for 20–60 minutes then aspirate the lysate and flush with sodium chloride 0.9%

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Recent stroke

● **CAUTIONS** Atrial fibrillation · cavernous pulmonary disease · mitral valve defect · recent delivery · septic thrombotic disease · severe cerebrovascular disease

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: urokinase

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Artery dissection · stroke

► **Uncommon** Renal failure

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** May be diluted, after reconstitution, with Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder for solution for injection

##### ► Urokinase (non-proprietary)

**Urokinase 10000 unit** Urokinase 10,000unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM](#) £33.79

**Urokinase 50000 unit** Urokinase 50,000unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM](#) £69.70

**Urokinase 100000 unit** Urokinase 100,000unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM](#) £106.17

**Urokinase 250000 unit** Urokinase 250,000unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM](#) £185.65

**Urokinase 500000 unit** Urokinase 500,000unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM](#) £365.00

##### ► Syner-KINASE (Syner-Med (Pharmaceutical Products) Ltd)

**Urokinase 10000 unit** Syner-KINASE 10,000unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM](#) £35.95 (Hospital only)

**Urokinase 25000 unit** Syner-KINASE 25,000unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM](#) £45.95 (Hospital only)

**Urokinase 100000 unit** Syner-KINASE 100,000unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM](#) £112.95 (Hospital only)

**Urokinase 250000 unit** Syner-KINASE 250,000unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM](#) [S](#) (Hospital only)

**Urokinase 500000 unit** Syner-KINASE 500,000unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM](#) [S](#) (Hospital only)

## 3.2 Thromboembolism

### Venous thromboembolism

#### Venous thromboembolism prophylaxis

Low-dose heparin (unfractionated) p. 95 by subcutaneous injection is used to prevent thrombotic episodes in 'high-risk' patients; laboratory monitoring of APTT or anti-Factor Xa concentration is also required in prophylactic regimens in children. Low molecular weight heparins, aspirin (antiplatelet dose), and warfarin sodium p. 97 can also be used for prophylaxis.

#### Treatment of venous thromboembolism

For the initial treatment of thrombotic episodes heparin (unfractionated) is given as an intravenous loading dose, followed by continuous intravenous infusion (using an infusion pump) or by intermittent subcutaneous injection; the use of intermittent intravenous injection is no longer recommended. Alternatively, a low molecular weight heparin may be given for initial treatment. If an oral anticoagulant (usually warfarin sodium) is also required, it may be started at the same time as the heparin (the heparin needs to be continued for at least 5 days and until the INR has been in the therapeutic range for 2 consecutive days). Laboratory monitoring of coagulation activity, preferably on a daily basis, involves determination of the activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT) (for heparin (unfractionated) only) or of the anti-Factor Xa concentration (for low molecular weight heparins). Local guidelines on recommended APTT for neonates and children should be

followed; monitoring of APTT should be discussed with a specialist prior to treatment for thrombotic episodes in neonates.

### Venous thromboembolism in pregnancy

Heparins are used for the management of venous thromboembolism in pregnancy because they do not cross the placenta. Low molecular weight heparins are preferred because they have a lower risk of osteoporosis and of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. Low molecular weight heparins are eliminated more rapidly in pregnancy, requiring alteration of the dosage regimen for drugs such as dalteparin sodium p. 94, enoxaparin sodium p. 94 and tinzaparin sodium p. 96; see also under individual drugs. Treatment should be stopped at the onset of labour and advice sought from a specialist on continuing therapy after birth.

### Extracorporeal circuits

Heparin (unfractionated) is also used in the maintenance of extracorporeal circuits in cardiopulmonary bypass and haemodialysis.

### Haemorrhage

If haemorrhage occurs it is usually sufficient to withdraw unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin (unfractionated), but if rapid reversal of the effects of the heparin (unfractionated) is required, protamine sulfate p. 841 is a specific antidote (but only partially reverses the effects of low molecular weight heparin (unfractionated)).

## Oral anticoagulants

### Overview

The main use of anticoagulants is to prevent thrombus formation or extension of an existing thrombus in the slower-moving venous side of the circulation, where the thrombus consists of a fibrin web enmeshed with platelets and red cells.

Anticoagulants are of less use in preventing thrombus formation in arteries, for in faster-flowing vessels thrombi are composed mainly of platelets with little fibrin.

Oral anticoagulants antagonise the effects of vitamin K and take at least 48 to 72 hours for the anticoagulant effect to develop fully; if an immediate effect is required, unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin must be given concomitantly.

### Uses

Warfarin sodium p. 97 is the drug of choice for the treatment of systemic thromboembolism in children (not neonates) after initial heparinisation. It may also be used occasionally for the treatment of intravascular or intracardiac thrombi. Warfarin sodium is used prophylactically in those with chronic atrial fibrillation, dilated cardiomyopathy, certain forms of reconstructive heart surgery, mechanical prosthetic heart valves, and some forms of hereditary thrombophilia (e.g. homozygous protein C deficiency).

Unfractionated or a low molecular weight heparin (see under Parenteral anticoagulants p. 91) is usually preferred for the prophylaxis of venous thromboembolism in children undergoing surgery; alternatively warfarin sodium can be continued in selected children currently taking warfarin sodium and who are at a high risk of thromboembolism (seek expert advice).

### Dose

The base-line prothrombin time should be determined but the initial dose should not be delayed whilst awaiting the result.

An induction dose is usually given over 4 days. The subsequent maintenance dose depends on the prothrombin

time, reported as INR (international normalised ratio) and should be taken at the same time each day.

### Target INR

The following indications and target INRs for adults for warfarin take into account recommendations of the British Society for Haematology Guidelines on Oral Anticoagulation with warfarin—fourth edition. *Br J Haematol* 2011; **154**: 311–324:

An INR which is within 0.5 units of the target value is generally satisfactory; larger deviations require dosage adjustment. Target values (rather than ranges) are now recommended.

INR 2.5 for:

- treatment of deep-vein thrombosis or pulmonary embolism (including those associated with antiphospholipid syndrome or for recurrence in patients no longer receiving warfarin sodium)
- atrial fibrillation
- cardioversion—target INR should be achieved at least 3 weeks before cardioversion and anticoagulation should continue for at least 4 weeks after the procedure (higher target values, such as an INR of 3, can be used for up to 4 weeks before the procedure to avoid cancellations due to low INR)
- dilated cardiomyopathy
- mitral stenosis or regurgitation in patients with either atrial fibrillation, a history of systemic embolism, a left atrial thrombus, or an enlarged left atrium
- bioprosthetic heart valves in the mitral position (treat for 3 months), or in patients with a history of systemic embolism (treat for at least 3 months), or with a left atrial thrombus at surgery (treat until clot resolves), or with other risk factors (e.g. atrial fibrillation or a low ventricular ejection fraction)
- acute arterial embolism requiring embolectomy (consider long-term treatment)
- myocardial infarction

INR 3.5 for:

- recurrent deep-vein thrombosis or pulmonary embolism in patients currently receiving anticoagulation and with an INR above 2;
- Mechanical prosthetic heart valves:
- the recommended target INR depends on the type and location of the valve, and patient-related risk factors
- consider increasing the INR target or adding an antiplatelet drug, if an embolic event occurs whilst anticoagulated at the target INR.

### Haemorrhage

The main adverse effect of all oral anticoagulants is haemorrhage. Checking the INR and omitting doses when appropriate is essential; if the anticoagulant is stopped but not reversed, the INR should be measured 2–3 days later to ensure that it is falling. The cause of an elevated INR should be investigated. The following recommendations (which take into account the recommendations of the British Society for Haematology Guidelines on Oral Anticoagulation with Warfarin—fourth edition. *Br J Haematol* 2011; **154**: 311–324) are based on the result of the INR and whether there is major or minor bleeding; the recommendations apply to adults taking warfarin:

- Major bleeding—stop warfarin sodium; give phytonadione (vitamin K<sub>1</sub>) p. 636 by slow intravenous injection; give dried prothrombin complex p. 84 (factors II, VII, IX, and X); if dried prothrombin complex unavailable, fresh frozen plasma can be given but is less effective; recombinant factor VIIa is not recommended for emergency anticoagulation reversal
- INR >8.0, minor bleeding—stop warfarin sodium; give phytonadione (vitamin K<sub>1</sub>) by slow intravenous

injection; repeat dose of phytonadione if INR still too high after 24 hours; restart warfarin sodium when INR <5.0

- INR >8.0, no bleeding—stop warfarin sodium; give phytonadione (vitamin K<sub>1</sub>) by mouth using the intravenous preparation orally [unlicensed use]; repeat dose of phytonadione if INR still too high after 24 hours; restart warfarin sodium when INR <5.0
- INR 5.0–8.0, minor bleeding—stop warfarin sodium; give phytonadione (vitamin K<sub>1</sub>) by slow intravenous injection; restart warfarin sodium when INR <5.0
- INR 5.0–8.0, no bleeding—withhold 1 or 2 doses of warfarin sodium and reduce subsequent maintenance dose
- Unexpected bleeding at therapeutic levels—always investigate possibility of underlying cause e.g. unsuspected renal or gastro-intestinal tract pathology

## Parenteral anticoagulants

### Anticoagulants

Although thrombotic episodes are uncommon in childhood, anticoagulants may be required in children with congenital heart disease; in children undergoing haemodialysis; for preventing thrombosis in children requiring chemotherapy and following surgery; and for systemic venous thromboembolism secondary to inherited thrombophilias, systemic lupus erythematosus, or indwelling central venous catheters.

### Heparin

**Heparin** initiates anticoagulation rapidly but has a short duration of action. It is now often referred to as being **standard** or heparin (unfractionated) p. 95 to distinguish it from the **low molecular weight heparins**, which have a longer duration of action. For children at high risk of bleeding, heparin (unfractionated) is more suitable than low molecular weight heparin because its effect can be terminated rapidly by stopping the infusion.

Heparins are used in both the treatment and prophylaxis of thromboembolic disease, mainly to prevent further clotting rather than to lyse existing clots—surgery or a thrombolytic drug may be necessary if a thrombus obstructs major vessels.

### Low molecular weight heparins

Dalteparin sodium p. 94, enoxaparin sodium p. 94, and tinzaparin sodium p. 96 are low molecular weight heparins used for treatment and prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes in children. Their duration of action is longer than that of heparin (unfractionated) and in adults and older children *once-daily subcutaneous* dosage is sometimes possible; however, younger children require relatively higher doses (possibly due to larger volume of distribution, altered heparin pharmacokinetics, or lower plasma concentrations of antithrombin) and twice daily dosage is sometimes necessary. Low molecular weight heparins are convenient to use, especially in children with poor venous access.

### Heparinoids

Danaparoid sodium p. 93 is a heparinoid that has a role in children with heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, providing they have no evidence of cross-reactivity.

### Heparin flushes

The use of heparin flushes should be kept to a minimum. For maintaining patency of peripheral venous catheters, sodium chloride injection 0.9% is as effective as heparin flushes. The role of heparin flushes in maintaining patency of arterial and central venous catheters is unclear.

### Epoprostenol

Epoprostenol (prostacyclin) p. 118 can be given to inhibit platelet aggregation during renal dialysis when heparins are unsuitable or contra-indicated. It is a potent vasodilator and therefore its side-effects include flushing, headache and hypotension.

**Other drugs used for Thromboembolism** Alteplase, p. 88 · Streptokinase, p. 89

## ANTITHROMBOTIC DRUGS > ANTIPLATELET DRUGS

## Antiplatelet drugs

### Overview

Antiplatelet drugs decrease platelet aggregation and inhibit thrombus formation in the arterial circulation, because in faster-flowing vessels, thrombi are composed mainly of platelets with little fibrin.

Aspirin below has limited use in children because it has been associated with Reye's syndrome. Aspirin-containing preparations should not be given to children and adolescents under 16 years, unless specifically indicated, such as for Kawasaki disease, for prophylaxis of clot formation after cardiac surgery, or for prophylaxis of stroke in children at high risk.

If aspirin causes dyspepsia, or if the child is at a high risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding, a proton pump inhibitor or a H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonist can be added.

Dipyridamol p. 92 is also used as an antiplatelet drug to prevent clot formation after cardiac surgery and may be used with specialist advice for treatment of persistent coronary artery aneurysms in Kawasaki disease.

### Kawasaki disease

Initial treatment is with high dose aspirin and a single dose of intravenous normal immunoglobulin; this combination has an additive anti-inflammatory effect resulting in faster resolution of fever and a decreased incidence of coronary artery complications. After the acute phase, when the patient is afebrile, aspirin is continued at a lower dose to prevent coronary artery abnormalities.

## Aspirin

### (Acetylsalicylic Acid)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Antiplatelet | Prevention of thrombus formation after cardiac surgery**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 1–5 mg/kg once daily.

► Child 1 month–11 years: 1–5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 75 mg)

► Child 12–17 years: 75 mg once daily

#### **Kawasaki disease**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 8 mg/kg 4 times a day for 2 weeks or until afebrile, followed by 5 mg/kg once daily for 6–8 weeks, if no evidence of coronary lesions after 8 weeks, discontinue treatment or seek expert advice.

► Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 7.5–12.5 mg/kg 4 times a day for 2 weeks or until afebrile, then 2–5 mg/kg once daily for 6–8 weeks, if no evidence of coronary lesions after 8 weeks, discontinue treatment or seek expert advice

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 16 years.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active peptic ulceration · bleeding disorders (antiplatelet dose) · children under 16 years (risk of Reye's syndrome) · haemophilia · previous peptic ulceration (analgesic dose) · severe cardiac failure (analgesic dose)

#### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ **Reye's syndrome** Owing to an association with Reye's syndrome, aspirin-containing preparations should not be given to children under 16 years, unless specifically indicated, e.g. for Kawasaki disease.
- **CAUTIONS** Allergic disease · anaemia · asthma · dehydration · G6PD deficiency · preferably avoid during fever or viral infection in children (risk of Reye's syndrome) · previous peptic ulceration (but manufacturers may advise avoidance of low-dose aspirin in history of peptic ulceration) · thyrotoxicosis · uncontrolled hypertension
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aspirin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Dyspepsia · haemorrhage
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Dyspnoea · rhinitis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Aplastic anaemia · asthmatic attack · bronchospasm · erythema nodosum · gastrointestinal haemorrhage (severe) · granulocytosis · haemorrhagic vasculitis · intracranial haemorrhage · menorrhagia · nausea · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Fluid retention · gastrointestinal disorders · headache · hearing impairment · hepatic failure · hyperuricaemia · iron deficiency anaemia · renal impairment · sodium retention · vertigo

**Overdose** The main features of salicylate poisoning are hyperventilation, tinnitus, deafness, vasodilatation, and sweating. Coma is uncommon but indicates very severe poisoning.

For specific details on the management of poisoning, see Aspirin, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Aspirin is **contra-indicated** in history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria, or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.
- **PREGNANCY** Use antiplatelet doses with caution during third trimester; impaired platelet function and risk of haemorrhage; delayed onset and increased duration of labour with increased blood loss; avoid analgesic doses if possible in last few weeks (low doses probably not harmful); high doses may be related to intra-uterine growth restriction, teratogenic effects, closure of fetal ductus arteriosus in utero and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of newborn; kernicterus may occur in jaundiced neonates.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—possible risk of Reye's syndrome; regular use of high doses could impair platelet function and produce hypoprothrombinaemia in infant if neonatal vitamin K stores low.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment—increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; avoid in severe impairment; sodium and water retention; deterioration in renal function; increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Medicines for Children leaflet: Aspirin for prevention of blood clots [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/aspirin-prevention-blood-clots-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/aspirin-prevention-blood-clots-0)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

#### Gastro-resistant tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 25, 32

##### ▶ Aspirin (Non-proprietary)

**Aspirin 75 mg** Aspirin 75mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [P] £0.52 DT = £0.52 | 56 tablet [P] £1.04-£1.66

**Aspirin 300 mg** Aspirin 300mg gastro-resistant tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £20.34 DT = £20.34

##### ▶ Micropirin (Dexel-Pharma Ltd)

**Aspirin 75 mg** Micropirin 75mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [P] £1.45 DT = £0.52 | 56 tablet [P] £2.87

##### ▶ Nu-Seals (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Aspirin 75 mg** Nu-Seals 75 gastro-resistant tablets | 56 tablet [P] £3.12

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21, 32

##### ▶ Aspirin (Non-proprietary)

**Aspirin 75 mg** Aspirin 75mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.13 DT = £1.12

**Aspirin 300 mg** Aspirin 300mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £1.12-£10.47

#### Suppository

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 32

##### ▶ Aspirin (Non-proprietary)

**Aspirin 150 mg** Aspirin 150mg suppositories | 10 suppository [P] £18.67 DT = £18.67

**Aspirin 300 mg** Aspirin 300mg suppositories | 10 suppository [P] £35.89 DT = £35.89

#### Dispersible tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13, 21, 32

##### ▶ Aspirin (Non-proprietary)

**Aspirin 75 mg** Aspirin 75mg dispersible tablets | 1000 tablet [PoM] £11.79-£18.57

**Aspirin 300 mg** Aspirin 300mg dispersible tablets | 32 tablet [PoM] £2 DT = £0.66 | 100 tablet [PoM] £2.06 DT = £2.06

##### ▶ Danamep (Ecogen Europe Ltd)

**Aspirin 75 mg** Danamep 75mg dispersible tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.50 DT = £0.33

## Dipyridamole

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Kawasaki disease (initiated under specialist supervision)

▶ BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 1 mg/kg 3 times a day

##### Prevention of thrombus formation after cardiac surgery

▶ BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 2.5 mg/kg twice daily

▶ Child 12–17 years: 100–200 mg 3 times a day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CAUTIONS** Aortic stenosis · coagulation disorders · heart failure · hypotension · left ventricular outflow obstruction · may exacerbate migraine · myasthenia gravis (risk of exacerbation)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: dipyridamole
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Angina pectoris · diarrhoea · dizziness · headache · myalgia · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · bronchospasm · haemorrhage · hot flush · hypotension · tachycardia · thrombocytopenia
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturers advise use only if essential—small amount present in milk.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Injection solution can be given orally.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Oral suspension

##### ► Dipyridamole (Non-proprietary)

**Dipyridamole 10 mg per 1 ml** Dipyridamole 50mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £39.40 DT = £39.40  
**Dipyridamole 40 mg per 1 ml** Dipyridamole 200mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £133.53 DT = £133.53

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 22

##### ► Dipyridamole (Non-proprietary)

**Dipyridamole 25 mg** Dipyridamole 25mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £9.40 DT = £9.40  
**Dipyridamole 100 mg** Dipyridamole 100mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £12.50 DT = £3.88

##### ► Persantin (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)

**Dipyridamole 100 mg** Persantin 100mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £6.30 DT = £3.88

## ANTITHROMBOTIC DRUGS > HEPARINOIDS

### Danaparoid sodium

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Thromboembolic disease in patients with history of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia**

##### ► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Initially 30 units/kg, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 1.2–2 units/kg/hour, infusion dose to be adjusted according to coagulation activity.
- Child 1 month–15 years (body-weight up to 55 kg): Initially 30 units/kg (max. per dose 1250 units), then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 1.2–2 units/kg/hour, infusion dose to be adjusted according to coagulation activity
- Child 1 month–15 years (body-weight 55 kg and above): Initially 30 units/kg (max. per dose 2500 units), then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 1.2–2 units/kg/hour, infusion dose to be adjusted according to coagulation activity
- Child 16–17 years (body-weight up to 55 kg): Initially 1250 units, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 400 units/hour for 2 hours, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 300 units/hour for 2 hours, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 200 units/hour for 5 days, infusion dose to be adjusted according to coagulation activity
- Child 16–17 years (body-weight 55–90 kg): Initially 2500 units, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 400 units/hour for 2 hours, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 300 units/hour for 2 hours, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 200 units/hour for 5 days, infusion dose to be adjusted according to coagulation activity
- Child 16–17 years (body-weight 91 kg and above): Initially 3750 units, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 400 units/hour for 2 hours, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 300 units/hour for 2 hours, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 200 units/hour for 5 days, infusion dose to be adjusted according to coagulation activity

#### ● UNLICENSED USE Not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active peptic ulcer (unless this is the reason for operation) · acute bacterial endocarditis · diabetic retinopathy · epidural anaesthesia (with treatment doses) · haemophilia and other haemorrhagic disorders · recent cerebral haemorrhage · severe hypertension · spinal

anaesthesia (with treatment doses) · thrombocytopenia (unless patient has heparin-induced thrombocytopenia)

- **CAUTIONS** Antibodies to heparins (risk of antibody-induced thrombocytopenia) · body-weight over 90 kg · recent bleeding · risk of bleeding
  - **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: danaparoid
  - **SIDE-EFFECTS**
    - **Common or very common** Haemorrhage · heparin-induced thrombocytopenia · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia
  - **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—limited information available but not known to be harmful.
  - **BREAST FEEDING** Amount probably too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid.
  - **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Caution in moderate impairment (increased risk of bleeding). Avoid in severe impairment unless patient has heparin-induced thrombocytopenia and no alternative available.
  - **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in moderate impairment. Avoid in severe impairment unless patient has heparin-induced thrombocytopenia and no alternative available.
- Monitoring** Increased risk of bleeding in renal impairment, monitor anti-Factor Xa activity.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor anti factor Xa activity in patients with body-weight over 90 kg.
  - **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** *For intravenous infusion*, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

##### ► Danaparoid sodium (Non-proprietary)

**Danaparoid sodium 1250 unit per 1 ml** Danaparoid sodium 750units/0.6ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £599.99

## ANTITHROMBOTIC DRUGS > HEPARINS

### Heparins

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute bacterial endocarditis · after major trauma · epidural anaesthesia with treatment doses · haemophilia and other haemorrhagic disorders · peptic ulcer · recent cerebral haemorrhage · recent surgery to eye · recent surgery to nervous system · severe hypertension · spinal anaesthesia with treatment doses · thrombocytopenia (including history of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia)
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Haemorrhage · heparin-induced thrombocytopenia · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · thrombocytosis
  - **Uncommon** CNS haemorrhage
  - **Rare or very rare** Alopecia · hyperkalaemia · osteoporosis · priapism
- **Frequency not known** Hypoadosteronism

##### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Haemorrhage** If haemorrhage occurs it is usually sufficient to withdraw unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin, but if rapid reversal of the effects of the heparin is required, protamine sulfate is a specific antidote (but only partially reverses the effects of low molecular weight heparins).

**Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia** Clinically important heparin-induced thrombocytopenia is immune-mediated and can be complicated by thrombosis. Signs of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia include a 30% reduction of platelet count, thrombosis, or skin allergy. If heparin-induced thrombocytopenia is strongly suspected or confirmed, the heparin should be stopped and an



alternative anticoagulant, such as danaparoid, should be given. Ensure platelet counts return to normal range in those who require warfarin.

**Hyperkalaemia** Inhibition of aldosterone secretion by unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin can result in hyperkalaemia; patients with diabetes mellitus, chronic renal failure, acidosis, raised plasma potassium or those taking potassium-sparing drugs seem to be more susceptible. The risk appears to increase with duration of therapy.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Hypersensitivity to unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia Platelet counts should be measured just before treatment with unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin, and regular monitoring of platelet counts may be required if given for longer than 4 days. See the British Society for Haematology's Guidelines on the diagnosis and management of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: second edition. *Br J Haematol* 2012; **159**: 528–540.
  - ▶ Hyperkalaemia Plasma-potassium concentration should be measured in patients at risk of hyperkalaemia before starting the heparin and monitored regularly thereafter, particularly if treatment is to be continued for longer than 7 days.

P 93

## Dalteparin sodium

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Treatment of thrombotic episodes

##### ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: 100 units/kg twice daily.
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 100 units/kg twice daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 200 units/kg once daily (max. per dose 18 000 units); reduced to 100 units/kg twice daily, dose reduced if increased risk of bleeding

#### Treatment of venous thromboembolism in pregnancy

##### ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 5000 units twice daily, use body-weight in early pregnancy to calculate the dose
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight 50–69 kg): 6000 units twice daily, use body-weight in early pregnancy to calculate the dose
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight 70–89 kg): 8000 units twice daily, use body-weight in early pregnancy to calculate the dose
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight 90 kg and above): 10 000 units twice daily, use body-weight in early pregnancy to calculate the dose

#### Prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes.

##### ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: 100 units/kg once daily.
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 100 units/kg once daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2500–5000 units once daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for treatment of venous thromboembolism in pregnancy.  
Not licensed for use in children.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: low molecular-weight heparins
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful, low molecular weight heparins do not cross the placenta. Multidose vial contains benzyl alcohol—manufacturer advises avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Due to the relatively high molecular weight and inactivation in the gastro-intestinal tract, passage into breast-milk and absorption by the nursing

infant are likely to be negligible, however manufacturers advise avoid.

### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Dose reduction may be required in severe impairment—risk of bleeding may be increased.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

Use of unfractionated heparin may be preferable.

**Dose adjustments** Risk of bleeding may be increased—dose reduction may be required.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

Routine monitoring of anti-Factor Xa activity is not usually required during treatment with dalteparin, except in neonates; monitoring may also be necessary in severely ill children and those with renal or hepatic impairment.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

##### ▶ Dalteparin sodium (Non-proprietary)

**Dalteparin sodium 10000 unit per 1 ml** Dalteparin sodium 10,000units/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] DT = £28.23

**Dalteparin sodium 12500 unit per 1 ml** Dalteparin sodium 2,500units/0.2ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] DT = £18.58

**Dalteparin sodium 25000 unit per 1 ml** Dalteparin sodium 7,500units/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] DT = £42.34

Dalteparin sodium 12,500units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] DT = £35.29

Dalteparin sodium 5,000units/0.2ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] DT = £28.23

Dalteparin sodium 15,000units/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] DT = £42.34

Dalteparin sodium 10,000units/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] DT = £28.23

Dalteparin sodium 18,000units/0.72ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] DT = £50.82

##### ▶ Fragmin (Pfizer Ltd)

**Dalteparin sodium 2500 unit per 1 ml** Fragmin 10,000units/4ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £51.22

**Dalteparin sodium 10000 unit per 1 ml** Fragmin 10,000units/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £28.23 DT = £28.23

Fragmin 10,000units/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £51.22

**Dalteparin sodium 12500 unit per 1 ml** Fragmin 2,500units/0.2ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £18.58 DT = £18.58

**Dalteparin sodium 25000 unit per 1 ml** Fragmin 18,000units/0.72ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £50.82 DT = £50.82

Fragmin 15,000units/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £42.34 DT = £42.34

Fragmin 5,000units/0.2ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £28.23 DT = £28.23

Fragmin 12,500units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £35.29 DT = £35.29

Fragmin 7,500units/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £42.34 DT = £42.34

Fragmin 100,000units/4ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £48.66

Fragmin 10,000units/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £28.23 DT = £28.23

P 93

## Enoxaparin sodium

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Treatment of thrombotic episodes

##### ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: 1.5–2 mg/kg twice daily.

- ▶ Child 1 month: 1.5 mg/kg twice daily
- ▶ Child 2 months–17 years: 1 mg/kg twice daily



**Treatment of venous thromboembolism in pregnancy**

## ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 12–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 40 mg twice daily, dose based on early pregnancy body-weight
- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 50–69 kg): 60 mg twice daily, dose based on early pregnancy body-weight
- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 70–89 kg): 80 mg twice daily, dose based on early pregnancy body-weight
- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 90 kg and above): 100 mg twice daily, dose based on early pregnancy body-weight

**Prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes**

## ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: 750 micrograms/kg twice daily.
- Child 1 month: 750 micrograms/kg twice daily
- Child 2 months–17 years: 500 micrograms/kg twice daily; maximum 40 mg per day

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- 1 mg equivalent to 100 units.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for treatment of venous thromboembolism in pregnancy.  
Not licensed for use in children.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: low molecular-weight heparins
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Hypersensitivity
  - **Frequently not known** Cutaneous vasculitis · eosinophilia · haemorrhagic anaemia · headache · hepatic disorders
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful, low molecular weight heparins do not cross the placenta. Multidose vial contains benzyl alcohol—avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Due to the relatively high molecular weight of enoxaparin and inactivation in the gastrointestinal tract, passage into breast-milk and absorption by the nursing infant are likely to be negligible; however manufacturers advise avoid.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose in severe impairment—risk of bleeding may be increased.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Risk of bleeding increased; use of unfractionated heparin may be preferable. Consult specialist sources.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Routine monitoring of anti-Factor Xa activity is not usually required during treatment with enoxaparin, except in neonates; monitoring may also be necessary in severely ill children and those with renal or hepatic impairment.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Enoxaparin sodium is a biological medicine. Biological medicines must be prescribed and dispensed by brand name, see *Biological medicines* and *Biosimilar medicines*, under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

► **Clexane** (Sanofi)

**Enoxaparin sodium 100 mg per 1 ml** Clexane 60mg/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £39.26 DT = £39.26

Clexane 300mg/3ml solution for injection multidose vials | 1 vial [PoM] £21.33 DT = £21.33

Clexane 80mg/0.8ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £55.13 DT = £55.13

Clexane 40mg/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £30.27 DT = £30.27

Clexane 100mg/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £72.30 DT = £72.30

Clexane 20mg/0.2ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £20.86 DT = £20.86

**Enoxaparin sodium 150 mg per 1 ml** Clexane Forte 120mg/0.8ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £87.93 DT = £87.93

Clexane Forte 150mg/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £99.91 DT = £99.91

► **Enoxaparin Becat** (ROVI Biotech Ltd) ▼

**Enoxaparin sodium 100 mg per 1 ml** Enoxaparin Becat 40mg/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £30.27 DT = £30.27

Enoxaparin Becat 60mg/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £39.26 DT = £39.26

Enoxaparin Becat 100mg/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £72.30 DT = £72.30

Enoxaparin Becat 20mg/0.2ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £20.86 DT = £20.86

Enoxaparin Becat 80mg/0.8ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £55.13 DT = £55.13

► **Inhixa** (Tehdow Pharma England Ltd) ▼

**Enoxaparin sodium 100 mg per 1 ml** Inhixa 40mg/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £24.22 DT = £30.27

Inhixa 80mg/0.8ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £44.10 DT = £55.13

Inhixa 60mg/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £31.41 DT = £39.26

Inhixa 100mg/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £57.84 DT = £72.30

Inhixa 20mg/0.2ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.69 DT = £20.86

P 93

**Heparin (unfractionated)**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Prevention of clotting in extracorporeal circuits**

- TO THE DEVICE AS A FLUSH
- Child: (consult product literature)

**Maintenance of neonatal umbilical arterial catheter**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: 0.5 unit/hour.

**Treatment of thrombotic episodes**

- INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate up to 35 weeks corrected gestational age: Initially 50 units/kg, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 25 units/kg/hour, adjusted according to APTT.

- Neonate: Initially 75 units/kg, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 25 units/kg/hour, adjusted according to APTT.

- Child 1–11 months: Initially 75 units/kg, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 25 units/kg/hour, adjusted according to APTT

- Child 1–17 years: Initially 75 units/kg, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 20 units/kg/hour, adjusted according to APTT

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child: 250 units/kg twice daily, adjusted according to APTT

**Prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes**

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child: 100 units/kg twice daily (max. per dose 5000 units), adjusted according to APTT

**Maintenance of cardiac shunts and critical stents**

- TO THE DEVICE AS A FLUSH
- Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Check product literature for licensed use in children.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: heparin (unfractionated)

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Adrenal insufficiency · hypokalaemia · rebound hyperlipidaemia

- **PREGNANCY** Does not cross the placenta; maternal osteoporosis reported after prolonged use; multidose vials may contain benzyl alcohol—some manufacturers advise avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Not excreted into milk due to high molecular weight.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Risk of bleeding increased—reduce dose or avoid in severe impairment (including oesophageal varices).
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Risk of bleeding increased in severe impairment—dose may need to be reduced.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium chloride 0.9%.
  - ▶ In neonates For *maintenance of neonatal umbilical arterial catheter*, dilute 50 units to a final volume of 50 mL with Sodium Chloride 0.45% or use ready-made bag containing 500 units in 500 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9%; infuse at 0.5 mL/hour. For *neonatal intensive care (treatment of thrombosis)*, dilute 1250 units/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 1 mL/hour provides a dose of 25 units/kg/hour.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection, solution for infusion

#### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

##### ▶ Heparin (unfractionated) (Non-proprietary)

**Heparin sodium 1000 unit per 1 ml** Heparin sodium 1,000units/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £14.85

Heparin sodium 5,000units/5ml solution for injection vials |

10 vial [PoM] £16.50–£37.41

Heparin sodium 20,000units/20ml solution for injection ampoules |

10 ampoule [PoM] £70.80–£70.88

Heparin sodium 5,000units/5ml solution for injection ampoules |

10 ampoule [PoM] £37.45–£37.47

Heparin sodium 10,000units/10ml solution for injection ampoules |

10 ampoule [PoM] £64.50–£64.59

**Heparin sodium 5000 unit per 1 ml** Heparin sodium 5,000units/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £29.04

Heparin sodium 25,000units/5ml solution for injection vials |

10 vial [PoM] £45.00–£84.60

Heparin sodium 25,000units/5ml solution for injection ampoules |

10 ampoule [PoM] £75.78

**Heparin calcium 25000 unit per 1 ml** Heparin calcium

5,000units/0.2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM]

£44.70

**Heparin sodium 25000 unit per 1 ml** Heparin sodium

25,000units/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM]

£76.95

Heparin sodium 5,000units/0.2ml solution for injection ampoules |

10 ampoule [PoM] £37.35

#### Form unstated

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

##### ▶ Heparin (unfractionated) (Non-proprietary)

**Heparin sodium 10 unit per 1 ml** Heparin sodium 50units/5ml

patency solution ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £14.96 DT = £14.96

Heparin sodium 50units/5ml I.V. flush solution ampoules |

10 ampoule [PoM] £14.96 DT = £14.96

**Heparin sodium 100 unit per 1 ml** Heparin sodium 200units/2ml I.V.

flush solution ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £15.68 DT = £15.68

Heparin sodium 200units/2ml patency solution ampoules |

10 ampoule [PoM] £15.68 DT = £15.68

#### Infusion

##### ▶ Heparin (unfractionated) (Non-proprietary)

**Heparin sodium 2 unit per 1 ml** Heparin sodium 1,000units/500ml

infusion Viaflex bags | 1 bag [PoM] [S]

Heparin sodium 2,000units/1litre infusion Viaflex bags |

1 bag [PoM] [S]

**Heparin sodium 5 unit per 1 ml** Heparin sodium 5,000units/1litre

infusion Viaflex bags | 1 bag [PoM] [S]

## Tinzaparin sodium

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Treatment of thrombotic episodes

##### ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1 month: 275 units/kg once daily
- ▶ Child 2–11 months: 250 units/kg once daily
- ▶ Child 1–4 years: 240 units/kg once daily
- ▶ Child 5–9 years: 200 units/kg once daily
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 175 units/kg once daily

#### Treatment of venous thromboembolism in pregnancy

##### ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 175 units/kg once daily, dose based on early pregnancy body-weight

#### Prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes

##### ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child: 50 units/kg once daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for the treatment of venous thromboembolism in pregnancy.  
Not licensed for use in children.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: low molecular-weight heparins

### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common Anaemia

- ▶ Rare or very rare Angioedema • Stevens-Johnson syndrome

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful, low molecular weight heparins do not cross the placenta. Vials contain benzyl alcohol—manufacturer advises avoid.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Due to the relatively high molecular weight of tinzaparin and inactivation in the gastrointestinal tract, passage into breast-milk and absorption by the nursing infant are likely to be negligible; however manufacturer advise avoid.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Risk of bleeding may be increased. Unfractionated heparin may be preferable. Manufacturer advises caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Monitoring** In renal impairment monitoring of anti-Factor Xa may be required if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Routine monitoring of anti-Factor Xa activity is not usually required except in neonates; monitoring may also be necessary in severely ill children and those with renal or hepatic impairment.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, sulfites

##### ▶ Tinzaparin sodium (Non-proprietary)

**Tinzaparin sodium 10000 unit per 1 ml** Tinzaparin sodium 3,500units/0.35ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £27.71 DT = £27.71

Tinzaparin sodium 4,500units/0.45ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £35.63 DT = £35.63

Tinzaparin sodium 2,500units/0.25ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £19.80 DT = £19.80

##### ▶ Innohep (LEO Pharma)

**Tinzaparin sodium 10000 unit per 1 ml** Innohep 20,000units/2ml solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £105.66 DT = £105.66

**Tinzaparin sodium 20000 unit per 1 ml** Innohep 18,000units/0.9ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £64.25 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM]

£107.08 DT = £107.08

Innohep 8,000units/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes |

6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £28.56 | 10 pre-filled

disposable injection [PoM] £47.60 DT = £47.60

Innohep 40,000units/2ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM]

£34.20 DT = £34.20

Innohep 16,000units/0.8ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £57.12 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £95.20 DT = £95.20  
 Innohep 12,000units/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £42.84 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £71.40 DT = £71.40  
 Innohep 14,000units/0.7ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £49.98 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £83.30 DT = £83.30  
 Innohep 10,000units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £35.70 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £59.50 DT = £59.50

## ANTITHROMBOTIC DRUGS > VITAMIN K ANTAGONISTS

### Vitamin K antagonists

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

**MHRA/CHM ADVICE: DIRECT-ACTING ANTIVIRALS TO TREAT CHRONIC HEPATITIS C: RISK OF INTERACTION WITH VITAMIN K ANTAGONISTS AND CHANGES IN INR (JANUARY 2017)**

A EU-wide review has identified that changes in liver function, secondary to hepatitis C treatment with direct-acting antivirals, may affect the efficacy of vitamin K antagonists; the MHRA has advised that INR should be monitored closely in patients receiving concomitant treatment.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid use within 48 hours postpartum · haemorrhagic stroke · significant bleeding
- **CAUTIONS** Bacterial endocarditis (use only if warfarin otherwise indicated) · conditions in which risk of bleeding is increased · history of gastrointestinal bleeding · hyperthyroidism · hypothyroidism · peptic ulcer · postpartum (delay warfarin until risk of haemorrhage is low—usually 5–7 days after delivery) · recent ischaemic stroke · recent surgery · uncontrolled hypertension
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Haemorrhage
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Alopecia · appetite decreased · hepatic disorders · nausea · skin necrosis haemorrhagic (increased risk in patients with protein C or protein S deficiency) · vasculitis · vomiting
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · albuminuria · blue toe syndrome · calciphylaxis · CNS haemorrhage · diarrhoea · eosinophilia · fever · haemothorax · increased leucocytes · kidney injury · leucopenia · lymphadenopathy · pancreatitis · pancytopenia · renal tubular necrosis · skin necrosis (increased risk in patients with protein C or protein S deficiency) · skin reactions · taste altered
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Women of child-bearing age should be warned of the danger of teratogenicity.
- **PREGNANCY** Should not be given in the first trimester of pregnancy. Warfarin, acenocoumarol, and phenindione cross the placenta with risk of congenital malformations, and placental, fetal, or neonatal haemorrhage, especially during the last few weeks of pregnancy and at delivery. Therefore, if at all possible, they should be avoided in pregnancy, especially in the first and third trimesters (difficult decisions may have to be made, particularly in women with prosthetic heart valves, atrial fibrillation, or with a history of recurrent venous thrombosis or pulmonary embolism). Stopping these drugs before the sixth week of gestation may largely avoid the risk of fetal abnormality.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ The base-line prothrombin time should be determined but the initial dose should not be delayed whilst awaiting the result.

- ▶ It is essential that the INR be determined daily or on alternate days in early days of treatment, *then* at longer intervals (depending on response), *then* up to every 12 weeks.
- ▶ Change in patient's clinical condition, particularly associated with liver disease, intercurrent illness, or drug administration, necessitates more frequent testing.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Anticoagulant treatment booklets should be issued to all patients or their carers; these booklets include advice for patients on anticoagulant treatment, an alert card to be carried by the patient at all times, and a section for recording of INR results and dosage information. In **England, Wales, and Northern Ireland**, they are available for purchase from: 3M Security Print and Systems Limited  
 Gorse Street, Chadderton  
 Oldham  
 OL9 9QH  
 Tel: 0845 610 1112  
 GP practices can obtain supplies through their Local Area Team stores. NHS Trusts can order supplies from [www.nhsforms.co.uk](http://www.nhsforms.co.uk) or by emailing [nhsforms@spsl.uk.com](mailto:nhsforms@spsl.uk.com).  
 In **Scotland**, treatment booklets and starter information packs can be obtained by emailing stockorders.DPPAS@apsgroup.co.uk or by fax on (0131) 6299 967  
 Electronic copies of the booklets and further advice are also available at [www.npsa.nhs.uk/nrls/alerts-and-directives/alerts/anticoagulant](http://www.npsa.nhs.uk/nrls/alerts-and-directives/alerts/anticoagulant).

above

### Warfarin sodium

10-Oct-2016

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Treatment and prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes (induction)

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate** (initiated under specialist supervision): Initially 200 micrograms/kg for 1 dose on day 1, then reduced to 100 micrograms/kg once daily for the following 3 days, subsequent doses dependent on INR levels, induction dose may need to be altered according to condition (e.g. abnormal liver function tests, cardiac failure), concomitant interacting drugs, and if baseline INR above 1.3.

- ▶ **Child:** Initially 200 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 10 mg) for 1 dose on day 1, then reduced to 100 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 5 mg) for the following 3 days, subsequent doses adjusted according to INR levels, induction dose may need to be altered according to condition (e.g. abnormal liver function tests, cardiac failure), concomitant interacting drugs, and if baseline INR above 1.3

##### Treatment and prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes following induction dose (if INR still below 1.4)

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate** (under expert supervision): 200 micrograms/kg once daily.
- ▶ **Child:** 200 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 10 mg)

##### Treatment and prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes following induction dose (if INR above 3.0)

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate** (under expert supervision): 50 micrograms/kg once daily.
- ▶ **Child:** 50 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 2.5 mg)

continued →

**Treatment and prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes following induction dose (if INR above 3.5)**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate (under expert supervision): Dose to be omitted.

► Child: Dose to be omitted

**Treatment and prophylaxis of thrombotic episodes (usual maintenance)**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate (under expert supervision): Maintenance 100–300 micrograms/kg once daily, doses up to 400 micrograms/kg once daily may be required especially if bottle fed, to be adjusted according to INR.

► Child: Maintenance 100–300 micrograms/kg once daily, doses up to 400 micrograms/kg once daily may be required especially if bottle fed, to be adjusted according to INR

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****MHRA/CHM ADVICE: WARFARIN: REPORTS OF CALCIPHYLAXIS (JULY 2016)**

An EU-wide review has concluded that on rare occasions, warfarin use may lead to calciphylaxis—patients should be advised to consult their doctor if they develop a painful skin rash; if calciphylaxis is diagnosed, appropriate treatment should be started and consideration should be given to stopping treatment with warfarin. The MHRA has advised that calciphylaxis is most commonly observed in patients with known risk factors such as end-stage renal disease, however cases have also been reported in patients with normal renal function.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: coumarins
- **PREGNANCY** Babies of mothers taking warfarin at the time of delivery need to be offered immediate prophylaxis with intramuscular phytonadione (vitamin K<sub>1</sub>).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Not present in milk in significant amounts and appears safe. Risk of haemorrhage which is increased by vitamin K deficiency.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment, especially if prothrombin time is already prolonged.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in mild to moderate impairment.  
**Monitoring** In severe renal impairment, monitor INR more frequently.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**  
Dietary differences Infant formula is supplemented with vitamin K, which makes formula-fed infants resistant to warfarin; they may therefore need higher doses. In contrast breast milk contains low concentrations of vitamin K making breast-fed infants more sensitive to warfarin.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Anticoagulant card to be provided.  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Warfarin for the treatment and prevention of thrombosis [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/warfarin-treatment-and-prevention-thrombosis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/warfarin-treatment-and-prevention-thrombosis)

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

► **Warfarin sodium (Non-proprietary)**

**Warfarin sodium 1 mg per 1 ml** Warfarin 1mg/ml oral suspension  
sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml **[PoM]** £108.00 DT = £108.00

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

► **Warfarin sodium (Non-proprietary)**

**Warfarin sodium 500 microgram** Warfarin 500microgram tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £1.70 DT = £1.27

**Warfarin sodium 1 mg** Warfarin 1mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £1.16 DT = £0.33 | 500 tablet **[PoM]** £5.89

**Warfarin sodium 3 mg** Warfarin 3mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £1.20 DT = £0.37 | 500 tablet **[PoM]** £6.61

**Warfarin sodium 5 mg** Warfarin 5mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £1.29 DT = £0.42 | 500 tablet **[PoM]** £7.50

## 4 Blood pressure conditions

### 4.1 Hypertension

#### Hypertension

**Overview**

Hypertension in children and adolescents can have a substantial effect on long-term health. Possible causes of hypertension (e.g. congenital heart disease, renal disease and endocrine disorders) and the presence of any complications (e.g. left ventricular hypertrophy) should be established. Treatment should take account of contributory factors and any factors that increase the risk of cardiovascular complications.

Serious hypertension is rare in *neonates* but it can present with signs of congestive heart failure; the cause is often renal and can follow embolic arterial damage.

Children (or their parents or carers) should be given advice on lifestyle changes to reduce blood pressure or cardiovascular risk; these include weight reduction (in obese children), reduction of dietary salt, reduction of total and saturated fat, increasing exercise, increasing fruit and vegetable intake, and not smoking.

Indications for antihypertensive therapy in children include symptomatic hypertension, secondary hypertension, hypertensive target-organ damage, diabetes mellitus, persistent hypertension despite lifestyle measures, and pulmonary hypertension. The effect of antihypertensive treatment on growth and development is not known; treatment should be started only if benefits are clear.

Antihypertensive therapy should be initiated with a single drug at the lowest recommended dose; the dose can be increased until the target blood pressure is achieved. Once the highest recommended dose is reached, or sooner if the patient begins to experience side-effects, a second drug may be added if blood pressure is not controlled. If more than one drug is required, these should be given as separate products to allow dose adjustment of individual drugs, but fixed-dose combination products may be useful in adolescents if compliance is a problem.

Acceptable drug classes for use in children with hypertension include **ACE inhibitors**, **alpha-blockers**, **beta-blockers**, **calcium-channel blockers**, and **thiazide diuretics**. There is limited information on the use of **angiotensin-II receptor antagonists** in children. Diuretics and beta-blockers have a long history of safety and efficacy in children. The newer classes of antihypertensive drugs, including ACE inhibitors and calcium-channel blockers have been shown to be safe and effective in short-term studies in children. Refractory hypertension may require additional treatment with agents such as minoxidil p. 117 or clonidine hydrochloride p. 102.

**Cardiovascular risk reduction**

Aspirin p. 91 may be used to reduce the risk of cardiovascular events; however, concerns about an increased risk of bleeding and Reye's syndrome need to be considered.

A **statin** can be of benefit in older children who have a high risk of cardiovascular disease and have hypercholesterolaemia.

### Hypertension in diabetes

Hypertension can occur in type 2 diabetes and treatment prevents both macrovascular and microvascular complications. ACE inhibitors may be considered in children with diabetes and microalbuminaemia or proteinuric renal disease. Beta-blockers are best avoided in children with, or at a high risk of developing, diabetes, especially when combined with a thiazide diuretic.

### Hypertension in renal disease

ACE inhibitors may be considered in children with microalbuminuria or proteinuric renal disease. High doses of loop diuretics may be required. Specific cautions apply to the use of ACE inhibitors in renal impairment, but ACE inhibitors may be effective. Dihydropyridine calcium-channel blockers may be added.

### Hypertension in pregnancy

High blood pressure in pregnancy may usually be due to pre-existing essential hypertension or to pre-eclampsia. Methyldopa is safe in pregnancy. Beta-blockers are effective and safe in the third trimester. Modified-release preparations of nifedipine p. 109 [unlicensed] are also used for hypertension in pregnancy. Intravenous administration of labetalol hydrochloride p. 104 can be used to control hypertensive crises; alternatively hydralazine hydrochloride p. 116 can be given by the intravenous route.

### Hypertensive emergencies

Hypertensive emergencies in children may be accompanied by signs of hypertensive encephalopathy, including seizures. Controlled reduction in blood pressure over 72–96 hours is essential; rapid reduction can reduce perfusion leading to organ damage. Treatment should be initiated with intravenous drugs; once blood pressure is controlled, oral therapy can be started. It may be necessary to infuse fluids particularly during the first 12 hours to expand plasma volume should the blood pressure drop too rapidly.

Controlled reduction of blood pressure is achieved by intravenous administration of labetalol hydrochloride or sodium nitroprusside p. 118. Esmolol hydrochloride p. 106 is useful for short-term use and has a short duration of action. Nicardipine hydrochloride p. 108 can be administered as a continuous intravenous infusion for life-threatening hypertension in paediatric intensive care settings. In less severe cases, nifedipine capsules can be used.

Other antihypertensive drugs which can be given intravenously include hydralazine hydrochloride and clonidine hydrochloride.

Hypertension in acute nephritis occurs as a result of sodium and water retention; it should be treated with sodium and fluid restriction, and with furosemide p. 140; antihypertensive drugs may be added if necessary.

Also see advice on short-term management of hypertensive episodes in phaeochromocytoma.

### Phaeochromocytoma

Long-term management of phaeochromocytoma involves surgery. However, surgery should not take place until there is adequate blockade of both alpha- and beta-adrenoceptors. Alpha-blockers are used in the short-term management of hypertensive episodes in phaeochromocytoma. Once alpha blockade is established, tachycardia can be controlled by the cautious addition of a beta-blocker; a cardioselective beta-blocker is preferred. There is no nationwide consensus on the optimal drug regimen or doses used for the management of phaeochromocytoma.

Phenoxybenzamine hydrochloride p. 117, a powerful alpha-blocker, is effective in the management of phaeochromocytoma but it has many side-effects.

### Pulmonary hypertension

Only pulmonary *arterial* hypertension is currently suitable for drug treatment. Pulmonary arterial hypertension includes persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn, idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension in children, and pulmonary hypertension related to congenital heart disease and cardiac surgery.

Some types of pulmonary hypertension are treated with vasodilator antihypertensive therapy and oxygen. Diuretics may also have a role in children with right-sided heart failure.

Initial treatment of *persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn* involves the administration of **nitric oxide**; epoprostenol p. 118 can be used until nitric oxide is available. Oral sildenafil p. 120 may be helpful in less severe cases. Epoprostenol and sildenafil can cause profound systemic hypotension. In rare circumstances either tolazoline p. 121 or magnesium sulfate p. 597 can be given by intravenous infusion when nitric oxide and epoprostenol have failed.

Treatment of *idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension* is determined by acute vasodilator testing; drugs used for treatment include calcium-channel blockers (usually nifedipine), long-term intravenous epoprostenol, nebulised iloprost p. 119, bosentan p. 120, or sildenafil. Anticoagulation (usually with warfarin sodium p. 97) may also be required to prevent secondary thrombosis.

**Inhaled nitric oxide** is a potent and selective pulmonary vasodilator. It acts on cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP) resulting in smooth muscle relaxation. Inhaled nitric oxide is used in the treatment of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn, and may also be useful in other forms of arterial pulmonary hypertension. Dependency can occur with high doses and prolonged use; to avoid rebound pulmonary hypertension the drug should be withdrawn gradually, often with the aid of sildenafil p. 120.

Excess nitric oxide can cause methaemoglobinaemia; therefore, methaemoglobin concentration should be measured regularly, particularly in neonates.

Nitric oxide increases the risk of haemorrhage by inhibiting platelet aggregation, but it does not usually cause bleeding.

Epoprostenol (prostacyclin) p. 118 is a prostaglandin and a potent vasodilator. It is used in the treatment of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn, idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension, and in the acute phase following cardiac surgery. It is given by continuous 24-hour intravenous infusion.

Epoprostenol is a powerful inhibitor of platelet aggregation and there is a possible risk of haemorrhage. It is sometimes used as an antiplatelet in renal dialysis when heparins are unsuitable or contra-indicated. It can also cause serious systemic hypotension and, if withdrawn suddenly, can cause pulmonary hypertensive crisis.

Children on prolonged treatment can become tolerant to epoprostenol, and therefore require an increase in dose.

Iloprost p. 119 is a synthetic analogue of epoprostenol and is efficacious when nebulised in adults with pulmonary arterial hypertension, but experience in children is limited. It is more stable than epoprostenol and has a longer half-life.

Bosentan p. 120 is a dual endothelin receptor antagonist used orally in the treatment of pulmonary arterial hypertension. The concentration of endothelin, a potent vasoconstrictor, is raised in sustained pulmonary hypertension.

Sildenafil, a vasodilator developed for the treatment of erectile dysfunction, is also used for pulmonary arterial



hypertension. It is used either alone or as an adjunct to other drugs.

Sildenafil is a selective phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitor. Inhibition of this enzyme in the lungs enhances the vasodilatory effects of nitric oxide and promotes relaxation of vascular smooth muscle.

Sildenafil has also been used in pulmonary hypertension for weaning children off inhaled nitric oxide following cardiac surgery, and less successfully in idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension.

Tolazoline p. 121 is now rarely used to correct pulmonary artery vasospasm in pulmonary hypertension of the newborn as better alternatives are available. Tolazoline is an alpha-blocker and produces both pulmonary and systemic vasodilation.

## Antihypertensive drugs

### Vasodilator antihypertensive drugs

Vasodilators have a potent hypotensive effect, especially when used in combination with a beta-blocker and a thiazide. **Important:** see Hypertension (hypertensive emergencies) for a warning on the hazards of a very rapid fall in blood pressure.

Hydralazine hydrochloride p. 116 is given by mouth as an adjunct to other antihypertensives for the treatment of resistant hypertension but is rarely used; when used alone it causes tachycardia and fluid retention.

Sodium nitroprusside p. 118 is given by intravenous infusion to control severe hypertensive crisis when parenteral treatment is necessary. At low doses it reduces systemic vascular resistance and increases cardiac output; at high doses it can produce profound systemic hypotension—continuous blood pressure monitoring is therefore essential. Sodium nitroprusside may also be used to control paradoxical hypertension after surgery for coarctation of the aorta.

Minoxidil p. 117 should be reserved for the treatment of severe hypertension resistant to other drugs. Vasodilation is accompanied by increased cardiac output and tachycardia and children develop fluid retention. For this reason the addition of a beta-blocker and a diuretic (usually furosemide p. 140, in high dosage) are mandatory. Hypertrichosis is troublesome and renders this drug unsuitable for females.

Prazosin p. 101 and doxazosin p. 491 have alpha-blocking and vasodilator properties.

### Centrally acting antihypertensive drugs

Methyldopa, a centrally acting antihypertensive, is of little value in the management of refractory sustained hypertension in infants and children. On prolonged use it is associated with fluid retention (which may be alleviated by concomitant use of diuretics).

Methyldopa is also effective for the management of hypertension in pregnancy.

Clonidine hydrochloride p. 102 is also a centrally acting antihypertensive but has the disadvantage that sudden withdrawal may cause a hypertensive crisis. Clonidine hydrochloride is also used under specialist supervision for pain management, sedation, and opioid withdrawal, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, and Tourette syndrome.

### Adrenergic neurone blocking drugs

Adrenergic neurone blocking drugs prevent the release of noradrenaline from postganglionic adrenergic neurones. These drugs do not control supine blood pressure and may cause postural hypotension. For this reason they have largely fallen from use in adults and are rarely used in children.

### Alpha-adrenoceptor blocking drugs

Doxazosin and prazosin have post-synaptic alpha-blocking and vasodilator properties and rarely cause tachycardia. They can, however, reduce blood pressure rapidly after the first dose and should be introduced with caution.

Alpha-blockers can be used with other antihypertensive drugs in the treatment of resistant hypertension.

## Drugs affecting the renin-angiotensin system

### Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors

Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACE inhibitors) inhibit the conversion of angiotensin I to angiotensin II. The main indications of ACE inhibitors in children are shown below. In infants and young children, captopril p. 112 is often considered first.

#### Initiation under specialist supervision

Treatment with ACE inhibitors should be initiated under specialist supervision and with careful clinical monitoring in children.

#### Heart failure

ACE inhibitors have a valuable role in all grades of heart failure, usually combined with a loop diuretic. Potassium supplements and potassium-sparing diuretics should be discontinued before introducing an ACE inhibitor because of the risk of hyperkalaemia. Profound first-dose hypotension can occur when ACE inhibitors are introduced to children with heart failure who are already taking a high dose of a loop diuretic. Temporary withdrawal of the loop diuretic reduces the risk, but can cause severe rebound pulmonary oedema.

#### Hypertension

ACE inhibitors may be considered for hypertension when thiazides and beta-blockers are contra-indicated, not tolerated, or fail to control blood pressure; they may be considered for hypertension in children with type 1 diabetes with nephropathy. ACE inhibitors can reduce blood pressure very rapidly in some patients particularly in those receiving diuretic therapy.

#### Diabetic nephropathy

ACE inhibitors also have a role in the management of diabetic nephropathy.

#### Renal effects

Renal function and electrolytes should be checked before starting ACE inhibitors (or increasing the dose) and monitored during treatment (more frequently if features mentioned below are present). Hyperkalaemia and other side-effects of ACE inhibitors are more common in children with impaired renal function and the dose may need to be reduced.

Concomitant treatment with NSAIDs increases the risk of renal damage, and potassium-sparing diuretics (or potassium-containing salt substitutes) increase the risk of hyperkalaemia.

In children with severe bilateral renal artery stenosis (or severe stenosis of the artery supplying a single functioning kidney), ACE inhibitors reduce or abolish glomerular filtration and are likely to cause severe and progressive renal failure. They are therefore contra-indicated in children known to have these forms of critical renovascular disease.

ACE inhibitor treatment is unlikely to have an adverse effect on overall renal function in children with severe unilateral renal artery stenosis and a normal contralateral kidney, but glomerular filtration is likely to be reduced (or even abolished) in the affected kidney and the long-term consequences are unknown.



ACE inhibitors are therefore best avoided in those with known or suspected renovascular disease, unless the blood pressure cannot be controlled by other drugs. If they are used in these circumstances renal function needs to be monitored.

ACE inhibitors should also be used with particular caution in children who may have undiagnosed and clinically silent renovascular disease. ACE inhibitors are useful for the management of hypertension and proteinuria in children with nephritis. They are thought to have a beneficial effect by reducing intra-glomerular hypertension and protecting the glomerular capillaries and membrane.

#### ACE inhibitors in combination with other drugs *Concomitant diuretics*

ACE inhibitors can cause a very rapid fall in blood pressure in volume-depleted children; treatment should therefore be initiated with very low doses. In some children the diuretic dose may need to be reduced or the diuretic discontinued at least 24 hours beforehand (may not be possible in heart failure—risk of pulmonary oedema). If high-dose diuretic therapy cannot be stopped, close observation is recommended after administration of the first dose of ACE inhibitor, for at least 2 hours or until the blood pressure has stabilised.

#### Angiotensin-II receptor antagonists

Candesartan cilexetil p. 115, losartan potassium p. 115 and valsartan p. 116 are specific angiotensin-II receptor antagonists with many properties similar to those of the ACE inhibitors. However, unlike ACE inhibitors, they do not inhibit the breakdown of bradykinin and other kinins, and thus are less likely to cause the persistent dry cough which can complicate ACE inhibitor therapy. They are therefore a useful alternative for children who have to discontinue an ACE inhibitor because of persistent cough.

Candesartan cilexetil, losartan potassium or valsartan can be used as an alternative to an ACE inhibitor in the management of hypertension.

#### Renal effects

Angiotensin-II receptor antagonists should be used with caution in renal artery stenosis (see also Renal effects under ACE Inhibitors, above).

#### Neonates

The neonatal response to treatment with ACE inhibitors is very variable, and some neonates develop profound hypotension with even small doses; a test-dose should be used initially and increased cautiously. Adverse effects such as apnoea, seizures, renal failure, and severe unpredictable hypotension are very common in the first month of life and is therefore recommended that ACE inhibitors are avoided whenever possible, particularly in preterm neonates.

**Other drugs used for Hypertension** Chlortalidon, p. 142 · Diazoxide p. 466

### ALPHA-ADRENOCEPTOR BLOCKERS

#### Prazosin

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Hypertension

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 10–15 micrograms/kg 2–4 times a day, initial dose to be taken at bedtime, then increased to 500 micrograms/kg daily in divided doses, dose to be increased gradually; maximum 20 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 500 micrograms 2–3 times a day for 3–7 days, initial dose to be taken at bedtime,

then increased to 1 mg 2–3 times a day for a further 3–7 days, then increased if necessary up to 20 mg daily in divided doses, dose should be increased gradually

##### **Congestive heart failure (rarely used)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years: 5 micrograms/kg twice daily, initial dose to be taken at bedtime, then increased to 100 micrograms/kg daily in divided doses, doses should be increased gradually
- Child 12–17 years: 500 micrograms 2–4 times a day, initial dose to be taken at bedtime, then increased to 4 mg daily in divided doses; maintenance 4–20 mg daily in divided doses

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 12 years.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of micturition syncope · history of postural hypotension · not recommended for congestive heart failure due to mechanical obstruction (e.g. aortic stenosis)
- **CAUTIONS** Cataract surgery (risk of intra-operative floppy iris syndrome) · first dose hypotension
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: alpha blockers
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Asthenia · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dyspnoea · headache · nasal congestion · nausea · nervousness · oedema · palpitations · postural hypotension · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · syncope · urinary disorders · vertigo · vision blurred · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Angina pectoris · arrhythmias · arthralgia · epistaxis · eye pain · eye redness · gastrointestinal discomfort · hyperhidrosis · paraesthesia · sleep disorders · tinnitus
  - **Rare or very rare** Alopecia · fever · flushing · gynaecomastia · hallucination · hepatic function abnormal · pain · pancreatitis · vasculitis
- **PREGNANCY** No evidence of teratogenicity; manufacturers advise use only when potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk, amount probably too small to be harmful; manufacturer advises use with caution.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments** Start with low doses and adjust according to response.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments** Start with low doses in moderate to severe impairment; increase with caution.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For administration by mouth, tablets may be dispersed in water.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**
  - First dose effect** First dose may cause collapse due to hypotensive effect (therefore should be taken on retiring to bed).
  - Driving and skilled tasks** May affect performance of skilled tasks e.g. driving.

##### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, oral suspension, oral solution

##### **Tablet**

##### ► **Minipress (Imported (Australia))**

**Prazosin (as Prazosin hydrochloride) 2 mg** Minipress 2mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] 

**Prazosin (as Prazosin hydrochloride) 5 mg** Minipress 5mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] 

##### ► **Hypovase (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Prazosin (as Prazosin hydrochloride) 500 microgram** Hypovase 500microgram tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £2.69 DT = £2.69

**Prazosin (as Prazosin hydrochloride) 1 mg** Hypovase 1mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £3.46 DT = £3.46

## ANTIHYPERTENSIVES, CENTRALLY ACTING

## Clonidine hydrochloride

01-Jun-2017

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Severe hypertension**

## ► BY MOUTH

Child 2–17 years: Initially 0.5–1 microgram/kg 3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 25 micrograms/kg daily in divided doses, increase dose gradually; maximum 1.2 mg per day

## ► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

Child 2–17 years: 2–6 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 300 micrograms) for 1 dose

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Severe bradyarrhythmia secondary to second- or third-degree AV block or sick sinus syndrome
- **CAUTIONS** Cerebrovascular disease · constipation · heart failure · history of depression · mild to moderate bradyarrhythmia · polyneuropathy · Raynaud's syndrome or other occlusive peripheral vascular disease
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: clonidine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Constipation · depression · dizziness · dry mouth · fatigue · headache · nausea · postural hypotension · salivary gland pain · sedation · sexual dysfunction · sleep disorders · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Delusions · hallucination · malaise · paraesthesia · Raynaud's phenomenon · skin reactions
  - **Rare or very rare** Alopecia · atrioventricular block · dry eye · gynaecomastia · intestinal pseudo-obstruction · nasal dryness
  - **Frequency not known** Accommodation disorder · dry eyes · confusion
- **PREGNANCY** May lower fetal heart rate. Avoid oral use unless potential benefit outweighs risk. Avoid using injection.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—present in milk.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Must be withdrawn gradually to avoid hypertensive crisis.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - With intravenous use For *intravenous injection*, give over 10–15 minutes; compatible with Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Glucose 5%.
  - With oral use For administration *by mouth*, tablets may be crushed and dissolved in water.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**
  - **Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol may be enhanced.
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Clonidine is less suitable for prescribing.
- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 8

► **Clonidine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Clonidine hydrochloride 25 microgram** Clonidine 25microgram tablets | 112 tablet **[PoM]** £9.15 DT = £4.18

► **Catapres (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)**

**Clonidine hydrochloride 100 microgram** Catapres 100microgram tablets | 100 tablet **[PoM]** £8.04 DT = £8.04

**Solution for injection**► **Catapres (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)**

**Clonidine hydrochloride 150 microgram per 1 ml** Catapres 150micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule **[PoM]** £2.09

## BETA-ADRENOCEPTOR BLOCKERS

## Beta-adrenoceptor blocking drugs

**Overview**

Beta-adrenoceptor blocking drugs (beta-blockers) block the beta-adrenoceptors in the heart, peripheral vasculature, bronchi, pancreas, and liver.

Many beta-blockers are available but experience in children is limited to the use of only a few.

Differences between beta-blockers may affect choice. The water-soluble beta-blockers, atenolol p. 106 and sotalol hydrochloride p. 80, are less likely to enter the brain and may therefore cause less sleep disturbance and nightmares. Water-soluble beta-blockers are excreted by the kidneys and dosage reduction is often necessary in renal impairment.

Some beta-blockers, such as atenolol, have an intrinsically longer duration of action and need to be given only once daily. Carvedilol p. 125 and labetalol hydrochloride p. 104 are beta-blockers which have, in addition, an arteriolar vasodilating action and thus lower peripheral resistance. Although carvedilol and labetalol hydrochloride possess both alpha- and beta-blocking properties, these drugs have no important advantages over other beta-blockers in the treatment of hypertension.

Beta-blockers slow the heart and can depress the myocardium; they are contra-indicated in children with second- or third-degree heart block.

Beta-blockers can precipitate asthma and should usually be avoided in children with a history of asthma or bronchospasm. If there is no alternative, a child with well-controlled asthma can be treated for a co-existing condition (e.g. arrhythmia) with a cardioselective beta-blocker, which should be initiated with caution at a low dose by a specialist and the child monitored closely for adverse effects. Atenolol and metoprolol tartrate p. 107 have less effect on the beta<sub>2</sub> (bronchial) receptors and are, therefore, relatively *cardioselective*, but they are not *cardiospecific*; they have a lesser effect on airways resistance but are not free of this side-effect.

Beta-blockers are also associated with fatigue, coldness of the extremities, and sleep disturbances with nightmares (may be less common with the water-soluble beta-blockers).

Beta-blockers can affect carbohydrate metabolism causing hypoglycaemia or hyperglycaemia in children with or without diabetes; they can also interfere with metabolic and autonomic responses to hypoglycaemia thereby masking symptoms such as tachycardia. However, beta-blockers are not contra-indicated in diabetes, although the cardioselective beta-blockers (e.g. atenolol and metoprolol tartrate) may be preferred. Beta-blockers should be avoided altogether in those with frequent episodes of hypoglycaemia.

**Hypertension**

Beta-blockers are effective for reducing blood pressure, but their mode of action is not understood; they reduce cardiac output, alter baroreceptor reflex sensitivity, and block peripheral adrenoceptors. Some beta-blockers depress plasma renin secretion. It is possible that a central effect may also partly explain their mode of action. Blood pressure can usually be controlled with relatively few side-effects. In general the dose of beta-blocker does not have to be high.

Labetalol hydrochloride may be given intravenously for *hypertensive emergencies* in children; however, care is needed to avoid dangerous hypotension or beta-blockade, particularly in neonates. Esmolol hydrochloride p. 106 is also

used intravenously for the treatment of hypertension particularly in the peri-operative period.

Beta-blockers can be used to control the pulse rate in children with *phaeochromocytoma*. However, they should never be used alone as beta-blockade without concurrent alpha-blockade may lead to a hypertensive crisis; phenoxylbenzamine hydrochloride p. 117 should always be used together with the beta-blocker.

## Arrhythmias

In arrhythmias, beta-blockers act principally by attenuating the effects of the sympathetic system on automaticity and conductivity within the heart. They can be used alone or in conjunction with digoxin p. 81 to control the ventricular rate in *atrial fibrillation*. Beta-blockers are also useful in the management of *supraventricular tachycardias* and *ventricular tachycardias* particularly to prevent recurrence of the tachycardia.

Esmolol hydrochloride is a relatively cardioselective beta-blocker with a very short duration of action, used intravenously for the short-term treatment of supraventricular arrhythmias and sinus tachycardia, particularly in the peri-operative period.

Sotalol hydrochloride is a non-cardioselective beta-blocker with additional class III anti-arrhythmic activity. Atenolol and sotalol hydrochloride suppress ventricular ectopic beats and non-sustained ventricular tachycardia. However, the pro-arrhythmic effects of sotalol hydrochloride, particularly in children with sick sinus syndrome, may prolong the QT interval and induce torsade de pointes.

## Heart failure

Beta-blockers may produce benefit in heart failure by blocking sympathetic activity and the addition of a beta-blocker such as carvedilol to other treatment for heart failure may be beneficial. Treatment should be initiated by those experienced in the management of heart failure.

## Thyrotoxicosis

Beta-blockers are used in the management of *thyrotoxicosis* including neonatal thyrotoxicosis; propranolol hydrochloride p. 104 can reverse clinical symptoms within 4 days. Beta-blockers are also used for the pre-operative preparation for thyroidectomy; the thyroid gland is rendered less vascular, thus facilitating surgery.

## Other uses

In tetralogy of Fallot, esmolol hydrochloride or propranolol hydrochloride may be given intravenously in the initial management of *cyanotic spells*; propranolol hydrochloride is given by mouth for preventing cyanotic spells. If a severe cyanotic spell in a child with congenital heart disease persists despite optimal use of 100% oxygen, propranolol hydrochloride is given by intravenous infusion. If cyanosis is still present after 10 minutes, sodium bicarbonate p. 586 intravenous infusion is given in a dose to correct acidosis (or dose calculated according to arterial blood gas results); sodium bicarbonate 4.2% intravenous infusion is appropriate for a child under 1 year and sodium bicarbonate 8.4% intravenous infusion in children over 1 year. If blood-glucose concentration is less than 3 mmol/litre, glucose 10% intravenous infusion is given, followed by intravenous or intramuscular injection of morphine p. 282.

Beta-blockers are also used in the *prophylaxis of migraine*. Betaxolol p. 682, levobunolol hydrochloride p. 682, and timolol maleate p. 683 are used topically in *glaucoma*.

# Beta-adrenoceptor blockers (systemic)



- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Asthma · cardiogenic shock · hypotension · marked bradycardia · metabolic acidosis · phaeochromocytoma (apart from specific use with alpha-blockers) · second-degree AV block · severe peripheral arterial disease · sick sinus syndrome · third-degree AV block · uncontrolled heart failure

### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ **Bronchospasm** Beta-blockers, including those considered to be cardioselective, should usually be avoided in patients with a history of asthma, bronchospasm or a history of obstructive airways disease. However, when there is no alternative, a cardioselective beta-blocker can be given to these patients with caution and under specialist supervision. In such cases the risk of inducing bronchospasm should be appreciated and appropriate precautions taken.

- **CAUTIONS** Diabetes · first-degree AV block · history of obstructive airways disease (introduce cautiously) · myasthenia gravis · portal hypertension (risk of deterioration in liver function) · psoriasis · symptoms of thyrotoxicosis may be masked

### SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal discomfort · bradycardia · bronchospasm · confusion · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · dry eye (reversible on discontinuation) · dyspnoea · erectile dysfunction · fatigue · headache · heart failure · hyperglycaemia · hyperhidrosis · hypoglycaemia · hypoglycaemia masked · nausea · paraesthesia · peripheral coldness · peripheral vascular disease · postural hypotension · rash (reversible on discontinuation) · sleep disorders · syncope · visual impairment · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Atrioventricular block · dry mouth · skin reactions · urinary disorders
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Alopecia · hallucination · psoriasis exacerbated · thrombocytopenia

### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Bradycardia** With administration by intravenous injection, excessive bradycardia can occur and may be countered with intravenous injection of atropine sulfate.

**Overdose** Therapeutic overdosages with beta-blockers may cause lightheadedness, dizziness, and possibly syncope as a result of bradycardia and hypotension; heart failure may be precipitated or exacerbated. For details on the management of poisoning, see Beta-blockers, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Caution is advised in patients with a history of hypersensitivity—may increase sensitivity to allergens and result in more serious hypersensitivity response. Furthermore beta-adrenoceptor blockers may reduce response to adrenaline (epinephrine).
- **PREGNANCY** Beta-blockers may cause intra-uterine growth restriction, neonatal hypoglycaemia, and bradycardia; the risk is greater in severe hypertension.
- **BREAST FEEDING** With systemic use in the mother, infants should be monitored as there is a risk of possible toxicity due to beta-blockade. However, the amount of most beta-blockers present in milk is too small to affect infants.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor lung function (in patients with a history of obstructive airway disease).
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal.

**BETA-ADRENOCEPTOR BLOCKERS >****ALPHA- AND BETA-ADRENOCEPTOR BLOCKERS**

F 103

**Labetalol hydrochloride****• INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Hypertensive emergencies****► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

- Neonate: Initially 0.5 mg/kg/hour (max. per dose 4 mg/kg/hour), dose to be adjusted according to response at intervals of at least 15 minutes.
- Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 0.5–1 mg/kg/hour (max. per dose 3 mg/kg/hour), dose to be adjusted according to response at intervals of at least 15 minutes
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 30–120 mg/hour, dose to be adjusted according to response at intervals of at least 15 minutes

**Hypertension****► BY MOUTH**

- Child 1 month–11 years: 1–2 mg/kg 3–4 times a day
  - Child 12–17 years: Initially 50–100 mg twice daily, dose to be increased if required at intervals of 3–14 days; usual dose 200–400 mg twice daily, higher doses to be given in 3–4 divided doses; maximum 2.4 g per day
- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**
- Child 1 month–11 years: 250–500 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 20 mg) for 1 dose
  - Child 12–17 years: 50 mg, dose to be given over at least 1 minute, then 50 mg after 5 minutes if required; maximum 200 mg per course

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

- With intravenous use  
Consult local guidelines. In hypertensive encephalopathy reduce blood pressure to normotensive level over 24–48 hours (more rapid reduction may lead to cerebral infarction, blindness, and death). If child fitting, reduce blood pressure rapidly, but not to normal levels.

- **CAUTIONS** Liver damage
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta blockers, non-selective
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Drug fever · hypersensitivity · urinary disorders
  - **Rare or very rare** Hepatic disorders · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) · toxic myopathy · tremor
  - **Frequency not known** Cyanosis · hyperkalaemia · interstitial lung · lethargy · lichenoid keratosis · muscle cramps · nasal congestion · peripheral oedema · photosensitivity reaction · postural hypotension · psychosis
- **PREGNANCY** The use of labetalol in maternal hypertension is not known to be harmful, except possibly in the first trimester. If labetalol is used close to delivery, infants should be monitored for signs of alpha-blockade (as well as beta blockade).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Infants should be monitored as there is a risk of possible toxicity due to alpha-blockade (in addition to beta-blockade).
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid—severe hepatocellular injury reported.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Dose reduction may be required.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - Liver damage Severe hepatocellular damage reported after both short-term and long-term treatment. Appropriate

laboratory testing needed at first symptom of liver dysfunction and if laboratory evidence of damage (or if jaundice) labetalol should be stopped and not restarted.

- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** Interferes with laboratory tests for catecholamines.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 1 mg/mL in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride and Glucose 5%; if fluid restricted may be given undiluted, preferably through a central venous catheter. Avoid upright position during and for 3 hours after intravenous administration.
  - With oral use For administration *by mouth*, injection may be given orally with squash or juice.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Labetalol hydrochloride for hypertension [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/labetalol-hydrochloride-for-hypertension](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/labetalol-hydrochloride-for-hypertension)

**• MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Solution for injection****► Labetalol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Labetalol hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Labetalol 100mg/20ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM](#) £61.34 DT = £57.06

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 21

**► Labetalol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Labetalol hydrochloride 100 mg** Labetalol 100mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM](#) £7.21 DT = £5.73

**Labetalol hydrochloride 200 mg** Labetalol 200mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM](#) £9.97 DT = £9.48

**Labetalol hydrochloride 400 mg** Labetalol 400mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM](#) £21.12 DT = £15.41

**► Trandate (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)**

**Labetalol hydrochloride 50 mg** Trandate 50mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM](#) £3.79 DT = £3.79

**Labetalol hydrochloride 100 mg** Trandate 100mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM](#) £4.64 DT = £5.73 | 250 tablet [PoM](#) £15.62

**Labetalol hydrochloride 200 mg** Trandate 200mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM](#) £7.41 DT = £9.48 | 250 tablet [PoM](#) £24.76

**Labetalol hydrochloride 400 mg** Trandate 400mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM](#) £10.15 DT = £15.41

**BETA-ADRENOCEPTOR BLOCKERS >****NON-SELECTIVE**

F 103

**Propranolol hydrochloride**

07-Feb-2018

**• INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Hypertrophicoidism with autonomic symptoms****► BY MOUTH**

- Neonate: Initially 250–500 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours, adjusted according to response.
  - Child: Initially 250–500 micrograms/kg every 8 hours, adjusted according to response; increased if necessary up to 1 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 40 mg every 8 hours)
- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**
- Neonate: Initially 20–50 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours, adjusted according to response, to be given over 10 minutes.
  - Child: Initially 25–50 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours (max. per dose 5 mg), adjusted according to response, to be given over 10 minutes

**Thyrotoxicosis (adjunct)**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Initially 250–500 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours, adjusted according to response.
- Child: Initially 250–500 micrograms/kg every 8 hours, adjusted according to response; increased if necessary up to 1 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 40 mg every 8 hours)

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Initially 20–50 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours, adjusted according to response, to be given over 10 minutes.
- Child: Initially 25–50 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours (max. per dose 5 mg), adjusted according to response, to be given over 10 minutes

**Thyrotoxic crisis**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Initially 250–500 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours, adjusted according to response.
- Child: Initially 250–500 micrograms/kg every 8 hours, adjusted according to response; increased if necessary up to 1 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 40 mg every 8 hours)

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Initially 20–50 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours, adjusted according to response, to be given over 10 minutes.
- Child: Initially 25–50 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours (max. per dose 5 mg), adjusted according to response, to be given over 10 minutes

**Hypertension**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Initially 250 micrograms/kg 3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 2 mg/kg 3 times a day.
- Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 0.25–1 mg/kg 3 times a day, then increased to 5 mg/kg daily in divided doses, dose should be increased at weekly intervals
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 80 mg twice daily, then increased if necessary up to 160–320 mg daily, dose should be increased at weekly intervals, slow-release preparations may be used for once daily administration

**Migraine prophylaxis**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–11 years: Initially 200–500 micrograms/kg twice daily; usual dose 10–20 mg twice daily (max. per dose 2 mg/kg twice daily)
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 20–40 mg twice daily; usual dose 40–80 mg twice daily (max. per dose 120 mg); maximum 4 mg/kg per day

**Arrhythmias**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 250–500 micrograms/kg 3 times a day, adjusted according to response.
- Child: 250–500 micrograms/kg 3–4 times a day (max. per dose 1 mg/kg 4 times a day), adjusted according to response; maximum 10 mg per day
- BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Neonate: 20–50 micrograms/kg, then 20–50 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours if required, eCG monitoring required.
- Child: 25–50 micrograms/kg, then 25–50 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours if required, eCG monitoring required

**Tetralogy of Fallot**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 0.25–1 mg/kg 2–3 times a day (max. per dose 2 mg/kg 3 times a day).
- Child 1 month–11 years: 0.25–1 mg/kg 3–4 times a day, maximum dose to be given in divided doses; maximum 5 mg/kg per day
- BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Neonate: Initially 15–20 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 100 micrograms/kg), then 15–20 micrograms/kg every 12 hours if required, eCG monitoring is required with administration.
- Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 15–20 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 100 micrograms/kg), higher doses are rarely necessary, then 15–20 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours if required, eCG monitoring is required with administration

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for treatment of hypertension in children under 12 years.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****SAFETY PRACTICE**

Propranolol has been confused with prednisolone; care must be taken to ensure the correct drug is prescribed and dispensed.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta blockers, non-selective
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - Rare or very rare Memory loss · mood altered · neuromuscular dysfunction · psychosis
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments Reduce oral dose.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments Manufacturer advises caution; dose reduction may be required.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *slow intravenous injection*, give over at least 3–5 minutes; rate of administration should not exceed 1 mg/minute. May be diluted with Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Glucose 5%. Incompatible with bicarbonate.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Modified-release preparations can be used for once daily administration.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Oral solution**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

- **Propranolol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**
  - Propranolol hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml** Propranolol 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £21.67 DT = £21.59
  - Propranolol hydrochloride 2 mg per 1 ml** Propranolol 10mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £26.66 DT = £26.56
  - Propranolol hydrochloride 8 mg per 1 ml** Propranolol 40mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £34.77 DT = £34.64
  - Propranolol hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Propranolol 50mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £35.26 DT = £35.12

**Modified-release capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 25

- **Propranolol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**
  - Propranolol hydrochloride 80 mg** Propranolol 80mg modified-release capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £4.95 DT = £4.95
  - Propranolol hydrochloride 160 mg** Propranolol 160mg modified-release capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £4.88 DT = £4.88
- **Bedranol SR** (Sandoz Ltd, Almus Pharmaceuticals Ltd)
  - Propranolol hydrochloride 80 mg** Bedranol SR 80mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £4.16 DT = £4.95
  - Propranolol hydrochloride 160 mg** Bedranol SR 160mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £4.59–£5.09 DT = £4.88



- ▶ **Beta-Prograne** (Tillomed Laboratories Ltd, Actavis UK Ltd, Teva UK Ltd)  
**Propranolol hydrochloride 160 mg** Beta-Prograne 160mg modified-release capsules | 28 capsule **[PoM]** £6.11 DT = £4.88
- ▶ **Half Beta-Prograne** (Teva UK Ltd, Tillomed Laboratories Ltd, Actavis UK Ltd)  
**Propranolol hydrochloride 80 mg** Half Beta-Prograne 80mg modified-release capsules | 28 capsule **[PoM]** £4.95 DT = £4.95

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

- ▶ **Propranolol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
**Propranolol hydrochloride 10 mg** Propranolol 10mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £1.47 DT = £0.89
- Propranolol hydrochloride 40 mg** Propranolol 40mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £1.85 DT = £0.89
- Propranolol hydrochloride 80 mg** Propranolol 80mg tablets | 56 tablet **[PoM]** £9.33 DT = £1.19
- Propranolol hydrochloride 160 mg** Propranolol 160mg tablets | 56 tablet **[PoM]** £5.87 DT = £5.87

**BETA-ADRENOCEPTOR BLOCKERS > SELECTIVE**

F 103

07-Feb-2018

**Atenolol**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Hypertension**▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Neonate: 0.5–2 mg/kg once daily, dose may be given in 2 divided doses.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 0.5–2 mg/kg once daily, dose may be given in 2 divided doses, doses higher than 50 mg daily are rarely necessary

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 25–50 mg once daily, dose may be given in 2 divided doses, higher doses are rarely necessary

**Arrhythmias**▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Neonate: 0.5–2 mg/kg once daily, dose may be given in 2 divided doses.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 0.5–2 mg/kg once daily, dose may be given in 2 divided doses; maximum 100 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 50–100 mg once daily, dose may be given in 2 divided doses

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****SAFE PRACTICE**

Atenolol has been confused with amlodipine; care must be taken to ensure the correct drug is prescribed and dispensed.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta blockers, selective
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Common or very common** Gastrointestinal disorder
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Hepatic disorders · mood altered · psychosis
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Hypersensitivity · lupus-like syndrome
- **BREAST FEEDING** Water soluble beta-blockers such as atenolol are present in breast milk in greater amounts than other beta blockers.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Initially use 50% of usual dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–35 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; initially use 30–50% of usual dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Atenolol for hypertension  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/atenolol-hypertension-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/atenolol-hypertension-0)

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Oral solution**▶ **Atenolol (Non-proprietary)**

**Atenolol 5 mg per 1 mL** Atenolol 25mg/5mL oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 300 mL **[PoM]** £6.72 DT = £5.59

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

▶ **Atenolol (Non-proprietary)**

**Atenolol 25 mg** Atenolol 25mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £1.39 DT = £0.38

**Atenolol 50 mg** Atenolol 50mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £4.09 DT = £0.43

**Atenolol 100 mg** Atenolol 100mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £5.19 DT = £0.47

▶ **Tenormin** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Atenolol 50 mg** Tenormin LS 50mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £10.22 DT = £0.43

**Atenolol 100 mg** Tenormin 100mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £12.98 DT = £0.47

F 103

**Esmolol hydrochloride**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Arrhythmias | Hypertensive emergencies**▶ **INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

- ▶ Child: Loading dose 500 micrograms/kg, to be given over 1 minute, then (by intravenous infusion) maintenance 50 micrograms/kg/minute for 4 minutes (rate reduced if low blood pressure or low heart rate), if inadequate response, repeat loading dose and increase maintenance infusion, (by intravenous injection) loading dose 500 micrograms/kg, given over 1 minute, then (by intravenous infusion) maintenance 100 micrograms/kg/minute for 4 minutes, if response still inadequate, repeat loading dose and increase maintenance infusion, (by intravenous injection) loading dose 500 micrograms/kg, given over 1 minute, then (by intravenous infusion) maintenance 150 micrograms/kg/minute for 4 minutes, if response still inadequate, repeat loading dose and increase maintenance infusion, (by intravenous injection) loading dose 500 micrograms/kg, given over 1 minute, then (by intravenous infusion) maintenance 200 micrograms/kg/minute for 4 minutes, doses over 300 micrograms/kg/minute not recommended

**Tetralogy of Fallot**▶ **INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 600 micrograms/kg, dose to be given over 1–2 minutes, then (by intravenous infusion) 300–900 micrograms/kg/minute if required.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta blockers, selective

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anxiety · appetite decreased · concentration impaired · drowsiness
- ▶ **Uncommon** Chills · costochondritis · dyspepsia · fever · flushing · nasal congestion · oedema · pain · pallor · pulmonary oedema · respiratory disorders · seizure · speech disorder · taste altered · thinking abnormal
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Cardiac arrest
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · coronary vasospasm · hyperkalaemia · metabolic acidosis



- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoidance.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Give through a central venous catheter; incompatible with bicarbonate.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

###### ► **Esmolol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Esmolol hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Esmolol hydrochloride 100mg/10ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £38.95 (Hospital only)

###### ► **Brevibloc** (Baxter Healthcare Ltd)

**Esmolol hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Brevibloc Premixed 100mg/10ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £

##### Solution for infusion

###### ► **Brevibloc** (Baxter Healthcare Ltd)

**Esmolol hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Brevibloc Premixed 2.5g/250ml infusion bags | 1 bag [PoM] £89.69

F 103

## Metoprolol tartrate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Hypertension

###### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- **Child 1 month–11 years:** Initially 1 mg/kg twice daily, increased if necessary up to 8 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses (max. per dose 400 mg)
- **Child 12–17 years:** Initially 50–100 mg daily, increased if necessary to 200 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, high doses are rarely necessary; maximum 400 mg per day
- **BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- **Child 12–17 years:** 200 mg once daily

##### Arrhythmias

###### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- **Child 12–17 years:** Usual dose 50 mg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 300 mg daily in divided doses

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **INTERACTIONS** ► Appendix 1: beta blockers, selective
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Palpitations
  - **Uncommon** Chest pain · drowsiness · dystrophic skin lesion · insomnia · muscle cramps · oedema · weight increased
  - **Rare or very rare** Alertness decreased · arthritis · auditory disorder · cardiac conduction disorder · conjunctivitis · eye irritation · gangrene · hepatitis · personality disorder · rhinitis
  - **Frequency not known** Peyronie's disease · retroperitoneal fibrosis
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
- Dose adjustments** Reduce dose in severe impairment.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

###### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

###### ► **Metoprolol tartrate (Non-proprietary)**

**Metoprolol tartrate 50 mg** Metoprolol 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.00 DT = £0.69 | 56 tablet [PoM] £1.38–£1.80

**Metoprolol tartrate 100 mg** Metoprolol 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.00 DT = £0.76 | 56 tablet [PoM] £1.52–£1.78

##### Solution for injection

###### ► **Betaloc** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Metoprolol tartrate 1 mg per 1 ml** Betaloc I.V. 5mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £5.02 (Hospital only)

## CALCIUM-CHANNEL BLOCKERS

## Calcium-channel blockers

### Overview

Calcium-channel blockers differ in their predilection for the various possible sites of action and, therefore, their therapeutic effects are disparate, with much greater variation than those of beta-blockers. There are important differences between verapamil hydrochloride p. 110, diltiazem hydrochloride p. 144, and the dihydropyridine calcium-channel blockers (amlodipine p. 108, nifedipine p. 108, nifedipine p. 109, and nimodipine p. 87). Verapamil hydrochloride and diltiazem hydrochloride should usually be **avoided** in heart failure because they may further depress cardiac function and cause clinically significant deterioration.

Verapamil hydrochloride is used for the treatment of hypertension and arrhythmias. However, it is no longer first-line treatment for arrhythmias in children because it has been associated with fatal collapse especially in infants under 1 year; adenosine p. 79 is now recommended for first-line use.

Verapamil hydrochloride is a highly negatively inotropic calcium channel-blocker and it reduces cardiac output, slows the heart rate, and may impair atrioventricular conduction. It may precipitate heart failure, exacerbate conduction disorders, and cause hypotension at high doses and should **not** be used with beta-blockers. Constipation is the most common side-effect.

Nifedipine relaxes vascular smooth muscle and dilates coronary and peripheral arteries. It has more influence on vessels and less on the myocardium than does verapamil hydrochloride and unlike verapamil hydrochloride has no anti-arrhythmic activity. It rarely precipitates heart failure because any negative inotropic effect is offset by a reduction in left ventricular work. Short-acting formulations of nifedipine may be used if a modified-release preparation delivering the appropriate dose is not available or if a child is unable to swallow (a liquid preparation may be prepared using capsules). Nifedipine may also be used for the management of angina due to coronary artery disease in Kawasaki disease or progeria and in the management of Raynaud's syndrome.

Nicardipine hydrochloride has similar effects to those of nifedipine and may produce less reduction of myocardial contractility; it should only be used for the treatment of life-threatening hypertension in paediatric intensive care settings and in postoperative hypertension.

Amlodipine also resembles nifedipine and nicardipine hydrochloride in its effects and does not reduce myocardial contractility or produce clinical deterioration in heart failure. It has a longer duration of action and can be given once daily. Nifedipine and amlodipine are used for the treatment of hypertension. Side-effects associated with vasodilatation such as flushing and headache (which become less obtrusive after a few days), and ankle swelling (which may respond only partially to diuretics) are common.

Nimodipine is related to nifedipine but the smooth muscle relaxant effect preferentially acts on cerebral arteries. Its use is confined to prevention and treatment of vascular spasm following aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage.

Diltiazem hydrochloride is a peripheral vasodilator and also has mild depressor effects on the myocardium. It is used in the treatment of Raynaud's syndrome.

## Calcium-channel blockers



- **DRUG ACTION** Calcium-channel blockers (less correctly called 'calcium-antagonists') interfere with the inward displacement of calcium ions through the slow channels of active cell membranes. They influence the myocardial cells, the cells within the specialised conducting system of the heart, and the cells of vascular smooth muscle. Thus, myocardial contractility may be reduced, the formation and propagation of electrical impulses within the heart may be depressed, and coronary or systemic vascular tone may be diminished.

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Dizziness · flushing · gastrointestinal disorders · headache · nausea · palpitations · peripheral oedema · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · tachycardia · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Gingival hyperplasia

### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Overdose** Features of calcium-channel blocker poisoning include nausea, vomiting, dizziness, agitation, confusion, and coma in severe poisoning. Metabolic acidosis and hyperglycaemia may occur.

In overdose, the dihydropyridine calcium-channel blockers cause severe hypotension secondary to profound peripheral vasodilatation.

For details on the management of poisoning, see Calcium-channel blockers, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **TREATMENT CESSATION** There is some evidence that sudden withdrawal of calcium-channel blockers may be associated with an exacerbation of myocardial ischaemia.

above

07-Feb-2018

## Amlodipine

- **DRUG ACTION** Amlodipine is a dihydropyridine calcium-channel blocker.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Hypertension

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Child 1 month–11 years:** Initially 100–200 micrograms/kg once daily; increased if necessary up to 400 micrograms/kg once daily, adjusted at intervals of 1–2 weeks; maximum 10 mg per day
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years:** Initially 5 mg once daily, then increased if necessary up to 10 mg once daily, adjusted at intervals of 1–2 weeks

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Tablets from various suppliers may contain different salts (e.g. amlodipine besilate, amlodipine maleate, and amlodipine mesilate) but the strength is expressed in terms of amlodipine (base); tablets containing different salts are considered interchangeable.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 6 years.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

#### SAFE PRACTICE

Amlodipine has been confused with nimodipine and atenolol; care must be taken to ensure the correct drug is prescribed and dispensed.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Cardiogenic shock · significant aortic stenosis
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium channel blockers
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Common or very common** Asthenia · constipation · diarrhoea · drowsiness · dyspnoea · gastrointestinal

discomfort · joint disorders · muscle complaints · oedema · vision disorders

- ▶ **Uncommon** Alopecia · anxiety · arrhythmias · chest pain · cough · depression · dry mouth · gynaecomastia · hyperhidrosis · hypotension · insomnia · malaise · mood altered · pain · rhinitis · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · syncope · taste altered · tinnitus · tremor · urinary disorders · weight changes
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · confusion · hepatic disorders · hyperglycaemia · hypersensitivity · leucopenia · muscle tone increased · pancreatitis · peripheral neuropathy · photosensitivity reaction · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · thrombocytopenia · vasculitis
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Extrapyrimal symptoms · pulmonary oedema
- **PREGNANCY** No information available—manufacturer advises avoid, but risk to fetus should be balanced against risk of uncontrolled maternal hypertension.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** May need dose reduction—half-life prolonged.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets may be dispersed in water.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Amlodipine for hypertension  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/amlodipine-for-hypertension](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/amlodipine-for-hypertension)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Oral solution

##### ▶ Amlodipine (Non-proprietary)

**Amlodipine 1 mg per 1 ml** Amlodipine 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £75.76 DT = £75.76  
**Amlodipine 2 mg per 1 ml** Amlodipine 10mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £115.73 DT = £115.73

#### Tablet

##### ▶ Amlodipine (Non-proprietary)

**Amlodipine 5 mg** Amlodipine 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.99 DT = £1.43

**Amlodipine 10 mg** Amlodipine 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £14.07 DT = £1.58

##### ▶ Istin (Pfizer Ltd)

**Amlodipine 5 mg** Istin 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £11.08 DT = £1.43

**Amlodipine 10 mg** Istin 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £16.55 DT = £1.58

above

## Nicardipine hydrochloride

- **DRUG ACTION** Nicardipine is a dihydropyridine calcium-channel blocker.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Life-threatening hypertension (specialist use only) | Post-operative hypertension (specialist use only)

##### ▶ BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ **Neonate:** Initially 500 nanograms/kg/minute (max. per dose 5 micrograms/kg/minute), adjusted according to response; maintenance 1–4 micrograms/kg/minute.

- ▶ **Child:** Initially 500 nanograms/kg/minute (max. per dose 5 micrograms/kg/minute), adjusted according to response; maintenance 1–4 micrograms/kg/minute (max. per dose 250 micrograms/minute)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · avoid within 8 days of myocardial infarction · cardiogenic shock · compensatory hypertension · significant or advanced aortic stenosis

- **CAUTIONS** Congestive heart failure · elevated intracranial pressure · increased risk of serious hypotension · portal hypertension · pulmonary oedema · significantly impaired left ventricular function · stroke

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium channel blockers

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Hypotension
- **Frequency not known** Atrioventricular block · erythema · hepatic disorders · ischaemic heart disease · paralytic ileus · pulmonary oedema · thrombocytopenia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Systemic hypotension and reflex tachycardia with rapid reduction of blood pressure may occur—during intravenous use consider stopping infusion or decreasing dose by half.

- **PREGNANCY** May inhibit labour. Not to be used in multiple pregnancy (twins or more) unless there is no other acceptable alternative. Toxicity in *animal* studies. Risk of severe maternal hypotension and fatal fetal hypoxia—avoid excessive decrease in blood pressure.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in breast milk.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in hepatic impairment—increased risk of serious hypotension. **Dose adjustments** Half-life prolonged in severe impairment—consider using low initial dose.

#### ● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Use with caution—increased risk of serious hypotension; consider using low initial dose.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood pressure and heart rate at least every 5 minutes during intravenous infusion, and then until stable, and continue monitoring for at least 12 hours after end of infusion.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Intravenous nicardipine should only be administered under the supervision of a specialist and in a hospital or intensive care setting in which patients can be closely monitored.

For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 100–200 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% and give *via* volumetric infusion pump or syringe driver; protect from light; to minimise peripheral venous irritation, change site of infusion every 12 hours; risk of adsorption on to plastic in the presence of saline solutions; incompatible with bicarbonate or alkaline solutions—consult product literature.

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### **Solution for infusion**

- **Nicardipine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

Nicardipine hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml Nicardipine 10mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule **[PoM]** £50.00

F 108

## Nifedipine

21-Nov-2016

- **DRUG ACTION** Nifedipine is a dihydropyridine calcium-channel blocker.

#### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

##### **Hypertensive crisis | Acute angina in Kawasaki disease or progeria**

- **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**

- **Child:** Initially 250–500 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 10 mg), then repeat once if necessary, may cause unpredictable and severe reduction of blood pressure—monitor closely following administration; if ineffective consider alternative treatment and seek specialist advice

### Hypertension | Angina in Kawasaki disease or progeria

- **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**

- **Child 1 month–11 years:** 200–300 micrograms/kg 3 times a day, dose frequency depends on preparation used; maximum 3 mg/kg per day; maximum 90 mg per day
- **Child 12–17 years:** 5–20 mg 3 times a day, dose frequency depends on preparation used; maximum 90 mg per day

#### **Raynaud's syndrome**

- **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**

- **Child 2–17 years:** 2.5–10 mg 2–4 times a day, start with low doses at night and increase gradually to avoid postural hypotension, dose frequency depends on preparation used

#### **Persistent hyperinsulinaemic hypoglycaemia**

- **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**

- **Neonate:** 100–200 micrograms/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 600 micrograms/kg).

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Cardiogenic shock · significant aortic stenosis

- **CAUTIONS** Diabetes mellitus · heart failure · poor cardiac reserve · severe hypotension · short-acting formulations are not recommended for angina or long-term management of hypertension; their use may be associated with large variations in blood pressure and reflex tachycardia · significantly impaired left ventricular function (heart failure deterioration observed)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium channel blockers

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Constipation · malaise · oedema · vasodilation
- **Uncommon** Allergic oedema · angioedema · anxiety · chills · dry mouth · epistaxis · gastrointestinal discomfort · hypotension · joint disorders · laryngeal oedema · migraine · muscle complaints · nasal congestion · pain · sleep disorder · syncope · tremor · urinary disorders · vertigo · visual impairment
- **Rare or very rare** Sensation abnormal
- **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · angina pectoris · chest pain · drowsiness · dyspnoea · eye pain · hyperglycaemia · jaundice · leucopenia · photoallergic reaction · pulmonary oedema · toxic epidermal necrolysis

- **PREGNANCY** May inhibit labour; manufacturer advises avoid before week 20, but risk to fetus should be balanced against risk of uncontrolled maternal hypertension. Use only if other treatment options are not indicated or have failed.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful but manufacturers advise avoid.

#### ● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Dose reduction may be required in severe liver disease.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For rapid effect in *hypertensive crisis* or *acute angina*, bite capsules and swallow liquid or use liquid preparation if 5 mg or 10 mg dose unavailable. If liquid unavailable, extract contents of capsule *via* a syringe and use immediately—cover syringe with foil to protect contents from light; capsule contents may be diluted with water if necessary.

**FORTIPINE® LA 40** Take with or just after food, or a meal.

#### ● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Nifedipine for high blood pressure [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/nifedipine-for-high-blood-pressure](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/nifedipine-for-high-blood-pressure)

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral drops

**Capsule**▶ **Nifedipine (Non-proprietary)**

**Nifedipine 5 mg** Nifedipine 5mg capsules | 84 capsule [PoM] £2.97–£19.99

**Nifedipine 10 mg** Nifedipine 10mg capsules | 84 capsule [PoM] £4.00–£21.00

▶ **Adalat (Bayer Plc)**

**Nifedipine 5 mg** Adalat 5mg capsules | 90 capsule [PoM] £5.73 DT = £5.73

**Nifedipine 10 mg** Adalat 10mg capsules | 90 capsule [PoM] £7.30 DT = £7.30

P 108

**Verapamil hydrochloride****INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Treatment of supraventricular arrhythmias**▶ **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

- Child 1–17 years (administered on expert advice): 100–300 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 5 mg) for 1 dose, to be given over 2–3 minutes (with ECG and blood-pressure monitoring), dose can be repeated after 30 minutes if necessary

**Hypertension**▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**

- Child 12–23 months (administered on expert advice): 20 mg 2–3 times a day
- Child 2–17 years (administered on expert advice): 40–120 mg 2–3 times a day

**Prophylaxis of supraventricular arrhythmias (administered on expert advice)**▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**

- Child 12–23 months: 20 mg 2–3 times a day
- Child 2–17 years: 40–120 mg 2–3 times a day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · atrial flutter or fibrillation associated with accessory conducting pathways (e.g. Wolff-Parkinson-White-syndrome) · bradycardia · cardiogenic shock · history of heart failure (even if controlled by therapy) · history of significantly impaired left ventricular function (even if controlled by therapy) · hypertension · second- and third-degree AV block · sick sinus syndrome · sino-atrial block

- **CAUTIONS** First-degree AV block

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium channel blockers

**SIDE-EFFECTS****GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Hypotension
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Atrioventricular block · extrapyramidal symptoms · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · vertigo

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common**
- ▶ With intravenous use Bradycardia
- ▶ **Frequency not known**
- ▶ With intravenous use Cardiac arrest · drowsiness · hepatic impairment · hyperhidrosis · myocardial contractility decreased · nervousness · seizure
- ▶ With oral use Alopecia · angioedema · arthralgia · constipation · erythromelalgia · fatigue · galactorrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · heart failure · ileus · muscle weakness · myalgia · paraesthesia · tinnitus · tremor

- **PREGNANCY** May reduce uterine blood flow with fetal hypoxia. Manufacturer advises avoid in first trimester unless absolutely necessary. May inhibit labour.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful.

**HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Oral dose may need to be reduced.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous injection*, may be diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Incompatible with solutions of pH greater than 6.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Tablet**▶ **Verapamil hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Verapamil hydrochloride 40 mg** Verapamil 40mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £2.07 DT = £1.40

**Verapamil hydrochloride 80 mg** Verapamil 80mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £2.33 DT = £1.74

**Verapamil hydrochloride 120 mg** Verapamil 120mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £2.43 DT = £1.18

**Verapamil hydrochloride 160 mg** Verapamil 160mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £28.20 DT = £28.20

**Solution for injection**▶ **Securon (Mylan)**

**Verapamil hydrochloride 2.5 mg per 1 ml** Securon IV 5mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £5.41

**Oral solution**▶ **Verapamil hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Verapamil hydrochloride 8 mg per 1 ml** Verapamil 40mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £39.00 DT = £39.00

**DIURETICS > THIAZIDES AND RELATED DIURETICS****Thiazides and related diuretics**

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Addison's disease · hypercalcaemia · hyponatraemia · refractory hypokalaemia · symptomatic hyperuricaemia

- **CAUTIONS** Diabetes · gout · hyperaldosteronism · malnourishment · nephrotic syndrome · systemic lupus erythematosus

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ Potassium loss Hypokalaemia can occur with both thiazide and loop diuretics. The risk of hypokalaemia depends on the duration of action as well as the potency and is thus greater with thiazides than with an equipotent dose of a loop diuretic.

Hypokalaemia is particularly dangerous in children being treated with cardiac glycosides. In hepatic failure hypokalaemia caused by diuretics can precipitate encephalopathy.

The use of potassium-sparing diuretics avoids the need to take potassium supplements.

- ▶ Existing conditions Thiazides and related diuretics can exacerbate diabetes, gout, and systemic lupus erythematosus.

**SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Constipation · electrolyte imbalance · headache · postural hypotension · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Leucopenia · thrombocytopenia
- **PREGNANCY** Thiazides and related diuretics should not be used to treat gestational hypertension. They may cause neonatal thrombocytopenia, bone marrow suppression, jaundice, electrolyte disturbances, and hypoglycaemia; placental perfusion may also be reduced. Stimulation of labour, uterine inertia, and meconium staining have also been reported.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Caution in mild to moderate impairment. Avoid in severe liver disease. Hypokalaemia may precipitate coma in hepatic impairment, although hypokalaemia can be prevented by using a potassium-sparing diuretic.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Thiazides and related diuretics should be used with caution because they can further reduce renal function. They are ineffective if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> and should be avoided. Metolazone remains effective if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> but is associated with a risk of excessive diuresis.

**Monitoring** Electrolytes should be monitored in renal impairment.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Electrolytes should be monitored, particularly with high doses and long-term use.

## Bendroflumethiazide

(Bendrofluazide)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Hypertension

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–1 year: 50–100 micrograms/kg daily, adjusted according to response
- Child 2–11 years: Initially 50–400 micrograms/kg daily (max. per dose 10 mg), then maintenance 50–100 micrograms/kg daily, adjusted according to response; maximum 10 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: 2.5 mg once daily, dose to be taken as a single dose in the morning, higher doses are rarely necessary

#### Oedema in heart failure, renal disease and hepatic disease | Pulmonary oedema

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–1 year: 50–100 micrograms/kg daily, adjusted according to response
- Child 2–11 years: Initially 50–400 micrograms/kg daily (max. per dose 10 mg), then maintenance 50–100 micrograms/kg daily, adjusted according to response; maximum 10 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 5–10 mg once daily or on alternate days, adjusted according to response, dose to be taken as a single dose in the morning; maximum 10 mg per day

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: thiazide diuretics

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agranulocytosis · alkalosis hypochloaemic · aplastic anaemia · blood disorder · cholestasis · diarrhoea · electrolyte imbalance · erectile dysfunction · gastrointestinal disorder · gout · hyperglycaemia · hyperuricaemia · neutropenia · pancreatitis · photosensitivity reaction · pneumonitis · pulmonary oedema

- **BREAST FEEDING** The amount present in milk is too small to be harmful. Large doses may suppress lactation.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### ► Bendroflumethiazide (Non-proprietary)

**Bendroflumethiazide 2.5 mg** Bendroflumethiazide 2.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.68 DT = £0.28 | 500 tablet [PoM] £5.00–£21.85

**Bendroflumethiazide 5 mg** Bendroflumethiazide 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.80 DT = £0.34

##### ► Aprinox (AMCO)

**Bendroflumethiazide 2.5 mg** Aprinox 2.5mg tablets | 500 tablet [PoM] £27.31

##### ► Neo-Naclex (AMCO)

**Bendroflumethiazide 2.5 mg** Neo-Naclex 2.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.33 DT = £0.28

## Chlorothiazide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Heart failure | Hypertension | Ascites

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 10–20 mg/kg twice daily.

- Child 1–5 months: 10–20 mg/kg twice daily
- Child 6 months–11 years: 10 mg/kg twice daily; maximum 1 g per day
- Child 12–17 years: 0.25–1 g once daily, alternatively 125–500 mg twice daily

#### Reduction of diazoxide-induced sodium and water retention in the management of chronic hypoglycaemia | Potentiating the glycaemic effect of diazoxide in the management of chronic hypoglycaemia

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 3–5 mg/kg twice daily

#### Nephrogenic and partial pituitary diabetes insipidus

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 10–20 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 500 mg)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed.

- **CAUTIONS** Neonate (theoretical risk of kernicterus if very jaundiced)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: chlorothiazide

- **BREAST FEEDING** The amount present in milk is too small to be harmful. Large doses may suppress lactation.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### ► Diuril (Imported (United States))

**Chlorothiazide 250 mg** Diuril 250mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] ☒

## DRUGS ACTING ON THE RENIN-ANGIOTENSIN SYSTEM > ACE INHIBITORS

## Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Bilateral renovascular disease

- **CAUTIONS** Afro-Caribbean patients (may respond less well to ACE inhibitors) · concomitant diuretics · diabetes (may lower blood glucose) · first dose hypotension (especially in patients taking high doses of diuretics, on a low-sodium diet, on dialysis, dehydrated, or with heart failure) · neonates (in neonates) · primary aldosteronism (patients may respond less well to ACE inhibitors) · the risk of agranulocytosis is possibly increased in collagen vascular disease (blood counts recommended) · use with care (or avoid) in those with a history of idiopathic or hereditary angioedema · use with care in patients with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy · use with care in patients with severe or symptomatic aortic stenosis (risk of hypotension)

### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Anaphylactoid reactions To prevent anaphylactoid reactions, ACE inhibitors should be avoided during dialysis with high-flux polyacrylonitrile membranes and during low-density lipoprotein apheresis with dextran sulfate; they should also be withheld before desensitisation with wasp or bee venom.

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- Common or very common Alopecia · angina pectoris · angioedema (may be delayed; more common in Afro-Caribbean patients) · arrhythmias · asthenia · chest pain · constipation · cough · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness ·



dry mouth • dyspnoea • electrolyte imbalance •

gastrointestinal discomfort • headache • hypotension • myalgia • nausea • palpitations • paraesthesia • renal impairment • rhinitis • skin reactions • sleep disorder • syncope • taste altered • tinnitus • vertigo • vomiting

- ▶ **Uncommon** Arthralgia • confusion • eosinophilia • erectile dysfunction • fever • haemolytic anaemia • hyperhidrosis • myocardial infarction • pancreatitis • peripheral oedema • photosensitivity reaction • respiratory disorders • stroke
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis • hepatic disorders • leucopenia • neutropenia • pancytopenia • Stevens-Johnson syndrome • thrombocytopenia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** In light of reports of cholestatic jaundice, hepatitis, fulminant hepatic necrosis, and hepatic failure, ACE inhibitors should be discontinued if marked elevation of hepatic enzymes or jaundice occur.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** ACE inhibitors are contra-indicated in patients with hypersensitivity to ACE inhibitors (including angioedema).
- **PREGNANCY** ACE inhibitors should be avoided in pregnancy unless essential. They may adversely affect fetal and neonatal blood pressure control and renal function; skull defects and oligohydramnios have also been reported.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Information on the use of ACE inhibitors in breast-feeding is limited.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Use with caution, starting with low dose, and adjust according to response. Hyperkalaemia and other side-effects of ACE inhibitors are more common in those with impaired renal function and the dose may need to be reduced.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Renal function and electrolytes should be checked before starting ACE inhibitors (or increasing the dose) and monitored during treatment (more frequently if side effects mentioned are present).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For hypertension the first dose should preferably be given at bedtime.

F 111

## Captopril

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Hypertension

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Preterm neonate** (initiated under specialist supervision): Test dose 10 micrograms/kg, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 10–50 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 300 micrograms/kg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated.
- ▶ **Neonate** (initiated under specialist supervision): Test dose 10–50 micrograms/kg, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 10–50 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 2 mg/kg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated.
- ▶ **Child 1–11 months** (initiated under specialist supervision): Test dose 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 6.25 mg), monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 100–300 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 4 mg/kg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated

- ▶ **Child 1–11 years** (initiated under specialist supervision): Test dose 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 6.25 mg), monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 100–300 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 6 mg/kg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years** (initiated under specialist supervision): Test dose 100 micrograms/kg, alternatively test dose 6.25 mg, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 12.5–25 mg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 150 mg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated

#### Heart failure

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Preterm neonate** (initiated under specialist supervision): Test dose 10 micrograms/kg, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 10–50 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 300 micrograms/kg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated.
- ▶ **Neonate** (initiated under specialist supervision): Test dose 10–50 micrograms/kg, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 10–50 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 2 mg/kg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated.
- ▶ **Child 1–11 months** (initiated under specialist supervision): Test dose 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 6.25 mg), monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 100–300 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 4 mg/kg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated
- ▶ **Child 1–11 years** (initiated under specialist supervision): Test dose 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 6.25 mg), monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 100–300 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 6 mg/kg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years** (initiated under specialist supervision): Test dose 100 micrograms/kg, alternatively test dose 6.25 mg, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 12.5–25 mg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 150 mg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated

#### Proteinuria in nephritis (under expert supervision)

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Preterm neonate**: Test dose 10 micrograms/kg, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 10–50 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 300 micrograms/kg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated.
- ▶ **Neonate**: Test dose 10–50 micrograms/kg, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 10–50 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 2 mg/kg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated.
- ▶ **Child 1–11 months**: Test dose 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 6.25 mg), monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 100–300 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to

4 mg/kg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated

- ▶ **Child 1–11 years:** Test dose 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 6.25 mg), monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 100–300 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 6 mg/kg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years:** Test dose 100 micrograms/kg, alternatively test dose 6.25 mg, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 12.5–25 mg 2–3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 150 mg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated

#### Diabetic nephropathy in type 1 diabetes mellitus

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision):** Test dose 100 micrograms/kg, alternatively test dose 6.25 mg, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; usual dose 12.5–25 mg 2–3 times a day, increased if necessary up to 100 mg daily in divided doses, ongoing doses should only be given if test dose tolerated

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for proteinuria in nephritis. Captopril doses in BNF Publications differs from product licence.

● **CAUTIONS** Children (efficacy and safety not fully established)

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ACE inhibitors

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Epigastric discomfort · peptic ulcer
- ▶ **Uncommon** Appetite decreased · flushing · malaise · pallor · postural hypotension · Raynaud's phenomenon
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Alveolitis allergic · anaemia · aplastic anaemia · autoimmune disorder · cardiac arrest · cardiogenic shock · cerebrovascular insufficiency · depression · gynaecomastia · hypoglycaemia · lymphadenopathy · nephrotic syndrome · oliguria · oral disorders · proteinuria · urinary disorders · vision blurred
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid in first few weeks after delivery, particularly in preterm infants—risk of profound neonatal hypotension; can be used in mothers breast-feeding older infants if essential but monitor infant's blood pressure.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Administer under close supervision. Give test dose whilst child supine. Tablets can be dispersed in water.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Captopril for heart failure  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/captopril-heart-failure-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/captopril-heart-failure-0)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### ▶ Captopril (Non-proprietary)

**Captopril 12.5 mg** Captopril 12.5mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £2.80 DT = £2.06 | 100 tablet [PoM] £5.00

**Captopril 25 mg** Captopril 25mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £4.52 DT = £0.56 | 100 tablet [PoM] £8.07

**Captopril 50 mg** Captopril 50mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £5.83 DT = £2.15 | 100 tablet [PoM] £10.41

##### ▶ Ecopace (AMCo)

**Captopril 12.5 mg** Ecopace 12.5mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £0.48 DT = £2.06

**Captopril 25 mg** Ecopace 25mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £0.60 DT = £0.56

**Captopril 50 mg** Ecopace 50mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £0.72 DT = £2.15

#### Oral solution

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

▶ **Noyada** (Martindale Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Captopril 1 mg per 1 ml** Noyada 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £98.21 DT = £98.21

**Captopril 5 mg per 1 ml** Noyada 25mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £108.94 DT = £108.94

F 111

## Enalapril maleate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Hypertension

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate (under expert supervision):** Initially 10 micrograms/kg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, increased if necessary up to 500 micrograms/kg daily in 1–3 divided doses, limited information.

- ▶ **Child 1 month–11 years (under expert supervision):** Initially 100 micrograms/kg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, then increased if necessary up to 1 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision) (body-weight up to 50 kg):** Initially 2.5 mg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, maintenance 10–20 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision) (body-weight 50 kg and above):** Initially 2.5 mg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, maintenance 10–20 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses; maximum 40 mg per day

#### Heart failure

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate (under expert supervision):** Initially 10 micrograms/kg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, increased if necessary up to 500 micrograms/kg daily in 1–3 divided doses, limited information.

- ▶ **Child 1 month–11 years (under expert supervision):** Initially 100 micrograms/kg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, then increased if necessary up to 1 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision) (body-weight up to 50 kg):** Initially 2.5 mg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, maintenance 10–20 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision) (body-weight 50 kg and above):** Initially 2.5 mg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, maintenance 10–20 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses; maximum 40 mg per day

#### Proteinuria in nephritis (under expert supervision)

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate:** Initially 10 micrograms/kg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, increased if necessary up to 500 micrograms/kg daily in 1–3 divided doses, limited information.

- ▶ **Child 1 month–11 years:** Initially 100 micrograms/kg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, then increased if necessary up to 1 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg):** Initially 2.5 mg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours, maintenance 10–20 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years (body-weight 50 kg and above):** Initially 2.5 mg once daily, monitor blood pressure continued →

carefully for 1–2 hours, maintenance 10–20 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses; maximum 40 mg per day

#### Diabetic nephropathy (under expert supervision)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): Initially 2.5 mg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; maintenance 10–20 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses
- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 2.5 mg once daily, monitor blood pressure carefully for 1–2 hours; maintenance 10–20 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses; maximum 40 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for congestive heart failure, proteinuria in nephritis or diabetic nephropathy; not licensed for use in children less than 20 kg for hypertension.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ACE inhibitors

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Depression · hypersensitivity · postural hypotension · vision blurred
- **Uncommon** Anaemia · appetite decreased · asthma · bone marrow disorders · epigastric discomfort · flushing · gastrointestinal disorders · hoarseness · hypoglycaemia · malaise · muscle cramps · nervousness · proteinuria · rhinorrhoea · throat pain

- **Rare or very rare** Autoimmune disorder · gynaecomastia · lymphadenopathy · oliguria · oral disorders · Raynaud's phenomenon · toxic epidermal necrolysis

- **Frequency not known** Arthritis · leucocytosis · myositis · serositis · SIADH · vasculitis

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid in first few weeks after delivery, particularly in preterm infants—risk of profound neonatal hypotension; can be used in mothers breast-feeding older infants if essential but monitor infant's blood pressure.

#### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Monitoring** Enalapril is a prodrug and requires close monitoring in patients with hepatic impairment.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets may be crushed and suspended in water immediately before use.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Enalapril for high blood pressure [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/enalapril-for-high-blood-pressure](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/enalapril-for-high-blood-pressure)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

##### ► Enalapril maleate (Non-proprietary)

**Enalapril maleate 2.5 mg** Enalapril 2.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£5.63 DT = £4.84

**Enalapril maleate 5 mg** Enalapril 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£4.13 DT = £2.28

**Enalapril maleate 10 mg** Enalapril 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£5.64 DT = £2.14

**Enalapril maleate 20 mg** Enalapril 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£6.63 DT = £1.94

##### ► Innovace (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Enalapril maleate 2.5 mg** Innovace 2.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£5.35 DT = £4.84

**Enalapril maleate 5 mg** Innovace 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£7.51 DT = £2.28

**Enalapril maleate 10 mg** Innovace 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£10.53 DT = £2.14

**Enalapril maleate 20 mg** Innovace 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£12.51 DT = £1.94

## Lisinopril

19-Mar-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Hypertension

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–11 years (under expert supervision): Initially 70 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 5 mg), increased to up to 600 micrograms/kg once daily, alternatively increased to up to 40 mg once daily, dose to be increased in intervals of 1–2 weeks
- Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision): Initially 5 mg once daily; usual maintenance 10–20 mg once daily; maximum 80 mg per day

#### Proteinuria in nephritis (under expert supervision)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–11 years: Initially 70 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 5 mg), increased to up to 600 micrograms/kg once daily, alternatively increased to up to 40 mg once daily, dose to be increased in intervals of 1–2 weeks
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 5 mg once daily; usual maintenance 10–20 mg once daily; maximum 80 mg per day

#### Diabetic nephropathy (under expert supervision)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 5 mg once daily; usual maintenance 10–20 mg once daily; maximum 80 mg per day

#### Heart failure (adjunct) (under close medical supervision)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 2.5 mg once daily; increased in steps of up to 10 mg at least every 2 weeks; maximum 35 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ACE inhibitors

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Postural disorders

- **Uncommon** Hallucination · mood altered · Raynaud's phenomenon

- **Rare or very rare** Alveolitis allergic · anaemia · autoimmune disorder · azotaemia · bone marrow depression · gynaecomastia · hypersensitivity · hypoglycaemia · lymphadenopathy · olfactory nerve disorder · SIADH · sinusitis · toxic epidermal necrolysis

- **Frequency not known** Leucocytosis · vasculitis

- **BREAST FEEDING** Not recommended; alternative treatment options, with better established safety information during breast-feeding, are available.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of lisinopril is required, the following strength is used: 20 mg/5 mL.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Lisinopril for high blood pressure [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/lisinopril-for-high-blood-pressure](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/lisinopril-for-high-blood-pressure)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Oral solution

##### ► Lisinopril (Non-proprietary)

**Lisinopril 1 mg per 1 mL** Lisinopril 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 mL [PoM] £154.11 DT = £154.11

##### Tablet

##### ► Lisinopril (Non-proprietary)

**Lisinopril 2.5 mg** Lisinopril 2.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £4.81 DT = £0.48

**Lisinopril 5 mg** Lisinopril 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £7.80 DT = £0.46  
**Lisinopril 10 mg** Lisinopril 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £11.81 DT = £0.61  
**Lisinopril 20 mg** Lisinopril 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £10.90 DT = £0.58  
 ▶ **Zestril** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)  
**Lisinopril 5 mg** Zestril 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.42 DT = £0.46  
**Lisinopril 10 mg** Zestril 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £14.76 DT = £0.61  
**Lisinopril 20 mg** Zestril 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £13.02 DT = £0.58

## DRUGS ACTING ON THE RENIN-ANGIOTENSIN SYSTEM > ANGIOTENSIN II RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS

### Angiotensin II receptor antagonists

● **CAUTIONS** Afro-Caribbean patients—particularly those with left ventricular hypertrophy (may not benefit from an angiotensin-II receptor antagonist) · aortic or mitral valve stenosis · hypertrophic cardiomyopathy · patients with a history of angioedema · patients with primary aldosteronism (may not benefit from an angiotensin-II receptor antagonist) · renal artery stenosis

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · asthenia · back pain · cough · diarrhoea · dizziness · headache · hyperkalaemia · hypotension · nausea · postural hypotension (more common in patients with intravascular volume depletion, e.g. those taking high-dose diuretics) · renal impairment · vertigo · vomiting  
 ▶ **Uncommon** Angioedema · myalgia · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia  
 ▶ **Rare or very rare** Arthralgia · hepatic function abnormal

● **PREGNANCY** Angiotensin-II receptor antagonists should be avoided in pregnancy unless essential. They may adversely affect fetal and neonatal blood pressure control and renal function; neonatal skull defects and oligohydramnios have also been reported.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Information on the use of angiotensin-II receptor antagonists in breast-feeding is limited. They are not recommended in breast-feeding and alternative treatment options, with better established safety information during breast-feeding, are available.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Use with caution, starting with low dose, and adjust according to response.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor plasma-potassium concentration, particularly in children with renal impairment.



above

### Candesartan cilexetil

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Hypertension

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Child 6–17 years (under expert supervision) (body-weight up to 50 kg): Initially 4 mg once daily, adjusted according to response, lower dose may be used in intravascular volume depletion; maximum 8 mg per day  
 ▶ Child 6–17 years (under expert supervision) (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 4 mg once daily, adjusted according to response, lower dose may be used in intravascular volume depletion; maximum 16 mg per day

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Cholestasis

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: angiotensin-II receptor antagonists

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

▶ **Common or very common** Fever · increased risk of infection · oropharyngeal pain · sinus arrhythmia  
 ▶ **Uncommon** Hyponatraemia  
 ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · hepatitis · leucopenia · neutropenia

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe hepatic impairment.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce initial dose in mild or moderate impairment.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—no information available.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce initial dose.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

###### ▶ Candesartan cilexetil (Non-proprietary)

**Candesartan cilexetil 2 mg** Candesartan 2mg tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £2.86 DT = £1.90  
**Candesartan cilexetil 4 mg** Candesartan 4mg tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £3.88 DT = £0.30 | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.49–£9.78  
**Candesartan cilexetil 8 mg** Candesartan 8mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.89 DT = £0.84

**Candesartan cilexetil 16 mg** Candesartan 16mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £12.72 DT = £1.14

**Candesartan cilexetil 32 mg** Candesartan 32mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £16.13 DT = £1.75

###### ▶ Amias (Takeda UK Ltd)

**Candesartan cilexetil 2 mg** Amias 2mg tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £3.58 DT = £1.90  
**Candesartan cilexetil 4 mg** Amias 4mg tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £3.88 DT = £0.30 | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.78  
**Candesartan cilexetil 8 mg** Amias 8mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.89 DT = £0.84

**Candesartan cilexetil 16 mg** Amias 16mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £12.72 DT = £1.14

**Candesartan cilexetil 32 mg** Amias 32mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £16.13 DT = £1.75

above

### Losartan potassium

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Hypertension

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Child 6–17 years (under expert supervision) (body-weight 20–49 kg): Initially 700 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 25 mg), adjusted according to response to 50 mg daily, lower initial dose may be used in intravascular volume depletion; maximum 50 mg per day  
 ▶ Child 6–17 years (under expert supervision) (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 50 mg once daily, adjusted according to response to 1.4 mg/kg once daily; maximum 100 mg per day

##### Hypertension with intravascular volume depletion

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Child 6–17 years (under expert supervision) (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 25 mg once daily; adjusted according to response to 1.4 mg/kg once daily; maximum 100 mg per day

● **CAUTIONS** Severe heart failure

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: angiotensin-II receptor antagonists

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

▶ **Common or very common** Anaemia · hypoglycaemia · postural disorders

- ▶ **Uncommon** Angina pectoris · constipation · drowsiness · dyspnoea · oedema · palpitations · sleep disorder
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · atrial fibrillation · hepatitis · hypersensitivity · paraesthesia · stroke · syncope · vasculitis
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Depression · erectile dysfunction · hyponatraemia · increased risk of infection · influenza like illness · malaise · migraine · pancreatitis · photosensitivity reaction · rhabdomyolysis · taste altered · tinnitus
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—no information available.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include berry-citrus.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Oral suspension

- ▶ **Cozaar** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)  
**Losartan potassium 2.5 mg per 1 mL** Cozaar 2.5mg/mL oral suspension sugar-free | 200 mL [PoM] £53.68 DT = £53.68

##### Tablet

- ▶ **Losartan potassium (Non-proprietary)**  
**Losartan potassium 12.5 mg** Losartan 12.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £30.00 DT = £4.50  
**Losartan potassium 25 mg** Losartan 25mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £16.18 DT = £0.55  
**Losartan potassium 50 mg** Losartan 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £12.80 DT = £0.57  
**Losartan potassium 100 mg** Losartan 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £16.18 DT = £1.16
- ▶ **Cozaar** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)  
**Losartan potassium 12.5 mg** Cozaar 12.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.70 DT = £4.50  
**Losartan potassium 25 mg** Cozaar 25mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £16.18 DT = £0.55  
**Losartan potassium 50 mg** Cozaar 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £12.80 DT = £0.57  
**Losartan potassium 100 mg** Cozaar 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £16.18 DT = £1.16

F 115

## Valsartan

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Hypertension

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 6–17 years (under expert supervision) (body-weight 18–34 kg): Initially 40 mg once daily, adjusted according to response; maximum 80 mg per day
- ▶ Child 6–17 years (under expert supervision) (body-weight 35–79 kg): Initially 80 mg once daily, adjusted according to response; maximum 160 mg per day
- ▶ Child 6–17 years (under expert supervision) (body-weight 80 kg and above): Initially 80 mg once daily, adjusted according to response; maximum 320 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Capsules not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Biliary cirrhosis · cholestasis
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Uncommon** Heart failure · syncope
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Neutropenia · serum sickness · vasculitis
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe hepatic impairment. Dose adjustments Max. dose 80 mg daily in mild to moderate impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—no information available.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Oral solution

- ▶ **Diovan** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
**Valsartan 3 mg per 1 mL** Diovan 3mg/1mL oral solution | 160 mL [PoM] £72.20 DT = £7.20

##### Tablet

- ▶ **Valsartan (Non-proprietary)**  
**Valsartan 40 mg** Valsartan 40mg tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £5.00 DT = £4.29  
**Valsartan 80 mg** Valsartan 80mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £13.69 DT = £13.69  
**Valsartan 160 mg** Valsartan 160mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £14.69 DT = £14.69  
**Valsartan 320 mg** Valsartan 320mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £20.23 DT = £18.69

##### Capsule

- ▶ **Valsartan (Non-proprietary)**  
**Valsartan 40 mg** Valsartan 40mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £13.97 DT = £3.66  
**Valsartan 80 mg** Valsartan 80mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £13.97 DT = £4.76  
**Valsartan 160 mg** Valsartan 160mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £18.41 DT = £4.83

## VASODILATORS > VASODILATOR ANTIHYPERTENSIVES

## Hydralazine hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Resistant hypertension (adjunct)

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 250–500 micrograms/kg every 8–12 hours, increased if necessary to 2–3 mg/kg every 8 hours.
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 250–500 micrograms/kg every 8–12 hours, increased if necessary to 7.5 mg/kg daily; maximum 200 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 25 mg twice daily, increased to 50–100 mg twice daily
- ▶ **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

- ▶ Neonate: 100–500 micrograms/kg, dose may be repeated if necessary every 4–6 hours; maximum 3 mg/kg per day.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 100–500 micrograms/kg, dose may be repeated if necessary every 4–6 hours; maximum 3 mg/kg per day; maximum 60 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 5–10 mg, dose may be repeated if necessary every 4–6 hours

###### ▶ BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: 12.5–50 micrograms/kg/hour, continuous intravenous infusion is the preferred route in cardiac patients; maximum 2 mg/kg per day.
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 12.5–50 micrograms/kg/hour, continuous intravenous infusion is the preferred route in cardiac patients; maximum 3 mg/kg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 3–9 mg/hour, continuous intravenous infusion is the preferred route in cardiac patients; maximum 3 mg/kg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · cor pulmonale · high output heart failure · idiopathic systemic lupus erythematosus · myocardial insufficiency due to mechanical obstruction · severe tachycardia



- **CAUTIONS** Cerebrovascular disease · occasionally blood pressure reduction too rapid even with low parenteral doses
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: hydralazine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Angina pectoris · diarrhoea · dizziness · flushing · gastrointestinal disorders · headache · hypotension · joint disorders · lupus-like syndrome (after long-term therapy, more common in slow acetylator individuals) · myalgia · nasal congestion · nausea · palpitations · tachycardia · vomiting
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Acute kidney injury · agranulocytosis · anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · conjunctivitis · depression · dyspnoea · eosinophilia · eye disorders · fever · glomerulonephritis · haematuria · haemolytic anaemia · hallucination · heart failure · hepatic disorders · leucocytosis · leucopenia · lymphadenopathy · malaise · nerve disorders · neutropenia · oedema · pancytopenia · paradoxical pressor response · paraesthesia · pleuritic pain · proteinuria · skin reactions · splenomegaly · thrombocytopenia · urinary retention · vasculitis · weight decreased
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The incidence of side-effects is lower if the dose is kept low but systemic lupus erythematosus should be suspected if there is unexplained weight loss, arthritis, or any other unexplained ill health.
- **PREGNANCY** Neonatal thrombocytopenia reported, but risk should be balanced against risk of uncontrolled maternal hypertension. Manufacturer advises avoid before third trimester.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but not known to be harmful.  
**Monitoring** Monitor infant in breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Manufacturer advises test for antinuclear factor and for proteinuria every 6 months and check acetylator status before increasing dose, but evidence of clinical value unsatisfactory.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - ▶ With oral use For administration *by mouth*, diluted injection may be given orally.
  - ▶ With intravenous use For *continuous intravenous infusion*, initially reconstitute 20 mg with 1 mL Water for Injections, then dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Incompatible with Glucose intravenous infusion. For *intravenous injection*, initially reconstitute 20 mg with 1 mL Water for Injections, then dilute to a concentration of 0.5–1 mg/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9% and administer over 5–20 minutes.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Gluten, propylene glycol

#### ▶ Hydralazine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Hydralazine hydrochloride 25 mg** Hydralazine 25mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £7.37 DT = £5.82 | 84 tablet [PoM] £14.00

**Hydralazine hydrochloride 50 mg** Hydralazine 50mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £15.46 DT = £9.63

#### ▶ Apresoline (AMCo)

**Hydralazine hydrochloride 25 mg** Apresoline 25mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £3.38

#### Powder for solution for injection

#### ▶ Hydralazine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Hydralazine hydrochloride 20 mg** Hydralazine 20mg powder for concentrate for solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £64.50

## Minoxidil

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Severe hypertension

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 200 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, then increased in steps of 100–200 micrograms/kg, increased at intervals of at least 3 days; maximum 1 mg/kg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 5 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, then increased in steps of 5–10 mg daily, increased at intervals of at least 3 days, seldom necessary to exceed 50 mg daily; maximum 100 mg per day

#### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS Phaeochromocytoma

#### ● CAUTIONS Acute porphyrias p. 603

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: minoxidil

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Fluid retention · hair changes · oedema · pericardial disorders · tachycardia
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Leucopenia · skin reactions · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · thrombocytopenia
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Angina pectoris · breast tenderness · gastrointestinal disorder · pleural effusion · sodium retention · weight increased
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid—possible toxicity including reduced placental perfusion. Neonatal hirsutism reported.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but not known to be harmful.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in significant impairment.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

##### ▶ Loniten (Pfizer Ltd)

**Minoxidil 2.5 mg** Loniten 2.5mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £8.88 DT = £8.88

**Minoxidil 5 mg** Loniten 5mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £15.83 DT = £15.83

**Minoxidil 10 mg** Loniten 10mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £30.68 DT = £30.68

## 4.1a Hypertension associated with phaeochromocytoma

### VASODILATORS > PERIPHERAL VASODILATORS

## Phenoxybenzamine hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Hypertension in phaeochromocytoma

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child: 0.5–1 mg/kg twice daily, adjusted according to response

#### ● UNLICENSED USE Not licensed for use in children.

#### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS History of cerebrovascular accident

#### ● CAUTIONS Avoid contact with skin (risk of contact sensitisation) · avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 ·

carcinogenic in *animals* · cerebrovascular disease · congestive heart failure · severe ischaemic heart disease

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal distress · dizziness · ejaculation failure · fatigue · miosis · nasal congestion · postural hypotension · reflex tachycardia
- **PREGNANCY** Hypotension may occur in newborn.
- **BREAST FEEDING** May be present in milk.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For administration by mouth, capsules may be opened.
- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Owing to risk of contact sensitisation healthcare professionals should avoid contamination of hands.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Capsule

► **Phenoxylbenzamine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Phenoxylbenzamine hydrochloride 10 mg. Phenoxylbenzamine  
10mg capsules | 30 capsule (PoM) £106.61 DT = £106.61

## 4.1b Hypertensive crises

**Other drugs used for Hypertensive crises** Esmolol hydrochloride, p. 106 · Labetalol hydrochloride, p. 104

### VASODILATORS > VASODILATOR ANTIHYPERTENSIVES

## Sodium nitroprusside

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Hypertensive emergencies

##### ► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: Initially 500 nanograms/kg/minute, then increased in steps of 200 nanograms/kg/minute (max. per dose 8 micrograms/kg/minute) as required, max. 4 micrograms/kg/minute if used for longer than 24 hours.
- Child: Initially 500 nanograms/kg/minute, then increased in steps of 200 nanograms/kg/minute (max. per dose 8 micrograms/kg/minute) as required, max. 4 micrograms/kg/minute if used for longer than 24 hours

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in the UK.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Compensatory hypertension · Leber's optic atrophy · severe vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency
- **CAUTIONS** Hyponatraemia · hypothermia · hypothyroidism · impaired cerebral circulation
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sodium nitroprusside
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain · anxiety · chest discomfort · dizziness · headache · hyperhidrosis · nausea · palpitations · phlebitis (transient) · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Side-effects associated with over rapid reduction in blood pressure: Headache, dizziness, nausea, retching, abdominal pain, perspiration, palpitation, anxiety, retrosternal discomfort—reduce infusion rate if any of these side-effects occur.

**Overdose** Side-effects caused by excessive plasma concentration of the cyanide metabolite include tachycardia, sweating, hyperventilation, arrhythmias, marked metabolic acidosis (discontinue and give antidote, see cyanide in Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832).

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid prolonged use—potential for accumulation of cyanide in fetus.
- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available. Caution advised due to thiocyanate metabolite.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution. Avoid in hepatic failure—cyanide or thiocyanate metabolites may accumulate.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid prolonged use—cyanide or thiocyanate metabolites may accumulate.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood pressure (including intra-arterial blood pressure) and blood-cyanide concentration, and if treatment exceeds 3 days, also blood thiocyanate concentration.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid sudden withdrawal—terminate infusion over 15–30 minutes.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *continuous intravenous infusion* in Glucose 5%, infuse *via* infusion device to allow precise control. For further details, consult product literature. Protect infusion from light.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Powder and solvent for solution for infusion**

► **Sodium nitroprusside (Non-proprietary)**  
Sodium nitroprusside dihydrate 50 mg. Sodium nitroprusside 50mg powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial (PoM) [X]

## 4.1c Pulmonary hypertension

### ANTITHROMBOTIC DRUGS > PROSTAGLANDINS, CARDIOVASCULAR

## Epoprostenol

### (Prostacyclin)

- **DRUG ACTION** Epoprostenol is a prostaglandin and a potent vasodilator. It is also a powerful inhibitor of platelet aggregation.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn**

##### ► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: Initially 2 nanograms/kg/minute (max. per dose 20 nanograms/kg/minute), adjusted according to response, rarely doses up to 40 nanograms/kg/minute are used.

##### **Idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension**

##### ► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: Initially 2 nanograms/kg/minute, increased if necessary up to 40 nanograms/kg/minute

#### PHARMACOKINETICS

- Short half-life of approximately 3 minutes, therefore it must be administered by continuous intravenous infusion.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Pulmonary veno-occlusive disease · severe left ventricular dysfunction
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid abrupt withdrawal (risk of rebound pulmonary hypertension/pulmonary hypertensive crisis) · haemorrhagic diathesis
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: epoprostenol
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**  
► **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · anxiety · arrhythmias · arthralgia · chest discomfort · diarrhoea · flushing · haemorrhage · headache · intracranial haemorrhage · nausea · pain · rash · sepsis · vomiting

- **Uncommon** Dry mouth · hyperhidrosis
- **Rare or very rare** Fatigue · hyperthyroidism · pallor
- **Frequency not known** Ascites · pulmonary oedema (avoid chronic use if occurs during dose titration) · spleen abnormalities
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
- Anticoagulant monitoring required when given with anticoagulants.
- Monitor blood pressure.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal (risk of rebound pulmonary hypertension and pulmonary hypertensive crisis).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Reconstitute using the glycine buffer diluent provided to make a concentrate (pH 10.5); filter the concentrate using the filter provided. The concentrate can be administered via a central venous catheter, alternatively it may be diluted further either with the glycine buffer diluent or to a minimum concentration of 1.43 micrograms/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Solution stable for 12 hours at room temperature, although some units use for 24 hours and allow for loss of potency; solution stable for 24 hours if prepared in glycine buffer diluent only and administered via an ambulatory cold pouch system (to maintain solution at 2–8°C). *Neonatal intensive care*, prepare a filtered concentrate of 10 micrograms/mL using the 500-microgram vial. *Neonate body-weight under 2 kg*, using the concentrate, dilute 150 micrograms/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 5 nanograms/kg/minute. *Neonate body-weight over 2 kg*, using the concentrate, dilute 60 micrograms/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 2 nanograms/kg/minute.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder for solution for infusion

- **Veleti** (Actelion Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
**Epoprostenol (as Epoprostenol sodium) 500 microgram** Veleti 500microgram powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £24.44  
**Epoprostenol (as Epoprostenol sodium) 1.5 mg** Veleti 1.5mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £49.24

#### Powder and solvent for solution for infusion

- **Flolan** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
**Epoprostenol (as Epoprostenol sodium) 500 microgram** Flolan 500microgram powder and solvent (pH12) for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £22.22  
**Epoprostenol (as Epoprostenol sodium) 1.5 mg** Flolan 1.5mg powder and solvent (pH12) for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £44.76

## Iloprost

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Idiopathic or familial pulmonary arterial hypertension (initiated under specialist supervision)

- **BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION**
- **Child 8-17 years:** Initially 2.5 micrograms for 1 dose, increased to 5 micrograms for 1 dose, increased if tolerated to 5 micrograms 6–9 times a day, adjusted according to response; reduced if not tolerated to 2.5 micrograms 6–9 times a day, reduce to lower maintenance dose if high dose not tolerated

#### Raynaud's syndrome



- **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- **Child 12-17 years:** Initially 30 nanograms/kg/hour, increased to 60–120 nanograms/kg/hour daily for 3–5 days, dose to be given over 6 hours, dose increase should be performed gradually

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Conditions which increase risk of haemorrhage · congenital or acquired valvular defects of the myocardium · decompensated cardiac failure (unless under close medical supervision) · pulmonary veno-occlusive disease · severe arrhythmias · severe coronary heart disease
- **CAUTIONS**
- **GENERAL CAUTIONS** Hypotension (do not initiate if systolic blood pressure below 85 mmHg) · unstable pulmonary hypertension with advanced right heart failure
- **SPECIFIC CAUTIONS**
- When used by inhalation Acute pulmonary infection · severe asthma
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: iloprost
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- **Common or very common** Chest discomfort · cough · diarrhoea · dizziness · dyspnoea · haemorrhage · headache · hypotension · nausea · oral disorders · pain · palpitations · rash · syncope · tachycardia · throat complaints · vasodilation · vomiting
- **Frequency not known** Respiratory disorders · taste altered · thrombocytopenia
- **PREGNANCY**
- When used by inhalation Use if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING**
- When used by inhalation Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
- Dose adjustments** ► When used by inhalation Initially 2.5 micrograms at intervals of 3–4 hours (max. 6 times daily), adjusted according to response (consult product literature).
- Dose may need to be halved in liver cirrhosis.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
- With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion* dilute to a concentration of 200 nanograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; alternatively, may be diluted to a concentration of 2 micrograms/mL and given via syringe driver.
- When used by inhalation For *inhaled treatment*, to minimise accidental exposure use only with nebulisers listed in *Ventavis®* product literature in a well ventilated room.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**
- When used by inhalation Delivery characteristics of nebuliser devices may vary—only switch devices under medical supervision.
- With intravenous use Concentrate for infusion available on a named patient basis from Bayer Schering in 0.5 mL and 1 mL ampoules.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for infusion

- **Iloprost (Non-proprietary)**  
**Iloprost (as Iloprost trometamol) 100 microgram per 1 mL** Iloprost 100micrograms/1ml solution for infusion ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM]   
**Iloprost 50micrograms/0.5ml solution for infusion ampoules** | 1 ampoule [PoM] 

**Nebuliser liquid**

- **Ventavis** (Bayer Plc)  
**Iloprost (as Iloprost trometamol) 10 microgram per 1 ml** Ventavis  
 10micrograms/ml nebuliser solution 1ml ampoules |  
 30 ampoule [PoM] £400.19 | 168 ampoule [PoM] £2,241.08  
**Iloprost (as Iloprost trometamol) 20 microgram per 1 ml** Ventavis  
 20micrograms/ml nebuliser solution 1ml ampoules |  
 30 ampoule [PoM] £400.19 | 168 ampoule [PoM] £2,241.08

**ENDOTHELIN RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS****Bosentan****• INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Pulmonary arterial hypertension (initiated under specialist supervision)**

- **BY MOUTH**
- Child 2–17 years (body-weight 10–20 kg): Initially 31.25 mg once daily for 4 weeks, then increased to 31.25 mg twice daily
- Child 2–17 years (body-weight 20–40 kg): Initially 31.25 mg twice daily for 4 weeks, then increased to 62.5 mg twice daily
- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): Initially 62.5 mg twice daily for 4 weeks, then increased to 125 mg twice daily (max. per dose 250 mg)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603
- **CAUTIONS** Not to be initiated if systemic systolic blood pressure is below 85 mmHg
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: bosentan
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Anaemia · diarrhoea · flushing · gastroesophageal reflux disease · headache · nasal congestion · palpitations · skin reactions · syncope
  - **Uncommon** Hepatic disorders · leucopenia · neutropenia · thrombocytopenia
  - **Rare or very rare** Angioedema
  - **Frequency not known** Vision blurred
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required during administration (hormonal contraception not considered effective). Monthly pregnancy tests advised.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic in *animal* studies).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in moderate and severe impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - Monitor haemoglobin before and during treatment (monthly for first 4 months, then 3-monthly).
  - Monitor liver function before treatment, at monthly intervals during treatment, and 2 weeks after dose increase (reduce dose or suspend treatment if liver enzymes raised significantly)—discontinue if symptoms of liver impairment.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal—withdraw treatment gradually.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets may be cut, or suspended in water or non-acidic liquid. Suspension is stable at room-temperature (max. 25°C) for 24 hours.

**• MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Tablet**

- **Bosentan (Non-proprietary)**  
**Bosentan (as Bosentan monohydrate) 62.5 mg** Bosentan 62.5mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £1,359.19–£1,510.21  
**Bosentan (as Bosentan monohydrate) 125 mg** Bosentan 125mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £1,359.19–£1,510.21

- **Stayveer** (AMCo)  
**Bosentan (as Bosentan monohydrate) 62.5 mg** Stayveer 62.5mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £1,510.21  
**Bosentan (as Bosentan monohydrate) 125 mg** Stayveer 125mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £1,510.21
- **Tracleer** (Actelion Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
**Bosentan (as Bosentan monohydrate) 62.5 mg** Tracleer 62.5mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £1,510.21  
**Bosentan (as Bosentan monohydrate) 125 mg** Tracleer 125mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £1,510.21

**PHOSPHODIESTERASE TYPE-5 INHIBITORS****Sildenafil**

20-Jul-2017

**• INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Pulmonary arterial hypertension (initiated under specialist supervision)**

- **BY MOUTH**
- **Neonate:** Initially 250–500 micrograms/kg every 4–8 hours, adjusted according to response, start with the lower dose and frequency, especially if used with other vasodilators; maximum 30 mg per day.
- Child 1–11 months: Initially 250–500 micrograms/kg every 4–8 hours, adjusted according to response, start with the lower dose and frequency, especially if used with other vasodilators; maximum 30 mg per day
- Child 1–17 years (body-weight up to 20 kg): 10 mg 3 times a day
- Child 1–17 years (body-weight 20 kg and above): 20 mg 3 times a day

**DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS**

- Manufacturer advises reduce dose with concurrent use of moderate and potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 (avoid with ketoconazole, itraconazole and ritonavir)—no specific recommendation made for children.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 1 year.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hereditary degenerative retinal disorders · history of non-arteritic anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy · recent history of stroke · sickle-cell anaemia
- **CAUTIONS** Active peptic ulceration · anatomical deformation of the penis · autonomic dysfunction · bleeding disorders · cardiovascular disease · hypotension (avoid if severe) · intravascular volume depletion · left ventricular outflow obstruction · ocular disorders · predisposition to priapism · pulmonary veno-occlusive disease
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Dizziness · dry mouth · eye discomfort · gastrointestinal discomfort · haemorrhage · headache · myalgia · nasal complaints · nausea · vasodilation · vertigo · vision disorders
  - **Uncommon** Arrhythmias · chest pain · drowsiness · dry eye · eye disorders · eye inflammation · fatigue · feeling hot · gastroesophageal reflux disease · haematospemia · hearing impairment · hypertension · hypotension · numbness · pain in extremity · palpitations · rash · rhinitis · sinus congestion · vomiting
  - **Rare or very rare** Acute coronary syndrome · arteriosclerotic retinopathy · cerebrovascular insufficiency · glaucoma · irritability · optic neuropathy (discontinue if sudden visual impairment occurs) · oral hypoaesthesia · priapism · retinal occlusion · scleral discolouration · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · sudden cardiac death · syncope · throat tightness
- **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no evidence of harm in *animal* studies.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid in severe impairment.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if not tolerated in mild to moderate impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if not tolerated
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Sildenafil for pulmonary hypertension [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sildenafil-for-pulmonary-hypertension](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sildenafil-for-pulmonary-hypertension)

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (December 2012) that sildenafil (*Revatio*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for pulmonary arterial hypertension in children aged 1–17 years; sildenafil should only be prescribed on the advice of specialists in the Scottish Pulmonary Vascular Unit or the Scottish Adult Congenital Cardiac Service.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, pessary

##### Tablet

- ▶ **Granpidam** (Accord Healthcare Ltd)  
Sildenafil (as Sildenafil citrate) 20 mg Granpidam 20mg tablets | 90 tablet [PoM] £424.01 DT = £446.33
- ▶ **Revatio** (Pfizer Ltd)  
Sildenafil (as Sildenafil citrate) 20 mg Revatio 20mg tablets | 90 tablet [PoM] £446.33 DT = £446.33

##### Oral suspension

- ▶ **Revatio** (Pfizer Ltd)  
Sildenafil (as Sildenafil citrate) 10 mg per 1 ml Revatio 10mg/ml oral suspension sugar-free | 112 ml [PoM] £186.75

## VASODILATORS > PERIPHERAL VASODILATORS

### Tolazoline

- **DRUG ACTION** Tolazoline is an alpha-blocker and produces both pulmonary and systemic vasodilation.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Correction of pulmonary vasospasm in neonates

###### ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 1 mg/kg, to be given over 2–5 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) maintenance 200 micrograms/kg/hour if required, careful blood pressure monitoring should be carried out, doses above 300 micrograms/kg/hour associated with cardiotoxicity and renal failure.

###### ▶ BY ENDOTRACHEAL TUBE

- ▶ Neonate: 200 micrograms/kg.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Peptic ulcer disease
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiotoxic accumulation may occur with continuous infusion (particularly in renal impairment) · mitral stenosis
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Arrhythmias · blood disorder · chills · diarrhoea · epigastric pain · flushing · haematuria · haemorrhage (with high doses) · headache · hyperhidrosis · hypertension (with high doses) · hypotension (severe; with high doses) · metabolic alkalosis · nausea · oliguria · rash macular · renal failure (with high doses) · thrombocytopenia · vomiting

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Accumulates in renal impairment. Risk of cardiotoxicity.  
**Dose adjustments** Lower doses may be necessary.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood pressure regularly for sustained systemic hypotension.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Prepare a fresh solution every 24 hours. For *endotracheal administration*, dilute with 0.5–1 mL of Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

## 4.2 Hypotension and shock

### Sympathomimetics

#### Overview

The properties of sympathomimetics vary according to whether they act on alpha or on beta adrenergic receptors. Response to sympathomimetics can also vary considerably in children, particularly neonates. It is important to titrate the dose to the desired effect and to monitor the child closely.

#### Inotropic sympathomimetics

Dopamine hydrochloride p. 123 has a variable, unpredictable, and dose dependent impact on vascular tone. Low dose infusion normally causes vasodilatation, but there is little evidence that this is clinically beneficial; moderate doses increase myocardial contractility and cardiac output in older children, but in neonates moderate doses may cause a reduction in cardiac output. High doses cause vasoconstriction and increase vascular resistance, and should therefore be used with caution following cardiac surgery, or where there is co-existing neonatal pulmonary hypertension.

In neonates the response to inotropic sympathomimetics varies considerably, particularly in those born prematurely; careful dose titration and monitoring are necessary.

**Isoprenaline** injection is available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies.

#### Shock

Shock is a medical emergency associated with a high mortality. The underlying causes of shock such as haemorrhage, sepsis or myocardial insufficiency should be corrected. Additional treatment is dependent on the type of shock.

**Septic shock** is associated with severe hypovolaemia (due to vasodilation and capillary leak) which should be corrected with crystalloids or colloids. If hypotension persists despite volume replacement, dopamine hydrochloride should be started. For shock refractory to treatment with dopamine hydrochloride, if cardiac output is high and peripheral vascular resistance is low (warm shock), noradrenaline/norepinephrine p. 124 should be added *or* if cardiac output is low and peripheral vascular resistance is high (cold shock), adrenaline/epinephrine p. 136 should be added. Additionally, in cold shock, a vasodilator such as milrinone p. 127, glyceryl trinitrate p. 135, or sodium nitroprusside p. 118 (on specialist advice only) can be used to reduce vascular resistance.

If the shock is resistant to volume expansion and catecholamines, and there is suspected or proven adrenal insufficiency, low dose hydrocortisone p. 440 can be used. ACTH-stimulated plasma-cortisol concentration should be measured; however, hydrocortisone can be started without such information. Alternatively, if the child is resistant to



catecholamines, and vascular resistance is low, vasopressin p. 67 can be added.

**Neonatal septic shock** can be complicated by the transition from fetal to neonatal circulation. Treatment to reverse right ventricular failure, by decreasing pulmonary artery pressures, is commonly needed in neonates with fluid-refractory shock and persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn. Rapid administration of fluid in neonates with patent ductus arteriosus may cause left-to-right shunting and congestive heart failure induced by ventricular overload.

In **cardiogenic shock**, the aim is to improve cardiac output and to reduce the afterload on the heart. If central venous pressure is low, cautious volume expansion with a colloid or crystalloid can be used. An inotrope such as adrenaline/epinephrine or dopamine hydrochloride should be given to increase cardiac output. Dobutamine below is a peripheral vasodilator and is an alternative if hypotension is not significant.

Milrinone has both inotropic and vasodilatory effects and can be used when vascular resistance is high. Alternatively, glyceryl trinitrate or sodium nitroprusside (on specialist advice only) can be used to reduce vasoconstriction.

**Hypovolaemic shock** should be treated with a crystalloid or colloid solution (or whole or reconstituted blood if source of hypovolaemia is haemorrhage) and further steps to improve cardiac output and decrease vascular resistance can be taken, as in cardiogenic shock.

The use of sympathomimetic inotropes and vasoconstrictors should preferably be confined to the intensive care setting and undertaken with invasive haemodynamic monitoring.

See also advice on the management of anaphylactic shock in Antihistamines, allergen immunotherapy and allergic emergencies p. 171.

### Vasoconstrictor sympathomimetics

Vasoconstrictor sympathomimetics raise blood pressure transiently by acting on alpha-adrenergic receptors to constrict peripheral vessels. They are sometimes used as an emergency method of elevating blood pressure where other measures have failed.

The danger of vasoconstrictors is that although they raise blood pressure they also reduce perfusion of vital organs such as the kidney.

Ephedrine hydrochloride p. 123 is used to reverse hypotension caused by spinal and epidural anaesthesia.

Metaraminol p. 124 is used as a vasopressor during cardiopulmonary bypass.

Phenylephrine hydrochloride p. 125 causes peripheral vasoconstriction and increases arterial pressure.

Ephedrine hydrochloride, metaraminol and phenylephrine hydrochloride are rarely needed in children and should be used under specialist supervision.

Noradrenaline/norepinephrine is reserved for children with low systemic vascular resistance that is unresponsive to fluid resuscitation following septic shock, spinal shock, and anaphylaxis.

Adrenaline/epinephrine is mainly used for its inotropic action. Low doses (acting on beta receptors) cause systemic and pulmonary vasodilation, with some increase in heart rate and stroke volume and also an increase in contractility; high doses act predominantly on alpha receptors causing intense systemic vasoconstriction.

## SYMPATHOMIMETICS > INOTROPIC

### Dobutamine

● **DRUG ACTION** Dobutamine is a cardiac stimulant which acts on beta<sub>1</sub> receptors in cardiac muscle, and increases contractility.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Inotropic support in low cardiac output states, after cardiac surgery, cardiomyopathies, shock**

► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► **Neonate:** Initially 5 micrograms/kg/minute, then adjusted according to response to 2–20 micrograms/kg/minute, doses as low as 0.5–1 microgram/kg/minute have been used.

► **Child:** Initially 5 micrograms/kg/minute, then adjusted according to response to 2–20 micrograms/kg/minute, doses as low as 0.5–1 microgram/kg/minute have been used

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Phaeochromocytoma

● **CAUTIONS** Acute heart failure · acute myocardial infarction · arrhythmias · correct hypercapnia before starting and during treatment · correct hypovolaemia before starting and during treatment · correct hypoxia before starting and during treatment · correct metabolic acidosis before starting and during treatment · diabetes mellitus · extravasation may cause tissue necrosis · extreme caution or avoid in marked obstruction of cardiac ejection (such as idiopathic hypertrophic subaortic stenosis) · hyperthyroidism · ischaemic heart disease · occlusive vascular disease · severe hypotension · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · tachycardia · tolerance may develop with continuous infusions longer than 72 hours

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sympathomimetics, inotropic

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · bronchospasm · chest pain · dyspnoea · eosinophilia · fever · inflammation localised · ischaemic heart disease · nausea · palpitations · platelet aggregation inhibition (on prolonged administration) · skin reactions · urinary urgency · vasoconstriction

► **Uncommon** Myocardial infarction

► **Rare or very rare** Atrioventricular block · cardiac arrest · coronary vasospasm · hypertension · hypokalaemia · hypotension

► **Frequency not known** Anxiety · cardiomyopathy · feeling hot · headache · myoclonus · paraesthesia · tremor

● **PREGNANCY** No evidence of harm in *animal studies*—manufacturers advise use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturers advise avoid—no information available.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Dobutamine injection should be diluted before use or given undiluted with syringe pump. Dobutamine concentrate for intravenous infusion should be diluted before use.

For *continuous intravenous infusion*, using infusion pump, dilute to a concentration of 0.5–1 mg/mL (max. 5 mg/mL if fluid restricted) with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; infuse higher concentration solutions through central venous catheter only. Incompatible with bicarbonate and other strong alkaline solutions.

► In neonates *Neonatal intensive care*, dilute 30 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.5 mL/hour provides a dose of 5 micrograms/kg/minute; max. concentration of 5 mg/mL; infuse higher concentration solutions through central

venous catheter only. Incompatible with bicarbonate and other strong alkaline solutions.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for infusion

#### Solution for infusion

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sulfites

#### ▶ Dobutamine (Non-proprietary)

**Dobutamine (as Dobutamine hydrochloride) 5 mg per**

1 ml Dobutamine 250mg/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £7.50

**Dobutamine (as Dobutamine hydrochloride) 12.5 mg per**

1 ml Dobutamine 250mg/20ml concentrate for solution for infusion ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £10.00–£26.25

## Dopamine hydrochloride

- **DRUG ACTION** Dopamine is a cardiac stimulant which acts on beta<sub>1</sub> receptors in cardiac muscle, and increases contractility with little effect on rate.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**To correct the haemodynamic imbalance due to acute hypotension, shock, cardiac failure, adjunct following cardiac surgery**

▶ BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 3 micrograms/kg/minute (max. per dose 20 micrograms/kg/minute), adjusted according to response.
- ▶ Child: Initially 5 micrograms/kg/minute (max. per dose 20 micrograms/kg/minute), adjusted according to response

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Phaeochromocytoma · tachyarrhythmia

- **CAUTIONS** Correct hypovolaemia · hypertension (may raise blood pressure) · hyperthyroidism

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sympathomimetics, inotropic

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Angina pectoris · anxiety · arrhythmias · azotaemia · cardiac conduction disorder · dyspnoea · gangrene · headache · hypertension · mydriasis · nausea · palpitations · piloerection · polyuria · tremor · vasoconstriction · vomiting

- **PREGNANCY** No evidence of harm in *animal* studies—manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** May suppress lactation—not known to be harmful.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Dopamine concentrate for intravenous infusion to be diluted before use.

For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute to a max. concentration of 3.2 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Infuse higher concentrations through central venous catheter using a syringe pump to avoid extravasation and fluid overload. Incompatible with bicarbonate and other alkaline solutions.

- ▶ In neonates *Neonatal intensive care*, dilute 30 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.3 mL/hour provides a dose of 3 micrograms/kg/minute; max. concentration of 3.2 mg/mL; infuse higher concentrations through central venous catheter. Incompatible with bicarbonate and other alkaline solutions.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for infusion

#### Solution for infusion

#### ▶ Dopamine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Dopamine hydrochloride 40 mg per 1 ml** Dopamine 200mg/5ml

solution for infusion ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £20.00 (Hospital

only) | 5 ampoule [PoM] £20.00 | 10 ampoule [PoM] £9.04

**Dopamine 200mg/5ml concentrate for solution for infusion ampoules**

| 10 ampoule [PoM] £5

**Dopamine hydrochloride 160 mg per 1 ml** Dopamine 800mg/5ml

solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £34.00

## SYMPATHOMIMETICS > VASOCONSTRICTOR

## Ephedrine hydrochloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Reversal of hypotension from spinal or epidural anaesthesia**

▶ BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

▶ Child 1–11 years: 500–750 micrograms/kg every

3–4 minutes, adjusted according to response,

alternatively 17–25 mg/m<sup>2</sup> every 3–4 minutes,

adjusted according to response, injection solution to

contain ephedrine hydrochloride 3 mg/mL; maximum

30 mg per course

▶ Child 12–17 years: 3–7.5 mg every 3–4 minutes (max. per

dose 9 mg), adjusted according to response, injection

solution to contain ephedrine hydrochloride 3 mg/mL;

maximum 30 mg per course

- **CAUTIONS** Diabetes mellitus · hypertension · hyperthyroidism · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anxiety · arrhythmias · asthenia · confusion · depression · dyspnoea · headache · hyperhidrosis · insomnia · irritability · nausea · palpitations · vomiting

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Acute urinary retention

- ▶ **Frequency not known** Acute angle closure glaucoma · angina pectoris · appetite decreased · cardiac arrest · dizziness · hypokalaemia · intracranial haemorrhage · psychotic disorder · pulmonary oedema · tremor

- **PREGNANCY** Increased fetal heart rate reported with parenteral ephedrine.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk; manufacturer advises avoid—irritability and disturbed sleep reported.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *slow intravenous injection*, give via central venous catheter using a solution containing ephedrine hydrochloride 3 mg/mL.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

#### Solution for injection

#### ▶ Ephedrine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Ephedrine hydrochloride 3 mg per 1 ml** Ephedrine 30mg/10ml

solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £84.56

Ephedrine 30mg/10ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-

filled disposable injection [PoM] £7.59–£9.50 | 12 pre-filled disposable

injection [PoM] £114.00

**Ephedrine hydrochloride 30 mg per 1 ml** Ephedrine 30mg/1ml

solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £5.48–£54.80

## Metaraminol

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Acute hypotension

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 15–100 mg, adjusted according to response

#### Emergency treatment of acute hypotension

- ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 0.5–5 mg, then (by intravenous infusion) 15–100 mg, adjusted according to response

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hypertension
- **CAUTIONS** Cirrhosis · coronary vascular thrombosis · diabetes mellitus · extravasation at injection site may cause necrosis · following myocardial infarction · hypercapnia · hyperthyroidism · hypoxia · mesenteric vascular thrombosis · peripheral vascular thrombosis · Prinzmetal's variant angina · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · uncorrected hypovolaemia

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ Hypertensive response Metaraminol has a longer duration of action than noradrenaline, and an excessive vasopressor response may cause a prolonged rise in blood pressure.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Headache · hypertension
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Skin exfoliation · soft tissue necrosis
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Abscess · arrhythmias · nausea · palpitations · peripheral ischaemia
- **PREGNANCY** May reduce placental perfusion—manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood pressure and rate of flow frequently.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 30–200 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give through a central venous catheter.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

#### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Metaraminol (Non-proprietary)**  
Metaraminol (as Metaraminol tartrate) 10 mg per 1 mL Metaraminol 10mg/1mL solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £39.40

response, dilute the 1 mg/mL concentrate for infusion for this dose

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ 1 mg of noradrenaline base is equivalent to 2 mg of noradrenaline acid tartrate. **Doses expressed as the base.**

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

ASSOCIATION OF NORADRENALINE/NOREPINEPHRINE 0.08 MG/ML (4 MG IN 50 ML) SOLUTION FOR INFUSION WITH POTENTIAL RISK OF MEDICATION ERRORS

Healthcare professionals should be aware of the differences in strength and presentation between noradrenaline/norepinephrine products—manufacturer advises noradrenaline 0.08 mg/mL solution for infusion must **not** be diluted before use and should only be used for the on-going treatment of patients already established on noradrenaline therapy, whose dose requirements are clinically confirmed to be escalating.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hypertension
- **CAUTIONS** Coronary vascular thrombosis · diabetes mellitus · extravasation at injection site may cause necrosis · following myocardial infarction · hypercapnia · hyperthyroidism · hypoxia · mesenteric vascular thrombosis · peripheral vascular thrombosis · Prinzmetal's variant angina · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · uncorrected hypovolaemia
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Anxiety · arrhythmias · dyspnoea · extravasation necrosis · headache · hypertension · hypovolaemia · peripheral ischaemia
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use if potential benefit outweighs risk—may reduce placental perfusion and induce fetal bradycardia.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood pressure and rate of flow frequently.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *continuous intravenous infusion*, using 1 mg/mL concentrate for infusion, dilute to a max. concentration of noradrenaline (base) 40 micrograms/mL (higher concentrations can be used if fluid-restricted) with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride and Glucose. Infuse through central venous catheter; discard if discoloured. Incompatible with bicarbonate or alkaline solutions.
- ▶ In neonates For *neonatal intensive care*, using 1 mg/mL concentrate for infusion, dilute 600 micrograms (base)/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 20 nanograms (base)/kg/minute; infuse through central venous catheter; max. concentration of noradrenaline (base) 40 micrograms/mL (higher concentrations can be used if fluid-restricted). Discard if discoloured. Incompatible with bicarbonate or alkaline solutions.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** For a period of time, preparations on the UK market may be described as either noradrenaline base or noradrenaline acid tartrate; doses in the BNF are expressed as the base.

## Noradrenaline/norepinephrine

03-Apr-2018

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Acute hypotension (septic shock) | Shock secondary to excessive vasodilation

- ▶ BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Neonate: 20–100 nanograms/kg/minute (max. per dose 1 microgram/kg/minute), adjusted according to response, dilute the 1 mg/mL concentrate for infusion for this dose.
- ▶ Child: 20–100 nanograms/kg/minute (max. per dose 1 microgram/kg/minute), adjusted according to

### ● MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: infusion, solution for infusion

#### Solution for infusion

##### ► Noradrenaline/norepinephrine (Non-proprietary)

**Noradrenaline (as Noradrenaline acid tartrate) 80 microgram per 1 ml** Noradrenaline (base) 4mg/50ml solution for infusion vials | 10 vial [PoM] £

**Noradrenaline (as Noradrenaline acid tartrate) 1 mg per 1 ml** Noradrenaline (Norepinephrine) 4mg/4ml concentrate for solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £44.00

Noradrenaline (base) 8mg/8ml concentrate for solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £116.00  
Noradrenaline (base) 2mg/2ml solution for infusion ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £12.00 (Hospital only)

Noradrenaline (base) 4mg/4ml solution for infusion ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £22.00 (Hospital only)

Noradrenaline (base) 4mg/4ml concentrate for solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £58.00  
Noradrenaline (Norepinephrine) 2mg/2ml concentrate for solution for infusion ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £11.00

## Phenylephrine hydrochloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Acute hypotension

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child 1–11 years: 100 micrograms/kg every 1–2 hours (max. per dose 5 mg) as required
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 2–5 mg (max. per dose 5 mg), followed by 1–10 mg, after at least 15 minutes if required

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child 1–11 years: Initially 5–20 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 500 micrograms), repeated as necessary after at least 15 minutes
- Child 12–17 years: 100–500 micrograms, repeated as necessary after at least 15 minutes

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 1–15 years: Initially 100–500 nanograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response
- Child 16–17 years: Initially up to 180 micrograms/minute, reduced to 30–60 micrograms/minute, adjusted according to response

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children by intravenous infusion or injection.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hypertension · severe hyperthyroidism

- **CAUTIONS** Coronary disease · coronary vascular thrombosis · diabetes · extravasation at injection site may cause necrosis · following myocardial infarction · hypercapnia · hyperthyroidism · hypoxia · mesenteric vascular thrombosis · peripheral vascular thrombosis · Prinzmetal's variant angina · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · uncorrected hypovolaemia

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Hypertensive response Phenylephrine has a longer duration of action than noradrenaline (norepinephrine), and an excessive vasopressor response may cause a prolonged rise in blood pressure.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Angina pectoris · arrhythmias · cardiac arrest · dizziness · dyspnoea · flushing · glucose tolerance impaired · headache · hyperhidrosis · hypersalivation · hypotension · intracranial haemorrhage · metabolic change · mydriasis · palpitations · paraesthesia · peripheral

coldness · pulmonary oedema · soft tissue necrosis · syncope · urinary disorders · vomiting

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid if possible; malformations reported following use in first trimester; fetal hypoxia and bradycardia reported in late pregnancy and labour.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Contra-indicated in hypertension—monitor blood pressure and rate of flow frequently.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous injection*, dilute to a concentration of 1 mg/mL with Water for Injections and administer slowly. For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 20 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and administer as a continuous infusion via a central venous catheter using a controlled infusion device.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Intravenous administration preferred when managing acute hypotension in children.

### ● MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Phenylephrine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Phenylephrine (as Phenylephrine hydrochloride) 50 microgram per 1 ml** Phenylephrine 500micrograms/10ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £15.00 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £150.00

**Phenylephrine hydrochloride 100 microgram per 1 ml** Phenylephrine 1mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £40.00

**Phenylephrine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Phenylephrine 10mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £99.12

## 5 Heart failure

**Other drugs used for Heart failure** Bendroflumethiazide, p. 111 · Captopril, p. 112 · Chlorothiazide, p. 111 · Chlortalidone, p. 142 · Digoxin, p. 81 · Enalapril maleate, p. 113 · Glyceryl trinitrate, p. 135 · Lisinopril, p. 114

### BETA-ADRENOCEPTOR BLOCKERS > ALPHA- AND BETA-ADRENOCEPTOR BLOCKERS

103

## Carvedilol

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Adjunct in heart failure (limited information available)

► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–17 years: Initially 50 micrograms/kg twice daily (max. per dose 3.125 mg) for at least 2 weeks, then increased to 100 micrograms/kg twice daily for at least 2 weeks, then increased to 200 micrograms/kg twice daily, then increased if necessary up to 350 micrograms/kg twice daily (max. per dose 25 mg)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 18 years.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute or decompensated heart failure requiring intravenous inotropes

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta blockers, non-selective

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anaemia · asthma · diabetic control impaired · dyspepsia · eye irritation · fluid imbalance · genital oedema · hypercholesterolaemia · hyperglycaemia · hypoglycaemia · increased risk of infection · oedema · pain · peripheral vascular disease ·

postural hypotension · pulmonary oedema · renal impairment · urinary disorders · weight increased

- **Uncommon** Alopecia · angina pectoris · hyperhidrosis · presyncope · skin reactions
- **Rare or very rare** Dry mouth · hypersensitivity · leucopenia · nasal congestion · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · thrombocytopenia
- **PREGNANCY** Information on the safety of carvedilol during pregnancy is lacking. If carvedilol is used close to delivery, infants should be monitored for signs of alpha-blockade (as well as beta-blockade).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Infants should be monitored as there is a risk of possible toxicity due to alpha-blockade (in addition to beta-blockade).
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in hepatic impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor renal function during dose titration in patients with heart failure who also have renal impairment, low blood pressure, ischaemic heart disease, or diffuse vascular disease.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Carvedilol for heart failure  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/carvedilol-heart-failure-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/carvedilol-heart-failure-0)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

#### ► Carvedilol (Non-proprietary)

Carvedilol 3.125 mg Carvedilol 3.125mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]

£8.00 DT = £0.55

Carvedilol 6.25 mg Carvedilol 6.25mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]

£8.99 DT = £0.77

Carvedilol 12.5 mg Carvedilol 12.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.99

DT = £0.57

Carvedilol 25 mg Carvedilol 25mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £12.50

DT = £1.01

## DIURETICS > POTASSIUM-SPARING DIURETICS > ALDOSTERONE ANTAGONISTS

### Potassium canrenoate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Short-term diuresis for oedema in heart failure and in ascites**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: 1–2 mg/kg twice daily.

- Child 1 month–11 years: 1–2 mg/kg twice daily
- Child 12–17 years: 1–2 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg)

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

► To convert to equivalent oral spironolactone dose, multiply potassium canrenoate dose by 0.7.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in the UK.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hyperkalaemia · hyponatraemia
- **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · hypotension · potential metabolic products carcinogenic in *rodents*
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: potassium canrenoate
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Ataxia · drowsiness · headache · hypericaemia · injection site pain (on rapid administration) · menstruation irregular
  - **Uncommon** Electrolyte imbalance · eosinophilia · thrombocytopenia
  - **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · hepatotoxicity · hypersensitivity · osteomalacia · skin reactions · voice alteration

► **Frequency not known** Acidosis hyperchloraemic · breast pain · confusion (transient; with high doses) · gastrointestinal disorder · gynaecomastia · hirsutism · hypotension


- **PREGNANCY** Crosses placenta. Feminisation and undescended testes in male fetus in *animal* studies—manufacturer advises avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in breast milk—manufacturer advises avoid.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>. Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
**Monitoring** Monitor plasma-potassium concentration if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor electrolytes (discontinue if hyperkalaemia occurs).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Consult product literature. Intravenous injection to be given over at least 3 minutes.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Potassium canrenoate injection is available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

#### ► Aldactone (Imported (Germany))

Potassium canrenoate 20 mg per 1 mL Aldactone 200mg/10mL solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] 

## Spironolactone

19-Mar-2018

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Oedema in heart failure and in ascites | Nephrotic syndrome | Reduction of hypokalaemia induced by diuretics or amphotericin**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 1–2 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses; increased if necessary up to 7 mg/kg daily, in resistant ascites.

- Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 1–3 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses; increased if necessary up to 9 mg/kg daily, in resistant ascites
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 50–100 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses; increased if necessary up to 9 mg/kg daily, in resistant ascites; maximum 400 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for reduction of hypokalaemia induced by diuretics or amphotericin.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Addison’s disease · anuria · hyperkalaemia
- **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · potential metabolic products carcinogenic in *rodents*
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aldosterone antagonists
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Acidosis hyperchloraemic · acute kidney injury · agranulocytosis · alopecia · breast neoplasm benign · breast pain · confusion · dizziness · electrolyte imbalance · gastrointestinal disorder · gynaecomastia · hepatic function abnormal · hyperkalaemia (discontinue) · hypertrichosis · leg cramps · leucopenia · libido disorder · malaise · menstrual disorder · nausea · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia
- **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—feminisation of male fetus in *animal* studies.



- **BREAST FEEDING** Metabolites present in milk, but amount probably too small to be harmful.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in acute renal insufficiency or severe impairment.  
**Monitoring** Monitor plasma-potassium concentration (high risk of hyperkalaemia in renal impairment).
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor electrolytes—discontinue if hyperkalaemia occurs.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of spironolactone is required, the following strength is used: 50 mg/5 mL.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Spironolactone for heart failure [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/spironolactone-for-heart-failure](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/spironolactone-for-heart-failure)

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

##### Spironolactone (Non-proprietary)

**Spironolactone 25 mg** Spironolactone 25mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £1.95 DT = £0.99

**Spironolactone 50 mg** Spironolactone 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £9.99 DT = £4.74

**Spironolactone 100 mg** Spironolactone 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £2.96 DT = £1.76

##### Aldactone (Pfizer Ltd)

**Spironolactone 25 mg** Aldactone 25mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM](#) £8.89

**Spironolactone 50 mg** Aldactone 50mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM](#) £17.78

**Spironolactone 100 mg** Aldactone 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £9.96 DT = £1.76 | 100 tablet [PoM](#) £35.56

## PHOSPHODIESTERASE TYPE-3 INHIBITORS

### Enoximone

- **DRUG ACTION** Enoximone is a phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitor that exerts most effect on the myocardium; it has positive inotropic properties and vasodilator activity.

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Congestive heart failure, low cardiac output following cardiac surgery

► INITIALLY BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- **Neonate:** Loading dose 500 micrograms/kg, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 5–20 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response, infusion to be given over 24 hours; maximum 24 mg/kg per day.

- **Child:** Loading dose 500 micrograms/kg, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 5–20 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response, infusion dose to be given over 24 hours; maximum 24 mg/kg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CAUTIONS** Heart failure associated with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, stenotic or obstructive valvular disease or other outlet obstruction
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Headache · hypotension · insomnia
  - **Uncommon** Arrhythmias · diarrhoea · dizziness · nausea · vomiting
  - **Rare or very rare** Chills · fever · fluid retention · myalgia · oliguria · urinary retention

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Dose reduction may be required.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Consider dose reduction.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood pressure, heart rate, ECG, central venous pressure, fluid and electrolyte status, renal function, platelet count and hepatic enzymes.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Incompatible with glucose solutions. Use only plastic containers or syringes; crystal formation if glass used. Avoid extravasation.  
For intravenous administration, dilute to concentration of 2.5 mg/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Water for Injections; the initial loading dose should be given by slow intravenous injection over at least 15 minutes.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitors possess positive inotropic and vasodilator activity and are useful in infants and children with low cardiac output especially after cardiac surgery. Phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitors should be limited to short-term use because long-term oral administration has been associated with increased mortality in adults with congestive heart failure.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Enoximone for pulmonary hypertension [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/enoximone-for-pulmonary-hypertension](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/enoximone-for-pulmonary-hypertension)

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol, propylene glycol

##### Perfan (Myogen GmbH)

**Enoximone 5 mg per 1 ml** Perfán 100mg/20ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM](#)  (Hospital only)

### Milrinone

- **DRUG ACTION** Milrinone is a phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitor that exerts most effect on the myocardium; it has positive inotropic properties and vasodilator activity.

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Congestive heart failure, low cardiac output following cardiac surgery, shock

► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- **Neonate:** Initially 50–75 micrograms/kg, given over 30–60 minutes, reduce or omit initial dose if at risk of hypotension, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 30–45 micrograms/kg/hour for 2–3 days (usually for 12 hours after cardiac surgery).
- **Child:** Initially 50–75 micrograms/kg, given over 30–60 minutes, reduce or omit initial dose if at risk of hypotension, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 30–45 micrograms/kg/hour for 2–3 days (usually for 12 hours after cardiac surgery)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 18 years.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Severe hypovolaemia
- **CAUTIONS** Correct hypokalaemia · heart failure associated with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, stenotic or obstructive valvular disease or other outlet obstruction

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Arrhythmia supraventricular (increased risk in patients with pre-existing arrhythmias) · headache · hypotension
- ▶ **Uncommon** Angina pectoris · chest pain · hypokalaemia · thrombocytopenia · tremor
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Anaphylactic shock · bronchospasm · skin eruption
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Intraventricular haemorrhage · renal failure

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Use half to three-quarters normal dose and monitor response if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Monitor blood pressure, heart rate, ECG, central venous pressure, fluid and electrolyte status, renal function, platelet count and hepatic enzymes.
- ▶ Monitor renal function.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

Avoid extravasation. For intravenous infusion dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Sodium Chloride and Glucose intravenous infusion to a concentration of 200 micrograms/mL (higher concentrations of 400 micrograms/mL have been used). Loading dose may be given undiluted if fluid-restricted.

### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitors possess positive inotropic and vasodilator activity and are useful in infants and children with low cardiac output especially after cardiac surgery. Phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitors should be limited to short-term use because long-term oral administration has been associated with increased mortality in adults with congestive heart failure.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for infusion

#### Solution for injection

##### ▶ Milrinone (Non-proprietary)

**Milrinone 1 mg per 1 ml** Milrinone 10mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £35.00 | 10 ampoule [PoM] £199.06

##### ▶ Primacor (Sanofi)

**Milrinone 1 mg per 1 ml** Primacor 10mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £199.06

## 6 Hyperlipidaemia

### Lipid-regulating drugs

#### Cardiovascular disease risk factors

Atherosclerosis begins in childhood and raised serum cholesterol in children is associated with cardiovascular disease in adulthood. Lowering the cholesterol, without hindering growth and development in children and adolescents, should reduce the risk of cardiovascular disease in later life.

The risk factors for developing cardiovascular disease include raised serum cholesterol concentration, smoking, hypertension, impaired glucose tolerance, male sex, ethnicity, obesity, triglyceride concentration, chronic kidney disease, and a family history of cardiovascular disease. Heterozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia is the most common cause of raised serum cholesterol in children;

homozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia is very rare and its specialised management is not covered in *BNF for Children*. Familial hypercholesterolaemia can lead to a greater risk of early coronary heart disease and should be managed by a specialist.

Secondary causes of hypercholesterolaemia should be addressed, these include obesity, diet, diabetes mellitus, hypothyroidism, nephrotic syndrome, obstructive biliary disease, glycogen storage disease, and drugs such as corticosteroids.

#### Management

The aim of management of hypercholesterolaemia is to reduce the risk of atherosclerosis while ensuring adequate growth and development. Children with hypercholesterolaemia (or their carers) should receive advice on appropriate lifestyle changes such as improved diet, increased exercise, weight reduction, and not smoking; Hypertension p. 98 should also be managed appropriately. Drug therapy may also be necessary.

#### Hypothyroidism

Children with hypothyroidism should receive adequate thyroid replacement therapy before their requirement for lipid-regulating treatment is assessed because correction of hypothyroidism itself may resolve the lipid abnormality. Untreated hypothyroidism increases the risk of myositis with lipid regulating drugs.

#### Drug treatment in heterozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia

Lifestyle modifications alone are unlikely to lower cholesterol concentration adequately in heterozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia and drug treatment is often required. Lipid-regulating drugs should be considered by the age of 10 years. The decision to initiate drug treatment will depend on the child's age, the age of onset of coronary heart disease within the family, and the presence of other cardiovascular risk factors. In children with a family history of coronary heart disease in early adulthood, drug treatment before the age of 10 years, and a combination of lipid-regulating drugs may be necessary.

#### Drug treatment in secondary hypercholesterolaemia

If 6–12 months of dietary and other lifestyle interventions has failed to lower cholesterol concentration adequately, drug treatment may be indicated in children 10 years and older (rarely necessary in younger children) who are at a high risk of developing cardiovascular disease.

#### Choice of drugs

Experience in the use of lipid-regulating drugs in children is limited and they should be initiated on specialist advice.

**Statins** are more effective than other classes of drugs in lowering LDL-cholesterol but less effective than the fibrates in reducing triglycerides. Statins also increase concentrations of HDL-cholesterol. Statins reduce cardiovascular disease events and total mortality in adults, irrespective of the initial cholesterol concentration. They are the drugs of first choice in children and are generally well tolerated; atorvastatin p. 132 and simvastatin p. 134 are the preferred statins. Other lipid-regulating drugs can be used if statins are ineffective or are not tolerated.

Evolocumab p. 134 is licensed for the treatment of homozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia; it is used in combination with other lipid-lowering therapies.

Ezetimibe p. 130 can be used alone when statins are not tolerated, or in combination with a statin when a high dose statin fails to control cholesterol concentration adequately.

**Bile acid sequestrants** are also available but tolerability of and compliance with these drugs is poor, and their use is declining.

**Fibrates** may reduce the risk of coronary heart disease in those with low HDL-cholesterol or with raised triglycerides. Evidence for the use of a fibrate (bezafibrate p. 130 or fenofibrate p. 131) in children is limited; fibrates should be

considered only if dietary intervention and treatment with a statin and a bile acid sequestrant is unsuccessful or contra-indicated.

In hypertriglyceridaemia which cannot be controlled by very strict diet, omega-3 fatty acid compounds can be considered.

## LIPID MODIFYING DRUGS > BILE ACID SEQUESTRANTS

### Bile acid sequestrants

- **DRUG ACTION** Bile acid sequestrants act by binding bile acids, preventing their reabsorption; this promotes hepatic conversion of cholesterol into bile acids; the resultant increased LDL-receptor activity of liver cells increases the clearance of LDL-cholesterol from the plasma.
- **CAUTIONS** Interference with the absorption of fat-soluble vitamins (supplements of vitamins A, D, K, and folic acid may be required when treatment is prolonged).
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Constipation · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · headaches · nausea · vomiting
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Acidosis hyperchloraemic · appetite decreased · diarrhoea · dysphagia · haemorrhage · hypoprothrombinaemia · myalgia · night blindness · osteoporosis · skin reactions · tongue irritation · vitamin deficiencies
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Pancreatitis
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Angina pectoris · arthralgia · arthritis · asthenia · burping · chest pain · dizziness · dyspnoea · gallbladder disorders · inflammation · insomnia · pain · tachycardia
- **PREGNANCY** Bile acid sequestrants should be used with caution as although the drugs are not absorbed, they may cause fat-soluble vitamin deficiency on prolonged use.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Bile acid sequestrants should be used with caution as although the drugs are not absorbed, they may cause fat-soluble vitamin deficiency on prolonged use.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** A child's growth and development should be monitored.

**F** above

### Colestipol hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Familial hypercholesterolaemia

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 5 g 1–2 times a day, then increased in steps of 5 g every month, total daily dose may be given in 1–2 divided doses or as a single dose if tolerated; maximum 30 g per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: colestipol

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** The contents of each sachet should be mixed with at least 100 mL of water or other suitable liquid such as fruit juice or skimmed milk; alternatively it can be mixed with thin soups, cereals, yoghurt, or pulpy fruits ensuring at least 100 mL of liquid is provided.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling on administration is advised for colestipol hydrochloride granules (avoid other drugs at same time).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

##### ▶ Colestid (Pfizer Ltd)

**Colestipol hydrochloride 5 gram** Colestid 5g granules sachets plain sugar-free | 30 sachet **[PoM]** £15.05  
Colestid Orange 5g granules sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet **[PoM]** £15.05

##### Tablet

##### ▶ Colestipol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Colestipol hydrochloride 1 gram** Colestid 1g tablets | 120 tablet **[PoM]** **[X]**

**F** above

### Colestyramine

#### (Cholestyramine)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Familial hypercholesterolaemia

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6–11 years: Initially 4 g once daily, then increased to 4 g up to 3 times a day, adjusted according to response
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 4 g once daily, then increased in steps of 4 g every week; increased to 12–24 g daily in 1–4 divided doses, adjusted according to response; maximum 36 g per day

##### Pruritus associated with partial biliary obstruction and primary biliary cirrhosis

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 1 g once daily, adjusted according to response, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–4 divided doses; maximum 9 g per day
- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 2 g once daily, adjusted according to response, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–4 divided doses; maximum 18 g per day
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 4 g once daily, adjusted according to response, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–4 divided doses; maximum 24 g per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 4–8 g once daily, adjusted according to response, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–4 divided doses; maximum 36 g per day

##### Diarrhoea associated with Crohn's disease, ileal resection, vagotomy, diabetic vagal neuropathy, and radiation

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 1 g once daily, adjusted according to response, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–4 divided doses, if no response within 3 days an alternative therapy should be initiated; maximum 9 g per day
- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 2 g once daily, adjusted according to response, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–4 divided doses, if no response within 3 days an alternative therapy should be initiated; maximum 18 g per day
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 4 g once daily, adjusted according to response, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–4 divided doses, if no response within 3 days an alternative therapy should be initiated; maximum 24 g per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 4–8 g once daily, adjusted according to response, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–4 divided doses, if no response within 3 days an alternative therapy should be initiated; maximum 36 g per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 6 years to reduce cholesterol.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Complete biliary obstruction (not likely to be effective)

# 130 Hyperlipidaemia

BNFC 2018–2019

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: colestyramine
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** The contents of each sachet should be mixed with at least 150 mL of water or other suitable liquid such as fruit juice, skimmed milk, thin soups, and pulpy fruits with a high moisture content.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling on administration is advised for colestyramine powder (avoid other drugs at same time).

## MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

### Powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13  
EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame, sucrose

#### ► Colestyramine (Non-proprietary)

**Colestyramine anhydrous 4 gram** Colestyramine 4g oral powder sachets | 50 sachet PoM X DT = £10.76  
Colestyramine 4g oral powder sachets sugar free sugar-free | 50 sachet PoM £30.00 DT = £16.15

#### ► Questran (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Colestyramine anhydrous 4 gram** Questran 4g oral powder sachets | 50 sachet PoM £10.76 DT = £10.76

#### ► Questran Light (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Colestyramine anhydrous 4 gram** Questran Light 4g oral powder sachets sugar-free | 50 sachet PoM £16.15 DT = £16.15

## LIPID MODIFYING DRUGS > CHOLESTEROL ABSORPTION INHIBITORS

### Ezetimibe

19-May-2016

- **DRUG ACTION** Ezetimibe inhibits the intestinal absorption of cholesterol.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Adjunct to dietary measures and statin treatment in primary hypercholesterolaemia | Adjunct to dietary measures and statin in homozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia | Primary hypercholesterolaemia (if statin inappropriate or not tolerated) | Adjunct to dietary measures in homozygous sitosterolaemia**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 10–17 years: 10 mg daily

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ezetimibe
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Asthenia · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal disorders
  - **Uncommon** Appetite decreased · arthralgia · chest pain · cough · hot flush · hypertension · muscle complaints · nausea · pain
  - **Frequency not known** Constipation · depression · dizziness · dyspnoea · hepatitis · myopathy · pancreatitis · paraesthesia · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in moderate and severe impairment—may accumulate.

## MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Tablet

#### ► Ezetimibe (Non-proprietary)

**Ezetimibe 10 mg** Ezetimibe 10mg tablets | 28 tablet PoM £22.36-£26.31 DT = £26.31

#### ► Ezetrol (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Ezetimibe 10 mg** Ezetrol 10mg tablets | 28 tablet PoM £26.31 DT = £26.31

Combinations available: *Simvastatin with ezetimibe*, p. 134

## LIPID MODIFYING DRUGS > FIBRATES

### Bezafibrate

- **DRUG ACTION** Fibrates act by decreasing serum triglycerides; they have variable effect on LDL-cholesterol.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Hyperlipidaemia including familial hypercholesterolaemia (administered on expert advice)**

► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 10–17 years: 200 mg once daily (max. per dose 200 mg 3 times a day), adjusted according to response

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Gall bladder disease · hypoalbuminaemia · nephrotic syndrome · photosensitivity to fibrates
- **CAUTIONS** Correct hypothyroidism before initiating treatment
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: fibrates
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · gastrointestinal disorder
  - **Uncommon** Acute kidney injury · alopecia · cholestasis · constipation · diarrhoea · dizziness · erectile dysfunction · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · muscle complaints · muscle weakness · nausea · photosensitivity reaction · skin reactions
  - **Rare or very rare** Cholelithiasis · depression · insomnia · interstitial lung disease · pancreatitis · pancytopenia · paraesthesia · peripheral neuropathy · rhabdomyolysis (increased risk in renal impairment) · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · thrombocytopenic purpura
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise avoid—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe liver disease.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

Myotoxicity Special care needed in patients with renal disease, as progressive increases in serum creatinine concentration or failure to follow dosage guidelines may result in myotoxicity (rhabdomyolysis); discontinue if myotoxicity suspected or creatine kinase concentration increases significantly.

Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 15 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 15–60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Consider monitoring of liver function and creatine kinase when fibrates used in combination with a statin.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Fibrates are mainly used in those whose serum-triglyceride concentration is greater than 10 mmol/litre or in those who cannot tolerate a statin (specialist use).

## MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

#### ► Bezafibrate (Non-proprietary)

**Bezafibrate 200 mg** Bezafibrate 200mg tablets | 100 tablet PoM £8.50 DT = £4.69

#### ► Bezalip (Teva UK Ltd)

**Bezafibrate 200 mg** Bezalip 200mg tablets | 100 tablet PoM £8.63 DT = £4.69

## Fenofibrate

14-Jun-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Fibrates act by decreasing serum triglycerides; they have variable effect on LDL-cholesterol.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Hyperlipidaemias including familial hypercholesterolaemia (administered on expert advice)

##### ► BY MOUTH USING CAPSULES

- Child 4–14 years: One 67 mg (micronised) capsule per 20 kg body-weight daily, maximum four 67 mg capsules daily, or max. three 67 mg capsules daily with concomitant statin
- Child 15–17 years: Initially 3 capsules daily, then increased if necessary to 4 capsules daily, max. 3 capsules daily with concomitant statin, dose relates to 67 mg (micronised) capsules

#### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- Manufacturer advises max. dose 200 mg daily with concurrent use of a statin—no specific recommendation made for children.

- **UNLICENSED USE** 200 mg and 267 mg capsules not licensed in children. Tablets not licensed in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Gall bladder disease · pancreatitis (unless due to severe hypertriglyceridaemia) · photosensitivity to ketoprofen

- **CAUTIONS** Correct hypothyroidism before initiating treatment

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: fibrates

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · diarrhoea · flatulence · nausea · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Cholelithiasis · embolism and thrombosis · headache · muscle complaints · myopathy · pancreatitis · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions
- **Rare or very rare** Alopecia · hepatic disorders · photosensitivity reaction
- **Frequency not known** Fatigue · interstitial lung disease · rhabdomyolysis (increased risk in renal impairment) · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid—embryotoxicity in *animal* studies.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturers advise avoid—no information available.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution in mild-to-moderate impairment; avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
Myotoxicity Special care needed in patients with renal disease, as progressive increases in serum creatinine concentration or failure to follow dosage guidelines may result in myotoxicity (rhabdomyolysis); discontinue if myotoxicity suspected or creatine kinase concentration increases significantly.

**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises max. 67 mg daily if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–59 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Manufacturer advises monitor hepatic transaminases every 3 months during the first 12 months of treatment and periodically thereafter—discontinue treatment if levels increase to more than 3 times the upper limit of normal; monitor serum creatinine levels during the first 3 months of treatment and periodically thereafter—interrupt treatment if creatinine level is 50% above the upper limit of normal.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Fibrates are mainly used in those whose serum-triglyceride concentration is greater than 10 mmol/litre or in those who cannot tolerate a statin (specialist use).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

##### ► Fenofibrate (Non-proprietary)

**Fenofibrate micronised 67 mg** Fenofibrate micronised 67mg capsules | 90 capsule [PoM] £23.30 DT = £22.64

**Fenofibrate micronised 200 mg** Fenofibrate micronised 200mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £21.75 DT = £3.65

**Fenofibrate micronised 267 mg** Fenofibrate micronised 267mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £21.75 DT = £5.32

##### ► Lipantil Micro (Mylan)

**Fenofibrate micronised 67 mg** Lipantil Micro 67 capsules | 90 capsule [PoM] £23.30 DT = £22.64

**Fenofibrate micronised 200 mg** Lipantil Micro 200 capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £14.23 DT = £3.65

**Fenofibrate micronised 267 mg** Lipantil Micro 267 capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £21.75 DT = £5.32

## LIPID MODIFYING DRUGS ► STATINS

## Statins



- **DRUG ACTION** Statins competitively inhibit 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A (HMG CoA) reductase, an enzyme involved in cholesterol synthesis, especially in the liver.

- **CAUTIONS** High alcohol intake · history of liver disease · hypothyroidism · patients at increased risk of muscle toxicity, including myopathy or rhabdomyolysis (e.g. those with a personal or family history of muscular disorders, previous history of muscular toxicity and a high alcohol intake)

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Muscle effects** Muscle toxicity can occur with all statins, however the likelihood increases with higher doses and in certain patients (see below). Statins should be used with caution in patients at increased risk of muscle toxicity, including those with a personal or family history of muscular disorders, previous history of muscular toxicity, a high alcohol intake, renal impairment or hypothyroidism.

In patients at increased risk of muscle effects, a statin should not usually be started if the baseline creatine kinase concentration is more than 5 times the upper limit of normal (some patients may present with an extremely elevated baseline creatine kinase concentration, for example because of a physical occupation or rigorous exercise—specialist advice should be sought regarding consideration of statin therapy in these patients).

- **Hypothyroidism** Hypothyroidism should be managed adequately before starting treatment with a statin.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Asthenia · constipation · diarrhoea · dizziness · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · myalgia · nausea · sleep disorders · thrombocytopenia
- **Uncommon** Alopecia · hepatic disorders · memory loss · pancreatitis · paraesthesia · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · vomiting
- **Rare or very rare** Myopathy · peripheral neuropathy · tendinopathy
- **Frequency not known** Depression · diabetes mellitus (in those at risk) · interstitial lung disease

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Muscle effects** The risk of myopathy, myositis, and rhabdomyolysis associated with statin use is rare. Although myalgia has been reported commonly in patients receiving statins, muscle toxicity truly attributable to statin use is rare. When a statin is suspected to be the cause of myopathy, and creatine kinase concentration is markedly elevated or if muscular symptoms are severe,



treatment should be discontinued. If symptoms resolve and creatine kinase concentrations return to normal, the statin should be reintroduced at a lower dose and the patient monitored closely.

**Interstitial lung disease** If patients develop symptoms such as dyspnoea, cough, and weight loss, they should seek medical attention.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Adequate contraception is required during treatment and for 1 month afterwards.
  - **PREGNANCY** Statins should be avoided in pregnancy (discontinue 3 months before attempting to conceive) as congenital anomalies have been reported and the decreased synthesis of cholesterol possibly affects fetal development.
  - **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Statins should be used with caution in those with a history of liver disease. Avoid in active liver disease or when there are unexplained persistent elevations in serum transaminases.
  - **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
    - ▶ Before starting treatment with statins, at least one full lipid profile (non-fasting) should be measured, including total cholesterol, HDL-cholesterol, non-HDL-cholesterol (calculated as total cholesterol minus HDL-cholesterol), and triglyceride concentrations, thyroid-stimulating hormone, and renal function should also be assessed.
    - ▶ Liver function There is little information available on a rational approach to liver-function monitoring; however, NICE suggests that liver enzymes should be measured before treatment, and repeated within 3 months and at 12 months of starting treatment, unless indicated at other times by signs or symptoms suggestive of hepatotoxicity (NICE clinical guideline 181 (July 2014). Lipid Modification—Cardiovascular risk assessment and the modification of blood lipids for the primary and secondary prevention of cardiovascular disease).
- Those with serum transaminases that are raised, but less than 3 times the upper limit of the reference range, should **not** be routinely excluded from statin therapy. Those with serum transaminases of more than 3 times the upper limit of the reference range should discontinue statin therapy.
- ▶ Creatine kinase Creatine kinase concentration should be measured in children before treatment and if unexplained muscle pain occurs.
  - **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Advise patients to report promptly unexplained muscle pain, tenderness, or weakness.

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Epistaxis · hyperglycaemia · hypersensitivity · joint disorders · laryngeal pain · nasopharyngitis · pain
- ▶ **Uncommon** Appetite decreased · burping · chest pain · fatigue · fever · hearing impairment · hypoglycaemia · malaise · numbness · peripheral oedema · taste altered · vision disorders · weight increased
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · gynaecomastia · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for atorvastatin tablets (muscle effects). Medicines for Children leaflet: Atorvastatin for high cholesterol [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/atorvastatin-high-cholesterol-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/atorvastatin-high-cholesterol-0)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### ▶ Atorvastatin (Non-proprietary)

**Atorvastatin (as Atorvastatin calcium trihydrate)**

**10 mg** Atorvastatin 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £13.00 DT = £0.57 | 90 tablet [PoM](#) £41.78

**Atorvastatin (as Atorvastatin calcium trihydrate)**

**20 mg** Atorvastatin 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £24.64 DT = £0.70 | 90 tablet [PoM](#) £79.20

**Atorvastatin (as Atorvastatin calcium trihydrate)**

**30 mg** Atorvastatin 30mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £24.76 DT = £24.63

**Atorvastatin (as Atorvastatin calcium trihydrate)**

**40 mg** Atorvastatin 40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £24.64 DT = £0.98 | 90 tablet [PoM](#) £79.20

**Atorvastatin (as Atorvastatin calcium trihydrate)**

**60 mg** Atorvastatin 60mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £28.39 DT = £28.20

**Atorvastatin (as Atorvastatin calcium trihydrate)**

**80 mg** Atorvastatin 80mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £28.21 DT = £2.06 | 90 tablet [PoM](#) £90.67

##### ▶ Lipitor (Pfizer Ltd)

**Atorvastatin (as Atorvastatin calcium trihydrate) 10 mg** Lipitor 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £13.00 DT = £0.57

**Atorvastatin (as Atorvastatin calcium trihydrate) 20 mg** Lipitor 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £24.64 DT = £0.70

**Atorvastatin (as Atorvastatin calcium trihydrate) 40 mg** Lipitor 40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £24.64 DT = £0.98

**Atorvastatin (as Atorvastatin calcium trihydrate) 80 mg** Lipitor 80mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £28.21 DT = £2.06

#### Chewable tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 24

##### ▶ Lipitor (Pfizer Ltd)

**Atorvastatin (as Atorvastatin calcium trihydrate) 10 mg** Lipitor 10mg chewable tablets sugar-free | 30 tablet [PoM](#) £13.80 DT = £13.80

**Atorvastatin (as Atorvastatin calcium trihydrate) 20 mg** Lipitor 20mg chewable tablets sugar-free | 30 tablet [PoM](#) £26.40 DT = £26.40

## Atorvastatin

07-Jun-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Hyperlipidaemia including familial hypercholesterolaemia**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 10–17 years: Initially 10 mg once daily, then increased if necessary up to 20 mg once daily, dose to be adjusted at intervals of at least 4 weeks

**Homozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 10–17 years: Initially 10 mg once daily, then increased if necessary up to 80 mg once daily, dose to be adjusted at intervals of at least 4 weeks

### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- ▶ Manufacturer advises if concurrent use of ciclosporin is unavoidable, max. dose cannot exceed 10 mg daily.

- **CAUTIONS** Haemorrhagic stroke
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: statins

## Fluvastatin

12-Apr-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Heterozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia**

- ▶ **INITIALLY BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 9–17 years: Initially 20 mg daily, dose to be taken in the evening, then (by mouth) adjusted in steps of 20 mg daily (max. per dose 40 mg twice daily), adjusted at intervals of at least 6 weeks; maximum 80 mg per day
- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 9–17 years: 80 mg daily, dose form is not appropriate for initial dose titration

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: statins
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · face oedema · lupus-like syndrome · muscle weakness · sensation abnormal · vasculitis
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises doses above 40 mg daily should be initiated with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for fluvastatin tablets/capsules (muscle effects).
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions


The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (February 2004) that fluvastatin is accepted for restricted use for the secondary prevention of coronary events after percutaneous coronary angioplasty; if the patient has previously been receiving another statin, then there is no need to change the statin.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Modified-release tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

  - ▶ **Fluvastatin (Non-proprietary)**  
Fluvastatin (as Fluvastatin sodium) 80 mg Fluvastatin 80mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  DT = £19.20
  - ▶ **Dorisin XL** (Aspire Pharma Ltd)  
Fluvastatin (as Fluvastatin sodium) 80 mg Dorisin XL 80mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £19.20 DT = £19.20
  - ▶ **Lescol XL** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
Fluvastatin (as Fluvastatin sodium) 80 mg Lescol XL 80mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £19.20 DT = £19.20
  - ▶ **Nandovar XL** (Sandoz Ltd)  
Fluvastatin (as Fluvastatin sodium) 80 mg Nandovar XL 80mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £16.32 DT = £19.20

#### Capsule

- ▶ **Fluvastatin (Non-proprietary)**  
Fluvastatin (as Fluvastatin sodium) 20 mg Fluvastatin 20mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £6.96 DT = £2.01
- ▶ **Fluvastatin (as Fluvastatin sodium) 40 mg** Fluvastatin 40mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £7.42 DT = £2.22

F 131

04-Jun-2017

## Pravastatin sodium

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Hyperlipidaemia including familial hypercholesterolaemia

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ **Child 8–13 years:** 10 mg daily, then increased if necessary up to 20 mg daily, dose to be taken at night, dose to be adjusted at intervals of at least 4 weeks
- ▶ **Child 14–17 years:** 10 mg daily, then increased if necessary up to 40 mg daily, dose to be taken at night, dose to be adjusted at intervals of at least 4 weeks

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: statins
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Fatigue · hair abnormal · scalp abnormal · urinary disorders · vision disorders
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Fulminant hepatic necrosis · polymyositis
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—small amount of drug present in breast milk.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Start with lower doses in moderate to severe impairment.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for pravastatin tablets (muscle effects).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### ▶ Pravastatin sodium (Non-proprietary)

- ▶ **Pravastatin sodium 10 mg** Pravastatin 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £16.10 DT = £0.55
- ▶ **Pravastatin sodium 20 mg** Pravastatin 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £29.60 DT = £0.87
- ▶ **Pravastatin sodium 40 mg** Pravastatin 40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £29.60 DT = £1.10

F 131

05-Feb-2018

## Rosuvastatin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Heterozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia (specialist use only)

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ **Child 6–9 years:** Initially 5 mg once daily, then increased if necessary up to 10 mg once daily, dose to be increased gradually at intervals of at least 4 weeks
- ▶ **Child 10–17 years:** Initially 5 mg once daily, then increased if necessary up to 20 mg once daily, dose to be increased gradually at intervals of at least 4 weeks, use lower max. dose in children with risk factors for myopathy or rhabdomyolysis (including personal or family history of muscular disorders or toxicity)

#### Homozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia (specialist use only)

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ **Child 6–17 years:** Initially 5–10 mg once daily, then increased if necessary up to 20 mg once daily, dose to be increased gradually at intervals of at least 4 weeks, use lower max. dose in children with risk factors for myopathy or rhabdomyolysis (including personal or family history of muscular disorders or toxicity)
- ▶ **Child 6–17 years (patients of Asian origin):** Initially 5 mg once daily, then increased if necessary up to 20 mg once daily, dose to be increased gradually at intervals of at least 4 weeks, use lower max. dose in children with risk factors for myopathy or rhabdomyolysis (including personal or family history of muscular disorders or toxicity)

- **CAUTIONS** Known genetic polymorphisms—consult product literature · patients of Asian origin
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: statins
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Arthralgia · gynaecomastia · haematuria · polyneuropathy
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Cough · dyspnoea · oedema · proteinuria · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · tendon disorders
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Manufacturer advises consider routine monitoring of renal function when using 40 mg daily dose.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for rosuvastatin tablets (muscle effects).

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Tablet

##### Rosuvastatin (Non-proprietary)

**Rosuvastatin (as Rosuvastatin calcium) 5 mg** Rosuvastatin 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £18.03 DT = £2.92

**Rosuvastatin (as Rosuvastatin calcium) 10 mg** Rosuvastatin 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £18.03 DT = £2.92

**Rosuvastatin (as Rosuvastatin calcium) 20 mg** Rosuvastatin 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £26.02 DT = £4.48

**Rosuvastatin (as Rosuvastatin calcium) 40 mg** Rosuvastatin 40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £29.69 DT = £5.97

##### Crestor (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Rosuvastatin (as Rosuvastatin calcium) 5 mg** Crestor 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £18.03 DT = £2.92

**Rosuvastatin (as Rosuvastatin calcium) 10 mg** Crestor 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £18.03 DT = £2.92

**Rosuvastatin (as Rosuvastatin calcium) 20 mg** Crestor 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £26.02 DT = £4.48

**Rosuvastatin (as Rosuvastatin calcium) 40 mg** Crestor 40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £29.69 DT = £5.97

F 131

## Simvastatin

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Hyperlipidaemia including familial hypercholesterolaemia**

#### BY MOUTH

- Child 5–9 years: Initially 10 mg once daily, then increased if necessary up to 20 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night, increased at intervals of at least 4 weeks
- Child 10–17 years: Initially 10 mg once daily, then increased if necessary up to 40 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night, increased at intervals of at least 4 weeks

#### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- Manufacturer advises max. dose 10 mg daily with concurrent use of bezafibrate—no specific recommendation made for children.
- Manufacturer advises max. dose 20 mg daily with concurrent use of amiodarone or amlodipine—no specific recommendation made for children.
- Manufacturer advises reduce dose with concurrent use of some moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 (max. 20 mg daily with verapamil and diltiazem)—no specific recommendation made for children.

- UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 10 years.

- INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: statins

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

- Rare or very rare** Acute kidney injury · anaemia · muscle cramps
- Frequency not known** Cognitive impairment

- BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Doses above 10 mg daily should be used with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for simvastatin tablets/oral suspension (muscle effects).

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Oral suspension

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

##### Simvastatin (Non-proprietary)

**Simvastatin 4 mg per 1 ml** Simvastatin 20mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £126.87 DT = £126.87

**Simvastatin 8 mg per 1 ml** Simvastatin 40mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £193.80 DT = £193.80

#### Tablet

##### Simvastatin (Non-proprietary)

**Simvastatin 10 mg** Simvastatin 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £18.00 DT = £0.35

**Simvastatin 20 mg** Simvastatin 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £29.60 DT = £0.45

**Simvastatin 40 mg** Simvastatin 40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £29.60 DT = £0.65

**Simvastatin 80 mg** Simvastatin 80mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £29.61 DT = £1.28

##### Simvador (Discovery Pharmaceuticals)

**Simvastatin 10 mg** Simvador 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.34 DT = £0.35

**Simvastatin 20 mg** Simvador 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.44 DT = £0.45

**Simvastatin 40 mg** Simvador 40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.64 DT = £0.65

**Simvastatin 80 mg** Simvador 80mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.27 DT = £1.28

##### Zocor (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Simvastatin 10 mg** Zocor 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £18.03 DT = £0.35

**Simvastatin 20 mg** Zocor 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £29.69 DT = £0.45

**Simvastatin 40 mg** Zocor 40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £29.69 DT = £0.65

**Simvastatin 80 mg** Zocor 80mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £29.69 DT = £1.28

## Simvastatin with ezetimibe

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, simvastatin above, ezetimibe p. 130.

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Homozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia, primary hypercholesterolaemia, and mixed hyperlipidaemia in patients over 10 years stabilised on the individual components in the same proportions, or for patients not adequately controlled by statin alone**

#### BY MOUTH

- Child (initiated by a specialist): (consult product literature)

- INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ezetimibe · statins

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

##### Inegy (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Ezetimibe 10 mg, Simvastatin 20 mg** Inegy 10mg/20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £33.42 DT = £33.42

**Ezetimibe 10 mg, Simvastatin 40 mg** Inegy 10mg/40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £38.98 DT = £38.98

**Ezetimibe 10 mg, Simvastatin 80 mg** Inegy 10mg/80mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £41.21 DT = £41.21

## LIPID MODIFYING DRUGS > OTHER

## Evolocumab

24-Apr-2017

- DRUG ACTION** Evolocumab binds to a pro-protein involved in the regulation of LDL receptors on liver cells; receptor numbers are increased, which results in increased uptake of LDL-cholesterol from the blood.

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Homozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia (in combination with other lipid-lowering therapies)**

#### BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 420 mg every month; increased if necessary to 420 mg every 2 weeks, if

inadequate response after 12 weeks of treatment, to be administered into the thigh, abdomen or upper arm

#### **Homozygous familial hypercholesterolaemia in patients on apheresis (in combination with other lipid-lowering therapies)**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 12–17 years: 420 mg every 2 weeks, to correspond with apheresis schedule, to be administered into the thigh, abdomen or upper arm

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Arthralgia · back pain · increased risk of infection · nausea · skin reactions

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—limited information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises monitor in moderate impairment—possible reduced efficacy; use with caution in severe impairment—no information available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—no information available.

- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Manufacturer advises store in a refrigerator (2–8°C)—consult product literature for further information regarding storage outside refrigerator.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and their carers should be given training in subcutaneous injection technique.

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

- Repatha (Amgen Ltd) ▼

Evolocumab 140 mg per 1 mL Repatha 140mg/1mL solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection (PoM) £170.10

- Repatha SureClick (Amgen Ltd) ▼

Evolocumab 140 mg per 1 mL Repatha SureClick 140mg/1mL solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 2 pre-filled disposable injection (PoM) £340.20

magnetic resonance imaging procedures, cardioversion, or diathermy · recent history of myocardial infarction · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · tolerance · ventilation and perfusion abnormalities

#### **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- **Tolerance** Children receiving nitrates continuously throughout the day can develop tolerance (with reduced therapeutic effects). Reduction of blood-nitrate concentrations to low levels for 4 to 8 hours each day usually maintains effectiveness in such patients.

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · asthenia · cerebral ischaemia · dizziness · drowsiness · flushing · headache · hypotension · nausea · peripheral oedema · vomiting

- **Uncommon** Anorectal disorder · cardiac disorder · circulatory collapse · cyanosis · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · haemorrhage · skin reactions · syncope

- **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · angle closure glaucoma · hypoxia · methaemoglobinemia · myalgia · respiratory disorders · restlessness · Stevens-Johnson syndrome

- **Frequency not known** Drug tolerance · hyperhidrosis · palpitations · tongue blistering · vertigo

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in nitrate hypersensitivity.

- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available—manufacturers advise use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Caution in severe impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise use with caution in severe impairment.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood pressure and heart rate during intravenous infusion.

- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal.

▮ **above**

09-Mar-2018

## **Glyceril trinitrate**

#### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Hypertension during and after cardiac surgery | Heart failure after cardiac surgery | Coronary vasoconstriction in myocardial ischaemia | Vasoconstriction in shock**

► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- **Neonate:** 0.2–0.5 microgram/kg/minute, adjusted according to response, maintenance 1–3 micrograms/kg/minute (max. per dose 10 micrograms/kg/minute).

- **Child:** Initially 0.2–0.5 microgram/kg/minute, adjusted according to response, maintenance 1–3 micrograms/kg/minute (max. per dose 10 micrograms/kg/minute); maximum 200 micrograms/minute

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: nitrates

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

#### ● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- **With intravenous use** For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute to max. concentration of 400 micrograms/mL (but concentration of 1 mg/mL has been used via a central venous catheter) with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. *Neonatal intensive care*, dilute 3 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 1 mL/hour provides a dose of 1 microgram/kg/minute; max. concentration of 400 micrograms/mL (but concentration of 1 mg/mL has been used via a central venous catheter).
- **With intravenous use** Glass or polyethylene apparatus is preferable; loss of potency will occur if PVC is used. Glyceril trinitrate 1 mg/mL to be diluted before use or

## **7 Myocardial ischaemia**

### **NITRATES**

### **Nitrates**

#### **Overview**

Nitrates are potent coronary vasodilators, but their principal benefit follows from a reduction in venous return which reduces left ventricular work. Unwanted effects such as flushing, headache, and postural hypotension may limit therapy, especially if the child is unusually sensitive to the effects of nitrates or is hypovolaemic. Glyceril trinitrate below is also used in extravasation.

### **Nitrates**

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Aortic stenosis · cardiac tamponade · constrictive pericarditis · hypertrophic cardiomyopathy · hypotensive conditions · hypovolaemia · marked anaemia · mitral stenosis · raised intracranial pressure due to cerebral haemorrhage · raised intracranial pressure due to head trauma · toxic pulmonary oedema

- **CAUTIONS** Heart failure due to obstruction · hypothermia · hypothyroidism · hypoxaemia · malnutrition · metal-containing transdermal systems should be removed before

given undiluted with syringe pump. Glyceryl trinitrate 5 mg/ml to be diluted before use.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ointment

#### **Solution for infusion**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Ethanol, propylene glycol

#### ► **Glyceryl trinitrate (Non-proprietary)**

**Glyceryl trinitrate 1 mg per 1 ml** Glyceryl trinitrate 50mg/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £15.90

**Glyceryl trinitrate 5 mg per 1 ml** Glyceryl trinitrate 50mg/10ml solution for infusion ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £64.90 (Hospital only)

Glyceryl trinitrate 25mg/5ml solution for infusion ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £32.45 (Hospital only)

#### ► **Nitrocline (Aspire Pharma Ltd)**

**Glyceryl trinitrate 1 mg per 1 ml** Nitrocline 10mg/10ml solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £58.75 (Hospital only)

#### ► **Nitronal (Intrapharm Laboratories Ltd)**

**Glyceryl trinitrate 1 mg per 1 ml** Nitronal 5mg/5ml solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £18.04

Nitronal 50mg/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £14.76

## 7.1 Cardiac arrest

### Cardiopulmonary resuscitation

#### Overview

The algorithms for cardiopulmonary resuscitation (Life support algorithm (image) p. 1107) reflect the recommendations of the Resuscitation Council (UK); they cover paediatric basic life support, paediatric advanced life support, and newborn life support. The guidelines are available at [www.resus.org.uk](http://www.resus.org.uk).

#### Paediatric advanced life support

Cardiopulmonary (cardiac) arrest in children is rare and frequently represents the terminal event of progressive shock or respiratory failure.

During cardiopulmonary arrest in children without intravenous access, the intraosseous route is chosen because it provides rapid and effective response; if circulatory access cannot be gained, the endotracheal tube can be used. When the endotracheal route is used ten times the intravenous dose should be used; the drug should be injected quickly down a narrow bore suction catheter beyond the tracheal end of the tube and then flushed in with 1 or 2 mL of sodium chloride 0.9%. The endotracheal route is useful for lipid-soluble drugs, including lidocaine hydrochloride p. 826, adrenaline/epinephrine below, atropine sulfate p. 810, and naloxone hydrochloride p. 842. Drugs that are not lipid-soluble (e.g. sodium bicarbonate p. 586 and calcium chloride p. 593) should not be administered by this route because they will injure the airways.

For the management of acute anaphylaxis, see allergic emergencies under Antihistamines, allergen immunotherapy and allergic emergencies p. 171.

### SYMPATHOMIMETICS > VASOCONSTRICTOR

#### Adrenaline/epinephrine

27-Sep-2017

• **DRUG ACTION** Acts on both alpha and beta receptors and increases both heart rate and contractility (beta<sub>1</sub> effects); it can cause peripheral vasodilation (a beta<sub>2</sub> effect) or vasoconstriction (an alpha effect).

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Acute hypotension**

► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► **Neonate:** Initially 100 nanograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response, higher doses up to 1.5 micrograms/kg/minute have been used in acute hypotension.

► **Child:** Initially 100 nanograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response, higher doses up to 1.5 micrograms/kg/minute have been used in acute hypotension

##### **Croup (when not effectively controlled with corticosteroid treatment)**

► BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION

► **Child 1 month–11 years:** 400 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 5 mg), dose to be repeated after 30 minutes if necessary

#### PHARMACOKINETICS

► The effects of nebulised adrenaline for the treatment of croup lasts for 2–3 hours.

##### **Emergency treatment of acute anaphylaxis (under expert supervision) | Angioedema (if laryngeal oedema is present) (under expert supervision)**

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► **Child 1 month–5 years:** 150 micrograms, doses may be repeated several times if necessary at 5 minute intervals according to blood pressure, pulse, and respiratory function, suitable syringe to be used for measuring small volume; injected preferably into the anterolateral aspect of the middle third of the thigh

► **Child 6–11 years:** 300 micrograms, doses may be repeated several times if necessary at 5 minute intervals according to blood pressure, pulse, and respiratory function, to be injected preferably into the anterolateral aspect of the middle third of the thigh

► **Child 12–17 years:** 500 micrograms, to be injected preferably into the anterolateral aspect of the middle third of the thigh, doses may be repeated several times if necessary at 5 minute intervals according to blood pressure, pulse, and respiratory function, 300 micrograms (0.3 mL) to be administered if child small or prepubertal

##### **Acute anaphylaxis when there is doubt as to the adequacy of the circulation (specialist use only) | Angioedema (if laryngeal oedema is present) (specialist use only)**

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► **Child:** 1 microgram/kg (max. per dose 50 micrograms), using dilute 1 in 10 000 adrenaline injection, dose to be repeated according to response, if multiple doses required, adrenaline should be given as a slow intravenous infusion stopping when a response has been obtained

#### EMERADE® 150 MICROGRAMS

##### **Acute anaphylaxis (for self-administration)**

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► **Child (body-weight up to 15 kg):** 150 micrograms, then 150 micrograms after 5–15 minutes as required

► **Child (body-weight 15–30 kg):** 150 micrograms, then 150 micrograms after 5–15 minutes as required, on the basis of a dose of 10 micrograms/kg, 300 micrograms may be more appropriate for some children



**EMERADE® 300 MICROGRAMS****Acute anaphylaxis (for self-administration)**

## ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child (body-weight 30 kg and above): 300 micrograms, then 300 micrograms after 5–15 minutes as required

**EMERADE® 500 MICROGRAMS****Acute anaphylaxis (for self-administration for patients at risk of severe anaphylaxis)**

## ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child 12–17 years: 500 micrograms, then 500 micrograms after 5–15 minutes as required

**EPIPEN® AUTO-INJECTOR 0.3MG****Acute anaphylaxis (for self-administration)**

## ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child (body-weight 30 kg and above): 300 micrograms, then 300 micrograms after 5–15 minutes as required

**EPIPEN® JR AUTO-INJECTOR 0.15MG****Acute anaphylaxis (for self-administration)**

## ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child (body-weight up to 15 kg): 150 micrograms, then 150 micrograms after 5–15 minutes as required
- Child (body-weight 15–30 kg): 150 micrograms, then 150 micrograms after 5–15 minutes as required, on the basis of a dose of 10 micrograms/kg, 300 micrograms may be more appropriate for some children

**JEXT® 150 MICROGRAMS****Acute anaphylaxis (for self-administration)**

## ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child (body-weight up to 15 kg): 150 micrograms, then 150 micrograms after 5–15 minutes as required
- Child (body-weight 15–30 kg): 150 micrograms, then 150 micrograms after 5–15 minutes as required, on the basis of a dose of 10 micrograms/kg, 300 micrograms may be more appropriate for some children

**JEXT® 300 MICROGRAMS****Acute anaphylaxis (for self-administration)**

## ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child (body-weight 30 kg and above): 300 micrograms, then 300 micrograms after 5–15 minutes as required

**● UNLICENSED USE**

- With intramuscular use for acute anaphylaxis Auto-injectors delivering 150-microgram dose of adrenaline may not be licensed for use in children with body-weight under 15 kg.
- With intravenous use for acute hypotension Adrenaline 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL) solution is not licensed for intravenous administration.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****SAFE PRACTICE**

Intravenous route should be used with **extreme care** by specialists only.

**MHRA/CHM ADVICE: ADRENALINE AUTO-INJECTORS: UPDATED ADVICE AFTER EUROPEAN REVIEW (AUGUST 2017)**

Following a European review of all adrenaline auto-injectors approved in the EU, the MHRA recommend that 2 adrenaline auto-injectors are prescribed, which patients should carry at all times. This is particularly important for patients with allergic asthma, who are at increased risk of a severe anaphylactic reaction. Patients with allergies and their carers should be trained to use the particular auto-injector they have been prescribed and encouraged to practise using a trainer device. Patients are advised to check the expiry date of the adrenaline auto-injectors and obtain replacements before they expire.

- **CAUTIONS** Arrhythmias · cerebrovascular disease · cor pulmonale · diabetes mellitus · hypercalcaemia ·

hyperreflexia · hypertension · hyperthyroidism · hypokalaemia · ischaemic heart disease · obstructive cardiomyopathy · occlusive vascular disease · organic brain damage · phaeochromocytoma · prostate disorders · psychoneurosis · severe angina · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Cautions listed are only for non-life-threatening situations.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

**● SIDE-EFFECTS****GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

Angina pectoris · angle closure glaucoma · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · asthenia · cardiomyopathy · CNS haemorrhage · confusion · dizziness · dry mouth · dyspnoea · headache · hepatic necrosis · hyperglycaemia · hyperhidrosis · hypersalivation · hypertension (increased risk of cerebral haemorrhage) · hypokalaemia · insomnia · intestinal necrosis · metabolic acidosis · mydriasis · myocardial infarction · nausea · pallor · palpitations · peripheral coldness · psychosis · pulmonary oedema (on excessive dosage or extreme sensitivity) · renal necrosis · soft tissue necrosis · tremor · urinary disorders · vomiting

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Frequency not known**
- With intramuscular use Muscle necrosis · necrotising fasciitis · peripheral ischaemia
- With intravenous use Hemiplegia · muscle rigidity
- **PREGNANCY** May reduce placental perfusion and cause tachycardia, cardiac irregularities, and extrasystoles in fetus. Can delay second stage of labour. Manufacturers advise use only if benefit outweighs risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but unlikely to be harmful as poor oral bioavailability.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise use with caution in severe impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood pressure and ECG.

**● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION****Acute hypotension**

- With intravenous use For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give through a central venous catheter. Incompatible with bicarbonate and alkaline solutions. *Neonatal intensive care*, dilute 3 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 100 nanograms/kg/minute; infuse through a central venous catheter. Incompatible with bicarbonate and alkaline solutions. These infusions are usually made up with adrenaline 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL) solution.
- When used by inhalation For nebulisation in croup, adrenaline 1 in 1000 solution may be diluted with sterile sodium chloride 0.9% solution.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** It is important, in acute anaphylaxis where intramuscular injection might still succeed, time should not be wasted seeking intravenous access. Great vigilance is needed to ensure that the *correct strength* of adrenaline injection is used; anaphylactic shock kits need to make a *very clear distinction* between the 1 in 10 000 strength and the 1 in 1000 strength. Patients with severe allergy should be instructed in the self-administration of adrenaline by intramuscular injection. Packs for self-administration need to be **clearly labelled with instructions** on how to administer adrenaline (intramuscularly, preferably at the midpoint of the outer thigh, through light clothing if necessary) so that in the case of rapid collapse someone

else is able to give it. It is important to ensure individuals at risk and their carers understand that:

- two injection devices should be carried at all times to treat symptoms until medical assistance is available; if, after the first injection, the individual does not start to feel better, the second injection should be given 5 to 15 minutes after the first;
- an ambulance should be called after every administration, even if symptoms improve;
- the individual should lie down with their legs raised (unless they have breathing difficulties, in which case they should sit up) and should not be left alone.

Adrenaline for administration by intramuscular injection is available in 'auto-injectors' (e.g. *Emerade*<sup>®</sup>, *EpiPen*<sup>®</sup>, or *Jext*<sup>®</sup>), pre-assembled syringes fitted with a needle suitable for very rapid administration (if necessary by a bystander or a healthcare provider if it is the only preparation available); injection technique is device specific.

To ensure patients receive the auto-injector device that they have been trained to use, prescribers should specify the brand to be dispensed.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Individuals at considerable risk of anaphylaxis need to carry (or have available) adrenaline at all times and the patient, or their carers, need to be *instructed in advance* when and how to inject it. The MHRA has produced an advice sheet on the use of adrenaline auto-injectors, which should be provided to patients and their carers.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Adrenaline auto-injector for anaphylaxis [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/adrenaline-for-anaphylaxis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/adrenaline-for-anaphylaxis)

**JEXT<sup>®</sup> 300 MICROGRAMS** 1.1 mL of the solution remains in the auto-injector device after use.

**JEXT<sup>®</sup> 150 MICROGRAMS** 1.25 mL of the solution remains in the auto-injector device after use.

**EMERADE<sup>®</sup> 150 MICROGRAMS** 0.35 mL of the solution remains in the auto-injector device after use.

**EMERADE<sup>®</sup> 500 MICROGRAMS** No solution remains in the auto-injector device after use.

**EMERADE<sup>®</sup> 300 MICROGRAMS** 0.2 mL of the solution remains in the auto-injector device after use.

**EPIPEN<sup>®</sup> AUTO-INJECTOR 0.3MG** 1.7 mL of the solution remains in the auto-injector device after use.

**EPIPEN<sup>®</sup> JR AUTO-INJECTOR 0.15MG** 1.7 mL of the solution remains in the auto-injector device after use.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** POM restriction does not apply to the intramuscular administration of up to 1 mg of adrenaline injection 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL) for the emergency treatment of anaphylaxis.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

#### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sulfites

#### ► Adrenaline/epinephrine (Non-proprietary)

**Adrenaline 100 microgram per 1 ml** Adrenaline (base) 100micrograms/1ml (1 in 10,000) dilute solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [\[PoM\]](#) £69.40

Adrenaline (base) 1mg/10ml (1 in 10,000) dilute solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £6.87 |

1 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £18.00 (Hospital only) | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £180.00 (Hospital only)

**Adrenaline (as Adrenaline acid tartrate) 100 microgram per 1 ml** Adrenaline (base) 1mg/10ml (1 in 10,000) dilute solution for injection ampoules | 1 ampoule [\[PoM\]](#) £43.53 | 10 ampoule [\[PoM\]](#) £80.44

Adrenaline (base) 500micrograms/5ml (1 in 10,000) dilute solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [\[PoM\]](#) £73.94

**Adrenaline 1 mg per 1 ml** Adrenaline (base) 10mg/10ml (1 in 1,000) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [\[PoM\]](#) £87.62

Adrenaline (base) for anaphylaxis 1mg/1ml (1 in 1,000) solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £10.40

Adrenaline (base) 1mg/1ml (1 in 1,000) solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £10.40

**Adrenaline (as Adrenaline acid tartrate) 1 mg per 1 ml** Adrenaline (base) 5mg/5ml (1 in 1,000) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [\[PoM\]](#) £85.07

Adrenaline (base) 500micrograms/0.5ml (1 in 1,000) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [\[PoM\]](#) £67.72 DT = £67.72

Adrenaline (base) 1mg/1ml (1 in 1,000) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [\[PoM\]](#) £6.01 DT = £6.01

#### ► Emerade (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

**Adrenaline 1 mg per 1 ml** Emerade 300micrograms/0.3ml (1 in 1,000) solution for injection auto-injectors | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £25.99 DT = £26.45

**Adrenaline (as Adrenaline acid tartrate) 1 mg per 1 ml** Emerade 150micrograms/0.15ml (1 in 1,000) solution for injection auto-injectors | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £25.99 DT = £23.99

Emerade 500micrograms/0.5ml (1 in 1,000) solution for injection auto-injectors | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £26.99

#### ► EpiPen (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Adrenaline 500 microgram per 1 ml** EpiPen Jr. 150micrograms/0.3ml (1 in 2,000) solution for injection auto-injectors | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £26.45 DT = £26.45 | 2 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £52.90 DT = £52.90

**Adrenaline 1 mg per 1 ml** EpiPen 300micrograms/0.3ml (1 in 1,000) solution for injection auto-injectors | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £26.45 DT = £26.45 | 2 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £52.90

#### ► Jext (ALK-Abello Ltd)

**Adrenaline 1 mg per 1 ml** Jext 300micrograms/0.3ml (1 in 1,000) solution for injection auto-injectors | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £23.99 DT = £26.45

**Adrenaline (as Adrenaline acid tartrate) 1 mg per 1 ml** Jext 150micrograms/0.15ml (1 in 1,000) solution for injection auto-injectors | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [\[PoM\]](#) £23.99 DT = £23.99

## 8 Oedema

### Diuretics

#### Overview

Diuretics are used for a variety of conditions in children including pulmonary oedema (caused by conditions such as respiratory distress syndrome and bronchopulmonary dysplasia), congestive heart failure, and hypertension. Hypertension in children is often resistant to therapy and may require the use of several drugs in combination. Maintenance of fluid and electrolyte balance can be difficult in children on diuretics, particularly neonates whose renal function may be immature.

**Loop diuretics** are used for pulmonary oedema, congestive heart failure, and in renal disease.

**Thiazides** are used less commonly than loop diuretics but are often used in combination with loop diuretics or spironolactone p. 126 in the management of pulmonary oedema and, in lower doses, for hypertension associated with cardiac disease.

Aminophylline infusion p. 167 has been used with intravenous furosemide p. 140 to relieve fluid overload in critically ill children.

#### Heart failure

Heart failure is less common in children than in adults; it can occur as a result of congenital heart disease (e.g. septal defects), dilated cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, or cardiac surgery. Drug treatment of heart failure due to left ventricular systolic dysfunction is covered below; optimal management of heart failure with preserved left ventricular function has not been established.

**Acute heart failure** can occur after cardiac surgery or as a complication in severe acute infections with or without

myocarditis. Therapy consists of volume loading, vasodilator or inotropic drugs.

**Chronic heart failure** is initially treated with a **loop diuretic**, usually furosemide supplemented with spironolactone, amiloride hydrochloride p. 142, or potassium chloride p. 601.

If diuresis with furosemide is insufficient, the addition of metolazone p. 142 or a **thiazide diuretic** can be considered. With metolazone the resulting diuresis can be profound and care is needed to avoid potentially dangerous electrolyte disturbance.

If diuretics are insufficient an ACE inhibitor, titrated to the maximum tolerated dose, can be used. **ACE inhibitors** are used for the treatment of all grades of heart failure in adults and can also be useful for children with heart failure. Addition of digoxin p. 81 can be considered in children who remain symptomatic despite treatment with a diuretic and an ACE inhibitor.

Some beta-blockers improve outcome in adults with heart failure, but data on beta-blockers in children are limited. Carvedilol p. 125 has vasodilatory properties and therefore (like ACE inhibitors) also lowers afterload.

In children receiving specialist cardiology care, the phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitor enoximone p. 127 is sometimes used by mouth for its inotropic and vasodilator effects. Spironolactone is usually used as a potassium-sparing drug with a loop diuretic; in adults low doses of spironolactone are effective in the treatment of heart failure. Careful monitoring of serum potassium is necessary if spironolactone is used in combination with an ACE inhibitor.

### Thiazides and related diuretics

Thiazides and related compounds are moderately potent diuretics; they inhibit sodium reabsorption at the beginning of the distal convoluted tubule. They are usually administered early in the day so that the diuresis does not interfere with sleep.

In the management of *hypertension* a low dose of a thiazide produces a maximal or near-maximal blood pressure lowering effect, with very little biochemical disturbance. Higher doses cause more marked changes in plasma potassium, sodium, uric acid, glucose, and lipids, with little advantage in blood pressure control. Thiazides also have a role in chronic heart failure.

Bendroflumethiazide p. 111 is licensed for use in children; chlorothiazide p. 111 is also used.

Chlorthalidone p. 142, a thiazide-related compound, has a longer duration of action than the thiazides and may be given on alternate days in younger children.

Metolazone is particularly effective when combined with a loop diuretic (even in renal failure) and is most effective when given 30–60 minutes before furosemide profound diuresis can occur and the child should therefore be monitored carefully.

### Loop diuretics

Loop diuretics inhibit reabsorption of sodium, potassium, and chloride from the ascending limb of the loop of Henlé in the renal tubule and are powerful diuretics.

Furosemide and bumetanide p. 140 are similar in activity; they produce dose-related diuresis. Furosemide is used extensively in children. It can be used for pulmonary oedema (e.g. in respiratory distress syndrome and bronchopulmonary dysplasia), congestive heart failure, and in renal disease.

### Potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists

Spironolactone is the most commonly used potassium sparing diuretic in children; it is an aldosterone antagonist and enhances potassium retention and sodium excretion in the distal tubule. Spironolactone is combined with other

diuretics to reduce urinary potassium loss. It is also used in nephrotic syndrome, the long-term management of Bartter's syndrome, and high doses can help to control ascites in babies with chronic neonatal hepatitis. The clinical value of spironolactone in the management of pulmonary oedema in preterm neonates with chronic lung disease is uncertain.

Potassium canrenoate p. 126 given intravenously, is an alternative aldosterone antagonist that may be useful if a potassium-sparing diuretic is required and the child is unable to take oral medication. It is metabolised to canrenone, which is also a metabolite of spironolactone.

Amiloride hydrochloride on its own is a weak diuretic. It causes retention of potassium and is therefore given with thiazide or loop diuretics as an alternative to giving potassium supplements.

A potassium-sparing diuretic such as spironolactone or amiloride hydrochloride may also be used in the management of amphotericin-induced hypokalaemia.

Potassium supplements must **not** be given with potassium-sparing diuretics. Administration of a potassium-sparing diuretic to a child receiving an ACE inhibitor or an angiotensin-II receptor antagonist can also cause severe hyperkalaemia.

### Potassium-sparing diuretics with other diuretics

Although it is preferable to prescribe diuretics separately in children, the use of fixed combinations may be justified in older children if compliance is a problem. (Some preparations may not be licensed for use in children—consult product literature).

### Other diuretics

Mannitol p. 141 is used to treat cerebral oedema, raised intraocular pressure, peripheral oedema, and ascites.

The carbonic anhydrase inhibitor acetazolamide p. 683 is a weak diuretic although it is little used for its diuretic effect. Eye drops of dorzolamide p. 684 and brinzolamide p. 684 inhibit the formation of aqueous humour and are used in glaucoma. Acetazolamide is used in the treatment of epilepsy, and raised intracranial pressure.

### Diuretics with potassium

Diuretics and potassium supplements should be prescribed separately.

## DIURETICS > LOOP DIURETICS

### Loop diuretics

- **DRUG ACTION** Loop diuretics inhibit reabsorption from the ascending limb of the loop of Henlé in the renal tubule and are powerful diuretics.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Anuria · renal failure due to nephrotoxic or hepatotoxic drugs · severe hypokalaemia · severe hyponatraemia
- **CAUTIONS** Can cause acute urinary retention in children with obstruction of urinary outflow · can exacerbate diabetes (but hyperglycaemia less likely than with thiazides) · can exacerbate gout · comatose and precomatose states associated with liver cirrhosis · hypotension should be corrected before initiation of treatment · hypovolaemia should be corrected before initiation of treatment

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Potassium loss Hypokalaemia can occur with both thiazide and loop diuretics. The risk of hypokalaemia depends on the duration of action as well as the potency and is thus greater with thiazides than with an equipotent dose of a loop diuretic.

Hypokalaemia is particularly dangerous in children being treated with cardiac glycosides. In hepatic failure

hypokalaemia caused by diuretics can precipitate encephalopathy.

The use of potassium-sparing diuretics avoids the need to take potassium supplements.

- ▶ **Urinary retention** Loop diuretics can cause acute urinary retention in children with obstruction of urinary outflow, therefore adequate urinary output should be established before initiating treatment.
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Asthenia · dehydration · dizziness · electrolyte imbalance · gastrointestinal disorder · headache · hypotension · metabolic alkalosis · muscle complaints · nausea · skin reactions
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Bladder dilation · breast pain · chest discomfort · diarrhoea · ear pain · urinary disorders · vertigo
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Bone marrow disorders · hearing impairment · photosensitivity reaction
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Acute kidney injury · agranulocytosis · anaemia · arthralgia · auditory disorder (more common with rapid intravenous administration, and in renal impairment) · cerebral ischaemia · confusion · deafness (more common in renal impairment) · diabetes mellitus · dry mouth · embolism · encephalopathy · eosinophilia · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · gout · gynaecomastia · haemolytic anaemia · hepatic disorders · hyperglycaemia · hyperuricaemia · ischaemic heart disease · leucopenia · malaise · metabolic acidosis · mucosal reaction · musculoskeletal pain (with high doses in renal failure) · myocardial infarction · nephritis tubulointerstitial · pancreatitis · paraesthesia · psychiatric disorder · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · shock · syncope · tetany · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus (more common with rapid intravenous administration, and in renal impairment) · urolithiasis · vasculitis · visual impairment · vomiting
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Hypokalaemia induced by loop diuretics may precipitate hepatic encephalopathy and coma—potassium-sparing diuretics can be used to prevent this.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** High doses or rapid intravenous administration can cause tinnitus and deafness.  
**Dose adjustments** High doses of loop diuretics may occasionally be needed in renal impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor electrolytes during treatment.

F 139

## Bumetanide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Oedema in heart failure, renal disease, and hepatic disease | Pulmonary oedema**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 15–50 micrograms/kg 1–4 times a day (max. per dose 2 mg); maximum 5 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 1 mg, dose to be taken in the morning, then 1 mg after 6–8 hours if required

**Oedema in heart failure, renal disease, and hepatic disease (severe cases) | Pulmonary oedema (severe cases)**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 5 mg daily, increased in steps of 5 mg every 12–24 hours, adjusted according to response

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 12 years.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: loop diuretics
- **PREGNANCY** Bumetanide should not be used to treat gestational hypertension because of the maternal hypovolaemia associated with this condition.

- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available. May inhibit lactation.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Oral solution

##### ▶ Bumetanide (Non-proprietary)

**Bumetanide 200 microgram per 1 ml** Bumetanide 1mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £198.00 DT = £198.00

#### Tablet

##### ▶ Bumetanide (Non-proprietary)

**Bumetanide 1 mg** Bumetanide 1mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £7.35 DT = £1.20

**Bumetanide 5 mg** Bumetanide 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £7.00 DT = £6.98

F 139

## Furosemide

(Frusemide)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Oedema in heart failure, renal disease, and hepatic disease | Pulmonary oedema**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 0.5–2 mg/kg every 12–24 hours, alternatively 0.5–2 mg/kg every 24 hours, if corrected gestational age under 31 weeks.
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 0.5–2 mg/kg 2–3 times a day, alternatively 0.5–2 mg/kg every 24 hours, if corrected gestational age of under 31 weeks, higher doses may be required in resistant oedema; maximum 80 mg per day; maximum 12 mg/kg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 20–40 mg daily; increased to 80–120 mg daily, in resistant oedema
- ▶ **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**
- ▶ Neonate: 0.5–1 mg/kg every 12–24 hours, alternatively 0.5–1 mg/kg every 24 hours, if corrected gestational age under 31 weeks.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 0.5–1 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 40 mg every 8 hours) as required; maximum 6 mg/kg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 20–40 mg every 8 hours as required, higher doses may be required in resistant cases
- ▶ **BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- ▶ Child: 0.1–2 mg/kg/hour

**Oedema in heart failure, renal disease, and hepatic disease following cardiac surgery | Pulmonary oedema following cardiac surgery**

#### ▶ BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child: Initially 100 micrograms/kg/hour, dose to be doubled every 2 hours until urine output exceeds 1 mL/kg/hour

#### Oliguria

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 250 mg daily, then increased in steps of 250 mg every 4–6 hours (max. per dose 2 g) if required
- ▶ **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 2–5 mg/kg up to 4 times a day; maximum 1 g per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 250 mg, dose to be administered over 1 hour, increased to 500 mg, increased dose is given if satisfactory urine output not obtained; dose administered over 2 hours, then increased to 1 g, increased dose given if satisfactory response not obtained within subsequent hour; dose to be administered over 4 hours. If no response obtained dialysis probably required; effective dose of up to 1 g

given at a maximum rate of 4 mg/minute can be repeated every 24 hours

- **CAUTIONS** Effect may be prolonged in neonates · hepatorenal syndrome · hypoproteinaemia may reduce diuretic effect and increase risk of side-effects
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: loop diuretics
- **PREGNANCY** Furosemide should not be used to treat gestational hypertension because of the maternal hypovolaemia associated with this condition.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful. May inhibit lactation.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous injection*, give over 5–10 minutes at a usual rate of 100 micrograms/kg/minute (not exceeding 500 micrograms/kg/minute), max. 4 mg/minute; lower rate of infusion may be necessary in renal impairment. For *intravenous infusion*, dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a concentration of 1–2 mg/mL. Glucose solutions unsuitable (infusion pH must be above 5.5).
  - ▶ With oral use For administration by *mouth*, tablets can be crushed and mixed with water or injection solution diluted and given by mouth. Risk of ototoxicity may be reduced by giving high oral doses in 2 or more divided doses.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**
  - ▶ With oral use Some liquid preparations contain alcohol, caution especially in neonates.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### ▶ Furosemide (Non-proprietary)

**Furosemide 20 mg** Furosemide 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£1.02 DT = £0.37

**Furosemide 40 mg** Furosemide 40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£1.03 DT = £0.33 | 1000 tablet [PoM] £11.79–£28.21

**Furosemide 500 mg** Furosemide 500mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£70.00 DT = £38.58

##### ▶ Diuresal (Ennogen Pharma Ltd)

**Furosemide 500 mg** Diuresal 500mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] [X] DT  
= £38.58

#### Solution for injection

##### ▶ Furosemide (Non-proprietary)

**Furosemide 10 mg per 1 ml** Furosemide 250mg/25ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £25.00–£40.00

Furosemide 50mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules |  
10 ampoule [PoM] £2.38–£7.60

Furosemide 20mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules |  
10 ampoule [PoM] £4.58 DT = £3.28

#### Oral solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol

##### ▶ Furosemide (Non-proprietary)

**Furosemide 4 mg per 1 ml** Furosemide 20mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £14.81 DT = £14.81

**Furosemide 8 mg per 1 ml** Furosemide 40mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £19.57 DT = £19.57

**Furosemide 10 mg per 1 ml** Furosemide 50mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £20.21 DT = £20.21

##### ▶ Frusol (Rosemont Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Furosemide 4 mg per 1 ml** Frusol 20mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £12.07 DT = £14.81

**Furosemide 8 mg per 1 ml** Frusol 40mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £15.58 DT = £19.57

**Furosemide 10 mg per 1 ml** Frusol 50mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £16.84 DT = £20.21

## DIURETICS > OSMOTIC DIURETICS

### Mannitol

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Cerebral oedema

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 0.25–1.5 g/kg, repeated if necessary, to be administered over 30–60 minutes, dose may be repeated 1–2 times after 4–8 hours
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 0.25–2 g/kg, repeated if necessary, to be administered over 30–60 minutes, dose may be repeated 1–2 times after 4–8 hours

##### Peripheral oedema and ascites

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child: 1–2 g/kg, to be given over 2–6 hours

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 12 years.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Anuria · intracranial bleeding (except during craniotomy) · severe cardiac failure · severe dehydration · severe pulmonary oedema
- **CAUTIONS** Extravasation causes inflammation and thrombophlebitis
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Cough · headache · vomiting
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Dizziness · fever · malaise · nausea · pain · skin reactions
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Arrhythmia · asthenia · azotaemia · chest pain · chills · coma · compartment syndrome · confusion · congestive heart failure · dry mouth · electrolyte imbalance · fluid imbalance · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · hypertension · lethargy · metabolic acidosis · muscle complaints · musculoskeletal stiffness · nephrotic syndrome · neurotoxicity · peripheral oedema · pulmonary oedema · rebound intracranial pressure increase · renal impairment · rhinitis · seizure · thirst · urinary disorders · vision blurred
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in severe impairment.
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Assess cardiac function before treatment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor fluid and electrolyte balance, serum osmolality, and cardiac, pulmonary and renal function.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Examine infusion for crystals. If crystals present, dissolve by warming infusion fluid (allow to cool to body temperature before administration).  
For mannitol 20%, an in-line filter is recommended (15-micron filters have been used).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: infusion, solution for infusion

#### Infusion

##### ▶ Mannitol (Non-proprietary)

**Mannitol 100 mg per 1 ml** Mannitol 50g/500ml (10%) infusion Vialflo

bags | 1 bag [PoM] [X]

Mannitol 50g/500ml (10%) infusion Vialflex bags | 1 bag [PoM] [X]

Polyfusor K mannitol 10% infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM]  
£4.92

**Mannitol 150 mg per 1 ml** Mannitol 75g/500ml (15%) infusion Vialflo bags | 20 bag [PoM] [X]

**Mannitol 200 mg per 1 ml** Polyfusor M mannitol 20% infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £6.46

Mannitol 100g/500ml (20%) infusion Vialflex bags | 1 bag [PoM] [X]



Mannitol 50g/250ml (20%) infusion Vialflex bags | 1 bag [PoM] [N]  
 Mannitol 100g/500ml (20%) infusion Vialflo bags | 1 bag [PoM] [N]

## DIURETICS > POTASSIUM-SPARING DIURETICS

### Amiloride hydrochloride

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Adjunct to thiazide or loop diuretics for oedema in heart failure, and hepatic disease (where potassium conservation desirable)**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 100–200 micrograms/kg twice daily.

- Child 1 month–11 years: 100–200 micrograms/kg twice daily; maximum 20 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: 5–10 mg twice daily

• **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

• **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Addison's disease · anuria · hyperkalaemia

• **CAUTIONS** Diabetes mellitus

• **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: potassium-sparing diuretics

• **SIDE-EFFECTS** Alopecia · angina pectoris · aplastic anaemia · appetite decreased · arrhythmia · arthralgia · asthenia · atrioventricular block exacerbated · bladder spasm · chest pain · confusion · constipation · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dyspnoea · dysuria · electrolyte imbalance · encephalopathy · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · gastrointestinal haemorrhage · gout · headache · insomnia · jaundice · muscle cramps · nasal congestion · nausea · nervousness · neutropenia · pain · palpitations · paraesthesia · postural hypotension · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · tinnitus · tremor · vertigo · visual impairment · vomiting

• **PREGNANCY** Not to be used to treat gestational hypertension.

• **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

• **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise avoid in severe impairment.

**Monitoring** Monitor plasma-potassium concentration (high risk of hyperkalaemia in renal impairment).

• **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor electrolytes.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Oral solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

► **Amiloride hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

Amiloride hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml Amiloride 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £37.35 DT = £37.35

#### Tablet

► **Amiloride hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

Amiloride hydrochloride 5 mg Amiloride 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £13.99 DT = £3.24

## DIURETICS > THIAZIDES AND RELATED DIURETICS

F 110

### Chlorthalidone

(Chlorthalidone)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Ascites | Oedema in nephrotic syndrome**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 5–11 years: 0.5–1 mg/kg every 48 hours (max. per dose 1.7 mg/kg every 48 hours), dose to be taken in the morning

► Child 12–17 years: Up to 50 mg daily

#### Hypertension

► BY MOUTH

► Child 5–11 years: 0.5–1 mg/kg every 48 hours (max. per dose 1.7 mg/kg every 48 hours), dose to be taken in the morning

► Child 12–17 years: 25 mg daily, dose to be taken in the morning, then increased if necessary to 50 mg daily

#### Stable heart failure

► BY MOUTH

► Child 5–11 years: 0.5–1 mg/kg every 48 hours (max. per dose 1.7 mg/kg every 48 hours), dose to be taken in the morning

► Child 12–17 years: 25–50 mg daily, dose to be taken in the morning, then increased if necessary to 100–200 mg daily, reduce to lowest effective dose for maintenance

• **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: thiazide diuretics

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · dizziness · electrolyte imbalance · erectile dysfunction · gastrointestinal discomfort · hyperglycaemia · hyperuricaemia · skin reactions

► **Uncommon** Gout

► **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · alkalosis · hypochlorhaemic · arrhythmia · diabetes mellitus exacerbated · diarrhoea · eosinophilia · glycosuria · hepatic disorders · nausea · nephritis tubulointerstitial · pancreatitis · paraesthesia · photosensitivity reaction · pulmonary oedema · respiratory disorder · vomiting

• **BREAST FEEDING** The amount present in milk is too small to be harmful. Large doses may suppress lactation.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Tablet

► **Chlorthalidone (Non-proprietary)**

Chlorthalidone 25 mg Chlorthalidone 25mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] [N]

Chlorthalidone 50 mg Chlorthalidone 50mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £90.55 DT = £88.04

F 110

### Metolazone

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Oedema resistant to loop diuretics in heart failure, renal disease and hepatic disease | Pulmonary oedema | Adjunct to loop diuretics to induce diuresis**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 1 month–11 years: 100–200 micrograms/kg 1–2 times a day

► Child 12–17 years: 5–10 mg once daily, dose to be taken in the morning; increased if necessary to 5–10 mg twice daily, dose increased in resistant oedema

• **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: thiazide diuretics
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Chest pain · chills
- **BREAST FEEDING** The amount present in milk is too small to be harmful. Large doses may suppress lactation.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets may be crushed and mixed with water immediately before use.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### Metolazone (Non-proprietary)

Metolazone 2.5 mg Zoroxolyn 2.5mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] [S]  
Metolazone 5 mg Zoroxolyn 5mg tablets | 50 tablet [PoM] [S]

## 9 Patent ductus arteriosus

### Drugs affecting the ductus arteriosus

#### Closure of the ductus arteriosus

Patent ductus arteriosus is a frequent problem in premature neonates with respiratory distress syndrome. Substantial left-to-right shunting through the ductus arteriosus may increase the risk of intraventricular haemorrhage, necrotising enterocolitis, bronchopulmonary dysplasia, and possibly death. Indometacin p. 657 or ibuprofen p. 655 can be used to close the ductus arteriosus. Indometacin has been used for many years and is effective but it reduces cerebral blood flow, and causes a transient fall in renal and gastrointestinal blood flow. Ibuprofen may also be used; it has little effect on renal function (there may be a small reduction in sodium excretion) when used in doses for closure of the ductus arteriosus; gastro-intestinal problems are uncommon. If drug treatment fails to close the ductus arteriosus, surgery may be indicated.

#### Maintenance of patency

In the newborn with duct-dependent congenital heart disease it is often necessary to maintain the patency of the ductus arteriosus whilst awaiting surgery. Alprostadil below (prostaglandin E1) and dinoprostone below (prostaglandin E2) are potent vasodilators that are effective for maintaining the patency of the ductus arteriosus. They are usually given by continuous intravenous infusion, but oral dosing of dinoprostone is still used in some centres. During the infusion of a prostaglandin, the newborn requires careful monitoring of heart rate, blood pressure, respiratory rate, and core body temperature. In the event of complications such as apnoea, profound bradycardia, or severe hypotension, the infusion should be temporarily stopped and the complication dealt with; the infusion should be restarted at a lower dose. Recurrent or prolonged apnoea may require ventilatory support in order for the prostaglandin infusion to continue.

### PROSTAGLANDIN ANALOGUES AND PROSTAMIDES > PROSTAGLANDINS

#### Alprostadil

20-Jul-2017

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Maintaining patency of the ductus arteriosus

###### BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 5 nanograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response, adjusted in steps of 5 nanograms/kg/minute (max. per dose 100 nanograms/kg/minute), maximum dose associated with increased side-effects.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Alprostadil doses in BNFC may differ from those in product literature.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in hyaline membrane disease
- **CAUTIONS** History of haemorrhage
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: alprostadil
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ Common or very common Apnoea (more common in neonates under 2 kg) · arrhythmias · diarrhoea · fever · hypotension · seizure · vasodilation
  - ▶ Uncommon Exostosis · gastrointestinal disorders · vascular fragility
  - ▶ Frequency not known Cardiac arrest · disseminated intravascular coagulation · hypokalaemia · oedema · platelet aggregation inhibition · sepsis
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** During the infusion of a prostaglandin, the newborn requires careful monitoring of heart rate, blood pressure, respiratory rate, and core body temperature.
  - ▶ Monitor arterial pressure, respiratory rate, heart rate, temperature, and venous blood pressure in arm and leg; facilities for intubation and ventilation must be immediately available
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Dilute 150 micrograms/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 5 nanograms/kg/minute. Undiluted solution must not come into contact with the barrel of the plastic syringe; add the required volume of alprostadil to a volume of infusion fluid in the syringe and then make up to final volume.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for infusion

###### Prostin VR (Pfizer Ltd)

Alprostadil 500 microgram per 1 ml Prostin VR  
500micrograms/1ml concentrate for solution for infusion ampoules |  
5 ampoule [PoM] £375.96 (Hospital only)

#### Dinoprostone

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Maintaining patency of the ductus arteriosus

###### BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 5 nanograms/kg/minute, then increased in steps of 5 nanograms/kg/minute as required; increased to 20 nanograms/kg/minute, doses up to 100 nanogram/kg/minute have been used but are associated with increased side-effects.

###### BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 20–25 micrograms/kg every 1–2 hours, then increased if necessary to continued →

40–50 micrograms/kg every 1–2 hours, if treatment continues for more than 1 week gradually reduce the dose.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in hyaline membrane disease
- **CAUTIONS** History of haemorrhage
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Headache
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Asthma · back pain · bronchospasm · cardiac arrest · chills · diarrhoea · dizziness · fever · flushing · hypertension · infection · nausea · vomiting
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise avoid.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise avoid.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor arterial oxygenation, heart rate, temperature, and blood pressure in arm and leg; facilities for intubation and ventilation must be immediately available. During infusion of dinoprostone, the newborn requires careful monitoring of heart rate, blood pressure, respiratory rate and core body temperature.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - ▶ With intravenous use For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 1 microgram/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.
  - ▶ With oral use For administration by *mouth*, injection solution can be given orally; dilute with water.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for infusion

##### ▶ Prostin E2 (Pfizer Ltd)

**Dinoprostone 1 mg per 1 ml** Prostin E2 750micrograms/0.75ml solution for infusion ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM](#) £8.52 (Hospital only)

**Dinoprostone 10 mg per 1 ml** Prostin E2 5mg/0.5ml solution for infusion ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM](#) £18.40 (Hospital only)

## 10 Vascular disease

### Peripheral vascular disease

#### Classification and management

*Raynaud's syndrome*, a vasospastic peripheral vascular disease, consists of recurrent, long-lasting, and episodic vasospasm of the fingers and toes often associated with exposure to cold. Management includes avoidance of exposure to cold and stopping smoking (if appropriate). More severe symptoms may require vasodilator treatment, which is most often successful in primary Raynaud's syndrome. Nifedipine p. 109 and diltiazem hydrochloride below are useful for reducing the frequency and severity of vasospastic attacks. In very severe cases, where digital infarction is likely, intravenous infusion of the prostacyclin analogue iloprost p. 119 may be helpful.

Vasodilator therapy is not established as being effective for *chilblains*.

## CALCIUM-CHANNEL BLOCKERS

F 108

### Diltiazem hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Raynaud's syndrome

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years:** 30–60 mg 2–3 times a day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · cardiogenic shock · left ventricular failure with pulmonary congestion · second- or third-degree AV block (unless pacemaker fitted) · severe bradycardia · sick sinus syndrome · significant aortic stenosis
- **CAUTIONS** Bradycardia (avoid if severe) · first degree AV block · heart failure · prolonged PR interval · significantly impaired left ventricular function
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium channel blockers
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Cardiac conduction disorders · constipation · gastrointestinal discomfort · malaise
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Arrhythmias · diarrhoea · insomnia · nervousness · postural hypotension
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Dry mouth
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · cardiac arrest · congestive heart failure · depression · extrapyramidal symptoms · fever · gynaecomastia · hepatitis · hyperglycaemia · hyperhidrosis · mood altered · photosensitivity reaction · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · thrombocytopenia · vasculitis
- **Overdose** In overdose, diltiazem has a profound cardiac depressant effect causing hypotension and arrhythmias, including complete heart block and asystole.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Significant amount present in milk—no evidence of harm but avoid unless no safer alternative.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments** Start with smaller dose.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

##### ▶ Diltiazem hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Diltiazem hydrochloride 60 mg** Diltiazem 60mg modified-release tablets | 84 tablet [PoM](#) £41.59 DT = £41.59 | 100 tablet [PoM](#) £49.51

##### ▶ Retalzem (Kent Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Diltiazem hydrochloride 60 mg** Retalzem 60 modified-release tablets | 84 tablet [PoM](#) £7.43 DT = £41.59

##### ▶ Tildiem (Sanofi)

**Diltiazem hydrochloride 60 mg** Tildiem 60mg modified-release tablets | 90 tablet [PoM](#) £7.96

##### Modified-release capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

##### ▶ Diltiazem hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Diltiazem hydrochloride 60 mg** Diltiazem 60mg modified-release capsules | 56 capsule [PoM](#) £6.04 DT = £6.04

##### ▶ Dilcardia SR (Mylan)

**Diltiazem hydrochloride 60 mg** Dilcardia SR 60mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM](#) £6.03 DT = £6.04

##### ▶ Kenzem SR (Kent Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Diltiazem hydrochloride 60 mg** Kenzem SR 60mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM](#) £10.00 DT = £6.04

# Chapter 3

## Respiratory system

### CONTENTS

<b>1 Airways disease, obstructive</b>	page 146	<b>4 Cough and congestion</b>	page 187
<b>2 Allergic conditions</b>	171	<b>5 Respiratory depression, respiratory distress syndrome and apnoea</b>	189
2.1 Angioedema	183	5.1 Neonatal apnoea	190
<b>3 Conditions affecting sputum viscosity</b>	184		
3.1 Cystic fibrosis	184		

## Respiratory system, drug delivery

### Inhalation

This route delivers the drug directly to the airways; the dose required is smaller than when given by mouth and side-effects are reduced.

Children and their carers should be advised to follow manufacturers' instructions on the care and cleansing of inhaler devices.

#### Inhaler devices

A *pressurised metered-dose inhaler* is an effective method of drug administration in mild to moderate chronic asthma; to deliver the drug effectively, particularly in children under 12 years, a spacer device should also be used (see also NICE guidance). By the age of 3 years, a child can usually be taught to use a spacer device without a mask. As soon as a child is able to use the mouthpiece, then this is the preferred delivery system. When a pressurised metered-dose inhaler with a spacer is unsuitable or inconvenient, a *dry-powder inhaler* or *breath-actuated inhaler* may be used instead if the child is able to use the device effectively.

*Dry powder inhalers* may be useful in children over 5 years, who are unwilling or unable to use a pressurised metered-dose inhaler with a spacer device; *breath-actuated inhalers* may be useful in older children if they are able to use the device effectively. The child or child's carer should be instructed carefully on the use of the inhaler. It is important to check that the inhaler is being used correctly; poor inhalation technique may be mistaken for a lack of response to the drug.

On changing from a pressurised metered-dose inhaler to a dry powder inhaler, the child may notice a lack of sensation in the mouth and throat previously associated with each actuation; coughing may occur more frequently following use of a dry-powder inhaler.

CFC-free metered-dose inhalers should be cleaned **weekly** according to the manufacturer's instructions.

#### Spacer devices

Spacer devices are particularly useful for infants, for children with poor inhalation technique, or for nocturnal asthma, because the device reduces the need for coordination between actuation of a pressurised metered-dose inhaler and inhalation. The spacer device reduces the velocity of the aerosol and subsequent impaction on the oropharynx and allows more time for evaporation of the propellant so that a larger proportion of the particles can be inhaled and deposited in the lungs. Smaller-volume spacers may be more manageable for pre-school children and infants. The spacer device used must be compatible with the prescribed metered-dose inhaler.

#### Use and care of spacer devices

The suitability of the spacer device should be carefully assessed; opening the one-way valve is dependent on the child's inspiratory flow. Some devices can be tipped to 45° to open the valve during inhaler actuation and inspiration to assist the child.

Inhalation from the spacer device should follow the actuation as soon as possible because the drug aerosol is very short-lived. The total dose (which may be more than a single puff) should be administered as single actuations (with tidal breathing for 10–20 seconds or 5 breaths for each actuation) for children with good inspiratory flow. Larger doses may be necessary for a child with acute bronchospasm.

The device should be cleansed once a month by washing in mild detergent and then allowed to dry in air without rinsing; the mouthpiece should be wiped clean of detergent before use. Some manufacturers recommend more frequent cleaning, but this should be avoided since any electrostatic charge may affect drug delivery. Spacer devices should be replaced every 6–12 months.

#### Nebulisers

*Solutions for nebulisation* for use in acute severe asthma are administered over 5–10 minutes from a nebuliser, usually driven by oxygen in hospital.

Children with a severe attack of asthma should preferably have oxygen during nebulisation since beta<sub>2</sub> agonists can increase arterial hypoxaemia.

A nebuliser converts a solution of a drug into an aerosol for inhalation. It is used to deliver higher doses of drug to the airways than is usual with standard inhalers. The main indications for use of a nebuliser are:

- to deliver a beta<sub>2</sub> agonist or ipratropium bromide p. 153 to a child with an **acute exacerbation** of asthma or of airways obstruction;
- to deliver **prophylactic medication** to a child unable to use other conventional devices;
- to deliver an antibacterial (such as colistimethate sodium p. 346 or tobramycin p. 313) to a child with chronic purulent infection (as in cystic fibrosis or bronchiectasis);
- to deliver budesonide p. 160 to a child with severe croup.

The proportion of a nebuliser solution that reaches the lungs depends on the type of nebuliser and although it can be as high as 30% it is more frequently close to 10% and sometimes below 10%. The remaining solution is left in the nebuliser as residual volume or it is deposited in the mouthpiece and tubing. The extent to which the nebulised solution is deposited in the airways or alveoli depends on particle size. Particles with a median diameter of 1–5 microns are deposited in the airways and are therefore appropriate for asthma whereas a particle size of 1–2 microns is needed for alveolar deposition. The type of



nebuliser is therefore chosen according to the deposition required and according to the viscosity of the solution.

Nebulised bronchodilators are appropriate for children with chronic persistent asthma or those with severe acute asthma. In chronic asthma, nebulised bronchodilators should only be used to relieve persistent daily wheeze, however, with the development of spacers with facemasks, it is now unusual for a child to require long-term nebulised asthma therapy. The use of nebulisers in chronic persistent asthma should be considered only:

- after a review of the diagnosis and use of current inhaler devices;
- if the airflow obstruction is significantly reversible by bronchodilators without unacceptable side-effects;
- if the child does not benefit from use of conventional inhaler device, such as pressurised metered-dose inhaler plus spacer;
- if the child is complying with the prescribed dose and frequency of anti-inflammatory treatment including regular use of high-dose inhaled corticosteroid.

When a nebuliser is prescribed, the child or child's carer must:

- have clear instructions from a doctor, specialist nurse, physiotherapist, or pharmacist on the use of the nebuliser (and on peak-flow monitoring);
- be instructed not to treat acute attacks without also seeking medical help;
- have regular follow up with doctor or specialist nurse.

#### Jet nebulisers

Jet nebulisers are more widely used than ultrasonic nebulisers. Most jet nebulisers require an optimum flow rate of 6–8 litres/minute and in hospital can be driven by piped air or oxygen; in acute asthma the nebuliser should always be driven by oxygen. Domiciliary oxygen cylinders do not provide an adequate flow rate therefore an electrical compressor is required for domiciliary use.

Some jet nebulisers are able to increase drug output during inspiration and hence increase efficiency.

#### Safe practice

The Department of Health has reminded users of the need to use the correct grade of tubing when connecting a nebuliser to a medical gas supply or compressor.

#### Nebuliser diluent

Nebulisation may be carried out using an undiluted nebuliser solution or it may require dilution beforehand. The usual diluent is sterile sodium chloride 0.9% (physiological saline).

In England and Wales nebulisers and compressors are not available on the NHS (but they are free of VAT); some nebulisers (but not compressors) are available on form GP10A in Scotland (for details consult Scottish Drug Tariff).

## Oral

Systemic side-effects occur more frequently when a drug is given orally rather than by inhalation. Oral corticosteroids, theophylline p. 169, and leukotriene receptor antagonists are sometimes required for the management of asthma. Oral administration of a beta<sub>2</sub> agonist is generally not recommended for children, but may be necessary in infants and young children who are unable or unwilling to use an inhaler device.

## Parenteral

Drugs such as beta<sub>2</sub> agonists, corticosteroids, and aminophylline p. 167 can be given by injection in acute severe asthma when drug administration by nebulisation is inadequate or inappropriate; in these circumstances the child should generally be treated in a high dependency or intensive care unit.

## Peak flow meters

Peak flow meters may be used to assess lung function in children over 5 years with asthma, but symptom monitoring is the most reliable assessment of asthma control. They are best used for short periods to assess the severity of asthma and to monitor response to treatment; continuous use of peak flow meters may detract from compliance with inhalers.

Peak flow charts should be issued to patients where appropriate, and are available to purchase from:

3M Security Print and Systems Limited, Gorse Street, Chadderton, Oldham, OL9 9QH. Tel: 0845 610 1112.

GP practices can obtain supplies through their Area Team stores.

NHS Hospitals can order supplies from [www.nhsforms.co.uk/](http://www.nhsforms.co.uk/) or by emailing [nhsforms@mmm.com](mailto:nhsforms@mmm.com).

In Scotland, peak flow charts can be obtained by emailing [stockorders.dppas@apsgroup.co.uk](mailto:stockorders.dppas@apsgroup.co.uk).

## NICE decisions

### Inhaler devices for children under 5 years with chronic asthma (August 2000) NICE TA10

When selecting inhaler devices for children under 5 years with chronic asthma, a child's needs and likelihood of good compliance should govern the choice of inhaler and spacer device; only then should cost be considered.

- corticosteroid and bronchodilator therapy should be delivered by pressurised metered-dose inhaler and spacer device, with a facemask if necessary;
- if this is not effective, and depending on the child's condition, nebulised therapy may be considered and, in children over 3 years, a dry powder inhaler may also be considered.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA10](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA10)

### Inhaler devices for children 5–15 years with chronic asthma (March 2002) NICE TA38

When selecting inhaler devices for children between 5–15 years with chronic asthma, a child's needs, ability to develop and maintain effective technique, and likelihood of good compliance should govern the choice of inhaler and spacer device; only then should cost be considered.

- corticosteroid therapy should be routinely delivered by a pressurised metered-dose inhaler and spacer device;
- for other inhaled drugs, particularly bronchodilators, a wider range of devices should be considered;
- children and their carers should be trained in the use of the chosen device; suitability of the device should be reviewed at least annually. Inhaler technique and compliance should be monitored.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA38](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA38)

# 1 Airways disease, obstructive

## Asthma, chronic

05-Apr-2018

### Description of condition

Asthma is a common chronic inflammatory condition of the airways, associated with airway hyperresponsiveness and variable airflow obstruction. The most frequent symptoms of asthma are cough, wheeze, chest tightness, and breathlessness. Asthma symptoms vary over time and in intensity and can gradually or suddenly worsen, provoking an acute asthma attack that, if severe, may require hospitalisation.



## Aims of treatment

The aim of treatment is to achieve control of asthma. Complete control of asthma is defined as no daytime symptoms, no night-time awakening due to asthma, no asthma attacks, no need for rescue medication, no limitations on activity including exercise, normal lung function (in practical terms forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV<sub>1</sub>) and/or peak expiratory flow (PEF) > 80% predicted or best), and minimal side-effects from treatment. In clinical practice, patients may choose to balance the aims of asthma management against the potential side-effects or inconvenience of taking medication necessary to achieve perfect control.

## Lifestyle changes

**[EvGr]** Weight loss in overweight patients may lead to an improvement in asthma symptoms. Parents with asthma should be advised about the danger of smoking, to themselves and to their children with asthma, and be offered appropriate support to stop smoking. Breathing exercise programmes (including physiotherapist-taught methods) can be offered as an adjuvant to drug treatment to improve quality of life and reduce symptoms. **[A]**

## Management

**[EvGr]** A stepwise approach aims to stop symptoms quickly and to improve peak flow. Treatment should be started at the level most appropriate to initial severity of asthma. The aim is to achieve early control and to maintain it by stepping up treatment as necessary and decreasing treatment when control is good. Before initiating a new drug or adjusting treatment consider whether diagnosis is correct, check adherence and inhaler technique, and eliminate trigger factors for acute attacks.

A self-management programme comprising of a written personalised action plan and education should be offered to all patients with asthma (and/or their family or carers). **[A]**

Recommendations on the management of chronic asthma from the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE)—*Asthma: diagnosis, monitoring and chronic asthma management guidelines* (NG80, November 2017), and *British Thoracic Society (BTS) and Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN)—British guideline on the management of asthma* (SIGN 153, September 2016) differ significantly. Recommendations in BNF publications are based on NICE guidelines, and differences with BTS/SIGN (2016) have been highlighted.

### Child over 16 years

**NICE (2017) treatment recommendations for child over 16 years apply to patients aged 17 years and over. BTS/SIGN (2016) treatment recommendations for child over 16 years are the same as those for patients over 12 years (see child over 5 years section).**

### Intermittent reliever therapy

**[EvGr]** Start an inhaled short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist (such as salbutamol p. 156 or terbutaline sulfate p. 158), to be used as required, in all patients with asthma. For those with infrequent short-lived wheeze, occasional use of reliever therapy may be the only treatment required. Patients using more than one short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist inhaler device a month should have their asthma urgently assessed and action taken to improve poorly controlled asthma. **[A]**

### Regular preventer (maintenance) therapy

**NICE (2017) define inhaled corticosteroid doses for children over 16 years as low, moderate, or high. BTS/SIGN (2016) instead define inhaled corticosteroid doses for children over 16 years as low, medium or high (refer to individual guidelines for inhaled corticosteroid dosing information).**

**[EvGr]** A low dose of inhaled corticosteroid should be started as maintenance therapy in patients who present with any

one of the following features: using an inhaled short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist three times a week or more, symptomatic three times a week or more, or waking at night due to asthma symptoms at least once a week. **BTS/SIGN (2016)** also recommend initiation in patients who have had an asthma attack in the last 2 years, and starting inhaled corticosteroids at a dose appropriate to the severity of asthma.

**BTS/SIGN (2016)** recommend that inhaled corticosteroids (except ciclesonide p. 162) should be initially taken twice daily, however, the same total daily dose, taken once a day, can be considered in patients with milder disease if good or complete control of asthma is established. The dose of inhaled corticosteroid should be adjusted over time to the lowest effective dose at which control of asthma is maintained.

**BTS/SIGN (2016)** recommend the prescribing of inhalers by brand. **[A]**

### Initial add-on therapy

**[EvGr]** If asthma is uncontrolled on a low dose of inhaled corticosteroid as maintenance therapy, a leukotriene receptor antagonist (such as montelukast p. 165 or zafirlukast p. 166) should be offered in addition to the inhaled corticosteroid, and the response to treatment reviewed in 4 to 8 weeks.

**BTS/SIGN (2016)** instead recommend a long-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist (LABA—such as salmeterol p. 155 or formoterol fumarate p. 154) as initial add-on therapy to inhaled corticosteroids if asthma is uncontrolled. **[A]**

### Additional add-on therapy

**[EvGr]** If asthma is uncontrolled on a low dose of inhaled corticosteroid and a leukotriene receptor antagonist as maintenance therapy, a LABA in combination with the inhaled corticosteroid should be offered with or without continued leukotriene receptor antagonist treatment, depending on the response achieved from the leukotriene receptor antagonist.

If asthma remains uncontrolled, offer to change the inhaled corticosteroid and LABA maintenance therapy to a MART regimen (Maintenance And Reliever Therapy—a combination of an inhaled corticosteroid and a fast-acting LABA such as formoterol in a single inhaler), with a low dose of inhaled corticosteroid as maintenance. See budesonide with formoterol p. 161 [not licensed in all age groups].

If asthma remains uncontrolled on a MART regimen with a low dose of inhaled corticosteroid as maintenance with or without a leukotriene antagonist, consider increasing to a moderate dose of inhaled corticosteroid (either continuing a MART regimen or changing to a fixed-dose regimen of an inhaled corticosteroid and a LABA, with a short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist as reliever therapy).

If asthma is still uncontrolled in patients on a moderate dose of inhaled corticosteroid as maintenance with a LABA (either as MART or a fixed-dose regimen), with or without a leukotriene receptor antagonist, consider the following options:

- increasing the inhaled corticosteroid dose to a high-dose as maintenance (this should only be offered as part of a fixed-dose regimen, with a short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist used as a reliever therapy), or
- a trial of an additional drug, for example, a long-acting muscarinic receptor antagonist (such as tiotropium) or modified-release theophylline p. 169, or
- seek advice from an asthma specialist.

**BTS/SIGN (2016)** instead recommend that if the patient is gaining some benefit from addition of a LABA but control remains inadequate, that the LABA be continued and the dose of inhaled corticosteroid be increased to a medium-dose, if not already on this dose. If increasing the dose of inhaled corticosteroid is ineffective, consider continuing on a low dose of inhaled corticosteroid and a LABA and try adding a leukotriene receptor antagonist, or a long-acting

muscarinic receptor antagonist, or modified-release theophylline p. 169.

If there is no response to the LABA, discontinue it and increase the dose of the inhaled corticosteroid to a medium-dose, if not already on this dose. If increasing the dose of inhaled corticosteroid is ineffective, consider continuing on a low dose of inhaled corticosteroid and try adding a leukotriene receptor antagonist or a long-acting muscarinic receptor antagonist. **⚠**

#### **High-dose inhaled corticosteroids and further add-on treatment**

**EVGr** BTS/SIGN (2016) recommend that if control remains inadequate on a combination of short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist as required, a medium dose of inhaled corticosteroid, plus an additional drug, usually a LABA, to consider the following interventions:

- increase the inhaled corticosteroid to a high-dose—with high doses of inhaled corticosteroid via a pressurised metered dose inhaler (pMDI), a spacer should be used, or
- add a leukotriene receptor antagonist, or
- add modified-release theophylline p. 169, or
- Add tiotropium.

If a trial of a further add-on treatment is ineffective, stop the drug (or in the case of increased dose of inhaled corticosteroid, reduce to the original dose) and refer to specialist care. **⚠**

#### **Continuous or frequent use of oral corticosteroids**

**EVGr** BTS/SIGN (2016) recommend adding a regular oral corticosteroid (prednisolone p. 442) at the lowest dose to provide adequate control (under specialist care) in patients with very severe asthma uncontrolled on high-dose inhaled corticosteroids, and who have also tried (or are still receiving) a LABA, a leukotriene receptor antagonist, or modified-release theophylline p. 169. **⚠**

#### **Monoclonal antibodies and immunosuppressants**

**EVGr** BTS/SIGN (2016) recommend, that under specialist initiation, immunosuppressants such as methotrexate p. 543 [unlicensed], and monoclonal antibodies such as omalizumab p. 164 (for severe persistent allergic asthma), and mepolizumab and reslizumab (in adults for severe eosinophilic asthma), may be considered in patients with severe asthma to achieve control and reduce the use of oral corticosteroids. **⚠** See mepolizumab, omalizumab p. 164, and reslizumab National funding/access decisions.

#### **Child over 5 years**

**For children over 5 years, NICE (2017) treatment recommendations for children apply to children aged 5–16 years and child over 16 years treatment recommendations apply to those aged 17 years and over. Whereas, for children over 5 years, BTS/SIGN (2016) treatment recommendations for children apply to children aged 5–12 years and child over 16 years treatment recommendations apply to those aged over 12 years.**

#### **Intermittent reliever therapy**

**EVGr** Start an inhaled short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist (such as salbutamol p. 156 or terbutaline sulfate p. 158), to be used as required, in all children with asthma. For those with infrequent short-lived wheeze, occasional use of reliever therapy may be the only treatment required. Children using more than one short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist inhaler device a month should have their asthma urgently assessed and action taken to improve poorly controlled asthma. **⚠**

#### **Regular preventer (maintenance) therapy**

**NICE (2017) define inhaled corticosteroid doses for children (5–16 years) as paediatric low, moderate, or high. BTS/SIGN (2016) instead define inhaled corticosteroid doses for children (5–12 years) as very low, low, or medium, and for children over 12 years as low, medium or high (refer to individual guidelines for inhaled corticosteroid dosing information).**

**EVGr** A paediatric low dose of inhaled corticosteroid should be started as maintenance therapy in children who present with any one of the following features: using an inhaled short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist three times a week or more, symptomatic three times a week or more, or waking at night due to asthma symptoms at least once a week.

BTS/SIGN (2016) instead recommend starting a very low dose (child 5–12 years) or a low dose (child over 12 years) of inhaled corticosteroid in children presenting with any one of the following features: using an inhaled short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist three times a week or more, symptomatic three times a week or more, or waking at night due to asthma symptoms at least once a week, or have had an asthma attack in the last 2 years, and starting inhaled corticosteroids at a dose appropriate to the severity of asthma.

BTS/SIGN (2016) recommend that inhaled corticosteroids (except ciclesonide p. 162) should be initially taken twice daily, however, the same total daily dose, taken once a day, can be considered in patients with milder disease if good or complete control of asthma is established. The dose of inhaled corticosteroid should be adjusted over time, to the lowest effective dose at which control of asthma is maintained.

BTS/SIGN (2016) recommend the prescribing of inhalers by brand. **⚠**

#### **Initial add-on therapy**

**EVGr** If asthma is uncontrolled on a paediatric low dose of inhaled corticosteroid as maintenance therapy, consider a leukotriene receptor antagonist (such as montelukast p. 165 or zafirlukast p. 166 [unlicensed in under 12 years]) in addition to the inhaled corticosteroid, and review the response to treatment in 4 to 8 weeks.

BTS/SIGN (2016) instead recommend a long-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist (LABA—such as salmeterol p. 155 or formoterol fumarate p. 154) in children over 12 years, or a LABA or a leukotriene receptor antagonist in children 5–12 years, as initial add-on therapy to inhaled corticosteroids if asthma is uncontrolled. **⚠**

#### **Additional add-on therapy**

**EVGr** If asthma is uncontrolled on a paediatric low dose of inhaled corticosteroid and a leukotriene receptor antagonist as maintenance therapy, consider discontinuation of the leukotriene receptor antagonist and initiation of a LABA in combination with the inhaled corticosteroid.

If asthma remains uncontrolled on a paediatric low dose of inhaled corticosteroid and a LABA as maintenance therapy, consider changing to a MART regimen (Maintenance And Reliever Therapy—a combination of an inhaled corticosteroid and fast-acting LABA such as formoterol in a single inhaler) with a paediatric low dose of inhaled corticosteroid as maintenance. See budesonide with formoterol p. 161 [not licensed in all age groups].


If asthma remains uncontrolled on a MART regimen with a paediatric low dose of inhaled corticosteroid as maintenance, consider increasing to a paediatric moderate dose of inhaled corticosteroid (either continuing a MART regimen or changing to a fixed-dose regimen of an inhaled corticosteroid and a LABA, with a short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist as reliever therapy).

If asthma is still uncontrolled on a paediatric moderate dose of inhaled corticosteroid as maintenance with a LABA (either as MART or a fixed-dose regimen), consider seeking advice from an asthma specialist and the following options:

- increasing the inhaled corticosteroid dose to a paediatric high dose as maintenance (this should only be offered as part of a fixed-dose regimen, with a short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist as reliever therapy), or
- a trial of an additional drug, such as modified-release theophylline p. 169.

BTS/SIGN (2016) instead recommend that if the child is gaining some benefit from addition of a LABA but control remains inadequate, continue the LABA and increase the


dose of the inhaled corticosteroid to a low-dose (child 5–12 years) or medium-dose (child over 12 years), if not already on this dose. If increasing the dose of inhaled corticosteroid is ineffective, consider continuing a very low dose (child 5–12 years) or low dose (child over 12 years) of inhaled corticosteroid and a LABA and try adding a leukotriene receptor antagonist, or modified-release theophylline p. 169, or long-acting muscarinic receptor antagonist (in children over 12 years).

If there is no response to the LABA, discontinue it and increase the dose of inhaled corticosteroid to a low-dose (child 5–12 years) or medium-dose (child over 12 years), if not already on this dose. If increasing the dose of inhaled corticosteroid is ineffective, consider continuing on a very low dose (child 5–12 years) or low dose (child over 12 years) of inhaled corticosteroid and try adding a leukotriene receptor antagonist or long-acting muscarinic receptor antagonist (in children over 12 years). 


#### High-dose inhaled corticosteroids and further add-on treatment

**EvGr** BTS/SIGN (2016) recommend that if control remains inadequate on a combination of a short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist as required, a low dose (child 5–12 years) or medium dose (child over 12 years) of inhaled corticosteroid, plus an additional drug, usually a LABA, to consider the following interventions:


- increase the inhaled corticosteroid to a medium-dose (child 5–12 years) or high-dose (child over 12 years)—with high doses of inhaled corticosteroid via a pressurised metered dose inhaler (pMDI), a spacer should be used, or
- add a leukotriene receptor antagonist, or
- add modified-release theophylline p. 169, or
- add tiotropium (in children over 12 years).

If a trial of a further add-on treatment is ineffective, stop the drug (or in the case of increased dose of inhaled corticosteroid, reduce to the original dose) and refer to specialist care. 

#### Continuous or frequent use of oral corticosteroids

**EvGr** BTS/SIGN (2016) recommend adding a regular oral corticosteroid (prednisolone p. 442) at the lowest dose to provide adequate control (under specialist care) in children with very severe asthma uncontrolled on a medium dose (child 5–12 years) or high dose (child over 12 years) of inhaled corticosteroid, and who have also tried (or are still receiving) a LABA, a leukotriene receptor antagonist, or modified-release theophylline p. 169. 


#### Monoclonal antibodies and immunosuppressants

**EvGr** BTS/SIGN (2016) recommend, that under specialist initiation, immunosuppressants such as methotrexate p. 543 [unlicensed], and monoclonal antibodies such as omalizumab p. 164 (child over 6 years for severe persistent allergic asthma) can be considered in children with severe asthma to achieve control and reduce the use of oral corticosteroids.  See omalizumab p. 164 National funding/access decisions.

#### Child under 5 years

##### Intermittent reliever therapy

**EvGr** A short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist (such as salbutamol p. 156) as reliever therapy should be offered to children under 5 years with suspected asthma. A short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist should be used for symptom relief alongside maintenance treatment.

Children using more than one short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist inhaler device a month should have their asthma urgently assessed and action taken to improve poorly controlled asthma. 

##### Regular preventer (maintenance) therapy

NICE (2017) define inhaled corticosteroid doses for children under 5 years as paediatric low or moderate. BTS/SIGN (2016) instead define inhaled corticosteroid doses for children under 5 years as very low (refer to


#### individual guidelines for inhaled corticosteroid dosing information).

**EvGr** Consider an 8-week trial of a paediatric moderate dose of inhaled corticosteroid in children presenting with any of the following features: asthma-related symptoms three times a week or more, experiencing night-time awakening at least once a week, or suspected asthma that is uncontrolled with a short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist alone.

BTS/SIGN (2016) recommend the prescribing of inhalers by brand.


After 8 weeks, stop inhaled corticosteroid treatment and continue to monitor the child's symptoms:

- if symptoms did not resolve during the trial period, review whether an alternative diagnosis is likely;
- if symptoms resolved then reoccurred within 4 weeks of stopping inhaled corticosteroid treatment, restart the inhaled corticosteroid at a paediatric low-dose as first-line maintenance therapy;
- if symptoms resolved but reoccurred beyond 4 weeks after stopping inhaled corticosteroid treatment, repeat the 8-week trial of a paediatric moderate dose of inhaled corticosteroid.

BTS/SIGN (2016) instead recommend starting a very low dose of inhaled corticosteroid as initial regular preventer therapy in children presenting with any one of the following features: using an inhaled short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist three times a week or more, symptomatic three times a week or more, or waking at night due to asthma symptoms at least once a week. In children unable to take an inhaled corticosteroid, a leukotriene receptor antagonist (such as montelukast p. 165) may be used as an alternative. 


#### Initial add-on therapy

**EvGr** If suspected asthma is uncontrolled in children under 5 years on a paediatric low dose of inhaled corticosteroid as maintenance therapy, consider a leukotriene receptor antagonist (such as montelukast p. 165) in addition to the inhaled corticosteroid.


If suspected asthma is uncontrolled in children under 5 years on a paediatric low dose of inhaled corticosteroid and a leukotriene receptor antagonist as maintenance therapy, stop the leukotriene receptor antagonist and refer the child to an asthma specialist. 

#### Decreasing treatment

**EvGr** Consider decreasing maintenance therapy when a patient's asthma has been controlled with their current maintenance therapy for at least three months. When deciding which drug to decrease first and at what rate, the severity of asthma, the side-effects of treatment, duration on current dose, the beneficial effect achieved, and the patient's preference, should be considered. Patients should be regularly reviewed when decreasing treatment.

Patients should be maintained at the lowest possible dose of inhaled corticosteroid. Reductions should be considered every three months, decreasing the dose by approximately 25–50% each time. Reduce the dose slowly as patients deteriorate at different rates. Only consider stopping inhaled corticosteroid treatment completely for people who are using a paediatric or adult low dose inhaled corticosteroid alone as maintenance therapy and are symptom-free. 

#### Exercise-induced asthma

**EvGr** For most patients, exercise-induced asthma is an illustration of poorly controlled asthma and regular treatment including inhaled corticosteroids should therefore be reviewed. If exercise is a specific problem in patients already taking inhaled corticosteroids who are otherwise well controlled, consider adding either a leukotriene receptor antagonist, a long-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist, an oral beta<sub>2</sub> agonist, sodium cromoglicate p. 167 or nedocromil sodium p. 167, or theophylline p. 169. An inhaled short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist used immediately before exercise is the drug of choice. 

## Pregnancy

**EvGr** Women with asthma should be closely monitored during pregnancy. It is particularly important that asthma be well controlled during pregnancy; when this is achieved there is little or no increased risk of adverse maternal or fetal complications.

Women should be counselled about the importance and safety of taking their asthma medication during pregnancy to maintain good control. Women who smoke should be advised about the dangers to themselves and to their baby and be offered appropriate support to stop smoking.

Short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonists, LABAs, oral and inhaled corticosteroids, sodium cromoglicate p. 167 and nedocromil sodium p. 167, and oral and intravenous theophylline p. 169 (with appropriate monitoring) can be used as normal during pregnancy. There is limited information on use of a leukotriene receptor antagonist during pregnancy, however, where indicated to achieve adequate control, they should not be withheld. **⚠**

## Useful Resources

Asthma: diagnosis, monitoring and chronic asthma management. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. NICE guideline 80. November 2017.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng80](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng80)

British guideline on the management of asthma. British Thoracic Society and Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network. Full guidance - A national clinical guideline 153. September 2016.

[www.sign.ac.uk/assets/sign153.pdf](http://www.sign.ac.uk/assets/sign153.pdf)

## Asthma, acute

30-Nov-2016

### Child over 2 years

#### Levels of severity

The nature of treatment required for the management of acute asthma depends on the level of severity, described as follows:

#### Moderate acute asthma

- Able to talk in sentences
- Arterial oxygen saturation ( $\text{SpO}_2$ )  $\geq 92\%$
- Peak flow  $\geq 50\%$  best or predicted
- Heart rate  $\leq 140$ /minute in children aged 2–5 years; heart rate  $\leq 125$ /minute in children over 5 years
- Respiratory rate  $\leq 40$ /minute in children aged 2–5 years; respiratory rate  $\leq 30$ /minute in children over 5 years

#### Severe acute asthma

- Can't complete sentences in one breath or too breathless to talk or feed
- $\text{SpO}_2 < 92\%$
- Peak flow  $33\text{--}50\%$  best or predicted
- Heart rate  $> 140$ /minute in children aged 2–5 years; heart rate  $> 125$ /minute in children aged over 5 years
- Respiratory rate  $> 40$ /minute in children aged 2–5 years; respiratory rate  $> 30$ /minute in children aged over 5 years

#### Life-threatening acute asthma

Any one of the following in a child with severe asthma:

- $\text{SpO}_2 < 92\%$
- Peak flow  $< 33\%$  best or predicted
- Silent chest
- Cyanosis
- Poor respiratory effort
- Hypotension
- Exhaustion
- Confusion

#### Management

**EvGr** Following initial assessment, supplementary high flow oxygen should be given to all children with life-threatening

acute asthma or  $\text{SpO}_2 < 94\%$  to achieve normal saturations of  $94\text{--}98\%$ .

First-line treatment for acute asthma is an inhaled short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist (salbutamol p. 156 or terbutaline sulfate p. 158) given as soon as possible, ideally via a metered dose inhaler and spacer device in mild to moderate acute asthma. Children with severe or life-threatening acute asthma should be transferred to hospital urgently.

In all cases of acute asthma, children should be prescribed an adequate once daily dose of oral prednisolone p. 442. Treatment for up to 3 days is usually sufficient, but the length of course should be tailored to the number of days necessary to bring about recovery. Intravenous hydrocortisone p. 440 should be reserved for severely affected children who are unable to retain oral medication.

Nebulised ipratropium bromide p. 153 can be combined with beta<sub>2</sub> agonist treatment for children with severe or life-threatening acute asthma or in those with a poor initial response to beta<sub>2</sub> agonist therapy to provide greater bronchodilation. Consider adding magnesium sulfate p. 597 to nebulised salbutamol and ipratropium bromide in the first hour in children with a short duration of acute severe asthma symptoms presenting with an oxygen saturation less than  $92\%$ .

Children with continuing severe asthma despite frequent nebulised beta<sub>2</sub> agonists and ipratropium bromide plus oral corticosteroids, and those with life-threatening features, need urgent review by a specialist with a view to transfer to a high dependency unit or paediatric intensive care unit (PICU) to receive second-line intravenous therapies.

In a severe asthma attack where the child has not responded to initial inhaled therapy, early addition of a single bolus dose of intravenous salbutamol may be an option. Continuous intravenous infusion of salbutamol, administered under specialist supervision with continuous ECG and electrolyte monitoring, should be considered in patients with unreliable inhalation or severe refractory asthma. Aminophylline p. 167 may be considered in children with severe or life-threatening acute asthma unresponsive to maximal doses of bronchodilators and corticosteroids. Aminophylline is not recommended in children with mild to moderate acute asthma. Intravenous magnesium sulfate has been used for acute asthma [unlicensed use] although its place in management is not yet established. **⚠**

### Child under 2 years

**EvGr** Inhaled short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonists are the initial treatment of choice for acute asthma in children under 2 years. For mild to moderate acute asthma attacks, a metered-dose inhaler with a spacer and mask is the optimal drug delivery device. In a hospital setting, consider oral prednisolone daily for up to 3 days, early in the management of severe asthma attacks. For more severe symptoms, inhaled ipratropium bromide in combination with an inhaled beta<sub>2</sub> agonist is also an option. **⚠**

### Follow up in all cases

**EvGr** Episodes of acute asthma may be a failure of preventative therapy, review is required to prevent further episodes. A careful history should be taken to establish the reason for the asthma attack. Inhaler technique should be checked and regular treatment should be reviewed. Children and their carers should be given a written asthma action plan aimed at preventing relapse, optimising treatment, and preventing delay in seeking assistance in future attacks. It is essential that the child's GP practice is informed within 24 hours of discharge from the emergency department or hospital following an asthma attack. Children who have had a near-fatal asthma attack should be kept under specialist supervision indefinitely. A respiratory specialist should follow up all patients admitted with a severe asthma attack for at least one year after the admission. **⚠**



## Bronchodilators

29-Nov-2017

### Adrenoceptor agonists (sympathomimetics)

Selective  $\beta_2$  agonists produce bronchodilation. A short-acting  $\beta_2$  agonist (such as salbutamol p. 156 and terbutaline sulfate p. 158) is used for immediate relief of asthma symptoms while a long-acting  $\beta_2$  agonist is used in addition to an inhaled corticosteroid in children requiring prophylactic treatment.

Adrenaline/epinephrine p. 136 (which has both alpha- and beta-adrenoceptor agonist properties) is used in the emergency management of acute allergic and anaphylactic reactions, in angioedema, and in cardiopulmonary resuscitation; it is also used as a nebuliser solution to treat severe croup.

### Long-acting $\beta_2$ agonists

Formoterol fumarate p. 154 and salmeterol p. 155 are longer-acting  $\beta_2$  agonists which are administered by inhalation. They should be used for asthma only in children who regularly use an inhaled corticosteroid.

Vilanterol is a long-acting  $\beta_2$  agonist available in a combination inhaler with fluticasone furoate.

Combination inhalers that contain a long-acting  $\beta_2$  agonist and a corticosteroid ensure that long-acting  $\beta_2$  agonists are not used without concomitant corticosteroids.

### Oral

Oral preparations of  $\beta_2$  agonists may be used for children if an inhaler device cannot be used but inhaled  $\beta_2$  agonists are more effective and have fewer side-effects.

### Parenteral

$\beta_2$  agonists can be given intravenously in children with severe or life-threatening acute asthma.

### Antimuscarinic bronchodilators

Ipratropium bromide p. 153 by nebulisation can be added to other standard treatment in life-threatening acute asthma if acute asthma fails to improve with standard therapy. Ipratropium bromide can be used to provide short-term relief in chronic asthma, but short-acting  $\beta_2$  agonists act more quickly and are preferred.

The aerosol inhalation of ipratropium bromide has a maximum effect 30–60 minutes after use; its duration of action is 3 to 6 hours.

### Theophylline

Theophylline p. 169 is a xanthine used as a bronchodilator in asthma. It may have an additive effect when used in conjunction with small doses of  $\beta_2$  agonists; the combination may increase the risk of side-effects, including hypokalaemia.

Theophylline is given by injection as aminophylline p. 167, a mixture of theophylline with ethylenediamine, which is 20 times more soluble than theophylline alone. Aminophylline injection is needed rarely for severe acute asthma.

### Compound bronchodilator preparations

In general, children are best treated with single-ingredient preparations, such as a selective  $\beta_2$  agonist or ipratropium bromide, so that the dose of each drug can be adjusted.

## Oxygen

### Overview

Oxygen should be regarded as a drug. It is prescribed for hypoxaemic patients to increase alveolar oxygen tension and decrease the work of breathing. The concentration of oxygen required depends on the condition being treated; administration of an inappropriate concentration of oxygen

may have serious or even fatal consequences. High concentrations of oxygen can cause pulmonary epithelial damage (bronchopulmonary dysplasia), convulsions, and retinal damage, especially in preterm neonates.

Oxygen is probably the most common drug used in medical emergencies. It should be prescribed initially to achieve a normal or near-normal oxygen saturation. In most acutely ill children with an expected or known normal or low arterial carbon dioxide ( $P_a\text{CO}_2$ ), oxygen saturation should be maintained above 92%; some clinicians may aim for a target of 94–98%. In some clinical situations, such as carbon monoxide poisoning, it is more appropriate to aim for the highest possible oxygen saturation until the child is stable. Hypercapnic respiratory failure is rare in children; in those children at risk, a lower oxygen saturation target of 88–92% is indicated.

High concentration oxygen therapy is safe in uncomplicated cases of conditions such as pneumonia, pulmonary thromboembolism, pulmonary fibrosis, shock, severe trauma, sepsis, or anaphylaxis. In such conditions low arterial oxygen ( $P_a\text{O}_2$ ) is usually associated with low or normal arterial carbon dioxide ( $P_a\text{CO}_2$ ), and therefore there is little risk of hypoventilation and carbon dioxide retention.

In severe acute asthma, the arterial carbon dioxide ( $P_a\text{CO}_2$ ) is usually subnormal but as asthma deteriorates it may rise steeply (particularly in children). These patients usually require high concentrations of oxygen and if the arterial carbon dioxide ( $P_a\text{CO}_2$ ) remains high despite other treatment, intermittent positive-pressure ventilation needs to be considered urgently.

Oxygen should not be given to neonates except under expert supervision. Particular care is required in preterm neonates because of the risk of hyperoxia.

Low concentration oxygen therapy (controlled oxygen therapy) is reserved for children at risk of hypercapnic respiratory failure, which is more likely in children with:

- advanced cystic fibrosis
- advanced non-cystic fibrosis bronchiectasis
- severe kyphoscoliosis or severe ankylosing spondylitis
- severe lung scarring caused by tuberculosis
- musculoskeletal disorders with respiratory weakness, especially if on home ventilation
- an overdose of opioids, benzodiazepines, or other drugs causing respiratory depression.

Until blood gases can be measured, initial oxygen should be given using a controlled concentration of 28% or less, titrated towards a target concentration of 88–92%. The aim is to provide the child with enough oxygen to achieve an acceptable arterial oxygen tension without worsening carbon dioxide retention and respiratory acidosis.

### Domiciliary oxygen

Oxygen should only be prescribed for use in the home after careful evaluation in hospital by a respiratory care specialist. Carers and children who smoke should be advised of the risks of smoking when receiving oxygen, including the risk of fire. Smoking cessation therapy should be recommended before home oxygen prescription.

### Long-term oxygen therapy

The aim of long-term oxygen therapy is to maintain oxygen saturation of at least 92%. Children (especially those with chronic neonatal lung disease) often require supplemental oxygen, either for 24-hours a day or during periods of sleep; many children are eventually weaned off long-term oxygen therapy as their condition improves.

Long-term oxygen therapy should be considered for children with conditions such as:

- bronchopulmonary dysplasia (chronic neonatal lung disease);
- congenital heart disease with pulmonary hypertension;
- pulmonary hypertension secondary to pulmonary disease;



- idiopathic pulmonary hypertension;
- sickle-cell disease with persistent nocturnal hypoxia;
- interstitial lung disease and obliterative bronchiolitis;
- cystic fibrosis;
- obstructive sleep apnoea syndrome;
- neuromuscular or skeletal disease requiring non-invasive ventilation;
- pulmonary malignancy or other terminal disease with disabling dyspnoea.

Increased respiratory depression is seldom a problem in children with stable respiratory failure treated with low concentrations of oxygen although it may occur during exacerbations; children and their carers should be warned to call for medical help if drowsiness or confusion occurs.

### Short-burst oxygen therapy

Oxygen is occasionally prescribed for short-burst (intermittent) use for episodes of breathlessness.

### Ambulatory oxygen therapy

Ambulatory oxygen is prescribed for children on long-term oxygen therapy who need to be away from home on a regular basis.

### Oxygen therapy equipment

Under the NHS oxygen may be supplied as **oxygen cylinders**. Oxygen flow can be adjusted as the cylinders are equipped with an oxygen flow meter. Oxygen delivered from a cylinder should be passed through a humidifier if used for long periods.

**Oxygen concentrators** are more economical for children who require oxygen for long periods, and in England and Wales can be ordered on the NHS on a regional tendering basis. A concentrator is recommended for a child who requires oxygen for more than 8 hours a day (or 21 cylinders per month). Exceptionally, if a higher concentration of oxygen is required the output of 2 oxygen concentrators can be combined using a 'Y' connection.

A nasal cannula is usually preferred to a face mask for long-term oxygen therapy from an oxygen concentrator. Nasal cannulas can, however, cause dermatitis and mucosal drying in sensitive individuals.

Giving oxygen by nasal cannula allows the child to talk, eat, and drink, but the concentration of oxygen is not controlled and the method may not be appropriate for acute respiratory failure. When oxygen is given through a nasal cannula at a rate of 1–2 litres/minute the inspiratory oxygen concentration is usually low, but it varies with ventilation and can be high if the patient is underventilating.

### Arrangements for supplying oxygen

The following oxygen services may be ordered in England and Wales:

- emergency oxygen;
- short-burst (intermittent) oxygen therapy;
- long-term oxygen therapy;
- ambulatory oxygen.

The type of oxygen service (or combination of services) should be ordered on a Home Oxygen Order Form (HOOF); the amount of oxygen required (hours per day) and flow rate should be specified. The clinician will determine the appropriate equipment to be provided. Special needs or preferences should be specified on the HOOF.

The clinician should obtain the consent of the child or carers to pass on the child's details to the supplier, the fire brigade, and other relevant organisations. The supplier will contact the child or carer to make arrangements for delivery, installation, and maintenance of the equipment. The supplier will also train the child or carer to use the equipment.

The clinician should send the HOOF to the supplier who will continue to provide the service until a revised HOOF is

received, or until notified that the child no longer requires the home oxygen service.

HOOF and further instructions are available at [www.bprs.co.uk/oxygen.html](http://www.bprs.co.uk/oxygen.html).

- East of England, North East: BOC Medical: Tel: 0800 136 603 Fax: 0800 169 9989
- South West: Air Liquide: Tel: 0808 202 2229 Fax: 0191 497 4340
- London East, Midlands, North West: Air Liquide: Tel: 0500 823 773 Fax: 0800 781 4610
- Yorkshire and Humberside, West Midlands, Wales: Air Products: Tel: 0800 373 580 Fax: 0800 214 709
- South East Coast, South Central: Dolby Vivisol: Tel: 08443 814 402 Fax: 0800 781 4610

In **Scotland** refer the child for assessment by a paediatric respiratory consultant. If the need for a concentrator is confirmed the consultant will arrange for the provision of a concentrator through the Common Services Agency. Prescribers should complete a Scottish Home Oxygen Order Form (SHOOF) and email it to Health Facilities Scotland. Health Facilities Scotland will then liaise with their contractor to arrange the supply of oxygen. Further information can be obtained at [www.dolbyvivisol.com/our-services/healthcare-professionals/home-oxygen-services-\(sco\).aspx](http://www.dolbyvivisol.com/our-services/healthcare-professionals/home-oxygen-services-(sco).aspx).

In **Northern Ireland** oxygen concentrators and cylinders should be prescribed on form HS21; oxygen concentrators are supplied by a local contractor. Prescriptions for oxygen cylinders and accessories can be dispensed by pharmacists contracted to provide domiciliary oxygen services.

## Croup

### Management

Mild croup is largely self-limiting, but treatment with a single dose of a corticosteroid (e.g. dexamethasone p. 439) by mouth may be of benefit.

More severe croup (or mild croup that might cause complications) calls for hospital admission; a single dose of a corticosteroid (e.g. dexamethasone or prednisolone p. 442 by mouth) should be administered before transfer to hospital. In hospital, dexamethasone (by mouth or by injection) or budesonide (by nebulisation) p. 160 will often reduce symptoms; the dose may need to be repeated after 12 hours if necessary.

For severe croup not effectively controlled with corticosteroid treatment, nebulised adrenaline/epinephrine solution 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL) p. 136 should be given with close clinical monitoring; the effects of nebulised adrenaline/epinephrine last 2–3 hours and the child needs to be monitored carefully for recurrence of the obstruction.

## ANTIMUSCARINICS

### Antimuscarinics (inhaled)



09-Feb-2016

- **CAUTIONS** Bladder outflow obstruction • paradoxical bronchospasm • prostatic hyperplasia • susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Arrhythmias • cough • dizziness • dry mouth • epistaxis • headache • nausea
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Constipation • dysphonia • glaucoma • palpitations • skin reactions • stomatitis • urinary disorders • vision blurred

22-Jan-2018

## Ipratropium bromide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Reversible airways obstruction

##### ► BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL

- Child 1 month–5 years: 20 micrograms 3 times a day
- Child 6–11 years: 20–40 micrograms 3 times a day
- Child 12–17 years: 20–40 micrograms 3–4 times a day

#### Acute bronchospasm

##### ► BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION

- Child 1 month–5 years: 125–250 micrograms as required; maximum 1 mg per day
- Child 6–11 years: 250 micrograms as required; maximum 1 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: 500 micrograms as required, doses higher than max. can be given under medical supervision; maximum 2 mg per day

#### Severe or life-threatening acute asthma

##### ► BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION

- Child 1 month–11 years: 250 micrograms every 20–30 minutes for the first 2 hours, then 250 micrograms every 4–6 hours as required
- Child 12–17 years: 500 micrograms every 4–6 hours as required

### PHARMACOKINETICS

- The maximal effect of inhaled ipratropium occurs 30–60 minutes after use; its duration of action is 3 to 6 hours and bronchodilation can usually be maintained with treatment 3 times a day.

- **UNLICENSED USE** [EvG] The dose of ipratropium for severe or life-threatening acute asthma is unlicensed. ⚠ *Inhalvent*® not licensed for use in children under 6 years.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid spraying near eyes · cystic fibrosis

### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Glaucoma** *Acute angle-closure glaucoma* has been reported with nebulised ipratropium, particularly when given with nebulised salbutamol (and possibly other beta<sub>2</sub> agonists); care needed to protect the patient's eyes from nebulised drug or from drug powder.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ipratropium

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Gastrointestinal motility disorder · throat complaints
- **Uncommon** Corneal oedema · diarrhoea · eye disorders · eye pain · respiratory disorders · vision disorders · vomiting

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with hypersensitivity to atropine or its derivatives.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises only use if potential benefit outweighs the risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available—manufacturer advises only use if potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** If dilution of ipratropium bromide nebuliser solution is necessary use only sterile sodium chloride 0.9%.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be counselled on appropriate administration technique and warned against accidental contact with the eye (due to risk of ocular complications). **Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be counselled on the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness and vision disorders.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Nebuliser liquid

##### ► Ipratropium bromide (Non-proprietary)

**Ipratropium bromide 250 microgram per 1 ml** Ipratropium bromide 500micrograms/2ml nebuliser liquid unit dose vials | 20 unit dose [PoM] £5.60 DT = £3.36

Ipratropium bromide 250micrograms/1ml nebuliser liquid unit dose vials | 20 unit dose [PoM] £4.83 DT = £4.65  
Ipratropium 250micrograms/1ml nebuliser liquid Steri-Neb unit dose vials | 20 unit dose [PoM] £6.99 DT = £4.65

Ipratropium 500micrograms/2ml nebuliser liquid Steri-Neb unit dose vials | 20 unit dose [PoM] £15.99 DT = £3.36

##### ► **Atrovent UDV** (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)

**Ipratropium bromide 250 microgram per 1 ml** Atrovent 500micrograms/2ml nebuliser liquid UDV's | 20 unit dose [PoM] £4.87 DT = £3.36 | 60 unit dose [PoM] £14.59

Atrovent 250micrograms/1ml nebuliser liquid UDV's | 20 unit dose [PoM] £4.14 DT = £4.65 | 60 unit dose [PoM] £12.44

#### Pressurised inhalation

##### ► **Atrovent** (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)

**Ipratropium bromide 20 microgram per 1 dose** Atrovent 20micrograms/dose inhaler CFC free | 200 dose [PoM] £5.56 DT = £5.56

##### ► **Inhalvent** (Alissa Healthcare Research Ltd)

**Ipratropium bromide 20 microgram per 1 dose** Inhalvent 20micrograms/dose inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £5.56 DT = £5.56

12-Jun-2018

## Tiotropium

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### SPIRIVA RESPIMAT®

**Severe asthma [add-on to inhaled corticosteroid (over 400 micrograms budesonide daily or equivalent) and 1 controller, or inhaled corticosteroid (200–400 micrograms budesonide daily or equivalent) and 2 controllers, in patients who have suffered one or more severe exacerbations in the last year]**

##### ► BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL

- Child 6–11 years: 5 micrograms once daily

**Severe asthma [add-on to inhaled corticosteroid (over 800 micrograms budesonide daily or equivalent) and 1 controller, or inhaled corticosteroid (400–800 micrograms budesonide daily or equivalent) and 2 controllers, in patients who have suffered one or more severe exacerbations in the last year]**

##### ► BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL

- Child 12–17 years: 5 micrograms once daily

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- 2 puffs is equivalent to 5 micrograms tiotropium.

- **CAUTIONS** Arrhythmia (unstable, life-threatening or requiring intervention in the previous 12 months) · heart failure (hospitalisation for moderate to severe heart failure in the previous 12 months) · myocardial infarction in the previous 6 months

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tiotropium

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Uncommon** Gastrointestinal disorders · increased risk of infection · taste altered
- **Rare or very rare** Bronchospasm · dysphagia · insomnia · oral disorders
- **Frequency not known** Dehydration · dry skin · joint swelling · skin ulcer

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—limited data available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk if creatinine clearance less

than or equal to 50 mL/minute—plasma-tiotropium concentration raised.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on appropriate inhaler technique.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Pressurised inhalation

- **Spiriva Respimat** (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)

Tiotropium (as Tiotropium bromide) 2.5 microgram per

1 dose Spiriva Respimat 2.5micrograms/dose solution for inhalation cartridge with device | 60 dose [PoM] £23.00 DT = £23.00

## BETA<sub>2</sub>-ADRENOCEPTOR AGONISTS, SELECTIVE

### Beta<sub>2</sub>-adrenoceptor agonists, selective

12-Feb-2016

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Severe pre-eclampsia
- **CAUTIONS** Arrhythmias · cardiovascular disease · diabetes (risk of hyperglycaemia and ketoacidosis, especially with intravenous use) · hypertension · hyperthyroidism · hypokalaemia · susceptibility to QT-interval prolongation
- **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - Hypokalaemia Potentially serious hypokalaemia may result from beta<sub>2</sub> agonist therapy. Particular caution is required in severe asthma, because this effect may be potentiated by concomitant treatment with theophylline and its derivatives, corticosteroids, diuretics, and by hypoxia.
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · dizziness · headache · hypokalaemia (with high doses) · nausea · palpitations · tremor
  - **Uncommon** Hyperglycaemia · myocardial ischaemia
  - **Rare or very rare** Bronchospasm paradoxical (sometimes severe)
- **PREGNANCY** Women planning to become pregnant should be counselled about the importance of taking their asthma medication regularly to maintain good control.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - In severe asthma, plasma-potassium concentration should be monitored (risk of hypokalaemia).
  - In patients with diabetes, monitor blood glucose (risk of hyperglycaemia and ketoacidosis, especially when beta<sub>2</sub> agonist given intravenously).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** The dose, the frequency, and the maximum number of inhalations in 24 hours of the beta<sub>2</sub> agonist should be **stated explicitly** to the patient or their carer. The patient or their carer should be advised to seek medical advice when the prescribed dose of beta<sub>2</sub> agonist fails to provide the usual degree of symptomatic relief because this usually indicates a worsening of the asthma and the patient may require a prophylactic drug. Patients or their carers should be advised to follow manufacturers' instructions on the care and cleansing of inhaler devices.

## BETA<sub>2</sub>-ADRENOCEPTOR AGONISTS, SELECTIVE > LONG-ACTING

above

### Formoterol fumarate

(Eformoterol fumarate)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Reversible airways obstruction in patients requiring long-term regular bronchodilator therapy | Nocturnal asthma in patients requiring long-term regular bronchodilator therapy | Prophylaxis of exercise-induced bronchospasm in patients requiring long-term regular bronchodilator therapy | Chronic asthma in patients who regularly use an inhaled corticosteroid**

- **BY INHALATION OF POWDER**

- Child 6–11 years: 12 micrograms twice daily, a daily dose of 24 micrograms of formoterol should be sufficient for the majority of children, particularly for younger age-groups; higher doses should be used rarely, and only when control is not maintained on the lower dose
- Child 12–17 years: 12 micrograms twice daily, dose may be increased in more severe airway obstruction; increased to 24 micrograms twice daily, a daily dose of 24 micrograms of formoterol should be sufficient for the majority of children, particularly for younger age-groups; higher doses should be used rarely, and only when control is not maintained on the lower dose

- **BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL**

- Child 12–17 years: 12 micrograms twice daily, dose may be increased in more severe airway obstruction; increased to 24 micrograms twice daily, a daily dose of 24 micrograms of formoterol should be sufficient for the majority of children, particularly for younger age-groups; higher doses should be used rarely, and only when control is not maintained on the lower dose

#### OXIS®

#### Chronic asthma

- **BY INHALATION OF POWDER**

- Child 6–17 years: 6–12 micrograms 1–2 times a day (max. per dose 12 micrograms), occasionally doses up to the maximum daily may be needed, reassess treatment if additional doses required on more than 2 days a week; maximum 48 micrograms per day

#### Relief of bronchospasm

- **BY INHALATION OF POWDER**

- Child 6–17 years: 6–12 micrograms

#### Prophylaxis of exercise-induced bronchospasm

- **BY INHALATION OF POWDER**

- Child 6–17 years: 6–12 micrograms, dose to be taken before exercise

#### PHARMACOKINETICS

- At recommended inhaled doses, the duration of action of formoterol is about 12 hours.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### CHM ADVICE

To ensure safe use, the CHM has advised that for the management of chronic asthma, long-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist (formoterol) should:

- be added only if regular use of standard-dose inhaled corticosteroids has failed to control asthma adequately;
- not be initiated in patients with rapidly deteriorating asthma;
- be introduced at a low dose and the effect properly monitored before considering dose increase;
- be discontinued in the absence of benefit;

- not be used for the relief of exercise-induced asthma symptoms unless regular inhaled corticosteroids are also used;
- be reviewed as clinically appropriate: stepping down therapy should be considered when good long-term asthma control has been achieved.

- **CAUTIONS** High doses of beta<sub>2</sub> agonists can be dangerous in some children
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta<sub>2</sub> agonists
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Muscle cramps
  - **Uncommon** Anxiety pectoris · skin reactions · sleep disorder · taste altered
  - **Rare or very rare** Anxiety · QT interval prolongation
- **PREGNANCY** Inhaled drugs for asthma can be taken as normal during pregnancy.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Inhaled drugs for asthma can be taken as normal during breast-feeding.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Advise patients not to exceed prescribed dose, and to follow manufacturer's directions; if a previously effective dose of inhaled formoterol fails to provide adequate relief, a doctor's advice should be obtained as soon as possible. Patients should be advised to report any deterioration in symptoms following initiation of treatment with a long-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist. Patient or carer should be given advice on how to administer formoterol fumarate inhalers.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Inhalation powder

- **Easyhaler (formoterol)** (Orion Pharma (UK) Ltd)  
Formoterol fumarate dihydrate 12 microgram per 1 dose Formoterol Easyhaler 12micrograms/dose dry powder inhaler | 120 dose [PoM] £23.75 DT = £23.75
- **Foradil** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
Formoterol fumarate dihydrate 12 microgram Foradil 12microgram inhalation powder capsules with device | 60 capsule [PoM] £28.06 DT = £28.06
- **Oxis Turbohaler** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)  
Formoterol fumarate dihydrate 6 microgram per 1 dose Oxis 6 Turbohaler | 60 dose [PoM] £24.80 DT = £24.80  
Formoterol fumarate dihydrate 12 microgram per 1 dose Oxis 12 Turbohaler | 60 dose [PoM] £24.80 DT = £24.80

##### Pressurised inhalation

- **Atimos Modulite** (Chiesi Ltd)  
Formoterol fumarate dihydrate 12 microgram per 1 dose Atimos Modulite 12micrograms/dose inhaler | 100 dose [PoM] £30.06 DT = £30.06

Combinations available: **Budesonide with formoterol**, p. 161 · **Fluticasone with formoterol**, p. 163

#### PHARMACOKINETICS

- At recommended inhaled doses, the duration of action of salmeterol is about 12 hours.

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Neovent*® not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### CHM ADVICE

To ensure safe use, the CHM has advised that for the management of chronic asthma, long-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist (salmeterol) should:

- be added only if regular use of standard-dose inhaled corticosteroids has failed to control asthma adequately;
- not be initiated in patients with rapidly deteriorating asthma;
- be introduced at a low dose and the effect properly monitored before considering dose increase;
- be discontinued in the absence of benefit;
- not be used for the relief of exercise-induced asthma symptoms unless regular inhaled corticosteroids are also used;
- be reviewed as clinically appropriate: stepping down therapy should be considered when good long-term asthma control has been achieved.

- **CAUTIONS** High doses of beta<sub>2</sub> agonists can be dangerous in some children
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta<sub>2</sub> agonists
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Muscle cramps
  - **Uncommon** Nervousness · skin reactions
  - **Rare or very rare** Arthralgia · chest pain · insomnia · oedema · oropharyngeal irritation
- **PREGNANCY** Inhaled drugs for asthma can be taken as normal during pregnancy.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Inhaled drugs for asthma can be taken as normal during breast-feeding.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Advise patients that salmeterol should not be used for relief of acute attacks, not to exceed prescribed dose, and to follow manufacturer's directions; if a previously effective dose of inhaled salmeterol fails to provide adequate relief, a doctor's advice should be obtained as soon as possible. Patients should be advised to report any deterioration in symptoms following initiation of treatment with a long-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist.  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Salmeterol inhaler for asthma prevention (prophylaxis) [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/salmeterol-inhaler-for-asthma-prevention](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/salmeterol-inhaler-for-asthma-prevention)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Inhalation powder

- **Serevent Accuhaler** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
Salmeterol (as Salmeterol xinafoate) 50 microgram per 1 dose Serevent 50micrograms/dose Accuhaler | 60 dose [PoM] £35.11 DT = £35.11

##### Pressurised inhalation

- **Salmeterol (Non-proprietary)**  
Salmeterol (as Salmeterol xinafoate) 25 microgram per 1 dose Salmeterol 25micrograms/dose inhaler CFC free | 120 dose [PoM] £29.26 DT = £29.26
- **Neovent** (Kent Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Salmeterol (as Salmeterol xinafoate) 25 microgram per 1 dose Neovent 25micrograms/dose inhaler CFC free | 120 dose [PoM] £29.26 DT = £29.26
- **Serevent Evohaler** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
Salmeterol (as Salmeterol xinafoate) 25 microgram per 1 dose Serevent 25micrograms/dose Evohaler | 120 dose [PoM] £29.26 DT = £29.26

## Salmeterol

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Reversible airways obstruction in patients requiring long-term regular bronchodilator therapy | Nocturnal asthma in patients requiring long-term regular bronchodilator therapy | Prevention of exercise-induced bronchospasm in patients requiring long-term regular bronchodilator therapy | Chronic asthma only in patients who regularly use an inhaled corticosteroid (not for immediate relief of acute asthma)**

- **BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL, OR BY INHALATION OF POWDER**
- Child 5–11 years: 50 micrograms twice daily
- Child 12–17 years: 50 micrograms twice daily, dose may be increased in more severe airway obstruction; increased to 100 micrograms twice daily

► **Soltel** (Kent Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Salmeterol (as Salmeterol xinafoate) 25 microgram per 1 dose** Soltel 25micrograms/dose inhaler CFC free | 120 dose [PoM]  
£19.95 DT = £29.26

► **Vertine** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Salmeterol (as Salmeterol xinafoate) 25 microgram per 1 dose** Vertine 25micrograms/dose inhaler CFC free | 120 dose [PoM]  
£23.40 DT = £29.26

Combinations available: *Fluticasone with salmeterol*, p. 163

## BETA<sub>2</sub>-ADRENOCEPTOR AGONISTS, SELECTIVE > SHORT-ACTING

P 154

### Salbutamol (Albuterol)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Acute asthma

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child 1–23 months: 5 micrograms/kg for 1 dose, dose to be administered over 5 minutes, reserve intravenous beta<sub>2</sub> agonists for those in whom inhaled therapy cannot be used reliably or there is no current effect
- Child 2–17 years: 15 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 250 micrograms) for 1 dose, dose to be administered over 5 minutes, reserve intravenous beta<sub>2</sub> agonists for those in whom inhaled therapy cannot be used reliably or there is no current effect

###### ► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 1–2 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response and heart rate, increased if necessary up to 5 micrograms/kg/minute, doses above 2 micrograms/kg/minute should be given in an intensive care setting, reserve intravenous beta<sub>2</sub> agonists for those in whom inhaled therapy cannot be used reliably or there is no current effect

##### Moderate, severe, or life-threatening acute asthma

###### ► BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION

- Child 1 month–4 years: 2.5 mg, repeat every 20–30 minutes or when required, give via oxygen-driven nebuliser if available
- Child 5–11 years: 2.5–5 mg, repeat every 20–30 minutes or when required, give via oxygen-driven nebuliser if available
- Child 12–17 years: 5 mg, repeat every 20–30 minutes or when required, give via oxygen-driven nebuliser if available

##### Moderate and severe acute asthma

###### ► BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL

- Child: 2–10 puffs, each puff is to be inhaled separately, repeat every 10–20 minutes or when required, give via large volume spacer (and a close-fitting face mask in children under 3 years), each puff is equivalent to 100 micrograms

##### Exacerbation of reversible airways obstruction (including nocturnal asthma) | Prophylaxis of allergen- or exercise-induced bronchospasm

###### ► BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL

- Child: 100–200 micrograms, up to 4 times a day for persistent symptoms
- ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES
- Child 1 month–1 year: 100 micrograms/kg 3–4 times a day (max. per dose 2 mg), inhalation route preferred over oral route
- Child 2–5 years: 1–2 mg 3–4 times a day, inhalation route preferred over oral route
- Child 6–11 years: 2 mg 3–4 times a day, inhalation route preferred over oral route
- Child 12–17 years: 2–4 mg 3–4 times a day, inhalation route preferred over oral route

##### Severe hyperkalaemia

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: 4 micrograms/kg, repeated if necessary, to be administered over 5 minutes.

- Child: 4 micrograms/kg, repeated if necessary, to be administered over 5 minutes

###### ► BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION

- Neonate: 2.5–5 mg, repeated if necessary, intravenous injection route preferred over inhalation of nebulised solution.

- Child: 2.5–5 mg, repeated if necessary, intravenous injection route preferred over inhalation of nebulised solution

##### Chronic asthma

###### ► BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 3–11 years: 4 mg twice daily
- Child 12–17 years: 8 mg twice daily

##### EASYHALER<sup>®</sup> SALBUTAMOL

##### Acute bronchospasm

###### ► BY INHALATION OF POWDER

- Child 5–11 years: 100–200 micrograms; maximum 800 micrograms per day
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 100–200 micrograms, increased if necessary to 400 micrograms; maximum 800 micrograms per day

##### Prophylaxis of allergen- or exercise-induced bronchospasm

###### ► BY INHALATION OF POWDER

- Child 5–11 years: 100–200 micrograms
- Child 12–17 years: 200 micrograms

##### PULVINAL<sup>®</sup> SALBUTAMOL

##### Acute bronchospasm

###### ► BY INHALATION OF POWDER

- Child 5–17 years: Initially 200 micrograms, up to 800 micrograms daily for persistent symptoms

##### Prophylaxis of allergen- or exercise-induced bronchospasm

###### ► BY INHALATION OF POWDER

- Child 5–17 years: 200 micrograms

##### SALBULIN NOVOLIZER<sup>®</sup>

##### Acute bronchospasm

###### ► BY INHALATION OF POWDER

- Child 6–11 years: 100–200 micrograms, up to 400 micrograms daily for persistent symptoms
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 100–200 micrograms, up to 800 micrograms daily for persistent symptoms

##### Prophylaxis of allergen- or exercise-induced bronchospasm

###### ► BY INHALATION OF POWDER

- Child 6–11 years: 100–200 micrograms
- Child 12–17 years: 200 micrograms

##### VENTOLIN ACCUHALER<sup>®</sup>

##### Acute bronchospasm

###### ► BY INHALATION OF POWDER

- Child 5–17 years: Initially 200 micrograms, up to 4 times daily for persistent symptoms

##### Prophylaxis of allergen- or exercise-induced bronchospasm

###### ► BY INHALATION OF POWDER

- Child 5–17 years: 200 micrograms

##### PHARMACOKINETICS

- At recommended inhaled doses, the duration of action of salbutamol is about 3 to 5 hours.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in hyperkalaemia.
- With oral use Syrup and tablets not licensed for use in children under 2 years.



- ▶ With intravenous use Injection and solution for intravenous infusion not licensed for use in children under 12 years. Administration of undiluted salbutamol injection through a central venous catheter is not licensed.

● **CAUTIONS** High doses of beta<sub>2</sub> agonists can be dangerous in some children

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta<sub>2</sub> agonists

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Muscle complaints
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Akathisia · vasodilation
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Metabolic change

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Uncommon**
- ▶ When used by inhalation Oral irritation · throat irritation
- ▶ With parenteral use Pulmonary oedema
- ▶ **Frequency not known**
- ▶ With parenteral use Lactic acidosis (with high doses) · vomiting

● **BREAST FEEDING** Inhaled drugs for asthma can be taken as normal during breast-feeding.

#### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ With intravenous use For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 200 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. If fluid-restricted, can be given undiluted through central venous catheter [unlicensed]. For *intravenous injection*, dilute to a concentration of 50 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5%, Sodium Chloride 0.9%, or Water for injections.
- ▶ When used by inhalation For *nebulisation*, dilute nebuliser solution with a suitable volume of sterile Sodium Chloride 0.9% solution according to nebuliser type and duration of administration; salbutamol and ipratropium bromide solutions are compatible and can be mixed for nebulisation.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

- ▶ When used by inhalation For *inhalation by aerosol or dry powder*, advise patients and carers not to exceed prescribed dose and to follow manufacturer's directions; if a previously effective dose of inhaled salbutamol fails to provide at least 3 hours relief, a doctor's advice should be obtained as soon as possible.

For *inhalation by nebuliser*, the dose given by nebuliser is substantially higher than that given by inhaler. Patients should therefore be warned that it is dangerous to exceed the prescribed dose and they should seek medical advice if they fail to respond to the usual dose of the respirator solution.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Salbutamol inhaler for asthma and wheeze [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/salbutamol-inhaler-for-asthma-and-wheeze](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/salbutamol-inhaler-for-asthma-and-wheeze)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

###### ▶ Salbutamol (Non-proprietary)

- Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 2 mg Salbutamol 2mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £106.43 DT = £100.52
- Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 4 mg Salbutamol 4mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £108.95 DT = £102.90

##### Inhalation powder

###### ▶ Easyhaler (salbutamol) (Orion Pharma (UK) Ltd)

- Salbutamol 100 microgram per 1 dose Easyhaler Salbutamol sulfate 100micrograms/dose dry powder inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £3.31 DT = £3.31
- Salbutamol 200 microgram per 1 dose Easyhaler Salbutamol sulfate 200micrograms/dose dry powder inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £6.63 DT = £6.63

###### ▶ Salbulin Novolizer (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

- Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 100 microgram per 1 dose Salbulin Novolizer 100micrograms/dose inhalation powder | 200 dose [PoM] £4.95

Salbulin Novolizer 100micrograms/dose inhalation powder refill | 200 dose [PoM] £2.75

###### ▶ Ventolin Accuhaler (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Salbutamol 200 microgram per 1 dose Ventolin 200micrograms/dose Accuhaler | 60 dose [PoM] £3.60 DT = £3.60

##### Solution for injection

###### ▶ Ventolin (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 500 microgram per 1 ml Ventolin 500micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £1.91

##### Solution for infusion

###### ▶ Ventolin (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 1 mg per 1 ml Ventolin 5mg/5ml solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £24.81

##### Oral solution

###### ▶ Salbutamol (Non-proprietary)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 400 microgram per 1 ml Salbutamol 2mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £1.15 DT = £1.15

###### ▶ Ventolin (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 400 microgram per 1 ml Ventolin 2mg/5ml syrup sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £1.15 DT = £1.15

##### Pressurised inhalation

###### ▶ Salbutamol (Non-proprietary)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 100 microgram per 1 dose Salbutamol 100micrograms/dose inhaler CFC free | 200 dose [PoM] £1.50 DT = £1.50

###### ▶ Airomir (Teva UK Ltd)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 100 microgram per 1 dose Airomir 100micrograms/dose inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £1.97 DT = £1.50

###### ▶ Airomir Autohaler (Teva UK Ltd)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 100 microgram per 1 dose Airomir 100micrograms/dose Autohaler | 200 dose [PoM] £6.02 DT = £6.30

###### ▶ Salamol (Teva UK Ltd)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 100 microgram per 1 dose Salamol 100micrograms/dose inhaler CFC free | 200 dose [PoM] £1.46 DT = £1.50

###### ▶ Salamol Easi-Breathe (Teva UK Ltd)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 100 microgram per 1 dose Salamol 100micrograms/dose Easi-Breathe inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £6.30 DT = £6.30

###### ▶ Ventolin Evohaler (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 100 microgram per 1 dose Ventolin 100micrograms/dose Evohaler | 200 dose [PoM] £1.50 DT = £1.50

##### Nebuliser liquid

###### ▶ Salbutamol (Non-proprietary)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 1 mg per 1 ml Salbutamol 2.5mg/2.5ml nebuliser liquid unit dose vials | 20 unit dose [PoM] £1.91 DT = £1.91

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 2 mg per 1 ml Salbutamol 5mg/2.5ml nebuliser liquid unit dose vials | 20 unit dose [PoM] £3.82 DT = £3.82

###### ▶ Salamol Steri-Neb (Teva UK Ltd)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 1 mg per 1 ml Salamol 2.5mg/2.5ml nebuliser liquid Steri-Neb unit dose vials | 20 unit dose [PoM] £1.91 DT = £1.91

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 2 mg per 1 ml Salamol 5mg/2.5ml nebuliser liquid Steri-Neb unit dose vials | 20 unit dose [PoM] £3.82 DT = £3.82

###### ▶ Ventolin (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 5 mg per 1 ml Ventolin 5mg/ml respirator solution | 20 ml [PoM] £2.18 DT = £2.18

###### ▶ Ventolin Nebules (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 1 mg per 1 ml Ventolin 2.5mg Nebules | 20 unit dose [PoM] £1.65 DT = £1.91

Salbutamol (as Salbutamol sulfate) 2 mg per 1 ml Ventolin 5mg Nebules | 20 unit dose [PoM] £2.78 DT = £3.82

## Terbutaline sulfate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Acute asthma

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 2–14 years: 10 micrograms/kg up to 4 times a day (max. per dose 300 micrograms), reserve intravenous beta<sub>2</sub> agonists for those in whom inhaled therapy cannot be used reliably or there is no current effect
- ▶ Child 15–17 years: 250–500 micrograms up to 4 times a day, reserve intravenous beta<sub>2</sub> agonists for those in whom inhaled therapy cannot be used reliably or there is no current effect
- ▶ BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: Loading dose 2–4 micrograms/kg, then 1–10 micrograms/kg/hour, dose to be adjusted according to response and heart rate, close monitoring is required for doses above 10 micrograms/kg/hour, reserve intravenous beta<sub>2</sub> agonists for those in whom inhaled therapy cannot be used reliably or there is no current effect

#### Moderate, severe, or life-threatening acute asthma

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION
- ▶ Child 1 month–4 years: 5 mg, repeat every 20–30 minutes or when required, give via oxygen-driven nebuliser if available
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 5–10 mg, repeat every 20–30 minutes or when required, give via oxygen-driven nebuliser if available
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 10 mg, repeat every 20–30 minutes or when required, give via oxygen-driven nebuliser if available

#### Exacerbation of reversible airways obstruction (including nocturnal asthma) | Prevention of exercise-induced bronchospasm

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- ▶ Child 5–17 years: 500 micrograms up to 4 times a day, for occasional use only
- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 1 month–6 years: 75 micrograms/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 2.5 mg), administration by mouth is not recommended
- ▶ Child 7–14 years: 2.5 mg 2–3 times a day, administration by mouth is not recommended
- ▶ Child 15–17 years: Initially 2.5 mg 3 times a day, then increased if necessary to 5 mg 3 times a day, administration by mouth is not recommended

#### PHARMACOKINETICS

- ▶ At recommended inhaled doses, the duration of action of terbutaline is about 3 to 5 hours.

#### ● UNLICENSED USE

- ▶ With oral use Tablets not licensed for use in children under 7 years.
- ▶ With intravenous use or subcutaneous use Injection not licensed for use in children under 2 years.

- **CAUTIONS** High doses of beta<sub>2</sub> agonists can be dangerous in some children

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta<sub>2</sub> agonists

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common Hypotension · muscle spasms
- ▶ Rare or very rare Vasodilation
- ▶ Frequency not known Angioedema · anxiety · behaviour abnormal · bronchospasm · circulatory collapse · oral irritation · skin reactions · sleep disorder · throat irritation

### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Uncommon**
- ▶ With parenteral use Pulmonary oedema
- ▶ **Rare or very rare**
- ▶ With parenteral use Lactic acidosis
- ▶ **Frequency not known**
- ▶ With parenteral use Akathisia · bleeding tendency
- **PREGNANCY** Inhaled drugs for asthma can be taken as normal during pregnancy.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Inhaled drugs for asthma can be taken as normal during breast-feeding.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
- ▶ With intravenous use For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 5 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; if fluid-restricted, dilute to a concentration of 100 micrograms/mL.
- ▶ When used by inhalation For *nebulisation*, dilute nebuliser solution with sterile Sodium Chloride 0.9% solution according to nebuliser type and duration of administration; terbutaline and ipratropium bromide solutions are compatible and may be mixed for nebulisation.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

- ▶ When used by inhalation For *inhalation by dry powder*, advise patients and carers not to exceed prescribed dose and to follow manufacturer's directions; if a previously effective dose of inhaled terbutaline fails to provide at least 3 hours relief, a doctor's advice should be obtained as soon as possible.

For *inhalation by nebuliser*, the dose given by nebuliser is substantially higher than that given by inhaler. Patients should therefore be warned that it is dangerous to exceed the prescribed dose and they should seek medical advice if they fail to respond to the usual dose of the respirator solution.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

#### Solution for injection

- **Bricanyl** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Terbutaline sulfate 500 microgram per 1 ml** Bricanyl 2.5mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £20.09 DT = £20.09

Bricanyl 500micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £6.48 DT = £6.48

#### Inhalation powder

- **Bricanyl Turbohaler** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Terbutaline sulfate 500 microgram per 1 dose** Bricanyl 500micrograms/dose Turbohaler | 100 dose [PoM] £8.30 DT = £8.30

#### Nebuliser liquid

- ▶ **Terbutaline sulfate (Non-proprietary)**

**Terbutaline sulfate 2.5 mg per 1 ml** Terbutaline 5mg/2ml nebuliser liquid unit dose vials | 20 unit dose [PoM] £4.04 DT = £4.04

- ▶ **Bricanyl Respules** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Terbutaline sulfate 2.5 mg per 1 ml** Bricanyl 5mg/2ml Respules | 20 unit dose [PoM] £11.64 DT = £4.04

#### Tablet

- ▶ **Bricanyl** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Terbutaline sulfate 5 mg** Bricanyl 5mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £14.73 DT = £14.73

## CORTICOSTEROIDS

## Airways disease, use of corticosteroids

30-Nov-2017

### Asthma, use of corticosteroids

#### Inhaled corticosteroids

Corticosteroids are effective in the management of *asthma*; they reduce airway inflammation.

An inhaled corticosteroid is used regularly for prophylaxis of asthma. *Regular use* of inhaled corticosteroids reduces the risk of exacerbation of asthma.

Current or previous smoking reduces the effectiveness of inhaled corticosteroids and higher doses may be necessary.

Corticosteroid inhalers must be used regularly for maximum benefit. Beclometasone dipropionate p. 160, budesonide p. 160, fluticasone p. 162, and mometasone furoate p. 164 appear to be equally effective. A spacer device should be used for administering inhaled corticosteroids in children under 15 years; a spacer device is also useful in children over 15 years, particularly if high doses are required.

#### Oral corticosteroids

Systemic therapy may be required during periods of stress, such as during severe infections, or when airways obstruction or mucus prevent drug access to smaller airways.

An acute attack of asthma should be treated with a short course (3–5 days) of oral corticosteroid. The dose can usually be stopped abruptly but it should be reduced gradually in children under 12 years who have taken corticosteroids for more than 14 days. Tapering is not needed in children 12–18 years provided that the child receives an inhaled corticosteroid in an adequate dose (apart from those on maintenance oral corticosteroid treatment or where oral corticosteroids are required for 3 or more weeks).

In chronic continuing asthma, when the response to other drugs has been inadequate, longer term administration of an oral corticosteroid may be necessary; in such cases high doses of an inhaled corticosteroid should be continued to minimise oral corticosteroid requirements.

An oral corticosteroid should normally be taken as a single dose in the morning to reduce the disturbance to circadian cortisol secretion. Dosage should always be titrated to the lowest dose that controls symptoms. Some clinicians use alternate-day dosing of an oral corticosteroid.

#### Parenteral corticosteroids

Hydrocortisone injection p. 440 has a role in the emergency treatment of acute severe asthma.

## Corticosteroids (inhaled)



### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

**MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)**

Central serous chorioretinopathy is a retinal disorder that has been linked to the systemic use of corticosteroids. Recently, it has also been reported after local administration of corticosteroids via inhaled and intranasal, epidural, intra-articular, topical dermal, and periocular routes. The MHRA recommends that patients should be advised to report any blurred vision or other visual disturbances with corticosteroid treatment given by any route; consider referral to an ophthalmologist for evaluation of possible causes if a patient presents with vision problems.

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Altered smell sensation • Cushing's syndrome • epistaxis • headache • nasal complaints • oral candidiasis • skin reactions • taste altered • throat irritation • voice alteration
- ▶ **Uncommon** Adrenal suppression • anxiety • bronchospasm paradoxical • cataract • glaucoma • vision blurred
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Behaviour abnormal • growth retardation • hypertrichosis • sleep disorder
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Pneumonia (in patients with COPD)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Systemic absorption may follow inhaled administration particularly if high doses are used or if treatment is prolonged.

Therefore also consider the side-effects of systemic corticosteroids.

**Candidiasis** The risk of oral candidiasis can be reduced by using a spacer device with the corticosteroid inhaler; rinsing the mouth with water after inhalation of a dose may also be helpful. An anti-fungal oral suspension or oral gel can be used to treat oral candidiasis without discontinuing corticosteroid therapy.

**Paradoxical bronchospasm** The potential for paradoxical bronchospasm (calling for discontinuation and alternative therapy) should be borne in mind. Mild bronchospasm may be prevented by inhalation of a short-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist beforehand (or by transfer from an aerosol inhalation to a dry powder inhalation).

- **PREGNANCY** Inhaled drugs for asthma can be taken as normal during pregnancy.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Inhaled corticosteroids for asthma can be taken as normal during breast-feeding.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** The height and weight of children receiving prolonged treatment with inhaled corticosteroids should be monitored annually; if growth is slowed, referral to a paediatrician should be considered.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

#### NICE decisions

- ▶ **Inhaled corticosteroids for the treatment of chronic asthma in children under 12 years (November 2007) NICE TA131**  
For children under 12 years with chronic asthma in whom treatment with an inhaled corticosteroid is considered appropriate, the least costly product that is suitable for an individual child (taking into consideration NICE TAs 38 and 10), within its marketing authorisation, is recommended.

For children under 12 years with chronic asthma in whom treatment with an inhaled corticosteroid and a long-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist is considered appropriate, the following apply:

- the use of a combination inhaler within its marketing authorisation is recommended as an option;
- the decision to use a combination inhaler or two agents in separate inhalers should be made on an individual basis, taking into consideration therapeutic need and the likelihood of treatment adherence;
- if a combination inhaler is chosen, then the least costly inhaler that is suitable for the individual child is recommended.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA131](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA131)

- ▶ **Inhaled corticosteroids for the treatment of chronic asthma in adults and children over 12 years (March 2008) NICE TA138**  
For adults and children over 12 years with chronic asthma in whom treatment with an inhaled corticosteroid is considered appropriate, the least costly product that is suitable for an individual (taking into consideration NICE TAs 38 and 10), within its marketing authorisation is recommended.

For adults and children over 12 years with chronic asthma in whom treatment with an inhaled corticosteroid and a long-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist is considered appropriate, the following apply:

- the use of a combination inhaler within its marketing authorisation is recommended as an option;
- the decision to use a combination inhaler or two agents in separate inhalers should be made on an individual basis, taking into consideration therapeutic need, and the likelihood of treatment adherence;
- if a combination inhaler is chosen, then the least costly inhaler that is suitable for the individual is recommended.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA138](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA138)

## Beclometasone dipropionate

04-Jan-2016

### (Beclomethasone dipropionate)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Prophylaxis of asthma

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 100–200 micrograms twice daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 200–400 micrograms twice daily; increased if necessary up to 800 micrograms twice daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary

##### CLENIL MODULET<sup>®</sup>

##### Prophylaxis of asthma

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL
- ▶ Child 2–11 years: 100–200 micrograms twice daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 200–400 micrograms twice daily, adjusted according to response; increased if necessary up to 1 mg twice daily

#### QVAR<sup>®</sup> PREPARATIONS

##### Prophylaxis of asthma

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 50–200 micrograms twice daily; increased if necessary up to 400 micrograms twice daily

#### POTENCY

- ▶ *Qvar<sup>®</sup>* has extra-fine particles, is more potent than traditional beclometasone dipropionate CFC-containing inhalers and is approximately twice as potent as *Clenil Modulite<sup>®</sup>*.

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Dose adjustments may be required for some inhaler devices, see under individual preparations.

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Easylhaler<sup>®</sup> Beclometasone Dipropionate* is not licensed for use in children under 18 years. *Clenil Modulite<sup>®</sup>* 200 and -250 are not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### MHRA/CHM ADVICE (JULY 2008)

Beclometasone dipropionate CFC-free pressurised metered-dose inhalers (*Qvar<sup>®</sup>* and *Clenil Modulite<sup>®</sup>*) are **not** interchangeable and should be prescribed by brand name; *Qvar<sup>®</sup>* has extra-fine particles, is more potent than traditional beclometasone dipropionate CFC-containing inhalers, and is approximately twice as potent as *Clenil Modulite<sup>®</sup>*.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The MHRA has advised (July 2008) that beclometasone dipropionate CFC-free inhalers should be prescribed by brand name.

**CLENIL MODULET<sup>®</sup>** *Clenil Modulite<sup>®</sup>* is not interchangeable with other CFC-free beclometasone dipropionate inhalers.

**QVAR<sup>®</sup> PREPARATIONS** When switching a patient with well-controlled asthma from another corticosteroid inhaler, initially a 100-microgram metered dose of *Qvar<sup>®</sup>* should be prescribed for 200–250 micrograms of beclometasone dipropionate or budesonide and for 100 micrograms of fluticasone propionate. When switching a patient with poorly controlled asthma from another corticosteroid inhaler, initially a 100-microgram metered dose of *Qvar<sup>®</sup>* should be prescribed for 100 micrograms of beclometasone dipropionate, budesonide, or fluticasone propionate; the dose of *Qvar<sup>®</sup>* should be adjusted according to response.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Steroid card should be issued with high doses of inhaled beclometasone dipropionate.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Beclometasone for asthma prevention (prophylaxis) [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/beclometasone-inhaler-asthma-prevention-prophylaxis-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/beclometasone-inhaler-asthma-prevention-prophylaxis-0)

#### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

##### Dental practitioners' formulary

*Clenil Modulite<sup>®</sup>* 50 micrograms/metered inhalation may be prescribed.

#### ● MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: cream, ointment

##### Inhalation powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10

- ▶ **Easylhaler (beclometasone)** (Orion Pharma (UK) Ltd)

**Beclometasone dipropionate 200 microgram per**

**1 dose** Easylhaler Beclometasone 200micrograms/dose dry powder inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £14.93 DT = £14.93

##### Pressurised inhalation

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10

- ▶ **Clenil Modulite** (Chiesi Ltd)

**Beclometasone dipropionate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Clenil Modulite 50micrograms/dose inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £3.70 DT = £3.70

**Beclometasone dipropionate 100 microgram per 1 dose** Clenil Modulite 100micrograms/dose inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £7.42 DT = £7.42

**Beclometasone dipropionate 200 microgram per 1 dose** Clenil Modulite 200micrograms/dose inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £16.17 DT = £16.17

**Beclometasone dipropionate 250 microgram per 1 dose** Clenil Modulite 250micrograms/dose inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £16.29 DT = £16.29

- ▶ **Qvar** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Beclometasone dipropionate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Qvar 50 inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £7.87 DT = £3.70

**Beclometasone dipropionate 100 microgram per 1 dose** Qvar 100 inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £17.21 DT = £7.42

- ▶ **Qvar Autohaler** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Beclometasone dipropionate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Qvar 50 Autohaler | 200 dose [PoM] £7.87 DT = £7.87

**Beclometasone dipropionate 100 microgram per 1 dose** Qvar 100 Autohaler | 200 dose [PoM] £17.21 DT = £17.21

- ▶ **Qvar Easi-Breathe** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Beclometasone dipropionate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Qvar 50micrograms/dose Easi-Breathe inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £7.74 DT = £7.87

**Beclometasone dipropionate 100 microgram per 1 dose** Qvar 100micrograms/dose Easi-Breathe inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £16.95 DT = £17.21

## Budesonide

21-Dec-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Budesonide is a glucocorticoid, which exerts significant local anti-inflammatory effects.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Bronchopulmonary dysplasia with spontaneous respiration

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SUSPENSION

- ▶ Neonate: 500 micrograms twice daily.

- ▶ Child 1–4 months: 500 micrograms twice daily

##### Bronchopulmonary dysplasia with spontaneous respiration (severe symptoms)

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SUSPENSION

- ▶ Child 1–4 months (body-weight 2.5 kg and above): 1 mg twice daily

##### Prophylaxis of mild to moderate asthma (in patients stabilised on twice daily dose)

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER

- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 200–400 micrograms once daily, dose to be given in the evening

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 200–400 micrograms once daily (max. per dose 800 micrograms), dose to be given in the evening

### Prophylaxis of asthma

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 100–400 micrograms twice daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100–800 micrograms twice daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary
- ▶ BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SUSPENSION
- ▶ Child 6 months–11 years: 125–500 micrograms twice daily, adjusted according to response; maximum 2 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 0.25–1 mg twice daily, adjusted according to response, doses higher than recommended max. may be used in severe disease; maximum 2 mg per day

### BUDELIN NOVOLIZER®

#### Prophylaxis of asthma

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 200–400 micrograms twice daily, dose is adjusted as necessary
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 200–800 micrograms twice daily, dose is adjusted as necessary

#### Alternative in mild to moderate asthma, for patients previously stabilised on a twice daily dose

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 200–400 micrograms once daily, to be taken in the evening
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 200–400 micrograms once daily (max. per dose 800 micrograms), to be taken in the evening

### PULMICORT® RESPULES

#### Prophylaxis of asthma

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SUSPENSION
- ▶ Child 3 months–11 years: Initially 0.5–1 mg twice daily, reduced to 250–500 micrograms twice daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 1–2 mg twice daily, reduced to 0.5–1 mg twice daily

### Croup

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SUSPENSION
- ▶ Child: 2 mg for 1 dose, alternatively 1 mg for 2 doses separated by a 30 minute interval, dose may be repeated every 12 hours until clinical improvement

### PULMICORT® TURBOHALER

#### Prophylaxis of asthma

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 100–400 micrograms twice daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100–800 micrograms twice daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary

#### Alternative in mild to moderate asthma, for patients previously stabilised on a twice daily dose

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 200–400 micrograms once daily, to be taken in the evening
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 200–400 micrograms once daily (max. per dose 800 micrograms), to be taken in the evening

### POTENCY

- ▶ Dose adjustments may be required for some inhaler devices, see under individual preparations.

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Pulmicort® nebuliser solution* not licensed for use in children under 3 months; not licensed for use in bronchopulmonary dysplasia.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Budesonide nebuliser suspension is not suitable for use in ultrasonic nebulisers.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** With high doses, a steroid card should be supplied. Patients or carers should be given

advice on how to administer budesonide dry powder inhaler and nebuliser suspension.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Budesonide inhaler for asthma prevention (prophylaxis) [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/budesonide-inhaler-asthma-prevention-prophylaxis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/budesonide-inhaler-asthma-prevention-prophylaxis)

**BUDELIN NOVOLIZER®** Patients or carers should be given advice on administration of *Budelin Novolizer®*.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Inhalation powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10

- ▶ **Budelin Novolizer** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Budesonide 200 microgram per 1 dose** Budelin Novolizer 200micrograms/dose inhalation powder | 100 dose [PoM] £14.86  
Budelin Novolizer 200micrograms/dose inhalation powder refill | 100 dose [PoM] £9.59

- ▶ **Easyhaler (budesonide)** (Orion Pharma (UK) Ltd)

**Budesonide 100 microgram per 1 dose** Easyhaler Budesonide 100micrograms/dose dry powder inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £8.86 DT = £14.25

**Budesonide 200 microgram per 1 dose** Easyhaler Budesonide 200micrograms/dose dry powder inhaler | 200 dose [PoM] £17.71

**Budesonide 400 microgram per 1 dose** Easyhaler Budesonide 400micrograms/dose dry powder inhaler | 100 dose [PoM] £17.71

- ▶ **Pulmicort Turbohaler** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Budesonide 100 microgram per 1 dose** Pulmicort 100 Turbohaler | 200 dose [PoM] £14.25 DT = £14.25

**Budesonide 200 microgram per 1 dose** Pulmicort 200 Turbohaler | 100 dose [PoM] £14.25 DT = £14.25

**Budesonide 400 microgram per 1 dose** Pulmicort 400 Turbohaler | 50 dose [PoM] £14.25 DT = £14.25

#### Nebuliser liquid

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10

- ▶ **Budesonide (Non-proprietary)**

**Budesonide 250 microgram per 1 ml** Budesonide 500micrograms/2ml nebuliser liquid unit dose vials | 20 unit dose [PoM] £30.40 DT = £24.86

**Budesonide 500 microgram per 1 ml** Budesonide 1mg/2ml nebuliser liquid unit dose vials | 20 unit dose [PoM] £42.41 DT = £39.00

- ▶ **Pulmicort Respules** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Budesonide 250 microgram per 1 ml** Pulmicort 0.5mg Respules | 20 unit dose [PoM] £31.70 DT = £24.86

**Budesonide 500 microgram per 1 ml** Pulmicort 1mg Respules | 20 unit dose [PoM] £48.00 DT = £39.00

## Budesonide with formoterol

08-Feb-2018

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, budesonide p. 160, formoterol fumarate p. 154.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### SYMBICORT 100/6 TURBOHALER®

##### Asthma, maintenance therapy

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- ▶ Child 6–17 years: Initially 1–2 puffs twice daily; reduced to 1 puff daily, dose reduced only if control is maintained

##### Asthma, maintenance and reliever therapy

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Maintenance 2 puffs daily in 1–2 divided doses; 1 puff as required for relief of symptoms, increased if necessary up to 6 puffs as required, max. 8 puffs per day; up to 12 puffs daily can be used for a limited time but medical assessment is recommended

continued →



**SYMBICORT 200/6 TURBOHALER®****Asthma, maintenance therapy**

- BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 1–2 puffs twice daily; reduced to 1 puff daily, dose reduced only if control is maintained

**Asthma, maintenance and reliever therapy**

- BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- Child 12–17 years: Maintenance 2 puffs daily in 1–2 divided doses, increased if necessary to 2 puffs twice daily; 1 puff as required for relief of symptoms, increased if necessary up to 6 puffs as required, max. 8 puffs per day; up to 12 puffs daily can be used for a limited time but medical assessment is recommended

**SYMBICORT 400/12 TURBOHALER®****Asthma, maintenance therapy**

- BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 1 puff twice daily; reduced to 1 puff daily, dose reduced only if control is maintained

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta<sub>2</sub> agonists + corticosteroids
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for budesonide with formoterol inhalation (administration).  
With high doses, a steroid card should be supplied.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**  
**Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**  
The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised (June 2017) that budesonide/formoterol 100 micrograms/6 micrograms and 200 micrograms/6 micrograms (Symbicort® SMART®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland for regular treatment of asthma where use of a combination (inhaled corticosteroid and a long-acting β<sub>2</sub> adrenoceptor agonist) is appropriate: patients already adequately controlled on both or patients not adequately controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and “as needed” short-acting β<sub>2</sub> adrenoceptor agonists. This advice relates to the extension of the license for Symbicort maintenance and reliever therapy (SMART®) to adolescents aged 12 years and over.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Inhalation powder**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10 (high doses)

- **Symbicort Turbohaler** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)  
**Formoterol fumarate dihydrate 6 microgram per 1 dose, Budesonide 100 microgram per 1 dose** Symbicort 100/6 Turbohaler | 120 dose [PoM] £28.00 DT = £28.00  
**Formoterol fumarate dihydrate 6 microgram per 1 dose, Budesonide 200 microgram per 1 dose** Symbicort 200/6 Turbohaler | 120 dose [PoM] £28.00 DT = £28.00  
**Formoterol fumarate dihydrate 12 microgram per 1 dose, Budesonide 400 microgram per 1 dose** Symbicort 400/12 Turbohaler | 60 dose [PoM] £28.00 DT = £28.00

P 159

21-Dec-2017

**Ciclesonide**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Prophylaxis of asthma**

- BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL
- Child 12–17 years: 160 micrograms once daily; reduced to 80 micrograms daily, if control maintained

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer ciclesonide aerosol inhaler.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Pressurised inhalation**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

- **Alvesco** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)  
**Ciclesonide 80 microgram per 1 dose** Alvesco 80 inhaler | 120 dose [PoM] £32.83 DT = £32.83  
**Ciclesonide 160 microgram per 1 dose** Alvesco 160 inhaler | 60 dose [PoM] £19.31 DT = £19.31 | 120 dose [PoM] £38.62 DT = £38.62

P 159

21-Dec-2017

**Fluticasone**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Prophylaxis of asthma**

- BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- Child 5–15 years: Initially 50–100 micrograms twice daily (max. per dose 200 micrograms twice daily), dose to be adjusted as necessary
- Child 16–17 years: Initially 100–500 micrograms twice daily (max. per dose 1 mg twice daily), dose may be increased according to severity of asthma. Doses above 500 micrograms twice daily initiated by a specialist
- BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL
- Child 4–15 years: Initially 50–100 micrograms twice daily (max. per dose 200 micrograms twice daily), dose to be adjusted as necessary
- Child 16–17 years: Initially 100–500 micrograms twice daily (max. per dose 1 mg twice daily), dose may be increased according to severity of asthma. Doses above 500 micrograms twice daily initiated by a specialist
- BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SUSPENSION
- Child 4–15 years: 1 mg twice daily
- Child 16–17 years: 0.5–2 mg twice daily

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Fluticasone nebuliser liquid may be diluted with sterile sodium chloride 0.9%. It is not suitable for use in ultrasonic nebulisers.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer all fluticasone inhalations preparations.

With high doses, a steroid card should be supplied.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Fluticasone inhaler for asthma prevention (prophylaxis) [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/fluticasone-inhaler-for-asthma-prevention](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/fluticasone-inhaler-for-asthma-prevention)

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Inhalation powder**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10

- **Flixotide Accuhaler** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
**Fluticasone propionate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Flixotide 50micrograms/dose Accuhaler | 60 dose [PoM] £4.00 DT = £4.00  
**Fluticasone propionate 100 microgram per 1 dose** Flixotide 100micrograms/dose Accuhaler | 60 dose [PoM] £8.00 DT = £8.00  
**Fluticasone propionate 250 microgram per 1 dose** Flixotide 250micrograms/dose Accuhaler | 60 dose [PoM] £25.51 DT = £25.51  
**Fluticasone propionate 500 microgram per 1 dose** Flixotide 500micrograms/dose Accuhaler | 60 dose [PoM] £43.37 DT = £43.37

**Pressurised inhalation**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10

- **Flixotide Evohaler** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
**Fluticasone propionate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Flixotide 50micrograms/dose Evohaler | 120 dose [PoM] £5.44 DT = £5.44  
**Fluticasone propionate 125 microgram per 1 dose** Flixotide 125micrograms/dose Evohaler | 120 dose [PoM] £12.50 DT = £12.50  
**Fluticasone propionate 250 microgram per 1 dose** Flixotide 250micrograms/dose Evohaler | 120 dose [PoM] £20.00 DT = £20.00

**Nebuliser liquid**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10

► **Flixotide Nebule** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)**Fluticasone propionate 250 microgram per 1 ml** Flixotide 0.5mg/2ml Nebules | 10 unit dose [PoM] £9.34**Fluticasone propionate 1 mg per 1 ml** Flixotide 2mg/2ml Nebules | 10 unit dose [PoM] £37.35**Fluticasone with formoterol**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, fluticasone p. 162, formoterol fumarate p. 154.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****FLUTIFORM® 125****Prophylaxis of asthma**

► BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL

► Child 12-17 years: 2 puffs twice daily

**FLUTIFORM® 50****Prophylaxis of asthma**

► BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL

► Child 12-17 years: 2 puffs twice daily

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta<sub>2</sub> agonists · corticosteroids

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer fluticasone with formoterol aerosol inhalation.

With high doses, a steroid card should be provided.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Pressurised inhalation**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10 (high doses)

► **Flutiform** (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Formoterol fumarate dihydrate 5 microgram per 1 dose, Fluticasone propionate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Flutiform 50micrograms/dose / 5micrograms/dose inhaler | 120 dose [PoM] £14.40 DT = £14.40

**Formoterol fumarate dihydrate 5 microgram per 1 dose, Fluticasone propionate 125 microgram per 1 dose** Flutiform 125micrograms/dose / 5micrograms/dose inhaler | 120 dose [PoM] £28.00 DT = £28.00

**Fluticasone with salmeterol**

26-Apr-2018

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, fluticasone p. 162, salmeterol p. 155.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****SERETIDE 100 ACCUHALER®****Prophylaxis of asthma**

► BY INHALATION OF POWDER

► Child 5-17 years: 1 inhalation twice daily, reduced to 1 inhalation daily, use reduced dose only if control maintained

**SERETIDE 125 EVOHALER®****Prophylaxis of asthma**

► BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL

► Child 12-17 years: 2 puffs twice daily

**SERETIDE 250 ACCUHALER®****Prophylaxis of asthma**

► BY INHALATION OF POWDER

► Child 12-17 years: 1 inhalation twice daily

**SERETIDE 250 EVOHALER®****Prophylaxis of asthma**

► BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL

► Child 12-17 years: 2 puffs twice daily

**SERETIDE 50 EVOHALER®****Prophylaxis of asthma**

► INITIALLY BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL

► Child 5-17 years: 2 puffs twice daily, (by inhalation) reduced to 2 puffs once daily, use reduced dose only if control maintained

**SERETIDE 500 ACCUHALER®****Prophylaxis of asthma**

► BY INHALATION OF POWDER

► Child 12-17 years: 1 inhalation twice daily

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta<sub>2</sub> agonists · corticosteroids

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer fluticasone with salmeterol dry powder inhalation and aerosol inhalation. With preparations containing greater than 100 micrograms fluticasone, a steroid card should be provided.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Inhalation powder**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10 (excluding Seretide 100 Accuhaler®)

► **Seretide Accuhaler** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Salmeterol (as Salmeterol xinafoate) 50 microgram per 1 dose, Fluticasone propionate 100 microgram per 1 dose** Seretide 100 Accuhaler | 60 dose [PoM] £18.00 DT = £18.00

**Salmeterol (as Salmeterol xinafoate) 50 microgram per 1 dose, Fluticasone propionate 250 microgram per 1 dose** Seretide 250 Accuhaler | 60 dose [PoM] £35.00 DT = £35.00

**Salmeterol (as Salmeterol xinafoate) 50 microgram per 1 dose, Fluticasone propionate 500 microgram per 1 dose** Seretide 500 Accuhaler | 60 dose [PoM] £40.92 DT = £40.92

**Pressurised inhalation**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10 (excluding Seretide 50 Evohaler®)

► **Seretide Evohaler** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Salmeterol (as Salmeterol xinafoate) 25 microgram per 1 dose, Fluticasone propionate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Seretide 50 Evohaler | 120 dose [PoM] £18.00 DT = £18.00

**Salmeterol (as Salmeterol xinafoate) 25 microgram per 1 dose, Fluticasone propionate 125 microgram per 1 dose** Seretide 125 Evohaler | 120 dose [PoM] £35.00 DT = £35.00

**Salmeterol (as Salmeterol xinafoate) 25 microgram per 1 dose, Fluticasone propionate 250 microgram per 1 dose** Seretide 250 Evohaler | 120 dose [PoM] £59.48 DT = £59.48

**Fluticasone with vilanterol**

01-Nov-2017

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, fluticasone p. 162.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****RELVAR ELLIPTA® 184 MICROGRAMS/22 MICROGRAMS****Prophylaxis of asthma**

► BY INHALATION OF POWDER

► Child 12-17 years: 1 inhalation once daily

**RELVAR ELLIPTA® 92 MICROGRAMS/22 MICROGRAMS****Prophylaxis of asthma**

► BY INHALATION OF POWDER

► Child 12-17 years: 1 inhalation once daily

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta<sub>2</sub> agonists · corticosteroids

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · arthralgia · back pain · bone fracture · cough · dysphonia · fever · muscle spasms · oropharyngeal pain

- **Uncommon** Vision blurred

- **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · anxiety

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution.

#### RELVAR ELLIPTA®

**184 MICROGRAMS/22 MICROGRAMS** Avoid in moderate to severe impairment.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer fluticasone with vilanterol powder for inhalation.

A steroid card should be provided.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Inhalation powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10

- **Relvar Ellipta** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd) ▼

**Vilanterol 22 microgram per 1 dose, Fluticasone furoate**

**92 microgram per 1 dose** Relvar Ellipta 92micrograms/dose / 22micrograms/dose dry powder inhaler | 30 dose [PoM] £22.00 DT = £22.00

**Vilanterol 22 microgram per 1 dose, Fluticasone furoate**

**184 microgram per 1 dose** Relvar Ellipta 184micrograms/dose / 22micrograms/dose dry powder inhaler | 30 dose [PoM] £29.50 DT = £29.50

159

## Mometasone furoate

21-Dec-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Prophylaxis of asthma

- **BY INHALATION OF POWDER**

- **Child 12-17 years:** Initially 400 micrograms daily in 1–2 divided doses, single dose to be inhaled in the evening, reduced to 200 micrograms once daily, if control maintained

#### Prophylaxis of severe asthma

- **BY INHALATION OF POWDER**

- **Child 12-17 years:** Increased if necessary up to 400 micrograms twice daily

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer mometasone by inhaler. With high doses, a steroid card should be supplied. Medicines for Children leaflet: Mometasone furoate inhaler for asthma prevention (prophylaxis) [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mometasone-furoate-inhaler-for-asthma-prevention-prophylaxis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mometasone-furoate-inhaler-for-asthma-prevention-prophylaxis)

- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised (November 2003) that *Asmanex*® is restricted for use following failure of first-line inhaled corticosteroids.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Inhalation powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10

- **Asmanex Twisthaler** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Mometasone furoate 200 microgram per 1 dose** Asmanex

200micrograms/dose Twisthaler | 30 dose [PoM] £15.70 DT = £15.70 | 60 dose [PoM] £23.54 DT = £23.54

**Mometasone furoate 400 microgram per 1 dose** Asmanex

400micrograms/dose Twisthaler | 30 dose [PoM] £21.78 DT = £21.78 | 60 dose [PoM] £36.05 DT = £36.05

## IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES

### Omalizumab

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Prophylaxis of severe persistent allergic asthma

- **BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION**

- **Child 6-17 years:** Dose according to immunoglobulin E concentration and body-weight (consult product literature)

#### Add-on therapy for chronic spontaneous urticaria in patients who have had an inadequate response to H<sub>1</sub> antihistamine treatment

- **BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION**

- **Child 12-17 years:** 300 mg every 4 weeks

- **CAUTIONS** Autoimmune disease · susceptibility to helminth infection—discontinue if infection does not respond to antelmintic

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Fever · headache · skin reactions
- **Uncommon** Cough · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · fatigue · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · increased risk of infection · influenza like illness · limb swelling · nausea · paraesthesia · photosensitivity reaction · postural hypotension · respiratory disorders · syncope · weight increased

- **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · hypersensitivity · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)

- **Frequency not known** Alopecia · eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis · immune thrombocytopenic purpura · joint disorders · lymphadenopathy · myalgia

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Churg-Strauss syndrome)** Churg-Strauss syndrome has occurred rarely in patients given omalizumab; the reaction is usually associated with the reduction of oral corticosteroid therapy. Churg-Strauss syndrome can present as eosinophilia, vasculitic rash, cardiac complications, worsening pulmonary symptoms, or peripheral neuropathy.

**Hypersensitivity reactions** Hypersensitivity reactions can also occur immediately following treatment with omalizumab or sometimes more than 24 hours after the first injection.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—crosses the placenta.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.

## ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

### NICE decisions

- ▶ **Omalizumab for severe persistent allergic asthma** (April 2013) NICE TA278  
Omalizumab is recommended as an option for treating severe persistent confirmed allergic IgE-mediated asthma as an add-on to optimised standard therapy in patients aged 6 years and over:

- who need continuous or frequent treatment with oral corticosteroids (defined as 4 or more courses in the previous year), **and**
- only if the manufacturer makes omalizumab available with the discount agreed in the patient access scheme. Optimised standard therapy is defined as a full trial of and, if tolerated, documented compliance with inhaled high-dose corticosteroids, long-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonists, leukotriene receptor antagonists, theophyllines, oral corticosteroids, and smoking cessation if clinically appropriate.

Patients currently receiving omalizumab whose disease does not meet the criteria should be able to continue treatment until they and their clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA278](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA278)

- ▶ **Omalizumab for previously treated chronic spontaneous urticaria** (June 2015) NICE TA339

Omalizumab is an option as add-on therapy for the treatment of severe chronic spontaneous urticaria in patients 12 years and over, only if:

- the severity of the condition is assessed objectively, for example, using a weekly urticaria activity score of 28 or more,
- the patient's condition has not responded to standard treatment with H<sub>1</sub>-antihistamines and leukotriene receptor antagonists,
- omalizumab is stopped at or before the fourth dose if the condition has not responded,
- omalizumab is stopped at the end of a course of treatment (6 doses) if the condition has responded and is restarted only if the condition relapses,
- omalizumab is administered under the management of a secondary care specialist in dermatology, immunology or allergy,
- the manufacturer provides omalizumab with the discount agreed in the patient access scheme.

Patients currently receiving omalizumab whose disease does not meet the above criteria should have the option to continue treatment until they and their clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA339](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA339)

### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (December 2014) that omalizumab (*Xolair*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of chronic spontaneous urticaria in patients aged 12 years and over, who have had an inadequate response to combination therapy with H<sub>1</sub>-antihistamines, leukotriene receptor antagonists and H<sub>2</sub>-antihistamines, used according to current treatment guidelines.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Xolair** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Omalizumab 150 mg per 1 ml** Xolair 150mg/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [POM] £256.15

Xolair 75mg/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [POM] £128.07

## LEUKOTRIENE RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS

### Leukotriene receptor antagonists

29-Nov-2017

#### Overview

The leukotriene receptor antagonists, montelukast below and zafirlukast p. 166, block the effects of cysteinyl leukotrienes in the airways.

Montelukast has not been shown to be more effective than a standard dose of inhaled corticosteroid, but the two drugs appear to have an additive effect. The leukotriene receptor antagonists may be of benefit in exercise-induced asthma and in those with concomitant rhinitis, but they are less effective in children with severe asthma who are also receiving high doses of other drugs.

There is some limited evidence to support the intermittent use of montelukast in children under 12 years with episodic wheeze associated with viral infections [unlicensed use]. Treatment is started at the onset of either asthma symptoms or of coryzal symptoms and continued for 7 days; there is no evidence to support this use in moderate or severe asthma.

### Montelukast

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Prophylaxis of asthma

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6 months–5 years: 4 mg once daily, dose to be taken in the evening
- ▶ Child 6–14 years: 5 mg once daily, dose to be taken in the evening
- ▶ Child 15–17 years: 10 mg once daily, dose to be taken in the evening

##### Symptomatic relief of seasonal allergic rhinitis in patients with asthma.

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 15–17 years: 10 mg once daily, dose to be taken in the evening

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: montelukast

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · nausea · skin reactions · upper respiratory tract infection · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Akathisia · anxiety · arthralgia · asthenia · behaviour abnormal · depression · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · haemorrhage · irritability · malaise · muscle complaints · oedema · seizure · sensation abnormal · sleep disorders
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · concentration impaired · disorientation · eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis · erythema nodosum · hallucination · hepatic disorders · memory loss · palpitations · pulmonary eosinophilia · suicidal tendencies · tremor

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Churg–Strauss syndrome) has occurred very rarely in association with the use of montelukast; in many of the reported cases the reaction followed the reduction or withdrawal of oral corticosteroid therapy. Prescribers should be alert to the development of eosinophilia, vasculitic rash, worsening pulmonary symptoms, cardiac complications, or peripheral neuropathy.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential. There is limited evidence for the safe use of montelukast during pregnancy; however, it can be taken as normal in women who have shown a significant improvement in asthma not achievable with other drugs before becoming pregnant.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Granules may be swallowed or mixed with cold, soft food (not liquid) and taken immediately.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of chewable tablet formulations may include cherry.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer montelukast granules. Medicines for Children leaflet: Montelukast for asthma [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/montelukast-for-asthma](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/montelukast-for-asthma)

#### • NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS SINGULAIR® GRANULES

##### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (June 2007) that *Singulair*® granules are restricted for use as an alternative to low-dose inhaled corticosteroids for children 2–14 years with mild persistent asthma who have not recently had serious asthma attacks that required oral corticosteroid use and who are not capable of using inhaled corticosteroids; *Singulair*® granules should be initiated by a specialist in paediatric asthma.

#### SINGULAIR® CHEWABLE TABLETS

##### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (June 2007) that *Singulair*® chewable tablets are restricted for use as an alternative to low-dose inhaled corticosteroids for children 2–14 years with mild persistent asthma who have not recently had serious asthma attacks that required oral corticosteroid use and who are not capable of using inhaled corticosteroids; *Singulair*® chewable tablets should be initiated by a specialist in paediatric asthma.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Granules

###### ▶ Montelukast (Non-proprietary)

**Montelukast (as Montelukast sodium) 4 mg** Montelukast 4mg granules sachets sugar free sugar-free | 28 sachet [PoM] £4.85–£19.99 DT = £4.85

###### ▶ Singulair (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Montelukast (as Montelukast sodium) 4 mg** Singulair Paediatric 4mg granules sachets sugar-free | 28 sachet [PoM] £25.69 DT = £4.85

##### Tablet

###### ▶ Montelukast (Non-proprietary)

**Montelukast (as Montelukast sodium) 10 mg** Montelukast 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £26.97 DT = £1.10

###### ▶ Singulair (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Montelukast (as Montelukast sodium) 10 mg** Singulair 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £26.97 DT = £1.10

##### Chewable tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 23, 24

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

###### ▶ Montelukast (Non-proprietary)

**Montelukast (as Montelukast sodium) 4 mg** Montelukast 4mg chewable tablets sugar free sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £25.69 DT = £0.89

**Montelukast (as Montelukast sodium) 5 mg** Montelukast 5mg chewable tablets sugar free sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £25.69 DT = £1.06

###### ▶ Singulair (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Montelukast (as Montelukast sodium) 4 mg** Singulair Paediatric 4mg chewable tablets sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £25.69 DT = £0.89

**Montelukast (as Montelukast sodium) 5 mg** Singulair Paediatric 5mg chewable tablets sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £25.69 DT = £1.06

## Zafirlukast

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Prophylaxis of asthma

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 20 mg twice daily

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · headache · infection · myalgia · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Angioedema · arthralgia · hyperbilirubinaemia · malaise · oedema · sleep disorders
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Haemorrhagic disorder · hepatic disorders · menorrhagia · thrombocytopenia
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · dizziness · sensation abnormal

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Churg-Strauss syndrome)** Churg-Strauss syndrome has occurred rarely in association with the use of zafirlukast; in many of the reported cases the reaction followed the reduction or withdrawal of oral corticosteroid therapy. Prescribers should be alert to the development of eosinophilia, vasculitic rash, worsening pulmonary symptoms, cardiac complications, or neuropathy.

**Hepatic disorder** Symptoms such as persistent nausea, vomiting, malaise, or jaundice may develop, and indicate the development of a liver disorder.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk. There is limited evidence for the safe use of zafirlukast during pregnancy; however, it can be taken as normal in women who have shown a significant improvement in asthma not achievable with other drugs before becoming pregnant.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—manufacturer advises avoid.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.

#### • PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Zafirlukast for asthma prevention (prophylaxis) [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/zafirlukast-for-asthma-prevention](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/zafirlukast-for-asthma-prevention)

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

## MAST-CELL STABILISERS

## Cromoglicate and related therapy

### Overview

The mode of action of sodium cromoglicate p. 167 and nedocromil sodium p. 167 is not completely understood; they may be of value as *prophylaxis* in asthma with an allergic basis, but the evidence for benefit of sodium cromoglicate in children is contentious. Prophylaxis with sodium cromoglicate or nedocromil sodium is less effective than with inhaled corticosteroids.

Nedocromil sodium may be of some benefit in the prophylaxis of exercise-induced asthma.

Sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil sodium may also have a role in allergic conjunctivitis; sodium cromoglicate is used also in allergic rhinitis and allergy-related diarrhoea.



## Nedocromil sodium

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Prophylaxis of asthma

##### ► BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL

- Child 5–17 years: Initially 4 mg 4 times a day, when control achieved may be possible to reduce to twice daily

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- 2 puffs = 4 mg.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 6 years.
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Bronchospasm · cough · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · nausea · taste altered · vomiting
  - **Frequency not known** Pharyngitis · throat irritation
- **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** If paradoxical bronchospasm occurs, fast-acting inhaled bronchodilator such as salbutamol or terbutaline should be used to control symptoms; treatment with nedocromil should be discontinued.
- **PREGNANCY** Inhaled drugs can be taken as normal during pregnancy.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Inhaled drugs can be taken as normal during breast-feeding.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Withdrawal should be done gradually over a period of one week—symptoms of asthma may recur.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of inhalers may include mint.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Regular use is necessary. Patient counselling is advised for Nedocromil aerosol for inhalation (administration).
- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Pressurised inhalation

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

##### ► Tilade (Sanofi)

Nedocromil sodium 2 mg per 1 dose Tilade 2mg/dose inhaler CFC free | 112 dose [PoM] £39.94

## Sodium cromoglicate

(Sodium cromoglycate)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Prophylaxis of asthma

##### ► BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL

- Child 5–17 years: Initially 10 mg 4 times a day, additional dose may also be taken before exercise, increased if necessary to 10 mg 6–8 times a day; maintenance 5 mg 4 times a day, 5 mg is equivalent to 1 puff

#### Food allergy (in conjunction with dietary restriction)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–13 years: Initially 100 mg 4 times a day for 2–3 weeks, then increased if necessary up to 40 mg/kg daily, then reduced according to response, to be taken before meals
- Child 14–17 years: Initially 200 mg 4 times a day for 2–3 weeks, then increased if necessary up to 40 mg/kg daily, then reduced according to response, to be taken before meals

### ● CAUTIONS

- When used by inhalation Discontinue if eosinophilic pneumonia occurs

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- When used by inhalation Cough · headache · pneumonia eosinophilic · rhinitis · throat irritation
- With oral use Arthralgia · nausea · rash

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** When used by inhalation, if paradoxical bronchospasm occurs, a short-acting beta<sub>2</sub>-agonist should be used to control symptoms; treatment with sodium cromoglicate should be discontinued.

### ● PREGNANCY Not known to be harmful.

- When used by inhalation Can be taken as normal during pregnancy.

### ● BREAST FEEDING Unlikely to be present in milk.

- When used by inhalation Can be taken as normal during breast-feeding.

### ● TREATMENT CESSATION

- When used by inhalation Withdrawal of sodium cromoglicate should be done gradually over a period of one week—symptoms of asthma may recur.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION Capsules may be swallowed whole or the contents dissolved in hot water and diluted with cold water before taking.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

- With oral use Patient counselling is advised for sodium cromoglicate capsules (administration).
- When used by inhalation Patient counselling is advised for sodium cromoglicate pressurised inhalation (administration).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

#### Capsule

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 22

##### ► Nalcrom (Sanofi)

Sodium cromoglicate 100 mg Nalcrom 100mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £41.14 DT = £41.14

#### Pressurised inhalation

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

##### ► Intal (Sanofi)

Sodium cromoglicate 5 mg per 1 dose Intal 5mg/dose inhaler CFC free | 112 dose [PoM] £18.33 DT = £18.33

## XANTHINES

## Aminophylline

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Severe acute asthma in patients not previously treated with theophylline

##### ► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: 5 mg/kg (max. per dose 500 mg), to be followed by intravenous infusion

#### Severe acute asthma

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 1 month–11 years: 1 mg/kg/hour, adjusted according to plasma-theophylline concentration
- Child 12–17 years: 500–700 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to plasma-theophylline concentration

#### Chronic asthma

##### ► BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): Initially 225 mg twice daily for 1 week, then increased if necessary to 450 mg twice daily, adjusted according to plasma-theophylline concentration

### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- Dose adjustment may be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment. continued →

**DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT**

- ▶ To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height.

**PHARMACOKINETICS**

- ▶ Aminophylline is a stable mixture or combination of theophylline and ethylenediamine; the ethylenediamine confers greater solubility in water.
- ▶ Theophylline is metabolised in the liver. The plasma-theophylline concentration is increased in heart failure, hepatic impairment, and in viral infections. The plasma-theophylline concentration is decreased in smokers, and by alcohol consumption. Differences in the half-life of aminophylline are important because the toxic dose is close to the therapeutic dose.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Aminophylline injection not licensed for use in children under 6 months.

**PHYLLOCONTIN CONTINUS® FORTE**

- ▶ With oral use *Phyllocontin Continus® Forte* tablets are not licensed for use in children.

- **CAUTIONS** Arrhythmias following rapid intravenous injection · cardiac arrhythmias or other cardiac disease · epilepsy · fever · hypertension · hyperthyroidism · peptic ulcer · risk of hypokalaemia

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aminophylline

**SIDE-EFFECTS**

- GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS** Arrhythmia (more common when given too rapidly by intravenous injection) · headache · nausea · palpitations · seizure (more common when given too rapidly by intravenous injection)

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ With intravenous use Abdominal pain · anxiety · confusion · delirium · diarrhoea · dizziness · electrolyte imbalance · gastrointestinal haemorrhage · gastroesophageal reflux disease · hyperthermia · hyperventilation · hypotension (more common when given too rapidly by intravenous injection) · insomnia · mania · metabolic disorder · pain · skin reactions · tachycardia (more common when given too rapidly by intravenous injection) · thirst · tremor · vertigo · visual impairment · vomiting
- ▶ With oral use Central nervous system stimulation · epigastric discomfort

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Potentially serious hypokalaemia may result from beta<sub>2</sub>-agonist therapy. Particular caution is required in severe asthma, because this effect may be potentiated by concomitant treatment with theophylline and its derivatives, corticosteroids, and diuretics, and by hypoxia. Plasma-potassium concentration should therefore be monitored in severe asthma.

**Overdose** Theophylline and related drugs are often prescribed as modified-release formulations and toxicity can therefore be delayed. They cause vomiting (which may be severe and intractable), agitation, restlessness, dilated pupils, sinus tachycardia, and hyperglycaemia. More serious effects are haematemesis, convulsions, and supraventricular and ventricular arrhythmias. Severe hypokalaemia may develop rapidly.

For specific details on the management of poisoning, see *Theophylline*, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Allergy to ethylenediamine can cause urticaria, erythema, and exfoliative dermatitis.
- **PREGNANCY** Neonatal irritability and apnoea have been reported. Theophylline can be taken as normal during pregnancy as it is particularly important that asthma should be well controlled during pregnancy.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—irritability in infant reported; modified-release preparations preferable. Theophylline can be taken as normal during breast-feeding.

**HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.

**MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ Aminophylline is monitored therapeutically in terms of plasma-theophylline concentrations.
- ▶ Measurement of plasma-theophylline concentration may be helpful and is **essential** if a loading dose of intravenous aminophylline is to be given to patients who are already taking theophylline, because serious side-effects such as convulsions and arrhythmias can occasionally precede other symptoms of toxicity.
- ▶ In most individuals, a plasma-theophylline concentration of 10–20 mg/litre (55–110 micromol/litre) is required for satisfactory bronchodilation, although a lower plasma-theophylline concentration of 5–15 mg/litre may be effective. Adverse effects can occur within the range 10–20 mg/litre and both the frequency and severity increase at concentrations above 20 mg/litre.
- ▶ If aminophylline is given intravenously, a blood sample should be taken 4–6 hours after starting treatment.
- ▶ With oral use Plasma-theophylline concentration is measured 5 days after starting oral treatment and at least 3 days after any dose adjustment. A blood sample should usually be taken 4–6 hours after an oral dose of a modified-release preparation (sampling times may vary—consult local guidelines).

**DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- ▶ With intravenous use For intravenous injection, give **very slowly** over at least 20 minutes (with close monitoring).

For intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 1 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

- ▶ With intramuscular use Aminophylline is too irritant for intramuscular use.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Patients taking oral theophylline or aminophylline should not normally receive a loading dose of intravenous aminophylline.

Consider intravenous aminophylline for treatment of severe and life-threatening acute asthma only after consultation with senior medical staff.

**Modified release** The rate of absorption from modified-release preparations can vary between brands. If a prescription for a modified-release oral aminophylline preparation does not specify a brand name, the pharmacist should contact the prescriber and agree the brand to be dispensed. Additionally, it is essential that a patient discharged from hospital should be maintained on the brand on which that patient was stabilised as an in-patient.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for infusion, suppository

**Solution for injection**

- ▶ **Aminophylline (Non-proprietary)**

Aminophylline 25 mg per 1 ml Aminophylline 250mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £6.50 DT = £6.50

**Modified-release tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

- ▶ **Phyllocontin Continus** (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Aminophylline hydrate 225 mg Phyllocontin Continus 225mg tablets | 56 tablet [P] £2.40 DT = £2.40

Aminophylline hydrate 350 mg Phyllocontin Forte Continus 350mg tablets | 56 tablet [P] £4.22 DT = £4.22

## Theophylline

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### NUELIN SA® 175MG TABLETS

##### Chronic asthma

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 175 mg every 12 hours
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 175–350 mg every 12 hours

#### NUELIN SA® 250 TABLETS

##### Chronic asthma

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 125–250 mg every 12 hours
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 250–500 mg every 12 hours

#### SLO-PHYLLIN®

##### Chronic asthma

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child 6 months–1 year: 12 mg/kg every 12 hours (max. per dose 120 mg)
- ▶ Child 2–5 years: 60–120 mg every 12 hours
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 125–250 mg every 12 hours
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 250–500 mg every 12 hours

#### UNIPHYLLIN CONTINUS®

##### Chronic asthma

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child 2–11 years: 9 mg/kg every 12 hours (max. per dose 200 mg), dose may be increased in some children with chronic asthma; increased to 10–16 mg/kg every 12 hours (max. per dose 400 mg), may be appropriate to give larger evening or morning dose to achieve optimum therapeutic effect when symptoms most severe; in patients whose night or daytime symptoms persist despite other therapy, who are not currently receiving theophylline, total daily requirement may be added as single evening or morning dose
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 200 mg every 12 hours, adjusted according to response to 400 mg every 12 hours, may be appropriate to give larger evening or morning dose to achieve optimum therapeutic effect when symptoms most severe; in patients whose night or daytime symptoms persist despite other therapy, who are not currently receiving theophylline, total daily requirement may be added as single evening or morning dose

### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- ▶ Dose adjustment may be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment.

### PHARMACOKINETICS

- ▶ Theophylline is metabolised in the liver. The plasma-theophylline concentration is increased in heart failure, hepatic impairment, and in viral infections. The plasma-theophylline concentration is decreased in smokers, and by alcohol consumption. Differences in the half-life of theophylline are important because the toxic dose is close to the therapeutic dose.

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Slo-phyllin*® capsules not licensed for use in children under 2 years.

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac arrhythmias or other cardiac disease · epilepsy · fever · hypertension · hyperthyroidism · peptic ulcer · risk of hypokalaemia

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: theophylline

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Anxiety · arrhythmias · diarrhoea · dizziness · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrooesophageal reflux disease · headache · hyperuricaemia · nausea · palpitations · seizure · skin reactions · sleep disorders · tremor · urinary disorders · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Potentially serious hypokalaemia may result from beta<sub>2</sub>-agonist therapy. Particular caution is required in severe asthma, because

this effect may be potentiated by concomitant treatment with theophylline and its derivatives, corticosteroids, and diuretics, and by hypoxia. Plasma-potassium concentration should therefore be monitored in severe asthma.

**Overdose** Theophylline in overdose can cause vomiting (which may be severe and intractable), agitation, restlessness, dilated pupils, sinus tachycardia, and hyperglycaemia. More serious effects are haematemesis, convulsions, and supraventricular and ventricular arrhythmias. Severe hypokalaemia may develop rapidly.

For details on the management of poisoning, see Theophylline, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **PREGNANCY** Neonatal irritability and apnoea have been reported. Theophylline can be taken as normal during pregnancy as it is particularly important that asthma should be well controlled during pregnancy.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—irritability in infant reported; modified-release preparations preferable. Theophylline can be taken as normal during breast-feeding.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
Dose adjustments Reduce dose.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ In most individuals, a plasma-theophylline concentration of 10–20 mg/litre (55–110 micromol/litre) is required for satisfactory bronchodilation, although a lower plasma-theophylline concentration of 5–15 mg/litre may be effective. Adverse effects can occur within the range 10–20 mg/litre and both the frequency and severity increase at concentrations above 20 mg/litre.
- ▶ Plasma-theophylline concentration is measured 5 days after starting oral treatment and at least 3 days after any dose adjustment. A blood sample should usually be taken 4–6 hours after an oral dose of a modified-release preparation (sampling times may vary—consult local guidelines).

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

**SLO-PHYLLIN®** Contents of the capsule (enteric-coated granules) may be sprinkled on to a spoonful of soft food (e.g. yoghurt) and swallowed without chewing.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The rate of absorption from modified-release preparations can vary between brands. If a prescription for a modified-release oral theophylline preparation does not specify a brand name, the pharmacist should contact the prescriber and agree the brand to be dispensed. Additionally, it is essential that a patient discharged from hospital should be maintained on the brand on which that patient was stabilised as an in-patient.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**SLO-PHYLLIN®** Patient or carer should be given advice on how to administer theophylline modified release capsules.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21, 25

- ▶ **Nuelin SA** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Theophylline 175 mg** Nuelin SA 175mg tablets | 60 tablet [P] £6.38 DT = £6.38

**Theophylline 250 mg** Nuelin SA 250 tablets | 60 tablet [P] £8.92 DT = £8.92

- ▶ **Uniphyllin Continus** (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Theophylline 200 mg** Uniphyllin Continus 200mg tablets |

56 tablet [P] £2.96 DT = £2.96

**Theophylline 300 mg** Uniphyllin Continus 300mg tablets |


56 tablet [P] £4.77 DT = £4.77

**Theophylline 400 mg** Uniphyllin Continus 400mg tablets |

56 tablet [P] £5.65 DT = £5.65

**Modified-release capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

► **Slo-Phyllin** (Merck Serono Ltd)**Theophylline 60 mg** Slo-Phyllin 60mg capsules | 56 capsule  £2.76 DT = £2.76**Theophylline 125 mg** Slo-Phyllin 125mg capsules | 56 capsule  £3.48 DT = £3.48**Theophylline 250 mg** Slo-Phyllin 250mg capsules | 56 capsule  £4.34 DT = £4.34**Nebuliser solutions**● **HYPERTONIC SODIUM CHLORIDE SOLUTIONS**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****MUCOCLEAR® 3%****Mobilise lower respiratory tract secretions in mucous consolidation (e.g. cystic fibrosis) | Mild to moderate acute viral bronchiolitis in infants**► **BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION**

- Child: 4 mL 2–4 times a day, temporary irritation, such as coughing, hoarseness, or reversible bronchoconstriction may occur; an inhaled bronchodilator can be used before treatment with hypertonic sodium chloride to reduce the risk of these adverse effects

**MucoClear 3% inhalation solution 4ml ampoules** (Pari Medical Ltd) **Sodium chloride 30 mg per 1 ml** | 20 ampoule • NHS indicative price = £12.98 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) | 60 ampoule • NHS indicative price = £27.00 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****MUCOCLEAR® 6%****Mobilise lower respiratory tract secretions in mucous consolidation (e.g. cystic fibrosis)**► **BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION**

- Child: 4 mL twice daily, temporary irritation, such as coughing, hoarseness, or reversible bronchoconstriction may occur; an inhaled bronchodilator can be used before treatment with hypertonic sodium chloride to reduce the risk of these adverse effects

**MucoClear 6% inhalation solution 4ml ampoules** (Pari Medical Ltd) **Sodium chloride 60 mg per 1 ml** | 20 ampoule • NHS indicative price = £12.98 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) | 60 ampoule • NHS indicative price = £27.00 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****NEBUSAL®****Mobilise lower respiratory tract secretions in mucous consolidation (e.g. cystic fibrosis)**► **BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION**

- Child: 4 mL up to twice daily, temporary irritation, such as coughing, hoarseness, or reversible bronchoconstriction may occur; an inhaled bronchodilator can be used before treatment with hypertonic sodium chloride to reduce the risk of these adverse effects

**Nebusal 7% inhalation solution 4ml vials** (Forest Laboratories UK Ltd) **Sodium chloride 70 mg per 1 ml** | 60 vial • NHS indicative price = £27.00 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)**Medi peak flow meter low range** (Medicareplus International Ltd)

1 device • NHS indicative price = £6.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) price = £6.50

**MINI-WRIGHT® LOW RANGE**

Range 30–400 litres/minute.

Compliant to standard EN ISO 23747:2007 except for scale range.

**Mini-Wright peak flow meter low range** (Clement Clarke International Ltd)

1 device • NHS indicative price = £7.14 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) price = £6.50

**POCKETPEAK® LOW RANGE**

Range 50–400 litres/minute.

Compliant to standard EN ISO 23747:2007 except for scale range.

**nSpiire Pocket Peak peak flow meter low range** (nSpiire Health Ltd)

1 device • NHS indicative price = £6.53 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) price = £6.50

**Peak flow meters: standard range**● **STANDARD RANGE PEAK FLOW METERS****AIRZONE®**

Range 60–720 litres/minute.

Conforms to standard EN ISO 23747:2007.

**AirZone peak flow meter standard range** (Clement Clarke International Ltd)

1 device • NHS indicative price = £4.69 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) price = £4.50

**MEDI® STANDARD RANGE**

Range 60–800 litres/minute.

Conforms to standard EN ISO 23747:2007.

**Medi peak flow meter standard range** (Medicareplus International Ltd)

1 device • NHS indicative price = £4.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) price = £4.50

**MICROPEAK®**

Range 60–900 litres/minute.

Conforms to standard EN ISO 23747:2007.

**MicroPeak peak flow meter standard range** (Micro Medical Ltd)

1 device • NHS indicative price = £6.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) price = £4.50

**MINI-WRIGHT® STANDARD RANGE**

Range 60–800 litres/minute.

Conforms to standard EN ISO 23747:2007.

**Mini-Wright peak flow meter standard range** (Clement Clarke International Ltd)

1 device • NHS indicative price = £7.08 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) price = £4.50

**PIKO-1®**

Range 15–999 litres/minute.

Conforms to standard EN ISO 23747:2007.

**nSpiire PiKo-1 peak flow meter standard range** (nSpiire Health Ltd)

1 device • NHS indicative price = £9.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) price = £4.50

**PINNACLE®**

Range 60–900 litres/minute.

Conforms to standard EN ISO 23747:2007.

**Fyne Dynamics Pinnacle peak flow meter standard range** (Fyne Dynamics Ltd)

1 device • NHS indicative price = £6.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) price = £4.50

**POCKETPEAK® STANDARD RANGE**

Range 60–800 litres/minute.

Conforms to standard EN ISO 23747:2007.

**nSpiire Pocket Peak peak flow meter standard range** (nSpiire Health Ltd)

1 device • NHS indicative price = £6.53 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) price = £4.50

**VITALOGRAPH®**

Range 50–800 litres/minute.

Conforms to standard EN ISO 23747:2007.

**Peak flow meters: low range**● **LOW RANGE PEAK FLOW METERS****MEDI® LOW RANGE**

Range 40–420 litres/minute.

Compliant to standard EN ISO 23747:2007 except for scale range.

**Vitalograph peak flow meter standard range** (Vitalograph Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £4.83 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) price = £4.50

## Spacers

### • SPACERS

#### **A2A SPACER**®

For use with all pressurised (aerosol) inhalers.

**A2A Spacer** (Clement Clarke International Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £4.15 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**A2A Spacer with medium mask** (Clement Clarke International Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £6.68 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**A2A Spacer with small mask** (Clement Clarke International Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £6.68 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

#### **ABLE SPACER**®

Small-volume device. For use with all pressurised (aerosol) inhalers.

**Able Spacer** (Clement Clarke International Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £4.39 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Able Spacer with medium mask** (Clement Clarke International Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £7.16 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Able Spacer with small mask** (Clement Clarke International Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £7.16 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

#### **AEROCHAMBER PLUS**®

Medium-volume device. For use with all pressurised (aerosol) inhalers.

**AeroChamber Plus** (Trudell Medical UK Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £4.90 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**AeroChamber Plus with adult mask** (Trudell Medical UK Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £8.17 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**AeroChamber Plus with child mask** (Trudell Medical UK Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £8.17 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**AeroChamber Plus with infant mask** (Trudell Medical UK Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £8.17 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

#### **BABYHALER**®

For paediatric use with *Flixotide*®, and *Ventolin*® inhalers.

### • PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Not available for NHS prescription.

**Babyhaler** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
1 device • No NHS indicative price available • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

#### **HALERAID**®

Device to place over pressurised (aerosol) inhalers to aid when strength in hands is impaired (e.g. in arthritis). For use with *Flixotide*®, *Seretide*®, *Serevent*®, and *Ventolin*® inhalers.

### • PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Not available for NHS prescription.

**Haleraid-120** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
1 device • No NHS indicative price available • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Haleraid-200** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
1 device • No NHS indicative price available • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

#### **OPTICHAMBER**®

For use with all pressurised (aerosol) inhalers.

**OptiChamber** (Respironics (UK) Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £4.28 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

#### **OPTICHAMBER**® **DIAMOND**

For use with all pressurised (aerosol) inhalers.

**OptiChamber Diamond** (Respironics (UK) Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £4.49 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**OptiChamber Diamond with large LiteTouch mask 5 years-adult** (Respironics (UK) Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £7.49 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**OptiChamber Diamond with medium LiteTouch mask 1-5 years** (Respironics (UK) Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £7.49 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**OptiChamber Diamond with small LiteTouch mask 0-18 months** (Respironics (UK) Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £7.49 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

### **POCKET CHAMBER**®

Small volume device. For use with all pressurised (aerosol) inhalers.

**Pocket Chamber** (nSpiire Health Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £4.18 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Pocket Chamber with adult mask** (nSpiire Health Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £9.75 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Pocket Chamber with child mask** (nSpiire Health Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £9.75 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Pocket Chamber with infant mask** (nSpiire Health Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £9.75 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Pocket Chamber with teenager mask** (nSpiire Health Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £9.75 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

#### **SPACE CHAMBER PLUS**®

For use with all pressurised (aerosol) inhalers.

**Space Chamber Plus** (Medical Developments International Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £4.26 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Space Chamber Plus with large mask** (Medical Developments International Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £6.98 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Space Chamber Plus with medium mask** (Medical Developments International Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £6.98 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Space Chamber Plus with small mask** (Medical Developments International Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £6.98 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

#### **VOLUMATIC**®

Large-volume device. For use with *Clenil Modulite*®, *Flixotide*®, *Seretide*®, *Serevent*®, and *Ventolin*® inhalers.

**Volumatic** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £3.88 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Volumatic with paediatric mask** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £6.83 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

#### **VORTEX**®

Medium-volume device. For use with all pressurised (aerosol) inhalers.

**Vortex Spacer** (Pari Medical Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £6.28 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Vortex with baby mask 0-2 years** (Pari Medical Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £7.99 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Vortex with child mask 2 years+** (Pari Medical Ltd)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £7.99 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

## 2 Allergic conditions

### Antihistamines, allergen immunotherapy and allergic emergencies

#### Antihistamines

Antihistamines (histamine H<sub>1</sub>-receptor antagonists) are classified as *sedating* or *non-sedating*, according to their relative potential for CNS depression. Antihistamines differ in their duration of action, incidence of drowsiness, and antimuscarinic effects; the response to an antihistamine may vary from child to child. Either a sedating or a non-sedating antihistamine may be used to treat an acute allergic reaction; for conditions with more persistent symptoms which require regular treatment, a non-sedating antihistamine should be used to minimise the risk of sedation and psychomotor impairment associated with sedating antihistamines.

Oral antihistamines are used in the treatment of nasal allergies, particularly seasonal allergic rhinitis (hay fever), and may be of some value in vasomotor rhinitis; rhinorrhoea and sneezing is reduced, but antihistamines are usually less effective for nasal congestion. Antihistamines are used topically to treat allergic reactions in the eye and in the nose.



Topical application of antihistamines to the skin is not recommended.

An oral antihistamine may be used to prevent urticaria, and for the treatment of acute urticarial rashes, pruritus, insect bites, and stings. Antihistamines are also used in the management of nausea and vomiting, of migraine, and the adjunctive management of anaphylaxis and angioedema.

The *non-sedating* antihistamine cetirizine hydrochloride p. 174 is safe and effective in children. Other non-sedating antihistamines that are used include acrivastine p. 173, bilastine p. 173, desloratadine p. 174 (an active metabolite of loratadine p. 176), fexofenadine hydrochloride p. 175 (an active metabolite of terfenadine), levocetirizine hydrochloride p. 175 (an isomer of cetirizine hydrochloride), loratadine, and mizolastine p. 176. Most non-sedating antihistamines are long-acting (usually 12–24 hours). There is little evidence that desloratadine or levocetirizine hydrochloride confer any additional benefit—they should be reserved for children who cannot tolerate other therapies.

*Sedating* antihistamines are occasionally useful when insomnia is associated with urticaria and pruritus. Most of the sedating antihistamines are relatively short-acting, but promethazine may be effective for up to 12 hours. Alimemazine tartrate p. 177 and **promethazine** have a more sedative effect than chlorphenamine maleate p. 178 and cyclizine p. 260. Chlorphenamine maleate is used as an adjunct to adrenaline/epinephrine p. 136 in the emergency treatment of anaphylaxis and angioedema.

### Allergen immunotherapy

Immunotherapy using allergen vaccines containing house dust mite, animal dander (cat or dog), or extracts of grass and tree pollen can improve symptoms of asthma and allergic rhinoconjunctivitis in children. A vaccine containing extracts of wasp and bee venom is used to reduce the risk of severe anaphylaxis and systemic reactions in children with hypersensitivity to wasp and bee stings. An oral preparation of grass pollen extract (*Grazax*®) is also licensed for disease-modifying treatment of grass pollen-induced rhinitis and conjunctivitis. Children requiring immunotherapy must be referred to a hospital specialist for accurate diagnosis, assessment, and treatment.

Omalizumab p. 164 is a monoclonal antibody that binds to immunoglobulin E (IgE). It is licensed for use as additional therapy in children over 6 years with proven IgE-mediated sensitivity to inhaled allergens, whose severe persistent allergic asthma cannot be controlled adequately with high-dose inhaled corticosteroid together with a long-acting beta<sub>2</sub> agonist. Omalizumab should be initiated by physicians experienced in the treatment of severe persistent asthma. Omalizumab is also indicated as add-on therapy for the treatment of chronic spontaneous urticaria in patients who have had an inadequate response to H<sub>1</sub> antihistamine treatment.

### Anaphylaxis and allergic emergencies

#### Anaphylaxis

Anaphylaxis is a severe, life-threatening, generalised or systemic hypersensitivity reaction. It is characterised by the rapid onset of respiratory and/or circulatory problems and is usually associated with skin and mucosal changes; prompt treatment is required. Children with pre-existing asthma, especially poorly controlled asthma, are at particular risk of life-threatening reactions. Insect stings are a recognised risk (in particular wasp and bee stings). Latex and certain foods, including eggs, fish, cow's milk protein, peanuts, sesame, shellfish, soy, and tree nuts may also precipitate anaphylaxis (see Food allergy p. 60). Medicinal products particularly associated with anaphylaxis include blood products, vaccines, allergen immunotherapy preparations, antibacterials, aspirin p. 91 and other NSAIDs, and neuromuscular blocking drugs. In the case of drugs,

anaphylaxis is more likely after parenteral administration; resuscitation facilities must always be available for injections associated with special risk. Refined arachis (peanut) oil, which may be present in some medicinal products, is unlikely to cause an allergic reaction—nevertheless it is wise to check the full formula of preparations which may contain allergens.

#### Treatment of anaphylaxis

Adrenaline/epinephrine provides physiological reversal of the immediate symptoms associated with hypersensitivity reactions such as *anaphylaxis* and *angioedema*.

First-line treatment includes:

- securing the airway, restoration of blood pressure (laying the child flat and raising the legs, or in the recovery position if unconscious or nauseous and at risk of vomiting);
- administering adrenaline/epinephrine by **intramuscular** injection; the dose should be repeated if necessary at 5-minute intervals according to blood pressure, pulse, and respiratory function;
- administering high-flow **oxygen** and **intravenous fluids**;
- administering an antihistamine, such as chlorphenamine maleate, by slow intravenous injection or intramuscular injection as adjunctive treatment given after adrenaline.
- Administering an intravenous corticosteroid such as hydrocortisone p. 440 (preferably as sodium succinate) is of secondary value in the initial management of anaphylaxis because the onset of action is delayed for several hours, but should be given to prevent further deterioration in severely affected children.

*Continuing respiratory deterioration* requires further treatment with **bronchodilators** including inhaled or intravenous salbutamol p. 156, inhaled ipratropium bromide p. 153, intravenous aminophylline p. 167, or intravenous magnesium sulfate p. 597 [unlicensed indication] (as for acute severe asthma); in addition to oxygen, assisted respiration and possibly emergency tracheotomy may be necessary.

When a child is so ill that there is doubt about the adequacy of the circulation, the initial injection of adrenaline/epinephrine may need to be given as a *dilute solution by the intravenous route*, or by the *intraosseous route* if venous access is difficult; for details see adrenaline/epinephrine.

On discharge, child should be considered for further treatment with an oral antihistamine and an oral corticosteroid for up to 3 days to reduce the risk of further reaction. The child, or carer, should be instructed to return to hospital if symptoms recur and to contact their general practitioner for follow-up.

Children who are suspected of having had an anaphylactic reaction should be referred to a specialist for specific allergy diagnosis. Avoidance of the allergen is the principal treatment; if appropriate, an adrenaline/epinephrine auto-injector should be given for self-administration or a replacement supplied.

#### Intramuscular adrenaline (epinephrine)

The *intramuscular route is the first choice route* for the administration of adrenaline/epinephrine p. 193 in the management of anaphylaxis. Adrenaline/epinephrine is best given as an intramuscular injection into the anterolateral aspect of the middle third of the thigh; it has a rapid onset of action after intramuscular administration and in the shocked patient its absorption from the intramuscular site is faster and more reliable than from the subcutaneous site.

Children with severe allergy, and their carers, should ideally be instructed in the self-administration of adrenaline/epinephrine by intramuscular injection.

*Prompt injection of adrenaline/epinephrine is of paramount importance.* The adrenaline/epinephrine doses recommended for the emergency treatment of anaphylaxis by appropriately trained healthcare professionals are based

on the revised recommendations of the Working Group of the Resuscitation Council (UK).

### Dose of intramuscular injection of adrenaline (epinephrine) for the emergency treatment of anaphylaxis by healthcare professionals

Age	Dose	Volume of adrenaline
► Child 1 month–5 years	150 micrograms	0.15 mL 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL) adrenaline <sup>1</sup>
► Child 6–11 years	300 micrograms	0.3 mL 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL) adrenaline
► Child 12–17 years	500 micrograms	0.5 mL 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL) adrenaline <sup>2</sup>
These doses may be repeated several times if necessary at 5-minute intervals according to blood pressure, pulse and respiratory function.		
1. Use suitable syringe for measuring small volume		
2. 300 micrograms (0.3 mL) if child is small or prepubertal		

#### Intravenous adrenaline (epinephrine)

Intravenous adrenaline/epinephrine should be given only by those experienced in its use, in a setting where patients can be carefully monitored.

Where the child is severely ill and there is real doubt about adequacy of the circulation and absorption from the intramuscular injection site, adrenaline/epinephrine may be given by **slow intravenous injection**, repeated according to response; if multiple doses are required consider giving adrenaline by slow intravenous infusion.

It is also important that, where intramuscular injection might still succeed, time should not be wasted seeking intravenous access.

Adrenaline/epinephrine is also given by the intravenous route for *acute hypotension*.

#### Angioedema

Angioedema is dangerous if *laryngeal oedema* is present. In this circumstance adrenaline/epinephrine injection, oxygen, antihistamines and corticosteroids should be given as described under **Anaphylaxis**. Tracheal intubation may be necessary. In some children with laryngeal oedema, adrenaline 1 in 1000 (1 mg/mL) solution may be given by nebuliser. However, nebulised adrenaline/epinephrine cannot be relied upon for a systemic effect—intramuscular adrenaline/epinephrine should be used.

#### Hereditary angioedema

The treatment of hereditary angioedema should be under specialist supervision. Unlike allergic angioedema, adrenaline/epinephrine, corticosteroids, and antihistamines should not be used for the treatment of acute attacks, including attacks involving laryngeal oedema, as they are ineffective and may delay appropriate treatment—intubation may be necessary. The administration of C1-esterase inhibitor p. 183 (in fresh frozen plasma or in partially purified form) can terminate acute attacks of *hereditary angioedema*; it can also be used for short-term prophylaxis before dental, medical, or surgical procedures. Tranexamic acid p. 82 is used for short-term or long-term prophylaxis of hereditary angioedema; short-term prophylaxis is started several days before planned procedures which may trigger an acute attack of hereditary angioedema (e.g. dental work) and continued for 2–5 days afterwards. Danazol [unlicensed indication] is best avoided in children because of its androgenic effects, but it can be used for short-term prophylaxis of hereditary angioedema.

## ANTIHISTAMINES > NON-SEDATING

### Acrivastine

19-May-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hayfever, chronic idiopathic urticaria**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 8 mg 3 times a day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, non-sedating

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Drowsiness · dry mouth
- **Frequency not known** Dizziness · rash

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Non-sedating antihistamines such as acrivastine cause less sedation and psychomotor impairment than the older antihistamines, but can still occur; sedation is generally minimal. This is because non-sedating antihistamines penetrate the blood brain barrier to a much lesser extent.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if history of hypersensitivity to triprolidine.

- **PREGNANCY** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Although drowsiness is rare, nevertheless patients should be advised that it can occur and may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); alcohol should be avoided.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Capsule

- **Benadryl Allergy Relief** (McNeil Products Ltd)  
Acrivastine 8 mg Benadryl Allergy Relief 8mg capsules | 24 capsule P £5.45

### Bilastine

22-May-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic relief of allergic rhinoconjunctivitis and urticaria**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 20 mg once daily

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, non-sedating

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Drowsiness · headache
- **Uncommon** Anxiety · appetite increased · asthenia · bundle branch block · diarrhoea · dry mouth · dyspnoea · fever · gastritis · gastrointestinal discomfort · insomnia · nasal complaints · nausea · oral herpes · pre-existing condition improved · pruritus · QT interval prolongation · sinus arrhythmia · thirst · tinnitus · vertigo · weight increased

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Non-sedating antihistamines such as bilastine cause less sedation and psychomotor impairment than the older antihistamines, but can still occur; sedation is generally minimal. This is

because non-sedating antihistamines penetrate the blood brain barrier to a much lesser extent.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid—limited information available. Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—no information available. Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Take tablet 1 hour before or 2 hours after food or fruit juice.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer bilastine tablets.  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Although drowsiness is rare, nevertheless patients should be advised that it can occur and may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); alcohol should be avoided.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 23

► **Ilaxten** (A. Menarini Farmaceutica Internazionale SRL)

**Bilastine 20 mg** Ilaxten 20mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £15.09

## Cetirizine hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hay fever, chronic idiopathic urticaria, atopic dermatitis**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 year: 250 micrograms/kg twice daily
- Child 2–5 years: 2.5 mg twice daily
- Child 6–11 years: 5 mg twice daily
- Child 12–17 years: 10 mg once daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 2 years.

- **CAUTIONS** Epilepsy

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, non-sedating

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Uncommon** Agitation · asthenia · diarrhoea · malaise · paraesthesia · skin reactions
- **Rare or very rare** Aggression · angioedema · confusion · depression · hallucination · hepatic function abnormal · insomnia · movement disorders · oculogyration · oedema · seizure · syncope · tachycardia · taste altered · thrombocytopenia · tic · tremor · urinary disorders · vision disorders · weight increased
- **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain · appetite increased · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · headache · memory loss · nausea · pharyngitis · suicidal ideation · vertigo

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Non-sedating antihistamines such as cetirizine cause less sedation and psychomotor impairment than the older antihistamines, but can still occur; sedation is generally minimal. This is because non-sedating antihistamines penetrate the blood brain barrier to a much lesser extent.

- **PREGNANCY** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Dose adjustments** Use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

Use half normal dose and reduce dose frequency to alternate days if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Cetirizine hydrochloride for hay fever [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/cetirizine-hay-fever-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/cetirizine-hay-fever-0)

**Driving and skilled tasks** Although drowsiness is rare, nevertheless patients should be advised that it can occur and may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); alcohol should be avoided.

#### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

**Dental practitioners' formulary**

Cetirizine Tablets 10 mg may be prescribed.

Cetirizine Oral Solution 5 mg/5 mL may be prescribed.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

► **Cetirizine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Cetirizine hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 mL** Cetirizine 1mg/ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 200 mL [PoM] £1.02 DT = £1.02

#### Tablet

► **Cetirizine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Cetirizine hydrochloride 10 mg** Cetirizine 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £3.89 DT = £0.70

#### Capsule

► **Benadryl Allergy** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Cetirizine hydrochloride 10 mg** Benadryl Allergy Liquid Release 10mg capsules | 7 capsule [GS] £3.09 DT = £3.09

## Desloratadine

23-May-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic relief of allergy such as allergic rhinitis, urticaria, chronic idiopathic urticaria**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–5 years: 1.25 mg once daily
- Child 6–11 years: 2.5 mg once daily
- Child 12–17 years: 5 mg once daily

#### PHARMACOKINETICS

► Desloratadine is a metabolite of loratadine.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, non-sedating

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Asthenia · dry mouth · headache
  - **Rare or very rare** Akathisia · arrhythmias · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · gastrointestinal discomfort · hallucination · hepatic disorders · insomnia · myalgia · nausea · palpitations · seizure · vomiting
  - **Frequency not known** Behaviour abnormal · photosensitivity reaction · QT interval prolongation
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Non-sedating antihistamines such as desloratadine cause less sedation and psychomotor impairment than the older antihistamines, but can still occur; sedation is generally minimal. This is because non-sedating antihistamines penetrate the blood brain barrier to a much lesser extent.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if history of hypersensitivity to loratadine.

- **PREGNANCY** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be

harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in severe impairment.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include bubblegum.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Although drowsiness is rare, nevertheless patients should be advised that it can occur and may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); excess alcohol should be avoided.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol, sorbitol

##### ► Desloratadine (Non-proprietary)

**Desloratadine 500 microgram per 1 ml** Desloratadine 2.5mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £6.43-£6.77 sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £8.00-£10.15 DT = £10.15

##### ► Neoclarityn (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Desloratadine 500 microgram per 1 ml** Neoclarityn 2.5mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £6.77 sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £10.15 DT = £10.15

##### Tablet

##### ► Desloratadine (Non-proprietary)

**Desloratadine 5 mg** Desloratadine 5mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £6.77 DT = £0.86

##### ► Neoclarityn (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Desloratadine 5 mg** Neoclarityn 5mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £6.77 DT = £0.86

## Fexofenadine hydrochloride

22-May-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Symptomatic relief of seasonal allergic rhinitis

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–11 years: 30 mg twice daily
- Child 12–17 years: 120 mg once daily

##### Symptomatic relief of chronic idiopathic urticaria

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 180 mg once daily

##### PHARMACOKINETICS

- Fexofenadine is a metabolite of terfenadine.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, non-sedating
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - Common or very common Dizziness · drowsiness · headache · nausea
  - Uncommon Fatigue
  - Frequency not known Diarrhoea · nervousness · palpitations · skin reactions · sleep disorders · tachycardia
- **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Non-sedating antihistamines such as fexofenadine cause less sedation and psychomotor impairment than the older antihistamines, but can still occur; sedation is generally minimal. This is because non-sedating antihistamines penetrate the blood brain barrier to a much lesser extent.
- **PREGNANCY** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Although drowsiness is rare, nevertheless patients should be advised that it can occur

and may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); alcohol should be avoided.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5

##### ► Fexofenadine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Fexofenadine hydrochloride 120 mg** Fexofenadine 120mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £6.23 DT = £1.76

**Fexofenadine hydrochloride 180 mg** Fexofenadine 180mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £7.89 DT = £2.84

##### ► Telfast (Sanofi)

**Fexofenadine hydrochloride 30 mg** Telfast 30mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £5.46 DT = £5.46

**Fexofenadine hydrochloride 120 mg** Telfast 120mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £5.99 DT = £1.76

**Fexofenadine hydrochloride 180 mg** Telfast 180mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £7.58 DT = £2.84

## Levocetirizine hydrochloride

24-May-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hay fever, urticaria

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–5 years: 1.25 mg twice daily
- Child 6–17 years: 5 mg once daily

##### PHARMACOKINETICS

- Levocetirizine is an isomer of cetirizine.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, non-sedating
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - Common or very common Asthenia · constipation · drowsiness · dry mouth
  - Uncommon Abdominal pain
  - Frequency not known Aggression · agitation · angioedema · appetite increased · arthralgia · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · dyspnoea · hallucination · hepatitis · myalgia · nausea · oedema · palpitations · paraesthesia · seizure · skin reactions · sleep disorders · suicidal ideation · syncope · tachycardia · taste altered · tremor · urinary disorders · vertigo · vision disorders · vomiting · weight increased
- **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Non-sedating antihistamines such as levocetirizine cause less sedation and psychomotor impairment than the older antihistamines, but can still occur; sedation is generally minimal. This is because non-sedating antihistamines penetrate the blood brain barrier to a much lesser extent.
- **PREGNANCY** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose frequency to alternate days if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
 Reduce dose frequency to every 3 days if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Although drowsiness is rare, nevertheless patients should be advised that it can occur

and may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); alcohol should be avoided.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral solution

► **Xyzal** (UCB Pharma Ltd)

**Levocetirizine dihydrochloride 500 microgram per 1 ml** Xyzal 0.5mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 200 ml **[PoM]** £6.00 DT = £6.00

#### Tablet

► **Levocetirizine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Levocetirizine dihydrochloride 5 mg** Levocetirizine 5mg tablets | 30 tablet **[PoM]** £4.45 DT = £4.37

► **Xyzal** (UCB Pharma Ltd)

**Levocetirizine dihydrochloride 5 mg** Xyzal 5mg tablets | 30 tablet **[PoM]** £4.39 DT = £4.37

## Loratadine

22-May-2017

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hay fever, chronic idiopathic urticaria**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 2-11 years (body-weight up to 31 kg): 5 mg once daily
- Child 2-11 years (body-weight 31 kg and above): 10 mg once daily
- Child 12-17 years: 10 mg once daily

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, non-sedating

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Drowsiness · nervousness
- **Uncommon** Appetite increased · headache · insomnia
- **Rare or very rare** Alopecia · angioedema · dizziness · dry mouth · fatigue · gastritis · hepatic function abnormal · nausea · palpitations · rash · seizure · tachycardia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Non-sedating antihistamines such as loratadine cause less sedation and psychomotor impairment than the older antihistamines, but can still occur; sedation is generally minimal. This is because non-sedating antihistamines penetrate the blood brain barrier to a much lesser extent.

● **PREGNANCY** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.

#### HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose frequency to alternate days in severe impairment.

#### PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Although drowsiness is rare, nevertheless patients and their carers should be advised that it can occur and may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); alcohol should be avoided.

#### PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

**Dental practitioners' formulary**

Loratadine 10 mg tablets may be prescribed.

Loratadine syrup 5 mg/5 mL may be prescribed.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

► **Loratadine (Non-proprietary)**

**Loratadine 1 mg per 1 ml** Loratadine 5mg/5ml oral solution | 100 ml **[PoM]** £2.24 DT = £1.33

### Tablet

► **Loratadine (Non-proprietary)**

**Loratadine 10 mg** Loratadine 10mg tablets | 30 tablet **[P]** £1.44 DT = £0.45

► **Clarityn (Loratadine)** (Bayer Plc)

**Loratadine 10 mg** Clarityn Allergy 10mg tablets | 60 tablet **[P]** £8.85

### Oral lyophilisate

► **Clarityn (Loratadine)** (Bayer Plc)

**Loratadine 10 mg** Clarityn Rapide Allergy 10mg tablets sugar-free | 10 tablet **[GSL]** £3.24 DT = £3.24

## Mizolastine

22-May-2017

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hay fever, urticaria**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 12-17 years: 10 mg once daily

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Cardiac disease · hypokalaemia · susceptibility to QT-interval prolongation

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, non-sedating

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Appetite increased · asthenia · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · nausea · weight increased
- **Uncommon** Anxiety · arrhythmias · arthralgia · depression · myalgia · palpitations
- **Rare or very rare** Hypersensitivity
- **Frequency not known** Asthma exacerbated · bronchospasm · QT interval prolongation

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Non-sedating antihistamines such as mizolastine cause less sedation and psychomotor impairment than the older antihistamines, but can still occur; sedation is generally minimal. This is because non-sedating antihistamines penetrate the blood brain barrier to a much lesser extent.

● **PREGNANCY** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid in significant impairment.

#### PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Although drowsiness is rare, nevertheless patients and their carers should be advised that it can occur and may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); alcohol should be avoided.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Modified-release tablet

AUTOMATICALLY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

► **Mizollen** (Sanofi)

**Mizolastine 10 mg** Mizollen 10mg modified-release tablets | 30 tablet **[PoM]** £6.92 DT = £6.92



## Rupatadine

14-Aug-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Rupatadine is a second generation non-sedating antihistamine.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Symptomatic relief of allergic rhinitis and urticaria

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 10 mg once daily

- **CAUTIONS** History of QT-interval prolongation · predisposition to arrhythmia · uncorrected hypokalaemia

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, non-sedating

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Asthenia · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · headache

- **Uncommon** Appetite increased · arthralgia · back pain · concentration impaired · constipation · cough · diarrhoea · dry throat · epistaxis · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · increased risk of infection · irritability · malaise · myalgia · nasal dryness · nausea · oropharyngeal pain · rash · thirst · vomiting · weight increased

- **Rare or very rare** Palpitations · tachycardia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Non-sedating antihistamines such as rupatadine cause less sedation and psychomotor impairment than the older antihistamines, but can still occur; sedation is generally minimal. This is because non-sedating antihistamines penetrate the blood brain barrier to a much lesser extent.

- **PREGNANCY** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

##### ► Rupatadine (Non-proprietary)

Rupatadine (as Rupatadine fumarate) 10 mg Rupatadine 10mg tablets | 30 tablet (PoM) £30.00 DT = £30.00

## ANTIHISTAMINES > SEDATING

## Alimemazine tartrate

### (Trimeprazine tartrate)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Urticaria | Pruritus

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6 months–1 year (specialist use only): 250 micrograms/kg 3–4 times a day (max. per dose 2.5 mg)
- Child 2–4 years: 2.5 mg 3–4 times a day
- Child 5–11 years: 5 mg 3–4 times a day
- Child 12–17 years: 10 mg 2–3 times a day, in severe cases up to maximum daily dose has been used; maximum 100 mg per day

#### Premedication to anaesthesia

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–6 years: Up to 2 mg/kg, to be given 1–2 hours before operation

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 2 years.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Children under 2 years except on specialist advice (safety of such use has not been established) · epilepsy · hepatic dysfunction · history of narrow angle glaucoma · hypothyroidism · myasthenia gravis · neonate (due to significant antimuscarinic activity) · Parkinson's disease · pheochromocytoma · renal dysfunction

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular diseases (due to tachycardia-inducing and hypotensive effects of phenothiazines) · exposure to sunlight should be avoided during treatment with high doses · pyloroduodenal obstruction · urinary retention · volume depleted patients who are more susceptible to orthostatic hypotension

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, sedating

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agitation · agranulocytosis · amenorrhoea · atrioventricular block · autonomic dysfunction · bile thrombus · consciousness impaired · drug fever · dry mouth · eosinophilia · erectile dysfunction · eye disorder · galactorrhoea · gynaecomastia · hepatic disorders · hyperprolactinaemia · hyperthermia · hypotension · insomnia · leucopenia (on prolonged high dose) · movement disorders · muscle rigidity · nasal congestion · neuroleptic malignant syndrome · pallor · parkinsonism · photosensitivity reaction · postural hypotension (more common in volume depletion) · QT interval prolongation · respiratory depression · seizure · skin reactions · tardive dyskinesia (more common after long term high doses) · tremor · ventricular fibrillation (increased risk with hypokalaemia and cardiac disease) · ventricular tachycardia (increased risk with hypokalaemia and cardiac disease)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Drowsiness may diminish after a few days.

Patients on high dosage may develop photosensitivity and should avoid exposure to direct sunlight.

Children are more susceptible to side-effects.

- **PREGNANCY** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity. Use in the latter part of the third trimester may cause adverse effects in neonates such as irritability, paradoxical excitability, and tremor.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe liver disease—increased risk of coma.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); sedating effects enhanced by alcohol.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

#### Oral solution

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ► Alimemazine tartrate (Non-proprietary)

Alimemazine tartrate 1.5 mg per 1 ml Alimemazine 7.5mg/5ml oral solution | 100 ml (PoM) £179.55 DT = £179.55

Alimemazine tartrate 6 mg per 1 ml Alimemazine 30mg/5ml oral solution | 100 ml (PoM) £243.51 DT = £243.51

#### Tablet

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ► Alimemazine tartrate (Non-proprietary)

Alimemazine tartrate 10 mg Alimemazine 10mg tablets | 28 tablet (PoM) £112.85 DT = £112.85

## Chlorphenamine maleate

(Chlorpheniramine maleate)

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hay fever, urticaria, food allergy, drug reactions | Relief of itch associated with chickenpox**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
  - ▶ Child 1–23 months: 1 mg twice daily
  - ▶ Child 2–5 years: 1 mg every 4–6 hours; maximum 6 mg per day
  - ▶ Child 6–11 years: 2 mg every 4–6 hours; maximum 12 mg per day
  - ▶ Child 12–17 years: 4 mg every 4–6 hours; maximum 24 mg per day
- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
  - ▶ Child 1–5 months: 250 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 2.5 mg), repeated if necessary; maximum 4 doses per day
  - ▶ Child 6 months–5 years: 2.5 mg, repeated if necessary; maximum 4 doses per day
  - ▶ Child 6–11 years: 5 mg, repeated if necessary; maximum 4 doses per day
  - ▶ Child 12–17 years: 10 mg, repeated if necessary; maximum 4 doses per day

### Emergency treatment of anaphylactic reactions

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
  - ▶ Child 1–5 months: 250 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 2.5 mg), repeated if necessary; maximum 4 doses per day
  - ▶ Child 6 months–5 years: 2.5 mg, repeated if necessary; maximum 4 doses per day
  - ▶ Child 6–11 years: 5 mg, repeated if necessary; maximum 4 doses per day
  - ▶ Child 12–17 years: 10 mg, repeated if necessary; maximum 4 doses per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Injection* not licensed for use in neonates. *Tablets* not licensed for use in children under 6 years. *Syrup* not licensed for use in children under 1 year.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE (MARCH 2008 AND FEBRUARY 2009) OVER-THE-COUNTER COUGH AND COLD MEDICINES FOR CHILDREN  
Children under 6 years should not be given over-the-counter cough and cold medicines containing chlorphenamine.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Neonate (due to significant antimuscarinic activity)
- **CAUTIONS** Epilepsy · pyloroduodenal obstruction · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · urinary retention
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, sedating

### • SIDE-EFFECTS

#### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Concentration impaired · coordination abnormal · dizziness · dry mouth · fatigue · headache · nausea · vision blurred
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Agitation · appetite decreased · blood disorder · bronchial secretion viscosity increased · depression · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal disorder · haemolytic anaemia · hypotension · irritability · muscle twitching · muscle weakness · nightmare · palpitations · photosensitivity reaction · skin reactions · tinnitus · urinary retention · vomiting

### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common**
- ▶ With oral use Drowsiness
- ▶ **Frequency not known**
- ▶ With oral use Angioedema · arrhythmias · chest tightness · confusion · hepatic disorders
- ▶ With parenteral use Central nervous system stimulation · dyspepsia · hepatitis · sedation

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Children are more susceptible to side-effects.

- **PREGNANCY** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity. Use in the latter part of the third trimester may cause adverse effects in neonates such as irritability, paradoxical excitability, and tremor.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe liver disease—increased risk of coma.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous injection*, give over 1 minute; if small dose required, dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9%.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Chlorphenamine maleate for allergy symptoms [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/chlorphenamine-maleate-allergy-symptoms-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/chlorphenamine-maleate-allergy-symptoms-0)  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); sedating effects enhanced by alcohol.
- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**  
**Dental practitioners' formulary**  
Chlorphenamine tablets may be prescribed.  
Chlorphenamine oral solution may be prescribed.
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY**  
▶ With intramuscular use or intravenous use Prescription only medicine restriction does not apply to chlorphenamine injection where administration is for saving life in emergency.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

#### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Chlorphenamine maleate (Non-proprietary)**  
Chlorphenamine maleate 10 mg per 1 ml Chlorphenamine 10mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £22.48-£22.50 DT = £22.50

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- ▶ **Chlorphenamine maleate (Non-proprietary)**  
Chlorphenamine maleate 400 microgram per 1 ml Chlorphenamine 2mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [P] £2.78 DT = £2.62
- ▶ **Allerief** (Crescent Pharma Ltd)  
Chlorphenamine maleate 400 microgram per 1 ml Allerief 2mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 150 ml [P] £2.21 DT = £2.62
- ▶ **Piriton** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)  
Chlorphenamine maleate 400 microgram per 1 ml Piriton 2mg/5ml syrup | 150 ml [P] £2.78 DT = £2.78

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- ▶ **Chlorphenamine maleate (Non-proprietary)**  
Chlorphenamine maleate 4 mg Chlorphenamine 4mg tablets | 28 tablet [P] £1.00 DT = £0.76
- ▶ **Hayleve** (Genesis Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Chlorphenamine maleate 4 mg Hayleve 4mg tablets | 28 tablet [P] £0.76 DT = £0.76
- ▶ **Piriton** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)  
Chlorphenamine maleate 4 mg Piriton 4mg tablets | 500 tablet [P] £6.96

Piriton Allergy 4mg tablets | 30 tablet [P] £2.06 | 60 tablet [P] £3.73

► **Pollenase (chlorphenamine)** (E M Pharma)

**Chlorphenamine maleate 4 mg** Pollenase Antihistamine 4mg tablets | 30 tablet [P] £1.00

## Hydroxyzine hydrochloride

22-Feb-2016

- **DRUG ACTION** Hydroxyzine is a sedating antihistamine which exerts its actions by antagonising the effects of histamine.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Pruritus

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6 months–5 years: 5–15 mg daily in divided doses, dose adjusted according to weight; maximum 2 mg/kg per day
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): Initially 15–25 mg daily in divided doses, dose increased as necessary, adjusted according to weight; maximum 2 mg/kg per day
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): Initially 15–25 mg daily in divided doses, increased if necessary to 50–100 mg daily in divided doses, dose adjusted according to weight

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: RISK OF QT-INTERVAL PROLONGATION AND TORSADE DE POINTES (APRIL 2015)

Following concerns of heart rhythm abnormalities, the safety and efficacy of hydroxyzine has been reviewed by the European Medicines Agency. The review concludes that hydroxyzine is associated with a small risk of QT-interval prolongation and torsade de pointes; these events are most likely to occur in patients who have risk factors for QT prolongation, e.g. concomitant use of drugs that prolong the QT-interval, cardiovascular disease, family history of sudden cardiac death, significant electrolyte imbalance (low plasma-potassium or plasma-magnesium concentrations), or significant bradycardia.

To minimise the risk of such adverse effects, the following dose restrictions have been made and new cautions and contra-indications added:

- Hydroxyzine is contra-indicated in patients with prolonged QT-interval or who have risk factors for QT-interval prolongation;
- Consider the risks of QT-interval prolongation and torsade de pointes before prescribing to patients taking drugs that lower heart rate or plasma-potassium concentration;
- In children with body-weight up to 40 kg, the maximum daily dose is 2 mg/kg;
- The lowest effective dose for the shortest period of time should be prescribed.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acquired or congenital QT interval prolongation · predisposition to QT interval prolongation

### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- QT interval prolongation Risk factors for QT interval prolongation include significant electrolyte imbalance, bradycardia, cardiovascular disease, and family history of sudden cardiac death.
- **CAUTIONS** Bladder outflow obstruction · breathing problems · cardiovascular disease · children · decreased gastrointestinal motility · dementia · epilepsy · hypertension · hyperthyroidism · myasthenia gravis · pyloroduodenal obstruction · stenosing peptic ulcer · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · urinary retention

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Children have an increased susceptibility to side-effects, particularly CNS effects.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, sedating

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare** Severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions
- **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · anticholinergic syndrome · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · asthenia · blood disorder · bronchial secretion viscosity increased · chest tightness · chills · coma · concentration impaired · confusion · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dry throat · dyskinesia (on discontinuation) · epigastric pain · fever · flushing · gastrointestinal disorders · haemolytic anaemia · hallucination · headache · hepatic function abnormal · hyperhidrosis · hypotension · irritability · labyrinthitis · leucopenia · malaise · menstruation irregular · movement disorders · myalgia · nasal congestion · nausea · palpitations · paraesthesia · QT interval prolongation · respiratory disorders · respiratory tract dryness · seizure (with high doses) · sexual dysfunction · sleep disorders · speech slurred · taste bitter · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus · tremor (with high doses) · urinary disorders · vertigo · vision disorders · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Paradoxical stimulation may occur rarely, especially with high doses. Drowsiness may diminish after a few days of treatment.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Manufacturer advises hydroxyzine should be avoided in patients with previous hypersensitivity to cetirizine or other piperazine derivatives, and aminophylline.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise avoid—toxicity in animal studies with higher doses. Use in the latter part of the third trimester may cause irritability, paradoxical excitability, and tremor in the neonate.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—expected to be present in milk but effect unknown.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid in severe liver disease—increased risk of coma.

**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises reduce daily dose by one-third.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Manufacturers advise reduce daily dose by half in moderate to severe renal impairment.

- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** May interfere with methacholine test—manufacturer advises stop treatment 96 hours prior to test. May interfere with skin testing for allergy—manufacturer advises stop treatment one week prior to test.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); sedating effects enhanced by alcohol.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- **Hydroxyzine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Hydroxyzine hydrochloride 10 mg** Hydroxyzine 10mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £1.20–£1.53 DT = £1.37

**Hydroxyzine hydrochloride 25 mg** Hydroxyzine 25mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.62–£0.80 DT = £0.71

- **Atarax** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Hydroxyzine hydrochloride 10 mg** Atarax 10mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £1.20 DT = £1.37

**Hydroxyzine hydrochloride 25 mg** Atarax 25mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.62 DT = £0.71

## Ketotifen

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Allergic rhinitis

- BY MOUTH
- Child 3–17 years: 1 mg twice daily

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 · neonate (due to significant antimuscarinic activity)
  - **CAUTIONS** Epilepsy · pyloroduodenal obstruction · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · urinary retention
  - **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, sedating
  - **SIDE-EFFECTS**
    - **Common or very common** Anxiety · insomnia · irritability
    - **Uncommon** Cystitis · dizziness · dry mouth · skin reactions
    - **Rare or very rare** Hepatitis · sedation · seizure · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · weight increased
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Drowsiness is a significant side-effect with most of the older antihistamines although paradoxical stimulation may occur rarely, especially with high doses. Drowsiness may diminish after a few days of treatment and is considerably less of a problem with the newer antihistamines.
- **PREGNANCY** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity. Use in the latter part of the third trimester may cause adverse effects in neonates such as irritability, paradoxical excitability, and tremor.
  - **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.
  - **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe liver disease—increased risk of coma.
  - **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving or cycling); sedating effects enhanced by alcohol.

### • MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 21

- **Zaditen** (CD Pharma AB)

**Ketotifen (as Ketotifen fumarate) 200 microgram per 1 ml** Zaditen 1mg/5ml elixir sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM] £8.91 DT = £8.91

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 21

- **Zaditen** (CD Pharma AB)

**Ketotifen (as Ketotifen fumarate) 1 mg** Zaditen 1mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £7.53

## Promethazine hydrochloride

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic relief of allergy such as hay fever and urticaria | Insomnia associated with urticaria and pruritus**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 2–4 years: 5 mg twice daily, alternatively 5–15 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night
- Child 5–9 years: 5–10 mg twice daily, alternatively 10–25 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night
- Child 10–17 years: 10–20 mg 2–3 times a day, alternatively 25 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night, increased if necessary to 25 mg twice daily

### Sedation (short-term use)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 2–4 years: 15–20 mg
- Child 5–9 years: 20–25 mg
- Child 10–17 years: 25–50 mg

### Sedation in intensive care

- BY MOUTH, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 1 month–11 years: 0.5–1 mg/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 25 mg), adjusted according to response
- Child 12–17 years: 25–50 mg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response

### Nausea | Vomiting | Vertigo | Labyrinthine disorders | Motion sickness

- BY MOUTH
- Child 2–4 years: 5 mg, to be taken at bedtime on night before travel, repeat following morning if necessary
- Child 5–9 years: 10 mg, to be taken at bedtime on night before travel, repeat following morning if necessary
- Child 10–17 years: 20–25 mg, to be taken at bedtime on night before travel, repeat following morning if necessary

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use for sedation in children under 2 years.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

**MHRA/CHM ADVICE (MARCH 2008 AND FEBRUARY 2009) OVER-THE-COUNTER COUGH AND COLD MEDICINES FOR CHILDREN** Children under 6 years should not be given over-the-counter cough and cold medicines containing promethazine.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Neonate (due to significant antimuscarinic activity) · should not be given to children under 2 years, except on specialist advice, because the safety of such use has not been established
- **CAUTIONS**

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Epilepsy · pyloroduodenal obstruction · severe coronary artery disease · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · urinary retention

**SPECIFIC CAUTIONS**

  - With intravenous use Avoid extravasation with intravenous injection
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, sedating
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

Arrhythmia · blood disorder · confusion · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · headache · hypotension · jaundice · movement disorders · palpitations · photosensitivity reaction · urinary retention · vision blurred

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

  - With oral use Agranulocytosis · angle closure glaucoma · anticholinergic syndrome · anxiety · insomnia · leucopenia · nasal congestion · nausea · rash · seizure · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus · tremor · vomiting
  - With parenteral use Appetite decreased · epigastric discomfort · fatigue · haemolytic anaemia · hypersensitivity · muscle spasms · nightmare · restlessness · skin reactions
- **PREGNANCY** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity. Use in the latter part of the third trimester may cause adverse effects in neonates such as irritability, paradoxical excitability, and tremor.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe liver disease—increased risk of coma.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect the performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); sedating effects enhanced by alcohol.

- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

**Dental practitioners' formulary**

Promethazine Hydrochloride Tablets 10 mg or 25 mg may be prescribed.

Promethazine Hydrochloride Oral Solution (elixir) 5 mg/5 mL may be prescribed.

- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Promethazine is less suitable for prescribing for sedation.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Prescription only medicine restriction does not apply to promethazine hydrochloride injection where administration is for saving life in emergency.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Solution for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sulfites

- ▶ **Phenergan** (Sanofi)

Promethazine hydrochloride 25 mg per 1 mL Phenergan 25mg/1mL solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule (PoM) £6.74

**Oral solution**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sulfites

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- ▶ **Phenergan** (Sanofi)

Promethazine hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 mL Phenergan 5mg/5mL elixir sugar-free | 100 mL (P) £2.85 DT = £2.85

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- ▶ **Promethazine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

Promethazine hydrochloride 10 mg Promethazine hydrochloride 10mg tablets | 56 tablet (PoM) £2.96 DT = £2.96

Promethazine hydrochloride 25 mg Promethazine hydrochloride 25mg tablets | 56 tablet (P) £4.00 DT = £4.65

- ▶ **Phenergan** (Sanofi)

Promethazine hydrochloride 25 mg Phenergan 25mg tablets | 56 tablet (P) £4.65 DT = £4.65

- ▶ **Sominex** (Teva UK Ltd)

Promethazine hydrochloride 20 mg Sominex 20mg tablets | 8 tablet (P) £1.89 | 16 tablet (P) £2.69

## VACCINES > ALLERGEN-TYPE

### Bee venom extract

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Hypersensitivity to bee venom**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

**DESENSITISING VACCINES**

In view of concerns about the safety of desensitising vaccines, it is recommended that they are used by specialists and only for the following indications:

- seasonal allergic hay fever (caused by pollen) that has not responded to anti-allergic drugs;
- hypersensitivity to wasp and bee venoms.

Desensitising vaccines should generally be avoided or used with particular care in patients with asthma.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Children under 5 years · consult product literature

- **CAUTIONS** Consult product literature

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: bee venom extract

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Life-threatening hypersensitivity reactions can occur. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation must be immediately available. Manufacturer advises monitoring for at least 1 hour after injection.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Each set of allergen extracts usually contains vials for the administration of graded amounts of allergen to patients undergoing hyposensitisation. Maintenance sets containing vials at the highest strength are also available. Product literature must be consulted for details of allergens, vial strengths, and administration.

- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**NICE decisions**

- ▶ **Pharmalgen® for bee and wasp venom allergy** (February 2012) NICE TA246

Pharmalgen® is an option for the treatment of IgE-mediated bee and wasp venom allergy in those who have had:

- a severe systemic reaction to bee or wasp venom;
- a moderate systemic reaction to bee or wasp venom and who have a raised baseline serum-tryptase concentration, a high risk of future stings, or anxiety about future stings.

Treatment with Pharmalgen® should be initiated and monitored in a specialist centre experienced in venom immunotherapy.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA246](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA246)

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

- ▶ **Bee Venom** (ALK-Abello Ltd)

**Bee venom 120 nanogram** Pharmalgen Bee Venom 120nanogram powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial (PoM) (S)

**Bee venom 1.2 microgram** Pharmalgen Bee Venom 1.2microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial (PoM) (S)

**Bee venom 12 microgram** Pharmalgen Bee Venom 12microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial (PoM) (S)

**Bee venom 120 microgram** Pharmalgen Bee Venom maintenance set 120microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 4 vial (PoM) £150.00

## Grass pollen extract

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Treatment of seasonal allergic hay fever due to grass pollen in patients who have failed to respond to anti-allergy drugs**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

**Treatment of seasonal allergic hay fever due to grass pollen in patients who have failed to respond to anti-allergy drugs (initiated under specialist supervision)**

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 5-17 years: 1 tablet daily, treatment to be started at least 4 months before start of pollen season and continue for up to 3 years

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

**DESENSITISING VACCINES**

In view of concerns about the safety of desensitising vaccines, it is recommended that they are used by specialists and only for the following indications:

- seasonal allergic hay fever (caused by pollen) that has not responded to anti-allergic drugs;
  - hypersensitivity to wasp and bee venoms.
- Desensitising vaccines should generally be avoided or used with particular care in patients with asthma.



- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Children under 5 years - consult product literature
- **CAUTIONS** Consult product literature
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: grass pollen extract
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**  
**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Hypersensitivity reactions to immunotherapy can be life-threatening; bronchospasm usually develops within 1 hour and anaphylaxis within 30 minutes of injection. Therefore, cardiopulmonary resuscitation must be immediately available and patients need to be monitored for at least 1 hour after injection. If symptoms or signs of hypersensitivity develop (e.g. rash, urticaria, bronchospasm, faintness), **even when mild**, the patient should be observed until these have resolved completely.
- **PREGNANCY** Should be avoided in pregnant women—consult product literature.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** The first dose of grass pollen extract should be (*Grazax*®) should be taken under medical supervision and the patient should be monitored for 20–30 minutes.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Oral lyophilisates should be placed under the tongue and allowed to disperse. Advise patient not to swallow for 1 minute, or eat or drink for 5 minutes after taking the tablet. The first should be taken under medical supervision and the patient should be monitored for 20–30 minutes.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Each set of allergen extracts usually contains vials for the administration of graded amounts of allergen to patients undergoing hyposensitisation. Maintenance sets containing vials at the highest strength are also available. Product literature must be consulted for details of allergens, vial strengths, and administration.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer oral lyophilisates.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**  
There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Suspension for injection

- **Pollinex Grasses + Rye** (Allergy Therapeutics (UK) Ltd)  
Pollinex Grasses + Rye suspension for injection treatment and extension course vials | 4 vial [PoM] £450.00

#### Oral lyophilisate

- **Grazax** (ALK-Abello Ltd)  
Phleum pratense 75000 SQ-T. Grazax 75,000 SQ-T oral lyophilisates sugar-free | 30 tablet [PoM] £80.12

## Tree pollen extract

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment of seasonal allergic hay fever due to tree pollen in patients who have failed to respond to anti-allergy drugs**

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Child: (consult product literature)

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

#### DESENSITISING VACCINES

In view of concerns about the safety of desensitising vaccines, it is recommended that they are used by specialists and only for the following indications:

- seasonal allergic hay fever (caused by pollen) that has not responded to anti-allergic drugs;
- hypersensitivity to wasp and bee venoms.

Desensitising vaccines should generally be avoided or used with particular care in patients with asthma.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Children under 5 years - consult product literature
- **CAUTIONS** Consult product literature
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tree pollen extract
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**  
**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Hypersensitivity reactions to immunotherapy can be life-threatening. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation must be immediately available and patients need to be monitored for at least 1 hour after injection. If symptoms or signs of hypersensitivity develop (e.g. rash, urticaria, bronchospasm, faintness), **even when mild**, the patient should be observed until these have resolved completely.
- **PREGNANCY** Should be avoided in pregnant women—consult product literature.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Each set of allergen extracts usually contains vials for the administration of graded amounts of allergen to patients undergoing hyposensitisation. Maintenance sets containing vials at the highest strength are also available. Product literature must be consulted for details of allergens, vial strengths, and administration.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**  
There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Suspension for injection

- **Pollinex Trees** (Allergy Therapeutics (UK) Ltd)  
Pollinex Trees No 3 suspension for injection 1ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £  
Pollinex Trees No 2 suspension for injection 1ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £  
Pollinex Trees No 1 suspension for injection 1ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £  
Pollinex Trees suspension for injection treatment and extension course vials | 4 vial [PoM] £450.00

## Wasp venom extract

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Hypersensitivity to wasp venom**

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Child: (consult product literature)

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

#### DESENSITISING VACCINES

In view of concerns about the safety of desensitising vaccines, it is recommended that they are used by specialists and only for the following indications:

- seasonal allergic hay fever (caused by pollen) that has not responded to anti-allergic drugs;
- hypersensitivity to wasp and bee venoms.

Desensitising vaccines should generally be avoided or used with particular care in patients with asthma.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Children under 5 years - consult product literature
- **CAUTIONS** Consult product literature
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: wasp venom extract
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Hypersensitivity reactions to wasp venom extracts can be life-threatening; cardiopulmonary resuscitation must be immediately available and patients need to be monitored for at least 1 hour after injection. If symptoms or signs of hypersensitivity develop (e.g. rash, urticaria, bronchospasm, faintness), **even when mild**, the patient should be observed until these have resolved completely.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Each set of allergen extracts usually contains vials for the administration of graded amounts of allergen to patients undergoing hyposensitisation. Maintenance sets containing vials at the highest strength are also available. Product literature must be consulted for details of allergens, vial strengths, and administration.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- ▶ **Pharmalgen<sup>®</sup>** for bee and wasp venom allergy (February 2012) NICE TA246  
*Pharmalgen<sup>®</sup>* is an option for the treatment of IgE-mediated bee and wasp venom allergy in those who have had:
  - a severe systemic reaction to bee or wasp venom;
  - a moderate systemic reaction to bee or wasp venom and who have a raised baseline serum-tryptase concentration, a high risk of future stings, or anxiety about future stings.
 Treatment with *Pharmalgen<sup>®</sup>* should be initiated and monitored in a specialist centre experienced in venom immunotherapy.  
[www.nice.org.uk/TA246](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA246)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Powder and solvent for solution for injection

- ▶ **Wasp Venom** (ALK-Abello Ltd)  
Wasp venom 120 nanogram Pharmalgen Wasp Venom 120nanogram powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] [Σ]
- Wasp venom 1.2 microgram Pharmalgen Wasp Venom 1.2microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] [Σ]
- Wasp venom 12 microgram Pharmalgen Wasp Venom 12microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] [Σ]
- Wasp venom 120 microgram Pharmalgen Wasp Venom maintenance set 120microgram vaccine vaccine powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 4 vial [PoM] £150.00

## 2.1 Angioedema

**Other drugs used for Angioedema** Adrenaline/epinephrine, p. 136

### DRUGS USED IN HEREDITARY ANGIOEDEMA > COMPLEMENT REGULATORY PROTEINS

#### C1-esterase inhibitor

05-Dec-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### BERINERT<sup>®</sup>

##### Acute attacks of hereditary angioedema (under expert supervision)

- ▶ BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: 20 units/kg

##### Short-term prophylaxis of hereditary angioedema before dental, medical, or surgical procedures (under expert supervision)

- ▶ BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: 15–30 units/kg (max. per dose 1000 units) for 1 dose, to be administered less than 6 hours before procedure

#### CINRYZE<sup>®</sup>

##### Acute attacks of hereditary angioedema (under expert supervision)

- ▶ BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 2–11 years (body-weight 10–25 kg): 500 units for 1 dose, dose may be repeated if necessary after 60 minutes
- ▶ Child 2–11 years (body-weight 26 kg and above): 1000 units for 1 dose, dose may be repeated if necessary after 60 minutes
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1000 units for 1 dose, dose may be repeated if necessary after 60 minutes (or sooner for patients experiencing laryngeal attacks or if treatment initiation is delayed)

##### Short-term prophylaxis of hereditary angioedema before dental, medical, or surgical procedures (under expert supervision)

- ▶ BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 2–11 years (body-weight 10–25 kg): 500 units for 1 dose, to be administered up to 24 hours before procedure
- ▶ Child 2–11 years (body-weight 26 kg and above): 1000 units for 1 dose, to be administered up to 24 hours before procedure
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1000 units for 1 dose, to be administered up to 24 hours before procedure

##### Long-term prophylaxis of severe, recurrent attacks of hereditary angioedema where acute treatment is inadequate, or when oral prophylaxis is inadequate or not tolerated (under expert supervision)

- ▶ BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 500 units every 3–4 days, dose and dosing interval to be adjusted according to response
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1000 units every 3–4 days, interval between doses to be adjusted according to response

- **CAUTIONS** Vaccination against hepatitis A and hepatitis B may be required

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Dizziness · dyspnoea · flushing · headache · hypersensitivity · hypertension · hypotension · nausea · tachycardia · thrombosis (with high doses) · urticaria

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential.

#### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

**CINRYZE<sup>®</sup>** For *slow intravenous injection*, reconstitute (with solvent provided) to a concentration of 100 units/mL; give at a rate of 1 mL/minute.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** C1-esterase inhibitor is prepared from human plasma.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### CINRYZE<sup>®</sup>

##### All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (October 2017) that C1-esterase inhibitor (*Cinryze<sup>®</sup>*) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales for the treatment and pre-procedure prevention of angioedema attacks in patients 2 years old and above, with hereditary angioedema (HAE); routine prevention of angioedema attacks in patients 6 years old and above, with severe and recurrent attacks of HAE, who are intolerant to or insufficiently protected by oral prevention treatments, or patients who are inadequately managed with repeated acute treatment.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

▶ **Berinert P** (CSL Behring UK Ltd)

**C1-esterase inhibitor 500 unit** Berinert 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £550.00

**C1-esterase inhibitor 1500 unit** Berinert 1,500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,650.00

▶ **Cinryze** (Shire Pharmaceuticals Ltd) ▼

**C1-esterase inhibitor 500 unit** Cinryze 500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 2 vial [PoM] £1,336.00

## 3 Conditions affecting sputum viscosity

**Other drugs used for Conditions affecting sputum viscosity** Acetylcysteine, p. 671

## MUCOLYTICS

### Carbocisteine

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Reduction of sputum viscosity**▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child 2–4 years: 62.5–125 mg 4 times a day
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 250 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 2.25 g daily in divided doses, then reduced to 1.5 g daily in divided doses, as condition improves

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

*Mucodyne Paediatric*® syrup 250 mg/5 mL has replaced the 125 mg/5 mL formulation—take care to ensure the appropriate dose is administered.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active peptic ulceration
- **CAUTIONS** History of peptic ulceration (may disrupt the gastric mucosal barrier)
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Gastrointestinal haemorrhage • skin reactions • Stevens-Johnson syndrome • vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid in first trimester.
- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include cherry, raspberry, cinnamon, or rum.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oral solution**▶ **Carbocisteine (Non-proprietary)**

**Carbocisteine 50 mg per 1 ml** Carbocisteine 250mg/5ml oral solution | 300 ml [PoM] £8.55 DT = £8.39

**Carbocisteine 75 mg per 1 ml** Carbocisteine 750mg/10ml oral solution 10ml sachets sugar free sugar-free | 15 sachet [PoM] £3.85 DT = £3.85

▶ **Mucodyne** (Sanofi)

**Carbocisteine 50 mg per 1 ml** Mucodyne Paediatric 250mg/5ml syrup | 125 ml [PoM] £12.60

Mucodyne 250mg/5ml syrup | 300 ml [PoM] £8.39 DT = £8.39

**Capsule**▶ **Carbocisteine (Non-proprietary)**

**Carbocisteine 375 mg** Carbocisteine 375mg capsules | 120 capsule [PoM] £18.98 DT = £4.84

▶ **Mucodyne** (Sanofi)

**Carbocisteine 375 mg** Mucodyne 375mg capsules | 120 capsule [PoM] £18.98 DT = £4.84

## 3.1 Cystic fibrosis

### Cystic fibrosis

10-Nov-2017

**Description of condition**

Cystic fibrosis is a genetic disorder affecting the lungs, pancreas, liver, intestine, and reproductive organs. The main clinical signs are pulmonary disease, with recurrent infections and the production of copious viscous sputum, and malabsorption due to pancreatic insufficiency. Other complications include hepatobiliary disease, osteoporosis, cystic fibrosis-related diabetes, and distal intestinal obstruction syndrome.

**Aims of treatment**

The aim of treatment includes preventing and managing lung infections, loosening and removing thick, sticky mucus from the lungs, preventing or treating intestinal obstruction, and providing sufficient nutrition and hydration.

Lung function is a key predictor of life expectancy in people with cystic fibrosis and optimising lung function is a major aim of care.

**Non-drug treatment**

Specialist physiotherapists should assess patients with cystic fibrosis and provide advice on airway clearance, nebuliser use, musculoskeletal disorders, physical activity, and urinary incontinence. The importance of airway clearance techniques should be discussed with patients and their parents or carers and appropriate training provided. Patients should be advised that regular exercise improves both lung function and overall fitness.

**Drug treatment**

Treatment for cystic fibrosis lung disease is based on the prevention of lung infection and the maintenance of lung function. [EvGr] In patients with cystic fibrosis, who have clinical evidence of lung disease, the frequency of routine review should be based on their clinical condition, but children should be reviewed at least every 8 weeks. More frequent review is required immediately after diagnosis and during early life. ⚠

**Mucolytics**

[EvGr] Patients with cystic fibrosis who have evidence of lung disease should be offered a mucolytic. Dornase alfa p. 186 is the first choice mucolytic [unlicensed in children under 5 years of age]. If there is an inadequate response, dornase alfa p. 186 and hypertonic sodium chloride p. 170, or hypertonic sodium chloride alone should be considered.

Mannitol dry powder for inhalation p. 141 should be considered for children [unlicensed indication] who cannot use dornase alfa and hypertonic sodium chloride because of ineligibility, intolerance, or inadequate response. ⚠

Lumacaftor with ivacaftor p. 187 is not recommended for treating cystic fibrosis within its marketing authorisation (see lumacaftor with ivacaftor National funding/access decisions).

**Pulmonary infection**  
***Staphylococcus aureus***

[EvGr] Flucloxacillin p. 345 [unlicensed indication] should be offered for prophylaxis against respiratory *Staphylococcus aureus* infection in children from the point of diagnosis up to 3 years of age. Continuing prophylaxis in children up to 6 years of age should also be considered. An alternative oral antibacterial should be given in children allergic to penicillin.

In children who are already taking prophylaxis and have a respiratory sample culture that is positive for *Staph. aureus*, prophylaxis adherence should be reviewed and antibacterial

treatment started. A prophylactic antibacterial should be restarted after treatment (consult local protocol).

Patients who are not taking prophylaxis and have a new *Staph. aureus* infection can be given an oral anti-*Staph. aureus* antibacterial, if they are clinically well. If they are clinically unwell and have pulmonary disease, oral or intravenous (depending on infection severity) broad-spectrum antibacterials with activity against *Staph. aureus* should be given (consult local protocol).

A long-term antibacterial should be considered to suppress **chronic** *Staph. aureus* respiratory infection in patients whose pulmonary disease is stable. In patients with chronic *Staph. aureus* respiratory infection who become clinically unwell with pulmonary disease, oral or intravenous (depending on infection severity) broad-spectrum antibacterials with activity against *Staph. aureus* should be given. In those patients with new evidence of **meticillin-resistant** *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) respiratory infection (with or without pulmonary exacerbation), specialist microbiological advice should be sought.

Antibacterials should not be routinely used to suppress chronic MRSA in patients with stable pulmonary disease.

If a patient with cystic fibrosis and chronic MRSA respiratory infection becomes unwell with a pulmonary exacerbation or shows a decline in pulmonary function, specialist microbiological advice should be sought. ⚠

#### *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*

**EvGr** If a patient with cystic fibrosis develops a new *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection, eradication therapy with a course of oral antibacterial should be started (by intravenous injection, if they are clinically unwell), in combination with an inhaled antibacterial. An extended course of oral and inhaled antibacterial should follow (consult local protocol).

If eradication therapy is not successful, sustained treatment with an inhaled antibacterial should be offered. Nebulised colistimethate sodium p. 346 should be considered as first-line treatment (but see also colistimethate sodium by dry powder inhalation National funding/access decisions).

In patients with **chronic** *Ps. aeruginosa* infection (when treatment has not eradicated the infection) who become clinically unwell with pulmonary exacerbations, an oral antibacterial or a combination of two intravenous antibacterial drugs of different classes (depending on infection severity) should be used. Changing antibacterial regimens should be considered to treat exacerbations (consult local protocol).

Nebulised aztreonam p. 332, nebulised tobramycin p. 313, or tobramycin dry powder for inhalation p. 313 [unlicensed indication in child under 6 years] (see tobramycin National funding/access decisions) should be considered for those who are deteriorating despite regular inhaled colistimethate sodium p. 346. ⚠

#### *Burkholderia cepacia* complex

**EvGr** Patients who develop a new *Burkholderia cepacia* complex infection, should be given eradication therapy with a combination of intravenous antibacterial drugs (specialist microbiological advice should be sought on the choice of antibacterials). ⚠ There is no evidence to support using antibacterials to suppress **chronic** *Burkholderia cepacia* complex infection in patients with cystic fibrosis who have stable pulmonary status.

**EvGr** Specialist microbiological advice should be sought for patients with chronic *Burkholderia cepacia* complex infection (when treatment has not eradicated the infection) and who become clinically unwell with a pulmonary disease exacerbation.

An inhaled antibacterial should be considered for those who have chronic *Burkholderia cepacia* complex infection and declining pulmonary status; treatment should be stopped if there is no observed benefit. ⚠

#### *Haemophilus influenzae*

**EvGr** *Haemophilus influenzae* infection in the absence of clinical evidence of pulmonary infection should be treated with an appropriate oral antibacterial drug. In those who are unwell with clinical evidence of pulmonary infection, an appropriate antibacterial should be given by mouth or intravenously depending on the severity of the illness (consult local protocol). ⚠

#### *Non-tuberculous mycobacteria*

**EvGr** Non-tuberculous mycobacterial eradication therapy should be considered for patients with cystic fibrosis who are clinically unwell and whose pulmonary disease has not responded to other recommended treatments. Specialist microbiological advice should be sought on the choice of antibacterial and on the duration of treatment. ⚠

#### *Aspergillus fumigatus* complex

**EvGr** Treatment with an antifungal drug should only be considered to suppress **chronic** *Aspergillus fumigatus* complex respiratory infection in patients with declining pulmonary status. Specialist microbiological advice should be sought on the choice of antifungal drug. ⚠

#### Unidentified infections

**EvGr** An oral or intravenous (depending on the exacerbation severity) broad-spectrum antibacterial should be used for patients who have a pulmonary disease exacerbation and no clear cause. If a causative pathogen is identified, an appropriate treatment should be selected (consult local protocol). ⚠

#### Immunomodulatory drugs

**EvGr** Long-term treatment with azithromycin p. 329 [unlicensed indication], at an immunomodulatory dose, should be offered to patients with deteriorating lung function or repeated pulmonary exacerbations. In those patients with continued deterioration in lung function or continuing pulmonary exacerbations, azithromycin should be discontinued and the use of an oral corticosteroid considered. ⚠

#### Nutrition and exocrine pancreatic insufficiency

**EvGr** A cystic fibrosis specialist dietitian should offer advice on optimal nutrition.

Pancreatin p. 72 should be offered to patients with exocrine pancreatic insufficiency. Dose should be adjusted as needed to minimise any symptoms or signs of malabsorption (see Exocrine pancreatic insufficiency p. 71). An acid-suppressing drug, such as an H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonist or a proton pump inhibitor [unlicensed indications] can be considered for patients who have persistent symptoms or signs of malabsorption. ⚠

#### Distal intestinal obstruction syndrome

**EvGr** Oral or intravenous fluids should be offered to ensure adequate hydration for patients with distal intestinal obstruction syndrome. Meglumine amidotrizoate with sodium amidotrizoate solution p. 36 (orally or via an enteral tube) should be considered as first-line treatment for distal intestinal obstruction syndrome. An iso-osmotic polyethylene glycol and electrolyte solution (macrogols) (orally or via an enteral tube) can be considered as a second-line treatment. Surgery is a last resort, if prolonged treatment with a polyethylene glycol solution is not effective. Suspected distal intestinal obstruction syndrome should be managed in a specialist cystic fibrosis centre. ⚠

#### Liver disease

**EvGr** If liver function blood tests are abnormal in patients with cystic fibrosis, ursodeoxycholic acid p. 65 [unlicensed indication] can be given until liver function is restored. ⚠

#### Bone mineral density

**EvGr** Patients should be monitored for cystic fibrosis-related low bone mineral density. ⚠

**Cystic fibrosis-related diabetes**

**EvGr** Patients should be monitored for cystic fibrosis-related diabetes. 

**Useful Resources**

Cystic fibrosis: diagnosis and management. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. NICE guideline 78. October 2017  
[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/NG78](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/NG78)

**MUCOLYTICS****Dornase alfa**

(Phosphorylated glycosylated recombinant human deoxyribonuclease 1 (rhDNase))

- **DRUG ACTION** Dornase alfa is a genetically engineered version of a naturally occurring human enzyme which cleaves extracellular deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA).

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Management of cystic fibrosis patients with a forced vital capacity (FVC) of greater than 40% of predicted to improve pulmonary function**

- **BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION**
- Child 5–17 years: 2500 units once daily, administered by jet nebuliser

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- Dornase alfa 1000 units is equivalent to 1 mg

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Chest pain · conjunctivitis · dyspepsia · dysphonia · dyspnoea · fever · increased risk of infection · skin reactions
- **PREGNANCY** No evidence of teratogenicity; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount probably too small to be harmful—manufacturer advises caution.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Dornase alfa is administered by inhalation using a jet nebuliser, usually once daily at least 1 hour before physiotherapy; however, alternate-day therapy may be as effective as daily treatment.  
 For use undiluted with jet nebulisers only; ultrasonic nebulisers are unsuitable.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Not all children benefit from treatment with dornase alfa; improvement occurs within 2 weeks, but in more severely affected children a trial of 6–12 weeks may be required.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Dornase alfa for cystic fibrosis [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/dornase-alfa-for-cystic-fibrosis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/dornase-alfa-for-cystic-fibrosis)

**● MEDICAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Nebuliser liquid**

- **Pulmozyme** (Roche Products Ltd)  
 Dornase alfa 1 mg per 1 ml Pulmozyme 2.5mg nebuliser liquid 2.5ml ampoules | 30 ampoule **[PoM]** £496.43 DT = £496.43

**Ivacaftor**

22-Mar-2017

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Cystic fibrosis (specialist use only)**

- **BY MOUTH**
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 25 kg and above): 150 mg every 12 hours

**DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS**

- Manufacturer advises reduce dose to 150 mg twice a week with concurrent use of potent inhibitors of CYP3A4.
- Manufacturer advises reduce dose to 150 mg once daily with concurrent use of moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Organ transplantation (no information available)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ivacaftor

**● SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Breast abnormalities · diarrhoea · dizziness · ear discomfort · headache · hearing impairment · rash · tympanic membrane hyperaemia
- **Uncommon** Gynaecomastia
- **Frequency not known** Cataract

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.

**● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Max. 150 mg once daily in moderate impairment; in severe impairment, manufacturer recommends use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—starting dose 150 mg on alternate days, dosing interval adjusted according to clinical response and tolerability.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Caution in severe impairment.

**● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- Manufacturer advises monitor liver function before treatment, every 3 months during the first year of treatment, then annually thereafter (more frequent monitoring should be considered in patients with a history of transaminase elevations).
- Manufacturer advises baseline and follow-up ophthalmic examinations in children.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets should be taken with fat-containing food.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Ivacaftor should be prescribed by a physician experienced in the treatment of cystic fibrosis.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer ivacaftor tablets.  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises that patients and their carers should be counselled on the effects on driving and skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness.

**● MEDICAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

- **Kalydeco** (Vertex Pharmaceuticals (UK) Ltd) ▼

**Ivacaftor 150 mg** Kalydeco 150mg tablets | 56 tablet **[PoM]**  
 £14,000.00



## Lumacaftor with ivacaftor

22-Nov-2016

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, ivacaftor p. 186.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment of cystic fibrosis in patients who are homozygous for the F508del mutation in the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) gene (under expert supervision)**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 400/250 mg every 12 hours

### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- Manufacturer advises reduce initial dose to 200/125 mg daily for the first week in those also taking a potent inhibitor of CYP3A4.

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Dose expressed as x/y mg of lumacaftor/ivacaftor.

- **CAUTIONS** Forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV<sub>1</sub>) less than 40% of the predicted normal value—additional monitoring required at initiation of treatment · pulmonary exacerbation—no information available

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ivacaftor · lumacaftor

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Breast abnormalities · diarrhoea · dizziness · ear discomfort · flatulence · headache · hearing impairment · menstrual cycle irregularities · nausea · rash · tympanic membrane hyperaemia · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Gynaecomastia · hepatic encephalopathy · hepatitis cholestatic · hypertension
- **Frequency not known** Cataract · chest pain

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution in severe impairment.

**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises reduce dose to 400/250 mg in the morning and 200/125 mg in the evening (600/375 mg total daily dose) in moderate impairment; reduce dose to 200/125 mg every 12 hours (400/250 mg total daily dose) in severe impairment.

- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** If the patient's genotype is unknown, a validated genotyping method should be performed to confirm the presence of the F508del mutation on both alleles of the CFTR gene before starting treatment.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Manufacturer advises monitor blood pressure periodically during treatment.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets should be taken with fat-containing food.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer tablets.

**Missed doses** Manufacturer advises if a dose is more than 6 hours late, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

### NICE decisions

- Lumacaftor with ivacaftor for treating cystic fibrosis homozygous for the F508del mutation (July 2016) NICE TA398 Lumacaftor with ivacaftor is **not** recommended, within its marketing authorisation, for treating cystic fibrosis in patients who are homozygous for the F508del mutation in the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) gene.

Patients whose treatment was started before this guidance was published may continue treatment until they (or their carers) and their clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA398](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA398)

### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (May 2016) that lumacaftor with ivacaftor (*Orkambi*®) is **not** recommended within NHS Scotland for the treatment of cystic fibrosis in patients who are homozygous for the F508del mutation in the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) gene.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

- **Orkambi** (Vertex Pharmaceuticals (UK) Ltd) ▼

Ivacaftor 125 mg, Lumacaftor 200 mg Orkambi 200mg/125mg tablets | 112 tablet **[P&M]** £8,000.00

## 4 Cough and congestion

### Aromatic inhalations, cough preparations and systemic nasal decongestants

#### Aromatic inhalations

Inhalations containing volatile substances such as eucalyptus oil are traditionally used to relieve congestion and ease breathing. Although the vapour may contain little of the additive it encourages deliberate inspiration of warm moist air which is often comforting. Boiling water should not be used owing to the risk of scalding.

Strong aromatic decongestants (applied as rubs or to pillows) are not recommended for infants under the age of 3 months. Sodium chloride 0.9% solution p. 589 given as nasal drops can be used to liquefy mucous secretions and relieve nasal congestion in infants and young children; administration before feeds may ease feeding difficulties caused by nasal congestion.

#### Cough preparations

##### Cough suppressants

Cough may be a symptom of an underlying disorder such as asthma, gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, or rhinitis, which should be addressed before prescribing cough suppressants. Cough may be associated with smoking or environmental pollutants. Cough can also result from bronchiectasis including that associated with cystic fibrosis; cough can also have a significant habit component. There is little evidence of any significant benefit from the use of cough suppressants in children with acute cough in ambulatory settings. Cough suppressants may cause sputum retention and this can be harmful in children with bronchiectasis.

The use of cough suppressants containing pholcodine p. 188 or similar opioid analgesics is not generally recommended in children and should be avoided in children under 6 years; the use of over-the-counter cough suppressants containing codeine phosphate p. 276 should be avoided in children under 12 years and in children of any age known to be CYP2D6 ultra-rapid metabolisers.

**Sedating antihistamines** are used as the cough suppressant component of many compound cough preparations on sale to the public; all tend to cause drowsiness which may reflect their main mode of action.

#### Demulcent and expectorant cough preparations

**Simple linctus** and other demulcent cough preparations containing soothing substances, such as syrup or glycerol, may temporarily relieve a dry irritating cough. These preparations have the advantage of being harmless and inexpensive and sugar-free versions are available.

**Expectorants** are claimed to promote expulsion of bronchial secretions, but there is no evidence that any drug can specifically facilitate expectoration.

**Compound cough preparations** for children are on sale to the public but should not be used in children under 6 years; the rationale for some is dubious. Care should be taken to give the correct dose and to not use more than one preparation at a time.

#### MHRA/CHM advice (March 2008 and February 2009)

Children under 6 years should not be given over-the-counter cough and cold medicines containing the following ingredients:

- brompheniramine, chlorphenamine maleate p. 178, diphenhydramine, doxylamine, promethazine, or triprolidine (antihistamines);
- dextromethorphan or pholcodine (cough suppressants);
- guaifenesin or ipecacuanha (expectorants);
- Phenylephrine hydrochloride p. 125, pseudoephedrine hydrochloride p. 696, ephedrine hydrochloride p. 695, oxymetazoline, or xylometazoline hydrochloride p. 696 (decongestants).

Over-the-counter cough and cold medicines can be considered for children aged 6–12 years after basic principles of best care have been tried, but treatment should be restricted to five days or less. Children should not be given more than 1 cough or cold preparation at a time because different brands may contain the same active ingredient; care should be taken to give the correct dose.

#### Nasal decongestants, systemic

Nasal congestion in children due to allergic or vasomotor rhinitis should be treated with oral antihistamines, topical nasal preparations containing corticosteroids, or topical decongestants.

There is little evidence to support the use of systemic decongestants in children.

Pseudoephedrine hydrochloride has few sympathomimetic effects, and is commonly combined with other ingredients (including antihistamines) in preparations intended for the relief of cough and cold symptoms.

### COUGH AND COLD PREPARATIONS > COUGH SUPPRESSANTS

#### Pholcodine

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

###### Dry cough

###### ► BY MOUTH USING LINCTUS

- Child 6–11 years: 2–5 mg 3–4 times a day
- Child 12–17 years: 5–10 mg 3–4 times a day

##### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

**MHRA/CHM ADVICE (MARCH 2008 AND FEBRUARY 2009) OVER-THE-COUNTER COUGH AND COLD MEDICINES FOR CHILDREN** Children under 6 years should not be given over-the-counter cough and cold medicines containing pholcodine (cough suppressant).

Over-the-counter cough and cold medicines can be considered for children aged 6–12 years after basic principles of best care have been tried, but treatment should be restricted to 5 days or less. Children should not be given more than 1 cough or cold preparation at a time because different brands may contain the same active ingredient; care should be taken to give the correct dose.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Bronchiectasis · bronchilitis · chronic bronchitis · patients at risk of respiratory failure

- **CAUTIONS** Asthma · chronic cough · persistent cough · productive cough
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: pholcodine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agitation · confusion · constipation · dizziness · drowsiness · gastrointestinal disorder · nausea · skin reactions · sputum retention · vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in hepatic impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in renal impairment. Avoid in severe renal impairment.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Pholcodine is not generally recommended for children. Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include orange. When prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Pholcodine Linctus, BP consists of pholcodine 5 mg/5 mL in a suitable flavoured vehicle, containing citric acid monohydrate 1% and Pholcodine Linctus, Strong, BP consists of pholcodine 10 mg/5 mL in a suitable flavoured vehicle, containing citric acid monohydrate 2%

##### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

###### Oral solution

###### ► Pholcodine (Non-proprietary)

**Pholcodine 1 mg per 1 mL** Pholcodine 5mg/5ml linctus | 200 mL [P] £1.23–£1.32 DT = £1.32 [CD5]

**Pholcodine 5mg/5ml linctus sugar free sugar-free** | 200 mL [P] £1.34 DT = £1.34 [CD5] sugar-free | 2000 mL [P] £13.40 [CD5]

**Pholcodine 2 mg per 1 mL** Pholcodine 10mg/5ml linctus strong sugar free sugar-free | 2000 mL [P] £9.88 DT = £9.88 [CD5]

**Pholcodine 10mg/5ml linctus strong** | 200 mL [P] £1.67 [CD5]

###### ► Covonia Dry Cough (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

**Pholcodine 1 mg per 1 mL** Covonia Dry Cough Sugar Free Formula 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 150 mL [P] £3.30 [CD5]

###### ► Galenphol (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

**Pholcodine 1 mg per 1 mL** Galenphol 5mg/5ml linctus sugar-free | 2000 mL [P] £8.50 [CD5]

**Pholcodine 2 mg per 1 mL** Galenphol Strong 10mg/5ml linctus sugar-free | 2000 mL [P] £9.88 DT = £9.88 [CD5]

###### ► Pavaacol-D (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Pholcodine 1 mg per 1 mL** Pavaacol-D 5mg/5ml mixture sugar-free | 150 mL [P] £1.69 [CD5] sugar-free | 300 mL [P] £2.55 [CD5]

### COUGH AND COLD PREPARATIONS > OTHER

#### Citric acid

##### (Formulated as Simple Linctus)

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

###### Cough

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years: 5–10 mL 3–4 times a day, this dose is for Simple Linctus, Paediatric, BP (0.625%)

###### Cough

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 5 mL 3–4 times a day, this dose is for Simple Linctus, BP (2.5%)

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include anise.

When prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Simple Linctus, Paediatric, BP consists of citric acid monohydrate 0.625% and Simple Linctus, BP consists of citric acid monohydrate 2.5%, both in a suitable vehicle with an anise flavour.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oral solution**► **Citric acid (Non-proprietary)**

**Citric acid monohydrate 6.25 mg per 1 ml** Simple linctus paediatric sugar free sugar-free | 2000 ml [GSL] £12.90

Care Simple linctus paediatric sugar free sugar-free | 200 ml [GSL] £1.29 DT = £1.29

Simple linctus paediatric | 200 ml [GSL] £1.05 DT = £1.05

**Citric acid monohydrate 25 mg per 1 ml** Simple linctus sugar free sugar-free | 200 ml [GSL] £1.25 DT = £0.92 sugar-free | 2000 ml [GSL] £9.20

Simple linctus | 200 ml [GSL] £0.96 DT = £0.93

**Citric acid 100 mg per 1 ml** Carbox oral solution 10ml sachets | 10 sachet [P] [X]

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Liquid**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

► **Benzoin tincture (Non-proprietary)**

**Balsamic acids 16.5 mg per 1 ml** Benzoin tincture | 500 ml [GSL] £9.95 DT = £9.95

**MENTHOL AND DERIVATIVES****Eucalyptus with menthol****INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Aromatic inhalation for relief of nasal congestion**

► BY INHALATION

► **Child:** Add one teaspoonful to a pint of hot, **not** boiling, water and inhale the vapour

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** When prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Menthol and Eucalyptus Inhalation, BP 1980 consists of racemethol or levomenthol 2 g, eucalyptus oil 10 mL, light magnesium carbonate 7 g, water to 100 mL.

Not recommended (applied as a rub or to pillows) for infants under the age of 3 months.

**PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION****Dental practitioners' formulary**

Menthol and Eucalyptus Inhalation BP, 1980 may be prescribed.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Inhalation vapour**► **Eucalyptus with menthol (Non-proprietary)**

**Menthol 20 mg per 1 ml, Magnesium carbonate light 70 mg per 1 ml, Eucalyptus oil 100 microlitre per 1 ml** Menthol and Eucalyptus inhalation | 100 ml [GSL] £1.38-£1.39 DT = £1.38

**RESINS****Benzoin tincture****(Friars' Balsam)****INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Aromatic inhalation for relief of nasal congestion**

► BY INHALATION

► **Child:** Add 5 mL to a pint of hot, **not** boiling, water and inhale the vapour; repeat after 4 hours if necessary

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Skin sensitisation
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Not recommended (applied as a rub or to pillows) for infants under 3 months.

When prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Benzoin Tincture, Compound, BP consists of balsamic acids approx. 4.5%.

**5 Respiratory depression, respiratory distress syndrome and apnoea****Respiratory stimulants****Respiratory stimulants**

Respiratory stimulants (analeptic drugs), such as caffeine citrate p. 190, reduce the frequency of neonatal apnoea, and the need for mechanical ventilation during the first 7 days of treatment. They are typically used in the management of very preterm neonates, and continued until a corrected gestational age of 34 to 35 weeks is reached (or longer if necessary). They should only be given under **expert supervision** in hospital; it is important to rule out any underlying disorder, such as seizures, hypoglycaemia, or infection, causing respiratory exhaustion before starting treatment with a respiratory stimulant.

**Pulmonary surfactants**

Pulmonary surfactants derived from animal lungs, beractant below and poractant alfa p. 190 are used to prevent and treat respiratory distress syndrome (hyaline membrane disease) in neonates and preterm neonates. Prophylactic use of a pulmonary surfactant may reduce the need for mechanical ventilation and is more effective than 'rescue treatment' in preterm neonates of 29 weeks or less corrected gestational age. Pulmonary surfactants may also be of benefit in neonates with meconium aspiration syndrome or intrapartum streptococcal infection. Pulmonary immaturity with surfactant deficit is the commonest reason for respiratory failure in the neonate, especially in those of less than 30 weeks corrected gestational age. Betamethasone p. 438 given to the mother (at least 12 hours but preferably 48 hours) before delivery substantially enhances pulmonary maturity in the neonate.

**PULMONARY SURFACTANTS****Beractant****INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Treatment of respiratory distress syndrome in preterm neonates, birth-weight over 700 g (specialist use only)**

► BY ENDOTRACHEAL TUBE

► Preterm neonate: 100 mg/kg, preferably administer within 8 hours of birth; dose may be repeated within 48 hours at intervals of at least 6 hours for up to 4 doses.

**Prophylaxis of respiratory distress syndrome in preterm neonates (specialist use only)**

► BY ENDOTRACHEAL TUBE

► Neonate up to 32 weeks corrected gestational age: 100 mg/kg, preferably administer within 15 minutes of birth; dose may be repeated within 48 hours at intervals of at least 6 hours for up to 4 doses.

continued →

# 190 Respiratory depression, respiratory distress syndrome and apnoea

BNFC 2018–2019

## DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Phospholipid 100 mg/kg is equivalent to a volume of 4 mL/kg.

- **CAUTIONS** Consult product literature
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Uncommon** Endotracheal tube obstruction
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Bradycardia · hypoxia

## MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Liquid

- ▶ **Survanta** (AbbVie Ltd)  
Phospholipids (as Beractant) 25 mg per 1 mL Survanta 200mg/8mL endotracheopulmonary suspension bottles | 1 bottle [\[PoM\]](#) £306.43

## Poractant alfa

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment of respiratory distress syndrome in neonates, birth weight over 700 g (specialist use only)**

▶ BY ENDOTRACHEAL TUBE

- ▶ Neonate: 100–200 mg/kg, then 100 mg/kg every 12 hours if required, maximum 300–400 mg/kg per course.

**Prophylaxis of respiratory distress syndrome (specialist use only)**

▶ BY ENDOTRACHEAL TUBE

- ▶ Neonate 24 weeks to 31 weeks corrected gestational age: 100–200 mg/kg, administer soon after birth, preferably within 15 minutes, then 100 mg/kg after 6–12 hours if required, then 100 mg/kg after 12 hours if required, and if neonate still intubated. Max 300–400 mg/kg per course.

- **CAUTIONS** Consult product literature
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Bradycardia · hypotension
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Hyperoxia

## MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Liquid

- ▶ **Curosulf** (Chiesi Ltd)  
Phospholipids (as Poractant alfa) 80 mg per 1 mL Curosulf 240mg/3mL endotracheopulmonary suspension vials | 1 vial [\[PoM\]](#) £547.40 (Hospital only)  
Curosulf 120mg/1.5mL endotracheopulmonary suspension vials | 1 vial [\[PoM\]](#) £281.64 (Hospital only)

## PHARMACOKINETICS

- ▶ Caffeine citrate is well absorbed when given orally.

- **UNLICENSED USE** [\[EvGr\]](#) Caffeine citrate loading doses in the BNF for children may differ to those in product literature [\[E\]](#).

## IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

### MHRA/CHM ADVICE: SAFE PRACTICE

From August 2013, all licensed preparations of caffeine are required to be labelled as caffeine citrate. To minimise the risk of dosing errors, **always state dose in terms of caffeine citrate when prescribing caffeine**. Some stock packaged as caffeine base.

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease · gastro-oesophageal reflux · rhythm disorder · seizure disorders
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: caffeine citrate
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · hyperglycaemia
- ▶ **Uncommon** Seizure
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Brain injury · deafness · failure to thrive · feeding intolerance · feeling jittery · gastrointestinal disorders · hypoglycaemia · increased cardiac output · irritability · regurgitation · restlessness
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution with impaired hepatic function.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution with impaired renal function—potential for accumulation of caffeine.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduced daily maintenance dose required—consult product literature.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
- ▶ [\[EvGr\]](#) The therapeutic range for plasma-caffeine concentration is usually 10–20 mg/litre (50–100 micromol/litre), but a concentration of 25–35 mg/litre (130–180 micromol/litre) may be required. Signs of toxicity only normally occur at concentrations greater than 50 mg/litre (260 micromol/litre). [\[D\]](#)
- ▶ Monitor for recurrence of apnoea for 1 week after stopping treatment.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Caffeine citrate injection may be administered *by mouth or by intravenous infusion*.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**  
**Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**  
The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised (September 2013) that *Peyona*® is accepted for use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of primary apnoea of premature newborns only whilst *Peyona*® is available at the price agreed in the patient access scheme.

## 5.1 Neonatal apnoea

### XANTHINES

## Caffeine citrate

24-Feb-2016

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Neonatal apnoea (specialist supervision in hospital)**

▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 20 mg/kg, administered over 30 minutes if given by intravenous infusion, then 5 mg/kg once daily, administered over 10 minutes if given by intravenous infusion, started 24 hours after initial dose; increased if necessary to 10 mg/kg daily.

## DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Caffeine citrate 2 mg = caffeine base 1 mg

## MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Caffeine citrate (Non-proprietary)**

**Caffeine citrate 10 mg per 1 mL** Caffeine citrate 10mg/1mL solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [\[PoM\]](#) £48.82

### Solution for infusion

- ▶ **Peyona** (Chiesi Ltd)

**Caffeine citrate 20 mg per 1 mL** Peyona 20mg/mL solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [\[PoM\]](#) £172.50 (Hospital only)

### Oral solution

- ▶ **Caffeine citrate (Non-proprietary)**

**Caffeine citrate 10 mg per 1 mL** Caffeine citrate 50mg/5mL oral solution | 5 mL [\[PoM\]](#) £25.22 DT = £25.22



# Chapter 4

## Nervous system

### CONTENTS

<b>1 Epilepsy and other seizure disorders</b>	page 191
1.1 Status epilepticus	221
<b>2 Mental health disorders</b>	225
2.1 Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder	225
2.2 Bipolar disorder and mania	232
2.3 Depression	235
2.4 Psychoses and schizophrenia	241
<b>3 Movement disorders</b>	255
3.1 Dystonias and other involuntary movements	256
<b>4 Nausea and labyrinth disorders</b>	259

<b>5 Pain</b>	page 269
5.1 Migraine	290
5.2 Neuropathic pain	293
<b>6 Sleep disorders</b>	293
6.1 Insomnia	293
<b>7 Substance dependence</b>	295
7.1 Nicotine dependence	296
7.2 Opioid dependence	299

## 1 Epilepsy and other seizure disorders

### Epilepsy

26-May-2017

#### Epilepsy control

The object of treatment is to prevent the occurrence of seizures by maintaining an effective dose of one or more antiepileptic drugs. Careful adjustment of doses is necessary, starting with low doses and increasing gradually until seizures are controlled or there are significant adverse effects.

When choosing an antiepileptic drug, the presenting epilepsy syndrome should first be considered. If the syndrome is not clear, the seizure type should determine the choice of treatment. Concomitant medication, co-morbidity, age, and sex should also be taken into account.

The frequency of administration is often determined by the plasma-drug half-life, and should be kept as low as possible to encourage better adherence. Most antiepileptics, when used in usual dosage, can be given twice daily. Lamotrigine p. 202, perampanel p. 205, phenobarbital p. 216 and phenytoin p. 205, which have long half-lives, can be given as a daily dose at bedtime. However, with large doses, some antiepileptics may need to be given three times daily to avoid adverse effects associated with high peak plasma-drug concentrations. Young children metabolise some antiepileptics more rapidly than adults and therefore may require more frequent doses and a higher amount per kilogram body-weight.

#### Management

When monotherapy with a first-line antiepileptic drug has failed, monotherapy with a second drug should be tried; the diagnosis should be checked before starting an alternative drug if the first drug showed lack of efficacy. The change from one antiepileptic drug to another should be cautious, slowly withdrawing the first drug only when the new regimen has been established. Combination therapy with two or more antiepileptic drugs may be necessary, but the concurrent use of antiepileptic drugs increases the risk of adverse effects and drug interactions. If combination therapy does not bring about worthwhile benefits, revert to the regimen (monotherapy or combination therapy) that provided the best balance between tolerability and efficacy. A single

antiepileptic drug should be prescribed wherever possible and will achieve seizure control for the majority of children.

**MHRA/CHM advice: Antiepileptic drugs: new advice on switching between different manufacturers' products for a particular drug (November 2013)**

The CHM has reviewed spontaneous adverse reactions received by the MHRA and publications that reported potential harm arising from switching of antiepileptic drugs in patients previously stabilised on a branded product to a generic. The CHM concluded that reports of loss of seizure control and/or worsening of side-effects around the time of switching between products could be explained as chance associations, but that a causal role of switching could not be ruled out in all cases. The following guidance has been issued to help minimise risk:

- Different antiepileptic drugs vary considerably in their characteristics, which influences the risk of whether switching between different manufacturers' products of a particular drug may cause adverse effects or loss of seizure control;
- Antiepileptic drugs have been divided into three risk-based categories to help healthcare professionals decide whether it is necessary to maintain continuity of supply of a specific manufacturer's product. These categories are listed below;
- If it is felt desirable for a patient to be maintained on a specific manufacturer's product this should be prescribed either by specifying a brand name, or by using the generic drug name and name of the manufacturer (otherwise known as the Marketing Authorisation Holder);
- This advice relates only to antiepileptic drug use for treatment of epilepsy; it does not apply to their use in other indications (e.g. mood stabilisation, neuropathic pain);
- Please report on a Yellow Card any suspected adverse reactions to antiepileptic drugs;
- Dispensing pharmacists should ensure the continuity of supply of a particular product when the prescription specifies it. If the prescribed product is unavailable, it may be necessary to dispense a product from a different manufacturer to maintain continuity of treatment of that antiepileptic drug. Such cases should be discussed and agreed with both the prescriber and patient (or carer);
- Usual dispensing practice can be followed when a specific product is not stated.



**Category 1**

**Phenytoin, carbamazepine p. 196, phenobarbital, primidone p. 217.** For these drugs, doctors are advised to ensure that their patient is maintained on a specific manufacturer's product.

**Category 2**

**Valproate, lamotrigine, perampanel, rufinamide, clobazam p. 218, clonazepam p. 219, oxcarbazepine p. 204, eslicarbazepine acetate, zonisamide p. 215, topiramate p. 212.** For these drugs, the need for continued supply of a particular manufacturer's product should be based on clinical judgement and consultation with the patient and/or carer taking into account factors such as seizure frequency and treatment history.

**Category 3**

**Levetiracetam p. 203, lacosamide p. 201, tiagabine p. 211, gabapentin p. 200, pregabalin, ethosuximide p. 198, vigabatrin p. 214.** For these drugs, it is usually unnecessary to ensure that patients are maintained on a specific manufacturer's product unless there are specific concerns such as patient anxiety, and risk of confusion or dosing errors.

**Antiepileptic hypersensitivity syndrome**

Antiepileptic hypersensitivity syndrome is a rare but potentially fatal syndrome associated with some antiepileptic drugs (carbamazepine, lacosamide, lamotrigine, oxcarbazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone, and rufinamide p. 207); rarely cross-sensitivity occurs between some of these antiepileptic drugs. Some other antiepileptics (eslicarbazepine acetate, stiripentol p. 210, and zonisamide) have a theoretical risk. The symptoms usually start between 1 and 8 weeks of exposure; fever, rash, and lymphadenopathy are most commonly seen. Other systemic signs include liver dysfunction, haematological, renal, and pulmonary abnormalities, vasculitis, and multi-organ failure. If signs or symptoms of hypersensitivity syndrome occur, the drug should be withdrawn immediately, the child should not be re-exposed, and expert advice should be sought.

**Risk of suicidal thoughts and behaviour**

The MHRA has advised (August 2008) that all antiepileptic drugs are associated with a small increased risk of suicidal thoughts and behaviour. Symptoms may occur as early as one week after starting treatment. Children and their parents or carers should be advised to seek medical advice if the child develops any mood changes, distressing thoughts, or feelings about suicide or harming themselves, and should be referred for appropriate treatment if necessary.

**Interactions**

Interactions between antiepileptics are complex and may increase toxicity without a corresponding increase in antiepileptic effect. Interactions are usually caused by hepatic enzyme induction or inhibition; displacement from protein binding sites is not usually a problem. These interactions are highly variable and unpredictable.

**Withdrawal**

Antiepileptic drugs should be withdrawn under specialist supervision. Avoid abrupt withdrawal, particularly of barbiturates and benzodiazepines, because this can precipitate severe rebound seizures. Reduction in dosage should be gradual and, in the case of barbiturates, withdrawal of the drug may take months.

The decision to withdraw antiepileptic drugs from a seizure-free child, and its timing, is often difficult and depends on individual circumstances. Even in children who have been seizure-free for several years, there is a significant risk of seizure recurrence on drug withdrawal.

Drugs should be gradually withdrawn over at least 2–3 months by reducing the daily dose by 10–25% at

intervals of 1–2 weeks. Benzodiazepines may need to be withdrawn over 6 months or longer.

In children receiving several antiepileptic drugs, only one drug should be withdrawn at a time.

**Monitoring**

Routine measurement of plasma concentrations of antiepileptic drugs is not usually justified, because the target concentration ranges are arbitrary and often vary between individuals. However, plasma-drug concentrations may be measured in children with worsening seizures, status epilepticus, suspected non-compliance, or suspected toxicity. Similarly, haematological and biochemical monitoring should not be undertaken unless clinically indicated.

Plasma concentration of some medications may change during pregnancy and monitoring may be required (see under *Pregnancy*).

**Driving**

If a driver has a seizure (of any type) they must stop driving immediately and inform the Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency (DVLA).

Patients who have had a first unprovoked epileptic seizure or a single isolated seizure must not drive for 6 months; driving may then be resumed, provided the patient has been assessed by a specialist as fit to drive and investigations do not suggest a risk of further seizures.

Patients with established epilepsy may drive a motor vehicle provided they are not a danger to the public and are compliant with treatment and follow up. To continue driving, these patients must be seizure-free for at least one year (or have a pattern of seizures established for one year where there is no influence on their level of consciousness or the ability to act); also, they must not have a history of unprovoked seizures.

Patients who have had a *seizure while asleep* are not permitted to drive for one year from the date of each seizure unless:

- a history or pattern of sleep seizures occurring **only** ever while asleep has been established over the course of at least one year from the date of the first sleep seizure; or
- an established pattern of purely asleep seizures can be demonstrated over the course of three years if the patient has previously had seizures whilst awake (or awake and asleep).

The DVLA recommends that patients should not drive during medication changes or withdrawal of antiepileptic drugs, and for 6 months after their last dose. If a seizure occurs due to a prescribed change or withdrawal of epilepsy treatment, the patient will have their driving license revoked for 1 year; relicensing may be considered earlier if treatment has been reinstated for 6 months and no further seizures have occurred.

**Pregnancy**

Young women of child-bearing potential should discuss with a specialist the impact of both epilepsy, and its treatment, on the outcome of pregnancy.

There is an increased risk of teratogenicity associated with the use of antiepileptic drugs (especially if used during the first trimester and particularly if the patient takes two or more antiepileptic drugs). Valproate is associated with the highest risk of serious developmental disorders (up to 30–40% risk) and congenital malformations (approx. 10% risk). Valproate must **not** be used in females of childbearing potential unless the conditions of the Pregnancy Prevention Programme are met and alternative treatments are ineffective or not tolerated; during pregnancy, it must not be used for epilepsy, unless it is the only possible treatment. There is also an increased risk of teratogenicity with phenytoin, primidone, phenobarbital, lamotrigine, and carbamazepine. Topiramate carries an increased risk of congenital malformations (including cleft palate,

hypospadias, and anomalies involving various body systems) if taken in the first trimester of pregnancy. There is not enough evidence to establish the risk of teratogenicity with other antiepileptic drugs.

Prescribers should also consider carefully the choice of antiepileptic therapy in pre-pubescent girls who may later become pregnant. Young women of child-bearing potential who take antiepileptic drugs should be given advice about the need for an effective contraception method to avoid unplanned pregnancy—for further information, see *Conception and contraception* in the individual drug monographs. Some antiepileptic drugs can reduce the efficacy of hormonal contraceptives, and the efficacy of some antiepileptics may be affected by hormonal contraceptives.

Young women who want to become pregnant should be referred to a specialist for advice in advance of conception. For some women, the severity of seizure or the seizure type may not pose a serious threat, and drug withdrawal may be considered; therapy may be resumed after the first trimester. If treatment with antiepileptic drugs must continue throughout pregnancy, then monotherapy is preferable at the lowest effective dose.

Once an unplanned pregnancy is discovered it is usually too late for changes to be made to the treatment regimen; the risk of harm to the mother and fetus from convulsive seizures outweighs the risk of continued therapy. The likelihood of a woman who is taking antiepileptic drugs having a baby with no malformations is at least 90%, and it is important that women do not stop taking essential treatment because of concern over harm to the fetus. To reduce the risk of neural tube defects, folate supplementation is advised before conception and throughout the first trimester. In the case of sodium valproate p. 208 and valproic acid p. 213 an urgent consultation is required to reconsider the benefits and risks of valproate therapy.

The concentration of antiepileptic drugs in the plasma can change during pregnancy. Doses of phenytoin, carbamazepine, and lamotrigine should be adjusted on the basis of plasma-drug concentration monitoring; the dose of other antiepileptic drugs should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis. Plasma-drug concentration monitoring during pregnancy is also useful to check compliance. Additionally, in patients taking topiramate or levetiracetam, it is recommended that fetal growth should be monitored. Women who have seizures in the second half of pregnancy should be assessed for eclampsia before any change is made to antiepileptic treatment. Status epilepticus should be treated according to the standard protocol.

Routine injection of vitamin K at birth minimises the risk of neonatal haemorrhage associated with antiepileptics.

Withdrawal effects in the newborn may occur with some antiepileptic drugs, in particular benzodiazepines and phenobarbital, and can take several days to diminish.

#### **Epilepsy and Pregnancy Register**

All pregnant women with epilepsy, whether taking medication or not, should be encouraged to notify the UK Epilepsy and Pregnancy Register (Tel: 0800 389 1248).

#### **Breast-feeding**

Young women taking antiepileptic monotherapy should generally be encouraged to breast-feed; if a woman is on combination therapy or if there are other risk factors, such as premature birth, specialist advice should be sought.

All infants should be monitored for sedation, feeding difficulties, adequate weight gain, and developmental milestones. Infants should also be monitored for adverse effects associated with the antiepileptic drug particularly with newer antiepileptics, if the antiepileptic is readily transferred into breast-milk causing high infant serum-drug concentrations (e.g. ethosuximide, lamotrigine, primidone, and zonisamide), or if slower metabolism in the infant

causes drugs to accumulate (e.g. phenobarbital and lamotrigine). Serum-drug concentration monitoring should be undertaken in breast-fed infants if suspected adverse reactions develop; if toxicity develops it may be necessary to introduce formula feeds to limit the infant's drug exposure, or to wean the infant off breast-milk altogether.

Primidone, phenobarbital, and the benzodiazepines are associated with an established risk of drowsiness in breast-fed babies and caution is required.

Withdrawal effects may occur in infants if a mother suddenly stops breast-feeding, particularly if she is taking phenobarbital, primidone, or lamotrigine.

#### **Focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation**

Carbamazepine p. 196 and lamotrigine p. 202 are the drugs of choice for focal seizures; levetiracetam p. 203, oxcarbazepine p. 204 and sodium valproate p. 208 can be considered if these are unsuitable. These drugs may also be used as adjunctive treatment. Other adjunctive options include clobazam p. 218, gabapentin p. 200, and topiramate p. 212. If adjunctive treatment is ineffective or not tolerated, a tertiary specialist should be consulted who may consider eslicarbazepine acetate, lacosamide p. 201, phenobarbital p. 216, phenytoin p. 205, pregabalin [unlicensed], tiagabine p. 211, vigabatrin p. 214, and zonisamide p. 215.

#### **Generalised seizures**

##### **Tonic-clonic seizures**

The drug of choice for newly diagnosed tonic-clonic seizures in children is sodium valproate (except in female patients, see *Valproate* below), or lamotrigine where sodium valproate is unsuitable (but may exacerbate myoclonic seizures). In children with established epilepsy with generalised tonic-clonic seizures only, lamotrigine may be prescribed as the first-line choice. Carbamazepine or oxcarbazepine can also be considered but may exacerbate myoclonic or absence seizures. Clobazam, lamotrigine, levetiracetam, sodium valproate, or topiramate may be used as adjunctive treatment if monotherapy is ineffective or not tolerated.

##### **Absence seizures**

Ethosuximide p. 198 and sodium valproate (except in female patients, see *Valproate* below) are the drugs of choice for absence seizures and syndromes; lamotrigine can be used if these are unsuitable, ineffective or not tolerated. Sodium valproate should be used as the first choice if there is a high risk of generalised tonic-clonic seizures. A combination of any two of these drugs may be used if monotherapy is ineffective. Second-line therapy includes clobazam, clonazepam p. 219, levetiracetam, topiramate or zonisamide which may be considered by a tertiary specialist if adjunctive treatment fails. Carbamazepine, gabapentin, oxcarbazepine, phenytoin, pregabalin, tiagabine, and vigabatrin are not recommended in absence seizures or syndromes.

##### **Myoclonic seizures**

Myoclonic seizures (myoclonic jerks) occur in a variety of syndromes, and response to treatment varies considerably. Sodium valproate is the drug of choice (except in female patients, see *Valproate* below); consider levetiracetam or topiramate if sodium valproate is unsuitable (but consider the less favourable side-effect profile of topiramate). A combination of two of these drugs may be used if monotherapy is ineffective or poorly tolerated. Second-line therapy includes clobazam, clonazepam, piracetam or zonisamide which should be prescribed under the supervision of a tertiary specialist. Carbamazepine, gabapentin, oxcarbazepine, phenytoin, pregabalin, tiagabine, and vigabatrin are not recommended for the treatment of myoclonic seizures.

**Tonic and atonic seizures**

Tonic or atonic seizures are treated with sodium valproate (except in female patients, see *Valproate* below); lamotrigine can be considered as adjunctive treatment if sodium valproate is ineffective or not tolerated. If adjunctive treatment fails, a tertiary specialist should be consulted who may consider rufinamide p. 207 or topiramate. Carbamazepine, gabapentin, oxcarbazepine, pregabalin, tiagabine, and vigabatrin are not recommended in atonic or tonic seizures.

**Epilepsy syndromes****Infantile spasms**

Vigabatrin is the drug of choice for infantile spasms associated with tuberous sclerosis. Corticosteroids, such as prednisolone p. 442 or tetracosactide p. 473, are second-line options if vigabatrin is ineffective. In spasms of other causes, vigabatrin, prednisolone or tetracosactide can be considered as first-line options. A tertiary specialist should be consulted before treating infantile spasms.

**Dravet syndrome**

Sodium valproate (except in female patients, see *Valproate* below) or topiramate is the treatment of choice in Dravet syndrome. Clobazam or stiripentol p. 210 may be considered as adjunctive treatment. Carbamazepine, gabapentin, lamotrigine, oxcarbazepine, phenytoin, pregabalin, tiagabine, and vigabatrin should not be used as they may exacerbate myoclonic seizures. A tertiary specialist should be involved in decisions regarding treatment of Dravet syndrome.

**Lennox-Gastaut syndrome**

Sodium valproate is the first-line drug for treating Lennox-Gastaut syndrome (except in female patients, see *Valproate* below); lamotrigine can be used as adjunctive treatment if sodium valproate is ineffective or not tolerated. Rufinamide and topiramate may be considered by tertiary epilepsy specialists. Carbamazepine, gabapentin, oxcarbazepine, pregabalin, tiagabine, and vigabatrin should not be used. Felbamate [unlicensed] may be used in tertiary specialist centres when all other treatment options have failed.

**Landau-Kleffner syndrome**

Always discuss with or refer to tertiary epilepsy specialists.

**Neonatal seizures**

Seizures can occur before delivery, but they are most common up to 24 hours after birth. Seizures in neonates occur as a result of biochemical disturbances, inborn errors of metabolism, hypoxic ischaemic encephalopathy, drug withdrawal, meningitis, stroke, cerebral haemorrhage or malformation, or severe jaundice (kernicterus).

Seizures caused by biochemical imbalance and those in neonates with inherited abnormal pyridoxine or biotin metabolism should be corrected by treating the underlying cause. Seizures caused by drug withdrawal following intra-uterine exposure are treated with a drug withdrawal regimen.

Phenobarbital can be used to manage neonatal seizures where there is a risk of recurrence; phenytoin is an alternative. Midazolam p. 223 and **rectal** paraldehyde p. 221 may also be useful in the management of acute neonatal seizures. Lidocaine hydrochloride p. 826 may be used if other treatments are unsuccessful; lidocaine hydrochloride should not be given to neonates who have received phenytoin infusion because of the risk of cardiac toxicity.

**Antiepileptic drugs****Carbamazepine and related antiepileptics**

Carbamazepine is a drug of choice for simple and complex focal seizures and is a first-line treatment option for generalised tonic-clonic seizures. It can be used as adjunctive treatment for focal seizures when monotherapy has been ineffective. It is essential to initiate carbamazepine

p. 196 therapy at a low dose and build this up slowly in small increments every 3–7 days. Carbamazepine may exacerbate tonic, atonic, myoclonic and absence seizures and is therefore not recommended if these seizures are present.

Oxcarbazepine p. 204 is not recommended in tonic, atonic, absence or myoclonic seizures due to the risk of seizure exacerbation.

**Ethosuximide**

Ethosuximide is a first-line treatment option for absence seizures, and may be used as adjunctive treatment when monotherapy has failed.

**Gabapentin**

Gabapentin p. 200 is used as adjunctive therapy for the treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation; it is licensed as monotherapy in children over 12 years. It is not recommended if tonic, atonic, absence or myoclonic seizures are present.

**Lamotrigine**

Lamotrigine p. 202 is an antiepileptic drug recommended as a first-line treatment for focal seizures and primary and secondary generalised tonic-clonic seizures. It is also licensed as monotherapy for typical absence seizures in children (but efficacy may not be maintained in all children). It may be tried as an adjunctive treatment for atonic and tonic seizures if first-line treatment has failed [unlicensed]. Myoclonic seizures may be exacerbated by lamotrigine and it can cause serious rashes; dose recommendations should be adhered to closely.

Lamotrigine is used either as sole treatment or as an adjunct to treatment with other antiepileptic drugs. Valproate increases plasma-lamotrigine concentration, whereas the enzyme-inducing antiepileptics reduce it; care is therefore required in choosing the appropriate initial dose and subsequent titration. When the potential for interaction is not known, treatment should be initiated with lower doses, such as those used with valproate.

**Levetiracetam and brivaracetam**

Levetiracetam p. 203 is used for monotherapy and adjunctive treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation, and for adjunctive treatment of myoclonic seizures in children with juvenile myoclonic epilepsy and primary generalised tonic-clonic seizures. Levetiracetam may be prescribed alone and in combination for the treatment of myoclonic seizures, and under specialist supervision for absence seizures [both unlicensed].

Brivaracetam p. 195 is used as adjunctive therapy in the treatment of partial-onset seizures with or without secondary generalisation.

**Phenobarbital and primidone**

Phenobarbital p. 216 is effective for tonic-clonic, focal seizures and neonatal seizures but may cause behavioural disturbances and hyperkinesia. It may be tried for atypical absence, atonic, and tonic seizures. For therapeutic purposes phenobarbital and *phenobarbital sodium* should be considered equivalent in effect. Rebound seizures may be a problem on withdrawal.

Primidone p. 217 is largely converted to phenobarbital and this is probably responsible for its antiepileptic action. It is used rarely in children. A low initial dose of primidone is essential.

**Phenytoin**

Phenytoin p. 205 is licensed for tonic-clonic and focal seizures but may exacerbate absence or myoclonic seizures and should be avoided if these seizures are present. It has a narrow therapeutic index and the relationship between dose and plasma-drug concentration is non-linear; small dosage increases in some patients may produce large increases in plasma concentration with acute toxic side-effects. Similarly, a few missed doses or a small change in drug absorption may result in a marked change in plasma-drug

concentration. Monitoring of plasma-drug concentration improves dosage adjustment.

When only parenteral administration is possible, fosphenytoin sodium p. 199, a pro-drug of phenytoin, may be convenient to give. Whereas phenytoin should be given intravenously only, fosphenytoin may also be given by intramuscular injection.

#### Rufinamide

Rufinamide p. 207 is licensed for the adjunctive treatment of seizures in Lennox-Gastaut syndrome. It may be considered by a tertiary specialist for the treatment of refractory tonic or atonic seizures [unlicensed].

#### Topiramate

Topiramate p. 212 can be given alone or as adjunctive treatment in generalised tonic-clonic seizures or focal seizures. It can also be used for absence, tonic and atonic seizures under specialist supervision and as an option in myoclonic seizures [all unlicensed]. Female patients should be fully informed of the risks related to the use of topiramate during pregnancy and the need to use effective contraception—for further information, see *Conception and contraception* and *Pregnancy* in the topiramate drug monograph.

#### Valproate

**Valproate** (as either sodium valproate p. 208 or valproic acid p. 213) is effective in controlling tonic-clonic seizures, particularly in primary generalised epilepsy. It is a drug of choice in primary generalised tonic-clonic seizures, focal seizures, generalised absences and myoclonic seizures, and can be tried in atypical absence seizures. It is recommended as a first-line option in atonic and tonic seizures. Valproate should generally be avoided in children under 2 years especially with other antiepileptics, but it may be required in infants with continuing epileptic tendency. Sodium valproate has widespread metabolic effects, and monitoring of liver function tests and full blood count is essential. Because of its high teratogenic potential, valproate must not be used in females of childbearing potential unless the conditions of the Pregnancy Prevention Programme are met and alternative treatments are ineffective or not tolerated. During pregnancy, it must not be used for epilepsy unless it is the only possible treatment. For further information see *Important safety information*, *Conception and contraception*, and *Pregnancy* in the sodium valproate and valproic acid drug monographs. Plasma-valproate concentrations are not a useful index of efficacy, therefore routine monitoring is unhelpful.

#### Zonisamide

Zonisamide p. 215 can be used as an adjunctive treatment for refractory focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation in children and adolescents aged 6 years and above. It can also be used under the supervision of a specialist for refractory absence and myoclonic seizures [unlicensed indications].

#### Benzodiazepines

Clobazam p. 218 may be used as adjunctive therapy in the treatment of generalised tonic-clonic and refractory focal seizures. It may be prescribed under the care of a specialist for refractory absence and myoclonic seizures. Clonazepam p. 219 may be prescribed by a specialist for refractory absence and myoclonic seizures, but its sedative side-effects may be prominent.

#### Other drugs

Acetazolamide p. 683, a carbonic anhydrase inhibitor, has a specific role in treating epilepsy associated with menstruation. Piracetam is used as adjunctive treatment for cortical myoclonus.

### Status epilepticus

#### Convulsive status epilepticus

Immediate measures to manage status epilepticus include positioning the child to avoid injury, supporting respiration including the provision of oxygen, maintaining blood pressure, and the correction of any hypoglycaemia. Pyridoxine hydrochloride p. 627 should be administered if the status epilepticus is caused by pyridoxine deficiency.

Seizures lasting 5 minutes should be treated urgently with buccal midazolam p. 223 or intravenous lorazepam p. 222 (repeated once after 10 minutes if seizures recur or fail to respond). Intravenous diazepam p. 220 is effective but it carries a high risk of venous thrombophlebitis (reduced by using an emulsion formulation of diazepam injection). Patients should be monitored for respiratory depression and hypotension.

#### Important

If, after initial treatment with benzodiazepines, seizures recur or fail to respond 25 minutes after onset, phenytoin sodium should be used, or if the child is on regular phenytoin p. 205, give phenobarbital sodium intravenously over 5 minutes; the paediatric intensive care unit should be contacted. Paraldehyde p. 221 can be given after starting phenytoin infusion.

If these measures fail to control seizures 45 minutes after onset, anaesthesia with thiopental sodium p. 221 should be instituted with full intensive care support.

**Phenytoin sodium** can be given by intravenous infusion over 20 minutes, followed by the maintenance dosage if appropriate.

Paraldehyde given rectally causes little respiratory depression and is therefore useful where facilities for resuscitation are poor.

#### Non-convulsive status epilepticus

The urgency to treat non-convulsive status epilepticus depends on the severity of the child's condition. If there is incomplete loss of awareness, oral antiepileptic therapy should be continued or restarted. Children who fail to respond to oral antiepileptic therapy or have complete lack of awareness can be treated in the same way as for convulsive status epilepticus, although anaesthesia is rarely needed.

#### Febrile convulsions

*Brief febrile convulsions* need no specific treatment; antipyretic medication (e.g. paracetamol p. 271), is commonly used to reduce fever and prevent further convulsions but evidence to support this practice is lacking.

*Prolonged febrile convulsions* (those lasting 5 minutes or longer), or *recurrent febrile convulsions* without recovery must be treated actively (as for convulsive status epilepticus).

Long-term anticonvulsant prophylaxis for febrile convulsions is rarely indicated.

### ANTIEPILEPTICS

#### Brivaracetam

13-Feb-2017

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Adjunctive therapy of partial-onset seizures with or without secondary generalisation**

- ▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child 16–17 years: Initially 25–50 mg twice daily, adjusted according to response; usual maintenance 25–100 mg twice daily

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anxiety · appetite decreased · constipation · cough · depression · dizziness · drowsiness ·

fatigue · increased risk of infection · insomnia · irritability · nausea · vertigo · vomiting

► **Uncommon** Aggression · psychotic disorder

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—limited information available.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises consider a starting dose of 25 mg twice daily in chronic liver disease; max. maintenance dose 75 mg twice daily in all stages of impairment.

● **TREATMENT CESSATION** Manufacturer advises avoid abrupt withdrawal—reduce daily dose in steps of 50 mg at weekly intervals, then reduce to 20 mg daily for a final week.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

► With intravenous use For intermittent *intravenous infusion*, manufacturer advises dilute in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Lactated Ringer's solution; give over 15 minutes.

► With oral use Manufacturer advises oral solution can be diluted in water or juice shortly before swallowing.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

Manufacturer advises if switching between oral therapy and intravenous therapy (for those temporarily unable to take oral medication), the total daily dose and the frequency of administration should be maintained.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Missed doses** Manufacturer advises if one or more doses are missed, a single dose should be taken as soon as possible and the next dose should be taken at the usual time.

**Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be cautioned on the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness.

● **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (July 2016) that brivaracetam (*Briviact*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland as adjunctive therapy in the treatment of partial-onset seizures with or without secondary generalisation in patients with refractory epilepsy. Treatment should be initiated by physicians who have appropriate experience in the treatment of epilepsy.

**All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions**

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (October 2016) that Brivaracetam (*Briviact*®) is recommended as an option for restricted use within NHS Wales. Brivaracetam (*Briviact*®) should be restricted to use in the treatment of patients with refractory epilepsy, who remain uncontrolled with, or are intolerant to, other adjunctive anti-epileptic medicines, within its licensed indication as adjunctive therapy in the treatment of partial-onset seizures (POS) with or without secondary generalisation in adult and adolescent patients from 16 years of age with epilepsy. Brivaracetam (*Briviact*®) is not recommended for use within NHS Wales outside of this subpopulation.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for injection**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Briviact** (UCB Pharma Ltd) ▼

**Brivaracetam 10 mg per 1 ml** Briviact 50mg/5ml solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM](#) £222.75

**Oral solution**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 8

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sorbitol

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Briviact** (UCB Pharma Ltd) ▼

**Brivaracetam 10 mg per 1 ml** Briviact 10mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM](#) £115.83 DT = £115.83

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 8, 25

► **Briviact** (UCB Pharma Ltd) ▼

**Brivaracetam 10 mg** Briviact 10mg tablets | 14 tablet [PoM](#) £34.64

**Brivaracetam 25 mg** Briviact 25mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM](#) £129.64

**Brivaracetam 50 mg** Briviact 50mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM](#) £129.64

**Brivaracetam 75 mg** Briviact 75mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM](#) £129.64

**Brivaracetam 100 mg** Briviact 100mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM](#) £129.64

## Carbamazepine

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Trigeminal neuralgia**

► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 5 mg/kg once daily, dose to be taken at night, alternatively initially 2.5 mg/kg twice daily, then increased in steps of 2.5–5 mg/kg every 3–7 days as required; maintenance 5 mg/kg 2–3 times a day, increased if necessary up to 20 mg/kg daily

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 100–200 mg 1–2 times a day, then increased to 200–400 mg 2–3 times a day, increased if necessary up to 1.8 g daily, dose should be increased slowly

**Prophylaxis of bipolar disorder**

► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 5 mg/kg once daily, dose to be taken at night, alternatively initially 2.5 mg/kg twice daily, then increased in steps of 2.5–5 mg/kg every 3–7 days as required; maintenance 5 mg/kg 2–3 times a day, increased if necessary up to 20 mg/kg daily

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 100–200 mg 1–2 times a day, then increased to 200–400 mg 2–3 times a day, increased if necessary up to 1.8 g daily, dose should be increased slowly

**Focal and generalised tonic-clonic seizures**

► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 5 mg/kg once daily, dose to be taken at night, alternatively initially 2.5 mg/kg twice daily, then increased in steps of 2.5–5 mg/kg every 3–7 days as required; maintenance 5 mg/kg 2–3 times a day, increased if necessary up to 20 mg/kg daily

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 100–200 mg 1–2 times a day, then increased to 200–400 mg 2–3 times a day, increased if necessary up to 1.8 g daily, dose should be increased slowly

► BY RECTUM

► Child: Up to 250 mg up to 4 times a day, to be used for short-term use (max. 7 days) when oral therapy temporarily not possible, use approx. 25% more than the oral dose

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

► Suppositories of 125 mg may be considered to be approximately equivalent in therapeutic effect to tablets of 100 mg but final adjustment should always depend on clinical response (plasma concentration monitoring recommended).



**CARBAGEN® SR****Trigeminal neuralgia**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 5–11 years: Initially 5 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, then increased in steps of 2.5–5 mg/kg every 3–7 days as required; maintenance 10–15 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, increased if necessary up to 20 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 100–400 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, then increased to 400–1200 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, increased if necessary up to 1.8 g daily in 1–2 divided doses, dose should be increased slowly

**Focal and generalised tonic-clonic seizures | Prophylaxis of bipolar disorder**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 5–11 years: Initially 5 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, then increased in steps of 2.5–5 mg/kg every 3–7 days as required, dose should be increased slowly; maintenance 10–15 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, increased if necessary up to 20 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 100–400 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, then increased to 400–1200 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, increased if necessary up to 1.8 g daily in 1–2 divided doses, dose should be increased slowly

**TEGRETOL® PROLONGED RELEASE****Focal and generalised tonic-clonic seizures | Prophylaxis of bipolar disorder**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 5–11 years: Initially 5 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses, then increased in steps of 2.5–5 mg/kg every 3–7 days as required; maintenance 10–15 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses, increased if necessary up to 20 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 100–400 mg daily in 2 divided doses, dose should be increased slowly; maintenance 400–1200 mg daily in 2 divided doses, increased if necessary up to 1.8 g daily in 2 divided doses

**Trigeminal neuralgia**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 5–11 years: Initially 5 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses, then increased in steps of 2.5–5 mg/kg every 3–7 days as required; maintenance 10–15 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses, increased if necessary up to 20 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 100–400 mg daily in 2 divided doses, dose should be increased slowly; maintenance 400–1200 mg daily in 2 divided doses, increased if necessary up to 1.8 g daily in 2 divided doses, dose should be increased slowly

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in trigeminal neuralgia or prophylaxis of bipolar disorder.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 • AV conduction abnormalities (unless paced) • history of bone-marrow depression
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac disease • history of haematological reactions to other drugs • may exacerbate absence and myoclonic seizures • skin reactions • susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma
- CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Consider vitamin D supplementation in patients who are immobilised for long periods or who have inadequate sun exposure or dietary intake of calcium.
- Blood, hepatic, or skin disorders Carbamazepine should be withdrawn immediately in cases of aggravated liver dysfunction or acute liver disease. Leucopenia that is severe, progressive, or associated with clinical symptoms

requires withdrawal (if necessary under cover of a suitable alternative).

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

● **SIDE-EFFECTS****GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Dizziness • drowsiness • dry mouth • eosinophilia • fatigue • fluid imbalance • gastrointestinal discomfort • headache • hyponatraemia • leucopenia • movement disorders • nausea • oedema • skin reactions • thrombocytopenia • vision disorders • vomiting • weight increased
- **Uncommon** Constipation • diarrhoea • eye disorders • tic • tremor
- **Rare or very rare** Aggression • agranulocytosis • albuminuria • alopecia • anaemia • angioedema • anxiety • appetite decreased • arrhythmias • arthralgia • azotaemia • bone disorders • bone marrow disorders • cardiac conduction disorders • circulatory collapse • confusion • congestive heart failure • conjunctivitis • coronary artery disease aggravated • depression • dyspnoea • embolism and thrombosis • erythema nodosum • fever • folate deficiency • galactorrhoea • gynaecomastia • haematuria • haemolytic anaemia • hallucinations • hearing impairment • hepatic disorders • hirsutism • hyperacusia • hyperhidrosis • hypersensitivity • hypertension • hypogammaglobulinaemia • hypotension • lens opacity • leucocytosis • lymphadenopathy • meningitis aseptic • muscle complaints • muscle weakness • nephritis • tubulointerstitial • nervous system disorder • neuroleptic malignant syndrome • oral disorders • pancreatitis • paraesthesia • paresis • peripheral neuropathy • photosensitivity reaction • pneumonia • pneumonitis • pseudolymphoma • psychosis • red blood cell abnormalities • renal impairment • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • sexual dysfunction • speech impairment • spermatogenesis abnormal • syncope • systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) • taste altered • urinary disorders • vanishing bile duct syndrome • vasculitis
- **Frequency not known** Bone fracture • colitis • human herpesvirus 6 infection reactivation • memory loss • nail loss

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Some side-effects (such as headache, ataxia, drowsiness, nausea, vomiting, blurring of vision, dizziness and allergic skin reactions) are dose-related, and may be dose-limiting. These side-effects are more common at the start of treatment.

**Overdose** For details on the management of poisoning, see Active elimination techniques, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Antiepileptic hypersensitivity syndrome associated with carbamazepine. See under Epilepsy p. 191 for more information. Caution—cross-sensitivity reported with oxcarbazepine and with phenytoin.
- **PREGNANCY**  
**Monitoring** Doses should be adjusted on the basis of plasma-drug concentration monitoring.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount probably too small to be harmful.  
**Monitoring** Monitor infant for possible adverse reactions.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Metabolism impaired in advanced liver disease.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Test for HLA-B\*1502 allele in individuals of Han Chinese or Thai origin (avoid unless no alternative—risk of Stevens-Johnson syndrome in presence of HLA-B\*1502 allele).

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Plasma concentration for optimum response 4–12 mg/litre (20–50 micromol/litre) measured after 1–2 weeks.
- Manufacturer recommends blood counts and hepatic and renal function tests (but evidence of practical value uncertain).

- **TREATMENT CESSATION** When stopping treatment with carbamazepine for bipolar disorder, reduce the dose gradually over a period of at least 4 weeks.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Oral liquid has been used rectally—should be retained for at least 2 hours (but may have laxative effect).

**TEGRETOL® PROLONGED RELEASE** Tegretol® Prolonged Release tablets can be halved but should not be chewed.

### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Switching between formulations Different formulations of oral preparations may vary in bioavailability. Patients being treated for epilepsy should be maintained on a specific manufacturer's product.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Blood, hepatic, or skin disorders Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of blood, liver, or skin disorders, and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as fever, rash, mouth ulcers, bruising, or bleeding develop.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Carbamazepine (oral) for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/carbamazepine-oral-preventing-seizures-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/carbamazepine-oral-preventing-seizures-0)

### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

Dental practitioners' formulary

Carbamazepine Tablets may be prescribed.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 8, 25

#### ► Carbagen SR (Mylan)

**Carbamazepine 200 mg** Carbagen SR 200mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £4.16 DT = £5.20

**Carbamazepine 400 mg** Carbagen SR 400mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £8.20 DT = £10.24

#### ► Tegretol Retard (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Carbamazepine 200 mg** Tegretol Prolonged Release 200mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £5.20 DT = £5.20

**Carbamazepine 400 mg** Tegretol Prolonged Release 400mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £10.24 DT = £10.24

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 8

#### ► Carbamazepine (Non-proprietary)

**Carbamazepine 100 mg** Carbamazepine 100mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £5 DT = £2.07

**Carbamazepine 200 mg** Carbamazepine 200mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £5 DT = £3.83

**Carbamazepine 400 mg** Carbamazepine 400mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £5 DT = £5.02

#### ► Carbagen (Mylan)

**Carbamazepine 100 mg** Carbagen 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £5.74 | 84 tablet [PoM] £2 DT = £2.07 (Hospital only)

**Carbamazepine 200 mg** Carbagen 200mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £4.99 | 84 tablet [PoM] £5 DT = £3.83 (Hospital only)

**Carbamazepine 400 mg** Carbagen 400mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £4.27 | 56 tablet [PoM] £5 DT = £5.02 (Hospital only)

#### ► Tegretol (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Carbamazepine 100 mg** Tegretol 100mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £2.07 DT = £2.07

**Carbamazepine 200 mg** Tegretol 200mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £3.83 DT = £3.83

**Carbamazepine 400 mg** Tegretol 400mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £5.02 DT = £5.02

### Suppository

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 8

#### ► Carbamazepine (Non-proprietary)

**Carbamazepine 125 mg** Carbamazepine 125mg suppositories | 5 suppository [PoM] £120.00 DT = £120.00

**Carbamazepine 250 mg** Carbamazepine 250mg suppositories | 5 suppository [PoM] £140.00 DT = £140.00

### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 8

#### ► Carbamazepine (Non-proprietary)

**Carbamazepine 20 mg per 1 ml** Carbamazepine 100mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM] £7.35 DT = £6.94

#### ► Tegretol (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Carbamazepine 20 mg per 1 ml** Tegretol 100mg/5ml liquid sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM] £6.12 DT = £6.94

## Ethosuximide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Absence seizures | Atypical absence seizures (adjunct) | Myoclonic seizures**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–5 years: Initially 5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 125 mg), dose to be increased every 5–7 days; maintenance 10–20 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 500 mg), total daily dose may rarely be given in 3 divided doses

- Child 6–17 years: Initially 250 mg twice daily, then increased in steps of 250 mg every 5–7 days; usual dose 500–750 mg twice daily, increased if necessary up to 1 g twice daily

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Aggression · agranulocytosis · appetite decreased · blood disorder · bone marrow disorders · concentration impaired · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · erythema nodosum · fatigue · gastrointestinal discomfort · generalised tonic-clonic seizure · headache · hiccups · leucopenia · libido increased · lupus-like syndrome · mood altered · movement disorders · nausea · nephrotic syndrome · oral disorders · psychosis · rash · sleep disorders · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · vaginal haemorrhage · vision disorders · vomiting · weight decreased

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Blood counts required if features of fever, sore throat, mouth ulcers, bruising or bleeding.

- **PREGNANCY**

**Monitoring** The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk. Hyperexcitability and sedation reported.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Blood disorders Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of blood disorders, and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as fever, mouth ulcers, bruising, or bleeding develop.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Ethosuximide for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ethosuximide-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ethosuximide-for-preventing-seizures)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

#### ► Ethosuximide (Non-proprietary)

Ethosuximide 50 mg per 1 ml Ethosuximide 250mg/5ml syrup | 200 ml [PoM] £173.00 DT = £173.00

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

#### ► Ethosuximide (Non-proprietary)

Ethosuximide 250 mg Ethosuximide 250mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £173.00 DT = £173.00

## Fosphenytoin sodium

### ● DRUG ACTION Fosphenytoin is a pro-drug of phenytoin.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Status epilepticus

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 5–17 years: Initially 20 mg(PE)/kg, dose to be administered at a rate of 2–3 mg(PE)/kg/minute, maximum 150 mg(PE)/minute, then 4–5 mg(PE)/kg daily in 1–4 divided doses, dose to be administered at a rate of 1–2 mg(PE)/kg/minute, maximum 100 mg(PE)/minute, dose to be adjusted according to response and trough plasma-phenytoin concentration

#### Prophylaxis or treatment of seizures associated with neurosurgery or head injury

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 5–17 years: Initially 10–15 mg(PE)/kg, then 4–5 mg(PE)/kg daily in 1–4 divided doses, dose to be administered at a rate of 1–2 mg(PE)/kg/minute, maximum 100 mg(PE)/minute, dose to be adjusted according to response and trough plasma-phenytoin concentration

#### Temporary substitution for oral phenytoin

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 5–17 years: Same dose and same dosing frequency as oral phenytoin therapy, intravenous infusion to be administered at a rate of 1–2 mg(PE)/kg/minute, maximum 100 mg(PE)/minute

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Doses are expressed as fosphenytoin sodium equivalent (PE); fosphenytoin sodium 1.5 mg  $\equiv$  phenytoin sodium 1 mg.

### ● UNLICENSED USE Fosphenytoin sodium doses in BNFC may differ from those in product literature.

### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS Acute porphyrias p. 603 · second-degree heart block · sino-atrial block · sinus bradycardia · Stokes-Adams syndrome · third-degree heart block

### ● CAUTIONS Heart failure · hypotension · injection solutions alkaline (irritant to tissues) · respiratory depression · resuscitation facilities must be available

### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Asthenia · chills · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dysarthria · euphoric mood · headache · hearing impairment · hypotension · movement disorders · nausea · nystagmus · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · stupor · taste altered · tremor · vasodilation · vertigo · vision disorders · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Cardiac arrest · confusion · muscle complaints · muscle weakness · nervousness · oral disorders · reflexes abnormal · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) · thinking abnormal
- **Frequency not known** Acute psychosis · agranulocytosis · appetite disorder · atrial conduction depression (more common if injection too rapid) · atrioventricular block ·

bone disorders · bone fracture · bone marrow disorders · bradycardia · cardiotoxicity · cerebrovascular insufficiency · circulatory collapse (more common if injection too rapid) · coarsening of the facial features · constipation · delirium · Dupuytren's contracture · encephalopathy · granulocytopenia · groin tingling · hair changes · hepatic disorders · hyperglycaemia · hypersensitivity · insomnia · leucopenia · lymphadenopathy · nephritis · tubulointerstitial · Peyronie's disease · polyarthritis nodosa · polyarthritides · purple glove syndrome · respiratory disorders · sensory peripheral polyneuropathy · thrombocytopenia · tonic seizure · ventricular conduction depression (more common if injection too rapid) · ventricular fibrillation (more common if injection too rapid)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Fosphenytoin has been associated with severe cardiovascular reactions including asystole, ventricular fibrillation, and cardiac arrest. Hypotension, bradycardia, and heart block have also been reported. The following are recommended: monitor heart rate, blood pressure, and respiratory function for duration of infusion; observe patient for at least 30 minutes after infusion; if hypotension occurs, reduce infusion rate or discontinue; reduce dose or infusion rate in renal or hepatic impairment.

### ● ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY Cross-sensitivity reported with carbamazepine.

### ● PREGNANCY

**Monitoring** Changes in plasma-protein binding make interpretation of plasma-phenytoin concentrations difficult—monitor unbound fraction.

The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

### ● BREAST FEEDING Small amounts present in milk, but not known to be harmful.

### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Consider 10–25% reduction in dose or infusion rate (except initial dose for status epilepticus).

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Consider 10–25% reduction in dose or infusion rate (except initial dose for status epilepticus).

### ● PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING HLA-B\* 1502 allele in individuals of Han Chinese or Thai origin—avoid unless essential (increased risk of Stevens-Johnson syndrome).

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Manufacturer recommends blood counts (but evidence of practical value uncertain).

- With intravenous use Monitor heart rate, blood pressure, ECG, and respiratory function for during infusion.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION For intermittent intravenous infusion (Pro-Epanutin®), give in Glucose 5% or Sodium chloride 0.9%; dilute to a concentration of 1.5–25 mg (phenytoin sodium equivalent (PE))/mL.

### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Prescriptions for fosphenytoin sodium should state the dose in terms of phenytoin sodium equivalent (PE); fosphenytoin sodium 1.5 mg  $\equiv$  phenytoin sodium 1 mg.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Phosphate

#### ► Pro-Epanutin (Pfizer Ltd)

Fosphenytoin sodium 75 mg per 1 ml Pro-Epanutin 750mg/10ml concentrate for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £400.00 (Hospital only)

## Gabapentin

19-Jul-2017

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Adjunctive treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–5 years: 10 mg/kg once daily on day 1, then 10 mg/kg twice daily on day 2, then 10 mg/kg 3 times a day on day 3, then increased to 30–70 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, adjusted according to response, some children may not tolerate daily increments; longer intervals (up to weekly) may be more appropriate
- Child 6–11 years: 10 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 300 mg) on day 1, then 10 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 300 mg) on day 2, then 10 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 300 mg) on day 3; usual dose 25–35 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, some children may not tolerate daily increments; longer intervals (up to weekly) may be more appropriate, daily dose maximum to be given in 3 divided doses; maximum 70 mg/kg per day
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 300 mg once daily on day 1, then 300 mg twice daily on day 2, then 300 mg 3 times a day on day 3, alternatively initially 300 mg 3 times a day on day 1, then increased in steps of 300 mg every 2–3 days in 3 divided doses, adjusted according to response; usual dose 0.9–3.6 g daily in 3 divided doses (max. per dose 1.6 g 3 times a day), some children may not tolerate daily increments; longer intervals (up to weekly) may be more appropriate

#### Monotherapy for focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 300 mg once daily on day 1, then 300 mg twice daily on day 2, then 300 mg 3 times a day on day 3, alternatively initially 300 mg 3 times a day on day 1, then increased in steps of 300 mg every 2–3 days in 3 divided doses, adjusted according to response; usual dose 0.9–3.6 g daily in 3 divided doses (max. per dose 1.6 g 3 times a day), some children may not tolerate daily increments; longer intervals (up to weekly) may be more appropriate

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 6 years. Not licensed at doses over 50 mg/kg daily in children under 12 years.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

The levels of propylene glycol, acesulfame K and saccharin sodium may exceed the recommended WHO daily intake limits if high doses of gabapentin oral solution (Rosemont brand) are given to adolescents or adults with low body-weight (39–50 kg)—consult product literature.

**MHRA/CHM ADVICE: GABAPENTIN (NEURONTIN®): RISK OF SEVERE RESPIRATORY DEPRESSION (OCTOBER 2017)**  
Gabapentin has been associated with a rare risk of severe respiratory depression even without concomitant opioid medicines. Patients with compromised respiratory function, respiratory or neurological disease, renal impairment, and concomitant use of central nervous system (CNS) depressants might be at higher risk of experiencing severe respiratory depression and dose adjustments may be necessary in these patients.

- **CAUTIONS** Diabetes mellitus · high doses of oral solution in adolescents and adults with low body-weight · history of psychotic illness · mixed seizures (including absences)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anxiety · appetite abnormal · arthralgia · asthenia · behaviour abnormal · confusion · constipation · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dysarthria · dyspnoea · emotional lability · flatulence · gait abnormal · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hypertension · increased risk of infection · insomnia · leucopenia · malaise · movement disorders · muscle complaints · nausea · nystagmus · oedema · pain · reflexes abnormal · seizure · sensation abnormal · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · thinking abnormal · tooth disorder · tremor · vasodilation · vertigo · visual impairment · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Cognitive impairment · palpitations
- **Frequency not known** Acute kidney injury · alopecia · angioedema · breast enlargement · gynaecomastia · hallucination · hepatic disorders · hyponatraemia · pancreatitis · rhabdomyolysis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus · urinary incontinence

### • PREGNANCY

**Monitoring** The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

### • RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 80 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; consult product literature.

- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** False positive readings with some urinary protein tests.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Capsules can be opened but the bitter taste is difficult to mask.

### • PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Gabapentin for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/gabapentin-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/gabapentin-for-preventing-seizures)

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 5, 8, 25

##### ► Gabapentin (Non-proprietary)

**Gabapentin 600 mg** Gabapentin 600mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM]

£106.00 DT = £6.45

**Gabapentin 800 mg** Gabapentin 800mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM]

£98.13 DT = £29.85

##### ► Neurontin (Pfizer Ltd)

**Gabapentin 600 mg** Neurontin 600mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM]

£84.80 DT = £6.45

**Gabapentin 800 mg** Neurontin 800mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM]

£98.13 DT = £29.85

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 5, 8

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Potassium, sodium

##### ► Gabapentin (Non-proprietary)

**Gabapentin 50 mg per 1 ml** Gabapentin 50mg/ml oral solution sugar free | 150 ml [PoM] £69.00 DT = £69.00

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 5, 8, 25

##### ► Gabapentin (Non-proprietary)

**Gabapentin 100 mg** Gabapentin 100mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £18.29 DT = £2.41

**Gabapentin 300 mg** Gabapentin 300mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £42.40 DT = £8.09

**Gabapentin 400 mg** Gabapentin 400mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £49.06 DT = £5.94

##### ► Neurontin (Pfizer Ltd)

**Gabapentin 100 mg** Neurontin 100mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM]

£18.29 DT = £2.41

**Gabapentin 300 mg** Neurontin 300mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM]  
£42.40 DT = £8.09  
**Gabapentin 400 mg** Neurontin 400mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM]  
£49.06 DT = £5.94

## Lacosamide

22-Feb-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Monotherapy of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation

- BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 50 mg twice daily, then increased to 100 mg twice daily, after one week, alternatively initially 100 mg twice daily; increased in steps of 50 mg twice daily (max. per dose 300 mg twice daily) if necessary and if tolerated, dose to be increased at weekly intervals
- Child 4–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): (consult product literature)

#### Monotherapy of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation (alternative loading dose regimen when it is necessary to rapidly attain therapeutic plasma concentrations) (under close medical supervision)

- BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child (body-weight 50 kg and above): Loading dose 200 mg, followed by 100 mg twice daily, to be given 12 hours after initial dose; increased in steps of 50 mg twice daily (max. per dose 300 mg twice daily) if necessary and if tolerated, dose to be increased at weekly intervals

#### Adjunctive treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation

- BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 50 mg twice daily, then increased to 100 mg twice daily, after one week; increased in steps of 50 mg twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg twice daily) if necessary and if tolerated, dose to be increased at weekly intervals
- Child 4–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): (consult product literature)

#### Adjunctive treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation (alternative loading dose regimen when it is necessary to rapidly attain therapeutic plasma concentrations) (under close medical supervision)

- BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child (body-weight 50 kg and above): Loading dose 200 mg, followed by 100 mg twice daily, to be given 12 hours after initial dose; increased in steps of 50 mg twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg twice daily) if necessary and if tolerated, dose to be increased at weekly intervals

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Second- or third-degree AV block

- **CAUTIONS** Conduction problems · risk of PR-interval prolongation · severe cardiac disease

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Asthenia · concentration impaired · confusion · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dysarthria · dyspepsia · flatulence · gait abnormal · headache · insomnia · mood altered · movement disorders · muscle spasms · nausea · nystagmus · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · tinnitus · vertigo · vision disorders · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Aggression · agitation · angioedema · arrhythmias · atrioventricular block · hallucination · psychotic disorder · suicidal tendencies · syncope
- **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Antiepileptic hypersensitivity syndrome associated with lacosamide. See under Epilepsy p. 191 for more information.

### ● PREGNANCY

**Monitoring** The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.

### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Consult product literature.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

Consult product literature.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intermittent intravenous infusion, manufacturer advises give undiluted or dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Lactated Ringer's Solution; give over 15–60 minutes—give doses greater than 200 mg over at least 30 minutes.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of syrup may include strawberry.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Lacosamide for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/lacosamide-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/lacosamide-for-preventing-seizures)

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

SMC No. 532/09

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (February 2009) that lacosamide (*Vimpat*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland as adjunctive treatment for focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation in patients from 16 years. It is restricted for specialist use in refractory epilepsy.

SMC No. 1301/18

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (February 2018) that lacosamide (*Vimpat*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland as adjunctive treatment for focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation in adolescents and children from 4 years of age with epilepsy. It is restricted for specialist use in refractory epilepsy.

#### All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions

AWMSG No. 3343

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (March 2018) that lacosamide (*Vimpat*®) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales as adjunctive therapy in the treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation in children from 4 years of age up to 15 years of age with epilepsy.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for infusion

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- **Vimpat** (UCB Pharma Ltd)

**Lacosamide 10 mg per 1 ml** Vimpat 200mg/20ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £29.70

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame, propylene glycol

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- **Vimpat** (UCB Pharma Ltd)

**Lacosamide 10 mg per 1 ml** Vimpat 10mg/ml syrup sugar-free | 200 ml [PoM] £25.74 DT = £25.74

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

- **Vimpat** (UCB Pharma Ltd)

**Lacosamide 50 mg** Vimpat 50mg tablets | 14 tablet [PoM] £10.81 DT = £10.81

**Lacosamide 100 mg** Vimpat 100mg tablets | 14 tablet [PoM] £21.62 | 56 tablet [PoM] £86.50 DT = £86.50

**Lacosamide 150 mg** Vimpat 150mg tablets | 14 tablet [PoM] £32.44 | 56 tablet [PoM] £129.74 DT = £129.74

**Lacosamide 200 mg** Vimpat 200mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM]

£144.16 DT = £144.16



## Lamotrigine

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Monotherapy of focal seizures | Monotherapy of primary and secondary generalised tonic-clonic seizures | Monotherapy of seizures associated with Lennox-Gastaut syndrome**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 25 mg once daily for 14 days, then increased to 50 mg once daily for further 14 days, then increased in steps of up to 100 mg every 7–14 days; maintenance 100–200 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses; increased if necessary up to 500 mg daily, dose titration should be repeated if restarting after interval of more than 5 days

### **Monotherapy of typical absence seizures**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–11 years: Initially 300 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, for 14 days, then 600 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, for further 14 days, then increased in steps of up to 600 micrograms/kg every 7–14 days; maintenance 1–10 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, increased if necessary up to 15 mg/kg daily, dose titration should be repeated if restarting after interval of more than 5 days

### **Adjunctive therapy of focal seizures with valproate |**

### **Adjunctive therapy of primary and secondary**

### **generalised tonic-clonic seizures with valproate |**

### **Adjunctive therapy of seizures associated with Lennox-Gastaut syndrome with valproate**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–11 years (body-weight up to 13 kg): Initially 2 mg once daily on alternate days for first 14 days, then 300 micrograms/kg once daily for further 14 days, then increased in steps of up to 300 micrograms/kg every 7–14 days; maintenance 1–5 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, dose titration should be repeated if restarting after interval of more than 5 days; maximum 200 mg per day
- Child 2–11 years (body-weight 13 kg and above): Initially 150 micrograms/kg once daily for 14 days, then 300 micrograms/kg once daily for further 14 days, then increased in steps of up to 300 micrograms/kg every 7–14 days; maintenance 1–5 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, dose titration should be repeated if restarting after interval of more than 5 days; maximum 200 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 25 mg once daily on alternate days for 14 days, then 25 mg once daily for further 14 days, then increased in steps of up to 50 mg every 7–14 days; maintenance 100–200 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, dose titration should be repeated if restarting after interval of more than 5 days

**Adjunctive therapy of focal seizures (with enzyme inducing drugs) without valproate | Adjunctive therapy of primary and secondary generalised tonic-clonic seizures (with enzyme inducing drugs) without valproate | Adjunctive therapy of seizures associated with Lennox-Gastaut syndromes (with enzyme inducing drugs) without valproate**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–11 years: Initially 300 micrograms/kg twice daily for 14 days, then 600 micrograms/kg twice daily for further 14 days, then increased in steps of up to 1.2 mg/kg every 7–14 days; maintenance 5–15 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, dose titration should be repeated if restarting after interval of more than 5 days; maximum 400 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 50 mg once daily for 14 days, then 50 mg twice daily for further 14 days, then increased in steps of up to 100 mg every 7–14 days;

maintenance 200–400 mg daily in 2 divided doses, increased if necessary up to 700 mg daily, dose titration should be repeated if restarting after interval of more than 5 days

**Adjunctive therapy of focal seizures (without enzyme inducing drugs) without valproate | Adjunctive therapy of primary and secondary generalised tonic-clonic seizures (without enzyme inducing drugs) without valproate | Adjunctive therapy of seizures associated with Lennox-Gastaut syndromes (without enzyme inducing drugs) without valproate**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–11 years: Initially 300 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses for 14 days, then 600 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses for further 14 days, then increased in steps of up to 600 micrograms/kg every 7–14 days; maintenance 1–10 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, dose titration should be repeated if restarting after interval of more than 5 days; maximum 200 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 25 mg once daily for 14 days, then increased to 50 mg once daily for further 14 days, then increased in steps of up to 100 mg every 7–14 days; maintenance 100–200 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, dose titration should be repeated if restarting after interval of more than 5 days

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

#### SAFE PRACTICE

Do not confuse the different combinations or indications.

- **CAUTIONS** Myoclonic seizures (may be exacerbated)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Aggression · agitation · arthralgia · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · fatigue · headache · irritability · nausea · pain · rash · sleep disorders · tremor · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Alopecia · movement disorders · vision disorders
  - **Rare or very rare** Confusion · conjunctivitis · disseminated intravascular coagulation · face oedema · fever · hallucination · hepatic disorders · lupus-like syndrome · lymphadenopathy · meningitis aseptic · multi organ failure · nystagmus · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · tic

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Serious skin reactions including Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis have developed; most rashes occur in the first 8 weeks. Rash is sometimes associated with hypersensitivity syndrome and is more common in patients with history of allergy or rash from other antiepileptic drugs. Consider withdrawal if rash or signs of hypersensitivity syndrome develop. Factors associated with increased risk of serious skin reactions include concomitant use of valproate, initial lamotrigine dosing higher than recommended, and more rapid dose escalation than recommended.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Antiepileptic hypersensitivity syndrome associated with lamotrigine. See under Epilepsy p. 191 for more information.
- **PREGNANCY**
  - **Monitoring** Doses should be adjusted on the basis of plasma-drug concentration monitoring.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk, but limited data suggest no harmful effect on infant.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
  - **Dose adjustments** Halve dose in moderate impairment. Quarter dose in severe impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Caution in renal failure; metabolite may accumulate.  
**Dose adjustments** Consider reducing maintenance dose in significant impairment.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal (taper off over 2 weeks or longer) unless serious skin reaction occurs.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Patients being treated for epilepsy may need to be maintained on a specific manufacturer's branded or generic lamotrigine product.  
Switching between formulations Care should be taken when switching between oral formulations in the treatment of epilepsy. The need for continued supply of a particular manufacturer's product should be based on clinical judgement and consultation with the patient or their carer, taking into account factors such as seizure frequency and treatment history.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Skin reactions Warn patients and carers to see their doctor immediately if rash or signs or symptoms of hypersensitivity syndrome develop.  
Blood disorders Patients and their carers should be alert for symptoms and signs suggestive of bone-marrow failure, such as anaemia, bruising, or infection. Aplastic anaemia, bone-marrow depression, and pancytopenia have been associated rarely with lamotrigine.  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Lamotrigine for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/lamotrigine-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/lamotrigine-for-preventing-seizures)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Dispersible tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 13

##### ► Lamotrigine (Non-proprietary)

- Lamotrigine 5 mg** Lamotrigine 5mg dispersible tablets sugar free  
sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £15.00 DT = £7.09
- Lamotrigine 25 mg** Lamotrigine 25mg dispersible tablets sugar free  
sugar-free | 56 tablet [PoM] £20.41 DT = £1.86
- Lamotrigine 100 mg** Lamotrigine 100mg dispersible tablets sugar  
free sugar-free | 56 tablet [PoM] £58.68 DT = £3.93
- **Lamictal** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
**Lamotrigine 2 mg** Lamictal 2mg dispersible tablets sugar-free |  
30 tablet [PoM] £18.81 DT = £18.81
- Lamotrigine 5 mg** Lamictal 5mg dispersible tablets sugar-free |  
28 tablet [PoM] £9.38 DT = £7.09
- Lamotrigine 25 mg** Lamictal 25mg dispersible tablets sugar-free |  
56 tablet [PoM] £23.53 DT = £1.86
- Lamotrigine 100 mg** Lamictal 100mg dispersible tablets sugar-free  
| 56 tablet [PoM] £69.04 DT = £3.93

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

##### ► Lamotrigine (Non-proprietary)

- Lamotrigine 25 mg** Lamotrigine 25mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM]  
£20.41 DT = £1.08
- Lamotrigine 50 mg** Lamotrigine 50mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM]  
£8.00 DT = £1.22
- Lamotrigine 100 mg** Lamotrigine 100mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM]  
£62.14 DT = £1.76
- Lamotrigine 200 mg** Lamotrigine 200mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM]  
£105.62 DT = £2.55
- **Lamictal** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
**Lamotrigine 25 mg** Lamictal 25mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £23.53  
DT = £1.08
- Lamotrigine 50 mg** Lamictal 50mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £40.02  
DT = £1.22
- Lamotrigine 100 mg** Lamictal 100mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM]  
£69.04 DT = £1.76
- Lamotrigine 200 mg** Lamictal 200mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM]  
£117.35 DT = £2.55

## Levetiracetam

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Monotherapy of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation

- BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child 16-17 years: Initially 250 mg once daily for 1 week, then increased to 250 mg twice daily, then increased in steps of 250 mg twice daily (max. per dose 1.5 g twice daily), adjusted according to response, dose to be increased every 2 weeks

#### Adjunctive therapy of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation

- BY MOUTH
- Child 1-5 months: Initially 7 mg/kg once daily, then increased in steps of up to 7 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 21 mg/kg twice daily), dose to be increased every 2 weeks
- Child 6 months-17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): Initially 10 mg/kg once daily, then increased in steps of up to 10 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 30 mg/kg twice daily), dose to be increased every 2 weeks
- Child 12-17 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 250 mg twice daily, then increased in steps of 500 mg twice daily (max. per dose 1.5 g twice daily), dose to be increased every 2-4 weeks

#### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 4-17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): Initially 10 mg/kg once daily, then increased in steps of up to 10 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 30 mg/kg twice daily), dose to be increased every 2 weeks
- Child 12-17 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 250 mg twice daily, then increased in steps of 500 mg twice daily (max. per dose 1.5 g twice daily), dose to be increased every 2 weeks

#### Adjunctive therapy of myoclonic seizures and tonic-clonic seizures

- BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child 12-17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): Initially 10 mg/kg once daily, then increased in steps of up to 10 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 30 mg/kg twice daily), dose to be increased every 2 weeks
- Child 12-17 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 250 mg twice daily, then increased in steps of 500 mg twice daily (max. per dose 1.5 g twice daily), dose to be increased every 2 weeks

- **UNLICENSED USE** [EvGr] Initial dosing recommendations for levetiracetam ⚠ in BNF Publications differ from product licence. Manufacturer advises *granules* not licensed for use in children under 6 years, for initial treatment in children with body-weight less than 25 kg, or for the administration of doses below 250 mg—oral solution should be used.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anxiety · appetite decreased · asthenia · behaviour abnormal · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · increased risk of infection · insomnia · mood altered · movement disorders · nausea · skin reactions · vertigo · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Alopecia · concentration impaired · confusion · hallucination · leucopenia · muscle weakness · myalgia · paraesthesia · psychotic disorder · suicidal tendencies · thrombocytopenia · vision disorders · weight changes
- **Rare or very rare** Acute kidney injury · agranulocytosis · hepatic disorders · hyponatraemia · neutropenia · pancreatitis · pancytopenia · personality disorder · rhabdomyolysis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · thinking abnormal

### ● PREGNANCY

**Monitoring** The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis. It is recommended that the fetal growth should be monitored.

### ● BREAST FEEDING

Present in milk—manufacturer advises avoid.

### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Halve dose in severe hepatic impairment if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 80 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> (consult product literature).

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion* (Keppra®), dilute requisite dose with at least 100 mL Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 15 minutes.
- ▶ With oral use For administration of *oral solution*, requisite dose may be diluted in a glass of water.

### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

If switching between oral therapy and intravenous therapy (for those temporarily unable to take oral medication), the intravenous dose should be the same as the established oral dose.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Levetiracetam for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/levetiracetam-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/levetiracetam-for-preventing-seizures)

### ● MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

#### ▶ Desitrend (Desitin Pharma Ltd)

**Levetiracetam 250 mg** Desitrend 250mg granules sachets sugar-free | 60 sachet [PoM] £22.41 DT = £22.41

**Levetiracetam 500 mg** Desitrend 500mg granules sachets sugar-free | 60 sachet [PoM] £39.46 DT = £39.46

**Levetiracetam 1 gram** Desitrend 1000mg granules sachets sugar-free | 60 sachet [PoM] £76.27 DT = £76.27

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

#### ▶ Levetiracetam (Non-proprietary)

**Levetiracetam 250 mg** Levetiracetam 250mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £26.86 DT = £19.31

**Levetiracetam 500 mg** Levetiracetam 500mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £47.31 DT = £30.73

**Levetiracetam 750 mg** Levetiracetam 750mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £84.02 DT = £43.15

**Levetiracetam 1 gram** Levetiracetam 1g tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £93.09 DT = £54.76

#### ▶ Keppra (UCB Pharma Ltd)

**Levetiracetam 250 mg** Keppra 250mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £28.01 DT = £19.31

**Levetiracetam 500 mg** Keppra 500mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £49.32 DT = £30.73

**Levetiracetam 750 mg** Keppra 750mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £84.02 DT = £43.15

**Levetiracetam 1 gram** Keppra 1g tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £95.34 DT = £54.76

#### Solution for infusion

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

#### ▶ Levetiracetam (Non-proprietary)

**Levetiracetam 100 mg per 1 mL** Levetiracetam 500mg/5ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 10 vial [PoM] £125.00-£127.31 | 10 vial [PoM] £114.57 (Hospital only)

#### ▶ Desitrend (Desitin Pharma Ltd)

**Levetiracetam 100 mg per 1 mL** Desitrend 500mg/5ml concentrate for solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £127.31 DT = £127.31

#### ▶ Keppra (UCB Pharma Ltd)

**Levetiracetam 100 mg per 1 mL** Keppra 500mg/5ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 10 vial [PoM] £127.31

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

#### ▶ Levetiracetam (Non-proprietary)

**Levetiracetam 100 mg per 1 mL** Levetiracetam 100mg/ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 mL [PoM] £27.00 sugar-free | 300 mL [PoM] £63.60 DT = £6.76

#### ▶ Desitrend (Desitin Pharma Ltd)

**Levetiracetam 100 mg per 1 mL** Desitrend 100mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 300 mL [PoM] £15.90 DT = £6.76

#### ▶ Keppra (UCB Pharma Ltd)

**Levetiracetam 100 mg per 1 mL** Keppra 100mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 150 mL [PoM] £33.48 sugar-free | 300 mL [PoM] £66.95 DT = £6.76

## Oxcarbazepine

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Monotherapy for the treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalised tonic-clonic seizures**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6–17 years: Initially 4–5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 300 mg), then increased in steps of up to 5 mg/kg twice daily, adjusted according to response, dose to be adjusted at weekly intervals; maximum 46 mg/kg per day

**Adjunctive therapy for the treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalised tonic-clonic seizures**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6–17 years: Initially 4–5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 300 mg), then increased in steps of up to 5 mg/kg twice daily, adjusted according to response, dose to be adjusted at weekly intervals; maintenance 15 mg/kg twice daily; maximum 46 mg/kg per day

### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- ▶ In adjunctive therapy, the dose of concomitant antiepileptics may need to be reduced when using high doses of oxcarbazepine.

### ● CAUTIONS

Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 · cardiac conduction disorders · heart failure · hyponatraemia

### ● INTERACTIONS

→ Appendix 1: antiepileptics

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · agitation · alopecia · asthenia · ataxia · concentration impaired · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · emotional lability · headache · hyponatraemia · nausea · nystagmus · skin reactions · vertigo · vision disorders · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Leucopenia
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · arrhythmia · atrioventricular block · hepatitis · hypothyroidism · pancreatitis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) · thrombocytopenia
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · bone disorders · bone marrow disorders · hypertension · inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion like-syndrome · neutropenia · speech impairment

### ● ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY

Caution in patients with hypersensitivity to carbamazepine. Antiepileptic hypersensitivity syndrome associated with oxcarbazepine. See under Epilepsy p. 191 for more information.

### ● PREGNANCY

**Monitoring** The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

### ● BREAST FEEDING

Amount probably too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Caution in severe impairment—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Halve initial dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, increase according to response at intervals of at least 1 week.
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Test for HLA-B\*1502 allele in individuals of Han Chinese or Thai origin (avoid unless no alternative—risk of Stevens-Johnson syndrome in presence of HLA-B\*1502 allele).
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Monitor plasma-sodium concentration in patients at risk of hyponatraemia.
  - ▶ Monitor body-weight in patients with heart failure.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Patients may need to be maintained on a specific manufacturer's branded or generic oxcarbazepine product. Switching between formulations Care should be taken when switching between oral formulations. The need for continued supply of a particular manufacturer's product should be based on clinical judgement and consultation with the patient or their carer, taking into account factors such as seizure frequency and treatment history.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
 Blood, hepatic, or skin disorders Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of blood, liver, or skin disorders, and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as lethargy, confusion, muscular twitching, fever, rash, blistering, mouth ulcers, bruising, or bleeding develop.  
 Medicines for Children: Oxcarbazepine for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/oxcarbazepine-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/oxcarbazepine-for-preventing-seizures)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

##### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 8

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

- ▶ **Trileptal** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Oxcarbazepine 60 mg per 1 mL** Trileptal 60mg/mL oral suspension sugar-free | 250 mL [PoM] £48.96 DT = £48.96

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 8

- ▶ **Oxcarbazepine (Non-proprietary)**

**Oxcarbazepine 150 mg** Oxcarbazepine 150mg tablets | 50 tablet [PoM] £11.14 DT = £8.37

**Oxcarbazepine 300 mg** Oxcarbazepine 300mg tablets | 50 tablet [PoM] £22.61 DT = £6.43

**Oxcarbazepine 600 mg** Oxcarbazepine 600mg tablets | 50 tablet [PoM] £45.19 DT = £38.71

- ▶ **Trileptal** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Oxcarbazepine 150 mg** Trileptal 150mg tablets | 50 tablet [PoM] £12.24 DT = £8.37

**Oxcarbazepine 300 mg** Trileptal 300mg tablets | 50 tablet [PoM] £24.48 DT = £6.43

**Oxcarbazepine 600 mg** Trileptal 600mg tablets | 50 tablet [PoM] £48.96 DT = £38.71

## Perampanel

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Adjunctive treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalised seizures**

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12-17 years: Initially 2 mg once daily, dose to be taken before bedtime, then increased, if tolerated, in steps of 2 mg at intervals of at least every 2 weeks,

adjusted according to response; maintenance 4–8 mg once daily; maximum 12 mg per day

#### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- ▶ Titrate at intervals of at least 1 week with concomitant carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, oxcarbazepine, or phenytoin.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anxiety · appetite abnormal · back pain · behaviour abnormal · confusion · dizziness · drowsiness · dysarthria · fatigue · gait abnormal · irritability · movement disorders · nausea · vertigo · vision disorders · weight increased

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid.

- ▶ **Monitoring** The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—present in milk in *animal* studies.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.

**Dose adjustments** Increase at intervals of at least 2 weeks, up to max. 8 mg daily in mild or moderate impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in moderate or severe impairment.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

Switching between formulations Care should be taken when switching between oral formulations. The need for continued supply of a particular manufacturer's product should be based on clinical judgement and consultation with the patient or their carer, taking into account factors such as seizure frequency and treatment history.

Patients may need to be maintained on a specific manufacturer's branded or generic perampanel product.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 8, 25

- ▶ **Fycampa** (Eisai Ltd)

**Perampanel 2 mg** Fycampa 2mg tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £35.00 DT = £35.00 | 28 tablet [PoM] £140.00 DT = £140.00

**Perampanel 4 mg** Fycampa 4mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £140.00 DT = £140.00

**Perampanel 6 mg** Fycampa 6mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £140.00 DT = £140.00

**Perampanel 8 mg** Fycampa 8mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £140.00 DT = £140.00

**Perampanel 10 mg** Fycampa 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £140.00 DT = £140.00

**Perampanel 12 mg** Fycampa 12mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £140.00 DT = £140.00

## Phenytoin

19-Apr-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Tonic-clonic seizures | Focal seizures**

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month-11 years: Initially 1.5–2.5 mg/kg twice daily, then adjusted according to response to 2.5–5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 7.5 mg/kg twice daily), dose also adjusted according to plasma-phenytoin concentration; maximum 300 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12-17 years: Initially 75–150 mg twice daily, then adjusted according to response to 150–200 mg twice daily (max. per dose 300 mg twice daily), dose also adjusted according to plasma-phenytoin concentration

continued →

## ► INITIALLY BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Loading dose 18 mg/kg, dose to be administered over 20–30 minutes, then (by mouth) 2.5–5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 7.5 mg/kg twice daily), adjusted according to response, dose also adjusted according to plasma-phenytoin concentration.

**Prevention and treatment of seizures during or following neurosurgery or severe head injury**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Initially 2.5 mg/kg twice daily, then adjusted according to response to 4–8 mg/kg daily, dose also adjusted according to plasma-phenytoin concentration; maximum 300 mg per day

**Status epilepticus | Acute symptomatic seizures associated with head trauma or neurosurgery**

## ► INITIALLY BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: Loading dose 20 mg/kg, then (by slow intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion) 2.5–5 mg/kg twice daily.
- Child 1 month–11 years: Loading dose 20 mg/kg, then (by slow intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion) 2.5–5 mg/kg twice daily
- Child 12–17 years: Loading dose 20 mg/kg, then (by intravenous infusion or by slow intravenous injection) up to 100 mg 3–4 times a day

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- Preparations containing phenytoin sodium are **not** bioequivalent to those containing phenytoin base (such as *Epanutin Infatabs*® and *Epanutin*® suspension); 100 mg of phenytoin sodium is approximately equivalent in therapeutic effect to 92 mg phenytoin base. The dose is the same for all phenytoin products when initiating therapy. However, if switching between these products the difference in phenytoin content may be clinically significant. Care is needed when making changes between formulations and plasma-phenytoin concentration monitoring is recommended.

● **UNLICENSED USE**

- With oral use Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).
- With intravenous use Phenytoin doses in BNF publications may differ from those in product literature.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

NHS IMPROVEMENT PATIENT SAFETY ALERT: RISK OF DEATH AND SEVERE HARM FROM ERROR WITH INJECTABLE PHENYTOIN (NOVEMBER 2016)

Use of injectable phenytoin is error-prone throughout the prescribing, preparation, administration and monitoring processes; all relevant staff should be made aware of appropriate guidance on the safe use of injectable phenytoin to reduce the risk of error.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS**

**GENERAL CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603

**SPECIFIC CONTRA-INDICATIONS**

- With intravenous use Second- and third-degree heart block · sino-atrial block · sinus bradycardia · Stokes-Adams syndrome

● **CAUTIONS**

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Enteral feeding (interrupt feeding for 2 hours before and after dose; more frequent monitoring may be necessary)

**SPECIFIC CAUTIONS**

- With intravenous use Heart failure · hypotension · injection solutions alkaline (irritant to tissues) · respiratory depression · resuscitation facilities must be available

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Consider vitamin D supplementation in patients who are immobilised for long periods or who have inadequate sun exposure or dietary intake of calcium.

Intramuscular phenytoin should not be used (absorption is slow and erratic).

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS** Agranulocytosis · bone disorders · bone fracture · bone marrow disorders · cerebrovascular insufficiency · coarsening of the facial features · confusion · constipation · dizziness · drowsiness · Dupuytren's contracture · dysarthria · eosinophilia · fever · gingival hyperplasia (maintain good oral hygiene) · granulocytopenia · hair changes · headache · hepatic disorders · hypersensitivity · insomnia · joint disorders · leucopenia · lip swelling · lymphatic abnormalities · macrocytosis · megaloblastic anaemia · movement disorders · muscle twitching · nausea · neoplasms · nephritis tubulointerstitial · nervousness · nystagmus · paraesthesia · Peyronie's disease · polyarteritis nodosa · pseudolymphoma · sensory peripheral polyneuropathy · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) · taste altered · thrombocytopenia · tremor · vertigo · vomiting

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- With oral use Electrolyte imbalance · pneumonitis · vitamin D deficiency
- With parenteral use Arrhythmias · atrial conduction depression (more common if injection too rapid) · cardiac arrest · hypotension · purple glove syndrome · respiratory arrest (more common if injection too rapid) · respiratory disorders · tonic seizure (more common if injection too rapid) · ventricular conduction depression (more common if injection too rapid) · ventricular fibrillation (more common if injection too rapid)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

**Rash** Discontinue; if mild re-introduce cautiously but discontinue immediately if recurrence.

**Bradycardia and hypotension** With intravenous use; reduce rate of administration if bradycardia or hypotension occurs.

**Overdose** Symptoms of phenytoin toxicity include nystagmus, diplopia, slurred speech, ataxia, confusion, and hyperglycaemia.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Cross-sensitivity reported with carbamazepine. Antiepileptic hypersensitivity syndrome associated with phenytoin. See under Epilepsy p. 191 for more information.

● **PREGNANCY**

**Monitoring** Changes in plasma-protein binding make interpretation of plasma-phenytoin concentrations difficult—monitor unbound fraction.

Doses should be adjusted on the basis of plasma-drug concentration monitoring.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Small amounts present in milk, but not known to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose to avoid toxicity.
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** HLAB\* 1502 allele in individuals of Han Chinese or Thai origin—avoid unless essential (increased risk of Stevens-Johnson syndrome).
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - Therapeutic plasma-phenytoin concentrations reduced in first 3 months of life because of reduced protein binding.



- ▶ Trough plasma concentration for optimum response: neonate–3 months, 6–15 mg/litre (25–60 micromol/litre); child 3 months–18 years, 10–20 mg/litre (40–80 micromol/litre).
- ▶ Manufacturer recommends blood counts (but evidence of practical value uncertain).
- ▶ With intravenous use Monitor ECG and blood pressure.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises each injection or infusion should be preceded and followed by an injection of Sodium Chloride 0.9% through the same needle or catheter to avoid local venous irritation.
- ▶ With intravenous use **[EvGr]** For intravenous injection, give into a large vein at a rate not exceeding 1 mg/kg/minute (max. 50 mg/minute). **[D]** Manufacturer advises for intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration not exceeding 10 mg/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give into a large vein through an in-line filter (0.22–0.50 micron). **[EvGr]** Give at a rate not exceeding 1 mg/kg/minute (max. 50 mg/minute). **[D]** Complete administration within 1 hour of preparation.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Switching between formulations Different formulations of oral preparations may vary in bioavailability. Patients being treated for epilepsy should be maintained on a specific manufacturer's product.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Blood or skin disorders Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of blood or skin disorders, and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as fever, rash, mouth ulcers, bruising, or bleeding develop. Leucopenia that is severe, progressive, or associated with clinical symptoms requires withdrawal (if necessary under cover of a suitable alternative). Medicines for Children leaflet: Phenytoin for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/phenytoin-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/phenytoin-for-preventing-seizures)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

##### ▶ Phenytoin (Non-proprietary)

Phenytoin sodium 100 mg Phenytoin sodium 100mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £30.00 DT = £13.89

#### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol, propylene glycol

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

##### ▶ Phenytoin (Non-proprietary)

Phenytoin sodium 50 mg per 1 ml Phenytoin sodium 250mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule **[PoM]** £24.40 (Hospital only)

##### ▶ Epanutin (Pfizer Ltd)

Phenytoin sodium 50 mg per 1 ml Epanutin Ready-Mixed Parenteral 250mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule **[PoM]** £48.79 (Hospital only)

#### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

##### ▶ Epanutin (Pfizer Ltd)

Phenytoin 6 mg per 1 ml Epanutin 30mg/5ml oral suspension | 500 ml **[PoM]** £4.27 DT = £4.27

#### Chewable tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 24

##### ▶ Epanutin (Pfizer Ltd)

Phenytoin 50 mg Epanutin Infatabs 50mg chewable tablets | 200 tablet **[PoM]** £13.18

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

##### ▶ Phenytoin (Non-proprietary)

Phenytoin sodium 25 mg Phenytoin sodium 25mg capsules | 28 capsule **[PoM]** £7.24 DT = £7.24

Phenytoin sodium 50 mg Phenytoin sodium 50mg capsules | 28 capsule **[PoM]** £7.07 DT = £7.07

Phenytoin sodium 100 mg Phenytoin sodium 100mg capsules | 84 capsule **[PoM]** £67.50 DT = £9.14

Phenytoin sodium 300 mg Phenytoin sodium 300mg capsules | 28 capsule **[PoM]** £9.11 DT = £9.11

## Rufinamide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Adjunctive treatment of seizures in Lennox-Gastaut syndrome

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 4–17 years (body-weight up to 30 kg): Initially 100 mg twice daily, then increased in steps of 100 mg twice daily (max. per dose 500 mg twice daily), adjusted according to response, dose to be increased at intervals of not less than 2 days
- ▶ Child 4–17 years (body-weight 30–49 kg): Initially 200 mg twice daily, then increased in steps of 200 mg twice daily (max. per dose 900 mg twice daily), adjusted according to response, dose to be increased at intervals of not less than 2 days
- ▶ Child 4–17 years (body-weight 50–69 kg): Initially 200 mg twice daily, then increased in steps of 200 mg twice daily (max. per dose 1.2 g twice daily), adjusted according to response, dose to be increased at intervals of not less than 2 days
- ▶ Child 4–17 years (body-weight 70 kg and above): Initially 200 mg twice daily, then increased in steps of 200 mg twice daily (max. per dose 1.6 g twice daily), adjusted according to response, dose to be increased at intervals of not less than 2 days

#### Adjunctive treatment of seizures in Lennox-Gastaut syndrome with valproate

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 4–17 years (body-weight up to 30 kg): Initially 100 mg twice daily, then increased in steps of 100 mg twice daily (max. per dose 300 mg twice daily), adjusted according to response, dose to be increased at intervals of not less than 2 days

### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anxiety · appetite decreased · back pain · constipation · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · eating disorder · epistaxis · fatigue · gait abnormal · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · increased risk of infection · insomnia · movement disorders · nausea · nystagmus · oligomenorrhoea · seizures · skin reactions · tremor · vertigo · vision disorders · vomiting · weight decreased

#### ▶ Uncommon Hypersensitivity

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Antiepileptic hypersensitivity syndrome associated with rufinamide. See under Epilepsy p. 191 for more information.

### ● PREGNANCY

**Monitoring** The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.

**Dose adjustments** Caution and careful dose titration in mild to moderate impairment.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets may be crushed and given in half a glass of water.

### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Switching between formulations Care should be taken when switching between oral formulations. The need for continued supply of a particular manufacturer's product should be based on clinical judgement and consultation with the patient or their carer, taking into account factors such as seizure frequency and treatment history.

Patients may need to be maintained on a specific manufacturer's branded or generic rufinamide product.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Counselling on antiepileptic hypersensitivity syndrome is advised.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Rufinamide for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/rufinamide-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/rufinamide-for-preventing-seizures)

- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (October 2008) that rufinamide (*Inovelon*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland as adjunctive therapy in the treatment of seizures associated with Lennox-Gastaut syndrome in patients 4 years and above. It is restricted for use when alternative traditional antiepileptic drugs are unsatisfactory.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 21

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

- ▶ **Inovelon** (Eisai Ltd)

**Rufinamide 40 mg per 1 ml** Inovelon 40mg/ml oral suspension sugar-free | 460 ml [PoM](#) £94.71 DT = £94.71

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 21

- ▶ **Inovelon** (Eisai Ltd)

**Rufinamide 100 mg** Inovelon 100mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM](#) £5.15

**Rufinamide 200 mg** Inovelon 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM](#) £61.77

**Rufinamide 400 mg** Inovelon 400mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM](#) £102.96

## Sodium valproate

24-Apr-2018

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### All forms of epilepsy

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 20 mg/kg once daily; maintenance 10 mg/kg twice daily.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 10–15 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses (max. per dose 600 mg); maintenance 25–30 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses, doses up to 60 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses may be used in infantile spasms; monitor clinical chemistry and haematological parameters if dose exceeds 40 mg/kg daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 600 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, increased in steps of 150–300 mg every 3 days; maintenance 1–2 g daily in 2 divided doses; maximum 2.5 g per day
- ▶ BY RECTUM
- ▶ Neonate: Initially 20 mg/kg once daily; maintenance 10 mg/kg twice daily.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 10–15 mg/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses (max. per dose 600 mg); maintenance 25–30 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses, doses up to 60 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses may be used in infantile spasms; monitor clinical chemistry and haematological parameters if dose exceeds 40 mg/kg daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 600 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, increased in steps of 150–300 mg every 3 days; maintenance 1–2 g daily in 2 divided doses; maximum 2.5 g per day

### Initiation of valproate treatment

- ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: 10 mg/kg twice daily.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 10 mg/kg, then (by intravenous infusion or by intravenous injection) increased to 20–40 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses, alternatively (by continuous intravenous infusion) increased to 20–40 mg/kg daily, monitor clinical chemistry and haematological parameters if dose exceeds 40 mg/kg daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 10 mg/kg, followed by (by intravenous infusion or by intravenous injection) up to 2.5 g daily in 2–4 divided doses, alternatively (by continuous intravenous infusion) up to 2.5 g daily; (by intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion or by continuous intravenous infusion) usual dose 1–2 g daily, alternatively (by intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion or by continuous intravenous infusion) usual dose 20–30 mg/kg daily, intravenous injection to be administered over 3–5 minutes

### Continuation of valproate treatment

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: If switching from oral therapy to intravenous therapy give the same dose as current oral daily dose, give over 3–5 minutes by intravenous injection or in 2–4 divided doses by intravenous infusion

### EPILEPSY CHRONOSPHERE®

#### All forms of epilepsy

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: Total daily dose to be given in 1–2 divided doses (consult product literature)

### EPILEPSY CHRONO®

#### All forms of epilepsy

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child (body-weight 20 kg and above): Total daily dose to be given in 1–2 divided doses (consult product literature)

### EPISENTA® CAPSULES

#### All forms of epilepsy

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: Total daily dose to be given in 1–2 divided doses (consult product literature)

### EPISENTA® GRANULES

#### All forms of epilepsy

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: Total daily dose to be given in 1–2 divided doses (consult product literature)

### EPIVAL®

#### All forms of epilepsy

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: Total daily dose to be given in 1–2 divided doses (consult product literature)

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: VALPROATE MEDICINES: CONTRA-INDICATED IN WOMEN AND GIRLS OF CHILDBEARING POTENTIAL UNLESS CONDITIONS OF PREGNANCY PREVENTION PROGRAMME ARE MET (APRIL 2018)

Valproate is highly teratogenic and evidence supports that use in pregnancy leads to neurodevelopmental disorders (approx. 30–40% risk) and congenital malformations (approx. 10% risk).

Valproate must not be used in women and girls of childbearing potential unless the conditions of the Pregnancy Prevention Programme are met (see *Conception and contraception*) and only if other

treatments are ineffective or not tolerated, as judged by an experienced specialist.

Use of valproate in pregnancy is contra-indicated for migraine prophylaxis [unlicensed] and bipolar disorder; it must only be considered for epilepsy if there is no suitable alternative treatment (see *Pregnancy*).

Women and girls (and their carers) must be fully informed of the risks and the need to avoid exposure to valproate medicines in pregnancy; supporting materials have been provided to use in the implementation of the Pregnancy Prevention Programme (see *Prescribing and dispensing Information*). The MHRA advises that:

- GPs must recall all women and girls who may be of childbearing potential, provide the Patient Guide, check they have been reviewed by a specialist in the last year and are on highly effective contraception;
- Specialists must book in review appointments at least annually with women and girls under the Pregnancy Prevention Programme, re-evaluate treatment as necessary, explain clearly the conditions as outlined in the supporting materials and complete and sign the Risk Acknowledgement Form—copies of the form must be given to the patient or carer and sent to their GP;
- Pharmacists must ensure valproate medicines are dispensed in whole packs whenever possible—all packs dispensed to women and girls of childbearing potential should have a warning label either on the carton or via a sticker. They must also discuss risks in pregnancy with female patients each time valproate medicines are dispensed, ensure they have the Patient Guide and have seen their GP or specialist to discuss their treatment and the need for contraception.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · known or suspected mitochondrial disorders (higher rate of acute liver failure and liver-related deaths) · personal or family history of severe hepatic dysfunction

● **CAUTIONS** Systemic lupus erythematosus

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Consider vitamin D supplementation in patients that are immobilised for long periods or who have inadequate sun exposure or dietary intake of calcium.

- ▶ Liver toxicity Liver dysfunction (including fatal hepatic failure) has occurred in association with valproate (especially in children under 3 years and in those with metabolic or degenerative disorders, organic brain disease or severe seizure disorders associated with mental retardation) usually in first 6 months and usually involving multiple antiepileptic therapy. Raised liver enzymes during valproate treatment are usually transient but patients should be reassessed clinically and liver function (including prothrombin time) monitored until return to normal—discontinue if abnormally prolonged prothrombin time (particularly in association with other relevant abnormalities).

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · agitation · alopecia (regrowth may be curly) · anaemia · behaviour abnormal · concentration impaired · confusion · deafness · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · haemorrhage · headache · hepatic disorders · hypersensitivity · hyponatraemia · memory loss · menstrual cycle irregularities · movement disorders · nausea · nystagmus · seizures · stupor · thrombocytopenia · tremor · weight increased
- ▶ **Uncommon** Angioedema · bone disorders · bone fracture · bone marrow disorders · coma · encephalopathy · leucopenia · pancreatitis · paraesthesia · parkinsonism · peripheral oedema · pleural effusion · SIADH · skin reactions · vasculitis

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · cerebral atrophy · cognitive disorder · dementia · enuresis · gynaecomastia · hirsutism · hyperammonaemia · hypothyroidism · infertility male · learning disability · myelodysplastic syndrome · polycystic ovaries · red blood cell abnormalities · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) · urine abnormalities

- ▶ **Frequency not known** Alertness increased · hallucination

#### **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION**



**Hepatic dysfunction** Withdraw treatment immediately if persistent vomiting and abdominal pain, anorexia, jaundice, oedema, malaise, drowsiness, or loss of seizure control.

**Pancreatitis** Discontinue treatment if symptoms of pancreatitis develop.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** The MHRA advises that all women and girls of childbearing potential being treated with valproate medicines must be supported on a Pregnancy Prevention Programme—pregnancy should be excluded before treatment initiation and highly effective contraception must be used during treatment.
- **PREGNANCY** For *migraine prophylaxis* [unlicensed] and *bipolar disorder*, the MHRA advises that valproate must not be used. For *epilepsy*, the MHRA advises valproate must not be used unless there is no suitable alternative treatment; in such cases, access to counselling about the risks should be provided (see Healthcare Professional Guide for more information) and a Risk Acknowledgement Form signed by both specialist and patient. If valproate is to be used during pregnancy, the lowest effective dose should be prescribed in divided doses or as modified-release tablets to avoid peaks in plasma-valproate concentrations; doses greater than 1 g daily are associated with an increased risk of teratogenicity. Neonatal bleeding (related to hypofibrinaemia) reported. Neonatal hepatotoxicity also reported.

**Monitoring** Specialist prenatal monitoring should be instigated when valproate has been taken in pregnancy.

The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—risk of haematological disorders in breast-fed newborns and infants.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible—hepatotoxicity and hepatic failure may occasionally occur (usually in first 6 months). Avoid in active liver disease.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
- ▶ Plasma-valproate concentrations are not a useful index of efficacy, therefore routine monitoring is unhelpful.
- ▶ Monitor liver function before therapy and during first 6 months especially in patients most at risk.
- ▶ Measure full blood count and ensure no undue potential for bleeding before starting and before surgery.
- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** False-positive urine tests for ketones.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION**  Avoid abrupt withdrawal; if treatment with valproate is stopped, reduce the dose gradually over at least 4 weeks. 

#### **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous injection*, may be diluted in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and given over 3–5 minutes. For *intravenous infusion*, dilute injection solution with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.
- ▶ With rectal use For *rectal administration*, sodium valproate oral solution may be given rectally and retained for 15 minutes (may require dilution with water to prevent rapid expulsion).

**EPIVAL**® Tablets may be halved but not crushed or

**EPISENTA® CAPSULES** Contents of capsule may be mixed with cold soft food or drink and swallowed immediately without chewing.

**EPIlim® SYRUP** May be diluted, preferably in Syrup BP; use within 14 days.

**EPISENTA® GRANULES** Granules may be mixed with cold soft food or drink and swallowed immediately without chewing.

**EPIlim CHRONOSPHERE®** Granules may be mixed with soft food or drink that is cold or at room temperature, and swallowed immediately without chewing.

- PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The Pregnancy Prevention Programme is supported by the following materials provided by the manufacturer: *Patient Guide, Guide for Healthcare Professionals, Risk Acknowledgement Form*, and for pharmacists, *Patient Cards and Stickers with warning symbols*; the MHRA has also produced a patient information sheet providing advice for women and girls taking valproate medicines. Switching between formulations Care should be taken when switching between oral formulations in the treatment of epilepsy. The need for continued supply of a particular manufacturer's product should be based on clinical judgement and consultation with the patient or their carer, taking into account factors such as seizure frequency and treatment history.

Patients being treated for epilepsy may need to be maintained on a specific manufacturer's branded or generic oral sodium valproate product.

**EPIlim CHRONOSPHERE®** Prescribe dose to the nearest whole 50-mg sachet.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Valproate use by women and girls The MHRA advises women and girls should **not** stop taking valproate without first discussing it with their doctor.

Blood or hepatic disorders Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs and symptoms of blood or liver disorders and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms develop.

Pancreatitis Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs and symptoms of pancreatitis and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as abdominal pain, nausea, or vomiting develop.

Pregnancy Prevention Programme Pharmacists must ensure that female patients have a patient card—see also *Important safety information*.

Medicines for children leaflet: Sodium valproate for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sodium-valproate-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sodium-valproate-for-preventing-seizures)

**EPISENTA® CAPSULES** Patients and carers should be counselled on the administration of capsules.

**EPISENTA® GRANULES** Patients and carers should be counselled on the administration of granules.

**EPIlim CHRONOSPHERE®** Patients and carers should be counselled on the administration of granules.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, suppository

##### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10, 21, 25

- Epilim Chrono (Sanofi) ▼**  
**Sodium valproate 200 mg** Epilim Chrono 200 tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £11.65 DT = £11.65  
**Sodium valproate 300 mg** Epilim Chrono 300 tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £17.47 DT = £17.47  
**Sodium valproate 500 mg** Epilim Chrono 500 tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £29.10 DT = £29.10

##### Gastro-resistant tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 8, 10, 25

- Sodium valproate (non-proprietary) ▼**  
**Sodium valproate 200 mg** Sodium valproate 200mg gastro-resistant tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £7.70 DT = £4.04  
**Sodium valproate 500 mg** Sodium valproate 500mg gastro-resistant tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £19.25 DT = £7.50
- Epilim (Sanofi) ▼**  
**Sodium valproate 200 mg** Epilim 200 gastro-resistant tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £7.70 DT = £4.04  
**Sodium valproate 500 mg** Epilim 500 gastro-resistant tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £19.25 DT = £7.50

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10, 21

- Epilim (Sanofi) ▼**  
**Sodium valproate 100 mg** Epilim 100mg crushable tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £5.60 DT = £5.60

##### Powder and solvent for solution for injection

- Sodium valproate (non-proprietary) ▼**  
**Sodium valproate 400 mg** Sodium valproate 400mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 4 vial [PoM] £49.00

##### Solution for injection

- Sodium valproate (non-proprietary) ▼**  
**Sodium valproate 100 mg per 1 ml** Sodium valproate 400mg/4ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £57.90

##### Modified-release capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10, 21, 25

- Episentia (Desitin Pharma Ltd) ▼**  
**Sodium valproate 150 mg** Episentia 150mg modified-release capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £7.00  
**Sodium valproate 300 mg** Episentia 300mg modified-release capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £13.00 DT = £13.00

##### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10, 21

- Sodium valproate (non-proprietary) ▼**  
**Sodium valproate 40 mg per 1 ml** Sodium valproate 200mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM] £4.46-£7.78 DT = £4.46
- Epilim (Sanofi) ▼**  
**Sodium valproate 40 mg per 1 ml** Epilim 200mg/5ml liquid sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM] £7.78 DT = £4.46  
**Sodium 200mg/5ml syrup** | 300 ml [PoM] £9.33 DT = £9.33

##### Modified-release granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10, 21, 25

- Epilim Chronosphere MR (Sanofi) ▼**  
**Sodium valproate 50 mg** Epilim Chronosphere MR 50mg granules sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £30.00  
**Sodium valproate 100 mg** Epilim Chronosphere MR 100mg granules sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £30.00 DT = £30.00  
**Sodium valproate 250 mg** Epilim Chronosphere MR 250mg granules sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £30.00 DT = £30.00  
**Sodium valproate 500 mg** Epilim Chronosphere MR 500mg granules sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £30.00 DT = £30.00  
**Sodium valproate 750 mg** Epilim Chronosphere MR 750mg granules sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £30.00 DT = £30.00  
**Sodium valproate 1 gram** Epilim Chronosphere MR 1000mg granules sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £30.00 DT = £30.00
- Episentia (Desitin Pharma Ltd) ▼**  
**Sodium valproate 500 mg** Episentia 500mg modified-release granules sachets sugar-free | 100 sachet [PoM] £21.00 DT = £21.00  
**Sodium valproate 1 gram** Episentia 1000mg modified-release granules sachets sugar-free | 100 sachet [PoM] £41.00 DT = £41.00

## Stiripentol

26-Oct-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Adjunctive therapy of refractory generalised tonic-clonic seizures in children with severe myoclonic epilepsy in infancy (Dravet Syndrome) in combination with clobazam and valproate (under expert supervision)**

► BY MOUTH

- Child 3-17 years:** Initially 10 mg/kg daily in 2–3 divided doses, increased to up to 50 mg/kg daily in 2–3 divided doses, titrated over minimum of 3 days

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of psychosis

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Aggression · agitation · appetite decreased · drowsiness · irritability · movement disorders · muscle tone decreased · nausea · neutropenia · sleep disorder · vomiting · weight decreased
- **Uncommon** Fatigue · photosensitivity reaction · skin reactions

• **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Antiepileptic hypersensitivity syndrome theoretically associated with stiripentol. See under Epilepsy p. 191 for more information.

### • PREGNANCY

**Monitoring** The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

• **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in *animal* studies.

• **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid—no information available.

• **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid—no information available.

### • MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Perform full blood count and liver function tests prior to initiating treatment and every 6 months thereafter.
- Monitor growth.

• **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Do not take with milk, dairy products, carbonated drinks, fruit juice, or with food or drinks that contains caffeine.

### • PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Stiripentol for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/stiripentol-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/stiripentol-for-preventing-seizures)

### • NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (September 2017) that stiripentol (*Diacomit*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland in conjunction with clobazam and valproate as adjunctive therapy of refractory generalised tonic-clonic seizures in patients with severe myoclonic epilepsy in infancy whose seizures are not adequately controlled with clobazam and valproate.

#### All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (November 2017) that stiripentol (*Diacomit*®) is recommended for use within NHS Wales for use in conjunction with clobazam and valproate as adjunctive therapy of refractory generalized tonic-clonic seizures in patients with severe myoclonic epilepsy in infancy (SMEI, Dravet syndrome) whose seizures are not adequately controlled with clobazam and valproate.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 1, 8, 13, 21  
EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

- **Diacomit** (Alan Pharmaceuticals)

**Stiripentol 250 mg** Diacomit 250mg oral powder sachets | 60 sachet [PoM] £284.00 DT = £284.00

**Stiripentol 500 mg** Diacomit 500mg oral powder sachets | 60 sachet [PoM] £493.00

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 1, 8, 21

- **Diacomit** (Alan Pharmaceuticals)

**Stiripentol 250 mg** Diacomit 250mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £284.00 DT = £284.00

**Stiripentol 500 mg** Diacomit 500mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £493.00

## Tiagabine

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Adjunctive treatment for focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation that are not satisfactorily controlled by other antiepileptics (with enzyme-inducing drugs)**

- **BY MOUTH**

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 5–10 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, then increased in steps of 5–10 mg/24 hours every week; maintenance 30–45 mg daily in 2–3 divided doses

**Adjunctive treatment for focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation that are not satisfactorily controlled by other antiepileptics (without enzyme-inducing drugs)**

- **BY MOUTH**

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 5–10 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, then increased in steps of 5–10 mg/24 hours every week; maintenance 15–30 mg daily in 2–3 divided doses

• **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Tiagabine should be avoided in absence, myoclonic, tonic and atonic seizures due to risk of seizure exacerbation.

• **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · behaviour abnormal · concentration impaired · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · emotional lability · fatigue · gait abnormal · insomnia · nausea · nervousness · speech disorder · tremor · vision disorders · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Drowsiness · psychosis · skin reactions
- **Rare or very rare** Delusions · hallucination

### • PREGNANCY

**Monitoring** The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

• **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.

**Dose adjustments** In mild to moderate impairment reduce dose, prolong the dose interval, or both.

### • PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Tiagabine for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tiagabine-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tiagabine-for-preventing-seizures)

**Driving and skilled tasks** May impair performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- **Gabitril** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Tiagabine (as Tiagabine hydrochloride monohydrate)**

**5 mg** Gabitril 5mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £52.04

**Tiagabine (as Tiagabine hydrochloride monohydrate)**

**10 mg** Gabitril 10mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £104.09

**Tiagabine (as Tiagabine hydrochloride monohydrate)**

**15 mg** Gabitril 15mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £156.13



## Topiramate

25-Jan-2018

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Monotherapy of generalised tonic-clonic seizures or focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–17 years: Initially 0.5–1 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 25 mg) for 1 week, dose to be taken at night, then increased in steps of 250–500 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be increased by a maximum of 25 mg twice daily at intervals of 1–2 weeks; usual dose 50 mg twice daily (max. per dose 7.5 mg/kg twice daily), if child cannot tolerate titration regimens recommended above then smaller steps or longer interval between steps may be used; maximum 500 mg per day

#### Adjunctive treatment of generalised tonic-clonic seizures or focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation | Adjunctive treatment for seizures associated with Lennox-Gastaut syndrome

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–17 years: Initially 1–3 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 25 mg) for 1 week, dose to be taken at night, then increased in steps of 0.5–1.5 mg/kg twice daily, dose to be increased by a maximum of 25 mg twice daily at intervals of 1–2 weeks; usual dose 2.5–4.5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 7.5 mg/kg twice daily), if child cannot tolerate recommended titration regimen then smaller steps or longer interval between steps may be used; maximum 400 mg per day

#### Migraine prophylaxis

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 16–17 years: Initially 25 mg once daily for 1 week, dose to be taken at night, then increased in steps of 25 mg every week; usual dose 50–100 mg daily in 2 divided doses, if child cannot tolerate recommended titration regimen then smaller steps or longer interval between steps may be used; maximum 200 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for migraine prophylaxis.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 • risk of metabolic acidosis • risk of nephrolithiasis—ensure adequate hydration (especially in strenuous activity or warm environment)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Alopecia • anaemia • anxiety • appetite abnormal • asthenia • behaviour abnormal • cognitive impairment • concentration impaired • confusion • constipation • cough • depression • diarrhoea • dizziness • drowsiness • dry mouth • dyspnoea • ear discomfort • eye disorders • feeling abnormal • fever • gait abnormal • gastrointestinal discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • haemorrhage • hearing impairment • hypersensitivity • joint disorders • malaise • memory loss • mood altered • movement disorders • muscle complaints • muscle weakness • nasal complaints • nasopharyngitis • nausea • oral disorders • pain • seizures • sensation abnormal • skin reactions • sleep disorders • speech impairment • taste altered • tremor • urinary disorders • urolithiasis • vertigo • vision disorders • vomiting • weight changes
- **Uncommon** Abnormal sensation in eye • anhidrosis • arrhythmias • aura • cerebellar syndrome • consciousness impaired • crying • drooling • dry eye • dysgraphia • dysphonia • eosinophilia • facial swelling • hallucinations • hyperthermia • hypokalaemia • hypotension • influenza like illness • learning disability • leucopenia • lymphadenopathy • metabolic acidosis • musculoskeletal stiffness • palpitations • pancreatitis • paranasal sinus hypersecretion • peripheral coldness • peripheral neuropathy • polydipsia •

psychotic disorder • renal pain • sexual dysfunction • smell altered • suicidal tendencies • syncope • thinking abnormal • thirst • thrombocytopenia • vasodilation

- **Rare or very rare** Eye inflammation • face oedema • glaucoma • hepatic disorders • limb discomfort • neutropenia • Raynaud's phenomenon • renal tubular acidosis • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • unresponsive to stimuli

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Topiramate has been associated with acute myopia with secondary angle-closure glaucoma, typically occurring within 1 month of starting treatment. Choroidal effusions resulting in anterior displacement of the lens and iris have also been reported. If raised intra-ocular pressure occurs: seek specialist ophthalmological advice; use appropriate measures to reduce intra-ocular pressure and stop topiramate as rapidly as feasible.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises perform pregnancy test before the initiation of treatment—a highly effective contraceptive method is advised in women of child-bearing potential; patients should be fully informed of the risks related to the use of topiramate during pregnancy.

- **PREGNANCY** Increased risk of major congenital malformations following exposure during the first trimester. *For migraine prophylaxis* manufacturer advises avoid. *For epilepsy* manufacturer advises consider alternative treatment options.

**Monitoring** Manufacturer advises in case of administration during first trimester, careful prenatal monitoring should be performed.

It is recommended that the fetal growth should be monitored.

The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in moderate to severe impairment—clearance may be reduced.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

**Dose adjustments** Half usual starting and maintenance dose if estimated glomerular filtration less than 70 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—reduced clearance and longer time to steady-state plasma concentration.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** *Topamax® Sprinkle* capsules can either be swallowed whole or the contents of the capsule can be sprinkled on soft food and swallowed immediately without chewing.

**TOPAMAX® CAPSULES** Swallow whole or sprinkle contents of capsule on soft food and swallow immediately without chewing.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

Switching between formulations Care should be taken when switching between oral formulations in the treatment of epilepsy. The need for continued supply of a particular manufacturer's product should be based on clinical judgement and consultation with the patient or their carer, taking into account factors such as seizure frequency and treatment history.

Patients being treated for epilepsy may need to be maintained on a specific manufacturer's branded or generic topiramate product.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Topiramate for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/topiramate-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/topiramate-for-preventing-seizures)

**TOPAMAX® CAPSULES** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer *Topamax®* capsules.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 8

▶ **Topiramate (Non-proprietary)**

**Topiramate 25 mg** Topiramate 25mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]**  
£10.00 DT = £1.01

**Topiramate 50 mg** Topiramate 50mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]**  
£19.00 DT = £1.40

**Topiramate 100 mg** Topiramate 100mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]**  
£28.38 DT = £2.29

**Topiramate 200 mg** Topiramate 200mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]**  
£55.12 DT = £33.35

▶ **Topamax (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)**

**Topiramate 25 mg** Topamax 25mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]** £19.29  
DT = £1.01

**Topiramate 50 mg** Topamax 50mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]** £31.69  
DT = £1.40

**Topiramate 100 mg** Topamax 100mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]**  
£56.76 DT = £2.29

**Topiramate 200 mg** Topamax 200mg tablets | 60 tablet **[PoM]**  
£110.23 DT = £33.35

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 8

▶ **Topiramate (Non-proprietary)**

**Topiramate 15 mg** Topiramate 15mg capsules | 60 capsule **[PoM]**  
£30.00 DT = £27.82

**Topiramate 25 mg** Topiramate 25mg capsules | 60 capsule **[PoM]**  
£25.95 DT = £17.02

**Topiramate 50 mg** Topiramate 50mg capsules | 60 capsule **[PoM]**  
£60.00 DT = £56.35

▶ **Topamax (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)**

**Topiramate 15 mg** Topamax 15mg sprinkle capsules |  
60 capsule **[PoM]** £14.79 DT = £27.82

**Topiramate 25 mg** Topamax 25mg sprinkle capsules |  
60 capsule **[PoM]** £22.18 DT = £17.02

**Topiramate 50 mg** Topamax 50mg sprinkle capsules |  
60 capsule **[PoM]** £36.45 DT = £56.35

**Valproic acid**

24-Apr-2018

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****CONVULEX®****Epilepsy**▶ **BY MOUTH**

▶ **Child 1 month–11 years:** Initially 10–15 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses, max. 600 mg daily; usual maintenance 25–30 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses, doses up to 60 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses in infantile spasms; monitor clinical chemistry and haematological parameters if dose exceeds 40 mg/kg daily

▶ **Child 12–17 years:** Initially 600 mg daily in 2–4 divided doses, increased in steps of 150–300 mg every 3 days; usual maintenance 1–2 g daily in 2–4 divided doses, max. 2.5 g daily in 2–4 divided doses

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

▶ **Convulex®** has a 1:1 dose relationship with products containing sodium valproate, but nevertheless care is needed if switching or making changes.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

**MHRA/CHM ADVICE: VALPROATE MEDICINES: CONTRA-INDICATED IN WOMEN AND GIRLS OF CHILDBEARING POTENTIAL UNLESS CONDITIONS OF PREGNANCY PREVENTION PROGRAMME ARE MET (APRIL 2018)**

Valproate is highly teratogenic and evidence supports that use in pregnancy leads to neurodevelopmental disorders (approx. 30–40% risk) and congenital malformations (approx. 10% risk).

Valproate must not be used in women and girls of childbearing potential unless the conditions of the

Pregnancy Prevention Programme are met (see *Conception and contraception*) and only if other treatments are ineffective or not tolerated, as judged by an experienced specialist.

Use of valproate in pregnancy is contra-indicated for migraine prophylaxis [unlicensed] and bipolar disorder; it must only be considered for epilepsy if there is no suitable alternative treatment (see *Pregnancy*).

Women and girls (and their carers) must be fully informed of the risks and the need to avoid exposure to valproate medicines in pregnancy; supporting materials have been provided to use in the implementation of the Pregnancy Prevention Programme (see *Prescribing and dispensing information*). The MHRA advises that:

- GPs must recall all women and girls who may be of childbearing potential, provide the Patient Guide, check they have been reviewed by a specialist in the last year and are on highly effective contraception;
- Specialists must book in review appointments at least annually with women and girls under the Pregnancy Prevention Programme, re-evaluate treatment as necessary, explain clearly the conditions as outlined in the supporting materials and complete and sign the Risk Acknowledgement Form—copies of the form must be given to the patient or carer and sent to their GP;
- Pharmacists must ensure valproate medicines are dispensed in whole packs whenever possible—all packs dispensed to women and girls of childbearing potential should have a warning label either on the carton or via a sticker. They must also discuss risks in pregnancy with female patients each time valproate medicines are dispensed, ensure they have the Patient Guide and have seen their GP or specialist to discuss their treatment and the need for contraception.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · known or suspected mitochondrial disorders (higher rate of acute liver failure and liver-related deaths) · personal or family history of severe hepatic dysfunction

- **CAUTIONS** Systemic lupus erythematosus

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ **Liver toxicity** Liver dysfunction (including fatal hepatic failure) has occurred in association with valproate (especially in children under 3 years and in those with metabolic or degenerative disorders, organic brain disease or severe seizure disorders associated with mental retardation) usually in first 6 months and usually involving multiple antiepileptic therapy. Raised liver enzymes during valproate treatment are usually transient but patients should be reassessed clinically and liver function (including prothrombin time) monitored until return to normal—discontinue if abnormally prolonged prothrombin time (particularly in association with other relevant abnormalities).

Consider vitamin D supplementation in patients who are immobilised for long periods or who have inadequate sun exposure or dietary intake of calcium.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain · alertness increased · alopecia (regrowth may be curly) · anaemia · behaviour abnormal · bone disorders · bone fracture · cerebral atrophy · coma · confusion · consciousness impaired · dementia · diarrhoea · drowsiness · encephalopathy · fine postural tremor · gastrointestinal disorder · gynaecomastia · haemorrhage · hallucination · hearing loss · hepatic disorders · hirsutism · hyperammonaemia · leucopenia · menstrual cycle irregularities · movement disorders · nail disorder · nausea · obesity · pancreatitis · pancytopenia · parkinsonism · peripheral oedema · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions ·

thrombocytopenia · urine abnormalities · vasculitis · vomiting · weight increased

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Hepatic dysfunction** Withdraw treatment immediately if persistent vomiting and abdominal pain, anorexia, jaundice, oedema, malaise, drowsiness, or loss of seizure control.

**Pancreatitis** Discontinue treatment if symptoms of pancreatitis develop.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** The MHRA advises that all women and girls of childbearing potential being treated with valproate medicines must be supported on a Pregnancy Prevention Programme—pregnancy should be excluded before treatment initiation and highly effective contraception must be used during treatment.
- **PREGNANCY** For *migraine prophylaxis* [unlicensed] and *bipolar disorder*, the MHRA advises that valproate must not be used. For *epilepsy*, the MHRA advises valproate must not be used unless there is no suitable alternative treatment; in such cases, access to counselling about the risks should be provided (see Healthcare Professional Guide for more information) and a Risk Acknowledgement Form signed by both specialist and patient. If valproate is to be used during pregnancy, the lowest effective dose should be prescribed in divided doses to avoid peaks in plasma-valproate concentrations; doses greater than 1 g daily are associated with an increased risk of teratogenicity. Neonatal bleeding (related to hypofibrinaemia). Neonatal hepatotoxicity also reported. **Monitoring** Specialist prenatal monitoring should be instigated when valproate has been taken in pregnancy.

The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—risk of haematological disorders in breast-fed newborns and infants.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible—hepatotoxicity and hepatic failure may occasionally occur (usually in first 6 months). Avoid in active liver disease.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
Dose adjustments Reduce dose.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Monitor closely if dose greater than 45 mg/kg daily.
  - ▶ Monitor liver function before therapy and during first 6 months especially in patients most at risk.
  - ▶ Measure full blood count and ensure no undue potential for bleeding before starting and before surgery.
- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** False-positive urine tests for ketones.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** [Evgr] In bipolar disorder, avoid abrupt withdrawal; if treatment with valproate is stopped, reduce the dose gradually over at least 4 weeks. ⚠
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The Pregnancy Prevention Programme is supported by the following materials provided by the manufacturer: *Patient Guide, Guide for Healthcare Professionals, Risk Acknowledgement Form*, and for pharmacists, *Patient Cards and Stickers with warning symbols*; the MHRA has also produced a patient information sheet providing advice for women and girls taking valproate medicines.

**CONVULEX®** Patients being treated for epilepsy may need to be maintained on a specific manufacturer's branded or generic oral valproic acid product.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Valproate use by women and girls The MHRA advises women and girls should **not** stop taking valproate without first discussing it with their doctor.  
Blood or hepatic disorders Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs and symptoms of blood or liver

disorders and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms develop.

**Pancreatitis** Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs and symptoms of pancreatitis and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as abdominal pain, nausea, or vomiting develop.

**Pregnancy Prevention Programme** Pharmacists must ensure that female patients have a patient card—see also *Important safety information*.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Gastro-resistant capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 10, 21, 25

##### ▶ **Convulex** (Pfizer Ltd) ▼

**Valproic acid 150 mg** Convulex 150mg gastro-resistant capsules | 100 capsule [POM] £3.68

**Valproic acid 300 mg** Convulex 300mg gastro-resistant capsules | 100 capsule [POM] £7.35

**Valproic acid 500 mg** Convulex 500mg gastro-resistant capsules | 100 capsule [POM] £12.25

## Vigabatrin

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Adjunctive treatment of focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation not satisfactorily controlled with other antiepileptics (under expert supervision)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate:** Initially 15–20 mg/kg twice daily, to be increased over 2–3 weeks to usual maintenance dose, usual maintenance 30–40 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 75 mg/kg).
- ▶ **Child 1–23 months:** Initially 15–20 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 250 mg), to be increased over 2–3 weeks to usual maintenance dose, usual maintenance 30–40 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 75 mg/kg)
- ▶ **Child 2–11 years:** Initially 15–20 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 250 mg), to be increased over 2–3 weeks to usual maintenance dose, usual maintenance 30–40 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 1.5 g)
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years:** Initially 250 mg twice daily, to be increased over 2–3 weeks to usual maintenance dose, usual maintenance 1–1.5 g twice daily

##### ▶ BY RECTUM

- ▶ **Child 1–23 months:** Initially 15–20 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 250 mg), to be increased over 2–3 weeks to usual maintenance dose, usual maintenance 30–40 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 75 mg/kg)
- ▶ **Child 2–11 years:** Initially 15–20 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 250 mg), to be increased over 2–3 weeks to usual maintenance dose, usual maintenance 30–40 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 1.5 g)
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years:** Initially 250 mg twice daily, to be increased over 2–3 weeks to usual maintenance dose, usual maintenance 1–1.5 g twice daily

**Monotherapy in the management of infantile spasms in West's syndrome (under expert supervision)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate:** Initially 15–25 mg/kg twice daily, to be adjusted according to response over 7 days to usual maintenance dose; usual maintenance 40–50 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 75 mg/kg).
- ▶ **Child 1 month–1 year:** Initially 15–25 mg/kg twice daily, to be adjusted according to response over 7 days to usual maintenance dose; usual maintenance 40–50 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 75 mg/kg)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Granules not licensed for rectal use. Tablets not licensed to be crushed and dispersed in liquid. Vigabatrin doses in BNF publications may differ from those in product literature.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Visual field defects

- **CAUTIONS** History of behavioural problems · history of depression · history of psychosis

- **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Vigabatrin may worsen absence, myoclonic, tonic and atonic seizures.
- ▶ **Visual field defects** Vigabatrin is associated with visual field defects. The onset of symptoms varies from 1 month to several years after starting. In most cases, visual field defects have persisted despite discontinuation, and further deterioration after discontinuation cannot be excluded. Product literature advises visual field testing before treatment and at 6-month intervals. Patients and their carers should be warned to report any new visual symptoms that develop and those with symptoms should be referred for an urgent ophthalmological opinion. Gradual withdrawal of vigabatrin should be considered.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · anaemia · anxiety · arthralgia · behaviour abnormal · concentration impaired · depression · dizziness · drowsiness · eye disorders · fatigue · headache · memory loss · mood altered · nausea · oedema · paraesthesia · speech disorder · thinking abnormal · tremor · vision disorders · vomiting · weight increased
- ▶ **Uncommon** Movement disorders · psychotic disorder · seizure (patients with myoclonic seizures at greater risk) · skin reactions
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · encephalopathy · hallucination · hepatitis · optic neuritis · suicide attempt
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Movement disorder (in infantile spasms) · muscle tone increased

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Encephalopathic symptoms** Encephalopathic symptoms including marked sedation, stupor, and confusion with non-specific slow wave EEG can occur rarely—reduce dose or withdraw.

**Visual field defects** About one-third of patients treated with vigabatrin have suffered visual field defects; counselling and careful monitoring for this side-effect are required.

- **PREGNANCY**

**Monitoring** The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—manufacturer advises avoid.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Consider reduced dose or increased dose interval if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Closely monitor neurological function.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- ▶ **With oral use** The contents of a sachet should be dissolved in water or a soft drink immediately before taking. Tablets may be crushed and dispersed in liquid.
- ▶ **With rectal use** Dissolve contents of sachet in small amount of water and administer rectally [unlicensed use].

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and their carers should be warned to report any new visual symptoms that develop.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Vigabatrin for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/vigabatrin-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/vigabatrin-for-preventing-seizures)

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

#### Powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 8, 13

- ▶ **Sabril** (Sanofi)

**Vigabatrin 500 mg** Sabril 500mg oral powder sachets sugar-free | 50 sachet [PoM] £24.60 DT = £24.60

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 8

- ▶ **Sabril** (Sanofi)

**Vigabatrin 500 mg** Sabril 500mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £44.41 DT = £44.41

## Zonisamide

14-Mar-2018

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Adjunctive treatment for refractory focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ **Child 6–17 years (body-weight 20–54 kg):** Initially 1 mg/kg once daily for 7 days, then increased in steps of 1 mg/kg every 7 days, usual maintenance 6–8 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 500 mg once daily), dose to be increased at 2-week intervals in patients who are **not** receiving concomitant carbamazepine, phenytoin, phenobarbital or other potent inducers of cytochrome P450 enzyme CYP3A4
- ▶ **Child 6–17 years (body-weight 55 kg and above):** Initially 1 mg/kg once daily for 7 days, then increased in steps of 1 mg/kg every 7 days, usual maintenance 300–500 mg once daily, dose to be increased at 2-week intervals in patients who are **not** receiving concomitant carbamazepine, phenytoin, phenobarbital or other potent inducers of cytochrome P450 enzyme CYP3A4

- **CAUTIONS** Low body-weight or poor appetite—monitor weight throughout treatment (fatal cases of weight loss reported in children) · metabolic acidosis—monitor serum bicarbonate concentration in children and those with other risk factors (consider dose reduction or discontinuation if metabolic acidosis develops) · risk factors for renal stone formation (particularly predisposition to nephrolithiasis)

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Avoid overheating and ensure adequate hydration especially in children, during strenuous activity or if in warm environment (fatal cases of heat stroke reported in children).

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Alopecia · anxiety · appetite decreased · ataxia · bradyphrenia · concentration impaired · confusion · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · fatigue · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · hypersensitivity · influenza like illness · insomnia · memory loss · mood altered · nausea · nystagmus · paraesthesia · peripheral oedema · psychosis · rash (consider discontinuation) · skin reactions · speech disorder · tremor · urolithiasis · vision disorders · vomiting · weight decreased
- ▶ **Uncommon** Behaviour abnormal · gallbladder disorders · hallucination · hypokalaemia · increased risk of infection · leucopenia · respiratory disorders · seizures · suicidal tendencies · thrombocytopenia
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · angle closure glaucoma · anhidrosis · bone marrow disorders · coma · dyspnoea · eye pain · heat stroke · hepatocellular injury · hydropneumothorax · leucocytosis · lymphadenopathy · metabolic acidosis · myasthenic syndrome · neuroleptic malignant syndrome · pancreatitis · renal failure · renal

tubular acidosis · rhabdomyolysis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · urine abnormal

- **Frequency not known** Sudden unexplained death in epilepsy

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in sulfonamide hypersensitivity.

Antiepileptic hypersensitivity syndrome theoretically associated with zonisamide. See under Epilepsy p. 191 for more information.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises women of childbearing potential should use effective contraception during treatment and for one month after last dose—avoid in women of childbearing potential not using effective contraception unless clearly necessary and the potential benefit outweighs risk; patients should be fully informed of the risks related to the use of zonisamide during pregnancy.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if clearly necessary and the potential benefit outweighs risk—toxicity in *animal* studies; patients should be fully informed of the risks related to the use of zonisamide during pregnancy.

**Monitoring** The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid for 4 weeks after last dose.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.

**Dose adjustments** Initially increase dose at 2-week intervals if mild or moderate impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Initially increase dose at 2-week intervals; discontinue if renal function deteriorates.

- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal (consult product literature for recommended withdrawal regimens in children).

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

Switching between formulations Care should be taken when switching between oral formulations. The need for continued supply of a particular manufacturer's product should be based on clinical judgement and consultation with the patient or their carer, taking into account factors such as seizure frequency and treatment history.

Patients may need to be maintained on a specific manufacturer's branded or generic zonisamide product.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Children and their carers should be made aware of how to prevent and recognise overheating and dehydration.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Zonisamide for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/zonisamide-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/zonisamide-for-preventing-seizures)

- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (February 2014) that zonisamide (*Zonegran*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland as adjunctive treatment of focal seizures, with or without secondary generalisation, in adolescents and children aged 6 years and above. It is restricted to use on advice from specialists in paediatric neurology or epilepsy.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 8, 10

- **Zonisamide (Non-proprietary)**

**Zonisamide 25 mg** Zonisamide 25mg capsules | 14 capsule [PoM]  
£4.49–£8.82 DT = £6.66

**Zonisamide 50 mg** Zonisamide 50mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM]  
£21.50–£47.04 DT = £34.51

**Zonisamide 100 mg** Zonisamide 100mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM]  
£11.04–£62.72 DT = £11.04

- **Zonegran** (Eisai Ltd)

**Zonisamide 25 mg** Zonegran 25mg capsules | 14 capsule [PoM]  
£8.82 DT = £6.66

**Zonisamide 50 mg** Zonegran 50mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM]  
£47.04 DT = £34.51

**Zonisamide 100 mg** Zonegran 100mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM]  
£62.72 DT = £11.04

## ANTIEPILEPTICS > BARBITURATES

### Phenobarbital

(Phenobarbitone)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### All forms of epilepsy except typical absence seizures

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 1–1.5 mg/kg twice daily, then increased in steps of 2 mg/kg daily as required; maintenance 2.5–4 mg/kg 1–2 times a day
- Child 12–17 years: 60–180 mg once daily
- INITIALLY BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Initially 20 mg/kg, then (by slow intravenous injection or by mouth) 2.5–5 mg/kg once daily, adjusted according to response.

#### Status epilepticus

##### ► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Initially 20 mg/kg, dose to be administered at a rate no faster than 1 mg/kg/minute, then 2.5–5 mg/kg 1–2 times a day.
- Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 20 mg/kg, dose to be administered at a rate no faster than 1 mg/kg/minute, then 2.5–5 mg/kg 1–2 times a day
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 20 mg/kg (max. per dose 1 g), dose to be administered at a rate no faster than 1 mg/kg/minute, then 300 mg twice daily

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- For therapeutic purposes phenobarbital and phenobarbital sodium may be considered equivalent in effect.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 · children · debilitated · history of alcohol abuse · history of drug abuse · respiratory depression (avoid if severe)

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Consider vitamin D supplementation in patients who are immobilised for long periods or who have inadequate sun exposure or dietary intake of calcium.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

#### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

Agitation · agranulocytosis · anticonvulsant hypersensitivity syndrome · behaviour abnormal · bone disorders · bone fracture · cognitive impairment · confusion · depression · drowsiness · folate deficiency · hepatic disorders · memory loss · movement disorders · nystagmus · respiratory depression · skin reactions

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- With oral use Hallucination · hypotension · megaloblastic anaemia · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · thrombocytopenia
- With parenteral use Anaemia · aplastic anaemia · Dupuytren's contracture · hypocalcaemia · irritability · toxic epidermal necrolysis



**Overdose** For details on the management of poisoning, see Active elimination techniques, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Antiepileptic hypersensitivity syndrome associated with phenobarbital. See under Epilepsy p. 191 for more information.

● **PREGNANCY**  
**Monitoring** The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid if possible; drowsiness may occur.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** May precipitate coma. Avoid in severe impairment.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

#### ● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

► Plasma-phenobarbital concentration for optimum response is 15–40 mg/litre (60–180 micromol/litre); however, monitoring the plasma-drug concentration is less useful than with other drugs because tolerance occurs.

● **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal (dependence with prolonged use).

#### ● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

► With oral use For administration by *mouth*, tablets may be crushed.  
► With intravenous use For *intravenous injection*, dilute to a concentration of 20 mg/mL with Water for Injections; give over 20 minutes (no faster than 1 mg/kg/minute).

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Some hospitals supply **alcohol-free** formulations of varying phenobarbital strengths. The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of phenobarbital is required, the following strength is used: 50 mg/5 mL. Switching between formulations. Different formulations of oral preparations may vary in bioavailability. Patients should be maintained on a specific manufacturer's product.

#### ● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Phenobarbital for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/phenobarbital-for-preventing-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/phenobarbital-for-preventing-seizures)

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

##### **Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 8

##### ► **Phenobarbital (Non-proprietary)**

**Phenobarbital 15 mg** Phenobarbital 15mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#)  
£24.95 DT = £16.72 [CD3](#)

**Phenobarbital 30 mg** Phenobarbital 30mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#)

£5.99 DT = £0.44 [CD3](#)

**Phenobarbital 60 mg** Phenobarbital 60mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#)

£7.99 DT = £6.03 [CD3](#)

##### **Solution for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

##### ► **Phenobarbital (Non-proprietary)**

**Phenobarbital sodium 30 mg per 1 ml** Phenobarbital 30mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM](#) £89.47 DT = £89.47 [CD3](#)

**Phenobarbital sodium 60 mg per 1 ml** Phenobarbital 60mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM](#) £94.40 [CD3](#)

**Phenobarbital sodium 200 mg per 1 ml** Phenobarbital 200mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM](#) £76.96 DT =

£76.96 [CD3](#)

##### **Oral solution**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 8

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol

##### ► **Phenobarbital (Non-proprietary)**

**Phenobarbital 3 mg per 1 ml** Phenobarbital 15mg/5ml elixir | 500 ml [PoM](#) £83.00–£83.16 DT = £83.08 [CD3](#)

## Primidone

### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

#### **All forms of epilepsy except typical absence seizures**

##### ► **BY MOUTH**

► Child 1 month-1 year: Initially 125 mg daily, dose to be taken at bedtime, then increased in steps of 125 mg every 3 days, adjusted according to response; maintenance 125–250 mg twice daily  
► Child 2–4 years: Initially 125 mg once daily, dose to be taken at bedtime, then increased in steps of 125 mg every 3 days, adjusted according to response; maintenance 250–375 mg twice daily  
► Child 5–8 years: Initially 125 mg once daily, dose to be taken at bedtime, then increased in steps of 125 mg every 3 days, adjusted according to response; maintenance 375–500 mg twice daily  
► Child 9–17 years: Initially 125 mg once daily, dose to be taken at bedtime, then increased in steps of 125 mg every 3 days, increased to 250 mg twice daily, then increased in steps of 250 mg every 3 days (max. per dose 750 mg twice daily), adjusted according to response

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 · children · debilitated · history of alcohol abuse · history of drug abuse · respiratory depression (avoid if severe)

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Consider vitamin D supplementation in patients who are immobilised for long periods or who have inadequate sun exposure or dietary intake of calcium.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Common or very common** Apathy · ataxia · drowsiness · nausea · nystagmus · visual impairment  
► **Uncommon** Dizziness · headache · hypersensitivity · skin reactions · vomiting  
► **Rare or very rare** Arthralgia · blood disorder · bone disorders · Dupuytren's contracture · megaloblastic anaemia (may be treated with folic acid) · personality change · psychotic disorder · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)  
► **Frequency not known** Bone fracture

● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Antiepileptic hypersensitivity syndrome associated with primidone. See under Epilepsy p. 191 for more information.

#### ● **PREGNANCY**

**Monitoring** The dose should be monitored carefully during pregnancy and after birth, and adjustments made on a clinical basis.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** May precipitate coma.

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

#### ● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

► Monitor plasma concentrations of derived phenobarbital; plasma concentration for optimum response is 15–40 mg/litre (60–180 micromol/litre).

● **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal (dependence with prolonged use).

#### ● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

Switching between formulations. Different formulations of oral preparations may vary in bioavailability. Patients being treated for epilepsy should be maintained on a specific manufacturer's product.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 8

▶ **Primidone (Non-proprietary)**

**Primidone 50 mg** Primidone 50mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM]

£110.00–£112.37 DT = £111.58

**Primidone 250 mg** Primidone 250mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM]

£99.65–£121.94 DT = £114.51

**HYPNOTICS, SEDATIVES AND ANXIOLYTICS > BENZODIAZEPINES****Benzodiazepines**

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute pulmonary insufficiency · marked neuromuscular respiratory weakness · sleep apnoea syndrome · unstable myasthenia gravis

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid prolonged use (and abrupt withdrawal thereafter) · history of alcohol dependence or abuse · history of drug dependence or abuse · myasthenia gravis · personality disorder (within the fearful group—dependent, avoidant, obsessive-compulsive) may increase risk of dependence · respiratory disease

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

▶ **Paradoxical effects** A paradoxical increase in hostility and aggression may be reported by patients taking benzodiazepines. The effects range from talkativeness and excitement to aggressive and antisocial acts. Adjustment of the dose (up or down) sometimes attenuates the impulses. Increased anxiety and perceptual disorders are other paradoxical effects.

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

▶ **Common or very common** Alertness decreased · anxiety · ataxia · confusion · depression · dizziness · drowsiness · dysarthria · fatigue · gastrointestinal disorder · headache · hypotension · mood altered · muscle weakness · nausea · sleep disorders · suicidal ideation · tremor · vertigo · vision disorders · withdrawal syndrome

▶ **Uncommon** Agitation · anterograde amnesia · behaviour abnormal · hallucination · libido disorder · rash · urinary disorders

▶ **Rare or very rare** Aggression · blood disorder · delusions · jaundice · paradoxical drug reaction · psychosis · respiratory depression (particularly with high dose and intravenous use – facilities for its treatment are essential) · restlessness (with sedative and peri-operative use)

▶ **Frequency not known** Drug dependence

**Overdose** Benzodiazepines taken alone cause drowsiness, ataxia, dysarthria, nystagmus, and occasionally respiratory depression, and coma. For details on the management of poisoning, see Benzodiazepines, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

● **PREGNANCY** Risk of neonatal withdrawal symptoms when used during pregnancy. Avoid regular use and use only if there is a clear indication such as seizure control. High doses administered during late pregnancy or labour may cause neonatal hypothermia, hypotonia, and respiratory depression.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Increased cerebral sensitivity to benzodiazepines.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may persist the next day and affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced.

For information on 2015 legislation regarding driving whilst taking certain controlled drugs, including benzodiazepines, see *Drugs and driving* under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

**Clobazam**

above

07-Feb-2018

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Adjunct in epilepsy**▶ **BY MOUTH**

▶ **Child 1 month–5 years:** Initially 125 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be increased if necessary every 5 days, maintenance 250 micrograms/kg twice daily (max. per dose 500 micrograms/kg twice daily); maximum 30 mg per day

▶ **Child 6–17 years:** Initially 5 mg daily, dose to be increased if necessary at intervals of 5 days, maintenance 0.3–1 mg/kg daily, daily doses of up to 30 mg may be given as a single dose at bedtime, higher doses should be divided; maximum 60 mg per day

**Monotherapy for catamenial (menstruation) seizures (usually for 7–10 days each month, just before and during menstruation) (under expert supervision) |**

**Cluster seizures**▶ **BY MOUTH**

▶ **Child 1 month–5 years:** Initially 125 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be increased if necessary every 5 days, maintenance 250 micrograms/kg twice daily (max. per dose 500 micrograms/kg twice daily); maximum 30 mg per day

▶ **Child 6–17 years:** Initially 5 mg daily, dose to be increased if necessary at intervals of 5 days, maintenance 0.3–1 mg/kg daily, daily doses of up to 30 mg may be given as a single dose at bedtime, higher doses should be divided; maximum 60 mg per day

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 6 years. Not licensed as monotherapy.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****SAFE PRACTICE**

Clobazam has been confused with clonazepam; care must be taken to ensure the correct drug is prescribed and dispensed.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hyperkinesia · obsessional states · phobic states · respiratory depression

● **CAUTIONS** Muscle weakness · organic brain changes

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The effectiveness of clobazam may decrease significantly after weeks or months of continuous therapy.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: clobazam

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Appetite decreased · consciousness impaired · constipation · drug abuse · dry mouth · fall · fine tremor · gait unsteady · libido loss · movement disorders · muscle spasms · nystagmus · psychotic disorder · respiratory disorder · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · speech impairment · vision disorder · weight increased

● **BREAST FEEDING** Benzodiazepines are present in milk, and should be avoided if possible during breast-feeding.

**Monitoring** All infants should be monitored for sedation, feeding difficulties, adequate weight gain, and developmental milestones.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Can precipitate coma. Avoid in severe impairment.

**Dose adjustments** Start with smaller initial doses or reduce dose.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Start with small doses in severe impairment.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Routine measurement of plasma concentrations of antiepileptic drugs is not usually justified, because the target concentration ranges are

arbitrary and often vary between individuals. However, plasma drug concentrations may be measured in children with worsening seizures, status epilepticus, suspected noncompliance, or suspected toxicity. Similarly, haematological and biochemical monitoring should not be undertaken unless clinically indicated.

#### ● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

**Switching between formulations** Care should be taken when switching between oral formulations in the treatment of epilepsy. The need for continued supply of a particular manufacturer's product should be based on clinical judgement and consultation with the patient or their carer, taking into account factors such as seizure frequency and treatment history.

Patients being treated for epilepsy may need to be maintained on a specific manufacturer's branded or generic clobazam product.

#### ● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Clobazam for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/clobazam-preventing-seizures-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/clobazam-preventing-seizures-0)

#### ● **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**NHS restrictions** Clobazam is not prescribable in NHS primary care except for epilepsy and endorsed 'SLS'.

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension

##### **Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 8, 19

##### ▶ **Clobazam (Non-proprietary)**

**Clobazam 1 mg per 1 ml** Clobazam 5mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £90.00 DT = £90.00 [CD4-1] sugar-free | 250 ml [PoM] £150.00 [CD4-1]

**Clobazam 2 mg per 1 ml** Clobazam 10mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £95.00 DT = £95.00 [CD4-1] sugar-free | 250 ml [PoM] £158.33 [CD4-1]

##### ▶ **Perizam (Rosemont Pharmaceuticals Ltd)**

**Clobazam 1 mg per 1 ml** Perizam 1mg/ml oral suspension sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £90.00 DT = £90.00 [CD4-1]  
**Clobazam 2 mg per 1 ml** Perizam 2mg/ml oral suspension sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £95.00 DT = £95.00 [CD4-1]

##### ▶ **Tapclob (Martindale Pharmaceuticals Ltd)**

**Clobazam 1 mg per 1 ml** Tapclob 5mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £90.00 DT = £90.00 [CD4-1] sugar-free | 250 ml [PoM] £150.00 [CD4-1]

**Clobazam 2 mg per 1 ml** Tapclob 10mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £95.00 DT = £95.00 [CD4-1] sugar-free | 250 ml [PoM] £158.34 [CD4-1]

##### ▶ **Zacco (Thame Laboratories Ltd)**

**Clobazam 1 mg per 1 ml** Zacco 5mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £82.00 DT = £90.00 [CD4-1]

**Clobazam 2 mg per 1 ml** Zacco 10mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £87.00 DT = £95.00 [CD4-1]

##### **Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 8, 19

##### ▶ **Clobazam (Non-proprietary)**

**Clobazam 10 mg** Clobazam 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £3.65 DT = £3.58 [CD4-1]

##### ▶ **Frisium (Sanofi)**

**Clobazam 10 mg** Frisium 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £2.51 DT = £3.58 [CD4-1]

**F 218**

07-Feb-2018

## Clonazepam

#### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

##### **All forms of epilepsy**

##### ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ **Child 1-11 months:** Initially 250 micrograms once daily for 4 nights, dose to be increased over 2–4 weeks, usual dose 0.5–1 mg daily, dose to be taken at night; may be given in 3 divided doses if necessary

- ▶ **Child 1-4 years:** Initially 250 micrograms once daily for 4 nights, dose to be increased over 2–4 weeks, usual dose 1–3 mg daily, dose to be taken at night; may be given in 3 divided doses if necessary
- ▶ **Child 5-11 years:** Initially 500 micrograms once daily for 4 nights, dose to be increased over 2–4 weeks, usual dose 3–6 mg daily, dose to be taken at night; may be given in 3 divided doses if necessary
- ▶ **Child 12-17 years:** Initially 1 mg once daily for 4 nights, dose to be increased over 2–4 weeks, usual dose 4–8 mg daily, dose usually taken at night; may be given in 3–4 divided doses if necessary

- **UNLICENSED USE** Clonazepam doses in BNFC may differ from those in product literature.

#### **IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

##### **SAFE PRACTICE**

Clonazepam has been confused with clobazam; care must be taken to ensure the correct drug is prescribed and dispensed.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Coma · current alcohol abuse · current drug abuse · respiratory depression
- **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · airways obstruction · brain damage · cerebellar ataxia · depression · spinal ataxia · suicidal ideation
- **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The effectiveness of clonazepam may decrease significantly after weeks or months of continuous therapy.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: clonazepam
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abnormal dreams · alopecia · bronchial secretion increased · concentration impaired · coordination abnormal · disorientation · drooling · hostility · hypersalivation · incomplete precocious puberty · muscle tone decreased · nervousness · nystagmus · psychotic disorder · seizures · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · speech impairment · vision disorder
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk, and should be avoided if possible during breast-feeding.  
**Monitoring** All infants should be monitored for sedation, feeding difficulties, adequate weight gain, and developmental milestones.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Can precipitate coma. Avoid in severe impairment.  
**Dose adjustments** Start with smaller initial doses or reduce dose.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Start with small doses in severe impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Routine measurement of plasma concentrations of antiepileptic drugs is not usually justified, because the target concentration ranges are arbitrary and often vary between individuals. However, plasma drug concentrations may be measured in children with worsening seizures, status epilepticus, suspected noncompliance, or suspected toxicity. Similarly, haematological and biochemical monitoring should not be undertaken unless clinically indicated.

#### ● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of clonazepam is required, the following strength is used: 2 mg/5 mL.

Switching between formulations Care should be taken when switching between oral formulations in the treatment of epilepsy. The need for continued supply of a particular manufacturer's product should be based on clinical judgement and consultation with the patient or their carer, taking into account factors such as seizure frequency and treatment history.

Patients being treated for epilepsy may need to be maintained on a specific manufacturer's branded or generic oral clonazepam product.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Clonazepam for preventing seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/clonazepam-preventing-seizures-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/clonazepam-preventing-seizures-0)

#### ● MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: orodispersible tablet, oral suspension, oral solution, oral drops

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 8

##### ► Clonazepam (Non-proprietary)

**Clonazepam 500 microgram** Clonazepam 500microgram tablets | 100 tablet **[PoM]** £27.70 DT = £27.70 **[CD4-1]**

**Clonazepam 2 mg** Clonazepam 2mg tablets | 100 tablet **[PoM]** £30.75 DT = £29.79 **[CD4-1]**

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 8

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Ethanol

##### ► Clonazepam (Non-proprietary)

**Clonazepam 100 microgram per 1 ml** Clonazepam 500micrograms/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml **[PoM]** £69.50 DT = £69.50 **[CD4-1]**

**Clonazepam 400 microgram per 1 ml** Clonazepam 2mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml **[PoM]** £108.36 DT = £108.36 **[CD4-1]**

218

21-Nov-2016

## Diazepam

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Tetanus

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child: 100–300 micrograms/kg every 1–4 hours

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY NASODUODENAL TUBE

► Child: 3–10 mg/kg, adjusted according to response, to be given over 24 hours

##### Muscle spasm in cerebral spasticity or in postoperative skeletal muscle spasm

##### ► BY MOUTH

► Child 1–11 months: Initially 250 micrograms/kg twice daily

► Child 1–4 years: Initially 2.5 mg twice daily

► Child 5–11 years: Initially 5 mg twice daily

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 10 mg twice daily; maximum 40 mg per day

##### Status epilepticus | Febrile convulsions | Convulsions due to poisoning

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 300–400 micrograms/kg, then 300–400 micrograms/kg after 10 minutes if required, to be given over 3–5 minutes.

► Child 1 month–11 years: 300–400 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 10 mg), then 300–400 micrograms/kg after 10 minutes if required, to be given over 3–5 minutes

► Child 12–17 years: 10 mg, then 10 mg after 10 minutes if required, to be given over 3–5 minutes

##### ► BY RECTUM

► Neonate: 1.25–2.5 mg, then 1.25–2.5 mg after 10 minutes if required.

► Child 1 month–1 year: 5 mg, then 5 mg after 10 minutes if required

► Child 2–11 years: 5–10 mg, then 5–10 mg after 10 minutes if required

► Child 12–17 years: 10–20 mg, then 10–20 mg after 10 minutes if required

#### Life-threatening acute drug-induced dystonic reactions

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 1 month–11 years: 100 micrograms/kg, repeated if necessary, to be given over 3–5 minutes

► Child 12–17 years: 5–10 mg, repeated if necessary, to be given over 3–5 minutes

#### ● UNLICENSED USE

► With rectal use **Diazepam Desitin<sup>®</sup>**, **Diazepam Rectubes<sup>®</sup>**, and **Stesolid Rectal Tubes<sup>®</sup>** not licensed for use in children under 1 year.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### ANAESTHESIA

Benzodiazepines should only be administered for anaesthesia by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates · CNS depression · compromised airway · hyperkinesia · obsessional states · phobic states · respiratory depression

#### ● CONTRAINDICATIONS

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Muscle weakness · organic brain changes · parenteral administration (close observation required until full recovery from sedation)

##### SPECIFIC CAUTIONS

► With intravenous use High risk of venous thrombophlebitis with intravenous use (reduced by using an emulsion formulation)

##### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

► Special precautions for intravenous injection When given intravenously facilities for reversing respiratory depression with mechanical ventilation must be immediately available.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: diazepam

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Appetite abnormal · movement disorders · muscle spasms · palpitations · sensory disorder

► **Uncommon** Concentration impaired · constipation · diarrhoea · hypersalivation · skin reactions · speech slurred · vomiting

► **Rare or very rare** Bradycardia · bronchial secretion increased · cardiac arrest · dry mouth · gynaecomastia · heart failure · leucopenia · loss of consciousness · memory loss · psychiatric disorder · respiratory arrest · sexual dysfunction · syncope

► **Frequency not known** Apnoea · nystagmus · vision blurred

● **PREGNANCY** Women who have seizures in the second half of pregnancy should be assessed for eclampsia before any change is made to antiepileptic treatment. Status epilepticus should be treated according to the standard protocol.

Epilepsy and Pregnancy Register All pregnant women with epilepsy, whether taking medication or not, should be encouraged to notify the UK Epilepsy and Pregnancy Register (Tel: 0800 389 1248).

● **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk, and should be avoided if possible during breast-feeding.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Can precipitate coma. If treatment is necessary, benzodiazepines with shorter half lives are safer, such as temazepam or oxazepam. Avoid in severe impairment.

**Dose adjustments** Start with smaller initial doses or reduce dose.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Start with small doses in severe impairment.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- With intravenous use Diazepam is adsorbed by plastics of infusion bags and giving sets. Emulsion formulation preferred for intravenous injection.

For continuous intravenous infusion of diazepam emulsion, dilute to a concentration of max. 400 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or 10%; max. 6 hours between addition and completion of infusion. For continuous intravenous infusion of diazepam solution, dilute to a concentration of max. 50 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

- PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients given sedatives and analgesics during minor outpatient procedures should be very carefully warned about the risks of undertaking skilled tasks (e.g. driving) afterwards. For intravenous benzodiazepines the risk extends to **at least 24 hours** after administration. Responsible persons should be available to take patients home afterwards. The dangers of taking **alcohol** should be emphasised. Medicines for Children leaflet: Diazepam (rectal) for stopping seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/diazepam-rectal-stopping-seizures-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/diazepam-rectal-stopping-seizures-0)  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Diazepam for muscle spasm [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/diazepam-for-muscle-spasm](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/diazepam-for-muscle-spasm)  
**Driving and skilled tasks** May impair judgement and increase reaction time, and so affect ability to drive or perform skilled tasks; they increase the effects of alcohol. Moreover the hangover effects of a night dose may impair performance on the following day.

### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

#### Dental practitioners' formulary

Diazepam Tablets may be prescribed.

Diazepam Oral Solution 2 mg/5 mL may be prescribed.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, suppository

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 19

#### ► Diazepam (Non-proprietary)

**Diazepam 2 mg** Diazepam 2mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £1.10 DT = £0.33 [CD4-1](#) | 1000 tablet [PoM](#) £160.71 [CD4-1](#)

**Diazepam 5 mg** Diazepam 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £1.12 DT = £0.37 [CD4-1](#) | 1000 tablet [PoM](#) £210.71 [CD4-1](#)

**Diazepam 10 mg** Diazepam 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £4.99 DT = £0.43 [CD4-1](#) | 500 tablet [PoM](#) £113.04 [CD4-1](#)

#### Emulsion for injection

#### ► Diazemuls (Accord Healthcare Ltd)

**Diazepam 5 mg per 1 mL** Diazemuls 10mg/2ml emulsion for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM](#) £9.05 [CD4-1](#)

#### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, ethanol, propylene glycol

#### ► Diazepam (Non-proprietary)

**Diazepam 5 mg per 1 mL** Diazepam 10mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM](#) £5.50 DT = £5.50 [CD4-1](#)

#### Oral suspension

#### ► Diazepam (Non-proprietary)

**Diazepam 400 microgram per 1 mL** Diazepam 2mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 mL [PoM](#) £31.75–£38.33 DT = £31.75 [CD4-1](#)

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 19

#### ► Diazepam (Non-proprietary)

**Diazepam 400 microgram per 1 mL** Diazepam 2mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 100 mL [PoM](#) £31.75 DT = £31.75 [CD4-1](#)

#### Enema

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 19

#### ► Diazepam (Non-proprietary)

**Diazepam 2 mg per 1 mL** Diazepam 5mg Rectubes | 5 tube [PoM](#) £5.85 DT = £5.85 [CD4-1](#)  
Diazepam 2.5mg/1.25mL rectal solution tube | 5 tube [PoM](#) [S](#) [CD4-1](#)  
Diazepam 2.5mg Rectubes | 5 tube [PoM](#) £5.65 [CD4-1](#)

Diazepam 5mg/2.5mL rectal solution tube | 5 tube [PoM](#) £5.85 DT = £5.85 [CD4-1](#)

**Diazepam 4 mg per 1 mL** Diazepam 10mg Rectubes | 5 tube [PoM](#)

£7.35 DT = £7.35 [CD4-1](#)

Diazepam 10mg/2.5mL rectal solution tube | 5 tube [PoM](#) £7.35 DT = £7.35 [CD4-1](#)

#### ► Stesolid (Actavis UK Ltd)

**Diazepam 2 mg per 1 mL** Stesolid 5mg rectal tube | 5 tube [PoM](#) £6.89 DT = £5.85 [CD4-1](#)

## 1.1 Status epilepticus

**Other drugs used for Status epilepticus** Diazepam, p. 220 • Fosphenytoin sodium, p. 199 • Phenobarbital, p. 216 • Phenytoin, p. 205

## ANTIEPILEPTICS

### Paraldehyde

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Status epilepticus

##### ► BY RECTUM

- Neonate: 0.8 mL/kg for 1 dose, the dose is based on the use of a premixed solution of paraldehyde in olive oil in equal volumes.
- Child: 0.8 mL/kg (max. per dose 20 mL) for 1 dose, the dose is based on the use of a premixed solution of paraldehyde in olive oil in equal volumes

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children as an enema.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Gastric disorders • rectal administration in colitis

- **CAUTIONS** Bronchopulmonary disease

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiepileptics

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Rash

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless essential—crosses placenta.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid unless essential—present in milk.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Paraldehyde for seizures

[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/paraldehyde-for-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/paraldehyde-for-seizures)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: enema

## ANTIEPILEPTICS > BARBITURATES

### Thiopental sodium

(Thiopentone sodium)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Prolonged status epilepticus

##### ► INITIALLY BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Initially up to 2 mg/kg, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) up to 8 mg/kg/hour, adjusted according to response.

- Child: Initially up to 4 mg/kg, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) up to 8 mg/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

continued →



**Induction of anaesthesia**

## ► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Initially up to 2 mg/kg, then 1 mg/kg, repeated if necessary; maximum 4 mg/kg per course.
- Child: Initially up to 4 mg/kg, then 1 mg/kg, repeated if necessary; maximum 7 mg/kg per course

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in status epilepticus. Not licensed for use by intravenous infusion.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

Thiopental sodium should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in its use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management, and when resuscitation equipment is available.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · myotonic dystrophy
- **CAUTIONS** Acute circulatory failure (shock) · avoid intra-arterial injection · cardiovascular disease · fixed cardiac output · hypovolaemia · reconstituted solution is highly alkaline (extravasation causes tissue necrosis and severe pain)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: thiopental
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Arrhythmia · myocardial contractility decreased
  - **Frequency not known** Appetite decreased · circulatory collapse · cough · electrolyte imbalance · extravasation · hypotension · respiratory disorders · skin eruption · sneezing
- **PREGNANCY** May depress neonatal respiration when used during delivery.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Use with caution—reduce dose.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Caution in severe impairment.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous injection*, reconstitute 500-mg vial with 20 mL Water for Injections to give 25 mg/mL solution; give over at least 10–15 seconds; for *intravenous infusion* reconstituted solution may be further diluted with Sodium Chloride 0.9%.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Patients given sedatives and analgesics during minor outpatient procedures should be very carefully warned about the risk of driving or undertaking skilled tasks afterwards. For a short general anaesthetic the risk extends to **at least 24 hours** after administration. Responsible persons should be available to take patients home. The dangers of taking **alcohol** should also be emphasised.

● **MEDICAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

**Powder for solution for injection**► **Thiopental sodium (Non-proprietary)**

**Thiopental sodium 500 mg** Thiopental 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £69.00 | 25 vial [PoM] £172.50

**HYPNOTICS, SEDATIVES AND ANXIOLYTICS** ► **BENZODIAZEPINES**

P 218

**Lorazepam**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Premedication**► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 1 month–11 years: 50–100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 4 mg), to be given at least 1 hour before procedure, same dose may be given the night before procedure in addition to, or to replace, dose before procedure
- Child 12–17 years: 1–4 mg, to be given at least 1 hour before procedure, same dose may be given the night before procedure in addition to, or to replace, dose before procedure

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

- Child: 50–100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 4 mg), to be administered 30–45 minutes before procedure

**Status epilepticus | Febrile convulsions | Convulsions caused by poisoning**► **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

- Neonate: 100 micrograms/kg for 1 dose, then 100 micrograms/kg after 10 minutes if required for 1 dose, to be administered into a large vein.
- Child 1 month–11 years: 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 4 mg) for 1 dose, then 100 micrograms/kg after 10 minutes (max. per dose 4 mg) if required for 1 dose, to be administered into a large vein
- Child 12–17 years: 4 mg for 1 dose, then 4 mg after 10 minutes if required for 1 dose, to be administered into a large vein

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in febrile convulsions. Not licensed for use in convulsions caused by poisoning. Not licensed for use as intravenous premedication in children under 12 years. Not licensed for use as oral premedication in children under 5 years.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****ANAESTHESIA**

Benzodiazepines should only be administered for anaesthesia by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates · CNS depression · compromised airway · hyperkinesia · obsessional states · phobic states · respiratory depression
- **CAUTIONS** Muscle weakness · organic brain changes · parenteral administration
- **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - **Paradoxical effects** A paradoxical increase in hostility and aggression may be reported by patients taking benzodiazepines. The effects range from talkativeness and excitement to aggressive and antisocial acts. Adjustment of the dose (up or down) sometimes attenuates the impulses. Increased anxiety and perceptual disorders are other paradoxical effects.
  - **Special precautions for parenteral administration** When given parenterally, facilities for managing respiratory depression with mechanical ventilation must be available. Close observation required until full recovery from sedation.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: lorazepam

● **SIDE-EFFECTS****GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Apnoea · asthenia · coma · disinhibition · euphoric mood · extrapyramidal symptoms · hyperthermia · memory loss · speech slurred · suicide attempt · vision blurred
- ▶ **Uncommon** Allergic dermatitis · constipation · sexual dysfunction
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · hyponatraemia · pancytopenia · SIADH · thrombocytopenia

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Rare or very rare**
  - ▶ With oral use Saliva altered
- ▶ **Frequency not known**
  - ▶ With parenteral use Leucopenia
- **BREAST FEEDING** Benzodiazepines are present in milk, and should be avoided if possible during breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Can precipitate coma. Avoid in severe impairment.  
**Dose adjustments** Start with smaller initial doses or reduce dose.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Start with small doses in severe impairment.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous injection*, dilute with an equal volume of Sodium Chloride 0.9% (for neonates, dilute injection solution to a concentration of 100 micrograms/mL). Give over 3–5 minutes; max. rate 50 micrograms/kg over 3 minutes.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** May impair judgement and increase reaction time, and so affect ability to drive or operate machinery; they increase the effects of alcohol. Moreover the hangover effects of a night dose may impair driving on the following day.

Patients given sedatives and analgesics during minor outpatient procedures should be very carefully warned about the risks of undertaking skilled tasks (e.g. driving) afterwards. For intravenous benzodiazepines the risk extends to **at least 24 hours** after administration. Responsible persons should be available to take patients home afterwards. The dangers of taking **alcohol** should be emphasised.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection

**Solution for injection**

**EXCIPIENTS:** May contain Benzyl alcohol, propylene glycol

▶ **Ativan** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Lorazepam 4 mg per 1 ml** Ativan 4mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £3.54 [CD4-I]

**Tablet**

**CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS** 2, 19

▶ **Lorazepam (Non-proprietary)**

**Lorazepam 1 mg** Lorazepam 1mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £6.59 DT = £3.83 [CD4-I]

**Lorazepam 2.5 mg** Lorazepam 2.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £11.43 DT = £9.14 [CD4-I]

F 218

**Midazolam**

21-Mar-2018

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Status epilepticus | Febrile convulsions**▶ **BY BUCCAL ADMINISTRATION**

- ▶ **Neonate:** 300 micrograms/kg, then 300 micrograms/kg after 10 minutes if required.

- ▶ **Child 1-2 months:** 300 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 2.5 mg), then 300 micrograms/kg after 10 minutes (max. per dose 2.5 mg) if required
- ▶ **Child 3-11 months:** 2.5 mg, then 2.5 mg after 10 minutes if required
- ▶ **Child 1-4 years:** 5 mg, then 5 mg after 10 minutes if required
- ▶ **Child 5-9 years:** 7.5 mg, then 7.5 mg after 10 minutes if required
- ▶ **Child 10-17 years:** 10 mg, then 10 mg after 10 minutes if required
- ▶ **INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**
  - ▶ **Neonate:** Initially 150–200 micrograms/kg, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 60 micrograms/kg/hour, (by continuous intravenous infusion) increased in steps of 60 micrograms/kg/hour every 15 minutes (max. per dose 300 micrograms/kg/hour) until seizure controlled.

- ▶ **Child:** Initially 150–200 micrograms/kg, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 60 micrograms/kg/hour, (by continuous intravenous infusion) increased in steps of 60 micrograms/kg/hour every 15 minutes (max. per dose 300 micrograms/kg/hour) until seizure controlled

**Conscious sedation for procedures**▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ **Child:** 500 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 20 mg), to be administered 30–60 minutes before procedure

▶ **BY BUCCAL ADMINISTRATION**

- ▶ **Child 6 months-9 years:** 200–300 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 5 mg)
- ▶ **Child 10-17 years (body-weight up to 70 kg):** 6–7 mg
- ▶ **Child 10-17 years (body-weight 70 kg and above):** 6–7 mg (max. per dose 8 mg)

▶ **BY RECTUM**

- ▶ **Child 6 months-11 years:** 300–500 micrograms/kg, to be administered 15–30 minutes before procedure

▶ **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

- ▶ **Child 1 month-5 years:** Initially 25–50 micrograms/kg, to be administered over 2–3 minutes, 5–10 minutes before procedure, dose can be increased if necessary in small steps to maximum total dose per course; maximum 6 mg per course
- ▶ **Child 6-11 years:** Initially 25–50 micrograms/kg, to be administered over 2–3 minutes, 5–10 minutes before procedure, dose can be increased if necessary in small steps to maximum total dose per course; maximum 10 mg per course
- ▶ **Child 12-17 years:** Initially 25–50 micrograms/kg, to be administered over 2–3 minutes, 5–10 minutes before procedure, dose can be increased if necessary in small steps to maximum total dose per course; maximum 7.5 mg per course

**Premedication**▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ **Child:** 500 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 20 mg), to be taken 15–30 minutes before the procedure

▶ **BY RECTUM**

- ▶ **Child 6 months-11 years:** 300–500 micrograms/kg, to be administered 15–30 minutes before induction

**Induction of anaesthesia (but rarely used)**▶ **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

- ▶ **Child 7-17 years:** Initially 150 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 7.5 mg), dose to be given in steps of 50 micrograms/kg (max. 2.5 mg) over 2–5 minutes; wait for 2–5 minutes before subsequent dosing, then 50 micrograms/kg every 2 minutes (max. per dose 2.5 mg) if required; maximum 500 micrograms/kg per course; maximum 25 mg per course

continued →

**Sedation of patient receiving intensive care**

## ▶ INITIALLY BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

▶ Child 6 months–11 years: Initially 50–200 micrograms/kg, to be administered over at least 3 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 30–120 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response, initial dose may not be required and lower maintenance doses needed if opioid analgesics also used; reduce dose (or reduce or omit initial dose) in hypovolaemia, vasoconstriction, or hypothermia

▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 30–300 micrograms/kg, dose to be given in steps of 1–2.5 mg every 2 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 30–200 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response, initial dose may not be required and lower maintenance doses needed if opioid analgesics also used; reduce dose (or reduce or omit initial dose) in hypovolaemia, vasoconstriction, or hypothermia

## ▶ BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

▶ Neonate up to 32 weeks corrected gestational age: 60 micrograms/kg/hour for 24 hours, then reduced to 30 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response for maximum treatment duration of 4 days.

▶ Neonate 32 weeks corrected gestational age and above: 60 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response for maximum treatment duration of 4 days.

▶ Child 1–5 months: 60 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

- **UNLICENSED USE** Oromucosal solution not licensed for use in children under 3 months. Unlicensed oromucosal formulations are also available and may have different doses—refer to product literature. Injection not licensed for use in status epilepticus or febrile convulsions. Not licensed for use in children under 6 months for premedication and conscious sedation. Not licensed for use by mouth. Not licensed for use by buccal administration for conscious sedation.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****ANAESTHESIA**

Benzodiazepines should only be administered for anaesthesia by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** CNS depression · compromised airway · severe respiratory depression
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac disease · children (particularly if cardiovascular impairment) · concentration of midazolam in children under 15 kg not to exceed 1 mg/mL · debilitated patients (reduce dose) · hypothermia · hypovolaemia (risk of severe hypotension) · neonates · risk of airways obstruction and hypoventilation in children under 6 months (monitor respiratory rate and oxygen saturation) · vasoconstriction

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ Recovery when used for sedation Midazolam has a fast onset of action, recovery is faster than for other benzodiazepines such as diazepam, but may be significantly longer in patients with a low cardiac output, or after repeated dosing.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: midazolam

● **SIDE-EFFECTS****GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Level of consciousness decreased · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Skin reactions

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Apnoea · bradycardia · cardiac arrest · constipation · dry mouth · dyspnoea · euphoric mood · hiccups · hostility · movement disorders · physical assault · respiratory disorders · vasodilation
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Appetite increased · disinhibition (severe; with sedative and peri-operative use) · embolism and thrombosis · fall · saliva altered

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ With parenteral use Angioedema · drug abuse · drug tolerance · drug withdrawal seizure

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Higher doses are associated with prolonged sedation and risk of hypoventilation. The co-administration of midazolam with other sedative, hypnotic, or CNS-depressant drugs results in increased sedation. Midazolam accumulates in adipose tissue, which can significantly prolong sedation, especially in patients with obesity, hepatic impairment or renal impairment.

**Overdose** There have been reports of overdose when high strength midazolam has been used for conscious sedation. The use of high-strength midazolam (5mg/mL in 2mL and 10mL ampoules, or 2mg/mL in 5mL ampoules) should be restricted to general anaesthesia, intensive care, palliative care, or other situations where the risk has been assessed. It is advised that flumazenil is available when midazolam is used, to reverse the effects if necessary.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Small amount present in milk—avoid breast-feeding for 24 hours after administration (although amount probably too small to be harmful after single doses).
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution particularly in sedative doses; can precipitate coma. For status epilepticus and febrile convulsions: use with caution in mild to moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in chronic renal failure.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- ▶ With intravenous use For intravenous infusion (*Hypnovel*®), give continuously in Glucose 5% or Sodium chloride 0.9%. For intravenous injection in status epilepticus and febrile convulsions, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; rapid intravenous injection (less than 2 minutes) may cause seizure-like myoclonus in preterm neonate. For neonate and children under 15 kg dilute to a max. concentration of 1 mg/mL. Neonatal intensive care, dilute 15 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 30 micrograms/kg/hour.
- ▶ With oral use For administration by mouth for sedation and premedication, injection solution may be diluted with apple or black currant juice, chocolate sauce, or cola.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of midazolam is required, the following strength is used: 10 mg/5 mL.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer midazolam oromucosal solution.

Patients given sedatives and analgesics during minor outpatient procedures should be very carefully warned about the risks of undertaking skilled tasks (e.g. driving) afterwards. For intravenous benzodiazepines the risk extends to **at least 24 hours** after administration. Responsible persons should be available to take patients home afterwards. The dangers of taking **alcohol** should be emphasised.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Midazolam for stopping seizures [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/midazolam-for-stopping-seizures](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/midazolam-for-stopping-seizures)

## ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

## EPISTATUS OROMUCOSAL SOLUTION

## Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (November 2017) that midazolam oromucosal solution (*Epistatus*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of prolonged, acute, convulsive seizures in patients aged 10 years to less than 18 years.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, oromucosal solution, solution for injection, infusion, solution for infusion

## Solution for injection

## ▶ Midazolam (Non-proprietary)

**Midazolam (as Midazolam hydrochloride) 1 mg per 1 ml** Midazolam 5mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £16.89 DT = £8.18 [CD3]

Midazolam 2mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £5.00 DT = £5.00 [CD3]

**Midazolam (as Midazolam hydrochloride) 2 mg per 1 ml** Midazolam 10mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £6.75 DT = £6.89 (Hospital only) [CD3] | 10 ampoule [PoM] £6.94 DT = £6.89 [CD3]

**Midazolam (as Midazolam hydrochloride) 5 mg per 1 ml** Midazolam 50mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £33.77 DT = £29.41 [CD3] | Midazolam 10mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £7.65 DT = £6.02 [CD3]

## ▶ Hypnovel (Roche Products Ltd)

**Midazolam (as Midazolam hydrochloride) 5 mg per 1 ml** Hypnovel 10mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £7.11 DT = £6.02 [CD3]

## Solution for infusion

## ▶ Midazolam (Non-proprietary)

**Midazolam (as Midazolam hydrochloride) 1 mg per 1 ml** Midazolam 50mg/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £9.56–£11.00 [CD3]

**Midazolam (as Midazolam hydrochloride) 2 mg per 1 ml** Midazolam 100mg/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £9.05–£12.50 [CD3]

## Oral solution

## ▶ Midazolam (Non-proprietary)

**Midazolam (as Midazolam hydrochloride) 2 mg per 1 ml** Midazolam 2mg/ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 118 ml [PoM] [N] [CD3]

## Oromucosal solution

## CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Ethanol

## ▶ Buccolam (Shire Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Midazolam (as Midazolam hydrochloride) 5 mg per 1 ml** Buccolam 7.5mg/1.5ml oromucosal solution pre-filled oral syringes sugar-free | 4 unit dose [PoM] £89.00 DT = £89.00 [CD3] | Buccolam 10mg/2ml oromucosal solution pre-filled oral syringes sugar-free | 4 unit dose [PoM] £91.50 DT = £91.50 [CD3] | Buccolam 5mg/1ml oromucosal solution pre-filled oral syringes sugar-free | 4 unit dose [PoM] £85.50 DT = £85.50 [CD3] | Buccolam 2.5mg/0.5ml oromucosal solution pre-filled oral syringes sugar-free | 4 unit dose [PoM] £82.00 DT = £82.00 [CD3]

## ▶ Epistatus (Special Products Ltd)

**Midazolam (as Midazolam maleate) 10 mg per 1 ml** Epistatus 10mg/1ml oromucosal solution pre-filled oral syringes sugar-free | 1 unit dose [PoM] £45.76 DT = £45.76 [CD3]

## 2 Mental health disorders

## 2.1 Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder

## Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder

01-Sep-2017

## Description of condition

Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) is a behavioural syndrome characterised by hyperactivity, impulsivity and inattention, which can lead to psychological, social, educational or occupational impairment. While these symptoms tend to co-exist, some people are predominantly hyperactive and impulsive, while others are principally inattentive. Symptoms typically appear in children 3–7 years of age, but may not be recognised until after 7 years of age, especially if the predominant trait is inattention.

ADHD is usually a persisting disorder. Most older children with a sustained diagnosis will go on to have difficulties in adulthood, which may include continuing ADHD, personality disorders, emotional and social difficulties, and substance misuse.

## Aims of treatment

The aims of treatment are to reduce functional impairment and the severity of symptoms, and to improve quality of life.

## Non-drug treatment

[EvGr] Children and their carers should be advised about the value of a balanced diet, good nutrition and regular exercise.

▶ Parent-training is an intervention that teaches parents and carers to use behaviour therapy techniques with their child. [EvGr] In *pre-school* children, parent-training/education programmes for the child's carers is the first-line recommendation for management. Group-based training/education programmes are recommended for carers of *school-aged* children with moderate or severe impairment.

Drug treatment should be reserved for school-aged children with severe symptoms and impairment or for those with moderate levels of impairment who have refused or not responded sufficiently to non-drug interventions. ⚠

## Drug treatment

[EvGr] In school-age children presenting with severe impairment, drug treatment should be initiated by a specialist. Continued prescribing and monitoring of drug treatment can be performed by general practitioners, under shared care arrangements.

Methylphenidate hydrochloride p. 227, atomoxetine p. 226 or dexamfetamine sulfate p. 229 are recommended for management in children. Drug choice should be based on the presence of comorbid conditions (e.g. tic disorders, Tourette's syndrome, epilepsy—also, see below), adverse effect profile, issues regarding compliance, the potential for drug diversion (drugs being forwarded to others for non-prescription use or misuse), and child or carer preference.

Methylphenidate hydrochloride p. 227 should be considered for ADHD without significant comorbidity or ADHD with comorbid conduct disorder. Methylphenidate hydrochloride or atomoxetine p. 226 should be considered when tics, Tourette's syndrome, anxiety disorder, stimulant misuse or risk of drug diversion are present. Atomoxetine should be used if methylphenidate hydrochloride has been tried and has been ineffective at the maximum tolerated dose, or the child is intolerant to low or moderate doses of methylphenidate hydrochloride p. 227.

Modified-release methylphenidate hydrochloride p. 227 preparations are preferred in children because of their pharmacokinetic profile, convenience, improved adherence, lack of need to be taken at school (and associated problems with storing and administering controlled drugs in school). Immediate-release preparations can be given when more flexible dosing regimens are required or during initial dose titration.

When starting drug treatment, children should be monitored for side-effects. In particular, those treated with atomoxetine below should be closely observed for agitation, irritability, suicidal thinking and self-harming behaviour, and unusual changes in behaviour, particularly during the initial months of treatment, or after a change in dose. Parents or carers should also be warned about the potential for liver damage in rare cases with atomoxetine below. ⚠

Limited evidence has shown benefit from treatment with lisdexamfetamine mesilate p. 230 in reducing ADHD symptoms in children aged 6 years and over—it is licensed for use when the response to previous methylphenidate hydrochloride p. 227 treatment is considered clinically inadequate. In addition, limited evidence has shown the effectiveness of guanfacine p. 231 in reducing ADHD symptoms in children aged 6 years and over—it is licensed for use in children for whom stimulants are not suitable, not tolerated or have been shown to be ineffective.

### Poor response to treatment

**EVGr** If there has been a poor response to parent-training/education programmes, psychological treatment and drug treatment with methylphenidate hydrochloride p. 227 and atomoxetine below, a comprehensive review is required. Further options for treatment include higher doses of methylphenidate hydrochloride or atomoxetine; switching to dexamfetamine sulfate p. 229; further or alternative psychological treatments; or referral to regional specialists for alternative drug treatment (such as bupropion hydrochloride, clonidine hydrochloride p. 102, modafinil, or imipramine hydrochloride p. 240 [unlicensed indications]). Following an adequate response, drug treatment for ADHD should be continued for as long as it is clinically effective. Treatment should be reviewed annually. ⚠

### Useful Resources

Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder: diagnosis and management. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Clinical guideline 72. September 2008 (updated February 2016).

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/CG72](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/CG72)

## CNS STIMULANTS > CENTRALLY ACTING SYMPATHOMIMETICS

### Atomoxetine

28-Sep-2016

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (initiated by a specialist)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–17 years (body-weight up to 70 kg): Initially 500 micrograms/kg daily for 7 days, dose is increased according to response; maintenance 1.2 mg/kg daily, total daily dose may be given either as a single dose in the morning or in 2 divided doses with last dose no later than early evening, high daily doses to be given under the direction of a specialist; maximum 1.8 mg/kg per day; maximum 120 mg per day
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 70 kg and above): Initially 40 mg daily for 7 days, dose is increased according to response; maintenance 80 mg daily, total daily dose may be given either as a single dose in the morning or in 2 divided doses with last dose no later than early

evening, high daily doses to be given under the direction of a specialist; maximum 120 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Atomoxetine doses in BNF may differ from those in product literature. Doses above 100 mg daily not licensed.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Phaeochromocytoma · severe cardiovascular disease · severe cerebrovascular disease
- **CAUTIONS** QT-interval prolongation · aggressive behaviour · cardiovascular disease · cerebrovascular disease · emotional lability · history of seizures · hostility · hypertension · mania · psychosis · structural cardiac abnormalities · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · tachycardia
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: atomoxetine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Anxiety · appetite decreased · asthenia · chest pain · constipation · depression · dizziness · drowsiness · gastrointestinal discomfort · headaches · insomnia · mood altered · mydriasis · nausea · skin reactions · tic · vomiting · weight decreased
  - **Uncommon** Behaviour abnormal · dyspnoea · hallucination · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · palpitations · psychosis · QT interval prolongation · seizure · sensation abnormal · sinus tachycardia · suicidal behaviour · syncope · tremor · vision blurred
  - **Rare or very rare** Genital pain · hepatic disorders · priapism · Raynaud's phenomenon · urinary disorders
  - **Frequency not known** Sudden cardiac death
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid-present in milk in *animal* studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments** Halve dose in moderate impairment. Quarter dose in severe impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - Monitor for appearance or worsening of anxiety, depression or tics.
  - Pulse, blood pressure, psychiatric symptoms, appetite, weight and height should be recorded at initiation of therapy, following each dose adjustment, and at least every 6 months thereafter.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**
  - Suicidal ideation** Following reports of suicidal thoughts and behaviour, patients and their carers should be informed about the risk and told to report clinical worsening, suicidal thoughts or behaviour, irritability, agitation, or depression.
  - Hepatic impairment** Following rare reports of hepatic disorders, patients and carers should be advised of the risk and be told how to recognise symptoms; prompt medical attention should be sought in case of abdominal pain, unexplained nausea, malaise, darkening of the urine, or jaundice.
  - Medicines for Children leaflet:** Atomoxetine for attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/atomoxetine-attention-deficit-hyperactivity-disorder-adhd](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/atomoxetine-attention-deficit-hyperactivity-disorder-adhd)
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**
  - NICE decisions**
    - Methylphenidate, atomoxetine and dexamfetamine for attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) (March 2006) NICE TA98
    - Atomoxetine is recommended, within its licensed indications, as an option for the management of ADHD in children and adolescents.
    - [www.nice.org.uk/TA98](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA98)
  - Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**
    - The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (December 2015) that atomoxetine oral solution (*Strattera*®) is



accepted for restricted use, within its licensed indications, for treating patients who are unable to swallow capsules.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3

- ▶ **Strattera** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)

**Atomoxetine (as Atomoxetine hydrochloride) 4 mg per 1 ml** Strattera 4mg/1ml oral solution sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM] £85.00 DT = £85.00

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3

- ▶ **Strattera** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)

**Atomoxetine (as Atomoxetine hydrochloride) 10 mg** Strattera 10mg capsules | 7 capsule [PoM] £13.28 | 28 capsule [PoM] £53.09 DT = £53.09

**Atomoxetine (as Atomoxetine hydrochloride) 18 mg** Strattera 18mg capsules | 7 capsule [PoM] £13.28 | 28 capsule [PoM] £53.09 DT = £53.09

**Atomoxetine (as Atomoxetine hydrochloride) 25 mg** Strattera 25mg capsules | 7 capsule [PoM] £13.28 | 28 capsule [PoM] £53.09 DT = £53.09

**Atomoxetine (as Atomoxetine hydrochloride) 40 mg** Strattera 40mg capsules | 7 capsule [PoM] £13.28 | 28 capsule [PoM] £53.09 DT = £53.09

**Atomoxetine (as Atomoxetine hydrochloride) 60 mg** Strattera 60mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £53.09 DT = £53.09

**Atomoxetine (as Atomoxetine hydrochloride) 80 mg** Strattera 80mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £70.79 DT = £70.79

**Atomoxetine (as Atomoxetine hydrochloride) 100 mg** Strattera 100mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £70.79 DT = £70.79

## Methylphenidate hydrochloride 03-Oct-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (initiated under specialist supervision)

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- ▶ Child 4–5 years: Initially 2.5 mg twice daily, increased in steps of 2.5 mg daily if required, at weekly intervals, increased if necessary up to 1.4 mg/kg daily in 2–3 divided doses, discontinue if no response after 1 month, if effect wears off in evening (with rebound hyperactivity) a dose at bedtime may be appropriate (establish need with trial bedtime dose). Treatment may be started using a modified-release preparation
- ▶ Child 6–17 years: Initially 5 mg 1–2 times a day, increased in steps of 5–10 mg daily if required, at weekly intervals, increased if necessary up to 60 mg daily in 2–3 divided doses, increased if necessary up to 2.1 mg/kg daily in 2–3 divided doses, the licensed maximum dose is 60 mg daily in 2–3 doses, higher dose (up to a maximum of 90 mg daily) under the direction of a specialist, discontinue if no response after 1 month, if effect wears off in evening (with rebound hyperactivity) a dose at bedtime may be appropriate (establish need with trial bedtime dose). Treatment may be started using a modified-release preparation

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ When switching from *immediate-release* preparations to *modified-release* preparations—consult product literature.

### CONCERTA® XL

#### Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6–17 years: Initially 18 mg once daily, dose to be taken in the morning, increased in steps of 18 mg every week, adjusted according to response; increased if necessary up to 2.1 mg/kg daily, licensed max. dose is 54 mg once daily, to be increased to higher dose only

under direction of specialist; discontinue if no response after 1 month; maximum 108 mg per day

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Total daily dose of 15 mg of standard-release formulation is considered equivalent to *Concerta*® XL 18 mg once daily.

### DELMOSART® PROLONGED-RELEASE TABLET

#### Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (under expert supervision)

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6–17 years: Initially 18 mg once daily, dose to be taken in the morning, then increased in steps of 18 mg every week if required, discontinue if no response after 1 month; maximum 54 mg per day

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Total daily dose of 15 mg of standard-release formulation is considered equivalent to *Delmosart*® 18 mg once daily.

### EQUASYM® XL

#### Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6–17 years: Initially 10 mg once daily, dose to be taken in the morning before breakfast; increased gradually at weekly intervals if necessary; increased if necessary up to 2.1 mg/kg daily, licensed max. dose is 60 mg daily, to be increased to higher dose only under direction of specialist; discontinue if no response after 1 month; maximum 90 mg per day

### MEDIKINET® XL

#### Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6–17 years: Initially 10 mg once daily, dose to be taken in the morning with breakfast; adjusted at weekly intervals according to response; increased if necessary up to 2.1 mg/kg daily, licensed max. dose is 60 mg daily, to be increased to higher dose only under direction of specialist; discontinue if no response after 1 month; maximum 90 mg per day

### XAGGITIN® XL

#### Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (under expert supervision)

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6–17 years: Initially 18 mg once daily, dose to be taken in the morning, increased in steps of 18 mg every week, adjusted according to response, discontinue if no response after 1 month; maximum 54 mg per day

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Total daily dose of 15 mg of standard-release formulation is considered equivalent to *Xaggitin*® XL 18 mg once daily.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Doses over 60 mg daily not licensed; doses of *Concerta XL* over 54 mg daily not licensed. Not licensed for use in children under 6 years.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Anorexia nervosa · arrhythmias · cardiomyopathy · cardiovascular disease · cerebrovascular disorders · heart failure · hyperthyroidism · phaeochromocytoma · psychosis · severe depression · severe hypertension · structural cardiac abnormalities · suicidal ideation · uncontrolled bipolar disorder · vasculitis
- **CAUTIONS** Agitation · alcohol dependence · anxiety · drug dependence · epilepsy (discontinue if increased seizure frequency) · family history of Tourette syndrome · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · tics
- **CONCERTA® XL** Dysphagia (dose form not appropriate) · restricted gastro-intestinal lumen (dose form not appropriate)

**DELMOSART® PROLONGED-RELEASE TABLET** Dysphagia (dose form not appropriate) · restricted gastro-intestinal lumen (dose form not appropriate)

**XAGGITIN® XL** Dysphagia (dose form not appropriate)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: methylphenidate

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Alopecia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · arthralgia · behaviour abnormal · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · growth retardation · headaches · hypertension · laryngeal pain · mood altered · movement disorders · nasopharyngitis · nausea · palpitations · sleep disorders · vomiting · weight decreased

- ▶ **Uncommon** Chest discomfort · constipation · dyspnoea · fatigue · haematuria · hallucinations · muscle complaints · psychotic disorder · suicidal tendencies · tic · tremor · vision disorders

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Anaemia · angina pectoris · cardiac arrest · cerebrovascular insufficiency · confusion · gynaecomastia · hepatic coma · hyperfocus · hyperhidrosis · leucopenia · mydriasis · myocardial infarction · neuroleptic malignant syndrome · peripheral coldness · Raynaud's phenomenon · seizures · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · sudden cardiac death · thinking abnormal · thrombocytopenia

- ▶ **Frequency not known** Delusions · drug dependence · hyperpyrexia · intracranial haemorrhage · logorrhea · pancytopenia · vasculitis

- **PREGNANCY** Limited experience—avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Limited information available—avoid.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ Monitor for psychiatric disorders.
- ▶ Pulse, blood pressure, psychiatric symptoms, appetite, weight and height should be recorded at initiation of therapy, following each dose adjustment, and at least every 6 months thereafter.

- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

**MEDIKINET® XL** Contents of capsule can be sprinkled on a tablespoon of apple sauce or yoghurt (then swallowed immediately without chewing).

**EQUASYM® XL** Contents of capsule can be sprinkled on a tablespoon of apple sauce (then swallowed immediately without chewing).

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Different versions of modified-release preparations may not have the same clinical effect. To avoid confusion between these different formulations of methylphenidate, prescribers should specify the brand to be dispensed.

**CONCERTA® XL** Consists of an immediate-release component (22% of the dose) and a modified-release component (78% of the dose).

**MEDIKINET® XL** Consists of an immediate-release component (50% of the dose) and a modified-release component (50% of the dose).

**EQUASYM® XL** Consists of an immediate-release component (30% of the dose) and a modified-release component (70% of the dose).

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** Prescribers and other healthcare professionals should advise patients if treatment is likely to affect their ability to perform skilled tasks (e.g. driving). This applies especially to drugs with sedative effects; patients should be warned that these effects are increased by alcohol. General information about a patient's fitness to drive is available from the Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency at [www.dvla.gov.uk](http://www.dvla.gov.uk).

2015 legislation regarding driving whilst taking certain drugs, may also apply to methylphenidate, see *Drugs and driving* under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

**CONCERTA® XL** Tablet membrane may pass through gastro-intestinal tract unchanged.

**DELMOSART® PROLONGED-RELEASE TABLET** Manufacturer advises tablet membrane may pass through gastro-intestinal tract unchanged.

- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**NICE decisions**

- ▶ **Methylphenidate, atomoxetine and dexamfetamine for attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) (March 2006)** NICE TA98

Methylphenidate is recommended, within its licensed indications, as an option for the management of ADHD in children and adolescents.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA98](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA98)

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Modified-release tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

▶ **Concerta XL** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 18 mg** Concerta XL 18mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £31.19 DT = £31.19 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 27 mg** Concerta XL 27mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £36.81 DT = £36.81 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 36 mg** Concerta XL 36mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £42.45 DT = £42.45 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 54 mg** Concerta XL 54mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £73.62 DT = £36.80 [CD2]

▶ **Delmosart** (Actavis UK Ltd)

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 18 mg** Delmosart 18mg modified-release tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £15.59 DT = £31.19 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 27 mg** Delmosart 27mg modified-release tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £18.41 DT = £36.81 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 36 mg** Delmosart 36mg modified-release tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £21.23 DT = £42.45 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 54 mg** Delmosart 54mg modified-release tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £36.81 DT = £36.80 [CD2]

▶ **Xaggitin XL** (Ethypharm UK Ltd)

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 18 mg** Xaggitin XL 18mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £15.58 DT = £31.19 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 27 mg** Xaggitin XL 27mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £18.40 DT = £36.81 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 36 mg** Xaggitin XL 36mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £21.22 DT = £42.45 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 54 mg** Xaggitin XL 54mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £36.80 DT = £36.80 [CD2]

**Tablet**

▶ **Methylphenidate hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 5 mg** Methylphenidate 5mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £3.03 DT = £3.03 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 10 mg** Methylphenidate 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £5.29 DT = £3.76 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 20 mg** Methylphenidate 20mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £10.92 DT = £10.92 [CD2]

▶ **Medikinet** (Flynn Pharma Ltd)

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 5 mg** Medikinet 5mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £3.03 DT = £3.03 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 10 mg** Medikinet 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £5.49 DT = £3.76 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 20 mg** Medikinet 20mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £10.92 DT = £10.92 [CD2]

▶ **Ritalin** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 10 mg** Ritalin 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £6.68 DT = £3.76 [CD2]

▶ **Tranquilyn** (Genesis Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 5 mg** Tranquilyn 5mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £3.03 DT = £3.03 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 10 mg** Tranquilyn 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £3.76 DT = £3.76 [CD2]

**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 20 mg** Tranquilyn 20mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £10.92 DT = £10.92 [CD2]

**Modified-release capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

► **Equasym XL** (Shire Pharmaceuticals Ltd)**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 10 mg** Equasym XL 10mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £25.00 DT = £25.00 [CD2]**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 20 mg** Equasym XL 20mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £30.00 DT = £30.00 [CD2]**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 30 mg** Equasym XL 30mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £35.00 DT = £35.00 [CD2]► **Medikinet XL** (Flynn Pharma Ltd)**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 5 mg** Medikinet XL 5mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £24.04 [CD2]**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 10 mg** Medikinet XL 10mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £24.04 DT = £25.00 [CD2]**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 20 mg** Medikinet XL 20mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £28.86 DT = £30.00 [CD2]**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 30 mg** Medikinet XL 30mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £33.66 DT = £35.00 [CD2]**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 40 mg** Medikinet XL 40mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £57.72 DT = £57.72 [CD2]**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 50 mg** Medikinet XL 50mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £62.52 [CD2]**Methylphenidate hydrochloride 60 mg** Medikinet XL 60mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £67.32 [CD2]**CNS STIMULANTS > CENTRALLY ACTING SYMPATHOMIMETICS > AMFETAMINES****Dexamfetamine sulfate**  
(Dexamphetamine sulfate)● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Refractory attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (initiated under specialist supervision)**► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 6–17 years: Initially 2.5 mg 2–3 times a day, increased in steps of 5 mg once weekly if required, increased if necessary up to 1 mg/kg daily, maintenance dose to be given in 2–4 divided doses, up to 20 mg daily (40 mg daily has been required in some children)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Agitated states · cardiovascular disease · history of alcohol abuse · history of drug abuse · hyperexcitability · hyperthyroidism · moderate hypertension · severe hypertension · structural cardiac abnormalities

- **CAUTIONS** Anorexia · bipolar disorder · history of epilepsy (discontinue if seizures occur) · mild hypertension · psychosis · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · tics · Tourette syndrome

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- Tics and Tourette syndrome Discontinue use if tics occur.
- Growth restriction in children Monitor height and weight as growth restriction may occur during prolonged therapy (drug-free periods may allow catch-up in growth but withdraw slowly to avoid inducing depression or renewed hyperactivity).

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: amfetamines

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · arthralgia · behaviour abnormal · depression · dry mouth · headache · mood altered · movement disorders · muscle cramps · nausea · palpitations · poor weight gain · sleep disorders · vertigo · vomiting · weight decreased
- **Rare or very rare** Anaemia · angina pectoris · cardiac arrest · cerebrovascular insufficiency · fatigue · growth retardation · hallucination · hepatic coma · hepatic function abnormal · intracranial haemorrhage · leucopenia · mydriasis · psychosis · seizure · skin reactions · suicidal tendencies · thrombocytopenia · tic (in those at risk) · vasculitis cerebral · vision disorders

- **Frequency not known** Acidosis · alopecia · cardiomyopathy · chest pain · circulatory collapse · colitis ischaemic · concentration impaired · confusion · diarrhoea · dizziness · drug dependence · drug tolerance · hyperhidrosis · hypermetabolism · hyperpyrexia · kidney injury · myocardial infarction · neuroleptic malignant syndrome · obsessive-compulsive disorder · reflexes increased · rhabdomyolysis · sexual dysfunction · sudden death · taste altered · tremor

**Overdose** Amfetamines cause wakefulness, excessive activity, paranoia, hallucinations, and hypertension followed by exhaustion, convulsions, hyperthermia, and coma. See Stimulants under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (retrospective evidence of uncertain significance suggesting possible embryotoxicity).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Significant amount in milk—avoid.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - Monitor growth in children.
  - Monitor for aggressive behaviour or hostility during initial treatment.
  - Pulse, blood pressure, psychiatric symptoms, appetite, weight and height should be recorded at initiation of therapy, following each dose adjustment, and at least every 6 months thereafter.

- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets can be halved.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Data on safety and efficacy of long-term use not complete.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** Prescribers and other healthcare professionals should advise patients if treatment is likely to affect their ability to perform skilled tasks (e.g. driving). This applies especially to drugs with sedative effects; patients should be warned that these effects are increased by alcohol. General information about a patient's fitness to drive is available from the Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency at [www.dvla.gov.uk](http://www.dvla.gov.uk).

For information on 2015 legislation regarding driving whilst taking certain controlled drugs, including amfetamines, see *Drugs and driving* under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

● **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS****NICE decisions**

- **Methylphenidate, atomoxetine and dexamfetamine for attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) (March 2006)** NICE TA98  
Dexamfetamine is recommended, within its licensed indications, as an option for the management of ADHD in children and adolescents.  
[www.nice.org.uk/TA98](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA98)

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: modified-release capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

**Oral solution**► **Dexamfetamine sulfate (Non-proprietary)**

**Dexamfetamine sulfate 1 mg per 1 ml** Dexamfetamine 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £29.44-£34.35 [CD2]  
sugar-free | 500 ml [PoM] £114.49 DT = £114.49 [CD2]

**Modified-release capsule**► **Dexedrine Spansules** (Imported (United States))

**Dexamfetamine sulfate 5 mg** Dexedrine 5mg Spansules |

100 capsule [PoM] [CD2]

**Dexamfetamine sulfate 10 mg** Dexedrine 10mg Spansules |

100 capsule [PoM] [CD2]

**Dexamfetamine sulfate 15 mg** Dexedrine 15mg Spansules |

100 capsule [PoM] [CD2]

**Tablet**► **Dexamfetamine sulfate (Non-proprietary)**

**Dexamfetamine sulfate 5 mg** Dexamfetamine 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £24.75 DT = £24.13 [CD2]

► **Amfexa** (Flynn Pharma Ltd)

**Dexamfetamine sulfate 5 mg** Amfexa 5mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £19.89 [CD2]

**Dexamfetamine sulfate 10 mg** Amfexa 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £39.78 DT = £39.78 [CD2]

**Dexamfetamine sulfate 20 mg** Amfexa 20mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £79.56 [CD2]

**Lisdexamfetamine mesilate**

23-Jan-2018

- **DRUG ACTION** Lisdexamfetamine is a prodrug of dexamfetamine.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (initiated by a specialist)**► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 6–17 years: Initially 30 mg once daily, alternatively initially 20 mg once daily, increased in steps of 10–20 mg every week if required, dose to be taken in the morning, discontinue if response insufficient after 1 month; maximum 70 mg per day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Advanced arteriosclerosis · agitated states · hyperthyroidism · moderate hypertension · severe hypertension · symptomatic cardiovascular disease

- **CAUTIONS** Bipolar disorder · history of cardiovascular disease · history of substance abuse · may lower seizure threshold (discontinue if seizures occur) · psychotic disorders · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · tics · Tourette syndrome

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- Cardiovascular disease Manufacturer advises caution in patients with underlying conditions that might be compromised by increases in blood pressure or heart rate; see also *Contra-indications*.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: amfetamines

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain upper · anxiety · appetite decreased · behaviour abnormal · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dyspnoea · fatigue · feeling jittery · fever · headache · insomnia · mood altered · nausea · palpitations · psychiatric disorders · skin reactions · tachycardia · tremor · vomiting · weight decreased
- **Uncommon** Cardiomyopathy · erectile dysfunction · hallucination · hyperhidrosis · logorrhea · movement disorders · mydriasis · Raynaud's phenomenon · taste altered · vision blurred
- **Frequency not known** Angioedema · drug dependence · drug tolerance · hepatitis allergic · psychotic disorder · seizure · Stevens-Johnson syndrome

**Overdose** Amfetamines cause wakefulness, excessive activity, paranoia, hallucinations, and hypertension followed by exhaustion, convulsions, hyperthermia, and coma. See Stimulants under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in human milk.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises max. dose 50 mg daily in severe impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**  
► Manufacturer advises monitor for aggressive behaviour or hostility during initial treatment.

- Manufacturer advises monitor pulse, blood pressure, and for psychiatric symptoms before treatment initiation, following each dose adjustment, and at least every 6 months thereafter. Monitor weight in adults before treatment initiation and during treatment; in children, height and weight should be recorded before treatment initiation, and height, weight and appetite monitored at least every 6 months during treatment.

- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises swallow whole or mix contents of capsule with soft food such as yoghurt or in a glass of water or orange juice; contents should be dispersed completely and consumed immediately.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and carers should be counselled on the administration of capsules.

**Driving and skilled tasks** Prescribers and other healthcare professionals should advise patients if treatment is likely to affect their ability to perform skilled tasks (e.g. driving). This applies especially to drugs with sedative effects; patients should be warned that these effects are increased by alcohol. General information about a patient's fitness to drive is available from the Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency at [www.dvla.gov.uk](http://www.dvla.gov.uk).

For information on 2015 legislation regarding driving whilst taking certain controlled drugs, including amfetamines, see *Drugs and driving* under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (May 2013) that lisdexamfetamine dimesylate (*Elvanse*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland as part of a comprehensive treatment programme for attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) in children aged 6 years and over when response to previous methylphenidate treatment is considered clinically inadequate.

**All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions**

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (December 2013) that lisdexamfetamine dimesylate (*Elvanse*®) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales as part of a comprehensive treatment programme for attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) in children aged six years and over when response to previous methylphenidate treatment is considered clinically inadequate. Treatment must be under the supervision of a specialist in childhood and/or adolescent behavioural disorders.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 25

► **Elvanse** (Shire Pharmaceuticals Ltd) ▼

**Lisdexamfetamine dimesylate 20 mg** Elvanse 20mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £54.62 DT = £54.62 [CD2]

**Lisdexamfetamine dimesylate 30 mg** Elvanse Adult 30mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £58.24 DT = £58.24 [CD2]

**Lisdexamfetamine dimesylate 40 mg** Elvanse 40mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £62.82 DT = £62.82 [CD2]

**Lisdexamfetamine dimesylate 50 mg** Elvanse Adult 50mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £68.60 DT = £68.60 [CD2]

**Lisdexamfetamine dimesylate 60 mg** Elvanse 60mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £75.18 DT = £75.18 [CD2]

**Lisdexamfetamine dimesylate 70 mg** Elvanse 70mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £83.16 DT = £83.16 [CD2]

Elvanse Adult 70mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £83.16 DT = £83.16 [CD2]



SYMPATHOMIMETICS > ALPHA<sub>2</sub>-ADRENOCEPTOR AGONISTS

## Guanfacine

26-May-2016

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder in children for whom stimulants are not suitable, not tolerated or ineffective (initiated under specialist supervision)**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–12 years (body-weight 25 kg and above): Initially 1 mg once daily; adjusted in steps of 1 mg every week if necessary and if tolerated; maintenance 0.05–0.12 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 4 mg), for optimal weight-adjusted dose titrations, consult product literature
- Child 13–17 years (body-weight 34–41.4 kg): Initially 1 mg once daily; adjusted in steps of 1 mg every week if necessary and if tolerated; maintenance 0.05–0.12 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 4 mg), for optimal weight-adjusted dose titrations, consult product literature
- Child 13–17 years (body-weight 41.5–49.4 kg): Initially 1 mg once daily; adjusted in steps of 1 mg every week if necessary and if tolerated; maintenance 0.05–0.12 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 5 mg), for optimal weight-adjusted dose titrations, consult product literature
- Child 13–17 years (body-weight 49.5–58.4 kg): Initially 1 mg once daily; adjusted in steps of 1 mg every week if necessary and if tolerated; maintenance 0.05–0.12 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 6 mg), for optimal weight-adjusted dose titrations, consult product literature
- Child 13–17 years (body-weight 58.5 kg and above): Initially 1 mg once daily; adjusted in steps of 1 mg every week if necessary and if tolerated; maintenance 0.05–0.12 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 7 mg), for optimal weight-adjusted dose titrations, consult product literature

## DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- Manufacturer advises reduce dose by half with concurrent use of moderate and potent inhibitors of CYP3A4.
- Manufacturer advises increase dose up to max. 7 mg daily with concurrent use of potent inducers of CYP3A4—no specific recommendation made for children.

- **CAUTIONS** Bradycardia (risk of torsade de pointes) • heart block (risk of torsade de pointes) • history of cardiovascular disease • history of QT-interval prolongation • hypokalaemia (risk of torsade de pointes)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: guanfacine

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Anxiety • appetite decreased • arrhythmias • asthenia • constipation • depression • diarrhoea • dizziness • drowsiness • dry mouth • gastrointestinal discomfort • headache • hypotension • mood altered • nausea • skin reactions • sleep disorders • urinary disorders • vomiting • weight increased
- **Uncommon** Asthma • atrioventricular block • chest pain • hallucination • loss of consciousness • pallor • seizure • syncope
- **Rare or very rare** Hypertension • hypertensive encephalopathy • malaise
- **Frequency not known** Erectile dysfunction

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Somnolence and sedation may occur, predominantly during the first 2–3 weeks of treatment and with dose increases; manufacturer advises to consider dose reduction or

discontinuation of treatment if symptoms are clinically significant or persistent.

**Overdose** Features may include hypotension, initial hypertension, bradycardia, lethargy, and respiratory depression. Manufacturer advises that patients who develop lethargy should be observed for development of more serious toxicity for up to 24 hours.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer recommends effective contraception in females of childbearing potential.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—toxicity in animal studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises consider dose reduction.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises consider dose reduction in severe impairment and end-stage renal disease.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - Manufacturer advises to conduct a baseline evaluation to identify patients at risk of somnolence, sedation, hypotension, bradycardia, QT-prolongation, and arrhythmia; this should include assessment of cardiovascular status. Monitor for signs of these adverse effects weekly during dose titration and then every 3 months during the first year of treatment, and every 6 months thereafter. Monitor BMI prior to treatment and then every 3 months for the first year of treatment, and every 6 months thereafter. More frequent monitoring is advised following dose adjustments.
  - Monitor blood pressure and pulse during dose downward titration and following discontinuation of treatment.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Manufacturer advises avoid abrupt withdrawal; consider dose tapering to minimise potential withdrawal effects.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises avoid administration with high fat meals (may increase absorption).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be counselled on administration of guanfacine modified-release tablets.
- **Missed doses** Manufacturer advises that patients and carers should inform their prescriber if more than one dose is missed; consider dose re-titration.
- **Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be counselled about the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness and syncope.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Modified-release tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 25

► **Intuniv** (Shire Pharmaceuticals Ltd) ▼

**Guanfacine (as Guanfacine hydrochloride) 1 mg** Intuniv 1mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £56.00

**Guanfacine (as Guanfacine hydrochloride) 2 mg** Intuniv 2mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £58.52

**Guanfacine (as Guanfacine hydrochloride) 3 mg** Intuniv 3mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £65.52

**Guanfacine (as Guanfacine hydrochloride) 4 mg** Intuniv 4mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £76.16



## 2.2 Bipolar disorder and mania

### Mania and hypomania

08-Jun-2018

#### Overview

Antimanic drugs are used to control acute attacks and to prevent recurrence of episodes of mania or hypomania. Long-term treatment of bipolar disorder should continue for at least two years from the last manic episode and up to five years if the patient has risk factors for relapse.

An antidepressant drug may also be required for the treatment of co-existing depression, but should be avoided in patients with rapid-cycling bipolar disorder, a recent history of hypomania, or with rapid mood fluctuations.

#### Benzodiazepines

Use of benzodiazepines may be helpful in the initial stages of treatment for behavioural disturbance or agitation; they should not be used for long periods because of the risk of dependence.

#### Antipsychotic drugs

Antipsychotic drugs (normally olanzapine p. 251, quetiapine p. 252, or risperidone p. 253) are useful in acute episodes of mania and hypomania; if the response to antipsychotic drugs is inadequate, lithium or valproate may be added. An antipsychotic drug may be used concomitantly with lithium or valproate in the initial treatment of severe acute mania. See *Important safety information, Conception and contraception, and Pregnancy in the valproic acid* p. 213 and sodium valproate p. 208 monographs.

Atypical antipsychotics are the treatment of choice for the long-term management of bipolar disorder in children and adolescents; if the patient has frequent relapses or continuing functional impairment, consider concomitant therapy with lithium or valproate. An atypical antipsychotic that causes less weight gain and does not increase prolactin levels is preferred.

When discontinuing antipsychotics, the dose should be reduced gradually over at least 4 weeks if the child is continuing on other antimanic drugs; if the child is not continuing on other antimanic drugs, or has a history of manic relapse, a withdrawal period of up to 3 months is required.

#### Carbamazepine

Carbamazepine p. 196 may be used under specialist supervision for the prophylaxis of bipolar disorder (manic-depressive disorder) in children unresponsive to a combination of other prophylactic drugs; it is used in patients with rapid-cycling manic-depressive illness (4 or more affective episodes per year). The dose of carbamazepine should not normally be increased if an acute episode of mania occurs.

#### Valproate

Valproic acid (as the semisodium salt) is licensed in adults for the treatment of manic episodes associated with bipolar disorder. Sodium valproate is unlicensed for the treatment of bipolar disorder. Valproate (valproic acid and sodium valproate) can also be used for the prophylaxis of bipolar disorder [unlicensed use]. It must be started and supervised by a specialist experienced in managing bipolar disorder. Because of its teratogenic risk, valproate must not be used in females of childbearing potential unless the conditions of the Pregnancy Prevention Programme are met and alternative treatments are ineffective or not tolerated. Valproic acid and sodium valproate must not be used during pregnancy in bipolar disorder. The benefit and risk of valproate therapy should be carefully reconsidered at regular treatment reviews. For further information, see *Important safety information, Conception and contraception, and*

*Pregnancy in the valproic acid and sodium valproate monographs.*

In patients with frequent relapse or continuing functional impairment, consider switching therapy to lithium or an atypical antipsychotic, or adding lithium or an atypical antipsychotic to valproate. If a patient taking valproate experiences an acute episode of mania that is not ameliorated by increasing the valproate dose, consider concomitant therapy with olanzapine, quetiapine, or risperidone.

#### Lithium

Lithium salts are used in the prophylaxis and treatment of mania, in the prophylaxis of bipolar disorder (manic-depressive disorder), and bipolar depression, and as concomitant therapy with antidepressant medication in children who have had an incomplete response to treatment for acute depression in bipolar disorder [unlicensed indication]. It is also used for the treatment of aggressive or self-harming behaviour [unlicensed indication].

The decision to give prophylactic lithium requires specialist advice, and must be based on careful consideration of the likelihood of recurrence in the individual child, and the benefit of treatment weighed against the risks. The full prophylactic effect of lithium may not occur for six to twelve months after the initiation of therapy. An atypical antipsychotic or valproate (given alone or as adjunctive therapy with lithium) are alternative prophylactic treatments in patients who experience frequent relapses or continued functional impairment.

#### Other drugs used for Bipolar disorder and mania

Aripiprazole, p. 249 • Perphenazine, p. 246

## ANTIPSYCHOTICS > LITHIUM SALTS

### Lithium salts

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Addison's disease • cardiac insufficiency • dehydration • family history of Brugada syndrome • low sodium diets • personal history of Brugada syndrome • rhythm disorder • untreated hypothyroidism
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid abrupt withdrawal • cardiac disease • concurrent ECT (may lower seizure threshold) • diuretic treatment (risk of toxicity) • epilepsy (may lower seizure threshold) • myasthenia gravis • psoriasis (risk of exacerbation) • QT interval prolongation • review dose as necessary in diarrhoea • review dose as necessary in intercurrent infection (especially if sweating profusely) • review dose as necessary in vomiting • surgery

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ **Long-term use** Long-term use of lithium has been associated with thyroid disorders and mild cognitive and memory impairment. Long-term treatment should therefore be undertaken only with careful assessment of risk and benefit, and with monitoring of thyroid function every 6 months (more often if there is evidence of deterioration).

The need for continued therapy should be assessed regularly and patients should be maintained on lithium after 3–5 years only if benefit persists.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Nephropathy
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Abdominal discomfort • alopecia • angioedema • appetite decreased • arrhythmias • atrioventricular block • cardiomyopathy • cerebellar syndrome • circulatory collapse • coma • delirium • diarrhoea • dizziness • dry mouth • electrolyte imbalance • encephalopathy • folliculitis • gastritis • goitre • hyperglycaemia • hyperparathyroidism • hypersalivation • hypotension • hypothyroidism • idiopathic intracranial hypertension • leucocytosis • memory loss • movement

disorders • muscle weakness • myasthenia gravis • nausea • neoplasms • nystagmus • peripheral neuropathy • peripheral oedema • polydipsia • polyuria • QT interval prolongation • reflexes abnormal • renal disorders • renal impairment • rhabdomyolysis • seizure • sexual dysfunction • skin reactions • skin ulcer • speech impairment • taste altered • thyrotoxicosis • tremor • vertigo • vision disorders • vomiting • weight increased

**Overdose** Signs of intoxication require withdrawal of treatment and include increasing gastro-intestinal disturbances (vomiting, diarrhoea), visual disturbances, polyuria, muscle weakness, fine tremor increasing to coarse tremor, CNS disturbances (confusion and drowsiness increasing to lack of coordination, restlessness, stupor); abnormal reflexes, myoclonus, incontinence, hypernatraemia. With severe overdosage seizures, cardiac arrhythmias (including sino-atrial block, bradycardia and first-degree heart block), blood pressure changes, circulatory failure, renal failure, coma and sudden death reported.

For details on the management of poisoning, see Lithium, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception during treatment for women of child bearing potential.

● **PREGNANCY** Avoid if possible, particularly in the first trimester (risk of teratogenicity, including cardiac abnormalities).

**Dose adjustments** Dose requirements increased during the second and third trimesters (but on delivery return abruptly to normal).

**Monitoring** Close monitoring of serum-lithium concentration advised in pregnancy (risk of toxicity in neonate).

● **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk and risk of toxicity in infant—avoid.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Caution in mild to moderate impairment. Avoid in severe impairment.

**Monitoring** In renal impairment monitor serum-lithium concentration closely and adjust dose accordingly.

#### ● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ Serum concentrations Lithium salts have a narrow therapeutic/toxic ratio and should therefore not be prescribed unless facilities for monitoring serum-lithium concentrations are available. Samples should be taken 12 hours after the dose to achieve a serum-lithium concentration of 0.4–1 mmol/litre (lower end of the range for maintenance therapy). A target serum-lithium concentration of 0.8–1 mmol/litre is recommended for acute episodes of mania, and for patients who have previously relapsed or have sub-syndromal symptoms. It is important to determine the optimum range for each individual patient. Routine serum-lithium monitoring should be performed weekly after initiation and after each dose change until concentrations are stable, then every 3 months thereafter. Additional serum-lithium measurements should be made if a patient develops significant intercurrent disease or if there is a significant change in a patient's sodium or fluid intake.
- ▶ Manufacturer advises to assess renal, cardiac, and thyroid function before treatment initiation. **EvGr** An ECG is recommended in patients with cardiovascular disease or risk factors for it. Body-weight or BMI, serum electrolytes, and a full blood count should also be measured before treatment initiation.
- ▶ Monitor body-weight or BMI, serum electrolytes, eGFR, and thyroid function every 6 months during treatment, and more often if there is evidence of impaired renal or thyroid function, or raised calcium levels. **Ad**

Manufacturer also advises to monitor cardiac function regularly.

● **TREATMENT CESSATION** While there is no clear evidence of withdrawal or rebound psychosis, abrupt discontinuation of lithium increases the risk of relapse. If lithium is to be discontinued, the dose should be reduced gradually over a period of at least 4 weeks (preferably over a period of up to 3 months). Patients and their carers should be warned of the risk of relapse if lithium is discontinued abruptly. If lithium is stopped or is to be discontinued abruptly, consider changing therapy to an atypical antipsychotic or valproate.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients should be advised to report signs and symptoms of lithium toxicity, hypothyroidism, renal dysfunction (including polyuria and polydipsia), and benign intracranial hypertension (persistent headache and visual disturbance). Maintain adequate fluid intake and avoid dietary changes which reduce or increase sodium intake.

**Lithium treatment packs** A lithium treatment pack should be given to patients on initiation of treatment with lithium. The pack consists of a patient information booklet, lithium alert card, and a record book for tracking serum-lithium concentration. Packs may be purchased from

3M

0845 610 1112

nhsforms@mmm.uk.com

**Driving and skilled tasks** May impair performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving, operating machinery).

232

## Lithium carbonate

### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Treatment and prophylaxis of mania | Treatment and prophylaxis of bipolar disorder | Treatment and prophylaxis of recurrent depression | Treatment and prophylaxis of aggressive or self-harming behaviour**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Dose adjusted according to serum-lithium concentration, doses are initially divided throughout the day, but once daily administration is preferred when serum-lithium concentration stabilised

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Preparations vary widely in bioavailability; changing the preparation requires the same precautions as initiation of treatment.

### CAMCOLIT® IMMEDIATE-RELEASE TABLET

**Treatment of mania | Treatment of bipolar disorder | Treatment of recurrent depression | Treatment of aggressive or self-harming behaviour**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 1–1.5 g daily, dose adjusted according to serum-lithium concentration, doses are initially divided throughout the day, but once daily administration is preferred when serum-lithium concentration stabilised

**Prophylaxis of mania | Prophylaxis of bipolar disorder | Prophylaxis of recurrent depression | Prophylaxis of aggressive or self-harming behaviour**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 300–400 mg daily, dose adjusted according to serum-lithium concentration, doses are initially divided throughout the day, but once daily administration is preferred when serum-lithium concentration stabilised

continued →

**CAMCOLIT® MODIFIED-RELEASE TABLET**

**Treatment of mania | Treatment of bipolar disorder | Treatment of recurrent depression | Treatment of aggressive or self-harming behaviour**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 1–1.5 g daily, dose adjusted according to serum-lithium concentration, doses are initially divided throughout the day, but once daily administration is preferred when serum-lithium concentration stabilised

**Prophylaxis of mania | Prophylaxis of bipolar disorder | Prophylaxis of recurrent depression | Prophylaxis of aggressive or self-harming behaviour**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 300–400 mg daily, dose adjusted according to serum-lithium concentration, doses are initially divided throughout the day, but once daily administration is preferred when serum-lithium concentration stabilised

**LISKONUM®**

**Treatment of mania | Treatment of bipolar disorder | Treatment of recurrent depression | Treatment of aggressive or self-harming behaviour**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 225–675 mg twice daily, dose adjusted according to serum-lithium concentration, doses are initially divided throughout the day, but once daily administration is preferred when serum-lithium concentration stabilised

**Prophylaxis of mania | Prophylaxis of bipolar disorder | Prophylaxis of recurrent depression | Prophylaxis of aggressive or self-harming behaviour**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 225–450 mg twice daily, dose adjusted according to serum-lithium concentration, doses are initially divided throughout the day, but once daily administration is preferred when serum-lithium concentration stabilised

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for aggressive or self-harming behaviour. Not licensed for concomitant therapy with antidepressant medication in children who have had an incomplete response to treatment for acute depression in bipolar disorder. *Camcolit*® brand not licensed for use in children.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: lithium

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

**Modified-release tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 25

► **Lithium carbonate (Non-proprietary)**

**Lithium carbonate 400 mg** Lithium carbonate 400mg modified-release tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] [S] DT = £4.02

► **Camcolit** (Essential Pharma Ltd)

**Lithium carbonate 400 mg** Camcolit 400 modified-release tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £48.18 DT = £4.02

► **Liskonum** (Teofarma)

**Lithium carbonate 450 mg** Liskonum 450mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £11.84 DT = £11.84

► **Priadel (lithium carbonate)** (Sanofi)

**Lithium carbonate 200 mg** Priadel 200mg modified-release tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £2.76 DT = £2.76

**Lithium carbonate 400 mg** Priadel 400mg modified-release tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £4.02 DT = £4.02

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

► **Lithium carbonate (Non-proprietary)**

**Lithium carbonate 250 mg** Lithium carbonate 250mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £87.00 DT = £87.00

**Lithium citrate**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Treatment and prophylaxis of mania | Treatment and prophylaxis of bipolar disorder | Treatment and prophylaxis of recurrent depression | Treatment and prophylaxis of aggressive or self-harming behaviour**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Dose adjusted according to serum-lithium concentration; doses are initially divided throughout the day, but once daily administration is preferred when serum-lithium concentration stabilised

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- **Preparations vary widely in bioavailability;** changing the preparation requires the same precautions as initiation of treatment.

**LI-LIQUID®**

**Treatment and prophylaxis of mania | Treatment and prophylaxis of bipolar disorder | Treatment and prophylaxis of recurrent depression | Treatment and prophylaxis of aggressive or self-harming behaviour**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Dose adjusted according to serum-lithium concentration

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- For *Li-Liquid*®: lithium citrate tetrahydrate 509 mg is equivalent to lithium carbonate 200 mg.

**PRIADEL® LIQUID**

**Treatment and prophylaxis of mania | Treatment and prophylaxis of bipolar disorder | Treatment and prophylaxis of recurrent depression | Treatment and prophylaxis of aggressive or self-harming behaviour**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Dose adjusted according to serum-lithium concentration, doses are initially divided throughout the day, but once daily administration is preferred when serum-lithium concentration stabilised

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- For *Priadel*® liquid: lithium citrate tetrahydrate 520 mg is equivalent to lithium carbonate 204 mg.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: lithium

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oral solution**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

► **Lithium citrate (Non-proprietary)**

**Lithium citrate 101.8 mg per 1 ml** Lithium citrate 509mg/5ml oral solution | 150 ml [PoM] [S] DT = £5.79

**Lithium citrate 104 mg per 1 ml** Lithium citrate 520mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] [S]

**Lithium citrate 203.6 mg per 1 ml** Lithium citrate 1.018g/5ml oral solution | 150 ml [PoM] [S] DT = £11.58

► **Li-Liquid** (Rosemont Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Lithium citrate 101.8 mg per 1 ml** Li-Liquid 509mg/5ml oral solution | 150 ml [PoM] £5.79 DT = £5.79

**Lithium citrate 203.6 mg per 1 ml** Li-Liquid 1.018g/5ml oral solution | 150 ml [PoM] £11.58 DT = £11.58

► **Priadel (lithium citrate)** (Sanofi)

**Lithium citrate 104 mg per 1 ml** Priadel 520mg/5ml liquid sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £6.73

## 2.3 Depression

### Antidepressant drugs

#### Overview

Depression in children should be managed by an appropriate specialist and treatment should involve psychological therapy.

#### Choice

The major classes of antidepressant drugs include the tricyclics and related antidepressant drugs, the selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors (SSRIs), and the monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs).

Antidepressant drugs should not be used routinely in mild depression, and psychological therapy should be considered initially; however, a trial of antidepressant therapy may be considered in cases refractory to psychological treatments or in those associated with psychosocial or medical problems. Drug treatment of mild depression may also be considered in children with a history of moderate or severe depression.

Choice of antidepressant drug should be based on the individual child's requirements, including the presence of concomitant disease, existing therapy, suicide risk, and previous response to antidepressant therapy.

When drug treatment of depression is considered necessary in children, the SSRIs should be considered first-line treatment; following a safety and efficacy review, fluoxetine p. 237 is licensed to treat depression in children.

Tricyclic antidepressant drugs should be avoided for the treatment of depression in children.

**St John's wort** (*Hypericum perforatum*) is a popular herbal remedy on sale to the public for treating mild depression in adults. It should not be used for the treatment of depression in children because St John's wort can induce drug metabolising enzymes and a number of important interactions with conventional drugs, including conventional antidepressants, have been identified. Furthermore, the amount of active ingredient varies between different preparations of St John's wort and switching from one to another can change the degree of enzyme induction. If a child stops taking St John's wort, the concentration of interacting drugs may increase, leading to toxicity.

#### Management

Children should be reviewed every 1–2 weeks at the start of antidepressant treatment. Treatment should be continued for at least 4 weeks before considering whether to switch antidepressant due to lack of efficacy. In cases of partial response, continue for a further 2–4 weeks. Following remission, antidepressant treatment should be continued at the same dose for at least 6 months. Children with a history of recurrent depression should continue treatment for at least 2 years.

#### Hyponatraemia and antidepressant therapy

Hyponatraemia (possibly due to inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone) has been associated with all types of antidepressants; however, it has been reported more frequently with SSRIs than with other antidepressant drugs. Hyponatraemia should be considered in all children who develop drowsiness, confusion, or convulsions while taking an antidepressant.

#### Suicidal behaviour and antidepressant therapy

The use of antidepressant drugs has been linked with suicidal thoughts and behaviour. Where necessary, children should be monitored for suicidal behaviour, self-harm, and hostility, particularly at the beginning of treatment or if the dose is changed.

#### Serotonin syndrome

Serotonin syndrome or serotonin toxicity is a relatively uncommon adverse drug reaction caused by excessive central and peripheral serotonergic activity. Onset of symptoms, which range from mild to life-threatening, can occur within hours or days following the initiation, dose escalation, or overdose of a serotonergic drug, the addition of a new serotonergic drug, or the replacement of one serotonergic drug by another without allowing a long enough washout period in-between, particularly when the first drug is an irreversible MAOI or a drug with a long half-life. Severe toxicity, which is a medical emergency, usually occurs with a combination of serotonergic drugs, one of which is generally an MAOI.

The characteristic symptoms of serotonin syndrome fall into 3 main areas, although features from each group may not be seen in all patients—neuromuscular hyperactivity (such as tremor, hyperreflexia, clonus, myoclonus, rigidity), autonomic dysfunction (tachycardia, blood pressure changes, hyperthermia, diaphoresis, shivering, diarrhoea), and altered mental state (agitation, confusion, mania).

Treatment consists of withdrawal of the serotonergic medication and supportive care; specialist advice should be sought.

#### Important safety information: Depressive illness in children and adolescents

The balance of risks and benefits for the treatment of depressive illness in individuals under 18 years is considered unfavourable for the SSRIs citalopram, escitalopram, paroxetine, and sertraline, and for mirtazapine and venlafaxine. Clinical trials have failed to show efficacy and have shown an increase in harmful outcomes. However, it is recognised that specialists may sometimes decide to use these drugs in response to individual clinical need; children and adolescents should be monitored carefully for suicidal behaviour, self-harm or hostility, particularly at the beginning of treatment. Only fluoxetine has been shown in clinical trials to be effective for treating depressive illness in children and adolescents. However, it is possible that, in common with the other SSRIs, it is associated with a small risk of self-harm and suicidal thoughts. Overall, the balance of risks and benefits for fluoxetine in the treatment of depressive illness in individuals under 18 years is considered favourable, but children and adolescents must be carefully monitored as above.

#### Anxiety

Management of *acute anxiety* in children with drug treatment is contentious. For *chronic anxiety* (of longer than 4 weeks' duration), it may be appropriate to use an antidepressant drug before a benzodiazepine.

Tricyclic antidepressants are not effective for treating depression in children.

Some tricyclic antidepressant drugs may have a role in some forms of *neuralgia*, and in *nocturnal enuresis* in children.

#### Dosage

It is important to use doses that are sufficiently high for effective treatment but not so high as to cause toxic effects. Low doses should be used for initial treatment.

In most children the long half-life of tricyclic antidepressant drugs allows **once-daily** administration, usually at night; the use of modified-release preparations is therefore unnecessary.

**Other drugs used for Depression** Lithium carbonate, p. 233  
• Lithium citrate, p. 234

**ANTIDEPRESSANTS > SELECTIVE SEROTONIN RE-  
UPTAKE INHIBITORS****Selective serotonin re-uptake  
inhibitors**

- **DRUG ACTION** Selectively inhibit the re-uptake of serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine, 5-HT).
  - **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Poorly controlled epilepsy. SSRIs should not be used if the patient enters a manic phase.
  - **CAUTIONS** Cardiac disease · concurrent electroconvulsive therapy · diabetes mellitus · epilepsy (discontinue if convulsions develop) · history of bleeding disorders (especially gastro-intestinal bleeding) · history of mania · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma
  - **SIDE-EFFECTS**
    - ▶ **Common or very common** Anxiety · appetite abnormal · arrhythmias · arthralgia · asthenia · concentration impaired · confusion · constipation · depersonalisation · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · haemorrhage · headache · hyperhidrosis · malaise · memory loss · menstrual cycle irregularities · myalgia · mydriasis · nausea (dose-related) · palpitations · paraesthesia · QT interval prolongation · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · sleep disorders · taste altered · tinnitus · tremor · urinary disorders · visual impairment · vomiting · weight changes · yawning
    - ▶ **Uncommon** Alopecia · angioedema · behaviour abnormal · hallucination · mania · movement disorders · photosensitivity reaction · postural hypotension · seizure · suicidal tendencies · syncope
    - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Galactorrhoea · hepatitis · hyperprolactinaemia · hyponatraemia · serotonin syndrome · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · SIADH · thrombocytopenia
    - ▶ **Frequency not known** Withdrawal syndrome
- Overdose** Symptoms of poisoning by selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors include nausea, vomiting, agitation, tremor, nystagmus, drowsiness, and sinus tachycardia; convulsions may occur. Rarely, severe poisoning results in the serotonin syndrome, with marked neuropsychiatric effects, neuromuscular hyperactivity, and autonomic instability; hyperthermia, rhabdomyolysis, renal failure, and coagulopathies may develop.

For details on the management of poisoning, see Selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise avoid during pregnancy unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk. There is a small increased risk of congenital heart defects when taken during early pregnancy. If used during the third trimester there is a risk of neonatal withdrawal symptoms, and persistent pulmonary hypertension in the newborn has been reported.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Gastro-intestinal disturbances, headache, anxiety, dizziness, paraesthesia, electric shock sensation in the head, neck, and spine, tinnitus, sleep disturbances, fatigue, influenza-like symptoms, and sweating are the most common features of abrupt withdrawal of an SSRI or marked reduction of the dose; palpitation and visual disturbances can occur less commonly. The dose should be tapered over at least a few weeks to avoid these effects. For some patients, it may be necessary to withdraw treatment over a longer period; consider obtaining specialist advice if symptoms persist.

Withdrawal effects may occur within 5 days of stopping treatment with antidepressant drugs; they are usually mild and self-limiting, but in some cases may be severe. The risk of withdrawal symptoms is increased if the

antidepressant is stopped suddenly after regular administration for 8 weeks or more.

• **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** May also impair performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving, operating machinery).

F above

**Citalopram**• **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Major depression**▶ **BY MOUTH USING TABLETS**

▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 10 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 20 mg once daily, dose to be increased over 2–4 weeks; maximum 40 mg per day

▶ **BY MOUTH USING ORAL DROPS**

▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 8 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 16 mg once daily, dose to be increased over 2–4 weeks; maximum 32 mg per day

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

▶ 4 oral drops (8 mg) is equivalent in therapeutic effect to 10 mg tablet.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** QT-interval prolongation
- **CAUTIONS** Susceptibility to QT-interval prolongation
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: SSRIs
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Acute angle closure glaucoma · apathy · flatulence · hypersalivation · migraine · rhinitis
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Oedema
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Cough · generalised tonic-clonic seizure · haemorrhage
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Hypokalaemia
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—use with caution.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Use doses at lower end of range; for tablets up to maximum 20 mg; for oral solution up to maximum 16 mg.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** No information available for estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** The dose should preferably be reduced gradually over about 4 weeks, or longer if withdrawal symptoms emerge (6 months in patients who have been on long-term maintenance treatment).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Cipramil® oral drops should be mixed with water, orange juice, or apple juice before taking.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Counselling on administration of oral drops is advised.
 

**Driving and skilled tasks** Patients should be advised of the effects of citalopram on driving and skilled tasks.

• **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oral drops**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol

▶ **Citalopram (Non-proprietary)**

Citalopram (as Citalopram hydrochloride) 40 mg per 1 mL Citalopram 40mg/mL oral drops sugar free sugar-free | 15 mL [PoM] £20.16 DT = £4.10

▶ **Cipramil (Lundbeck Ltd)**

Citalopram (as Citalopram hydrochloride) 40 mg per 1 mL Cipramil 40mg/mL drops sugar-free | 15 mL [PoM] £10.08 DT = £4.10

**Tablet**▶ **Citalopram (Non-proprietary)**

Citalopram (as Citalopram hydrobromide) 10 mg Citalopram 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £8.90 DT = £1.51



**Citalopram (as Citalopram hydrobromide) 20 mg** Citalopram 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £15.99 DT = £2.34

**Citalopram (as Citalopram hydrobromide) 40 mg** Citalopram 40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £27.00 DT = £2.37

► **Cipramil** (Lundbeck Ltd)

**Citalopram (as Citalopram hydrobromide) 20 mg** Cipramil 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £8.95 DT = £2.34

**F 236**

19-Jul-2017

## Fluoxetine

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Major depression

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 8–17 years: Initially 10 mg daily, increased if necessary up to 20 mg daily, dose to be increased after 1–2 weeks of initial dose, daily dose may be administered as a single or divided dose

#### PHARMACOKINETICS

- Consider the long half-life of fluoxetine when adjusting dosage (or in overdose).

### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: SSRIs

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Chills · feeling abnormal · haemorrhage · postmenopausal haemorrhage · uterine disorder · vasodilation · vision blurred
- **Uncommon** Cold sweat · dysphagia · dyspnoea · dysuria · hypotension · mood altered · muscle twitching · self-injurious behaviour · temperature sensation altered · thinking abnormal
- **Rare or very rare** Leucopenia · neutropenia · oral disorders · pharyngitis · respiratory disorders · serum sickness · speech disorder · vasculitis
- **Frequency not known** Growth retardation
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—avoid.

### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose or increase dose interval.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Dispersible tablets can be dispersed in water for administration or swallowed whole with plenty of water.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and carers should be counselled on the administration of dispersible tablets. Medicines for Children leaflet: Fluoxetine for depression, obsessive compulsive disorder and bulimia nervosa [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/fluoxetine-depression-obsessive-compulsive-disorder-and-bulimia-nervosa](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/fluoxetine-depression-obsessive-compulsive-disorder-and-bulimia-nervosa)
- Driving and skilled tasks** Patients should be counselled about the effects on driving and skilled tasks.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### ► **Fluoxetine (Non-proprietary)**

**Fluoxetine (as Fluoxetine hydrochloride) 10 mg** Fluoxetine 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £44.00 DT = £44.00

#### Dispersible tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

##### ► **Olena** (AMCo)

**Fluoxetine (as Fluoxetine hydrochloride) 20 mg** Olena 20mg dispersible tablets sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.44 DT = £3.44

#### Oral solution

##### ► **Fluoxetine (Non-proprietary)**

**Fluoxetine (as Fluoxetine hydrochloride) 4 mg per 1 ml** Fluoxetine 20mg/5ml oral solution | 70 ml [PoM] £12.75 DT = £2.78  
**Fluoxetine 20mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free** | 70 ml [PoM] £12.95 DT = £12.95

##### ► **Prozac** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)

**Fluoxetine (as Fluoxetine hydrochloride) 4 mg per 1 ml** Prozac 20mg/5ml liquid | 70 ml [PoM] £11.12 DT = £2.78

##### ► **Prozep** (Chemidex Pharma Ltd)

**Fluoxetine (as Fluoxetine hydrochloride) 4 mg per 1 ml** Prozep 20mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 70 ml [PoM] £12.95 DT = £12.95

#### Capsule

##### ► **Fluoxetine (Non-proprietary)**

**Fluoxetine (as Fluoxetine hydrochloride) 10 mg** Fluoxetine 10mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £55.00–£58.50 DT = £58.11

**Fluoxetine (as Fluoxetine hydrochloride) 20 mg** Fluoxetine 20mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £20.00 DT = £0.58

**Fluoxetine (as Fluoxetine hydrochloride) 30 mg** Fluoxetine 30mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £1.80 DT = £1.80

**Fluoxetine (as Fluoxetine hydrochloride) 40 mg** Fluoxetine 40mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £1.80–£2.16 DT = £2.16

**Fluoxetine (as Fluoxetine hydrochloride) 60 mg** Fluoxetine 60mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £54.36 DT = £3.72

##### ► **Oxactin** (Discovery Pharmaceuticals)

**Fluoxetine (as Fluoxetine hydrochloride) 20 mg** Oxactin 20mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £0.57 DT = £0.58

##### ► **Prozac** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)

**Fluoxetine (as Fluoxetine hydrochloride) 20 mg** Prozac 20mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £1.50 DT = £0.58

**F 236**

## Fluvoxamine maleate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Obsessive-compulsive disorder

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 8–17 years: Initially 25 mg daily, then increased in steps of 25 mg every 4–7 days (max. per dose 100 mg twice daily) if required, dose to be increased according to response, doses above 50 mg should be given in 2 divided doses, if no improvement in obsessive-compulsive disorder within 10 weeks, treatment should be reconsidered

### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: SSRIs

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Uncommon** Allergic dermatitis · ataxia
- **Rare or very rare** Hepatic function abnormal (discontinue)
- **Frequency not known** Bone fracture · glaucoma · haemorrhage · hypomania · neuroleptic malignant-like syndrome · urinary disorders

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—avoid.

### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Start with low dose.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Start with low dose.

- **TREATMENT CESSATION** The dose should preferably be reduced gradually over about 4 weeks, or longer if withdrawal symptoms emerge (6 months in patients who have been on long-term maintenance treatment).

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Patients should be counselled about the effects on driving and skilled tasks.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Tablet

##### ► **Fluvoxamine maleate (Non-proprietary)**

**Fluvoxamine maleate 50 mg** Fluvoxamine 50mg tablets |

60 tablet [PoM] £20.98 DT = £18.32

**Fluvoxamine maleate 100 mg** Fluvoxamine 100mg tablets |

30 tablet [PoM] £20.98 DT = £18.32

##### ► **Faverin** (Mylan)

**Fluvoxamine maleate 50 mg** Faverin 50mg tablets |

60 tablet [PoM] £17.10 DT = £18.32

**Fluvoxamine maleate 100 mg** Faverin 100mg tablets |

30 tablet [PoM] £17.10 DT = £18.32

## Sertraline

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Obsessive-compulsive disorder

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–11 years: Initially 25 mg daily for 1 week, then increased to 50 mg daily, then increased in steps of 50 mg at intervals of at least 1 week if required; maximum 200 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 50 mg daily, then increased in steps of 50 mg at intervals of at least 1 week if required; maximum 200 mg per day

#### Major depression

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 50 mg once daily, then increased in steps of 50 mg at intervals of at least 1 week if required; maximum 200 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for depression.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: SSRIs

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Chest pain · depression · gastrointestinal disorders · increased risk of infection · neuromuscular dysfunction · vasodilation
- **Uncommon** Albuminuria · anaemia · back pain · breast pain · burping · chills · cold sweat · cystitis · dizziness postural · dysphagia · dyspnoea · ear pain · eye pain · haemorrhage · hypertension · hypothyroidism · migraine · mood altered · movement disorders · muscle complaints · muscle weakness · oedema · oral disorders · osteoarthritis · periorbital oedema · respiratory disorders · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · speech disorder · suicide attempt · thinking abnormal · thirst · urinary disorders
- **Rare or very rare** Balanoposthitis · bone disorder · cardiac disorder · coma · conversion disorder · diabetes mellitus · drug dependence · drug tolerance decreased · dysphonia · eye disorders · gait abnormal · genital discharge · glaucoma · hair texture abnormal · hepatic disorders · hiccups · hypercholesterolaemia · hypoglycaemia · injury · lymphadenopathy · myocardial infarction · neoplasms · oliguria · paranoia · peripheral ischaemia · psychotic disorder · sleep walking · vision disorders · vulvovaginal atrophy
- **Frequency not known** Cerebrovascular insufficiency · gynaecomastia · hyperglycaemia · leucopenia · neuroleptic malignant syndrome · pancreatitis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

- **BREAST FEEDING** Not known to be harmful but consider discontinuing breast-feeding.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose or increase dose interval in mild or moderate impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

- **TREATMENT CESSATION** The dose should preferably be reduced gradually over about 4 weeks, or longer if withdrawal symptoms emerge (6 months in patients who have been on long-term maintenance treatment).

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of sertraline is required, the following strength is used: 50 mg/5 mL.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Sertraline for OCD (obsessive compulsive disorder) and depression [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sertraline-for-ocd-obsessive-compulsive-disorder-and-depression](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sertraline-for-ocd-obsessive-compulsive-disorder-and-depression)

**Driving and skilled tasks** Patients should be counselled on the effects on driving and skilled tasks.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Tablet

##### ► Sertraline (Non-proprietary)

**Sertraline (as Sertraline hydrochloride) 50 mg** Sertraline 50mg tablets | 28 tablet (PoM) £19.25 DT = £0.67

**Sertraline (as Sertraline hydrochloride) 100 mg** Sertraline 100mg tablets | 28 tablet (PoM) £29.09 DT = £0.91

##### ► Lustral (Pfizer Ltd)

**Sertraline (as Sertraline hydrochloride) 50 mg** Lustral 50mg tablets | 28 tablet (PoM) £17.82 DT = £0.67

**Sertraline (as Sertraline hydrochloride) 100 mg** Lustral 100mg tablets | 28 tablet (PoM) £29.16 DT = £0.91

## ANTIDEPRESSANTS > TRICYCLIC

### ANTIDEPRESSANTS

## Amitriptyline hydrochloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Neuropathic pain

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–11 years: Initially 200–500 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 10 mg), dose to be taken at night, increased if necessary; maximum 1 mg/kg twice daily on specialist advice
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 10 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 75 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night, dose to be increased gradually, higher doses to be given on specialist advice

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in neuropathic pain.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Arrhythmias · during manic phase of bipolar disorder · heart block

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease · chronic constipation · diabetes · epilepsy · history of bipolar disorder · history of psychosis · hyperthyroidism (risk of arrhythmias) · patients with a significant risk of suicide · pheochromocytoma (risk of arrhythmias) · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · urinary retention

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Treatment should be stopped if the patient enters a manic phase.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tricyclic antidepressants

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anticholinergic syndrome · drowsiness · QT interval prolongation
- **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · anxiety · appetite abnormal · arrhythmias · asthenia · bone marrow depression · breast enlargement · cardiac conduction disorders · coma · concentration impaired · confusion · constipation · delirium · delusions · diarrhoea · dizziness · dry mouth · dysarthria · eosinophilia · epigastric distress · face oedema · galactorrhoea · gynaecomastia · hallucination · headache · hepatic disorders · hyperhidrosis · hyperpyrexia · hypertension · hyponatraemia · hypotension · leucopenia · mood altered · movement disorders · mydriasis · myocardial infarction · nausea · neuroleptic malignant syndrome · oral disorders · palpitations · paralytic ileus · peripheral neuropathy · photosensitivity reaction · seizure · sensation abnormal · sexual dysfunction · SIADH · skin reactions · sleep disorders · stroke · sudden cardiac death · suicidal tendencies · syncope · taste altered · testicular swelling · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus · tremor · urinary disorders · urinary tract dilation · vision disorders · vomiting · weight changes · withdrawal syndrome

**Overdose** Overdosage with amitriptyline is associated with a relatively high rate of fatality. Symptoms of overdosage may include dry mouth, coma of varying degree, hypotension, hypothermia, hyperreflexia, extensor

plantar responses, convulsions, respiratory failure, cardiac conduction defects, and arrhythmias. Dilated pupils and urinary retention also occur. For details on the management of poisoning, see Tricyclic and related antidepressants, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** The amount secreted into breast milk is too small to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Sedative effects are increased in hepatic impairment. Avoid in severe liver disease.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Withdrawal effects may occur within 5 days of stopping treatment with antidepressant drugs; they are usually mild and self-limiting, but in some cases may be severe. The risk of withdrawal symptoms is increased if the antidepressant is stopped suddenly after regular administration for 8 weeks or more. The dose should preferably be reduced gradually over about 4 weeks, or longer if withdrawal symptoms emerge (6 months in patients who have been on long-term maintenance treatment). If possible tricyclic and related antidepressants should be withdrawn slowly.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Limited quantities of tricyclic antidepressants should be prescribed at any one time because their cardiovascular and epileptogenic effects are dangerous in overdose.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Amitriptyline for neuropathic pain [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/amitriptyline-for-neuropathic-pain](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/amitriptyline-for-neuropathic-pain)  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect the performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).  
Effects of alcohol enhanced.
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Amitriptyline hydrochloride is less suitable for prescribing, see Tricyclic and related antidepressant drugs in Antidepressant drugs p. 235.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Oral solution

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ▶ Amitriptyline hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Amitriptyline hydrochloride 2 mg per 1 ml** Amitriptyline 10mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM](#) £122.76 DT = £111.96

**Amitriptyline hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml** Amitriptyline 25mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM](#) £18.00 DT = £18.00

**Amitriptyline hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Amitriptyline 50mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM](#) £24.00 DT = £19.20

##### Tablet

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ▶ Amitriptyline hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Amitriptyline hydrochloride 10 mg** Amitriptyline 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £1.50 DT = £0.97

**Amitriptyline hydrochloride 25 mg** Amitriptyline 25mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £1.75 DT = £0.74

**Amitriptyline hydrochloride 50 mg** Amitriptyline 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £5.99 DT = £2.46

response, dose to taken at bedtime; maintenance 25–300 mg daily, doses above 100 mg given in 3 divided doses

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · arrhythmias · during manic phase of bipolar disorder · heart block
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease · chronic constipation · diabetes · epilepsy · history of bipolar disorder · history of psychosis · hyperthyroidism (risk of arrhythmias) · patients with significant risk of suicide · phaeochromocytoma (risk of arrhythmias) · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · urinary retention

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Treatment should be stopped if the patient enters a manic phase.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tricyclic antidepressants
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agitation · agranulocytosis · alopecia · anticholinergic syndrome · appetite decreased · asthenia · asthma exacerbated · bone marrow depression · breast enlargement · cardiovascular effects · chills · confusion · constipation · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dyspepsia · eosinophilia · face oedema · flushing · galactorrhoea · gynaecomastia · haemolytic anaemia · hallucination · headache · hyperhidrosis · hyperpyrexia · increased risk of fracture · jaundice · leucopenia · mania · movement disorders · nausea · oral ulceration · paranoid delusions · photosensitivity reaction · postural hypotension · psychosis · seizure · sensation abnormal · sexual dysfunction · SIADH · skin reactions · sleep disorders · suicidal tendencies · tachycardia · taste altered · testicular swelling · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus · tremor · urinary retention · vision blurred · vomiting · weight increased · withdrawal syndrome (in neonates)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The risk of side-effects is reduced by titrating slowly to the minimum effective dose (every 2–3 days).

**Overdose** Tricyclic and related antidepressants cause dry mouth, coma of varying degree, hypotension, hypothermia, hyperreflexia, extensor plantar responses, convulsions, respiratory failure, cardiac conduction defects, and arrhythmias. Dilated pupils and urinary retention also occur. For details on the management of poisoning see Tricyclic and related antidepressants under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **PREGNANCY** Use with caution—limited information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** The amount secreted into breast milk is too small to be harmful. Accumulation of metabolite may cause sedation and respiratory depression in neonate.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Sedative effects are increased in hepatic impairment. Avoid in severe liver disease.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Withdrawal effects may occur within 5 days of stopping treatment with antidepressant drugs; they are usually mild and self-limiting, but in some cases may be severe. The risk of withdrawal symptoms is increased if the antidepressant is stopped suddenly after regular administration for 8 weeks or more. The dose should preferably be reduced gradually over about 4 weeks, or longer if withdrawal symptoms emerge (6 months in patients who have been on long-term maintenance treatment). If possible tricyclic and related antidepressants should be withdrawn slowly.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Limited quantities of tricyclic antidepressants should be prescribed at any one time because their cardiovascular and epileptogenic effects are dangerous in overdose.

## Doxepin

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Depressive illness (particularly where sedation is required)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 75 mg daily in divided doses, alternatively 75 mg once daily, adjusted according to

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving). Effects of alcohol enhanced.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Doxepin (Non-proprietary)

**Doxepin (as Doxepin hydrochloride) 25 mg** Doxepin 25mg capsules  
| 28 capsule [PoM] £97.00 DT = £97.00

**Doxepin (as Doxepin hydrochloride) 50 mg** Doxepin 50mg capsules  
| 28 capsule [PoM] £154.00 DT = £154.00

## Imipramine hydrochloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Nocturnal enuresis

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–7 years: 25 mg once daily, to be taken at bedtime, initial period of treatment (including gradual withdrawal) 3 months—full physical examination before further course
- Child 8–10 years: 25–50 mg once daily, to be taken at bedtime, initial period of treatment (including gradual withdrawal) 3 months—full physical examination before further course
- Child 11–17 years: 50–75 mg once daily, to be taken at bedtime, initial period of treatment (including gradual withdrawal) 3 months—full physical examination before further course

#### Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (under expert supervision)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–17 years: 10–30 mg twice daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use for attention deficit hyperactivity disorder.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · arrhythmia · during the manic phase of bipolar disorder · heart block

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease · chronic constipation · diabetes · epilepsy · history of bipolar disorder · history of psychosis · hyperthyroidism (risk of arrhythmias) · patients with a significant risk of suicide · phaeochromocytoma (risk of arrhythmias) · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · urinary retention

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Treatment should be stopped if the patient enters a manic phase.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tricyclic antidepressants

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · asthenia · cardiac conduction disorders · confusion · delirium · depression · dizziness · drowsiness · epilepsy · hallucination · headache · hepatic disorders · hypotension · mood altered · nausea · palpitations · paraesthesia · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · sleep disorder · tremor · vomiting · weight changes
- **Uncommon** Psychosis
- **Rare or very rare** Aggression · agranulocytosis · alopecia · bone marrow depression · enlarged mammary gland · eosinophilia · fever · galactorrhoea · gastrointestinal disorders · glaucoma · heart failure · leucopenia · movement disorders · mydriasis · oedema · oral disorders · peripheral vasospastic reaction · photosensitivity reaction · respiratory disorders (frequency not known in neonate) · SIADH · speech disorder · thrombocytopenia

- **Frequency not known** Anticholinergic syndrome · cardiovascular effects · drug fever · hyponatraemia · increased risk of fracture · neurological effects · paranoid delusions exacerbated · psychiatric disorder · suicidal tendencies · tinnitus · urinary disorder · withdrawal symptoms

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The risk of side-effect is reduced by titrating slowly to the minimum effective dose (every 2–3 days).

**Overdose** Tricyclic and related antidepressants cause dry mouth, coma of varying degree, hypotension, hypothermia, hyperreflexia, extensor plantar responses, convulsions, respiratory failure, cardiac conduction defects, and arrhythmias. Dilated pupils and urinary retention also occur. For details on the management of poisoning see Tricyclic and related antidepressants under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **PREGNANCY** Colic, tachycardia, dyspnoea, irritability, muscle spasms, respiratory depression and withdrawal symptoms reported in neonates when used in the third trimester.
- **BREAST FEEDING** The amount secreted into breast milk is too small to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Sedative effects are increased in hepatic impairment. Avoid in severe liver disease.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in severe impairment.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Withdrawal effects may occur within 5 days of stopping treatment with antidepressant drugs; they are usually mild and self-limiting, but in some cases may be severe. The risk of withdrawal symptoms is increased if the antidepressant is stopped suddenly after regular administration for 8 weeks or more. The dose should preferably be reduced gradually over about 4 weeks, or longer if withdrawal symptoms emerge (6 months in patients who have been on long-term maintenance treatment). If possible tricyclic antidepressants should be withdrawn slowly.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Limited quantities of tricyclic antidepressants should be prescribed at any one time because their cardiovascular and epileptogenic effects are dangerous in overdose.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Imipramine  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/imipramine](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/imipramine)  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect the performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).  
Effects of alcohol enhanced.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Imipramine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Imipramine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml** Imipramine 25mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £42.00 DT = £42.00

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Imipramine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Imipramine hydrochloride 10 mg** Imipramine 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.81 DT = £0.58

**Imipramine hydrochloride 25 mg** Imipramine 25mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.81 DT = £0.61

## Nortriptyline

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Depressive illness

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: To be initiated at a low dose, then increased if necessary to 30–50 mg daily in divided doses, alternatively increased if necessary to 30–50 mg once daily; maximum 150 mg per day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Arrhythmias · during the manic phase of bipolar disorder · heart block
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease · chronic constipation · diabetes · epilepsy · history of bipolar disorder · history of psychosis · hyperthyroidism (risk of arrhythmias) · patients with a significant risk of suicide · phaeochromocytoma (risk of arrhythmias) · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · urinary retention
- CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Treatment should be stopped if the patient enters a manic phase.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tricyclic antidepressants
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · asthenia · atrioventricular block · bone marrow disorders · breast enlargement · confusion · constipation · delusions · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · drug cross-reactivity · drug fever · dry mouth · eosinophilia · fever · flushing · galactorrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · gynaecomastia · hallucination · headache · hepatic disorders · hyperhidrosis · hypertension · hypomania · hypotension · increased risk of fracture · increased risk of infection · malaise · movement disorders · mydriasis · myocardial infarction · nausea · oedema · oral disorders · palpitations · paralytic ileus · peripheral neuropathy · photosensitivity reaction · psychosis exacerbated · seizure · sensation abnormal · sexual dysfunction · SIADH · skin reactions · sleep disorders · stroke · suicidal tendencies · taste altered · testicular swelling · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus · tremor · urinary disorders · urinary tract dilation · vision disorders · vomiting · weight changes
- Overdose** Tricyclic and related antidepressants cause dry mouth, coma of varying degree, hypotension, hyperthermia, hyperreflexia, extensor plantar responses, convulsions, respiratory failure, cardiac conduction defects, and arrhythmias. Dilated pupils and urinary retention also occur. For details on the management of poisoning see Tricyclic and related antidepressants under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.
- **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** The amount secreted into breast milk is too small to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Sedative effects are increased in hepatic impairment. Avoid in severe liver disease.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - Manufacturer advises plasma-nortriptyline concentration monitoring if dose above 100 mg daily, but evidence of practical value uncertain.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Withdrawal effects may occur within 5 days of stopping treatment with antidepressant drugs; they are usually mild and self-limiting, but in some cases may be severe. The risk of withdrawal symptoms is increased if the antidepressant is stopped suddenly after regular administration for 8 weeks or more. The dose should preferably be reduced gradually over about 4 weeks, or longer if withdrawal symptoms emerge (6 months in patients who have been on long-term maintenance treatment). If possible tricyclic and related antidepressants should be withdrawn slowly.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Limited quantities of tricyclic antidepressants should be prescribed

at any one time because their cardiovascular and epileptogenic effects are dangerous in overdose.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Drowsiness may affect the performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving). Effects of alcohol enhanced.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ► Nortriptyline (Non-proprietary)

**Nortriptyline (as Nortriptyline hydrochloride) 10 mg** Nortriptyline 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £6.87-£11.79 | 100 tablet [PoM] £68.41 DT = £9.57

**Nortriptyline (as Nortriptyline hydrochloride) 25 mg** Nortriptyline 25mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £6.81-£12.43 | 100 tablet [PoM] £111.06 DT = £11.57

**Nortriptyline (as Nortriptyline hydrochloride) 50 mg** Nortriptyline 50mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £24.86 DT = £24.86

## 2.4 Psychoses and schizophrenia

### Psychoses and related disorders

06-Mar-2017

#### Advice on doses of antipsychotic drugs above BNF for Children upper limit

- Consider alternative approaches including adjuvant therapy.
- Bear in mind risk factors, including obesity. Consider potential for drug interactions—see interactions: Appendix 1 (antipsychotics).
- Carry out ECG to exclude untoward abnormalities such as prolonged QT interval; repeat ECG periodically **and** reduce dose if prolonged QT interval or other adverse abnormality develops.
- Increase dose slowly and not more often than once weekly.
- Carry out regular pulse, blood pressure, and temperature checks; ensure that patient maintains adequate fluid intake.
- Consider high-dose therapy to be for limited period and review regularly; abandon if no improvement after 3 months (return to standard dosage).

**Important:** When prescribing an antipsychotic for administration on an emergency basis, the intramuscular dose should be **lower** than the corresponding oral dose (owing to absence of first-pass effect), particularly if the child is very active (increased blood flow to muscle considerably increases the rate of absorption). The prescription should specify the dose for **each route** and should not imply that the same dose can be given by mouth or by intramuscular injection. The dose of antipsychotic for emergency use should be reviewed at least **daily**.

#### Antipsychotic drugs

There is little information on the efficacy and safety of antipsychotic drugs in children and adolescents and much of the information available has been extrapolated from adult data; in particular, little is known about the long-term effects of antipsychotic drugs on the developing nervous system. Antipsychotic drugs should be initiated and managed under the close supervision of an appropriate specialist.

Antipsychotic drugs are also known as 'neuroleptics' and (misleadingly) as 'major tranquillisers'.

In the short term they are used to calm disturbed children whatever the underlying psychopathology, which may be schizophrenia, brain damage, mania, toxic delirium, or



agitated depression. Antipsychotic drugs are used to alleviate severe anxiety but this too should be a short-term measure.

### Schizophrenia

The aim of treatment is to alleviate the suffering of the child (and carer) and to improve social and cognitive functioning. Many children require life-long treatment with antipsychotic medication. Antipsychotic drugs relieve positive psychotic symptoms such as thought disorder, hallucinations, and delusions, and prevent relapse; they are usually less effective on negative symptoms such as apathy and social withdrawal. In many patients, negative symptoms persist between episodes of treated positive symptoms, but earlier treatment of psychotic illness may protect against the development of negative symptoms over time. Children with acute schizophrenia generally respond better than those with chronic symptoms.

Long-term treatment of a child with a definitive diagnosis of schizophrenia is usually required after the first episode of illness in order to prevent relapses. Doses that are effective in acute episodes should generally be continued as prophylaxis.

### First-generation antipsychotic drugs

The first-generation antipsychotic drugs act predominantly by blocking dopamine D<sub>2</sub> receptors in the brain. First-generation antipsychotic drugs are not selective for any of the four dopamine pathways in the brain and so can cause a range of side-effects, particularly extrapyramidal symptoms and elevated prolactin. The **phenothiazine** derivatives can be divided into 3 main groups:

- **Group 1:** chlorpromazine hydrochloride p. 244, levomepromazine p. 268, and promazine hydrochloride, generally characterised by pronounced sedative effects and moderate antimuscarinic and extrapyramidal side-effects.
- **Group 2:** pericyazine p. 246, generally characterised by moderate sedative effects, but fewer extrapyramidal side-effects than groups 1 or 3.
- **Group 3:** perphenazine p. 246, prochlorperazine p. 268, and trifluoperazine p. 248, generally characterised by fewer sedative and antimuscarinic effects, but more pronounced extrapyramidal side-effects than groups 1 and 2.

**Butyrophenones** (e.g. haloperidol p. 245) resemble the group 3 phenothiazines in their clinical properties.


**Diphenylbutylpiperidines** (pimozide p. 247) and the **substituted benzamides** (sulpiride p. 247) have reduced sedative, antimuscarinic, and extrapyramidal effects.

### Second-generation antipsychotic drugs

The second-generation antipsychotic drugs (also referred to as atypical antipsychotic drugs) act on a range of receptors in comparison to first-generation antipsychotic drugs and have more distinct clinical profiles, particularly with regard to side-effects.

### Prescribing of antipsychotic drugs in children with learning disabilities

**[EvGr]** When prescribing for children with learning disabilities who are prescribed antipsychotic drugs and who are not experiencing psychotic symptoms, the following considerations should be taken into account:

- a reduction in dose or the discontinuation of long-term antipsychotic treatment;
- review of the child's condition after dose reduction or discontinuation of an antipsychotic agent;
- referral to a psychiatrist experienced in working with children who have learning disabilities and mental health problems;
- annual documentation of the reasons for continuing a prescription if the antipsychotic is not reduced in dose or discontinued .

### Side effects of antipsychotic drugs

Side-effects caused by antipsychotic drugs are common and contribute significantly to non-adherence to therapy.

### Extrapyramidal symptoms

Extrapyramidal symptoms occur most frequently with the piperazine phenothiazines (fluphenazine, perphenazine, prochlorperazine, and trifluoperazine), the butyrophenones (benperidol and haloperidol), and the first-generation depot preparations. They are easy to recognise but cannot be predicted accurately because they depend on the dose, the type of drug, and on individual susceptibility. Extrapyramidal symptoms consist of:

- **parkinsonian symptoms** (including tremor), which may occur more commonly in adults or the elderly and may appear gradually;
- **dystonia** (abnormal face and body movements) and dyskinesia, which occur more commonly in children or young adults and appear after only a few doses;
- **akathisia** (restlessness), which characteristically occurs after large initial doses and may resemble an exacerbation of the condition being treated;
- **tardive dyskinesia** (rhythmic, involuntary movements of tongue, face, and jaw), which usually develops on long-term therapy or with high dosage, but it may develop on short-term treatment with low doses—short-lived tardive dyskinesia may occur after withdrawal of the drug.

**Parkinsonian symptoms** remit if the drug is withdrawn and may be suppressed by the administration of antimuscarinic drugs. However, routine administration of such drugs is not justified because not all patients are affected and they may unmask or worsen tardive dyskinesia.

**Tardive dyskinesia** is the most serious manifestation of extrapyramidal symptoms; it is of particular concern because it may be irreversible on withdrawing therapy and treatment is usually ineffective. In children, tardive dyskinesia is more likely to occur when the antipsychotic drug is withdrawn. However, some manufacturers suggest that drug withdrawal at the earliest signs of tardive dyskinesia (fine vermicular movements of the tongue) may halt its full development. Tardive dyskinesia occurs fairly frequently, especially in the elderly, and treatment must be carefully and regularly reviewed.

### Hyperprolactinaemia

Most antipsychotic drugs, both first- and second-generation, increase prolactin concentration to some extent because dopamine inhibits prolactin release. Aripiprazole reduces prolactin because it is a dopamine-receptor partial agonist. Risperidone, amisulpride, and first-generation antipsychotic drugs are most likely to cause symptomatic hyperprolactinaemia. The clinical symptoms of hyperprolactinaemia include sexual dysfunction, reduced bone mineral density, menstrual disturbances, breast enlargement, and galactorrhoea.

### Sexual dysfunction

Sexual dysfunction is one of the main causes of non-adherence to antipsychotic medication; physical illness, psychiatric illness, and substance misuse are contributing factors. Antipsychotic-induced sexual dysfunction is caused by more than one mechanism. Reduced dopamine transmission and hyperprolactinaemia decrease libido; antimuscarinic effects can cause disorders of arousal; and alpha<sub>1</sub>-adrenoceptor antagonists are associated with erection and ejaculation problems in men. Risperidone and haloperidol commonly cause sexual dysfunction. If sexual dysfunction is thought to be antipsychotic-induced, dose reduction or switching medication should be considered.

### Cardiovascular side-effects

Antipsychotic drugs have been associated with cardiovascular side-effects such as tachycardia, arrhythmias, and hypotension. QT-interval prolongation is a particular concern with pimozide and haloperidol. There is also a

higher probability of QT-interval prolongation in patients using any intravenous antipsychotic drug, or any antipsychotic drug or combination of antipsychotic drugs with doses exceeding the recommended maximum. Cases of sudden death have occurred.

#### **Hyperglycaemia and weight gain**

Hyperglycaemia, and sometimes diabetes, can occur with antipsychotic drugs, particularly clozapine, olanzapine, quetiapine, and risperidone. All antipsychotic drugs may cause weight gain, but the risk and extent varies. Clozapine and olanzapine commonly cause weight gain. Olanzapine is associated with more weight gain than other second generation antipsychotic drugs. Weight gain happens soon after treatment with olanzapine has started.

#### **Hypotension and interference with temperature regulation**

Hypotension and interference with temperature regulation are dose-related side-effects. Clozapine, chlorpromazine, and quetiapine can cause postural hypotension (especially during initial dose titration) which may be associated with syncope or reflex tachycardia in some children.

#### **Neuroleptic malignant syndrome**

Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (hyperthermia, fluctuating level of consciousness, muscle rigidity, and autonomic dysfunction with pallor, tachycardia, labile blood pressure, sweating, and urinary incontinence) is a rare but potentially fatal side-effect of all antipsychotic drugs. Discontinuation of the antipsychotic drug is essential because there is no proven effective treatment, but bromocriptine and dantrolene have been used. The syndrome, which usually lasts for 5–7 days after drug discontinuation, may be unduly prolonged if depot preparations have been used.

#### **Blood dyscrasias**

Perform blood counts if unexplained infection or fever develops.

#### **Choice**

The antipsychotic drugs most commonly used in children are haloperidol p. 245, risperidone p. 253, and olanzapine p. 251. There is little meaningful difference in efficacy between each of the antipsychotic drugs (other than clozapine p. 250), and response and tolerability to each antipsychotic drug varies. There is no first-line antipsychotic drug which is suitable for all children. Choice of antipsychotic medication is influenced by the child's medication history, the degree of sedation required (although tolerance to this usually develops), and consideration of individual patient factors such as risk of extrapyramidal side-effects, weight gain, impaired glucose tolerance, QT-interval prolongation, or the presence of negative symptoms.

#### **Negative symptoms**

Second generation antipsychotic drugs may be better at treating the negative symptoms of schizophrenia.

#### **Extrapyramidal side-effects**

Second-generation antipsychotic drugs may be prescribed if extrapyramidal side-effects are a particular concern. Of these, aripiprazole p. 249, clozapine, olanzapine, and quetiapine p. 252 are least likely to cause extrapyramidal side-effects. Although amisulpride p. 248 is a dopamine-receptor antagonist, extrapyramidal side-effects are less common than with the first-generation antipsychotic drugs because amisulpride selectively blocks mesolimbic dopamine receptors, and extrapyramidal symptoms are caused by blockade of the striatal dopamine pathway.

#### **QT interval**

Aripiprazole has negligible effect on the QT interval. Other antipsychotic drugs with a reduced tendency to prolong QT interval include amisulpride, clozapine, olanzapine, perphenazine p. 246, risperidone, and sulpiride p. 247.

#### **Diabetes**

Schizophrenia is associated with insulin resistance and diabetes; the risk of diabetes is increased in children with

schizophrenia who take antipsychotic drugs. First-generation antipsychotic drugs are less likely to cause diabetes than second-generation antipsychotic drugs, and of the first-generation antipsychotic drugs, haloperidol has the lowest risk. Amisulpride and aripiprazole have the lowest risk of diabetes of the second-generation antipsychotic drugs. Amisulpride, aripiprazole, haloperidol, sulpiride, and trifluoperazine p. 248 are least likely to cause weight gain.

#### **Sexual dysfunction and prolactin**

The antipsychotic drugs with the lowest risk of sexual dysfunction are aripiprazole and quetiapine. Olanzapine may be considered if sexual dysfunction is judged to be secondary to hyperprolactinaemia. Hyperprolactinaemia is usually not clinically significant with aripiprazole, clozapine, olanzapine, and quetiapine treatment. When changing from other antipsychotic drugs, a reduction in prolactin concentration may increase fertility.

Children should receive an antipsychotic drug for 4–6 weeks before it is deemed ineffective. Prescribing more than one antipsychotic drug at a time should be avoided except in exceptional circumstances (e.g. clozapine augmentation or when changing medication during titration) because of the increased risk of adverse effects such as extrapyramidal symptoms, QT-interval prolongation, and sudden cardiac death.

Clozapine is used for the treatment of schizophrenia in children unresponsive to, or intolerant of, other antipsychotic drugs. Clozapine should be introduced if schizophrenia is not controlled despite the sequential use of two or more antipsychotic drugs (one of which should be a second-generation antipsychotic drug), each for at least 6–8 weeks. If symptoms do not respond adequately to an optimised dose of clozapine, plasma-clozapine concentration should be checked before adding a second antipsychotic drug to augment clozapine; allow 8–10 weeks' treatment to assess response. Children must be registered with a clozapine patient monitoring service.

#### **Monitoring**

Full blood count, urea and electrolytes, and liver function test monitoring is required at the start of therapy with antipsychotic drugs, and then annually thereafter.

Blood lipids and weight should be measured at baseline, at 3 months (weight should be measured at frequent intervals during the first 3 months), and then yearly.

Fasting blood glucose should be measured at baseline, at 4–6 months, and then yearly.

Before initiating antipsychotic drugs, an ECG may be required, particularly if physical examination identifies cardiovascular risk factors, if there is a personal history of cardiovascular disease, or if the child is being admitted as an inpatient.

Blood pressure monitoring is advised before starting therapy and frequently during dose titration of antipsychotic drugs.

#### **Other uses**

Nausea and vomiting, choreas, motor tics, and intractable hiccup.

#### **Equivalent doses of oral antipsychotics**

These equivalences are intended **only** as an approximate guide; individual dosage instructions should **also** be checked; children should be carefully monitored after **any** change in medication. Equivalent daily dose of antipsychotic drug:

- Chlorpromazine 100 mg
- Clozapine 50 mg
- Haloperidol 2–3 mg
- Pimozide 2 mg
- Risperidone 0.5–1 mg
- Sulpiride 200 mg
- Trifluoperazine 5 mg

**Important:** These equivalences must **not** be extrapolated

beyond the maximum dose for the drug. Higher doses require careful titration in specialist units and the equivalences shown here may not be appropriate.

### Dosage

After an initial period of stabilisation, the total daily oral dose of antipsychotic drugs can be given as a single dose in most children.

### Antipsychotic depot injections

There is limited information on the use of antipsychotic depot injections in children and use should be restricted to specialist centres.

## ANTI-PSYCHOTICS

### Antipsychotic drugs

- **CAUTIONS** Blood dyscrasias · cardiovascular disease · conditions predisposing to seizures · depression · diabetes (may raise blood glucose) · epilepsy · history of jaundice · myasthenia gravis · photosensitisation (may occur with higher dosages) · severe respiratory disease · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ **Cardiovascular disease** An ECG may be required, particularly if physical examination identifies cardiovascular risk factors, personal history of cardiovascular disease, or if the patient is being admitted as an inpatient.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Agitation · amenorrhoea · arrhythmias · constipation · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · galactorrhoea · gynaecomastia · hyperglycaemia · hyperprolactinaemia · hypotension (dose-related) · insomnia · leucopenia · movement disorders · neutropenia · parkinsonism · QT interval prolongation · rash · sexual dysfunction · seizure · tremor · urinary retention · weight increased
- ▶ **Uncommon** Agranulocytosis · confusion · embolism and thrombosis · neuroleptic malignant syndrome (discontinue—potentially fatal)
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Sudden death

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Overdose** Phenothiazines cause less depression of consciousness and respiration than other sedatives. Hypotension, hypothermia, sinus tachycardia, and arrhythmias may complicate poisoning. For details on the management of poisoning see Antipsychotics under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **PREGNANCY** Extrapyramidal effects and withdrawal syndrome have been reported occasionally in the neonate when antipsychotic drugs are taken during the third trimester of pregnancy. Following maternal use of antipsychotic drugs in the third trimester, neonates should be monitored for symptoms including agitation, hypertonia, hypotonia, tremor, drowsiness, feeding problems, and respiratory distress.

- **BREAST FEEDING** There is limited information available on the short- and long-term effects of antipsychotic drugs on the breast-fed infant. *Animal studies* indicate possible adverse effects of antipsychotic medicines on the developing nervous system. Chronic treatment with antipsychotic drugs whilst breast-feeding should be avoided unless absolutely necessary. Phenothiazine derivatives are sometimes used in breast-feeding women for short-term treatment of nausea and vomiting.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ It is advisable to monitor prolactin concentration at the start of therapy, at 6 months, and then yearly. Patients taking antipsychotic drugs not normally associated with symptomatic hyperprolactinaemia should be considered for prolactin monitoring if they show symptoms of

hyperprolactinaemia (such as breast enlargement and galactorrhoea).

- ▶ Patients with schizophrenia should have physical health monitoring (including cardiovascular disease risk assessment) at least once per year.
- ▶ Regular clinical monitoring of endocrine function should be considered when children are taking an antipsychotic drug known to increase prolactin levels; this includes measuring weight and height, assessing sexual maturation, and monitoring menstrual function.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** There is a high risk of relapse if medication is stopped after 1–2 years. Withdrawal of antipsychotic drugs after long-term therapy should always be gradual and closely monitored to avoid the risk of acute withdrawal syndromes or rapid relapse. Patients should be monitored for 2 years after withdrawal of antipsychotic medication for signs and symptoms of relapse.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** As photosensitisation may occur with higher dosages, patients should avoid direct sunlight.  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving or operating machinery), especially at start of treatment; effects of alcohol are enhanced.

## ANTI-PSYCHOTICS > FIRST-GENERATION

▮ above

### Chlorpromazine hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Childhood schizophrenia and other psychoses (under expert supervision)

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 500 micrograms/kg every 4–6 hours, adjusted according to response; maximum 40 mg per day
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 10 mg 3 times a day, adjusted according to response; maximum 75 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 25 mg 3 times a day, adjusted according to response, alternatively initially 75 mg once daily, adjusted according to response, dose to be taken at night; maintenance 75–300 mg daily, increased if necessary up to 1 g daily

##### Relief of acute symptoms of psychoses (under expert supervision)

##### ▶ BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 500 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours; maximum 40 mg per day
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 500 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours; maximum 75 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 25–50 mg every 6–8 hours

##### Nausea and vomiting of terminal illness (where other drugs have failed or are not available)

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 500 micrograms/kg every 4–6 hours; maximum 40 mg per day
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 500 micrograms/kg every 4–6 hours; maximum 75 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 10–25 mg every 4–6 hours
- ▶ BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 500 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours; maximum 40 mg per day
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 500 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours; maximum 75 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 25 mg, then 25–50 mg every 3–4 hours until vomiting stops

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ For equivalent therapeutic effect 100 mg chlorpromazine base given *rectally* as a suppository ≡ 20–25 mg chlorpromazine hydrochloride by

*intramuscular injection* ≡ 40–50 mg of chlorpromazine base or hydrochloride given *by mouth*.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** CNS depression · comatose states · hypothyroidism · phaeochromocytoma
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: phenothiazines
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Anxiety · glucose tolerance impaired · mood altered · muscle tone increased · postural hypotension
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Accommodation disorder · angioedema · atrioventricular block · cardiac arrest · eye deposit · eye disorders · gastrointestinal disorders · hepatic disorders · hypertriglyceridaemia · hyponatraemia · photosensitivity reaction · respiratory disorders · SIADH · skin reactions · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) · temperature regulation disorder · trismus
  - SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ With intramuscular use Muscle rigidity · nasal congestion
  - SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Acute dystonic reactions may occur, children are particularly susceptible.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Can precipitate coma; phenothiazines are hepatotoxic.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments** Start with small doses in severe renal impairment because of increased cerebral sensitivity.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ With intramuscular use Patients should remain supine, with blood pressure monitoring for 30 minutes after intramuscular injection.
- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Owing to the risk of contact sensitisation, pharmacists, nurses, and other health workers should avoid direct contact with chlorpromazine; tablets should not be crushed and solutions should be handled with care.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 11

- ▶ **Chlorpromazine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Chlorpromazine hydrochloride 25 mg Chlorpromazine 25mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £42.00 DT = £37.13
- Chlorpromazine hydrochloride 50 mg Chlorpromazine 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £42.00 DT = £28.09
- Chlorpromazine hydrochloride 100 mg Chlorpromazine 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £42.00 DT = £37.51

#### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Largactil** (Sanofi)  
Chlorpromazine hydrochloride 25 mg per 1 ml Largactil 50mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £7.51

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 11

- ▶ **Chlorpromazine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Chlorpromazine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml Chlorpromazine 25mg/5ml syrup | 150 ml [PoM] £2.35 DT = £2.35  
Chlorpromazine 25mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £2.35 DT = £2.35  
Chlorpromazine 25mg/5ml oral solution | 150 ml [PoM] £2.35 DT = £2.35
- Chlorpromazine hydrochloride 20 mg per 1 ml Chlorpromazine 100mg/5ml oral solution | 150 ml [PoM] £5.50 DT = £5.50

## Haloperidol

F 244  
18-May-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Schizophrenia (under expert supervision)

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 3-12 years: Initially 500 micrograms daily in 2-3 divided doses; usual dose 1-4 mg daily in 2-3 divided doses, daily maximum to be given in 2-3 divided doses; maximum 6 mg per day
- ▶ Child 13-17 years: Initially 500 micrograms daily in 2-3 divided doses; usual dose 1-6 mg daily in 2-3 divided doses, daily maximum to be given in 2-3 divided doses; maximum 10 mg per day

#### Childhood behavioural disorders, especially when associated with hyperactivity and aggression (under expert supervision) | Gilles de la Tourette syndrome (under expert supervision)

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 3-12 years: Initially 250 micrograms daily in 2-3 divided doses; usual dose 0.5-3 mg daily in 2-3 divided doses, daily maximum to be given in 2-3 divided doses; maximum 3 mg per day
- ▶ Child 13-17 years: Initially 250 micrograms daily in 2-3 divided doses; usual dose 2-6 mg daily in 2-3 divided doses, daily maximum to be given in 2-3 divided doses; maximum 6 mg per day

#### Nausea and vomiting in palliative care

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 12-17 years: 1.5 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night, increased if necessary to 1.5 mg twice daily (max. per dose 5 mg twice daily)
- ▶ **BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY CONTINUOUS SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION**
- ▶ Child 1 month-11 years: 25-85 micrograms/kg, to be administered over 24 hours
- ▶ Child 12-17 years: 1.5-5 mg, to be administered over 24 hours

#### Restlessness and confusion in palliative care

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 1-17 years: 10-20 micrograms/kg every 8-12 hours

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for nausea and vomiting in palliative care.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** CNS depression · comatose states · congenital long QT syndrome · history of torsade de pointes · history of ventricular arrhythmia · QTc-interval prolongation · recent acute myocardial infarction · uncompensated heart failure · uncorrected hypokalaemia
- **CAUTIONS** Bradycardia · electrolyte disturbances (correct before treatment initiation) · family history of QTc-interval prolongation · history of heavy alcohol exposure · hyperthyroidism · hypotension (including orthostatic hypotension) · prolactin-dependent tumours · prolactinaemia
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: haloperidol
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Depression · eye disorders · headache · hypersalivation · nausea · neuromuscular dysfunction · postural hypotension · psychotic disorder · vision disorders · vomiting · weight decreased
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Breast abnormalities · dyspnoea · gait abnormal · hepatic disorders · hyperhidrosis · menstrual cycle irregularities · muscle complaints · musculoskeletal stiffness · oedema · photosensitivity reaction · restlessness · sedation · skin reactions · temperature regulation disorders

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Respiratory disorders · trismus
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · extrasystole · hypersensitivity vasculitis · hypoglycaemia · pancytopenia · parkinsonism · rhabdomyolysis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · SIADH · thrombocytopenia
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Haloperidol is a less sedating antipsychotic.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises it is preferable to avoid—moderate amount of data indicate no malformative or fetal/neonatal toxicity, however there are isolated case reports of birth defects following fetal exposure, mostly in combination with other drugs; reproductive toxicity shown in *animal* studies.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution.

**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises halve initial dose and then adjust if necessary with smaller increments and at longer intervals.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution.
- Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises consider lower initial dose in severe impairment and then adjust if necessary with smaller increments and at longer intervals.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Manufacturer advises monitor electrolytes before treatment initiation and periodically during treatment.
- ▶ Manufacturer advises perform ECG before treatment initiation and assess need for further ECGs during treatment on an individual basis.

#### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

**Palliative care** For further information on the use of haloperidol in palliative care, see [www.palliativedrugs.com/formulary/en/haloperidol.html](http://www.palliativedrugs.com/formulary/en/haloperidol.html).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ▶ Haloperidol (Non-proprietary)

**Haloperidol 500 microgram** Haloperidol 500microgram tablets |

28 tablet [PoM](#) £22.05 DT = £22.05

**Haloperidol 1.5 mg** Haloperidol 1.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#)

£15.00 DT = £12.91

**Haloperidol 5 mg** Haloperidol 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £18.00

DT = £14.95

**Haloperidol 10 mg** Haloperidol 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#)

£27.00 DT = £22.25

##### Solution for injection

##### ▶ Haloperidol (Non-proprietary)

**Haloperidol 5 mg per 1 ml** Haloperidol 5mg/1ml solution for

injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM](#) £35.00 DT = £35.00

##### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ▶ Haloperidol (Non-proprietary)

**Haloperidol 1 mg per 1 ml** Haloperidol 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar

free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM](#) £35.99 DT = £6.47 sugar-free |

500 ml [PoM](#) £32.35

**Haloperidol 2 mg per 1 ml** Haloperidol 10mg/5ml oral solution

sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM](#) £46.75 DT = £7.10 sugar-free |

500 ml [PoM](#) £35.50

##### ▶ Haldol (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

**Haloperidol 2 mg per 1 ml** Haldol 2mg/ml oral solution sugar-free |

100 ml [PoM](#) £4.45 DT = £7.10

##### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ▶ Serenace (Teva UK Ltd)

**Haloperidol 500 microgram** Serenace 500microgram capsules |

30 capsule [PoM](#) £1.18 DT = £1.18

## Pericyazine

(Pericazine)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Schizophrenia (under expert supervision) | Psychoses (severe mental or behavioural disorders only) (under expert supervision)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–11 years: Initially 500 micrograms daily for 10–kg child, increased by 1 mg for each additional 5 kg; dose may be gradually increased according to response but maintenance should not exceed twice initial dose; maximum 10 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 25 mg 3 times a day, increased in steps of 25 mg every week, adjusted according to response, increased if necessary up to 100 mg 3 times a day, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2 divided doses

- **UNLICENSED USE** Tablets not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** CNS depression · comatose states · phaeochromocytoma

- **CAUTIONS** Hypothyroidism

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: phenothiazines

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Atrioventricular block · cardiac arrest · consciousness impaired · contact dermatitis · glucose tolerance impaired · hepatic disorders · hyperthermia · nasal congestion · postural hypotension · priapism · respiratory depression

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Can precipitate coma; phenothiazines are hepatotoxic.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in renal impairment.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ▶ Pericyazine (Non-proprietary)

**Pericyazine 2 mg per 1 ml** Pericyazine 10mg/5ml oral solution |

100 ml [PoM](#) £55.20 DT = £55.20

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ▶ Pericyazine (Non-proprietary)

**Pericyazine 2.5 mg** Pericyazine 2.5mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM](#)

£18.60 DT = £18.60

**Pericyazine 10 mg** Pericyazine 10mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM](#)

£48.00 DT = £48.00

## Perphenazine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Schizophrenia and other psychoses | Mania | Short-term adjunctive management of anxiety | Severe psychomotor agitation, excitement, and violent or dangerously impulsive behaviour | Severe nausea and vomiting unresponsive to other anti-emetics**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 14–17 years (under close medical supervision): Initially 4 mg 3 times a day, adjusted according to response; maximum 24 mg per day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** CNS depression · comatose states · phaeochromocytoma

- **CAUTIONS** Hypothyroidism

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: phenothiazines

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Cardiac arrest · consciousness impaired · ejaculation impaired · epilepsy · eye deposits · fatigue ·



headache · hepatic disorders · hyperhidrosis · menstruation with decreased bleeding · movement disorders · nasal congestion · nausea · oculogyric crisis · oedema · paralytic ileus · photosensitivity reaction · pigmented retinopathy · reflexes increased · saliva altered · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) · temperature regulation disorder · urinary hesitation · vision disorders

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Acute dystonias are more common with potent first-generation antipsychotics. The risk is increased in men, young adults, children, antipsychotic-naïve patients, rapid dose escalation, and abrupt treatment discontinuation.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Can precipitate coma; phenothiazines are hepatotoxic.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Start with small doses in severe renal impairment because of increased cerebral sensitivity.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, oral suspension

F 244

## Pimozide

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

### Schizophrenia

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision): Initially 1 mg daily, adjusted according to response, then increased in steps of 2–4 mg at intervals of not less than 1 week; usual dose 2–20 mg daily

### Tourette syndrome (under expert supervision)

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child 2–11 years: 1–4 mg daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2–10 mg daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in Tourette syndrome.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** CNS depression · comatose states · history of arrhythmias · history or family history of congenital QT prolongation · phaeochromocytoma

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: pimozide

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · depression · fatigue · headache · hyperhidrosis · hypersalivation · lethargy · muscle complaints · restlessness · sebaceous gland overactivity · urinary disorders · vision blurred · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Cogwheel rigidity · dysarthria · face oedema · oculogyric crisis · skin reactions
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Cardiac arrest · generalised tonic-clonic seizure · glycosuria · hyponatraemia · libido decreased · neck stiffness · temperature regulation disorders

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Can precipitate coma.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Start with small doses in severe renal impairment because of increased cerebral sensitivity.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ **ECG monitoring** Following reports of sudden unexplained death, an ECG is recommended before treatment. It is also recommended that patients taking pimozide should have an annual ECG (if the QT interval is prolonged, treatment should be reviewed and either withdrawn or dose reduced under close supervision) and that pimozide should not be given with other antipsychotic drugs (including depot preparations), tricyclic antidepressants or other drugs which prolong the QT interval, such as certain antimalarials, antiarrhythmic drugs and certain

antihistamines and should not be given with drugs which cause electrolyte disturbances (especially diuretics).

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- ▶ **Pimozide (Non-proprietary)**

**Pimozide 4 mg** Pimozide 4mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] [X] DT = £40.31

- ▶ **Orap (Imported (United States))**

**Pimozide 1 mg** Orap 1mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] [X]

- ▶ **Orap (Eumedica Pharmaceuticals)**

**Pimozide 4 mg** Orap 4mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £40.31 DT = £40.31

F 244

## Sulpiride

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

### Schizophrenia with predominantly negative symptoms

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child 14–17 years (under expert supervision): 200–400 mg twice daily; maximum 800 mg per day

### Schizophrenia with mainly positive symptoms

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child 14–17 years (under expert supervision): 200–400 mg twice daily; maximum 2.4 g per day

### Tourette syndrome (under expert supervision)

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child 2–11 years: 50–400 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100–400 mg twice daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in Tourette syndrome.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** CNS depression · comatose states · phaeochromocytoma

- **CAUTIONS** Aggressive patients (even low doses may aggravate symptoms) · agitated patients (even low doses may aggravate symptoms) · excited patients (even low doses may aggravate symptoms)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sulpiride

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Breast abnormalities · sedation · skin reactions
- ▶ **Uncommon** Hypersalivation · muscle tone increased · postural hypotension
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Oculogyric crisis
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Cardiac arrest · dyspnoea · hyponatraemia · SIADH · trismus

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Can precipitate coma.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Start with small doses in severe renal impairment because of increased cerebral sensitivity.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Sulpiride does not affect blood pressure to the same extent as other antipsychotic drugs and so blood pressure monitoring is not mandatory for this drug.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include lemon and aniseed.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Sulpiride for schizophrenia and Tourette's syndrome [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sulpiride-for-schizophrenia-and-tourettes-syndrome](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sulpiride-for-schizophrenia-and-tourettes-syndrome)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Sulpiride (Non-proprietary)

Sulpiride 40 mg per 1 ml Sulpiride 200mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £28.00 DT = £28.00

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Sulpiride (Non-proprietary)

Sulpiride 200 mg Sulpiride 200mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £9.49 DT = £4.40

Sulpiride 400 mg Sulpiride 400mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £18.80 DT = £18.80

#### ► Dolmatil (Sanofi)

Sulpiride 200 mg Dolmatil 200mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £6.00

Sulpiride 400 mg Dolmatil 400mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £19.00

£ 244

## Trifluoperazine

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Schizophrenia and other psychoses** | Short-term adjunctive management of psychomotor agitation, excitement, and violent or dangerously impulsive behaviour

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision): Initially 5 mg twice daily, increased by 5 mg daily after 1 week, then at intervals of 3 days, according to response

**Short-term adjunctive management of severe anxiety**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 3–5 years (under expert supervision): Up to 500 micrograms twice daily
- Child 6–11 years (under expert supervision): Up to 2 mg twice daily
- Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision): 1–2 mg twice daily, increased if necessary to 3 mg twice daily

**Severe nausea and vomiting unresponsive to other antiemetics**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 3–5 years: Up to 500 micrograms twice daily
- Child 6–11 years: Up to 2 mg twice daily
- Child 12–17 years: 1–2 mg twice daily (max. per dose 3 mg twice daily)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** CNS depression · comatose states · pheochromocytoma

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: phenothiazines

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Alertness decreased · anxiety · appetite decreased · blood disorder · cardiac arrest · fatigue · hyperpyrexia · jaundice cholestatic · lens opacity · muscle weakness · oedema · pancytopenia · photosensitivity reaction · postural hypotension (dose-related) · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · urinary hesitation · vision blurred · withdrawal syndrome

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Extrapyramidal symptoms are more frequent at doses exceeding 6mg daily. Acute dystonias are more common with potent first-generation antipsychotics. The risk is increased in men, young adults, children, antipsychotic-naïve patients, rapid dose escalation, and abrupt treatment discontinuation.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Can precipitate coma; phenothiazines are hepatotoxic.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Start with small doses in severe renal impairment because of increased cerebral sensitivity.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Trifluoperazine does not affect blood pressure to the same extent as other

antipsychotic drugs and so blood pressure monitoring is not mandatory for this drug.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Trifluoperazine (Non-proprietary)

Trifluoperazine (as Trifluoperazine hydrochloride)

200 microgram per 1 ml Trifluoperazine 1mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 200 ml [PoM] £112.25 DT = £112.25

Trifluoperazine (as Trifluoperazine hydrochloride) 1 mg per 1 ml Trifluoperazine 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £25.50 DT = £25.50

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Trifluoperazine (Non-proprietary)

Trifluoperazine (as Trifluoperazine hydrochloride)

1 mg Trifluoperazine 1mg tablets | 112 tablet [PoM] £59.12–£99.80 DT = £59.12

Trifluoperazine (as Trifluoperazine hydrochloride)  
5 mg Trifluoperazine 5mg tablets | 112 tablet [PoM] £134.89–£165.00 DT = £134.89

## ANTIPSYCHOTICS > SECOND-GENERATION

£ 244

## Amisulpride

- **DRUG ACTION** Amisulpride is a selective dopamine receptor antagonist with high affinity for mesolimbic D<sub>2</sub> and D<sub>3</sub> receptors.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute psychotic episode in schizophrenia**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 15–17 years (under expert supervision): 200–400 mg twice daily, adjusted according to response; maximum 1.2 g per day

**Schizophrenia with predominantly negative symptoms**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 15–17 years (under expert supervision): 50–300 mg daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 18 years.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** CNS depression · comatose states · pheochromocytoma · pre-pubertal children · prolactin-dependent tumours

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: amisulpride

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anxiety · breast pain · hypersalivation · muscle rigidity · nausea · oculogyric crisis · trismus · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Bradycardia
- **Frequency not known** Angioedema · bone disorders · cardiac arrest · dyslipidaemia · hyponatraemia · nasal congestion · neoplasms · SIADH · urticaria · vision blurred

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—no information available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** No information available if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
**Dose adjustments** Halve dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

Use one-third dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Amisulpride does not affect blood pressure to the same extent as other antipsychotic drugs and so blood pressure monitoring is not mandatory for this drug.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include caramel.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Amisulpride (Non-proprietary)

**Amisulpride 100 mg per 1 ml** Amisulpride 100mg/ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 60 ml [PoM] £36.00 DT = £36.00

#### ► Solian (Sanofi)

**Amisulpride 100 mg per 1 ml** Solian 100mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 60 ml [PoM] £33.76 DT = £36.00

### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Amisulpride (Non-proprietary)

**Amisulpride 50 mg** Amisulpride 50mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £22.76 DT = £1.61

**Amisulpride 100 mg** Amisulpride 100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £39.48 DT = £3.24

**Amisulpride 200 mg** Amisulpride 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £66.00 DT = £5.59

**Amisulpride 400 mg** Amisulpride 400mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £132.00 DT = £35.21

#### ► Solian (Sanofi)

**Amisulpride 50 mg** Solian 50 tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £22.76 DT = £1.61

**Amisulpride 100 mg** Solian 100 tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £35.29 DT = £3.24

**Amisulpride 200 mg** Solian 200 tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £58.99 DT = £5.59

**Amisulpride 400 mg** Solian 400 tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £117.97 DT = £35.21

✱ 244

## Aripiprazole

- **DRUG ACTION** Aripiprazole is a dopamine D<sub>2</sub> partial agonist with weak 5-HT<sub>1A</sub> partial agonism and 5-HT<sub>2A</sub> receptor antagonism.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Schizophrenia

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 15–17 years (under expert supervision): Initially 2 mg once daily for 2 days, increased to 5 mg once daily for 2 days, then increased to 10 mg once daily, then increased in steps of 5 mg if required; maximum 30 mg per day

#### Treatment of mania (under expert supervision)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 13–17 years: Initially 2 mg once daily for 2 days, increased to 5 mg once daily for 2 days, then increased to 10 mg once daily, increased in steps of 5 mg if required, maximum duration of treatment 12 weeks, doses above 10 mg daily should only be used in exceptional cases; maximum 30 mg per day

### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- Manufacturer advises double the dose with concurrent use of potent inducers of CYP3A4—no specific recommendation made for children. Manufacturer advises reduce dose by half with concurrent use of potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or CYP2D6—no specific recommendation made for children.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

When prescribing, dispensing, or administering, check that the correct preparation is used—the preparation usually used in hospital for the rapid control of an *acute episode* (solution for injection containing aripiprazole 7.5 mg/mL) should **not** be confused with depot preparations (Aripiprazole 400-mg vial with solvent), which are usually used in the community or clinics for *maintenance treatment*.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** CNS depression · comatose state · phaeochromocytoma
- **CAUTIONS** Cerebrovascular disease
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aripiprazole
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Anxiety · appetite abnormal · diabetes mellitus · extrapyramidal symptoms · fatigue · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hypersalivation · nausea · postural hypotension · sedation · vision disorders · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Depression · hiccups · sexual dysfunction
  - **Frequency not known** Aggression · alopecia · bradycardia · cardiac arrest · chest pain · diabetic hyperosmolar coma · diarrhoea · dysphagia · generalised tonic-clonic seizure · hepatic disorders · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · hypertension · hyponatraemia · laryngospasm · musculoskeletal stiffness · myalgia · oropharyngeal spasm · pancreatitis · pathological gambling · peripheral oedema · photosensitivity reaction · pneumonia aspiration · rhabdomyolysis · serotonin syndrome · speech disorder · suicidal tendencies · syncope · temperature regulation disorder · thrombocytopenia · urinary incontinence · weight decreased

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Increased incidence of side-effects associated with doses of 30 mg daily; doses above 10 mg daily should only be used in exceptional cases and with close clinical monitoring.

- **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in severe impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Aripiprazole does not affect blood pressure to the same extent as other antipsychotic drugs and so blood pressure monitoring is not mandatory for this drug.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Orodispersible tablets should be placed on the tongue and allowed to dissolve, or be dispersed in water and swallowed.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer aripiprazole orodispersible tablets. Medicines for Children leaflet: Aripiprazole for schizophrenia, bipolar disorder and movement disorders [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/aripiprazole-schizophrenia-bipolar-disorder-and-movement-disorders](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/aripiprazole-schizophrenia-bipolar-disorder-and-movement-disorders)
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**
  - **NICE decisions**
    - Aripiprazole for the treatment of schizophrenia in people aged 15 to 17 years (January 2011) Aripiprazole is recommended as an option for the treatment of schizophrenia in adolescents aged 15 to 17 years who have not responded adequately to, or who are intolerant of, risperidone, or for whom risperidone is contra-indicated. [www.nice.org.uk/TA213](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA213)
    - Aripiprazole for the treatment of moderate to severe manic episodes in adolescents with bipolar I disorder (July 2013) Aripiprazole is recommended as an option for the treatment of moderate to severe manic episodes for up to 12 weeks in adolescents aged over 13 years with bipolar I disorder. [www.nice.org.uk/TA292](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA292)

### ABILIFY® ORAL SOLUTION

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium*, has advised (August 2013) that oral aripiprazole (*Abilify*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of moderate to severe manic episodes in Bipolar I Disorder in adolescents aged 13 years and older for a period of up to

12 weeks. It is restricted to initiation and management under the supervision of a child/adolescent psychiatrist.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Aripiprazole (Non-proprietary)

**Aripiprazole 5 mg** Aripiprazole 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £96.04 DT = £2.37

**Aripiprazole 10 mg** Aripiprazole 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £96.04 DT = £1.99

**Aripiprazole 15 mg** Aripiprazole 15mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £96.04 DT = £2.75

**Aripiprazole 30 mg** Aripiprazole 30mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £192.08 DT = £10.71

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Aripiprazole (Non-proprietary)

**Aripiprazole 1 mg per 1 ml** Aripiprazole 1mg/ml oral solution | 150 ml [PoM] £102.90 DT = £99.66

#### ► Abilify (Otsuka Pharmaceuticals (U.K.) Ltd)

**Aripiprazole 1 mg per 1 ml** Abilify 1mg/ml oral solution | 150 ml [PoM] £102.90 DT = £99.66

#### Orodispersible tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

#### ► Aripiprazole (Non-proprietary)

**Aripiprazole 10 mg** Aripiprazole 10mg orodispersible tablets sugar free sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £91.24 DT = £78.01

**Aripiprazole 15 mg** Aripiprazole 15mg orodispersible tablets sugar free sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £91.24 DT = £78.01

F 244

27-Nov-2017

## Clozapine

- **DRUG ACTION** Clozapine is a dopamine D<sub>1</sub>, dopamine D<sub>2</sub>, 5-HT<sub>2A</sub>, alpha<sub>1</sub>-adrenoceptor, and muscarinic-receptor antagonist.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Schizophrenia in patients unresponsive to, or intolerant of, conventional antipsychotic drugs**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision): 12.5 mg 1–2 times a day for day 1, then 25–50 mg for day 2, then increased, if tolerated, in steps of 25–50 mg daily, dose to be increased gradually over 14–21 days, increased to up to 300 mg daily in divided doses, larger dose to be taken at night, up to 200 mg daily may be taken as a single dose at bedtime; increased in steps of 50–100 mg 1–2 times a week if required, it is preferable to increase once a week; usual dose 200–450 mg daily, max. 900 mg per day, if restarting after interval of more than 48 hours, 12.5 mg once or twice on first day (but may be feasible to increase more quickly than on initiation)—extreme caution if previous respiratory or cardiac arrest with initial dosing

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 16 years.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CLOZAPINE: REMINDER OF POTENTIALLY FATAL RISK OF INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION, FAECAL IMPACTION, AND PARALYTIC ILEUS (OCTOBER 2017)

Clozapine has been associated with varying degrees of impairment of intestinal peristalsis—see Cautions and Contra-indications for further information. Patients and their carers should be advised to seek immediate medical advice before taking the next dose of clozapine if constipation develops.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Alcoholic and toxic psychoses · bone-marrow disorders · coma · drug intoxication · history of agranulocytosis · history of circulatory collapse · history of neutropenia · paralytic ileus · severe cardiac disorders (e.g. myocarditis) · severe CNS depression · uncontrolled epilepsy

- **CAUTIONS** Susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · taper off other antipsychotics before starting

### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Agranulocytosis** Neutropenia and potentially fatal agranulocytosis reported. Leucocyte and differential blood counts must be normal before starting; monitor counts every week for 18 weeks then at least every 2 weeks and if clozapine continued and blood count stable after 1 year at least every 4 weeks (and 4 weeks after discontinuation); if leucocyte count below 3000/mm<sup>3</sup> or if absolute neutrophil count below 1500/mm<sup>3</sup> discontinue permanently and refer to haematologist. Patients who have a low white blood cell count because of benign ethnic neutropenia may be started on clozapine with the agreement of a haematologist. Avoid drugs which depress leucopoiesis; patients should report immediately symptoms of infection, especially influenza-like illness.

- **Myocarditis and cardiomyopathy** Fatal myocarditis (most commonly in first 2 months) and cardiomyopathy reported.

Perform physical examination and take full medical history before starting

Specialist examination required if cardiac abnormalities or history of heart disease found—clozapine initiated only in absence of severe heart disease and if benefit outweighs risk

Persistent tachycardia especially in first 2 months should prompt observation for other indicators for myocarditis or cardiomyopathy

If myocarditis or cardiomyopathy suspected clozapine should be stopped and patient evaluated urgently by cardiologist

Discontinue permanently in clozapine-induced myocarditis or cardiomyopathy

- **Intestinal obstruction** Impairment of intestinal peristalsis, including constipation, intestinal obstruction, faecal impaction, and paralytic ileus, (including fatal cases) reported. Clozapine should be used with caution in patients receiving drugs that may cause constipation (e.g. antimuscarinic drugs) or in those with a history of colonic disease or lower abdominal surgery. It is essential that constipation is recognised and actively treated.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: clozapine

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · eosinophilia · fatigue · fever · headache · hypertension · leucocytosis · movement disorders · muscle complaints · nausea · oral disorders · postural hypotension (dose-related) · sedation · speech impairment · sweating abnormal · syncope · temperature regulation disorders · urinary disorders · vision blurred · vomiting
- **Rare or very rare** Anaemia · cardiac arrest · cardiac inflammation · cardiomyopathy · circulatory collapse · delirium · diabetes mellitus · dyslipidaemia · dysphagia · gastrointestinal disorders · glucose tolerance impaired · hepatic disorders · increased risk of infection · intestinal obstruction (including fatal cases) · ketoacidosis · nephritis · tubulointerstitial · obsessive-compulsive disorder · pancreatitis · pericardial effusion · respiratory disorders · restlessness · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · thrombocytosis
- **Frequency not known** Angina pectoris · angioedema · chest pain · cholinergic syndrome · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · hypersensitivity vasculitis · muscle weakness · myocardial infarction · nasal congestion ·

pseudophaeochromocytoma · renal failure · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Hypersalivation associated with clozapine therapy can be treated with hyoscine hydrobromide [unlicensed indication], provided that the patient is not at particular risk from the additive antimuscarinic side-effects of hyoscine and clozapine.

- **PREGNANCY** Use with caution.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in symptomatic liver disease. Avoid in progressive liver disease. Avoid in hepatic failure. **Monitoring** Monitor hepatic function regularly.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Monitor leucocyte and differential blood counts. Clozapine requires differential white blood cell monitoring weekly for 18 weeks, then fortnightly for up to one year, and then monthly as part of the clozapine patient monitoring service.
  - ▶ Close medical supervision during initiation (risk of collapse because of hypotension and convulsions).
  - ▶ Blood lipids and weight should be measured at baseline, at 3 months (weight should be measured at frequent intervals during the first 3 months), and then yearly with antipsychotics. Patients taking clozapine require more frequent monitoring of these parameters: every 3 months for the first year, then yearly.
  - ▶ Fasting blood glucose should be measured at baseline, at 4–6 months, and then yearly. Patients taking clozapine should have fasting blood glucose tested at baseline, after one month's treatment, then every 4–6 months.
  - ▶ Patient, prescriber, and supplying pharmacist must be registered with the appropriate Patient Monitoring Service—it takes several days to do this.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** On planned withdrawal reduce dose over 1–2 weeks to avoid risk of rebound psychosis. If abrupt withdrawal necessary observe patient carefully.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Shake oral suspension well for 90 seconds when dispensing or if visibly settled and stand for 24 hours before use; otherwise shake well for 10 seconds before use. May be diluted with water.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Clozapine has been used for psychosis in Parkinson's disease in children aged 16 years and over.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer clozapine oral suspension.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 10

- ▶ **Denzapine** (Britannia Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Clozapine 50 mg per 1 ml Denzapine 50mg/ml oral suspension sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £39.60

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 10

- ▶ **Clozaril** (Mylan)

Clozapine 25 mg Clozaril 25mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.02 | 84 tablet [PoM] £8.40 (Hospital only) | 100 tablet [PoM] £10.00 (Hospital only)

Clozapine 100 mg Clozaril 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £12.07 | 84 tablet [PoM] £33.60 (Hospital only) | 100 tablet [PoM] £39.00 (Hospital only)

- ▶ **Denzapine** (Britannia Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Clozapine 25 mg Denzapine 25mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £16.64 | 100 tablet [PoM] £19.80

Clozapine 50 mg Denzapine 50mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £39.60

Clozapine 100 mg Denzapine 100mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £66.53 | 100 tablet [PoM] £79.20

Clozapine 200 mg Denzapine 200mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £158.40

- ▶ **Zaponex** (Leyden Delta B.V.)

Clozapine 25 mg Zaponex 25mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £8.28 | 500 tablet [PoM] £48.39

Clozapine 100 mg Zaponex 100mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £33.88 | 500 tablet [PoM] £196.43

## Olanzapine

- **DRUG ACTION** Olanzapine is a dopamine D<sub>1</sub>, D<sub>2</sub>, D<sub>4</sub>, 5-HT<sub>2</sub>, histamine-1, and muscarinic-receptor antagonist.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Schizophrenia | Combination therapy for mania

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision): Initially 5–10 mg daily, adjusted according to response, usual dose 5–20 mg daily, doses greater than 10 mg daily only after reassessment, when one or more factors present that might result in slower metabolism (e.g. female gender, non-smoker) consider lower initial dose and more gradual dose increase; maximum 20 mg per day

##### Monotherapy for mania

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision): 15 mg daily, adjusted according to response, usual dose 5–20 mg daily, doses greater than 15 mg daily only after reassessment, when one or more factors present that might result in slower metabolism (e.g. female gender, non-smoker) consider lower initial dose and more gradual dose increase; maximum 20 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CAUTIONS** Bone-marrow depression · hypereosinophilic disorders · low leucocyte count · low neutrophil count · myeloproliferative disease · paralytic ileus

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: olanzapine

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anticholinergic syndrome · appetite increased · arthralgia · asthenia · drowsiness · eosinophilia · fever · glycosuria · hypersomnia · oedema · postural hypotension · sexual dysfunction
- ▶ **Uncommon** Abdominal distension · alopecia · bradycardia · breast enlargement · diabetes mellitus · diabetic coma · dysarthria · epistaxis · ketoacidosis · memory loss · oculogular · photosensitivity reaction · thromboembolism · urinary disorders
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Hepatic disorders · hypothermia · pancreatitis · rhabdomyolysis · thrombocytopenia
- **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk; neonatal lethargy, tremor, and hypertonia reported when used in third trimester.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—present in milk.

#### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

Dose adjustments Consider initial dose of 5 mg daily.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

Dose adjustments Consider initial dose of 5 mg daily.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Blood lipids and weight should be measured at baseline, at 3 months (weight should be measured at frequent intervals during the first 3 months), and then yearly with antipsychotic drugs. Patients taking olanzapine require more frequent monitoring of these parameters: every 3 months for the first year, then yearly.
- ▶ Fasting blood glucose should be measured at baseline, at 4–6 months, and then yearly. Patients taking olanzapine should have fasting blood glucose tested at baseline, after one month's treatment, then every 4–6 months.



- DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Olanzapine orodispersible tablet may be placed on the tongue and allowed to dissolve, or dispersed in water, orange juice, apple juice, milk, or coffee.
- PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer orodispersible tablets. Medicines for Children leaflet: Olanzapine for schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, mania and agitation [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/olanzapine-schizophrenia-bipolar-disorder-mania-and-agitation](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/olanzapine-schizophrenia-bipolar-disorder-mania-and-agitation)
- MEDICINAL FORMS** There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- Olanzapine (Non-proprietary)**  
**Olanzapine 2.5 mg** Olanzapine 2.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £21.85 DT = £5.03  
**Olanzapine 5 mg** Olanzapine 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £43.70 DT = £10.72  
**Olanzapine 7.5 mg** Olanzapine 7.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £62.27 DT = £29.71 | 56 tablet [PoM] £12.10–£131.10  
**Olanzapine 10 mg** Olanzapine 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £87.40 DT = £18.98  
**Olanzapine 15 mg** Olanzapine 15mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £119.18 DT = £24.58  
**Olanzapine 20 mg** Olanzapine 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £158.90 DT = £36.83
- Zalasta (Consilient Health Ltd)**  
**Olanzapine 2.5 mg** Zalasta 2.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £18.57 DT = £5.03  
**Olanzapine 5 mg** Zalasta 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £37.14 DT = £10.72  
**Olanzapine 7.5 mg** Zalasta 7.5mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £111.43  
**Olanzapine 10 mg** Zalasta 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £74.29 DT = £18.98  
**Olanzapine 15 mg** Zalasta 15mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £101.30 DT = £24.58  
**Olanzapine 20 mg** Zalasta 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £135.06 DT = £36.83
- Zyprexa (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)**  
**Olanzapine 2.5 mg** Zyprexa 2.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £21.85 DT = £5.03  
**Olanzapine 5 mg** Zyprexa 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £43.70 DT = £10.72  
**Olanzapine 7.5 mg** Zyprexa 7.5mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £131.10  
**Olanzapine 10 mg** Zyprexa 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £87.40 DT = £18.98  
**Olanzapine 15 mg** Zyprexa 15mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £119.18 DT = £24.58  
**Olanzapine 20 mg** Zyprexa 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £158.90 DT = £36.83

#### Oral lyophilisate

- Zyprexa (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)**  
**Olanzapine 5 mg** Zyprexa 5mg Velotabs sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £48.07 DT = £48.07  
**Olanzapine 10 mg** Zyprexa 10mg Velotabs sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £87.40 DT = £87.40  
**Olanzapine 15 mg** Zyprexa 15mg Velotabs sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £131.10 DT = £131.10  
**Olanzapine 20 mg** Zyprexa 20mg Velotabs sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £174.79 DT = £174.79

#### Orodispersible tablet

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

- Olanzapine (Non-proprietary)**  
**Olanzapine 5 mg** Olanzapine 5mg orodispersible tablets sugar free sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £15.27–£27.03 DT = £21.53  
**Olanzapine 5mg orodispersible tablets** | 28 tablet [PoM] £30.00 DT = £25.63  
**Olanzapine 10 mg** Olanzapine 10mg orodispersible tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £50.00 DT = £43.25  
**Olanzapine 10mg orodispersible tablets** sugar free sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £27.37–£49.74 DT = £34.53  
**Olanzapine 15 mg** Olanzapine 15mg orodispersible tablets sugar free sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £30.86–£66.76 DT = £36.60

Olanzapine 15mg orodispersible tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £50.00 DT = £44.33

**Olanzapine 20 mg** Olanzapine 20mg orodispersible tablets sugar free sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £47.19–£96.14 DT = £78.52  
**Olanzapine 20mg orodispersible tablets** | 28 tablet [PoM] £80.00 DT = £70.23

#### ► Zalasta (Consilient Health Ltd)

**Olanzapine 5 mg** Zalasta 5mg orodispersible tablets sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £40.85 DT = £21.53  
**Olanzapine 10 mg** Zalasta 10mg orodispersible tablets sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £74.29 DT = £34.53  
**Olanzapine 15 mg** Zalasta 15mg orodispersible tablets sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £111.43 DT = £36.60  
**Olanzapine 20 mg** Zalasta 20mg orodispersible tablets sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM] £148.57 DT = £78.52

244

## Quetiapine

- DRUG ACTION** Quetiapine is a dopamine D<sub>1</sub>, dopamine D<sub>2</sub>, 5-HT<sub>2</sub>, α<sub>1</sub>-adrenoceptor, and histamine-1 receptor antagonist.

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Schizophrenia

##### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision):** Initially 25 mg twice daily, adjusted according to response. adjusted in steps of 25–50 mg; maximum 750 mg per day

##### ► BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision):** Initially 50 mg once daily, adjusted according to response. adjusted in steps of 50 mg daily, usual dose 400–800 mg once daily; maximum 800 mg per day

#### Treatment of mania in bipolar disorder

##### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision):** 25 mg twice daily for day 1, then 50 mg twice daily for day 2, then 100 mg twice daily for day 3, then 150 mg twice daily for day 4, then 200 mg twice daily for day 5, then adjusted in steps of up to 100 mg daily, adjusted according to response, usual dose 400–600 mg daily in 2 divided doses

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Patients can be switched from immediate-release to modified-release tablets at the equivalent daily dose; to maintain clinical response, dose titration may be required.**

- UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- CAUTIONS** Cerebrovascular disease · patients at risk of aspiration pneumonia · treatment of depression in patients under 25 years (increased risk of suicide)
- INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: quetiapine
- SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - Common or very common** Appetite increased · asthenia · dysarthria · dyspepsia · dyspnoea · fever · headache · irritability · palpitations · peripheral oedema · postural hypotension · rhinitis · sleep disorders · suicidal behaviour (particularly on initiation) · suicidal ideation (particularly on initiation) · syncope · vision blurred · vomiting · withdrawal syndrome
  - Uncommon** Anaemia · bradycardia · diabetes mellitus · dysphagia · hyponatraemia · hypothyroidism · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia
  - Rare or very rare** Angioedema · breast swelling · gastrointestinal disorders · hepatic disorders · hyperthermia · menstrual disorder · metabolic syndrome · pancreatitis · rhabdomyolysis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · SIADH
- PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** For *immediate-release tablets*, initially 25 mg daily, increased daily in steps of 25–50 mg.

For *modified-release tablets*, initially 50 mg daily, increased daily in steps of 50 mg.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, powder

**Modified-release tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 23, 25

► **Atrolak XL** (Accord Healthcare Ltd)

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 50 mg** Atrolak XL 50mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £67.65 DT = £67.66

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 150 mg** Atrolak XL 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £107.45 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 200 mg** Atrolak XL 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £113.10 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 300 mg** Atrolak XL 300mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £169.99 DT = £170.00

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 400 mg** Atrolak XL 400mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £226.19 DT = £226.20

► **Biquelle XL** (Aspire Pharma Ltd)

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 50 mg** Biquelle XL 50mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £29.45 DT = £67.66

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 150 mg** Biquelle XL 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £49.45 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 200 mg** Biquelle XL 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £49.45 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 300 mg** Biquelle XL 300mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £74.45 DT = £170.00

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 400 mg** Biquelle XL 400mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £98.95 DT = £226.20

► **Brancico XL** (Zentiva)

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 50 mg** Brancico XL 50mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £12.00 DT = £67.66

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 150 mg** Brancico XL 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £26.00 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 200 mg** Brancico XL 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £26.00 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 300 mg** Brancico XL 300mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £45.00 DT = £170.00

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 400 mg** Brancico XL 400mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £60.00 DT = £226.20

► **Mintreleq XL** (Aristo Pharma Ltd)

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 50 mg** Mintreleq XL 50mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £14.99 DT = £67.66

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 150 mg** Mintreleq XL 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £29.99 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 200 mg** Mintreleq XL 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £29.99 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 300 mg** Mintreleq XL 300mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £49.99 DT = £170.00

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 400 mg** Mintreleq XL 400mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £64.99 DT = £226.20

► **Seroquel XL** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 50 mg** Seroquel XL 50mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £67.66 DT = £67.66

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 150 mg** Seroquel XL 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £113.10 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 200 mg** Seroquel XL 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £113.10 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 300 mg** Seroquel XL 300mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £170.00 DT = £170.00

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 400 mg** Seroquel XL 400mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £226.20 DT = £226.20

► **Sondate XL** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 50 mg** Sondate XL 50mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £14.98 DT = £67.66

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 150 mg** Sondate XL 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £29.98 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 200 mg** Sondate XL 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £29.98 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 300 mg** Sondate XL 300mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £49.98 DT = £170.00

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 400 mg** Sondate XL 400mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £64.98 DT = £226.20

► **Zaluron XL** (Fontus Health Ltd)

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 50 mg** Zaluron XL 50mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £27.96 DT = £67.66

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 150 mg** Zaluron XL 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £46.96 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 200 mg** Zaluron XL 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £46.96 DT = £113.10

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 300 mg** Zaluron XL 300mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £70.71 DT = £170.00

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 400 mg** Zaluron XL 400mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £93.98 DT = £226.20

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

► **Quetiapine (Non-proprietary)**

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 25 mg** Quetiapine 25mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £38.05 DT = £11.16

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 100 mg** Quetiapine 100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £107.45 DT = £43.54

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 150 mg** Quetiapine 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £107.45 DT = £51.42

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 200 mg** Quetiapine 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £107.45 DT = £43.69

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 300 mg** Quetiapine 300mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £161.50 DT = £72.57

► **Seroquel** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 25 mg** Seroquel 25mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £48.60 DT = £11.16

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 100 mg** Seroquel 100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £135.72 DT = £43.54

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 200 mg** Seroquel 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £135.72 DT = £43.69

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 300 mg** Seroquel 300mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £204.00 DT = £72.57

**Oral suspension**► **Quetiapine (Non-proprietary)**

**Quetiapine (as Quetiapine fumarate) 20 mg per 1 ml** Quetiapine 20mg/ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £95.00 DT = £95.00

F 244

07-Feb-2018

**Risperidone**

- **DRUG ACTION** Risperidone is a dopamine D<sub>2</sub>, 5-HT<sub>2A</sub>, alpha<sub>1</sub>-adrenoceptor, and histamine-1 receptor antagonist.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Acute and chronic psychosis**► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision): 2 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses for day 1, then 4 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses for day 2, slower titration is appropriate in some patients; usual dose 4–6 mg daily, doses above 10 mg daily only if benefit considered to outweigh risk; maximum 16 mg per day

**Short-term monotherapy of mania in bipolar disorder (under expert supervision)**► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 500 micrograms once daily, then adjusted in steps of 0.5–1 mg daily, adjusted according to response; usual dose 2.5 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses; maximum 6 mg per day

**Short-term treatment (up to 6 weeks) of persistent aggression in conduct disorder (under expert supervision)**► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 5–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): Initially 250 micrograms once daily, then increased in steps of 250 micrograms once daily on alternate days, adjusted according to response; usual dose 500 micrograms once daily; maximum 750 micrograms per day
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 500 micrograms once daily, then increased in steps of 500 micrograms once daily on alternate continued →

days, adjusted according to response; usual dose 1 mg once daily; maximum 1.5 mg per day

#### Short-term treatment of severe aggression in autism (under expert supervision)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 15–20 kg): Initially 250 micrograms daily for at least 4 days, then increased if necessary to 500 micrograms daily, then increased in steps of 250 micrograms daily, dose to be increased at intervals of 2 weeks, review effectiveness and any side-effects after 3–4 weeks; stop if no response at 6 weeks; maximum 1 mg per day
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 20–45 kg): Initially 500 micrograms daily for at least 4 days, then increased if necessary to 1 mg daily, then increased in steps of 500 micrograms daily, dose to be increased at intervals of 2 weeks, review effectiveness and any side-effects after 3–4 weeks; stop if no response at 6 weeks; maximum 2.5 mg per day
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 45 kg and above): Initially 500 micrograms daily for at least 4 days, then increased if necessary to 1 mg daily, then increased in steps of 500 micrograms daily, dose to be increased at intervals of 2 weeks, review effectiveness and any side-effects after 3–4 weeks; stop if no response at 6 weeks; maximum 3 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for psychosis, mania, or autism.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### SAFE PRACTICE

Risperidone has been confused with ropinirole; care must be taken to ensure the correct drug is prescribed and dispensed.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 · cataract surgery (risk of intra-operative floppy iris syndrome) · dehydration · family history of sudden cardiac death (perform ECG) · prolactin-dependent tumours
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: risperidone
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Anaemia · anxiety · appetite abnormal · asthenia · chest discomfort · conjunctivitis · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dyspnoea · epistaxis · fall · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hypertension · increased risk of infection · joint disorders · laryngeal pain · muscle spasms · nasal congestion · nausea · oedema · oral disorders · pain · sedation · skin reactions · sleep disorders · urinary disorders · vision disorders · vomiting · weight decreased
  - **Uncommon** Alopecia · arrhythmias · breast abnormalities · cardiac conduction disorders · cerebrovascular insufficiency · chills · coma · concentration impaired · consciousness impaired · cystitis · diabetes mellitus · dizziness postural · dry eye · dysarthria · dysphagia · dysphonia · ear pain · eye disorders · feeling abnormal · flushing · gait abnormal · gastrointestinal disorders · malaise · menstrual cycle irregularities · mood altered · muscle weakness · palpitations · polydipsia · postural hypotension · posture abnormal · respiratory disorders · sensation abnormal · syncope · taste altered · thirst · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus · vaginal discharge · vertigo
  - **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · dandruff · eyelid crusting · glaucoma · head titubation · hypoglycaemia · hypothermia · jaundice · pancreatitis · peripheral coldness · rhabdomyolysis · SIADH · sleep apnoea · water intoxication · withdrawal syndrome
- **Frequency not known** Cardiac arrest
- **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—small amount present in milk.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Initial and subsequent oral doses should be halved.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Initial and subsequent oral doses should be halved.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Orodispersible tablets should be placed on the tongue, allowed to dissolve and swallowed. Oral liquid may be diluted with any non-alcoholic drink, except tea.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer risperidone orodispersible tablets and oral liquid (counselling on use of dose syringe advised).  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Risperidone for psychological disorders [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/risperidone-for-psychological-disorders](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/risperidone-for-psychological-disorders)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

##### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ► Risperidone (Non-proprietary)

**Risperidone 1 mg per 1 ml** Risperidone 1mg/ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM](#) £58.22 DT = £3.87

##### ► Risperdal (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

**Risperidone 1 mg per 1 ml** Risperdal 1mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM](#) £37.01 DT = £3.87

##### Orodispersible tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

##### ► Risperidone (Non-proprietary)

**Risperidone 500 microgram** Risperidone 500microgram orodispersible tablets sugar free sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £23.88 DT = £23.86

**Risperidone 1 mg** Risperidone 1mg orodispersible tablets sugar free sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £23.51 DT = £22.99

**Risperidone 2 mg** Risperidone 2mg orodispersible tablets sugar free sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £42.95 DT = £42.40

**Risperidone 3 mg** Risperidone 3mg orodispersible tablets sugar free sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £43.50 DT = £43.50

**Risperidone 4 mg** Risperidone 4mg orodispersible tablets sugar free sugar-free | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £50.35 DT = £50.35

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ► Risperidone (Non-proprietary)

**Risperidone 500 microgram** Risperidone 500microgram tablets | 20 tablet [PoM](#) £6.95 DT = £0.40

**Risperidone 1 mg** Risperidone 1mg tablets | 20 tablet [PoM](#) £0.84 DT = £0.41 | 60 tablet [PoM](#) £1.23–£25.07

**Risperidone 2 mg** Risperidone 2mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM](#) £60.10 DT = £1.36

**Risperidone 3 mg** Risperidone 3mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM](#) £88.38 DT = £1.57

**Risperidone 4 mg** Risperidone 4mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM](#) £116.67 DT = £1.83

**Risperidone 6 mg** Risperidone 6mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £82.50 DT = £2.76

##### ► Risperdal (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

**Risperidone 500 microgram** Risperdal 500microgram tablets | 20 tablet [PoM](#) £5.08 DT = £0.40

**Risperidone 1 mg** Risperdal 1mg tablets | 20 tablet [PoM](#) £8.36 DT = £0.41 | 60 tablet [PoM](#) £17.56

**Risperidone 2 mg** Risperdal 2mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM](#) £34.62 DT = £1.36

**Risperidone 3 mg** Risperdal 3mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM](#) £50.91 DT = £1.57

**Risperidone 4 mg** Risperdal 4mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM](#) £67.20 DT = £1.83

**Risperidone 6 mg** Risperdal 6mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM](#) £67.88 DT = £2.76

## 3 Movement disorders

### Cerebral palsy and spasticity

27-Feb-2017

#### Description of condition

Cerebral palsy is a group of permanent, non-progressive abnormalities of the developing fetal or neonatal brain that lead to movement and posture disorders, causing activity limitation and functional impact. There can be accompanying clinical and developmental comorbidities. These include disturbances of sensation, perception, cognition, communication and behaviour; epilepsy; and secondary musculoskeletal problems (such as muscle contracture and abnormal torsion). Cerebral palsy is not curable and the comorbidities can impact on many areas of participation and quality of life, particularly eating, drinking, comfort, and sleep.

#### Spasticity

Spasticity in children is most commonly associated with cerebral palsy, but can also be associated with other non-progressive brain disorders.

#### Aims of treatment

Treatment involves managing spasticity to optimise movement and posture, while minimising potential secondary musculoskeletal deformity, as well as managing developmental and clinical comorbidities.

#### Drug treatment

##### Spasticity

**[EvGr]** Oral diazepam p. 220 or oral baclofen p. 649 can be used to treat discomfort, pain, muscle spasm and functional disability. If oral diazepam is initially used because of its rapid onset of action, consider changing to oral baclofen if a sustained, longer duration of effect is required or if long-term treatment is necessary. If the response to diazepam or baclofen after 4–6 weeks is unsatisfactory, a trial of combined treatment using both drugs can be considered. Consider reducing the dose if adverse effects such as drowsiness occur. Treatment cessation should be considered when management is reviewed and at least every six months.

If **dystonia** is considered to contribute significantly to problems with posture, function and pain, a trial of treatment with oral trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride p. 257, levodopa, or baclofen [unlicensed indications] can be considered.

Treatment with botulinum toxin type A p. 258 [unlicensed under 2 years] should be considered for those in whom focal spasticity of the upper or lower limbs is inhibiting fine motor function, affecting care and hygiene, causing pain or disturbing sleep, impeding tolerance of other treatments (such as orthoses), or causing cosmetic concerns. A trial of botulinum toxin type A treatment can also be considered in those with spasticity when *focal dystonia* is causing problems, such as postural or functional difficulties or pain. Ongoing assessment of muscle tone, range of movement and motor function is required. Botulinum toxin type A treatment should **not** be offered to children receiving treatment with Aminoglycosides p. 310.

Treatment with intrathecal baclofen [unlicensed under 4 years] (administered by continuous pump) can be considered in children with spasticity if (despite the use of non-invasive treatments) spasticity or dystonia are causing difficulties with pain, muscle spasm, posture, function or self-care. Before deciding to implant the intrathecal baclofen pump, an intrathecal baclofen test should be performed to assess the therapeutic effect and to check for adverse effects. **[A]**

#### Developmental and clinical comorbidities

**[EvGr]** Regular assessment and appropriate nutritional support should be provided, especially if there are concerns about oral intake, growth or nutritional status. Enteral tube feeding can be provided if oral intake is insufficient to provide adequate nutrition. **[A]**

Children with cerebral palsy are likely to have risk factors for low bone mineral density and can have an increased risk of low-impact fractures. **[EvGr]** Calcium and vitamin D supplementation (such as colecalciferol with calcium carbonate p. 633) may be required. Children with reduced bone density and a history of low-impact fracture can be considered for bisphosphonate therapy (under specialist guidance). **[A]**

Pain is common in children with cerebral palsy, especially those with more severe motor impairment. Condition-specific causes of pain and discomfort include musculoskeletal problems (for example, scoliosis, hip subluxation and dislocation), increased muscle tone (including dystonia and spasticity), muscle fatigue and immobility, constipation, vomiting, and gastro-oesophageal reflux disease. Reversible causes of pain should be treated as appropriate, see *Spasticity* (above). Constipation p. 39, Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease p. 59, Urinary frequency, enuresis and incontinence p. 488, Nocturnal enuresis in children p. 488 and Urinary-tract infections.

Other types of pain include non-specific back pain, headache, non-specific abdominal pain, dental pain and dysmenorrhoea. **[EvGr]** Initially, a 'stepped approach' trial of simple analgesia (such as paracetamol p. 271, ibuprofen p. 655, or both) for mild-to-moderate pain can be considered. If such a trial is unsuccessful, the child should be referred to a specialist pain team. **[A]**

In children with cerebral palsy, sleep disturbances are common. **[EvGr]** If no treatable cause is found, a trial of melatonin p. 295 [unlicensed] can be considered to manage sleep disturbances, particularly for problems with falling asleep. Regular sedative medication should **not** be used to manage primary sleep disorders in children with cerebral palsy without seeking specialist advice. **[A]**

Epilepsy can be associated with cerebral palsy; for its management, see *Epilepsy* p. 191.

Children with cerebral palsy are at greater risk of mental health problems, in comparison with the general age comparison population. For management of these conditions, see *Depression* (Antidepressant drugs p. 235), *Anxiety* (Hypnotics and anxiolytics p. 293), and *Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder* p. 225.

#### Drooling

**[EvGr]** Drooling can be managed with an antimuscarinic drug, such as glycopyrronium bromide p. 811 [unlicensed in under 3 years] (oral or by enteral tube) or hyoscine hydrobromide p. 266 [unlicensed] (transdermal). For children with dyskinetic cerebral palsy, trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride [unlicensed] can be used (on specialist advice). If antimuscarinic drugs provide insufficient benefit or are not tolerated, botulinum toxin type A [unlicensed indication] injections to the salivary glands can be considered. High-dose botulinum toxin type A [unlicensed indication] injections to the salivary glands can, rarely, cause breathing and swallowing difficulties, which requires urgent hospital admission. Surgery can be an option in cases resistant to drug treatment. **[A]**

#### Non-drug treatment

**[EvGr]** All children with spasticity should be offered physiotherapy and, where necessary, occupational therapy. They can also benefit from orthoses.

Orthopaedic surgery can be used, as an adjunct to other interventions, to prevent deterioration and improve function. **[A]**

## Related drugs

Other drugs used for Cerebral palsy and spasticity: co-careldopa p. 257, dantrolene sodium p. 821.

## Useful Resources

Cerebral palsy in under 25s: assessment and management. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Clinical guideline 62. January 2017.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/NG62](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/NG62)

Spasticity in under 19s: management. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Clinical guideline 145. July 2012 (updated November 2016).

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/CG145](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/CG145)

## 3.1 Dystonias and other involuntary movements

### Dystonias and related disorders

#### Dystonias

Dystonias may result from conditions such as cerebral palsy or may be related to a deficiency of the neurotransmitter dopamine as in Segawa syndrome.

#### Dopaminergic drugs used in dystonias

**Levodopa**, the amino-acid precursor of dopamine, acts by replenishing depleted striatal dopamine. It is given with an extracerebral **dopa-decarboxylase inhibitor**, which reduces the peripheral conversion of levodopa to dopamine, thereby limiting side-effects such as nausea, vomiting, and cardiovascular effects; additionally, effective brain-dopamine concentrations are achieved with lower doses of levodopa. The extracerebral dopa-decarboxylase inhibitor most commonly used in children is carbidopa (in co-careldopa p. 257).

Levodopa therapy should be initiated at a low dose and increased in small steps; the final dose should be as low as possible. Intervals between doses should be chosen to suit the needs of the individual child.

In severe dystonias related to cerebral palsy, improvement can be expected within 2 weeks. Children with Segawa syndrome are particularly sensitive to levodopa; they may even become symptom free on small doses. Levodopa also has a role in treating metabolic disorders such as defects in tetrahydrobiopterin synthesis and dihydrobiopterin reductase deficiency. Tetrahydrobiopterin may have a role in metabolic disorders.

Children may experience nausea within 2 hours of taking a dose; nausea and vomiting with co-careldopa is rarely dose-limiting.

In dystonic cerebral palsy, treatment with larger doses of levodopa is associated with the development of potentially troublesome motor complications (including response fluctuations and dyskinesias). Response fluctuations are characterised by large variations in motor performance, with normal function during the 'on' period, and weakness and restricted mobility during the 'off' period.

#### Antimuscarinic drugs used in dystonias

The antimuscarinic drugs procyclidine hydrochloride below and trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride p. 257 reduce the symptoms of dystonias, including those induced by antipsychotic drugs; there is no justification for giving them routinely in the absence of dystonic symptoms. Tardive dyskinesia is not improved by antimuscarinic drugs and may be made worse.

There are no important differences between the antimuscarinic drugs, but some children tolerate one better than another.

Procyclidine hydrochloride can be given parenterally and is effective emergency treatment for acute drug-induced dystonic reactions.

If treatment with an antimuscarinic is ineffective, intravenous diazepam p. 220 can be given for life-threatening acute drug-induced dystonic reactions.

#### Drugs used in essential tremor, chorea, tics, and related disorders

Haloperidol p. 245 can also improve motor tics and symptoms of Tourette syndrome and related choreas. Other treatments for Tourette syndrome include pimozide p. 247 [unlicensed indication] (**important**: ECG monitoring required), and sulpiride p. 247 [unlicensed indication].

Propranolol hydrochloride p. 104 or another beta-adrenoceptor blocking drug may be useful in treating essential tremor or tremor associated with anxiety or thyrotoxicosis.

Botulinum toxin type A p. 258 should be used under specialist supervision. Treatment with botulinum toxin type A can be considered after an acquired non-progressive brain injury if rapid-onset spasticity causes postural or functional difficulties, and in children with spasticity in whom focal dystonia causes postural or functional difficulties or pain.

#### Other drugs used for Dystonias and other involuntary movements

Trifluoperazine, p. 248

## ANTIMUSCARINICS

### Procyclidine hydrochloride

- **DRUG ACTION** Procyclidine exerts its antiparkinsonian action by reducing the effects of the central cholinergic excess that occurs as a result of dopamine deficiency.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Acute dystonia

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child 1 month-1 year: 0.5–2 mg for 1 dose, dose usually effective in 5–10 minutes but may need 30 minutes for relief
- Child 2-9 years: 2–5 mg for 1 dose, dose usually effective in 5–10 minutes but may need 30 minutes for relief
- Child 10-17 years: 5–10 mg, occasionally, more than 10 mg, dose usually effective in 5–10 minutes but may need 30 minutes for relief

##### Dystonia

► BY MOUTH

- Child 7-11 years: 1.25 mg 3 times a day
- Child 12-17 years: 2.5 mg 3 times a day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Gastro-intestinal obstruction · myasthenia gravis
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease · hypertension · liable to abuse · psychotic disorders · pyrexia · those susceptible to angle-closure glaucoma
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: procyclidine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Constipation · dry mouth · urinary retention · vision blurred
  - **Uncommon** Anxiety · cognitive impairment · confusion · dizziness · gingivitis · hallucination · memory loss · nausea · rash · vomiting



- **Rare or very rare** Psychotic disorder
- **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal in patients taking long-term treatment.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Driving and skilled tasks May affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Solution for injection

- **Procyclidine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Procyclidine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml Procyclidine 10mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £60.00-£78.75 DT = £72.50

#### Oral solution

- **Procyclidine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Procyclidine hydrochloride 500 microgram per 1 ml Procyclidine 2.5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £8.22-£10.49 DT = £10.49  
Procyclidine hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml Procyclidine 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £14.54-£18.54 DT = £18.54

#### Tablet

- **Procyclidine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Procyclidine hydrochloride 5 mg Procyclidine 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £12.65 DT = £5.91 | 100 tablet [PoM] £8.94-£21.11 | 500 tablet [PoM] £44.63-£105.54
- **Kemadrin** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)  
Procyclidine hydrochloride 5 mg Kemadrin 5mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £4.72 | 500 tablet [PoM] £23.62

## Trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride

### (Benzhexol hydrochloride)

- **DRUG ACTION** Trihexyphenidyl exerts its effects by reducing the effects of the relative central cholinergic excess that occurs as a result of dopamine deficiency.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Dystonia

- **BY MOUTH**
- Child 3 months-17 years: Initially 1–2 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, then increased in steps of 1 mg every 3–7 days, dose to be adjusted according to response and side-effects; maximum 2 mg/kg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Gastro-intestinal obstruction · myasthenia gravis
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease · hypertension · liable to abuse · psychotic disorders · pyrexia · those susceptible to angle-closure glaucoma
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: trihexyphenidyl
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Anxiety · bronchial secretion decreased · confusion · constipation · delusions · dizziness · dry mouth · dysphagia · euphoric mood · fever · flushing · hallucination · insomnia · memory loss · myasthenia gravis aggravated · mydriasis · nausea · skin reactions · tachycardia · thirst · urinary disorders · vision disorders · vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal in patients taking long-term treatment.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets should be taken with or after food.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride for dystonia [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/trihexyphenidyl-hydrochloride-for-dystonia](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/trihexyphenidyl-hydrochloride-for-dystonia)  
Driving and skilled tasks May affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Oral solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

- **Trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml Trihexyphenidyl 5mg/5ml oral solution | 200 ml [PoM] £22.00 DT = £22.00

#### Tablet

- **Trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride 2 mg Trihexyphenidyl 2mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £4.20 DT = £3.28  
Trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride 5 mg Trihexyphenidyl 5mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £17.91 DT = £17.91

## DOPAMINERGIC DRUGS > DOPAMINE PRECURSORS

### Co-careldopa

01-May-2018

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Dopamine-sensitive dystonias including Segawa syndrome and dystonias related to cerebral palsy (dose expressed as levodopa)**

- **BY MOUTH**
- Child 3 months-17 years: Initially 250 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day, dose to be increased according to response every 2–3 days, increased if necessary up to 1 mg/kg 3 times a day, preparation containing 1:4 ratio of carbidopa:levodopa is to be used

**Treatment of defects in tetrahydrobiopterin synthesis and dihydrobiopterin reductase deficiency (dose expressed as levodopa)**

- **BY MOUTH**
- Neonate: Initially 250–500 micrograms/kg 4 times a day, dose to be increased every 4–5 days according to response, a preparation containing 1:4 carbidopa:levodopa to be administered; maintenance 2.5–3 mg/kg 4 times a day, at higher doses consider preparation containing 1:10 carbidopa:levodopa, review regularly (every 3–6 months).
- Child: Initially 250–500 micrograms/kg 4 times a day, dose to be increased every 4–5 days according to response, a preparation containing 1:4 carbidopa:levodopa to be administered; maintenance 2.5–3 mg/kg 4 times a day, at higher doses consider preparation containing 1:10 carbidopa:levodopa, review regularly (every 3–6 months in early childhood)

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- The proportions are expressed in the form x/y where x and y are the strengths in milligrams of carbidopa and levodopa respectively.
- 2 tablets Sinemet® 12.5 mg/50 mg is equivalent to 1 tablet Sinemet® Plus 25 mg/100 mg.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease · diabetes mellitus · history of myocardial infarction with residual arrhythmia · history of peptic ulcer · history of skin melanoma (risk of

activation) • osteomalacia • psychiatric illness (avoid if severe and discontinue if deterioration) • pulmonary disease • susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: carbidopa • levodopa

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Drowsiness • seizure • sleep disorders
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis • alertness decreased • alopecia • anaemia • angioedema • anxiety • appetite decreased • asthenia • cardiac disorder • chest pain • compulsions • confusion • constipation • delusions • dementia • depression • diarrhoea • dizziness • dry mouth • dyskinesia • dysphagia • dyspnoea • eating disorders • euphoric mood • eye disorders • fall • focal tremor • gait abnormal • gastrointestinal discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • gastrointestinal haemorrhage • haemolytic anaemia • hallucination • headache • Henoch-Schönlein purpura • hiccups • hoarseness • Horner's syndrome • exacerbated • hypertension • hypotension • leucopenia • malaise • malignant melanoma • movement disorders • muscle complaints • nausea • neuroleptic malignant syndrome (on abrupt discontinuation) • oedema • on and off phenomenon • oral disorders • palpitations • pathological gambling • postural disorders • psychotic disorder • respiration abnormal • sensation abnormal • sexual dysfunction • skin reactions • suicidal ideation • sweat changes • syncope • taste bitter • teeth grinding • thrombocytopenia • trismus • urinary disorders • urine dark • vasodilation • vision disorders • vomiting • weight changes

- **PREGNANCY** Use with caution—toxicity has occurred in animal studies.

- **BREAST FEEDING** May suppress lactation; present in milk—avoid.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** In prolonged therapy, psychiatric, hepatic, haematological, renal, and cardiovascular monitoring is advisable; warn patients to resume normal activities gradually.

- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** False positive tests for urinary ketones have been reported.

- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Co-careldopa is a mixture of carbidopa and levodopa; the proportions are expressed in the form x/y where x and y are the strengths in milligrams of carbidopa and levodopa respectively.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Warn patients to resume normal activity gradually.

#### **Driving and skilled tasks**

**Sudden onset of sleep** Excessive daytime sleepiness and sudden onset of sleep can occur with co-careldopa.

Patients starting treatment with these drugs should be warned of the risk and of the need to exercise caution when driving or operating machinery. Those who have experienced excessive sedation or sudden onset of sleep should refrain from driving or operating machines until these effects have stopped occurring.

Management of excessive daytime sleepiness should focus on the identification of an underlying cause, such as depression or concomitant medication. Patients should be counselled on improving sleep behaviour.

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### **Modified-release tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 14, 25

##### ▶ **Co-careldopa (Non-proprietary)**

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 25 mg, Levodopa 100 mg** Co-careldopa 25mg/100mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] DT = £11.60

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 50 mg, Levodopa**

**200 mg** Co-careldopa 50mg/200mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] DT = £11.60

##### ▶ **Caramet CR (Teva UK Ltd)**

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 25 mg, Levodopa**

**100 mg** Caramet 25mg/100mg CR tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £11.47 DT = £11.60

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 50 mg, Levodopa**

**200 mg** Caramet 50mg/200mg CR tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £11.47 DT = £11.60

##### ▶ **Half Sinemet CR (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)**

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 25 mg, Levodopa**

**100 mg** Half Sinemet CR 25mg/100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £11.60 DT = £11.60

##### ▶ **Lecado (Sandoz Ltd)**

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 25 mg, Levodopa**

**100 mg** Lecado 100mg/25mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £9.86 DT = £11.60

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 50 mg, Levodopa**

**200 mg** Lecado 200mg/50mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £9.86 DT = £11.60

##### ▶ **Sinemet CR (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)**

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 50 mg, Levodopa**

**200 mg** Sinemet CR 50mg/200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £11.60 DT = £11.60

#### **Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 14

##### ▶ **Co-careldopa (Non-proprietary)**

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 12.5 mg, Levodopa**

**50 mg** Co-careldopa 12.5mg/50mg tablets | 90 tablet [PoM] £6.28 DT = £6.28

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 10 mg, Levodopa**

**100 mg** Co-careldopa 10mg/100mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £10.74 DT = £8.95

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 25 mg, Levodopa**

**100 mg** Co-careldopa 25mg/100mg tablets | 90 tablet [PoM] £8.14 | 100 tablet [PoM] £26.99 DT = £9.04

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 25 mg, Levodopa**

**250 mg** Co-careldopa 25mg/250mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £35.00 DT = £34.98

##### ▶ **Sinemet 110 (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)**

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 10 mg, Levodopa**

**100 mg** Sinemet 10mg/100mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £7.30 DT = £8.95

##### ▶ **Sinemet 275 (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)**

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 25 mg, Levodopa**

**250 mg** Sinemet 25mg/250mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £18.29 DT = £34.98

##### ▶ **Sinemet 62.5 (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)**

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 12.5 mg, Levodopa**

**50 mg** Sinemet 12.5mg/50mg tablets | 90 tablet [PoM] £6.28 DT = £6.28

##### ▶ **Sinemet Plus (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)**

**Carbidopa (as Carbidopa monohydrate) 25 mg, Levodopa**

**100 mg** Sinemet Plus 25mg/100mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £12.88 DT = £9.04

## MUSCLE RELAXANTS > PERIPHERALLY ACTING > NEUROTOXINS (BOTULINUM TOXINS)

### Botulinum toxin type A

24-Apr-2017

#### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Dynamic equinus foot deformity caused by spasticity in ambulant paediatric cerebral palsy**

- ▶ Child 2–17 years: (consult product literature)

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ **Important:** information is specific to each individual preparation.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Generalised disorders of muscle activity • infection at injection site • myasthenia gravis

- **CAUTIONS** Atrophy in target muscle • chronic respiratory disorder • excessive weakness in target muscle • history of aspiration • history of dysphagia • inflammation in target

muscle · neurological disorders · neuromuscular disorders · off-label use (fatal adverse events reported)

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Neuromuscular or neurological disorders can lead to increased sensitivity and exaggerated muscle weakness including dysphagia and respiratory compromise.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: botulinum toxin type A

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Common or very common** Alopecia · asthenia · autonomic dysreflexia · bladder diverticulum · constipation · dizziness · drowsiness · dry eye · dry mouth · dysphagia (most common after injection into sternomastoid muscle) · ecchymosis (minimised by applying gentle pressure at injection site immediately after injection) · eye discomfort · eye disorders · eye inflammation · fall · fever · gait abnormal · haematuria · headaches · hot flush · increased risk of infection · influenza like illness · insomnia · joint disorders · leukocyturia · malaise · muscle complaints · muscle weakness · musculoskeletal stiffness · nausea · neuromuscular dysfunction · oedema · pain · paresis · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · urinary disorders · vision disorders

► **Uncommon** Anxiety · coordination abnormal · depression · dysphonia · dyspnoea · facial paralysis · memory loss · oral paraesthesia · photosensitivity reaction · postural hypotension · vertigo

► **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain · angioedema · angle closure glaucoma · appetite decreased · arrhythmia · diarrhoea · dysarthria · hearing impairment · hypersensitivity · myocardial infarction · myopathy · nerve disorders · respiratory disorders · seizure · syncope · vomiting

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Avoid in women of child-bearing age unless using effective contraception.

● **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless essential—toxicity in animal studies (manufacturer of *Botox*® advise avoid).

● **BREAST FEEDING** Low risk of systemic absorption but avoid unless essential.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Preparations are not interchangeable.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and carers should be warned of the signs and symptoms of toxin spread, such as muscle weakness and breathing difficulties; they should be advised to seek immediate medical attention if swallowing, speech or breathing difficulties occur.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Botulinum toxin for muscle spasticity [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/botulinum-toxin-muscle-spasticity-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/botulinum-toxin-muscle-spasticity-0)

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder for solution for injection**

► **Azzalure** (Galderma (UK) Ltd)

**Botulinum toxin type A 125 unit** Azzalure 125unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £64.00 | 2 vial [PoM] £128.00

► **Bocouture** (Merz Pharma UK Ltd)

**Botulinum toxin type A 50 unit** Bocouture 50unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £72.00

**Botulinum toxin type A 100 unit** Bocouture 100unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £229.90

► **Botox** (Allergan Ltd)

**Botulinum toxin type A 50 unit** Botox 50unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £77.50

**Botulinum toxin type A 100 unit** Botox 100unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £138.20

**Botulinum toxin type A 200 unit** Botox 200unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £276.40

► **Dysport** (Ipsen Ltd)

**Botulinum toxin type A 300 unit** Dysport 300unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £92.40

**Botulinum toxin type A 500 unit** Dysport 500unit powder for solution for injection vials | 2 vial [PoM] £308.00

► **Xeomin** (Merz Pharma UK Ltd)

**Botulinum toxin type A 50 unit** Xeomin 50unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £72.00

**Botulinum toxin type A 100 unit** Xeomin 100unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £129.90

**Botulinum toxin type A 200 unit** Xeomin 200unit powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £259.80 (Hospital only)

## 4 Nausea and labyrinth disorders

### Nausea and labyrinth disorders

#### Drug treatment

Antiemetics should be prescribed only when the cause of vomiting is known because otherwise they may delay diagnosis, particularly in children. Antiemetics are unnecessary and sometimes harmful when the cause can be treated, such as in diabetic ketoacidosis, or in digoxin p. 81 or antiepileptic overdose.

If antiemetic drug treatment is indicated, the drug is chosen according to the aetiology of vomiting.

**Antihistamines** are effective against nausea and vomiting resulting from many underlying conditions. There is no evidence that any one antihistamine is superior to another but their duration of action and incidence of adverse effects (drowsiness and antimuscarinic effects) differ.

The **phenothiazines** are dopamine antagonists and act centrally by blocking the chemoreceptor trigger zone. They are of considerable value for the prophylaxis and treatment of nausea and vomiting associated with diffuse neoplastic disease, radiation sickness, and the emesis caused by drugs such as opioids, general anaesthetics, and cytotoxics. Prochlorperazine p. 268, perphenazine p. 246, and trifluoperazine p. 248 are less sedating than chlorpromazine hydrochloride p. 244; severe dystonic reactions sometimes occur with phenothiazines. Some phenothiazines are available as rectal suppositories, which can be useful in children with persistent vomiting or with severe nausea; for children over 12 years prochlorperazine can also be administered as a buccal tablet which is placed between the upper lip and the gum.

Other antipsychotic drugs including haloperidol p. 245 and levomepromazine p. 268 are used for the relief of nausea in palliative care.

Metoclopramide hydrochloride p. 262 is an effective antiemetic and its activity closely resembles that of the phenothiazines. Metoclopramide hydrochloride also acts directly on the gastro-intestinal tract and it may be superior to the phenothiazines for emesis associated with gastroduodenal, hepatic, and biliary disease. Due to the risk of neurological side effects, metoclopramide hydrochloride should only be used in children as second line therapy in postoperative and cytotoxic induced nausea and vomiting.

Domperidone p. 261 acts at the chemoreceptor trigger zone; it has the advantage over metoclopramide hydrochloride and the phenothiazines of being less likely to cause central effects such as sedation and dystonic reactions because it does not readily cross the blood-brain barrier.

Granisetron p. 264 and ondansetron p. 264 are specific 5HT<sub>3</sub>-receptor antagonists which block 5HT<sub>3</sub> receptors in the gastro-intestinal tract and in the CNS. They are of value in the management of nausea and vomiting in children receiving cytotoxics and in postoperative nausea and vomiting.

Aprepitant p. 263 is a neurokinin 1-receptor antagonist, licensed for the prevention of nausea and vomiting

associated with highly and moderately emetogenic cancer chemotherapy; it is given in combination with a 5HT<sub>3</sub>-receptor antagonist (with or without a corticosteroid).

Nabilone p. 261 is a synthetic cannabinoid with antiemetic properties. It may be used for nausea and vomiting caused by cytotoxic chemotherapy that is unresponsive to conventional antiemetics.

Dexamethasone p. 439 has antiemetic effects. Dexamethasone may also have a role in cytotoxic-induced nausea and vomiting.

### Vomiting during pregnancy

Nausea in the first trimester of pregnancy is generally mild and does not require drug therapy. On rare occasions if vomiting is severe, short-term treatment with an antihistamine, such as **promethazine**, may be required. Prochlorperazine or metoclopramide hydrochloride are alternatives. If symptoms do not settle in 24 to 48 hours then specialist opinion should be sought. Hyperemesis gravidarum is a more serious condition, which requires regular antiemetic therapy, intravenous fluid and electrolyte replacement and sometimes nutritional support. Supplementation with thiamine p. 628 must be considered in order to reduce the risk of Wernicke's encephalopathy.

### Postoperative nausea and vomiting

The incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting depends on many factors including the anaesthetic used, and the type and duration of surgery. Other risk factors include female sex, non-smokers, a history of postoperative nausea and vomiting or motion sickness, and intraoperative and postoperative use of opioids. Therapy to prevent postoperative nausea and vomiting should be based on the assessed risk. Drugs used include **5HT<sub>3</sub>-receptor antagonists**, droperidol p. 268, dexamethasone, some **phenothiazines** (e.g. prochlorperazine), and **antihistamines** (e.g. cyclizine below). A combination of two or more antiemetic drugs that have different mechanisms of action is often indicated in those at high risk of postoperative nausea and vomiting or where postoperative vomiting presents a particular danger (e.g. in some types of surgery). When a prophylactic antiemetic drug has failed, postoperative nausea and vomiting should be treated with one or more drugs from a different class.

### Opioid-induced nausea and vomiting

Cyclizine, ondansetron, and prochlorperazine are used to relieve opioid-induced nausea and vomiting; ondansetron has the advantage of not producing sedation.

### Motion sickness

Antiemetics should be given to prevent motion sickness rather than after nausea or vomiting develop. The most effective drug for the prevention of motion sickness is hyoscine hydrobromide p. 266. For children over 10 years old, a transdermal hyoscine patch provides prolonged activity but it needs to be applied several hours before travelling. The sedating antihistamines are slightly less effective against motion sickness, but are generally better tolerated than hyoscine. If a sedative effect is desired **promethazine** is useful, but generally a slightly less sedating antihistamine such as cyclizine or cinnarizine p. 265 is preferred. Domperidone, metoclopramide hydrochloride, 5HT<sub>3</sub>-receptor antagonists, and the phenothiazines (except the antihistamine phenothiazine promethazine) are **ineffective** in motion sickness.

### Other vestibular disorders

Management of vestibular diseases is aimed at treating the underlying cause as well as treating symptoms of the balance disturbance and associated nausea and vomiting.

**Antihistamines** (such as cinnarizine), and **phenothiazines**

(such as prochlorperazine) are effective for prophylaxis and treatment of nausea and vertigo resulting from vestibular disorders; however, when nausea and vertigo are associated with middle ear surgery, treatment can be difficult.

### Nausea caused by cytotoxic chemotherapy, palliative care, and migraine

Antiemetics have a role in the management of nausea and vomiting induced by cytotoxic chemotherapy, in palliative care, and associated with migraine.

#### Other drugs used for Nausea and labyrinth disorders

Promethazine hydrochloride, p. 180

## ANTIEMETICS AND ANTINAUSEANTS > ANTIHISTAMINES

### Cyclizine

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Nausea and vomiting of known cause | Nausea and vomiting associated with vestibular disorders and palliative care**

- ▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
  - ▶ Child 1 month–5 years: 0.5–1 mg/kg up to 3 times a day (max. per dose 25 mg), intravenous injection to be given over 3–5 minutes, for motion sickness, take 1–2 hours before departure
  - ▶ Child 6–11 years: 25 mg up to 3 times a day, intravenous injection to be given over 3–5 minutes, for motion sickness, take 1–2 hours before departure
  - ▶ Child 12–17 years: 50 mg up to 3 times a day, intravenous injection to be given over 3–5 minutes, for motion sickness, take 1–2 hours before departure
- ▶ BY RECTUM
  - ▶ Child 2–5 years: 12.5 mg up to 3 times a day
  - ▶ Child 6–11 years: 25 mg up to 3 times a day
  - ▶ Child 12–17 years: 50 mg up to 3 times a day
- ▶ BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION
  - ▶ Child 1–23 months: 3 mg/kg, dose to be given over 24 hours
  - ▶ Child 2–5 years: 50 mg, dose to be given over 24 hours
  - ▶ Child 6–11 years: 75 mg, dose to be given over 24 hours
  - ▶ Child 12–17 years: 150 mg, dose to be given over 24 hours

● **UNLICENSED USE** Tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years. Injection not licensed for use in children.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Neonate (due to significant antimuscarinic activity)

● **CAUTIONS** Epilepsy · glaucoma · may counteract haemodynamic benefits of opioids · neuromuscular disorders—increased risk of transient paralysis with intravenous use · pyloroduodenal obstruction · severe heart failure—may cause fall in cardiac output and associated increase in heart rate, mean arterial pressure and pulmonary wedge pressure · urinary retention

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, sedating

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angle closure glaucoma · depression
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain · agranulocytosis · angioedema · anxiety · apnoea · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · asthenia · bronchospasm · constipation · diarrhoea · disorientation · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dry throat · euphoric mood · haemolytic anaemia · hallucinations · headache · hepatic disorders · hypertension · hypotension · increased gastric reflux · insomnia · leucopenia · movement disorders · muscle

complaints · nasal dryness · nausea · oculogyric crisis · palpitations · paraesthesia · photosensitivity reaction · seizure · skin reactions · speech disorder · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus · tremor · urinary retention · vision blurred · vomiting

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Rare or very rare**
- ▶ With oral use Agitation (more common at high doses)
- ▶ **Frequency not known**
- ▶ With oral use Level of consciousness decreased
- ▶ With parenteral use Chills · consciousness impaired · pain · paralysis · sensation of pressure · thrombophlebitis
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity. The use of sedating antihistamines in the latter part of the third trimester may cause adverse effects in neonates such as irritability, paradoxical excitability, and tremor.
- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available. Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe liver disease—increased risk of coma.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For administration by mouth, tablets may be crushed. Mixing and compatibility for the use of syringe drivers in palliative care Cyclizine may precipitate at concentrations above 10 mg/mL or in the presence of sodium chloride 0.9% or as the concentration of diamorphine relative to cyclizine increases; mixtures of diamorphine and cyclizine are also likely to precipitate after 24 hours.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling, driving); effects of alcohol enhanced.
- **MEDICINAL FORMS**  
 There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, suppository  
**Tablet**  
 CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2  
 ▶ **Cyclizine (Non-proprietary)**  
 Cyclizine hydrochloride 50 mg Cyclizine 50mg tablets | 30 tablet [P] £2.24-£5.00 | 100 tablet [P] £13.64 DT = £7.47  
**Solution for injection**  
 ▶ **Cyclizine (Non-proprietary)**  
 Cyclizine lactate 50 mg per 1 mL Cyclizine 50mg/1mL solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £13.54 DT = £13.54

### ANTIEMETICS AND ANTINAUSEANTS > CANNABINOIDS

#### Nabilone

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Nausea and vomiting caused by cytotoxic chemotherapy, unresponsive to conventional antiemetics (preferably in hospital setting) (under close medical supervision)**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CAUTIONS** Adverse effects on mental state can persist for 48–72 hours after stopping · heart disease · history of psychiatric disorder · hypertension
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: nabilone
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain · appetite decreased · concentration impaired · confusion · depression · dizziness

· drowsiness · drug use disorders · dry mouth · euphoric mood · feeling of relaxation · hallucination · headache · hypotension · movement disorders · nausea · psychosis · sleep disorder · tachycardia · tremor · vertigo · visual impairment

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Drowsiness and dizziness occur frequently with standard doses.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless essential.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
**Behavioural effects** Patients should be made aware of possible changes of mood and other adverse behavioural effects.  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).  
 Effects of alcohol enhanced.  
 For information on 2015 legislation regarding driving whilst taking certain controlled drugs, including nabilone, see *Drugs and skilled tasks* under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ▶ Nabilone (Non-proprietary)

**Nabilone 250 microgram** Nabilone 250microgram capsules | 20 capsule [PoM] £150.00 DT = £150.00 [CD2]  
**Nabilone 1 mg** Nabilone 1mg capsules | 20 capsule [PoM] £196.00 DT = £196.00 [CD2]

### ANTIEMETICS AND ANTINAUSEANTS > DOPAMINE RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS

#### Domperidone

17-Oct-2016

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Relief of nausea and vomiting

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 35 kg): 250 micrograms/kg up to 3 times a day; maximum 750 micrograms/kg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight 35 kg and above): 10 mg up to 3 times a day; maximum 30 mg per day

#### Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (but efficacy not proven)

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Neonate: 250 micrograms/kg 3 times a day, dose can be increased if response inadequate, increased if necessary up to 400 micrograms/kg 3 times a day, interrupt treatment occasionally to assess recurrence—consider restarting if symptoms recur, discontinue if response inadequate at higher dose.
- ▶ Child: 250 micrograms/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 10 mg), dose can be increased if response inadequate, increased if necessary up to 400 micrograms/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 20 mg), interrupt treatment occasionally to assess recurrence—consider restarting if symptoms recur, discontinue if response inadequate at higher dose



- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for gastro-oesophageal reflux disease.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE—DOMPERIDONE: RISK OF CARDIAC SIDE-EFFECTS—RESTRICTED INDICATION, NEW CONTRA-INDICATIONS, REDUCED DOSE AND DURATION OF USE

The benefits and risks of domperidone have been reviewed. As domperidone is associated with a small increased risk of serious cardiac side-effects, the following restrictions to indication, dose and duration of treatment have been made, and new contra-indications added:

- Domperidone should only be used for the relief of the symptoms of nausea and vomiting;
  - Domperidone should be used at the lowest effective dose for the shortest possible duration (max. treatment duration should not normally exceed 1 week);
  - Domperidone is contra-indicated for use in conditions where cardiac conduction is, or could be impaired, or where there is underlying cardiac disease, when administered concomitantly with drugs that prolong the QT interval or potent CYP3A4 inhibitors, and in severe hepatic impairment;
  - The recommended dose in adults and adolescents over 12 years and over 35 kg is 10 mg up to 3 times daily;
  - The recommended dose in children under 35 kg is 250 micrograms/kg up to 3 times daily;
  - Oral liquid formulations should be given via an appropriately designed, graduated oral syringe to ensure dose accuracy.
- This advice does not apply to unlicensed uses of domperidone (e.g. palliative care).

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Cardiac disease · gastro-intestinal haemorrhage · mechanical obstruction · mechanical perforation · predisposition to cardiac conduction disorders · prolactinoma
- **CAUTIONS** Children · if there are cardiac concerns, obtain ECG before and during treatment
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: domperidone
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Dry mouth
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Anxiety · asthenia · breast abnormalities · diarrhoea · drowsiness · headache · lactation disorders · libido loss
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Arrhythmias · depression · gynaecomastia · menstrual cycle irregularities · movement disorders · oculogyric crisis · QT interval prolongation · seizure · sudden cardiac death · urinary retention
- **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in moderate or severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments Reduce frequency.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Arrhythmia Patients and their carers should be told how to recognise signs of arrhythmia and advised to seek medical attention if symptoms such as palpitation or syncope develop.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Domperidone for gastro-oesophageal reflux [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/domperidone-for-gastro-oesophageal-reflux](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/domperidone-for-gastro-oesophageal-reflux)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 22

- ▶ **Domperidone (non-proprietary)** ▼

**Domperidone 1 mg per 1 ml** Domperidone 1mg/ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 200 ml [PoM] £13.43 DT = £13.43

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 22

- ▶ **Domperidone (non-proprietary)** ▼

**Domperidone (as Domperidone maleate) 10 mg** Domperidone 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £2.71 DT = £0.79 | 100 tablet [PoM] £9.04 DT = £2.63

- ▶ **Motilium** (Zentiva) ▼

**Domperidone (as Domperidone maleate) 10 mg** Motilium 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £2.71 DT = £0.79 | 100 tablet [PoM] £9.04 DT = £2.63

## Metoclopramide hydrochloride

21-Nov-2016

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Second-line option for treatment of established postoperative nausea and vomiting | Prevention of delayed chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting**

- ▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ **Child:** 100–150 micrograms/kg up to 3 times a day (max. per dose 10 mg), when administered by slow intravenous injection, to be given over at least 3 minutes

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Maxolon*® tablets not licensed for use in children.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE—METOCLOPRAMIDE: RISK OF NEUROLOGICAL ADVERSE EFFECTS—RESTRICTED DOSE AND DURATION OF USE (AUGUST 2013)

The benefits and risks of metoclopramide have been reviewed by the European Medicines Agency's Committee on Medicinal Products for Human Use, which concluded that the risk of neurological effects such as extrapyramidal disorders and tardive dyskinesia outweigh the benefits in long-term or high-dose treatment. To help minimise the risk of potentially serious neurological adverse effects, the following restrictions to indications, dose and duration of use have been made:

- In children aged 1–18 years, metoclopramide should only be used as a second-line option for prevention of delayed chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting and for treatment of established postoperative nausea and vomiting;
- Use of metoclopramide is contra-indicated in children aged under 1 year;
- Metoclopramide should only be prescribed for short-term use (up to 5 days);
- Recommended dose is 100–150 micrograms/kg (max. 10 mg), repeated up to 3 times daily;
- Intravenous doses should be administered as a slow bolus over at least 3 minutes;
- Oral liquid formulations should be given via an appropriately designed, graduated oral syringe to ensure dose accuracy.

This advice does not apply to unlicensed uses of metoclopramide (e.g. palliative care).

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** 3–4 days after gastrointestinal surgery · gastro-intestinal haemorrhage · gastro-intestinal obstruction · gastro-intestinal perforation · phaeochromocytoma

- **CAUTIONS** Asthma · atopic allergy · bradycardia · cardiac conduction disturbances · epilepsy · may mask underlying disorders such as cerebral irritation · uncorrected electrolyte imbalance

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: metoclopramide

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Asthenia · depression · diarrhoea · drowsiness · hypotension · menstrual cycle irregularities · movement disorders · parkinsonism
- **Uncommon** Arrhythmias · hallucination · hyperprolactinaemia · level of consciousness decreased
- **Rare or very rare** Confusion · galactorrhoea · seizure
- **Frequency not known** Atrioventricular block · blood disorders · cardiac arrest · gynaecomastia · hypertension · neuroleptic malignant syndrome · QT interval prolongation · shock · syncope

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Frequency not known**
- With parenteral use Anxiety · dizziness · dyspnoea · oedema · skin reactions · tremor · visual impairment

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Metoclopramide can induce acute dystonic reactions involving facial and skeletal muscle spasms and oculogyric crises. These dystonic effects are more common in the young, especially girls and young women; they usually occur shortly after starting treatment with metoclopramide and subside within 24 hours of stopping it. Use of an antimuscarinic drug such as procyclidine will abort dystonic attacks.

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Small amount present in milk; avoid.

#### ● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.

#### ● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Avoid or use small dose in severe impairment; increased risk of extrapyramidal reactions.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Oral liquid preparation to be given via a graduated oral dosing syringe.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Counselling on use of pipette advised with oral solution.

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

##### **Solution for injection**

- **Metoclopramide hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Metoclopramide hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml** Metoclopramide 10mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £1.31 | 10 ampoule [PoM] £3.30 DT = £3.30

- **Maxolon (AMCo)**

**Metoclopramide hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml** Maxolon 10mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 12 ampoule [PoM] £3.21  
Maxolon High Dose 100mg/20ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £26.68

##### **Oral solution**

- **Metoclopramide hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Metoclopramide hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml** Metoclopramide 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £19.77 DT = £19.77

##### **Tablet**

- **Metoclopramide hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Metoclopramide hydrochloride 10 mg** Metoclopramide 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.40 DT = £0.33

- **Maxolon (AMCo)**

**Metoclopramide hydrochloride 10 mg** Maxolon 10mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £5.24

## ANTIEMETICS AND ANTINAUSEANTS > NEUROKININ RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS

### Aprepitant

13-Sep-2017

#### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Adjunct treatment to prevent nausea and vomiting associated with moderately and highly emetogenic chemotherapy**

- **BY MOUTH**

- Child 6 months–11 years (body-weight 6 kg and above): (consult product literature)
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 125 mg, dose to be taken 1 hour before chemotherapy, then 80 mg once daily for 2 days, dose to be taken 1 hour before chemotherapy or in the morning if no chemotherapy is given, consult product literature for dose of concomitant 5HT<sub>3</sub>-antagonist (and corticosteroid if required)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aprepitant

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · asthenia · constipation · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hiccups
- **Uncommon** Anaemia · anxiety · burping · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · febrile neutropenia · gastrointestinal disorders · hot flush · malaise · nausea · palpitations · skin reactions · urinary disorders · vomiting
- **Rare or very rare** Bradycardia · cardiovascular disorder · chest discomfort · cognitive disorder · conjunctivitis · cough · disorientation · euphoric mood · gait abnormal · hyperhidrosis · increased risk of infection · muscle spasms · muscle weakness · oedema · oropharyngeal pain · photosensitivity reaction · polydipsia · seborrhoea · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · sneezing · stomatitis · taste altered · throat irritation · tinnitus · weight decreased
- **Frequency not known** Dysarthria · dyspnoea · insomnia · miosis · sensation abnormal · visual acuity decreased · wheezing

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effectiveness of hormonal contraceptives may be reduced—alternative non-hormonal methods of contraception necessary during treatment and for 2 months after stopping aprepitant.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless clearly necessary—no information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in moderate-to-severe impairment—limited information available.

#### ● **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

##### **Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (June 2017) that aprepitant (*Emend*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland as part of combination therapy, for the prevention of nausea and vomiting associated with moderately emetogenic cancer chemotherapy in infants, toddlers and children from the age of six months to less than 12 years (powder for oral suspension) and adolescents from the age of 12 years to 17 years (hard capsules).

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (July 2017) that aprepitant (*Emend*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland as part of combination therapy, for the prevention of nausea and vomiting associated with highly emetogenic cancer chemotherapy in children from the age of six months to under 12 years (powder for oral

suspension), and adolescents from the age of 12 years to 17 years (hard capsules).

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Powder

► **Emend** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Aprepitant 125 mg** Emend 125mg oral powder sachets | 1 sachet [PoM] £15.81

#### Capsule

► **Emend** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Aprepitant 80 mg** Emend 80mg capsules | 2 capsule [PoM] £31.61

**Aprepitant 125 mg** Emend 125mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM] £79.03

## ANTIEMETICS AND ANTINAUSEANTS > SEROTONIN (5HT<sub>3</sub>) RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS

### Granisetron

- **DRUG ACTION** Granisetron is a specific 5HT<sub>3</sub>-receptor antagonist which blocks 5HT<sub>3</sub> receptors in the gastro-intestinal tract and in the CNS.

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Management of nausea and vomiting induced by cytotoxic chemotherapy**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 1–2 mg, to be taken within 1 hour before start of treatment, then 2 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses for up to 1 week following chemotherapy

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 2–17 years: 10–40 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 3 mg), repeated if necessary, to be given before start of chemotherapy, for treatment, dose may be repeated within 24 hours if necessary, not less than 10 minutes after initial dose; maximum 2 doses per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Tablets not licensed in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).
- **CAUTIONS** Subacute intestinal obstruction · susceptibility to QT-interval prolongation (including electrolyte disturbances)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: granisetron
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Constipation · diarrhoea · headache · insomnia
  - **Uncommon** Extrapryamidal symptoms · QT interval prolongation · serotonin syndrome
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute up to 3 mL of granisetron injection in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a total volume of 10–30 mL; give over 5 minutes.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

► **Granisetron** (Non-proprietary)

**Granisetron** (as Granisetron hydrochloride) 1 mg per

1 mL Granisetron 3mg/3mL concentrate for solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £24.00

Granisetron 1mg/1mL concentrate for solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £8.00

### Tablet

► **Granisetron** (Non-proprietary)

**Granisetron** (as Granisetron hydrochloride) 1 mg Granisetron 1mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £51.20 DT = £40.79

**Granisetron** (as Granisetron hydrochloride) 2 mg Granisetron 2mg tablets | 5 tablet [PoM] DT = £52.39

► **Kytril** (Atrahs Pharma UK Ltd)

**Granisetron** (as Granisetron hydrochloride) 1 mg Kytril 1mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £52.39 DT = £52.39

**Granisetron** (as Granisetron hydrochloride) 2 mg Kytril 2mg tablets | 5 tablet [PoM] £52.39 DT = £52.39

## Ondansetron

- **DRUG ACTION** Ondansetron is a specific 5HT<sub>3</sub>-receptor antagonist which blocks 5HT<sub>3</sub> receptors in the gastro-intestinal tract and in the CNS.

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting**

##### ► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 4 mg) for 1 dose, dose to be given over at least 30 seconds before, during, or after induction of anaesthesia

**Treatment of postoperative nausea and vomiting**

##### ► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 4 mg) for 1 dose, dose to be given over at least 30 seconds

**Prevention and treatment of chemotherapy- and radiotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting—initial dose**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 6 months–17 years (body surface area up to 1.3 m<sup>2</sup>): 5 mg/m<sup>2</sup> for 1 dose then give orally, alternatively 150 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 8 mg), dose to be administered immediately before chemotherapy, then 150 micrograms/kg every 4 hours (max. per dose 8 mg) for 2 further doses then give orally; maximum 32 mg per day
- Child 6 months–17 years (body surface area 1.3 m<sup>2</sup> and above): 8 mg for 1 dose then give orally, alternatively 150 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 8 mg), dose to be administered immediately before chemotherapy, then 150 micrograms/kg every 4 hours (max. per dose 8 mg) for 2 further doses then give orally, intravenous infusion to be administered over at least 15 minutes; maximum 32 mg per day

**Prevention and treatment of chemotherapy- and radiotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting—(follow-on dose based on body surface area)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6 months–17 years (body surface area up to 0.6 m<sup>2</sup>): 2 mg every 12 hours for up to 5 days (dose can be started 12 hours after intravenous administration); maximum 32 mg per day
- Child 6 months–17 years (body surface area 0.6–1.2 m<sup>2</sup>): 4 mg every 12 hours for up to 5 days (dose can be started 12 hours after intravenous administration); maximum 32 mg per day
- Child 6 months–17 years (body surface area 1.3 m<sup>2</sup> and above): 8 mg every 12 hours for up to 5 days (dose can be started 12 hours after intravenous administration); maximum 32 mg per day

**Prevention and treatment of chemotherapy- and radiotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting—(follow-on dose based on body-weight)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight up to 10.1 kg): 2 mg every 12 hours for up to 5 days (dose can be started 12 hours after intravenous administration); maximum 32 mg per day

- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight 10.1–40 kg): 4 mg every 12 hours for up to 5 days (dose can be started 12 hours after intravenous administration); maximum 32 mg per day
- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight 41 kg and above): 8 mg every 12 hours for up to 5 days (dose can be started 12 hours after intravenous administration); maximum 32 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for radiotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Congenital long QT syndrome
- **CAUTIONS** Adenotonsillar surgery · subacute intestinal obstruction · susceptibility to QT-interval prolongation (including electrolyte disturbances)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ondansetron
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Constipation · feeling hot · headache · sensation abnormal
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Arrhythmias · chest pain · hiccups · hypotension · movement disorders · oculogyric crisis · seizure
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Dizziness · QT interval prolongation · vision disorders
- **PREGNANCY** No information available; avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in *animal* studies—avoid.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments** Reduce dose in moderate or severe impairment.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 320–640 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over at least 15 minutes.
  - ▶ With oral use Orodispersible films and lyophilisates should be placed on the tongue, allowed to disperse and swallowed.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include strawberry.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer orodispersible films and lyophilisates.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

- ▶ **Ondansetron (Non-proprietary)**  
Ondansetron (as Ondansetron hydrochloride) 4 mg Ondansetron 4mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £0.81–£25.46 DT = £0.62 | 30 tablet [PoM] £1.86–£76.38  
Ondansetron (as Ondansetron hydrochloride) 8 mg Ondansetron 8mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £47.99 DT = £1.73
- ▶ **Ondemet** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Ondansetron (as Ondansetron hydrochloride) 4 mg Ondemet 4mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £81.15  
Ondansetron (as Ondansetron hydrochloride) 8 mg Ondemet 8mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £54.36 DT = £1.73 (Hospital only)
- ▶ **Zofran** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
Ondansetron (as Ondansetron hydrochloride) 4 mg Zofran 4mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £107.91  
Ondansetron (as Ondansetron hydrochloride) 8 mg Zofran 8mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £71.94 DT = £1.73

#### Suppository

- ▶ **Zofran** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
Ondansetron 16 mg Zofran 16mg suppositories | 1 suppository [PoM] £14.39

#### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Ondansetron (Non-proprietary)**  
Ondansetron (as Ondansetron hydrochloride) 2 mg per 1 ml Ondansetron 8mg/4ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £2.00–£58.45 DT = £59.95

Ondansetron 4mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £1.50–£29.97 DT = £29.97 | 10 ampoule [PoM] £7.50 DT = £7.50

- ▶ **Zofran Flexi-amp** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
Ondansetron (as Ondansetron hydrochloride) 2 mg per 1 ml Zofran Flexi-amp 8mg/4ml solution for injection | 5 ampoule [PoM] £59.95 DT = £59.95  
Zofran Flexi-amp 4mg/2ml solution for injection | 5 ampoule [PoM] £29.97 DT = £29.97

#### Oral solution

- ▶ **Ondansetron (Non-proprietary)**  
Ondansetron (as Ondansetron hydrochloride) 800 microgram per 1 ml Ondansetron 4mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 50 ml [PoM] £38.22 DT = £38.21
- ▶ **Zofran** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
Ondansetron (as Ondansetron hydrochloride) 800 microgram per 1 ml Zofran 4mg/5ml syrup sugar-free | 50 ml [PoM] £35.97 DT = £38.21

#### Orodispersible film

- ▶ **Setofilm** (Norgine Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Ondansetron 4 mg Setofilm 4mg orodispersible films sugar-free | 10 film [PoM] £28.50  
Ondansetron 8 mg Setofilm 8mg orodispersible films sugar-free | 10 film [PoM] £57.00

#### Oral lyophilisate

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

- ▶ **Zofran Melt** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
Ondansetron 4 mg Zofran Melt 4mg oral lyophilisates sugar-free | 10 tablet [PoM] £35.97 DT = £35.97  
Ondansetron 8 mg Zofran Melt 8mg oral lyophilisates sugar-free | 10 tablet [PoM] £71.94 DT = £71.94

#### Orodispersible tablet

- ▶ **Ondansetron (Non-proprietary)**  
Ondansetron 4 mg Ondansetron 4mg orodispersible tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £43.46 DT = £43.46  
Ondansetron 8 mg Ondansetron 8mg orodispersible tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £85.43 DT = £85.43

## ANTIHISTAMINES > SEDATING

### Cinnarizine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Relief of symptoms of vestibular disorders, such as vertigo, tinnitus, nausea, and vomiting in Ménière's disease**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
  - ▶ Child 5–11 years: 15 mg 3 times a day
  - ▶ Child 12–17 years: 30 mg 3 times a day

#### Motion sickness

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
  - ▶ Child 5–11 years: Initially 15 mg, dose to be taken 2 hours before travel, then 7.5 mg every 8 hours if required, dose to be taken during journey
  - ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 30 mg, dose to be taken 2 hours before travel, then 15 mg every 8 hours if required, dose to be taken during journey

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 · neonate (due to significant antimuscarinic activity)
- **CAUTIONS** Epilepsy · glaucoma · pyloroduodenal obstruction · urinary retention
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, sedating
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Drowsiness · gastrointestinal discomfort · nausea · weight increased
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Fatigue · hyperhidrosis · vomiting
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Dry mouth · gastrointestinal disorder · headache · jaundice cholestatic · movement disorders · muscle rigidity · parkinsonism · skin reactions · subacute cutaneous lupus erythematosus · tremor
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity. The use of sedating antihistamines in the latter part of the third trimester may

cause adverse effects in neonates such as irritability, paradoxical excitability, and tremor.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe liver disease—increased risk of coma.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution—no information available.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling, driving); sedating effects enhanced by alcohol.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ► Cinnarizine (Non-proprietary)

Cinnarizine 15 mg Cinnarizine 15mg tablets | 84 tablet [P] £15.40 DT = £5.29

##### ► Stugeron (McNeil Products Ltd, Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

Cinnarizine 15 mg Stugeron 15mg tablets | 15 tablet [P] £2.21 | 100 tablet [P] £4.18

## Promethazine teoclate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Nausea | Vomiting | Labyrinthine disorders**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 5–9 years: 12.5–37.5 mg daily
- Child 10–17 years: 25–75 mg daily; maximum 100 mg per day

**Motion sickness prevention (acts longer than promethazine hydrochloride)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 5–9 years: 12.5 mg once daily, dose to be taken at bedtime on night before travel or 1–2 hours before travel
- Child 10–17 years: 25 mg once daily, dose to be taken at bedtime on night before travel or 1–2 hours before travel

**Motion sickness treatment (acts longer than promethazine hydrochloride)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 5–9 years: 12.5 mg, dose to be taken at onset of motion sickness, then 12.5 mg daily for 2 days, dose to be taken at bedtime
- Child 10–17 years: 25 mg, dose to be taken at onset of motion sickness, then 25 mg once daily for 2 days, dose to be taken at bedtime

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

**MHRA/CHM ADVICE (MARCH 2008 AND FEBRUARY 2009) OVER-THE-COUNTER COUGH AND COLD MEDICINES FOR CHILDREN**  
Children under 6 years should not be given over-the-counter cough and cold medicines containing promethazine.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Neonate (due to significant antimuscarinic activity) · should not be given to children under 2 years, except on specialist advice, because the safety of such use has not been established
- **CAUTIONS** Asthma · bronchiectasis · bronchitis · epilepsy · pyloroduodenal obstruction · Reye's syndrome · severe coronary artery disease · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · urinary retention

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, sedating
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Anticholinergic syndrome · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmia · blood disorder · bronchial secretion viscosity increased · confusion · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · epigastric discomfort · fatigue · haemolytic anaemia · headache · hypotension · jaundice · movement disorders · muscle spasms · nightmare · palpitations · photosensitivity reaction · urinary retention · vision blurred
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Paradoxical stimulation may occur, especially with high doses.
- **PREGNANCY** Most manufacturers of antihistamines advise avoiding their use during pregnancy; however, there is no evidence of teratogenicity. Use in the latter part of the third trimester may cause adverse effects in neonates such as irritability, paradoxical excitability, and tremor.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Most antihistamines are present in breast milk in varying amounts; although not known to be harmful, most manufacturers advise avoiding their use in mothers who are breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe liver disease—increased risk of coma.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving); sedating effects enhanced by alcohol.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ► Avomine (Manx Healthcare Ltd)

Promethazine teoclate 25 mg Avomine 25mg tablets | 10 tablet [P] £1.13 | 28 tablet [P] £3.13 DT = £3.13

## ANTIMUSCARINICS

489

## Hyoscine hydrobromide (Scopolamine hydrobromide)

17-Oct-2016

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Motion sickness**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 4–9 years: 75–150 micrograms, dose to be taken up to 30 minutes before the start of journey, then 75–150 micrograms every 6 hours if required; maximum 450 micrograms per day
- Child 10–17 years: 150–300 micrograms, dose to be taken up to 30 minutes before the start of journey, then 150–300 micrograms every 6 hours if required; maximum 900 micrograms per day

##### ► BY TRANSDERMAL APPLICATION

- Child 10–17 years: Apply 1 patch, apply behind ear 5–6 hours before journey, then apply 1 patch after 72 hours if required, remove old patch and site replacement patch behind the other ear

**Hypersalivation associated with clozapine therapy**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 300 micrograms up to 3 times a day; maximum 900 micrograms per day

**Excessive respiratory secretions**

##### ► BY MOUTH, OR BY SUBLINGUAL ADMINISTRATION

- Child 2–11 years: 10 micrograms/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 300 micrograms)
- Child 12–17 years: 300 micrograms 4 times a day



## ► BY TRANSDERMAL APPLICATION

- Child 1 month–2 years: 250 micrograms every 72 hours, dose equates to a quarter patch
- Child 3–9 years: 500 micrograms every 72 hours, dose equates to a half patch
- Child 10–17 years: 1 mg every 72 hours, dose equates to one patch

**Excessive respiratory secretion (in palliative care)**

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child: 10 micrograms/kg every 4–8 hours (max. per dose 600 micrograms)
- BY CONTINUOUS SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: 40–60 micrograms/kg over 24 hours

**Bowel colic pain in palliative care**

- BY MOUTH USING SUBLINGUAL TABLETS
- Child: 10 micrograms/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 300 micrograms), as *Kwells*®.

**Premedication**

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 1–11 years: 15 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 600 micrograms), to be administered 30–60 minutes before induction of anaesthesia
- Child 12–17 years: 200–600 micrograms, to be administered 30–60 minutes before induction of anaesthesia
- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child 1–11 years: 15 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 600 micrograms), to be administered immediately before induction of anaesthesia
- Child 12–17 years: 200–600 micrograms, to be administered immediately before induction of anaesthesia

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in excessive respiratory secretions or hypersalivation associated with clozapine therapy.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

Antimuscarinic drugs used for premedication to general anaesthesia should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use.

- **CAUTIONS** Epilepsy

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- Anticholinergic syndrome
- With systemic use In some children hyoscine may cause the central anticholinergic syndrome (excitement, ataxia, hallucinations, behavioural abnormalities, and drowsiness).

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: hyoscine

**SIDE-EFFECTS****GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Skin reactions

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common**
- With transdermal use Eye disorders · eyelid irritation · myopia
- **Rare or very rare**
- With transdermal use Concentration impaired · disorientation · glaucoma · hallucinations · memory loss · restlessness
- **Frequency not known**
- With oral use Asthma · cardiovascular disorders · central nervous system stimulation · gastrointestinal disorder · hallucination · hypersensitivity · hyperthermia · hypohidrosis · mydriasis · oedema · respiratory tract reaction · restlessness · sedation · seizure

- With parenteral use Agitation · angle closure glaucoma · arrhythmias · delirium · dysphagia · dyspnoea · epilepsy exacerbated · hallucination · hypersensitivity · idiosyncratic drug reaction · loss of consciousness · mydriasis · neuroleptic malignant syndrome · photophobia · psychotic disorder · thirst
- With transdermal use Balance impaired

- **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk. Injection may depress neonatal respiration.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

**DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- With transdermal use *Patch* applied to hairless area of skin behind ear; if less than whole patch required **either** cut with scissors along full thickness ensuring membrane is not peeled away **or** cover portion to prevent contact with skin.
- With oral use For administration by *mouth*, injection solution may be given orally.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of chewable tablet formulations may include raspberry.
- Palliative care** For further information on the use of hyoscine hydrobromide in palliative care, see [www.palliativedrugs.com/formulary/en/hyoscine-hydrobromide.html](http://www.palliativedrugs.com/formulary/en/hyoscine-hydrobromide.html).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**
- With transdermal use Explain accompanying instructions to patient and in particular emphasise advice to wash hands after handling and to wash application site after removing, and to use one patch at a time.
- Driving and skilled tasks** ► With transdermal use Drowsiness may persist for up to 24 hours or longer after removal of patch; effects of alcohol enhanced.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Tablet****CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2**

- **Hyoscine hydrobromide (Non-proprietary)**  
**Hyoscine hydrobromide 300 microgram** Hyoscine hydrobromide 300microgram tablets | 12 tablet [P] [S] DT = £1.67
- **Kwells** (Bayer Plc)  
**Hyoscine hydrobromide 150 microgram** Kwells Kids 150microgram tablets | 12 tablet [P] £1.67 DT = £1.67  
**Hyoscine hydrobromide 300 microgram** Kwells 300microgram tablets | 12 tablet [P] £1.67 DT = £1.67
- **Travel Calm** (The Boots Company Plc)  
**Hyoscine hydrobromide 300 microgram** Travel Calm 300microgram tablets | 12 tablet [P] [S] DT = £1.67

**Solution for injection**

- **Hyoscine hydrobromide (Non-proprietary)**  
**Hyoscine hydrobromide 400 microgram per 1 ml** Hyoscine hydrobromide 400micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £25.00-£47.21 DT = £47.21  
**Hyoscine hydrobromide 600 microgram per 1 ml** Hyoscine hydrobromide 600micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £53.93 DT = £53.93

**Transdermal patch****CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 19**

- **Scopoderm** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)  
**Hyoscine 1 mg per 72 hour** Scopoderm 1.5mg patches | 2 patch [P] £12.87 DT = £12.87

**Chewable tablet****CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 24**

- **Joy-Rides** (Forest Laboratories UK Ltd)  
**Hyoscine hydrobromide 150 microgram** Joy-rides 150microgram chewable tablets sugar-free | 12 tablet [P] £1.55

## ANTIPSYCHOTICS &gt; FIRST-GENERATION

F 244

## Droperidol

- **DRUG ACTION** Droperidol is a butyrophenone, structurally related to haloperidol, which blocks dopamine receptors in the chemoreceptor trigger zone.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Prevention and treatment of postoperative nausea and vomiting**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 20–50 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 1.25 mg), dose to be given 30 minutes before end of surgery, then 20–50 micrograms/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 1.25 mg) if required
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Bradycardia · CNS depression · comatose states · hypokalaemia · hypomagnesaemia · phaeochromocytoma · QT-interval prolongation
- **CAUTIONS** Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease · electrolyte disturbances · history of alcohol abuse · respiratory failure
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: droperidol
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Anxiety · oculogyration
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Arrhythmia · blood disorder · cardiac arrest · dysphoria · movement disorders
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Coma · epilepsy · hallucination · oligomenorrhoea · respiratory disorders · SIADH · syncope
- **BREAST FEEDING** Limited information available—avoid repeated administration.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments** In postoperative nausea and vomiting, max. 625 micrograms repeated every 6 hours as required.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments** In postoperative nausea and vomiting, max. 625 micrograms repeated every 6 hours as required.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Continuous pulse oximetry required if risk of ventricular arrhythmia—continue for 30 minutes following administration.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for injection**

- ▶ **Droperidol (Non-proprietary)**  
Droperidol 2.5 mg per 1 ml Droperidol 2.5mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £5
- ▶ **Xomolix** (Kyowa Kirin Ltd)  
Droperidol 2.5 mg per 1 ml Xomolix 2.5mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £39.40

F 244

## Levomepromazine

12-Dec-2016

## (Methotrimeprazine)

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Restlessness and confusion in palliative care**

- ▶ BY CONTINUOUS SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child 1–11 years: 0.35–3 mg/kg, to be administered over 24 hours
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 12.5–200 mg, to be administered over 24 hours

**Nausea and vomiting in palliative care**

- ▶ BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 100–400 micrograms/kg, to be administered over 24 hours
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 5–25 mg, to be administered over 24 hours

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** CNS depression · comatose states · phaeochromocytoma
- **CAUTIONS** Patients receiving large initial doses should remain supine
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: phenothiazines
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Asthenia · heat stroke
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Arrhythmia · cardiac arrest · hepatic disorders
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Allergic dermatitis · delirium · gastrointestinal disorders · glucose tolerance impaired · hyponatraemia · photosensitivity reaction · priapism · SIADH · sudden cardiac death
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Can precipitate coma; phenothiazines are hepatotoxic.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments** Start with small doses in severe renal impairment because of increased cerebral sensitivity.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For administration by *subcutaneous infusion* dilute with a suitable volume of Sodium Chloride 0.9%.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**
  - Palliative care** For further information on the use of levomepromazine in palliative care, see [www.palliativedrugs.com/formulary/en/levomepromazine.html](http://www.palliativedrugs.com/formulary/en/levomepromazine.html).

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for injection**

- ▶ **Levomepromazine (Non-proprietary)**  
Levomepromazine hydrochloride 25 mg per 1 ml Levomepromazine 25mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £20.13 DT = £20.13
- ▶ **Nozinan** (Sanofi)  
Levomepromazine hydrochloride 25 mg per 1 ml Nozinan 25mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £20.13 DT = £20.13

F 244

## Prochlorperazine

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Prevention and treatment of nausea and vomiting**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 1–11 years (body-weight 10 kg and above): 250 micrograms/kg 2–3 times a day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 5–10 mg up to 3 times a day if required
- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 2–4 years: 1.25–2.5 mg up to 3 times a day if required
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 5–6.25 mg up to 3 times a day if required
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 12.5 mg up to 3 times a day if required

**Nausea and vomiting in previously diagnosed migraine**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING BUCCAL TABLET
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 3–6 mg twice daily, tablets to be placed high between upper lip and gum and left to dissolve

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- ▶ Doses are expressed as prochlorperazine maleate or mesilate; 1 mg prochlorperazine maleate = 1 mg prochlorperazine mesilate.

● **UNLICENSED USE**

- ▶ With intramuscular use Injection not licensed for use in children.
- ▶ With buccal use *Buccastem M*® tablets not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid oral route in child under 10 kg · children (in psychotic disorders) · CNS depression · comatose states · phaeochromocytoma

- **CAUTIONS** Hypotension (more likely after intramuscular injection)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: phenothiazines

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Rare or very rare** Glucose tolerance impaired · hyponatraemia · SIADH
  - **Frequency not known** Photosensitivity reaction
  - SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Rare or very rare**
    - With buccal use Blood disorder · hepatic disorders
    - **Frequency not known**
      - With buccal use Ejaculation disorder · extrapyramidal symptoms · oral disorders · postural hypotension · skin eruption · thromboembolism
      - With intramuscular use Akinesia · arrhythmias · atrioventricular block · cardiac arrest · eye disorders · jaundice · muscle rigidity · nasal congestion · postural hypotension · respiratory depression · skin reactions
      - With oral use Arrhythmias · atrioventricular block · autonomic dysfunction · cardiac arrest · consciousness impaired · hyperthermia · jaundice · muscle rigidity · nasal congestion · oculogyric crisis · respiratory depression · skin reactions

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Acute dystonias are more common with potent first-generation antipsychotics. The risk is increased in men, young adults, children, antipsychotic-naïve patients, rapid dose escalation, and abrupt treatment discontinuation.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Can precipitate coma; phenothiazines are hepatotoxic.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Start with small doses in severe renal impairment because of increased cerebral sensitivity.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Buccal tablets are placed high between upper lip and gum and left to dissolve.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer prochlorperazine buccal tablets.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- **Prochlorperazine (Non-proprietary)**

**Prochlorperazine maleate 5 mg** Prochlorperazine 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.72 DT = £0.50 | 84 tablet [PoM] £1.50–£2.16

- **Stemetil (Sanofi)**

**Prochlorperazine maleate 5 mg** Stemetil 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.98 DT = £0.50 | 84 tablet [PoM] £5.94

**Solution for injection**

- **Stemetil (Sanofi)**

**Prochlorperazine mesilate 12.5 mg per 1 ml** Stemetil 12.5mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £5.23 DT = £5.23

**Buccal tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- **Prochlorperazine (Non-proprietary)**

**Prochlorperazine maleate 3 mg** Prochlorperazine 3mg buccal tablets | 50 tablet [PoM] £35.94–£51.75 DT = £51.75

- **Buccastem (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)**

**Prochlorperazine maleate 3 mg** Buccastem M 3mg tablets | 8 tablet [P] £4.01

**Oral solution**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- **Stemetil (Sanofi)**

**Prochlorperazine mesilate 1 mg per 1 ml** Stemetil 5mg/5ml syrup | 100 ml [PoM] £3.34 DT = £3.34

## 5 Pain

### Analgesics

#### Pain relief

The non-opioid drugs, paracetamol p. 271 and ibuprofen p. 655 (and other NSAIDs), are particularly suitable for pain in musculoskeletal conditions, whereas the opioid analgesics are more suitable for moderate to severe pain, particularly of visceral origin.

#### Pain in sickle-cell disease

The pain of mild sickle-cell crises is managed with paracetamol, an NSAID, codeine phosphate p. 276, or dihydrocodeine tartrate p. 278. Severe crises may require the use of morphine p. 282 or diamorphine hydrochloride p. 277; concomitant use of an NSAID may potentiate analgesia and allow lower doses of the opioid to be used. A mixture of nitrous oxide and oxygen (*Entonox*®, *Equanox*®) may also be used.

#### Dental and orofacial pain

Analgesics should be used judiciously in dental care as a **temporary** measure until the cause of the pain has been dealt with.

Dental pain of inflammatory origin, such as that associated with pulpitis, apical infection, localised osteitis or pericoronitis is usually best managed by treating the infection, providing drainage, restorative procedures, and other local measures. Analgesics provide temporary relief of pain (usually for about 1 to 7 days) until the causative factors have been brought under control. In the case of pulpitis, intra-osseous infection or abscess, reliance on analgesics alone is usually inappropriate.

Similarly the pain and discomfort associated with acute problems of the oral mucosa (e.g. acute herpetic gingivostomatitis, erythema multiforme) may be relieved by benzydamine hydrochloride p. 707 or topical anaesthetics until the cause of the mucosal disorder has been dealt with. However, where a child is febrile, the antipyretic action of paracetamol or ibuprofen is often helpful.

The *choice* of an analgesic for dental purposes should be based on its suitability for the child. Most dental pain is relieved effectively by non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) e.g. ibuprofen. Paracetamol has analgesic and antipyretic effects but no anti-inflammatory effect.

Opioid analgesics such as dihydrocodeine tartrate act on the central nervous system and are traditionally used for *moderate to severe pain*. However, opioid analgesics are relatively ineffective in dental pain and their side-effects can be unpleasant.

Combining a non-opioid with an opioid analgesic can provide greater relief of pain than either analgesic given alone. However, this applies only when an adequate dose of each analgesic is used. Most combination analgesic preparations have not been shown to provide greater relief of pain than an adequate dose of the non-opioid component given alone. Moreover, combination preparations have the disadvantage of an increased number of side-effects.

Any analgesic given before a dental procedure should have a low risk of increasing postoperative bleeding. In the case of pain after the dental procedure, taking an analgesic before the effect of the local anaesthetic has worn off can improve control. Postoperative analgesia with ibuprofen is usually continued for about 24 to 72 hours.

#### Dysmenorrhoea

Paracetamol or a NSAID will generally provide adequate relief of pain from dysmenorrhoea. Alternatively use of a combined hormonal contraceptive in adolescent girls may prevent the pain.

## Non-opioid analgesics and compound analgesic preparations

Paracetamol has analgesic and antipyretic properties but no demonstrable anti-inflammatory activity; unlike opioid analgesics, it does not cause respiratory depression and is less irritant to the stomach than the NSAIDs. **Overdosage** with paracetamol is particularly dangerous as it may cause hepatic damage which is sometimes not apparent for 4 to 6 days.

**Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory analgesics** (NSAIDs) are particularly useful for the treatment of children with chronic disease accompanied by pain and inflammation. Some of them are also used in the short-term treatment of mild to moderate pain including transient musculoskeletal pain but paracetamol is now often preferred. They are also suitable for the relief of pain in *dysmenorrhoea* and to treat pain caused by *secondary bone tumours*, many of which produce lysis of bone and release prostaglandins. Due to an association with Reye's syndrome, aspirin p. 91 should be avoided in children under 16 years except in Kawasaki disease or for its antiplatelet action. Several NSAIDs are also used for postoperative analgesia.

### Compound analgesic preparations

Compound analgesic preparations that contain a simple analgesic (such as paracetamol) with an opioid component reduce the scope for effective titration of the individual components in the management of pain of varying intensity.

Compound analgesic preparations containing paracetamol with a *low dose* of an opioid analgesic (e.g. 8 mg of codeine phosphate per compound tablet) may be used in older children but the advantages have not been substantiated. The low dose of the opioid may be enough to cause opioid side-effects (in particular, constipation) and can complicate the treatment of **overdosage** yet may not provide significant additional relief of pain.

A *full dose* of the opioid component (e.g. 60 mg codeine phosphate) in compound analgesic preparations effectively augments the analgesic activity but is associated with the full range of opioid side-effects (including nausea, vomiting, severe constipation, drowsiness, respiratory depression, and risk of dependence on long-term administration).

In general, when assessing pain, it is necessary to weigh up carefully whether there is a need for a non-opioid and an opioid analgesic to be taken simultaneously.

### Opioid analgesics and dependence

Opioid analgesics are usually used to relieve moderate to severe pain particularly of visceral origin. Repeated administration may cause tolerance, but this is no deterrent in the control of pain in terminal illness. Regular use of a potent opioid may be appropriate for certain cases of chronic non-malignant pain; treatment should be supervised by a specialist and the child should be assessed at regular intervals.

#### Strong opioids

Morphine remains the most valuable opioid analgesic for severe pain although it frequently causes nausea and vomiting. It is the standard against which other opioid analgesics are compared. In addition to relief of pain, morphine also confers a state of euphoria and mental detachment.

Morphine is the opioid of choice for the oral treatment of *severe pain in palliative care*. It is given regularly every 4 hours (or every 12 or 24 hours as modified-release preparations).

Buprenorphine p. 274 has both opioid agonist and antagonist properties and may precipitate withdrawal symptoms, including pain, in children dependent on other opioids. It has abuse potential and may itself cause dependence. It has a much longer duration of action than morphine and sublingually is an effective analgesic for 6 to

8 hours. Unlike most opioid analgesics, the effects of buprenorphine are only partially reversed by naloxone hydrochloride p. 842. It is rarely used in children.

Diamorphine hydrochloride p. 277 (heroin) is a powerful opioid analgesic. It may cause less nausea and hypotension than morphine p. 282. In *palliative care* the greater solubility of diamorphine hydrochloride allows effective doses to be injected in smaller volumes and this is important in the emaciated child. Diamorphine hydrochloride is sometimes given by the intranasal route to treat acute pain in children and is available as a nasal spray; intranasal administration of diamorphine injection has been used [unlicensed].

Alfentanil p. 818, fentanyl p. 279 and remifentanyl p. 819 are used by injection for intra-operative analgesia. Fentanyl is available in a transdermal drug delivery system as a self-adhesive patch which is changed every 72 hours.

Methadone hydrochloride p. 299 is less sedating than morphine and acts for longer periods. In prolonged use, methadone hydrochloride should not be administered more often than twice daily to avoid the risk of accumulation and opioid overdosage. Methadone hydrochloride may be used instead of morphine when excitation (or exacerbation of pain) occurs with morphine. Methadone hydrochloride may also be used to treat children with neonatal abstinence syndrome.

Papaveretum p. 287 should not be used in children; morphine is easier to prescribe and less prone to error with regard to the strength and dose.

Pethidine hydrochloride p. 287 produces prompt but short-lasting analgesia; it is less constipating than morphine, but even in high doses is a less potent analgesic. Its use in children is not recommended. Pethidine hydrochloride is used for analgesia in labour; however, other opioids, such as morphine or diamorphine hydrochloride, are often preferred for obstetric pain.

Tramadol hydrochloride p. 287 is used in older children and produces analgesia by two mechanisms: an opioid effect and an enhancement of serotonergic and adrenergic pathways. It has fewer of the typical opioid side-effects (notably, less respiratory depression, less constipation and less addiction potential); psychiatric reactions have been reported.

#### Weak opioids

Codeine phosphate p. 276 can be used for the relief of short-term acute moderate pain in children older than 12 years where other painkillers such as paracetamol p. 271 or ibuprofen p. 655 have proved ineffective.

Dihydrocodeine tartrate p. 278 has an analgesic efficacy similar to that of codeine phosphate.

#### Postoperative analgesia

A combination of opioid and non-opioid analgesics is used to treat postoperative pain. The use of intra-operative opioids affects the prescribing of postoperative analgesics. A postoperative opioid analgesic should be given with care since it may potentiate any residual respiratory depression.

Morphine is used most widely. Tramadol hydrochloride is not as effective in severe pain as other opioid analgesics. Buprenorphine p. 274 may antagonise the analgesic effect of previously administered opioids and is generally not recommended. Pethidine hydrochloride is generally not recommended for postoperative pain because it is metabolised to norpethidine which may accumulate, particularly in neonates and in renal impairment; norpethidine stimulates the central nervous system and may cause convulsions.

Opioids are also given epidurally [unlicensed route] in the postoperative period but are associated with side-effects such as pruritus, urinary retention, nausea and vomiting; respiratory depression can be delayed, particularly with morphine.

Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) and nurse-controlled analgesia (NCA) can be used to relieve postoperative pain—consult hospital protocols.

### Pain management and opioid dependence

Although caution is necessary, patients who are dependent on opioids or have a history of drug dependence may be treated with opioid analgesics when there is a clinical need. Treatment with opioid analgesics in this patient group should normally be carried out with the advice of specialists. However, doctors do not require a special licence to prescribe opioid analgesics to patients with opioid dependence for relief of pain due to organic disease or injury.

**Other drugs used for Pain** Diclofenac potassium, p. 651 • Mefenamic acid, p. 658

## ANALGESICS > NON-OPIOID

### Paracetamol

05-May-2016

#### (Acetaminophen)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Pain | Pyrexia with discomfort

##### ► BY MOUTH

► Neonate 28 weeks to 32 weeks corrected gestational age: 20 mg/kg for 1 dose, then 10–15 mg/kg every 6–12 hours as required, maximum daily dose to be given in divided doses; maximum 30 mg/kg per day.

► Neonate 32 weeks corrected gestational age and above: 20 mg/kg for 1 dose, then 10–15 mg/kg every 6–8 hours as required, maximum daily dose to be given in divided doses; maximum 60 mg/kg per day.

► Child 1–2 months: 30–60 mg every 8 hours as required, maximum daily dose to be given in divided doses; maximum 60 mg/kg per day

► Child 3–5 months: 60 mg every 4–6 hours; maximum 4 doses per day

► Child 6 months–1 year: 120 mg every 4–6 hours; maximum 4 doses per day

► Child 2–3 years: 180 mg every 4–6 hours; maximum 4 doses per day

► Child 4–5 years: 240 mg every 4–6 hours; maximum 4 doses per day

► Child 6–7 years: 240–250 mg every 4–6 hours; maximum 4 doses per day

► Child 8–9 years: 360–375 mg every 4–6 hours; maximum 4 doses per day

► Child 10–11 years: 480–500 mg every 4–6 hours; maximum 4 doses per day

► Child 12–15 years: 480–750 mg every 4–6 hours; maximum 4 doses per day

► Child 16–17 years: 0.5–1 g every 4–6 hours; maximum 4 doses per day

##### ► BY RECTUM

► Neonate 28 weeks to 32 weeks corrected gestational age: 20 mg/kg for 1 dose, then 10–15 mg/kg every 12 hours as required, maximum daily dose to be given in divided doses; maximum 30 mg/kg per day.

► Neonate 32 weeks corrected gestational age and above: 30 mg/kg for 1 dose, then 15–20 mg/kg every 8 hours as required, maximum daily dose to be given in divided doses; maximum 60 mg/kg per day.

► Child 1–2 months: 30–60 mg every 8 hours as required, maximum daily dose to be given in divided doses; maximum 60 mg/kg per day

► Child 3–11 months: 60–125 mg every 4–6 hours as required; maximum 4 doses per day

► Child 1–4 years: 125–250 mg every 4–6 hours as required; maximum 4 doses per day

► Child 5–11 years: 250–500 mg every 4–6 hours as required; maximum 4 doses per day

► Child 12–17 years: 500 mg every 4–6 hours

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate 32 weeks corrected gestational age and above: 7.5 mg/kg every 8 hours, dose to be administered over 15 minutes.

► Neonate: 10 mg/kg every 4–6 hours, dose to be administered over 15 minutes; maximum 30 mg/kg per day.

► Child (body-weight up to 10 kg): 10 mg/kg every 4–6 hours, dose to be administered over 15 minutes; maximum 30 mg/kg per day

► Child (body-weight 10–50 kg): 15 mg/kg every 4–6 hours, dose to be administered over 15 minutes; maximum 60 mg/kg per day

► Child (body-weight 50 kg and above): 1 g every 4–6 hours, dose to be administered over 15 minutes; maximum 4 g per day

#### Pain in children with risk factors for hepatotoxicity | Pyrexia with discomfort in children with risk factors for hepatotoxicity

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate 32 weeks corrected gestational age and above: 7.5 mg/kg every 8 hours, dose to be administered over 15 minutes.

► Neonate: 10 mg/kg every 4–6 hours, dose to be administered over 15 minutes; maximum 30 mg/kg per day.

► Child (body-weight up to 10 kg): 10 mg/kg every 4–6 hours, dose to be administered over 15 minutes; maximum 30 mg/kg per day

► Child (body-weight 10–50 kg): 15 mg/kg every 4–6 hours, dose to be administered over 15 minutes; maximum 60 mg/kg per day

► Child (body-weight 50 kg and above): 1 g every 4–6 hours, dose to be administered over 15 minutes; maximum 3 g per day

#### Post-operative pain

##### ► BY MOUTH

► Child 1 month–5 years: 20–30 mg/kg for 1 dose, then 15–20 mg/kg every 4–6 hours, maximum daily dose to be given in divided doses; maximum 75 mg/kg per day

► Child 6–11 years: 20–30 mg/kg (max. per dose 1 g) for 1 dose, then 15–20 mg/kg every 4–6 hours, maximum daily dose to be given in divided doses; maximum 75 mg/kg per day; maximum 4 g per day

► Child 12–17 years: 1 g every 4–6 hours; maximum 4 doses per day

##### ► BY RECTUM

► Child 1–2 months: 30 mg/kg for 1 dose, then 15–20 mg/kg every 4–6 hours, maximum daily dose to be given in divided doses; maximum 75 mg/kg per day

► Child 3 months–5 years: 30–40 mg/kg for 1 dose, then 15–20 mg/kg every 4–6 hours, maximum daily dose to be given in divided doses; maximum 75 mg/kg per day

► Child 6–11 years: 30–40 mg/kg (max. per dose 1 g) for 1 dose, then 15–20 mg/kg every 4–6 hours, maximum daily dose to be given in divided doses; maximum 75 mg/kg per day; maximum 4 g per day

► Child 12–17 years: 1 g every 4–6 hours; maximum 4 doses per day

continued →



**Prophylaxis of post-immunisation pyrexia following immunisation with meningococcal group B vaccine (Bexsero<sup>®</sup>) given as part of the routine immunisation schedule**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 2 months: 60 mg, first dose to be given at the time of vaccination, then 60 mg after 4–6 hours, then 60 mg after 4–6 hours, use weight-based doses for preterm infants born at less than 32 weeks gestation and currently weighing less than 4 kg—see oral doses for pain and pyrexia with discomfort
- Child 4 months: 60 mg, first dose to be given at the time of vaccination, then 60 mg after 4–6 hours, then 60 mg after 4–6 hours, use weight-based doses for preterm infants born at less than 32 weeks gestation and currently weighing less than 4 kg—see oral doses for pain and pyrexia with discomfort

**Post-immunisation pyrexia in infants**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 2–3 months: 60 mg for 1 dose, then 60 mg after 4–6 hours if required
- Child 4 months: 60 mg for 1 dose, then 60 mg after 4–6 hours; maximum 4 doses per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Paracetamol oral suspension 500 mg/5 mL not licensed for use in children under 16 years. Not licensed for use in children under 2 months by mouth; under 3 months by rectum. [EvGr] Not licensed for use as prophylaxis of post-immunisation pyrexia following immunisation with meningococcal group B vaccine. (E) Intravenous infusion not licensed in pre-term neonates. Intravenous infusion dose not licensed in children and neonates with body-weight under 10 kg.

- **CAUTIONS** Before administering, check when paracetamol last administered and cumulative paracetamol dose over previous 24 hours · body-weight under 50 kg · chronic alcohol consumption · chronic dehydration · chronic malnutrition · hepatocellular insufficiency · long-term use (especially in those who are malnourished)

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** [EvGr] Some patients may be at increased risk of experiencing toxicity at therapeutic doses, particularly those with a body-weight under 50 kg and those with risk factors for hepatotoxicity. Clinical judgement should be used to adjust the dose of oral and intravenous paracetamol in these patients.

Co-administration of enzyme-inducing antiepileptic medications may increase toxicity; doses should be reduced. (E)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: paracetamol

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Rare or very rare** Thrombocytopenia

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common**
- With rectal use Anorectal erythema
- **Rare or very rare**
- With intravenous use Hypersensitivity · hypotension · leucopenia · malaise · neutropenia
- With rectal use Angioedema · liver injury · skin reactions
- **Frequency not known**
- With intravenous use Flushing · skin reactions · tachycardia
- With oral use Agranulocytosis · bronchospasm · hepatic function abnormal · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
- With rectal use Agranulocytosis · blood disorder

**Overdose Important:** liver damage and less frequently renal damage can occur following overdose.

Nausea and vomiting, the only early features of poisoning, usually settle within 24 hours. Persistence beyond this time, often associated with the onset of right

subcostal pain and tenderness, usually indicates development of hepatic necrosis.

For specific details on the management of poisoning, see Paracetamol, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Dose-related toxicity—avoid large doses.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Increase infusion dose interval to every 6 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intravenous infusion (Perfalgan<sup>®</sup>), give in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; dilute to a concentration of not less than 1 mg/mL and use within an hour; may also be given undiluted. For children under 33 kg, use 50 mL-vial.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** BP directs that when Paediatric Paracetamol Oral Suspension or Paediatric Paracetamol Mixture is prescribed Paracetamol Oral Suspension 120 mg/5 mL should be dispensed.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Paracetamol for mild-to-moderate pain [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/paracetamol-for-mild-to-moderate-pain](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/paracetamol-for-mild-to-moderate-pain)

● **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

**Dental practitioners' formulary**

Paracetamol Tablets may be prescribed. Paracetamol Soluble Tablets 500 mg may be prescribed. Paracetamol Oral Suspension may be prescribed.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Paracetamol capsules or tablets can be sold to the public provided packs contain no more than 32 capsules or tablets; pharmacists can sell multiple packs up to a total quantity of 100 capsules or tablets in justifiable circumstances.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, suppository, powder

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 29, 30

► **Paracetamol (Non-proprietary)**

**Paracetamol 500 mg** Paracetamol 500mg caplets | 100 tablet [PoM] £3.05 DT = £0.97  
Paracetamol 500mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £2.13 DT = £0.97 | 1000 tablet [PoM] £9.69–£9.70  
**Paracetamol 1 gram** Paracetamol 1g tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £1.80

► **Mandalol (M & A Pharmachem Ltd)**

**Paracetamol 500 mg** Mandalol 500mg caplets | 100 tablet [PoM] £1.45 DT = £0.97  
Mandalol 500mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £1.45 DT = £0.97

► **Paravict (Ecogen Europe Ltd)**

**Paracetamol 500 mg** Paravict 500mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £1.62 DT = £0.97

**Suppository**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 30

► **Paracetamol (Non-proprietary)**

**Paracetamol 80 mg** Paracetamol 80mg suppositories | 10 suppository [P] £10.00

**Paracetamol 120 mg** Paracetamol 120mg suppositories | 10 suppository [P] £12.39 DT = £12.39

**Paracetamol 125 mg** Paracetamol 125mg suppositories | 10 suppository [P] £15.00 DT = £13.80

**Paracetamol 240 mg** Paracetamol 240mg suppositories | 10 suppository [P] £22.01 DT = £22.01

**Paracetamol 250 mg** Paracetamol 250mg suppositories | 10 suppository [P] £24.15 DT = £27.60

**Paracetamol 500 mg** Paracetamol 500mg suppositories | 10 suppository [P] £36.50 DT = £36.50

**Paracetamol 1 gram** Paracetamol 1g suppositories | 10 suppository [P] £59.50 DT = £59.50

▶ **Alvedon** (Intrapharm Laboratories Ltd)

**Paracetamol 60 mg** Alvedon 60mg suppositories | 10 suppository [P] £11.95 DT = £11.95

**Paracetamol 125 mg** Alvedon 125mg suppositories | 10 suppository [P] £13.80 DT = £13.80

**Paracetamol 250 mg** Alvedon 250mg suppositories | 10 suppository [P] £27.60 DT = £27.60

### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 30

▶ **Paracetamol (Non-proprietary)**

**Paracetamol 24 mg per 1 ml** Paracetamol 120mg/5ml oral suspension paediatric | 100 ml [P] £0.60-£1.26 | 500 ml [P] £4.57 DT = £4.57

Paracetamol 120mg/5ml oral suspension paediatric sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [P] £1.19 DT = £1.19 sugar-free | 200 ml [P] £2.38 sugar-free | 500 ml [P] £5.95 sugar-free | 1000 ml [P] £11.90

**Paracetamol 50 mg per 1 ml** Paracetamol 250mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [P] £1.25 DT = £1.25 | 500 ml [P] £3.50-£6.25

Paracetamol 250mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [P] £1.14-£1.19 sugar-free | 200 ml [P] £2.28 DT = £2.28 sugar-free | 500 ml [P] £5.70 sugar-free | 1000 ml [P] £11.40

**Paracetamol 100 mg per 1 ml** Paracetamol 500mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £24.00 DT = £24.00

▶ **Calpol** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Paracetamol 24 mg per 1 ml** Calpol Infant 120mg/5ml oral suspension | 200 ml [P] £3.78

Calpol Infant 120mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 200 ml [P] £3.78

**Paracetamol 50 mg per 1 ml** Calpol Six Plus 250mg/5ml oral suspension 5ml sachets sugar free sugar-free | 200 ml [P] £4.40

Calpol Six Plus 250mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [P] £2.64 sugar-free | 200 ml [P] £4.40 DT = £2.28

### Effervescent tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 29, 30

▶ **Paracetamol (Non-proprietary)**

**Paracetamol 500 mg** Paracetamol 500mg soluble tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £5.00 | 100 tablet [PoM] £8.33 DT = £7.29

Paracetamol 500mg effervescent tablets sugar free sugar-free | 24 tablet [PoM] £1.88 sugar-free | 60 tablet [PoM] £4.25-£4.38 sugar-free | 100 tablet [PoM] £7.08-£7.29

### Solution for infusion

▶ **Paracetamol (Non-proprietary)**

**Paracetamol 10 mg per 1 ml** Paracetamol 100mg/10ml solution for infusion ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £12.00

Paracetamol 1g/100ml solution for infusion bottles |

10 bottle [PoM] £

Paracetamol 1g/100ml solution for infusion vials | 10 vial [PoM] £12.00

▶ **Perfalgan** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Paracetamol 10 mg per 1 ml** Perfalgan 1g/100ml solution for infusion vials | 12 vial [PoM] £14.96

Perfalgan 500mg/50ml solution for infusion vials | 12 vial [PoM] £13.60

### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 30

▶ **Paracetamol (Non-proprietary)**

**Paracetamol 24 mg per 1 ml** Paracetamol 120mg/5ml oral solution paediatric sugar free sugar-free | 2000 ml [P] £23.80 DT = £23.80

**Paracetamol 100 mg per 1 ml** Paracetamol 500mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £24.00 sugar-free | 200 ml [PoM] £18.00 DT = £18.00

### Powder

▶ **Paracetamol (Non-proprietary)**

**Paracetamol 1 gram** Flu Strength Hot Lemon Powders 1g oral powder sachets | 10 sachet [GS] £1.11

▶ Brands may include Abidine Cold Relief

### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 29, 30

▶ **Paracetamol (Non-proprietary)**

**Paracetamol 500 mg** Paracetamol 500mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £3.84 DT = £1.88

### Orodispersible tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 30

▶ **Calpol Fastmelts** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Paracetamol 250 mg** Calpol Six Plus Fastmelts 250mg tablets sugar-free | 24 tablet [P] £4.12

Combinations available: *Co-codamol*, p. 275 • *Dihydrocodeine with paracetamol*, p. 278

## ANALGESICS > OPIOIDS

### Opioids

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute respiratory depression • comatose patients • head injury (opioid analgesics interfere with pupillary responses vital for neurological assessment) • raised intracranial pressure (opioid analgesics interfere with pupillary responses vital for neurological assessment) • risk of paralytic ileus

- **CAUTIONS** Adrenocortical insufficiency (reduced dose is recommended) • asthma (avoid during an acute attack) • convulsive disorders • diseases of the biliary tract • hypotension • hypothyroidism (reduced dose is recommended) • impaired respiratory function (avoid in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease) • inflammatory bowel disorders • myasthenia gravis • obstructive bowel disorders • shock

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ **Dependence** Repeated use of opioid analgesics is associated with the development of psychological and physical dependence; although this is rarely a problem with therapeutic use, caution is advised if prescribing for patients with a history of drug dependence.
- ▶ **Palliative care** In the control of pain in terminal illness, the cautions listed should not necessarily be a deterrent to the use of opioid analgesics.

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Arrhythmias • confusion • constipation • dizziness • drowsiness • dry mouth • euphoric mood • flushing • hallucination • headache • hyperhidrosis • hypotension (with high doses) • miosis • nausea (more common on initiation) • palpitations • respiratory depression (with high doses) • skin reactions • urinary retention • vertigo • visual impairment • vomiting (more common on initiation)
- ▶ **Uncommon** Drug dependence • drug tolerance • dysphoria • withdrawal syndrome

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Respiratory depression** Respiratory depression is a major concern with opioid analgesics and it may be treated by artificial ventilation or be reversed by naloxone. Neonates (particularly if pre-term) may be more susceptible.

**Dependence and withdrawal** Psychological dependence rarely occurs when opioids are used therapeutically (e.g. for pain relief) but tolerance can develop during long-term treatment.

**Overdose** Opioids (narcotic analgesics) cause coma, respiratory depression, and pinpoint pupils. For details on the management of poisoning, see Opioids, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832 and consider the specific antidote, naloxone hydrochloride.

- **PREGNANCY** Respiratory depression and withdrawal symptoms can occur in the neonate if opioid analgesics are used during delivery; also gastric stasis and inhalation pneumonia has been reported in the mother if opioid analgesics are used during labour.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid use or reduce dose; may precipitate coma in patients with hepatic impairment.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal after long-term treatment; they should be withdrawn gradually to avoid abstinence symptoms.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The *Faculty of Pain Medicine* has produced resources for healthcare professionals around opioid prescribing: [www.fpm.ac.uk/faculty-of-pain-medicine/opioids-aware](http://www.fpm.ac.uk/faculty-of-pain-medicine/opioids-aware)

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced. Driving at the start of therapy with opioid analgesics, and following dose changes, should be avoided.

For information on 2015 legislation regarding driving whilst taking certain controlled drugs, including opioids, see *Drugs and driving* under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

F 273

## Buprenorphine

19-Oct-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Buprenorphine is an opioid-receptor partial agonist (it has opioid agonist and antagonist properties).

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Moderate to severe pain

###### ► BY SUBLINGUAL ADMINISTRATION

- Child (body-weight 16–25 kg): 100 micrograms every 6–8 hours
- Child (body-weight 25–37.5 kg): 100–200 micrograms every 6–8 hours
- Child (body-weight 37.5–50 kg): 200–300 micrograms every 6–8 hours
- Child (body-weight 50 kg and above): 200–400 micrograms every 6–8 hours
- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child 6 months–11 years: 3–6 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours (max. per dose 9 micrograms/kg)
- Child 12–17 years: 300–600 micrograms every 6–8 hours

- **UNLICENSED USE** Sublingual tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years. Injection not licensed for use in children under 6 months.

- **CAUTIONS** Impaired consciousness

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### ► Common or very common

- With sublingual use Fatigue · postural hypotension · sleep disorders

##### ► Uncommon

- With sublingual use Anxiety · apnoea · appetite decreased · atrioventricular block · coma · conjunctivitis · coordination abnormal · cyanosis · depersonalisation · depression · diarrhoea · diplopia · disorientation · dyspepsia · dyspnoea · hypertension · pallor · paraesthesia · psychosis · seizure · speech slurred · tinnitus · tremor · urinary disorder

##### ► Rare or very rare

- With sublingual use Angioedema · bronchospasm

##### ► Frequency not known

- With parenteral use Angioedema · bronchospasm · hepatic disorders · psychotic disorder · vision blurred
- With sublingual use Cerebrospinal fluid pressure increased · circulation impaired · haemorrhagic diathesis · hepatic disorders · oral disorders · syncope

**Overdose** The effects of buprenorphine are only partially reversed by naloxone.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in low levels in breast milk.

**Monitoring** Neonates should be monitored for drowsiness, adequate weight gain, and developmental milestones.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid use or reduce dose; opioid effects increased and prolonged; increased cerebral sensitivity.

- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Documentation of viral hepatitis status is recommended before commencing therapy for opioid dependence.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor liver function; when used in opioid dependence baseline liver function test is recommended before commencing therapy, and regular liver function tests should be performed throughout treatment.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Sublingual tablets may be halved.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer buprenorphine products.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

###### ► Temgesic (Indivior UK Ltd)

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride)**

300 microgram per 1 ml Temgesic 300micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £2.46 [CD3]

##### Sublingual tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 26

###### ► Buprenorphine (Non-proprietary)

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride)**

200 microgram Buprenorphine 200microgram sublingual tablets sugar free sugar-free | 50 tablet [PoM] £5.04 DT = £5.04 [CD3]

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride)**

400 microgram Buprenorphine 400microgram sublingual tablets sugar free sugar-free | 7 tablet [PoM] £1.60 DT = £1.60 [CD3] sugar-free | 50 tablet [PoM] £10.07 DT = £10.07 [CD3]

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride)**

2 mg Buprenorphine 2mg sublingual tablets sugar free sugar-free | 7 tablet [PoM] £8.35 DT = £0.93 [CD3]

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride)**

8 mg Buprenorphine 8mg sublingual tablets sugar free sugar-free | 7 tablet [PoM] £22.50 DT = £1.81 [CD3]

###### ► Natzon (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride)**

400 microgram Natzon 0.4mg sublingual tablets sugar-free | 7 tablet [PoM] £1.60 DT = £1.60 [CD3]

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride) 2 mg** Natzon 2mg sublingual tablets sugar-free | 7 tablet [PoM] £6.35 DT = £0.93 [CD3]

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride) 8 mg** Natzon 8mg sublingual tablets sugar-free | 7 tablet [PoM] £19.05 DT = £1.81 [CD3]

###### ► Prefibin (Sandoz Ltd)

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride)**

400 microgram Prefibin 0.4mg sublingual tablets sugar-free | 7 tablet [PoM] £1.60 DT = £1.60 [CD3]

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride) 2 mg** Prefibin 2mg sublingual tablets sugar-free | 7 tablet [PoM] £5.38 DT = £0.93 [CD3]

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride) 8 mg** Prefibin 8mg sublingual tablets sugar-free | 7 tablet [PoM] £16.15 DT = £1.81 [CD3]

###### ► Subutex (Indivior UK Ltd)

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride)**

400 microgram Subutex 0.4mg sublingual tablets sugar-free | 7 tablet [PoM] £1.60 DT = £1.60 [CD3]

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride) 2 mg** Subutex 2mg sublingual tablets sugar-free | 7 tablet [PoM] £6.35 DT = £0.93 [CD3]

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride) 8 mg** Subutex 8mg sublingual tablets sugar-free | 7 tablet [PoM] £19.05 DT = £1.81 [CD3]

###### ► Temgesic (Indivior UK Ltd)

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride)**

200 microgram Temgesic 200microgram sublingual tablets sugar-free | 50 tablet [PoM] £5.04 DT = £5.04 [CD3]

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride)**

400 microgram Temgesic 400microgram sublingual tablets sugar-free | 50 tablet [PoM] £10.07 DT = £10.07 [CD3]

• **Tephine** (Sandoz Ltd)

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride)**

**200 microgram** Tephine 200microgram sublingual tablets sugar-free  
| 50 tablet [PoM] £4.27 DT = £5.04 [CD3]

**Buprenorphine (as Buprenorphine hydrochloride)**

**400 microgram** Tephine 400microgram sublingual tablets sugar-free  
| 50 tablet [PoM] £8.54 DT = £10.07 [CD3]

F 273

## Co-codamol

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, paracetamol p. 271.

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Short-term treatment of acute moderate pain (using co-codamol 8/500 preparations only)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–15 years: 8/500 mg every 6 hours as required for maximum 3 days; maximum 32/2000 mg per day
- Child 16–17 years: 8/500–16/1000 mg every 6 hours as required for maximum 3 days; maximum 64/4000 mg per day

#### Short-term treatment of acute moderate pain (using co-codamol 15/500 preparations only)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–15 years: 15/500 mg every 6 hours as required for maximum 3 days; maximum 60/2000 mg per day
- Child 16–17 years: 15/500–30/1000 mg every 6 hours as required for maximum 3 days; maximum 120/4000 mg per day

#### Short-term treatment of acute moderate pain (using co-codamol 30/500 preparations only)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–15 years: 30/500 mg every 6 hours as required for maximum 3 days; maximum 120/2000 mg per day
- Child 16–17 years: 30/500–60/1000 mg every 6 hours as required for maximum 3 days; maximum 240/4000 mg per day

### KAPAKE® 15/500

#### Short-term treatment of acute pain

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–15 years: 1 tablet every 6 hours as required for maximum 3 days; maximum 4 tablets per day
- Child 16–17 years: 2 tablets every 6 hours as required for maximum 3 days; maximum 8 tablets per day

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

See codeine phosphate p. 276 for MHRA/CHM advice for restrictions on the use of codeine as an analgesic in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute ulcerative colitis · antibiotic-associated colitis · children who undergo the removal of tonsils or adenoids for the treatment of obstructive sleep apnoea · conditions where abdominal distention develops · conditions where inhibition of peristalsis should be avoided · known ultra-rapid codeine metabolisers

- **CAUTIONS** Acute abdomen · alcohol dependence · avoid abrupt withdrawal after long-term treatment · cardiac arrhythmias · chronic alcoholism · chronic dehydration · chronic malnutrition · convulsive disorders · gallstones · hepatocellular insufficiency

### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Variation in metabolism** The capacity to metabolise codeine to morphine can vary considerably between individuals; there is a marked increase in morphine toxicity in patients who are ultra-rapid codeine metabolisers (CYP2D6 ultra-rapid metabolisers) and a reduced therapeutic effect in poor codeine metabolisers.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids · paracetamol

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain · addiction · agranulocytosis · blood disorder · irritability · pancreatitis · restlessness · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · thrombocytopenia

**Overdose** **Important:** liver damage (and less frequently renal damage) following overdosage with paracetamol.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—although amount of codeine usually too small to be harmful, mothers vary considerably in their capacity to metabolise codeine—risk of morphine overdose in infant.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Dose-related toxicity with paracetamol—avoid large doses.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Reduce dose or avoid codeine; increased and prolonged effect; increased cerebral sensitivity.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Co-codamol is a mixture of codeine phosphate and paracetamol; the proportions are expressed in the form x/y, where x and y are the strengths in milligrams of codeine phosphate and paracetamol respectively.

When co-codamol tablets, dispersible (or effervescent) tablets, or capsules are prescribed and **no strength is stated**, tablets, dispersible (or effervescent) tablets, or capsules, respectively, containing codeine phosphate 8 mg and paracetamol 500 mg should be dispensed.

The Drug Tariff allows tablets of co-codamol labelled ‘dispersible’ to be dispensed against an order for ‘effervescent’ and vice versa.

- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Co-codamol is less suitable for prescribing.
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Co-codamol 8/500 can be sold to the public in certain circumstances; for exemptions see *Medicines, Ethics and Practice*, London, Pharmaceutical Press (always consult latest edition).

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

**CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS** 2 (does not apply to the 8/500 tablet), 29, 30

#### ► Co-codamol (Non-proprietary)

**Codeine phosphate 8 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Co-codamol 8mg/500mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £2.70 DT = £1.97 [CD5] | 500 tablet [PoM] £5.70–£9.85 [CD5] | 1000 tablet [PoM] £19.70 [CD5]

**Codeine phosphate 15 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Co-codamol 15mg/500mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £15.00 DT = £4.93 [CD5]

**Codeine phosphate 30 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Co-codamol 30mg/500mg caplets | 100 tablet [PoM] £3.90 DT = £2.83 [CD5] | Co-codamol 30mg/500mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £1.17 DT = £0.85 [CD5] | 100 tablet [PoM] £7.53 DT = £2.83 [CD5]

**Codeine phosphate 60 mg, Paracetamol 1 gram** Co-codamol 60mg/1000mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £11.50 [CD5]

#### ► Codipar (AMCO)

**Codeine phosphate 15 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Codipar 15mg/500mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £8.25 DT = £4.93 [CD5]

#### ► Kapake (Galen Ltd)

**Codeine phosphate 30 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Kapake 30mg/500mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £7.10 DT = £2.83 [CD5]

#### ► Migraleve Yellow (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Codeine phosphate 8 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Migraleve Yellow tablets | 16 tablet [PoM] [S] [CD5]

#### ► Panadol Ultra (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

**Codeine phosphate 12.8 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Panadol Ultra 12.8mg/500mg tablets | 20 tablet [P] £2.61 DT = £3.61 [CD5]

#### ► Solpadeine Max (Omega Pharma Ltd)

**Codeine phosphate 12.8 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Solpadeine Max 12.8mg/500mg tablets | 20 tablet [P] £3.61 DT = £3.61 [CD5] | 30 tablet [P] £4.65 DT = £4.65 [CD5]

► **Solpadol** (Sanofi)

**Codeine phosphate 30 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Solpadol  
30mg/500mg caplets | 30 tablet [PoM] £2.02 DT = £0.85 [CD5] |  
100 tablet [PoM] £6.74 DT = £2.83 [CD5]

► **Zapain** (AMCo)

**Codeine phosphate 30 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Zapain  
30mg/500mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £3.11 DT = £2.83 [CD5]

**Effervescent tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2 (does not apply to the 8/500 tablet), 13, 29, 30

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Co-codamol (Non-proprietary)**

**Codeine phosphate 8 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Co-codamol  
8mg/500mg effervescent tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £8.75 DT =  
£7.00 [CD5]

**Codeine phosphate 30 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Co-codamol  
30mg/500mg effervescent tablets | 32 tablet [PoM] £5.40 DT =  
£2.29 [CD5] | 100 tablet [PoM] £19.20 DT = £7.16 [CD5]

► **Codipar** (AMCo)

**Codeine phosphate 15 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Codipar  
15mg/500mg effervescent tablets sugar-free | 100 tablet [PoM] £8.25  
DT = £8.25 [CD5]

► **Solpadol** (Sanofi)

**Codeine phosphate 30 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Solpadol  
30mg/500mg effervescent tablets | 32 tablet [PoM] £2.59 DT =  
£2.29 [CD5] | 100 tablet [PoM] £8.90 DT = £7.16 [CD5]

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2 (does not apply to the 8/500 capsule), 29, 30

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sulfités

► **Co-codamol (Non-proprietary)**

**Codeine phosphate 8 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Co-codamol  
8mg/500mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £14.48 DT = £14.23 [CD5]

**Codeine phosphate 15 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Co-codamol  
15mg/500mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £7.25–£8.85 DT =  
£8.13 [CD5]

**Codeine phosphate 30 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Co-codamol  
30mg/500mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £7.01 DT = £3.88 [CD5]

► **Codipar** (AMCo)

**Codeine phosphate 15 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Codipar  
15mg/500mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £7.85 DT = £8.13 [CD5]

► **Kapake** (Galen Ltd)

**Codeine phosphate 30 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Kapake  
30mg/500mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £7.10 DT = £3.88 [CD5]

► **Solpadol** (Sanofi)

**Codeine phosphate 30 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Solpadol  
30mg/500mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £6.74 DT = £3.88 [CD5]

► **Tylex** (UCB Pharma Ltd)

**Codeine phosphate 30 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Tylex  
30mg/500mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £7.93 DT = £3.88 [CD5]

► **Zapain** (AMCo)

**Codeine phosphate 30 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Zapain  
30mg/500mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £3.85 DT = £3.88 [CD5]

► 273

## Codeine phosphate

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Acute diarrhoea

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 30 mg 3–4 times a day; usual dose 15–60 mg 3–4 times a day

#### Short-term treatment of acute moderate pain

##### ► BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child 12–17 years: 30–60 mg every 6 hours if required for maximum 3 days; maximum 240 mg per day

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE (JULY 2013) CODEINE FOR ANALGESIA: RESTRICTED USE IN CHILDREN DUE TO REPORTS OF MORPHINE TOXICITY

Codeine should only be used to relieve acute moderate pain in children older than 12 years and only if it cannot be relieved by other painkillers such as paracetamol or ibuprofen alone. A significant risk of serious and life-threatening adverse reactions has been identified in

children with obstructive sleep apnoea who received codeine after tonsillectomy or adenoidectomy:

- in children aged 12–18 years, the maximum daily dose of codeine should not exceed 240 mg. Doses may be taken up to four times a day at intervals of no less than 6 hours. The lowest effective dose should be used and duration of treatment should be limited to 3 days
- codeine is contra-indicated in all children (under 18 years) who undergo the removal of tonsils or adenoids for the treatment of obstructive sleep apnoea
- codeine is not recommended for use in children whose breathing may be compromised, including those with neuromuscular disorders, severe cardiac or respiratory conditions, respiratory infections, multiple trauma or extensive surgical procedures
- codeine is contra-indicated in patients of any age who are known to be ultra-rapid metabolisers of codeine (CYP2D6 ultra-rapid metabolisers)
- codeine should not be used in breast-feeding mothers because it can pass to the baby through breast milk
- parents and carers should be advised on how to recognise signs and symptoms of morphine toxicity, and to stop treatment and seek medical attention if signs or symptoms of toxicity occur (including reduced consciousness, lack of appetite, somnolence, constipation, respiratory depression, 'pin-point' pupils, nausea, vomiting)

#### MHRA/CHM ADVICE (APRIL 2015) CODEINE FOR COUGH AND COLD: RESTRICTED USE IN CHILDREN

Do not use codeine in children under 12 years as it is associated with a risk of respiratory side effects. Codeine is not recommended for adolescents (12–18 years) who have problems with breathing. When prescribing or dispensing codeine-containing medicines for cough and cold, consider that codeine is contra-indicated in:

- children younger than 12 years old
- patients of any age known to be CYP2D6 ultra-rapid metabolisers
- breastfeeding mothers

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute ulcerative colitis · antibiotic-associated colitis · children under 18 years who undergo the removal of tonsils or adenoids for the treatment of obstructive sleep apnoea · conditions where abdominal distension develops · conditions where inhibition of peristalsis should be avoided · known ultra-rapid codeine metabolisers

- **CAUTIONS** Acute abdomen · cardiac arrhythmias · gallstones · not recommended for adolescents aged 12–18 years with breathing problems

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Variation in metabolism The capacity to metabolise codeine to morphine can vary considerably between individuals; there is a marked increase in morphine toxicity in patients who are ultra-rapid codeine metabolisers (CYP2D6 ultra-rapid metabolisers) and a reduced therapeutic effect in poor codeine metabolisers.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS** Biliary spasm · hypothermia · mood altered · postural hypotension · sexual dysfunction · uterine spasm

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- With oral use Abdominal cramps · addiction · appetite decreased · depression · drug reaction with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms (DRESS) · dyskinesia · dyspnoea · face oedema · fatigue · fever · hyperglycaemia · hypersensitivity · intracranial pressure increased · lymphadenopathy · malaise · muscle rigidity (with high doses) · nightmare · pancreatitis · restlessness · seizure · splenomegaly · urinary disorders · vision disorders



- ▶ With parenteral use Dysuria
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—although amount usually too small to be harmful, mothers vary considerably in their capacity to metabolise codeine—risk of morphine overdose in infant.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid use or reduce dose; opioid effects increased and prolonged and increased cerebral sensitivity occurs.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** BP directs that when Diabetic Codeine Linctus is prescribed, Codeine Linctus formulated with a vehicle appropriate for administration to diabetics, whether or not labelled 'Diabetic Codeine Linctus', shall be dispensed or supplied.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Codeine phosphate for pain  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/codeine-phosphate-pain-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/codeine-phosphate-pain-0)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection

#### Tablet

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ▶ Codeine phosphate (Non-proprietary)

Codeine phosphate 15 mg Codeine 15mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£1.40 DT = £0.65 [CD5] | 100 tablet [PoM] £2.32 DT = £2.32 [CD5]

Codeine phosphate 30 mg Codeine 30mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£1.59 DT = £0.76 [CD5] | 100 tablet [PoM] £5.68 DT = £2.71 [CD5]

Codeine phosphate 60 mg Codeine 60mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£5.95 DT = £1.32 [CD5]

#### Solution for injection

##### ▶ Codeine phosphate (Non-proprietary)

Codeine phosphate 60 mg per 1 ml Codeine 60mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £24.10–£24.18 DT = £24.18 [CD2]

#### Oral solution

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ▶ Codeine phosphate (Non-proprietary)

Codeine phosphate 3 mg per 1 ml Codeine 15mg/5ml linctus sugar free sugar-free | 200 ml [P] £1.90 DT = £1.62 [CD5] sugar-free | 2000 ml [P] £16.20 [CD5]

Codeine 15mg/5ml linctus | 200 ml [P] £1.90 DT = £1.90 [CD5]

Codeine phosphate 5 mg per 1 ml Codeine 25mg/5ml oral solution | 500 ml [PoM] £6.46 DT = £6.46 [CD5]

##### ▶ Galcodine (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Codeine phosphate 3 mg per 1 ml Galcodine 15mg/5ml linctus sugar-free | 2000 ml [P] £9.90 [CD5]

## Diamorphine hydrochloride

### (Heroin hydrochloride)

10-Jun-2016

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Acute or chronic pain

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 100–200 micrograms/kg every 4 hours (max. per dose 10 mg), adjusted according to response

▶ Child 12–17 years: 5–10 mg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response

###### ▶ BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 12.5–25 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

###### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

▶ Child 1–2 months: 20 micrograms/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response

▶ Child 3–5 months: 25–50 micrograms/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response

▶ Child 6–11 months: 75 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response

▶ Child 1–11 years: 75–100 micrograms/kg every 4 hours (max. per dose 5 mg), adjusted according to response

▶ Child 12–17 years: 2.5–5 mg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response

###### ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

▶ Child 12–17 years: 5 mg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response

#### Acute or chronic pain in ventilated neonates

##### ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

▶ Neonate: Initially 50 micrograms/kg, dose to be administered over 30 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 15 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response.

#### Acute or chronic pain in non-ventilated neonates

##### ▶ BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

▶ Neonate: 2.5–7 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response.

#### Acute severe nociceptive pain in an emergency setting (specialist supervision in hospital)

##### ▶ BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

▶ Child 2–15 years (body-weight 12–17 kg): 1.44 mg for 1 dose, spray into alternate nostrils

▶ Child 2–15 years (body-weight 18–23 kg): 2.16 mg for 1 dose, spray into alternate nostrils

▶ Child 2–15 years (body-weight 24–29 kg): 2.88 mg for 1 dose, spray into alternate nostrils

▶ Child 2–15 years (body-weight 30–39 kg): 3.2 mg for 1 dose, spray into alternate nostrils

▶ Child 2–15 years (body-weight 40–50 kg): 4.8 mg for 1 dose, spray into alternate nostrils

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Delayed gastric emptying · pheochromocytoma

● **CAUTIONS** CNS depression · severe cor pulmonale · severe diarrhoea · toxic psychosis

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### ▶ Common or very common

▶ With intranasal use Haemorrhage · laryngitis · nasal complaints · procedural pain · taste altered

##### ▶ Uncommon

▶ With intranasal use Abdominal pain · anxiety · conjunctivitis · eye pruritus · feeling hot · fever · hiccups · hypoxia · level of consciousness decreased · pallor · paraesthesia

##### ▶ Frequency not known

▶ With parenteral use Biliary spasm · circulatory depression · intracranial pressure increased · mood altered · postural hypotension

● **BREAST FEEDING** Therapeutic doses unlikely to affect infant; withdrawal symptoms in infants of dependent mothers; breast-feeding not best method of treating dependence in offspring.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid use or reduce dose; opioid effects increased and prolonged; increased cerebral sensitivity.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

▶ With intranasal use Manufacturer advises monitor for at least 30 minutes following administration.

#### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

▶ With intravenous use For intravenous infusion, dilute in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; Glucose 5% is preferable as an infusion fluid.

▶ With intranasal use Manufacturer advises spray should be directed at the nasal side wall whilst the patient is in a semi-recumbent position.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Intranasal administration of diamorphine hydrochloride injection has been used [unlicensed]—no dose recommendation.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral solution, solution for injection, powder for solution for injection

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Diamorphine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Diamorphine hydrochloride 10 mg** Diamorphine 10mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £33.75 DT = £33.75 [CD2]

#### Powder for solution for injection

#### ► Diamorphine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Diamorphine hydrochloride 5 mg** Diamorphine 5mg powder for solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £11.36 DT = £11.36 [CD2]

**Diamorphine hydrochloride 10 mg** Diamorphine 10mg powder for solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £12.95–£16.56 DT = £12.95 [CD2]

**Diamorphine hydrochloride 30 mg** Diamorphine 30mg powder for solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £13.80–£16.52 DT = £11.22 [CD2]

**Diamorphine hydrochloride 100 mg** Diamorphine 100mg powder for solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £42.39 DT = £42.39 [CD2]

**Diamorphine hydrochloride 500 mg** Diamorphine 500mg powder for solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £187.70 DT = £187.70 [CD2]

#### Spray

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

#### ► Ayendi (Wockhardt UK Ltd)

**Diamorphine (as Diamorphine hydrochloride) 720 microgram per 1 dose** Ayendi 720micrograms/actuation nasal spray | 68 dose [PoM] £107.90 (Hospital only) [CD2] | 160 dose [PoM] £112.50 (Hospital only) [CD2]

**Diamorphine (as Diamorphine hydrochloride) 1.6 mg per**

**1 dose** Ayendi 1600micrograms/actuation nasal spray | 68 dose [PoM] £113.52 (Hospital only) [CD2] | 160 dose [PoM] £123.75 (Hospital only) [CD2]

F 273

## Dihydrocodeine tartrate

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Moderate to severe pain

- BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES
  - Child 1–3 years: 500 micrograms/kg every 4–6 hours
  - Child 4–11 years: 0.5–1 mg/kg every 4–6 hours (max. per dose 30 mg)
  - Child 12–17 years: 30 mg every 4–6 hours
- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
  - Child 1–3 years: 500 micrograms/kg every 4–6 hours
  - Child 4–11 years: 0.5–1 mg/kg every 4–6 hours (max. per dose 30 mg)
  - Child 12–17 years: 30 mg every 4–6 hours (max. per dose 50 mg)

#### Chronic severe pain

- BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
  - Child 12–17 years: 60–120 mg every 12 hours

#### DF118 FORTE®

#### Severe pain

- BY MOUTH
  - Child 12–17 years: 40–80 mg 3 times a day; maximum 240 mg per day

● **UNLICENSED USE** Most preparations not licensed for use in children under 4 years.

● **CAUTIONS** Pancreatitis · severe cor pulmonale

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

Biliary spasm · bronchospasm · dysuria · hypothermia · mood altered · postural hypotension · sexual dysfunction · ureteral spasm

● **BREAST FEEDING** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid use or reduce dose; opioid effects increased and prolonged and increased cerebral sensitivity occurs.

### PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

#### Dental practitioners' formulary

Dihydrocodeine tablets 30 mg may be prescribed.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 25

#### ► DHC Continus (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Dihydrocodeine tartrate 60 mg** DHC Continus 60mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £5.20 DT = £5.20 [CD5]

**Dihydrocodeine tartrate 90 mg** DHC Continus 90mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £8.66 DT = £8.66 [CD5]

**Dihydrocodeine tartrate 120 mg** DHC Continus 120mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £10.95 DT = £10.95 [CD5]

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Dihydrocodeine tartrate (Non-proprietary)

**Dihydrocodeine tartrate 30 mg** Dihydrocodeine 30mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.09 DT = £0.72 [CD5] | 30 tablet [PoM] £0.77–£1.56 [CD5] | 100 tablet [PoM] £3.89 DT = £2.57 [CD5] | 500 tablet [PoM] £12.85 [CD5]

#### ► DF 118 (Martindale Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Dihydrocodeine tartrate 40 mg** DF 118 Forte 40mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £11.51 DT = £11.51 [CD5]

#### Solution for injection

#### ► Dihydrocodeine tartrate (Non-proprietary)

**Dihydrocodeine tartrate 50 mg per 1 ml** Dihydrocodeine 50mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £105.27 DT = £105.27 [CD2]

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ► Dihydrocodeine tartrate (Non-proprietary)

**Dihydrocodeine tartrate 2 mg per 1 ml** Dihydrocodeine 10mg/5ml oral solution | 150 ml [PoM] £8.94 DT = £8.94 [CD5]

## Dihydrocodeine with paracetamol

18-Jan-2018

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, dihydrocodeine above, paracetamol p. 271.

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Mild to moderate pain (using 10/500 preparations only)

- BY MOUTH
  - Child 12–17 years: 10/500–20/1000 mg every 4–6 hours as required; maximum 80/4000 mg per day

#### Severe pain (using 20/500 preparations only)

- BY MOUTH
  - Child 12–17 years: 20/500–40/1000 mg every 4–6 hours as required; maximum 160/4000 mg per day

#### Severe pain (using 30/500 preparations only)

- BY MOUTH
  - Child 12–17 years: 30/500–60/1000 mg every 4–6 hours as required; maximum 240/4000 mg per day

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- A mixture of dihydrocodeine tartrate and paracetamol; the proportions are expressed in the form x/y, where x

and  $y$  are the strengths in milligrams of dihydrocodeine and paracetamol respectively.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: DIHYDROCODEINE WITH PARACETAMOL (CO-DYDRAMOL): PRESCRIBE AND DISPENSE BY STRENGTH TO MINIMISE RISK OF MEDICATION ERROR (JANUARY 2018)

The MHRA has advised that dihydrocodeine with paracetamol preparations are prescribed and dispensed by strength to minimise dispensing errors and the risk of accidental opioid overdose—see Prescribing and dispensing information.

- **CAUTIONS** Alcohol dependence · before administering, check when paracetamol last administered and cumulative paracetamol dose over previous 24 hours · chronic alcoholism · chronic dehydration · chronic malnutrition · hepatocellular insufficiency · pancreatitis · severe cor pulmonale
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids · paracetamol
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain · blood disorder · leucopenia · malaise · neutropenia · pancreatitis · paraesthesia · paralytic ileus · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · thrombocytopenia
- **Overdose Important:** liver damage and less frequently renal damage following overdose with paracetamol.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount of dihydrocodeine too small to be harmful but use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Dose-related toxicity with paracetamol—avoid large doses.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Reduce dose or avoid dihydrocodeine; increased and prolonged effect; increased cerebral sensitivity.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The MHRA advises when prescribing dihydrocodeine with paracetamol, the tablet strength and dose must be clearly indicated; when dispensing dihydrocodeine with paracetamol, ensure the prescribed strength is supplied—contact the prescriber if in doubt.  
The BP defines *Co-dydramol* Tablets as containing dihydrocodeine tartrate 10 mg and paracetamol 500 mg.
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Dihydrocodeine with paracetamol is less suitable for prescribing.
- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 29, 30

##### ▶ Dihydrocodeine with paracetamol (Non-proprietary)

**Dihydrocodeine tartrate 10 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Co-dydramol 10mg/500mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £1.14 DT = £0.59 [CD5] | 100 tablet [PoM] £3.00 DT = £1.97 [CD5] | 500 tablet [PoM] £9.85 [CD5]

**Dihydrocodeine tartrate 20 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Co-dydramol 20mg/500mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £5.57–£5.87 [CD5] | 112 tablet [PoM] £11.13 DT = £11.13 [CD5]

**Dihydrocodeine tartrate 30 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Co-dydramol 30mg/500mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £6.82 DT = £6.82 [CD5]

##### ▶ Eroset (M & A Pharmachem Ltd)

**Dihydrocodeine tartrate 10 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Eroset 500mg/10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £0.68 DT = £0.59 [CD5] | 100 tablet [PoM] £2.27 DT = £1.97 [CD5]

##### ▶ Remedeine (Crescent Pharma Ltd)

**Dihydrocodeine tartrate 20 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Remedeine tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £5.87 [CD5] | 112 tablet [PoM] £11.13 DT = £11.13 [CD5]

**Dihydrocodeine tartrate 30 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg** Remedeine Forte tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £6.82 DT = £6.82 [CD5]

## Fentanyl

21-May-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Chronic intractable pain not currently treated with a strong opioid analgesic

##### ▶ BY TRANSDERMAL APPLICATION

- ▶ Child 16–17 years: Initially 12 micrograms/hour every 72 hours, alternatively initially 25 micrograms/hour every 72 hours, when starting, evaluation of the analgesic effect should not be made before the system has been worn for 24 hours (to allow for the gradual increase in plasma-fentanyl concentration)—previous analgesic therapy should be phased out gradually from time of first patch application, dose should be adjusted at 48–72 hour intervals in steps of 12–25 micrograms/hour if necessary, more than one patch may be used at a time (but applied at the same time to avoid confusion)—consider additional or alternative analgesic therapy if dose required exceeds 300 micrograms/hour (important: it takes 17 hours or more for the plasma-fentanyl concentration to decrease by 50%—replacement opioid therapy should be initiated at a low dose and increased gradually)

#### Chronic intractable pain currently treated with a strong opioid analgesic

##### ▶ BY TRANSDERMAL APPLICATION

- ▶ Child 2–17 years: Initial dose based on previous 24-hour opioid requirement (consult product literature), for evaluating analgesic efficacy and dose increments, see under *Chronic intractable pain not currently treated with a strong opioid analgesic*, for conversion from long term oral morphine to transdermal fentanyl, see *Pain management with opioids* under Prescribing in palliative care p. 20.

#### Spontaneous respiration: analgesia and enhancement of anaesthesia, during operation

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 1–3 micrograms/kg, then 1 microgram/kg as required, dose to be administered over at least 30 seconds
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 50–100 micrograms (max. per dose 200 micrograms), dose maximum on specialist advice, then 25–50 micrograms as required, dose to be administered over at least 30 seconds

#### Assisted ventilation: analgesia and enhancement of anaesthesia during operation

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 1–5 micrograms/kg, then 1–3 micrograms/kg as required, dose to be administered over at least 30 seconds.
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 1–5 micrograms/kg, then 1–3 micrograms/kg as required, dose to be administered over at least 30 seconds
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 1–5 micrograms/kg, then 50–200 micrograms as required, dose to be administered over at least 30 seconds

#### Assisted ventilation: analgesia and respiratory depression in intensive care

##### ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 1–5 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous infusion) 1.5 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response.
- ▶ Child: Initially 1–5 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous infusion) 1–6 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

continued →

### Breakthrough pain in patients receiving opioid therapy for chronic cancer pain

#### ► BY BUCCAL ADMINISTRATION USING LOZENGES

- Child 16–17 years: Initially 200 micrograms, dose to be given over 15 minutes, then 200 micrograms after 15 minutes if required, no more than 2 dose units for each pain episode; if adequate pain relief not achieved with 1 dose unit for consecutive breakthrough pain episodes, increase the strength of the dose unit until adequate pain relief achieved with 4 lozenges or less daily, if more than 4 episodes of breakthrough pain each day, adjust background analgesia

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Fentanyl films are **not bioequivalent** to other fentanyl preparations.
- Fentanyl preparations for the treatment of breakthrough pain are not interchangeable; if patients are switched from another fentanyl-containing preparation, a new dose titration is required.

#### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, weight-based doses may need to be calculated on the basis of ideal bodyweight.

#### ● UNLICENSED USE

- With intravenous use Not licensed for use in children under 2 years; infusion not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

- **CAUTIONS** Cerebral tumour • diabetes mellitus (with *Actiq*® lozenges) • impaired consciousness

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- With transdermal use Transdermal fentanyl patches are not suitable for acute pain or in those patients whose analgesic requirements are changing rapidly because the long time to steady state prevents rapid titration of the dose. Risk of fatal respiratory depression, particularly in patients not previously treated with a strong opioid analgesic; manufacturer recommends use only in opioid tolerant patients.
- With intravenous use Repeated intra-operative doses should be given with care since the resulting respiratory depression can persist postoperatively and occasionally it may become apparent for the first time postoperatively when monitoring of the patient might be less intensive.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### ● Common or very common

- With parenteral use Allergic dermatitis • apnoea • arrhythmia • hypertension • movement disorders • muscle rigidity • respiratory disorders • vascular disorders
- With transdermal use Anxiety • appetite decreased • asthenia • depression • diarrhoea • dyspnoea • gastrointestinal discomfort • hypertension • insomnia • malaise • muscle complaints • peripheral oedema • sensation abnormal • skin reactions • temperature sensation altered • tremor

##### ► Uncommon

- With parenteral use Airway complication of anaesthesia • chills • hiccups • hypothermia
- With transdermal use Consciousness impaired • cyanosis • disorientation • fever • gastrointestinal disorders • influenza like illness • memory loss • respiratory disorders • seizures • sexual dysfunction • vision blurred

##### ► Rare or very rare

- With transdermal use Apnoea

##### ► Frequency not known

- With buccal or oral use Adrenal insufficiency (long term use) • androgen deficiency • anxiety • appetite decreased • asthenia • circulatory depression • coma • depersonalisation • depression • diarrhoea • dyspnoea • emotional lability • fever • gait abnormal • gastrointestinal discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • gingival haemorrhage •

- gingivitis • hypotension exacerbated • injury • loss of consciousness • malaise • movement disorders • oral disorders • peripheral oedema • seizure • sensation abnormal • shock • sleep disorders • speech slurred • taste altered • thinking abnormal • throat oedema • ulcer • vasodilation • vision disorders • weight decreased
- With parenteral use Biliary spasm • cardiac arrest • cough • hyperalgesia • loss of consciousness • seizure
- With transdermal use Myoclonus

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Muscle rigidity** Intravenous administration of fentanyl can cause muscle rigidity, which may involve the thoracic muscles. Manufacturer advises administration by slow intravenous injection to avoid; higher doses may require premedication with benzodiazepines and muscle relaxants.

**Transdermal use** Monitor patients using patches for increased side-effects if fever is present (increased absorption possible); avoid exposing application site to external heat, for example a hot bath or sauna (may also increase absorption).

#### ● BREAST FEEDING

- With buccal use Manufacturer advises avoid during treatment and for 5 days after last administration—present in milk.
- With intravenous use Manufacturer advises avoid during treatment and for 24 hours after last administration—present in milk.
- With transdermal use Manufacturer advises avoid during treatment and for 72 hours after removal of patch—present in milk.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid use or reduce dose; opioid effects increased and prolonged and increased cerebral sensitivity occurs.

#### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- With transdermal use For *patches*, apply to dry, non-irritated, non-irradiated, non-hairy skin on torso or upper arm, removing after 72 hours and siting replacement patch on a different area (avoid using the same area for several days).
- With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, injection solution may be diluted in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.
- With buccal use Patients should be advised to place the lozenge in the mouth against the cheek and move it around the mouth using the applicator; each lozenge should be sucked over a 15 minute period. In patients with a dry mouth, water may be used to moisten the buccal mucosa. Patients with diabetes should be advised each lozenge contains approximately 2 g glucose.

#### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

- With transdermal use Prescriptions for fentanyl patches can be written to show the strength in terms of the release rate and it is acceptable to write '*Fentanyl 25 patches*' to prescribe patches that release fentanyl 25 micrograms per hour. The dosage should be expressed in terms of the interval between applying a patch and replacing it with a new one, e.g. '*one patch to be applied every 72 hours*'. The total quantity of patches to be supplied should be written in words and figures.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

- With transdermal use Patients and carers should be informed about safe use, including correct administration and disposal, strict adherence to dosage instructions, and the symptoms and signs of opioid overdose. Patches should be removed immediately in case of breathing difficulties, marked drowsiness, confusion, dizziness, or impaired speech, and patients and carers should seek prompt medical attention.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Fentanyl lozenges for pain

[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/fentanyl-lozenges-for-pain](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/fentanyl-lozenges-for-pain)

Medicines for Children leaflet: Fentanyl patches for pain  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/fentanyl-patches-for-pain](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/fentanyl-patches-for-pain)

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection, infusion, solution for infusion

### Solution for injection

#### ▶ Fentanyl (Non-proprietary)

**Fentanyl (as Fentanyl citrate) 50 microgram per 1 ml** Fentanyl 100micrograms/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £7.50–£13.95 [CD2]  
 Fentanyl 500micrograms/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £12.50–£16.15 [CD2]

#### ▶ Sublimaze (Piramal Critical Care Ltd)

**Fentanyl (as Fentanyl citrate) 50 microgram per 1 ml** Sublimaze 500micrograms/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £6.53 [CD2]

### Solution for infusion

#### ▶ Fentanyl (Non-proprietary)

**Fentanyl (as Fentanyl citrate) 50 microgram per 1 ml** Fentanyl 2.5mg/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £5.00 [CD2]

### Transdermal patch

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

#### ▶ Fentanyl (Non-proprietary)

**Fentanyl 12 microgram per 1 hour** Fentanyl 12micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £ DT = £12.59 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 25 microgram per 1 hour** Fentanyl 25micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £ DT = £17.99 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 50 microgram per 1 hour** Fentanyl 50micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £ DT = £33.66 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 75 microgram per 1 hour** Fentanyl 75micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £ DT = £46.99 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 100 microgram per 1 hour** Fentanyl 100micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £ DT = £57.86 [CD2]

#### ▶ Durogesic DTrans (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

**Fentanyl 12 microgram per 1 hour** Durogesic DTrans 12micrograms transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £12.59 DT = £12.59 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 25 microgram per 1 hour** Durogesic DTrans 25micrograms transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £17.99 DT = £17.99 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 50 microgram per 1 hour** Durogesic DTrans 50micrograms transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £33.66 DT = £33.66 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 75 microgram per 1 hour** Durogesic DTrans 75micrograms transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £46.99 DT = £46.99 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 100 microgram per 1 hour** Durogesic DTrans 100micrograms transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £57.86 DT = £57.86 [CD2]

#### ▶ Fencino (Ethyparm UK Ltd)

**Fentanyl 12 microgram per 1 hour** Fencino 12micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £8.46 DT = £12.59 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 25 microgram per 1 hour** Fencino 25micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £12.10 DT = £17.99 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 50 microgram per 1 hour** Fencino 50micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £22.62 DT = £33.66 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 75 microgram per 1 hour** Fencino 75micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £31.54 DT = £46.99 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 100 microgram per 1 hour** Fencino 100micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £38.88 DT = £57.86 [CD2]

#### ▶ Fentalis (Sandoz Ltd)

**Fentanyl 25 microgram per 1 hour** Fentalis Reservoir 25micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £22.89 DT = £17.99 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 50 microgram per 1 hour** Fentalis Reservoir 50micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £42.77 DT = £33.66 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 75 microgram per 1 hour** Fentalis Reservoir 75micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £59.62 DT = £46.99 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 100 microgram per 1 hour** Fentalis Reservoir 100micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £73.49 DT = £57.86 [CD2]

#### ▶ Matrifen (Teva UK Ltd)

**Fentanyl 12 microgram per 1 hour** Matrifen 12micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £7.52 DT = £12.59 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 25 microgram per 1 hour** Matrifen 25micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £10.76 DT = £17.99 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 50 microgram per 1 hour** Matrifen 50micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £20.12 DT = £33.66 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 75 microgram per 1 hour** Matrifen 75micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £28.06 DT = £46.99 [CD2]  
**Fentanyl 100 microgram per 1 hour** Matrifen 100micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £34.59 DT = £57.86 [CD2]

#### ▶ Mezolar Matrix (Sandoz Ltd)

**Fentanyl 12 microgram per 1 hour** Mezolar Matrix 12micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £7.53 DT = £12.59 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 25 microgram per 1 hour** Mezolar Matrix 25micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £10.77 DT = £17.99 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 37.5 microgram per 1 hour** Mezolar Matrix 37.5microgram/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £15.46 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 50 microgram per 1 hour** Mezolar Matrix 50micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £20.13 DT = £33.66 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 75 microgram per 1 hour** Mezolar Matrix 75micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £28.07 DT = £46.99 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 100 microgram per 1 hour** Mezolar Matrix 100micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £34.60 DT = £57.86 [CD2]

#### ▶ Opiodur (RX Farma)

**Fentanyl 12 microgram per 1 hour** Opiodur 12micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £7.14 DT = £12.59 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 25 microgram per 1 hour** Opiodur 25micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £10.22 DT = £17.99 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 50 microgram per 1 hour** Opiodur 50micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £19.11 DT = £33.66 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 75 microgram per 1 hour** Opiodur 75micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £26.66 DT = £46.99 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 100 microgram per 1 hour** Opiodur 100micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £32.84 DT = £57.86 [CD2]

#### ▶ Osmanil (Zentiva)

**Fentanyl 12 microgram per 1 hour** Osmanil 12micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £18.11 DT = £12.59 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 25 microgram per 1 hour** Osmanil 25micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £26.94 DT = £17.99 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 50 microgram per 1 hour** Osmanil 50micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £50.32 DT = £33.66 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 75 microgram per 1 hour** Osmanil 75micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £70.15 DT = £46.99 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 100 microgram per 1 hour** Osmanil 100micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £86.46 DT = £57.86 [CD2]

#### ▶ Tilofyl (Tilomed Laboratories Ltd)

**Fentanyl 25 microgram per 1 hour** Tilofyl 25micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £27.00 DT = £17.99 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 50 microgram per 1 hour** Tilofyl 50micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £51.00 DT = £33.66 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 75 microgram per 1 hour** Tilofyl 75micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £71.00 DT = £46.99 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 100 microgram per 1 hour** Tilofyl 100micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £88.00 DT = £57.86 [CD2]

#### ▶ Victanyl (Actavis UK Ltd)

**Fentanyl 12 microgram per 1 hour** Victanyl 12micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £12.58 DT = £12.59 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 25 microgram per 1 hour** Victanyl 25micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £25.89 DT = £17.99 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 50 microgram per 1 hour** Victanyl 50micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £48.36 DT = £33.66 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 75 microgram per 1 hour** Victanyl 75micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £67.41 DT = £46.99 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 100 microgram per 1 hour** Victanyl 100micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £83.09 DT = £57.86 [CD2]

#### ▶ Yemex (Sandoz Ltd)

**Fentanyl 12 microgram per 1 hour** Yemex 12micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £12.59 DT = £12.59 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 25 microgram per 1 hour** Yemex 25micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £17.99 DT = £17.99 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 50 microgram per 1 hour** Yemex 50micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £33.66 DT = £33.66 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 75 microgram per 1 hour** Yemex 75micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £46.99 DT = £46.99 [CD2]

**Fentanyl 100 microgram per 1 hour** Yemex 100micrograms/hour transdermal patches | 5 patch [PoM] £57.86 DT = £57.86 [CD2]



**Lozenge**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

► **Actiq** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Fentanyl (as Fentanyl citrate) 200 microgram** Actiq  
200microgram lozenges with integral oromucosal applicator |  
3 lozenge [PoM] £21.05 DT = £21.05 [CD2] | 30 lozenge [PoM] £210.41  
DT = £210.41 [CD2]

**Fentanyl (as Fentanyl citrate) 400 microgram** Actiq  
400microgram lozenges with integral oromucosal applicator |  
3 lozenge [PoM] £21.05 DT = £21.05 [CD2] | 30 lozenge [PoM] £210.41  
DT = £210.41 [CD2]

**Fentanyl (as Fentanyl citrate) 600 microgram** Actiq  
600microgram lozenges with integral oromucosal applicator |  
3 lozenge [PoM] £21.05 DT = £21.05 [CD2] | 30 lozenge [PoM] £210.41  
DT = £210.41 [CD2]

**Fentanyl (as Fentanyl citrate) 800 microgram** Actiq  
800microgram lozenges with integral oromucosal applicator |  
3 lozenge [PoM] £21.05 DT = £21.05 [CD2] | 30 lozenge [PoM] £210.41  
DT = £210.41 [CD2]

**Fentanyl (as Fentanyl citrate) 1.2 mg** Actiq 1.2mg lozenges with  
integral oromucosal applicator | 3 lozenge [PoM] £21.05 DT =  
£21.05 [CD2] | 30 lozenge [PoM] £210.41 DT = £210.41 [CD2]

**Fentanyl (as Fentanyl citrate) 1.6 mg** Actiq 1.6mg lozenges with  
integral oromucosal applicator | 3 lozenge [PoM] £21.05 [CD2] |  
30 lozenge [PoM] £210.41 [CD2]

F 273

**Hydromorphone hydrochloride**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Severe pain in cancer**

- **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- Child 12-17 years: 1.3 mg every 4 hours, dose to be increased if necessary according to severity of pain
- **BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- Child 12-17 years: 4 mg every 12 hours, dose to be increased if necessary according to severity of pain

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute abdomen● **CAUTIONS** Pancreatitis · toxic psychosis● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids● **SIDE-EFFECTS****GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · anxiety · appetite decreased · asthenia · sleep disorders
- **Uncommon** Depression · diarrhoea · dyspnoea · erectile dysfunction · malaise · movement disorders · paraesthesia · peripheral oedema · taste altered · tremor
- **Rare or very rare** Lethargy
- **Frequency not known** Hyperalgesia · paralytic ileus · seizure · withdrawal syndrome neonatal

● **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—no information available.● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid use or reduce dose; opioid effects increased and prolonged and increased cerebral sensitivity occurs.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *immediate-release* capsules, swallow whole capsule or sprinkle contents on soft food. For *modified-release* capsules, swallow whole or open capsule and sprinkle contents on soft cold food (swallow the pellets within the capsule whole; do not crush or chew).

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer hydromorphone hydrochloride capsules and modified-release capsules.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

**Modified-release capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

► **Palladone SR** (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Hydromorphone hydrochloride 2 mg** Palladone SR 2mg capsules |  
56 capsule [PoM] £20.98 [CD2]

**Hydromorphone hydrochloride 4 mg** Palladone SR 4mg capsules |  
56 capsule [PoM] £28.75 [CD2]

**Hydromorphone hydrochloride 8 mg** Palladone SR 8mg capsules |  
56 capsule [PoM] £56.08 [CD2]

**Hydromorphone hydrochloride 16 mg** Palladone SR 16mg capsules |  
56 capsule [PoM] £106.53 [CD2]

**Hydromorphone hydrochloride 24 mg** Palladone SR 24mg capsules |  
56 capsule [PoM] £159.82 [CD2]

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

► **Palladone** (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Hydromorphone hydrochloride 1.3 mg** Palladone 1.3mg capsules |  
56 capsule [PoM] £8.82 [CD2]

**Hydromorphone hydrochloride 2.6 mg** Palladone 2.6mg capsules |  
56 capsule [PoM] £17.64 [CD2]

F 273

**Morphine**

12-Dec-2016

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Pain**► **BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION**

- **Neonate:** Initially 100 micrograms/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response.
- **Child 1-5 months:** Initially 100–200 micrograms/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response
- **Child 6 months-1 year:** Initially 100–200 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- **Child 2-11 years:** Initially 200 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- **Child 12-17 years:** Initially 2.5–10 mg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- **INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**
- **Neonate:** 50 micrograms/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response, dose to be administered over at least 5 minutes, alternatively (by intravenous injection) initially 50 micrograms/kg, dose to be administered over at least 5 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 5–20 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response.
- **Child 1-5 months:** 100 micrograms/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response, dose to be administered over at least 5 minutes, alternatively (by intravenous injection) initially 100 micrograms/kg, dose to be administered over at least 5 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 10–30 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response
- **Child 6 months-11 years:** 100 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response, dose to be administered over at least 5 minutes, alternatively (by intravenous injection) initially 100 micrograms/kg, dose to be administered over at least 5 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 20–30 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response
- **Child 12-17 years:** 5 mg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response, dose to be administered over at least 5 minutes, alternatively (by intravenous injection) initially 5 mg, dose to be administered over at least 5 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 20–30 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response
- **BY MOUTH, OR BY RECTUM**
- **Child 1-2 months:** Initially 50–100 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- **Child 3-5 years:** 100–150 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- **Child 6-11 months:** 200 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response

- ▶ Child 1 year: Initially 200–300 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- ▶ Child 2–11 years: Initially 200–300 micrograms/kg every 4 hours (max. per dose 10 mg), adjusted according to response
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 5–10 mg every 4 hours, adjusted according to response
- ▶ BY CONTINUOUS SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child 1–2 months: 10 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response
- ▶ Child 3 months–17 years: 20 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

#### Pain (with modified-release 12-hourly preparations)

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child: Every 12 hours, dose adjusted according to daily morphine requirements, dosage requirements should be reviewed if the brand is altered

#### Pain (with modified-release 24-hourly preparations)

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child: Every 24 hours, dose adjusted according to daily morphine requirements, dosage requirements should be reviewed if the brand is altered

#### Neonatal opioid withdrawal (under expert supervision)

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 40 micrograms/kg every 4 hours until symptoms controlled, dose to be increased if necessary; reduce frequency gradually over 6–10 days, stop when 40 micrograms/kg once daily achieved, dose may vary—consult local guidelines.

#### Persistent cyanosis in congenital heart disease when blood glucose less than 3 mmol/litre (following glucose)

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child: 100 micrograms/kg

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ The doses stated refer equally to morphine hydrochloride and sulfate.

#### • UNLICENSED USE

- ▶ With oral use *Oramorph*® solution and *MXL*® capsules not licensed for use in children under 1 year. *Sevredol*® tablets not licensed for use in children under 3 years. *Oramorph*® unit dose vials and *Filnarine*® SR tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years. *MST Continus*® preparations licensed to treat children with cancer pain (age-range not specified by manufacturer).
- ▶ With rectal use Suppositories are not licensed for use in children.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Do not confuse modified-release 12-hourly preparations with 24-hourly preparations, see *Prescribing and dispensing information*.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute abdomen • delayed gastric emptying • heart failure secondary to chronic lung disease • phaeochromocytoma
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac arrhythmias • pancreatitis • severe cor pulmonale
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ Common or very common
  - ▶ With oral use Appetite decreased • asthenic conditions • gastrointestinal discomfort • insomnia • neuromuscular dysfunction
  - ▶ Uncommon
  - ▶ With oral use Agitation • bronchospasm • ileus • mood altered • myoclonus • paraesthesia • peripheral oedema • pulmonary oedema • seizure • syncope • taste altered

#### ▶ Frequency not known

- ▶ With oral use Amenorrhoea • biliary pain • cough decreased • hyperalgesia • hypertension • pancreatitis exacerbated • sexual dysfunction • thinking abnormal • ureteral spasm
- ▶ With parenteral use Alertness decreased • bile duct disorders • contact dermatitis • mood altered • myoclonus • postural hypotension • sexual dysfunction • ureteral spasm • urinary disorders • vision disorders

- **BREAST FEEDING** Therapeutic doses unlikely to affect infant.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid use or reduce dose; opioid effects increased and prolonged; increased cerebral sensitivity.

#### • DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ With intravenous use For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute with Glucose 5% or 10% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.
- ▶ With intravenous use in neonates *Neonatal intensive care*, dilute 2.5 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 5 micrograms/kg/hour.
- ▶ With oral use For *modified release capsules*—swallow whole or open capsule and sprinkle contents on soft food.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Modified-release preparations are available as 12-hourly or 24-hourly formulations; prescribers must ensure that the correct preparation is prescribed. Preparations that should be given 12-hourly include *Filnarine*® SR, *MST Continus*®, *Morphgesic*® SR and *Zomorph*®. Preparations that should be given 24-hourly include *MXL*®.

Prescriptions must specify the 'form'.

- ▶ With rectal use Both the strength of the suppositories and the morphine salt contained in them must be specified by the prescriber.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer morphine modified-release capsules.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Morphine for pain

[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/morphine-for-pain](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/morphine-for-pain)

#### • EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY

Morphine Oral Solutions Prescription-only medicines or schedule 2 controlled drug. The proportion of morphine hydrochloride may be altered when specified by the prescriber; if above 13 mg per 5 mL the solution becomes a schedule 2 controlled drug. It is usual to adjust the strength so that the dose volume is 5 or 10 mL.

Oral solutions of morphine can be prescribed by writing the formula:

Morphine hydrochloride 5 mg  
Chloroform water to 5 mL

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral solution, solution for injection, infusion, solution for infusion, suppository

#### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 25

- ▶ **MST Continus** (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Morphine sulfate 5 mg** MST Continus 5mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM]  
£3.29 DT = £3.29 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 10 mg** MST Continus 10mg tablets |  
60 tablet [PoM] £5.20 DT = £5.20 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 15 mg** MST Continus 15mg tablets |  
60 tablet [PoM] £9.10 DT = £9.10 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 30 mg** MST Continus 30mg tablets |  
60 tablet [PoM] £12.47 DT = £12.47 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 60 mg** MST Continus 60mg tablets |  
60 tablet [PoM] £24.32 DT = £24.32 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 100 mg** MST Continus 100mg tablets |  
60 tablet [PoM] £38.50 DT = £38.50 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 200 mg** MST Continus 200mg tablets |  
60 tablet [PoM] £81.34 DT = £81.34 [CD2]

► **Morphgesic SR** (AMCO)

**Morphine sulfate 10 mg** Morphgesic SR 10mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £3.85 DT = £5.20 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 30 mg** Morphgesic SR 30mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £9.24 DT = £12.47 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 60 mg** Morphgesic SR 60mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £18.04 DT = £24.32 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 100 mg** Morphgesic SR 100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £28.54 DT = £38.50 [CD2]

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

► **Sevredol** (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Morphine sulfate 10 mg** Sevredol 10mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £5.31 DT = £5.31 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 20 mg** Sevredol 20mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £10.61 DT = £10.61 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 50 mg** Sevredol 50mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £28.02 DT = £28.02 [CD2]

**Suppository**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

► **Morphine (Non-proprietary)**

**Morphine sulfate 10 mg** Morphine sulfate 10mg suppositories | 12 suppository [PoM] £19.45 DT = £19.45 [CD2]

**Solution for injection**► **Morphine (Non-proprietary)**

**Morphine sulfate 1 mg per 1 ml** Morphine sulfate 5mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £39.60 [CD2]

Morphine sulfate 1mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £28.70 [CD2]

Morphine sulfate 10mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £13.50–£15.00 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 10 mg per 1 ml** Morphine sulfate 10mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £10.30 DT = £9.36 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 15 mg per 1 ml** Morphine sulfate 15mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £10.74 DT = £10.74 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 20 mg per 1 ml** Morphine sulfate 20mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £59.70 DT = £59.70 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 30 mg per 1 ml** Morphine sulfate 30mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £11.49 DT = £11.49 [CD2]

Morphine sulfate 60mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £10.07 DT = £10.07 [CD2]

**Modified-release capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

► **MXL** (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Morphine sulfate 30 mg** MXL 30mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £10.91 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 60 mg** MXL 60mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £14.95 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 90 mg** MXL 90mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £22.04 DT = £22.04 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 120 mg** MXL 120mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £29.15 DT = £29.15 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 150 mg** MXL 150mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £36.43 DT = £36.43 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 200 mg** MXL 200mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £46.15 [CD2]

► **Zomorph** (Ethypharm UK Ltd)

**Morphine sulfate 10 mg** Zomorph 10mg modified-release capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £3.47 DT = £3.47 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 30 mg** Zomorph 30mg modified-release capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £8.30 DT = £8.30 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 60 mg** Zomorph 60mg modified-release capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £16.20 DT = £16.20 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 100 mg** Zomorph 100mg modified-release capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £21.80 DT = £21.80 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 200 mg** Zomorph 200mg modified-release capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £43.60 DT = £43.60 [CD2]

**Solution for infusion**► **Morphine (Non-proprietary)**

**Morphine sulfate 1 mg per 1 ml** Morphine sulfate 50mg/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £5.78 DT = £5.78 [CD2] | 10 vial [PoM] £38.70 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 2 mg per 1 ml** Morphine sulfate 100mg/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £6.48 [CD2] | 10 vial [PoM] £64.80 [CD2]

**Oral solution**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

► **Morphine (Non-proprietary)**

**Morphine sulfate 2 mg per 1 ml** Morphine sulfate 10mg/5ml oral solution | 100 ml [PoM] £1.68–£1.82 [CD5] | 300 ml [PoM] £5.45 DT = £5.45 [CD5] | 500 ml [PoM] £7.10–£9.10 [CD5]

► **Oramorph** (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)

**Morphine sulfate 2 mg per 1 ml** Oramorph 10mg/5ml oral solution | 100 ml [PoM] £1.89 [CD5] | 300 ml [PoM] £5.45 DT = £5.45 [CD5] | 500 ml [PoM] £8.50 [CD5]

**Morphine sulfate 20 mg per 1 ml** Oramorph 20mg/ml concentrated oral solution sugar-free | 30 ml [PoM] £4.98 [CD2] sugar-free | 120 ml [PoM] £19.50 DT = £19.50 [CD2]

**Modified-release granules**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 13

► **MST Continus** (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Morphine sulfate 20 mg** MST Continus Suspension 20mg granules sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £24.58 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 30 mg** MST Continus Suspension 30mg granules sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £25.54 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 60 mg** MST Continus Suspension 60mg granules sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £51.09 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 100 mg** MST Continus Suspension 100mg granules sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £85.15 [CD2]

**Morphine sulfate 200 mg** MST Continus Suspension 200mg granules sachets sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] £170.30 [CD2]

**Morphine with cyclizine**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider morphine p. 282, cyclizine p. 260.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****CYCLIMORPH-10®****Moderate to severe pain (short-term use only)**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 12-17 years: 1 mL, do not repeat dose more often than every 4 hours; maximum 3 doses per day

**CYCLIMORPH-15®****Moderate to severe pain (short-term use only)**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 12-17 years: 1 mL, do not repeat dose more often than every 4 hours; maximum 3 doses per day

● **CAUTIONS** Myocardial infarction (cyclizine may aggravate severe heart failure and counteract the haemodynamic benefits of opioids) • not recommended in palliative care

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, sedating • opioids

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for injection**► **Cyclimorph** (AMCO)

**Morphine tartrate 15 mg per 1 ml, Cyclizine tartrate 50 mg per 1 ml** Cyclimorph 15 solution for injection 1ml ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £9.12 [CD2]

**Morphine tartrate 10 mg per 1 ml, Cyclizine tartrate 50 mg per 1 ml** Cyclimorph 10 solution for injection 1ml ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £8.77 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride**

19-May-2017

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Moderate to severe pain in palliative care**

► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Child 1 month-11 years: Initially 200 micrograms/kg every 4–6 hours (max. per dose 5 mg), dose to be increased if necessary according to severity of pain

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 5 mg every 4–6 hours, dose to be increased if necessary according to severity of pain
- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child 8–11 years: Initially 5 mg every 12 hours, dose to be increased if necessary according to severity of pain, use 12-hourly modified-release preparations for this dose; see *Prescribing and dispensing information*
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 10 mg every 12 hours, dose to be increased if necessary according to severity of pain, use 12-hourly modified-release preparations for this dose; see *Prescribing and dispensing information*

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ 2 mg oral oxycodone is approximately equivalent to 1 mg parenteral oxycodone.

#### ONEXILA XL®

##### Severe pain

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 10 mg every 24 hours, dose to be increased if necessary according to severity of pain, some patients may require higher doses than the maximum daily dose; maximum 400 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Oral solution, *Oxynorm*®, *Longtec*®, and *Oxycontin*® not licensed for use in children. Capsules and *Dolcodon*® PR not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Do not confuse modified-release 12-hourly preparations with 24-hourly preparations, see *Prescribing and dispensing information*.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute abdomen · chronic constipation · cor pulmonale · delayed gastric emptying
- **CAUTIONS** Pancreatitis · toxic psychosis
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Common or very common** Anxiety · appetite decreased · asthenia · bronchospasm · cognitive impairment · depression · diarrhoea · dyspnoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · hiccups · insomnia · lethargy · mood altered · movement disorders · perception altered · psychiatric disorders · skin reactions · tremor · urinary frequency increased
- ▶ **Uncommon** Biliary colic · burping · chest pain · cough · chills · dehydration · dysphagia · gastrointestinal disorders · hyperacusia · increased risk of infection · injury · lacrimation disorder · malaise · memory loss · migraine · neuromuscular dysfunction · oedema · oral disorders · pain · seizure · sensation abnormal · sexual dysfunction · SIADH · speech disorder · supraventricular tachycardia · syncope · taste altered · thirst · vasodilation · voice alteration
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Haemorrhage · lymphadenopathy · muscle spasms · postural hypotension · photosensitivity reaction · weight changes
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Aggression · amenorrhoea · cholestasis
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—avoid.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in moderate to severe impairment.
- Dose adjustments** Max. initial dose 2.5 mg every 6 hours in patients not currently treated with an opioid with mild impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Opioid effects increased and prolonged and increased cerebral sensitivity occurs. Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- Dose adjustments** Max. initial dose 2.5 mg every 6 hours in patients not currently treated with an opioid with mild to moderate impairment.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Modified-release preparations are available as 12-hourly or 24-hourly formulations. Preparations that should be given 12-hourly include *Abtard*®, *Carexil*®, *Leveraxo*®, *Longtec*®, *Oxeltra*®, *OxyContin*®, *Oxylan*®, *Reltebon*®, and *Zomestine*®. Preparations that should be given 24-hourly include *Onexila*® XL.

**Palliative care** For further information on the use of oxycodone in palliative care, see [www.palliativedrugs.com/formulary/en/oxycodone.html](http://www.palliativedrugs.com/formulary/en/oxycodone.html).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution, solution for infusion

#### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 25

##### ▶ Oxycodone hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 15 mg** Oxycodone 15mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £38.12 DT = £38.12 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 30 mg** Oxycodone 30mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £76.23 DT = £76.23 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 60 mg** Oxycodone 60mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £152.49 DT = £152.49 [CD2]

##### ▶ Abtard (Ethypharm UK Ltd)

**Abtard 5mg modified-release tablets** | 28 tablet [PoM] £6.26 DT = £12.52 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg** Abtard 10mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £12.52 DT = £25.04 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 15 mg** Abtard 15mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £19.06 DT = £38.12 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 20 mg** Abtard 20mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £25.04 DT = £50.08 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 30 mg** Abtard 30mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £38.11 DT = £76.23 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 40 mg** Abtard 40mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £50.09 DT = £100.19 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 60 mg** Abtard 60mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £76.24 DT = £152.49 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 80 mg** Abtard 80mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £100.19 DT = £200.39 [CD2]

##### ▶ Carexil (Sandoz Ltd)

**Carexil 5mg modified-release tablets** | 28 tablet [PoM] £6.26 DT = £12.52 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg** Carexil 10mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £12.52 DT = £25.04 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 20 mg** Carexil 20mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £25.04 DT = £50.08 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 40 mg** Carexil 40mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £50.11 DT = £100.19 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 80 mg** Carexil 80mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £120.23 DT = £240.39 [CD2]

##### ▶ Leveraxo (Mylan)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 5 mg** Leveraxo 5mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £12.39 DT = £12.52 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg** Leveraxo 10mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £24.79 DT = £25.04 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 20 mg** Leveraxo 20mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £49.58 DT = £50.08 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 30 mg** Leveraxo 30mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £75.47 DT = £76.23 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 40 mg** Leveraxo 40mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £99.19 DT = £100.19 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 60 mg** Leveraxo 60mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £150.97 DT = £152.49 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 80 mg** Leveraxo 80mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £198.39 DT = £200.39 [CD2]

##### ▶ Longtec (Qdem Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 5 mg** Longtec 5mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £6.26 DT = £12.52 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg** Longtec 10mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £12.52 DT = £25.04 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 15 mg** Longtec 15mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £19.06 DT = £38.12 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 20 mg** Longtec 20mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £25.04 DT = £50.08 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 30 mg** Longtec 30mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £38.11 DT = £76.23 [CD2]



**Oxycodone hydrochloride 40 mg** Longtec 40mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £50.09 DT = £100.19 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 60 mg** Longtec 60mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £76.24 DT = £152.49 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 80 mg** Longtec 80mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £100.19 DT = £200.39 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 120 mg** Longtec 120mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £152.51 DT = £305.02 [CD2]

► **Onexila XL** (Aspire Pharma Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg** Onexila XL 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £12.52 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 20 mg** Onexila XL 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £12.52 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 40 mg** Onexila XL 40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £25.04 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 80 mg** Onexila XL 80mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £50.09 [CD2]

► **Oxeltra** (Wockhardt UK Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 5 mg** Oxeltra 5mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £11.27 DT = £12.52 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg** Oxeltra 10mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £22.54 DT = £25.04 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 15 mg** Oxeltra 15mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £34.31 DT = £38.12 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 20 mg** Oxeltra 20mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £45.07 DT = £50.08 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 30 mg** Oxeltra 30mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £68.61 DT = £76.23 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 40 mg** Oxeltra 40mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £90.17 DT = £100.19 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 60 mg** Oxeltra 60mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £137.24 DT = £152.49 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 80 mg** Oxeltra 80mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £180.35 DT = £200.39 [CD2]

► **OxyContin** (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 5 mg** OxyContin 5mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £12.52 DT = £12.52 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg** OxyContin 10mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £25.04 DT = £25.04 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 15 mg** OxyContin 15mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £38.12 DT = £38.12 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 20 mg** OxyContin 20mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £50.08 DT = £50.08 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 30 mg** OxyContin 30mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £76.23 DT = £76.23 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 40 mg** OxyContin 40mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £100.19 DT = £100.19 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 60 mg** OxyContin 60mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £152.49 DT = £152.49 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 80 mg** OxyContin 80mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £200.39 DT = £200.39 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 120 mg** OxyContin 120mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £305.02 DT = £305.02 [CD2]

► **Oxylan** (Chanelle Medical UK Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 5 mg** Oxylan 5mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £12.50 DT = £12.52 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg** Oxylan 10mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £24.99 DT = £25.04 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 20 mg** Oxylan 20mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £49.98 DT = £50.08 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 40 mg** Oxylan 40mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £99.98 DT = £100.19 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 80 mg** Oxylan 80mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £199.97 DT = £200.39 [CD2]

► **Reltebon** (Actavis UK Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 5 mg** Reltebon 5mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £6.26 DT = £12.52 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg** Reltebon 10mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £12.52 DT = £25.04 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 15 mg** Reltebon 15mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £19.06 DT = £38.12 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 20 mg** Reltebon 20mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £25.04 DT = £50.08 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 30 mg** Reltebon 30mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £38.11 DT = £76.23 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 40 mg** Reltebon 40mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £50.09 DT = £100.19 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 60 mg** Reltebon 60mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £76.24 DT = £152.49 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 80 mg** Reltebon 80mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £100.19 DT = £200.39 [CD2]

► **Zomestine** (Accord Healthcare Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 5 mg** Zomestine 5mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £11.89 DT = £12.52 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg** Zomestine 10mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £23.79 DT = £25.04 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 20 mg** Zomestine 20mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £47.58 DT = £50.08 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 40 mg** Zomestine 40mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £95.18 DT = £100.19 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 80 mg** Zomestine 80mg modified-release tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £190.37 DT = £200.39 [CD2]

**Solution for injection**

► **Oxycodone hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Oxycodone 20mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £16.00 DT = £16.00 [CD2]

Oxycodone 10mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £8.00 DT = £8.00 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Oxycodone 50mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £70.10 DT = £70.10 [CD2]

► **OxyNorm** (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** OxyNorm 20mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £16.00 DT = £16.00 [CD2]

OxyNorm 10mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £8.00 DT = £8.00 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 ml** OxyNorm 50mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £70.10 DT = £70.10 [CD2]

► **Shortec** (Qdem Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Shortec 20mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £13.60 DT = £16.00 [CD2]

Shortec 10mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £6.80 DT = £8.00 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Shortec 50mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £59.59 DT = £70.10 [CD2]

**Oral solution**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

► **Oxycodone hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml** Oxycodone 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 250 ml [PoM] £9.71 DT = £9.71 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Oxycodone 10mg/1ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 120 ml [PoM] £46.63 DT = £46.63 [CD2]

► **OxyNorm** (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml** OxyNorm liquid 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 250 ml [PoM] £9.71 DT = £9.71 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** OxyNorm 10mg/ml concentrate oral solution sugar-free | 120 ml [PoM] £46.63 DT = £46.63 [CD2]

► **Shortec** (Qdem Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml** Shortec liquid 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 250 ml [PoM] £8.25 DT = £9.71 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Shortec 10mg/ml concentrate oral solution sugar-free | 120 ml [PoM] £39.64 DT = £46.63 [CD2]

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

► **Lynlor** (Actavis UK Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 5 mg** Lynlor 5mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £6.86 DT = £11.43 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg** Lynlor 10mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £13.72 DT = £22.86 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 20 mg** Lynlor 20mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £27.43 DT = £45.71 [CD2]

► **OxyNorm** (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 5 mg** OxyNorm 5mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £11.43 DT = £11.43 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg** OxyNorm 10mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £22.86 DT = £22.86 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 20 mg** OxyNorm 20mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £45.71 DT = £45.71 [CD2]

► **Shortec** (Qdem Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 5 mg** Shortec 5mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £6.86 DT = £11.43 [CD2]



**Oxycodone hydrochloride 10 mg** Shortec 10mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £13.72 DT = £22.86 [CD2]

**Oxycodone hydrochloride 20 mg** Shortec 20mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £27.43 DT = £45.71 [CD2]

F 273

## Papaveretum

14-Mar-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Postoperative analgesia | Severe chronic pain

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Neonate: 115 micrograms/kg every 4 hours if required.

- Child 1–11 months: 154 micrograms/kg every 4 hours if required
- Child 1–5 years: 1.93–3.85 mg every 4 hours if required
- Child 6–11 years: 3.85–7.7 mg every 4 hours if required
- Child 12–17 years: 7.7–15.4 mg every 4 hours if required

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: Use 25 to 50% of the corresponding subcutaneous/intramuscular dose.

► Child: Use 25 to 50% of the corresponding subcutaneous/intramuscular dose

#### Premedication

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Neonate: 115 micrograms/kg.

- Child 1–11 months: 154 micrograms/kg
- Child 1–5 years: 1.93–3.85 mg
- Child 6–11 years: 3.85–7.7 mg
- Child 12–17 years: 7.7–15.4 mg

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Do **not** confuse with papaverine.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Heart failure secondary to chronic lung disease · phaeochromocytoma
- **CAUTIONS** Supraventricular tachycardia
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Biliary spasm · dysuria · hypothermia · mood altered · postural hypotension · sexual dysfunction · ureteral spasm
- **BREAST FEEDING** Therapeutic doses unlikely to affect infant.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid use or reduce dose; opioid effects increased and prolonged and increased cerebral sensitivity occurs.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The name **Omnopon®** was formerly used for papaveretum preparations.  
Papaveretum is a mixture of 253 parts of morphine hydrochloride, 23 parts of papaverine hydrochloride and 20 parts of codeine hydrochloride.
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Papaveretum is less suitable for prescribing.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

#### Solution for injection

► **Papaveretum (Non-proprietary)**

**Papaveretum 15.4 mg per 1 ml** Papaveretum 15.4mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £48.96 [CD2]

## Pethidine hydrochloride

(Meperidine)

F 273

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Obstetric analgesia

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Child 12–17 years: 1 mg/kg (max. per dose 100 mg), then 1 mg/kg after 1–3 hours if required; maximum 400 mg per day

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Phaeochromocytoma

● **CAUTIONS** Accumulation of metabolites may result in neurotoxicity · cardiac arrhythmias · not suitable for severe continuing pain · severe cor pulmonale

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Anxiety · asthenia · biliary spasm · coordination abnormal · delirium · dysuria · hypothermia · seizure · syncope · tremor

**Overdose** Convulsions reported in overdosage.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but not known to be harmful.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid use or reduce dose; opioid effects increased and prolonged and increased cerebral sensitivity occurs.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

#### Solution for injection

► **Pethidine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Pethidine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Pethidine 50mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £52.91 [CD2]

**Pethidine hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Pethidine 50mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £5.11 DT = £5.11 [CD2]

Pethidine 100mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £4.66 DT = £4.66 [CD2]

F 273

## Tramadol hydrochloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Moderate to severe pain

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child 12–17 years: 50–100 mg every 4–6 hours, intravenous injection to be given over 2–3 minutes

#### Moderate to severe acute pain

► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 100 mg, then 50–100 mg every 4–6 hours; Usual maximum 400 mg/24 hours

#### Moderate to severe chronic pain

► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 50 mg, then, adjusted according to response; Usual maximum 400 mg/24 hours

#### Postoperative pain

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 100 mg, then 50 mg every 10–20 minutes if required up to total maximum 250 mg (including initial dose) in first hour, then 50–100 mg every 4–6 hours, intravenous injection to be given over 2–3 minutes; maximum 600 mg per day continued →

**Moderate to severe pain (with modified-release 12-hourly preparations)**

- BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- Child 12–17 years: 50–100 mg twice daily, increased if necessary to 150–200 mg twice daily, doses exceeding the usual maximum not generally required; Usual maximum 400 mg/24 hours

**Moderate to severe pain (with modified-release 24-hourly preparations)**

- BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 100–150 mg once daily, increased if necessary up to 400 mg once daily; Usual maximum 400 mg/24 hours

**ZYDOL® XL****Moderate to severe pain**

- BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE TABLETS
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 150 mg once daily, increased if necessary up to 400 mg once daily

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

Do not confuse modified-release 12-hourly preparations with 24-hourly preparations, see *Prescribing and dispensing information*.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute intoxication with alcohol · acute intoxication with analgesics · acute intoxication with hypnotics · acute intoxication with opioids · not suitable for narcotic withdrawal treatment · uncontrolled epilepsy

- **CAUTIONS** Excessive bronchial secretions · history of epilepsy—use tramadol only if compelling reasons · impaired consciousness · not suitable as a substitute in opioid-dependent patients · not suitable in some types of general anaesthesia · susceptibility to seizures—use tramadol only if compelling reasons

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- General anaesthesia Not recommended for analgesia during potentially light planes of general anaesthesia (possibly increased intra-operative recall reported).

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids

**SIDE-EFFECTS****GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Fatigue
- **Uncommon** Postural hypotension
- **Rare or very rare** Dyspnoea · epileptiform seizure · respiratory disorders · sleep disorders · vision blurred
- **Frequency not known** Asthma exacerbated · hypoglycaemia

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Uncommon**
- With parental use Circulatory collapse · gastrointestinal discomfort · skin eruption
- **Rare or very rare**
- With parental use Angioedema · appetite change · behaviour abnormal · cognitive disorder · dysuria · hypersensitivity · mood altered · movement disorders · muscle weakness · perception disorders · psychiatric disorder · sensation abnormal
- **Frequency not known**
- With oral use Anxiety · blood disorder · gastrointestinal disorder · hyperkinesia · hypertension · paraesthesia · syncope · tremor · urinary disorder

- **PREGNANCY** Embryotoxic in *animal* studies—manufacturers advise avoid.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount probably too small to be harmful, but manufacturer advises avoid.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Caution (avoid for *oral drops*) in severe impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid use or reduce dose; opioid effects increased and prolonged and increased cerebral

sensitivity occurs. Caution (avoid for *oral drops*) in severe impairment.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tramadol hydrochloride *orodispersible tablets* should be sucked and then swallowed. May also be dispersed in water. Some tramadol hydrochloride modified-release capsule preparations may be opened and the contents swallowed immediately without chewing—check individual preparations.

For *intravenous infusion*, dilute in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Modified-release preparations are available as 12-hourly or 24-hourly formulations. Non-proprietary preparations of modified-release tramadol may be available as either 12-hourly or 24-hourly formulations; prescribers and dispensers must ensure that the correct formulation is prescribed and dispensed. Branded preparations that should be given 12-hourly include *Invadol® SR*, *Mabron®*, *Maneo®*, *Marol®*, *Maxitram® SR*, *Oldaram®*, *Tilodal® SR*, *Tramquel® SR*, *Tramulief® SR*, *Zamadol® SR*, *Zeridame® SR* and *Zydol® SR*. Preparations that should be given 24-hourly include *Tradorec XL®*, *Zamadol® 24hr*, and *Zydol XL®*.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer tramadol hydrochloride orodispersible tablets.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Tramadol for pain

[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tramadol-for-pain](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tramadol-for-pain)

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

**Modified-release tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 25

**Tramadol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg** Tramadol 50mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] DT = £4.60 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Tramadol 100mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £6.95–£44.80 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Tramadol 150mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £10.40–£57.85 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Tramadol 200mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £14.20–£69.60 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 300 mg** Tramadol 300mg modified-release tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] [S] [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 400 mg** Tramadol 400mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] [S] [CD3]

**► Brimisol PR (Bristol Laboratories Ltd)**

**Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Brimisol PR 100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £18.00 [CD3]

**► Invadol SR (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)**

**Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Invadol SR 100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £14.61 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Invadol SR 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £21.91 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Invadol SR 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £29.22 [CD3]

**► Mabron (Teva UK Ltd, Morningside Healthcare Ltd)**

**Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Mabron 100mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £15.52 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Mabron 150mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £23.28 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Mabron 200mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £31.04 [CD3]

**► Maneo (Mylan)**

**Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Maneo 100mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £6.95 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Maneo 150mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £10.40 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Maneo 200mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £14.20 [CD3]

**► Marol (Teva UK Ltd)**

**Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Marol 100mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] [S] £6.94 [CD3]

- Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Marol 150mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £10.39 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Marol 200mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £14.19 [CD3]
- **Tilodol SR** (Sandoz Ltd)
- Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Tilodol SR 100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £15.52 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Tilodol SR 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £23.28 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Tilodol SR 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £31.04 [CD3]
- **Tradorec XL** (Endo Ventures Ltd)
- Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Tradorec XL 100mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £14.10 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Tradorec XL 200mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £14.98 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 300 mg** Tradorec XL 300mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £22.47 [CD3]
- **Tramulief SR** (AMCO)
- Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Tramulief SR 100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £6.98 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Tramulief SR 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £10.48 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Tramulief SR 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £14.28 [CD3]
- **Zamadol 24hr** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)
- Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Zamadol 24hr 150mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £10.70 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Zamadol 24hr 200mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £14.26 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 300 mg** Zamadol 24hr 300mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £21.39 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 400 mg** Zamadol 24hr 400mg modified-release tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £28.51 [CD3]
- **Zeridame SR** (Actavis UK Ltd)
- Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Zeridame SR 100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £17.21 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Zeridame SR 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £25.82 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Zeridame SR 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £34.43 [CD3]
- **Zydol SR** (Grunenthal Ltd)
- Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg** Zydol SR 50mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £4.60 DT = £4.60 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Zydol SR 100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £17.22 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Zydol SR 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £25.83 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Zydol SR 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £34.40 [CD3]
- **Zydol XL** (Grunenthal Ltd)
- Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Zydol XL 150mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £12.18 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Zydol XL 200mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £17.98 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 300 mg** Zydol XL 300mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £24.94 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 400 mg** Zydol XL 400mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £32.47 [CD3]
- **Zytram SR** (Qdem Pharmaceuticals Ltd)
- Tramadol hydrochloride 75 mg** Zytram SR 75mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £5.15 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Zytram SR 100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £6.94 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Zytram SR 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £10.39 [CD3]
- Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Zytram SR 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £14.19 [CD3]

**Soluble tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 13

- **Zydol** (Grunenthal Ltd)
- Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg** Zydol 50mg soluble tablets sugar-free | 20 tablet [PoM] £2.79 Schedule 3 (CD No Register Exempt Safe Custody) sugar-free | 100 tablet [PoM] £13.33 DT = £13.33 [CD3]

**Solution for injection**

- **Tramadol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Tramadol 100mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £4.90 [CD3] | 10 ampoule [PoM] £10.00 [CD3]

- **Zamadol** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Zamadol 100mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £5.49 [CD3]

- **Zydol** (Grunenthal Ltd)

**Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Zydol 100mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £4.00 [CD3]

**Modified-release capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 25

- **Tramadol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg** Tramadol 50mg modified-release capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £7.24 DT = £7.24 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Tramadol 100mg modified-release capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £14.47 DT = £14.47 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Tramadol 150mg modified-release capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £21.10 DT = £21.11 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Tramadol 200mg modified-release capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £28.93 DT = £28.93 [CD3]

- **Maxitram SR** (Chiesi Ltd)

**Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg** Maxitram SR 50mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £4.55 DT = £7.24 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Maxitram SR 100mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £12.14 DT = £14.47 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Maxitram SR 150mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £18.21 DT = £21.71 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Maxitram SR 200mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £24.28 DT = £28.93 [CD3]

- **Tramquel SR** (Beechmere Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg** Tramquel SR 50mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £7.24 DT = £7.24 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Tramquel SR 100mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £14.47 DT = £14.47 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Tramquel SR 150mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £21.71 DT = £21.71 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Tramquel SR 200mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £28.93 DT = £28.93 [CD3]

- **Zamadol SR** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg** Zamadol SR 50mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £7.24 DT = £7.24 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 100 mg** Zamadol SR 100mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £14.47 DT = £14.47 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 150 mg** Zamadol SR 150mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £21.71 DT = £21.71 [CD3]

**Tramadol hydrochloride 200 mg** Zamadol SR 200mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £28.93 DT = £28.93 [CD3]

**Oral drops**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 13

- **Tramadol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Tramadol (as Tramadol hydrochloride) 100 mg per 1 ml** Tramadol 100mg/ml oral drops | 10 ml [PoM] £3.50 DT = £3.50 [CD3]

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- **Tramadol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg** Tramadol 50mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £4.71 DT = £0.66 [CD3] | 100 capsule [PoM] £14.40 DT = £2.20 [CD3]

- **Zamadol** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg** Zamadol 50mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £8.00 DT = £2.20 [CD3]

- **Zydol** (Grunenthal Ltd)

**Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg** Zydol 50mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £2.29 DT = £0.66 [CD3] | 100 capsule [PoM] £7.63 DT = £2.20 [CD3]

**Orodispersible tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- **Tramadol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg** Tramadol 50mg orodispersible tablets sugar free | 60 tablet [PoM] £8 [CD3]

- **Zamadol Melt** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Tramadol hydrochloride 50 mg** Zamadol Melt 50mg tablets sugar-free | 60 tablet [PoM] £7.12 [CD3]

**Combinations available:** *Tramadol with paracetamol*, p. 290

## Tramadol with paracetamol

22-Feb-2018

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, paracetamol p. 271, tramadol hydrochloride p. 287.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Moderate to severe pain

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 75/650 mg every 6 hours as required

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- The proportions are expressed in the form x/y, where x and y are the strengths in milligrams of tramadol and paracetamol respectively.

### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: opioids · paracetamol

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Effervescent tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 13, 29, 30

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

#### ► Tramacet (Grünenthal Ltd)

Tramadol hydrochloride 37.5 mg, Paracetamol 325 mg Tramacet 37.5mg/325mg effervescent tablets sugar-free | 60 tablet [PoM] £9.68 DT = £9.68 [CD3]

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 25, 29, 30

#### ► Tramadol with paracetamol (Non-proprietary)

Tramadol hydrochloride 37.5 mg, Paracetamol 325 mg Tramadol 37.5mg / Paracetamol 325mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £3.02–£9.68 DT = £3.02 [CD3]

Tramadol hydrochloride 75 mg, Paracetamol 650 mg Tramadol 75mg / Paracetamol 650mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £19.50 DT = £19.50 [CD3]

#### ► Tramacet (Grünenthal Ltd)

Tramadol hydrochloride 37.5 mg, Paracetamol 325 mg Tramacet 37.5mg/325mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £9.68 DT = £3.02 [CD3]

If a child does not respond to one 5HT<sub>1</sub>-receptor agonist, an alternative 5HT<sub>1</sub>-receptor agonist should be tried. For children who have prolonged attacks that frequently recur despite treatment with a 5HT<sub>1</sub>-receptor agonist, combination therapy with an NSAID such as naproxen p. 659 can be considered. Sumatriptan and zolmitriptan p. 292 are used for migraine in children. They may also be of value in cluster headache.

### Antiemetics

Antiemetics, including domperidone p. 261, phenothiazines, and antihistamines, relieve the nausea associated with migraine attacks. Antiemetics may be given by intramuscular injection or rectally if vomiting is a problem. Domperidone has the added advantage of promoting gastric emptying and normal peristalsis; a single dose should be given at the onset of symptoms.

### Prophylaxis of migraine

Where migraine attacks are frequent, possible provoking factors such as stress should be sought; combined oral contraceptives may also provoke migraine. Preventive treatment should be considered if migraine attacks interfere with school and social life, particularly for children who:

- suffer at least two attacks a month;
- suffer an increasing frequency of headaches;
- suffer significant disability despite suitable treatment for migraine attacks;
- cannot take suitable treatment for migraine attacks.

In children it is often possible to stop prophylaxis after a period of treatment.

Propranolol hydrochloride p. 104 may be effective in preventing migraine in children but it is contra-indicated in those with asthma. Side-effects such as depression and postural hypotension can further limit its use.

Pizotifen p. 291, an antihistamine and a serotonin-receptor antagonist, may also be used but its efficacy in children has not been clearly established. Common side-effects include drowsiness and weight gain.

Topiramate p. 212 is licensed for migraine prophylaxis; see *Conception and contraception*, and *Pregnancy* in the topiramate drug monograph for information on use in females of childbearing potential and pregnancy.

### Cluster headache and the trigeminal autonomic cephalalgias

Cluster headache rarely responds to standard analgesics. Sumatriptan given by subcutaneous injection is the drug of choice for the treatment of cluster headache. If an injection is unsuitable, sumatriptan nasal spray or zolmitriptan nasal spray may be used. Treatment should be initiated by a specialist. Alternatively, 100% oxygen at a rate of 10–15 litres/minute for 10–20 minutes is useful in aborting an attack.

The other trigeminal autonomic cephalalgias, paroxysmal hemicrania (sensitive to indometacin p. 657), and short-lasting unilateral neuralgiform headache attacks with conjunctival injection and tearing, are seen rarely and are best managed by a specialist.

## 5.1 Migraine

### Migraine

#### Treatment of acute migraine

Treatment of a migraine attack should be guided by response to previous treatment and the severity of the attacks. A **simple analgesic** such as paracetamol p. 271 (preferably in a soluble or dispersible form) or an NSAID, usually ibuprofen p. 655, is often effective; concomitant antiemetic treatment may be required. If treatment with an analgesic is inadequate, an attack may be treated with a specific antimigraine compound such as the 5HT<sub>1</sub>-receptor agonist sumatriptan p. 291. **Ergot alkaloids** are associated with many side-effects and should be avoided.

Excessive use of acute treatments for migraine (opioid and non-opioid analgesics, 5HT<sub>1</sub>-receptor agonists, and ergotamine) is associated with medication-overuse headache (analgesic-induced headache); therefore, increasing consumption of these medicines needs careful management.

#### 5HT<sub>1</sub>-receptor agonists

5HT<sub>1</sub>-receptor agonists are used in the treatment of acute migraine attacks; treatment of children should be initiated by a specialist. A 5HT<sub>1</sub>-receptor agonist may be used during the established headache phase of an attack and is the preferred treatment in those who fail to respond to conventional analgesics. 5HT<sub>1</sub>-receptor agonists are **not** indicated for the treatment of hemiplegic, basilar, or ophtalmoplegic migraine.

## ANTIHISTAMINES &gt; SEDATING

## Paracetamol with buclizine hydrochloride and codeine phosphate

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, paracetamol p. 271, codeine phosphate p. 276.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### MIGRALEVE®

##### Acute migraine

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–14 years: Initially 1 tablet, (pink tablet) to be taken at onset of attack, or if it is imminent, followed by 1 tablet every 4 hours if required, (yellow tablet) to be taken following initial dose; maximum 1 pink and 3 yellow tablets in 24 hours
- Child 15–17 years: Initially 2 tablets, (pink tablets) to be taken at onset of attack or if it is imminent, followed by 2 tablets every 4 hours if required, (yellow tablets) to be taken following initial dose; maximum 2 pink and 6 yellow tablets in 24 hours

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, sedating · opioids · paracetamol
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Addiction · agranulocytosis · blood disorder · bronchial secretion viscosity increased · constipation · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dyspepsia · dysuria · gastrointestinal disorder · headache · hyperhidrosis · nausea · pancreatitis acute · pruritus · psychomotor skills impaired · thrombocytopenia · vision blurred · vomiting
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING**

MIGRALEVE® Migravele® is less suitable for prescribing.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 17, 30

- **Migravele Pink** (McNeil Products Ltd)  
Buclizine hydrochloride 6.25 mg, Codeine phosphate 8 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg Migravele Pink tablets | 12 tablet [P] £3.79 [CD5] | 24 tablet [P] £6.08 [CD5] | 48 tablet [PoM] £3.97 [CD5]
- **Migravele Yellow** (McNeil Products Ltd)  
Codeine phosphate 8 mg, Paracetamol 500 mg Migravele Yellow tablets | 16 tablet [PoM] [X] [CD5]

## Pizotifen

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Prophylaxis of migraine

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 5–17 years: Initially 500 micrograms once daily, dose to be taken at night, then increased to up to 1.5 mg daily in divided doses, dose to be increased gradually, max. single dose (at night) 1 mg

- **UNLICENSED USE** 1.5 mg tablets not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid abrupt withdrawal · history of epilepsy · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma · urinary retention
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, sedating
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- Common or very common Appetite increased · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · fatigue · nausea · weight increased
- Uncommon Constipation

- Rare or very rare Aggression · anxiety · arthralgia · central nervous system stimulation · depression · hallucination · muscle complaints · paraesthesia · seizure · skin reactions · sleep disorders
- Frequency not known Hepatic disorders
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount probably too small to be harmful, but manufacturer advises avoid.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Pizotifen to prevent migraine headaches [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/pizotifen-to-prevent-migraine-headaches](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/pizotifen-to-prevent-migraine-headaches)  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

##### ► Pizotifen (Non-proprietary)

##### Pizotifen (as Pizotifen hydrogen malate)

500 microgram Pizotifen 500microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £8.50 DT = £1.10 | 60 tablet [PoM] £27.00

Pizotifen (as Pizotifen hydrogen malate) 1.5 mg Pizotifen 1.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £8.50 DT = £1.20

## TRIPTANS

## Sumatriptan

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Treatment of acute migraine

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–9 years: Initially 25 mg for 1 dose, followed by 25 mg after at least 2 hours if required, to be taken only if migraine recurs (patient not responding to initial dose should not take second dose for same attack)
- Child 10–11 years: Initially 50 mg for 1 dose, followed by 50 mg after at least 2 hours, to be taken only if migraine recurs (patient not responding to initial dose should not take second dose for same attack)
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 50–100 mg for 1 dose, followed by 50–100 mg after at least 2 hours if required, to be taken only if migraine recurs (patient not responding to initial dose should not take second dose for same attack)

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 10–17 years: Initially 6 mg for 1 dose, followed by 6 mg after at least 1 hour if required, to be taken only if migraine recurs (patient not responding to initial dose should not take second dose for same attack), dose to be administered using an auto-injector; maximum 12 mg per day

##### ► BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 10–20 mg for 1 dose, followed by 10–20 mg after at least 2 hours if required, to be taken only if migraine recurs (patient not responding to initial dose should not take second dose for same attack); maximum 40 mg per day

#### Treatment of acute cluster headache

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 10–17 years (under expert supervision): Initially 6 mg for 1 dose, followed by 6 mg after at least 1 hour if required, to be taken only if headache recurs (patient not responding to initial dose should not take second dose for same attack), dose to be continued →



administered using auto-injector; maximum 12 mg per day

► **BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION**

- Child 12–17 years (under expert supervision): Initially 10–20 mg for 1 dose, followed by 10–20 mg after at least 2 hours if required, to be taken only if headache recurs (patient not responding to initial dose should not take second dose for same attack); maximum 40 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Tablets and injection not licensed for use in children. Not licensed for treating cluster headache in children. Intranasal doses for treating acute migraine in children may differ from those in product literature.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Coronary vasospasm · ischaemic heart disease · mild uncontrolled hypertension · moderate and severe hypertension · peripheral vascular disease · previous cerebrovascular accident · previous myocardial infarction · previous transient ischaemic attack · Prinzmetal's angina

- **CAUTIONS** Conditions which predispose to coronary artery disease · history of seizures · mild, controlled hypertension · pre-existing cardiac disease · risk factors for seizures

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sumatriptan

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Asthenia · dizziness · drowsiness · dyspnoea · feeling abnormal · flushing · myalgia · nausea · pain · sensation abnormal · temperature sensation altered · vomiting
- **Rare or very rare** Hypersensitivity
- **Frequency not known** Angina pectoris · anxiety · arrhythmias · arthralgia · colitis ischaemic · coronary vasospasm · diarrhoea · dystonia · hyperhidrosis · hypotension · myocardial infarction · nystagmus · palpitations · Raynaud's phenomenon · seizure · tremor · vision disorders

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common**
- With intranasal use Epistaxis · nasal irritation · taste altered · throat irritation
- With subcutaneous use Haemorrhage · skin reactions · swelling
- **Frequency not known**
- With intranasal use Skin reactions
- With oral use Allergic dermatitis

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Discontinue if symptoms of heat, heaviness, pressure or tightness (including throat and chest) occur.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Caution in patients with sensitivity to sulfonamides.
- **PREGNANCY** There is limited experience of using 5HT<sub>1</sub>-receptor agonists during pregnancy; manufacturers advise that they should be avoided unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but amount probably too small to be harmful; withhold breast-feeding for 12 hours after treatment.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.
- **Dose adjustments** Reduce dose of oral therapy.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**
- **Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for injection**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 10

► **Sumatriptan (Non-proprietary)**

**Sumatriptan (as Sumatriptan succinate) 12 mg per**

**1 ml** Sumatriptan 6mg/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 2 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £39.50 DT = £39.50

► **Imigran Subject** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Sumatriptan (as Sumatriptan succinate) 12 mg per 1 ml** Imigran

Subject 6mg/0.5ml solution for injection syringe refill pack | 2 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £40.41 DT = £40.41

Imigran Subject 6mg/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes with device | 2 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £50.96 DT = £50.96

**Spray**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 10

► **Imigran** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Sumatriptan 100 mg per 1 ml** Imigran 10mg nasal spray | 2 unit dose [PoM] £11.80 DT = £11.80

**Sumatriptan 200 mg per 1 ml** Imigran 20mg nasal spray | 2 unit dose [PoM] £14.16 | 6 unit dose [PoM] £42.47 DT = £42.47

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 10

► **Sumatriptan (Non-proprietary)**

**Sumatriptan (as Sumatriptan succinate) 50 mg** Sumatriptan 50mg tablets | 6 tablet [PoM] £31.00 DT = £6.94

**Sumatriptan (as Sumatriptan succinate) 100 mg** Sumatriptan 100mg tablets | 6 tablet [PoM] £40.18 DT = £6.82

► **Imigran** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd, Forest Laboratories UK Ltd)

**Sumatriptan (as Sumatriptan succinate) 50 mg** Imigran Radis 50mg tablets | 6 tablet [PoM] £23.90 DT = £6.94

Imigran 50mg tablets | 6 tablet [PoM] £31.85 DT = £6.94

Imigran Recovery 50mg tablets | 2 tablet [P] £4.76

**Sumatriptan (as Sumatriptan succinate) 100 mg** Imigran 100mg tablets | 6 tablet [PoM] £51.48 DT = £6.82

Imigran Radis 100mg tablets | 6 tablet [PoM] £42.90 DT = £6.82

► **Migraitan** (Bristol Laboratories Ltd)

**Sumatriptan (as Sumatriptan succinate) 50 mg** Migraitan 50mg tablets | 2 tablet [P] £4.44

## Zolmitriptan

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Treatment of acute migraine**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 12–17 years: 2.5 mg, followed by 2.5 mg after at least 2 hours if required, dose to be taken only if migraine recurs, if response unsatisfactory after 3 attacks consider increasing dose to 5 mg or switching to alternative treatment; maximum 10 mg per day

► **BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION**

- Child 12–17 years: 5 mg, dose to be administered as soon as possible after onset into one nostril only, followed by 5 mg after at least 2 hours if required, dose to be administered only if migraine recurs; maximum 10 mg per day

**Treatment of acute cluster headache**

► **BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION**

- Child 12–17 years: 5 mg, dose to be administered as soon as possible after onset into one nostril only, followed by 5 mg after at least 2 hours if required, dose to be administered only if migraine recurs; maximum 10 mg per day

**DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS**

- Manufacturer advises max. dose 5 mg in 24 hours with concurrent use of moderate and potent inhibitors of CYP1A2, cimetidine and moclobemide.

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- 1 spray of Zomig<sup>®</sup> nasal spray = 5 mg zolmitriptan.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Arrhythmias associated with accessory cardiac conduction pathways · ischaemic heart disease · peripheral vascular disease · previous cerebrovascular accident · transient ischaemic attack · uncontrolled hypertension · vasospasm · Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome

- **CAUTIONS** Should not be taken within 24 hours of any other 5HT<sub>1</sub>-receptor agonist

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: zolmitriptan

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · asthenia · chest discomfort · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dysphagia · feeling hot · headache · limb discomfort · muscle weakness · nausea · pain · palpitations · sensation abnormal · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Tachycardia · urinary disorders
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angina pectoris · angioedema · coronary vasospasm · gastrointestinal disorders · gastrointestinal infarction · hypersensitivity · myocardial infarction · splenic infarction · urticaria

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common**
  - ▶ With intranasal use Feeling abnormal · haemorrhage · myalgia · nasal discomfort · taste altered · throat pain
  - ▶ With oral use Muscle complaints · sensation of pressure · throat complaints
- ▶ **Rare or very rare**
  - ▶ With oral use Diarrhoea

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Discontinue if symptoms of heat, heaviness, pressure or tightness (including throat and chest) occur.

- **PREGNANCY** There is limited experience of using 5HT<sub>1</sub>-receptor agonists during pregnancy; manufacturers advise that they should be avoided unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution—present in milk in animal studies.

#### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Max. 5 mg in 24 hours in moderate or severe impairment.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Zolmitriptan orodispersible tablets should be placed on the tongue, allowed to disperse and swallowed.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer zolmitriptan orodispersible tablets.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Spray

- ▶ **Zomig** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)  
Zolmitriptan 50 mg per 1 ml Zomig 5mg/0.1ml nasal spray 0.1ml unit dose | 6 unit dose [PoM] £36.50 DT = £36.50

##### Orodispersible tablet

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

##### ▶ Zolmitriptan (Non-proprietary)

- Zolmitriptan 2.5 mg Zolmitriptan 2.5mg orodispersible tablets sugar-free sugar-free | 6 tablet [PoM] £20.35 DT = £14.84
- Zolmitriptan 5 mg Zolmitriptan 5mg orodispersible tablets sugar-free sugar-free | 6 tablet [PoM] £20.35 DT = £13.79

##### ▶ Zomig Rapimelt (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

- Zolmitriptan 2.5 mg Zomig Rapimelt 2.5mg orodispersible tablets sugar-free | 6 tablet [PoM] £23.99 DT = £14.84
- Zolmitriptan 5 mg Zomig Rapimelt 5mg orodispersible tablets sugar-free | 6 tablet [PoM] £23.94 DT = £13.79

##### Tablet

##### ▶ Zolmitriptan (Non-proprietary)

- Zolmitriptan 2.5 mg Zolmitriptan 2.5mg tablets | 6 tablet [PoM] £15.78 DT = £15.78 | 12 tablet [PoM] £31.56

Zolmitriptan 5 mg Zolmitriptan 5mg tablets | 6 tablet [PoM] £3.60 DT = £3.60 | 12 tablet [PoM] £7.20

##### ▶ Zomig (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

Zolmitriptan 2.5 mg Zomig 2.5mg tablets | 6 tablet [PoM] £23.94 DT = £15.78

## 5.2 Neuropathic pain

### Neuropathic pain

#### Overview and management

Neuropathic pain, which occurs as a result of damage to neural tissue, includes *compression neuropathies*, *peripheral neuropathies* (e.g. due to Diabetic complications p. 449, HIV infection p. 409, chemotherapy), *trauma*, *idiopathic neuropathy*, *central pain* (e.g. pain following spinal cord injury and syringomyelia), *postherpetic neuralgia*, and *phantom limb pain*. The pain may occur in an area of sensory deficit and may be described as burning, shooting or scalding; it may be accompanied by pain that is evoked by a nonnoxious stimulus (allodynia).

Children with chronic neuropathic pain require multidisciplinary management, which may include physiotherapy and psychological support. Neuropathic pain is generally managed with a **tricyclic antidepressant** such as amitriptyline hydrochloride p. 238 or **antiepileptic drugs** such as carbamazepine p. 196. Children with localised pain may benefit from **topical local anaesthetic** preparations, particularly while awaiting specialist review. Neuropathic pain may respond only partially to **opioid analgesics**. A corticosteroid may help to relieve pressure in compression neuropathy and thereby reduce pain.

#### Chronic facial pain

Chronic oral and facial pain including *persistent idiopathic facial pain* (also termed 'atypical facial pain') and *temporomandibular dysfunction* (previously termed temporomandibular joint pain dysfunction syndrome) may call for prolonged use of analgesics or for other drugs. **Tricyclic antidepressants** may be useful for facial pain [unlicensed indication], but are not on the Dental Practitioners' List. Disorders of this type require specialist referral and psychological support to accompany drug treatment. Children on long-term therapy need to be monitored both for progress and for side-effects.

## 6 Sleep disorders

### 6.1 Insomnia

### Hypnotics and anxiolytics

#### Overview

Most anxiolytics ('sedatives') will induce sleep when given at night and most hypnotics will sedate when given during the day. Hypnotics and anxiolytics should be reserved for short courses to alleviate acute conditions after causal factors have been established.

The role of drug therapy in the management of anxiety disorders in children and adolescents is uncertain; drug therapy should be initiated only by specialists after psychosocial interventions have failed. Benzodiazepines and tricyclic antidepressants have been used but adverse effects may be problematic.

#### Hypnotics

The prescribing of hypnotics to children, except for occasional use such as for sedation for procedures is not

justified. There is a risk of habituation with prolonged use. Problems settling children at night should be managed with behavioural therapy.

### Dental procedures

Some anxious children may benefit from the use of a hypnotic the night before a dental appointment.

### Chloral and derivatives

Chloral hydrate below and derivatives were formerly popular hypnotics for children. Chloral hydrate is now mainly used for sedation during diagnostic procedures.

### Antihistamines

Some **antihistamines** such as promethazine hydrochloride p. 180 are used for occasional insomnia in adults; their prolonged duration of action can often cause drowsiness the following day. The sedative effect of antihistamines may diminish after a few days of continued treatment; antihistamines are associated with headache, psychomotor impairment and antimuscarinic effects. The use of hypnotics in children is not usually justified.

### Melatonin

Melatonin p. 295 is a pineal hormone that may affect sleep pattern. Clinical experience suggests that when appropriate behavioural sleep interventions fail, melatonin may be of value for treating sleep onset insomnia and delayed sleep phase syndrome in children with conditions such as visual impairment, cerebral palsy, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, autism, and learning difficulties. It is also sometimes used before magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), computed tomography (CT), or EEG investigations. Little is known about its long-term effects in children, and there is uncertainty as to the effect on other circadian rhythms including endocrine or reproductive hormone secretion. The need to continue melatonin therapy should be reviewed every 6 months.

### Anxiolytics

Anxiolytic treatment should be used in children only to relieve acute anxiety (and related insomnia) caused by fear (e.g. before surgery). Anxiolytic treatment should be limited to the lowest possible dose for the shortest possible time.

### Buspiron

Buspiron hydrochloride is thought to act at specific serotonin (5HT<sub>1A</sub>) receptors; safety and efficacy in children have yet to be determined.

## HYPNOTICS, SEDATIVES AND ANXIOLYTICS > NON-BENZODIAZEPINE

### Chloral hydrate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Sedation for painless procedures

###### ► BY MOUTH, OR BY RECTUM

- Neonate: 30–50 mg/kg, to be given 45–60 minutes before procedure, doses up to 100 mg/kg may be used with respiratory monitoring, administration by rectum only if oral route not available.
- Child 1 month–11 years: 30–50 mg/kg (max. per dose 1 g), to be given 45–60 minutes before procedure, administration by rectum only if oral route not available, increased if necessary up to 100 mg/kg (max. per dose 2 g)
- Child 12–17 years: 1–2 g, to be given 45–60 minutes before procedure, administration by rectum only if oral route not available

### Insomnia (short-term use), using chloral hydrate

#### 143.3 mg/5 mL oral solution

##### ► BY MOUTH USING ORAL SOLUTION

- Child 2–11 years: 30–50 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 1 g), dose to be taken with water or milk at bedtime
- Child 12–17 years: 430–860 mg once daily (max. per dose 2 g), dose to be taken with water or milk at bedtime

### Insomnia (short-term use), using chloral betaine 707 mg (≡ 414 mg chloral hydrate) tablets

##### ► BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

- Child 12–17 years: 1–2 tablets, alternatively 414–828 mg once daily, dose to be taken with water or milk at bedtime; maximum 4 tablets per day; maximum 2 g per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for sedation for painless procedures.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · gastritis · severe cardiac disease
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid contact with mucous membranes · avoid contact with skin · avoid prolonged use (and abrupt withdrawal thereafter) · reduce dose in debilitated
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: chloral hydrate
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agitation · allergic dermatitis · ataxia · confusion · delirium (more common on abrupt discontinuation) · drug tolerance · drug use disorders · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · headache · injury · ketonuria · kidney injury
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Risk of sedation in infant—avoid.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Can precipitate coma. Avoid in severe impairment.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose in mild to moderate impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For administration by mouth dilute liquid with plenty of water or juice to mask unpleasant taste.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include black current.  
When prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Chloral Mixture, BP 2000 consists of chloral hydrate 500 mg/5 mL in a suitable vehicle.  
The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of chloral hydrate is required, the following strength is used: 1 g/5 mL.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may persist the next day and affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, suppository, enema

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 19, 27

##### ► Chloral hydrate (Non-proprietary)

Chloral betaine 707 mg Chloral betaine 707mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £138.59 DT = £138.59

##### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 1 (paediatric solution only), 19 (solution other than paediatric only), 27

##### ► Chloral hydrate (Non-proprietary)

Chloral hydrate 28.66 mg per 1 ml Chloral hydrate 143.3mg/5ml oral solution BP | 150 ml [PoM] £244.25 DT = £244.25

## Melatonin

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Sleep onset insomnia (initiated under specialist supervision) | Delayed sleep phase syndrome (initiated under specialist supervision)**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE TABLETS
- ▶ **Child:** Initially 2–3 mg daily for 1–2 weeks, then increased if necessary to 4–6 mg daily, dose to be taken before bedtime; maximum 10 mg per day

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

● **CAUTIONS** Autoimmune disease (manufacturer advises avoid—no information available)

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: melatonin

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

▶ **Common or very common** Arthralgia · headaches · increased risk of infection · pain

▶ **Uncommon** Anxiety · asthenia · chest pain · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · gastrointestinal discomfort · hyperbilirubinaemia · hypertension · menopausal symptoms · mood altered · movement disorders · nausea · night sweats · oral disorders · skin reactions · sleep disorders · urine abnormalities · weight increased

▶ **Rare or very rare** Aggression · angina pectoris · arthritis · concentration impaired · crying · depression · disorientation · electrolyte imbalance · excessive tearing · gastrointestinal disorders · haematuria · hot flush · hypertriglyceridaemia · leucopenia · memory loss · muscle complaints · nail disorder · palpitations · paraesthesia · partial complex seizure · prostatitis · sexual dysfunction · syncope · thirst · thrombocytopenia · urinary disorders · vertigo · vision disorders · vomiting

▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · galactorrhoea

● **PREGNANCY** No information available—avoid.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—avoid.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Clearance reduced—avoid.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** No information available—use with caution.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Treatment with melatonin should be initiated and supervised by a specialist, but may be continued by general practitioners. The need to continue melatonin therapy should be reviewed every 6 months.

Melatonin is available as a modified-release tablet (*Circadin*®) and also as unlicensed formulations. *Circadin*® is licensed for the short-term treatment of primary insomnia in adults over 55 years. Unlicensed immediate-release preparations are available, however, there is variability in clinical effect of unlicensed formulations.

The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of melatonin is required, the following strength is used: 1 mg/mL.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Melatonin for sleep problems [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/melatonin-for-sleep-disorders](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/melatonin-for-sleep-disorders)


### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: modified-release tablet

#### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 21, 25

#### ▶ Melatonin (Non-proprietary)

**Melatonin 3 mg** Melatonin 3mg modified-release tablets | 120 tablet [PoM] 

#### ▶ Circadin (Flynn Pharma Ltd)

**Melatonin 2 mg** Circadin 2mg modified-release tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £15.39 DT = £15.39

## 7 Substance dependence

### Substance dependence

#### Guidance on treatment of drug misuse

Treatment of alcohol or opioid dependence in children requires specialist management. The UK health departments have produced guidance on the treatment of drug misuse in the UK. *Drug Misuse and Dependence: UK Guidelines on Clinical Management* (2007) is available at [www.nta.nhs.uk/uploads/clinical\\_guidelines\\_2007.pdf](http://www.nta.nhs.uk/uploads/clinical_guidelines_2007.pdf).

#### Nicotine dependence

Smoking cessation interventions are a cost-effective way of reducing ill health and prolonging life. Smokers should be advised to stop and offered help with follow-up when appropriate. If possible, smokers should have access to smoking cessation services for behavioural support.

Therapy to aid smoking cessation is chosen according to the smoker's likely adherence, availability of counselling and support, previous experience of smoking-cessation aids, contra-indications and adverse effects of the preparations, and the smoker's preferences. **Nicotine replacement therapy p. 296** is an effective aid to smoking cessation. The use of nicotine replacement therapy in an individual who is already accustomed to nicotine introduces few new risks and it is widely accepted that there are no circumstances in which it is safer to smoke than to use nicotine replacement therapy.

Some individuals benefit from having more than one type of nicotine replacement therapy prescribed, such as a combination of transdermal and oral preparations.

#### Concomitant medication

Cigarette smoking increases the metabolism of some medicines by stimulating the hepatic enzyme CYP1A2. When smoking is discontinued, the dose of these drugs, in particular theophylline, and some antipsychotics (including clozapine, olanzapine, chlorpromazine hydrochloride, and haloperidol) may need to be reduced. Regular monitoring for adverse effects is advised.

#### Nicotine replacement therapy

**Nicotine replacement therapy** can be used in place of cigarettes after abrupt cessation of smoking, or alternatively to reduce the amount of cigarettes used in advance of making a quit attempt. Nicotine replacement therapy can also be used to minimise passive smoking, and to treat cravings and reduce compensatory smoking after enforced abstinence in smoke-free environments. Smokers who find it difficult to achieve abstinence should consult a healthcare professional for advice.

#### Choice

Nicotine patches are a prolonged-release formulation and are applied for 16 hours (with the patch removed overnight) or for 24 hours. If the individual experiences strong cravings for cigarettes on waking, a 24-hour patch may be more suitable. Immediate-release nicotine preparations (gum, lozenges, sublingual tablets, inhalator, nasal spray, and oral spray) are used whenever the urge to smoke occurs or to prevent cravings.

The choice of nicotine replacement preparation depends largely on patient preference, and should take into account what preparations, if any, have been tried before. Patients with a high level of nicotine dependence, or who have failed with nicotine replacement therapy previously, may benefit from using a combination of an immediate-release preparation and patches to achieve abstinence.

**Side-effects of specific nicotine preparations**

Mild local reactions at the beginning of treatment are common because of the irritant effect of nicotine. Oral preparations and *inhalation cartridges* can cause irritation of the throat, *gum*, *lozenges*, and *oral spray* can cause increased salivation, and *patches* can cause minor skin irritation. The *nasal spray* commonly causes coughing, nasal irritation, epistaxis, sneezing, and watery eyes; the *oral spray* can cause watery eyes and blurred vision.

Gastro-intestinal disturbances are common and may be caused by swallowed nicotine. Nausea, vomiting, dyspepsia, and hiccup occur most frequently. Ulcerative stomatitis has also been reported. Dry mouth is a common side-effect of *lozenges*, *patches*, *oral spray*, and *sublingual tablets*. *Lozenges* cause diarrhoea, constipation, dysphagia, oesophagitis, gastritis, mouth ulcers, bloating, flatulence, and less commonly, taste disturbance, thirst, gingival bleeding, and halitosis. The *oral spray* may also cause abdominal pain, flatulence, and taste disturbance.

Palpitations may occur with nicotine replacement therapy and rarely *patches* and *oral spray* can cause arrhythmia. *Patches*, *lozenges*, and *oral spray* can cause chest pain. The *inhalator* can very rarely cause reversible atrial fibrillation.

Paraesthesia is a common side-effect of *oral spray*. Abnormal dreams can occur with *patches*; removal of the patch before bed may help. *Lozenges* and *oral spray* may cause rash and hot flushes. Sweating and myalgia can occur with *patches* and *oral spray*; the *patches* can also cause arthralgia.

**Neonatal abstinence syndrome**

Neonatal abstinence syndrome occurs at birth as a result of intra-uterine exposure to opioids or high-dose benzodiazepines. Treatment is usually initiated if:

- feeding becomes a problem and tube feeding is required;
- there is profuse vomiting or watery diarrhoea;
- the baby remains very unsettled after two consecutive feeds despite gentle swaddling and the use of a pacifier.

Treatment involves weaning the baby from the drug on which it is dependent. Morphine p. 282 or methadone hydrochloride p. 299 can be used in babies of mothers who have been taking opioids. Morphine is widely used because the dose can be easily adjusted, but methadone hydrochloride may provide smoother control of symptoms. Weaning babies from opioids usually takes 7–10 days.

Weaning babies from benzodiazepines that have a long half-life is difficult to manage; chlorpromazine hydrochloride p. 244 may be used in these situations but excessive sedation may occur. For babies who are dependent on barbiturates, phenobarbital p. 216 may be tried, although it does not control gastro-intestinal symptoms.

## 7.1 Nicotine dependence

**NICOTINIC RECEPTOR AGONISTS****Nicotine****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Nicotine replacement therapy in individuals who smoke fewer than 20 cigarettes each day**

- BY MOUTH USING CHEWING GUM
  - Child 12–17 years: 2 mg as required, chew 1 piece of gum when the urge to smoke occurs or to prevent cravings, if attempting smoking cessation, treatment should continue for 3 months before reducing the dose
- BY SUBLINGUAL ADMINISTRATION USING SUBLINGUAL TABLETS
  - Child 12–17 years: 1 tablet every 1 hour, increased to 2 tablets every 1 hour if required, if attempting smoking cessation, treatment should continue for up

to 3 months before reducing the dose; maximum 40 tablets per day

**Nicotine replacement therapy in individuals who smoke more than 20 cigarettes each day or who require more than 15 pieces of 2-mg strength gum each day**

- BY MOUTH USING CHEWING GUM
  - Child 12–17 years: 4 mg as required, chew 1 piece of gum when the urge to smoke occurs or to prevent cravings, individuals should not exceed 15 pieces of 4-mg strength gum daily, if attempting smoking cessation, treatment should continue for 3 months before reducing the dose

**Nicotine replacement therapy in individuals who smoke more than 20 cigarettes each day**

- BY SUBLINGUAL ADMINISTRATION USING SUBLINGUAL TABLETS
  - Child 12–17 years: 2 tablets every 1 hour, if attempting smoking cessation, treatment should continue for up to 3 months before reducing the dose; maximum 40 tablets per day

**Nicotine replacement therapy**

- BY INHALATION USING INHALATOR
  - Child 12–17 years: As required, the cartridges can be used when the urge to smoke occurs or to prevent cravings, individuals should not exceed 12 cartridges of the 10-mg strength daily, or 6 cartridges of the 15-mg strength daily
- BY MOUTH USING LOZENGES
  - Child 12–17 years: 1 lozenge every 1–2 hours as required, one lozenge should be used when the urge to smoke occurs, individuals who smoke less than 20 cigarettes each day should usually use the lower-strength lozenges; individuals who smoke more than 20 cigarettes each day and those who fail to stop smoking with the low-strength lozenges should use the higher-strength lozenges; If attempting smoking cessation, treatment should continue for 6–12 weeks before attempting a reduction in dose; maximum 15 lozenges per day
- BY MOUTH USING OROMUCOSAL SPRAY
  - Child 12–17 years: 1–2 sprays as required, individuals can spray in the mouth when the urge to smoke occurs or to prevent cravings, individuals should not exceed 2 sprays per episode (up to 4 sprays every hour); maximum 64 sprays per day
- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION USING NASAL SPRAY
  - Child 12–17 years: 1 spray as required, individuals can spray into each nostril when the urge to smoke occurs, up to twice every hour for 16 hours daily, if attempting smoking cessation, treatment should continue for 8 weeks before reducing the dose; maximum 64 sprays per day
- BY TRANSDERMAL APPLICATION USING PATCHES
  - Child 12–17 years: Individuals who smoke more than 10 cigarettes daily should apply a high-strength patch daily for 6–8 weeks, followed by the medium-strength patch for 2 weeks, and then the low-strength patch for the final 2 weeks; individuals who smoke fewer than 10 cigarettes daily can usually start with the medium-strength patch for 6–8 weeks, followed by the low-strength patch for 2–4 weeks; a slower titration schedule can be used in individuals who are not ready to quit but want to reduce cigarette consumption before a quit attempt; if abstinence is not achieved, or if withdrawal symptoms are experienced, the strength of the patch used should be maintained or increased until the patient is stabilised; individuals using the high-strength patch who experience excessive side-effects, that do not resolve within a few days, should change to a medium-strength patch for the remainder of the initial period and then use the low-strength patch for 2–4 weeks



- **UNLICENSED USE** All preparations are licensed for children over 12 years (with the exception of *Nicotinell*® lozenges which are licensed for children under 18 years only when recommended by a doctor).

#### ● CAUTIONS

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Diabetes mellitus—blood-glucose concentration should be monitored closely when initiating treatment · haemodynamically unstable patients hospitalised with cerebrovascular accident · haemodynamically unstable patients hospitalised with myocardial infarction · haemodynamically unstable patients hospitalised with severe arrhythmias · pheochromocytoma · uncontrolled hyperthyroidism

#### SPECIFIC CAUTIONS

- ▶ When used by inhalation Bronchospastic disease · chronic throat disease · obstructive lung disease
- ▶ With intranasal use Bronchial asthma (may exacerbate)
- ▶ With oral use Gastritis (can be aggravated by swallowed nicotine) · gum may also stick to and damage dentures · oesophagitis (can be aggravated by swallowed nicotine) · peptic ulcers (can be aggravated by swallowed nicotine)
- ▶ With transdermal use Patches should not be placed on broken skin · patients with skin disorders

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Most warnings for nicotine replacement therapy also apply to continued cigarette smoking, but the risk of continued smoking outweighs any risks of using nicotine preparations.

Specific cautions for individual preparations are usually related to the local effect of nicotine.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Dizziness · headache · hyperhidrosis · nausea · palpitations · skin reactions · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Flushing

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common**
  - ▶ When used by inhalation Asthenia · cough · dry mouth · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · hiccups · hypersensitivity · nasal complaints · oral disorders · taste altered · throat complaints
  - ▶ With intranasal use Chest discomfort · cough · dyspnoea · epistaxis · nasal complaints · paraesthesia · throat irritation
  - ▶ With oral use Anxiety · appetite abnormal · burping · diarrhoea · dyspepsia (may be caused by swallowed nicotine) · gastrointestinal disorders · hiccups · increased risk of infection · mood altered · oral disorders · sleep disorders
  - ▶ With sublingual use Asthenia · cough · dry mouth · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · hiccups · hypersensitivity · oral disorders · rhinitis · taste altered · throat complaints
- ▶ **Uncommon**
  - ▶ When used by inhalation Abnormal dreams · arrhythmias · bronchospasm · burping · chest discomfort · dysphonia · dyspnoea · hypertension · malaise
  - ▶ With intranasal use Abnormal dreams · asthenia · hypertension · malaise
  - ▶ With oral use Anger · asthma exacerbated · cough · dyspepsia aggravated · dysphagia · haemorrhage · laryngospasm · nasal complaints · nocturia · numbness · overdose · pain · palpitations exacerbated · peripheral oedema · tachycardia · taste altered · throat complaints · vascular disorders
  - ▶ With sublingual use Abnormal dreams · arrhythmias · bronchospasm · burping · chest discomfort · dysphonia · dyspnoea · hypertension · malaise · nasal complaints
  - ▶ With transdermal use Arrhythmias · asthenia · chest discomfort · dyspnoea · hypertension · malaise · myalgia · paraesthesia
- ▶ **Rare or very rare**
  - ▶ When used by inhalation Dysphagia

- ▶ With intranasal use Arrhythmias
- ▶ With oral use Coagulation disorder · platelet disorder
- ▶ With sublingual use Dysphagia
- ▶ With transdermal use Abdominal discomfort · angioedema · pain in extremity
- ▶ **Frequency not known**
  - ▶ When used by inhalation Angioedema · excessive tearing · vision blurred
  - ▶ With intranasal use Abdominal discomfort · angioedema · excessive tearing · oropharyngeal complaints
  - ▶ With sublingual use Excessive tearing · muscle tightness · vision blurred

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Some systemic effects occur on initiation of therapy, particularly if the patient is using high-strength preparations; however, the patient may confuse side-effects of the nicotine-replacement preparation with nicotine withdrawal symptoms. Common symptoms of nicotine withdrawal include malaise, headache, dizziness, sleep disturbance, coughing, influenza-like symptoms, depression, irritability, increased appetite, weight gain, restlessness, anxiety, drowsiness, aphthous ulcers, decreased heart rate, and impaired concentration.

- **PREGNANCY** The use of nicotine replacement therapy in pregnancy is preferable to the continuation of smoking, but should be used only if smoking cessation without nicotine replacement fails. Intermittent therapy is preferable to patches but avoid liquorice-flavoured nicotine products. Patches are useful, however, if the patient is experiencing pregnancy-related nausea and vomiting. If patches are used, they should be removed before bed.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Nicotine is present in milk; however, the amount to which the infant is exposed is small and less hazardous than second-hand smoke. Intermittent therapy is preferred.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in moderate to severe hepatic impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in severe renal impairment.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Acidic beverages, such as coffee or fruit juice, may decrease the absorption of nicotine through the buccal mucosa and should be avoided for 15 minutes before the use of oral nicotine replacement therapy.

Administration by transdermal patch Patches should be applied on waking to dry, non-hairy skin on the hip, trunk, or upper arm and held in position for 10–20 seconds to ensure adhesion; place next patch on a different area and avoid using the same site for several days.

Administration by nasal spray Initially 1 spray should be used in both nostrils but when withdrawing from therapy, the dose can be gradually reduced to 1 spray in 1 nostril.

Administration by oral spray The oral spray should be released into the mouth, holding the spray as close to the mouth as possible and avoiding the lips. The patient should not inhale while spraying and avoid swallowing for a few seconds after use. If using the oral spray for the first time, or if unit not used for 2 or more days, prime the unit before administration.

Administration by sublingual tablet Each tablet should be placed under the tongue and allowed to dissolve.

Administration by lozenge Slowly allow each lozenge to dissolve in the mouth; periodically move the lozenge from one side of the mouth to the other. Lozenges last for 10–30 minutes, depending on their size.

Administration by inhalation Insert the cartridge into the device and draw in air through the mouthpiece; each session can last for approximately 5 minutes. The amount of nicotine from 1 puff of the cartridge is less than that from a cigarette, therefore it is necessary to inhale more

often than when smoking a cigarette. A single 10 mg cartridge lasts for approximately 20 minutes of intense use; a single 15 mg cartridge lasts for approximately 40 minutes of intense use.

Administration by medicated chewing gum Chew the gum until the taste becomes strong, then rest it between the cheek and gum; when the taste starts to fade, repeat this process. One piece of gum lasts for approximately 30 minutes.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of chewing gum and lozenges may include mint, freshfruit, freshmint, icy white, or cherry.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient or carers should be given advice on how to administer nicotine chewing gum, inhalators, lozenges, sublingual tablets, oral spray, nasal spray and patches.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Spray

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Ethanol

► **Nicorette** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Nicotine 500 microgram per 1 actuation** Nicorette 500micrograms/dose nasal spray | 10 ml [GSL] £16.18 DT = £14.84

► **Nicorette QuickMist** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Nicotine 1 mg per 1 actuation** Nicorette QuickMist 1mg/dose mouthspray sugar-free | 13.2 ml [GSL] £13.03 DT = £13.03 sugar-free | 26.4 ml [GSL] £20.58

#### Sublingual tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 26

► **Nicorette Microtab** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Nicotine (as Nicotine cyclodextrin complex) 2 mg** Nicorette Microtab 2mg sublingual tablets sugar-free | 100 tablet [GSL] £15.23 DT = £14.10

#### Transdermal patch

► **NiQuitin** (Omega Pharma Ltd)

**Nicotine 7 mg per 24 hour** NiQuitin 7mg patches | 7 patch [GSL] £9.97

**Nicotine 14 mg per 24 hour** NiQuitin 14mg patches | 7 patch [GSL] £9.97

**Nicotine 21 mg per 24 hour** NiQuitin 21mg patches | 7 patch [GSL] £9.97 DT = £9.97 | 14 patch [GSL] £18.79

► **NiQuitin Clear** (Omega Pharma Ltd)

**Nicotine 7 mg per 24 hour** NiQuitin Clear 7mg patches | 7 patch [GSL] £9.97

**Nicotine 14 mg per 24 hour** NiQuitin Clear 14mg patches | 7 patch [GSL] £9.97

**Nicotine 21 mg per 24 hour** NiQuitin Clear 21mg patches | 7 patch [GSL] £9.97 DT = £9.97 | 14 patch [GSL] £18.79

NiQuitin Pre-Quit Clear 21mg patches | 7 patch [GSL] £9.97 DT = £9.97

► **Nicorette invisì** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Nicotine 10 mg per 16 hour** Nicorette invisì 10mg/16hours patches | 7 patch [GSL] £10.99 DT = £10.99

**Nicotine 15 mg per 16 hour** Nicorette invisì 15mg/16hours patches | 7 patch [GSL] £11.10 DT = £11.10

**Nicotine 25 mg per 16 hour** Nicorette invisì 25mg/16hours patches | 7 patch [GSL] £11.15 DT = £11.15 | 14 patch [GSL] £18.28

► **Nicotinell TTS** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

**Nicotine 7 mg per 24 hour** Nicotinell TTS 10 patches | 7 patch [GSL] £9.12

**Nicotine 14 mg per 24 hour** Nicotinell TTS 20 patches | 7 patch [GSL] £9.40

**Nicotine 21 mg per 24 hour** Nicotinell TTS 30 patches | 7 patch [GSL] £9.97 DT = £9.97 | 21 patch [GSL] £24.51

#### Medicated chewing-gum

► **NiQuitin** (Omega Pharma Ltd)

**Nicotine 2 mg** NiQuitin Fresh Mint 2mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 12 piece [GSL] £1.71 sugar-free | 24 piece [GSL] £2.85 sugar-free | 96 piece [GSL] £8.55 DT = £8.26

NiQuitin Extra Fresh Mint 2mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 30 piece [GSL] £5.16 sugar-free | 100 piece [GSL] £11.82 sugar-free | 200 piece [GSL] £20.69

**Nicotine 4 mg** NiQuitin Extra Fresh Mint 4mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 30 piece [GSL] £5.16 sugar-free | 100 piece [GSL] £11.82 sugar-free | 200 piece [GSL] £20.69

NiQuitin Fresh Mint 4mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 12 piece [GSL] £1.71 sugar-free | 24 piece [GSL] £2.85 sugar-free | 96 piece [GSL] £8.55 DT = £10.26

► **Nicorette** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Nicotine 2 mg** Nicorette Freshmint 2mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 25 piece [GSL] £3.52 sugar-free | 105 piece [GSL] £10.27 sugar-free | 210 piece [GSL] £16.42

Nicorette Fruitfusion 2mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 105 piece [GSL] £10.27

Nicorette Original 2mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 105 piece [GSL] £10.27 sugar-free | 210 piece [GSL] £16.42

**Nicotine 4 mg** Nicorette Fruitfusion 4mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 105 piece [GSL] £12.57

Nicorette Original 4mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 105 piece [GSL] £12.56 sugar-free | 210 piece [GSL] £20.28

Nicorette Freshmint 4mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 25 piece [GSL] £3.53 sugar-free | 105 piece [GSL] £12.56 sugar-free | 210 piece [GSL] £20.28

**Nicotine 6 mg** Nicorette Fruitfusion 6mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 105 piece [GSL] £12.97 DT = £12.97 sugar-free | 210 piece [GSL] £20.81 DT = £20.81

► **Nicorette Icy White** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Nicotine 2 mg** Nicorette Icy White 2mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 25 piece [GSL] £3.52 sugar-free | 105 piece [GSL] £10.26 sugar-free | 210 piece [GSL] £16.41

**Nicotine 4 mg** Nicorette Icy White 4mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 105 piece [GSL] £12.55

► **Nicotinell** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

**Nicotine 2 mg** Nicotinell Liquorice 2mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 96 piece [GSL] £8.26 DT = £8.26

Nicotinell Mint 2mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 96 piece [GSL] £8.26 DT = £8.26 sugar-free | 204 piece [GSL] £14.23

Nicotinell Fruit 2mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 96 piece [GSL] £8.26 DT = £8.26 sugar-free | 204 piece [GSL] £14.23

**Nicotine 4 mg** Nicotinell Liquorice 4mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 96 piece [GSL] £10.26 DT = £10.26

Nicotinell Mint 4mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 96 piece [GSL] £10.26 DT = £10.26

Nicotinell Fruit 4mg medicated chewing gum sugar-free | 96 piece [GSL] £10.26 DT = £10.26

**Lozenge**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **NiQuitin** (Omega Pharma Ltd)

**Nicotine 1.5 mg** NiQuitin Minis Mint 1.5mg lozenges sugar-free | 20 lozenge [GSL] £3.82 sugar-free | 60 lozenge [GSL] £10.21 DT = £10.21

**Nicotine 2 mg** NiQuitin Mint 2mg lozenges sugar-free | 36 lozenge [GSL] £5.91 sugar-free | 72 lozenge [GSL] £7.40 DT = £7.40

NiQuitin 2mg lozenges original menthol mint sugar-free | 36 lozenge [GSL] £5.91 sugar-free | 72 lozenge [GSL] £7.40 DT = £7.40

**Nicotine 4 mg** NiQuitin Mint 4mg lozenges sugar-free | 36 lozenge [GSL] £5.91 sugar-free | 72 lozenge [GSL] £7.40 DT = £7.40

NiQuitin Minis Mint 4mg lozenges sugar-free | 20 lozenge [GSL] £3.82 sugar-free | 60 lozenge [GSL] £10.21

NiQuitin Pre-Quit Mint 4mg lozenges sugar-free | 36 lozenge [GSL] £5.91

NiQuitin 4mg lozenges original menthol mint sugar-free | 36 lozenge [GSL] £5.91 sugar-free | 72 lozenge [GSL] £7.40 DT = £7.40

► **Nicorette** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Nicotine 2 mg** Nicorette Cools 2mg lozenges sugar-free | 20 lozenge [GSL] £3.34 sugar-free | 80 lozenge [GSL] £12.05

**Nicotine 4 mg** Nicorette Cools 4mg lozenges sugar-free | 80 lozenge [GSL] £12.17

► **Nicotinell** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

**Nicotine (as Nicotine bitartrate) 1 mg** Nicotinell 1mg lozenges sugar-free | 12 lozenge [GSL] £1.59 sugar-free | 72 lozenge [GSL] £8.03 sugar-free | 96 lozenge [GSL] £9.12 DT = £9.12 sugar-free | 144 lozenge [GSL] £13.59

**Nicotine (as Nicotine bitartrate) 2 mg** Nicotinell 2mg lozenges sugar-free | 72 lozenge [GSL] £9.41 sugar-free | 96 lozenge [GSL] £10.60 sugar-free | 144 lozenge [GSL] £15.88

**Inhalation vapour**

► **Nicorette** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Nicotine 15 mg** Nicorette 15mg Inhalator | 4 cartridge [GSL] £4.87 DT = £4.59 | 20 cartridge [GSL] £17.78 DT = £16.24 | 36 cartridge [GSL] £28.28 DT = £25.83

## 7.2 Opioid dependence

### OPIOIDS

F 273

#### Methadone hydrochloride

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Neonatal opioid withdrawal

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Initially 100 micrograms/kg, then increased in steps of 50 micrograms/kg every 6 hours until symptoms are controlled, doses may vary, consult local guidelines, for maintenance, total daily dose that controls symptoms to be given in 2 divided doses.

##### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- See buprenorphine p. 274 for dose adjustments in opioid substitution therapy, for patients taking methadone who want to switch to buprenorphine.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

##### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Methadone oral solution 1 mg/mL is 2½ times the strength of Methadone Linctus (2 mg/5mL). Many preparations of Methadone oral solution are licensed for opioid drug addiction only but some are also licensed for analgesia in severe pain.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Phaeochromocytoma
- **CAUTIONS** Family history of sudden death (ECG monitoring recommended) · history of cardiac conduction abnormalities
- CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - QT-interval prolongation Patients with the following risk factors for QT-interval prolongation should be carefully monitored while taking methadone: heart or liver disease, electrolyte abnormalities, or concomitant treatment with drugs that can prolong QT interval; patients requiring more than 100 mg daily should also be monitored.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Dry eye · dysuria · hyperprolactinaemia · hypothermia · intracranial pressure increased · mood altered · nasal dryness · postural hypotension · QT interval prolongation · torsade de pointes

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Methadone is a long-acting opioid therefore effects may be cumulative. Methadone, even in low doses is a special hazard for children; non-dependent adults are also at risk of toxicity; dependent adults are at risk if tolerance is incorrectly assessed during induction.

**Overdose** Methadone has a very long duration of action; patients may need to be monitored for long periods following large overdoses.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid use or reduce dose; opioid effects increased and prolonged and increased cerebral sensitivity occurs.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal. When used for neonatal opioid withdrawal, reduce dose over 7–10 days.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Syrup preserved with hydroxybenzoate (parabens) esters may be incompatible with methadone hydrochloride.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include tulu.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- **Physeptone** (Martindale Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Methadone hydrochloride 5 mg** Physeptone 5mg tablets | 50 tablet [PoM] £2.84 DT = £2.84 [CD2]

##### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- **Methadone hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Methadone hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml** Methadone 1mg/ml oral solution | 100 ml [PoM] £0.91–£1.00 DT = £0.64 [CD2] | 500 ml [PoM] £6.18 DT = £3.20 [CD2] | 2500 ml [PoM] £16.00–£32.10 [CD2]  
**Methadone 1mg/ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free** | 50 ml [PoM] £1.04 DT = £1.04 [CD2] sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £2.08 DT = £2.08 [CD2] sugar-free | 500 ml [PoM] £6.30 DT = £6.30 [CD2] sugar-free | 2500 ml [PoM] £31.50–£32.50 [CD2]

- **Methadose** (Rosemont Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Methadone hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Methadose 10mg/ml oral solution concentrate sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £12.01 [CD2]

**Methadone hydrochloride 20 mg per 1 ml** Methadose 20mg/ml oral solution concentrate sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £24.02 [CD2]

- **Metharose** (Rosemont Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Methadone hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml** Metharose 1mg/ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 500 ml [PoM] £6.82 DT = £6.30 [CD2]

- **Physeptone** (Martindale Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Methadone hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml** Physeptone 1mg/ml mixture | 100 ml [PoM] £1.08 DT = £0.64 [CD2] | 500 ml [PoM] £5.46 DT = £3.20 [CD2] | 2500 ml [PoM] £27.29 [CD2]  
**Physeptone 1mg/ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free** | 100 ml [PoM] £1.08 DT = £2.08 [CD2] sugar-free | 500 ml [PoM] £5.46 DT = £6.30 [CD2] sugar-free | 2500 ml [PoM] £27.29 [CD2]

# Chapter 5

## Infection

### CONTENTS

<b>1 Amoebic infection</b>	page 300
<b>2 Bacterial infection</b>	300
2.1 Anthrax	360
2.2 Lyme disease	360
2.3 Methicillin-resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>	360
2.4 Tuberculosis	361
2.5 Urinary tract infections	369
<b>3 Fungal infection</b>	370
3.1 Pneumocystis pneumonia	379
<b>4 Helminth infection</b>	382
<b>5 Protozoal infection</b>	384
5.1 Leishmaniasis	385
5.2 Malaria	page 386
5.3 Toxoplasmosis	399
<b>6 Viral infection</b>	399
6.1 Hepatitis	399
6.2 Hepatitis infections	400
6.2a Chronic hepatitis B	400
6.2b Chronic hepatitis C	400
6.3 Herpesvirus infections	403
6.3a Cytomegalovirus infections	407
6.4 HIV infection	409
6.5 Influenza	427
6.6 Respiratory syncytial virus	430

## 1 Amoebic infection

**Other drugs used for Amoebic infection** Metronidazole, p. 333 • Tinidazole, p. 335

### ANTIPROTOZOALS

#### Diloxanide furoate

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Chronic amoebiasis | Acute amoebiasis as adjunct to metronidazole or tinidazole**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 6.6 mg/kg 3 times a day for 10 days
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg 3 times a day for 10 days

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 25 kg body-weight.
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal cramps • appetite decreased • diarrhoea • dizziness • flatulence • headache • nausea • skin reactions • vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

- ▶ **Diloxanide furoate (Non-proprietary)**
- Diloxanide furoate 500 mg** Diloxanide 500mg tablets | 30 tablet (PoM) £93.50

## 2 Bacterial infection

### Antibacterials, principles of therapy

07-Mar-2017

#### Antibacterial drug choice

Before selecting an antibacterial the clinician must first consider two factors— the patient and the known or likely causative organism. Factors related to the patient which must be considered include history of allergy, renal and hepatic function, susceptibility to infection (i.e. whether immunocompromised), ability to tolerate drugs by mouth, severity of illness, ethnic origin, age, whether taking other medication and, if female, whether pregnant, breast-feeding or taking an oral contraceptive.

The known or likely organism and its antibacterial sensitivity, in association with the above factors, will suggest one or more antibacterials, the final choice depending on the microbiological, pharmacological, and toxicological properties.

The principles involved in selection of an antibacterial must allow for a number of variables including changing renal and hepatic function, increasing bacterial resistance, and information on side-effects. Duration of therapy, dosage, and route of administration depend on site, type and severity of infection and response.

#### Antibacterial policies

Local policies often limit the antibacterials that may be used to achieve reasonable economy consistent with adequate cover, and to reduce the development of resistant organisms. A policy may indicate a range of drugs for general use, and permit other drugs only on the advice of the microbiologist or paediatric infectious diseases specialist.

#### Antibacterials, considerations before starting therapy

The following precepts should be considered before starting:

- Viral infections should not be treated with antibacterials. However, antibacterials may be used to treat secondary bacterial infection (e.g. bacterial pneumonia secondary to influenza).

- Samples should be taken for culture and sensitivity testing; '**blind**' antibacterial prescribing for unexplained pyrexia usually leads to further difficulty in establishing the diagnosis;
- Knowledge of **prevalent organisms** and their current sensitivity is of great help in choosing an antibacterial before bacteriological confirmation is available. Generally, narrow-spectrum antibacterials are preferred to broad-spectrum antibacterials unless there is a clear clinical indication (e.g. life-threatening sepsis);
- The **dose** of an antibacterial varies according to a number of factors including age, weight, hepatic function, renal function, and severity of infection. The prescribing of the so-called 'standard' dose in serious infections may result in failure of treatment or even death of the patient; therefore it is important to prescribe a dose appropriate to the condition. An inadequate dose may also increase the likelihood of antibacterial resistance. On the other hand, for an antibacterial with a narrow margin between the toxic and therapeutic dose (e.g. an aminoglycoside) it is also important to avoid an excessive dose and the concentration of the drug in the plasma may need to be monitored;
- The **route** of administration of an antibacterial often depends on the severity of the infection. Life-threatening infections often require intravenous therapy. Antibacterials that are well absorbed may be given by mouth even for some serious infections. Parenteral administration is also appropriate when the oral route cannot be used (e.g. because of vomiting) or if absorption is inadequate (e.g. in neonates and young children). Whenever possible, painful intramuscular injections should be avoided in children;
- **Duration** of therapy depends on the nature of the infection and the response to treatment. Courses should not be unduly prolonged because they encourage resistance, they may lead to side-effects and they are costly. However, in certain infections such as tuberculosis or osteomyelitis it may be necessary to treat for prolonged periods. Conversely a single dose of an antibacterial may cure uncomplicated urinary-tract infections. The prescription for an antibacterial should specify the duration of treatment or the date when treatment is to be reviewed.

### Superinfection

In general, broad-spectrum antibacterial drugs such as the cephalosporins are more likely to be associated with adverse reactions related to the selection of resistant organisms e.g. *fungal infections* or *antibiotic-associated colitis* (pseudomembranous colitis); other problems associated with superinfection include vaginitis and pruritus ani.

### Antibacterial therapy

When the pathogen has been isolated treatment may be changed to a more appropriate antibacterial if necessary. If no bacterium is cultured the antibacterial can be continued or stopped on clinical grounds.

### Antibacterials, switching from parenteral to oral treatment

The ongoing parenteral administration of an antibacterial should be reviewed regularly. In older children it may be possible to switch to an oral antibacterial; in neonates and infants this should be done more cautiously because of the relatively high incidence of bacteraemia and the possibility of variable oral absorption.

### Antibacterials for prophylaxis

In most situations, only a short course of prophylactic antibacterial is needed. Longer-term antibacterial

prophylaxis is appropriate in specific indications such as vesico-ureteric reflux.

### Notifiable diseases

Doctors must notify the Proper Officer of the local authority (usually the consultant in communicable disease control) when attending a patient suspected of suffering from any of the diseases listed below; a form is available from the Proper Officer.

Anthrax	Mumps
Botulism	Paratyphoid fever
Brucellosis	Plague
Cholera	Poliomyelitis, acute
Diarrhoea (infectious bloody)	Rabies
Diphtheria	Rubella
Encephalitis, acute	SARS
Food poisoning	Scarlet fever
Haemolytic uraemic syndrome	Smallpox
Haemorrhagic fever (viral)	Streptococcal disease (Group A, invasive)
Hepatitis, viral	Tetanus
Legionnaires' disease	Tuberculosis
Leprosy	Typhoid fever
Malaria	Typhus
Measles	Whooping cough
Meningitis	Yellow fever
Meningococcal septicaemia	

**Note** It is good practice for doctors to also inform the consultant in communicable disease control of instances of other infections (e.g. psittacosis) where there could be a public health risk.

### Sepsis, early management

**[EvGr]** Children identified as being at high risk of severe illness or death due to suspected sepsis should be given a broad-spectrum antibacterial at the maximum recommended dose without delay (ideally within one hour). Microbiological samples and blood cultures must be taken prior to administration of antibiotics; the prescription should be adjusted subsequently according to susceptibility results.

A thorough clinical examination should be carried out to identify sources of infection. If the cause of infection is identified, treat in line with local antibacterial guidance or susceptibility results.

Children aged up to 17 years with suspected community-acquired sepsis of any cause should be treated with ceftriaxone p. 322. If the child is already in hospital or is known to have previously been infected or colonised with ceftriaxone-resistant bacteria, an alternative antibiotic should be chosen following local guidelines. Children younger than 3 months should also receive an additional antibiotic that is active against *listeria* (such as ampicillin p. 341 or amoxicillin p. 339).

Neonates who are in hospital with suspected sepsis within 72 hours of birth, should be treated with intravenous benzylpenicillin sodium p. 338 and gentamicin p. 312. Community-acquired sepsis in neonates (who are more than 40 weeks corrected gestational age) should be treated with ceftriaxone p. 322, unless already receiving an intravenous calcium infusion. Neonates aged 40 weeks corrected gestational age or below, or receiving an intravenous calcium infusion, should receive cefotaxime p. 320, dosed according to age.

The need for intravenous fluids, inotropes, vasopressors and oxygen should also be assessed without delay, taking into consideration the child's lactate concentration, systolic blood pressure (in children over 12 years) and their risk of severe illness or death. Children at high risk should be monitored continuously if possible, and no less than every 30 minutes.



Children with suspected sepsis who are not immediately deemed to be at high risk of severe illness or death, should be re-assessed regularly for the need for empirical treatment, taking into consideration all risk factors including lactate concentration and evidence of acute kidney injury.  $\blacktriangle$

## Antibacterials, use for prophylaxis

16-Mar-2017

### Rheumatic fever: prevention of recurrence

- Phenoxymethylpenicillin p. 339 by mouth *or* erythromycin p. 331 by mouth.

### Invasive group A streptococcal infection: prevention of secondary cases

- Phenoxymethylpenicillin by mouth.

If child penicillin allergic, *either* erythromycin by mouth *or* azithromycin p. 329 by mouth [unlicensed indication].

For details of those who should receive chemoprophylaxis contact a consultant in communicable disease control (or a consultant in infectious diseases or the local Public Health England Laboratory).

### Meningococcal meningitis: prevention of secondary cases

- Ciprofloxacin p. 348 by mouth [unlicensed indication] *or* rifampicin p. 364 by mouth *or* ceftriaxone p. 322 by intramuscular injection [unlicensed indication].

For details of those who should receive chemoprophylaxis contact a consultant in communicable disease control (or a consultant in infectious diseases or the local Public Health England laboratory). Unless there has been direct exposure of the mouth or nose to infectious droplets from a patient with meningococcal disease who has received less than 24 hours of antibacterial treatment, healthcare workers do not generally require chemoprophylaxis.

### *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease: prevention of secondary cases

- Rifampicin by mouth *or* (if rifampicin cannot be used) ceftriaxone by intramuscular injection, *or* by intravenous injection, *or* by intravenous infusion [unlicensed indication].

For details of those who should receive chemoprophylaxis contact a consultant in communicable disease control (or a consultant in infectious diseases or the local Public Health England laboratory). Unless there has been direct exposure of the mouth or nose to infectious droplets from a patient with meningococcal disease who has received less than 24 hours of antibacterial treatment, healthcare workers do not generally require chemoprophylaxis.

Within 4 weeks of illness onset in an index case with confirmed or suspected invasive *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease, give antibacterial prophylaxis to all household contacts if there is a vulnerable individual in the household. Also, give antibacterial prophylaxis to the index case if they are in contact with vulnerable household contacts *or* if they are under 10 years of age. Vulnerable individuals include the immunocompromised, those with asplenia, *or* children under 10 years of age. If there are 2 *or* more cases of invasive *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease within 120 days in a pre-school *or* primary school, antibacterial prophylaxis should also be given to all room contacts (including staff). Also see immunisation against *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease.

### Diphtheria in non-immune patients: prevention of secondary cases

- Erythromycin (*or* another macrolide e.g. azithromycin *or* clarithromycin p. 330) by mouth.

Treat for further 10 days if nasopharyngeal swabs positive after first 7 days' treatment.

### Pertussis, antibacterial prophylaxis

- Clarithromycin (*or* azithromycin *or* erythromycin) by mouth.

Within 3 weeks of onset of cough in the index case, give antibacterial prophylaxis to all close contacts if amongst them there is at least one unimmunised *or* partially immunised child under 1 year of age, *or* if there is at least one individual who has not received a pertussis-containing vaccine more than 1 week and less than 5 years ago (so long as that individual lives *or* works with children under 4 months of age, is pregnant at over 32 weeks gestation, *or* is a healthcare worker who works with children under 1 year of age *or* with pregnant women).

### Pneumococcal infection in asplenia *or* in patients with sickle-cell disease, antibacterial prophylaxis

- Phenoxymethylpenicillin by mouth.

If cover also needed for *H. influenzae* in child give amoxicillin p. 339 instead.

If penicillin-allergic, erythromycin by mouth.

Antibacterial prophylaxis is not fully reliable. Antibacterial prophylaxis may be discontinued in children over 5 years of age with sickle-cell disease who have received pneumococcal immunisation and who do not have a history of severe pneumococcal infection.

### *Staphylococcus aureus* lung infection in cystic fibrosis, antibacterial prophylaxis

- *Primary prevention*, flucloxacillin p. 345 by mouth.  
*Secondary prevention*, flucloxacillin by mouth.

### Tuberculosis antibacterial prophylaxis in susceptible close contacts *or* those who have become tuberculin positive

- See *Close contacts and Chemoprophylaxis for latent tuberculosis* under Tuberculosis p. 361.

### Urinary-tract infection, antibacterial prophylaxis

- Trimethoprim p. 359 by mouth *or* nitrofurantoin p. 369 by mouth.

**EVGr** Antibacterial prophylaxis may be considered in children with recurrent symptomatic urinary-tract infection, vesicoureteric reflux, *or* those awaiting imaging investigations.  $\blacktriangle$

### Animal and human bites, antibacterial prophylaxis

- Co-amoxiclav p. 343 alone (*or* clindamycin p. 327 if penicillin-allergic).

Cleanse wound thoroughly. For tetanus-prone wound, give human tetanus immunoglobulin p. 775 (with a tetanus-containing vaccine if necessary, according to immunisation history and risk of infection).

Consider rabies prophylaxis for bites from animals in endemic countries. Assess risk of blood-borne viruses (including HIV, hepatitis B and C) and give appropriate prophylaxis to prevent viral spread. Antibacterial prophylaxis recommended for wounds less than 48–72 hours old when the risk of infection is high (e.g. bites from humans *or* cats; bites to the hand, foot, face, *or* genital area; bites involving oedema, crush *or* puncture injury, *or* other moderate to severe injury; wounds that cannot be debrided

adequately; patients with diabetes mellitus, cirrhosis, asplenia, prosthetic joints or valves, or those who are immunocompromised). Give antibacterial prophylaxis for up to 5 days.

### Gastro-intestinal procedures, antibacterial prophylaxis

#### Operations on stomach or oesophagus

- Single dose of i/v gentamicin p. 312 or i/v cefuroxime p. 319 or i/v co-amoxiclav (additional intra-operative or postoperative doses may be given for prolonged procedures or if there is major blood loss).

Intravenous antibacterial prophylaxis should be given up to 30 minutes before the procedure.

Add i/v teicoplanin p. 325 (or vancomycin p. 325) if high risk of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*.

#### Open biliary surgery

- Single dose of i/v cefuroxime + i/v metronidazole p. 333 or i/v gentamicin + i/v metronidazole or i/v co-amoxiclav alone (additional intra-operative or postoperative doses may be given for prolonged procedures or if there is major blood loss).

Intravenous antibacterial prophylaxis should be given up to 30 minutes before the procedure.

Where i/v metronidazole is suggested, it may alternatively be given by suppository but to allow adequate absorption, it should be given 2 hours before surgery.

Add i/v teicoplanin (or vancomycin) if high risk of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*.

#### Resections of colon and rectum, and resections in inflammatory bowel disease, and appendicectomy

- Single dose of i/v gentamicin + i/v metronidazole or i/v cefuroxime + i/v metronidazole or i/v co-amoxiclav alone (additional intra-operative or postoperative doses may be given for prolonged procedures or if there is major blood loss).

Intravenous antibacterial prophylaxis should be given up to 30 minutes before the procedure.

Where i/v metronidazole is suggested, it may alternatively be given by suppository but to allow adequate absorption, it should be given 2 hours before surgery.

Add i/v teicoplanin p. 325 (or vancomycin p. 325) if high risk of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*.

#### Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography

- Single dose of i/v gentamicin p. 312 or oral or i/v ciprofloxacin p. 348.

Intravenous antibacterial prophylaxis should be given up to 30 minutes before the procedure.

Prophylaxis recommended if pancreatic pseudocyst, immunocompromised, history of liver transplantation, or risk of incomplete biliary drainage. For biliary complications following liver transplantation, add i/v amoxicillin p. 339 or i/v teicoplanin (or vancomycin).

#### Percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy or jejunostomy

- Single dose of i/v co-amoxiclav p. 343 or i/v cefuroxime p. 319.

Intravenous antibacterial prophylaxis should be given up to 30 minutes before the procedure.

Use single dose of i/v teicoplanin (or vancomycin) if history of allergy to penicillins or cephalosporins, or if high risk of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*.

### Orthopaedic surgery, antibacterial prophylaxis

#### Closed fractures

- Single dose of i/v cefuroxime or i/v flucloxacillin p. 345 (additional intra-operative or postoperative doses may be given for prolonged procedures or if there is major blood loss).

Intravenous antibacterial prophylaxis should be given up to 30 minutes before the procedure.

If history of allergy to penicillins or to cephalosporins or if high risk of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, use single dose of i/v teicoplanin (or vancomycin) (additional intra-operative or postoperative doses may be given for prolonged procedures or if there is major blood loss).

#### Open fractures

- Use i/v co-amoxiclav alone or i/v cefuroxime + i/v metronidazole p. 333 (or i/v clindamycin p. 327 alone if history of allergy to penicillins or to cephalosporins).

Add i/v teicoplanin (or vancomycin) if high risk of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Start prophylaxis within 3 hours of injury and continue until soft tissue closure (max. 72 hours).

At first debridement also use a single dose of i/v cefuroxime + i/v metronidazole + i/v gentamicin or i/v co-amoxiclav + i/v gentamicin (or i/v clindamycin + i/v gentamicin if history of allergy to penicillins or to cephalosporins).

At time of skeletal stabilisation and definitive soft tissue closure use a single dose of i/v gentamicin and i/v teicoplanin (or vancomycin) (intravenous antibacterial prophylaxis should be given up to 30 minutes before the procedure).

#### High lower-limb amputation

- Use i/v co-amoxiclav alone or i/v cefuroxime + i/v metronidazole.

Intravenous antibacterial prophylaxis should be given up to 30 minutes before the procedure.

Continue antibacterial prophylaxis for at least 2 doses after procedure (max. duration of prophylaxis 5 days). If history of allergy to penicillin or to cephalosporins, or if high risk of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, use i/v teicoplanin (or vancomycin) + i/v gentamicin + i/v metronidazole.

Where i/v metronidazole is suggested, it may alternatively be given by suppository but to allow adequate absorption, it should be given 2 hours before surgery.

### Obstetric surgery, antibacterial prophylaxis

#### Termination of pregnancy

- Single dose of oral metronidazole (additional intra-operative or postoperative doses may be given for prolonged procedures or if there is major blood loss).

If genital chlamydial infection cannot be ruled out, give doxycycline p. 352 postoperatively.

### Infective endocarditis, antibacterial prophylaxis

**NICE guidance:** Antimicrobial prophylaxis against infective endocarditis in adults and children undergoing interventional procedures (March 2008, updated 2016)

- Chlorhexidine mouthwash is **not** recommended for the prevention of infective endocarditis in at risk children undergoing dental procedures.

Antibacterial prophylaxis is **not routinely** recommended for the prevention of infective endocarditis in children undergoing the following procedures:

- ▶ dental;
- ▶ upper and lower respiratory tract (including ear, nose, and throat procedures and bronchoscopy);
- ▶ genito-urinary tract (including urological, gynaecological, and obstetric procedures);
- ▶ upper and lower gastro-intestinal tract.

While these procedures can cause bacteraemia, there is no clear association with the development of infective endocarditis. Prophylaxis may expose children to the adverse effects of antimicrobials when the evidence of benefit has not been proven.

Any infection in children at risk of endocarditis should be investigated promptly and treated appropriately to reduce the risk of endocarditis.

If children at risk of infective endocarditis are undergoing a gastro-intestinal or genito-urinary tract procedure at a site where infection is suspected, they should receive appropriate antibacterial therapy that includes cover against organisms that cause endocarditis.

Children at risk of infective endocarditis should be:

- advised to maintain good oral hygiene;
- told how to recognise signs of infective endocarditis, and advised when to seek expert advice.

Patients at risk of infective endocarditis include those with valve replacement, acquired valvular heart disease with stenosis or regurgitation, structural congenital heart disease (including surgically corrected or palliated structural conditions, but excluding isolated atrial septal defect, fully repaired ventricular septal defect, fully repaired patent ductus arteriosus, and closure devices considered to be endothelialised), hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, or a previous episode of infective endocarditis.

### Dermatological procedures

Advice of a Working Party of the British Society for Antimicrobial Chemotherapy is that patients who undergo dermatological procedures do not require antibacterial prophylaxis against endocarditis.

The British Association of Dermatologists Therapy Guidelines and Audit Subcommittee advise that such dermatological procedures include skin biopsies and excision of moles or of malignant lesions.

### Joint prostheses and dental treatment, antibacterial prophylaxis

Advice of a Working Party of the British Society for Antimicrobial Chemotherapy is that patients with prosthetic joint implants (including total hip replacements) do not require antibacterial prophylaxis for dental treatment. The Working Party considers that it is unacceptable to expose patients to the adverse effects of antibacterials when there is no evidence that such prophylaxis is of any benefit, but that those who develop any intercurrent infection require prompt treatment with antibacterials to which the infecting organisms are sensitive.

The Working Party has commented that joint infections have rarely been shown to follow dental procedures and are even more rarely caused by oral streptococci.

### Immunosuppression and indwelling intraperitoneal catheters

Advice of a Working Party of the British Society for Antimicrobial Chemotherapy is that patients who are immunosuppressed (including transplant patients) and patients with indwelling intraperitoneal catheters do not require antibacterial prophylaxis for dental treatment provided there is no other indication for prophylaxis.

The Working Party has commented that there is little evidence that dental treatment is followed by infection in immunosuppressed and immunodeficient patients nor is there evidence that dental treatment is followed by infection in patients with indwelling intraperitoneal catheters.

## Blood infections, antibacterial therapy

### Septicaemia (community-acquired)

- *Child 1 month–18 years*, aminoglycoside + amoxicillin p. 339 (or ampicillin p. 341) or cefotaxime p. 320 (or ceftriaxone p. 322) alone

- If pseudomonas or resistant micro-organisms suspected, use a broad-spectrum antipseudomonal beta-lactam antibacterial.
- If anaerobic infection suspected, add metronidazole p. 333.
- If Gram-positive infection suspected, add flucloxacillin p. 345 or vancomycin p. 325 (or teicoplanin p. 325).
- *Suggested duration of treatment* at least 5 days.

### Septicaemia (hospital-acquired)

- *Child 1 month–18 years*, a broad-spectrum antipseudomonal beta-lactam antibacterial (e.g. piperacillin with tazobactam p. 337, ticarcillin with clavulanic acid p. 337, imipenem with cilastatin p. 315, or meropenem p. 316)
- If pseudomonas suspected, or if multiple-resistant organisms suspected, or if severe sepsis, add aminoglycoside.
- If methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* suspected, add vancomycin (or teicoplanin).
- If anaerobic infection suspected, add metronidazole to a broad-spectrum cephalosporin.
- *Suggested duration of treatment* at least 5 days.

### Septicaemia related to vascular catheter

- Vancomycin (or teicoplanin)
- If Gram-negative sepsis suspected, especially in the immunocompromised, add a broad-spectrum antipseudomonal beta-lactam.
- Consider removing vascular catheter, particularly if infection caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*, pseudomonas, or *Candida* species.

### Meningococcal septicaemia

If meningococcal disease suspected, a single dose of benzylpenicillin sodium p. 338 should be given before urgent transfer to hospital, so long as this does not delay the transfer; cefotaxime may be an alternative in penicillin allergy; chloramphenicol p. 354 may be used if history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin or to cephalosporins.

- Benzylpenicillin sodium or cefotaxime (or ceftriaxone)
- If history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin or to cephalosporins, chloramphenicol

To eliminate nasopharyngeal carriage, ciprofloxacin p. 348, or rifampicin p. 364, or ceftriaxone may be used.

### Septicaemia in neonates

- *Neonate less than 72 hours old*, benzylpenicillin sodium + gentamicin p. 312
- If Gram-negative septicaemia suspected, use benzylpenicillin sodium + gentamicin + cefotaxime; stop benzylpenicillin sodium if Gram-negative infection confirmed.
- *Suggested duration of treatment* usually 7 days.
- *Neonate more than 72 hours old*, flucloxacillin + gentamicin or amoxicillin (or ampicillin) + cefotaxime
- *Suggested duration of treatment* usually 7 days.

## Cardiovascular system infections, antibacterial therapy

### Endocarditis: initial 'blind' therapy

- Flucloxacillin p. 345 (or benzylpenicillin sodium p. 338 if symptoms less severe) + gentamicin p. 312
- If cardiac prostheses present, or if penicillin-allergic, or if methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* suspected, vancomycin p. 325 + rifampicin p. 364 + gentamicin

**Endocarditis caused by staphylococci**

- Flucloxacillin
- ▶ Add rifampicin for at least 2 weeks in prosthetic valve endocarditis
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* at least 4 weeks (at least 6 weeks for prosthetic valve endocarditis)
- If penicillin-allergic or if methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, vancomycin + rifampicin
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* at least 4 weeks (at least 6 weeks for prosthetic valve endocarditis)

**Endocarditis (native valve) caused by fully-sensitive streptococci e.g. viridans streptococci**

- Benzylpenicillin sodium
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 4 weeks
- ▶ *Alternative if a large vegetation, intracardial abscess, or infected emboli are absent*, benzylpenicillin sodium + gentamicin
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 2 weeks
- If penicillin-allergic, vancomycin
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 4 weeks

**Endocarditis (native valve) caused by less-sensitive streptococci**

- Benzylpenicillin sodium + gentamicin
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 4–6 weeks (stop gentamicin after 2 weeks for micro-organisms moderately sensitive to penicillin)
- ▶ *If aminoglycoside cannot be used and if streptococci moderately sensitive to penicillin*, benzylpenicillin sodium
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 4 weeks
- If penicillin-allergic or highly penicillin-resistant, vancomycin (or teicoplanin p. 325) + gentamicin
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 4–6 weeks (stop gentamicin after 2 weeks for micro-organisms moderately sensitive to penicillin)

**Endocarditis (prosthetic valve) caused by streptococci**

- Benzylpenicillin sodium + gentamicin
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* at least 6 weeks (stop gentamicin after 2 weeks if micro-organisms fully sensitive to penicillin)
- If penicillin-allergic or highly penicillin-resistant, vancomycin (or teicoplanin) + gentamicin
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* at least 6 weeks (stop gentamicin after 2 weeks if micro-organisms fully sensitive to penicillin)

**Endocarditis caused by enterococci (e.g. *Enterococcus faecalis*)**

- Amoxicillin p. 339 (or ampicillin p. 341) + gentamicin
- ▶ If gentamicin-resistant, substitute gentamicin with streptomycin p. 313
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* at least 4 weeks (at least 6 weeks for prosthetic valve endocarditis)
- If penicillin-allergic or penicillin-resistant, vancomycin (or teicoplanin) + gentamicin
- If gentamicin-resistant, substitute gentamicin with streptomycin
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* at least 4 weeks (at least 6 weeks for prosthetic valve endocarditis)

**Endocarditis caused by *Haemophilus*, *Actinobacillus*, *Cardiobacterium*, *Eikenella*, and *Kingella* species ('HACEK' micro-organisms)**

- Amoxicillin (or ampicillin) + gentamicin
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 4 weeks (6 weeks for prosthetic valve endocarditis); stop gentamicin after 2 weeks
- If amoxicillin-resistant, ceftriaxone p. 322 + gentamicin
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 4 weeks (6 weeks for prosthetic valve endocarditis); stop gentamicin after 2 weeks

**Central nervous system infections, antibacterial therapy****Meningitis: initial empirical therapy**

- Transfer patient to hospital urgently.
- If meningococcal disease (meningitis with non-blanching rash or meningococcal septicaemia) suspected, benzylpenicillin sodium p. 338 should be given before transfer to hospital, so long as this does not delay the transfer. If a patient with suspected bacterial meningitis without non-blanching rash cannot be transferred to hospital urgently, benzylpenicillin sodium should be given before the transfer. Cefotaxime p. 320 may be an alternative in penicillin allergy; chloramphenicol p. 354 may be used if history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin or to cephalosporins.
- In hospital, consider adjunctive treatment with dexamethasone p. 439, preferably starting before or with first dose of antibacterial, but no later than 12 hours after starting antibacterial; avoid dexamethasone in septic shock, meningococcal septicaemia, or if immunocompromised, or in meningitis following surgery.

In hospital, if aetiology unknown:

- Neonate and child 1–3 months, cefotaxime (or ceftriaxone p. 322) + amoxicillin p. 339 (or ampicillin p. 341)
- ▶ Consider adding vancomycin p. 325 if prolonged or multiple use of other antibacterials in the last 3 months, or if travelled, in the last 3 months, to areas outside the UK with highly penicillin- and cephalosporin-resistant pneumococci
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* at least 14 days
- Child 3 months–18 years cefotaxime (or ceftriaxone)
- ▶ Consider adding vancomycin if prolonged or multiple use of other antibacterials in the last 3 months, or if travelled, in the last 3 months, to areas outside the UK with highly penicillin- and cephalosporin-resistant pneumococci
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* at least 10 days

**Meningitis caused by group B streptococcus**

- Benzylpenicillin sodium + gentamicin p. 312 or cefotaxime (or ceftriaxone) alone
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* at least 14 days; stop gentamicin after 5 days

**Meningitis caused by meningococci**

- Benzylpenicillin sodium or cefotaxime (or ceftriaxone)
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 7 days.
- If history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin or to cephalosporins, chloramphenicol
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 7 days.

**Meningitis caused by pneumococci**

- Cefotaxime (or ceftriaxone)

- ▶ Consider adjunctive treatment with dexamethasone, preferably starting before or with first dose of antibacterial, but no later than 12 hours after starting antibacterial (may reduce penetration of vancomycin into cerebrospinal fluid).
- ▶ If micro-organism penicillin-sensitive, replace cefotaxime with benzylpenicillin sodium.
- ▶ If micro-organism highly penicillin- and cephalosporin-resistant, add vancomycin and if necessary rifampicin p. 364.
- ▶ Suggested duration of antibacterial treatment 14 days.

### Meningitis caused by *Haemophilus influenzae*

- Cefotaxime (or ceftriaxone)
- ▶ Consider adjunctive treatment with dexamethasone, preferably starting before or with first dose of antibacterial, but no later than 12 hours after starting antibacterial.
- ▶ Suggested duration of antibacterial treatment 10 days.
- ▶ For *H. influenzae* type b give rifampicin for 4 days before hospital discharge to those under 10 years of age or to those in contact with vulnerable household contacts
- If history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin or to cephalosporins, or if micro-organism resistant to cefotaxime, chloramphenicol
- ▶ Consider adjunctive treatment with dexamethasone, preferably starting before or with first dose of antibacterial, but no later than 12 hours after starting antibacterial.
- ▶ Suggested duration of antibacterial treatment 10 days.
- ▶ For *H. influenzae* type b give rifampicin for 4 days before hospital discharge to those under 10 years of age or to those in contact with vulnerable household contacts

### Meningitis caused by *Listeria*

- Amoxicillin (or ampicillin) + gentamicin
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 21 days.
- ▶ Consider stopping gentamicin after 7 days
- If history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin, co-trimoxazole p. 350
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 21 days.

## Ear infections, antibacterial therapy

### Otitis externa

- For topical treatments, consider *Otitis externa*, under Ear p. 688.
- Consider systemic antibacterial if spreading cellulitis or patient systemically unwell.
- Flucloxacillin p. 345
- ▶ If penicillin-allergic, clarithromycin p. 330 (or azithromycin p. 329 or erythromycin p. 331)
- ▶ If *Pseudomonas* suspected, ciprofloxacin p. 348 (or an aminoglycoside)

### Otitis media

- Many infections are caused by viruses. Most uncomplicated cases resolve without antibacterial treatment. In children without systemic features, antibacterial treatment may be started after 72 hours if no improvement. Consider earlier treatment if deterioration, if systemically unwell, if at high risk of serious complications (e.g. in immunosuppression, cystic fibrosis), if mastoiditis present, or in children under 2 years of age with bilateral otitis media.
- Amoxicillin p. 339 (or ampicillin p. 341)
- ▶ Consider co-amoxiclav p. 343 if no improvement after 48 hours.

- ▶ In severe infection, initial parenteral therapy with co-amoxiclav or cefuroxime p. 319.
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 5 days (longer if severely ill).
- If penicillin-allergic, clarithromycin (or azithromycin or erythromycin)
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 5 days (longer if severely ill)

## Eye infections, antibacterial therapy

### Purulent conjunctivitis

- Chloramphenicol p. 677 eye drops.

### Congenital chlamydial conjunctivitis

- ▶ Erythromycin p. 331 (by mouth)
- Suggested duration of treatment 14 days

### Congenital gonococcal conjunctivitis

- ▶ Cefotaxime p. 320 (or ceftriaxone p. 322)
- Suggested duration of treatment single dose.

## Gastro-intestinal system infections, antibacterial therapy

### Gastro-enteritis

- Frequently self-limiting and may not be bacterial.
- Antibacterial not usually indicated.

### Campylobacter enteritis

- Frequently self-limiting; treat if immunocompromised or if severe infection.
- Clarithromycin p. 330 (or azithromycin p. 329 or erythromycin p. 331)
- ▶ Alternative, ciprofloxacin p. 348
- ▶ Strains with decreased sensitivity to ciprofloxacin isolated frequently

### Salmonella (non-typhoid)

- ▶ Treat invasive or severe infection. Do not treat less severe infection unless there is a risk of developing invasive infection (e.g. immunocompromised children, those with haemoglobinopathy, or children under 6 months of age).
- Ciprofloxacin or cefotaxime p. 320

### Shigellosis

- ▶ Antibacterial not indicated for mild cases.
- Azithromycin or ciprofloxacin
- ▶ Alternatives if micro-organism sensitive, amoxicillin p. 339 or trimethoprim p. 359

### Typhoid fever

- ▶ Infections from Middle-East, South Asia, and South-East Asia may be multiple-antibacterial-resistant and sensitivity should be tested.
- Cefotaxime (or ceftriaxone p. 322)
- ▶ azithromycin may be an alternative in mild or moderate disease caused by multiple-antibacterial-resistant micro-organisms
- Alternative if micro-organism sensitive, ciprofloxacin or chloramphenicol p. 354

### Clostridium difficile infection

- ▶ *Clostridium difficile* infection is caused by colonisation of the colon with *Clostridium difficile* and production of toxin.



It often follows antibiotic therapy and is usually of acute onset, but may become chronic. It is a particular hazard of ampicillin p. 341, amoxicillin, co-amoxiclav p. 343, second- and third-generation cephalosporins, clindamycin p. 327, and quinolones, but few antibacterials are free of this side-effect. Oral metronidazole p. 333 or oral vancomycin p. 325 are used as specific treatment; vancomycin may be preferred for very sick patients. Metronidazole can be given by intravenous infusion if oral treatment is inappropriate.

- ▶ For first episode of mild to moderate infection, oral metronidazole
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 10–14 days
- For second or subsequent episode of infection, for severe infection, for infection not responding to metronidazole, or in children intolerant of metronidazole, oral vancomycin
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 10–14 days
- For infection not responding to vancomycin, or for life-threatening infection, or in patients with ileus, oral vancomycin + i/v metronidazole
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 10–14 days

### Peritonitis

- ▶ A cephalosporin + metronidazole or amoxicillin + gentamicin p. 312 + metronidazole or piperacillin with tazobactam p. 337 alone

### Peritonitis: peritoneal dialysis-associated

- ▶ Vancomycin (or teicoplanin p. 325) + ceftazidime p. 321 added to dialysis fluid or vancomycin added to dialysis fluid + ciprofloxacin by mouth
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 14 days or longer

### Necrotising enterocolitis in neonates

- Benzylpenicillin sodium p. 338 + gentamicin + metronidazole or amoxicillin (or ampicillin) + gentamicin + metronidazole or amoxicillin (or ampicillin) + cefotaxime + metronidazole

## Genital system infections, antibacterial therapy

### Uncomplicated genital chlamydial infection, non-gonococcal urethritis, and non-specific genital infection

Contact tracing recommended.

- Child under 12 years, erythromycin p. 331
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 14 days
- Child 12–17 years, azithromycin p. 329 as a single dose or doxycycline p. 352 for 7 days
- Alternatively, erythromycin for 14 days

### Gonorrhoea: uncomplicated

Contact tracing recommended. Consider chlamydia co-infection. Choice of antibacterial depends on locality where infection acquired.

- Child under 12 years, single-dose of ceftriaxone p. 322
- Child 12–17 years, single-dose of cefixime p. 320
- Alternatively, if micro-organism sensitive, single-dose of ciprofloxacin p. 348
- Child 12–17 years with pharyngeal infection, single-dose of ceftriaxone

### Pelvic inflammatory disease

Contact tracing recommended.

- Child 2–11 years, erythromycin + metronidazole p. 333 + single-dose of i/m ceftriaxone

- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 14 days (except i/m ceftriaxone)
- Child 12–17 years, doxycycline + metronidazole + single-dose of i/m ceftriaxone
- ▶ If severely ill, seek specialist advice.
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 14 days (except i/m ceftriaxone)

### Syphilis

Contact tracing recommended.

- Child under 12 years, benzylpenicillin sodium p. 338 or procaine benzylpenicillin [unlicensed]
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 10 days

### Early syphilis (infection of less than 2 years)

- Child 12–17 years, benzathine benzylpenicillin [unlicensed]
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment single-dose (repeat dose after 7 days for females in the third trimester of pregnancy)
- Alternatively, doxycycline or erythromycin
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 10 days

### Late latent syphilis (asymptomatic infection of more than 2 years)

- Child 12–17 years, benzathine benzylpenicillin [unlicensed].
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment once weekly for 2 weeks
- Alternatively, doxycycline
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 28 days

### Asymptomatic contacts of patients with infectious syphilis

- Child 12–17 years, doxycycline
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 14 days

### Neonatal congenital syphilis

- Benzylpenicillin sodium
- ▶ Also consider treating neonates with suspected congenital syphilis whose mothers were treated inadequately for syphilis, or whose mothers were treated for syphilis in the 4 weeks before delivery, or whose mothers were treated with non-penicillin antibacterials for syphilis.
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 10 days.

## Musculoskeletal system infections, antibacterial therapy

### Osteomyelitis

Seek specialist advice if chronic infection or prostheses present.

- Flucloxacillin p. 345
- ▶ Consider adding fusidic acid p. 357 or rifampicin p. 364 for initial 2 weeks.
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 6 weeks for acute infection
- If penicillin-allergic, clindamycin p. 327
- ▶ Consider adding fusidic acid or rifampicin for initial 2 weeks.
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 6 weeks for acute infection
- If methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* suspected, vancomycin p. 325 (or teicoplanin p. 325)
- ▶ Consider adding fusidic acid or rifampicin for initial 2 weeks.
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 6 weeks for acute infection

### Septic arthritis

Seek specialist advice if prostheses present.

- Flucloxacillin
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 4–6 weeks (longer if infection complicated).
- *If penicillin-allergic*, clindamycin
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 4–6 weeks (longer if infection complicated).
- *If methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus suspected*, vancomycin (or teicoplanin)
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 4–6 weeks (longer if infection complicated).
- *If gonococcal arthritis or Gram-negative infection suspected*, cefotaxime p. 320 (or ceftriaxone p. 322)
- ▶ *Suggested duration of treatment* 4–6 weeks (longer if infection complicated; treat gonococcal infection for 2 weeks).

## Nose infections, antibacterial therapy

31-Oct-2017

### Sinusitis (acute)

Acute sinusitis is generally triggered by a viral infection, although occasionally it may become complicated by a bacterial infection caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Moraxella catarrhalis*, or *Staphylococcus aureus*. For further information see Sinusitis (acute) p. 697.

### Treatment

**[EvGr]** Antibacterial therapy should *only* be offered to children with acute sinusitis who are systemically very unwell, have signs and symptoms of a more serious illness, those who are at high-risk of complications due to pre-existing comorbidities, or whenever bacterial sinusitis is suspected.

⚠ For further information see Sinusitis (acute) p. 697.

### Choice of antibacterial therapy

#### No penicillin allergy

- **[EvGr]** *First line*:
  - ▶ Non-life threatening symptoms: phenoxymethylpenicillin p. 339.
  - ▶ Systemically very unwell, signs and symptoms of a more serious illness, or at high-risk of complications: co-amoxiclav p. 343.
- *Second line* (worsening symptoms despite 2 or 3 days of antibiotic treatment):
  - ▶ Non-life threatening symptoms: co-amoxiclav.
  - ▶ Systemically very unwell, signs and symptoms of a more serious illness or at high-risk of complications: consult local microbiologist. ⚠

#### Penicillin allergy or intolerance

- **[EvGr]** *First line*: clarithromycin p. 330, or doxycycline p. 352 (for children above 12 years old).
- ▶ *Second line* (worsening symptoms despite 2 or 3 days of antibiotic treatment): consult local microbiologist. ⚠

### Useful Resources

Sinusitis (acute): antimicrobial prescribing. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. NICE guideline 79. October 2017.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng79](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng79)

## Oral bacterial infections

### Antibacterial drugs

Antibacterial drugs should only be prescribed for the treatment of oral infections on the basis of defined need. They may be used in conjunction with (but not as an

alternative to) other appropriate measures, such as providing drainage or extracting a tooth.

The 'blind' prescribing of an antibacterial for unexplained pyrexia, cervical lymphadenopathy, or facial swelling can lead to difficulty in establishing the diagnosis. In severe oral infections, a sample should always be taken for bacteriology.

Oral infections which may require antibacterial treatment include acute periapical or periodontal abscess, cellulitis, acutely created oral-antral communication (and acute sinusitis), severe pericoronitis, localised osteitis, acute necrotising ulcerative gingivitis, and destructive forms of chronic periodontal disease. Most of these infections are readily resolved by the early establishment of drainage and removal of the cause (typically an infected necrotic pulp). Antibacterials may be required if treatment has to be delayed, in immunocompromised patients, or in those with conditions such as diabetes. Certain rarer infections including bacterial sialadenitis, osteomyelitis, actinomycosis, and infections involving fascial spaces such as Ludwig's angina, require antibiotics and specialist hospital care.

Antibacterial drugs may also be useful after dental surgery in some cases of spreading infection. Infection may spread to involve local lymph nodes, to fascial spaces (where it can cause airway obstruction), or into the bloodstream (where it can lead to cavernous sinus thrombosis and other serious complications). Extension of an infection can also lead to maxillary sinusitis; osteomyelitis is a complication, which usually arises when host resistance is reduced.

If the oral infection fails to respond to antibacterial treatment within 48 hours the antibacterial should be changed, preferably on the basis of bacteriological investigation. Failure to respond may also suggest an incorrect diagnosis, lack of essential additional measures (such as drainage), poor host resistance, or poor patient compliance.

Combination of a penicillin (or a macrolide) with metronidazole p. 333 may sometimes be helpful for the treatment of severe oral infections or oral infections.

### Penicillins

Phenoxymethylpenicillin p. 339 is effective for dentoalveolar abscess.

#### Broad-spectrum penicillins

Amoxicillin p. 339 is as effective as phenoxymethylpenicillin but is better absorbed; however, it may encourage emergence of resistant organisms.

Like phenoxymethylpenicillin, amoxicillin is ineffective against bacteria that produce beta-lactamases.

Co-amoxiclav p. 343 is active against beta-lactamase-producing bacteria that are resistant to amoxicillin. Co-amoxiclav may be used for severe dental infection with spreading cellulitis or dental infection not responding to first-line antibacterial treatment.

### Cephalosporins

The cephalosporins offer little advantage over the penicillins in dental infections, often being less active against anaerobes. Infections due to oral streptococci (often termed viridans streptococci) which become resistant to penicillin are usually also resistant to cephalosporins. This is of importance in the case of patients who have had rheumatic fever and are on long-term penicillin therapy. Cefalexin p. 317 and cefradine p. 318 have been used in the treatment of oral infections.

### Tetracyclines

In children over 12 years of age, tetracyclines can be effective against oral anaerobes but the development of resistance (especially by oral streptococci) has reduced their usefulness for the treatment of acute oral infections; they may still have a role in the treatment of destructive

(refractory) forms of periodontal disease. Doxycycline p. 352 has a longer duration of action than tetracycline p. 354 or oxytetracycline p. 354 and need only be given once daily; it is reported to be more active against anaerobes than some other tetracyclines.

Doxycycline may have a role in the treatment of recurrent aphthous ulceration, or as an adjunct to gingival scaling and root planing for periodontitis.

### Macrolides

The macrolides are an alternative for oral infections in penicillin-allergic patients or where a beta-lactamase producing organism is involved. However, many organisms are now resistant to macrolides or rapidly develop resistance; their use should therefore be limited to short courses.

### Clindamycin

Clindamycin p. 327 should not be used routinely for the treatment of oral infections because it may be no more effective than penicillins against anaerobes and there may be cross-resistance with erythromycin-resistant bacteria. Clindamycin can be used for the treatment of dentoalveolar abscess that has not responded to penicillin or to metronidazole.

### Metronidazole and tinidazole

Metronidazole is an alternative to a penicillin for the treatment of many oral infections where the patient is allergic to penicillin or the infection is due to beta-lactamase-producing anaerobes. It is the drug of first choice for the treatment of acute necrotising ulcerative gingivitis (Vincent's infection) and pericoronitis; amoxicillin is a suitable alternative. For these purposes metronidazole for 3 days is sufficient, but the duration of treatment may need to be longer in pericoronitis. Tinidazole p. 335 is licensed for the treatment of acute ulcerative gingivitis.

## Respiratory system infections, antibacterial therapy

### Epididymitis (*Haemophilus influenzae*)

- Cefotaxime p. 320 (or ceftriaxone p. 322)
- ▶ If history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin or to cephalosporins, chloramphenicol p. 354

### Community-acquired pneumonia

Children under 2 years with mild symptoms of lower respiratory tract infection (particularly those vaccinated with pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) p. 793 and *Haemophilus* type b conjugate vaccine) are unlikely to have pneumonia; antibacterial treatment may be considered if symptoms persist.

- Neonate, benzylpenicillin sodium p. 338 + gentamicin p. 312
- Child 1 month–18 years, amoxicillin p. 339 (or ampicillin p. 341) by mouth
- ▶ Pneumococci with decreased penicillin sensitivity have been isolated in the UK, but are not common.
- ▶ If no response to treatment, add clarithromycin p. 330 (or azithromycin p. 329 or erythromycin p. 331)
- ▶ If staphylococci suspected (e.g. in influenza or measles), give by mouth amoxicillin + flucloxacillin p. 345 or co-amoxiclav p. 343 alone
- ▶ If septicaemia, complicated pneumonia, or if oral administration not possible, initiate treatment with i/v amoxicillin or i/v co-amoxiclav or i/v cefuroxime p. 319 or i/v cefotaxime (or ceftriaxone)

- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 7 days (may extend treatment to 14 days in some cases e.g. if staphylococci suspected)
- Child 1 month–18 years, if penicillin-allergic, clarithromycin (or azithromycin or erythromycin)
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 7 days (may extend treatment to 14 days in some cases e.g. if staphylococci suspected)

### Pneumonia possibly caused by atypical pathogens

- Clarithromycin (or azithromycin or erythromycin)
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 10–14 days
- Alternative for chlamydial or mycoplasma infections in children over 12 years, doxycycline p. 352
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 10–14 days

### Hospital-acquired pneumonia

- Early-onset infection (less than 5 days after admission to hospital), treat as for severe community-acquired pneumonia of unknown aetiology; if life-threatening infection, or if recent history of antibacterial treatment, or if resistant organisms suspected, treat as for late-onset hospital-acquired pneumonia
- Late-onset infection (more than 5 days after admission to hospital), an antipseudomonal penicillin (e.g. piperacillin with tazobactam p. 337) or another antipseudomonal beta-lactam
- ▶ If methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* suspected, add vancomycin p. 325.
- ▶ If severe illness caused by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, add an aminoglycoside.
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 7 days (longer if *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* confirmed)

### Lung infection in cystic fibrosis (*Staphylococcus* spp.)

- Flucloxacillin
- ▶ If child already taking flucloxacillin prophylaxis or if severe exacerbation, add fusidic acid p. 357 or rifampicin p. 364; use flucloxacillin at treatment dose
- If penicillin-allergic, clarithromycin (or azithromycin or erythromycin) or clindamycin p. 327
- ▶ Use clarithromycin only if micro-organism sensitive

### Lung infection in cystic fibrosis (*Haemophilus influenzae*)

- Amoxicillin or a broad-spectrum cephalosporin
- ▶ In severe exacerbation use a third-generation cephalosporin (e.g. cefotaxime)

### Lung infection in cystic fibrosis (*Pseudomonas* spp.)

- Ciprofloxacin p. 348 + nebulised colistimethate sodium p. 346
- ▶ For severe exacerbation, an antipseudomonal beta-lactam antibacterial + parenteral tobramycin p. 313

## Skin infections, antibacterial therapy

### Impetigo: small areas of skin infected

Seek local microbiology advice before using topical treatment in hospital.

- Topical fusidic acid p. 357
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 7 days is usually adequate (max. 10 days).
- Alternatively, if methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, topical mupirocin p. 724

- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 7 days is usually adequate (max. 10 days).

### Impetigo: widespread infection

- Oral flucloxacillin p. 345
- ▶ If streptococci suspected in severe infection, add phenoxymethylpenicillin p. 339
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 7 days.
- If penicillin-allergic, oral clarithromycin p. 330 (or azithromycin p. 329 or erythromycin p. 331)
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 7 days.

### Erysipelas

- Erythromethylpenicillin or benzylpenicillin sodium p. 338
- ▶ If severe infection, replace phenoxymethylpenicillin or benzylpenicillin sodium with high-dose flucloxacillin
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment at least 7 days
- If penicillin-allergic, clindamycin p. 327 or clarithromycin (or azithromycin or erythromycin)
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment at least 7 days.

### Cellulitis

- Flucloxacillin (high dose)
- ▶ If streptococcal infection confirmed, replace flucloxacillin with phenoxymethylpenicillin or benzylpenicillin sodium
- ▶ If Gram-negative bacteria or anaerobes suspected (e.g. facial infection, orbital infection, or infection caused by animal or human bites), use broad-spectrum antibacterials; if periumbilical cellulitis, use flucloxacillin + gentamicin p. 312
- If penicillin-allergic, clindamycin or clarithromycin (or azithromycin or erythromycin)
- ▶ If Gram-negative bacteria suspected, use broad-spectrum antibacterials.

### Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome

- Flucloxacillin
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 7–10 days.
- If penicillin-allergic, clarithromycin (or azithromycin or erythromycin)
- ▶ Suggested duration of treatment 7–10 days.

### Animal and human bites

Cleanse wound thoroughly. For tetanus-prone wound, give human tetanus immunoglobulin p. 775 (with a tetanus-containing vaccine if necessary, according to immunisation history and risk of infection). Consider rabies prophylaxis for bites from animals in endemic countries; assess risk of blood-borne viruses (including HIV, hepatitis B and C) and give appropriate prophylaxis to prevent viral spread.

- Co-amoxiclav p. 343
- If penicillin-allergic, clindamycin

### Surgical wound infection

- Flucloxacillin or co-amoxiclav

### Paronychia or 'septic spots' in neonate

- Flucloxacillin
- ▶ If systemically unwell, add an aminoglycoside.

## ANTIBACTERIALS > AMINOGLYCOSIDES

## Aminoglycosides

### Overview

These include amikacin p. 311, gentamicin p. 312, neomycin sulfate p. 690, streptomycin p. 313, and tobramycin p. 313. All are bactericidal and active against some Gram-positive

and many Gram-negative organisms. Amikacin, gentamicin, and tobramycin are also active against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*; streptomycin is active against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and is now almost entirely reserved for tuberculosis.

The aminoglycosides are not absorbed from the gut (although there is a risk of absorption in inflammatory bowel disease and liver failure) and must therefore be given by injection for systemic infections.

Gentamicin is the aminoglycoside of choice in the UK and is used widely for the treatment of serious infections. It has a broad spectrum but is inactive against anaerobes and has poor activity against haemolytic streptococci and pneumococci. When used for the 'blind' therapy of undiagnosed serious infections it is usually given in conjunction with a penicillin or metronidazole p. 333 (or both). Gentamicin is used together with another antibiotic for the treatment of endocarditis. Streptomycin may be used as an alternative in gentamicin-resistant enterococcal endocarditis.

Loading and maintenance doses of gentamicin may be calculated on the basis of the patient's weight and renal function (e.g. using a nomogram); adjustments are then made according to serum-gentamicin concentrations. High doses are occasionally indicated for serious infections, especially in the neonate, in the patient with cystic fibrosis, or in the immunocompromised patient. Whenever possible treatment should not exceed 7 days.

Amikacin is more stable than gentamicin to enzyme inactivation. Amikacin is used in the treatment of serious infections caused by gentamicin-resistant Gram-negative bacilli.

Tobramycin has similar activity to gentamicin. It is slightly more active against *Ps. aeruginosa* but shows less activity against certain other Gram-negative bacteria.

Neomycin sulfate is too toxic for parenteral administration and can only be used for infections of the skin or mucous membranes or to reduce the bacterial population of the colon prior to bowel surgery or in hepatic failure. Oral administration may lead to malabsorption. Small amounts of neomycin sulfate may be absorbed from the gut in patients with hepatic failure and, as these patients may also be uraemic, cumulation may occur with resultant ototoxicity.

### Cystic fibrosis

A higher dose of parenteral aminoglycoside is often required in children with cystic fibrosis because renal clearance of the aminoglycoside is increased. Aminoglycosides have a role in the treatment of pseudomonas lung infections in cystic fibrosis. Tobramycin can be administered by nebuliser or by inhalation of powder on a cyclical basis (28 days of tobramycin followed by a 28-day tobramycin-free interval) for the treatment of chronic pulmonary *Ps. aeruginosa* infection in cystic fibrosis; however, resistance may develop and some patients do not respond to treatment.

### Once daily dosage

Once daily administration of aminoglycosides is more convenient, provides adequate serum concentrations, and has largely superseded multiple-daily dose regimens (given in 2–3 divided doses during the 24 hours). Local guidelines on dosage and serum concentrations should be consulted. A once-daily, high-dose regimen of an aminoglycoside should be avoided in children with endocarditis or burns of more than 20% of the total body surface area. There is insufficient evidence to recommend a once daily, high-dose regimen of an aminoglycoside in pregnancy.

### Serum concentrations

Serum concentration monitoring avoids both excessive and subtherapeutic concentrations thus preventing toxicity and ensuring efficacy. Serum-aminoglycoside concentrations

should be monitored in patients receiving parenteral aminoglycosides and **must** be determined in obesity, and in cystic fibrosis, or if high doses are being given, or if there is renal impairment.

### Neonates

As aminoglycosides are eliminated principally via the kidney, neonatal treatment must reflect the changes in glomerular filtration that occur with increasing gestational and postnatal age. The *extended interval dose regimen* is used in neonates, and serum-aminoglycoside concentrations **must** be measured. In patients on single daily dose regimens it may become necessary to prolong the dose interval to more than 24 hours if the trough concentration is high.

## Aminoglycosides (by injection)

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Myasthenia gravis (aminoglycosides may impair neuromuscular transmission)

● **CAUTIONS** Care must be taken with dosage (the main side-effects of the aminoglycosides are dose-related) - conditions characterised by muscular weakness (aminoglycosides may impair neuromuscular transmission) - if possible, dehydration should be corrected before starting an aminoglycoside - whenever possible, parenteral treatment should not exceed 7 days

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Hearing impairment
- ▶ **Uncommon** Nausea · skin reactions · vomiting
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Anaemia · eosinophilia · fever · headache · hypomagnesaemia · paraesthesia · renal impairment
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Bronchospasm · confusion · lethargy · nephrotoxicity

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Nephrotoxicity occurs most commonly in children with renal failure.

● **PREGNANCY** There is a risk of auditory or vestibular nerve damage in the infant when aminoglycosides are used in the second and third trimesters of pregnancy. The risk is greatest with streptomycin. The risk is probably very small with gentamicin and tobramycin, but their use should be avoided unless essential.

**Monitoring** If given during pregnancy, serum-aminoglycoside concentration monitoring is essential.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Excretion of aminoglycosides is principally via the kidney and accumulation occurs in renal impairment. Ototoxicity and nephrotoxicity occur commonly in patients with renal failure. A once-daily, high-dose regimen of an aminoglycoside should be avoided in children over 1 month of age with a creatinine clearance less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Dose adjustments** If there is impairment of renal function, the interval between doses must be increased; if the renal impairment is severe, the dose itself should be reduced as well.

**Monitoring** Serum-aminoglycoside concentrations **must** be monitored in patients with renal impairment; earlier and more frequent measurement of aminoglycoside concentration may be required.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Serum concentrations Serum concentration monitoring avoids both excessive and subtherapeutic concentrations thus preventing toxicity and ensuring efficacy. Serum-aminoglycoside concentrations should be measured in all patients receiving parenteral aminoglycosides and **must** be determined in obesity, if high doses are being given and in cystic fibrosis.

Serum aminoglycoside concentrations **must** be determined in neonates.

In children with normal renal function, aminoglycoside concentrations should be measured after 3 or 4 doses of a

multiple daily dose regimen.

Blood samples should be taken just before the next dose is administered ('trough' concentration). If the pre-dose ('trough' concentration is high, the interval between doses must be increased. For multiple daily dose regimens, blood samples should also be taken approximately 1 hour after intramuscular or intravenous administration ('peak' concentration). If the post-dose ('peak' concentration is high, the dose must be decreased.

- ▶ Renal function should be assessed before starting an aminoglycoside and during treatment.
- ▶ Auditory and vestibular function should also be monitored during treatment.

 **above**

## Amikacin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Serious Gram-negative infections resistant to gentamicin (multiple daily dose regimen)**

- ▶ **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**
- ▶ Child 1 month-11 years: 7.5 mg/kg every 12 hours, to be administered over 3–5 minutes
- ▶ Child 12-17 years: 7.5 mg/kg every 12 hours; increased to 7.5 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 500 mg every 8 hours) for up to 10 days, higher dose to be used in severe infection, to be administered over 3–5 minutes; maximum 15 g per course

**Serious Gram-negative infections resistant to gentamicin (once daily dose regimen)**

- ▶ **BY INTRAMUSCULAR INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**
- ▶ Child: Initially 15 mg/kg adjusted according to plasma-concentration monitoring, not to be used for endocarditis or meningitis, dose to be adjusted according to serum-amikacin concentration, intravenous injection to be administered over 3–5 minutes

**Neonatal sepsis (extended interval dose regimen)**

- ▶ **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- ▶ Neonate: 15 mg/kg every 24 hours, intravenous injection to be administered over 3–5 minutes.

**Neonatal sepsis (multiple daily dose regimen)**

- ▶ **BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- ▶ Neonate: Loading dose 10 mg/kg, then 7.5 mg/kg every 12 hours, intravenous injection to be administered over 3–5 minutes.

**Pseudomonal lung infection in cystic fibrosis**

- ▶ **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- ▶ Child: 10 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 500 mg every 8 hours), intravenous injection to be administered over 3–5 minutes

**DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT**

- ▶ To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, use ideal weight for height to calculate dose and monitor serum-amikacin concentration closely

● **UNLICENSED USE** Dose for cystic fibrosis not licensed.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aminoglycosides

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Uncommon** Superinfection
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Albuminuria · arthralgia · azotaemia · balance impaired · hypotension · muscle twitching · tremor
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Acute kidney injury · apnoea · neuromuscular blockade · paralysis



### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ **Multiple daily dose regimen:** one-hour ('peak') serum concentration should not exceed 30 mg/litre; pre-dose ('trough') concentration should be less than 10 mg/litre. *Once daily dose regimen:* pre-dose ('trough') concentration should be less than 5 mg/litre.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 30–60 minutes.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Local guidelines may vary in the dosing advice provided.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

#### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Amikacin (Non-proprietary)**  
Amikacin (as Amikacin sulfate) 250 mg per 1 ml Amikacin 500mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial (PoM) £60.00 (Hospital only)
- ▶ **Amikin (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)**  
Amikacin (as Amikacin sulfate) 50 mg per 1 ml Amikin 100mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial (PoM) £10.33

F 311

11-Dec-2017

## Gentamicin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Septicaemia | Meningitis and other CNS infections | Biliary-tract infection | Acute pyelonephritis | Endocarditis | Pneumonia in hospital patients | Adjunct in listerial meningitis**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: Initially 7 mg/kg, to be given in a once daily regimen (not suitable for endocarditis or meningitis), subsequent doses adjusted according to serum-gentamicin concentration
- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 2.5 mg/kg every 8 hours, to be given in a multiple daily dose regimen, intravenous injection to be administered over at least 3 minutes
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2 mg/kg every 8 hours, to be given in a multiple daily dose regimen, intravenous injection to be administered over at least 3 minutes

#### Neonatal sepsis

- ▶ BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 5 mg/kg every 36 hours, to be given in an extended interval dose regimen.
- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 5 mg/kg every 24 hours, to be given in an extended interval dose regimen.

#### Pseudomonal lung infection in cystic fibrosis

- ▶ BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: 3 mg/kg every 8 hours, to be given in a multiple daily dose regimen, intravenous injection to be administered over at least 3 minutes

#### Bacterial ventriculitis and CNS infection (supplement to systemic therapy) (administered on expert advice)

- ▶ BY INTRATHECAL INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENTRICULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Neonate: (consult local protocol).

- ▶ Child: Initially 1 mg daily, then increased if necessary to 5 mg daily, seek specialist advice

#### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- ▶ With intramuscular use or intravenous use

- ▶ To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, use ideal weight for height to calculate parenteral dose and monitor serum-gentamicin concentration closely.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

#### MHRA/CHM ADVICE: POTENTIAL FOR HISTAMINE-RELATED ADVERSE DRUG REACTIONS WITH SOME BATCHES (NOVEMBER 2017)

Following reports that some batches of gentamicin sulphate active pharmaceutical ingredient (API) used to manufacture gentamicin may contain higher than expected levels of histamine, which is a residual from the manufacturing process, the MHRA advise to monitor patients for signs of histamine-related adverse reactions; particular caution is required in patients taking concomitant drugs known to cause histamine release, in children, and in patients with severe renal impairment.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aminoglycosides
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Antibiotic associated colitis · blood disorder · depression · encephalopathy · hallucination · hepatic reaction · neurotoxicity · peripheral neuropathy · purpura · seizure · stomatitis · vestibular damage

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ With intravenous use in neonates Extended interval dose regimen in neonates: pre-dose ('trough') concentration should be less than 2 mg/litre (less than 1 mg/litre if more than 3 doses administered); consider monitoring one hour ('peak') concentration in neonates with poor response to treatment, with oedema, with Gram-negative infection, or with birth-weight greater than 4.5 kg (consider increasing dose if 'peak' concentration less than 8 mg/litre in severe sepsis).
- ▶ With intravenous use Once daily dose regimen: pre-dose ('trough') concentration should be less than 1 mg/litre.
- ▶ With intramuscular use or intravenous use Multiple daily dose regimen: one hour ('peak') serum concentration should be 5–10 mg/litre; pre-dose ('trough') concentration should be less than 2 mg/litre.
- ▶ With intramuscular use or intravenous use Multiple daily dose regimen for endocarditis: one hour ('peak') serum concentration should be 3–5 mg/litre; pre-dose ('trough') concentration should be less than 1 mg/litre. Serum-gentamicin concentration should be determined twice each week (more often in renal impairment).
- ▶ With intramuscular use or intravenous use Multiple daily dose regimen for cystic fibrosis: one hour ('peak') serum concentration should be 8–12 mg/litre; pre-dose ('trough') concentration should be less than 2 mg/litre.
- ▶ With intrathecal use or intraventricular use Intrathecal/intraventricular injection: cerebrospinal fluid concentration should not exceed 10 mg/litre.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ With intrathecal use or intraventricular use For *intrathecal* or *intraventricular* injection, use preservative-free intrathecal preparations only.
- ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, dilute in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 30 minutes.

### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Local guidelines may vary in the dosing advice provided. Only preservative-free intrathecal preparation should be used.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Gentamicin (Non-proprietary)**  
Gentamicin (as Gentamicin sulfate) 5 mg per 1 ml Gentamicin Intrathecal 5mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule (PoM) £36.28 (Hospital only)

**Gentamicin (as Gentamicin sulfate) 10 mg per 1 ml** Gentamicin 20mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £11.25  
Gentamicin Paediatric 20mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £11.25 DT = £11.25

**Gentamicin (as Gentamicin sulfate) 40 mg per 1 ml** Gentamicin 80mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £20.00 (Hospital only)

Gentamicin 80mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £6.88 | 10 ampoule [PoM] £10.00

► **Cidomycin** (Sanofi)

**Gentamicin (as Gentamicin sulfate) 40 mg per 1 ml** Cidomycin Adult Injectable 80mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £6.88

Cidomycin Adult Injectable 80mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £6.88

**Infusion**

► **Gentamicin (Non-proprietary)**

**Gentamicin (as Gentamicin sulfate) 1 mg per 1 ml** Gentamicin 80mg/80ml infusion bags | 20 bag [PoM] £40.17

**Gentamicin (as Gentamicin sulfate) 3 mg per 1 ml** Gentamicin 240mg/80ml infusion bags | 20 bag [PoM] £122.57–£122.58

Gentamicin 360mg/120ml infusion bags | 20 bag [PoM] £174.07

**F 311**

## Streptomycin

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Tuberculosis, resistant to other treatment, in combination with other drugs**

► **BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION**

► Child: 15 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 1 g)

**Adjunct to doxycycline in brucellosis (administered on expert advice)**

► **BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION**

► Child: 5–10 mg/kg every 6 hours, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–3 divided doses

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

Side-effects increase after a cumulative dose of 100 g, which should only be exceeded in exceptional circumstances.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aminoglycosides

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Hypersensitivity · oral paraesthesia

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Should preferably be avoided. If essential, use with great care and consider dose reduction.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

► One-hour ('peak') concentration should be 15–40 mg/litre; pre-dose ('trough') concentration should be less than 5 mg/litre (less than 1 mg/litre in renal impairment).

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: powder for solution for injection

**F 311**

## Tobramycin

28-Nov-2016

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Chronic *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection in patients with cystic fibrosis**

► **BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION**

► Child 6–17 years: 300 mg every 12 hours for 28 days, subsequent courses repeated after 28-day interval without tobramycin nebuliser solution

► **BY INHALATION OF POWDER**

► Child 6–17 years: 112 mg every 12 hours for 28 days, subsequent courses repeated after 28-day interval without tobramycin inhalation powder

### Pseudomonal lung infection in cystic fibrosis

► **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

► Child: 8–10 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, to be given as a multiple daily dose regimen over 3–5 minutes

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

► Child: Initially 10 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 660 mg), to be given over 30 minutes, subsequent doses adjusted according to serum-tobramycin concentration

**Septicaemia | Meningitis and other CNS infections | Biliary-tract infection | Acute pyelonephritis | Pneumonia in hospital patients**

► **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

► Child 1 month–11 years: 2–2.5 mg/kg every 8 hours, to be given as a multiple daily dose regimen over 3–5 minutes

► Child 12–17 years: 1 mg/kg every 8 hours, to be given as a multiple daily dose regimen over 3–5 minutes; increased if necessary up to 5 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, to be given in severe infections as a multiple daily dose regimen over 3–5 minutes, dose to be reduced back to 3 mg/kg as soon as clinically indicated

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

► Child: Initially 7 mg/kg, to be given as a once daily dose regimen, subsequent doses adjusted according to serum-tobramycin concentration

### Neonatal sepsis

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

► Neonate up to 32 weeks corrected gestational age: 4–5 mg/kg every 36 hours, to be given as an extended interval dose regimen, intravenous injection to be given over 3–5 minutes.

► Neonate 32 weeks corrected gestational age and above: 4–5 mg/kg every 24 hours, to be given as an extended interval dose regimen, intravenous injection to be given over 3–5 minutes.

► **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

► Neonate up to 7 days: 2 mg/kg every 12 hours, to be given as a multiple daily dose regimen.

► Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 2–2.5 mg/kg every 8 hours, to be given as a multiple daily dose regimen.

### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

► To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, use ideal weight for height to calculate parenteral dose and monitor serum-tobramycin concentration closely.

### VANTOBRA® NEBULISER SOLUTION

**Chronic pulmonary *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection in patients with cystic fibrosis**

► **BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION**

► Child 6–17 years: 170 mg every 12 hours for 28 days, subsequent courses repeated after 28-day interval without tobramycin nebuliser solution

● **CAUTIONS**

► When used by inhalation conditions characterised by muscular weakness—may impair neuromuscular transmission · history of prolonged previous or concomitant intravenous aminoglycosides—increased risk of ototoxicity · renal impairment—limited information available · severe haemoptysis—risk of further haemorrhage

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aminoglycosides

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common
- ▶ When used by inhalation Dysphonia · increased risk of infection · malaise · respiratory disorder · sputum discolouration
- ▶ Frequency not known
- ▶ When used by inhalation Aphonia · oropharyngeal pain · taste altered
- ▶ With parenteral use Diarrhoea · disorientation · dizziness · exfoliative dermatitis · granulocytopenia · leucocytosis · leucopenia · nerve disorders · thrombocytopenia · urine abnormalities · vertigo

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Manufacturer advises to monitor serum-tobramycin concentration in patients with known or suspected signs of auditory dysfunction; if ototoxicity develops—discontinue treatment until serum concentration falls below 2 mg/litre.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

- ▶ When used by inhalation Manufacturer advises monitor serum-tobramycin concentration; if nephrotoxicity develops—discontinue treatment until serum concentration falls below 2 mg/litre.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ With intravenous use in neonates *Extended interval dose regimen in neonates*: pre-dose ('trough') concentration should be less than 2 mg/litre.
- ▶ With intravenous use *Once daily dose regimen*: pre-dose ('trough') concentration should be less than 1 mg/litre. *Multiple daily dose regimen*: one-hour ('peak') serum concentration should not exceed 10 mg/litre (8–12 mg/litre in cystic fibrosis); pre-dose ('trough') concentration should be less than 2 mg/litre.
- ▶ When used by inhalation Measure lung function before and after initial dose of tobramycin and monitor for bronchospasm; if bronchospasm occurs in a patient not using a bronchodilator, repeat test using bronchodilator. Manufacturer advises monitor renal function before treatment and then annually.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 20–60 minutes.
- ▶ When used by inhalation Other inhaled drugs should be administered before tobramycin.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Local guidelines may vary in dosing advice provided.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

- ▶ When used by inhalation Patient counselling is advised for Tobramycin dry powder for inhalation (administration).

#### **VANTOBRA® NEBULISER SOLUTION**

**Missed doses** Manufacturer advises if a dose is more than 6 hours late, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### **NICE decisions**

- ▶ Tobramycin by dry powder inhalation for pseudomonal lung infection in cystic fibrosis (March 2013) NICE TA276  
Tobramycin dry powder for inhalation is recommended for chronic pulmonary infection caused by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in patients with cystic fibrosis only if there is an inadequate response to colistimethate sodium, or if colistimethate sodium cannot be used because of contra-indications or intolerance. The manufacturer must provide tobramycin dry powder for inhalation at the discount agreed as part of the patient access scheme to primary, secondary and tertiary care in the NHS. Patients currently receiving tobramycin dry powder for inhalation can continue treatment until they and their clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA276](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA276)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

##### ▶ Tobramycin (Non-proprietary)

**Tobramycin (as Tobramycin sulfate) 40 mg per 1 ml** Tobramycin 80mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £20.80  
Tobramycin 240mg/6ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £19.20

##### ▶ Nebcin (Flynn Pharma Ltd)

**Tobramycin (as Tobramycin sulfate) 40 mg per 1 ml** Nebcin 80mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £5.37

#### **Inhalation powder**

##### ▶ Tob Podhaler (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Tobramycin 28 mg** Tob Podhaler 28mg inhalation powder capsules with device | 56 capsule [PoM] £447.50 | 224 capsule [PoM] £1,790.00

#### **Nebuliser liquid**

##### ▶ Tobramycin (Non-proprietary)

**Tobramycin 60 mg per 1 ml** Tobramycin 300mg/5ml nebuliser liquid ampoules | 56 ampoule [PoM] £1,187.00 DT = £1,305.92

##### ▶ Bramitob (Chiesi Ltd)

**Tobramycin 75 mg per 1 ml** Bramitob 300mg/4ml nebuliser solution 4ml ampoules | 56 ampoule [PoM] £1,187.00

##### ▶ TOBI (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Tobramycin 60 mg per 1 ml** Tob 300mg/5ml nebuliser solution 5ml ampoules | 56 ampoule [PoM] £1,305.92 DT = £1,305.92

##### ▶ Tymbrineb (Teva UK Ltd)

**Tobramycin 60 mg per 1 ml** Tymbrineb 300mg/5ml nebuliser solution 5ml ampoules | 56 ampoule [PoM] £780.00 DT = £1,305.92

##### ▶ Vantobra (Pari Medical Ltd)

**Tobramycin 100 mg per 1 ml** Vantobra 170mg/1.7ml nebuliser solution 1.7ml ampoules | 56 ampoule [PoM] £1,305.00

## ANTIBACTERIALS > CARBAPENEMS

## Carbapenems

### Overview

The carbapenems are beta-lactam antibacterials with a broad-spectrum of activity which includes many Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria, and anaerobes; **imipenem** (imipenem with cilastatin p. 315) and meropenem p. 316 have good activity against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. The carbapenems are not active against methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Enterococcus faecium*.

Imipenem (imipenem with cilastatin) and meropenem are used for the treatment of severe hospital-acquired infections and polymicrobial infections caused by multiple-antibacterial resistant organisms (including septicaemia, hospital-acquired pneumonia, intra-abdominal infections, skin and soft-tissue infections, and complicated urinary-tract infections).

Ertapenem p. 315 is licensed for treating abdominal and gynaecological infections and for community-acquired pneumonia, but it is not active against atypical respiratory pathogens and it has limited activity against penicillin-resistant pneumococci. Unlike the other carbapenems, ertapenem is not active against *Pseudomonas* or against *Acinetobacter spp.*

Imipenem is partially inactivated in the kidney by enzymatic activity and is therefore administered in combination with **cilastatin** (imipenem with cilastatin), a specific enzyme inhibitor, which blocks its renal metabolism. Meropenem and ertapenem are stable to the renal enzyme which inactivates imipenem and therefore can be given without cilastatin.

Side-effects of imipenem with cilastatin are similar to those of other beta-lactam antibiotics. Meropenem has less seizure-inducing potential and can be used to treat central nervous system infection.

## Ertapenem

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Abdominal infections | Acute gynaecological infections | Community-acquired pneumonia**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 3 months–12 years: 15 mg/kg every 12 hours; maximum 1 g per day
- Child 13–17 years: 1 g once daily

**Diabetic foot infections of the skin and soft-tissue**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 13–17 years: 1 g once daily

● **CAUTIONS** CNS disorders—risk of seizures

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: carbapenems

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Diarrhoea
- **Uncommon** Faeces discoloured · headache · hot flush · hypertension · melaena · skin reactions
- **Frequency not known** Aggression · hallucination · psychiatric disorder

● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Avoid if history of **immediate hypersensitivity** reaction to beta-lactam antibacterials.

Use with caution in patients with sensitivity to beta-lactam antibacterials.

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—manufacturer advises avoid.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution (risk of seizures); avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion* (Invanz<sup>®</sup>), give intermittently in Sodium chloride 0.9%. Reconstitute 1 g with 10 mL Water for injections or Sodium chloride 0.9%; dilute requisite dose in infusion fluid to a final concentration not exceeding 20 mg/mL; give over 30 minutes; incompatible with glucose solutions.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder for solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Invanz** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Ertapenem (as Ertapenem sodium) 1 gram** Invanz 1g powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £31.65

## Imipenem with cilastatin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Aerobic and anaerobic Gram-positive and Gram-negative infections (not indicated for CNS infections) | Hospital-acquired septicaemia**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate up to 7 days: 20 mg/kg every 12 hours.

- Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 20 mg/kg every 8 hours.

- Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 20 mg/kg every 6 hours.

- Child 1–2 months: 20 mg/kg every 6 hours
- Child 3 months–17 years: 15 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 500 mg)

**Infection caused by *Pseudomonas* or other less sensitive organisms | Empirical treatment of infection in febrile patients with neutropenia | Life-threatening infection**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 3 months–17 years: 25 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 1 g)

### **Cystic fibrosis**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 25 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 1 g)

### **DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- Dose expressed in terms of imipenem.

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 1 year; not licensed for use in children with renal impairment.

● **CAUTIONS** CNS disorders · epilepsy

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: carbapenems

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · eosinophilia · nausea · skin reactions · thrombophlebitis · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Bone marrow disorders · confusion · dizziness · drowsiness · hallucination · hypotension · leucopenia · movement disorders · psychiatric disorder · seizure · thrombocytopenia · thrombocytosis
- **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · anaphylactic reaction · angioedema · chest discomfort · colitis haemorrhagic · cyanosis · dyspnoea · encephalopathy · flushing · focal tremor · gastrointestinal discomfort · haemolytic anaemia · headache · hearing impairment · hepatic disorders · hyperhidrosis · hyperventilation · increased risk of infection · myasthenia gravis aggravated · oral disorders · palpitations · paraesthesia · polyarthralgia · polyuria · pseudomembranous enterocolitis · renal impairment · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · spinal pain · tachycardia · taste altered · urine discolouration · vertigo
- **Frequency not known** Agitation

● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Avoid if history of **immediate hypersensitivity** reaction to beta-lactam antibacterials.

Use with caution in patients with sensitivity to beta-lactam antibacterials.

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk (toxicity in *animal* studies).

● **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but unlikely to be absorbed.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 70 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, risk of CNS side-effects.

● **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** Positive Coombs' test.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion* dilute to a concentration of 5 mg (as imipenem)/mL in Sodium chloride 0.9%; give up to 500 mg (as imipenem) over 20–30 minutes, give dose greater than 500 mg (as imipenem) over 40–60 minutes.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder for solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Imipenem with cilastatin (Non-proprietary)**

**Cilastatin (as Cilastatin sodium) 500 mg, Imipenem (as Imipenem monohydrate) 500 mg** Imipenem 500mg / Cilastatin 500mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £12.00 (Hospital only) | 5 vial [PoM] £60.00 (Hospital only)

► **Primaxin I.V.** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Cilastatin (as Cilastatin sodium) 500 mg, Imipenem (as Imipenem monohydrate) 500 mg** Primaxin IV 500mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £12.00

## Meropenem

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Aerobic and anaerobic Gram-positive and Gram-negative infections | Hospital-acquired septicaemia

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate up to 7 days: 20 mg/kg every 12 hours.

► Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 20 mg/kg every 8 hours.

► Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to

50 kg): 10–20 mg/kg every 8 hours

► Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 0.5–1 g every 8 hours

► Child 12–17 years: 0.5–1 g every 8 hours

#### Severe aerobic and anaerobic Gram-positive and Gram-negative infections

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate up to 7 days: 40 mg/kg every 12 hours.

► Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 40 mg/kg every 8 hours.

#### Exacerbations of chronic lower respiratory-tract infection in cystic fibrosis

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to

50 kg): 40 mg/kg every 8 hours

► Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2 g every 8 hours

► Child 12–17 years: 2 g every 8 hours

#### Meningitis

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate up to 7 days: 40 mg/kg every 12 hours.

► Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 40 mg/kg every 8 hours.

► Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to

50 kg): 40 mg/kg every 8 hours

► Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2 g every 8 hours

► Child 12–17 years: 2 g every 8 hours

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 3 months.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: carbapenems

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · diarrhoea · headache · inflammation · nausea · pain · skin reactions · thrombocytosis · vomiting

► **Uncommon** Agranulocytosis · antibiotic associated colitis · eosinophilia · haemolytic anaemia · increased risk of infection · leucopenia · neutropenia · paraesthesia · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · thrombocytopenia · thrombophlebitis

► **Rare or very rare** Seizure

● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Avoid if history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to beta-lactam antibacterials.

Use with caution in patients with sensitivity to beta-lactam antibacterials.

● **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Unlikely to be absorbed (however, manufacturer advises avoid).

### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Monitoring** Monitor liver function in hepatic impairment.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Use normal dose every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 26–50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

Use half normal dose every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–25 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

Use half normal dose every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

● **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** Positive Coombs' test.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Intravenous injection to be administered over 5 minutes.

Displacement value may be significant when reconstituting injection, consult local guidelines. For intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution further to a concentration of 1–20 mg/mL in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 15–30 minutes.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder for solution for injection**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

#### ► Meropenem (Non-proprietary)

**Meropenem (as Meropenem trihydrate) 500 mg** Meropenem 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £84.70–£103.14 DT = £84.70 | 10 vial [PoM] £83.00 DT = £84.70 (Hospital only)

**Meropenem (as Meropenem trihydrate) 1 gram** Meropenem 1g powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £169.30–£206.30 DT = £169.30 | 10 vial [PoM] £160.00–£206.28 DT = £169.30 (Hospital only)

#### ► Meronem (Pfizer Ltd)

**Meropenem (as Meropenem trihydrate) 500 mg** Meronem 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £103.14 DT = £84.70

**Meropenem (as Meropenem trihydrate) 1 gram** Meronem 1g powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £206.28 DT = £169.30

## ANTIBACTERIALS > CEPHALOSPORINS

## Cephalosporins

### Overview

The cephalosporins are broad-spectrum antibiotics which are used for the treatment of septicaemia, pneumonia, meningitis, biliary-tract infections, peritonitis, and urinary-tract infections. The pharmacology of the cephalosporins is similar to that of the penicillins, excretion being principally renal. Cephalosporins penetrate the cerebrospinal fluid poorly unless the meninges are inflamed; cefotaxime p. 320 and ceftriaxone p. 322 are suitable cephalosporins for infections of the CNS (e.g. meningitis).

The principal side-effect of the cephalosporins is hypersensitivity and about 0.5–6.5% of penicillin-sensitive patients will also be allergic to the cephalosporins. If a cephalosporin is essential in patients with a history of immediate hypersensitivity to penicillin, because a suitable alternative antibacterial is not available, then cefixime p. 320, cefotaxime, ceftazidime p. 321, ceftriaxone, or cefuroxime p. 319 can be used with caution; cefaclor p. 318, cefadroxil p. 317, cefalexin p. 317, and cefradine p. 318 should be avoided.

The orally active 'first generation' cephalosporins, cefalexin, cefradine, and cefadroxil and the 'second generation' cephalosporin, cefaclor have a similar antimicrobial spectrum. They are useful for urinary-tract infections which do not respond to other drugs or which occur in pregnancy, respiratory-tract infections, otitis media, and skin and soft-tissue infections. Cefaclor has good activity against *H. influenzae*. Cefadroxil has a long duration of action and can be given twice daily; it has poor activity against *H. influenzae*. **Cefuroxime axetil**, an ester of the 'second generation' cephalosporin cefuroxime, has the same antibacterial spectrum as the parent compound; it is poorly absorbed and needs to be given with food to maximise absorption.



Cefixime is an orally active 'third generation' cephalosporin. It has a longer duration of action than the other cephalosporins that are active by mouth. It is only licensed for acute infections.

Cefuroxime is a 'second generation' cephalosporin that is less susceptible than the earlier cephalosporins to inactivation by beta-lactamases. It is, therefore, active against certain bacteria which are resistant to the other drugs and has greater activity against *Haemophilus influenzae*.

Cefotaxime, ceftazidime and ceftriaxone are 'third generation' cephalosporins with greater activity than the 'second generation' cephalosporins against certain Gram-negative bacteria. However, they are less active than cefuroxime against Gram-positive bacteria, most notably *Staphylococcus aureus*. Their broad antibacterial spectrum may encourage superinfection with resistant bacteria or fungi.

Ceftazidime has good activity against pseudomonas. It is also active against other Gram-negative bacteria.

Ceftriaxone has a longer half-life and therefore needs to be given only once daily. Indications include serious infections such as septicaemia, pneumonia, and meningitis. The calcium salt of ceftriaxone forms a precipitate in the gall bladder which may rarely cause symptoms but these usually resolve when the antibacterial is stopped. In neonates, ceftriaxone may displace bilirubin from plasma-albumin and should be avoided in neonates with unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia, hypocalbuminaemia, acidosis or impaired bilirubin binding.

## Cephalosporins

- **DRUG ACTION** Cephalosporins are antibacterials that attach to penicillin binding proteins to interrupt cell wall biosynthesis, leading to bacterial cell lysis and death.
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · diarrhoea · dizziness · eosinophilia · fungal infection · headache · leucopenia · nausea · neutropenia · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Anaphylactic reaction · antibiotic associated colitis
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · angioedema · haemolytic anaemia · nephritis tubulointerstitial (reversible) · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with cephalosporin hypersensitivity.
  - ▶ Cross-sensitivity with other beta-lactam antibacterials About 0.5–6.5% of penicillin-sensitive patients will also be allergic to the cephalosporins. Patients with a history of **immediate hypersensitivity** to penicillin and other beta-lactams should not receive a cephalosporin. Cephalosporins should be used with caution in patients with sensitivity to penicillin and other beta-lactams.
- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** False positive urinary glucose (if tested for reducing substances). False positive Coombs' test.

## ANTIBACTERIALS > CEPHALOSPORINS, FIRST-GENERATION

above

### Cefadroxil

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Susceptible infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 6–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): 0.5 g twice daily
- ▶ Child 6–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 0.5–1 g twice daily

**Skin infections | Soft-tissue infections | Uncomplicated urinary-tract infections**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 6–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 1 g once daily

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cephalosporins

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Dyspepsia · glossitis
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Arthralgia · autoimmune haemolytic anaemia · drug fever · fatigue · hepatic disorders · insomnia · nervousness · serum sickness-like reaction
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in low concentration, but appropriate to use.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

#### ▶ Cefadroxil (Non-proprietary)

**Cefadroxil (as Cefadroxil monohydrate) 500 mg** Cefadroxil 500mg capsules | 20 capsule [PoM] £22.38 DT = £15.24 | 100 capsule [PoM] £26.22-£111.90

above

### Cefalexin

(Cephalexin)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Susceptible infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 25 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 125 mg).
- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 25 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 125 mg).
- ▶ Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 25 mg/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 125 mg).
- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 12.5 mg/kg twice daily, alternatively 125 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 1–4 years: 12.5 mg/kg twice daily, alternatively 125 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 12.5 mg/kg twice daily, alternatively 250 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg 2–3 times a day continued →

**Serious susceptible infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 1 month–11 years: 25 mg/kg 2–4 times a day (max. per dose 1 g 4 times a day)
- Child 12–17 years: 1–1.5 g 3–4 times a day

**Prophylaxis of recurrent urinary-tract infection**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: 12.5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 125 mg), dose to be taken at night

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cephalosporins
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agitation · arthritis · confusion · fatigue · gastrointestinal discomfort · genital pruritus · hallucination · hepatitis (transient) · hypersensitivity · jaundice cholestatic (transient) · joint disorders · vaginal discharge
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in low concentration, but appropriate to use.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
Dose adjustments Reduce dose in moderate impairment.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Cefalexin for bacterial infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/cefalexin-bacterial-infections-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/cefalexin-bacterial-infections-0)
- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**  
Dental practitioners' formulary  
Cefalexin Capsules may be prescribed. Cefalexin Tablets may be prescribed. Cefalexin Oral Suspension may be prescribed.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

► **Cefalexin (Non-proprietary)**

**Cefalexin 25 mg per 1 ml** Cefalexin 125mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £0.84  
Cefalexin 125mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £4.90 DT = £0.84

**Cefalexin 50 mg per 1 ml** Cefalexin 250mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £1.72–£1.90  
Cefalexin 250mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £5.25 DT = £1.90

**Cefalexin 100 mg per 1 ml** Cefalexin 500mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £

► **Keflex** (Flynn Pharma Ltd)

**Cefalexin 25 mg per 1 ml** Keflex 125mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £0.84 DT = £0.84

**Cefalexin 50 mg per 1 ml** Keflex 250mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £1.40 DT = £1.90

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

► **Cefalexin (Non-proprietary)**

**Cefalexin 250 mg** Cefalexin 250mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £5.02 DT = £1.50

**Cefalexin 500 mg** Cefalexin 500mg tablets | 21 tablet [PoM] £5.88 DT = £1.84

► **Keflex** (Flynn Pharma Ltd)

**Cefalexin 250 mg** Keflex 250mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.60 DT = £1.50

**Cefalexin 500 mg** Keflex 500mg tablets | 21 tablet [PoM] £2.08 DT = £1.84

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

► **Cefalexin (Non-proprietary)**

**Cefalexin 250 mg** Cefalexin 250mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £4.01 DT = £1.46

**Cefalexin 500 mg** Cefalexin 500mg capsules | 21 capsule [PoM] £4.45 DT = £1.79 | 100 capsule [PoM] £9.43

► **Keflex** (Flynn Pharma Ltd)

**Cefalexin 250 mg** Keflex 250mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £1.46 DT = £1.46

**Cefalexin 500 mg** Keflex 500mg capsules | 21 capsule [PoM] £1.98 DT = £1.79

F 317

**Cefradine**

(Cephadrine)

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Susceptible infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria | Surgical prophylaxis**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 7–11 years: 25–50 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses
- Child 12–17 years: 250–500 mg 4 times a day, alternatively 0.5–1 g twice daily; increased if necessary up to 1 g 4 times a day, increased dose may be used in severe infections

**Prevention of *Staphylococcus aureus* lung infection in cystic fibrosis**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 7–17 years: 2 g twice daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for prevention of *Staphylococcus aureus* lung infection in cystic fibrosis.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cephalosporins
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Akathisia · aplastic anaemia · arthralgia · blood disorder · chest tightness · confusion · gastrointestinal discomfort · glossitis · hepatitis (transient) · hypersensitivity · increased risk of infection · jaundice cholestatic · muscle tone increased · nervousness · oedema · sleep disorder
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in low concentration, but appropriate to use.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
Dose adjustments Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**  
Dental practitioners' formulary  
Cefradine Capsules may be prescribed.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

► **Cefradine (Non-proprietary)**

**Cefradine 250 mg** Cefradine 250mg capsules | 20 capsule [PoM] £6.00 DT = £2.25

**Cefradine 500 mg** Cefradine 500mg capsules | 20 capsule [PoM] £8.75 DT = £3.33

► **Nicef** (Strides Shasun (UK) Ltd)

**Cefradine 250 mg** Nicef 250mg capsules | 20 capsule [PoM] £3.55 DT = £2.25 | 100 capsule [PoM] £9.39

**Cefradine 500 mg** Nicef 500mg capsules | 20 capsule [PoM] £5.58 DT = £3.33 | 100 capsule [PoM] £33.72

**ANTIBACTERIALS > CEPHALOSPORINS, SECOND-GENERATION**

F 317

**Cefaclor**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Susceptible infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria**

- BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES
- Child 1–11 months: 20 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, alternatively 62.5 mg 3 times a day
- Child 1–4 years: 20 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, alternatively 125 mg 3 times a day

- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 20 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, usual max. 1 g daily, alternatively 250 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 250 mg 3 times a day; maximum 4 g per day
- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 375 mg every 12 hours, dose to be taken with food

#### Severe susceptible infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 40 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, usual max. 1 g daily, alternatively 125 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 1–4 years: 40 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, usual max. 1 g daily, alternatively 250 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 40 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, usual max. 1 g daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg 3 times a day; maximum 4 g per day

#### Pneumonia

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE TABLETS
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 750 mg every 12 hours, dose to be taken with food

#### Lower urinary-tract infections

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 375 mg every 12 hours, dose to be taken with food

#### Asymptomatic carriage of *Haemophilus influenzae* or mild exacerbations in cystic fibrosis

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 125 mg every 8 hours
- ▶ Child 1–6 years: 250 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 7–17 years: 500 mg 3 times a day

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: cephalosporins

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Akathisia · anxiety · aplastic anaemia · arthralgia · arthritis · asthenia · colitis · confusion · drowsiness · dyspnoea · fever · genital pruritus · hallucination · hepatitis (transient) · hypersensitivity · insomnia · jaundice cholestatic (transient) · lymphadenopathy · lymphocytosis · muscle tone increased · oedema · paraesthesia · proteinuria · syncope · vasodilation

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Cefaclor is associated with protracted skin reactions, especially in children.

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in low concentration, but appropriate to use.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution. Dose adjustments No dose adjustment required.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

##### ▶ Cefaclor (Non-proprietary)

Cefaclor (as Cefaclor monohydrate) 25 mg per 1 ml Cefaclor 125mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £4.13

Cefaclor (as Cefaclor monohydrate) 50 mg per 1 ml Cefaclor 250mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £8.26

##### ▶ Distacolor (Flynn Pharma Ltd)

Cefaclor (as Cefaclor monohydrate) 25 mg per 1 ml Distacolor 125mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £4.13

Cefaclor (as Cefaclor monohydrate) 50 mg per 1 ml Distacolor 250mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £8.26

##### ▶ Keftid (Strides Shasun (UK) Ltd)

Cefaclor (as Cefaclor monohydrate) 25 mg per 1 ml Keftid 125mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £5.16 DT = £5.16

Cefaclor (as Cefaclor monohydrate) 50 mg per 1 ml Keftid 250mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £10.32 DT = £10.32

#### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 21, 25

##### ▶ Distacolor MR (Flynn Pharma Ltd)

Cefaclor (as Cefaclor monohydrate) 375 mg Distacolor MR 375mg tablets | 14 tablet [PoM] £9.10 DT = £9.10

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

##### ▶ Cefaclor (Non-proprietary)

Cefaclor (as Cefaclor monohydrate) 250 mg Cefaclor 250mg capsules | 21 capsule [PoM] £5 DT = £6.80

##### ▶ Distacolor (Flynn Pharma Ltd)

Cefaclor (as Cefaclor monohydrate) 500 mg Distacolor 500mg capsules | 21 capsule [PoM] £7.50 DT = £7.50

##### ▶ Keftid (Strides Shasun (UK) Ltd)

Cefaclor (as Cefaclor monohydrate) 250 mg Keftid 250mg capsules | 21 capsule [PoM] £6.80 DT = £6.80

Cefaclor (as Cefaclor monohydrate) 500 mg Keftid 500mg capsules | 50 capsule [PoM] £31.99

## Cefuroxime

17-Mar-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Susceptible infections due to Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 3 months–1 year: 10 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 125 mg)
- ▶ Child 2–11 years: 15 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 250 mg)
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 250 mg twice daily, dose may be doubled in severe lower respiratory-tract infections or if pneumonia is suspected
- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 25 mg/kg every 12 hours, increased if necessary to 50 mg/kg every 12 hours, increased dose used in severe infection.
- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 25 mg/kg every 8 hours, increased if necessary to 50 mg/kg every 8 hours, increased dose used in severe infection.

- ▶ Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 25 mg/kg every 6 hours, increased if necessary to 50 mg/kg every 6 hours, increased dose used in severe infection.

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child: 20 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 750 mg); increased to 50–60 mg/kg every 6–8 hours (max. per dose 1.5 g), increased dose used for severe infection and cystic fibrosis

#### Lyme disease

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 3 months–11 years: 15 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 500 mg) for 14–21 days (for 28 days in Lyme arthritis)
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg twice daily for 14–21 days (for 28 days in Lyme arthritis)

#### Lower urinary-tract infection

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 125 mg twice daily

#### Surgical prophylaxis

- ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: 50 mg/kg (max. per dose 1.5 g), to be administered up to 30 minutes before the procedure, then (by intravenous injection or by intramuscular injection) 30 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 750 mg) if required for up to 3 doses (for high-risk procedures)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for treatment of Lyme disease in children under 12 years. Duration of treatment in Lyme disease is unlicensed.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cephalosporins
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Drug fever
  - SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS
  - ▶ **Uncommon**
  - ▶ With parenteral use Gastrointestinal disorder
  - ▶ **Frequency not known**
  - ▶ With oral use Hepatic disorders · Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction · serum sickness
  - ▶ With parenteral use Cutaneous vasculitis
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in low concentration, but appropriate to use.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Reduce parenteral dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Single doses over 750 mg should be administered by the intravenous route only.
  - ▶ With intravenous use Displacement value may be significant when reconstituting injection, consult local guidelines. For intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution further in glucose 5% or sodium chloride 0.9%; give over 30 minutes.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection, infusion

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 21, 25

##### ▶ Cefuroxime (Non-proprietary)

**Cefuroxime (as Cefuroxime axetil) 250 mg** Cefuroxime 250mg tablets | 14 tablet [PoM] £17.72 DT = £17.72

##### ▶ Zinnat (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Cefuroxime (as Cefuroxime axetil) 125 mg** Zinnat 125mg tablets | 14 tablet [PoM] £4.56 DT = £4.56

**Cefuroxime (as Cefuroxime axetil) 250 mg** Zinnat 250mg tablets | 14 tablet [PoM] £9.11 DT = £17.72

#### Powder for injection

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

##### ▶ Cefuroxime (Non-proprietary)

**Cefuroxime (as Cefuroxime sodium) 250 mg** Cefuroxime 250mg powder for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £9.25

**Cefuroxime (as Cefuroxime sodium) 750 mg** Cefuroxime 750mg powder for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £2.52 | 10 vial [PoM] £25.20

**Cefuroxime (as Cefuroxime sodium) 1.5 gram** Cefuroxime 1.5g powder for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £5.05 | 10 vial [PoM] £50.50

##### ▶ Zinacef (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Cefuroxime (as Cefuroxime sodium) 250 mg** Zinacef 250mg powder for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £4.70

**Cefuroxime (as Cefuroxime sodium) 750 mg** Zinacef 750mg powder for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £11.72 (Hospital only)

**Cefuroxime (as Cefuroxime sodium) 1.5 gram** Zinacef 1.5g powder for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £4.70

#### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 21

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame, sucrose

##### ▶ Zinnat (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Cefuroxime (as Cefuroxime axetil) 25 mg per 1 ml** Zinnat 125mg/5ml oral suspension | 70 ml [PoM] £5.20 DT = £5.20

## ANTIBACTERIALS > CEPHALOSPORINS, THIRD-GENERATION

P 317

### Cefixime

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6–11 months: 75 mg daily
- ▶ Child 1–4 years: 100 mg daily
- ▶ Child 5–9 years: 200 mg daily
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 200–400 mg daily, alternatively 100–200 mg twice daily

**Uncomplicated gonorrhoea**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 400 mg for 1 dose

- **UNLICENSED USE** Use of cefixime for uncomplicated gonorrhoea is an unlicensed indication.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cephalosporins
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Acute kidney injury · arthralgia · drug fever · drug reaction with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms (DRESS) · dyspepsia · dyspnoea · face oedema · flatulence · genital pruritus · granulocytopenia · hyper eosinophilia · jaundice · serum sickness-like reaction · thrombocytosis
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

##### ▶ Cefixime (Non-proprietary)

**Cefixime 400 mg** Cefixime 400mg tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £16.87

##### ▶ Suprax (Sanofi)

**Cefixime 200 mg** Suprax 200mg tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £13.23 DT = £13.23

P 317

### Cefotaxime

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Uncomplicated gonorrhoea**

##### ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg for 1 dose

**Severe exacerbations of *Haemophilus influenzae* infection in cystic fibrosis**

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child: 50 mg/kg every 6–8 hours; maximum 12 g per day

**Congenital gonococcal conjunctivitis**

##### ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: 100 mg/kg (max. per dose 1 g) for 1 dose.

**Infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria | Surgical prophylaxis | *Haemophilus epiglottitis***

##### ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 25 mg/kg every 12 hours.

- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 25 mg/kg every 8 hours.

- ▶ Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 25 mg/kg every 6–8 hours.

- ▶ Child: 50 mg/kg every 8–12 hours

#### Severe susceptible infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria Meningitis

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 50 mg/kg every 12 hours.

- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 50 mg/kg every 8 hours.

- ▶ Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 50 mg/kg every 6–8 hours.

- ▶ Child: 50 mg/kg every 6 hours; maximum 12 g per day
- Emergency treatment of suspected bacterial meningitis or meningococcal disease, before urgent transfer to hospital, in patients who cannot be given benzylpenicillin (e.g. because of an allergy)**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 50 mg/kg for 1 dose

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1 g for 1 dose

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cephalosporins

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Uncommon** Drug fever · Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction · renal impairment · seizure

- ▶ **Frequency not known** Arrhythmia (following rapid injection) · bronchospasm · encephalopathy · granulocytopenia · hepatic disorders

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in low concentration, but appropriate to use.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

- ▶ **Dose adjustments** Usual initial dose, then use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 5 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- ▶ With intravenous use Displacement value may be significant, consult local guidelines. For intermittent *intravenous infusion* dilute in glucose 5% or sodium chloride 0.9%; administer over 20–60 minutes; incompatible with alkaline solutions.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder for solution for injection

- ▶ **Cefotaxime (Non-proprietary)**

**Cefotaxime (as Cefotaxime sodium) 500 mg** Cefotaxime 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £21.00–£30.00  
**Cefotaxime (as Cefotaxime sodium) 1 gram** Cefotaxime 1g powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £35.00–£42.00  
**Cefotaxime (as Cefotaxime sodium) 2 gram** Cefotaxime 2g powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £37.50

F 317

02-Aug-2017

## Ceftazidime

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

#### Pseudomonal lung infection in cystic fibrosis

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child: 50 mg/kg every 8 hours; maximum 9 g per day

#### Febrile neutropenia

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child: 50 mg/kg every 8 hours; maximum 6 g per day

#### Meningitis

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 50 mg/kg every 24 hours.

- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 50 mg/kg every 12 hours.

- ▶ Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 50 mg/kg every 8 hours.

- ▶ Child: 50 mg/kg every 8 hours; maximum 6 g per day

#### Susceptible infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 25 mg/kg every 24 hours.

- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 25 mg/kg every 12 hours.

- ▶ Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 25 mg/kg every 8 hours.

- ▶ Child: 25 mg/kg every 8 hours; maximum 6 g per day

#### Severe susceptible infections due to sensitive Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 50 mg/kg every 24 hours.

- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 50 mg/kg every 12 hours.

- ▶ Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 50 mg/kg every 8 hours.

- ▶ Child: 50 mg/kg every 8 hours; maximum 6 g per day

#### Chronic *Burkholderia cepacia* infection in cystic fibrosis

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION

- ▶ Child: 1 g twice daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Nebulised route unlicensed.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cephalosporins

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Thrombocytosis

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Acute kidney injury

- ▶ **Frequency not known** Coma · drug reaction with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms (DRESS) · encephalopathy · jaundice · lymphocytosis · myoclonus · neurological effects · paraesthesia · seizure · taste altered · tremor

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in low concentration, but appropriate to use.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

- ▶ **Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises reduce dose if creatinine clearance 50 mL/minute or less—consult product literature.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Intramuscular administration used when intravenous administration not possible; single doses over 1 g by intravenous route only.

- ▶ With intravenous use Displacement value may be significant, consult local guidelines. For intermittent intravenous infusion dilute reconstituted solution further to a concentration of not more than 40 mg/mL in Glucose 5% or Glucose 10% or Sodium chloride 0.9%; give over 20–30 minutes.

- ▶ When used by inhalation For nebulisation, dissolve dose in 3 mL of water for injection.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: infusion, solution for infusion

#### Powder for solution for injection

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- ▶ **Ceftazidime (Non-proprietary)**

**Ceftazidime (as Ceftazidime pentahydrate) 500 mg** Ceftazidime 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £4.25

**Ceftazidime (as Ceftazidime pentahydrate) 1 gram** Ceftazidime 1g powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £13.90–£79.10



**Ceftazidime (as Ceftazidime pentahydrate) 2 gram** Ceftazidime 2g powder for solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £79.15 | 10 vial [PoM] £27.70

► **Fortum** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Ceftazidime (as Ceftazidime pentahydrate) 500 mg** Fortum 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £4.40 (Hospital only)

**Ceftazidime (as Ceftazidime pentahydrate) 1 gram** Fortum 1g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £8.79 (Hospital only)

**Ceftazidime (as Ceftazidime pentahydrate) 2 gram** Fortum 2g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £17.59 (Hospital only)

**Ceftazidime (as Ceftazidime pentahydrate) 3 gram** Fortum 3g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £25.76 (Hospital only)

F 317

15-Jun-2016

## Ceftriaxone

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Community-acquired pneumonia | Hospital-acquired pneumonia | Intra-abdominal infections | Complicated urinary-tract infections**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate up to 15 days: 20–50 mg/kg once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases.

► Neonate 15 days to 28 days: 50–80 mg/kg once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases.

► Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 50–80 mg/kg once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases; maximum 4 g per day

► Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 1–2 g once daily, 2 g dose to be used for hospital-acquired pneumonia and severe cases

► Child 12–17 years: 1–2 g once daily, 2 g dose to be used for hospital-acquired pneumonia and severe cases

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 1–2 g once daily, 2 g dose to be used for hospital-acquired pneumonia and severe cases

► Child 12–17 years: 1–2 g once daily, 2 g dose to be used for hospital-acquired pneumonia and severe cases

► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 50–80 mg/kg daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases; maximum 4 g per day

► Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 1–2 g once daily, 2 g dose to be used for hospital-acquired pneumonia and severe cases

► Child 12–17 years: 1–2 g once daily, 2 g dose to be used for hospital-acquired pneumonia and severe cases

**Complicated skin and soft tissue infections | Infections of bones and joints**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate up to 15 days: 20–50 mg/kg once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases.

► Neonate 15 days to 28 days: 50–100 mg/kg once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases.

► Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 50–100 mg/kg once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases; maximum 4 g per day

► Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2 g once daily

► Child 12–17 years: 2 g once daily

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2 g once daily

► Child 12–17 years: 2 g once daily

► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 50–100 mg/kg daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases; maximum 4 g per day

► Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2 g once daily

► Child 12–17 years: 2 g once daily

**Suspected bacterial infection in neutropenic patients**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate up to 15 days: 20–50 mg/kg once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases.

► Neonate 15 days to 28 days: 50–100 mg/kg once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases.

► Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 50–100 mg/kg once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases; maximum 4 g per day

► Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2–4 g once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases

► Child 12–17 years: 2–4 g once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2–4 g once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases; doses of 50 mg/kg or more should be given by infusion

► Child 12–17 years: 2–4 g once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases

► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 50–100 mg/kg daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases; maximum 4 g per day

► Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2–4 g daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases

► Child 12–17 years: 2–4 g daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases

**Bacterial meningitis | Bacterial endocarditis**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate up to 15 days: 50 mg/kg once daily.

► Neonate 15 days to 28 days: 80–100 mg/kg once daily, 100 mg/kg once daily dose should be used for bacterial endocarditis.

► Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 80–100 mg/kg once daily, 100 mg/kg once daily dose should be used for bacterial endocarditis; maximum 4 g per day

► Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2–4 g once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases

► Child 12–17 years: 2–4 g once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2–4 g once daily, doses at the higher end of the

recommended range used in severe cases; doses of 50 mg/kg or more should be given by infusion

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2–4 g once daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases
- ▶ BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 80–100 mg/kg daily, 100 mg/kg daily dose should be used for bacterial endocarditis; maximum 4 g per day
- ▶ Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2–4 g daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2–4 g daily, doses at the higher end of the recommended range used in severe cases

### Surgical prophylaxis

#### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 15 days: 20–50 mg/kg for 1 dose, dose to be administered 30–90 minutes before procedure.

- ▶ Neonate 15 days to 28 days: 50–80 mg/kg for 1 dose, dose to be administered 30–90 minutes before procedure.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 50–80 mg/kg (max. per dose 2 g) for 1 dose, dose to be administered 30–90 minutes before procedure
- ▶ Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2 g for 1 dose, dose to be administered 30–90 minutes before procedure
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2 g for 1 dose, dose to be administered 30–90 minutes before procedure

#### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2 g for 1 dose, dose to be administered 30–90 minutes before procedure
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2 g for 1 dose, dose to be administered 30–90 minutes before procedure

#### ▶ BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 50–80 mg/kg (max. per dose 2 g) for 1 dose, dose to be administered 30–90 minutes before procedure
- ▶ Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2 g for 1 dose, dose to be administered 30–90 minutes before procedure
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2 g for 1 dose, dose to be administered 30–90 minutes before procedure

### Uncomplicated gonorrhoea/ Pelvic inflammatory disease

#### ▶ BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 45 kg): 125 mg for 1 dose
- ▶ Child 9–11 years (body-weight 45 kg and above): 250 mg for 1 dose
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg for 1 dose

### Syphilis

#### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 15 days: 50 mg/kg once daily for 10–14 days.
- ▶ Neonate 15 days to 28 days: 75–100 mg/kg once daily for 10–14 days.
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 75–100 mg/kg once daily for 10–14 days; maximum 4 g per day
- ▶ Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 0.5–1 g once daily for 10–14 days, dose increased to 2 g once daily for neurosyphilis
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 0.5–1 g once daily for 10–14 days, dose increased to 2 g once daily for neurosyphilis

#### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 0.5–1 g once daily for 10–14 days, dose increased to 2 g once daily for neurosyphilis
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 0.5–1 g once daily for 10–14 days, dose increased to 2 g once daily for neurosyphilis

#### ▶ BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 75–100 mg/kg daily for 10–14 days; maximum 4 g per day
- ▶ Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 0.5–1 g once daily for 10–14 days, dose increased to 2 g once daily for neurosyphilis
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 0.5–1 g once daily for 10–14 days, dose increased to 2 g once daily for neurosyphilis

### Disseminated Lyme borreliosis (early [Stage II] and late [Stage III])

#### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate 15 days to 28 days: 50–80 mg/kg once daily for 14–21 days, the recommended treatment durations vary and national or local guidelines should be taken into consideration.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 50–80 mg/kg once daily for 14–21 days, the recommended treatment durations vary and national or local guidelines should be taken into consideration; maximum 4 g per day
- ▶ Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2 g once daily for 14–21 days, the recommended treatment durations vary and national or local guidelines should be taken into consideration
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2 g once daily for 14–21 days, the recommended treatment durations vary and national or local guidelines should be taken into consideration

#### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2 g once daily for 14–21 days, the recommended treatment durations vary and national or local guidelines should be taken into consideration
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2 g once daily for 14–21 days, the recommended treatment durations vary and national or local guidelines should be taken into consideration

#### ▶ BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 50–80 mg/kg daily for 14–21 days, the recommended treatment durations vary and national or local guidelines should be taken into consideration; maximum 4 g per day
- ▶ Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 2 g once daily for 14–21 days, the recommended treatment durations vary and national or local guidelines should be taken into consideration
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2 g once daily for 14–21 days, the recommended treatment durations vary and national or local guidelines should be taken into consideration

### Congenital gonococcal conjunctivitis

#### ▶ BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: 25–50 mg/kg (max. per dose 125 mg) for 1 dose, intravenous infusion to be administered over 60 minutes.

### Prevention of secondary case of meningococcal meningitis

#### ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 125 mg for 1 dose
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 250 mg for 1 dose

continued →

**Prevention of secondary case of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 50 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 1 g) for 2 days
- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1 g daily for 2 days

**Acute otitis media**

- ▶ BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 50 mg/kg (max. per dose 2 g) for 1 dose, dose can be given for 3 days if severely ill or previous therapy failed
- ▶ Child 9–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 1–2 g for 1 dose, dose can be given for 3 days if severely ill or previous therapy failed
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1–2 g for 1 dose, dose can be given for 3 days if severely ill or previous therapy failed

- **UNLICENSED USE** [EvGr] Not licensed for prophylaxis of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease. [E] Not licensed for prophylaxis of meningococcal meningitis. [EvGr] Not licensed for congenital gonococcal conjunctivitis. Not licensed for use in children under 12 years of age for uncomplicated gonorrhoea. Not licensed for use in children for pelvic inflammatory disease. [E]
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Concomitant treatment with intravenous calcium (including total parenteral nutrition containing calcium) in premature and full-term neonates—risk of precipitation in urine and lungs (fatal reactions) • full-term neonates with jaundice, hypoalbuminaemia, acidosis, unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia, or impaired bilirubin binding—risk of developing bilirubin encephalopathy • premature neonates less than 41 weeks corrected gestational age
- **CAUTIONS** History of hypercalcaemia • history of kidney stones • use with caution in neonates
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cephalosporins
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Anaemia • coagulation disorder • granulocytopenia
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Bronchospasm • glycosuria • haematuria • oedema
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Acute generalised exanthematous pustulosis (AGEP) • cholelithiasis • hypersensitivity • kernicterus (in neonates) • nephrolithiasis • oral disorders • pancreatitis • seizure • vertigo
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Precipitates of calcium ceftriaxone can occur in the gall bladder and urine (particularly in very young, dehydrated or those who are immobilised)—consider discontinuation if symptomatic.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if benefit outweighs risk—limited data available but not known to be harmful in animal studies. [EvGr] Specialist sources indicate suitable for use in pregnancy. [D]
- **BREAST FEEDING** [EvGr] Specialist sources advise ceftriaxone is compatible with breastfeeding—present in milk in low concentration but limited effects to breast-fed infant. [D]
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises reduce dose and monitor efficacy in patients with severe renal impairment in combination with hepatic impairment—no information available.

Manufacturer advises reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> max. 50 mg/kg daily or max. 2 g daily).

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Manufacturer advises to monitor full blood count regularly during prolonged treatment.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - ▶ With intramuscular use or intravenous use Twice daily dosing may be considered for doses greater than 2 g daily.
  - ▶ With intravenous use For intravenous infusion (preferred route), dilute reconstituted solution with Glucose 5% (or 10% in neonates) or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over at least 30 minutes (60 minutes in neonates—may displace bilirubin from serum albumin). Not to be given simultaneously with parenteral nutrition or infusion fluids containing calcium, even by different infusion lines; in children, may be infused sequentially with infusion fluids containing calcium if infusion lines at different sites are used, or if the infusion lines are replaced or thoroughly flushed between infusions with Sodium Chloride 0.9% to avoid precipitation—consult product literature.
- Displacement value may be significant, consult local guidelines. For intravenous injection, give over 5 minutes.
- ▶ With intramuscular use For intramuscular injection, may be mixed with 1% Lidocaine Hydrochloride Injection to reduce pain at intramuscular injection site. Intramuscular injection should only be considered when the intravenous route is not possible or less appropriate. If administered by intramuscular injection, the lower end of the dose range should be used for the shortest time possible; volume depends on the age and size of the child, but doses over 1 g must be divided between more than one site.
- Displacement value may be significant, consult local guidelines. The maximum single intramuscular dose is 2 g, doses greater than 2 g must be given in divided doses or by intravenous administration (see above).

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: infusion

**Powder for solution for injection**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

**▶ Ceftriaxone (Non-proprietary)**

**Ceftriaxone (as Ceftriaxone sodium) 250 mg** Ceftriaxone 250mg powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £2.30 DT = £2.40

**Ceftriaxone (as Ceftriaxone sodium) 1 gram** Ceftriaxone 1g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £9.58 DT = £9.58 | 10 vial [PoM] £91.50–£95.80

**Ceftriaxone (as Ceftriaxone sodium) 2 gram** Ceftriaxone 2g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £18.30 DT = £19.18 | 10 vial [PoM] £191.80

Ceftriaxone 2g powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £19.18 DT = £19.18

**▶ Rocephin (Roche Products Ltd)**

**Ceftriaxone (as Ceftriaxone sodium) 250 mg** Rocephin 250mg powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £2.40 DT = £2.40

**Ceftriaxone (as Ceftriaxone sodium) 1 gram** Rocephin 1g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £9.58 DT = £9.58

**Ceftriaxone (as Ceftriaxone sodium) 2 gram** Rocephin 2g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £19.18 DT = £19.18

## ANTIBACTERIALS &gt; GLYCOPEPTIDE

## Teicoplanin

27-Nov-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** The glycopeptide antibiotic teicoplanin has bactericidal activity against aerobic and anaerobic Gram-positive bacteria including multi-resistant staphylococci. However, there are reports of *Staphylococcus aureus* with reduced susceptibility to glycopeptides and increasing reports of glycopeptide-resistant enterococci. Teicoplanin is similar to vancomycin, but has a significantly longer duration of action, allowing once daily administration after the loading dose.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Clostridium difficile infection**

## ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100–200 mg twice daily for 7–14 days

**Serious infections caused by Gram-positive bacteria (e.g. complicated skin and soft-tissue infections, pneumonia, complicated urinary tract infections)**

## ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 6 mg/kg every 12 hours for 3 doses, then 6 mg/kg once daily

**Streptococcal or enterococcal endocarditis (in combination with another antibacterial) | Bone and joint infections**

## ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 12 mg/kg every 12 hours for 3–5 doses, then (by intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion or by intramuscular injection) 12 mg/kg once daily

**Surgical prophylaxis**

## ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

**Serious infections caused by Gram-positive bacteria (including endocarditis, complicated skin and soft-tissue infections, pneumonia, complicated urinary tract infections, bone and joint infections)**

## ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 16 mg/kg for 1 dose, followed by 8 mg/kg once daily, subsequent dose to be administered 24 hours after initial dose, doses to be given by intravenous infusion.

- ▶ Child 1 month: Initially 16 mg/kg for 1 dose, followed by 8 mg/kg once daily, subsequent dose to be administered 24 hours after initial dose, doses to be given by intravenous infusion

- ▶ Child 2 months–11 years: Initially 10 mg/kg every 12 hours for 3 doses, then 6–10 mg/kg once daily

**Peritonitis associated with peritoneal dialysis (added to dialysis fluid)**

## ▶ BY INTRAPERITONEAL INFUSION

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: (consult local protocol)

**PHARMACOKINETICS**

- ▶ Teicoplanin should **not** be given by mouth for systemic infections because it is not absorbed significantly.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for surgical prophylaxis.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: teicoplanin

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ Common or very common Fever · pain · skin reactions

- ▶ Uncommon Bronchospasm · diarrhoea · dizziness ·

- ▶ eosinophilia · headache · hearing impairment · hypersensitivity · leucopenia · nausea · thrombocytopenia · vomiting

- ▶ Rare or very rare Abscess · red man syndrome

- ▶ **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · angioedema · chills · neutropenia · overgrowth of nonsusceptible organisms · renal impairment · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Teicoplanin is associated with a lower incidence of nephrotoxicity than vancomycin.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Caution if history of vancomycin sensitivity.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Use normal dose regimen on days 1–4, then use normal maintenance dose every 48 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–80 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> and use normal maintenance dose every 72 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Monitoring** Monitor renal and auditory function during prolonged treatment in renal impairment.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ With intramuscular use or intravenous use Manufacturer advises monitor serum-teicoplanin trough concentration at steady state after completion of loading dose and during maintenance treatment—consult product literature.
- ▶ Blood counts and liver and kidney function tests required.
- ▶ Manufacturer advises monitoring for adverse reactions when doses of 12 mg/kg twice daily are administered.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- ▶ With intravenous use For intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution further in sodium chloride 0.9% or glucose 5%; give over 30 minutes.
- ▶ With oral use Injection can be used to prepare solution for oral administration.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

**Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

▶ **Targocid** (Sanofi) ▼

**Teicoplanin 200 mg** Targocid 200mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £3.93

**Teicoplanin 400 mg** Targocid 400mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £7.32

## Vancomycin

11-May-2018

- **DRUG ACTION** The glycopeptide antibiotic vancomycin has bactericidal activity against aerobic and anaerobic Gram-positive bacteria including multi-resistant staphylococci. However, there are reports of *Staphylococcus aureus* with reduced susceptibility to glycopeptides. There are increasing reports of glycopeptide-resistant enterococci. Penetration into cerebrospinal fluid is poor.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Clostridium difficile infection**

## ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 10 mg/kg every 6 hours for 10 days, treatment duration may need to be tailored to the clinical course of individual patients.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 10 mg/kg every 6 hours for 10 days, treatment duration may need to be tailored to the clinical course of individual patients; maximum 2 g per day

continued →

***Clostridium difficile* infection [first episode]**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 125 mg every 6 hours for 10 days; increased if necessary to 500 mg every 6 hours for 10 days, increased dose if severe or complicated infection

***Clostridium difficile* infection [multiple recurrences]**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 125 mg every 6 hours for 10 days, followed by, either tapering the dose (gradually reducing until 125 mg daily) or a pulse regimen (125–500 mg every 2–3 days for at least 3 weeks)

**Complicated skin and soft tissue infections | Bone infections | Joint infections | Community-acquired pneumonia | Hospital-acquired pneumonia [including ventilator-associated pneumonia] | Infective endocarditis | Acute bacterial meningitis | Bacteraemia [occurring in association with or suspected to be associated with the licensed indications]**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 29 weeks corrected gestational age (administered on expert advice): 15 mg/kg every 24 hours adjusted according to plasma-concentration monitoring, duration should be tailored to type and severity of infection and the individual clinical response—consult product literature for further information.

- ▶ Neonate 29 weeks to 35 weeks corrected gestational age (administered on expert advice): 15 mg/kg every 12 hours adjusted according to plasma-concentration monitoring, duration should be tailored to type and severity of infection and the individual clinical response—consult product literature for further information.

- ▶ Neonate 35 weeks corrected gestational age and above (administered on expert advice): 15 mg/kg every 8 hours adjusted according to plasma-concentration monitoring, duration should be tailored to type and severity of infection and the individual clinical response—consult product literature for further information.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 10–15 mg/kg every 6 hours adjusted according to plasma-concentration monitoring, duration should be tailored to type and severity of infection and the individual clinical response—consult product literature for further information, doses higher than 60 mg/kg/day cannot be generally recommended as the safety of increased dosing has not been fully assessed
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 15–20 mg/kg every 8–12 hours (max. per dose 2 g) adjusted according to plasma-concentration monitoring, duration should be tailored to type and severity of infection and the individual clinical response—consult product literature for further information, in seriously ill patients, a loading dose of 25–30 mg/kg (usual max. 2 g) can be used to facilitate rapid attainment of the target trough serum-vancomycin concentration

**Perioperative prophylaxis of bacterial endocarditis [in patients at high risk of developing bacterial endocarditis when undergoing major surgical procedures]**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: 15 mg/kg, to be given prior to induction of anaesthesia, a second dose may be required depending on duration of surgery.

- ▶ Child: 15 mg/kg, to be given prior to induction of anaesthesia, a second dose may be required depending on duration of surgery

**Surgical prophylaxis (when high risk of MRSA)**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

**CNS infection e.g. ventriculitis (administered on expert advice)**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENTRICULAR ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ Neonate: 10 mg every 24 hours.

- ▶ Child: 10 mg every 24 hours, for all children reduce to 5 mg daily if ventricular size reduced or increase to 15–20 mg once daily if ventricular size increased, adjust dose according to CSF concentration after 3–4 days; aim for pre-dose ("trough") concentration less than 10 mg/litre. If CSF not draining free reduce dose frequency to once every 2–3 days

**Peritonitis associated with peritoneal dialysis**

- ▶ BY INTRAPERITONEAL ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ Child: Add to each bag of dialysis fluid to achieve a concentration of 20–25 mg/litre

**Eradication of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* from the respiratory tract in cystic fibrosis**

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION

- ▶ Child: 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 250 mg) for 5 days, alternatively 4 mg/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 250 mg) for 5 days

**PHARMACOKINETICS**

- ▶ Vancomycin should **not** be given by mouth for systemic infections because it is not absorbed significantly.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Vancomycin doses in BNF publications may differ from those in product literature. Use of vancomycin (added to dialysis fluid) for the treatment of peritonitis associated with peritoneal dialysis is an unlicensed route. Not licensed for intraventricular use or inhalation. Not licensed for use by the *intrathecal* route for the treatment of meningitis.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****SAFE PRACTICE**

For intraventricular administration, seek specialist advice.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS**
- ▶ With intravenous use Previous hearing loss
- **CAUTIONS**
- ▶ With intravenous use Premature neonates (monitor serum-concentration carefully) · young infants (monitor serum-concentration carefully)
- ▶ With oral use Systemic absorption may be enhanced in patients with inflammatory disorders of the intestinal mucosa or with *Clostridium difficile*-induced pseudomembranous colitis (increased risk of adverse reactions)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: vancomycin

**SIDE-EFFECTS**

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS** Agranulocytosis · dizziness · drug fever · eosinophilia · hypersensitivity · nausea · nephritis tubulointerstitial · neutropenia (more common after 1 week or cumulative dose of 25g) · renal failure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus (discontinue) · vasculitis · vertigo

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ With intravenous use Back pain · bradycardia · cardiac arrest (on rapid intravenous injection) · cardiogenic shock (on rapid intravenous injection) · chest pain · dyspnoea · hearing loss · hypotension · muscle complaints ·



pseudomembranous enterocolitis · red man syndrome · wheezing

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Vancomycin is associated with a higher incidence of nephrotoxicity than teicoplanin.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Caution if teicoplanin sensitivity.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.  
**Monitoring** Plasma-vancomycin concentration monitoring essential to reduce risk of fetal toxicity.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—significant absorption following oral administration unlikely.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises serial monitoring of renal function.
- With intravenous use Manufacturer advises use with caution—increased risk of toxic effects with prolonged high blood concentration.  
**Dose adjustments** ➤ With oral use Manufacturer advises dose adjustment is unlikely to be required unless substantial oral absorption occurs in inflammatory disorders of the intestinal mucosa or with *Clostridium difficile*-induced pseudomembranous colitis, see *Monitoring*.
  - With intravenous use Manufacturer advises initial dose must not be reduced—consult product literature.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - With intravenous use Manufacturer advises initial doses should be based on body-weight; subsequent dose adjustments should be based on serum-vancomycin concentrations to achieve targeted therapeutic concentrations. All patients require serum-vancomycin measurement (on the second day of treatment, immediately before the next dose if renal function normal, earlier if renal impairment—consult product literature). Frequency of monitoring depends on the clinical situation and response to treatment; regular monitoring indicated in high-dose therapy and longer-term use, particularly in patients with impaired renal function, impaired hearing, or concurrent use of nephrotoxic or ototoxic drugs. Manufacturer advises pre-dose ('trough') concentration should normally be 10–20 mg/litre depending on the site of infection and the susceptibility of the pathogen; trough concentration of 15–20 mg/litre is usually recommended to cover susceptible pathogens with MIC greater than or equal to 1 mg/litre—consult product literature.
  - Manufacturer advises periodic testing of auditory function. Manufacturer advises monitor blood counts, urinalysis, hepatic and renal function periodically in all patients; monitor leucocyte count regularly in patients receiving long-term vancomycin or if given concurrently with other drugs that may cause neutropenia or agranulocytosis.
  - With oral use Manufacturer advises monitoring serum-vancomycin concentration in inflammatory intestinal disorders.
  - With intraventricular use Aim for pre-dose ('trough') concentration less than 10 mg/litre.
  - When used by inhalation Measure lung function before and after initial dose of vancomycin and monitor for bronchospasm.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - With intravenous use Avoid rapid infusion (risk of anaphylactoid reactions) and rotate infusion sites. Displacement value may be significant, consult product literature and local guidelines. For intermittent intravenous infusion, the reconstituted preparation should be further diluted in sodium chloride 0.9% or glucose 5% to a concentration of up to 5 mg/mL; give over at least 60 minutes (rate not to exceed 10 mg/minute for doses over 500 mg); use continuous infusion only if

intermittent not available (limited evidence); 10 mg/mL can be used if infused via a central venous line over at least 1 hour.

- With oral use Injection can be used to prepare solution for oral administration—consult product literature.
- When used by inhalation For nebulisation administer required dose in 4 mL of sodium chloride 0.9% (or water for injections). Administer inhaled bronchodilator before vancomycin.

#### ● MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection, infusion

#### **Powder for solution for infusion**

##### ➤ **Vancomycin (Non-proprietary)**

**Vancomycin (as Vancomycin hydrochloride) 500 mg** Vancomycin 500mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £7.25 | 10 vial [PoM] £62.50

**Vancomycin 500mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £8.50 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £5.49 | 10 vial [PoM] £62.50

**Vancomycin (as Vancomycin hydrochloride) 1 gram** Vancomycin 1g powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £14.50 | 10 vial [PoM] £125.00

**Vancomycin 1g powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £17.25 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £11.25 | 10 vial [PoM] £125.00

##### ➤ **Vancocin** (Flynn Pharma Ltd)

**Vancomycin (as Vancomycin hydrochloride) 500 mg** Vancocin 500mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £6.25

**Vancomycin (as Vancomycin hydrochloride) 1 gram** Vancocin 1g powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £12.50

#### **Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

##### ➤ **Vancomycin (Non-proprietary)**

**Vancomycin (as Vancomycin hydrochloride) 125 mg** Vancomycin 125mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £132.47 DT = £132.47

**Vancomycin (as Vancomycin hydrochloride) 250 mg** Vancomycin 250mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £140.08 DT = £140.08

##### ➤ **Vancomycin Matrigel** (Flynn Pharma Ltd)

**Vancomycin (as Vancomycin hydrochloride) 125 mg** Vancocin Matrigel 125mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £88.31 DT = £132.47

## ANTIBACTERIALS > LINCOSAMIDES

### Clindamycin

- **DRUG ACTION** Clindamycin is active against Gram-positive cocci, including streptococci and penicillin-resistant staphylococci, and also against many anaerobes, especially *Bacteroides fragilis*. It is well concentrated in bone and excreted in bile and urine.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Staphylococcal bone and joint infections such as osteomyelitis | Peritonitis | Intra-abdominal sepsis | Meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) in bronchiectasis, bone and joint infections, and skin and soft-tissue infections | Erysipelas or cellulitis in penicillin-allergic patients (alternative to macrolides)**

##### ➤ BY MOUTH

➤ Neonate up to 14 days: 3–6 mg/kg 3 times a day.

➤ Neonate 14 days to 28 days: 3–6 mg/kg 4 times a day.

➤ Child: 3–6 mg/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 450 mg)

➤ BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

➤ Child: 3.75–6.25 mg/kg 4 times a day; increased if necessary up to 10 mg/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 1.2 g), increased dose used for severe infections, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses, single doses above 600 mg to be continued →

administered by intravenous infusion only, single doses by intravenous infusion not to exceed 1.2 g

### Staphylococcal lung infection in cystic fibrosis

- BY MOUTH
- Child: 5–7 mg/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 600 mg)

### Treatment of falciparum malaria (to be given with or following quinine)

- BY MOUTH
- Child: 7–13 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 450 mg) for 7 days

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for treatment of falciparum malaria.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates · diarrhoeal states
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: clindamycin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

#### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · antibiotic associated colitis · diarrhoea (discontinue) · skin reactions
- **Uncommon** Nausea · vomiting
- **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · angioedema · eosinophilia · jaundice · leucopenia · neutropenia · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · taste altered · thrombocytopenia · vulvovaginal infection

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Frequency not known**
- With oral use Gastrointestinal disorders
- With parenteral use Cardiac arrest · hypotension

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Clindamycin has been associated with antibiotic-associated colitis, which may be fatal. Although antibiotic-associated colitis can occur with most antibacterials, it occurs more frequently with clindamycin. If *C. difficile* infection is suspected or confirmed, discontinue the antibiotic if appropriate. Seek specialist advice if the antibiotic cannot be stopped and the diarrhoea is severe.

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount probably too small to be harmful but bloody diarrhoea reported in 1 infant.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor liver and renal function if treatment exceeds 10 days. Monitor liver and renal function in neonates and infants.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Avoid rapid intravenous administration. For intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of not more than 18 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 10–60 minutes at a max. rate of 20 mg/kg/hour.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Capsules should be swallowed with a glass of water. Patients and their carers should be advised to discontinue immediately and contact doctor if diarrhoea develops.

#### PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

Dental practitioners' formulary  
Clindamycin capsules may be prescribed.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

##### ► Dalacin C (Non-proprietary)

**Clindamycin (as Clindamycin phosphate) 150 mg per 1 ml** Clindamycin 600mg/4ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £59.00–£61.75  
Clindamycin 300mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £29.50–£31.01

##### ► Dalacin C (Pfizer Ltd)

**Clindamycin (as Clindamycin phosphate) 150 mg per 1 ml** Dalacin C Phosphate 300mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £31.01 (Hospital only)  
Dalacin C Phosphate 600mg/4ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £61.75 (Hospital only)

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 27

##### ► Clindamycin (Non-proprietary)

**Clindamycin (as Clindamycin hydrochloride) 150 mg** Clindamycin 150mg capsules | 24 capsule [PoM] £18.29 DT = £3.79 | 100 capsule [PoM] £15.16–£76.20

**Clindamycin (as Clindamycin hydrochloride) 300 mg** Clindamycin 300mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £46.00 DT = £38.45

##### ► Dalacin C (Pfizer Ltd)

**Clindamycin (as Clindamycin hydrochloride) 75 mg** Dalacin C 75mg capsules | 24 capsule [PoM] £7.45 DT = £7.45

**Clindamycin (as Clindamycin hydrochloride) 150 mg** Dalacin C 150mg capsules | 24 capsule [PoM] £13.72 DT = £3.79 | 100 capsule [PoM] £55.08

## ANTIBACTERIALS > MACROLIDES

### Macrolides

#### Overview

The macrolides have an antibacterial spectrum that is similar but not identical to that of penicillin; they are thus an alternative in penicillin-allergic patients. They are active against many penicillin-resistant staphylococci, but some are now also resistant to the macrolides.

Indications for the macrolides include campylobacter enteritis, respiratory infections (including pneumonia, whooping cough, Legionella, chlamydia, and mycoplasma infection), and skin infections.

Erythromycin p. 331 is also used in the treatment of early syphilis, uncomplicated genital chlamydial infection, and non-gonococcal urethritis. Erythromycin has poor activity against *Haemophilus influenzae*. Erythromycin causes nausea, vomiting, and diarrhoea in some patients; in mild to moderate infections this can be avoided by giving a lower dose or the total dose in 4 divided doses, but if a more serious infection, such as Legionella pneumonia, is suspected higher doses are needed.

Azithromycin p. 329 is a macrolide with slightly less activity than erythromycin against Gram-positive bacteria, but enhanced activity against some Gram-negative organisms including *H. influenzae*. Plasma concentrations are very low, but tissue concentrations are much higher. It has a long tissue half-life and once daily dosage is recommended. Azithromycin is also used in the treatment of uncomplicated genital chlamydial infection, non-gonococcal urethritis, typhoid [unlicensed indication], and trachoma [unlicensed indication].

Clarithromycin p. 330 is an erythromycin derivative with slightly greater activity than the parent compound. Tissue concentrations are higher than with erythromycin. It is given twice daily. Clarithromycin is also used in regimens for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication.

Erythromycin, azithromycin, and clarithromycin have a role in the treatment of Lyme disease p. 360.

Spiramycin is also a macrolide which is used for the treatment of toxoplasmosis.

### Macrolides

- **CAUTIONS** Electrolyte disturbances (predisposition to QT interval prolongation) · may aggravate myasthenia gravis · predisposition to QT interval prolongation

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · arthralgia · diarrhoea · dizziness · eye discomfort · gastrointestinal

discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • headache • hearing impairment • nausea • pancreatitis • sensation abnormal • skin reactions • sleep disorders • taste altered • vasodilation • vision disorders • vomiting

- ▶ **Uncommon** Angioedema • anxiety • arrhythmias • burping • candida infection • cardiac arrest • chest pain • constipation • drowsiness • dry mouth • eosinophilia • eye allergy • haemorrhage • hepatic disorders • leucopenia • loss of consciousness • movement disorders • muscle complaints • neutropenia • oedema • oral disorders • palpitations • photosensitivity reaction • pulmonary embolism • QT interval prolongation • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • thrombocytosis • tremor • vertigo
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Antibiotic associated colitis • hearing loss (can occur after large doses) • myasthenia gravis • nephritis tubulointerstitial
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Aggression • agranulocytosis • atrioventricular block • cerebral impairment • depersonalisation • depression • haemolytic anaemia • hallucination • hypotension • mania • myopathy • psychotic disorder • renal impairment • seizure • smell altered • syncope • thrombocytopenia • urine discolouration

F 328

## Azithromycin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prevention of secondary case of invasive group A streptococcal infection in patients who are allergic to penicillin**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6 months–11 years: 12 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 500 mg) for 5 days
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg once daily for 5 days

**Respiratory-tract infections, otitis media, skin and soft-tissue infections**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years: 10 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 500 mg) for 3 days
- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight 15–25 kg): 200 mg once daily for 3 days
- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight 26–35 kg): 300 mg once daily for 3 days
- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight 36–45 kg): 400 mg once daily for 3 days
- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight 46 kg and above): 500 mg once daily for 3 days

**Infection in cystic fibrosis**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years: 10 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 500 mg) for 3 days, repeated after 1 week to complete course, treatment may be repeated as necessary

**Chronic *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection in cystic fibrosis**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6–17 years (body-weight 25–40 kg): 250 mg 3 times a week
- ▶ Child 6–17 years (body-weight 41 kg and above): 500 mg 3 times a week

**Uncomplicated genital chlamydial infections | Non-gonococcal urethritis**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1 g for 1 dose

**Lyme disease (under expert supervision)**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years: 10 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 500 mg) for 7–10 days

### Mild to moderate typhoid due to multiple-antibacterial resistant organisms

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years: 10 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 500 mg) for 7 days

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for typhoid fever, Lyme disease, chronic *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection in cystic fibrosis, or prophylaxis of group A streptococcal infection.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: macrolides
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise use only if adequate alternatives not available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk; use only if no suitable alternatives.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise avoid in severe liver disease—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include cherry or banana.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Medicines for Children leaflet: Azithromycin for bacterial infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/azithromycin-bacterial-infections-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/azithromycin-bacterial-infections-0)
- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

**Dental practitioners' formulary**

Azithromycin Capsules may be prescribed. Azithromycin Tablets may be prescribed. Azithromycin Oral Suspension 200 mg/5 mL may be prescribed.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Azithromycin tablets can be sold to the public for the treatment of confirmed, asymptomatic *Chlamydia trachomatis* genital infection in those over 16 years of age, and for the epidemiological treatment of their sexual partners, subject to maximum single dose of 1 g, maximum daily dose 1 g, and a pack size of 1 g.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 9

#### ▶ Azithromycin (Non-proprietary)

**Azithromycin 250 mg** Azithromycin 250mg tablets | 4 tablet [PoM] £10.11 DT = £1.12 | 6 tablet [PoM] £2.04–£14.46

**Azithromycin 500 mg** Azithromycin 500mg tablets | 3 tablet [PoM] £9.80 DT = £0.88

#### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 9

#### ▶ Azithromycin (Non-proprietary)

**Azithromycin 40 mg per 1 mL** Azithromycin 200mg/5mL oral suspension | 15 mL [PoM] £6.18 DT = £4.06 | 30 mL [PoM] £11.04 DT = £11.04

#### ▶ Zithromax (Pfizer Ltd)

**Azithromycin 40 mg per 1 mL** Zithromax 200mg/5mL oral suspension | 15 mL [PoM] £4.06 DT = £4.06 | 22.5 mL [PoM] £6.10 DT = £6.10 | 30 mL [PoM] £11.04 DT = £11.04

#### Powder for solution for infusion

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

#### ▶ Zedbac (Aspire Pharma Ltd)

**Azithromycin (as Azithromycin dihydrate) 500 mg** Zedbac 500mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £9.50 (Hospital only)

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 9, 23

#### ▶ Azithromycin (Non-proprietary)

**Azithromycin (as Azithromycin dihydrate) 250 mg** Azithromycin 250mg capsules | 4 capsule [PoM] £3.59–£10.10 | 6 capsule [PoM] £15.15 DT = £5.39

► **Zithromax** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Azithromycin** (as Azithromycin dihydrate) 250 mg Zithromax 250mg capsules | 4 capsule [PoM] £7.16 | 6 capsule [PoM] £10.74 DT = £5.39

328

## Clarithromycin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Respiratory-tract infections | Mild to moderate skin and soft-tissue infections | Otitis media**

► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Neonate: 7.5 mg/kg twice daily.

- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 8 kg): 7.5 mg/kg twice daily
- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 8–11 kg): 62.5 mg twice daily
- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 12–19 kg): 125 mg twice daily
- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 20–29 kg): 187.5 mg twice daily
- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 30–40 kg): 250 mg twice daily
- Child 12–17 years: 250 mg twice daily usually for 7–14 days, increased to 500 mg twice daily, if required in severe infections (e.g. pneumonia)
- BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- Child 12–17 years: 500 mg once daily usually for 7–14 days, increased to 1 g once daily, if required in severe infections (e.g. pneumonia)
- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child 1 month–11 years: 7.5 mg/kg every 12 hours (max. per dose 500 mg every 12 hours) maximum duration 5 days, switch to oral route when appropriate, to be administered into a large proximal vein
- Child 12–17 years: 500 mg every 12 hours maximum duration 5 days, switch to oral route when appropriate, to be administered into a large proximal vein

### Lyme disease

► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years: 7.5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 500 mg) for 14–21 days
- Child 12–17 years: 500 mg twice daily for 14–21 days

### Prevention of pertussis

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 7.5 mg/kg twice daily for 7 days.

- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 8 kg): 7.5 mg/kg twice daily for 7 days
- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 8–11 kg): 62.5 mg twice daily for 7 days
- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 12–19 kg): 125 mg twice daily for 7 days
- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 20–29 kg): 187.5 mg twice daily for 7 days
- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 30–40 kg): 250 mg twice daily for 7 days
- Child 12–17 years: 500 mg twice daily for 7 days

### **Helicobacter pylori eradication in combination with omeprazole, and amoxicillin or metronidazole**

► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–5 years: 7.5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 500 mg)
- Child 6–11 years: 7.5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 500 mg)
- Child 12–17 years: 500 mg twice daily

### Acute sinusitis

► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 8 kg): 7.5 mg/kg twice daily for 5 days

- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 8–11 kg): 62.5 mg twice daily for 5 days
- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 12–19 kg): 125 mg twice daily for 5 days
- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 20–29 kg): 187.5 mg twice daily for 5 days
- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 30–40 kg): 250 mg twice daily for 5 days
- Child 12–17 years: 250 mg twice daily for 5 days, alternatively 500 mg twice daily for 5 days

● **UNLICENSED USE** [EvGr] Duration of treatment and child age ranges for acute sinusitis differ from product literature and adhere to national guidelines. (A) See Sinusitis (acute) p. 697 for further information. Tablets not licensed for use in children under 12 years; oral suspension not licensed for use in infants under 6 months. Intravenous infusion not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: macrolides

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid, particularly in the first trimester, unless potential benefit outweighs risk.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—present in milk.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment if renal impairment also present.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if severe hepatic impairment also present.

► With oral use Avoid *Klaricid XL*® or clarithromycin m/r preparations if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Dose adjustments** Use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, max. duration 14 days.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intermittent intravenous infusion dilute reconstituted solution further in Glucose 5% or Sodium chloride 0.9% to a concentration of 2 mg/mL; give into large proximal vein over 60 minutes.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Clarithromycin for bacterial infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/clarithromycin-bacterial-infections](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/clarithromycin-bacterial-infections)

### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

#### Dental practitioners' formulary

Clarithromycin Tablets may be prescribed.

Clarithromycin Oral Suspension may be prescribed.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: infusion

#### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 21, 25

► **Clarie XL** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Clarithromycin 500 mg** Clarie XL 500mg tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £6.72 DT = £6.72 | 14 tablet [PoM] £13.23

► **Klaricid XL** (Mylan)

**Clarithromycin 500 mg** Klaricid XL 500mg tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £6.72 DT = £6.72 | 14 tablet [PoM] £13.23

► **Xetinin XL** (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)

**Clarithromycin 500 mg** Xetinin XL 500mg tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £6.72 DT = £6.72 | 14 tablet [PoM] £13.23

#### Granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 13

► **Klaricid** (Mylan)

**Clarithromycin 250 mg** Klaricid Adult 250mg granules sachets | 14 sachet [PoM] £11.68

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

► **Clarithromycin (Non-proprietary)**

**Clarithromycin 250 mg** Clarithromycin 250mg tablets | 14 tablet [PoM] £10.50 DT = £1.07

**Clarithromycin 500 mg** Clarithromycin 500mg tablets | 14 tablet [PoM] £21.50 DT = £1.95

**Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

► **Clarithromycin (Non-proprietary)****Clarithromycin 25 mg per 1 ml** Clarithromycin 125mg/5ml oral suspension | 70 ml [PoM] £3.75 DT = £3.39**Clarithromycin 50 mg per 1 ml** Clarithromycin 250mg/5ml oral suspension | 70 ml [PoM] £5.25 DT = £4.60► **Klaricid (Mylan)****Clarithromycin 25 mg per 1 ml** Klaricid Paediatric 125mg/5ml oral suspension | 70 ml [PoM] £5.26 DT = £3.39 | 100 ml [PoM] £9.04**Clarithromycin 50 mg per 1 ml** Klaricid Paediatric 250mg/5ml oral suspension | 70 ml [PoM] £10.51 DT = £4.60**Powder for solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Clarithromycin (Non-proprietary)****Clarithromycin 500 mg** Clarithromycin 500mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £11.25 DT = £9.45**Clarithromycin 500mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £8.98 DT = £9.45► **Klaricid (Mylan)****Clarithromycin 500 mg** Klaricid IV 500mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £9.45 DT = £9.45

F 328

**Erythromycin****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Susceptible infections in patients with penicillin hypersensitivity (e.g. respiratory-tract infections (including Legionella infection), skin and oral infections, and campylobacter enteritis)**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 12.5 mg/kg every 6 hours.

► Child 1 month–1 year: 125 mg 4 times a day, total daily dose may alternatively be given in two divided doses, increased to 250 mg 4 times a day, dose increase may be used in severe infections

► Child 2–7 years: 250 mg 4 times a day, total daily dose may alternatively be given in two divided doses, increased to 500 mg 4 times a day, dose increase may be used in severe infections

► Child 8–17 years: 250–500 mg 4 times a day, total daily dose may alternatively be given in two divided doses, increased to 500–1000 mg 4 times a day, dose increase may be used in severe infections

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: 10–12.5 mg/kg every 6 hours.

► Child: 12.5 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 1 g)

**Lyme disease (under expert supervision)**

► BY MOUTH

► Child: 12.5 mg/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 500 mg) for 14–21 days

**Chlamydial ophthalmia**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 12.5 mg/kg every 6 hours.

► Child 1 month–1 year: 125 mg 4 times a day, increased to 250 mg every 6 hours, dose increase for severe infections, total daily dose may alternatively be given in two divided doses

► Child 2–7 years: 250 mg 4 times a day, increased to 500 mg every 6 hours, dose increase for severe infections, total daily dose may alternatively be given in two divided doses

► Child 8–17 years: 250–500 mg 4 times a day, increased to 500–1000 mg every 6 hours, dose increase for severe infections, total daily dose may alternatively be given in two divided doses

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: 10–12.5 mg/kg every 6 hours.

► Child: 12.5 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 1 g)

**Early syphilis**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years: 500 mg 4 times a day for 14 days

**Uncomplicated genital chlamydia | Non-gonococcal urethritis**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 1 month–1 year: 12.5 mg/kg 4 times a day for 14 days

► Child 2–11 years: 250 mg twice daily for 14 days

► Child 12–17 years: 500 mg twice daily for 14 days

**Pelvic inflammatory disease**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 1 month–1 year: 12.5 mg/kg 4 times a day for 14 days

► Child 2–11 years: 250 mg twice daily for 14 days

► Child 12–17 years: 500 mg twice daily for 14 days

**Prevention and treatment of pertussis**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 12.5 mg/kg every 6 hours.

► Child 1 month–1 year: 125 mg 4 times a day, total daily dose may alternatively be given in two divided doses, increased to 250 mg 4 times a day, dose increase may be used in severe infections

► Child 2–7 years: 250 mg 4 times a day, total daily dose may alternatively be given in two divided doses, increased to 500 mg 4 times a day, dose increase may be used in severe infections

► Child 8–17 years: 250–500 mg 4 times a day, total daily dose may alternatively be given in two divided doses, increased to 500–1000 mg 4 times a day, dose increase may be used in severe infections

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: 10–12.5 mg/kg every 6 hours.

► Child: 12.5 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 1 g)

**Prevention of secondary case of diphtheria in non-immune patient**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 1 month–1 year: 125 mg every 6 hours for 7 days, treat for further 10 days if nasopharyngeal swabs positive after first 7 days' treatment

► Child 2–7 years: 250 mg every 6 hours for 7 days, treat for further 10 days if nasopharyngeal swabs positive after first 7 days' treatment

► Child 8–17 years: 500 mg every 6 hours for 7 days, treat for further 10 days if nasopharyngeal swabs positive after first 7 days' treatment

**Prevention of secondary case of invasive group A streptococcal infection in penicillin allergic patients**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 1 month–1 year: 125 mg every 6 hours for 10 days

► Child 2–7 years: 250 mg every 6 hours for 10 days

► Child 8–17 years: 250–500 mg every 6 hours for 10 days

**Prevention of pneumococcal infection in asplenia or in patients with sickle-cell disease (if penicillin-allergic)**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 1 month–1 year: 125 mg twice daily, antibiotic prophylaxis is not fully reliable

► Child 2–7 years: 250 mg twice daily, antibiotic prophylaxis is not fully reliable. It may be discontinued in those over 5 years of age with sickle-cell disease who have received pneumococcal immunisation and who do not have a history of severe pneumococcal infection

► Child 8–17 years: 500 mg twice daily, antibiotic prophylaxis is not fully reliable. It may be discontinued in those with sickle-cell disease who have received pneumococcal immunisation and who do not have a history of severe pneumococcal infection continued →



**Prevention of recurrence of rheumatic fever**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–1 year: 125 mg twice daily
- Child 2–17 years: 250 mg twice daily

**Acne**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–23 months: 250 mg once daily, alternatively 125 mg twice daily
- Child 12–17 years: 500 mg twice daily

**Gastro-intestinal stasis**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 3 mg/kg 4 times a day.
- Child: 3 mg/kg 4 times a day
- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Neonate: 3 mg/kg 4 times a day.
- Child 1–11 months: 3 mg/kg 4 times a day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in gastro-intestinal stasis.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 • neonate under 2 weeks (risk of hypertrophic pyloric stenosis)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: macrolides

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Only small amounts in milk—not known to be harmful.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** May cause idiosyncratic hepatotoxicity.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

- **Dose adjustments** Reduce dose in severe renal impairment (ototoxicity).

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- With intravenous use Dilute reconstituted solution further in glucose 5% (neutralised with Sodium bicarbonate) or sodium chloride 0.9% to a concentration of 1–5 mg/mL; give over 20–60 minutes. Concentration of up to 10 mg/mL may be used in fluid-restriction if administered via a central venous catheter.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include banana.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

- Medicines for Children leaflet: Erythromycin for bacterial infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/erythromycin-for-bacterial-infections](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/erythromycin-for-bacterial-infections)

● **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION****Dental practitioners' formulary**

Erythromycin tablets e/c may be prescribed. Erythromycin ethyl succinate oral suspension may be prescribed. Erythromycin stearate tablets may be prescribed. Erythromycin ethyl succinate tablets may be prescribed.

● **MEDICAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Gastro-resistant tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 9, 25

► **Erythromycin (Non-proprietary)**

- **Erythromycin 250 mg** Erythromycin 250mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £2.25 DT = £1.28 | 500 tablet [PoM] £22.86–£27.20

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

► **Erythromycin (Non-proprietary)****Erythromycin (as Erythromycin ethyl succinate)**

- **500 mg** Erythromycin ethyl succinate 500mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £15.95 DT = £10.78

► **Erythrocin (AMCo)**

- **Erythrocine (as Erythromycin stearate) 250 mg** Erythrocin 250 tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £18.20 DT = £18.20

- **Erythrocine (as Erythromycin stearate) 500 mg** Erythrocin 500 tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £36.40 DT = £36.40

► **Erythrolar** (Ennogen Pharma Ltd)

- **Erythromycin (as Erythromycin stearate) 250 mg** Erythrolar 250mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £22.80 DT = £18.20

- **Erythromycin (as Erythromycin stearate) 500 mg** Erythrolar 500mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £45.60 DT = £36.40

► **Erythroped A** (AMCo)**Erythromycin (as Erythromycin ethyl succinate)**

- **500 mg** Erythroped A 500mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £10.78 DT = £10.78

**Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

► **Erythromycin (Non-proprietary)****Erythromycin (as Erythromycin ethyl succinate) 25 mg per**

- **1 ml** Erythromycin ethyl succinate 125mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £4.80 DT = £4.75

- **Erythromycin ethyl succinate 125mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free** | 100 ml [PoM] £4.99 DT = £3.61

**Erythromycin (as Erythromycin ethyl succinate) 50 mg per**

- **1 ml** Erythromycin ethyl succinate 250mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £8.18 DT = £8.14

- **Erythromycin ethyl succinate 250mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free** | 100 ml [PoM] £7.43 DT = £6.22

**Erythromycin (as Erythromycin ethyl succinate) 100 mg per**

- **1 ml** Erythromycin ethyl succinate 500mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £14.54 DT = £14.54

- **Erythromycin ethyl succinate 500mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free** | 100 ml [PoM] £

► **Erythroped** (AMCo)**Erythromycin (as Erythromycin ethyl succinate) 25 mg per**

- **1 ml** Erythroped PI SF 125mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 140 ml [PoM] £3.06

**Erythromycin (as Erythromycin ethyl succinate) 50 mg per**

- **1 ml** Erythroped SF 250mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 140 ml [PoM] £5.95

**Erythromycin (as Erythromycin ethyl succinate) 100 mg per**

- **1 ml** Erythroped Forte SF 500mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 140 ml [PoM] £10.56 DT = £10.56

**Powder for solution for infusion**► **Erythromycin (Non-proprietary)****Erythromycin (as Erythromycin lactobionate)**

- **1 gram** Erythromycin 1g powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £18.45–£22.92

**ANTIBACTERIALS > MONOBACTAMS****Aztreonam**

- **DRUG ACTION** Aztreonam is a monocyclic beta-lactam ('monobactam') antibiotic with an antibacterial spectrum limited to Gram-negative aerobic bacteria including *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Neisseria meningitidis*, and *Haemophilus influenzae*; it should not be used alone for 'blind' treatment since it is not active against Gram-positive organisms. Aztreonam is also effective against *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (but not against concurrent chlamydial infection).

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Gram-negative infections including *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, and *Neisseria meningitidis***

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate up to 7 days: 30 mg/kg every 12 hours.

- Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 30 mg/kg every 6–8 hours.

- Child 1 month–11 years: 30 mg/kg every 6–8 hours
- Child 12–17 years: 1 g every 8 hours, alternatively 2 g every 12 hours

**Severe gram-negative infections including *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Neisseria meningitidis*, and lung infections in cystic fibrosis**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child 2–11 years: 50 mg/kg every 6–8 hours (max. per dose 2 g 4 times a day)

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2 g every 6–8 hours

### Chronic pulmonary *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection in patients with cystic fibrosis

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION

- ▶ Child 6–17 years: 75 mg 3 times a day for 28 days, doses to be administered at least 4 hours apart, subsequent courses repeated after 28-day interval without aztreonam nebuliser solution

- **UNLICENSED USE** Injection not licensed for use in children under 7 days.

### ● CAUTIONS

- ▶ When used by inhalation Haemoptysis—risk of further haemorrhage

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

#### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Dyspnoea · respiratory disorders

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common**

- ▶ When used by inhalation Cough · haemoptysis · joint disorders · laryngeal pain · nasal complaints · rash

- ▶ **Rare or very rare**

- ▶ With parenteral use Anaemia · asthenia · breast tenderness · chest pain · confusion · diplopia · dizziness · eosinophilia · haemorrhage · headache · hepatic disorders · hypotension · insomnia · leucocytosis · myalgia · nasal congestion · neutropenia · oral disorders · pancytopenia · paraesthesia · pseudomembranous enterocolitis · seizure · thrombocytopenia · thrombocytosis · tinnitus · vertigo · vulvovaginal candidiasis

- ▶ **Frequency not known**

- ▶ With parenteral use Abdominal pain · angioedema · diarrhoea · nausea · skin reactions · taste altered · toxic epidermal necrolysis · vomiting

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in aztreonam hypersensitivity.

Use with caution in patients with hypersensitivity to other beta-lactam antibiotics (although aztreonam may be less likely than other beta-lactams to cause hypersensitivity in penicillin-sensitive patients).

### ● PREGNANCY

- ▶ With intravenous use No information available; manufacturer of injection advises avoid.
- ▶ When used by inhalation No information available; manufacturer of powder for nebuliser solution advises avoid unless essential.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount in milk probably too small to be harmful.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use injection with caution.

**Monitoring** ▶ With intravenous use Monitor liver function.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** ▶ With intravenous use If estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, usual initial dose of injection, then half normal dose. If estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, usual initial dose of injection, then one-quarter normal dose.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ When used by inhalation Measure lung function before and after initial dose of aztreonam and monitor for bronchospasm.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ With intravenous use For intravenous injection, give over 3–5 minutes. Displacement value of injection may be significant, consult local guidelines. For intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution further in Glucose 5% or Sodium chloride 0.9% to a concentration of less than 20 mg/mL; to be given over 20–60 minutes.

- ▶ When used by inhalation Other inhaled drugs should be administered before aztreonam; a bronchodilator should be administered before each dose.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised (December 2014) that aztreonam powder for nebuliser solution (Cayston<sup>®</sup>) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland when inhaled colistimethate sodium and inhaled tobramycin are not tolerated or are not providing satisfactory therapeutic benefit (measured as ≥2% decline in forced expiratory volume in 1 second).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder and solvent for nebuliser solution

- ▶ **Cayston** (Gilead Sciences International Ltd)

**Aztreonam (as Aztreonam lysine) 75 mg** Cayston 75mg powder and solvent for nebuliser solution vials with Altera Nebuliser Handset | 84 vial [PoM] £2,181.53

#### Powder for solution for injection

- ▶ **Azactam** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Aztreonam 1 gram** Azactam 1g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £9.40 (Hospital only)

**Aztreonam 2 gram** Azactam 2g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £18.82 (Hospital only)

## ANTIBACTERIALS > NITROIMIDAZOLE DERIVATIVES

### Metronidazole

- **DRUG ACTION** Metronidazole is an antimicrobial drug with high activity against anaerobic bacteria and protozoa.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Anaerobic infections

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child 1 month: 7.5 mg/kg every 12 hours usually treated for 7 days (for 10–14 days in *Clostridium difficile* infection)

- ▶ Child 2 months–11 years: 7.5 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 400 mg) usually treated for 7 days (for 10–14 days in *Clostridium difficile* infection)

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 400 mg every 8 hours usually treated for 7 days (for 10–14 days in *Clostridium difficile* infection)

- ▶ **BY RECTUM**

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 125 mg 3 times a day for 3 days, then 125 mg twice daily, for usual total treatment duration of 7 days

- ▶ Child 1–4 years: 250 mg 3 times a day for 3 days, then 250 mg twice daily, for usual total treatment duration of 7 days

- ▶ Child 5–9 years: 500 mg 3 times a day for 3 days, then 500 mg twice daily, for usual total treatment duration of 7 days

- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 1 g 3 times a day for 3 days, then 1 g twice daily, for usual total treatment duration of 7 days

- ▶ **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

- ▶ Neonate up to 26 weeks corrected gestational age: Loading dose 15 mg/kg, followed by 7.5 mg/kg after 24 hours, then 7.5 mg/kg daily usually treated for a total duration of 7 days (for 10–14 days in *Clostridium difficile* infection).

- ▶ Neonate 26 weeks to 34 weeks corrected gestational age: Loading dose 15 mg/kg, followed by 7.5 mg/kg after 12 hours, then 7.5 mg/kg every 12 hours usually treated for a total duration of 7 days (for 10–14 days in *Clostridium difficile* infection).

continued →

- ▶ Neonate 34 weeks corrected gestational age and above: Loading dose 15 mg/kg, followed by 7.5 mg/kg after 8 hours, then 7.5 mg/kg every 8 hours usually treated for a total duration of 7 days (for 10–14 days in *Clostridium difficile* infection).

- ▶ Child 1 month: Loading dose 15 mg/kg, followed by 7.5 mg/kg after 8 hours, then 7.5 mg/kg every 8 hours usually treated for a total duration of 7 days (for 10–14 days in *Clostridium difficile* infection)
- ▶ Child 2 months–17 years: 7.5 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 500 mg) usually treated for 7 days (for 10–14 days in *Clostridium difficile* infection)

#### ***Helicobacter pylori* eradication; in combination with clarithromycin and omeprazole**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 100 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 200 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 400 mg twice daily

#### ***Helicobacter pylori* eradication; in combination with amoxicillin and omeprazole**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 100 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 200 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 400 mg 3 times a day

#### **Fistulating Crohn's disease**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child: 7.5 mg/kg 3 times a day usually given for 1 month but should not be used for longer than 3 months because of concerns about peripheral neuropathy

#### **Pelvic inflammatory disease**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 400 mg twice daily for 14 days

#### **Acute ulcerative gingivitis**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–2 years: 50 mg every 8 hours for 3 days
- ▶ Child 3–6 years: 100 mg every 12 hours for 3 days
- ▶ Child 7–9 years: 100 mg every 8 hours for 3 days
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 200–250 mg every 8 hours for 3 days

#### **Acute oral infections**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–2 years: 50 mg every 8 hours for 3–7 days
- ▶ Child 3–6 years: 100 mg every 12 hours for 3–7 days
- ▶ Child 7–9 years: 100 mg every 8 hours for 3–7 days
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 200–250 mg every 8 hours for 3–7 days

#### **Surgical prophylaxis**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 30 mg/kg (max. per dose 500 mg), to be administered 2 hours before surgery
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 400–500 mg, to be administered 2 hours before surgery, then 400–500 mg every 8 hours if required for up to 3 doses (in high-risk procedures)

##### ▶ BY RECTUM

- ▶ Child 5–9 years: 500 mg, to be administered 2 hours before surgery, then 500 mg every 8 hours if required for up to 3 doses (in high-risk procedures)
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 1 g, to be administered 2 hours before surgery, then 1 g every 8 hours if required for up to 3 doses (in high-risk procedures)

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 40 weeks corrected gestational age: 10 mg/kg, to be administered up to 30 minutes before the procedure.

- ▶ Neonate 40 weeks corrected gestational age and above: 20–30 mg/kg, to be administered up to 30 minutes before the procedure.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 30 mg/kg (max. per dose 500 mg), to be administered up to 30 minutes before the procedure
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg, to be administered up to 30 minutes before the procedure, then 500 mg every 8 hours if required for up to 3 further doses (in high-risk procedures)

#### **Invasive intestinal amoebiasis | Extra-intestinal amoebiasis (including liver abscess)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–2 years: 200 mg 3 times a day for 5 days in intestinal infection (for 5–10 days in extra-intestinal infection)
- ▶ Child 3–6 years: 200 mg 4 times a day for 5 days in intestinal infection (for 5–10 days in extra-intestinal infection)
- ▶ Child 7–9 years: 400 mg 3 times a day for 5 days in intestinal infection (for 5–10 days in extra-intestinal infection)
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 800 mg 3 times a day for 5 days in intestinal infection (for 5–10 days in extra-intestinal infection)

#### **Urogenital trichomoniasis**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–2 years: 50 mg 3 times a day for 7 days
- ▶ Child 3–6 years: 100 mg twice daily for 7 days
- ▶ Child 7–9 years: 100 mg 3 times a day for 7 days
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 200 mg 3 times a day for 7 days, alternatively 400–500 mg twice daily for 5–7 days, alternatively 2 g for 1 dose

#### **Giardiasis**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–2 years: 500 mg once daily for 3 days
- ▶ Child 3–6 years: 600–800 mg once daily for 3 days
- ▶ Child 7–9 years: 1 g once daily for 3 days
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 2 g once daily for 3 days, alternatively 400 mg 3 times a day for 5 days, alternatively 500 mg twice daily for 7–10 days

#### **Established case of tetanus**

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

#### ● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: metronidazole

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Dry mouth · myalgia · nausea · oral disorders · taste altered · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Asthenia · headache · leucopenia (with long term or intensive therapy)
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · angioedema · appetite decreased · ataxia · confusion · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · encephalopathy · epigastric pain · epileptiform seizure (with long term or intensive therapy) · hallucination · hepatic disorders · meningitis aseptic · mucositis · neutropenia · optic neuropathy · pancreatitis · pancytopenia · peripheral neuropathy (with long term or intensive therapy) · psychotic disorder · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · urine dark · vision disorders
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Depressed mood · hearing impairment
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoidance of high-dose regimens; use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Significant amount in milk; manufacturer advises avoid large single doses though otherwise compatible; may give milk a bitter taste.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in hepatic encephalopathy.
- Dose adjustments** In severe liver disease reduce total daily dose to one-third, and give once daily.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Clinical and laboratory monitoring advised if treatment exceeds 10 days.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intravenous infusion, give over 20–30 minutes.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**  
Metronidazole is well absorbed orally and the intravenous route is normally reserved for severe infections. Metronidazole by the rectal route is an effective alternative to the intravenous route when oral administration is not possible.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Metronidazole for bacterial infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/metronidazole-bacterial-infections](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/metronidazole-bacterial-infections)
- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**  
**Dental practitioners' formulary**  
Metronidazole Tablets may be prescribed. Metronidazole Oral Suspension may be prescribed.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, suppository

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 4, 9, 21, 25, 27

##### Metronidazole (Non-proprietary)

**Metronidazole 200 mg** Metronidazole 200mg tablets | 21 tablet [PoM](#) £4.99 DT = £4.03 | 250 tablet [PoM](#) £20.00

**Metronidazole 400 mg** Metronidazole 400mg tablets | 21 tablet [PoM](#) £7.95 DT = £4.30

**Metronidazole 500 mg** Metronidazole 500mg tablets | 21 tablet [PoM](#) £37.82 DT = £37.82

##### Flagyl (Zentiva)

**Metronidazole 200 mg** Flagyl 200mg tablets | 21 tablet [PoM](#) £4.49 DT = £4.03

**Metronidazole 400 mg** Flagyl 400mg tablets | 14 tablet [PoM](#) £6.34

##### Suppository

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 4, 9

##### Flagyl (Zentiva)

**Metronidazole 500 mg** Flagyl 500mg suppositories | 10 suppository [PoM](#) £15.18

**Metronidazole 1 gram** Flagyl 1g suppositories | 10 suppository [PoM](#) £23.06

##### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 4, 9

##### Metronidazole (Non-proprietary)

**Metronidazole (as Metronidazole benzoate) 40 mg per 1 ml** Metronidazole 200mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM](#) £32.93 DT = £32.93

##### Infusion

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

##### Metronidazole (Non-proprietary)

**Metronidazole 5 mg per 1 ml** Metronidazole 500mg/100ml infusion 100ml Macoflex bags | 1 bag [PoM](#) [S](#)  
Metronidazole 500mg/100ml infusion 100ml bags | 20 bag [PoM](#) £63.86

## Tinidazole

- **DRUG ACTION** Tinidazole is an antimicrobial drug with high activity against anaerobic bacteria and protozoa; it has a longer duration of action than metronidazole.

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Intestinal amoebiasis

###### BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 50–60 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 2 g) for 3 days
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2 g once daily for 2–3 days

##### Amoebic involvement of liver

###### BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 50–60 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 2 g) for 5 days
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1.5–2 g once daily for 3–6 days

#### Urogenital trichomoniasis | Giardiasis

##### BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 50–75 mg/kg (max. per dose 2 g) for 1 single dose, dose may be repeated once if necessary
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2 g for 1 single dose, dose may be repeated once if necessary

#### INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: tinidazole

##### SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · appetite decreased · diarrhoea · headache · nausea · skin reactions · vertigo · vomiting
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · ataxia · dizziness · fatigue · flushing · leucopenia · oral disorders · peripheral neuropathy · seizure · sensation abnormal · taste altered · urine discolouration

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid in first trimester.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—manufacturer advises avoid breast-feeding during and for 3 days after stopping treatment.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Clinical and laboratory monitoring advised if treatment exceeds 10 days.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 4, 9, 21, 25

##### Fastigyn (Pfizer Ltd)

**Tinidazole 500 mg** Fastigyn 500mg tablets | 16 tablet [PoM](#) £11.04 DT = £11.04

## ANTIBACTERIALS > PENICILLINS

## Penicillins

### Benzylpenicillin and phenoxymethylpenicillin

Benzylpenicillin sodium p. 338 (Penicillin G) remains an important and useful antibiotic but is inactivated by bacterial beta-lactamases. It is effective for many streptococcal (including pneumococcal), gonococcal, and meningococcal infections and also for anthrax, diphtheria, gas-gangrene, leptospirosis, and treatment of Lyme disease in children. It is also used in combination with gentamicin p. 312 for the empirical treatment of sepsis in neonates less than 48 hours old. Pneumococci, meningococci, and gonococci which have decreased sensitivity to penicillin have been isolated; benzylpenicillin sodium **is no longer the drug of first choice for pneumococcal meningitis**. Although benzylpenicillin sodium is effective in the treatment of tetanus, metronidazole p. 333 is preferred. Benzylpenicillin sodium is inactivated by gastric acid and absorption from the gastro-intestinal tract is low; therefore it must be given by injection.

**Benzathine benzylpenicillin or procaine benzylpenicillin** are used in the treatment of syphilis.

Phenoxymethylpenicillin p. 339 (Penicillin V) has a similar antibacterial spectrum to benzylpenicillin sodium, but is less active. It is gastric acid-stable, so is suitable for oral administration. It should not be used for serious infections because absorption can be unpredictable and plasma concentrations variable. It is indicated principally for respiratory-tract infections in children, for streptococcal tonsillitis, and for continuing treatment after one or more injections of benzylpenicillin sodium when clinical response has begun. It should not be used for meningococcal or gonococcal infections. Phenoxymethylpenicillin is used for prophylaxis against streptococcal infections following rheumatic fever and against pneumococcal infections following splenectomy or in sickle cell disease.

## Penicillinase-resistant penicillins

Most staphylococci are now resistant to benzylpenicillin sodium because they produce penicillinases. Flucloxacillin p. 345, however, is not inactivated by these enzymes and is thus effective in infections caused by penicillin-resistant staphylococci, which is the main indication for its use. Flucloxacillin is acid-stable and can, therefore, be given by mouth as well as by injection. Flucloxacillin is well absorbed from the gut.

## Broad-spectrum penicillins

Ampicillin p. 341 is active against certain Gram-positive and Gram-negative organisms but is inactivated by penicillinases including those produced by *Staphylococcus aureus* and by common Gram-negative bacilli such as *Escherichia coli*. Ampicillin is also active against *Listeria* spp. and enterococci. Almost all staphylococci, approx. 60% of *E. coli* strains and approx. 20% of *Haemophilus influenzae* strains are now resistant. The likelihood of resistance should therefore be considered before using ampicillin for the 'blind' treatment of infections; in particular, it should not be used for hospital patients without checking sensitivity.

Ampicillin can be given by mouth, but less than half the dose is absorbed and absorption is further decreased by the presence of food in the gut. Ampicillin is well excreted in the bile and urine.

Amoxicillin p. 339 is a derivative of ampicillin and has a similar antibacterial spectrum. It is better absorbed than ampicillin when given by mouth, producing higher plasma and tissue concentrations; unlike ampicillin, absorption is not affected by the presence of food in the stomach.

Amoxicillin or ampicillin are principally indicated for the treatment of community-acquired pneumonia and middle ear infections, both of which may be due to *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *H. influenzae*, and for urinary-tract infections. They are also used in the treatment of endocarditis and listerial meningitis. Amoxicillin may also be used for the treatment of Lyme disease [not licensed].

Maculopapular rashes occur commonly with ampicillin (and amoxicillin) but are not usually related to true penicillin allergy. They often occur in children with glandular fever; broad-spectrum penicillins should not therefore be used for 'blind' treatment of a sore throat. The risk of rash is also increased in children with acute or chronic lymphocytic leukaemia or in cytomegalovirus infection.

Co-amoxiclav p. 343 consists of amoxicillin with the beta-lactamase inhibitor clavulanic acid. Clavulanic acid itself has no significant antibacterial activity but, by inactivating beta-lactamases, it makes the combination active against beta-lactamase-producing bacteria that are resistant to amoxicillin. These include resistant strains of *Staph. aureus*, *E. coli*, and *H. influenzae*, as well as many *Bacteroides* and *Klebsiella* spp. Co-amoxiclav should be reserved for infections likely, or known, to be caused by amoxicillin-resistant beta-lactamase-producing strains.

A combination of ampicillin with flucloxacillin (as co-fluampicil p. 342) is available to treat infections involving either streptococci or staphylococci (e.g. cellulitis).

## Antipseudomonal penicillins

**Piperacillin**, a ureidopenicillin, is only available in combination with the beta-lactamase inhibitor tazobactam.

**Ticarcillin**, a carboxypenicillin, is only available in combination with the beta-lactamase inhibitor clavulanic acid. Both preparations have a broad spectrum of activity against a range of Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria, and anaerobes. Piperacillin with tazobactam p. 337 has activity against a wider range of Gram-negative organisms than ticarcillin with clavulanic acid p. 337 and it is more active against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. These antibacterials are not active against MRSA. They are used in the treatment of septicæmia, hospital-acquired pneumonia,

and complicated infections involving the urinary-tract, skin and soft tissue, or intra-abdomen. They may be used for the empirical treatment of septicæmia in immunocompromised children but otherwise should generally be reserved for serious infections resistant to other antibacterials. For severe pseudomonas infections these antipseudomonal penicillins can be given with an aminoglycoside (e.g. gentamicin) since they have a synergistic effect.

Piperacillin with tazobactam is used in cystic fibrosis for the treatment of *Ps. aeruginosa* colonisation when ciprofloxacin p. 348 and nebulised colistimethate sodium p. 346 have been ineffective; it can also be used in infective exacerbations, when it is combined with an aminoglycoside.

## Mecillinams

Pivmecillinam hydrochloride p. 344 has significant activity against many Gram-negative bacteria including *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella*, enterobacter, and salmonellae. It is not active against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* or enterococci.

Pivmecillinam hydrochloride is hydrolysed to mecillinam, which is the active drug.

## Penicillins

● **DRUG ACTION** The penicillins are bactericidal and act by interfering with bacterial cell wall synthesis. They diffuse well into body tissues and fluids, but penetration into the cerebrospinal fluid is poor except when the meninges are inflamed. They are excreted in the urine in therapeutic concentrations.

● **CAUTIONS** History of allergy

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · hypersensitivity · nausea · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Antibiotic associated colitis · leucopenia
- **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · angioedema · haemolytic anaemia · hepatic disorders · nephritis · tubulointerstitial · neutropenia · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Diarrhoea frequently occurs during oral penicillin therapy. It is most common with broad-spectrum penicillins, which can cause antibiotic-associated colitis.

● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** The most important side-effect of the penicillins is hypersensitivity which causes rashes and anaphylaxis and can be fatal. Allergic reactions to penicillins occur in 1–10% of exposed individuals; anaphylactic reactions occur in fewer than 0.05% of treated patients. Patients with a history of atopic allergy (e.g. asthma, eczema, hay fever) are at a higher risk of anaphylactic reactions to penicillins. Individuals with a history of anaphylaxis, urticaria, or rash immediately after penicillin administration are at risk of immediate hypersensitivity to a penicillin; these individuals should not receive a penicillin. Individuals with a history of a minor rash (i.e. non-confluent, non-pruritic rash restricted to a small area of the body) or a rash that occurs more than 72 hours after penicillin administration are probably not allergic to penicillin and in these individuals a penicillin should not be withheld unnecessarily for serious infections; the possibility of an allergic reaction should, however, be borne in mind. Other beta-lactam antibiotics (including cephalosporins) can be used in these patients.

Patients who are allergic to one penicillin will be allergic to all because the hypersensitivity is related to the basic penicillin structure. Patients with a history of immediate hypersensitivity to penicillins may also react to the cephalosporins and other beta-lactam antibiotics, they should not receive these antibiotics. If a penicillin (or another beta-lactam antibiotic) is essential in an individual with immediate hypersensitivity to penicillin



then specialist advice should be sought on hypersensitivity testing or using a beta-lactam antibiotic with a different structure to the penicillin that caused the hypersensitivity.

## ANTIBACTERIALS > PENICILLINS, ANTIPSEUDOMONAL WITH BETA- LACTAMASE INHIBITOR

F 336

### Piperacillin with tazobactam

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Hospital-acquired pneumonia | Septicaemia | Complicated infections involving the urinary tract | Complicated infections involving the skin | Complicated infections involving the soft-tissues**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: 90 mg/kg every 8 hours.

- Child 1 month–11 years: 90 mg/kg every 6–8 hours (max. per dose 4.5 g every 6 hours)
- Child 12–17 years: 4.5 g every 8 hours; increased if necessary to 4.5 g every 6 hours, increased frequency may be used for severe infections

#### Complicated intra-abdominal infections

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 2–11 years: 112.5 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 4.5 g)
- Child 12–17 years: 4.5 g every 8 hours; increased if necessary to 4.5 g every 6 hours, increased frequency may be used for severe infections

#### Infections in neutropenic patients

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 90 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 4.5 g)

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 12 years (except for children 2–12 years with neutropenia and complicated intra-abdominal infections).

● **CAUTIONS** High doses may lead to hypernatraemia (owing to sodium content of preparations)

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: penicillins

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Anaemia · candida infection · constipation · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · insomnia

► **Uncommon** Arthralgia · flushing · hypokalaemia · hypotension · myalgia

► **Rare or very rare** Epistaxis · stomatitis

► **Frequency not known** Eosinophilia · pancytopenia · pneumonia eosinophilic · renal failure · thrombocytosis

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Trace amount in milk, but appropriate to use.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Child under 12 years 78.75 mg/kg (max. 4.5 g) every 8 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

Child 12–18 years max. 4.5 g every 8 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 20–40 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; max. 4.5 g every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

● **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** False-positive urinary glucose (if tested for reducing substances).

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Displacement value may be significant when reconstituting injection, consult local guidelines. For intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution to a concentration of 15–90 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 30 minutes.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Dose expressed as a combination of piperacillin and tazobactam (both as sodium salts) in a ratio of 8:1.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: infusion

#### Powder for solution for injection

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Piperacillin with tazobactam (Non-proprietary)**

**Tazobactam (as Tazobactam sodium) 250 mg, Piperacillin (as Piperacillin sodium) 2 gram** Piperacillin 2g / Tazobactam 250mg powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £9.55 DT = £7.65 (Hospital only)

Piperacillin 2g / Tazobactam 250mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £7.85 DT = £7.65

► **Tazocin** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Tazobactam (as Tazobactam sodium) 250 mg, Piperacillin (as Piperacillin sodium) 2 gram** Tazocin 2.25g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £7.65 DT = £7.65

F 336

### Ticarcillin with clavulanic acid

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Infections due to *Pseudomonas* and *Proteus* spp.**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Preterm neonate (body-weight up to 2 kg): 80 mg/kg every 12 hours.

► Preterm neonate (body-weight 2 kg and above): 80 mg/kg every 8 hours; increased if necessary to 80 mg/kg every 6 hours, increased frequency used for more severe infections.

► Neonate: 80 mg/kg every 8 hours; increased if necessary to 80 mg/kg every 6 hours, increased frequency used for more severe infections.

► Child (body-weight up to 40 kg): 80 mg/kg every 8 hours; increased if necessary to 80 mg/kg every 6 hours, increased frequency used for more severe infections

► Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): 3.2 g every 6–8 hours; increased if necessary to 3.2 g every 4 hours, increased frequency used for more severe infections

● **CAUTIONS** High doses may lead to hypernatraemia (owing to sodium content of preparations)

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

► **Cholestatic jaundice** Cholestatic jaundice is possibly associated with clavulanic acid. An epidemiological study has shown that the risk of acute liver toxicity was about 6 times greater with co-amoxiclav (amoxicillin, clavulanic acid) than with amoxicillin. Cholestatic jaundice is more common in patients above the age of 65 years and in men; these reactions have only rarely been reported in children. Jaundice is usually self-limiting and very rarely fatal. The duration of treatment should be appropriate to the indication and should not usually exceed 14 days.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: clavulanic acid · penicillins

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Bullous dermatitis · eosinophilia · haemorrhage · hypokalaemia

● **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Trace amounts in milk, but appropriate to use.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Accumulation of electrolytes contained in preparation can occur in patients with renal failure.

**Dose adjustments** ▶ In neonates Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
 ▶ In children Use normal dose every 8 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; use half normal dose every 8 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; use half normal dose every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** False-positive urinary glucose (if tested for reducing substances).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Displacement value may be important, consult local guidelines. For intermittent infusion, dilute reconstituted solution further to a concentration of 16–32 mg/mL with glucose 5%; infuse over 30–40 minutes.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Dose is expressed as a combination of ticarcillin (as sodium salt) and clavulanic acid (as potassium salt) in a ratio of 15:1.

#### ● MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder for solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Potassium, sodium

#### ▶ **Timentin** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 200 mg, Ticarcillin (as Ticarcillin sodium) 3 gram** Timentin 3.2g powder for solution for infusion vials | 4 vial **[PoM]** £21.32

### ANTIBACTERIALS > PENICILLINS, BETA-LACTAMASE SENSITIVE

F 336

## Benzylpenicillin sodium (Penicillin G)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Mild to moderate susceptible infections | Throat infections | Otitis media | Cellulitis | Pneumonia**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 25 mg/kg every 12 hours; increased if necessary to 25 mg/kg every 8 hours, intravenous route recommended in neonates.

▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 25 mg/kg every 8 hours; increased if necessary to 50 mg/kg every 8 hours in severe infection, intravenous route recommended in neonates.

▶ Child: 25 mg/kg every 6 hours; increased if necessary to 50 mg/kg every 4–6 hours (max. per dose 2.4 g every 4 hours) in severe infection, intravenous route recommended in infants

**Endocarditis (in combination with other antibacterial if necessary)**

▶ BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

▶ Child: 25 mg/kg every 4 hours; increased if necessary to 50 mg/kg every 4 hours (max. per dose 2.4 g every 4 hours)

**Meningitis | Meningococcal disease**

▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 50 mg/kg every 12 hours.

▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 50 mg/kg every 8 hours.

▶ Child: 50 mg/kg every 4–6 hours (max. per dose 2.4 g every 4 hours)

### Suspected meningococcal disease (meningitis with non-blanching rash or meningococcal septicaemia) prior to urgent transfer to hospital

▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 300 mg, administer as single dose prior to urgent transfer to hospital so long as does not delay transfer
- ▶ Child 1–9 years: 600 mg, administer as single dose prior to urgent transfer to hospital so long as does not delay transfer
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 1.2 g, administer as single dose prior to urgent transfer to hospital so long as does not delay transfer

### Suspected bacterial meningitis without non-blanching rash where patient cannot be transferred to hospital urgently

▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 300 mg, administer as single dose prior to transfer to hospital
- ▶ Child 1–9 years: 600 mg, administer as single dose prior to transfer to hospital
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 1.2 g, administer as single dose prior to transfer to hospital

#### Neonatal sepsis

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 25 mg/kg every 12 hours; increased if necessary to 25 mg/kg every 8 hours, intravenous route recommended in neonates.

▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 25 mg/kg every 8 hours; increased if necessary to 50 mg/kg every 8 hours in severe infection, intravenous route recommended in neonates.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Intrathecal injection of benzylpenicillin is **not** recommended.

- **CAUTIONS** Accumulation of sodium from injection can occur with high doses
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: penicillins
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Common or very common** Fever · Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Neurotoxicity
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Coma
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Trace amounts in milk, but appropriate to use.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Accumulation of sodium from injection can occur in renal failure. High doses may cause neurotoxicity, including cerebral irritation, convulsions, or coma.

**Dose adjustments** Estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, use normal dose every 8–12 hours.

Estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> use normal dose every 12 hours.

- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** False-positive urinary glucose (if tested for reducing substances).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Intravenous route recommended in neonates and infants. For *intravenous infusion*, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 15–30 minutes. Longer administration time is particularly important when using doses of 50 mg/kg (or greater) to avoid CNS toxicity.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: infusion

#### **Powder for solution for injection**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

#### ▶ **Benzympenicillin sodium (Non-proprietary)**

**Benzympenicillin sodium 600 mg** Benzympenicillin 600mg powder for solution for injection vials | 2 vial [PoM] £5.46 DT = £5.46 | 25 vial [PoM] £68.25–£68.29

**Benzympenicillin sodium 1.2 gram** Benzympenicillin 1.2g powder for solution for injection vials | 25 vial [PoM] £92.01–£92.03 DT = £92.02

F 336

## Phenoxymethylpenicillin

(Penicillin V)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Oral infections | Tonsillitis | Otitis media | Erysipelas |**

#### **Cellulitis**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 62.5 mg 4 times a day; increased if necessary up to 12.5 mg/kg 4 times a day
- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 125 mg 4 times a day; increased if necessary up to 12.5 mg/kg 4 times a day
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 250 mg 4 times a day; increased if necessary up to 12.5 mg/kg 4 times a day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg 4 times a day; increased if necessary up to 1 g 4 times a day

#### **Prevention of recurrence of rheumatic fever**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–5 years: 125 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 6–17 years: 250 mg twice daily

#### **Prevention of secondary case of invasive group A streptococcal infection**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 12.5 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 62.5 mg) for 10 days.

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 62.5 mg every 6 hours for 10 days
- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 125 mg every 6 hours for 10 days
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 250 mg every 6 hours for 10 days
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 250–500 mg every 6 hours for 10 days

#### **Prevention of pneumococcal infection in asplenia or in patients with sickle-cell disease**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 62.5 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 1–4 years: 125 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 5–17 years: 250 mg twice daily

#### **Acute sinusitis**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 62.5 mg 4 times a day for 5 days
- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 125 mg 4 times a day for 5 days
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 250 mg 4 times a day for 5 days
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg 4 times a day for 5 days

- **UNLICENSED USE** [EvGr] Duration of treatment for acute sinusitis adheres to national guidelines. ⚠ See Sinusitis (acute) p. 697 for further information.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: penicillins

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Arthralgia · circulatory collapse · coagulation disorder · eosinophilia · exfoliative dermatitis · faeces soft · fever · increased risk of infection · neurotoxicity · oral disorders · paraesthesia

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Trace amounts in milk, but appropriate to use.

- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** False-positive urinary glucose (if tested for reducing substances).

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Penicillin V for bacterial infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/penicillin-v-for-bacterial-infections](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/penicillin-v-for-bacterial-infections)

Medicines for Children leaflet: Penicillin V for prevention of pneumococcal infection [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/penicillin-v-for-prevention-of-pneumococcal-infection](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/penicillin-v-for-prevention-of-pneumococcal-infection)

### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

#### **Dental practitioners' formulary**

Phenoxymethylpenicillin Tablets may be prescribed.

Phenoxymethylpenicillin Oral Solution may be prescribed.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Oral solution**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 23

#### ▶ **Phenoxymethylpenicillin (Non-proprietary)**

**Phenoxymethylpenicillin (as Phenoxymethylpenicillin potassium)**

**25 mg per 1 ml** Phenoxymethylpenicillin 125mg/5ml oral solution |

100 ml [PoM] £34.00 DT = £4.97

Phenoxymethylpenicillin 125mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £25.00 DT = £8.10

**Phenoxymethylpenicillin (as Phenoxymethylpenicillin potassium)**

**50 mg per 1 ml** Phenoxymethylpenicillin 250mg/5ml oral solution |

100 ml [PoM] £35.00 DT = £7.34

Phenoxymethylpenicillin 250mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £35.00 DT = £7.99

#### **Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 23

#### ▶ **Phenoxymethylpenicillin (Non-proprietary)**

**Phenoxymethylpenicillin (as Phenoxymethylpenicillin potassium)**

**250 mg** Phenoxymethylpenicillin 250mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]

£5.00 DT = £0.71

## ANTIBACTERIALS > PENICILLINS, BROAD-SPECTRUM

F 336

## Amoxicillin

(Amoxycillin)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Susceptible infections (including urinary-tract infections, otitis media, sinusitis, uncomplicated community acquired pneumonia, salmonellosis, oral infections)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 30 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 125 mg).

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 125 mg 3 times a day; increased if necessary up to 30 mg/kg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 1–4 years: 250 mg 3 times a day; increased if necessary up to 30 mg/kg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 500 mg 3 times a day; increased if necessary up to 30 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 1 g)
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg 3 times a day; increased if necessary up to 1 g 3 times a day, use increased dose in severe infections

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 30 mg/kg every 12 hours, increased if necessary to 60 mg/kg every 12 hours, increased dose used in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia or salmonellosis.

- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 30 mg/kg every 8 hours, increased if necessary to 60 mg/kg every 8 hours, increased dose used in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia or salmonellosis.

continued →

- ▶ Child: 20–30 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 500 mg), increased if necessary to 40–60 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 1 g every 8 hours), increased dose used in severe infection

#### **Cystic fibrosis (treatment of asymptomatic *Haemophilus influenzae* carriage or mild exacerbation)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 30 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 125 mg).
- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 125 mg 3 times a day; increased if necessary up to 30 mg/kg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 1–4 years: 250 mg 3 times a day; increased if necessary up to 30 mg/kg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 500 mg 3 times a day; increased if necessary up to 30 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 1 g)
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg 3 times a day; increased if necessary up to 1 g 3 times a day, use increased dose in severe infections

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 30 mg/kg every 12 hours, increased if necessary to 60 mg/kg every 12 hours, increased dose used in severe infection.

- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 30 mg/kg every 8 hours, increased if necessary to 60 mg/kg every 8 hours, increased dose used in severe infection.

- ▶ Child: 20–30 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 500 mg), increased if necessary to 40–60 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 1 g every 8 hours), increased dose used in severe infection

#### **Lyme disease (under expert supervision)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 30 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 125 mg 3 times a day) usual duration 2–4 weeks.

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 125 mg 3 times a day; increased if necessary up to 30 mg/kg 3 times a day usual duration 2–4 weeks
- ▶ Child 1–4 years: 250 mg 3 times a day; increased if necessary up to 30 mg/kg 3 times a day usual duration 2–4 weeks
- ▶ Child 5–17 years: 500 mg 3 times a day for 14–21 days (for 28 days in Lyme arthritis)

#### **Anthrax (treatment and post-exposure prophylaxis)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 20 kg): 80 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses
- ▶ Child (body-weight 20 kg and above): 500 mg 3 times a day

#### **Listerial meningitis (in combination with another antibiotic)**

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 50–100 mg/kg every 12 hours.
- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 50–100 mg/kg every 8 hours.
- ▶ Child: 50 mg/kg every 4–6 hours (max. per dose 2 g every 4 hours)

#### **Group B streptococcal infection | Enterococcal endocarditis (in combination with another antibiotic)**

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 50 mg/kg every 12 hours.
- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 50 mg/kg every 8 hours.
- ▶ Child: 50 mg/kg every 4–6 hours (max. per dose 2 g every 4 hours)

#### **Prevention of pneumococcal infection in asplenia or in patients with sickle-cell disease—if cover also needed for *Haemophilus influenzae***

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–4 years: 125 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 250 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg twice daily

#### ***Helicobacter pylori* eradication in combination with clarithromycin and omeprazole**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 250 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 500 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1 g twice daily

#### ***Helicobacter pylori* eradication in combination with metronidazole and omeprazole**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 125 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 250 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 mg 3 times a day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Amoxicillin doses in BNF Publications may differ from those in product literature.

#### ● **CAUTIONS**

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Acute lymphocytic leukaemia (increased risk of erythematous rashes) · chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (increased risk of erythematous rashes) · cytomegalovirus infection (increased risk of erythematous rashes) · glandular fever (erythematous rashes common) · maintain adequate hydration with high doses (particularly during parenteral therapy)

#### **SPECIFIC CAUTIONS**

- ▶ With intravenous use Accumulation of sodium can occur with high parenteral doses

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: penicillins

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

##### **GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Acute generalised exanthematous pustulosis (AGEP) · colitis haemorrhagic · crystalluria · dizziness · hyperkinesia · hypersensitivity vasculitis · mucocutaneous candidiasis

- ▶ **Frequency not known** Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction

##### **SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Rare or very rare**
- ▶ With oral use Black hairy tongue
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Trace amount in milk, but appropriate to use.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Risk of crystalluria with high doses (particularly during parenteral therapy).
- ▶ With intravenous use Accumulation of sodium from injection can occur in patients with renal failure.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose in severe impairment; rashes more common.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Displacement value may be significant when reconstituting injection, consult local guidelines. Dilute intravenous injection to a concentration of 50 mg/mL (100 mg/mL for neonates). May be further diluted with Glucose 5% or Glucose 10% or Sodium chloride 0.9% or 0.45% for intravenous infusion. Give intravenous infusion over 30 minutes when using doses over 30 mg/kg.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations and sachets may include peach, strawberry, or lemon.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for Amoxicillin (Amoxil®) paediatric suspension (use of pipette).

Medicines for Children leaflet: Amoxicillin for bacterial infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/amoxicillin-bacterial-infections-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/amoxicillin-bacterial-infections-0)

## ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

### Dental practitioners' formulary

Amoxicillin capsules may be prescribed. Amoxicillin sachets may be prescribed as Amoxicillin Oral Powder. Amoxicillin Oral Suspension may be prescribed.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Powder for solution for injection

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

#### ► Amoxicillin (Non-proprietary)

- Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin sodium) 250 mg** Amoxicillin 250mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £4.50–£4.80
- Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin sodium) 500 mg** Amoxicillin 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £9.60–£12.00 DT = £5.48
- Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin sodium) 1 gram** Amoxicillin 1g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1.92 | 10 vial [PoM] £16.50 DT = £10.96
- **Amoxil** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)
- Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin sodium) 500 mg** Amoxil 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £5.48 DT = £5.48
- Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin sodium) 1 gram** Amoxil 1g powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £10.96 DT = £10.96

### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sucrose

#### ► Amoxicillin (Non-proprietary)

- Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 25 mg per 1 ml** Amoxicillin 125mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £25.00 DT = £0.99
- Amoxicillin 125mg/5ml oral suspension** | 100 ml [PoM] £25.00 DT = £1.17
- Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 50 mg per 1 ml** Amoxicillin 250mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £35.00 DT = £1.24
- Amoxicillin 250mg/5ml oral suspension** | 100 ml [PoM] £35.00 DT = £1.35
- **Amoxil** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)
- Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 100 mg per 1 ml** Amoxil 125mg/1.25ml paediatric oral suspension | 20 ml [PoM] £3.18 DT = £3.18

### Powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 13

#### ► Amoxicillin (Non-proprietary)

- Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 3 gram** Amoxicillin 3g oral powder sachets sugar free sugar-free | 2 sachet [PoM] £15.00 DT = £9.98

### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

#### ► Amoxicillin (Non-proprietary)

- Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 250 mg** Amoxicillin 250mg capsules | 15 capsule [PoM] £5.00 DT = £0.43 | 21 capsule [PoM] £8.99 DT = £0.60 | 500 capsule [PoM] £14.29–£120.00
- Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 500 mg** Amoxicillin 500mg capsules | 15 capsule [PoM] £7.50 DT = £0.56 | 21 capsule [PoM] £15.00 DT = £0.78 | 100 capsule [PoM] £3.71–£75.00
- **Amoxil** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)
- Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 250 mg** Amoxil 250mg capsules | 21 capsule [PoM] £0.92 DT = £0.60
- Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 500 mg** Amoxil 500mg capsules | 21 capsule [PoM] £0.89 DT = £0.78

Combinations available: **Co-amoxiclav**, p. 343

## Ampicillin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Susceptible infections (including bronchitis, urinary-tract infections, otitis media, sinusitis, uncomplicated community-acquired pneumonia, salmonellosis)**

► BY MOUTH

- Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 30 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 125 mg).
- Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 30 mg/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 125 mg).

- Child 1–11 months: 125 mg 4 times a day; increased if necessary up to 30 mg/kg 4 times a day
  - Child 1–4 years: 250 mg 4 times a day; increased if necessary up to 30 mg/kg 4 times a day
  - Child 5–11 years: 500 mg 4 times a day; increased if necessary up to 30 mg/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 1 g)
  - Child 12–17 years: 500 mg 4 times a day; increased if necessary to 1 g 4 times a day, use increased dose in severe infection
- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate up to 7 days: 30 mg/kg every 12 hours, increased if necessary to 60 mg/kg every 12 hours, increased dose used in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia or salmonellosis.

- Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 30 mg/kg every 8 hours, increased if necessary to 60 mg/kg every 8 hours, increased dose used in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia or salmonellosis.

- Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 30 mg/kg every 6 hours, increased if necessary to 60 mg/kg every 6 hours, increased dose used in severe infection, community-acquired pneumonia or salmonellosis.

- Child: 25 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 500 mg every 6 hours), increased if necessary to 50 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 1 g every 6 hours), increased dose used in severe infection

**Group B streptococcal infection | Enterococcal endocarditis (in combination with another antibacterial)**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate up to 7 days: 50 mg/kg every 12 hours.

- Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 50 mg/kg every 8 hours.

- Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 50 mg/kg every 6 hours.

- Child: 50 mg/kg every 4–6 hours (max. per dose 2 g every 4 hours)

### Listerial meningitis

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate up to 7 days: 100 mg/kg every 12 hours.

- Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 100 mg/kg every 8 hours.

- Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 100 mg/kg every 6 hours.

- Child: 50 mg/kg every 4–6 hours (max. per dose 2 g every 4 hours)

## ● CAUTIONS

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Acute lymphocytic leukaemia (increased risk of erythematous rashes) • chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (increased risk of erythematous rashes) • cytomegalovirus infection (increased risk of



erythematous rashes) · glandular fever (erythematous rashes common)

#### SPECIFIC CAUTIONS

- ▶ With intravenous use Accumulation of electrolytes contained in parenteral preparations can occur with high doses
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: penicillins
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Colitis haemorrhagic · purpura
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Trace amounts in milk, but appropriate to use.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - ▶ With intravenous use Accumulation of electrolytes contained in parenteral preparations can occur in patients with renal failure.
- Dose adjustments** If estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> reduce dose or frequency; rashes more common.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - ▶ With oral use Administer at least 30 minutes before food.
  - ▶ With intravenous use Displacement value may be significant when reconstituting injection, consult local guidelines. Dilute intravenous injection to a concentration of 50–100 mg/mL. May be further diluted with glucose 5% or 10% or sodium chloride 0.9% or 0.45% for infusion. Give over 30 minutes when using doses of greater than 50 mg/kg to avoid CNS toxicity including convulsions.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Ampicillin for bacterial infection [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ampicillin-bacterial-infection](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ampicillin-bacterial-infection)

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 23

##### ▶ Ampicillin (Non-proprietary)

**Ampicillin 25 mg per 1 mL** Ampicillin 125mg/5mL oral suspension | 100 mL [PoM] £29.86 DT = £29.86

**Ampicillin 50 mg per 1 mL** Ampicillin 250mg/5mL oral suspension | 100 mL [PoM] £38.86 DT = £38.86

##### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 23

##### ▶ Ampicillin (Non-proprietary)

**Ampicillin 250 mg** Ampicillin 250mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £20.50 DT = £20.50

**Ampicillin 500 mg** Ampicillin 500mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £40.30 DT = £40.30

##### Powder for solution for injection

##### ▶ Ampicillin (Non-proprietary)

**Ampicillin (as Ampicillin sodium) 500 mg** Ampicillin 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £78.30 DT = £78.30

£ 336

## Co-fluampicil

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Mixed infections involving beta-lactamase-producing staphylococci**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
  - ▶ Child 1 month–9 years: 125/125 mg every 6 hours
  - ▶ Child 10–17 years: 250/250 mg every 6 hours
- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
  - ▶ Child 1 month–1 year: 62.5/62.5 mg every 6 hours
  - ▶ Child 2–9 years: 125/125 mg every 6 hours
  - ▶ Child 10–17 years: 250/250 mg every 6 hours

#### Severe mixed infections involving beta-lactamase-producing staphylococci

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–9 years: 250/250 mg every 6 hours
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 500/500 mg every 6 hours

##### ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child 1 month–1 year: 125/125 mg every 6 hours
- ▶ Child 2–9 years: 250/250 mg every 6 hours
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 500/500 mg every 6 hours

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### HEPATIC DISORDERS

Cholestatic jaundice and hepatitis may occur very rarely, up to two months after treatment with flucloxacillin has been stopped. Administration for more than 2 weeks and increasing age are risk factors. Healthcare professionals are reminded that:

- flucloxacillin should not be used in patients with a history of hepatic dysfunction associated with flucloxacillin;
- flucloxacillin should be used with caution in patients with hepatic impairment;
- careful enquiry should be made about hypersensitivity reactions to beta-lactam antibacterials.

#### ● CAUTIONS

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Acute lymphocytic leukaemia (increased risk of erythematous rashes) · chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (increased risk of erythematous rashes) · cytomegalovirus infection (increased risk of erythematous rashes) · glandular fever (erythematous rashes common)

#### SPECIFIC CAUTIONS

- ▶ With intravenous use Accumulation of electrolytes contained in parenteral preparations can occur with high doses · risk of kernicterus in jaundiced neonates when high doses given parenterally
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: penicillins
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Arthralgia · bronchospasm · coma · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · eosinophilia · erythema nodosum · gastrointestinal disorder · hallucination · Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction · myalgia · purpura non-thrombocytopenic · vasculitis
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Trace amount in milk, but appropriate to use.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - ▶ With intravenous use Accumulation of electrolytes contained in parenteral preparations can occur in patients with renal failure.
- Dose adjustments** Reduce dose or frequency if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; rashes more common.
- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** False-positive urinary glucose (if tested for reducing substances).
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Dose expressed as a combination of equal parts by mass of flucloxacillin and ampicillin.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 22

##### ▶ Co-fluampicil (Non-proprietary)

**Ampicillin (as Ampicillin trihydrate) 25 mg per 1 mL, Flucloxacillin (as Flucloxacillin magnesium) 25 mg per 1 mL** Co-fluampicil 125mg/125mg/5mL oral suspension | 100 mL [PoM] £23.93 DT = £23.93

**Powder for solution for injection**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Co-fluampicil (Non-proprietary)**

Ampicillin (as Ampicillin sodium) 250 mg, Flucloxacillin (as Flucloxacillin sodium) 250 mg Co-fluampicil 250mg/250mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM](#) £13.33

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 22

► **Co-fluampicil (Non-proprietary)**

Ampicillin (as Ampicillin trihydrate) 250 mg, Flucloxacillin (as Flucloxacillin sodium) 250 mg Co-fluampicil 250mg/250mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM](#) £2.27 DT = £1.97 | 100 capsule [PoM](#) £8.11

## ANTIBACTERIALS > PENICILLINS, BROAD-SPECTRUM WITH BETA- LACTAMASE INHIBITOR

F 336

**Co-amoxiclav**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Infections due to beta-lactamase-producing strains (where amoxicillin alone not appropriate), including respiratory tract infections, bone and joint infections, genito-urinary and abdominal infections, cellulitis and animal bites**

► **BY MOUTH USING TABLETS**

- Child 12-17 years: 250/125 mg every 8 hours; increased to 500/125 mg every 8 hours, increased dose used for severe infection

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

- Neonate: 30 mg/kg every 12 hours.

- Child 1-2 months: 30 mg/kg every 12 hours
- Child 3 months-17 years: 30 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 1.2 g every 8 hours)

**Infections due to beta-lactamase-producing strains (where amoxicillin alone not appropriate) including respiratory-tract infections, bone and joint infections, genito-urinary and abdominal infections, cellulitis, animal bites (doses for 125/31 suspension)**

► **BY MOUTH USING ORAL SUSPENSION**

- Neonate: 0.25 mL/kilogram 3 times a day.

- Child 1-11 months: 0.25 mL/kilogram 3 times a day, dose doubled in severe infection
- Child 1-5 years: 0.25 mL/kilogram 3 times a day, alternatively 5 mL 3 times a day, dose doubled in severe infection

**Infections due to beta-lactamase-producing strains (where amoxicillin alone not appropriate) including respiratory-tract infections, bone and joint infections, genito-urinary and abdominal infections, cellulitis, animal bites (doses for 250/62 suspension)**

► **BY MOUTH USING ORAL SUSPENSION**

- Child 6-11 years: 0.15 mL/kilogram 3 times a day, alternatively 5 mL 3 times a day, dose doubled in severe infection

**Infections due to beta-lactamase-producing strains (where amoxicillin alone not appropriate) including respiratory-tract infections, bone and joint infections, genito-urinary and abdominal infections, cellulitis, animal bites (doses for 400/57 suspension)**

► **BY MOUTH USING ORAL SUSPENSION**

- Child 2 months-1 year: 0.15 mL/kilogram twice daily, doubled in severe infection
- Child 2-6 years (body-weight 13-21 kg): 2.5 mL twice daily, doubled in severe infection
- Child 7-12 years (body-weight 22-40 kg): 5 mL twice daily, doubled in severe infection

- Child 12-17 years (body-weight 41 kg and above): 10 mL twice daily; increased if necessary to 10 mL 3 times a day, increased frequency to be used in severe infection

### Severe dental infection with spreading cellulitis | Dental infection not responding to first-line antibacterial

► **BY MOUTH USING TABLETS**

- Child 12-17 years: 250/125 mg every 8 hours for 5 days

**Acute sinusitis (doses for 125/31 suspension)**► **BY MOUTH USING ORAL SUSPENSION**

- Child 1-11 months: 0.25 mL/kilogram 3 times a day for 5 days
- Child 1-5 years: 5 mL 3 times a day for 5 days, alternatively 0.25 mL/kilogram 3 times a day for 5 days

**Acute sinusitis (doses for 250/62 suspension)**► **BY MOUTH USING ORAL SUSPENSION**

- Child 6-11 years: 5 mL 3 times a day for 5 days, alternatively 0.15 mL/kilogram 3 times a day for 5 days

**Acute sinusitis**► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 12-17 years: 250/125 mg 3 times a day for 5 days, alternatively 500/125 mg 3 times a day for 5 days

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- Doses are expressed as co-amoxiclav.

- A mixture of amoxicillin (as the trihydrate or as the sodium salt) and clavulanic acid (as potassium clavulanate); the proportions are expressed in the form x/y where x and y are the strengths in milligrams of amoxicillin and clavulanic acid respectively.

- **UNLICENSED USE** [Evg](#) Doses and duration of treatment for acute sinusitis in BNF Publications differ from product literature and adhere to national guidelines. [A](#) See Sinusitis (acute) p. 697 for further information.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of co-amoxiclav-associated jaundice or hepatic dysfunction · history of penicillin-associated jaundice or hepatic dysfunction

● **CAUTIONS**

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Acute lymphocytic leukaemia (increased risk of erythematous rashes) · chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (increased risk of erythematous rashes) · cytomegalovirus infection (increased risk of erythematous rashes) · glandular fever (erythematous rashes common) · maintain adequate hydration with high doses (particularly during parental therapy)

**SPECIFIC CAUTIONS**

- With intravenous use accumulation of electrolytes contained in parenteral preparations can occur with high doses

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- Cholestatic jaundice Cholestatic jaundice can occur either during or shortly after the use of co-amoxiclav. An epidemiological study has shown that the risk of acute liver toxicity was about 6 times greater with co-amoxiclav than with amoxicillin. Cholestatic jaundice is more common in patients above the age of 65 years and in men; these reactions have only rarely been reported in children. Jaundice is usually self-limiting and very rarely fatal. The duration of treatment should be appropriate to the indication and should not usually exceed 14 days.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: clavulanic acid · penicillins

● **SIDE-EFFECTS****GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Increased risk of infection
- **Uncommon** Dizziness · dyspepsia · headache
- **Frequency not known** Acute generalised exanthematous pustulosis (AGEP) · colitis haemorrhagic · crystalluria · hypersensitivity vasculitis · meningitis aseptic

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Frequency not known**
- With oral use Akathisia · black hairy tongue

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Trace amount in milk, but appropriate to use.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Monitoring** Monitor liver function in liver disease.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Risk of crystalluria with high doses (particularly during parenteral therapy). Accumulation of electrolytes contained in parenteral preparations can occur in patients with renal failure.  
**Dose adjustments** ▶ With oral use *Co-amoxiclav* 125/31 suspension, 250/62 suspension, 250/125 tablets, or 500/125 tablets: use normal dose every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>. Use the normal dose recommended for mild or moderate infections every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
*Co-amoxiclav* 400/57 suspension: avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
▶ With intravenous use *Co-amoxiclav injection*: use normal initial dose and then use half normal dose every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; use normal initial dose and then use half normal dose every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute reconstituted solution to a concentration of 10 mg/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give intermittently over 30–40 minutes. For *intravenous injection*, administer over 3–4 minutes.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Doses are expressed as co-amoxiclav: a mixture of amoxicillin (as the trihydrate or as the sodium salt) and clavulanic acid (as potassium clavulanate); the proportions are expressed in the form x/y where x and y are the strengths in milligrams of amoxicillin and clavulanic acid respectively.  
▶ With oral use Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include raspberry and orange.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Co-amoxiclav for bacterial infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/co-amoxiclav-bacterial-infections-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/co-amoxiclav-bacterial-infections-0)
- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**  
**Dental practitioners' formulary**  
Co-amoxiclav 250/125 Tablets may be prescribed. Co-amoxiclav 125/31 Suspension may be prescribed. Co-amoxiclav 250/62 Suspension may be prescribed.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: infusion

#### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

#### ▶ Co-amoxiclav (Non-proprietary)

**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 6.25 mg per 1 mL, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 25 mg per 1 mL** Co-amoxiclav 125mg/31mg/5mL oral suspension | 100 mL [PoM] £5.00 DT = £5.00

Co-amoxiclav 125mg/31mg/5mL oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 100 mL [PoM] £1.95 DT = £1.95

**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 12.5 mg per 1 mL, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 50 mg per 1 mL** Co-amoxiclav 250mg/62mg/5mL oral suspension | 100 mL [PoM] £5.00 DT = £5.00

Co-amoxiclav 250mg/62mg/5mL oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 100 mL [PoM] £1.68 DT = £1.51

**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 11.4 mg per 1 mL, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 80 mg per 1 mL** Co-amoxiclav 400mg/57mg/5mL oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 35 mL [PoM] £4.13 DT = £4.13 sugar-free | 70 mL [PoM] £6.97 DT = £5.79

- ▶ **Augmentin** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 6.25 mg per 1 mL, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 25 mg per 1 mL** Augmentin 125/31 SF oral suspension sugar-free | 100 mL [PoM] £3.54 DT = £1.95
- Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 12.5 mg per 1 mL, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 50 mg per 1 mL** Augmentin 250/62 SF oral suspension sugar-free | 100 mL [PoM] £3.60 DT = £1.51
- ▶ **Augmentin-Duo** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 11.4 mg per 1 mL, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 80 mg per 1 mL** Augmentin-Duo 400/57 oral suspension sugar-free | 35 mL [PoM] £4.13 DT = £4.13 sugar-free | 70 mL [PoM] £5.79 DT = £5.79

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

#### ▶ Co-amoxiclav (Non-proprietary)

**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 125 mg, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 250 mg** Co-amoxiclav 250mg/125mg tablets | 21 tablet [PoM] £6.00 DT = £1.67

**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 125 mg, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 500 mg** Co-amoxiclav 500mg/125mg tablets | 21 tablet [PoM] £15.00 DT = £1.84

**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 125 mg, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 875 mg** Co-amoxiclav 875mg/125mg tablets | 14 tablet [PoM] £18.00 DT = £1.80

#### ▶ Augmentin (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 125 mg, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 250 mg** Augmentin 375mg tablets | 21 tablet [PoM] £5.03 DT = £1.67

**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 125 mg, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin trihydrate) 500 mg** Augmentin 625mg tablets | 21 tablet [PoM] £9.60 DT = £1.84

#### Powder for solution for injection

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Potassium, sodium

#### ▶ Co-amoxiclav (Non-proprietary)

**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 100 mg, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin sodium) 500 mg** Co-amoxiclav 500mg/100mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £13.50–£14.90

**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 200 mg, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin sodium) 1000 mg** Co-amoxiclav 1000mg/200mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £27.50–£29.70

#### ▶ Augmentin Intravenous (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 100 mg, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin sodium) 500 mg** Augmentin Intravenous 600mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £10.60

**Clavulanic acid (as Potassium clavulanate) 200 mg, Amoxicillin (as Amoxicillin sodium) 1000 mg** Augmentin Intravenous 1.2g powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £10.60

## ANTIBACTERIALS > PENICILLINS, MECILLINAM-TYPE

F 336

### Pivmecillinam hydrochloride

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Acute uncomplicated cystitis

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): Initially 400 mg for 1 dose, then 200 mg every 8 hours for 3 days

##### Chronic or recurrent bacteriuria

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): 400 mg every 6–8 hours

##### Urinary-tract infections

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 40 kg): 5–10 mg/kg every 6 hours, alternatively 20–40 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 3 months.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Carnitine deficiency · gastro-intestinal obstruction · infants under 3 months · oesophageal strictures
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: penicillins
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Vulvovaginal fungal infection
  - **Uncommon** Dizziness · fatigue · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · headache · hepatic function abnormal · oral ulceration · vertigo
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful, but manufacturer advises avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Trace amount in milk, but appropriate to use.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Liver and renal function tests required in long-term use.
- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** False-positive urinary glucose (if tested for reducing substances).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets should be swallowed whole with plenty of fluid during meals while sitting or standing.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised on administration of pivmecillinam hydrochloride tablets (posture).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 21, 27

#### ► Pivmecillinam hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Pivmecillinam hydrochloride 200 mg** Pivmecillinam 200mg tablets | 10 tablet (PoM) £5.40 DT = £5.40

#### ► Selexid (LEO Pharma)

**Pivmecillinam hydrochloride 200 mg** Selexid 200mg tablets | 10 tablet (PoM) £5.40 DT = £5.40 | 18 tablet (PoM) £9.72

## ANTIBACTERIALS > PENICILLINS, PENICILLINASE-RESISTANT

F 336

### Flucloxacillin

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Infections due to beta-lactamase-producing staphylococci including otitis externa | Adjunct in pneumonia | Adjunct in impetigo | Adjunct in cellulitis**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate up to 7 days: 25 mg/kg twice daily.

► Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 25 mg/kg 3 times a day.

► Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 25 mg/kg 4 times a day.

► Child 1 month–1 year: 62.5–125 mg 4 times a day

► Child 2–9 years: 125–250 mg 4 times a day

► Child 10–17 years: 250–500 mg 4 times a day

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Child: 12.5–25 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 500 mg every 6 hours)

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate up to 7 days: 25 mg/kg every 12 hours.

► Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 25 mg/kg every 8 hours.

► Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 25 mg/kg every 6 hours.

► Child: 12.5–25 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 1 g every 6 hours)

**Severe infections due to beta-lactamase-producing staphylococci including otitis externa | Adjunct in pneumonia (severe infection) | Adjunct in impetigo (severe infection) | Adjunct in cellulitis (severe infection)**

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate up to 7 days: 50 mg/kg every 12 hours.

► Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 50 mg/kg every 8 hours.

► Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 50 mg/kg every 6 hours.

► Child: 25–50 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 2 g every 6 hours)

**Endocarditis (in combination with other antibacterial if necessary)**

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: 50 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 2 g every 6 hours)

#### **Osteomyelitis**

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate up to 7 days: 50–100 mg/kg every 12 hours.

► Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 50–100 mg/kg every 8 hours.

► Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 50–100 mg/kg every 6 hours.

► Child: 50 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 2 g every 6 hours)

#### **Cerebral abscess | Staphylococcal meningitis**

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate up to 7 days: 50–100 mg/kg every 12 hours.

► Neonate 7 days to 20 days: 50–100 mg/kg every 8 hours.

► Neonate 21 days to 28 days: 50–100 mg/kg every 6 hours.

► Child: 50 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 2 g every 6 hours)

#### **Staphylococcal lung infection in cystic fibrosis**

► BY MOUTH

► Child: 25 mg/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 1 g), alternatively 100 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses; maximum 4 g per day

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: 50 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 2 g every 6 hours)

#### **Prevention of *Staphylococcus aureus* lung infection in cystic fibrosis—primary prevention**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 125 mg twice daily.

► Child 1 month–3 years: 125 mg twice daily

#### **Prevention of *Staphylococcus aureus* lung infection in cystic fibrosis—secondary prevention**

► BY MOUTH

► Child: 50 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 1 g twice daily)

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### HEPATIC DISORDERS

Cholestatic jaundice and hepatitis may occur very rarely, up to two months after treatment with flucloxacillin has been stopped. Administration for more than 2 weeks and increasing age are risk factors. Healthcare professionals are reminded that:

- flucloxacillin should not be used in patients with a history of hepatic dysfunction associated with flucloxacillin
- flucloxacillin should be used with caution in patients with hepatic impairment
- careful enquiry should be made about hypersensitivity reactions to beta-lactam antibacterials

#### • CAUTIONS

- ▶ With intravenous use Accumulation of electrolytes can occur with high doses - risk of kernicterus in jaundiced neonates when high doses given parenterally

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: penicillins

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Rare or very rare Arthralgia · fever

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common
  - ▶ With oral use Gastrointestinal disorder
- ▶ Uncommon
  - ▶ With oral use Purpura
- ▶ Rare or very rare
  - ▶ With oral use Eosinophilia · myalgia
- ▶ Frequency not known
  - ▶ With parenteral use Acute generalised exanthematous pustulosis (AGEP) · bronchospasm · bullous pemphigoid · coma · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · erythema nodosum · hallucination · Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction · nephropathy · neurotoxicity · oral candidiasis · platelet dysfunction · purpura non-thrombocytopenic · vasculitis
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Trace amounts in milk, but appropriate to use.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

#### • RENAL IMPAIRMENT

- ▶ With intravenous use Accumulation of electrolytes can occur in patients with renal failure.

**Dose adjustments** Use normal dose every 8 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** False-positive urinary glucose (if tested for reducing substances).

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give intermittently over 30–60 minutes.

#### • PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Flucloxacillin for bacterial infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/flucloxacillin-for-bacterial-infections](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/flucloxacillin-for-bacterial-infections)

#### • MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: infusion

##### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 23

##### ▶ Flucloxacillin (Non-proprietary)

**Flucloxacillin (as Flucloxacillin sodium) 25 mg per**

1 mL Flucloxacillin 125mg/5ml oral solution | 100 mL [PoM] £20.99 DT = £6.93

Flucloxacillin 125mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 100 mL [PoM] £30.08 DT = £23.26

**Flucloxacillin (as Flucloxacillin sodium) 50 mg per**

1 mL Flucloxacillin 250mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 100 mL [PoM] £36.27 DT = £27.88

Flucloxacillin 250mg/5ml oral solution | 100 mL [PoM] £30.22 DT = £28.44

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 23

##### ▶ Flucloxacillin (Non-proprietary)

**Flucloxacillin (as Flucloxacillin sodium) 250 mg** Flucloxacillin 250mg capsules | 20 capsule [PoM] £3.58 | 28 capsule [PoM] £5.00 DT = £1.11 | 100 capsule [PoM] £3.96–£17.80

**Flucloxacillin (as Flucloxacillin sodium) 500 mg** Flucloxacillin 500mg capsules | 20 capsule [PoM] £7.50 | 28 capsule [PoM] £10.50 DT = £1.94 | 100 capsule [PoM] £6.93–£37.50

#### ▶ Powder for solution for injection

##### ▶ Flucloxacillin (Non-proprietary)

**Flucloxacillin (as Flucloxacillin sodium) 250 mg** Flucloxacillin 250mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £8.60–£12.25

**Flucloxacillin (as Flucloxacillin sodium) 500 mg** Flucloxacillin 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £17.20–£24.50

**Flucloxacillin (as Flucloxacillin sodium) 1 gram** Flucloxacillin 1g powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £34.50–£49.00

**Flucloxacillin (as Flucloxacillin sodium) 2 gram** Flucloxacillin 2g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £6.00

Combinations available: *Co-fluampicil*, p. 342

## ANTIBACTERIALS > POLYMYXINS

### Colistimethate sodium

18-Dec-2016

#### (Colistin sulfomethate sodium)

- **DRUG ACTION** The polymyxin antibiotic, colistimethate sodium (colistin sulfomethate sodium), is active against Gram-negative organisms including *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Acinetobacter baumannii*, and *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. It is not absorbed by mouth and thus needs to be given by injection for a systemic effect.

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Gram-negative infections resistant to other antibacterials, including those caused by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Acinetobacter baumannii* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae***

- ▶ BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 60 kg): 50 000–75 000 units/kg daily in 3 divided doses, to be administered into a totally implantable venous access device when giving via slow intravenous injection
- ▶ Child (body-weight 60 kg and above): 1–2 million units 3 times a day, to be administered into a totally implantable venous access device when giving via slow intravenous injection; maximum 6 million units per day

#### Adjunct to standard antibacterial therapy for

***Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection in cystic fibrosis**

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION

- ▶ Child 1 month–1 year: 0.5–1 million units twice daily, adjusted according to response, increased to 1 million units 3 times daily for subsequent respiratory isolates of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 1–2 million units twice daily, adjusted according to response, increased to 2 million units 3 times daily for subsequent respiratory isolates of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*
- ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER
- ▶ Child 6–17 years: 1.66 million units twice daily



**PROMIXIN® INJECTION**

**Gram-negative infections resistant to other antibacterials, including those caused by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Acinetobacter baumannii*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae***

- BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child (body-weight up to 40 kg): 75 000–150 000 units/kg daily in 3 divided doses, to be administered into a totally implantable venous access device when giving via slow intravenous injection
- Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): 9 million units daily in 2–3 divided doses, to be administered into a totally implantable venous access device when giving via slow intravenous injection

**PROMIXIN® NEBULISER SOLUTION**

**Management of chronic pulmonary infections due to *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in patients with cystic fibrosis**

- BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION
- Child 1 month–1 year: 0.5–1 million units twice daily, for specific advice on administration using nebulisers—consult product literature; maximum 2 million units per day
- Child 2–17 years: 1–2 million units 2–3 times a day, for specific advice on administration using nebulisers—consult product literature; maximum 6 million units per day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Myasthenia gravis

- **CAUTIONS**

- When used by inhalation Severe haemoptysis—risk of further haemorrhage

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: colistimethate

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common**

- When used by inhalation Arthralgia · asthenia · asthma · balance impaired · chest discomfort · cough · dysphonia · dyspnoea · fever · haemorrhage · headache · lower respiratory tract infection · nausea · respiratory disorders · taste altered · throat complaints · tinnitus · vomiting

- **Uncommon**

- When used by inhalation Anxiety · appetite decreased · diarrhoea · drowsiness · ear congestion · flatulence · oral disorders · proteinuria · seizure · sputum purulent · thirst · weight change

- **Rare or very rare**

- With parenteral use Confusion · nephrotoxicity · presyncope · psychosis · speech slurred · visual impairment

- **Frequency not known**

- With parenteral use Apnoea · neurological effects · neurotoxicity · renal disorder · sensory disorder

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Neurotoxicity and nephrotoxicity are dose-related.

- **PREGNANCY**

- When used by inhalation Clinical use suggests probably safe.
- With intravenous use Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but poorly absorbed from gut; manufacturers advise avoid (or use only if potential benefit outweighs risk).

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** ► With intravenous use Reduce dose.  
**Monitoring** ► With intravenous use In renal impairment, monitor plasma colistimethate sodium concentration during parenteral treatment—consult product literature. Recommended 'peak' plasma colistimethate sodium concentration (approx. 1 hour after intravenous injection or infusion) 5–15 mg/litre; pre-dose ('trough') concentration 2–6 mg/litre.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- With intravenous use Monitor renal function.
- When used by inhalation Measure lung function before and after initial dose of colistimethate sodium and monitor for bronchospasm; if bronchospasm occurs in a patient not using a bronchodilator, repeat test using a bronchodilator before the dose of colistimethate sodium.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- When used by inhalation Other inhaled drugs should be administered before colistimethate sodium. For *nebulisation* administer required dose in 2–4 mL of sodium chloride 0.9% (or water for injections) or a 1:1 mixture of sodium chloride 0.9% and water for injection.
- With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 40 000 units/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 30 minutes. For *slow intravenous injection* into a totally implantable venous access device, dilute to a concentration of 90 000 units/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9% for child under 12 years (200 000 units/mL for child over 12 years).

**COLOMYCIN®** Colomycin® Injection may be used for nebulisation; administer required dose in 2–4 mL of sodium chloride 0.9%, (or water for injections) or a 1:1 mixture of sodium chloride 0.9% and water for injection.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

Colistimethate sodium is included in some preparations for topical application.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

- When used by inhalation Patient should be advised to rinse mouth with water after each dose of dry powder inhalation. Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer colistimethate sodium; first dose should be given under medical supervision.

**Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be counselled on the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness, confusion and visual disturbances.

- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

- **NICE decisions**

- Colistimethate sodium by dry powder inhalation for pseudomonal lung infection in cystic fibrosis (March 2013) NICE TA276

Colistimethate sodium dry powder for inhalation is recommended for chronic pulmonary infection caused by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in patients with cystic fibrosis who would benefit from continued treatment, but do not tolerate the drug in its nebulised form. The manufacturer must provide colistimethate sodium dry powder for inhalation at the discount agreed as part of the patient access scheme to primary, secondary and tertiary care in the NHS. Patients currently receiving colistimethate sodium dry powder for inhalation can continue treatment until they and their clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA276](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA276)

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder for solution for injection**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- **Colistimethate sodium (Non-proprietary)**

**Colistimethate sodium 1000000 unit** Colistimethate 1million unit powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial (PoM) £18.00 DT = £18.00 | 10 vial (PoM) £18.00 DT = £18.00 (Hospital only)

- **Colomycin (Teva UK Ltd)**

**Colistimethate sodium 1000000 unit** Colomycin 1million unit powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial (PoM) £18.00 DT = £18.00

**Colistimethate sodium 2000000 unit** Colomycin 2million unit powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial (PoM) £32.40 DT = £32.40

► **Promixin** (Profile Pharma Ltd)

**Colistimethate sodium 1000000 unit** Promixin 1million unit powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £30.00 DT = £18.00 (Hospital only)

**Inhalation powder**

► **Colobreathe** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Colistimethate sodium 1662500 unit** Colobreathe 1,662,500unit inhalation powder capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £968.80

**Powder for nebuliser solution**

► **ColiFin** (Pari Medical Ltd)

**Colistimethate sodium 1000000 unit** ColiFin 1 MIU powder for nebuliser solution unit dose vials | 56 unit dose [PoM] £180.53

**Colistimethate sodium 2000000 unit** ColiFin 2 MIU powder for nebuliser solution unit dose vials | 56 unit dose [PoM] £261.72

► **Promixin** (Profile Pharma Ltd)

**Colistimethate sodium 1000000 unit** Promixin 1million unit powder for nebuliser solution unit dose vials | 30 unit dose [PoM] £168.00 DT = £168.00

## ANTIBACTERIALS > QUINOLONES

### Quinolones

31-Oct-2017

#### Overview

Ciprofloxacin below is active against both Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria. It is particularly active against Gram-negative bacteria, including *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *Campylobacter*, *Neisseria*, and *Pseudomonas*. Ciprofloxacin has only moderate activity against Gram-positive bacteria such as *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *Enterococcus faecalis*; it should not be used for pneumococcal pneumonia. It is active against *Chlamydia* and some mycobacteria. Most anaerobic organisms are not susceptible.

Nalidixic acid is licensed for urinary tract infections or gastro-intestinal infections caused by Gram-negative organisms, other than *Pseudomonas* species, sensitive to nalidixic acid.

Many *Staphylococci* are resistant to quinolones and their use should be avoided in MRSA infections.

Olofloxacin eye drops p. 677 are used in ophthalmic infections.

There is much less experience of the other quinolones in children; expert advice should be sought.

photosensitivity occurs) · G6PD deficiency · history of epilepsy · myasthenia gravis (risk of exacerbation)

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Quinolones cause arthropathy in the weight-bearing joints of immature animals and are therefore generally not recommended in children and growing adolescents. However, the significance of this effect in humans is uncertain and in some specific circumstances short-term use of ciprofloxacin may be justified in children.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · constipation · diarrhoea · dizziness · dyspnoea · eye discomfort · eye disorders · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hearing impairment · hepatic disorders · myalgia · nausea · QT interval prolongation · rhabdomyolysis · skin reactions · sleep disorders · taste altered · vision disorders · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Anaemia · anxiety · arrhythmias · chest pain · confusion · depression · drowsiness · dry eye · eosinophilia · eye inflammation · flatulence · hallucination · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · hypotension · leucopenia · neutropenia · pain · paraesthesia · renal failure · seizure · smell altered · tendon disorders · thrombocytopenia · tremor · vertigo
- **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · angioedema · arthritis · coordination abnormal · haemolytic anaemia · hyperglycaemia · hypoglycaemia · muscle weakness · myasthenia gravis aggravated · nephritis tubulointerstitial · pancreatitis · photosensitivity reaction · polyneuropathy · pseudomembranous enterocolitis · psychotic disorder · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · stomatitis · suicidal tendencies · syncope · vasculitis
- **Frequency not known** Peripheral neuropathy (sometimes irreversible)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The drug should be discontinued if psychiatric, neurological, or hypersensitivity reactions (including severe rash) occur.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Use of quinolones contra-indicated in quinolone hypersensitivity.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid in pregnancy—shown to cause arthropathy in animal studies; safer alternatives are available.

## Quinolones



#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

The CSM has warned that quinolones may induce **convulsions** in patients with or without a history of convulsions; taking NSAIDs at the same time may also induce them.

#### TENDON DAMAGE

Tendon damage (including rupture) has been reported rarely in patients receiving quinolones. Tendon rupture may occur within 48 hours of starting treatment; cases have also been reported several months after stopping a quinolone. Healthcare professionals are reminded that:

- quinolones are contra-indicated in patients with a history of tendon disorders related to quinolone use;
- the risk of tendon damage is increased by the concomitant use of corticosteroids;
- if tendinitis is suspected, the quinolone should be discontinued immediately.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of tendon disorders related to quinolone use

- **CAUTIONS** Can prolong the QT interval · children or adolescents (arthropathy has developed in weight-bearing joints in young animals) · conditions that predispose to seizures · diabetes (may affect blood glucose) · exposure to excessive sunlight should be avoided (discontinue if

## Ciprofloxacin

26-Apr-2018

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Fistulating Crohn's disease**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: 5 mg/kg twice daily

##### **Severe respiratory-tract infections, gastro-intestinal infection**

- BY MOUTH
- Neonate: 15 mg/kg twice daily.

- Child: 20 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 750 mg)
- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: 10 mg/kg every 12 hours, to be given over 60 minutes.

- Child: 10 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 400 mg), to be given over 60 minutes

##### **Pseudomonal lower respiratory-tract infection in cystic fibrosis**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: 20 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 750 mg)
- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: 10 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 400 mg), to be given over 60 minutes

**Complicated urinary-tract infections**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 10 mg/kg twice daily.

- Child: 10 mg/kg twice daily, dose to be doubled in severe infection (max. 750 mg twice daily)

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: 6 mg/kg every 12 hours, to be given over 60 minutes.

- Child: 6 mg/kg every 8 hours; increased to 10 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 400 mg), in severe infection

**Gonorrhoea**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 500 mg for 1 dose

**Anthrax (treatment and post-exposure prophylaxis)**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 15 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 500 mg)

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 10 mg/kg every 12 hours (max. per dose 400 mg)

**Prevention of secondary case of meningococcal meningitis**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 30 mg/kg (max. per dose 125 mg) for 1 dose.

- Child 1 month–4 years: 30 mg/kg (max. per dose 125 mg) for 1 dose
- Child 5–11 years: 250 mg for 1 dose
- Child 12–17 years: 500 mg for 1 dose

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 1 year of age. Licensed for use in children over 1 year for complicated urinary-tract infections, for pseudomonal lower respiratory-tract infections in cystic fibrosis, for prophylaxis and treatment of inhalational anthrax. Licensed for use in children over 1 year for other infections where the benefit is considered to outweigh the potential risks. Not licensed for use in children for gastro-intestinal anthrax. Not licensed for use in children for prophylaxis of meningococcal meningitis.

- **CAUTIONS** Acute myocardial infarction (risk factor for QT interval prolongation) · avoid excessive alkalinity of urine (risk of crystalluria) · bradycardia (risk factor for QT interval prolongation) · congenital long QT syndrome (risk factor for QT interval prolongation) · electrolyte disturbances (risk factor for QT interval prolongation) · ensure adequate fluid intake (risk of crystalluria) · heart failure with reduced left ventricular ejection fraction (risk factor for QT interval prolongation) · history of symptomatic arrhythmias (risk factor for QT interval prolongation)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: quinolones

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Arthropathy

- **Uncommon** Akathisia · fungal superinfection · musculoskeletal pain · oedema · renal impairment · sensation abnormal · thrombocytosis · vasodilation

- **Rare or very rare** Antibiotic associated colitis · asthma · bone marrow disorders · crystalluria · erythema nodosum · gait abnormal · haematuria · intracranial pressure increased · leucocytosis · migraine · muscle cramps · muscle tone increased · olfactory nerve disorder · petechiae · status epilepticus

- **Frequency not known** Mood altered · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

- **PREGNANCY** A single dose of ciprofloxacin may be used for the prevention of a secondary case of meningococcal meningitis.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—consult product literature.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

- With oral use Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include strawberry.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Ciprofloxacin for bacterial infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ciprofloxacin-bacterial-infections-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ciprofloxacin-bacterial-infections-0)

**Driving and skilled tasks** May impair performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects enhanced by alcohol.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 7, 9, 25

► **Ciprofloxacin (Non-proprietary)**

**Ciprofloxacin (as Ciprofloxacin hydrochloride)**

**100 mg** Ciprofloxacin 100mg tablets | 6 tablet [PoM] £4.50 DT = £1.97

**Ciprofloxacin (as Ciprofloxacin hydrochloride)**

**250 mg** Ciprofloxacin 250mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £7.25 DT = £0.39 | 20 tablet [PoM] £0.78–£11.20 | 100 tablet [PoM] £5.90

**Ciprofloxacin (as Ciprofloxacin hydrochloride)**

**500 mg** Ciprofloxacin 500mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £14.00 DT = £0.71 | 20 tablet [PoM] £1.42–£21.23 | 100 tablet [PoM] £8.20

**Ciprofloxacin (as Ciprofloxacin hydrochloride)**

**750 mg** Ciprofloxacin 750mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £20.00 DT = £8.00

► **Ciproxin** (Bayer Plc)

**Ciprofloxacin (as Ciprofloxacin hydrochloride) 500 mg** Ciproxin 500mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £12.49 DT = £0.71

**Ciprofloxacin (as Ciprofloxacin hydrochloride) 750 mg** Ciproxin 750mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £17.78 DT = £8.00

**Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 7, 9, 25

► **Ciproxin** (Bayer Plc)

**Ciprofloxacin 50 mg per 1 ml** Ciproxin 250mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £21.29 DT = £21.29

**Solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Ciprofloxacin (Non-proprietary)**

**Ciprofloxacin (as Ciprofloxacin lactate) 2 mg per**

**1 ml** Ciprofloxacin 200mg/100ml solution for infusion vials |

1 vial [PoM] £2.00–£5.00

Ciprofloxacin 200mg/100ml solution for infusion bottles |

10 bottle [PoM] £14.45

Ciprofloxacin 100mg/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM]

£2.25–£7.20

Ciprofloxacin 400mg/200ml solution for infusion bottles |

1 bottle [PoM] £6.00 | 10 bottle [PoM] £195.90

Ciprofloxacin 400mg/200ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £2.50

► **Ciproxin** (Bayer Plc)

**Ciprofloxacin (as Ciprofloxacin lactate) 2 mg per 1 ml** Ciproxin Infusion 100mg/50ml solution for infusion bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £7.61 (Hospital only)

Ciproxin Infusion 400mg/200ml solution for infusion bottles |

5 bottle [PoM] £114.23 (Hospital only)

Ciproxin Infusion 200mg/100ml solution for infusion bottles |

5 bottle [PoM] £75.06 (Hospital only)

**Infusion**► **Ciprofloxacin (Non-proprietary)**

**Ciprofloxacin (as Ciprofloxacin lactate) 2 mg per**

**1 ml** Ciprofloxacin 200mg/100ml infusion bags | 5 bag [PoM] £60.00 (Hospital only)

Ciprofloxacin 400mg/200ml infusion bags | 5 bag [PoM] £85.00 |

10 bag [PoM] £200.00 (Hospital only)

## ANTIBACTERIALS &gt; SULFONAMIDES

## Co-trimoxazole

- **DRUG ACTION** Sulfamethoxazole and trimethoprim are used in combination (as co-trimoxazole) because of their synergistic activity (the importance of the sulfonamides has decreased as a result of increasing bacterial resistance and their replacement by antibacterials which are generally more active and less toxic).

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment of susceptible infections**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6 weeks–5 months: 120 mg twice daily, alternatively 24 mg/kg twice daily
- Child 6 months–5 years: 240 mg twice daily, alternatively 24 mg/kg twice daily
- Child 6–11 years: 480 mg twice daily, alternatively 24 mg/kg twice daily
- Child 12–17 years: 960 mg twice daily
- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child 6 weeks–17 years: 18 mg/kg every 12 hours; increased to 27 mg/kg every 12 hours (max. per dose 1.44 g), increased dose used in severe infection

**Treatment of *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (*Pneumocystis carinii*) infections (undertaken where facilities for appropriate monitoring available—consult microbiologist and product literature)**

## ► BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 120 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses for 14–21 days, oral route preferred for children

**Prophylaxis of *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (*Pneumocystis carinii*) infections**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 450 mg/m<sup>2</sup> twice daily (max. per dose 960 mg twice daily) for 3 days of the week (either consecutively or on alternate days), dose regimens may vary, consult local guidelines

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- 480 mg of co-trimoxazole consists of sulfamethoxazole 400 mg and trimethoprim 80 mg.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for *Burkholderia cepacia* infections in cystic fibrosis. Not licensed for *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* infections. Not licensed for use in children under 6 weeks.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****RESTRICTIONS ON THE USE OF CO-TRIMOXAZOLE**

Co-trimoxazole is the drug of choice in the prophylaxis and treatment of *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (*Pneumocystis carinii*) pneumonia; it is also indicated for nocardiosis, *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* infection [unlicensed indication], and toxoplasmosis. It should only be considered for use in acute exacerbations of chronic bronchitis and infections of the urinary tract when there is bacteriological evidence of sensitivity to co-trimoxazole and good reason to prefer this combination to a single antibacterial; similarly it should only be used in acute otitis media in children when there is good reason to prefer it. Co-trimoxazole is also used for the treatment of infections caused by *Burkholderia cepacia* in cystic fibrosis [unlicensed indication].

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603
- **CAUTIONS** Asthma · avoid in blood disorders (unless under specialist supervision) · avoid in infants under 6 weeks (except for treatment or prophylaxis of pneumocystis pneumonia) because of the risk of kernicterus · G6PD deficiency (risk of haemolytic anaemia) · maintain adequate fluid intake · predisposition to folate deficiency

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sulfonamides · trimethoprim

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · electrolyte imbalance · fungal overgrowth · headache · nausea · skin reactions
- **Uncommon** Vomiting
- **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · angioedema · aplastic anaemia · appetite decreased · arthralgia · ataxia · cough · depression · dizziness · dyspnoea · eosinophilia · fever · haemolysis · haemolytic anaemia · hallucination · hepatic disorders · hypoglycaemia · leucopenia · lung infiltration · megaloblastic anaemia · meningitis aseptic · metabolic acidosis · methaemoglobinemia · myalgia · myocarditis allergic · nephritis tubulointerstitial · neutropenia · oral disorders · pancreatitis · peripheral neuritis · photosensitivity reaction · pseudomembranous enterocolitis · renal impairment · renal tubular acidosis · seizure · serum sickness · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus · uveitis · vasculitis · vertigo
- **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Co-trimoxazole is associated with rare but serious side effects. Discontinue immediately if blood disorders (including leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, megaloblastic anaemia, eosinophilia) or rash (including Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis) develop.

- **PREGNANCY** Teratogenic risk in first trimester (trimethoprim a folate antagonist). Neonatal haemolysis and methaemoglobinemia in third trimester; fear of increased risk of kernicterus in neonates appears to be unfounded.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Small risk of kernicterus in jaundiced infants and of haemolysis in G6PD-deficient infants (due to sulfamethoxazole).

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid in severe liver disease.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 15 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> and if plasma-sulfamethoxazole concentration cannot be monitored.

**Dose adjustments** Use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 15–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Monitoring** Plasma concentration monitoring may be required in patients with moderate to severe renal impairment; seek expert advice.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- Plasma concentration monitoring may be required with high doses; seek expert advice.
- Monitor blood counts on prolonged treatment.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intermittent intravenous infusion, may be further diluted in glucose 5% and 10% or sodium chloride 0.9%. Dilute contents of 1 ampoule (5 mL) to 125 mL, 2 ampoules (10 mL) to 250 mL or 3 ampoules (15 mL) to 500 mL; suggested duration of infusion 60–90 minutes (but may be adjusted according to fluid requirements); if fluid restriction necessary, 1 ampoule (5 mL) may be diluted with 75 mL glucose 5% and the required dose infused over max. 60 minutes; check container for haze or precipitant during administration. In severe fluid restriction may be given undiluted via a central venous line.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

Co-trimoxazole is a mixture of trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole (sulphamethoxazole) in the proportions of 1 part to 5 parts.

Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include banana, or vanilla.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for infusion**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol, propylene glycol, sulfites  
ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

#### ► **Co-trimoxazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Trimethoprim 16 mg per 1 ml, Sulfamethoxazole 80 mg per 1 ml** Co-trimoxazole 80mg/400mg/5ml solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £35.00

#### ► **Septtrin (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)**

**Trimethoprim 16 mg per 1 ml, Sulfamethoxazole 80 mg per 1 ml** Septtrin for Infusion 80mg/400mg/5ml solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £17.76

#### **Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

#### ► **Co-trimoxazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Trimethoprim 8 mg per 1 ml, Sulfamethoxazole 40 mg per 1 ml** Co-trimoxazole 40mg/200mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £9.95–£9.97 DT = £9.96

**Trimethoprim 16 mg per 1 ml, Sulfamethoxazole 80 mg per 1 ml** Co-trimoxazole 80mg/400mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [PoM] £10.95–£10.97 DT = £10.96

#### **Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

#### ► **Co-trimoxazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Trimethoprim 80 mg, Sulfamethoxazole 400 mg** Co-trimoxazole 80mg/400mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £15.50 DT = £2.37 | 100 tablet [PoM] £8.46–£10.91

**Trimethoprim 160 mg, Sulfamethoxazole 800 mg** Co-trimoxazole 160mg/800mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £23.40–£23.46 DT = £23.46

## Sulfadiazine

07-Feb-2018

### (Sulphadiazine)

- **DRUG ACTION** Sulfadiazine is a short-acting sulphonamide with bacteriostatic activity against a broad spectrum of organisms. The importance of the sulfonamides has decreased as a result of increasing bacterial resistance and their replacement by antibacterials which are generally more active and less toxic.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Toxoplasmosis in pregnancy (in combination with pyrimethamine and folinic acid)**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 1 g 3 times a day until delivery

**Congenital toxoplasmosis (in combination with pyrimethamine and folinic acid)**

- BY MOUTH
- Neonate: 50 mg/kg twice daily for 12 months.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in toxoplasmosis.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

#### SAFE PRACTICE

Sulfadiazine has been confused with sulfasalazine; care must be taken to ensure the correct drug is prescribed and dispensed.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603
- **CAUTIONS** Asthma • avoid in blood disorders (unless under specialist supervision) • avoid in infants under 6 weeks (except for treatment or prophylaxis of *pneumocystis pneumonia*) because of the risk of kernicterus • G6PD deficiency (risk of haemolytic anaemia) • maintain adequate fluid intake • predisposition to folate deficiency
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sulfonamides
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- **Rare or very rare** Haemolytic anaemia
- **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis • aplastic anaemia • appetite decreased • ataxia • back pain • blood disorders •

cough • crystalluria • cyanosis • depression • diarrhoea • dizziness • drowsiness • dyspnoea • eosinophilia • erythema nodosum • fatigue • fever • haematuria • hallucination • headache • hepatic disorders • hypoglycaemia • hypoproteinaemia • hypothyroidism • idiopathic intracranial hypertension • insomnia • kernicterus (in neonates) • leucopenia • meningitis aseptic • myocarditis • nausea • nephritis tubulointerstitial • nephrotoxicity • nerve disorders • neurological effects • neutropenia • oral disorders • pancreatitis • photosensitivity reaction • pseudomembranous enterocolitis • psychosis • renal impairment • renal tubular necrosis • respiratory disorders • seizure • serum sickness-like reaction • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • skin reactions • systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) • thrombocytopenia • tinnitus • vasculitis • vertigo • vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Discontinue immediately if blood disorders (including leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, megaloblastic anaemia, eosinophilia) or rash (including Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis) develop.

- **PREGNANCY** Risk of neonatal haemolysis and methaemoglobinemia in third trimester; fear of increased risk of kernicterus in neonates appears to be unfounded.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Small risk of kernicterus in jaundiced infants and of haemolysis in G6PD-deficient infants.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in mild to moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in mild to moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment; high risk of crystalluria.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood counts on prolonged treatment.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### **Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 27

#### ► **Sulfadiazine (Non-proprietary)**

**Sulfadiazine 500 mg** Sulfadiazine 500mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £190.74 DT = £152.95

## ANTIBACTERIALS > TETRACYCLINES AND RELATED DRUGS

## Tetracyclines

### Overview

The tetracyclines are broad-spectrum antibiotics whose value has decreased owing to increasing bacterial resistance. In children over 12 years of age they are useful for infections caused by chlamydia (trachoma, psittacosis, salpingitis, urethritis, and lymphogranuloma venereum), rickettsia (including Q-fever), brucella (doxycycline p. 352 with either streptomycin p. 313 or rifampicin p. 364), and the spirochaete, *Borrelia burgdorferi* (See Lyme disease). They are also used in respiratory and genital mycoplasma infections, in acne, in destructive (refractory) periodontal disease, in exacerbations of chronic respiratory diseases (because of their activity against *Haemophilus influenzae*), and for leptospirosis in penicillin hypersensitivity (as an alternative to erythromycin p. 331).

Microbiologically, there is little to choose between the various tetracyclines, the only exception being minocycline p. 353 which has a broader spectrum; it is active against *Neisseria meningitidis* and has been used for meningococcal prophylaxis but is no longer recommended because of side-effects including dizziness and vertigo. Compared to other tetracyclines, minocycline is associated with a greater risk of



lupus-erythematosus-like syndrome. Minocycline sometimes causes irreversible pigmentation.

Tetracyclines have a role in the management of meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) infections.

## Tetracyclines



- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Children under 12 years (deposition in growing bone and teeth, by binding to calcium, causes staining and occasionally dental hypoplasia)
- **CAUTIONS** Myasthenia gravis (muscle weakness may be increased) • systemic lupus erythematosus (may be exacerbated)
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Angioedema • diarrhoea • headache • Henoch-Schönlein purpura • hypersensitivity • nausea • pericarditis • photosensitivity reaction • skin reactions • systemic lupus erythematosus exacerbated • vomiting
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Appetite decreased • discolouration of thyroid gland • dysphagia • eosinophilia • fontanelle bulging (in infants) • gastrointestinal disorders • haemolytic anaemia • hepatic disorders • idiopathic intracranial hypertension • increased risk of infection • neutropenia • oral disorders • pancreatitis • pseudomembranous enterocolitis • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • thrombocytopenia
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Dizziness

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Headache and visual disturbances may indicate benign intracranial hypertension (discontinue treatment if raised intracranial pressure develops).

- **PREGNANCY** Should **not** be given to pregnant women; effects on skeletal development have been documented in the first trimester in *animal* studies. Administration during the second or third trimester may cause discoloration of the child's teeth, and maternal hepatotoxicity has been reported with large parenteral doses.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Should **not** be given to women who are breast-feeding (although absorption and therefore discoloration of teeth in the infant is probably usually prevented by chelation with calcium in milk).
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Should be avoided or used with caution in patients with hepatic impairment.

above

## Demeclocycline hydrochloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Susceptible infections (e.g. chlamydia, rickettsia and mycoplasma)**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 150 mg 4 times a day, alternatively 300 mg twice daily

- **CAUTIONS** Photosensitivity more common than with other tetracyclines
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tetracyclines
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis • aplastic anaemia • hearing impairment • nephritis • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Intracranial pressure increased • muscle weakness • nephrogenic diabetes insipidus • vision disorders
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
Dose adjustments Max. 1 g daily in divided doses.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** May exacerbate renal failure and should **not** be given to patients with renal impairment.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients should be advised to avoid exposure to sunlight or sun lamps.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

▶ **Demeclocycline hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Demeclocycline hydrochloride 150 mg** Demeclocycline 150mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM](#) [N](#)

#### Capsule

**CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS** 7, 9, 11, 23

▶ **Demeclocycline hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Demeclocycline hydrochloride 150 mg** Demeclocycline 150mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM](#) £176.16 DT = £176.16

above

## Doxycycline

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Susceptible infections (e.g. chlamydia, rickettsia and mycoplasma)**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 200 mg daily for 1 dose, then maintenance 100 mg once daily

#### Acute sinusitis

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 200 mg daily for 1 dose, then maintenance 100 mg once daily for 4 days

**Severe infections (including refractory urinary-tract infections)**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 200 mg daily

#### Acne

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100 mg once daily

#### Early syphilis

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100 mg twice daily for 14 days

#### Late latent syphilis

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100 mg twice daily for 28 days

**Uncomplicated genital chlamydia | Non-gonococcal urethritis**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100 mg twice daily for 7 days

#### Pelvic inflammatory disease

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100 mg twice daily for 14 days

#### Lyme disease (under expert supervision)

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100 mg twice daily for 10–14 days (for 28 days in Lyme arthritis)

#### Anthrax (treatment or post-exposure prophylaxis)

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 2.5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 100 mg twice daily), only to be used in children under 12 years if alternative antibacterial cannot be given
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100 mg twice daily

#### Prophylaxis of malaria

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100 mg once daily, to be started 1–2 days before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving, can be used for up to 2 years

**Adjunct to quinine in treatment of *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 200 mg daily for 7 days

**Periodontitis (as an adjunct to gingival scaling and root planing)**

- BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES
- Child 12–17 years: 20 mg twice daily for 3 months

- **UNLICENSED USE** Doxycycline doses in BNF Publications may differ from those in product literature. Not licensed for severe recurrent aphthous ulceration. Not licensed for malaria prophylaxis during pregnancy. Not licensed for treatment or post-exposure prophylaxis of anthrax. [EvGr] Duration of treatment for acute sinusitis adheres to national guidelines. ⚠ See Sinusitis (acute) p. 697 for further information.

Not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

- **CAUTIONS** Alcohol dependence
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tetracyclines
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Dyspnoea · hypotension · peripheral oedema · serum sickness · tachycardia
  - **Uncommon** Gastritis · gastrointestinal discomfort
  - **Rare or very rare** Antibiotic associated colitis · arthralgia · flushing · hepatic function abnormal · myalgia · photoonycholysis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · tinnitus · vision disorders
- **PREGNANCY** When travel to malarious areas is unavoidable during pregnancy, doxycycline can be used for malaria prophylaxis if other regimens are unsuitable, and if the entire course of doxycycline can be completed before 15 weeks' gestation.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution (avoid excessive doses).
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** When used for periodontitis, monitor for superficial fungal infection, particularly if predisposition to oral candidiasis.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Capsules and Tablets should be swallowed whole with plenty of fluid, while sitting or standing. Capsules should be taken during meals.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Counselling on administration advised. Photosensitivity Patients should be advised to avoid exposure to sunlight or sun lamps.
- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

**Dental practitioners' formulary**

Doxycycline Capsules 100 mg may be prescribed. Dispersible tablets may be prescribed as Dispersible Doxycycline Tablets. Tablets may be prescribed as Doxycycline Tablets 20 mg.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 6, 11, 27

- **Periostat** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Doxycycline (as Doxycycline hyclate) 20 mg Periostat 20mg tablets  
| 56 tablet [PoM] £17.30 DT = £17.30

**Dispersible tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 6, 9, 11, 13

- **Vibramycin-D** (Pfizer Ltd)  
Doxycycline (as Doxycycline monohydrate) 100 mg Vibramycin-D 100mg dispersible tablets sugar-free | 8 tablet [PoM] £4.91 DT = £4.91

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 6, 9, 11, 27

- **Doxycycline (Non-proprietary)**  
Doxycycline (as Doxycycline hyclate) 50 mg Doxycycline 50mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £4.00 DT = £1.08  
Doxycycline (as Doxycycline hyclate) 100 mg Doxycycline 100mg capsules | 8 capsule [PoM] £3.00 DT = £0.51 | 14 capsule [PoM] £5.25 | 50 capsule [PoM] £3.19–£19.00

**Lymecycline**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Susceptible infections (e.g. chlamydia, rickettsia and mycoplasma)**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 408 mg twice daily, increased to 1.224–1.632 g daily, (in severe infection)

**Acne**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 408 mg daily for at least 8 weeks

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tetracyclines

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Gastrointestinal discomfort
- **Frequency not known** Visual impairment

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** May exacerbate renal failure and should not be given to patients with renal impairment.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 6, 9

► **Lymecycline (Non-proprietary)**

**Lymecycline 408 mg** Lymecycline 408mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £6.95 DT = £4.59 | 56 capsule [PoM] £9.18–£11.66

► **Tetralysal** (Galderma (UK) Ltd)

**Lymecycline 408 mg** Tetralysal 300 capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £6.95 DT = £4.59 | 56 capsule [PoM] £11.53

**Minocycline**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Susceptible infections (e.g. chlamydia, rickettsia and mycoplasma)**

- BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES
- Child 12–17 years: 100 mg twice daily

**Acne**

- BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES
- Child 12–17 years: 100 mg once daily, alternatively 50 mg twice daily
- BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- Child 12–17 years: 100 mg daily

- **CAUTIONS** Systemic lupus erythematosus

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tetracyclines

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Rare or very rare** Acute kidney injury · hearing impairment · respiratory disorders
- **Frequency not known** Alopecia · antibiotic associated colitis · arthralgia · ataxia · breast secretion · conjunctival discoloration · drug reaction with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms (DRESS) · dyspepsia · hyperbilirubinaemia · hyperhidrosis · polyarteritis nodosa · sensation abnormal · tear discoloration · vertigo

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution (avoid excessive doses).

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** If treatment continued for longer than 6 months, monitor every 3 months for hepatotoxicity, pigmentation and for systemic lupus erythematosus—discontinue if these develop or if pre-existing systemic lupus erythematosus worsens.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets or capsules should be swallowed whole with plenty of fluid while sitting or standing.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Counselling on administration advised (posture).

- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Less suitable for prescribing (compared with other tetracyclines, minocycline is associated with a greater risk of lupus-erythematosus-like syndrome; it sometimes causes irreversible pigmentation).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 6, 9

##### ► **Minocycline (Non-proprietary)**

**Minocycline (as Minocycline hydrochloride) 50 mg** Minocycline 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £8.50 DT = £6.19

**Minocycline (as Minocycline hydrochloride) 100 mg** Minocycline 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £14.50 DT = £14.01

#### Modified-release capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 6, 25

##### ► **Minocycline (Non-proprietary)**

**Minocycline (as Minocycline hydrochloride) 100 mg** Minocycline 100mg modified-release capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £20.08 DT = £20.08

##### ► **Acanmino MR (Dexcel-Pharma Ltd)**

**Minocycline (as Minocycline hydrochloride) 100 mg** Acanmino MR 100mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £21.14 DT = £20.08

##### ► **Minocin MR (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)**

**Minocycline (as Minocycline hydrochloride) 100 mg** Minocin MR 100mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £20.08 DT = £20.08

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 6, 9

##### ► **Aknemin (Almirall Ltd)**

**Minocycline (as Minocycline hydrochloride) 50 mg** Aknemin 50 capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £15.27 DT = £15.27

**Minocycline (as Minocycline hydrochloride) 100 mg** Aknemin 100mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £13.09 DT = £13.09

## Oxytetracycline

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Susceptible infections (e.g. chlamydia, rickettsia and mycoplasma)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

Child 12-17 years: 250–500 mg 4 times a day

##### Acne

##### ► BY MOUTH

► Child 12-17 years: 500 mg twice daily for at least 3 months, if there is no improvement after the first 3 months another oral antibacterial should be used, maximum improvement usually occurs after 4 to 6 months but in more severe cases treatment may need to be continued for 2 years or longer

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tetracyclines

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Gastrointestinal discomfort · hepatic steatosis · increased risk of infection · renal impairment

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** May exacerbate renal failure and should **not** be given to patients with renal impairment.

- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

Dental practitioners' formulary

Oxytetracycline Tablets may be prescribed.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 7, 9, 23

##### ► **Oxytetracycline (Non-proprietary)**

**Oxytetracycline (as Oxytetracycline dihydrate)**

**250 mg** Oxytetracycline 250mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.79 DT = £0.47

## Tetracycline

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Susceptible infections (e.g. chlamydia, rickettsia, mycoplasma)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

► Child 12-17 years: 250 mg 4 times a day, increased if necessary to 500 mg 3–4 times a day, increased dose used in severe infections

##### Acne

##### ► BY MOUTH

► Child 12-17 years: 500 mg twice daily for at least 3 months, if there is no improvement after the first 3 months another oral antibacterial should be used, maximum improvement usually occurs after 4 to 6 months but in more severe cases treatment may need to be continued for 2 years or longer

#### Non-gonococcal urethritis

##### ► BY MOUTH

► Child 12-17 years: 500 mg 4 times a day for 7–14 days (21 days if failure or relapse after first course)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tetracyclines

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · aplastic anaemia · nephritis · renal impairment
- **Frequency not known** Gastrointestinal discomfort · hepatic steatosis · overgrowth of nonsusceptible organisms · toxic epidermal necrolysis

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Max. 1 g daily in divided doses.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** May exacerbate renal failure and should **not** be given to patients with renal impairment.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets should be swallowed whole with plenty of fluid while sitting or standing.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Counselling on administration advised.

- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

Dental practitioners' formulary

Tetracycline Tablets may be prescribed.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 7, 9, 23

##### ► **Tetracycline (Non-proprietary)**

**Tetracycline hydrochloride 250 mg** Tetracycline 250mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £13.90 DT = £1.27

## ANTIBACTERIALS > OTHER

## Chloramphenicol

- **DRUG ACTION** Chloramphenicol is a potent broad-spectrum antibiotic.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Life threatening infections particularly those caused by *Haemophilus influenzae*! Typhoid fever**

##### ► BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: 12.5 mg/kg every 6 hours, dose may be doubled in severe infections such as septicaemia, meningitis and epiglottitis providing plasma-chloramphenicol concentrations are measured and high doses reduced as soon as indicated

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate up to 14 days: 12.5 mg/kg twice daily, doses should be checked carefully as overdosage can be fatal.
- Neonate 14 days to 28 days: 12.5 mg/kg 2–4 times a day, doses should be checked carefully as overdosage can be fatal.

**Cystic fibrosis for the treatment of respiratory *Burkholderia cepacia* infection resistant to other antibacterials**

- BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child: (consult product literature)

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603● **CAUTIONS** Avoid repeated courses and prolonged treatment● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: chloramphenicol● **SIDE-EFFECTS**► **Rare or very rare**

- With parenteral use Aplastic anaemia (reversible or irreversible, with reports of resulting leukaemia)
- Frequency not known
- With oral use Bone marrow disorders · circulatory collapse · diarrhoea · enterocolitis · nausea · optic neuritis · oral disorders · ototoxicity · vomiting
- With parenteral use Agranulocytosis · bone marrow disorders · depression · diarrhoea · dry mouth · fungal superinfection · headache · nausea · nerve disorders · thrombocytopenic purpura · urticaria · vision disorders · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Associated with serious haematological side-effects when given systemically and should therefore be reserved for the treatment of life-threatening infections.

**Grey syndrome** Grey baby syndrome (abdominal distension, pallid cyanosis, circulatory collapse) may follow excessive doses in neonates with immature hepatic metabolism.

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid; neonatal 'grey-baby syndrome' if used in third trimester.● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid; use another antibiotic; may cause bone-marrow toxicity in infant; concentration in milk usually insufficient to cause 'grey syndrome'.● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible—increased risk of bone-marrow depression.

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.

**Monitoring** Monitor plasma-chloramphenicol concentration in hepatic impairment.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe renal impairment unless no alternative; dose-related depression of haematopoiesis.● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- Plasma concentration monitoring preferred in those under 4 years of age.
- Plasma concentration monitoring required in neonates. Grey baby syndrome may follow excessive doses in neonates with immature hepatic metabolism.
- Recommended peak plasma concentration (approx. 2 hours after administration by mouth, intravenous injection or infusion) 10–25 mg/litre; pre-dose ('trough') concentration should not exceed 15 mg/litre.
- Blood counts required before and periodically during treatment.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Displacement value may be significant for injection, consult local guidelines. For intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute reconstituted solution further in glucose 5% or sodium chloride 0.9%.● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder for solution for injection**

**ELECTROLYTES:** May contain Sodium

► **Chloramphenicol (Non-proprietary)**

**Chloramphenicol (as Chloramphenicol sodium succinate)**

1 gram Chloramphenicol 1g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £22.00 DT = £22.00

**Capsule**► **Chloramphenicol (Non-proprietary)**

**Chloramphenicol 250 mg** Chloramphenicol 250mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £377.00 DT = £377.00

**Daptomycin**

25-Apr-2018

- **DRUG ACTION** Daptomycin is a lipopeptide antibacterial with a spectrum of activity similar to vancomycin but its efficacy against enterococci has not been established. It needs to be given with other antibacterials for mixed infections involving Gram-negative bacteria and some anaerobes.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Complicated skin and soft-tissue infections caused by Gram-positive bacteria**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 12–23 months: 10 mg/kg once daily for up to 14 days, alternatively 12 mg/kg once daily, higher dose only if associated with *Staphylococcus aureus* bacteraemia—duration of treatment in accordance with risk of complications in individual patients
- Child 2–6 years: 9 mg/kg once daily for up to 14 days, alternatively 12 mg/kg once daily, higher dose only if associated with *Staphylococcus aureus* bacteraemia—duration of treatment in accordance with risk of complications in individual patients
- Child 7–11 years: 7 mg/kg once daily for up to 14 days, alternatively 9 mg/kg once daily, higher dose only if associated with *Staphylococcus aureus* bacteraemia—duration of treatment in accordance with risk of complications in individual patients
- Child 12–17 years: 5 mg/kg once daily for up to 14 days, alternatively 7 mg/kg once daily, higher dose only if associated with *Staphylococcus aureus* bacteraemia—duration of treatment in accordance with risk of complications in individual patients

● **CAUTIONS** Obesity (limited information on safety and efficacy)● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: daptomycin● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Anaemia · anxiety · asthenia · constipation · diarrhoea · dizziness · fever · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hypertension · hypotension · increased risk of infection · insomnia · nausea · pain · skin reactions · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Appetite decreased · arrhythmias · arthralgia · electrolyte imbalance · eosinophilia · flushing · glossitis · hyperglycaemia · muscle weakness · myalgia · myopathy · paraesthesia · renal impairment · taste altered · thrombocytosis · tremor · vertigo
- **Rare or very rare** Jaundice
- **Frequency not known** Acute generalised exanthematous pustulosis (AGEP) · antibiotic associated colitis · chills · cough · infusion related reaction · peripheral neuropathy · respiratory disorders · syncope

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** If unexplained muscle pain, tenderness, weakness, or cramps develop during treatment, measure creatine kinase every 2 days; discontinue if unexplained muscular symptoms and creatine elevated markedly.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in small amounts, but absorption from gastrointestinal tract negligible.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in severe hepatic impairment—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises the dosage regimen has not been established—use with caution and monitor renal function regularly.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Manufacturer advises monitor plasma creatine phosphokinase (CPK) before treatment and then at least weekly during treatment; monitor CPK more frequently in patients at higher risk of developing myopathy, including those with renal impairment, taking other drugs associated with myopathy, or if CPK elevated more than 5 times upper limit of normal before treatment.
  - ▶ Manufacturer advises monitor renal function regularly during concomitant administration of potentially nephrotoxic drugs.
- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** Interference with assay for prothrombin time and INR—take blood sample immediately before daptomycin dose.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, manufacturer advises give intermittently in Sodium Chloride 0.9%; reconstitute with Sodium Chloride 0.9% (350 mg in 7 mL, 500 mg in 10 mL); gently rotate vial without shaking; allow to stand for at least 10 minutes then rotate gently to dissolve; dilute requisite dose in 50 mL infusion fluid and give over 60 minutes for children aged 1–6 years and over 30 minutes for children aged 7–17 years.
- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Manufacturer advises store in a refrigerator (2–8 °C)—consult product literature for further information regarding storage after reconstitution and dilution.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder for solution for infusion**

##### ▶ **Daptomycin (Non-proprietary)**

**Daptomycin 350 mg** Daptomycin 350mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £60.00 (Hospital only)

**Daptomycin 500 mg** Daptomycin 500mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £88.00 (Hospital only)

##### ▶ **Cubicin (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)**

**Daptomycin 350 mg** Cubicin 350mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £62.00

**Daptomycin 500 mg** Cubicin 500mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £88.57 (Hospital only)

## Fosfomycin

22-Mar-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Fosfomycin, a phosphonic acid antibacterial, is active against a range of Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria including *Staphylococcus aureus* and Enterobacteriaceae.

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Acute uncomplicated lower urinary-tract infections (in females)**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING GRANULES
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (female): 3 g for 1 dose.

#### **Osteomyelitis when first-line treatments are inappropriate or ineffective | Hospital-acquired lower respiratory-tract infections when first-line treatments are inappropriate or ineffective**

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 40 weeks corrected gestational age: 100 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses.
- ▶ Neonate 40 weeks to 44 weeks corrected gestational age: 200 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses.
- ▶ Child 1–11 months (body-weight up to 10 kg): 200–300 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, consider using the high-dose regimen in severe infection, particularly when suspected or known to be caused by less sensitive organisms
- ▶ Child 1–11 years (body-weight 10–39 kg): 200–400 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, consider using the high-dose regimen in severe infection, particularly when suspected or known to be caused by less sensitive organisms
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 12–24 g daily in 2–3 divided doses (max. per dose 8 g), use the high-dose regimen in severe infection, particularly when suspected or known to be caused by less sensitive organisms

#### **Complicated urinary-tract infections when first-line treatment ineffective or inappropriate**

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 40 weeks corrected gestational age: 100 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses.
- ▶ Neonate 40 weeks to 44 weeks corrected gestational age: 200 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses.
- ▶ Child 1–11 months (body-weight up to 10 kg): 200–300 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, consider using the high-dose regimen in severe infection, particularly when suspected or known to be caused by less sensitive organisms
- ▶ Child 1–11 years (body-weight 10–39 kg): 200–400 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, consider using the high-dose regimen in severe infection, particularly when suspected or known to be caused by less sensitive organisms
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 12–16 g daily in 2–3 divided doses (max. per dose 8 g), use the high-dose regimen in severe infection, particularly when suspected or known to be caused by less sensitive organisms

#### **Bacterial meningitis when first-line treatment ineffective or inappropriate**

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 40 weeks corrected gestational age: 100 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses.
- ▶ Neonate 40 weeks to 44 weeks corrected gestational age: 200 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses.
- ▶ Child 1–11 months (body-weight up to 10 kg): 200–300 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses, consider using the high-dose regimen in severe infection, particularly when suspected or known to be caused by less sensitive organisms
- ▶ Child 1–11 years (body-weight 10–39 kg): 200–400 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, consider using the high-dose regimen in severe infection, particularly when suspected or known to be caused by less sensitive organisms
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 16–24 g daily in 3–4 divided doses (max. per dose 8 g), use the



high-dose regimen in severe infection suspected or known to be caused by less sensitive organisms

### ● CAUTIONS

- With intravenous use Cardiac insufficiency · hyperaldosteronism · hypernatraemia · hypertension · pulmonary oedema

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

#### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- Common or very common Abdominal pain · antibiotic associated colitis · diarrhoea · headache · nausea · vomiting
- Uncommon Skin reactions

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- Common or very common
  - With oral use Dizziness · vulvovaginal infection
- Uncommon
  - With parenteral use Appetite decreased · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · fatigue · oedema · taste altered · vertigo
- Rare or very rare
  - With parenteral use Bone marrow disorders · eosinophilia · hepatic disorders · visual impairment
- Frequency not known
  - With parenteral use Agranulocytosis · asthmatic attack · confusion · leucopenia · neutropenia · pseudomembranous enterocolitis · tachycardia · thrombocytopenia
- PREGNANCY Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

- BREAST FEEDING Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—present in milk.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

- With oral use Avoid oral treatment if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- With intravenous use Age under 12 years (body-weight under 40 kg)—no information available. Age 12–18 years (body-weight over 40 kg)—use with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate 40–80 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, and consult product literature for dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 40 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- With intravenous use Monitor electrolytes and fluid balance.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- With intravenous use Displacement value may be significant when reconstituting injection, consult local guidelines. Reconstitute each 2-g vial with 50 mL Glucose 5% or Glucose 10% or Water for Injections; do not exceed infusion rate of 133 mg/minute.
- With oral use Manufacturer advises granules should be taken on an empty stomach (about 2–3 hours before or after a meal), preferably before bedtime and after emptying the bladder. The granules should be dissolved into a glass of water and taken immediately.

- PREScribing AND DISPENSING INFORMATION Doses expressed as fosfomycin base.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised (February 2015) that fosfomycin (*Fomicyt*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland; initiation should be restricted to microbiologists or infectious disease specialists.

The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised (September 2016) that fosfomycin trometamol (*Monuril*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of acute lower uncomplicated urinary tract infections, caused by pathogens sensitive to fosfomycin in adult and adolescent females and for prophylaxis in diagnostic and surgical transurethral procedures.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder for solution for infusion

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- Fomicyt (Nordic Pharma Ltd)

Fosfomycin (as Fosfomycin sodium) 2 gram Fomicyt 2g powder for solution for infusion vials | 10 vial [PoM] £150.00

Fosfomycin (as Fosfomycin sodium) 4 gram Fomicyt 4g powder for solution for infusion vials | 10 vial [PoM] £300.00

#### Granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 13, 23

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sucrose

- Fosfomycin (Non-proprietary)

Fosfomycin (as Fosfomycin trometamol) 3 gram Fosfomycin 3g granules sachets | 1 sachet [PoM] £75.45 DT = £4.86

- Monuril (Zambon S.p.A.)

Fosfomycin (as Fosfomycin trometamol) 3 gram Monuril 3g granules sachets | 1 sachet [PoM] £4.86 DT = £4.86

## Fusidic acid

16-Jun-2017

- DRUG ACTION Fusidic acid and its salts are narrow-spectrum antibiotics used for staphylococcal infections.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Staphylococcal skin infection

- BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

- Child 12–17 years: 250 mg every 12 hours for 5–10 days, dose expressed as sodium fusidate

- TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply 3–4 times a day usually for 7 days

#### Penicillin-resistant staphylococcal infection including osteomyelitis | Staphylococcal endocarditis in combination with other antibacterials

- BY MOUTH USING ORAL SUSPENSION

- Neonate: 15 mg/kg 3 times a day.

- Child 1–11 months: 15 mg/kg 3 times a day

- Child 1–4 years: 250 mg 3 times a day

- Child 5–11 years: 500 mg 3 times a day

- Child 12–17 years: 750 mg 3 times a day

- BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

- Child 12–17 years: 500 mg every 8 hours, increased to 1 g every 8 hours, increased dose can be used for severe infections, dose expressed as sodium fusidate

#### Staphylococcal infections due to susceptible organisms

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child (body-weight up to 50 kg): 6–7 mg/kg 3 times a day, dose expressed as sodium fusidate

- Child (body-weight 50 kg and above): 500 mg 3 times a day, dose expressed as sodium fusidate

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Fusidic acid is incompletely absorbed and doses recommended for suspension are proportionately higher than those for sodium fusidate tablets.

### ● CAUTIONS

- With systemic use Impaired transport and metabolism of bilirubin
- With topical use Avoid contact of cream or ointment with eyes

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Avoiding resistance To avoid the development of resistance, fusidic acid should not be used for longer than 10 days and local microbiology advice should be sought before using it in hospital.

- INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: fusidic acid

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

#### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- Common or very common Dizziness · drowsiness · hepatic disorders · hyperbilirubinaemia

- ▶ **Uncommon** Appetite decreased · asthenia · headache · malaise · skin reactions
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · anaemia · leucopenia · neutropenia · pancytopenia · renal failure · rhabdomyolysis · thrombocytopenia

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common**
- ▶ With intravenous use Vascular pain (reduced if given via central vein)
- ▶ With oral use Diarrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · nausea · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Elevated liver enzymes, hyperbilirubinaemia and jaundice can occur with systemic use—these effects are usually reversible following withdrawal of therapy.

- **PREGNANCY**
- ▶ With systemic use Not known to be harmful; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING**
- ▶ With systemic use Present in milk—manufacturer advises caution.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
- ▶ With systemic use Manufacturer advises caution—monitor liver function periodically during treatment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
- ▶ With systemic use Manufacturer advises monitor liver function with high doses or on prolonged therapy; monitoring also advised for patients with biliary tract obstruction, those taking potentially hepatotoxic medication, or those taking concurrent medication with a similar excretion pathway.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises for intravenous infusion, give intermittently in Sodium chloride 0.9% or Glucose 5%; reconstitute each vial with 10 mL buffer solution, then add contents of vial to 500 mL infusion fluid to give a solution containing approximately 1 mg/mL. Give requisite dose via a central line over 2 hours (give over at least 6 hours if administered via a large peripheral vein).
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include banana and orange.
- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**  
Dental practitioners' formulary  
May be prescribed as Sodium Fusidate ointment.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 21

- ▶ **Fucidin** (LEO Pharma)

Fusidic acid 50 mg per 1 mL Fusidin 250mg/5ml oral suspension | 50 mL [PoM] £6.73 DT = £6.73

**Powder and solution for solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- ▶ **Fusidic acid (Non-proprietary)**

Sodium fusidate 500 mg Sodium fusidate 500mg powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £38.00

**Cream**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxyanisole, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol)

- ▶ **Fusidic acid (Non-proprietary)**

Fusidic acid 20 mg per 1 gram Fusidic acid 2% cream | 15 gram [PoM] £1.92 DT = £1.46 | 30 gram [PoM] £5.00 DT = £2.92

- ▶ **Fucidin** (LEO Pharma)

Fusidic acid 20 mg per 1 gram Fusidin 20mg/g cream | 15 gram [PoM] £1.92 DT = £1.46 | 30 gram [PoM] £3.59 DT = £2.92

**Ointment**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), woolfat and related substances (including lanolin)

- ▶ **Fucidin** (LEO Pharma)

Sodium fusidate 20 mg per 1 gram Fusidin 20mg/g ointment | 15 gram [PoM] £2.68 DT = £2.68 | 30 gram [PoM] £4.56 DT = £3.55

**Linezolid**

- **DRUG ACTION** Linezolid, an oxazolidinone antibacterial, is active against Gram-positive bacteria including methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), and glycopeptide-resistant enterococci. Resistance to linezolid can develop with prolonged treatment or if the dose is less than that recommended. Linezolid is **not** active against common Gram-negative organisms; it must be given in combination with other antibacterials for mixed infections that also involve Gram-negative organisms.

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Pneumonia (when other antibacterials e.g. a glycopeptide, such as vancomycin, cannot be used) (initiated under specialist supervision) | Complicated skin and soft-tissue infections caused by Gram-positive bacteria, when other antibacterials cannot be used (initiated under specialist supervision)**

▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days: 10 mg/kg every 12 hours, increased if necessary to 10 mg/kg every 8 hours, increased dose can be used if poor response.

▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days: 10 mg/kg every 8 hours.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 10 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 600 mg)
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 600 mg every 12 hours

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****CHM ADVICE (OPTIC NEUROPATHY)**

Severe optic neuropathy may occur rarely, particularly if linezolid is used for longer than 28 days. The CHM recommends that:

- patients should be warned to report symptoms of visual impairment (including blurred vision, visual field defect, changes in visual acuity and colour vision) immediately;
- patients experiencing new visual symptoms (regardless of treatment duration) should be evaluated promptly, and referred to an ophthalmologist if necessary;
- visual function should be monitored regularly if treatment is required for longer than 28 days.

**BLOOD DISORDERS**

Haematopoietic disorders (including thrombocytopenia, anaemia, leucopenia, and pancytopenia) have been reported in patients receiving linezolid. It is recommended that full blood counts are monitored weekly. Close monitoring is recommended in patients who:

- receive treatment for more than 10–14 days;
- have pre-existing myelosuppression;
- are receiving drugs that may have adverse effects on haemoglobin, blood counts, or platelet function;
- have severe renal impairment.

If significant myelosuppression occurs, treatment should be stopped unless it is considered essential, in which case intensive monitoring of blood counts and appropriate management should be implemented.

- **CAUTIONS** Acute confusional states · bipolar depression · carcinoid tumour · phaeochromocytoma · schizophrenia · thyrotoxicosis · uncontrolled hypertension

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ Close observation Unless close observation and blood pressure monitoring possible, linezolid should be avoided in uncontrolled hypertension, phaeochromocytoma,

carcinoid tumour, thyrotoxicosis, bipolar depression, schizophrenia, or acute confusional states.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: linezolid

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anaemia · constipation · diarrhoea · dizziness · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hypertension · increased risk of infection · insomnia · localised pain · nausea · skin reactions · taste altered · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Arrhythmia · chills · dry mouth · eosinophilia · fatigue · gastritis · hyperhidrosis · hyponatraemia · leucopenia · neutropenia · oral disorders · pancreatitis · polyuria · renal failure · seizure · sensation abnormal · thirst · thrombocytopenia · thrombophlebitis · tinnitus · transient ischaemic attack · vision disorders · vulvovaginal disorder
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Antibiotic associated colitis · bone marrow disorders
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Alopecia · angioedema · lactic acidosis · nerve disorders · serotonin syndrome · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in *animal* studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** No dose adjustment necessary but in severe hepatic impairment use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** No dose adjustment necessary but metabolites may accumulate if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor full blood count (including platelet count) weekly.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Infusion to be administered over 30–120 minutes.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include orange.  
There is limited information on use in children and expert advice should be sought.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients should be advised to read the patient information leaflet given with linezolid.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Infusion**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Glucose

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

▶ **Linezolid (Non-proprietary)**

**Linezolid 2 mg per 1 mL** Linezolid 600mg/300ml infusion bags | 10 bag [PoM] £445.00 (Hospital only)

▶ **Zyvox (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Linezolid 2 mg per 1 mL** Zyvox 600mg/300ml infusion bags | 10 bag [PoM] £445.00

**Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 10

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

▶ **Zyvox (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Linezolid 20 mg per 5 mL** Zyvox 100mg/5ml granules for oral suspension | 150 mL [PoM] £222.50

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 10

▶ **Linezolid (Non-proprietary)**

**Linezolid 600 mg** Linezolid 600mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £82.12-£445.00 DT = £335.35

▶ **Zyvox (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Linezolid 600 mg** Zyvox 600mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £445.00 DT = £335.35

## Trimethoprim

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Urinary-tract infections | Respiratory tract infections**

▶ **BY MOUTH**

▶ **Neonate:** Initially 3 mg/kg for 1 dose, then 1–2 mg/kg twice daily.

▶ **Child 4–5 weeks:** 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg)

▶ **Child 6 weeks–5 months:** 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg), alternatively 25 mg twice daily

▶ **Child 6 months–5 years:** 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg), alternatively 50 mg twice daily

▶ **Child 6–11 years:** 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg), alternatively 100 mg twice daily

▶ **Child 12–17 years:** 200 mg twice daily

**Prophylaxis of urinary-tract infection (considered for recurrent infection, significant urinary-tract anomalies, or significant kidney damage)**

▶ **BY MOUTH**

▶ **Neonate:** 2 mg/kg once daily, dose to be taken at night.

▶ **Child 4–5 weeks:** 2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 100 mg), dose to be taken at night

▶ **Child 6 weeks–5 months:** 2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 100 mg), dose to be taken at night, alternatively 12.5 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night

▶ **Child 6 months–5 years:** 2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 100 mg), dose to be taken at night, alternatively 25 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night

▶ **Child 6–11 years:** 2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 100 mg), dose to be taken at night, alternatively 50 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night

▶ **Child 12–17 years:** 100 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night

**Treatment of mild to moderate *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (*Pneumocystis carinii*) pneumonia in patients who cannot tolerate co-trimoxazole (in combination with dapsone)**

▶ **BY MOUTH**

▶ **Child:** 5 mg/kg every 6–8 hours

**Shigellosis | Invasive salmonella infection**

▶ **BY MOUTH**

▶ **Child:** (consult product literature)

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for treatment of pneumocystis pneumonia. Not licensed for use in children under 6 weeks.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Blood dyscrasias

● **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · neonates (specialist supervision required) · predisposition to folate deficiency

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: trimethoprim

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

▶ **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · electrolyte imbalance · fungal overgrowth · headache · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting

▶ **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · angioedema · anxiety · appetite decreased · arthralgia · behaviour abnormal · bone marrow disorders · confusion · constipation · cough · depression · dizziness · dyspnoea · eosinophilia · erythema nodosum · fever · haemolysis · haemolytic anaemia · haemorrhage · hallucination · hepatic disorders · hypoglycaemia · lethargy · leucopenia · meningitis aseptic · movement disorders · myalgia · neutropenia · oral disorders · pancreatitis · paraesthesia · peripheral neuritis · photosensitivity reaction · pseudomembranous enterocolitis · renal impairment · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · sleep disorders · syncope · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) ·

thrombocytopenia • tinnitus • tremor • uveitis • vasculitis • vertigo • wheezing

- **Frequency not known** Gastrointestinal disorder • megaloblastic anaemia • methaemoglobinemia
- **PREGNANCY** Teratogenic risk in first trimester (folate antagonist). Manufacturers advise avoid during pregnancy.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—short-term use not known to be harmful.

#### ● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Use half normal dose after 3 days if estimated glomerular filtration rate 15–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

Use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 15 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Monitoring** Monitor plasma-trimethoprim concentration if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Manufacturer recommends blood counts on long-term therapy (but evidence of practical value unsatisfactory).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Blood disorders On long-term treatment, patients and their carers should be told how to recognise signs of blood disorders and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as fever, sore throat, rash, mouth ulcers, purpura, bruising or bleeding develop.  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Trimethoprim for bacterial infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/trimethoprim-for-bacterial-infections](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/trimethoprim-for-bacterial-infections)

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### **Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

##### ► **Trimethoprim (Non-proprietary)**

**Trimethoprim 10 mg per 1 mL** Trimethoprim 50mg/5mL oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 100 mL [PoM] £5.24 DT = £2.30

##### ► **Monotrim** (Chemidex Pharma Ltd)

**Trimethoprim 10 mg per 1 mL** Monotrim 50mg/5mL oral suspension sugar-free | 100 mL [PoM] £1.77 DT = £2.30

#### **Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

##### ► **Trimethoprim (Non-proprietary)**

**Trimethoprim 100 mg** Trimethoprim 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.99 DT = £0.86

**Trimethoprim 200 mg** Trimethoprim 200mg tablets | 6 tablet [PoM] £2.15 DT = £0.31 | 14 tablet [PoM] £9.99 DT = £0.73

Combinations available: **Co-trimoxazole**, p. 350

## 2.1 Anthrax

### Anthrax

#### Treatment and post-exposure prophylaxis

*Inhalation or gastro-intestinal anthrax* should be treated initially with either ciprofloxacin p. 348 or, in patients over 12 years, doxycycline p. 352 [unlicensed indication] combined with one or two other antibacterials (such as amoxicillin p. 339, benzylpenicillin sodium p. 338, chloramphenicol p. 354, clarithromycin p. 330, clindamycin p. 327, imipenem with cilastatin p. 315, rifampicin p. 364 [unlicensed indication], and vancomycin p. 325). When the condition improves and the sensitivity of the *Bacillus anthracis* strain is known, treatment may be switched to a single antibacterial. Treatment should continue for 60 days because germination may be delayed.

*Cutaneous anthrax* should be treated with either ciprofloxacin [unlicensed indication] or doxycycline

[unlicensed indication] for 7 days. Treatment may be switched to amoxicillin if the infecting strain is susceptible. Treatment may need to be extended to 60 days if exposure is due to aerosol. A combination of antibacterials for 14 days is recommended for cutaneous anthrax with systemic features, extensive oedema, or lesions of the head or neck.

Ciprofloxacin or doxycycline may be given for *post-exposure prophylaxis*. If exposure is confirmed, antibacterial prophylaxis should continue for 60 days. Antibacterial prophylaxis may be switched to amoxicillin after 10–14 days if the strain of *B. anthracis* is susceptible. Vaccination against anthrax may allow the duration of antibacterial prophylaxis to be shortened.

## 2.2 Lyme disease

### Lyme disease

#### Treatment

Amoxicillin p. 339 [unlicensed indication], cefuroxime p. 319 (as cefuroxime axetil) or doxycycline p. 352 are the antibacterials of choice for *early Lyme disease* or *Lyme arthritis* but doxycycline should only be used in children over 12 years of age. If these antibacterials are contra-indicated, a **macrolide** (e.g. clarithromycin p. 330) can be used for early Lyme disease. Intravenous administration of ceftriaxone p. 322, cefotaxime p. 320, or benzylpenicillin sodium p. 338 is recommended for Lyme disease associated with cardiac or neurological complications. The duration of treatment is usually 2–4 weeks; Lyme arthritis may require further treatment.

## 2.3 Methicillin-resistant staphylococcus aureus

### MRSA

#### Management

Infection from *Staphylococcus aureus* strains resistant to met icillin [now discontinued] (met icillin-resistant *Staph. aureus*, MRSA) and to flucloxacillin p. 345 can be difficult to manage. Treatment is guided by the sensitivity of the infecting strain.

Rifampicin p. 364 or fusidic acid p. 357 should **not** be used alone because resistance may develop rapidly. Clindamycin p. 327 alone or a combination of rifampicin and fusidic acid can be used for *skin and soft-tissue infections* caused by MRSA; a **tetracycline** is an alternative in children over 12 years of age. A **glycopeptide** (e.g. vancomycin p. 325) can be used for severe skin and soft-tissue infections associated with MRSA. A combination of a glycopeptide and fusidic acid or a glycopeptide and rifampicin can be considered for skin and soft-tissue infections that have failed to respond to a single antibacterial. Linezolid p. 358 should be reserved for skin and soft-tissue infections that have not responded to other antibacterials or for children who cannot tolerate other antibacterials.

A **glycopeptide** can be used for *pneumonia* associated with MRSA. Linezolid should be reserved for hospital-acquired pneumonia that has not responded to other antibacterials or for children who cannot tolerate other antibacterials.

Trimethoprim p. 359 or nitrofurantoin p. 369 can be used for *urinary-tract infections* caused by MRSA; a **tetracycline** is an alternative in children over 12 years of age. A **glycopeptide** can be used for urinary-tract infections that are severe or resistant to other antibacterials.

A **glycopeptide** can be used for septicaemia associated with MRSA.

See the management of endocarditis, osteomyelitis, or septic arthritis associated with MRSA.

Prophylaxis with vancomycin or teicoplanin p. 325 (alone or in combination with another antibacterial active against other pathogens) is appropriate for patients undergoing surgery if:

- there is a history of MRSA colonisation or infection without documented eradication;
- there is a risk that the patient's MRSA carriage has recurred;
- the patient comes from an area with a high prevalence of MRSA.

It is important that hospitals have infection control guidelines to minimise MRSA transmission, including policies on isolation and treatment of MRSA carriers and on hand hygiene. See eradication of nasal carriage of MRSA in Nose p. 694.

## 2.4 Tuberculosis

### Tuberculosis

16-Mar-2017

#### Treatment phases, overview

Active tuberculosis is treated in two phases—an *initial phase* using four drugs and a *continuation phase* using two drugs in fully sensitive cases. Treatment requires specialised knowledge and supervision, particularly where the disease involves resistant organisms or non-respiratory organs.

There are two regimens recommended for the treatment of tuberculosis in the UK; variations occur in other countries. Either the unsupervised regimen or the supervised regimen should be used; the two regimens should **not** be used concurrently. Compliance with therapy is a major determinant of its success. Treatment needs to be carefully monitored in families in whom concordance may be problematic.

#### Initial phase

The concurrent use of four drugs during the initial phase is designed to reduce the bacterial population as rapidly as possible and to prevent the emergence of drug-resistant bacteria. The drugs are best given as fixed dose combination preparations unless the child is unable to swallow the tablets or one of the components cannot be given because of resistance, intolerance or an inappropriate dose combination. The treatment of choice for the initial phase is the daily use of rifampicin p. 364, ethambutol hydrochloride p. 367, pyrazinamide p. 368 and isoniazid p. 367 (with pyridoxine hydrochloride p. 627 for prophylaxis of isoniazid-induced neuropathy); modified according to drug susceptibility testing. Treatment should be started without waiting for culture results if clinical features or histology results are consistent with tuberculosis; treatment should be continued even if initial culture results are negative. The initial phase drugs should be continued for two months. Where a positive culture for *M. tuberculosis* has been obtained, but susceptibility results are not available after two months, treatment with rifampicin, ethambutol hydrochloride, pyrazinamide and isoniazid (with pyridoxine hydrochloride) should be continued until full susceptibility is confirmed, even if this is for longer than two months.

Streptomycin p. 313 is rarely used in the UK although it may be used in the initial phase of treatment if resistance to isoniazid has been established before therapy is commenced and ethambutol hydrochloride is contra-indicated, or when patients cannot tolerate standard treatment.

#### Continuation phase

After the initial phase, daily treatment is continued for a further 4 months with rifampicin and isoniazid (preferably given as a combination preparation) with pyridoxine hydrochloride. Longer treatment is necessary for meningitis, direct spinal cord involvement, and for resistant organisms which may also require modification of the regimen.

#### Unsupervised treatment

The unsupervised treatment regimen should be used for children who are likely to take antituberculosis drugs reliably **without supervision** by a healthcare worker. Children and families who are unable or unlikely to comply with daily administration of therapy should be treated with the regimen described under Supervised Treatment.

#### Pregnancy and breast-feeding

The standard unsupervised 6-month treatment regimen may be used during pregnancy. Streptomycin should not be given in pregnancy.

The standard unsupervised 6-month treatment regimen may be used during breast-feeding.

#### Neonates

Congenital tuberculosis is acquired from maternal extrapulmonary sites at birth, particularly the genital tract; if infection is suspected, the baby will require treatment with rifampicin, ethambutol hydrochloride, pyrazinamide and isoniazid (with pyridoxine hydrochloride). This regimen is used for 2 months during the initial phase of treatment. After the initial phase, rifampicin and isoniazid with pyridoxine hydrochloride is continued for a further 4 months.

#### Supervised treatment

Drug administration should be **fully supervised** by a healthcare worker (directly observed therapy, DOT) in children or families who cannot comply reliably with the treatment regimen. If daily directly observed therapy is not possible, a supervised dosing schedule of three times a week should be considered. Regimens with a dosing schedule of fewer than three times a week should not be used.

Directly observed therapy should be offered to children or to children whose carers:

- have a history of non-adherence;
- have previously been treated for tuberculosis;
- are in denial of the tuberculosis diagnosis;
- have multidrug-resistant tuberculosis;
- have a major psychiatric or cognitive disorder;
- have a history of homelessness, drug or alcohol misuse;
- are in prison, or have been in the past 5 years;
- are too ill to self-administer treatment;
- request directly observed therapy.

Advice and support should be offered to these children and their carers to assist with treatment completion.

#### Immunocompromised patients

Multi-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* may be present in immunocompromised children. The organism should always be cultured to confirm its type and drug sensitivity.

Confirmed *M. tuberculosis* infection sensitive to first-line drugs should be treated with a standard six month regimen; after completing treatment, children should be closely monitored. The regimen may need to be modified if infection is caused by resistant organisms, and specialist advice is needed.

Specialist advice should be sought about tuberculosis treatment or chemoprophylaxis in a child who is HIV-positive (see also *Latent tuberculosis* below); care is required in choosing the regimen and in avoiding potentially serious interactions. Starting antiretroviral treatment in the first two months of antituberculosis treatment increases the risk of



**Recommended dosage for standard unsupervised 6-month treatment**

Isoniazid	Child: 10 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 300 mg) for 6 months (initial and continuation phases)
Rifampicin	Child: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ body-weight up to 50 kg: 15 mg/kg once daily for 6 months (initial and continuation phases); maximum 450 mg per day;</li><li>▶ body-weight 50 kg and above: 15 mg/kg once daily for 6 months (initial and continuation phases); maximum 600 mg per day</li></ul>
Pyrazinamide	Child: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ body-weight up to 50 kg: 35 mg/kg once daily for 2 months (initial phase); maximum 1.5 g per day;</li><li>▶ body-weight 50 kg and above: 35 mg/kg once daily for 2 months (initial phase); maximum 2 g per day</li></ul>
Ethambutol hydrochloride	Child: 20 mg/kg once daily for 2 months (initial phase)

In general, doses should be rounded up to facilitate administration of suitable volumes of liquid or an appropriate strength of tablet. The exception is ethambutol hydrochloride due to the risk of toxicity. Doses may also need to be recalculated to allow for weight gain in younger children. The fixed-dose combination preparations (*Rifater*<sup>®</sup>, *Rifinah*<sup>®</sup>) are unlicensed for use in children. Consideration may be given to use of these preparations in older children, provided the respective dose of each drug is appropriate for the weight of the child.

**Recommended dosage for intermittent supervised 6-month treatment**

Isoniazid	Child: 15 mg/kg 3 times a week (max. per dose 900 mg) for 6 months (initial and continuation phases)
Rifampicin	Child: 15 mg/kg 3 times a week (max. per dose 900 mg) for 6 months (initial and continuation phases)
Pyrazinamide	Child: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ body-weight up to 50 kg: 50 mg/kg 3 times a week (max. per dose 2 g 3 times a week) for 2 months (initial phase);</li><li>▶ body-weight 50 kg and above: 50 mg/kg 3 times a week (max. per dose 2.5 g 3 times a week) for 2 months (initial phase)</li></ul>
Ethambutol hydrochloride	Child: 30 mg/kg 3 times a week for 2 months (initial phase)

In general, doses should be rounded up to facilitate administration of suitable volumes of liquid or an appropriate strength of tablet. The exception is ethambutol hydrochloride due to the risk of toxicity. Doses may also need to be recalculated to allow for weight gain in younger children. The fixed-dose combination preparations (*Rifater*<sup>®</sup>, *Rifinah*<sup>®</sup>) are unlicensed for use in children. Consideration may be given to use of these preparations in older children, provided the respective dose of each drug is appropriate for the weight of the child.

immune reconstitution syndrome. Treatment for tuberculosis should not routinely exceed 6 months in children who are HIV-positive, unless the tuberculosis has central nervous system involvement, in which case treatment should not routinely extend beyond 12 months.

Infection may also be caused by other mycobacteria e.g. *M. avium* complex, in which case specialist advice on management is needed.

**Extrapulmonary tuberculosis**

**Central nervous system tuberculosis**

Children with central nervous system tuberculosis should be offered rifampicin, ethambutol hydrochloride, pyrazinamide and isoniazid (with pyridoxine hydrochloride) for two months. After completion of the initial treatment phase, rifampicin and isoniazid (with pyridoxine hydrochloride) should be continued for a further 10 months. Treatment for tuberculosis meningitis should be offered if clinical signs and laboratory findings are consistent with the diagnosis, even if a rapid diagnostic test is negative.

An initial high dose dexamethasone p. 439 or prednisolone p. 442 should be started at the same time as antituberculosis therapy and then slowly withdrawn over 4–8 weeks.

Referral for surgery should be considered only in children who have raised intracranial pressure.

**Pericardial tuberculosis**

An initial high dose of oral prednisolone should be offered to children with active pericardial tuberculosis at the same time as initiation of antituberculosis therapy; it should then be slowly withdrawn over 2–3 weeks.

**Latent tuberculosis**

Clinicians should be aware that some groups of children with latent tuberculosis are at increased risk of developing active tuberculosis (such as children who are HIV-positive, diabetic or receiving treatment with a tumour necrosis factor alpha

inhibitor). These children and their carers should be advised of the risks and symptoms of active tuberculosis.

**Close contacts**

All children who are a close contact (prolonged, frequent or intense contact, e.g. household contacts or relations) of a person with confirmed pulmonary or laryngeal tuberculosis should be tested for latent tuberculosis. Children under 2 years should be assessed by a specialist.

**Immunocompromised**

Children in whom latent tuberculosis is suspected and who are anticipated to be, or who are currently immunocompromised (for example, if they are from a high incidence country or have been in close contact with people with suspected infectious or confirmed pulmonary or laryngeal tuberculosis), should be referred to a tuberculosis specialist.

**Chemoprophylaxis for latent tuberculosis**

Neonates who have been in close contact with a person with tuberculosis which has not yet been treated for at least two weeks, should be treated with isoniazid p. 367 (with pyridoxine hydrochloride p. 627) followed by a Mantoux test after six weeks of treatment. If the test is positive (and active tuberculosis is not present) treatment should be continued for six months; if negative (and confirmed by a negative interferon-gamma release assay), the treatment should be stopped and a BCG vaccination given.

Children aged 4 weeks to 2 years who have been in close contact with a person with tuberculosis which has not been treated for at least two weeks, should be treated with either isoniazid (with pyridoxine hydrochloride) alone for six months (preferred regimen if interactions with rifamycins are a concern) or rifampicin p. 364 and isoniazid (with pyridoxine hydrochloride) for three months (recommended when hepatotoxicity is a concern); and then have a Mantoux test. If the test is positive (and active tuberculosis is not present), the treatment course should be completed. If the test is negative, treatment should be continued and re-

assessed after 6 weeks. If the results are then negative (and confirmed by a negative interferon-gamma release assay), the treatment should be stopped and a BCG vaccination given (if the child has not already had one). If the result is positive (and active tuberculosis is not present), the course of treatment should be continued.

Children aged over 2 years should be offered a Mantoux test, and if positive (and active tuberculosis is not present), then treated as above for children aged 4 weeks to 2 years. If the test is negative, reassess after 6 weeks.

Testing for hepatitis B and hepatitis C should be considered before starting treatment for tuberculosis as this may affect the choice of therapy. Children with severe liver disease should be treated under the care of a specialist team; careful monitoring of liver function is necessary in children with non-severe liver disease, abnormal liver function, or who misuse alcohol or drugs.

See advice on immunisation against tuberculosis and tuberculin testing under Vaccines p. 777.

### Treatment failure

Major causes of treatment failure are incorrect prescribing by the physician and inadequate compliance by the child or their carer. Monthly tablet counts and urine examination (rifampicin imparts an orange-red coloration) may be useful indicators of compliance with treatment. Avoid both excessive and inadequate dosage. Treatment should be specialised by a specialist paediatrician.

### Treatment interruptions

A break in antituberculosis treatment of at least two weeks (during the initial phase), or missing more than 20 % of prescribed doses is classified as treatment interruption. Re-establishing treatment appropriately following interruptions is key to ensuring treatment success without relapse, drug resistance or further adverse events. If an adverse reaction occurs upon re-introducing a particular drug, do not give that drug in future regimens and consider extending the total regimen accordingly.

#### Treatment interruptions due to drug-induced hepatotoxicity

Following treatment interruption due to drug-induced hepatotoxicity, all potential causes of hepatotoxicity should be investigated. Once hepatic function has recovered, antituberculosis therapy should be sequentially re-introduced at previous full doses over a period of no more than ten days, initially with ethambutol hydrochloride p. 367 and either isoniazid (with pyridoxine hydrochloride) or rifampicin.

In children with severe or highly infectious tuberculosis who need to interrupt the standard regimen, consider continuing treatment with at least two drugs with low risk of hepatotoxicity, such as ethambutol hydrochloride and streptomycin p. 313 (with or without a quinolone, such as levofloxacin or moxifloxacin), and with ongoing monitoring by a liver specialist.

#### Treatment interruptions due to cutaneous reactions

If a child with severe or highly infectious tuberculosis has a cutaneous reaction, consider continuing treatment with a combination of at least two drugs with a low risk of causing cutaneous reactions, such as ethambutol hydrochloride and streptomycin with monitoring by a dermatologist.

### Antituberculosis drugs

Isoniazid is cheap and highly effective. Like rifampicin it should always be included in any antituberculosis regimen unless there is a specific contra-indication.

Rifampicin, a rifamycin, is a key component of any antituberculosis regimen. Like isoniazid it should always be included unless there is a specific contra-indication.

During the first two months ('initial phase') of rifampicin administration transient disturbance of liver function with elevated serum transaminases is common but generally does

not require interruption of treatment. Occasionally more serious liver toxicity requires a change of treatment particularly in those with pre-existing liver disease.

On intermittent treatment six toxicity syndromes have been recognised—influenza-like, abdominal, and respiratory symptoms, shock, renal failure, and thrombocytopenic purpura—and can occur in 20–30% of patients.

Rifabutin p. 364 is licensed in adults for the treatment of non-tuberculous mycobacterial disease and pulmonary tuberculosis. There is limited experience in children.

Pyrazinamide p. 368 is a bactericidal drug only active against intracellular dividing forms of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*; it exerts its main effect only in the first two or three months. It is particularly useful in tuberculous meningitis because of good meningeal penetration. It is not active against *M. bovis*.

Ethambutol hydrochloride is included in a treatment regimen if isoniazid resistance is suspected; it can be omitted if the risk of resistance is low.

Streptomycin [unlicensed] is now rarely used in the UK except for resistant organisms.

### Drug-resistant tuberculosis

Drug-resistant tuberculosis should be treated by a specialist paediatrician with experience in such cases, and where appropriate facilities for infection-control exist. Multidrug-resistant tuberculosis (*resistance to isoniazid and rifampicin, with or without any other resistance*) requires treatment with at least six antituberculosis drugs to which the mycobacterium is likely to be sensitive. Testing for resistance to second-line drugs is recommended and treatment should be modified according to susceptibility. The risk of resistance is minimised by ensuring therapy is administered in the correct dose and combination for the prescribed duration.

Second-line drugs available for infections caused by resistant organisms, or when first-line drugs cause unacceptable side-effects, include amikacin p. 311, capreomycin, cycloserine p. 366, newer macrolides (e.g. azithromycin p. 329 and clarithromycin p. 330), moxifloxacin p. 677 and prothionamide (prothionamide; no longer on UK market). Availability of suitable formulations may limit choice in children.

#### Single drug-resistant tuberculosis

For single drug-resistance the following treatment regimen is recommended:

##### Resistance to isoniazid p. 367:

- First two months (initial phase): rifampicin p. 364, pyrazinamide p. 368 and ethambutol hydrochloride p. 367
- Continue with (continuation phase): rifampicin and ethambutol hydrochloride for seven months (up to ten months for extensive disease)

##### Resistance to pyrazinamide:

- First two months (initial phase): rifampicin, ethambutol hydrochloride and isoniazid (with pyridoxine hydrochloride p. 627)
- Continue with (continuation phase): rifampicin and isoniazid (with pyridoxine hydrochloride) for seven months

##### Resistance to ethambutol hydrochloride:

- First two months (initial phase): rifampicin, pyrazinamide and isoniazid (with pyridoxine hydrochloride)
- Continue with (continuation phase): rifampicin and isoniazid (with pyridoxine hydrochloride) for four months

##### Resistance to rifampicin:

- Offer treatment with at least six antituberculosis drugs to which the mycobacterium is likely to be sensitive.

## ANTIMYCOBACTERIALS &gt; RIFAMYCINS

## Rifabutin

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prophylaxis of *Mycobacterium avium* complex infections in immunosuppressed patients with low CD4 count**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 300 mg), also consult product literature
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 300 mg once daily, also consult product literature

**Treatment of non-tuberculous mycobacterial disease, in combination with other drugs**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 5 mg/kg once daily for up to 6 months after cultures negative
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 450–600 mg once daily for up to 6 months after cultures negative

**Treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 150–450 mg once daily for at least 6 months

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · discolours soft contact lenses
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: rifabutin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agranulocytosis · anaemia · arthralgia · bronchospasm · chest pain · corneal deposits · decreased leucocytes · dyspnoea · eosinophilia · fever · haemolysis · hepatic disorders · influenza like illness · myalgia · nausea · neutropenia · pancytopenia · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · urine discolouration · uveitis (more common following high doses or concomitant use with drugs that increase plasma concentration) · vomiting
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with rifamycin hypersensitivity.
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Important Rifabutin induces hepatic enzymes and the effectiveness of hormonal contraceptives is reduced; alternative family planning advice should be offered.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose in severe impairment.  
**Monitoring** In patients with pre-existing liver disease or hepatic impairment monitor liver function regularly and particularly frequently in the first 2 months; blood counts should also be monitored in these patients.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Renal function should be checked before treatment.
  - ▶ Hepatic function should be checked before treatment. If there is no evidence of liver disease (and pre-treatment liver function is normal), further checks are only necessary if the patient develops fever, malaise, vomiting, jaundice or unexplained deterioration during treatment. However, hepatic function should be monitored on prolonged therapy.
  - ▶ Blood counts should be monitored on prolonged therapy.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** If treatment interruption occurs, re-introduce with low dosage and increase gradually.

## ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Soft contact lenses Patients or their carers should be advised that rifabutin discolours soft contact lenses.  
 Hepatic disorders Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder, and advised to discontinue treatment and seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as persistent nausea, vomiting, malaise or jaundice develop.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 14

▶ **Mycobutin** (Pfizer Ltd)

Rifabutin 150 mg Mycobutin 150mg capsules | 30 capsule (PoM)  
 £90.38

## Rifampicin

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Brucellosis in combination with other antibacterials** |  
**Legionnaires disease in combination with other antibacterials** | **Serious staphylococcal infections in combination with other antibacterials**

▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

▶ Neonate: 5–10 mg/kg twice daily.

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 5–10 mg/kg twice daily
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: 10 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 600 mg)

**Tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs (intermittent supervised 6-month treatment) (under expert supervision)**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child: 15 mg/kg 3 times a week (max. per dose 900 mg) for 6 months (initial and continuation phases)

**Tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs (standard unsupervised 6-month treatment)**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 50 kg): 15 mg/kg once daily for 6 months (initial and continuation phases); maximum 450 mg per day
- ▶ Child (body-weight 50 kg and above): 15 mg/kg once daily for 6 months (initial and continuation phases); maximum 600 mg per day

**Congenital tuberculosis**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 15 mg/kg once daily for 6 months (initial and continuation phases).

**Prevention of tuberculosis in susceptible close contacts or those who have become tuberculin positive, in combination with isoniazid**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 15 mg/kg daily for 3 months; maximum 450 mg per day
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 15 mg/kg daily for 3 months; maximum 600 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 450 mg daily for 3 months
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 600 mg daily for 3 months

**Prevention of tuberculosis in susceptible close contacts or those who have become tuberculin positive, who are isoniazid-resistant**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 15 mg/kg daily for 6 months; maximum 450 mg per day
- Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 15 mg/kg daily for 6 months; maximum 600 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 450 mg daily for 6 months
- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 600 mg daily for 6 months

**Prevention of secondary case of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–2 months: 10 mg/kg once daily for 4 days
- Child 3 months–11 years: 20 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 600 mg) for 4 days
- Child 12–17 years: 600 mg once daily for 4 days

**Prevention of secondary case of meningococcal meningitis**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 5 mg/kg every 12 hours for 2 days.
- Child 1–11 months: 5 mg/kg every 12 hours for 2 days
- Child 1–11 years: 10 mg/kg every 12 hours (max. per dose 600 mg), for 2 days
- Child 12–17 years: 600 mg every 12 hours for 2 days

**Pruritis due to cholestasis**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 5–10 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 600 mg)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for pruritis due to cholestasis.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · jaundice
- **CAUTIONS** Discolours soft contact lenses
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: rifampicin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Nausea · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Diarrhoea · leucopenia
- **Frequency not known** Abdominal discomfort · acute kidney injury · adrenal insufficiency · agranulocytosis · appetite decreased · disseminated intravascular coagulation · dyspnoea · eosinophilia · flushing · haemolytic anaemia · hepatitis · hypersensitivity · influenza · intracranial haemorrhage · menstrual disorder · muscle weakness · myopathy · oedema · pseudomembranous enterocolitis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · shock · skin reactions · sputum discolouration · sweat discolouration · tear discolouration · urine discolouration · vasculitis · wheezing

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- With intravenous use Bone pain · gastrointestinal disorder · hyperbilirubinaemia · psychotic disorder
- With oral use Psychosis

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Side-effects that mainly occur with intermittent therapy include influenza-like symptoms (with chills, fever, dizziness, bone pain), respiratory symptoms (including shortness of breath), collapse and shock, haemolytic anaemia, thrombocytopenic purpura, and acute renal failure. Discontinue if serious side-effects develop.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with rifamycin hypersensitivity.

**● CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION**

Important Effectiveness of hormonal contraceptives is reduced and alternative family planning advice should be offered.

**● PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise very high doses

teratogenic in *animal* studies in first trimester; risk of neonatal bleeding may be increased in third trimester.

**● BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful.**● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Impaired elimination.

**Dose adjustments** Avoid or do not exceed 8 mg/kg daily.

**Monitoring** In patients with pre-existing liver disease or hepatic impairment, monitor liver function regularly and particularly frequently in the first 2 months; blood counts should also be monitored in these patients.

**● RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution if doses above 10 mg/kg daily.**● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- **Renal function** should be checked before treatment.
- **Hepatic function** should be checked before treatment. If there is no evidence of liver disease (and pre-treatment liver function is normal), further checks are only necessary if the patient develops fever, malaise, vomiting, jaundice or unexplained deterioration during treatment. However, liver function should be monitored on prolonged therapy.
- Blood counts should be monitored in patients on prolonged therapy.

**● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- With intravenous use Displacement value may be significant, consult local reconstitution guidelines; reconstitute with solvent provided. May be further diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium chloride 0.9% to a final concentration of 1.2 mg/mL. Infuse over 2–3 hours.

**● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** If treatment interruption occurs, re-introduce with low dosage and increase gradually.

- With oral use In general, doses should be rounded up to facilitate administration of suitable volumes of liquid or an appropriate strength of tablet. Doses may also need to be recalculated to allow for weight gain in younger children. Flavours of syrup may include raspberry.

**● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Soft contact lenses Patients or their carers should be advised that rifampicin discolours soft contact lenses.

Hepatic disorders Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder, and advised to discontinue treatment and seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as persistent nausea, vomiting, malaise or jaundice develop.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Rifampicin for meningococcal prophylaxis [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/rifampicin-for-meningococcal-prophylaxis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/rifampicin-for-meningococcal-prophylaxis)

Medicines for Children leaflet: Rifampicin for the treatment of tuberculosis [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/rifampicin-for-treatment-of-tuberculosis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/rifampicin-for-treatment-of-tuberculosis)

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 14, 23

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sucrose

► **Rifadin** (Sanofi)

**Rifampicin 20 mg per 1 ml** Rifadin 100mg/5ml syrup | 120 ml [PoM] £4.27

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 14, 23

► **Rifampicin (Non-proprietary)**

**Rifampicin 150 mg** Rifampicin 150mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £50.49 DT = £50.49

**Rifampicin 300 mg** Rifampicin 300mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £123.89 DT = £123.87

- ▶ **Rifadin** (Sanofi)  
**Rifampicin 150 mg** Rifadin 150mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM]  
£18.32 DT = £50.49
- ▶ **Rifampicin 300 mg** Rifadin 300mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM]  
£36.63 DT = £123.87
- ▶ **Rimactane** (Sandoz Ltd)  
**Rifampicin 300 mg** Rimactane 300mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM]  
£21.98

**Powder and solvent for solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- ▶ **Rifadin** (Sanofi)  
**Rifampicin 600 mg** Rifadin 600mg powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £9.20

**Rifampicin with isoniazid**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, rifampicin p. 364, isoniazid p. 367.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Treatment of tuberculosis (continuation phase)**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: Although not licensed in children, consideration may be given to use of *Rifinah*® in older children, provided the respective dose of each drug is appropriate for the weight of the child (consult local protocol).

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- ▶ *Rifinah*® Tablets contain rifampicin and isoniazid; the proportions are expressed in the form x/y where x and y are the strengths in milligrams of rifampicin and isoniazid respectively.
- ▶ Each *Rifinah*® 150/100 Tablet contains rifampicin 150 mg and isoniazid 100 mg.
- ▶ Each *Rifinah*® 300/150 Tablet contains rifampicin 300 mg and isoniazid 150 mg.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: isoniazid · rifampicin
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Isoniazid and rifampicin combination for latent tuberculosis [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/isoniazid-and-rifampicin-combination-latent-tuberculosis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/isoniazid-and-rifampicin-combination-latent-tuberculosis)

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 14, 23

- ▶ **Rifinah** (Sanofi)  
**Isoniazid 100 mg, Rifampicin 150 mg** Rifinah 150mg/100mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £19.09
- Isoniazid 150 mg, Rifampicin 300 mg** Rifinah 300mg/150mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £25.22

**Rifampicin with isoniazid and pyrazinamide**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, rifampicin p. 364, isoniazid p. 367, pyrazinamide p. 368.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Initial treatment of tuberculosis (in combination with ethambutol)**

- ▶ Child: Although not licensed in children, consideration may be given to use of *Rifater*® in older children, provided the respective dose of each drug is

appropriate for the weight of the child (consult local protocol).

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- ▶ Tablet quantities refer to the number of *Rifater*® Tablets which should be taken. Each *Rifater*® Tablet contains isoniazid 50 mg, pyrazinamide 300 mg and rifampicin 120 mg.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: isoniazid · pyrazinamide · rifampicin

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 14, 22

- ▶ **Rifater** (Sanofi)  
**Isoniazid 50 mg, Rifampicin 120 mg, Pyrazinamide 300 mg** Rifater tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £26.34

**ANTIMYCOBACTERIALS > OTHER****Cycloserine****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Tuberculosis resistant to first-line drugs, in combination with other drugs**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 2–11 years: Initially 5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 250 mg), then increased if necessary up to 10 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 500 mg), dose to be increased according to blood concentration and response
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 250 mg every 12 hours for 2 weeks, then increased if necessary up to 500 mg every 12 hours, dose to be increased according to blood concentration and response

**PHARMACOKINETICS**

- ▶ Cycloserine penetrates the CNS.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Alcohol dependence · depression · epilepsy · psychotic states · severe anxiety
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cycloserine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Behaviour abnormal · coma · confusion · congestive heart failure · drowsiness · dysarthria · headache · hyperirritability · megaloblastic anaemia · memory loss · neurological effects · paraesthesia · paresis · psychosis · rash · reflexes increased · seizures · suicidal ideation · tremor · vertigo
- **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION**  
**CNS toxicity** Discontinue or reduce dose if symptoms of CNS toxicity occur.  
**Rashes or allergic dermatitis** Discontinue or reduce dose if rashes or allergic dermatitis develop.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—crosses the placenta.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—amount too small to be harmful.

**● RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

- ▶ **Dose adjustments** Increase interval between doses if creatinine clearance less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- ▶ **Monitoring** Monitor blood-cycloserine concentration if creatinine clearance less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ Blood concentration should not exceed a peak concentration of 30 mg/litre (measured 3–4 hours after the dose).

Monitor haematological, renal, and hepatic function.



### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 8

#### ► Cycloserine (Non-proprietary)

**Cycloserine 250 mg** Cycloserine 250mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £442.89 DT = £442.89

## Ethambutol hydrochloride

19-Mar-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs (standard unsupervised 6-month treatment)**

#### ► BY MOUTH

► Child: 20 mg/kg once daily for 2 months (initial phase)

**Tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs (intermittent supervised 6-month treatment) (under expert supervision)**

#### ► BY MOUTH

► Child: 30 mg/kg 3 times a week for 2 months (initial phase)

**Congenital tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs**

#### ► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 20 mg/kg once daily for 2 months (initial phase).

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Optic neuritis · poor vision

● **CAUTIONS** Young children

### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

► Understanding warnings Patients who cannot understand warnings about visual side-effects should, if possible, be given an alternative drug. In particular, ethambutol should be used with caution in children until they are at least 5 years old and capable of reporting symptomatic visual changes accurately.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ethambutol

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Hyperuricaemia · nerve disorders · visual impairment

► **Rare or very rare** Nephritis tubulointerstitial

► **Frequency not known** Alveolitis allergic · appetite decreased · asthenia · confusion · dizziness · eosinophilia · fever · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · gout · hallucination · headache · jaundice · leucopenia · nausea · nephrotoxicity · neutropenia · photosensitive lichenoid eruption · sensation abnormal · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · taste metallic · thrombocytopenia · tremor · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Ocular toxicity is more common where excessive dosage is used or if the patient's renal function is impaired. Early discontinuation of the drug is almost always followed by recovery of eyesight.

● **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Risk of optic nerve damage. Should preferably be avoided in patients with renal impairment.

**Dose adjustments** If creatinine clearance less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, use 15–25 mg/kg (max. 2.5 g) 3 times a week.

**Monitoring** If creatinine clearance less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, monitor plasma-ethambutol concentration.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

► 'Peak' concentration (2–2.5 hours after dose) should be 2–6 mg/litre (7–22 micromol/litre); 'trough' (pre-dose) concentration should be less than 1 mg/litre (4 micromol/litre).

► Renal function should be checked before treatment.  
► Visual acuity should be tested by Snellen chart before treatment with ethambutol.  
► In young children, routine ophthalmological monitoring recommended.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of ethambutol is required, the following strength is used: 400 mg/5 mL.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Ocular toxicity The earliest features of ocular toxicity are subjective and patients should be advised to discontinue therapy immediately if they develop deterioration in vision and promptly seek further advice.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Ethambutol for the treatment of tuberculosis [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ethambutol-for-the-treatment-of-tuberculosis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ethambutol-for-the-treatment-of-tuberculosis)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

#### ► Ethambutol hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Ethambutol hydrochloride 100 mg** Ethambutol 100mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £12.00 DT = £11.51

**Ethambutol hydrochloride 400 mg** Ethambutol 400mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £42.74 DT = £42.74

## Isoniazid

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs (standard unsupervised 6-month treatment)**

#### ► BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child: 10 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 300 mg) for 6 months (initial and continuation phases)

**Tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs (intermittent supervised 6-month treatment) (under expert supervision)**

#### ► BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child: 15 mg/kg 3 times a week (max. per dose 900 mg) for 6 months (initial and continuation phases)

**Congenital tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs**

#### ► BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 10 mg/kg daily for 6 months (initial and continuation phases).

**Prevention of tuberculosis in susceptible close contacts or those who have become tuberculin positive**

#### ► INITIALLY BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 10 mg/kg daily for 6 months.

► Child 1 month–11 years: 10 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 300 mg) for 6 months, alternatively (by mouth) 10 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 300 mg) for 3 months, to be taken in combination with rifampicin

► Child 12–17 years: 300 mg daily for 6 months, alternatively (by mouth) 300 mg daily for 3 months, to be taken in combination with rifampicin

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Drug-induced liver disease

● **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · alcohol dependence · diabetes mellitus · epilepsy · history of psychosis · HIV infection · malnutrition · slow acetylator status (increased risk of side-effects)

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ **Peripheral neuropathy** Peripheral neuropathy is more likely to occur where there are pre-existing risk factors such as diabetes, alcohol dependence, chronic renal failure, pregnancy, malnutrition and HIV infection. In patients at increased risk of peripheral neuropathy, pyridoxine hydrochloride p. 627 should be given prophylactically from the start of treatment.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: isoniazid

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Uncommon** Hepatic disorders
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · anaemia · aplastic anaemia · eosinophilia · fever · gynaecomastia · haemolytic anaemia · hyperglycaemia · lupus-like syndrome · nerve disorders · optic atrophy · pancreatitis · pellagra · psychosis · seizure · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · vasculitis

● **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful; prophylactic pyridoxine recommended.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Theoretical risk of convulsions and neuropathy; prophylactic pyridoxine advisable in mother. **Monitoring** In breast-feeding, monitor infant for possible toxicity.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

**Monitoring** In patients with pre-existing liver disease or hepatic impairment monitor liver function regularly and particularly frequently in the first 2 months.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Risk of ototoxicity and peripheral neuropathy; prophylactic pyridoxine hydrochloride p. 627 recommended.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ **Renal function** should be checked before treatment.
- ▶ **Hepatic function** should be checked before treatment. If there is no evidence of liver disease (and pre-treatment liver function is normal), further checks are only necessary if the patient develops fever, malaise, vomiting, jaundice or unexplained deterioration during treatment.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Doses may need to be recalculated to allow for weight gain in younger children.

- ▶ **With oral use** In general, doses should be rounded up to facilitate administration of suitable volumes of liquid or an appropriate strength of tablet. The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of isoniazid is required, the following strength is used: 50 mg/5 mL.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Hepatic disorders** Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder, and advised to discontinue treatment and seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as persistent nausea, vomiting, malaise or jaundice develop.

**Medicines for Children leaflet:** Isoniazid for latent tuberculosis [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/isoniazid-for-latent-tuberculosis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/isoniazid-for-latent-tuberculosis)

**Medicines for Children leaflet:** Isoniazid for treatment of tuberculosis [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/isoniazid-for-the-treatment-of-tuberculosis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/isoniazid-for-the-treatment-of-tuberculosis)

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Solution for injection**▶ **Isoniazid (Non-proprietary)**

**Isoniazid 25 mg per 1 ml** Isoniazid 50mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule **[PoM]** £361.98

**Tablet**

**CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS** 8, 22

▶ **Isoniazid (Non-proprietary)**

**Isoniazid 50 mg** Isoniazid 50mg tablets | 56 tablet **[PoM]** £19.28 DT = £19.26

**Isoniazid 100 mg** Isoniazid 100mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £19.24 DT = £19.24

**Isoniazid 300 mg** Isoniazid 300mg tablets | 30 tablet **[PoM]** £

**Combinations available:** *Rifampicin with isoniazid*, p. 366 · *Rifampicin with isoniazid and pyrazinamide*, p. 366

**Pyrazinamide**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs (standard unsupervised 6-month treatment)**

▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ **Child** (body-weight up to 50 kg): 35 mg/kg once daily for 2 months (initial phase); maximum 1.5 g per day
- ▶ **Child** (body-weight 50 kg and above): 35 mg/kg once daily for 2 months (initial phase); maximum 2 g per day

**Tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs (intermittent supervised 6-month treatment) (under expert supervision)**

▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ **Child** (body-weight up to 50 kg): 50 mg/kg 3 times a week (max. per dose 2 g 3 times a week) for 2 months (initial phase)
- ▶ **Child** (body-weight 50 kg and above): 50 mg/kg 3 times a week (max. per dose 2.5 g 3 times a week) for 2 months (initial phase)

**Congenital tuberculosis, in combination with other drugs**

▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ **Neonate:** 35 mg/kg once daily for 2 months (initial phase).

● **CAUTIONS** Diabetes

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: pyrazinamide

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Appetite decreased · arthralgia · dysuria · flushing · gout aggravated · hepatic disorders · malaise · nausea · peptic ulcer aggravated · photosensitivity reaction · sideroblastic anaemia · skin reactions · splenomegaly · vomiting

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Idiosyncratic hepatotoxicity more common; avoid in severe hepatic impairment.

**Monitoring** In patients with pre-existing liver disease or hepatic impairment monitor liver function regularly and particularly frequently in the first 2 months.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** If estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, use 25–30 mg/kg 3 times a week.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ **Renal function** should be checked before treatment.
- ▶ **Hepatic function** should be checked before treatment. If there is no evidence of liver disease (and pre-treatment liver function is normal), further checks are only necessary if the patient develops fever, malaise, vomiting, jaundice or unexplained deterioration during treatment.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** In general, doses should be rounded up to facilitate administration of suitable volumes of liquid or an appropriate strength of tablet. Doses may also need to be recalculated to allow for weight gain in younger children.

The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of pyrazinamide is required, the following strength is used: 500 mg/5 mL.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Hepatic disorders Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder, and advised to discontinue treatment and seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as persistent nausea, vomiting, malaise or jaundice develop.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Pyrazinamide for treatment of tuberculosis [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/pyrazinamide-for-tuberculosis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/pyrazinamide-for-tuberculosis)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

##### ► Pyrazinamide (Non-proprietary)

**Pyrazinamide 500 mg** Pyrazinamide 500mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £36.12 DT = £36.12

##### ► Zinamide (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

**Pyrazinamide 500 mg** Zinamide 500mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £31.35 DT = £36.12

Combinations available: **Rifampicin with isoniazid and pyrazinamide**, p. 366

## 2.5 Urinary tract infections

### Urinary-tract infections

#### Description of condition

Urinary-tract infections are common bacterial infections usually caused by *Escherichia coli*, *Proteus mirabilis*, or *Staphylococcus saprophyticus*. Occasionally, urinary-tract infections can also be caused by *Citrobacter* species, *Serratia marcescens*, *Pseudomonas* species, *Klebsiella aerogenes*, or *Staphylococcus epidermidis*.

The most common urinary-tract infection symptoms in children younger than 3 months are fever, vomiting, lethargy, and irritability. Children older than 3 months usually present with fever with urinary frequency or dysuria.

Lower urinary-tract infections are associated with inflammation of the bladder (cystitis) and urethra (urethritis), whereas upper urinary-tract infections are associated with inflammation of the renal pelvis and the kidneys (pyelonephritis). Urinary-tract infections are considered recurrent after at least two episodes of acute pyelonephritis, three episodes of cystitis or one episode of acute pyelonephritis plus one or more episodes of cystitis.

Urinary-tract infections are more common in girls than boys. The risk of contracting a urinary-tract infection is greater in children with functional and structural abnormalities that may cause urinary retention (e.g. vesicoureteric reflux, genital malformation, dysfunctional elimination syndrome, or constipation). Acute pyelonephritis, especially in children with vesicoureteric reflux, may lead to renal scarring and hypertension.

#### Aims of treatment

The aim of treatment is to relieve symptoms, prevent systemic infection, and to reduce the risk of complications.

#### Treatment

Urinary-tract infections require prompt antibacterial treatment to minimise the risk of complications including renal scarring, hypertension and renal failure.

[EvGr] Initial treatment for symptomatic bacteraemia should not be delayed while waiting for urine culture results and the

antibacterial used should reflect local bacterial sensitivity. Urine culture results will determine the subsequent choice of antibacterial therapy.

Children under 3 months of age with a suspected urinary-tract infection and all children with a high risk of serious illness should be referred urgently to paediatric specialist care.

Parenteral antibacterials should be used to treat urinary-tract infections in children under 1 month old who present with a fever or, children 1–3 months old who appear unwell or present with abnormal white blood cell counts. A third-generation cephalosporin (such as cefotaxime p. 320 or ceftriaxone p. 322) should be given in combination with an antibacterial active against listeria (such as ampicillin p. 341 or amoxicillin p. 339).

Children over 3 months of age with cystitis should receive a 3-day course of oral antibacterial in line with the local formulary which may include trimethoprim p. 359, nitrofurantoin below, a cephalosporin or amoxicillin as options. Children should be reassessed if they are still feeling unwell 24–48 hours after starting treatment.

Children over 3 months of age with acute pyelonephritis should be treated with an oral antibacterial with low resistance patterns such as a cephalosporin or co-amoxiclav p. 343 for 7–10 days and referral to a paediatric specialist should be considered. Alternatively, a broad-spectrum antibacterial such as cefotaxime or ceftriaxone can be administered intravenously for the first 2–4 days followed by an oral antibacterial for a total duration of 10 days. Once-daily dosing is recommended when intravenous aminoglycosides (e.g. gentamicin p. 312, amikacin p. 311) are used in children with urinary-tract infections. If intravenous treatment is indicated but not possible, intramuscular treatment should be considered. ⚠

#### Prevention of recurrence

[EvGr] Children who have had a urinary-tract infection should be encouraged to drink plenty of fluids. Dysfunctional elimination syndromes and constipation should also be addressed. Antibacterial prophylaxis may be considered in children with recurrent symptomatic urinary-tract infections (see *Prevention of urinary-tract infection* in Antibacterials, use for prophylaxis p. 302).

When children develop a urinary-tract infection whilst taking antibacterial prophylaxis, a different antibacterial should be chosen to treat the infection rather than increasing the dose of the antibacterial used for prophylaxis.



### ANTIBACTERIALS > OTHER

#### Nitrofurantoin

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Acute uncomplicated urinary-tract infections

##### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Child 3 months–11 years: 750 micrograms/kg 4 times a day for 3–7 days

► Child 12–17 years: 50 mg 4 times a day for 3–7 days

##### ► BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Child 12–17 years: 100 mg twice daily, dose to be taken with food

##### Severe chronic recurrent urinary-tract infections

##### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Child 12–17 years: 100 mg 4 times a day for 3–7 days

##### Prophylaxis of urinary-tract infection (considered for recurrent infection, significant urinary-tract anomalies, or significant kidney damage)

##### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Child 3 months–11 years: 1 mg/kg once daily, dose to be taken at night continued →

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 50–100 mg once daily, dose to be taken at night

#### Genito-urinary surgical prophylaxis

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100 mg twice daily on day of procedure and for 3 days after

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · G6PD deficiency · infants less than 3 months old
- **CAUTIONS** Anaemia · diabetes mellitus · electrolyte imbalance · folate deficiency · pulmonary disease · susceptibility to peripheral neuropathy · urine may be coloured yellow or brown · vitamin B deficiency
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: nitrofurantoin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · anaemia · angioedema · aplastic anaemia · appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · chest pain · chills · circulatory collapse · confusion · cough · cyanosis · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dyspnoea · eosinophilia · euphoric mood · fever · granulocytopenia · haemolytic anaemia · headache · hepatic disorders · idiopathic intracranial hypertension · increased risk of infection · leucopenia · lupus-like syndrome · nausea · nerve disorders · nystagmus · pancreatitis · psychotic disorder · pulmonary hypersensitivity · pulmonary reaction (possible association with lupus erythematosus-like syndrome) · respiratory disorders · skin reactions · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · thrombocytopenia · urine discolouration · vertigo · vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid at term—may produce neonatal haemolysis.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid; only small amounts in milk but enough to produce haemolysis in G6PD-deficient infants.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; cholestatic jaundice and chronic active hepatitis reported.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Risk of peripheral neuropathy; antibacterial efficacy depends on renal secretion of the drug into urinary tract. Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 45 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; may be used with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–44 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> as a short-course only (3 to 7 days), to treat uncomplicated lower urinary-tract infection caused by suspected or proven multidrug resistant bacteria and only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** On long-term therapy, monitor liver function and monitor for pulmonary symptoms (discontinue if deterioration in lung function).
- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** False positive urinary glucose (if tested for reducing substances).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Nitrofurantoin for urinary tract infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/nitrofurantoin-for-urinary-tract-infections](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/nitrofurantoin-for-urinary-tract-infections)

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 14, 21

##### ▶ Nitrofurantoin (Non-proprietary)

**Nitrofurantoin 50 mg** Nitrofurantoin 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £35.00 DT = £11.36 | 100 tablet [PoM] £40.57-£111.89

**Nitrofurantoin 100 mg** Nitrofurantoin 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £12.99 DT = £8.13 | 100 tablet [PoM] £22.14-£29.04

##### ▶ Genfura (Genesis Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Nitrofurantoin 50 mg** Genfura 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £8.00 DT = £11.36 | 100 tablet [PoM] £28.57

**Nitrofurantoin 100 mg** Genfura 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £8.50 DT = £8.13 | 100 tablet [PoM] £30.36

#### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 14, 21

##### ▶ Nitrofurantoin (Non-proprietary)

**Nitrofurantoin 5 mg per 1 ml** Nitrofurantoin 25mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM] £446.95 DT = £446.95

#### Modified-release capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 14, 21, 25

##### ▶ Macrobid (AMCO)

**Nitrofurantoin 100 mg** Macrobid 100mg modified-release capsules | 14 capsule [PoM] £9.50 DT = £9.50

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 14, 21

##### ▶ Nitrofurantoin (Non-proprietary)

**Nitrofurantoin 50 mg** Nitrofurantoin 50mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £15.42 DT = £15.42

**Nitrofurantoin 100 mg** Nitrofurantoin 100mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £10.42 DT = £10.42

## 3 Fungal infection

### Antifungals, systemic use

#### Fungal infections

The systemic treatment of common fungal infections is outlined below; specialist treatment is required in most forms of systemic or disseminated fungal infections. Local treatment is suitable for a number of fungal infections (genital, bladder, eye, ear, oropharynx, and skin).

#### Aspergillosis

Aspergillosis most commonly affects the respiratory tract but in severely immunocompromised patients, invasive forms can affect the heart, brain, and skin. Voriconazole p. 377 is the treatment of choice for aspergillosis; liposomal amphotericin p. 373 is an alternative first-line treatment when voriconazole cannot be used. Caspofungin p. 372 or itraconazole p. 375 can be used in patients who are refractory to, or intolerant of voriconazole and liposomal amphotericin. Itraconazole is also used for the treatment of chronic pulmonary aspergillosis or as an adjunct in the treatment of allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis [unlicensed indication].

#### Candidiasis

Many superficial candidal infections, including infections of the skin, are treated locally. Systemic antifungal treatment is required in widespread or intractable infection. Vaginal candidiasis can be treated with locally acting antifungals; alternatively, fluconazole p. 374 can be given by mouth.

*Oropharyngeal candidiasis* generally responds to topical therapy. Fluconazole is given by mouth for unresponsive infections; it is reliably absorbed and is effective. Itraconazole may be used for infections that do not respond to fluconazole. Topical therapy may not be adequate in immunocompromised children and an oral triazole antifungal is preferred.

For *invasive or disseminated candidiasis*, either amphotericin by intravenous infusion or an **echinocandin** can be used. Fluconazole is an alternative for *Candida albicans* infection in clinically stable children who have not received an azole antifungal recently. Amphotericin should be considered for the initial treatment of CNS candidiasis. Voriconazole can be used for infections caused by fluconazole-resistant *Candida* spp. when oral therapy is required, or in children intolerant of amphotericin or an echinocandin. In refractory cases, flucytosine p. 378 can be used with intravenous amphotericin.

#### Cryptococcosis

Cryptococcosis is uncommon but infection in the immunocompromised, especially in HIV-positive patients,

can be life-threatening; cryptococcal meningitis is the most common form of fungal meningitis. The treatment of choice in cryptococcal meningitis is amphotericin by intravenous infusion and flucytosine by intravenous infusion for 2 weeks, followed by fluconazole by mouth for 8 weeks or until cultures are negative. In cryptococcosis, fluconazole is sometimes given alone as an alternative in HIV-positive patients with mild, localised infections or in those who cannot tolerate amphotericin. Following successful treatment, fluconazole can be used for prophylaxis against relapse until immunity recovers.

### Histoplasmosis

Histoplasmosis is rare in temperate climates; it can be life-threatening, particularly in HIV-infected persons. Itraconazole can be used for the treatment of immunocompetent patients with indolent non-meningeal infection, including chronic pulmonary histoplasmosis. Amphotericin by intravenous infusion is used for the initial treatment of fulminant or severe infections, followed by a course of itraconazole by mouth. Following successful treatment, itraconazole can be used for prophylaxis against relapse until immunity recovers.

### Skin and nail infections

Mild localised fungal infections of the skin (including tinea corporis, tinea cruris, and tinea pedis) respond to topical therapy. Systemic therapy is appropriate if topical therapy fails, if many areas are affected, or if the site of infection is difficult to treat such as in infections of the nails (onychomycosis) and of the scalp (tinea capitis).

Oral imidazole or triazole antifungals (particularly itraconazole) and terbinafine p. 726 are used more frequently than griseofulvin p. 379 because they have a broader spectrum of activity and require a shorter duration of treatment.

*Tinea capitis* is treated systemically; additional topical application of an antifungal may reduce transmission. Griseofulvin is used for tinea capitis in adults and children; it is effective against infections caused by *Trichophyton tonsurans* and *Microsporum* spp. Terbinafine is used for tinea capitis caused by *T. tonsurans* [unlicensed indication]. The role of terbinafine in the management of *Microsporum* infections is uncertain. Fluconazole or itraconazole are alternatives in the treatment of tinea capitis caused by *T. tonsurans* or *Microsporum* spp. [both unlicensed indications].

*Pityriasis versicolor* may be treated with itraconazole by mouth if topical therapy is ineffective; fluconazole by mouth is an alternative. Oral terbinafine is **not** effective for pityriasis versicolor.

Antifungal treatment may not be necessary in asymptomatic patients with tinea infection of the nails. If treatment is necessary, a systemic antifungal is more effective than topical therapy. Terbinafine and itraconazole have largely replaced griseofulvin for the systemic treatment of onychomycosis, particularly of the toenail; they should be used under specialist advice in children. Although terbinafine is not licensed for use in children, it is considered to be the drug of choice for onychomycosis. Itraconazole can be administered as intermittent 'pulse' therapy. Topical antifungals also have a role in the treatment of onychomycosis.

### Immunocompromised children

Immunocompromised children are at particular risk of fungal infections and may receive antifungal drugs prophylactically; oral triazole antifungals are the drugs of choice for prophylaxis. Fluconazole is more reliably absorbed than itraconazole, but fluconazole is not effective against *Aspergillus* spp. Itraconazole is preferred in patients at risk of invasive aspergillosis. Micafungin p. 372 can be used for prophylaxis of candidiasis in patients undergoing haematopoietic stem cell transplantation when fluconazole or itraconazole cannot be used.

Amphotericin by intravenous infusion or caspofungin is used for the empirical treatment of serious fungal infections in immunocompromised children; caspofungin is not effective against fungal infections of the CNS.

### Triazole antifungals

Triazole antifungal drugs have a role in the prevention and systemic treatment of fungal infections.

Fluconazole is very well absorbed after oral administration. It also achieves good penetration into the cerebrospinal fluid to treat fungal meningitis. Fluconazole is excreted largely unchanged in the urine and can be used to treat candiduria.

Itraconazole is active against a wide range of dermatophytes. There is limited information available on use in children. Itraconazole capsules require an acid environment in the stomach for optimal absorption. Itraconazole has been associated with liver damage and should be avoided or used with caution in patients with liver disease; fluconazole is less frequently associated with hepatotoxicity.

Voriconazole is a broad-spectrum antifungal drug which is licensed in adults for use in life-threatening infections.

### Imidazole antifungals

The imidazole antifungals include clotrimazole p. 515, econazole nitrate p. 515, ketoconazole p. 444, and tioconazole p. 726. They are used for the local treatment of vaginal candidiasis and for dermatophyte infections. Miconazole p. 516 can be used locally for oral infections; it is also effective in intestinal infections. Systemic absorption may follow use of miconazole oral gel and may result in significant drug interactions.

### Polyene antifungals

The polyene antifungals include amphotericin and nystatin p. 710; neither drug is absorbed when given by mouth. Nystatin is used for oral, oropharyngeal, and perioral infections by local application in the mouth. Nystatin is also used for *Candida albicans* infection of the skin.

Amphotericin p. 373 by intravenous infusion is used for the treatment of systemic fungal infections and is active against most fungi and yeasts. It is highly protein bound and penetrates poorly into body fluids and tissues. When given parenterally amphotericin is toxic and side-effects are common. Lipid formulations of amphotericin (*Abelcet*® and *AmBisome*®) are significantly less toxic and are recommended when the conventional formulation of amphotericin is contra-indicated because of toxicity, especially nephrotoxicity or when response to conventional amphotericin is inadequate; lipid formulations are more expensive.

### Echinocandin antifungals

The echinocandin antifungals include caspofungin p. 372 and micafungin p. 372. They are only active against *Aspergillus* spp. and *Candida* spp.; however, micafungin is not used for the treatment of aspergillosis. Echinocandins are not effective against fungal infections of the CNS. Echinocandin antifungals have a role in the prevention and systemic treatment of fungal infections.

### Other antifungals

Flucytosine p. 378 is used with amphotericin in a synergistic combination. Bone marrow depression can occur which limits its use, particularly in HIV-positive patients; weekly blood counts are necessary during prolonged therapy. Resistance to flucytosine can develop during therapy and sensitivity testing is essential before and during treatment. Flucytosine has a role in the treatment of systemic candidiasis and cryptococcal meningitis.



Griseofulvin p. 379 is effective for widespread or intractable dermatophyte infections but has been superseded by newer antifungals, particularly for nail infections. Griseofulvin is used in the treatment of tinea capitis. It is the drug of choice for trichophyton infections in children. Duration of therapy is dependent on the site of the infection and may extend to a number of months.

Terbinafine p. 726 is the drug of choice for fungal nail infections and is also used for ringworm infections where oral treatment is considered appropriate.

## ANTIFUNGALS > ECHINOCANDIN ANTIFUNGALS

### Caspofungin

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Invasive aspergillosis | Invasive candidiasis | Empirical treatment of systemic fungal infections in patients with neutropenia**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: 25 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once daily.

- Child 1–2 months: 25 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once daily
- Child 3–11 months: 50 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once daily
- Child 1–17 years: 70 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once daily (max. per dose 70 mg) for 1 day, then 50 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once daily (max. per dose 70 mg); increased to 70 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once daily (max. per dose 70 mg), dose may be increased if lower dose tolerated but inadequate response

#### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- Manufacturer advises increase dose to 70 mg/m<sup>2</sup> daily (max. 70 mg daily) with concurrent use of some enzyme inducers (such as carbamazepine, dexamethasone, phenytoin, and rifampicin).

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: caspofungin

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Arthralgia · diarrhoea · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · fever · headache · hyperhidrosis · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · ascites · chest discomfort · coagulation disorder · congestive heart failure · constipation · cough · disorientation · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dysphagia · excessive tearing · eyelid oedema · fatigue · flatulence · fluid overload · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · haematuria · hepatic disorders · hyperbilirubinaemia · hyperglycaemia · hypertension · hypotension · hypoxia · insomnia · laryngeal pain · leucopenia · malaise · metabolic acidosis · muscle weakness · myalgia · nasal congestion · oedema · pain · palpitations · renal impairment · respiratory disorders · sensation abnormal · taste altered · thrombocytopenia · tremor · vision blurred
- **Frequency not known** Severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—toxicity in *animal* studies.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in *animal* studies—manufacturer advises avoid.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** No information available for severe impairment.

**Dose adjustments** Usual initial dose, then use 70% of normal maintenance dose in moderate impairment.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion* (Candidas®), allow vial to reach room temperature; initially reconstitute 50 mg with 10.5 mL Water for Injections to produce a 5.2 mg/mL solution, or reconstitute 70 mg with 10.5 mL Water for Injections to produce a 7.2 mg/mL solution; mix gently to dissolve; dilute requisite dose to a final concentration not exceeding

500 micrograms/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 60 minutes; incompatible with glucose solutions.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder for solution for infusion**

##### ► Caspofungin (Non-proprietary)

**Caspofungin (as Caspofungin acetate) 50 mg** Caspofungin 50mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £81.92–£327.67

**Caspofungin (as Caspofungin acetate) 70 mg** Caspofungin 70mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £104.20–£416.78

##### ► Candidas (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Caspofungin (as Caspofungin acetate) 50 mg** Candidas 50mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £327.67

**Caspofungin (as Caspofungin acetate) 70 mg** Candidas 70mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £416.78

### Micafungin

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Invasive candidiasis**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate (administered on expert advice): 2 mg/kg once daily for at least 14 days; increased if necessary to 4 mg/kg once daily, increase dose if response inadequate.

- Child (body-weight up to 40 kg): 2 mg/kg once daily for at least 14 days; increased if necessary to 4 mg/kg once daily, increase dose if response inadequate
- Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): 100 mg once daily for at least 14 days; increased if necessary to 200 mg once daily, increase dose if response inadequate

#### **Oesophageal candidiasis**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 16–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): 3 mg/kg once daily
- Child 16–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 150 mg once daily

**Prophylaxis of candidiasis in patients undergoing bone-marrow transplantation or who are expected to become neutropenic for over 10 days**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: 1 mg/kg once daily continue for at least 7 days after neutrophil count is in desirable range.

- Child (body-weight up to 40 kg): 1 mg/kg once daily continue for at least 7 days after neutrophil count is in desirable range
- Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): 50 mg once daily continue for at least 7 days after neutrophil count is in desirable range

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: micafungin

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · confusion · constipation · diarrhoea · disseminated intravascular coagulation · dizziness · drowsiness · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · eosinophilia · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · haemolysis · haemolytic anaemia · headache · hepatic disorders · hepatic failure (potentially life-threatening) · hyperbilirubinaemia · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · hypertension · hypoalbuminaemia · hypotension · insomnia · leucopenia · nausea · neutropenia · palpitations · pancytopenia · peripheral oedema · renal impairment · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · shock · skin reactions · taste altered · thrombocytopenia · tremor · vomiting

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—toxicity in *animal* studies.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—present in milk in *animal* studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in mild to moderate impairment. Avoid in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; renal function may deteriorate.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Monitor renal function.
  - ▶ Monitor liver function—discontinue if significant and persistent abnormalities in liver function tests develop.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion* reconstitute each vial with 5 mL Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; gently rotate vial, without shaking, to dissolve; dilute requisite dose to a concentration of 0.5–2 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; protect infusion from light; give over 60 minutes.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder for solution for infusion**

- ▶ **Mycamine** (Astellas Pharma Ltd)  
Micafungin (as Micafungin sodium) 50 mg Mycamine 50mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £196.08
- Micafungin (as Micafungin sodium) 100 mg Mycamine 100mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £341.00

## ANTIFUNGALS > POLYENE ANTIFUNGALS

### Amphotericin

(Amphotericin B)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### ABELCET®

**Severe invasive candidiasis | Severe systemic fungal infections in patients not responding to conventional amphotericin or to other antifungal drugs or where toxicity or renal impairment precludes conventional amphotericin, including invasive aspergillosis, cryptococcal meningitis and disseminated cryptococcosis in HIV patients**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: Test dose 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 1 mg), then 5 mg/kg once daily

##### AMBIHOME®

**Severe systemic or deep mycoses where toxicity (particularly nephrotoxicity) precludes use of conventional amphotericin | Suspected or proven infection in febrile neutropenic patients unresponsive to broad-spectrum antibacterials**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Neonate: 1 mg/kg once daily, increased if necessary to 3 mg/kg once daily; maximum 5 mg/kg per day.

- ▶ Child: Test dose 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 1 mg), to be given over 10 minutes, then 3 mg/kg once daily; maximum 5 mg/kg per day

**Visceral leishmaniasis (unresponsive to the antimonial alone)**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: 1–3 mg/kg daily for 10–21 days to a cumulative dose of 21–30 mg/kg, alternatively 3 mg/kg for 5 consecutive days, followed by 3 mg/kg after 6 days for 1 dose

#### FUNGIZONE®

##### **Systemic fungal infections**

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: 1 mg/kg once daily, increased if necessary to 1.5 mg/kg daily for 7 days, then reduced to 1–1.5 mg/kg once daily on alternate days if required.
- ▶ Child: Test dose 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 1 mg), included as part of first dose of 250 micrograms/kg daily, then increased if tolerated to 1 mg/kg daily, dose is gradually increased over 2–4 days; in severe infection max. 1.5 mg/kg daily or on alternate days. Prolonged treatment usually necessary; if interrupted for longer than 7 days recommence at 250 micrograms/kg daily and increase gradually

#### ● UNLICENSED USE

**AMBIHOME®** *Ambisome®* not licensed for use in children under 1 month.

**FUNGIZONE®** Intravenous conventional formulation amphotericin (*Fungizone®*) is licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid rapid infusion (risk of arrhythmias) · when given parenterally, toxicity common (close supervision necessary and close observation required for at least 30 minutes after test dose)

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ Anaphylaxis Anaphylaxis can occur with any intravenous amphotericin product and a test dose is advisable before the first infusion in children over 1 month of age; the patient should be carefully observed for at least 30 minutes after the test dose. Prophylactic antipyretics or hydrocortisone should only be used in patients who have previously experienced acute adverse reactions (in whom continued treatment with amphotericin is essential).

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: amphotericin

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anaemia · appetite decreased · azotaemia · chills · diarrhoea · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · fever · headache · hepatic function abnormal (discontinue) · hyposthenuria · hypotension · nausea · nephrocalcinosis · renal impairment · renal tubular acidosis · skin reactions · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Agranulocytosis · arrhythmias · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · hepatic disorders · leucopenia · myalgia · peripheral neuropathy · respiratory disorders · thrombocytopenia
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Arthralgia · cardiac arrest · coagulation disorder · encephalopathy · eosinophilia · haemorrhage · hearing impairment · heart failure · hypersensitivity · hypertension · malaise · nephrogenic diabetes insipidus · pain · pulmonary oedema non-cardiogenic · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · shock · vertigo · vision disorders · weight decreased

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful but manufacturers advise avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use only if no alternative; nephrotoxicity may be reduced with use of lipid formulation.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Hepatic and renal function tests, blood counts, and plasma electrolyte (including plasma-potassium and magnesium concentration) monitoring required.

#### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

##### **ABELCET®** Amphotericin (lipid complex)

For *intravenous infusion*, allow suspension to reach room temperature, shake gently to ensure no yellow settlement, withdraw requisite dose (using 17–19 gauge needle) into one or more 20-mL syringes; replace needle on syringe

with a 5-micron filter needle provided (fresh needle for each syringe) and dilute in Glucose 5% to a concentration of 2 mg/mL; preferably give *via* an infusion pump at a rate of 2.5 mg/kg/hour (initial test dose given over 15 minutes); an in-line filter (pore size no less than 15 micron) may be used; do not use sodium chloride or other electrolyte solutions—flush existing intravenous line with Glucose 5% or use separate line.

#### **AMBISOME® Amphotericin (liposomal)**

For intravenous infusion, reconstitute each vial with 12 mL Water for Injections and shake vigorously to produce a preparation containing 4 mg/mL; withdraw requisite dose from vial and introduce into Glucose 5% or 10% through the 5-micron filter provided, to produce a final concentration of 0.2–2 mg/mL; infuse over 30–60 minutes, or if non-anaphylactic infusion-related reactions occur infuse over 2 hours (initial test dose given over 10 minutes); an in-line filter (pore size no less than 1 micron) may be used; incompatible with sodium chloride solutions—flush existing intravenous line with Glucose 5% or 10%, or use separate line.

#### **FUNGIZONE® Amphotericin (as sodium deoxycholate complex)**

For intravenous infusion, reconstitute each vial with 10 mL Water for Injections and shake immediately to produce a 5 mg/mL colloidal solution; dilute further in Glucose 5% to a concentration of 100 micrograms/mL (in fluid-restricted children, up to 400 micrograms/mL given *via* a central line); pH of glucose solution must not be below 4.2 (check each container—consult product literature for details of buffer); infuse over 4–6 hours, or if tolerated over a minimum of 2 hours (initial test dose given over 20–30 minutes); begin infusion immediately after dilution and protect from light; incompatible with Sodium Chloride solutions—flush existing intravenous line with Glucose 5% or use separate line; an in-line filter (pore size no less than 1 micron) may be used.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Different preparations of intravenous amphotericin vary in their pharmacodynamics, pharmacokinetics, dosage, and administration; these preparations should **not** be considered interchangeable. To avoid confusion, prescribers should specify the brand to be dispensed.

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Suspension for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- ▶ **Abelcet** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Amphotericin B (as Amphotericin B phospholipid complex) 5 mg per 1 mL** Abelcet 100mg/20mL concentrate for suspension for infusion vials | 10 vial [PoM] £775.04 (Hospital only)

##### **Powder for solution for infusion**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sucrose

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- ▶ **Ambisome** (Gilead Sciences International Ltd)

**Amphotericin B liposomal 50 mg** Ambisome 50mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 10 vial [PoM] £821.87

- ▶ **Fungizone** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Amphotericin B 50 mg** Fungizone Intravenous 50mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £3.88

## **ANTIFUNGALS > TRIAZOLE ANTIFUNGALS**

### **Fluconazole**

#### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

##### **Candidal balanitis**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 16–17 years: 150 mg for 1 dose

#### **Vaginal candidiasis**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 1 month–15 years: 150 mg for 1 dose, for use in patients who are post-puberty
- ▶ Child 16–17 years: 150 mg for 1 dose

#### **Vulvovaginal candidiasis (recurrent)**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: Initially 150 mg every 72 hours for 3 doses, then 150 mg once weekly for 6 months, for use in patients who are post-puberty

#### **Mucosal candidiasis (except genital)**

- ▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 14 days: 3–6 mg/kg, dose to be given on first day, then 3 mg/kg every 72 hours.

- ▶ Neonate 14 days to 28 days: 3–6 mg/kg, dose to be given on first day, then 3 mg/kg every 48 hours.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 3–6 mg/kg, dose to be given on first day, then 3 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 100 mg) for 7–14 days in oropharyngeal candidiasis (max. 14 days except in severely immunocompromised patients); for 14–30 days in other mucosal infections (e.g. oesophagitis, candiduria, non-invasive bronchopulmonary infections)
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 50 mg daily for 7–14 days in oropharyngeal candidiasis (max. 14 days except in severely immunocompromised patients); for 14–30 days in other mucosal infections (e.g. oesophagitis, candiduria, non-invasive bronchopulmonary infections); increased to 100 mg daily, increased dose only for unusually difficult infections

#### **Tinea capitis**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: 6 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 300 mg) for 2–4 weeks

#### **Tinea pedis, corporis, cruris, pityriasis versicolor | Dermal candidiasis**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: 3 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 50 mg) for 2–4 weeks (for up to 6 weeks in tinea pedis); max. duration of treatment 6 weeks

#### **Invasive candidal infections (including candidaemia and disseminated candidiasis) and cryptococcal infections (including meningitis)**

- ▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 14 days: 6–12 mg/kg every 72 hours, treatment continued according to response (at least 8 weeks for cryptococcal meningitis).

- ▶ Neonate 14 days to 28 days: 6–12 mg/kg every 48 hours, treatment continued according to response (at least 8 weeks for cryptococcal meningitis).

- ▶ Child: 6–12 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 800 mg), treatment continued according to response (at least 8 weeks for cryptococcal meningitis)

#### **Prevention of fungal infections in immunocompromised patients**

- ▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate up to 14 days: 3–12 mg/kg every 72 hours, dose given according to extent and duration of neutropenia.

- ▶ Neonate 14 days to 28 days: 3–12 mg/kg every 48 hours, dose given according to extent and duration of neutropenia.

- ▶ Child: 3–12 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 400 mg), commence treatment before anticipated onset of

neutropenia and continue for 7 days after neutrophil count in desirable range, dose given according to extent and duration of neutropenia

**Prevention of fungal infections in immunocompromised patients (for patients with high risk of systemic infections e.g. following bone-marrow transplantation)**

► BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 12 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 400 mg), commence treatment before anticipated onset of neutropenia and continue for 7 days after neutrophil count in desirable range

**Prevention of relapse of cryptococcal meningitis in HIV-infected patients after completion of primary therapy**

► BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 6 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 200 mg)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for tinea infections in children, or for vaginal candidiasis in girls under 16 years, or for prevention of relapse of cryptococcal meningitis after completion of primary therapy in children with AIDS.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **CAUTIONS** Susceptibility to QT interval prolongation

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antifungals, azoles

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Dizziness · flatulence · hepatic disorders · seizure · taste altered
- **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · dyslipidaemia · hypokalaemia · leucopenia · neutropenia · QT interval prolongation · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · thrombocytopenia · torsade de pointes

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Uncommon**

- With parenteral use Anaemia · appetite decreased · asthenia · constipation · drowsiness · dry mouth · fever · hyperhidrosis · insomnia · malaise · myalgia · paraesthesia · vertigo
- **Rare or very rare**
- With parenteral use Angioedema · face oedema · tremor
- **Frequency not known**
- With oral use Cardio-respiratory distress · oedema

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** If rash occurs, discontinue treatment (or monitor closely if infection invasive or systemic); severe cutaneous reactions are more likely in patients with AIDS.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—multiple congenital abnormalities reported with long-term high doses.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but amount probably too small to be harmful.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Toxicity with related drugs.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Usual initial dose then halve subsequent doses if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor liver function with high doses or extended courses—discontinue if signs or symptoms of hepatic disease (risk of hepatic necrosis).

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, give over 10–30 minutes; do not exceed an infusion rate of 5–10 mL/minute.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include orange.

● **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

**Dental practitioners' formulary**

Fluconazole Capsules 50 mg may be prescribed.

Fluconazole Oral Suspension 50 mg/5 mL may be prescribed.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Fluconazole capsules can be sold to the public for vaginal candidiasis and associated candidal balanitis in those aged 16–60 years, in a container or packaging containing not more than 150 mg and labelled to show a max. dose of 150 mg.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Infusion**

► **Fluconazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Fluconazole 2 mg per 1 mL** Fluconazole 200mg/100mL infusion bags

| 5 bag **[PoM]** £19.45

Fluconazole 400mg/200mL infusion bags | 5 bag **[PoM]** £72.50

**Solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Fluconazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Fluconazole 2 mg per 1 mL** Fluconazole 200mg/100mL solution for infusion vials | 1 vial **[PoM]** £3.00–£29.28

Fluconazole 50mg/25mL solution for infusion vials | 1 vial **[PoM]** £7.31–£7.32

Fluconazole 200mg/100mL solution for infusion bottles | 5 bottle **[PoM]** £274.50

► **Diflucan (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Fluconazole 2 mg per 1 mL** Diflucan 200mg/100mL solution for infusion vials | 1 vial **[PoM]** £29.28 (Hospital only)

**Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

► **Fluconazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Fluconazole 10 mg per 1 mL** Fluconazole 50mg/5mL oral suspension | 35 mL **[PoM]** £20.51 DT = £20.51

► **Diflucan (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Fluconazole 10 mg per 1 mL** Diflucan 50mg/5mL oral suspension | 35 mL **[PoM]** £16.61 DT = £20.51

**Fluconazole 40 mg per 1 mL** Diflucan 200mg/5mL oral suspension | 35 mL **[PoM]** £66.42 DT = £66.42

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9 (50 mg and 200 mg strengths only)

► **Fluconazole (Non-proprietary)**

**Fluconazole 50 mg** Fluconazole 50mg capsules | 7 capsule **[PoM]** £5.00 DT = £0.45

**Fluconazole 150 mg** Fluconazole 150mg capsules | 1 capsule **[PoM]** £8.50 DT = £0.39

**Fluconazole 200 mg** Fluconazole 200mg capsules | 7 capsule **[PoM]** £6.02 DT = £5.30

► **Diflucan (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Fluconazole 50 mg** Diflucan 50mg capsules | 7 capsule **[PoM]** £16.61 DT = £0.45

**Fluconazole 150 mg** Diflucan 150mg capsules | 1 capsule **[PoM]** £7.12 DT = £0.39

**Fluconazole 200 mg** Diflucan 200mg capsules | 7 capsule **[PoM]** £66.42 DT = £5.30

## Itraconazole

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Oropharyngeal candidiasis**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 1 month–11 years: 3–5 mg/kg once daily for 15 days; maximum 100 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: 100 mg once daily for 15 days

**Oropharyngeal candidiasis in patients with AIDS or neutropenia**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 1 month–11 years: 3–5 mg/kg once daily for 15 days; maximum 200 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: 200 mg once daily for 15 days

continued →

**Systemic candidiasis where other antifungal drugs inappropriate or ineffective**

- BY MOUTH
  - Child: 5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 200 mg), dose increased in invasive or disseminated disease and in cryptococcal meningitis, increased to 5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg)
- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
  - Child: 2.5 mg/kg every 12 hours (max. per dose 200 mg) for 2 days, then 2.5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 200 mg) for max. 12 days

**Pityriasis versicolor**

- BY MOUTH
  - Child 1 month–11 years: 3–5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 200 mg) for 7 days
  - Child 12–17 years: 200 mg once daily for 7 days

**Tinea pedis | Tinea manuum**

- BY MOUTH
  - Child 1 month–11 years: 3–5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 100 mg) for 30 days
  - Child 12–17 years: 100 mg once daily for 30 days, alternatively 200 mg twice daily for 7 days

**Tinea corporis | Tinea cruris**

- BY MOUTH
  - Child 1 month–11 years: 3–5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 100 mg) for 15 days
  - Child 12–17 years: 100 mg once daily for 15 days, alternatively 200 mg once daily for 7 days

**Tinea capitis**

- BY MOUTH
  - Child 1–17 years: 3–5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 200 mg) for 2–6 weeks

**Onychomycosis**

- BY MOUTH
  - Child 1–11 years: 5 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 200 mg) for 7 days, subsequent courses repeated after 21-day intervals; fingernails 2 courses, toenails 3 courses
  - Child 12–17 years: 200 mg once daily for 3 months, alternatively 200 mg twice daily for 7 days, subsequent courses repeated after 21-day intervals; fingernails 2 courses, toenails 3 courses

**Systemic aspergillosis where other antifungal drugs inappropriate or ineffective**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
  - Child: 2.5 mg/kg every 12 hours (max. per dose 200 mg) for 2 days, then 2.5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 200 mg) for max. 12 days
- BY MOUTH
  - Child: 5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 200 mg), increased to 5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg), dose increased in invasive or disseminated disease and in cryptococcal meningitis

**Histoplasmosis**

- BY MOUTH
  - Child: 5 mg/kg 1–2 times a day (max. per dose 200 mg)

**Systemic cryptococcosis including cryptococcal meningitis where other antifungal drugs inappropriate or ineffective**

- BY MOUTH
  - Child: 5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 200 mg), dose increased in invasive or disseminated disease and in cryptococcal meningitis, increased to 5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg)
- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
  - Child: 2.5 mg/kg every 12 hours (max. per dose 200 mg) for 2 days, then 2.5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 200 mg) for max. 12 days

**Maintenance in HIV-infected patients to prevent relapse of underlying fungal infection and prophylaxis in neutropenia when standard therapy inappropriate**

- BY MOUTH
  - Child: 5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 200 mg), then increased to 5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg), dose increased only if low plasma-itraconazole concentration

**Prophylaxis of deep fungal infections (when standard therapy inappropriate) in patients with haematological malignancy or undergoing bone-marrow transplantation who are expected to become neutropenic**

- BY MOUTH USING ORAL SOLUTION
  - Child: 2.5 mg/kg twice daily, to be started before transplantation or before chemotherapy (taking care to avoid interaction with cytotoxic drugs) and continued until neutrophil count recovers, safety and efficacy not established

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****HEART FAILURE**

Following reports of heart failure, caution is advised when prescribing itraconazole to patients at high risk of heart failure. Those at risk include:

- patients receiving high doses and longer treatment courses;
- older adults and those with cardiac disease;
- patients with chronic lung disease (including chronic obstructive pulmonary disease) associated with pulmonary hypertension;
- patients receiving treatment with negative inotropic drugs, e.g. calcium channel blockers.

Itraconazole should be avoided in patients with ventricular dysfunction or a history of heart failure unless the infection is serious.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603
- **CAUTIONS** Active liver disease · history of hepatotoxicity with other drugs · susceptibility to congestive heart failure
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antifungals, azoles
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Alopecia · constipation · diarrhoea · dyspnoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · heart failure · hepatic disorders · hyperbilirubinaemia · hypotension · nausea · oedema · pulmonary oedema · skin reactions · vision disorders · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Taste altered
- **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · hypersensitivity vasculitis · hypertriglyceridaemia · pancreatitis · photosensitivity reaction · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
- **Frequency not known** Peripheral neuropathy (discontinue)

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common**
  - With intravenous use Chest pain · confusion · cough · dizziness · drowsiness · electrolyte imbalance · fatigue · gastrointestinal disorder · granulocytopenia · heart failure · hyperglycaemia · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · hypertension · myalgia · pain · renal impairment · tachycardia · tremor · urinary incontinence
- **Uncommon**
  - With intravenous use Dysphonia · hearing loss · numbness · thrombocytopenia
  - With oral use Flatulence · menstrual disorder



► **Rare or very rare**

- With oral use Erectile dysfunction · hearing impairment · leucopenia · sensation abnormal · serum sickness · urinary frequency increased

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Potentially life-threatening hepatotoxicity reported very rarely—discontinue if signs of hepatitis develop.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Ensure effective contraception during treatment and until the next menstrual period following end of treatment.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only in life-threatening situations (toxicity at high doses in *animal* studies).

- **BREAST FEEDING** Small amounts present in milk—may accumulate; manufacturer advises avoid.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk of hepatotoxicity.

**Dose adjustments** Dose reduction may be necessary.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Risk of congestive heart failure.

- With oral use Bioavailability of oral formulations possibly reduced.

- With intravenous use Use intravenous infusion with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–80 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> (monitor renal function); avoid intravenous infusion if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- Absorption reduced in AIDS and neutropenia (monitor plasma-itraconazole concentration and increase dose if necessary).
- Monitor liver function if treatment continues for longer than one month, if receiving other hepatotoxic drugs, if history of hepatotoxicity with other drugs, or in hepatic impairment.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, dilute 250 mg with 50 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give requisite dose through an in-line filter (0.2 micron) over 60 minutes.
- With oral use For *oral liquid*, do not take with food; swish around mouth and swallow, do not rinse afterwards.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include cherry.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder and advised to seek prompt medical attention if symptoms such as anorexia, nausea, vomiting, fatigue, abdominal pain or dark urine develop.

- With oral use Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer itraconazole oral liquid.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Solution for infusion**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

- **Sporanox** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)  
Itraconazole 10 mg per 1 mL Sporanax I.V. 250mg/25ml solution for infusion ampoules and diluent | 1 ampoule [PoM] £79.71

**Oral solution**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 23

- **Itraconazole (Non-proprietary)**

Itraconazole 10 mg per 1 mL Itraconazole 50mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 mL [PoM] £58.34 DT = £58.34

- **Sporanox** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

Itraconazole 10 mg per 1 mL Sporanax 50mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 150 mL [PoM] £58.34 DT = £58.34

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 9, 21, 25

- **Itraconazole (Non-proprietary)**

Itraconazole 100 mg Itraconazole 100mg capsules | 15 capsule [PoM] £13.77 DT = £3.40 | 60 capsule [PoM] £13.60-£56.21

- **Sporanox** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

Itraconazole 100 mg Sporanax-Pulse 100mg capsules |

28 capsule [PoM] £25.72  
Sporanax 100mg capsules | 4 capsule [PoM] £3.67 | 15 capsule [PoM] £13.77 DT = £3.40 | 60 capsule [PoM] £55.10

**Voriconazole**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Invasive aspergillosis | Serious infections caused by *Scedosporium* spp., *Fusarium* spp., or invasive fluconazole-resistant *Candida* spp. (including *C. krusei*)**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 2–11 years: Treatment should be initiated with intravenous regimen, and oral regimen should be considered only after there is a significant clinical improvement; maintenance 9 mg/kg every 12 hours, adjusted in steps of 1 mg/kg and increased if necessary up to 350 mg every 12 hours, then adjusted in steps of 50 mg as required

- Child 12–14 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): Treatment should be initiated with intravenous regimen, and oral regimen should be considered only after there is a significant clinical improvement; maintenance 9 mg/kg every 12 hours, adjusted in steps of 1 mg/kg and increased if necessary up to 350 mg every 12 hours, then adjusted in steps of 50 mg as required

- Child 12–14 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 400 mg every 12 hours for 2 doses, then 200 mg every 12 hours, increased if necessary to 300 mg every 12 hours

- Child 15–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): Initially 200 mg every 12 hours for 2 doses, then 100 mg every 12 hours, increased if necessary to 150 mg every 12 hours

- Child 15–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): Initially 400 mg every 12 hours for 2 doses, then 200 mg every 12 hours, increased if necessary to 300 mg every 12 hours

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

- Child 2–11 years: Initially 9 mg/kg every 12 hours for 2 doses, then 8 mg/kg every 12 hours; adjusted in steps of 1 mg/kg as required; for max. 6 months

- Child 12–14 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): Initially 9 mg/kg every 12 hours for 2 doses, then 8 mg/kg every 12 hours; adjusted in steps of 1 mg/kg as required; for max. 6 months

- Child 12–14 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 6 mg/kg every 12 hours for 2 doses, then 4 mg/kg every 12 hours; reduced if not tolerated to 3 mg/kg every 12 hours; for max. 6 months

- Child 15–17 years: Initially 6 mg/kg every 12 hours for 2 doses, then 4 mg/kg every 12 hours; reduced if not tolerated to 3 mg/kg every 12 hours; for max. 6 months

**DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS**

- Manufacturer advises increasing the maintenance dose with concurrent use of fosphenytoin, phenytoin, or rifabutin—no specific recommendations made for children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid exposure to sunlight · bradycardia · cardiomyopathy · electrolyte disturbances · history of QT interval prolongation · patients at risk of pancreatitis · symptomatic arrhythmias

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antifungals, azoles

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Acute kidney injury · agranulocytosis · alopecia · anaemia · anxiety · arrhythmias · asthenia · bone marrow disorders · chest pain · chills · confusion · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · eye disorders · eye inflammation · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · haemorrhage · hallucination · headache · hepatic disorders · hypoglycaemia · hypotension · increased risk of infection · insomnia · leucopenia · muscle tone increased · nausea · neutropenia · oedema · oral disorders · pain · pulmonary oedema · respiratory disorders · seizure · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · syncope · tetany · thrombocytopenia · tremor · vision disorders · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Adrenal insufficiency · arthritis · brain oedema · duodenitis · encephalopathy · eosinophilia · gallbladder disorders · hearing impairment · hypothyroidism · influenza like illness · lymphadenopathy · lymphangitis · movement disorders · nephritis · nerve disorders · pancreatitis · parkinsonism · phototoxicity · proteinuria · pseudomembranous enterocolitis · QT interval prolongation · renal tubular necrosis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · taste altered · thrombophlebitis · vertigo
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · cardiac conduction disorders · disseminated intravascular coagulation · hyperthyroidism
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Cutaneous lupus erythematosus · infusion related reaction · perioritis (more common in transplant patients) · squamous cell carcinoma (more common in presence of phototoxicity)

### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Hepatotoxicity** Hepatitis, cholestasis, and acute hepatic failure have been reported; risk of hepatotoxicity increased in patients with haematological malignancy. Consider treatment discontinuation if severe abnormalities in liver function tests.

**Phototoxicity** Phototoxicity occurs uncommonly. If phototoxicity occurs, consider treatment discontinuation; if treatment is continued, monitor for pre-malignant skin lesions and squamous cell carcinoma, and discontinue treatment if they occur.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required during treatment.
- **PREGNANCY** Toxicity in *animal studies*—manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** ▶ Child 12–17 years In mild to moderate hepatic cirrhosis use usual initial dose then halve subsequent doses. No information available for severe hepatic cirrhosis—manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
 ▶ Child 2–12 years No information available.  
 ▶ Child 12–17 years Intravenous vehicle may accumulate if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—use intravenous infusion only if potential benefit outweighs risk, and monitor renal function; alternatively, use tablets or oral suspension (no dose adjustment required).
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**  
 ▶ Monitor renal function.  
 ▶ Monitor liver function before starting treatment, then at least weekly for 1 month, and then monthly during treatment.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, reconstitute each 200 mg with 19 mL Water for Injections or Sodium Chloride 0.9% to produce a 10 mg/mL

solution; dilute dose to concentration of 0.5–5 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give intermittently at a rate not exceeding 3 mg/kg/hour.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include orange.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and their carers should be told how to recognise symptoms of liver disorder, and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as persistent nausea, vomiting, malaise or jaundice develop.  
 Patients and their carers should be advised that patients should avoid intense or prolonged exposure to direct sunlight, and to avoid the use of sunbeds. In sunlight, patients should cover sun-exposed areas of skin and use a sunscreen with a high sun protection factor. Patients should seek medical attention if they experience sunburn or a severe skin reaction following exposure to light or sun.  
 Patients and their carers should be advised to keep the alert card with them at all times.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 11, 23

#### ▶ Voriconazole (Non-proprietary)

**Voriconazole 50 mg** Voriconazole 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]

£45.43–£275.68 DT = £193.58

**Voriconazole 200 mg** Voriconazole 200mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]

£157.49–£1,102.74 DT = £766.96

#### ▶ VFEND (Pfizer Ltd)

**Voriconazole 50 mg** VFEND 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £275.68

DT = £193.58

**Voriconazole 200 mg** VFEND 200mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]

£1,102.74 DT = £766.96

#### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 11, 23

#### ▶ VFEND (Pfizer Ltd)

**Voriconazole 40 mg per 1 mL** VFEND 40mg/mL oral suspension |

75 mL [PoM] £551.37

#### Powder for solution for infusion

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sulfobutylether beta cyclodextrin sodium  
 ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

#### ▶ Voriconazole (Non-proprietary)

**Voriconazole 200 mg** Voriconazole 200mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £51.43–£77.14 (Hospital only)

#### ▶ VFEND (Pfizer Ltd)

**Voriconazole 200 mg** VFEND 200mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £77.14 (Hospital only)

#### Powder and solvent for solution for infusion

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sulfobutylether beta cyclodextrin sodium  
 ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

#### ▶ VFEND (Pfizer Ltd)

**Voriconazole 200 mg** VFEND 200mg powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £77.14 (Hospital only)

## ANTIFUNGALS > OTHER

### Flucytosine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Systemic yeast and fungal infections | Adjunct to amphotericin in severe systemic candidiasis and in other severe or long-standing infections**

▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY MOUTH

▶ Neonate: 50 mg/kg every 12 hours.

▶ Child: Usual dose 50 mg/kg every 6 hours usually for not more than 7 days, alternatively 25–37.5 mg/kg every 6 hours usually for not more than 7 days, lower dose may be sufficient for sensitive organisms

**Cryptococcal meningitis (adjunct to amphotericin)**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 50 mg/kg every 12 hours.
- Child: 25 mg/kg every 6 hours for 2 weeks

- **UNLICENSED USE** Tablets not licensed.
- **CAUTIONS** Blood disorders
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: flucytosine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agranulocytosis · aplastic anaemia · blood disorder · cardiotoxicity · confusion · diarrhoea · hallucination · headache · hepatic disorders · leucopenia · nausea · rash · sedation · seizure · thrombocytopenia · toxic epidermal necrolysis · ventricular dysfunction · vertigo · vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Teratogenic in *animal* studies; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Use normal dose every 12 hours if creatinine clearance 20–40 mL/minute; use normal dose every 24 hours if creatinine clearance 10–20 mL/minute; use initial normal dose if creatinine clearance less than 10 mL/minute and then adjust dose according to plasma-flucytosine concentration.  
**Monitoring** In renal impairment liver- and kidney-function tests and blood counts required weekly.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - For plasma concentration monitoring, blood should be taken shortly before starting the next infusion; plasma concentration for optimum response 25–50 mg/litre (200–400 micromol/litre)—should not be allowed to exceed 80 mg/litre (620 micromol/litre).
  - Liver- and kidney-function tests and blood counts required (weekly in blood disorders).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, give over 20–40 minutes.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

**Solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- **Ancotil** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Flucytosine 10 mg per 1 mL** Ancotil 2.5g/250mL solution for infusion bottles | 5 bottle [PoM] £151.67 (Hospital only)

**Tablet**

- **Ancotil** (ICN Pharmaceuticals France S.A.)

**Flucytosine 500 mg** Ancotil 500mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] ☒

**Tinea capitis caused by *Trichophyton tonsurans***

► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years: 15–20 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 1 g), alternatively 15–20 mg/kg daily in divided doses (max. per dose 1 g)
- Child 12–17 years: 1 g once daily, alternatively 1 g daily in divided doses

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · systemic lupus erythematosus (risk of exacerbation)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: griseofulvin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · epigastric discomfort · headache · nausea · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Appetite decreased · confusion · coordination abnormal · dizziness · drowsiness · insomnia · irritability · peripheral neuropathy · photosensitivity reaction · skin reactions · taste altered · toxic epidermal necrolysis
  - **Rare or very rare** Anaemia · hepatic disorders · leucopenia · neutropenia · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required during and for at least 1 month after administration to women (important: effectiveness of oral contraceptives may be reduced, additional contraceptive precautions e.g. barrier method, required). Men should avoid fathering a child during and for at least 6 months after administration
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (fetotoxicity and teratogenicity in *animals*).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe liver disease.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Griseofulvin for fungal infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/griseofulvin-for-fungal-infections](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/griseofulvin-for-fungal-infections)  
**Driving and skilled tasks** May impair performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9, 21

- **Griseofulvin (Non-proprietary)**

**Griseofulvin 125 mg** Griseofulvin 125mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM]  
£96.67 DT = £96.67

**Griseofulvin 500 mg** Griseofulvin 500mg tablets | 90 tablet [PoM]  
£85.73 | 100 tablet [PoM] £90.34 DT = £92.80

**Griseofulvin**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Dermatophyte infections of the skin, scalp, hair and nails where topical therapy has failed or is inappropriate**

► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years: Usual dose 10 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 500 mg), increased if necessary to 20 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 1 g), for severe infections; reduce dose when response occurs, daily dose may be taken once daily or in divided doses
- Child 12–17 years: 500 mg daily, increased if necessary to 1 g daily, for severe infections; reduce dose when response occurs, daily dose may be taken once daily or in divided doses

**3.1 Pneumocystis pneumonia****Pneumocystis pneumonia****Overview**

Pneumonia caused by *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (*Pneumocystis carinii*) occurs in immunosuppressed patients; it is a common cause of pneumonia in AIDS. Pneumocystis pneumonia should generally be treated by those experienced in its management. Blood gas measurement is used to assess disease severity.

**Treatment**

The recommended duration of treatment is generally 14–21 days.

**Mild to moderate disease**

Co-trimoxazole p. 350 in high dosage is the drug of choice for the treatment of mild to moderate pneumocystis pneumonia.

Atovaquone below or a combination of dapsone below with trimethoprim p. 359 is given by mouth for the treatment of mild to moderate disease [unlicensed indication] in children who cannot tolerate co-trimoxazole.

A combination of clindamycin p. 327 and primaquine p. 396 may be used in the treatment of mild to moderate disease [unlicensed indication]; this combination is associated with considerable toxicity.

**Severe disease**

Co-trimoxazole in high dosage, given by mouth or by intravenous infusion, is the drug of choice for the treatment of severe pneumocystis pneumonia. Pentamidine isetionate p. 381 given by intravenous infusion is an alternative for children who cannot tolerate co-trimoxazole, or who have not responded to it. Pentamidine isetionate is a potentially toxic drug that can cause severe hypotension during or immediately after infusion. If there is clinical improvement after 7–10 days of intravenous therapy with pentamidine isetionate, patients can be switched to oral treatment (e.g. atovaquone) to complete 21 days treatment.

Corticosteroid treatment can be lifesaving in those with severe pneumocystis pneumonia.

**Adjunctive therapy**

In moderate to severe pneumocystis infections associated with HIV infection, prednisolone p. 442 is given by mouth for 5 days (alternatively, hydrocortisone p. 440 may be given parenterally); the dose is then reduced over the next 16 days and then stopped. Corticosteroid treatment should ideally be started at the same time as the anti-pneumocystis therapy and certainly no later than 24–72 hours afterwards. The corticosteroid should be withdrawn before anti-pneumocystis treatment is complete.

**Prophylaxis**

Prophylaxis against pneumocystis pneumonia should be given to all children with a history of this infection, and to all HIV-infected infants aged 1 month–1 year. Prophylaxis against pneumocystis pneumonia should also be considered for severely immunocompromised children. Prophylaxis should continue until immunity recovers sufficiently. It should not be discontinued if the child has oral candidiasis, continues to lose weight, or is receiving cytotoxic therapy or long-term immunosuppressant therapy.

Prophylaxis should also be given to infants aged 1 month–1 year who are suspected to be HIV-positive, or whose mothers had a viral load greater than 1000 HIV RNA copies/mL between 36 weeks' gestation and delivery; prophylaxis should be continued until HIV infection is excluded or until immunity recovers.

Co-trimoxazole by mouth is the drug of choice for prophylaxis against pneumocystis pneumonia. Co-trimoxazole may be used in infants born to mothers with a high risk of transmission of infection.

Inhaled pentamidine isetionate is better tolerated than parenteral pentamidine isetionate. Intermittent inhalation of pentamidine isetionate is used for prophylaxis against pneumocystis pneumonia in children unable to tolerate co-trimoxazole. It is effective but children may be prone to extrapulmonary infection. Alternatively, dapsone can be used.

**ANTIPROTOZOALS****Atovaquone****• INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Treatment of mild to moderate *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (*Pneumocystis carinii*) pneumonia in patients intolerant of co-trimoxazole**

**► BY MOUTH**

- Child 1–2 months: 15–20 mg/kg twice daily for 14–21 days, dose to be taken with food, particularly high fat food
- Child 3 months–1 year: 22.5 mg/kg twice daily for 14–21 days, dose to be taken with food, particularly high fat food
- Child 1–17 years: 15–20 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 750 mg) for 14–21 days, dose to be taken with food, particularly high fat food

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CAUTIONS** Other causes of pulmonary disease should be sought and treated · initial diarrhoea and difficulty in taking with food may reduce absorption (and require alternative therapy)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antimalarials

**● SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Anaemia · angioedema · bronchospasm · diarrhoea · headache · hypersensitivity · hyponatraemia · insomnia · nausea · neutropenia · skin reactions · throat tightness · vomiting
- **Frequency not known** Stevens-Johnson syndrome

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution. **Monitoring** Monitor more closely in hepatic impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution. **Monitoring** Monitor more closely in renal impairment.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include tutti-frutti.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Wellvone** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Atovaquone 150 mg per 1 mL** Wellvone 750mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 226 mL (PoM) £486.37

**Dapsone****• INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Treatment of mild to moderate *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (*Pneumocystis carinii*) pneumonia (in combination with trimethoprim)**

**► BY MOUTH**

- Child 1 month–11 years: 2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 100 mg)
- Child 12–17 years: 100 mg once daily

**Prophylaxis of *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (*Pneumocystis carinii*) pneumonia**

**► BY MOUTH**

- Child: 2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 100 mg)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for treatment of pneumocystis (*P. jirovecii*) pneumonia. Monotherapy not licensed for children for prophylaxis of *P. jirovecii* pneumonia.

- **CAUTIONS** Anaemia (treat severe anaemia before starting)
  - avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 · cardiac disease · G6PD deficiency · pulmonary disease · susceptibility to haemolysis

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: dapsone

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agranulocytosis · appetite decreased · haemolysis · haemolytic anaemia · headache · hepatic disorders · hyposalbuminaemia · insomnia · lepra reaction · methaemoglobinaemia · motor loss · nausea · peripheral neuropathy · photosensitivity reaction · psychosis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · tachycardia · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Side-effects are dose-related.

If dapsone syndrome occurs (rash with fever and eosinophilia)—discontinue immediately (may progress to exfoliative dermatitis, hepatitis, hyposalbuminaemia, psychosis and death).

- **PREGNANCY** Folic acid p. 574 (higher dose) should be given to mother throughout pregnancy; neonatal haemolysis and methaemoglobinaemia reported in third trimester.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Haemolytic anaemia; although significant amount in milk, risk to infant very small unless infant is G6PD deficient.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Blood disorders On long-term treatment, patients and their carers should be told how to recognise signs of blood disorders and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as fever, sore throat, rash, mouth ulcers, purpura, bruising or bleeding develop.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8

##### ▶ Dapsone (Non-proprietary)

Dapsone 50 mg Dapsone 50mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £38.04 DT = £38.04

Dapsone 100 mg Dapsone 100mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £97.39 DT = £95.15

## Pentamidine isetionate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment of *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (*Pneumocystis carinii*) pneumonia (specialist use only)**

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child: 4 mg/kg once daily for at least 7–10 days

**Prophylaxis of *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (*Pneumocystis carinii*) pneumonia (specialist use only)**

##### ▶ BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION

- ▶ Child 5–17 years: 300 mg every 4 weeks, alternatively 150 mg every 2 weeks, using suitable equipment—consult product literature

**Visceral leishmaniasis (specialist use only)**

##### ▶ BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1–17 years: 3–4 mg/kg once daily on alternate days, maximum total of 10 injections, course may be repeated if necessary

**Cutaneous leishmaniasis (specialist use only)**

##### ▶ BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1–17 years: 3–4 mg/kg 1–2 times a week until condition resolves

#### Trypanosomiasis (specialist use only)

##### ▶ BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child 1–17 years: 4 mg/kg once daily or on alternate days for a total of 7–10 injections

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for prevention of pneumocystis pneumonia in children.

- **CAUTIONS** Anaemia · bradycardia · coronary heart disease · history of ventricular arrhythmias · hyperglycaemia · hypertension · hypoglycaemia · hypokalaemia · hypomagnesaemia · hypotension · leucopenia · risk of severe hypotension following administration · thrombocytopenia

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: pentamidine

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Dizziness · hypoglycaemia (can be severe and sometimes fatal) · hypotension (can be severe and sometimes fatal) · local reaction · nausea · rash · taste altered
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** QT interval prolongation
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Pancreatitis acute (can be severe and sometimes fatal)

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

##### ▶ Common or very common

- ▶ When used by inhalation Cough · dyspnoea · respiratory disorders
- ▶ With parenteral use Acute kidney injury · anaemia · azotaemia · electrolyte imbalance · flushing · haematuria · hyperglycaemia · leucopenia · localised pain · myopathy · syncope · thrombocytopenia · vomiting

##### ▶ Rare or very rare

- ▶ With parenteral use Arrhythmia (can be severe and sometimes fatal) · pancreatitis (can be severe and sometimes fatal)

##### ▶ Frequency not known

- ▶ When used by inhalation Angioedema · appetite decreased · bradycardia · fatigue · renal failure
- ▶ With parenteral use Arrhythmias · perioral hypoaesthesia · sensation abnormal · Stevens-Johnson syndrome

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce intravenous dose for pneumocystis pneumonia if creatinine clearance less than 10 mL/minute: in *life-threatening infection*, use 4 mg/kg once daily for 7–10 days, then 4 mg/kg on alternate days to complete course of at least 14 doses; in *less severe infection*, use 4 mg/kg on alternate days for at least 14 doses.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Monitor blood pressure before starting treatment, during administration, and at regular intervals, until treatment concluded.
- ▶ Carry out laboratory monitoring according to product literature.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Patient should be lying down when receiving drug parenterally. Direct intravenous injection should be avoided whenever possible and **never** given rapidly; intramuscular injections should be deep and preferably given into the buttock. For *intravenous infusion*, reconstitute 300 mg with 3–5 mL Water for Injections (displacement value may be significant), then dilute required dose with 50–250 mL Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over at least 60 minutes.

Powder for injection (dissolved in water for injection) may be used for nebulisation.



- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Pentamidine isetionate is toxic and personnel should be adequately protected during handling and administration—consult product literature.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder for solution for injection**

► **Pentacarinat** (Sanofi)

**Pentamidine isetionate 300 mg** Pentacarinat 300mg powder for solution for injection vials | 5 vial **PoM** £158.86

## 4 Helminth infection

### Helminth infections

#### Specialist centres

Advice on prophylaxis and treatment of helminth infections is available from the following specialist centres:

Birmingham	(0121) 424 0357
Scotland	Contact local Infectious Diseases Unit
Liverpool	(0151) 705 3100
London	0845 155 5000 (treatment)

#### Threadworms

Anthelmintics are effective in threadworm (pinworms, *Enterobius vermicularis*) infections, but their use needs to be combined with hygienic measures to break the cycle of auto-infection. All members of the family require treatment.

Adult threadworms do not live for longer than 6 weeks and for development of fresh worms, ova must be swallowed and exposed to the action of digestive juices in the upper intestinal tract. Direct multiplication of worms does not take place in the large bowel. Adult female worms lay ova on the perianal skin which causes pruritus; scratching the area then leads to ova being transmitted on fingers to the mouth, often via food eaten with unwashed hands. Washing hands and scrubbing nails before each meal and after each visit to the toilet is essential. A bath taken immediately after rising will remove ova laid during the night.

Mebendazole p. 384 is the drug of choice for treating threadworm infection in patients of all ages over 6 months. It is given as a single dose; as reinfection is very common, a second dose may be given after 2 weeks.

#### Ascaricides (common roundworm infections)

Mebendazole is effective against *Ascaris lumbricoides* and is generally considered to be the drug of choice.

Levamisole p. 383 [unlicensed] (available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) is an alternative when mebendazole cannot be used. It is very well tolerated.

#### Tapeworm infections

##### Taeniacides

**Niclosamide** [unlicensed] (available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) is the most widely used drug for tapeworm infections and side-effects are limited to occasional gastro-intestinal upset, lightheadedness, and pruritus; it is not effective against larval worms. Fears of developing cysticercosis in *Taenia solium* infections have proved unfounded. All the same, an antiemetic can be given before treatment and a laxative can be given 2 hours after niclosamide.

Praziquantel p. 384 [unlicensed] (available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) is as effective as niclosamide.

#### Hydatid disease

Cysts caused by *Echinococcus granulosus* grow slowly and asymptomatic patients do not always require treatment. Surgical treatment remains the method of choice in many situations. Albendazole p. 383 [unlicensed] (available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) is used in conjunction with surgery to reduce the risk of recurrence or as primary treatment in inoperable cases. Alveolar echinococcosis due to *E. multilocularis* is usually fatal if untreated. Surgical removal with albendazole cover is the treatment of choice, but where effective surgery is impossible, repeated cycles of albendazole (for a year or more) may help. Careful monitoring of liver function is particularly important during drug treatment.

#### Hookworms

Hookworms (ancylostomiasis, necatoriasis) live in the upper small intestine and draw blood from the point of their attachment to their host. An iron-deficiency anaemia may occur and, if present, effective treatment of the infection requires not only expulsion of the worms but treatment of the anaemia.

Mebendazole has a useful broad-spectrum activity, and is effective against hookworms. Albendazole [unlicensed] (available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) is an alternative. Levamisole is also is also effective in children.

#### Schistosomicides (bilharziasis)

Adult *Schistosoma haematobium* worms live in the genito-urinary veins and adult *S. mansoni* in those of the colon and mesentery. *S. japonicum* is more widely distributed in veins of the alimentary tract and portal system.

Praziquantel [unlicensed] is available from Merck Serono (*Cysticide*®) and is effective against all human schistosomes. No serious adverse effects have been reported. Of all the available schistosomicides, it has the most attractive combination of effectiveness, broad-spectrum activity, and low toxicity.

#### Filaricides

**Diethylcarbamazine** [unlicensed] (available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) is effective against microfilariae and adults of *Loa loa*, *Wuchereria bancrofti*, and *Brugia malayi*. To minimise reactions, treatment in adults and children over 1 month, is commenced with a dose of diethylcarbamazine citrate on the first day and increased gradually over 3 days. Length of treatment varies according to infection type, and usually gives a radical cure for these infections. Close medical supervision is necessary particularly in the early phase of treatment.

In heavy infections there may be a febrile reaction, and in heavy *Loa loa* infection there is a small risk of encephalopathy. In such cases specialist advice should be sought, and treatment must be given under careful in-patient supervision and stopped at the first sign of cerebral involvement.

Ivermectin p. 383 [unlicensed] (available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) is very effective in *onchocerciasis* and it is now the drug of choice; reactions are usually slight. Diethylcarbamazine or suramin should no longer be used for *onchocerciasis* because of their toxicity.

#### Cutaneous larva migrans (creeping eruption)

Dog and cat hookworm larvae may enter human skin where they produce slowly extending itching tracks usually on the foot. Single tracks can be treated with topical tiabendazole (no commercial preparation available). Multiple infections respond to ivermectin, albendazole or **tiabendazole** (tiabendazole) by mouth [all unlicensed] (available from

'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies).

### Strongyloidiasis

Adult *Strongyloides stercoralis* live in the gut and produce larvae which penetrate the gut wall and invade the tissues, setting up a cycle of auto-infection. Ivermectin [unlicensed] (available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) is the treatment of choice for chronic *Strongyloides* infection in adults and children over 5 years. Albendazole [unlicensed] (available from 'special order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) is an alternative given to adults and children over 2 years.

## ANTHELMINTICS

### Albendazole

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Chronic *Strongyloides* infection

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 400 mg twice daily for 3 days, dose may be repeated after 3 weeks if necessary

##### Hydatid disease, in conjunction with surgery to reduce the risk of recurrence or as primary treatment in inoperable cases

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 7.5 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 400 mg twice daily) for 28 days followed by 14-day break, repeated for up to 2–3 cycles

##### Hookworm infections

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 400 mg for 1 dose

- **UNLICENSED USE** Albendazole is an unlicensed drug.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: albendazole

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, chewable tablet, oral suspension

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

- ▶ **Eskazole (Imported (France))**  
Albendazole 400 mg Eskazole 400mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] 

##### Chewable tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

- ▶ **Zentel (Imported)**  
Albendazole 200 mg Zentel 200mg chewable tablets | 6 tablet [PoM]   
Albendazole 400 mg Zentel 400mg chewable tablets | 1 tablet [PoM] 

### Diethylcarbamazine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### *Wuchereria bancrofti* infections | *Brugia malayi* infections

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 1 month–9 years: Initially 1 mg/kg daily in divided doses on the first day, then increased to 3 mg/kg daily in divided doses, dose to be increased gradually over 3 days
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: Initially 1 mg/kg daily in divided doses on the first day, then increased to 6 mg/kg daily in divided doses, dose to be increased gradually over 3 days

##### *Loa loa* infections

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 1 month–9 years: Initially 1 mg/kg daily in divided doses on the first day, then increased to 3 mg/kg daily

in divided doses, dose to be increased gradually over 3 days

- ▶ Child 10–17 years: Initially 1 mg/kg daily in divided doses on the first day, then increased to 6 mg/kg daily in divided doses, dose to be increased gradually over 3 days

- **UNLICENSED USE** Diethylcarbamazine is an unlicensed drug.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

### Ivermectin

17-May-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Chronic *Strongyloides* infection

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 5–17 years: 200 micrograms/kg daily for 2 days

##### *Onchocerciasis*

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 5–17 years: 150 micrograms/kg for 1 dose, retreatment at intervals of 6 to 12 months, depending on symptoms, must be given until adult worms die out

##### Scabies, in combination with topical drugs, for the treatment of hyperkeratotic (crusted or 'Norwegian') scabies that does not respond to topical treatment alone

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Ivermectin is unlicensed.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ivermectin

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Skin reactions

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet

##### Tablet

- ▶ **Stromectol (Imported (France))**  
Ivermectin 3 mg Stromectol 3mg tablets | 4 tablet [PoM] 

### Levamisole

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Roundworm infections

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: 2.5–3 mg/kg (max. per dose 150 mg) for 1 dose

##### Hookworm infections

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: 2.5 mg/kg (max. per dose 150 mg) for 1 dose, dose to be repeated after 7 days if severe

##### Nephrotic syndrome (initiated under specialist supervision)

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: 2.5 mg/kg once daily on alternate days (max. per dose 150 mg)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Blood disorders

- **CAUTIONS** Epilepsy · juvenile idiopathic arthritis · Sjögren's syndrome

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: levamisole


- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Arthralgia (long term use) · blood disorder (long term use) · diarrhoea · dizziness · headache · influenza like illness (long term use) · insomnia (long term use) · myalgia (long term use) · nausea · rash (long term use) · seizure (long term use) · taste altered (long term use) · vasculitis (long term use) · vomiting

- **PREGNANCY** Embryotoxic in *animal* studies, avoid if possible.
- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Use with caution—dose adjustment may be necessary.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Levamisole for nephrotic syndrome [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/levamisole-for-nephrotic-syndrome](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/levamisole-for-nephrotic-syndrome)

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**  
There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 4

- ▶ **Ergamisol (Imported (Belgium))**  
Levamisole (as Levamisole hydrochloride) 50 mg Ergamisol 50mg tablets | 20 tablet [PoM] 

## Mebendazole

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Threadworm infections**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years: 100 mg for 1 dose, if reinfection occurs, second dose may be needed after 2 weeks

**Whipworm infections | Hookworm infections**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: 100 mg twice daily for 3 days

**Roundworm infections**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 1 year: 100 mg twice daily for 3 days
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 100 mg twice daily for 3 days, alternatively 500 mg for 1 dose

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use as a single dose of 500 mg in roundworm infections. Not licensed for use in children under 2 years.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: mebendazole
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Gastrointestinal discomfort
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Diarrhoea · flatulence
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Alopecia · dizziness · hepatitis · neutropenia · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—toxicity in *animal* studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount present in milk too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include banana.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Mebendazole for worm infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mebendazole-for-worm-infections](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mebendazole-for-worm-infections)
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Mebendazole tablets can be sold to the public if supplied for oral use in the treatment of enterobiasis in adults and children over 2 years provided its container or package is labelled to show a max. single dose of 100 mg and it is supplied in a container or package containing not more than 800 mg.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**  
There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oral suspension**

- ▶ **Oxev** (McNeil Products Ltd)  
**Mebendazole 20 mg per 1 ml** Oxev 100mg/5ml oral suspension | 30 ml [P] £6.74 DT = £1.55
- ▶ **Vermox** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)  
**Mebendazole 20 mg per 1 ml** Vermox 100mg/5ml oral suspension | 30 ml [PoM] £1.55 DT = £1.55

**Chewable tablet**

- ▶ **Oxev** (McNeil Products Ltd)  
**Mebendazole 100 mg** Oxev 100mg chewable tablets sugar-free | 1 tablet [P] £2.37 sugar-free | 4 tablet [P] £5.55
- ▶ **Vermox** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)  
**Mebendazole 100 mg** Vermox 100mg chewable tablets sugar-free | 6 tablet [PoM] £1.34 DT = £1.34

## Praziquantel

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Tapeworm infections (*Taenia solium*)**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 4–17 years: 5–10 mg/kg for 1 dose, to be taken after a light breakfast

**Tapeworm infections (*Hymenolepis nana*)**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 4–17 years: 25 mg/kg for 1 dose, to be taken after a light breakfast

***Schistosoma haematobium* worm infections | *Schistosoma mansoni* worm infections**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 4–17 years: 20 mg/kg, followed by 20 mg/kg after 4–6 hours

***Schistosoma japonicum* worm infections**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 4–17 years: 20 mg/kg 3 times a day for 1 day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Praziquantel is an unlicensed drug.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: praziquantel

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**  
There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet

**Tablet**

- ▶ **Cesol (Imported (Germany))**  
**Praziquantel 150 mg** Cesol 150mg tablets | 6 tablet [PoM] 
- ▶ **Bitricide (Imported (Germany))**  
**Praziquantel 600 mg** Bitricide 600mg tablets | 6 tablet [PoM] 
- ▶ **Cysticide (Imported (Germany))**  
**Praziquantel 500 mg** Cysticide 500mg tablets | 90 tablet [PoM] 

## 5 Protozoal infection

### Antiprotozoal drugs

**Amoebicides**

Metronidazole p. 333 is the drug of choice for *acute invasive amoebic dysentery* since it is very effective against vegetative forms of *Entamoeba histolytica* in ulcers. Tinidazole p. 335 is also effective. Metronidazole and tinidazole are also active against amoebae which may have migrated to the liver. Treatment with metronidazole (or tinidazole) is followed by a 10-day course of diloxanide furoate p. 300.

Diloxanide furoate is the drug of choice for asymptomatic patients with *E. histolytica* cysts in the faeces; metronidazole and tinidazole are relatively ineffective. Diloxanide furoate is relatively free from toxic effects and the usual course is of

10 days, given alone for chronic infections or following metronidazole or tinidazole treatment.

For *amoebic abscesses* of the liver metronidazole is effective; tinidazole is an alternative. Aspiration of the abscess is indicated where it is suspected that it may rupture or where there is no improvement after 72 hours of metronidazole; the aspiration may need to be repeated. Aspiration aids penetration of metronidazole and, for abscesses with large volumes of pus, if carried out in conjunction with drug therapy, may reduce the period of disability.

Diloxanide furoate is not effective against hepatic amoebiasis, but a 10-day course should be given at the completion of metronidazole or tinidazole treatment to destroy any amoebae in the gut.

### Trichomonacides

Metronidazole is the treatment of choice for *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection. Contact tracing is recommended and sexual contacts should be treated simultaneously. If metronidazole is ineffective, tinidazole may be tried.

### Antigiardial drugs

Metronidazole is the treatment of choice for *Giardia lamblia* infections. Tinidazole may be used as an alternative to metronidazole.

### Leishmaniacides

Cutaneous leishmaniasis frequently heals spontaneously but if skin lesions are extensive or unsightly, treatment is indicated, as it is in visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar). Leishmaniasis should be treated under specialist supervision.

Sodium stibogluconate below, an organic pentavalent antimony compound, is used for visceral leishmaniasis. The dosage varies with different geographical regions and expert advice should be obtained. Skin lesions can also be treated with sodium stibogluconate.

Amphotericin p. 373 is used with or after an antimony compound for visceral leishmaniasis unresponsive to the antimonial alone; side-effects may be reduced by using liposomal amphotericin (*AmBisome*®). *Abelcet*®, a lipid formulation of amphotericin is also likely to be effective but less information is available.

Pentamidine isetionate p. 381 (pentamidine isethionate) has been used in antimony-resistant visceral leishmaniasis, but although the initial response is often good, the relapse rate is high; it is associated with serious side-effects. Other treatments include paromomycin [unlicensed] (available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies).

### Trypanocides

The prophylaxis and treatment of trypanosomiasis is difficult and differs according to the strain of organism. Expert advice should therefore be obtained.

### Toxoplasmosis

Most infections caused by *Toxoplasma gondii* are self-limiting, and treatment is not necessary. Exceptions are patients with eye involvement (toxoplasma chorioretinitis), and those who are immunosuppressed. Toxoplasmic encephalitis is a common complication of AIDS. The treatment of choice is a combination of pyrimethamine p. 399 and sulfadiazine p. 351, given for several weeks (expert advice **essential**). Pyrimethamine is a folate antagonist, and adverse reactions to this combination are relatively common (folic acid supplements and weekly blood counts needed). Alternative regimens use combinations of pyrimethamine with clindamycin p. 327 or clarithromycin p. 330 or azithromycin p. 329. Long-term secondary prophylaxis is required after treatment of

toxoplasmosis in immunocompromised patients; prophylaxis should continue until immunity recovers.

If toxoplasmosis is acquired in pregnancy, transplacental infection may lead to severe disease in the fetus; specialist advice should be sought on management. Spiramycin [unlicensed] (available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) may reduce the risk of transmission of maternal infection to the fetus. When there is evidence of placental or fetal infection, pyrimethamine may be given with sulfadiazine and folic acid p. 555 after the first trimester.

In neonates without signs of toxoplasmosis, but born to mothers known to have become infected, spiramycin is given while awaiting laboratory results. If toxoplasmosis is confirmed in the infant, pyrimethamine and sulfadiazine are given for 12 months, together with folic acid.

## 5.1 Leishmaniasis

**Other drugs used for Leishmaniasis** Amphotericin, p. 373 · Pentamidine isetionate, p. 381

### ANTIPROTOZOALS

#### Sodium stibogluconate

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Visceral leishmaniasis (specialist use only)

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child: 20 mg/kg daily for at least 20 days

##### ● UNLICENSED USE

- ▶ With intravenous use Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

- **CAUTIONS** Heart disease (withdraw if conduction disturbances occur) · mucocutaneous disease · predisposition to QT interval prolongation · treat intercurrent infection (e.g. pneumonia)

##### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ Mucocutaneous disease Successful treatment of mucocutaneous leishmaniasis may induce severe inflammation around the lesions (may be life-threatening if pharyngeal or tracheal involvement)—may require corticosteroid.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sodium stibogluconate

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · appetite decreased · arthralgia · diarrhoea · headache · lethargy · malaise · myalgia · nausea · vomiting
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Chest pain · chills · fever · flushing · haemorrhage · hyperhidrosis · jaundice · skin reactions · vertigo
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Arrhythmias · cough · pain · pancreatitis · pneumonia · QT interval prolongation · thrombosis

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount probably too small to be harmful.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in significant impairment.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor ECG before and during treatment.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Intravenous injections must be given slowly over 5 minutes (to reduce risk of local thrombosis) and stopped if coughing or substernal pain

occur. Injection should be filtered immediately before administration using a filter of 5 microns or less.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

► **Pentostam** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Antimony pentavalent (as Sodium stibogluconate) 100 mg per 1 ml** Pentostam 10g/100ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £66.43

## 5.2 Malaria

### Antimalarials

23-Jan-2018

#### Artemether with lumefantrine

Artemether with lumefantrine p. 393 is licensed for the *treatment of acute non-complicated falciparum malaria*.

#### Chloroquine

Chloroquine p. 395 is used for the *prophylaxis of malaria* in areas of the world where the *risk of chloroquine-resistant falciparum malaria is still low*. It is also used with proguanil hydrochloride p. 397 when chloroquine-resistant falciparum malaria is present but this regimen may not give optimal protection (for details, see Recommended regimens for prophylaxis against malaria p. 387).

Guidelines for malaria prevention in travellers from the United Kingdom (2017) published by Public Health England state that patients already taking hydroxychloroquine sulfate p. 639 for another indication, and for whom chloroquine would be an appropriate antimalarial, can remain on hydroxychloroquine sulfate.

Chloroquine is **no longer recommended** for the *treatment of falciparum malaria* owing to widespread resistance, nor is it recommended if the infective species is *not known* or if the infection is *mixed*; in these cases treatment should be with quinine p. 397, *Malarone*®, or *Riamet*®. It is still recommended for the *treatment of non-falciparum malaria*.

#### Mefloquine

Mefloquine p. 396 is used for the *prophylaxis of malaria* in areas of the world where there is a *high risk of chloroquine resistant falciparum malaria* (for details, see Recommended regimens for prophylaxis against malaria p. 387).

Mefloquine is now rarely used for the *treatment of falciparum malaria* because of increased resistance. It is rarely used for the *treatment of non-falciparum malaria* because better tolerated alternatives are available. Mefloquine should not be used for treatment if it has been used for prophylaxis.

#### Piperaquine with arteminimol

Arteminimol with piperaquine phosphate p. 393 is not recommended for the first-line treatment of acute uncomplicated falciparum malaria because there is limited experience of its use in travellers who usually reside in areas where malaria is not endemic. Piperaquine has a long half-life.

#### Primaquine

Primaquine p. 396 is used to eliminate the liver stages of *P. vivax* or *P. ovale* following chloroquine treatment.

#### Proguanil

Proguanil hydrochloride is used (usually with *chloroquine*, but occasionally *alone*) for the *prophylaxis of malaria*, (for details, see Recommended regimens for prophylaxis against malaria p. 387).

Proguanil hydrochloride used alone is not suitable for the *treatment of malaria*; however, *Malarone*® (a combination of atovaquone with proguanil hydrochloride p. 394) is licensed for the treatment of acute uncomplicated falciparum malaria. *Malarone*® is also used for the *prophylaxis of falciparum malaria* in areas of *widespread mefloquine or chloroquine resistance*. *Malarone*® is also used as an alternative to mefloquine or doxycycline p. 352. *Malarone*® is particularly suitable for short trips to highly chloroquine-resistant areas because it needs to be taken only for 7 days after leaving an endemic area.

#### Pyrimethamine

Pyrimethamine p. 399 should not be used alone, but is used with sulfadoxine.

Pyrimethamine with sulfadoxine is not recommended for the *prophylaxis of malaria*, but can be used in the *treatment of falciparum malaria with (or following) quinine*.

#### Quinine

Quinine is not suitable for the *prophylaxis of malaria*.

Quinine is used for the *treatment of falciparum malaria* or if the infective species is *not known* or if the infection is *mixed* (for details see Malaria, treatment p. 392).

#### Tetracyclines

Doxycycline is used in adults and children over 12 years for the *prophylaxis of malaria* in areas of *widespread mefloquine or chloroquine resistance*. Doxycycline is also used as an alternative to mefloquine or *Malarone*® (for details, see Recommended regimens for prophylaxis against malaria p. 387).

## Malaria, prophylaxis

23-Jan-2018

### Prophylaxis against malaria

The recommendations on prophylaxis reflect guidelines agreed by UK malaria specialists, published in the Public Health England Guidelines for malaria prevention in travellers from the United Kingdom, 2017. The advice is aimed at residents of the UK who travel to endemic areas.

For specialist centres offering advice on specific malaria-related problems see Malaria, treatment p. 392. The choice of drug for a particular individual should take into account:

- risk of exposure to malaria
- extent of drug resistance
- efficacy of the recommended drugs
- side-effects of the drugs
- patient-related factors (e.g. age, pregnancy, renal or hepatic impairment, compliance with prophylactic regimen)

For more information on choice of drug, see also Antimalarials above. Prophylactic doses are based on guidelines agreed by UK malaria experts and may differ from advice in product literature. **Weight is a better guide than age**. If in doubt obtain advice from specialist centre (see under Malaria, treatment p. 392).

#### Protection against bites

**Prophylaxis is not absolute**, and breakthrough infection can occur with any of the drugs recommended. Personal protection against being bitten is very important and is recommended even in malaria-free areas as a preventive measure against other insect vector-borne diseases. Mosquito nets impregnated with permethrin p. 729 provide the most effective barrier protection against insects (infants should sleep with a mosquito net stretched over the cot or baby carrier); mats and vapourised insecticides are also useful. Diethyltoluamide (DEET) 20–50% (available as sprays, and modified-release polymer formulations) is safe and effective when applied to the skin of adults and children over



**Key to recommended regimens for prophylaxis against malaria**

Codes for regimens	Details of regimens for prophylaxis against malaria
-	No risk
1	Chemoprophylaxis not recommended, but avoid mosquito bites and consider malaria if fever presents
2	Chloroquine only
3	Chloroquine with proguanil
4	Atovaquone with proguanil hydrochloride or doxycycline or mefloquine

**Specific recommendations**

Country	Comments on risk of malaria and regional or seasonal variation	Codes for regimens
Afghanistan	Low risk below 2000 m from May–November	1
	Very low risk below 2000 m from December–April	1
Algeria	Very low risk in remote focus in Illizi department only	1
Andaman and Nicobar Islands (India)	Low risk	1
Angola	High risk	4
Argentina	Very low risk in low altitude areas of Salta provinces bordering Bolivia and in Chaco, Corrientes, and Misiones provinces close to border with Paraguay and Brazil	1
	No risk in Iguazú Falls and areas other than those above	-
Armenia	No risk	1
Azerbaijan	Very low risk	1
Bangladesh	High risk in Chittagong Hill Tract districts (but not Chittagong city)	4
	Very low risk in Chittagong city and other areas, except Chittagong Hill Tract districts	1
Belize	Low risk in rural areas	1
	No risk in Belize district (including Belize city and islands)	-
Benin	High risk	4
Bhutan	Low risk in southern belt districts, along border with India: Chukha, Geyleg-phug, Samchi, Samdrup Jonkhar, and Shemgang	1
	No risk in areas other than those above	-
Bolivia	Low risk in Amazon basin	1
	Low risk in rural areas below 2500 m (other than above)	1
	No risk above 2500 m	-
Botswana	High risk from November–June in northern half, including Okavango Delta area	4
	Low risk from July–October in northern half	1
	Very low risk in southern half	1
Brazil	Low risk in Amazon basin, including city of Manaus	1
	Very low risk in areas other than those above	1
	No risk in Iguazú Falls	-
Brunei Darussalam	Very low risk	1
Burkina Faso	High risk	4
Burundi	High risk	4
Cambodia	Low risk. Mefloquine resistance widespread in western provinces bordering Thailand	1
	Very low risk in Angkor Wat and Lake Tonle Sap, including Siem Reap	1
	No risk in Phnom Penh	-
Cameroon	High risk	4
Cape Verde	Very low risk on island of Santiago (Sao Tiago) and Boa Vista	1
Central African Republic	High risk	4
Chad	High risk	4
China	Low risk in Yunnan and Hainan provinces	1
	Very low risk in southern and some central provinces, including Anhui, Guizhou, Hena, Hubei, and Jiangsu below 1500 m	1
	Very low risk in areas other than those above and below	1
	No risk in Hong Kong	-

Country	Comments on risk of malaria and regional or seasonal variation	Codes for regimens
Colombia	Low risk in rural areas below 1600 m	1
	Very low risk above 1600 m and in Cartagena	1
Comoros	High risk	4
Congo	High risk	4
Costa Rica	Low risk in Limon province (but not city of Limon)	1
	Very low risk in areas other than those above	1
Cote d'Ivoire (Ivory Coast)	High risk	4
Democratic Republic of the Congo	High risk	4
Djibouti	High risk	4
Dominican Republic	Low risk	1
	No risk in cities of Santiago and Santo Domingo	-
East Timor (Timor-Leste)	Risk present	4
Ecuador	Low risk in areas below 1500 m including coastal provinces and Amazon basin	1
	No risk in Galapagos islands or city of Guayaquil	-
Egypt	No risk	1
El Salvador	Low risk in rural areas of Santa Ana, Ahuachapán, and La Unión provinces in western part of country; very low risk in other areas	1
Equatorial Guinea	High risk	4
Eritrea	High risk below 2200 m	4
Ethiopia	High risk below 2000 m	4
	No risk in Addis Ababa or in areas above 2000 m	-
French Guiana	Risk present (particularly in border areas) except city of Cayenne or Devil's Island (Ile du Diable)	4
	Low risk in city of Cayenne or Devil's Island (Ile du Diable)	1
Gabon	High risk	4
Gambia	High risk	4
Georgia	Very low risk in rural south east from June–October	1
Ghana	High risk	4
Guatemala	Low risk below 1500 m	1
	No risk in Guatemala City, Antigua, or Lake Atitlan and above 1500 m	-
Guinea	High risk	4
Guinea-Bissau	High risk	4
Guyana	Risk present in all interior regions	4
	Very low risk in Georgetown and coastal region	1
Haiti	Risk present	3
Honduras	Low risk below 1000 m and in Roatán and other Bay Islands	1
	No risk in San Pedro Sula or Tegucigalpa and areas above 1000 m	-
India	Risk present in states of Assam and Orissa, districts of East Godavari, Srikakulam, Vishakhapatnam, and Vizianagaram in the state of Andhra Pradesh, and districts of Balaghat, Dindori, Mandla, and Seoni in the state of Madhya Pradesh	4
	Low risk in areas other than those above or below (including Goa, Andaman and Nicobar islands)	1
	Exceptional circumstances in low risk areas (dependent on individual risk assessment)	3
	No risk in Lakshadweep islands	-
Indonesia	High risk in Irian Jaya (Papua)	4
	Low risk in Bali, Lombok and islands of Java and Sumatra	1
	No risk in city of Jakarta	-
Indonesia (Borneo)	Low risk	1
Iran	Low risk from March–November in rural south eastern provinces and in north, along Azerbaijan border in Ardabil, and near Turkmenistan border in North Khorasan	1
	Very low risk in areas other than those above	1
Iraq	Very low risk from May–November in rural northern area below 1500 m	1
	No risk in areas other than those above	-

**Key to recommended regimens for prophylaxis against malaria**

Codes for regimens	Details of regimens for prophylaxis against malaria
-	No risk
1	Chemoprophylaxis not recommended, but avoid mosquito bites and consider malaria if fever presents
2	Chloroquine only
3	Chloroquine with proguanil
4	Atovaquone with proguanil hydrochloride or doxycycline or mefloquine

**Specific recommendations**

Country	Comments on risk of malaria and regional or seasonal variation	Codes for regimens
Kenya	High risk (except city of Nairobi)	4
	Very low risk in the highlands above 2500 m and in city of Nairobi	1
Lao People's Democratic Republic (Laos)	Low risk	1
	Very low risk in city of Vientiane	1
Liberia	High risk	4
Libya	No risk	1
Madagascar	High risk	4
Malawi	High risk	4
Malaysia	Low risk in mainland Malaysia	1
Malaysia (Borneo)	Low risk in inland areas of Sabah and in inland, forested areas of Sarawak	1
	Very low risk in areas other than those above, including coastal areas of Sabah and Sarawak	1
Mali	High risk	4
Mauritania	High risk all year in southern provinces, and from July–October in the northern provinces	4
	Low risk from November–June in the northern provinces	1
Mauritius	No risk	1
Mayotte	Risk present	4
Mexico	Very low risk	1
Mozambique	High risk	4
Myanmar	Low risk	1
Namibia	High risk all year in regions of Caprivi Strip, Kavango, and Kunene river, and from November–June in northern third of country	4
	Very low risk in areas other than those above; low risk from July–October in northern third of country	1
Nepal	Low risk below 1500 m, including the Terai district	1
	No risk in city of Kathmandu and on typical Himalayan treks	-
Nicaragua	Low risk (except Managua)	1
	Very low risk in Managua	1
Niger	High risk	4
Nigeria	High risk	4
North Korea	Very low risk in some southern areas	1
Pakistan	Low risk below 2000 m	1
	Very low risk above 2000 m	1
Panama	Low risk east of Canal Zone	1
	Very low risk west of Canal Zone	1
	No risk in Panama City or Canal Zone itself	-
Papua New Guinea	High risk below 1800 m	4
	Very low risk above 1800 m	1
Paraguay	Very low risk	1
Peru	Low risk in Amazon basin along border with Brazil, particularly in Loreto province and in rural areas below 2000 m including the Amazon basin bordering Bolivia	1
	No risk in city of Lima and coastal region south of Chiclayo	-

Country	Comments on risk of malaria and regional or seasonal variation	Codes for regimens
Philippines	Low risk in rural areas below 600 m and on islands of Luzon, Mindanao, Mindoro, and Palawan	1
	No risk in cities or on islands of Boracay, Bohol, Catanduanes, Cebu, or Leyte	-
Rwanda	High risk	4
São Tomé and Príncipe	High risk	4
Saudi Arabia	Low risk in south-western provinces along border with Yemen, including below 2000 m in Asir province	1
	No risk in cities of Jeddah, Makkah (Mecca), Medina, Riyadh, or Ta'if, or above 2000 m in Asir province	-
Senegal	High risk	4
Sierra Leone	High risk	4
Solomon Islands	High risk	4
Somalia	High risk	4
South Africa	Risk from September–May in low altitude areas of Mpumalanga and Limpopo, which border Mozambique and Zimbabwe (including Kruger National Park)	4
	Low risk in north-east KwaZulu-Natal	1
	Low risk in areas bordering those above	1
South Korea	Very low risk in northern areas, in Gangwon-do and Gyeonggi-do provinces, and Incheon city (towards Demilitarized Zone)	1
South Sudan	High risk	4
Sri Lanka	Low risk north of Vavuniya	1
	Very low risk in areas other than those above and below	1
	No risk in Colombo or Kandy	-
Sudan	High risk in central and southern areas; risk also present in rest of country (except Khartoum)	4
	Very low risk in Khartoum	1
Suriname	Risk present on the French Guiana border	4
	Low risk in areas other than above and below	1
	No risk in city of Paramaribo	-
Swaziland	Risk in northern and eastern regions bordering Mozambique and South Africa, including all of Lubombo district and Big Bend, Mhlume, Simunye, and Tshaneni regions	4
	Very low risk in the areas other than those above	1
Syria	Very low risk in small, remote foci of El Hasakah	1
Tajikistan	Very low risk	1
	No risk above 2000 m	-
Tanzania	High risk below 1800 m; risk also in Zanzibar	4
	No risk above 1800 m	-
Thailand	Mefloquine resistance present. Low risk in rural forested borders with Cambodia, Laos, and Myanmar	1
	Very low risk in areas other than those above, including Kanchanaburi (Kwai Bridge)	1
	No risk in cities of Bangkok, Chiang Mai, Chiang Rai, Koh Phangan, Koh Samui, and Pattaya	-
Togo	High risk	4
Turkey	Very low risk	1
Uganda	High risk	4
Uzbekistan	Very low risk in extreme south-east	1
Vanuatu	Risk present	4
Venezuela	Risk in all areas south of, and including, the Orinoco river and Angel Falls, rural areas of Apure, Monagas, Sucre, and Zulia states	1
	No risk in city of Caracas or on Margarita Island	-
Vietnam	Low risk in rural areas, and in southern provinces of Tay Ninh, Lam Dong, Dac Lac, Gia Lai, and Kon Tum	1
	No risk in large cities (including Ho Chi Minh City (Saigon) and Hanoi), the Red River delta, coastal areas north of Nha Trang and Phu Quoc Island	1
Western Sahara	No risk	1

**Key to recommended regimens for prophylaxis against malaria**

Codes for regimens	Details of regimens for prophylaxis against malaria
-	No risk
1	Chemoprophylaxis not recommended, but avoid mosquito bites and consider malaria if fever presents
2	Chloroquine only
3	Chloroquine with proguanil
4	Atovaquone with proguanil hydrochloride or doxycycline or mefloquine

**Specific recommendations**

Country	Comments on risk of malaria and regional or seasonal variation	Codes for regimens
Yemen	Risk below 2000 m	3
	Very low risk on Socotra Island; no risk above 2000 m, including Sana'a city	1
Zambia	High risk	4
Zimbabwe	High risk all year in Zambezi valley, and from November–June in areas below 1200 m	4
	Low risk from July–October in areas below 1200 m; very low risk all year in Harare and Bulawayo	1

2 months of age. It can also be used during pregnancy and breast-feeding. However, ingestion should be avoided, therefore breast-feeding mothers should wash their hands and breast tissue before handling infants. The duration of protection varies according to the concentration of DEET and is longest for DEET 50%. When sunscreen is also required, DEET should be applied after the sunscreen. DEET reduces the SPF of sunscreen, so a sunscreen of SPF 30–50 should be applied. Long sleeves and trousers worn after dusk also provide protection against bites.

**Length of prophylaxis**

In order to determine tolerance and to establish habit, prophylaxis should generally be started one week (2–3 weeks in the case of mefloquine p. 396) before travel into an endemic area; *Malarone*® or doxycycline p. 352 prophylaxis should be started 1–2 days before travel. Prophylaxis should be continued for **4 weeks after leaving** (except for *Malarone*® prophylaxis which should be stopped 1 week after leaving). For extensive journeys across different regions, the traveller must be protected in all areas of risk.

In those requiring long-term prophylaxis, chloroquine p. 395 and proguanil hydrochloride p. 397 may be used. However there is considerable concern over the protective efficacy of the combination of chloroquine and proguanil hydrochloride in certain areas where it was previously useful. Mefloquine is licensed for up to 1 year (although, if it is tolerated in the short term, there is no evidence of harm when it is used for up to 3 years). Doxycycline can be used for up to 2 years. *Malarone*® can be used for up to 1 year. Prophylaxis with mefloquine, doxycycline, or *Malarone*® may be considered for longer durations if it is justified by the risk of exposure to malaria. Specialist advice should be sought for long-term prophylaxis.

**Return from malarial region**

It is important to be aware that **any illness** that occurs within 1 year and **especially within 3 months of return might be malaria** even if all recommended precautions against malaria were taken. Travellers should be **warned of this** and told that if they develop any illness **particularly within 3 months** of their return they should go **immediately** to a doctor and specifically mention their exposure to malaria.

**Epilepsy**

Both chloroquine and mefloquine are unsuitable for malaria prophylaxis in individuals with a history of epilepsy. In areas without chloroquine resistance proguanil alone is

recommended; in areas with *chloroquine resistance*, doxycycline or *Malarone*® may be considered.

**Asplenia**

Asplenic individuals (or those with severe splenic dysfunction) are at particular risk of severe malaria. If travel to malarious areas is unavoidable, rigorous precautions are required against contracting the disease.

**Pregnancy**

Travel to malarious areas should be avoided during pregnancy; if travel is unavoidable, effective prophylaxis must be used. Chloroquine and proguanil hydrochloride can be given in the usual doses during pregnancy, but these drugs are not appropriate for most areas because their effectiveness has declined, particularly in Sub-Saharan Africa; in the case of proguanil hydrochloride, folic acid p. 574 (in doses greater than standard pregnancy prophylaxis) should be given for at least the first trimester. The centres listed (see Malaria, treatment p. 392) should be consulted for advice on prophylaxis in chloroquine-resistant areas. Although the manufacturer advises that mefloquine should not be used during pregnancy, particularly in the first trimester, unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk, studies of mefloquine in pregnancy (including use in the first trimester) indicate that it can be considered for travel to chloroquine-resistant areas. Doxycycline is contra-indicated during pregnancy; however, it can be used for malaria prophylaxis if other regimens are unsuitable, and if the entire course of doxycycline can be completed before 15 weeks' gestation [unlicensed]. *Malarone*® should be avoided during pregnancy, however, it can be considered during the second and third trimesters if there is no suitable alternative.

**Breast-feeding**

Prophylaxis is required in **breast-fed infants**; although antimalarials are present in milk, the amounts are too variable to give reliable protection.

**Anticoagulants**

Travellers taking warfarin sodium p. 97 should begin chemoprophylaxis 2–3 weeks before departure. The INR should be stable before departure. It should be measured before starting chemoprophylaxis, 7 days after starting, and after completing the course. For prolonged stays, the INR should be checked at regular intervals.

**Standby treatment**

Children and their carers visiting remote, malarious areas for prolonged periods should carry standby treatment if they are



likely to be more than 24 hours away from medical care. Self-medication should be **avoided** if medical help is accessible.

In order to avoid excessive self-medication, the traveller should be provided with **written instructions** that urgent medical attention should be sought if fever (38°C or more) develops 7 days (or more) after arriving in a malarious area and that self-treatment is indicated if medical help is not available within 24 hours of fever onset.

In view of the continuing emergence of resistant strains and of the different regimens required for different areas expert advice should be sought on the best treatment course for an individual traveller. A drug used for chemoprophylaxis should not be considered for standby treatment for the same traveller.

### Malaria prophylaxis, specific recommendations

Where a journey requires two regimens, the regimen for the higher risk area should be used for the whole journey. Those travelling to remote or little-visited areas may require expert advice. See also *Recommended regimens for prophylaxis against malaria* (p. 387).

#### Important

Settled immigrants (or long-term visitors) to the UK may be unaware that **any immunity they may have acquired while living in malarious areas is lost rapidly** after migration to the UK, or that any non-malarious areas where they lived previously **may now be malarious**.

## Malaria, treatment

### Advice for healthcare professionals

A number of specialist centres are able to provide advice on specific problems.

PHE (Public Health England) Malaria Reference Laboratory (020) 7637 0248 (fax) (prophylaxis only) [www.malaria-reference.co.uk](http://www.malaria-reference.co.uk)

National Travel Health Network and Centre 0845 602 6712 Monday and Friday: 9–11 a.m. and 1–2 p.m., Tuesday to Thursday: 9–11 a.m. and 1–3:30 p.m. [travelhealthpro.org.uk/](http://travelhealthpro.org.uk/)

Travel Medicine Team, Health Protection Scotland (registered users of Travax only) [www.travax.nhs.uk](http://www.travax.nhs.uk) (for registered users of the NHS Travax website only) (0141) 300 1100 (weekdays 2–4 p.m. only)  
Birmingham (0121) 424 2358  
Liverpool (0151) 705 3100  
London 0845 155 5000 (treatment)  
Oxford (01865) 225 430

### Advice for travellers

Hospital for Tropical Diseases Travel Healthline (020) 7950 7799 [www.fitfortravel.nhs.uk](http://www.fitfortravel.nhs.uk)

WHO advice on international travel and health [www.who.int/ith](http://www.who.int/ith)

National Travel Health Network and Centre (NaTHNaC) [www.travelhealthpro.org.uk/](http://www.travelhealthpro.org.uk/)

### Treatment

Recommendations on the prophylaxis and treatment of malaria reflect guidelines agreed by UK malaria specialists. Choice will depend on the age of the child.

If the infective species is **not known**, or if the infection is **mixed**, initial treatment should be as for *falciparum malaria* with quinine p. 397, *Malarone*® (atovaquone with proguanil hydrochloride p. 394), or *Riamet*® (artemether with lumefantrine p. 393). *Falciparum malaria* can progress rapidly in unprotected individuals and antimalarial treatment should be considered in those with features of severe malaria and possible exposure, even if the initial blood tests for the organism are negative.

### Falciparum malaria (treatment)

*Falciparum malaria* (malignant malaria) is caused by *Plasmodium falciparum*. In most parts of the world *P. falciparum* is now resistant to chloroquine p. 395 which should not therefore be given for treatment. Quinine, *Malarone*® (atovaquone with proguanil hydrochloride), or *Riamet*® (artemether with lumefantrine) can be given by mouth if the child can swallow and retain tablets and there are no serious manifestations (e.g. impaired consciousness); quinine should be given by intravenous infusion if the child is seriously ill or unable to take tablets. Mefloquine p. 396 is now rarely used for treatment because of concerns about resistance.

*Oral* quinine is well tolerated by children although the salts are bitter. Quinine is given by mouth together with or followed by clindamycin p. 327 [unlicensed indication] or, in children over 12 doxycycline p. 352.

If the parasite is likely to be sensitive, pyrimethamine with sulfadoxine as a single dose [unlicensed] may be given (instead of either clindamycin or doxycycline) together with, or after, a course of quinine.

Alternatively, *Malarone*®, or *Riamet*® may be given instead of quinine. It is not necessary to give clindamycin, doxycycline, or pyrimethamine with sulfadoxine after *Malarone*® or *Riamet*® treatment.

If the child is seriously ill or unable to swallow tablets, or if more than 2% of red blood cell are parasitized, quinine should be given by *intravenous infusion* [unlicensed] (until patient can swallow tablets to complete the 7-day course together with or followed by either doxycycline in children over 12 years, or clindamycin).

Specialist advice should be sought in difficult cases (e.g. very high parasite count, deterioration on optimal doses of quinine, infection acquired in quinine-resistant areas of south east Asia) because intravenous *artesunate* may be available for 'named-patient' use.

### Pregnancy

*Falciparum malaria* is particularly dangerous in pregnancy, especially in the last trimester. The treatment doses of oral and intravenous quinine (including the loading dose) can safely be given in pregnancy. Clindamycin [unlicensed indication] should be given for 7 days with or after quinine. Doxycycline should be avoided in pregnancy (affects teeth and skeletal development in fetus); pyrimethamine with sulfadoxine, *Malarone*®, and *Riamet*® are also best avoided until more information is available. Specialist advice should be sought in difficult cases (e.g. very high parasite count, deterioration on optimal doses of quinine, infection acquired in quinine-resistant areas of south east Asia) because intravenous *artesunate* may be available for 'named patient' use.

### Non-falciparum malaria (treatment)

Non-falciparum malaria is usually caused by *Plasmodium vivax* and less commonly by *P. ovale* and *P. malariae*. *P. knowlesi* is also present in the Asia-Pacific region. Chloroquine is the drug of choice for the treatment of non-falciparum malaria (but chloroquine-resistant *P. vivax* has been reported in the Indonesian archipelago, the Malay Peninsula, including Myanmar, and eastward to Southern Vietnam).

For the treatment of chloroquine-resistant non-falciparum malaria, *Malarone*® [unlicensed indication], quinine, or *Riamet*® [unlicensed indication] can be used; as with chloroquine, primaquine p. 396 should be given for radical cure.

Chloroquine alone is adequate for *P. malariae* and *P. knowlesi* infections but in the case of *P. vivax* and *P. ovale*, a *radical cure* (to destroy parasites in the liver and thus prevent relapses) is required. This is achieved with primaquine [unlicensed] given after chloroquine.

For a radical cure, primaquine [unlicensed] is then given to children over 6 months of age; specialist advice should be sought for children under 6 months of age.

#### Parenteral

If the child is unable to take oral therapy, quinine can be given by intravenous infusion, changed to oral chloroquine as soon as the patient's condition permits.

#### Pregnancy

Treatment doses of chloroquine can be given for non-falciparum malaria. In the case of *P. vivax* or *P. ovale*, however, the radical cure with primaquine should be **postponed** until the pregnancy is over; instead chloroquine should be continued, given weekly, during the pregnancy.

## ANTIPROTOZOALS > ANTIMALARIALS

### Artemether with lumefantrine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment of acute uncomplicated falciparum malaria | Treatment of chloroquine-resistant non-falciparum malaria**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child (body-weight 5–14 kg): Initially 1 tablet, followed by 1 tablet for 5 doses each given at 8, 24, 36, 48, and 60 hours (total 6 tablets over 60 hours)
- Child (body-weight 15–24 kg): Initially 2 tablets, followed by 2 tablets for 5 doses each given at 8, 24, 36, 48, and 60 hours (total 12 tablets over 60 hours)
- Child (body-weight 25–34 kg): Initially 3 tablets, followed by 3 tablets for 5 doses each given at 8, 24, 36, 48, and 60 hours (total 18 tablets over 60 hours)
- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 35 kg and above): Initially 4 tablets, followed by 4 tablets for 5 doses each given at 8, 24, 36, 48, and 60 hours (total 24 tablets over 60 hours)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Use in treatment of non-falciparum malaria is an unlicensed indication.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Family history of congenital QT interval prolongation · family history of sudden death · history of arrhythmias · history of clinically relevant bradycardia · history of congestive heart failure accompanied by reduced left ventricular ejection fraction
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 · electrolyte disturbances
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antimalarials
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · cough · diarrhoea · dizziness · headache · myalgia · nausea · palpitations · QT interval prolongation · skin reactions · sleep disorders · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Clonus · drowsiness
  - **Frequency not known** Angioedema
- **PREGNANCY** Toxicity in *animal* studies with artemether. Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid breastfeeding for at least 1 week after last dose. Present in milk in *animal* studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment.  
**Monitoring** In severe renal impairment monitor ECG and plasma potassium concentration.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor patients unable to take food (greater risk of recrudescence).

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets may be crushed just before administration.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Dizziness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- **Riamet** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
**Artemether 20 mg, Lumefantrine 120 mg** Riamet tablets | 24 tablet (PoM) £22.50

### Artemimol with piperazine phosphate

(Piperazine tetraphosphate with dihydroartemisinin)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment of uncomplicated falciparum malaria**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight 7–12 kg): 0.5 tablet once daily for 3 days, max. 2 courses in 12 months; second course given at least 2 months after first course
- Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight 13–23 kg): 1 tablet once daily for 3 days, max. 2 courses in 12 months; second course given at least 2 months after first course
- Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight 24–35 kg): 2 tablets once daily for 3 days, max. 2 courses in 12 months; second course given at least 2 months after first course
- Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight 36–74 kg): 3 tablets once daily for 3 days, max. 2 courses in 12 months; second course given at least 2 months after first course
- Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight 75–99 kg): 4 tablets once daily for 3 days, max. 2 courses in 12 months; second course given at least 2 months after first course

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute myocardial infarction · bradycardia · congenital long QT syndrome · electrolyte disturbances · family history of sudden death · heart failure with reduced left ventricular ejection fraction · history of symptomatic arrhythmias · left ventricular hypertrophy · risk factors for QT interval prolongation · severe hypertension
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antimalarials
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · anaemia · appetite decreased · asthenia · conjunctivitis · cough · diarrhoea · eosinophilia · fever · increased risk of infection · leucocytosis · leucopenia · neutropenia · QT interval prolongation · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Arthralgia · cardiac conduction disorder · epistaxis · headache · hepatic disorders · hypochromia · lymphadenopathy · nausea · rhinorrhoea · seizure · splenomegaly · stomatitis · thrombocytosis
- **PREGNANCY** Teratogenic in *animal* studies—manufacturer advises use only if other antimalarials cannot be used.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in *animal* studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** No information available in moderate to severe impairment.  
**Monitoring** Manufacturer advises monitor ECG and plasma-potassium concentration in moderate to severe hepatic impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** No information available in moderate to severe impairment.

**Monitoring** Manufacturer advises monitor ECG and plasma-potassium concentration in moderate to severe renal impairment.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Consider obtaining ECG in all patients before third dose and 4–6 hours after third dose. If QT<sub>c</sub> interval more than 500 milliseconds, discontinue treatment and monitor ECG for a further 24–48 hours.
- Obtain ECG as soon as possible after starting treatment then continue monitoring in those taking medicines that increase plasma-piperquine concentration, in children who are vomiting or in females.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets to be taken at least 3 hours before and at least 3 hours after food. Tablets may be crushed and mixed with water immediately before administration.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer tablets containing piperquine phosphate with arteminol.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

- ▶ **Eurartesim** (Logixx Pharma Solutions Ltd) ▼  
Arteminol 40 mg, Piperquine phosphate 320 mg Eurartesim 320mg/40mg tablets | 12 tablet [PoM] £40.00

## Atovaquone with proguanil hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### MALARONE® 250 MG/100 MG

**Prophylaxis of falciparum malaria, particularly where resistance to other antimalarial drugs suspected**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child (body-weight 41 kg and above): 1 tablet daily, to be started 1–2 days before entering endemic area and continued for 1 week after leaving

**Treatment of acute uncomplicated falciparum malaria | Treatment of non-falciparum malaria**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child (body-weight 11–20 kg): 1 tablet once daily for 3 days
- ▶ Child (body-weight 21–30 kg): 2 tablets once daily for 3 days
- ▶ Child (body-weight 31–40 kg): 3 tablets once daily for 3 days
- ▶ Child (body-weight 41 kg and above): 4 tablets once daily for 3 days

##### MALARONE® PAEDIATRIC

**Prophylaxis of falciparum malaria, particularly where resistance to other antimalarial drugs suspected**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child (body-weight 5–8 kg): 0.5 tablet once daily, to be started 1–2 days before entering endemic area and continued for 1 week after leaving
- ▶ Child (body-weight 9–10 kg): 0.75 tablet once daily, to be started 1–2 days before entering endemic area and continued for 1 week after leaving
- ▶ Child (body-weight 11–20 kg): 1 tablet once daily, to be started 1–2 days before entering endemic area and continued for 1 week after leaving
- ▶ Child (body-weight 21–30 kg): 2 tablets once daily, to be started 1–2 days before entering endemic area and continued for 1 week after leaving
- ▶ Child (body-weight 31–40 kg): 3 tablets once daily, to be started 1–2 days before entering endemic area and continued for 1 week after leaving

- ▶ Child (body-weight 41 kg and above): Use **Malarone®** (standard) tablets.

**Treatment of acute uncomplicated falciparum malaria | Treatment of non-falciparum malaria**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child (body-weight 5–8 kg): 2 tablets once daily for 3 days
- ▶ Child (body-weight 9–10 kg): 3 tablets once daily for 3 days
- ▶ Child (body-weight 11 kg and above): Use **Malarone®** (standard) tablets.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for treatment of non-falciparum malaria. Not licensed for prophylaxis of malaria in children under 11 kg.

- **CAUTIONS** Diarrhoea or vomiting (reduced absorption of atovaquone) · efficacy not evaluated in cerebral or complicated malaria (including hyperparasitaemia, pulmonary oedema or renal failure)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antimalarials

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · appetite decreased · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · fever · headache · nausea · skin reactions · sleep disorders · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Alopecia · anxiety · blood disorder · hyponatraemia · oral disorders · palpitations
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Hallucinations · hepatic disorders · photosensitivity reaction · seizure · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · tachycardia · vasculitis

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Use only if no suitable alternative available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid for malaria prophylaxis and, if possible, for treatment if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

#### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

**MALARONE® PAEDIATRIC** Tablets may be crushed and mixed with food or milky drink just before administration.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Warn travellers about importance of avoiding mosquito bites, importance of taking prophylaxis regularly, and importance of immediate visit to doctor if ill within 1 year and especially within 3 months of return.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Malarone for prevention of malaria [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/malarone-for-prevention-of-malaria](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/malarone-for-prevention-of-malaria)

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

**NHS restrictions** Drugs for malaria prophylaxis are not prescribable in NHS primary care; health authorities may investigate circumstances under which antimalarials are prescribed.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- ▶ **Malarone** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Proguanil hydrochloride 25 mg, Atovaquone 62.5 mg** Malarone Paediatric 62.5mg/25mg tablets | 12 tablet [PoM] £6.26

**Proguanil hydrochloride 100 mg, Atovaquone 250 mg** Malarone 250mg/100mg tablets | 12 tablet [PoM] £25.21 DT = £25.21

## Chloroquine

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Prophylaxis of malaria

##### ► INITIALLY BY MOUTH USING SYRUP

- Child 4–5 weeks (body-weight up to 4.5 kg): 25 mg once weekly, started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
  - Child 6 weeks–5 months (body-weight 4.5–7 kg): 50 mg once weekly, started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
  - Child 6–11 months (body-weight 8–10 kg): 75 mg once weekly, started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
  - Child 1–2 years (body-weight 11–14 kg): 100 mg once weekly, started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
  - Child 3–4 years (body-weight 15–16.4 kg): 125 mg once weekly, started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
  - Child 5–7 years (body-weight 16.5–24 kg): 150 mg once weekly, alternatively (by mouth using tablets) 155 mg once weekly, started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
  - Child 8–13 years (body-weight 25–44 kg): 225 mg once weekly, alternatively (by mouth using tablets) 232.5 mg once weekly, started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
- ##### ► INITIALLY BY MOUTH USING TABLETS
- Child 14–17 years (body-weight 45 kg and above): 310 mg once weekly, alternatively (by mouth using syrup) 300 mg once weekly, started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving

#### Treatment of non-falciparum malaria

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Initially 10 mg/kg (max. per dose 620 mg), then 5 mg/kg after 6–8 hours (max. per dose 310 mg), then 5 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 310 mg) for 2 days

#### **P. vivax or P. ovale infection during pregnancy while radical cure is postponed**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 10 mg/kg once weekly (max. per dose 310 mg)

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Doses expressed as chloroquine base.
- Each tablet contains 155 mg of chloroquine base (equivalent to 250 mg of chloroquine phosphate).
- Syrup contains 50 mg/5 mL of chloroquine base (equivalent to 80 mg/5 mL of chloroquine phosphate).

- **UNLICENSED USE** Chloroquine doses for the treatment and prophylaxis of malaria in BNF publications may differ from those in product literature.

- **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · diabetes (may lower blood glucose) · G6PD deficiency · long-term therapy (regular ophthalmic examination recommended by manufacturers) · may aggravate myasthenia gravis · may exacerbate psoriasis · neurological disorders, especially epilepsy (avoid for prophylaxis of malaria if history of epilepsy) · severe gastro-intestinal disorders

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antimalarials

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare** Cardiomyopathy · hallucination · hepatitis
- **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain · agranulocytosis · alopecia · anxiety · atrioventricular block · bone marrow disorders · confusion · corneal deposits · depression · diarrhoea · eye disorders · gastrointestinal disorder · headache · hearing impairment · hypoglycaemia · hypotension · insomnia · interstitial lung disease · movement disorders · myopathy · nausea · neuromyopathy · neutropenia · personality change · photosensitivity

reaction · psychotic disorder · QT interval prolongation · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · tongue protrusion · vision disorders · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Side-effects which occur at doses used in the prophylaxis or treatment of malaria are generally not serious.

**Overdose** Chloroquine is very toxic in overdosage; overdosage is extremely hazardous and difficult to treat. Urgent advice from the National Poisons Information Service is essential. Life-threatening features include arrhythmias (which can have a very rapid onset) and convulsions (which can be intractable).

- **PREGNANCY** Benefit of use in prophylaxis and treatment in malaria outweighs risk. For rheumatoid disease, it is not necessary to withdraw an antimalarial drug during pregnancy if the disease is well controlled.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in breast milk and breast-feeding should be avoided when used to treat rheumatic disease. Amount in milk probably too small to be harmful when used for malaria.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in moderate to severe impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise caution.

**Dose adjustments** Only partially excreted by the kidneys and reduction of the dose is not required for prophylaxis of malaria except in severe impairment.

For rheumatoid arthritis and lupus erythematosus, reduce dose.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Ophthalmic examination with long-term therapy.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Warn travellers going to malarious areas about **importance** of avoiding mosquito bites, **importance** of taking prophylaxis regularly, and **importance** of immediate visit to doctor if ill within 1 year and **especially** within 3 months of return.

- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**NHS restrictions** Drugs for malaria prophylaxis are not prescribable in NHS primary care; health authorities may investigate circumstances under which antimalarials are prescribed.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Can be sold to the public provided it is licensed and labelled for the prophylaxis of malaria.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

#### Oral solution

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5

- **Malarivon** (Wallace Manufacturing Chemists Ltd)

**Chloroquine phosphate 16 mg per 1 mL** Malarivon 80mg/5mL syrup  
| 75 mL (PoM) £30.00 DT = £30.00

#### Tablet

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5

- **Avloclor** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Chloroquine phosphate 250 mg** Avloclor 250mg tablets |  
20 tablet (PoM) £8.59 DT = £8.59

## Chloroquine with proguanil

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, chloroquine above, proguanil hydrochloride p. 397.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Prophylaxis of malaria

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: (consult product literature)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antimalarials
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Can be sold to the public provided it is licensed and labelled for the prophylaxis of malaria.

#### MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablets

- ▶ **Paludrine/Avoclor** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Paludrine/Avoclor tablets anti-malarial travel pack | 112 tablet | £13.50

## Mefloquine

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Treatment of malaria

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

#### Prophylaxis of malaria

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child (body-weight 5–15 kg): 62.5 mg once weekly, dose to be started 2–3 weeks before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
- ▶ Child (body-weight 16–24 kg): 125 mg once weekly, dose to be started 2–3 weeks before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
- ▶ Child (body-weight 25–44 kg): 187.5 mg once weekly, dose to be started 2–3 weeks before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
- ▶ Child (body-weight 45 kg and above): 250 mg once weekly, dose to be started 2–3 weeks before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving

- **UNLICENSED USE** Mefloquine doses in BNF Publications may differ from those in product literature. Not licensed for use in children under 5 kg body-weight and under 3 months.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid for prophylaxis if history of psychiatric disorders (including depression) or convulsions • avoid for standby treatment if history of convulsions • history of blackwater fever
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac conduction disorders • epilepsy (avoid for prophylaxis) • not recommended in infants under 3 months (5 kg) • traumatic brain injury

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ Neuropsychiatric reactions Mefloquine is associated with potentially serious neuropsychiatric reactions. Abnormal dreams, insomnia, anxiety, and depression occur commonly. Psychosis, suicidal ideation, and suicide have also been reported. Psychiatric symptoms such as nightmares, acute anxiety, depression, restlessness, or confusion should be regarded as potentially prodromal for a more serious event. Adverse reactions may occur and persist up to several months after discontinuation because mefloquine has a long half-life. For a prescribing checklist, and further information on side-effects, particularly neuropsychiatric side-effects, which may be associated with the use of mefloquine for malaria prophylaxis, see the *Guide for Healthcare Professionals* provided by the manufacturer.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antimalarials

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anxiety • depression • diarrhoea • dizziness • gastrointestinal discomfort • headache • nausea • skin reactions • sleep disorders • vision disorders • vomiting
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Acute kidney injury • agranulocytosis • alopecia • aplastic anaemia • appetite decreased • arrhythmias • arthralgia • asthenia • behaviour abnormal • cardiac conduction disorders • cataract • chest pain • chills • concentration impaired • confusion • cranial nerve

paralysis • delusional disorder • depersonalisation • drowsiness • dyspnoea • encephalopathy • eye disorder • fever • flushing • gait abnormal • hallucination • hearing impairment • hepatic disorders • hyperacusia • hyperhidrosis • hypertension • hypotension • leucocytosis • leucopenia • malaise • memory loss • mood altered • movement disorders • muscle complaints • muscle weakness • nephritis • nerve disorders • oedema • palpitations • pancreatitis • paraesthesia • pneumonia • pneumonitis • psychosis • seizure • self-endangering behaviour • speech disorder • Stevens-Johnson syndrome • suicidal tendencies • syncope • thrombocytopenia • tremor • vertigo

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with hypersensitivity to quinine.
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises adequate contraception during prophylaxis and for 3 months after stopping (teratogenicity in *animal* studies).
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid (particularly in the first trimester) unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk; however, studies of mefloquine in pregnancy (including use in the first trimester) indicate that it can be considered for travel to chloroquine-resistant areas.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but risk to infant minimal.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Elimination may be prolonged; avoid in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablet may be crushed and mixed with food such as jam or honey just before administration.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** A patient alert card should be provided. Manufacturer advises that patients receiving mefloquine for malaria prophylaxis should be informed to discontinue its use if neuropsychiatric symptoms occur and seek immediate medical advice so that mefloquine can be replaced with an alternative antimalarial. Travellers should also be warned about **importance** of avoiding mosquito bites, **importance** of taking prophylaxis regularly, and **importance** of immediate visit to doctor if ill within 1 year and especially within 3 months of return. **Driving and skilled tasks** Dizziness or a disturbed sense of balance may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects may occur and persist up to several months after stopping mefloquine.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**  
**NHS restrictions** Drugs for malaria prophylaxis are not prescribable in NHS primary care; health authorities may investigate circumstances under which antimalarials are prescribed.

#### MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 21, 27

- ▶ **Lariam** (Roche Products Ltd)  
Mefloquine (as Mefloquine hydrochloride) 250 mg Lariam 250mg tablets | 8 tablet | **PoM** | £14.53

## Primaquine

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Adjunct in the treatment of non-falciparum malaria caused by *P.vivax* infection**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years: 500 micrograms/kg daily (max. per dose 30 mg) for 14 days



**Adjunct in the treatment of non-falciparum malaria caused by *P. ovale* infection**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6 months–17 years: 250 micrograms/kg daily (max. per dose 15 mg) for 14 days

**Adjunct in the treatment of non-falciparum malaria caused by *P. vivax* infection in patients with mild G6PD deficiency (administered on expert advice) | Adjunct in the treatment of non-falciparum malaria caused by *P. ovale* infection in patients with mild G6PD deficiency (administered on expert advice)**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 750 micrograms/kg once weekly for 8 weeks; maximum 45 mg per week

**Treatment of mild to moderate pneumocystis infection (in combination with clindamycin)**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: This combination is associated with considerable toxicity (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed.
- **CAUTIONS** G6PD deficiency · systemic diseases associated with granulocytopenia (e.g. juvenile idiopathic arthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, lupus erythematosus)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antimalarials
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · appetite decreased · nausea · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Haemolytic anaemia (more common in G6PD deficiency) · leucopenia · methaemoglobinemia
- **PREGNANCY** Risk of neonatal haemolysis and methaemoglobinemia in third trimester.
- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available; theoretical risk of haemolysis in G6PD-deficient infants.
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Before starting primaquine, blood should be tested for glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) activity since the drug can cause haemolysis in G6PD-deficient patients. Specialist advice should be obtained in G6PD deficiency.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

**Tablet**► **Primaquine (Non-proprietary)**

**Primaquine (as Primaquine phosphate) 7.5 mg** Primaquine 7.5mg tablets | 100 tablet £189.36

**Primaquine (as Primaquine phosphate) 15 mg** Primaquine 15mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] [S]

**Proguanil hydrochloride****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Prophylaxis of malaria**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 4–11 weeks (body-weight up to 6 kg): 25 mg once daily, dose to be started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
- Child 3–11 months (body-weight 6–9 kg): 50 mg once daily, dose to be started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
- Child 1–3 years (body-weight 10–15 kg): 75 mg once daily, dose to be started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
- Child 4–7 years (body-weight 16–24 kg): 100 mg once daily, dose to be started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving

- Child 8–12 years (body-weight 25–44 kg): 150 mg once daily, dose to be started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving
- Child 13–17 years (body-weight 45 kg and above): 200 mg once daily, dose to be started 1 week before entering endemic area and continued for 4 weeks after leaving

- **UNLICENSED USE** Proguanil doses in BNF Publications may differ from those in product literature.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antimalarials
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Alopecia · angioedema · bone marrow disorders · cholestasis · constipation · diarrhoea · fever · gastric disorder · megaloblastic anaemia · oral disorders · skin reactions · vasculitis
- **PREGNANCY** Benefit of prophylaxis in malaria outweighs risk. Adequate folate supplements should be given to mother.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount in milk probably too small to be harmful when used for malaria prophylaxis.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments** Use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 20–60 mL/minute/1.73m<sup>2</sup>. Use one-quarter normal dose on alternate days if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–20 mL/minute/1.73m<sup>2</sup>. Use one-quarter normal dose once weekly if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73m<sup>2</sup>; increased risk of haematological toxicity in severe impairment.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablet may be crushed and mixed with food such as milk, jam, or honey just before administration.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Warn travellers about **importance** of avoiding mosquito bites, **importance** of taking prophylaxis regularly, and **importance** of immediate visit to doctor if ill within 1 year and **especially** within 3 months of return.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**
  - NHS restrictions** Drugs for malaria prophylaxis are not prescribable in NHS primary care; health authorities may investigate circumstances under which antimalarials are prescribed.
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Can be sold to the public provided it is licensed and labelled for the prophylaxis of malaria.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Paludrine** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Proguanil hydrochloride 100 mg** Paludrine 100mg tablets | 98 tablet [P] £11.95 DT = £11.95

**Quinine**

04-Dec-2017

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Non-falciparum malaria**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 10 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 700 mg), infused over 4 hours, given if patient is unable to take oral therapy. Change to oral chloroquine as soon as the patient's condition permits, reduce dose to 5–7 mg/kg if parenteral treatment is required for more than 48 hours

continued →

**Falciparum malaria**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 10 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 600 mg) for 7 days, to be given together with or followed by either doxycycline (in children over 12 years), or clindamycin

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: Loading dose 20 mg/kg, infused over 4 hours, the loading dose of 20 mg/kg should **not** be used if the patient has received quinine or mefloquine during the previous 12 hours, then maintenance 10 mg/kg every 8 hours until patient can swallow oral medication to complete the 7-day course, maintenance dose to be given 8 hours after the start of the loading dose and infused over 4 hours, to be given together with or followed by clindamycin, reduce maintenance dose to 5–7 mg/kg if parenteral treatment is required for more than 48 hours.

- Child: Loading dose 20 mg/kg (max. per dose 1.4 g), infused over 4 hours, the loading dose of 20 mg/kg should **not** be used if the patient has received quinine or mefloquine during the previous 12 hours, then maintenance 10 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 700 mg) until patient can swallow tablets to complete the 7-day course, maintenance dose to be given 8 hours after the start of the loading dose and infused over 4 hours, to be given together with or followed by either doxycycline (in children over 12 years), or clindamycin, reduce maintenance dose to 5–7 mg/kg if parenteral treatment is required for more than 48 hours

**Falciparum malaria (in intensive care unit)**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: Loading dose 7 mg/kg, infused over 30 minutes, followed immediately by 10 mg/kg, infused over 4 hours, then maintenance 10 mg/kg every 8 hours until patient can swallow oral medication to complete the 7-day course, maintenance dose to be given 8 hours after the start of the loading dose and infused over 4 hours, to be given together with or followed by clindamycin, reduce maintenance dose to 5–7 mg/kg if parenteral treatment is required for more than 48 hours.

- Child: Loading dose 7 mg/kg, infused over 30 minutes, followed immediately by 10 mg/kg, infused over 4 hours, then maintenance 10 mg/kg every 8 hours (max. per dose 700 mg) until patient can swallow tablets to complete the 7-day course, maintenance dose to be given 8 hours after the start of the loading dose and infused over 4 hours, to be given together with or followed by either doxycycline (in children over 12 years), or clindamycin, reduce maintenance dose to 5–7 mg/kg if parenteral treatment is required for more than 48 hours

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- When using quinine for malaria, doses are valid for quinine hydrochloride, dihydrochloride, and sulfate; they are **not valid** for quinine bisulfate which contains a correspondingly smaller amount of quinine.
- Quinine (anhydrous base) 100 mg = quinine bisulfate 169 mg; quinine dihydrochloride 122 mg; quinine hydrochloride 122 mg; and quinine sulfate 121 mg. Quinine bisulfate 300 mg tablets are available but provide less quinine than 300 mg of the dihydrochloride, hydrochloride, or sulfate.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Injection not licensed.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****MHRA/CHM ADVICE: REMINDER OF DOSE-DEPENDENT QT-PROLONGING EFFECTS (NOVEMBER 2017)**

Quinine has been associated with dose-dependent QT-interval-prolonging effects and should be used with caution in patients with risk factors for QT prolongation or in those with atrioventricular block—see Cautions for further information.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Haemoglobinuria · myasthenia gravis · optic neuritis · tinnitus
- **CAUTIONS** Atrial fibrillation (monitor ECG during parenteral treatment) · cardiac disease (monitor ECG during parenteral treatment) · conduction defects (monitor ECG during parenteral treatment) · electrolyte disturbance · G6PD deficiency · heart block (monitor ECG during parenteral treatment)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antimalarials
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain · agitation · agranulocytosis · angioedema · asthma · atrioventricular conduction changes · bronchospasm · cardiotoxicity · cerebral impairment · coagulation disorders · coma · confusion · death · diarrhoea · dyspnoea · fever · flushing · gastrointestinal disorder · haemoglobinuria · haemolysis · haemolytic uraemic syndrome · headache · hearing impairment · hypersensitivity · loss of consciousness · muscle weakness · myasthenia gravis aggravated · nausea · ocular toxicity · oedema · pancytopenia · photosensitivity reaction · QT interval prolongation · renal impairment · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · vertigo · vision disorders · vomiting

**Overdose** Quinine is very toxic in overdosage; life-threatening features include arrhythmias (which can have a very rapid onset) and convulsions (which can be intractable).

For details on the management of poisoning, see Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

- **PREGNANCY** High doses are teratogenic in *first trimester*, but in malaria benefit of treatment outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but not known to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** ► With intravenous use For treatment of malaria in severe impairment, reduce parenteral maintenance dose to 5–7 mg/kg of quinine salt.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** ► With intravenous use For treatment of malaria in severe impairment, reduce parenteral maintenance dose to 5–7 mg/kg of quinine salt.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood glucose and electrolyte concentration during parenteral treatment.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 2 mg/mL (max. 30 mg/mL in fluid restriction) with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over 4 hours.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Intravenous injection of quinine is so hazardous that it has been superseded by infusion.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution, solution for infusion

**Tablet**► **Quinine (Non-proprietary)**

**Quinine sulfate 200 mg** Quinine sulfate 200mg tablets |

28 tablet (PoM) £2.90 DT = £1.43

**Quinine bisulfate 300 mg** Quinine bisulfate 300mg tablets |

28 tablet (PoM) £2.57 DT = £1.94

Quinine sulfate 300 mg Quinine sulfate 300mg tablets |  
28 tablet [PoM] £2.83 DT = £1.96

## 5.3 Toxoplasmosis

### ANTIBACTERIALS > MACROLIDES

#### Spiramycin

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Toxoplasmosis in pregnancy

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 1.5 g twice daily until delivery

##### Chemoprophylaxis of congenital toxoplasmosis

- BY MOUTH
- Neonate: 50 mg/kg twice daily.

##### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- 3000 units ≡ 1 mg spiramycin.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed.
- **CAUTIONS** Arrhythmias · cardiac disease · predisposition to QT interval prolongation
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - Rare or very rare QT interval prolongation · thrombocytopenia · vasculitis
  - Frequency not known Diarrhoea · dizziness · gastrointestinal disorder · headache · hepatotoxicity · nausea · rash · vomiting
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Sensitivity to other macrolides.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in breast milk.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Powder for solution for infusion

- **Rovamycine (Imported (France))**  
Spiramycin (as Spiramycin adipate) 1.5 mega u Rovamycine  
1.5million unit powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] [S]

##### Tablet

- **Rovamycine (Imported (France))**  
Spiramycin 1.5 mega u Rovamycine 1.5million unit tablets |  
16 tablet [PoM] [S]  
Spiramycin 3 mega u Rovamycine 3million unit tablets |  
10 tablet [PoM] [S]

### ANTIPROTOZOALS

#### Pyrimethamine

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Toxoplasmosis in pregnancy (in combination with sulfadiazine and folinic acid)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 50 mg once daily until delivery

##### Congenital toxoplasmosis (in combination with sulfadiazine and folinic acid)

- BY MOUTH
- Neonate: 1 mg/kg twice daily for 2 days, then 1 mg/kg once daily for 6 months, then 1 mg/kg 3 times a week for 6 months.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 5 years.
- **CAUTIONS** History of seizures—avoid large loading doses · predisposition to folate deficiency
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antimalarials

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anaemia · diarrhoea · dizziness · headache · leucopenia · nausea · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Fever
- **Rare or very rare** Abdominal pain · oral ulceration · pancytopenia · pneumonia eosinophilic · seizure
- **PREGNANCY** Theoretical teratogenic risk in *first trimester* (folate antagonist). Adequate folate supplements should be given to the mother.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Significant amount in milk—avoid administration of other folate antagonists to infant. Avoid breast-feeding during toxoplasmosis treatment.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Blood counts required with prolonged treatment.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

##### Tablet

- **Daraprim** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
**Pyrimethamine 25 mg** Daraprim 25mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £13.00

## 6 Viral infection

### 6.1 Hepatitis

#### Hepatitis

##### Overview

Treatment for viral hepatitis should be initiated by a specialist in hepatology or infectious diseases. The management of uncomplicated acute viral hepatitis is largely symptomatic. Hepatitis B and hepatitis C viruses are major causes of chronic hepatitis. Active or passive immunisation against hepatitis A and B infections can be given.

##### Chronic hepatitis B

Interferon alfa p. 557, **peginterferon alfa-2a**, lamivudine p. 420, adefovir dipivoxil, entecavir, and tenofovir disoproxil p. 421 have a role in the treatment of chronic hepatitis B in adults, but their role in children has not been well established. Specialist supervision is required for the management of chronic hepatitis B.

Tenofovir disoproxil, or a combination of tenofovir disoproxil with either entricitabine p. 418 or lamivudine, may be used with other antiretrovirals, as part of 'highly active antiretroviral therapy' in children who require treatment for both HIV and chronic hepatitis B. If children infected with both HIV and chronic hepatitis B only require treatment for chronic hepatitis B, they should receive antivirals that are not active against HIV. Management of these children should be co-ordinated between HIV and hepatology specialists.

##### Chronic hepatitis C

Treatment should be considered for children with moderate or severe liver disease. Specialist supervision is required and the regimen is chosen according to the genotype of the infecting virus and the viral load. A combination of ribavirin p. 400 with either interferon alfa or **peginterferon alfa-2b** is licensed for use in children over 3 years with chronic hepatitis C. A combination of peginterferon alfa p. 402 and ribavirin is preferred.

## 6.2 Hepatitis infections

### 6.2a Chronic hepatitis B

**Other drugs used for Chronic hepatitis B** Interferon alfa, p. 557 • Lamivudine, p. 420 • Tenofovir disoproxil, p. 421

#### ANTIVIRALS > NUCLEOSIDE REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE INHIBITORS

415

### Tenofovir alafenamide

26-Feb-2018

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Chronic hepatitis B (initiated by a specialist)

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight 35 kg and above): 25 mg once daily (for duration of treatment consult product literature)

#### ● CAUTIONS Decompensated liver disease • HIV co-infection

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: tenofovir alafenamide

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common Abdominal distension
- ▶ Frequency not known Hepatitis aggravated (during or following treatment)

#### ● BREAST FEEDING Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in *animal* studies.

#### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT Manufacturer advises monitor hepatic and renal function in decompensated liver disease—risk of adverse effects may be increased (no information available).

#### ● PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING Manufacturer advises HIV antibody testing should be offered to those with unknown HIV-1 status before initiation of treatment.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS Manufacturer advises monitor liver function tests at repeated intervals during treatment and for at least 6 months after last dose—recurrent hepatitis may occur on discontinuation.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Missed doses** Manufacturer advises if a dose is more than 18 hours late, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- ▶ **Vemlidy** (Gilead Sciences International Ltd) ▼  
Tenofovir alafenamide (as Tenofovir alafenamide fumarate)  
25 mg Vemlidy 25mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £325.73

### 6.2b Chronic hepatitis C

**Other drugs used for Chronic hepatitis C** Interferon alfa, p. 557 • Peginterferon alfa, p. 402

#### ANTIVIRALS > NUCLEOSIDE ANALOGUES

### Ribavirin

(Tribavirin)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Bronchiolitis

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF AEROSOL, OR BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION
- ▶ Child 1–23 months: Inhale a solution containing 20 mg/mL for 12–18 hours for at least 3 days, maximum of 7 days, to be administered via small particle aerosol generator

##### Life-threatening RSV, parainfluenza virus, and adenovirus infection in immunocompromised children (administered on expert advice)

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: 33 mg/kg for 1 dose, to be administered over 15 minutes, then 16 mg/kg every 6 hours for 4 days, then 8 mg/kg every 8 hours for 3 days

#### REBETOL® CAPSULES

##### Chronic hepatitis C (in combination with interferon alfa or peginterferon alfa) in previously untreated children without liver decompensation

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight up to 47 kg): 15 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight 47–49 kg): 200 mg, dose to be given in the morning and 400 mg, dose to be given in the evening
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight 50–64 kg): 400 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight 65–80 kg): 400 mg, dose to be given in the morning and 600 mg, dose to be given in the evening
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight 81–104 kg): 600 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight 105 kg and above): 600 mg, dose to be given in the morning and 800 mg, dose to be given in the evening

#### REBETOL® ORAL SOLUTION

##### Chronic hepatitis C (in combination with interferon alfa or peginterferon alfa) in previously untreated children without liver decompensation

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight up to 47 kg): 15 mg/kg daily in 2 divided doses
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight 47–49 kg): 200 mg daily, dose to be given in the morning and 400 mg daily, dose to be given in the evening
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight 50–64 kg): 400 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight 65–80 kg): 400 mg daily, dose to be given in the morning and 600 mg daily, dose to be given in the evening
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight 81–104 kg): 600 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight 105 kg and above): 600 mg daily, dose to be given in the morning and 800 mg daily, dose to be given in the evening

#### ● UNLICENSED USE Inhalation licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer). Intravenous preparation not licensed.

#### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

- ▶ With systemic use Active severe psychiatric condition • autoimmune disease • autoimmune hepatitis • consult product literature for specific contra-indications when ribavirin used in combination with other medicinal products • haemoglobinopathies • history of severe

psychiatric condition · severe debilitating medical conditions · severe, uncontrolled cardiac disease in children with chronic hepatitis C

#### ● CAUTIONS

- When used by inhalation Maintain standard supportive respiratory and fluid management therapy
- With systemic use Cardiac disease (assessment including ECG recommended before and during treatment—discontinue if deterioration) · consult product literature for specific cautions when ribavirin used in combination with other medicinal products · patients with a transplant—risk of rejection · risk of growth retardation in children, the reversibility of which is uncertain—if possible, consider starting treatment after pubertal growth spurt

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: ribavirin

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · arthralgia · arthritis · asthenia · behaviour abnormal · chest pain · chills · concentration impaired · constipation · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dysphagia · dyspnoea · ear pain · eye disorders · eye inflammation · eye pain · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · haemorrhage · headaches · hearing impairment · hyperthyroidism · hypotension · hypothyroidism · increased risk of infection · influenza like illness · lymphadenopathy · malaise · memory loss · mood altered · muscle complaints · muscle weakness · nasal congestion · nausea · neutropenia · oral disorders · pain · palpitations · peripheral oedema · photosensitivity reaction · respiratory disorders · sensation abnormal · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · sleep disorders · sweat changes · syncope · taste altered · thirst · throat pain · thrombocytopenia · tremor · vasodilation · vertigo · vision disorders · vomiting · weight decreased
  - Uncommon** Dehydration · diabetes mellitus · hallucination · hepatic disorders · hypertension · nerve disorders · sarcoidosis · suicidal tendencies · thyroiditis
  - Rare or very rare** Angina pectoris · angioedema · bone marrow disorders · cardiac inflammation · cerebral ischaemia · cholangitis · coma · congestive heart failure · facial paralysis · hypersensitivity · intracranial haemorrhage · myocardial infarction · myopathy · pancreatitis · psychotic disorder · pulmonary embolism · retinopathy · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) · vasculitis
  - Frequency not known** Haemolytic anaemia · homicidal ideation · nephrotic syndrome · pure red cell aplasia · renal failure · solid organ transplant rejection · ulcerative colitis
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Side effects listed are reported when oral ribavirin is used in combination with peginterferon alfa or interferon alfa, consult product literature for details.

#### ● CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION

- With systemic use Exclude pregnancy before treatment in females of childbearing age. Effective contraception essential during treatment and for 4 months after treatment in females and for 7 months after treatment in males of childbearing age. Routine monthly pregnancy tests recommended. Condoms must be used if partner of male patient is pregnant (ribavirin excreted in semen).
- When used by inhalation Women planning pregnancy should avoid exposure to aerosol.

#### ● PREGNANCY Avoid; teratogenicity in animal studies.

- When used by inhalation Pregnant women should avoid exposure to aerosol.

#### ● BREAST FEEDING Avoid—no information available.

- HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid oral ribavirin in severe hepatic dysfunction or decompensated cirrhosis.

#### Dose adjustments No dosage adjustment required.

- RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Plasma-ribavirin concentration increased. Manufacturer advises avoid oral ribavirin if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—monitor haemoglobin concentration closely.

Manufacturer advises use intravenous preparation with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- When used by inhalation Monitor electrolytes closely. Monitor equipment for precipitation.
- With systemic use Determine full blood count, platelets, electrolytes, serum creatinine, liver function tests and uric acid before starting treatment and then on weeks 2 and 4 of treatment, then as indicated clinically—adjust dose if adverse reactions or laboratory abnormalities develop (consult product literature). Test thyroid function before treatment and then every 3 months.
- With oral use Eye examination recommended before treatment. Eye examination also recommended during treatment if pre-existing ophthalmological disorder or if decrease in vision reported—discontinue treatment if ophthalmological disorder deteriorates or if new ophthalmological disorder develops.

- PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include bubble-gum.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- Peginterferon alfa and ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C (November 2013)** NICE TA300  
Peginterferon alfa in combination with ribavirin is recommended (within the marketing authorisation) as an option for treating chronic hepatitis C in children.  
[www.nice.org.uk/TA300](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA300)

- LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Ribavirin inhalation is less suitable for prescribing.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

- Virazole** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Ribavirin 100 mg per 1 mL** Virazole 1.2g/12mL solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £3,600.00

##### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- Rebetol** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)  
**Ribavirin 40 mg per 1 mL** Rebetol 40mg/mL oral solution | 100 mL [PoM] £67.08

##### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- Rebetol** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)  
**Ribavirin 200 mg** Rebetol 200mg capsules | 84 capsule [PoM] £160.69 | 140 capsule [PoM] £267.81 | 168 capsule [PoM] £321.38

## ANTIVIRALS > NUCLEOTIDE ANALOGUES

### Ledipasvir with sofosbuvir

09-Nov-2017

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, sofosbuvir p. 402.

- DRUG ACTION** Sofosbuvir is a nucleotide analogue inhibitor and ledipasvir is an HCV inhibitor; they reduce viral load by inhibiting hepatitis C virus RNA replication.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Chronic hepatitis C infection (initiated by a specialist)

- BY MOUTH**
- Child 12–17 years: 90/400 mg once daily, for duration of treatment consult product literature continued →



**DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS**

- ▶ Manufacturer advises reduce dose of concurrent H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonist if above a dose comparable to famotidine 40 mg twice daily.
- ▶ Manufacturer advises reduce dose of concurrent proton pump inhibitor if above a dose comparable to omeprazole 20 mg; take at the same time as sofosbuvir with ledipasvir.

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- ▶ Dose expressed as x/y mg ledipasvir/sofosbuvir.

- **CAUTIONS** Retreatment following treatment failure—efficacy not established
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ledipasvir · sofosbuvir
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Fatigue · headache · rash
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · arrhythmia
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Dispense in original container (contains desiccant).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Vomiting If vomiting occurs within 5 hours of administration, an additional dose should be taken.

**Missed doses** If a dose is more than 18 hours late, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

- There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

- ▶ **Harvoni** (Gilead Sciences International Ltd) ▼

**Ledipasvir 90 mg, Sofosbuvir 400 mg** Harvoni 90mg/400mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £12,993.33

**Sofosbuvir**

09-Nov-2017

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Chronic hepatitis C infection**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 400 mg once daily, for duration of treatment consult product literature

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

**MHRA/CHM ADVICE: DIRECT-ACTING ANTIVIRALS TO TREAT CHRONIC HEPATITIS C: RISK OF INTERACTION WITH VITAMIN K ANTAGONISTS AND CHANGES IN INR (JANUARY 2017)**

An EU-wide review has identified that changes in liver function, secondary to hepatitis C treatment with direct-acting antivirals, may affect the efficacy of vitamin K antagonists; the MHRA has advised that INR should be monitored closely in patients receiving concomitant treatment.

**MHRA/CHM ADVICE: DIRECT-ACTING ANTIVIRAL INTERFERON-FREE REGIMENS TO TREAT CHRONIC HEPATITIS C: RISK OF HEPATITIS B REACTIVATION (JANUARY 2017)**

An EU-wide review has concluded that direct-acting antiviral interferon-free regimens for chronic hepatitis C can cause hepatitis B reactivation in patients co-infected with hepatitis B and C viruses; the MHRA recommends to screen patients for hepatitis B before starting treatment—patients infected with both hepatitis B and C viruses must be monitored and managed according to current clinical guidelines.

**● CAUTIONS**

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Manufacturer advises in chronic hepatitis C of genotype 1, 4, 5, or 6, only use sofosbuvir with ribavirin dual therapy in those with

intolerance or contra-indications to peginterferon alfa who require urgent treatment.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sofosbuvir

**● SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · chest pain · chills · concentration impaired · constipation · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · dry mouth · dyspnoea · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastroesophageal reflux disease · headaches · influenza like illness · insomnia · irritability · memory loss · muscle complaints · nasopharyngitis · nausea · neutropenia · pain · skin reactions · vision blurred · vomiting · weight decreased
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Arrhythmia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Side-effects listed are reported when sofosbuvir is used in combination with ribavirin or with ribavirin and peginterferon alfa.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—limited information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Safety and efficacy not established if eGFR less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—accumulation may occur.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Dispense in original container (contains desiccant).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Missed doses** Manufacturer advises if a dose is more than 18 hours late, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21, 25

- ▶ **Sovaldi** (Gilead Sciences International Ltd) ▼

**Sofosbuvir 400 mg** Sovaldi 400mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £11,660.98

**IMMUNOSTIMULANTS > INTERFERONS****Peginterferon alfa**

- **DRUG ACTION** Polyethylene glycol-conjugated ('pegylated') derivatives of interferon alfa (**peginterferon alfa-2a** and **peginterferon alfa-2b**) are available; pegylation increases the persistence of the interferon in the blood.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****PEGASYS®**

**Chronic hepatitis C (in combination with ribavirin) in previously untreated children without liver decompensation**

- ▶ **BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION**
- ▶ Child 5–17 years: (consult product literature)

**VIRAFERONPEG®**

**Chronic hepatitis C (in combination with ribavirin) in previously untreated children without liver decompensation**

- ▶ **BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION**
- ▶ Child 3–17 years: (consult product literature)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Severe psychiatric illness
- CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For contra-indications consult product literature.

**● CAUTIONS**

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For cautions consult product literature.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: interferons
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · behaviour abnormal · chills · concentration impaired · cough · depression · diabetes mellitus · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dyspnoea · ear pain · eye discomfort · face oedema · feeling cold · fever · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · growth retardation · haemorrhage · headaches · hypotension · hypothyroidism · increased risk of infection · influenza like illness · laryngeal pain · leucopenia · lymphadenopathy · malaise · mood altered · muscle complaints · nausea · neutropenia · oral disorders · pain · palpitations · skin reactions · sleep disorders · syncope · tachycardia · taste altered · thrombocytopenia · urinary disorders · urinary tract disorder · vertigo · vision disorders · vomiting
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Akathisia · chest discomfort · dysmenorrhoea · hallucination · hypersensitivity · keratitis · muscle contractions involuntary · nasal complaints · pallor · photosensitivity reaction · proteinuria · retinal exudate · sensation abnormal · tremor · vaginal discharge · wheezing
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Respiratory symptoms should be investigated and if pulmonary infiltrates are suspected or lung function is impaired the discontinuation of peginterferon alfa should be considered.
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required during treatment—consult product literature.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers recommend avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk (toxicity in *animal* studies).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturers advise avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** For further information on peginterferon alfa use in renal impairment consult product literature.
- Dose adjustments** Reduce dose in moderate to severe impairment.
- Monitoring** Close monitoring required in renal impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Monitoring of lipid concentration is recommended.
  - ▶ Monitoring of hepatic function is recommended.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**
  - NICE decisions**
    - ▶ **Peginterferon alfa and ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C (November 2013) NICE TA300**  
Peginterferon alfa in combination with ribavirin is recommended (within the marketing authorisation) as an option for treating chronic hepatitis C in children.  
[www.nice.org.uk/TA300](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA300)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

#### ▶ **Pegasys** (Roche Products Ltd)

**Peginterferon alfa-2a 180 microgram per 1 ml** Pegasys 90micrograms/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £76.51

**Peginterferon alfa-2a 270 microgram per 1 ml** Pegasys 135micrograms/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £107.76 DT = £107.76

**Peginterferon alfa-2a 360 microgram per 1 ml** Pegasys 180micrograms/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £497.60

#### ▶ **ViraferonPeg CLEARCLICK** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Peginterferon alfa-2b 50 microgram** ViraferonPeg 50microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices CLEARCLICK | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £66.46

**Peginterferon alfa-2b 80 microgram** ViraferonPeg 80microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices CLEARCLICK | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £106.34

**Peginterferon alfa-2b 100 microgram** ViraferonPeg 100microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices CLEARCLICK | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £132.92

**Peginterferon alfa-2b 120 microgram** ViraferonPeg 120microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices CLEARCLICK | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £159.51

**Peginterferon alfa-2b 150 microgram** ViraferonPeg 150microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices CLEARCLICK | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £199.38

## 6.3 Herpesvirus infections

### Herpesvirus infections

#### Herpes simplex and varicella-zoster infection

The two most important herpesvirus pathogens are herpes simplex virus (herpesvirus hominis) and varicella-zoster virus.

#### Herpes simplex infections

Herpes infection of the mouth and lips and in the eye is generally associated with herpes simplex virus serotype 1 (HSV-1); other areas of the skin may also be infected, especially in immunodeficiency. Genital infection is most often associated with HSV-2 and also HSV-1. Treatment of herpes simplex infection should start as early as possible and usually within 5 days of the appearance of the infection.

In individuals with good immune function, mild infection of the eye (ocular herpes) and of the lips (herpes labialis or cold sores) is treated with a topical antiviral drug. Primary herpetic gingivostomatitis is managed by changes to diet and with analgesics. Severe infection, neonatal herpes infection or infection in immunocompromised individuals requires treatment with a systemic antiviral drug. After completing parenteral treatment of neonatal herpes simplex encephalitis, oral suppression therapy with aciclovir p. 404 for 6 months can be considered on specialist advice. Primary or recurrent genital herpes simplex infection is treated with an antiviral drug given by mouth. Persistence of a lesion or recurrence in an immunocompromised patient may signal the development of resistance.

Specialist advice should be sought for systemic treatment of herpes simplex infection in pregnancy.

#### Varicella-zoster infections

Regardless of immune function and the use of any immunoglobulins, neonates with *chickenpox* should be treated with a parenteral antiviral to reduce the risk of severe disease. Oral therapy in children is not recommended as absorption is variable. Chickenpox in otherwise healthy children between 1 month and 12 years is usually mild and antiviral treatment is not usually required.

Chickenpox is more severe in adolescents than in children; antiviral treatment started within 24 hours of the onset of rash may reduce the duration and severity of symptoms in otherwise healthy adolescents. Antiviral treatment is generally recommended in immunocompromised patients and those at special risk (e.g. because of severe cardiovascular or respiratory disease or chronic skin disorder); in such cases, an antiviral is given for 10 days with at least 7 days of parenteral treatment.

In pregnancy severe chickenpox may cause complications, especially varicella pneumonia. Specialist advice should be sought for the treatment of chickenpox during pregnancy.

Neonates and children who have been exposed to chickenpox and are at special risk of complications may

require prophylaxis with varicella-zoster immunoglobulin (see under Disease-specific Immunoglobulins). Prophylactic intravenous aciclovir should be considered for neonates whose mothers develop chickenpox 4 days before to 2 days after delivery.

In *herpes zoster* (shingles) systemic antiviral treatment can reduce the severity and duration of pain, reduce complications, and reduce viral shedding. Treatment with the antiviral should be started within 72 hours of the onset of rash and is usually continued for 7–10 days. Immunocompromised patients at high risk of disseminated or severe infection should be treated with a parenteral antiviral drug.

Chronic pain which persists after the rash has healed (postherpetic neuralgia) requires specific management.

### Choice

Aciclovir is active against herpesviruses but does not eradicate them. Uses of aciclovir include systemic treatment of varicella-zoster and the systemic and topical treatment of herpes simplex infections of the skin and mucous membranes. It is used by mouth for severe herpetic stomatitis. Aciclovir eye ointment is used for herpes simplex infections of the eye; it is combined with systemic treatment for ophthalmic zoster.

Famciclovir, a prodrug of penciclovir, is similar to aciclovir and is licensed in adults for use in herpes zoster and genital herpes; there is limited information available on use in children.

Valaciclovir p. 406 is an ester of aciclovir, licensed in adults for herpes zoster and herpes simplex infections of the skin and mucous membranes (including genital herpes); it is also licensed in children over 12 years for preventing cytomegalovirus disease following solid organ transplantation. Valaciclovir may be used for the treatment of mild herpes zoster in immunocompromised children over 12 years; treatment should be initiated under specialist supervision.

### Cytomegalovirus infection

Ganciclovir p. 407 is related to aciclovir but it is more active against cytomegalovirus (CMV); it is also much more toxic than aciclovir and should therefore be prescribed under specialist supervision and only when the potential benefit outweighs the risks. Ganciclovir is administered by intravenous infusion for the *initial treatment* of CMV infection. The use of ganciclovir may also be considered for symptomatic congenital CMV infection. Ganciclovir causes profound myelosuppression when given with zidovudine p. 422; the two should not normally be given together particularly during initial ganciclovir therapy. The likelihood of ganciclovir resistance increases in patients with a high viral load or in those who receive the drug over a long duration.

Valaciclovir is licensed for use in children over 12 years for prevention of cytomegalovirus disease following renal transplantation.

Foscarnet sodium p. 408 is also active against cytomegalovirus; it is toxic and can cause renal impairment. It is deposited in teeth, bone and cartilage, and *animal* studies have shown that deposition is greater in young animals. Its effect on skeletal development in children is not known. Foscarnet sodium should be prescribed under specialist supervision.

## ANTIVIRALS > NUCLEOSIDE ANALOGUES

### Aciclovir

#### (Acyclovir)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Herpes simplex, suppression

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 400 mg twice daily, alternatively 200 mg 4 times a day; increased to 400 mg 3 times a day, dose may be increased if recurrences occur on standard suppressive therapy or for suppression of genital herpes during late pregnancy (from 36 weeks gestation), therapy interrupted every 6–12 months to reassess recurrence frequency—consider restarting after two or more recurrences

##### Herpes simplex, prophylaxis in the immunocompromised

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–23 months: 100–200 mg 4 times a day
- Child 2–17 years: 200–400 mg 4 times a day

##### Herpes simplex, treatment

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–23 months: 100 mg 5 times a day usually for 5 days (longer if new lesions appear during treatment or if healing incomplete)
- Child 2–17 years: 200 mg 5 times a day usually for 5 days (longer if new lesions appear during treatment or if healing incomplete)

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: 20 mg/kg every 8 hours for 14 days (for at least 21 days if CNS involvement—confirm cerebrospinal fluid negative for herpes simplex virus before stopping treatment).

- Child 1–2 months: 20 mg/kg every 8 hours for 14 days (for at least 21 days if CNS involvement—confirm cerebrospinal fluid negative for herpes simplex virus before stopping treatment)
- Child 3 months–11 years: 250 mg/m<sup>2</sup> every 8 hours usually for 5 days
- Child 12–17 years: 5 mg/kg every 8 hours usually for 5 days

##### Herpes simplex, treatment, in immunocompromised or if absorption impaired

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–23 months: 200 mg 5 times a day usually for 5 days (longer if new lesions appear during treatment or if healing incomplete)
- Child 2–17 years: 400 mg 5 times a day usually for 5 days (longer if new lesions appear during treatment or if healing incomplete)

##### Herpes simplex, treatment, in immunocompromised or in simple encephalitis

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 3 months–11 years: 500 mg/m<sup>2</sup> every 8 hours usually for 5 days (given for at least 21 days in encephalitis—confirm cerebrospinal fluid negative for herpes simplex virus before stopping treatment)
- Child 12–17 years: 10 mg/kg every 8 hours usually for 5 days (given for at least 14 days in encephalitis and for at least 21 days if also immunocompromised—confirm cerebrospinal fluid negative for herpes simplex virus before stopping treatment)

##### Varicella zoster (chickenpox), treatment | Herpes zoster (shingles), treatment

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–23 months: 200 mg 4 times a day for 5 days
- Child 2–5 years: 400 mg 4 times a day for 5 days
- Child 6–11 years: 800 mg 4 times a day for 5 days
- Child 12–17 years: 800 mg 5 times a day for 7 days

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: 10–20 mg/kg every 8 hours for at least 7 days.

- Child 1–2 months: 10–20 mg/kg every 8 hours for at least 7 days
- Child 3 months–11 years: 250 mg/m<sup>2</sup> every 8 hours usually for 5 days
- Child 12–17 years: 5 mg/kg every 8 hours usually for 5 days

**Varicella zoster (chickenpox), treatment in immunocompromised | Herpes zoster (shingles), treatment in immunocompromised**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 3 months–11 years: 500 mg/m<sup>2</sup> every 8 hours usually for 5 days
- Child 12–17 years: 10 mg/kg every 8 hours usually for 5 days

**Herpes zoster (shingles), treatment in immunocompromised**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–23 months: 200 mg 4 times a day continued for 2 days after crusting of lesions
- Child 2–5 years: 400 mg 4 times a day continued for 2 days after crusting of lesions
- Child 6–11 years: 800 mg 4 times a day continued for 2 days after crusting of lesions
- Child 12–17 years: 800 mg 5 times a day continued for 2 days after crusting of lesions

**Herpes zoster, treatment in encephalitis | Varicella zoster, treatment in encephalitis**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: 10–20 mg/kg every 8 hours given for 10–14 days in encephalitis, possibly longer if also immunocompromised.
- Child 1–2 months: 10–20 mg/kg every 8 hours given for 10–14 days in encephalitis, possibly longer if also immunocompromised
- Child 3 months–11 years: 500 mg/m<sup>2</sup> every 8 hours given for 10–14 days in encephalitis, possibly longer if also immunocompromised
- Child 12–17 years: 10 mg/kg every 8 hours given for 10–14 days in encephalitis, possibly longer if also immunocompromised

**Varicella zoster (chickenpox), attenuation of infection if varicella-zoster immunoglobulin not indicated**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 10 mg/kg 4 times a day for 7 days, to be started 1 week after exposure

**Varicella zoster (chickenpox), prophylaxis after delivery**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: 10 mg/kg every 8 hours continued until serological tests confirm absence of virus.

**DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT**

- With intravenous use To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients parenteral dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal weight for height.

**● UNLICENSED USE**

- With oral use Tablets and suspension not licensed for suppression of herpes simplex or for treatment of herpes zoster in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

Aciclovir doses in BNF may differ from those in product literature. Attenuation of chickenpox is an unlicensed indication.

- With intravenous use Intravenous infusion not licensed for herpes zoster in children under 18 years.

- **CAUTIONS** Maintain adequate hydration (especially with infusion or high doses)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aciclovir

**● SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · diarrhoea · dizziness · fatigue · fever · headache · nausea · photosensitivity reaction · skin reactions · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Anaemia · leucopenia · thrombocytopenia
- **Rare or very rare** Acute kidney injury · agitation · alopecia · angioedema · ataxia · coma · confusion · drowsiness · dysarthria · dyspnoea · encephalopathy · hallucination · hepatic disorders · inflammation localised · psychosis · renal impairment · renal pain · seizure · tremor
- **Frequency not known** Crystalluria

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful—manufacturers advise use only when potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Significant amount in milk after systemic administration—not known to be harmful but manufacturer advises caution.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Risk of neurological reactions increased. Maintain adequate hydration (especially during renal impairment).

**Dose adjustments** ► With intravenous use Use *normal intravenous dose* every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 25–50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> (every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate

10–25 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>. Consult product literature for intravenous dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

► With oral use For *herpes zoster*, use normal oral dose every 8 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–25 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> (every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>). For *herpes simplex*, use normal dose every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, reconstitute to 25 mg/mL with Water for Injections or Sodium Chloride 0.9% then dilute to concentration of 5 mg/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Sodium Chloride and Glucose and give over 1 hour; alternatively, may be administered in a concentration of 25 mg/mL using a suitable infusion pump and central venous access and given over 1 hour.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid preparations may include banana, or orange.

**● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Aciclovir (oral) for viral infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/aciclovir-for-viral-infections](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/aciclovir-for-viral-infections)

**● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION****Dental practitioners' formulary**

Aciclovir Tablets 200 mg or 800 mg may be prescribed. Aciclovir Oral Suspension 200 mg/5mL may be prescribed.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Tablet****CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9**► **Aciclovir (Non-proprietary)**

**Aciclovir 200 mg** Aciclovir 200mg tablets | 25 tablet [PoM] £10.00 DT = £0.83

**Aciclovir 400 mg** Aciclovir 400mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £15.00 DT = £2.39

**Aciclovir 800 mg** Aciclovir 800mg tablets | 35 tablet [PoM] £20.00 DT = £2.88

**Dispersible tablet****CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9**► **Aciclovir (Non-proprietary)**

**Aciclovir 200 mg** Aciclovir 200mg dispersible tablets | 25 tablet [PoM] £0.86 DT = £0.86

**Aciclovir 400 mg** Aciclovir 400mg dispersible tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £20.00 DT = £11.98

**Aciclovir 800 mg** Aciclovir 800mg dispersible tablets | 35 tablet [PoM] £65.00 DT = £10.98

► **Zovirax** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Aciclovir 200 mg** Zovirax 200mg dispersible tablets | 25 tablet [PoM] £2.85 DT = £0.86

**Aciclovir 800 mg** Zovirax 800mg dispersible tablets | 35 tablet [PoM] £10.50 DT = £10.98

### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

► **Aciclovir (Non-proprietary)**

**Aciclovir 40 mg per 1 ml** Aciclovir 200mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 125 ml [PoM] £35.76 DT = £35.76

**Aciclovir 80 mg per 1 ml** Aciclovir 400mg/5ml oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £39.47 DT = £39.47

► **Zovirax** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Aciclovir 40 mg per 1 ml** Zovirax 200mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 125 ml [PoM] £29.56 DT = £35.76

**Aciclovir 80 mg per 1 ml** Zovirax Double Strength 400mg/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £33.02 DT = £39.47

### Solution for infusion

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Aciclovir (Non-proprietary)**

**Aciclovir (as Aciclovir sodium) 25 mg per 1 ml** Aciclovir 1g/40ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £40.00 (Hospital only)

**Aciclovir 250mg/10ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials** | 5 vial [PoM] £50.00 (Hospital only) | 5 vial [PoM] £9.00

**Aciclovir 500mg/20ml solution for infusion vials** | 5 vial [PoM] £100.00 (Hospital only) | 5 vial [PoM] £18.00

**Aciclovir 500mg/20ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials** | 5 vial [PoM] £18.00 (Hospital only)

### Powder for solution for infusion

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Aciclovir (Non-proprietary)**

**Aciclovir (as Aciclovir sodium) 250 mg** Aciclovir 250mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 5 vial [PoM] £49.30

► **Zovirax I.V.** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Aciclovir (as Aciclovir sodium) 250 mg** Zovirax I.V. 250mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 5 vial [PoM] £16.70

**Aciclovir (as Aciclovir sodium) 500 mg** Zovirax I.V. 500mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 5 vial [PoM] £17.00

## Valaciclovir

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Herpes zoster infection, treatment in immunocompromised patients

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years: 1 g 3 times a day for at least 7 days and continued for 2 days after crusting of lesions

#### Herpes simplex, treatment of first infective episode

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years: 500 mg twice daily for 5 days (longer if new lesions appear during treatment or healing is incomplete)

#### Herpes simplex infections treatment of first episode in immunocompromised or HIV-positive patients

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years: 1 g twice daily for 10 days

#### Herpes simplex, treatment of recurrent infections

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years: 500 mg twice daily for 3–5 days

#### Treatment of recurrent herpes simplex infections in immunocompromised or HIV-positive patients

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years: 1 g twice daily for 5–10 days

#### Herpes labialis treatment

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 2 g, then 2 g after 12 hours

#### Herpes simplex, suppression of infections

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years: 500 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, therapy to be interrupted every 6–12 months to

reassess recurrence frequency—consider restarting after two or more recurrences

#### Herpes simplex, suppression of infections in immunocompromised or HIV-positive patients

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years: 500 mg twice daily, therapy to be interrupted every 6–12 months to reassess recurrence frequency—consider restarting after two or more recurrences

#### Prevention of cytomegalovirus disease following solid organ transplantation when valganciclovir or ganciclovir cannot be used

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years: 2 g 4 times a day usually for 90 days, preferably starting within 72 hours of transplantation

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for treatment of herpes zoster in children. Not licensed for treatment or suppression of herpes simplex infection in immunocompromised or HIV-positive children.

● **CAUTIONS** Maintain adequate hydration (especially with high doses)

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: valaciclovir

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · dizziness · headache · nausea · photosensitivity reaction · skin reactions · vomiting

► **Uncommon** Abdominal discomfort · agitation · confusion · dyspnoea · haematuria · hallucination · leucopenia · level of consciousness decreased · renal pain · thrombocytopenia · tremor

► **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · ataxia · coma · delirium · dysarthria · encephalopathy · nephrolithiasis · psychosis · renal impairment · seizure

► **Frequency not known** Microangiopathic haemolytic anaemia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Neurological reactions more frequent with higher doses.

● **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful—manufacturers advise use only when potential benefit outweighs risk.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Significant amount in milk after systemic administration—not known to be harmful but manufacturer advises caution.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution with high doses used for preventing cytomegalovirus disease—no information available in children.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Maintain adequate hydration.

**Dose adjustments** For *herpes zoster*, 1 g every 12 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> (1 g every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; 500 mg every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>).

For *treatment of herpes simplex*, 500 mg (1 g in immunocompromised or HIV-positive children) every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

For *treatment of herpes labialis*, if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, initially 1 g, then 1 g 12 hours after initial dose (if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, initially 500 mg, then 500 mg 12 hours after initial dose; if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, 500 mg as a single dose).

For *suppression of herpes simplex*, 250 mg (500 mg in immunocompromised or HIV-positive children) every 24 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.



Reduce dose according to estimated glomerular filtration rate for *cytomegalovirus prophylaxis* following solid organ transplantation (consult product literature).

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Valaciclovir is a pro-drug of aciclovir.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

##### ▶ Valaciclovir (Non-proprietary)

**Valaciclovir (as Valaciclovir hydrochloride) 500 mg** Valaciclovir 500mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £20.59 DT = £2.92 | 42 tablet [PoM] £8.50-£86.30

##### ▶ Valtrex (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Valaciclovir (as Valaciclovir hydrochloride) 250 mg** Valtrex 250mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £123.28 DT = £123.28

**Valaciclovir (as Valaciclovir hydrochloride) 500 mg** Valtrex 500mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £20.59 DT = £2.92 | 42 tablet [PoM] £86.30

## 6.3a Cytomegalovirus infections

### ANTIVIRALS > NUCLEOSIDE ANALOGUES

#### Ganciclovir

31-May-2018

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prevention of cytomegalovirus disease [pre-emptive therapy in patients with drug-induced immunosuppression]**

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child 12-17 years: Initially 5 mg/kg every 12 hours for 7–14 days, then maintenance 6 mg/kg once daily, on 5 days of the week, alternatively maintenance 5 mg/kg once daily

**Prevention of cytomegalovirus disease [universal prophylaxis in patients with drug-induced immunosuppression]**

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: (consult product literature).

- ▶ Child 1 month-16 years: (consult product literature)

- ▶ Child 17 years: 6 mg/kg once daily, on 5 days of the week, alternatively 5 mg/kg once daily

**Treatment of cytomegalovirus disease [in immunocompromised patients]**

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child: Initially 5 mg/kg every 12 hours for 14–21 days, then maintenance 6 mg/kg once daily, on 5 days of the week, alternatively maintenance 5 mg/kg once daily, maintenance only for patients at risk of relapse; if disease progresses initial induction treatment may be repeated

**Congenital cytomegalovirus infection of the CNS**

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: 6 mg/kg every 12 hours for 6 weeks.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 12 years for the treatment of cytomegalovirus disease in immunocompromised patients. Not licensed for congenital cytomegalovirus infection of the CNS.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Abnormally low haemoglobin count (consult product literature) · abnormally low neutrophil count (consult product literature) · abnormally low platelet count (consult product literature)

- **CAUTIONS** History of cytopenia · potential carcinogen (including long-term carcinogenicity) · potential teratogen (including long-term teratogenicity) · radiotherapy
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ganciclovir
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · bone marrow disorders · chest pain · chills · confusion · constipation · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · dysphagia · dyspnoea · ear pain · eye disorders · eye inflammation · eye pain · fever · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hepatic function abnormal · increased risk of infection · insomnia · leucopenia · malaise · muscle complaints · nausea · neutropenia · night sweats · pain · peripheral neuropathy · renal impairment · seizure · sensation abnormal · sepsis · skin reactions · taste altered · thinking abnormal · thrombocytopenia · vomiting · weight decreased
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Alopecia · arrhythmia · deafness · haematuria · hypotension · infertility male · oral ulceration · pancreatitis · psychotic disorder · tremor · visual impairment
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · hallucination
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients hypersensitive to valganciclovir, aciclovir, or valaciclovir.
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises women of childbearing potential should use effective contraception during and for at least 30 days after treatment; men with partners of childbearing potential should be advised to use barrier contraception during and for at least 90 days after treatment. Ganciclovir may cause temporary or permanent inhibition of spermatogenesis—impaired fertility observed in *animal* studies.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—teratogenicity in *animal* studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in *animal* studies.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises reduce dose for patients receiving mg/kg dosing if creatinine clearance less than 70 mL/minute—consult product literature.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor full blood count closely (severe deterioration may require correction and possibly treatment interruption).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises, for *intravenous infusion*, give intermittently in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Reconstitute with Water for Injections (500 mg/10 mL) then dilute requisite dose to a concentration of not more than 10 mg/mL with infusion fluid; give over 1 hour into a vein with adequate flow, preferably using a plastic cannula.
- **HANDLING AND STORAGE**

Caution in handling Ganciclovir is a potential teratogen and carcinogen. Manufacturer advises avoid inhalation of the powder or direct contact of the powder or reconstituted solution with the skin or mucous membranes; if contact occurs, wash thoroughly with soap and water; rinse eyes thoroughly with plain water.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Powder for solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

##### ▶ Ganciclovir (Non-proprietary)

**Ganciclovir (as Ganciclovir sodium) 500 mg** Ganciclovir 500mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 5 vial [PoM] £125.95

##### ▶ Cymevene (Roche Products Ltd)

**Ganciclovir (as Ganciclovir sodium) 500 mg** Cymevene 500mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 5 vial [PoM] £148.83

## Valganciclovir

31-May-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prevention of cytomegalovirus disease [following solid organ transplantation from a cytomegalovirus positive donor]**

► **BY MOUTH**

► **Neonate:** (consult product literature).

► **Child:** (consult product literature)

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

► Oral valganciclovir 900 mg twice daily is equivalent to intravenous ganciclovir 5 mg/kg twice daily.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Abnormally low haemoglobin count (consult product literature) · abnormally low neutrophil count (consult product literature) · abnormally low platelet count (consult product literature)

● **CAUTIONS** History of cytopenia · potential carcinogen (including long-term carcinogenicity) · potential teratogen (including long-term teratogenicity) · radiotherapy

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: valganciclovir

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · bone marrow disorders · chest pain · confusion · constipation · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · dysphagia · dyspnoea · ear pain · eye disorders · eye inflammation · eye pain · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hepatic function abnormal · increased risk of infection · insomnia · leucopenia · malaise · muscle complaints · nausea · neutropenia · night sweats · pain · peripheral neuropathy · renal impairment · seizure · sensation abnormal · sepsis · skin reactions · taste altered · thinking abnormal · thrombocytopenia · vomiting · weight decreased

► **Uncommon** Alopecia · arrhythmia · deafness · haematuria · hallucination · hypotension · infertility male · oral ulceration · pancreatitis · psychotic disorder · tremor · visual impairment

● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients hypersensitive to ganciclovir, aciclovir, or valaciclovir.

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises women of childbearing potential should use effective contraception during and for at least 30 days after treatment; men with partners of childbearing potential should be advised to use barrier contraception during and for at least 90 days after treatment. *Ganciclovir* may cause temporary or permanent inhibition of spermatogenesis—impaired fertility observed in *animal* studies.

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—teratogenicity observed with *ganciclovir* in *animal* studies.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—*ganciclovir* present in milk in *animal* studies.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor full blood count closely (severe deterioration may require correction and possibly treatment interruption).

### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Valganciclovir is a pro-drug of ganciclovir.

Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include tutti-frutti.

● **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Manufacturer advises reconstituted powder for oral solution should be stored in a refrigerator (2–8°C) for up to 49 days. Caution in handling Valganciclovir is a potential teratogen and carcinogen. Manufacturer advises caution when handling the powder, reconstituted solution, or broken tablets and avoid inhalation of powder; if contact with skin

or mucous membranes occurs, wash thoroughly with soap and water; rinse eyes thoroughly with plain water.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Valcyte** (Roche Products Ltd)

**Valganciclovir (as Valganciclovir hydrochloride) 50 mg per 1 ml** Valcyte 50mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £230.32

### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Valganciclovir (Non-proprietary)**

**Valganciclovir (as Valganciclovir hydrochloride)**

**450 mg** Valganciclovir 450mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £865.17–£1,081.46

► **Valcyte** (Roche Products Ltd)

**Valganciclovir (as Valganciclovir hydrochloride) 450 mg** Valcyte 450mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £1,081.46

## ANTIVIRALS

## Foscarnet sodium

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Cytomegalovirus disease**

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

► **Child** (under expert supervision): Initially 60 mg/kg every 8 hours 2–3 weeks, then maintenance 60 mg/kg daily, increased if tolerated to 90–120 mg/kg daily, if disease progresses on maintenance dose, repeat induction regimen

**Mucocutaneous herpes simplex virus infections unresponsive to aciclovir in immunocompromised patients**

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

► **Child** (under expert supervision): 40 mg/kg every 8 hours for 2–3 weeks or until lesions heal

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

● **CAUTIONS** Ensure adequate hydration

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: foscarnet

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Aggression · anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · asthenia · chest pain · chills · confusion · constipation · coordination abnormal · dehydration · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · electrolyte imbalance · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · genital discomfort (due to high concentrations excreted in urine) · genital ulceration (due to high concentrations excreted in urine) · haemorrhage · headache · hepatic function abnormal · hypertension · hypotension · leucopenia · malaise · muscle contractions involuntary · myalgia · nausea (reduce infusion rate) · neutropenia · numbness · oedema · palpitations · pancreatitis · paraesthesia (reduce infusion rate) · peripheral neuropathy · proteinuria · renal impairment · seizure · sepsis · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · tremor · urinary disorders · vomiting

► **Uncommon** Acidosis · angioedema · glomerulonephritis · nephropathy · pancytopenia

► **Frequency not known** Anaphylactoid reaction · diabetes insipidus · muscle weakness · myopathy · oesophageal ulcer · QT interval prolongation · renal pain · renal tubular acidosis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Men should avoid fathering a child during and for 6 months after treatment.

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—present in milk in *animal* studies.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose; consult product literature.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Monitor electrolytes, particularly calcium and magnesium.
- ▶ Monitor serum creatinine every second day during induction and every week during maintenance.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

Avoid rapid infusion. For intravenous infusion, give undiluted solution via a central venous catheter; alternatively dilute to a concentration of 12 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% for administration via a peripheral vein; give over at least 1 hour (give doses greater than 60 mg/kg over 2 hours).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for infusion**

**ELECTROLYTES:** May contain Sodium

▶ **Foscavir** (Clinigen Healthcare Ltd)

**Foscarnet sodium 24 mg per 1 ml** Foscavir 6g/250ml solution for infusion bottles | 1 bottle (POM) £119.85 (Hospital only)

## 6.4 HIV infection

### HIV infection

#### **Overview**

There is no cure for infection caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) but a number of drugs slow or halt disease progression. Drugs for HIV infection (antiretrovirals) may be associated with serious side-effects. Although antiretrovirals increase life expectancy considerably and decrease the risk of complications associated with premature ageing, mortality and morbidity remain slightly higher than in uninfected individuals.

The natural progression of HIV disease is different in children compared to adults; drug treatment should only be undertaken by specialists within a formal paediatric HIV clinical network. Guidelines and dose regimens are under constant review and for this reason some dose recommendations have not been included in *BNF for Children*.

Further information on the management of children with HIV can be obtained from the Children's HIV Association (CHIVA) [www.chiva.org.uk](http://www.chiva.org.uk); and further information on antiretroviral use and toxicity can be obtained from the Paediatric European Network for Treatment of AIDS (PENTA) website [penta-id.org/](http://penta-id.org/).

#### **Aims of treatment**

Treatment is aimed at suppressing viral replication for as long as possible; it should be started before the immune system is irreversibly damaged. The need for early drug treatment should, however, be balanced against the risk of toxicity. Commitment to treatment and strict adherence over many years are required; the regimen chosen should take into account convenience and the child's tolerance of treatment. The development of drug resistance is reduced by using a combination of drugs; such combinations should have synergistic or additive activity while ensuring that their toxicity is not additive. It is recommended that viral sensitivity to antiretroviral drugs is established before starting treatment or before switching drugs if the infection is not responding.

#### **Initiation of treatment**

Treatment is started in all HIV infected children under 1 year of age regardless of clinical and immunological parameters. In children over 1 year of age, treatment is based on the

child's age, CD4 cell count, viral load, and symptoms. The choice of antiviral treatment for children should take into account the method and frequency of administration, risk of side-effects, compatibility of drugs with food, palatability, and the appropriateness of the formulation. Initiating treatment with a combination of drugs ('highly active antiretroviral therapy' which includes 2 nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors with either a non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor or a boosted protease inhibitor) is recommended. Abacavir p. 416 and lamivudine p. 420 are the nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors of choice for initial therapy; however, zidovudine p. 422 and lamivudine are used in children who are positive for the HLA-B\*5701 allele. Nevirapine p. 414 is the preferred non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor in children under 3 years of age, but efavirenz p. 413 is preferred in older children. Lopinavir with ritonavir p. 425 is the preferred boosted protease inhibitor for initial therapy. The metabolism of many antiretrovirals varies in young children; it may therefore be necessary to adjust the dose according to the plasma-drug concentration. Children who require treatment for both HIV and chronic hepatitis B should receive antivirals that are active against both diseases.

#### **HIV infection, switching therapy**

Deterioration of the condition (including clinical, virological changes, and CD4 cell changes) may require a complete change of therapy. The choice of an alternative regimen depends on factors such as the response to previous treatment, tolerance, and the possibility of cross-resistance.

#### **HIV infection and pregnancy**

Treatment of HIV infection in pregnancy aims to reduce the risk of toxicity to the fetus (although information on the teratogenic potential of most antiretroviral drugs is limited), to minimise the viral load and disease progression in the mother, and to prevent transmission of infection to the neonate. **All treatment options require careful assessment by a specialist.** Combination antiretroviral therapy maximises the chance of preventing transmission and represents optimal therapy for the mother. However, it may be associated with a greater risk of preterm delivery. Local protocols and national guidelines ([www.bhiva.org](http://www.bhiva.org)) should be consulted for recommendations on treatment during pregnancy and the perinatal period. Pregnancies in HIV-positive women and babies born to them should be reported prospectively to the National Study of HIV in Pregnancy and Childhood at [www.ucl.ac.uk/nshpc](http://www.ucl.ac.uk/nshpc) and to the Antiretroviral Pregnancy Registry at [www.apregistry.com](http://www.apregistry.com).

#### **HIV infection and breast-feeding**

Breast-feeding by HIV-positive mothers may cause HIV infection in the infant and should be avoided.

#### **HIV infection, post-exposure prophylaxis**

Children exposed to HIV infection through needlestick injury or by another route should be sent immediately to an accident and emergency department for post-exposure prophylaxis [unlicensed indication]. Antiretrovirals for prophylaxis are chosen on the basis of efficacy and potential for toxicity. Recommendations have been developed by the Children's HIV Association, [www.chiva.org.uk](http://www.chiva.org.uk).

#### **Drug treatment**

Zidovudine, a nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor (or 'nucleoside analogue'), was the first anti-HIV drug to be introduced. Other nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors include abacavir, didanosine p. 417, emtricitabine p. 418, lamivudine, stavudine p. 421, and tenofovir disoproxil p. 421. There are concerns about renal toxicity and effects on bone mineralisation when tenofovir disoproxil is used in prepubertal children.

The protease inhibitors include atazanavir p. 423, darunavir p. 423, fosamprenavir p. 425 (a pro-drug of amprenavir), lopinavir (available as lopinavir with ritonavir), ritonavir p. 426, and tipranavir p. 426. Ritonavir in low doses boosts the activity of atazanavir, darunavir, fosamprenavir, lopinavir (available as lopinavir with ritonavir), and tipranavir increasing the persistence of plasma concentrations of these drugs; at such a low dose, ritonavir has no intrinsic antiviral activity. The protease inhibitors are metabolised by cytochrome P450 enzyme systems and therefore have a significant potential for drug interactions. Protease inhibitors are associated with lipodystrophy and metabolic effects.

The non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors efavirenz, etravirine p. 413, nevirapine and rilpivirine p. 415 are active against the subtype HIV-1 but not HIV-2, a subtype that is rare in the UK. These drugs may interact with a number of drugs metabolised in the liver. Nevirapine is associated with a high incidence of rash (including Stevens-Johnson syndrome) and rarely fatal hepatitis. Rash is also associated with efavirenz and etravirine but it is usually milder. Psychiatric or CNS disturbances are common with efavirenz. CNS disturbances are often self-limiting and can be reduced by taking the dose at bedtime (especially in the first 2–4 weeks of treatment). Efavirenz has also been associated with an increased plasma cholesterol concentration. Etravirine is used in regimens containing a boosted protease inhibitor for HIV infection resistant to other non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors and protease inhibitors.

Enfuvirtide below, which inhibits the fusion of HIV to the host cell, is licensed for managing infection that has failed to respond to a regimen of other antiretroviral drugs. Enfuvirtide should be combined with other potentially active antiretroviral drugs; it is given by subcutaneous injection.

Maraviroc p. 427 is an antagonist of the CCR5 chemokine receptor. It is used in patients exclusively infected with CCR5–tropic HIV.

Dolutegravir p. 411 and raltegravir p. 411 are inhibitors of HIV integrase. They are used for the treatment of HIV infection when non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors or protease inhibitors cannot be used because of intolerance, drug interactions, or resistance.

### Immune reconstitution syndrome

Improvement in immune function as a result of antiretroviral treatment may provoke a marked inflammatory reaction against residual opportunistic organisms; these reactions may occur within the first few weeks or months of initiating treatment. Autoimmune disorders (such as Graves' disease) have also been reported many months after initiation of treatment.

### Osteonecrosis

Osteonecrosis has been reported in children with advanced HIV disease or following long-term exposure to combination antiretroviral therapy.

### HIV infection in neonates

In order to prevent transmission of infection, neonates born to HIV-positive mothers should be given post-exposure prophylaxis as soon as possible after birth, but starting no later than 72 hours after birth. Zidovudine p. 422 alone should be given to neonates whose mothers had a viral load less than 50 HIV RNA copies/mL between 36 weeks' gestation and delivery, or whose mothers underwent caesarean section while taking zidovudine monotherapy. Combination antiretroviral therapy should be given to neonates whose mothers had a viral load over 50 HIV RNA copies/mL at delivery or whose mothers are found to be HIV positive after delivery. Prophylaxis is continued for 4 weeks.

## ANTIVIRALS > HIV-FUSION INHIBITORS

### Enfuvirtide

- **DRUG ACTION** Enfuvirtide inhibits the fusion of HIV to the host cell.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs for resistant infection or for patients intolerant to other antiretroviral regimens**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

► Child 6–15 years: 2 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 90 mg)

► Child 16–17 years: 90 mg twice daily

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Anxiety · appetite decreased · asthenia · concentration impaired · conjunctivitis · diabetes mellitus · gastroesophageal reflux disease · haematuria · hypertriglyceridaemia · increased risk of infection · influenza like illness · irritability · lymphadenopathy · myalgia · nasal congestion · nephrolithiasis · nightmare · numbness · pancreatitis · peripheral neuropathy · skin papilloma · skin reactions · tremor · vertigo · weight decreased

► **Frequency not known** Diarrhoea · hypersensitivity · immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome · nausea · osteonecrosis

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Hypersensitivity** Hypersensitivity reactions including rash, fever, nausea, vomiting, chills, rigors, low blood pressure, respiratory distress, glomerulonephritis, and raised liver enzymes reported; discontinue immediately if any signs or symptoms of systemic hypersensitivity develop and do not rechallenge.

**Osteonecrosis** Osteonecrosis has been reported in patients with advanced HIV disease or following long-term exposure to combination antiretroviral therapy.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available; chronic hepatitis B or C (possibly greater risk of hepatic side-effects).

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *subcutaneous injection*, reconstitute with 1.1 mL Water for Injections and allow to stand (for up to 45 minutes) to dissolve; do **not** shake or invert vial.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Hypersensitivity reactions Patients or carers should be told how to recognise signs of hypersensitivity, and advised to discontinue treatment and seek immediate medical attention if symptoms develop.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Fuzeon** (Roche Products Ltd)

**Enfuvirtide 108 mg** Fuzeon 108mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 60 vial (PoM) £1,081.57

## ANTIVIRALS &gt; HIV-INTEGRASE INHIBITORS

## Dolutegravir

05-Jun-2018

- **DRUG ACTION** Dolutegravir is an inhibitor of HIV integrase.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**HIV infection without resistance to other inhibitors of HIV integrase, in combination with other antiretroviral drugs**

► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 50 mg once daily

**HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs (with concomitant carbamazepine, efavirenz, etravirine (without boosted protease inhibitors, but see also Interactions), fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone, nevirapine, oxcarbazepine, St John's wort, rifampicin, or tipranavir)**

► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 50 mg twice daily, avoid concomitant use with these drugs if resistance to other inhibitors of HIV integrase suspected

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: *TIVICAY*® (DOLUTEGRAVIR), *TRIUQUEQ*® (DOLUTEGRAVIR, ABACAVIR, LAMIVUDINE), *JULUCA*® (DOLUTEGRAVIR, RILPIVIRINE): NEURAL TUBE DEFECTS REPORTED IN INFANTS BORN TO WOMEN EXPOSED TO DOLUTEGRAVIR AT THE TIME OF CONCEPTION (MAY 2018)

In an ongoing birth outcome surveillance study conducted in Botswana, 4 cases of neural tube defects have been reported in 426 infants born to women who took dolutegravir as part of combined antiretroviral therapy at the time of conception. The manufacturer, in agreement with the European Medicines Agency, has recommended the following measures while this safety signal is being evaluated:

- Pregnancy testing should be performed and pregnancy excluded before initiation of treatment in females of childbearing potential; effective contraception should be used throughout treatment;
- Use of dolutegravir should be avoided in pregnancy; if pregnancy occurs and is confirmed in the first trimester, it is recommended to switch to an alternative treatment unless there is no suitable alternative.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: dolutegravir

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · fatigue · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · nausea · skin reactions · sleep disorders · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Arthralgia · hepatitis · hypersensitivity · immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome · myalgia · suicidal tendencies

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

**Hypersensitivity** Hypersensitivity reactions (including severe rash, or rash accompanied by fever, malaise, arthralgia, myalgia, blistering, oral lesions, conjunctivitis, angioedema, eosinophilia, or raised liver enzymes) reported uncommonly. Discontinue immediately if any sign or symptoms of hypersensitivity reactions develop.

**Osteonecrosis** Osteonecrosis has been reported in patients with advanced HIV disease or following long-term exposure to combination antiretroviral therapy.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid, see *Important Safety Information*.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment—no information available

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer dolutegravir tablets.  
**Missed doses** If a dose is more than 20 hours late on the once daily regimen (or more than 8 hours late on the twice daily regimen), the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

● **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS****Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (May 2014) that dolutegravir (*Tivicay*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland when used in combination with other anti-retroviral medicines for the treatment of HIV infected adolescents above 12 years. This advice is contingent upon the continuing availability of the patient access scheme in NHS Scotland or a list price that is equivalent or lower.

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (July 2017) that dolutegravir (*Tivicay*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland when used in combination with other anti-retroviral medicines for the treatment of HIV infected children aged 6 to 12 years of age. This advice is contingent upon the continuing availability of the patient access scheme in NHS Scotland or a list price that is equivalent or lower.

**All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions**

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (October 2017) that dolutegravir (*Tivicay*®) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales in combination with other anti-retroviral medicinal products for the treatment of HIV infected patients above 6 years of age. This recommendation applies only in circumstances where the approved Wales Patient Access Scheme (WPAS) is utilised or where the list/contract price is equivalent or lower than the WPAS price.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Tablet**

- *Tivicay* (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd) ▼

**Dolutegravir (as Dolutegravir sodium) 10 mg** Tivicay 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £99.75

**Dolutegravir (as Dolutegravir sodium) 25 mg** Tivicay 25mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £249.38

**Dolutegravir (as Dolutegravir sodium) 50 mg** Tivicay 50mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £498.75

Combinations available: *Abacavir with dolutegravir and lamivudine*, p. 416

## Raltegravir

10-May-2018

- **DRUG ACTION** Raltegravir is an inhibitor of HIV integrase.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****HIV-1 infection (initiated by a specialist)**

► BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

- Child (body-weight 25 kg and above): 400 mg twice daily
- Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): 1200 mg once daily, once daily dosing for use in patients who are treatment naive or virologically suppressed on an initial regimen of 400 mg twice daily—use 600 mg tablets only

► BY MOUTH USING CHEWABLE TABLETS

- Child (body-weight 11–13 kg): 75 mg twice daily
- Child (body-weight 14–19 kg): 100 mg twice daily
- Child (body-weight 20–27 kg): 150 mg twice daily
- Child (body-weight 28–39 kg): 200 mg twice daily
- Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): 300 mg twice daily

► BY MOUTH USING ORAL SUSPENSION

- Neonate up to 7 days (body-weight 2 kg): 4 mg once daily.

- Neonate up to 7 days (body-weight 3 kg): 5 mg once daily.

continued →



- ▶ Neonate up to 7 days (body-weight 4 kg): 7 mg once daily.
- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days (body-weight 2 kg): 8 mg twice daily.
- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days (body-weight 3 kg): 10 mg twice daily.
- ▶ Neonate 7 days to 28 days (body-weight 4 kg): 15 mg twice daily.

- ▶ Child (body-weight 3 kg): 25 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child (body-weight 4–5 kg): 30 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child (body-weight 6–7 kg): 40 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child (body-weight 8–10 kg): 60 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child (body-weight 11–13 kg): 80 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child (body-weight 14–19 kg): 100 mg twice daily

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- ▶ Raltegravir granules for oral suspension and chewable tablets are **not** bioequivalent or interchangeable with the 400 mg and 600 mg *standard* tablets.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Pre-term neonates—no information available
- **CAUTIONS** Psychiatric illness (may exacerbate underlying illness including depression) · risk factors for myopathy · risk factors for rhabdomyolysis
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: raltegravir
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Akathisia · appetite abnormal · asthenia · behaviour abnormal · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · headaches · nausea · skin reactions · sleep disorders · vertigo · vomiting
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Alopecia · anaemia · anxiety · arrhythmias · arthralgia · arthritis · body fat disorder · burping · cachexia · chest discomfort · chills · cognitive disorder · concentration impaired · confusion · constipation · diabetes mellitus · drowsiness · dry mouth · dyslipidaemia · dysphonia · erectile dysfunction · feeling jittery · glossitis · gynaecomastia · haemorrhage · hepatic disorders · hot flush · hyperglycaemia · hypersensitivity · hypertension · immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome · increased risk of infection · lipodystrophy · lymph node abscess · lymphatic abnormalities · malaise · memory loss · menopausal symptoms · mood altered · myalgia · myopathy · nasal congestion · nephritis · nephrolithiasis · nerve disorders · neutropenia · nocturia · odynophagia · oedema · osteopenia · pain · palpitations · pancreatitis acute · polydipsia · psychiatric disorder · renal cyst · renal impairment · sensation abnormal · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin papilloma · submandibular mass · suicidal tendencies · sweat changes · taste altered · tendinitis · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus · tremor · visual impairment · weight increased
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Osteonecrosis

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Rash occurs commonly. Discontinue if severe rash or rash accompanied by fever, malaise, arthralgia, myalgia, blistering, mouth ulceration, conjunctivitis, angioedema, hepatitis, or eosinophilia.

For further information regarding **lipodystrophy** and **osteonecrosis** see HIV infection p. 409.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—toxicity in animal studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment—no information available. Use with caution in patients with chronic hepatitis B or C (at greater risk of hepatic side-effects).

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises for *chewable tablets*, the 100 mg strength can be divided into equal 50 mg doses.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Dispense raltegravir chewable tablets in original container (contains desiccant).

**● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS****Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (September 2013) that raltegravir (*Isentress*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of HIV-1 infection in adolescents and children aged 2 to 17 years when non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors or protease inhibitors cannot be used because of intolerance, drug interactions, or resistance; raltegravir should be prescribed under the supervision of specialists in paediatric HIV.

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (November 2015) that raltegravir granules for oral suspension (*Isentress*®) are accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of HIV-1 infection in adults, adolescents, children, toddlers and infants from the age of 4 weeks when non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors or protease inhibitors cannot be used because of intolerance, drug interactions, or resistance; raltegravir granules should be prescribed under the supervision of specialists in paediatric HIV.

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (November 2015) that raltegravir chewable tablets (*Isentress*®) are accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of HIV-1 infection in children from the age of 4 weeks to <2 years when non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors or protease inhibitors cannot be used because of intolerance, drug interactions, or resistance; raltegravir chewable tablets should be prescribed under the supervision of specialists in paediatric HIV.

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (November 2017) that raltegravir 600 mg film-coated tablets (*Isentress*®) are accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of HIV-1 infection in adults and paediatric patients weighing at least 40 kg when non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors or protease inhibitors cannot be used because of intolerance, drug interactions, or resistance.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Granules**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sorbitol

- ▶ **Isentress** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)  
**Raltegravir 100 mg** Isentress 100mg granules sachets | 60 sachet [PoM] £213.02 DT = £213.02

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

- ▶ **Isentress** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)  
**Raltegravir 400 mg** Isentress 400mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £471.41  
**Raltegravir 600 mg** Isentress 600mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £471.41

**Chewable tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 24

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

- ▶ **Isentress** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)  
**Raltegravir 25 mg** Isentress 25mg chewable tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £29.46 DT = £29.46  
**Raltegravir 100 mg** Isentress 100mg chewable tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £117.85 DT = £117.85

## ANTIVIRALS > NON-NUCLEOSIDE REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE INHIBITORS

### Efavirenz

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs

###### ► BY MOUTH USING CAPSULES

- Child 3 months–17 years (body-weight 3.5–4 kg): 100 mg once daily
- Child 3 months–17 years (body-weight 5–7.4 kg): 150 mg once daily
- Child 3 months–17 years (body-weight 7.5–14 kg): 200 mg once daily
- Child 3 months–17 years (body-weight 15–19 kg): 250 mg once daily
- Child 3 months–17 years (body-weight 20–24 kg): 300 mg once daily
- Child 3 months–17 years (body-weight 25–32.4 kg): 350 mg once daily
- Child 3 months–17 years (body-weight 32.5–39 kg): 400 mg once daily
- Child 3 months–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 600 mg once daily

###### ► BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

- Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): 600 mg once daily

###### ► BY MOUTH USING ORAL SOLUTION

- Child 3–4 years (body-weight 13–14 kg): 360 mg once daily
- Child 3–4 years (body-weight 15–19 kg): 390 mg once daily
- Child 3–4 years (body-weight 20–24 kg): 450 mg once daily
- Child 3–4 years (body-weight 25–32.5 kg): 510 mg once daily
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 13–14 kg): 270 mg once daily
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 15–19 kg): 300 mg once daily
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 20–24 kg): 360 mg once daily
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 25–32.4 kg): 450 mg once daily
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 32.5–39 kg): 510 mg once daily
- Child 5–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 720 mg once daily

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- The bioavailability of *Sustiva*<sup>®</sup> oral solution is lower than that of the capsules and tablets; the oral solution is **not** interchangeable with either capsules or tablets on a milligram-for-milligram basis.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Opening capsules and adding contents to food is an unlicensed method of administration.
- **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · history of psychiatric disorders · history of seizures
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: efavirenz
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · anxiety · concentration impaired · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dyslipidaemia · fatigue · headache · movement disorders · nausea · skin reactions · sleep disorders · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Behaviour abnormal · confusion · flushing · gynaecomastia · hallucination · hepatic disorders · memory loss · mood altered · pancreatitis · psychosis · seizure · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · suicidal tendencies · thinking abnormal · tinnitus · tremor · vertigo · vision blurred
  - **Rare or very rare** Delusions · photosensitivity reaction
  - **Frequency not known** Immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome · osteonecrosis

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For further information regarding **osteonecrosis**, **immune reconstitution syndrome** and **lipodystrophy**, see HIV infection p. 409.

**Rash** Rash, usually in the first 2 weeks, is the most common side-effect; discontinue if severe rash with blistering, desquamation, mucosal involvement or fever; if rash mild or moderate, may continue without interruption—usually resolves within 1 month.

**CNS effects** Administration at bedtime especially in first 2–4 weeks reduces CNS effects.

- **PREGNANCY** Reports of neural tube defects when used in first trimester.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Greater risk of hepatic side-effects in chronic hepatitis B or C. Avoid in severe impairment.
- **Monitoring** In mild to moderate liver disease, monitor for dose-related side-effects (e.g. CNS effects) and liver function.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in severe renal failure—no information available.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor liver function if receiving other hepatotoxic drugs.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Capsules may be opened and contents added to food (contents have a peppery taste).
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include strawberry and mint.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Psychiatric disorders Patients or their carers should be advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as severe depression, psychosis or suicidal ideation occur.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 23

###### ► Efavirenz (Non-proprietary)

**Efavirenz 600 mg** Efavirenz 600mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM](#)

£30.00-£452.94 | 30 tablet [PoM](#) £27.87 (Hospital only)

###### ► Sustiva (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Efavirenz 600 mg** Sustiva 600mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM](#) £200.27 (Hospital only)

##### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 23

###### ► Sustiva (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Efavirenz 50 mg** Sustiva 50mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM](#) £16.73 (Hospital only)

**Efavirenz 100 mg** Sustiva 100mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM](#) £33.41 (Hospital only)

**Efavirenz 200 mg** Sustiva 200mg capsules | 90 capsule [PoM](#) £200.27 (Hospital only)

### Etravirine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### HIV infection resistant to other non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor and protease inhibitors in combination with other antiretroviral drugs (including a boosted protease inhibitor)

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 16–19 kg): 100 mg twice daily
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 20–24 kg): 125 mg twice daily
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 25–29 kg): 150 mg twice daily
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 30 kg and above): 200 mg twice daily

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: etravirine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Diabetes mellitus · diarrhoea · headache · hyperglycaemia · myocardial infarction · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Angioedema · bronchospasm · dry mouth · dyslipidaemia · gynaecomastia · haematemesis · hepatic disorders · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · hypersomnia · numbness · pancreatitis · sluggishness · vision blurred
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Haemorrhagic stroke · osteonecrosis · weight increased

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For further information regarding **osteonecrosis**, **immune reconstitution syndrome** and **lipodystrophy**, see HIV infection p. 409.

**Hypersensitivity reactions** Rash, usually in the second week, is the most common side-effect and appears more frequently in females. Life-threatening hypersensitivity reactions reported usually during week 3–6 of treatment and characterised by rash, eosinophilia, and systemic symptoms (including fever, general malaise, myalgia, arthralgia, blistering, oral lesions, conjunctivitis, and hepatitis). Discontinue permanently if hypersensitivity reaction or severe rash develop. If rash mild or moderate (without signs of hypersensitivity reaction), may continue without interruption—usually resolves within 2 weeks.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment—no information available; greater risk of hepatic side-effects in chronic hepatitis B or C.
  - **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Patients with swallowing difficulties may disperse tablets in a glass of water just before administration.
  - **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Dispense in original container (contains desiccant).
  - **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Hypersensitivity reactions Patients or carers should be told how to recognise hypersensitivity reactions and advised to seek immediate medical attention if hypersensitivity reaction or severe rash develop.
- Missed doses** If a dose is more than 6 hours late, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS** There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- ▶ **Intelece** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)
  - Etravirine 25 mg** Intelece 25mg tablets | 120 tablet [PoM] £75.32
  - Etravirine 100 mg** Intelece 100mg tablets | 120 tablet [PoM] £301.27
  - Etravirine 200 mg** Intelece 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £301.27

## Nevirapine

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs (initial dose)

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ **Child:** Initially 150–200 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once daily (max. per dose 200 mg) for first 14 days, initial dose titration using 'immediate-release' preparation should not exceed 28 days; if rash occurs and is not resolved within 28 days, alternative treatment should be sought. If treatment interrupted for more than 7 days, restart

using the lower dose of the 'immediate-release' preparation for the first 14 days as for new treatment

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs (maintenance dose following initial dose titration if no rash present)

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ **Child 1 month–2 years:** 150–200 mg/m<sup>2</sup> twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg), alternatively 300–400 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once daily (max. per dose 400 mg)
- ▶ **Child 3–17 years:** 150–200 mg/m<sup>2</sup> twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg)

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs (maintenance dose following initial dose titration if no rash present)

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ **Child 3–17 years** (body surface area 0.58–0.83 m<sup>2</sup>): 200 mg once daily
- ▶ **Child 3–17 years** (body surface area 0.84–1.17 m<sup>2</sup>): 300 mg once daily
- ▶ **Child 3–17 years** (body surface area 1.18 m<sup>2</sup> and above): 400 mg once daily
- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES**
- ▶ **Child 3–17 years** (body surface area 0.58–0.83 m<sup>2</sup>): 200 mg once daily
- ▶ **Child 3–17 years** (body surface area 0.84–1.17 m<sup>2</sup>): 300 mg once daily
- ▶ **Child 3–17 years** (body surface area 1.18 m<sup>2</sup> and above): 400 mg once daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** 'Immediate-release' tablets not licensed for use in children weighing less than 50 kg or with body surface area less than 1.25 m<sup>2</sup>; 'immediate-release' tablets and suspension not licensed for once daily dose after the initial dose titration.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · post-exposure prophylaxis
- **CAUTIONS** Females (at greater risk of hepatic side effects) · high CD4 cell count (at greater risk of hepatic side effects)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: nevirapine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · angioedema · diarrhoea · fatigue · fever · headache · hepatic disorders · hypersensitivity · hypertransaminasaemia · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Anaemia · arthralgia · myalgia · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Eosinophilia · osteonecrosis · weight increased

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Hepatic effects** Potentially life-threatening hepatotoxicity including fatal fulminant hepatitis reported usually in first 6 weeks; discontinue permanently if abnormalities in liver function tests accompanied by hypersensitivity reaction (rash, fever, arthralgia, myalgia, lymphadenopathy, hepatitis, renal impairment, eosinophilia, granulocytopenia); suspend if severe abnormalities in liver function tests but no hypersensitivity reaction—discontinue permanently if significant liver function abnormalities recur; monitor patient closely if mild to moderate abnormalities in liver function tests with no hypersensitivity reaction.

**Rash** Rash, usually in first 6 weeks, is most common side-effect; incidence reduced if introduced at low dose and dose increased gradually (after 14 days). Discontinue permanently if severe rash or if rash accompanied by blistering, oral lesions, conjunctivitis, facial oedema, general malaise or hypersensitivity reactions; if rash mild or moderate may continue without interruption but dose should not be increased until rash resolves.

**Osteonecrosis** Osteonecrosis has been reported in patients with advanced HIV disease or following long-term exposure to combination antiretroviral therapy.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid modified-release preparation—no information available; use 'immediate-release' preparation with caution in moderate impairment and avoid in severe impairment. Use with caution in patients with chronic hepatitis B or C (at greater risk of hepatic side effects).
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid modified-release preparation—no information available.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Hepatic disease Close monitoring of liver function required during first 18 weeks; monitor liver function before treatment then every 2 weeks for 2 months then after 1 month and then regularly.
  - ▶ Rash Monitor closely for skin reactions during first 18 weeks.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Hypersensitivity reactions Patients or carers should be told how to recognise hypersensitivity reactions and advised to discontinue treatment and seek immediate medical attention if severe skin reaction, hypersensitivity reactions, or symptoms of hepatitis develop.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral suspension

- ▶ **Viramune** (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)  
Nevirapine (as Nevirapine hemihydrate) 10 mg per 1 ml Viramune 50mg/5ml oral suspension | 240 ml [PoM] £50.40

##### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

- ▶ **Nevirapine (Non-proprietary)**  
Nevirapine 400 mg Nevirapine 400mg modified-release tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £23.00–£170.00
- ▶ **Viramune** (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)  
Nevirapine 100 mg Viramune 100mg modified-release tablets | 90 tablet [PoM] £127.50 (Hospital only)  
Nevirapine 400 mg Viramune 400mg modified-release tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £170.00 (Hospital only)

##### Tablet

- ▶ **Nevirapine (Non-proprietary)**  
Nevirapine 200 mg Nevirapine 200mg tablets | 14 tablet [PoM] £33.69 | 60 tablet [PoM] £21.45–£170.00
- ▶ **Viramune** (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)  
Nevirapine 200 mg Viramune 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £170.00

## Rilpivirine

28-Sep-2016

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs in patients not previously treated with antiretroviral therapy and if plasma HIV-1 RNA concentration less than or equal to 100 000 copies/mL**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 25 mg once daily

- **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: rilpivirine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · depression · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · fatigue · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · nausea · rash · sleep disorders · vomiting
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For further information regarding lipodystrophy, see HIV infection p. 409.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment—no information available; greater risk of hepatic side-effects in chronic hepatitis B or C.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer rilpivirine tablets.  
**Missed doses** If a dose is more than 12 hours late, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**  
**All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions**  
The All Wales Medicines Strategy Group has advised (October 2016) that Rilpivirine (*Eduvant*®) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales in combination with other antiretroviral medicinal products for the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) infection in antiretroviral treatment-naïve patients from 12 years old to < 18 years old with a viral load ≤ 100,000 HIV-1 RNA copies/ml.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21, 25

- ▶ **Eduvant** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)  
Rilpivirine (as Rilpivirine hydrochloride) 25 mg Eduvant 25mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £200.27

Combinations available: **Emtricitabine with rilpivirine and tenofovir alafenamide**, p. 419

## ANTIVIRALS > NUCLEOSIDE REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE INHIBITORS

## Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors



#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · anaemia (may require transfusion) · appetite decreased · asthenia · diarrhoea · dizziness · headache · myalgia · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Hepatic steatosis · lactic acidosis · pancreatitis · thrombocytopenia
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome · osteonecrosis · weight increased

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Osteonecrosis has been reported in patients with advanced HIV disease or following long-term exposure to combination antiretroviral therapy.

#### ● PREGNANCY

**Monitoring** Mitochondrial dysfunction has been reported in infants exposed to nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors in utero; the main effects include haematological, metabolic, and neurological disorders; all infants whose mothers received nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors during pregnancy should be monitored for relevant signs or symptoms.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in children with hepatic impairment (greater risk of hepatic side effects). However, some nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors are used in children who also have chronic hepatitis B.

## Abacavir

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### **HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 3 months–11 years: 8 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 300 mg), alternatively 16 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 600 mg)
- Child 3 months–11 years (body-weight 14–20 kg): 150 mg twice daily, alternatively 300 mg once daily
- Child 3 months–11 years (body-weight 21–29 kg): 150 mg, taken in the morning and 300 mg, taken in the evening, alternatively 450 mg once daily
- Child 3 months–11 years (body-weight 30 kg and above): 300 mg twice daily, alternatively 600 mg once daily
- Child 12–17 years: 300 mg twice daily, alternatively 600 mg once daily

### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: abacavir

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Fever · lethargy
- **Rare or very rare** Erythema multiforme · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
- **Frequency not known** Hypersensitivity

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Life-threatening hypersensitivity reactions have been reported, characterised by fever or rash and possibly nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, abdominal pain, dyspnoea, cough, lethargy, malaise, headache, and myalgia; less frequently mouth ulceration, oedema, hypotension, sore throat, acute respiratory distress syndrome, anaphylaxis, paraesthesia, arthralgia, conjunctivitis, lymphadenopathy, lymphocytopenia and renal failure; rarely myolysis. Laboratory abnormalities may include raised liver function tests and creatine kinase; symptoms usually appear in the first 6 weeks, but may occur at any time. Discontinue immediately if any symptom of hypersensitivity develops and do not rechallenge (risk of more severe hypersensitivity reaction).

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Caution—increased risk of hypersensitivity reaction in presence of HLA-B\*5701 allele.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Monitor closely in mild impairment (combination preparations not recommended as reduced abacavir dose may be required). Avoid in moderate impairment unless essential—close monitoring recommended. Avoid in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid in end-stage renal disease.
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Test for HLA-B\*5701 allele before treatment or if restarting treatment and HLA-B\*5701 status not known.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor for symptoms of hypersensitivity reaction every 2 weeks for 2 months.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include banana, or strawberry.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and their carers should be told the importance of regular dosing (intermittent therapy may increase the risk of sensitisation), how to recognise signs of hypersensitivity, and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms develop or before re-starting treatment. Patients should be provided with an alert card and advised to keep it with them at all times.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Oral solution**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

##### ► **Ziagen** (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd)

**Abacavir (as Abacavir sulfate) 20 mg per 1 ml** Ziagen 20mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 240 ml [PoM] £55.72

#### **Tablet**

##### ► **Ziagen** (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd)

**Abacavir (as Abacavir sulfate) 300 mg** Ziagen 300mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £208.95

## Abacavir with dolutegravir and lamivudine

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, abacavir above, lamivudine p. 420, dolutegravir p. 411.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### **HIV infection**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 1 tablet once daily

### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: abacavir · dolutegravir · lamivudine

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid *Triumeq*® if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Missed doses** If a dose is more than 20 hours late, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Tablet**

##### ► **Triumeq** (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd) ▼

**Dolutegravir (as Dolutegravir sodium) 50 mg, Lamivudine 300 mg, Abacavir (as Abacavir sulfate) 600 mg** Triumeq 50mg/600mg/300mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £798.16

## Abacavir with lamivudine

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, abacavir above, lamivudine p. 420.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### **HIV infection in combination with other antiretrovirals**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 1 tablet once daily

### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: abacavir · lamivudine

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid *Kivexa*® if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Tablet**

##### ► **Abacavir with lamivudine (Non-proprietary)**

**Lamivudine 300 mg, Abacavir 600 mg** Abacavir 600mg / Lamivudine 300mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £150.83–£299.41 | 30 tablet [PoM] £224.56 (Hospital only)

##### ► **Kivexa** (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd)

**Lamivudine 300 mg, Abacavir 600 mg** Kivexa 600mg/300mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £352.25



## Abacavir with lamivudine and zidovudine

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, abacavir p. 416, lamivudine p. 420, zidovudine p. 422.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**HIV infection (use only if patient is stabilised for 6–8 weeks on the individual components in the same proportions)**

- BY MOUTH
- Child (body-weight 30 kg and above): 1 tablet twice daily

● **UNLICENSED USE** Trizivir® not licensed for use in children.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: abacavir · lamivudine · zidovudine

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid Trizivir® if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

- Trizivir (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd)  
Lamivudine 150 mg, Abacavir (as Abacavir sulfate) 300 mg, Zidovudine 300 mg Trizivir tablets | 60 tablet (PoM) £509.06

**F 415**

01-Sep-2016

## Didanosine

(ddi; DDI)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 1–7 months: 50–100 mg/m<sup>2</sup> twice daily
- Child 8 months–17 years: 180–240 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once daily; usual dose 200 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once daily; maximum 400 mg per day

● **UNLICENSED USE** Tablets not licensed for use in children under 3 months. EC capsules not licensed for use in children under 6 years.

● **CAUTIONS** History of pancreatitis (preferably avoid, otherwise extreme caution) · hyperuricaemia · lactic acidosis · peripheral neuropathy

### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Lactic acidosis Lactic acidosis associated with hepatomegaly and hepatic steatosis has been reported with didanosine. Use with caution in patients with hepatomegaly, hepatitis, or other risk factors for liver disease and hepatic steatosis (including obesity and alcohol abuse). Discontinue treatment if symptoms of hyperlactataemia, lactic acidosis, progressive hepatomegaly or rapid deterioration of liver function become apparent.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: didanosine

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Arthralgia · chills · dry mouth · fever · flatulence · gynaecomastia · hepatic disorders · pain · peripheral neuropathy (switch to another antiretroviral if peripheral neuropathy develops)
- **Uncommon** Acute kidney injury · alopecia · diabetes mellitus · dry eye · haemodialysis · hyperglycaemia · hypoglycaemia · leucopenia · myopathy · optic neuritis · retinal discolouration · sialadenitis
- **Rare or very rare** Parotid gland enlargement
- **Frequency not known** Lipotrophy

### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Pancreatitis** Suspend treatment if serum lipase raised or if symptoms of pancreatitis develop; discontinue if pancreatitis confirmed. Whenever possible avoid concomitant treatment with other drugs known to cause pancreatic toxicity; monitor closely if concomitant therapy unavoidable. Since significant elevations of triglycerides cause pancreatitis monitor closely if elevated.

**Lipodystrophy syndrome** Metabolic effects may occur with didanosine: these include fat redistribution, insulin resistance, and dyslipidaemia—collectively termed lipodystrophy syndrome. Manufacturer advises monitoring of plasma lipids and blood-glucose.

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Monitoring** In hepatic impairment, monitor for toxicity.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; consult product literature.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

Ophthalmological examination (including visual acuity, colour vision, and dilated fundus examination) recommended annually or if visual changes occur.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Capsules should be swallowed whole and taken at least 2 hours before or 2 hours after food.

With chewable tablets, to ensure sufficient antacid, each dose to be taken as at least 2 tablets (child under 1 year 1 tablet) chewed thoroughly, crushed or dispersed in water; clear apple juice may be added for flavouring; tablets to be taken 2 hours after lopinavir with ritonavir capsules and oral solution or atazanavir with ritonavir.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer didanosine capsules and chewable tablets.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Gastro-resistant capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

- **Videx EC** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Didanosine 125 mg** Videx EC 125mg capsules | 30 capsule (PoM) £48.18 (Hospital only)

**Didanosine 200 mg** Videx EC 200mg capsules | 30 capsule (PoM) £77.09 (Hospital only)

**Didanosine 250 mg** Videx EC 250mg capsules | 30 capsule (PoM) £96.37 (Hospital only)

**Didanosine 400 mg** Videx EC 400mg capsules | 30 capsule (PoM) £154.19 (Hospital only)

#### Chewable tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 23

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

- **Videx** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Didanosine 25 mg** Videx 25mg chewable dispersible tablets sugar-free | 60 tablet (PoM) £25.06 (Hospital only)

## Elvitegravir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide

03-May-2018

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, emtricitabine below, elvitegravir, cobicistat, tenofovir alafenamide p. 400.

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### HIV-1 infection (specialist use only)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–11 years (body-weight 25 kg and above): 1 tablet once daily
- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 35 kg and above): 1 tablet once daily

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cobicistat · elvitegravir · tenofovir alafenamide

### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abnormal dreams · diarrhoea · dizziness · fatigue · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Anaemia · angioedema · depression
- **Frequency not known** Nephrotoxicity · osteonecrosis · weight increased

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception in women of childbearing potential; if using a hormonal contraceptive, it must contain drospirenone or norgestimate as the progestogen and at least 30 micrograms ethinylestradiol.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution in mild-to-moderate impairment (greater risk of hepatic side-effects); avoid in severe impairment—no information available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid if creatinine clearance less than 30 mL/minute—limited information available. Manufacturer advises caution in children under 12 years with renal impairment—no information available.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Dispense in original container—contains desiccant.

### • PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Missed doses** Manufacturer advises if a dose is more than 18 hours late, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

**Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be counselled on the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness.

### • NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (May 2016) that elvitegravir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide (*Genvoya*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of adults and adolescents (aged 12 years and older with body weight at least 35 kg) infected with human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1), without known mutations associated with resistance to the integrase inhibitor class, emtricitabine or tenofovir. This advice is contingent upon the continuing availability of the patient access scheme in NHS Scotland or a list price that is equivalent or lower.

#### All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (July 2016) that elvitegravir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide (*Genvoya*®) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales for the treatment of adults and adolescents (aged 12 years and older with body weight at least 35 kg) infected with human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1), without known

mutations associated with resistance to the integrase inhibitor class, emtricitabine or tenofovir. The recommendation applies only if the approved Wales Patient Access Scheme (WPAS) is used or where the list price is equivalent or lower.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Genvoya** (Gilead Sciences International Ltd) ▼  
Tenofovir alafenamide 10 mg, Cobicistat 150 mg, Elvitegravir 150 mg, Emtricitabine 200 mg Genvoya  
150mg/150mg/200mg/10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £879.51

## Emtricitabine

### (FTC)

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs

##### ► BY MOUTH USING CAPSULES

- Child (body-weight 33 kg and above): 200 mg once daily

##### ► BY MOUTH USING ORAL SOLUTION

- Child 4 months–17 years (body-weight up to 33 kg): 6 mg/kg once daily
- Child 4 months–17 years (body-weight 33 kg and above): 240 mg once daily

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- 240 mg oral solution = 200 mg capsule; where appropriate the capsule may be used instead of the oral solution.

### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Dyspepsia · hyperbilirubinaemia · hyperglycaemia · hypersensitivity · hypertriglyceridaemia · neutropenia · pain · rash pustular · skin reactions · sleep disorders

- **Uncommon** Angioedema

### • HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Monitoring** On discontinuation, monitor patients with hepatitis B (risk of exacerbation of hepatitis).

### • RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose or increase dosage interval if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; consult product literature.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include candy.

### • PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Missed doses** If a dose is more than 12 hours late, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral solution

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Emtriva** (Gilead Sciences International Ltd)

Emtricitabine 10 mg per 1 ml Emtriva 10mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 170 ml [PoM] £39.53

#### Capsule

► **Emtriva** (Gilead Sciences International Ltd)

Emtricitabine 200 mg Emtriva 200mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £138.98

Combinations available: *Darunavir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide*, p. 424

## Emtricitabine with rilpivirine and tenofovir alafenamide

05-Jun-2017

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, emtricitabine p. 418, rilpivirine p. 415, tenofovir alafenamide p. 400.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**HIV infection in patients with plasma HIV-1 RNA concentration of 100 000 copies/mL or less (specialist use only)**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years (body-weight 35 kg and above): 1 tablet once daily

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: rilpivirine · tenofovir alafenamide

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · fatigue · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · nausea · skin reactions · sleep disorders · vomiting

► **Uncommon** Anaemia · angioedema · arthralgia · immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome

► **Frequency not known** Conjunctivitis · drug reaction with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms (DRESS) · eosinophilia · fever · osteonecrosis · QT interval prolongation · weight increased

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Systemic symptoms reported with severe skin reactions include fever, blisters, conjunctivitis, angioedema, elevated liver function tests, and eosinophilia.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution in moderate impairment (greater risk of hepatic side-effects); avoid in severe impairment—no information available.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid if creatinine clearance less than 30 mL/minute—no information available.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Vomiting Manufacturer advises if vomiting occurs within 4 hours of taking a dose, a replacement dose should be taken.

**Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be counselled on the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (October 2016) that emtricitabine with rilpivirine and tenofovir alafenamide (*Odefsey*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1), without known mutations associated with resistance to the non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor (NNRTI) class, tenofovir or emtricitabine, and with viral load HIV-1 RNA of 100 000 copies/mL or less.

#### All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (November 2016) that emtricitabine with rilpivirine and tenofovir alafenamide (*Odefsey*®) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales for the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus type 1, without known mutations associated with resistance to the non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor (NNRTI) class, tenofovir or emtricitabine, and with viral load HIV-1 RNA of 100 000 copies/mL or less.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 21

► **Odefsey** (Gilead Sciences International Ltd) ▼

**Rilpivirine (as Rilpivirine hydrochloride) 25 mg, Tenofovir alafenamide (as Tenofovir alafenamide fumarate) 25 mg, Emtricitabine 200 mg** Odefsey 200mg/25mg/25mg tablets | 30 tablet (PoM) £525.95

## Emtricitabine with tenofovir alafenamide

05-Jun-2017

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, emtricitabine p. 418, tenofovir alafenamide p. 400.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs (specialist use only)**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years (body-weight 35 kg and above): 200/10–200/25 mg once daily, dose is dependent on drug regimen—consult product literature

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

► Dose expressed as x/y mg emtricitabine/tenofovir alafenamide.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tenofovir alafenamide

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Abnormal dreams · diarrhoea · dizziness · fatigue · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting

► **Uncommon** Anaemia · arthralgia

► **Frequency not known** Angioedema · osteonecrosis

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution (greater risk of hepatic side-effects).

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid if creatinine clearance less than 30 mL/minute—limited information available.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be counselled on the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (August 2016) that emtricitabine with tenofovir alafenamide (*Descovy*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 in combination with other antiretroviral agents.

#### All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (September 2016) that emtricitabine with tenofovir alafenamide (*Descovy*®) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales for the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 in combination with other antiretroviral agents.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

► **Descovy** (Gilead Sciences International Ltd) ▼

**Tenofovir alafenamide (as Tenofovir alafenamide fumarate) 25 mg, Emtricitabine 200 mg** Descovy 200mg/25mg tablets | 30 tablet (PoM) £355.73

Tenofovir alafenamide (as Tenofovir alafenamide fumarate)  
10 mg, Emtricitabine 200 mg Descovy 200mg/10mg tablets |  
30 tablet [PoM] £355.73

## Emtricitabine with tenofovir disoproxil

29-May-2018

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, tenofovir disoproxil p. 421, emtricitabine p. 418.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### HIV-1 infection (initiated by a specialist)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 35 kg and above): 200/245 mg once daily

#### Pre-exposure prophylaxis of HIV-1 infection (initiated by a specialist)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 35 kg and above): 200/245 mg once daily

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Dose expressed as x/y mg emtricitabine/tenofovir disoproxil.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tenofovir disoproxil
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Patients with swallowing difficulties may disperse tablet in half a glass of water, orange juice, or grape juice (but bitter taste).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer emtricitabine with tenofovir tablets.  
**Missed doses** If a dose is more than 12 hours late, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- **Emtricitabine with tenofovir disoproxil (Non-proprietary)**  
Emtricitabine 200 mg, Tenofovir disoproxil (as Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate) 245 mg Emtricitabine 200mg / Tenofovir 245mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £106.72–£355.73 | 30 tablet [PoM] £355.73 (Hospital only)
- **Truvada** (Gilead Sciences International Ltd)  
Emtricitabine 200 mg, Tenofovir disoproxil (as Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate) 245 mg Truvada tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £355.73

F 415

## Lamivudine (3TC)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### EPIVIR<sup>®</sup> ORAL SOLUTION

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–2 months: 4 mg/kg twice daily
- Child 3 months–11 years (body-weight up to 14 kg): 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 150 mg), alternatively 8 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 300 mg)
- Child 3 months–11 years (body-weight 14–20 kg): 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 150 mg), alternatively 8 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 300 mg), alternatively 75 mg twice daily, alternatively 150 mg once daily

- Child 3 months–11 years (body-weight 21–29 kg): 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 150 mg), alternatively 8 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 300 mg), alternatively 75 mg daily, dose to be taken in the morning and 150 mg daily, dose to be taken in the evening, alternatively 225 mg once daily
- Child 3 months–11 years (body-weight 30 kg and above): 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 150 mg), alternatively 8 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 300 mg), alternatively 150 mg twice daily, alternatively 300 mg once daily
- Child 12–17 years: 150 mg twice daily, alternatively 300 mg once daily

#### EPIVIR<sup>®</sup> TABLETS

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–2 months: 4 mg/kg twice daily
- Child 3 months–11 years (body-weight up to 14 kg): 4 mg/kg twice daily, alternatively 8 mg/kg once daily
- Child 3 months–11 years (body-weight 14–20 kg): 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 150 mg), alternatively 8 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 300 mg), alternatively 75 mg twice daily, alternatively 150 mg once daily
- Child 3 months–11 years (body-weight 21–29 kg): 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 150 mg), alternatively 8 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 300 mg), alternatively 75 mg daily, dose to be taken in the morning and 150 mg daily, dose to be taken in the evening, alternatively 225 mg once daily
- Child 3 months–11 years (body-weight 30 kg and above): 4 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 150 mg), alternatively 8 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 300 mg), alternatively 150 mg twice daily, alternatively 300 mg once daily
- Child 12–17 years: 150 mg twice daily, alternatively 300 mg once daily

#### ZEFFIX<sup>®</sup>

**Chronic hepatitis B infection either with compensated liver disease (with evidence of viral replication and histology of active liver inflammation or fibrosis) when first-line treatments cannot be used, or (in combination with another antiviral drug without cross-resistance to lamivudine) with decompensated liver disease**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–11 years: 3 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 100 mg), children receiving lamivudine for concomitant HIV infection should continue to receive lamivudine in a dose appropriate for HIV infection
- Child 12–17 years: 100 mg once daily, patients receiving lamivudine for concomitant HIV infection should continue to receive lamivudine in a dose appropriate for HIV infection

### ● UNLICENSED USE

**EPIVIR<sup>®</sup> ORAL SOLUTION** Not licensed for use in children under 3 months.

**EPIVIR<sup>®</sup> TABLETS** Not licensed for use in children under 3 months.

**ZEFFIX<sup>®</sup>** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CAUTIONS** Recurrent hepatitis in patients with chronic hepatitis B may occur on discontinuation of lamivudine

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: lamivudine

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Hepatitis aggravated · muscle cramps · myopathy
- **Rare or very rare** Angioedema
- **Frequency not known** Abdominal discomfort · malaise · respiratory tract infection · throat complaints

- **BREAST FEEDING** Can be used with caution in women infected with chronic hepatitis B alone, providing that adequate measures are taken to prevent hepatitis B infection in infants.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; consult product literature.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** When treating chronic hepatitis B with lamivudine, monitor liver function tests every 3 months, and viral markers of hepatitis B every 3–6 months, more frequently in patients with advanced liver disease or following transplantation (monitoring to continue for at least 1 year after discontinuation—recurrent hepatitis may occur on discontinuation).
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include banana and strawberry.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sucrose

► **Epivir** (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd)

**Lamivudine 10 mg per 1 mL** Epivir 50mg/5ml oral solution | 240 mL [PoM] £39.01

##### Tablet

► **Epivir** (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd)

**Lamivudine 150 mg** Epivir 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £143.32  
DT = £121.82

**Lamivudine 300 mg** Epivir 300mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £157.51  
DT = £133.89

► **Zeffix** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Lamivudine 100 mg** Zeffix 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £78.09  
DT = £73.81

F 415

01-Sep-2016

## Stavudine (d4T)

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs when no suitable alternative available and when prescribed for shortest period possible**

► BY MOUTH

- Child (body-weight up to 30 kg): 1 mg/kg twice daily, to be taken preferably at least 1 hour before food
- Child (body-weight 30–59 kg): 30 mg twice daily, to be taken preferably at least 1 hour before food
- Child (body-weight 60 kg and above): 40 mg twice daily, to be taken preferably at least 1 hour before food

- **UNLICENSED USE** Capsules not licensed for use in children under 3 months.

- **CAUTIONS** Excessive alcohol intake · history of pancreatitis · history of peripheral neuropathy · lactic acidosis (especially when used in combination with didanosine)—use only if alternative regimens are not suitable

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Lactic acidosis** Lactic acidosis associated with hepatomegaly and hepatic steatosis has been reported with stavudine. Use with caution in patients with hepatomegaly, hepatitis, or other risk factors for liver disease and hepatic steatosis (including obesity and alcohol abuse). Discontinue treatment if symptoms of hyperlactataemia, lactic acidosis, progressive hepatomegaly or rapid deterioration of liver function become apparent.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: stavudine

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Depression · drowsiness · dyspepsia · hyperlactataemia · lipotrophy · nerve

disorders · paraesthesia · peripheral neuropathy (switch to another antiretroviral if peripheral neuropathy develops) · sleep disorders · thinking abnormal

- **Uncommon** Anxiety · arthralgia · emotional lability · gynaecomastia · hepatic disorders · urticaria
- **Rare or very rare** Diabetes mellitus · hyperglycaemia · muscle weakness · neutropenia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Metabolic effects may occur with stavudine; plasma lipids and blood glucose concentrations should be measured routinely.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Risk of peripheral neuropathy.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose to 50% if estimated glomerular filtration rate 25–50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>; reduce dose to 25% if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 25 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include cherry.
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Stavudine (especially in combination with didanosine) is associated with a higher risk of lipotrophy and should be used only if alternative regimens are not suitable; it is considered to be less suitable for prescribing.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral solution

► **Zerit** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Stavudine 1 mg per 1 mL** Zerit 1mg/ml oral solution | 200 mL [PoM] £22.94 (Hospital only)

##### Capsule

► **Zerit** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Stavudine 20 mg** Zerit 20mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £139.46 (Hospital only)

**Stavudine 30 mg** Zerit 30mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £146.25 (Hospital only)

**Stavudine 40 mg** Zerit 40mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £150.66 (Hospital only)

F 415

## Tenofovir disoproxil

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs when first-line nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors cannot be used because of resistance or contra-indications**

► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–17 years: 6.5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 245 mg)
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 17–21 kg): 123 mg once daily
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 22–27 kg): 163 mg once daily
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 28–34 kg): 204 mg once daily
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 35 kg and above): 245 mg once daily

**Chronic hepatitis B infection with compensated liver disease (with evidence of viral replication, and histology of active liver inflammation or fibrosis)**

► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 35 kg and above): 245 mg once daily

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- 7.5 scoops of granules contains approx. 245 mg tenofovir disoproxil (as fumarate).

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tenofovir disoproxil



### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal distension · flatulence
- ▶ **Uncommon** Proximal renal tubulopathy
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Acute tubular necrosis · angioedema · hepatitis · nephritis · nephrogenic diabetes insipidus · renal impairment

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

### • MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Test renal function and serum phosphate before treatment, then every 4 weeks (more frequently if at increased risk of renal impairment) for 1 year and then every 3 months, interrupt treatment if renal function deteriorates or serum phosphate decreases.
- ▶ When treating chronic hepatitis B with tenofovir, monitor liver function tests every 3 months and viral markers for hepatitis B every 3–6 months during treatment (continue monitoring for at least 1 year after discontinuation—recurrent hepatitis may occur on discontinuation).

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** *Granules*: mix 1 scoop of granules with 1 tablespoon of soft food (e.g. yoghurt, apple sauce) and take immediately without chewing. Do not mix granules with liquids.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer tenofovir granules. **Missed doses** If a dose is more than 12 hours late, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- ▶ **Viread** (Gilead Sciences International Ltd)

Tenofovir disoproxil (as Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate) 33 mg per 1 gram Viread 33mg/g granules | 60 gram [PoM] £54.50

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- ▶ **Tenofovir disoproxil (Non-proprietary)**

Tenofovir disoproxil 245 mg Tenofovir 245mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £61.32–£204.39

- ▶ **Viread** (Gilead Sciences International Ltd)

Tenofovir disoproxil (as Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate)

123 mg Viread 123mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £102.60

Tenofovir disoproxil (as Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate)

163 mg Viread 163mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £135.98

Tenofovir disoproxil (as Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate)

204 mg Viread 204mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £170.19

Tenofovir disoproxil 245 mg Viread 245mg tablets |

30 tablet [PoM] £204.39

## Zidovudine

(Azidothymidine; AZT)

01-Sep-2016

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child: 180 mg/m<sup>2</sup> twice daily (max. per dose 300 mg)
- ▶ Child (body-weight 8–13 kg): 100 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child (body-weight 14–20 kg): 100 mg, to be taken in the morning and 200 mg, to be taken in the evening
- ▶ Child (body-weight 21–27 kg): 200 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child (body-weight 28–29 kg): 200–250 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child (body-weight 30 kg and above): 250–300 mg twice daily

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs (dose expressed in mg/kg)

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child (body-weight 4–8 kg): 12 mg/kg twice daily

- ▶ Child (body-weight 9–29 kg): 9 mg/kg twice daily

#### Prevention of maternal-fetal HIV transmission

- ▶ **BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

- ▶ Child: Seek specialist advice (combination therapy preferred) (consult local protocol)

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs in patients temporarily unable to take zidovudine by mouth

- ▶ **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

- ▶ Child 3 months–11 years: 60–80 mg/m<sup>2</sup> every 6 hours usually for not more than 2 weeks, dose approximating to 9–12 mg/kg twice daily by mouth
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 0.8–1 mg/kg every 4 hours usually for not more than 2 weeks, dose approximating to 1.2–1.5 mg/kg every 4 hours by mouth

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Abnormally low haemoglobin concentration (consult product literature) · abnormally low neutrophil counts (consult product literature) · neonates with hyperbilirubinaemia requiring treatment other than phototherapy, or with raised transaminase (consult product literature)

- **CAUTIONS** Lactic acidosis · risk of haematological toxicity particularly with high dose and advanced disease · vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency (increased risk of neutropenia)

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ Lactic acidosis Lactic acidosis associated with hepatomegaly and hepatic steatosis has been reported with zidovudine. Use with caution in patients with hepatomegaly, hepatitis, or other risk factors for liver disease and hepatic steatosis (including obesity and alcohol abuse). Discontinue treatment if symptoms of hyperlactataemia, lactic acidosis, progressive hepatomegaly or rapid deterioration of liver function become apparent.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: zidovudine

### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Leucopenia · malaise · neutropenia
- ▶ **Uncommon** Bone marrow disorders · dyspnoea · fever · flatulence · generalised pain · myopathy
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Alertness decreased · anxiety · cardiomyopathy · chest pain · chills · cough · depression · drowsiness · dyspepsia · gynaecomastia · hepatic disorders · hyperhidrosis · influenza like illness · insomnia · nail discolouration · oral discolouration · paraesthesia · pure red cell aplasia · seizure · skin reactions · taste altered · urinary frequency increased
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Lipotrophy

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Anaemia and myelosuppression** If anaemia or myelosuppression occur, reduce dose or interrupt treatment according to product literature, or consider other treatment.

**Lipodystrophy syndrome** Metabolic effects may occur with zidovudine; plasma lipids and blood glucose concentrations should be measured routinely.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Accumulation may occur.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—consult product literature.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor full blood count after 4 weeks of treatment, then every 3 months.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intermittent intravenous infusion, dilute to a concentration of 2 mg/mL or 4 mg/mL with Glucose 5% and give over 1 hour.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The abbreviation AZT which is sometimes used for zidovudine has also been used for another drug.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for infusion

- ▶ **Retrovir** (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd)  
Zidovudine 10 mg per 1 ml Retrovir IV 200mg/20ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 5 vial [PoM] £52.48

#### Oral solution

- ▶ **Retrovir** (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd)  
Zidovudine 10 mg per 1 ml Retrovir 50mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 200 ml [PoM] £20.91

#### Capsule

- ▶ **Zidovudine (Non-proprietary)**  
Zidovudine 100 mg Zidovudine 100mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £53.31  
Zidovudine 250 mg Zidovudine 250mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £13.32-£96.36
- ▶ **Retrovir** (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd)  
Zidovudine 100 mg Retrovir 100mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £104.54  
Zidovudine 250 mg Retrovir 250mg capsules | 40 capsule [PoM] £104.54

## Zidovudine with lamivudine

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, zidovudine p. 422, lamivudine p. 420.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child (body-weight 14–20 kg): 0.5 tablet twice daily
- ▶ Child (body-weight 21–29 kg): 0.5 tablet daily, to be given in the morning and 1 tablet daily, to be given in the evening
- ▶ Child (body-weight 30 kg and above): 1 tablet twice daily

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: lamivudine · zidovudine

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

**COMBIVIR® TABLETS** Tablets may be crushed and mixed with semi-solid food or liquid just before administration.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

- ▶ **Zidovudine with lamivudine (Non-proprietary)**  
Lamivudine 150 mg, Zidovudine 300 mg Zidovudine 300mg / Lamivudine 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £240.10-£255.10
- ▶ **Combivir** (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd)  
Lamivudine 150 mg, Zidovudine 300 mg Combivir 150mg/300mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £300.12

## ANTIVIRALS > PROTEASE INHIBITORS, HIV

## Protease inhibitors

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **CAUTIONS** Haemophilia (increased risk of bleeding)

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · angioedema · anxiety · appetite abnormal · arthralgia · asthenia · diabetes mellitus · diarrhoea · dizziness · dry mouth · dyslipidaemia · dyspnoea · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · headache · hepatic disorders · hypersensitivity · hypertension · malaise · muscle complaints · nausea · neutropenia · oral ulceration · pancreatitis · peripheral neuropathy · seizure · skin reactions · sleep disorders · taste altered · vomiting

- ▶ **Uncommon** Drowsiness · immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome · osteonecrosis · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · weight increased

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in patients with chronic hepatitis B or C (increased risk of hepatic side-effects).

▮ above

## Atazanavir

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs—with low-dose ritonavir

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 6–17 years (body-weight 15–19 kg): 150 mg once daily
- ▶ Child 6–17 years (body-weight 20–39 kg): 200 mg once daily
- ▶ Child 6–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 300 mg once daily

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac conduction disorders · electrolyte disturbances · predisposition to QT interval prolongation

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: HIV-protease inhibitors

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Hepatic disorders

- ▶ **Uncommon** Abnormal dreams · chest pain · depression · disorientation · drug reaction with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms (DRESS) · gallbladder disorders · gastritis · gynaecomastia · haematuria · memory loss · myopathy · nephritis tubulointerstitial · nephrolithiasis · proteinuria · syncope · torsade de pointes · urinary frequency increased

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Gait abnormal · oedema · palpitations · QT interval prolongation · renal pain · vasodilation

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Mild to moderate rash occurs commonly, usually within the first 3 weeks of therapy. Severe rash occurs less frequently and may be accompanied by systemic symptoms. Discontinue if severe rash develops.

- **PREGNANCY** Theoretical risk of hyperbilirubinaemia in neonate if used at term.

**Monitoring** In pregnancy, monitor viral load and plasma-atazanavir concentration during third trimester.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in mild impairment; avoid in moderate to severe impairment.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 21

- ▶ **Reyataz** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Atazanavir (as Atazanavir sulfate) 150 mg** Reyataz 150mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £303.38 (Hospital only)
- Atazanavir (as Atazanavir sulfate) 200 mg** Reyataz 200mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £303.38 (Hospital only)
- Atazanavir (as Atazanavir sulfate) 300 mg** Reyataz 300mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £303.38 (Hospital only)

▮ above

## Darunavir

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs in patients previously treated with antiretroviral therapy—with low-dose ritonavir

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight 15–29 kg): 375 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight 30–39 kg): 450 mg twice daily

continued →

- ▶ Child 3–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 600 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 800 mg once daily, once daily dose only to be used if no resistance to darunavir, if plasma HIV-RNA concentration less than 100 000 copies/mL, and if CD4 cell count greater than 100 cells  $\times 10^6$ /litre

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs in patients not previously treated with antiretroviral therapy—with low-dose ritonavir

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 800 mg once daily

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: HIV-protease inhibitors

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Hyperlipidaemia · skin reactions · sleep disorders
- ▶ **Uncommon** Abdominal discomfort · angina pectoris · arrhythmias · burping · chest pain · concentration impaired · confusion · constipation · cough · depression · dry eye · eye erythema · feeling hot · flushing · gastritis · gout · gynaecomastia · haemorrhage · hepatic disorders · herpes simplex · hyperglycaemia · hypothyroidism · lethargy · leucopenia · memory loss · mood altered · muscle weakness · myocardial infarction · nail discolouration · nephrolithiasis · oral disorders · osteoporosis · pain · peripheral oedema · polydipsia · QT interval prolongation · renal impairment · sensation abnormal · sexual dysfunction · sweat changes · throat irritation · thrombocytopenia · urinary disorders · urine abnormalities · vertigo

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Arthritis · chills · feeling abnormal · joint stiffness · musculoskeletal stiffness · palpitations · restlessness · rhinorrhoea · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · syncope · taste loss · visual impairment
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Mild to moderate rash occurs commonly, usually within the first 4 weeks of therapy and resolves without stopping treatment. Severe skin rash (including Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis) occurs less frequently and may be accompanied by fever, malaise, arthralgia, myalgia, oral lesions, conjunctivitis, hepatitis, or eosinophilia; treatment should be stopped if this develops.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Use with caution in patients with sulfonamide sensitivity.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk; if required, use the twice daily dose regimen.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in mild to moderate impairment; avoid in severe impairment—no information available.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor liver function before and during treatment.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include strawberry.

#### ● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Missed doses** If a dose is more than 6 hours late on the twice daily regimen (or more than 12 hours late on the once daily regimen), the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- ▶ **Prezista** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

Darunavir (as Darunavir ethanolate) 100 mg per 1 ml Prezista 100mg/ml oral suspension sugar-free | 200 ml [PoM] £248.17

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- ▶ **Prezista** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

Darunavir (as Darunavir ethanolate) 75 mg Prezista 75mg tablets | 480 tablet [PoM] £446.70

Darunavir (as Darunavir ethanolate) 150 mg Prezista 150mg tablets | 240 tablet [PoM] £446.70

Darunavir (as Darunavir ethanolate) 400 mg Prezista 400mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £297.80

Darunavir (as Darunavir ethanolate) 600 mg Prezista 600mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £446.70

Darunavir (as Darunavir ethanolate) 800 mg Prezista 800mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £297.80

## Darunavir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide

06-Feb-2018

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, darunavir p. 423, cobicistat, emtricitabine p. 418, tenofovir alafenamide p. 400.

#### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

##### HIV infection (initiated by a specialist)

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 1 tablet once daily

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cobicistat · HIV-protease inhibitors · tenofovir alafenamide

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—no information available.

#### ● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be counselled on the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness.

#### ● **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

##### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

SMC No. 1290/18

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (January 2018) that darunavir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide (*Symtuza*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) infection in adults and adolescents (aged 12 years and older with body weight at least 40 kg).

##### All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions

AWMSG No. 2418

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (March 2018) that darunavir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide (*Symtuza*®) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales for the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) infection in adults and adolescents (aged 12 years and older with body weight at least 40 kg).

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- ▶ **Symtuza** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd) ▼

Tenofovir alafenamide (as Tenofovir alafenamide fumarate) 10 mg, Cobicistat 150 mg, Emtricitabine 200 mg, Darunavir (as Darunavir ethanolate) 800 mg Symtuza 800mg/150mg/200mg/10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £672.97

## Fosamprenavir

- **DRUG ACTION** Fosamprenavir is a pro-drug of amprenavir.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs—with low-dose ritonavir

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 25–39 kg): 18 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 700 mg)
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 700 mg twice daily

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- 700 mg fosamprenavir is equivalent to approximately 600 mg amprenavir.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: HIV-protease inhibitors

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Oral paraesthesia
- **Frequency not known** Rash erythematous

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Rash may occur, usually in the second week of therapy; discontinue permanently if severe rash with systemic or allergic symptoms or, mucosal involvement; if rash mild or moderate, may continue without interruption—usually resolves and may respond to antihistamines.

- **PREGNANCY** Toxicity in *animal* studies; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in mild impairment.

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose in moderate to severe impairment.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** In children, oral suspension should be taken with food.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include grape, bubblegum, or peppermint.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer fosamprenavir oral suspension.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral suspension

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

- **Telzir** (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd)

Fosamprenavir (as Fosamprenavir calcium) 50 mg per 1 ml Telzir 50mg/ml oral suspension | 225 ml (PoM) £69.06

#### Tablet

- **Telzir** (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd)

Fosamprenavir (as Fosamprenavir calcium) 700 mg Telzir 700mg tablets | 60 tablet (PoM) £258.97

## Lopinavir with ritonavir

19-Mar-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs

##### ► BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

- Child 2–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg and body surface area 0.5–0.7 m<sup>2</sup>): 200/50 mg twice daily
- Child 2–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg and body surface area 0.8–1.1 m<sup>2</sup>): 300/75 mg twice daily
- Child 2–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above and body surface area 1.2 m<sup>2</sup> and above): 400/100 mg twice daily

##### ► BY MOUTH USING ORAL SOLUTION

- Child 14 days–5 months: 3.75 mL/m<sup>2</sup> twice daily
- Child 6 months–17 years: 2.9 mL/m<sup>2</sup> twice daily (max. per dose 5 mL)

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Oral solution contains 400 mg lopinavir, 100 mg ritonavir/5 mL (or 80 mg lopinavir, 20 mg ritonavir/mL).

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac conduction disorders · pancreatitis · structural heart disease

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: HIV-protease inhibitors

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · increased risk of infection · leucopenia · lymphadenopathy · menstrual cycle irregularities · migraine · muscle weakness · myopathy · night sweats · pain · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions
- **Uncommon** Abnormal dreams · atherosclerosis · atrioventricular block · cholangitis · constipation · deep vein thrombosis · haemorrhage · hepatic disorders · hyperbilirubinaemia · hypogonadism · myocardial infarction · nephritis · stomatitis · stroke · taste loss · tinnitus · tremor · tricuspid valve incompetence · vasculitis · vertigo · visual impairment

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Signs and symptoms suggestive of pancreatitis (including raised serum lipase) should be evaluated—discontinue if pancreatitis diagnosed.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid oral solution due to high alcohol and propylene glycol content; use tablets only if potential benefit outweighs risk (toxicity in *animal* studies).

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid oral solution due to propylene glycol content; manufacturer advises avoid tablets in severe impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid oral solution due to high propylene glycol content.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Monitor liver function before and during treatment.
- With oral solution, monitor for signs of alcohol and propylene glycol toxicity (particularly in infants).

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** With oral solution, manufacturer advises high alcohol (42 % v/v) and propylene glycol content—consider total amounts from all medicines that are to be given to infants in order to avoid toxicity; caution in patients for which consumption may be harmful.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Oral solution tastes bitter.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

SMC No. 1302/18

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (February 2018) that lopinavir with ritonavir oral solution (*Kaletra*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland in combination with other antiretrovirals for the treatment of HIV-1 infected children aged from 14 days up to 2 years.

SMC No. 326/06

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (November 2006) that lopinavir with ritonavir tablet (*Kaletra*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland in combination with other antiretrovirals for the treatment of HIV-1 infected adults and children above the age of 2 years.

#### All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions

AWMSG No. 3557

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (March 2018) that lopinavir with ritonavir oral solution (*Kaletra*®) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales in combination with other antiretroviral medicinal products for the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV-1) infected children aged from 14 days to less than 2 years old.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol, propylene glycol

► **Kaletra** (AbbVie Ltd)

Ritonavir 20 mg per 1 ml, Lopinavir 80 mg per 1 ml  
80mg/20mg/1ml oral solution | 120 ml [PoM] £122.96 |  
300 ml [PoM] £307.39

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

► **Kaletra** (AbbVie Ltd)

Ritonavir 25 mg, Lopinavir 100 mg Kaletra 100mg/25mg tablets |  
60 tablet [PoM] £76.85  
Ritonavir 50 mg, Lopinavir 200 mg Kaletra 200mg/50mg tablets |  
120 tablet [PoM] £285.41

F 423

## Ritonavir

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs (high-dose ritonavir)

► BY MOUTH

► Child 2-17 years: Initially 250 mg/m<sup>2</sup> twice daily, increased in steps of 50 mg/m<sup>2</sup> every 2–3 days; increased to 350 mg/m<sup>2</sup> twice daily (max. per dose 600 mg twice daily), tolerability of this regimen is poor

#### Low-dose ritonavir to increase the effect of atazanavir

► BY MOUTH

► Child 6-17 years (body-weight 15-19 kg): 80–100 mg once daily  
► Child 6-17 years (body-weight 20 kg and above): 100 mg once daily

#### Low-dose ritonavir to increase the effect of darunavir

► BY MOUTH

► Child 3-17 years (body-weight 15-29 kg): 50 mg twice daily  
► Child 3-17 years (body-weight 30-39 kg): 60 mg twice daily  
► Child 3-17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 100 mg twice daily  
► Child 12-17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 100 mg once daily for use in patients taking darunavir once daily

#### Low-dose ritonavir to increase the effect of fosamprenavir

► BY MOUTH

► Child 6-17 years (body-weight 25-32 kg): 3 mg/kg twice daily  
► Child 6-17 years (body-weight 33 kg and above): 100 mg twice daily

#### Low-dose ritonavir to increase the effect of tipranavir

► BY MOUTH

► Child 2-11 years: 150 mg/m<sup>2</sup> twice daily (max. per dose 200 mg)  
► Child 12-17 years: 200 mg twice daily

● **CAUTIONS** Cardiac conduction disorders · pancreatitis · structural heart disease

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: HIV-protease inhibitors

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Back pain · concentration impaired · confusion · cough · dehydration · feeling hot · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal haemorrhage · gout · hypotension · menorrhagia · myopathy · oedema · oral paraesthesia · oropharyngeal pain · paraesthesia · peripheral coldness · pharyngitis · renal impairment · skin reactions · syncope · thrombocytopenia · urinary frequency increased · vision blurred  
► **Uncommon** Myocardial infarction

► **Rare or very rare** Hyperglycaemia · toxic epidermal necrolysis

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Signs and symptoms suggestive of pancreatitis (including raised serum lipase) should be evaluated—discontinue if pancreatitis diagnosed.

### ● PREGNANCY

**Dose adjustments** Only use low-dose booster to increase the effect of other protease inhibitors.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in decompensated liver disease; in severe impairment without decompensation, use 'booster' doses with caution (avoid treatment doses).

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Bitter taste of oral solution can be masked by mixing with chocolate milk; do not mix with water, measuring cup must be dry.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer ritonavir oral solution.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21, 25

► **Norvir** (AbbVie Ltd)

Ritonavir 100 mg Norvir 100mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £19.44

F 423

## Tipranavir

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### HIV infection resistant to other protease inhibitors, in combination with other antiretroviral drugs in patients previously treated with antiretrovirals—with low-dose ritonavir

► BY MOUTH USING CAPSULES

► Child 12-17 years: 500 mg twice daily

► BY MOUTH USING ORAL SOLUTION

► Child 2-11 years: 375 mg/m<sup>2</sup> twice daily (max. per dose 500 mg)

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

► The bioavailability of tipranavir oral solution is higher than that of the capsules; the oral solution is not interchangeable with the capsules on a milligram-for-milligram basis.

● **CAUTIONS** Patients at risk of increased bleeding from trauma, surgery or other pathological conditions

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: HIV-protease inhibitors

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Hyperlipidaemia  
► **Uncommon** Exanthema · hepatic disorders · hyperamylasaemia · hyperglycaemia · influenza like illness · renal failure · thrombocytopenia  
► **Rare or very rare** Dehydration · hyperbilirubinaemia · intracranial haemorrhage  
► **Frequency not known** Bleeding tendency

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Potentially life-threatening hepatotoxicity reported. Discontinue if signs or symptoms of hepatitis develop or if liver-function abnormality develops (consult product literature).

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—toxicity in animal studies.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in mild impairment; avoid in moderate or severe impairment—no information available.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor liver function before treatment then every 2 weeks for 1 month, then every 3 months.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include toffee and mint.



- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be told to observe the oral solution for crystallisation; the bottle should be replaced if more than a thin layer of crystals form (doses should continue to be taken at the normal time until the bottle is replaced).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 21

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Vitamin e

► **Apivus** (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)

**Tipranavir 100 mg per 1 ml** Apivus 100mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 95 ml [PoM] £129.65

##### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 21

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Ethanol

► **Apivus** (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)

**Tipranavir 250 mg** Apivus 250mg capsules | 120 capsule [PoM] £441.00

## ANTIVIRALS > OTHER

### Maraviroc

- **DRUG ACTION** Maraviroc is an antagonist of the CCR5 chemokine receptor.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**CCR5-tropic HIV infection in combination with other antiretroviral drugs in patients previously treated with antiretrovirals**

► BY MOUTH

► Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: maraviroc
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · anaemia · appetite decreased · asthenia · depression · diarrhoea · flatulence · headache · insomnia · nausea · rash
  - **Uncommon** Hyperbilirubinaemia · increased risk of infection · myopathy · postural hypotension · proteinuria · renal failure · seizure
  - **Rare or very rare** Angina pectoris · granulocytopenia · hepatic disorders · metastases · neoplasms · pancytopenia · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
  - **Frequency not known** Fever · hypersensitivity · immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome · organ dysfunction · osteonecrosis

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Osteonecrosis has been reported in patients with advanced HIV disease or following long-term exposure to combination antiretroviral therapy.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—toxicity in *animal* studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in hepatic impairment, including patients with chronic hepatitis B or C.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** If estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 80 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>, consult product literature.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

► **Celsentri** (ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd)

**Maraviroc 25 mg** Celsentri 25mg tablets | 120 tablet [PoM] £147.09

**Maraviroc 75 mg** Celsentri 75mg tablets | 120 tablet [PoM] £441.27

**Maraviroc 150 mg** Celsentri 150mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £519.14

**Maraviroc 300 mg** Celsentri 300mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £519.14

## 6.5 Influenza

### Influenza

#### Management

Oseltamivir p. 428 and zanamivir p. 429 are most effective for the treatment of influenza if started within a few hours of the onset of symptoms; oseltamivir is licensed for use within 48 hours of the first symptoms while zanamivir is licensed for use within 36 hours of the first symptoms. In otherwise healthy individuals they reduce the duration of symptoms by about 1–1.5 days.

Oseltamivir and zanamivir are licensed for post-exposure prophylaxis of influenza when influenza is circulating in the community. Oseltamivir should be given within 48 hours of exposure to influenza while zanamivir should be given within 36 hours of exposure to influenza. However, in children with severe influenza or in those who are immunocompromised, antivirals may still be effective after this time if viral shedding continues [unlicensed use]. Oseltamivir and zanamivir are also licensed for use in exceptional circumstances (e.g. when vaccination does not cover the infecting strain) to prevent influenza in an epidemic.

There is evidence that some strains of influenza A virus have reduced susceptibility to oseltamivir, but may retain susceptibility to zanamivir. Resistance to oseltamivir may be greater in severely immunocompromised children.

Zanamivir should be reserved for patients who are severely immunocompromised, or when oseltamivir cannot be used, or when resistance to oseltamivir is suspected. For those unable to use the dry powder for inhalation, zanamivir is available as a solution that can be administered by nebuliser or intravenously [unlicensed].

Information on pandemic influenza, avian influenza, and swine influenza may be found at [www.gov.uk/phe](http://www.gov.uk/phe).

Immunisation against influenza is recommended for persons at high risk, and to reduce transmission of infection.

#### Oseltamivir in children under 1 year of age

Data on the use of oseltamivir in children under 1 year of age is limited. Furthermore, oseltamivir may be ineffective in neonates because they may not be able to metabolise oseltamivir to its active form. However, oseltamivir can be used (under specialist supervision) for the treatment or post-exposure prophylaxis of influenza in children under 1 year of age. The Department of Health has advised (May 2009) that during a pandemic, treatment with oseltamivir can be overseen by healthcare professionals experienced in assessing children.

Amantadine hydrochloride is licensed for prophylaxis and treatment of influenza A in children over 10 years of age, but it is no longer recommended.

## ANTIVIRALS &gt; NEURAMINIDASE INHIBITORS

## Oseltamivir

20-Jul-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Reduces replication of influenza A and B viruses by inhibiting viral neuraminidase.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

## Prevention of influenza

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 3 mg/kg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis.
- Child 1–11 months: 3 mg/kg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis
- Child 1–12 years (body-weight 10–15 kg): 30 mg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis; for up to 6 weeks during an epidemic
- Child 1–12 years (body-weight 15–23 kg): 45 mg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis; for up to 6 weeks during an epidemic
- Child 1–12 years (body-weight 23–40 kg): 60 mg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis; for up to 6 weeks during an epidemic
- Child 1–12 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 75 mg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis; for up to 6 weeks during an epidemic
- Child 13–17 years: 75 mg once daily for 10 days for post-exposure prophylaxis; for up to 6 weeks during an epidemic

## Treatment of influenza

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 3 mg/kg twice daily for 5 days.
- Child 1–11 months: 3 mg/kg twice daily for 5 days
- Child 1–12 years (body-weight 10–15 kg): 30 mg twice daily for 5 days
- Child 1–12 years (body-weight 15–23 kg): 45 mg twice daily for 5 days
- Child 1–12 years (body-weight 23–40 kg): 60 mg twice daily for 5 days
- Child 1–12 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 75 mg twice daily for 5 days
- Child 13–17 years: 75 mg twice daily for 5 days

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in premature infants.
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - Common or very common Dyspepsia
  - Uncommon Skin reactions
- **PREGNANCY** Although safety data are limited, oseltamivir can be used in women who are pregnant when the potential benefit outweighs the risk (e.g. during a pandemic). Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk (e.g. during a pandemic).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Although safety data are limited, oseltamivir can be used in women who are breast-feeding when the potential benefit outweighs the risk (e.g. during a pandemic). Oseltamivir is the preferred drug in women who are breast-feeding. Amount probably too small to be harmful; use only if potential benefit outweighs risk (e.g. during a pandemic).
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid for treatment and prevention if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Dose adjustments** For treatment, use 40% of normal dose twice daily if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> (40% of normal dose once daily if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>).

For prevention, use 40% of normal dose once daily if estimated glomerular filtration rate

30–60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> (40% of normal dose every 48 hours if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>).

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** If suspension not available, capsules can be opened and the contents mixed with a small amount of sweetened food, such as sugar water or chocolate syrup, just before administration.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include tutti-frutti.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Medicines for Children leaflet: Oseltamivir for influenza (flu) [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/oseltamivir-for-influenza](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/oseltamivir-for-influenza)
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

## NICE decisions

- Oseltamivir, zanamivir, and amantadine for prophylaxis of influenza (September 2008) NICE TA158  
Oseltamivir is **not** a substitute for vaccination, which remains the most effective way of preventing illness from influenza.
- Oseltamivir is **not** recommended for seasonal prophylaxis against influenza.
- When influenza is circulating in the community, oseltamivir is an option recommended (in accordance with UK licensing) for post-exposure prophylaxis in at-risk patients who are not effectively protected by influenza vaccine, and who have been in close contact with someone suffering from influenza-like illness in the same household or residential setting. Oseltamivir should be given within 48 hours of exposure to influenza. (National surveillance schemes, including those run by Public Health England, should be used to indicate when influenza is circulating in the community.)
- During local outbreaks of influenza-like illness, when there is a high level of certainty that influenza is present, oseltamivir may be used for post-exposure prophylaxis in at-risk patients (regardless of influenza vaccination) living in long-term residential or nursing homes.

At risk patients include those aged 65 years or older or those who have one or more of the following conditions:

- chronic respiratory disease (including asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease);
- chronic heart disease;
- chronic renal disease;
- chronic liver disease;
- chronic neurological disease;
- immunosuppression;
- diabetes mellitus.

The Department of Health in England has advised (November 2010 and April 2011) that 'at risk patients' also includes patients under 65 years of age who are at risk of developing medical complications from influenza (treatment only) or women who are pregnant.

This guidance does not cover the circumstances of a pandemic, an impending pandemic, or a widespread epidemic of a new strain of influenza to which there is little or no immunity in the community.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta158](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta158)

- Oseltamivir, zanamivir, and amantadine for treatment of influenza (February 2009) NICE TA168  
Oseltamivir is **not** a substitute for vaccination, which remains the most effective way of preventing illness from influenza.
- When influenza is circulating in the community, oseltamivir is an option recommended (in accordance with UK licensing) for the treatment of influenza in at-risk patients who can start treatment within 48 hours of the onset of symptoms. (National surveillance schemes, including those run by Public Health England, should be

used to indicate when influenza is circulating in the community.)

- During local outbreaks of influenza-like illness, when there is a high level of certainty that influenza is present, oseltamivir may be used for treatment in at-risk patients living in long-term residential or nursing homes.

At risk patients include those aged over 65 years or those who have one or more of the following conditions:

- chronic respiratory disease (including asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease);
- chronic heart disease;
- chronic renal disease;
- chronic liver disease;
- chronic neurological disease;
- immunosuppression;
- diabetes mellitus.

The Department of Health in England has advised (November 2010 and April 2011) that 'at risk patients' also includes patients under 65 years of age who are at risk of developing medical complications from influenza (treatment only) or women who are pregnant.

This guidance does not cover the circumstances of a pandemic, an impending pandemic, or a widespread epidemic of a new strain of influenza to which there is little or no immunity in the community.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta168](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta168)

**NHS restrictions** *Tamiflu*® is not prescribable in NHS primary care except for the treatment and prophylaxis of influenza as indicated in the NICE guidance; endorse prescription 'SLS'.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

##### ▶ Oseltamivir (Non-proprietary)

Oseltamivir (as Oseltamivir phosphate) 15 mg per 1 ml Oseltamivir 15mg/ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 20 ml [PoM] £10.00

##### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sorbitol

##### ▶ Tamiflu (Roche Products Ltd)

Oseltamivir (as Oseltamivir phosphate) 6 mg per 1 ml Tamiflu 6mg/ml oral suspension sugar-free | 65 ml [PoM] £10.27

##### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

##### ▶ Tamiflu (Roche Products Ltd)

Oseltamivir (as Oseltamivir phosphate) 30 mg Tamiflu 30mg capsules | 10 capsule [PoM] £7.71  
Oseltamivir (as Oseltamivir phosphate) 45 mg Tamiflu 45mg capsules | 10 capsule [PoM] £15.41  
Oseltamivir (as Oseltamivir phosphate) 75 mg Tamiflu 75mg capsules | 10 capsule [PoM] £15.41

## Zanamivir

- **DRUG ACTION** Reduces replication of influenza A and B viruses by inhibiting viral neuraminidase.

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Post-exposure prophylaxis of influenza

###### ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER

- ▶ Child 5–17 years: 10 mg once daily for 10 days

##### Prevention of influenza during an epidemic

###### ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER

- ▶ Child 5–17 years: 10 mg once daily for up to 28 days

##### Treatment of influenza

###### ▶ BY INHALATION OF POWDER

- ▶ Child 5–17 years: 10 mg twice daily for 5 days (or up to 10 days if resistance to oseltamivir suspected)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Use of zanamivir for up to 10 days if resistance to oseltamivir suspected is an unlicensed duration.

- **CAUTIONS** Asthma · chronic pulmonary disease · uncontrolled chronic illness

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ **Asthma and chronic pulmonary disease** Risk of bronchospasm—short-acting bronchodilator should be available. Avoid in severe asthma unless close monitoring possible and appropriate facilities available to treat bronchospasm.
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Skin reactions
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Bronchospasm · dehydration · dyspnoea · oropharyngeal oedema · presyncope · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · throat tightness
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Face oedema
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Behaviour abnormal · delirium · hallucination · level of consciousness decreased · psychiatric disorder · seizure

- **PREGNANCY** Although safety data are limited, zanamivir can be used in women who are pregnant when the potential benefit outweighs the risk (e.g. during a pandemic). Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk (e.g. during a pandemic).

- **BREAST FEEDING** Although safety data are limited, zanamivir can be used in women who are breast-feeding when the potential benefit outweighs the risk (e.g. during a pandemic). Amount probably too small to be harmful; use only if potential benefit outweighs risk (e.g. during a pandemic).

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Other inhaled drugs should be administered before zanamivir.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Except for the treatment and prophylaxis of influenza as indicated in the NICE guidance; endorse prescription 'SLS'.

#### • NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- ▶ **Oseltamivir, zanamivir, and amantadine for prophylaxis of influenza (September 2008)** NICE TA158  
Zanamivir is **not** a substitute for vaccination, which remains the most effective way of preventing illness from influenza.
- Zanamivir is **not** recommended for seasonal prophylaxis against influenza.
- When influenza is circulating in the community, zanamivir is an option recommended (in accordance with UK licensing) for post-exposure prophylaxis in at-risk patients who are not effectively protected by influenza vaccine, and who have been in close contact with someone suffering from influenza-like illness in the same household or residential setting. Zanamivir should be given within 36 hours of exposure to influenza. (National surveillance schemes, including those run by Public Health England, should be used to indicate when influenza is circulating in the community).
- During local outbreaks of influenza-like illness, when there is a high level of certainty that influenza is present, zanamivir may be used for post-exposure prophylaxis in at-risk patients (regardless of influenza vaccination) living in long-term residential or nursing homes.

At risk patients include those aged over 65 years or those who have one or more of the following conditions:

- chronic respiratory disease (including asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease);
- chronic heart disease;
- chronic renal disease;
- chronic liver disease;
- chronic neurological disease;
- immunosuppression;

- diabetes mellitus.

The Department of Health in England has advised (November 2010 and April 2011) that 'at risk patients' also includes patients under 65 years of age who are at risk of developing medical complications from influenza (treatment only) or women who are pregnant.

This guidance does not cover the circumstances of a pandemic, an impending pandemic, or a widespread epidemic of a new strain of influenza to which there is little or no immunity in the community.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA158](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA158)

- ▶ **Oseltamivir, zanamivir, and amantadine for treatment of influenza (February 2009) NICE TA168**  
Zanamivir is **not** a substitute for vaccination, which remains the most effective way of preventing illness from influenza.
- When influenza is circulating in the community, zanamivir is an option recommended (in accordance with UK licensing) for the treatment of influenza in at-risk patients who can start treatment within 48 hours (within 36 hours for zanamivir in children) of the onset of symptoms. (National surveillance schemes, including those run by Public Health England, should be used to indicate when influenza is circulating in the community.)
- During local outbreaks of influenza-like illness, when there is a high level of certainty that influenza is present, zanamivir may be used for treatment in at-risk patients living in long-term residential or nursing homes.

At risk patients include those aged over 65 years or those who have one or more of the following conditions:

- chronic respiratory disease (including asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease);
- chronic heart disease;
- chronic renal disease;
- chronic liver disease;
- chronic neurological disease;
- immunosuppression;
- diabetes mellitus.

The Department of Health in England has advised (November 2010 and April 2011) that 'at risk patients' also includes patients under 65 years of age who are at risk of developing medical complications from influenza (treatment only) or women who are pregnant.

This guidance does not cover the circumstances of a pandemic, an impending pandemic, or a widespread epidemic of a new strain of influenza to which there is little or no immunity in the community.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA168](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA168)

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Inhalation powder

▶ **Relenza** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Zanamivir 5 mg Relenza 5mg inhalation powder blisters with Diskhaler | 20 blister (PoM) £16.36

bronchiolitis. Ribavirin is effective in Lassa fever and has also been used parenterally in the treatment of life-threatening RSV, parainfluenza virus, and adenovirus infections in immunocompromised children [unlicensed indications].

Palivizumab below is a monoclonal antibody licensed for preventing serious lower respiratory-tract disease caused by respiratory syncytial virus in children at high risk of the disease; it should be prescribed under specialist supervision and on the basis of the likelihood of hospitalisation.

Palivizumab is recommended for:

- children under 9 months of age with chronic lung disease (defined as requiring oxygen for at least 28 days from birth) and who were born preterm;
- children under 6 months of age with haemodynamically significant, acyanotic congenital heart disease who were born preterm.

Palivizumab should be considered for:

- children under 2 years of age with severe combined immunodeficiency syndrome;
- children under 1 year of age who require long-term ventilation;
- children 1–2 years of age who require long-term ventilation and have an additional co-morbidity (including cardiac disease or pulmonary hypertension).

For details of the preterm age groups included in the recommendations, see *Immunisation against Infectious Disease* (2006), available at [www.gov.uk/dh](http://www.gov.uk/dh).

## DRUGS FOR RESPIRATORY DISEASES > MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES

### Palivizumab

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prevention of serious lower respiratory-tract disease caused by respiratory syncytial virus in children at high risk of the disease (under expert supervision)**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

▶ Neonate: 15 mg/kg once a month, preferably injected in the anterolateral thigh, to be administered during season of RSV risk.

▶ Child 1–23 months: 15 mg/kg once a month, preferably injected in the anterolateral thigh, to be administered during season of RSV risk, injection volume over 1 mL should be divided between 2 or more sites

**Prevention of serious lower respiratory-tract disease caused by respiratory syncytial virus in children at high risk of the disease and undergoing cardiac bypass surgery (under expert supervision)**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

▶ Child 1–23 months: Initially 15 mg/kg, to be administered as soon as stable after surgery, preferably in the anterolateral thigh, then 15 mg/kg once a month, preferably injected in the anterolateral thigh, to be administered during season of RSV risk, injection volume over 1 mL should be divided between 2 or more sites

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for the prevention of serious lower respiratory-tract disease caused by respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) in children under 6 months of age (at the start of the RSV season) and born at less than 35 weeks corrected gestational age, or in children under 2 years of age who have received treatment for bronchopulmonary dysplasia in the last 6 months, or in children under 2 years of age with haemodynamically significant congenital heart disease.

## 6.6 Respiratory syncytial virus

### Respiratory syncytial virus

#### Management

Ribavirin p. 400 inhibits a wide range of DNA and RNA viruses. It is licensed for administration by inhalation for the treatment of severe bronchiolitis caused by the respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) in infants, especially when they have other serious diseases. However, there is no evidence that ribavirin produces clinically relevant benefit in RSV

- **CAUTIONS** Moderate to severe acute infection • moderate to severe febrile illness • serum-palivizumab concentration may be reduced after cardiac surgery • thrombocytopenia
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Apnoea
  - **Uncommon** Seizure • thrombocytopenia • urticaria
  - **Frequency not known** Hypersensitivity
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Hypersensitivity to humanised monoclonal antibodies.

---

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for injection**

► **Synagis** (AbbVie Ltd)

**Palivizumab 100 mg per 1 ml** Synagis 100mg/1ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £563.64

Synagis 50mg/0.5ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £306.34



# Chapter 6

## Endocrine system

### CONTENTS

<b>1 Antidiuretic hormone disorders</b>	page 432
1.1 Diabetes insipidus	432
<b>2 Corticosteroid responsive conditions</b>	434
2.1 Cushing's syndrome and disease	443
<b>3 Diabetes mellitus and hypoglycaemia</b>	445
3.1 Diabetes mellitus	445
3.1a Diabetes, diagnosis and monitoring	460
3.2 Hypoglycaemia	465
3.2a Chronic hypoglycaemia	466
<b>4 Disorders of bone metabolism</b>	467
<b>5 Gonadotrophin responsive conditions</b>	471
<b>6 Hypothalamic and anterior pituitary hormone related disorders</b>	473
6.1 Adrenocortical function testing	473

6.2 Assessment of pituitary function	page 474
6.3 Gonadotrophin replacement therapy	474
6.4 Growth hormone disorders	475
6.4a Insulin-like growth factor-I deficiency	477
<b>7 Sex hormone responsive conditions</b>	477
7.1 Female sex hormone responsive conditions	478
7.2 Male sex hormone responsive conditions	480
7.2a Precocious puberty	482
<b>8 Thyroid disorders</b>	483
8.1 Hyperthyroidism	483
8.2 Hypothyroidism	485

## 1 Antidiuretic hormone disorders

### Posterior pituitary hormones and antagonists

#### Posterior pituitary hormones

##### Diabetes insipidus

Diabetes insipidus is caused by either a deficiency of anti-diuretic hormone (ADH, vasopressin) secretion (cranial, neurogenic, or pituitary diabetes insipidus) or by failure of the renal tubules to react to secreted antidiuretic hormone (nephrogenic diabetes insipidus).

Vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone, ADH) p. 67 is used in the treatment of *pituitary diabetes insipidus* as its analogue desmopressin below. Dosage is tailored to produce a regular diuresis every 24 hours to avoid water intoxication. Treatment may be required permanently or for a limited period only in diabetes insipidus following trauma or pituitary surgery.

Desmopressin is more potent and has a longer duration of action than vasopressin; unlike vasopressin it has no vasoconstrictor effect. It is given by mouth or intranasally for maintenance therapy, and by injection in the postoperative period or in unconscious patients. Desmopressin is also used in the differential diagnosis of diabetes insipidus; following an intramuscular or intranasal dose, restoration of the ability to concentrate urine after water deprivation confirms a diagnosis of pituitary diabetes insipidus. Failure to respond suggests nephrogenic diabetes insipidus. Fluid input must be managed carefully to avoid hyponatraemia; this test is not usually recommended in young children.

In *neurogenic and partial pituitary diabetes insipidus* benefit may be gained from the paradoxical antidiuretic effect of thiazides.

##### Other uses

Desmopressin is also used to boost factor VIII concentration in mild to moderate haemophilia and in von Willebrand's

disease; it is also used to test fibrinolytic response.

Desmopressin also has a role in nocturnal enuresis.

Vasopressin infusion is used to control variceal bleeding in portal hypertension, before introducing more definitive treatment. Terlipressin acetate, a derivative of vasopressin with reportedly less pressor and antidiuretic activity, and octreotide are used similarly but experience in children is limited.

## 1.1 Diabetes insipidus

**Other drugs used for Diabetes insipidus** Chlorothiazide, p. 111

### PITUITARY AND HYPOTHALAMIC HORMONES AND ANALOGUES > VASOPRESSIN AND ANALOGUES

#### Desmopressin

09-Jun-2017

● **DRUG ACTION** Desmopressin is an analogue of vasopressin.

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Diabetes insipidus, treatment

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Initially 1–4 micrograms 2–3 times a day, adjusted according to response.
- Child 1–23 months: Initially 10 micrograms 2–3 times a day, adjusted according to response; usual dose 30–150 micrograms daily
- Child 2–11 years: Initially 50 micrograms 2–3 times a day, adjusted according to response; usual dose 100–800 micrograms daily
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 100 micrograms 2–3 times a day, adjusted according to response; usual dose 0.2–1.2 mg daily

- BY SUBLINGUAL ADMINISTRATION
- Child 2–17 years: Initially 60 micrograms 3 times a day, adjusted according to response; usual dose 40–240 micrograms 3 times a day
- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

► Neonate: Initially 100–500 nanograms, adjusted according to response; usual dose 1.25–10 micrograms daily in 1–2 divided doses.

- Child 1–23 months: Initially 2.5–5 micrograms 1–2 times a day, adjusted according to response
- Child 2–11 years: Initially 5–20 micrograms 1–2 times a day, adjusted according to response
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 10–20 micrograms 1–2 times a day, adjusted according to response
- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Neonate: Initially 100 nanograms once daily, adjusted according to response.

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 400 nanograms once daily, adjusted according to response
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 1–4 micrograms once daily, adjusted according to response

#### Primary nocturnal enuresis

- BY MOUTH
- Child 5–17 years: 200 micrograms once daily, only increased to 400 micrograms if lower dose not effective; withdraw for at least 1 week for reassessment after 3 months, dose to be taken at bedtime, limit fluid intake from 1 hour before to 8 hours after administration
- BY SUBLINGUAL ADMINISTRATION
- Child 5–17 years: 120 micrograms once daily, increased if necessary to 240 micrograms once daily, dose to be taken at bedtime, limit fluid intake from 1 hour before to 8 hours after administration, dose to be increased only if lower dose not effective, reassess after 3 months by withdrawing treatment for at least 1 week

#### Diabetes insipidus, diagnosis (water deprivation test)

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- Neonate: Not recommended, use trial of treatment.
- Child 1–23 months: 5–10 micrograms for 1 dose, manage fluid input carefully to avoid hyponatraemia, not usually recommended
- Child 2–11 years: 10–20 micrograms for 1 dose, manage fluid input carefully to avoid hyponatraemia
- Child 12–17 years: 20 micrograms for 1 dose, manage fluid input carefully to avoid hyponatraemia
- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Neonate: Not recommended, use trial of treatment.
- Child 1–23 months: 400 nanograms for 1 dose, manage fluid input carefully to avoid hyponatraemia, not usually recommended
- Child 2–11 years: 0.5–1 microgram for 1 dose, manage fluid input carefully to avoid hyponatraemia
- Child 12–17 years: 1–2 micrograms for 1 dose, manage fluid input carefully to avoid hyponatraemia

#### Renal function testing

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- Child 1–11 months: 10 micrograms, empty bladder at time of administration and restrict fluid intake to 50% at next 2 feeds to avoid fluid overload
- Child 1–14 years: 20 micrograms, empty bladder at time of administration and restrict fluid intake to 500 mL from 1 hour before until 8 hours after administration to avoid fluid overload

- Child 15–17 years: 40 micrograms, empty bladder at time of administration and limit fluid intake to 500 mL from 1 hour before until 8 hours after administration to avoid fluid overload
- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 1–11 months: 400 nanograms, empty bladder at time of administration and restrict fluid intake to 50% at next 2 feeds to avoid fluid overload
- Child 1–17 years: 2 micrograms, empty bladder at time of administration and restrict fluid intake to 500 mL from 1 hour before until 8 hours after administration to avoid fluid overload

#### Mild to moderate haemophilia and von Willebrand's disease

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- Child 1–17 years: 4 micrograms/kg for 1 dose, for pre-operative use give 2 hours before procedure
- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Child: 300 nanograms/kg for 1 dose, to be administered immediately before surgery or after trauma; may be repeated at intervals of 12 hours if no tachycardia

#### Fibrinolytic response testing

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child 2–17 years: 300 nanograms/kg for 1 dose, blood to be sampled after 20 minutes for fibrinolytic activity

#### Assessment of antidiuretic hormone secretion (congenital deficiency suspected) (specialist use only)

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- Child 1–23 months: Initially 100–500 nanograms for 1 dose

#### Assessment of antidiuretic hormone secretion (congenital deficiency not suspected) (specialist use only)

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- Child 1–23 months: 1–5 micrograms for 1 dose

● **UNLICENSED USE** Consult product literature for individual preparations. Not licensed for assessment of antidiuretic hormone secretion. Oral use of *DDAVP* intravenous injection is not licensed.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Cardiac insufficiency · conditions treated with diuretics · history of hyponatraemia · polydipsia in alcohol dependence · psychogenic polydipsia

#### CAUTIONS

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Asthma · avoid fluid overload · cardiovascular disease (not indicated for nocturnal enuresis or nocturia) · conditions which might be aggravated by water retention · cystic fibrosis · epilepsy · heart failure · hypertension (not indicated for nocturnal enuresis or nocturia) · migraine · nocturia—limit fluid intake to minimum from 1 hour before dose until 8 hours afterwards · nocturnal enuresis—limit fluid intake to minimum from 1 hour before dose until 8 hours afterwards

#### SPECIFIC CAUTIONS

- With intranasal use should not be given intranasally for nocturnal enuresis due to an increased incidence of side-effects

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: desmopressin

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Hyponatraemia (on administration without restricting fluid intake) · nausea
- **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain · aggression · allergic dermatitis · emotional disorder · fluid retention · headache · hyponatraemic seizure · vomiting · weight increased

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- With intranasal use Epistaxis · nasal congestion · rhinitis
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Manufacturer advises avoiding concomitant use of drugs which increase

secretion of vasopressin (e.g. tricyclic antidepressants)—increases risk of hyponatraemia.

- **PREGNANCY** Small oxytocic effect in third trimester; increased risk of pre-eclampsia.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; antidiuretic effect may be reduced.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** In *nocturia*, periodic blood pressure and weight checks are needed to monitor for fluid overload.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** DDAVP® and Desmotabs® tablets may be crushed.  
DDAVP® intranasal solution may be diluted with Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a concentration of 10 micrograms/mL.  
DDAVP® injection may be administered orally.  
Desmopressin oral lyophilisates are for sublingual administration.
- ▶ With intravenous use Higher doses of DDAVP® by *intravenous infusion*, used in mild to moderate haemophilia and von Willebrand's disease, may be diluted with 30–50 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% intravenous infusion.  
For *intravenous infusion* (Octim®), dilute with 50 mL of Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over 20 minutes.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Oral, intranasal, intravenous, subcutaneous and intramuscular doses are expressed as desmopressin acetate; sublingual doses are expressed as desmopressin base.  
Children requiring an intranasal dose of less than 10 micrograms should be given DDAVP® intranasal solution.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Desmopressin for bedwetting [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/desmopressin-bedwetting-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/desmopressin-bedwetting-0)  
Hyponatraemic convulsions Patients being treated for primary nocturnal enuresis should be warned to avoid fluid overload (including during swimming) and to stop taking desmopressin during an episode of vomiting or diarrhoea (until fluid balance normal).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution, spray, nasal drops

#### Tablet

- ▶ **Desmopressin (Non-proprietary)**  
Desmopressin acetate 100 microgram Desmopressin 100microgram tablets | 90 tablet [PoM] £76.62 DT = £63.08  
Desmopressin acetate 200 microgram Desmopressin 200microgram tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £35.23 DT = £9.09
- ▶ **DDAVP** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Desmopressin acetate 100 microgram DDAVP 0.1mg tablets | 90 tablet [PoM] £44.12 DT = £63.08  
Desmopressin acetate 200 microgram DDAVP 0.2mg tablets | 90 tablet [PoM] £88.23
- ▶ **Desmotabs** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Desmopressin acetate 200 microgram Desmotabs 0.2mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £29.43 DT = £9.09

#### Solution for injection

- ▶ **DDAVP** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Desmopressin acetate 4 microgram per 1 ml DDAVP 4micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £13.16
- ▶ **Octim** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Desmopressin acetate 15 microgram per 1 ml Octim 15micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £192.20

#### Spray

- ▶ **Desmopressin (Non-proprietary)**  
Desmopressin acetate 10 microgram per 1 dose Desmopressin 10micrograms/dose nasal spray | 60 dose [PoM] £31.50 DT = £28.06

- ▶ **Desmospray** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Desmopressin acetate 2.5 microgram per 1 dose Desmospray 2.5micrograms/dose nasal spray | 50 dose [PoM] £25.02 DT = £28.06
- ▶ **Octim** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Desmopressin acetate 150 microgram per 1 dose Octim 150micrograms/dose nasal spray | 25 dose [PoM] £576.60

#### Oral lyophilisate

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 26

- ▶ **DDAVP Melt** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Desmopressin (as Desmopressin acetate) 60 microgram DDAVP Melt 60microgram oral lyophilisates sugar-free | 100 tablet [PoM] £50.53 DT = £50.53  
Desmopressin (as Desmopressin acetate) 120 microgram DDAVP Melt 120microgram oral lyophilisates sugar-free | 100 tablet [PoM] £101.07 DT = £101.07  
Desmopressin (as Desmopressin acetate) 240 microgram DDAVP Melt 240microgram oral lyophilisates sugar-free | 100 tablet [PoM] £202.14
- ▶ **DesmoMelt** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Desmopressin (as Desmopressin acetate) 120 microgram DesmoMelt 120microgram oral lyophilisates sugar-free | 30 tablet [PoM] £30.34 DT = £30.34  
Desmopressin (as Desmopressin acetate) 240 microgram DesmoMelt 240microgram oral lyophilisates sugar-free | 30 tablet [PoM] £60.68 DT = £60.68
- ▶ **Noqdirna** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Desmopressin (as Desmopressin acetate) 25 microgram Noqdirna 25microgram oral lyophilisates sugar-free | 30 tablet [PoM] £15.16 DT = £15.16  
Desmopressin (as Desmopressin acetate) 50 microgram Noqdirna 50microgram oral lyophilisates sugar-free | 30 tablet [PoM] £15.16 DT = £15.16

#### Nasal drops

- ▶ **DDAVP** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Desmopressin acetate 100 microgram per 1 ml DDAVP 100micrograms/ml intranasal solution | 2.5 ml [PoM] £9.72 DT = £9.72

## 2 Corticosteroid responsive conditions

### CORTICOSTEROIDS

## Corticosteroids, general use

### Overview

Dosages of corticosteroids vary widely in different diseases and in different patients. If the use of a corticosteroid can save or prolong life, as in exfoliative dermatitis, pemphigus, acute leukaemia or acute transplant rejection, high doses may need to be given, because the complications of therapy are likely to be less serious than the effects of the disease itself.

When long-term corticosteroid therapy is used in some chronic diseases, the adverse effects of treatment may become greater than the disabilities caused by the disease. To minimise side-effects the maintenance dose should be kept as low as possible.

When potentially less harmful measures are ineffective corticosteroids are used topically for the treatment of inflammatory conditions of the skin. Corticosteroids should be avoided or used only under specialist supervision in psoriasis.

Corticosteroids are used both topically (by rectum) and systemically (by mouth or intravenously) in the management of ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease.

Use can be made of the mineralocorticoid activity of fludrocortisone acetate p. 440 to treat postural hypotension in autonomic neuropathy.

High-dose corticosteroids should be avoided for the management of septic shock. However, low-dose

hydrocortisone p. 440 can be used in septic shock that is resistant to volume expansion and catecholamines, and is accompanied by suspected or proven adrenal insufficiency.

The suppressive action of glucocorticoids on the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis is greatest and most prolonged when they are given at night. In most adults a single dose of dexamethasone p. 439 at night is sufficient to inhibit corticotropin secretion for 24 hours. This is the basis of the 'overnight dexamethasone suppression test' for diagnosing Cushing's syndrome.

Betamethasone p. 438 and dexamethasone are also appropriate for conditions where water retention would be a disadvantage.

A corticosteroid may be used in the management of raised intracranial pressure or cerebral oedema that occurs as a result of malignancy (see Prescribing in palliative care p. 20); high doses of betamethasone or dexamethasone are generally used. However, a corticosteroid should **not** be used for the management of head injury or stroke because it is unlikely to be of benefit and may even be harmful.

In acute hypersensitivity reactions, such as angioedema of the upper respiratory tract and anaphylaxis, corticosteroids are indicated as an adjunct to emergency treatment with adrenaline/epinephrine p. 136. In such cases hydrocortisone (as sodium succinate) by intravenous injection may be required.

In the management of asthma, corticosteroids are preferably used by inhalation but systemic therapy along with bronchodilators is required for the emergency treatment of severe acute asthma.

Betamethasone is used in women at risk of preterm delivery to reduce the incidence of neonatal respiratory distress syndrome [unlicensed use].

Dexamethasone should not be used routinely for the prophylaxis and treatment of chronic lung disease in neonates because of an association with adverse neurological effects.

Corticosteroids may be useful in conditions such as autoimmune hepatitis, rheumatoid arthritis, and sarcoidosis; they may also lead to remissions of acquired haemolytic anaemia and thrombocytopenic purpura.

High doses of a corticosteroid (usually prednisolone p. 442) are used in the treatment of *glomerular kidney disease*, including *nephrotic syndrome*. The condition frequently recurs; a corticosteroid given in high doses and for prolonged periods may delay relapse but the higher incidence of adverse effects limits the overall benefit. Those who suffer frequent relapses may be treated with prednisolone given in a low dose (daily or on alternate days) for 3–6 months; the dose should be adjusted to minimise effects on growth and development. Other drugs used in the treatment of glomerular kidney disease include levamisole p. 383, cyclophosphamide p. 535, chlorambucil p. 534, and ciclosporin p. 519. *Congenital nephrotic syndrome* may be resistant to corticosteroids and immunosuppressants; indometacin and an ACE inhibitor such as captopril p. 112 have been used.

Corticosteroids can improve the prognosis of serious conditions such as systemic lupus erythematosus and polyarteritis nodosa; the effects of the disease process may be suppressed and symptoms relieved, but the underlying condition is not cured, although it may ultimately remit. It is usual to begin therapy in these conditions at fairly high dose and then to reduce the dose to the lowest commensurate with disease control.

For other references to the use of corticosteroids see: Prescribing in Palliative Care, immunosuppression, rheumatic diseases, eye, otitis externa, allergic rhinitis, and aphthous ulcers.

## Side-effects

**MHRA/CHM advice:** Corticosteroids: rare risk of central serous chorioretinopathy with local as well as systemic administration (August 2017)

Central serous chorioretinopathy is a retinal disorder that has been linked to the systemic use of corticosteroids. Recently, it has also been reported after local administration of corticosteroids via inhaled and intranasal, epidural, intra-articular, topical dermal, and pericocular routes. The MHRA recommends that patients should be advised to report any blurred vision or other visual disturbances with corticosteroid treatment given by any route; consider referral to an ophthalmologist for evaluation of possible causes if a patient presents with vision problems.

Overdose or prolonged use can exaggerate some of the normal physiological actions of corticosteroids leading to mineralocorticoid and glucocorticoid side-effects.

### Mineralocorticoid side effects

- hypertension
- sodium retention
- water retention
- potassium loss
- calcium loss

Mineralocorticoid side effects are most marked with fludrocortisone acetate, but are significant with hydrocortisone, corticotropin, and tetracosactide. Mineralocorticoid actions are negligible with the high potency glucocorticoids, betamethasone and dexamethasone, and occur only slightly with methylprednisolone, prednisolone, and triamcinolone.

### Glucocorticoid side effects

- diabetes
- osteoporosis
- in addition high doses are associated with avascular necrosis of the femoral head.
- Muscle wasting (proximal myopathy) can also occur.
- Corticosteroid therapy is also weakly linked with peptic ulceration and perforation.
- Psychiatric reactions may also occur.

### Managing side-effects

Side-effects can be minimised by using lowest effective dose for minimum period possible. The suppressive action of a corticosteroid on cortisol secretion is least when it is given as a single dose in the morning. In an attempt to reduce pituitary-adrenal suppression further, the total dose for two days can sometimes be taken as a single dose on alternate days; alternate-day administration has not been very successful in the management of asthma. Pituitary-adrenal suppression can also be reduced by means of intermittent therapy with short courses. In some conditions it may be possible to reduce the dose of corticosteroid by adding a small dose of an immunosuppressive drug.

Whenever possible *local treatment* with creams, intra-articular injections, inhalations, eye-drops, or enemas should be used in preference to *systemic treatment*.

Inhaled corticosteroids have considerably fewer systemic effects than oral corticosteroids, but adverse effects including adrenal suppression have been reported. Use of other corticosteroid therapy (including topical) or concurrent use of drugs which inhibit corticosteroid metabolism should be taken into account when assessing systemic risk. In children, growth restriction associated with systemic corticosteroid therapy does not seem to occur with recommended doses of inhaled therapy; although initial growth velocity may be reduced, there appears to be no effect on achieving normal adult height. Large-volume spacer devices should be used for administering inhaled corticosteroids in children under 15 years; they are also useful in older children and adults, particularly if high doses

are required. Spacer devices increase airway deposition and reduce oropharyngeal deposition.

## Corticosteroids, replacement therapy

### Overview

The adrenal cortex normally secretes hydrocortisone (cortisol) which has glucocorticoid activity and weak mineralocorticoid activity. It also secretes the mineralocorticoid aldosterone.

In deficiency states, physiological replacement is best achieved with a combination of hydrocortisone p. 440 and the mineralocorticoid fludrocortisone acetate p. 440; hydrocortisone alone does not usually provide sufficient mineralocorticoid activity for complete replacement.

In *Addison's disease* or following adrenalectomy, hydrocortisone by mouth is usually required. This is given in 2–3 divided doses, the larger in the morning and the smaller in the evening, mimicking the normal diurnal rhythm of cortisol secretion. The optimum daily dose is determined on the basis of clinical response. Glucocorticoid therapy is supplemented by fludrocortisone acetate.

In *acute adrenocortical insufficiency*, hydrocortisone is given intravenously (preferably as sodium succinate) every 6 to 8 hours in sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9%.

In *hypopituitarism*, glucocorticoids should be given as in adrenocortical insufficiency, but since production of aldosterone is also regulated by the renin-angiotensin system a mineralocorticoid is not usually required. Additional replacement therapy with levothyroxine sodium p. 485 and sex hormones should be given as indicated by the pattern of hormone deficiency.

In *congenital adrenal hyperplasia*, the pituitary gland increases production of corticotropin to compensate for reduced formation of cortisol; this results in excessive adrenal androgen production. Treatment is aimed at suppressing corticotropin using hydrocortisone. Careful and continual dose titration is required to avoid growth retardation and toxicity; for this reason potent, synthetic glucocorticoids such as dexamethasone are usually reserved for use in adolescents. The dose is adjusted according to clinical response and measurement of adrenal androgens and 17-hydroxyprogesterone. Salt-losing forms of congenital adrenal hyperplasia (where there is a lack of aldosterone production) also require mineralocorticoid replacement and salt supplementation (particularly in early life). The dose of mineralocorticoid is adjusted according to electrolyte concentration and plasma-renin activity.

## Glucocorticoid therapy

### Glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid activity

In comparing the relative potencies of corticosteroids in terms of their anti-inflammatory (glucocorticoid) effects it should be borne in mind that high glucocorticoid activity in itself is of no advantage unless it is accompanied by relatively low mineralocorticoid activity (see Disadvantages of Corticosteroids). The mineralocorticoid activity of fludrocortisone acetate p. 440 is so high that its anti-inflammatory activity is of no clinical relevance.

### Equivalent anti-inflammatory doses of corticosteroids

This table takes no account of mineralocorticoid effects, nor does it take account of variations in duration of action

Prednisolone 1 mg	≡	Betamethasone 150 micrograms
	≡	Deflazacort 1.2 mg
	≡	Dexamethasone 150 micrograms
	≡	Hydrocortisone 4 mg
	≡	Methylprednisolone 800 micrograms
	≡	Triamcinolone 800 micrograms

The relatively high mineralocorticoid activity of hydrocortisone p. 440, and the resulting fluid retention, makes it unsuitable for disease suppression on a long-term basis. However, hydrocortisone can be used for adrenal replacement therapy. Hydrocortisone is used on a short-term basis by intravenous injection for the emergency management of some conditions. The relatively moderate anti-inflammatory potency of hydrocortisone also makes it a useful topical corticosteroid for the management of inflammatory skin conditions because side-effects (both topical and systemic) are less marked.

Prednisolone p. 442 has predominantly glucocorticoid activity and is the corticosteroid most commonly used by mouth for long-term disease suppression.

Betamethasone p. 438 and dexamethasone p. 439 have very high glucocorticoid activity in conjunction with insignificant mineralocorticoid activity. This makes them particularly suitable for high-dose therapy in conditions where fluid retention would be a disadvantage.

Betamethasone and dexamethasone also have a long duration of action and this, coupled with their lack of mineralocorticoid action makes them particularly suitable for conditions which require suppression of corticotropin (corticotrophin) secretion.

Some esters of betamethasone and of beclomethasone dipropionate p. 160 (beclomethasone) exert a considerably more marked topical effect (e.g. on the skin or the lungs) than when given by mouth; use is made of this to obtain topical effects whilst minimising systemic side-effects (e.g. for skin applications and asthma inhalations).

Deflazacort p. 438 has a high glucocorticoid activity; it is derived from prednisolone.

## Corticosteroids (systemic)

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

Central serous chorioretinopathy is a retinal disorder that has been linked to the systemic use of corticosteroids. Recently, it has also been reported after local administration of corticosteroids via inhaled and intranasal, epidural, intra-articular, topical dermal, and periorcular routes. The MHRA recommends that patients should be advised to report any blurred vision or other visual disturbances with corticosteroid treatment given by any route; consider referral to an ophthalmologist for evaluation of possible causes if a patient presents with vision problems.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates · avoid live virus vaccines in those receiving immunosuppressive doses (serum antibody response diminished) · systemic infection (unless specific therapy given)



**CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

For further information on contra-indications associated with intra-articular, intradermal and intralesional preparations, consult product literature.

- **CAUTIONS** Congestive heart failure · diabetes mellitus (including a family history of) · diverticulitis · epilepsy · glaucoma (including a family history of or susceptibility to) · history of steroid myopathy · history of tuberculosis or X-ray changes (frequent monitoring required) · hypertension · hypothyroidism · infection (particularly untreated) · myasthenia gravis · ocular herpes simplex (risk of corneal perforation) · osteoporosis · peptic ulcer · psychiatric reactions · recent intestinal anastomoses · recent myocardial infarction (rupture reported) · severe affective disorders (particularly if history of steroid-induced psychosis) · should not be used long-term · thromboembolic disorders · ulcerative colitis

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For further information on cautions associated with intra-articular, intradermal and intralesional preparations, consult product literature.

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Adrenal suppression · anxiety · appetite increased · behaviour abnormal · cataract subcapsular · cognitive impairment · Cushing's syndrome · diabetic control impaired · electrolyte imbalance · fluid retention · gastrointestinal discomfort · glaucoma · headache · healing impaired · hirsutism · hypertension · increased risk of infection · leucocytosis · menstrual cycle irregularities · mood altered · myocardial rupture (following recent myocardial infarction) · nausea · osteoporosis · peptic ulcer · psychotic disorder · skin reactions · sleep disorders · telangiectasia · weight increased
- ▶ **Uncommon** Alkalosis hypokalaemic · bone fractures · haemorrhage · heart failure · hyperhidrosis · myopathy · oedema · osteonecrosis · pancreatitis · papilloedema · seizure · thromboembolism · tuberculosis reactivation · vertigo · vision blurred
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Bruising · tendon rupture
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Chorioretinopathy · eye disorders · growth retardation · intracranial pressure increased with papilloedema (usually after withdrawal)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

**Adrenal suppression** During prolonged therapy with corticosteroids, particularly with systemic use, adrenal atrophy develops and can persist for years after stopping. Abrupt withdrawal after a prolonged period can lead to acute adrenal insufficiency, hypotension, or death. To compensate for a diminished adrenocortical response caused by prolonged corticosteroid treatment, any significant intercurrent illness, trauma, or surgical procedure requires a temporary increase in corticosteroid dose, or if already stopped, a temporary reintroduction of corticosteroid treatment. Patients on long-term corticosteroid treatment should carry a steroid treatment card which gives guidance on minimising risk and provides details of prescriber, drug, dosage and duration of treatment.

**Infections** Prolonged courses of corticosteroids increase susceptibility to infections and severity of infections; clinical presentation of infections may also be atypical. Serious infections e.g. septicaemia and tuberculosis may reach an advanced stage before being recognised, and amoebiasis or strongyloidiasis may be activated or exacerbated (exclude before initiating a corticosteroid in those at risk or with suggestive symptoms). Fungal or viral ocular infections may also be exacerbated.

**Chickenpox** Unless they have had chickenpox, patients receiving oral or parenteral corticosteroids for purposes other than replacement should be regarded as being at risk of severe chickenpox. Manifestations of fulminant illness include pneumonia, hepatitis and disseminated

intravascular coagulation; rash is not necessarily a prominent feature. Passive immunisation with varicella-zoster immunoglobulin is needed for exposed non-immune patients receiving systemic corticosteroids or for those who have used them within the previous 3 months. Confirmed chickenpox warrants specialist care and urgent treatment. Corticosteroids should not be stopped and dosage may need to be increased.

**Measles** Patients taking corticosteroids should be advised to take particular care to avoid exposure to measles and to seek immediate medical advice if exposure occurs.

Prophylaxis with intramuscular normal immunoglobulin may be needed.

**Psychiatric reactions** Systemic corticosteroids, particularly in high doses, are linked to psychiatric reactions including euphoria, insomnia, irritability, mood lability, suicidal thoughts, psychotic reactions, and behavioural disturbances. These reactions frequently subside on reducing the dose or discontinuing the corticosteroid but they may also require specific management. Patients should be advised to seek medical advice if psychiatric symptoms (especially depression and suicidal thoughts) occur and they should also be alert to the rare possibility of such reactions during withdrawal of corticosteroid treatment. Systemic corticosteroids should be prescribed with care in those predisposed to psychiatric reactions, including those who have previously suffered corticosteroid-induced psychosis, or who have a personal or family history of psychiatric disorders.

- **PREGNANCY** The benefit of treatment with corticosteroids during pregnancy outweighs the risk. Corticosteroid cover is required during labour. Following a review of the data on the safety of systemic corticosteroids used in pregnancy and breast-feeding the CSM (May 1998) concluded that corticosteroids vary in their ability to cross the placenta but there is no convincing evidence that systemic corticosteroids increase the incidence of congenital abnormalities such as cleft palate or lip. When administration is prolonged or repeated during pregnancy, systemic corticosteroids increase the risk of intra-uterine growth restriction; there is no evidence of intra-uterine growth restriction following short-term treatment (e.g. prophylactic treatment for neonatal respiratory distress syndrome). Any adrenal suppression in the neonate following prenatal exposure usually resolves spontaneously after birth and is rarely clinically important.
- **Monitoring** Pregnant women with fluid retention should be monitored closely when given systemic corticosteroids.

- **BREAST FEEDING** The benefit of treatment with corticosteroids during breast-feeding outweighs the risk.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** The plasma-drug concentration may be increased (particularly on systemic use). Oral and parenteral use should be undertaken with caution.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use by oral and injectable routes should be undertaken with caution.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** The height and weight of children receiving prolonged treatment with corticosteroids should be monitored annually; if growth is slowed, referral to a paediatrician should be considered.
- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** Suppression of skin test reactions.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** The magnitude and speed of dose reduction in corticosteroid withdrawal should be determined on a case-by-case basis, taking into consideration the underlying condition that is being treated, and individual patient factors such as the likelihood of relapse and the duration of corticosteroid treatment. *Gradual* withdrawal of systemic corticosteroids should be considered in those whose disease is unlikely to relapse and have:

- received more than 40 mg prednisolone (or equivalent) daily for more than 1 week *or* 2 mg/kg daily for 1 week *or* 1 mg/kg daily for 1 month;
- been given repeat doses in the evening;
- received more than 3 weeks' treatment;
- recently received repeated courses (particularly if taken for longer than 3 weeks);
- taken a short course within 1 year of stopping long-term therapy;
- other possible causes of adrenal suppression.

Systemic corticosteroids may be stopped abruptly in those whose disease is unlikely to relapse *and* who have received treatment for 3 weeks or less *and* who are not included in the patient groups described above.

During corticosteroid withdrawal the dose may be reduced rapidly down to physiological doses (equivalent to prednisolone 2–2.5 mg/m<sup>2</sup> daily) and then reduced more slowly. Assessment of the disease may be needed during withdrawal to ensure that relapse does not occur.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Advice for patients Patients on long-term corticosteroid treatment should carry a Steroid Treatment Card which gives guidance on minimising risk and provides details of prescriber, drug, dosage and duration of treatment.

A patient information leaflet should be supplied to every patient when a systemic corticosteroid is prescribed. Patients should especially be advised of the following:

- Immunosuppression** Prolonged courses of corticosteroids can increase susceptibility to infection and serious infections can go unrecognised. Unless already immune, patients are at risk of severe **chickenpox** and should avoid close contact with people who have chickenpox or shingles. Similarly, precautions should also be taken against contracting **measles**;
- Adrenal suppression** If the corticosteroid is given for longer than 3 weeks, treatment must not be stopped abruptly. Adrenal suppression can last for a year or more after stopping treatment and the patient must mention the course of corticosteroid when receiving treatment for any illness or injury;
- Mood and behaviour changes** Corticosteroid treatment, especially with high doses, can alter mood and behaviour early in treatment—the patient can become confused, irritable and suffer from delusion and suicidal thoughts. These effects can also occur when corticosteroid treatment is being withdrawn. Medical advice should be sought if worrying psychological changes occur;
- Other serious effects** Serious gastro-intestinal, musculoskeletal, and ophthalmic effects which require medical help can also occur.

**Steroid treatment cards** Steroid treatment cards should be issued where appropriate. Consider giving a 'steroid card' to support communication of the risks associated with treatment, and specific written advice to consider corticosteroid replacement during an episode of stress, such as severe intercurrent illness or an operation, to patients using greater than maximum licensed doses of inhaled corticosteroids. Steroid treatment cards are available for purchase from the NHS Print online ordering portal [www.nhsforms.co.uk](http://www.nhsforms.co.uk).

GP practices can obtain supplies through Primary Care Support England. NHS Trusts can order supplies via the online ordering portal.

In **Scotland**, steroid treatment cards can be obtained from APS Group Scotland by emailing [stockorders.dppas@apsgroup.co.uk](mailto:stockorders.dppas@apsgroup.co.uk) or by fax on 0131 629 9967.

## Betamethasone

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Suppression of inflammatory and allergic disorders | Congenital adrenal hyperplasia

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 1–11 months: Initially 1 mg, repeated up to 4 times in 24 hours according to response
- Child 1–5 years: Initially 2 mg, repeated up to 4 times in 24 hours according to response
- Child 6–11 years: Initially 4 mg, repeated up to 4 times in 24 hours according to response
- Child 12–17 years: 4–20 mg, repeated up to 4 times in 24 hours according to response

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Hiccups · malaise · Stevens-Johnson syndrome

● **PREGNANCY** Readily crosses the placenta. Transient effect on fetal movements and heart rate.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

► **Betamethasone (Non-proprietary)**

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone sodium phosphate) 4 mg per 1 ml Betamethasone 4mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule (PoM) £18.81 DT = £17.25

## Deflazacort

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Inflammatory and allergic disorders

► BY MOUTH

- Child 1-month–11 years: 0.25–1.5 mg/kg once daily or on alternate days; increased if necessary up to 2.4 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 120 mg), in emergency situations
- Child 12–17 years: 3–18 mg once daily or on alternate days; increased if necessary up to 2.4 mg/kg daily (max. per dose 120 mg), in emergency situations

#### Nephrotic syndrome

► BY MOUTH

- Child: Initially 1.5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 120 mg), reduced to the lowest effective dose for maintenance

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Hypotension

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for deflazacort tablets (steroid card).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 10

► **Cal cort** (Sanofi)

Deflazacort 6 mg Cal cort 6mg tablets | 60 tablet (PoM) £15.82

## Dexamethasone

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Physiological replacement

- ▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: 250–500 micrograms/m<sup>2</sup> every 12 hours, adjusted according to response

#### Suppression of inflammatory and allergic disorders

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: 10–100 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, adjusted according to response; up to 300 micrograms/kg daily may be required in emergency situations
- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 83–333 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses; maximum 20 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 0.4–20 mg daily

#### Mild croup

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: 150 micrograms/kg for 1 dose

#### Severe croup (or mild croup that might cause complications)

- ▶ INITIALLY BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg for 1 dose, to be given before transfer to hospital, then (by mouth or by intravenous injection) 150 micrograms/kg, then (by mouth or by intravenous injection) 150 micrograms/kg after 12 hours if required

#### Adjunctive treatment of bacterial meningitis (starting before or with first dose of antibacterial)

- ▶ BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 3 months–17 years: 150 micrograms/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 10 mg) for 4 days

#### Life-threatening cerebral oedema

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 35 kg): Initially 16.7 mg, then 3.3 mg every 3 hours for 3 days, then 3.3 mg every 6 hours for 1 day, then 1.7 mg every 6 hours for 4 days, then reduced in steps of 0.8 mg daily
- ▶ Child (body-weight 35 kg and above): Initially 20.8 mg, then 3.3 mg every 2 hours for 3 days, then 3.3 mg every 4 hours for 1 day, then 3.3 mg every 6 hours for 4 days, then reduced in steps of 1.7 mg daily

### ● UNLICENSED USE

- ▶ With intravenous use Consult product literature; not licensed for use in bacterial meningitis.

### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ With intravenous use Hypotension · perineal irritation (may occur following the intravenous injection of large doses of the phosphate ester)
- ▶ With oral use Exophthalmos · hiccups · hyperglycaemia · hypotension · malaise · protein catabolism

### ● PREGNANCY Dexamethasone readily crosses the placenta.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ With oral use For administration by *mouth* tablets may be dispersed in water or injection solution given by mouth.
- ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion* dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 15–20 minutes.

### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

- ▶ Dexamethasone 3.8 mg/mL Injection has replaced Dexamethasone 4 mg/mL Injection. All dosage recommendations for intravenous, intramuscular, intrarticular use or local infiltration; are given in units of dexamethasone base.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for dexamethasone tablet, oral solution and injection (steroid card).

Medicines for Children leaflet: Dexamethasone for croup  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/dexamethasone-croup-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/dexamethasone-croup-0)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

#### Soluble tablet

##### ▶ Dexamethasone (Non-proprietary)

**Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium phosphate)**

**2 mg** Dexamethasone 2mg soluble tablets sugar free sugar-free | 50 tablet [PoM] £30.00–£30.01 DT = £30.01

**Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium phosphate)**

**4 mg** Dexamethasone 4mg soluble tablets sugar free sugar-free | 50 tablet [PoM] £60.00–£60.01 DT = £60.01

**Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium phosphate)**

**8 mg** Dexamethasone 8mg soluble tablets sugar free sugar-free | 50 tablet [PoM] £120.00–£120.02 DT = £120.01

##### ▶ Glensoludex (Glenmark Pharmaceuticals Europe Ltd)

**Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium phosphate)**

**2 mg** Glensoludex 2mg soluble tablets sugar-free | 50 tablet [PoM] £10.00 DT = £30.01

**Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium phosphate)**

**4 mg** Glensoludex 4mg soluble tablets sugar-free | 50 tablet [PoM] £20.00 DT = £60.01

**Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium phosphate)**

**8 mg** Glensoludex 8mg soluble tablets sugar-free | 50 tablet [PoM] £40.00 DT = £120.01

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 21

##### ▶ Dexamethasone (Non-proprietary)

**Dexamethasone 500 microgram** Dexamethasone 500microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £14.25–£54.24 DT = £16.22 | 30 tablet [PoM] £17.38–£64.82

**Dexamethasone 2 mg** Dexamethasone 2mg tablets |

50 tablet [PoM] £49.00 DT = £14.25 | 100 tablet [PoM] £28.50–£98.00 | 500 tablet [PoM] £490.00

**Dexamethasone 4 mg** Dexamethasone 4mg tablets |

50 tablet [PoM] £85.00 DT = £85.00

##### ▶ Neofordex (Aspire Pharma Ltd)

**Dexamethasone 40 mg** Neofordex 40mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £200.00 DT = £200.00

#### Solution for injection

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

##### ▶ Dexamethasone (Non-proprietary)

**Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium phosphate) 3.3 mg**

**per 1 mL** Dexamethasone 6.6mg/2mL solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £24.00 DT = £24.00

Dexamethasone 6.6mg/2mL solution for injection ampoules |

5 ampoule [PoM] £11.00 DT = £11.00 | 10 ampoule [PoM] £22.00

Dexamethasone 3.3mg/1mL solution for injection ampoules |

5 ampoule [PoM] £12.00 | 10 ampoule [PoM] £12.00–£19.67 DT =

£19.67

**Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium phosphate) 3.8 mg**

**per 1 mL** Dexamethasone 3.8mg/1mL solution for injection vials |

10 vial [PoM] £19.99–£20.01 DT = £20.00

#### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 21

##### ▶ Dexamethasone (Non-proprietary)

**Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium phosphate)**

**400 microgram per 1 mL** Dexamethasone 2mg/5mL oral solution

sugar free sugar-free | 150 mL [PoM] £42.30 DT = £42.30

**Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium phosphate) 2 mg per**

**1 mL** Dexamethasone 10mg/5mL oral solution sugar free sugar-free |

50 mL [PoM] £24.50–£24.95 sugar-free | 150 mL [PoM] £101.40 DT =

£94.44

**Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium phosphate) 4 mg**

**per 1 mL** Dexamethasone 20mg/5mL oral solution sugar free sugar-

free | 50 mL [PoM] £49.50 DT = £49.50

##### ▶ Dexsol (Rosemont Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium phosphate)**

**400 microgram per 1 mL** Dexsol 2mg/5mL oral solution sugar-free |

75 mL [PoM] £21.15 sugar-free | 150 mL [PoM] £42.30 DT = £42.30

- ▶ **Martapan** (Martindale Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium phosphate)  
400 microgram per 1 ml Martapan 2mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £35.96 DT = £42.30

F 436

## Fludrocortisone acetate

21-Dec-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Mineralocorticoid replacement in adrenocortical insufficiency

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 50 micrograms once daily, adjusted according to response; usual dose 50–200 micrograms once daily, higher doses may be required, dose adjustment may be required if salt supplements are administered.
- ▶ Child: Initially 50–100 micrograms once daily; maintenance 50–300 micrograms once daily, adjusted according to response, dose adjustment may be required if salt supplements are administered

### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Conjunctivitis · exophthalmos · fatigue · idiopathic intracranial hypertension · muscle atrophy · muscle weakness · petechiae

### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Monitoring** Monitor patient closely in hepatic impairment.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Fludrocortisone for hormone replacement [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/fludrocortisone-for-hormone-replacement](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/fludrocortisone-for-hormone-replacement)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

#### ▶ Fludrocortisone acetate (Non-proprietary)

**Fludrocortisone acetate 100 microgram** Fludrocortisone 100microgram tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £13.60 DT = £13.60

F 436

## Hydrocortisone

21-Dec-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Acute adrenocortical insufficiency (Addisonian crisis)

##### ▶ INITIALLY BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 10 mg, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 100 mg/m<sup>2</sup> daily, alternatively (by intravenous infusion) 100 mg/m<sup>2</sup> daily in divided doses, to be given every 6–8 hours; adjusted according to response, when stable reduce over 4–5 days to oral maintenance dose.

##### ▶ BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 2–4 mg/kg, then 2–4 mg/kg every 6 hours, adjusted according to response, when stable reduce over 4–5 days to oral maintenance dose
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100 mg every 6–8 hours

#### Congenital adrenal hyperplasia

##### ▶ BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- ▶ Neonate: 9–15 mg/m<sup>2</sup> in 3 divided doses, adjusted according to response.
- ▶ Child: 9–15 mg/m<sup>2</sup> in 3 divided doses, adjusted according to response

### Adrenal hypoplasia | Addison's disease, chronic maintenance or replacement therapy

#### ▶ BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- ▶ Neonate: 8–10 mg/m<sup>2</sup> daily in 3 divided doses, the larger dose to be given in the morning and the smaller in the evening, higher doses may be needed.

- ▶ Child: 8–10 mg/m<sup>2</sup> daily in 3 divided doses, the larger dose to be given in the morning and the smaller in the evening, higher doses may be needed

### Inflammatory bowel disease—induction of remission

#### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 2.5 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 100 mg)

#### ▶ BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 10 mg/kg daily; maximum 400 mg per day

### Ulcerative colitis | Proctitis | Proctosigmoiditis

#### ▶ BY RECTUM USING RECTAL FOAM

- ▶ Child 2–17 years: Initially 1 metered application 1–2 times a day for 2–3 weeks, then reduced to 1 metered application once daily on alternate days, to be inserted into the rectum

### Acute hypersensitivity reactions | Angioedema

#### ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1–5 months: Initially 25 mg 3 times a day, adjusted according to response
- ▶ Child 6 months–5 years: Initially 50 mg 3 times a day, adjusted according to response
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: Initially 100 mg 3 times a day, adjusted according to response
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 200 mg 3 times a day, adjusted according to response

### Hypotension resistant to inotropic treatment and volume replacement (limited evidence)

#### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 2.5 mg/kg, then 2.5 mg/kg after 4 hours if required, followed by 2.5 mg/kg every 6 hours for 48 hours or until blood pressure recovers, dose to then be reduced gradually over at least 48 hours.

- ▶ Child: 1 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 100 mg)

### Severe acute asthma | Life-threatening acute asthma

#### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1 month–1 year: 4 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 100 mg), alternatively 25 mg every 6 hours until conversion to oral prednisolone is possible, dose given, preferably, as sodium succinate
- ▶ Child 2–4 years: 4 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 100 mg), alternatively 50 mg every 6 hours until conversion to oral prednisolone is possible, dose given, preferably, as sodium succinate
- ▶ Child 5–11 years: 4 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 100 mg), alternatively 100 mg every 6 hours until conversion to oral prednisolone is possible, dose given, preferably, as sodium succinate
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 4 mg/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 100 mg), alternatively 100 mg every 6 hours until conversion to oral prednisolone is possible, dose given, preferably, as sodium succinate

- **UNLICENSED USE** Use of injection by mouth is unlicensed.

### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

- ▶ With rectal use Bowel perforation · extensive fistulas · intestinal obstruction · recent intestinal anastomoses

### ● CAUTIONS

- ▶ With rectal use Systemic absorption may occur

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

**● SIDE-EFFECTS****► Uncommon**

- With rectal use Skin discolouration
- Frequency not known
- With oral use Dyslipidaemia · fatigue · hypotension · malaise
- With parenteral use Exophthalmos · hiccups · Kaposi's sarcoma · lipomatosis · malaise

**● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- With intravenous use For intravenous administration, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. For intermittent infusion give over 20–30 minutes.
- With oral use For administration by mouth, injection solution may be swallowed [unlicensed use] but consider phosphate content.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of hydrocortisone is required, the following strength is used: 5 mg/5 mL.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for hydrocortisone tablets and injections (steroid card).

**● LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING**

- With intravenous use Hydrocortisone as the sodium phosphate is less suitable for prescribing as paraesthesia and pain (particularly in the perineal region) may follow intravenous injection.

**● EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY**

- With intramuscular use or intravenous use Prescription only medicine restriction does not apply where administration is for saving life in emergency.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 21

**► Hydrocortisone (Non-proprietary)**

**Hydrocortisone 10 mg** Hydrocortisone 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £101.76 DT = £32.79

**Hydrocortisone 20 mg** Hydrocortisone 20mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £147.26 DT = £83.26

**Powder for solution for injection****► Solu-Cortef (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Hydrocortisone (as Hydrocortisone sodium succinate)**

**100 mg** Solu-Cortef 100mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £9.17

**Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

**► Solu-Cortef (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Hydrocortisone (as Hydrocortisone sodium succinate)**

**100 mg** Solu-Cortef 100mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1.16 DT = £1.16

**Solution for injection**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

**► Hydrocortisone (Non-proprietary)**

**Hydrocortisone (as Hydrocortisone sodium phosphate) 100 mg per 1 mL** Hydrocortisone sodium phosphate 100mg/1mL solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £8.33 DT = £8.33

**Foam**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

**► Colifoam (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)**

**Hydrocortisone acetate 100mg per 1 gram** Colifoam 10% aerosol | 14 dose [PoM] £9.33 DT price = £9.33

**Methylprednisolone****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Inflammatory and allergic disorders**

- BY MOUTH, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: 0.5–1.7 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses, divide doses depending on condition and response

**Treatment of graft rejection reactions**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child: 10–20 mg/kg once daily for 3 days, alternatively 400–600 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once daily (max. per dose 1 g) for 3 days

**Severe erythema multiforme | Lupus nephritis | Systemic onset juvenile idiopathic arthritis**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child: 10–30 mg/kg once daily or on alternate days (max. per dose 1 g) for up to 3 doses

**DEPO-MEDRONE®****Suppression of inflammatory and allergic disorders**

- BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child: Seek specialist advice, to be injected into the gluteal muscle

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: METHYLPREDNISOLONE INJECTABLE MEDICINE CONTAINING LACTOSE (**SOLU-MEDRONE® 40 MG**): DO NOT USE IN PATIENTS WITH COWS' MILK ALLERGY (OCTOBER 2017)

An EU-wide review has concluded that *Solu-Medrone®* 40 mg may contain trace amounts of milk proteins and should not be used in patients with a known or suspected allergy to cows' milk. Serious allergic reactions, including bronchospasm and anaphylaxis, have been reported in patients allergic to cows' milk proteins. If a patient's symptoms worsen or new allergic symptoms occur, administration should be stopped and the patient treated accordingly.

- **CAUTIONS** Rapid intravenous administration of large doses associated with cardiovascular collapse
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Diarrhoea · dizziness · dyslipidaemia · exophthalmos · fatigue · hiccups · hypotension · Kaposi's sarcoma · lipomatosis · malaise
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - With intravenous use Intravenous injection given over 30 minutes. For intravenous infusion, may be diluted with sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9% or 0.45%, or glucose intravenous infusion 5% or 10%.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for methylprednisolone tablets and injections (steroid card).

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

**Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

**► Methylprednisolone (Non-proprietary)**

**Methylprednisolone (as Methylprednisolone sodium succinate)** **500 mg** Methylprednisolone sodium succinate 500mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £9.60

**Methylprednisolone (as Methylprednisolone sodium succinate)** **1 gram** Methylprednisolone sodium succinate 1g powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £17.30

**► Solu-Medrone (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Methylprednisolone (as Methylprednisolone sodium succinate)** **40 mg** Solu-Medrone 40mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1.98



**Methylprednisolone (as Methylprednisolone sodium succinate)**  
125 mg Solu-Medrone 125mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £4.75

**Methylprednisolone (as Methylprednisolone sodium succinate)**  
500 mg Solu-Medrone 500mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £9.60

**Methylprednisolone (as Methylprednisolone sodium succinate)**  
1 gram Solu-Medrone 1g powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £17.30

**Methylprednisolone (as Methylprednisolone sodium succinate)**  
2 gram Solu-Medrone 2g powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £32.86

### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 21

#### ► Medrone (Pfizer Ltd)

**Methylprednisolone 2 mg** Medrone 2mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £3.88

**Methylprednisolone 4 mg** Medrone 4mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £6.19

**Methylprednisolone 16 mg** Medrone 16mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £17.17

**Methylprednisolone 100 mg** Medrone 100mg tablets | 20 tablet [PoM] £48.32

### Suspension for injection

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

#### ► Depo-Medrone (Pfizer Ltd)

**Methylprednisolone acetate 40 mg per 1 ml** Depo-Medrone 40mg/1ml suspension for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £3.44 DT = £3.44 | 10 vial [PoM] £34.04

**Depo-Medrone 80mg/2ml suspension for injection vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £6.18 DT = £6.18 | 10 vial [PoM] £61.39

**Depo-Medrone 120mg/3ml suspension for injection vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £8.96 DT = £8.96 | 10 vial [PoM] £88.81

£ 436

## Prednisolone

21-Dec-2017

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Severe croup (before transfer to hospital) | Mild croup that might cause complications (before transfer to hospital)**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 1–2 mg/kg

**Mild to moderate acute asthma (when oral corticosteroid taken for more than a few days) | Severe or life-threatening acute asthma (when oral corticosteroid taken for more than a few days)**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years: 2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 60 mg) for up to 3 days, longer if necessary

**Mild to moderate acute asthma | Severe or life-threatening acute asthma**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years: 1–2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 40 mg) for up to 3 days, longer if necessary
- Child 12–17 years: 40–50 mg daily for at least 5 days

**Autoimmune inflammatory disorders (including juvenile idiopathic arthritis, connective tissue disorders and systemic lupus erythematosus)**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Initially 1–2 mg/kg once daily, to be reduced after a few days if appropriate; maximum 60 mg per day

**Autoimmune hepatitis**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Initially 2 mg/kg once daily, to then be reduced to minimum effective dose; maximum 40 mg per day

**Corticosteroid replacement therapy**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 2–2.5 mg/m<sup>2</sup> daily in 1–2 divided doses, adjusted according to response

**Infantile spasms**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–1 year: Initially 10 mg 4 times a day for 14 days; increased to 20 mg 3 times a day for 7 days if

seizures not controlled after initial 7 days, reduce dose gradually over 15 days until stopped

**Infantile spasms (dose reduction in patient taking 40 mg daily)**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–1 year: Reduced in steps of 10 mg every 5 days, then stop

**Infantile spasms (dose reduction in patient taking 60 mg daily)**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–1 year: Reduced to 40 mg daily for 5 days, then reduced to 20 mg daily for 5 days, then reduced to 10 mg daily for 5 days and then stop

**Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–9 years: 1–2 mg/kg daily for maximum of 14 days, alternatively 4 mg/kg daily for a maximum of 4 days

**Nephrotic syndrome**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Initially 60 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once daily for 4–6 weeks until proteinuria ceases, then reduced to 40 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once daily on alternate days for 4–6 weeks, then withdraw by reducing dose gradually; maximum 80 mg per day

**Nephrotic syndrome (prevention of relapse)**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 0.5–1 mg/kg once daily or on alternate days for 3–6 months

**Ulcerative colitis | Crohn's disease**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–17 years: 2 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 60 mg) until remission occurs, followed by reducing doses

**Pneumocystis pneumonia in moderate to severe infections associated with HIV infection**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 2 mg/kg daily for 5 days, the dose is then reduced over the next 16 days and then stopped, corticosteroid treatment should ideally be started at the same time as the anti-pneumocystis therapy and certainly no later than 24–72 hours afterwards, the corticosteroid should be withdrawn before anti-pneumocystis treatment is complete; maximum 80 mg per day

**Proctitis**

#### ► BY RECTUM USING RECTAL FOAM

- Child 12–17 years: 1 metered application 1–2 times a day for 2 weeks, continued for further 2 weeks if good response, to be inserted into the rectum, 1 metered application contains 20 mg prednisolone

#### ► BY RECTUM USING SUPPOSITORIES

- Child 2–17 years: 5 mg twice daily, to be inserted into the rectum morning and night, after a bowel movement

**Distal ulcerative colitis**

#### ► BY RECTUM USING RECTAL FOAM

- Child 12–17 years: 1 metered application 1–2 times a day for 2 weeks, continued for further 2 weeks if good response, to be inserted into the rectum, 1 metered application contains 20 mg prednisolone

**Rectal complications of Crohn's disease**

#### ► BY RECTUM USING SUPPOSITORIES

- Child 2–17 years: 5 mg twice daily, to be inserted into the rectum morning and night, after a bowel movement

- **UNLICENSED USE** Prednisolone rectal foam not licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

#### SAFE PRACTICE

Prednisolone has been confused with propranolol; care must be taken to ensure the correct drug is prescribed and dispensed.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS**
  - ▶ With rectal use Bowel perforation • extensive fistulas • intestinal obstruction • recent intestinal anastomoses
- **CAUTIONS**
  - ▶ With rectal use systemic absorption may occur with rectal preparations
  - ▶ With systemic use Duchenne's muscular dystrophy (possible transient rhabdomyolysis and myoglobinuria following strenuous physical activity)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ With oral use Diarrhoea • dizziness • dyslipidaemia • exophthalmos • fatigue • lipomatosis • malaise • protein catabolism
- **PREGNANCY** As it crosses the placenta 88% of prednisolone is inactivated.
 

**Monitoring** ▶ With systemic use Pregnant women with fluid retention should be monitored closely.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Prednisolone appears in small amounts in breast milk but maternal doses of up to 40 mg daily are unlikely to cause systemic effects in the infant.
 

**Monitoring** ▶ With systemic use Infant should be monitored for adrenal suppression if mother is taking a dose higher than 40 mg.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for prednisolone tablets (steroid card).
 

Medicines for Children leaflet: Prednisolone (oral) for nephrotic syndrome [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/prednisolone-oral-nephrotic-syndrome](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/prednisolone-oral-nephrotic-syndrome)

Medicines for Children leaflet: Prednisolone for asthma [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/prednisolone-asthma](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/prednisolone-asthma)

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, enema

#### Foam

- ▶ **Prednisolone (Non-proprietary)**  
**Prednisolone (as Prednisolone sodium metasulphobenzate)**  
 20 mg per 1 application Prednisolone 20mg/application foam enema | 14 dose [PoM] £187.00 DT = £187.00

#### Gastro-resistant tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 10, 25

- ▶ **Prednisolone (Non-proprietary)**  
**Prednisolone 1 mg** Prednisolone 1mg gastro-resistant tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £1.60–£1.92 DT = £1.92  
**Prednisolone 2.5 mg** Prednisolone 2.5mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.83 DT = £0.74 | 30 tablet [PoM] £0.79–£6.15  
**Prednisolone 5 mg** Prednisolone 5mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.76 DT = £0.76 | 30 tablet [PoM] £0.81–£6.29
- ▶ **Deltacortril Enteric** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Prednisolone 2.5 mg** Deltacortril 2.5mg gastro-resistant tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £1.16  
**Prednisolone 5 mg** Deltacortril 5mg gastro-resistant tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £1.19
- ▶ **Dilacort** (Crescent Pharma Ltd, Teva UK Ltd)  
**Prednisolone 2.5 mg** Dilacort 2.5mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.14–£1.85 DT = £0.74  
**Prednisolone 5 mg** Dilacort 5mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.45–£1.85 DT = £0.76

### Soluble tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 13, 21

- ▶ **Prednisolone (Non-proprietary)**  
**Prednisolone (as Prednisolone sodium phosphate)**  
 5 mg Prednisolone 5mg soluble tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £53.48 DT = £21.47

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 21

- ▶ **Prednisolone (Non-proprietary)**  
**Prednisolone 1 mg** Prednisolone 1mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £4.00 DT = £0.37  
**Prednisolone 2.5 mg** Prednisolone 2.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.33  
**Prednisolone 5 mg** Prednisolone 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £9.86 DT = £0.47  
**Prednisolone 10 mg** Prednisolone 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.77  
**Prednisolone 20 mg** Prednisolone 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.55  
**Prednisolone 25 mg** Prednisolone 25mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £75.00 DT = £75.00  
**Prednisolone 30 mg** Prednisolone 30mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £8.15
- ▶ **Pevanti** (AMCo)  
**Prednisolone 2.5 mg** Pevanti 2.5mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £1.42 DT = £1.42  
**Prednisolone 5 mg** Pevanti 5mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £0.95  
**Prednisolone 10 mg** Pevanti 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £1.90 DT = £1.90  
**Prednisolone 20 mg** Pevanti 20mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £3.80 DT = £3.80  
**Prednisolone 25 mg** Pevanti 25mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £40.00 DT = £75.00

### Suppository

- ▶ **Prednisolone (Non-proprietary)**  
**Prednisolone (as Prednisolone sodium phosphate)**  
 5 mg Prednisolone sodium phosphate 5mg suppositories | 10 suppository [PoM] £55.61 DT = £50.98

### Suspension for injection

- ▶ **Deltastab** (AMCo)  
**Prednisolone acetate 25 mg per 1 ml** Deltastab 25mg/1ml suspension for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £68.72

### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

- ▶ **Prednisolone (Non-proprietary)**  
**Prednisolone 1 mg per 1 ml** Prednisolone 5mg/5ml oral solution unit dose | 10 unit dose [PoM] £11.41 DT = £11.41  
**Prednisolone 10 mg per 1 ml** Prednisolone 10mg/ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 30 ml [PoM] £55.00–£55.50 DT = £55.50

### Enema

- ▶ **Predsol** (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)  
**Prednisolone sodium phosphate 200 microgram per 1 ml** Predsol 20mg/100ml retention enema | 7 enema [PoM] £7.50 DT = £7.50

## 2.1 Cushing's syndrome and disease

### Cushing's Syndrome

#### Management

Most types of *Cushing's syndrome* are treated surgically. Metyrapone p. 444 may be useful to control the symptoms of the disease or to prepare the child for surgery. The dosages of metyrapone used are either low, and tailored to cortisol production, or high, in which case corticosteroid replacement therapy is also needed.

Ketoconazole p. 444 may have a direct effect on corticotropic tumour cells in patients with Cushing's disease. It is used under specialist supervision in children over 12 years for treatment of endogenous Cushing's syndrome.

## ENZYME INHIBITORS

### Ketoconazole

20-Jul-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** An imidazole derivative which acts as a potent inhibitor of cortisol and aldosterone synthesis by inhibiting the activity of  $17\alpha$ -hydroxylase,  $11\alpha$ -hydroxylase and at higher doses the cholesterol side-chain cleavage enzyme. It also inhibits the activity of adrenal C17-20 lyase enzymes resulting in androgen synthesis inhibition, and may have a direct effect on corticotrophic tumour cells in patients with Cushing's disease.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Endogenous Cushing's syndrome (specialist use only)

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12-17 years: Initially 400–600 mg daily in 2–3 divided doses, increased to 800–1200 mg daily; maintenance 400–800 mg daily in 2–3 divided doses, for dose titrations in patients with established dose, adjustments in adrenal insufficiency, or concomitant corticosteroid replacement therapy, consult product literature; maximum 1200 mg per day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acquired QTc prolongation · Acute porphyrias p. 603 · avoid concomitant use of hepatotoxic drugs · congenital QTc prolongation

- **CAUTIONS** Risk of adrenal insufficiency

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antifungals, azoles

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Adrenal insufficiency · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Allergic conditions · alopecia · angioedema · asthenia · dizziness · drowsiness · headache · thrombocytopenia
- **Rare or very rare** Fever · hepatic disorders · taste altered
- **Frequency not known** Alcohol intolerance · appetite abnormal · arthralgia · azoospermia · dry mouth · epistaxis · flatulence · fontanelle bulging · gynecomastia · hot flush · insomnia · intracranial pressure increased · malaise · menstrual disorder · myalgia · nervousness · papilloedema · paraesthesia · peripheral oedema · photophobia · photosensitivity reaction · tongue discoloration

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Potentially life-threatening hepatotoxicity reported rarely with oral use.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception must be used in women of child-bearing potential.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—teratogenic in animal studies.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in breast milk.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in acute or chronic impairment. Do not initiate treatment if liver enzymes greater than 2 times the normal upper limit.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Monitor ECG before and one week after initiation, and then as clinically indicated thereafter.
- Adrenal insufficiency Monitor adrenal function within one week of initiation, then regularly thereafter. When cortisol levels are normalised or close to target and effective dose established, monitor every 3–6 months as there is a risk of autoimmune disease development or exacerbation after normalisation of cortisol levels. If symptoms suggestive of adrenal insufficiency such as fatigue, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, hypotension, hyponatraemia, hyperkalaemia, and/or hypoglycaemia occur, measure cortisol levels and discontinue treatment temporarily (can be resumed

thereafter at lower dose) or reduce dose and if necessary, initiate corticosteroid substitution.

- **Hepatotoxicity** Monitor liver function before initiation of treatment, then weekly for 1 month after initiation, then monthly for 6 months—more frequently if dose adjusted or abnormal liver function detected. Reduce dose if liver enzymes increase less than 3 times the normal upper limit—consult product literature; if liver enzymes are raised to 3 times or greater the normal upper limit, discontinue treatment permanently.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder, and advised to discontinue treatment and seek prompt medical attention if symptoms such as anorexia, nausea, vomiting, fatigue, jaundice, abdominal pain, or dark urine develop.

Patients or their carers should also be told how to recognise signs of adrenal insufficiency.

**Driving and skilled tasks** Dizziness and somnolence may affect the performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 5, 21

##### ► Ketoconazole (non-proprietary) ▼

Ketoconazole 200 mg Ketoconazole 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £480.00

## Metyrapone

- **DRUG ACTION** Metyrapone is a competitive inhibitor of  $11\beta$ -hydroxylation in the adrenal cortex; the resulting inhibition of cortisol (and to a lesser extent aldosterone) production leads to an increase in ACTH production which, in turn, leads to increased synthesis and release of cortisol precursors. Metyrapone may be used as a test of anterior pituitary function.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Differential diagnosis of ACTH-dependent Cushing's syndrome (specialist supervision in hospital)

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 15 mg/kg every 4 hours for 6 doses, alternatively 300 mg/m<sup>2</sup> every 4 hours for 6 doses; usual dose 250–750 mg every 4 hours

##### Management of Cushing's syndrome (specialist supervision in hospital)

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Usual dose 0.25–6 g daily, dose to be tailored to cortisol production, dose is either low, and tailored to cortisol production, or high, in which case corticosteroid replacement therapy is also needed

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Adrenocortical insufficiency

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid in acute porphyrias p. 603 · gross hypopituitarism (risk of precipitating acute adrenal failure) · hypertension on long-term administration · hypothyroidism (delayed response)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: metyrapone

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Dizziness · headache · hypotension · nausea · sedation · vomiting
- **Rare or very rare** Abdominal pain · adrenal insufficiency · allergic dermatitis · hirsutism
- **Frequency not known** Alopecia · bone marrow failure · hypertension

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (may impair biosynthesis of fetal-placental steroids).

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—no information available.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in hepatic impairment (delayed response).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Driving and skilled tasks Drowsiness may affect the performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

■ **Metopirone** (HRA Pharma UK Ltd)

**Metypalone 250 mg** Metopirone 250mg capsules | 100 capsule **[PoM]** £363.66

## 3 Diabetes mellitus and hypoglycaemia

### 3.1 Diabetes mellitus

#### Diabetes

05-Jun-2017

**Description of condition**

Diabetes mellitus is a group of metabolic disorders in which persistent hyperglycaemia is caused by deficient insulin secretion or by resistance to the action of insulin. This leads to the abnormalities of carbohydrate, fat and protein metabolism that are characteristic of diabetes mellitus.

Type 1 diabetes mellitus below and Type 2 diabetes mellitus p. 448 are the two most common classifications of diabetes. Other common types of diabetes are gestational diabetes (develops during pregnancy and resolves after delivery) and secondary diabetes (may be caused by pancreatic damage, hepatic cirrhosis, or endocrine disease). Treatment with endocrine, antiviral or antipsychotic drugs may also cause secondary diabetes. In children, conditions such as cystic fibrosis can lead to diabetes; monogenic diabetes (previously known as maturity onset diabetes in the young) can also occur due to a single gene defect.

**Driving**

Information on the requirements for driving vehicles by young people receiving treatment for diabetes is available in the BNF or from the DVLA at [www.gov.uk/guidance/diabetes-mellitus-assessing-fitness-to-drive](http://www.gov.uk/guidance/diabetes-mellitus-assessing-fitness-to-drive).

**Alcohol**

Adolescents and their carers should be made aware that alcohol can make the signs of hypoglycaemia less clear, and can cause delayed hypoglycaemia; (note: specialist sources recommend that **adult** patients with diabetes should drink alcohol only in moderation, and when accompanied by food).

**Oral glucose tolerance tests**

The oral glucose tolerance test is used mainly for diagnosis of impaired glucose tolerance; it is **not** recommended or necessary for routine diagnostic use of diabetes when severe symptoms of hyperglycaemia are present. In children who have less severe symptoms and blood-glucose levels that do not establish or exclude diabetes (e.g. impaired fasting glycaemia), an oral glucose tolerance test may be required. It may be useful for diagnosis of monogenic diabetes or cystic fibrosis related diabetes, and is used to establish the presence of gestational diabetes.

An oral glucose tolerance test involves measuring the blood-glucose concentration after fasting, and then 2 hours after drinking a standard anhydrous glucose drink. Anhydrous glucose may alternatively be given as the

appropriate amount of *Polycal*® or as *Rapilose*® OGTT oral solution.

**HbA1c measurement**

Glycated haemoglobin (HbA1c) forms when red blood cells are exposed to glucose in the plasma. The HbA1c test reflects average plasma glucose over the previous 2 to 3 months and provides a good indicator of glycaemic control. Unlike the oral glucose tolerance test, an HbA1c test can be performed at any time of the day and does not require any special preparation such as fasting.

HbA1c values are expressed in *mmol of glycated haemoglobin per mol of haemoglobin (mmol/mol)*, a standardised unit specific for HbA1c created by the International Federation of Clinical Chemistry and Laboratory Medicine (IFCC). HbA1c values were previously aligned to the assay used in the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) and expressed as a percentage.

Equivalent values	
IFCC-HbA1c (mmol/mol)	DCCT-HbA1c (%)
42	6.0
48	6.5
53	7.0
59	7.5
64	8.0
69	8.5
75	9.0

The HbA1c test is used for monitoring glycaemic control in both Type 1 diabetes and Type 2 diabetes in children, and for diagnosis of Type 2 diabetes in adults. [\[EvGr\]](#) HbA1c should not be used to diagnose diabetes in children. [⚠](#)

HbA1c is also a reliable predictor of microvascular and macrovascular complications and mortality. Lower HbA1c is associated with a lower risk of long term vascular complications, and children and their carers should be supported to aim for an individualised HbA1c target (see Type 1 diabetes below and Type 2 diabetes p. 448). [\[EvGr\]](#) HbA1c should usually be measured in children with type 1 and type 2 diabetes every 3 months; and more frequently in children with type 1 diabetes if blood-glucose is poorly controlled. [⚠](#)

HbA1c monitoring is invalid in children with disturbed erythrocyte turnover or in children with a lack of, or abnormal haemoglobin (for example, any anaemia, a recent blood transfusion, or an altered red cell lifespan). In these cases, quality-controlled plasma glucose profiles, total glycated haemoglobin estimation (if there is abnormal haemoglobin), or fructosamine estimation can be used.

Laboratory measurement of fructosamine concentration measures the glycated fraction of all plasma proteins over the previous 14 to 21 days but is a less accurate measure of glycaemic control than HbA1c.

### Type 1 diabetes

05-Jun-2017

**Description of condition**

Type 1 diabetes describes an absolute insulin deficiency in which there is little or no endogenous insulin secretory capacity due to destruction of insulin-producing beta-cells in the pancreatic islets of Langerhans. This form of the disease has an auto-immune basis in most cases, and it can occur at any age, but most commonly before adulthood.

Loss of insulin secretion results in hyperglycaemia and other metabolic abnormalities. If poorly managed, the

resulting tissue damage has both short-term and long-term adverse effects on health; this can result in retinopathy, nephropathy, premature cardiovascular disease, and peripheral artery disease.

Typical features in children presenting with type 1 diabetes are hyperglycaemia, polyuria, polydipsia, weight loss, and excessive tiredness.

## Aims of treatment

Treatment is aimed at using insulin regimens to achieve as optimal a level of blood-glucose control as is feasible, while avoiding or reducing the frequency of hypoglycaemic episodes, in order to minimise the risk of long-term microvascular and macrovascular complications. Disability from complications can often be prevented by early detection and active management of the disease (Diabetic complications p. 449).

**EvGr** The target for glycaemic control should be individualised for each child, considering factors such as daily activities, aspirations, likelihood of complications, adherence to treatment, comorbidities, and history of hypoglycaemia. Tighter control of blood-glucose is now recommended for children with type 1 diabetes and treatment should attempt to reach near normal HbA1c and blood-glucose concentration. A target HbA1c concentration of 48 mmol/mol (6.5%) or lower is recommended in children to minimise the risk of long-term complications. The optimal plasma glucose targets for children are:

- fasting blood-glucose concentration of 4–7 mmol/litre on waking;
- a blood-glucose concentration of 4–7 mmol/litre before meals at other times of the day;
- a blood-glucose concentration of 5–9 mmol/litre after meals;
- a blood-glucose concentration of at least 5 mmol/litre in young people when driving. **⚠**

## Overview

**EvGr** Type 1 diabetes requires insulin replacement, supported when necessary by active management of other associated cardiovascular risk factors such as hypertension. Tight glycaemic control may be achieved by intensive insulin management (multiple daily injections or insulin pump therapy) from diagnosis, accompanied by carbohydrate counting.

The effectiveness of metformin in combination with insulin is not yet known in children, and so should not be used; other oral antidiabetic drugs should not be used in combination with insulin as their use may increase the risk of hypoglycaemia.

Dietary control is important in both type 1 and type 2 diabetes and children (with their families) should be encouraged to develop good knowledge of nutrition and how it affects their diabetes and insulin requirements. Healthy eating, regular exercise, and control of body-weight can reduce cardiovascular risk and help improve glycaemic control.

Children with type 1 diabetes over the age of 6 months should receive immunisation against influenza and pneumococcal infection (in children treated with antidiabetic drugs)—see Vaccines p. 777. **⚠**

## Management of type 1 diabetes with insulin

**EvGr** All children with type 1 diabetes require insulin therapy (see also Insulin p. 447). Treatment should be initiated and managed by clinicians with relevant expertise; there are three basic types of insulin regimen, although each regimen should be individualised.

Children should also be offered carbohydrate-counting training as part of a structured education programme. **⚠**

## Multiple daily injection basal-bolus insulin regimens

One or more separate daily injections of intermediate-acting insulin or long-acting insulin analogue as the basal insulin; alongside multiple bolus injections of short-acting insulin before meals. This regimen offers flexibility to tailor insulin therapy with the carbohydrate load of each meal.

## Mixed (biphasic) regimen

One, two, or three insulin injections per day of short-acting insulin mixed with intermediate-acting insulin. The insulin preparations may be mixed by the patient at the time of injection, or a premixed product can be used.

## Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (insulin pump)

A regular or continuous amount of insulin (usually in the form of a rapid-acting insulin analogue or soluble insulin), delivered by a programmable pump and insulin storage reservoir via a subcutaneous needle or cannula.

## Recommended insulin regimens

**EvGr** Children should be offered multiple daily injection basal-bolus regimens initiated at diagnosis, considering personal and family circumstances, and personal preferences. Children and their carers should be encouraged to adjust the insulin dose as appropriate after each blood-glucose measurement, and to inject rapid-acting insulin analogues before eating (rather than after eating); this reduces blood-glucose concentrations after meals and helps to optimise blood-glucose control.

If a multiple daily injection basal-bolus insulin regimen is unsuitable, or the child does not have optimal blood-glucose control, it may be necessary to offer an alternative insulin regimen (either continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion or once-, twice- or three-times daily mixed injections) as well as additional support (such as increased contact with their specialist diabetes team).

Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (or insulin pump) therapy may be considered under the care of a specialist team. It should only be offered to children over 12 years who suffer disabling hypoglycaemia, or, who have high HbA1c concentrations (69 mmol/mol [8.5%] or above) with multiple daily injection therapy (including, if appropriate, the use of long-acting insulin analogues) despite a high level of care. Children under 12 years may be offered insulin pump therapy if a multiple daily injection regimen is impractical or inappropriate, but they should undergo a trial of a multiple dose injection regimen between the ages of 12 and 18 years.

If the chosen regimen is a twice daily injection regimen, the insulin dose should be adjusted according to the general trend in pre-meal, bedtime and occasional night-time blood-glucose concentration. **⚠**

## Insulin requirements

**EvGr** The dosage of insulin must be determined individually for each child and should be adjusted as necessary according to the results of regular monitoring of blood-glucose concentrations.

Prescribers and patients should be aware that initiation of insulin may be followed by a **temporary** partial remission phase or 'honeymoon period' when lower doses of insulin are required than are subsequently necessary to maintain glycaemic control with an HbA1c concentration of less than 48 mmol/mol (6.5%). **⚠**

**EvGr** Insulin doses should be reviewed after puberty (around 1 year after menarche or after the growth spurt in boys) as insulin resistance falls after puberty, and maintenance of pubertal doses may increase the risk for excessive weight gain. **⚠**

**EvGr** Persistent poor glucose control, leading to erratic insulin requirements or episodes of hypoglycaemia, may be due to many factors, including adherence, injection technique, injection site problems, blood-glucose monitoring skills, lifestyle issues (including diet and exercise), psychological issues, and organic causes such as



renal disease, thyroid disorders, coeliac disease, Addison's disease or gastroparesis. A review of the child's injection sites should be offered at each clinic visit. **⚠**

Infection, stress, accidental or surgical trauma, and puberty may all increase the required insulin dose. Insulin requirements may be decreased (and therefore susceptibility to hypoglycaemia increased) by physical activity, intercurrent illness, reduced food intake, and in certain endocrine disorders, such as anterior pituitary or adrenocortical insufficiency and hypothyroidism.

**EvGr** Rapid-acting insulin analogues should be supplied for use during intercurrent illness and episodes of hyperglycaemia. **⚠**

### Risks of hypoglycaemia with insulin

**EvGr** Hypoglycaemia is an inevitable adverse effect of insulin treatment, and children and their carers should be advised of the warning signs and actions to take (for guidance on management, see Hypoglycaemia p. 465). **⚠**

Impaired awareness of hypoglycaemia can occur, when the ability to recognise usual symptoms is lost, or when the symptoms are blunted or no longer present. **EvGr** Awareness of hypoglycaemia should be discussed and assessed with the child and their carer approximately every 3 months. **⚠**

An increase in the frequency of hypoglycaemic episodes may reduce the warning symptoms experienced by the child. Impaired awareness of symptoms below 3 mmol/litre is associated with a significantly increased risk of severe hypoglycaemia. Beta-blockers can also blunt hypoglycaemic awareness, by reducing warning signs such as tremor.

Loss of warning of hypoglycaemia among insulin-treated children can be a serious hazard, especially for adolescents who are drivers, cyclists, or in dangerous occupations. Advice should be given in line with the Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency (DVLA) guidance (see *Driving*, under Diabetes p. 445).

**EvGr** To restore the warning signs, episodes of hypoglycaemia must be minimised. Insulin regimens, doses and blood-glucose targets should be reviewed and continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion therapy and real-time continuous glucose monitoring should be considered. **⚠**

**EvGr** Children and their carers should receive structured education to ensure they are following the principles of a flexible insulin regimen correctly, with additional education regarding avoiding and treating hypoglycaemia for those who continue to have impaired awareness. If recurrent severe episodes of hypoglycaemia continue despite appropriate interventions, the child should be referred to a specialist centre. **⚠**

Manufacturers advise any switch between brands or formulation of insulin (including switching from animal to human insulin) should be done under strict supervision; a change in dose may be required.

### Hypodermic equipment

**EvGr** Children and their carers should be advised on the safe disposal of lancets, single-use syringes, and needles, and should be provided with suitable disposal containers. Arrangements should be made for the suitable disposal of these containers. **⚠**

Lancets, needles, syringes, and accessories are listed under Hypodermic Equipment in Part IXA of the Drug Tariff (Part III of the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff, Part 3 of the Scottish Drug Tariff). The Drug Tariffs can be accessed online at:

- National Health Service Drug Tariff for England and Wales: [www.nhsbsa.nhs.uk/pharmacies-gp-practices-and-appliance-contractors/drug-tariff](http://www.nhsbsa.nhs.uk/pharmacies-gp-practices-and-appliance-contractors/drug-tariff)
- Health and Personal Social Services for Northern Ireland Drug Tariff: [www.hscbusiness.hscni.net/Services/2034.htm](http://www.hscbusiness.hscni.net/Services/2034.htm)
- Scottish Drug Tariff:

[www.isdscotland.org/Health-Topics/Prescribing-and-Medicines/Scottish-Drug-Tariff](http://www.isdscotland.org/Health-Topics/Prescribing-and-Medicines/Scottish-Drug-Tariff)

### Useful Resources

Diabetes (type 1 and type 2) in children and young people: diagnosis and management. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Clinical guideline NG18. August 2015. [www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng18](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng18)

## Insulin

05-Jun-2017

### Overview

For recommended insulin regimens see Type 1 diabetes p. 445 and Type 2 diabetes p. 448.

Insulin is a polypeptide hormone secreted by pancreatic beta-cells. Insulin increases glucose uptake by adipose tissue and muscles, and suppresses hepatic glucose release. The role of insulin is to lower blood-glucose concentrations in order to prevent hyperglycaemia and its associated microvascular, macrovascular and metabolic complications.

The natural profile of insulin secretion in the body consists of basal insulin (a low and steady secretion of background insulin that controls the glucose continuously released from the liver) and meal-time bolus insulin (secreted in response to glucose absorbed from food and drink).

### Sources of insulin

Three types of insulin are available in the UK: human insulin, human insulin analogues, and animal insulin. Animal insulins are extracted and purified from animal sources (bovine or porcine insulin). Although widely used in the past, animal insulins are no longer initiated in people with diabetes but may still be used by some adult patients who cannot, or do not wish to, change to human insulins.

Human insulins are produced by recombinant DNA technology and have the same amino acid sequence as endogenous human insulin. Human insulin analogues are produced in the same way as human insulins, but the insulin is modified to produce a desired kinetic characteristic, such as an extended duration of action or faster absorption and onset of action.

Immunological resistance to insulin is uncommon and true insulin allergy is rare. Human insulin and insulin analogues are less immunogenic than animal insulins.

### Administration of insulin

Insulin is inactivated by gastro-intestinal enzymes and must therefore be given by injection; the subcutaneous route is ideal in most circumstances. Insulin should be injected into a body area with plenty of subcutaneous fat—usually the abdomen (fastest absorption rate) or outer thighs/buttocks (slower absorption compared with the abdomen or inner thighs).

Absorption from a limb site can vary considerably (by as much as 20–40%) day-to-day, particularly in children. Local tissue reactions, changes in insulin sensitivity, injection site, blood flow, depth of injection, and the amount of insulin injected can all affect the rate of absorption. Increased blood flow around the injection site due to exercise can also increase insulin absorption.

**EvGr** Lipohypertrophy can occur due to repeatedly injecting into the same small area, and can cause erratic absorption of insulin, and contribute to poor glycaemic control. Patients should be advised not to use affected areas for further injection until the skin has recovered. Lipohypertrophy can be minimised by using different injection sites in rotation. Injection sites should be checked for signs of infection, swelling, bruising, and lipohypertrophy before administration. **⚠**

## Insulin preparations

Insulin preparations can be broadly categorised into three groups based on their time-action profiles: short-acting insulins (including soluble insulin and rapid-acting insulins), intermediate-acting insulins and long-acting insulins. The duration of action of each particular type of insulin varies considerably from one patient to another, and needs to be assessed individually.

### Short-acting insulins

Short-acting insulins have a short duration and a relatively rapid onset of action, to replicate the insulin normally produced by the body in response to glucose absorbed from a meal. These are available as soluble Insulin p. 447 (human and, bovine or porcine—both rarely used), and the rapid-acting insulin analogues (insulin aspart p. 455, insulin glulisine p. 456 and insulin lispro p. 456).

### Soluble insulin

Soluble insulin is usually given subcutaneously but some preparations can be given intravenously and intramuscularly. For maintenance regimens, it is usual to inject the insulin 15 to 30 minutes before meals, depending on the insulin preparation used.

*When injected subcutaneously*, soluble insulin has a rapid onset of action (30 to 60 minutes), a peak action between 1 and 4 hours, and a duration of action of up to 9 hours.

*When injected intravenously*, soluble insulin has a short half-life of only a few minutes and its onset of action is instantaneous.

Soluble insulin administered intravenously is the most appropriate form of insulin for use in diabetic emergencies e.g. Diabetic ketoacidosis p. 449 and peri-operatively.

### Rapid-acting insulin

Insulin aspart, insulin glulisine, and insulin lispro have a faster onset of action (within 15 minutes) and shorter duration of action (approximately 2–5 hours) than soluble insulin, and are usually given by subcutaneous injection.

**[EvGr]** For maintenance regimens, these insulins should ideally be injected immediately before meals. Rapid-acting insulin, administered before meals, has an advantage over short-acting soluble insulin in terms of improved glucose control, reduction of HbA1c, and reduction in the incidence of severe hypoglycaemia, including nocturnal hypoglycaemia.

The routine use of *post-meal* injections of rapid-acting insulin should be avoided—when given during or after meals, they are associated with poorer glucose control, an increased risk of high postprandial-glucose concentration, and subsequent hypoglycaemia. **[A]**

### Intermediate-acting insulin

Intermediate-acting insulins (isophane insulin p. 457) have an intermediate duration of action, designed to mimic the effect of endogenous basal insulin. When given by subcutaneous injection, they have an onset of action of approximately 1–2 hours, a maximal effect at 3–12 hours, and a duration of action of 11–24 hours.

Isophane insulin is a suspension of insulin with protamine; it may be given as one or more daily injections alongside separate meal-time short-acting insulin injections, or mixed with a short-acting (soluble or rapid-acting) insulin in the same syringe—for recommended insulin regimens see Type 1 diabetes p. 445 and Type 2 diabetes below. Isophane insulin may be mixed with a short-acting insulin by the patient, or a pre-mixed biphasic insulin can be supplied (biphasic isophane insulin p. 457, biphasic insulin aspart p. 458 and biphasic insulin lispro p. 458).

Biphasic insulins (biphasic isophane insulin, biphasic insulin aspart, biphasic insulin lispro) are pre-mixed insulin preparations containing various combinations of short-acting insulin (soluble insulin or rapid-acting analogue insulin) and an intermediate-acting insulin.

The percentage of short-acting insulin varies from 15% to 50%. These preparations should be administered by subcutaneous injection immediately before a meal.

### Long-acting insulin

Like intermediate-acting insulins, the long-acting insulins (protamine zinc insulin p. 460, insulin zinc suspension p. 459, insulin detemir p. 459, insulin glargine p. 459, insulin degludec p. 458) mimic endogenous basal insulin secretion, but their duration of action may last up to 36 hours. They achieve a steady-state level after 2–4 days to produce a constant level of insulin.

Insulin glargine and insulin degludec are given once daily and insulin detemir is given once or twice daily according to individual requirements. The older long-acting insulins, (insulin zinc suspension and protamine zinc insulin) are now rarely prescribed.

## Type 2 diabetes

05-Jun-2017

### Description of condition

Type 2 diabetes is a chronic metabolic condition characterised by insulin resistance. Insufficient pancreatic insulin production also occurs progressively over time, resulting in hyperglycaemia.

Type 2 diabetes in children is associated with increased body-weight, increased risk of renal complications, hypertension, and dyslipidaemia; therefore it increases cardiovascular risk. It is associated with long-term microvascular and macrovascular complications, together with reduced quality of life and life expectancy.

Type 2 diabetes typically develops later in life but is increasingly diagnosed in children, despite previously being considered a disease of adulthood.

### Aims of treatment

Treatment is aimed at minimising the risk of long-term microvascular and macrovascular complications by effective blood-glucose control and maintenance of HbA1c at or below the target value set for each individual child.

### Overview

**[EvGr]** Lifestyle modifications (including weight loss, smoking cessation and regular exercise) can help to reduce hyperglycaemia and reduce cardiovascular risk and should be encouraged where appropriate. Children and their carers should also receive advice from a paediatric dietitian to help optimise body-weight and blood-glucose control.

Lifestyle modifications alone are often unsuccessful at achieving glycaemic control in children, therefore antidiabetic drugs should be offered and initiated alongside lifestyle interventions such as diet and exercise, from the time of diagnosis.

Children with type 2 diabetes should receive immunisation against influenza (over the age of 6 months) and pneumococcal infection—see Vaccines p. 777. **[A]**

### Antidiabetic drugs

In children, type 2 diabetes does not usually occur until adolescence and information on the use of oral antidiabetic drugs in children is limited. For recommended treatment regimens and the place in therapy of each drug, see *Treatment of type 2 diabetes*.

**[EvGr]** Treatment with antidiabetic drugs should be initiated under specialist supervision **only**. **[E]**

Metformin hydrochloride p. 452 is the only oral antidiabetic drug licensed for use in children. It has an anti-hyperglycaemic effect, lowering both basal and postprandial blood-glucose concentrations. Metformin hydrochloride does not stimulate insulin secretion and therefore, when given alone, does not cause hypoglycaemia.

**[EvGr]** The dose of standard-release metformin hydrochloride should be increased gradually to minimise the risk of gastrointestinal side-effects. **⚠**

There is little experience of the use of other non-insulin antidiabetic drugs in children, with most evidence extrapolated from adult studies.

Several **sulfonylureas** (such as gliclazide p. 453, glibenclamide p. 453 and tolbutamide p. 453) are available but experience in children is limited; they are not the recommended choice of treatment in children; therefore treatment should be initiated by a specialist. The sulfonylureas may cause hypoglycaemia which may be more common in children than in adults. Hypoglycaemia is more likely with long-acting sulfonylureas such as glibenclamide, which has been associated with severe, prolonged and sometimes fatal cases—for this reason sulfonylureas are usually avoided in children.

### Treatment of type 2 diabetes

**[EvGr]** A target HbA1c concentration of 48 mmol/mol (6.5%) or lower is ideal to minimise the risk of long-term complications, however an individualised lowest achievable target should be agreed with each child and their carers taking into account factors such as daily activities, individual life goals, complications, and comorbidities. HbA1c concentrations should be monitored every 3 months.

**Note:** Consider relaxing the target HbA1c level on a case-by-case basis, with particular consideration for children where tight blood-glucose control is not appropriate or poses a high risk of the consequences of hypoglycaemia.

Standard-release metformin hydrochloride is the first-line choice for initial treatment in children and should be offered from diagnosis, alongside nutrition and lifestyle advice.

If the combination of lifestyle changes and metformin hydrochloride fails to reduce HbA1c to the agreed target within 3 to 4 months of therapy, addition of a long-acting insulin or once-daily human isophane insulin p. 457 should be considered (see also, Insulin p. 447). **⚠**

**[EvGr]** Initiation of insulin should be under specialist care. **⚠**

**[EvGr]** Metformin hydrochloride should be continued alongside insulin, to improve insulin sensitivity. The combination of metformin hydrochloride and once-daily insulin is usually an effective treatment for maintaining glycaemic control in the majority of children for extended periods of time.

If the combination of basal insulin and metformin does not achieve the HbA1c target (and postprandial hyperglycaemia persists) addition of prandial rapid- or short-acting insulin should be initiated and titrated until the target HbA1c is met. **⚠** Weight gain may occur and can be particularly problematic in children with type 2 diabetes when insulin therapy is initiated, unless there is careful attention and adherence to dietary measures. **[EvGr]** The importance of diet and exercise should be emphasised. **⚠**

### Useful Resources

Diabetes (type and type 2) in children and young people: diagnosis and management. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Clinical guideline NG18. August 2015 [www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng18](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng18).

## Diabetic complications

### See also

Diabetes p. 445

Type 1 diabetes p. 445

Type 2 diabetes p. 448

## Diabetes and cardiovascular disease

Diabetes is a strong risk factor for cardiovascular disease later in life. Other risk factors for cardiovascular disease (smoking, hypertension, obesity and hyperlipidaemia) should be addressed. The use of an ACE inhibitor and of a lipid-regulating drug can be beneficial in children with diabetes and a high cardiovascular disease risk. (ACE inhibitors may also have a role in the management of diabetic nephropathy).

### Diabetic nephropathy

Regular review of diabetic children over 12 years of age should include an annual test for microalbuminuria (the earliest sign of nephropathy). If reagent strip tests (*Micral-Test II*<sup>®</sup> or *Microalbumintest*<sup>™</sup>) are used and prove positive, the result should be confirmed by laboratory analysis of a urine sample. Microalbuminuria can occur transiently during puberty; if it persists (at least 3 positive tests) treatment with an ACE inhibitor or an angiotensin-II receptor antagonist under specialist guidance should be considered; to minimise the risk of renal deterioration, blood pressure should be carefully controlled.

ACE inhibitors can potentiate the hypoglycaemic effect of insulin and oral antidiabetic drugs; this effect is more likely during the first weeks of combined treatment and in children with renal impairment.

See also treatment of hypertension in diabetes.

### Diabetic neuropathy

Clinical neuropathy is rare in children whose diabetes is well controlled.

## Diabetic ketoacidosis

### Management

The management of diabetic ketoacidosis involves the replacement of fluid and electrolytes and the administration of insulin. Guidelines for the Management of Diabetic Ketoacidosis, published by the British Society of Paediatric Endocrinology and Diabetes, (available at [www.bspegd.org.uk](http://www.bspegd.org.uk)) should be followed. Clinically well children with mild ketoacidosis who are dehydrated up to 5% usually respond to oral rehydration and subcutaneous insulin. For those who do not respond, or are clinically unwell, or are dehydrated by more than 5%, insulin and replacement fluids are best given by intravenous infusion.

- To restore circulating volume for children in *shock*, give 10 mL/kg **sodium chloride 0.9%** as a rapid infusion, repeat as necessary up to a maximum of 30 mL/kg.
- Further fluid should be given by intravenous infusion at a rate that replaces deficit and provides maintenance over 48 hours; initially use **sodium chloride 0.9%**, changing to **sodium chloride 0.45%** and **glucose 5%** after 12 hours if response is adequate and plasma-sodium concentration is stable.
- Include **potassium chloride** in the fluids unless anuria is suspected, adjust according to plasma-potassium concentration.
- Insulin infusion is necessary to switch off ketogenesis and reverse acidosis; it should not be started until at least 1 hour after the start of intravenous rehydration fluids.
- **Soluble insulin** should be diluted (and **mixed thoroughly**) with **sodium chloride 0.9%** intravenous infusion to a concentration of 1 unit/mL and infused at a rate of 0.1 units/kg/hour.
- **Sodium bicarbonate** infusion (1.26% or 2.74%) is rarely necessary and is used only in cases of extreme acidosis (blood pH less than 6.9) and shock, since the acid-base disturbance is normally corrected by treatment with insulin.

- Once blood glucose falls to 14 mmol/litre, **glucose intravenous infusion 5% or 10%** should be added to the fluids.
- The insulin infusion rate can be reduced to no less than 0.05 units/kg/hour when blood-glucose concentration has fallen to 14 mmol/litre and blood pH is greater than 7.3 and a glucose infusion has been started; it is continued until the child is ready to take food by mouth. Subcutaneous insulin can then be started.
- The insulin infusion should not be stopped until 1 hour after starting subcutaneous soluble or long acting insulin, or 10 minutes after starting subcutaneous insulin aspart p. 455, or insulin glulisine p. 456, or insulin lispro p. 456.

Hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic state or hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic nonketotic coma occurs rarely in children. Treatment is similar to that of diabetic ketoacidosis, although lower rates of insulin infusion and slower rehydration may be required.

## Diabetes, surgery and medical illness

05-Jun-2017

### Management of diabetes during surgery

**[EvGr]** Children with diabetes should undergo surgery in centres with facilities and expertise for the care of children with diabetes. Detailed local protocols should be available to all healthcare professionals involved in the treatment of these children. All surgery requiring general anaesthesia in children with type 1 and type 2 diabetes requires hospital admission. **[A]**

**Note:** The following recommendations provide general guidance for the management of diabetes during surgery.

**Local protocols and guidelines should be referred to where they exist.**

#### Use of insulin during surgery

##### **Elective surgery—minor procedures**

**[EvGr]** **Minor procedures** (procedures of less than 2 hours requiring either general anaesthesia or heavy sedation) in children who have type 1 or type 2 diabetes should not have a major impact on glycaemic control, and a slight modification of the usual regimen may be all that is necessary—adjustments should be made following local protocol; taking into consideration the type of insulin or antidiabetic drugs the child usually takes, whether fasting is required, the time of day of the operation, and requirement for intravenous fluids and glucose. All children who are usually prescribed insulin require intravenous insulin during surgery, to avoid ketoacidosis. **[A]**

##### **Elective surgery—major procedures**

**[EvGr]** **Major procedures** (procedures requiring general anaesthesia for more than 2 hours) in children who have type 1 or type 2 diabetes, should ideally be performed when diabetes is under optimal control. If glycaemic control is poor, the procedure should be delayed if possible; otherwise it is advisable to admit the child well in advance of surgery for stabilisation of glycaemic control.

Blood-glucose concentration should be maintained within the usual target range of 5–10 mmol/litre throughout the peri-operative period for all surgical procedures.

Children usually prescribed insulin for type 1 or type 2 diabetes require an intravenous insulin infusion p. 454 during surgery (even if fasting) to avoid ketoacidosis. Detailed local protocols should be consulted. In general, the following steps should be followed:

- on the *evening before surgery*, the usual insulin regimen should be given as normal; the usual bedtime snack should be given and hourly capillary blood-glucose monitoring should be initiated to detect hypoglycaemia or hyperglycaemia before the procedure. Ketones should also

be checked if blood-glucose is above 14 mmol/litre, and an appropriate dose of short-acting insulin should be administered to restore blood-glucose to the target range;

- on the *morning of surgery* the **usual** insulin dose should be omitted;
- at least 2 hours *before the procedure*, a maintenance fluid infusion of sodium chloride 0.45 % and glucose 5 % (sodium chloride with glucose) intravenous infusion should be started. A switch to sodium chloride 0.9 % infusion may be required if sodium concentration falls and there is risk of hyponatraemia. After surgery, potassium chloride p. 601 should be added to the intravenous fluid, according to the child's body weight and fluid requirements. Electrolytes must be measured frequently throughout, and adjustments to the infusion made as necessary;
- soluble human insulin 1 unit/mL in sodium chloride 0.9 % intravenous infusion should be started with the maintenance fluids at an infusion rate appropriate to the blood-glucose concentration, to maintain a concentration between 5 and 10 mmol/litre, adjusted according to hourly blood-glucose monitoring;
- if the blood-glucose concentration falls below 6 mmol/litre the insulin infusion should **not** be stopped as this will cause rebound hyperglycaemia; instead the rate should be reduced; however, if blood-glucose concentration drops below 4 mmol/litre the insulin infusion can be stopped temporarily for 10–15 minutes. **[A]**

**[EvGr]** After surgery, continue the glucose infusion, and the intravenous insulin infusion or additional short-acting insulin as necessary, until the child can eat and drink normally and their usual treatment regimen can resume. A short-acting insulin can also be given if required to reduce hyperglycaemia. **[A]**

#### Emergency surgery

**[EvGr]** Children with diabetes (type 1 and 2) requiring emergency surgery, should always have their blood-glucose, blood or urinary ketone concentration, and serum electrolytes checked before surgery. If ketones are high, blood gases should also be checked. If ketoacidosis is present, recommendations for Diabetic ketoacidosis p. 449 should be followed immediately, and surgery delayed if possible. If there is no acidosis, intravenous fluids and an insulin infusion should be started and managed as for *major elective surgery* (above). **[A]**

#### Use of antidiabetic drugs during surgery

**[EvGr]** If elective *minor surgical procedures* only require a short-fasting period (just one missed meal), it may be possible to adjust antidiabetic drugs to avoid a switch to a variable rate intravenous insulin infusion; normal drug treatment can continue.

Children who usually take **sulfonylureas** should have their medication stopped on the day of surgery. **[A]**

**[EvGr]** **Sulfonylureas** are associated with hypoglycaemia in the fasted state and therefore should not be recommenced until the child is eating and drinking normally. **[E]**

**[EvGr]** Children undergoing *minor procedures* require hourly blood-glucose monitoring and, if blood-glucose concentration rises above 10 mmol/litre, should be treated with subcutaneous rapid-acting insulin no more frequently than every 3 hours.

Children undergoing a *major surgical procedure* expected to last at least 2 hours should be managed on an intravenous insulin infusion following the recommendations for *Elective surgery* (above). **[A]**

**[EvGr]** Insulin is almost always required in medical and surgical emergencies. **[E]**

**[EvGr]** **Metformin hydrochloride p. 452** is renally excreted; renal impairment may lead to accumulation and lactic acidosis during surgery. In children undergoing *major surgery* lasting more than 2 hours, metformin hydrochloride

should be discontinued 24 hours before the procedure. Children having minor surgery lasting less than 2 hours may stop their metformin on the day of surgery. Metformin hydrochloride should not be restarted until at least 48 hours after surgery or after the child is eating again, and only once normal renal function has been established.  $\blacktriangle$

The manufacturer advises that metformin should also be omitted if contrast medium is administered during surgery to reduce the risk of contrast-induced nephropathy. It should be stopped prior to, or at the time of the test, and not to be restarted until 48 hours afterwards, and only once normal renal function has been established.

#### Use of antidiabetic drugs during medical illness

Manufacturers of some antidiabetic drugs recommend that they may need to be replaced temporarily with insulin during intercurrent illness when the drug is unlikely to control hyperglycaemia (such as coma, severe infection, trauma and other medical emergencies). Consult individual product literature.

## Diabetes, pregnancy and breast-feeding

01-Aug-2017

### Description of condition

Diabetes in pregnancy is associated with increased risks to the young woman (such as pre-eclampsia and rapidly worsening retinopathy), and to the developing fetus, compared with pregnancy in non-diabetic young women. Effective blood-glucose control before conception and throughout pregnancy reduces (but does not eliminate) the risk of adverse outcomes such as miscarriage, congenital malformation, stillbirth, and neonatal death.

### Management of pre-existing diabetes

**[EvGr]** Young women with pre-existing diabetes who are planning on becoming pregnant should aim to keep their HbA1c level below 48 mmol/mol (6.5%) if possible without causing problematic hypoglycaemia. Any reduction towards this target is likely to reduce the risk of congenital malformations in the newborn.

Young women with pre-existing diabetes who are planning to become pregnant should be advised to take folic acid at the dose for young women who are at high-risk of conceiving a child with a neural tube defect, see folic acid p. 574.  $\blacktriangle$

### Overview

#### Oral antidiabetic drugs

**[EvGr]** All oral antidiabetic drugs, except metformin hydrochloride p. 452, should be discontinued before pregnancy (or as soon as an unplanned pregnancy is identified) and substituted with insulin therapy. Young women with diabetes may be treated with metformin hydrochloride [unlicensed in pregnancy] as an adjunct or alternative to insulin in the preconception period and during pregnancy, when the likely benefits from improved blood-glucose control outweigh the potential for harm. Metformin hydrochloride can be continued immediately after birth and during breast-feeding for those with pre-existing Type 2 diabetes. All other antidiabetic drugs should be avoided while breast-feeding.  $\blacktriangle$

#### Insulin

Limited evidence suggests that the rapid-acting insulin analogues (insulin aspart p. 455 and insulin lispro p. 456) can be associated with fewer episodes of hypoglycaemia, a reduction in postprandial glucose excursions and an improvement in overall glycaemic control compared with regular human insulin.

**[EvGr]** Isophane insulin p. 457 is the first-choice for long-acting insulin during pregnancy, however in young women who have good blood-glucose control before pregnancy with the long-acting insulin analogues (insulin detemir p. 459 or insulin glargine p. 459), it may be appropriate to continue their use throughout pregnancy.

Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion p. 454 (insulin pump therapy) may be appropriate for young women who have difficulty achieving glycaemic control with multiple daily injections of insulin without significant disabling hypoglycaemia.

All young women treated with insulin during pregnancy should be aware of the risks of hypoglycaemia, particularly in the first trimester, and should be advised to always carry a fast-acting form of glucose, such as dextrose tablets or a glucose-containing drink. Pregnant young women with Type 1 diabetes should also be prescribed glucagon p. 465 for use if needed.

Young women with pre-existing diabetes treated with insulin during pregnancy are at increased risk of hypoglycaemia in the postnatal period and should reduce their insulin immediately after birth. Blood-glucose levels should be monitored carefully to establish the appropriate dose.  $\blacktriangle$

#### Medication for diabetic complications

**[EvGr]** Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors and angiotensin-II receptor antagonists should be discontinued and replaced with an alternative antihypertensive suitable for use in pregnancy before conception or as soon as pregnancy is confirmed. Statins should not be prescribed during pregnancy and should be discontinued before a planned pregnancy.  $\blacktriangle$

### Gestational diabetes

**[EvGr]** Young women with gestational diabetes who have a fasting plasma glucose below 7 mmol/litre at diagnosis, should first attempt a change in diet and exercise alone in order to reduce blood-glucose. If blood-glucose targets are not met within 1 to 2 weeks, metformin hydrochloride p. 452 may be prescribed [unlicensed use]. Insulin p. 454 may be prescribed if metformin is contra-indicated or not acceptable, and may also be added to treatment if metformin is not effective alone.

Young women who have a fasting plasma glucose above 7 mmol/litre at diagnosis should be treated with insulin immediately with or without metformin hydrochloride, in addition to a change in diet and exercise.

Young women who have a fasting plasma glucose between 6 and 6.9 mmol/litre alongside complications, such as macrosomia or hydramnios, should be considered for immediate insulin treatment, with or without metformin hydrochloride.

Young women with gestational diabetes should discontinue hypoglycaemic treatment immediately after giving birth.  $\blacktriangle$

### Useful Resources

Diabetes in pregnancy: management from preconception to the postnatal period. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Clinical guideline NG3. February 2015.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng3](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng3)



## BLOOD GLUCOSE LOWERING DRUGS > BIGUANIDES

### Metformin hydrochloride

06-Jun-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Metformin exerts its effect mainly by decreasing gluconeogenesis and by increasing peripheral utilisation of glucose; since it acts only in the presence of endogenous insulin it is effective only if there are some residual functioning pancreatic islet cells.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Type 2 diabetes mellitus [monotherapy or in combination with other antidiabetic drugs (including insulin)]

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child 8–9 years (specialist use only): Initially 200 mg once daily, dose to be adjusted according to response at intervals of at least 1 week, maximum daily dose to be given in 2–3 divided doses; maximum 2 g per day
- ▶ Child 10–17 years (specialist use only): Initially 500 mg once daily, dose to be adjusted according to response at intervals of at least 1 week, maximum daily dose to be given in 2–3 divided doses; maximum 2 g per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 10 years.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute metabolic acidosis (including lactic acidosis and diabetic ketoacidosis)
- **CAUTIONS** Risk factors for lactic acidosis  
**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - ▶ Risk factors for lactic acidosis Manufacturer advises caution in chronic stable heart failure (monitor cardiac function), and concomitant use of drugs that can acutely impair renal function; interrupt treatment if dehydration occurs, and avoid in conditions that can acutely worsen renal function, or cause tissue hypoxia.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: metformin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · appetite decreased · diarrhoea (usually transient) · gastrointestinal disorder · nausea · taste altered · vomiting
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Hepatitis · lactic acidosis (discontinue) · skin reactions · vitamin B12 absorption decreased
- **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Gastro-intestinal side-effects are initially common with metformin, and may persist in some patients, particularly when very high doses are given. A slow increase in dose may improve tolerability.

- **PREGNANCY** Can be used in pregnancy for both pre-existing and gestational diabetes. Women with gestational diabetes should discontinue treatment after giving birth.
- **BREAST FEEDING** May be used during breast-feeding in women with pre-existing diabetes.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Withdraw if tissue hypoxia likely.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises consider dose reduction in moderate impairment.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Determine renal function before treatment and at least annually (at least twice a year in patients with additional risk factors for renal impairment, or if deterioration suspected).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Manufacturer advises that patients and their carers should be informed of the risk of lactic acidosis and told to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as dyspnoea, muscle cramps, abdominal pain, hypothermia, or asthenia occur.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Metformin for diabetes

[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/metformin-diabetes](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/metformin-diabetes)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

##### ▶ Metformin hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Metformin hydrochloride 500 mg** Metformin 500mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.55 DT = £0.90 | 84 tablet [PoM] £2.16-£2.70 | 500 tablet [PoM] £16.07

**Metformin hydrochloride 850 mg** Metformin 850mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £2.56 DT = £1.17 | 300 tablet [PoM] £6.27-£7.13

##### ▶ Glucophage (Merck Serono Ltd)

**Metformin hydrochloride 500 mg** Glucophage 500mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £2.88

**Metformin hydrochloride 850 mg** Glucophage 850mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £3.20 DT = £1.17

##### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

##### ▶ Metformin hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Metformin hydrochloride 100 mg per 1 ml** Metformin 500mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £5.85-£10.50 sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £60.00 DT = £8.78

**Metformin hydrochloride 170 mg per 1 ml** Metformin 850mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £19.95 DT = £19.95

**Metformin hydrochloride 200 mg per 1 ml** Metformin 1g/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £23.48-£24.00 DT = £24.00

##### Powder

##### ▶ Metformin hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Metformin hydrochloride 1 gram** Metformin 1g oral powder sachets sugar free sugar-free | 30 sachet [PoM] [X]

## BLOOD GLUCOSE LOWERING DRUGS > SULFONYLUREAS

### Sulfonylureas



- **DRUG ACTION** The sulfonylureas act mainly by augmenting insulin secretion and consequently are effective only when some residual pancreatic beta-cell activity is present; during long-term administration they also have an extrapancreatic action.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Presence of ketoacidosis
- **CAUTIONS** Can encourage weight gain (should be prescribed only if poor control and symptoms persist despite adequate attempts at dieting) · G6PD deficiency
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · hypoglycaemia · nausea
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Hepatic disorders · vomiting
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · erythropenia · granulocytopenia · haemolytic anaemia · leucopenia · pancytopenia · thrombocytopenia
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Allergic dermatitis (usually in the first 6–8 weeks of therapy) · constipation · visual impairment
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Jaundice may occur.  
**Dose adjustments** Sulfonylureas should be avoided or a reduced dose should be used in severe hepatic impairment, because there is an increased risk of hypoglycaemia.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Sulfonylureas should be used with care in those with mild to moderate renal impairment, because of the hazard of hypoglycaemia. Care is required to use the lowest dose that adequately controls blood glucose. Avoid where possible in severe renal impairment.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Drivers need to be particularly careful to avoid hypoglycaemia and should be warned of the problems.

## Glibenclamide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Type 2 diabetes mellitus

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 2.5 mg daily, adjusted according to response, dose to be taken with or immediately after breakfast; maximum 15 mg per day

#### Maturity-onset diabetes of the young (specialist use only)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 2.5 mg daily, adjusted according to response, dose to be taken with or immediately after breakfast; maximum 15 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in breast feeding women with pre-existing diabetes. Not licensed for use in gestational diabetes.

Not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid where possible in Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sulfonylureas

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Appetite decreased · SIADH · taste metallic

- **PREGNANCY** The use of sulfonylureas in pregnancy should generally be avoided because of the risk of neonatal hypoglycaemia; however, glibenclamide can be used during the second and third trimesters of pregnancy in women with gestational diabetes.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Glibenclamide can be used during breast-feeding in women with pre-existing diabetes.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### ► Glibenclamide (Non-proprietary)

Glibenclamide 2.5 mg Glibenclamide 2.5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £11.78 DT = £10.49

Glibenclamide 5 mg Glibenclamide 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £14.72 DT = £3.16

## Gliclazide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Type 2 diabetes mellitus

##### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 20 mg once daily, adjusted according to response, increased if necessary up to 160 mg once daily (max. per dose 160 mg twice daily), dose to be taken with breakfast

#### Maturity-onset diabetes of the young (specialist use only)

##### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 20 mg once daily, adjusted according to response, increased if necessary up to 160 mg once daily (max. per dose 160 mg twice daily), dose to be taken with breakfast

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid where possible in Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sulfonylureas

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Anaemia · angioedema · dyspepsia · hypersensitivity vasculitis · hyponatraemia · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions

- **PREGNANCY** The use of sulfonylureas in pregnancy should generally be avoided because of the risk of neonatal hypoglycaemia.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—theoretical possibility of hypoglycaemia in the infant.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** If necessary, gliclazide which is principally metabolised in the liver, can be used in renal impairment but careful monitoring of blood-glucose concentration is essential.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Tablet

##### ► Gliclazide (Non-proprietary)

Gliclazide 40 mg Gliclazide 40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.19 DT = £3.04

Gliclazide 80 mg Gliclazide 80mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £7.22 DT = £0.92 | 60 tablet [PoM] £0.81–£9.32

##### ► Diamicron (Servier Laboratories Ltd)

Gliclazide 80 mg Diamicron 80mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £4.38

##### ► Zicron (Bristol Laboratories Ltd)

Gliclazide 40 mg Zicron 40mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.36 DT = £3.04

## Tolbutamide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Type 2 diabetes mellitus

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years (specialist use only): 0.5–1.5 g daily in divided doses, dose to be taken with or immediately after meals, alternatively 0.5–1.5 g once daily, dose to be taken with or immediately after breakfast; maximum 2 g per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid where possible in Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sulfonylureas

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Rare or very rare** Aplastic anaemia · blood disorder

- **Frequency not known** Alcohol intolerance · appetite abnormal · erythema multiforme (usually in the first 6–8 weeks of therapy) · exfoliative dermatitis (usually in the first 6–8 weeks of therapy) · fever (usually in the first 6–8 weeks of therapy) · headache · hypersensitivity (usually in the first 6–8 weeks of therapy) · paraesthesia · photosensitivity reaction · tinnitus · weight increased

- **PREGNANCY** The use of sulfonylureas in pregnancy should generally be avoided because of the risk of neonatal hypoglycaemia.

- **BREAST FEEDING** The use of sulfonylureas in breast-feeding should be avoided because there is a theoretical possibility of hypoglycaemia in the infant.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** If necessary, the short-acting drug tolbutamide can be used in renal impairment but careful monitoring of blood-glucose concentration is essential.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Tablet

##### ► Tolbutamide (Non-proprietary)

Tolbutamide 500 mg Tolbutamide 500mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £34.88 DT = £4.56 | 112 tablet [PoM] £17.60–£18.24

## INSULINS

## Insulins



## IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

NHS IMPROVEMENT PATIENT SAFETY ALERT: RISK OF SEVERE HARM AND DEATH DUE TO WITHDRAWING INSULIN FROM PEN DEVICES (NOVEMBER 2016)

Insulin should not be extracted from insulin pen devices.

The strength of insulin in pen devices can vary by multiples of 100 units/mL. Insulin syringes have graduations only suitable for calculating doses of standard 100 units/mL. If insulin extracted from a pen or cartridge is of a higher strength, and that is not considered in determining the volume required, it can lead to a significant and potentially fatal overdose.

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- Common or very common Oedema
- Uncommon Lipodystrophy · skin reactions

## SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Overdose** Overdose causes hypoglycaemia.

## ● PREGNANCY

**Dose adjustments** During pregnancy, insulin requirements may alter and doses should be assessed frequently by an experienced diabetes physician.

The dose of insulin generally needs to be increased in the second and third trimesters of pregnancy.

## ● BREAST FEEDING

**Dose adjustments** During breast-feeding, insulin requirements may alter and doses should be assessed frequently by an experienced diabetes physician.

## ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Insulin requirements may be decreased in patients with hepatic impairment.

## ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT The compensatory response to hypoglycaemia is impaired in renal impairment.

**Dose adjustments** Insulin requirements may decrease in patients with renal impairment and therefore dose reduction may be necessary.

## ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Many patients now monitor their own blood-glucose concentrations; all carers and children need to be trained to do this.
- Since blood-glucose concentration varies substantially throughout the day, 'normoglycaemia' cannot always be achieved throughout a 24-hour period without causing damaging hypoglycaemia.
- It is therefore best to recommend that children should maintain a blood-glucose concentration of between 4 and 10 mmol/litre for most of the time (4–8 mmol/litre before meals and less than 10 mmol/litre after meals).
- While accepting that on occasions, for brief periods, the blood-glucose concentration will be above these values; strenuous efforts should be made to prevent it from falling below 4 mmol/litre. Patients using multiple injection regimens should understand how to adjust their insulin dose according to their carbohydrate intake. With fixed-dose insulin regimens, the carbohydrate intake needs to be regulated, and should be distributed throughout the day to match the insulin regimen. The intake of energy and of simple and complex carbohydrates should be adequate to allow normal growth and development but obesity must be avoided.
- DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Insulin is generally given by *subcutaneous injection*; the injection site should be rotated to prevent lipodystrophy. Injection devices ('pens'), which hold the insulin in a cartridge and meter the required dose, are convenient to use. Insulin syringes (for use with needles) are required for insulins not

available in cartridge form, but are less popular with children and carers. For intensive insulin regimens multiple subcutaneous injections (3 or more times daily) are usually recommended.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Show container to patient or carer and confirm the expected version is dispensed.

Units The word 'unit' should **not** be abbreviated.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Hypoglycaemia** Hypoglycaemia is a potential problem with insulin therapy. All patients must be carefully instructed on how to avoid it; this involves appropriate adjustment of insulin type, dose and frequency together with suitable timing and quantity of meals and snacks. Insulin Passport Insulin Passports and patient information booklets should be offered to patients receiving insulin. The Insulin Passport provides a record of the patient's current insulin preparations and contains a section for emergency information. The patient information booklet provides advice on the safe use of insulin. They are available for purchase from:

3M Security Print and Systems Limited  
Gorse Street, Chadderton  
Oldham  
OL9 9QH  
Tel: 0845 610 1112

GP practices can obtain supplies through their Local Area Team stores.

NHS Trusts can order supplies from [www.nhsforms.co.uk/](http://www.nhsforms.co.uk/) or by emailing [nhsforms@mmm.com](mailto:nhsforms@mmm.com). Further information is available at [www.npsa.nhs.uk](http://www.npsa.nhs.uk).

**Driving and skilled tasks** Drivers need to be particularly careful to avoid hypoglycaemia and should be warned of the problems.

## INSULINS &gt; RAPID-ACTING

▮ above

## Insulin

(Insulin Injection; Neutral Insulin; Soluble Insulin—short acting)

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

## Diabetes mellitus

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Child: According to requirements

## Hyperglycaemia during illness

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: 0.02–0.125 unit/kg/hour, dose to be adjusted according to blood-glucose concentration.

- Child: 0.025–0.1 unit/kg/hour, dose to be adjusted according to blood-glucose concentration

## Neonatal hyperglycaemia | Neonatal diabetes

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: 0.02–0.125 unit/kg/hour, dose to be adjusted according to blood-glucose concentration.

## Diabetic ketoacidosis | Diabetes during surgery

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult local protocol)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: insulins

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- Rare or very rare Refraction disorder

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Short-acting injectable insulins can be given by continuous subcutaneous infusion using a portable infusion pump. This device delivers a continuous basal insulin infusion and patient-activated bolus doses at meal times. This technique can be useful for patients who suffer recurrent hypoglycaemia or marked

morning rise in blood-glucose concentration despite optimised multiple-injection regimens. Patients on subcutaneous insulin infusion must be highly motivated, able to monitor their blood-glucose concentration, and have expert training, advice and supervision from an experienced healthcare team. Some insulin preparations are not recommended for use in subcutaneous insulin infusion pumps—may precipitate in catheter or needle—consult product literature.

- ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 1 unit/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9% and mix thoroughly; insulin may be adsorbed by plastics, flush giving set with 5 mL of infusion fluid containing insulin. For *intravenous infusion in neonatal intensive care*, dilute 5 units to a final volume of 50 mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9% and mix thoroughly; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/kg/hour provides a dose of 0.01 units/kg/hour.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** A sterile solution of insulin (i.e. bovine or porcine) or of human insulin; pH 6.6–8.0.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- ▶ **Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion for the treatment of diabetes mellitus (type 1) (July 2008) NICE TA151** Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion is recommended as an option in children over 12 years with type 1 diabetes:

- who suffer repeated or unpredictable hypoglycaemia, whilst attempting to achieve optimal glycaemic control with multiple-injection regimens, **or**
- whose glycaemic control remains inadequate ( $HbA_{1c}$  over 8.5% [69 mmol/mol]) despite optimised multiple-injection regimens (including the use of long-acting insulin analogues where appropriate).

Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion is also recommended as an option for children under 12 years with type 1 diabetes for whom multiple-injection regimens are considered impractical or inappropriate. Children on insulin pumps should undergo a trial of multiple-injection therapy between the ages of 12 and 18 years.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA151](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA151)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection, solution for infusion

##### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Actrapid** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)  
**Insulin human (as Insulin soluble human) 100 unit per 1 mL** Actrapid 100units/mL solution for injection 10mL vials | 1 vial [PoM] £7.48
- ▶ **Humulin S** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)  
**Insulin human (as Insulin soluble human) 100 unit per 1 mL** Humulin S 100units/mL solution for injection 10mL vials | 1 vial [PoM] £15.68  
Humulin S 100units/mL solution for injection 3mL cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £19.08 DT = £19.08
- ▶ **Hypurin Bovine Neutral** (Wockhardt UK Ltd)  
**Insulin bovine (as Insulin soluble bovine) 100 unit per 1 mL** Hypurin Bovine Neutral 100units/mL solution for injection 10mL vials | 1 vial [PoM] £27.72  
Hypurin Bovine Neutral 100units/mL solution for injection 3mL cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £41.58
- ▶ **Hypurin Porcine Neutral** (Wockhardt UK Ltd)  
**Insulin porcine (as Insulin soluble porcine) 100 unit per 1 mL** Hypurin Porcine Neutral 100units/mL solution for injection 10mL vials | 1 vial [PoM] £31.30  
Hypurin Porcine Neutral 100units/mL solution for injection 3mL cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £46.95
- ▶ **Insuman Infusat** (Sanofi)  
**Insulin human 100 unit per 1 mL** Insuman Infusat 100units/mL solution for injection 3.15mL cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £250.00  
Insuman Infusat 100units/mL solution for injection 10mL vials | 3 vial [PoM] £250.00

- ▶ **Insuman Rapid** (Sanofi)

**Insulin human (as Insulin soluble human) 100 unit per 1 mL** Insuman Rapid 100units/mL solution for injection 3mL cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £17.50 DT = £19.08

454

## Insulin aspart

18-Jul-2017

### (Recombinant human insulin analogue—short acting)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### NOVORAPID®

##### Diabetes mellitus

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1 month-1 year: Administer immediately before meals or when necessary shortly after meals, according to requirements
- ▶ Child 2-17 years: Administer immediately before meals or when necessary shortly after meals, according to requirements
- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1 month-1 year: According to requirements
- ▶ Child 2-17 years: According to requirements

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 2 years.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: insulins

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Uncommon** Refraction disorder

- ▶ **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful—may be used during pregnancy.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Not known to be harmful—may be used during lactation.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Short-acting injectable insulins can be given by continuous subcutaneous infusion using a portable infusion pump. This device delivers a continuous basal insulin infusion and patient-activated bolus doses at meal times. This technique can be useful for patients who suffer recurrent hypoglycaemia or marked morning rise in blood-glucose concentration despite optimised multiple-injection regimens. Patients on subcutaneous insulin infusion must be highly motivated, able to monitor their blood-glucose concentration, and have expert training, advice and supervision from an experienced healthcare team.

- ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 0.05–1 unit/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and mix thoroughly; insulin may be adsorbed by plastics, flush giving set with 5 mL of infusion fluid containing insulin.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- ▶ **Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion for the treatment of diabetes mellitus (type 1) (July 2008) NICE TA151** Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion is recommended as an option in children over 12 years with type 1 diabetes:

- who suffer repeated or unpredictable hypoglycaemia, whilst attempting to achieve optimal glycaemic control with multiple-injection regimens, **or**
- whose glycaemic control remains inadequate ( $HbA_{1c}$  over 8.5% [69 mmol/mol]) despite optimised multiple-injection regimens (including the use of long-acting insulin analogues where appropriate).

Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion is also recommended as an option for children under 12 years with type 1 diabetes for whom multiple-injection regimens are considered impractical or inappropriate. Children on

insulin pumps should undergo a trial of multiple-injection therapy between the ages of 12 and 18 years.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA151](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA151)

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

##### ► **NovoRapid** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)

**Insulin aspart 100 unit per 1 ml** NovoRapid 100units/ml solution for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £14.08 DT = £14.08

##### ► **NovoRapid FlexPen** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)

**Insulin aspart 100 unit per 1 ml** NovoRapid FlexPen 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £30.60 DT = £30.60

##### ► **NovoRapid FlexTouch** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)

**Insulin aspart 100 unit per 1 ml** NovoRapid FlexTouch 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £32.13 DT = £30.60

##### ► **NovoRapid Penfill** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)

**Insulin aspart 100 unit per 1 ml** NovoRapid Penfill 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £28.31 DT = £28.31

##### ► **NovoRapid PumpCart** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)

**Insulin aspart 100 unit per 1 ml** NovoRapid PumpCart 100units/ml solution for injection 1.6ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £15.10 DT = £15.10

F 454

## Insulin glulisine

(Recombinant human insulin analogue—short acting)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Diabetes mellitus**

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

► Child: Administer immediately before meals or when necessary shortly after meals, according to requirements

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: According to requirements

#### • UNLICENSED USE Not licensed for children under 6 years.

#### • INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: insulins

• **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Short-acting injectable insulins can be given by continuous subcutaneous infusion using a portable infusion pump. This device delivers a continuous basal insulin infusion and patient-activated bolus doses at meal times. This technique can be useful for patients who suffer recurrent hypoglycaemia or marked morning rise in blood-glucose concentration despite optimised multiple-injection regimens. Patients on subcutaneous insulin infusion must be highly motivated, able to monitor their blood-glucose concentration, and have expert training, advice and supervision from an experienced healthcare team.

#### • NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### **NICE decisions**

- **Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion for the treatment of diabetes mellitus (type 1) (July 2008) NICE TA151** Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion is recommended as an option in children over 12 years with type 1 diabetes:
  - who suffer repeated or unpredictable hypoglycaemia, whilst attempting to achieve optimal glycaemic control with multiple-injection regimens, or
  - whose glycaemic control remains inadequate (HbA<sub>1c</sub> over 8.5% [69 mmol/mol]) despite optimised multiple-injection regimens (including the use of long-acting insulin analogues where appropriate).

Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion is also recommended as an option for children under 12 years with type 1 diabetes for whom multiple-injection regimens

are considered impractical or inappropriate. Children on insulin pumps should undergo a trial of multiple-injection therapy between the ages of 12 and 18 years.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA151](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA151)

#### **Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (October 2008) that *Apidra*® is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of children over 6 years with diabetes mellitus in whom the use of a short-acting insulin analogue is appropriate.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

##### ► **Apidra** (Sanofi)

**Insulin glulisine 100 unit per 1 ml** Apidra 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £28.30

Apidra 100units/ml solution for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £16.00

##### ► **Apidra SoloStar** (Sanofi)

**Insulin glulisine 100 unit per 1 ml** Apidra 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml pre-filled SoloStar pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £28.30 DT = £28.30

F 454

## Insulin lispro

21-Feb-2018

(Recombinant human insulin analogue—short acting)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Diabetes mellitus**

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

► Child 1 month-1 year: Administer shortly before meals or when necessary shortly after meals, according to requirements

► Child 2-17 years: Administer shortly before meals or when necessary shortly after meals, according to requirements

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 1 month-1 year: According to requirements

► Child 2-17 years: According to requirements

#### • UNLICENSED USE Not licensed for use in children under 2 years.

#### • CAUTIONS Children under 12 years (use only if benefit likely compared to soluble insulin)

#### • INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: insulins

#### • PREGNANCY Not known to be harmful—may be used during pregnancy.

#### • BREAST FEEDING Not known to be harmful—may be used during lactation.

• **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Short-acting injectable insulins can be given by continuous subcutaneous infusion using a portable infusion pump. This device delivers a continuous basal insulin infusion and patient-activated bolus doses at meal times. This technique can be useful for patients who suffer recurrent hypoglycaemia or marked morning rise in blood-glucose concentration despite optimised multiple-injection regimens (see also NICE guidance, below). Patients on subcutaneous insulin infusion must be highly motivated, able to monitor their blood-glucose concentration, and have expert training, advice and supervision from an experienced healthcare team.

- With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 0.1–1 unit/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and mix thoroughly; insulin may be adsorbed by plastics, flush giving set with 5 mL of infusion fluid containing insulin.



- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Insulin lispro is a biological medicine. Biological medicines must be prescribed and dispensed by brand name, see *Biological medicines* and *Biosimilar medicines*, under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- ▶ **Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion for the treatment of diabetes mellitus (type 1) (July 2008) NICE TA151** Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion is recommended as an option in children over 12 years with type 1 diabetes:

- who suffer repeated or unpredictable hypoglycaemia, whilst attempting to achieve optimal glycaemic control with multiple-injection regimens, or
- whose glycaemic control remains inadequate (HbA<sub>1c</sub> over 8.5% [69 mmol/mol]) despite optimised multiple-injection regimens (including the use of long-acting insulin analogues where appropriate).

Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion is also recommended as an option for children under 12 years with type 1 diabetes for whom multiple-injection regimens are considered impractical or inappropriate. Children on insulin pumps should undergo a trial of multiple-injection therapy between the ages of 12 and 18 years.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA151](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA151)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Humalog** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)  
Insulin lispro 100 unit per 1 ml Humalog 100units/ml solution for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £16.61 DT = £16.61  
Humalog 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £28.31 DT = £28.31
- ▶ **Humalog Junior KwikPen** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)  
Insulin lispro 100 unit per 1 ml Humalog Junior KwikPen 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £29.46 DT = £29.46
- ▶ **Humalog KwikPen** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)  
Insulin lispro 100 unit per 1 ml Humalog KwikPen 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £29.46 DT = £29.46  
Insulin lispro 200 unit per 1 ml Humalog KwikPen 200units/ml solution for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £58.92

## INSULINS > INTERMEDIATE-ACTING

F 454

### Biphasic isophane insulin

(Biphasic Isophane Insulin Injection—intermediate acting)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Diabetes mellitus

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: According to requirements

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: insulins

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Rare or very rare Angioedema
- ▶ Frequency not known Hypokalaemia · weight increased

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** A sterile buffered suspension of either porcine or human insulin complexed with protamine sulfate (or another suitable protamine) in a solution of insulin of the same species.

Check product container—the proportions of the two components should be checked carefully (the order in which the proportions are stated may not be the same in other countries).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Suspension for injection

- ▶ **Humulin M3** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)  
Insulin human (as Insulin soluble human) 30 unit per 1 ml, Insulin human (as Insulin isophane human) 70 unit per 1 ml Humulin M3 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £19.08 DT = £19.08  
Humulin M3 100units/ml suspension for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £15.68
- ▶ **Humulin M3 KwikPen** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)  
Insulin human (as Insulin soluble human) 30 unit per 1 ml, Insulin human (as Insulin isophane human) 70 unit per 1 ml Humulin M3 KwikPen 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £21.70 DT = £21.70
- ▶ **Hyprurin Porcine 30/70 Mix** (Wockhard UK Ltd)  
Insulin porcine (as Insulin soluble porcine) 30 unit per 1 ml, Insulin porcine (as Insulin isophane porcine) 70 unit per 1 ml Hyprurin Porcine 30/70 Mix 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £46.95  
Hyprurin Porcine 30/70 Mix 100units/ml suspension for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £31.30
- ▶ **Insuman Comb 15** (Sanofi)  
Insulin human (as Insulin soluble human) 15 unit per 1 ml, Insulin human (as Insulin isophane human) 85 unit per 1 ml Insuman Comb 15 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £17.50
- ▶ **Insuman Comb 25** (Sanofi)  
Insulin human (as Insulin soluble human) 25 unit per 1 ml, Insulin human (as Insulin isophane human) 75 unit per 1 ml Insuman Comb 25 100units/ml suspension for injection 5ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £5.61  
Insuman Comb 25 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml pre-filled SoloStar pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £19.80  
Insuman Comb 25 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £17.50
- ▶ **Insuman Comb 50** (Sanofi)  
Insulin human (as Insulin isophane human) 50 unit per 1 ml, Insulin human (as Insulin soluble human) 50 unit per 1 ml Insuman Comb 50 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £17.50

F 454

## Isophane insulin

(Isophane Insulin Injection; Isophane Protamine Insulin Injection; Isophane Insulin (NPH)—intermediate acting)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Diabetes mellitus

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: According to requirements

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: insulins

- **PREGNANCY** Recommended where longer-acting insulins are needed.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** A sterile suspension of bovine or porcine insulin or of human insulin in the form of a complex obtained by the addition of protamine sulfate or another suitable protamine.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Suspension for injection

- ▶ **Humulin I** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)  
Insulin human (as Insulin isophane human) 100 unit per 1 ml Humulin I 100units/ml suspension for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £15.68  
Humulin I 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £19.08 DT = £19.08

- ▶ **Humulin I KwikPen** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)  
**Insulin human (as Insulin isophane human) 100 unit per 1 ml** Humulin I KwikPen 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £21.70 DT = £21.70
- ▶ **Hypurin Bovine Isophane** (Wockhardt UK Ltd)  
**Insulin bovine (as Insulin isophane bovine) 100 unit per 1 ml** Hypurin Bovine Isophane 100units/ml suspension for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £27.72
- ▶ **Hypurin Porcine Isophane** (Wockhardt UK Ltd)  
**Insulin porcine (as Insulin isophane porcine) 100 unit per 1 ml** Hypurin Porcine Isophane 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £46.95  
**Hypurin Porcine Isophane** 100units/ml suspension for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £31.30
- ▶ **Insulatard** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)  
**Insulin human (as Insulin isophane human) 100 unit per 1 ml** Insulatard 100units/ml suspension for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £7.48
- ▶ **Insulatard InnoLet** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)  
**Insulin human (as Insulin isophane human) 100 unit per 1 ml** Insulatard InnoLet 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £20.40 DT = £21.70
- ▶ **Insulatard Penfill** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)  
**Insulin human (as Insulin isophane human) 100 unit per 1 ml** Insulatard Penfill 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £22.90 DT = £19.08
- ▶ **Insuman Basal** (Sanofi)  
**Insulin human (as Insulin isophane human) 100 unit per 1 ml** Insuman Basal 100units/ml suspension for injection 5ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £5.61  
**Insuman Basal** 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £17.50 DT = £19.08
- ▶ **Insuman Basal SoloStar** (Sanofi)  
**Insulin human (as Insulin isophane human) 100 unit per 1 ml** Insuman Basal 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml pre-filled SoloStar pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £19.80 DT = £21.70

## INSULINS > INTERMEDIATE-ACTING COMBINED WITH RAPID-ACTING

F 454

### Biphasic insulin aspart (Intermediate-acting insulin)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Diabetes mellitus

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: Administer up to 10 minutes before or soon after a meal, according to requirements

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: insulins

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Check product container—the proportions of the two components should be checked carefully (the order in which the proportions are stated may not be the same in other countries).

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Suspension for injection

- ▶ **NovoMix 30 FlexPen** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)  
**Insulin aspart 30 unit per 1 ml, Insulin aspart (as Insulin aspart protamine) 70 unit per 1 ml** NovoMix 30 FlexPen 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £29.89 DT = £29.89
- ▶ **NovoMix 30 Penfill** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)  
**Insulin aspart 30 unit per 1 ml, Insulin aspart (as Insulin aspart protamine) 70 unit per 1 ml** NovoMix 30 Penfill 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £28.79 DT = £28.79

### Biphasic insulin lispro (Intermediate-acting insulin)

F 454

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Diabetes mellitus

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: Administer up to 15 minutes before or soon after a meal, according to requirements

- **CAUTIONS** Children under 12 years (use only if benefit likely compared to soluble insulin)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: insulins

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Check product container—the proportions of the two components should be checked carefully (the order in which the proportions are stated may not be the same in other countries).

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Suspension for injection

- ▶ **Humalog Mix25** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)  
**Insulin lispro 25 unit per 1 ml, Insulin lispro (as Insulin lispro protamine) 75 unit per 1 ml** Humalog Mix25 100units/ml suspension for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £16.61  
**Humalog Mix25** 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £29.46 DT = £29.46
- ▶ **Humalog Mix25 KwikPen** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)  
**Insulin lispro 25 unit per 1 ml, Insulin lispro (as Insulin lispro protamine) 75 unit per 1 ml** Humalog Mix25 KwikPen 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £30.98 DT = £30.98
- ▶ **Humalog Mix50** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)  
**Insulin lispro 50 unit per 1 ml, Insulin lispro (as Insulin lispro protamine) 50 unit per 1 ml** Humalog Mix50 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £29.46 DT = £29.46
- ▶ **Humalog Mix50 KwikPen** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)  
**Insulin lispro 50 unit per 1 ml, Insulin lispro (as Insulin lispro protamine) 50 unit per 1 ml** Humalog Mix50 KwikPen 100units/ml suspension for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £30.98 DT = £30.98

## INSULINS > LONG-ACTING

F 454

### Insulin degludec

14-Mar-2017

#### (Recombinant human insulin analogue—long acting)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Diabetes mellitus

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: Dose to be given according to requirements

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: insulins

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ Uncommon Peripheral oedema

- **PREGNANCY** Evidence of the safety of long-acting insulin analogues in pregnancy is limited, therefore isophane insulin is recommended where longer-acting insulins are needed; insulin detemir may also be considered.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Insulin degludec (*Tresiba*®) is available in strengths of 100 units/mL (allows 1-unit dose adjustment) and 200 units/mL (allows 2-unit dose adjustment)—ensure correct strength prescribed.

## ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

### All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions

The All Wales Medicines Strategy Group has advised (October 2016) that insulin degludec (*Tresiba*®) is not recommended for use within NHS Wales for the treatment of diabetes mellitus in adolescents and children from the age of 1 year.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Solution for injection

#### ► *Tresiba FlexTouch* (Novo Nordisk Ltd)

Insulin human (as Insulin degludec) 100 unit per 1 ml *Tresiba FlexTouch* 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £46.60 DT = £46.60

Insulin human (as Insulin degludec) 200 unit per 1 ml *Tresiba FlexTouch* 200units/ml solution for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 3 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £55.92 DT = £55.92

#### ► *Tresiba Penfill* (Novo Nordisk Ltd)

Insulin human (as Insulin degludec) 100 unit per 1 ml *Tresiba Penfill* 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £46.60 DT = £46.60

F 454

## Insulin detemir

(Recombinant human insulin analogue—long acting)

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

### Diabetes mellitus

#### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 2–17 years: According to requirements

## ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: insulins

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS

### ► Uncommon Refraction disorder

- **PREGNANCY** Evidence of the safety of long-acting insulin analogues in pregnancy is limited, therefore isophane insulin p. 457 is recommended where longer-acting insulins are needed; insulin detemir may also be considered where longer-acting insulins are needed.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Solution for injection

#### ► *Levemir FlexPen* (Novo Nordisk Ltd)

Insulin human (as Insulin detemir) 100 unit per 1 ml *Levemir FlexPen* 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £42.00 DT = £42.00

#### ► *Levemir InnoLet* (Novo Nordisk Ltd)

Insulin human (as Insulin detemir) 100 unit per 1 ml *Levemir InnoLet* 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £44.85 DT = £42.00

#### ► *Levemir Penfill* (Novo Nordisk Ltd)

Insulin human (as Insulin detemir) 100 unit per 1 ml *Levemir Penfill* 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £42.00 DT = £42.00

F 454

## Insulin glargine

(Recombinant human insulin analogue—long acting)

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

### Diabetes mellitus

#### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 2–17 years: According to requirements

## ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: insulins

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- Rare or very rare Myalgia · sodium retention · taste altered

- **PREGNANCY** Evidence of the safety of long-acting insulin analogues in pregnancy is limited, therefore isophane insulin is recommended where longer-acting insulins are needed; insulin detemir may also be considered.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Insulin glargine is a biological medicine. Biological medicines must be prescribed and dispensed by brand name, see *Biological medicines* and *Biosimilar medicines*, under Guidance on prescribing p. 1. Dose adjustments and close metabolic monitoring is recommended if switching between insulin glargine preparations.

## ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised that *Lantus*® preparations (April 2013) and *Toujeo*® (August 2015) are accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of type 1 diabetes:

- in those who are at risk of or experience unacceptable frequency or severity of nocturnal hypoglycaemia on attempting to achieve better hypoglycaemic control during treatment with other insulins
- as a once daily insulin therapy for patients who require a carer to administer their insulin

It is not recommended for routine use in patients with type 2 diabetes unless they suffer from recurrent episodes of hypoglycaemia or require assistance with their insulin injections.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Solution for injection

#### ► *Abasaglar* (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd) ▼

Insulin human (as Insulin glargine) 100 unit per 1 ml *Abasaglar* 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £35.28 DT = £37.77

#### ► *Abasaglar KwikPen* (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd) ▼

Insulin human (as Insulin glargine) 100 unit per 1 ml *Abasaglar KwikPen* 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml pre-filled pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £35.28 DT = £37.77

#### ► *Lantus* (Sanofi)

Insulin human (as Insulin glargine) 100 unit per 1 ml *Lantus* 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £37.77 DT = £37.77

*Lantus* 100units/ml solution for injection 3ml pre-filled SoloStar pen | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £37.77 DT = £37.77  
*Lantus* 100units/ml solution for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £27.92 DT = £27.92

#### ► *Toujeo* (Sanofi)

Insulin human (as Insulin glargine) 300 unit per 1 ml *Toujeo* 300units/ml solution for injection 1.5ml pre-filled SoloStar pen | 3 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £33.13 DT = £33.13

F 454

## Insulin zinc suspension

(Insulin zinc suspension (mixed)—long acting)

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

### Diabetes mellitus

#### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child: According to requirements

## ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: insulins

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Hypokalaemia · weight increased

- **PREGNANCY** Evidence of the safety of long-acting insulin analogues in pregnancy is limited, therefore isophane insulin p. 457 is recommended where longer-acting insulins are needed; insulin detemir above may also be considered.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** A sterile neutral suspension of bovine and/or porcine insulin or of human insulin in the form of a complex obtained by the addition of a suitable zinc salt; consists of rhombohedral

crystals (10–40 microns) and of particles of no uniform shape (not exceeding 2 microns).

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Suspension for injection

► **Hypurin Bovine Lente** (Wockhard UK Ltd)

**Insulin bovine (as Insulin zinc suspension mixed bovine) 100 unit per 1 ml** Hypurin Bovine Lente 100units/ml suspension for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial (PoM) £27.72

F 454

## Protamine zinc insulin

(Protamine zinc insulin injection—long acting)

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Diabetes mellitus

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

► Child: According to requirements

• **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: insulins

• **SIDE-EFFECTS** Hypokalaemia

• **PREGNANCY** Evidence of the safety of long-acting insulin analogues in pregnancy is limited, therefore isophane insulin p. 457 is recommended where longer-acting insulins are needed; insulin detemir p. 459 may also be considered.

• **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** A sterile suspension of insulin in the form of a complex obtained by the addition of a suitable protamine and zinc chloride; this preparation was included in BP 1980 but is not included in BP 1988.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Suspension for injection

► **Hypurin Bovine Protamine Zinc** (Wockhard UK Ltd)

**Insulin bovine (as Insulin protamine zinc bovine) 100 unit per 1 ml** Hypurin Bovine Protamine Zinc 100units/ml suspension for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial (PoM) £27.72

## 3.1a Diabetes, diagnosis and monitoring

## Diabetes mellitus, diagnostic and monitoring devices

### Urinalysis: urinary glucose

Reagent strips are available for measuring for glucose in the urine. Tests for ketones by patients are rarely required unless they become unwell—see Blood Monitoring.

Microalbuminuria can be detected with *Micral-Test II*® but this should be followed by confirmation in the laboratory, since false positive results are common.

### Blood glucose monitoring

Blood glucose monitoring using a meter gives a direct measure of the glucose concentration at the time of the test and can detect hypoglycaemia as well as hyperglycaemia. Carers and children should be properly trained in the use of blood glucose monitoring systems and the appropriate action to take on the results obtained. Inadequate understanding of the normal fluctuations in blood glucose can lead to confusion and inappropriate action.

Children using multiple injection regimens should understand how to adjust their insulin dose according to their carbohydrate intake. With fixed-dose insulin regimens,

the carbohydrate intake needs to be regulated, and should be distributed throughout the day to match the insulin regimen.

In the UK blood-glucose concentration is expressed in mmol/litre and Diabetes UK advises that these units should be used for self-monitoring of blood glucose. In other European countries units of mg/100 mL (or mg/dL) are commonly used.

It is advisable to check that the meter is pre-set in the correct units.

If the blood glucose level is high or if the child is unwell, blood **ketones** should be measured according to local guidelines in order to detect diabetic ketoacidosis. Children and their carers should be trained in the use of blood ketone monitoring systems and to take appropriate action on the results obtained, including when to seek medical attention.

#### Other drugs used for Diabetes, diagnosis and monitoring

Glucose, p. 590

## Blood glucose testing strips

### BLOOD GLUCOSE TESTING STRIPS

**Accu-Chek Inform II testing strips** (Roche Diagnostics Ltd)  
50 strip • No NHS indicative price available • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Active testing strips** (Diabetes Care Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Advocate Redi-Code+ testing strips** (Diabetes Care Technology Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**AutoSense testing strips** (Advance Diagnostic Products (NI) Ltd)  
25 strip • NHS indicative price = £4.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Aviva testing strips** (Roche Diabetes Care Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £16.09 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**BGStar testing strips** (Sanofi)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £14.73 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Betachek C50 cassette** (National Diagnostic Products)  
100 device • NHS indicative price = £29.98 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Betachek G5 testing strips** (National Diagnostic Products)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £14.19 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Betachek Visual testing strips** (National Diagnostic Products)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £6.80 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Breeze 2 testing discs** (Bayer Plc)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £15.00 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**CareSens N testing strips** (Spirit Healthcare Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £12.75 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**CareSens PRO testing strips** (Spirit Healthcare Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Compact testing strips** (Roche Diabetes Care Ltd)  
51 strip • NHS indicative price = £16.53 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Contour Next testing strips** (Bayer Diagnostics Manufacturing Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £15.04 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Contour TS testing strips** (Bayer Diagnostics Manufacturing Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Contour testing strips** (Bayer Diagnostics Manufacturing Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Dario Lite testing strips** (LabStyle Innovations Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Dario testing strips** (LabStyle Innovations Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £14.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Diastix testing strips** (Bayer Diagnostics Manufacturing Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £2.89 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Element testing strips** (Neon Diagnostics Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.89 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Finetest Lite testing strips** (Neon Diagnostics Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £5.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**FreeStyle Lite testing strips** (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £16.10 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)


**FreeStyle Optium H testing strips** (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)  
100 strip • No NHS indicative price available • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)


**FreeStyle Optium testing strips** (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £16.00 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

### Meters and test strips

Meter (all <small>(NHS)</small> )	Type of monitoring	Compatible test strips	Test strip net price	Sensitivity range (mmol/litre)	Manufacturer
Accu-Chek <sup>®</sup> Active	Blood glucose	Active <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £9.95	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	Roche Diabetes Care Ltd
Accu-Chek <sup>®</sup> Advantage Meter no longer available	Blood glucose	Advantage Plus <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £0.00	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	Roche Diabetes Care Ltd
Accu-Chek <sup>®</sup> Aviva	Blood glucose	Aviva <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £16.09	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	Roche Diabetes Care Ltd
Accu-Chek <sup>®</sup> Aviva Expert	Blood glucose	Aviva <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £16.09	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	Roche Diabetes Care Ltd
Accu-Chek <sup>®</sup> Compact Plus Meter no longer available	Blood glucose	Compact <sup>®</sup>	3 × 17 strips= £16.53	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	Roche Diabetes Care Ltd
Accu-Chek <sup>®</sup> Mobile	Blood glucose	Mobile <sup>®</sup>	100 device= £0.00	0.3– 33.3 mmol/litre	Roche Diabetes Care Ltd
Accu-Chek <sup>®</sup> Aviva Nano	Blood glucose	Aviva <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £16.09	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	Roche Diabetes Care Ltd
BGStar <sup>®</sup> Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	BGStar <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £14.73	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	Sanofi
Breeze 2 <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	Breeze 2 <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £15.00	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	Bayer Plc
CareSens N <sup>®</sup> Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	CareSens N <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £12.75	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	Spirit Healthcare Ltd
Contour <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	Contour <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £9.95	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	Bayer Diagnostics Manufacturing Ltd
Contour <sup>®</sup> XT	Blood glucose	Contour <sup>®</sup> Next	50 strip= £15.04	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	Bayer Diagnostics Manufacturing Ltd
Element <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	Element <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £9.89	0.55– 33.3 mmol/litre	Neon Diagnostics Ltd
FreeStyle <sup>®</sup> Meter no longer available	Blood glucose	FreeStyle <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £16.10	1.1– 27.8 mmol/litre	Abbott Laboratories Ltd
FreeStyle Freedom <sup>®</sup> Meter no longer available	Blood glucose	FreeStyle <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £16.10	1.1– 27.8 mmol/litre	Abbott Laboratories Ltd
FreeStyle Freedom Lite <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	FreeStyle Lite <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £16.10	1.1– 27.8 mmol/litre	Abbott Laboratories Ltd
FreeStyle InsulinX <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	FreeStyle Lite <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £16.10	1.1– 27.8 mmol/litre	Abbott Laboratories Ltd
FreeStyle Lite <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	FreeStyle Lite <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £16.10	1.1– 27.8 mmol/litre	Abbott Laboratories Ltd
FreeStyle Mini <sup>®</sup> Meter no longer available	Blood glucose	FreeStyle <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £16.10	1.1– 27.8 mmol/litre	Abbott Laboratories Ltd
FreeStyle Optium <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	FreeStyle Optium <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £16.00	1.1– 27.8 mmol/litre	Abbott Laboratories Ltd
FreeStyle Optium <sup>®</sup>	Blood ketones	FreeStyle Optium <sup>®</sup> $\beta$ -ketone	10 strip= £21.53	0– 8.0 mmol/litre	Abbott Laboratories Ltd
FreeStyle Optium Neo <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	FreeStyle Optium <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £16.00	1.1– 27.8 mmol/litre	Abbott Laboratories Ltd
FreeStyle Optium Neo <sup>®</sup>	Blood ketones	FreeStyle Optium <sup>®</sup> $\beta$ -ketone	10 strip= £21.53	0– 8.0 mmol/litre	Abbott Laboratories Ltd
GlucoDock <sup>®</sup> module	Blood glucose	GlucoDock <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £14.90	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre For use with iPhone <sup>®</sup> , iPod touch <sup>®</sup> , and iPad <sup>®</sup>	Medisana Healthcare (UK) Ltd



Meter (all  )	Type of monitoring	Compatible test strips	Test strip net price	Sensitivity range (mmol/litre)	Manufacturer
GlucoLab <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	GlucoLab <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £9.89	0.55– 33.3 mmol/litre	Neon Diagnostics Ltd
GlucoMen <sup>®</sup> GM	Blood glucose	GlucoMen <sup>®</sup> GM	50 strip= £9.95	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	A. Menarini Diagnostics Ltd
GlucoMen <sup>®</sup> LX	Blood glucose	GlucoMen <sup>®</sup> LX Sensor	50 strip= £15.76	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	A. Menarini Diagnostics Ltd
GlucoMen <sup>®</sup> LX Plus	Blood glucose	GlucoMen <sup>®</sup> LX Sensor	50 strip= £15.76	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	A. Menarini Diagnostics Ltd
GlucoMen <sup>®</sup> LX Plus	Blood ketones	GlucoMen <sup>®</sup> LX Ketone	10 strip= £21.06	0– 0.8 mmol/litre	A. Menarini Diagnostics Ltd
GlucoMen <sup>®</sup> Visio	Blood glucose	GlucoMen <sup>®</sup> Visio Sensor	50 strip= £0.00	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	A. Menarini Diagnostics Ltd
GlucRx <sup>®</sup> Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	GlucRx <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £5.45	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	GlucRx Ltd
GlucRx Nexus <sup>®</sup> Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	GlucRx Nexus <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £9.95	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	GlucRx Ltd
Glucotrend <sup>®</sup> Meter no longer available	Blood glucose	Active <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £9.95	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	Roche Diabetes Care Ltd
iBGStar <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	BGStar <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £14.73	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	Sanofi
IME-DC <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	IME-DC <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £14.10	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	Arctic Medical Ltd
Mendor Discreet <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	Mendor Discreet <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £14.75	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	SpringMed Solutions Ltd
Microdot <sup>®</sup> + Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	Microdot <sup>®</sup> +	50 strip= £9.49	1.1– 29.2 mmol/litre	Cambridge Sensors Ltd
MyGlucoHealth <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	MyGlucoHealth <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £15.50	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	Entra Health Systems Ltd
Omnitest <sup>®</sup> 3	Blood glucose	Omnitest <sup>®</sup> 3	50 strip= £9.89	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	B.Braun Medical Ltd
One Touch Ultra <sup>®</sup> Meter no longer available	Blood glucose	One Touch Ultra <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £9.99	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	LifeScan
One Touch Ultra 2 <sup>®</sup> Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	One Touch Ultra <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £9.99	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	LifeScan
One Touch UltraEasy <sup>®</sup> Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	One Touch Ultra <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £9.99	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	LifeScan
One Touch UltraSmart <sup>®</sup> Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	One Touch Ultra <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £9.99	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	LifeScan
One Touch <sup>®</sup> VerioPro Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	One Touch <sup>®</sup> Verio	50 strip= £15.12	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	LifeScan
One Touch <sup>®</sup> Vita Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	One Touch <sup>®</sup> Vita	50 strip= £15.07	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	LifeScan
SD CodeFree <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	SD CodeFree <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £6.99	0.6– 33.3 mmol/litre	SD Biosensor Inc
Sensocard Plus <sup>®</sup> Meter no longer available	Blood glucose	Sensocard <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £16.30	1.1– 33.3 mmol/litre	BBI Healthcare Ltd

Meter (all  )	Type of monitoring	Compatible test strips	Test strip net price	Sensitivity range (mmol/litre)	Manufacturer
SuperCheck2 <sup>®</sup> Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	SuperCheck2 <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £8.49	1.1- 33.3 mmol/litre	Apollo Medical Technologies Ltd
TRUEone <sup>®</sup> All-in-one test strips and meter	Blood glucose	TRUEone <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £0.00	1.1- 33.3 mmol/litre	Nipro Diagnostics (UK) Ltd
TRUEresult <sup>®</sup> Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	TRUEresult <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £14.99	1.1- 33.3 mmol/litre	Nipro Diagnostics (UK) Ltd
TRUEresult twist <sup>®</sup> Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	TRUEresult <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £14.99	1.1- 33.3 mmol/litre	Nipro Diagnostics (UK) Ltd
TRUEtrack <sup>®</sup> Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	TRUEtrack <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £14.99	1.1- 33.3 mmol/litre	Nipro Diagnostics (UK) Ltd
TRUEyou mini <sup>®</sup>	Blood glucose	TRUEyou <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £9.92	1.1- 33.3 mmol/litre	Nipro Diagnostics (UK) Ltd
WaveSense JAZZ <sup>®</sup> Free of charge from diabetes healthcare professionals	Blood glucose	WaveSense JAZZ <sup>®</sup>	50 strip= £8.74	1.1- 33.3 mmol/litre	AgaMatrix Europe Ltd

**FreeStyle Precision Pro testing strips** (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)  
100 strip • No NHS indicative price available • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**FreeStyle testing strips** (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £16.10 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucEO testing strips** (Neon Diagnostics Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.89 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucuDock testing strips** (Medisana Healthcare (UK) Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £14.90 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucOLab testing strips** (Neon Diagnostics Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.89 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucoMen GM testing strips** (A. Menarini Diagnostics Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucoMen LX Sensor testing strips** (A. Menarini Diagnostics Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £15.76 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucoMen areo Sensor testing strips** (A. Menarini Diagnostics Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucoRx GO Professional testing strips** (GlucoRx Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucoRx GO testing strips** (GlucoRx Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucoRx HCT Glucose testing strips** (GlucoRx Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucoRx Nexus testing strips** (GlucoRx Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucoRx Q testing strips** (GlucoRx Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £5.45 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucoZen.auto testing strips** (GlucoZen Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £7.64 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr) 100 strip • NHS indicative price = £10.85 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Glucoflex-R testing strips** (Bio-Diagnostics Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £6.75 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**IME-DC testing strips** (Arctic Medical Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £14.10 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**MODZ testing strips** (Modz Oy)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £14.00 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Medi-Test Glucose testing strips** (BHR Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £2.33 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**MediSense SoftSense testing strips** (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £15.05 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**MediTouch 2 testing strips** (Medisana Healthcare (UK) Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £12.49 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**MediTouch testing strips** (Medisana Healthcare (UK) Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £14.90 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Mendor Discreet testing strips** (SpringMed Solutions Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £14.75 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Microdot+ testing strips** (Cambridge Sensors Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.49 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Mobile cassette** (Roche Diabetes Care Ltd)  
50 device • NHS indicative price = £9.99 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Myglucohealth testing strips** (Entra Health Systems Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £15.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Mylife Pura testing strips** (Ypsomed Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Mylife Unio testing strips** (Ypsomed Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Omnitest 3 testing strips** (B.Braun Medical Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.89 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Omnitest 5 testing strips** (B.Braun Medical Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.89 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**On-Call Advanced testing strips** (Point Of Care Testing Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £13.65 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**OneTouch Select Plus testing strips** (LifeScan)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.99 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**OneTouch Ultra testing strips** (LifeScan)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.99 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**OneTouch Verio testing strips** (LifeScan)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £15.12 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**OneTouch Vita testing strips** (LifeScan)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £15.07 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Performa testing strips** (Roche Diabetes Care Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**SD CodeFree testing strips** (SD Biosensor Inc)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £6.99 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**SURESIGN Resure testing strips** (Ciga Healthcare Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £8.49 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Sensocard testing strips** (BBI Healthcare Ltd)  
50 strip • NHS indicative price = £16.30 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**StatStrip testing strips** (Nova Biomedical)  
50 strip • No NHS indicative price available • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## TTE2 testing strips (Spirit Healthcare Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £7.75 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## TRUEresult testing strips (Nipro Diagnostics (UK) Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £14.99 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## TRUEyou testing strips (Nipro Diagnostics (UK) Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.92 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## True Trex testing strips (Trividia Health UK Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.90 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## TrueTrack System testing strips (Nipro Diagnostics (UK) Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £14.99 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## VivaChek I no testing strips (JR Biomedical Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £8.99 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## WaveSense JAZZ Duo testing strips (AgaMatrix Europe Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £8.74 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## WaveSense JAZZ testing strips (AgaMatrix Europe Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £8.74 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## Xceed Precision Pro testing strips (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)

10 strip • No NHS indicative price available 50 strip • No NHS indicative price available • Drug Tariff (Part IXr) 100 strip • No NHS indicative price available • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## eBChek testing strips (IRASCO Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £15.89 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## iHealth testing strips (Technomed Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.49 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## palmdoc iCare Advanced Solo testing strips (Palmdoc Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £13.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## palmdoc iCare Advanced testing strips (Palmdoc Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.70 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## palmdoc testing strips (Palmdoc Ltd)

50 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.40 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

# Blood ketones testing strips

## • BLOOD KETONES TESTING STRIPS

**FreeStyle Optium H beta-ketone testing strips** (Abbott Laboratories Ltd) | 10 strip • No NHS indicative price available • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**FreeStyle Optium beta-ketone testing strips** (Abbott Laboratories Ltd) | 10 strip • NHS indicative price = £21.53 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**FreeStyle Precision Pro beta-ketone testing strips** (Abbott Laboratories Ltd) | 50 strip • No NHS indicative price available

**GlucoMen LX beta-ketone testing strips** (A. Menarini Diagnostics Ltd) | 10 strip • NHS indicative price = £21.06 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucoMen areo Ketone Sensor testing strips** (A. Menarini Diagnostics Ltd) | 10 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**GlucoRx HCT Ketone testing strips** (GlucoRx Ltd) | 10 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**KetoSens testing strips** (Spirit Healthcare Ltd) | 10 strip • NHS indicative price = £9.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**StatStrip beta-ketone testing strips** (Nova Biomedical) | 50 strip • No NHS indicative price available

**Xceed Precision Pro beta-ketone testing strips** (Abbott Laboratories Ltd) | 10 strip • No NHS indicative price available • Drug Tariff (Part IXr) | 50 strip • No NHS indicative price available | 100 strip • No NHS indicative price available

# Hypodermic insulin injection pens

## • HYPODERMIC INSULIN INJECTION PENS

### AUTOPEN® 24

**Autopen® 24** (for use with Sanofi- Aventis 3-mL insulin cartridges), allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment, max. 21 units (single-unit version) or 2-unit dosage adjustment, max. 42 units (2-unit version).

**Autopen 24 hypodermic insulin injection pen reusable for 3mL cartridge 1 unit dial up / range 1-21 units** (Owen Mumford Ltd) 1 device • NHS indicative price = £16.71 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Autopen 24 hypodermic insulin injection pen reusable for 3mL cartridge 2 unit dial up / range 2-42 units** (Owen Mumford Ltd) 1 device • NHS indicative price = £16.71 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

### AUTOPEN® CLASSIC

**Autopen® Classic** (for use with Lilly and Wockhardt 3-mL insulin cartridges), allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment, max. 21 units (single-unit version) or 2-unit dosage adjustment, max. 42 units (2-unit version).

**Autopen Classic hypodermic insulin injection pen reusable for 3mL cartridge 1 unit dial up / range 1-21 units** (Owen Mumford Ltd) 1 device • NHS indicative price = £16.96 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Autopen Classic hypodermic insulin injection pen reusable for 3mL cartridge 2 unit dial up / range 2-42 units** (Owen Mumford Ltd) 1 device • NHS indicative price = £16.96 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**CLIKSTAR®**

For use with **Lantus®**, **Apidra®**, and **Insuman®** 3-mL insulin cartridges; allowing 1-unit dose adjustment, max. 80 units.

### HUMAPEN® LUXURA HD

For use with **Humulin®** and **Humalog®** 3-mL cartridges; allowing 0.5-unit dosage adjustment, max. 30 units.

**HumaPen Luxura HD hypodermic insulin injection pen reusable for 3mL cartridge 0.5 unit dial up / range 1-30 units** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd) 1 device • NHS indicative price = £27.01 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

### NOVOPEN® 4

For use with **Penfill®** 3-mL insulin cartridges; allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment, max. 60 units.

**NovoPen 4 hypodermic insulin injection pen reusable for 3mL cartridge 1 unit dial up / range 1-60 units** (Novo Nordisk Ltd) 1 device • NHS indicative price = £26.86 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**NovoPen 4 hypodermic insulin injection pen reusable for 3mL cartridge 1 unit dial up / range 1-60 units** (Novo Nordisk Ltd) 1 device • NHS indicative price = £26.86 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

# Needle free insulin delivery systems

## • NEEDLE FREE INSULIN DELIVERY SYSTEMS

### INSUJET®

For use with any 10-mL vial or 3-mL cartridge of insulin, allowing 1-unit dosage adjustment, max 40 units. Available as **starter set (Insulet® device, nozzle cap, nozzle and piston, 1 × 10-mL adaptor, 1 × 3-mL adaptor, 1 cartridge cap removal key, nozzle pack (15 nozzles), cartridge adaptor pack (15 adaptors), or vial adaptor pack (15 adaptors).**

**Insulet starter set** (Spirit Healthcare Ltd)

1 pack • NHS indicative price = £90.00 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

# Urine glucose testing strips

## • URINE GLUCOSE TESTING STRIPS

**Diastix testing strips** (Bayer Diagnostics Manufacturing Ltd) 50 strip • NHS indicative price = £2.89 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Medi-Test Glucose testing strips** (BHR Pharmaceuticals Ltd) 50 strip • NHS indicative price = £2.33 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

# Urine ketone testing strips

## • URINE KETONES TESTING STRIPS

**GlucoRx KetoRx Sticks 2GK testing strips** (GlucoRx Ltd) 50 strip • NHS indicative price = £2.25 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Ketostix testing strips** (Bayer Diagnostics Manufacturing Ltd) 50 strip • NHS indicative price = £3.06 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

# Urine protein testing strips

## • URINE PROTEIN TESTING STRIPS

**Albustix testing strips** (Siemens Medical Solutions Diagnostics Ltd) 50 strip • NHS indicative price = £4.10 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

**Medi-Test Protein 2 testing strips** (BHR Pharmaceuticals Ltd) 50 strip • NHS indicative price = £3.27 • Drug Tariff (Part IXr)

## 3.2 Hypoglycaemia

### Hypoglycaemia

02-Jun-2017

#### Treatment of hypoglycaemia

Prompt treatment of hypoglycaemia in children from any cause is essential as severe hypoglycaemia may cause subsequent neurological damage. Hyperinsulinism, fatty acid oxidation disorders and glycogen storage disease are less common causes of acute hypoglycaemia in children.

Initially glucose 10–20 g is given by mouth either in liquid form or as granulated sugar or sugar lumps. If necessary this may be repeated after 10–15 minutes. After initial treatment, a snack providing sustained availability of carbohydrate (e.g. a sandwich, fruit, milk, or biscuits) or the next meal (if it is due) can prevent blood-glucose concentration from falling again.

Proprietary products of quick-acting carbohydrate (e.g. *GlucoGel*®, *DextroGel*®, *GSF-Syrup*®, *Rapilose*® gel) are available on prescription for patients to keep on hand in case of hypoglycaemia.

Alternatively, approximately 10 g of glucose is available from 2 teaspoons of sugar, or from 3 sugar lumps, and also from non-diet versions of the following soft drinks: 110 mL of *Lucozade*® *Energy Original* (also, see note below), 100 mL of *Coca-Cola*®, 19 mL of *Ribena*® *Blackcurrant* (to be diluted).

**Note: the carbohydrate content of commercially available glucose-containing drinks is currently subject to change—individual product labels should be checked.** Patients should be aware that for a time, both old and new bottles and cans may be available—individual product labels should be checked.

**Hypoglycaemia which causes unconsciousness or seizures is an emergency.** Glucagon below, a polypeptide hormone produced by the alpha cells of the islets of Langerhans, increases blood-glucose concentration by mobilising glycogen stored in the liver. In hypoglycaemia, if sugar cannot be given by mouth, glucagon can be given by injection. Carbohydrates should be given as soon as possible to restore liver glycogen; glucagon is not appropriate for chronic hypoglycaemia. Glucagon can be issued to parents or carers of insulin-treated children for emergency use in hypoglycaemic attacks. It is often advisable to prescribe it on an 'if necessary' basis for hospitalised insulin-treated children, so that it can be given rapidly by the nurses during a hypoglycaemic emergency. If not effective in 10 minutes intravenous glucose should be given.

Alternatively, glucose intravenous infusion 10% p. 590 can be given intravenously into a large vein through a large-gauge needle; care is required since this concentration is irritant especially if extravasation occurs. Glucose intravenous infusion 50% is **not** recommended, as it is very viscous and hypertonic. Close monitoring is necessary, particularly in the case of an overdose with a long-acting insulin because further administration of glucose may be required. Children whose hypoglycaemia is caused by an oral antidiabetic drug should be transferred to hospital because the hypoglycaemic effects of these drugs can persist for many hours.

Glucagon is not effective in the treatment of hypoglycaemia due to fatty acid oxidation or glycogen storage disorders.

#### Chronic hypoglycaemia

Diazoxide p. 466 is useful in the management of chronic hypoglycaemia due to excessive insulin secretion, either from a tumour involving the islets of Langerhans or from persisting hyperinsulinaemic hypoglycaemia of infancy (nesidioblastosis). Diazoxide has no place in the

management of acute hypoglycaemia. Chlorothiazide p. 111 reduces diazoxide-induced sodium and water retention and has the added benefit of potentiating the glycaemic effect of diazoxide.

If diazoxide and chlorothiazide fail to suppress excessive glucose requirements in chronic hypoglycaemia then octreotide p. 467 or nifedipine p. 109 can be added. Octreotide suppresses secretion of growth hormone, but growth is unlikely to be affected in the long term.

#### Neonatal hypoglycaemia

Neonatal hypoglycaemia at birth is treated with glucose **intravenous infusion 10%**. Mild asymptomatic persistent hypoglycaemia may respond to a single dose of glucagon. Glucagon has also been used in the short-term management of endogenous hyperinsulinism.

### GLYCOGENOLYTIC HORMONES

#### Glucagon

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Insulin-induced hypoglycaemia

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Neonate: 20 micrograms/kg.

- Child 1 month-1 year: 500 micrograms
- Child 2-17 years (body-weight up to 25 kg): 500 micrograms, if no response within 10 minutes intravenous glucose must be given
- Child 2-17 years (body-weight 25 kg and above): 1 mg, if no response within 10 minutes intravenous glucose must be given

##### Endogenous hyperinsulinism

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 200 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 1 mg) for 1 dose.

- Child 1 month-1 year: 1 mg for 1 dose
- BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Neonate: 1–18 micrograms/kg/hour (max. per dose 50 micrograms/kg/hour), adjusted according to response.

► Child 1 month-1 year: 1–10 micrograms/kg/hour, dose to be adjusted as necessary

##### Diagnosis of growth hormone secretion (specialist use only)

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Child: 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 1 mg) for 1 dose, dose may vary, consult local guidelines

##### Beta-blocker poisoning (cardiogenic shock unresponsive to atropine)

► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child: 50–150 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 10 mg), to be administered in glucose 5% (with precautions to protect the airway in case of vomiting), followed by (by intravenous infusion) 50 micrograms/kg/hour

##### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

► 1 unit of glucagon = 1 mg of glucagon.

● **UNLICENSED USE** Dose and indication for cardiogenic shock unresponsive to atropine in beta-blocker overdose not licensed.

Unlicensed for growth hormone test and hyperinsulinism.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Pheochromocytoma

● **CAUTIONS** Glucagonoma · ineffective in chronic hypoglycaemia, starvation, and adrenal insufficiency ·

insulinoma • when used in the diagnosis of growth hormone secretion, delayed hypoglycaemia may result—deaths reported (ensure a meal is eaten before discharge)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: glucagon

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Nausea
- ▶ **Uncommon** Vomiting
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Abdominal pain • hypertension • hypotension • tachycardia

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- ▶ With intravenous use When administered by *continuous intravenous infusion*, do not add to infusion fluids containing calcium—precipitation may occur.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Glucagon for hypoglycaemia [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/glucagon-for-hypoglycaemia](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/glucagon-for-hypoglycaemia)

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Prescription-only medicine restriction does not apply where administration is for saving life in emergency.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

- ▶ **GlucaGen Hypokit** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)  
Glucagon hydrochloride 1 mg GlucaGen Hypokit 1mg powder and solvent for solution for injection | 1 vial [PoM] £11.52 DT = £11.52

## 3.2a Chronic hypoglycaemia

**Other drugs used for Chronic hypoglycaemia**  
Chlorothiazide, p. 111

## GLYCOGENOLYTIC HORMONES

### Diazoxide

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Resistant hypertension**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ **Neonate:** Initially 1.7 mg/kg 3 times a day, adjusted according to response; maximum 15 mg/kg per day.
- ▶ **Child:** Initially 1.7 mg/kg 3 times a day, adjusted according to response; maximum 15 mg/kg per day

**Chronic intractable hypoglycaemia**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ **Neonate:** Initially 5 mg/kg twice daily, adjusted according to response, initial dose used to establish response; maintenance 1.5–3 mg/kg 2–3 times a day; increased if necessary up to 7 mg/kg 3 times a day, higher doses are unlikely to be beneficial, but may be required in some cases.
- ▶ **Child:** Initially 1.7 mg/kg 3 times a day, adjusted according to response; maintenance 1.5–3 mg/kg 2–3 times a day, increased if necessary up to 5 mg/kg 3 times a day, doses up to 5 mg/kg may be required in some cases, but higher doses are unlikely to be beneficial

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for resistant hypertension.

- **CAUTIONS** Aortic coarctation • aortic stenosis • arteriovenous shunt • heart failure • hyperuricaemia • impaired cardiac circulation • impaired cerebral circulation

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: diazoxide

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain • albuminuria • appetite decreased (long term use) • arrhythmia • azotaemia •

cardiomegaly • cataract • constipation • diabetic hyperosmolar coma • diarrhoea • dizziness • dyspnoea • eosinophilia • extrapyramidal symptoms • face abnormal • fever • fluid retention • galactorrhoea • haemorrhage • headache • heart failure • hirsutism • hyperglycaemia • hyperuricaemia (long term use) • hypogammaglobulinaemia • hypotension • ileus • ketoacidosis • leucopenia • libido decreased • musculoskeletal pain • nausea • nephritic syndrome • oculogyric crisis • pancreatitis • parkinsonism • pulmonary hypertension • skin reactions • sodium retention • taste altered • thrombocytopenia • tinnitus • vision disorders • voice alteration (long term use) • vomiting

- **PREGNANCY** Use only if essential; alopecia and hypertrichosis reported in neonates with prolonged use; may inhibit uterine activity during labour.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Dose reduction may be required.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ Monitor blood pressure.
- ▶ Monitor white cell and platelet count during prolonged use.
- ▶ Regularly assess growth, bone, and psychological development during prolonged use.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution  
**Tablet**

- ▶ **Eudemine** (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)  
Diazoxide 50 mg Eudemine 50mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £46.45

**Capsule**

- ▶ **Diazoxide (Non-proprietary)**  
Diazoxide 25 mg Progylcem 25 capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £

## PITUITARY AND HYPOTHALAMIC HORMONES AND ANALOGUES > SOMATOSTATIN ANALOGUES

### Somatostatin analogues



- **CAUTIONS** Diabetes mellitus (antidiabetic requirements may be reduced) • insulinoma (increased depth and duration of hypoglycaemia may occur—observe patients and monitor blood glucose levels when initiating treatment and changing doses)

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Adrenal insufficiency • alopecia • appetite decreased • arrhythmias • arthralgia • asthenia • biliary dilatation • cholelithiasis (following long term use) • constipation • diabetes mellitus • diarrhoea • dizziness • dyspnoea • gallbladder disorders • gastrointestinal discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • glucose tolerance impaired (following long term use) • headache • hepatic disorders • hyperbilirubinaemia • hyperglycaemia (long term use) • hypoglycaemia • hypotension • hypothyroidism • lethargy • musculoskeletal pain • myalgia • nausea • QT interval prolongation • skin reactions • thyroid disorder • vomiting • weight decreased
- ▶ **Uncommon** Anaemia • dehydration • hot flush • insomnia
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Pancreatitis • pancreatitis acute (after administration)

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Injection sites should be rotated.



## Octreotide

17-Oct-2016

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Persistent hyperinsulinaemic hypoglycaemia unresponsive to diazoxide and glucose

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Initially 2–5 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours, adjusted according to response; increased if necessary up to 7 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, dosing up to 7 micrograms/kg may rarely be required.

- Child: Initially 1–2 micrograms/kg every 4–6 hours, adjusted according to response; increased if necessary up to 7 micrograms/kg every 4 hours, dosing up to 7 micrograms/kg may rarely be required

#### Bleeding from oesophageal or gastric varices

##### ► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 1 microgram/kg/hour, higher doses may be required initially, when no active bleeding reduce dose over 24 hours; Usual maximum 50 micrograms/hour

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed in children.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: octreotide

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Administering non-depot injections of octreotide between meals and at bedtime may reduce gastrointestinal side-effects.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required during treatment.
- **PREGNANCY** Possible effect on fetal growth; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - Monitor thyroid function on long-term therapy.
  - Monitor liver function.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal of short-acting subcutaneous octreotide (associated with biliary colic and pancreatitis).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intravenous injection or intravenous infusion, dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a concentration of 10–50%.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Octreotide (Non-proprietary)

###### Octreotide (as Octreotide acetate) 50 microgram per

1 ml Octreotide 50micrograms/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £18.85 DT = £18.85  
Octreotide 50micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £14.85–£18.60

Octreotide 50micrograms/1ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £22.00 DT = £22.00

###### Octreotide (as Octreotide acetate) 100 microgram per

1 ml Octreotide 100micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £32.65 DT = £27.97  
Octreotide 100micrograms/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £30.34–£32.90 DT = £30.34

Octreotide 100micrograms/1ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £32.65 DT = £32.65

###### Octreotide (as Octreotide acetate) 200 microgram per

1 ml Octreotide 1mg/5ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £65.00–£69.66

###### Octreotide (as Octreotide acetate) 500 microgram per

1 ml Octreotide 500micrograms/1ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £158.25  
Octreotide 500micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £169.35 DT = £135.47

Octreotide 500micrograms/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £154.22–£169.00 DT = £154.22

##### ► Sandostatin (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

###### Octreotide (as Octreotide acetate) 50 microgram per

1 ml Sandostatin 50micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £14.87

###### Octreotide (as Octreotide acetate) 100 microgram per

1 ml Sandostatin 100micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £27.97 DT = £27.97

###### Octreotide (as Octreotide acetate) 500 microgram per

1 ml Sandostatin 500micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £135.47 DT = £135.47

#### Powder and solvent for suspension for injection

##### ► Sandostatin LAR (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

Octreotide (as Octreotide acetate) 10 mg Sandostatin LAR 10mg powder and solvent for suspension for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £549.71 DT = £549.71

Octreotide (as Octreotide acetate) 20 mg Sandostatin LAR 20mg powder and solvent for suspension for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £799.33 DT = £799.33

Octreotide (as Octreotide acetate) 30 mg Sandostatin LAR 30mg powder and solvent for suspension for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £998.41 DT = £998.41

## 4 Disorders of bone metabolism

### Bone metabolism

#### Disorders of bone metabolism

The two main disorders of bone metabolism that occur in children are rickets and osteoporosis. The two most common forms of rickets are Vitamin D deficiency rickets and hypophosphataemic rickets. See also calcium.

#### Osteoporosis

Osteoporosis in children may be primary (e.g. *osteogenesis imperfecta* and *idiopathic juvenile osteoporosis*), or secondary (e.g. due to inflammatory disorders, immobilisation, or corticosteroids); specialist management is required.

#### Corticosteroid-induced osteoporosis

To reduce the risk of osteoporosis doses of oral corticosteroids should be as low as possible and courses of treatment as short as possible.

#### Calcitonin

Calcitonin is involved with parathyroid hormone in the regulation of bone turnover and hence in the maintenance of calcium balance and homeostasis. Calcitonin (salmon) p. 471 (synthetic or recombinant salmon calcitonin) is used by specialists to lower the plasma-calcium concentration in children with hypercalcaemia associated with malignancy.

#### Bisphosphonates

A bisphosphonate such as pamidronate disodium p. 469 is used in the management of severe forms of *osteogenesis imperfecta* and other causes of osteoporosis in children to reduce the number of fractures; the long-term effects of bisphosphonates in children has not been established. Single doses of bisphosphonates are also used to manage hypercalcaemia. Treatment should be initiated under specialist advice only.

#### Other drugs used for Disorders of bone metabolism

Calcitriol, p. 631

## BISPHOSPHONATES

## Bisphosphonates

- **DRUG ACTION** Bisphosphonates are adsorbed onto hydroxyapatite crystals in bone, slowing both their rate of growth and dissolution, and therefore reducing the rate of bone turnover.

## IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: BISPHOSPHONATES: ATYPICAL FEMORAL FRACTURES (JUNE 2011)

Atypical femoral fractures have been reported rarely with bisphosphonate treatment, mainly in patients receiving long-term treatment for osteoporosis.

The need to continue bisphosphonate treatment for osteoporosis should be re-evaluated periodically based on an assessment of the benefits and risks of treatment for individual patients, particularly after 5 or more years of use.

Patients should be advised to report any thigh, hip, or groin pain during treatment with a bisphosphonate.

Discontinuation of bisphosphonate treatment in patients suspected to have an atypical femoral fracture should be considered after an assessment of the benefits and risks of continued treatment.

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: BISPHOSPHONATES: OSTEONECROSIS OF THE JAW (NOVEMBER 2009) AND INTRAVENOUS BISPHOSPHONATES: OSTEONECROSIS OF THE JAW – FURTHER MEASURES TO MINIMISE RISK (JULY 2015)

The risk of osteonecrosis of the jaw is substantially greater for patients receiving intravenous bisphosphonates in the treatment of cancer than for patients receiving oral bisphosphonates for osteoporosis or Paget's disease.

Risk factors for developing osteonecrosis of the jaw that should be considered are: potency of bisphosphonate (highest for zoledronate), route of administration, cumulative dose, duration and type of malignant disease, concomitant treatment, smoking, comorbid conditions, and history of dental disease.

All patients should have a dental check-up (and any necessary remedial work should be performed) before bisphosphonate treatment, or as soon as possible after starting treatment. Patients should also maintain good oral hygiene, receive routine dental check-ups, and report any oral symptoms such as dental mobility, pain, or swelling, non-healing sores or discharge to a doctor and dentist during treatment.

Before prescribing an intravenous bisphosphonate, patients should be given a patient reminder card and informed of the risk of osteonecrosis of the jaw. Advise patients to tell their doctor if they have any problems with their mouth or teeth before starting treatment, and if the patient wears dentures, they should make sure their dentures fit properly. Patients should tell their doctor and dentist that they are receiving an intravenous bisphosphonate if they need dental treatment or dental surgery.

Guidance for dentists in primary care is included in *Oral Health Management of Patients Prescribed Bisphosphonates: Dental Clinical Guidance*, Scottish Dental Clinical Effectiveness Programme, April 2011 (available at [www.sdcep.org.uk](http://www.sdcep.org.uk)).

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: BISPHOSPHONATES: OSTEONECROSIS OF THE EXTERNAL AUDITORY CANAL (DECEMBER 2015)

Benign idiopathic osteonecrosis of the external auditory canal has been reported very rarely with bisphosphonate treatment, mainly in patients receiving long-term therapy (2 years or longer).

The possibility of osteonecrosis of the external auditory canal should be considered in patients receiving

bisphosphonates who present with ear symptoms, including chronic ear infections, or suspected cholesteatoma.

Risk factors for developing osteonecrosis of the external auditory canal include: steroid use, chemotherapy, infection, an ear operation, or cotton-bud use.

Patients should be advised to report any ear pain, discharge from the ear, or an ear infection during treatment with a bisphosphonate.

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Alopecia • anaemia • arthralgia • asthenia • constipation • diarrhoea • dizziness • dysphagia • electrolyte imbalance • eye inflammation • fever • gastritis • gastrointestinal discomfort • headache • influenza like illness • malaise • myalgia • nausea • oesophageal ulcer (discontinue) • oesophagitis (discontinue) • pain • peripheral oedema • renal impairment • skin reactions • taste altered • vomiting
- **Uncommon** Anaphylactic reaction • angioedema • bronchospasm • oesophageal stenosis (discontinue) • osteonecrosis
- **Rare or very rare** Atypical femur fracture • Stevens-Johnson syndrome

## ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Atypical femoral fractures** Patients should be advised to report any thigh, hip, or groin pain during treatment with a bisphosphonate.

**Osteonecrosis of the jaw** During bisphosphonate treatment patients should maintain good oral hygiene, receive routine dental check-ups, and report any oral symptoms. **Osteonecrosis of the external auditory canal** Patients should be advised to report any ear pain, discharge from ear or an ear infection during treatment with a bisphosphonate.

F above

14-Sep-2017

Alendronic acid  
(Alendronate)

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Osteoporosis (due to osteogenesis imperfecta and other causes) (initiated under specialist supervision)**  
**Hypercalcaemia (initiated under specialist supervision)**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Abnormalities of oesophagus • hypocalcaemia • other factors which delay emptying (e.g. stricture or achalasia)

- **CAUTIONS** Active gastro-intestinal bleeding • atypical femoral fractures • duodenitis • dysphagia • exclude other causes of osteoporosis • gastritis • history (within 1 year) of ulcers • surgery of the upper gastro-intestinal tract • symptomatic oesophageal disease • ulcers • upper gastro-intestinal disorders

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: bisphosphonates

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal distension • gastrointestinal disorders • joint swelling • vertigo
- **Uncommon** Erythema • eye inflammation • haemorrhage
- **Rare or very rare** Femoral stress fracture • oropharyngeal ulceration • photosensitivity reaction • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Severe oesophageal reactions (oesophagitis, oesophageal ulcers, oesophageal stricture and oesophageal erosions) have been reported; patients should be advised to stop taking the tablets and to seek medical attention if they develop symptoms of oesophageal irritation such as dysphagia, new or

worsening heartburn, pain on swallowing or retrosternal pain.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 35 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Correct disturbances of calcium and mineral metabolism (e.g. vitamin-D deficiency, hypocalcaemia) before starting treatment. Monitor serum-calcium concentration during treatment.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets should be swallowed whole and oral solution should be swallowed as a single 100 mL dose. Doses should be taken with plenty of water while sitting or standing, on an empty stomach at least 30 minutes before breakfast (or another oral medicine); patient should stand or sit upright for at least 30 minutes after administration.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or their carers should be given advice on how to administer alendronic acid tablets and oral solution. Oesophageal reactions Patients (or their carers) should be advised to stop taking alendronic acid and to seek medical attention if they develop symptoms of oesophageal irritation such as dysphagia, new or worsening heartburn, pain on swallowing or retrosternal pain.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

##### Oral solution

- **Alendronic acid (Non-proprietary)**  
Alendronic acid 700 microgram per 1 mL Alendronic acid 70mg/100mL oral solution unit dose sugar free sugar-free | 4 unit dose [PoM] £28.56 DT = £28.56

##### Effervescent tablet

- **Binosto** (Internis Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Alendronic acid (as Alendronate sodium) 70 mg Binosto 70mg effervescent tablets sugar-free | 4 tablet [PoM] £22.80 DT = £22.80

##### Tablet

- **Alendronic acid (Non-proprietary)**  
Alendronic acid (as Alendronate sodium) 10 mg Alendronic acid 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.25 DT = £1.38  
Alendronic acid (as Alendronate sodium) 70 mg Alendronic acid 70mg tablets | 4 tablet [PoM] £22.80 DT = £0.41
- **Fosamax Once Weekly** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)  
Alendronic acid (as Alendronate sodium) 70 mg Fosamax Once Weekly 70mg tablets | 4 tablet [PoM] £22.80 DT = £0.41

F 468

## Pamidronate disodium

(Formerly called  
aminohydroxypropylenediphosphonate  
disodium (APD))

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Osteoporosis (due to osteogenesis imperfecta and other causes) (specialist use only) | Hypercalcaemia (specialist use only)**

- **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- **Child:** (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CAUTIONS** Atypical femoral fractures · cardiac disease · ensure adequate hydration · previous thyroid surgery (risk of hypocalcaemia)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: bisphosphonates
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · chills · decreased leucocytes · drowsiness · electrolyte imbalance ·

flushing · hypertension · insomnia · paraesthesia · tetany · thrombocytopenia

- **Uncommon** Agitation · dyspnoea · eye inflammation · hypotension · muscle cramps · osteonecrosis · seizure
- **Rare or very rare** Confusion · glomerulonephritis · haematuria · heart failure · nephritis tubulointerstitial · nephrotic syndrome · oedema · pulmonary oedema · reactivation of infections · renal disorder exacerbated · renal tubular disorder · respiratory disorders · visual hallucinations · xanthopsia
- **Frequency not known** Atrial fibrillation
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid—toxicity in *animal* studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Caution in severe hepatic impairment—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Monitoring** Monitor renal function in renal disease or predisposition to renal impairment (e.g. in tumour-induced hypercalcaemia).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *slow intravenous infusion* (Aredia®; Pamidronate disodium, Hospira, Medac, Wockhardt), give intermittently in Glucose 5% or Sodium chloride 0.9%; give at a rate not exceeding 1 mg/minute; not to be given with infusion fluids containing calcium. For *Aredia®*, reconstitute initially with water for injections (15 mg in 5 mL, 30 mg or 90 mg in 10 mL), then dilute with infusion fluid to a concentration of not more than 90 mg in 250 mL. For *Pamidronate disodium* (Medac, Hospira, Wockhardt) dilute with infusion fluid to a concentration of not more than 90 mg in 250 mL.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** A patient reminder card should be provided (risk of osteonecrosis of the jaw). **Driving and skilled tasks** Patients should be warned against performing skilled tasks (e.g. cycling, driving or operating machinery) immediately after treatment (somnolence or dizziness can occur).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for infusion

- **Pamidronate disodium (Non-proprietary)**  
**Pamidronate disodium 3 mg per 1 mL** Pamidronate disodium 15mg/5mL solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £27.50 (Hospital only) | 5 vial [PoM] £149.15 (Hospital only)  
**Pamidronate disodium 30mg/10mL solution for infusion vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £55.00-£59.66 (Hospital only)  
**Pamidronate disodium 60mg/20mL solution for infusion vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £110.00 (Hospital only)  
**Pamidronate disodium 90mg/30mL solution for infusion vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £165.00 (Hospital only)  
**Pamidronate disodium 9 mg per 1 mL** Pamidronate disodium 90mg/10mL solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £170.45 (Hospital only)  
**Pamidronate disodium 15 mg per 1 mL** Pamidronate disodium 60mg/4mL solution for infusion ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £119.32  
**Pamidronate disodium 15mg/1mL solution for infusion ampoules** | 4 ampoule [PoM] £119.32  
**Pamidronate disodium 90mg/6mL solution for infusion ampoules** | 1 ampoule [PoM] £170.46  
**Pamidronate disodium 30mg/2mL solution for infusion ampoules** | 2 ampoule [PoM] £119.32

F 468

## Risedronate sodium

28-Sep-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Osteoporosis (due to osteogenesis imperfecta and other causes) (specialist use only) | Hypercalcaemia (specialist use only)**

- **BY MOUTH**
- **Child:** (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hypocalcaemia
- **CAUTIONS** Atypical femoral fractures · oesophageal abnormalities · other factors which delay transit or emptying (e.g. stricture or achalasia)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: bisphosphonates
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Uncommon** Gastrointestinal disorders · iritis
  - **Rare or very rare** Glossitis
  - **Frequency not known** Amblyopia · apnoea · chest pain · corneal lesion · dry eye · hypersensitivity · hypersensitivity vasculitis · increased risk of infection · leg cramps · liver disorder · muscle weakness · neoplasms · nocturia · pain · skin reactions · tinnitus · toxic epidermal necrolysis · weight decreased
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - Correct hypocalcaemia before starting.
  - Correct other disturbances of bone and mineral metabolism (e.g. vitamin-D deficiency) at onset of treatment.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Swallow tablets whole with full glass of water; on rising, take on an empty stomach at least 30 minutes before first food or drink of the day **or**, if taking at any other time of the day, avoid food and drink for at least 2 hours before or after risedronate (particularly avoid calcium-containing products e.g. milk; also avoid iron and mineral supplements and antacids); stand or sit upright for at least 30 minutes; do not take tablets at bedtime or before rising.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer risedronate sodium tablets.  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Risedronate for brittle bones [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/risedronate-for-brittle-bones](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/risedronate-for-brittle-bones)  
Oesophageal reactions Patients should be advised to stop taking the tablets and seek medical attention if they develop symptoms of oesophageal irritation such as dysphagia, pain on swallowing, retrosternal pain, or heartburn.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### ► Risedronate sodium (Non-proprietary)

**Risedronate sodium 5 mg** Risedronate sodium 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £24.78 DT = £18.85

**Risedronate sodium 30 mg** Risedronate sodium 30mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £143.95 DT = £143.83

**Risedronate sodium 35 mg** Risedronate sodium 35mg tablets | 4 tablet [PoM] £19.12 DT = £0.58

##### ► Actonel (Warner Chilcott UK Ltd, Teva UK Ltd)

**Risedronate sodium 5 mg** Actonel 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £17.99 DT = £18.85

**Risedronate sodium 30 mg** Actonel 30mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £143.95 DT = £143.83

**Risedronate sodium 35 mg** Actonel Once a Week 35mg tablets | 4 tablet [PoM] £19.12 DT = £0.58

Actonel 35mg tablets | 4 tablet [PoM] Ⓢ DT = £0.58

## Sodium clodronate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Osteoporosis (due to osteogenesis imperfecta or other causes) (specialist use only) | Hypercalcaemia (specialist use only)**

► **BY MOUTH**

► **Child:** (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute gastro-intestinal inflammatory conditions
- **CAUTIONS** Atypical femoral fractures · maintain adequate fluid intake during treatment
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: bisphosphonates
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Proteinuria · respiratory disorder
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
Use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor renal function, serum calcium and serum phosphate before and during treatment.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Avoid food for 2 hours before and 1 hour after treatment, particularly calcium-containing products e.g. milk; also avoid iron and mineral supplements and antacids; maintain adequate fluid intake.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer sodium clodronate capsules and tablets.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

##### ► Sodium clodronate (Non-proprietary)

**Sodium clodronate 800 mg** Sodium clodronate 800mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £116.72 DT = £146.43

##### ► Bonefos (Bayer Plc)

**Sodium clodronate 800 mg** Bonefos 800mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £146.43 DT = £146.43

##### ► Loron (Intrapharm Laboratories Ltd)

**Sodium clodronate 520 mg** Loron 520mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £114.44 DT = £114.44

#### Capsule

##### ► Sodium clodronate (Non-proprietary)

**Sodium clodronate 400 mg** Sodium clodronate 400mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £34.96 | 120 capsule [PoM] £139.83 DT = £139.83

##### ► Bonefos (Bayer Plc)

**Sodium clodronate 400 mg** Bonefos 400mg capsules | 120 capsule [PoM] £139.83 DT = £139.83

##### ► Clasteon (Kent Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Sodium clodronate 400 mg** Clasteon 400mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £34.96 | 120 capsule [PoM] £139.83 DT = £139.83

## CALCIUM REGULATING DRUGS > BONE RESORPTION INHIBITORS

### Calcitonin (salmon)

(Salcatonin)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Hypercalcaemia (limited experience in children) (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child: 2.5–5 units/kg every 12 hours (max. per dose 400 units every 6–8 hours), adjusted according to response, no additional benefit with doses over 8 units/kg every 6 hours
- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: 5–10 units/kg, to be administered by slow intravenous infusion over at least 6 hours

##### **Osteoporosis (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: Refer for specialist advice, experience very limited

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hypocalcaemia
- **CAUTIONS** Heart failure · history of allergy (skin test advised) · risk of malignancy—avoid prolonged use (use lowest effective dose for shortest possible time)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcitonin (salmon)
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · arthralgia · diarrhoea · dizziness · fatigue · flushing · headache · musculoskeletal pain · nausea · secondary malignancy (long term use) · taste altered · vomiting
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Hypersensitivity · hypertension · influenza like illness · oedema · polyuria · skin reactions · visual impairment
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Bronchospasm · throat swelling · tongue swelling
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Hypocalcaemia · tremor
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk (toxicity in *animal* studies).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid; inhibits lactation in *animals*.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor bone growth.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, dilute injection solution (e.g. 400 units in 500 mL) with Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over at least 6 hours; glass or hard plastic containers should not be used; some loss of potency on dilution and administration—use diluted solution without delay.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Solution for injection**

###### ▶ Calcitonin (salmon) (Non-proprietary)

Calcitonin (salmon) 50 unit per 1 ml Calcitonin (salmon)  
50units/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM]  
£167.50

Calcitonin (salmon) 100 unit per 1 ml Calcitonin (salmon)  
100units/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM]  
£220.00

Calcitonin (salmon) 200 unit per 1 ml Calcitonin (salmon)  
400units/2ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £352.00

## 5 Gonadotrophin responsive conditions

### PITUITARY AND HYPOTHALAMIC HORMONES AND ANALOGUES > GONADOTROPIN-RELEASING HORMONES

#### Goserelin

- **DRUG ACTION** Administration of gonadorelin analogues produces an initial phase of stimulation; continued administration is followed by down-regulation of gonadotrophin-releasing hormone receptors, thereby reducing the release of gonadotrophins (follicle stimulating hormone and luteinising hormone) which in turn leads to inhibition of androgen and oestrogen production.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### ZOLADEX LA®

###### **Gonadotrophin-dependent precocious puberty**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: 10.8 mg every 12 weeks, to be administered into the anterior abdominal wall, injections may be required more frequently in some cases

##### ZOLADEX®

###### **Gonadotrophin-dependent precocious puberty**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: 3.6 mg every 28 days, to be administered into the anterior abdominal wall, injections may be required more frequently in some cases

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Undiagnosed vaginal bleeding
- **CAUTIONS** Depression · patients with metabolic bone disease (decrease in bone mineral density can occur)
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Asthma · body hair changes · breast abnormalities · depression · headache · hypersensitivity · mood altered · ovarian cyst (may require withdrawal) · paraesthesia · skin reactions · vaginal haemorrhage · visual impairment · weight change · withdrawal bleed
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Non-hormonal, barrier methods of contraception should be used during entire treatment period. Pregnancy should be excluded before treatment, the first injection should be given during menstruation or shortly afterwards or use barrier contraception for 1 month beforehand.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor bone mineral density.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Rotate injection site to prevent atrophy and nodule formation.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Implant**

###### ▶ Zoladex (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Goserelin (as Goserelin acetate) 3.6 mg** Zoladex 3.6mg implant SafeSystem pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM]  
£65.00 DT = £65.00

###### ▶ Zoladex LA (AstraZeneca UK Ltd)

**Goserelin (as Goserelin acetate) 10.8 mg** Zoladex LA 10.8mg implant SafeSystem pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £235.00 DT = £235.00



## Leuprorelin acetate

- **DRUG ACTION** Administration of gonadorelin analogues produces an initial phase of stimulation; continued administration is followed by down-regulation of gonadotrophin-releasing hormone receptors, thereby reducing the release of gonadotrophins (follicle stimulating hormone and luteinising hormone) which in turn leads to inhibition of androgen and oestrogen production.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### PROSTAP 3 DCS<sup>®</sup>

##### Gonadotrophin-dependent precocious puberty

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child: 11.25 mg every 12 weeks, injections may be required more frequently in some cases

#### PROSTAP SR DCS<sup>®</sup>

##### Gonadotrophin-dependent precocious puberty

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child: 3.75 mg every 4 weeks, half this dose is sometimes used in children with body-weight under 20 kg, injections may be required more frequently in some cases

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Undiagnosed vaginal bleeding
- **CAUTIONS** Patients with metabolic bone disease (decrease in bone mineral density can occur)
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - Common or very common Acne · emotional lability · gastrointestinal discomfort · haemorrhage · headache · metrorrhagia · nausea · vaginal discharge · vomiting
  - Frequency not known Seizure
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid—teratogenic in *animal* studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor bone mineral density.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Rotate injection site to prevent atrophy and nodule formation.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder and solvent for suspension for injection

- **Prostap 3 DCS** (Takeda UK Ltd)  
Leuprorelin acetate 11.25 mg Prostap 3 DCS 11.25mg powder and solvent for suspension for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection (PoM) £225.72 DT = £225.72
- **Prostap SR DCS** (Takeda UK Ltd)  
Leuprorelin acetate 3.75 mg Prostap SR DCS 3.75mg powder and solvent for suspension for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection (PoM) £75.24 DT = £75.24

## Triptorelin

27-Apr-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Administration of gonadorelin analogues produces an initial phase of stimulation; continued administration is followed by down-regulation of gonadotrophin-releasing hormone receptors, thereby reducing the release of gonadotrophins (follicle stimulating hormone and luteinising hormone) which in turn leads to inhibition of androgen and oestrogen production.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### DECAPEPTYL<sup>®</sup> SR 11.25MG

##### Gonadotrophin-dependent precocious puberty

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child: 11.25 mg every 3 months, discontinue when bone maturation consistent with age of 12 years in girls or 13–14 years in boys

#### GONAPEPTYL DEPOT<sup>®</sup>

##### Gonadotrophin-dependent precocious puberty

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child (body-weight up to 20 kg): Initially 1.875 mg every 2 weeks for 3 doses, to be administered on days 0, 14, and 28 of treatment, then 1.875 mg every 3–4 weeks, discontinue when bone maturation consistent with age over 12 years in girls and over 13 years in boys
- Child (body-weight 20–30 kg): Initially 2.5 mg every 2 weeks for 3 doses, to be administered on days 0, 14, and 28 of treatment, then 2.5 mg every 3–4 weeks, discontinue when bone maturation consistent with age over 12 years in girls and over 13 years in boys
- Child (body-weight 31 kg and above): Initially 3.75 mg every 2 weeks for 3 doses, to be administered on days 0, 14, and 28 of treatment, then 3.75 mg every 3–4 weeks, discontinue when bone maturation consistent with age over 12 years in girls and over 13 years in boys

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Undiagnosed vaginal bleeding
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - Common or very common Depression · mood altered
  - Uncommon Anaphylactic reaction · haemorrhage · nausea · vaginal discharge · vomiting
  - Frequency not known Alopecia · angioedema · epiphysiolysis · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hot flush · malaise · myalgia · nervousness · pain · skin reactions · vision disorders · weight increased
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Non-hormonal, barrier methods of contraception should be used during entire treatment period. Pregnancy should be excluded before treatment, the first injection should be given during menstruation or shortly afterwards or use barrier contraception for 1 month beforehand.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor bone mineral density.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Rotate injection site to prevent atrophy and nodule formation.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**  
DECAPEPTYL<sup>®</sup> SR 11.25MG Each vial includes an overage to allow accurate administration of an 11.25 mg dose.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder and solvent for suspension for injection

- **Decapeptyl SR** (Ipsen Ltd)  
**Triptorelin 11.25 mg** Decapeptyl SR 11.25mg powder and solvent for suspension for injection vials | 1 vial (PoM) £207.00 DT = £207.00
- **Gonaepetyl Depot** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Triptorelin (as Triptorelin acetate) 3.75 mg** Gonaepetyl Depot 3.75mg powder and solvent for suspension for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 1 pre-filled disposable injection (PoM) £81.69

## 6 Hypothalamic and anterior pituitary hormone related disorders

### Hypothalamic and anterior pituitary hormones

#### Anterior pituitary hormones

##### Corticotrophins

Tetracosactide below (tetracosactrin), an analogue of corticotropin (adrenocorticotrophic hormone, ACTH), is used to test adrenocortical function; failure of plasma-cortisol concentration to rise after administration of tetracosactide indicates adrenocortical insufficiency. A low-dose test is considered by some clinicians to be more sensitive when used to confirm established, partial adrenal suppression.

Tetracosactide should be given only if no other ACTH preparations have been given previously. Tetracosactide depot injection (*Synacthen Depot*®) is also used in the treatment of infantile spasms but it is contra-indicated in neonates because of the presence of benzyl alcohol in the injection. Corticotropin-releasing factor, corticorelin p. 474, (also known as corticotropin-releasing hormone, CRH) is used to test anterior pituitary function and secretion of corticotropin.

##### Gonadotrophins

Gonadotrophins are occasionally used in the treatment of hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism and associated oligospermia. There is no justification for their use in primary gonadal failure.

Chorionic gonadotrophin p. 474 is used in the investigation of testicular function in suspected primary hypogonadism and incomplete masculinisation. It has also been used in delayed puberty in boys to stimulate endogenous testosterone production, but it has little advantage over testosterone.

##### Growth hormone

Growth hormone is used to treat proven deficiency of the hormone, Prader-Willi syndrome, Turner's syndrome, growth disturbance in children born small for corrected gestational age, chronic renal insufficiency, and short stature homeobox-containing gene (SHOX) deficiency. Growth hormone is also used in Noonan syndrome and idiopathic short stature [unlicensed indications] under specialist management. Treatment should be initiated and monitored by a paediatrician with expertise in managing growth-hormone disorders; treatment can be continued under a shared-care protocol by a general practitioner.

Growth hormone of human origin (HGH; somatotrophin) has been replaced by a growth hormone of human sequence, somatotropin p. 475, produced using recombinant DNA technology.

Mecasermin p. 477, a human insulin-like growth factor-I (rhIGF-I), is licensed to treat growth failure in children with severe primary insulin-like growth factor-I deficiency.

#### Hypothalamic hormones

Gonadorelin p. 474 when injected intravenously in post-pubertal girls leads to a rapid rise in plasma concentrations of both luteinising hormone (LH) and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH). It has not proved to be very helpful, however, in distinguishing hypothalamic from pituitary lesions. It is used in the assessment of delayed or precocious puberty.

Other growth hormone stimulation tests involve the use of insulin, glucagon p. 465, arginine p. 613, and clonidine

hydrochloride p. 102 [all unlicensed uses]. The tests should be carried out in specialist centres.

## 6.1 Adrenocortical function testing

### PITUITARY AND HYPOTHALAMIC HORMONES AND ANALOGUES > CORTICOTROPHINS

#### Tetracosactide

##### (Tetracosactrin)

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Diagnosis of adrenocortical insufficiency (diagnostic 30-minute test), standard-dose test**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: 145 micrograms/m<sup>2</sup> (max. per dose 250 micrograms) for 1 dose

##### **Diagnosis of adrenocortical insufficiency (diagnostic 30-minute test), low-dose test**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: 0.3 microgram/m<sup>2</sup> for 1 dose

##### **Infantile spasm**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION USING DEPOT INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1-23 months: Initially 500 micrograms once daily on alternate days, adjusted according to response

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for low-dose test for adrenocortical insufficiency. Not licensed for treatment of infantile spasms.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute psychosis · adrenogenital syndrome · allergic disorders · asthma · avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates · Cushing's syndrome · infectious diseases · peptic ulcer · primary adrenocortical insufficiency · refractory heart failure
- **CAUTIONS** Active infectious diseases (should not be used unless adequate disease-specific therapy is being given) · active systemic diseases (should not be used unless adequate disease-specific therapy is being given) · diabetes mellitus · diverticulitis · history of asthma · history of atopic allergy · history of eczema · history of hayfever · history of hypersensitivity · hypertension · latent amoebiasis (may become activated) · latent tuberculosis (may become activated) · myasthenia gravis · ocular herpes simplex · osteoporosis · predisposition to thromboembolic · psychological disturbances may be triggered · recent intestinal anastomosis · reduced immune response (should not be used unless adequate disease-specific therapy is being given) · ulcerative colitis
- CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - ▶ Risk of anaphylaxis Should only be administered under medical supervision. Consult product literature.
  - ▶ Hypertension Patients already receiving medication for moderate to severe hypertension must have their dosage adjusted if treatment started.
  - ▶ Diabetes mellitus Patients already receiving medication for diabetes mellitus must have their dosage adjusted if treatment started.
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal distension · abscess · adrenocortical unresponsiveness · angioedema · appetite increased · bone fractures · congestive heart failure · Cushing's syndrome · diabetes mellitus exacerbated · dizziness · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · exophthalmos · fluid retention · flushing · gastrointestinal disorders · glaucoma · growth retardation · haemorrhage · headache · healing impaired · hirsutism · hyperglycaemia ·

hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity (may be more severe in patients susceptible to allergies, especially asthma) · hypertension · idiopathic intracranial hypertension exacerbated · increased risk of infection · leucocytosis · malaise · menstruation irregular · muscle weakness · myopathy · nausea · osteonecrosis · osteoporosis · pancreatitis · papilloedema · pituitary unresponsiveness · posterior subcapsular cataract · protein catabolism · psychiatric disorder · seizure · skin reactions · tendon rupture · thromboembolism · vasculitis necrotising · ventricular hypertrophy · vertigo · vomiting · weight increased

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with history of hypersensitivity to tetracosactide/corticotrophins or excipients.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (but may be used diagnostically if essential).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid (but may be used diagnostically if essential).
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** An enhanced effect of tetracosactide therapy may occur in patients with cirrhosis of the liver. Use with caution in hepatic impairment.  
**Monitoring** Monitor hepatic function closely during treatment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in patients with renal impairment.
- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** May suppress skin test reactions.  
Post administration total plasma cortisol levels during 30-minute test for diagnosis of adrenocortical insufficiency might be misleading due to altered cortisol binding globulin levels in some special clinical situations including, patients on oral contraceptives, post-operative patients, critical illness, severe liver disease and nephrotic syndrome.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intramuscular or intravenous injection, may be diluted in sodium chloride 0.9% to 250 nanograms/mL.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Solution for injection**

- **Synacthen** (Mallinckrodt Specialty Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd) Tetracosactide acetate 250 microgram per 1 ml Synacthen 250micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £38.00

##### **Suspension for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

- **Synacthen Depot** (Mallinckrodt Specialty Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd) Tetracosactide acetate 1 mg per 1 ml Synacthen Depot 1mg/1ml suspension for injection ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £346.28

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Altered smell sensation · flushing · hypotension · taste altered
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Powder for solution for injection**

- **Acthrel (Imported (United States))**

Corticotrin ovine trifluate 100 microgram Acthrel powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £

## Gonadorelin

(Gonadotrophin-releasing hormone; GnRH; LH-RH)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Assessment of anterior pituitary function | Assessment of delayed puberty**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Child 1-17 years: 2.5 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 100 micrograms) for 1 dose

- **CAUTIONS** Pituitary adenoma

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Uncommon** Pain · skin reactions · swelling
- **Rare or very rare** Abdominal discomfort · bronchospasm · dizziness · eye erythema · flushing · headache · nausea · tachycardia
- **Frequency not known** Menorrhagia · sepsis

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

- **Gonadorelin (Non-proprietary)**

Gonadorelin (as Gonadorelin hydrochloride)

100 microgram Gonadorelin 100microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £75.00 (Hospital only)

## 6.3 Gonadotrophin replacement therapy

### GONADOTROPHINS

## Chorionic gonadotrophin

(Human chorionic gonadotrophin; HCG)

- **DRUG ACTION** A preparation of a glycoprotein fraction secreted by the placenta and obtained from the urine of pregnant women having the action of the pituitary luteinising hormone.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Delayed puberty in the male to stimulate endogenous testosterone production**

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Child: (consult product literature)

**Test of testicular function, short stimulation test**

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child: 1500–2000 units once daily for 3 days

## 6.2 Assessment of pituitary function

### DIAGNOSTIC AGENTS

## Corticotrin

(Corticotrophin-releasing hormone; CRH)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Test of anterior pituitary function**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child: 1 microgram/kg (max. per dose 100 micrograms) for 1 dose, to be administered over 30 seconds

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed.

**Test of testicular function, prolonged stimulation test**

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Child: 1500–2000 units twice weekly for 3 weeks

**Hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism**

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Child: 1000–2000 units twice weekly, adjusted according to response

**Undescended testes**

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Child 7–16 years: Initially 500 units 3 times a week, adjusted according to response to up to 4000 units 3 times a week continue for 1–2 months after testicular descent

► Child 17 years: Initially 1000 units twice weekly, adjusted according to response to up to 4000 units 3 times a week continue for 1–2 months after testicular descent

- **UNLICENSED USE** Unlicensed in children for test of testicular function.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Androgen-dependent tumours
- **CAUTIONS** Asthma · cardiac impairment · epilepsy · migraine · prepubertal boys (risk of premature epiphyseal closure or precocious puberty)
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Fatigue · fever · fluid retention · gynaecomastia · headache · hypersensitivity · mood altered · oedema · ovarian hyperstimulation syndrome · skin reactions · sodium retention
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

► **Pregnyl** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Chorionic gonadotrophin human 1500 unit** Pregnyl 1,500unit powder and solvent for solution for injection ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £2.12 [CD4-2]

**Chorionic gonadotrophin human 5000 unit** Pregnyl 5,000unit powder and solvent for solution for injection ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £3.15 [CD4-2]

## 6.4 Growth hormone disorders

### PITUITARY AND HYPOTHALAMIC HORMONES AND ANALOGUES > HUMAN GROWTH HORMONES

#### Somatotropin

(Recombinant Human Growth Hormone)

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Gonadal dysgenesis (Turner syndrome)**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

► Child: 1.4 mg/m<sup>2</sup> daily, alternatively 45–50 micrograms/kg daily

**Deficiency of growth hormone**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Child: 23–39 micrograms/kg daily, alternatively 0.7–1 mg/m<sup>2</sup> daily

**Growth disturbance in children born small for gestational age whose growth has not caught up by 4 years or later | Noonan syndrome**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

► Child 4–17 years: 35 micrograms/kg daily, alternatively 1 mg/m<sup>2</sup> daily

**Prader-Willi syndrome, in children with growth velocity greater than 1 cm/year, in combination with energy-restricted diet**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

► Child: 1 mg/m<sup>2</sup> daily, alternatively 35 micrograms/kg daily; maximum 2.7 mg per day

**Chronic renal insufficiency (renal function decreased to less than 50%)**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

► Child: 45–50 micrograms/kg daily, alternatively 1.4 mg/m<sup>2</sup> daily, higher doses may be needed, adjust if necessary after 6 months

**SHOX deficiency**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

► Child: 45–50 micrograms/kg daily

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

► Dose formerly expressed in units; somatropin 1 mg ≡ 3 units.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in Noonan syndrome.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates · evidence of tumour activity (complete antitumour therapy and ensure intracranial lesions inactive before starting) · not to be used after renal transplantation · not to be used for growth promotion in children with closed epiphyses (or near closure in Prader-Willi syndrome) · severe obesity in Prader-Willi syndrome · severe respiratory impairment in Prader-Willi syndrome
- **CAUTIONS** Diabetes mellitus (adjustment of antidiabetic therapy may be necessary) · disorders of the epiphysis of the hip (monitor for limping) · history of malignant disease · hypothyroidism—manufacturers recommend periodic thyroid function tests but limited evidence of clinical value · initiation of treatment close to puberty not recommended in child born small for corrected gestational age · papilloedema · relative deficiencies of other pituitary hormones · resolved intracranial hypertension (monitor closely) · Silver-Russell syndrome
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: somatropin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Headache · lipotrophy
  - **Uncommon** Arthralgia · carpal tunnel syndrome · fluid retention · gynaecomastia · idiopathic intracranial hypertension · myalgia · paraesthesia
  - **Rare or very rare** Hyperglycaemia · hyperinsulinism · hypothyroidism · osteonecrosis of femur · pancreatitis · slipped capital femoral epiphysis
  - **Frequency not known** Leukaemia · musculoskeletal stiffness · oedema

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Funduscopy for papilloedema recommended if severe or recurrent headache, visual problems, nausea and vomiting occur—if papilloedema confirmed consider benign intracranial hypertension (rare cases reported).

- **PREGNANCY** Discontinue if pregnancy occurs—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available. Absorption from milk unlikely.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Rotate subcutaneous injection sites to prevent lipotrophy.
- **GENOTROPIN<sup>®</sup>, NORDITROPIN<sup>®</sup>, NUTROPINAQ<sup>®</sup>, OMNITROPE<sup>®</sup>, SAIZEN<sup>®</sup>, ZOMACTON<sup>®</sup>** For use by subcutaneous injection.
- **HUMATROPE<sup>®</sup>** Cartridges for use by subcutaneous injection. Powder for reconstitution for use by subcutaneous or intramuscular injection.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Somatropin is a biological medicine. Biological medicines must be

prescribed and dispensed by brand name, see *Biological medicines* and *Biosimilar medicines*, under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

**GENOTROPIN® PREPARATIONS** Cartridges are for use with *Genotropin®* Pen device (non-NHS but available free of charge from clinics).

**NORDITROPIN® PREPARATIONS** Cartridges are for use with appropriate *NordiPen®* device (non-NHS but available free of charge from clinics).

Multidose disposable prefilled pens for use with *NovoFine®* or *NovoTwist®* needles.

**NUTROPINAQ®** For use with *NutropinAq®* Pen device (non-NHS but available free of charge from clinics).

**OMNITROPE®** For use with *Omnitrope Pen 5®* and *Omnitrope Pen 10®* devices (non-NHS but available free of charge from clinics).

**SAIZEN® POWDER AND SOLVENT FOR SOLUTION FOR INJECTION** For use with *one.click®* autoinjector device or *cool.click®* needle-free autoinjector device or *easypod®* autoinjector device (non-NHS but available free of charge from clinics).

**SAIZEN® SOLUTION FOR INJECTION** For use with *cool.click®* needle-free autoinjector device or *easypod®* autoinjector device (non-NHS but available free of charge from clinics).

**ZOMACTON®** 4 mg vial for use with *ZomaJet 2® Vision* needle-free device (non-NHS but available free of charge from clinics) or with needles and syringes.

10 mg vial for use with *ZomaJet Vision X®* needle-free device (non-NHS but available free of charge from clinics) or with needles and syringes.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- ▶ **Somatropin for the treatment of growth failure in children (May 2010) NICE TA188**

Somatropin is recommended for children with growth failure who:

- have growth-hormone deficiency
- have Turner syndrome
- have Prader-Willi syndrome
- have chronic renal insufficiency
- are born small for gestational age with subsequent growth failure at 4 years of age or later
- have short stature homeobox-containing gene (SHOX) deficiency.

Treatment should be discontinued if growth velocity increases by less than 50% from baseline in the first year of treatment.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA188](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA188)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

- ▶ **Norditropin NordiFlex** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)

**Somatropin (epr) 3.3 mg per 1 ml** Norditropin NordiFlex 5mg/1.5ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £115.90 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (epr) 6.7 mg per 1 ml** Norditropin NordiFlex 10mg/1.5ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £231.80 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (epr) 10 mg per 1 ml** Norditropin NordiFlex 15mg/1.5ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £347.70 [CD4-2]

- ▶ **Norditropin SimpleXx** (Novo Nordisk Ltd)

**Somatropin (epr) 3.3 mg per 1 ml** Norditropin SimpleXx 5mg/1.5ml solution for injection cartridges | 1 cartridge [PoM] £106.35 DT = £106.35 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (epr) 6.7 mg per 1 ml** Norditropin SimpleXx 10mg/1.5ml solution for injection cartridges | 1 cartridge [PoM] £212.70 DT = £212.70 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (epr) 10 mg per 1 ml** Norditropin SimpleXx 15mg/1.5ml solution for injection cartridges | 1 cartridge [PoM] £319.05 DT = £319.05 [CD4-2]

- ▶ **NutropinAq** (Ipsen Ltd)

**Somatropin (rbe) 5 mg per 1 ml** NutropinAq 10mg/2ml solution for injection cartridges | 1 cartridge [PoM] £203.00 [CD4-2] | 3 cartridge [PoM] £609.00 [CD4-2]

- ▶ **Omnitrope SurePal** (Sandoz Ltd)

**Somatropin (rbe) 3.333 mg per 1 ml** Omnitrope SurePal 5 5mg/1.5ml solution for injection cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £368.74 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 6.667 mg per 1 ml** Omnitrope SurePal 10 10mg/1.5ml solution for injection cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £737.49 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 10 mg per 1 ml** Omnitrope SurePal 15 15mg/1.5ml solution for injection cartridges | 5 cartridge [PoM] £1,106.22 [CD4-2]

- ▶ **Saizen** (Merck Serono Ltd)

**Somatropin (rmc) 5.825 mg per 1 ml** Saizen 6mg/1.03ml solution for injection cartridges | 1 cartridge [PoM] £139.08 DT = £139.08 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rmc) 8 mg per 1 ml** Saizen 20mg/2.5ml solution for injection cartridges | 1 cartridge [PoM] £463.60 DT = £463.60 [CD4-2] | Saizen 12mg/1.5ml solution for injection cartridges | 1 cartridge [PoM] £278.16 DT = £278.16 [CD4-2]

##### Powder and solvent for solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

- ▶ **Genotropin** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Somatropin (rbe) 5.3 mg** Genotropin 5.3mg powder and solvent for solution for injection cartridges | 1 cartridge [PoM] £92.15 DT = £92.15 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 12 mg** Genotropin 12mg powder and solvent for solution for injection cartridges | 1 cartridge [PoM] £208.65 DT = £208.65 [CD4-2]

- ▶ **Genotropin GoQuick** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Somatropin (rbe) 5.3 mg** Genotropin GoQuick 5.3mg powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £92.15 DT = £92.15 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 12 mg** Genotropin GoQuick 12mg powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £208.65 [CD4-2]

- ▶ **Genotropin MiniQuick** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Somatropin (rbe) 200 microgram** Genotropin MiniQuick 200microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 7 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £24.35 DT = £24.35 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 400 microgram** Genotropin MiniQuick 400microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 7 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £48.68 DT = £48.68 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 600 microgram** Genotropin MiniQuick 600microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 7 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £73.03 DT = £73.03 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 800 microgram** Genotropin MiniQuick 800microgram powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 7 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £97.37 DT = £97.37 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 1 mg** Genotropin MiniQuick 1mg powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 7 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £121.71 DT = £121.71 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 1.2 mg** Genotropin MiniQuick 1.2mg powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 7 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £146.06 DT = £146.06 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 1.4 mg** Genotropin MiniQuick 1.4mg powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 7 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £170.39 DT = £170.39 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 1.6 mg** Genotropin MiniQuick 1.6mg powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 7 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £194.74 DT = £194.74 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 1.8 mg** Genotropin MiniQuick 1.8mg powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 7 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £219.08 DT = £219.08 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 2 mg** Genotropin MiniQuick 2mg powder and solvent for solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 7 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £243.42 DT = £243.42 [CD4-2]

- ▶ **Humatrope** (Eli Lilly and Company Ltd)

**Somatropin (rbe) 6 mg** Humatrope 6mg powder and solvent for solution for injection cartridges | 1 cartridge [PoM] £108.00 [CD4-2]



**Somatropin (rbe) 12 mg** Humatrope 12mg powder and solvent for solution for injection cartridges | 1 cartridge [PoM] £216.00 DT = £208.65 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 24 mg** Humatrope 24mg powder and solvent for solution for injection cartridges | 1 cartridge [PoM] £432.00 [CD4-2]

► **Saizen** (Merck Serono Ltd)

**Somatropin (rmc) 8 mg** Saizen 8mg click.easy powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £185.44 DT = £185.44 [CD4-2]

► **Zomacton** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Somatropin (rbe) 4 mg** Zomacton 4mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £68.28 DT = £68.28 [CD4-2]

**Somatropin (rbe) 10 mg** Zomacton 10mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £170.70 DT = £170.70 [CD4-2]

## 6.4a Insulin-like growth factor-I deficiency

### PITUITARY AND HYPOTHALAMIC HORMONES AND ANALOGUES > SOMATOMEDINS

#### Mecasermin

(Recombinant human insulin-like growth factor-I; rhIGF-I)

- **DRUG ACTION** Somatomedins are a group of polypeptide hormones structurally related to insulin and commonly known as insulin-like growth factors (IGFs). Mecasermin, a human insulin-like growth factor-I (rhIGF-I), is the principal mediator of the somatotrophic effects of human growth hormone.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment of growth failure in children with severe primary insulin-like growth factor-I deficiency**

► **BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION**

- **Child 2–17 years:** Initially 40 micrograms/kg twice daily for 1 week, increased, if tolerated, in steps of 40 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 120 micrograms/kg twice daily), discontinue if no response within 1 year, reduce dose if hypoglycaemia occurs despite adequate food intake; withhold injection if patient unable to eat

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Evidence of tumour activity (discontinue treatment)

- **CAUTIONS** Correct hypothyroidism before initiating treatment · diabetes mellitus (adjustment of antidiabetic therapy may be necessary) · papilloedema

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Adenoidal hypertrophy · arthralgia · dizziness · ear discomfort · gastrointestinal discomfort · gynaecomastia · hair texture abnormal · headache · hearing impairment · hyperglycaemia · hypoglycaemia · injection site reaction (rotate site) · melanocytic naevus · myalgia · otitis media · pain in extremity · papilloedema · scoliosis · seizures · skin hypertrophy · sleep apnoea · snoring · tachycardia · thymus enlargement · tonsillar hypertrophy · tremor · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Cardiac hypertrophy · cardiac valve disorders · depression · idiopathic intracranial hypertension · lipohypertrophy · nervousness · weight increased
- **Frequency not known** Alopecia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Funduscopy for papilloedema recommended regularly during treatment and if severe or recurrent headache, visual problems, nausea and vomiting occur—if papilloedema confirmed consider benign intracranial hypertension.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraception advised in women of child-bearing potential.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless essential.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Monitor ECG before and on termination of treatment (and during treatment if ECG abnormal).
- Monitor for disorders of the epiphysis of the hip (monitor for limping).
- Monitor for signs of tonsillar hypertrophy (snoring, sleep apnoea, and chronic middle ear effusions).

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Dose should be administered just before or after food.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer mecasermin injection. **Missed doses** Patients or carers should be advised not to increase dose if a dose is missed.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

► **Increlex** (Ipsen Ltd) ▼

**Mecasermin 10 mg per 1 ml** Increlex 40mg/4ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £605.00

## 7 Sex hormone responsive conditions

### Sex hormones

#### Hormone replacement therapy

Sex hormone replacement therapy is indicated in children for the treatment of gonadotrophin deficiency, gonadal disorders, or delayed puberty that interferes with quality of life. Indications include constitutional delay in puberty, congenital or acquired hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism, hypergonadotrophic hypogonadism (Turner's syndrome, Klinefelter's syndrome), endocrine disorders (Cushing's syndrome or hyperprolactinaemia), and chronic illnesses, such as cystic fibrosis or sickle-cell disease, that may affect the onset of puberty.

Replacement therapy is generally started at the appropriate age for the development of puberty and should be managed by a paediatric endocrinologist. Patients with constitutional delay, chronic illness, or eating disorders may need only small doses of hormone supplements for 4 to 6 months to induce puberty and endogenous sex hormone production, which is then sustained. Patients with organic causes of hormone deficiency will require life-long replacement, adjusted to allow normal development.

Inadequate treatment may lead to poor bone mineralisation, resulting in fractures and osteoporosis.

#### Female sex hormones

##### Oestrogens

Oestrogens are necessary for the development of female secondary sexual characteristics. If onset of puberty is delayed because of organic pathology, puberty can be induced with ethinylestradiol p. 478 in increasing doses, guided by breast staging and uterine scans. Cyclical progestogen replacement is added after 12–18 months of oestrogen treatment. Once the adult dosage of oestrogen has been reached, it may be more convenient to provide replacement either as a low-dose oestrogen containing oral contraceptive formulation [unlicensed indication] or as a combined oestrogen and progestogen hormone replacement therapy preparation [unlicensed indication]. There is limited experience in the use of transdermal patches or gels in

children; compliance and skin irritation are sometimes a problem.

Ethinylestradiol is occasionally used, under **specialist supervision**, for the management of hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia (but evidence of benefit is limited), for the prevention of tall stature, and in tests of growth hormone secretion.

Topical oestrogen creams are used in the treatment of labial adhesions.

### Progestogens

There are two main groups of progestogen, *progesterone* and *its analogues* (dydrogesterone and medroxyprogesterone acetate) and *testosterone analogues* (norethisterone p. 479 and norgestrel). The newer progestogens (desogestrel, norgestimate, and gestodene) are all derivatives of norgestrel; levonorgestrel is the active isomer of norgestrel and has twice its potency. Progesterone and its analogues are less androgenic than the testosterone derivatives and neither progesterone nor dydrogesterone causes virilisation.

In delayed puberty cyclical progestogen is added after 12–18 months of oestrogen therapy to establish a menstrual cycle.

Norethisterone is also used to postpone menstruation during a cycle; treatment is started 3 days before the expected onset of menstruation.

## 7.1 Female sex hormone responsive conditions

### OESTROGENS

#### Ethinylestradiol (Ethinylestradiol)

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Induction of sexual maturation in girls

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child (female): Initially 2 micrograms daily for 6 months, then increased to 5 micrograms daily for 6 months, then increased to 10 micrograms daily for 6 months, then increased to 20 micrograms daily, after 12–18 months of treatment give progestogen for 7 days of each 28-day cycle.

##### Maintenance of sexual maturation in girls

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child (female): 20 micrograms daily, to be given with cyclical progestogen for 7 days of each 28-day cycle.

##### Prevention of tall stature in girls

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–11 years (female): 20–50 micrograms daily.

##### Pituitary priming before growth hormone secretion test in girls with bone age over 10 years

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child (female): 100 micrograms daily for 3 days before test.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Unlicensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · cardiovascular disease (sodium retention with oedema) · family history of thromboembolism · gallstones · heart disease associated with pulmonary hypertension · heart disease associated with risk of embolus · history during pregnancy of cholestatic jaundice · history during pregnancy of chorea · history during pregnancy of pemphigoid gestationis · history during pregnancy of pruritus · history of breast cancer · history of haemolytic uraemic syndrome · migraine with aura · sclerosing treatment for varicose veins · severe or multiple risk

factors for arterial disease · severe or multiple risk factors for venous thromboembolism · systemic lupus erythematosus · transient cerebral ischaemic attacks without headaches · undiagnosed vaginal bleeding · venous thromboembolism, or history of recurrent venous thromboembolism (unless already on anticoagulant treatment)

- **CAUTIONS** Active trophoblastic disease (until return to normal of urine- and plasma-gonadotrophin concentration)—seek specialist advice · Crohn's disease · gene mutations associated with breast cancer (e.g. BRCA 1) · history of severe depression (especially if induced by hormonal contraceptive) · hyperprolactinaemia (seek specialist advice) · inflammatory bowel disease · migraine (migraine-like headaches) · personal or family history of hypertriglyceridaemia (increased risk of pancreatitis) · risk factors for arterial disease · risk factors for migraine · risk factors for venous thromboembolism · sickle-cell disease · undiagnosed breast mass

##### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Other conditions The product literature advises caution in other conditions including hypertension, renal disease, asthma, epilepsy, sickle-cell disease, melanoma, otosclerosis, multiple sclerosis, and systemic lupus erythematosus (but care required if antiphospholipid antibodies present, see above). Evidence for caution in these conditions is unsatisfactory and many women with these conditions may stand to benefit from treatment.
- Risk of venous thromboembolism Use with **caution** if any of following factors present but **avoid** if two or more factors present:

- *family history of venous thromboembolism* in first-degree relative aged under 45 years (avoid if known prothrombotic coagulation abnormality e.g. factor V Leiden or antiphospholipid antibodies (including lupus anticoagulant));
- *obesity*—body mass index  $\geq 30$  kg/m<sup>2</sup> (avoid if body mass index  $\geq 35$  kg/m<sup>2</sup> unless no suitable alternative); (In adolescents, caution if obese according to BMI (adjusted for age and gender); in those who are markedly obese, avoid unless no suitable alternative);
- *long-term immobilisation* e.g. in a wheelchair (avoid if confined to bed or leg in plaster cast);
- *history of superficial thrombophlebitis*;
- *smoking*.

- Risk factors for arterial disease Use with **caution** if any one of following factors present but **avoid** if two or more factors present:

- *family history of arterial disease* in first degree relative aged under 45 years (avoid if atherogenic lipid profile);
- *diabetes mellitus* (avoid if diabetes complications present);
- *hypertension*—blood pressure above systolic 140 mmHg or diastolic 90 mmHg (avoid if blood pressure above systolic 160 mmHg or diastolic 95 mmHg); (In adolescents, avoid if blood pressure very high);
- *smoking* (avoid if smoking 40 or more cigarettes daily);
- *obesity* (avoid if body mass index  $\geq 35$  kg/m<sup>2</sup> unless no suitable alternative); (In adolescents, caution if obese according to BMI (adjusted for age and gender); in those who are markedly obese, avoid unless no suitable alternative);
- *migraine without aura* (avoid if *migraine with aura* (focal symptoms), or severe migraine frequently lasting over 72 hours despite treatment, or migraine treated with ergot derivatives).

- Migraine Women should report any increase in headache frequency or onset of focal symptoms (discontinue immediately and refer urgently to neurology expert if focal neurological symptoms not typical of aura persist for more than 1 hour).

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: hormone replacement therapy
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Breast abnormalities · cervical mucus increased · cholelithiasis · contact lens intolerance · depression · electrolyte imbalance · embolism and thrombosis · erythema nodosum · feminisation · fluid retention · headaches · hypertension · jaundice · cholestatic · metrorrhagia · mood altered · myocardial infarction · nausea · neoplasms · skin reactions · stroke · uterine disorders · vomiting · weight change
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid until weaning or for 6 months after birth (adverse effects on lactation).
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in liver disease including disorders of hepatic excretion (e.g. Dubin-Johnson or Rotor syndromes), infective hepatitis (until liver function returns to normal), and jaundice.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension

#### Tablet

##### ► Ethinylestradiol (Non-proprietary)

**Ethinylestradiol 2 microgram** Ethinylestradiol 2microgram tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £200.00

**Ethinylestradiol 10 microgram** Ethinylestradiol 10microgram tablets | 21 tablet [PoM] £200.00 DT = £200.00

**Ethinylestradiol 50 microgram** Ethinylestradiol 50microgram tablets | 21 tablet [PoM] £200.00 DT = £200.00

**Ethinylestradiol 1 mg** Ethinylestradiol 1mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £200.00 DT = £200.00

## PROGESTOGENS

### Norethisterone

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Postponement of menstruation

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Females of childbearing potential: 5 mg 3 times a day, to be started 3 days before expected onset (menstruation occurs 2–3 days after stopping)

##### Induction and maintenance of sexual maturation in females (combined with an oestrogen after 12–18 months oestrogen therapy)

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 5 mg once daily for the last 7 days of 28-day cycle

##### Short-term contraception

###### ► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 200 mg, to be administered within first 5 days of cycle or immediately after parturition (duration 8 weeks). To be injected into the gluteal muscle, then 200 mg after 8 weeks if required

##### Contraception

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Females of childbearing potential: 350 micrograms daily, dose to be taken at same time each day, starting on day 1 of cycle then continuously, if administration delayed for 3 hours or more it should be regarded as a 'missed pill'

#### ● UNLICENSED USE

- When used for Induction and maintenance of sexual maturation in females or Postponement of menstruation Not licensed for use in children.
- When used for Contraception Consult product literature for the licensing status of individual preparations.

#### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

**GENERAL CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in patients with a history of liver tumours · breast cancer (unless

progestogens are being used in the management of this condition) · genital cancer (unless progestogens are being used in the management of this condition) · history during pregnancy of idiopathic jaundice · history during pregnancy of pemphigoid gestationis (non-contraceptive indications) · history during pregnancy of severe pruritus (non-contraceptive indications) · when used as a contraceptive, history of breast cancer (can be used after 5 years if no evidence of disease and non-hormonal contraceptive methods unacceptable)

#### SPECIFIC CONTRA-INDICATIONS

- With oral use Acute porphyrias p. 603 · severe arterial disease · undiagnosed vaginal bleeding

#### ● CAUTIONS

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Asthma · cardiac dysfunction · conditions that may worsen with fluid retention · diabetes (progestogens can decrease glucose tolerance—monitor patient closely) · epilepsy · history of depression · hypertension · migraine · susceptibility to thromboembolism (particular caution with high dose)

#### SPECIFIC CAUTIONS

- When used for contraception Active trophoblastic disease (until return to normal of urine- and plasma-gonadotrophin concentration)—seek specialist advice · arterial disease · functional ovarian cysts · history of jaundice in pregnancy · malabsorption syndromes · past ectopic pregnancy · sex-steroid dependent cancer · systemic lupus erythematosus with positive (or unknown) anti-phospholipid antibodies
- With intramuscular use for contraception Disturbances of lipid metabolism · history during pregnancy of deterioration of otosclerosis · history during pregnancy of pruritus · possible risk of breast cancer

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Use as a contraceptive in co-morbidities The product literature advises caution in patients with history of thromboembolism, hypertension, diabetes mellitus and migraine; evidence for caution in these conditions is unsatisfactory.
- Breast cancer risk with contraceptive use There is a small increase in the risk of having breast cancer diagnosed in women using, or who have recently used, a progestogen-only contraceptive pill; this relative risk may be due to an earlier diagnosis. The most important risk factor appears to be the age at which the contraceptive is stopped rather than the duration of use; the risk disappears gradually during the 10 years after stopping and there is no excess risk by 10 years. A possible small increase in the risk of breast cancer should be weighed against the benefits.

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: norethisterone

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- Common or very common Menstrual cycle irregularities
- Uncommon Breast tenderness · depression
- Frequency not known Hepatic cancer · skin reactions · thromboembolism · weight change

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- Common or very common
- With intramuscular use Dizziness · haemorrhage · headache · hypersensitivity · nausea
- Uncommon
- With intramuscular use Abdominal distension
- Frequency not known
- With oral use Appetite change · fatigue · gastrointestinal disorder · headaches · hypertension · libido disorder · nervousness

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful in contraceptive doses. Avoid in other indications.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Progestogen-only contraceptives do not affect lactation.

- ▶ With intramuscular use Withhold breast-feeding for neonates with severe or persistent jaundice requiring medical treatment.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** When used as a contraceptive; caution in severe liver disease and recurrent cholestatic jaundice, avoid in liver tumour. Caution when used for sexual maturation and to postpone menstruation; avoid if severe.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in non-contraceptive indications.

#### ● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Diarrhoea and vomiting with oral contraceptives Vomiting and persistent, severe diarrhoea can interfere with the absorption of oral progestogen-only contraceptives. If vomiting occurs within 2 hours of taking an oral progestogen-only contraceptive, another pill should be taken as soon as possible. If a replacement pill is not taken within 3 hours of the normal time for taking the progestogen-only pill, or in cases of persistent vomiting or very severe diarrhoea, additional precautions should be used during illness and for 2 days after recovery. Starting routine for oral contraceptives One tablet daily, on a continuous basis, starting on day 1 of cycle and taken at the same time each day (if delayed by longer than 3 hours contraceptive protection may be lost). Additional contraceptive precautions are not required if norethisterone is started up to and including day 5 of the menstrual cycle; if started after this time, additional contraceptive precautions are required for 2 days. Changing from a combined oral contraceptive Start on the day following completion of the combined oral contraceptive course without a break (or in the case of ED tablets omitting the inactive ones).

After childbirth Oral progestogen-only contraceptives can be started up to and including day 21 postpartum without the need for additional contraceptive precautions. If started more than 21 days postpartum, additional contraceptive precautions are required for 2 days. Contraceptives by injection Full counselling backed by *patient information leaflet* required before administration—likelihood of menstrual disturbance and the potential for a delay in return to full fertility. Delayed return of fertility and irregular cycles may occur after discontinuation of treatment but there is no evidence of permanent infertility.

**Missed oral contraceptive pill** The following advice is recommended: 'If you forget a pill, take it as soon as you remember and carry on with the next pill at the right time. If the pill was more than 3 hours overdue you are not protected. Continue normal pill-taking but you must also use another method, such as the condom, for the next 2 days.'

The Faculty of Sexual and Reproductive Healthcare recommends emergency contraception if one or more progestogen-only contraceptive tablets are missed or taken more than 3 hours late and unprotected intercourse has occurred before 2 further tablets have been correctly taken.

#### ● **MEDICAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### **Solution for injection**

- ▶ **Noristerat** (Bayer Plc)  
**Norethisterone enantate 200 mg per 1 ml** Noristerat 200mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 1 ampoule **[PoM]** £4.05

#### **Tablet**

##### ▶ **Norethisterone (Non-proprietary)**

- Norethisterone 5 mg** Norethisterone 5mg tablets | 30 tablet **[PoM]** £2.23 DT = £2.06

##### ▶ **Noriday** (Pfizer Ltd)

- Norethisterone 350 microgram** Noriday 350microgram tablets | 84 tablet **[PoM]** £2.10 DT = £2.10

##### ▶ **Primolut N** (Bayer Plc)

- Norethisterone 5 mg** Primolut N 5mg tablets | 30 tablet **[PoM]** £2.26 DT = £2.06

##### ▶ **Utoylan** (Pfizer Ltd)

- Norethisterone 5 mg** Utoylan 5mg tablets | 30 tablet **[PoM]** £1.40 DT = £2.06 | 90 tablet **[PoM]** £4.21

## 7.2 Male sex hormone responsive conditions

### Androgens, anti-androgens and anabolic steroids

#### Androgens

Androgens cause masculinisation; they are used as replacement therapy in androgen deficiency, in delayed puberty, and in those who are hypogonadal due to either pituitary or testicular disease.

When given to patients with hypopituitarism androgens can lead to normal sexual development and potency but not to fertility. If fertility is desired, the usual treatment is with gonadotrophins or pulsatile gonadotrophin-releasing hormone which stimulates spermatogenesis as well as androgen production.

Intramuscular depot preparations of **testosterone esters** are preferred for replacement therapy. Testosterone enantate or propionate or alternatively *Sustanon*®, which consists of a mixture of testosterone esters and has a longer duration of action, can be used. For induction of puberty, depot testosterone injections are given monthly and the doses increased every 6 to 12 months according to response. Single ester testosterone injections may need to be given more frequently.

Oral **testosterone undecanoate** is used for induction of puberty. An alternative approach that promotes growth rather than sexual maturation uses oral oxandrolone p. 481.

Chorionic gonadotrophin has also been used in delayed puberty in the male to stimulate endogenous testosterone production, but has little advantage over testosterone.

Testosterone topical gel is also available but experience of use in children under 15 years is limited. Topical testosterone is applied to the penis in the treatment of micropallus; an extemporaneously prepared cream should be used because the alcohol in proprietary gel formulations causes irritation.

#### Anti-androgens and precocious puberty

The gonadorelin stimulation test is used to distinguish between **gonadotrophin-dependent (central) precocious puberty** and **gonadotrophin-independent precocious puberty**. Treatment requires specialist management.

Gonadorelin analogues, used in the management of gonadotrophin-dependent precocious puberty, delay development of secondary sexual characteristics and growth velocity.

Testolactone p. 482 and cyproterone acetate p. 482 are used in the management of gonadotrophin-independent precocious puberty, resulting from McCune-Albright syndrome, familial male precocious puberty (testotoxicosis), hormone-secreting tumours, and ovarian and testicular disorders. Testolactone inhibits the aromatisation of testosterone, the rate limiting step in oestrogen synthesis. Cyproterone acetate is a progestogen with anti-androgen properties.

Spironolactone is sometimes used in combination with testolactone because it has some androgen receptor blocking properties.

High blood concentration of sex hormones may activate release of gonadotrophin releasing hormone, leading to development of secondary, central gonadotrophin-dependent precocious puberty. This may require the addition of gonadorelin analogues to prevent progression of pubertal development and skeletal maturation.

Anabolic steroids have some androgenic activity but they cause less virilisation than androgens in girls. They are used in the treatment of some *aplastic anaemias*.

Oxandrolone is used to stimulate late pre-pubertal growth prior to induction of sexual maturation in boys with short stature and in girls with Turner's syndrome; specialist management is required.

## ANABOLIC STEROIDS > ANDROSTAN DERIVATIVES

### Oxandrolone

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Stimulation of late pre-pubertal growth in boys (of appropriate age) with short stature

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 10–17 years (male): 1.25–2.5 mg daily for 3–6 months.

##### Stimulation of late pre-pubertal growth in girls with Turner's syndrome

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child (female): 0.625–2.5 mg daily, to be taken in combination with growth hormone.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of primary liver tumours · hypercalcaemia · nephrosis

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac impairment · diabetes mellitus · epilepsy · hypertension · migraine · skeletal metastases (risk of hypercalcaemia)

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Androgenetic alopecia · androgenic effects · anxiety · asthenia · bone formation increased · depression · electrolyte imbalance · epiphyses premature fusion (in pre-pubertal males) · gastrointestinal haemorrhage · gynaecomastia · headache · hirsutism · hypertension · jaundice · cholestatic · nausea · oedema · paraesthesia · polycythaemia · precocious puberty (in pre-pubertal males) · seborrhoea · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · spermatogenesis reduced · virilism · weight increased

- **Rare or very rare** Hepatic neoplasm

- **Frequency not known** Sleep apnoea

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid—causes masculinisation of female fetus.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid; may cause masculinisation in the female infant or precocious development in the male infant. High doses suppress lactation.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible—fluid retention and dose-related toxicity.


- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution—potential for fluid retention.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet

##### Tablet

- **Oxandrin (Imported (Australia))**

Oxandrolone 2.5 mg Oxandrin 2.5mg tablets | 100 tablet [POM] 

## ANDROGENS

### Androgens

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Breast cancer in males · history of liver tumours · hypercalcaemia · prostate cancer
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac impairment · diabetes mellitus · epilepsy · hypertension · migraine · pre-pubertal boys (fusion of epiphyses is hastened and may result in short stature)—statural growth and sexual development should be monitored · skeletal metastases—risk of hypercalcaemia or hypercalcaemia (if this occurs, treat appropriately and restart treatment once normal serum calcium concentration restored) · sleep apnoea · stop treatment or reduce dose if severe polycythaemia occurs · tumours—risk of hypercalcaemia or hypercalcaemia (if this occurs, treat appropriately and restart treatment once normal serum calcium concentration restored)

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Headache · skin reactions

- **Uncommon** Alopecia · gynaecomastia · nausea

- **Frequency not known** Fluid retention · jaundice · polycythaemia · sexual dysfunction

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Stop treatment or reduce dose if severe polycythaemia occurs.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid—causes masculinisation of female fetus.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible—fluid retention and dose-related toxicity.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Caution—potential for fluid retention.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor haematocrit and haemoglobin before treatment, every three months for the first year, and yearly thereafter.

 above

### Testosterone enantate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Induction and maintenance of sexual maturation in males (specialist use only)

###### ► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child 12–17 years: 25–50 mg/m<sup>2</sup> every month, increase dose every 6–12 months according to response

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CAUTIONS** Thrombophilia—increased risk of thrombosis

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Androgenetic alopecia · anxiety · asthenia · bone disorders · circulatory system disorder · depression · gastrointestinal disorder · gastrointestinal haemorrhage · hepatomegaly · hypercalcaemia · libido increased · neoplasms · oedema · paraesthesia · precocious puberty · prostate disorder · spermatogenesis abnormal · urticaria

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

- **Testosterone enantate (Non-proprietary)**

Testosterone enantate 250 mg per 1 ml Testosterone enantate 250mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 3 ampoule [POM]

£83.74–£87.73 DT = £85.74 



F 481

## Testosterone propionate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Delayed puberty in males

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child: 50 mg once weekly

#### Treatment of microphallus (specialist use only)

- TO THE SKIN USING CREAM
- Child: Apply 3 times a day for 3 weeks

- **CAUTIONS** Thrombophilia—increased risk of thrombosis

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- Rare or very rare Pulmonary oil microembolism

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection, cream

F 481

## Testosterone undecanoate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Induction and maintenance of sexual maturation in males (specialist use only)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 40 mg once daily on alternate days, adjusted according to response to 120 mg daily

- **CAUTIONS** Thrombophilia—increased risk of thrombosis

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Uncommon** Depression · diarrhoea · hypertension · mood altered
- **Frequency not known** Benign prostatic hyperplasia · epiphyses premature fusion · fluid imbalance · gastrointestinal discomfort · hepatic function abnormal · lipid metabolism change · myalgia · nervousness · penis enlarged · precocious puberty · prostate cancer · sperm abnormalities · urinary tract obstruction

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21, 25

- **Restandol** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Testosterone undecanoate 40 mg** Restandol 40mg Testocaps | 30 capsule [PoM] £8.55 [CD4-2] | 60 capsule [PoM] £17.10 DT = £17.10 [CD4-2]

## 7.2a Precocious puberty

**Other drugs used for Precocious puberty** Goserelin, p. 471

· Leuporelin acetate, p. 472 · Triptorelin, p. 472

## ANTI-ANDROGENS

## Cyproterone acetate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Gonadotrophin-independent precocious puberty (specialist use only)

- BY MOUTH
- Child: Initially 25 mg twice daily, adjusted according to response

- **UNLICENSED USE** Unlicensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Dubin-Johnson syndrome · history of thromboembolic disorders · liver-disease · malignant diseases · meningioma or history of meningioma · previous

or existing liver tumours · Rotor syndrome · severe depression · severe diabetes (with vascular changes) · sickle-cell anaemia · wasting diseases · youths under 18 years (may arrest bone maturation and testicular development)

- **CAUTIONS** Diabetes mellitus · in prostate cancer, severe depression · in prostate cancer, sickle-cell anaemia

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Depressed mood · dyspnoea · fatigue · gynaecomastia · hepatic disorders · hot flush · hyperhidrosis · nipple pain · restlessness · weight change
- **Uncommon** Skin reactions
- **Rare or very rare** Galactorrhoea · neoplasms
- **Frequency not known** Adrenocortical suppression · anaemia · azoospermia · hair changes · hypotrichosis · osteoporosis · sebaceous gland underactivity (may clear acne) · thromboembolism

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Direct hepatic toxicity including jaundice, hepatitis and hepatic failure have been reported (fatalities reported, usually after several months, at dosages of 100mg and above). If hepatotoxicity is confirmed, cyproterone should normally be withdrawn unless the hepatotoxicity can be explained by another cause such as metastatic disease (in which case cyproterone should be continued only if the perceived benefit exceeds the risk).

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid—dose-related toxicity.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Monitor blood counts initially and throughout treatment.
- Monitor adrenocortical function regularly.
- Monitor hepatic function regularly—liver function tests should be performed before and regularly during treatment and whenever symptoms suggestive of hepatotoxicity occur.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Fatigue and lassitude may impair performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- **Cyproterone acetate (Non-proprietary)**

**Cyproterone acetate 50 mg** Cyproterone 50mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £48.95 DT = £29.00 | 168 tablet [PoM] £87.00

**Cyproterone acetate 100 mg** Cyproterone 100mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £132.57 DT = £55.19

- **Androcur** (Bayer Plc)

**Cyproterone acetate 50 mg** Androcur 50mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £31.34

- **Cyprostat** (Bayer Plc)

**Cyproterone acetate 50 mg** Cyprostat 50mg tablets | 160 tablet [PoM] £82.86

**Cyproterone acetate 100 mg** Cyprostat 100mg tablets | 80 tablet [PoM] £82.86

## HORMONE ANTAGONISTS AND RELATED AGENTS > AROMATASE INHIBITORS

## Testolactone

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Gonadotrophin-independent precocious puberty (specialist use only)

- BY MOUTH
- Child: 5 mg/kg 3–4 times a day; increased if necessary up to 10 mg/kg 4 times a day



● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · diarrhoea · hair growth abnormal · hypertension · nausea · peripheral neuropathy · vomiting · weight change
- **Rare or very rare** Hypersensitivity · rash

● **PREGNANCY** Avoid.● **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Tablet**► **Teslac (Imported (United States))**

Tesolactone 50 mg    Teslac 50mg tablets | 100 tablet  

## 8 Thyroid disorders

### 8.1 Hyperthyroidism

#### Antithyroid drugs

##### Overview

Antithyroid drugs are used for hyperthyroidism either to prepare children for thyroidectomy or for long-term management. In the UK carbimazole below is the most commonly used drug. Propylthiouracil p. 484 should be reserved for children who are intolerant of, or for those who experience sensitivity reactions to carbimazole (sensitivity is not necessarily displayed to both drugs), and for whom other treatments are inappropriate. Both drugs act primarily by interfering with the synthesis of thyroid hormones.

Treatment in children should be undertaken by a specialist.

Carbimazole or propylthiouracil are initially given in large doses to block thyroid function. This dose is continued until the child becomes euthyroid, usually after 4 to 8 weeks, and is then gradually reduced to a maintenance dose of 30–60% of the initial dose. Alternatively high-dose treatment is continued in combination with levothyroxine sodium replacement (*blocking-replacement regimen*) p. 485; this is particularly useful when dose adjustment proves difficult. Treatment is usually continued for 12 to 24 months. The blocking-replacement regimen is **not** suitable during pregnancy. Hypothyroidism should be avoided particularly during pregnancy as it can cause fetal goitre.

**Iodine** has been used as an adjunct to antithyroid drugs for 10 to 14 days before partial thyroidectomy; however, there is little evidence of a beneficial effect. Iodine should not be used for long-term treatment because its antithyroid action tends to diminish.

Radioactive sodium iodide ( $^{131}\text{I}$ ) solution is used increasingly for the treatment of thyrotoxicosis at all ages, particularly where medical therapy or compliance is a problem, in patients with cardiac disease, and in patients who relapse after thyroidectomy.

Propranolol hydrochloride p. 104 is useful for rapid relief of thyrotoxic symptoms and can be used in conjunction with antithyroid drugs or as an adjunct to radioactive iodine. Beta-blockers are also useful in neonatal thyrotoxicosis and in supraventricular arrhythmias due to hyperthyroidism. Propranolol hydrochloride has been used in conjunction with iodine to prepare mildly thyrotoxic patients for surgery but it is preferable to make the patient euthyroid with carbimazole. Laboratory tests of thyroid function are not altered by beta-blockers. Most experience in treating thyrotoxicosis has been gained with propranolol but atenolol is also used.

*Thyrotoxic crisis* ('thyroid storm') requires emergency treatment with intravenous administration of fluids,

propranolol hydrochloride and hydrocortisone p. 440 as sodium succinate, as well as oral iodine solution and carbimazole or propylthiouracil which may need to be administered by nasogastric tube.

#### Antithyroid drugs in pregnancy

Radioactive iodine therapy is contra-indicated during pregnancy. Propylthiouracil and carbimazole can be given but the blocking-replacement regimen is **not** suitable. Rarely, carbimazole has been associated with congenital defects, including aplasia cutis of the neonate, therefore propylthiouracil remains the drug of choice during the first trimester of pregnancy. In the second trimester, consider switching to carbimazole because of the potential risk of hepatotoxicity with propylthiouracil. Both propylthiouracil and carbimazole cross the placenta and in high doses may cause fetal goitre and hypothyroidism—the lowest dose that will control the hyperthyroid state should be used (requirements in Graves' disease tend to fall during pregnancy).

#### Antithyroid drugs in neonates

**Neonatal hyperthyroidism** is treated with carbimazole or propylthiouracil, usually for 8 to 12 weeks. In severe symptomatic disease iodine may be needed to block the thyroid and propranolol required to treat peripheral symptoms.

#### ANTITHYROID DRUGS > SULFUR-CONTAINING IMIDAZOLES

##### Carbimazole

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

##### Hyperthyroidism (blocking-replacement regimen) in combination with levothyroxine

- **BY MOUTH**
- Child: Therapy usually given for 12 to 24 months (consult product literature or local protocols)

##### Hyperthyroidism (including Graves' disease)

- **BY MOUTH**
- Neonate: Initially 750 micrograms/kg daily until patient is euthyroid, usually after 8 to 12 weeks, then gradually reduce to a maintenance dose of 30–60% of the initial dose; higher initial doses (up to 1 mg/kg daily) are occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis, dose may be given in single or divided doses.
- Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 750 micrograms/kg daily until patient is euthyroid, usually after 4–8 weeks, then gradually reduce to a maintenance dose of 30–60% of the initial dose; higher initial doses are occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis, dose may be given in single or divided doses; maximum 30 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 30 mg daily until euthyroid, usually after 4–8 weeks, then gradually reduce to a maintenance dose of 30–60% of the initial dose; higher initial doses are occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis, dose may be given in single or divided doses

##### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- When substituting, carbimazole 1 mg is considered equivalent to propylthiouracil 10 mg but the dose may need adjusting according to response.

##### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### NEUTROPENIA AND AGRANULOCYTOSIS

Doctors are reminded of the importance of recognising bone marrow suppression induced by carbimazole and

the need to stop treatment promptly.

- Patient should be asked to report symptoms and signs suggestive of infection, especially sore throat.
- A white blood cell count should be performed if there is any clinical evidence of infection.
- Carbimazole should be stopped promptly if there is clinical or laboratory evidence of neutropenia.

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: carbimazole

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare** Bone marrow disorders · haemolytic anaemia · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · thrombocytopenia
- **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · angioedema · dyspepsia · eosinophilia · fever · gastrointestinal disorder · generalised lymphadenopathy · haemorrhage · headache · hepatic disorders · insulin autoimmune syndrome · leucopenia · malaise · myopathy · nausea · nerve disorders · neutropenia · salivary gland enlargement · skin reactions · taste loss

- **PREGNANCY** Carbimazole can be given but the blocking-replacement regimen is **not** suitable. Rarely, carbimazole has been associated with congenital defects, including aplasia cutis of the neonate. Carbimazole cross the placenta and in high doses may cause fetal goitre and hypothyroidism—the lowest dose that will control the hyperthyroid state should be used (requirements in Graves' disease tend to fall during pregnancy).

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in breast milk but this does not preclude breast-feeding as long as neonatal development is closely monitored and the lowest effective dose is used. Amount in milk may be sufficient to affect neonatal thyroid function therefore lowest effective dose should be used.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in mild to moderate impairment. Avoid in severe impairment.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Warn patient or carers to tell doctor **immediately** if sore throat, mouth ulcers, bruising, fever, malaise, or non-specific illness develops.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### ► Carbimazole (Non-proprietary)

**Carbimazole 5 mg** Carbimazole 5mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM]

£84.80 DT = £43.74

**Carbimazole 10 mg** Carbimazole 10mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM]

£81.32

**Carbimazole 15 mg** Carbimazole 15mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM]

£115.98

**Carbimazole 20 mg** Carbimazole 20mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM]

£208.17 DT = £144.47

## ANTITHYROID DRUGS > THIOURACILS

### Propylthiouracil

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Hyperthyroidism (including Graves' disease)

##### ► BY MOUTH

- **Neonate:** Initially 2.5–5 mg/kg twice daily until euthyroid, usually after 8 to 12 weeks, then gradually reduce to a maintenance dose of 30–60% of the initial dose; higher initial doses are occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis.

- **Child 1–11 months:** Initially 2.5 mg/kg 3 times a day until euthyroid, usually after 4 to 8 weeks, then gradually reduce to a maintenance dose of 30–60% of the initial

dose; higher initial doses are occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis

- **Child 1–4 years:** Initially 25 mg 3 times a day until euthyroid, usually after 4 to 8 weeks, then gradually reduce to a maintenance dose of 30–60% of the initial dose; higher initial doses are occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis
- **Child 5–11 years:** Initially 50 mg 3 times a day until euthyroid, usually after 4 to 8 weeks, then gradually reduce to a maintenance dose of 30–60% of the initial dose; higher initial doses are occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis
- **Child 12–17 years:** Initially 100 mg 3 times a day until euthyroid, usually after 4 to 8 weeks, then gradually reduce to a maintenance dose of 30–60% of the initial dose; higher initial doses are occasionally required, particularly in thyrotoxic crisis

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- When substituting, carbimazole 1 mg is considered equivalent to propylthiouracil 10 mg but the dose may need adjusting according to response.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 6 years of age.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: propylthiouracil

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · bone marrow disorders · glomerulonephritis acute · hearing impairment · leucopenia · thrombocytopenia · vomiting

- **Frequency not known** Alopecia · arthralgia · arthritis · encephalopathy · fever · gastrointestinal disorder · haemorrhage · headache · hepatic disorders · hypoproteinaemia · interstitial pneumonitis · lupus-like syndrome · lymphadenopathy · myopathy · nausea · nephritis · skin reactions · taste altered · vasculitis

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Severe hepatic reactions have been reported, including fatal cases and cases requiring liver transplant—discontinue if significant liver-enzyme abnormalities develop.

- **PREGNANCY** Propylthiouracil can be given but the blocking-replacement regimen is **not** suitable. Propylthiouracil crosses the placenta and in high doses may cause fetal goitre and hypothyroidism—the lowest dose that will control the hyperthyroid state should be used (requirements in Graves' disease tend to fall during pregnancy).

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in breast milk but this does not preclude breast-feeding as long as neonatal development is closely monitored and the lowest effective dose is used. Amount in milk probably too small to affect infant; high doses may affect neonatal thyroid function.

**Monitoring** Monitor infant's thyroid status.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Use 75% of normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate 10–50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

Use 50% of normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor for hepatotoxicity.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder and advised to seek prompt medical attention if symptoms such as anorexia, nausea, vomiting, fatigue, abdominal pain, jaundice, dark urine, or pruritus develop.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### ► Propylthiouracil (Non-proprietary)

**Propylthiouracil 50 mg** Propylthiouracil 50mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £57.58 DT = £55.21 | 100 tablet [PoM] £98.59-£115.98

## VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS

### Iodide with iodine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Thyrotoxicosis (pre-operative)

###### ► BY MOUTH USING ORAL SOLUTION

► Neonate: 0.1–0.3 mL 3 times a day.

► Child: 0.1–0.3 mL 3 times a day

##### Neonatal thyrotoxicosis

###### ► BY MOUTH USING ORAL SOLUTION

► Neonate: 0.05–0.1 mL 3 times a day.

##### Thyrotoxic crisis

###### ► BY MOUTH USING ORAL SOLUTION

► Child 1 month–1 year: 0.2–0.3 mL 3 times a day

● **CAUTIONS** Children · not for long-term treatment

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Conjunctivitis · depression (long term use) · erectile dysfunction (long term use) · excessive tearing · headache · hypersensitivity · increased risk of infection · influenza-like illness · insomnia (long term use) · rash · salivary gland pain

● **PREGNANCY** Neonatal goitre and hypothyroidism.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Stop breast-feeding. Danger of neonatal hypothyroidism or goitre. Appears to be concentrated in milk.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For oral solution, dilute well with milk or water.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

## 8.2 Hypothyroidism

### Thyroid hormones

#### Overview

Thyroid hormones are used in hypothyroidism (juvenile myxoedema), and also in diffuse non-toxic goitre, congenital or neonatal hypothyroidism, and Hashimoto's thyroiditis (lymphadenoid goitre). Neonatal hypothyroidism requires prompt treatment to facilitate normal development.

Levothyroxine sodium (thyroxine sodium) below is the treatment of choice for *maintenance* therapy.

Doses for congenital hypothyroidism and juvenile myxoedema should be titrated according to clinical response, growth assessment, and measurement of plasma thyroxine and thyroid-stimulating hormone concentrations. In congenital hypothyroidism higher initial doses may normalise metabolism more quickly, with associated beneficial effects on mental development.

Liothyronine sodium p. 486 has a similar action to levothyroxine sodium but is more rapidly metabolised and has a more rapid effect. Its effects develop after a few hours and disappear within 24 to 48 hours of discontinuing treatment. It may be used in *severe hypothyroid states* when a rapid response is desired.

Liothyronine sodium by intravenous injection is the treatment of choice in *hypothyroid coma*. Adjunctive therapy includes intravenous fluids, hydrocortisone p. 440, and treatment of infection; assisted ventilation is often required.

### THYROID HORMONES

#### Levothyroxine sodium

(Thyroxine sodium)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Hypothyroidism

###### ► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 10–15 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 50 micrograms); adjusted in steps of 5 micrograms/kg every 2 weeks, alternatively adjusted in steps of 5 micrograms/kg as required; maintenance 20–50 micrograms daily, levothyroxine should be taken at the same time each day, preferably 30 minutes before meals, caffeine-containing drinks, or other medicines; this could be before breakfast or another more convenient time.

► Child 1 month–1 year: Initially 5 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 50 micrograms); adjusted in steps of 10–25 micrograms every 2–4 weeks until metabolism normalised; maintenance 25–75 micrograms daily, levothyroxine should be taken at the same time each day, preferably 30 minutes before meals, caffeine-containing drinks, or other medicines; this could be before breakfast or another more convenient time

► Child 2–11 years: Initially 50 micrograms once daily; adjusted in steps of 25 micrograms every 2–4 weeks until metabolism normalised; maintenance 75–100 micrograms daily, levothyroxine should be taken at the same time each day, preferably 30 minutes before meals, caffeine-containing drinks, or other medicines; this could be before breakfast or another more convenient time

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 50 micrograms once daily; adjusted in steps of 25–50 micrograms every 3–4 weeks until metabolism normalised; maintenance 100–200 micrograms daily, levothyroxine should be taken at the same time each day, preferably 30 minutes before meals, caffeine-containing drinks, or other medicines; this could be before breakfast or another more convenient time

##### Hyperthyroidism (blocking-replacement regimen) in combination with carbimazole

###### ► BY MOUTH

► Child: Therapy usually given for 12 to 24 months (consult product literature or local protocols)

● **CAUTIONS** Cardiac disorders (monitor ECG; start at low dose and carefully titrate) · diabetes insipidus · diabetes mellitus (dose of antidiabetic drugs including insulin may need to be increased) · long-standing hypothyroidism · panhypopituitarism (initiate corticosteroid therapy before starting levothyroxine) · predisposition to adrenal insufficiency (initiate corticosteroid therapy before starting levothyroxine)

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: thyroid hormones

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Alopecia · angina pectoris · anxiety · arrhythmias · arthralgia · diarrhoea · dyspnoea · epiphyses premature fusion · fever · flushing · headache · heat intolerance · hyperhidrosis · idiopathic intracranial hypertension · insomnia · malaise · menstruation irregular · muscle spasms · muscle weakness · oedema · palpitations · skin reactions · thyrotoxic crisis · tremor · vomiting · weight decreased

- **PREGNANCY** Levothyroxine may cross the placenta. Excessive or insufficient maternal thyroid hormones can be detrimental to fetus.

**Dose adjustments** Levothyroxine requirement may increase during pregnancy.

**Monitoring** Assess maternal thyroid function before conception (if possible), at diagnosis of pregnancy, at antenatal booking, during both the second and third trimesters, and after delivery (more frequent monitoring required on initiation or adjustment of levothyroxine).

- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to affect tests for neonatal hypothyroidism.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Levothyroxine equivalent to 100 micrograms/m<sup>2</sup>/day can be used as a guide to the requirements in children.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Medicines for Children leaflet: Levothyroxine for hypothyroidism [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/) levothyroxine-for-hypothyroidism

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

##### Levothyroxine sodium (Non-proprietary)

**Levothyroxine sodium anhydrous 12.5 microgram** Levothyroxine sodium 12.5microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £2.80–£14.00 DT = £13.60

**Levothyroxine sodium anhydrous 25 microgram** Levothyroxine sodium 25microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.05 DT = £1.87 | 500 tablet [PoM] £41.61–£56.25

**Levothyroxine sodium 25microgram tablets lactose free** | 100 tablet [PoM] £5

**Levothyroxine sodium anhydrous 50 microgram** Levothyroxine sodium 50microgram tablets lactose free | 100 tablet [PoM] £5  
**Levothyroxine sodium 50microgram tablets** | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.50 DT = £0.97 | 1000 tablet [PoM] £38.93–£55.71

**Levothyroxine sodium anhydrous 75 microgram** Levothyroxine sodium 75microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £2.10–£4.00 DT = £2.73

**Levothyroxine sodium anhydrous 100 microgram** Levothyroxine sodium 100microgram tablets lactose free | 100 tablet [PoM] £5  
**Levothyroxine sodium 100microgram tablets** | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.50 DT = £0.96 | 1000 tablet [PoM] £38.93–£56.07

##### Eltroxin (AMCo)

**Levothyroxine sodium anhydrous 25 microgram** Eltroxin 25microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £2.54 DT = £1.87

**Levothyroxine sodium anhydrous 50 microgram** Eltroxin 50microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.77 DT = £0.97

**Levothyroxine sodium anhydrous 100 microgram** Eltroxin 100microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £1.78 DT = £0.96

##### Oral solution

##### Levothyroxine sodium (Non-proprietary)

**Levothyroxine sodium anhydrous 5 microgram per**

**1 ml** Levothyroxine sodium 25micrograms/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £118.63 DT = £94.94

**Levothyroxine sodium anhydrous 10 microgram per**

**1 ml** Levothyroxine sodium 50micrograms/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £91.22 DT = £89.66

**Levothyroxine sodium anhydrous 20 microgram per**

**1 ml** Levothyroxine sodium 100micrograms/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £165.00 DT = £164.88

## Liothyronine sodium

(L-Tri-iodothyronine sodium)

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Hypothyroidism

##### BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 10–20 micrograms daily; increased to 60 micrograms daily in 2–3 divided doses

##### Hypothyroid coma

##### BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child 12–17 years: 5–20 micrograms every 12 hours, increased to 5–20 micrograms every 4 hours if required, alternatively initially 50 micrograms for 1 dose, then 25 micrograms every 8 hours, reduced to 25 micrograms twice daily

##### Hypothyroidism (replacement for oral levothyroxine)

##### BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: Convert daily levothyroxine dose to liothyronine and give in 2–3 divided doses, adjusted according to response

##### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- 20–25 micrograms of liothyronine sodium is equivalent to approximately 100 micrograms of levothyroxine sodium.
- Brands without a UK licence may not be bioequivalent and dose adjustment may be necessary.

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac disorders (monitor ECG; start at low dose and carefully titrate) · diabetes insipidus · diabetes mellitus (dose of antidiabetic drugs including insulin may need to be increased) · prolonged hypothyroidism (initiate corticosteroid therapy in adrenal insufficiency) · severe hypothyroidism (initiate corticosteroid therapy in adrenal insufficiency)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: thyroid hormones

##### SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare** Alopecia · angina pectoris (more common at excessive dosage) · arrhythmia (more common at excessive dosage) · diarrhoea (more common at excessive dosage) · heat intolerance · muscle cramps · muscle weakness · palpitations (more common at excessive dosage) · tachycardia (more common at excessive dosage) · vomiting (more common at excessive dosage)
- **Frequency not known** Agitation · fever · flushing · headache · hyperhidrosis · insomnia (more common at excessive dosage) · oedema · restlessness (more common at excessive dosage) · skin reactions · tremor (more common at excessive dosage) · weight decreased

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

##### Rare or very rare

- With intravenous use Epiphyses premature fusion · idiopathic intracranial hypertension · menstruation irregular

- **PREGNANCY** Does not cross the placenta in significant amounts. Excessive or insufficient maternal thyroid hormones can be detrimental to fetus.

**Dose adjustments** Liothyronine requirement may increase during pregnancy.

**Monitoring** Assess maternal thyroid function before conception (if possible), at diagnosis of pregnancy, at antenatal booking, during both the second and third trimesters, and after delivery (more frequent monitoring required on initiation or adjustment of liothyronine).

- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to affect tests for neonatal hypothyroidism.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Switching to a different brand Patients switched to a different brand should be monitored (particularly if pregnant or if heart disease present) as brands without a UK licence may not be bioequivalent. Pregnant women or those with heart disease should undergo an early review of thyroid status, and other patients should have thyroid function assessed if experiencing a significant change in symptoms. If liothyronine is continued long-term, thyroid function tests should be repeated 1–2 months after any change in brand.



## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection

### Tablet

#### ▶ **Liothyronine sodium (Non-proprietary)**

**Liothyronine sodium 20 microgram** Liothyronine 20microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £258.20 DT = £246.69

#### ▶ **Cytomel (Imported (United States))**

**Liothyronine sodium 5 microgram** Cytomel 5microgram tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] [S]

**Liothyronine sodium 25 microgram** Cytomel 25microgram tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] [S]

#### ▶ **Iraksin (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)**

**Liothyronine sodium 20 microgram** Iraksin 20microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £249.98 DT = £246.69

### **Powder for solution for injection**

#### ▶ **Liothyronine sodium (Non-proprietary)**

**Liothyronine sodium 20 microgram** Liothyronine 20microgram powder for solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £1,425.00

# Chapter 7

## Genito-urinary system

### CONTENTS

<b>1 Bladder and urinary disorders</b>	page 488
1.1 Urinary frequency, enuresis, and incontinence	488
1.2 Urinary retention	491
1.3 Urological pain	492
<b>2 Bladder instillations and urological surgery</b>	493
<b>3 Contraception</b>	493
3.1 Contraception, combined	498
3.2 Contraception, devices	505

3.3 Contraception, emergency	page 507
3.4 Contraception, oral progestogen-only	507
3.5 Contraception, parenteral progestogen-only	511
3.6 Contraception, spermicidal	513
<b>4 Vaginal and vulval conditions</b>	513
4.1 Vaginal and vulval infections	514
4.1a Vaginal and vulval bacterial infections	514
4.1b Vaginal and vulval fungal infections	515

## 1 Bladder and urinary disorders

### 1.1 Urinary frequency, enuresis, and incontinence

#### Urinary frequency, enuresis and incontinence

##### Urinary incontinence

Antimuscarinic drugs reduce symptoms of urgency and urge incontinence and increase bladder capacity; oxybutynin hydrochloride p. 489 also has a direct relaxant effect on urinary smooth muscle. Oxybutynin hydrochloride can be considered first for children under 12 years. Side-effects limit the use of oxybutynin hydrochloride, but they may be reduced by starting at a lower dose and then slowly titrating upwards; alternatively oxybutynin hydrochloride can be given by intravesicular instillation. Tolterodine tartrate p. 490 is also effective for urinary incontinence; it can be considered for children over 12 years, or for younger children who have failed to respond to oxybutynin hydrochloride. Modified-release preparations of oxybutynin hydrochloride and tolterodine tartrate are available; they may have fewer side-effects. Antimuscarinic treatment should be reviewed soon after it is commenced, and then at regular intervals; a response generally occurs within 6 months but occasionally may take longer. Children with nocturnal enuresis may require specific additional measures if night-time symptoms also need to be controlled.

See also Nocturnal enuresis in children below.

#### Nocturnal enuresis in children

23-May-2017

##### Description of condition

Nocturnal enuresis is the involuntary discharge of urine during sleep, which is common in young children. Children are generally expected to be dry by a developmental age of 5 years, and historically it has been common practice to consider children for treatment only when they reach 7 years; however, symptoms may still persist in a small proportion by the age of 10 years.

##### Treatment

###### Children under 5 years

**[EvGr]** For children under 5 years, treatment is usually unnecessary as the condition is likely to resolve spontaneously. Reassurance and advice can be useful for some families. **[A]**

###### Non Drug Treatment


**[EvGr]** Initially, advice should be given on fluid intake, diet, toileting behaviour, and use of reward systems. For children who do not respond to this advice (more than 1–2 wet beds per week), an enuresis alarm should be the recommended treatment for motivated, well-supported children. Alarms in children under 7 years should be considered depending on the child's maturity, motivation and understanding of the alarm. Alarms have a lower relapse rate than drug treatment when discontinued.

Treatment using an alarm should be reviewed after 4 weeks and continued until a minimum of 2 weeks' uninterrupted dry nights have been achieved. If complete dryness is not achieved after 3 months but the condition is still improving and the child remains motivated to use the alarm, it is recommended to continue the treatment. Combined treatment with desmopressin p. 432, or the use of desmopressin alone, is recommended if the initial alarm treatment is unsuccessful or it is no longer appropriate or desirable. **[A]**

###### Drug Treatment

**[EvGr]** Treatment with oral or sublingual desmopressin is recommended for children over 5 years of age when alarm use is inappropriate or undesirable, or when rapid or short-term results are the priority (for example, to cover periods away from home). Desmopressin alone can also be used if there has been a partial response to a combination of desmopressin and an alarm following initial treatment with an alarm alone. Treatment should be assessed after 4 weeks and continued for 3 months if there are signs of response. Repeated courses of desmopressin can be used in responsive children who experience repeated recurrences of bedwetting, but should be withdrawn **gradually** at regular intervals (for 1 week every 3 months) for full reassessment.

Under specialist supervision, nocturnal enuresis associated with daytime symptoms (overactive bladder) can be managed with desmopressin alone or in combination with an antimuscarinic drug (such as oxybutynin hydrochloride p. 489 or tolterodine tartrate p. 490 [unlicensed indication]). Treatment should be continued for 3 months; the course can be repeated if necessary.

The tricyclic antidepressant imipramine hydrochloride p. 240 can be considered for children who have not responded to all other treatments and have undergone specialist assessment, however relapse is common after withdrawal and children and their carers should be aware of the dangers of overdose. Initial treatment should continue for 3 months; further courses can be considered following a medical review every 3 months. Tricyclic antidepressants should be withdrawn gradually. 

### Useful Resources

Bedwetting in under 19s. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Clinical guideline CG111. October 2010. [www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg111](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg111)

## ANTIMUSCARINICS

### Antimuscarinics (systemic)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Gastro-intestinal obstruction · intestinal atony · myasthenia gravis (but some antimuscarinics may be used to decrease muscarinic side-effects of anticholinesterases) · paralytic ileus · pyloric stenosis · severe ulcerative colitis · significant bladder outflow obstruction · toxic megacolon · urinary retention
- **CAUTIONS** Arrhythmias (may be worsened) · autonomic neuropathy · cardiac insufficiency (due to association with tachycardia) · cardiac surgery (due to association with tachycardia) · children (increased risk of side-effects) · conditions characterised by tachycardia · congestive heart failure (may be worsened) · coronary artery disease (may be worsened) · diarrhoea · gastro-oesophageal reflux disease · hiatus hernia with reflux oesophagitis · hypertension · hyperthyroidism (due to association with tachycardia) · individuals susceptible to angle-closure glaucoma · pyrexia · ulcerative colitis
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Confusion · constipation · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dyspepsia · flushing · headache · nausea · palpitations · skin reactions · tachycardia · urinary disorders · vision disorders · vomiting
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Angioedema
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**
  - ▶ **Driving and skilled tasks** Antimuscarinics can affect the performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

 above

## Oxybutynin hydrochloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Urinary frequency | Urinary urgency | Urinary incontinence | Neurogenic bladder instability**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
  - ▶ Child 2–4 years: 1.25–2.5 mg 2–3 times a day
  - ▶ Child 5–11 years: Initially 2.5–3 mg twice daily, increased to 5 mg 2–3 times a day
  - ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 5 mg 2–3 times a day, increased if necessary up to 5 mg 4 times a day
- ▶ **BY INTRAVESICAL INSTILLATION**
  - ▶ Child 2–17 years: 5 mg 2–3 times a day
- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE TABLETS**
  - ▶ Child 5–17 years: Initially 5 mg once daily, adjusted in steps of 5 mg every week, adjusted according to response; maximum 15 mg per day

**Nocturnal enuresis associated with overactive bladder**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES**
  - ▶ Child 5–17 years: 2.5–3 mg twice daily, increased to 5 mg 2–3 times a day, last dose to be taken before bedtime

### ▶ BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE TABLETS

- ▶ Child 5–17 years: Initially 5 mg once daily, adjusted in steps of 5 mg every week, adjusted according to response; maximum 15 mg per day

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Patients taking immediate-release oxybutynin may be transferred to the nearest equivalent daily dose of *Lyrinel*® XL

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 5 years. Intravesical instillation not licensed for use in children.

- **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: oxybutynin

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

#### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · dry eye
- ▶ **Uncommon** Abdominal discomfort · appetite decreased · dysphagia · urticaria

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Frequency not known**

Anxiety · arrhythmia · cognitive disorder · depressive symptom · disorientation · drug dependence · gastrointestinal disorders · glaucoma · hallucination · heat stroke · hypohidrosis · mydriasis · nightmare · paranoia · photosensitivity reaction · seizure · urinary tract infection

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise avoid unless essential—toxicity in *animal studies*.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturers advise avoid—present in milk in *animal studies*.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The need for therapy for urinary indications should be reviewed soon after it has been commenced and then at regular intervals; a response usually occurs within 6 months but may take longer.

Intravesical instillation may be available from ‘special-order’ manufacturers or specialist importing companies.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Oxybutynin for daytime urinary symptoms [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/oxybutynin-for-daytime-urinary-symptoms](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/oxybutynin-for-daytime-urinary-symptoms)

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, bladder irrigation

#### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 25

- ▶ *Lyrinel* XL (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

**Oxybutynin hydrochloride 5 mg** *Lyrinel* XL 5mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £13.77 DT = £13.77

**Oxybutynin hydrochloride 10 mg** *Lyrinel* XL 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £27.54 DT = £27.54

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3

- ▶ **Oxybutynin hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Oxybutynin hydrochloride 2.5 mg** Oxybutynin 2.5mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £14.40 DT = £0.84 | 84 tablet [PoM] £3.84-£21.60

**Oxybutynin hydrochloride 3 mg** Oxybutynin 3mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £16.80 DT = £16.80

**Oxybutynin hydrochloride 5 mg** Oxybutynin 5mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £23.40 DT = £1.19 | 84 tablet [PoM] £4.75-£20.77

- ▶ *Cystrin* (Zentiva)

**Oxybutynin hydrochloride 5 mg** *Cystrin* 5mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £21.99

- ▶ *Ditropan* (Sanofi)

**Oxybutynin hydrochloride 2.5 mg** *Ditropan* 2.5mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £1.60

**Oxybutynin hydrochloride 5 mg** *Ditropan* 5mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £2.90

**Oral solution**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3

► **Oxybutynin hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Oxybutynin hydrochloride 500 microgram per 1 ml** Oxybutynin 2.5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £154.50–£214.85 DT = £184.68

**Oxybutynin hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml** Oxybutynin 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £199.20 DT = £199.20

F 489

**Trospium chloride**

11-May-2018

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Urinary frequency | Urinary urgency | Urge incontinence**

► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Child 12–17 years: 20 mg twice daily, to be taken before food

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: trospium● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain
- **Uncommon** Chest pain · diarrhoea · flatulence
- **Rare or very rare** Arthralgia · asthenia · dyspnoea · myalgia · urinary disorder · vision disorder
- **Frequency not known** Agitation · anaphylactic reaction · hallucination · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises caution.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises caution.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in mild to moderate impairment. Avoid in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution. Avoid *Regurin*® XL. **Dose adjustments** Reduce dose to 20 mg once daily or 20 mg on alternate days if eGFR 10–30 mL/minute/1.73m<sup>2</sup>.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The need for continuing therapy for urinary incontinence should be reviewed every 4–6 weeks until symptoms stabilise, and then every 6–12 months.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 23

► **Trospium chloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Trospium chloride 20 mg** Trospium chloride 20mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £9.00 DT = £8.26

► **Flotros (Galen Ltd)**

**Trospium chloride 20 mg** Flotros 20mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £18.20 DT = £8.26

► **Regurin (Speciality European Pharma Ltd)**

**Trospium chloride 20 mg** Regurin 20mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £26.00 DT = £8.26

► **Uraplex (Speciality European Pharma Ltd)**

**Trospium chloride 20 mg** Uraplex 20mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £26.00 DT = £8.26

F 489

**Tolterodine tartrate**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Urinary frequency | Urinary urgency | Urinary incontinence**

► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Child 2–17 years: 1 mg once daily, then increased if necessary up to 2 mg twice daily, adjusted according to response

► BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE CAPSULES

► Child 2–17 years: 4 mg once daily

**Nocturnal enuresis associated with overactive bladder**

► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

► Child 5–17 years: 1 mg once daily, dose to be taken at bedtime, then increased if necessary up to 2 mg twice daily, adjusted according to response

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

► Children stabilised on immediate-release tolterodine tartrate 2 mg twice daily may be transferred to modified-release tolterodine 4 mg once daily.

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.● **CAUTIONS** History of QT-interval prolongation● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tolterodine● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · bronchitis · chest pain · diarrhoea · dry eye · fatigue · gastrointestinal disorders · paraesthesia · peripheral oedema · vertigo · visual impairment · weight increased

► **Uncommon** Arrhythmia · heart failure · memory loss · nervousness

► **Frequency not known** Disorientation · hallucination

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—toxicity in animal studies.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid modified-release preparations.

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid modified-release preparations if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73m<sup>2</sup>.

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose if estimated glomerular filtration less than 30 mL/minute/1.73m<sup>2</sup>.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The need for therapy for urinary indications should be reviewed soon after it has been commenced and then at regular intervals; a response usually occurs within 6 months but may take longer.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, powder

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3

► **Tolterodine tartrate (Non-proprietary)**

**Tolterodine tartrate 1 mg** Tolterodine 1mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £29.03 DT = £1.79

**Tolterodine tartrate 2 mg** Tolterodine 2mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £30.56 DT = £2.09

► **Detrusitol (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Tolterodine tartrate 1 mg** Detrusitol 1mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £29.03 DT = £1.79

**Tolterodine tartrate 2 mg** Detrusitol 2mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £30.56 DT = £2.09

**Modified-release capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 25

► **Tolterodine tartrate (Non-proprietary)**

**Tolterodine tartrate 2 mg** Tolterodine 2mg modified-release capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £11.60 DT = £1.60

► **Blerone XL (Zentiva)**

**Tolterodine tartrate 4 mg** Blerone XL 4mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £25.78 DT = £25.78

► **Detrusitol XL (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Tolterodine tartrate 4 mg** Detrusitol XL 4mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £25.78 DT = £25.78

► **Efflosomyl XL (Mylan)**

**Tolterodine tartrate 4 mg** Efflosomyl XL 4mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £20.62 DT = £25.78

► **Inconex XL (Sandoz Ltd)**

**Tolterodine tartrate 4 mg** Inconex XL 4mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £21.91 DT = £25.78

- ▶ **Mariosea XL** (Teva UK Ltd)  
Tolterodine tartrate 2 mg Mariosea XL 2mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £11.59 DT = £11.60  
Tolterodine tartrate 4 mg Mariosea XL 4mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £12.88 DT = £25.78
- ▶ **Neditol XL** (Aspire Pharma Ltd)  
Tolterodine tartrate 2 mg Neditol XL 2mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £11.60 DT = £11.60  
Tolterodine tartrate 4 mg Neditol XL 4mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £12.89 DT = £25.78
- ▶ **Preblacon XL** (Actavis UK Ltd)  
Tolterodine tartrate 4 mg Preblacon XL 4mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £25.78 DT = £25.78
- ▶ **Santizor XL** (Pfizer Ltd)  
Tolterodine tartrate 4 mg Santizor XL 4mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £25.78 DT = £25.78

## 1.2 Urinary retention

### Urinary retention

31-May-2017

#### Description of condition


Urinary retention is the inability to voluntarily urinate. Causes in children can include severe voiding dysfunction, urethral blockage, drug treatment (such as opioids and antimuscarinic drugs), conditions that reduce detrusor contractions or interfere with relaxation of the urethra, and neurogenic causes.

Acute urinary retention is a medical emergency characterised by the abrupt (over a period of hours) development of the inability to pass urine, associated with increasing pain and the presence of a distended bladder, which can be palpated on examination.

Chronic urinary retention is the gradual (over months or years) development of the inability to empty the bladder completely, characterised by difficulties with initiating and maintaining urinary stream, urinary overflow, no sensation for needing to void and a post-void residual.

#### Treatment

**[EvGr]** Treatment of urinary retention depends on the underlying condition. Catheterisation is used as an effective initial management strategy, which should be followed by diagnostic evaluation and appropriate treatment of the underlying cause. Clean intermittent catheterisation on a long-term basis is effective for children with idiopathic or neurogenic bladder dysfunction.

The selective alpha-adrenoceptor blockers, doxazosin below and tamsulosin hydrochloride p. 492, have been shown to be of use in primary bladder neck dysfunction and dysfunctional voiding; they reduce urethral sphincteric pressure, thereby improving bladder emptying in children. Treatment should be under specialist advice only. 

### ALPHA-ADRENOCEPTOR BLOCKERS

#### Doxazosin

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Hypertension

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: Initially 500 micrograms once daily, then increased to 2–4 mg once daily, dose should be increased at intervals of 1 week
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 1 mg once daily for 1–2 weeks, then increased to 2 mg once daily, then increased if necessary to 4 mg once daily, rarely doses of up to 16 mg daily may be required

#### Dysfunctional voiding (initiated under specialist supervision)

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES
- ▶ Child 4–11 years: Initially 0.5 mg daily, adjusted according to response, dose should be increased at monthly intervals; maximum 2 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 1 mg daily, adjusted according to response, dose may be doubled at intervals of 1 month; usual maintenance 2–4 mg daily; maximum 8 mg per day

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Patients stabilised on immediate-release doxazosin can be transferred to the equivalent dose of modified-release doxazosin.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of postural hypotension
- **CAUTIONS** Care with initial dose (postural hypotension) · cataract surgery (risk of intra-operative floppy iris syndrome) · heart failure · pulmonary oedema due to aortic or mitral stenosis
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: alpha blockers
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · asthenia · chest pain · cough · cystitis · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dyspnoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hypotension · increased risk of infection · influenza like illness · muscle complaints · nausea · oedema · pain · palpitations · skin reactions · urinary disorders · vertigo
- ▶ **Uncommon** Angina pectoris · anxiety · appetite abnormal · arthralgia · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal disorders · gout · haemorrhage · insomnia · myocardial infarction · sensation abnormal · sexual dysfunction · stroke · syncope · tinnitus · tremor · vomiting · weight increased
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Alopecia · bronchospasm · flushing · gynaecomastia · hepatic disorders · leucopenia · malaise · muscle weakness · thrombocytopenia · vision blurred
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Floppy iris syndrome
- **PREGNANCY** No evidence of teratogenicity; manufacturers advise use only when potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Accumulates in milk in *animal studies*—manufacturer advises avoid.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution. Manufacturer advises avoid in severe impairment—no information available.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for doxazosin tablets (initial dose).
- Driving and skilled tasks** May affect performance of skilled tasks e.g. driving.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

##### ▶ Doxazosin (Non-proprietary)

**Doxazosin (as Doxazosin mesilate) 1 mg** Doxazosin 1mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £10.56 DT = £0.44

**Doxazosin (as Doxazosin mesilate) 2 mg** Doxazosin 2mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £14.08 DT = £0.50

**Doxazosin (as Doxazosin mesilate) 4 mg** Doxazosin 4mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £14.08 DT = £0.60

##### ▶ Cardura (Pfizer Ltd)

**Doxazosin (as Doxazosin mesilate) 1 mg** Cardura 1mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £10.56 DT = £0.44

**Doxazosin (as Doxazosin mesilate) 2 mg** Cardura 2mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £14.08 DT = £0.50

##### ▶ Doxidadura (Discovery Pharmaceuticals)

**Doxazosin (as Doxazosin mesilate) 1 mg** Doxidadura 1mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.43 DT = £0.44

**Doxazosin (as Doxazosin mesilate) 2 mg** Doxidadura 2mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.49 DT = £0.50

**Doxazosin (as Doxazosin mesilate) 4 mg** Doxidadura 4mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £0.59 DT = £0.60



## Tamsulosin hydrochloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Dysfunctional voiding (administered on expert advice)

- BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES
- Child 12–17 years: 400 micrograms once daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of postural hypotension
- **CAUTIONS** Care with initial dose (postural hypotension) • cataract surgery (risk of intra-operative floppy iris syndrome)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: alpha blockers
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Dizziness • sexual dysfunction
  - **Uncommon** Asthenia • constipation • diarrhoea • headache • nausea • palpitations • postural hypotension • rhinitis • skin reactions • vomiting
  - **Rare or very rare** Angioedema • Stevens-Johnson syndrome • syncope
  - **Frequency not known** Dry mouth • epistaxis • vision disorders
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**
  - Driving and skilled tasks** May affect performance of skilled tasks e.g. driving.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

##### ► Tamsulosin hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Tamsulosin 400microgram modified-release tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £10.47 DT = £10.47

##### ► Cositam XL (Consilient Health Ltd)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Cositam XL 400microgram tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £8.89 DT = £10.47

##### ► Faramsil (Sandoz Ltd)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Faramsil 400microgram modified-release tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £8.89 DT = £10.47

##### ► Flectone XL (Teva UK Ltd)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Flectone XL 400microgram tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £9.95 DT = £10.47

##### ► Flomaxtra XL (Astellas Pharma Ltd)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Flomaxtra XL 400microgram tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £10.47 DT = £10.47

#### Modified-release capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

##### ► Tamsulosin hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Tamsulosin 400microgram modified-release capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £5.07 DT = £3.87

##### ► Contiflo XL (Ranbaxy (UK) Ltd)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Contiflo XL 400microgram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £7.44 DT = £3.87

##### ► Diffundox XL (Zentiva)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Diffundox XL 400microgram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £9.55 DT = £3.87

##### ► Flomax MR (Sanofi)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Flomax Relief MR 400microgram capsules | 14 capsule [P] £5.58 | 28 capsule [P] £10.55

##### ► Pamsvax XL (Almus Pharmaceuticals Ltd, Actavis UK Ltd)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Pamsvax XL 400microgram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £1.28 DT = £3.87

##### ► Petyme MR (Teva UK Ltd)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Petyme 400microgram MR capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £4.06 DT = £3.87

##### ► Pinexel PR (Wockhardt UK Ltd)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Pinexel PR 400microgram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £2.50 DT = £3.87

##### ► Prosurin XL (Mylan)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Prosurin XL 400microgram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £4.28 DT = £3.87

##### ► Tabphyn MR (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Tabphyn MR 400microgram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £4.45 DT = £3.87

##### ► Tamfex XL (Milpharm Ltd)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Tamfex XL 400microgram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £3.87 DT = £3.87

##### ► Tamurex (Somex Pharma)

Tamsulosin hydrochloride 400 microgram Tamurex 400microgram modified-release capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £3.50 DT = £3.87

## 1.3 Urological pain

### Urological pain

#### Treatment

**Lidocaine hydrochloride gel** is a useful topical application in *urethral pain* or to relieve the discomfort of catheterisation.

#### Alkalinisation of urine

*Alkalinisation* of urine can be undertaken with potassium citrate. The alkalinising action may relieve the discomfort of cystitis caused by lower urinary tract infections.

### ALKALISING DRUGS

## Citric acid with potassium citrate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Relief of discomfort in mild urinary-tract infections |

##### Alkalinisation of urine

#### ► BY MOUTH USING ORAL SOLUTION

- Child 1–5 years: 5 mL 3 times a day, diluted well with water
- Child 6–17 years: 10 mL 3 times a day, diluted well with water

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac disease
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: potassium citrate
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Hyperkalaemia • nausea • vomiting
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.
- **Monitoring** Close monitoring required in renal impairment—high risk of hyperkalaemia.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** When prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Potassium Citrate Mixture BP consists of potassium citrate 30%, citric acid monohydrate 5% in a suitable vehicle with a lemon flavour. Extemporaneous preparations should be recently prepared according to the following formula: potassium citrate 3 g, citric acid monohydrate 500 mg, syrup 2.5 mL, quillaia tincture 0.1 mL, lemon spirit 0.05 mL, double-strength chloroform water 3 mL, water to 10 mL. Contains about 28 mmol K<sup>+</sup>/10 mL.
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Proprietary brands of potassium citrate are on sale to the public for the relief of discomfort in mild urinary-tract infections.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 27

#### ► Citric acid with potassium citrate (Non-proprietary)

Citric acid monohydrate 50 mg per 1 ml, Potassium citrate 300 mg per 1 ml Potassium citrate mixture | 200 ml [G5] £1.36-£1.38 DT = £1.36 | 200 ml [P] £1.38 DT = £1.36

## 2 Bladder instillations and urological surgery

### Bladder instillations and urological surgery

#### Bladder infection

Various solutions are available as irrigations or washouts.

Aqueous chlorhexidine p. 703 can be used in the management of common infections of the bladder but it is ineffective against most *Pseudomonas spp.* Solutions containing chlorhexidine 1 in 5000 (0.02%) are used but they may irritate the mucosa and cause burning and haematuria (in which case they should be discontinued); sterile sodium chloride solution 0.9% (physiological saline) p. 589 is usually adequate and is preferred as a mechanical irrigant.

#### Dissolution of blood clots

Clot retention is usually treated by irrigation with sterile sodium chloride solution 0.9% but sterile sodium citrate solution for bladder irrigation 3% may also be helpful.

#### Maintenance of indwelling urinary catheters

The deposition which occurs in catheterised patients is usually chiefly composed of phosphate and to minimise this the catheter (if latex) should be changed at least as often as every 6 weeks. If the catheter is to be left for longer periods a silicone catheter should be used together with the appropriate use of catheter maintenance solutions. Repeated blockage usually indicates that the catheter needs to be changed.

## Catheter maintenance solutions

### ● CATHETER MAINTENANCE SOLUTIONS

**OptiFlo R citric acid 6% catheter maintenance solution** (Bard Ltd)

50 ml • NHS indicative price = £3.63 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

100 ml • NHS indicative price = £3.63 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Uro-Tainer Twin Solutio R citric acid 6% catheter maintenance solution** (B.Braun Medical Ltd)

60 ml • NHS indicative price = £4.85 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**OptiFlo S saline 0.9% catheter maintenance solution** (Bard Ltd)

**Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml** 50 ml • NHS indicative price = £3.42 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

100 ml • NHS indicative price = £3.42 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Uro-Tainer M sodium chloride 0.9% catheter maintenance solution** (B.Braun Medical Ltd)

**Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml** 50 ml • No NHS indicative price available • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

100 ml • No NHS indicative price available • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Uro-Tainer sodium chloride 0.9% catheter maintenance solution** (B.Braun Medical Ltd)

**Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml** 50 ml • NHS indicative price = £3.54 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

100 ml • NHS indicative price = £3.54 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

## 3 Contraception

### Contraceptives, hormonal

#### Overview

The Fraser Guidelines (Department of Health Guidance (July 2004): Best practice guidance for doctors and other health professionals on the provision of advice and treatment to young people under 16 on contraception, sexual and reproductive health, available at [www.tinyurl.com/bpg16](http://www.tinyurl.com/bpg16)) should be followed when prescribing contraception for women under 16 years. The UK Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use (available at [www.fsrh.org](http://www.fsrh.org)) is published by the Faculty of Sexual and Reproductive Healthcare; it categorises the risks of using contraceptive methods with pre-existing medical conditions.

**Hormonal contraception** is the most effective method of fertility control, but can have major and minor side-effects, especially for certain groups of women. Hormonal contraception should only be used by adolescents after menarche.

**Intra-uterine devices** are a highly effective method of contraception but may produce undesirable local side-effects. They may be used in women of all ages irrespective of parity, but are less appropriate for those with an increased risk of pelvic inflammatory disease.

**Barrier methods** alone (condoms, diaphragms, and caps) are less effective but can be reliable for well-motivated couples if used in conjunction with a **spermicide**. Occasionally sensitivity reactions occur. A female condom (*Femidom*®) is also available; it is pre-lubricated but does not contain a spermicide.

#### Combined hormonal contraceptives

Oral contraceptives containing an oestrogen and a progestogen ('combined oral contraceptives') are effective preparations for general use. Advantages of combined oral contraceptives include:

- reliable and reversible;
- reduced dysmenorrhoea and menorrhagia;
- reduced incidence of premenstrual tension;
- less symptomatic fibroids and functional ovarian cysts;
- less benign breast disease;
- reduced risk of ovarian and endometrial cancer;
- reduced risk of pelvic inflammatory disease.

Combined oral contraceptives containing a fixed amount of an oestrogen and a progestogen in each active tablet are termed 'monophasic'; those with varying amounts of the two hormones are termed 'phasic'. A transdermal patch and a vaginal ring, both containing an oestrogen with a progestogen, are also available.

**Combined Oral Contraceptives Monophasic 21-day preparations**

Oestrogen content	Progestogen content	Brand
Ethinylestradiol 20 micrograms	Desogestrel 150 micrograms	Gedarel® 20/150
Ethinylestradiol 20 micrograms	Desogestrel 150 micrograms	Mercilon®
Ethinylestradiol 20 micrograms	Gestodene 75 micrograms	Femodette®
Ethinylestradiol 20 micrograms	Gestodene 75 micrograms	Millinette® 20/75
Ethinylestradiol 20 micrograms	Gestodene 75 micrograms	Sunya® 20/75
Ethinylestradiol 20 micrograms	Norethisterone acetate 1 mg	Loestrin® 20
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Desogestrel 150 micrograms	Gedarel® 30/150
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Desogestrel 150 micrograms	Marvelon®
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Drospirenone 3 mg	Yasmin®
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Gestodene 75 micrograms	Femodene®
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Gestodene 75 micrograms	Katya® 30/75
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Gestodene 75 micrograms	Millinette® 30/75
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 150 micrograms	Levest®
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 150 micrograms	Microgynon® 30
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 150 micrograms	Ovranelle®
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 150 micrograms	Rigevidon®
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Norethisterone acetate 1.5 mg	Loestrin® 30
Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms	Norgestimate 250 micrograms	Cilest®
Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms	Norethisterone 500 micrograms	Brevinor®
Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms	Norethisterone 1 mg	Norimin®
Mestranol 50 micrograms	Norethisterone 1 mg	Norinyl-1®

**Combined Oral Contraceptives Monophasic 28-day preparations**

Oestrogen content	Progestogen content	Brand
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Gestodene 75 micrograms	Femodene® ED
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 150 micrograms	Microgynon® 30 ED
Estradiol (as hemihydrate) 1.5 mg	Nomegestrol acetate 2.5 mg	Zoely®

**Combined Oral Contraceptives Phasic 21-day preparations**

Oestrogen content	Progestogen content	Brand
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Gestodene 50 micrograms	Triadene®
Ethinylestradiol 40 micrograms	Gestodene 70 micrograms	
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Gestodene 100 micrograms	
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 50 micrograms	Logynon®
Ethinylestradiol 40 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 75 micrograms	
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 125 micrograms	
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 50 micrograms	TriRegol®
Ethinylestradiol 40 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 75 micrograms	
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 125 micrograms	
Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms	Norethisterone 500 micrograms	Synphase®
Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms	Norethisterone 1 mg	
Ethinylestradiol 35 micrograms	Norethisterone 500 micrograms	

**Combined Oral Contraceptives Phasic 28-day preparations**

Oestrogen content	Progestogen content	Brand
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 50 micrograms	Logynon® ED
Ethinylestradiol 40 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 75 micrograms	
Ethinylestradiol 30 micrograms	Levonorgestrel 125 micrograms	
Estradiol valerate 3 mg		Qlaira®
Estradiol valerate 2 mg	Dienogest 2 mg	
Estradiol valerate 2 mg	Dienogest 3 mg	
Estradiol valerate 1 mg		

**Choice**

The majority of combined oral contraceptives contain ethinylestradiol as the oestrogen component; mestranol and estradiol are also used. The ethinylestradiol content of combined oral contraceptives ranges from 20 to 40 micrograms. Generally a preparation with the lowest oestrogen and progestogen content which gives good cycle control and minimal side-effects in the individual woman is chosen. It is recommended that combined hormonal contraceptives are not continued beyond 50 years of age since more suitable alternatives exist.

- *Low strength preparations* (containing ethinylestradiol 20 micrograms) are particularly appropriate for women with risk factors for circulatory disease, provided a combined oral contraceptive is otherwise suitable.
- *Standard strength preparations* (containing ethinylestradiol 30 or 35 micrograms or in 30–40 microgram *phased*

preparations) are appropriate for standard use. Phased preparations are generally reserved for women who *either* do not have withdrawal bleeding or who have breakthrough bleeding with monophasic products.

The progestogens ethinylestradiol with desogestrel p. 500, ethinylestradiol with drospirenone p. 501, and ethinylestradiol with gestodene p. 502 may be considered for women who have side-effects (such as acne, headache, depression, breast symptoms, and breakthrough bleeding) with other progestogens. Drospirenone, a derivative of spironolactone, has anti-androgenic and anti-mineralocorticoid activity; it should be used with care if an increased plasma-potassium concentration might be hazardous.

Denogest with estradiol valerate p. 500 is in the combined oral contraceptive *Qlaira*®. Nomegestrol is the progestogen contained in the combined oral contraceptive *Zoely*®, in combination with estradiol.

The progestogen norelgestromin is combined with ethinylestradiol in a transdermal patch (*Evra*®). The vaginal contraceptive ring contains the progestogen etonogestrel combined with ethinylestradiol (*NuvaRing*®).

### Surgery

Oestrogen-containing contraceptives should preferably be discontinued (and adequate alternative contraceptive arrangements made) 4 weeks before major elective surgery and all surgery to the legs or surgery which involves prolonged immobilisation of a lower limb; they should normally be recommenced at the first menses occurring at least 2 weeks after full mobilisation. A progestogen-only contraceptive may be offered as an alternative and the oestrogen-containing contraceptive restarted after mobilisation. When discontinuation of an oestrogen-containing contraceptive is not possible, e.g. after trauma or if a patient admitted for an elective procedure is still on an oestrogen-containing contraceptive, thromboprophylaxis (with unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin and graduated compression hosiery) is advised. These recommendations do not apply to minor surgery with short duration of anaesthesia, e.g. laparoscopic sterilisation or tooth extraction, or to women using oestrogen-free hormonal contraceptives.

### Reason to stop immediately

Combined hormonal contraceptives or hormone replacement therapy (HRT) should be stopped (pending investigation and treatment), if any of the following occur:

- sudden severe chest pain (even if not radiating to left arm);
- sudden breathlessness (or cough with blood-stained sputum);
- unexplained swelling or severe pain in calf of one leg;
- severe stomach pain;
- serious neurological effects including unusual severe, prolonged headache especially if first time or getting progressively worse or sudden partial or complete loss of vision or sudden disturbance of hearing or other perceptual disorders or dysphasia or bad fainting attack or collapse or first unexplained epileptic seizure or weakness, motor disturbances, very marked numbness suddenly affecting one side or one part of body;
- hepatitis, jaundice, liver enlargement;
- blood pressure above systolic 160 mmHg or diastolic 95 mmHg; (in adolescents stop if blood pressure very high);
- prolonged immobility after surgery or leg injury;
- detection of a risk factor which contra-indicates treatment.

## Progestogen-only contraceptives

### Oral progestogen-only contraceptives

Oral progestogen-only preparations alter cervical mucus to prevent sperm penetration and may inhibit ovulation in some women; oral desogestrel-only preparations consistently inhibit ovulation and this is their primary mechanism of action. There is insufficient clinical trial evidence to compare the efficacy of oral progestogen-only contraceptives with each other or with combined hormonal contraceptives. Progestogen-only contraceptives offer a suitable alternative to combined hormonal contraceptives when oestrogens are contra-indicated (including those with venous thrombosis or a past history or predisposition to venous thrombosis, heavy smokers, those with hypertension above systolic 160 mmHg or diastolic 95 mmHg, valvular heart disease, diabetes mellitus with complications, and migraine with aura).

### Parenteral progestogen-only contraceptives

Medroxyprogesterone acetate p. 512 (*Depo-Provera*®, *SAYANA PRESS*®) is a long-acting progestogen given by injection; it is at least as effective as the combined oral preparations but because of its prolonged action it should never be given without *full counselling backed by the patient information leaflet*. It may be used as a short-term or long-term contraceptive for women who have been counselled about the likelihood of menstrual disturbance and the potential for a delay in return to full fertility. Delayed return of fertility and irregular cycles may occur after discontinuation of treatment but there is no evidence of permanent infertility. Troublesome bleeding has been reported in patients given medroxyprogesterone acetate in the immediate puerperium; delaying the first injection until 6 weeks after birth may minimise bleeding problems. If the woman is not breast-feeding, the first injection may be given within 5 days postpartum (she should be warned that the risk of troublesome bleeding may be increased).

- In adolescents, medroxyprogesterone acetate (*Depo-Provera*®, *SAYANA PRESS*®) should be used only when other methods of contraception are inappropriate;
- in all women, the benefits of using medroxyprogesterone acetate beyond 2 years should be evaluated against the risks;
- in women with risk factors for osteoporosis, a method of contraception other than medroxyprogesterone acetate should be considered.

**Norethisterone enantate** (*Noristerat*®) is a long-acting progestogen given as an oily injection which provides contraception for 8 weeks; it is used as short-term interim contraception e.g. before vasectomy becomes effective.

An **etonogestrel-releasing implant** (*Nexplanon*®) is also available. It is a highly effective long-acting contraceptive, consisting of a single flexible rod that is inserted subdermally into the lower surface of the upper arm and provides contraception for up to 3 years. The manufacturer advises that in heavier women, blood-etonogestrel concentrations are lower and therefore the implant may not provide effective contraception during the third year; they advise that earlier replacement may be considered in such patients—however, evidence to support this recommendation is lacking. Local reactions such as bruising and itching can occur at the insertion site. The contraceptive effect of etonogestrel is rapidly reversed on removal of the implant.

### Intra-uterine progestogen-only device

The progestogen-only intra-uterine systems *Mirena*®, *Jaydess*® and *Levosert*® release levonorgestrel p. 508 directly into the uterine cavity. *Mirena*® is licensed for use as a contraceptive, for the treatment of primary menorrhagia and for the prevention of endometrial hyperplasia during oestrogen replacement therapy. *Jaydess*® and *Levosert*® are licensed for contraception, and *Levosert*® is additionally

licensed for the treatment of menorrhagia. These may therefore be a contraceptive method of choice for women who have excessively heavy menses.

The effects of the progestogen-only intra-uterine system are mainly local and hormonal including prevention of endometrial proliferation, thickening of cervical mucus, and suppression of ovulation in some women (in some cycles). In addition to the progestogenic activity, the intra-uterine system itself may contribute slightly to the contraceptive effect. Return of fertility after removal is rapid and appears to be complete.

Advantages of the progestogen-only intra-uterine system over copper intra-uterine devices are that there may be an improvement in any dysmenorrhoea and a reduction in blood loss; there is also evidence that the frequency of pelvic inflammatory disease may be reduced (particularly in the youngest age groups who are most at risk).

In primary menorrhagia, menstrual bleeding is reduced significantly within 3–6 months of inserting the progestogen-only intra-uterine system, probably because it prevents endometrial proliferation. Another treatment should be considered if menorrhagia does not improve within this time.

### Surgery

All progestogen-only contraceptives (including those given by injection) are suitable for use as an alternative to combined hormonal contraceptives before major elective surgery, before all surgery to the legs, or before surgery which involves prolonged immobilisation of a lower limb.

## Contraceptives, non-hormonal

### Spermicidal contraceptives

Spermicidal contraceptives are useful additional safeguards but do **not** give adequate protection if used alone unless fertility is already significantly diminished. They have two components: a spermicide and a vehicle which itself may have some inhibiting effect on sperm activity. They are suitable for use with barrier methods, such as diaphragms or caps; however, spermicidal contraceptives are not generally recommended for use with condoms, as there is no evidence of any additional protection compared with non-spermicidal lubricants.

Spermicidal contraceptives are not suitable for use in those with or at high risk of sexually transmitted infections (including HIV); high frequency use of the spermicide nonoxinol '9' p. 513 has been associated with genital lesions, which may increase the risk of acquiring these infections.

### Contraceptive devices

#### Intra-uterine devices

The intra-uterine device (IUD) is a suitable contraceptive for young women irrespective of parity; however, it is less appropriate for those with an increased risk of pelvic inflammatory disease e.g. women under 25 years.

The most effective intra-uterine devices have at least 380 mm<sup>2</sup> of copper and have banded copper on the arms. Smaller devices have been introduced to minimise side-effects; these consist of a plastic carrier wound with copper wire or fitted with copper bands; some also have a central core of silver to prevent fragmentation of the copper.

A frameless, copper-bearing intra-uterine device (*Gyne Fix*®) is also available. It consists of a knotted, polypropylene thread with 6 copper sleeves; the device is anchored in the uterus by inserting the knot into the uterine fundus.

### Caution with oil-based lubricants

Products such as petroleum jelly (*Vaseline*®), baby oil and oil-based vaginal and rectal preparations are likely to damage condoms and contraceptive diaphragms made from

latex rubber, and may render them less effective as a barrier method of contraception and as a protection from sexually transmitted infections (including HIV).

## Emergency contraception

01-Sep-2017

### Overview

**[EvGr]** Emergency contraception is intended for occasional use, to reduce the risk of pregnancy after unprotected sexual intercourse. It does not replace effective regular contraception.

Women who do not wish to conceive should be offered emergency contraception after unprotected sexual intercourse that has taken place on any day of a natural menstrual cycle. Emergency contraception should also be offered after unprotected intercourse from day 21 after childbirth (unless the criteria for lactational amenorrhoea are met), and from day 5 after abortion, miscarriage, ectopic pregnancy or uterine evacuation for gestational trophoblastic disease.

Emergency contraception should also be offered to women if their regular contraception has been compromised or has been used incorrectly. **[A]**

### Emergency contraceptive methods

#### Copper intra-uterine devices

**[EvGr]** Insertion of a copper intra-uterine device (see intra-uterine contraceptive devices (copper) p. 505) is the most effective form of emergency contraception and should be offered (if appropriate) to all women who have had unprotected sexual intercourse and do not want to conceive. A copper intra-uterine contraceptive device can be inserted up to 120 hours (5 days) after unprotected intercourse or up to 5 days after the earliest likely calculated ovulation (i.e. within the minimum period before implantation), regardless of the number of episodes of unprotected intercourse earlier in the cycle. Antibacterial cover should be considered for copper intra-uterine contraceptive device insertion if there is a significant risk of sexually transmitted infection that could be associated with ascending pelvic infection.

A copper intra-uterine device is not known to be affected by body mass index (BMI) or body-weight or by other drugs. **[A]**

#### Hormonal methods

**[EvGr]** Hormonal emergency contraceptives (includes levonorgestrel p. 508 and ulipristal acetate p. 507) should be offered as soon as possible after unprotected intercourse if a copper intra-uterine device is not appropriate or is not acceptable to the patient; either drug should be taken as soon as possible after unprotected intercourse to increase efficacy. Hormonal emergency contraception administered after ovulation is ineffective.

Levonorgestrel is effective if taken within 72 hours (3 days) of unprotected intercourse and may also be used between 72 and 96 hours after unprotected intercourse [unlicensed use], but efficacy decreases with time. Ulipristal acetate is effective if taken within 120 hours (5 days) of unprotected intercourse. Ulipristal acetate has been demonstrated to be more effective than levonorgestrel for emergency contraception.

It is possible that a higher body-weight or BMI could reduce the effectiveness of oral emergency contraception, particularly levonorgestrel; if BMI is greater than 26 kg/m<sup>2</sup> or body-weight is greater than 70 kg, it is recommended that either ulipristal acetate or a double dose of levonorgestrel [unlicensed indication] (see *Emergency contraception* under levonorgestrel) is given. It is unknown which is more effective.

Ulipristal acetate should be considered as the first-line hormonal emergency contraceptive for a woman who has



had unprotected intercourse 96–120 hours ago (even if she has also had unprotected intercourse within the last 96 hours). It should also be considered first line for a woman who has had unprotected sexual intercourse within the last 5 days if it is likely to have taken place during the 5 days before the estimated day of ovulation.  $\blacktriangle$

#### Hormonal emergency contraception interactions

See Contraceptives, interactions below.

#### Starting hormonal contraception after emergency hormonal contraception

Emergency hormonal contraception methods do **not** provide ongoing contraception.  $\text{EvGr}$  After taking levonorgestrel, women should start suitable hormonal contraception immediately. They must use condoms reliably or abstain from intercourse until contraception becomes effective.

Women should wait 5 days after taking ulipristal acetate before starting suitable hormonal contraception. Women must use condoms reliably or abstain from intercourse during the 5 day waiting period and also until their contraceptive method is effective.  $\blacktriangle$

The copper intra-uterine device immediately provides effective ongoing contraception.

#### Useful Resources

Emergency Contraception. The Faculty of Sexual and Reproductive Healthcare. Clinical guidance. March 2017. [www.fsrh.org/standards-and-guidance/documents/ceu-clinical-guidance-emergency-contraception-march-2017](http://www.fsrh.org/standards-and-guidance/documents/ceu-clinical-guidance-emergency-contraception-march-2017)

## Contraceptives, interactions

06-Jun-2017

### Overview

The effectiveness of *combined* oral contraceptives, *progestogen-only* oral contraceptives, contraceptive patches, vaginal rings, and emergency hormonal contraception can be considerably reduced by interaction with drugs that induce hepatic enzyme activity (e.g. carbamazepine p. 196, eslicarbazepine acetate, nevirapine p. 414, oxcarbazepine p. 204, phenytoin p. 205, phenobarbital p. 216, primidone p. 217, ritonavir p. 426, St John's Wort, topiramate p. 212 and, above all, rifabutin p. 364 and rifampicin p. 364) and possibly also griseofulvin p. 379.  $\text{EvGr}$  A condom together with a long-acting method (such as an injectable contraceptive) may be more suitable for patients with HIV infection or at risk of HIV infection; advice on the possibility of interaction with antiretroviral drugs should be sought from HIV specialists.  $\blacktriangle$

#### Combined hormonal contraceptives interactions

$\text{EvGr}$  Women using combined hormonal contraceptive patches, vaginal rings or oral tablets who require enzyme-inducing drugs or griseofulvin should be advised to change to a reliable contraceptive method that is unaffected by enzyme-inducers, such as some parenteral progestogen-only contraceptives (medroxyprogesterone acetate p. 512 and norethisterone p. 479) or intra-uterine devices (levonorgestrel p. 508; see also Contraceptives, non-hormonal p. 496). This should be continued for the duration of treatment and for four weeks after stopping. If a change in contraceptive method is undesirable or inappropriate the following options should be discussed:  $\blacktriangle$

#### Short course (2 months or less) of an enzyme-inducing drug

$\text{EvGr}$  Continuing the combined hormonal contraceptive method may be appropriate if used in combination with consistent and careful use of condoms for the duration of treatment and for four weeks after stopping the enzyme-inducing drug.  $\blacktriangle$

#### Long-term course (over 2 months) of an enzyme-inducing drug (except rifampicin or rifabutin) or a course of griseofulvin

$\text{EvGr}$  Use a monophasic combined oral contraceptive at a dose of ethinylestradiol 50 micrograms or more daily [unlicensed use] and use either an extended or a 'tricycling' regimen (i.e. taking three packets of monophasic tablets without a break followed by a shortened tablet-free interval of four days [unlicensed use]); continue for the duration of treatment with the interacting drug and for four weeks after stopping.

If breakthrough bleeding occurs (and all other causes are ruled out) it is recommended that the dose of ethinylestradiol is increased by increments of 10 micrograms up to a maximum of 70 micrograms daily [unlicensed use] on specialist advice, or to use additional precautions, or to change to a method unaffected by the interacting drugs.

Use of contraceptive patches and vaginal rings (including concurrent use of two patches or two vaginal rings) is not recommended for women taking enzyme-inducing drugs over a long period.  $\blacktriangle$

#### Long-term course (over 2 months) of rifampicin or rifabutin

An alternative method of contraception (such as an IUD) is **always** recommended because they are such potent enzyme-inducing drugs; the alternative method of contraception should be continued for four weeks after stopping the enzyme-inducing drug.

#### Antibacterials that do not induce liver enzymes

$\text{EvGr}$  It is recommended that no additional contraceptive precautions are required when *combined* oral contraceptives, contraceptive patches or vaginal rings are used with antibacterials that do not induce liver enzymes, unless diarrhoea or vomiting occur. These recommendations should be discussed with the woman.  $\blacktriangle$

There had been concerns that some antibacterials that do not induce liver enzymes (e.g. ampicillin p. 341, doxycycline p. 352) reduce the efficacy of *combined* oral contraceptives by impairing the bacterial flora responsible for recycling ethinylestradiol from the large bowel. However, there is a lack of evidence to support this interaction.

#### Oral progestogen-only contraceptives interactions

Effectiveness of oral progestogen-only preparations is not affected by antibacterials that do not induce liver enzymes.

$\text{EvGr}$  The efficacy of oral progestogen-only preparations is, however, reduced by enzyme-inducing drugs or griseofulvin and an alternative contraceptive method, unaffected by the interacting drug, is recommended during treatment with an interacting drug and for at least 4 weeks afterwards.

For a short course of an enzyme-inducing drug (less than two months), continuing the progestogen-only oral method may be appropriate if used in combination with consistent and careful use of condoms for the duration of treatment and for four weeks after stopping the enzyme-inducing drug.  $\blacktriangle$

#### Parenteral progestogen-only contraceptives interactions

Effectiveness of parenteral progestogen-only contraceptives is not affected by antibacterials that do not induce liver enzymes.  $\text{EvGr}$

The effectiveness of intramuscular norethisterone injection and intramuscular and subcutaneous medroxyprogesterone acetate injections is not affected by enzyme-inducing drugs and they may be continued as normal during courses of these drugs.

Effectiveness of the etonogestrel-releasing implant p. 511 may be reduced by enzyme-inducing drugs or griseofulvin and an alternative contraceptive method, unaffected by the interacting drug, is recommended during treatment with the interacting drug and for at least 4 weeks after stopping.

For a short course of an enzyme-inducing drug, if a change in contraceptive method is undesirable or inappropriate, continued contraception with the implant may be appropriate if used in combination with consistent and careful use of condoms for the duration of treatment and for 4 weeks after stopping the enzyme-inducing drug.  $\blacktriangle$

**Hormonal emergency contraception interactions**

The effectiveness of levonorgestrel and ulipristal acetate p. 507 is reduced in women taking enzyme-inducing drugs or griseofulvin (and for at least 4 weeks after stopping). [EvGr] A copper intra-uterine device can be offered instead. If the copper intra-uterine device is declined or unsuitable, the dose of levonorgestrel should be increased (See *Dose adjustments due to interactions* under levonorgestrel). There is no need to increase the dose for emergency contraception if the patient is taking antibacterials that are not enzyme inducers. **A**

The effectiveness of ulipristal acetate for emergency contraception in women using drugs that increase gastric pH has not been studied. [EvGr] Levonorgestrel or a copper intra-uterine device should be considered as alternatives.

Hormonal contraception should not be newly initiated in a patient until five days after administration of ulipristal acetate as emergency hormonal contraception—the contraceptive effect of ulipristal acetate will be reduced. Consistent and careful use of condoms is recommended.

Ulipristal acetate can be used as emergency hormonal contraception more than once in the same cycle. **A** Conversely, manufacturer advises that use of levonorgestrel as emergency contraception more than once in the same cycle is not advisable due to increased risk of side-effects (such as menstrual irregularities).

[EvGr] Levonorgestrel should not be used (as emergency hormonal contraception) within 5 days of administration of ulipristal acetate (as emergency hormonal contraception), as the contraceptive effect of ulipristal acetate may be reduced by progestogens.

Ulipristal acetate is not recommend for use in women who have severe asthma treated by oral corticosteroids, due to the antiglucocorticoid effect of ulipristal acetate. **A**

**Useful Resources**

Drug interactions with hormonal contraception. The Faculty of Sexual and Reproductive Healthcare. Clinical guidance. January 2018.

[www.fsrh.org/standards-and-guidance/current-clinical-guidance/drug-interactions](http://www.fsrh.org/standards-and-guidance/current-clinical-guidance/drug-interactions)

## 3.1 Contraception, combined

### OESTROGENS COMBINED WITH PROGESTOGENS

#### Combined hormonal contraceptives

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 • gallstones • heart disease associated with pulmonary hypertension or risk of embolus • history during pregnancy of cholestatic jaundice • history during pregnancy of chorea • history during pregnancy of pemphigoid gestationis • history during pregnancy of pruritus • history of breast cancer (but can be used after 5 years if no evidence of disease and non-hormonal methods unacceptable) • history of haemolytic uraemic syndrome • migraine with aura • personal history of venous or arterial thrombosis • sclerosing treatment for varicose veins • severe or multiple risk factors for arterial disease • severe or multiple risk factors for venous thromboembolism • systemic lupus erythematosus • transient cerebral ischaemic attacks without headaches • undiagnosed vaginal bleeding

- **CAUTIONS** Active trophoblastic disease (until return to normal of urine- and plasma-gonadotrophin concentration)—seek specialist advice • Crohn's disease • gene mutations associated with breast cancer (e.g. BRCA 1) • history of severe depression, especially if induced by

hormonal contraceptive • hyperprolactinaemia (seek specialist advice) • inflammatory bowel disease • migraine • personal or family history of hypertriglyceridaemia (increased risk of pancreatitis) • risk factors for arterial disease • risk factors for venous thromboembolism • sickle-cell disease • undiagnosed breast mass

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ Risk of venous thromboembolism There is an increased risk of venous thromboembolic disease in users of combined hormonal contraceptives particularly during the first year and possibly after restarting combined hormonal contraceptives following a break of four weeks or more. This risk is considerably smaller than that associated with pregnancy (about 60 cases of venous thromboembolic disease per 100 000 pregnancies). In all cases the risk of venous thromboembolism increases with age and in the presence of other risk factors, such as obesity. The risk also varies depending on the type of progestogen.

Provided that women are informed of the relative risks of venous thromboembolism and accept them, the choice of oral contraceptive is for the woman together with the prescriber jointly to make in light of her individual medical history and any contra-indications.

Combined hormonal contraceptives also slightly increase the risk of arterial thromboembolism; however, there is no evidence to suggest that this risk varies between different preparations.

- ▶ Risk factors for venous thromboembolism Use with **caution** if any of following factors present but **avoid** if two or more factors present:
  - family history of venous thromboembolism in first-degree relative aged under 45 years (avoid contraceptive containing desogestrel or gestodene, or avoid if known prothrombotic coagulation abnormality e.g. factor V Leiden or antiphospholipid antibodies (including lupus anticoagulant));
  - obesity; body mass index  $\geq 30 \text{ kg/m}^2$  (avoid if body mass index  $\geq 35 \text{ kg/m}^2$  unless no suitable alternative); (in adolescents, caution if obese according to BMI (adjusted for age and gender); in those who are markedly obese, avoid unless no suitable alternative);
  - long-term immobilisation e.g. in a wheelchair (avoid if confined to bed or leg in plaster cast);
  - history of superficial thrombophlebitis;
  - age over 35 years (avoid if over 50 years);
  - smoking.

#### Combined Hormonal Contraception and Risk of Venous Thromboembolism

Progestogen in Combined Hormonal Contraceptive	Estimated incidence per 10 000 women per year of use
Non-pregnant, not using combined hormonal contraception	2
Levonorgestrel <sup>1</sup>	5–7
Norgestimate <sup>1</sup>	5–7
Norethisterone <sup>1</sup>	5–7
Etonogestrel <sup>1</sup>	6–12
Norelgestromin <sup>1</sup>	6–12
Gestodene <sup>1</sup>	9–12
Desogestrel <sup>1</sup>	9–12
Drospirenone <sup>1</sup>	9–12
Dienogest <sup>2</sup>	Not known—insufficient data
Nomegestrol <sup>2</sup>	Not known—insufficient data

<sup>1</sup> Combined with ethinylestradiol <sup>2</sup> Combined with estradiol

- **Risk factors for arterial disease** Use with **caution** if any one of following factors present but **avoid** if two or more factors present:
  - *family history of arterial disease* in first degree relative aged under 45 years (avoid if atherogenic lipid profile);
  - *diabetes mellitus* (avoid if diabetes complications present);
  - *hypertension*; blood pressure above *systolic 140 mmHg* or *diastolic 90 mmHg* (avoid if blood pressure above *systolic 160 mmHg* or *diastolic 95 mmHg*); (in adolescents, avoid if blood pressure very high);
  - *smoking* (avoid if smoking 40 or more cigarettes daily);
  - *age* over 35 years (avoid if over 50 years);
  - *obesity* (avoid if body mass index  $\geq 35 \text{ kg/m}^2$  unless no suitable alternative); (in adolescents, caution if obese according to BMI (adjusted for age and gender); in those who are markedly obese, avoid unless no suitable alternative);
  - *migraine without aura* (avoid if *migraine with aura* (focal symptoms), or severe migraine frequently lasting over 72 hours despite treatment, or migraine treated with ergot derivatives).
- **Migraine** Women should report any increase in headache frequency or onset of focal symptoms (discontinue immediately and refer urgently to neurology expert if focal neurological symptoms not typical of aura persist for more than 1 hour).

Combined hormonal contraceptives should be stopped (pending investigation and treatment), if serious neurological effects occur, including unusual severe, prolonged headache especially if first time or getting progressively worse or sudden partial or complete loss of vision or sudden disturbance of hearing or other perceptual disorders or dysphasia or bad fainting attack or collapse or first unexplained epileptic seizure or weakness, motor disturbances, very marked numbness suddenly affecting one side or one part of body.

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Acne · fluid retention · headaches · menstrual cycle irregularities · nausea · weight increased
- **Uncommon** Alopecia · hypertension
- **Rare or very rare** Venous thromboembolism

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Breast cancer** There is a small increase in the risk of having breast cancer diagnosed in women taking the combined oral contraceptive pill; this relative risk may be due to an earlier diagnosis. In users of combined oral contraceptive pills the cancers are more likely to be localised to the breast. The most important factor for diagnosing breast cancer appears to be the age at which the contraceptive is stopped rather than the duration of use; any increase in the rate of diagnosis diminishes gradually during the 10 years after stopping and disappears by 10 years.

**Cervical cancer** Use of combined oral contraceptives for 5 years or longer is associated with a small increased risk of cervical cancer; the risk diminishes after stopping and disappears by about 10 years. The possible small increase in the risk of breast cancer and cervical cancer should be weighed against the protective effect against cancers of the ovary and endometrium.

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid until weaning or for 6 months after birth (adverse effects on lactation).
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in active liver disease including disorders of hepatic excretion (e.g. Dubin-Johnson or Rotor syndromes), infective hepatitis (until liver function returns to normal), liver tumours.

#### • DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- **With oral use** Each tablet should be taken at approximately same time each day; if delayed, contraceptive protection

may be lost. *21-day combined preparations*, 1 tablet daily for 21 days; subsequent courses repeated after a 7-day interval (during which withdrawal bleeding occurs); if reasonably certain woman is not pregnant, first course can be started on any day of cycle—if starting on day 6 of cycle or later, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days. *Every day (ED) combined preparations*, 1 active tablet daily for 21 days, followed by 1 inactive tablet daily for 7 days; subsequent courses repeated without interval (withdrawal bleeding occurs when inactive tablets being taken); if reasonably certain woman is not pregnant, first course can be started on any day of cycle—if starting on day 6 of cycle or later, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days.

**Changing to combined preparation containing different progestogen** If previous contraceptive used correctly, or pregnancy can reasonably be excluded, start the first active tablet of new brand immediately. See individual monographs for requirements of specific preparations.

**Changing from progestogen-only tablet** If previous contraceptive used correctly, or pregnancy can reasonably be excluded, start new brand immediately, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary for first 7 days.

**Secondary amenorrhoea (exclude pregnancy)** Start any day, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days (9 days for *Qlaira*®).

**After childbirth (not breast-feeding)** Start 3 weeks after birth (increased risk of thrombosis if started earlier); later than 3 weeks postpartum additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary for first 7 days (9 days for *Qlaira*®). **After abortion or miscarriage** Start same day.

#### • PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Travel** Women taking oral contraceptives are at an increased risk of deep vein thrombosis during travel involving long periods of immobility (over 3 hours). The risk may be reduced by appropriate exercise during the journey and possibly by wearing graduated compression hosiery.

**Diarrhoea and vomiting** Vomiting and persistent, severe diarrhoea can interfere with the absorption of combined oral contraceptives. If vomiting occurs within 2 hours of taking a combined oral contraceptive another pill should be taken as soon as possible. In cases of persistent vomiting or severe diarrhoea lasting more than 24 hours, additional precautions should be used during and for 7 days after recovery. If the vomiting and diarrhoea occurs during the last 7 tablets, the next pill-free interval should be omitted (in the case of ED tablets the inactive ones should be omitted).

**Missed doses** The critical time for loss of contraceptive protection is when a pill is omitted at the *beginning* or *end* of a cycle (which lengthens the pill-free interval).

If a woman forgets to take a pill, it should be taken as soon as she remembers, and the next one taken at the normal time (even if this means taking 2 pills together). A missed pill is one that is 24 or more hours late. If a woman misses only one pill, she should take an active pill as soon as she remembers and then resume normal pill-taking. No additional precautions are necessary.

If a woman misses 2 or more pills (especially from the first 7 in a packet), she may not be protected. She should take an active pill as soon as she remembers and then resume normal pill-taking. In addition, she must either abstain from sex or use an additional method of contraception such as a condom for the next 7 days. If these 7 days run beyond the end of the packet, the next packet should be started at once, omitting the pill-free interval (or, in the case of *everyday* (ED) pills, omitting the 7 inactive tablets).

Emergency contraception is recommended if 2 or more combined oral contraceptive tablets are missed from the

first 7 tablets in a packet and unprotected intercourse has occurred since finishing the last packet.

F 498

## Dienogest with estradiol valerate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Contraception with 28-day combined preparations | Menstrual symptoms with 28-day combined preparations**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Females of childbearing potential: 1 active tablet once daily for 26 days, followed by 1 inactive tablet daily for 2 days, withdrawal bleeding may occur during the 2-day interval of *inactive* tablets, tablets should be taken at approximately the same time each day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Consult product literature for the licensing status.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: combined hormonal contraceptives
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Breast abnormalities · gastrointestinal discomfort · headaches · increased risk of infection
  - **Uncommon** Appetite increased · cervical abnormalities · crying · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · fatigue · haemorrhage · hot flush · hyperhidrosis · mood altered · muscle spasms · neoplasms · oedema · ovarian and fallopian tube disorders · painful sexual intercourse · pelvic disorders · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · sleep disorders · uterine cramps · vomiting · vulvovaginal disorders · weight decreased
  - **Rare or very rare** Aggression · anxiety · arterial thromboembolism · asthma · chest pain · cholecystitis chronic · concentration impaired · constipation · contact lens intolerance · dry eye · dry mouth · dyspnoea · eye swelling · fever · galactorrhoea · gastroesophageal reflux disease · genital discharge · hair changes · hypertriglyceridaemia · hypotension · lymphadenopathy · malaise · myocardial infarction · pain · palpitations · paraesthesia · seborrhoea · sensation of pressure · urinary tract pain · vascular disorders · vertigo
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**  
Changing to *Qlaira*® Start the first active *Qlaira*® tablet on the day after taking the last active tablet of the previous brand.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Diarrhoea and vomiting In cases of persistent vomiting or severe diarrhoea lasting more than 12 hours in women taking *Qlaira*®, refer to product literature.  
**Missed doses** A missed pill for a patient taking *Qlaira*® is one that is 12 hours or more late; for information on how to manage missed pills in women taking *Qlaira*®, refer to product literature.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Form unstated

- *Qlaira* (Bayer Plc)

*Qlaira* tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £25.18

#### Tablet

- **Dienogest with estradiol valerate (Non-proprietary)**

**Dienogest 2 mg, Estradiol valerate 2 mg** Estradiol valerate 2mg / Dienogest 2mg tablets | 15 tablet [PoM] £

**Estradiol valerate 2 mg, Dienogest 3 mg** Estradiol valerate 2mg / Dienogest 3mg tablets | 51 tablet [PoM] £

F 498

## Estradiol with norgestrel

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Contraception

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Females of childbearing potential: 1 active tablet daily for 24 days, followed by 1 inactive tablet daily for 4 days, to be started on day 1 of cycle with first active tablet (withdrawal bleeding occurs when inactive tablets being taken); subsequent courses repeated without interval

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: combined hormonal contraceptives
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Breast abnormalities · depression · mood altered · pelvic pain · sexual dysfunction
  - **Uncommon** Abdominal distension · appetite abnormal · galactorrhoea · hot flush · hyperhidrosis · oedema · painful sexual intercourse · seborrhoea · sensation of pressure · skin reactions · uterine cramps · vulvovaginal disorders
  - **Rare or very rare** Cerebrovascular insufficiency · concentration impaired · contact lens intolerance · dry eye · dry mouth · gallbladder disorders · hypertrichosis
- **PREGNANCY** Toxicity in animal studies.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** *Zoely*® (every day (ED) combined (monophasic) preparation), 1 active tablet daily for 24 days, followed by 1 inactive tablet daily for 4 days, starting on day 1 of cycle with first active tablet; subsequent courses repeated without interval (withdrawal bleeding occurs when inactive tablets being taken).  
Changing to *Zoely*® Start the first active *Zoely*® tablet on the day after taking the last active tablet of the previous brand or, at the latest, the day after the tablet-free or inactive tablet interval of the previous brand.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Diarrhoea and vomiting In cases of persistent vomiting or severe diarrhoea lasting more than 12 hours in women taking *Zoely*®, refer to product literature.  
**Missed doses** A missed pill for a patient taking *Zoely*® is one that is 12 hours or more late; for information on how to manage missed pills in women taking *Zoely*®, refer to product literature.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

- *Zoely* (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd) ▼

**Estradiol (as Estradiol hemihydrate) 1.5 mg, Norgestrel acetate 2.5 mg** *Zoely* 2.5mg/1.5mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £19.80 DT = £19.80

F 498

## Ethinylestradiol with desogestrel

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Contraception with 21-day combined preparations | Menstrual symptoms with 21-day combined preparations**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Females of childbearing potential: 1 tablet once daily for 21 days; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day interval, withdrawal bleeding occurs during the 7-day interval, if reasonably certain woman is not pregnant, first course can be started on any day of cycle—if starting on day 6 of cycle or later, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days, tablets should be taken at approximately the same time each day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Consult product literature for the licensing status.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: combined hormonal contraceptives

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

##### ▶ Ethinylestradiol with desogestrel (Non-proprietary)

**Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Desogestrel 150 microgram** Ethinylestradiol 20microgram / Desogestrel 150microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] DT = £5.08

**Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Desogestrel 150 microgram** Ethinylestradiol 30microgram / Desogestrel 150microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] DT = £4.19

##### ▶ Alenvona (Teva UK Ltd)

**Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Desogestrel 150 microgram** Alenvona 150microgram/30microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £6.13 DT = £4.19

##### ▶ Bimizza (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)

**Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Desogestrel 150 microgram** Bimizza 150microgram/20microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £5.04 DT = £5.08

##### ▶ Cimizt (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)

**Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Desogestrel 150 microgram** Cimizt 30microgram/150microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £3.80 DT = £4.19

##### ▶ Gedarel (Consilient Health Ltd)

**Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Desogestrel 150 microgram** Gedarel 20microgram/150microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £5.08 DT = £5.08

**Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Desogestrel 150 microgram** Gedarel 30microgram/150microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £4.19 DT = £4.19

##### ▶ Marvelon (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Desogestrel 150 microgram** Marvelon tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £7.10 DT = £4.19

##### ▶ Mercilon (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Desogestrel 150 microgram** Mercilon 150microgram/20microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £8.44 DT = £5.08

##### ▶ Munalea (Lupin Healthcare (UK) Ltd)

**Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Desogestrel 150 microgram** Munalea 150microgram/20microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £5.07 DT = £5.08

**Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Desogestrel 150 microgram** Munalea 150microgram/30microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £4.18 DT = £4.19

498

## Ethinylestradiol with drospirenone

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Contraception with 21-day combined preparations | Menstrual symptoms with 21-day combined preparations**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Females of childbearing potential: 1 tablet once daily for 21 days; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day interval, withdrawal bleeding occurs during the 7-day interval

- **UNLICENSED USE** Consult product literature for the licensing status.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: combined hormonal contraceptives

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Breast abnormalities · depressed mood · increased risk of infection · vaginal discharge
- ▶ **Uncommon** Diarrhoea · hypotension · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · vomiting · weight decreased
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Arterial thromboembolism · asthma · erythema nodosum · hearing impairment

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Pill-free interval Withdrawal bleeding can occur during the 7-day tablet-free interval.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

##### ▶ Ethinylestradiol with drospirenone (Non-proprietary)

**Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Drospirenone 3 mg** Ethinylestradiol 30microgram / Drospirenone 3mg tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] DT = £14.70

##### ▶ Daylette (Consilient Health Ltd)

**Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Drospirenone 3 mg** Daylette 0.02mg/3mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £10.50 DT = £14.70

##### ▶ Dretine (Teva UK Ltd)

**Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Drospirenone 3 mg** Dretine 0.03mg/3mg tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £8.30 DT = £14.70

##### ▶ ELOINE (Bayer Plc)

**Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Drospirenone 3 mg** Eloine 0.02mg/3mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £14.70 DT = £14.70

##### ▶ Lucette (Consilient Health Ltd)

**Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Drospirenone 3 mg** Lucette 0.03mg/3mg tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £9.35 DT = £14.70

##### ▶ Yacella (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)

**Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Drospirenone 3 mg** Yacella 0.03mg/3mg tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £8.30 DT = £14.70

##### ▶ Yasmin (Bayer Plc)

**Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Drospirenone 3 mg** Yasmin tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £14.70 DT = £14.70

##### ▶ Yiznell (Lupin Healthcare (UK) Ltd)

**Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Drospirenone 3 mg** Yiznell 0.03mg/3mg tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £8.30 DT = £14.70

498

## Ethinylestradiol with etonogestrel

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Contraception | Menstrual symptoms**

##### ▶ BY VAGINA

- ▶ Females of childbearing potential: 1 unit, insert the ring into the vagina on day 1 of cycle and leave in for 3 weeks; remove ring on day 22; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day ring free interval (during which withdrawal bleeding occurs)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: combined hormonal contraceptives

#### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

Changing method of contraception to vaginal ring Changing from combined hormonal contraception Insert ring at the latest on the day after the usual tablet-free, patch-free, or inactive-tablet interval. If previous contraceptive used correctly, or pregnancy can reasonably be excluded, can switch to ring on any day of cycle.

Changing from progestogen-only method From an implant or intra-uterine progestogen-only device, insert ring on the day implant or intra-uterine progestogen-only device removed; from an injection, insert ring when next injection due; from oral preparation, first ring may be inserted on any day after stopping pill. For all methods additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used concurrently for first 7 days.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer vaginal ring. Counselling The presence of the ring should be checked regularly.

**Missed doses** Expulsion, delayed insertion or removal, or broken vaginal ring If the vaginal ring is expelled for less than 3 hours, rinse the ring with cool water and reinsert immediately; no additional contraception is needed.

If the ring remains outside the vagina for more than 3 hours or if the user does not know when the ring was expelled, contraceptive protection may be reduced:



- If ring expelled during week 1 or 2 of cycle, rinse ring with cool water and reinsert; use additional precautions (barrier methods) for next 7 days;
- If ring expelled during week 3 of cycle, either insert a new ring to start a new cycle *or* allow a withdrawal bleed and insert a new ring no later than 7 days after ring was expelled; latter option only available if ring was used continuously for at least 7 days before expulsion.

If insertion of a new ring at the start of a new cycle is delayed, contraceptive protection is lost. A new ring should be inserted as soon as possible; additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used for the first 7 days of the new cycle. If intercourse occurred during the extended ring-free interval, pregnancy should be considered.

No additional contraception is required if removal of the ring is delayed by up to 1 week (4 weeks of continuous use). The 7-day ring-free interval should be observed and subsequently a new ring should be inserted. Contraceptive protection may be reduced with continuous use of the ring for more than 4 weeks—pregnancy should be ruled out before inserting a new ring.


If the ring breaks during use, remove it and insert a new ring immediately; additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used for the first 7 days of the new cycle.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Vaginal delivery system

##### ▶ Ethinylestradiol with etonogestrel (Non-proprietary)

Ethinylestradiol 2.7 mg, Etonogestrel 11.7 mg Ethinylestradiol 2.7mg / Etonogestrel 11.7mg vaginal delivery system | 3 system [PoM]  DT = £29.70

##### ▶ NuvaRing (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

Ethinylestradiol 2.7 mg, Etonogestrel 11.7 mg NuvaRing 0.12mg/0.015mg per day vaginal delivery system | 3 system [PoM] £29.70 DT = £29.70

F 498

## Ethinylestradiol with gestodene

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Contraception with 21-day combined preparations |

##### Menstrual symptoms with 21-day combined preparations

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Females of childbearing potential: 1 tablet once daily for 21 days; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day interval, withdrawal bleeding occurs during the 7-day interval, if reasonably certain woman is not pregnant, first course can be started on any day of cycle—if starting on day 6 of cycle or later, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days, tablets should be taken at approximately the same time each day

##### Contraception with 28-day combined preparations |

##### Menstrual symptoms with 28-day combined preparations

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Females of childbearing potential: 1 active tablet once daily for 21 days, followed by 1 inactive tablet daily for 7 days; subsequent courses repeated without interval, withdrawal bleeding occurs during the 7-day interval of inactive tablets being taken, if reasonably certain woman is not pregnant, first course can be started on any day of cycle—if starting on day 6 of cycle or later, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days, tablets should be taken at approximately the same time each day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Consult product literature for the licensing status.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: combined hormonal contraceptives

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS


- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · breast abnormalities · depression · dizziness · increased risk of infection · mood swings · nervousness · vaginal discolouration
- ▶ **Uncommon** Appetite abnormal · diarrhoea · hirsutism · hypertriglyceridaemia · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · vomiting
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · chorea exacerbated · ear disorders · embolism and thrombosis · erythema nodosum · eye irritation · gallbladder disorders · gastrointestinal disorders · haemolytic uraemic syndrome · hepatic disorders · hypersensitivity · inflammatory bowel disease · neoplasms · optic neuritis · pancreatitis · systemic lupus erythematosus exacerbated · varicose veins exacerbated · weight decreased


#### • MEDICINAL FORMS


There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.


#### Tablet


##### ▶ Ethinylestradiol with gestodene (Non-proprietary)

Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Gestodene 50 microgram Ethinylestradiol 30microgram / Gestodene 50microgram tablets | 18 tablet [PoM] 

Ethinylestradiol 40 microgram, Gestodene 70 microgram Ethinylestradiol 40microgram / Gestodene 70microgram tablets | 15 tablet [PoM] 

Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Gestodene 75 microgram Ethinylestradiol 20microgram / Gestodene 75microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM]  DT = £8.85

Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Gestodene 75 microgram Ethinylestradiol 30microgram / Gestodene 75microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM]  DT = £6.73

Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Gestodene 100 microgram Ethinylestradiol 30microgram / Gestodene 100microgram tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] 

##### ▶ Aidulan (Lupin Healthcare (UK) Ltd)

Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Gestodene 75 microgram Aidulan 30microgram/75microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £4.11 DT = £6.73

Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Gestodene 75 microgram Aidulan 20microgram/75microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £5.40 DT = £8.85

##### ▶ Femodene (Bayer Plc)

Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Gestodene 75 microgram Femodene tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £6.73 DT = £6.73

##### ▶ Femodette (Bayer Plc)

Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Gestodene 75 microgram Femodette tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £8.85 DT = £8.85

##### ▶ Juliperla (Actavis UK Ltd)

Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Gestodene 75 microgram Juliperla 75microgram/20microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £5.41 DT = £8.85

##### ▶ Katya (Stragen UK Ltd)

Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Gestodene 75 microgram Katya 30/75 tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £5.03 DT = £6.73

##### ▶ Millinette (Consilient Health Ltd)

Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Gestodene 75 microgram Millinette 30microgram/75microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £4.12 DT = £6.73

Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Gestodene 75 microgram

Millinette 20microgram/75microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £5.41 DT = £8.85

##### ▶ Sofiperla (Actavis UK Ltd)

Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Gestodene 75 microgram Sofiperla 75microgram/30microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £4.12 DT = £6.73

##### ▶ Sunya (Stragen UK Ltd)

Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Gestodene 75 microgram Sunya 20/75 tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £4.86 DT = £8.85

F 498

## Ethinylestradiol with levonorgestrel

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Contraception with 21-day combined preparations | Menstrual symptoms with 21-day combined preparations

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Females of childbearing potential: 1 tablet once daily for 21 days; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day interval, withdrawal bleeding occurs during the 7-day interval, if reasonably certain woman is not pregnant, first course can be started on any day of cycle—if starting on day 6 of cycle or later, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days, tablets should be taken at approximately the same time each day

#### Contraception with 28-day combined preparations | Menstrual symptoms with 28-day combined preparations

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Females of childbearing potential: 1 active tablet once daily for 21 days, followed by 1 inactive tablet once daily for 7 days, withdrawal bleeding occurs during the 7-day interval of *inactive* tablets being taken, if reasonably certain woman is not pregnant, first course can be started on any day of cycle—if starting on day 6 of cycle or later, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days, tablets should be taken at approximately the same time each day. Subsequent courses repeated without interval

- **UNLICENSED USE** Consult product literature for the licensing status of individual preparations.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: combined hormonal contraceptives

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

- **Ethinylestradiol with levonorgestrel (Non-proprietary)**  
Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Levonorgestrel 50 microgram Ethinylestradiol 30microgram / Levonorgestrel 50microgram tablets | 6 tablet [PoM]   
Ethinylestradiol 40 microgram, Levonorgestrel 75 microgram Ethinylestradiol 40microgram / Levonorgestrel 75microgram tablets | 5 tablet [PoM]   
Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Levonorgestrel 125 microgram Ethinylestradiol 30microgram / Levonorgestrel 125microgram tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] 
- **Elevin** (MedRx Licences Ltd)  
Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Levonorgestrel 150 microgram Elevin 150microgram/30microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £29.25 DT = £2.82
- **Erlibelle** (Actavis UK Ltd)  
Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Levonorgestrel 150 microgram Erlibelle 30microgram/150microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £2.82 DT = £2.82
- **Leandra** (Genesis Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Levonorgestrel 150 microgram Leandra 30microgram/150microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £2.82 DT = £2.82
- **Levest** (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)  
Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Levonorgestrel 150 microgram Levest 150/30 tablets | 21 tablet [PoM] £0.85 (Hospital only) | 63 tablet [PoM] £1.80 DT = £2.82
- **Maexeni** (Lupin Healthcare (UK) Ltd)  
Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Levonorgestrel 150 microgram Maexeni 150microgram/30microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £1.88 DT = £2.82
- **Microgynon 30** (Bayer Plc)  
Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Levonorgestrel 150 microgram Microgynon 30 tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £2.82 DT = £2.82

- **Ovranelle** (Pfizer Ltd)  
Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Levonorgestrel 150 microgram Ovranelle 150microgram/30microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £2.20 DT = £2.82
- **Rigeidon** (Consilient Health Ltd)  
Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Levonorgestrel 150 microgram Rigeidon tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £1.89 DT = £2.82

F 498

## Ethinylestradiol with norelgestromin

7

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Contraception | Menstrual symptoms

##### ► BY TRANSDERMAL APPLICATION

- Females of childbearing potential: Apply 1 patch once weekly for 3 weeks, apply first patch on day 1 of cycle, change patch on days 8 and 15; remove third patch on day 22 and apply new patch after 7-day patch-free interval to start subsequent contraceptive cycle, subsequent courses repeated after a 7-day patch free interval (during which withdrawal bleeding occurs)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Consult product literature for the licensing status of individual preparations.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: combined hormonal contraceptives

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anxiety · breast abnormalities · diarrhoea · dizziness · fatigue · gastrointestinal discomfort · increased risk of infection · malaise · mood altered · muscle spasms · skin reactions · uterine cramps · vaginal haemorrhage · vomiting · vulvovaginal disorders
- **Uncommon** Appetite increased · dyslipidaemia · insomnia · lactation disorders · oedema · photosensitivity reaction · sexual dysfunction
- **Rare or very rare** Embolism and thrombosis · gallbladder disorders · genital discharge · neoplasms · stroke · swelling
- **Frequency not known** Anger · angioedema · cervical dysplasia · colitis · contact lens intolerance · erythema nodosum · hepatic disorders · hyperglycaemia · hypertensive crisis · intracranial haemorrhage · myocardial infarction · pulmonary artery thrombosis · taste altered

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Adhesives or bandages should not be used to hold patch in place. If no longer sticky do not reapply but use a new patch.

Changing to a transdermal combined hormonal contraceptive

**Changing from combined oral contraception** Apply patch on the first day of withdrawal bleeding; if no withdrawal bleeding within 5 days of taking last *active* tablet, rule out pregnancy before applying first patch. Unless patch is applied on first day of withdrawal bleeding, additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used concurrently for first 7 days.

#### Changing from progestogen-only method

- from an implant, apply first patch on the day implant removed
- from an injection, apply first patch when next injection due
- from oral progestogen, first patch may be applied on any day after stopping pill

For all methods additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used concurrently for first 7 days.

**After childbirth (not breast-feeding)** Start 4 weeks after birth; if started later than 4 weeks after birth additional precautions (barrier methods) should be used for first 7 days.

**After abortion or miscarriage** Before 20 weeks' gestation start immediately; no additional contraception required if started immediately. After 20 weeks' gestation start on day 21 after abortion or on the first day of first spontaneous menstruation; additional precautions (barrier

methods) should be used for first 7 days after applying the patch.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and carers should be given advice on how to administer patches.

**Travel** Women using patches are at an increased risk of deep vein thrombosis during travel involving long periods of immobility (over 3 hours). The risk may be reduced by appropriate exercise during the journey and possibly by wearing graduated compression hosiery.

**Missed doses** **Delayed application or detached patch** If a patch is partly detached for less than 24 hours, reapply to the same site or replace with a new patch immediately; no additional contraception is needed and the next patch should be applied on the usual 'change day'. If a patch remains detached for more than 24 hours or if the user is not aware when the patch became detached, then stop the current contraceptive cycle and start a new cycle by applying a new patch, giving a new 'Day 1'; an additional non-hormonal contraceptive must be used concurrently for the first 7 days of the new cycle.

If application of a new patch at the start of a new cycle is delayed, contraceptive protection is lost. A new patch should be applied as soon as remembered giving a new 'Day 1'; additional non-hormonal methods of contraception should be used for the first 7 days of the new cycle. If application of a patch in the middle of the cycle is delayed (i.e. the patch is not changed on day 8 or day 15):

- for up to 48 hours, apply a new patch immediately; next patch 'change day' remains the same and no additional contraception is required;
- for more than 48 hours, contraceptive protection may have been lost. Stop the current cycle and start a new 4-week cycle immediately by applying a new patch giving a new 'Day 1'; additional non-hormonal contraception should be used for the first 7 days of the new cycle.

If the patch is not removed at the end of the cycle (day 22), remove it as soon as possible and start the next cycle on the usual 'change day', the day after day 28; no additional contraception is required.

- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (September 2003) that *Evra*® patches should be restricted for use in women who are likely to comply poorly with combined oral contraceptives.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Transdermal patch

- ▶ **Evra** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

Ethinylestradiol 33.9 microgram per 24 hour, Norelgestromin 203 microgram per 24 hour Evra transdermal patches | 9 patch [PoM] £19.51 DT = £19.51

## Ethinylestradiol with norethisterone

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Contraception with 21-day combined preparations | Menstrual symptoms with 21-day combined preparations**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ **Females of childbearing potential:** 1 tablet once daily for 21 days; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day interval, withdrawal bleeding occurs during the 7-day interval, if reasonably certain woman is not pregnant, first course can be started on any day of cycle—if starting on day 6 of cycle or later, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days, tablets should be taken at approximately the same time each day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Consult product literature for the licensing status.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: combined hormonal contraceptives

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

- ▶ **Ethinylestradiol with norethisterone (Non-proprietary)**

**Ethinylestradiol 35 microgram, Norethisterone 500 microgram** Ethinylestradiol 35microgram / Norethisterone 500microgram tablets | 5 tablet [PoM] £

- ▶ **Ethinylestradiol 35 microgram, Norethisterone**

**750 microgram** Ethinylestradiol 35microgram / Norethisterone 750microgram tablets | 21 tablet [PoM] £

- ▶ **Ethinylestradiol 35 microgram, Norethisterone**

**1 mg** Ethinylestradiol 35microgram / Norethisterone 1mg tablets | 9 tablet [PoM] £

- ▶ **Brevinor** (Pfizer Ltd)

- ▶ **Ethinylestradiol 35 microgram, Norethisterone**

**500 microgram** Brevinor 500microgram/35microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £1.99 DT = £1.99

- ▶ **Loestrin 20** (Galen Ltd)

- ▶ **Ethinylestradiol 20 microgram, Norethisterone acetate**

**1 mg** Loestrin 20 tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £2.70 DT = £2.70

- ▶ **Loestrin 30** (Galen Ltd)

- ▶ **Ethinylestradiol 30 microgram, Norethisterone acetate**

**1.5 mg** Loestrin 30 tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £3.90 DT = £3.90

- ▶ **Norimin** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Ethinylestradiol 35 microgram, Norethisterone 1 mg** Norimin 1mg/35microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £2.28 DT = £2.28

F 498

## Ethinylestradiol with norgestimate

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Contraception with 21-day combined preparations | Menstrual symptoms with 21-day combined preparations**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ **Females of childbearing potential:** 1 tablet once daily for 21 days; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day interval, withdrawal bleeding occurs during the 7-day interval, if reasonably certain woman is not pregnant, first course can be started on any day of cycle—if starting on day 6 of cycle or later, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days, tablets should be taken at approximately the same time each day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Consult product literature for the licensing status.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: combined hormonal contraceptives

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anxiety · asthenic conditions · breast abnormalities · chest pain · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · genital discharge · hypersensitivity · increased risk of infection · insomnia · mood altered · muscle complaints · oedema · pain · skin reactions · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Appetite abnormal · cervical dysplasia · dry eye · dyspnoea · embolism and thrombosis · hirsutism · hot flush · libido disorder · ovarian cyst · palpitations · paraesthesia · syncope · visual impairment · vulvovaginal disorders · weight changes
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Hepatic disorders · pancreatitis · photosensitivity reaction · sweat changes · tachycardia · vertigo
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · contact lens intolerance · dyslipidaemia · erythema nodosum · neoplasms · seizure · suppressed lactation

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

- ▶ **Ethinylestradiol with norgestimate (Non-proprietary)**  
Ethinylestradiol 35 microgram, Norgestimate 250 microgram Ethinylestradiol 35microgram / Norgestimate 250microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £7.16 DT = £7.16
- ▶ **Cilest** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)  
Ethinylestradiol 35 microgram, Norgestimate 250 microgram Cilest 35microgram/250microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £7.16 DT = £7.16 | 126 tablet [PoM] £14.32
- ▶ **Cilique** (Consilient Health Ltd)  
Ethinylestradiol 35 microgram, Norgestimate 250 microgram Cilique 250microgram/35microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £4.65 DT = £7.16
- ▶ **Lizinna** (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)  
Ethinylestradiol 35 microgram, Norgestimate 250 microgram Lizinna 250microgram/35microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £5.37 DT = £7.16

F 498

## Norethisterone with mestranol

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Contraception | Menstrual symptoms

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Females of childbearing potential: 1 tablet once daily for 21 days; subsequent courses repeated after 7-day interval, withdrawal bleeding can occur during the 7-day interval, if reasonably certain woman is not pregnant, first course can be started on any day of cycle—if starting on day 6 of cycle or later, additional precautions (barrier methods) necessary during first 7 days, tablets should be taken at the same time each day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Consult product literature for the licensing status of individual preparations.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: combined hormonal contraceptives

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Appetite change · breast tenderness · depression · gastrointestinal disorder · libido disorder · metabolic disorders · uterine leiomyoma exacerbated

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

- ▶ **Norinyl-1** (Pfizer Ltd)  
Mestranol 50 microgram, Norethisterone 1 mg Norinyl-1 tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £2.19 DT = £2.19

## 3.2 Contraception, devices

### Other drugs used for Contraception, devices

Levonorgestrel, p. 508

## CONTRACEPTIVE DEVICES

### Intra-uterine contraceptive devices (copper)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Contraception

- ▶ BY INTRA-UTERINE ADMINISTRATION
- ▶ Females of childbearing potential: (consult product literature)

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE (JUNE 2015) INTRA-UTERINE CONTRACEPTION: UTERINE PERFORATION—UPDATED INFORMATION ON RISK FACTORS

Uterine perforation most often occurs during insertion, but might not be detected until sometime later. The risk of uterine perforation is increased when the device is inserted up to 36 weeks postpartum or in patients who are breastfeeding. Before inserting an intra-uterine contraceptive device, inform patients that perforation occurs in approximately 1 in every 1000 insertions and signs and symptoms include:

- severe pelvic pain after insertion (worse than period cramps);
- pain or increased bleeding after insertion which continues for more than a few weeks;
- sudden changes in periods;
- pain during intercourse;
- unable to feel the threads.

Patients should be informed on how to check their threads and to arrange a check-up if threads cannot be felt, especially if they also have significant pain. Partial perforation may occur even if the threads can be seen; consider this if there is severe pain following insertion and perform an ultrasound.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active trophoblastic disease (until return to normal of urine and plasma-gonadotrophin concentration) · distorted uterine cavity · established or marked immunosuppression · genital malignancy · medical diathermy · pelvic inflammatory disease · recent sexually transmitted infection (if not fully investigated and treated) · severe anaemia · small uterine cavity · unexplained uterine bleeding · Wilson's disease

- **CAUTIONS** Anaemia · anticoagulant therapy (avoid if possible) · diabetes · disease-induced immunosuppression (risk of infection—avoid if marked immunosuppression) · drug-induced immunosuppression (risk of infection—avoid if marked immunosuppression) · endometriosis · epilepsy (risk of seizure at time of insertion) · fertility problems · history of pelvic inflammatory disease · increased risk of expulsion if inserted before uterine involution · menorrhagia (progestogen intra-uterine system might be preferable) · nulliparity · severe cervical stenosis · severe primary dysmenorrhoea · severely scarred uterus (including after endometrial resection) · young age

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ **Risk of infection** The main excess risk of infection occurs in the first 20 days after insertion and is believed to be related to existing carriage of a sexually transmitted infection. Women are considered to be at a higher risk of sexually transmitted infections if:
  - they are under 25 years old or
  - they are over 25 years old and
    - have a new partner or
    - have had more than one partner in the past year or
    - their regular partner has other partners.

In these women, pre-insertion screening (for chlamydia and, depending on sexual history and local prevalence of disease, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*) should be performed. If

results are unavailable at the time of fitting an intra-uterine device for emergency contraception, appropriate prophylactic antibacterial cover should be given. The woman should be advised to attend as an emergency if she experiences sustained pain during the next 20 days.

An intra-uterine device should not be removed in mid-cycle unless an additional contraceptive was used for the previous 7 days. If removal is essential post-coital contraception should be considered.

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Device complications · epilepsy (on insertion) · haemorrhage (on insertion) · hypersensitivity · menstrual cycle irregularities · pain (on insertion—alleviated by NSAID such as ibuprofen 30 minutes before insertion) · pelvic infection exacerbated · presyncope (on insertion) · uterine injuries

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Advise the patient to seek medical attention promptly in case of significant symptoms—very small risk of uterine perforation, ectopic pregnancy and pelvic inflammatory disease.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if patient has a copper allergy.
- **PREGNANCY** If an intra-uterine device fails and the woman wishes to continue to full-term the device should be removed in the first trimester if possible. Remove device; if pregnancy occurs, increased likelihood that it may be ectopic.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Not known to be harmful.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Gynaecological examination before insertion, 6–8 weeks after insertion, then annually.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** The timing and technique of fitting an intra-uterine device are critical for its subsequent performance. *The healthcare professional inserting (or removing) the device should be fully trained in the technique and should provide full counselling backed, where available, by the patient information leaflet.* Devices should not be fitted during the heavy days of the period; they are best fitted after the end of menstruation and before the calculated time of implantation.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

**TT380® SLIMLINE** For uterine length 6.5–9 cm; replacement every 10 years.

**LOAD® 375** For uterine length over 7 cm; replacement every 5 years.

**NOVAPLUS T 380® AG** ‘Mini’ size for minimum uterine length 5 cm; ‘Normal’ size for uterine length 6.5–9 cm; replacement every 5 years.

**MULTILOAD® CU375** For uterine length 6–9 cm; replacement every 5 years.

**GYNEFIX®** Suitable for all uterine sizes; replacement every 5 years.

**UT380 STANDARD®** For uterine length 6.5–9 cm; replacement every 5 years.

**UT380 SHORT®** For uterine length 5–7 cm; replacement every 5 years.

**MULTI-SAFE® 375** For uterine length 6–9 cm; replacement every 5 years.

**ANCORA® 375 CU** For uterine length over 6.5 cm; replacement every 5 years.

**T-SAFE® 380A QL** For uterine length 6.5–9 cm; replacement every 10 years.

**NEO-SAFE® T380** For uterine length 6.5–9 cm; replacement every 5 years.

**MINI TT380® SLIMLINE** For minimum uterine length 5 cm; replacement every 5 years.

**COPPER T380 A®** For uterine length 6.5–9 cm; replacement every 10 years.

**NOVAPLUS T 380® CU** ‘Mini’ size for minimum uterine length 5 cm; ‘Normal’ size for uterine length 6.5–9 cm; replacement every 5 years.

**NOVA-T® 380** For uterine length 6.5–9 cm; replacement every 5 years.

**FLEXI-T® 380** For uterine length over 6 cm; replacement every 5 years.

**FLEXI-T® 300** For uterine length over 5 cm; replacement every 5 years.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### ■ Intra-uterine contraceptive devices

- **Intra-uterine contraceptive devices** (R.F. Medical Supplies Ltd, Farla Medical Ltd, Durbin Plc, Williams Medical Supplies Ltd, Bayer Plc, Organon Laboratories Ltd)
  - Copper T380 A intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £8.95
  - Steriload intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £9.65
  - Load 375 intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £8.52
  - Novaplus T 380 Ag intra-uterine contraceptive device mini | 1 device £12.50
  - T-Safe 380A QL intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £10.55
  - UT380 Standard intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £11.22
  - Nova-T 380 intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £15.20
  - Flexi-T 380 intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £10.06
  - Mini TT380 Slimline intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £12.46
  - Flexi-T 300 intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £9.47
  - Multi-Safe 375 intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £8.96
  - Multiload Cu375 intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £9.24
  - Optima TCu 380A intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £9.65
  - Novaplus T 380 Ag intra-uterine contraceptive device normal | 1 device £12.50
  - GyneFix intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £27.11
  - Novaplus T 380 Cu intra-uterine contraceptive device mini | 1 device £10.95
  - TT380 Slimline intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £12.46
  - Ancora 375 Cu intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £7.95
  - Novaplus T 380 Cu intra-uterine contraceptive device normal | 1 device £10.95
  - Neo-Safe T380 intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £13.40
  - UT380 Short intra-uterine contraceptive device | 1 device £11.22

## Silicone contraceptive diaphragms

#### ● SILICONE CONTRACEPTIVE DIAPHRAGMS

- Milex arcing spring silicone diaphragm 60mm** (Durbin Plc)
  - 1 device · NHS indicative price = £10.21 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)
- Milex arcing spring silicone diaphragm 65mm** (Durbin Plc)
  - 1 device · NHS indicative price = £10.21 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)
- Milex arcing spring silicone diaphragm 70mm** (Durbin Plc)
  - 1 device · NHS indicative price = £10.21 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)
- Milex arcing spring silicone diaphragm 75mm** (Durbin Plc)
  - 1 device · NHS indicative price = £10.21 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)
- Milex arcing spring silicone diaphragm 80mm** (Durbin Plc)
  - 1 device · NHS indicative price = £10.21 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)
- Milex arcing spring silicone diaphragm 85mm** (Durbin Plc)
  - 1 device · NHS indicative price = £10.21 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)
- Milex arcing spring silicone diaphragm 90mm** (Durbin Plc)
  - 1 device · NHS indicative price = £10.21 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)
- Milex omniflex coil spring silicone diaphragm 60mm** (Durbin Plc)
  - 1 device · NHS indicative price = £10.21 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)
- Milex omniflex coil spring silicone diaphragm 65mm** (Durbin Plc)
  - 1 device · NHS indicative price = £10.21 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)
- Milex omniflex coil spring silicone diaphragm 70mm** (Durbin Plc)
  - 1 device · NHS indicative price = £10.21 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)
- Milex omniflex coil spring silicone diaphragm 75mm** (Durbin Plc)
  - 1 device · NHS indicative price = £10.21 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)
- Milex omniflex coil spring silicone diaphragm 80mm** (Durbin Plc)
  - 1 device · NHS indicative price = £10.21 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)



**Millex omniflex coil spring silicone diaphragm 85mm** (Durbin Plc)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £10.21 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Millex omniflex coil spring silicone diaphragm 90mm** (Durbin Plc)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £10.21 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

## Silicone contraceptive pessaries

### • SILICONE CONTRACEPTIVE PESSARIES

**FemCap 22mm** (Durbin Plc)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £15.29 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**FemCap 26mm** (Durbin Plc)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £15.29 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**FemCap 30mm** (Durbin Plc)  
1 device • NHS indicative price = £15.29 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

## 3.3 Contraception, emergency

**Other drugs used for Contraception, emergency**  
Levonorgestrel, p. 508

### PROGESTERONE RECEPTOR MODULATORS

## Ulipristal acetate

12-Apr-2018

- **DRUG ACTION** Ulipristal acetate is a progesterone receptor modulator with a partial progesterone antagonist effect.

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Emergency contraception

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Females of childbearing potential: 30 mg for 1 dose, to be taken as soon as possible after coitus, but no later than after 120 hours

- **CAUTIONS** Uncontrolled severe asthma

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ulipristal

### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Back pain • breast tenderness • dizziness • fatigue • gastrointestinal discomfort • headaches • menstrual cycle irregularities • mood altered • myalgia • nausea • pelvic pain • vomiting
- **Uncommon** Anxiety • appetite disorder • chills • concentration impaired • diarrhoea • drowsiness • dry mouth • fever • flatulence • hot flush • increased risk of infection • insomnia • libido disorder • malaise • skin reactions • vision disorders • vulvovaginal disorders
- **Rare or very rare** Abnormal sensation in eye • disorientation • dry throat • eye erythema • genital pruritus • ovarian cyst ruptured • painful sexual intercourse • syncope • taste altered • thirst • tremor • vertigo

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** When ulipristal is given as an emergency contraceptive the effectiveness of combined hormonal and progestogen-only contraceptives may be reduced—additional precautions (barrier methods) required for 14 days for combined and parenteral progestogen-only hormonal contraceptives (16 days for *Qlaira*®) and 9 days for oral progestogen-only contraceptives.

- **PREGNANCY** Limited information available when used as an emergency contraceptive.

- **BREAST FEEDING** In emergency contraception manufacturer advises avoid for 1 week after administration—present in milk.

### • HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

- When used for Emergency contraception Manufacturer advises avoid in severe impairment—no information available.

### • PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

- When used for Emergency contraception If vomiting occurs within 3 hours of taking a dose, a replacement dose should be given. When prescribing or supplying hormonal emergency contraception, women should be advised:
  - that their next period may be early or late;
  - that a barrier method of contraception needs to be used until the next period;
  - to seek medical attention promptly if any lower abdominal pain occurs because this could signify an ectopic pregnancy;
  - to return in 3 to 4 weeks if the subsequent menstrual bleed is abnormally light, heavy or brief, or is absent, or if she is otherwise concerned (if there is any doubt as to whether menstruation has occurred, a pregnancy test should be performed at least 3 weeks after unprotected intercourse).

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

- **Ellaone** (HRA Pharma UK Ltd)  
**Ulipristal acetate 30 mg** EllaOne 30mg tablets | 1 tablet [P] £14.05  
DT = £14.05
- **Esmya** (Gedeon Richter (UK) Ltd)  
**Ulipristal acetate 5 mg** Esmya 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM]  
£114.13 DT = £114.13

## 3.4 Contraception, oral progestogen-only

**Other drugs used for Contraception, oral progestogen-only** Norethisterone, p. 479

### PROGESTOGENS

## Desogestrel

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Contraception

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Females of childbearing potential: 75 micrograms daily, dose to be taken at same time each day, starting on day 1 of cycle then continuously, if administration delayed for 12 hours or more it should be regarded as a 'missed pill'

- **UNLICENSED USE** Consult product literature for the licensing status of individual preparations.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 • history of breast cancer but can be used after 5 years if no evidence of disease and non-hormonal contraceptive methods unacceptable • severe arterial disease • undiagnosed vaginal bleeding
- **CAUTIONS** Active trophoblastic disease (until return to normal of urine- and plasma-gonadotrophin concentration)—seek specialist advice • arterial disease • functional ovarian cysts • history of jaundice in pregnancy • malabsorption syndromes • past ectopic pregnancy • sex-steroid dependent cancer • systemic lupus erythematosus with positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies
- **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - Other conditions The product literature advises caution in patients with history of thromboembolism, hypertension, diabetes mellitus and migraine; evidence for caution in these conditions is unsatisfactory.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: desogestrel

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Breast abnormalities · depressed mood · headache · libido decreased · menstrual cycle irregularities · mood altered · nausea · skin reactions · weight increased
- ▶ **Uncommon** Alopecia · contact lens intolerance · fatigue · ovarian cyst · vomiting · vulvovaginal infection
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Erythema nodosum
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · embolism and thrombosis · neoplasms

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The benefits of using progestogen-only contraceptives (POCs), such as desogestrel, should be weighed against the possible risks for each individual woman.

There is a small increase in the risk of having breast cancer diagnosed in women using a combined oral contraceptive pill (COC); this relative risk may be due to an earlier diagnosis, biological effects of the pill or a combination of both. This increased risk is related to the age of the woman using the COC rather than the duration of use and disappears gradually within 10 years after discontinuation.

The risk of breast cancer in users of POCs is possibly of similar magnitude as that associated with COCs, however the evidence is less conclusive.

Available evidence does not support an association between the use of a progestogen-only contraceptive pill and breast cancer. Any increased risk is likely to be small and reduces gradually during the 10 years after stopping; there is no excess risk 10 years after stopping. The older age at which the contraceptive is stopped appears to have a greater influence on increased risk rather than the duration of use.

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Progestogen-only contraceptives do not affect lactation.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Caution in severe liver disease and recurrent cholestatic jaundice. Avoid in liver tumour.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Surgery** All progestogen-only contraceptives are suitable for use as an alternative to combined hormonal contraceptives before major elective surgery, before all surgery to the legs, or before surgery which involves prolonged immobilisation of a lower limb.

**Starting routine** One tablet daily, on a continuous basis, starting on day 1 of cycle and taken at the same time each day (if delayed by longer than 12 hours contraceptive protection may be lost). Additional contraceptive precautions are not required if desogestrel is started up to and including day 5 of the menstrual cycle; if started after this time, additional contraceptive precautions are required for 2 days.

**Changing from a combined oral contraceptive** Start on the day following completion of the combined oral contraceptive course without a break (or in the case of ED tablets omitting the inactive ones).

**After childbirth** Oral progestogen-only contraceptives can be started up to and including day 21 postpartum without the need for additional contraceptive precautions. If started more than 21 days postpartum, additional contraceptive precautions are required for 2 days.

**Diarrhoea and vomiting** Vomiting and persistent, severe diarrhoea can interfere with the absorption of oral progestogen-only contraceptives. If vomiting occurs within 2 hours of taking desogestrel, another pill should be taken as soon as possible. If a replacement pill is not taken within 12 hours of the normal time for taking desogestrel, or in cases of persistent vomiting or very severe diarrhoea, additional precautions should be used during illness and for 2 days after recovery.

**Missed doses** The following advice is recommended: 'If you forget a pill, take it as soon as you remember and carry on with the next pill at the right time. If the pill was more than 12 hours overdue you are not protected. Continue normal pill-taking but you must also use another method, such as the condom, for the next 2 days'.

The Faculty of Sexual and Reproductive Healthcare recommends emergency contraception if one or more tablets are missed or taken more than 12 hours late and unprotected intercourse has occurred before 2 further tablets have been correctly taken.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (September 2003) that *Cerazette*® should be restricted for use in women who cannot tolerate oestrogen-containing contraceptives or in whom such preparations are contra-indicated.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

##### ▶ Desogestrel (Non-proprietary)

**Desogestrel 75 microgram** Desogestrel 75microgram tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £9.55 DT = £2.95

##### ▶ Aizea (Besins Healthcare (UK) Ltd)

**Desogestrel 75 microgram** Aizea 75microgram tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £5.21 DT = £2.95

##### ▶ Cerazette (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Desogestrel 75 microgram** Cerazette 75microgram tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £9.55 DT = £2.95

##### ▶ Cerelle (Consilient Health Ltd)

**Desogestrel 75 microgram** Cerelle 75microgram tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £3.50 DT = £2.95

##### ▶ Desomono (MedRx Licences Ltd)

**Desogestrel 75 microgram** Desomono 75microgram tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £6.50 DT = £2.95

##### ▶ Desorex (Somex Pharma)

**Desogestrel 75 microgram** Desorex 75microgram tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £2.99 DT = £2.95

##### ▶ Feanolla (Lupin Healthcare (UK) Ltd)

**Desogestrel 75 microgram** Feanolla 75microgram tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £3.49 DT = £2.95

##### ▶ Zelleta (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)

**Desogestrel 75 microgram** Zelleta 75microgram tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £2.98 DT = £2.95

## Levonorgestrel

16-Apr-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Emergency contraception

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Females of childbearing potential: 1.5 mg for 1 dose, taken as soon as possible after coitus, preferably within 12 hours and no later than after 72 hours (may also be used between 72–96 hours after coitus but efficacy decreases with time), alternatively 3 mg for 1 dose, taken as soon as possible after coitus, preferably within 12 hours and no later than after 72 hours (may also be used between 72–96 hours after coitus but efficacy decreases with time). Higher dose should be considered for patients with body-weight over 70 kg or BMI over 26 kg/m<sup>2</sup>

#### Contraception

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Females of childbearing potential: 30 micrograms daily starting on day 1 of the cycle then continuously, dose is to be taken at the same time each day, if administration delayed for 3 hours or more it should be regarded as a 'missed pill'

**JAYDESS® 13.5MG INTRA-UTERINE DEVICE****Contraception**

## ► BY VAGINA

- Females of childbearing potential: Insert into uterine cavity within 7 days of onset of menstruation, or any time if replacement, or immediately after first-trimester termination; postpartum insertions should be delayed until at least 6 weeks after delivery (12 weeks if uterus involution is substantially delayed); effective for 3 years

**KYLEENA® 19.5MG INTRA-UTERINE DEVICE****Contraception**

## ► BY INTRA-UTERINE ADMINISTRATION

- Females of childbearing potential: Insert into uterine cavity within 7 days of onset of menstruation, or any time if replacement, or immediately after first-trimester termination; postpartum insertions should be delayed until at least 6 weeks after delivery and not before uterus is fully involuted; effective for 5 years

**LEVOSERT® 20MICROGRAMS/24HOURS INTRA-UTERINE DEVICE****Contraception | Menorrhagia**

## ► BY INTRA-UTERINE ADMINISTRATION

- Females of childbearing potential: Insert into uterine cavity within 7 days of onset of menstruation, or any time if replacement, or immediately after first-trimester abortion; postpartum insertions should be delayed until at least 6 weeks after delivery and not before uterus is fully involuted; effective for 4 years

**MIRENA® 20MICROGRAMS/24HOURS INTRA-UTERINE DEVICE****Contraception | Menorrhagia**

## ► BY INTRA-UTERINE ADMINISTRATION

- Females of childbearing potential: Insert into uterine cavity within 7 days of onset of menstruation, or any time if replacement, or any time if reasonably certain woman is not pregnant and there is no risk of conception (additional precautions (e.g. barrier methods) necessary for next 7 days), or immediately after first-trimester termination by curettage; postpartum insertions should be delayed until at least 4 weeks after delivery; effective for 5 years

**Prevention of endometrial hyperplasia during oestrogen replacement therapy**

## ► BY INTRA-UTERINE ADMINISTRATION

- Females of childbearing potential: Insert during last days of menstruation or withdrawal bleeding or at any time if amenorrhoeic; effective for 4 years

**DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS**

- When used orally as an emergency contraceptive, the effectiveness of levonorgestrel is reduced in women taking enzyme-inducing drugs (and for up to 4 weeks after stopping); a copper intra-uterine device should preferably be used instead. If the copper intra-uterine device is undesirable or inappropriate, the dose of levonorgestrel should be increased to a total of 3 mg taken as a single dose; pregnancy should be excluded following use, and medical advice sought if pregnancy occurs.
- There is no need to increase the dose for emergency contraception if the patient is taking antibacterials that are not enzyme inducers.
- With the progestogen-only intra-uterine device, levonorgestrel is released close to the site of the main contraceptive action (on cervical mucus and endometrium) and therefore progestogenic side-effects and interactions are less likely; in particular, enzyme-inducing drugs are unlikely to significantly reduce the contraceptive effect of the progestogen-only intra-uterine system and additional contraceptive precautions are not required.

- **UNLICENSED USE** <sup>(EvGr)</sup> Dose for emergency contraception in patients with body-weight over 70 kg or BMI over 26 kg/m<sup>2</sup> differs from product licence. Use for emergency contraception between 72–96 hours after coitus differs from product licence. <sup>(A)</sup>
- With oral use Consult product literature for licensing status of individual preparations.
- With vaginal use Not licensed for use in women under 18 years.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****MHRA/CHM ADVICE (JUNE 2015) INTRA-UTERINE CONTRACEPTION: UTERINE PERFORATION—UPDATED INFORMATION ON RISK FACTORS**

Uterine perforation most often occurs during insertion, but might not be detected until sometime later. The risk of uterine perforation is increased when the device is inserted up to 36 weeks postpartum or in patients who are breastfeeding. Before inserting an intra-uterine contraceptive device, inform patients that perforation occurs in approximately 1 in every 1000 insertions and signs and symptoms include:

- severe pelvic pain after insertion (worse than period cramps);
- pain or increased bleeding after insertion which continues for more than a few weeks;
- sudden changes in periods;
- pain during intercourse;
- unable to feel the threads.

Patients should be informed on how to check their threads and to arrange a check-up if threads cannot be felt, especially if they also have significant pain. Partial perforation may occur even if the threads can be seen; consider this if there is severe pain following insertion and perform an ultrasound.

**CONTRA-INDICATIONS**

- With intra-uterine use Active trophoblastic disease (until return to normal of urine- and plasma-gonadotrophin concentration · acute cervicitis · acute malignancies affecting the blood (use with caution in remission) · acute vaginitis · distorted uterine cavity · history of breast cancer but can be considered for a woman in long-term remission who has menorrhagia and requires effective contraception · increased risk factors for pelvic infections · infected abortion during the previous three months · not suitable for emergency contraception · pelvic inflammatory disease · postpartum endometritis · unexplained uterine bleeding · unresolved cervical intraepithelial neoplasia · uterine or cervical malignancy
- With oral use Acute porphyrias p. 603
- With oral use for contraception History of breast cancer but can be used after 5 years if no evidence of disease and non-hormonal contraceptive methods unacceptable · severe arterial disease · undiagnosed vaginal bleeding

**CAUTIONS**

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Risk factors for ectopic pregnancy (including previous ectopic pregnancy, tubal surgery or pelvic infection)

**SPECIFIC CAUTIONS**

- With intra-uterine use Disease-induced immunosuppression (risk of infection—avoid if marked immunosuppression) · acute venous thromboembolism (consider removal) · anaemia · anticoagulant therapy (avoid if possible) · diabetes · drug-induced immunosuppression (risk of infection—avoid if marked immunosuppression) · endometriosis · epilepsy (risk of seizure at time of insertion) · fertility problems · history of pelvic inflammatory disease · increased risk of expulsion if inserted before uterine involution · jaundice (consider removal) · marked increase of blood pressure (consider removal) · menorrhagia (progestogen intra-uterine system

- might be preferable) • migraine (consider removal) • nulliparity • severe arterial disease (consider removal) • severe cervical stenosis • severe headache (consider removal) • severe primary dysmenorrhoea • severely scarred uterus (including after endometrial resection) • young age
- ▶ With oral use for contraception Active trophoblastic disease (until return to normal of urine- and plasma-gonadotrophin concentration)—seek specialist advice • arterial disease • functional ovarian cysts • history of jaundice in pregnancy • malabsorption syndromes • past ectopic pregnancy • sex-steroid dependent cancer • systemic lupus erythematosus with positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies
- ▶ With oral use for emergency contraception Active trophoblastic disease (until return to normal of urine- and plasma-gonadotrophin concentration)—seek specialist advice • past ectopic pregnancy • severe malabsorption syndromes

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

An intra-uterine device should not be removed in mid-cycle unless an additional contraceptive was used for the previous 7 days. If removal is essential post-coital contraception should be considered.

- ▶ Risk of infection with intra-uterine devices The main excess risk of infection occurs in the first 20 days after insertion and is believed to be related to existing carriage of a sexually transmitted infection. Women are considered to be at a higher risk of sexually transmitted infections if:
  - they are under 25 years old *or*
  - they are over 25 years old *and*
    - have a new partner *or*
    - have had more than one partner in the past year *or*
    - their regular partner has other partners.

In these women, pre-insertion screening (for chlamydia and, depending on sexual history and local prevalence of disease, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*) should be performed. If results are unavailable at the time of fitting an intra-uterine device for emergency contraception, appropriate prophylactic antibacterial cover should be given. The woman should be advised to attend *as an emergency* if she experiences sustained pain during the next 20 days.

- ▶ Use as a contraceptive in co-morbidities
- ▶ With oral use The product literature advises caution in patients with history of thromboembolism, hypertension, diabetes mellitus and migraine; evidence for caution in these conditions is unsatisfactory.

#### MIRENA® 20MICROGRAMS/24HOURS INTRA-UTERINE DEVICE Advanced uterine atrophy

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: levonorgestrel
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common**
    - ▶ With intra-uterine use Back pain • breast abnormalities • depression • device expulsion • gastrointestinal discomfort • headaches • hirsutism • increased risk of infection • libido decreased • menstrual cycle irregularities • nausea • nervousness • ovarian cyst • pelvic disorders • skin reactions • uterine haemorrhage (on insertion) • vaginal haemorrhage (on insertion) • vulvovaginal disorders • weight increased
  - ▶ With oral use Breast tenderness • diarrhoea • dizziness • fatigue • gastrointestinal discomfort • haemorrhage • headaches • menstrual cycle irregularities • nausea • vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon**
  - ▶ With intra-uterine use Alopecia • endometritis • oedema • uterine rupture
- ▶ **Rare or very rare**
  - ▶ With oral use Face oedema • pelvic pain • skin reactions
- ▶ **Frequency not known**
  - ▶ With oral use Cerebrovascular insufficiency • depressed mood • diabetes mellitus • embolism and thrombosis • neoplasms • sexual dysfunction • weight changes

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Breast cancer** There is a small increase in the risk of having breast cancer diagnosed in women using, or who have recently used, a progestogen-only contraceptive pill; this relative risk may be due to an earlier diagnosis. The most important risk factor appears to be the age at which the contraceptive is stopped rather than the duration of use; the risk disappears gradually during the 10 years after stopping and there is no excess risk by 10 years. A possible small increase in the risk of breast cancer should be weighed against the benefits.

**With intra-uterine use** There is no evidence of an association between the levonorgestrel intra-uterine system and breast cancer. The levonorgestrel intra-uterine system should be avoided in patients with a history of breast cancer; any consideration of its use should be by a specialist in contraception and in consultation with the patients cancer specialist.

Patients should be informed about the device that has been inserted and when it should be removed or replaced (including referring them to a patient information leaflet and other sources of information).

Patients may experience irregular, prolonged or infrequent menstrual bleeding in the 3–6 months following insertion; bleeding pattern improves with time but persists in some patients.

Progestogenic side-effects resolve with time (after the first few months).

#### ● PREGNANCY

- ▶ With oral use Not known to be harmful.
- ▶ With vaginal use If an intra-uterine device fails and the woman wishes to continue to full-term the device should be removed in the first trimester if possible. Avoid; if pregnancy occurs remove intra-uterine system.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Progestogen-only contraceptives do not affect lactation.

#### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

- ▶ With oral use Manufacturer advises avoid in severe impairment.
- ▶ With intra-uterine use Manufacturer advises avoid in severe impairment—no information available; avoid in acute hepatic disease.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ With intra-uterine use Gynaecological examination before insertion, 4–6 weeks after insertion, then annually.

#### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ With intra-uterine use *The doctor or nurse administering (or removing) the system should be fully trained in the technique and should provide full counselling reinforced by the patient information leaflet.*

#### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

- ▶ With intra-uterine use Levonorgestrel-releasing intra-uterine devices vary in licensed indication, duration of use and insertion technique—the MHRA recommends to prescribe and dispense by brand name to avoid inadvertent switching.

#### MIRENA® 20MICROGRAMS/24HOURS INTRA-UTERINE DEVICE

When system is removed (and not immediately replaced) and pregnancy is not desired, remove during the first few days of menstruation, otherwise additional precautions (e.g. barrier methods) should be used for at least 7 days before removal.

**JAYDESS® 13.5MG INTRA-UTERINE DEVICE** When system is removed (and not immediately replaced) and pregnancy is not desired, remove within 7 days of the onset of menstruation; additional precautions (e.g. barrier methods) should be used if the system is removed at some other time during the cycle and there is intercourse within 7 days.

**KYLEENA® 19.5MG INTRA-UTERINE DEVICE** When system is removed (and not immediately replaced) and pregnancy is

not desired, remove within 7 days of the onset of menstruation; additional precautions (e.g. barrier methods) should be used if the system is removed at some other time during the cycle, or in case of irregular menses, and if there is intercourse within 7 days.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Diarrhoea and vomiting with use as an oral contraceptive**  
Vomiting and persistent, severe diarrhoea can interfere with the absorption of oral progestogen-only contraceptives. If vomiting occurs within 2 hours of taking an oral progestogen-only contraceptive, another pill should be taken as soon as possible. If a replacement pill is not taken within 3 hours of the normal time for taking the progestogen-only pill, or in cases of persistent vomiting or very severe diarrhoea, additional precautions should be used during illness and for 2 days after recovery.

#### Starting routine

- With oral use for Contraception One tablet daily, on a continuous basis, starting on day 1 of cycle and taken at the same time each day (if delayed by longer than 3 hours contraceptive protection may be lost). Additional contraceptive precautions are not required if levonorgestrel is started up to and including day 5 of the menstrual cycle; if started after this time, additional contraceptive precautions are required for 2 days. Changing from a combined oral contraceptive Start on the day following completion of the combined oral contraceptive course without a break (or in the case of ED tablets omitting the inactive ones).

After childbirth Oral progestogen-only contraceptives can be started up to and including day 21 postpartum without the need for additional contraceptive precautions. If started more than 21 days postpartum, additional contraceptive precautions are required for 2 days.

- With oral use for Emergency contraception Manufacturer advises if vomiting occurs within 3 hours of taking levonorgestrel, a replacement dose should be taken immediately.
  - When prescribing or supplying hormonal emergency contraception, women should be advised:
    - that their next period may be early or late;
    - that a barrier method of contraception needs to be used until the next period;
    - to seek medical attention promptly if any lower abdominal pain occurs because this could signify an ectopic pregnancy;
    - to return in 3 to 4 weeks if the subsequent menstrual bleed is abnormally light, heavy or brief, or is absent, or if she is otherwise concerned (if there is any doubt as to whether menstruation has occurred, a pregnancy test should be performed at least 3 weeks after unprotected intercourse).
- With intra-uterine use Counsel women on the signs, symptoms and risks of perforation and ectopic pregnancy.

**Missed doses** When used as an oral contraceptive, the following advice is recommended 'If you forget a pill, take it as soon as you remember and carry on with the next pill at the right time. If the pill was more than 3 hours overdue you are not protected. Continue normal pill-taking but you must also use another method, such as the condom, for the next 2 days'.

The Faculty of Sexual and Reproductive Healthcare recommends emergency contraception if one or more progestogen-only contraceptive tablets are missed or taken more than 3 hours late and unprotected intercourse has occurred before 2 further tablets have been correctly taken.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### KYLEENA® 19.5MG INTRA-UTERINE DEVICE

##### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised (February 2018) that levonorgestrel (Kyleena®) is accepted for use

within NHS Scotland as a contraceptive device for up to 5 years.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** *Levonelle® One Step* can be sold to women over 16 years; when supplying emergency contraception to the public, pharmacists should refer to guidance issued by the Royal Pharmaceutical Society.

#### ● MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Intra-uterine device

- ▶ **Jaydess** (Bayer Plc) ▼  
**Levonorgestrel 13.5 mg** Jaydess 13.5mg intra-uterine device | 1 device [PoM] £69.22
- ▶ **Kyleena** (Bayer Plc)  
**Levonorgestrel 19.5 mg** Kyleena 19.5mg intra-uterine device | 1 device [PoM] £76.00
- ▶ **Levosert** (Gedeon Richter (UK) Ltd)  
**Levonorgestrel 20 microgram per 24 hour** Levosert 20micrograms/24hours intra-uterine device | 1 device [PoM] £66.00 DT = £88.00
- ▶ **Mirena** (Bayer Plc)  
**Levonorgestrel 20 microgram per 24 hour** Mirena 20micrograms/24hours intra-uterine device | 1 device [PoM] £88.00 DT = £88.00

##### Tablet

- ▶ **Levonorgestrel (Non-proprietary)**  
**Levonorgestrel 1.5 mg** Levonorgestrel 1.5mg tablets | 1 tablet [P] £13.83 DT = £5.20 | 1 tablet [PoM] £3.74-£5.20 DT = £5.20
- ▶ **Emerres** (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)  
**Levonorgestrel 1.5 mg** Emerres Una 1.5mg tablets | 1 tablet [P] £13.83 DT = £5.20  
Emerres 1.5mg tablets | 1 tablet [PoM] £3.65 DT = £5.20
- ▶ **Ezinelle** (Mylan)  
**Levonorgestrel 1.5 mg** Ezinelle 1.5mg tablets | 1 tablet [PoM] £9.64 DT = £5.20
- ▶ **Levonelle** (Bayer Plc)  
**Levonorgestrel 1.5 mg** Levonelle 1500microgram tablets | 1 tablet [PoM] £5.20 DT = £5.20
- ▶ **Levonelle One Step** (Bayer Plc)  
**Levonorgestrel 1.5 mg** Levonelle One Step 1.5mg tablets | 1 tablet [P] £13.83 DT = £5.20
- ▶ **Norgeston** (Bayer Plc)  
**Levonorgestrel 30 microgram** Norgeston 30microgram tablets | 35 tablet [PoM] £0.92 DT = £0.92
- ▶ **Upostelle** (Consilient Health Ltd)  
**Levonorgestrel 1.5 mg** Upostelle 1500microgram tablets | 1 tablet [PoM] £3.75 DT = £5.20

## 3.5 Contraception, parenteral progestogen-only

**Other drugs used for Contraception, parenteral progestogen-only** Norethisterone, p. 479

### PROGESTOGENS

#### Etonogestrel

27-Sep-2016

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Contraception (no hormonal contraceptive use in previous month)

- ▶ BY SUBDERMAL IMPLANTATION
- ▶ Females of childbearing potential: 1 implant inserted during first 5 days of cycle, implant should be removed within 3 years of insertion

##### Contraception (postpartum)

- ▶ BY SUBDERMAL IMPLANTATION
- ▶ Females of childbearing potential: 1 implant to be inserted 21–28 days after delivery (delay continued →



until 28 days postpartum if breast-feeding), implant should be removed within 3 years of insertion

### Contraception following abortion or miscarriage in the second trimester

#### ► BY SUBDERMAL IMPLANTATION

- Females of childbearing potential: 1 implant to be inserted 21–28 days after abortion or miscarriage, implant should be removed within 3 years of insertion

### Contraception following abortion or miscarriage in the first trimester

#### ► BY SUBDERMAL IMPLANTATION

- Females of childbearing potential: 1 implant to be inserted within 5 days after abortion or miscarriage, implant should be removed within 3 years of insertion

### Contraception (changing from other hormonal contraceptive)

#### ► BY SUBDERMAL IMPLANTATION

- Females of childbearing potential: Implant should be removed within 3 years of insertion (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Nexplanon*® not licensed for use in females outside of the age range 18–40 years.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE (JUNE 2016): *NEXPLANON*® (ETONOGESTREL) CONTRACEPTIVE IMPLANTS: REPORTS OF DEVICE IN VASCULATURE AND LUNG

There have been rare reports of *Nexplanon*® implants reaching the lung via the pulmonary artery. An implant that cannot be palpated at its insertion site should be located and removed as soon as possible; if unable to locate implant within the arm, the MHRA recommends using chest imaging. Correct subdermal insertion reduces the risk of these events.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · history of breast cancer but can be used after 5 years if no evidence of disease and non-hormonal contraceptive methods unacceptable · severe arterial disease · undiagnosed vaginal bleeding
- **CAUTIONS** Active trophoblastic disease (until return to normal of urine- and plasma-gonadotrophin concentration)—seek specialist advice · arterial disease · disturbances of lipid metabolism · history during pregnancy of deterioration of otosclerosis · history during pregnancy of pruritus · history of jaundice in pregnancy · malabsorption syndromes · possible risk of breast cancer · sex-steroid dependent cancer · systemic lupus erythematosus with positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: etonogestrel
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · alopecia · anxiety · appetite increased · breast abnormalities · depressed mood · dizziness · emotional lability · fatigue · flatulence · headaches · hot flush · increased risk of infection · influenza like illness · libido decreased · menstrual cycle irregularities · nausea · ovarian cyst · pain · skin reactions · weight changes
  - **Uncommon** Arthralgia · constipation · diarrhoea · drowsiness · dysuria · fever · galactorrhoea · genital abnormalities · hypertrichosis · insomnia · myalgia · oedema · vomiting · vulvovaginal discomfort
  - **Frequency not known** Abscess · angioedema · embolism and thrombosis · haemorrhage · insulin resistance · neoplasms · paraesthesia · seborrhoea
- **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The benefits of using progestogen-only contraceptives (POCs), such as etonogestrel, should be weighed against the possible risks for each individual woman.

There is a small increase in the risk of having breast cancer diagnosed in women using a combined oral contraceptive pill (COC); this relative risk may be due to an earlier diagnosis, biological effects of the pill or a combination of both. This increased risk is related to the age of the woman using the COC rather than the duration of use and disappears gradually within 10 years after discontinuation.

The risk of breast cancer in users of POCs is possibly of similar magnitude as that associated with COCs, however the evidence is less conclusive.

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful, remove implant if pregnancy occurs.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Progestogen-only contraceptives do not affect lactation.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** The doctor or nurse administering (or removing) the system should be fully trained in the technique and should provide full counselling reinforced by the patient information leaflet.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Full counselling backed by patient information leaflet required before administration.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Implant

##### ► Etonogestrel (Non-proprietary)

**Etonogestrel 68 mg** Etonogestrel 68mg implant | 1 device [PoM]   
DT = £83.43

##### ► Nexplanon (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Etonogestrel 68 mg** Nexplanon 68mg implant | 1 device [PoM]  
£83.43 DT = £83.43

## Medroxyprogesterone acetate

24-May-2017

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Contraception

##### ► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 150 mg, to be administered within the first 5 days of cycle or within first 5 days after parturition (delay until 6 weeks after parturition if breast-feeding)

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 104 mg, to be administered within first 5 days of cycle or within 5 days postpartum (delay until 6 weeks postpartum if breast-feeding), injected into anterior thigh or abdomen, dose only suitable if no hormonal contraceptive use in previous month

#### Long-term contraception

##### ► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 150 mg every 12 weeks, first dose to be administered within the first 5 days of cycle or within first 5 days after parturition (delay until 6 weeks after parturition if breast-feeding)



##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 104 mg every 13 weeks, first dose to be administered within first 5 days of cycle or within 5 days postpartum (delay until 6 weeks postpartum if breast-feeding), injected into anterior thigh or abdomen, dose only suitable if no hormonal contraceptive use in previous month

#### Contraception (when patient changing from other hormonal contraceptive)

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE**  Not licensed for the treatment of hot flushes caused by long-term androgen suppression in men. 

## ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

**GENERAL CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · severe arterial disease · undiagnosed vaginal bleeding

**SPECIFIC CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of breast cancer but can be used after 5 years if no evidence of disease and non-hormonal contraceptive methods unacceptable

## ● CAUTIONS

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Possible risk of breast cancer

**SPECIFIC CAUTIONS** History during pregnancy in disturbances of lipid metabolism · history during pregnancy of deterioration of otosclerosis · history during pregnancy of pruritus

## ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: medroxyprogesterone

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Anxiety · asthenia · breast abnormalities · depression · dizziness · gastrointestinal discomfort · headaches · insomnia · menstrual cycle irregularities · mood altered · nausea · pain · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · vulvovaginal infection · weight changes

► **Uncommon** Alopecia · appetite abnormal · arthralgia · drowsiness · fever · fluid retention · galactorrhoea · hirsutism · hot flush · hypertension · muscle spasms · ovarian cyst · painful sexual intercourse · tachycardia · uterine haemorrhage · varicose veins · vertigo · vulvovaginal disorders

► **Rare or very rare** Breast cancer · lipodystrophy

► **Frequency not known** Embolism and thrombosis · hepatic disorders · osteoporosis · osteoporotic fractures · seizure

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Reduction in bone mineral density is greater with increasing duration of use. The loss is mostly recovered on discontinuation.

## ● CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION

► With intramuscular use If interval between dose is greater than 12 weeks and 5 days (in long-term contraception), rule out pregnancy before next injection and advise patient to use additional contraceptive measures (e.g. barrier) for 14 days after the injection.

► With subcutaneous use If interval between dose is greater than 13 weeks and 7 days (in long-term contraception), rule out pregnancy before next injection.

● **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—no adverse effects reported. Progestogen-only contraceptives do not affect lactation. The manufacturers advise that in women who are breast-feeding, the first dose should be delayed until 6 weeks after birth; however, evidence suggests no harmful effect to infant if given earlier. The benefits of using medroxyprogesterone acetate in breast-feeding women outweigh any risks.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in liver tumour. Caution in severe liver disease and recurrent cholestatic jaundice.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Full counselling backed by *patient information leaflet* required before administration—likelihood of menstrual disturbance and the potential for delay in return to full fertility. Delayed return of fertility and irregular cycles may occur after discontinuation of treatment but there is no evidence of permanent infertility.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Suspension for injection

► **Depo-Provera** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Medroxyprogesterone acetate 150 mg per 1 ml** Depo-Provera 150mg/1ml suspension for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £6.01 DT = £6.01

► **Sayana Press** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Medroxyprogesterone acetate 160 mg per 1 ml** Sayana Press 104mg/0.65 ml suspension for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £6.90

## 3.6 Contraception, spermicidal

### SPERMICIDALS

## Nonoxinol

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Spermicidal contraceptive in conjunction with barrier methods of contraception such as diaphragms or caps**

► BY VAGINA

► Females of childbearing potential: (consult product literature)

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Genital erosion · increased risk of HIV infection · pain · paraesthesia · skin reactions · vaginal redness

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** High frequency use of the spermicide nonoxinol-9 has been associated with genital lesions, which may increase the risk of acquiring sexually transmitted infections.

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** No evidence of harm to latex condoms and diaphragms.

● **PREGNANCY** Toxicity in *animal* studies.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in *animal* studies.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Gel

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol, sorbic acid

► **Gygel** (Marlborough Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Nonoxinol-9 20 mg per 1 ml** Gygel 2% contraceptive jelly | 30 gram [GSL] £4.25 | 81 gram [GSL] £11.00

## 4 Vaginal and vulval conditions

### Vaginal and vulval conditions

#### Management

Pre-pubertal girls may be particularly susceptible to vulvovaginitis. Barrier preparations applied after cleansing can be useful when the symptoms are due to non-specific irritation, but systemic drugs are required in the treatment of bacterial infection or threadworm infestation. Intravaginal preparations, particularly those that require the use of an applicator, are not generally suitable for young girls; topical preparations may be useful in some adolescent girls.

In older girls symptoms are often restricted to the vulva, but infections almost invariably involve the vagina, which should also be treated; treatment should be as for adults.

#### Vaginal and vulval changes

Topical oestrogen creams containing **estriol** 0.01% (*Gynest*®) are used in the treatment of labial adhesions; treatment is usually restricted to symptomatic cases. Estriol cream should be applied to the adhesions once or twice daily for 2–6 weeks; adhesions may recur following treatment.

#### Vaginal and vulval infections

Effective specific treatments are available for the common

vaginal infections

**Fungal infections**

Vaginal fungal infections are not normally a problem in younger girls but can occur in adolescents. *Candidal vulvitis* can be treated locally with cream, but is almost invariably associated with vaginal infection which should also be treated. *Vaginal candidiasis*, rare in girls before puberty, can be treated with antifungal pessaries or cream inserted high into the vagina (including during menstruation), however, these are not recommended for pre-pubertal girls and treatment with an external cream may be more appropriate. Single-dose intravaginal preparations offer an advantage when compliance is a problem. Local irritation can occur on application of vaginal antifungal products.

**Imidazole** drugs (clotrimazole p. 515, econazole nitrate p. 515, fenticonazole nitrate p. 516, and miconazole p. 516) are effective against candida in short courses of 1 to 3 days according to the preparation used; treatment can be repeated if initial course fails to control symptoms or if symptoms recur. Vaginal applications may be supplemented with antifungal cream for vulvitis and to treat other superficial sites of infection.

Oral treatment of vaginal infection with fluconazole p. 374 may be considered for girls post-puberty.

**Vulvovaginal candidiasis in pregnancy**

Vulvovaginal candidiasis is common during pregnancy and can be treated with vaginal application of an imidazole (such as clotrimazole), and a topical imidazole cream for vulvitis. Pregnant women need a longer duration of treatment, usually about 7 days, to clear the infection. There is limited absorption of imidazoles from the skin and vagina. Oral antifungal treatment should be avoided during pregnancy.

**Recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis**

Recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis is very rare in children, but can occur if there are predisposing factors such as antibacterial therapy, pregnancy, diabetes mellitus, or possibly oral contraceptive use. Reservoirs of infection can also lead to recontamination and should be treated; these include other skin sites such as the digits, nail beds, and umbilicus, as well as the gastro-intestinal tract and the bladder. The sexual partner may also be the source of re-infection and, if symptomatic, should be treated with a topical imidazole cream at the same time.

Treatment against candida may need to be extended for 6 months in recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis.

**Other infections**

*Trichomonal infections* commonly involve the lower urinary tract as well as the genital system and need systemic treatment with metronidazole p. 333 or tinidazole p. 335.

*Bacterial infections* with Gram-negative organisms are particularly common in association with gynaecological operations and trauma. Metronidazole is effective against certain Gram-negative organisms, especially *Bacteroides* spp. and can be used prophylactically in gynaecological surgery.

Clindamycin below cream and metronidazole gel are indicated for bacterial vaginosis.

The antiviral drugs aciclovir p. 404 and valaciclovir p. 406 can be used in the treatment of genital infection due to *herpes simplex virus*, the HSV type 2 being a major cause of genital ulceration. They have a beneficial effect on virus shedding and healing, generally giving relief from pain and other symptoms.

**4.1 Vaginal and vulval infections****4.1a Vaginal and vulval bacterial infections****ANTIBACTERIALS > LINCOSAMIDES****Clindamycin****• INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**DALACIN® 2% CREAM**

**Bacterial vaginosis**

► BY VAGINA

► Child: 1 applicatorful daily for 3–7 nights, dose to be administered at night

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

► 1 applicatorful delivers a 5 g dose of clindamycin 2%.

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid intravaginal preparations (particularly those that require the use of an applicator) in young girls who are not sexually active, unless there is no alternative

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: clindamycin

**• SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Common or very common** Skin reactions

► **Frequency not known** Constipation · diarrhoea (discontinue) · dizziness · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · increased risk of infection · nausea · vertigo · vomiting · vulvovaginal irritation

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Clindamycin 2% cream is poorly absorbed into the blood—low risk of systemic effects.

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Damages latex condoms and diaphragms.

**• MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Cream**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates, propylene glycol

► **Dalacin** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Clindamycin (as Clindamycin phosphate) 20 mg per**

**1 gram** Dalacin 2% cream | 40 gram [PoM] £10.86 DT = £10.86

**ANTIBACTERIALS > NITROIMIDAZOLE DERIVATIVES****Metronidazole**

● **DRUG ACTION** Metronidazole is an antimicrobial drug with high activity against anaerobic bacteria and protozoa.

**• INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Bacterial vaginosis**

► BY VAGINA USING VAGINAL GEL

► Child: 1 applicatorful daily for 5 days, dose to be administered at night

● **UNLICENSED USE** Metronidazole vaginal gel not licensed for use in children under 18 years.

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid intravaginal preparations (particularly those that require the use of an applicator) in young girls who are not sexually active, unless there is no alternative · not recommended during menstruation · some systemic absorption may occur with vaginal gel

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: metronidazole

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Pelvic discomfort · vulvovaginal candidiasis · vulvovaginal disorders
- **Uncommon** Menstrual cycle irregularities · vaginal haemorrhage

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Vaginal gel

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Disodium edetate, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

#### ► Metronidazole (Non-proprietary)

Metronidazole 7.5 mg per 1 gram Metronidazole 0.75% vaginal gel | 40 gram [PoM] [N] DT = £4.31

#### ► Zidoval (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Metronidazole 7.5 mg per 1 gram Zidoval 0.75% vaginal gel | 40 gram [PoM] £4.31 DT = £4.31

## CARBOXYLIC ACIDS

### Lactic acid

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### BALANCE ACTIV RX<sup>®</sup> GEL

#### Prevention of bacterial vaginosis

- **BY VAGINA**
- Child: 5 mL 1–2 times a week, insert the content of 1 tube (5 mL)

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in shellfish allergy.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Products without form

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

- **Balance Activ** (BBI Healthcare Ltd)  
Balance Activ BV vaginal pH correction gel | 7 device £5.25

## 4.1b Vaginal and vulval fungal infections

**Other drugs used for Vaginal and vulval fungal infections**  
Fluconazole, p. 374

## ANTIFUNGALS > IMIDAZOLE

### Clotrimazole

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Superficial sites of infection in vaginal and vulval candidiasis (dose for 1% or 2% cream)

- **BY VAGINA USING CREAM**
- Child: Apply 2–3 times a day, to be applied to anogenital area

#### Vaginal candidiasis (dose for 10% intravaginal cream)

- **BY VAGINA USING VAGINAL CREAM**
- Child: 5 g for 1 dose, one applicatorful to be inserted into the vagina at night, dose can be repeated once if necessary

#### Vaginal candidiasis

- **BY VAGINA USING PESSARIES**
- Child: 200 mg for 3 nights, course can be repeated once if necessary, alternatively 500 mg for 1 night, dose can be repeated once if necessary

### Recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis

#### ► BY VAGINA USING PESSARIES

- Child: 500 mg every week for 6 months, dose to be administered following topical imidazole for 10–14 days

- **UNLICENSED USE** Consult product literature for individual preparations.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid intravaginal preparations (particularly those that require use of an applicator) in young girls who are not sexually active, unless there is no alternative

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antifungals, azoles

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain · discomfort · dyspnoea · genital peeling · hypotension · oedema · paraesthesia · pelvic pain · skin reactions · syncope · vaginal haemorrhage

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Cream and pessaries may damage latex condoms and diaphragms.

- **PREGNANCY**

**Dose adjustments** Pregnant women need a longer duration of treatment, usually about 7 days, to clear the infection. Oral antifungal treatment should be avoided during pregnancy.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Brands for sale to the public include *Canesten*<sup>®</sup> Internal Cream.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Pessary

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates

#### ► Clotrimazole (Non-proprietary)

Clotrimazole 500 mg Clotrimazole 500mg pessaries | 1 pessary [P] £3.57 DT = £3.57

#### ► Canesten (clotrimazole) (Bayer Plc)

Clotrimazole 100 mg Canesten 100mg pessaries | 6 pessary [P] £3.50 DT = £3.50

Clotrimazole 200 mg Canesten 200mg pessaries | 3 pessary [P] £3.10 DT = £3.10

Clotrimazole 500 mg Canesten 500mg Soft Gel pessaries | 1 pessary [P] £6.99 DT = £3.57

Canesten 500mg pessaries | 1 pessary [P] [N] DT = £3.57

Canesten Vaginal 500mg pessaries | 1 pessary [PoM] £2.00 DT = £3.57

#### Cream

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates

#### ► Clotrimazole (Non-proprietary)

Clotrimazole 10 mg per 1 gram Clotrimazole 1% cream | 20 gram [P] £2.06 DT = £0.72 | 50 gram [P] £5.45 DT = £1.80

#### ► Canesten (clotrimazole) (Bayer Plc)

Clotrimazole 10 mg per 1 gram Canesten 1% cream | 20 gram [P] £2.20 DT = £0.72 | 50 gram [P] £3.50 DT = £1.80

Canesten Antifungal 1% cream | 20 gram [P] £1.85 DT = £0.72

Clotrimazole 20 mg per 1 gram Canesten 2% thrush cream | 20 gram [P] £4.76 DT = £4.76

Clotrimazole 100 mg per 1 gram Canesten 10% VC cream | 5 gram [PoM] £4.50 DT = £6.23

## Econazole nitrate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### GYNO-PEVARYL<sup>®</sup> ONCE

#### Vaginal and vulval candidiasis

##### ► BY VAGINA

- Child: 1 pessary for 1 dose, pessary to be inserted at night, dose to be repeated once if necessary

#### GYNO-PEVARYL<sup>®</sup> PESSARY

#### Vaginal and vulval candidiasis

##### ► BY VAGINA

- Child: 1 pessary daily for 3 days, pessary to be inserted at night, course can be repeated once if necessary

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid intravaginal preparations (particularly those that require use of an applicator) in young girls who are not sexually active, unless there is no alternative
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Skin reactions
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Vaginal burning
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Cream and pessaries damage latex condoms and diaphragms.
- **PREGNANCY** Pregnant women need a longer duration of treatment, usually about 7 days, to clear the infection.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Pessary

- ▶ **Gyno-Pevaryl** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)  
**Econazole nitrate 150 mg** Gyno-Pevaryl Once 150mg vaginal pessary | 1 pessary [PoM] £3.69  
 Gyno-Pevaryl 150mg vaginal pessaries | 3 pessary [PoM] £4.17

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antifungals, azoles
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Skin reactions
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** *Gyno-Daktarin*® damages latex condoms and diaphragms.
- **PREGNANCY** Pregnant women need a longer duration of treatment, usually about 7 days, to clear the infection.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Capsule

EXCIPIENTS: May contain hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

- ▶ **Gyno-Daktarin** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)  
**Miconazole nitrate 1.2 gram** Gyno-Daktarin 1200mg vaginal capsules | 1 capsule [PoM] £2.94 DT price = £2.94

## Fenticonazole nitrate

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Vaginal and vulva candidiasis

- ▶ **BY VAGINA USING CAPSULES**
- ▶ **Child:** 200 mg daily for 3 days, alternatively 600 mg daily for 1 dose, to be inserted at night
- ▶ **BY VAGINA USING CREAM**
- ▶ **Child:** 1 applicatorful twice daily for 3 days

##### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ 1 applicatorful delivers a 5 g dose of fenticonazole 2 %.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid intravaginal preparations (particularly those that require use of an applicator) in young girls who are not sexually active, unless there is no alternative
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Paraesthesia
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Intravaginal cream and vaginal capsules damage latex condoms and diaphragms.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Cream

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), propylene glycol, woolfat and related substances (including lanolin)

- ▶ **Gynoxin** (Recordati Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Fenticonazole nitrate 20 mg per 1 gram** Gynoxin 2% vaginal cream | 30 gram [PoM] £3.74

##### Capsule

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

- ▶ **Gynoxin** (Recordati Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Fenticonazole nitrate 200 mg** Gynoxin 200mg vaginal capsules | 3 capsule [PoM] £2.42  
**Fenticonazole nitrate 600 mg** Gynoxin 600mg vaginal capsules | 1 capsule [PoM] £2.62

## Miconazole

11-Oct-2017

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Vaginal and vulval candidiasis

- ▶ **BY VAGINA USING CAPSULES**
- ▶ **Child:** 1 capsule daily, ovule to be inserted at night as a single dose, dose can be repeated once if necessary

#### CAUTIONS

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 - avoid intravaginal preparations (particularly those that require use of an applicator) in young girls who are not sexually active, unless there is no alternative



# Chapter 8

## Immune system and malignant disease

### CONTENTS

<b>Immune system</b>	page 517
<b>1 Immune system disorders and transplantation</b>	517
<b>Malignant disease</b>	528
<b>1 Antibody responsive malignancy</b>	528
<b>2 Cytotoxic responsive malignancy</b>	531
2.1 Cytotoxic drug-induced side effects	555

2.1a Hyperuricaemia associated with cytotoxic drugs	page 556
<b>3 Immunotherapy responsive malignancy</b>	557
<b>4 Targeted therapy responsive malignancy</b>	559

## Immune system

### 1 Immune system disorders and transplantation

#### Immune response

##### Inflammatory bowel disease

Azathioprine p. 518, mercaptopurine p. 543, or once weekly methotrexate p. 543 are used to induce remission in unresponsive or chronically active Crohn's disease. Azathioprine or mercaptopurine may also be helpful for retaining remission in frequently relapsing inflammatory bowel disease; once weekly methotrexate is used in Crohn's disease when azathioprine or mercaptopurine are ineffective or not tolerated. Response to azathioprine or mercaptopurine may not become apparent for several months. Folic acid p. 574 should be given to reduce the possibility of methotrexate toxicity. Folic acid is usually given weekly on a different day to the methotrexate; alternative regimens may be used in some settings.

Ciclosporin p. 519 (cyclosporin) is a potent immunosuppressant and is markedly nephrotoxic. In children with severe ulcerative colitis unresponsive to other treatment, ciclosporin may reduce the need for urgent colorectal surgery.

##### Immunosuppressant therapy

Immunosuppressants are used to suppress rejection in organ transplant recipients and to treat a variety of chronic inflammatory and autoimmune diseases. Solid organ transplant patients are maintained on drug regimens, which may include antiproliferative drugs (azathioprine or mycophenolate mofetil p. 527), calcineurin inhibitors (ciclosporin or tacrolimus p. 522), corticosteroids, or sirolimus p. 521. Choice is dependent on the type of organ, time after transplant, and clinical condition of the patient. Specialist management is required and other immunomodulators may be used to initiate treatment or to treat rejection.

##### Impaired immune responsiveness

Infections in the immunocompromised child can be severe and show atypical features. Specific local protocols should be followed for the management of infection. Corticosteroids may suppress clinical signs of infection and allow diseases such as septicaemia or tuberculosis to reach an advanced stage before being recognised. Children should be up-to-

date with their childhood vaccinations before initiation of immunosuppressant therapy (e.g. before transplantation); vaccination with varicella-zoster vaccine is also necessary during this period— **important**: normal immunoglobulin administration should be considered as soon as possible after measles exposure, and varicella-zoster immunoglobulin (VZIG) is recommended for individuals who have significant chickenpox (varicella) exposure. Specialist advice should be sought on the use of live vaccines for those being treated with immunosuppressive drugs.

##### Antiproliferative immunosuppressants

Azathioprine is widely used for transplant recipients and it is also used to treat a number of auto-immune conditions, usually when corticosteroid therapy alone provides inadequate control. It is metabolised to mercaptopurine, and doses should be reduced (to one quarter of the original dose in children) when allopurinol p. 556 is given concurrently.

Mycophenolate mofetil is metabolised to mycophenolic acid which has a more selective mode of action than azathioprine.

There is evidence that compared with similar regimens incorporating azathioprine, mycophenolate mofetil may reduce the risk of acute rejection episodes; the risk of opportunistic infections (particularly due to tissue-invasive cytomegalovirus) and the occurrence of blood disorders such as leucopenia may be higher. Children may suffer a high incidence of side-effects, particularly gastrointestinal effects, calling for temporary reduction in dose or interruption of treatment.

Cyclophosphamide p. 535 is less commonly prescribed as an immunosuppressant.

##### Corticosteroids and other immunosuppressants

The corticosteroids prednisolone p. 442 and dexamethasone p. 439 are widely used in paediatric oncology; they have a marked antitumour effect. Dexamethasone is preferred for acute lymphoblastic leukaemia whilst prednisolone may be used for Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, and B-cell lymphoma and leukaemia.

Dexamethasone is the corticosteroid of choice in paediatric supportive and palliative care. For children who are not receiving a corticosteroid as a component of their chemotherapy, dexamethasone may be used to reduce raised intracranial pressure, or to help control emesis when combined with an appropriate anti-emetic.

The corticosteroids are also powerful immunosuppressants. They are used to prevent organ transplant rejection, and in high dose to treat rejection episodes.

Ciclosporin (cyclosporin), a calcineurin inhibitor, is a potent immunosuppressant which is virtually non-

myelotoxic but markedly nephrotoxic. It may be used in organ and tissue transplantation, for prevention of graft rejection following bone marrow, kidney, liver, pancreas, heart, lung, and heart-lung transplantation, and for prophylaxis and treatment of graft-versus-host disease. Ciclosporin also has a role in steroid-sensitive and steroid-resistant nephrotic syndrome; in corticosteroid-sensitive nephrotic syndrome it may be given with prednisolone.

Tacrolimus is also a calcineurin inhibitor. Although not chemically related to ciclosporin it has a similar mode of action and side-effects.

**Other drugs used for immune system disorders and transplantation** Hydroxychloroquine sulfate, p. 639 · Rituximab, p. 530

## IMMUNE SERA AND IMMUNOGLOBULINS > IMMUNOGLOBULINS

### Antithymocyte immunoglobulin (rabbit)

28-Nov-2017

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Prophylaxis of organ rejection in heart allograft recipients

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 1–2.5 mg/kg daily for 3–5 days, start treatment on day of transplantation, to be given over at least 6 hours

##### Prophylaxis of organ rejection in renal allograft recipients

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 1–17 years: 1–1.5 mg/kg daily for 3–9 days, start treatment on day of transplantation, to be given over at least 6 hours

##### Treatment of corticosteroid-resistant allograft rejection in renal transplantation

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 1–17 years: 1.5 mg/kg daily for 7–14 days, to be given over at least 6 hours

#### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, calculate dose on the basis of ideal body weight.

#### • CONTRA-INDICATIONS Infection

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Chills · diarrhoea · dysphagia · dyspnoea · fever · hypotension · infection · lymphopenia · myalgia · nausea · neoplasm malignant · neoplasms · neutropenia · reactivation of infection · secondary malignancy · sepsis · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Cytokine release syndrome · hepatic disorders · hypersensitivity · infusion related reaction

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Tolerability is increased by pretreatment with an intravenous corticosteroid and antihistamine; an antipyretic drug such as paracetamol may also be beneficial.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood count.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *continuous intravenous infusion* reconstitute each vial with 5 mL water for injections to produce a solution of 5 mg/mL; gently rotate to dissolve. Dilute requisite dose with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% to an approx. concentration of 0.5 mg/mL; begin infusion immediately after dilution; give through an in-line filter (pore size 0.22 micron); give incompatible with unfractionated heparin and

hydrocortisone in glucose infusion—precipitation reported.

#### • NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- **Immunosuppressive therapy for kidney transplant in children and young people (October 2017)** NICE TA482

Antithymocyte immunoglobulin (rabbit) is not recommended as an initial treatment to prevent organ rejection in patients having a kidney transplant. Patients whose treatment was started within the NHS before this guidance was published should have the option to continue treatment, without change to their funding arrangements, until they and their NHS clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA482](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA482)

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Powder and solvent for solution for infusion

- **Thymoglobulin** (Sanofi)

Antithymocyte immunoglobulin (rabbit) 25 mg Thymoglobuline 25mg powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £158.77 (Hospital only)

## IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > ANTIMETABOLITES

### Azathioprine

21-Mar-2018

- **DRUG ACTION** Azathioprine is metabolised to mercaptopurine.

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Severe ulcerative colitis | Severe Crohn's disease

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–17 years: Initially 2 mg/kg once daily, then increased if necessary up to 2.5 mg/kg once daily

##### Systemic lupus erythematosus | Vasculitis | Autoimmune conditions usually when corticosteroid therapy alone has proved inadequate

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Initially 1 mg/kg daily, then adjusted according to response to 3 mg/kg daily, consider withdrawal if no improvement within 3 months; maximum 3 mg/kg per day

##### Suppression of transplant rejection

###### ► BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: Maintenance 1–3 mg/kg daily, adjusted according to response, consult local treatment protocol for details, oral route preferred, but if oral route is not possible then can be given by intravenous infusion, the total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2 divided doses

#### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- Manufacturer advises reduce dose to one-quarter of the usual dose with concurrent use of allopurinol.

- **CAUTIONS** Reduced thiopurine methyltransferase activity

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: azathioprine

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

#### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Bone marrow depression (dose-related) · increased risk of infection · leucopenia · thrombocytopenia
- **Uncommon** Anaemia · hepatic disorders · hypersensitivity · pancreatitis
- **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · bone marrow disorders · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal disorders · neoplasms · photosensitivity reaction · pneumonitis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
- **Frequency not known** Nodular regenerative hyperplasia · sinusoidal obstruction syndrome

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ With oral use Nausea

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Side-effects may require drug withdrawal.

**Hypersensitivity reactions** Hypersensitivity reactions (including malaise, dizziness, vomiting, diarrhoea, fever, rigors, myalgia, arthralgia, rash, hypotension and renal dysfunction) call for immediate withdrawal.

**Neutropenia and thrombocytopenia** Neutropenia is dose-dependent. Management of neutropenia and thrombocytopenia requires careful monitoring and dose adjustment.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in hypersensitivity to mercaptopurine.
- **PREGNANCY** Transplant patients immunosuppressed with azathioprine should not discontinue it on becoming pregnant. However, there have been reports of premature birth and low birth-weight following exposure to azathioprine, particularly in combination with corticosteroids. Spontaneous abortion has been reported following maternal or paternal exposure. Azathioprine is teratogenic in *animal* studies. The use of azathioprine during pregnancy needs to be supervised in specialist units. Treatment should not generally be initiated during pregnancy.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in low concentration. No evidence of harm in small studies—use if potential benefit outweighs risk.

**HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.

**Monitoring** Monitor liver function.

**RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.

**PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING**

Thiopurine methyltransferase (TPMT) The enzyme thiopurine methyltransferase (TPMT) metabolises thiopurine drugs (azathioprine, mercaptopurine, tioguanine); the risk of myelosuppression is increased in patients with reduced activity of the enzyme, particularly for the few individuals in whom TPMT activity is undetectable. Consider measuring TPMT activity before starting azathioprine, mercaptopurine, or tioguanine therapy. Patients with absent TPMT activity should not receive thiopurine drugs; those with reduced TPMT activity may be treated under specialist supervision.

**MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ Monitor for toxicity throughout treatment.
- ▶ Monitor full blood count weekly (more frequently with higher doses or if severe hepatic or renal impairment) for first 4 weeks (manufacturer advises weekly monitoring for 8 weeks but evidence of practical value unsatisfactory), thereafter reduce frequency of monitoring to at least every 3 months.
- ▶ Blood tests and monitoring for signs of myelosuppression are essential in long-term treatment.

**DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- ▶ With intravenous use Consult local treatment protocol for details. For *intravenous injection*, reconstitute 50 mg with 5–15 mL Water for Injections; give over at least 1 minute. For *intravenous infusion*, reconstitute 50 mg with 5–15 mL Water for Injections; dilute requisite dose to a concentration of 0.25–2.5 mg/mL in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Intravenous injection is alkaline and very irritant. Intravenous route should therefore be used **only** if oral route not feasible and discontinued as soon as oral route can be tolerated. To reduce irritation flush line with infusion fluid.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of

azathioprine is required, the following strength is used: 50 mg/5 mL.

**PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Azathioprine for inflammatory bowel disease [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/azathioprine-inflammatory-bowel-disease-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/azathioprine-inflammatory-bowel-disease-0)

Medicines for Children leaflet: Azathioprine for renal (kidney) transplant [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/azathioprine-renal-kidney-transplant-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/azathioprine-renal-kidney-transplant-0)

Medicines for Children leaflet: Azathioprine for severe atopic eczema [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/azathioprine-severe-atopic-eczema-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/azathioprine-severe-atopic-eczema-0)

Bone marrow suppression Patients and their carers should be warned to report immediately any signs or symptoms of bone marrow suppression e.g. inexplicable bruising or bleeding, infection.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

**▶ Azathioprine (Non-proprietary)**

**Azathioprine 25 mg** Azathioprine 25mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £8.41 DT = £1.30 | 100 tablet [PoM] £4.64–£33.26

**Azathioprine 50 mg** Azathioprine 50mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £7.28 DT = £2.20 | 100 tablet [PoM] £3.93–£16.55

**▶ Azapress (Ennogen Pharma Ltd)**

**Azathioprine 50 mg** Azapress 50mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £2.83 DT = £2.20

**Imuran (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)**

**Azathioprine 25 mg** Imuran 25mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £10.99

**Azathioprine 50 mg** Imuran 50mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £7.99

**Powder for solution for injection****▶ Imuran (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)**

**Azathioprine 50 mg** Imuran 50mg powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £15.38

## IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > CALCINEURIN INHIBITORS AND RELATED DRUGS

### Ciclosporin

01-Sep-2016

(Cyclosporin)

- **DRUG ACTION** Ciclosporin inhibits production and release of lymphokines, thereby suppressing cell-mediated immune response.

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Refractory ulcerative colitis****▶ BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child 2-17 years: Initially 2 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 5 mg/kg twice daily), dose adjusted according to blood-ciclosporin concentration and response

**▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

- ▶ Child 3-17 years: Initially 0.5–1 mg/kg twice daily, dose adjusted according to blood-ciclosporin concentration and response

### Short-term treatment of severe atopic dermatitis where conventional therapy ineffective or inappropriate (administered on expert advice)

**▶ BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child: Initially 1.25 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 2.5 mg/kg twice daily) usual maximum duration of 8 weeks but may be used for longer under specialist supervision, if good initial response not achieved within 2 weeks, increase dose rapidly up to maximum

continued →

**Short-term treatment of very severe atopic dermatitis where conventional therapy ineffective or inappropriate (administered on expert advice)**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: 2.5 mg/kg twice daily usual maximum duration of 8 weeks but may be used for longer under specialist supervision

**Severe psoriasis where conventional therapy ineffective or inappropriate (administered on expert advice)**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: Initially 1.25 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 2.5 mg/kg twice daily), increased gradually to maximum if no improvement within 1 month, initial dose of 2.5 mg/kg twice daily justified if condition requires rapid improvement; discontinue if inadequate response after 3 months at the optimum dose; max. duration of treatment usually 1 year unless other treatments cannot be used

**Prevention of graft rejection following bone-marrow, kidney, liver, pancreas, heart, lung, and heart-lung transplantation | Prevention and treatment of graft-versus-host disease**

- BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult local protocol)

**Nephrotic syndrome**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: 3 mg/kg twice daily, dose can be increased if necessary in corticosteroid-resistant disease; for maintenance reduce to lowest effective dose according to whole blood-ciclosporin concentrations, proteinuria, and renal function

**DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS**

- With oral use Manufacturer advises increase dose by 50% or switch to intravenous administration with concurrent use of octreotide.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 3 months. Not licensed for use in children under 16 years for atopic eczema (dermatitis) or psoriasis. Not licensed for use in ulcerative colitis.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CICLOSPORIN MUST BE PRESCRIBED AND DISPENSED BY BRAND NAME (DECEMBER 2009)

Patients should be stabilised on a particular brand of oral ciclosporin because switching between formulations without close monitoring may lead to clinically important changes in blood-ciclosporin concentration.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Abnormal baseline renal function (in non-transplant indications) · malignancy (in non-transplant indications) · uncontrolled hypertension (in non-transplant indications) · uncontrolled infections (in non-transplant indications)
- **CAUTIONS** Hyperuricaemia · in atopic dermatitis, active herpes simplex infections—allow infection to clear before starting (if they occur during treatment withdraw if severe) · in atopic dermatitis, *Staphylococcus aureus* skin infections—not absolute contra-indication providing controlled (but avoid erythromycin unless no other alternative) · in psoriasis treat, patients with malignant pre-malignant conditions of skin only after appropriate treatment (and if no other option) · in uveitis, Behcet's syndrome (monitor neurological status) · lymphoproliferative disorders (discontinue treatment) · malignancy
- **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
- Malignancy In psoriasis, exclude malignancies (including those of skin and cervix) before starting (biopsy any lesions not typical of psoriasis) and treat patients with malignant or pre-malignant conditions of skin only after

appropriate treatment (and if no other option); discontinue if lymphoproliferative disorder develops.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ciclosporin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · diarrhoea · electrolyte imbalance · fatigue · fever · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · gingival hyperplasia · hair changes · headaches · hepatic disorders · hyperglycaemia · hyperlipidaemia · hypertension · hyperuricaemia · leucopenia · muscle complaints · nausea · paraesthesia · peptic ulcer · renal impairment (renal structural changes on long-term administration) · seizure · skin reactions · tremor · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Anaemia · encephalopathy · oedema · thrombocytopenia · weight increased
- **Rare or very rare** Eye inflammation · gynaecomastia · haemolytic anaemia · idiopathic intracranial hypertension · menstrual disorder · multifocal motor neuropathy · muscle weakness · myopathy · pancreatitis
- **Frequency not known** Pain in extremity · thrombotic microangiopathy
- **PREGNANCY** Crosses placenta; manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—toxicity in *animal* studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** **Dose adjustments** Extensively metabolised by the liver—manufacturer advises consider dose adjustment based on bilirubin and liver enzyme levels.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** **Dose adjustments** In non-transplant indications, manufacturer advises establishing baseline renal function before initiation of treatment; if baseline function is impaired in non-transplant indications, except nephrotic syndrome—avoid. In nephrotic syndrome, manufacturer advises initial dose should not exceed 2.5 mg/kg daily in patients with baseline renal impairment. *During treatment* for non-transplant indications, manufacturer recommends if the estimated glomerular filtration rate decreases by more than 25% below baseline on more than one measurement, reduce dose by 25–50%. If the estimated glomerular filtration rate decrease from baseline exceeds 35%, further dose reduction should be considered (even if within normal range); discontinue if reduction not successful within 1 month.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
- Monitor whole blood ciclosporin concentration (trough level dependent on indication—consult local treatment protocol for details).
- In long-term management of nephrotic syndrome, perform renal biopsies every 1–2 years.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
- With oral use Mix solution with orange or apple juice, or other soft drink (to improve taste) immediately before taking (and rinse with more to ensure total dose). Do not mix with grapefruit juice. Total daily dose should be taken in 2 divided doses.
- With intravenous use For intermittent *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 0.5–2.5 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 2–6 hours; not to be used with PVC equipment. Observe patient for signs of anaphylaxis for at least 30 minutes after starting infusion and at frequent intervals thereafter.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**
- Brand name prescribing Prescribing and dispensing of ciclosporin should be by brand name to avoid inadvertent switching. If it is necessary to switch a patient to a different brand of ciclosporin, the patient should be monitored closely for changes in blood-ciclosporin concentration, serum creatinine, blood pressure, and transplant function (for transplant indications).

*Sandimmun*® capsules and oral solution are available direct from Novartis for patients who cannot be transferred to a different oral preparation.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and carers should be counselled on the administration of different formulations of ciclosporin.

Manufacturer advises avoid excessive exposure to UV light, including sunlight. In psoriasis and atopic dermatitis, avoid use of UVB or PUVA.  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Ciclosporin for nephrotic syndrome [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ciclosporin-nephrotic-syndrome-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ciclosporin-nephrotic-syndrome-0)

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Solution for infusion

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 11

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol, polyoxyl castor oils

- **Sandimmun** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
**Ciclosporin 50 mg per 1 ml** Sandimmun 250mg/5ml concentrate for solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £110.05  
Sandimmun 50mg/1ml concentrate for solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £23.23

### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 11

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol, propylene glycol

- **Capsorin** (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)  
**Ciclosporin 100 mg per 1 ml** Capsorin 100mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 50 ml [PoM] £86.96
- **Neoral** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
**Ciclosporin 100 mg per 1 ml** Neoral 100mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 50 ml [PoM] £102.30
- **Sandimmun** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
**Ciclosporin 100 mg per 1 ml** Sandimmun 100mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 50 ml [PoM] £164.72

### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 11

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Ethanol, ethyl lactate, propylene glycol

- **Ciclosporin (Non-proprietary)**  
**Ciclosporin 25 mg** Ciclosporin 25mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £  
DT = £18.37
- Ciclosporin 50 mg** Ciclosporin 50mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £  
DT = £35.97
- Ciclosporin 100 mg** Ciclosporin 100mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £  
30 capsule [PoM] £ DT = £68.28
- **Capimune** (Mylan)  
**Ciclosporin 25 mg** Capimune 25mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£13.05 DT = £18.37
- Ciclosporin 50 mg** Capimune 50mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£25.50 DT = £35.97
- Ciclosporin 100 mg** Capimune 100mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£48.50 DT = £68.28
- **Capsorin** (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)  
**Ciclosporin 25 mg** Capsorin 25mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£11.14 DT = £18.37
- Ciclosporin 50 mg** Capsorin 50mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£21.80 DT = £35.97
- Ciclosporin 100 mg** Capsorin 100mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£41.59 DT = £68.28
- **Deximune** (Dexcel-Pharma Ltd)  
**Ciclosporin 25 mg** Deximune 25mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£13.06 DT = £18.37
- Ciclosporin 50 mg** Deximune 50mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£25.60 DT = £35.97
- Ciclosporin 100 mg** Deximune 100mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£48.90 DT = £68.28
- **Neoral** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
**Ciclosporin 10 mg** Neoral 10mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £18.25  
DT = £18.25
- Ciclosporin 25 mg** Neoral 25mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £18.37  
DT = £18.37
- Ciclosporin 50 mg** Neoral 50mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £35.97  
DT = £35.97
- Ciclosporin 100 mg** Neoral 100mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£68.28 DT = £68.28

- **Sandimmun** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
**Ciclosporin 25 mg** Sandimmun 25mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£29.58 DT = £18.37
- Ciclosporin 50 mg** Sandimmun 50mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£57.92 DT = £35.97
- Ciclosporin 100 mg** Sandimmun 100mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£109.93 DT = £68.28
- **Vanquoral** (Teva UK Ltd)  
**Ciclosporin 10 mg** Vanquoral 10mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM]  
£12.75 DT = £18.25
- Ciclosporin 25 mg** Vanquoral 25mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£13.05 DT = £18.37
- Ciclosporin 50 mg** Vanquoral 50mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£25.59 DT = £35.97
- Ciclosporin 100 mg** Vanquoral 100mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£48.89 DT = £68.28

## Sirolimus

16-Nov-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Sirolimus is a non-calcineurin inhibiting immunosuppressant.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**As a component of immunosuppressive therapy for renal transplantation in children and adolescents only if intolerance necessitates the withdrawal of a calcineurin inhibitor**

- **BY MOUTH**
- **Child:** (consult local protocol)

### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- The 500 microgram tablet is not bioequivalent to the 1 mg and 2 mg tablets. Multiples of 500 microgram tablets should **not** be used as a substitute for other tablet strengths.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CAUTIONS** Hyperlipidaemia · increased susceptibility to infection (especially urinary-tract infection) · increased susceptibility to lymphoma and other malignancies, particularly of the skin (limit exposure to UV light)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sirolimus
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · anaemia · arthralgia · ascites · constipation · diabetes mellitus · diarrhoea · dyslipidaemia · electrolyte imbalance · embolism and thrombosis · fever · haemolytic uraemic syndrome · haemorrhage · headache · healing impaired · hyperglycaemia · hypertension · increased risk of infection · leucopenia · lymphatic vessel disorders · menstrual cycle irregularities · nausea · neoplasms · neutropenia · oedema · osteonecrosis · ovarian cyst · pain · pancreatitis · pericardial effusion · proteinuria · respiratory disorders · sepsis · skin reactions · stomatitis · tachycardia · thrombocytopenia
  - **Uncommon** Antibiotic associated colitis · focal segmental glomerulosclerosis · hepatic failure · nephrotic syndrome · pancytopenia · post transplant lymphoproliferative disorder
  - **Frequency not known** Posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome (PRES)
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception must be used during treatment and for 12 weeks after stopping.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless essential—toxicity in *animal* studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Dose reduction may be necessary, consult local treatment protocols for details.  
**Monitoring** Monitor whole blood-sirolimus level closely and consult local treatment protocol in hepatic impairment.



### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Monitor whole blood-sirolimus trough concentration (Afro-Caribbean patients may require higher doses).
- ▶ Monitor kidney function when given with ciclosporin; monitor lipids; monitor urine proteins.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Food may affect absorption (take at the same time with respect to food). Sirolimus oral solution should be mixed with at least 60 mL water or orange juice in a glass or plastic container immediately before taking; refill container with at least 120 mL of water or orange juice and drink immediately (to ensure total dose). Do not mix with any other liquids.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient or carers should be given advice on how to administer sirolimus.

Patients should be advised to avoid excessive exposure to UV light.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### NICE decisions

- ▶ Immunosuppressive therapy for kidney transplant in children and young people (October 2017) NICE TA482  
Sirolimus is not recommended as an initial treatment to prevent organ rejection in patients having a kidney transplant. Patients whose treatment was started within the NHS before this guidance was published should have the option to continue treatment, without change to their funding arrangements, until they and their NHS clinician consider it appropriate to stop.  
[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA482](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA482)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Ethanol

#### ▶ Rapamune (Pfizer Ltd)

**Sirolimus 1 mg per 1 mL** Rapamune 1mg/mL oral solution sugar-free | 60 mL [PoM] £162.41

#### Tablet

#### ▶ Rapamune (Pfizer Ltd)

**Sirolimus 500 microgram** Rapamune 0.5mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £69.00 DT = £69.00

**Sirolimus 1 mg** Rapamune 1mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £86.49 DT = £86.49

**Sirolimus 2 mg** Rapamune 2mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £172.98 DT = £172.98

## Tacrolimus

19-Mar-2018

● **DRUG ACTION** Tacrolimus is a calcineurin inhibitor.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### ADOPT <sup>®</sup>

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following liver transplantation, starting 12 hours after transplantation**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

▶ Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following kidney transplantation, starting within 24 hours of transplantation**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

▶ Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, a lower initial dose of 100 micrograms/kg twice daily has been used in adolescents to prevent very high 'trough' concentrations

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation following antibody induction, starting within 5 days of transplantation**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Neonate: Initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

▶ Child: Initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation without antibody induction, starting within 12 hours of transplantation**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be given as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion).

▶ Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be given as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion)

**Allograft rejection resistant to conventional immunosuppressive therapy**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Child: Seek specialist advice

#### CAPEXION <sup>®</sup>

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following liver transplantation, starting 12 hours after transplantation**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

▶ Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following kidney transplantation, starting within 24 hours of transplantation**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

▶ Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, a lower initial dose of 100 micrograms/kg twice daily has been used in adolescents to prevent very high 'trough' concentrations

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation following antibody induction, starting within 5 days of transplantation**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Neonate: Initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

▶ Child: Initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation without antibody induction, starting within 12 hours of transplantation**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be given as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion).

▶ Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be given as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion)

**Allograft rejection resistant to conventional immunosuppressive therapy**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Child: Seek specialist advice

#### MODIGRAF <sup>®</sup>

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following liver transplantation, starting 12 hours after transplantation**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

▶ Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following kidney transplantation, starting within 24 hours of transplantation**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

► Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, a lower initial dose of 100 micrograms/kg twice daily has been used in adolescents to prevent very high 'trough' concentrations

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation following antibody induction, starting within 5 days of transplantation**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

► Child: Initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation without antibody induction, starting within 12 hours of transplantation**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be given as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion).

► Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be given as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion)

**Allograft rejection resistant to conventional immunosuppressive therapy**

► BY MOUTH

► Child: Seek specialist advice

**PROGRAF® CAPSULES****Prophylaxis of graft rejection following liver transplantation, starting 12 hours after transplantation**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

► Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following kidney transplantation, starting within 24 hours of transplantation**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

► Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, a lower initial dose of 100 micrograms/kg twice daily has been used in adolescents to prevent very high 'trough' concentrations

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation following antibody induction, starting within 5 days of transplantation**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

► Child: Initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation without antibody induction, starting within 12 hours of transplantation**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be given as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion).

► Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be given as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion)

**Allograft rejection resistant to conventional immunosuppressive therapy**

► BY MOUTH

► Child: Seek specialist advice

**PROGRAF® INFUSION****Prophylaxis of graft rejection following liver transplantation, starting 12 hours after transplantation when oral route not appropriate**

► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: Initially 50 micrograms/kg daily for up to 7 days (then transfer to oral therapy), dose to be administered over 24 hours.

► Child: Initially 50 micrograms/kg daily for up to 7 days (then transfer to oral therapy), dose to be administered over 24 hours

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following kidney transplantation, starting within 24 hours of transplantation when oral route not appropriate**

► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: Initially 75–100 micrograms/kg daily for up to 7 days (then transfer to oral therapy), dose to be administered over 24 hours.

► Child: Initially 75–100 micrograms/kg daily for up to 7 days (then transfer to oral therapy), dose to be administered over 24 hours

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation without antibody induction, starting within 12 hours of transplantation**

► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: Initially 30–50 micrograms/kg daily for up to 7 days (then transfer to oral therapy), dose to be administered over 24 hours.

► Child: Initially 30–50 micrograms/kg daily for up to 7 days (then transfer to oral therapy), dose to be administered over 24 hours

**Allograft rejection resistant to conventional immunosuppressive therapy**

► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: Seek specialist advice (consult local protocol)

**TACNI®****Prophylaxis of graft rejection following liver transplantation, starting 12 hours after transplantation**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

► Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following kidney transplantation, starting within 24 hours of transplantation**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

► Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, a lower initial dose of 100 micrograms/kg twice daily has been used in adolescents to prevent very high 'trough' concentrations

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation following antibody induction, starting within 5 days of transplantation**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

► Child: Initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily

continued →

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation without antibody induction, starting within 12 hours of transplantation**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be given as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion).

- Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be given as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion)

**Allograft rejection resistant to conventional immunosuppressive therapy**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Seek specialist advice

**VIVADEX®****Prophylaxis of graft rejection following liver transplantation, starting 12 hours after transplantation**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

- Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following kidney transplantation, starting within 24 hours of transplantation**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

- Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, a lower initial dose of 100 micrograms/kg twice daily has been used in adolescents to prevent very high 'trough' concentrations

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation following antibody induction, starting within 5 days of transplantation**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily.

- Child: Initially 50–150 micrograms/kg twice daily

**Prophylaxis of graft rejection following heart transplantation without antibody induction, starting within 12 hours of transplantation**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be given as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion).

- Child: Initially 150 micrograms/kg twice daily, dose to be given as soon as clinically possible (8–12 hours after discontinuation of intravenous infusion)

**Allograft rejection resistant to conventional immunosuppressive therapy**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Seek specialist advice

● **UNLICENSED USE**

**ADVAGRAF®** *Advagraf®* not licensed for use in children.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: ORAL TACROLIMUS PRODUCTS: PRESCRIBE AND DISPENSE BY BRAND NAME ONLY, TO MINIMISE THE RISK OF INADVERTENT SWITCHING BETWEEN PRODUCTS, WHICH HAS BEEN ASSOCIATED WITH REPORTS OF TOXICITY AND GRAFT REJECTION (JUNE 2012)

Inadvertent switching between oral tacrolimus products has been associated with reports of toxicity and graft rejection. To ensure maintenance of therapeutic response when a patient is stabilised on a particular brand, oral tacrolimus products should be prescribed and dispensed by brand name only.

- *Adoport®*, *Prograf®*, *Capexion®*, *Tacni®*, and *Vivadex®* are immediate-release capsules that are taken twice daily, once in the morning and once in the evening;
- *Modigraf®* granules are used to prepare an immediate-release oral suspension which is taken twice daily, once in the morning and once in the evening;
- *Advagraf®* is a prolonged-release capsule that is taken once daily in the morning.

Switching between tacrolimus brands requires careful supervision and therapeutic monitoring by an appropriate specialist.

Important: *Envarsus®* is not interchangeable with other oral tacrolimus containing products; the MHRA has advised (June 2012) that oral tacrolimus products should be prescribed and dispensed by brand only.

- **CAUTIONS** Increased risk of infections · lymphoproliferative disorders · malignancies · neurotoxicity · QT-interval prolongation · UV light (avoid excessive exposure to sunlight and sunlamps)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tacrolimus

● **SIDE-EFFECTS****GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · ascites · asthenic conditions · bile duct disorders · confusion · consciousness impaired · constipation · coronary artery disease · cough · depression · diabetes mellitus · diarrhoea · dizziness · dysgraphia · dyslipidaemia · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · embolism and thrombosis · eye disorder · febrile disorders · fluid imbalance · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · gastrointestinal inflammatory disorders · haemorrhage · hallucination · headache · hearing impairment · hepatic disorders · hyperglycaemia · hyperhidrosis · hypertension · hyperuricaemia · hypotension · increased risk of infection · ischaemia · joint disorders · leucocytosis · leucopenia · metabolic acidosis · mood altered · muscle spasms · nasal complaints · nausea · nephropathy · nervous system disorder · oedema · oral disorders · pain · peripheral neuropathy · peripheral vascular disease · primary transplant dysfunction · psychiatric disorder · renal impairment · renal tubular necrosis · respiratory disorders · seizure · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · sleep disorders · temperature sensation altered · thrombocytopenia · tremor · urinary tract disorder · urine abnormal · vision disorders · vomiting · weight changes
- **Uncommon** Asthma · cardiac arrest · cardiomyopathy · cataract · central nervous system haemorrhage · chest discomfort · coagulation disorders · coma · dysmenorrhoea · encephalopathy · feeling abnormal · haemolytic anaemia · heart failure · hypoglycaemia · hypoproteinaemia · influenza like illness · memory loss · multi organ failure · neutropenia · palpitations · pancreatitis · pancytopenia · paralysis · paresis · photosensitivity reaction · psychotic disorder · shock · speech disorder · stroke · ventricular hypertrophy

- **Rare or very rare** Fall · hirsutism · mobility decreased · muscle tone increased · muscle weakness · pancreatic pseudocyst · pericardial effusion · QT interval prolongation · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · sinusoidal obstruction syndrome · thirst · ulcer

- **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · malignancy · neoplasms · polyomavirus-associated nephropathy · progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy · pure red cell aplasia

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- With intravenous use Anaphylactoid reaction (due to excipient) · hypersensitivity

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Cardiomyopathy has been reported to occur primarily in children with

tacrolimus blood trough concentrations much higher than the recommended maximum levels. Patients should be monitored by echocardiography for hypertrophic changes—consider dose reduction or discontinuation if these occur.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if history of hypersensitivity to macrolides.
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Exclude pregnancy before treatment.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—crosses the placenta and risk of premature delivery, intra-uterine growth restriction, and hyperkalaemia.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—present in breast milk (following systemic administration).
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Dose reduction may be necessary in severe impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ After initial dosing, and for maintenance treatment, tacrolimus doses should be adjusted according to whole-blood concentration. Monitor whole blood-tacrolimus trough concentration (especially during episodes of diarrhoea)—consult local treatment protocol for details.
  - ▶ Monitor blood pressure, ECG (for hypertrophic changes—risk of cardiomyopathy), fasting blood-glucose concentration, haematological and neurological (including visual) and coagulation parameters, electrolytes, hepatic and renal function.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *continuous intravenous infusion* over 24 hours, dilute to a concentration of 4–100 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%, to a total volume between 20–500mL. Tacrolimus is incompatible with PVC.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of tacrolimus is required, the following strength is used: 5 mg/5 mL.  
**PROGRAF® INFUSION** Intravenous route should only be used if oral route is inappropriate.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Avoid excessive exposure to UV light including sunlight.  
 Medicines for Children leaflet: Tacrolimus for prevention of transplant rejection [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tacrolimus-for-prevention-of-transplant-rejection](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tacrolimus-for-prevention-of-transplant-rejection)  
**Driving and skilled tasks** May affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**  
**NICE decisions**
  - ▶ Immunosuppressive therapy for kidney transplant in children and young people (October 2017) NICE TA482  
 Immediate-release tacrolimus, when used as part of an immunosuppressive regimen, is recommended as an initial option to prevent organ rejection in patients having a kidney transplant. Treatment should be started with the least expensive product, but if this is not suitable, an alternative dosage form may be given. Tacrolimus granules for oral suspension (*Modigraf®*) should be used only if the manufacturer provides it at the same price or lower than that agreed with the Commercial Medicines Unit. Patients whose treatment was started within the NHS before this guidance was published should have the option to continue treatment, without change to their funding arrangements, until they and their NHS clinician consider it appropriate to stop.  
[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA482](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA482)
  - ▶ Immunosuppressive therapy for kidney transplant in children and young people (October 2017) NICE TA482  
 Prolonged-release tacrolimus is not recommended as an initial treatment to prevent organ rejection in patients having a kidney transplant. Patients whose treatment was

started within the NHS before this guidance was published should have the option to continue treatment, without change to their funding arrangements, until they and their NHS clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA482](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA482)

### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (December 2010) that tacrolimus granules for suspension (*Modigraf®*) are accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland in patients for whom tacrolimus is an appropriate choice of immunosuppressive therapy and where small changes (less than 500 micrograms) in dosing increments are required (such as, in paediatric patients) or in seriously ill patients who are unable to swallow tacrolimus capsules.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13, 23

#### ▶ *Modigraf* (Astellas Pharma Ltd)

**Tacrolimus (as Tacrolimus monohydrate)**

**200 microgram** *Modigraf* 0.2mg granules sachets sugar-free | 50 sachet [PoM] £71.30 DT = £71.30

**Tacrolimus (as Tacrolimus monohydrate) 1 mg** *Modigraf* 1mg granules sachets sugar-free | 50 sachet [PoM] £356.65 DT = £356.65

#### Solution for infusion

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Polyoxyl castor oils

#### ▶ *Prograf* (Astellas Pharma Ltd)

**Tacrolimus 5 mg per 1 ml** *Prograf* 5mg/1ml solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £584.51

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 23

#### ▶ *Adoport* (Sandoz Ltd)

**Tacrolimus 500 microgram** *Adoport* 0.5mg capsules | 50 capsule [PoM] £42.92 DT = £61.88

**Tacrolimus 1 mg** *Adoport* 1mg capsules | 50 capsule [PoM] £55.69 DT = £80.28 | 100 capsule [PoM] £111.36

**Tacrolimus 5 mg** *Adoport* 5mg capsules | 50 capsule [PoM] £205.74 DT = £296.58

#### ▶ *Capexion* (Mylan)

**Tacrolimus 500 microgram** *Capexion* 0.5mg capsules | 50 capsule [PoM] £52.50 DT = £61.88

#### ▶ *Prograf* (Astellas Pharma Ltd)

**Tacrolimus 500 microgram** *Prograf* 500microgram capsules | 50 capsule [PoM] £61.88 DT = £61.88

**Tacrolimus 1 mg** *Prograf* 1mg capsules | 50 capsule [PoM] £80.28 DT = £80.28 | 100 capsule [PoM] £160.54

**Tacrolimus 5 mg** *Prograf* 5mg capsules | 50 capsule [PoM] £296.58 DT = £296.58

#### ▶ *Tacni* (Teva UK Ltd)

**Tacrolimus 500 microgram** *Tacni* 0.5mg capsules | 50 capsule [PoM] £50.48 DT = £61.88

**Tacrolimus 1 mg** *Tacni* 1mg capsules | 50 capsule [PoM] £65.49 DT = £80.28 | 100 capsule [PoM] £130.99

**Tacrolimus 5 mg** *Tacni* 5mg capsules | 50 capsule [PoM] £242.01 DT = £296.58

## IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES

### Canakinumab

- **DRUG ACTION** Canakinumab is a recombinant human monoclonal antibody that selectively inhibits interleukin-1 beta receptor binding.

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment of cryopyrin-associated periodic syndromes, including severe forms of familial cold auto-inflammatory syndrome (or familial cold urticaria), Muckle-Wells syndrome, and neonatal-onset multisystem inflammatory disease (also known as chronic infantile neurological cutaneous and articular syndrome)**

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Child: (consult product literature)

**Active systemic juvenile idiopathic arthritis (in combination with methotrexate or alone) in children who have had an inadequate response to NSAIDs and systemic corticosteroids**

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Child 2–17 years (body-weight 7.5 kg and above): 4 mg/kg every 4 weeks (max. per dose 300 mg)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active infection · leucopenia · neutropenia
- **CAUTIONS** History of recurrent infection · latent and active tuberculosis · predisposition to infection

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Vaccinations** Patients should receive all recommended vaccinations (including pneumococcal and inactivated influenza vaccine) before starting treatment; avoid live vaccines unless potential benefit outweighs risk—consult product literature for further information.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: monoclonal antibodies
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Abdominal pain upper · arthralgia · asthenia · dizziness · increased risk of infection · leucopenia · neutropenia · pain · proteinuria · vertigo
  - **Uncommon** Gastroesophageal reflux disease
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required during treatment and for up to 3 months after last dose.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Consider if benefit outweighs risk—not known if present in human milk.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** No information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Limited information available but manufacturer advises no dose adjustment required.
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Patients should be evaluated for latent and active tuberculosis before starting treatment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - Monitor full blood count including neutrophil count before starting treatment, 1–2 months after starting treatment, and periodically thereafter.
  - Monitor for signs and symptoms of tuberculosis during and after treatment.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

- **Ilaris** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Canakinumab 150 mg per 1 ml** Ilaris 150mg/1ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial (POM) £9,927.80

## IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES > ANTI-LYMPHOCYTE

### Basiliximab

16-Nov-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Basiliximab is a monoclonal antibody that acts as an interleukin-2 receptor antagonist and prevents T-lymphocyte proliferation.

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prophylaxis of acute rejection in allogeneic renal transplantation used in combination with ciclosporin and corticosteroid-containing immunosuppression regimens (specialist use only)**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child 1–17 years (body-weight up to 35 kg): Initially 10 mg, dose to be administered within 2 hours before transplant surgery, followed by 10 mg after 4 days, dose administered after transplant surgery, withhold second dose if severe hypersensitivity or graft loss occurs
- Child 1–17 years (body-weight 35 kg and above): Initially 20 mg, administered within 2 hours before transplant surgery, followed by 20 mg after 4 days, dose to be administered after surgery, withhold second dose if severe hypersensitivity or graft loss occurs

- **CAUTIONS** Off-label use in cardiac transplantation—increased risk of serious cardiac side-effects
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: monoclonal antibodies
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Capillary leak syndrome · constipation · cytokine release syndrome · dyspnoea · fever · heart failure · hypersensitivity · hypertension · hypertrichosis · hypotension · increased risk of infection · myocardial infarction · pulmonary oedema · respiratory disorders · sepsis · skin reactions · sneezing · tachycardia
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Adequate contraception must be used during treatment and for 16 weeks after last dose.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute reconstituted solution to a concentration not exceeding 400 micrograms/mL, with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 20–30 minutes.

#### • NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- **Immunosuppressive therapy for kidney transplant in children and young people (October 2017)** NICE TA482 Basiliximab, when used as part of an immunosuppressive regimen that includes a calcineurin inhibitor, is recommended as an initial option to prevent organ rejection in patients having a kidney transplant. The use of basiliximab with tacrolimus is outside the terms of the marketing authorisation. If this combination is prescribed, the prescriber should follow relevant professional guidance, taking full responsibility for the decision. Informed consent should be obtained and documented. Patients whose treatment was started within the NHS before this guidance was published should have the option to continue treatment, without change to their funding arrangements, until they and their NHS clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA482](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA482)



## MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Powder and solvent for solution for injection

#### Simulect (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Basiliximab 10 mg** Simulect 10mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £758.69 (Hospital only)

**Basiliximab 20 mg** Simulect 20mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £842.38 (Hospital only)

## IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > PURINE SYNTHESIS INHIBITORS

### Mycophenolate mofetil

09-Mar-2018

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prophylaxis of acute rejection in renal transplantation (in combination with a corticosteroid and ciclosporin) (under expert supervision)**

##### BY MOUTH

Child: 600 mg/m<sup>2</sup> twice daily, consult local protocol for details; maximum 2 g per day

**Prophylaxis of acute rejection in renal transplantation (in combination with a corticosteroid and tacrolimus) (under expert supervision)**

##### BY MOUTH

Child: 300 mg/m<sup>2</sup> twice daily, consult local protocol for details; maximum 2 g per day

**Prophylaxis of acute rejection in hepatic transplantation (in combination with a corticosteroid and ciclosporin or tacrolimus) (under expert supervision)**

##### BY MOUTH

Child: 10 mg/kg twice daily, increased to 20 mg/kg twice daily, consult local protocol for details; maximum 2 g per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 2 years for the prophylaxis of acute rejection in renal transplantation. Not licensed for use in children for the prophylaxis of acute rejection in hepatic transplantation.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: MYCOPHENOLATE MOFETIL, MYCOPHENOLIC ACID: UPDATED CONTRACEPTION ADVICE FOR MALE PATIENTS (FEBRUARY 2018)

Available clinical evidence does not indicate an increased risk of malformations or miscarriage in pregnancies where the father was taking mycophenolate medicines, however mycophenolate mofetil and mycophenolic acid are genotoxic and a risk cannot be fully excluded; for further information, see Conception and contraception and Patient and carer advice.

- **CAUTIONS** Active serious gastro-intestinal disease (risk of haemorrhage, ulceration and perforation) · children (higher incidence of side-effects may call for temporary reduction of dose or interruption) · delayed graft function · increased susceptibility to skin cancer (avoid exposure to strong sunlight) · risk of hypogammaglobulinaemia or bronchiectasis when used in combination with other immunosuppressants

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Hypogammaglobulinaemia or bronchiectasis Measure serum immunoglobulin levels if recurrent infections develop, and consider bronchiectasis or pulmonary fibrosis if persistent respiratory symptoms such as cough and dyspnoea develop.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: mycophenolate
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- **Common or very common** Acidosis · alopecia · anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · bone marrow disorders · burping · chills · confusion ·

constipation · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dyslipidaemia · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · gastrointestinal haemorrhage · gout · headache · hepatic disorders · hyperbilirubinaemia · hyperglycaemia · hypertension · hyperuricaemia · hypotension · increased risk of infection · insomnia · leucocytosis · leucopenia · malaise · nausea · neoplasms · neuromuscular dysfunction · oedema · oral disorders · pain · pancreatitis · paraesthesia · renal impairment · respiratory disorders · seizure · sepsis · skin reactions · tachycardia · taste altered · thinking abnormal · thrombocytopenia · tremor · vasodilation · vomiting · weight decreased

#### Uncommon Agranulocytosis

#### Frequency not known Endocarditis ·

hypogammaglobulinaemia · malignancy · meningitis · neutropenia · polyomavirus-associated nephropathy · progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy · pure red cell aplasia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Cases of pure red cell aplasia have been reported with mycophenolate mofetil; dose reduction or discontinuation should be considered under specialist supervision.

#### CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION

**Pregnancy prevention** The MHRA advises to exclude pregnancy in females of child-bearing potential before treatment—2 pregnancy tests 8–10 days apart are recommended. Women should use at least 1 method of effective contraception before and during treatment, and for 6 weeks after discontinuation—2 methods of effective contraception are preferred. Male patients or their female partner should use effective contraception during treatment and for 90 days after discontinuation.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless no suitable alternative—congenital malformations and spontaneous abortions reported.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises consider dose reduction if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 25 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor full blood count every week for 4 weeks then twice a month for 2 months then every month in the first year (consider interrupting treatment if neutropenia develops).
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Tablets and capsules not appropriate for dose titration in children with body surface are less than 1.25 m<sup>2</sup>.

#### PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Mycophenolate mofetil for nephrotic syndrome [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mycophenolate-mofetil-for-nephrotic-syndrome](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mycophenolate-mofetil-for-nephrotic-syndrome)

**Pregnancy prevention advice** The MHRA advises that prescribers should ensure that female patients understand the need to comply with the pregnancy prevention advice, and they should be informed to seek immediate medical attention if there is a possibility of pregnancy; male patients planning to conceive children should be informed of the implications of both immunosuppression and the effect of the prescribed medications on the pregnancy. **Bone marrow suppression** Patients should be warned to report immediately any signs or symptoms of bone marrow suppression e.g. infection or inexplicable bruising or bleeding.

## ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

### NICE decisions

- ▶ **Immunosuppressive therapy for kidney transplant in children and young people (October 2017)** NICE TA482  
Mycophenolate mofetil, when used as part of an immunosuppressive regimen, is recommended as an initial option to prevent organ rejection in patients having a kidney transplant. Treatment should be started with the least expensive product, but if this is not suitable, an alternative dosage form may be given. The use of mycophenolate mofetil with tacrolimus is outside the terms of the marketing authorisation. If this combination is prescribed, the prescriber should follow relevant professional guidance, taking full responsibility for the decision. Informed consent should be obtained and documented.

Patients whose treatment was started within the NHS before this guidance was published should have the option to continue treatment, without change to their funding arrangements, until they and their NHS clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA482](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA482)

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

### Tablet

#### ▶ **Mycophenolate mofetil (Non-proprietary)**

**Mycophenolate mofetil 500 mg** Mycophenolate mofetil 500mg tablets | 50 tablet [PoM] £42.50 DT = £5.66

#### ▶ **CellCept** (Roche Products Ltd)

**Mycophenolate mofetil 500 mg** CellCept 500mg tablets | 50 tablet [PoM] £82.26 DT = £5.66

#### ▶ **Myfenax** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Mycophenolate mofetil 500 mg** Myfenax 500mg tablets | 50 tablet [PoM] £78.15 DT = £5.66

### Oral suspension

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

#### ▶ **CellCept** (Roche Products Ltd)

**Mycophenolate mofetil 200 mg per 1 ml** CellCept 1g/5ml oral suspension sugar-free | 175 ml [PoM] £115.16 DT = £115.16

### Capsule

#### ▶ **Mycophenolate mofetil (Non-proprietary)**

**Mycophenolate mofetil 250 mg** Mycophenolate mofetil 250mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £82.26 DT = £82.26

#### ▶ **CellCept** (Roche Products Ltd)

**Mycophenolate mofetil 250 mg** CellCept 250mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £82.26 DT = £82.26

#### ▶ **Myfenax** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Mycophenolate mofetil 250 mg** Myfenax 250mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £78.15 DT = £82.26

# Malignant disease

## 1 Antibody responsive malignancy

### ANTINEOPLASTIC DRUGS > MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES

#### Gemtuzumab ozogamicin

21-May-2018

- **DRUG ACTION** Gemtuzumab ozogamicin is a monoclonal antibody that binds to CD33-expressing tumour cells to induce cell cycle arrest and apoptotic cell death.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### CD33-positive acute myeloid leukaemia (specialist use only)

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child 15-17 years: (consult product literature)

- **CAUTIONS** Adverse-risk cytogenetics (consider benefits and risks of treatment, consult product literature) • haematopoietic stem cell transplantation (increased risk of hepatotoxicity) • pre-medication recommended to minimise adverse reactions

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ **Pre-medication** Serious infusion-related reactions can occur and gemtuzumab ozogamicin should only be administered when appropriately trained staff and resuscitation facilities are immediately available; manufacturer advises pre-medication with a corticosteroid, paracetamol and antihistamine 1 hour prior to dosing, and to take appropriate measures to help prevent the development of tumour lysis-related hyperuricaemia—consult product literature.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anaemia • appetite decreased • ascites • chills • constipation • decreased leucocytes • diarrhoea • dyspnoea • fatigue • fever • gastrointestinal discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • haemorrhage • headache • hepatic disorders • hyperbilirubinaemia • hyperglycaemia • hypertension • hypotension • infection • infusion related reaction (including fatal cases) • multi organ failure • nausea • neutropenia • oedema • pancytopenia • sinusoidal obstruction syndrome • skin reactions • stomatitis • tachycardia • thrombocytopenia • tumour lysis syndrome (including fatal cases) • vomiting
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Interstitial pneumonia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Infusion-related reactions (including fatal cases) can occur during the first 24 hours after administration. Manufacturer advises interrupt treatment immediately and treat as clinically indicated (consult product literature); permanent discontinuation should be strongly considered in patients who develop signs and symptoms of anaphylaxis.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises women of childbearing potential should use 2 methods of effective contraception during treatment and for at least 7 months after the last dose; male patients should use 2 methods of effective contraception during treatment and for at least 4 months after the last dose if their partner is of childbearing potential. See also Pregnancy and reproductive function in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—toxicity in animal studies. See also Pregnancy and reproductive function in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid during treatment and for at least one month after the last dose—no information available.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in moderate-to-severe impairment—increased risk of developing hepatotoxicity; postpone treatment if serum transaminases (ALT or AST) greater than 2.5 times the upper limit of normal or total bilirubin greater than 2 times the upper limit of normal.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

► Manufacturer advises monitor complete blood counts prior to each dose as well as signs and symptoms of infection, bleeding and other effects of myelosuppression during treatment; dose interruption or discontinuation of treatment may be required—consult product literature.

► Manufacturer advises monitor for signs and symptoms of infusion-related reactions—close clinical monitoring, including pulse, blood pressure and temperature, should be performed during infusion; monitor for signs and symptoms of tumour lysis syndrome.

► Manufacturer advises monitor for signs and symptoms of hepatotoxicity (including hepatic veno-occlusive disease); liver tests should be monitored prior to each dose—consult product literature.

#### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Gemtuzumab ozogamicin is a biological medicine. Biological medicines must be prescribed and dispensed by brand name, see *Biological medicines* and *Biosimilar medicines*, under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

● **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Manufacturer advises store in a refrigerator (2–8°C) and protect from light—consult product literature for storage conditions after reconstitution and dilution.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be counselled on the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of fatigue and headache.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Powder for solution for infusion**

► **Mylotarg** (Pfizer Ltd) ▼

Gemtuzumab ozogamicin 5 mg Mylotarg 5mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial **[PoM]** £6,300.00 (Hospital only)

## Ipilimumab

24-May-2018

● **DRUG ACTION** Ipilimumab is a monoclonal antibody which causes T-cell activation resulting in tumour cell death.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Advanced melanoma (specialist use only)**

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

► Child 12–17 years: 3 mg/kg every 3 weeks for 4 doses, for dose interruption or discontinuation of treatment due to immune-related side-effects—consult product literature

#### ● CAUTIONS

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For full details consult product literature.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: monoclonal antibodies

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · cancer pain · chills · confusion · constipation · cough · dehydration · diarrhoea · dizziness · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · eye discomfort · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort ·

gastrointestinal disorders · haemorrhage · headache · hepatic disorders · hypophytosis · hypopituitarism · hypotension · hypothyroidism · influenza like illness · lethargy · lymphopenia · mucositis · muscle complaints · nausea · nerve disorders · night sweats · oedema · pain · skin reactions · vasodilation · vision disorders · vomiting · weight decreased

► **Uncommon** Adrenal hypofunction · alkalosis · allergic rhinitis · amenorrhoea · arrhythmias · arthritis · brain oedema · depression · dysarthria · eosinophilia · eye inflammation · glomerulonephritis · haemolytic anaemia · hair colour changes · hyperthyroidism · hypogonadism · increased risk of infection · infusion related reaction · libido decreased · meningitis · movement disorders · multi organ failure · muscle weakness · myopathy · nephritis autoimmune · neutropenia · pancreatitis · paraneoplastic syndrome · peripheral ischaemia · polymyalgia rheumatica · psychiatric disorder · pulmonary oedema · renal failure · renal tubular acidosis · respiratory disorders · sepsis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · syncope · systemic inflammatory response syndrome · thrombocytopenia · tremor · tumour lysis syndrome · vascular disorders · vasculitis

► **Rare or very rare** Myasthenia gravis · proteinuria · thyroiditis

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** A corticosteroid can be used after starting ipilimumab, to treat immune-related reactions.

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Use effective contraception.

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—toxicity in *animal* studies.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in *animal* studies.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution if plasma-bilirubin concentration greater than 3 times upper limit of normal range or if plasma-transaminase concentration 5 times or greater than the upper limit of normal range.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

► Manufacturer advises monitor liver function tests and thyroid function prior to initiation of treatment and before each dose.

► Manufacturer advises monitor for signs or symptoms of immune-related side-effects and gastrointestinal perforation—consult product literature.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises for *intravenous infusion*, give undiluted or dilute to a concentration of 1–4 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; give over 90 minutes.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Infusion-related side-effects have been reported; premedication with paracetamol and an antihistamine is recommended.

● **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Manufacturer advises store in a refrigerator (2–8°C) and protect from light—consult product literature for further information regarding storage conditions outside refrigerator and after preparation of the infusion.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

► **Ipilimumab** for previously treated advanced (unresectable or metastatic) melanoma (December 2012) NICE TA268 Ipilimumab is recommended as an option for the treatment of advanced (unresectable or metastatic) melanoma in patients who have received prior therapy, only if the manufacturer provides ipilimumab with the discount agreed in the patient access scheme.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA268](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA268)

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- **Yervoy** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd) ▼  
Ipilimumab 5 mg per 1 ml Yervoy 50mg/10ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £3,750.00 (Hospital only)  
Yervoy 200mg/40ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £15,000.00 (Hospital only)

**IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES > ANTI-LYMPHOCYTE****Anti-lymphocyte monoclonal antibodies**

- **DRUG ACTION** The anti-lymphocyte monoclonal antibodies cause lysis of B lymphocytes.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

All anti-lymphocyte monoclonal antibodies should be given under the supervision of an experienced specialist, in an environment where full resuscitation facilities are immediately available.

**SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · arthralgia · asthenia · back pain · chills · constipation · cough · cytokine release syndrome · depression · diarrhoea · dyspnoea · fever · flushing · headache · hypersensitivity (discontinue permanently) · hypertension · hypotension · increased risk of infection · infusion related reaction · leucopenia · nausea · neutropenia · pruritus · sweat changes · tachycardia · thrombocytopenia · tumour lysis syndrome · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy
- **Rare or very rare** Hepatitis B reactivation
- **Frequency not known** Anaphylactic reaction

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

**Infusion-related side-effects** In rare cases infusion reactions may be fatal. Infusion-related side-effects occur predominantly during the first infusion. Patients should receive premedication before administration of anti-lymphocyte monoclonal antibodies to reduce these effects —consult product literature for details of individual regimens. The infusion may have to be stopped temporarily and the infusion-related effects treated—consult product literature for appropriate management.

**Cytokine release syndrome** Fatalities following severe cytokine release syndrome (characterised by severe dyspnoea) and associated with features of tumour lysis syndrome have occurred after infusions of anti-lymphocyte monoclonal antibodies. Patients with a high tumour burden as well as those with pulmonary insufficiency or infiltration are at increased risk and should be monitored very closely (and a slower rate of infusion considered).

- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** All patients should be screened for hepatitis B before treatment.

**Rituximab**

above

21-Feb-2018

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Post-transplantation lymphoproliferative disease (under expert supervision) | Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (under expert supervision) | Hodgkin's lymphoma (under expert supervision) | Severe cases of resistant immune modulated disease including idiopathic thrombocytopenia purpura, haemolytic anaemia, and systemic lupus erythematosus (under expert supervision)**

- **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- **Child:** Patients should receive premedication before each dose (consult product literature for details) (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CAUTIONS** History of cardiovascular disease; in adults exacerbation of angina, arrhythmia, and heart failure have been reported · transient hypotension occurs frequently during infusion (anti-hypertensives may need to be withheld for 12 hours before infusion)

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- **Hepatitis B infection and reactivation** Hepatitis B infection and reactivation (including fatal cases) have been reported in patients taking **rituximab**. Patients with positive hepatitis B serology should be referred to a liver specialist for monitoring and initiation of antiviral therapy before treatment initiation; treatment should not be initiated in patients with evidence of current hepatitis B infection until the infection has been adequately treated. Patients should be closely monitored for clinical and laboratory signs of active hepatitis B infection during treatment and for up to a year following the last infusion (consult product literature).

For full details on cautions, consult product literature or local treatment protocol.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: monoclonal antibodies

**SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Angioedema · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · bone marrow disorders · bursitis · cancer pain · cardiac disorder · chest pain · conjunctivitis · cough aggravated · dizziness · dysphagia · ear pain · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · hearing impairment · hepatitis B · hypercholesterolaemia · hyperglycaemia · hypocalcaemia · increased risk of infection · insomnia · lacrimation disorder · malaise · migraine · multi organ failure · muscle tone increased · myalgia · myocardial infarction · nerve disorders · neutropenia · oedema · oral disorders · oropharyngeal pain · osteoarthritis · pain · postural hypotension · respiratory disorders · sensation abnormal · sepsis · skin reactions · throat irritation · vasodilation · weight decreased
- **Uncommon** Asthma · coagulation disorder · haemolytic anaemia · heart failure · hypoxia · ischaemic heart disease · lymphadenopathy · taste altered
- **Rare or very rare** Facial paralysis · hypersensitivity · renal failure · Stevens-Johnson syndrome (discontinue) · toxic epidermal necrolysis (discontinue) · vasculitis · vision disorders
- **Frequency not known** Hypogammaglobulinaemia · posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome (PRES) · psychiatric disorder · seizure

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Associated with infections, sometimes severe, including tuberculosis, septicemia, and hepatitis B reactivation.

Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy has been reported in association with rituximab; patients should be monitored for cognitive, neurological, or psychiatric signs and symptoms. If progressive multifocal

leucoencephalopathy is suspected, suspend treatment until it has been excluded.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception (in both sexes) required during and for 12 months after treatment.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless potential benefit to mother outweighs risk of B-lymphocyte depletion in fetus.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid breast-feeding during and for 12 months after treatment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** For full details on monitoring requirements consult product literature.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Rituximab is a biological medicine. Biological medicines must be prescribed and dispensed by brand name, see *Biological medicines* and *Biosimilar medicines*, under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for infusion

##### ► MabThera (Roche Products Ltd)

**Rituximab 10 mg per 1 ml** MabThera 100mg/10ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 2 vial [PoM] £349.25  
MabThera 500mg/50ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £873.15

##### ► Rixathon (Sandoz Ltd) ▼

**Rituximab 10 mg per 1 ml** Rixathon 100mg/10ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 2 vial [PoM] £314.33 (Hospital only)  
Rixathon 500mg/50ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £785.84 (Hospital only) | 2 vial [PoM] £1,571.67 (Hospital only)

##### ► Truxima (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd) ▼

**Rituximab 10 mg per 1 ml** Truxima 100mg/10ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 2 vial [PoM] £314.33  
Truxima 500mg/50ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £785.84

## 2 Cytotoxic responsive malignancy

### Cytotoxic drugs

#### Overview

The management of childhood cancer is complex and is generally confined to specialist regional centres and some associated shared-care units.

Cytotoxic drugs have both anti-cancer activity and the potential for damage to normal tissue. In children, chemotherapy is almost always started with curative intent, but may be continued as palliation if the disease is refractory.

Chemotherapy with a combination of two or more cytotoxic drugs aims to reduce the development of resistance and to improve cytotoxic effect. Treatment protocols generally incorporate a series of treatment courses at defined intervals with clear criteria for starting each course, such as adequate bone-marrow recovery and renal or cardiac function. The principal component of treatment for leukaemias in children is cytotoxic therapy, whereas solid tumours may be managed with surgery or radiotherapy in addition to chemotherapy.

Only medical or nursing staff who have received appropriate training should administer parenteral cytotoxics. In most instances central venous access will be required for the intravenous administration of cytotoxics to children; care is required to avoid the risk of extravasation (see Side-effects of Cytotoxic Drugs and their Management).

### Cytotoxic drug handling guidelines

- Trained personnel should reconstitute cytotoxics
- Reconstitution should be carried out in designated pharmacy areas
- Protective clothing (including gloves, gowns, and masks) should be worn
- The eyes should be protected and means of first aid should be specified
- Pregnant staff should avoid exposure to cytotoxic drugs (all females of child-bearing age should be informed of the reproductive hazard)
- Use local procedures for dealing with spillages and safe disposal of waste material, including syringes, containers, and absorbent material
- Staff exposure to cytotoxic drugs should be monitored

### Intrathecal chemotherapy

A Health Service Circular (HSC 2008/001) provides guidance on the introduction of safe practice in NHS Trusts where intrathecal chemotherapy is administered; written local guidance covering all aspects of national guidance should be available. Support for training programmes is also available. Copies, and further information may be obtained from:

Department of Health  
PO Box 777  
London  
SE1 6XH  
Fax: 01623 724524

It is also available from the Department of Health website ([www.dh.gov.uk](http://www.dh.gov.uk)).

### Safe systems for cytotoxic medicines

Safe system requirements for cytotoxic medicines:

- Cytotoxic drugs for the treatment of cancer should be given as part of a wider pathway of care that is co-ordinated by a multi-disciplinary team
- Cytotoxic drugs should be prescribed, dispensed and administered only in the context of a written protocol or treatment plan
- Injectable cytotoxic drugs should only be dispensed if they are prepared for administration
- Oral cytotoxic medicines should be dispensed with clear directions for use

### Cytotoxic drugs: important safety information

#### Risks of incorrect dosing of oral anti-cancer medicines

The National Patient Safety Agency has advised (January 2008) that the prescribing and use of oral cytotoxic medicines should be carried out to the same standard as parenteral cytotoxic therapy. Standards to be followed to achieve this include:

- non-specialists who prescribe or administer on-going oral cytotoxic medication should have access to written protocols and treatment plans, including guidance on the monitoring and treatment of toxicity;
- staff dispensing oral cytotoxic medicines should confirm that the prescribed dose is appropriate for the patient. Patients should have written information that includes details of the intended oral anti-cancer regimen, the treatment plan, and arrangements for monitoring, taken from the original protocol from the initiating hospital. Staff dispensing oral cytotoxic medicines should also have access to this information, and to advice from an experienced cancer pharmacist in the initiating hospital.

### Cytotoxic drug doses

Doses of cytotoxic drugs are determined using a variety of different methods including age, body-surface area, or body-weight. Alternatively, doses may be fixed. Doses may be further adjusted following consideration of a patient's neutrophil count, renal and hepatic function, and history of



previous adverse effects to the cytotoxic drug. Doses may also differ depending on whether a drug is used alone or in combination.

Because of the complexity of dosage regimens in the treatment of malignant disease, dose statements have been omitted from many of the drug entries in this chapter.

### Cytotoxic drugs: effect on pregnancy and reproductive function

Most cytotoxic drugs are teratogenic and should not be administered during pregnancy, especially during the first trimester. Exclude pregnancy before treatment with cytotoxic drugs. Considerable caution is necessary if a pregnant woman presents with cancer requiring chemotherapy, and specialist advice should always be sought.

Contraceptive advice should be given to men and women before cytotoxic therapy begins (and should cover the duration of contraception required after therapy has ended).

Alkylating drugs can have an adverse effect on gametogenesis, which may be reversible particularly in females. Regimens that do not contain an alkylating drug or procarbazine may have less effect on fertility, but those with an alkylating drug or procarbazine carry the risk of causing permanent male sterility (there is no effect on potency). Pretreatment counselling and consideration of sperm storage may be appropriate. Women are less severely affected, though the span of reproductive life may be shortened by the onset of a premature menopause. No increase in fetal abnormalities or abortion rate has been recorded in patients who remain fertile after cytotoxic chemotherapy. Amenorrhoea may occur, which also may be reversible.

### Management of cytotoxic drug side-effects

#### Gastro-intestinal effects

Management of gastrointestinal effects of cytotoxic drugs includes the use of antacids,  $H_2$ -receptor antagonists, and proton pump inhibitors to protect the gastric mucosa, laxatives to treat constipation, and enteral and parenteral nutritional support.

#### Oral mucositis

Good oral hygiene keeps the mouth clean and moist and helps to prevent mucositis; prevention is more effective than treatment of the complication. Good oral hygiene measures for children over 6 months include brushing teeth with a soft small brush with fluoride toothpaste 2–3 times daily, and rinsing the mouth frequently. Daily fluoride supplements can be used on the advice of the child's dental team. For children under 6 months or when it is not possible to brush teeth, carers should be instructed how to clean the mouth using an oral sponge moistened with water or with an antimicrobial solution such as diluted chlorhexidine. Mucositis related to chemotherapy can be extremely painful and may, in some circumstances, require opioid analgesia. Secondary infection with candida is frequent; treatment with a systemically absorbed antifungal, such as fluconazole p. 374, is effective.

#### Nausea and vomiting

Nausea and vomiting cause considerable distress to many children who receive chemotherapy, and to a lesser extent abdominal radiotherapy, and may lead to refusal of further treatment; prophylaxis of nausea and vomiting is therefore extremely important. Symptoms may be acute (occurring within 24 hours of treatment), delayed (first occurring more than 24 hours after treatment), or anticipatory (occurring prior to subsequent doses). Delayed and anticipatory symptoms are more difficult to control than acute symptoms and require different management.

Susceptibility to nausea and vomiting may increase with repeated exposure to the cytotoxic drug.

Drugs may be divided according to their emetogenic potential and some examples are given below, but the symptoms vary according to the dose, to other drugs administered, and to the individual's susceptibility to emetogenic stimuli.

*Mildly emetogenic treatment*— fluorouracil, etoposide p. 549, low doses of methotrexate p. 543, the vinca alkaloids, and abdominal radiotherapy.

*Moderately emetogenic treatment*— carboplatin p. 548, doxorubicin hydrochloride p. 539, intermediate and low doses of cyclophosphamide p. 535, mitoxantrone p. 540, and high doses of methotrexate.

*Highly emetogenic treatment*— cisplatin p. 548, dacarbazine p. 536, and high doses of alkylating drugs.

Anti-emetic drugs, when given regularly, help prevent or ameliorate emesis associated with chemotherapy in children.

**Prevention of acute symptoms:** For patients at low risk of emesis, pretreatment with a  $5HT_3$ -receptor antagonist may be of benefit.

For patients at high risk of *emesis* or when other treatment is inadequate, a  $5HT_3$ -receptor antagonist is often highly effective. The addition of dexamethasone p. 439 and other anti-emetics may also be required.

**Prevention of delayed symptoms:** dexamethasone, given by mouth, is the drug of choice for preventing delayed symptoms; it is used alone or with metoclopramide hydrochloride p. 262. Due to the risks of neurological side-effects, metoclopramide hydrochloride should only be used in children as a second-line option. The  $5HT_3$ -receptor antagonists may have a role in preventing uncontrolled symptoms. Aprepitant p. 263 given in combination with a  $5HT_3$ -receptor antagonist (with or without dexamethasone) is licensed for prevention of nausea and vomiting associated with highly and moderately emetogenic cancer chemotherapy.

**Prevention of anticipatory symptoms:** Good symptom control is the best way to prevent anticipatory symptoms. Lorazepam p. 222 can be helpful for its amnesiac, sedative, and anxiolytic effects.

#### Bone-marrow suppression

All cytotoxic drugs except vincristine sulfate p. 550 and bleomycin p. 547 cause bone-marrow suppression. This commonly occurs 7 to 10 days after administration, but is delayed for certain drugs, such as melphalan p. 537. Peripheral blood counts must be checked before each treatment. The duration and severity of neutropenia can be reduced by the use of granulocyte-colony stimulating factors; their use should be reserved for children who have previously experienced severe neutropenia.

Cytotoxic drugs may be contra-indicated in children with acute infection; any infection should be treated before, or when starting, cytotoxic drugs.

Infection in a child with neutropenia requires immediate broad-spectrum antibacterial treatment that covers all likely pathogens. Appropriate bacteriological investigations should be conducted as soon as possible. Children taking cytotoxic drugs who have signs or symptoms of infection (or their carers) should be advised to seek prompt medical attention. All children should be investigated and treated under the supervision of an appropriate oncology or haematology specialist. Antifungal treatment may be required in a child with prolonged neutropenia or fever lasting longer than 4–5 days. Chickenpox and measles can be particularly hazardous in immunocompromised children. Varicella-zoster immunoglobulin p. 775 is indicated if the child does not have immunity against varicella and has had close contact with infectious chickenpox or herpes zoster. Antiviral prophylaxis can be considered in addition to varicella-zoster immunoglobulin or as an alternative if varicella-zoster immunoglobulin is inappropriate. If an immunocompromised child has come into close contact with

an infectious individual with measles, normal immunoglobulin p. 773 should be given.

For advice on the use of live vaccines in individuals with impaired immune response, see Vaccines.

### Alopecia

Reversible hair loss is a common complication, although it varies in degree between drugs and individual patients.

### Long-term and delayed toxicity

Cytotoxic drugs may produce specific organ-related toxicity in children (e.g. cardiotoxicity with doxorubicin hydrochloride or nephrotoxicity with cisplatin and ifosfamide p. 536). Manifestations of such toxicity may not appear for several months or even years after cancer treatment. Careful follow-up of survivors of childhood cancer is therefore vital; national and local guidelines have been developed to facilitate this.

### Thromboembolism

Venous thromboembolism can be a complication of cancer itself, but chemotherapy increases the risk.

### Tumour lysis syndrome

Tumour lysis syndrome occurs secondary to spontaneous or treatment related rapid destruction of malignant cells. Patients at risk of tumour lysis syndrome include those with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (especially if high grade and bulky disease), Burkitt's lymphoma, acute lymphoblastic leukaemia and acute myeloid leukaemia (particularly if high white blood cell counts or bulky disease), and occasionally those with solid tumours. Pre-existing hyperuricaemia, dehydration and renal impairment are also predisposing factors. Features, include hyperkalaemia, hyperuricaemia, and hyperphosphataemia with hypocalcaemia; renal damage and arrhythmias can follow. Early recognition of patients at risk, and initiation of prophylaxis or therapy for tumour lysis syndrome, is essential.

### Treatment of cytotoxic drug side-effects

#### Hyperuricaemia

Hyperuricaemia, which may be present in high-grade lymphoma and leukaemia, can be markedly worsened by chemotherapy and is associated with acute renal failure.

Allopurinol p. 556 is used routinely in children at low to moderate risk of hyperuricaemia. It should be started 24 hours before treatment; patients should be adequately hydrated (consideration should be given to omitting phosphate and potassium from hydration fluids). The dose of mercaptopurine p. 543 or azathioprine p. 518 should be reduced if allopurinol is given concomitantly.

Rasburicase p. 556 is a recombinant urate oxidase used in children who are at high-risk of developing hyperuricaemia. It rapidly reduces plasma-uric acid concentration and may be of particular value in preventing complications following treatment of leukaemias or bulky lymphomas.

#### Methotrexate-induced mucositis and myelosuppression

Folinic acid p. 555 (given as calcium folinate) is used to counteract the folate-antagonist action of methotrexate and thus speed recovery from methotrexate-induced mucositis or myelosuppression ('folinic acid rescue').

The calcium salt of levofolinic acid p. 556, a single isomer of folinic acid, is also used following methotrexate administration. The dose of calcium levofolinate is generally half that of calcium folinate.

The disodium salts of folinic acid and levofolinic acid are also used for rescue therapy following methotrexate administration.

The efficacy of high dose methotrexate is enhanced by delaying initiation of folinic acid for at least 24 hours, local protocols define the correct time. Folinic acid is normally continued until the plasma-methotrexate concentration falls to 45–90 nanograms/mL (100–200 nanomol/litre).

In the treatment of methotrexate p. 543 overdose, folinate should be administered immediately; other measures to enhance the elimination of methotrexate are also necessary.

### Urothelial toxicity

Haemorrhagic cystitis is a common manifestation of urothelial toxicity which occurs with the oxazaphosphorines, cyclophosphamide p. 535 and ifosfamide p. 536; it is caused by the metabolite acrolein. Adequate hydration is essential to reduce the risk of urothelial toxicity. Mesna p. 555 reacts specifically with acrolein in the urinary tract, preventing toxicity. Mesna is given for the same duration as cyclophosphamide or ifosfamide. It is generally given intravenously; the dose of mesna is equal to or greater than that of the oxazaphosphorine.

### Cytotoxic antibiotics

Cytotoxic antibiotics are widely used. Many act as radiomimetics and simultaneous use of radiotherapy should be **avoided** because it may markedly increase toxicity.

Doxorubicin p. 538, doxorubicin hydrochloride p. 539, and epirubicin hydrochloride p. 540 are anthracycline antibiotics. Mitoxantrone p. 540 (mitozantrone) is an anthracycline derivative.

Epirubicin hydrochloride and mitoxantrone are considered less toxic than the other anthracycline antibiotics, and may be suitable for children who have received high cumulative doses of other anthracyclines.

### Vinca alkaloids

The vinca alkaloids, vinblastine sulfate p. 549 and vincristine sulfate p. 550 are used to treat a variety of cancers including leukaemias, lymphomas, and some solid tumours.

### Antimetabolites

Antimetabolites are incorporated into new nuclear material or they combine irreversibly with cellular enzymes and prevent normal cellular division. Cytarabine p. 541, fludarabine phosphate p. 542, mercaptopurine p. 543, methotrexate, and tioguanine p. 546 are commonly used in paediatric chemotherapy.

### Other antineoplastic drugs

#### Asparaginase

Asparaginase is used almost exclusively in the treatment of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia. Hypersensitivity reactions may occur and facilities for the management of anaphylaxis should be available. A number of different preparations of asparaginase exist and only the product specified in the treatment protocol should be used.

## ANTINEOPLASTIC DRUGS > ALKYLATING AGENTS

### Busulfan

(Busulphan)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Conditioning treatment before haematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation

- ▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

#### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- ▶ Dose may need to be calculated based on body surface area or adjusted ideal body weight in obese patients—consult product literature.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES  
See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 • high dose (antiepileptic prophylaxis required) • history of seizures (antiepileptic prophylaxis required) • ineffective once in blast crisis phase • previous progenitor cell transplant (increased risk of hepatic veno-occlusive disease) • previous radiation therapy (increased risk of hepatic veno-occlusive disease) • risk of second malignancy • three or more cycles of chemotherapy (increased risk of hepatic veno-occlusive disease)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: alkylating agents

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Alopecia • diarrhoea • hepatic disorders • nausea • respiratory disorders • sinusoidal obstruction syndrome • skin reactions • thrombocytopenia • vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Seizure
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Cataract • eye disorders

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common**
  - With intravenous use Anaemia • anxiety • appetite decreased • arrhythmias • arthralgia • ascites • asthenia • asthma • cardiomegaly • chest pain • chills • confusion • constipation • cough • depression • dizziness • dyspnoea • dysuria • electrolyte imbalance • embolism and thrombosis • fever • gastrointestinal discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • haemorrhage • headache • hiccups • hyperglycaemia • hypersensitivity • hypertension • hypoalbuminaemia • hypotension • increased risk of infection • insomnia • mucositis • myalgia • nervous system disorder • neutropenia • oedema • pain • pancytopenia • pericardial effusion • pericarditis • reactivation of infections • renal disorder • renal impairment • stomatitis • vasodilation • weight increased
- ▶ **With oral use** Amenorrhoea (may be reversible) • azoospermia • bone marrow disorders • cardiac tamponade • delayed puberty • hyperbilirubinaemia • infertility male • leucopenia • leukaemia • menopausal symptoms • oral disorders • ovarian and fallopian tube disorders • testicular atrophy

#### ▶ **Uncommon**

- ▶ **With intravenous use** Capillary leak syndrome • delirium • encephalopathy • hallucination • hypoxia • intracranial haemorrhage

#### ▶ **Rare or very rare**

- ▶ **With oral use** Dry mouth • erythema nodosum • gynaecomastia • myasthenia gravis • radiation injury • Sjögren's syndrome

#### ▶ **Frequency not known**

- ▶ **With intravenous use** Hypogonadism • ovarian failure • premature menopause • sepsis

##### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Lung toxicity** Discontinue if lung toxicity develops.

**Secondary malignancy** Use of busulfan is associated with an increased incidence of secondary malignancy.

**Fluid retention** Alkylating drugs can cause fluid retention with oedema and dilutional hyponatraemia in younger children; the risk of this complication is higher in the first 2 days and also when given with concomitant vinca alkaloids.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturers advise effective contraception during and for 6 months after treatment in men or women. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic in animals). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.

**Monitoring** In patients with hepatic impairment, manufacturer advises regular liver function tests—consult product literature.

#### • MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Monitor cardiac and liver function.
- ▶ Monitor full blood count regularly throughout treatment.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

##### ▶ **Busulfan (Non-proprietary)**

**Busulfan 2 mg** Busulfan 2mg tablets | 25 tablet **[PoM]** £69.02 DT = £69.02

##### **Solution for infusion**

##### ▶ **Busilvex** (Pierre Fabre Ltd)

**Busulfan 6 mg per 1 ml** Busilvex 60mg/10ml concentrate for solution for infusion ampoules | 8 ampoule **[PoM]** £1,610.00 (Hospital only)

## Chlorambucil

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Hodgkin's disease | Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma**

▶ **BY MOUTH**

▶ **Child:** (consult local protocol)

**Relapsing steroid-sensitive nephrotic syndrome (initiated in specialist centres)**

▶ **BY MOUTH**

▶ **Child 3 months–17 years:** 200 micrograms/kg daily for 8 weeks

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in nephrotic syndrome.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

**RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES**  
See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **CAUTIONS** Children with nephrotic syndrome (increased seizure risk) • history of epilepsy (increased seizure risk)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: alkylating agents

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anaemia • bone marrow disorders • diarrhoea • gastrointestinal disorder • leucopenia • nausea • neoplasms • neutropenia • oral ulceration • seizures • thrombocytopenia • vomiting

#### ▶ **Uncommon** Skin reactions

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Cystitis • fever • hepatic disorders • movement disorders • muscle twitching • peripheral neuropathy • respiratory disorders • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • tremor

#### ▶ **Frequency not known** Amenorrhoea • azoospermia

##### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Secondary malignancy** Use of chlorambucil is associated with an increased incidence of acute leukaemia, particularly with prolonged use.

**Skin reactions** Manufacturer advises assessing continued use if rash occurs—has been reported to progress to Stevens–Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis.

**Fluid retention** Alkylating drugs can cause fluid retention with oedema and dilutional hyponatraemia in younger children; the risk of this complication is higher in the first 2 days and also when given with concomitant vinca alkaloids.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises consider dose reduction in severe impairment—limited information available.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor full blood count regularly throughout treatment.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Chlorambucil for nephrotic syndrome [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/chlorambucil-nephrotic-syndrome-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/chlorambucil-nephrotic-syndrome-0)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

##### ▶ Chlorambucil (Non-proprietary)

Chlorambucil 2 mg Chlorambucil 2mg tablets | 25 tablet [PoM]  
£42.87 DT = £42.87

## Cyclophosphamide

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, retinoblastoma, neuroblastoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, soft-tissue sarcomas, Ewing tumour, neuroectodermal tumours (including medulloblastoma), infant brain tumours, ependymoma, high-dose conditioning for bone marrow transplantation, lupus nephritis**

▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

##### **Steroid-sensitive nephrotic syndrome**

▶ BY MOUTH

▶ Child 3 months–17 years: 2–3 mg/kg daily for 8 weeks

▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

▶ Child 3 months–17 years: 500 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once a month for 6 months

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES  
See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Haemorrhagic cystitis
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 · diabetes mellitus · previous or concurrent mediastinal irradiation—risk of cardiotoxicity
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: alkylating agents
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**  
▶ **Common or very common** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · anaemia · asthenia · bone marrow disorders · cystitis · decreased leucocytes · fever · haemolytic uraemic syndrome · haemorrhage · hepatic disorders · immunosuppression · increased risk of infection · mucosal abnormalities · neutropenia · progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy · reactivation of infections · sperm abnormalities · thrombocytopenia
- ▶ **Uncommon** Appetite decreased · embolism and thrombosis · flushing · hypersensitivity · ovarian and fallopian tube disorders · sepsis
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Bladder disorders · chest pain · confusion · constipation · diarrhoea · disseminated intravascular coagulation · dizziness · eye inflammation · fluid imbalance · headache · hyponatraemia · menstrual cycle irregularities · nail discolouration · nausea · neoplasms · oral disorders · pancreatitis acute · renal failure · secondary neoplasm · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · SIADH · skin reactions · visual impairment · vomiting

- ▶ **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain · altered smell sensation · arrhythmias · arthralgia · ascites · cardiac inflammation · cardiogenic shock · cardiomyopathy · cough · dyspnoea · encephalopathy · excessive tearing · facial swelling · gastrointestinal disorders · hearing impairment · heart failure · hyperhidrosis · hypoxia · infertility · influenza like illness · multi organ failure · muscle complaints · myelopathy · myocardial infarction · nasal complaints · nephropathy · nerve disorders · neuralgia · neurotoxicity · oedema · oropharyngeal pain · palpitations · pericardial effusion · peripheral ischaemia · pulmonary hypertension · pulmonary oedema · QT interval prolongation · radiation injuries · renal tubular disorder · renal tubular necrosis · respiratory disorders · rhabdomyolysis · scleroderma · sensation abnormal · sinusoidal obstruction syndrome · taste altered · testicular atrophy · tremor · tumour lysis syndrome · vasculitis

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Haemorrhagic cystitis** A urinary metabolite of cyclophosphamide, acrolein, can cause haemorrhagic cystitis; this is a rare but serious complication that may be prevented by increasing fluid intake for 24–48 hours after intravenous injection, mesna can also help prevent cystitis.

**Secondary malignancy** As with all cytotoxic therapy, treatment with cyclophosphamide is associated with an increased incidence of secondary malignancies.  
**Fluid retention** Alkylating drugs can cause fluid retention with oedema and dilutional hyponatraemia in younger children; the risk of this complication is higher in the first 2 days and also when given with concomitant vinca alkaloids.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception during and for at least 3 months after treatment in men or women. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding during and for 36 hours after stopping treatment.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose—consult local treatment protocol for details.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose—consult local treatment protocol for details.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Consult local treatment protocol for details.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Cyclophosphamide for nephrotic syndrome [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/cyclophosphamide-nephrotic-syndrome-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/cyclophosphamide-nephrotic-syndrome-0)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection, solution for infusion

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25, 27

##### ▶ Cyclophosphamide (Non-proprietary)

Cyclophosphamide (as Cyclophosphamide monohydrate)

50 mg Cyclophosphamide 50mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £139.00  
DT = £139.00

##### ▶ Cytoxan (Imported (United States))

Cyclophosphamide 25 mg Cytoxan 25mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £

#### **Powder for solution for injection**

##### ▶ Cyclophosphamide (Non-proprietary)

Cyclophosphamide (as Cyclophosphamide monohydrate)

500 mg Cyclophosphamide 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £9.66 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £9.66

**Cyclophosphamide (as Cyclophosphamide monohydrate)****1 gram** Cyclophosphamide 1g powder for solution for injection vials |

1 vial [PoM] £17.06 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £17.91

**Cyclophosphamide (as Cyclophosphamide monohydrate)****2 gram** Cyclophosphamide 2g powder for solution for injection vials

| 1 vial [PoM] £34.12 (Hospital only)

## Dacarbazine

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Hodgkin's disease | Paediatric solid tumours**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: (consult local protocol)

**● CAUTIONS** Caution in handling—irritant to tissues**● INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: alkylating agents**● SIDE-EFFECTS**► **Common or very common** Anaemia · appetite decreased · leucopenia · nausea · thrombocytopenia · vomiting► **Uncommon** Alopecia · infection · influenza like illness · photosensitivity reaction · skin reactions► **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · confusion · diarrhoea · flushing · headache · hepatic disorders · lethargy · pancytopenia · paraesthesia · renal impairment · seizure · visual impairment**● CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Ensure effective contraception during and for at least 6 months after treatment in men or women. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.**● PREGNANCY** Avoid (carcinogenic and teratogenic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.**● BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.**● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.**Dose adjustments** Dose reduction may be required in combined renal and hepatic impairment.**● RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.**Dose adjustments** Dose reduction may be required in combined renal and hepatic impairment.**● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Dacarbazine is a component of a commonly used combination for Hodgkin's disease (ABVD—doxorubicin [previously *Adriamycin*®], bleomycin, vinblastine, and dacarbazine).**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder for solution for infusion**► **Dacarbazine (Non-proprietary)****Dacarbazine (as Dacarbazine citrate) 500 mg** Dacarbazine 500mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £37.50**Dacarbazine (as Dacarbazine citrate) 1 gram** Dacarbazine 1g powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £70.00**Powder for solution for injection**► **Dacarbazine (Non-proprietary)****Dacarbazine (as Dacarbazine citrate) 100 mg** Dacarbazine 100mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £90.00**Dacarbazine (as Dacarbazine citrate) 200 mg** Dacarbazine 200mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £160.00

## Ifosfamide

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Rhabdomyosarcoma | Soft-tissue sarcomas | Ewing tumour****| Germ cell tumour | Osteogenic sarcoma**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: (consult local protocol)

**● CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute infection · urinary-tract infection · urinary-tract obstruction · urothelial damage**● CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute nephropathy p. 603**● INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: alkylating agents**● SIDE-EFFECTS**► **Common or very common** Alopecia · appetite decreased · bone marrow disorders · haemorrhage · hepatic disorders · infection · leucopenia · nausea · reactivation of infection · renal impairment · thrombocytopenia · vascular disorders · vomiting► **Uncommon** Cardiotoxicity · diarrhoea · hypotension · oral disorders► **Rare or very rare** Skin reactions► **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain · agranulocytosis · amenorrhoea · anaemia · angina pectoris · angioedema · arrhythmias · arthralgia · asterixis · behaviour abnormal · blood disorders · bone disorders · cancer progression · cardiac arrest · cardiomyopathy · chills · conjunctivitis · constipation · cough · delirium · delusions · disseminated intravascular coagulation · dysarthria · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · embolism and thrombosis · encephalopathy · eye irritation · fatigue · fever · flushing · gait abnormal · gastrointestinal disorders · growth retardation · haemolytic anaemia · hearing impairment · heart failure · hyperglycaemia · hyperhidrosis · hyperphosphaturia · hypertension · hypoxia · immunosuppression · infertility · malaise · mania · memory loss · metabolic acidosis · movement disorders · mucosal ulceration · multi organ failure · muscle complaints · myocardial infarction · nail disorder · neoplasms · nephritis · tubulointerstitial · nephrogenic diabetes insipidus · neurotoxicity · oedema · ovarian and fallopian tube disorders · pain · pancreatitis · panic attack · peripheral neuropathy · polydipsia · premature menopause · psychiatric disorders · pulmonary hypertension · pulmonary oedema · radiation recall reaction · respiratory disorders · rhabdomyolysis · secondary malignancy · sensation abnormal · sepsis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · SIADH · sinusoidal obstruction syndrome · sperm abnormalities · status epilepticus · tumour lysis syndrome · urinary disorders · vasculitis · vertigo · visual impairment**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION****Urothelial toxicity** Mesna is routinely given with ifosfamide to reduce urothelial toxicity.**Secondary malignancy** Use of ifosfamide is associated with an increased incidence of acute leukaemia.**Fluid retention** Alkylating drugs can cause fluid retention with oedema and dilutional hyponatraemia in younger children; the risk of this complication is higher in the first 2 days and also when given with concomitant vinca alkaloids.**● CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises adequate contraception during and for at least 6 months after treatment in men or women. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.**● PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic and carcinogenic in animals). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.**● BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.**● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid.**● RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid.**● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Ensure satisfactory electrolyte balance and renal function before each course (risk of tubular dysfunction, Fanconi's syndrome or diabetes insipidus if renal toxicity not treated promptly).**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder for solution for injection**► **Ifosfamide (Non-proprietary)****Ifosfamide 1 gram** Ifosfamide 1g powder for concentrate for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £115.79



**Ifosfamide 2 gram** Ifosfamide 2g powder for concentrate for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £228.09

## Melphalan

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**High intravenous dose with haematopoietic stem cell transplantation in the treatment of childhood neuroblastoma and some other advanced embryonal tumours**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in embryonal tumours.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

**RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES**  
See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **CAUTIONS** Consider use of prophylactic anti-infective agents · for high-dose intravenous administration establish adequate hydration · haematopoietic stem cell transplantation essential for high dose treatment (consult local treatment protocol for details)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: alkylating agents

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · bone marrow depression (delayed) · diarrhoea · feeling hot · myalgia · myopathy · nausea · paraesthesia · stomatitis · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
- **Rare or very rare** Haemolytic anaemia · hepatic disorders · peripheral vascular disease · respiratory disorders · skin reactions

### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Secondary malignancy** Use of melphalan is associated with an increased incidence of acute leukaemias.

**Fluid retention** Alkylating drugs can cause fluid retention with oedema and dilutional hyponatraemia in younger children; the risk of this complication is higher in the first 2 days and also when given with concomitant vinca alkaloids.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises adequate contraception during treatment in men or women. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose initially (consult product literature).

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor full blood count before and throughout treatment.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Powder and solvent for solution for injection

#### ► Melphalan (Non-proprietary)

**Melphalan (as Melphalan hydrochloride) 50 mg** Melphalan 50mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £137.37

## Temozolomide

- **DRUG ACTION** Temozolomide is structurally related to dacarbazine.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment of recurrent or progressive malignant glioma**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 3-17 years: (consult local protocol)

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

**RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES**  
See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **CAUTIONS** *Pneumocystis jirovecii* pneumonia—consult product literature for monitoring and prophylaxis requirements

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: alkylating agents

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Alopecia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · chills · concentration impaired · confusion · constipation · cough · decreased leucocytes · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dysphagia · dyspnoea · emotional lability · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · haemorrhage · headache · hearing impairment · hemiparesis · hyperglycaemia · hypersensitivity · increased risk of infection · insomnia · level of consciousness decreased · malaise · memory loss · movement disorders · muscle weakness · nausea · neutropenia · oedema · oral disorders · pain · peripheral neuropathy · radiation injury · seizures · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · speech impairment · taste altered · thrombocytopenia · tremor · urinary disorders · vision disorders · vomiting · weight changes

- **Uncommon** Altered smell sensation · anaemia · behaviour disorder · bone marrow disorders · cognitive impairment · condition aggravated · Cushing's syndrome · depression · diabetes insipidus · ear pain · erectile dysfunction · eye pain · gait abnormal · hallucination · hepatic disorders · hyperacusia · hyperbilirubinaemia · hypertension · hypokalaemia · intracranial haemorrhage · myalgia · myopathy · nasal congestion · nervous system disorder · palpitations · photosensitivity reaction · reactivation of infections · thirst · vasodilation

- **Rare or very rare** Neoplasms · respiratory disorders · secondary malignancy · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises adequate contraception during treatment. Men should avoid fathering a child during and for at least 6 months after treatment. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic and embryotoxic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in severe impairment—no information available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Monitor liver function before treatment initiation, after each treatment cycle and midway through 42-day treatment cycles—consider the balance of benefits and risks of treatment if results are abnormal at any point (fatal liver injury reported).
- Monitor for myelodysplastic syndrome.
- Monitor for secondary malignancies.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 23, 25

#### ► Temozolomide (Non-proprietary)

**Temozolomide 5 mg** Temozolomide 5mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM]  
£10.06–£16.00

**Temozolomide 20 mg** Temozolomide 20mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM] £40.23–£65.00

**Temozolomide 100 mg** Temozolomide 100mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM] £201.18–£325.00

**Temozolomide 140 mg** Temozolomide 140mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM] £296.47–£465.00

**Temozolomide 180 mg** Temozolomide 180mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM] £381.18–£586.00

**Temozolomide 250 mg** Temozolomide 250mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM] £529.42–£814.00

#### ► Temodal (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Temozolomide 5 mg** Temodal 5mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM]  
£10.59 (Hospital only)

**Temozolomide 20 mg** Temodal 20mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM]  
£42.35 (Hospital only)

**Temozolomide 100 mg** Temodal 100mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM]  
£211.77 (Hospital only)

**Temozolomide 140 mg** Temodal 140mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM]  
£296.48 (Hospital only)

**Temozolomide 180 mg** Temodal 180mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM]  
£381.19 (Hospital only)

**Temozolomide 250 mg** Temodal 250mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM]  
£529.43 (Hospital only)

#### ► Temomedac (medac UK)

**Temozolomide 5 mg** Temomedac 5mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM]  
£16.12

**Temozolomide 20 mg** Temomedac 20mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM]  
£64.49

**Temozolomide 100 mg** Temomedac 100mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM] £322.43

**Temozolomide 140 mg** Temomedac 140mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM] £451.40

**Temozolomide 180 mg** Temomedac 180mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM] £580.37

**Temozolomide 250 mg** Temomedac 250mg capsules | 5 capsule [PoM] £806.08

► **Frequency not known** Pulmonary arterial hypertension · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Alkylating drugs can cause fluid retention with oedema and dilutional hyponatraemia in younger children; the risk of this complication is higher in the first 2 days and also when given with concomitant vinca alkaloids.

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

● **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic and embryotoxic in animals). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (June 2012) that thiotepa (*Tepadina*®) is **not** recommended for use within NHS Scotland in combination with other chemotherapy as conditioning treatment in adults or children with haematological diseases, or solid tumours prior to haematopoietic stem cell transplantation.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder for solution for infusion

##### ► Tepadina (Adienne Pharma & Biotech)

**Thiotepa 15 mg** Tepadina 15mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] [X]

**Thiotepa 100 mg** Tepadina 100mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] [X]

## ANTINEOPLASTIC DRUGS > ANTHRACYCLINES AND RELATED DRUGS

### Daunorubicin

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute myelogenous leukaemia | Acute lymphocytic leukaemia**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: (consult local protocol)

● **UNLICENSED USE** *DaunoXome*® is not licensed for use in children.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Myocardial insufficiency · previous treatment with maximum cumulative doses of daunorubicin or other anthracycline · recent myocardial infarction · severe arrhythmia

#### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

Anthracycline antibiotics should not normally be used in children with left ventricular dysfunction.

● **CAUTIONS** Caution in handling—irritant to tissues

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anthracyclines

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain · alopecia · amenorrhoea · anaemia · arrhythmias · ascites · atrioventricular block · azoospermia · bone marrow disorders · cardiac inflammation · cardiomyopathy · chills · congestive heart failure · cyanosis · death · dehydration · diarrhoea · dyspnoea · extravasation · fever · flushing · gastrointestinal disorders · haemorrhage · hepatomegaly · hyperpyrexia · hyperuricaemia · hypoxia · increased risk of infection · ischaemic heart disease · leucopenia · mucositis · myocardial infarction · nail discoloration · nausea · nephropathy · neutropenia · oedema · pain · paraesthesia · pleural effusion · radiation injuries · shock · skin reactions · soft tissue necrosis · stomatitis · thrombocytopenia · thrombophlebitis · urine red · vascular disorders · vomiting

## Thiotepa

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Conditioning treatment before haematopoietic stem cell transplantation in the treatment of haematological disease or solid tumours, in combination with other chemotherapy**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: (consult local protocol)

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: alkylating agents

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · anaemia · appetite decreased · ataxia · bladder disorder · cardiac arrest · cardiovascular insufficiency · diarrhoea · encephalopathy · fever · gastrointestinal disorders · graft versus host disease · growth retardation · haemorrhage · headache · hearing impairment · heart failure · hepatic failure · hyperglycaemia · hypertension · hypogonadism · hypopituitarism · hypothyroidism · hypoxia · increased risk of infection · intracranial haemorrhage · memory loss · mucositis · multi organ failure · nausea · neutropenia · pain · pancytopenia · paresis · psychiatric disorder · pulmonary oedema · renal failure · respiratory disorders · secondary malignancy · seizure · sepsis · sinusoidal obstruction syndrome · skin reactions · stomatitis · thrombocytopenia · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Cardiotoxicity is cumulative and may be irreversible, however responds to treatment if detected early.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic and carcinogenic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose according to serum bilirubin concentration—consult local protocol for details.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose—consult local treatment protocol for details.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Cardiac monitoring essential.
  - ▶ Cardiac function should be monitored before and at regular intervals throughout treatment and afterwards.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for infusion

- ▶ **DaunoXome** (Galen Ltd)  
Daunorubicin (as Daunorubicin hydrochloride citrate) 2 mg per 1 ml DaunoXome 50mg/25ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £250.00

##### Powder for solution for infusion

- ▶ **Daunorubicin (Non-proprietary)**  
Daunorubicin (as Daunorubicin hydrochloride)  
20 mg Daunorubicin 20mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 10 vial [PoM] £650.00 (Hospital only)

## Doxorubicin hydrochloride

04-Oct-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

Some paediatric malignancies | Ewing's sarcoma | Osteogenic sarcoma | Wilms' tumour | Neuroblastoma | Retinoblastoma | Some liver tumours | Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia | Hodgkin's lymphoma | Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute inflammatory heart disease · consult product literature · increased haemorrhagic tendency · marked persisting myelosuppression induced by previous treatment · marked persisting stomatitis induced by previous treatment · previous myocardial infarction · previous treatment with maximum cumulative doses of doxorubicin · previous treatment with maximum cumulative doses of other anthracycline · severe arrhythmia · severe myocardial insufficiency

#### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

Anthracycline antibiotics should not normally be used in children with left ventricular dysfunction.

- **CAUTIONS** Caution in handling—irritant to tissues · consult product literature
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anthracyclines
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · arthralgia · asthenia · bone marrow depression · breast pain · cachexia · cardiovascular disorder · chest discomfort · chills · constipation · cough · decreased leucocytes · dehydration · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dysphagia · dyspnoea · dysuria · electrolyte imbalance · epistaxis · eye inflammation · fever · gastrointestinal

discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · headache · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · hypertension · hyperthermia · hypotension · increased risk of infection · influenza like illness · infusion related reaction · insomnia · malaise · mucosal abnormalities · muscle complaints · muscle tone increased · muscle weakness · nail disorder · nausea · nerve disorders · neutropenia · oedema · oral disorders · pain · scrotal erythema · sensation abnormal · sepsis · skin reactions · skin ulcer · syncope · taste altered · thrombocytopenia · vasodilation · vision blurred · vomiting · weight decreased

- ▶ **Uncommon** Confusion · embolism and thrombosis
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Secondary oral neoplasms · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Asthma · congestive heart failure · secondary malignancy · throat tightness

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Extravasation can cause tissue necrosis.

**Cardiotoxicity** All anthracycline antibiotics have been associated with varying degrees of cardiac toxicity—this may be idiosyncratic and reversible, but is commonly related to total cumulative dose and is irreversible.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception during and for at least 6 months after treatment in men or women.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic and toxic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose according to bilirubin concentration—consult product literature or local treatment protocol for details.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Consult product literature in severe impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Cardiac function should be monitored before and at regular intervals throughout treatment and afterwards.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for infusion

##### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Doxorubicin hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Doxorubicin hydrochloride 2 mg per 1 ml Doxorubicin 10mg/5ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £18.54 (Hospital only)  
Doxorubicin 50mg/25ml solution for injection Cytosafe vials | 1 vial [PoM] £103.00 (Hospital only)  
Doxorubicin 50mg/25ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £103.00 (Hospital only)  
Doxorubicin 10mg/5ml solution for injection Cytosafe vials | 1 vial [PoM] £20.60 (Hospital only)  
Doxorubicin 10mg/5ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £19.57  
Doxorubicin 10mg/5ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £20.60 (Hospital only)  
Doxorubicin 50mg/25ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £92.70 (Hospital only)  
Doxorubicin 50mg/25ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £97.85

##### Solution for infusion

- ▶ **Doxorubicin hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Doxorubicin hydrochloride 2 mg per 1 ml Doxorubicin 200mg/100ml solution for injection Cytosafe vials | 1 vial [PoM] £412.00 (Hospital only)  
Doxorubicin 200mg/100ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £412.00 (Hospital only)  
Doxorubicin 200mg/100ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £391.40
- ▶ **Caelyx** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)  
Doxorubicin hydrochloride (as Doxorubicin hydrochloride liposomal pegylated) 2 mg per 1 ml Caelyx 50mg/25ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £712.49

Caelyx 20mg/10ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £360.23

### Powder for solution for injection

- **Doxorubicin** (medac UK)  
Doxorubicin hydrochloride 50 mg. Doxorubicin 50mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £914.00

### Powder and solvent for suspension for infusion

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- **Myocet** (Teva UK Ltd)  
Doxorubicin hydrochloride 50 mg. Myocet 50mg powder and solvent for suspension for infusion vials | 2 vial [PoM] £912.26 (Hospital only)

## Epirubicin hydrochloride

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Recurrent acute lymphoblastic leukaemia | Rhabdomyosarcoma | Other soft-tissue tumours of childhood**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Myocardiopathy · previous treatment with maximum cumulative doses of epirubicin or other anthracycline · recent myocardial infarction · severe arrhythmia · severe myocardial insufficiency · unstable angina

### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

Anthracycline antibiotics should not normally be used in children with left ventricular dysfunction.

- **CAUTIONS** Caution in handling—irritant to tissues
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anthracyclines
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · appetite decreased · bone marrow depression · dehydration · diarrhoea · increased risk of infection · leucopenia · mucositis · nausea · neutropenia · oesophagitis · paraesthesia · stomatitis · urinary frequency increased · urine red · vasodilation · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Embolism and thrombosis · thrombocytopenia
  - **Rare or very rare** Amenorrhoea · arrhythmias · ascites · asthenia · azoospermia · cardiac conduction disorders · cardiomyopathy · cardiotoxicity · chills · congestive heart failure · dizziness · dyspnoea · fever · hepatomegaly · hyperuricaemia · malaise · neoplasms · oedema · pleural effusion · pulmonary oedema · skin reactions
  - **Frequency not known** Eye inflammation · haemorrhage · hypoxia · nail discolouration · photosensitivity reaction · radiation injuries · sepsis · shock

### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Cardiotoxicity** All anthracycline antibiotics have been associated with varying degrees of cardiac toxicity—this may be idiosyncratic and reversible, but is commonly related to total cumulative dose and is irreversible.

**Cumulative doses of other anthracycline** Epirubicin is considered less toxic than other anthracycline antibiotics, and may be suitable for children who have received high cumulative doses of other anthracyclines.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (carcinogenic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose according to bilirubin concentration—consult local treatment protocol for details.

### • RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Dose reduction may be necessary in severe impairment.

### • MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- **Cardiac toxicity** Cardiac function should be monitored before and at regular intervals throughout treatment and afterwards.

### • MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection, solution for infusion

### Solution for injection

- **Epirubicin hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Epirubicin hydrochloride 2 mg per 1 ml Epirubicin 50mg/25ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £86.89–£100.88  
Epirubicin 10mg/5ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £17.38–£20.18
- **Pharmorubicin** (Pfizer Ltd)  
Epirubicin hydrochloride 2 mg per 1 ml Pharmorubicin 50mg/25ml solution for injection Cytosafe vials | 1 vial [PoM] £106.19 (Hospital only)  
Pharmorubicin 10mg/5ml solution for injection Cytosafe vials | 1 vial [PoM] £21.24 (Hospital only)

### Solution for infusion

- **Epirubicin hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Epirubicin hydrochloride 2 mg per 1 ml Epirubicin 200mg/100ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £306.20–£366.85  
Epirubicin 100mg/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £201.76
- **Pharmorubicin** (Pfizer Ltd)  
Epirubicin hydrochloride 2 mg per 1 ml Pharmorubicin 200mg/100ml solution for infusion Cytosafe vials | 1 vial [PoM] £386.16 (Hospital only)

## Mitoxantrone (Mitozantrone)

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute myeloid leukaemia | Recurrent acute lymphoblastic leukaemia**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS**  
**CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**  
Anthracycline antibiotics should not normally be used in children with left ventricular dysfunction.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anthracyclines
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain · acute leukaemia · alopecia · amenorrhoea · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmia · asthenia · bone marrow depression · confusion · constipation · diarrhoea · drowsiness · dyspnoea · fever · gastrointestinal haemorrhage · heart failure · mucositis · nail discolouration · nail dystrophy · nausea · neurological effects · paraesthesia · scleral discolouration · skin discolouration · stomatitis · thrombocytopenia · urine blue · vomiting
- **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** All anthracycline antibiotics have been associated with varying degrees of cardiac toxicity—this may be idiosyncratic and reversible, but is commonly related to total cumulative dose and is irreversible.
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception during and for at least 6 months after treatment in men or women.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution—consult local treatment protocol.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Cardiac toxicity Cardiac function should be monitored before and at regular intervals throughout treatment and afterwards.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for infusion**

##### ▶ Mitoxantrone (Non-proprietary)

Mitoxantrone (as Mitoxantrone hydrochloride) 2 mg per 1 ml Mitoxantrone 20mg/10ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £121.85 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £51.43

##### ▶ Onkotrone (Baxter Healthcare Ltd)

Mitoxantrone (as Mitoxantrone hydrochloride) 2 mg per 1 ml Onkotrone 20mg/10ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £103.57  
Onkotrone 25mg/12.5ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £129.48

## ANTINEOPLASTIC DRUGS > ANTIMETABOLITES

### Clofarabine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Relapsed or refractory acute lymphoblastic leukaemia in patients who have received at least two previous regimens**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 1 year.

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac disease

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: clofarabine

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Alopecia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arthralgia · capillary leak syndrome · chills · cough · dehydration · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dyspnoea · fatigue · feeling abnormal · feeling hot · fever · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · haemorrhage · headache · hearing impairment · hepatic disorders · hyperbilirubinaemia · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · hypotension · increased risk of infection · irritability · mucositis · multi organ failure · myalgia · nausea · neutropenia · oedema · oral disorders · pain · paraesthesia · pericardial effusion · peripheral neuropathy · psychiatric disorder · renal impairment · respiratory disorders · sepsis · sinusoidal obstruction syndrome · skin reactions · systemic inflammatory response syndrome · tachycardia · tremor · tumour lysis syndrome · vomiting · weight decreased
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Antibiotic associated colitis · gastrointestinal disorders · hyponatraemia · pancreatitis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid (teratogenic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in mild to moderate impairment. Avoid in severe impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in mild to moderate impairment. Avoid in severe impairment.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

##### ▶ Clofarabine (Non-proprietary)

Clofarabine 1 mg per 1 ml Clofarabine 20mg/20ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,259.87 (Hospital only)

##### ▶ Evoltra (Sanofi) ▼

Clofarabine 1 mg per 1 ml Evoltra 20mg/20ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,326.18 (Hospital only)

## Cytarabine

- **DRUG ACTION** Cytarabine acts by interfering with pyrimidine synthesis.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia | Acute myeloid leukaemia | Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

**Meningeal leukaemia | Meningeal neoplasms**

- ▶ BY INTRATHECAL INJECTION
- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Depocyte® intrathecal injection not licensed for use in children.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Not all cytarabine preparations can be given by intrathecal injection—consult product literature.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cytarabine

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · appetite decreased · consciousness impaired · diarrhoea · dysarthria · dysphagia · eye disorders · eye inflammation · eye stinging · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · haemorrhagic conjunctivitis (consider prophylactic corticosteroid eye drops) · hyperuricaemia · leucopenia · nausea · oral disorders · renal impairment · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · urinary retention · vasculitis · vision disorders · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Arthralgia · dyspnoea · headache · increased risk of infection · myalgia · nerve disorders · pain · paralysis · pericarditis · sepsis · skin ulcer · throat pain
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Arrhythmias
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) · amenorrhoea · ataxia · azoospermia · bone marrow disorders · cardiomyopathy · cerebellar dysfunction · chest pain · coma · confusion · cytarabine syndrome · dizziness · drowsiness · haemorrhage · hepatic disorders · hyperbilirubinaemia · neurotoxicity · neurotoxicity rash · neutropenia · pancreatitis · personality change · pulmonary oedema · reticulocytopenia · rhabdomyolysis · seizure · tremor
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
- **Dose adjustments** Reduce dose—consult product literature.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Consult local treatment protocols.



### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Haematological monitoring Cytarabine is a potent myelosuppressant and requires careful haematological monitoring.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Dose is based on weight or body-surface area, children may tolerate higher doses of cytarabine than adults.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### DEPOCYTE®

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (July 2007) that liposomal cytarabine suspension (*DepoCyt*®) is not recommended for use within NHS Scotland for the intrathecal treatment of lymphomatous meningitis.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Cytarabine (Non-proprietary)

**Cytarabine 20 mg per 1 ml** Cytarabine 500mg/25ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £19.50 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £19.50

Cytarabine 100mg/5ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £20.48-£30.00 (Hospital only) | 5 vial [PoM] £20.98

**Cytarabine 100 mg per 1 ml** Cytarabine 500mg/5ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £100.00 (Hospital only) | 5 vial [PoM] £89.78

Cytarabine 100mg/1ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £26.93

Cytarabine 2g/20ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £77.50-£79.00 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £73.63-£77.50

Cytarabine 1g/10ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £39.00-£40.00 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £37.05-£39.00

#### Suspension for injection

##### ► DepoCyt (Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Cytarabine 10 mg per 1 ml** DepoCyt 50mg/5ml suspension for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,223.75 (Hospital only)

## Fludarabine phosphate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Poor prognosis or relapsed acute myeloid leukaemia | Relapsed acute lymphoblastic leukaemia | Conditioning before bone marrow transplantation**

- BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult local protocol)

### ● UNLICENSED USE Not licensed for use in children.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

#### RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES

See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS Haemolytic anaemia

- **CAUTIONS** Increased susceptibility to skin cancer · worsening of existing skin cancer

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Immunosuppression Fludarabine has a potent and prolonged immunosuppressive effect. Patients treated with fludarabine are more prone to serious bacterial, opportunistic fungal, and viral infections, and prophylactic therapy is recommended in those at risk. To prevent potentially fatal transfusion-related graft-versus-host reaction, only irradiated blood products should be administered. Prescribers should consult specialist literature when using highly immunosuppressive drugs.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: fludarabine

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

#### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anaemia · appetite decreased · asthenia · bone marrow depression (may be cumulative) · chills · cough · diarrhoea · fever · increased risk of infection · malaise · mucositis · nausea · neoplasms · nerve disorders · neutropenia · oedema · stomatitis · thrombocytopenia · vision disorders · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Autoimmune disorder · confusion · haemorrhage · respiratory disorders · tumour lysis syndrome
- **Rare or very rare** Agitation · arrhythmia · coma · heart failure · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common**
- With oral use Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy · skin reactions · viral infection reactivation
- With parenteral use Rash
- **Uncommon**
- With oral use Acquired haemophilia · crystalluria · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · haemolytic anaemia · hyperuricaemia · metabolic acidosis · renal failure
- **Frequency not known**
- With parenteral use Encephalopathy · intracranial haemorrhage
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception during and for at least 6 months after treatment in men or women.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (embryotoxic and teratogenic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if creatinine clearance less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose by up to 50% if creatinine clearance 30–70 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Monitor for signs of haemolysis.
- Monitor for neurological toxicity.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Concentrate for intravenous injection or infusion must be diluted before administration (consult product literature).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Fludarabine phosphate (Non-proprietary)

**Fludarabine phosphate 25 mg per 1 ml** Fludarabine phosphate 50mg/2ml concentrate for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £156.00 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £155.00

#### Tablet

##### ► Fludara (Sanofi)

**Fludarabine phosphate 10 mg** Fludara 10mg tablets | 15 tablet [PoM] £302.48 (Hospital only) | 20 tablet [PoM] £403.31 (Hospital only)

#### Powder for solution for injection

##### ► Fludarabine phosphate (Non-proprietary)

**Fludarabine phosphate 50 mg** Fludarabine phosphate 50mg powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £155.00 (Hospital only)

##### ► Fludara (Sanofi)

**Fludarabine phosphate 50 mg** Fludara 50mg powder for solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £735.34 (Hospital only)

## Mercaptopurine

### (6-Mercaptopurine)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Severe ulcerative colitis | Severe Crohn's disease

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–17 years: Initially 1–1.5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 50 mg), then increased if necessary up to 75 mg once daily

##### Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia | Lymphoblastic lymphomas

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: (consult local protocol)

#### DOSE ADJUSTMENTS DUE TO INTERACTIONS

- Manufacturer advises reduce dose to one-quarter of the usual dose with concurrent use of allopurinol.

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Mercaptopurine tablets and *Xaluprine*® oral suspension are **not** bioequivalent, haematological monitoring is advised when switching formulations.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in severe ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease.

Not licensed for use in children for acute lymphoblastic lymphoma or T-cell non-Hodgkins lymphoma.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### SAFE PRACTICE

Mercaptopurine has been confused with mercaptamine; care must be taken to ensure the correct drug is prescribed and dispensed.

**RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES**  
See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Absent thiopurine methyltransferase activity
- **CAUTIONS** Reduced thiopurine methyltransferase activity
- **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - Thiopurine methyltransferase (TPMT) metabolises thiopurine drugs (azathioprine, mercaptopurine, tioguanine); the risk of myelosuppression is increased in patients with reduced activity of the enzyme, particularly for the few individuals in whom TPMT activity is undetectable. Patients with absent TPMT activity should not receive thiopurine drugs; those with reduced TPMT activity may be treated under specialist supervision.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: mercaptopurine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Anaemia · appetite decreased · bone marrow depression · diarrhoea · hepatic disorders · hepatotoxicity (more common at high doses) · leucopenia · nausea · oral disorders · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Arthralgia · fever · increased risk of infection · neutropenia · pancreatitis · rash
  - **Rare or very rare** Alopecia · face oedema · intestinal ulcer · neoplasms · oligozoospermia
  - **Frequency not known** Hypoglycaemia · photosensitivity reaction
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

#### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** May need dose reduction.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises consider reducing dose.

- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Consider measuring thiopurine methyltransferase (TPMT) activity before starting mercaptopurine therapy.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Monitor liver function—discontinue if jaundice develops.
- When used for severe ulcerative colitis or Severe Crohn's disease Monitor for toxicity throughout treatment. Monitor full blood count weekly (more frequently with higher doses or if severe hepatic or renal impairment) for first 4 weeks (manufacturer advises weekly monitoring for 8 weeks but evidence of practical value unsatisfactory), thereafter reduce frequency of monitoring to at least every 3 months.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include raspberry.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension

##### Tablet

- **Mercaptopurine (Non-proprietary)**

Mercaptopurine 50 mg Mercaptopurine 50mg tablets | 25 tablet (PoM) £49.15 DT = £49.15

## Methotrexate

17-May-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Methotrexate inhibits the enzyme dihydrofolate reductase, essential for the synthesis of purines and pyrimidines.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Severe Crohn's disease

- **BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION**

- Child 7–17 years: 15 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once weekly (max. per dose 25 mg)

##### Maintenance of remission of severe Crohn's disease

- **BY MOUTH, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION**

- Child 7–17 years: 15 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once weekly (max. per dose 25 mg), dose reduced according to response to lowest effective dose

##### Juvenile idiopathic arthritis | Juvenile dermatomyositis | Vasculitis | Uveitis | Systemic lupus erythematosus | Localised scleroderma | Sarcoidosis

- **BY MOUTH, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION**

- Child: Initially 10–15 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once weekly, then increased if necessary up to 25 mg/m<sup>2</sup> once weekly

##### Maintenance and remission of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, lymphoblastic lymphoma

- **BY MOUTH**
- Child: (consult local protocol)

##### Treatment of early stage Burkitt's lymphoma, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, osteogenic sarcoma, some CNS tumours including infant brain tumours, acute lymphoblastic leukaemia

- **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- Child: (consult local protocol)

##### Meningeal leukaemia, treatment and prevention of CNS involvement of leukaemia

- **BY INTRATHECAL INJECTION**
- Child: (consult local protocol)

continued →

**Severe psoriasis unresponsive to conventional therapy (specialist use only)****► BY MOUTH**

- Child 2–17 years: Initially 200 micrograms/kg once weekly (max. per dose 10 mg), then increased if necessary to 400 micrograms/kg once weekly (max. per dose 25 mg), adjusted according to response, stop treatment if inadequate response after 3 months at the optimum dose

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Metotect*® is licensed for use in children over 3 years for polyarticular forms of juvenile idiopathic arthritis; other preparations not licensed for use in children for non-malignant conditions.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

Note that the dose is a **weekly** dose. To avoid error with low-dose methotrexate, it is recommended that:

- the child or their carer is carefully advised of the **dose** and **frequency** and the reason for taking methotrexate and any other prescribed medication (e.g. folic acid);
- only one strength of methotrexate tablet (usually 2.5 mg) is prescribed and dispensed;
- the prescription and the dispensing label clearly show the dose and frequency of methotrexate administration;
- the child or their carer is warned to report immediately the onset of any feature of blood disorders (e.g. sore throat, bruising, and mouth ulcers), liver toxicity (e.g. nausea, vomiting, abdominal discomfort, and dark urine), and respiratory effects (e.g. shortness of breath).

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active infection (in non-malignant conditions) · ascites · immunodeficiency syndromes (in non-malignant conditions) · significant pleural effusion
- **CAUTIONS** Photosensitivity—psoriasis lesions aggravated by UV radiation (skin ulceration reported) · diarrhoea · extreme caution in blood disorders (avoid if severe) · peptic ulceration · risk of accumulation in pleural effusion or ascites—drain before treatment · ulcerative colitis · ulcerative stomatitis

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- Blood count Bone marrow suppression can occur abruptly; factors likely to increase toxicity include advanced age, renal impairment, and concomitant use with another anti-folate drug (e.g. trimethoprim). A clinically significant drop in white cell count or platelet count calls for immediate withdrawal of methotrexate and introduction of supportive therapy.
- Gastro-intestinal toxicity Withdraw treatment if stomatitis develops—may be first sign of gastro-intestinal toxicity.
- Liver toxicity Persistent 2–fold rise in liver transaminases may necessitate dose reduction or rarely discontinuation; abrupt withdrawal should be avoided as this can lead to disease flare.
- Pulmonary toxicity Acute pulmonary toxicity is rare in children treated for juvenile idiopathic arthritis, but children and carers should seek medical attention if dyspnoea, cough or fever develops; discontinue if pneumonitis suspected.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: methotrexate
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- **Common or very common**
- With intramuscular and subcutaneous use Anaemia · appetite decreased · chest pain · cough · diarrhoea · drowsiness · dyspnoea · fatigue · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · leucopenia · malaise · nausea · oral disorders · respiratory disorders · skin reactions · throat complaints · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
- With intrathecal use Arachnoiditis · fever · headache · nausea · necrotising demyelinating leukoencephalopathy · neurotoxicity · vomiting
- With intravenous use Abdominal distress · fever · headache · leucopenia · nausea · oral disorders · vomiting
- With oral use Anaemia · appetite decreased · diarrhoea · drowsiness · fatigue · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · increased risk of infection · leucopenia · nausea · oral disorders · respiratory disorders · skin reactions · throat ulcer · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
- **Uncommon**
- With intramuscular use Agranulocytosis · alopecia · arthralgia · bone marrow disorders · confusion · cystitis · depression · diabetes mellitus · drug toxicity · dysuria · gastrointestinal disorders · haemorrhage · healing impaired · hepatic disorders · increased risk of infection · lipodystrophy · local reaction · myalgia · neoplasms · osteoporosis · pain · paraesthesia · photosensitivity reaction · rheumatoid arthritis aggravated · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · sterile abscess · vasculitis · vertigo · vulvovaginal disorders
- With oral use Agranulocytosis · alopecia · arthralgia · bone marrow disorders · chills · confusion · cystitis · depression · diabetes mellitus · dysuria · gastrointestinal disorders · haemorrhage · healing impaired · hepatic disorders · myalgia · neoplasms · nephropathy · osteoporosis · photosensitivity reaction · rheumatoid arthritis aggravated · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · vasculitis · vertigo · vulvovaginal disorders
- With subcutaneous use Agranulocytosis · alopecia · arthralgia · bone marrow disorders · confusion · cystitis · depression · diabetes mellitus · drug toxicity · dysuria · gastrointestinal disorders · haemorrhage · healing impaired · hepatic disorders · increased risk of infection · myalgia · neoplasms · osteoporosis · pain · paraesthesia · photosensitivity reaction · rheumatoid arthritis aggravated · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · vasculitis · vertigo · vulvovaginal disorders
- **Rare or very rare**
- With intramuscular and subcutaneous use Apnoea · asthma-like conditions · azotaemia · conjunctivitis · eosinophilia · gynaecomastia · hypotension · immune deficiency · infertility · influenza like illness · insomnia · lymphadenopathy · meningism · meningitis aseptic · menstrual disorder · mood swings · muscle weakness · nail discoloration · neutropenia · oligozoospermia · paralysis · pericardial disorders · pericarditis · proteinuria · reactivation of infection · renal impairment · retinopathy · sepsis · sexual dysfunction · stress fracture · taste altered · telangiectasia · thromboembolism · visual impairment
- With intravenous use Anaemia · bone marrow depression · gastrointestinal disorders · hepatic disorders · hypogammaglobulinaemia · necrosis · respiratory disorders · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia
- With oral use Azotaemia · brain oedema · cognitive impairment · conjunctivitis · cough · dyspnoea · eosinophilia · gynaecomastia · hypotension · immune deficiency · infertility · insomnia · lymphadenopathy · meningitis aseptic · menstrual disorder · mood altered · muscle weakness · nail discoloration · neutropenia · oligozoospermia · pain · pancreatitis · paresis · pericardial disorders · pericarditis · proteinuria · psychosis · radiation injuries · renal impairment · retinopathy · sensation abnormal · sepsis · sexual dysfunction · speech impairment · stress fracture · taste metallic · telangiectasia · tinnitus · visual impairment
- **Frequency not known**
- With intramuscular and subcutaneous use Leukoencephalopathy
- With intravenous use Alopecia · aphasia · appetite decreased · arthralgia · azotaemia · chills · cognitive disorder · conjunctivitis · cystitis · defective oogenesis · diabetes mellitus · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · embolism and

thrombosis · fatigue · haemorrhage · hemiparesis · hypotension · increased risk of infection · infertility · leukoencephalopathy · malaise · menstrual disorder · metabolic change · mood altered · mucositis · myalgia · neoplasms · nephropathy · osteoporosis · pancreatitis · pericardial effusion · pericarditis · photosensitivity reaction · pulmonary oedema · renal failure · seizure · sepsis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin ulcer · sperm abnormalities · sudden death · telangiectasia · tinnitus · vaginal ulceration · vasculitis · vision blurred

• **With oral use** Encephalopathy

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Give folic acid to reduce side-effects. Folic acid decreases mucosal and gastrointestinal side-effects of methotrexate and may prevent hepatotoxicity; there is no evidence of a reduction in haematological side-effects.

Withdraw treatment if ulcerative stomatitis develops—may be first sign of gastro-intestinal toxicity.

Treatment with folic acid (as calcium folinate) may be required in acute toxicity.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required during and for at least 3 months after treatment in men or women.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic; fertility may be reduced during therapy but this may be reversible).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding—present in milk.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** When used for malignancy, avoid in severe hepatic impairment—consult local treatment protocol for details. Avoid with hepatic impairment in non-malignant conditions—dose-related toxicity.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Risk of nephrotoxicity at high doses. Avoid in severe impairment.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Exclude pregnancy before treatment.  
Patients should have full blood count and renal and liver function tests before starting treatment.  
Check immunity to varicella-zoster and consider vaccination before initiating therapy.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Full blood count and liver function tests repeated fortnightly for at least the first 4 weeks of treatment and at this frequency after any change in dose until therapy stabilised, thereafter monthly; renal function tests should be performed regularly during treatment.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Folic acid following methotrexate administration helps to prevent methotrexate-induced mucositis and myelosuppression.  
The licensed routes of administration for parenteral preparations vary—further information can be found in the product literature for the individual preparations.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and their carers should be warned to report immediately the onset of any feature of blood disorders (e.g. sore throat, bruising, and mouth ulcers), liver toxicity (e.g. nausea, vomiting, abdominal discomfort and dark urine), and respiratory effects (e.g. shortness of breath).

Children and carers should be advised to avoid self-medication with over-the-counter ibuprofen

Children and their carers should be counselled on the dose and use of NSAIDs.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Methotrexate for skin conditions  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/methotrexate-for-skin-conditions](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/methotrexate-for-skin-conditions)

• **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection

**Tablet**

• **Methotrexate (Non-proprietary)**

**Methotrexate 2.5 mg** Methotrexate 2.5mg tablets | 24 tablet [PoM] £1.23-£3.75 | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.82 DT = £1.44 | 100 tablet [PoM] £5.14-£14.01

**Methotrexate 10 mg** Methotrexate 10mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £57.21 DT = £49.33

• **Maxtrex (Pfizer Ltd)**

**Methotrexate 2.5 mg** Maxtrex 2.5mg tablets | 24 tablet [PoM] £2.39 | 100 tablet [PoM] £9.96  
**Methotrexate 10 mg** Maxtrex 10mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £45.16 DT = £49.33

**Solution for injection**

• **Methotrexate (Non-proprietary)**

**Methotrexate (as Methotrexate sodium) 2.5 mg per 1 ml** Methotrexate 5mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £36.00 (Hospital only)

**Methotrexate (as Methotrexate sodium) 25 mg per 1 ml** Methotrexate 1g/40ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,452.55 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £44.57  
Methotrexate 500mg/20ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £48.00-£726.28 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £25.07  
Methotrexate 50mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £2.62-£72.63 | 5 vial [PoM] £35.00 (Hospital only)  
Methotrexate 200mg/8ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £10.02

**Methotrexate (as Methotrexate sodium) 100 mg per 1 ml** Methotrexate 1g/10ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £85.00 (Hospital only)

• **Methofill (Accord Healthcare Ltd)**

**Methotrexate 50 mg per 1 ml** Methofill 12.5mg/0.25ml solution for injection pre-filled injector | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £14.85 DT = £16.50  
Methofill 22.5mg/0.45ml solution for injection pre-filled injector | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.61 DT = £18.45  
Methofill 30mg/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled injector | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £17.06 DT = £18.95  
Methofill 27.5mg/0.55ml solution for injection pre-filled injector | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £17.00 DT = £18.89  
Methofill 7.5mg/0.15ml solution for injection pre-filled injector | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £13.37 DT = £14.85  
Methofill 20mg/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled injector | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.06 DT = £17.84  
Methofill 10mg/0.2ml solution for injection pre-filled injector | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £13.76 DT = £15.29  
Methofill 15mg/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled injector | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £14.91 DT = £16.57  
Methofill 17.5mg/0.35ml solution for injection pre-filled injector | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £15.75 DT = £17.50  
Methofill 25mg/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled injector | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.63 DT = £18.48

• **Metoject PEN (medac UK)**

**Methotrexate 50 mg per 1 ml** Metoject PEN 30mg/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.56 DT = £18.95  
Metoject PEN 22.5mg/0.45ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.11 DT = £18.45  
Metoject PEN 12.5mg/0.25ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £14.35 DT = £16.50  
Metoject PEN 20mg/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £15.56 DT = £17.84  
Metoject PEN 17.5mg/0.35ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £15.25 DT = £17.50  
Metoject PEN 7.5mg/0.15ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £12.87 DT = £14.85  
Metoject PEN 10mg/0.2ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £13.26 DT = £15.29  
Metoject PEN 27.5mg/0.55ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.50 DT = £18.89  
Metoject PEN 25mg/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.13 DT = £18.48  
Metoject PEN 15mg/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £14.41 DT = £16.57

► **Nordimet** (Nordic Pharma Ltd)

**Methotrexate 25 mg per 1 ml** Nordimet 15mg/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled pens | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £14.92 DT = £14.92

Nordimet 20mg/0.8ml solution for injection pre-filled pens | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.06 DT = £16.06

Nordimet 22.5mg/0.9ml solution for injection pre-filled pens | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.61 DT = £16.61

Nordimet 12.5mg/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled pens | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £14.85 DT = £14.85

Nordimet 10mg/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled pens | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £13.77 DT = £13.77

Nordimet 17.5mg/0.7ml solution for injection pre-filled pens | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £15.75 DT = £15.75

Nordimet 25mg/1ml solution for injection pre-filled pens | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.64 DT = £16.64

Nordimet 7.5mg/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled pens | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £13.37 DT = £13.37

► **Zlatal** (Nordic Pharma Ltd)

**Methotrexate (as Methotrexate sodium) 25 mg per 1 ml** Zlatal 17.5mg/0.7ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £15.75 DT = £15.75

Zlatal 10mg/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £13.77 DT = £13.77

Zlatal 25mg/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.64 DT = £16.64

Zlatal 20mg/0.8ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.06 DT = £16.06

Zlatal 12.5mg/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £14.85 DT = £14.85

Zlatal 7.5mg/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £13.37 DT = £13.37

Zlatal 22.5mg/0.9ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.61 DT = £16.61

Zlatal 15mg/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £14.92 DT = £14.92

**Solution for infusion**

► **Methotrexate (Non-proprietary)**

**Methotrexate (as Methotrexate sodium) 25 mg per**

1 ml Methotrexate 5g/200ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £200.57

**Methotrexate (as Methotrexate sodium) 100 mg per**

1 ml Methotrexate 5g/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £400.00 (Hospital only)

**Oral solution**

► **Methotrexate (Non-proprietary)**

**Methotrexate (as Methotrexate sodium) 2 mg per**

1 ml Methotrexate 2mg/ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 35 ml [PoM] £95.00 DT = £95.00 sugar-free | 65 ml [PoM] £125.00 DT = £125.00

► **Jylamvo** (Intrapharm Laboratories Ltd)

**Methotrexate (as Methotrexate sodium) 2 mg per 1 ml** Jylamvo 2mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 60 ml [PoM] £112.50

## Nelarabine

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukaemia and T-cell lymphoblastic lymphoma in children who have relapsed or who are refractory after receiving at least two previous regimens**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: (consult local protocol)

● **CAUTIONS** Previous or concurrent craniospinal irradiation (increased risk of neurotoxicity) · previous or concurrent intrathecal chemotherapy (increased risk of neurotoxicity)

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: nelarabine

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Common or very common** Anaemia · arthralgia · asthenia · ataxia · confusion · constipation · diarrhoea · drowsiness · electrolyte imbalance · fever · headache · hyperbilirubinaemia · hypoglycaemia · increased risk of infection · leucopenia · nausea · neutropenia · pain in extremity · peripheral neuropathy · seizures · sensation abnormal · stomatitis · thrombocytopenia · tremor · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** If neurotoxicity occurs, treatment should be discontinued.

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception during and for at least 3 months after treatment in men and women.

● **PREGNANCY** Avoid (toxicity in *animal* studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

► Neurotoxicity Close monitoring for neurological events is strongly recommended—discontinue if neurotoxicity occurs.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving).

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Atriance** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd) ▼

**Nelarabine 5 mg per 1 ml** Atriance 250mg/50ml solution for infusion vials | 6 vial [PoM] £1,332.00

## Tioguanine

(Thioguanine)

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Infant acute lymphoblastic leukaemia**

► BY MOUTH

► Child: Can be given at various stages of treatment in short-term cycles (consult local protocol)

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

**RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES**

See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Absent thiopurine methyltransferase activity

● **CAUTIONS** Thiopurine methyltransferase status

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

► Thiopurine methyltransferase The enzyme thiopurine methyltransferase (TPMT) metabolises thiopurine drugs (azathioprine, mercaptopurine, tioguanine); the risk of myelosuppression is increased in patients with reduced activity of the enzyme, particularly for the few individuals in whom TPMT activity is undetectable. Patients with absent TPMT activity should not receive thiopurine drugs; those with reduced TPMT activity may be treated under specialist supervision.

► Long-term therapy Long-term therapy is no longer recommended because of the high risk of liver toxicity.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tioguanine

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Common or very common** Bone marrow failure · gastrointestinal disorders · hepatic disorders · hyperbilirubinaemia · hyperuricaemia · hyperuricosuria · nodular regenerative hyperplasia · oral disorders · sinusoidal obstruction syndrome · splenomegaly · thrombocytopenia · uric acid nephropathy · weight increased

► **Frequency not known** Photosensitivity reaction

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Ensure effective contraception during treatment in men or women.

● **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenicity reported when men receiving tioguanine have fathered children). See also



*Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
Dose adjustments Reduce dose.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
Dose adjustments Reduce dose.
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Consider measuring thiopurine methyltransferase (TPMT) activity before starting tioguanine therapy.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor liver function weekly—discontinue if liver toxicity develops.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule

#### Tablet

##### ▶ Tioguanine (Non-proprietary)

Tioguanine 40 mg Tioguanine 40mg tablets | 25 tablet [PoM]  
£109.57

## ANTINEOPLASTIC DRUGS > CYTOTOXIC ANTIBIOTICS AND RELATED SUBSTANCES

### Bleomycin

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

Some germ cell tumours | Hodgkin's lymphoma

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute pulmonary infection · significantly reduced lung function
- **CAUTIONS** Caution in handling—irritant to tissues
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: bleomycin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Alopecia · angular stomatitis · appetite decreased · chills · fever (after administration) · haemorrhage · headache · interstitial pneumonia · leucopenia · malaise · nail discolouration · nail disorder · nausea · pain · pulmonary fibrosis (dose-related) · scleroderma · skin reactions · stomatitis · vomiting · weight decreased
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Diarrhoea · dizziness · hepatocellular injury · oliguria · shock · urinary disorders · vein wall hypertrophy · venous stenosis
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic and carcinogenic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast feeding.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
Dose adjustments Reduce dose—consult local treatment protocol for details.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Ensure monitoring of pulmonary function—investigate any shortness of breath before initiation.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** To conform to the European Pharmacopoeia vials previously labelled as containing '15 units' of bleomycin are now labelled as containing 15 000 units. The amount of bleomycin in the vial has not changed.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder for solution for injection

##### ▶ Bleo-Kyowa (Kyowa Kirin Ltd)

Bleomycin (as Bleomycin sulfate) 15000 unit Bleo-Kyowa  
15,000unit powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM]  
£190.60

### Dactinomycin

#### (Actinomycin D)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

Wilms' tumour | Childhood rhabdomyosarcoma and other soft-tissue sarcomas | Ewing's sarcoma

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 12 years.
- **CAUTIONS** Caution in handling—irritant to tissues
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: dactinomycin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · anaemia · appetite decreased · ascites · bone marrow disorders · diarrhoea · dysphagia · fatigue · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · growth retardation · healing impaired · hepatic disorders · hypocalcaemia · increased risk of infection · lethargy · leucopenia · leukaemia secondary · malaise · myalgia · nausea · neutropenia · oedema · oral disorders · pneumonitis · renal impairment · reticulocytopenia · secondary neoplasm · sepsis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · sinusoidal obstruction syndrome · skin reactions · soft tissue damage · thrombocytopenia · tumour lysis syndrome · venous thrombosis · vomiting
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Exclude pregnancy before treatment with cytotoxic drugs. Contraceptive advice should be given to men and women before cytotoxic therapy begins (and should cover the duration of contraception required after therapy has ended). Regimens that do not contain an alkylating drug or procarbazine may have less effect on fertility, but those with an alkylating drug or procarbazine carry the risk of causing permanent male sterility (there is no effect on potency). Pretreatment counselling and consideration of sperm storage may be appropriate. Women are less severely affected, though the span of reproductive life may be shortened by the onset of a premature menopause. No increase in fetal abnormalities or abortion rate has been recorded in patients who remain fertile after cytotoxic chemotherapy.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic in animal studies). Most cytotoxic drugs are teratogenic and should not be administered during pregnancy, especially during the first trimester. Considerable caution is necessary if a pregnant woman presents with cancer requiring chemotherapy, and specialist advice should always be sought.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
Dose adjustments Consider dose reduction if raised serum bilirubin or biliary obstruction; consult local treatment protocols.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder for solution for injection

##### ▶ Cosmegen (Orphan Europe (UK) Ltd)

Dactinomycin 500 microgram Cosmegen Lyovac 500microgram powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £52.58

## ANTINEOPLASTIC DRUGS > PLATINUM COMPOUNDS

### Carboplatin

10-Jun-2016

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Stage 4 neuroblastoma | Germ cell tumours | Low-grade gliomas (including astrocytomas) | Neuroectodermal tumours (including medulloblastoma) | Rhabdomyosarcoma (metastatic and non-metastatic disease) | Soft-tissue sarcomas | Retinoblastoma | High risk Wilms' tumour | Some liver tumours**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: platinum compounds
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · alopecia · anaemia · asthenia · cardiovascular disorder · constipation · diarrhoea · haemorrhage · hypersensitivity · increased risk of infection · leucopenia · mucosal abnormalities · musculoskeletal disorder · nausea · neutropenia · ototoxicity · peripheral neuropathy · reflexes decreased · respiratory disorders · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · taste altered · thrombocytopenia · urogenital disorder · vision disorders · vomiting
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Cardiac discomfort · dyspnoea
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Abdominal cramps · appetite decreased · bone marrow failure · chills · dehydration · embolism · encephalopathy · fever · haemolytic uraemic syndrome · heart failure · hypertension · hyponatraemia · hypotension · malaise · pancreatitis · stomatitis · stroke · treatment related secondary malignancy
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic and embryotoxic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if creatinine clearance less than 20 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.  
**Monitoring** Monitor haematological parameters in renal impairment. Monitor renal function in renal impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Consider therapeutic drug monitoring.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Carboplatin can be given in an outpatient setting.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for infusion

##### ▶ Carboplatin (Non-proprietary)

**Carboplatin 10 mg per 1 mL** Carboplatin 50mg/5mL concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £22.04 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £20.00–£20.20

**Carboplatin 150mg/15mL** concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £56.92 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £50.00–£60.59

**Carboplatin 600mg/60mL** concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £232.64–£260.00

**Carboplatin 600mg/60mL** solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £260.00 (Hospital only)

**Carboplatin 450mg/45mL** concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £168.85 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £160.00–£181.77

**Carboplatin 450mg/45mL** solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £197.48 (Hospital only)

**Carboplatin 150mg/15mL** solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £65.83 (Hospital only)

**Carboplatin 50mg/5mL** solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £22.86 (Hospital only)

## Cisplatin

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Osteogenic sarcoma | Stage 4 neuroblastoma | Some liver tumours | Infant brain tumours | Intra-cranial germ-cell tumours**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

#### ● CAUTIONS

##### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ **Hydration** Cisplatin requires intensive intravenous hydration; routine use of intravenous fluids containing potassium or magnesium may also be required to help control hypokalaemia and hypomagnesaemia. Treatment may be complicated by severe nausea and vomiting; delayed vomiting may occur and is difficult to control.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: platinum compounds

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anaemia · arrhythmias · bone marrow failure · electrolyte imbalance · fever · leucopenia · nephrotoxicity (dose-related and potentially cumulative) · sepsis · thrombocytopenia
- ▶ **Uncommon** Anaphylactoid reaction · ototoxicity (dose-related and potentially cumulative) · spermatogenesis abnormal
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Acute leukaemia · cardiac arrest · encephalopathy · myocardial infarction · nerve disorders · seizure · stomatitis
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Alopecia · appetite decreased · asthenia · autonomic dysfunction · cardiac disorder · cerebrovascular insufficiency · dehydration · diarrhoea · haemolytic anaemia · hearing impairment · hiccups · hyperuricaemia · infection · Lhermitte's sign · malaise · muscle spasms · myelopathy · nausea · papilloedema · pulmonary embolism · rash · Raynaud's phenomenon · renal impairment · renal tubular disorder · retinal discoloration · SIADH · taste loss · tetany · thrombotic microangiopathy · vision disorders · vomiting

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception during and for at least 6 months after treatment in men or women.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic and toxic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible—nephrotoxic.

**Monitoring** Baseline testing of renal function is required; for children with pre-existing renal impairment, consideration should be given to withholding treatment or using another drug.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Monitor full blood count.
- ▶ Monitor audiology.
- ▶ Monitor plasma electrolytes.
- ▶ Baseline testing of hearing is required; for children with pre-existing hearing impairment, consideration should be given to withholding treatment or using another drug.
- ▶ For children with pre-existing marked bone-marrow suppression, consideration should be given to withholding treatment or using another drug.
- ▶ Monitor renal function.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Solution for infusion

#### ► Cisplatin (Non-proprietary)

**Cisplatin 1 mg per 1 ml** Cisplatin 50mg/50ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £26.70 DT = £26.51 | 1 vial [PoM] £25.11–£28.11 DT = £26.51 (Hospital only)  
**Cisplatin 100mg/100ml solution for infusion vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £50.22 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £50.22  
**Cisplatin 10mg/10ml solution for infusion vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £5.90 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £5.90  
**Cisplatin 50mg/50ml solution for infusion vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £25.37–£28.11 DT = £26.51 | 1 vial [PoM] £25.37 DT = £26.51 (Hospital only)  
**Cisplatin 10mg/10ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £5.36  
**Cisplatin 100mg/100ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £50.22–£55.64 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £52.86

## ANTINEOPLASTIC DRUGS > PODOPHYLLOTOXIN DERIVATIVES

### Etoposide

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Stage 4 neuroblastoma | Germ-cell tumours | Intracranial germ-cell tumours | Rhabdomyosarcoma | Soft-tissue sarcomas | Neuroectodermal tumours (including medulloblastoma) | Relapsed Hodgkin's disease | Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma | Ewing tumour | Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia | Acute myeloid leukaemia**  
 ► BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION  
 ► Child: (consult local protocol)

#### ● UNLICENSED USE Not licensed for use in children.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES  
 See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: etoposide

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · acute leukaemia · alopecia · anaemia · appetite decreased · arrhythmia · asthenia · bone marrow depression · constipation · diarrhoea · dizziness · extravasation · hepatotoxicity · hypertension · leucopenia · malaise · mucositis · myocardial infarction · nausea · neutropenia · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Nerve disorders
- **Rare or very rare** Dysphagia · neurotoxicity · radiation recall reaction · respiratory disorders · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · taste altered · vision loss

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common**
- With intravenous use Anaphylactic reaction · hypotension · infection
- With oral use Oesophagitis · stomatitis · transient systolic hypotension
- **Uncommon**
- With intravenous use Haemorrhage
- **Rare or very rare**
- With intravenous use Fever
- With oral use Drowsiness
- **Frequency not known**
- With intravenous use Angioedema · infertility · tumour lysis syndrome
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Consider dose reduction—consult local treatment protocol for details.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Etoposide is usually given by slow intravenous infusion. It may also be given by mouth, but it is unpredictably absorbed.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Solution for infusion

#### ► Etoposide (Non-proprietary)

**Etoposide 20 mg per 1 ml** Etoposide 100mg/5ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £11.50 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £11.50 | 10 vial [PoM] £115.00  
**Etoposide 500mg/25ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials** | 1 vial [PoM] £73.85 (Hospital only)

### Powder for solution for injection

#### ► Etopophos (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Etoposide (as Etoposide phosphate) 100 mg** Etopophos 100mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £261.68 (Hospital only)

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 23

#### ► Vepesid (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Etoposide 50 mg** Vepesid 50mg capsules | 20 capsule [PoM] £99.82 (Hospital only)

**Etoposide 100 mg** Vepesid 100mg capsules | 10 capsule [PoM] £87.23 (Hospital only)

## ANTINEOPLASTIC DRUGS > VINCA ALKALOIDS

### Vinblastine sulfate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Hodgkin's disease and other lymphomas**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Vinblastine is for **intravenous administration only**. Inadvertent intrathecal administration can cause severe neurotoxicity, which is usually fatal.

The National Patient Safety Agency has advised (August 2008) that adult and teenage patients treated in an adult or adolescent unit should receive their vinca alkaloid dose in a 50 mL minibag. Teenagers and children treated in a child unit may receive their vinca alkaloid dose in a syringe.

#### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

**CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

Intrathecal injection **contra-indicated**.

- **CAUTIONS** Caution in handling—irritant to tissues

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: vinca alkaloids

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare** Hearing impairment · nerve disorders
- **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain · acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) · alopecia (reversible) · anaemia · appetite decreased · asthenia · balance impaired · cancer pain · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · dyspnoea · haemorrhage · headache · hypertension · ileus · increased risk of infection · leucopenia (dose-limiting) · malaise · mediastinal disorder · myalgia · myocardial infarction · nausea · nystagmus · oral blistering · pain ·

Raynaud's phenomenon · reflexes absent · seizure · sensation abnormal · SIADH · skin reactions · stroke · thrombocytopenia · vertigo · vomiting

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Constipation** Prophylactic use of laxatives may be considered.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (limited experience suggests fetal harm; teratogenic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Dose reduction may be necessary—consult local treatment protocol for details.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

##### ► Vinblastine sulfate (Non-proprietary)

Vinblastine sulfate 1 mg per 1 ml Vinblastine 10mg/10ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £85.00 (Hospital only)

## Vincristine sulfate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute leukaemias | Lymphomas | Paediatric solid tumours**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Vincristine injections are for **intravenous administration only**. Inadvertent intrathecal administration can cause severe neurotoxicity, which is usually fatal.

The National Patient Safety Agency has advised (August 2008) that adult and teenage patients treated in an adult or adolescent unit should receive their vinca alkaloid dose in a 50 mL minibag. Teenagers and children treated in a child unit may receive their vinca alkaloid dose in a syringe.

#### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

**CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**  
Intrathecal injection **contra-indicated**.

- **CAUTIONS** Caution in handling—irritant to tissues · ileus · neuromuscular disease
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: vinca alkaloids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - Rare or very rare Hypersensitivity · rash · SIADH
  - Frequency not known Abdominal cramps · adrenal disorder · alopecia · anaemia · appetite decreased · azotaemia · bladder atony · bronchospasm · connective tissue disorders · constipation · coronary artery disease · dehydration · diarrhoea · dizziness · dyspnoea · eighth cranial nerve damage · eye disorders · fever · gait abnormalities · gastrointestinal disorders · haemolytic anaemia · headache · hearing impairment · hypertension · hyponatraemia · hypotension · infection · leucopenia · movement disorders · muscle atrophy · myalgia · myocardial infarction · nausea · neuromuscular effects (dose-limiting) · neutropenia · oedema · oral disorders · pain · paralysis · paresis · reflexes absent · renal disorder · secondary malignancy · seizure · sensation abnormal · sepsis · throat pain ·

thrombocytopenia · urinary disorders · vertigo · vision loss · vomiting · weight decreased

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Bronchospasm** Severe bronchospasm following administration is more common when used in combination with mitomycin-C.

**Neurotoxicity** Sensory and motor neuropathies are common and are cumulative. Manufacturer advises monitoring patients for symptoms of neuropathy, such as hypoesthesia, hyperesthesia, paresthesia, hyporeflexia, areflexia, neuralgia, jaw pain, decreased vibratory sense, cranial neuropathy, ileus, burning sensation, arthralgia, myalgia, muscle spasm, or weakness, both before and during treatment—requires dose reduction, treatment interruption or treatment discontinuation, depending on severity.

Motor weakness can also occur and dose reduction or discontinuation of therapy may be appropriate if motor weakness increases. Recovery from neurotoxic effects is usually slow but complete.

**Constipation** Prophylactic use of laxatives may be considered.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenicity and fetal loss in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Dose reduction may be necessary—consult local treatment protocol for details.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

##### ► Vincristine sulfate (Non-proprietary)

Vincristine sulfate 1 mg per 1 ml Vincristine 2mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £26.66 (Hospital only) | 5 vial [PoM] £133.30 (Hospital only)

Vincristine 1mg/1ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £13.47 (Hospital only) | 5 vial [PoM] £67.35 (Hospital only)

Vincristine 5mg/5ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £329.50 (Hospital only)

## ANTINEOPLASTIC DRUGS > OTHER

## Asparaginase

18-May-2018

- **DRUG ACTION** Asparaginase is an enzyme which acts by breaking down L-asparagine to aspartic acid and ammonia, this disrupts protein synthesis of tumour cells.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia (in combination with other antineoplastic drugs) (specialist use only)**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: (consult product literature or local protocols).

- Child 1-11 months: (consult product literature or local protocols)
- Child 1-17 years: 5000 units/m<sup>2</sup> every 3 days

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of pancreatitis related to asparaginase therapy · history of serious haemorrhage related to asparaginase therapy · history of serious thrombosis related to asparaginase therapy · pancreatitis · pre-existing known coagulopathy
- **CAUTIONS** Diabetes (may raise blood glucose) · hypersensitivity reactions · hypertriglyceridaemia (severe)—increased risk of acute pancreatitis

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- **Hypersensitivity reactions** Serious hypersensitivity reactions, including life-threatening anaphylaxis, can occur—asparaginase should only be administered when appropriately trained staff and resuscitation facilities are immediately available; in the event of a hypersensitivity reaction, treatment should be stopped immediately and appropriate management initiated. Manufacturer advises an intracutaneous or small intravenous test dose can be used but is of limited value for predicting which patients will experience an allergic reaction.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: asparaginase

**● SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · agitation · anaemia · angioedema · appetite decreased · arthralgia · back pain · bronchospasm · confusion · depression · diarrhoea · disseminated intravascular coagulation · dizziness · drowsiness · dyspnoea · embolism and thrombosis · fatigue · flushing · haemorrhage · hallucination · hyperglycaemia · hypersensitivity · hypoaalbuminaemia · hypoglycaemia · hypotension · increased risk of infection · leucopenia · nausea · neurological effects · oedema · pancreatitis · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · vomiting · weight decreased
- **Uncommon** Headache · hyperammonaemia · hyperuricaemia

- **Rare or very rare** Coma · consciousness impaired · diabetic ketoacidosis · hepatic disorders · hyperparathyroidism · hypoparathyroidism · ischaemic stroke · necrotising pancreatitis · pancreatic pseudocyst · posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome (PRES) · seizure · tremor

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** There have been rare reports of cholestasis, icterus, hepatic cell necrosis and hepatic failure with fatal outcome; manufacturer advises interrupt treatment if these symptoms develop.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception in men and women of child-bearing potential during treatment and for at least 3 months after last dose; asparaginase may reduce effectiveness of oral contraceptives—additional precautions (e.g. barrier method) are required, see also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—toxicity in animal studies. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid in severe impairment—no information available.

**● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- Manufacturer advises monitor trough serum asparaginase levels 3 days after administration; consider switching to a different asparaginase preparation if target levels not reached—seek expert advice.
- Manufacturer advises monitor bilirubin, hepatic transaminases, and coagulation parameters before and during treatment; in addition, monitor plasma and urinary glucose, amylase, lipase, triglycerides, cholesterol and serum protein levels during treatment.

- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Manufacturer advises store in a refrigerator (2–8°C)—consult product literature for storage conditions after reconstitution and dilution.

**● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises asparaginase has moderate influence on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness and somnolence.

**● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS****Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

SMC No. 1319/18

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (April 2018) that asparaginase (*Spectrila*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland when used as a component of antineoplastic combination therapy for the treatment of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia in paediatric patients from birth to 18 years and adults.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder for solution for infusion**

- **Spectrila** (medac UK) ▼

**Asparaginase 10000 unit** Spectrila 10,000unit powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £450.00 (Hospital only)

**Crisantaspase**

16-Mar-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Crisantaspase is the enzyme asparaginase produced by *Erwinia chrysanthemi*.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia | Acute myeloid leukaemia | Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Preparations of asparaginase derived from *Escherichia coli* are available but they are not licensed, they include: *Medac*® asparaginase and *Elspar*® asparaginase.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of pancreatitis related to asparaginase therapy

- **CAUTIONS** Diabetes (may raise blood glucose)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: crisantaspase

**● SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Chills · coagulation disorders · confusion · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dyspnoea · face oedema · fever · headache · hepatic disorders · hypersensitivity · limb swelling · lip swelling · neurotoxicity · pain · pallor · pancreatitis · seizures · skin reactions · thrombosis
- **Uncommon** Hyperglycaemia · hyperlipidaemia · hypoxia · increased risk of infection · respiratory disorders
- **Rare or very rare** Arthritis reactive · coma · diabetic ketoacidosis · dysphagia · dysphasia · encephalopathy · haemorrhage · level of consciousness decreased · myalgia · myocardial infarction · necrotising pancreatitis · neutropenia · paresis · sepsis · thrombocytopenia
- **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain · flushing · hyperammonaemia · hypertension · hypotension · nausea · pseudocyst · vomiting

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Children who are hypersensitive to asparaginase derived from one organism may tolerate asparaginase derived from another organism but cross-sensitivity occurs in about 20–30% of individuals.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid. See also, *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Facilities for the management of anaphylaxis should be available.



**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder for solution for injection**

► **Erwinase** (Jazz Pharmaceuticals UK)

**Crisantaspace 10000 unit** Erwinase 10,000unit powder for solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £3,065.00

**Hydroxycarbamide**

22-Mar-2018

**(Hydroxyurea)****INDICATIONS AND DOSE****SIKLOS®**

**Sickle-cell disease [prevention of recurrent vaso-occlusive crises] (initiated by a specialist)**

► **BY MOUTH**

► **Child 2–17 years:** Initially 10–15 mg/kg once daily, increased in steps of 2.5–5 mg/kg daily, dose to be increased every 12 weeks according to response; usual dose 15–30 mg/kg daily; maximum 35 mg/kg per day

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

**RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES**  
See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

● **CAUTIONS** Leg ulcers (review treatment if cutaneous vasculitic ulcerations develop)

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: hydroxycarbamide

**SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · appetite decreased · asthenia · bone marrow failure · chills · constipation · cutaneous vasculitis · dermatomyositis · diarrhoea · disorientation · dizziness · drowsiness · dyspnoea · dysuria · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · hallucination · headache · hepatic disorders · leucopenia · malaise · melana · mucositis · nail disorder · nausea · pancreatitis · peripheral neuropathy · pulmonary oedema · respiratory disorders · seizure · skin cancer · skin reactions · skin ulcer · sperm abnormalities · stomatitis · thrombocytopenia · vomiting

► **Rare or very rare** Gangrene

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception before and during treatment.

● **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in mild to moderate impairment. Avoid in severe impairment, unless used for malignant conditions.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** In sickle-cell disease, avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Dose adjustments** In sickle-cell disease, reduce initial dose by 50% if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 60 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

► Monitor renal and hepatic function before and during treatment.

► Monitor full blood count before treatment, and repeatedly throughout use; in sickle-cell disease monitor every 2 weeks for the first 2 months and then every 2 months thereafter (or every 2 weeks if on maximum dose).

► Patients receiving long-term therapy for malignant disease should be monitored for secondary malignancies.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients receiving long-term therapy with hydroxycarbamide should be advised to protect skin from sun exposure.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Hydroxycarbamide for sickle cell disease [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/hydroxycarbamide-for-sickle-cell-disease](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/hydroxycarbamide-for-sickle-cell-disease)

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Tablet**

► **Siklos** (Nordic Pharma Ltd)

**Hydroxycarbamide 100 mg** Siklos 100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £100.00 DT = £100.00

**Hydroxycarbamide 1 gram** Siklos 1000mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £500.00 DT = £500.00

**Mitotane**

● **DRUG ACTION** Mitotane selectively inhibits the activity of the adrenal cortex, necessitating corticosteroid replacement therapy.

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Symptomatic treatment of advanced or inoperable adrenocortical carcinoma**

► **BY MOUTH**

► **Child:** (consult local protocol)

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

**RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES**  
See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 · risk of accumulation in overweight patients

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: mitotane

**SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Common or very common** Adrenal insufficiency · anaemia · appetite decreased · asthenia · cognitive impairment · confusion · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dyslipidaemia · gastrointestinal discomfort · gynaecomastia · headache · hepatic disorders · leucopenia · movement disorders · mucositis · muscle weakness · nausea · paraesthesia · polyneuropathy · rash · thrombocytopenia · vertigo · vomiting

► **Frequency not known** Encephalopathy · eye disorders · flushing · fungal infection · generalised pain · growth retardation · haemorrhage · hyperpyrexia · hypersalivation · hypertension · hypothyroidism · hypouricaemia · lens opacity · neuro-psychological retardation · ovarian cyst · postural hypotension · proteinuria · taste altered · thyroid disorder · vision disorders

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in mild to moderate impairment. Avoid in severe impairment.

**Monitoring** In mild to moderate hepatic impairment, monitoring of plasma-mitotane concentration is recommended.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in mild to moderate impairment. Avoid in severe impairment.

**Monitoring** In mild to moderate renal impairment, monitoring of plasma-mitotane concentration is recommended.

## ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Monitor plasma-mitotane concentration—consult product literature.

## ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Corticosteroid replacement therapy Corticosteroid replacement therapy is necessary with treatment with mitotane. The dose of glucocorticoid should be increased in case of shock, trauma, or infection.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients should be warned to contact doctor immediately if injury, infection, or illness occurs (because of risk of acute adrenal insufficiency).  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Central nervous system toxicity may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 10, 21

- ▶ **Lysodren** (HRA Pharma UK Ltd)

**Mitotane 500 mg** Lysodren 500mg tablets | 100 tablet **[PoM]**  
£590.97

## Pegaspargase

16-Mar-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Pegaspargase breaks down the amino acid L-asparagine, thereby interfering with the growth of malignant cells, which are unable to synthesise L-asparagine.

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia (in combination with other antineoplastic drugs) (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: 82.5 units/kg every 14 days.

- ▶ Child (body surface area up to 0.6 m<sup>2</sup>): 82.5 units/kg every 14 days
- ▶ Child (body surface area 0.6 m<sup>2</sup> and above): 2500 units/m<sup>2</sup> every 14 days

## IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Be aware that doses are calculated either using units/kg or units/m<sup>2</sup>, depending on the size of the child.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of pancreatitis · history of serious haemorrhagic event with previous L-asparaginase therapy · history of serious thrombosis with previous L-asparaginase therapy
- **CAUTIONS** Concomitant use of other hepatotoxic drugs (particularly in pre-existing hepatic impairment)—monitor hepatic function · diabetes (may raise blood glucose) · hypersensitivity reactions · marked decrease of leukocyte count at start of treatment is possible—may be associated with significant rise in serum uric acid and development of uric acid nephropathy
- CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
- ▶ Hypersensitivity reactions Serious hypersensitivity reactions, including life-threatening anaphylaxis, can occur—pegaspargase should only be administered when appropriately trained staff and resuscitation facilities are immediately available; manufacturer advises patients should be closely monitored for signs of hypersensitivity during treatment and for an hour after administration. In the event of a hypersensitivity reaction, treatment should be stopped immediately and appropriate management initiated.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: pegaspargase

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · bone marrow depression · diarrhoea · hyperglycaemia · hypersensitivity ·

- hypoxia · pain in extremity · pancreatitis (discontinue if suspected and do not restart if confirmed) · peripheral neuropathy · rash · seizure · stomatitis · syncope · thrombosis (discontinue) · vomiting
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Acute kidney injury · posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome (PRES) · tremor
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Confusion · diabetic ketoacidosis · drowsiness · hepatobiliary disorder · hyperammonaemia (monitor if symptoms present) · toxic epidermal necrolysis
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** There have been rare reports of cholestasis, icterus, hepatic cell necrosis and hepatic failure with fatal outcome in patients receiving pegaspargase.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception in men and women of child-bearing potential during treatment and for at least 6 months after discontinuing treatment; pegaspargase may reduce effectiveness of oral contraceptives—additional precautions (e.g. barrier method) are required, see also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid in severe impairment.

## ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Manufacturer advises trough serum asparaginase activity levels may be measured before the next administration of pegaspargase; consider switching to a different asparaginase preparation if target levels not reached—seek expert advice.
- ▶ Manufacturer advises monitor plasma and urine glucose levels during treatment; monitor coagulation profile at baseline and periodically during and after treatment (particularly with concomitant use of other drugs that inhibit coagulation); monitor serum amylase.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises for intramuscular injection, volumes over 2 mL must be divided between more than one site.

- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Manufacturer advises store in a refrigerator between 2–8°C.

## ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Pancreatitis Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be told how to recognise signs and symptoms of pancreatitis and advised to seek medical attention if symptoms such as persistent, severe abdominal pain develop.

**Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be counselled on the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of confusion and somnolence.

## ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

### NICE decisions

- ▶ **Pegaspargase for treating acute lymphoblastic leukaemia (September 2016)** NICE TA408  
Pegaspargase, as part of antineoplastic combination therapy, is recommended as an option for treating acute lymphoblastic leukaemia only in patients with untreated newly diagnosed disease.

Patients whose treatment was started within the NHS before this guidance was published may continue treatment until they and their clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta408](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta408)


**Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (October 2016) that pegaspargase (*Oncaspar*<sup>®</sup>) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland as a component of antineoplastic combination therapy in acute lymphoblastic leukaemia.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for injection**► **Oncaspar (Imported (United States)) ▼**

Pegaspargase 750 unit per 1 ml Oncaspar 3,750units/5ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] 

**Procarbazine**

- **DRUG ACTION** Procarbazine is a mild monoamine-oxidase inhibitor.

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Hodgkin's lymphoma**► **BY MOUTH**

- Child: (consult local protocol)

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

**RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES**  
See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Pre-existing severe leucopenia · pre-existing severe thrombocytopenia
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease · cerebrovascular disease · epilepsy · phaeochromocytoma · procarbazine is a mild monoamineoxidase inhibitor (dietary restriction is rarely considered necessary)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: procarbazine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Appetite decreased
  - **Frequency not known** Azoospermia · hepatic disorders · infection · lethargy · leucopenia · nausea · neutropenia · ovarian failure · pneumonitis · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contraceptive advice required, see *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid (teratogenic in animal studies and isolated reports in humans). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Caution in mild to moderate impairment. Avoid in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Caution in mild to moderate impairment. Avoid in severe impairment.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 4

► **Procarbazine (Non-proprietary)****Procarbazine (as Procarbazine hydrochloride)**

50 mg Procarbazine 50mg capsules | 50 capsule [PoM] £411.34-£411.35 DT = £411.35

**RETINOID AND RELATED DRUGS****Tretinoin****INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Induction of remission in acute promyelocytic leukaemia (used in previously untreated patients as well as in those who have relapsed after standard chemotherapy or who are refractory to it)**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Child: (consult local protocol)

- **CAUTIONS** Increased risk of thromboembolism during first month of treatment
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: retinoids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · alopecia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmia · asthma · bone pain · cheilitis · chest pain · chills · confusion · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · dry mouth · flushing · headache · hearing impairment · hyperhidrosis · idiopathic intracranial hypertension (children particularly susceptible—consider dose reduction if intractable headache) · insomnia · intracranial pressure increased · malaise · nasal dryness · nausea · pancreatitis · paraesthesia · respiratory disorders · skin reactions · visual impairment · vomiting
  - **Frequency not known** Embolism and thrombosis · erythema nodosum · genital ulceration · hepatotoxicity · hypercalcaemia · increased leucocytes · myocardial infarction · myositis · necrotising fasciitis · QT interval prolongation · stroke · thrombocytosis · vasculitis
- **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Children are particularly susceptible to nervous system effects.
- **Retinoic acid syndrome** Fever, dyspnoea, acute respiratory distress, pulmonary infiltrates, pleural effusion, hyperleucocytosis, hypotension, oedema, weight gain, hepatic, renal and multi-organ failure requires immediate treatment—consult product literature.
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception must be used for at least 1 month before oral treatment, during treatment and for at least 1 month after stopping (oral progestogen-only contraceptives not considered effective).
- **PREGNANCY** Teratogenic. See *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid (discontinue breast-feeding).
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments** Reduce dose—consult local treatment protocol for details.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments** Reduce dose—consult local treatment protocol for details.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor haematological and coagulation profile, liver function, serum calcium and plasma lipids before and during treatment.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Tretinoin is the acid form of vitamin A.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21, 25

► **Tretinoin (Non-proprietary)**

Tretinoin 10 mg Tretinoin 10mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £240.00-£256.80 DT = £240.00

## 2.1 Cytotoxic drug-induced side effects

### DETOXIFYING DRUGS > UROPROTECTIVE DRUGS

#### Mesna

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Urothelial toxicity following oxazaphosphorine therapy

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

##### Mucolytic in cystic fibrosis

- ▶ BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION
- ▶ Child: 3–6 mL twice daily, use a 20% solution

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · chest pain · chills · concentration impaired · conjunctivitis · constipation · cough · dehydration · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dyspnoea · dysuria · fever · flatulence · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · haemorrhage · headache · hyperhidrosis · influenza like illness · laryngeal discomfort · lymphadenopathy · malaise · myalgia · nasal congestion · nausea · oral irritation · pain · palpitations · respiratory disorders · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · sleep disorders · syncope · vision disorders · vomiting
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Acute kidney injury · angioedema · drug reaction with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms (DRESS) · hypotension · hypoxia · oedema · tachycardia · ulcer · vulvovaginal rash
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if history of hypersensitivity to thiol-containing compounds.
- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

##### ▶ Mesna (Non-proprietary)

Mesna 100 mg per 1 mL Mesna 1g/10mL solution for injection ampoules | 15 ampoule [PoM] £441.15  
Mesna 400mg/4mL solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £18.90 | 15 ampoule [PoM] £201.15

### VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > FOLATES

#### Folinic acid

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Reduction of methotrexate-induced toxicity

- ▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

##### Methotrexate overdose

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

##### Megaloblastic anaemia due to folate deficiency

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 250 micrograms/kg once daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 15 mg once daily

##### Metabolic disorders leading to folate deficiency

- ▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: 15 mg once daily, larger doses may be required in older children

##### Prevention of megaloblastic anaemia associated with pyrimethamine and sulfadiazine treatment of congenital toxoplasmosis

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 5 mg 3 times a week; increased if necessary up to 20 mg 3 times a week, if the patient is neutropenic.

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 10 mg 3 times a week

##### SODIOFOLIN®

##### As an antidote to methotrexate

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Consult product literature for licensing status of individual preparations.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Intrathecal injection

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid simultaneous administration of methotrexate · **not** indicated for pernicious anaemia or other megaloblastic anaemias caused by vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: folates

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

##### ▶ Uncommon Fever

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agitation (with high doses) · depression (with high doses) · epilepsy exacerbated · gastrointestinal disorder (with high doses) · insomnia (with high doses) · urticaria

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

##### ▶ Common or very common

- ▶ With intravenous use Bone marrow failure · dehydration · diarrhoea (with high doses) · mucositis · nausea · oral disorders · skin reactions · vomiting

##### ▶ Rare or very rare

- ▶ With intravenous use Sensitisation

##### ▶ Frequency not known

- ▶ With intravenous use Hyperammonaemia

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful; benefit outweighs risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Presence in milk unknown but benefit outweighs risk.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

##### ▶ Folinic acid (Non-proprietary)

Folinic acid (as Calcium folinate) 15 mg Calcium folinate 15mg tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £49.00 DT = £46.92

##### ▶ Refolinon (Pfizer Ltd)

Folinic acid (as Calcium folinate) 15 mg Refolinon 15mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £85.74

##### Solution for injection

##### ▶ Folinic acid (Non-proprietary)

Folinic acid (as Calcium folinate) 7.5 mg per 1 mL Calcium folinate 15mg/2mL solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £39.00 DT = £39.00 | 5 ampoule [PoM] £39.00 DT = £39.00 (Hospital only)

Folinic acid (as Calcium folinate) 10 mg per 1 mL Calcium folinate 300mg/30mL solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £100.00 (Hospital only)

Calcium folinate 50mg/5mL solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £20.00 (Hospital only)

Calcium folinate 100mg/10mL solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £37.50 (Hospital only)

Folinic acid (as Disodium folinate) 50 mg per 1 mL Disodium folinate 50mg/1mL solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £24.70 Disodium folinate 200mg/4mL solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £80.40

##### ▶ Refolinon (Pfizer Ltd)

Folinic acid (as Calcium folinate) 3 mg per 1 mL Refolinon 30mg/10mL solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £23.12 (Hospital only)

► **Sodiofolin** (medac UK)

**Folinic acid (as Disodium folinate) 50 mg per 1 ml** Sodiofolin  
400mg/8ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £126.25 (Hospital only)  
Sodiofolin 100mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £35.09 (Hospital only)

## Levofolinic acid

- **DRUG ACTION** Levofolinic acid is an isomer of folinic acid.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Reduction of methotrexate-induced toxicity

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult local protocol)

#### Methotrexate overdose

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult local protocol)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Intrathecal injection

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid simultaneous administration of methotrexate · **not** indicated for pernicious anaemia or other megaloblastic anaemias caused by vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: folates

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Dehydration · diarrhoea · mucosal toxicity · nausea · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Fever
- **Rare or very rare** Agitation (with high doses) · depression (with high doses) · epilepsy exacerbated · gastrointestinal disorder · insomnia (with high doses) · urticaria

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful; benefit outweighs risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Presence in milk unknown but benefit outweighs risk.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

##### ► **Isovorin** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Levofolinic acid (as Calcium levofolinate) 10 mg per 1 ml** Isovorin  
175mg/17.5ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £81.33 (Hospital only)  
Isovorin 25mg/2.5ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £11.62 (Hospital only)

- **Uncommon** Bronchospasm · haemolysis · haemolytic anaemia · hypersensitivity · hypotension · methaemoglobinemia · seizure

- **Rare or very rare** Rhinitis

- **Frequency not known** Muscle contractions involuntary

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor closely for hypersensitivity.

- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** May interfere with test for uric acid—consult product literature.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder and solvent for solution for infusion

##### ► **Fasturtec** (Sanofi)

**Rasburicase 1.5 mg** Fasturtec 1.5mg powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 3 vial [PoM] £208.39 (Hospital only)

**Rasburicase 7.5 mg** Fasturtec 7.5mg powder and solvent for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £347.32 (Hospital only)

## XANTHINE OXIDASE INHIBITORS

## Allopurinol

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prophylaxis of hyperuricaemia associated with cancer chemotherapy | Prophylaxis of hyperuricaemic nephropathy, enzyme disorders causing increased serum urate e.g Lesch-Nyhan syndrome**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–14 years: 10–20 mg/kg daily, dose to be taken preferably after food; maximum 400 mg per day
- Child 15–17 years: Initially 100 mg daily, taken preferably after food; dose to be increased according to response, up to 900 mg daily in divided doses (max. per dose 300 mg)

- **CAUTIONS** Ensure adequate fluid intake · for hyperuricaemia associated with cancer therapy, allopurinol treatment should be started before cancer therapy

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: allopurinol

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Rash (discontinue therapy; if rash mild re-introduce cautiously but discontinue immediately if recurrence)
- **Uncommon** Hypersensitivity · nausea · vomiting
- **Rare or very rare** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · angina pectoris · angioedema · angioimmunoblastic T-cell lymphoma · aplastic anaemia · asthenia · ataxia · boil · bradycardia · cataract · coma · depression · diabetes mellitus · drowsiness · erectile dysfunction · fever · gastrointestinal disorders · gynaecomastia · haemorrhage · hair colour changes · headache · hepatic disorders · hyperlipidaemia · hypertension · infertility male · maculopathy · malaise · oedema · paraesthesia · paralysis · peripheral neuropathy · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · stomatitis · taste altered · thrombocytopenia · vertigo · visual impairment

- **PREGNANCY** Toxicity not reported. Manufacturer advises use only if no safer alternative and disease carries risk for mother or child.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—not known to be harmful.

## 2.1a Hyperuricaemia associated with cytotoxic drugs

### DETOXIFYING DRUGS ► URATE OXIDASES

## Rasburicase

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prophylaxis and treatment of acute hyperuricaemia with initial chemotherapy for haematological malignancy**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult local protocol)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** G6PD deficiency

- **CAUTIONS** Atopic allergies

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · fever · headache · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting



**● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.

**Monitoring** Monitor hepatic function.

**● RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises reduce dose or increase dose interval in severe impairment; adjust dose to maintain plasma-oxipurinol concentration below 100 micromol/litre.

**● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Allopurinol for hyperuricaemia [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/allopurinol-for-hyperuricaemia](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/allopurinol-for-hyperuricaemia)

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, mouthwash

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 8, 21, 27

**▶ Allopurinol (Non-proprietary)**

**Allopurinol 100 mg** Allopurinol 100mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]**

£8.15 DT = £0.38

**Allopurinol 300 mg** Allopurinol 300mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]**

£5.85 DT = £0.89

**▶ Uricto (Ennogen Pharma Ltd)**

**Allopurinol 100 mg** Uricto 100mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £1.25 DT = £0.38

**Allopurinol 300 mg** Uricto 300mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £0.94 DT = £0.89

**▶ Zyloric (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)**

**Allopurinol 100 mg** Zyloric 100mg tablets | 100 tablet **[PoM]** £10.19

**Allopurinol 300 mg** Zyloric 300mg tablets | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £7.31 DT = £0.89

## 3 Immunotherapy responsive malignancy

### IMMUNOSTIMULANTS > INTERFERONS

#### Interferon alfa

- DRUG ACTION** Interferon alfa has shown some antitumour effect in certain lymphomas and solid tumours.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Induction of early regression of life-threatening corticosteroid resistant haemangiomas of infancy**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

**INTRONA® PEN**

**Chronic active hepatitis B**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 5 000 000–10 000 000 units/m<sup>2</sup> 3 times a week

**Chronic active hepatitis C (in combination with oral ribavirin)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 3–17 years: 3 000 000 units/m<sup>2</sup> 3 times a week

**INTRONA® VIALS**

**Chronic active hepatitis B**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 5 000 000–10 000 000 units/m<sup>2</sup> 3 times a week

**Chronic active hepatitis C (in combination with ribavirin)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 3–17 years: 3 000 000 units/m<sup>2</sup> 3 times a week

**ROFERON-A®**

**Chronic active hepatitis B**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 2 500 000–5 000 000 units/m<sup>2</sup> 3 times a week, up to 10 000 000 units/m<sup>2</sup> has been used 3 times a week

- UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for chronic active hepatitis B.

**ROFERON-A® Roferon-A®** not licensed for use in children.

- CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates · history of severe psychiatric illness

**CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

For contra-indications consult product literature and local treatment protocol.

**● CAUTIONS**

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For cautions consult product literature and local treatment protocol.

Interferon alfa should always be used under the close supervision of a specialist; the decision to treat should be made only after careful assessment of the expected benefits versus the potential risks, in particular the risk of growth inhibition caused by combination therapy.

- INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: interferons

**● SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · anxiety · appetite abnormal · arthralgia · asthenia · behaviour abnormal · chest pain · chills · concentration impaired · confusion · conjunctivitis · constipation · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dysphonia · dyspnoea · epistaxis · eye pain · fever · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · growth retardation · headache · hepatic function abnormal · hyperhidrosis · hyperkinesia · hyperthyroidism · hypertriglyceridaemia (sometimes severe) · hyperuricaemia · hypothyroidism · increased risk of infection · influenza like illness · lacrimation disorder · lymphadenopathy · malaise · menstrual cycle irregularities · mood altered · musculoskeletal pain · myalgia · nail disorder · nasal complaints · nausea · neoplasms · neutropenia · oedema · oral disorders · pallor · photosensitivity reaction · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · sleep disorders · suicidal ideation · tachypnoea · testicular pain · thrombocytopenia · tremor · urinary disorders · vaginal disorder · virilism · visual impairment · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Respiratory symptoms should be investigated and if pulmonary infiltrates are suspected or lung function is impaired the discontinuation of interferon alfa should be considered.

- CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required during treatment—consult product literature.

- PREGNANCY** Avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk (toxicity in animal studies).

- BREAST FEEDING** Unlikely to be harmful.

- HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe hepatic impairment. **Monitoring** Close monitoring required in mild to moderate hepatic impairment.

- RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe renal impairment. **Monitoring** Close monitoring required in mild to moderate renal impairment.

**● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ Monitoring of lipid concentration is recommended.
- ▶ Monitoring of hepatic function is recommended.

**● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

**INTRONA® VIALS** IntronA® injection vials for subcutaneous injection or intravenous infusion.

**ROFERON-A®** *Roferon-A®* injection for subcutaneous injection.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

► **Introna** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Interferon alfa-2b 10 mega u per 1 ml** Introna 10million units/1ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £

Introna 25million units/2.5ml solution for injection multidose vials | 1 vial [PoM] £103.94

**Interferon alfa-2b 15 mega u per 1 ml** Introna 18million units/1.2ml solution for injection multidose pens | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £74.83

**Interferon alfa-2b 25 mega u per 1 ml** Introna 30million units/1.2ml solution for injection multidose pens | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £124.72

**Interferon alfa-2b 50 mega u per 1 ml** Introna 60million units/1.2ml solution for injection multidose pens | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £249.45

► **Roferon-A** (Roche Products Ltd)

**Interferon alfa-2a 6 mega u per 1 ml** Roferon-A 3million units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £14.20

**Interferon alfa-2a 9 mega u per 1 ml** Roferon-A 4.5million units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £21.29

**Interferon alfa-2a 12 mega u per 1 ml** Roferon-A 6million units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £28.37

**Interferon alfa-2a 18 mega u per 1 ml** Roferon-A 9million units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £42.57

systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) · tachycardia · thrombocytopenia · transient ischaemic attack

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required during treatment—consult product literature.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers recommend avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk (toxicity in *animal* studies).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturers advise avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment—risk of accumulation.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in severe impairment—risk of accumulation.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor before and during treatment: haematological tests (including full blood count, differential white cell count, and platelet count), blood chemistry tests (including renal and liver function tests) and urinalysis.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

► **Immukin** (Horizon Pharma Ireland Ltd)

**Interferon gamma-1b (recombinant human) 200 microgram per 1 ml** Immukin 100micrograms/0.5ml solution for injection vials | 6 vial [PoM] £450.00

## IMMUNOSTIMULANTS > OTHER

### Mifamurtide

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment of high-grade, resectable, non-metastatic osteosarcoma after complete surgical resection (in combination with chemotherapy)**

- **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- **Child 2-17 years:** Infusion to be given over 1 hour (consult product literature or local protocols)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in patients under 2 years of age at initial diagnosis.
- **CAUTIONS** Asthma—consider prophylactic bronchodilator therapy · chronic obstructive pulmonary disease—consider prophylactic bronchodilator therapy · history of autoimmune disease · history of collagen disease · history of inflammatory disease
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: mifamurtide
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · cancer pain · chest discomfort · chills · confusion · constipation · cough · cyanosis · dehydration · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dysmenorrhoea · dyspnoea · feeling cold · fever · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · haemorrhage · headache · hearing impairment · hepatic pain · hyperhidrosis · hypertension · hypokalaemia · hypotension · hypothermia · increased risk of infection · insomnia · laryngeal pain · leucopenia · malaise · mucositis · muscle complaints · musculoskeletal stiffness · nasal congestion · nausea · neutropenia · oedema · pain · palpitations · respiratory disorders · sensation abnormal · sepsis · skin reactions · tachycardia · thrombocytopenia · tremor · urinary disorders · vascular disorders · vertigo · vision blurred · vomiting · weight decreased
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—no information available.

## Interferon gamma-1b

(Immune interferon)

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**To reduce the frequency of serious infection in chronic granulomatous disease**

- **BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION**
- **Child 6 months-17 years** (body surface area up to 0.6 m<sup>2</sup>): 1.5 micrograms/kg 3 times a week
- **Child 6 months-17 years** (body surface area 0.6 m<sup>2</sup> and above): 50 micrograms/m<sup>2</sup> 3 times a week

**To reduce the frequency of serious infection in severe malignant osteopetrosis**

- **BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION**
- **Child** (body surface area up to 0.6 m<sup>2</sup>): 1.5 micrograms/kg 3 times a week
- **Child** (body surface area 0.6 m<sup>2</sup> and above): 50 micrograms/m<sup>2</sup> 3 times a week

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Simultaneous administration of foreign proteins including immunological products (such as vaccines)—risk of exaggerated immune response
- **CAUTIONS** Arrhythmias · cardiac disease · congestive heart failure · ischaemia · seizure disorders (including seizures associated with fever)
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · arthralgia · back pain · chills · depression · diarrhoea · fatigue · fever · headache · nausea · rash · vomiting
  - **Frequency not known** Atrioventricular block · chest discomfort · confusion · connective tissue disorders · embolism and thrombosis · gait abnormal · gastrointestinal haemorrhage · hallucination · heart failure · hepatic failure · hypertriglyceridaemia · hypoglycaemia · hyponatraemia · hypotension · influenza like illness · myocardial infarction · neutropenia · pancreatitis · parkinsonism · proteinuria · renal failure · respiratory disorders · seizure · syncope ·

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution—no information available.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Monitor renal function, hepatic function and clotting parameters.
  - ▶ Monitor patients with history of venous thrombosis, vasculitis, or unstable cardiovascular disorders for persistent or worsening symptoms during administration—consult product literature.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**NICE decisions**

  - ▶ Mifamurtide for the treatment of osteosarcoma (October 2011) NICE TA235

Mifamurtide in combination with postoperative multi-agent chemotherapy is recommended (within its licensed indication), as an option for the treatment of high-grade resectable non-metastatic osteosarcoma after macroscopically complete surgical resection in children, adolescents and young adults and when mifamurtide is made available at a reduced cost to the NHS under the patient access scheme.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA235](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA235)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder for suspension for infusion**

- ▶ **Mepact** (Takeda UK Ltd)
- Mifamurtide 4 mg** Mepact 4mg powder for suspension for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £2,375.00

## 4 Targeted therapy responsive malignancy

### ANTINEOPLASTIC DRUGS > PROTEIN KINASE INHIBITORS

#### **Everolimus**

24-Jul-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Everolimus is a protein kinase inhibitor.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **VOTUBIA® DISPERSIBLE TABLETS**

##### **Subependymal giant cell astrocytoma associated with tuberous sclerosis complex**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING DISPERSIBLE TABLETS
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: (consult product literature)

##### **Adjunctive treatment of refractory partial-onset seizures, with or without secondary generalisation, associated with tuberous sclerosis complex**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING DISPERSIBLE TABLETS
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: (consult product literature)

##### **VOTUBIA® TABLETS**

##### **Subependymal giant cell astrocytoma associated with tuberous sclerosis complex**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING TABLETS
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: (consult product literature)

#### **IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **CAUTIONS** History of bleeding disorders
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: everolimus

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · cough · decreased leucocytes · dehydration · diabetes mellitus · diarrhoea · dry mouth · dyslipidaemia · dysphagia · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · eye inflammation · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · haemorrhage · headache · hyperglycaemia · hypertension · increased risk of infection · insomnia · menstrual cycle irregularities · mucositis · nail disorders · nausea · neutropenia · oral disorders · peripheral oedema · proteinuria · renal impairment · respiratory disorders · skin reactions · taste altered · thrombocytopenia · vomiting · weight decreased
- ▶ **Uncommon** Congestive heart failure · embolism and thrombosis · flushing · healing impaired · hepatitis B · musculoskeletal chest pain · pancytopenia · sepsis · urinary frequency increased
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Pure red cell aplasia
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Hepatitis B reactivation

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Reduce dose or discontinue if severe side-effects occur—consult product literature.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception must be used during and for up to 8 weeks after treatment.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid (toxicity in animal studies). See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Consult product literature.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ For **Votubia®** preparations: manufacturer advises everolimus blood concentration monitoring is required—consult product literature.
- ▶ Monitor blood-glucose concentration, serum-triglycerides and serum-cholesterol before treatment and periodically thereafter.
- ▶ Monitor renal function before treatment and periodically thereafter.

#### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

**VOTUBIA® DISPERSIBLE TABLETS** Manufacturer advises tablets must be dispersed in water before administration—consult product literature for details.

**VOTUBIA® TABLETS** Tablets may be dispersed in approximately 30 mL of water by gently stirring, immediately before drinking. After solution has been swallowed, any residue must be re-dispersed in the same volume of water and swallowed.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** **Votubia®** is available as both *tablets* and *dispersible tablets*. These formulations vary in their licensed indications and are not interchangeable—consult product literature for information on switching between formulations.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Pneumonitis** Non-infectious pneumonitis reported. Patients should be advised to seek urgent medical advice if new or worsening respiratory symptoms occur.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Dispersible tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

- ▶ **Votubia** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Everolimus 2 mg** Votubia 2mg dispersible tablets sugar-free | 30 tablet [PoM] £960.00

**Everolimus 3 mg** Votubia 3mg dispersible tablets sugar-free | 30 tablet [PoM] £1,440.00

**Everolimus 5 mg** Votubia 5mg dispersible tablets sugar-free | 30 tablet [PoM] £2,250.00

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

► **Votubia** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)**Everolimus 2.5 mg** Votubia 2.5mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £1,200.00**Everolimus 5 mg** Votubia 5mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £2,250.00**Everolimus 10 mg** Votubia 10mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £2,970.00**Imatinib**

21-Jul-2016

● **DRUG ACTION** Imatinib is a tyrosine kinase inhibitor.● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Treatment of newly diagnosed Philadelphia-chromosome-positive chronic myeloid leukaemia when bone marrow transplantation is not considered first line treatment |****Treatment of Philadelphia-chromosome-positive chronic myeloid leukaemia in chronic phase after failure of interferon alfa, or in accelerated phase, or in blast crisis |****Treatment of newly diagnosed Philadelphia-chromosome-positive acute lymphoblastic leukaemia in combination with chemotherapy**

► BY MOUTH

► Child: (consult local protocol)

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION****RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES**

See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

**MHRA/CHM ADVICE (MAY 2016): RISK OF HEPATITIS B VIRUS REACTIVATION WITH BCR-ABL TYROSINE KINASE INHIBITORS**

An EU wide review has concluded that imatinib can cause hepatitis B reactivation; the MHRA recommends establishing hepatitis B virus status in all patients before initiation of treatment.

● **CAUTIONS** Cardiac disease · hepatitis B infection · history of renal failure · risk factors for heart failure**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**► **Hepatitis B infection** The MHRA advises that patients who are carriers of hepatitis B virus should be closely monitored for signs and symptoms of active infection throughout treatment and for several months after stopping treatment; expert advice should be sought for patients who test positive for hepatitis B virus and in those with active infection.● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: imatinib● **SIDE-EFFECTS**► **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · appetite abnormal · asthenia · bone marrow disorders · chills · constipation · cough · diarrhoea · dizziness · dry eye · dry mouth · dyspnoea · excessive tearing · eye inflammation · fever · fluid imbalance · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · haemorrhage · headaches · insomnia · joint disorders · muscle complaints · nausea · neutropenia · oedema · pain · photosensitivity reaction · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · sweat changes · taste altered · thrombocytopenia · vision blurred · vomiting · weight changes► **Uncommon** Anxiety · arrhythmias · ascites · breast abnormalities · broken nails · burping · chest pain · CNS haemorrhage · congestive heart failure · depression · drowsiness · dysphagia · electrolyte imbalance · eosinophilia · eye discomfort · gout · gynecomastia · hearing impairment · hepatic disorders · hyperbilirubinaemia · hyperglycaemia · hypertension · hyperuricaemia · hypotension · increased risk of infection · laryngeal pain · lymphadenopathy · lymphopenia · malaise · memory loss · menstrual cycle irregularities · nerve disorders · oral disorders · palpitations · pancreatitis · peripheral coldness · pulmonary oedema · Raynaud's phenomenon · renal impairment · renal pain · respiratory

disorders · restless legs · scrotal oedema · sepsis · sexual dysfunction · syncope · thrombocytosis · tremor · urinary frequency increased · vertigo

► **Rare or very rare** Angina pectoris · angioedema · arthritis · cardiac arrest · cataract · confusion · glaucoma · haemolytic anaemia · haemorrhagic ovarian cyst · hepatic failure (including fatal cases) · hypersensitivity vasculitis · inflammatory bowel disease · intracranial pressure increased · muscle weakness · myocardial infarction · myopathy · nail discolouration · pericardial disorders · pulmonary hypertension · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · tumour lysis syndrome► **Frequency not known** Embolism and thrombosis · growth retardation · hepatitis B reactivation · neoplasm complications · osteonecrosis · pericarditis● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required during treatment.● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk. See also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.● **BREAST FEEDING** Discontinue breast-feeding.● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT****Dose adjustments** Start with minimum recommended dose; reduce dose further if not tolerated; consult local treatment protocol.● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT****Dose adjustments** Start with minimum recommended dose; reduce dose further if not tolerated; consult local treatment protocol.● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**► Monitor for gastrointestinal haemorrhage.  
► Monitor complete blood counts regularly.  
► Monitor for fluid retention.  
► Monitor liver function.  
► Monitor growth in children (may cause growth retardation).● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets may be dispersed in water or apple juice.● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer imatinib tablets.● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21, 27

► **Imatinib (Non-proprietary)****Imatinib (as Imatinib mesilate) 100 mg** Imatinib 100mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £486.66 | 60 tablet [PoM] £973.32 DT = £405.85**Imatinib (as Imatinib mesilate) 400 mg** Imatinib 400mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £1,946.67 DT = £811.72 | 60 tablet [PoM] £3,893.34► **Glivec** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd) ▼**Imatinib (as Imatinib mesilate) 100 mg** Glivec 100mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £973.32 DT = £405.85**Imatinib (as Imatinib mesilate) 400 mg** Glivec 400mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £1,946.67 DT = £811.72**Nilotinib**

10-Apr-2018

● **DRUG ACTION** Nilotinib is a tyrosine kinase inhibitor.● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Newly diagnosed chronic phase Philadelphia chromosome-positive chronic myeloid leukaemia (initiated by a specialist)**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 10–17 years: (consult product literature)

**Chronic phase Philadelphia chromosome-positive chronic myeloid leukaemia resistant or intolerant to previous therapy, including imatinib (initiated by a specialist)**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 6–17 years: (consult product literature)

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

**RISKS OF INCORRECT DOSING OF ORAL ANTI-CANCER MEDICINES**  
See Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

**MHRA/CHM ADVICE (MAY 2016): RISK OF HEPATITIS B VIRUS REACTIVATION WITH TYROSINE KINASE INHIBITORS**

An EU wide review has concluded that nilotinib can cause hepatitis B virus reactivation; the MHRA recommends establishing hepatitis B virus status in all patients before initiation of treatment.

- **CAUTIONS** Clinically significant bradycardia · congestive heart failure · hepatitis B infection · history of pancreatitis · recent myocardial infarction · susceptibility to QT-interval prolongation (including electrolyte disturbances) · unstable angina

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ **Hepatitis B infection** The MHRA advises that patients who are carriers of hepatitis B virus should be closely monitored for signs and symptoms of active infection throughout treatment and for several months after stopping treatment; expert advice should be sought for patients who test positive for hepatitis B virus and in those with active infection.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: nilotinib

**● SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · angina pectoris · anxiety · appetite abnormal · arrhythmias · arthralgia · asthenia · bone marrow disorders · cardiac conduction disorders · chest discomfort · constipation · cough · decreased leucocytes · depression · diabetes mellitus · diarrhoea · dizziness · dry eye · dyslipidaemia · dyspnoea · electrolyte imbalance · eosinophilia · eye discomfort · eye disorders · eye inflammation · fever · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · headaches · hepatic disorders · hyperbilirubinaemia · hyperglycaemia · hypertension · increased risk of infection · insomnia · muscle complaints · muscle weakness · myocardial infarction · nausea · neoplasms · neutropenia · oedema · pain · palpitations · peripheral neuropathy · QT interval prolongation · respiratory disorders · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · sweat changes · taste altered · thrombocytopenia · vertigo · vomiting · weight changes
- ▶ **Uncommon** Atherosclerosis · cerebrovascular insufficiency · chills · cyanosis · erectile dysfunction · gout · haemorrhage · heart failure · hyperaemia · malaise · oral disorders · pancreatitis · peripheral vascular disease · temperature sensation altered · vision disorders
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Breast abnormalities · chorioretinopathy · diastolic dysfunction · dry mouth · facial swelling · gynaecomastia · hepatitis B reactivation · hyperparathyroidism · hyperuricaemia · hypoglycaemia · lethargy · memory loss · menorrhagia · oropharyngeal pain · pericardial effusion · pericarditis · restless legs · sebaceous hyperplasia · syncope · tremor · urinary disorders · urine discolouration
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises highly effective contraception in women of childbearing potential during treatment and for up to two weeks after stopping treatment.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—toxicity in *animal* studies; see also *Pregnancy and reproductive function* in Cytotoxic drugs p. 531.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in *animal* studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Manufacturer advises monitor lipid profiles before initiating treatment, at 3 and 6 months, and then yearly thereafter; monitor blood glucose before initiating treatment and then periodically during treatment, as clinically indicated.
  - ▶ Manufacturer advises monitor full blood count every 2 weeks for the first 2 months of treatment, then monthly thereafter, or as clinically indicated.
  - ▶ Manufacturer advises perform baseline ECG before treatment and as clinically indicated thereafter; correct any electrolyte disturbances before treatment and monitor periodically during treatment.
  - ▶ Manufacturer advises monitor and actively manage cardiovascular risk factors during treatment.
  - ▶ Manufacturer advises monitor liver function (including bilirubin and hepatic transaminases) monthly or as clinically indicated.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises capsules should either be swallowed whole or the contents of each capsule may be dispersed in one teaspoon of apple sauce and taken immediately.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** All prescribers should be familiar with the *Summary of Key Safety Recommendations for Tasigna® (nilotinib)* provided by the manufacturer.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should seek immediate medical attention if signs or symptoms of cardiovascular events occur.

All patients should be provided with the *Important Information About How to Take Your Medication* leaflet provided by the manufacturer.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 23, 25, 27

- ▶ **Tasigna** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Nilotinib (as Nilotinib hydrochloride monohydrate)**

**150 mg** Tasigna 150mg capsules | 112 capsule [P<sub>o</sub>M] £2,432.85

**Nilotinib (as Nilotinib hydrochloride monohydrate)**

**200 mg** Tasigna 200mg capsules | 112 capsule [P<sub>o</sub>M] £2,432.85



# Chapter 9

## Blood and nutrition

### CONTENTS

<b>Blood and blood-forming organs</b>	page 562
<b>1 Anaemias</b>	562
1.1 Hypoplastic, haemolytic, and renal anaemias	563
1.1a Atypical haemolytic uraemic syndrome and paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria	568
1.2 Iron deficiency anaemia	569
1.3 Megaloblastic anaemia	574
<b>2 Iron overload</b>	576
<b>3 Neutropenia and stem cell mobilisation</b>	578
3.1 Neutropenia	578
<b>4 Platelet disorders</b>	581
4.1 Essential thrombocythaemia	581
4.2 Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura	582
<b>Nutrition and metabolic disorders</b>	583
<b>1 Acid-base imbalance</b>	583
1.1 Metabolic acidosis	583
<b>2 Fluid and electrolyte imbalances</b>	583
2.1 Calcium imbalance	592
2.1a Hypocalcaemia	592
2.2 Low blood volume	595
2.3 Magnesium imbalance	596
2.3a Hypomagnesaemia	596
2.4 Phosphate imbalance	598
2.4a Hyperphosphataemia	598
2.4b Hypophosphataemia	600
2.5 Potassium imbalance	600

2.5a Hyperkalaemia	page 600
2.5b Hypokalaemia	601
<b>3 Metabolic disorders</b>	602
3.1 Acute porphyrias	603
3.2 Carnitine deficiency	604
3.3 Cystinosis	605
3.3a Nephropathic cystinosis	605
3.4 Fabry's disease	606
3.5 Gaucher's disease	607
3.6 Homocystinuria	608
3.7 Hypophosphatasia	608
3.8 Mitochondrial disorders	609
3.9 Mucopolysaccharidosis	610
3.10 Niemann–Pick type C disease	611
3.11 Pompe disease	612
3.12 Tyrosinaemia type I	612
3.13 Urea cycle disorders	613
3.14 Wilson's disease	616
<b>4 Mineral and trace elements deficiencies</b>	617
4.1 Zinc deficiency	617
<b>5 Nutrition (intravenous)</b>	618
<b>6 Nutrition (oral)</b>	621
6.1 Special diets	622
6.1a Phenylketonuria	623
<b>7 Vitamin deficiency</b>	623
7.1 Neural tube defects (prevention in pregnancy)	637

## Blood and blood-forming organs

### 1 Anaemias

#### Anaemias

##### Anaemia treatment considerations

Before initiating treatment for anaemia it is essential to determine which type is present. Iron salts may be harmful and result in iron overload if given alone to patients with anaemias other than those due to iron deficiency.

##### Sickle-cell anaemia

Sickle-cell disease is caused by a structural abnormality of haemoglobin resulting in deformed, less flexible red blood cells. Acute complications in the more severe forms include sickle-cell crisis, where infarction of the microvasculature and blood supply to organs results in severe pain. Sickle-cell crisis requires hospitalisation, intravenous fluids, analgesia and treatment of any concurrent infection. Chronic complications include skin ulceration, renal failure, and increased susceptibility to infection. Pneumococcal vaccine, haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, an annual influenza

vaccine and prophylactic penicillin reduce the risk of infection. Hepatitis B vaccine should be considered if the patient is not immune.

In most forms of sickle-cell disease, varying degrees of haemolytic anaemia are present accompanied by increased erythropoiesis; this may increase folate requirements and folate supplementation may be necessary.

Hydroxycarbamide p. 552 can reduce the frequency of crises and the need for blood transfusions in sickle-cell disease. The beneficial effects of hydroxycarbamide may not become evident for several months.

##### G6PD deficiency

Glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency is highly prevalent in individuals originating from most parts of Africa, from most parts of Asia, from Oceania, and from Southern Europe; it can also occur, rarely, in any other individuals. G6PD deficiency is more common in males than it is in females.

Individuals with G6PD deficiency are susceptible to developing acute haemolytic anaemia when they take a number of common drugs. They are also susceptible to developing acute haemolytic anaemia when they eat fava beans (broad beans, *Vicia faba*); this is termed *favism* and can be more severe in children or when the fresh fava beans are eaten raw.

When prescribing drugs for patients with G6PD deficiency, the following three points should be kept in mind:

- G6PD deficiency is genetically heterogeneous; susceptibility to the haemolytic risk from drugs varies; thus, a drug found to be safe in some G6PD-deficient individuals may not be equally safe in others;
- manufacturers do not routinely test drugs for their effects in G6PD-deficient individuals;
- the risk and severity of haemolysis is almost always dose-related.

The lists below should be read with these points in mind. Ideally, information about G6PD deficiency should be available before prescribing a drug listed below. However, in the absence of this information, the possibility of haemolysis should be considered, especially if the patient belongs to a group in which G6PD deficiency is common.

A very few G6PD-deficient individuals with chronic non-spherocytic haemolytic anaemia have haemolysis even in the absence of an exogenous trigger. These patients must be regarded as being at high risk of severe exacerbation of haemolysis following administration of any of the drugs listed below.

#### Drugs with definite risk of haemolysis in most G6PD-deficient individuals

- Dapsone and other sulfones (higher doses for dermatitis herpetiformis more likely to cause problems)
- Methylthioninium chloride
- Niridazole [not on UK market]
- Nitrofurantoin
- Pamaquin [not on UK market]
- Primaquine (30 mg weekly for 8 weeks has been found to be without undue harmful effects in African and Asian people)
- Quinolones (including ciprofloxacin, moxifloxacin, nalidixic acid, norfloxacin, and ofloxacin)
- Rasburicase
- Sulfonamides (including co-trimoxazole; some sulfonamides, e.g. sulfadiazine, have been tested and found not to be haemolytic in many G6PD-deficient individuals)

#### Drugs with possible risk of haemolysis in some G6PD-deficient individuals

- Aspirin (acceptable up to a dose of at least 1 g daily in most G6PD-deficient individuals)
- Chloroquine (acceptable in acute malaria and malaria chemoprophylaxis)
- Menadione, water-soluble derivatives (e.g. menadiol sodium phosphate)
- Quinidine (acceptable in acute malaria) [not on UK market]
- Quinine (acceptable in acute malaria)
- Sulfonyleureas

Naphthalene in mothballs also causes haemolysis in individuals with G6PD deficiency.

### Hypoplastic, haemolytic, and renal anaemias

Anabolic steroids, pyridoxine hydrochloride p. 627, antilymphocyte immunoglobulin, rituximab p. 530 [unlicensed], and various corticosteroids are used in hypoplastic and haemolytic anaemias.

**Antilymphocyte immunoglobulin** given intravenously through a central line over 12–18 hours each day for 5 days produces a response in about 50% of cases of acquired *aplastic anaemia*; the response rate may be increased when ciclosporin p. 519 is given as well. Severe reactions are common in the first 2 days and profound immunosuppression can occur; antilymphocyte immunoglobulin should be given under specialist supervision with appropriate resuscitation facilities. Alternatively, oxymetholone tablets (available from 'special order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) can be used in aplastic anaemia for 3 to 6 months.

It is unlikely that dietary deprivation of pyridoxine hydrochloride produces clinically relevant haematological

effects. However, certain forms of *sideroblastic anaemia* respond to pharmacological doses, possibly reflecting its role as a co-enzyme during haemoglobin synthesis. Pyridoxine hydrochloride is indicated in both *idiopathic acquired* and *hereditary sideroblastic anaemias*. Although complete cures have not been reported, some increase in haemoglobin can occur with high doses. *Reversible sideroblastic anaemias* respond to treatment of the underlying cause but pyridoxine hydrochloride is indicated in pregnancy, haemolytic anaemias, or during isoniazid p. 367 treatment.

**Corticosteroids** have an important place in the management of haematological disorders including *autoimmune haemolytic anaemia*, *idiopathic thrombocytopenias* and *neutropenias*, and *major transfusion reactions*. They are also used in chemotherapy schedules for many types of *lymphoma*, *lymphoid leukaemias*, and *paraproteinaiemias*, including *multiple myeloma*.

#### Erythropoietins

**Epoetins** (recombinant human erythropoietins) are used to treat the anaemia associated with erythropoietin deficiency in chronic renal failure.

Epoetin beta p. 566 is also used for the prevention of anaemia in preterm neonates of low birth-weight; a therapeutic response may take several weeks.

There is insufficient information to support the use of erythropoietins in children with leukaemia or in those receiving cancer chemotherapy.

**Darbepoetin** is a glycosylated derivative of epoetin; it persists longer in the body and can be administered less frequently than epoetin.

## 1.1 Hypoplastic, haemolytic, and renal anaemias

### ANABOLIC STEROIDS > ANDROSTAN DERIVATIVES

#### Oxymetholone

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Aplastic anaemia

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: 1–5 mg/kg daily for 3 to 6 months

##### • INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: oxymetholone

##### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

##### Capsule

##### ▶ Oxymetholone (Non-proprietary)

Oxymetholone 50 mg Oxymetholone 50mg capsules | 50 capsule [PoM] £475.00 [CD4-2]

### EPOETINS

#### Epoetins

##### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: RECOMBINANT HUMAN ERYTHROPOIETINS: VERY RARE RISK OF SEVERE CUTANEOUS ADVERSE REACTIONS (UPDATED JANUARY 2018)

The MHRA is aware of very rare cases of severe cutaneous adverse reactions, including Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis, in patients treated with erythropoietins; some cases were fatal.

More severe cases were recorded with long-acting agents

(darbopoetin alfa and methoxy polyethylene glycol-epoetin beta). Patients and their carers should be advised of the signs and symptoms of severe skin reactions when starting treatment and instructed to stop treatment and seek immediate medical attention if they develop widespread rash and blistering; these rashes often follow fever or flu-like symptoms—discontinue treatment permanently if such reactions occur.

#### ERYTHROPOIETINS—HAEMOGLOBIN CONCENTRATION

In chronic kidney disease, the use of erythropoietins can be considered in a child with anaemia. The aim of treatment is to relieve symptoms of anaemia and to avoid the need for blood transfusion. The optimum haemoglobin concentration is dependent on the child's age and factors such as symptoms, comorbidities, and patient preferences. The haemoglobin concentration should not be increased beyond that which provides adequate control of symptoms of anaemia. In *adults*, overcorrection of haemoglobin concentration with erythropoietins in those with chronic kidney disease may increase the risk of serious cardiovascular events and death; haemoglobin concentrations higher than 12 g/100 mL should be avoided in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates · pure red cell aplasia following erythropoietin therapy · uncontrolled hypertension

- **CAUTIONS** Aluminium toxicity (can impair the response to erythropoietin) · concurrent infection (can impair the response to erythropoietin) · correct factors that contribute to the anaemia of chronic renal failure, such as iron or folate deficiency, before treatment · during dialysis (increase in unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin dose may be needed) · epilepsy · inadequately treated or poorly controlled blood pressure—interrupt treatment if blood pressure uncontrolled · ischaemic vascular disease · malignant disease · other inflammatory disease (can impair the response to erythropoietin) · sickle-cell disease (lower target haemoglobin concentration may be appropriate) · sudden stabbing migraine-like pain (warning of a hypertensive crisis) · thrombocytosis (monitor platelet count for first 8 weeks)

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Arthralgia · embolism and thrombosis · headache · hypertension (dose-dependent) · influenza like illness · skin reactions · stroke
- ▶ **Uncommon** Hypertensive crisis (in isolated patients with normal or low blood pressure) · respiratory tract congestion · seizure
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Thrombocytosis
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Pure red cell aplasia (more common following subcutaneous administration in patients with chronic renal failure)

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Hypertensive crisis** In isolated patients with normal or low blood pressure, hypertensive crisis with encephalopathy-like symptoms and generalised tonic-clonic seizures requiring immediate medical attention has occurred with epoetin.

**Pure red cell aplasia** There have been very rare reports of pure red cell aplasia in patients treated with erythropoietins. In patients who develop a lack of efficacy with erythropoietin therapy and with a diagnosis of pure red cell aplasia, treatment with erythropoietins must be discontinued and testing for erythropoietin antibodies considered. Patients who develop pure red cell aplasia should not be switched to another form of erythropoietin.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Monitor closely blood pressure, reticulocyte counts, haemoglobin, and electrolytes—interrupt treatment if blood pressure uncontrolled

- ▶ Other factors, such as iron or folate deficiency, that contribute to the anaemia of chronic renal failure should be corrected before treatment and monitored during therapy. Supplemental iron may improve the response in resistant patients and in preterm neonates.

F 563

## Darbopoetin alfa

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Symptomatic anaemia associated with chronic renal failure in patients on dialysis

- ▶ **BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**
- ▶ **Child 11–17 years:** Initially 450 nanograms/kg once weekly, dose to be adjusted according to response by approximately 25% at intervals of at least 4 weeks, maintenance dose to be given once weekly or once every 2 weeks, reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose, when changing route give same dose then adjust according to weekly or fortnightly haemoglobin measurements, adjust doses not more frequently than every 2 weeks during maintenance treatment

#### Symptomatic anaemia associated with chronic renal failure in patients not on dialysis

- ▶ **BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION**
- ▶ **Child 11–17 years:** Initially 450 nanograms/kg once weekly, alternatively initially 750 nanograms/kg every 2 weeks, dose to be adjusted according to response by approximately 25% at intervals of at least 4 weeks, maintenance dose can be given once weekly, every 2 weeks, or once a month, subcutaneous route preferred in patients not on haemodialysis, reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose, when changing route give same dose then adjust according to weekly or fortnightly haemoglobin measurements, adjust doses not more frequently than every 2 weeks during maintenance treatment

#### Symptomatic anaemia associated with chronic renal failure in patients not on dialysis

- ▶ **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**
- ▶ **Child 11–17 years:** Initially 450 nanograms/kg once weekly, dose to be adjusted according to response by approximately 25% at intervals of at least 4 weeks, maintenance dose given once weekly, subcutaneous route preferred in patients not on haemodialysis, reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose, when changing route give same dose then adjust according to weekly or fortnightly haemoglobin measurements, adjust doses not more frequently than every 2 weeks during maintenance treatment

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: darbopoetin alfa

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Hypersensitivity · oedema

● **PREGNANCY** No evidence of harm in *animal studies*—manufacturer advises caution.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Solution for injection

#### ► Aranesp (Amgen Ltd)

**Darbepoetin alfa 25 microgram per 1 ml** Aranesp  
10micrograms/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £58.72

**Darbepoetin alfa 40 microgram per 1 ml** Aranesp  
20micrograms/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £117.45

**Darbepoetin alfa 100 microgram per 1 ml** Aranesp  
50micrograms/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £293.62

Aranesp 40micrograms/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £234.90

Aranesp 30micrograms/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £176.17

**Darbepoetin alfa 200 microgram per 1 ml** Aranesp  
100micrograms/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £587.24

Aranesp 130micrograms/0.65ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £763.42

Aranesp 80micrograms/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £469.79

Aranesp 60micrograms/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £352.35

**Darbepoetin alfa 500 microgram per 1 ml** Aranesp  
300micrograms/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £440.43

Aranesp 500micrograms/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £734.05

Aranesp 150micrograms/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £880.86

#### ► Aranesp SureClick (Amgen Ltd)

**Darbepoetin alfa 40 microgram per 1 ml** Aranesp SureClick  
20micrograms/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £29.36

**Darbepoetin alfa 100 microgram per 1 ml** Aranesp SureClick  
40micrograms/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £58.72

Aranesp SureClick 80micrograms/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £117.45

**Darbepoetin alfa 200 microgram per 1 ml** Aranesp SureClick  
60micrograms/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £88.09

Aranesp SureClick 100micrograms/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £146.81

**Darbepoetin alfa 500 microgram per 1 ml** Aranesp SureClick  
150micrograms/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £220.22

Aranesp SureClick 300micrograms/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £440.43

Aranesp SureClick 500micrograms/1ml solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £734.05

£ 563

## Epoetin alfa

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### BINOCRIT® PRE-FILLED SYRINGES

**Symptomatic anaemia associated with chronic renal failure in patients on haemodialysis**

#### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► **Child (body-weight up to 10 kg):** Initially 50 units/kg 3 times a week, adjusted in steps of 25 units/kg 3 times a week, dose adjusted according to response at

intervals of at least 4 weeks; maintenance 75–150 units/kg 3 times a week, intravenous injection to be given over 1–5 minutes, reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose

► **Child (body-weight 10–30 kg):** Initially 50 units/kg 3 times a week, adjusted in steps of 25 units/kg 3 times a week, dose adjusted according to response at intervals of at least 4 weeks; maintenance 60–150 units/kg 3 times a week, intravenous injection to be given over 1–5 minutes, reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose

► **Child (body-weight 31 kg and above):** Initially 50 units/kg 3 times a week, adjusted in steps of 25 units/kg 3 times a week, dose adjusted according to response at intervals of at least 4 weeks; maintenance 30–100 units/kg 3 times a week, intravenous injection to be given over 1–5 minutes, reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose

#### EPREX® PRE-FILLED SYRINGES

**Symptomatic anaemia associated with chronic renal failure in patients on haemodialysis**

#### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► **Child (body-weight up to 10 kg):** Initially 50 units/kg 3 times a week, adjusted in steps of 25 units/kg 3 times a week, dose adjusted according to response at intervals of at least 4 weeks; maintenance 75–150 units/kg 3 times a week, intravenous injection to be given over 1–5 minutes, reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose

► **Child (body-weight 10–30 kg):** Initially 50 units/kg 3 times a week, adjusted in steps of 25 units/kg 3 times a week, dose adjusted according to response at intervals of at least 4 weeks; maintenance 60–150 units/kg 3 times a week, intravenous injection to be given over 1–5 minutes, reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose

► **Child (body-weight 31–60 kg):** Initially 50 units/kg 3 times a week, adjusted in steps of 25 units/kg 3 times a week, dose adjusted according to response at intervals of at least 4 weeks; maintenance 30–100 units/kg 3 times a week, intravenous continued →

injection to be given over 1–5 minutes, reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose

- ▶ **Child** (body-weight 61 kg and above): Initially 50 units/kg 3 times a week, adjusted in steps of 25 units/kg 3 times a week, dose adjusted according to response at intervals of at least 4 weeks; maintenance 75–300 units/kg once weekly, maintenance dose can be given as a single dose or in divided doses, intravenous injection to be given over 1–5 minutes, reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: epoetin alfa

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Chills · cough · diarrhoea · fever · myalgia · nausea · pain · peripheral oedema · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Hyperkalaemia

● **PREGNANCY** No evidence of harm. Benefits probably outweigh risk of anaemia and of blood transfusion in pregnancy.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Unlikely to be present in milk. Minimal effect on infant.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise caution in chronic hepatic failure.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Epoetin alfa is a biological medicine. Biological medicines must be prescribed and dispensed by brand name, see *Biological medicines* and *Biosimilar medicines*, under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

● **MEDICAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for injection**

- ▶ **Eprex** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

**Epoetin alfa 2000 unit per 1 ml** Eprex 1,000units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £33.18

**Epoetin alfa 4000 unit per 1 ml** Eprex 2,000units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £66.37

**Epoetin alfa 10000 unit per 1 ml** Eprex 6,000units/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £199.11

Eprex 4,000units/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £132.74

Eprex 5,000units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £165.92

Eprex 3,000units/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £99.55

Eprex 10,000units/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £331.85

Eprex 8,000units/0.8ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £265.48

**Epoetin alfa 40000 unit per 1 ml** Eprex 20,000units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £110.62

Eprex 30,000units/0.75ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £199.11

Eprex 40,000units/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £265.48

## Epoetin beta

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Symptomatic anaemia associated with chronic renal failure

- ▶ **BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION**

▶ **Neonate:** Initially 20 units/kg 3 times a week for 4 weeks, increased in steps of 20 units/kg 3 times a week, according to response at intervals of 4 weeks, total weekly dose may be divided into daily doses; maintenance dose, initially reduce dose by half then adjust according to response at intervals of 1–2 weeks, total weekly maintenance dose may be given as a single dose or in 3 or 7 divided doses. Subcutaneous route preferred in patients not on haemodialysis. Reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration approaches or exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose; maximum 720 units/kg per week.

▶ **Child:** Initially 20 units/kg 3 times a week for 4 weeks, increased in steps of 20 units/kg 3 times a week, according to response at intervals of 4 weeks, total weekly dose may be divided into daily doses; maintenance dose, initially reduce dose by half then adjust according to response at intervals of 1–2 weeks, total weekly maintenance dose may be given as a single dose or in 3 or 7 divided doses. Subcutaneous route preferred in patients not on haemodialysis. Reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration approaches or exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose; maximum 720 units/kg per week

- ▶ **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

▶ **Neonate:** Initially 40 units/kg 3 times a week for 4 weeks, then increased to 80 units/kg 3 times a week, then increased in steps of 20 units/kg 3 times a week if required, at intervals of 4 weeks; maintenance dose, initially reduce dose by half then adjust according to response at intervals of 1–2 weeks. Intravenous injection to be administered over 2 minutes. Subcutaneous route preferred in patients not on haemodialysis. Reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration approaches or exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose; maximum 720 units/kg per week.

▶ **Child:** Initially 40 units/kg 3 times a week for 4 weeks, then increased to 80 units/kg 3 times a week, then increased in steps of 20 units/kg 3 times a week if required, at intervals of 4 weeks; maintenance dose, initially reduce dose by half then adjust according to response at intervals of 1–2 weeks. Intravenous injection to be administered over 2 minutes. Subcutaneous route preferred in patients not on haemodialysis. Reduce dose by approximately 25% if rise in haemoglobin concentration exceeds 2 g/100 mL



over 4 weeks or if haemoglobin concentration approaches or exceeds 12 g/100 mL; if haemoglobin concentration continues to rise, despite dose reduction, suspend treatment until haemoglobin concentration decreases and then restart at a dose approximately 25% lower than the previous dose; maximum 720 units/kg per week

#### Prevention of anaemias of prematurity in neonates

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Neonate up to 33 weeks corrected gestational age (body-weight 0.75–1.5 kg): 250 units/kg 3 times a week preferably started within 3 days of birth and continued for 6 weeks, using single-dose unpreserved injection.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

**MHRA/CHM ADVICE (MAY 2015) EPOETIN BETA (NEORECORMON): INCREASED RISK OF RETINOPATHY IN PRETERM INFANTS CANNOT BE EXCLUDED**

There is a possible increased risk of retinopathy in premature infants, when epoetin beta is used for preventing anaemia of prematurity. When using epoetin beta in preterm infants:

- consider the benefits and risks of treatment, including the possible risk of retinopathy,
- monitor the infant for features of retinopathy, and
- advise parents or carers that their baby's eyes will be carefully monitored for any ill effects.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: epoetin beta

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

- **PREGNANCY** No evidence of harm. Benefits probably outweigh risk of anaemia and of blood transfusion in pregnancy.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Unlikely to be present in milk. Minimal effect on infant.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise caution in chronic hepatic failure.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

EXCipients: May contain Phenylalanine

- **NeoRecormon** (Roche Products Ltd)

**Epoetin beta 1667 unit per 1 ml** NeoRecormon 500units/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £21.05

**Epoetin beta 6667 unit per 1 ml** NeoRecormon 2,000units/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £84.17

**Epoetin beta 10000 unit per 1 ml** NeoRecormon 3,000units/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £126.25

**Epoetin beta 13333 unit per 1 ml** NeoRecormon 4,000units/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £168.34

**Epoetin beta 16667 unit per 1 ml** NeoRecormon 10,000units/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £420.85

NeoRecormon 5,000units/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £210.42

**Epoetin beta 20000 unit per 1 ml** NeoRecormon 6,000units/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £252.50

**Epoetin beta 33333 unit per 1 ml** NeoRecormon 20,000units/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £841.71

**Epoetin beta 50000 unit per 1 ml** NeoRecormon 30,000units/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £841.71

## Epoetin zeta

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic anaemia associated with chronic renal failure in patients on haemodialysis**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child (body-weight up to 10 kg): Initially 50 units/kg 3 times a week, adjusted according to response, adjusted in steps of 25 units/kg 3 times a week, dose to be adjusted at intervals of at least 4 weeks; maintenance 75–150 units/kg 3 times a week, to be administered over 1–5 minutes, avoid increasing haemoglobin concentration at a rate exceeding 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks
- Child (body-weight 10–30 kg): Initially 50 units/kg 3 times a week, adjusted according to response, adjusted in steps of 25 units/kg 3 times a week, dose to be adjusted at intervals of at least 4 weeks; maintenance 60–150 units/kg 3 times a week, to be administered over 1–5 minutes, avoid increasing haemoglobin concentration at a rate exceeding 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks
- Child (body-weight 31 kg and above): Initially 50 units/kg 3 times a week, adjusted according to response, adjusted in steps of 25 units/kg 3 times a week, dose to be adjusted at intervals of at least 4 weeks; maintenance 30–100 units/kg 3 times a week, to be administered over 1–5 minutes, avoid increasing haemoglobin concentration at a rate exceeding 2 g/100 mL over 4 weeks

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: epoetin zeta

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Asthenia · dizziness
- **Uncommon** Intracranial haemorrhage
- **Rare or very rare** Angioedema
- **Frequency not known** Aneurysm · cerebrovascular insufficiency · hypertensive encephalopathy · myocardial infarction · myocardial ischaemia

- **PREGNANCY** No evidence of harm. Benefits probably outweigh risk of anaemia and of blood transfusion in pregnancy.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Unlikely to be present in milk. Minimal effect on infant.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise caution in chronic hepatic failure.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Epoetin zeta is a biological medicine. Biological medicines must be prescribed and dispensed by brand name, see *Biological medicines* and *Biosimilar medicines*, under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

EXCipients: May contain Phenylalanine

- **Retacrit** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Epoetin zeta 3333 unit per 1 ml** Retacrit 2,000units/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £57.70 (Hospital only)

Retacrit 3,000units/0.9ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £86.55 (Hospital only)

Retacrit 1,000units/0.3ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £28.85 (Hospital only)

**Epoetin zeta 10000 unit per 1 ml** Retacrit 6,000units/0.6ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £173.09 (Hospital only)

Retacrit 10,000units/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £288.48 (Hospital only)

Retacrit 8,000units/0.8ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £230.79 (Hospital only)

Retacrit 4,000units/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £115.40 (Hospital only)  
 Retacrit 5,000units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 6 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £144.25 (Hospital only)  
**Epoetin zeta 40000 unit per 1 ml** Retacrit 20,000units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £96.16 (Hospital only)  
 Retacrit 40,000units/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £193.32 (Hospital only)  
 Retacrit 30,000units/0.75ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £144.25 (Hospital only)

## 1.1a Atypical haemolytic uraemic syndrome and paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria

### IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES

#### Eculizumab

04-Dec-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Eculizumab, a recombinant monoclonal antibody, inhibits terminal complement activation at the C5 protein and thereby reduces haemolysis and thrombotic microangiopathy.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Reduce haemolysis in paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria (PNH), in those with a history of blood transfusions (under expert supervision)**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: Refer for specialist advice, experience very limited

**Reduce thrombotic microangiopathy in atypical haemolytic uraemic syndrome (aHUS) (specialist use only)**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child 2 months–17 years (body-weight 5–9 kg): Initially 300 mg once weekly for 2 weeks, followed by 300 mg every 3 weeks
- Child 2 months–17 years (body-weight 10–19 kg): Initially 600 mg once weekly for 1 week, then reduced to 300 mg once weekly for 1 week, followed by 300 mg every 2 weeks
- Child 2 months–17 years (body-weight 20–29 kg): Initially 600 mg once weekly for 3 weeks, followed by 600 mg every 2 weeks
- Child 2 months–17 years (body-weight 30–39 kg): Initially 600 mg once weekly for 2 weeks, then increased to 900 mg once weekly for 1 week, followed by 900 mg every 2 weeks
- Child 2 months–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): Initially 900 mg once weekly for 4 weeks, then increased to 1.2 g once weekly for 1 week, followed by 1.2 g every 2 weeks

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Patients unvaccinated against *Neisseria meningitidis* · unresolved *Neisseria meningitidis* infection
- **CAUTIONS** Active systemic infection
- CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - Meningococcal infection Vaccinate against *Neisseria meningitidis* at least 2 weeks before treatment (tetraavalent vaccine against serotypes A, C, W135 and Y recommended); revaccinate according to current medical guidelines. Patients receiving eculizumab less than 2 weeks after receiving meningococcal vaccine must be given prophylactic antibiotics until 2 weeks after

vaccination. Advise patient to report promptly any signs of meningococcal infection. Other immunisations should also be up to date.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: monoclonal antibodies
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Alopecia · asthenia · chills · cough · decreased leucocytes · diarrhoea · dizziness · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hypertension · increased risk of infection · influenza like illness · joint disorders · muscle complaints · nausea · oropharyngeal pain · pain · skin reactions · sleep disorders · taste altered · tremor · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Abscess · anxiety · appetite decreased · chest discomfort · constipation · cystitis · depression · dysuria · haemorrhage · hot flush · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · hypotension · meningitis meningococcal · mood swings · nasal complaints · oedema · palpitations · paraesthesia · sepsis · spontaneous penile erection · throat irritation · tinnitus · vascular disorders · vertigo · vision blurred
  - **Rare or very rare** Abnormal clotting factor · conjunctival irritation · feeling hot · gastrooesophageal reflux disease · gingival discomfort · Grave's disease · infusion related reaction · jaundice · malignant melanoma · menstrual disorder · syncope · urogenital tract gonococcal infection
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception during and for 5 months after treatment.
- **PREGNANCY** No information available—use only if potential benefit outweighs risk. Human IgG antibodies known to cross placenta.
- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available—manufacturer advises avoid breast-feeding during and for 5 months after treatment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - Monitor for 1 hour after infusion.
  - For *paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria*, monitor for intravascular haemolysis (including serum-lactate dehydrogenase concentration) during treatment and for at least 8 weeks after discontinuation.
  - For *atypical haemolytic uraemic syndrome*, monitor for thrombotic microangiopathy (measure platelet count, serum-lactate dehydrogenase concentration, and serum creatinine) during treatment and for at least 12 weeks after discontinuation.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Dilute requisite dose to a concentration of 5 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% and mix gently; give over 25–45 minutes. If infusion-related reactions occur, infusion time may be increased to 4 hours in child under 12 years or 2 hours in child over 12 years.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Consult product literature for details of supplemental doses with concomitant plasmapheresis, plasma exchange, or plasma infusion.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient or carers should be advised to report promptly any signs of meningococcal infection.
  - A patient information card should be provided.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**NICE decisions**

  - Eculizumab for treating atypical haemolytic uraemic syndrome (January 2015) NICE HST1 Eculizumab, within its marketing authorisation, is recommended for funding for treating atypical haemolytic uraemic syndrome, only if all the following arrangements are in place:
    - coordination of eculizumab use through an expert centre, and
    - monitoring systems to record the number of people with a diagnosis of atypical haemolytic uraemic syndrome

and the number who have eculizumab, and the dose and duration of treatment, **and**

- a national protocol for starting and stopping eculizumab for clinical reasons, **and**
- a research programme with robust methods to evaluate when stopping treatment or dose adjustment might occur.

The long-term budget impact of eculizumab for treating atypical haemolytic uraemic syndrome is uncertain but will be considerable. NHS England and the manufacturer should consider what opportunities might exist to reduce the cost of eculizumab to the NHS.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/HST1](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/HST1)

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**  
There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.  
**Solution for infusion**  
ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium  
► **Soliris** (Alexion Pharma UK Ltd)  
**Ecuzumab 10 mg per 1 ml** Soliris 300mg/30ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial **[PoM]** £3,150.00 (Hospital only)

## 1.2 Iron deficiency anaemia

### Anaemia, iron deficiency

#### Iron deficiency, treatment and prophylaxis

*Treatment* with an iron preparation is justified only in the presence of a demonstrable iron-deficiency state. Before starting treatment, it is important to exclude any serious underlying cause of the anaemia (e.g. gastro-intestinal bleeding). The possibility of thalassaemia should be considered in children of Mediterranean or Indian subcontinent descent.

*Prophylaxis* with an iron preparation may be appropriate in those with a poor diet, malabsorption, menorrhagia, pregnancy, in haemodialysis patients, and in the management of low birth-weight infants such as preterm neonates.

**Oral iron**  
Iron salts should be given by mouth unless there are good reasons for using another route.

Ferrous salts show only marginal differences between one another in efficiency of absorption of iron. Haemoglobin regeneration rate is little affected by the type of salt used provided sufficient iron is given, and in most patients the speed of response is not critical. Choice of preparation is thus usually decided by formulation, palatability, incidence of side-effects, and cost.

**Treatment of iron-deficiency anaemia**  
The oral dose of elemental iron to treat deficiency is 3–6 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) daily given in 2–3 divided doses. Iron supplementation may also be required to produce an optimum response to erythropoietins in iron-deficient children with chronic renal failure or in preterm neonates.

When prescribing, express the dose in terms of elemental iron and iron salt and select the most appropriate preparation; specify both the iron salt and formulation on the prescription. The iron content of artificial formula feeds should also be considered.

Iron content of different iron salts	
Iron salt/amount	Content of ferrous iron
ferrous fumarate 200 mg	65 mg
ferrous gluconate 300 mg	35 mg
ferrous sulfate 300 mg	60 mg
ferrous sulfate, dried 200 mg	65 mg
sodium feredetate 190 mg	27.5 mg

**Prophylaxis of iron deficiency**  
In neonates, haemoglobin and haematocrit concentrations change rapidly. These changes are not due to iron deficiency and cannot be corrected by iron supplementation. Similarly, neonatal anaemia resulting from repeated blood sampling does not respond to iron therapy.

All babies, including preterm neonates, are born with substantial iron stores but these stores can become depleted unless dietary intake is adequate. All babies require an iron intake of 400–700 nanograms daily to maintain body stores. Iron in breast milk is well absorbed but that in artificial feeds or in cow's milk is less so. Most artificial formula feeds are sufficiently fortified with iron to prevent deficiency and their iron content should be taken into account when considering further iron supplementation.

Prophylactic iron supplementation may be required in babies of low birth-weight who are solely breast-fed; supplementation is started 4–6 weeks after birth and continued until mixed feeding is established.

Infants with a poor diet may become anaemic in the second year of life, particularly if cow's milk, rather than fortified formula feed, is a major part of the diet.

**Compound preparations**  
Some oral preparations contain ascorbic acid p. 629 to aid absorption of the iron, but the therapeutic advantage of such preparations is minimal and cost may be increased.

There is no justification for the inclusion of other ingredients, such as the **B group of vitamins**, except folic acid p. 574 for pregnant women.

**Parenteral iron**  
Iron can be administered parenterally as iron dextran p. 570, iron sucrose p. 571 or ferric carboxymaltose p. 570. Parenteral iron is generally reserved for use when oral therapy is unsuccessful because the child cannot tolerate oral iron, or does not take it reliably, or if there is continuing blood loss, or in malabsorption.

Many children with chronic renal failure who are receiving haemodialysis (and some who are receiving peritoneal dialysis) also require iron by the intravenous route on a regular basis.

With the exception of children with severe renal failure receiving haemodialysis, parenteral iron does not produce a faster haemoglobin response than oral iron provided that the oral iron preparation is taken reliably and is absorbed adequately. If parenteral iron is necessary, the dose should be calculated according to the child's body-weight and total iron deficit. Depending on the preparation used, parenteral iron is given as a total dose or in divided doses. Further treatment should be guided by monitoring haemoglobin and serum iron concentrations.

MINERALS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > IRON,  
INJECTABLE

## Iron (injectable)

## IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: SERIOUS HYPERSENSITIVITY REACTIONS WITH INTRAVENOUS IRON (AUGUST 2013)

Serious hypersensitivity reactions, including life-threatening and fatal anaphylactic reactions, have been reported in patients receiving intravenous iron. These reactions can occur even when a previous administration has been tolerated (including a negative test dose). Test doses are no longer recommended and caution is needed with every dose of intravenous iron.

Intravenous iron products should only be administered when appropriately trained staff and resuscitation facilities are immediately available; patients should be closely monitored for signs of hypersensitivity during and for at least 30 minutes after every administration. In the event of a hypersensitivity reaction, treatment should be stopped immediately and appropriate management initiated.

The risk of hypersensitivity is increased in patients with known allergies, immune or inflammatory conditions, or those with a history of severe asthma, eczema, or other atopic allergy; in these patients, intravenous iron should only be used if the benefits outweigh the risks.

Intravenous iron should be avoided in the first trimester of pregnancy and used in the second or third trimesters only if the benefit outweighs the potential risks for both mother and fetus.

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Dizziness · flushing · headache · hypertension · hypophosphataemia · hypotension · nausea · taste altered
- ▶ **Uncommon** Arrhythmias · arthralgia · bronchospasm · chest pain · chills · constipation · diarrhoea · dyspnoea · fatigue · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · loss of consciousness · muscle complaints · pain · peripheral oedema · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · vascular disorders · vision blurred · vomiting
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · anxiety · circulatory collapse · influenza like illness · malaise · palpitations · psychiatric disorder · seizure · syncope · tremor

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Anaphylactic reactions can occur with parenteral administration of iron complexes and facilities for cardiopulmonary resuscitation must be available. If children complain of acute symptoms particularly nausea, back pain, breathlessness, or develop hypotension, the infusion should be stopped.

**Overdose** For details on the management of poisoning, see Iron salts, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.



- **CAUTIONS** Allergic disorders · asthma · eczema · hypersensitivity can occur with parenteral iron and facilities for cardiopulmonary resuscitation must be available · infection (discontinue if ongoing bacteraemia) · oral iron should not be given until 5 days after last injection

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: iron (injectable)

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Face oedema · flatulence · presyncope

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid in first trimester; crosses the placenta in animal studies. May influence skeletal development.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution. Avoid in conditions where iron overload increases risk of impairment.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** A ferric carboxymaltose complex containing 5% (50 mg/mL) of iron.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for injection**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- ▶ **Ferinject** (Vifor Pharma UK Ltd) ▼

**Iron (as Ferric carboxymaltose) 50 mg per 1 ml** Ferinject 1000mg/20ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £154.23  
 Ferinject 100mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £81.18  
 Ferinject 500mg/10ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £405.88

► above

## Iron dextran

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Iron-deficiency anaemia**

- ▶ **BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION**

- ▶ **Child 14-17 years:** Intramuscular injection to be administered into the gluteal muscle, doses calculated according to body-weight and iron deficit (consult product literature)

- ▶ **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

- ▶ **Child:** Doses calculated according to body-weight and iron deficit (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 14 years.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active rheumatoid arthritis · asthma · eczema · history of allergic disorders · infection

- **CAUTIONS** Hypersensitivity can occur with parenteral iron and facilities for cardiopulmonary resuscitation must be available · oral iron should not be given until 5 days after last injection

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: iron (injectable)

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Uncommon** Feeling hot · muscle cramps

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Deafness (transient) · haemolysis · restlessness

- ▶ **Frequency not known** Rheumatoid arthritis aggravated

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid in first trimester.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in acute renal failure.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** A complex of ferric hydroxide with dextran containing 5% (50 mg/mL) of iron.

► above

## Ferric carboxymaltose

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Iron-deficiency anaemia**

- ▶ **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

- ▶ **Child:** Dose calculated according to body-weight and iron deficit (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 14 years.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

##### ► CosmoFer (Pharmacosmos UK Ltd) ▼

**Iron (as iron dextran) 50 mg per 1 mL** CosmoFer 500mg/10mL solution for injection ampoules | 2 ampoules [PoM] £79.70  
CosmoFer 100mg/2mL solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoules [PoM] £39.85

## Iron sucrose

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Iron-deficiency anaemia

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child (body-weight up to 67 kg): Dose calculated according to body-weight and iron deficit, each divided dose should not exceed 3 mg/kg/dose (consult product literature)
- Child (body-weight 67 kg and above): Dose calculated according to body-weight and iron deficit, each divided dose should not exceed max. 200 mg/dose (consult product literature)

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Anaphylaxis · asthma · eczema · history of allergic disorders

● **CAUTIONS** Hypersensitivity reactions can occur with parenteral iron and facilities for cardiopulmonary resuscitation must be available · infection (discontinue if ongoing bacteraemia · oral iron should not be given until 5 days after last injection)

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: iron (injectable)

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Uncommon** Asthenia · pain
- **Rare or very rare** Drowsiness · urine discolouration
- **Frequency not known** Bradycardia · cold sweat · confusion · level of consciousness decreased

● **PREGNANCY** Avoid in first trimester.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution. Avoid in conditions where iron overload increases risk of impairment.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** A complex of ferric hydroxide with sucrose containing 2% (20 mg/mL) of iron.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Venofer (Vifor Pharma UK Ltd, Imported (United States)) ▼

**Iron (as iron sucrose) 20 mg per 1 mL** Venofer 100mg/5mL solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £43.52  
Venofer 50mg/2.5mL solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £

## MINERALS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > IRON, ORAL

## Iron (oral)

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Constipation · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · nausea
- **Uncommon** Vomiting
- **Frequency not known** Appetite decreased · faeces discoloured

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Iron can be constipating and occasionally lead to faecal impaction. Oral iron, particularly modified-release preparations, can exacerbate diarrhoea in patients with inflammatory bowel

disease; care is also needed in patients with intestinal strictures and diverticular disease.

**Overdose** For details on the management of poisoning, see Iron salts, under Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

Iron preparations are an important cause of accidental overdose in children and as little as 20mg/kg of elemental iron can lead to symptoms of toxicity.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- **Therapeutic response** The haemoglobin concentration should rise by about 100–200 mg/100 mL (1–2 g/litre) per day or 2 g/100 mL (20 g/litre) over 3–4 weeks. When the haemoglobin is in the normal range, treatment should be continued for a further 3 months to replenish the iron stores. Epithelial tissue changes such as atrophic glossitis and koilonychia are usually improved, but the response is often slow.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Express the dose in terms of elemental iron and iron salt and select the most appropriate preparation; specify both the iron salt and formulation on the prescription.

The iron content of artificial formula feeds should also be considered.

The most common reason for lack of response in children is poor compliance; poor absorption is rare in children.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Although iron preparations are best absorbed on an empty stomach they can be taken after food to reduce gastro-intestinal side-effects. May discolour stools.

## Ferrous fumarate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Iron-deficiency anaemia (prophylactic)

- BY MOUTH USING TABLETS
- Child 12–17 years: 210 mg 1–2 times a day
- BY MOUTH USING SYRUP
- Child 12–17 years: 140 mg twice daily

#### Iron-deficiency anaemia (therapeutic)

- BY MOUTH USING TABLETS
- Child 12–17 years: 210 mg 2–3 times a day
- BY MOUTH USING SYRUP
- Child 12–17 years: 280 mg twice daily

#### FERSADAY®

#### Iron-deficiency anaemia (prophylactic)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 322 mg daily

#### Iron-deficiency anaemia (therapeutic)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 322 mg twice daily

#### GALFER® CAPSULES

#### Iron-deficiency anaemia (prophylactic)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 305 mg daily

#### Iron-deficiency anaemia (therapeutic)

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 305 mg twice daily

#### GALFER® SYRUP

#### Iron-deficiency anaemia (prophylaxis)

- BY MOUTH

- Neonate up to 36 weeks corrected gestational age (body-weight up to 3 kg): 0.5 mL daily, prophylactic iron supplementation may be required in babies of low birth-weight who are solely breast-fed; supplementation is started 4–6 weeks after birth and continued until mixed feeding is established.

continued →



► Neonate: 0.25 mL/kilogram twice daily, the total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses, prophylactic iron supplementation may be required in babies of low birth-weight who are solely breast-fed; supplementation is started 4–6 weeks after birth and continued until mixed feeding is established.

► Child 1 month–11 years: 0.25 mL/kilogram twice daily, the total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses, prophylactic iron supplementation may be required in babies of low birth-weight who are solely breast-fed; supplementation is started 4–6 weeks after birth and continued until mixed feeding is established; maximum 20 mL per day

► Child 12–17 years: 10 mL once daily

#### Iron-deficiency anaemia (therapeutic)

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 0.25 mL/kilogram twice daily, the total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses.

► Child 1 month–11 years: 0.25 mL/kilogram twice daily, the total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses; maximum 20 mL per day

► Child 12–17 years: 10 mL 1–2 times a day

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: iron (oral)

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Faecal impaction · haemosiderosis

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Non-proprietary ferrous fumarate tablets may contain 210 mg (68 mg iron), syrup may contain approx. 140 mg (45 mg iron)/5 mL; *Galfer*® capsules contain ferrous fumarate 305 mg (100 mg iron); *Fersaday*® tablets contain ferrous fumarate 322 mg (100 mg iron).

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Ferrous fumarate for iron-deficiency anaemia [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ferrous-fumarate-for-iron-deficiency-anaemia](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ferrous-fumarate-for-iron-deficiency-anaemia)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral solution

► **Ferrous fumarate (Non-proprietary)**

**Ferrous fumarate 28 mg per 1 mL** Ferrous fumarate 140mg/5ml oral solution | 200 mL | £3.92 DT = £3.92

► **Galfer** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

**Ferrous fumarate 28 mg per 1 mL** Galfer 140mg/5ml syrup sugar-free | 300 mL | £5.33 DT = £5.33

##### Tablet

► **Ferrous fumarate (Non-proprietary)**

**Ferrous fumarate 210 mg** Ferrous fumarate 210mg tablets | 84 tablet | £3.50 DT = £3.50 | 84 tablet | £3.50

**Ferrous fumarate 322 mg** Ferrous fumarate 322mg tablets | 28 tablet | £1.00 DT = £1.00

##### Capsule

► **Galfer** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

**Ferrous fumarate 305 mg** Galfer 305mg capsules | 100 capsule | £2.33 DT = £2.33 | 250 capsule | £5.00

571

## Ferrous gluconate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Prophylaxis of iron-deficiency anaemia

► BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

► Child 6–11 years: 300–900 mg daily

► Child 12–17 years: 600 mg daily

##### Treatment of iron-deficiency anaemia

► BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

► Child 6–11 years: 300–900 mg daily

► Child 12–17 years: 1.2–1.8 g daily in divided doses

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: iron (oral)

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Gastrointestinal disorders

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Ferrous gluconate 300 mg contains 35 mg iron.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Ferrous gluconate for iron-deficiency anaemia [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ferrous-gluconate-for-iron-deficiency-anaemia](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ferrous-gluconate-for-iron-deficiency-anaemia)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

► **Ferrous gluconate (Non-proprietary)**

**Ferrous gluconate 300 mg** Ferrous gluconate 300mg tablets | 28 tablet | £3.35 DT = £0.64 | 1000 tablet | £15.00–£119.64

571

## Ferrous sulfate

20-Jul-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Iron-deficiency anaemia (prophylactic)

► BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

► Child 6–17 years: 200 mg daily

##### Iron-deficiency anaemia (therapeutic)

► BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

► Child 6–17 years: 200 mg 2–3 times a day

##### FEOSPAN®

##### Iron-deficiency anaemia

► BY MOUTH

► Child 1–17 years: 1 capsule daily, capsule can be opened and sprinkled on food

##### FERROGRAD®

##### Iron-deficiency anaemia (prophylactic and therapeutic)

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years: 1 tablet daily

##### IRONORM® DROPS

##### Iron-deficiency anaemia (prophylactic)

► BY MOUTH

► Child 1 month–5 years: 0.2 mL daily until mixed feeding established, higher doses up to max. 0.08 mL/kg daily may be needed, then 0.5–1.2 mL daily

► Child 6–11 years: 2.4 mL daily

► Child 12–17 years: 2.4–4.8 mL daily

##### Iron-deficiency anaemia (therapeutic)

► BY MOUTH

► Child 1 month–5 years: 0.12–0.24 mL/kilogram daily in 2–3 divided doses; maximum 8 mL per day

► Child 6–11 years: 0.12–0.24 mL/kilogram daily in 2–3 divided doses; maximum 8 mL per day

► Child 12–17 years: 4 mL 1–2 times a day

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: iron (oral)

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Tooth discolouration

#### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Iron content Ferrous sulfate 200 mg is equivalent to 65 mg iron; *Ironorm*® drops contain ferrous sulfate 125 mg (equivalent to 25 mg iron)/mL; *Feospan*® spansules contain ferrous sulfate 150 mg (47 mg iron) (spansule (= capsules m/r)); *Ferrograd*® tablets contain ferrous sulfate 325 mg (105 mg iron).

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Ferrous sulfate for iron-deficiency anaemia [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ferrous-sulfate-iron-deficiency-anaemia](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ferrous-sulfate-iron-deficiency-anaemia)

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

**NHS restrictions** *Feospan*® is not prescribable in NHS primary care.

● **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** *Feospan*® is less suitable for prescribing. *Ferrograd*® is less suitable for prescribing.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

#### ► Ferrogad (Teofarma)

**Ferrous sulfate dried 325 mg** Ferrogad 325mg modified-release tablets | 30 tablet **£**2.58 DT = £2.58

### Tablet

#### ► Ferrous sulfate (Non-proprietary)

**Ferrous sulfate dried 200 mg** Ferrous sulfate 200mg tablets | 28 tablet **£**8.15 DT = £0.95 | 60 tablet **£**1.78–£3.05 | 100 tablet **£**3.39–£10.80 | 1000 tablet **£**38.37–£108.00

### Modified-release capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

#### ► Feospan Spansules (Intrapharm Laboratories Ltd)

**Ferrous sulfate dried 150 mg** Feospan 150mg Spansules | 30 capsule **£**3.95

### Oral drops

#### ► Ironorm (Wallace Manufacturing Chemists Ltd)

**Ferrous sulfate 125 mg per 1 mL** Ironorm 125mg/mL oral drops sugar-free | 15 mL **£**30.00 DT = £30.00

- Child 6–11 years: 5 mL daily
- Child 12–17 years: 5 mL 1–2 times a day

### Iron-deficiency anaemia (therapeutic) if required during second and third trimester of pregnancy

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 5 mL once daily

## ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: iron (oral)

## ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Counselling on the use of the dropper advised.

## ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

**NHS restrictions** *Niferex*<sup>®</sup> elixir is not prescribable in NHS primary care, except for the 30-mL paediatric dropper bottle for prophylaxis and treatment of iron deficiency in infants born prematurely; endorse prescription 'SLS'.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Oral solution

#### ► Niferex (Tilomed Laboratories Ltd)

**Iron (as Polysaccharide-iron complex) 100 mg** Niferex 100mg/5mL elixir sugar-free | 30 mL **£**2.16 sugar-free | 240 mL **£**6.06

## Ferrous sulfate with folic acid

20-Jul-2017

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, ferrous sulfate p. 572, folic acid p. 574.

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

### Iron-deficiency anaemia

- BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE TABLETS
- Child 12–17 years: 1 tablet daily, to be taken before food

## ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: folates · iron (oral)

## ● LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING

*Ferrogad Folic*<sup>®</sup> is less suitable for prescribing.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

#### ► Ferrogad Folic (Teofarma)

**Folic acid 350 microgram, Ferrous sulfate dried 325 mg** Ferrogad Folic 325mg/350microgram modified-release tablets | 30 tablet **£**2.64 DT = £2.64

**£ 571**

## Polysaccharide-iron complex

20-Jul-2017

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

### Iron-deficiency anaemia (prophylactic)

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 1 drop (approximately 500 micrograms iron) per 450 g body-weight to be given 3 times a daily, dose to be administered from dropper bottle, prophylactic iron supplementation may be required in babies of low birth-weight who are solely breast-fed; supplementation is started 4–6 weeks after birth and continued until mixed feeding is established.

- Child 1 month–1 year: 1 drop (approximately 500 micrograms iron) per 450 g body-weight to be given 3 times a daily, dose to be administered from dropper bottle, prophylactic iron supplementation may be required in babies of low birth-weight who are solely breast-fed; supplementation is started 4–6 weeks after birth and continued until mixed feeding is established
- Child 12–17 years: 2.5 mL daily

### Iron-deficiency anaemia (therapeutic)

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–5 years: 2.5 mL daily

## Sodium feredetate

### (Sodium ironedetate)

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

### Iron-deficiency anaemia (therapeutic)

#### ► BY MOUTH USING ORAL SOLUTION

- Neonate: Up to 2.5 mL twice daily, smaller doses to be used initially.

- Child 1–11 months: Up to 2.5 mL twice daily, smaller doses to be used initially
- Child 1–4 years: 2.5 mL 3 times a day
- Child 5–11 years: 5 mL 3 times a day
- Child 12–17 years: 5 mL 3 times a day, increased to 10 mL 3 times a day, dose to be increased gradually

### Iron-deficiency anaemia (prophylactic)

#### ► BY MOUTH USING ORAL SOLUTION

- Neonate: 1 mL daily, prophylactic iron supplementation may be required in babies of low birth-weight who are solely breast-fed; supplementation is started 4–6 weeks after birth and continued until mixed feeding is established.

- Child 1–11 months: 1 mL daily, prophylactic iron supplementation may be required in babies of low birth-weight who are solely breast-fed; supplementation is started 4–6 weeks after birth and continued until mixed feeding is established

## ● UNLICENSED USE

Not licensed for prophylaxis of iron deficiency.

## ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: iron (oral)

## ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

*Sytron*<sup>®</sup> contains 207.5 mg sodium feredetate trihydrate, which is equivalent to 27.5 mg of iron/5 mL.

## ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Sytron (sodium feredetate) for the prevention of anaemia [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sytron-sodium-feredetate-for-prevention-of-anaemia](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sytron-sodium-feredetate-for-prevention-of-anaemia)

Medicines for Children leaflet: Sytron (sodium feredetate) for the treatment of anaemia [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sytron-sodium-feredetate-for-treatment-of-anaemia](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sytron-sodium-feredetate-for-treatment-of-anaemia)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral solution

##### ► Sodium feredetate (Non-proprietary)

**Iron (as Sodium feredetate) 5.5 mg per 1 ml** Sodium feredetate 190mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 500 ml [PoM] £14.95 DT = £14.95

##### ► Sytron (Forum Health Products Ltd)

**Iron (as Sodium feredetate) 5.5 mg per 1 ml** Sytron oral solution sugar-free | 500 ml [P] £14.95 DT = £14.95

## 1.3 Megaloblastic anaemia

### Anaemia, megaloblastic

#### Overview

Megaloblastic anaemias are rare in children; they may result from a lack of either vitamin B<sub>12</sub> or folate and it is essential to establish in every case which deficiency is present and the underlying cause. In emergencies, when delay might be dangerous, it is sometimes necessary to administer both substances after the bone marrow test while plasma assay results are awaited. Normally, however, appropriate treatment should not be instituted until the results of tests are available.

Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> is used in the treatment of megaloblastosis caused by *prolonged nitrous oxide anaesthesia*, which inactivates the vitamin, and in the rare disorders of *congenital transcobalamin II deficiency* and *homocystinuria*.

Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> should be given prophylactically after *total ileal resection*.

Apart from dietary deficiency, all other causes of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency are attributable to malabsorption. There is little place for the use of low-dose vitamin B<sub>12</sub> orally and none for vitamin B<sub>12</sub> intrinsic factor complexes given by mouth. Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> in large oral doses [unlicensed] may be effective.

Hydroxocobalamin p. 575 has completely replaced cyanocobalamin p. 575 as the form of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> of choice for therapy; it is retained in the body longer than cyanocobalamin and thus for maintenance therapy can be given at intervals of up to 3 months. Treatment is generally initiated with frequent administration of intramuscular injections to replenish the depleted body stores. Thereafter, maintenance treatment, which is usually for life, can be instituted. There is no evidence that doses larger than those recommended provide any additional benefit in vitamin B<sub>12</sub> neuropathy.

Folate acid below has few indications for long-term therapy since most causes of folate deficiency are self-limiting or will yield to a short course of treatment. It should not be used in undiagnosed megaloblastic anaemia unless vitamin B<sub>12</sub> is administered concurrently otherwise neuropathy may be precipitated.

In *folate-deficient megaloblastic anaemia* (e.g. because of poor nutrition, pregnancy, or antiepileptic drugs), daily folic acid supplementation for 4 months brings about haematological remission and replenishes body stores; higher doses may be necessary in malabsorption states. In pregnancy, folic acid daily is continued to term.

For prophylaxis in *chronic haemolytic states, malabsorption, or in renal dialysis*, folic acid is given daily or sometimes weekly, depending on the diet and the rate of haemolysis.

Folic acid is also used for the prevention of methotrexate-induced side-effects in juvenile idiopathic arthritis, severe Crohn's disease and severe psoriasis.

Folic acid is actively excreted in breast milk and is well absorbed by the infant. It is also present in cow's milk and artificial formula feeds but is heat labile. Serum and red cell

folate concentrations fall after delivery and urinary losses are high, particularly in low birth-weight neonates. Although symptomatic deficiency is rare in the absence of malabsorption or prolonged diarrhoea, it is common for neonatal units to give supplements of folic acid to all preterm neonates from 2 weeks of age until full-term corrected age is reached, particularly if heated breast milk is used without an artificial formula fortifier.

Folinic acid p. 555 is also effective in the treatment of folate deficient megaloblastic anaemia but it is normally only used in association with cytotoxic drugs; it is given as calcium folinate.

There is **no** justification for prescribing multiple ingredient vitamin preparations containing vitamin B<sub>12</sub> or folic acid.

For the use of folic acid before and during pregnancy, see Neural tube defects (prevention in pregnancy) p. 637.

### VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > FOLATES

#### Folic acid

09-Jun-2016

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Folate-deficient megaloblastic anaemia

###### ► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 500 micrograms/kg once daily for up to 4 months.

- Child 1-11 months: Initially 500 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 5 mg) for up to 4 months, doses up to 10 mg daily may be required in malabsorption states
- Child 1-17 years: 5 mg daily for 4 months (until term in pregnant women), doses up to 15 mg daily may be required in malabsorption states

##### Folate supplementation in neonates

###### ► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 50 micrograms once daily.

##### Prevention of neural tube defects (in those at a low risk of conceiving a child with a neural tube defect see Neural tube defects (prevention in pregnancy) p. 637)

###### ► BY MOUTH

► Females of childbearing potential: 400 micrograms daily, to be taken before conception and until week 12 of pregnancy

##### Prevention of neural tube defects (in those in the high-risk group who wish to become pregnant or who are at risk of becoming pregnant see Neural tube defects (prevention in pregnancy) p. 637)

###### ► BY MOUTH

► Females of childbearing potential: 5 mg daily, to be taken before conception and until week 12 of pregnancy

##### Prevention of neural tube defects (in those with sickle-cell disease)

###### ► BY MOUTH

► Females of childbearing potential: 5 mg daily, patient should continue taking their normal dose of folic acid 5 mg daily (or increase the dose to 5 mg daily) before conception and continue this throughout pregnancy

##### Prevention of methotrexate side-effects in severe Crohn's disease | Prevention of methotrexate side-effects in severe psoriasis

###### ► BY MOUTH

► Child: 5 mg once weekly, dose to be taken on a different day to methotrexate dose

##### Prophylaxis of folate deficiency in dialysis

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month-11 years: 250 micrograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 10 mg)
- Child 12-17 years: 5–10 mg once daily

**Haemolytic anaemia | Metabolic disorders**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years: 2.5–5 mg once daily
- Child 12–17 years: 5–10 mg once daily

**Prevention of methotrexate side-effects in juvenile idiopathic arthritis**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 1 mg daily, alternatively 5 mg once weekly, dose to be adjusted according to local guidelines, weekly dose to be taken on a different day to methotrexate dose

- **UNLICENSED USE** Unlicensed for limiting methotrexate toxicity.

- **CAUTIONS** Should never be given alone for pernicious anaemia (may precipitate subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: folates

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal distension · appetite decreased · flatulence · nausea · vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency exacerbated

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Folic acid for megaloblastic anaemia caused by folate deficiency and haemolytic anaemia

[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/folic-acid-megaloblastic-anaemia-caused-folate-deficiency-and-haemolytic-anaemia](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/folic-acid-megaloblastic-anaemia-caused-folate-deficiency-and-haemolytic-anaemia)

● **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY**

- With oral use Can be sold to the public provided daily doses do not exceed 500 micrograms.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

**Tablet**► **Folic acid (Non-proprietary)**

**Folic acid 400 microgram** Folic acid 400microgram tablets |

90 tablet [GSL] [S] DT = £2.71 | 90 tablet [PoM] [S] DT = £2.71 |

90 tablet [S] DT = £2.71 | 90 tablet [P] £2.71–£13.77 DT = £2.71

**Folic acid 5 mg** Folic acid 5mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £2.00 DT =

£0.47 | 1000 tablet [PoM] £16.79–£20.00

► **Preconceive** (G.R. Lane Health Products Ltd)

**Folic acid 400 microgram** Preconceive 400microgram tablets |

90 tablet [GSL] £2.70 DT = £2.71

**Oral solution**► **Folic acid (Non-proprietary)**

**Folic acid 500 microgram per 1 ml** Folic acid 2.5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £9.16 DT = £9.16 sugar-free | 150 ml £9.16 DT = £9.16

**Folic acid 1 mg per 1 ml** Folic acid 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £13.74–£23.49 DT = £22.13

► **Lexpec** (Rosemont Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Folic acid 500 microgram per 1 ml** Lexpec Folic Acid 2.5mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £9.16 DT = £9.16

**VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > VITAMIN B GROUP****Cyanocobalamin**

20-Jul-2017

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency of dietary origin**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 50–105 micrograms daily in 1–3 divided doses

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Currently available brands of the tablet may not be suitable for vegans.

● **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**NHS restrictions** Cyanocobalamin solution is not prescribable in NHS primary care.

- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Cyanocobalamin is less suitable for prescribing.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet

**Tablet**► **Cyanocobalamin (Non-proprietary)**

**Cyanocobalamin 50 microgram** Cyanocobalamin 50microgram tablets | 50 tablet [S] DT = £9.79 | 50 tablet [P] £9.84 DT = £9.79

**Cyanocobalamin 1 mg** Behepan 1mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] [S]

**Oral solution**► **Cyanocobalamin (Non-proprietary)**

**Cyanocobalamin 7 microgram per 1 ml** Cyanocobalamin 35micrograms/5ml oral solution | 200 ml [P] £8.75

**Hydroxocobalamin**

20-Jul-2017

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Macrocytic anaemia without neurological involvement**

## ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child: Initially 0.25–1 mg 3 times a week for 2 weeks, then 0.25 mg once weekly until blood count normal, then 1 mg every 3 months

**Macrocytic anaemia with neurological involvement**

## ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child: Initially 1 mg once daily on alternate days until no further improvement, then 1 mg every 2 months

**Prophylaxis of macrocytic anaemias associated with vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency**

## ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child: 1 mg every 2–3 months

**Leber's optic atrophy**

## ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child: Initially 1 mg daily for 2 weeks, then 1 mg twice weekly until no further improvement, then 1 mg every 1–3 months

**Congenital transcobalamin II deficiency**

## ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Neonate: 1 mg 3 times a week for 1 year, then reduced to 1 mg once weekly, adjusted as appropriate.

- Child: 1 mg 3 times a week for 1 year, then reduced to 1 mg once weekly, adjusted as appropriate

**Methylmalonic acidemia and homocystinuria**

## ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child: Initially 1 mg daily for 5–7 days, then adjusted according to response to up to 1 mg 1–2 times a week, this is the maintenance dose

**Methylmalonic acidemia, maintenance once intramuscular response established**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 5–10 mg 1–2 times a week, some children do not respond to oral route

## CYANOKIT®

**Poisoning with cyanides**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child (body-weight 5 kg and above): Initially 70 mg/kg (max. per dose 5 g), to be given over 15 minutes, then 70 mg/kg (max. per dose 5 g) if required, this second dose can be given over 15 minutes–2 hours depending on severity of poisoning and patient stability

● **UNLICENSED USE**

- With intramuscular use or oral use Licensed for use in children (age not specified by manufacturers). Not licensed for use in inborn errors of metabolism.

● **CAUTIONS**

- With intramuscular use or oral use Should not be given before diagnosis fully established

### • SIDE-EFFECTS

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS** Dizziness · urine discolouration  
**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ With intramuscular use Arrhythmia · chills · diarrhoea · drug fever · headache · hot flush · hypokalaemia · malaise · nausea · pain · skin reactions · thrombocytosis · tremor · vomiting
- ▶ With intravenous use Angioedema · diarrhoea · dysphagia · extrasystole · gastrointestinal discomfort · hot flush · hypersensitivity · memory loss · mucosal discolouration · red · peripheral oedema · pleural effusion · rash pustular · red discolouration of plasma · restlessness · skin reactions · swelling · throat complaints
- ▶ With oral use Fever · headache · hypersensitivity · nausea · pruritus
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but not known to be harmful.
- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS**
  - ▶ With intravenous use Deep red colour of hydroxocobalamin may interfere with laboratory tests.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - ▶ With intravenous use For intravenous infusion (Cyanokit)<sup>®</sup>, given intermittently in Sodium chloride 0.9%, reconstitute 5 g vial with 200 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9%; gently invert vial for at least 1 minute to mix (do not shake).
  - ▶ With oral use For administration by mouth, injection solution may be given orally; it will not have prolonged effect via this route.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**
  - ▶ With intramuscular use The BP directs that when vitamin B<sub>12</sub> injection is prescribed or demanded, hydroxocobalamin injection shall be dispensed or supplied.
  - Poisoning by cyanides
  - ▶ With intravenous use Cyanokit<sup>®</sup> is the only preparation of hydroxocobalamin that is suitable for use in victims of smoke inhalation who show signs of significant cyanide poisoning.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**NHS restrictions** Cobalin-H<sup>®</sup> is not prescribable in NHS primary care.

Neo-Cytamen<sup>®</sup> is not prescribable in NHS primary care.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### **Solution for injection**

- ▶ **Hydroxocobalamin (Non-proprietary)**  
Hydroxocobalamin 1 mg per 1 ml Hydroxocobalamin 1mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £12.49 DT = £6.70
- ▶ **Cobalin** (AMCO)  
Hydroxocobalamin 1 mg per 1 ml Cobalin-H 1mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £9.50 DT = £6.70
- ▶ **Neo-Cytamen** (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)  
Hydroxocobalamin 1 mg per 1 ml Neo-Cytamen 1000micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £12.49 DT = £6.70

#### **Powder for solution for infusion**

- ▶ **Cyanokit** (SERB)  
Hydroxocobalamin 5 gram Cyanokit 5g powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £772.00

anaemias with hyperplastic bone marrow, especially *thalassaemia major*, where excessive iron absorption from the gut and inappropriate iron therapy can add to the tissue siderosis.

Iron overload associated with haemochromatosis can be treated with repeated venesection. Venesection may also be used for patients who have received multiple transfusions and whose bone marrow has recovered. Where venesection is contra-indicated, and in *thalassaemia*, the long-term administration of the iron chelating compound desferrioxamine mesilate p. 578 is useful. Desferrioxamine mesilate (up to 2 g per unit of blood) may also be given at the time of blood transfusion, provided that the desferrioxamine mesilate is **not** added to the blood and is **not** given through the same line as the blood (but the two may be given through the same cannula).

Iron excretion induced by desferrioxamine mesilate is enhanced by ascorbic acid (vitamin C) p. 629 daily by mouth; it should be given separately from food since it also enhances iron absorption. Ascorbic acid should not be given to children with cardiac dysfunction; in children with normal cardiac function ascorbic acid should be introduced 1 month after starting desferrioxamine mesilate.

Desferrioxamine mesilate infusion can be used to treat *aluminium overload* in dialysis patients; theoretically 100 mg of desferrioxamine binds with 4.1 mg of aluminium.

## ANTIDOTES AND CHELATORS > IRON CHELATORS

### Desferasirox

18-Jul-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Desferasirox is an oral iron chelator.

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Transfusion-related chronic iron overload when desferrioxamine is contra-indicated or inadequate in patients with beta thalassaemia major who receive frequent blood transfusions (7 mL/kg/month or more of packed red blood cells) (specialist use only)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 2–5 years: Initially 7–21 mg/kg once daily, dose adjusted according to serum-ferritin concentration and amount of transfused blood—consult product literature, then adjusted in steps of 3.5–7 mg/kg every 3–6 months, maintenance dose adjusted according to serum-ferritin concentration; maximum 28 mg/kg per day; Usual maximum 21 mg/kg

**Transfusion-related chronic iron overload in patients with beta thalassaemia major who receive frequent blood transfusions (7 mL/kg/month or more of packed red blood cells) (specialist use only)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 6–17 years: Initially 7–21 mg/kg once daily, dose adjusted according to serum-ferritin concentration and amount of transfused blood—consult product literature, then adjusted in steps of 3.5–7 mg/kg every 3–6 months, maintenance dose adjusted according to serum-ferritin concentration; maximum 28 mg/kg per day; Usual maximum 21 mg/kg

**Transfusion-related chronic iron overload when desferrioxamine is contra-indicated or inadequate in patients with beta thalassaemia major who receive infrequent blood transfusions (less than 7 mL/kg/month of packed red blood cells) (specialist use only)**

**Transfusion-related chronic iron overload when desferrioxamine is contra-indicated or inadequate in patients with other anaemias (specialist use only)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 2–17 years: Initially 7–21 mg/kg once daily, dose adjusted according to serum-ferritin concentration and amount of transfused blood—consult product literature, then adjusted in steps of 3.5–7 mg/kg every

## 2 Iron overload

### Iron overload

#### Overview

Severe tissue iron overload can occur in aplastic and other refractory anaemias, mainly as the result of repeated blood transfusions. It is a particular problem in refractory



3–6 months, maintenance dose adjusted according to serum-ferritin concentration; maximum 28 mg/kg per day; Usual maximum 21 mg/kg

**Chronic iron overload when desferrioxamine is contra-indicated or inadequate in non-transfusion-dependent thalassaemia syndromes (specialist use only)**

► BY MOUTH

- Child 10–17 years: Initially 7 mg/kg once daily, maintenance dose adjusted according to serum-ferritin concentration and liver-iron concentration (consult product literature); maximum 7 mg/kg per day

- **CAUTIONS** History of liver cirrhosis · not recommended in conditions which may reduce life expectancy (e.g. high-risk myelodysplastic syndromes) · platelet count less than  $50 \times 10^9/\text{litre}$  · risk of gastro-intestinal ulceration and haemorrhage · unexplained cytopenia—consider treatment interruption

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: iron chelators

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Constipation · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · nausea · skin reactions · urine abnormalities · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Anxiety · cataract · cholelithiasis · deafness · dizziness · fatigue · fever · gastrointestinal disorders · gastrointestinal haemorrhage (including fatal cases) · hepatic disorders · laryngeal pain · maculopathy · oedema · renal tubular disorders · sleep disorder

- **Rare or very rare** Optic neuritis

- **Frequency not known** Acute kidney injury · alopecia · anaemia aggravated · angioedema · hypersensitivity vasculitis · metabolic acidosis · nephritis tubulointerstitial · nephrolithiasis · neutropenia · pancreatitis acute · pancytopenia · renal tubular necrosis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · thrombocytopenia

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—toxicity in *animal* studies.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in *animal* studies.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment. **Dose adjustments** Use with caution in moderate impairment, reduce dose considerably then gradually increase to max. 50% of normal dose.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid if estimated creatinine clearance less than 60 mL/minute. **Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises reduce dose if serum-creatinine increased above age-appropriate limits or creatinine clearance less than 90 mL/minute on 2 consecutive occasions—consult product literature.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- Manufacturer advises monitoring of the following patient parameters: baseline serum creatinine twice and creatinine clearance once before initiation of treatment, weekly in the first month after treatment initiation or modification, then monthly thereafter; proteinuria before treatment initiation then monthly thereafter, and other markers of renal tubular function as needed; liver function before treatment initiation, every 2 weeks during the first month of treatment, then monthly thereafter; eye and ear examinations before treatment and annually during treatment; serum-ferritin concentration monthly.
- Manufacturer advises monitor liver-iron concentration every three months in children with non-transfusion-dependent thalassaemia syndromes when serum ferritin is  $\leq 800$  micrograms/litre.
- Manufacturer advises monitor body-weight, height, and sexual development before treatment and then annually thereafter.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For film-coated tablets, manufacturer advises tablets may be crushed and

sprinkled on to soft food (yoghurt or apple sauce), then administered immediately.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient or carers should be given advice on how to administer deferasirox tablets. Medicines for Children leaflet: Deferasirox for removing excess iron [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/deferasirox-for-removing-excess-iron](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/deferasirox-for-removing-excess-iron)

● **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (June 2017) that deferasirox (*Exjade*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of chronic iron overload associated with the treatment of rare acquired or inherited anaemias requiring recurrent blood transfusions. It is not recommended for patients with myelodysplastic syndromes.

Patients with myelodysplastic syndromes, the commonest cause of transfusion-dependent anaemia, were poorly represented in the clinical trial population and the economic case was not demonstrated in this group.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

- **Exjade** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd) ▼

**Deferasirox 90 mg** Exjade 90mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM](#) £126.00

**Deferasirox 180 mg** Exjade 180mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM](#) £252.00

**Deferasirox 360 mg** Exjade 360mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM](#) £504.00

## Deferiprone

- **DRUG ACTION** Deferiprone is an oral iron chelator.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Treatment of iron overload in patients with thalassaemia major in whom desferrioxamine is contra-indicated or is inadequate**

► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–17 years: 25 mg/kg 3 times a day; maximum 100 mg/kg per day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of agranulocytosis or recurrent neutropenia

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: deferiprone

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain (reducing dose and increasing gradually may improve tolerance) · agranulocytosis · appetite increased · arthralgia · diarrhoea (reducing dose and increasing gradually may improve tolerance) · fatigue · headache · nausea (reducing dose and increasing gradually may improve tolerance) · neutropenia · urine discolouration · vomiting (reducing dose and increasing gradually may improve tolerance)

- **Frequency not known** Skin reactions · zinc deficiency

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises avoid before intended conception—teratogenic and embryotoxic in *animal* studies. Contraception advised in females of child-bearing potential.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid during pregnancy—teratogenic and embryotoxic in *animal* studies.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises monitor liver function—interrupt treatment if persistent elevation in serum alanine aminotransferase.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor neutrophil count weekly and discontinue treatment if neutropenia develops.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Blood disorders Patients or their carers should be told how to recognise signs of neutropenia and advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms such as fever or sore throat develop.

## MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 14

- **Ferriprox** (Swedish Orphan Biovitrum Ltd)  
**Deferiprone 100 mg per 1 ml** Ferriprox 100mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 500 ml [PoM] £152.39 DT = £152.39

### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 14

- **Ferriprox** (Swedish Orphan Biovitrum Ltd)  
**Deferiprone 500 mg** Ferriprox 500mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £152.39 DT = £152.39  
**Deferiprone 1 gram** Ferriprox 1000mg tablets | 50 tablet [PoM] £175.25 DT = £175.25

## Desferrioxamine mesilate

### (Deferoxamine Mesilate)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Iron poisoning

- BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: Initially up to 15 mg/kg/hour, max. 80 mg/kg in 24 hours, dose to be reduced after 4–6 hours, in severe cases, higher doses may be given on advice from the National Poisons Information Service.

- Child: Initially up to 15 mg/kg/hour, max. 80 mg/kg in 24 hours, dose to be reduced after 4–6 hours, in severe cases, higher doses may be given on advice from the National Poisons Information Service

##### Aluminium overload in dialysis patients

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: 5 mg/kg once weekly

##### Chronic iron overload (low iron overload)

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION
- Child: Initially up to 30 mg/kg 3–7 times a week, to be given over 8–12 hours, the dose should reflect the degree of iron overload

##### Chronic iron overload (established overload)

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION
- Child: 20–50 mg/kg daily

#### ● UNLICENSED USE

- When used for iron poisoning Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

- **CAUTIONS** Aluminium-related encephalopathy (may exacerbate neurological dysfunction)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: iron chelators

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Arthralgia · bone disorder · fever · growth retardation · headache · muscle complaints · nausea · skin reactions
- **Uncommon** Abdominal pain · asthma · hearing impairment · vomiting
- **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · blood disorder · cataract · diarrhoea · dizziness · encephalopathy · eye disorders · hypersensitivity · hypotension (more common when given too rapidly by intravenous injection) · increased risk of infection · nerve disorders · nervous system disorder

paraesthesia · respiratory disorders · shock · tachycardia · thrombocytopenia · vision disorders

- **Frequency not known** Acute kidney injury · hypocalcaemia · leucopenia · renal tubular disorder · seizure · urine red
- **PREGNANCY** Teratogenic in *animal* studies. Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Eye and ear examinations before treatment and at 3-month intervals during treatment.
- Monitor body-weight and height in children at 3-month intervals—risk of growth retardation with excessive doses.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For full details and warnings relating to administration, consult product literature.

- When used for Chronic iron overload or Aluminium overload in dialysis patients For *intravenous or subcutaneous infusion*, reconstitute powder with Water for Injection to a concentration of 100 mg/mL; dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. In *haemodialysis or haemo-filtration* administer over the last hour of dialysis (may be given via the dialysis fistula). *Intraperitoneal*: may be added to dialysis fluid. In CAPD give prior to the last exchange of the day.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Deferasirox for removing excess iron [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/deferasirox-removing-excess-iron-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/deferasirox-removing-excess-iron-0)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Powder for solution for injection

- **Desferrioxamine mesilate (Non-proprietary)**

**Desferrioxamine mesilate 500 mg** Desferrioxamine 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £39.90 | 10 vial [PoM] £50.00 (Hospital only)

**Desferrioxamine mesilate 2 gram** Desferrioxamine 2g powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £20.00 (Hospital only)

- **Desferal** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Desferrioxamine mesilate 500 mg** Desferal 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £46.63

## 3 Neutropenia and stem cell mobilisation

### 3.1 Neutropenia

## Neutropenia

### Management

Recombinant human granulocyte-colony stimulating factor (rhG-CSF) stimulates the production of neutrophils and may reduce the duration of chemotherapy-induced neutropenia and thereby reduce the incidence of associated sepsis; there is as yet no evidence that it improves overall survival. Filgrastim (unglycosylated rhG-CSF) p. 579 and lenograstim (glycosylated rhG-CSF) p. 580 have similar effects; both have been used in a variety of clinical settings, including cytotoxic-induced neutropenia, and neutropenia following bone marrow transplantation, but they do not have any clear-cut routine indications. In congenital neutropenia filgrastim usually increases the neutrophil count with an appropriate clinical response. Prolonged use may be associated with an increased risk of myeloid malignancy.

Treatment with granulocyte-colony stimulating factors should only be prescribed by those experienced in their use.

### Neonatal neutropenia

Filgrastim has been used to treat sepsis-induced neutropenia in preterm neonates. There is no clear evidence that granulocyte-colony stimulating factors improve survival or long-term outcomes.

## IMMUNOSTIMULANTS > GRANULOCYTE-COLONY STIMULATING FACTORS

### Granulocyte-colony stimulating factors

- **DRUG ACTION** Recombinant human granulocyte-colony stimulating factor (rhG-CSF) stimulates the production of neutrophils.
- **CAUTIONS** Malignant myeloid conditions · pre-malignant myeloid conditions · risk of splenomegaly and rupture—spleen size should be monitored · sickle-cell disease
- CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - ▶ Acute respiratory distress syndrome There have been reports of pulmonary infiltrates leading to acute respiratory distress syndrome—patients with a recent history of pulmonary infiltrates or pneumonia may be at higher risk.
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Arthralgia · cutaneous vasculitis · dyspnoea · haemoptysis · headache · hypersensitivity · leucocytosis · pain · spleen abnormalities · thrombocytopenia
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Acute febrile neutrophilic dermatosis · capillary leak syndrome · hypoxia · pulmonary oedema · respiratory disorders · sickle cell anaemia with crisis
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Treatment should be withdrawn in patients who develop signs of pulmonary infiltration.
- **PREGNANCY** There have been reports of toxicity in *animal* studies and manufacturers advise not to use granulocyte-colony stimulating factors during pregnancy unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** There is no evidence for the use of granulocyte-colony stimulating factors during breast-feeding and manufacturers advise avoiding their use.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Full blood counts including differential white cell and platelet counts should be monitored.
  - ▶ Spleen size should be monitored during treatment—risk of splenomegaly and rupture.

**F above**

### Filgrastim

(Recombinant human granulocyte-colony stimulating factor; G-CSF)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Reduction in duration of neutropenia and incidence of febrile neutropenia in cytotoxic chemotherapy for malignancy (except chronic myeloid leukaemia and myelodysplastic syndromes) (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ **Child:** 5 micrograms/kg daily until neutrophil count in normal range, usually for up to 14 days (up to 38 days in acute myeloid leukaemia), to be started at least 24 hours after cytotoxic chemotherapy. Preferably given by subcutaneous injection; if given by intravenous infusion, administer over 30 minutes

**Reduction in duration of neutropenia (and associated sequelae) in myeloblastic therapy followed by bone-marrow transplantation (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ **Child:** 10 micrograms/kg daily, to be started at least 24 hours following cytotoxic chemotherapy and within 24 hours of bone-marrow infusion, then adjusted according to neutrophil count—consult product literature, doses administered over 30 minutes or 24 hours via intravenous route and over 24 hours via subcutaneous route

**Mobilisation of peripheral blood progenitor cells for autologous infusion, used alone (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ **Child:** 10 micrograms/kg daily for 5–7 days, to be administered over 24 hours if given by subcutaneous infusion

**Mobilisation of peripheral blood progenitor cells for autologous infusion, used following adjunctive myelosuppressive chemotherapy—to improve yield (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ **Child:** 5 micrograms/kg daily until neutrophil count in normal range, to be started the day after completing chemotherapy, for timing of leucopheresis, consult product literature

**Mobilisation of peripheral blood progenitor cells in normal donors for allogeneic infusion (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ **Child 16–17 years:** 10 micrograms/kg daily for 4–5 days, for timing of leucopheresis, consult product literature

**Severe congenital neutropenia and history of severe or recurrent infections (distinguish carefully from other haematological disorders) (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ **Child:** Initially 12 micrograms/kg daily, adjusted according to response, can be given in single or divided doses, consult product literature and local protocol

**Severe cyclic neutropenia, or idiopathic neutropenia and history of severe or recurrent infections (distinguish carefully from other haematological disorders) (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ **Child:** Initially 5 micrograms/kg daily, adjusted according to response, can be given in single or divided doses, consult product literature and local protocol

**Persistent neutropenia in HIV infection (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ **Child:** Initially 1 microgram/kg daily, subsequent doses increased as necessary until neutrophil count in normal range, then adjusted to maintain neutrophil count in normal range—consult product literature; maximum 4 micrograms/kg per day

**Neonatal neutropenia (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ **Neonate:** 10 micrograms/kg daily, to be discontinued if white cell count exceeds  $50 \times 10^9$ /litre.

**Glycogen storage disease type 1b (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ **Child:** Initially 5 micrograms/kg daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for treatment of glycogen storage disease or neonatal neutropenia.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Severe congenital neutropenia (Kostmann's syndrome) with abnormal cytogenetics

- **CAUTIONS** Osteoporotic bone disease (monitor bone density if given for more than 6 months) · secondary acute myeloid leukaemia
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Anaemia · diarrhoea · dysuria · haemorrhage · hepatomegaly · hyperuricaemia · hypotension · osteoporosis · rash
  - **Uncommon** Fluid imbalance · graft versus host disease · peripheral vascular disease · pseudogout · rheumatoid arthritis aggravated · urine abnormalities
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Regular morphological and cytogenetic bone-marrow examinations recommended in severe congenital neutropenia (possible risk of myelodysplastic syndromes or leukaemia).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *subcutaneous or intravenous infusion*, dilute with Glucose 5% to a concentration of not less than 15 micrograms/mL; to dilute to a concentration of 2–15 micrograms/mL, add albumin solution (human albumin solution) to produce a final albumin solution of 2 mg/mL; not compatible with Sodium Chloride solutions.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Filgrastim is a biological medicine. Biological medicines must be prescribed and dispensed by brand name, see *Biological medicines and Biosimilar medicines*, under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.
  - 1 million units of filgrastim solution for injection contains 10 micrograms filgrastim.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

- **Accofil** (Accord Healthcare Ltd) ▼
  - Filgrastim 60 mega u per 1 ml** Accofil 30million units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £284.20
  - Filgrastim 96 mega u per 1 ml** Accofil 48million units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £455.70
- **Neupogen** (Amgen Ltd)
  - Filgrastim 30 mega u per 1 ml** Neupogen 30million units/1ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £263.52
- **Neupogen Singleject** (Amgen Ltd)
  - Filgrastim 60 mega u per 1 ml** Neupogen Singleject 30million units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £52.70
  - Filgrastim 96 mega u per 1 ml** Neupogen Singleject 48million units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £84.06
- **Nivestim** (Pfizer Ltd)
  - Filgrastim 60 mega u per 1 ml** Nivestim 30million units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £246.50 (Hospital only)
  - Nivestim 12million units/0.2ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £153.00 (Hospital only)
  - Filgrastim 96 mega u per 1 ml** Nivestim 48million units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £395.25 (Hospital only)
- **Zarzio** (Sandoz Ltd)
  - Filgrastim 60 mega u per 1 ml** Zarzio 30million units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £250.75
  - Filgrastim 96 mega u per 1 ml** Zarzio 48million units/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 5 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £399.50

## Lenograstim

(Recombinant human granulocyte-colony stimulating factor; rHuG-CSF)

F 579

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Reduction in the duration of neutropenia and associated complications following bone-marrow transplantation for non-myeloid malignancy (specialist use only)** |

**Reduction in the duration of neutropenia and associated complications following peripheral stem cells transplantation for non-myeloid malignancy (specialist use only)**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 2-17 years: 150 micrograms/m<sup>2</sup> daily until neutrophil count stable in acceptable range (max. 28 days), to be started the day after transplantation. Intravenous infusion to be given over 30 minutes

**Reduction in the duration of neutropenia and associated complications following treatment with cytotoxic chemotherapy associated with a significant incidence of febrile neutropenia (specialist use only)**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 2-17 years: 150 micrograms/m<sup>2</sup> daily until neutrophil count stable in acceptable range (max. 28 days), to be started on the day after completion of chemotherapy

**Mobilisation of peripheral blood progenitor cells for harvesting and subsequent infusion, used alone (specialist use only)**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 2-17 years: 10 micrograms/kg daily for 4–6 days (5–6 days in healthy donors)

**Mobilisation of peripheral blood progenitor cells, used following adjunctive myelosuppressive chemotherapy (to improve yield) (specialist use only)**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 2-17 years: 150 micrograms/m<sup>2</sup> daily until neutrophil count stable in acceptable range, to be started 1–5 days after completion of chemotherapy, for timing of leucopheresis, consult product literature

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for cytotoxic-induced neutropenia, mobilisation of peripheral blood progenitor cells (monotherapy or adjunctive therapy), or following peripheral stem cells transplantation.

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · asthenia · pain
- **Rare or very rare** Erythema nodosum · pyoderma gangrenosum · toxic epidermal necrolysis

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute reconstituted solution to a concentration of not less than 2 micrograms/mL (*Granocyte-13*) or 2.5 micrograms/mL (*Granocyte-34*) with Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** *Granocyte*® solution for injection contains 105 micrograms of lenograstim per 13.4 mega unit vial and 263 micrograms lenograstim per 33.6 mega unit vial.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder and solvent for solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Phenylalanine

- **Granocyte** (Chugai Pharma UK Ltd)

**Lenograstim 13.4 mega u** Granocyte-13 powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £40.11 | 5 vial [PoM] £200.55

**Lenograstim 33.6 mega u** Granocyte-34 powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £62.54 | 5 vial [PoM] £312.69

## 4 Platelet disorders

### Platelet disorders

#### Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura

Acute idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura is usually self-limiting in children. A corticosteroid, such as prednisolone p. 442, is sometimes used if idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura does not resolve spontaneously or if it is associated with severe cutaneous symptoms or mucous membrane bleeding; corticosteroid treatment should not be continued longer than 14 days regardless of the response.

**Immunoglobulin** preparations may be used in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura or where a temporary rapid rise in platelets is needed, as in pregnancy or pre-operatively; they are often used in preference to a corticosteroid. Anti-D (Rh<sub>0</sub>) immunoglobulin p. 771 is licensed for the management of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura.

Other therapy that has been tried under specialist supervision in refractory idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura includes azathioprine p. 518, cyclophosphamide p. 535, vincristine sulfate p. 550, and ciclosporin p. 519. Rituximab p. 530 [unlicensed] is also used in specialist centres but experience of its use in children is limited. For patients with chronic severe thrombocytopenia refractory to other therapy, tranexamic acid p. 82 may be given to reduce the severity of haemorrhage.

Splenectomy is considered in chronic thrombocytopenic purpura if a satisfactory platelet count is not achieved with regular immunoglobulin infusions, if there is a relapse on withdrawing or reducing the dose of corticosteroid, and if other therapies are considered inappropriate.

#### Essential thrombocythaemia

Anagrelide below reduces platelets in essential thrombocythaemia in patients at risk of thrombo-haemorrhagic events who have not responded adequately to other drugs or who cannot tolerate other drugs.

## 4.1 Essential thrombocythaemia

### ANTITHROMBOTIC DRUGS > CYCLIC AMP PHOSPHODIESTERASE III INHIBITORS

#### Anagrelide

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Essential thrombocythaemia in patients at risk of thrombo-haemorrhagic events who have not responded adequately to other drugs or who cannot tolerate other drugs (initiated under specialist supervision)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 7–17 years: Initially 500 micrograms daily, dose to be adjusted at weekly intervals according to response, increased in steps of 500 micrograms daily; usual dose 1–3 mg daily in divided doses (max. per dose 2.5 mg); maximum 10 mg per day

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

● **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease—assess cardiac function before and regularly during treatment · concomitant use of drugs that prolong QT-interval—assess cardiac function before and regularly during treatment · risk factors for QT-

interval prolongation—assess cardiac function before and regularly during treatment

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anagrelide

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anaemia · arrhythmias · asthenia · diarrhoea · dizziness · fluid retention · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · headaches · nausea · palpitations · skin reactions · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Alopecia · appetite decreased · arthralgia · chest pain · chills · confusion · congestive heart failure · constipation · depression · dry mouth · dyspnoea · erectile dysfunction · fever · haemorrhage · hypertension · insomnia · malaise · memory loss · myalgia · nervousness · oedema · pain · pancreatitis · pancytopenia · pneumonia · pulmonary hypertension · respiratory disorders · sensation abnormal · syncope · thrombocytopenia · weight changes
- **Rare or very rare** Angina pectoris · cardiomegaly · cardiomyopathy · coordination abnormal · drowsiness · dysarthria · influenza like illness · myocardial infarction · nocturia · pericardial effusion · postural hypotension · renal failure · tinnitus · vasodilation · vision disorders
- **Frequency not known** Hepatitis · nephritis · tubulointerstitial

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required during treatment.

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid (toxicity in animal studies).

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in mild impairment. Avoid in moderate to severe impairment.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>

##### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Monitor full blood count (monitor platelet count every 2 days for 1 week, then weekly until maintenance dose established).
- Monitor liver function.
- Monitor serum creatinine.
- Monitor urea.
- Monitor electrolytes (including potassium, magnesium and calcium) before and during treatment.
- Monitor closely for further signs of disease progression such as malignant transformation.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Initiate only when signs of disease progression or patient suffers from thrombosis.

Consider stopping treatment after 3 months if inadequate response.

##### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Dizziness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. cycling, driving).

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Capable

##### ► Anagrelide (Non-proprietary)

##### Anagrelide (as Anagrelide hydrochloride)

**500 microgram** Anagrelide 500microgram capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £280.00–£404.57 DT = £350.70

##### ► Xagrid (Shire Pharmaceuticals Ltd) ▼

**Anagrelide (as Anagrelide hydrochloride) 500 microgram** Xagrid 500microgram capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £404.57 DT = £350.70



## 4.2 Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura

### ANTIHAEMORRHAGICS > THROMBOPOIETIN RECEPTOR AGONISTS

#### Eltrombopag

09-Jun-2017

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Chronic immune (idiopathic) thrombocytopenic purpura in patients refractory to other treatments (such as corticosteroids or immunoglobulins) (under expert supervision)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–5 years: Initially 25 mg once daily, dose to be adjusted to achieve a platelet count of  $50 \times 10^9/\text{litre}$  or more—consult product literature for dose adjustments, discontinue if inadequate response after 4 weeks treatment at maximum dose; maximum 75 mg per day
- Child 6–17 years: Initially 50 mg once daily, dose to be adjusted to achieve a platelet count of  $50 \times 10^9/\text{litre}$  or more—consult product literature for dose adjustments, discontinue if inadequate response after 4 weeks treatment at maximum dose; maximum 75 mg per day
- Child 16–17 years (patients of East Asian origin): Initially 25 mg once daily, dose to be adjusted to achieve a platelet count of  $50 \times 10^9/\text{litre}$  or more—consult product literature for dose adjustments, discontinue if inadequate response after 4 weeks treatment at maximum dose; maximum 75 mg per day.

● **CAUTIONS** Patients of East Asian origin · risk factors for thromboembolism

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: eltrombopag

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Alopecia · anaemia · appetite decreased · asthenia · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dry eye · dry mouth · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · haemolytic anaemia · hepatic disorders · hyperbilirubinaemia · increased risk of infection · malaise · menorrhagia · muscle complaints · nausea · oral disorders · pain · peripheral oedema · QT interval prolongation · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · sleep disorder · sweat changes · vertigo · vision disorders · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Anisocytosis · arrhythmias · balance impaired · cardiovascular disorder · cataract cortical · chest pain · cyanosis · drowsiness · ear pain · electrolyte imbalance · embolism and thrombosis · eosinophilia · excessive tearing · eye inflammation · eye pain · feeling hot · feeling jittery · food poisoning · gout · haemorrhage · headaches · hemiparesis · increased leucocytes · lens opacity · mood altered · muscle weakness · myocardial infarction · nasal complaints · nephritis lupus · nerve disorders · nocturia · oropharyngeal complaints · rectosigmoid cancer · renal failure · retinal pigment epitheliopathy · sinus disorder · sleep apnoea · speech disorder · sunburn · thrombocytopenia · tremor · urine abnormalities · vasodilation · wound inflammation

● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Ensure effective contraception during treatment.

● **PREGNANCY** Avoid—toxicity in *animal* studies.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid.

##### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** For *idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura*, manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—reduce initial dose to 25 mg once daily and wait at least 3 weeks before upwards titration of dose.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

##### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Manufacturer advises monitor liver function before treatment, every two weeks when adjusting the dose, and monthly thereafter.
- Manufacturer advises regular ophthalmological examinations for cataract formation.
- Manufacturer advises peripheral blood smear prior to initiation to establish baseline level of cellular morphologic abnormalities; once stabilised, full blood count with white blood cell count differential should be performed monthly.
- For *idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura*, manufacturer advises monitor full blood count including platelet count and peripheral blood smears every week during treatment until a stable platelet count is reached ( $50 \times 10^9/\text{litre}$  or more for at least 4 weeks), then monthly thereafter; monitor platelet count weekly for 4 weeks following treatment discontinuation.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Each dose should be taken at least 4 hours before or after any dairy products (or foods containing calcium), indigestion remedies, or medicines containing aluminium, calcium, iron, magnesium, zinc, or selenium to reduce possible interference with absorption.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised on how to administer eltrombopag tablets.

##### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

###### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (January 2017) that eltrombopag (*Revolade*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of chronic immune (idiopathic) thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP) in patients aged 1 year to 17 years who have severe symptomatic ITP or a high risk of bleeding, and are refractory to other treatments (e.g. corticosteroids, immunoglobulins). This advice is contingent upon the continuing availability of the Patient Access Scheme in NHS Scotland, or a list price that is equivalent or lower.

###### All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (October 2016) that eltrombopag (*Revolade*®) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales for the treatment of chronic immune (idiopathic) thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP) in patients aged 1 year to 17 years who are refractory to other treatments (e.g. corticosteroids, immunoglobulins). This recommendation applies only if the approved Wales Patient Access Scheme is used or where the list/contract price is equivalent or lower.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

► **Revolade** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Eltrombopag (as Eltrombopag olamine) 25 mg** Revolade 25mg tablets | 28 tablet (PoM) £770.00

**Eltrombopag (as Eltrombopag olamine) 50 mg** Revolade 50mg tablets | 28 tablet (PoM) £1,540.00

**Eltrombopag (as Eltrombopag olamine) 75 mg** Revolade 75mg tablets | 28 tablet (PoM) £2,310.00

# Nutrition and metabolic disorders

## 1 Acid-base imbalance

### 1.1 Metabolic acidosis

#### ALKALISING DRUGS

#### Trometamol

(Tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane, THAM)

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Metabolic acidosis

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: To be administered at an amount appropriate to the body base deficit

● **UNLICENSED USE** Unlicensed preparation.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Anuria · chronic respiratory acidosis

● **CAUTIONS** Extravasation can cause severe tissue damage

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Hepatic necrosis (following administration via umbilical vein, in neonates) · hyperkalaemia (in renal impairment) · hypoglycaemia · respiratory depression

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Respiratory support may be required because trometamol induces respiratory depression.

● **PREGNANCY** Limited information available, hypoglycaemia may harm fetus.

● **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution, may cause hyperkalaemia.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for infusion

##### Solution for infusion

► Trometamol (Non-proprietary)

Trometamol 363.4 mg per 1 ml Tris 36.34% solution for infusion  
20ml ampoules | 10 ampoule 

## 2 Fluid and electrolyte imbalances

### Fluids and electrolytes

#### Electrolyte replacement therapy

The electrolyte concentrations (intravenous fluid) table and the electrolyte content (gastro-intestinal secretions) table may be helpful in planning replacement electrolyte therapy; faeces, vomit, or aspiration should be saved and analysed where possible if abnormal losses are suspected.

#### Oral preparations for fluid and electrolyte imbalance

Sodium and potassium salts, may be given by mouth to prevent deficiencies or to treat established deficiencies of mild or moderate degree.

##### Oral potassium

Compensation for potassium loss is especially necessary:

- in children in whom secondary hyperaldosteronism occurs, e.g. renal artery stenosis, renal tubule disorder, the nephrotic syndrome, and severe heart failure;
- in children with excessive losses of potassium in the faeces, e.g. chronic diarrhoea associated with intestinal malabsorption or laxative abuse;
- in those taking digoxin or anti-arrhythmic drugs, where potassium depletion may induce arrhythmias.

Measures to compensate for potassium loss may be required during long-term administration of drugs known to induce potassium loss (e.g. corticosteroids). Potassium supplements are **seldom required** with the small doses of diuretics given to treat hypertension; **potassium-sparing diuretics** (rather than potassium supplements) are recommended for prevention of hypokalaemia due to diuretics such as furosemide or the thiazides when these are given to eliminate oedema.

If potassium salts are used for the *prevention of hypokalaemia*, then doses of potassium chloride p. 601 daily by mouth are suitable in patients taking a normal diet. Smaller doses must be used if there is renal insufficiency to reduce the risk of **hyperkalaemia**.

Potassium salts cause nausea and vomiting and poor compliance is a major limitation to their effectiveness (small divided doses may minimise gastric irritation); when appropriate, potassium-sparing diuretics are preferable. When there is *established potassium depletion* larger doses may be necessary, the quantity depending on the severity of any continuing potassium loss (monitoring of plasma-potassium concentration and specialist advice would be required). Potassium depletion is frequently associated with chloride depletion and with metabolic alkalosis, and these disorders require correction.

#### Management of hyperkalaemia

*Acute severe hyperkalaemia* calls for urgent treatment with intravenous infusion of **soluble insulin** (0.3–0.6 units/kg/hour in neonates and 0.05–0.2 units/kg/hour in children over 1 month) with glucose 0.5–1 g/kg/hour (5–10 mL/kg of glucose 10%; 2.5–5 mL/kg of glucose 20% via a central venous catheter may also be considered). If insulin cannot be used, salbutamol p. 156 can be given by intravenous injection, but it has a slower onset of action and may be less effective for reducing plasma-potassium concentration.

Calcium gluconate p. 594 is given by slow intravenous injection to manage cardiac excitability caused by hyperkalaemia.

The correction of causal or compounding acidosis with sodium bicarbonate infusion p. 586 should be considered (**important**: preparations of sodium bicarbonate and calcium salts should not be administered in the same line—risk of precipitation). Intravenous furosemide can also be given but is less effective in children with renal impairment. Drugs exacerbating hyperkalaemia should be reviewed and stopped as appropriate; dialysis may occasionally be required.

**Ion-exchange resins** may be used to remove excess potassium in *mild hyperkalaemia* or in *moderate hyperkalaemia* when there are no ECG changes. Calcium polystyrene sulfonate is preferred unless plasma-calcium concentrations are high.

#### Oral sodium and water

Sodium chloride p. 589 is indicated in states of sodium depletion. In preterm neonates in the first few weeks of life and in chronic conditions associated with mild or moderate degrees of sodium depletion, e.g. in salt-losing bowel or renal disease, oral supplements of sodium chloride may be sufficient. Sodium chloride solutions suitable for use by mouth in neonates are available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies, they should be used with care because they are hypertonic. Supplementation with sodium chloride may be required to

replace losses in children with cystic fibrosis particularly in warm weather.

#### Oral rehydration therapy (ORT)

Diarrhoea in children is usually self-limiting, however, in children under 6 months of age, and more particularly in those under 3 months, symptoms of dehydration may be less obvious and there is a risk of rapid and severe deterioration. Intestinal absorption of sodium and water is enhanced by glucose (and other carbohydrates). Replacement of fluid and electrolytes lost through diarrhoea can therefore be achieved by giving solutions containing sodium, potassium, and glucose or another carbohydrate such as rice starch.

Oral rehydration solutions should:

- enhance the absorption of water and electrolytes;
- replace the electrolyte deficit adequately and safely;
- contain an alkalinising agent to counter acidosis;
- be slightly hypo-osmolar (about 250 mmol/litre) to prevent the possible induction of osmotic diarrhoea;
- be simple to use in hospital and at home;
- be palatable and acceptable, especially to children;
- be readily available.

It is the policy of the World Health Organization (WHO) to promote a single oral rehydration solution but to use it flexibly (e.g. by giving extra water between drinks of oral rehydration solution to moderately dehydrated infants).

The WHO oral rehydration salts formulation contains sodium chloride 2.6 g, potassium chloride 1.5 g, sodium citrate 2.9 g, anhydrous glucose 13.5 g. It is dissolved in sufficient water to produce 1 litre (providing  $\text{Na}^+$  75 mmol,  $\text{K}^+$  20 mmol,  $\text{Cl}^-$  65 mmol, citrate 10 mmol, glucose 75 mmol/litre). This formulation is recommended by the WHO and the United Nations Children's fund, but it is not commonly used in the UK.

Oral rehydration solutions used in the UK are lower in sodium (50–60 mmol/litre) than the WHO formulation since, in general, patients suffer less severe sodium loss.

Rehydration should be rapid over 3 to 4 hours (except in hypernatraemic dehydration in which case rehydration should occur more slowly over 12 hours). The patient should be reassessed after initial rehydration and if still dehydrated rapid fluid replacement should continue.

Once rehydration is complete further dehydration is prevented by encouraging the patient to drink normal volumes of an appropriate fluid and by replacing continuing losses with an oral rehydration solution; in infants, breastfeeding or formula feeds should be offered between oral rehydration drinks.

#### Oral bicarbonate

Sodium bicarbonate p. 586 is given by mouth for *chronic acidotic states* such as uraemic acidosis or renal tubular acidosis. The dose for correction of metabolic acidosis is not predictable and the response must be assessed. For severe *metabolic acidosis*, sodium bicarbonate can be given intravenously.

Sodium supplements may increase blood pressure or cause fluid retention and pulmonary oedema in those at risk; hypokalaemia may be exacerbated.

Sodium bicarbonate may affect the stability or absorption of other drugs if administered at the same time. If possible, allow 1–2 hours before administering other drugs orally.

Where *hyperchloraemic acidosis* is associated with potassium deficiency, as in some renal tubular and gastrointestinal disorders it may be appropriate to give oral **potassium bicarbonate**, although acute or severe deficiency should be managed by intravenous therapy.

#### Parenteral preparations for fluid and electrolyte imbalance

##### Electrolytes and water

Solutions of electrolytes are given intravenously, to meet normal fluid and electrolyte requirements or to replenish

substantial deficits or continuing losses when it is not possible or desirable to use the oral route. When intravenous administration is not possible, fluid (as sodium chloride 0.9% p. 589 or glucose 5% p. 590) can also be given subcutaneously by hypodermoclysis.

In an individual patient the nature and severity of the electrolyte imbalance must be assessed from the history and clinical and biochemical examination. Sodium, potassium, chloride, magnesium, phosphate, and water depletion can occur singly and in combination with or without disturbances of acid-base balance.

Isotonic solutions may be infused safely into a peripheral vein. Solutions more concentrated than plasma, for example 15% glucose, are best given through an indwelling catheter positioned in a large vein.

**Maintenance fluid requirements** in children are usually derived from the relationship that exists between body-weight and metabolic rate; the figures in the table below may be used as a guide outside the neonatal period. The glucose requirement is that needed to minimise gluconeogenesis from amino acids obtained as substrate from muscle breakdown. Maintenance fluids are intended only to provide hydration for a short period until enteral or parenteral nutrition can be established.

It is usual to meet these requirements by using a standard solution of sodium chloride with glucose p. 590. Solutions containing 20 mmol/litre of potassium chloride p. 601 meet usual potassium requirements when given in the suggested volumes; adjustments may be needed if there is an inability to excrete fluids or electrolytes, excessive renal loss or continuing extra-renal losses. The exact requirements depend upon the nature of the clinical situation and types of losses incurred.

#### Fluid requirements for children over 1 month:

Body-weight	24-hour fluid requirement
Under 10 kg	100 mL/kg
10–20 kg	100 mL/kg for the first 10 kg + 50 mL/kg for each 1 kg body-weight over 10 kg
Over 20 kg	100 mL/kg for the first 10 kg + 50 mL/kg for each 1 kg body-weight between 10–20 kg + 20 mL/kg for each 1 kg body-weight over 20 kg (max. 2 litres in females, 2.5 litres in males)

**Important** The baseline fluid requirements shown in the table should be adjusted to take account of factors that reduce water loss (e.g. increased antidiuretic hormone, renal failure, hypothermia, and high ambient humidity) or increase water loss (e.g. pyrexia or burns).

**Replacement therapy:** initial intravenous replacement fluid is generally required if the child is over 10% dehydrated, or if 5–10% dehydrated and oral or enteral rehydration is not tolerated or possible. Oral rehydration is adequate, if tolerated, in the majority of those less than 10% dehydrated. Subsequent fluid and electrolyte requirements are determined by clinical assessment of fluid balance.

#### Intravenous sodium

**Intravenous sodium chloride** in isotonic (0.9%) solution provides the most important extracellular ions in near physiological concentrations and is indicated in *sodium depletion*. It may be given for initial treatment of acute fluid loss and to replace ongoing gastro-intestinal losses from the upper gastro-intestinal tract. Intravenous sodium chloride is commonly given as a component of maintenance and replacement therapy, usually in combination with other electrolytes and glucose.

*Chronic hyponatraemia* should ideally be corrected by fluid restriction. However, if sodium chloride is required, the

**Electrolyte concentrations—intravenous fluids**

Intravenous infusion	Millimoles per litre				
	Na <sup>+</sup>	K <sup>+</sup>	HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	Cl <sup>-</sup>	Ca <sup>2+</sup>
<b>Normal plasma values</b>	<b>142</b>	<b>4.5</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>103</b>	<b>2.5</b>
Sodium Chloride 0.9%	150	-	-	150	-
Compound Sodium Lactate (Hartmann's)	131	5	29	111	2
Sodium Chloride 0.18% and Glucose 4% (Adults only)	30	-	-	30	-
Sodium Chloride 0.45% and Glucose 5% (Children only)	75	-	-	75	-
Potassium Chloride 0.15% and Glucose 5% (Children only)	-	20	-	20	-
Potassium Chloride 0.15% and Sodium Chloride 0.9% (Children only)	150	20	-	170	-
Potassium Chloride 0.3% and Glucose 5%	-	40	-	40	-
Potassium Chloride 0.3% and Sodium Chloride 0.9%	150	40	-	190	-
<b>To correct metabolic acidosis</b>					
Sodium Bicarbonate 1.26%	150	-	150	-	-
Sodium Bicarbonate 8.4% for cardiac arrest	1000	-	1000	-	-
Sodium Lactate (m/6)	167	-	167	-	-

**Electrolyte content—gastro-intestinal secretions**

Type of fluid	Millimoles per litre				
	H <sup>+</sup>	Na <sup>+</sup>	K <sup>+</sup>	HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	Cl <sup>-</sup>
Gastric	40-60	20-80	5-20	-	100-150
Biliary	-	120-140	5-15	30-50	80-120
Pancreatic	-	120-140	5-15	70-110	40-80
Small bowel	-	120-140	5-15	20-40	90-130

deficit should be corrected slowly to avoid the risk of osmotic demyelination syndrome; the rise in plasma sodium concentration should be no more than 10 mmol/litre in 24 hours.

Sodium chloride with glucose solutions are indicated when there is combined *water and sodium depletion*. A 1:1 mixture of isotonic sodium chloride and 5% glucose allows some of the water (free of sodium) to enter body cells which suffer most from dehydration while the sodium salt with a volume of water determined by the normal plasma Na<sup>+</sup> remains extracellular.

Combined sodium, potassium, chloride, and water depletion may occur, for example, with severe diarrhoea or persistent vomiting; replacement is carried out with sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9% and glucose intravenous infusion 5% with potassium as appropriate

**Compound sodium lactate** (Hartmann's solution) can be used instead of isotonic sodium chloride solution during or after surgery, or in the initial management of the injured or wounded.

**Intravenous glucose**

Glucose solutions are used mainly to replace water deficit. Water depletion (dehydration) tends to occur when losses are not matched by a comparable intake, as may occur in coma or dysphagia.

Water loss rarely exceeds electrolyte losses but this can occur in fevers, hyperthyroidism, and in uncommon water-losing renal states such as diabetes insipidus or hypercalcaemia. The volume of glucose solution needed to replace deficits varies with the severity of the disorder; the rate of infusion should be adjusted to return the plasma-sodium concentration to normal over 48 hours.

Glucose solutions are also used to correct and prevent hypoglycaemia and to provide a source of energy in those too ill to be fed adequately by mouth; glucose solutions are a key component of parenteral nutrition.

Glucose solutions are given with insulin for the emergency management of *hyperkalaemia*. They are also given, after correction of hyperglycaemia, during treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis, when they must be accompanied by continuous insulin infusion.

**Intravenous potassium**

Potassium chloride with sodium chloride intravenous infusion p. 588 is the initial treatment for the correction of *severe hypokalaemia* and when sufficient potassium cannot be taken by mouth.

Repeated measurements of plasma-potassium concentration are necessary to determine whether further infusions are required and to avoid the development of hyperkalaemia, which is especially likely in renal impairment.

Initial potassium replacement therapy should **not** involve glucose infusions, because glucose may cause a further decrease in the plasma-potassium concentration.

**Bicarbonate and trometamol**

Sodium bicarbonate is used to correct severe *metabolic acidosis* (pH < 7.1) particularly that caused by loss of bicarbonate (as in renal tubular acidosis or from excessive gastro-intestinal losses). Mild metabolic acidosis associated with volume depletion should first be managed by appropriate fluid replacement because acidosis usually resolves as tissue and renal perfusion are restored. In more severe metabolic acidosis or when the acidosis remains unresponsive to correction of anaemia or hypovolaemia,

sodium bicarbonate below (1.26%) can be infused over 3–4 hours with plasma-pH and electrolyte monitoring. In severe shock, for example in cardiac arrest, metabolic acidosis can develop without sodium depletion; in these circumstances sodium bicarbonate is best given intravenously as a small volume of hypertonic solution, such as 8.4%; plasma pH and electrolytes should be monitored. For *chronic acidotic states*, sodium bicarbonate can be given by mouth.

Trometamol (tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane, THAM) p. 583, an organic buffer, corrects metabolic acidosis by causing an increase in urinary pH and an osmotic diuresis. It is indicated when sodium bicarbonate is unsuitable as in carbon dioxide retention, hypernatraemia, or renal impairment. It is also used during cardiac bypass surgery and, very rarely, in cardiac arrest.

#### Plasma and plasma substitutes

Albumin solution p. 595, prepared from whole blood, contain soluble proteins and electrolytes but no clotting factors, blood group antibodies, or plasma cholinesterases; they may be given without regard to the recipient's blood group.

Albumin is usually used after the acute phase of illness to correct a plasma-volume deficit; hypoalbuminaemia itself is not an appropriate indication. The use of albumin solution in acute plasma or blood loss may be wasteful; plasma substitutes are more appropriate. Concentrated albumin solution may also be used to obtain a diuresis in hypoalbuminaemic patients (e.g. in nephrotic syndrome).

Recent evidence does not support the previous view that the use of albumin increases mortality.

#### Plasma substitutes

Gelatin p. 595 is a macromolecular substance that is metabolised slowly. Gelatin may be used at the outset to expand and maintain blood volume in shock arising from conditions such as burns or septicæmia; it may also be used as an immediate short-term measure to treat haemorrhage until blood is available. Gelatin is rarely needed when shock is due to sodium and water depletion because, in these circumstances, the shock responds to water and electrolyte repletion; see also the management of shock.

Plasma substitutes should **not** be used to maintain plasma volume in conditions such as burns or peritonitis where there is loss of plasma protein, water, and electrolytes over periods of several days or weeks. In these situations, plasma or plasma protein fractions containing large amounts of albumin should be given.

Large volumes of *some* plasma substitutes can increase the risk of bleeding through depletion of coagulation factors.

### Parenteral preparations for fluid and electrolyte imbalance

#### Electrolytes and water

Neonates lose water through the skin and nose, particularly if preterm or if the skin is damaged. The basic fluid requirement for a term baby in average ambient humidity is 40–60 mL/kg/day plus urinary losses. Preterm babies have very high transepidermal losses particularly in the first few days of life; they may need more fluid replacement than full term babies and up to 180 mL/kg/day may be required. Local guidelines for fluid management in the neonatal period should be consulted.

#### Intravenous sodium

The sodium requirement for most healthy neonates is 3 mmol/kg daily. Preterm neonates, particularly below 30 weeks gestation, may require up to 6 mmol/kg daily. *Hyponatraemia* may be caused by excessive renal loss of sodium; it may also be dilutional and restriction of fluid intake may be appropriate. Sodium supplementation is likely to be required if the serum sodium concentration is significantly reduced.

*Hypernatraemia* may also occur, most often due to dehydration (e.g. breast milk insufficiency). Severe hypernatraemia and hyponatraemia can cause fits and rarely brain damage. Sodium in drug preparations, delivered via continuous infusions, or in infusions to maintain the patency of intravascular or umbilical lines, can result in significant amounts of sodium being delivered, (e.g. 1 mL/hour of 0.9% sodium chloride infused over 24 hours is equivalent to 3.6 mmol/day of sodium).

## BICARBONATE

### Sodium bicarbonate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Chronic acidotic states such as uraemic acidosis or renal tubular acidosis**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 1–2 mmol/kg daily in divided doses, adjusted according to response.

► Child: Initially 1–2 mmol/kg daily in divided doses, adjusted according to response

#### Severe metabolic acidosis

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: Administer an amount appropriate to the body base deficit, to be given by slow intravenous injection of a strong solution (up to 8.4%), or by continuous intravenous infusion of a weaker solution (usually 1.26%)

#### Renal hyperkalaemia

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 1 mmol/kg daily.

► Child: 1 mmol/kg daily

**Persistent cyanotic spell in a child with congenital heart disease despite optimal use of 100% oxygen and propranolol**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child: 1 mmol/kg, dose given to correct acidosis (or dose calculated according to arterial blood gas results), sodium bicarbonate 4.2% intravenous infusion is appropriate for a child under 1 year and sodium bicarbonate 8.4% intravenous infusion in children over 1 year

#### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

► With oral use Salt restricted diet

● **CAUTIONS** Respiratory acidosis

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sodium bicarbonate

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► With intravenous use Skin exfoliation · soft tissue necrosis · ulcer

► With oral use Abdominal cramps · burping · flatulence · hypokalaemia · metabolic alkalosis

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

► With intravenous use Plasma-pH and electrolytes should be monitored.

#### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

► With intravenous use For *peripheral infusion* dilute 8.4% solution at least 1 in 10. For *central line infusion* dilute 1 in 5 with Glucose 5% or 10% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Extravasation can cause severe tissue damage.

► With oral use Sodium bicarbonate may affect the stability or absorption of other drugs if administered at the same time. If possible, allow 1–2 hours before administering other drugs orally.



**● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

- With oral use *Sodium bicarbonate* 500mg capsules contain approximately 6 mmol each of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ; *Sodium bicarbonate* 600mg capsules contain approximately 7 mmol each of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ . Oral solutions of sodium bicarbonate are required occasionally; these are available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies; the strength of sodium bicarbonate should be stated on the prescription.
- With intravenous use Usual strength Sodium bicarbonate 1.26% (12.6 g, 150 mmol each of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ /litre), various other strengths available.

**● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on the administration of sodium bicarbonate oral medicines.

Medicines for children leaflet: Sodium bicarbonate for acidosis  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sodium-bicarbonate-for-acidosis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sodium-bicarbonate-for-acidosis)

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection

**Tablet**

- Sodium bicarbonate (Non-proprietary)**  
*Sodium bicarbonate* 600 mg *Sodium bicarbonate* 600mg tablets | 100 tablet £125.50 DT = £26.77 | 100 tablet [GSL](#) £29.75 DT = £26.77

**Solution for injection**

- Sodium bicarbonate (Non-proprietary)**  
*Sodium bicarbonate* 84 mg per 1 ml *Sodium bicarbonate* 8.4% (1mmol/ml) solution for injection 10ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM](#) £81.27–£89.40  
*Sodium bicarbonate* 8.4% (1mmol/ml) solution for injection 250ml bottles | 10 bottle [PoM](#) £62.04  
*Sodium bicarbonate* 8.4% (1mmol/ml) solution for injection 100ml bottles | 10 bottle [PoM](#) £65.34 DT = £65.34

**Oral solution**

- Thamcarb** (Thame Laboratories Ltd)  
*Sodium bicarbonate* 84 mg per 1 ml *Thamcarb* 84mg/1ml oral solution sugar-free | 100 ml [P](#) £39.80 DT = £39.80 sugar-free | 500 ml [P](#) £199.20 DT = £199.20

**Capsule**

- Sodium bicarbonate (Non-proprietary)**  
*Sodium bicarbonate* 500 mg *Sodium bicarbonate* 500mg capsules | 56 capsule [P](#) £17.56 DT = £1.55 | 100 capsule £2.89

**Infusion**

- Sodium bicarbonate (Non-proprietary)**  
*Sodium bicarbonate* 12.6 mg per 1 ml *Polyfusor BC* sodium bicarbonate 1.26% infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM](#) £10.87  
*Sodium bicarbonate* 14 mg per 1 ml *Polyfusor BD* sodium bicarbonate 1.4% infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM](#) £10.87  
*Sodium bicarbonate* 27.4 mg per 1 ml *Polyfusor V* sodium bicarbonate 2.74% infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM](#) £10.87  
*Sodium bicarbonate* 42 mg per 1 ml *Polyfusor BE* sodium bicarbonate 4.2% infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM](#) £10.87  
*Sodium bicarbonate* 84 mg per 1 ml *Polyfusor B* sodium bicarbonate 8.4% infusion 200ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM](#) £10.87

**ELECTROLYTES AND MINERALS > POTASSIUM****Potassium chloride with calcium chloride and sodium chloride and sodium lactate**

(Sodium Lactate Intravenous Infusion, Compound; Compound, Hartmann's Solution for Injection; Ringer-Lactate Solution for Injection)

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, potassium chloride p. 601, sodium chloride p. 589, calcium chloride p. 593.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

For prophylaxis, and replacement therapy, requiring the use of sodium chloride and lactate, with minimal amounts of calcium and potassium

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult product literature)

**● INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium salts • potassium chloride**● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Compound sodium lactate intravenous infusion contains  $\text{Na}^+$  131 mmol,  $\text{K}^+$  5 mmol,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  2 mmol,  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (as lactate) 29 mmol,  $\text{Cl}^-$  111 mmol/litre.**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Infusion**

- Potassium chloride with calcium chloride and sodium chloride and sodium lactate (Non-proprietary)**  
*Calcium chloride* 270 microgram per 1 ml, *Potassium chloride* 400 microgram per 1 ml, *Sodium lactate* 3.17 mg per 1 ml, *Sodium chloride* 6 mg per 1 ml *Sodium lactate compound infusion* 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM](#) [X](#)

**Potassium chloride with calcium chloride dihydrate and sodium chloride**

(Ringer's solution)

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, potassium chloride p. 601, sodium chloride p. 589.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Electrolyte imbalance**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: Dosed according to the deficit or daily maintenance requirements (consult product literature)

**● INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: potassium chloride**● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Ringer's solution for injection provides the following ions (in mmol/litre),  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  2.2,  $\text{K}^+$  4,  $\text{Na}^+$  147,  $\text{Cl}^-$  156.**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Infusion**

- Potassium chloride with calcium chloride dihydrate and sodium chloride (Non-proprietary)**  
*Potassium chloride* 300 microgram per 1 ml, *Calcium chloride* 320 microgram per 1 ml, *Sodium chloride* 8.6 mg per 1 ml *Polyfusor C* Ringers infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM](#) £3.25  
*Steriflex* No.9 Ringers infusion 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM](#) £2.22  
*Steriflex* No.9 Ringers infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM](#) £1.96

## Potassium chloride with glucose

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, potassium chloride p. 601, glucose p. 590.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Electrolyte imbalance

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: Dosed according to the deficit or daily maintenance requirements

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: glucose · potassium chloride
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Potassium chloride 0.3% contains 40 mmol each of K<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup>/litre or 0.15% contains 20 mmol each of K<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup>/litre with 5% of anhydrous glucose.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: infusion, solution for infusion

#### Infusion

##### ► Potassium chloride with glucose (Non-proprietary)

**Potassium chloride 3 mg per 1 ml, Glucose anhydrous 50 mg per 1 ml** Potassium chloride 0.3% (potassium 20mmol/500ml) / Glucose 5% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] [Σ]

Potassium chloride 0.3% (potassium 40mmol/1litre) / Glucose 5% infusion 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] £3.11

**Potassium chloride 2 mg per 1 ml, Glucose anhydrous 50 mg per 1 ml** Steriflex No.29 potassium chloride 0.2% (potassium 27mmol/1litre) / glucose 5% infusion 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] £2.20

Steriflex No.29 potassium chloride 0.2% (potassium 13.3mmol/500ml) / glucose 5% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £1.67

**Potassium chloride 1.5 mg per 1 ml, Glucose anhydrous 50 mg per 1 ml** Potassium chloride 0.15% (potassium 10mmol/500ml) / Glucose 5% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] [Σ]

Potassium chloride 0.15% (potassium 20mmol/1litre) / Glucose 5% infusion 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] [Σ]

## Potassium chloride with glucose and sodium chloride

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, potassium chloride p. 601, glucose p. 590, sodium chloride p. 589.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Electrolyte imbalance

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: Dosed according to the deficit or daily maintenance requirements

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: glucose · potassium chloride
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Concentration of potassium chloride to be specified by the prescriber (usually K<sup>+</sup> 10–40 mmol/litre).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: infusion, solution for infusion

#### Infusion

##### ► Potassium chloride with glucose and sodium chloride (Non-proprietary)

**Sodium chloride 1.8 mg per 1 ml, Potassium chloride 3 mg per 1 ml, Glucose anhydrous 40 mg per 1 ml** Potassium chloride 0.3% (potassium 20mmol/500ml) / Glucose 4% / Sodium chloride 0.18% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] [Σ]

Potassium chloride 0.3% (potassium 40mmol/1litre) / Glucose 4% / Sodium chloride 0.18% infusion 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] [Σ]

**Potassium chloride 1.5 mg per 1 ml, Sodium chloride 1.8 mg per 1 ml, Glucose anhydrous 40 mg per 1 ml** Potassium chloride 0.15% (potassium 20mmol/1litre) / Glucose 4% / Sodium chloride 0.18% infusion 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] [Σ]

Potassium chloride 0.15% (potassium 10mmol/500ml) / Glucose 4% / Sodium chloride 0.18% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] [Σ]

Potassium chloride 0.15% (potassium 10mmol/500ml) / Glucose 4% / Sodium chloride 0.18% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] [Σ]

**Sodium chloride 1.8 mg per 1 ml, Potassium chloride 2 mg per 1 ml, Glucose anhydrous 40 mg per 1 ml** Steriflex No.30 potassium chloride 0.2% (potassium 13.3mmol/500ml) / glucose 4% / sodium chloride 0.18% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £1.67

Steriflex No.30 potassium chloride 0.2% (potassium 27mmol/1litre) / glucose 4% / sodium chloride 0.18% infusion 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] £2.20

**Potassium chloride 1.5 mg per 1 ml, Sodium chloride 4.5 mg per 1 ml, Glucose anhydrous 50 mg per 1 ml** Intraven potassium chloride 0.15% (potassium 10mmol/500ml) / glucose 5% / sodium chloride 0.45% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £3.12

## Potassium chloride with potassium bicarbonate

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, potassium chloride p. 601.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Potassium depletion

- BY MOUTH
- Child: Dosed according to the deficit or daily maintenance requirements (consult product literature)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: potassium chloride
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Each *Sando-K*® tablet contains potassium 470 mg (12 mmol of K<sup>+</sup>) and chloride 285mg (8 mmol of Cl<sup>-</sup>).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Effervescent tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13, 21

##### ► Sando-K (HK Pharma Ltd)

**Potassium bicarbonate 400 mg, Potassium chloride**

**600 mg** Sando-K effervescent tablets | 100 tablet [P] £9.95 DT = £9.95

## Potassium chloride with sodium chloride

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, potassium chloride p. 601, sodium chloride p. 589.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Electrolyte imbalance

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: Depending on the deficit or the daily maintenance requirements (consult product literature)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: potassium chloride
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Potassium chloride 0.15% with sodium chloride 0.9% contains K<sup>+</sup> 20 mmol, Na<sup>+</sup> 150 mmol, and Cl<sup>-</sup> 170 mmol/litre or potassium chloride 0.3% with sodium chloride 0.9% contains K<sup>+</sup> 40 mmol, Na<sup>+</sup> 150 mmol, and Cl<sup>-</sup> 190 mmol/litre.


### ● MEDICINAL FORMS


There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: infusion, solution for infusion


#### Infusion

##### ► Potassium chloride with sodium chloride (Non-proprietary)

**Potassium chloride 3 mg per 1 ml, Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml** Potassium chloride 0.3% (potassium 20mmol/500ml) / Sodium chloride 0.9% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] [Σ]

Potassium chloride 0.3% (potassium 40mmol/1litre) / Sodium chloride 0.9% infusion 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] 

**Potassium chloride 1.5 mg per 1 ml, Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml** Potassium chloride 0.15% (potassium 10mmol/500ml) / Sodium chloride 0.9% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] 

Potassium chloride 0.15% (potassium 20mmol/1litre) / Sodium chloride 0.9% infusion 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] 

**Potassium chloride 2 mg per 1 ml, Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml** Steriflex No.28 potassium chloride 0.2% (potassium 13.3mmol/500ml) / sodium chloride 0.9% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £1.67

Steriflex No.28 potassium chloride 0.2% (potassium 27mmol/1litre) / sodium chloride 0.9% infusion 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] £2.20

## ELECTROLYTES AND MINERALS > SODIUM CHLORIDE

### Sodium chloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Chronic renal salt wasting

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 1–2 mmol/kg daily in divided doses, adjusted according to requirements

##### Sodium supplementation in neonates

###### ► INITIALLY BY MOUTH

- Neonate up to 36 weeks corrected gestational age: 2 mmol, dose to be administered in 100 ml of formula feed (consult dietician), alternatively (by mouth using modified-release tablets) 3–4 mmol, dose to be administered in 100 ml of breast milk (consult dietician).

##### Sodium replacement

###### ► BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE TABLETS

- Child: 1–2 mmol/kg daily in divided doses, adjusted according to requirements, higher doses may be needed in severe depletion

##### Management of diabetic ketoacidosis (to restore circulating volume if systolic blood pressure is below 90 mmHg and adjusted for age, sex, and medication as appropriate)

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: (consult local protocol)

##### Diluent for instillation of drugs to the bladder

###### ► BY INTRAVESICAL INSTILLATION

- Child: (consult product literature)

#### ● CAUTIONS

- With intravenous use Avoid excessive administration · cardiac failure · cardio-respiratory diseases · children receiving glucocorticoids · dilutional hyponatraemia · hepatic cirrhosis · hypertension · peripheral oedema · pulmonary oedema · reduced fluid loss · renal insufficiency · restrict intake in impaired renal function · toxæmia of pregnancy

##### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Reduced fluid loss
- With intravenous use The volume of fluid infused should take into account the possibility of reduced fluid loss owing to increased antidiuretic hormone and factors such as renal failure, hypothermia, and high humidity.
- Dilutional hyponatraemia
- With intravenous use Dilutional hyponatraemia is a rare but potentially fatal risk of parenteral hydration. It may be caused by inappropriate use of hypotonic fluids such as sodium chloride 0.18% and glucose 4% intravenous infusion, especially in the postoperative period when antidiuretic hormone secretion is increased. Dilutional hyponatraemia is characterized by a rapid fall in plasma-sodium concentration leading to cerebral oedema and seizures; any child with severe hyponatraemia or rapidly



changing plasma-sodium concentration should be referred urgently to a paediatric high dependency facility.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- With intravenous use Chills · fever · hypervolaemia · hypotension · local reaction · localised pain · paraesthesia · skin reactions · tremor · vascular disorders · venous thrombosis
- With oral use Abdominal cramps · acidosis hyperchloraemic · diarrhoea · generalised oedema · hypertension · hypotension · irritability · muscle complaints · nausea · vomiting

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** During parenteral hydration, fluids and electrolytes should be monitored closely and any disturbance corrected by slow infusion of an appropriate solution.

#### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

- With intravenous use Sodium chloride 0.9% intravenous infusion contains Na<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup> each 150 mmol/litre. The term 'normal saline' should not be used to describe sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9%; the term 'physiological saline' is acceptable but it is preferable to give the composition (i.e. sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9%).
- With oral use Each *Slow Sodium*® tablet contains approximately 10 mmol each of Na<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup>;  tablets can be crushed before administration .

The RCPCH and NPPG recommend that, when a liquid special of sodium chloride is required, the following strength is used: 5 mmol/mL.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Sodium chloride for hyponatraemia [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sodium-chloride-for-hyponatraemia](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sodium-chloride-for-hyponatraemia)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, solution for injection, infusion, solution for infusion

##### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

###### ► **Slow Sodium** (HK Pharma Ltd)

**Sodium chloride 600 mg** Slow Sodium 600mg tablets | 100 tablet [GSL] £9.20 DT = £9.20

##### Solution for injection

###### ► **Sodium chloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml** Sodium chloride 0.9% solution for injection 5ml Sure-Amp ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £7.15  
Sodium chloride 0.9% solution for injection 50ml vials | 25 vial [PoM] £85.00-£85.25

Sodium chloride 0.9% solution for injection 10ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £2.96-£3.26 DT = £2.96 | 50 ampoule [PoM] £14.75  
Sodium chloride 0.9% solution for injection 20ml Mini-Plasco ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £18.93

Sodium chloride 0.9% solution for injection 5ml Mini-Plasco ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £8.96

Sodium chloride 0.9% solution for injection 2ml Sure-Amp ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £7.15

Sodium chloride 0.9% solution for injection 20ml ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £15.75

Sodium chloride 0.9% solution for injection 2ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £2.07-£2.57 DT = £2.07


Sodium chloride 0.9% solution for injection 5ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £2.11-£2.32 DT = £2.11 | 50 ampoule [PoM] £10.50


Sodium chloride 0.9% solution for injection 10ml Sure-Amp ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £8.15

Sodium chloride 0.9% solution for injection 10ml Mini-Plasco ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £10.21

**Sodium chloride 300 mg per 1 ml** Sodium chloride 30% solution for injection 10ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £70.43 DT = £70.43

###### ► **Drytec saline** (GE Healthcare Biosciences)

**Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml** Drytec saline eluent 5ml vials | 20 vial [PoM]  (Hospital only)

Drytec saline eluent 10ml vials | 20 vial [PoM]  (Hospital only)

Drytec saline eluent 20ml vials | 20 vial [PoM]  (Hospital only)

**Solution for infusion**► **Sodium chloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Sodium chloride 300 mg per 1 ml** Sodium chloride 30% concentrate for solution for infusion 100ml vials | 10 vial [PoM] £50.60  
**Sodium chloride 30% concentrate** for solution for infusion 50ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £13.30 | 10 vial [PoM] £50.60  
**Sodium chloride 30% concentrate** for solution for infusion 10ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £70.40

**Intravesical solution**► **Sodium chloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml** Sodium chloride 0.9% intravesical solution 50ml bags | 1 bag [P] £5.00

**Infusion**► **Sodium chloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Sodium chloride 1.8 mg per 1 ml** Polyfusor O sodium chloride 0.18% infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £3.79  
**Sodium chloride 4.5 mg per 1 ml** Sodium chloride 0.45% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £5  
**Sodium chloride 0.45% infusion** 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £3.79  
**Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml** Sodium chloride 0.9% infusion 250ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £5  
**Sodium chloride 0.9% infusion** 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] £5  
**Sodium chloride 0.9% infusion** 100ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £5  
**Sodium chloride 0.9% infusion** 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £5  
**Sodium chloride 0.9% infusion** 50ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £5  
**Intraven sodium chloride 0.9% infusion** 2litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] £3.01  
**Sodium chloride 0.9% infusion** 100ml polyethylene bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £0.55 | 20 bottle [PoM] £11.00  
**Polyfusor S sodium chloride 0.9% infusion** 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £2.57  
**Polyfusor S sodium chloride 0.9% infusion** 1litre bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £3.42  
**Sodium chloride 18 mg per 1 ml** Polyfusor SC sodium chloride 1.8% infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £3.79  
**Sodium chloride 27 mg per 1 ml** Polyfusor SD sodium chloride 2.7% infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £3.79  
**Sodium chloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Polyfusor SE sodium chloride 5% infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £3.79

Combinations available: *Potassium chloride with calcium chloride and sodium chloride and sodium lactate*, p. 587 · *Potassium chloride with calcium chloride dihydrate and sodium chloride*, p. 587 · *Potassium chloride with glucose and sodium chloride*, p. 588 · *Potassium chloride with sodium chloride*, p. 588

**Sodium chloride with glucose**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, sodium chloride p. 589, glucose below.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Combined water and sodium depletion**

- BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- Child: (consult product literature)

**● CAUTIONS**

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Sodium chloride 0.18% and glucose 4% intravenous infusion fluid should not be used for fluid replacement in children aged 16 years or less because of the risk of hyponatraemia; availability of this infusion should be restricted to high dependency and intensive care units, and specialist wards, such as renal, liver, and cardiac units. Local guidelines on intravenous fluids should be consulted.

**● INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: glucose**● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- Maintenance fluid should accurately reflect daily requirements and close monitoring is required to avoid fluid and electrolyte imbalance.
- During parenteral hydration, fluids and electrolytes should be monitored closely and any disturbance corrected by slow infusion of an appropriate solution.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for infusion

**Infusion**► **Sodium chloride with glucose (Non-proprietary)**

**Sodium chloride 4.5 mg per 1 ml, Glucose anhydrous 25 mg per 1 ml** Sodium chloride 0.45% / Glucose 2.5% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £5

**Sodium chloride 1.8 mg per 1 ml, Glucose anhydrous 40 mg per 1 ml** Sodium chloride 0.18% / Glucose 4% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £5

**Sodium chloride 0.18% / Glucose 4% infusion** 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] £5

**Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml, Glucose 50 mg per 1 ml** Sodium chloride 0.9% / Glucose 5% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £5  
**Glucose 5% / sodium chloride 0.9% infusion** 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] £2.10

**Sodium chloride 4.5 mg per 1 ml, Glucose anhydrous 50 mg per 1 ml** Sodium chloride 0.45% / Glucose 5% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £5

**Sodium chloride 1.8 mg per 1 ml, Glucose anhydrous 100 mg per 1 ml** Steriflex No.19 glucose 10% / sodium chloride 0.18% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £2.23

**NUTRIENTS > SUGARS****Glucose****(Dextrose Monohydrate)****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Establish presence of gestational diabetes**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Test dose 75 g, anhydrous glucose to be given to the fasting patient and blood-glucose concentrations measured at intervals, to be given with 200–300 mL fluid

**Oral glucose tolerance test**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child: Test dose 1.75 g/kg (max. per dose 75 g), anhydrous glucose to be given to the fasting patient and blood-glucose concentrations measured at intervals. To be given with 200–300 mL fluid

**Neonatal hypoglycaemia**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: 500 mg/kg/hour, to be administered as Glucose 10% intravenous infusion, an initial dose of 250 mg/kg over 5 minutes may be required if hypoglycaemia is severe enough to cause loss of consciousness or seizures.

**Hypoglycaemia**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 500 mg/kg, to be administered as Glucose 10% intravenous infusion into a large vein through a large-gauge needle; care is required since this concentration is irritant especially if extravasation occurs

**Energy source**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: (consult product literature)

**Water replacement**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: The volume of glucose solution needed to replace deficits may vary (consult product literature)

**Persistent cyanosis (in combination with propranolol) when blood glucose less than 3 mmol/litre (followed by morphine)**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 200 mg/kg, to be administered as Glucose 10% intravenous infusion over 10 minutes

**Management of diabetic ketoacidosis**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: Glucose 5% or 10% should be added to replacement fluid once blood-glucose concentration falls below 14 mmol/litre

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- 75 g anhydrous glucose is equivalent to Glucose BP 82.5g.

- **CAUTIONS** Do not give alone except when there is no significant loss of electrolytes · prolonged administration of glucose solutions without electrolytes can lead to hyponatraemia and other electrolyte disturbances
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: glucose
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Chills · electrolyte imbalance · fever · fluid imbalance · hypersensitivity · local reaction · localised pain · polyuria · rash · venous thrombosis
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - With intravenous use Injections containing more than 10% glucose can be irritant and should be given into a central venous line; however, solutions containing up to 12.5% can be administered for a short period into a peripheral line.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Glucose BP is the monohydrate but Glucose Intravenous Infusion BP is a sterile solution of anhydrous glucose or glucose monohydrate, potency being expressed in terms of anhydrous glucose.
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY**
  - With intravenous use Prescription only medicine restriction does not apply to 50% solution where administration is for saving life in emergency.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution, solution for injection, solution for infusion

**Solution for infusion**► **Glucose (Non-proprietary)**

**Glucose anhydrous 200 mg per 1 ml** Glucose 20% solution for infusion 100ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £5.00  
**Glucose anhydrous 500 mg per 1 ml** Glucose 50% solution for infusion 20ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £12.00 DT = £12.00  
 Glucose 50% solution for infusion 50ml vials | 25 vial [PoM] £50.00-£50.25

**Oral solution**

- **Rapilose OGTT** (Galen Ltd)  
**Glucose 250 mg per 1 ml** Rapilose OGTT solution | 300 ml £3.48

**Oral gel**

- **DextroGel** (Neocentials Ltd)  
**Glucose 400 mg per 1 gram** DextroGel 40% gel | 75 gram £7.16 DT = £7.16 | 80 gram £6.84
- **Glucoboost** (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)  
**Glucose 400 mg per 1 gram** Glucoboost 40% gel | 75 gram £5.72 DT = £7.16 | 80 gram £6.11
- **Glucogel** (BBI Healthcare Ltd)  
**Glucose 400 mg per 1 gram** GlucoGel 40% gel original | 75 gram [GSL] £7.16 DT = £7.16 | 80 gram [GSL] £6.84
- **Rapilose** (Galen Ltd)  
**Glucose 400 mg per 1 gram** Rapilose 40% gel | 75 gram £5.49 DT = £7.16

**Infusion**► **Glucose (Non-proprietary)**

**Glucose anhydrous 50 mg per 1 ml** Glucose 5% infusion 1litre Macoflex bags | 1 bag [PoM] £  
 Glucose 5% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £  
 Glucose 5% infusion 50ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £  
 Glucose 5% infusion 250ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £  
 Glucose 5% infusion 100ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £  
**Glucose anhydrous 100 mg per 1 ml** Glucose 10% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £  
 Glucose 10% infusion 1litre bags | 1 bag [PoM] £  
**Glucose anhydrous 200 mg per 1 ml** Steriflex No.33 glucose 20% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £2.64

**Glucose (as Glucose monohydrate) 300 mg per 1 ml** Glucose 30% infusion 500ml polyethylene bottles | 10 bottle [PoM] £40.21

**Glucose anhydrous 400 mg per 1 ml** Steriflex No.33 glucose 40% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £2.81

**Glucose anhydrous 500 mg per 1 ml** Steriflex No.34 glucose 50% infusion 500ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £3.11  
 Glucose 50% infusion 500ml polyethylene bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £5.10

**Glucose anhydrous 700 mg per 1 ml** Glucose 70% concentrate for solution for infusion 500ml Vialflex bags | 1 bag [PoM] £

Combinations available: **Potassium chloride with glucose**, p. 588 · **Potassium chloride with glucose and sodium chloride**, p. 588 · **Sodium chloride with glucose**, p. 590

**ORAL REHYDRATION SALTS****Disodium hydrogen citrate with glucose, potassium chloride and sodium chloride**

(Formulated as oral rehydration salts)

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Fluid and electrolyte loss in diarrhoea**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1-11 months: 1–1½ times usual feed volume to be given
- Child 1-11 years: 200 mL, to be given after every loose motion
- Child 12-17 years: 200–400 mL, to be given after every loose motion, dose according to fluid loss

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Reconstitute 1 sachet with 200mL of water (freshly boiled and cooled for infants); 5 sachets reconstituted with 1 litre of water provide Na<sup>+</sup> 60 mmol, K<sup>+</sup> 20 mmol, Cl<sup>-</sup> 60 mmol, citrate 10 mmol, and glucose 90 mmol.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral powder formulations may include black currant, citrus, or natural.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** After reconstitution any unused solution should be discarded no later than 1 hour after preparation unless stored in a refrigerator when it may be kept for up to 24 hours.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Oral rehydration salts

[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/oral-rehydration-salts](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/oral-rehydration-salts)

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder**► **Dioralyte** (Sanofi)

**Potassium chloride 300 mg, Sodium chloride 470 mg, Disodium hydrogen citrate 530 mg, Glucose 3.56 gram** Dioralyte oral powder sachets citrus | 20 sachet [P] £6.72  
 Dioralyte oral powder sachets plain | 20 sachet [P] £6.72  
 Dioralyte oral powder sachets blackcurrant | 20 sachet [P] £6.72

**Potassium chloride with rice powder, sodium chloride and sodium citrate**

(Formulated as oral rehydration salts)

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Fluid and electrolyte loss in diarrhoea**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1-11 months: 1–1½ times usual feed volume to be given
- Child 1-11 years: 200 mL, to be given after every loose motion
- Child 12-17 years: 200–400 mL, to be given after every loose motion, dose according to fluid loss



- **UNLICENSED USE** *Dioralyte Relief*® not licensed for use in children under 3 months.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Reconstitute 1 sachet with 200 mL of water (freshly boiled and cooled for infants); 5 sachets when reconstituted with 1 litre of water provide Na<sup>+</sup> 60 mmol, K<sup>+</sup> 20 mmol, Cl<sup>-</sup> 50 mmol and citrate 10 mmol.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral powder formulations may include apricot, black currant, or raspberry.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and carers should be advised how to reconstitute *Dioralyte*® Relief oral powder. After reconstitution any unused solution should be discarded no later than 1 hour after preparation unless stored in a refrigerator when it may be kept for up to 24 hours.  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Oral rehydration salts  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/oral-rehydration-salts](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/oral-rehydration-salts)

#### ● MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

#### ► *Dioralyte Relief* (Sanofi)

Potassium chloride 300 mg, Sodium chloride 350 mg, Sodium citrate 580 mg, Rice powder pre-cooked 6 gram *Dioralyte Relief* oral powder sachets raspberry sugar-free | 6 sachet [GSU] £2.50  
*Dioralyte Relief* oral powder sachets blackcurrant sugar-free | 20 sachet [P] £7.13

The **bisphosphonates** are useful and pamidronate disodium p. 469 is probably the most effective.

**Corticosteroids** are widely given, but may only be useful where hypercalcaemia is due to sarcoidosis or vitamin D intoxication; they often take several days to achieve the desired effect.

Calcitonin (salmon) p. 471 can be used by specialists for the treatment of hypercalcaemia associated with malignancy; it is rarely effective where bisphosphonates have failed to reduce serum calcium adequately.

After treatment of severe hypercalcaemia the underlying cause must be established. *Further treatment* is governed by the same principles as for initial therapy. Salt and water depletion and drugs promoting hypercalcaemia should be avoided; oral administration of a bisphosphonate may be useful. Parathyroidectomy may be indicated for hyperparathyroidism.

#### **Hypercalciuria**

Hypercalciuria should be investigated for an underlying cause, which should be treated. Reducing dietary calcium intake may be beneficial but severe restriction of calcium intake has not proved beneficial and may even be harmful.

#### **Neonates**

##### **Calcium supplements**

Hypocalcaemia is common in the first few days of life, particularly following birth asphyxia or respiratory distress. Late onset at 4–10 days after birth may be secondary to vitamin D deficiency, hypoparathyroidism or hypomagnesaemia and may be associated with seizures.

## 2.1 Calcium imbalance

### Calcium

#### **Calcium supplements**

Calcium supplements are usually only required where dietary calcium intake is deficient. This dietary requirement varies with age and is relatively greater in childhood, pregnancy, and lactation, due to an increased demand. Hypocalcaemia may be caused by vitamin D deficiency (see Vitamin D under Vitamins p. 623), impaired metabolism, a failure of secretion (hypoparathyroidism), or resistance to parathyroid hormone (pseudohypoparathyroidism).

*Mild asymptomatic hypocalcaemia* may be managed with oral calcium supplements. *Severe symptomatic hypocalcaemia* requires an intravenous infusion of calcium gluconate 10% p. 594 over 5 to 10 minutes, repeating the dose if symptoms persist; in exceptional cases it may be necessary to maintain a continuous calcium infusion over a day or more. Calcium chloride injection p. 593 is also available, but is more irritant; care should be taken to prevent extravasation.

See the role of calcium gluconate in temporarily reducing the toxic effects of *hyperkalaemia*.

Persistent hypocalcaemia requires oral calcium supplements and either a vitamin D analogue (alfacalcidol p. 630 or calcitriol p. 631) for hypoparathyroidism and pseudohypoparathyroidism or natural vitamin D (calciferol) if due to vitamin D deficiency. It is important to monitor plasma and urinary calcium during long-term maintenance therapy.

#### **Severe hypercalcaemia**

Severe hypercalcaemia calls for urgent treatment before detailed investigation of the cause. Dehydration should be corrected first with intravenous infusion of sodium chloride 0.9% p. 589. Drugs (such as thiazides and vitamin D compounds) which promote hypercalcaemia, should be discontinued and dietary calcium should be restricted.

If *severe hypercalcaemia persists* drugs which inhibit mobilisation of calcium from the skeleton may be required.

## 2.1a Hypocalcaemia

### ELECTROLYTES AND MINERALS > CALCIUM

### Calcium salts

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Conditions associated with hypercalcaemia (e.g. some forms of malignant disease) · conditions associated with hypercalciuria (e.g. some forms of malignant disease)
- **CAUTIONS** History of nephrolithiasis · sarcoidosis
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Uncommon** Constipation · diarrhoea · hypercalcaemia · nausea
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution. Risk of hypercalcaemia and renal calculi.

► above

### Calcium carbonate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Phosphate binding in renal failure and hyperphosphataemia**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–11 months: 120 mg 3–4 times a day, dose to be adjusted as necessary, to be taken with feeds
- Child 1–5 years: 300 mg 3–4 times a day, dose to be adjusted as necessary, to be taken prior to or with meals
- Child 6–11 years: 600 mg 3–4 times a day, dose to be adjusted as necessary, to be taken prior to or with meals
- Child 12–17 years: 1.25 g 3–4 times a day, dose to be adjusted as necessary, to be taken prior to or with meals

**Calcium deficiency**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 0.25 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response.
- Child 1 month–4 years: 0.25 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response
- Child 5–11 years: 0.2 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response
- Child 12–17 years: 10 mmol 4 times a day, adjusted according to response

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium salts

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Uncommon** Hypercalcaemia
- **Rare or very rare** Flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · milk-alkali syndrome · skin reactions

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** *Adcal*<sup>®</sup> contains calcium carbonate 1.5 g (calcium 600 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 15 mmol); *Calchew*<sup>®</sup> contains calcium carbonate 1.25 g (calcium 500 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 12.5 mmol); *Calchew Forte*<sup>®</sup> contains calcium carbonate 2.5 g (calcium 1 g or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 25 mmol); *Cacit*<sup>®</sup> contains calcium carbonate 1.25 g, providing calcium citrate when dispersed in water (calcium 500 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 12.5 mmol); consult product literature for details of other available products.

Flavours of chewable tablet formulations may include orange or fruit flavour.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Calcium salts for kidney disease  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/calcium-salts-kidney-disease-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/calcium-salts-kidney-disease-0)

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

► **Calcium carbonate (Non-proprietary)**

Calcium carbonate 1.25 gram Calcium carbonate 1.25g tablets | 100 tablet [S]

**Effervescent tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

► **Cacit** (Warner Chilcott UK Ltd)

Calcium carbonate 1.25 gram Cacit 500mg effervescent tablets sugar-free | 76 tablet [P] £11.81 DT = £11.81

**Chewable tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 24

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

► **Calcium carbonate (Non-proprietary)**

Calcium carbonate 1.25 gram Calcium carbonate 1.25g chewable tablets sugar free sugar-free | 100 tablet £12.50 DT = £9.33

► **Adcal** (Kyowa Kirin Ltd)

Calcium carbonate 1.5 gram Adcal 1500mg chewable tablets sugar-free | 100 tablet [P] £8.70 DT = £8.70

► **Calchew** (Takeda UK Ltd)

Calcium carbonate 1.25 gram Calchew 500mg chewable tablets sugar-free | 100 tablet [P] £9.33 DT = £9.33

Calcium carbonate 2.5 gram Calchew Forte chewable tablets sugar-free | 60 tablet [P] £13.16 DT = £13.16

► **Remegel** (SSL International Plc)

Calcium carbonate 800 mg Remegel 800mg chewable tablets mint | 24 tablet [GSL] £2.58

► **Rennie** (Bayer Plc)

Calcium carbonate 500 mg Rennie Orange 500mg chewable tablets | 24 tablet [GSL] £1.50 | 48 tablet [GSL] £2.57 DT = £2.57

► **Setlers Antacid** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Calcium carbonate 500 mg Setlers Antacid spearmint chewable tablets | 36 tablet [GSL] £1.40

Setlers Antacid peppermint chewable tablets | 36 tablet [GSL] £1.40

► **TUMS** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

Calcium carbonate 500 mg Tums Assorted Fruit Antacid tablets | 36 tablet [GSL] £1.33 | 75 tablet [GSL] £2.14

**Calcium carbonate with calcium lactate gluconate**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, calcium carbonate p. 592.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Calcium deficiency**

## ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 0.25 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response.
- Child 1 month–4 years: 0.25 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response
- Child 5–11 years: 0.2 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response
- Child 12–17 years: 10 mmol 4 times a day, adjusted according to response

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium salts

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Each *Sandocal*<sup>®</sup> tablet contains 1 g calcium (Ca<sup>2+</sup> 25 mmol); flavours of soluble tablet formulations may include orange.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Effervescent tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

► **Sandocal** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

Calcium carbonate 1.75 gram, Calcium lactate gluconate 2.63 gram Sandocal 1000 effervescent tablets sugar-free | 30 tablet [P] £11.65 DT = £11.65

P 592

**Calcium chloride**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Acute hypocalcaemia**

## ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: (consult product literature)

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid in respiratory acidosis · avoid in respiratory failure

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium salts

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Soft tissue calcification · taste unpleasant · vasodilation

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Care should be taken to avoid extravasation.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Non-proprietary *Calcium chloride dihydrate* 7.35% (calcium 20 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 500 micromol/mL); *Calcium chloride dihydrate* 10% (calcium 27.3 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 680 micromol/mL); *Calcium chloride dihydrate* 14.7% (calcium 40.1 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 1000 micromol/mL).

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for infusion

**Solution for injection**► **Calcium chloride (Non-proprietary)**

Calcium chloride dihydrate 73.5 mg per 1 ml Calcium chloride 7.35% solution for injection 10ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £66.38

Calcium chloride dihydrate 100 mg per 1 ml Calcium chloride 10% solution for injection 10ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £9.42 DT = £9.42

Calcium chloride dihydrate 147 mg per 1 ml Calcium chloride 14.7% solution for injection 5ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £109.98

Calcium chloride 14.7% solution for injection 10ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £77.95 DT = £77.95

F 592

## Calcium gluconate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Calcium deficiency | Mild asymptomatic hypocalcaemia

##### ► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 0.25 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response.

- Child 1 month–4 years: 0.25 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response
- Child 5–11 years: 0.2 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response
- Child 12–17 years: 10 mmol 4 times a day, adjusted according to response

#### Acute hypocalcaemia, urgent correction | Hyperkalaemia (prevention of arrhythmias)

##### ► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 0.11 mmol/kg for 1 dose, to be given over 5–10 minutes, some units use a dose of 0.46 mmol/kg (2 mL/kg calcium gluconate 10%) for hypocalcaemia in line with US practice.

► Child: 0.11 mmol/kg, to be given over 5–10 minutes, maximum 4.5 mmol (20 mL calcium gluconate 10%)

#### Acute hypocalcaemia, maintenance

##### ► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: 0.5 mmol/kg daily, adjusted according to response, dose to be given over 24 hours, use oral route as soon as possible due to risk of extravasation.

- Child 1 month–1 year: 1 mmol/kg daily, adjusted according to response, dose to be given over 24 hours, use oral route as soon as possible due to risk of extravasation; Usual maximum 8.8 mmol
- Child 2–17 years: 8.8 mmol daily, adjusted according to response, dose to be given over 24 hours, use oral route as soon as possible due to risk of extravasation

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

► 0.11 mmol/kg is equivalent to 0.5 mL/kg of calcium gluconate 10%.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

The MHRA has advised that repeated or prolonged administration of calcium gluconate injection packaged in 10 mL glass containers is contra-indicated in children under 18 years and in patients with renal impairment owing to the risk of aluminium accumulation; in these patients the use of calcium gluconate injection packaged in plastic containers is recommended.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium salts

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS Arrhythmias

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- With intravenous use Circulatory collapse · feeling hot · hyperhidrosis · hypotension · vasodilation · vomiting
- With oral use Gastrointestinal disorder

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- With intravenous use Plasma-calcium and ECG monitoring required for administration by slow intravenous injection (risk of arrhythmias if given too rapidly).

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intravenous infusion dilute to at least 45 micromol/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Maximum administration rate 45 micromol/kg/hour (or in neonates max. 22 micromol/kg/hour). May be given more concentrated via a central venous catheter. May be used undiluted (10%.

calcium gluconate) in emergencies. Avoid extravasation; should not be given by intramuscular injection. Incompatible with sodium bicarbonate and phosphate solutions.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Calcium gluconate 1 g contains calcium 89 mg or  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  2.23 mmol.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection, solution for infusion

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Calcium gluconate (Non-proprietary)

Calcium gluconate 100 mg per 1 mL Calcium gluconate 10% solution for injection 10ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £7.50-£12.50 DT = £12.50 | 20 ampoule [PoM] £30.00

#### Effervescent tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13  
ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

##### ► Calcium gluconate (Non-proprietary)

Calcium gluconate 1 gram Calcium gluconate 1g effervescent tablets | 28 tablet [GSL] £15.68 DT = £15.68

F 592

## Calcium lactate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Calcium deficiency

##### ► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 0.25 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response.

- Child 1 month–4 years: 0.25 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response
- Child 5–11 years: 0.2 mmol/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response
- Child 12–17 years: 10 mmol 4 times a day, adjusted according to response

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium salts

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

##### ► Calcium lactate (Non-proprietary)

Calcium lactate 300 mg Calcium lactate 300mg tablets | 84 tablet [GSL] DT = £4.57 | 84 tablet [GSL] £4.57 DT = £4.57

F 592

## Calcium phosphate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Indications listed in combination monographs (available in the UK only in combination with other drugs)

##### ► BY MOUTH

► Child: Doses listed in combination monographs

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium salts

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Epigastric pain · gastrointestinal disorder · hypercalcaemia

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

## 2.2 Low blood volume

### BLOOD AND RELATED PRODUCTS > PLASMA PRODUCTS

#### Albumin solution

(Human Albumin Solution)

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute or sub-acute loss of plasma volume e.g. in burns, pancreatitis, trauma, and complications of surgery (with isotonic solutions) | Plasma exchange (with isotonic solutions) | Severe hypoalbuminaemia associated with low plasma volume and generalised oedema where salt and water restriction with plasma volume expansion are required (with concentrated solutions 20%) | Paracentesis of large volume ascites associated with portal hypertension (with concentrated solutions 20%)**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

**Adjunct in the treatment of hyperbilirubinaemia by exchange transfusion in the newborn (with concentrated solutions 20%)**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Cardiac failure · severe anaemia
- **CAUTIONS** Correct dehydration when administering concentrated solution · history of cardiac disease (administer slowly to avoid rapid rise in blood pressure and cardiac failure, and monitor cardiovascular and respiratory function) · history of circulatory disease (administer slowly to avoid rapid rise in blood pressure and cardiac failure, and monitor cardiovascular and respiratory function) · increased capillary permeability
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Fever · flushing · nausea · shock · urticaria
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Plasma and plasma substitutes are often used in very ill patients whose condition is unstable. Therefore, close monitoring is required and fluid and electrolyte therapy should be adjusted according to the patient's condition at all times.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** A solution containing protein derived from plasma, serum, or normal placentas; at least 95% of the protein is albumin. The solution may be isotonic (containing 3.5–5% protein) or concentrated (containing 15–25% protein).

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Infusion

- ▶ **Flexbumin** (Baxalta UK Ltd)  
Albumin solution human 200 gram per 1 litre Flexbumin 20% infusion 100ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £50.00  
Flexbumin 20% infusion 50ml bags | 1 bag [PoM] £

##### Solution for infusion

- ▶ **Albunorm** (Octapharma Ltd)  
Albumin solution human 50 mg per 1 ml Albunorm 5% solution for infusion 250ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £30.00  
Albunorm 5% solution for infusion 100ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £12.00  
Albunorm 5% solution for infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £60.00  
Albumin solution human 200 mg per 1 ml Albunorm 20% solution for infusion 100ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £48.00
- ▶ **Alburex** (CSL Behring UK Ltd)  
Albumin solution human 50 mg per 1 ml Alburex 5% solution for infusion 500ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £50.00  
Albumin solution human 200 mg per 1 ml Alburex 20% solution for infusion 100ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £40.00

- ▶ **Biotech** (Biotech (UK) Ltd)  
Albumin solution human 50 mg per 1 ml Human Albumin Biotech 5% solution for infusion 250ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £  
Albumin solution human 200 mg per 1 ml Human Albumin Biotech 20% solution for infusion 50ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £  
Human Albumin Biotech 20% solution for infusion 100ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £
- ▶ **Grifols** (Grifols UK Ltd)  
Albumin solution human 50 mg per 1 ml Human albumin Grifols 5% solution for infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £49.50  
Human albumin Grifols 5% solution for infusion 250ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £24.75  
Human albumin Grifols 5% solution for infusion 100ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £9.90
- ▶ **Zenalb** (Bio Products Laboratory Ltd)  
Albumin solution human 45 mg per 1 ml Zenalb 4.5% solution for infusion 250ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £27.51  
Zenalb 4.5% solution for infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £55.02  
Albumin solution human 200 mg per 1 ml Zenalb 20% solution for infusion 100ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £54.00  
Zenalb 20% solution for infusion 50ml bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £27.00

### PLASMA SUBSTITUTES

#### Gelatin

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Low blood volume in hypovolaemic shock, burns and cardiopulmonary bypass**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: Initially 10–20 mL/kilogram, use 3.5–4% solution

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac disease · severe liver disease
- **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The use of plasma substitutes in children requires specialist supervision due to the risk of fluid overload; use is best restricted to an intensive care setting.
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Chills · dyspnoea · fever · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · hypertension · hypotension · hypoxia · tachycardia · tremor · urticaria · wheezing
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer of *Geloplasma*® advises avoid at the end of pregnancy.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in renal impairment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
- ▶ Urine output should be monitored. Care should be taken to avoid haematocrit concentration from falling below 25–30% and the patient should be monitored for hypersensitivity reactions.
- ▶ Plasma and plasma substitutes are often used in very ill patients whose condition is unstable. Therefore, close monitoring is required and fluid and electrolyte therapy should be adjusted according to the patient's condition at all times.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The gelatin is partially degraded.  
*Gelaspan*® contains succinylated gelatin (modified fluid gelatin, average molecular weight 26 500) 40 g, Na<sup>+</sup> 151 mmol, K<sup>+</sup> 4 mmol, Mg<sup>2+</sup> 1 mmol, Cl<sup>-</sup> 103 mmol, Ca<sup>2+</sup> 1 mmol, acetate 24 mmol/litre; *Gelofusine*® contains succinylated gelatin (modified fluid gelatin, average molecular weight 30 000) 40 g (4%), Na<sup>+</sup> 154 mmol, Cl<sup>-</sup> 124 mmol/litre; *Geloplasma*® contains partially hydrolysed and succinylated gelatin (modified liquid gelatin) (as anhydrous gelatin) 30 g (3%), Na<sup>+</sup> 150 mmol, K<sup>+</sup> 5 mmol, Mg<sup>2+</sup> 1.5 mmol, Cl<sup>-</sup> 100 mmol, lactate 30 mmol/litre; *Isoplex*® contains succinylated gelatin (modified fluid gelatin, average molecular weight 30 000) 40g (4%), Na<sup>+</sup> 145 mmol, K<sup>+</sup> 4 mmol, Mg<sup>2+</sup> 0.9 mmol, Cl<sup>-</sup> 105 mmol,

lactate 25mmol/litre; *Volplex*® contains succinylated gelatin (modified fluid gelatin, average molecular weight 30 000) 40 g (4%), Na<sup>+</sup> 154 mmol, Cl<sup>-</sup> 125 mmol/litre.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Infusion

- ▶ **Gelaspan** (B.Braun Medical Ltd)  
**Gelatin 40 mg per 1 ml** Gelaspan 4% infusion 500ml Ecobags | 1 bag [PoM] £5.95 (Hospital only)
- ▶ **Gelofusine** (B.Braun Medical Ltd)  
**Gelatin 40 mg per 1 ml** Gelofusine 4% infusion 1litre Ecobags | 1 bag [PoM] £9.31  
Gelofusine 4% infusion 500ml Ecobags | 1 bag [PoM] £4.97
- ▶ **Geloplasma** (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)  
**Gelatin 30 mg per 1 ml** Geloplasma 3% infusion 500ml Freeflex bags | 20 bag [PoM] £5
- ▶ **Isoplex** (Kent Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Gelatin 40 mg per 1 ml** Isoplex 4% infusion 500ml bags | 10 bag [PoM] £75.00 (Hospital only)
- ▶ **Volplex** (Kent Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Gelatin 40 mg per 1 ml** Volplex 4% infusion 500ml bags | 10 bag [PoM] £47.00 (Hospital only)

## 2.3 Magnesium imbalance

### Magnesium

Magnesium is an essential constituent of many enzyme systems, particularly those involved in energy generation; the largest stores are in the skeleton.

Magnesium salts are not well absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, which explains the use of magnesium sulfate p. 597 as an osmotic laxative.

Magnesium is excreted mainly by the kidneys and is therefore retained in renal failure, but significant *hypermagnesaemia* (causing muscle weakness and arrhythmias) is rare.

#### Hypomagnesaemia

Since magnesium is secreted in large amounts in the gastrointestinal fluid, excessive losses in diarrhoea, stoma or fistula are the most common causes of *hypomagnesaemia*; deficiency may also occur as a result of treatment with certain drugs. Hypomagnesaemia often causes secondary hypocalcaemia (with which it may be confused), particularly in neonates, and also hypokalaemia and hyponatraemia.

Symptomatic *hypomagnesaemia* is associated with a deficit of 0.5–1 mmol/kg. Magnesium is given initially by intravenous infusion or by intramuscular injection of magnesium sulfate; the intramuscular injection is painful. Plasma magnesium concentration should be measured to determine the rate and duration of infusion and the dose should be reduced in renal impairment. To prevent recurrence of the deficit, magnesium may be given by mouth in divided doses, but there is limited evidence of benefit. Magnesium aspartate below powder for oral solution is available as a licensed preparation.

#### Arrhythmias

Magnesium sulfate injection has also been recommended for the emergency treatment of *serious arrhythmias*, especially in the presence of hypokalaemia (when hypomagnesaemia may also be present) and when salvos of rapid ventricular tachycardia show the characteristic twisting wave front known as *torsade de pointes*.

## 2.3a Hypomagnesaemia

### ELECTROLYTES AND MINERALS > MAGNESIUM

#### Magnesium aspartate

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Treatment and prevention of magnesium deficiency

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child 2–3 years: 4.5 mmol daily, given as one level 5 mL spoonful of *Magnaspartate*® powder.
- ▶ Child 4–9 years: 4.5 mmol daily, given as a 5 mL level spoonful of *Magnaspartate*® powder, alternatively 10 mmol daily, given as 1 sachet of *Magnaspartate*® powder.
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 10 mmol daily, given as 1 sachet of *Magnaspartate*® powder.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Disorders of cardiac conduction

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: magnesium

##### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Uncommon Diarrhoea · faeces soft
- ▶ Rare or very rare Fatigue · hypermagnesaemia
- ▶ Frequency not known Gastrointestinal irritation

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Side-effects generally occur at higher doses; if side-effects (such as diarrhoea) occur, consider interrupting treatment and restarting at a reduced dose.

**Overdose** Symptoms of hypermagnesaemia may include nausea, vomiting, flushing of the skin, thirst, hypotension due to peripheral vasodilatation, drowsiness, confusion, loss of tendon reflexes and respiratory depression due to neuromuscular blockade, slurred speech, double vision, muscle weakness, bradycardia, cardiac arrhythmias, coma, and cardiac arrest.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment (estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73<sup>2</sup>).

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Dissolve sachet contents in 50–200 mL water, tea or orange juice and take immediately.

##### • PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

*Magnaspartate*® contains magnesium aspartate 6.5 g (10 mmol Mg<sup>2+</sup>)/sachet.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and carers should be given advice on how to administer magnesium aspartate powder.

##### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: powder

##### Powder

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sucrose

- ▶ **Magnaspartate** (KoRa Healthcare)

**Magnesium (as Magnesium aspartate) 243 mg** *Magnaspartate* 243mg (magnesium 10mmol) oral powder sachets | 10 sachet [PoM] £8.95 DT = £8.95

### Magnesium glycerophosphate

24-Oct-2017

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Hypomagnesaemia

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 0.2 mmol/kg 3 times a day, dose to be adjusted as necessary, dose expressed as Mg<sup>2+</sup>



- Child 12–17 years: Initially 4–8 mmol 3 times a day, dose to be adjusted as necessary, dose expressed as  $Mg^{2+}$

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Magnesium glycerophosphate 1 g is approximately equivalent to  $Mg^{2+}$  4 mmol or magnesium 97 mg.

#### NEOMAG® CHEWABLE TABLETS

##### Hypomagnesaemia

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 4–11 years: Initially 1 tablet twice daily, dose to be adjusted according to the serum total magnesium level
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 1 tablet 3 times a day, dose to be adjusted according to the serum total magnesium level

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Each *Neomag*® chewable tablet contains  $Mg^{2+}$  4 mmol or magnesium 97 mg.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Preparations other than *Neomag*® are not licensed for use.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: magnesium

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Diarrhoea - hypermagnesaemia

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Increased risk of toxicity. Dose adjustments Avoid or reduce dose.

**NEOMAG® CHEWABLE TABLETS** Manufacturer advises avoid in severe impairment.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Manufacturer advises to monitor serum magnesium levels every 3–6 months.

#### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

**NEOMAG® CHEWABLE TABLETS** Manufacturer advises that tablets may be broken into quarters and chewed or swallowed with water.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NEOMAG® CHEWABLE TABLETS

##### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (September 2017) that magnesium glycerophosphate (*Neomag*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland as an oral magnesium supplement for the treatment of patients with chronic magnesium loss or hypomagnesaemia.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension, oral solution, powder

##### Oral solution

###### ► **LiquaMag GP** (Fontus Health Ltd)

**Magnesium (as Magnesium glycerophosphate) 24.25 mg per 1 ml** LiquaMag GP (magnesium 121.25mg/5ml (5mmol/5ml)) oral solution sugar-free | 200 ml £49.99

###### ► **MagnaPhos** (TriOn Pharma Ltd)

**Magnesium (as Magnesium glycerophosphate) 19.44 mg per 1 ml** MagnaPhos 97.2mg/5ml (4mmol/5ml) oral solution | 200 ml £37.87 DT = £133.68

**Magnesium (as Magnesium glycerophosphate) 24.25 mg per 1 ml** MagnaPhos 121.25mg/5ml (5mmol/5ml) oral solution | 200 ml £37.87 DT = £37.87

##### Chewable tablet

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

###### ► **MagnaPhate** (Arjun Products Ltd)

**Magnesium (as Magnesium glycerophosphate) 97.2 mg** MagnaPhate (magnesium 97.2mg (4mmol)) chewable tablets sugar-free | 50 tablet £22.64 DT = £22.77

###### ► **MagnaPhos** (TriOn Pharma Ltd)

**Magnesium (as Magnesium glycerophosphate) 97.2 mg** MagnaPhos 97.2mg (4mmol) chewable tablets sugar-free | 50 tablet £17.89 DT = £22.77

###### ► **Neomag** (Neocuticals Ltd)

**Magnesium (as Magnesium glycerophosphate) 97.2 mg** Neomag (magnesium 97mg (4mmol)) chewable tablets sugar-free | 50 tablet [PoM] £22.77 DT = £22.77

#### Capsule

##### ► **MagnaPhos** (TriOn Pharma Ltd)

**Magnesium (as Magnesium glycerophosphate)**

**48.6 mg** MagnaPhos 48.6mg (2mmol) capsules | 50 capsule £35.87

**Magnesium (as Magnesium glycerophosphate)**

**97.2 mg** MagnaPhos 97.2mg (4mmol) capsules | 50 capsule £37.87

## Magnesium sulfate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Severe acute asthma | Continuing respiratory deterioration in anaphylaxis**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 2–17 years: 40 mg/kg (max. per dose 2 g), to be given over 20 minutes

**Persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn**

##### ► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: Initially 200 mg/kg, to be given over 20–30 minutes, then (by continuous intravenous infusion) 20–75 mg/kg/hour for up to 5 days if response occurs after initial dose (to maintain plasma magnesium concentration between 3.5–5.5 mmol/litre).

#### Hypomagnesaemia

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: 100 mg/kg every 6–12 hours as required, to be given over at least 10 minutes.

- Child 1 month–11 years: 50 mg/kg every 12 hours as required, to be given over at least 10 minutes

- Child 12–17 years: 1 g every 12 hours as required, to be given over at least 10 minutes

**Hypomagnesaemia maintenance (e.g. in intravenous nutrition)**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child: 50–100 mg/kg daily; maximum 5 g per day

**Neonatal hypocalcaemia**

##### ► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: 100 mg/kg every 12 hours for 2–3 doses.

#### Torsade de pointes

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: 25–50 mg/kg (max. per dose 2 g), to be given over 10–15 minutes, dose may be repeated once if necessary (consult local protocol)

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- Magnesium sulfate heptahydrate 1 g equivalent to  $Mg^{2+}$  approx. 4 mmol.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Unlicensed indication in severe acute asthma and continuing respiratory deterioration in anaphylaxis.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: magnesium

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Electrolyte imbalance

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful for short-term intravenous administration in eclampsia. Sufficient amount may cross the placenta in mothers treated with high doses, causing hypotonia and respiratory depression in newborns.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in hepatic coma if risk of renal failure.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Increased risk of toxicity. Dose adjustments Avoid or reduce dose.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood pressure, respiratory rate, urinary output and for signs of overdosage (loss of patellar reflexes, weakness, nausea, sensation of warmth, flushing, drowsiness, double vision, and slurred speech).

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- With intravenous use In severe hypomagnesaemia administer initially via controlled infusion device (preferably syringe pump).

For intravenous infusion, in persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn, dilute to a max. concentration of 100 mg/mL (10%) (0.4 mmol/mL  $Mg^{2+}$ ) magnesium sulfate heptahydrate (200 mg/mL (0.8 mmol/mL  $Mg^{2+}$ ) if fluid restricted) with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

For neonatal hypocalcaemia, hypomagnesaemia, and torsade de pointes, dilute to 10% (100 mg magnesium sulfate heptahydrate (0.4 mmol  $Mg^{2+}$ ) in 1 mL) with Glucose 5% or 10%, Sodium Chloride 0.45% or 0.9% or Glucose and Sodium Chloride combinations. Up to 20% solution may be given in fluid restriction. Rate of administration should not exceed 10 mg/kg/minute (0.04 mmol/kg/minute  $Mg^{2+}$ ) of magnesium sulfate heptahydrate.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The BP directs that the label states the strength as the % w/v of magnesium sulfate heptahydrate and as the approximate concentration of magnesium ions ( $Mg^{2+}$ ) in mmol/mL. Magnesium Sulfate Injection BP is a sterile solution of Magnesium Sulfate Heptahydrate.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection, infusion, solution for infusion

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Magnesium sulfate (Non-proprietary)

**Magnesium sulfate heptahydrate 500 mg per 1 mL** Magnesium sulfate 50% (magnesium 2mmol/mL) solution for injection 10mL ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £21.70–£21.71 DT = £21.63  
**Magnesium sulfate 50% (magnesium 2mmol/mL) solution for injection** 20mL vials | 10 vial [PoM] £49.20  
**Magnesium sulfate 50% (magnesium 2mmol/mL) solution for injection** 5mL ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £37.80–£61.26  
**Magnesium sulfate 50% (magnesium 2mmol/mL) solution for injection** 2mL ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £17.30–£17.35 DT = £17.35

#### Solution for infusion

##### ► Magnesium sulfate (Non-proprietary)

**Magnesium sulfate heptahydrate 100 mg per 1 mL** Magnesium sulfate 10% (magnesium 0.4mmol/mL) solution for injection 10mL ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £66.26 DT = £66.26  
**Magnesium sulfate heptahydrate 500 mg per 1 mL** Magnesium sulfate 50% (magnesium 2mmol/mL) solution for infusion 50mL vials | 10 vial [PoM] £73.00

## 2.4 Phosphate imbalance

### Phosphorus

#### Phosphate supplements

Oral phosphate supplements p. 600 may be required in addition to vitamin D in children with hypophosphataemic vitamin D-resistant rickets, see also Vitamin D, under Vitamins p. 623.

Phosphate infusion is occasionally needed in phosphate deficiency arising from use of parenteral nutrition deficient in phosphate supplements; phosphate depletion also occurs in severe diabetic ketoacidosis. It is difficult to provide detailed guidelines for the treatment of severe hypophosphatemia because the extent of total body deficits and response to therapy are difficult to predict. High doses of phosphate may result in a transient serum elevation followed by redistribution into intracellular compartments or bone tissue. It is recommended that severe hypophosphataemia be treated intravenously as large doses

of oral phosphate may cause diarrhoea; intestinal absorption may be unreliable and dose adjustment may be necessary.

Phosphate is not the first choice for the treatment of hypercalcaemia because of the risk of precipitation of calcium phosphate in the kidney and other tissues. If used, the child should be well hydrated and electrolytes monitored.

### Neonates

Phosphate deficiency may occur in very low-birthweight infants and may compromise bone growth if not corrected. Parenterally fed infants may be at risk of phosphate deficiency due to the limited solubility of phosphate. Some units routinely supplement expressed breast milk with phosphate, although the effect on the osmolality of the milk should be considered.

### Phosphate-binding agents

Calcium-containing preparations are used as phosphate-binding agents in the management of hyperphosphataemia complicating renal failure. Aluminium-containing preparations are rarely used as phosphate-binding agents and can cause aluminium accumulation.

Sevelamer hydrochloride is licensed for the treatment of hyperphosphataemia in adults on haemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis. Although experience is limited in children sevelamer hydrochloride may be useful when hypercalcaemia prevents the use of calcium carbonate p. 592.

## 2.4a Hyperphosphataemia

### ELECTROLYTES AND MINERALS > ALUMINIUM

### Aluminium hydroxide

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Hyperphosphataemia in renal failure

##### ► BY MOUTH USING CAPSULES

- Child 5–11 years: 1–2 capsules 3–4 times a day, dose adjusted as necessary
- Child 12–17 years: 1–5 capsules 3–4 times a day, dose adjusted as necessary

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hypophosphataemia · infants · neonates

##### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Neonates and infants Aluminium-containing antacids should not be used because accumulation may lead to increased plasma-aluminium concentrations.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antacids

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Constipation

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid; can cause constipation which can precipitate coma.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** There is a risk of accumulation and aluminium toxicity with antacids containing aluminium salts. Absorption of aluminium from aluminium salts is increased by citrates, which are contained in many effervescent preparations (such as effervescent analgesics).

## MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Capsule

- ▶ **Alu-Cap** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Aluminium hydroxide 475 mg** Alu-Cap 475mg capsules | 120 capsule [P] £13.71 DT = £13.71

## ELECTROLYTES AND MINERALS > CALCIUM

F 592

## Calcium acetate

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### PHOSEX® TABLETS

#### Phosphate binding in renal failure and hyperphosphataemia

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ **Child:** Dose to be adjusted according to requirements of patient, dose to be taken with meals (consult product literature)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium salts

### SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Uncommon** Vomiting

### DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

**PHOSEX® TABLETS** *Phosex®* tablets are taken with meals. Tablets can be broken to aid swallowing, but not chewed (bitter taste).

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** *Phosex®* tablets contain calcium acetate 1 g (equivalent to calcium 250 mg or  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  6.2 mmol).

### PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Calcium salts for kidney disease  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/calcium-salts-kidney-disease-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/calcium-salts-kidney-disease-0)

**PHOSEX® TABLETS** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer *Phosex®* tablets.

## MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet

### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

- ▶ **Phosex** (Pharmacosmos UK Ltd)  
**Calcium acetate 1 gram** Phosex 1g tablets | 180 tablet [PoM] £19.79 DT = £19.79

## PHOSPHATE BINDERS

## Sevelamer

19-Mar-2018

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### RENAGEL®

#### Hyperphosphataemia in patients on haemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years:** Initially 0.8–1.6 g 3 times a day, dose to be given with meals and adjusted according to serum-phosphate concentration

#### RENVELA® 2.4G ORAL POWDER SACHETS

#### Hyperphosphataemia in chronic kidney disease

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ **Child 6–17 years** (body surface area 0.75–1.1 m<sup>2</sup>): Initially 2.4 g daily in 3 divided doses, dose to be taken with meals and adjusted according to serum-phosphate concentration every 2–4 weeks—consult product literature

- ▶ **Child 6–17 years** (body surface area 1.2 m<sup>2</sup> and above): Initially 4.8 g daily in 3 divided doses, dose to be taken with meals and adjusted according to serum-phosphate concentration every 2–4 weeks—consult product literature

### UNLICENSED USE

- RENAGEL®** Not licensed for use in children under 18 years.

### CONTRA-INDICATIONS

- Bowel obstruction

### CAUTIONS

- Gastro-intestinal disorders

### SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Constipation · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · nausea · vomiting
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Skin reactions

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

### BREAST FEEDING

- RENVELA® 2.4G ORAL POWDER SACHETS** Unlikely to be present in milk (however, manufacturer advises avoid).

- RENAGEL®** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

### DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- RENVELA® 2.4G ORAL POWDER SACHETS** Manufacturer advises each sachet should be dispersed in 60 mL water, or mixed with a small amount of cool food (100 g), prior to administration and discarded if unused after 30 minutes.

### PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

- Medicines for Children leaflet: Sevelamer in dialysis  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sevelamer-in-dialysis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sevelamer-in-dialysis)

- RENVELA® 2.4G ORAL POWDER SACHETS** Patients and carers should be advised on how to administer powder for oral suspension.

### NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### RENVELA® 2.4G ORAL POWDER SACHETS

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (February 2018) that sevelamer carbonate (*Renvela®*) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland as second-line management of hyperphosphataemia in paediatric patients (greater than 6 years of age and a Body Surface Area greater than 0.75m<sup>2</sup>) with chronic kidney disease receiving haemodialysis.

## MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

- ▶ **Renvela** (Sanofi)  
**Sevelamer carbonate 2.4 gram** Renvela 2.4g oral powder sachets sugar-free | 60 sachet [PoM] £167.04 DT = £167.04

### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

- ▶ **Renagel** (Sanofi)  
**Sevelamer 800 mg** Renagel 800mg tablets | 180 tablet [PoM] £167.04 DT = £30.52

## 2.4b Hypophosphataemia

### ELECTROLYTES AND MINERALS > PHOSPHATES

#### Phosphate

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Hypophosphataemia | Hypophosphataemic rickets | Osteomalacia**

##### ► BY MOUTH USING EFFERVESCENT TABLETS

► Neonate: 1 mmol/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, dose can be taken as a supplement in breast milk—caution advised as solubility in breast milk is limited to 1.2 mmol in 100 mL if calcium also added, contact pharmacy department for details.

► Child 1 month–4 years: 2–3 mmol/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses, dose to be adjusted as necessary, dose can be taken as a supplement in breast milk—caution advised as solubility in breast milk is limited to 1.2 mmol in 100 mL if calcium also added, contact pharmacy department for details; maximum 48 mmol per day

► Child 5–17 years: 2–3 mmol/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses, dose to be adjusted as necessary; maximum 97 mmol per day

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: 1 mmol/kg daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary.

► Child 1 month–1 year: 0.7 mmol/kg daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary

► Child 2–17 years: 0.4 mmol/kg daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary

##### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Some phosphate injection preparations also contain potassium. For peripheral intravenous administration the concentration of potassium should not usually exceed 40 mmol/litre. The infusion solution should be **thoroughly mixed**. Local policies on avoiding inadvertent use of potassium concentrate should be followed. The potassium content of some phosphate preparations may also limit the *rate* at which they may be administered.

##### ● CAUTIONS

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Cardiac disease • dehydration • diabetes mellitus • sodium and potassium concentrations of preparations

##### **SPECIFIC CAUTIONS**

► With intravenous use Avoid extravasation • severe tissue necrosis

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### **GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Common or very common** Diarrhoea  
► **Frequency not known** Nausea

##### **SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

► With intravenous use Acute kidney injury • hypocalcaemia • hypotension • metastatic calcification • oedema  
► With oral use Abdominal distress

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Diarrhoea is a common side-effect and should prompt a reduction in dosage.

##### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose.

**Monitoring** Monitor closely in renal impairment.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** It is essential to monitor closely plasma concentrations of calcium, phosphate,

potassium, and other electrolytes—excessive doses of phosphates may cause hypocalcaemia and metastatic calcification.

##### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

► With intravenous use Dilute injection with Sodium Chloride 0.9% or 0.45% or Glucose 5% or 10%. Administration rate of phosphate should not exceed 0.05 mmol/kg/hour. In emergencies in intensive care faster rates may be used—seek specialist advice.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** *Phosphate Sandoz*® contains sodium dihydrogen phosphate anhydrous (anhydrous sodium acid phosphate) 1.936 g, sodium bicarbonate 350 mg, potassium bicarbonate 315 mg, equivalent to phosphorus 500 mg (phosphate 16.1 mmol), sodium 468.8 mg (Na<sup>+</sup> 20.4 mmol), potassium 123 mg (K<sup>+</sup> 3.1 mmol); *Polyfusor NA*® contains Na<sup>+</sup> 162 mmol/litre, K<sup>+</sup> 19 mmol/litre, PO<sub>4</sub><sup>3-</sup> 100 mmol/litre; non-proprietary *potassium dihydrogen phosphate injection* (potassium acid phosphate) 13.6% may contain 1 mmol/mL phosphate, 1 mmol/mL potassium.

##### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Phosphate supplements for low phosphate levels [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/phosphate-supplements-low-phosphate-levels](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/phosphate-supplements-low-phosphate-levels)

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: infusion, solution for infusion

##### **Effervescent tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

► **Phosphate Sandoz** (HK Pharma Ltd)

**Sodium dihydrogen phosphate anhydrous 1.936 gram** Phosphate Sandoz effervescent tablets | 100 tablet [P] £19.39

##### **Solution for infusion**

► **Phosphate (Non-proprietary)**

**Potassium dihydrogen phosphate 136 mg per 1 ml** Potassium dihydrogen phosphate 13.6% (potassium 10mmol/10ml) solution for infusion 10ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PcM] £80.25–£92.69 DT = £92.69

##### **Infusion**

► **Phosphate (Non-proprietary)**

**Potassium dihydrogen phosphate 1.295 gram per 1 litre, Disodium hydrogen phosphate anhydrous 5.75 gram per 1 litre** Polyfusor NA phosphates infusion 500ml bottles | 1 bottle [PcM] £5.15

## 2.5 Potassium imbalance

### 2.5a Hyperkalaemia

**Other drugs used for Hyperkalaemia** Calcium gluconate, p. 594 • Salbutamol, p. 156

### ANTIDOTES AND CHELATORS > CATION EXCHANGE RESINS

#### Calcium polystyrene sulfonate

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Hyperkalaemia associated with anuria or severe oliguria, and in dialysis patients**

##### ► BY MOUTH

► Child: 0.5–1 g/kg daily in divided doses; maximum 60 g per day

##### ► BY RECTUM

► Neonate: 0.5–1 g/kg daily, irrigate colon to remove resin after 8–12 hours.

► Child: 0.5–1 g/kg daily, irrigate colon to remove resin after 8–12 hours; maximum 30 g per day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hyperparathyroidism · metastatic carcinoma · multiple myeloma · obstructive bowel disease · reduced gut motility (in neonates) · sarcoidosis
- **CAUTIONS** Impaction of resin with excessive dosage or inadequate dilution
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: polystyrene sulfonate
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Appetite decreased · constipation (discontinue—avoid magnesium-containing laxatives) · diarrhoea · electrolyte imbalance · epigastric discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · gastrointestinal necrosis (in combination with sorbitol) · hypercalcaemia (in dialysed patients and occasionally in those with renal impairment) · increased risk of infection · nausea · vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturers advise use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor for electrolyte disturbances (stop if plasma-potassium concentration below 5 mmol/litre).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - ▶ With rectal use Mix each 1 g of resin with 5 mL of water or 10% glucose.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: enema

#### **Powder**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sucrose

▶ **Calcium Resonium** (Sanofi)

Calcium polystyrene sulfonate 999.34 mg per 1 gram Calcium Resonium powder sugar-free | 300 gram  £82.16

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor for electrolyte disturbances (stop if plasma-potassium concentration below 5 mmol/litre).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - ▶ With rectal use Mix each 1 g of resin with 5 mL of water or 10% glucose.
  - ▶ With oral use Administer dose (powder) in a small amount of water or honey—do not give with fruit juice or squash, which have a high potassium content.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### **Powder**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

▶ **Resonium A** (Sanofi)

Sodium polystyrene sulfonate 999.34 mg per 1 gram Resonium A powder sugar-free | 454 gram  £81.11

## 2.5b Hypokalaemia

### ELECTROLYTES AND MINERALS > POTASSIUM

## Potassium bicarbonate with potassium acid tartrate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Hyperchloraemic acidosis associated with potassium deficiency (as in some renal tubular and gastrointestinal disorders)**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hypochloraemia · plasma-potassium concentration above 5 mmol/litre
- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac disease
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain · diarrhoea · flatulence · nausea · vomiting
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment. **Monitoring** Close monitoring required in renal impairment—high risk of hyperkalaemia.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** To be dissolved in water before administration.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** These tablets do not contain chloride.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS


There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Effervescent tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13, 21

▶ **Potassium bicarbonate with potassium acid tartrate (Non-proprietary)**

Potassium acid tartrate 300 mg, Potassium bicarbonate

500 mg Potassium (potassium 6.5mmol) effervescent tablets BPC 1968 | 56 tablet  £77.77-£93.33 DT = £88.15

## Potassium chloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prevention of hypokalaemia (patients with normal diet)**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
- ▶ Child: 1–2 mmol/kg daily; Usual maximum 50 mmol

#### **Electrolyte imbalance**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: 1–2 mmol/kg daily, dose dependent on deficit or the daily maintenance requirements.

continued →

## Sodium polystyrene sulfonate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Hyperkalaemia associated with anuria or severe oliguria, and in dialysis patients**

- ▶ BY MOUTH
  - ▶ Child: 0.5–1 g/kg daily in divided doses; maximum 60 g per day
- ▶ BY RECTUM
  - ▶ Neonate: 0.5–1 g/kg daily, irrigate colon to remove resin after 8–12 hours.
  - ▶ Child: 0.5–1 g/kg daily, irrigate colon to remove resin after 8–12 hours; maximum 30 g per day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Obstructive bowel disease · reduced gut motility (in neonates)
- **CAUTIONS** Congestive heart failure · hypertension · impaction of resin with excessive dosage or inadequate dilution · oedema
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: polystyrene sulfonate
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Appetite decreased · bezoar · constipation (discontinue—avoid magnesium-containing laxatives) · diarrhoea · electrolyte imbalance · epigastric discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · increased risk of infection · nausea · necrosis (in combination with sorbitol) · vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturers advise use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.



- ▶ Child: 1–2 mmol/kg daily, dose dependent on deficit or the daily maintenance requirements

#### Potassium depletion

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 0.5–1 mmol/kg twice daily, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses, dose to be adjusted according to plasma-potassium concentration.
- ▶ Child: 0.5–1 mmol/kg twice daily, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses, dose to be adjusted according to plasma-potassium concentration

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### SAFE PRACTICE

Potassium overdose can be fatal. Ready-mixed infusion solutions containing potassium should be used. Exceptionally, if potassium chloride concentrate is used for preparing an infusion, the infusion solution should be **thoroughly mixed**. Local policies on avoiding inadvertent use of potassium chloride concentrate should be followed.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Plasma-potassium concentration above 5 mmol/litre
- **CAUTIONS**
  - ▶ With intravenous use seek specialist advice in very severe potassium depletion or difficult cases
  - ▶ With oral use Cardiac disease · hiatus hernia (*with modified-release preparations*) · history of peptic ulcer (*with modified-release preparations*) · intestinal stricture (*with modified-release preparations*)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: potassium chloride
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS** Hyperkalaemia

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

  - ▶ With oral use Abdominal cramps · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal disorders · nausea · vomiting
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment. **Dose adjustments** Smaller doses must be used in the prevention of hypokalaemia, to reduce the risk of hyperkalaemia. **Monitoring** Close monitoring required in renal impairment—high risk of hyperkalaemia.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Regular monitoring of plasma-potassium concentration is essential in those taking potassium supplements.
  - ▶ With intravenous use ECG monitoring should be performed in difficult cases.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - ▶ With oral use in neonates Potassium chloride solutions suitable for use by mouth in neonates are available from 'special order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies; they should be used with care because they are hypertonic and can damage the gastric mucosa.
  - ▶ With oral use Potassium salts are preferably given as a liquid (or effervescent) preparation, rather than modified-release tablets; they should be given as the chloride (the use of effervescent potassium tablets BPC 1968 should be restricted to *hyperchloraemic* states).
  - ▶ With intravenous use Potassium chloride concentrate must be diluted with **not less** than 50 times its volume of sodium chloride intravenous infusion 0.9% or other suitable diluent and **mixed well**. Ready-mixed infusion solutions should be used when possible. For *peripheral intravenous infusion*, the concentration of potassium should not usually exceed 40 mmol/L. Potassium infusions should be given slowly over at least 2–3 hours and at a rate not exceeding 0.2 mmol/kg/hour with specialist advice and ECG monitoring in difficult cases. Higher concentrations of

potassium chloride or faster infusion rates may be given in very severe depletion, but require specialist advice.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Kay-Cee-L<sup>®</sup> contains 1 mmol/mL each of K<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup>. Potassium Tablets Do not confuse Effervescent Potassium Tablets BPC 1968 with effervescent potassium chloride tablets. Effervescent Potassium Tablets BPC 1968 do not contain chloride ions and their use should be restricted to hyperchloraemic states.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient or carers should be given advice on how to administer potassium chloride modified-release tablets. Salt substitutes A number of salt substitutes which contain significant amounts of potassium chloride are readily available as health food products (e.g. *LoSalt<sup>®</sup>* and *Ruthmol<sup>®</sup>*). These should not be used by patients with renal failure as potassium intoxication may result.
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Modified-release tablets are less suitable for prescribing. Modified-release preparations should be avoided unless effervescent tablets or liquid preparations inappropriate.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: modified-release tablet, oral solution, solution for injection, infusion, solution for infusion

##### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25, 27

##### ▶ Potassium chloride (Non-proprietary)

**Potassium chloride 600 mg** Kaleorid LP 600mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] [X]

Duro-K 600mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] [X]

##### Solution for infusion

##### ▶ Potassium chloride (Non-proprietary)

**Potassium chloride 150 mg per 1 ml** Potassium chloride 15% (potassium 20mmol/10ml) solution for infusion 10ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £5.00 | 20 ampoule [PoM] £6.50–£10.70

Potassium chloride 15% (potassium 20mmol/10ml) solution for infusion 10ml Mini-Plasco ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £10.70

**Potassium chloride 200 mg per 1 ml** Potassium chloride 20% (potassium 13.3mmol/5ml) solution for infusion 5ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £3.84–£4.00

Potassium chloride 20% (potassium 27mmol/10ml) solution for infusion 10ml ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £121.25

##### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

##### ▶ Kay-Cee-L (Geistlich Sons Ltd)

**Potassium chloride 75 mg per 1 ml** Kay-Cee-L syrup sugar-free | 500 ml [P] £8.43

## 3 Metabolic disorders

### Metabolic disorders

#### Use of medicines in metabolic disorders

Metabolic disorders should be managed under the guidance of a specialist. As many preparations are unlicensed and may be difficult to obtain, arrangements for continued prescribing and supply should be made in primary care.

General advice on the use of medicines in metabolic disorders can be obtained from:

**Alder Hey Children's Hospital, Medicines Information Centre**

(0151) 252 5381

and

**Great Ormond Street Hospital for Children, pharmacy**

(020) 7405 9200

## Urea cycle disorders

Sodium benzoate p. 614 and sodium phenylbutyrate p. 615 are used in the management of urea cycle disorders. Both, either singly or in combination, are indicated as adjunctive therapy in all patients with neonatal-onset disease and in those with late-onset disease who have a history of hyperammonaemic encephalopathy. Sodium benzoate is also used in non-ketotic hyperglycaemia.

The long-term management of urea cycle disorders includes oral maintenance treatment with sodium benzoate and sodium phenylbutyrate combined with a low protein diet and other drugs such as arginine p. 613 or citrulline p. 614, depending on the specific disorder.

## Emergency management

For further information on the emergency management of urea cycle disorders consult the British Inherited Metabolic Disease Group (BIMDG) website at: [www.bimdg.org.uk](http://www.bimdg.org.uk).

# 3.1 Acute porphyrias

## Acute porphyrias

01-Oct-2017

### Overview

The acute porphyrias (acute intermittent porphyria, variegate porphyria, hereditary coproporphyria, and 5-aminolaevulinic acid dehydratase deficiency porphyria) are hereditary disorders of haem biosynthesis; they have a prevalence of about 1 in 75 000 of the population.

Great care must be taken when prescribing for patients with acute porphyria, since certain drugs can induce acute porphyric crises. Since acute porphyrias are hereditary, relatives of affected individuals should be screened and advised about the potential danger of certain drugs.

**EvGr** Where there is no safe alternative, drug treatment for serious or life-threatening conditions should not be withheld from patients with acute porphyria. Where possible, the clinical situation should be discussed with a porphyria specialist for advice on how to proceed and monitor the patient. In the UK clinical advice can be obtained from the National Acute Porphyria Service or from the UK Porphyria Medicines Information Service (UKPMIS)—see details below. **⚠**

Haem arginate p. 604 is administered by short intravenous infusion as haem replacement in moderate, severe, or unremitting acute porphyria crises.

In the United Kingdom the National Acute Porphyria Service (NAPS) provides clinical support and treatment with haem arginate from two centres (University Hospital of Wales and King's College Hospital). To access the service telephone (029) 2074 7747 and ask for the Acute Porphyria Service.

### Drugs unsafe for use in acute porphyrias

**EvGr** The following list contains drugs on the UK market that have been classified as 'unsafe' in porphyria because they have been shown to be porphyrinogenic in animals or in vitro, or have been associated with acute attacks in patients. Absence of a drug from the following lists does not necessarily imply that the drug is safe. For many drugs no information about porphyria is available. **⚠**

An up-to-date list of drugs considered safe in acute porphyrias is available from the UKPMIS, see *Useful resources* below.

Further information may be obtained from: [porphyria.eu/](http://porphyria.eu/) and also from:

**The UK Porphyria Medicines Information Service (UKPMIS)**

University Hospital of Wales

CF14 4XW

Cardiff

(029) 2074 2979/3877

Quite modest changes in chemical structure can lead to changes in porphyrinogenicity but where possible general statements have been made about groups of drugs; these should be checked first.

### Unsafe Drug Groups (check first)

- Anabolic steroids
- Antidepressants, MAOIs (contact UKPMIS for advice)
- Antidepressants, Tricyclic and related (contact UKPMIS for advice)
- Barbiturates (includes primidone and thiopental)
- Contraceptives, hormonal (for detailed advice contact UKPMIS or a porphyria specialist)
- Hormone replacement therapy (for detailed advice contact UKPMIS or a porphyria specialist)
- Imidazole antifungals (applies to oral and intravenous use; topical antifungals are thought to be safe due to low systemic exposure)
- Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (contact UKPMIS for advice)
- Progestogens (for detailed advice contact UKPMIS or a porphyria specialist)
- Protease inhibitors (contact UKPMIS for advice)
- Sulfonamides (includes co-trimoxazole and sulfasalazine)
- Sulfonyleureas (glipizide and glimepiride are thought to be safe)
- Taxanes (contact UKPMIS for advice)
- Triazole antifungals (applies to oral and intravenous use; topical antifungals are thought to be safe due to low systemic exposure)

### Unsafe Drugs (check groups above first)

- Aceclofenac
- Alcohol
- Amiodarone
- Aprepitant
- Artemether with lumefantrine
- Bexarotene
- Bosentan
- Busulfan
- Carbamazepine
- Chloral hydrate (although evidence of hazard is uncertain, manufacturer advises avoid)
- Chloramphenicol
- Chloroform (small amounts in medicines probably safe)
- Clemastine
- Clindamycin
- Cocaine
- Danazol
- Dapsone
- Diltiazem
- Disopyramide
- Disulfiram
- Ergometrine
- Ergotamine
- Erythromycin
- Etamsylate
- Ethosuximide
- Etomidate
- Flutamide
- Fosaprepitant
- Fosphenytoin
- Griseofulvin
- Hydralazine
- Ifosfamide
- Indapamide
- Isometheptene mucate
- Isoniazid (safety uncertain, contact UKPMIS for advice)
- Ketamine

- Mefenamic acid (safety uncertain, contact UKPMIS for advice)
- Meprobamate
- Methyl dopa
- Metolazone
- Metyrapone
- Mifepristone
- Minoxidil (safety uncertain, contact UKPMIS for advice)
- Mitotane
- Nalidixic acid
- Nitrazepam
- Nitrofurantoin
- Orphenadrine
- Oxcarbazepine
- Oxybutynin
- Pentazocine
- Pentoxifylline
- Pergolide
- Phenoxymethamine
- Phenytoin
- Pivmecillinam
- Pizotifen
- Porfimer
- Raloxifene
- Rifabutin (safety uncertain, contact UKPMIS for advice)
- Rifampicin
- Riluzole
- Risperidone
- Spironolactone
- Sulfinpyrazone
- Tamoxifen
- Temoporfin
- Thiotepa
- Tiagabine
- Tibolone
- Topiramate
- Toremifene
- Trimethoprim
- Valproate
- Verapamil
- Xipamide

### Useful Resources

Acute porphyrias safe list. UK Porphyria Medicines Information Service. 2017.

[www.wmic.wales.nhs.uk/specialist-services/drugs-in-porphyria](http://www.wmic.wales.nhs.uk/specialist-services/drugs-in-porphyria)

## BLOOD AND RELATED PRODUCTS > HAEM DERIVATIVES

### Haem arginate

(Human hemin)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute porphyrias | Acute intermittent porphyria | Porphyria variegata | Hereditary coproporphyria**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: Initially 3 mg/kg once daily for 4 days, if response inadequate, repeat 4-day course with close biochemical monitoring; maximum 250 mg per day

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- Rare or very rare Fever
- Frequency not known Headache · skin discolouration · venous thrombosis

• **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential.

• **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available.

• **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Administer over at least 30 minutes through a filter via large antebraachial or central vein; dilute requisite dose in 100 mL Sodium

Chloride 0.9% in glass bottle; administer within 1 hour after dilution; max. concentration 2.5 mg/mL.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for infusion

► **Normosang** (Orphan Europe (UK) Ltd)

**Haem arginate 25 mg per 1 mL** Normosang 250mg/10ml solution for infusion ampoules | 4 ampoule [PoM] £1,737.00

## 3.2 Carnitine deficiency

### AMINO ACIDS AND DERIVATIVES

#### Levocarnitine

(Carnitine)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Primary carnitine deficiency due to inborn errors of metabolism**

► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Up to 200 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses.

- Child: Up to 200 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses; maximum 3 g per day

► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: Initially 100 mg/kg, to be administered over 30 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 4 mg/kg/hour.

- Child: Initially 100 mg/kg, to be administered over 30 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 4 mg/kg/hour

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Up to 100 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses, to be administered over 2–3 minutes.

- Child: Up to 100 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses, to be administered over 2–3 minutes

#### Secondary carnitine deficiency in haemodialysis patients

► INITIALLY BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: 20 mg/kg, to be administered over 2–3 minutes, after each dialysis session, dosage adjusted according to plasma-carnitine concentration, then (by mouth) maintenance 1 g daily, administered if benefit is gained from first intravenous course

#### Organic acidurias

► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Up to 200 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses.

- Child: Up to 200 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses; maximum 3 g per day

► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: Initially 100 mg/kg, to be administered over 30 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 4 mg/kg/hour.

- Child: Initially 100 mg/kg, to be administered over 30 minutes, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 4 mg/kg/hour

► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Up to 100 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses, to be administered over 2–3 minutes.

- Child: Up to 100 mg/kg daily in 2–4 divided doses, to be administered over 2–3 minutes

• **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use by intravenous infusion. Tablets, chewable tablets, and oral liquid (10%) not licensed in children under 12 years. Paediatric oral

solution (30%) not licensed in children over 12 years. Not licensed for use in organic acidemias.

● **CAUTIONS** Diabetes mellitus

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Abdominal cramps · diarrhoea · nausea · skin odour abnormal · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Side-effects may be dose-related—monitor tolerance during first week and after any dose increase.

- **PREGNANCY** Appropriate to use; no evidence of teratogenicity in *animal* studies.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Accumulation of metabolites may occur with chronic oral administration in severe impairment.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ Monitoring of free and acyl carnitine in blood and urine recommended.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute injection with Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Glucose 5% or 10%.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

- ▶ When used for Organic acidemias Levocarnitine is used in the treatment of some organic acidemias; however, use in fatty acid oxidation is controversial.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Carnitine for metabolic disorders [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/carnitine-metabolic-disorders-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/carnitine-metabolic-disorders-0)

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule

**Solution for injection**

- ▶ **Carnitor** (Logixx Pharma Solutions Ltd)  
L-Carnitine 200 mg per 1 ml Carnitor 1g/5ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £59.50

**Oral solution**

- ▶ **Levocarnitine (Non-proprietary)**  
L-Carnitine 300 mg per 1 ml Levocarnitine 1.5g/5ml (30%) oral solution paediatric | 20 ml [PoM] £71.40 DT = £71.40 | 40 ml [PoM] £69.80

- ▶ **Carnitor** (Logixx Pharma Solutions Ltd)  
L-Carnitine 100 mg per 1 ml Carnitor oral single dose 1g solution sugar-free | 10 unit dose [PoM] £35.00

**Chewable tablet**

- ▶ **Carnitor** (Logixx Pharma Solutions Ltd)  
L-Carnitine 1 gram Carnitor 1g chewable tablets | 10 tablet [PoM] £35.00

dose, increased gradually over 4–6 weeks to avoid intolerance, maintenance 1.3 g/m<sup>2</sup> daily in 4 divided doses

- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): Initially one-sixth to one-quarter of the expected maintenance dose, increased gradually over 4–6 weeks to avoid intolerance, maintenance 1.3 g/m<sup>2</sup> daily in 4 divided doses
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially one-sixth to one-quarter of the expected maintenance dose, increased gradually over 4–6 weeks to avoid intolerance, maintenance 2 g daily in 4 divided doses

**Corneal cystine crystal deposits in patients with cystinosis (specialist use only)**

- ▶ **TO THE EYE**
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: Apply 1 drop 4 times a day, to be applied to both eyes (minimum 4 hours between doses); dose may be reduced according to response (minimum daily dose 1 drop in each eye)

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- ▶ With oral use
- ▶ 1.3 g/m<sup>2</sup> is approximately equivalent to 50 mg/kg.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

**SAFE PRACTICE**

Mercaptamine has been confused with mercaptopurine; care must be taken to ensure the correct drug is prescribed and dispensed.

● **CAUTIONS**

- ▶ When used by eye Contact lens wearers
- ▶ With oral use Dose of phosphate supplement may need to be adjusted if transferring from phosphocysteamine to mercaptamine

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

● **Common or very common**

- ▶ When used by eye Dry eye · eye discomfort · eye erythema · excessive tearing · vision blurred
- ▶ With oral use Appetite decreased · asthenia · breath odour · diarrhoea · drowsiness · encephalopathy · fever · gastroenteritis · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting

● **Uncommon**

- ▶ With oral use Compression fracture · gastrointestinal ulcer · hair colour changes · hallucination · joint hyperextension · leg pain · leucopenia · musculoskeletal disorders · nephrotic syndrome · nervousness · osteopenia · seizure

● **Frequency not known**

- ▶ With oral use Depression · intracranial pressure increased · papilloedema

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if history of hypersensitivity to penicillamine.

● **PREGNANCY**

- ▶ With oral use Manufacturer advises avoid—teratogenic and toxic in *animal* studies.

● **BREAST FEEDING**

- ▶ With oral use Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ With oral use Leucocyte-cystine concentration and haematological monitoring required—consult product literature.
- ▶ All patients receiving mercaptamine should be registered (contact local specialist centre for details).

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- ▶ With oral use For children under 6 years at risk of aspiration, capsules can be opened and contents sprinkled on food (at a temperature suitable for eating); avoid adding to acidic drinks (e.g. orange juice).

## 3.3 Cystinosis

### 3.3a Nephropathic cystinosis

#### AMINO ACIDS AND DERIVATIVES

### Mercaptamine

(Cysteamine)

21-Nov-2017

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Nephropathic cystinosis (specialist use only)**

▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ **Neonate:** Initially one-sixth to one-quarter of the expected maintenance dose, increased gradually over 4–6 weeks to avoid intolerance, maintenance 1.3 g/m<sup>2</sup> daily in 4 divided doses.

- ▶ **Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 50 kg):** Initially one-sixth to one-quarter of the expected maintenance

### ● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

Mercaptamine has a very unpleasant taste and smell, which can affect compliance.

### ● **HANDLING AND STORAGE**

When used by eye Manufacturer advises store in a refrigerator (2–8°C)—after opening store at room temperature up to 25°C for up to 7 days; protect from light.

### ● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Mercaptamine eye drops for ocular symptoms of cystinosis [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mercaptamine-eye-drops-ocular-symptoms-cystinosis](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/mercaptamine-eye-drops-ocular-symptoms-cystinosis)

### ● **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

► With oral use The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (November 2017) that mercaptamine (*Procsybi*®) is **not** recommended for use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of proven nephropathic cystinosis.

### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops

#### Gastro-resistant capsule

► **Procsybi** (Chiesi Ltd)

Mercaptamine (as Mercaptamine bitartrate) 25 mg Procsybi 25mg gastro-resistant capsules | 60 capsule [PoM](#) £335.97

Mercaptamine (as Mercaptamine bitartrate) 75 mg Procsybi 75mg gastro-resistant capsules | 250 capsule [PoM](#) £4,199.65

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

► **Cystadrops** (Orphan Europe (UK) Ltd)

Mercaptamine (as Mercaptamine hydrochloride) 3.8 mg per 1 ml Cystadrops 3.8mg/ml eye drops | 5 ml [PoM](#) £865.00

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Cystagon** (Orphan Europe (UK) Ltd)

Mercaptamine (as Mercaptamine bitartrate) 50 mg Cystagon 50mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM](#) £70.00

Mercaptamine (as Mercaptamine bitartrate) 150 mg Cystagon 150mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM](#) £190.00

- **Uncommon** Altered smell sensation · angioedema · hypersensitivity · sensation of pressure
- **Frequency not known** Heart failure · hyperhidrosis · hypotension · myocardial ischaemia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Infusion-related reactions; manage by interrupting the infusion, or minimise by pre-treatment with an antihistamine or corticosteroid—consult product literature.

● **PREGNANCY** Use with caution.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution—no information available.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Administration for *intravenous infusion*, dilute requisite dose with 100 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over 40 minutes using an in-line filter; use within 3 hours of dilution.

### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for infusion

► **Replagal** (Shire Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Agalsidase alfa 1 mg per 1 mL Replagal 3.5mg/3.5ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM](#) £1,049.94

## Agalsidase beta

● **DRUG ACTION** Agalsidase beta, an enzyme produced by recombinant DNA technology are licensed for long-term enzyme replacement therapy in Fabry's disease (a lysosomal storage disorder caused by deficiency of alpha-galactosidase A).

### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

#### Fabry's disease (specialist use only)

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child 8–17 years: 1 mg/kg every 2 weeks

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: agalsidase

### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Angioedema · arrhythmias · arthralgia · asthenia · chest discomfort · chills · cough · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dyspnoea · eye disorders · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hypertension · hyperthermia · hypotension · increased risk of infection · muscle complaints · musculoskeletal stiffness · nasal complaints · nausea · oedema · oral hypoaesthesia · pain · pallor · palpitations · respiratory disorders · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · syncope · temperature sensation altered · throat complaints · tinnitus · vasodilation · vertigo · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Dysphagia · ear discomfort · eye pruritus · influenza like illness · malaise · peripheral coldness · tremor
- **Frequency not known** Anaphylactoid reaction · hypersensitivity vasculitis · hypoxia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Infusion-related reactions; manage by slowing the infusion rate, or minimise by pre-treatment with an antihistamine, antipyretic, or corticosteroid—consult product literature.

● **PREGNANCY** Use with caution.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution—no information available.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, given intermittently in Sodium chloride 0.9%, reconstitute initially with Water for Injections (5 mg in 1.1 mL, 35 mg in 7.2 mL) to produce a solution containing 5 mg/mL. Dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9% (for doses less than 35 mg dilute with at least 50 mL; doses 35–70 mg dilute with at least 100 mL; doses 70–100 mg dilute with at least 250 mL; doses greater than 100 mg dilute with 500 mL) and give through an in-line low protein-binding

## 3.4 Fabry's disease

### ENZYMES

## Agalsidase alfa

● **DRUG ACTION** Agalsidase alfa, an enzyme produced by recombinant DNA technology are licensed for long-term enzyme replacement therapy in Fabry's disease (a lysosomal storage disorder caused by deficiency of alpha-galactosidase A).

### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

#### Fabry's disease (specialist use only)

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Child 7–17 years: 200 micrograms/kg every 2 weeks

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: agalsidase

### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · asthenia · chest discomfort · chills · cough · diarrhoea · dizziness · dyspnoea · excessive tearing · fever · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hearing impairment · hoarseness · hypersomnia · hypertension · increased risk of infection · influenza like illness · joint disorders · malaise · musculoskeletal discomfort · myalgia · nausea · pain · palpitations · peripheral oedema · peripheral swelling · rhinorrhoea · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · taste altered · temperature sensation altered · throat complaints · tremor · vomiting



0.2 micron filter at an initial rate of no more than 15 mg/hour; for subsequent infusions, infusion rate may be increased gradually once tolerance has been established.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder for solution for infusion**

► **Fabrazyme** (Genzyme Therapeutics Ltd)

**Agalsidase beta 5 mg** Fabrazyme 5mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £315.08

**Agalsidase beta 35 mg** Fabrazyme 35mg powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £2,196.59

### ENZYME STABILISERS

## Migalastat

24-Nov-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Migalastat is a pharmacological chaperone that binds to the active sites of certain mutant forms of alpha-galactosidase A, thereby stabilising these mutant forms in the endoplasmic reticulum, and facilitating normal trafficking to lysosomes.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Fabry's disease (specialist use only)**

► BY MOUTH

- Child 16–17 years: 123 mg once daily on alternate days, take at the same time of day, at least 2 hours before or after food

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Constipation · defaecation urgency · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · dry mouth · dyspnoea · epistaxis · fatigue · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · muscle complaints · nausea · pain in extremity · palpitations · proteinuria · sensation abnormal · skin reactions · torticollis · vertigo

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—toxicity in animal studies.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Manufacturer advises monitor renal function, echocardiographic parameters and biochemical markers every 6 months.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Missed doses** Manufacturer advises if a dose is missed entirely for the day, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken on the normal day and at the normal time (not to be taken on 2 consecutive days).

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### **NICE decisions**

- **Migalastat for treating Fabry disease (February 2017)**

NICE HST4

Migalastat is recommended, within its marketing authorisation, as an option for treating Fabry disease in people over 16 years of age with an amenable mutation, only if migalastat is provided with the discount agreed in the patient access scheme, and only if enzyme replacement therapy would otherwise be offered.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/hst4](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/hst4)

##### **Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* (November 2016) has advised that migalastat (*Galafold*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for long-term treatment of adults and adolescents aged 16 years and older with a confirmed diagnosis of Fabry disease (α-galactosidase A deficiency) and who have an amenable mutation—consult SMC advice for full details of restriction.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Capsule**

► **Galafold** (Amicus Therapeutics UK Ltd) ▼

**Migalastat (as Migalastat hydrochloride) 123 mg** Galafold 123mg capsules | 14 capsule [PoM] £16,153.85

## 3.5 Gaucher's disease

### ENZYMES

## Imiglucerase

- **DRUG ACTION** Imiglucerase is an enzyme produced by recombinant DNA technology that is administered as enzyme replacement therapy for non-neurological manifestations of type I or type III Gaucher's disease, a familial disorder affecting principally the liver, spleen, bone marrow, and lymph nodes.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Gaucher's disease type I (specialist use only)**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: Initially 60 units/kg every 2 weeks, adjusted according to response, doses as low as 30 units/kg once every 2 weeks may be appropriate.

- Child: Initially 60 units/kg every 2 weeks, adjusted according to response, doses as low as 30 units/kg once every 2 weeks may be appropriate

##### **Gaucher's disease type III (specialist use only)**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: Initially 60–120 units/kg every 2 weeks, adjusted according to response.

- Child: Initially 60–120 units/kg every 2 weeks, adjusted according to response

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Angioedema · cough · dyspnoea · hypersensitivity · skin reactions
- **Uncommon** Abdominal cramps · arthralgia · back pain · chest discomfort · chills · cyanosis · diarrhoea · dizziness · fatigue · fever · flushing · headache · hypotension · nausea · paraesthesia · tachycardia · vomiting

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use with caution—limited information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Monitor for immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibodies to imiglucerase.
- When stabilised, monitor all parameters and response to treatment at intervals of 6–12 months.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion* (Cerezyme®), give intermittently in Sodium chloride 0.9%; initially reconstitute with water for injections (200 units in 5.1 mL, 400 units in 10.2 mL) to give 40 units/mL solution; dilute requisite dose with infusion fluid to a final volume of 100–200 mL and give initial dose at a rate not exceeding 0.5 units/kg/minute, subsequent doses to be given at a rate not exceeding 1 unit/kg/minute; administer within 3 hours after reconstitution.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder for solution for infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Cerezyme** (Genzyme Therapeutics Ltd)

**Imiglucerase 400 unit** Cerezyme 400unit powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,071.29

## Velaglucerase alfa

- **DRUG ACTION** Velaglucerase alfa is an enzyme produced by recombinant DNA technology that is administered as enzyme replacement therapy for the treatment of type I Gaucher's disease.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Type I Gaucher's disease (specialist use only)

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 4–17 years: Initially 60 units/kg every 2 weeks; adjusted according to response to 15–60 units/kg every 2 weeks

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Arthralgia · asthenia · chest discomfort · dizziness · dyspnoea · fever · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hypersensitivity · hypertension · hypotension · infusion related reaction · nausea · pain · skin reactions · tachycardia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Infusion-related reactions are very common; manage by slowing the infusion rate, or interrupting the infusion, or minimise by pre-treatment with an antihistamine, antipyretic, or corticosteroid—consult product literature.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use with caution—limited information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises use with caution—no information available.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibody concentration in severe infusion-related reactions or if there is a lack or loss of effect with velaglucerase alfa.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, reconstitute each 400-unit vial with 4.3 mL water for injections; dilute requisite dose in 100 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over 60 minutes through a 0.22 micron filter; start infusion within 24 hours of reconstitution.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder for solution for infusion**

**ELECTROLYTES:** May contain Sodium

##### ► **VPRIV** (Shire Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Velaglucerase alfa 400 unit** VPRIV 400units powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial **[PoM]** £1,410.20

## 3.6 Homocystinuria

### METHYL DONORS

## Betaine

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Adjunctive treatment of homocystinuria involving deficiencies or defects in cystathionine beta-synthase, 5,10-methylene-tetrahydrofolate reductase, or cobalamin cofactor metabolism (specialist use only)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Initially 50 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 75 mg/kg), adjusted according to response; maximum 150 mg/kg per day.
- Child 1 month–9 years: Initially 50 mg/kg twice daily (max. per dose 75 mg/kg), adjusted according to response; maximum 150 mg/kg per day
- Child 10–17 years: 3 g twice daily (max. per dose 10 g), adjusted according to response; maximum 20 g per day

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Uncommon** Abdominal discomfort · agitation · alopecia · appetite decreased · brain oedema · diarrhoea · glossitis · irritability · nausea · skin reactions · urinary incontinence · vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—limited information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor plasma-methionine concentration before and during treatment—interrupt treatment if symptoms of cerebral oedema occur.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Powder should be mixed with water, juice, milk, formula, or food until completely dissolved and taken immediately; measuring spoons are provided to measure 1 g, 150 mg, and 100 mg of *Cystadane*® powder.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Betaine should be used in conjunction with dietary restrictions and may be given with supplements of Vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, pyridoxine, and folate under specialist advice.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**  
**Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**  
The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (July 2010) that betaine anhydrous (*Cystadane*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the adjunctive treatment of homocystinuria involving deficiencies or defects in cystathionine beta-synthase, 5,10-methylene-tetrahydrofolate reductase, or cobalamin cofactor metabolism in patients who are not responsive to pyridoxine treatment.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, oral solution

#### **Powder**

##### ► **Cystadane** (Orphan Europe (UK) Ltd)

**Betaine 1 gram per 1 gram** Cystadane oral powder | 180 gram **[PoM]** £347.00

## 3.7 Hypophosphatasia

### ENZYMES

## Asfotase alfa

04-Dec-17

- **DRUG ACTION** Asfotase alfa is a human recombinant tissue-nonspecific alkaline phosphatase that promotes mineralisation of the skeleton.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Paediatric-onset hypophosphatasia (initiated by a specialist)**

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: 2 mg/kg 3 times a week, alternatively 1 mg/kg 6 times a week, dosing frequency depends on body-weight—consult product literature for further information.
- Child: 2 mg/kg 3 times a week, alternatively 1 mg/kg 6 times a week, dosing frequency depends on body-weight—consult product literature for further information

- **CAUTIONS** Hypersensitivity reactions

#### **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- **Hypersensitivity reactions** Reactions, including signs and symptoms consistent with anaphylaxis, have occurred within minutes of administration and can occur in patients on treatment for more than one year; if these reactions

occur, manufacturer advises immediate discontinuation of treatment and initiation of appropriate medical treatment. For information on re-administration, consult product literature.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Bruising tendency · chills · cutis laxa · fever · headache · hypersensitivity · irritability · lipohypertrophy · myalgia · nausea · oral hypoesthesia · pain · skin reactions · vasodilation

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Injection-site reactions including hypertrophy, induration, skin discolouration, and cellulitis may occur, particularly in patients receiving treatment 6 times a week. Manufacturer advises rotation of injection sites to manage these reactions; interrupt treatment if severe reactions occur and administer appropriate medical therapy.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Manufacturer advises monitor serum parathyroid hormone and calcium concentrations—supplements of calcium and oral vitamin D may be required.
- ▶ Manufacturer advises periodic ophthalmological examination and renal ultrasounds.
- ▶ Manufacturer advises monitor for increased intracranial pressure (including fundoscopy for signs of papilloedema) periodically in patients below 5 years of age—prompt intervention required if increased intracranial pressure develops.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises max. 1 mL per injection site; administer multiple injections if more than 1 mL is required—consult product literature.

- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Manufacturer advises store in a refrigerator (2–8 °C).

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Injection guides The manufacturer has produced injection guides for patients and carers to support training given by health care professionals.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- ▶ **Asfotase alfa for treating paediatric-onset hypophosphatasia (August 2017)** NICE HST6

Asfotase alfa is recommended as an option for treating paediatric-onset hypophosphatasia only:

- for people who meet the criteria for treatment within the managed access arrangement (see section 4.18 of the guidance), **and**
- for the duration of this arrangement and in line with the other conditions it specifies, **and**
- when the manufacturer provides asfotase alfa with the confidential commercial terms agreed with NHS England.

Patients whose treatment was started within the NHS before this guidance was published should have the option to continue treatment, without change to their funding arrangements, until they and their NHS clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/HST6](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/HST6)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Strensiq** (Alexion Pharma UK Ltd) ▼

**Asfotase alfa 40 mg per 1 mL** Strensiq 18mg/0.45mL solution for injection vials | 12 vial [PoM] £12,700.80 (Hospital only)  
Strensiq 28mg/0.7mL solution for injection vials | 12 vial [PoM] £19,756.80 (Hospital only)

Strensiq 40mg/1mL solution for injection vials | 12 vial [PoM]

£28,224.00 (Hospital only)

**Asfotase alfa 100 mg per 1 mL** Strensiq 80mg/0.8mL solution for injection vials | 12 vial [PoM] £56,448.00 (Hospital only)

## 3.8 Mitochondrial disorders

### CO-ENZYMES

#### Ubidecarenone

(Ubiquinone; Co-enzyme Q10)

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

###### Mitochondrial disorders

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate:** Initially 5 mg 1–2 times a day, adjusted according to response, dose too be taken with food, increased if necessary up to 200 mg daily.

- ▶ **Child:** Initially 5 mg 1–2 times a day, adjusted according to response, dose to be taken with food, increased if necessary up to 300 mg daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed.

- **CAUTIONS** May reduce insulin requirement in diabetes mellitus

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · dyspepsia · nausea
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Agitation · dizziness · headache · irritability

##### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose in moderate and severe impairment.

##### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Ubidecarenone for mitochondrial disease [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ubidecarenone-for-mitochondrial-disease](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ubidecarenone-for-mitochondrial-disease)

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution, oral drops


###### Tablet

- ▶ **Ubidecarenone (Non-proprietary)**

**Ubidecarenone 30 mg** Higher Nature Co-enzyme Q10 30mg tablets | 30 tablet £6.90 | 90 tablet £19.21


###### Chewable tablet

- ▶ **Ubidecarenone (Non-proprietary)**

**Ubidecarenone 25 mg** Coenzyme Q10 25mg chewable tablets sugar-free | 250 tablet [PoM] 

###### Capsule

- ▶ **Ubidecarenone (Non-proprietary)**

**Ubidecarenone 30 mg** Hunza Health Co-enzyme Q10 30mg capsules | 30 capsule 

- ▶ **BioActive Q10 Uniquinol** (Pharma Nord (UK) Ltd)

**Ubidecarenone 30 mg** BioActive Q10 Uniquinol 30mg capsules | 60 capsule £11.06 | 150 capsule £22.11

**Ubidecarenone 100 mg** BioActive Q10 Uniquinol 100mg capsules | 60 capsule £29.23 | 150 capsule £53.14

- ▶ **Super Bio-Quinone** (Pharma Nord (UK) Ltd)

**Ubidecarenone 30 mg** Super Bio-Quinone Q10 30mg capsules | 30 capsule £4.96 | 60 capsule £9.73 | 150 capsule £17.71

## 3.9 Mucopolysaccharidosis

### ENZYMES

#### Elosulfase alfa

04-Dec-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Elosulfase alfa is an enzyme produced by recombinant DNA technology that provides replacement therapy in conditions caused by N-acetylgalactosamine-6-sulfatase (GALNS) deficiency.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Mucopolysaccharidosis IVA (specialist use only)

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: 2 mg/kg once weekly.
- Child: 2 mg/kg once weekly

- **CAUTIONS** Infusion-related reactions

##### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Infusion-related reactions Infusion-related reactions can occur; manufacturer advises these may be minimised by pre-treatment with an antihistamine and antipyretic, given 30–60 minutes before treatment. If reaction is severe, stop infusion and start appropriate treatment. Caution and close monitoring is advised during re-administration following a severe reaction.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · chills · diarrhoea · dizziness · dyspnoea · fever · headache · hypersensitivity · infusion related reaction · myalgia · nausea · oropharyngeal pain · vomiting

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—limited information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—present in milk in *animal* studies.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion* (Vimizim<sup>®</sup>), give intermittently in Sodium chloride 0.9%; body-weight under 25 kg, dilute requisite dose to final volume of 100 mL infusion fluid and mix gently, give over 4 hours through in-line filter (0.2 micron) initially at a rate of 3 mL/hour, then increase to a rate of 6 mL/hour after 15 minutes, then increase gradually if tolerated every 15 minutes by 6 mL/hour to max. 36 mL/hour; body-weight 25 kg or over, dilute requisite dose to final volume of 250 mL and mix gently, give over 4 hours through in-line filter (0.2 micron) initially at a rate of 6 mL/hour, then increase to a rate of 12 mL/hour after 15 minutes, then increase gradually if tolerated every 15 minutes by 12 mL/hour to max. 72 mL/hour.

- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Manufacturer advises store in a refrigerator at 2–8°C. After dilution use immediately or, if necessary, store at 2–8°C for max. 24 hours, followed by up to 24 hours at 23–27°C.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

- **Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be counselled about the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- Elosulfase alfa for treating mucopolysaccharidosis type IVA (December 2015) NICE HST2  
Elosulfase alfa, within its marketing authorisation, is recommended for funding for treating mucopolysaccharidosis type IVA (MPS IVA) according to

the conditions in the managed access agreement for elosulfase alfa.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/HST2](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/HST2)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for infusion

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Polysorbates, sorbitol  
ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

##### ► Vimizim (BioMarin Europe Ltd) ▼

Elosulfase alfa 1 mg per 1 mL Vimizim 5mg/5ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £750.00

## Galsulfase

- **DRUG ACTION** Galsulfase is a recombinant form of human N-acetylgalactosamine-4-sulfatase.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Mucopolysaccharidosis VI (specialist use only)

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 5–17 years: 1 mg/kg once weekly

- **CAUTIONS** Acute febrile illness (consider delaying treatment) · acute respiratory illness (consider delaying treatment) · infusion-related reactions can occur · respiratory disease
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain · apnoea · chest pain · chills · conjunctivitis · corneal opacity · dyspnoea · ear pain · face oedema · hypertension · increased risk of infection · malaise · nasal congestion · reflexes absent · umbilical hernia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Infusion-related reactions often occur, they can be managed by slowing the infusion rate or interrupting the infusion, and can be minimised by pre-treatment with an antihistamine and an antipyretic. Recurrent infusion-related reactions may require pre-treatment with a corticosteroid—consult product literature for details.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute requisite dose with Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a final volume of 250 mL and mix gently; infuse through a 0.2 micron in-line filter; give approx. 2.5% of the total volume over 1 hour, then infuse remaining volume over next 3 hours; if body-weight under 20 kg and at risk of fluid overload, dilute requisite dose in 100 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% and give over at least 4 hours.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for infusion

##### ► Naglazyme (BioMarin Europe Ltd) ▼

Galsulfase 1 mg per 1 mL Naglazyme 5mg/5ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £982.00

## Idursulfase

- **DRUG ACTION** Idursulfase is an enzyme produced by recombinant DNA technology licensed for long-term replacement therapy in mucopolysaccharidosis II (Hunter syndrome), a lysosomal storage disorder caused by deficiency of iduronate-2-sulfatase.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Mucopolysaccharidosis II (specialist use only)

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 5–17 years: 500 micrograms/kg once weekly

- **CAUTIONS** Acute febrile respiratory illness (consider delaying treatment) · infusion-related reactions can occur · severe respiratory disease

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · arthralgia · chest pain · cough · cyanosis · diarrhoea · dizziness · dyspnoea · fever · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hypertension · hypotension · hypoxia · nausea · oedema · respiratory disorders · skin reactions · tongue swelling · tremor · vomiting

- ▶ **Frequency not known** Hypersensitivity

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Infusion-related reactions often occur, they can be managed by slowing the infusion rate or interrupting the infusion, and can be minimised by pre-treatment with an antihistamine and an antipyretic. Recurrent infusion-related reactions may require pre-treatment with a corticosteroid—consult product literature for details.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Contra-indicated in women of child-bearing potential.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in *animal* studies.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute requisite dose in 100 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% and mix gently (do not shake); give over 3 hours (gradually reduced to 1 hour if no infusion-related reactions).

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for infusion**

- ▶ **Elaprase** (Shire Pharmaceuticals Ltd) ▼  
Idursulfase 2 mg per 1 mL Elaprase 6mg/3mL concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial **[PoM]** £1,985.00

## Laronidase

- **DRUG ACTION** Laronidase is an enzyme produced by recombinant DNA technology licensed for long-term replacement therapy in the treatment of non-neurological manifestations of mucopolysaccharidosis I, a lysosomal storage disorder caused by deficiency of alpha-L-iduronidase.

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Non-neurological manifestations of mucopolysaccharidosis I (specialist use only)**

- ▶ **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- ▶ **Child:** 100 units/kg once weekly

- **CAUTIONS** Infusion-related reactions can occur

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: laronidase

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · alopecia · anaphylactic reaction · angioedema · chills · cough · diarrhoea · dizziness · dyspnoea · fatigue · fever · flushing · headache · hypotension · influenza like illness · joint disorders · nausea · pain · pallor · paraesthesia · peripheral coldness · respiratory disorders · restlessness · skin reactions · sweat changes · tachycardia · temperature sensation altered · vomiting

- ▶ **Frequency not known** Cyanosis · hypoxia · oedema

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Infusion-related reactions often occur, they can be managed by slowing the infusion rate or interrupting the infusion, and can be minimised by pre-treatment with an antihistamine and an antipyretic. Recurrent infusion-related reactions may require pre-treatment with a corticosteroid—consult product literature for details.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibody concentration.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute with Sodium Chloride 0.9%; body-weight under 20 kg, dilute to 100 mL, body-weight over 20 kg dilute to 250 mL; give through in-line filter (0.22 micron) initially at a rate of 2 units/kg/hour then increase gradually every 15 minutes to max. 43 units/kg/hour.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for infusion**

**ELECTROLYTES:** May contain Sodium

- ▶ **Aldurazyme** (Genzyme Therapeutics Ltd)

Laronidase 100 unit per 1 mL Aldurazyme 500units/5mL solution for infusion vials | 1 vial **[PoM]** £444.70

## 3.10 Niemann-Pick type C disease

### ENZYME INHIBITORS > GLUCOSYLCERAMIDE SYNTHASE INHIBITORS

#### Miglustat

- **DRUG ACTION** Miglustat is an inhibitor of glucosylceramide synthase.

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Treatment of progressive neurological manifestations of Niemann-Pick type C disease (under expert supervision)**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ **Child 4–11 years** (body surface area up to 0.48 m<sup>2</sup>): 100 mg once daily
- ▶ **Child 4–11 years** (body surface area 0.48–0.73 m<sup>2</sup>): 100 mg twice daily
- ▶ **Child 4–11 years** (body surface area 0.74–0.88 m<sup>2</sup>): 100 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ **Child 4–11 years** (body surface area 0.89–1.25 m<sup>2</sup>): 200 mg twice daily
- ▶ **Child 4–11 years** (body surface area 1.26 m<sup>2</sup> and above): 200 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ **Child 12–17 years:** 200 mg 3 times a day

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · asthenia · chills · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · insomnia · libido decreased · malaise · muscle spasms · muscle weakness · nausea · peripheral neuropathy · sensation abnormal · thrombocytopenia · tremor · vomiting · weight decreased

- ▶ **Frequency not known** Growth retardation

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception must be used during treatment. Men should avoid fathering a child during and for 3 months after treatment.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—toxicity in *animal* studies.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** No information available—manufacturer advises caution.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>. Child under 12 years—consult product literature.



**Dose adjustments** Child 12–17 years, initially 200 mg twice daily if estimated glomerular filtration rate 50–70 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

Child 12–17 years, initially 100 mg twice daily if estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Monitor cognitive and neurological function.
- ▶ Monitor growth and platelet count in Niemann-Pick type C disease.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Capsule

▶ **Zavesca** (Actelion Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Miglustat 100 mg** Zavesca 100mg capsules | 84 capsule [PoM] £3,934.17 (Hospital only)

## 3.11 Pompe disease

### ENZYMES

#### Alglucosidase alfa

- **DRUG ACTION** Alglucosidase alfa is an enzyme produced by recombinant DNA technology licensed for long-term replacement therapy in Pompe disease, a lysosomal storage disorder caused by deficiency of acid alpha-glucosidase.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Pompe disease (specialist use only)

▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: 20 mg/kg every 2 weeks.
- ▶ Child: 20 mg/kg every 2 weeks

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac dysfunction · infusion-related reactions—consult product literature · respiratory dysfunction

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Anxiety · arrhythmias · chest discomfort · chills · cough · cyanosis · diarrhoea · dizziness · fatigue · feeling hot · fever · flushing · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · hypertension · irritability · local swelling · muscle complaints · nausea · oedema · pallor · paraesthesia · respiratory disorders · skin reactions · throat complaints · tremor · vomiting
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain · angioedema · apnoea · arthralgia · cardiac arrest · dyspnoea · excessive tearing · eye inflammation · headache · hypotension · nephrotic syndrome · peripheral coldness · proteinuria · vasoconstriction

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Infusion-related reactions are very common, calling for use of antihistamine, antipyretic, or corticosteroid; consult product literature for details.

- **PREGNANCY** Toxicity in *animal* studies, but treatment should not be withheld.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Monitor closely if cardiac dysfunction.
- ▶ Monitor closely if respiratory dysfunction.
- ▶ Monitor immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibody concentration.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, reconstitute 50 mg with 10.3 mL water for injections to produce 5 mg/mL solution; gently rotate vial without shaking; dilute requisite dose with Sodium Chloride 0.9% to give a final concentration of

0.5–4 mg/mL; give through a low protein-binding in-line filter (0.2 micron) at an initial rate of 1 mg/kg/hour increased by 2 mg/kg/hour every 30 minutes to max. 7mg/kg/hour.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Powder for solution for infusion

▶ **Myozyme** (Genzyme Therapeutics Ltd)

**Alglucosidase alfa 50 mg** Myozyme 50mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £356.06 (Hospital only)

## 3.12 Tyrosinaemia type I

### ENZYME INHIBITORS >

#### 4-HYDROXYPHENYLPYRUVATE DIOXYGENASE INHIBITORS

#### Nitisinone

(NTBC)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Hereditary tyrosinaemia type I (in combination with dietary restriction of tyrosine and phenylalanine) (specialist use only)**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 500 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to response; maximum 2 mg/kg per day.
- ▶ Child: Initially 500 micrograms/kg twice daily, adjusted according to response; maximum 2 mg/kg per day

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: nitisinone

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Corneal opacity · eye inflammation · eye pain · granulocytopenia · leucopenia · photophobia · thrombocytopenia
- ▶ **Uncommon** Leucocytosis · skin reactions
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—toxicity in *animal* studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—adverse effects in *animal* studies.
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Slit-lamp examination of eyes recommended before treatment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Monitor liver function regularly.
  - ▶ Monitor platelet and white blood cell count every 6 months.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Capsules can be opened and the contents suspended in a small amount of water or formula diet and taken immediately.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral suspension

▶ **Orfadin** (Swedish Orphan Biovitrum Ltd)

**Nitisinone 4 mg per 1 mL** Orfadin 4mg/1ml oral suspension sugar-free | 90 mL [PoM] £1,692.00 DT = £1,692.00

##### Capsule

▶ **Nitisinone (Non-proprietary)**

**Nitisinone 2 mg** Nitisinone 2mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £423.00

**Nitisinone 5 mg** Nitisinone 5mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £845.25

**Nitisinone 10 mg** Nitisinone 10mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £1,546.50

▶ **Orfadin** (Swedish Orphan Biovitrum Ltd)

**Nitisinone 2 mg** Orfadin 2mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £564.00

**Nitisinone 5 mg** Orfadin 5mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM] £1,127.00

Nitisinone 10 mg Orfadin 10mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM]  
 £2,062.00  
 Nitisinone 20 mg Orfadin 20mg capsules | 60 capsule [PoM]  
 £4,512.00

## 3.13 Urea cycle disorders

### AMINO ACIDS AND DERIVATIVES

#### Arginine

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute hyperammonaemia in carbamylphosphate synthetase deficiency (specialist use only) | Acute hyperammonaemia in ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency (specialist use only)**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: 6 mg/kg/hour.

► Child (body-weight up to 40 kg): 6 mg/kg/hour  
 ► Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): 4 mg/kg/hour

**Maintenance treatment of hyperammonaemia in carbamylphosphate synthetase deficiency (specialist use only) | Maintenance treatment of hyperammonaemia in ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency (specialist use only)**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 100–200 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, dose to be taken with feeds.

► Child (body-weight up to 20 kg): 100–200 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, dose to be given with feeds or meals  
 ► Child (body-weight 20 kg and above): 2.5–6 g/m<sup>2</sup> daily in 3–4 divided doses, dose to be taken with meals; maximum 6 g per day

**Acute hyperammonaemia in citrullinaemia (specialist use only) | Acute hyperammonaemia in arginosuccinic aciduria (specialist use only)**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: Initially 300 mg/kg, to be administered over 90 minutes, followed by 12.5 mg/kg/hour, to be administered over 24 hours (maximum 25 mg/kg/hour thereafter).

► Child (body-weight up to 40 kg): Initially 300 mg/kg, to be administered over 90 minutes, followed by 12.5 mg/kg/hour, to be administered over 24 hours (maximum 25 mg/kg/hour thereafter)  
 ► Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): 21 mg/kg/hour

**Maintenance treatment of hyperammonaemia in citrullinaemia (specialist use only) | Maintenance treatment of hyperammonaemia in arginosuccinic aciduria (specialist use only)**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 100–300 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, dose to be taken with feeds.

► Child (body-weight up to 20 kg): 100–300 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, dose to be taken with feed or meals  
 ► Child (body-weight 20 kg and above): 2.5–6 g/m<sup>2</sup> daily in 3–4 divided doses, doses to be taken with meals; maximum 6 g per day

● **UNLICENSED USE** Injection not licensed in children. Tablets not licensed in children. Powder licensed for urea cycle disorders in children.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Not to be used in the treatment of arginase deficiency

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Acidosis hyperchloraemic · flushing · headache · hypotension · nausea · numbness · vomiting

● **PREGNANCY** No information available.

● **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor plasma pH and chloride.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a max. concentration of 50 mg/mL with glucose 10%.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Powder to be prescribed as a borderline substance (ACBS). For use as a supplement in urea cycle disorders other than arginase deficiency, such as hyperammonaemia types I and II, citrullinaemia, arginosuccinic aciduria, and deficiency of N-acetyl glutamate synthetase.

##### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Arginine for urea cycle disorders  
[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/arginine-urea-cycle-disorders-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/arginine-urea-cycle-disorders-0)

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral solution, solution for infusion

##### Tablet


► **Arginine (Non-proprietary)**

L-Arginine 500 mg L-Arginine 500mg tablets | 60 tablet £5.86

L-Arginine 1 gram Arginine 1g tablets | 90 tablet £11.14

##### Solution for infusion

► **Arginine (Imported (Germany))**

L-Arginine monohydrochloride 210.7 mg per 1 ml L-Arginin-Hydrochlorid 21% concentrate for solution for infusion 20ml ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] 

##### Capsule

► **Arginine (Non-proprietary)**

L-Arginine 500 mg L-Arginine 500mg capsules | 30 capsule £3.35 | 120 capsule £13.05

##### Powder

► **Arginine (Non-proprietary)**

L-Arginine 1 gram per 1 gram L-Arginine powder | 100 gram £44.31

## Carglumic acid

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Hyperammonaemia due to N-acetylglutamate synthase deficiency (under expert supervision)**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 50–125 mg/kg twice daily, to be taken immediately before feeds, dose adjusted according to plasma-ammonia concentration; maintenance 5–50 mg/kg twice daily, the total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3–4 divided doses.

► Child: Initially 50–125 mg/kg twice daily, to be taken immediately before food, dose adjusted according to plasma-ammonia concentration; maintenance 5–50 mg/kg twice daily, the total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3–4 divided doses

**Hyperammonaemia due to organic acidaemia (under expert supervision)**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: Initially 50–125 mg/kg twice daily, to be taken immediately before feeds, dose adjusted according to plasma-ammonia concentration, the total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3–4 divided doses.

► Child: Initially 50–125 mg/kg twice daily, to be taken immediately before food, dose adjusted continued →

according to plasma-ammonia concentration, the total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3–4 divided doses

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

#### EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT OF UREA CYCLE DISORDERS

For further information on the emergency management of urea cycle disorders consult the British Inherited Metabolic Disease Group (BIMDG) website at [www.bimdg.org.uk](http://www.bimdg.org.uk).

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Hyperhidrosis
- ▶ **Uncommon** Bradycardia · diarrhoea · fever · vomiting
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Rash
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in *animal* studies.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Dispersible tablets must be dispersed in at least 5–10 mL of water and taken orally immediately, or administered via a nasogastric tube.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Dispersible tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

#### ▶ Carbaglu (Orphan Europe (UK) Ltd)

**Carglumatic acid 200 mg** Carbaglu 200mg dispersible tablets sugar-free | 5 tablet (PoM) £299.00 sugar-free | 15 tablet (PoM) £897.00 sugar-free | 60 tablet (PoM) £3,499.00

#### ▶ Ucedane (Lucane Pharma Ltd)

**Carglumatic acid 200 mg** Ucedane 200mg dispersible tablets sugar-free | 60 tablet (PoM) £3,300.00

## Citrulline

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Carbamyl phosphate synthase deficiency | Ornithine carbamyl transferase deficiency**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate:** 150 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, adjusted according to response.
- ▶ **Child:** 150 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, adjusted according to response

- **PREGNANCY** No information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Powder may be mixed with drinks or taken as a paste.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, oral solution, powder

#### Powder

#### ▶ Citrulline (Non-proprietary)

L-citrulline 1 mg per 1 mg L-Citrulline powder | 100 gram £234.27

## BENZOATES

## Sodium benzoate

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute hyperammonaemia due to urea cycle disorder (specialist use only)**

#### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ **Neonate:** Initially 250 mg/kg, to be administered over 90 minutes, followed by 10 mg/kg/hour, adjusted according to response.

- ▶ **Child:** Initially 250 mg/kg, to be administered over 90 minutes, followed by 10 mg/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

**Maintenance treatment of hyperammonaemia due to urea cycle disorders (specialist use only) | Non-ketotic hypoglycaemia (specialist use only)**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate:** Up to 250 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, dose to be taken with feeds.
- ▶ **Child:** Up to 250 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, dose to be taken with feeds or meals; maximum 12 g per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CAUTIONS** Conditions involving sodium retention with oedema (preparations contain significant amounts of sodium) · congestive heart failure (preparations contain significant amounts of sodium) · neonates (risk of kernicterus and increased side-effects)

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Appetite decreased · coma · irritability · lethargy · nausea · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Gastro-intestinal side-effects may be reduced by giving smaller doses more frequently.

- **PREGNANCY** No information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Caution in renal insufficiency—preparations contain significant amounts of sodium.

#### • DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ **With oral use** For administration *by mouth*, oral solution or powder may be administered in fruit drinks; less soluble in acidic drinks.
- ▶ **With intravenous use** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a max. concentration of 50 mg/mL with Glucose 10%.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Medicines for Children leaflet: Sodium benzoate for urea cycle disorders [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sodium-benzoate-for-urea-cycle-disorders](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sodium-benzoate-for-urea-cycle-disorders)

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral solution, solution for infusion

## DRUGS FOR METABOLIC DISORDERS > ACETIC ACIDS

## Sodium dichloroacetate

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Pyruvate dehydrogenase defects**

#### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate:** Initially 12.5 mg/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response, increased if necessary up to 200 mg/kg daily.
- ▶ **Child:** Initially 12.5 mg/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response, increased if necessary up to 200 mg/kg daily

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Metabolic acidosis · oxalate metabolism abnormal · polyneuropathy (long term use)

- **PREGNANCY** No information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

## DRUGS FOR METABOLIC DISORDERS >

### AMMONIA LOWERING DRUGS

#### Glycerol phenylbutyrate

14-May-2018

- **DRUG ACTION** Glycerol phenylbutyrate is a nitrogen-binding agent that provides an alternative vehicle for waste nitrogen excretion.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Urea cycle disorders (specialist use only)

- ▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY GASTROSTOMY TUBE, OR BY NASOGASTRIC TUBE
- ▶ Child 2 months–17 years (body surface area up to 1.3 m<sup>2</sup>): Initially 9.4 g/m<sup>2</sup> daily in divided doses, usual maintenance 5.3–12.4 g/m<sup>2</sup> daily in divided doses, with meals, each dose should be rounded up to the nearest 0.5 mL. For dose adjustments based on individual requirements—consult product literature
- ▶ Child 2 months–17 years (body surface area 1.3 m<sup>2</sup> and above): Initially 8 g/m<sup>2</sup> daily in divided doses, usual maintenance 5.3–12.4 g/m<sup>2</sup> daily in divided doses, with meals, each dose should be rounded up to the nearest 0.5 mL. For dose adjustments based on individual requirements—consult product literature

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ 1 mL of liquid contains 1.1 g of glycerol phenylbutyrate.
- ▶ For patients switching from sodium phenylbutyrate—consult product literature.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT OF UREA CYCLE DISORDERS

For further information on the emergency management of urea cycle disorders consult the British Inherited Metabolic Disease Group (BIMDG) website at [www.bimdg.org.uk](http://www.bimdg.org.uk).

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Treatment of acute hyperammonaemia
- **CAUTIONS** Intestinal malabsorption • pancreatic insufficiency
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: glycerol phenylbutyrate
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Common or very common** Constipation • diarrhoea • dizziness • fatigue • gastrointestinal discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • headache • menstrual disorder • nausea • oral disorders • peripheral oedema • skin reactions • tremor • vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Akathisia • alopecia • biliary colic • bladder pain • confusion • depressed mood • drowsiness • epistaxis • hot flush • hyperhidrosis • hypoalbuminaemia • hypokalaemia • hypothyroidism • joint swelling • muscle spasms • pain • paraesthesia • plantar fasciitis • speech disorder • taste altered • ventricular arrhythmia • weight change
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—toxicity in *animal* studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution—use lowest possible dose.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution in severe impairment—no information available.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises may be added to a small amount of apple sauce, ketchup, or squash and used within 2 hours. For administration advice via nasogastric or gastrostomy tube—consult product literature.
- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Manufacturer advises discard contents of bottle 14 days after opening.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be counselled on the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Liquid

- ▶ **Ravicti** (Swedish Orphan Biovitrum Ltd) ▼

Glycerol phenylbutyrate 1.1 gram per 1 mL Ravicti 1.1g/mL oral liquid | 25 mL [PoM] £161.00

## Sodium phenylbutyrate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Acute hyperammonaemia due to urea cycle disorders (specialist use only)

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ **Neonate:** Initially 250 mg/kg, to be administered over 90 minutes, followed by 10 mg/kg/hour, adjusted according to response.

- ▶ **Child:** Initially 250 mg/kg, to be administered over 90 minutes, followed by 10 mg/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

##### Maintenance treatment of hyperammonaemia due to urea cycle disorders (specialist use only)

- ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate:** Up to 250 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, with feeds.

- ▶ **Child (body-weight up to 20 kg):** Up to 250 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses, with feeds or meals
- ▶ **Child (body-weight 20 kg and above):** 5 g/m<sup>2</sup> daily in 3–4 divided doses, with meals; maximum 12 g per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Injection not licensed for use in children.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT OF UREA CYCLE DISORDERS

For further information on the emergency management of urea cycle disorders consult the British Inherited Metabolic Disease Group (BIMDG) website at [www.bimdg.org.uk](http://www.bimdg.org.uk).

- **CAUTIONS** Conditions involving sodium retention with oedema (preparations contain significant amounts of sodium) • congestive heart failure (preparations contain significant amounts of sodium)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sodium phenylbutyrate
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain • anaemia • appetite decreased • constipation • depression • headache • irritability • leucocytosis • leucopenia • menstrual cycle irregularities • metabolic acidosis • metabolic alkalosis • nausea • oedema • renal tubular acidosis • skin reactions • syncope • taste altered • thrombocytopenia • thrombocytosis • vomiting • weight increased
- ▶ **Uncommon** Anorectal haemorrhage • aplastic anaemia • arrhythmia • gastrointestinal disorders • pancreatitis
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises adequate contraception during administration in women of child-bearing potential.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid—toxicity in *animal* studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution (preparations contain significant amounts of sodium).
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**
  - ▶ With oral use Oral dose may be mixed with fruit drinks, milk, or feeds. Granules should be mixed with food before taking. *Pheburane*® granules must not be administered by nasogastric or gastrostomy tubes.
  - ▶ With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, dilute to a maximum concentration of 50 mg/mL with Glucose 10%.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Medicines for Children leaflet: Sodium phenylbutyrate for urea cycle disorders [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sodium-phenylbutyrate-for-urea-cycle-disorders](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/sodium-phenylbutyrate-for-urea-cycle-disorders)
- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution, solution for infusion

**Granules**

  - ▶ **Ammonaps** (Swedish Orphan Biovitrum Ltd)  
Sodium phenylbutyrate **940 mg per 1 gram** Ammonaps 940mg/g granules sugar-free | 266 gram [PoM] £860.00
  - ▶ **Pheburane** (Lucane Pharma Ltd)  
Sodium phenylbutyrate **483 mg per 1 gram** Pheburane 483mg/g granules | 174 gram [PoM] £331.00

**Tablet**

  - ▶ **Ammonaps** (Swedish Orphan Biovitrum Ltd)  
Sodium phenylbutyrate **500 mg** Ammonaps 500mg tablets | 250 tablet [PoM] £493.00

## 3.14 Wilson's disease

### ANTIDOTES AND CHELATORS > COPPER ABSORPTION INHIBITORS

#### Zinc acetate

- **DRUG ACTION** Zinc prevents the absorption of copper in Wilson's disease.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Wilson's disease (initiated under specialist supervision)

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 1–5 years: 25 mg twice daily
- ▶ Child 6–15 years (body-weight up to 57 kg): 25 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 6–15 years (body-weight 57 kg and above): 50 mg 3 times a day
- ▶ Child 16–17 years: 50 mg 3 times a day

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Doses expressed as elemental zinc.

#### PHARMACOKINETICS

- ▶ Symptomatic Wilson's disease patients should be treated initially with a chelating agent because zinc has a slow onset of action. When transferring from chelating treatment to zinc maintenance therapy, chelating treatment should be co-administered for 2–3 weeks until zinc produces its maximal effect.

- **CAUTIONS** Portal hypertension (risk of hepatic decompensation when switching from chelating agent)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: zinc

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Epigastric discomfort (usually transient)
- ▶ **Uncommon** Leucopenia · sideroblastic anaemia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Transient gastric irritation may be reduced if first dose is taken mid-morning or with a little protein.

#### ● PREGNANCY

**Dose adjustments** Usual dose 25 mg 3 times daily adjusted according to plasma-copper concentration and urinary copper excretion.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid; present in milk—may cause zinc-induced copper deficiency in infant.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor full blood count and serum cholesterol.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Capsules may be opened and the contents mixed with water.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 23

- ▶ **Wilzin** (Orphan Europe (UK) Ltd)

**Zinc (as Zinc acetate) 25 mg** Wilzin 25mg capsules | 250 capsule [PoM] £132.00

**Zinc (as Zinc acetate) 50 mg** Wilzin 50mg capsules | 250 capsule [PoM] £242.00

### ANTIDOTES AND CHELATORS > COPPER CHELATORS

#### Penicillamine

- **DRUG ACTION** Penicillamine aids the elimination of copper ions in Wilson's disease (hepatolenticular degeneration).

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Wilson's disease

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 20 mg/kg daily in 2–3 divided doses, to be taken 1 hour before food; maximum 2 g per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 20 mg/kg daily in 2–3 divided doses, maintenance 0.75–1 g daily, to be taken 1 hour before food; maximum 2 g per day

##### Cystinuria

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**

- ▶ Child: 20–30 mg/kg daily in 2–3 divided doses, lower doses may be used initially and increased gradually, doses to be adjusted to maintain 24-hour urinary cystine below 1 mmol/litre, maintain adequate fluid intake, to be taken 1 hour before food; maximum 3 g per day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Lupus erythematosus

- **CAUTIONS** Neurological involvement in Wilson's disease

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: penicillamine

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Proteinuria · thrombocytopenia
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Alopecia · breast enlargement (males and females) · connective tissue disorders · haematuria (discontinue immediately if cause unknown) · hypersensitivity · oral disorders · skin reactions
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · aplastic anaemia · appetite decreased · fever · glomerulonephritis · Goodpasture's syndrome · haemolytic anaemia · increased risk of infection · jaundice · cholestatic · leucopenia · lupus-like syndrome · myasthenia gravis · nausea · nephrotic syndrome · neurological deterioration in Wilson's Disease · neutropenia · pancreatitis · polymyositis · pulmonary haemorrhage · rash (consider dose reduction) · respiratory disorders · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · taste loss (mineral supplements not recommended) · vomiting · yellow nail syndrome

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Patients who are hypersensitive to penicillin may react rarely to penicillamine.



- **PREGNANCY** Fetal abnormalities reported rarely; avoid if possible.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**  
**Dose adjustments** Reduce dose and monitor renal function or avoid (consult product literature).
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ Consider withdrawal if platelet count falls below  $120\,000/\text{mm}^3$  or white blood cells below  $2500/\text{mm}^3$  or if 3 successive falls within reference range (can restart at reduced dose when counts return to within reference range but permanent withdrawal necessary if recurrence of leucopenia or thrombocytopenia).
  - ▶ Monitor urine for proteinuria.
  - ▶ Monitor blood and platelet count regularly.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Counselling on the symptoms of blood disorders is advised. Warn patient and carers to tell doctor immediately if sore throat, fever, infection, non-specific illness, unexplained bleeding and bruising, purpura, mouth ulcers, or rashes develop.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 6, 22

##### ▶ Penicillamine (Non-proprietary)

Penicillamine 125 mg Penicillamine 125mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM]  
 £45.00 DT = £45.00

Penicillamine 250 mg Penicillamine 250mg tablets |  
 56 tablet [PoM] £88.77 DT = £88.77

## Trientine dihydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Wilson's disease in patients intolerant of penicillamine

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 2–11 years: Initially 0.6–1.5 g daily in 2–4 divided doses, adjusted according to response, to be taken before food
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1.2–2.4 g daily in 2–4 divided doses, adjusted according to response, to be taken before food

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: trientine

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Anaemia
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Gastrointestinal disorders · nausea · neurological deterioration in Wilson's Disease · rash

#### ● PREGNANCY Teratogenic in animal studies—use only if benefit outweighs risk.

**Monitoring** Monitor maternal and neonatal serum-copper concentrations.

#### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION Trientine is not an alternative to penicillamine for rheumatoid arthritis or cystinuria. Penicillamine-induced systemic lupus erythematosus may not resolve on transfer to trientine.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 6, 22

##### ▶ Trientine dihydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

Trientine dihydrochloride 300 mg Trientine dihydrochloride 300mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £3,090.00 DT = £3,090.00

## 4 Mineral and trace elements deficiencies

### 4.1 Zinc deficiency

#### Zinc

Zinc supplements should not be given unless there is good evidence of deficiency (hypoproteinaemia spuriously lowers plasma-zinc concentration) or in zinc-losing conditions. Zinc deficiency can occur as a result of inadequate diet or malabsorption; excessive loss of zinc can occur in trauma, burns, and protein-losing conditions. A zinc supplement is given until clinical improvement occurs, but it may need to be continued in severe malabsorption, metabolic disease, or in zinc-losing states.

Zinc is used in the treatment of Wilson's disease and acrodermatitis enteropathica, a rare inherited abnormality of zinc absorption.

Parenteral nutrition regimens usually include trace amounts of zinc, see also Intravenous nutrition p. 618. If necessary, further zinc can be added to intravenous feeding regimens.

#### ELECTROLYTES AND MINERALS > ZINC

#### Zinc sulfate

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Zinc deficiency or supplementation in zinc-losing conditions

###### ▶ BY MOUTH USING EFFERVESCENT TABLETS

- ▶ Neonate: 1 mg/kg daily, dose expressed as elemental zinc, to be dissolved in water and taken after food.

- ▶ Child (body-weight up to 10 kg): 22.5 mg daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary, to be dissolved in water and taken after food, dose expressed as elemental zinc
- ▶ Child (body-weight 10–30 kg): 22.5 mg 1–3 times a day, dose to be adjusted as necessary, to be dissolved in water and taken after food, dose expressed as elemental zinc
- ▶ Child (body-weight 31 kg and above): 45 mg 1–3 times a day, dose to be adjusted as necessary, to be dissolved in water and taken after food, dose expressed as elemental zinc

##### Acrodermatitis enteropathica

###### ▶ BY MOUTH USING EFFERVESCENT TABLETS

- ▶ Neonate: 0.5–1 mg/kg twice daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses, dose expressed as elemental zinc.
- ▶ Child: 0.5–1 mg/kg twice daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses, dose expressed as elemental zinc

#### ● UNLICENSED USE Solvazinc® is not licensed for use in acrodermatitis enteropathica.

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: zinc

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS Diarrhoea · gastritis · gastrointestinal discomfort · nausea · vomiting

#### ● PREGNANCY Crosses placenta; risk theoretically minimal, but no information available.

#### ● BREAST FEEDING Present in milk; risk theoretically minimal, but no information available.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT Accumulation may occur in acute renal failure.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Each *Solvazinc*® tablet contains zinc sulfate monohydrate 125 mg (45 mg zinc).

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Effervescent tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13, 21

- ▶ **Solvazinc** (Galen Ltd)

**Zinc sulfate monohydrate 125 mg** *Solvazinc* 125mg effervescent tablets sugar-free | 90 tablet **P** £17.20 DT = £17.20

## 5 Nutrition (intravenous)

### Intravenous nutrition

#### Overview

When adequate feeding through the alimentary tract is not possible, nutrients may be given by intravenous infusion. This may be in addition to oral or enteral tube feeding—**supplemental parenteral nutrition**, or may be the sole source of nutrition—**total parenteral nutrition (TPN)**. Complete enteral starvation is undesirable and total parenteral nutrition is a last resort.

Indications for parenteral nutrition include prematurity; severe or prolonged disorders of the gastro-intestinal tract; preparation of undernourished patients for surgery, chemotherapy, or radiation therapy; major surgery, trauma, or burns; prolonged coma or inability to eat; and some patients with renal or hepatic failure. The composition of proprietary preparations used in children is given under *Proprietary Infusion Fluids for Parenteral Feeding* p. 619.

Parenteral nutrition requires the use of a solution containing amino acids, glucose, lipids, electrolytes, trace elements, and vitamins. This is now commonly provided by the pharmacy in the form of an amino-acid, glucose, electrolyte bag, and a separate lipid infusion or, in older children a single 'all-in-one' bag. If the patient is able to take small amounts by mouth, vitamins may be given orally.

The nutrition solution is infused through a central venous catheter inserted under full surgical precautions. Alternatively, infusion through a peripheral vein may be used for supplementary as well as total parenteral nutrition, depending on the availability of peripheral veins; factors prolonging cannula life and preventing thrombophlebitis include the use of soft polyurethane paediatric cannulas and use of nutritional solutions of low osmolality and neutral pH. Nutritional fluids should be given by a dedicated intravenous line; if not possible, compatibility with any drugs or fluids should be checked as precipitation of components may occur. Extravasation of parenteral nutrition solution can cause severe tissue damage and injury; the infusion site should be regularly monitored.

Before starting intravenous nutrition the patient should be clinically stable and renal function and acid-base status should be assessed. Appropriate biochemical tests should have been carried out beforehand and serious deficits corrected. Nutritional and electrolyte status must be monitored throughout treatment. The nutritional components of parenteral nutrition regimens are usually increased gradually over a number of days to prevent metabolic complications and to allow metabolic adaptation to the infused nutrients. The solutions are usually infused over 24 hours but this may be gradually reduced if long-term nutrition is required. Home parenteral nutrition is usually infused over 12 hours overnight.

Complications of long-term parenteral nutrition include gall bladder sludging, gall stones, cholestasis and abnormal liver function tests. For details of the prevention and

management of parenteral nutrition complications, specialist literature should be consulted.

**Protein** (nitrogen) is given as mixtures of essential and non-essential synthetic L-amino acids. Ideally, all essential amino acids should be included with a wide variety of non-essential ones to provide sufficient nitrogen together with electrolytes. Solutions vary in their composition of amino acids; they often contain an energy source (usually glucose) and electrolytes. Solutions for use in neonates and children under 1 year of age are based on the amino acid profile of umbilical cord blood (*Primene*®) or breast milk (*Vaminolact*®) and contain amino acids that are essential in this age group; these amino acids may not be present in sufficient quantities in preparations designed for older children and adults.

**Energy** requirements must be met if amino acids are to be utilised for tissue maintenance. An appropriate energy to protein ratio is essential and requirements will vary depending on the child's age and condition. A mixture of carbohydrate and fat energy sources (usually 30–50% as fat) gives better utilisation of amino acids than glucose alone.

Glucose p. 590 is the preferred source of carbohydrate, but frequent monitoring of blood glucose is required particularly during initiation and build-up of the regimen; insulin may be necessary. Glucose above a concentration of 12.5% must be infused through a central venous catheter to avoid thrombosis; the maximum concentration of glucose that should normally be infused in fluid restricted children is 20–25%.

In parenteral nutrition regimens, it is necessary to provide adequate **phosphate** in order to allow phosphorylation of glucose and to prevent hypophosphataemia. Neonates, particularly preterm neonates, and young children also require phosphorus and calcium to ensure adequate bone mineralisation. The compatibility and solubility of calcium and phosphorus salts is complex and unpredictable; precipitation is a risk and specialist pharmacy advice should be sought.

**Fat** (lipid) emulsions have the advantages of a high energy to fluid volume ratio, neutral pH, and iso-osmolality with plasma, and provide essential fatty acids. Several days of adaptation may be required to attain maximal utilisation. Reactions include occasional febrile episodes (usually only with 20% emulsions) and rare anaphylactic responses. Interference with biochemical measurements such as those for blood gases and calcium may occur if samples are taken before fat has been cleared. Regular monitoring of plasma cholesterol and triglyceride is necessary to ensure clearance from the plasma, particularly in conditions where fat metabolism may be disturbed e.g. infection. Emulsions containing 20% or 30% fat should be used in neonates as they are cleared more efficiently. **Additives should not be mixed with fat emulsions unless compatibility is known.**

**Electrolytes** are usually provided as the chloride salts of potassium and sodium. Acetate salts can be used to reduce the amount of chloride infused; hyperchloraemic acidosis or hypochloraemic alkalosis can occur in preterm neonates or children with renal impairment.

#### Administration

Because of the complex requirements relating to parenteral nutrition full details relating to administration have been omitted. In all cases *specialist pharmacy advice, product literature and other specialist literature should be consulted*.

Proprietary Infusion Fluids for Parenteral Feeding

Preparation	Nitrogen g/litre	<sup>1,2</sup> Energy kJ/litre	Electrolytes					Other components/litre
			K <sup>+</sup>	Mg <sup>2+</sup>	Na <sup>+</sup>	Acet <sup>-</sup>	Cl <sup>-</sup>	
ClinOleic 20% (Baxter Healthcare Ltd) Net price 100 ml: no price available; Net price 250 ml: no price available; Net price 500 ml: no price available	-	8360	-	-	-	-	-	purified olive and soya oil 200 g, glycerol 22.5 g, egg phosphatides 12 g
Intralipid 10% (Fresenius Kabi Ltd) Net price 100 ml = £4.12; Net price 500 ml = £9.01	-	4600	-	-	-	-	-	soya oil 100 g, glycerol 22 g, purified egg phospholipids 12 g, phosphate 15 mmol
Intralipid 20% (Fresenius Kabi Ltd) Net price 100 ml = £6.21; Net price 250 ml = £10.16; Net price 500 ml = £13.52	-	8400	-	-	-	-	-	soya oil 200 g, glycerol 22 g, purified egg phospholipids 12 g, phosphate 15 mmol
Intralipid 30% (Fresenius Kabi Ltd) Net price 333 ml: no price available	-	12600	-	-	-	-	-	soya oil 300 g, glycerol 16.7 g, purified egg phospholipids 12 g, phosphate 15 mmol
Lipofundin MCT/LCT 10% (B.Braun Medical Ltd) Net price 100 ml: no price available; Net price 500 ml = £13.69	-	4430	-	-	-	-	-	soya oil 50 g, medium-chain triglycerides 50 g
Lipofundin MCT/LCT 20% (B.Braun Medical Ltd) Net price 100 ml = £13.28; Net price 250 ml: no price available; Net price 500 ml = £20.36	-	8000	-	-	-	-	-	soya oil 100 g, medium-chain triglycerides 100 g
Primene 10% (Baxter Healthcare Ltd) Net price 100 ml: no price available; Net price 250 ml: no price available	15.0	-	-	-	-	-	19.0	
Synthamin 9 (Baxter Healthcare Ltd) Net price 500 ml: no price available; Net price 1 litre: no price available	9.1	-	60.0	5.0	70.0	100.0	70.0	acid phosphate 30 mmol
Synthamin 9 EF (electrolyte-free) (Baxter Healthcare Ltd) Net price 500 ml: no price available; Net price 1 litre: no price available	9.1	-	-	-	-	44.0	22.0	
Vamin 9 Glucose (Fresenius Kabi Ltd) Net price 100 ml: no price available; Net price 500 ml: no price available; Net price 1 litre: no price available	9.4	1700	20.0	1.5	50.0	-	50.0	Ca <sup>2+</sup> 2.5 mmol, anhydrous glucose 100 g
Vaminolact (Fresenius Kabi Ltd) Net price 100 ml = £3.70; Net price 500 ml = £8.50	9.3	-	-	-	-	-	-	

1 1000 kcal = 4200kJ; 1000 kJ = 238.8 kcal. All entries are Prescription-only medicines.  
2 Excludes protein- or amino acid-derived energy

NUTRIENTS > PARENTERAL NUTRITION

Parenteral nutrition supplements

● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Supplement in intravenous nutrition**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

**DIPEPTIVEN 20G/100ML CONCENTRATE FOR SOLUTION FOR INFUSION BOTTLES**

**Amino acid supplement for hypercatabolic or hypermetabolic states**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: 300–400 mg/kg daily, dose not to exceed 20% of total amino acid intake

● CAUTIONS

**PEDITRACE SOLUTION FOR INFUSION 10ML VIALS** Reduced biliary excretion · reduced biliary excretion in cholestatic

liver disease · reduced biliary excretion in markedly reduced urinary excretion (careful biochemical monitoring required) · total parenteral nutrition exceeding one month

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ Total parenteral nutrition exceeding one month Measure serum manganese concentration and check liver function before commencing treatment and regularly during treatment—discontinue if manganese concentration raised or if cholestasis develops.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Because of the complex requirements relating to parenteral nutrition, full details relating to administration have been omitted. In all cases *specialist pharmacy advice, product literature, and other specialist literature should be consulted*. Compatibility with the infusion solution must be ascertained before adding supplementary preparations. **Additives should not be mixed with fat emulsions unless compatibility is known.**

**CERNEVIT SOLUTION FOR INJECTION VIALS AND DILUENT**

Dissolve in 5 mL water for injections.

**PEDITRACE SOLUTION FOR INFUSION 10ML VIALS** For addition to *Vaminolact*<sup>®</sup>, *Vamin*<sup>®</sup> 14 Electrolyte-Free solutions, and glucose intravenous infusions.

**ADDITRACE SOLUTION FOR INFUSION 10ML AMPOULES** For addition to *Vamin*<sup>®</sup> solutions and glucose intravenous infusions.

**DIPEPTIVEN 20G/100ML CONCENTRATE FOR SOLUTION FOR INFUSION BOTTLES** For addition to infusion solutions containing amino acids.

**ADDPHOS<sup>®</sup> VIALS** For addition to *Vamin*<sup>®</sup> solutions and glucose intravenous infusions.

**DECAN CONCENTRATE FOR SOLUTION FOR INFUSION 40ML BOTTLES** For addition to infusion solutions.

**GLYCOPHOS<sup>®</sup> VIALS** For addition to *Vamin*<sup>®</sup> and *Vaminolact*<sup>®</sup> solutions, and glucose intravenous infusions.

**SOLIVITO N POWDER FOR SOLUTION FOR INFUSION VIALS** Dissolve in water for injections or glucose

intravenous infusion for adding to glucose intravenous infusion or *Intralipid*<sup>®</sup>; dissolve in *Vitlipid N*<sup>®</sup> or *Intralipid*<sup>®</sup> for adding to *Intralipid*<sup>®</sup> only.

**VITLIPID N ADULT EMULSION FOR INJECTION 10ML AMPOULES** For addition to *Intralipid*<sup>®</sup>.

**VITLIPID N INFANT EMULSION FOR INJECTION 10ML AMPOULES** For addition to *Intralipid*<sup>®</sup>.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

**CERNEVIT SOLUTION FOR INJECTION VIALS AND DILUENT** *Cernevit*<sup>®</sup> solution contains *dl*-alpha tocopherol

11.2 units, ascorbic acid 125 mg, biotin 69 micrograms, coenzyme Q10 220 units, cyanocobalamin 6 micrograms, folic acid 414 micrograms, glycine 250 mg, nicotinamide 46 mg, pantothenic acid (as dexpantenol) 17.25 mg, pyridoxine hydrochloride 5.5 mg, retinol (as palmitate) 3500 units, riboflavin (as dihydrated sodium phosphate) 4.14 mg, thiamine (as cocarboxylase tetrahydrate) 3.51 mg.

**PEDITRACE SOLUTION FOR INFUSION 10ML VIALS** For use in neonates (when kidney function established, usually second day of life), infants, and children.

*Peditrace*<sup>®</sup> solution contains traces of Zn<sup>2+</sup>, Cu<sup>2+</sup>, Mn<sup>2+</sup>, Se<sup>4+</sup>, F<sup>-</sup>, I<sup>-</sup>.

**ADDITRACE SOLUTION FOR INFUSION 10ML AMPOULES** For patients over 40 kg.

*Additrac*<sup>®</sup> solution contains traces of Fe<sup>3+</sup>, Zn<sup>2+</sup>, Mn<sup>2+</sup>, Cu<sup>2+</sup>, Cr<sup>3+</sup>, Se<sup>4+</sup>, Mo<sup>6+</sup>, F<sup>-</sup>, I<sup>-</sup>.

**DIPEPTIVEN 20G/100ML CONCENTRATE FOR SOLUTION FOR INFUSION BOTTLES** *Dipeptiven*<sup>®</sup> solution contains N(2)-L-alanyl-L-glutamine 200 mg/mL (providing L-alanine 82 mg, L-glutamine 134.6 mg).

**ADDPHOS<sup>®</sup> VIALS** *Addiphos*<sup>®</sup> sterile solution contains phosphate 40 mmol, K<sup>+</sup> 30 mmol, Na<sup>+</sup> 30 mmol/20 mL.

**DECAN CONCENTRATE FOR SOLUTION FOR INFUSION 40ML BOTTLES** For patients over 40 kg.

*Decan*<sup>®</sup> solution contains trace elements Fe<sup>2+</sup>, Zn<sup>2+</sup>, Cu<sup>2+</sup>, Mn<sup>2+</sup>, F<sup>-</sup>, Co<sup>2+</sup>, I<sup>-</sup>, Se<sup>4+</sup>, Mo<sup>6+</sup>, Cr<sup>3+</sup>.

**GLYCOPHOS<sup>®</sup> VIALS** *Glycophos*<sup>®</sup> Sterile Concentrate solution contains phosphate 20 mmol, Na<sup>+</sup> 40 mmol/20 mL.

**SOLIVITO N POWDER FOR SOLUTION FOR INFUSION VIALS** *Solivito N*<sup>®</sup> powder for reconstitution contains

biotin 60 micrograms, cyanocobalamin 5 micrograms, folic acid 400 micrograms, glycine 300 mg, nicotinamide 40 mg, pyridoxine hydrochloride 4.9 mg, riboflavin sodium phosphate 4.9 mg, sodium ascorbate 113 mg, sodium pantothenate 16.5 mg, thiamine mononitrate 3.1 mg.

**VITLIPID N ADULT EMULSION FOR INJECTION 10ML AMPOULES** *Vitlipid N*<sup>®</sup> adult emulsion contains vitamin A

330 units, ergocalciferol 20 units, *dl*-alpha tocopherol 1 unit, phytomenadione 15 micrograms/mL.

For adults and children over 11 years.

**VITLIPID N INFANT EMULSION FOR INJECTION 10ML AMPOULES**

*Vitlipid N*<sup>®</sup> infant emulsion contains vitamin A 230 units, ergocalciferol 40 units, *dl*-alpha tocopherol 0.7 unit, phytomenadione 20 micrograms/mL.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for infusion

**Solution for injection**

► **Cernevit** (Baxter Healthcare Ltd)

Cyanocobalamin 6 microgram, Biotin 69 microgram, Folic acid 414 microgram, Thiamine 3.51 mg, Riboflavin (as Riboflavin sodium phosphate) 4.14 mg, Pyridoxine (as Pyridoxine hydrochloride) 4.53 mg, Pantothenic acid (as Dexpantenol) 17.25 mg, Nicotinamide 46 mg, Ascorbic acid 125 mg, Alpha tocopherol 11.2 unit, Colecalciferol 220 unit, Retinol 3500 unit *Cernevit* solution for injection vials and diluent | 10 vial [PoM] £5

**Solution for infusion**

► **Parenteral nutrition supplements (Non-proprietary)**

**Sodium glycerophosphate 216 mg per 1 ml** Sodium glycerophosphate 4.32g/20ml concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £5.33

► **Additrac** (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)

Sodium molybdate 4.85 microgram per 1 ml, Chromic chloride 5.33 microgram per 1 ml, Sodium selenite 10.5 microgram per 1 ml, Potassium iodide 16.6 microgram per 1 ml, Manganese chloride 99 microgram per 1 ml, Sodium fluoride 210 microgram per 1 ml, Copper chloride 340 microgram per 1 ml, Ferric chloride 544 microgram per 1 ml, Zinc chloride 1.36 mg per 1 ml *Additrac* solution for infusion 10ml ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £1.96

► **Dipeptiven** (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)

**N(2)-L-alanyl-L-glutamine 200 mg per 1 ml** *Dipeptiven* 20g/100ml concentrate for solution for infusion bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £25.93 *Dipeptiven* 10g/50ml concentrate for solution for infusion bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £13.94

► **Peditrace** (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)

**Manganese (as Manganese chloride) 1 microgram per 1 ml, Iodine (as Potassium iodide) 1 microgram per 1 ml, Selenium (as Sodium selenite) 2 microgram per 1 ml, Copper (as Copper chloride) 20 microgram per 1 ml, Fluoride (as Sodium fluoride) 57 microgram per 1 ml, Zinc (as Zinc chloride) 250 microgram per 1 ml** *Peditrace* solution for infusion 10ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £3.55

► **Tracutal** (B.Braun Melsungen AG)

Sodium molybdate dihydrate 2.42 microgram per 1 ml, Chromic chloride 5.33 microgram per 1 ml, Sodium selenite pentahydrate 7.89 microgram per 1 ml, Potassium iodide 16.6 microgram per 1 ml, Sodium fluoride 126 microgram per 1 ml, Manganese chloride 197.9 microgram per 1 ml, Copper chloride 204.6 microgram per 1 ml, Zinc chloride 681.5 microgram per 1 ml, Ferrous chloride 695.8 microgram per 1 ml *Tracutal* concentrate for solution for infusion 10ml ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £7.96

**Powder for solution for infusion**

► **Solivito N** (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)

Cyanocobalamin 5 microgram, Biotin 60 microgram, Folic acid 400 microgram, Thiamine nitrate 3.1 mg, Pyridoxine hydrochloride 4.9 mg, Riboflavin sodium phosphate 4.9 mg, Sodium pantothenate 16.5 mg, Nicotinamide 40 mg, Sodium ascorbate 113 mg *Solivito N* powder for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1.97

**Emulsion for injection**

► **Vitlipid N Adult** (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)

Ergocalciferol 500 nanogram per 1 ml, Phytomenadione 15 microgram per 1 ml, Retinol palmitate 99 microgram per 1 ml, Alpha tocopherol 910 microgram per 1 ml *Vitlipid N Adult* emulsion for injection 10ml ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £1.97

► **Vitlipid N Infant** (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)

Ergocalciferol 1 microgram per 1 ml, Phytomenadione 20 microgram per 1 ml, Retinol palmitate 69 microgram per 1 ml, Alpha tocopherol 640 microgram per 1 ml *Vitlipid N Infant* emulsion for injection 10ml ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £1.97

## 6 Nutrition (oral)

### Enteral nutrition

#### Overview

Children have higher nutrient requirements per kg bodyweight, different metabolic rates, and physiological responses compared to adults. They have low nutritional stores and are particularly vulnerable to growth and nutritional problems during critical periods of development. Major illness, operations, or trauma impose increased metabolic demands and can rapidly exhaust nutritional reserves.

Every effort should be made to optimise oral food intake before beginning enteral tube feeding; this may include change of posture, special seating, feeding equipment, oral desensitisation, food texture changes, thickening of liquids, increasing energy density of food, treatment of reflux or oesophagitis, as well as using age-specific nutritional supplements.

Enteral tube feeding has a role in both short-term rehabilitation and long-term nutritional management in paediatrics. It can be used as supportive therapy, in which the enteral feed supplies a proportion of the required nutrients, or as primary therapy, in which the enteral feed delivers all the necessary nutrients. Most children receiving tube feeds should also be encouraged to take oral food and drink. Tube feeding should be considered in the following situations:

- unsafe swallowing and risk of aspiration
- inability to consume at least 60% of energy needs by mouth
- total feeding time of more than 4 hours per day
- weight loss or no weight gain for a period of 3 months (less for younger children and infants)
- weight for height (or length) less than 2nd percentile for age and sex

Most feeds for enteral use contain protein derived from cows' milk or soya. Elemental feeds containing protein hydrolysates or free amino acids can be used for children who have diminished ability to break down protein, for example in inflammatory bowel disease or pancreatic insufficiency.

Even when nutritionally complete feeds are given, water and electrolyte balance should be monitored. Haematological and biochemical parameters should also be monitored, particularly in the clinically unstable child. Extra minerals (e.g. magnesium and zinc) may be needed in patients where gastro-intestinal secretions are being lost. Additional vitamins may also be needed.

Choosing the best formula for children depends on several factors including: nutritional requirements, gastro-intestinal function, underlying disease, nutrient restrictions, age, and feed characteristics (nutritional composition, viscosity, osmolality, availability and cost). Children have specific dietary requirements and in many situations liquid feeds prepared for adults are totally unsuitable and should not be given. Expert advice from a dietician should be sought before prescribing enteral feeds for a child.

#### Infant formula feeds

**Child 0–12 months.** Term infants with normal gastro-intestinal function are given either breast milk or normal infant formula during the first year of life. The average intake is between 150 mL and 200 mL/kg/day. Infant milk formulas are based on whey- or casein-dominant protein, lactose with or without maltodextrin, amylose, vegetable oil and milk fat. The composition of all normal and soya infant formulas have to meet The Infant Formula and Follow-on Formula Regulations (England and Wales) 2007, which enact

the European Community Regulations 2006/141/EC; the composition of other enteral and specialist feeds has to meet the Commission Directive (1999/21/EC) on Dietary Foods for Special Medical Purposes.

A high-energy feed, which contains 9–11% of energy derived from protein can be used for infants who fail to grow adequately. Alternatively, energy supplements may be added to normal infant formula to achieve a higher energy content (but this will reduce the protein to energy ratio) or the normal infant formula concentration may be increased slightly. Care should be taken not to present an osmotic load of more than 500 milliosmols/kg water to the normal functioning gut, otherwise osmotic diarrhoea will result. Concentrating or supplementing feeds should not be attempted without the advice of a paediatric dietician.

#### Enteral feeds

**Child 1–6 years (body-weight 8–20 kg).** Ready-to-use feeds based on caseinates, maltodextrin and vegetable oils (with or without added medium chain triglyceride (MCT) oil or fibre) are well tolerated and effective in improving nutritional status in this age group. Although originally designed for children 1–6 years (body-weight 8–20 kg), some products have ACBS approval for use in children weighing up to 30 kg (approx. 10 years of age). Enteral feeds formulated for children 1–6 years are low in sodium and potassium; electrolyte intake and biochemical status should be monitored. Older children in this age range taking small feed volumes may need to be given additional micronutrients. Fibre-enriched feeds may be helpful for children with chronic constipation or diarrhoea.

**Child 7–12 years (body-weight 21–45 kg).** Depending on age, weight, clinical condition and nutritional requirements, ready-to-use feeds formulated for 7–12 year olds may be given at appropriate rates.

**Child over 12 years (body-weight over 45 kg).** As there are no standard enteral feeds formulated for this age group, adult formulations are used. The intake of protein, electrolytes, vitamins, and trace minerals should be carefully assessed and monitored. Note: Adult feeds containing more than 6 g/100 mL protein or 2 g/100 mL fibre should be used with caution and expert advice.

#### Specialised formula

It is essential that any infant who is intolerant of breast milk or normal infant formula, or whose condition requires nutrient-specific adaptation, is prescribed an adequate volume of a nutritionally complete replacement formula. In the first 4 months of life, a volume of 150–200 mL/kg/day is recommended. After 6 months, should the formula still be required, a volume of 600 mL/day should be maintained, in addition to solid food.

**Products for cow's milk protein intolerance or lactose intolerance.** There are a number of infant formulas formulated for cow's milk protein intolerance or lactose intolerance; these feeds may contain a residual amount of lactose (less than 1 g/100 mL formula)—sometimes described as clinically lactose-free or 'lactose-free' by manufacturers. If the total daily intake of these formulas is low, it may be necessary to supplement with calcium, and a vitamin and mineral supplement.

**Soya-based** infant formulas have a high phytoestrogen content and this may be a long-term reproductive health risk. The Chief Medical Officer has advised that soya-based infant formulas should not be used as the first choice for the management of infants with proven cow's milk sensitivity, lactose intolerance, galactokinase deficiency and galactosaemia. Most UK paediatricians with expertise in inherited metabolic disease still advocate soya-based formulations for infants with galactosaemia as there are concerns about the residual lactose content of low lactose formulas and protein hydrolysates based on cow's milk protein.



**Low lactose** infant formulations, based on whole cow's milk protein, are unsuitable for children with cow's milk protein intolerance. Liquid soya milks purchased from supermarkets and health food stores are not nutritionally complete and should never be used for infants under 1 year of age.

**Protein hydrolysate formulas.** Non-milk, peptide-based feeds containing hydrolysates of casein, whey, meat and soya protein, are suitable for infants with disaccharide or whole protein intolerance. The total daily intake of electrolytes, vitamins and minerals should be carefully assessed and modified to meet the child's nutritional requirements; these feeds have a high osmolality when given at recommended dilution and need gradual and careful introduction.

**Elemental (amino acid based formula).** Specially formulated elemental feeds containing essential and nonessential amino acids are available for use in infants and children under 6 years with proven whole protein intolerance. Adult elemental formula may be used for children over 6 years; the intake of electrolytes, vitamins and minerals should be carefully assessed and modified to meet nutritional requirements. These feeds have a high osmolality when given at the recommended concentration and therefore need gradual and careful introduction.

**Modular feeds.** Modular feeds (see Specialised Formulas for Specific Clinical Conditions) are based on individual protein, fat, carbohydrate, vitamin and mineral components or modules which can be combined to meet the specific needs of a child. Modular feeds are used when nutritionally complete specialised formula are not tolerated, or if the fluid and nutrient requirements change e.g. in gastro-intestinal, renal or liver disease. The main advantage of modular feeds is their flexibility; disadvantages include their complexity and preparation difficulties. Modular feeds should not be used without the supervision of a paediatric dietician.

**Specialised formula.** Highly specialised formulas are designed to meet the specific requirements in various clinical conditions such as renal and liver diseases. When using these formulas, both the biochemical status of the child and their growth parameters need to be monitored.

#### Feed thickeners

**Carob based thickeners** may be used to thicken feeds for infants under 1 year with significant gastro-oesophageal reflux. Breast-fed infants can be given the thickener mixed to a paste with water or breast-milk prior to feeds.

**Pre-thickened formula** Milk-protein- or casein-dominant infant formula, which contains small quantities of pre-gelatinized starch, is recommended primarily for infants with mild gastro-oesophageal reflux. Pre-thickened formula is prepared in the same way as normal infant formula and flows through a standard teat. The feeds do not thicken on standing but thicken in the stomach when exposed to acid pH.

**Starched based thickeners** can be used to thicken liquids and feeds for children over 1 year of age with dysphagia.

#### Dietary supplements for oral use

Three types of prescribable fortified dietary supplements are available: fortified milk and non-milk tasting (juice-style) drinks, and fortified milk-based semi-solid preparations. The recommended daily quantity is age-dependent. The following is a useful guide: 1–2 years, 200 kcal (840 kJ); 3–5 years, 400 kcal (1680 kJ); 6–11 years, 600 kcal (2520 kJ); and over 12 years, 800 kcal (3360 kJ). Supplements containing 1.5 kcal/mL are high in protein and should not be used for children under 3 years of age. Many supplements are high in sugar or maltodextrin; care should be taken to prevent prolonged contact with teeth. Ideally supplements should be administered after meals or at bedtime so as not to affect appetite.

#### Products for metabolic diseases

There is a large range of disease-specific infant formulas and amino acid-based supplements available for use in children with metabolic diseases (see under specific metabolic diseases). Some of these formulas are nutritionally incomplete and supplementation with vitamins and other nutrients may be necessary. Many of the product names are similar; to prevent metabolic complications in children who cannot tolerate specific amino acids it is important to ensure the correct supplement is supplied.

#### Enteral feeding tubes

Care is required in choosing an appropriate formulation of a drug for administration through a nasogastric narrow-bore feeding tube or through a percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG) or jejunostomy tube. Liquid preparations (or soluble tablets) are preferred; injection solutions may also be suitable for administration through an enteral tube.

If a solid formulation of a medicine needs to be given, it should be given as a suspension of particles fine enough to pass through the tube. It is possible to crush many immediate-release tablets but enteric-coated or modified-release preparations should **not** be crushed.

Enteral feeds may affect the absorption of drugs and it is therefore important to consider the timing of drug administration in relation to feeds. If more than one drug needs to be given, they should be given separately and the tube should be flushed with water after each drug has been given.

#### Clearing blockages

Carbonated (sugar-free) drinks may be marginally more effective than water in unblocking feeding tubes, but mildly acidic liquids (such as pineapple juice or cola-based drinks) can coagulate protein in feeds, causing further blockage. If these measures fail to clear the enteral feeding tube, an alkaline solution containing pancreatic enzymes may be introduced into the tube (followed after at least 5 minutes by water). Specific products designed to break up blockages caused by formula feeds are also available.

## 6.1 Special diets

### Nutrition in special diets

#### Overview

These are preparations that have been modified to eliminate a particular constituent from a food or that are nutrient mixtures formulated as food substitutes for children who either cannot tolerate or cannot metabolise certain common constituents of food.

#### Celiac disease

Celiac disease is caused by an abnormal immune response to gluten. For management and further information, see Celiac disease p. 25.

#### Phenylketonuria

**Phenylketonuria** (hyperphenylalaninaemia, PKU), which results from the inability to metabolise **phenylalanine**, is managed by restricting dietary intake of **phenylalanine** to a small amount sufficient for tissue building and repair.

**Aspartame** (used as a sweetener in some foods and medicines) contributes to the **phenylalanine** intake and may affect control of **phenylketonuria**. If alternatives are unavailable, children with phenylketonuria should not be denied access to appropriate medication; the amount of **aspartame** consumed can be taken in to account in the management of the condition. Where the presence of **aspartame** in a preparation is specified in the product literature, **aspartame** is listed as an excipient in the relevant

product entry in *BNF for Children*; the child or carer should be informed of this.

Some rare forms of *phenylketonuria* are caused by a deficiency of **tetrahydrobiopterin**. Treatment involves oral supplementation of tetrahydrobiopterin below; in some severe cases, the addition of the neurotransmitter precursors, levodopa and 5-hydroxytryptophan, is also necessary.

Sapropterin dihydrochloride below, a synthetic form of tetrahydrobiopterin, is licensed as an adjunct to dietary restriction of **phenylalanine** in the management of patients with *phenylketonuria* and *tetrahydrobiopterin deficiency*.

### Products for metabolic diseases

There is a large range of disease-specific infant formulas and amino acid-based supplements available for use in children with metabolic diseases (see under specific metabolic diseases). Some of these formulas are nutritionally incomplete and supplementation with vitamins and other nutrients may be necessary. Many of the product names are similar; to prevent metabolic complications in children who cannot tolerate specific amino acids it is important to ensure the correct supplement is supplied.

## 6.1a Phenylketonuria

### DRUGS FOR METABOLIC DISORDERS > TETRAHYDROBIOPTERIN AND DERIVATIVES

#### Sapropterin dihydrochloride

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Phenylketonuria (adjunct to dietary restriction of phenylalanine) (specialist use only)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 4–17 years: Initially 10 mg/kg once daily, adjusted according to response; usual dose 5–20 mg/kg once daily, dose to be taken preferably in the morning

**Tetrahydrobiopterin deficiency (adjunct to dietary restriction of phenylalanine) (specialist use only)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: Initially 2–5 mg/kg once daily, adjusted according to response, dose to be taken preferably in the morning, the total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–3 divided doses; maximum 20 mg/kg per day.
- Child: Initially 2–5 mg/kg once daily, adjusted according to response, dose to be taken preferably in the morning, the total daily dose may alternatively be given in 2–3 divided doses; maximum 20 mg/kg per day

● **CAUTIONS** History of convulsions

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sapropterin

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · cough · diarrhoea · headache · laryngeal pain · nasal congestion · vomiting

► **Frequency not known** Hypersensitivity

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises caution—consider only if strict dietary management inadequate.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.

##### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Monitor blood-phenylalanine concentration before and after first week of treatment—if unsatisfactory response

increase dose at weekly intervals to max. dose and monitor blood-phenylalanine concentration weekly; discontinue treatment if unsatisfactory response after 1 month.

- Monitor blood-phenylalanine and tyrosine concentrations 1–2 weeks after dose adjustment and during treatment.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets should be dissolved in water and taken within 20 minutes.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Sapropterin is a synthetic form of tetrahydrobiopterin.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient or carers should be given advice on how to administer sapropterin dihydrochloride dispersible tablets.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Soluble tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13, 21

► **Kuvan** (BioMarin Europe Ltd)

**Sapropterin dihydrochloride 100 mg** Kuvan 100mg soluble tablets sugar-free | 30 tablet **[POM]** £597.22

## Tetrahydrobiopterin

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Monotherapy in tetrahydrobiopterin-sensitive phenylketonuria (specialist use only)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 10 mg/kg twice daily, adjusted according to response, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses

**In combination with neurotransmitter precursors for tetrahydrobiopterin-sensitive phenylketonuria (specialist use only)**

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–1 year: Initially 250–750 micrograms/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses; maximum 7 mg/kg per day
- Child 2–17 years: Initially 250–750 micrograms/kg 4 times a day, adjusted according to response, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses; maximum 10 mg/kg per day

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed.

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Diarrhoea · sleep disorder · urinary frequency increased

● **PREGNANCY** Crosses the placenta; use only if benefit outweighs risk.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk, effects unknown.

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution—accumulation of metabolites.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

## 7 Vitamin deficiency

### Vitamins

#### Overview

Vitamins are used for the prevention and treatment of specific deficiency states or where the diet is known to be inadequate; they may be prescribed in the NHS to prevent or treat deficiency but not as dietary supplements. Except for iron-deficiency anaemia, a primary vitamin or mineral deficiency due to simple dietary inadequacy is rare in the developed world. Some children may be at risk of developing

deficiencies because of an inadequate intake, impaired vitamin synthesis or malabsorption in disease states such as cystic fibrosis and Crohn's disease.

The use of vitamins as general 'pick-me-ups' is of unproven value and, the 'fad' for mega-vitamin therapy with water-soluble vitamins, such as ascorbic acid p. 629 and pyridoxine hydrochloride p. 627, is unscientific and can be harmful. Many vitamin supplements are described as 'multivitamin' but few contain the whole range of essential vitamins and many contain relatively high amounts of vitamins A and D. Care should be taken to ensure the correct dose is not exceeded.

Dietary reference values for vitamins are available in the Department of Health publication:

Dietary Reference Values for Food Energy and Nutrients for the United Kingdom: Report of the Panel on Dietary Reference Values of the Committee on Medical Aspects of Food Policy. *Report on Health and Social Subjects* 41. London: HMSO, 1991.

### Dental patients

It is unjustifiable to treat stomatitis or glossitis with mixtures of vitamin preparations; this delays diagnosis and correct treatment.

Most patients who develop a nutritional deficiency despite an adequate intake of vitamins have malabsorption and if this is suspected the patient should be referred to a medical practitioner.

### Vitamin A

Deficiency of vitamin A (retinol) p. 626 is associated with ocular defects (particularly xerophthalmia) and an increased susceptibility to infections, but deficiency is rare in the UK (even in disorders of fat absorption).

Vitamin A supplementation may be required in children with liver disease, particularly cholestatic liver disease, due to the malabsorption of fat soluble vitamins. In those with complete biliary obstruction an intramuscular dose once a month may be appropriate.

Preterm neonates have low plasma concentrations of vitamin A and are usually given vitamin A supplements, often as part of an oral multivitamin preparation once enteral feeding has been established.

### Vitamin B group

Deficiency of the B vitamins, other than vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, is rare in the UK and is usually treated by preparations containing thiamine (B<sub>1</sub>) p. 628, and riboflavin (B<sub>2</sub>). Other members (or substances traditionally classified as members) of the vitamin B complex such as aminobenzoic acid, biotin, choline, inositol nicotinate, and pantothenic acid or pantothenol may be included in vitamin B preparations, but there is no evidence of their value as supplements; however, they can be used in the management of certain metabolic disorders. Anaphylaxis has been reported with parenteral B vitamins.

As with other vitamins of the B group, pyridoxine hydrochloride (B<sub>6</sub>) deficiency is rare, but it may occur during isoniazid p. 367 therapy or penicillamine p. 616 treatment in Wilson's disease and is characterised by peripheral neuritis. High doses of pyridoxine hydrochloride are given in some metabolic disorders, such as hyperoxaluria, cystathioninuria and homocystinuria; folic acid p. 574 supplementation may also be beneficial in these disorders. Pyridoxine hydrochloride is also used in sideroblastic anaemia. Rarely, seizures in the neonatal period or during infancy respond to pyridoxine hydrochloride treatment; pyridoxine hydrochloride should be tried in all cases of early-onset intractable seizures and status epilepticus. Pyridoxine hydrochloride has been tried for a wide variety of other disorders, but there is little sound evidence to support the claims of efficacy.

A number of mitochondrial disorders may respond to treatment with certain B vitamins but these disorders require specialist management. Thiamine is used in the treatment of maple syrup urine disease, mitochondrial respiratory chain defects and, together with riboflavin, in the treatment of congenital lactic acidosis; riboflavin is also used in glutaric acidemias and cytochrome oxidase deficiencies; biotin is used in carboxylase defects.

Folic acid and vitamin B<sub>12</sub> are used in the treatment of megaloblastic anaemia. Folinic acid p. 555 (available as calcium folinate) is used in association with cytotoxic therapy.

### Vitamin C

Vitamin C (ascorbic acid) therapy is essential in scurvy, but less florid manifestations of vitamin C deficiency have been reported. Vitamin C is used to enhance the excretion of iron one month after starting desferrioxamine mesilate p. 578 therapy; it is given separately from food as it also enhances iron absorption. Vitamin C is also used in the treatment of some inherited metabolic disorders, particularly mitochondrial disorders; specialist management of these conditions is required.

Severe scurvy causes gingival swelling and bleeding margins as well as petechiae on the skin. This is, however, exceedingly rare and a child with these signs is more likely to have leukaemia. Investigation should not be delayed by a trial period of vitamin treatment.

Claims that vitamin C ameliorates colds or promotes wound healing have not been proved.

### Vitamin D

The term Vitamin D is used for a range of compounds including ergocalciferol (calciferol, vitamin D<sub>2</sub>) p. 634, colecalciferol (vitamin D<sub>3</sub>) p. 631, dihydrotachysterol, alfalcaldol (1 $\alpha$ -hydroxycholecalciferol) p. 630, and calcitriol (1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol) p. 631.

Asymptomatic vitamin D deficiency is common in the United Kingdom; symptomatic deficiency may occur in certain ethnic groups, particularly as rickets or hypocalcaemia, and rarely in association with malabsorption. The amount of vitamin D required in infancy is related to the stores built up *in-utero* and subsequent exposure to sunlight. The amount of vitamin D in breast milk varies and some breast-fed babies, particularly if preterm or born to vitamin D deficient mothers, may become deficient. Most formula milk and supplement feeds contain adequate vitamin D to prevent deficiency.

Simple, nutritional vitamin D deficiency can be prevented by oral supplementation of ergocalciferol (calciferol, vitamin D<sub>2</sub>) or colecalciferol (vitamin D<sub>3</sub>) daily, using multi-vitamin drops, preparations of vitamins A and D, manufactured 'special' solutions, or as calcium and ergocalciferol tablets (although the calcium and other vitamins in supplements are unnecessary); excessive supplementation may cause hypercalcaemia.

Inadequate bone mineralisation can be caused by a deficiency, or a lack of action of vitamin D or its active metabolite. In childhood this causes bowing and distortion of bones (rickets). In nutritional vitamin D deficiency rickets, initial high doses of ergocalciferol or colecalciferol should be reduced to supplemental doses after 8–12 weeks, as there is a significant risk of hypercalcaemia. However, calcium supplements are recommended if there is hypocalcaemia or evidence of a poor dietary calcium intake. A single large dose of ergocalciferol p. 634 or colecalciferol p. 631 can also be effective for the treatment of nutritional vitamin D deficiency rickets.

Poor bone mineralisation in neonates and young children may also be due to inadequate intake of phosphate or calcium particularly during long-term parenteral nutrition—

supplementation with phosphate or calcium may be required.

*Hypophosphataemic rickets* occurs due to abnormal phosphate excretion; treatment with high doses of oral phosphate, and hydroxylated (activated) forms of vitamin D allow bone mineralisation and optimise growth.

Nutritional deficiency of vitamin D is best treated with colecalciferol or ergocalciferol. Preparations containing calcium and colecalciferol are also occasionally used in children where there is evidence of combined calcium and vitamin D deficiency. Vitamin D deficiency caused by *intestinal malabsorption* or *chronic liver disease* usually requires vitamin D in pharmacological doses; the hypocalcaemia of *hypoparathyroidism* often requires higher doses in order to achieve normocalcaemia and alfacalcidol p. 630 is generally preferred.

Vitamin D supplementation is often given in combination with calcium supplements for persistent hypocalcaemia in neonates, and in chronic renal disease.

Vitamin D requires hydroxylation, by the kidney and liver, to its active form therefore the hydroxylated derivatives alfacalcidol or calcitriol p. 631 should be prescribed if patients with *severe liver* or *renal impairment* require vitamin D therapy. Alfacalcidol is generally preferred in children as there is more experience of its use and appropriate formulations are available. Calcitriol is unlicensed for use in children and is generally reserved for those with severe liver disease.

### Vitamin E

The daily requirement of vitamin E (tocopherol) has not been well defined. Vitamin E supplements are given to children with fat malabsorption such as in cystic fibrosis and cholestatic liver disease. In children with abetalipoproteinaemia abnormally low vitamin E concentrations may occur in association with neuromuscular problems; this usually responds to high doses of vitamin E. Some neonatal units still administer a single intramuscular dose of vitamin E at birth to preterm neonates to reduce the risk of complications; no trials of long-term outcome have been carried out. The intramuscular route should also be considered in children with severe liver disease when response to oral therapy is inadequate.

Vitamin E has been tried for various other conditions but there is little scientific evidence of its value.

### Vitamin K

Vitamin K is necessary for the production of blood clotting factors and proteins necessary for the normal calcification of bone.

Because vitamin K is fat soluble, children with fat malabsorption, especially in biliary obstruction or hepatic disease, may become deficient. For oral administration to prevent vitamin K deficiency in malabsorption syndromes, a water-soluble synthetic vitamin K derivative, menadiol sodium phosphate p. 636 can be used if supplementation with phytomenadione p. 636 by mouth has been insufficient.

Oral coumarin anticoagulants act by interfering with vitamin K metabolism in the hepatic cells and their effects can be antagonised by giving vitamin K; see advice on the use of vitamin K in haemorrhage.

### Multivitamins

Multivitamin supplements are used in children with vitamin deficiencies and also in malabsorption conditions such as cystic fibrosis or liver disease. Supplementation is not required if nutrient enriched feeds are used; consult a dietician for further advice.

### Vitamin K

#### Vitamin K deficiency bleeding

Neonates are relatively deficient in vitamin K and those who do not receive supplements of vitamin K are at risk of serious bleeding including intracranial bleeding. The Chief Medical Officer and the Chief Nursing Officer have recommended that all newborn babies should receive vitamin K to prevent vitamin K deficiency bleeding (previously termed haemorrhagic disease of the newborn). An appropriate regimen should be selected after discussion with parents in the antenatal period.

Vitamin K (as phytomenadione) may be given by a single intramuscular injection at birth; this prevents vitamin K deficiency bleeding in virtually all babies.

Alternatively, in healthy babies who are not at particular risk of bleeding disorders, vitamin K may be given by mouth, and arrangements must be in place to ensure the appropriate regimen is followed. Two doses of a colloidal (mixed micelle) preparation of phytomenadione should be given by mouth in the first week, the first dose being given at birth and the second dose at 4–7 days. For exclusively breast-fed babies, a third dose of colloidal phytomenadione is given by mouth at 1 month of age; the third dose is omitted in formula-fed babies because formula feeds contain adequate vitamin K. An alternative regimen is to give one dose of phytomenadione by mouth at birth (using the contents of a phytomenadione capsule) to protect from the risk of vitamin K deficiency bleeding in the first week; for exclusively breast-fed babies, further doses of phytomenadione are given by mouth (using the contents of a phytomenadione capsule) at weekly intervals for 12 weeks.

### VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > MULTIVITAMINS

## Vitamins A and D

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Prevention of vitamin A and D deficiency

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 1 capsule daily, 1 capsule contains 4000 units vitamin A and 400 units (10 micrograms) vitamin D

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed in children under 6 months of age.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### Overdose

**Excessive ingestion** Prolonged excessive ingestion of vitamins A and D can lead to hypervitaminosis.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** This drug contains vitamin D; consult individual vitamin D monographs.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Capsule

###### ► Vitamins a and d (Non-proprietary)

**Vitamin D 400 unit, Vitamin A 4000 unit** Vitamins A and D capsules BPC 1973 | 28 capsule £2.81 | 28 capsule [GSL] £2.81 | 84 capsule £6.75–£8.42 DT = £8.42

## Vitamins A, B group, C and D

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Prevention of deficiency

###### ► BY MOUTH USING CAPSULES

- Child 1–11 years: 1 capsule daily
- Child 12–17 years: 2 capsules daily

continued →

**Cystic Fibrosis: prevention of deficiency**

- BY MOUTH USING CAPSULES
- Child 1–17 years: 2–3 capsules daily

**ABIDEC MULTIVITAMIN DROPS®****Prevention of deficiency**

- BY MOUTH USING ORAL DROPS
- Preterm neonate: 0.6 mL daily.

- Neonate: 0.3 mL daily.

- Child 1–11 months: 0.3 mL daily
- Child 1–17 years: 0.6 mL daily

**Cystic Fibrosis: prevention of deficiency**

- BY MOUTH USING ORAL DROPS
- Child 1–11 months: 0.6 mL daily
- Child 1–17 years: 1.2 mL daily

**DALIVIT ORAL DROPS®****Prevention of deficiency**

- BY MOUTH USING ORAL DROPS
- Preterm neonate: 0.3 mL daily.

- Neonate: 0.3 mL daily.

- Child 1–11 months: 0.3 mL daily
- Child 1–17 years: 0.6 mL daily

**Cystic Fibrosis: prevention of deficiency**

- BY MOUTH USING ORAL DROPS
- Child 1–11 months: 0.6 mL daily
- Child 1–17 years: 1 mL daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Dalivit*® not licensed for use in children under 6 weeks.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** This drug contains vitamin D; consult individual vitamin D monographs.

To avoid potential toxicity, the content of all vitamin preparations, particularly vitamin A, should be considered when used together with other supplements.

Vitamin A concentration of preparations varies.

**ABIDEC MULTIVITAMIN DROPS®** *Abidec*® contains 1333 units of vitamin A (as palmitate) per 0.6 mL dose.

**DALIVIT ORAL DROPS®** *Dalivit*® contains 5000 units of vitamin A (as palmitate) per 0.6 mL dose.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oral drops**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Arachis (peanut) oil, sucrose

- **Abidec Multivitamin** (Omega Pharma Ltd)

Nicotinamide 1333 microgram per 1 mL, Pyridoxine hydrochloride 1333 microgram per 1 mL, Riboflavin 1333 microgram per 1 mL, Thiamine hydrochloride 1.67 mg per 1 mL, Ascorbic acid 66.7 mg per 1 mL, Ergocalciferol 667 iu per 1 mL, Retinol (as Vitamin A palmitate) 2222 iu per 1 mL *Abidec Multivitamin drops* | 25 mL [GSL] £3.68

- **Dalivit** (Boston Healthcare Ltd)

Riboflavin 667 microgram per 1 mL, Pyridoxine 833 microgram per 1 mL, Thiamine 1667 microgram per 1 mL, Nicotinamide 8.3 mg per 1 mL, Ascorbic acid 83 mg per 1 mL, Ergocalciferol 667 iu per 1 mL, Vitamin A 8333 iu per 1 mL *Dalivit oral drops* | 25 mL [GSL] £6.50 | 50 mL [GSL] £11.36

**Capsule**

- **Vitamins a, b group, c and d (Non-proprietary)**

Riboflavin 500 microgram, Thiamine hydrochloride 1 mg, Nicotinamide 7.5 mg, Ascorbic acid 15 mg, Vitamin D 300 unit, Vitamin A 2500 unit *Vitamins capsules* | 1000 capsule £48.20 DT = £15.48

**Vitamins A, C and D**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, vitamin A below, ascorbic acid p. 629.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Prevention of vitamin deficiency**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 1 month–4 years: 5 drops daily, 5 drops contain vitamin A approx. 700 units, vitamin D approx. 300 units (7.5 micrograms), ascorbic acid approx. 20 mg

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ascorbic acid · vitamin A

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** This drug contains vitamin D; consult individual vitamin D monographs.

Available free of charge to children under 4 years in families on the Healthy Start Scheme, or alternatively may be available direct to the public—further information for healthcare professionals can be accessed at [www.healthystart.nhs.uk](http://www.healthystart.nhs.uk). Beneficiaries can contact their midwife or health visitor for further information on where to obtain supplies.

*Healthy Start Vitamins for women* (containing ascorbic acid, vitamin D, and folic acid) are also available free of charge to women on the Healthy Start Scheme during pregnancy and until their baby is one year old, or alternatively may be available direct to the public—further information for healthcare professionals can be accessed at [www.healthystart.nhs.uk](http://www.healthystart.nhs.uk). Beneficiaries can contact their midwife or health visitor for further information on where to obtain supplies.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oral drops**

- **Healthy Start Children's Vitamin** (Secretary of State for Health) Vitamin A and D3 concentrate.55 mg per 1 mL, Sodium ascorbate 18.58 mg per 1 mL, Ascorbic acid 150 mg per 1 mL, Vitamin D 2000 iu per 1 mL, Vitamin A 5000 iu per 1 mL *Healthy Start Children's Vitamin drops* | 10 mL [X]

**VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > VITAMIN A****Vitamin A****(Retinol)**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Vitamin A deficiency**

- BY MOUTH
- Neonate: 5000 units daily, higher doses may be used initially for treatment of severe deficiency.
- Child 1–11 months: 5000 units daily, to be taken with or after food, higher doses may be used initially for treatment of severe deficiency
- Child 1–17 years: 10 000 units daily, to be taken with or after food, higher doses may be used initially for treatment of severe deficiency

**Prevention of deficiency in complete biliary obstruction**

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Neonate: 50 000 units once a month.
- Child 1–11 months: 50 000 units once a month

- **UNLICENSED USE** Preparations containing only vitamin A are not licensed.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: vitamin A



### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

**Overdose** Massive overdose can cause rough skin, dry hair, an enlarged liver, and a raised erythrocyte sedimentation rate and raised serum calcium and serum alkaline phosphatase concentrations

- **PREGNANCY** Excessive doses may be teratogenic. In view of evidence suggesting that high levels of vitamin A may cause birth defects, women who are (or may become) pregnant are advised not to take vitamin A supplements (including tablets and fish liver oil drops), except on the advice of a doctor or an antenatal clinic; nor should they eat liver or products such as liver pâté or liver sausage.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Theoretical risk of toxicity in infants of mothers taking large doses.



- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Treatment is sometimes initiated with very high doses of vitamin A and the child should be monitored closely; very high doses are associated with acute toxicity.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral drops, solution for injection

#### **Solution for injection**

##### ▶ **Vitamin A (Imported)**

**Retinol (as Vitamin A palmitate) 50000 unit per 1 ml** Aqualos A Parenteral 100,000units/2ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM]   
Nepalm Vitamin A 100,000units/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 6 ampoule [PoM] 

#### **Oral drops**

##### ▶ **Arovit (Imported (Italy))**

**Vitamin A 150000 unit per 1 ml** Arovit 150,000units/ml drops | 7.5 ml [PoM] 

Combinations available: **Vitamins A, C and D**, p. 626

## VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > VITAMIN B GROUP

### **Biotin**

(Vitamin H)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### **Isolated carboxylase defects**

▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ **Neonate:** 5 mg once daily, adjusted according to response, maintenance 10–50 mg daily, higher doses may be required.

- ▶ **Child:** 10 mg once daily, adjusted according to response; maintenance 10–50 mg daily, increased if necessary up to 100 mg daily

#### **Defects of biotin metabolism**

▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ **Neonate:** Initially 10 mg once daily, adjusted according to response; maintenance 5–20 mg daily, higher doses may be required.
- ▶ **Child:** Initially 10 mg once daily, adjusted according to response; maintenance 5–20 mg daily, higher doses may be required

- **PREGNANCY** No information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For administration by mouth, tablets may be crushed and mixed with food or drink.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Biotin for metabolic disorders


[www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/biotin-metabolic-disorders-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/biotin-metabolic-disorders-0)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, oral suspension, oral solution

#### **Solution for injection**


##### ▶ **Biodermatin (Imported (Italy))**

**Biotin 5 mg per 1 ml** Biodermatin 5mg/1ml solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] 

#### **Tablet**

##### ▶ **Biotin (Imported)**

**Biotin 5 mg** Biotin-ratiopharm 5 tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] 

**Biotin 10 mg** Biotisan Biotin 5 10mg FORTE tablets | 30 tablet 

##### ▶ **OroB7 (Rhodes Pharma Ltd)**

**Biotin 5 mg** OroB7 5mg tablets | 30 tablet £33.99

## Pyridoxine hydrochloride

(Vitamin B<sub>6</sub>)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### **Isoniazid-induced neuropathy (prophylaxis)**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate:** 5 mg daily.

- ▶ **Child 1 month–11 years:** 5–10 mg daily

- ▶ **Child 12–17 years:** 10 mg daily

#### **Isoniazid-induced neuropathy (treatment)**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate:** 5–10 mg daily.

- ▶ **Child 1 month–11 years:** 10–20 mg 2–3 times a day

- ▶ **Child 12–17 years:** 30–50 mg 2–3 times a day

#### **Prevention of penicillamine-induced neuropathy in Wilson's disease**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Child 1–11 years:** 5–10 mg daily

- ▶ **Child 12–17 years:** 10 mg daily

#### **Metabolic diseases | Cystathioninuria | Homocystinuria**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ **Neonate:** 50–100 mg 1–2 times a day.

- ▶ **Child:** 50–250 mg 1–2 times a day

#### **Pyridoxine-dependent seizures**

▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ **Neonate:** Test dose 50–100 mg, repeated if necessary, if responsive, followed by an oral maintenance dose; (by mouth) maintenance 50–100 mg once daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary.

- ▶ **Child 1 month–11 years:** Test dose 50–100 mg daily, if responsive, followed by an oral maintenance dose; (by mouth) maintenance 20–50 mg 1–2 times a day, dose to be adjusted as necessary, (by mouth) increased if necessary up to 30 mg/kg daily, alternatively (by mouth) increased if necessary up to 1 g daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for prophylaxis of penicillamine-induced neuropathy in Wilson's disease. Not licensed for use in children.

### ● CAUTIONS

- ▶ With intravenous use risk of cardiovascular collapse (with intravenous injection—resuscitation facilities must be available and monitor closely)

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Peripheral neuritis

### • MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection

#### Tablet

##### ► Pyridoxine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Pyridoxine hydrochloride 10 mg** Pyridoxine 10mg tablets | 28 tablet £12.95 DT = £12.95 | 28 tablet [PoM] £16.95 DT = £12.95

**Pyridoxine hydrochloride 20 mg** Pyridoxine 20mg tablets | 500 tablet [GSL] [S]

**Pyridoxine hydrochloride 50 mg** Pyridoxine 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [P] [S] DT = £12.00

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Pyridoxine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Pyridoxine hydrochloride 25 mg per 1 ml** Sicovit B6 50mg/2ml solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] [S]

**Pyridoxine hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Vitamin B6 Streuli 100mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] [S]

#### Capsule

##### ► Pyridoxine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Pyridoxine hydrochloride 100 mg** Vitamin B6 100mg capsules | 120 capsule £6.00

## Riboflavin

(Riboflavine; Vitamin B<sub>2</sub>)

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Metabolic diseases

##### ► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 50 mg 1–2 times a day, adjusted according to response.

► Child: 50–100 mg 1–2 times a day, adjusted according to response to up to 400 mg daily

### • UNLICENSED USE Not licensed in children.

### • SIDE-EFFECTS Urine discolouration

### • PREGNANCY Crosses the placenta but no adverse effects reported, information at high doses limited.

### • BREAST FEEDING Present in breast milk but no adverse effects reported, information at high doses limited.

### • MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, modified-release tablet, capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

#### Modified-release tablet

##### ► Riboflavin (Non-proprietary)

**Riboflavin 100 mg** Vitamin B2 100mg modified-release tablets | 60 tablet £4.46

#### Capsule

##### ► Riboflavin (Non-proprietary)

**Riboflavin 50 mg** Riboflavin 50mg capsules | 30 capsule £3.13

##### ► B-2-50 (Bio-Tech Pharmacal Inc)

**Riboflavin 50 mg** B-2-50 capsules | 100 capsule [S]

##### ► E-B2 (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)

**Riboflavin 50 mg** E-B2 50mg capsules | 30 capsule £84.70

**Riboflavin 100 mg** E-B2 100mg capsules | 30 capsule £89.20

## Thiamine

(Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>)

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Maple syrup urine disease

##### ► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 5 mg/kg daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary.

► Child: 5 mg/kg daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary

### Metabolic disorders | Congenital lactic acidosis

#### ► INITIALLY BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: 50–200 mg once daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary, the total dose may alternatively be given in 2–3 divided doses, administer intravenous infusion over 30 minutes.

► Child: 100–300 mg once daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary, the total dose may alternatively be given in 2–3 divided doses, administer intravenous infusion over 30 minutes, (by mouth) increased if necessary up to 2 g daily

### • UNLICENSED USE Not licensed in children.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

#### MHRA/CHM ADVICE (SEPTEMBER 2007)

Although potentially serious allergic adverse reactions may rarely occur during, or shortly after, parenteral administration, the CHM has recommended that:

- This should not preclude the use of parenteral thiamine in patients where this route of administration is required, particularly in patients at risk of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome where treatment with thiamine is essential;
- Intravenous administration should be by infusion over 30 minutes;
- Facilities for treating anaphylaxis (including resuscitation facilities) should be available when parenteral thiamine is administered.

### • CAUTIONS Anaphylaxis may occasionally follow injection

### • SIDE-EFFECTS Abdominal pain · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal disorder · nausea · palpitations · respiratory distress · shock · skin reactions · tachycardia · vomiting

### • BREAST FEEDING Severely thiamine-deficient mothers should avoid breast-feeding as toxic methyl-glyoxal present in milk.

### • PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

► With intravenous use Some preparations may contain phenol as a preservative.

### • MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Modified-release tablet

##### ► Thiamine (Non-proprietary)

**Thiamine hydrochloride 100 mg** Vitamin B1 100mg modified-release tablets | 90 tablet £4.46

#### Tablet

##### ► Thiamine (Non-proprietary)

**Thiamine hydrochloride 25 mg** Vitamin B1 25mg tablets | 100 tablet [P] [S]

**Thiamine hydrochloride 50 mg** Thiamine 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [P] £1.32–£1.80 | 100 tablet [S] DT = £4.72 | 100 tablet [P] £6.72 DT = £4.72

**Thiamine hydrochloride 100 mg** Thiamine 100mg tablets | 28 tablet [P] £1.91–£6.72 | 100 tablet [P] £11.55 DT = £6.83 | 100 tablet [S] DT = £6.83

##### ► Benerva (Teofarma)

**Thiamine hydrochloride 50 mg** Benerva 50mg tablets | 100 tablet [P] £4.00 DT = £4.72

**Thiamine hydrochloride 100 mg** Benerva 100mg tablets | 100 tablet [P] £6.29 DT = £6.83

##### ► Tyvera (Auden McKenzie (Pharma Division) Ltd)

**Thiamine hydrochloride 100 mg** Tyvera 100mg tablets | 100 tablet [P] £6.99 DT = £6.83

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Thiamine (Imported)

**Thiamine hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Bevitate 100mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] [S]

**Thiamine hydrochloride 100 mg per 1 ml** Vitamin B1 Streuli 100mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] [S]

## Vitamin B complex

20-Jul-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Treatment of deficiency

- BY MOUTH USING SYRUP
- Child 1–11 months: 5 mL 3 times a day, this dose is for *Vigranon B*<sup>®</sup> syrup.
- Child 1–11 years: 10 mL 3 times a day, this dose is for *Vigranon B*<sup>®</sup> syrup.
- Child 12–17 years: 10–15 mL 3 times a day, this dose is for *Vigranon B*<sup>®</sup> syrup.

#### Prophylaxis of deficiency

- BY MOUTH USING SYRUP
- Child 1–11 months: 5 mL once daily, this dose is for *Vigranon B*<sup>®</sup> syrup.
- Child 1–11 years: 5 mL twice daily, this dose is for *Vigranon B*<sup>®</sup> syrup.
- Child 12–17 years: 5 mL 3 times a day, this dose is for *Vigranon B*<sup>®</sup> syrup.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

**NHS restrictions** *Vigranon B*<sup>®</sup> syrup is not prescribable in NHS primary care.

- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Vitamin B compound tablets, vitamin B compound strong tablets, and *Vigranon B*<sup>®</sup> syrup are less suitable for prescribing.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral solution

- **Vigranon-B** (Wallace Manufacturing Chemists Ltd)  
Pyridoxine hydrochloride 400 microgram per 1 mL, Riboflavin sodium phosphate 548 microgram per 1 mL, Dexpantenol 600 microgram per 1 mL, Thiamine hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 mL, Nicotinamide 4 mg per 1 mL *Vigranon-B* syrup sugar-free | 150 mL | P £26.00

## Vitamins with minerals and trace elements

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### FORCEVAL<sup>®</sup> CAPSULES

**Vitamin and mineral deficiency and as adjunct in synthetic diets**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 12–17 years: 1 capsule daily, one hour after a meal

#### KETOVITE<sup>®</sup> LIQUID

**Prevention of vitamin deficiency in disorders of carbohydrate or amino-acid metabolism | Adjunct in restricted, specialised, or synthetic diets**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: 5 mL daily, dose adjusted according to condition, diet, or age, use with *Ketovite<sup>®</sup> Tablets* for complete vitamin supplementation.

#### KETOVITE<sup>®</sup> TABLETS

**Prevention of vitamin deficiency in disorders of carbohydrate or amino-acid metabolism | Adjunct in restricted, specialised, or synthetic diets**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: 1 tablet 3 times a day, dose adjusted according to condition, diet, or age, use with *Ketovite<sup>®</sup> Liquid* for complete vitamin supplementation.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** To avoid potential toxicity, the content of all vitamin preparations, particularly vitamin A, should be considered when used together with other supplements.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Multivitamin preparations for vitamin deficiency [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/multivitamin-preparations-vitamin-deficiency](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/multivitamin-preparations-vitamin-deficiency)

**KETOVITE<sup>®</sup> LIQUID** *Ketovite<sup>®</sup> Liquid* may be mixed with milk, cereal, or fruit juice.

**KETOVITE<sup>®</sup> TABLETS** Tablets may be crushed immediately before use.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral emulsion

- **Ketovite** (Essential Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Cyanocobalamin 2.5 microgram per 1 mL, Choline chloride 30 mg per 1 mL, Ergocalciferol 80 unit per 1 mL, Vitamin A 500 unit per 1 mL *Ketovite liquid sugar-free* | 150 mL | P £19.10

#### Tablet

- **Ketovite** (Essential Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Biotin 170 microgram, Folic acid 250 microgram, Pyridoxine hydrochloride 330 microgram, Acetomenaphthone 500 microgram, Riboflavin 1 mg, Thiamine hydrochloride 1 mg, Calcium pantothenate 1.16 mg, Nicotinamide 3.3 mg, Alpha tocopheryl acetate 5 mg, Ascorbic acid 16.6 mg, Inositol 50 mg *Ketovite tablets* | 100 tablet | PoM | £9.21

#### Capsule

- **Forceval** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Cyanocobalamin 3 microgram, Selenium 50 microgram, Biotin 100 microgram, Iodine 140 microgram, Chromium 200 microgram, Molybdenum 250 microgram, Folic acid 400 microgram, Thiamine 1.2 mg, Riboflavin 1.6 mg, Copper 2 mg, Pyridoxine 2 mg, Manganese 3 mg, Pantothenic acid 4 mg, Potassium 4 mg, Tocopheryl acetate 10 mg, Iron 12 mg, Zinc 15 mg, Nicotinamide 18 mg, Magnesium 30 mg, Ascorbic acid 60 mg, Phosphorus 77 mg, Calcium 100 mg, Ergocalciferol 400 unit, Vitamin A 2500 unit *Forceval capsules* | 15 capsule | P £4.86 | 30 capsule | P £8.48 | 90 capsule | P £25.44

## VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > VITAMIN C

## Ascorbic acid

(Vitamin C)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Treatment of scurvy

- BY MOUTH
- Child 1 month–3 years: 125–250 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses
- Child 4–11 years: 250–500 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses
- Child 12–17 years: 0.5–1 g daily in 1–2 divided doses

**Adjunct to desferrioxamine (to enhance the excretion of iron 1 month after treatment)**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: 100–200 mg daily, to be taken 1 hour before food

**Metabolic disorders | Tyrosinaemia type III | Transient tyrosinaemia of the newborn | Glutathione synthase deficiency | Hawkinsinuria**

- BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 50–200 mg daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary.

- Child: 200–400 mg daily in 1–2 divided doses, dose to be adjusted as necessary, increased if necessary up to 1 g daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for metabolic disorders.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hyperoxaluria

- **CAUTIONS**

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Iron overload** Ascorbic acid should not be given to patients with cardiac dysfunction.

In patients with normal cardiac function ascorbic acid should be introduced 1 month after starting desferrioxamine.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ascorbic acid
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Diarrhoea · drug tolerance · gastrointestinal disorder · hyperoxaluria · oxalate nephrolithiasis · polyuria
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** It is rarely necessary to prescribe more than 100 mg daily except early in the treatment of scurvy.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, oral suspension, oral solution

##### Tablet

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

##### ▶ Ascorbic acid (Non-proprietary)

**Ascorbic acid 50 mg** Ascorbic acid 50mg tablets | 28 tablet **[GSL]**  
£15.05 DT = £15.05 | 28 tablet **[S]** DT = £15.05

**Ascorbic acid 100 mg** Ascorbic acid 100mg tablets | 28 tablet **[GSL]**  
£14.30 DT = £14.30 | 28 tablet **[S]** DT = £14.30

**Ascorbic acid 200 mg** Ascorbic acid 200mg tablets | 28 tablet **[S]** DT = £19.86 | 28 tablet **[GSL]** £19.86 DT = £19.86

**Ascorbic acid 250 mg** Ascorbic acid 250mg tablets | 1000 tablet **[PoM]** **[S]**

**Ascorbic acid 500 mg** Ascorbic acid 500mg tablets | 28 tablet **[GSL]**  
£26.87 DT = £26.87 | 28 tablet **[S]** DT = £26.87

##### Chewable tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 24

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

##### ▶ Ascur (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)

**Ascorbic acid 100 mg** Ascur 100mg chewable tablets | 30 tablet  
£3.95

**Ascorbic acid (as Sodium ascorbate) 500 mg** Ascur 500mg  
chewable tablets sugar-free | 30 tablet £2.99

##### Capsule

##### ▶ Ascorbic acid (Non-proprietary)

**Ascorbic acid 500 mg** Vitamin C 500mg capsules | 60 capsule £7.73  
| 180 capsule £19.82

Combinations available: **Vitamins A, C and D**, p. 626

## VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > VITAMIN D AND ANALOGUES

### Vitamin D and analogues (systemic)



- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hypercalcaemia · metastatic calcification

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · headache · hypercalcaemia · hypercalciuria · nausea · skin reactions
- ▶ **Uncommon** Appetite decreased · constipation · thirst · vomiting

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Overdose** Symptoms of overdosage include anorexia, lassitude, nausea and vomiting, diarrhoea, constipation, weight loss, polyuria, sweating, headache, thirst, vertigo, and raised concentrations of calcium and phosphate in plasma and urine.

- **PREGNANCY** High doses teratogenic in *animals* but therapeutic doses unlikely to be harmful.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Caution with high doses; may cause hypercalcaemia in infant—monitor serum-calcium concentration.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** **Important:** all patients receiving pharmacological doses of vitamin D should have their plasma-calcium concentration checked at intervals (initially once or twice weekly) and whenever nausea or vomiting occur.

## Alfacalcidol

### (1 $\alpha$ -Hydroxycholecalciferol)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Hypophosphataemic rickets | Persistent hypocalcaemia due to hypoparathyroidism or pseudohypoparathyroidism**

▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 25–50 nanograms/kg once daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary; maximum 1 microgram per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1 microgram once daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary

#### Persistent neonatal hypocalcaemia

▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: 50–100 nanograms/kg once daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary, in resistant cases higher doses may be needed; increased if necessary up to 2 micrograms/kg daily.

#### Prevention of vitamin D deficiency in renal or cholestatic liver disease

▶ BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: 20 nanograms/kg once daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary.
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight up to 20 kg): 15–30 nanograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 500 nanograms)
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years (body-weight 20 kg and above): 250–500 nanograms once daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 250–500 nanograms once daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ One drop of alfacalcidol 2 microgram/mL oral drops contains approximately 100 nanograms alfacalcidol.

- **CAUTIONS** Nephrolithiasis · take care to ensure correct dose in infants

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: vitamin D substances

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal discomfort · hyperphosphataemia
- ▶ **Uncommon** Asthenia · diarrhoea · malaise · myalgia · urolithiasis
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Dizziness
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Confusion · renal impairment

#### • RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Monitoring** Monitor plasma-calcium concentration in renal impairment.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor plasma-calcium concentration in patients receiving high doses.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For injection, shake ampoule for at least 5 seconds before use, and give over 30 seconds.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

##### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol, propylene glycol

##### ▶ One-Alpha (LEO Pharma)

**Alfacalcidol 2 microgram per 1 ml** One-Alpha 2micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule **[PoM]** £41.13  
One-Alpha 1micrograms/0.5ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule **[PoM]** £21.57

**Oral drops**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol

► **One-Alpha** (LEO Pharma)

**Alfacalcidol 2 microgram per 1 ml** One-Alpha 2micrograms/ml oral drops sugar-free | 10 ml [PoM] £21.30 DT = £21.30

**Capsule**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sesame oil

► **Alfacalcidol (Non-proprietary)**

**Alfacalcidol 250 nanogram** Alfacalcidol 250nanogram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £5.00 DT = £4.82

**Alfacalcidol 500 nanogram** Alfacalcidol 500nanogram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £10.00 DT = £9.68

**Alfacalcidol 1 microgram** Alfacalcidol 1microgram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £14.00 DT = £13.49 | 30 capsule [S] DT = £13.49

► **One-Alpha** (LEO Pharma)

**Alfacalcidol 250 nanogram** One-Alpha 250nanogram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £3.37 DT = £4.82

**Alfacalcidol 500 nanogram** One-Alpha 0.5microgram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £6.27 DT = £9.68

**Alfacalcidol 1 microgram** One-Alpha 1microgram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £8.75 DT = £13.49

**Calcitriol**

(1,25-Dihydroxycholecalciferol)

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Vitamin D dependent rickets | Hypophosphataemic rickets | Persistent hypocalcaemia due to hypoparathyroidism | Pseudo-hypoparathyroidism (limited experience)**

► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 15 nanograms/kg once daily (max. per dose 250 nanograms), increased in steps of 5 nanograms/kg daily (max. per dose 250 nanograms) if required, dose to be increased every 2–4 weeks
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 250 nanograms once daily, increased in steps of 5 nanograms/kg daily (max. per dose 250 nanograms) if required, dose to be increased every 2–4 weeks; usual dose 0.5–1 microgram daily

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.● **CAUTIONS** Take care to ensure correct dose in infants● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: vitamin D substances**● SIDE-EFFECTS**

- Common or very common Urinary tract infection
- Frequency not known Apathy · arrhythmia · dehydration · drowsiness · fever · growth retardation · muscle weakness · paralytic ileus · polydipsia · psychiatric disorder · sensory disorder · urinary disorders · weight decreased

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

**Monitoring** Monitor plasma-calcium concentration in renal impairment.

**● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- Monitor plasma calcium, phosphate, and creatinine during dosage titration.
- Monitor plasma-calcium concentration in patients receiving high doses.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Contents of capsule may be administered by oral syringe.**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Capsule**► **Calcitriol (Non-proprietary)**

**Calcitriol 250 nanogram** Calcitriol 250nanogram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £5.41–£18.04 | 100 capsule [PoM] [S] DT = £18.04

**Calcitriol 500 nanogram** Calcitriol 500nanogram capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £9.68–£32.25 | 100 capsule [PoM] [S] DT = £32.25

► **Rocaltrol** (Roche Products Ltd)

**Calcitriol 250 nanogram** Rocaltrol 250nanogram capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £18.04 DT = £18.04

**Calcitriol 500 nanogram** Rocaltrol 500nanogram capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £32.25 DT = £32.25

F 630

**Colecalciferol**(Cholecalciferol; Vitamin D<sub>3</sub>)**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Prevention of vitamin D deficiency**

► BY MOUTH

► Child: 400 units daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Adcal-D3*<sup>®</sup>, *Calceos*<sup>®</sup>, and *Fultium-D3*<sup>®</sup> 800 units and *Fultium-D3*<sup>®</sup> 20000 units are not licensed for use in children under 12 years. *Cacit*<sup>®</sup> D3, *Calcichew-D3*<sup>®</sup> Forte, *Calcichew-D3*<sup>®</sup> 500 mg/400 unit, and *Kalcipos-D*<sup>®</sup> not licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturers). *Accrete D3*<sup>®</sup>, *Calfovit D3*<sup>®</sup>, and *Natecal D3*<sup>®</sup> not licensed for use in children under 18 years.

● **CAUTIONS** Take care to ensure correct dose in infants● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: vitamin D substances● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Laryngeal oedema**● RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Monitoring** Monitor plasma-calcium concentration in renal impairment.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor plasma-calcium concentration in patients receiving high doses.**● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

**INVITA D3<sup>®</sup> ORAL SOLUTION** May be mixed with a small amount of milk or cold or lukewarm food immediately before administration.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension, oral solution, oral drops

**Tablet**► **Colecalciferol (Non-proprietary)**

**Colecalciferol 400 unit** Colecalciferol 400unit tablets | 60 tablet £15.50

**Colecalciferol 800 unit** Colecalciferol 800unit tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £3.60 DT = £3.60

**Colecalciferol 5000 unit** D3 5,000unit tablets | 60 tablet £5.00

**Colecalciferol 10000 unit** Colecalciferol 10,000unit tablets | 30 tablet £36.00

**Colecalciferol 20000 unit** Colecalciferol 20,000unit tablets | 20 tablet £36.00

► **Aciferol D3** (Rhodes Pharma Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 400 unit** Aciferol D3 400unit tablets | 90 tablet £9.99

**Colecalciferol 2200 unit** Aciferol D3 2,200unit tablets | 90 tablet £25.99

**Colecalciferol 3000 unit** Aciferol D3 3,000unit tablets | 60 tablet £14.99

**Colecalciferol 5000 unit** Aciferol D3 5,000unit tablets | 60 tablet £19.99

**Colecalciferol 10000 unit** Aciferol D3 10,000unit tablets | 30 tablet £13.99

**Colecalciferol 20000 unit** Aciferol D3 20,000unit tablets | 30 tablet £18.99

► **Cubicole D3** (Cubic Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 400 unit** Cubicole D3 400unit tablets | 30 tablet £5.95

► **Desunin** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 800 unit** Desunin 800unit tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £3.60 DT = £3.60 | 90 tablet [PoM] £10.17

**Colecalciferol 4000 unit** Desunin 4,000unit tablets | 70 tablet [PoM] £15.90 DT = £15.90

► **E-D3** (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 400 unit** E-D3 400unit tablets | 30 tablet £78.50



**Colecalciferol 10000 unit** E-D3 10,000unit tablets | 30 tablet £95.00

**Colecalciferol 20000 unit** E-D3 20,000unit tablets | 30 tablet £95.90

► **Iso D3** (Nutri Advanced Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 2000 unit** Iso D3 2,000unit tablets | 90 tablet £16.72

► **Stexerol-D3** (Kyowa Kirin Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 1000 unit** Stexerol-D3 1,000unit tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £2.95 DT = £2.95

**Colecalciferol 25000 unit** Stexerol-D3 25,000unit tablets | 12 tablet [PoM] £17.00 DT = £17.00

► **SunVit D3** (SunVit-D3 Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 400 unit** SunVit-D3 400unit tablets | 28 tablet £2.55

**Colecalciferol 2000 unit** SunVit-D3 2,000unit tablets | 28 tablet £3.99

**Colecalciferol 3000 unit** SunVit-D3 3,000unit tablets | 28 tablet £5.49

**Colecalciferol 5000 unit** SunVit-D3 5,000unit tablets | 28 tablet £4.99

**Colecalciferol 10000 unit** SunVit-D3 10,000unit tablets | 28 tablet £6.99

**Colecalciferol 20000 unit** SunVit-D3 20,000unit tablets | 28 tablet £4.40

**Colecalciferol 50000 unit** SunVit-D3 50,000unit tablets | 15 tablet £19.99

### Oral drops

► **Colecalciferol (Non-proprietary)**

**Colecalciferol 1000 unit per 1 ml** D3 Drops 1000 oral drops sugar-free | 30 ml £6.12

**Colecalciferol 20000 unit per 1 ml** Vigantol 20,000units/ml oral drops | 10 ml [X] £1.70

► **E-D3** (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 2000 unit per 1 ml** E-D3 2,000units/ml oral drops sugar-free | 20 ml [X] £1.70

► **Fultium-D3** (Internis Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 2740 unit per 1 ml** Fultium-D3 2,740units/ml oral drops sugar-free | 25 ml [PoM] £10.70 DT = £10.70

► **InVita D3** (Consilient Health Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 2400 unit per 1 ml** InVita D3 2,400units/ml oral drops sugar-free | 10 ml [PoM] £3.60

► **Pro D3** (Synergy Biologics Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 2000 unit per 1 ml** Pro D3 2,000units/ml liquid drops sugar-free | 20 ml £9.80

► **Sapvit-D3** (Stirling Anglian Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 14400 unit per 1 ml** Sapvit-D3 14,400units/ml oral drops sugar-free | 12.5 ml [PoM] £8.95

► **SunVit D3** (SunVit-D3 Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 2000 unit per 1 ml** SunVit-D3 2,000units/ml oral drops sugar-free | 20 ml £6.20

► **Thorens** (Galen Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 10000 unit per 1 ml** Thorens 10,000units/ml oral drops sugar-free | 10 ml [PoM] £5.85 DT = £5.85

### Oral solution

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Colecalciferol (Non-proprietary)**

**Colecalciferol 3000 unit per 1 ml** Colecalciferol 3,000units/ml oral solution | 100 ml [PoM] £144.00 DT = £144.00

**Colecalciferol 10000 unit per 1 ml** Zymad 10,000units/ml oral solution | 10 ml [PoM] [X] £1.70

Colecalciferol 10,000units/ml oral solution | 10 ml [X] £1.70

► **Aciferol D3** (Rhodes Pharma Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 2000 unit per 1 ml** Aciferol D3 2,000units/ml liquid | 100 ml £18.00

► **InVita D3** (Consilient Health Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 25000 unit per 1 ml** InVita D3 25,000units/1ml oral solution sugar-free | 3 ampoule [PoM] £4.45 DT = £4.45

**Colecalciferol 50000 unit per 1 ml** InVita D3 50,000units/1ml oral solution sugar-free | 3 ampoule [PoM] £6.25 DT = £6.25

► **Pro D3** (Synergy Biologics Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 2000 unit per 1 ml** Pro D3 2,000units/ml liquid | 50 ml £16.80 | 100 ml £22.50

► **SunVit D3** (SunVit-D3 Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 2000 unit per 1 ml** SunVit-D3 10,000units/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 50 ml £8.90

SunVit-D3 2,000units/ml oral solution sugar-free | 50 ml £8.90

► **Thorens** (Galen Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 10000 unit per 1 ml** Thorens 25,000units/2.5ml oral solution sugar-free | 2.5 ml [PoM] £1.55 DT = £1.55 sugar-free | 10 ml [PoM] £5.85 DT = £5.85

### Chewable tablet

► **EveryDay-D** (Vega Nutritionals Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 400 unit** EveryDay-D 400unit chewable tablets | 100 tablet £3.22 | 500 tablet £14.60

► **Urgent-D** (Vega Nutritionals Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 2000 unit** Urgent-D 2,000unit chewable tablets | 60 tablet £4.31

### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

► **Colecalciferol (Non-proprietary)**

**Colecalciferol 400 unit** Colecalciferol 400unit capsules | 30 capsule [X] £1.70

**Colecalciferol 600 unit** Colecalciferol 600unit capsules | 30 capsule [X] £1.70

**Colecalciferol 2200 unit** Colecalciferol 2,200unit capsules | 30 capsule [X] £1.70

**Colecalciferol 2500 unit** FSC High Strength Vitamin D3 2,500unit capsules | 60 capsule £1.95

Colecalciferol 2,500unit capsules | 30 capsule [X] £1.95

**Colecalciferol 3000 unit** Colecalciferol 3,000unit capsules | 30 capsule [X] £1.95

**Colecalciferol 5000 unit** Colecalciferol 5,000unit capsules | 30 capsule [X] £1.95

**Colecalciferol 10000 unit** Colecalciferol 10,000unit capsules | 30 capsule [X] £1.95

**Colecalciferol 20000 unit** Colecalciferol 20,000unit capsules | 20 capsule £2.62–£22.72 | 20 capsule [PoM] £37.99 | 30 capsule £35.99 DT = £29.00 | 30 capsule [PoM] £29.00 DT = £29.00

**Colecalciferol 30000 unit** Colecalciferol 30,000unit capsules | 10 capsule [X] £1.95

► **Aciferol D3** (Rhodes Pharma Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 30000 unit** Aciferol D3 30,000unit capsules | 10 capsule £19.99

► **Avitcol** (Colonis Pharma Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 1000 unit** Avitcol 1,000unit capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £3.16 DT = £3.16

**Colecalciferol 20000 unit** Avitcol 20,000unit capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £20.25 DT = £29.00

► **Bio-Vitamin D3** (Pharma Nord (UK) Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 5000 unit** Bio-Vitamin D3 5,000unit capsules | 40 capsule £5.51

► **Cubicole D3** (Cubic Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 400 unit** Cubicole D3 400unit capsules | 30 capsule £3.95

**Colecalciferol 600 unit** Cubicole D3 600unit capsules | 30 capsule £6.95

**Colecalciferol 2200 unit** Cubicole D3 2,200unit capsules | 30 capsule £9.95

**Colecalciferol 3000 unit** Cubicole D3 3,000unit capsules | 30 capsule £11.95

**Colecalciferol 10000 unit** Cubicole D3 10,000unit capsules | 30 capsule £12.95

► **D-Max** (Nutraconcepts Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 400 unit** D-Max 400unit capsules | 30 capsule £3.95

**Colecalciferol 5000 unit** D-Max 5,000unit capsules | 30 capsule £4.85

**Colecalciferol 10000 unit** D-Max 10,000unit capsules | 30 capsule £6.89

► **E-D3** (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 400 unit** E-D3 400unit capsules | 30 capsule £78.50

**Colecalciferol 600 unit** E-D3 600unit capsules | 30 capsule £82.10

**Colecalciferol 2200 unit** E-D3 2,200unit capsules | 30 capsule £86.20

**Colecalciferol 2500 unit** E-D3 2,500unit capsules | 30 capsule £86.20

**Colecalciferol 3000 unit** E-D3 3,000unit capsules | 30 capsule £88.60

**Colecalciferol 5000 unit** E-D3 5,000unit capsules | 30 capsule £94.00

**Colecalciferol 10000 unit** E-D3 10,000unit capsules | 30 capsule £95.00

**Colecalciferol 30000 unit** E-D3 30,000unit capsules | 10 capsule £94.40

► **Fultium daily D3** (Internis Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 400 unit** Fultium daily D3 400unit capsules | 30 capsule £2.58 | 60 capsule £4.84 | 90 capsule £7.09

► **Fultium-D3** (Internis Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Colecalciferol 800 unit** Fultium-D3 800unit capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £3.60 DT = £3.60 | 90 capsule [PoM] £8.85

**Calcifaciferol 3200 unit** Fultium-D3 3,200unit capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £13.32 DT = £13.32 | 90 capsule [PoM] £39.96  
**Calcifaciferol 20000 unit** Fultium-D3 20,000unit capsules | 15 capsule [PoM] £17.04 DT = £17.04 | 30 capsule [PoM] £29.00 DT = £29.00

► **InVita D3** (Consilient Health Ltd)

**Calcifaciferol 800 unit** InVita D3 800unit capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £2.50

**Calcifaciferol 5600 unit** InVita D3 5,600unit capsules | 4 capsule [PoM] £2.50 DT = £2.50

**Calcifaciferol 25000 unit** InVita D3 25,000unit capsules | 3 capsule [PoM] £3.95 DT = £3.95

**Calcifaciferol 50000 unit** InVita D3 50,000unit capsules | 3 capsule [PoM] £4.95 DT = £4.95

► **Plenachol** (Auden McKenzie (Pharma Division) Ltd)

**Calcifaciferol 20000 unit** Plenachol 20,000unit capsules | 10 capsule [PoM] £9.00

**Calcifaciferol 40000 unit** Plenachol 40,000unit capsules | 10 capsule [PoM] £15.00 DT = £15.00

► **Pro D3** (Synergy Biologics Ltd)

**Calcifaciferol 400 unit** Pro D3 400unit capsules | 30 capsule £4.99  
**Calcifaciferol 2500 unit** Pro D3 2,500unit capsules | 30 capsule £9.99

**Calcifaciferol 10000 unit** Pro D3 10,000unit capsules | 30 capsule £14.99

**Calcifaciferol 30000 unit** Pro D3 30,000unit capsules | 10 capsule £24.99

► **Strivit-D3** (Strides Arcolab International Ltd)

**Calcifaciferol 800 unit** Strivit-D3 800unit capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £2.34 DT = £3.60

► **SunVit D3** (SunVit-D3 Ltd)

**Calcifaciferol 400 unit** SunVit-D3 400unit capsules | 28 capsule £2.30 DT = £1.85

**Calcifaciferol 2200 unit** SunVit-D3 2,200unit capsules | 28 capsule £4.99

**Calcifaciferol 2500 unit** SunVit-D3 2,500unit capsules | 28 capsule £5.49

**Calcifaciferol 10000 unit** SunVit-D3 10,000unit capsules | 28 capsule £6.99

**Orodispersible tablet**

► **Calcifaciferol (Non-proprietary)**

**Calcifaciferol 2000 unit** D3 Lemon Melts 2,000unit tablets sugar-free | 120 tablet £4.88

## Calcifaciferol with calcium carbonate

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, calcifaciferol p. 631, calcium carbonate p. 592.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Prevention and treatment of vitamin D and calcium deficiency**

- **BY MOUTH**
- **Child:** Dosed according to the deficit or daily maintenance requirements (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Adcal-D3*<sup>®</sup> and *Calceos*<sup>®</sup> are not licensed for use in children under 12 years. *Cacit*<sup>®</sup> D3, *Calcichew-D3*<sup>®</sup> *Forte*, *Calcichew-D3*<sup>®</sup> and *Kalcipos-D*<sup>®</sup> not licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturers). *Accrete D3*<sup>®</sup> and *Natecal D3*<sup>®</sup> not licensed for use in children under 18 years.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium salts · vitamin D substances

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** *Accrete D3*<sup>®</sup> contains calcium carbonate 1.5 g (calcium 600 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 15 mmol), calcifaciferol 10 micrograms (400 units); *Adcal-D3*<sup>®</sup> tablets contain calcium carbonate 1.5 g (calcium 600 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 15 mmol), calcifaciferol 10 micrograms (400 units); *Cacit*<sup>®</sup> D3 contains calcium carbonate 1.25 g (calcium 500 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 12.5 mmol), calcifaciferol 11 micrograms (440 units)/sachet; *Calceos*<sup>®</sup> contains calcium carbonate 1.25 g (calcium 500 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 12.5 mmol), calcifaciferol 10 micrograms (400 units).

*Calcichew-D3*<sup>®</sup> tablets contain calcium carbonate 1.25 g (calcium 500 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 12.5 mmol), calcifaciferol 5 micrograms (200 units); *Calcichew-D3*<sup>®</sup> *Forte* tablets contain calcium carbonate 1.25 g (calcium 500 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 12.5 mmol), calcifaciferol 10 micrograms (400 units); *Calcichew-D3*<sup>®</sup> 500 mg/400 unit caplets contain calcium carbonate (calcium 500 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 12.5 mmol), calcifaciferol 10 micrograms (400 units); *Kalcipos-D*<sup>®</sup> contains calcium carbonate (calcium 500 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 12.5 mmol), calcifaciferol 20 micrograms (800 units); *Natecal D3*<sup>®</sup> contains calcium carbonate 1.5 g (calcium 600 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 15 mmol), calcifaciferol 10 micrograms (400 units); consult product literature for details of other available products.

Flavours of chewable and soluble forms may include orange, lemon, aniseed, peppermint, molasses, or tutti-frutti.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Effervescent granules**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

► **Calcifaciferol with calcium carbonate (Non-proprietary)**

**Calcium carbonate 2.5 gram, Calcifaciferol 880 unit** Calcifaciferol 880unit / Calcium carbonate 2.5g effervescent granules sachets | 24 sachet [PoM] [S]

► **Cacit D3** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 1.25 gram, Calcifaciferol 440 unit** Cacit D3 effervescent granules sachets | 30 sachet [P] £4.06 DT = £4.06

**Effervescent tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

► **Adcal-D3** (Kyowa Kirin Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 1.5 gram, Calcifaciferol 400 unit** Adcal-D3 Dissolve 1500mg/400unit effervescent tablets | 56 tablet [P] £5.99 DT = £5.99

**Tablet**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

► **Accrete D3** (Internis Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 1.5 gram, Calcifaciferol 400 unit** Accrete D3 tablets | 60 tablet [P] £2.95 DT = £2.95

► **Adcal-D3** (Kyowa Kirin Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 750 mg, Calcifaciferol 200 unit** Adcal-D3 750mg/200unit caplets | 112 tablet [P] £2.95 DT = £2.95

► **Calcichew D3** (Takeda UK Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 1.25 gram, Calcifaciferol 400 unit** Calcichew D3 500mg/400unit caplets | 100 tablet [P] £7.43 DT = £7.43

► **Kalcipos-D** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 1.25 gram, Calcifaciferol 800 unit** Kalcipos-D 500mg/800unit tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £4.21 DT = £4.21

**Chewable tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 24

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

► **Calcifaciferol with calcium carbonate (Non-proprietary)**

**Calcium carbonate 1.5 gram, Calcifaciferol 400 unit** Calcifaciferol 400unit / Calcium carbonate 1.5g chewable tablets | 56 tablet [P] £3.65 DT = £3.65 | 60 tablet [P] £3.91

► **Accrete D3 One a Day** (Sandoz Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 2.5 gram, Calcifaciferol 880 unit** Accrete D3 One a Day 1000mg/880unit chewable tablets | 30 tablet [P] £2.95 DT = £2.95

► **Adcal-D3** (Kyowa Kirin Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 1.5 gram, Calcifaciferol 400 unit** Adcal-D3 Lemon chewable tablets | 56 tablet [P] £3.65 DT = £3.65 | 112 tablet [P] £7.49  
 Adcal-D3 chewable tablets tutti frutti | 56 tablet [P] £3.65 DT = £3.65 | 112 tablet [P] £7.49

► **Calceos** (Galen Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 1.25 gram, Calcifaciferol 400 unit** Calceos 500mg/400unit chewable tablets | 60 tablet [P] £3.88 DT = £4.24

► **Calci-D** (Consilient Health Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 2.5 gram, Calcifaciferol 1000 iu** Calci-D 1000mg/1,000unit chewable tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £2.25 DT = £2.25

► **Calcichew D3** (Takeda UK Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 2.5 gram, Calcifaciferol 800 iu** Calcichew D3 1000mg/800unit Once Daily chewable tablets | 30 tablet [P] £6.75 DT = £6.75

**Calcium carbonate 1.25 gram, Colecalciferol 200 unit** Calchew D3 chewable tablets | 100 tablet [P] £7.68 DT = £7.68

► **Calchew D3 Forte** (Takeda UK Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 1.25 gram, Colecalciferol 400 unit** Calchew D3 Forte chewable tablets | 60 tablet [P] £4.24 DT = £4.24 | 100 tablet [P] £7.08

► **Evacal D3** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 1.5 gram, Colecalciferol 400 unit** Evacal D3 1500mg/400unit chewable tablets | 56 tablet [P] £2.75 DT = £3.65 | 112 tablet [P] £5.50

► **Kalcipos-D** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 1.25 gram, Colecalciferol 800 unit** Kalcipos-D 500mg/800unit chewable tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £4.21 DT = £4.21

► **Natecal** (Chiesi Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 1.5 gram, Colecalciferol 400 unit** Natecal D3 600mg/400unit chewable tablets | 60 tablet [P] £3.63

► **TheiCal-D3** (Stirling Anglian Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Calcium carbonate 2.5 gram, Colecalciferol 880 unit** TheiCal-D3 1000mg/880unit chewable tablets | 30 tablet [P] £2.95 DT = £2.95

## Colecalciferol with calcium phosphate

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, colecalciferol p. 631, calcium phosphate p. 594.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Calcium and vitamin D deficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Child: (consult product literature)

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium salts · vitamin D substances

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13, 21

► **Calfovit D3** (A. Menarini Farmaceutica Internazionale SRL)

**Calcium phosphate 3.1 gram, Colecalciferol 800 unit** Calfovit D3 oral powder sachets | 30 sachet [P] £4.32 DT = £4.32

630

## Ergocalciferol

(Calciferol; Vitamin D<sub>2</sub>)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Nutritional vitamin-D deficiency rickets

- BY MOUTH
- Child 1–5 months: 3000 units daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary
- Child 6 months–11 years: 6000 units daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary
- Child 12–17 years: 10 000 units daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary

#### Nutritional or physiological supplement | Prevention of rickets

- BY MOUTH
- Neonate: 400 units daily.

- Child: 400–600 units daily

#### Vitamin D deficiency in intestinal malabsorption or in chronic liver disease

- BY MOUTH, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 1–11 years: 10 000–25 000 units daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary
- Child 12–17 years: 10 000–40 000 units daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary

● **CAUTIONS** Take care to ensure correct dose in infants

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: vitamin D substances

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Monitoring** Monitor plasma-calcium concentration in renal impairment.

● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor plasma-calcium concentration in patients receiving high doses.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The BP directs that when calciferol is prescribed or demanded, colecalciferol or ergocalciferol should be dispensed or supplied.

When the strength of the tablets ordered or prescribed is not clear, the intention of the prescriber with respect to the strength (expressed in micrograms or milligrams per tablet) should be ascertained.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection

#### Tablet

► **Ergocalciferol (Non-proprietary)**

**Ergocalciferol 12.5 microgram** Ergocalciferol 12.5microgram tablets | 30 tablet [S]

Ergo-D2 12.5microgram tablets | 30 tablet [S]

► **Ergoral** (Cubic Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Ergocalciferol 125 microgram** Ergoral D2 5,000unit tablets | 30 tablet £14.95

**Ergocalciferol 250 microgram** Ergoral D2 10,000unit tablets | 30 tablet £19.95

#### Solution for injection

► **Ergocalciferol (Non-proprietary)**

**Ergocalciferol 300000 unit per 1 ml** Ergocalciferol 300,000units/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM]

£93.68 DT = £93.59

#### Oral solution

► **Eciferol** (Rhodes Pharma Ltd)

**Ergocalciferol 3000 unit per 1 ml** Eciferol D2 3,000units/ml liquid | 60 ml £55.00 DT = £89.20

#### Capsule

► **Ergocalciferol (Non-proprietary)**

**Ergocalciferol 1.25 mg** Ergocalciferol 1.25mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] [S]

► **Eciferol** (Rhodes Pharma Ltd)

**Ergocalciferol 1.25 mg** Eciferol D2 50,000unit capsules | 10 capsule £29.99

► **Ergoral** (Cubic Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Ergocalciferol 1.25 mg** Ergoral D2 50,000unit capsules | 10 capsule £19.95

## Ergocalciferol with calcium lactate and calcium phosphate

(Calcium and vitamin D)

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, ergocalciferol above, calcium lactate p. 594.

## Ergocalciferol with calcium lactate and calcium phosphate

(Calcium and vitamin D)

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, ergocalciferol above, calcium lactate p. 594.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Prevention of calcium and vitamin D deficiency | Treatment of calcium and vitamin D deficiency

- BY MOUTH
- Child: (consult product literature)

● **UNLICENSED USE** Calcium and Ergocalciferol tablets not licensed for use in children under 6 years.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: calcium salts · vitamin D substances

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets may be crushed before administration, or may be chewed.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Each tablet contains calcium lactate 300 mg, calcium phosphate 150 mg (calcium 97 mg or Ca<sup>2+</sup> 2.4 mmol), ergocalciferol 10 micrograms (400 units).

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient or carers should be given advice on how to administer calcium and ergocalciferol tablets.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

- ▶ **Ergocalciferol with calcium lactate and calcium phosphate (Non-proprietary)**  
Ergocalciferol 10 microgram, Calcium phosphate 150 mg, Calcium lactate 300 mg Calcium and Ergocalciferol tablets | 28 tablet [P]  
£22.38 DT = £21.28

## VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > VITAMIN E

### Alpha tocopherol

#### (Tocopherol)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Vitamin E deficiency because of malabsorption in congenital or hereditary chronic cholestasis**

▶ BY MOUTH USING ORAL SOLUTION

- ▶ Neonate: 17 mg/kg daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary.
- ▶ Child: 17 mg/kg daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Preterm neonates

- **CAUTIONS** Predisposition to thrombosis

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: vitamin E substances

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Diarrhoea
- ▶ **Uncommon** Alopecia · asthenia · headache · skin reactions
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises caution, no evidence of harm in animal studies.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.

**Monitoring** Manufacturer advises monitor closely in hepatic impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution. Risk of renal toxicity due to polyethylene glycol content.

**Monitoring** Manufacturer advises monitor closely in renal impairment.

#### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Tocofersolan is a water-soluble form of D-alpha tocopherol.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Oral solution

- ▶ **Vedrop** (Orphan Europe (UK) Ltd) ▼  
D-alpha tocopherol (as Tocofersolan) 50 mg per 1 ml Vedrop 50mg/ml oral solution sugar-free | 20 ml [PoM] £54.55 sugar-free | 60 ml [PoM] £163.65

### Alpha tocopheryl acetate

#### (Tocopherol)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Vitamin E deficiency**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 10 mg/kg once daily.

- ▶ Child: 2–10 mg/kg daily, increased if necessary up to 20 mg/kg daily

#### Malabsorption in cystic fibrosis

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 50 mg once daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary, to be taken with food and pancreatic enzymes
- ▶ Child 1–11 years: 100 mg once daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary, to be taken with food and pancreatic enzymes
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100–200 mg once daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary, to be taken with food and pancreatic enzymes

#### Vitamin E deficiency in cholestasis and severe liver disease

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 10 mg/kg daily.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 100 mg daily, adjusted according to response, increased if necessary up to 200 mg/kg daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 200 mg daily, adjusted according to response, increased if necessary up to 200 mg/kg daily

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: 10 mg/kg once a month.

- ▶ Child: 10 mg/kg once a month (max. per dose 100 mg)

#### Malabsorption in abetalipoproteinaemia

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 100 mg/kg once daily.
- ▶ Child: 50–100 mg/kg once daily

- **CAUTIONS** Increased risk of necrotising enterocolitis in neonate weighing less than 1.5 kg or in a preterm neonate · predisposition to thrombosis

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: vitamin E substances

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal pain (more common at high doses) · bleeding tendency · diarrhoea (more common at high doses) · increased risk of thrombosis

- **PREGNANCY** No evidence of safety of high doses.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Excreted in milk; minimal risk, although caution with large doses.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Increased bleeding tendency in vitamin-K deficient patients or those taking anticoagulants (prothrombin time and INR should be monitored).

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Consider dilution of oral suspension for use in neonates due to high osmolality.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: chewable tablet, solution for injection

##### Solution for injection

- ▶ **E-Victrat (Imported (Germany))**

Alpha tocopheryl acetate 50 mg per 1 ml E-Victrat 100mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] [X]

##### Oral suspension

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sucrose

- ▶ **Alpha tocopheryl acetate (Non-proprietary)**

Alpha tocopheryl acetate 100 mg per 1 ml Alpha tocopheryl acetate 500mg/5ml oral suspension | 100 ml [GSL] £67.97 DT = £67.97

##### Chewable tablet


- ▶ **Alpha tocopheryl acetate (Non-proprietary)**

Alpha tocopheryl acetate 100 mg Alpha tocopheryl acetate 100mg chewable tablets | 30 tablet [X]

- ▶ **E-Tabs (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)**

Alpha tocopheryl acetate 100 mg E-Tabs 100mg chewable tablets | 30 tablet £87.30

► **Ephynal** (Imported (Italy))

Alpha tocopheryl acetate 100 mg Ephynal 100mg chewable tablets | 30 tablet 

**Capsule**

► **E-Caps** (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)

Alpha tocopherol 75 unit E-Caps 75unit capsules | 100 capsule £109.50

Alpha tocopherol 100 unit E-Caps 100unit capsules | 30 capsule £84.40

Alpha tocopherol 200 unit E-Caps 200unit capsules | 30 capsule £89.50

Alpha tocopherol 400 unit E-Caps 400unit capsules | 30 capsule £128.50

Alpha tocopherol 1000 unit E-Caps 1,000unit capsules | 30 capsule £130.20

► **Vita-E** (Typharm Ltd)

Alpha tocopherol 75 unit Vita-E 75unit capsules | 100 capsule £4.35

Alpha tocopherol 200 unit Vita-E 200unit capsules | 30 capsule £3.35 | 100 capsule £10.34

Alpha tocopherol 400 unit Vita-E 400unit capsules | 30 capsule £5.04 | 100 capsule £16.44

## VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > VITAMIN K

### Menadiol sodium phosphate

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Supplementation in vitamin K malabsorption**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 1–11 years: 5–10 mg daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary
- Child 12–17 years: 10–20 mg daily, dose to be adjusted as necessary

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Infants · neonates

● **CAUTIONS** G6PD deficiency (risk of haemolysis) · vitamin E deficiency (risk of haemolysis)

● **PREGNANCY** Avoid in late pregnancy and labour unless benefit outweighs risk of neonatal haemolytic anaemia, hyperbilirubinaemia, and kernicterus in neonate.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, oral suspension, oral solution

### Phytomenadione

(Vitamin K<sub>1</sub>)

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Neonatal prophylaxis of vitamin-K deficiency bleeding**

► **BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION**

- Preterm neonate: 400 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 1 mg) for 1 dose, to be given at birth, the intravenous route may be used in preterm neonates with very low birth-weight if intramuscular injection is not possible, however, it may not provide the prolonged protection of the intramuscular injection, any neonate receiving intravenous vitamin K should be given subsequent oral doses.

- Neonate: 1 mg for 1 dose, to be given at birth.

**Neonatal prophylaxis of vitamin-K deficiency bleeding in healthy babies who are not at particular risk of bleeding disorders**

► **BY MOUTH USING CAPSULES**

- Neonate: 1 mg for 1 dose at birth (to protect from the risk of vitamin K deficiency bleeding in the first week).

**Neonatal prophylaxis of vitamin-K deficiency bleeding in healthy babies who are not at particular risk of bleeding disorders (exclusively breast-fed babies)**

► **BY MOUTH USING CAPSULES**

- Neonate: Initially 1 mg for 1 dose at birth, then 1 mg every week for 12 weeks.

**Neonatal hypoprothrombinaemia | Vitamin-K deficiency bleeding**

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

- Neonate: 1 mg every 8 hours if required.

**Neonatal biliary atresia and liver disease**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Neonate: 1 mg daily.

**Reversal of coumarin anticoagulation when continued anticoagulation required or if no significant bleeding—seek specialist advice**

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

- Child: 15–30 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 1 mg) for 1 dose, dose may be repeated as necessary

**Reversal of coumarin anticoagulation when anticoagulation not required or if significant bleeding—seek specialist advice | Treatment of haemorrhage associated with vitamin-K deficiency—seek specialist advice**

► **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

- Child: 250–300 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 10 mg) for 1 dose

**KONAKION<sup>®</sup> MM PAEDIATRIC**

**Neonatal prophylaxis of vitamin-K deficiency bleeding in healthy babies who are not at risk of bleeding disorders**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Neonate: Initially 2 mg for 1 dose at birth, then 2 mg after 4–7 days.

**Neonatal prophylaxis of vitamin-K deficiency bleeding in healthy babies who are not at risk of bleeding disorders (exclusively breast fed babies)**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Neonate: Initially 2 mg for 1 dose at birth, then 2 mg after 4–7 days for a further 1 dose, then 2 mg for a further 1 dose 1 month after birth.

● **CAUTIONS** Intravenous injections should be given very slowly—risk of vascular collapse

**KONAKION<sup>®</sup> MM PAEDIATRIC** Parenteral administration in premature infant or neonate of less than 2.5 kg (increased risk of kernicterus)

● **PREGNANCY** Use if potential benefit outweighs risk.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk.

● **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

**KONAKION<sup>®</sup> MM** Caution—glycocholic acid may displace bilirubin.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**

- With oral use in neonates The contents of one capsule should be administered by cutting the narrow tubular tip off and squeezing the liquid contents into the mouth; if the baby spits out the dose or is sick within three hours of administration a replacement dose should be given.

**KONAKION<sup>®</sup> MM PAEDIATRIC** Konakion<sup>®</sup> MM Paediatric may be administered by mouth or by intramuscular injection or by intravenous injection. For intravenous injection, may be diluted with Glucose 5% if necessary.

**KONAKION<sup>®</sup> MM** Konakion<sup>®</sup> MM may be administered by slow intravenous injection or by intravenous infusion in glucose 5%; **not** for intramuscular injection.




## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

### Tablet



#### ▶ Phytomenadione (Non-proprietary)

**Phytomenadione 100 microgram** Vitamin K1 100microgram tablets  
| 30 tablet 

### Solution for injection



EXCIPIENTS: May contain Glycocholic acid, lecithin

#### ▶ Konakion MM (Roche Products Ltd)

**Phytomenadione 10 mg per 1 ml** Konakion MM Paediatric  
2mg/0.2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule  £4.71  
Konakion MM 10mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules |  
10 ampoule  £3.78 DT = £3.78

### Capsule

#### ▶ Neokay (Neocuticals Ltd)

**Phytomenadione 1 mg** NeoKay 1mg capsules | 12 capsule   
£3.95 DT = £3.95 | 100 capsule  £34.00

## 7.1 Neural tube defects (prevention in pregnancy)

### Neural tube defects (prevention in pregnancy)


01-Aug-2017


#### Description of condition

Neural tube defects represent a group of congenital defects, caused by incomplete closure of the neural tube within 28 days of conception. The most common forms are anencephaly, spina bifida and encephalocele.

The main risk factors are maternal folate deficiency, maternal vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency, previous history of having an infant with a neural tube defect, smoking, diabetes, obesity, and use of antiepileptic drugs.

#### Prevention in pregnancy

 Pregnant women or women who wish to become pregnant should be advised to take supplementation with folic acid p. 574 before conception and until week 12 of pregnancy.

A higher daily dose (see folic acid) is recommended for women at a high risk of conceiving a child with a neural tube defect, including women who have previously had an infant with a neural tube defect, who are receiving antiepileptic medication (see Epilepsy p. 191), or who have diabetes or sickle-cell disease. 

#### Useful Resources

Antenatal care for uncomplicated pregnancies. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Clinical guideline 62. March 2008 (Updated March 2016).

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg62](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg62)

Fertility problems: assessment and treatment. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Clinical guideline 156. June 2015.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg156](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg156)

# Chapter 10

## Musculoskeletal system

### CONTENTS

<b>1 Arthritis</b>	page 638
<b>2 Neuromuscular disorders</b>	646
2.1 Muscular dystrophy	647
2.2 Myasthenia gravis and Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome	648
2.3 Spasticity	649
<b>3 Pain and inflammation in musculoskeletal disorders</b>	page 650
<b>4 Soft tissue and joint disorders</b>	661
4.1 Local inflammation of joints and soft tissue	661
4.2 Soft tissue disorders	663

## 1 Arthritis

### Juvenile idiopathic arthritis

#### Management

Rheumatic diseases require symptomatic treatment to relieve pain, swelling, and stiffness, together with treatment to control and suppress disease activity. Treatment of juvenile idiopathic arthritis may involve Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) p. 650, a disease modifying anti-rheumatic drug (DMARD) such as methotrexate p. 543 or a cytokine modulator, and intra-articular, intravenous, or oral corticosteroids.

### Rheumatic disease, suppressing drugs

#### Overview

Certain drugs, such as methotrexate p. 543, cytokine modulators, and sulfasalazine p. 31, are used to suppress the disease process in *juvenile idiopathic arthritis* (juvenile chronic arthritis); these drugs are known as disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs). In children, disease modifying antirheumatic drugs should be used under specialist supervision.

Some children with juvenile idiopathic arthritis do not require disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs. Methotrexate is effective in juvenile idiopathic arthritis; sulfasalazine is an alternative but should be avoided in *systemic-onset juvenile idiopathic arthritis*. Gold and penicillamine are no longer used. Cytokine modulators have a role in *polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis*.

Unlike NSAIDs, disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs can affect the progression of disease but they may require 3–6 months of treatment for a full therapeutic response. Response to a disease-modifying antirheumatic drug may allow the dose of the NSAID to be reduced.

Disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs can improve not only the symptoms of inflammatory joint disease but also extra-articular manifestations. They reduce the erythrocyte sedimentation rate and C-reactive protein.

#### Antimalarials

The antimalarial hydroxychloroquine sulfate p. 639 is rarely used to treat juvenile idiopathic arthritis. Hydroxychloroquine sulfate can also be useful for systemic

or discoid lupus erythematosus, particularly involving the skin and joints, and in sarcoidosis.

Retinopathy rarely occurs provided that the recommended doses are not exceeded.

Mepacrine hydrochloride is used on rare occasions to treat discoid lupus erythematosus [unlicensed].

#### Drugs affecting the immune response

Methotrexate, given as a once weekly dose, is the disease-modifying antirheumatic drug of choice in the treatment of juvenile idiopathic arthritis and also has a role in juvenile dermatomyositis, vasculitis, uveitis, systemic lupus erythematosus, localised scleroderma, and sarcoidosis; for these indications it is given by the subcutaneous, oral, or rarely, the intramuscular route. Absorption from intramuscular or subcutaneous routes may be more predictable than from the oral route; if the oral route is ineffective subcutaneous administration is generally preferred. Folic acid may reduce mucosal or gastro-intestinal side-effects of methotrexate. The dosage regimen for folic acid p. 574 has not been established—in children over 2 years a weekly dose [unlicensed indication], may be given on a different day from the methotrexate.

Azathioprine p. 518 may be used in children for vasculitis which has failed to respond to other treatments, for the management of severe cases of *systemic lupus erythematosus* and other connective tissue disorders, in conjunction with corticosteroids for patients with severe or progressive renal disease, and in cases of *polymyositis* which are resistant to corticosteroids. Azathioprine has a corticosteroid-sparing effect in patients whose corticosteroid requirements are excessive.

Ciclosporin is rarely used in juvenile idiopathic arthritis, connective tissue diseases, vasculitis, and uveitis; it may be considered if the condition has failed to respond to other treatments.

#### Cytokine modulators

Cytokine modulators should be used under specialist supervision.

Adalimumab p. 642, etanercept p. 643, and infliximab p. 33 inhibit the activity of tumour necrosis factor alpha (TNF- $\alpha$ ). Adalimumab can be used for the management of active polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis and enthesitis-related arthritis. Etanercept is licensed for the treatment of the following subtypes of juvenile idiopathic arthritis: polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis in children who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate or who cannot tolerate it, oligoarthritis in children who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate or who cannot tolerate it, psoriatic arthritis in children over 12 years who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate or cannot tolerate

it, and enthesitis-related arthritis in children over 12 years who have had an inadequate response to conventional therapy or cannot tolerate it. Infliximab has been used in refractory polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis [unlicensed indication] when other treatments, such as etanercept, have failed.

Abatacept p. 641 prevents the full activation of T-lymphocytes; it can be used for the management of active polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis. Abatacept is not recommended for use in combination with TNF inhibitors.

Canakinumab p. 526 inhibits the activity of interleukin-1 beta (IL-1 $\beta$ ) and is licensed for the treatment of active systemic juvenile idiopathic arthritis in children over 2 years, when there has been an inadequate response to NSAIDs and systemic corticosteroids.

Tocilizumab p. 640 antagonises the actions of interleukin-6; it can be used for the management of active systemic juvenile idiopathic arthritis when there has been an inadequate response to NSAIDs and systemic corticosteroids and polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis when there has been an inadequate response to methotrexate. Tocilizumab can be used in combination with methotrexate, or as monotherapy if methotrexate is not tolerated or is contra-indicated. Tocilizumab is not recommended for use with other cytokine modulators.

### Sulfasalazine

Sulfasalazine has a beneficial effect in suppressing the inflammatory activity associated with some forms of juvenile idiopathic arthritis; it is generally not used in systemic-onset disease.

**Other drugs used for Arthritis** Diclofenac potassium, p. 651  
• Diclofenac sodium, p. 652 • Etoricoxib, p. 653 • Flurbiprofen, p. 654 • Ibuprofen, p. 655 • Indometacin, p. 657 • Meloxicam, p. 658 • Naproxen, p. 659 • Piroxicam, p. 660

## DISEASE-MODIFYING ANTI-RHEUMATIC DRUGS

### Hydroxychloroquine sulfate

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Active rheumatoid arthritis (including juvenile idiopathic arthritis) (administered on expert advice) | Systemic and discoid lupus erythematosus (administered on expert advice) | Dermatological conditions caused or aggravated by sunlight (administered on expert advice)**

► BY MOUTH

► Child: 5–6.5 mg/kg once daily (max. per dose 400 mg), dose given based on ideal body-weight

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Plaquenil*® not licensed for use in children for dermatological conditions caused or aggravated by sunlight.
- **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 • diabetes (may lower blood glucose) • G6PD deficiency • may aggravate myasthenia gravis • may exacerbate psoriasis • neurological disorders (especially in those with a history of epilepsy) • severe gastro-intestinal disorders

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Screening for ocular toxicity Hydroxychloroquine is rarely associated with ocular toxicity. The British Society for Paediatric and Adolescent Rheumatology recommends that children should have their vision tested before long-term treatment with hydroxychloroquine and have an annual review of visual acuity. Children should be referred to an ophthalmologist if there is visual impairment, changes in visual acuity, or blurred vision. The Royal College of Ophthalmologists has recommended that a locally agreed protocol between the prescribing doctor and ophthalmologist be established to monitor the vision of

these children. A review group convened by the Royal College of Ophthalmologists has updated guidelines for screening to prevent ocular toxicity on long-term treatment with hydroxychloroquine (*Hydroxychloroquine and Ocular Toxicity: Recommendations on Screening* 2009); this includes the recommendation that a child treated for juvenile idiopathic arthritis should receive slit-lamp examination routinely to check for uveitis.

• **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: hydroxychloroquine

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain • appetite decreased • diarrhoea • emotional lability • headache • nausea • skin reactions • vision disorders • vomiting
- **Uncommon** Alopecia • corneal oedema • dizziness • eye disorders • hair colour changes • hearing impairment • nervousness • neuromuscular dysfunction • retinopathy • seizure • vertigo
- **Frequency not known** Acute hepatic failure • agranulocytosis • anaemia • angioedema • bone marrow disorders • bronchospasm • cardiac conduction disorders • cardiomyopathy • hypoglycaemia • leucopenia • movement disorders • muscle weakness • myopathy • photosensitivity reaction • psychosis • reflexes absent • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • thrombocytopenia • tremor • ventricular hypertrophy

**Overdose** Hydroxychloroquine is very toxic in overdosage; overdosage is extremely hazardous and difficult to treat. Urgent advice from the National Poisons Information Service is essential. Life-threatening features include arrhythmias (which can have a very rapid onset) and convulsions (which can be intractable).

- **PREGNANCY** It is not necessary to withdraw an antimalarial drug during pregnancy if the rheumatic disease is well controlled; however, the manufacturer of hydroxychloroquine advises avoiding use.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—risk of toxicity in infant.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Caution in moderate to severe hepatic impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution. **Monitoring** Monitor plasma-hydroxychloroquine concentration in severe renal impairment.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, the dose of hydroxychloroquine should be calculated on the basis of ideal body-weight.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Hydroxychloroquine sulfate (Non-proprietary)**

**Hydroxychloroquine sulfate 200 mg** Hydroxychloroquine 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £32.49 DT = £5.83

► **Quinoric** (Bristol Laboratories Ltd)

**Hydroxychloroquine sulfate 200 mg** Quinoric 200mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £4.75 DT = £5.83

## IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > INTERLEUKIN INHIBITORS

### Tocilizumab

24-May-2018

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Active systemic juvenile idiopathic arthritis [in combination with methotrexate or alone if methotrexate inappropriate, in children who have had an inadequate response to NSAIDs and systemic corticosteroids]**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 2–17 years (body-weight up to 30 kg): 12 mg/kg every 2 weeks, for dose adjustments in patients with liver enzyme abnormalities, or low absolute neutrophil or platelet count—consult product literature, review treatment if no improvement within 6 weeks
- Child 2–17 years (body-weight 30 kg and above): 8 mg/kg every 2 weeks, for dose adjustments in patients with liver enzyme abnormalities, or low absolute neutrophil or platelet count—consult product literature, review treatment if no improvement within 6 weeks

**Polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis [in combination with methotrexate or alone if methotrexate inappropriate, in children who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate]**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 2–17 years (body-weight up to 30 kg): 10 mg/kg every 4 weeks, for dose adjustments in patients with liver enzyme abnormalities, or low absolute neutrophil or platelet count—consult product literature, review treatment if no improvement within 12 weeks
- Child 2–17 years (body-weight 30 kg and above): 8 mg/kg every 4 weeks, for dose adjustments in patients with liver enzyme abnormalities, or low absolute neutrophil or platelet count—consult product literature, review treatment if no improvement within 12 weeks

#### ROACTEMRA® PRE-FILLED SYRINGE

**Polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis [in combination with methotrexate or alone if methotrexate inappropriate, in children who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate]**

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 2–17 years (body-weight up to 30 kg): 162 mg every 3 weeks, administer to abdomen, thigh or upper arm, for dose adjustments in patients with liver enzyme abnormalities, or low absolute neutrophil or platelet count—consult product literature, review treatment if no improvement within 12 weeks
- Child 2–17 years (body-weight 30 kg and above): 162 mg every 2 weeks, administer to abdomen, thigh or upper arm, for dose adjustments in patients with liver enzyme abnormalities, or low absolute neutrophil or platelet count—consult product literature, review treatment if no improvement within 12 weeks

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Do not initiate if absolute neutrophil count less than  $2 \times 10^9/\text{litre}$  · severe active infection
- **CAUTIONS** History of diverticulitis · history of intestinal ulceration · history of recurrent or chronic infection (interrupt treatment if serious infection occurs) · low absolute neutrophil count · low platelet count · predisposition to infection (interrupt treatment if serious infection occurs)
- **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - Tuberculosis Patients with latent tuberculosis should be treated with standard therapy before starting tocilizumab.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: monoclonal antibodies

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · headache · increased risk of infection · infusion related reaction · nausea
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Discontinue if absolute neutrophil count less than  $0.5 \times 10^9/\text{litre}$  or platelet count less than  $50 \times 10^3/\text{microlitre}$ .

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required during and for 3 months after treatment.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—toxicity in *animal* studies.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution—consult product literature.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

- With intravenous use Manufacturer advises monitor renal function closely in moderate-to-severe impairment—no information available.
- With subcutaneous use Manufacturer advises monitor renal function closely in severe impairment—no information available.

#### ● PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING

- Tuberculosis Patients should be evaluated for tuberculosis before treatment.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- Manufacturer advises monitor lipid profile 4–8 weeks after starting treatment and then as indicated.
- Manufacturer advises monitor for demyelinating disorders.
- Manufacturer advises monitor hepatic transaminases, and neutrophil and platelet count at the time of the second administration, and then as indicated.

#### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- With intravenous use For *intravenous infusion*, manufacturer advises for body-weight less than 30 kg, give intermittently in Sodium chloride 0.9%, dilute requisite dose to a volume of 50 mL with infusion fluid and give over 1 hour; body-weight 30 kg or greater, give intermittently in Sodium chloride 0.9%, dilute requisite dose to a volume of 100 mL with infusion fluid and give over 1 hour.
- With subcutaneous use For *subcutaneous injection*, manufacturer advises rotate injection site and avoid skin that is tender, damaged or scarred. Patients may self-administer RoActemra®, after appropriate training in subcutaneous injection technique.

#### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

- Manufacturer advises to record the brand name and batch number after each administration.

- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Manufacturer advises protect from light and store in a refrigerator (2–8 °C)—consult product literature for further information regarding storage conditions outside refrigerator and after preparation of the infusion.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Manufacturer advises patients and their carers should be advised to seek immediate medical attention if symptoms of infection occur, or if symptoms of diverticular perforation such as abdominal pain, haemorrhage, or fever accompanying change in bowel habits occur.

An alert card should be provided.

**Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients should be counselled on the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- Tocilizumab for the treatment of systemic juvenile idiopathic arthritis (December 2011) NICE TA238  
Tocilizumab is recommended for the treatment of systemic juvenile idiopathic arthritis in children aged

2 years and older who have not responded adequately to NSAIDs, systemic corticosteroids and methotrexate, if the manufacturer makes tocilizumab available with the discount agreed as part of the patient access scheme.

Tocilizumab is **not** recommended for the treatment of systemic juvenile idiopathic arthritis in children whose disease continues to respond to methotrexate or who have not been treated with methotrexate.

Patients currently receiving tocilizumab for systemic juvenile idiopathic arthritis who do not meet these criteria should have the option to continue treatment until it is considered appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta238](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta238)

- ▶ **Abatacept, adalimumab, etanercept and tocilizumab for treating juvenile idiopathic arthritis (December 2015)**  
NICE TA373

Tocilizumab is recommended as an option for treatment of polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA), including polyarticular-onset, polyarticular-course and extended oligoarticular JIA in children 2 years and older whose disease has responded inadequately to previous therapy with methotrexate and if the manufacturer provides tocilizumab with the discounts agreed in the patient access schemes.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta373](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta373)

## ● MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Solution for injection

- ▶ **RoActemra** (Roche Products Ltd)

**Tocilizumab 180 mg per 1 mL** RoActemra 162mg/0.9mL solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £913.12 (Hospital only)

RoActemra 162mg/0.9mL solution for injection pre-filled pen | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £913.12

### Solution for infusion

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- ▶ **RoActemra** (Roche Products Ltd)

**Tocilizumab 20 mg per 1 mL** RoActemra 400mg/20mL concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £512.00 (Hospital only)  
RoActemra 200mg/10mL concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £256.00 (Hospital only)

RoActemra 80mg/4mL concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £102.40 (Hospital only)

## IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > T-CELL ACTIVATION INHIBITORS

### Abatacept

01-Dec-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Moderate-to-severe active polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child 6–17 years (body-weight up to 75 kg): 10 mg/kg every 2 weeks for 3 doses, then 10 mg/kg every 4 weeks, review treatment if no response within 6 months
- ▶ Child 6–17 years (body-weight 75–100 kg): 750 mg every 2 weeks for 3 doses, then 750 mg every 4 weeks, review treatment if no response within 6 months
- ▶ Child 6–17 years (body-weight 101 kg and above): 1 g every 2 weeks for 3 doses, then 1 g every 4 weeks, review treatment if no response within 6 months

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Severe infection

- **CAUTIONS** Children should be brought up to date with current immunisation schedule before initiating therapy · do not initiate until active infections are controlled · predisposition to infection (screen for latent tuberculosis and viral hepatitis) · progressive multifocal leucoencephalopathy (discontinue treatment if neurological symptoms present)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: Pharmacology

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Asthenia · cough · diarrhoea · dizziness · gastrointestinal discomfort · headaches · hypertension · increased risk of infection · nausea · oral ulceration · skin reactions · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Alopecia · anxiety · arrhythmias · arthralgia · bruising tendency · conjunctivitis · depression · dry eye · dyspnoea · gastritis · hyperhidrosis · hypotension · influenza like illness · leucopenia · menstrual cycle irregularities · pain in extremity · palpitations · paraesthesia · respiratory disorders · sepsis · sleep disorders · throat tightness · thrombocytopenia · vasculitis · vasodilation · vertigo · visual acuity decreased · weight increased
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Pelvic inflammatory disease · respiratory malignancy
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception required during treatment and for 14 weeks after last dose.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk in *animal* studies—manufacturer advises avoid breast-feeding during treatment and for 14 weeks after last dose.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intravenous infusion, given intermittently in Sodium chloride 0.9%; reconstitute each vial with 10 mL water for injections using the silicone-free syringe provided; dilute requisite dose in Sodium Chloride 0.9% to 100 mL (using the same silicone-free syringe); give over 30 minutes through a low protein-binding filter (pore size 0.2–1.2 micron).
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**  
**NICE decisions**  
▶ **Abatacept, adalimumab, etanercept and tocilizumab for treating juvenile idiopathic arthritis (December 2015)**  
NICE TA373  
Abatacept is recommended as options for treating polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA), including polyarticular-onset, polyarticular-course and extended oligoarticular JIA in patients 6 years and older whose disease has responded inadequately to other disease-modifying anti-rheumatic drugs (DMARDs) including at least 1 tumour necrosis factor (TNF) inhibitor, **only** if the manufacturer provides abatacept with the discounts agreed in the patient access schemes.  
[www.nice.org.uk/TA373](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA373)

## ● MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Orencia** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Abatacept 125 mg per 1 mL** Orencia 125mg/1mL solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £1,209.60 (Hospital only)

- ▶ **Orencia ClickJect** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Abatacept 125 mg per 1 mL** Orencia ClickJect 125mg/1mL solution for injection pre-filled pen | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £1,209.60

### Powder for solution for infusion

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- ▶ **Orencia** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Abatacept 250 mg** Orencia 250mg powder for concentrate for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £302.40 (Hospital only)



## IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > TUMOR NECROSIS FACTOR ALPHA (TNF- $\alpha$ ) INHIBITORS

### Adalimumab

21-Feb-2018

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Plaque psoriasis (initiated by a specialist)

###### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 4–17 years (body-weight 15–29 kg): Initially 20 mg once weekly for 2 doses, then 20 mg every 2 weeks, review treatment if no response within 16 weeks
- Child 4–17 years (body-weight 30 kg and above): Initially 40 mg once weekly for 2 doses, then 40 mg every 2 weeks, review treatment if no response within 16 weeks

##### Polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis (initiated by a specialist)

###### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 2–17 years (body-weight 10–29 kg): 20 mg every 2 weeks, review treatment if no response within 12 weeks
- Child 2–17 years (body-weight 30 kg and above): 40 mg every 2 weeks, review treatment if no response within 12 weeks

##### Enthesitis-related arthritis (initiated by a specialist)

###### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 15–29 kg): 20 mg every 2 weeks
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 30 kg and above): 40 mg every 2 weeks

##### Crohn's disease (initiated by a specialist)

###### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 6–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): Initially 40 mg, then 20 mg after 2 weeks; maintenance 20 mg every 2 weeks, increased if necessary to 20 mg once weekly, review treatment if no response within 12 weeks of initial dose
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): Initially 80 mg, then 40 mg after 2 weeks; maintenance 40 mg every 2 weeks, increased if necessary to 40 mg once weekly, maximum 40 mg administered at a single site, review treatment if no response within 12 weeks of initial dose

##### Crohn's disease (accelerated regimen) (initiated by a specialist)

###### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 6–17 years (body-weight up to 40 kg): Initially 80 mg, then 40 mg after 2 weeks; maintenance 20 mg every 2 weeks, increased if necessary to 20 mg once weekly, maximum 40 mg administered at a single site, review treatment if no response within 12 weeks of initial dose
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): Initially 160 mg, dose can alternatively be given as divided injections over 2 days, then 80 mg after 2 weeks; maintenance 40 mg every 2 weeks, then increased if necessary to 40 mg once weekly, maximum 40 mg administered at a single site, review treatment if no response within 12 weeks of initial dose

##### Hidradenitis suppurativa (initiated by a specialist)

###### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 30 kg and above): Initially 80 mg, given as two 40 mg injections in one day, followed by 40 mg after 1 week, then maintenance 40 mg every 2 weeks; increased if necessary to 40 mg once weekly, review treatment if no response within 12 weeks; if treatment interrupted—consult product literature

#### Uveitis (initiated by a specialist)

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 2–17 years (body-weight up to 30 kg): Initially 40 mg, then 20 mg after 1 week; maintenance 20 mg every 2 weeks, alternatively 20 mg every 2 weeks
- Child 2–17 years (body-weight 30 kg and above): Initially 80 mg, given as two 40 mg injections in one day, then 40 mg after 1 week; maintenance 40 mg every 2 weeks, alternatively 40 mg every 2 weeks

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Moderate or severe heart failure • severe infection

- **CAUTIONS** Children should be brought up to date with current immunisation schedule before initiating therapy • demyelinating disorders (risk of exacerbation) • development of malignancy • do not initiate until active infections are controlled (discontinue if new serious infection develops) • hepatitis B virus—monitor for active infection • history of malignancy • mild heart failure (discontinue if symptoms develop or worsen) • predisposition to infection

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Tuberculosis** Active tuberculosis should be treated with standard treatment for at least 2 months before starting adalimumab. Patients who have previously received adequate treatment for tuberculosis can start adalimumab but should be monitored every 3 months for possible recurrence. In patients without active tuberculosis but who were previously not treated adequately, chemoprophylaxis should ideally be completed before starting adalimumab. In patients at high risk of tuberculosis who cannot be assessed by tuberculin skin test, chemoprophylaxis can be given concurrently with adalimumab.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: monoclonal antibodies

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Agranulocytosis • alopecia • anaemia • anxiety • arrhythmias • arterial occlusion • asthma • broken nails • chest pain • coagulation disorder • connective tissue disorders • cough • dehydration • depression • dyspnoea • electrolyte imbalance • embolism and thrombosis • eye inflammation • fever • flushing • gastrointestinal discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • haemorrhage • headaches • healing impaired • hyperglycaemia • hypersensitivity • hypertension • increased risk of infection • insomnia • leucocytosis • leucopenia • mood altered • muscle spasms • musculoskeletal pain • nausea • neoplasms • nerve disorders • neutropenia • oedema • renal impairment • seasonal allergy • sensation abnormal • sepsis • skin reactions • sweat changes • thrombocytopenia • vasculitis • vertigo • vision disorders • vomiting
- **Uncommon** Aortic aneurysm • congestive heart failure • demyelinating disorders • dysphagia • erectile dysfunction • gallbladder disorders • hearing impairment • hepatic disorders • inflammation • lupus erythematosus • meningitis viral • myocardial infarction • nocturia • pancreatitis • respiratory disorders • rhabdomyolysis • sarcoidosis • solid organ neoplasm • stroke • tremor
- **Rare or very rare** Cardiac arrest • pancytopenia • Stevens-Johnson syndrome

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Associated with infections, sometimes severe, including tuberculosis, septicæmia, and hepatitis B reactivation.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception required during treatment and for at least 5 months after last dose.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid; manufacturer advises avoid for at least 5 months after last dose.

### ● PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING

**Tuberculosis** Patients should be evaluated for tuberculosis before treatment.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Manufacturer advises monitor for infection before, during, and for 4 months after treatment.
- ▶ Manufacturer advises monitor for non-melanoma skin cancer before and during treatment, especially in patients with a history of PUVA treatment for psoriasis or extensive immunosuppressant therapy.
- ▶ For uveitis, manufacturer advises patients should be assessed for pre-existing or developing central demyelinating disorders before and at regular intervals during treatment.

### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Adalimumab is a biological medicine. Biological medicines must be prescribed and dispensed by brand name, see *Biological medicines and Biosimilar medicines*, under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** An alert card should be provided.

When used to treat *hidradenitis suppurativa*, patients and their carers should be advised to use a daily topical antiseptic wash on lesions during treatment with adalimumab.

**Tuberculosis** patients and their carers should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of tuberculosis (e.g. persistent cough, weight loss, or, and fever) develop.

**Blood disorders** Patients and their carers should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of blood disorders (such as fever, sore throat, bruising, or bleeding) develop.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### NICE decisions

- ▶ **Abatacept, adalimumab, etanercept and tocilizumab for treating juvenile idiopathic arthritis (December 2015)** NICE TA373

Adalimumab is recommended as an option for treating polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA), including polyarticular-onset, polyarticular-course and extended oligoarticular JIA in patients 2 years and older whose disease has responded inadequately to 1 or more disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs) and for treating enthesitis-related JIA in patients 6 years and older whose disease has responded inadequately to, or who are intolerant of, conventional therapy.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta373](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta373)

- ▶ **Adalimumab, etanercept and ustekinumab for treating plaque psoriasis in children and young people (July 2017)** NICE TA455
- Adalimumab is recommended as an option for treating plaque psoriasis in children and young people aged 4 years or older, only if the disease:

- is severe, as defined by a total Psoriasis Area and Severity Index (PASI) of 10 or more and
- has not responded to standard systemic therapy, such as ciclosporin, methotrexate or phototherapy, or these options are contra-indicated or not tolerated.

Stop treatment at 16 weeks if the psoriasis has not responded adequately. An adequate response is defined as a 75% reduction in the PASI score from the start of treatment.

Patients currently receiving adalimumab who do not meet the above criteria and whose treatment was started within the NHS before this guidance was published, should have the option to continue treatment until they and their clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta455](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ta455)

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (April 2015) that adalimumab (*Humira*®) is accepted for restricted use

within NHS Scotland for the treatment of active enthesitis-related arthritis in children 6 years of age and over who have had an inadequate response to, or who are intolerant of, conventional therapy, and is used within specialist rheumatology services (including those working within the network for paediatric rheumatology).

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (June 2017) that adalimumab (*Humira*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of active moderate-to-severe hidradenitis suppurativa (HS) (acne inversa) in adolescents from 12 years of age with an inadequate response to conventional systemic HS therapy.

#### All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (January 2017) that adalimumab (*Humira*®) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales for the treatment of moderately to severely active Crohn's disease in children 6 years and over, who have had an inadequate response to conventional therapy including primary nutrition therapy and a corticosteroid and/or an immunomodulator, or who are intolerant to or have contra-indications for such therapies.

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (August 2017) that adalimumab (*Humira*®) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales for the treatment of active moderate to severe hidradenitis suppurativa (acne inversa) in adolescents from 12 years of age with an inadequate response to conventional systemic hidradenitis suppurativa therapy. This advice is contingent upon the continuing availability of the Wales Patient Access Scheme or a list price that is equivalent or lower.

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (December 2017) that adalimumab (*Humira*®) is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales for the treatment of paediatric chronic non-infectious anterior uveitis in patients from two years of age who have had an inadequate response to or are intolerant to conventional therapy, or in whom conventional therapy is inappropriate.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

- ▶ **Humira** (AbbVie Ltd)

**Adalimumab 50 mg per 1 ml** Humira 40mg/0.8ml solution for injection vials | 2 vial [PoM] £704.28

**Adalimumab 100 mg per 1 ml** Humira 40mg/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 2 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £704.28 DT = £704.28

Humira 20mg/0.2ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 2 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £352.14

Humira 40mg/0.4ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 2 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £704.28 DT = £704.28

## Etanercept

14-Sep-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### BENEPALI® SOLUTION FOR INJECTION

**Polyarthritis in children who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate or who cannot tolerate it | Extended oligoarthritis in children who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate or who cannot tolerate it**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 2-17 years: 800 micrograms/kg once weekly (max. per dose 50 mg), consider discontinuation if no response after 4 months

continued →

**Psoriatic arthritis in adolescents who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate or who cannot tolerate it | Enthesitis-related arthritis in adolescents who have had an inadequate response to conventional therapy or who cannot tolerate it**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 12–17 years: 800 micrograms/kg once weekly (max. per dose 50 mg), consider discontinuation if no response after 4 months

**Chronic, severe plaque psoriasis in children who have had an inadequate response to other systemic therapies or phototherapies or who cannot tolerate them**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 6–17 years: 800 micrograms/kg once weekly (max. per dose 50 mg) for up to 24 weeks, discontinue if no response after 12 weeks

**ENBREL® POWDER AND SOLVENT FOR SOLUTION FOR INJECTION**

**Polyarthritis in children who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate or who cannot tolerate it | Extended oligoarthritis in children who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate or who cannot tolerate it**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 2–17 years: 400 micrograms/kg twice weekly (max. per dose 25 mg), to be given at an interval of 3–4 days between doses, alternatively 800 micrograms/kg once weekly (max. per dose 50 mg), consider discontinuation if no response after 4 months

**Psoriatic arthritis in adolescents who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate or who cannot tolerate it | Enthesitis-related arthritis in adolescents who have had an inadequate response to conventional therapy or who cannot tolerate it**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 12–17 years: 400 micrograms/kg twice weekly (max. per dose 25 mg), to be given at an interval of 3–4 days between doses, alternatively 800 micrograms/kg once weekly (max. per dose 50 mg), consider discontinuation if no response after 4 months

**Chronic, severe plaque psoriasis in children who have had an inadequate response to other systemic therapies or phototherapies or who cannot tolerate them**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 6–17 years: 800 micrograms/kg once weekly (max. per dose 50 mg) for up to 24 weeks, discontinue if no response after 12 weeks

**ENBREL® SOLUTION FOR INJECTION**

**Polyarthritis in children who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate or who cannot tolerate it | Extended oligoarthritis in children who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate or who cannot tolerate it**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 2–17 years: 400 micrograms/kg twice weekly (max. per dose 25 mg), to be given at an interval of 3–4 days between doses, alternatively 800 micrograms/kg once weekly (max. per dose 50 mg), consider discontinuation if no response after 4 months

**Psoriatic arthritis in adolescents who have had an inadequate response to methotrexate or who cannot tolerate it | Enthesitis-related arthritis in adolescents who have had an inadequate response to conventional therapy or who cannot tolerate it**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 12–17 years: 400 micrograms/kg twice weekly (max. per dose 25 mg), to be given at an interval of 3–4 days between doses, alternatively 800 micrograms/kg once weekly (max. per dose 50 mg), consider discontinuation if no response after 4 months

**Chronic, severe plaque psoriasis in children who have had an inadequate response to other systemic therapies or phototherapies or who cannot tolerate them**

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 6–17 years: 800 micrograms/kg once weekly (max. per dose 50 mg) for up to 24 weeks, discontinue if no response after 12 weeks

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active infection · avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates

- **CAUTIONS** Children should be brought up to date with current immunisation schedule before initiating therapy · development of malignancy · diabetes mellitus · heart failure (risk of exacerbation) · hepatitis B virus—monitor for active infection · hepatitis C infection (monitor for worsening infection) · history of blood disorders · history of malignancy · history or increased risk of demyelinating disorders · predisposition to infection (avoid if predisposition to septicaemia) · significant exposure to herpes zoster virus—interrupt treatment and consider varicella-zoster immunoglobulin

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- **Tuberculosis** Active tuberculosis should be treated with standard treatment for at least 2 months before starting etanercept. Patients who have previously received adequate treatment for tuberculosis can start etanercept but should be monitored every 3 months for possible recurrence. In patients without active tuberculosis but who were previously not treated adequately, chemoprophylaxis should ideally be completed before starting etanercept. In patients at high risk of tuberculosis who cannot be assessed by tuberculin skin test, chemoprophylaxis can be given concurrently with etanercept.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: etanercept

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Cystitis · fever · hypersensitivity · increased risk of infection · pain · skin reactions · swelling
- **Uncommon** Abscess · bursitis · cholecystitis · diarrhoea · endocarditis · eye inflammation · gastritis · hepatic disorders · myositis · neoplasms · respiratory disorders · sepsis · skin ulcers · thrombocytopenia · vasculitis
- **Rare or very rare** Anaemia · bone marrow disorders · congestive heart failure · cutaneous lupus erythematosus · demyelination · leucopenia · lupus-like syndrome · nerve disorders · neutropenia · sarcoidosis · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · transverse myelitis
- **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain · depression · dermatomyositis exacerbated · headache · hepatitis B reactivation · inflammatory bowel disease · macrophage activation syndrome · nausea · personality disorder · post procedural infection · type 1 diabetes mellitus · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Associated with infections, sometimes severe, including tuberculosis, septicaemia, and hepatitis B reactivation.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception required during treatment and for 3 weeks after last dose.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid—limited information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in moderate to severe alcoholic hepatitis.
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Tuberculosis Patients should be evaluated for tuberculosis before treatment.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor for skin cancer before and during treatment, particularly in those at risk (including patients with psoriasis or a history of PUVA treatment).

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Etanercept is a biological medicine. Biological medicines must be prescribed and dispensed by brand name, see *Biological medicines* and *Biosimilar medicines*, under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

**BENEPALI® SOLUTION FOR INJECTION** Manufacturer advises patients requiring less than the full 50 mg dose should **not** receive *Benepali*®—if an alternate dose is required, other etanercept formulations providing this option should be used.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** An alert card should be provided.  
Blood disorders Patients and their carers should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of blood disorders (such as fever, sore throat, bruising, or bleeding) develop.  
Tuberculosis Patients and their carers should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of tuberculosis (e.g. persistent cough, weight loss, and fever) develop.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- **Abatacept, adalimumab, etanercept and tocilizumab for treating juvenile idiopathic arthritis (December 2015)**  
NICE TA373

Etanercept is recommended as an option for treating:

- polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA), including polyarticular-onset, polyarticular-course and extended oligoarticular JIA, in patients 2 years and over whose disease has responded inadequately to, or who are intolerant of, methotrexate;
- enthesitis-related JIA in patients 12 years and over whose disease has responded inadequately to, or who are intolerant of, conventional therapy;
- psoriatic JIA in patients 12 years and over whose disease has responded inadequately to, or who are intolerant of, methotrexate.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA373](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA373)

- **Adalimumab, etanercept and ustekinumab for treating plaque psoriasis in children and young people (July 2017)**

Etanercept is recommended as an option for treating plaque psoriasis in children and young people aged 6 years and older, only if the disease:

- is severe, as defined by a total Psoriasis Area and Severity Index (PASI) of 10 or more, and
- has not responded to standard systemic therapy, such as ciclosporin, methotrexate or phototherapy, or these options are contra-indicated or not tolerated.

If the psoriasis has not responded adequately, stop treatment at 12 weeks. An adequate response is defined as a 75% reduction in PASI score from the start of treatment.

Patients currently receiving etanercept who do not meet the above criteria and whose treatment was started within the NHS before this guidance was published, should have the option to continue treatment until they and their clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA455](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA455)

##### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (February 2013) that etanercept (*Enbrel*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of polyarthritis (rheumatoid factor positive or negative) and extended oligoarthritis in children and adolescents from the age of 2 years who have had an inadequate response to or are intolerant of methotrexate, psoriatic arthritis in adolescents from the age of 12 years who have had an inadequate response to or are intolerant of methotrexate, and enthesitis-related arthritis in adolescents from the age of 12 years who have had an inadequate response to or are intolerant of conventional therapy. It is further restricted to use within specialist rheumatology services (including

those working within the network for paediatric rheumatology).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

- **Benepali** (Biogen Idec Ltd) ▼

**Etanercept 50 mg per 1 ml** Benepali 50mg/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £656.00  
Benepali 50mg/1ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £656.00

- **Enbrel** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Etanercept 50 mg per 1 ml** Enbrel 50mg/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £715.00 (Hospital only)

Enbrel 25mg/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £357.50 (Hospital only)

- **Enbrel Myclic** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Etanercept 50 mg per 1 ml** Enbrel 50mg/1ml solution for injection pre-filled Myclic pen | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £715.00 (Hospital only)

Enbrel 25mg/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled Myclic pen | 4 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £357.50 (Hospital only)

##### Powder and solvent for solution for injection

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

- **Enbrel** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Etanercept 10 mg** Enbrel Paediatric 10mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 4 vial [PoM] £143.00 (Hospital only)

**Etanercept 25 mg** Enbrel 25mg powder and solvent for solution for injection vials | 4 vial [PoM] £357.50 (Hospital only)

## Golimumab

01-Mar-2018

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis (initiated by a specialist)

- BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): 50 mg once a month, on the same date each month, review treatment if no response after 3–4 doses

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Moderate or severe heart failure • severe active infection

- **CAUTIONS** Active infection (do not initiate until active infections are controlled; discontinue if new serious infection develops until infection controlled) • children should be brought up to date with current immunisation schedule before initiating therapy • demyelinating disorders (risk of exacerbation) • hepatitis B virus—monitor for active infection • history or development of malignancy • mild heart failure (discontinue if symptoms develop or worsen) • predisposition to infection • risk factors for dysplasia or carcinoma of the colon—screen for dysplasia regularly

##### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Tuberculosis** Active tuberculosis should be treated with standard treatment for at least 2 months before starting golimumab. Patients who have previously received adequate treatment for tuberculosis can start golimumab but should be monitored every 3 months for possible recurrence. In patients without active tuberculosis but who were previously not treated adequately, chemoprophylaxis should ideally be completed before starting golimumab. In patients at high risk of tuberculosis who cannot be assessed by tuberculin skin test, chemoprophylaxis can be given concurrently with golimumab. Patients who have tested negative for latent tuberculosis, and those who are receiving or who have completed treatment for latent tuberculosis, should be monitored closely for symptoms of active infection.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: monoclonal antibodies

### • SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Abscess · alopecia · anaemia · asthenia · asthma · bone fracture · chest discomfort · depression · dizziness · fever · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · gastrointestinal inflammatory disorders · headache · hypersensitivity · hypertension · increased risk of infection · insomnia · nausea · paraesthesia · respiratory disorders · skin reactions · stomatitis

► **Uncommon** Arrhythmia · balance impaired · bone marrow disorders · breast disorder · cholelithiasis · constipation · eye inflammation · eye irritation · flushing · goitre · hyperthyroidism · hypothyroidism · leucopenia · liver disorder · menstrual disorder · myocardial ischaemia · neoplasms · sepsis · thrombocytopenia · thrombosis · thyroid disorder · vision disorders

► **Rare or very rare** Bladder disorder · congestive heart failure · demyelination · healing impaired · hepatitis B reactivation · lupus-like syndrome · Raynaud's phenomenon · renal disorder · sarcoidosis · taste altered · vasculitis

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Associated with infections, sometimes severe, including tuberculosis, septicaemia, and hepatitis B reactivation.

• **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises adequate contraception during treatment and for at least 6 months after last dose.

• **PREGNANCY** Use only if essential.

• **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid during and for at least 6 months after treatment—present in milk in animal studies.

• **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.

• **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Tuberculosis Patients should be evaluated for tuberculosis before treatment.

• **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor for infection before, during, and for 5 months after treatment.

### • DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

**Missed dose** If dose administered more than 2 weeks late, subsequent doses should be administered on the new monthly due date.

• **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** An alert card should be provided.

**Tuberculosis** All patients and their carers should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of tuberculosis (e.g. persistent cough, weight loss, and fever) develop.

**Blood disorders** Patients and their carers should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of blood disorders (such as fever, sore throat, bruising, or bleeding) develop.

### • MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

► **Simpsoni** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Golimimumab 100 mg per 1 ml** Simpsoni 50mg/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled disposable devices | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £762.97

Simpsoni 50mg/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £762.97

Simpsoni 100mg/1ml solution for injection pre-filled pen | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £1,525.94

## 2 Neuromuscular disorders

### Neuromuscular disorders

#### Drugs that enhance neuromuscular transmission

Anticholinesterases are used as first-line treatment in *ocular myasthenia gravis* and as an adjunct to immunosuppressant therapy for *generalised myasthenia gravis*.

Corticosteroids are used when anticholinesterases do not control symptoms completely. A second-line immunosuppressant such as azathioprine p. 518 is frequently used to reduce the dose of corticosteroid.

Plasmapheresis or infusion of intravenous immunoglobulin [unlicensed indication] may induce temporary remission in severe relapses, particularly where bulbar or respiratory function is compromised or before thymectomy.

#### Anticholinesterases

Anticholinesterase drugs enhance neuromuscular transmission in voluntary and involuntary muscle in *myasthenia gravis*. Excessive dosage of these drugs can impair neuromuscular transmission and precipitate cholinergic crises by causing a depolarising block. This may be difficult to distinguish from a worsening myasthenic state.

Muscarinic side-effects of anticholinesterases include increased sweating, increased salivary and gastric secretions, increased gastro-intestinal and uterine motility, and bradycardia. These parasympathomimetic effects are antagonised by atropine sulfate p. 810.

Neostigmine p. 648 produces a therapeutic effect for up to 4 hours. Its pronounced muscarinic action is a disadvantage, and simultaneous administration of an antimuscarinic drug such as atropine sulfate or propantheline bromide p. 63 may be required to prevent colic, excessive salivation, or diarrhoea. In severe disease neostigmine can be given every 2 hours. In infants, neostigmine by either subcutaneous or intramuscular injection is preferred for the short-term management of *myasthenia*.

Pyridostigmine bromide p. 649 is less powerful and slower in action than neostigmine but it has a longer duration of action. It is preferable to neostigmine because of its smoother action and the need for less frequent dosage. It is particularly preferred in patients whose muscles are weak on waking. It has a comparatively mild gastrointestinal effect but an antimuscarinic drug may still be required. It is inadvisable to use excessive doses because acetylcholine receptor down regulation may occur. Immunosuppressant therapy may be considered if high doses of pyridostigmine bromide are needed.

Neostigmine and pyridostigmine bromide should be given to neonates 30 minutes before feeds to improve suckling.

Neostigmine is also used to reverse the actions of the non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs.

#### Immunosuppressant therapy

A course of **corticosteroids** is an established treatment in severe cases of *myasthenia gravis* and may be particularly useful when antibodies to the acetylcholine receptor are present in high titre. Short courses of high-dose ('pulsed') methylprednisolone p. 441 followed by maintenance therapy with oral corticosteroids may also be useful.

Corticosteroid treatment is usually initiated under specialist supervision. Transient but very serious worsening of symptoms can occur in the first 2–3 weeks, especially if the corticosteroid is started at a high dose. Once remission has occurred (usually after 2–6 months), the dose of prednisolone p. 442 should be reduced slowly to the minimum effective dose.



## Skeletal muscle relaxants

The drugs described are used for the relief of chronic muscle spasm or spasticity associated with neurological damage; they are not indicated for spasm associated with minor injuries. They act principally on the central nervous system with the exception of dantrolene, which has a peripheral site of action. They differ in action from the muscle relaxants used in anaesthesia, which block transmission at the neuromuscular junction.

The underlying cause of spasticity should be treated and any aggravating factors (e.g. pressure sores, infection) remedied. Skeletal muscle relaxants are effective in most forms of spasticity except the rare alpha variety. The major disadvantage of treatment with these drugs is that reduction in muscle tone can cause a loss of splinting action of the spastic leg and trunk muscles and sometimes lead to an increase in disability.

Dantrolene sodium p. 821 acts directly on skeletal muscle and produces fewer central adverse effects. It is generally used in resistant cases. The dose should be increased slowly.

Baclofen p. 649 inhibits transmission at spinal level and also depresses the central nervous system. The dose should be increased slowly to avoid the major side-effects of sedation and muscular hypotonia (other adverse events are uncommon).

Diazepam p. 220 has undoubted efficacy in some children. Sedation and occasionally extensor hypotonus are disadvantages. Other benzodiazepines also have muscle-relaxant properties.

## 2.1 Muscular dystrophy

### DRUGS FOR NEUROMUSCULAR DISORDERS

#### Ataluren

24-May-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Ataluren restores the synthesis of dystrophin by allowing ribosomes to read through premature stop codons that cause incomplete dystrophin synthesis in nonsense mutation Duchenne muscular dystrophy.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Duchenne muscular dystrophy resulting from a nonsense mutation in the dystrophin gene, in ambulatory patients (initiated by a specialist)**

- BY MOUTH
- Child 5–17 years: (consult product literature)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ataluren
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · constipation · cough · enuresis · fever · flatulence · gastrointestinal discomfort · haemorrhage · headache · hypertension · hypertriglyceridaemia · nausea · pain · rash erythematous · vomiting · weight decreased
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—toxicity in animal studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises discontinue breastfeeding—present in milk in animal studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises close monitoring—safety and efficacy not established.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises close monitoring—safety and efficacy not established.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Manufacturer advises monitor renal function at least every 6–12 months, and cholesterol and triglyceride concentrations at least annually.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises the contents of each sachet should be mixed with at least

30 mL of liquid (water, milk, fruit juice), or 3 tablespoons of semi-solid food (yoghurt or apple sauce).

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Manufacturer advises patients should maintain adequate hydration during treatment.
- Missed doses** Manufacturer advises if a morning or midday dose is more than 3 hours late, or an evening dose is more than 6 hours late, the missed dose should not be taken and the next dose should be taken at the normal time.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### NICE decisions

- **Ataluren for treating Duchenne muscular dystrophy with a nonsense mutation in the dystrophin gene (July 2016)** NICE HST3

Ataluren, within its marketing authorisation, is recommended for treating Duchenne muscular dystrophy resulting from a nonsense mutation in the dystrophin gene in people aged 5 years and older who can walk, only when:

- the manufacturer provides ataluren with the discount agreed in the patient access scheme, **and**
- the conditions under which ataluren is made available are set out in the managed access agreement between the manufacturer and NHS England, which should include the conditions set out in sections 5.12–5.15 and 5.23 of the guidance.

Patients whose treatment was started within the NHS before this guidance was published should have the option to continue treatment, without change to their funding arrangements, until they and their NHS clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/HST3](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/HST3)

##### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (April 2016) that ataluren (*Translarna*®) is **not** recommended for use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of Duchenne muscular dystrophy resulting from a nonsense mutation in the dystrophin gene, in ambulatory patients aged 5 years and older as the economic case was not demonstrated.

##### All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (August 2016) that the NICE HST advice for ataluren (*Translarna*®) should be implemented within NHS Wales.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Granules

- **Translarna** (PTC Therapeutics Ltd) ▼

**Ataluren 125 mg** Translarna 125mg granules for oral suspension sachets | 30 sachet [PoM] £2,532.00

**Ataluren 250 mg** Translarna 250mg granules for oral suspension sachets | 30 sachet [PoM] £5,064.00

**Ataluren 1 gram** Translarna 1,000mg granules for oral suspension sachets | 30 sachet [PoM] £20,256.00

## Nusinersen

18-May-2018

- **DRUG ACTION** Nusinersen is an antisense oligonucleotide that increases the production of survival motor neurone (SMN) protein, thereby helping to compensate for the defect in the SMN1 gene found in 5q spinal muscular atrophy.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**5q spinal muscular atrophy (initiated by a specialist)**

- BY INTRATHECAL INJECTION

- **Neonate:** Initially 12 mg for 4 doses on days 0, 14, 28 and 63, then 12 mg every 4 months, for advice on missed doses—consult product literature.

continued →

- ▶ Child: Initially 12 mg for 4 doses on days 0, 14, 28 and 63, then 12 mg every 4 months, for advice on missed doses—consult product literature

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).
- **CAUTIONS** Risk factors for renal toxicity—monitor urine protein (preferably using a first morning urine specimen) · risk factors for thrombocytopenia and coagulation disorders—monitor platelet and coagulation profile before treatment
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises close monitoring—safety and efficacy not established.
- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Manufacturer advises store in a refrigerator (2–8 °C); may be stored (in the original carton, protected from light) at or below 30 °C, for up to 14 days.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

SMC No. 1318/18

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (May 2018) that nusinersen (*Spinraza*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of 5q spinal muscular atrophy (SMA) in patients with symptomatic type 1 SMA (infantile onset). This advice is contingent upon the continuing availability of the patient access scheme in NHS Scotland or a list price that is equivalent or lower.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Spinraza** (Biogen Idec Ltd) ▼

Nusinersen (as Nusinersen sodium) 2.4 mg per 1 ml Spinraza 12mg/5ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £75,000.00

excessive dreaming, and weakness eventually leading to fasciculation and paralysis.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount probably too small to be harmful.

▶ above

## Neostigmine

### (Neostigmine methylsulfate)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Treatment of myasthenia gravis

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 1–2 mg, then 1–5 mg every 4 hours, given 30 minutes before feeds.

- ▶ Child 1 month–5 years: Initially 7.5 mg, dose repeated at suitable intervals throughout the day, total daily dose 15–90 mg
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: Initially 15 mg, dose repeated at suitable intervals throughout the day, total daily dose 15–90 mg
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 15–30 mg, dose repeated at suitable intervals throughout the day, total daily dose 75–300 mg, the maximum that most patients can tolerate is 180 mg daily

###### ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: 150 micrograms/kg every 6–8 hours, to be given 30 minutes before feeds, then increased if necessary up to 300 micrograms/kg every 4 hours.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 200–500 micrograms, dose repeated at suitable intervals throughout the day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1–2.5 mg, dose repeated at suitable intervals throughout the day

#### Reversal of non-depolarising (competitive) neuromuscular blockade

###### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: 50 micrograms/kg, to be given over 1 minute after or with glycopyrronium or atropine, followed by 25 micrograms/kg if required.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 50 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 2.5 mg), to be given over 1 minute after or with glycopyrronium or atropine, then 25 micrograms/kg if required

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 50 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 2.5 mg), to be given over 1 minute after or with glycopyrronium or atropine, then 25 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 2.5 mg) if required

#### ● UNLICENSED USE

- ▶ In neonates Dose for treatment of myasthenia gravis by subcutaneous or intramuscular injection is unlicensed.

#### ● CAUTIONS

- ▶ With intravenous use Glycopyrronium or atropine should also be given when reversing neuromuscular blockade

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: neostigmine

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** May need dose reduction.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous injection*, give undiluted or dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

## 2.2 Myasthenia gravis and Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome

### ANTICHOLINESTERASES

#### Anticholinesterases

- **DRUG ACTION** They prolong the action of acetylcholine by inhibiting the action of the enzyme acetylcholinesterase.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Intestinal obstruction · urinary obstruction

- **CAUTIONS** Arrhythmias · asthma (extreme caution) · atropine or other antidote to muscarinic effects may be necessary (particularly when neostigmine is given by injection) but not given routinely because it may mask signs of overdosage · bradycardia · epilepsy · hyperthyroidism · hypotension · parkinsonism · peptic ulceration · recent myocardial infarction · vagotonia

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal cramps · diarrhoea · excessive tearing · gastrointestinal disorders · hypersalivation · muscle complaints · nausea · rash · vomiting

**Overdose** Signs of overdosage include bronchoconstriction, increased bronchial secretions, lacrimation, excessive sweating, involuntary defaecation, involuntary micturition, miosis, nystagmus, bradycardia, heart block, arrhythmias, hypotension, agitation,

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

#### Solution for injection

##### ▶ Neostigmine (Non-proprietary)

Neostigmine metilsulfate 2.5 mg per 1 ml Neostigmine 2.5mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £5.45 DT = £5.45

#### Tablet

##### ▶ Neostigmine (Non-proprietary)

Neostigmine bromide 15 mg Neostigmine 15mg tablets | 140 tablet [PoM] £120.52 DT = £120.52

F 648

## Pyridostigmine bromide

- **DRUG ACTION** Pyridostigmine bromide has weaker muscarinic action than neostigmine.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Myasthenia gravis

##### ▶ INITIALLY BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 1–1.5 mg/kg, dose repeated throughout the day, then (by mouth using immediate-release medicines) increased if necessary up to 10 mg, to be increased gradually and given 30–60 minutes before feeds.
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 1–1.5 mg/kg daily, then (by mouth using immediate-release medicines) increased to 7 mg/kg daily in 6 divided doses, to be increased gradually; (by mouth using immediate-release medicines) usual dose 30–360 mg daily in divided doses
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 30–120 mg, dose repeated throughout the day; (by mouth using immediate-release medicines) usual dose 300–600 mg daily in divided doses, consider immunosuppressant therapy if total daily dose exceeds 360 mg, down-regulation of acetylcholine receptors possible if total daily dose exceeds 450 mg

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: pyridostigmine

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

Dose adjustments Reduce dose; excreted by kidney.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Tablet

##### ▶ Pyridostigmine bromide (Non-proprietary)

Pyridostigmine bromide 60 mg Pyridostigmine bromide 60mg tablets | 200 tablet [PoM] £45.48 DT = £44.02

##### ▶ Mestinon (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Pyridostigmine bromide 60 mg Mestinon 60mg tablets | 200 tablet [PoM] £45.57 DT = £44.02

## 2.3 Spasticity

**Other drugs used for Spasticity** Dantrolene sodium, p. 821 · Diazepam, p. 220

### MUSCLE RELAXANTS > CENTRALLY ACTING

## Baclofen

21-Nov-2016

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Chronic severe spasticity of voluntary muscle

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–7 years: Initially 300 micrograms/kg daily in 4 divided doses, increased gradually at weekly

intervals until satisfactory response; maintenance 0.75–2 mg/kg daily in divided doses, review treatment if no benefit within 6 weeks of achieving maximum dose; maximum 40 mg per day

- ▶ Child 8–17 years: Initially 300 micrograms/kg daily in 4 divided doses, increased gradually at weekly intervals until satisfactory response; maintenance 0.75–2 mg/kg daily in divided doses, review treatment if no benefit within 6 weeks of achieving maximum dose; maximum 60 mg per day

#### Severe chronic spasticity of cerebral or spinal origin unresponsive to oral antispastic drugs (or oral therapy not tolerated) (specialist use only)

##### ▶ BY INTRATHECAL INJECTION

- ▶ Child 4–17 years: Test dose 25–50 micrograms, to be given over at least 1 minute via catheter or lumbar puncture, then increased in steps of 25 micrograms (max. per dose 100 micrograms), not more often than every 24 hours to determine initial maintenance dose; maintenance 25–200 micrograms daily, adjusted according to response, dose-titration phase, most often using infusion pump (implanted into chest wall or abdominal wall tissues) to establish maintenance dose retaining some spasticity to avoid sensation of paralysis

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Consult product literature for details on test dose and titration—important to monitor patients closely in appropriately equipped and staffed environment during screening and immediately after pump implantation. Resuscitation equipment must be available for immediate use. Treatment with continuous pump-administered intrathecal baclofen should be initiated within 3 months of a satisfactory response to intrathecal baclofen testing.

### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

- ▶ With intrathecal use Local infection · systemic infection
- ▶ With oral use Avoid oral route in active peptic ulceration

### ● CAUTIONS

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Diabetes · epilepsy · history of peptic ulcer · hypertonic bladder sphincter · psychiatric illness · respiratory impairment

#### SPECIFIC CAUTIONS

- ▶ With intrathecal use Coagulation disorders · malnutrition (increased risk of post-surgical complications) · previous spinal fusion procedure

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: baclofen

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

#### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Asthenia · confusion · constipation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · euphoric mood · hallucination · headache · hyperhidrosis · hypotension · nausea · paraesthesia · respiratory disorders · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · sleep disorders · urinary disorders · vision disorders · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Bradycardia · hypothermia · taste altered
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Withdrawal syndrome

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common**
- ▶ With intrathecal use Anxiety · appetite decreased · chills · dyspnoea · fever · hypersalivation · neuromuscular dysfunction · oedema · pain · pneumonia · seizure
- ▶ With oral use Gastrointestinal disorder · muscle weakness · myalgia

10

Musculoskeletal system

- **Uncommon**
  - With intrathecal use Alopecia · deep vein thrombosis · dehydration · flushing · hypertension · ileus · memory loss · pallor · paranoia · suicidal tendencies
- **Rare or very rare**
  - With oral use Abdominal pain · hepatic function abnormal
- **Frequency not known**
  - With intrathecal use Scoliosis
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk (toxicity in *animal studies*).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—amount probably too small to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
  - With oral use Manufacturer advises use with caution.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Excreted by the kidney.
  - Dose adjustments** ► With oral use Risk of toxicity—use smaller oral doses and if necessary increase dosage interval; if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 15 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> use by mouth only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **TREATMENT CESSATION** Avoid abrupt withdrawal (risk of hyperactive state, may exacerbate spasticity, and precipitate autonomic dysfunction including hyperthermia, psychiatric reactions and convulsions; to minimise risk, discontinue by gradual dose reduction over at least 1–2 weeks (longer if symptoms occur)).
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral liquid formulations may include raspberry.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Baclofen for muscle spasm [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/baclofen-muscle-spasm](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/baclofen-muscle-spasm)

**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 8, 21

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Gluten

#### ► **Baclofen (Non-proprietary)**

**Baclofen 10 mg** Baclofen 10mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £9.99 DT = £1.07

#### ► **Lioresal** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Baclofen 10 mg** Lioresal 10mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £14.86

#### **Solution for injection**

#### ► **Baclofen (Non-proprietary)**

**Baclofen 50 microgram per 1 ml** Baclofen 50micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £25.00–£27.60

#### ► **Lioresal** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Baclofen 50 microgram per 1 ml** Lioresal Intrathecal 50micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £3.16

#### **Solution for infusion**

#### ► **Baclofen (Non-proprietary)**

**Baclofen 500 microgram per 1 ml** Baclofen 10mg/20ml solution for infusion ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £50.00–£57.00

**Baclofen 2 mg per 1 ml** Baclofen 40mg/20ml solution for infusion ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £228.00–£250.00

Baclofen 10mg/5ml solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £500.00–£570.00

#### ► **Lioresal** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Baclofen 500 microgram per 1 ml** Lioresal Intrathecal 10mg/20ml solution for infusion ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £70.01

**Baclofen 2 mg per 1 ml** Lioresal Intrathecal 10mg/5ml solution for infusion ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £70.01

#### **Oral solution**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 8, 21

#### ► **Baclofen (Non-proprietary)**

**Baclofen 1 mg per 1 ml** Baclofen 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar free | 300 ml [PoM] £13.45 DT = £2.71

#### ► **Lioresal** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Baclofen 1 mg per 1 ml** Lioresal 5mg/5ml liquid sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM] £10.31 DT = £2.71

#### ► **Lyflex** (Chemidex Pharma Ltd)

**Baclofen 1 mg per 1 ml** Lyflex 5mg/5ml oral solution sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM] £7.95 DT = £2.71

## 3 Pain and inflammation in musculoskeletal disorders

### Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs

#### Therapeutic effects

In *single doses* non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) have analgesic activity comparable to that of paracetamol p. 271 but paracetamol is preferred.

In regular *full dosage* NSAIDs have both a lasting analgesic and an anti-inflammatory effect which makes them particularly useful for the treatment of continuous or regular pain associated with inflammation.

#### Choice

Differences in anti-inflammatory activity between NSAIDs are small, but there is considerable variation in individual response and tolerance of these drugs. A large proportion of children will respond to any NSAID; of the others, those who do not respond to one may well respond to another. Pain relief starts soon after taking the first dose and a full analgesic effect should normally be obtained within a week, whereas an anti-inflammatory effect may not be achieved (or may not be clinically assessable) for up to 3 weeks. However, in juvenile idiopathic arthritis NSAIDs may take 4–12 weeks to be effective. If appropriate responses are not obtained within these times, another NSAID should be tried. The availability of appropriate formulations needs to be considered when prescribing NSAIDs for children.

NSAIDs reduce the production of prostaglandins by inhibiting the enzyme cyclo-oxygenase. They vary in their selectivity for inhibiting different types of cyclo-oxygenase; selective inhibition of cyclo-oxygenase-2 is associated with less gastro-intestinal intolerance. However, in children gastro-intestinal symptoms are rare in those taking NSAIDs for short periods. The role of selective inhibitors of cyclo-oxygenase-2 is undetermined in children.

Ibuprofen p. 655 and naproxen p. 659 are propionic acid derivatives used in children.

Ibuprofen combines anti-inflammatory, analgesic, and antipyretic properties. It has fewer side-effects than other NSAIDs but its anti-inflammatory properties are weaker.

Naproxen combines good efficacy with a low incidence of side-effects.

Diclofenac sodium p. 652, diclofenac potassium p. 651, indometacin p. 657, mefenamic acid p. 658, and piroxicam p. 660 have properties similar to those of propionic acid derivatives:

Diclofenac sodium and diclofenac potassium are similar in efficacy to naproxen.

Indometacin has an action equal to or superior to that of naproxen, but with a high incidence of side-effects including headache, dizziness, and gastro-intestinal disturbances. It is rarely used in children and should be reserved for when other NSAIDs have been unsuccessful.

Mefenamic acid has minor anti-inflammatory properties. It has occasionally been associated with diarrhoea and haemolytic anaemia which require discontinuation of treatment.

Piroxicam is as effective as naproxen and has a long duration of action which permits once-daily administration.

However, it has more gastro-intestinal side-effects than most other NSAIDs, and is associated with more frequent serious skin reactions.

Meloxicam p. 658 is a selective inhibitor of cyclo-oxygenase-2. Its use may be considered in adolescents intolerant to other NSAIDs.

Ketorolac trometamol p. 817 can be used for the short-term management of postoperative pain.

Etoricoxib p. 653, a selective inhibitor of cyclo-oxygenase-2, is licensed for the relief of pain in osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, ankylosing spondylitis, and acute gout in children aged 16 years and over.

#### Dental and orofacial pain

Most mild to moderate dental pain and inflammation is effectively relieved by ibuprofen, diclofenac potassium or diclofenac sodium.

#### NSAIDs and cardiovascular events

The risk of cardiovascular events secondary to NSAID use is undetermined in children. In adults, all NSAID use (including cyclo-oxygenase-2 selective inhibitors) can, to varying degrees, be associated with a small increased risk of thrombotic events (e.g. myocardial infarction and stroke) independent of baseline cardiovascular risk factors or duration of NSAID use; however, the greatest risk may be in those patients receiving high doses long term. A small increased thrombotic risk cannot be excluded in children.

In adults, cyclo-oxygenase-2 selective inhibitors, diclofenac (150 mg daily) and ibuprofen (2.4 g daily) are associated with an increased risk of thrombotic events. The increased risk for diclofenac is similar to that of etoricoxib. Naproxen (in adults, 1 g daily) is associated with a lower thrombotic risk, and lower doses of ibuprofen (in adults, 1.2 g daily or less) have not been associated with an increased risk of myocardial infarction.

The lowest effective dose of NSAID should be prescribed for the shortest period of time to control symptoms, and the need for long-term treatment should be reviewed periodically.

#### NSAIDs and gastro-intestinal events

All NSAIDs are associated with gastro-intestinal toxicity. In adults, evidence on the relative safety of NSAIDs indicates differences in the risks of serious upper gastro-intestinal side-effects—piroxicam and ketorolac trometamol are associated with the highest risk; indometacin, diclofenac, and naproxen are associated with intermediate risk, and ibuprofen with the lowest risk (although high doses of ibuprofen have been associated with intermediate risk). Selective inhibitors of cyclo-oxygenase-2 are associated with a lower risk of serious upper gastro-intestinal side-effects than non-selective NSAIDs.

Children appear to tolerate NSAIDs better than adults and gastro-intestinal side-effects are less common although they do still occur and can be significant; use of gastro-protective drugs may be necessary.

#### Asthma

All NSAIDs have the potential to worsen asthma, either acutely or as a gradual worsening of symptoms; consider both prescribed NSAIDs and those that are purchased over the counter.

## ANALGESICS > NON-STEROIDAL ANTI-INFLAMMATORY DRUGS

### Diclofenac potassium

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Pain and inflammation in rheumatic disease and other musculoskeletal disorders**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 14–17 years: 75–100 mg daily in 2–3 divided doses

#### **Postoperative pain**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 9–13 years (body-weight 35 kg and above): Up to 2 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses; maximum 100 mg per day

► Child 14–17 years: 75–100 mg daily in 2–3 divided doses

#### **Fever in ear, nose, or throat infection**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 9–17 years (body-weight 35 kg and above): Up to 2 mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses; maximum 100 mg per day

• **UNLICENSED USE** Voltarol® Rapid not licensed for use in children under 14 years or in fever.

• **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active gastro-intestinal bleeding • active gastro-intestinal ulceration • cerebrovascular disease • history of gastro-intestinal bleeding related to previous NSAID therapy • history of gastro-intestinal perforation related to previous NSAID therapy • history of recurrent gastro-intestinal haemorrhage (two or more distinct episodes) • history of recurrent gastro-intestinal ulceration (two or more distinct episodes) • ischaemic heart disease • mild to severe heart failure • peripheral arterial disease

• **CAUTIONS** Allergic disorders • cardiac impairment (NSAIDs may impair renal function) • coagulation defects • connective-tissue disorders • Crohn's disease (may be exacerbated) • history of cardiac failure • hypertension • left ventricular dysfunction • oedema • risk factors for cardiovascular events • ulcerative colitis (may be exacerbated)

• **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Appetite decreased • diarrhoea • dizziness • gastrointestinal discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • headache • nausea • skin reactions • vertigo • vomiting

► **Uncommon** Chest pain • heart failure • myocardial infarction • palpitations

► **Rare or very rare** Acute kidney injury • agranulocytosis • alopecia • anaemia • angioedema • anxiety • aplastic anaemia • asthma • confusion • constipation • depression • drowsiness • dyspnoea • erectile dysfunction • fatigue • haemolytic anaemia • haemorrhage • hearing impairment • hepatic disorders • hypersensitivity • hypertension • hypotension • inflammatory bowel disease • irritability • leucopenia • memory loss • meningitis aseptic (patients with connective-tissue disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus may be especially susceptible) • nephritis tubulointerstitial • nephrotic syndrome • oedema • oral disorders • pancreatitis • photosensitivity reaction • pneumonitis • proteinuria • psychotic disorder • renal papillary necrosis • seizure • sensation abnormal • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • shock • sleep disorders • stroke • taste altered • thrombocytopenia • tremor • vasculitis • vision disorders

► **Frequency not known** Hallucination • malaise • optic neuritis

• **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any



other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk. Avoid during the third trimester (risk of closure of fetal ductus arteriosus *in utero* and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn); onset of labour may be delayed and duration may be increased.
  - **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution during breast-feeding. Amount in milk too small to be harmful.
  - **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; there is an increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention. Avoid in severe liver disease.
  - **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible or use with caution. Avoid in severe impairment.
- Dose adjustments** The lowest effective dose should be used for the shortest possible duration.
- Monitoring** In renal impairment monitor renal function; sodium and water retention may occur and renal function may deteriorate, possibly leading to renal failure.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Diclofenac for pain and inflammation [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/diclofenac-for-pain-and-inflammation](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/diclofenac-for-pain-and-inflammation)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

##### ► Diclofenac potassium (Non-proprietary)

**Diclofenac potassium 25 mg** Diclofenac potassium 25mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.87 DT = £3.87

**Diclofenac potassium 50 mg** Diclofenac potassium 50mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £6.18–£7.41

##### ► Voltarol Rapid (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Diclofenac potassium 50 mg** Voltarol Rapid 50mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £7.94 DT = £7.94

## Diclofenac sodium

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Pain and inflammation in rheumatic disease including juvenile idiopathic arthritis

##### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 6 months–17 years: 1.5–2.5 mg/kg twice daily, total daily dose may alternatively be given in 3 divided doses; maximum 150 mg per day

##### Postoperative pain

##### ► BY RECTUM

- Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight 8–11 kg): 12.5 mg twice daily for maximum 4 days
- Child 6 months–17 years (body-weight 12 kg and above): 1 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 50 mg) for maximum 4 days

##### Inflammation | Mild to moderate pain

##### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES, OR BY RECTUM

- Child 6 months–17 years: 0.3–1 mg/kg 3 times a day (max. per dose 50 mg)

##### DICLOMAX RETARD®

##### Pain and inflammation

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 1 capsule once daily

##### DICLOMAX SR®

##### Pain and inflammation

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 1 capsule 1–2 times a day

##### MOTIFENE®

##### Pain and inflammation

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 1 capsule 1–2 times a day

##### VOLTAROL® 75MG SR TABLETS

##### Pain and inflammation

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 1 tablet 1–2 times a day

##### VOLTAROL® RETARD

##### Pain and inflammation

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 1 tablet once daily

##### VOLTAROL® SOLUTION FOR INJECTION

##### Postoperative pain

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION, OR BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child 2–17 years: 0.3–1 mg/kg 1–2 times a day for maximum 2 days, for intramuscular injection, to be injected into the gluteal muscle; maximum 150 mg per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 1 year. *Suppositories* not licensed for use in children under 6 years except for use in children over 1 year for juvenile idiopathic arthritis. Solid dose forms containing more than 25 mg not licensed for use in children. *Injection* not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active gastro-intestinal bleeding · active gastro-intestinal ulceration · avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates · avoid suppositories in proctitis · cerebrovascular disease · history of gastro-intestinal bleeding related to previous NSAID therapy · history of gastro-intestinal perforation related to previous NSAID therapy · history of recurrent gastro-intestinal haemorrhage (two or more distinct episodes) · history of recurrent gastro-intestinal ulceration (two or more distinct episodes) · ischaemic heart disease · mild to severe heart failure · peripheral arterial disease
- With intravenous use Dehydration · history of asthma · history of confirmed or suspected cerebrovascular bleeding · history of haemorrhagic diathesis · hypovolaemia · operations with high risk of haemorrhage

- **CAUTIONS** Allergic disorders · cardiac impairment (NSAIDs may impair renal function) · coagulation defects · connective-tissue disorders · Crohn's disease (may be exacerbated) · history of cardiac failure · hypertension · left ventricular dysfunction · oedema · risk factors for cardiovascular events · ulcerative colitis (may be exacerbated)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · diarrhoea · dizziness · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · headache · nausea · oedema · skin reactions · rash (discontinue) · vertigo · vomiting
- **Uncommon** Chest pain · heart failure · myocardial infarction · palpitations
- **Rare or very rare** Acute kidney injury · agranulocytosis · alopecia · anaemia · angioedema · anxiety · aplastic anaemia · asthma · confusion · constipation · Crohn's disease · depression · disorientation · drowsiness · dyspnoea · erectile dysfunction · haemolytic anaemia · haemorrhage · hearing impairment · hepatic disorders · hypersensitivity · hypertension · hypotension · irritability · leucopenia · memory loss · meningitis aseptic (patients with connective-tissue disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus may be especially susceptible) · nephritis tubulointerstitial · nephrotic syndrome · oral disorders · pancreatitis · paraesthesia · photosensitivity reaction · pneumonitis · proteinuria · psychotic disorder · renal

papillary necrosis • seizure • sensation abnormal • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • shock • sleep disorders • stroke • taste altered • thrombocytopenia • tremor • vasculitis • vision disorders

- **Frequency not known** Fertility decreased female • fluid retention • hallucination • malaise • optic neuritis • platelet aggregation inhibition

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For information about cardiovascular and gastrointestinal side-effects, and a possible exacerbation of symptoms in asthma, see Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs p. 650.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk. Avoid during the third trimester (risk of closure of fetal ductus arteriosus *in utero* and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn); onset of labour may be delayed and duration may be increased.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution during breast-feeding. Amount in milk too small to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; there is an increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention. Avoid in severe liver disease.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible or use with caution. Avoid in severe impairment.
- With intravenous use Contra-indicated in moderate or severe renal impairment.
- Dose adjustments** The lowest effective dose should be used for the shortest possible duration.
- Monitoring** In renal impairment monitor renal function; sodium and water retention may occur and renal function may deteriorate, possibly leading to renal failure.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute 75 mg with 100–500 mL Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% (previously buffered with 0.5 mL Sodium Bicarbonate 8.4% solution or with 1 mL Sodium Bicarbonate 4.2% solution); give over 30–120 minutes.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Diclofenac for pain and inflammation [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/diclofenac-for-pain-and-inflammation](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/diclofenac-for-pain-and-inflammation)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: dispersible tablet, oral suspension, oral solution

#### Gastro-resistant tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 25

##### ► Diclofenac sodium (Non-proprietary)

**Diclofenac sodium 25 mg** Diclofenac sodium 25mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £5.49–£8.99 DT = £2.02 | 84 tablet [PoM] £1.50–£26.97

**Diclofenac sodium 50 mg** Diclofenac sodium 50mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £4.97 DT = £2.25 | 84 tablet [PoM] £3.00–£15.00

##### ► Dicliflex (Dexel-Pharma Ltd)

**Diclofenac sodium 25 mg** Dicliflex 25mg gastro-resistant tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £4.42

**Diclofenac sodium 50 mg** Dicliflex 50mg gastro-resistant tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £2.75 DT = £2.25 (Hospital only) | 84 tablet [PoM] £8.05

##### ► Fenactol (Discovery Pharmaceuticals)

**Diclofenac sodium 50 mg** Fenactol 50mg gastro-resistant tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £3.70

#### Suppository

##### ► Diclofenac sodium (Non-proprietary)

**Diclofenac sodium 100 mg** Diclofenac 100mg suppositories | 10 suppository [PoM] £3.64 DT = £3.64

##### ► Econac (AMCo)

**Diclofenac sodium 100 mg** Econac 100mg suppositories | 10 suppository [PoM] £3.04 DT = £3.64

##### ► Voltarol (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Diclofenac sodium 12.5 mg** Voltarol 12.5mg suppositories | 10 suppository [PoM] £0.70 DT = £0.70

**Diclofenac sodium 25 mg** Voltarol 25mg suppositories | 10 suppository [PoM] £1.24 DT = £1.24

**Diclofenac sodium 50 mg** Voltarol 50mg suppositories | 10 suppository [PoM] £2.04 DT = £2.04

**Diclofenac sodium 100 mg** Voltarol 100mg suppositories | 10 suppository [PoM] £3.64 DT = £3.64

#### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, propylene glycol

##### ► Voltarol (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Diclofenac sodium 25 mg per 1 mL** Voltarol 75mg/3mL solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £9.91 DT = £9.91

#### Modified-release capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21 (does not apply to Motifene® 75 mg), 25

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

##### ► Diclomax Retard (Galen Ltd)

**Diclofenac sodium 100 mg** Diclomax Retard 100mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM] £8.20 DT = £8.20

##### ► Diclomax SR (Galen Ltd)

**Diclofenac sodium 75 mg** Diclomax SR 75mg capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £11.40 DT = £11.40

##### ► Motifene (Daichi Sankyo UK Ltd)

**Diclofenac sodium 75 mg** Motifene 75mg modified-release capsules | 56 capsule [PoM] £8.00 DT = £8.00

## Etoricoxib

23-Nov-2016

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Pain and inflammation in osteoarthritis

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 16–17 years: 30 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 60 mg once daily

##### Pain and inflammation in rheumatoid arthritis |

##### Ankylosing spondylitis

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 16–17 years: 60 mg once daily, increased if necessary to 90 mg once daily

#### Acute gout

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 16–17 years: 120 mg once daily for maximum 8 days

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active gastro-intestinal bleeding • active gastro-intestinal ulceration • cerebrovascular disease • inflammatory bowel disease • ischaemic heart disease • mild to severe heart failure • peripheral arterial disease • uncontrolled hypertension (persistently above 140/90 mmHg)

- **CAUTIONS** Allergic disorders • cardiac impairment (NSAIDs may impair renal function) • coagulation defects • connective-tissue disorders • Crohn's disease (may be exacerbated) • dehydration • history of cardiac failure • hypertension • left ventricular dysfunction • oedema • risk factors for cardiovascular events • ulcerative colitis (may be exacerbated)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Arrhythmias • asthenia • bronchospasm • constipation • diarrhoea • dizziness • fluid retention • gastrointestinal discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • headache • hypertension • increased risk of infection • influenza like illness • nausea • oedema • oral ulceration • palpitations • skin reactions • vomiting
- **Uncommon** Alertness decreased • anaemia • angina pectoris • anxiety • appetite abnormal • cerebrovascular insufficiency • chest pain • congestive heart failure • conjunctivitis • cough • depression • drowsiness • dry mouth

• dyspnoea • flushing • haemorrhage • hallucination • hyperkalaemia • hypersensitivity • insomnia • irritable bowel syndrome • leucopenia • myocardial infarction • pancreatitis • proteinuria • renal failure (more common in patients with pre-existing renal impairment) • sensation abnormal • taste altered • thrombocytopenia • tinnitus • vasculitis • vertigo • vision blurred • weight increased

- **Rare or very rare** Angioedema • confusion • hepatic disorders • muscle complaints • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • shock

- **Frequency not known** Nephritis tubulointerstitial • nephropathy

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For information about cardiovascular and gastrointestinal side-effects, and a possible exacerbation of symptoms in asthma, see Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs p. 650.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Caution—long-term use of some NSAIDs is associated with reduced female fertility, which is reversible on stopping treatment.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid (teratogenic in animal studies). Avoid during the third trimester (risk of closure of fetal ductus arteriosus *in utero* and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn); onset of labour may be delayed and duration may be increased.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution during breast-feeding. Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; there is an increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention. Avoid in severe liver disease.

**Dose adjustments** Max. 60 mg daily in mild impairment.

Max. 60 mg on alternate days or 30 mg once daily in moderate impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible or use with caution. Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Dose adjustments** The lowest effective dose should be used for the shortest possible duration.

**Monitoring** In renal impairment monitor renal function; sodium and water retention may occur and renal function may deteriorate, possibly leading to renal failure.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood pressure before treatment, 2 weeks after initiation and periodically during treatment.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

##### ► Etoricoxib (Non-proprietary)

**Etoricoxib 30 mg** Etoricoxib 30mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £2.80–£13.99 DT = £13.99

**Etoricoxib 60 mg** Etoricoxib 60mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.01–£20.11 DT = £3.01

**Etoricoxib 90 mg** Etoricoxib 90mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £3.64–£22.96 DT = £3.64

**Etoricoxib 120 mg** Etoricoxib 120mg tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £1.80–£5.73 | 28 tablet [PoM] £7.23–£24.11 DT = £24.11

##### ► Arcoxia (Grunenthal Ltd)

**Etoricoxib 30 mg** Arcoxia 30mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £13.99 DT = £13.99

**Etoricoxib 60 mg** Arcoxia 60mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £20.11 DT = £3.01

**Etoricoxib 90 mg** Arcoxia 90mg tablets | 5 tablet [PoM] £4.10 | 28 tablet [PoM] £22.96 DT = £3.64

**Etoricoxib 120 mg** Arcoxia 120mg tablets | 7 tablet [PoM] £6.03 | 28 tablet [PoM] £24.11 DT = £24.11

## Flurbiprofen

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Pain and inflammation in rheumatic disease and other musculoskeletal disorders | Migraine | Postoperative analgesia | Mild to moderate pain**

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 150–200 mg daily in 2–4 divided doses, then increased to 300 mg daily, dose to be increased only in acute conditions

#### Dysmenorrhoea

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: Initially 100 mg, then 50–100 mg every 4–6 hours; maximum 300 mg per day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active gastro-intestinal bleeding • active gastro-intestinal ulceration • history of gastro-intestinal bleeding related to previous NSAID therapy • history of gastro-intestinal perforation related to previous NSAID therapy • history of recurrent gastro-intestinal haemorrhage (two or more distinct episodes) • history of recurrent gastro-intestinal ulceration (two or more distinct episodes) • severe heart failure

- **CAUTIONS** Allergic disorders • cardiac impairment (NSAIDs may impair renal function) • cerebrovascular disease • coagulation defects • connective-tissue disorders • Crohn's disease (may be exacerbated) • heart failure • ischaemic heart disease • peripheral arterial disease • risk factors for cardiovascular events • ulcerative colitis (may be exacerbated) • uncontrolled hypertension

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Haemorrhage

- **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis • angioedema • aplastic anaemia • asthma • bronchospasm • confusion • constipation • Crohn's disease • depression • diarrhoea • dizziness • drowsiness • dyspnoea • fatigue • fertility decreased female • gastrointestinal discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • haemolytic anaemia • hallucination • headache • heart failure • hepatic disorders • hypersensitivity • hypertension • malaise • meningitis aseptic (patients with connective-tissue disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus may be especially susceptible) • nausea • nephritis tubulointerstitial • nephropathy • neutropenia • oedema • optic neuritis • oral ulceration • pancreatitis • paraesthesia • photosensitivity reaction • platelet aggregation inhibition • renal failure (more common in patients with pre-existing renal impairment) • respiratory tract reaction • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • skin reactions • stroke • thrombocytopenia • tinnitus • vertigo • visual impairment • vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For information about cardiovascular and gastrointestinal side-effects, and a possible exacerbation of symptoms in asthma, see Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs p. 650.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk. Avoid during the third trimester (risk of closure of fetal ductus arteriosus *in utero* and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn); onset of labour may be delayed and duration may be increased.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution during breast-feeding. Small amount present in milk—manufacturer advises avoid.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; there is an increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention. Avoid in severe liver disease.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible or use with caution. Avoid in severe impairment.  
**Dose adjustments** The lowest effective dose should be used for the shortest possible duration.  
**Monitoring** In renal impairment monitor renal function; sodium and water retention may occur and renal function may deteriorate, possibly leading to renal failure.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

##### ● Flurbiprofen (Non-proprietary)

**Flurbiprofen 50 mg** Flurbiprofen 50mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM]  
£21.30-£35.97 DT = £35.97

**Flurbiprofen 100 mg** Flurbiprofen 100mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM]  
£64.34 DT = £64.34

## Ibuprofen

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Closure of ductus arteriosus

###### ► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Initially 10 mg/kg for 1 dose, followed by 5 mg/kg every 24 hours for 2 doses, the course may be repeated after 48 hours if necessary.

##### Mild to moderate pain | Pain and inflammation of soft-tissue injuries | Pyrexia with discomfort

###### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 1-2 months: 5 mg/kg 3–4 times a day
- Child 3-5 months: 50 mg 3 times a day, maximum daily dose to be given in 3–4 divided doses; maximum 30 mg/kg per day
- Child 6-11 months: 50 mg 3–4 times a day, maximum daily dose to be given in 3–4 divided doses; maximum 30 mg/kg per day
- Child 1-3 years: 100 mg 3 times a day, maximum daily dose to be given in 3–4 divided doses; maximum 30 mg/kg per day
- Child 4-6 years: 150 mg 3 times a day, maximum daily dose to be given in 3–4 divided doses; maximum 30 mg/kg per day
- Child 7-9 years: 200 mg 3 times a day, maximum daily dose to be given in 3–4 divided doses; maximum 30 mg/kg per day; maximum 2.4 g per day
- Child 10-11 years: 300 mg 3 times a day, maximum daily dose to be given in 3–4 divided doses; maximum 30 mg/kg per day; maximum 2.4 g per day
- Child 12-17 years: Initially 300–400 mg 3–4 times a day; increased if necessary up to 600 mg 4 times a day; maintenance 200–400 mg 3 times a day, may be adequate

##### Pain and inflammation

###### ► BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 12-17 years: 1.6 g once daily, dose preferably taken in the early evening, increased to 2.4 g daily in 2 divided doses, dose to be increased only in severe cases

##### Pain and inflammation in rheumatic disease including juvenile idiopathic arthritis

###### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 3 months-17 years: 30–40 mg/kg daily in 3–4 divided doses; maximum 2.4 g per day

##### Pain and inflammation in systemic juvenile idiopathic arthritis

###### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 3 months-17 years: Up to 60 mg/kg daily in 4–6 divided doses; maximum 2.4 g per day

##### Post-immunisation pyrexia in infants (on doctor's advice only)

###### ► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child 2-3 months: 50 mg for 1 dose, followed by 50 mg after 6 hours if required

#### ● UNLICENSED USE

- With intravenous use Orphan licence for the injection for closure of ductus arteriosus in premature neonates less than 34 weeks corrected gestational age.
- With oral use Not licensed for use in children under 3 months or body-weight under 5 kg. Maximum dose for systemic juvenile idiopathic arthritis is unlicensed.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active gastro-intestinal bleeding · active gastro-intestinal ulceration · history of gastro-intestinal bleeding related to previous NSAID therapy · history of gastro-intestinal perforation related to previous NSAID therapy · history of recurrent gastro-intestinal haemorrhage (two or more distinct episodes) · history of recurrent gastro-intestinal ulceration (two or more distinct episodes) · severe heart failure
- With intravenous use Active bleeding (especially intracranial or gastro-intestinal) · coagulation defects · known or suspected necrotising enterocolitis · life-threatening infection · marked unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia · pulmonary hypertension · thrombocytopenia

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac impairment (NSAIDs may impair renal function) · cerebrovascular disease · coagulation defects · connective-tissue disorders · Crohn's disease (may be exacerbated) · heart failure · ischaemic heart disease · peripheral arterial disease · risk factors for cardiovascular events · risk factors for cardiovascular events · ulcerative colitis (may be exacerbated) · uncontrolled hypertension
- With intravenous use May mask symptoms of infection

##### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- High-dose ibuprofen A small increase in cardiovascular risk, similar to the risk associated with cyclo-oxygenase-2 inhibitors and diclofenac, has been reported with high-dose ibuprofen ( $\geq 2.4$  g daily); use should be avoided in patients with established ischaemic heart disease, peripheral arterial disease, cerebrovascular disease, congestive heart failure (New York Heart Association classification II-III), and uncontrolled hypertension.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

###### ► Common or very common

- With intravenous use Fluid retention · gastrointestinal disorders · haemorrhage · intrauterine haemorrhage · neutropenia · periventricular leukomalacia · renal impairment · thrombocytopenia

###### ► Uncommon

- With oral use Gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hypersensitivity · nausea · rash (discontinue) · skin reactions

###### ► Rare or very rare

- With oral use Acute kidney injury · agranulocytosis · anaemia · angioedema · constipation · diarrhoea · dyspnoea · fatigue · fever · gastrointestinal disorders · haemorrhage · hypotension · influenza like illness · leucopenia · liver disorder · meningitis aseptic (patients with connective-tissue disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus may be especially susceptible) · oedema · oral disorders · pancytopenia · renal papillary necrosis · respiratory disorders · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · shock · tachycardia · throat pain · thrombocytopenia · vomiting
- Frequency not known
- With oral use Asthma · Crohn's disease · fertility decreased · female · fluid retention · heart failure · hypertension · increased risk of arterial thromboembolism · renal failure

(more common in patients with pre-existing renal impairment) · respiratory tract reaction

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For information about cardiovascular and gastrointestinal side-effects, and a possible exacerbation of symptoms in asthma, see Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs p. 650.

**Overdose** Overdosage with ibuprofen may cause nausea, vomiting, epigastric pain, and tinnitus, but more serious toxicity is very uncommon. Charcoal, activated followed by symptomatic measures are indicated if more than 100mg/kg has been ingested within the preceding hour.

For details on the management of poisoning, see Emergency treatment of poisoning p. 832.

● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.

● **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk. Avoid during the third trimester (risk of closure of fetal ductus arteriosus *in utero* and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn); onset of labour may be delayed and duration may be increased.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution during breast-feeding. Amount too small to be harmful but some manufacturers advise avoid.

#### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

▶ With intravenous use Increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention. Avoid in severe liver disease.  
▶ With oral use Use with caution; there is an increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention. Avoid in severe liver disease.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

▶ With intravenous use Avoid if possible in severe impairment.  
▶ With oral use Avoid if possible or use with caution. Avoid in severe impairment.

**Dose adjustments** ▶ With intravenous use Use lowest effective dose.

▶ With oral use The lowest effective dose should be used for the shortest possible duration.

**Monitoring** In renal impairment monitor renal function; sodium and water retention may occur and renal function may deteriorate, possibly leading to renal failure.

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

▶ With intravenous use Monitor for bleeding. Monitor gastrointestinal function.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *slow intravenous injection*, give over 15 minutes, preferably undiluted. May be diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of syrup may include orange.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: ibuprofen for pain and inflammation [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ibuprofen-for-pain-and-inflammation](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ibuprofen-for-pain-and-inflammation)

#### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

**Dental practitioners' formulary**

Ibuprofen Oral Suspension Sugar-free may be prescribed. Ibuprofen Tablets may be prescribed.

● **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Oral preparations can be sold to the public in certain circumstances.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

##### Effervescent granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13, 21

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

▶ **Brufen** (Mylan)

**Ibuprofen 600 mg** Brufen 600mg effervescent granules sachets | 20 sachet [PoM] £6.80 DT = £6.80

##### Modified-release tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25, 27

▶ **Brufen Retard** (Mylan)

**Ibuprofen 800 mg** Brufen Retard 800mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £7.74 DT = £7.74

##### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

▶ **Ibuprofen (Non-proprietary)**

**Ibuprofen 200 mg** Ibuprofen 200mg tablets | 16 tablet [P] £0.25 | 24 tablet [P] £0.91 DT = £0.66 | 48 tablet [P] £0.80-£1.47 | 84 tablet [P] £3.29 DT = £2.31 | 96 tablet [P] £1.69

**Ibuprofen 200mg caplets** | 16 tablet [P] £0.25 | 24 tablet [P] £0.66

**Ibuprofen 400 mg** Ibuprofen 400mg tablets | 250 tablet [PoM] £10.54

**Ibuprofen 600 mg** Ibuprofen 600mg tablets | 84 tablet [PoM] £6.95 DT = £3.60  
Ibuprofen 600mg tablets film coated | 84 tablet [PoM] £3.60 DT = £3.60

▶ **Brufen** (Mylan)

**Ibuprofen 400 mg** Brufen 400mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £4.90

**Ibuprofen 600 mg** Brufen 600mg tablets | 60 tablet [PoM] £7.34

▶ **Ibucalm** (Aspar Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Ibuprofen 200 mg** Ibucalm 200mg tablets | 24 tablet [P] £0.77 DT = £0.66 | 48 tablet [P] £1.43 | 96 tablet [P] £2.43

**Ibuprofen 400 mg** Ibucalm 400mg tablets | 16 tablet [P] £0.88 | 24 tablet [P] £1.36 DT = £1.01 | 96 tablet [P] £2.44 | 96 tablet [P] £4.19

▶ **Nurofen** (Reckitt Benckiser Healthcare (UK) Ltd)

**Ibuprofen 200 mg** Nurofen 200mg caplets | 24 tablet [P] £2.49 DT = £0.66

Nurofen 200mg tablets | 24 tablet [P] £2.38 DT = £0.66 | 48 tablet [P] £4.36 | 96 tablet [P] £7.20

**Ibuprofen (as ibuprofen lysine) 400 mg** Nurofen Maximum Strength Migraine Pain 684mg caplets | 12 tablet [P] £3.49

##### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

▶ **Ibuprofen (Non-proprietary)**

**Ibuprofen 20 mg per 1 ml** Ibuprofen 100mg/5ml oral suspension | 500 ml [PoM] £6.45

▶ **Brufen** (Mylan)

**Ibuprofen 20 mg per 1 ml** Brufen 100mg/5ml syrup | 500 ml [PoM] £8.88 DT = £8.88

##### Modified-release capsule

▶ **Nurofen Back Pain SR** (Reckitt Benckiser Healthcare (UK) Ltd)

**Ibuprofen 300 mg** Nurofen Back Pain SR 300mg capsules | 24 capsule [P] £4.20 DT = £4.20

##### Solution for infusion

▶ **Pedea** (Orphan Europe (UK) Ltd)

**Ibuprofen 5 mg per 1 ml** Pedea 10mg/2ml solution for infusion ampoules | 4 ampoule [PoM] £288.00 (Hospital only)

##### Chewable capsule

▶ **Nurofen** (Reckitt Benckiser Healthcare (UK) Ltd)

**Ibuprofen 100 mg** Nurofen for Children 100mg chewable capsules | 12 capsule [P] £3.23

##### Capsule

▶ **Ibuprofen (Non-proprietary)**

**Ibuprofen 200 mg** Ibuprofen 200mg capsules | 30 capsule [P] £4.39

**Ibuprofen 400 mg** Ibuprofen 400mg capsules | 20 capsule [P] £5.82

▶ **Flarin** (infirst Healthcare Ltd)

**Ibuprofen 200 mg** Flarin 200mg capsules | 30 capsule [P] £6.85 DT = £4.39

▶ **Nurofen Express** (Reckitt Benckiser Healthcare (UK) Ltd)

**Ibuprofen 200 mg** Nurofen Express 200mg liquid capsules | 30 capsule [P] £4.39 DT = £4.39



**Ibuprofen 400 mg** Nurofen Express 400mg liquid capsules | 10 capsule [P] £3.55 | 20 capsule [P] £5.82 DT = £5.82

### Orodispersible tablet

#### • **Ibuprofen (Non-proprietary)**

**Ibuprofen 200 mg** Ibuprofen 200mg orodispersible tablets sugar free sugar-free | 12 tablet [GSL] [N] DT = £2.19

► Brands may include Nurofen Meltlets

## Indometacin

### (Indomethacin)

#### • **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

##### **Symptomatic ductus arteriosus**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: Initially 100–200 micrograms/kg for 1 dose, followed by 100 micrograms/kg after 24 hours for 2 doses, at 24-hour intervals, doses to be given over 20–30 minutes, if residual patency present, 100 micrograms/kg to be given for a further 3 doses at 24-hour intervals.

##### **Relief of pain and inflammation in rheumatic diseases including juvenile idiopathic arthritis**

► BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES

- Child: 0.5–1 mg/kg twice daily, higher doses may be used under specialist supervision

#### • **UNLICENSED USE**

- With oral use Not licensed for use in children.

#### • **CONTRA-INDICATIONS**

- With intravenous use Bleeding (especially with active intracranial haemorrhage or gastro-intestinal bleeding) · coagulation defects · necrotising enterocolitis · thrombocytopenia · untreated infection
- With oral use Active gastro-intestinal bleeding · active gastro-intestinal ulceration · history of gastro-intestinal bleeding related to previous NSAID therapy · history of gastro-intestinal perforation related to previous NSAID therapy · history of recurrent gastro-intestinal haemorrhage (two or more distinct episodes) · history of recurrent gastro-intestinal ulceration (two or more distinct episodes) · severe heart failure

#### • **CAUTIONS**

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Heart failure

##### **SPECIFIC CAUTIONS**

- With intravenous use Inhibition of platelet aggregation (monitor for bleeding) · may induce hyponatraemia · may mask symptoms of infection · may reduce urine output by 50% or more and precipitate renal impairment especially if extracellular volume depleted · sepsis
- With oral use Allergic disorders · cardiac impairment (NSAIDs may impair renal function) · cerebrovascular disease · coagulation defects · connective-tissue disorders · Crohn's disease (may be exacerbated) · epilepsy · ischaemic heart disease · peripheral arterial disease · psychiatric disturbances · risk factors for cardiovascular events · ulcerative colitis (may be exacerbated) · uncontrolled hypertension

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs

#### • **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · anaphylactic reaction · angioedema · anxiety · appetite decreased · arrhythmias · asthma · blood disorder · bone marrow disorders · breast abnormalities · chest pain · coma · confusion · congestive heart failure · constipation · corneal deposits · depression · diarrhoea · disseminated intravascular coagulation · dizziness · drowsiness · dysarthria · erythema nodosum · eye disorder · eye pain · fatigue · fluid retention · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · gynaecomastia ·

haemolytic anaemia · haemorrhage · hallucination · headache · hearing impairment · hepatic disorders · hyperglycaemia · hyperhidrosis · hyperkalaemia · hypotension · inflammatory bowel disease · insomnia · leucopenia · movement disorders · muscle weakness · nausea · nephritis tubulointerstitial · nephrotic syndrome · oedema · oral disorders · palpitations · pancreatitis · paraesthesia · peripheral neuropathy · photosensitivity reaction · platelet aggregation inhibition · psychiatric disorders · renal failure (more common in patients with pre-existing renal impairment) · respiratory disorders · seizures · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · syncope · thrombocytopenia · urine abnormalities · vasculitis · vertigo · vision disorders · vomiting

#### **SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- With oral use Anaemia · dyspnoea · eosinophilia · malaise · pulmonary oedema · sigmoid lesion perforation

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For information about cardiovascular and gastrointestinal side-effects, and a possible exacerbation of symptoms in asthma, see Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs p. 650.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.

#### • **PREGNANCY**

- With oral use Avoid unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk. Avoid during the third trimester (risk of closure of fetal ductus arteriosus *in utero* and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn); onset of labour may be delayed and duration may be increased.

#### • **BREAST FEEDING**

- With oral use Amount probably too small to be harmful—manufacturers advise avoid. Use with caution during breast-feeding.

#### • **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**

- With intravenous use Increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention. Avoid in severe impairment.
- With oral use Use with caution; there is an increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention. Avoid in severe liver disease.

#### • **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

- With intravenous use Avoid if possible in severe impairment. Anuria or oliguria
- With intravenous use If anuria or marked oliguria (urinary output less than 0.6 mL/kg/hour), delay further doses until renal function returns to normal.
- With oral use Avoid if possible or use with caution. Avoid in severe impairment.

**Dose adjustments** ► With intravenous use Use lowest effective dose.

- With oral use The lowest effective dose should be used for the shortest possible duration.

**Monitoring** In renal impairment monitor renal function; sodium and water retention may occur and renal function may deteriorate, possibly leading to renal failure.

#### • **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- With oral use During prolonged therapy ophthalmic and blood examinations particularly advisable.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous infusion*, dilute each vial with 1–2 mL Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Water for Injections.

#### • **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** Dizziness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### **Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

#### ► **Indometacin (Non-proprietary)**

**Indometacin 25 mg** Indometacin 25mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM]  
£5.00 DT = £0.83

**Indometacin 50 mg** Indometacin 50mg capsules | 28 capsule [PoM]  
£7.50 DT = £1.24

## Mefenamic acid

05-Oct-2016

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acute pain including dysmenorrhoea | Menorrhagia**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 12–17 years: 500 mg 3 times a day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active gastro-intestinal bleeding · active gastro-intestinal ulceration · history of gastro-intestinal bleeding related to previous NSAID therapy · history of gastro-intestinal perforation related to previous NSAID therapy · history of recurrent gastro-intestinal haemorrhage (two or more distinct episodes) · history of recurrent gastro-intestinal ulceration (two or more distinct episodes) · inflammatory bowel disease · severe heart failure
  - **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · allergic disorders · cardiac impairment (NSAIDs may impair renal function) · cerebrovascular disease · coagulation defects · connective-tissue disorders · Crohn's disease (may be exacerbated) · epilepsy · heart failure · ischaemic heart disease · peripheral arterial disease · risk factors for cardiovascular events · ulcerative colitis (may be exacerbated) · uncontrolled hypertension
  - **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs
  - **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agranulocytosis · anaemia · angioedema · appetite decreased · asthma · bone marrow disorders · confusion · constipation · Crohn's disease · depression · diarrhoea (discontinue) · disseminated intravascular coagulation · dizziness · drowsiness · dyspnoea · dysuria · ear pain · eosinophilia · eye irritation · fatigue · fertility decreased female · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · glomerulonephritis · glucose tolerance impaired · haemolytic anaemia · haemorrhage · hallucination · headache · heart failure · hepatic disorders · hyperhidrosis · hypersensitivity · hypertension · hyponatraemia · hypotension · insomnia · leucopenia · malaise · meningitis aseptic (patients with connective-tissue disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus may be especially susceptible) · multi organ failure · nausea · nephritis acute interstitial · nephrotic syndrome · nervousness · neutropenia · oedema · optic neuritis · oral ulceration · palpitations · pancreatitis · paraesthesia · photosensitivity reaction · proteinuria · rash (discontinue) · renal failure (more common in patients with pre-existing renal impairment) · renal failure non-oliguric · renal papillary necrosis · respiratory disorders · seizure · sepsis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus · vertigo · vision disorders · vomiting
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For information about cardiovascular and gastrointestinal side-effects, and a possible exacerbation of symptoms in asthma, see Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs p. 650.
- Overdose** Mefenamic acid has important consequences in overdose because it can cause convulsions, which if prolonged or recurrent, require treatment.

For details on the management of poisoning, see Emergency treatment of poisoning, in particular, Convulsions p. 832.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk. Avoid during the third trimester (risk of closure of fetal ductus arteriosus *in utero* and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn); onset of labour may be delayed and duration may be increased.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution during breast-feeding. Amount too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; there is an increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention. Avoid in severe liver disease.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible or use with caution. Avoid in severe impairment.  
**Dose adjustments** The lowest effective dose should be used for the shortest possible duration.  
**Monitoring** In renal impairment monitor renal function; sodium and water retention may occur and renal function may deteriorate, possibly leading to renal failure.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### **Oral suspension**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Ethanol

#### ► **Mefenamic acid (Non-proprietary)**

**Mefenamic acid 10 mg per 1 ml** Mefenamic acid 50mg/5ml oral suspension | 125 ml [PoM] £179.00 DT = £179.00

#### **Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

#### ► **Mefenamic acid (Non-proprietary)**

**Mefenamic acid 500 mg** Mefenamic acid 500mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £60.00 DT = £42.50 | 84 tablet [PoM] £108.00-£170.00

#### ► **Ponstan** (Chemidex Pharma Ltd)

**Mefenamic acid 500 mg** Ponstan Forte 500mg tablets | 100 tablet [PoM] £15.72

#### **Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

#### ► **Mefenamic acid (Non-proprietary)**

**Mefenamic acid 250 mg** Mefenamic acid 250mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £60.10 DT = £18.66

#### ► **Ponstan** (Chemidex Pharma Ltd)

**Mefenamic acid 250 mg** Ponstan 250mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] £8.17 DT = £18.66

## Meloxicam

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Exacerbation of osteoarthritis (short-term)**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 16–17 years: 7.5 mg once daily, then increased if necessary up to 15 mg once daily

**Pain and inflammation in rheumatic disease | Ankylosing spondylitis**

► BY MOUTH

► Child 16–17 years: 15 mg once daily, then reduced to 7.5 mg once daily if required

### Relief of pain and inflammation in juvenile idiopathic arthritis and other musculoskeletal disorders in children intolerant to other NSAIDs

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): 7.5 mg once daily
- Child 12–17 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): 15 mg once daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 16 years.
  - **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active gastro-intestinal bleeding · active gastro-intestinal ulceration · history of gastro-intestinal bleeding related to previous NSAID therapy · history of gastro-intestinal perforation related to previous NSAID therapy · history of recurrent gastro-intestinal haemorrhage (two or more distinct episodes) · history of recurrent gastro-intestinal ulceration (two or more distinct episodes) · severe heart failure
  - **CAUTIONS** Allergic disorders · cardiac impairment (NSAIDs may impair renal function) · cerebrovascular disease · coagulation defects · connective-tissue disorders · Crohn's disease (may be exacerbated) · heart failure · ischaemic heart disease · peripheral arterial disease · risk factors for cardiovascular events · ulcerative colitis (may be exacerbated) · uncontrolled hypertension
  - **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs
  - **SIDE-EFFECTS**
    - **Common or very common** Constipation · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · headache · nausea · vomiting
    - **Uncommon** Anaemia · angioedema · burping · dizziness · drowsiness · electrolyte imbalance · fluid retention · flushing · haemorrhage · hepatic disorders · hypersensitivity · oedema · skin reactions · stomatitis · vertigo
    - **Rare or very rare** Acute kidney injury · asthma · conjunctivitis · leucopenia · mood altered · nightmare · palpitations · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · thrombocytopenia · tinnitus · vision disorders
    - **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · confusion · fertility decreased female · heart failure · increased risk of arterial thromboembolism · nephritis tubulointerstitial · nephrotic syndrome · photosensitivity reaction · renal necrosis
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For information about cardiovascular and gastrointestinal side-effects, and a possible exacerbation of symptoms in asthma, see Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs p. 650.
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.
  - **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk. Avoid during the third trimester (risk of closure of fetal ductus arteriosus *in utero* and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn); onset of labour may be delayed and duration may be increased.
  - **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution during breast-feeding. Present in milk in *animal* studies—manufacturer advises avoid.
  - **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; there is an increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention. Avoid in severe liver disease.
  - **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible or use with caution. Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 25 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- Dose adjustments** The lowest effective dose should be used for the shortest possible duration.
- Monitoring** In renal impairment monitor renal function;

sodium and water retention may occur and renal function may deteriorate, possibly leading to renal failure.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Orodispersible tablet

##### ► Meloxicam (Non-proprietary)

**Meloxicam 7.5 mg** Meloxicam 7.5mg orodispersible tablets sugar free sugar-free | 30 tablet [PoM] £15.50

**Meloxicam 15 mg** Meloxicam 15mg orodispersible tablets sugar free sugar-free | 30 tablet [PoM] £15.50

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

##### ► Meloxicam (Non-proprietary)

**Meloxicam 7.5 mg** Meloxicam 7.5mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £4.00 DT = £0.87

**Meloxicam 15 mg** Meloxicam 15mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £4.00 DT = £0.91

## Naproxen

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Pain and inflammation in musculoskeletal disorders | Dysmenorrhoea

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child: 5 mg/kg twice daily; maximum 1 g per day

##### Pain and inflammation in juvenile idiopathic arthritis

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 2–17 years: 5–7.5 mg/kg twice daily; maximum 1 g per day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 5 years for juvenile idiopathic arthritis. Not licensed for use in children under 16 years for musculoskeletal disorders or dysmenorrhoea.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active gastro-intestinal bleeding · active gastro-intestinal ulceration · history of gastro-intestinal bleeding related to previous NSAID therapy · history of gastro-intestinal perforation related to previous NSAID therapy · history of recurrent gastro-intestinal haemorrhage (two or more distinct episodes) · history of recurrent gastro-intestinal ulceration (two or more distinct episodes) · severe heart failure
- **CAUTIONS** Allergic disorders · cardiac impairment (NSAIDs may impair renal function) · cerebrovascular disease · coagulation defects · connective-tissue disorders · Crohn's disease (may be exacerbated) · heart failure · ischaemic heart disease · peripheral arterial disease · risk factors for cardiovascular events · ulcerative colitis (may be exacerbated) · uncontrolled hypertension
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agranulocytosis · alopecia · angioedema · aplastic anaemia · asthma · cognitive impairment · concentration impaired · confusion · constipation · corneal opacity · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dyspnoea · erythema nodosum · fatigue · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · glomerulonephritis · haemolytic anaemia · haemorrhage · hallucination · headache · hearing impairment · heart failure · hepatic disorders · hyperhidrosis · hyperkalaemia · hypersensitivity · hypertension · increased risk of arterial thromboembolism · infertility female · inflammatory bowel disease · malaise · meningitis aseptic (patients with connective-tissue disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus may be especially susceptible) · muscle weakness · myalgia · nausea · nephritis tubulointerstitial · nephropathy · neutropenia · oedema · optic neuritis · oral disorders · palpitations · pancreatitis · papillitis · papilloedema · paraesthesia · photosensitivity reaction · platelet aggregation inhibition · pulmonary oedema · rash

putular · renal failure (more common in patients with pre-existing renal impairment) · renal papillary necrosis · respiratory disorders · seizure · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · sleep disorders · thirst · thrombocytopenia · vasculitis · vertigo · visual impairment · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For information about cardiovascular and gastrointestinal side-effects, and a possible exacerbation of symptoms in asthma, see Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs p. 650.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk. Avoid during the third trimester (risk of closure of fetal ductus arteriosus *in utero* and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn); onset of labour may be delayed and duration may be increased.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution during breast-feeding. Amount too small to be harmful but manufacturer advises avoid.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; there is an increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention. Avoid in severe liver disease.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible or use with caution. Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.  
**Dose adjustments** The lowest effective dose should be used for the shortest possible duration.  
**Monitoring** In renal impairment monitor renal function; sodium and water retention may occur and renal function may deteriorate, possibly leading to renal failure.
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Can be sold to the public for the treatment of primary dysmenorrhoea in women aged 15–50 years subject to max. single dose of 500 mg, max. daily dose of 750 mg for max. 3 days, and a max. pack size of 9 × 250 mg tablets.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Gastro-resistant tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 5, 25

##### ► Naproxen (Non-proprietary)

**Naproxen 250 mg** Naproxen 250mg gastro-resistant tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £7.00 DT = £2.19

**Naproxen 375 mg** Naproxen 375mg gastro-resistant tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £26.82 DT = £26.82

**Naproxen 500 mg** Naproxen 500mg gastro-resistant tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £7.34 DT = £4.89

##### ► Naprosyn EC (Atrahs Pharma UK Ltd)

**Naprosyn EC 250mg** Naprosyn EC 250mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £4.29 DT = £2.19

**Naprosyn EC 375mg** Naprosyn EC 375mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £6.42 DT = £26.82

**Naprosyn EC 500mg** Naprosyn EC 500mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £8.56 DT = £4.89

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

##### ► Naproxen (Non-proprietary)

**Naproxen 250 mg** Naproxen 250mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £2.10 DT = £0.70 | 56 tablet [PoM] £2.33

**Naproxen 500 mg** Naproxen 500mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £4.27 DT = £1.13 | 56 tablet [PoM] £3.99

##### ► Naprosyn (Atrahs Pharma UK Ltd)

**Naprosyn 250 mg** Naprosyn 250mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £4.29  
**Naprosyn 500 mg** Naprosyn 500mg tablets | 56 tablet [PoM] £8.56

#### Oral suspension

##### ► Naproxen (Non-proprietary)

**Naproxen 25 mg per 1 mL** Naproxen 25mg/mL oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 100 mL [PoM] £110.00 DT = £119.00

**Naproxen 125mg/5mL** oral suspension sugar free sugar-free | 100 mL [PoM] £110.00–£128.00 DT = £119.00

**Naproxen 50 mg per 1 mL** Naproxen 50mg/mL oral suspension | 100 mL [PoM] £45.00–£75.00 DT = £75.00

#### Effervescent tablet

##### ► Stirliscent (Stirling Anglian Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Naproxen 250 mg** Stirliscent 250mg effervescent tablets sugar-free | 20 tablet [PoM] £52.72 DT = £52.72

## Piroxicam

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Relief of pain and inflammation in juvenile idiopathic arthritis

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–17 years (body-weight up to 15 kg): 5 mg daily
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 15–25 kg): 10 mg daily
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 26–45 kg): 15 mg daily
- Child 6–17 years (body-weight 46 kg and above): 20 mg daily

#### ● UNLICENSED USE Not licensed for use in children.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### CHMP ADVICE—PIROXICAM (JUNE 2007)

The CHMP has recommended restrictions on the use of piroxicam because of the increased risk of gastro-intestinal side effects and serious skin reactions. The CHMP has advised that:

- piroxicam should be initiated only by physicians experienced in treating inflammatory or degenerative rheumatic diseases
  - piroxicam should not be used as first-line treatment
  - in adults, use of piroxicam should be limited to the symptomatic relief of osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, and ankylosing spondylitis
  - piroxicam dose should not exceed 20 mg daily
  - piroxicam should no longer be used for the treatment of acute painful and inflammatory conditions
  - treatment should be reviewed 2 weeks after initiating piroxicam, and periodically thereafter
  - concomitant administration of a gastro-protective agent should be considered.
- Topical preparations containing piroxicam are not affected by these restrictions.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active gastro-intestinal bleeding · active gastro-intestinal ulceration · history of gastro-intestinal bleeding · history of gastro-intestinal perforation · history of gastro-intestinal ulceration · inflammatory bowel disease · severe heart failure
- **CAUTIONS** Allergic disorders · cardiac impairment (NSAIDs may impair renal function) · cerebrovascular disease · coagulation defects · connective-tissue disorders · Crohn's disease (may be exacerbated) · heart failure · ischaemic heart disease · peripheral arterial disease · risk factors for cardiovascular events · ulcerative colitis (may be exacerbated) · uncontrolled hypertension
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- **Common or very common** Anaemia · appetite decreased · constipation · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · eosinophilia · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · headache · hearing impairment · hyperglycaemia · leucopenia · nausea · oedema · rash (discontinue) · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · vertigo · vomiting · weight changes

- **Uncommon** Hypoglycaemia • palpitations • stomatitis • vision blurred
- **Rare or very rare** Nephritis tubulointerstitial • nephrotic syndrome • renal failure • renal papillary necrosis • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
- **Frequency not known** Alopecia • angioedema • aplastic anaemia • bronchospasm • confusion • depression • dyspnoea • embolism and thrombosis • eye irritation • eye swelling • fertility decreased female • fluid retention • haemolytic anaemia • haemorrhage • hallucination • heart failure • hepatic disorders • hypersensitivity • hypertension • malaise • mood altered • nervousness • onycholysis • pancreatitis • paraesthesia • photosensitivity reaction • sleep disorders • vasculitis

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For information about cardiovascular and gastrointestinal side-effects, and a possible exacerbation of symptoms in asthma, see Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs p. 650.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk. Avoid during the third trimester (risk of closure of fetal ductus arteriosus *in utero* and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn); onset of labour may be delayed and duration may be increased.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution during breast-feeding. Amount too small to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; there is an increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention. Avoid in severe liver disease.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible or use with caution.  
**Dose adjustments** The lowest effective dose should be used for the shortest possible duration.  
**Monitoring** In renal impairment monitor renal function; sodium and water retention may occur and renal function may deteriorate, possibly leading to renal failure.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Piroxicam orodispersible tablets can be taken by placing on the tongue and allowing to dissolve or by swallowing.  
Piroxicam orodispersible tablets may be halved to give 10 mg dose.
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Piroxicam is less suitable for prescribing.

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Orodispersible tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 21

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Aspartame

- **Feldene Melt** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Piroxicam 20 mg** Feldene Melt 20mg tablets sugar-free | 30 tablet **[PoM]** £10.53 DT = £10.53

##### **Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

- **Piroxicam (Non-proprietary)**

**Piroxicam 10 mg** Piroxicam 10mg capsules | 56 capsule **[PoM]** £16.82 DT = £4.93

**Piroxicam 20 mg** Piroxicam 20mg capsules | 28 capsule **[PoM]** £5.76 DT = £4.51

- **Feldene** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Piroxicam 10 mg** Feldene 10mg capsules | 30 capsule **[PoM]** £3.86

**Piroxicam 20 mg** Feldene 20 capsules | 30 capsule **[PoM]** £7.71

## 4 Soft tissue and joint disorders

### 4.1 Local inflammation of joints and soft tissue

#### **CORTICOSTEROIDS**

### Corticosteroids, inflammatory disorders

#### **Systemic corticosteroids**

In children with rheumatic diseases corticosteroids should be reserved for specific indications (e.g. when other therapies are unsuccessful or while waiting for DMARDs to take effect) and should be used only under the supervision of a specialist.

Systemic corticosteroids may be considered for the management of juvenile idiopathic arthritis in systemic disease or when several joints are affected. Systemic corticosteroids may also be considered in severe, possibly life-threatening conditions such as systemic lupus erythematosus, systemic vasculitis, juvenile dermatomyositis, Behçet's disease, and polyarticular joint disease.

In severe conditions, short courses ('pulses') of high dose intravenous methylprednisolone p. 441 or a pulsed oral corticosteroid may be particularly effective for providing rapid relief, and has fewer long-term adverse effects than continuous treatment.

Corticosteroid doses should be reduced with care because of the possibility of relapse if the reduction is too rapid. If complete discontinuation of corticosteroids is not possible, consideration should be given to alternate-day (or alternate high-dose, low-dose) administration; on days when no corticosteroid is given, or a lower dose is given, an additional dose of a NSAID may be helpful. In some conditions, alternative treatment using an antimalarial or concomitant use of an immunosuppressant drug, such as azathioprine p. 518, methotrexate p. 543 or cyclophosphamide p. 535 may prove useful; in less severe conditions treatment with a NSAID alone may be adequate.

Administration of corticosteroids may result in suppression of growth and may affect the development of puberty. The risk of corticosteroid-induced osteoporosis should be considered for those on long-term corticosteroid treatment; corticosteroids may also increase the risk of osteopenia in those unable to exercise. See the disadvantages of corticosteroid treatment.

#### **Local corticosteroid injections**

Corticosteroids are injected locally for an anti-inflammatory effect. In inflammatory conditions of the joints, including juvenile idiopathic arthritis, they are given by *intra-articular injection* as monotherapy, or as an adjunct to long-term therapy to reduce swelling and deformity in one or a few joints. Aseptic precautions (e.g. a no-touch technique) are essential, as is a clinician skilled in the technique; infected areas should be avoided and general anaesthesia, or local anaesthesia, or conscious sedation should be used.

Occasionally an acute inflammatory reaction develops after an intra-articular or soft-tissue injection of a corticosteroid. This may be a reaction to the microcrystalline suspension of the corticosteroid used, but must be distinguished from sepsis introduced into the injection site.

Triamcinolone hexacetonide p. 662 [unlicensed] is preferred for intra-articular injection because it is almost insoluble and has a long-acting (depot) effect.



Triamcinolone acetonide below and methylprednisolone may also be considered for intra-articular injection into larger joints, whilst hydrocortisone acetate below should be reserved for smaller joints or for soft-tissue injections. Intra-articular corticosteroid injections can cause flushing and, in adults, may affect the hyaline cartilage. Each joint should usually be treated no more than 3–4 times in one year.

A smaller amount of corticosteroid may also be injected directly into soft tissues for the relief of inflammation in conditions such as *tennis or golfer's elbow* or *compression neuropathies*, which occur rarely in children. In *tendinitis*, injections should be made into the tendon sheath and not directly into the tendon (due to the absence of a true tendon sheath and a high risk of rupture, the Achilles tendon should not be injected).

Corticosteroid injections are also injected into soft tissues for the treatment of skin lesions.

F 436

21-Dec-2017

## Hydrocortisone

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### HYDROCORTISTAB®

##### Local inflammation of joints and soft-tissues

- ▶ BY INTRA-ARTICULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 5–30 mg, select dose according to size of child and joint; where appropriate dose may be repeated at intervals of 21 days. Not more than 3 joints should be treated on any one day, for details consult product literature
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 5–50 mg, select dose according to size of patient and joint; where appropriate dose may be repeated at intervals of 21 days. Not more than 3 joints should be treated on any one day, for details consult product literature

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Bruising · increased risk of infection · malaise · myocardial rupture (following recent myocardial infarction)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution, liquid, cream, ointment

#### Suspension for injection

- ▶ **Hydrocortistab** (AMCo)  
Hydrocortisone acetate 25 mg per 1 ml Hydrocortistab 25mg/1ml suspension for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £68.72 DT = £68.72

F 436

03-Nov-2017

## Methylprednisolone

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### DEPO-MEDRONE®

##### Local inflammation of joints and soft tissues

- ▶ BY INTRA-ARTICULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for methylprednisolone tablets and injections (steroid card).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Suspension for injection

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

- ▶ **Depo-Medrone** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Methylprednisolone acetate 40 mg per 1 ml** Depo-Medrone 40mg/1ml suspension for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £3.44 DT = £3.44 | 10 vial [PoM] £34.04  
Depo-Medrone 80mg/2ml suspension for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £6.18 DT = £6.18 | 10 vial [PoM] £61.39  
Depo-Medrone 120mg/3ml suspension for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £8.96 DT = £8.96 | 10 vial [PoM] £88.81

F 436

21-Dec-2017

## Triamcinolone acetonide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### ADCORTYL® INTRA-ARTICULAR/INTRADERMAL

##### Local inflammation of joints and soft tissues

- ▶ BY INTRA-ARTICULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1–17 years: 2 mg/kg (max. per dose 15 mg), for details consult product literature, dose applies for larger joints. For doses above 15 mg use *Kenalog® Intra-articular/Intramuscular*. If appropriate repeat treatment for relapse.

#### KENALOG® VIALS

##### Local inflammation of joints and soft tissues

- ▶ BY INTRA-ARTICULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1–17 years: 2 mg/kg, for details consult product literature, if appropriate repeat treatment for relapse, higher doses than usual maximum have been used; Usual maximum 40 mg

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 6 years.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for triamcinolone acetonide injection (steroid card).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Suspension for injection

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

- ▶ **Adcortyl Intra-articular / Intradermal** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Triamcinolone acetonide 10 mg per 1 ml** Adcortyl Intra-articular / Intradermal 50mg/5ml suspension for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £3.63

- ▶ Adcortyl Intra-articular / Intradermal 10mg/1ml suspension for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £4.47 DT = £4.47

- ▶ **Kenalog** (Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Triamcinolone acetonide 40 mg per 1 ml** Kenalog Intra-articular / Intramuscular 40mg/1ml suspension for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £7.45 DT = £7.45

F 436

21-Dec-2017

## Triamcinolone hexacetonide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Symptomatic treatment of subacute and chronic inflammatory joint diseases (for details, consult product literature)

- ▶ BY INTRA-ARTICULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 2–20 mg, according to size of the joint; if appropriate repeat treatment at intervals of 3–4 weeks, no more than 2 joints should be treated on any one day

- BY PERI-ARTICULAR INJECTION
- Child 12–17 years: 10–20 mg, according to size of the joint, no more than 2 joints should be treated on any one day

#### Juvenile idiopathic arthritis

- BY INTRA-ARTICULAR INJECTION
- Child 3–11 years: (consult product literature)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid injections containing benzyl alcohol in neonates • consult product literature
- **CAUTIONS** Consult product literature
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Protein catabolism • skin fragility
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Various strengths available from 'special order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

#### All Wales Medicines Strategy Group (AWMSG) Decisions

The *All Wales Medicines Strategy Group* has advised (August 2017) that triamcinolone hexacetonide 20 mg/mL suspension for injection is recommended as an option for use within NHS Wales for the treatment of juvenile idiopathic arthritis.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Suspension for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

#### • Triamcinolone hexacetonide (Non-proprietary)

**Triamcinolone hexacetonide 20 mg per 1 ml** Triamcinolone hexacetonide 20mg/1ml suspension for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule (PoM) £120.00

## 4.2 Soft tissue disorders

### Soft-tissue disorders

#### Soft-tissue and musculoskeletal disorders

The management of children with soft-tissue injuries and strains, and musculoskeletal disorders, may include temporary rest together with the local application of heat or cold, local massage and physiotherapy. For pain relief, paracetamol p. 271 is often adequate and should be used first. Alternatively, the lowest effective dose of a NSAID (e.g. ibuprofen p. 655) can be used. If pain relief with either drug is inadequate, both paracetamol (in a full dose appropriate for the child) and a low dose of a NSAID may be required.

#### Extravasation

Local guidelines for the management of extravasation should be followed where they exist or specialist advice sought.

Extravasation injury follows leakage of drugs or intravenous fluids from the veins or inadvertent administration into the subcutaneous or subdermal tissue. It must be dealt with **promptly** to prevent tissue necrosis.

Acidic or alkaline preparations and those with an osmolality greater than that of plasma can cause extravasation injury; excipients including alcohol and polyethylene glycol have also been implicated. Cytotoxic drugs commonly cause extravasation injury. Very young children are at increased risk. Those receiving anticoagulants are more likely to lose blood into surrounding tissues if extravasation occurs, while those receiving sedatives or analgesics may not notice the early signs or symptoms of extravasation.

#### Extravasation prevention

Precautions should be taken to avoid extravasation; ideally, drugs likely to cause extravasation injury should be given through a central line and children receiving repeated doses of hazardous drugs peripherally should have the cannula resited at regular intervals. Attention should be paid to the manufacturers' recommendations for administration. Placing a glyceryl trinitrate patch p. 135 or using glyceryl trinitrate ointment distal to the cannula may improve the patency of the vessel in children with small veins or in those whose veins are prone to collapse. Children or their carers should be asked to report any pain or burning at the site of injection immediately.

#### Extravasation management

If extravasation is suspected the infusion should be stopped immediately but the cannula should not be removed until after an attempt has been made to aspirate the area (through the cannula) in order to remove as much of the drug as possible. Aspiration is sometimes possible if the extravasation presents with a raised bleb or blister at the injection site and is surrounded by hardened tissue, but it is often unsuccessful if the tissue is soft or soggy.

**Corticosteroids** are usually given to treat inflammation, although there is little evidence to support their use in extravasation. Hydrocortisone p. 440 or dexamethasone p. 439 can be given either locally by subcutaneous injection or intravenously at a site distant from the injury. Antihistamines and analgesics may be required for symptom relief.

The management of extravasation beyond these measures is not well standardised and calls for specialist advice. Treatment depends on the nature of the offending substance; one approach is to localise and neutralise the substance whereas another is to spread and dilute it. The first method may be appropriate following extravasation of vesicant drugs and involves administration of an antidote (if available) and the application of cold compresses 3–4 times a day (consult specialist literature for details of specific antidotes). Spreading and diluting the offending substance involves infiltrating the area with physiological saline, applying warm compresses, elevating the affected limb, and administering hyaluronidase below. A saline flush-out technique (involving flushing the subcutaneous tissue with physiological saline) may be effective but requires specialist advice. Hyaluronidase should **not** be administered following extravasation of vesicant drugs (unless it is either specifically indicated or used in the saline flush-out technique).

#### Enzymes used in soft-tissue disorders

Hyaluronidase is used for the management of extravasation.

### ENZYMES

#### Hyaluronidase

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Extravasation

- BY LOCAL INFILTRATION
- Child: (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children, but age range not specified by the manufacturer.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid sites where infection is present • avoid sites where malignancy is present • do not apply direct to cornea • not for anaesthesia in unexplained premature labour • not for intravenous administration • not to be used to enhance the absorption and dispersion of dopamine and/or alpha-adrenoceptor agonists • not to be used to reduce swelling of bites • not to be used to reduce swelling of stings

- **CAUTIONS** Infants (control speed and total volume and avoid overhydration especially in renal impairment)

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Oedema • periorbital oedema

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder for solution for injection**

▸ **Hyaluronidase (Non-proprietary)**

**Hyaluronidase 1500 unit** Hyaluronidase 1,500unit powder for solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule (PoM) £136.55

# Chapter 11

## Eye

### CONTENTS

<b>1 Allergic and inflammatory eye conditions</b>	page 666
1.1 Allergic conjunctivitis	666
1.2 Inflammatory eye conditions	668
1.2a Anterior uveitis	670
<b>2 Dry eye conditions</b>	671
<b>3 Eye infections</b>	674
3.1 Bacterial eye infection	675
3.2 Viral eye infection	678

3.2a Ophthalmic herpes simplex	page 678
<b>4 Eye procedures</b>	678
4.1 Post-operative pain and inflammation	680
<b>5 Glaucoma and ocular hypertension</b>	681
<b>6 Retinal disorders</b>	687
6.1 Optic neuropathy	687

## Eye

### Eye treatment: drug administration

Drugs are most commonly administered to the eye by topical application as eye drops or eye ointments. When a higher drug concentration is required within the eye, a local injection may be necessary.

Eye-drop dispenser devices are available to aid the instillation of eye drops from plastic bottles and some are prescribable on the NHS (consult Drug Tariff—see Appliances and Reagents). Product-specific devices may be supplied by manufacturers—contact individual manufacturers for further information. They are particularly useful for children in whom normal application is difficult, for the visually impaired, or otherwise physically limited patients.

#### Eye drops and eye ointments

Eye drops are generally instilled into the pocket formed by gently pulling down the lower eyelid and keeping the eye closed for as long as possible after application; in neonates and infants it may be more appropriate to administer the drop in the inner angle of the open eye. One drop is all that is needed; instillation of more than one drop at a time should be discouraged because it may increase systemic side-effects. A small amount of eye ointment is applied similarly; the ointment melts rapidly and blinking helps to spread it.

When two different eye-drop preparations are used at the same time of day, dilution and overflow can occur when one immediately follows the other. The carer or child should therefore leave an interval of at least 5 minutes between the two; the interval should be extended when eye drops with a prolonged contact time, such as gels and suspensions, are used. Eye ointment should be applied after drops. Both drops and ointment can cause transient blurred vision; children should be warned, where appropriate, not to perform skilled tasks (e.g. cycling or driving) until vision is clear.

Systemic effects may arise from absorption of drugs into the general circulation from conjunctival vessels or from the nasal mucosa after the excess preparation has drained down through the tear ducts. The extent of systemic absorption following ocular administration is highly variable; nasal drainage of drugs is associated with eye drops much more often than with eye ointments. Pressure on the lacrimal punctum for at least a minute after applying eye drops reduces nasolacrimal drainage and therefore decreases systemic absorption from the nasal mucosa.

Also see warnings relating to eye drops and contact lenses.

### Eye lotions

These are solutions for the irrigation of the conjunctival sac. They act mechanically to flush out irritants or foreign bodies as a first-aid treatment. Sterile sodium chloride 0.9% solution p. 673 is usually used. Clean water will suffice in an emergency.

### Other preparations administered to the eye

Subconjunctival injection may be used to administer anti-infective drugs, mydriatics, or corticosteroids for conditions not responding to topical therapy; intracameral and intravitreal routes can also be used to administer certain drugs, for example antibacterials. These injections should only be used under specialist supervision.

Drugs such as antimicrobials and corticosteroids may be administered systemically to treat susceptible eye conditions.

### Ophthalmic Specials

The Royal College of Ophthalmologists and the UK Ophthalmic Pharmacy Group have produced the Ophthalmic Specials Guidance to help prescribers and pharmacists manage and restrict the use of unlicensed eye preparations. 'Specials' should only be prescribed in situations where a licensed product will not be suitable for a child's needs. The Ophthalmic Specials Guidance can be accessed on the Royal College of Ophthalmologists website ([www.rcophth.ac.uk](http://www.rcophth.ac.uk)). The guidance will be reviewed every six months to ensure the most accurate and up-to-date information is available.

### Preservatives and sensitisers

Information on preservatives and substances identified as skin sensitisers is provided under Excipients statements in preparation entries. Very rarely, cases of corneal calcification have been reported with the use of phosphate-containing eye drops in patients with significantly damaged corneas—consult product literature for further information.

### Eye preparations: control of microbial contamination

Preparations for the eye should be sterile when issued. Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the contents during use.

Eye drops in multiple-application containers for *domiciliary use* should not be used for more than 4 weeks after first opening (unless otherwise stated by the manufacturer).

Multiple application eye drops for use in *hospital wards* are normally discarded 1 week after first opening—local practice may vary. Individual containers should be provided for each patient. A separate container should be supplied for each eye

only if there are special concerns about contamination. Containers used before an eye operation should be discarded at the time of the operation and fresh containers supplied postoperatively. A fresh supply should also be provided upon discharge from hospital; in specialist ophthalmology units, it may be acceptable to issue containers that have been dispensed to the patient on the day of discharge.

In *out-patient departments* single-application containers should be used; if multiple-application containers are used, they should be discarded after single patient use within one clinical session.

In *eye surgery* single-application containers should be used if possible; if a multiple-application container is used, it should be discarded after single use. Preparations used during intra-ocular procedures and others that may penetrate into the anterior chamber must be isotonic and without preservatives and buffered if necessary to a neutral pH. Specially formulated fluids should be used for intra-ocular surgery; intravenous infusion preparations are not usually suitable for this purpose (Hartmann's solution may be used in some ocular surgery). For all surgical procedures, a previously unopened container is used for each patient.

### Contact lenses

For cosmetic reasons many people prefer to wear contact lenses rather than spectacles; contact lenses are also sometimes required for medical indications. Visual defects are corrected by either rigid ('hard' or gas permeable) lenses or soft (hydrogel or silicone hydrogel—in adults only) lenses; soft lenses are the most popular type, because they are initially the most comfortable, but they may not give the best vision. Lenses should usually be worn for a specified number of hours each day and removed for sleeping. The risk of infectious and non-infectious keratitis is increased by extended continuous contact lens wear, which is not recommended, except when medically indicated.

Contact lenses require meticulous care. Poor compliance with directions for use, and with daily cleaning and disinfection, can result in complications including ulcerative keratitis or conjunctivitis. One-day disposable lenses, which are worn only once and therefore require no disinfection or cleaning, are becoming increasingly popular.

*Acanthamoeba keratitis*, a painful and sight-threatening condition, is associated with ineffective lens cleaning and disinfection, the use of contaminated lens cases, or tap water coming into contact with the lenses. The condition is especially associated with the use of soft lenses (including frequently replaced lenses) and should be treated by specialists.

### Contact lenses and drug treatment

Special care is required in prescribing eye preparations for contact lens users. Some drugs and preservatives in eye preparations can accumulate in hydrogel lenses and may induce toxic and adverse reactions. Therefore, unless medically indicated, the lenses should be removed before instillation of the eye preparation and not worn during the period of treatment. Alternatively, unpreserved drops can be used. Eye drops may, however, be instilled while patients are wearing rigid corneal contact lenses. Ointment preparations should never be used in conjunction with contact lens wear; oily eye drops should also be avoided.

Many drugs given systemically can also have adverse effects on contact lens wear. These include oral contraceptives (particularly those with a higher oestrogen content), drugs which reduce blink rate (e.g. anxiolytics, hypnotics, antihistamines, and muscle relaxants), drugs which reduce lacrimation (e.g. antihistamines, antimuscarinics, phenothiazines and related drugs, some beta-blockers, diuretics, and tricyclic antidepressants), and drugs which increase lacrimation (including ephedrine hydrochloride p. 123 and hyalalazine hydrochloride p. 116). Other drugs that may affect contact lens wear are

isotretinoin p. 757 (can cause conjunctival inflammation), aspirin p. 91 (salicylic acid appears in tears and can be absorbed by contact lenses—leading to irritation), and rifampicin p. 364 and sulfasalazine p. 31 (can discolour lenses).

## 1 Allergic and inflammatory eye conditions

### Eye, allergy and inflammation

#### Corticosteroids

Corticosteroids administered locally to the eye or given by mouth are effective for treating anterior segment inflammation, including that which results from surgery.

*Topical corticosteroids* should normally only be used under expert supervision; three main dangers are associated with their use:

- a 'red eye', when the diagnosis is unconfirmed, may be due to herpes simplex virus, and a corticosteroid may aggravate the condition, leading to corneal ulceration, with possible damage to vision and even loss of the eye. Bacterial, fungal, and amoebic infections pose a similar hazard;
- 'steroid glaucoma' can follow the use of corticosteroid eye preparations in susceptible individuals;
- a 'steroid cataract' can follow prolonged use.

Products combining a corticosteroid with an antimicrobial are used after ocular surgery to reduce inflammation and prevent infection: use of combination products is otherwise rarely justified.

*Systemic corticosteroids* may be useful for ocular conditions. The risk of producing a 'steroid cataract' increases with the dose and duration of corticosteroid use.

#### Eye care, other anti-inflammatory preparations

Eye drops containing **antihistamines**, such as antazoline with xylometazoline below as *Otrivine-Antistin*®, azelastine hydrochloride p. 667, epinastine hydrochloride p. 667, ketotifen p. 667, and olopatadine p. 667, can be used for allergic conjunctivitis.

Sodium cromoglicate and nedocromil sodium eye drops p. 668 may be useful for vernal keratoconjunctivitis and other allergic forms of conjunctivitis.

Lodoxamide eye drops p. 667 are used for allergic conjunctival conditions including seasonal allergic conjunctivitis.

## 1.1 Allergic conjunctivitis

### ANTIHISTAMINES

#### Antazoline with xylometazoline

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Allergic conjunctivitis

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply 2–3 times a day for maximum 7 days

- **CAUTIONS** Angle-closure glaucoma • cardiovascular disease • diabetes mellitus • hypertension • hyperthyroidism • phaeochromocytoma • urinary retention
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, sedating • sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor



- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Drowsiness · eye irritation · headache · hyperhidrosis · hypertension · mydriasis · nausea · palpitations · vascular disorders · vision blurred

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Absorption of antazoline and xylometazoline may result in systemic side-effects.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- ▶ **Otrivine Antistin** (Thea Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Xylometazoline hydrochloride 500 microgram per 1 ml,  
Antazoline sulfate 5 mg per 1 ml Otrivine Antistin 0.5%/0.05% eye  
drops | 10 ml [P] £3.35 DT = £3.35

## Azelastine hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Seasonal allergic conjunctivitis

- ▶ TO THE EYE

- ▶ Child 4-17 years: Apply twice daily, increased if necessary to 4 times a day

##### Perennial conjunctivitis

- ▶ TO THE EYE

- ▶ Child 12-17 years: Apply twice daily; increased if necessary to 4 times a day, maximum duration of treatment 6 weeks

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, non-sedating

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common Eye irritation
- ▶ Uncommon Taste bitter

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- ▶ **Optilast** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Azelastine hydrochloride 500 microgram per 1 ml Optilast 0.05%  
eye drops | 8 ml [PoM] £6.40 DT = £6.40

## Epinastine hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Seasonal allergic conjunctivitis

- ▶ TO THE EYE

- ▶ Child 12-17 years: Apply twice daily for maximum 8 weeks

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common Eye discomfort
- ▶ Uncommon Dry eye · eye disorders · headache · nasal irritation · rhinitis · taste altered · visual impairment

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- ▶ **Relestat** (Allergan Ltd)

Epinastine hydrochloride 500 microgram per 1 ml Relestat  
500micrograms/ml eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £9.90 DT = £9.90

## Ketotifen

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Seasonal allergic conjunctivitis

- ▶ TO THE EYE

- ▶ Child 3-17 years: Apply twice daily

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, sedating

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common Eye discomfort · eye disorders · eye inflammation
- ▶ Uncommon Conjunctival haemorrhage · drowsiness · dry eye · dry mouth · headache · skin reactions · vision disorders
- ▶ Frequency not known Asthma exacerbated · facial swelling · oedema

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

- ▶ **Ketofall** (Scope Ophthalmics Ltd)

Ketotifen (as Ketotifen hydrogen fumarate) 250 microgram per  
1 ml Ketofall 0.25mg/ml eye drops 0.4ml unit dose | 30 unit  
dose [PoM] £6.95

- ▶ **Zaditen** (Thea Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Ketotifen (as Ketotifen fumarate) 250 microgram per  
1 ml Zaditen 250micrograms/ml eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £7.80 DT =  
£7.80

## Olopatadine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Seasonal allergic conjunctivitis

- ▶ TO THE EYE

- ▶ Child 3-17 years: Apply twice daily for maximum 4 months

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common Asthenia · dry eye · eye discomfort · headache · nasal dryness · taste altered
- ▶ Uncommon Dizziness · eye disorders · eye inflammation · increased risk of infection · numbness · skin reactions · vision disorders
- ▶ Frequency not known Drowsiness · dyspnoea · malaise · nausea · vomiting

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

- ▶ **Opatanol** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

Olopatadine (as Olopatadine hydrochloride) 1 mg per  
1 ml Opatanol 1mg/ml eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £4.68 DT = £4.68

## MAST-CELL STABILISERS

## Lodoxamide

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Allergic conjunctivitis

- ▶ TO THE EYE

- ▶ Child 4-17 years: Apply 4 times a day, improvement of symptoms may sometimes require treatment for up to 4 weeks

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common Dry eye · eye discomfort · eye disorders · vision disorders
- ▶ Uncommon Corneal deposits · dizziness · eye inflammation · headache · nausea

- **Rare or very rare** Nasal complaints · rash · taste altered
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Lodoxamide 0.1% eye drops can be sold to the public for treatment of allergic conjunctivitis in adults and children over 4 years.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- **Alomide** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Lodoxamide (as Lodoxamide trometamol) 1 mg per 1 ml** Alomide 0.1% eye drops | 10 ml [PoM] £5.21 DT = £5.21

## Nedocromil sodium

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Seasonal and perennial conjunctivitis

- TO THE EYE
- Child 6–17 years: Apply twice daily, increased if necessary to 4 times a day, max. 12 weeks duration of treatment for seasonal allergic conjunctivitis

##### Seasonal keratoconjunctivitis

- TO THE EYE
- Child 6–17 years: Apply 4 times a day

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Eye discomfort · eye strain · taste altered

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

## Sodium cromoglicate

(Sodium cromoglycate)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Allergic conjunctivitis | Seasonal keratoconjunctivitis

- TO THE EYE
- Child: Apply 4 times a day

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Frequency not known** Eye stinging

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Sodium cromoglicate 2% eye drops can be sold to the public (in max. pack size of 10 mL) for treatment of acute seasonal and perennial allergic conjunctivitis.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops

##### Eye drops

- **Sodium cromoglicate (Non-proprietary)**

**Sodium cromoglicate 20 mg per 1 ml** Sodium cromoglicate 2% eye drops | 13.5 ml [PoM] £11.25 DT = £9.87

- **Opticrom** (Sanofi)

**Sodium cromoglicate 20 mg per 1 ml** Opticrom Aqueous 2% eye drops | 13.5 ml [PoM] £8.03 DT = £9.87

- **Vividrin** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

**Sodium cromoglicate 20 mg per 1 ml** Vividrin 2% eye drops | 13.5 ml [PoM] £10.95 DT = £9.87

## 1.2 Inflammatory eye conditions

### Other drugs used for Inflammatory eye conditions

Adalimumab, p. 642

## CORTICOSTEROIDS

### Betamethasone

21-Dec-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Local treatment of inflammation (short-term)

- TO THE EYE USING EYE DROP
- Child: Apply every 1–2 hours until controlled then reduce frequency
- TO THE EYE USING EYE OINTMENT
- Child: Apply 2–4 times a day, alternatively apply at night when used in combination with eye drops

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Vision disorders

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Ear/eye/nose drops solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- **Betnesol** (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)

**Betamethasone sodium phosphate 1 mg per 1 ml** Betnesol 0.1% eye/ear/nose drops | 10 ml [PoM] £2.32 DT = £2.32

- **Vistamethasone** (Martindale Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Betamethasone sodium phosphate 1 mg per 1 ml** Vistamethasone 0.1% ear/eye/nose drops | 5 ml [PoM] £1.02 | 10 ml [PoM] £1.16 DT = £2.32

##### Eye ointment

- **Betamethasone (Non-proprietary)**

**Betamethasone sodium phosphate 1 mg per 1 gram** Betamethasone 0.1% eye ointment | 3 gram [PoM] £3.48 DT = £1.41

- **Betnesol** (Focus Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Betamethasone sodium phosphate 1 mg per 1 gram** Betnesol 0.1% eye ointment | 3 gram [PoM] £1.41 DT = £1.41

Combinations available: **Betamethasone with neomycin**, p. 669

## Dexamethasone

21-Dec-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Local treatment of inflammation (short-term)

- TO THE EYE USING EYE DROP
- Child: Apply 4–6 times a day

##### Short term local treatment of inflammation (severe conditions)

- TO THE EYE USING EYE DROP
- Child: Apply every 30–60 minutes until controlled, reduce frequency when control achieved

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Maxidex*® not licensed for use in children under 2 years. *Dropodex*® and *Dexafree*® not licensed for use in children.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)  
See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Eye discomfort
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Photophobia · taste altered
- **PREGNANCY** Dexamethasone readily crosses the placenta.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose Dexamethasone eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.
- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, polysorbates

- ▶ **Dexamethasone (Non-proprietary)**  
Dexamethasone sodium phosphate 1 mg per 1 ml Minim dexamethasone 0.1% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £11.46 DT = £11.46
- ▶ **Dexafree** (Thea Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Dexamethasone sodium phosphate 1 mg per 1 ml Dexafree 1mg/1ml eye drops 0.4ml unit dose | 30 unit dose [PoM] £9.70
- ▶ **Dropodex** (Rayner Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Dexamethasone sodium phosphate 1 mg per 1 ml Dropodex 0.1% eye drops 0.4ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £10.48 DT = £10.48
- ▶ **Maxidex** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
Dexamethasone 1 mg per 1 ml Maxidex 0.1% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £1.42 DT = £1.42 | 10 ml [PoM] £2.80 DT = £2.80

Combinations available: *Dexamethasone with framycetin sulfate and gramicidin*, p. 670 · *Dexamethasone with hypromellose, neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate*, p. 670

## Fluorometholone

21-Dec-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Local treatment of inflammation (short term)

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: Apply every 1 hour for 24–48 hours, then reduced to 2–4 times a day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 2 years.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)  
See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Cataract · eye discomfort · eye disorders · eye infection · eye inflammation · rash · taste altered · vision disorders
- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.  
**Eye drops**  
EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, polysorbates

- ▶ **FML Liquifilm** (Allergan Ltd)  
Fluorometholone 1 mg per 1 ml FML Liquifilm 0.1% ophthalmic suspension | 5 ml [PoM] £1.71 DT = £1.71 | 10 ml [PoM] £2.95 DT = £2.95

## Prednisolone

21-Dec-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Local treatment of inflammation (short-term)

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child: Apply every 1–2 hours until controlled then reduce frequency

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Pred Forte*® not licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)  
See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Eye discomfort · increased risk of infection · taste altered · visual impairment
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose prednisolone eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, polysorbates

- ▶ **Prednisolone (Non-proprietary)**  
Prednisolone sodium phosphate 5 mg per 1 ml Minim prednisolone sodium phosphate 0.5% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £12.25 DT = £12.25
- ▶ **Pred Forte** (Allergan Ltd)  
Prednisolone acetate 10 mg per 1 ml Pred Forte 1% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £1.82 DT = £1.82 | 10 ml [PoM] £3.66 DT = £3.66

#### Ear/eye drops solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- ▶ **Predsol** (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)  
Prednisolone sodium phosphate 5 mg per 1 ml Predsol 0.5% ear/eye drops | 10 ml [PoM] £2.00 DT = £2.00

## CORTICOSTEROIDS > CORTICOSTEROID COMBINATIONS WITH ANTI-INFECTIVES

## Betamethasone with neomycin

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, betamethasone p. 668.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Local treatment of eye inflammation and bacterial infection (short-term)

- ▶ TO THE EYE USING EYE DROP
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids · neomycin
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Betamethasone with neomycin eye-drops are less suitable for prescribing.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Ear/eye/nose drops solution**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

**► Betnesol-N** (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone sodium phosphate) 1 mg per 1 ml, Neomycin sulfate 5 mg per 1 ml Betnesol-N ear/eye/nose drops | 10 ml [PoM] £2.39 DT = £2.39

## Dexamethasone with framycetin sulfate and gramicidin

21-Dec-2017

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, dexamethasone p. 668.

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Local treatment of inflammation (short-term)****► TO THE EYE**

- Child: Apply 4–6 times a day, may be administered every 30–60 minutes in severe conditions until controlled, then reduce frequency

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Sofradex® is less suitable for prescribing.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Ear/eye drops solution**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Polysorbates

**► Sofradex** (Sanofi)

Gramicidin 50 microgram per 1 ml, Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium metasulfobenzoate) 500 microgram per 1 ml, Framycetin sulfate 5 mg per 1 ml Sofradex ear/eye drops | 8 ml [PoM] £7.50

## Dexamethasone with hypromellose, neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, dexamethasone p. 668.

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Local treatment of inflammation (short-term)****► TO THE EYE USING EYE DROP**

- Child: Apply every 30–60 minutes until controlled, then reduced to 4–6 times a day

**Local treatment of inflammation (short-term)****► TO THE EYE USING EYE OINTMENT**

- Child: Apply 3–4 times a day, alternatively, apply at night when used with eye drops

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids · neomycin
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Dexamethasone with neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate is less suitable for prescribing.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Eye ointment**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Hydroxybenzoates (parabens), woolfat and related substances (including lanolin)

**► Maxitrol** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

Dexamethasone 1 mg per 1 gram, Neomycin (as Neomycin sulfate) 3500 unit per 1 gram, Polymyxin B sulfate 6000 unit per 1 gram Maxitrol eye ointment | 3.5 gram [PoM] £1.44

**Eye drops**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, polysorbates

**► Maxitrol** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

Dexamethasone 1 mg per 1 ml, Hypromellose 5 mg per 1 ml, Neomycin (as Neomycin sulfate) 3500 unit per 1 ml, Polymyxin B sulfate 6000 unit per 1 ml Maxitrol eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £1.68

## 1.2a Anterior uveitis

**ANTIMUSCARINICS**

### Antimuscarinics (eye)

- **CAUTIONS** Children under 3 months owing to the possible association between cycloplegia and the development of amblyopia · darkly pigmented iris is more resistant to pupillary dilatation and caution should be exercised to avoid overdosage · mydriasis can precipitate acute angle-closure glaucoma (usually in those who are predisposed to the condition because of a shallow anterior chamber) · neonates at increased risk of systemic toxicity
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Arrhythmias · conjunctivitis (on prolonged administration) · dry mouth · dry skin · eye oedema (on prolonged administration · flushing · hyperaemia (on prolonged administration) · gastrointestinal disorders · urinary disorders
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients may not be able to undertake skilled tasks until vision clears after mydriasis.

### Atropine sulfate

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Cycloplegia****► TO THE EYE USING EYE DROP**

- Child 3 months–17 years: Apply twice daily for 3 days, before procedure

**Anterior uveitis****► TO THE EYE USING EYE DROP**

- Child 2–17 years: Apply 1 drop up to 4 times a day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for uveitis.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: atropine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**  
**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Systemic side-effects can occur.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose atropine sulphate eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops

**Eye drops****► Atropine sulfate (Non-proprietary)**

Atropine sulfate 10 mg per 1 ml Atropine 1% eye drops | 10 ml [PoM] £132.25 DT = £132.25

- **Atropine sulfate** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)  
Atropine sulfate 10 mg per 1 ml Minimim atropine sulfate 1% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £15.10 DT = £15.10

F 670

## Cyclopentolate hydrochloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Cycloplegia

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- Child 3 months–11 years: Apply 1 drop, 30–60 minutes before examination, using 1% eye drops
- Child 12–17 years: Apply 1 drop, 30–60 minutes before examination, using 0.5% eye drops

#### Uveitis

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- Child 3 months–17 years: Apply 1 drop 2–4 times a day, using 0.5% eye drops (1% for deeply pigmented eyes)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cyclopentolate

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Mydriasis • photophobia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Systemic side-effects can occur.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose cyclopentolate eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

- ▶ **Cyclopentolate hydrochloride** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)  
Cyclopentolate hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml Minimim cyclopentolate hydrochloride 0.5% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £11.41 DT = £11.41

Cyclopentolate hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml Minimim cyclopentolate hydrochloride 1% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £11.68 DT = £11.68

- ▶ **Mydrilate** (Intrapharm Laboratories Ltd)  
Cyclopentolate hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml Mydrilate 0.5% solution | 5 ml [PoM] £8.08 DT = £8.08  
Cyclopentolate hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml Mydrilate 1% solution | 5 ml [PoM] £8.08 DT = £8.08

F 670

## Homatropine hydrobromide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Anterior uveitis

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- Child 3 months–1 year: Apply 1 drop daily, alternatively apply 1 drop once daily on alternate days, adjusted according to response, only 0.5% eye drops to be used
- Child 2–17 years: Apply 1 drop twice daily, adjusted according to response

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 3 months.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: homatropine

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops

## 2 Dry eye conditions

### Dry eye

#### Tear deficiency, ocular lubricants, and astringents

Chronic soreness of the eyes associated with reduced or abnormal tear secretion often responds to tear replacement therapy. The severity of the condition and child's preference will often guide the choice of preparation.

Hyromellose p. 672 is the traditional choice of treatment for tear deficiency. It may need to be instilled frequently (e.g. hourly) for adequate relief. Ocular surface mucin is often abnormal in tear deficiency and the combination of hyromellose with a mucolytic such as acetylcysteine below can be helpful.

The ability of **carbomers** to cling to the eye surface may help reduce frequency of application to 4 times daily.

Polyvinyl alcohol p. 673 increases the persistence of the tear film and is useful when the ocular surface mucin is reduced.

Sodium hyaluronate eye drops p. 674, with or without trehalose, are also used in the management of tear deficiency.

Sodium chloride 0.9% drops p. 673 are sometimes useful in tear deficiency, and can be used as 'comfort drops' by contact lens wearers, and to facilitate lens removal. Special presentations of sodium chloride 0.9% and other irrigation solutions are used routinely for intra-ocular surgery and in first aid for removal of harmful substances.

Eye ointments containing a paraffin can be used to lubricate the eye surface, especially in cases of recurrent corneal epithelial erosion. They may cause temporary visual disturbance and are best suited for application before sleep. Ointments should not be used during contact lens wear.

### OCULAR LUBRICANTS

#### Acetylcysteine

07-Feb-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Tear deficiency | Impaired or abnormal mucus production

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child: Apply 3–4 times a day

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- ▶ **Ilube** (Rayner Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Acetylcysteine 50 mg per 1 ml Ilube 5% eye drops | 10 ml [PoM] £16.90 DT = £16.90

### Carbomers

#### (Polyacrylic acid)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Dry eyes including keratoconjunctivitis sicca, unstable tear film

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child: Apply 3–4 times a day or when required

- **UNLICENSED USE** Some preparations not licensed for use in children.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Synthetic high molecular weight polymers of acrylic acid cross-



linked with either allyl ethers of sucrose or allyl ethers of pentaerythritol.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye gel

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, cetrimide, disodium edetate

#### ► Blephagel (Thea Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Carbomer 3.5 mg per 1 gram** Blephagel 0.35% eye gel | 40 gram £6.66

**Carbomer 3.6 mg per 1 gram** Blephagel 0.36% eye gel preservative free | 30 gram £7.53

#### ► Liquivisc (Thea Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Carbomer 974P 2.5 mg per 1 gram** Liquivisc 0.25% eye gel | 10 gram [P] £4.50 DT = £4.50

#### Eye drops

#### ► Carbomers (Non-proprietary)

**Carbomer 980 2 mg per 1 gram** EyeGel 0.2% eye gel | 10 gram £2.80 DT = £2.80

Carbomer '980' 0.2% eye drops | 10 gram [P] £2.80 DT = £2.80

Carbomer 0.2% eye gel | 10 gram £2.80 DT = £2.80

#### ► Artelac Nighttime (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

**Carbomer 980 2 mg per 1 gram** Artelac Nighttime 0.2% eye gel | 10 gram £2.96 DT = £2.80

#### ► Clinitas Carbomer (Altacor Ltd)

**Carbomer 980 2 mg per 1 gram** Clinitas Carbomer 0.2% eye gel | 10 gram £1.49 DT = £2.80

#### ► GelTears (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

**Carbomer 980 2 mg per 1 gram** GelTears 0.2% gel | 10 gram [P] £2.80 DT = £2.80

#### ► Lumecare Long Lasting (Medicom Healthcare Ltd)

**Carbomer 980 2 mg per 1 gram** Lumecare Carbomer 0.2% eye gel | 10 gram £1.51 DT = £2.80

#### ► Viscotears (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

**Carbomer 980 2 mg per 1 gram** Viscotears 2mg/g liquid gel | 10 gram [P] £1.59 DT = £2.80

Viscotears 2mg/g eye gel 0.6ml unit dose | 30 unit dose [P] £5.42 DT = £5.42

#### ► Xailin (Visufarma UK Ltd)

**Carbomer 980 2 mg per 1 gram** Xailin 0.2% eye gel | 10 gram £3.28 DT = £2.80

## Carmellose sodium

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Dry eye conditions

- TO THE EYE
- Child: Apply as required

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Some preparations are contained units which are resealable and may be used for up to 12 hours.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

#### ► Carmellose sodium (Non-proprietary)

Carmellose 1% eye drops 0.4ml unit dose preservative free | 30 unit dose [PoM] [N] DT = £3.00

**Carmellose sodium 5 mg per 1 ml** Carmellose 0.5% eye drops 0.4ml unit dose preservative free | 30 unit dose [P] [N] DT = £4.80

#### ► Celluvisc (Allergan Ltd)

Celluvisc 1% eye drops 0.4ml unit dose | 30 unit dose [P] £3.00 DT = £3.00 | 60 unit dose [P] £10.99

**Carmellose sodium 5 mg per 1 ml** Celluvisc 0.5% eye drops 0.4ml unit dose | 30 unit dose [P] £4.80 DT = £4.80 | 90 unit dose [P] £15.53

## Hydroxyethylcellulose

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Tear deficiency

- TO THE EYE
- Child: Apply as required

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose hydroxyethylcellulose eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

#### ► Artificial tears (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

**Hydroxyethylcellulose 4.4 mg per 1 ml** Minims artificial tears 0.44% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [P] £9.33

## Hydroxypropyl guar with polyethylene glycol and propylene glycol

(Formulated as an ocular lubricant)

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Dry eye conditions

- TO THE EYE
- Child: Apply as required

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

#### ► Systane (Alcon Laboratories (UK) Ltd)

Systane Gel eye drops | 10 ml [P] £7.49

## Hypromellose

### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Tear deficiency

- TO THE EYE
- Child: Apply as required

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose hypromellose eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, cetrimide, disodium edetate

#### ► Hypromellose (Non-proprietary)

**Hypromellose 3 mg per 1 ml** Hypromellose 0.3% eye drops | 10 ml [P] £1.06 DT = £1.06

**Hypromellose 5 mg per 1 ml** Hypromellose 0.5% eye drops | 10 ml £0.81 DT = £0.81

#### ► Artelac (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

**Hypromellose 3.2 mg per 1 ml** Artelac Single Dose Unit 0.32% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 30 unit dose [P] £16.95 | 60 unit dose [P] £32.85

Artelac 0.32% eye drops | 10 ml [P] £4.99 DT = £4.99

## Hypromellose with dextran 70

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, hypromellose p. 672.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Tear deficiency

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child: Apply as required

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- ▶ **Tears Naturele** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Dextran 70 1 mg per 1 ml, Hypromellose 3 mg per 1 ml** Tears Naturele eye drops | 15 ml **P** £1.89 DT = £1.89  
Tears Naturele eye drops 0.4ml unit dose | 28 unit dose **P** £13.26 DT = £13.26

## Liquid paraffin with white soft paraffin and wool alcohols

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Dry eye conditions

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child: Apply as required, best suited for application before sleep

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** May cause temporary visual disturbance. Should not be used during contact lens wear.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye ointment

- ▶ **Lacri-Lube** (Allergan Ltd)

**Wool alcohols 2 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 425 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 573 mg per 1 gram** Lacri-lube eye ointment | 3.5 gram **P** £3.01 | 5 gram **P** £3.98

## Paraffin, yellow, soft

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Eye surface lubrication

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child: Apply every 2 hours as required

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Ophthalmic preparations may cause temporary visual disturbance. Should not be used during contact lens wear.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye ointment

- ▶ **Paraffin, yellow, soft (Non-proprietary)**

**Liquid paraffin 100 mg per 1 gram, Wool fat 100 mg per 1 gram, Yellow soft paraffin 800 mg per 1 gram** Simple eye ointment | 4 gram **P** £18.62 DT = £18.46

## Polyvinyl alcohol

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Tear deficiency

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child: Apply as required

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose polyvinyl alcohol eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- ▶ **Liquifilm Tears** (Allergan Ltd)

**Polyvinyl alcohol 14 mg per 1 ml** Liquifilm Tears 1.4% eye drops | 15 ml £1.93

Liquifilm Tears 1.4% eye drops 0.4ml unit dose preservative free | 30 unit dose £5.35

- ▶ **Refresh Ophthalmic** (Allergan Ltd)

**Polyvinyl alcohol 14 mg per 1 ml** Refresh Ophthalmic 1.4% eye drops 0.4ml unit dose | 30 unit dose £2.25

- ▶ **Sno Tears** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

**Polyvinyl alcohol 14 mg per 1 ml** Sno Tears 1.4% eye drops | 10 ml £1.06

## Retinol palmitate with white soft paraffin and light liquid paraffin and liquid paraffin and wool fat

(Formulated as an ocular lubricant)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Dry eye conditions

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child: Apply as required

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye ointment

- ▶ **Vita-POS** (Scope Ophthalmics Ltd)

Vita-POS eye ointment preservative free | 5 gram £2.75

## Sodium chloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Tear deficiency | Ocular lubricants and astringents | Irrigation, including first-aid removal of harmful substances | Intra-ocular or topical irrigation during surgical procedures**

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child: Apply as required, use 0.9% eye preparations

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose sodium chloride eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops, eye ointment, irrigation

#### Eye drops

- ▶ **Sodium chloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Sodium chloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Sodium chloride 5% eye drops | 10 ml £25.25

- **Hypersal** (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)  
Sodium chloride 50 mg per 1 ml Hypersal 5% eye drops | 10 ml £25.25
- **ODMS** (Kestrel Ophthalmics Ltd)  
Sodium chloride 50 mg per 1 ml ODM5 5% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £24.00 DT = £0.00
- **Saline** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)  
Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml Minims saline 0.9% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [P] £7.43 DT = £7.43
- **Sodium chloride** (Essential Pharmaceuticals Ltd, Moorfields Pharmaceuticals)  
Sodium chloride 50 mg per 1 ml NaCl 5% eye drops 0.45ml unit dose preservative free | 20 unit dose £19.70  
PF Drops Sodium Chloride 5% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £25.20 DT = £0.00

### Eye ointment

- **Sodium chloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Sodium chloride 50 mg per 1 ml Sodium chloride 5% eye ointment preservative free | 5 gram £22.50

## Sodium hyaluronate

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Dry eye conditions

- TO THE EYE
- Child: Apply as required

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Some preparations are contained in units which are resealable and may be used for up to 12 hours.

Although multi-dose sodium hyaluronate eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

- **Artelac Rebalance** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)  
Artelac Rebalance 0.15% eye drops | 10 ml £4.00
- **Artelac Splash** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)  
Artelac Splash 0.2% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 30 unit dose £7.00 | 60 unit dose £11.20
- **Blink Intensive** (AMO UK Ltd)  
Blink Intensive Tears 0.2% eye drops 0.4ml unit dose | 20 unit dose £2.97  
Blink Intensive Tears 0.2% eye drops | 10 ml £2.97
- **Clinitas** (Altacor Ltd)  
Clinitas Multi 0.4% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £6.99  
Clinitas 0.4% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 30 unit dose £5.70
- **Evolve HA** (Medicom Healthcare Ltd)  
Evolve HA 0.2% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £5.99
- **Hy-Opti** (Alissa Healthcare Research Ltd)  
Hy-Opti 0.1% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £8.50  
Hy-Opti 0.2% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £9.50
- **Hyabak** (Thea Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Hyabak 0.15% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £7.99
- **Hycosan** (Scope Ophthalmics Ltd)  
Hycosan Extra 0.2% eye drops | 7.5 ml [S]  
Hycosan 0.1% eye drops | 7.5 ml [S]
- **HydraMed** (Farmigee S.p.A.)  
HydraMed 0.2% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £5.60  
HydraMed 0.2% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose preservative free | 30 unit dose £5.60
- **Hylo-Comod** (Scope Ophthalmics Ltd)  
Hylo-Tear 0.1% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £8.50  
Hylo-Forte 0.2% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £9.50
- **Hylo-Fresh** (Scope Ophthalmics Ltd)  
Hylo-Fresh 0.03% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £4.95
- **Lubristil** (Moorfields Pharmaceuticals)  
Lubristil 0.15% eye drops 0.3ml unit dose preservative free | 20 unit dose £4.99
- **Ocusan** (Agepha Pharma s.r.o.)  
Ocusan 0.2% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose £5.41
- **Optive Fusion** (Allergan Ltd)  
Optive Fusion 0.1% eye drops | 10 ml £7.49
- **Oxyl** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)  
Oxyl 0.15% eye drops | 10 ml £4.15

- **Vismed** (TRB Chemidica (UK) Ltd)  
Vismed Gel Multi 0.3% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £8.01  
Vismed Multi 0.18% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £6.87  
Vismed 0.18% eye drops 0.3ml unit dose preservative free | 20 unit dose £5.14
- **Vizulize** (East Midlands Pharma Ltd)  
Vizulize 0.1% eye drops | 10 ml £1.71
- **Xailin HA** (Visufarma UK Ltd)  
Xailin HA 0.2% eye drops | 10 ml £7.19  
Xailin HA 0.2% eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £7.19

### Eye gel

- **Lubristil** (Moorfields Pharmaceuticals)  
Lubristil 0.15% eye gel 0.4ml unit dose preservative free | 20 unit dose £6.49
- **Vismed** (TRB Chemidica (UK) Ltd)  
Vismed Gel 0.3% eye gel 0.45ml unit dose preservative free | 20 unit dose £6.03

## Sodium hyaluronate and trehalose

21-Nov-2017

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Dry eye conditions

- TO THE EYE
- Child: Apply 1 drop 4–6 times a day

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Sodium hyaluronate and trehalose preparations do not contain preservatives; multi-dose preparation can be used for up to 3 months.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

- **Thealoz Duo** (Thea Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Thealoz Duo eye drops preservative free | 10 ml £8.99  
Thealoz Duo UD eye drops 0.4ml unit dose preservative free | 30 unit dose £6.99

## Soybean oil

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Dry eye conditions

- TO THE EYE
- Child: Apply up to 4 times a day

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

- **Emustil** (Moorfields Pharmaceuticals)  
Emustil eye drops 0.3ml unit dose preservative free | 20 unit dose £6.22

## 3 Eye infections

### Eye, infections

#### Eye infections

Most acute superficial eye infections can be treated topically. Blepharitis and conjunctivitis are often caused by staphylococci; keratitis and endophthalmitis may be bacterial, viral, or fungal.

Bacterial blepharitis is treated by lid hygiene and application of antibacterial eye drops to the conjunctival sac or to the lid margins. Systemic treatment may be required and may be necessary for 3 months or longer.

Most cases of acute bacterial conjunctivitis are self-limiting; where treatment is appropriate, antibacterial eye

drops or an eye ointment are used. A poor response might indicate viral or allergic conjunctivitis or antibiotic resistance.

Corneal ulcer and keratitis require specialist treatment, usually under inpatient care, and may call for intensive topical, subconjunctival, or systemic administration of antimicrobials.

Endophthalmitis is a medical emergency which also calls for specialist management and requires intravitreal administration of antimicrobials; concomitant systemic treatment is required in some cases. Surgical intervention, such as vitrectomy, is sometimes indicated.

See reference to the treatment of *crab lice* of the eyelashes.

### Antibacterials for eye infections

Bacterial eye infections are generally treated topically with eye drops and eye ointments. Systemic administration is sometimes appropriate in blepharitis.

Chloramphenicol p. 677 has a broad spectrum of activity and is the drug of choice for *superficial eye infections*. Chloramphenicol eye drops are well tolerated and the recommendation that chloramphenicol eye drops should be avoided because of an increased risk of aplastic anaemia is not well founded.

Other antibacterials with a broad spectrum of activity include the quinolones, ciprofloxacin p. 676, levofloxacin p. 676, moxifloxacin p. 677, and ofloxacin p. 677; the aminoglycosides, gentamicin below and tobramycin p. 676 are also active against a wide variety of bacteria. Gentamicin, tobramycin, quinolones (except moxifloxacin), and **polymyxin B** are effective for infections caused by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*.

Ciprofloxacin eye drops are licensed for corneal ulcers; intensive application (especially in the first 2 days) is required throughout the day and night.

Azithromycin eye drops p. 676 are licensed for trachomatous conjunctivitis caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis* and for purulent bacterial conjunctivitis. *Trachoma* which results from chronic infection with *Chlamydia trachomatis* can be treated with azithromycin by mouth [unlicensed indication].

**Fusidic acid** is useful for staphylococcal infections.

Propamidine isetionate p. 678 is of little value in bacterial infections but is used by specialists to treat the rare, but potentially sight-threatening, condition of *acanthamoeba keratitis* [unlicensed indication].

Other antibacterial eye drops may be prepared aseptically in a specialist manufacturing unit from material supplied for injection.

### With corticosteroids

Many antibacterial preparations also incorporate a corticosteroid but such mixtures should **not** be used unless a patient is under close specialist supervision. In particular they should not be prescribed for undiagnosed 'red eye' which is sometimes caused by the herpes simplex virus and may be difficult to diagnose.

### Administration

Frequency of application depends on the severity of the infection and the potential for irreversible ocular damage; antibacterial eye preparations are usually administered as follows:

- *Eye drops*, apply 1 drop at least every 2 hours in severe infection then reduce frequency as infection is controlled and continue for 48 hours after healing. For less severe infection 3–4 times daily is generally sufficient.
- *Eye ointment*, apply either at night (if eye drops used during the day) or 3–4 times daily (if eye ointment used alone).

### Antifungals for eye infections

Fungal infections of the cornea are rare. Orbital mycosis is rarer, and when it occurs it is usually because of direct spread

of infection from the paranasal sinuses. Debility or immunosuppression can encourage fungal proliferation. The spread of infection through blood occasionally produces metastatic endophthalmitis.

Many different fungi are capable of producing ocular infection; they can be identified by appropriate laboratory procedures.

Antifungal preparations for the eye are not generally available. Treatment will normally be carried out at specialist centres, but requests for information about supplies of preparations not available commercially should be addressed to the Strategic Health Authority (or equivalent in Scotland or Northern Ireland), or to the nearest hospital ophthalmology unit, or to Moorfields Eye Hospital, 162 City Road, London EC1V 2PD (tel. (020) 7253 3411) or [www.moorfields.nhs.uk](http://www.moorfields.nhs.uk).

### Antivirals for eye infections

Herpes simplex infections producing, for example, dendritic corneal ulcers can be treated with aciclovir p. 678. Aciclovir eye ointment is used in combination with systemic treatment for ophthalmic zoster.

Also see systemic treatment of CMV retinitis.

### Antibacterials for eye infections in neonates

Antibacterial eye drops are used to treat acute bacterial conjunctivitis in neonates (ophthalmia neonatorum); where possible the causative microorganism should be identified. Chloramphenicol eye drops are used to treat mild conjunctivitis; more serious infections also require a systemic antibacterial. Failure to respond to initial treatment requires further investigation; chlamydial infection is one of the most frequent causes of neonatal conjunctivitis and should be considered. Azithromycin eye drops are licensed to treat trachomatous conjunctivitis caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis* and purulent bacterial conjunctivitis in neonates. However, as there is a risk of simultaneous infection at other sites in neonates and children under 3 months presenting with conjunctivitis caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis*, systemic treatment with oral erythromycin p. 331 is required. *Gonococcal eye infections* are treated with a single-dose of parenteral cefotaxime p. 320 or ceftriaxone p. 322. Gentamicin eye drops together with appropriate systemic antibacterials are used in the treatment of *pseudomonal eye infections*; high-strength gentamicin eye drops (1.5%) [unlicensed] are available for severe infections.

## 3.1 Bacterial eye infection

### ANTIBACTERIALS > AMINOGLYCOSIDES

#### Gentamicin

11-Dec-2017

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Bacterial eye infections

###### ► TO THE EYE

- Child: Apply 1 drop at least every 2 hours in severe infection, reduce frequency as infection is controlled and continue for 48 hours after healing, frequency of eye drops depends on the severity of the infection and the potential for irreversible ocular damage; for less severe infection 3–4 times daily is generally sufficient

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aminoglycosides

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Eye drops may be sourced as a manufactured special or from specialist importing companies.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops

**Ear/eye drops solution**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

► **Gentamicin (Non-proprietary)**

Gentamicin (as Gentamicin sulfate) 3 mg per 1 ml Gentamicin 0.3% ear/eye drops | 10 ml [PoM] £2.63 DT = £2.47

**Tobramycin**

22-Nov-2016

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Local treatment of infections**

## ► TO THE EYE

► Child 1-17 years: Apply twice daily for 6–8 days

**Local treatment of infections (severe infection)**

## ► TO THE EYE

► Child 1-17 years: Apply 4 times a day for first day, then apply twice daily for 5–7 days

**INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aminoglycosides**MEDICINAL FORMS**

No licensed medicines listed

**ANTIBACTERIALS** ► **MACROLIDES****Azithromycin****INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Trachomatous conjunctivitis caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis* | Purulent bacterial conjunctivitis**

## ► TO THE EYE

► Child: Apply twice daily for 3 days, review if no improvement after 3 days of treatment

**INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: macrolides**SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Eye discomfort · vision blurred
- **Uncommon** Angioedema · eye allergy

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Eye drops**► **Azyter** (Thea Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Azithromycin dihydrate 15 mg per 1 gram Azyter 15mg/g eye drops 0.25g unit dose | 6 unit dose [PoM] £6.99 DT = £6.99

**ANTIBACTERIALS** ► **QUINOLONES****Ciprofloxacin**

26-Apr-2018

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Superficial bacterial eye infection**

## ► TO THE EYE USING EYE DROP

► Child: Apply 4 times a day for maximum duration of treatment 21 days

## ► TO THE EYE USING EYE OINTMENT

► Child 1-17 years: Apply 1.25 centimetres 3 times a day for 2 days, then apply 1.25 centimetres twice daily for 5 days

**Superficial bacterial eye infection (severe infection)**

## ► TO THE EYE USING EYE DROP

► Child: Apply every 2 hours during waking hours for 2 days, then apply 4 times a day for maximum duration of treatment 21 days

**Corneal ulcer**

## ► TO THE EYE USING EYE DROP

► Child: Apply every 15 minutes for 6 hours, then apply every 30 minutes for the remainder of day 1, then apply every 1 hour on day 2, then apply every 4 hours on days 3–14, maximum duration of treatment 21 days, to be administered throughout the day and night

## ► TO THE EYE USING EYE OINTMENT

► Child 1-17 years: Apply 1.25 centimetres every 1–2 hours for 2 days, then apply 1.25 centimetres every 4 hours for the next 12 days, to be administered throughout the day and night

**UNLICENSED USE** Eye ointment not licensed for use in children under 1 year.**INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: quinolones**SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Corneal deposits (reversible after completion of treatment)
- **Uncommon** Eye disorders · eye inflammation · eyelid crusting · vision disorders
- **Rare or very rare** Dermatitis · ear pain · increased risk of infection · paranasal sinus hypersecretion
- **Frequency not known** Tendon disorder
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises caution.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops

**Eye drops**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

► **Ciloxan** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

Ciprofloxacin (as Ciprofloxacin hydrochloride) 3 mg per 1 ml Ciloxan 0.3% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £4.70 DT = £4.70

**Levofloxacin**

13-Jul-2017

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Local treatment of eye infections**

## ► TO THE EYE

► Child 1-17 years: Apply every 2 hours for first 2 days, to be applied maximum 8 times a day, then apply 4 times a day for 3 days

**INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: quinolones**SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Eye discomfort
- **Uncommon** Eye disorders · rhinitis
- **Rare or very rare** Laryngeal oedema
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose levofloxacin eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Eye drops**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

► **Levofloxacin (Non-proprietary)**

Levofloxacin (as Levofloxacin hemihydrate) 5 mg per 1 ml Levofloxacin 5mg/ml eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £6.95 DT = £6.95



- ▶ **Oftaquin** (Santen UK Ltd)  
Levofloxacin (as Levofloxacin hemihydrate) 5 mg per  
1 ml Oftaquin 5mg/ml eye drops 0.3ml unit dose | 30 unit dose [PoM]  
£17.95 DT = £17.95  
Oftaquin 5mg/ml eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £6.95 DT = £6.95

## Moxifloxacin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Local treatment of infections

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child: Apply 3 times a day continue treatment for 2–3 days after infection improves; review if no improvement within 5 days

- **CAUTIONS** Not recommended for neonates
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: quinolones
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Conjunctival haemorrhage · eye inflammation · palpitations · sensation abnormal
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Eye disorders · laryngeal pain · nasal discomfort · visual acuity decreased
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Abnormal sensation in eye · corneal deposits · erythema

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

- ▶ **Moxivig** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)  
Moxifloxacin (as Moxifloxacin hydrochloride) 5 mg per  
1 ml Moxivig 0.5% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £9.80 DT = £9.80

## Ofloxacin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Local treatment of infections

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: Apply every 2–4 hours for the first 2 days, then reduced to 4 times a day for maximum 10 days treatment

- **CAUTIONS** Corneal ulcer (risk of corneal perforation) · epithelial defect (risk of corneal perforation)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: quinolones
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Eye discomfort · eye inflammation · face oedema · oropharyngeal swelling · tongue swelling
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if benefit outweighs risk (systemic quinolones have caused arthropathy in animal studies).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

- ▶ **Exocin** (Allergan Ltd)  
Ofloxacin 3 mg per 1 ml Exocin 0.3% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £2.17 DT = £2.17

## ANTIBACTERIALS > OTHER

## Chloramphenicol

- **DRUG ACTION** Chloramphenicol is a potent broad-spectrum antibiotic.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Superficial eye infections

- ▶ TO THE EYE USING EYE DROP
  - ▶ Child: Apply 1 drop every 2 hours then reduce frequency as infection is controlled and continue for 48 hours after healing, frequency dependent on the severity of the infection. For less severe infection 3–4 times daily is generally sufficient
- ▶ TO THE EYE USING EYE OINTMENT
  - ▶ Child: Apply daily, to be applied at night (if eye drops used during the day), alternatively apply 3–4 times a day, if ointment used alone

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: chloramphenicol
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Angioedema · bone marrow disorders · eye stinging · fever · paraesthesia · skin reactions
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless essential—no information on topical use but risk of 'neonatal grey-baby syndrome' with oral use in third trimester.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid unless essential—*theoretical* risk of bone-marrow toxicity.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose chloramphenicol eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Chloramphenicol for eye infections  
Medicines for Children leaflet: [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/chloramphenicol-eye-infections-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/chloramphenicol-eye-infections-0)
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Chloramphenicol 0.5% eye drops (in max. pack size 10 mL) and 1% eye ointment (in max. pack size 4 g) can be sold to the public for treatment of acute bacterial conjunctivitis in adults and children over 2 years; max. duration of treatment 5 days.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Phenylmercuric acetate

- ▶ **Chloramphenicol (Non-proprietary)**  
Chloramphenicol 5 mg per 1 ml Minims chloramphenicol 0.5% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £11.43 DT = £11.43  
Chloramphenicol 0.5% eye drops | 10 ml [PoM] £2.20 DT = £1.14
- ▶ **Chloromycetin (AMCo)**  
Chloramphenicol 5 mg per 1 ml Chloromycetin Redidrops 0.5% | 10 ml [PoM] £0.90 DT = £1.14
- ▶ **Eykappo (Aspire Pharma Ltd)**  
Chloramphenicol 5 mg per 1 ml Eykappo 5mg/ml eye drops | 10 ml [PoM] £10.12 DT = £10.12

#### Eye ointment

- ▶ **Chloramphenicol (Non-proprietary)**  
Chloramphenicol 10 mg per 1 gram Chloramphenicol 1% eye ointment | 4 gram [PoM] £1.89 DT = £1.89

## Fusidic acid

16-Jun-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Fusidic acid and its salts are narrow-spectrum antibiotics used for staphylococcal infections.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Staphylococcal eye infections

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child: Apply twice daily

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: fusidic acid

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Modified-release drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

#### Fusidic acid (Non-proprietary)

Fusidic acid 10 mg per 1 gram Fusidic acid 1% modified-release eye drops | 5 gram [PoM] £29.06 DT = £29.06

## ANTIPROTOZOALS

### Propamidine isetionate

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acanthamoeba keratitis infections (specialist use only) | Local treatment of eye infections**

- ▶ TO THE EYE USING EYE OINTMENT
- ▶ Child: Apply 1–2 times a day
- ▶ TO THE EYE USING EYE DROP
- ▶ Child: Apply up to 4 times a day

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for *acanthamoeba keratitis* infections.

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Eye discomfort · vision blurred

● **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential—no information available.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye ointment

▶ **Golden Eye (dibromopropamidine)** (Cambridge Healthcare Supplies Ltd)

Dibromopropamidine isetionate 1.5 mg per 1 gram Golden Eye 0.15% ointment | 5 gram [P] £3.98 DT = £3.98

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

▶ **Brolene (Propamidine)** (Sanofi)

Propamidine isetionate 1 mg per 1 ml Brolene 0.1% eye drops | 10 ml [P] £2.80

▶ **Golden Eye (propamidine)** (Cambridge Healthcare Supplies Ltd)

Propamidine isetionate 1 mg per 1 ml Golden Eye 0.1% drops | 10 ml [P] £3.62

## 3.2 Viral eye infection

### 3.2a Ophthalmic herpes simplex

#### ANTIVIRALS > NUCLEOSIDE ANALOGUES

### Aciclovir

(Acyclovir)

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Herpes simplex infection (local treatment)**

- ▶ TO THE EYE USING EYE OINTMENT
- ▶ Child: Apply 1 centimetre 5 times a day continue for at least 3 days after complete healing

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aciclovir

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

▶ **Common or very common** Eye inflammation · eye pain

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Aciclovir eye ointment for herpes simplex infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/aciclovir-eye-ointment-for-herpes-simplex-infection](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/aciclovir-eye-ointment-for-herpes-simplex-infection)

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye ointment

▶ **Zovirax** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Aciclovir 30 mg per 1 gram Zovirax 3% ophthalmic ointment | 4.5 gram [PoM] £9.34 DT = £9.34

## 4 Eye procedures

### Mydriatics and cycloplegics

#### Overview

Antimuscarinics dilate the pupil and paralyse the ciliary muscle; they vary in potency and duration of action.

Short-acting, relatively weak mydriatics, such as tropicamide 0.5% below (action lasts for 4–6 hours), facilitate the examination of the fundus of the eye. Cyclopentolate hydrochloride 1% p. 671 (action up to 24 hours) or atropine sulfate p. 670 (action up to 7 days) are preferable for producing cycloplegia for refraction in young children; tropicamide may be preferred in neonates.

Phenylephrine hydrochloride p. 679 is used for mydriasis in diagnostic or therapeutic procedures; mydriasis occurs within 60–90 minutes and lasts up to 5–7 hours.

Mydriatics and cycloplegics are used in the treatment of anterior uveitis, usually as an adjunct to corticosteroids. Atropine sulfate is used in anterior uveitis mainly to prevent posterior synechiae and to relieve ciliary spasm; cyclopentolate hydrochloride or homatropine hydrobromide p. 671 (action up to 3 days) can also be used and may be preferred because they have a shorter duration of action.

#### ANTIMUSCARINICS

F 670

### Tropicamide

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Funduscopy

▶ TO THE EYE

▶ **Neonate:** 0.5% eye drops to be applied 20 minutes before examination.

▶ **Child:** 0.5% eye drops to be applied 20 minutes before examination

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tropicamide

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose tropicamide eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, edetic acid (edta)

▶ **Mydriacyl** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

Tropicamide 10 mg per 1 ml Mydriacyl 1% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £1.60

▶ **Tropicamide** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

Tropicamide 5 mg per 1 ml Minims tropicamide 0.5% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £11.18

Tropicamide 10 mg per 1 ml Minims tropicamide 1% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £11.31

## ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS > IODINE PRODUCTS

### Povidone-iodine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Cutaneous peri-ocular and conjunctival antisepsis before ocular surgery**

► TO THE EYE

- Neonate: Apply, leave for 2 minutes, then irrigate thoroughly with sodium chloride 0.9%.
- Child: Apply, leave for 2 minutes, then irrigate thoroughly with sodium chloride 0.9%

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Concomitant use of ocular antimicrobial drugs · concomitant use of ocular formulations containing mercury-based preservatives · preterm neonates

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare** Eye erythema · punctate keratitis
- **Frequency not known** Cytotoxicity · eye discolouration · hypothyroidism (in neonates)

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose povidone iodine eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops, eye lotion

##### Eye drops

- **Povidone iodine** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)  
**Povidone-iodine 50 mg per 1 ml** Minims povidone iodine 5% eye drops 0.4ml unit dose | 20 unit dose **[PoM]** £16.00

## DIAGNOSTIC AGENTS > DYES

### Fluorescein sodium

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Detection of lesions and foreign bodies**

► TO THE EYE USING EYE DROP

- Child: Use sufficient amount to stain damaged areas

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose fluorescein eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Eye drops

- **Fluorescein sodium** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)  
**Fluorescein sodium 10 mg per 1 ml** Minims fluorescein sodium 1% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose **[P]** £9.25  
**Fluorescein sodium 20 mg per 1 ml** Minims fluorescein sodium 2% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose **[P]** £9.25

## MIOTICS > PARASYMPATHOMIMETICS

### Acetylcholine chloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Cataract surgery | Penetrating keratoplasty | Iridectomy | Anterior segment surgery requiring rapid complete miosis**

► TO THE EYE

- Child: (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CAUTIONS** Asthma · gastro-intestinal spasm · heart failure · hyperthyroidism · peptic ulcer · urinary-tract obstruction
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Bradycardia · corneal decompensation · corneal oedema · dyspnoea · flushing · hyperhidrosis · hypotension
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Irrigation

- **Miochol-E** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)  
**Acetylcholine chloride 20 mg** Miochol-E 20mg powder and solvent for solution for intraocular irrigation vials | 1 vial **[PoM]** £7.28
- **Miphtel** (Farmigee S.p.A.)  
**Acetylcholine chloride 20 mg** Miphtel 20mg powder and solvent for solution for intraocular irrigation ampoules | 6 ampoule **[PoM]** £43.68 (Hospital only)

## SYMPATHOMIMETICS > VASOCONSTRICTOR

### Phenylephrine hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Mydriasis

► TO THE EYE

- Child: Apply 1 drop, to be administered before procedure, a drop of proxymetacaine topical anaesthetic may be applied to the eye a few minutes before using phenylephrine to prevent stinging

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** 10% strength eye drops in children · 10% strength eye drops in neonates · aneurysms · cardiovascular disease · hypertension · thyrotoxicosis
- **CAUTIONS** Asthma · corneal epithelial damage · darkly pigmented iris is more resistant to pupillary dilatation and caution should be exercised to avoid overdosage · diabetes (avoid eye drops in long standing diabetes) · mydriasis can precipitate acute angle-closure glaucoma in the very few children who are predisposed to the condition because of a shallow anterior chamber · neonates are at an increased risk of systemic toxicity · ocular hyperaemia · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Arrhythmias · conjunctivitis allergic · eye discomfort · hypertension · myocardial infarction (usually after use of 10% strength in patients with pre-existing cardiovascular disease) · palpitations · periorbital pallor · vision disorders
- **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose phenylephrine eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Patients should be warned not to undertake skilled tasks (e.g. driving) until vision clears after mydriasis.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: eye drops

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Disodium edetate, sodium metabisulfite

► **Phenylephrine hydrochloride** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

**Phenylephrine hydrochloride 25 mg per 1 ml** Minims phenylephrine hydrochloride 2.5% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [P] £11.87

**Phenylephrine hydrochloride 100 mg per 1 ml** Minims phenylephrine hydrochloride 10% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [P] £11.87

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

► **Lidocaine and Fluorescein** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

**Fluorescein sodium 2.5 mg per 1 ml, Lidocaine hydrochloride 40 mg per 1 ml** Minims lidocaine and fluorescein eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £11.69

## Oxybuprocaine hydrochloride

(Benoxinate hydrochloride)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Local anaesthetic

► TO THE EYE

► Child: Apply as required

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in preterm neonates

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anaesthetics, local

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose oxybuprocaine eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

► **Oxybuprocaine hydrochloride** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

**Oxybuprocaine hydrochloride 4 mg per 1 ml** Minims oxybuprocaine hydrochloride 0.4% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £10.56

## Proxymetacaine hydrochloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Local anaesthetic

► TO THE EYE

► Child: Apply as required

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in preterm neonates

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anaesthetics, local

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose proxymetacaine eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

► **Proxymetacaine** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

**Proxymetacaine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml** Minims proxymetacaine 0.5% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £12.12

## Tetracaine

(Amethocaine)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Local anaesthetic

► TO THE EYE

► Child: Apply as required

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in neonates.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in preterm neonates

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anaesthetics, local

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose tetracaine eye drops commonly contain

## 4.1 Post-operative pain and inflammation

### Eye, surgical and peri-operative drug use

#### Ocular peri-operative drugs

Drugs used to prepare the eye for surgery and drugs that are injected into the anterior chamber at the time of surgery are included here.

Sodium hyaluronate p. 674 is used during surgical procedures on the eye.

Apraclonidine p. 686, an  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptor agonist, reduces intra-ocular pressure possibly by reducing the production of aqueous humour. It is used for short-term treatment only.

**Balanced Salt Solution** is used routinely in intra-ocular surgery.

Povidone-iodine p. 679 is used for peri-ocular and conjunctival antiseptics before ocular surgery to support postoperative infection control.

#### Ocular local anaesthetics

Oxybuprocaine hydrochloride below and tetracaine below are widely used topical local anaesthetics. Proxymetacaine hydrochloride below causes less initial stinging and is useful for children. Oxybuprocaine hydrochloride or a combined preparation of lidocaine hydrochloride p. 826 and fluorescein sodium p. 679 is used for tonometry. Tetracaine produces a more profound anaesthesia and is suitable for use before minor surgical procedures, such as the removal of corneal sutures. It has a temporary disruptive effect on the corneal epithelium. Lidocaine hydrochloride, with or without adrenaline/epinephrine p. 136, is injected into the eyelids for minor surgery. Local anaesthetics should never be used for the management of ocular symptoms.

Local anaesthetic eye drops should be avoided in preterm neonates because of the immaturity of the metabolising enzyme system.

## ANAESTHETICS, LOCAL

### Fluorescein with lidocaine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Local anaesthesia

► TO THE EYE

► Child: Apply as required

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid in pre-term neonate (immature metabolising enzyme system)

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose lidocaine and fluorescein eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Eye drops

###### ► Tetracaine (Non-proprietary)

Tetracaine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml Minimis tetracaine hydrochloride 0.5% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £10.57 DT = £10.57

Tetracaine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml Minimis tetracaine hydrochloride 1% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £10.57 DT = £10.57

## ANALGESICS > NON-STEROIDAL ANTI-INFLAMMATORY DRUGS

### Diclofenac sodium

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Inhibition of intra-operative miosis during cataract surgery (but does not possess intrinsic mydriatic properties) | Postoperative inflammation in cataract surgery, strabismus surgery, argon laser trabeculoplasty**

► TO THE EYE

► Child: (consult product literature)

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs

● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose diclofenac sodium eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: dispersible tablet, oral suspension, oral solution

##### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, propylene glycol

###### ► Voltarol Ophtha (Thea Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Diclofenac sodium 1 mg per 1 ml Voltarol Ophtha 0.1% eye drops 0.3ml unit dose | 5 unit dose [PoM] £4.00 DT = £4.00 | 40 unit dose [PoM] £32.00 DT = £32.00

###### ► Voltarol Ophtha Multidose (Thea Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Diclofenac sodium 1 mg per 1 ml Voltarol Ophtha Multidose 0.1% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £6.68 DT = £6.68

### Flurbiprofen

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Inhibition of intra-operative miosis (but does not possess intrinsic mydriatic properties) | Control of anterior segment inflammation following postoperative and post-laser trabeculoplasty when corticosteroids contra-indicated**

► TO THE EYE

► Child: (consult product literature)

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs

● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of

asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Eye drops

###### ► Ocufen (Allergan Ltd)

Flurbiprofen sodium 300 microgram per 1 ml Ocufen 0.03% eye drops 0.4ml unit dose | 40 unit dose [PoM] £37.15

### Ketorolac trometamol

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prophylaxis and reduction of inflammation and associated symptoms following ocular surgery**

► TO THE EYE

► Child: (consult product literature)

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs

● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

###### ► Ketorolac trometamol (Non-proprietary)

Ketorolac trometamol 5 mg per 1 ml Ketorolac 0.5% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £2.85–£3.00 DT = £3.00

###### ► Acular (Allergan Ltd)

Ketorolac trometamol 5 mg per 1 ml Acular 0.5% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £3.00 DT = £3.00

## 5 Glaucoma and ocular hypertension

### Glaucoma

#### Overview

Glaucoma describes a group of disorders characterised by a loss of visual field associated with cupping of the optic disc and optic nerve damage and is generally associated with raised intra-ocular pressure.

Glaucoma is rare in children and should always be managed by a specialist. *Primary congenital glaucoma* is the most common form of glaucoma in children, followed by *secondary glaucomas*, such as following hereditary anterior segment malformations; *juvenile open-angle glaucoma* is less common and usually occurs in older children.

Treatment of glaucoma is determined by the pathophysiology and usually involves controlling raised intra-ocular pressure with surgery. Drug therapy is generally supportive, and can be used temporarily, pre- or post-operatively, or both, to reduce intra-ocular pressure. In secondary glaucomas, drug therapy is often used first-line, and long-term treatment may be required. Drugs that reduce intra-ocular pressure by different mechanisms are available for managing glaucoma. A topical beta-blocker or a prostaglandin analogue can be used. It may be necessary to combine these drugs or add others, such as carbonic anhydrase inhibitors, or miotics to control intra-ocular pressure.



Children with an acute form of glaucoma (usually presenting with pain in older children, a cloudy cornea, and may be associated with a previous history of controlled glaucoma or recent intra-ocular surgery) need immediate referral for specialist ophthalmology assessment and treatment.

### Beta-blockers for glaucoma

Topical application of a beta-blocker to the eye reduces intra-ocular pressure effectively in primary and secondary glaucomas, probably by reducing the rate of production of aqueous humour.

### Prostaglandin analogues for glaucoma

The prostaglandin analogues latanoprost p. 686, and travoprost, and the synthetic prostamide, bimatoprost, increase uveoscleral outflow and subsequently reduce intra-ocular pressure. They are used to reduce intra-ocular pressure. Only latanoprost (*Xalatan*® and certain non-proprietary preparations of latanoprost) is licensed for use in children. Children receiving prostaglandin analogues should be managed by a specialist.

### Sympathomimetics for glaucoma

Apraclonidine p. 686 is an  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptor agonist that lowers intra-ocular pressure by reducing aqueous humour formation. Eye drops containing apraclonidine 0.5% are used for a short period to delay laser treatment or surgery for glaucoma in patients not adequately controlled by another drug; eye drops containing 1% are used for control of intra-ocular pressure after anterior segment laser surgery.

Brimonidine tartrate, an  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptor agonist, is thought to lower intra-ocular pressure by reducing aqueous humour formation and increasing uveoscleral outflow.

### Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors and systemic drugs for glaucoma

The **carbonic anhydrase inhibitors**, acetazolamide p. 683, brinzolamide p. 684, and dorzolamide p. 684, reduce intra-ocular pressure by reducing aqueous humour production. Systemic use of acetazolamide also produces weak diuresis.

Acetazolamide is given by mouth or, rarely in children, by intravenous injection (intramuscular injections are painful because of the alkaline pH of the solution). It is used as an adjunct to other treatment for reducing intra-ocular pressure. Acetazolamide is not generally recommended for long-term use.

Dorzolamide and brinzolamide are topical carbonic anhydrase inhibitors. They are unlicensed in children but are used in those resistant to beta-blockers or those in whom beta-blockers are contra-indicated. They are used alone or as an adjunct to a topical beta-blocker. Brinzolamide can also be used as an adjunct to a prostaglandin analogue. Systemic absorption can rarely cause sulfonamide-like side-effects and may require discontinuation if severe.

Metabolic acidosis can occur in children using topical carbonic anhydrase inhibitors; symptoms may include poor feeding and lack of weight gain.

### Miotics for glaucoma

Miotics act by opening up the inefficient drainage channels in the trabecular meshwork. Pilocarpine p. 685 is a miotic used pre- and post-operatively in goniotomy and trabeculotomy; it is used occasionally for aphakic glaucoma.

## BETA-ADRENOCEPTOR BLOCKERS

### Betaxolol

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Primary and secondary glaucomas

- TO THE EYE
- Child: Apply twice daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Also consider contra-indications listed for systemically administered beta blockers · bradycardia · heart block
- **CAUTIONS** Patients with corneal disease
- CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Systemic absorption can follow topical application to the eyes; consider cautions listed for systemically administered beta blockers.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta blockers, selective
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Eye discomfort · eye disorders · vision disorders
  - **Uncommon** Dry eye · eye inflammation · rhinitis
  - **Rare or very rare** Cataract · rhinorrhoea · skin reactions
  - **Frequency not known** Angioedema · hypersensitivity
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Systemic absorption can follow topical application to the eyes; consider side effects listed for systemically administered beta blockers.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose betaxolol eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

##### ► Betaxolol (non-proprietary)

**Betaxolol (as Betaxolol hydrochloride) 5 mg per 1 ml** Betaxolol 0.5% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] [X] DT = £1.90

##### ► Betoptic (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Betaxolol (as Betaxolol hydrochloride) 2.5 mg per 1 ml** Betoptic 0.25% suspension eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £2.66 DT = £2.66

Betoptic 0.25% eye drops suspension 0.25ml unit dose | 50 unit dose [PoM] £13.77 DT = £13.77

**Betaxolol (as Betaxolol hydrochloride) 5 mg per 1 ml** Betoptic 0.5% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £1.90 DT = £1.90

## Levobunolol hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Primary and secondary glaucomas

- TO THE EYE
- Child: Apply 1–2 times a day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Also consider contra-indications listed for systemically administered beta blockers · bradycardia · heart block
- **CAUTIONS** Patients with corneal disease
- CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Systemic absorption can follow topical application to the eyes; consider cautions listed for systemically administered beta blockers.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta blockers, non-selective
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Eye discomfort · eye inflammation
  - **Frequency not known** Dry eye · eye disorders · vision blurred
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Systemic absorption can follow topical application to the eyes; consider side effects listed for systemically administered beta blockers.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose levobunolol eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Eye drops**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, sodium metabisulfite

▶ **Betagan** (Allergan Ltd)

Levobunolol hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml Betagan 0.5% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £1.85 DT = £1.85  
Betagan Unit Dose 0.5% eye drops 0.4ml unit dose | 30 unit dose [PoM] £9.98

**F 103****Timolol maleate****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Primary congenital and primary juvenile glaucoma, for a transitional period, before surgery or following failed surgery**

▶ **TO THE EYE**

▶ Child: (consult product literature)

**TIMOPTOL-LA®**

**Reduction of intra-ocular pressure in primary and secondary glaucoma**

▶ **TO THE EYE**

▶ Child: Apply once daily

**TIOPEX®**

**Reduction of intra-ocular pressure primary and secondary glaucomas**

▶ **TO THE EYE**

▶ Child: Apply once daily, to be applied in the morning

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Also consider contra-indications listed for systemically administered beta blockers · bradycardia · heart block

● **CAUTIONS** Consider also cautions listed for systemically administered beta blockers · patients with corneal disease

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta blockers, non-selective

**● SIDE-EFFECTS**

▶ **Common or very common** Eye discomfort · eye disorders · eye inflammation · vision disorders

▶ **Rare or very rare** Angioedema

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

Systemic absorption can follow topical application to the eyes; consider side effects listed for systemically administered beta blockers.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoidance.

**● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS****TIOPEX®****Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (February 2014) that timolol gel eye drops (*TiopeX*®) are accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the reduction of elevated intraocular pressure in patients with ocular hypertension or chronic open angle glaucoma who have proven sensitivity to preservatives.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Eye gel**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzododecinium bromide

▶ **Timoptol-LA** (Santen UK Ltd)

Timolol (as Timolol maleate) 2.5 mg per 1 ml Timoptol-LA 0.25% ophthalmic gel-forming solution | 2.5 ml [PoM] £3.12 DT = £3.12  
Timolol (as Timolol maleate) 5 mg per 1 ml Timoptol-LA 0.5% ophthalmic gel-forming solution | 2.5 ml [PoM] £3.12 DT = £3.12

**Eye drops**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

▶ **Timolol maleate (Non-proprietary)**

Timolol (as Timolol maleate) 2.5 mg per 1 ml Timolol 0.25% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £0.78 DT = £0.78

Timolol (as Timolol maleate) 5 mg per 1 ml Timolol 0.5% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £0.80 DT = £0.80

▶ **Eysano** (Aspire Pharma Ltd)

Timolol (as Timolol maleate) 2.5 mg per 1 ml Eysano 2.5mg/ml eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £8.45 DT = £8.45

Timolol (as Timolol maleate) 5 mg per 1 ml Eysano 5mg/ml eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £9.65 DT = £9.65

▶ **Timoptol** (Santen UK Ltd)

Timolol (as Timolol maleate) 2.5 mg per 1 ml Timoptol 0.25% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £3.12 DT = £0.78

Timolol (as Timolol maleate) 5 mg per 1 ml Timoptol 0.5% eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £3.12 DT = £0.80

Timoptol Unit Dose 0.5% ophthalmic solution 0.2ml unit dose | 30 unit dose [PoM] £9.65 DT = £9.65

▶ **TiopeX** (Thea Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Timolol (as Timolol maleate) 1 mg per 1 gram TiopeX 1mg/g eye gel 0.4g unit dose | 30 unit dose [PoM] £7.49 DT = £7.49

Combinations available: **Dorzolamide with timolol**, p. 685

**CARBONIC ANHYDRASE INHIBITORS****Acetazolamide****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Glaucoma**

▶ **BY MOUTH USING MODIFIED-RELEASE MEDICINES**

▶ Child 12–17 years: 250–500 mg daily

**Epilepsy**

▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

▶ Neonate: Initially 2.5 mg/kg 2–3 times a day, followed by maintenance 5–7 mg/kg 2–3 times a day.

▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 2.5 mg/kg 2–3 times a day, followed by maintenance 5–7 mg/kg 2–3 times a day; maximum 750 mg per day  
▶ Child 12–17 years: 250 mg 2–4 times a day

**Reduction of intra-ocular pressure in primary and secondary glaucoma (specialist use only)**

▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 5 mg/kg 2–4 times a day, adjusted according to response; maximum 750 mg per day  
▶ Child 12–17 years: 250 mg 2–4 times a day

**Raised intracranial pressure**

▶ **BY MOUTH USING IMMEDIATE-RELEASE MEDICINES, OR BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 8 mg/kg 3 times a day, then increased if necessary up to 100 mg/kg daily

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for the treatment of glaucoma.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Adrenocortical insufficiency · hyperchloraemic acidosis · hypokalaemia · hyponatraemia · long-term administration in chronic angle-closure glaucoma

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid extravasation at injection site (risk of necrosis) · diabetes mellitus · impaired alveolar ventilation (risk of acidosis) · not generally recommended for long-term use · pulmonary obstruction (risk of acidosis) · renal calculi

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: acetazolamide

**● SIDE-EFFECTS****GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS**

▶ **Common or very common** Haemorrhage · metabolic acidosis · nephrolithiasis · sensation abnormal

- **Uncommon** Bone marrow disorders · depression · dizziness · electrolyte imbalance · hearing impairment · hepatic disorders · leucopenia · nausea · renal colic · renal impairment · renal lesions · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · urinary tract discomfort · urine abnormalities · vomiting
- **Rare or very rare** Anaphylactic reaction · appetite changes · confusion · diarrhoea · fatigue · fever · flushing · headache · irritability · libido decreased · paralysis · photosensitivity reaction · seizure
- **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · drowsiness · myopia · polyuria · taste altered · thirst

**SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Uncommon**
- With oral use Osteomalacia
- **Rare or very rare**
- With oral use Ataxia · hyperglycaemia · hypoglycaemia · renal tubular necrosis
- **Frequency not known**
- With oral use Agitation

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Acetazolamide is a sulfonamide derivative; blood disorders, rashes, and other sulfonamide-related side-effects occur occasionally—patients should be told to report any unusual skin rash.

If electrolyte disturbances and metabolic acidosis occur, these can be corrected by administering bicarbonate.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if history of sulfonamide hypersensitivity.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid, especially in first trimester (toxicity in *animal* studies).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid—risk of metabolic acidosis.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood count and plasma electrolyte concentrations with prolonged use.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3

- **Acetazolamide (Non-proprietary)**

**Acetazolamide 250 mg** Acetazolamide 250mg tablets | 112 tablet [PoM] £75.36 DT = £16.86

**Powder for solution for injection**

- **Diamox (AMCo)**

**Acetazolamide 500 mg** Diamox Sodium Parenteral 500mg powder for solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £17.71

**Modified-release capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 3, 25

- **Diamox SR (AMCo)**

**Acetazolamide 250 mg** Diamox SR 250mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £16.66 DT = £16.66

- **Eytazox (Teva UK Ltd)**

**Acetazolamide 250 mg** Eytazox 250mg modified-release capsules | 30 capsule [PoM] £16.60 DT = £16.66

**Brinzolamide****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Reduction of intra-ocular pressure in primary and secondary glaucoma either as adjunct to beta-blockers or prostaglandin analogues or used alone if unresponsive to beta-blockers or if beta-blockers contra-indicated**

- **TO THE EYE**
- Child: Apply twice daily, then increased if necessary up to 3 times a day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hyperchloraemic acidosis
- **CAUTIONS** Renal tubular immaturity or abnormality—risk of metabolic acidosis · systemic absorption follows topical application
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: brinzolamide
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- **Common or very common** Eye discomfort · eye disorders · taste altered · vision disorders
- **Uncommon** Arrhythmias · asthenia · cardio-respiratory distress · chest discomfort · cough · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · dry eye · dry mouth · dyspnoea · epistaxis · eye deposit · eye inflammation · feeling abnormal · foreign body in eye · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders · headache · increased risk of infection · memory loss · motor dysfunction · muscle complaints · nasal complaints · nausea · nervousness · oral disorders · oropharyngeal pain · pain · palpitations · renal pain · scleral discolouration · sensation abnormal · sexual dysfunction · skin reactions · sleep disorders · throat complaints · vomiting
- **Rare or very rare** Alopecia · angina pectoris · drowsiness · irritability · optic nerve disorder · respiratory disorders · tinnitus
- **Frequency not known** Appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthma · hypertension · malaise · peripheral oedema · tremor · urinary frequency increased · vertigo

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Systemic absorption can rarely cause sulfonamide-like side-effects and may require discontinuation if severe.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if history of sulfonamide hypersensitivity.
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid—toxicity in *animal* studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Use only if benefit outweighs risk.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Eye drops**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- **Brinzolamide (Non-proprietary)**

**Brinzolamide 10 mg per 1 ml** Brinzolamide 10mg/ml eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £6.92 DT = £1.89

- **Azopt (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)**

**Brinzolamide 10 mg per 1 ml** Azopt 10mg/ml eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £6.92 DT = £1.89

**Dorzolamide****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Raised intra-ocular pressure in primary and secondary glaucoma used alone in patients unresponsive to beta-blockers or if beta-blockers contra-indicated**

- **TO THE EYE**
- Child: Apply 3 times a day

**Raised intra-ocular pressure in primary and secondary glaucoma as adjunct to a beta-blocker**

- **TO THE EYE**
- Child: Apply twice daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hyperchloraemic acidosis
- **CAUTIONS** Chronic corneal defects · history of intra-ocular surgery · history of renal calculi · immature renal tubules (neonates and infants)—risk of metabolic acidosis · low endothelial cell count · systemic absorption follows topical application

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: dorzolamide

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Asthenia · eye discomfort · eye disorders · eye inflammation · headache · nausea · paraesthesia · taste bitter · vision disorders
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · bronchospasm · dizziness · dry mouth · dyspnoea · epistaxis · local reaction · pain · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · skin reactions · throat irritation · urolithiasis

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Systemic absorption can cause sulfonamide-like side-effects and may require discontinuation if severe.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if history of sulfonamide hypersensitivity.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—toxicity in animal studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose dorzolamide eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

- ▶ **Dorzolamide (Non-proprietary)**  
Dorzolamide (as Dorzolamide hydrochloride) 20 mg per 1 mL Dorzolamide 20mg/mL eye drops | 5 mL [PoM] £5.69 DT = £1.55
- ▶ **Eydelto** (Aspire Pharma Ltd)  
Dorzolamide (as Dorzolamide hydrochloride) 20 mg per 1 mL Eydelto 20mg/mL eye drops | 5 mL [PoM] £12.09 DT = £12.09
- ▶ **Trusopt** (Santen UK Ltd)  
Dorzolamide (as Dorzolamide hydrochloride) 20 mg per 1 mL Trusopt 20mg/mL eye drops 0.2 mL unit dose preservative free | 60 unit dose [PoM] £24.18 DT = £24.18  
Trusopt 20mg/mL eye drops | 5 mL [PoM] £6.33 DT = £1.55

## Dorzolamide with timolol

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, dorzolamide p. 684, timolol maleate p. 683.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Raised intra-ocular pressure in open-angle glaucoma when beta-blockers alone not adequate | Raised intra-ocular pressure in pseudo-exfoliative glaucoma when beta-blockers alone not adequate**

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child: Apply twice daily

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: beta blockers, non-selective · dorzolamide
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose dorzolamide with timolol eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

- ▶ **Dorzolamide with timolol (Non-proprietary)**  
Timolol (as Timolol maleate) 5 mg per 1 mL, Dorzolamide (as Dorzolamide hydrochloride) 20 mg per 1 mL Dorzolamide 20mg/mL

/ Timolol 5mg/mL eye drops 0.2 mL unit dose preservative free | 60 unit dose [PoM] £25.99–£28.59 DT = £28.59

Dorzolamide 20mg/mL / Timolol 5mg/mL eye drops | 5 mL [PoM] £27.16 DT = £1.50

- ▶ **Cosopt** (Santen UK Ltd)

Timolol (as Timolol maleate) 5 mg per 1 mL, Dorzolamide (as Dorzolamide hydrochloride) 20 mg per 1 mL Cosopt 20mg/mL / 5mg/mL eye drops 0.2 mL unit dose preservative free | 60 unit dose [PoM] £28.59 DT = £28.59

- ▶ **Eylamdo** (Aspire Pharma Ltd)

Timolol (as Timolol maleate) 5 mg per 1 mL, Dorzolamide (as Dorzolamide hydrochloride) 20 mg per 1 mL Eylamdo 20mg/mL / 5mg/mL eye drops | 5 mL [PoM] £14.29 DT = £14.29

## MIOTICS > PARASYMPATHOMIMETICS

### Pilocarpine

- **DRUG ACTION** Pilocarpine acts by opening the inefficient drainage channels in the trabecular meshwork.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Raised intra-ocular pressure**

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child 1 month–1 year: Apply 1 drop 3 times a day, doses are for 0.5% or 1% solution
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: Apply 1 drop 4 times a day

**Pre- and postoperatively in goniotomy and trabeculotomy**

- ▶ TO THE EYE
- ▶ Child: Apply once daily, 1% or 2% solution to be applied

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute inflammatory disease of the anterior segment · acute iritis · anterior uveitis · conditions where pupillary constriction is undesirable · some forms of secondary glaucoma (where pupillary constriction is undesirable)
- **CAUTIONS** A darkly pigmented iris may require a higher concentration of the miotic or more frequent administration and care should be taken to avoid overdosage · asthma · cardiac disease · care in conjunctival damage · care in corneal damage · epilepsy · gastro-intestinal spasm · hypertension · hyperthyroidism · hypotension · peptic ulceration · retinal detachment has occurred in susceptible individuals and those with retinal disease · urinary-tract obstruction
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: pilocarpine
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Diarrhoea · headache · hyperhidrosis · hypersalivation · nausea · skin reactions · vision disorders · vomiting
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Bradycardia · bronchospasm · conjunctival vascular congestion · eye disorder (long term use) · hypotension · pain · paraesthesia · pulmonary oedema · sensitisation · vitreous haemorrhage
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless the potential benefit outweighs risk—limited information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid unless the potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Fundus examination is advised before starting treatment with a miotic (retinal detachment has occurred).
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Intra-ocular pressure and visual fields should be monitored in those with chronic simple glaucoma and those receiving long-term treatment with a miotic.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose pilocarpine eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** **Driving and skilled tasks** Blurred vision may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving) particularly at night or in reduced lighting.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution, eye drops

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

##### ► **Pilocarpine (Non-proprietary)**

**Pilocarpine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Pilocarpine hydrochloride 1% eye drops | 10 ml [PoM] £20.78 DT = £19.95

**Pilocarpine hydrochloride 20 mg per 1 ml** Pilocarpine hydrochloride 2% eye drops | 10 ml [PoM] £21.52 DT = £19.88

**Pilocarpine hydrochloride 40 mg per 1 ml** Pilocarpine hydrochloride 4% eye drops | 10 ml [PoM] £27.20 DT = £23.14

##### ► **Pilocarpine nitrate** (Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd)

**Pilocarpine nitrate 20 mg per 1 ml** Minims pilocarpine nitrate 2% eye drops 0.5ml unit dose | 20 unit dose [PoM] £12.47

## PROSTAGLANDIN ANALOGUES AND PROSTAMIDES

### Latanoprost

#### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Reduction of intra-ocular pressure in raised intra-ocular pressure and glaucoma**

##### ► **TO THE EYE**

- **Child:** Apply once daily, to be administered preferably in the evening

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: LATANOPROST (XALATAN®): INCREASED REPORTING OF EYE IRRITATION SINCE REFORMULATION (JULY 2015)

Following reformulation of Xalatan®, to allow for long-term storage at room temperature, there has been an increase in the number of reports of eye irritation from across the EU. Patients should be advised to tell their health professional promptly (within a week) if they experience eye irritation (e.g. excessive watering) severe enough to make them consider stopping treatment. Review treatment and prescribe a different formulation if necessary.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active herpes simplex keratitis · history of recurrent herpetic keratitis associated with prostaglandin analogues
- **CAUTIONS** Aphakia · asthma · children less than 1 year—limited information available · history of herpetic keratitis · history of significant ocular viral infections · peri-operative period of cataract surgery · preterm neonates less than 36 weeks gestational age—no information available · pseudophakia with torn posterior lens capsule or anterior chamber lenses · risk factors for cystoid macular oedema · risk factors for iritis · risk factors for uveitis
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Eye discolouration · eye discomfort · eye disorders · eye inflammation · vision disorders
  - **Uncommon** Dry eye · rash
  - **Rare or very rare** Asthma · chest pain · dyspnoea · unstable angina
  - **Frequency not known** Arthralgia · dizziness · headache · myalgia · ophthalmic herpes simplex · palpitations
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** May be present in milk—manufacturer advises avoid.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor for changes to eye coloration.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Although multi-dose latanoprost eye drops commonly contain preservatives, preservative-free unit dose vials may be available.

#### ● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Changes in eye colour** Before initiating treatment, patients should be warned of a possible change in eye colour as an increase in the brown pigment in the iris can occur, which may be permanent; particular care is required in those with mixed coloured irides and those receiving treatment to one eye only. Changes in eyelashes and vellus hair can also occur, and patients should also be advised to avoid repeated contact of the eye drop solution with skin as this can lead to hair growth or skin pigmentation.

#### ● **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

##### MONOPOST®

##### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised (June 2013) that Monopost® is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the reduction of elevated intra-ocular pressure in patients with open-angle glaucoma and ocular hypertension who have proven sensitivity to benzalkonium chloride.

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

##### ► **Latanoprost (Non-proprietary)**

**Latanoprost 50 microgram per 1 ml** Latanoprost 50micrograms/ml eye drops | 2.5 ml [PoM] £12.48 DT = £1.53

##### ► **Medizol** (Medicom Healthcare Ltd)

**Latanoprost 50 microgram per 1 ml** Medizol 0.005% eye drops | 2.5 ml [PoM] £1.40 DT = £1.53

##### ► **Monopost** (Thea Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Latanoprost 50 microgram per 1 ml** Monopost 50micrograms/ml eye drops 0.2ml unit dose | 30 unit dose [PoM] £8.49 DT = £8.49 | 90 unit dose [PoM] £25.47 DT = £25.47

##### ► **Xalatan** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Latanoprost 50 microgram per 1 ml** Xalatan 50micrograms/ml eye drops | 2.5 ml [PoM] £12.48 DT = £1.53

## SYMPATHOMIMETICS > ALPHA<sub>2</sub>-ADRENOCEPTOR AGONISTS

### Apraclonidine

- **DRUG ACTION** Apraclonidine is an alpha<sub>2</sub>-adrenoceptor agonist that lowers intra-ocular pressure by reducing aqueous humour formation. It is a derivative of clonidine.

#### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Control or prevention of postoperative elevation of intra-ocular pressure after anterior segment laser surgery**

##### ► **TO THE EYE**

- **Child:** Apply 1 drop, 1 hour before laser procedure, then 1 drop, immediately after completion of procedure, 1% eye drops to be administered

**Short-term adjunctive treatment of chronic glaucoma in patients not adequately controlled by another drug**

##### ► **TO THE EYE**

- **Child 12-17 years:** Apply 1 drop 3 times a day usually for maximum 1 month, 0.5% eye drops to be administered, may not provide additional benefit if patient already using two drugs that suppress the production of aqueous humour

- **UNLICENSED USE** 0.5% drops are not licensed for use in children under 12 years. 1% drops are not licensed for use in children.



- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of severe or unstable and uncontrolled cardiovascular disease
  - **CAUTIONS** Cerebrovascular disease · depression · heart failure · history of angina · hypertension · loss of effect may occur over time · Raynaud's syndrome · recent myocardial infarction · reduction in vision in end-stage glaucoma (suspend treatment) · severe coronary insufficiency · thromboangiitis obliterans · vasovagal attack
  - **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: apraclonidine
  - **SIDE-EFFECTS**
    - **Common or very common** Eye disorders
    - **Uncommon** Bradycardia · conjunctival haemorrhage · diarrhoea · dry eye · eye discomfort · eye inflammation · gastrointestinal discomfort · irritability · libido decreased · nasal dryness · palpitations · postural hypotension · sensation abnormal · sleep disorders · syncope · vision disorders · vomiting
    - **Rare or very rare** Chest pain · dry mouth · fatigue · headache · hyperhidrosis · pain in extremity · pruritus · taste altered · temperature sensation altered
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption may follow topical application, see clonidine hydrochloride p. 102.
- Ocular intolerance** Manufacturer advises withdrawal if eye pruritus, ocular hyperaemia, increased lacrimation, or oedema of the eyelids and conjunctiva occur.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
  - **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
  - **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution.
  - **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in chronic renal failure.
  - **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
    - Monitor intra-ocular pressure and visual fields.
    - Monitor for excessive reduction in intra-ocular pressure following peri-operative use.
  - **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Eye drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

- **Iopidine** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Apraclonidine (as Apraclonidine hydrochloride) 5 mg per 1 ml** Iopidine 5mg/ml eye drops | 5 ml [PoM] £10.88 DT = £10.88  
**Apraclonidine (as Apraclonidine hydrochloride) 10 mg per 1 ml** Iopidine 1% eye drops 0.25ml unit dose | 24 unit dose [PoM] £77.85 DT = £77.85

## 6 Retinal disorders

### 6.1 Optic neuropathy

#### DRUGS FOR METABOLIC DISORDERS > ANTIOXIDANTS

#### Idebenone

31-May-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Idebenone is a nootropic and antioxidant that is thought to act by restoring cellular ATP generation, thereby reactivating retinal ganglion cells.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Leber's Hereditary Optic Neuropathy (initiated by a specialist)

- **BY MOUTH**
- Child 12-17 years: 300 mg 3 times a day

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Cough · diarrhoea · increased risk of infection · pain
- **Frequency not known** Agranulocytosis · anaemia · anxiety · appetite decreased · azotaemia · delirium · dizziness · dyspepsia · hallucination · headache · hepatitis · leucopenia · malaise · movement disorders · nausea · neutropenia · porphyria · seizure · skin reactions · stupor · thrombocytopenia · urine discolouration · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The metabolites of idebenone may cause red-brown discolouration of the urine. This effect is harmless, but the manufacturer advises caution as this may mask colour changes due to other causes (e.g. renal or blood disorders).

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in animal studies.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution—no information available.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (May 2017) that idebenone (*Raxone*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of visual impairment in patients with Leber's Hereditary Optic Neuropathy (LHON) who are not yet blind i.e. they do not meet the UK criteria to be registered as severely sight impaired. This advice is contingent upon the continuing availability of the Patient Access Scheme in NHS Scotland or a list price that is equivalent or lower.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 14, 21

- **Raxone** (Santhera (UK) Ltd) ▼

**Idebenone 150 mg** Raxone 150mg tablets | 180 tablet [PoM] £6,364.00

# Chapter 12

## Ear, nose and oropharynx

### CONTENTS

Ear	page
1 Otitis externa	689
2 Removal of earwax	693
Nose	694
1 Nasal congestion	695
2 Nasal infection	697
3 Nasal inflammation, nasal polyps and rhinitis	698
Oropharynx	701
1 Dry mouth	701

2 Oral hygiene	page
2.1 Dental caries	705
3 Oral ulceration and inflammation	706
4 Oropharyngeal bacterial infections	709
5 Oropharyngeal fungal infections	709
6 Oropharyngeal viral infections	711

## Ear

### Ear

#### Otitis externa

Otitis externa is an inflammatory reaction of the lining of the ear canal usually associated with an underlying seborrhoeic dermatitis or eczema; it is important to exclude an underlying chronic otitis media before treatment is commenced. Many cases recover after thorough cleansing of the external ear canal by suction or dry mopping.

A frequent problem in resistant cases is the difficulty in applying lotions and ointments satisfactorily to the relatively inaccessible affected skin. The most effective method is to introduce a ribbon gauze dressing or sponge wick soaked with **corticosteroid** ear drops or with an astringent such as aluminium acetate solution p. 693. When this is not practical, the ear should be gently cleansed with a probe covered in cotton wool and the patient encouraged to lie with the affected ear uppermost for ten minutes after the canal has been filled with a liberal quantity of the appropriate solution.

Secondary infection in otitis externa may be of bacterial, fungal, or viral origin. If infection is present, a topical anti-infective which is not used systemically (such as neomycin sulfate p. 690 or **clioquinol**) may be used, but for only about a week because excessive use may result in fungal infections that are difficult to treat. Sensitivity to the anti-infective or solvent may occur and resistance to antibacterials is a possibility with prolonged use. Aluminium acetate ear drops are also effective against bacterial infection and inflammation of the ear. Chloramphenicol p. 690 may be used, but the ear drops contain propylene glycol and cause hypersensitivity reactions in about 10% of patients. Solutions containing an anti-infective and a corticosteroid are used for treating children when infection is present with inflammation and eczema. Clotrimazole 1% solution p. 691 is used topically to treat fungal infection in otitis externa.

In view of reports of ototoxicity, manufacturers contraindicate treatment with topical **aminoglycosides** or **polymyxins** in children with a perforated tympanic membrane (eardrum) or patent grommet. However, some specialists do use these drops cautiously in the presence of a perforation or patent grommet in children with chronic suppurative otitis media and when other measures have

failed for otitis externa; treatment should be considered only by specialists in the following circumstances:

- drops should only be used in the presence of obvious infection;
- treatment should be for no longer than 2 weeks;
- the carer and child should be counselled on the risk of ototoxicity and given justification for the use of these topical antibiotics;
- baseline audiometry should be performed, if possible, before treatment is commenced.

Clinical expertise and judgement should be used to assess the risk of treatment versus the benefit to the patient in such circumstances.

A solution of **acetic acid** 2% acts as an antifungal and antibacterial in the external ear canal. It may be used to treat mild otitis externa but in severe cases an anti-inflammatory preparation with or without an anti-infective drug is required. A proprietary preparation containing acetic acid 2% (*EarCalm*® spray) is on sale to the public for children over 12 years.

For severe pain associated with otitis externa, a simple analgesic, such as paracetamol p. 271 or ibuprofen p. 655, can be used. A systemic antibacterial can be used if there is spreading cellulitis or if the patient is systemically unwell. When a resistant staphylococcal infection (a boil) is present in the external auditory meatus, flucloxacillin p. 345 is the drug of choice; oral ciprofloxacin p. 690 or a systemic aminoglycoside may be needed for pseudomonal infections, particularly in children with diabetes or compromised immunity.

The skin of the pinna adjacent to the ear canal is often affected by eczema. Topical corticosteroid creams and ointments are then required, but prolonged use should be avoided.

#### Otitis media

##### Acute otitis media

Acute otitis media is the commonest cause of severe aural pain in young children and may occur with even minor upper respiratory tract infections. Children diagnosed with acute otitis media should not be prescribed antibacterials routinely as many infections, especially those accompanying coryza, are caused by viruses. Most uncomplicated cases resolve without antibacterial treatment and a **simple analgesic**, such as paracetamol, may be sufficient. In children without systemic features, a **systemic antibacterial** may be started after 72 hours if there is no improvement, or earlier if there is deterioration if the child is systemically unwell, if the

child is at high risk of serious complications (e.g. in immunosuppression, cystic fibrosis), if mastoiditis is present, or in children under 2 years of age with bilateral otitis media. Perforation of the tympanic membrane in children with *acute otitis media* usually heals spontaneously without treatment; if there is no improvement, e.g. pain or discharge persists, a systemic antibacterial can be given. Topical antibacterial treatment of acute otitis media is ineffective and there is no place for ear drops containing a local anaesthetic.

#### Otitis media with effusion

Otitis media with effusion (glue ear) occurs in about 10% of children and in 90% of children with cleft palates. Antimicrobials, corticosteroids, decongestants, and antihistamines have little place in the routine management of otitis media with effusion. If glue ear persists for more than a month or two, the child should be referred for assessment and follow up because of the risk of long-term hearing impairment which can delay language development. Untreated or resistant glue ear may be responsible for some types of *chronic otitis media*.

#### Chronic otitis media

Opportunistic organisms are often present in the debris, keratin, and necrotic bone of the middle ear and mastoid in children with chronic otitis media. The mainstay of treatment is thorough cleansing with aural microsuction, which may completely resolve long-standing infection. Cleansing may be followed by topical treatment as for otitis externa; this is particularly beneficial for discharging ears or infections of the mastoid cavity. Acute exacerbations of chronic infection may require treatment with an oral antibacterial; a swab should be taken to identify infecting organisms and antibacterial sensitivity.

In view of reports of ototoxicity, manufacturers contraindicate topical treatment with ototoxic antibacterials in the presence of a tympanic perforation or patent grommet. Ciprofloxacin or ofloxacin p. 677 eye drops used in the ear [unlicensed use] or ear drops [both unlicensed; available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies] are an effective alternative to such ototoxic ear drops for chronic otitis media in patients with perforation of the tympanic membrane.

However, some specialists do use ear drops containing **aminoglycosides** or **polymyxins** [unlicensed indications] cautiously in children with chronic suppurative otitis media and perforation of the tympanic membrane, if the otitis media has failed to settle with systemic antibacterials; treatment should be considered only by specialists in the following circumstances:

- drops should only be used in the presence of obvious infection;
- treatment should be for no longer than 2 weeks;
- the carer and child should be counselled on the risk of ototoxicity and given justification for the use of these topical antibiotics;
- baseline audiometry should be performed, if possible, before treatment is commenced.

Clinical expertise and judgement should be used to assess the risk of treatment versus the benefit to the patient in such circumstances. It is considered that the pus in the middle ear associated with otitis media also carries a risk of ototoxicity.

#### Removal of ear wax

Ear wax (cerumen) is a normal bodily secretion which provides a protective film on the meatal skin and need only be removed if it causes hearing loss or interferes with a proper view of the ear drum.

Ear wax causing discomfort or impaired hearing may be softened using simple remedies such as **olive oil** ear drops or **almond oil** ear drops; sodium bicarbonate ear drops p. 693 are also effective, but may cause dryness of the ear canal. If

the wax is hard and impacted, the drops can be used twice daily for several days and this may reduce the need for mechanical removal of the wax. The child should lie with the affected ear uppermost for 5 to 10 minutes after a generous amount of the softening remedy has been introduced into the ear. Proprietary preparations containing organic solvents can irritate the meatal skin, and in most cases the simple remedies indicated above are just as effective and less likely to cause irritation. Docusate sodium p. 694 or urea hydrogen peroxide p. 694 are ingredients in a number of proprietary preparations for softening ear wax.

If necessary, wax may be removed by irrigation with water (warmed to body temperature). Ear irrigation is generally best avoided in young children, in children unable to co-operate with the procedure, in children who have had otitis media in the last six weeks, in otitis externa, in children with cleft palate, a history of ear drum perforation, or previous ear surgery. A child who has hearing in one ear only should not have that ear irrigated because even a very slight risk of damage is unacceptable in this situation.

#### Administration

To administer ear drops, lay the child down with the head turned to one side; for an infant pull the earlobe back and down, for an older child pull the earlobe back and up.

## 1 Otitis externa

### ANTIBACTERIALS > AMINOGLYCOSIDES

#### Framycetin sulfate

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Bacterial infection in otitis externa

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Perforated tympanic membrane
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid prolonged use
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Local reaction

##### • MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

Combinations available: **Dexamethasone with framycetin sulfate and gramicidin**, p. 670

#### Gentamicin

11-Dec-2017

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Bacterial infection in otitis externa

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child: Apply 2–3 drops 4–5 times a day, (including a dose at bedtime)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Patent grommet (although may be used by specialists, see Ear p. 688) - perforated tympanic membrane (although may be used by specialists, see Ear p. 688)
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid prolonged use
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Dermatitis

##### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Ear/eye drops solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride

##### ▶ Gentamicin (Non-proprietary)

Gentamicin (as Gentamicin sulfate) 3 mg per 1 ml Gentamicin 0.3% ear/eye drops | 10 ml [PoM] £2.63 DT = £2.47

## Gentamicin with hydrocortisone

21-Dec-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Eczematous inflammation in otitis externa

► TO THE EAR

► Child: Apply 2–4 drops 4–5 times a day, (including a dose at bedtime)

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Patent grommet (although may be used by specialists, see Ear p. 688) · perforated tympanic membrane (although may be used by specialists, see Ear p. 688)

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid prolonged use

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Local reaction

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Gentamicin and hydrocortisone ear drops for inflammatory ear infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/gentamicin-and-hydrocortisone-ear-drops-inflammatory-ear-infections](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/gentamicin-and-hydrocortisone-ear-drops-inflammatory-ear-infections)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Ear drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

#### ► Gentamicin with hydrocortisone (Non-proprietary)

Gentamicin (as Gentamicin sulfate) 3 mg per 1 ml,

Hydrocortisone acetate 10 mg per 1 ml Gentamicin 0.3% /

Hydrocortisone acetate 1% ear drops | 10 ml [PoM] £26.19 DT = £26.19

## Neomycin sulfate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Bacterial infection in otitis externa

► TO THE EAR

► Child: (consult product literature)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Patent grommet (although may be used by specialists, see Ear p. 688) · perforated tympanic membrane (although may be used by specialists, see Ear p. 688)

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid prolonged use

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Local reaction

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

Combinations available: *Betamethasone with neomycin*, p. 669 · *Dexamethasone with glacial acetic acid and neomycin sulfate*, p. 692 · *Hydrocortisone with neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate*, p. 693

## ANTIBACTERIALS > QUINOLONES

## Ciprofloxacin

26-Apr-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Acute otitis externa

► TO THE EAR

► Child 1–17 years: Apply 0.25 mL twice daily for 7 days, each 0.25 mL dose contains 0.5 mg ciprofloxacin

- **CAUTIONS** Known (or at risk of) perforated tympanic membrane
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - Uncommon Dermatitis · ear pruritus
- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Manufacturer advises discard any ampoules remaining 8 days after opening the pouch.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Ciprofloxacin ear drops for ear infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ciprofloxacin-ear-drops-ear-infections-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/ciprofloxacin-ear-drops-ear-infections-0)

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

SMC No. 1320/18

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (April 2018) that ciprofloxacin ear drops (*Cetraxal*®) are recommended for use within NHS Scotland for treatment of acute otitis externa in adults and children over 1 year with an intact tympanic membrane, caused by ciprofloxacin susceptible microorganisms when off-label or unlicensed ciprofloxacin formulations would otherwise be used.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ear drops

#### Ear drops

► *Cetraxal* (Aspire Pharma Ltd)

Ciprofloxacin (as Ciprofloxacin hydrochloride) 2 mg per 1 ml Cetraxal 2mg/ml ear drops 0.25ml unit dose | 15 unit dose [PoM] £6.01

Combinations available: *Dexamethasone with ciprofloxacin*, p. 692

## ANTIBACTERIALS > OTHER

## Chloramphenicol

- **DRUG ACTION** Chloramphenicol is a potent broad-spectrum antibiotic.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Bacterial infection in otitis externa

► TO THE EAR

► Child: Apply 2–3 drops 2–3 times a day

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid prolonged use
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Blood disorder · bone marrow depression
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: Chloramphenicol ear drops for ear infections (otitis externa) [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/chloramphenicol-ear-drops-ear-infections-otitis-externa-0](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/chloramphenicol-ear-drops-ear-infections-otitis-externa-0)
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Chloramphenicol ear drops are less suitable for prescribing.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Ear drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

#### ► Chloramphenicol (Non-proprietary)

Chloramphenicol 50 mg per 1 ml Chloramphenicol 5% ear drops | 10 ml [PoM] £63.69 DT = £63.69

Chloramphenicol 100 mg per 1 ml Chloramphenicol 10% ear drops | 10 ml [PoM] £87.84 DT = £87.84

## ANTIFUNGALS &gt; IMIDAZOLE ANTIFUNGALS

## Clotrimazole

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

## Fungal infection in otitis externa

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child: Apply 2–3 times a day continue for at least 14 days after disappearance of infection

## ● SIDE-EFFECTS Local reaction

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

## Liquoid

- ▶ Canesten (clotrimazole) (Bayer Plc)  
Clotrimazole 10 mg per 1 ml Canesten 1% solution | 20 ml [P]  
£2.30 DT = £2.30

## CORTICOSTEROIDS

## Betamethasone

21-Dec-2017

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

## BETNESOL®

## Eczematous inflammation in otitis externa

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child: Apply 2–3 drops every 2–3 hours, reduce frequency when relief obtained

## VISTAMETHASONE®

## Eczematous inflammation in otitis externa

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child: Apply 2–3 drops every 3–4 hours, reduce frequency when relief obtained

## IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- CONTRA-INDICATIONS Avoid alone in the presence of untreated infection (combine with suitable anti-infective)
- CAUTIONS Avoid prolonged use
- SIDE-EFFECTS Local reaction

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

## Ear/eye/nose drops solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- ▶ Betnesol (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)  
Betamethasone sodium phosphate 1 mg per 1 ml Betnesol 0.1% eye/ear/nose drops | 10 ml [PoM] £2.32 DT = £2.32
- ▶ Vistamethasone (Martindale Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Betamethasone sodium phosphate 1 mg per 1 ml Vistamethasone 0.1% ear/eye/nose drops | 5 ml [PoM] £1.02 | 10 ml [PoM] £1.16 DT = £2.32

Combinations available: *Betamethasone with neomycin*, p. 669

## Flumetasone pivalate with clioquinol

21-Dec-2017

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

## Eczematous inflammation in otitis externa | Mild bacterial or fungal infections in otitis externa

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 2–3 drops twice daily for 7–10 days, to be instilled into the ear

## IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- CONTRA-INDICATIONS Iodine sensitivity
- CAUTIONS Avoid prolonged use · manufacturer advises avoid in perforated tympanic membrane (but used by specialists for short periods)
- SIDE-EFFECTS Paraesthesia · skin reactions
- PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE Clioquinol stains skin and clothing

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

## Ear drops

- ▶ Flumetasone pivalate with clioquinol (Non-proprietary)  
Flumetasone pivalate 200 microgram per 1 ml, Clioquinol 10 mg per 1 ml Flumetasone 0.02% / Clioquinol 1% ear drops | 7.5 ml [PoM] £11.34 DT = £11.34 | 10 ml [PoM] £15.13 DT = £15.13

## Prednisolone

21-Dec-2017

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

## Eczematous inflammation in otitis externa

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child: Apply 2–3 drops every 2–3 hours, frequency to be reduced when relief obtained

## IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- CONTRA-INDICATIONS Avoid alone in the presence of untreated infection (combine with suitable anti-infective)
- CAUTIONS Avoid prolonged use
- SIDE-EFFECTS Local reaction

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ear drops

## Ear/eye drops solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- ▶ Predsol (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)  
Prednisolone sodium phosphate 5 mg per 1 ml Predsol 0.5% ear/eye drops | 10 ml [PoM] £2.00 DT = £2.00



## CORTICOSTEROIDS > CORTICOSTEROID COMBINATIONS WITH ANTI-INFECTIVES

### Betamethasone with neomycin

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, betamethasone p. 691, neomycin sulfate p. 690.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Eczematous inflammation in otitis externa**

- ▶ TO THE EAR USING EAR DROPS
- ▶ Child: Apply 2–3 drops 3–4 times a day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Patent grommet (although may be used by specialists, see Ear p. 688) · perforated tympanic membrane (although may be used by specialists, see Ear p. 688)

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid prolonged use

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Ear/eye/nose drops solution**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- ▶ **Betnesol-N** (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)  
Betamethasone (as Betamethasone sodium phosphate) 1 mg per 1 ml, Neomycin sulfate 5 mg per 1 ml Betnesol-N ear/eye/nose drops | 10 ml [PoM] £2.39 DT = £2.39

### Dexamethasone with ciprofloxacin

21-Dec-2017

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, ciprofloxacin p. 690.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Acute otitis media in patients with tympanostomy tubes**

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years: Apply 4 drops twice daily for 7 days

##### **Acute otitis externa**

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: Apply 4 drops twice daily for 7 days

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Fungal ear infections · viral ear infections

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid prolonged use

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Ear discomfort
- ▶ **Uncommon** Ear infection fungal · flushing · irritability · malaise · otorrhoea · paraesthesia · skin reactions · taste altered · vomiting
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Dizziness · headache · hearing impairment

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Manufacturer advises further evaluation of underlying conditions if otorrhoea persists after a full course, or if at least two episodes of otorrhoea occur within 6 months.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Manufacturer advises counselling on administration.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### **Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (July 2017) that dexamethasone with ciprofloxacin (*Cilodex*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of acute otitis media in patients with tympanostomy tubes (AOMT).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Ear drops**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- ▶ **Cilodex** (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

Dexamethasone 1 mg per 1 ml, Ciprofloxacin (as Ciprofloxacin hydrochloride) 3 mg per 1 ml Cilodex ear drops | 5 ml [PoM] £6.12 DT = £6.12

### Dexamethasone with framycetin sulfate and gramicidin

21-Dec-2017

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, framycetin sulfate p. 689.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Eczematous inflammation in otitis externa**

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child: 2–3 drops 3–4 times a day

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** *Sofradex*® is less suitable for prescribing.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Ear/eye drops solution**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain polysorbates

- ▶ **Sofradex** (Sanofi)

Gramicidin 50 microgram per 1ml, Dexamethasone (as Dexamethasone sodium metasulfobenzoate) 500 microgram per 1 ml, Framycetin sulfate 5mg per 1 ml Sofradex ear/eye drops | 10 ml [PoM] £7.50

### Dexamethasone with glacial acetic acid and neomycin sulfate

21-Dec-2017

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, neomycin sulfate p. 690.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Eczematous inflammation in otitis externa**

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: Apply 1 spray 3 times a day

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Patent grommet (although may be used by specialists, see Ear p. 688) • perforated tympanic membrane (although may be used by specialists, see Ear p. 688)
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid prolonged use
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Paraesthesia • skin reactions

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Spray

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

##### ▶ Otimize (Teva UK Ltd)

Dexamethasone 1 mg per 1 gram, Neomycin sulfate 5 mg per 1 gram, Acetic acid glacial 20 mg per 1 gram Otimize ear spray | 5 ml [PoM] £3.27

## Hydrocortisone with neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate

21-Dec-2017

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, neomycin sulfate p. 690.

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Bacterial infection in otitis externa

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child 3–17 years: Apply 3 drops 3–4 times a day for 7 days (review treatment if there is no clinical improvement)

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid prolonged, unsupervised use.  
**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises reduce dose.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Ear drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), polysorbates

##### ▶ Otoposporin (Phoenix Labs Ltd)

Hydrocortisone 10 mg per 1 ml, Neomycin sulfate 3400 unit per 1 ml, Polymyxin B sulfate 10000 unit per 1 ml Otoposporin ear drops | 10 ml [PoM] £7.45

## DERMATOLOGICAL DRUGS > ASTRINGENTS

## Aluminium acetate

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Inflammation in otitis externa

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child: To be inserted into meatus or apply on a ribbon gauze dressing or sponge wick which should be kept saturated with the ear drops

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For ear drops 8%—dilute 8 parts aluminium acetate ear drops (13%) with 5 parts purified water. Must be freshly prepared.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ear drops

## 2 Removal of earwax

### BICARBONATE

## Sodium bicarbonate

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Removal of earwax (with 5% ear drop solution)

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Dry ear

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection, liquid, mouthwash

##### Ear drops

##### ▶ Sodium bicarbonate (Non-proprietary)

Sodium bicarbonate 50 mg per 1 ml Sodium bicarbonate 5% ear drops | 10 ml £1.23–£1.25

### SOFTENING DRUGS

## Almond oil

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Removal of earwax

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child: Allow drops to warm to room temperature before use (consult product literature)

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** The patient should lie with the affected ear uppermost for 5 to 10 minutes after a generous amount of the softening remedy has been introduced into the ear.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Liquid

##### ▶ Almond oil (Non-proprietary)

Almond oil 1 ml per 1 ml Almond oil liquid | 50 ml £0.95 DT = £0.95 | 70 ml £0.85 | 200 ml £2.68 | 500 ml £11.90

## Arachis oil with chlorobutanol

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Removal of earwax

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: (consult product literature)

- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Arachis (peanut) oil with chlorobutanol ear drops are less suitable for prescribing.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Ear drops

##### ▶ Cerumol (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Chlorobutanol 50 mg per 1 ml, Arachis oil 573 mg per 1 ml Cerumol ear drops | 11 ml [P] £2.05

## Docusate sodium

20-Apr-2016

### (Diocetyl sodium sulphosuccinate)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Removal of ear wax

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: (consult product literature)

- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Ear drops less suitable for prescribing.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Ear drops

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

- ▶ **Molcer** (Wallace Manufacturing Chemists Ltd)

**Docusate sodium 50 mg per 1 ml** Molcer ear drops | 15 ml £5.60

- ▶ **Waxsol** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Docusate sodium 5 mg per 1 ml** Waxsol ear drops | 10 ml £1.95  
DT = £1.95

## Olive oil

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Removal of earwax

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child: Apply twice daily for several days (if wax is hard and impacted)

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** The patient should lie with the affected ear uppermost for 5 to 10 minutes after a generous amount of the softening remedy has been introduced into the ear. Allow ear drops to warm to room temperature before use.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Spray

- ▶ **Earol** (HL Healthcare Ltd)

Earol olive oil ear spray | 10 ml

##### Ear drops

- ▶ **Olive oil (Non-proprietary)**

Olive oil ear drops | 10 ml £1.35–£1.42

- ▶ **Arjun** (Arjun Products Ltd)

Arjun ear drops | 10 ml £1.26

- ▶ **Cerumol (olive oil)** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Cerumol olive oil ear drops | 10 ml

- ▶ **KliarVax** (Essential-Healthcare Ltd)

KliarVax ear drops | 10 ml £0.97

- ▶ **Oleax** (JR Biomedical Ltd)

Oleax ear drops | 15 ml £1.40

- ▶ **Olive oil** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Care olive oil ear drops | 10 ml £1.42

- ▶ **St George's** (St Georges Medical Ltd)

Olive oil ear drops | 10 ml £1.40 | 20 ml £2.70

## Urea hydrogen peroxide

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Softening and removal of earwax

- ▶ TO THE EAR
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** The patient should lie with the affected ear uppermost for 5 to 10 minutes after a generous amount of the softening remedy has been introduced into the ear.

- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Urea-hydrogen peroxide ear drops are less suitable for prescribing.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Ear drops

- ▶ **Exterol** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

**Urea hydrogen peroxide 50 mg per 1 gram** Exterol 5% ear drops | 8 ml £1.75 DT = £2.89

- ▶ **Otex** (Dendron Ltd)

**Urea hydrogen peroxide 50 mg per 1 gram** Otex 5% ear drops | 8 ml £2.89 DT = £2.89

## Nose

### Nose

31-Oct-2017

#### Rhinitis

Rhinitis is often self-limiting. Many nasal preparations contain sympathomimetic drugs which can give rise to rebound congestion (*rhinitis medicamentosa*) and may damage the nasal cilia. Sodium chloride 0.9% solution p. 589 may be used as a douche or 'sniff' following endonasal surgery.

#### Administration

To administer nasal drops, lay the child face-upward with the neck extended, instil the drops, then sit the child up and tilt the head forward.

#### Drugs used in nasal allergy

Mild allergic rhinitis is controlled by **antihistamines** (see under Antihistamines, allergen immunotherapy and allergic emergencies p. 171) or topical **nasal corticosteroids**; systemic nasal decongestants are not recommended for use in children. Topical nasal decongestants can be used for a short period to relieve congestion and allow penetration of a topical nasal corticosteroid.

More persistent symptoms can be relieved by topical nasal **corticosteroids**; sodium cromoglicate p. 701 is an alternative, but may be less effective. The topical antihistamine, azelastine hydrochloride p. 698, is useful for controlling breakthrough symptoms in allergic rhinitis. Azelastine hydrochloride is less effective than nasal corticosteroids, but probably more effective than sodium cromoglicate. In seasonal allergic rhinitis (e.g. hay fever), treatment should begin 2 to 3 weeks before the season commences and may have to be continued for several months; continuous long-term treatment may be required in perennial rhinitis.

Montelukast p. 165 is less effective than topical nasal corticosteroids; it can be used in children with seasonal allergic rhinitis (unresponsive to other treatments) and concomitant asthma.

Children with disabling symptoms of seasonal rhinitis (e.g. students taking important examinations), may be treated with oral **corticosteroids** for short periods. Oral corticosteroids may also be used at the beginning of a course of treatment with a corticosteroid spray to relieve severe mucosal oedema and allow the spray to penetrate the nasal mucosa.

Sometimes allergic rhinitis is accompanied by vasomotor rhinitis. In this situation, the addition of topical nasal ipratropium bromide p. 698 can reduce watery rhinorrhoea.

#### Corticosteroids

Corticosteroid nasal preparations should be avoided in the presence of untreated nasal infections, after nasal surgery (until healing has occurred), and in pulmonary tuberculosis. Systemic absorption may follow nasal administration particularly if high doses are used or if treatment is prolonged; for cautions and side-effects of systemic corticosteroids. The risk of systemic effects may be greater with nasal drops than with nasal sprays; drops are

administered incorrectly more often than sprays. The height of children receiving prolonged treatment with nasal corticosteroids should be monitored; if growth is slowed, referral to a paediatrician should be considered.

### Nasal polyps

Short-term use of corticosteroid nasal drops helps to shrink nasal polyps; to be effective, the drops must be administered with the child in the 'head down' position. A short course of a systemic corticosteroid may be required initially to shrink large polyps. A corticosteroid nasal spray can be used to maintain the reduction in swelling and also for the initial treatment of small polyps.

### Pregnancy

If a pregnant woman cannot tolerate the symptoms of allergic rhinitis, treatment with nasal beclomethasone dipropionate p. 699, budesonide p. 699, fluticasone p. 700, or sodium cromoglicate may be considered.

### Topical nasal decongestants

Sodium chloride 0.9% given as nasal drops or spray may relieve nasal congestion by helping to liquefy mucous secretions in children with rhinitis. In infants, 1–2 drops of sodium chloride 0.9% solution in each nostril before feeds will help relieve congestion and allow more effective suckling.

Inhalation of **warm moist air** may be useful in the treatment of symptoms of acute nasal congestion in infants and children, but the use of boiling water for steam inhalation is dangerous for children and should **not** be recommended. Volatile substances such as menthol and eucalyptus may encourage inhalation of warm moist air (see also Aromatic inhalations, cough preparations and systemic nasal decongestants p. 187).

Topical nasal decongestants containing sympathomimetics can cause rebound congestion (*rhinitis medicamentosa*) following prolonged use (more than 7 days), and are therefore of limited value in the treatment of nasal congestion.

Ephedrine hydrochloride below nasal drops is the least likely of the sympathomimetic nasal decongestants to cause rebound congestion and can provide relief for several hours. The more potent sympathomimetic drugs **oxymetazoline** and **xylometazoline hydrochloride** p. 696 are more likely to cause a rebound effect.

Non-allergic watery rhinorrhoea often responds well to treatment with the antimuscarinic ipratropium bromide.

Recurrent, persistent bleeding may respond to the use of a sympathomimetic nasal spray; if infection is present, chlorhexidine and neomycin (*Naseptin*<sup>®</sup>) cream may be effective.

### Nasal preparations for infection

There is **no** evidence that topical anti-infective nasal preparations have any therapeutic value in rhinitis; see elimination of nasal staphylococci. In children, acute complications such as periorbital cellulitis require hospital treatment.

### Nasal staphylococci

Elimination of organisms such as staphylococci from the nasal vestibule can be achieved by the use of a cream containing **chlorhexidine** and **neomycin** (*Naseptin*<sup>®</sup>), but re-colonisation frequently occurs. Coagulase-positive staphylococci are present in the noses of 40% of the population.

A nasal ointment containing mupirocin p. 697 is also available; it should probably be held in reserve for resistant infections. In hospitals or in care establishments, mupirocin nasal ointment should be reserved for the eradication (in both patients and staff) of nasal carriage of meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA). A sample should be taken 2 days after treatment to confirm eradication. The

course may be repeated if the sample is positive (and the throat is not colonised). To avoid the development of resistance, the treatment course should not exceed 7 days and the course should not be repeated on more than one occasion. If the MRSA strain is mupirocin-resistant or does not respond after 2 courses, consider alternative products such as chlorhexidine and neomycin cream.

For eradication of MRSA also consult local infection control policy. See also MRSA p. 360.

## 1 Nasal congestion

### SYMPATHOMIMETICS > VASOCONSTRICTOR

#### Ephedrine hydrochloride

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Nasal congestion** | Sinusitis affecting the maxillary antrum

##### ► BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

- Child 12–17 years: Apply 1–2 drops up to 4 times a day as required for a maximum of 7 days, to be instilled into each nostril, administer ephedrine 0.5% nasal drops

##### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### CHM/MHRA ADVICE

The CHM/MHRA has stated that non-prescription cough and cold medicines containing ephedrine can be considered for up to 5 days' treatment in children aged 6–12 years after basic principles of best care have been tried; these medicines should not be used in children under 6 years of age.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid excessive or prolonged use • cardiovascular disease • diabetes mellitus • hypertension • hyperthyroidism

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

##### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anxiety • headache • insomnia • nausea
- **Frequency not known** Appetite decreased • arrhythmia • circulation impaired • dermatitis • dizziness • drug dependence • drug tolerance • dry mouth • dyspnoea • hallucination • hyperglycaemia • hyperhidrosis • hypersalivation • hypertension • hypokalaemia • hypotension • irritability • muscle weakness • mydriasis • pain • palpitations • paranoia • piloerection • rebound congestion • syncope • thirst • tremor • urinary disorders • vasoconstriction • vasodilation • vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk; manufacturer advises avoid—irritability and disturbed sleep reported.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** For nasal drops, the BP directs that if no strength is specified 0.5% drops should be supplied.

##### • PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

##### Dental practitioners' formulary

Ephedrine nasal drops may be prescribed.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Ephedrine nasal drops can be sold to the public provided no more than 180 mg of ephedrine base (or salts) are supplied at one time, and pseudoephedrine salts are not supplied at the same time; for conditions that apply to supplies made at the request of a patient, see *Medicines, Ethics and Practice*, London, Pharmaceutical Press (always consult latest edition).

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Nasal drops**► **Ephedrine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Ephedrine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml** Ephedrine 0.5% nasal drops | 10 ml [P] £1.90–£1.94 DT = £1.90

**Ephedrine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Ephedrine 1% nasal drops | 10 ml [P] £1.94–£2.01 DT = £1.94

**Pseudoephedrine hydrochloride****INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Congestion of mucous membranes of upper respiratory tract**

► **BY MOUTH**

- Child 6–11 years: 30 mg 3–4 times a day
- Child 12–17 years: 60 mg 3–4 times a day

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

MHRA/CHM ADVICE (MARCH 2008 AND FEBRUARY 2009): OVER-THE-COUNTER COUGH AND COLD MEDICINES FOR CHILDREN  
Children under 6 years should not be given over-the-counter cough and cold medicines containing pseudoephedrine.

- **CAUTIONS** Diabetes · heart disease · hypertension · hyperthyroidism · raised intra-ocular pressure
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Angle closure glaucoma · anxiety · arrhythmias · circulation impaired · dry mouth · hallucination · headache · hypertension · irritability · nausea · palpitations · psychotic disorder · skin reactions · sleep disorders · tremor · urinary retention · vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Defective closure of the abdominal wall (gastroschisis) reported very rarely in newborns after first trimester exposure.
- **BREAST FEEDING** May suppress lactation; avoid if lactation not well established or if milk production insufficient.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises use with caution in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in mild to moderate renal impairment. Manufacturer advises avoid in severe renal impairment.
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Pseudoephedrine hydrochloride is less suitable for prescribing.
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** *Galpseud*® and *Sudafed*® can be sold to the public provided no more than 720 mg of pseudoephedrine salts are supplied, and ephedrine base (or salts) are not supplied at the same time; for details see *Medicines, Ethics and Practice*, London, Pharmaceutical Press (always consult latest edition).

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oral solution**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Alcohol

► **Galpseud** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

**Pseudoephedrine hydrochloride 6 mg per 1 ml** *Galpseud* 30mg/5ml linctus sugar-free | 2000 ml [PoM] £14.00

► **Sudafed Non-Drowsy Decongestant (pseudoephedrine)** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Pseudoephedrine hydrochloride 6 mg per 1 ml** *Sudafed* Decongestant 30mg/5ml liquid | 100 ml [P] £2.22

**Tablet**► **Galpseud** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

**Pseudoephedrine hydrochloride 60 mg** *Galpseud* 60mg tablets | 24 tablet [PoM] £2.25 | 100 tablet [PoM] £5.42 DT = £5.42

► **Sudafed Non-Drowsy Decongestant (pseudoephedrine)** (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Pseudoephedrine hydrochloride 60 mg** *Sudafed* Decongestant 60mg tablets | 12 tablet [P] £2.43

**Xylometazoline hydrochloride**

- **DRUG ACTION** Xylometazoline is a sympathomimetic.

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Nasal congestion**► **BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION USING NASAL DROPS**

- Child 6–11 years: 1–2 drops 1–2 times a day as required for maximum duration of 5 days, 0.05% solution to be administered into each nostril
- Child 12–17 years: 2–3 drops 2–3 times a day as required for maximum duration of 7 days, 0.1% solution to be administered into each nostril
- **BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION USING NASAL SPRAY**
- Child 12–17 years: 1 spray 1–3 times a day as required for maximum duration of 7 days, to be administered into each nostril

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

The CHM/MHRA has stated that non-prescription cough and cold medicines containing oxymetazoline or xylometazoline can be considered for up to 5 days' treatment in children aged 6–12 years after basic principles of best care have been tried; these medicines should not be used in children under 6 years of age.

- **CAUTIONS** Angle-closure glaucoma · avoid excessive or prolonged use · cardiovascular disease · diabetes mellitus · hypertension · hyperthyroidism · rebound congestion
- **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
- **Rebound congestion** Sympathomimetic drugs are of limited value in the treatment of nasal congestion because they can, following prolonged use (more than 7 days), give rise to a rebound congestion (rhinitis medicamentosa) on withdrawal, due to a secondary vasodilatation with a subsequent temporary increase in nasal congestion. This in turn tempts the further use of the decongestant, leading to a vicious cycle of events.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Cardiovascular effects · headache · hypersensitivity · nasal dryness · nausea · paraesthesia · visual impairment
- **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Use of decongestants in infants and children under 6 years has been associated with agitated psychosis, ataxia, hallucinations, and even death—avoid.
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Spray**► **Otrivine** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

**Xylometazoline hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml** *Otrivine* Congestion Relief 0.1% nasal spray | 10 ml [GSL] £3.05 DT = £2.18

*Otrivine* Adult Measured Dose Sinusitis spray | 10 ml [GSL] £2.62 DT = £2.18

*Otrivine* Allergy Relief 0.1% nasal spray | 10 ml [GSL] £2.62 DT = £2.18

*Otrivine* Adult nasal spray | 10 ml [GSL] £2.18 DT = £2.18

*Otrivine* Adult Metered Dose 0.1% nasal spray | 10 ml [GSL] £2.62 DT = £2.18



- ▶ **Sudafed Congestion Relief** (McNeil Products Ltd)  
Xylometazoline hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml Sudafed Congestion Relief 0.1% nasal spray | 10 ml [GSL] £3.46 DT = £2.18
- ▶ **Sudafed Mucus Relief** (McNeil Products Ltd)  
Xylometazoline hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml Sudafed Mucus Relief 0.1% nasal spray | 15 ml [GSL] £2.76
- ▶ **Sudafed Non-Drowsy Decongestant (xylometazoline)** (McNeil Products Ltd)  
Xylometazoline hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml Sudafed Blocked Nose 0.1% spray | 15 ml [GSL] £2.76

#### Nasal drops

- ▶ **Otrivine** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)  
Xylometazoline hydrochloride 500 microgram per 1 ml Otrivine Child nasal drops | 10 ml [P] £1.91 DT = £1.91
- Xylometazoline hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml Otrivine Adult 0.1% nasal drops | 10 ml [GSL] £2.18 DT = £2.18

## 2 Nasal infection

### Sinusitis (acute)

31-Oct-2017

#### Description of condition

Sinusitis is an inflammation of the mucosal lining of the paranasal sinuses. Acute sinusitis (rhinosinusitis) is a self-limiting condition usually triggered by a viral upper-respiratory tract infection such as the 'common cold'. Occasionally, acute sinusitis may become complicated by a bacterial infection (see *Antibacterial therapy for acute sinusitis* in Nose infections, antibacterial therapy p. 308).

Children with acute sinusitis, particularly young children, often present with non-specific symptoms in the upper respiratory tract, including nasal blockage or congestion, discoloured nasal discharge, or cough during the day or night.

Symptoms usually improve within 2 to 3 weeks without requiring treatment.

Rarely, acute sinusitis may lead to orbital, intracranial or skeletal complications (e.g. periorbital cellulitis, symptoms or signs of meningitis).

#### Aims of treatment

Treatment is aimed at managing symptoms including pain, fever, and nasal congestion as well as treatment of bacterial infection if present.

#### Treatment

**[EvGr]** Children presenting with symptoms for around 10 days or less, should be given advice about the usual duration of acute sinusitis, self-care of pain or fever with paracetamol p. 271 or ibuprofen p. 655, and when to seek medical help. Children and their carers should be reassured that antibiotics are usually not required.

Children (over the age of 12) presenting with symptoms for around 10 days or more with no improvement could be considered for treatment with a high-dose nasal corticosteroid, such as mometasone furoate p. 700 [unlicensed use] or fluticasone p. 700 [unlicensed use] for 14 days.

If the child is systemically very unwell, has signs and symptoms of a more serious illness or condition, or is at high-risk of complications, an immediate antibiotic could be offered if deemed appropriate. **[A]** (see *Antibacterial therapy for acute sinusitis* in Nose infections, antibacterial therapy p. 308).

**[EvGr]** Children presenting with symptoms of acute sinusitis associated with a severe systemic infection or with orbital or intracranial complications should be referred to hospital. **[A]**

### Useful Resources

Sinusitis (acute): antimicrobial prescribing. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. NICE guideline 79. October 2017.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng79](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng79)

### ANTIBACTERIALS > AMINOGLYCOSIDES

#### Chlorhexidine with neomycin

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Eradication of nasal carriage of staphylococci

- ▶ BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- ▶ Child: Apply 4 times a day for 10 days

##### Preventing nasal carriage of staphylococci

- ▶ BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- ▶ Child: Apply twice daily

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Cream

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Arachis (peanut) oil, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol)

- ▶ **Naseptin** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Chlorhexidine hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 gram, Neomycin sulfate 5 mg per 1 gram Naseptin nasal cream | 15 gram [PoM] £2.03 DT = £2.24

### ANTIBACTERIALS > OTHER

#### Mupirocin

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### BACTROBAN NASAL<sup>®</sup>

##### For eradication of nasal carriage of staphylococci, including meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)

- ▶ BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- ▶ Child: Apply 2–3 times a day for 5 days; a sample should be taken 2 days after treatment to confirm eradication. Course may be repeated once if sample positive (and throat not colonised), dose to be applied to the inner surface of each nostril

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution when mupirocin ointment used in moderate or severe impairment because it contains macrogols (polyethylene glycol).

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Nasal ointment

- ▶ **Bactroban** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Mupirocin (as Mupirocin calcium) 20 mg per 1 gram Bactroban 2% nasal ointment | 3 gram [PoM] £4.24 DT = £4.24

## CORTICOSTEROIDS > CORTICOSTEROID COMBINATIONS WITH ANTI-INFECTIVES

### Betamethasone with neomycin

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, betamethasone p. 691, neomycin sulfate p. 690.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Nasal infection

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION USING NASAL DROPS
- Child: Apply 2–3 drops 2–3 times a day, to be applied into each nostril

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: corticosteroids · neomycin

#### ● LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING Betamethasone with neomycin nasal-drops are less suitable for prescribing; there is no evidence that topical anti-infective nasal preparations have any therapeutic value in rhinitis or sinusitis.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Ear/eye/nose drops solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

- **Betnesol-N** (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)  
Betamethasone (as Betamethasone sodium phosphate) 1 mg per 1 ml, Neomycin sulfate 5 mg per 1 ml Betnesol-N ear/eye/nose drops | 10 ml [PoM] £2.39 DT = £2.39

## 3 Nasal inflammation, nasal polyps and rhinitis

**Other drugs used for Nasal inflammation, nasal polyps and rhinitis** Desloratadine, p. 174 · Fexofenadine hydrochloride, p. 175 · Ketotifen, p. 180 · Rupatadine, p. 177

## ANTIHISTAMINES > NON-SEDATING

### Azelastine hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Allergic rhinitis

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- Child 6–17 years: 1 spray twice daily, to be administered into each nostril

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- 1 spray equivalent to 140 micrograms.

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: antihistamines, non-sedating

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Taste bitter (if administered incorrectly)
- **Uncommon** Epistaxis · nasal complaints

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Spray

- **Rhinolast** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Azelastine hydrochloride 140 microgram per 1 actuation Rhinolast 140micrograms/dose nasal spray | 22 ml [PoM] £10.50 DT = £10.50

Combinations available: **Fluticasone with azelastine**, p. 700

## ANTIMUSCARINICS

### Ipratropium bromide

22-Jan-2018

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Rhinorrhoea associated with allergic and non-allergic rhinitis

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- Child 12–17 years: 2 sprays 2–3 times a day, dose to be sprayed into each nostril

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- 1 metered spray of nasal spray = 21 micrograms.

#### ● CAUTIONS Avoid spraying near eyes · bladder outflow obstruction · cystic fibrosis · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: ipratropium

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Gastrointestinal motility disorder · nasal complaints · throat complaints
- **Uncommon** Corneal oedema · eye disorders · eye pain · respiratory disorders · vision disorders

#### ● ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY Contra-indicated in patients with hypersensitivity to atropine or its derivatives.

#### ● PREGNANCY Manufacturer advises only use if potential benefit outweighs the risk.

#### ● BREAST FEEDING No information available—manufacturer advises only use if potential benefit outweighs risk.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE Patients or carers should be counselled on appropriate administration technique and warned against accidental contact with the eye (due to risk of ocular complications).

**Driving and skilled tasks** Manufacturer advises patients and carers should be counselled on the effects on driving and performance of skilled tasks—increased risk of dizziness and vision disorders.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Spray

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

##### ► **Rinatec** (Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd)

Ipratropium bromide 21 microgram per 1 dose Rinatec 21micrograms/dose nasal spray | 180 dose [PoM] £6.54 DT = £6.54

## CORTICOSTEROIDS

### Corticosteroids (intranasal)

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

Central serous chorioretinopathy is a retinal disorder that has been linked to the systemic use of corticosteroids. Recently, it has also been reported after local administration of corticosteroids via inhaled and intranasal, epidural, intra-articular, topical dermal, and periocular routes. The MHRA recommends that patients should be advised to report any blurred vision or other visual disturbances with corticosteroid treatment given by any route; consider referral to an ophthalmologist for evaluation of possible causes if a patient presents with vision problems.

#### ● CAUTIONS Avoid after nasal surgery (until healing has occurred) · avoid in pulmonary tuberculosis · avoid in the presence of untreated nasal infections · patients

transferred from systemic corticosteroids may experience exacerbation of some symptoms

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Systemic absorption** Systemic absorption may follow nasal administration particularly if high doses are used or if treatment is prolonged; therefore also consider the cautions and side-effects of systemic corticosteroids. The risk of systemic effects may be greater with nasal drops than with nasal sprays; drops are administered incorrectly more often than sprays.

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Altered smell sensation · amenorrhoea · anxiety · behaviour abnormal · cognitive impairment · Cushing's syndrome · dyspepsia · electrolyte imbalance · epistaxis · hair changes · headache · healing impaired · hypertension · increased risk of infection · mood altered · nasal complaints · nausea · osteoporosis · skin reactions · sleep disorder · taste altered · throat irritation · voice alteration
- **Uncommon** Adrenal suppression · cataract · diabetic control impaired · glaucoma · osteonecrosis · pancreatitis · peptic ulcer · psychotic disorder · thromboembolism · vision blurred
- **Rare or very rare** Bronchospasm paradoxical · nasal septum perforation (more common following nasal surgery) · telangiectasia
- **Frequency not known** Growth retardation · local reaction · pneumonia (in patients with COPD)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Systemic absorption may follow nasal administration particularly if high doses are used or if treatment is prolonged. Therefore also consider the side-effects of systemic corticosteroids.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** The height of children receiving prolonged treatment with nasal corticosteroids should be monitored; if growth is slowed, referral to a paediatrician should be considered.

F 698

04-Jan-2016

## Beclometasone dipropionate (Beclomethasone dipropionate)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prophylaxis and treatment of allergic and vasomotor rhinitis**

- **BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION**
- **Child 6–17 years:** 100 micrograms twice daily, dose to be administered into each nostril, reduced to 50 micrograms twice daily, dose to be administered into each nostril, dose to be reduced when symptoms controlled; maximum 400 micrograms per day

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Spray

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, polysorbates

##### • Beclometasone dipropionate (Non-proprietary)

Beclometasone dipropionate 50 microgram per 1 dose Beclometasone 50micrograms/dose nasal spray | 200 dose [PoM] DT = £2.55

##### • Beconase (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd, Omega Pharma Ltd)

Beclometasone dipropionate 50 microgram per 1 dose Beconase Aqueous 50micrograms/dose nasal spray | 200 dose [PoM] £2.63 DT = £2.55

##### • Nasobec (Teva UK Ltd)

Beclometasone dipropionate 50 microgram per 1 dose Nasobec Aqueous 50micrograms/dose nasal spray | 200 dose [PoM] £3.06 DT = £2.55

## Betamethasone

F 698

21-Dec-2017

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### BETNESOL®

##### Non-infected inflammatory conditions of nose

###### ► BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

- **Child:** Apply 2–3 drops 2–3 times a day, dose to be applied into each nostril

##### VISTAMETHASONE®

##### Non-infected inflammatory conditions of nose

###### ► BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

- **Child:** Apply 2–3 drops twice daily, dose to be applied into each nostril

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: cream, ointment

##### Ear/eye/nose drops solution

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate

##### • Betnesol (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)

Betamethasone sodium phosphate 1 mg per 1 ml Betnesol 0.1% eye/ear/nose drops | 10 ml [PoM] £2.32 DT = £2.32

##### • Vistamethasone (Martindale Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Betamethasone sodium phosphate 1 mg per 1 ml Vistamethasone 0.1% ear/eye/nose drops | 5 ml [PoM] £1.02 | 10 ml [PoM] £1.16 DT = £2.32

F 698

21-Dec-2017

## Budesonide

- **DRUG ACTION** Budesonide is a glucocorticoid, which exerts significant local anti-inflammatory effects.

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Allergic rhinitis | Nasal polyps

###### ► BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

- **Child 6–17 years:** 128 micrograms once daily, dose to be administered into each nostril in the morning, alternatively 64 micrograms twice daily, dose to be administered to each nostril, reduce dose when control achieved

##### Prophylaxis and treatment of allergic and vasomotor rhinitis

###### ► BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

- **Child 12–17 years:** Initially 200 micrograms once daily, dose to be administered into each nostril in the morning, alternatively initially 100 micrograms twice daily, dose to be administered to each nostril; reduced to 100 micrograms once daily, dose to be administered into each nostril, dose can be reduced when control achieved

##### Nasal polyps

###### ► BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

- **Child 12–17 years:** 100 micrograms twice daily for up to 3 months, dose to be administered into each nostril

##### RHINOCORT AQUA®

##### Rhinitis

###### ► BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

- **Child 12–17 years:** 128 micrograms once daily, dose to be administered into each nostril in the morning, alternatively 64 micrograms twice daily, dose to be administered into each nostril; reduced to 64 micrograms once daily when control achieved. Use for maximum 3 months, doses to be administered into each nostril

continued →

**Nasal polyps**

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- Child 12–17 years: 64 micrograms twice daily for up to 3 months, dose to be administered into each nostril

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Rhinocort Aqua*® is not licensed for use in children.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Spray**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Disodium edetate, polysorbates, potassium sorbate

► **Budesonide (Non-proprietary)**

**Budesonide 64 microgram per 1 dose** Budesonide 64micrograms/dose nasal spray | 120 dose [PoM] £4.77 DT = £4.77

**Budesonide 100 microgram per 1 dose** Budeflam Aquanase 100micrograms/dose nasal spray | 150 dose [PoM] £11.01 DT = £11.01

► **Rhinocort** (Johnson & Johnson Ltd)

**Budesonide 64 microgram per 1 dose** Rhinocort Aqua 64 nasal spray | 120 dose [PoM] £3.77 DT = £4.77

F 698

21-Dec-2017

**Fluticasone**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Prophylaxis and treatment of allergic rhinitis and perennial rhinitis**

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION USING NASAL SPRAY
- Child 4–11 years: 50 micrograms once daily, to be administered into each nostril preferably in the morning, increased if necessary to 50 micrograms twice daily
- Child 12–17 years: 100 micrograms once daily, to be administered into each nostril preferably in the morning, increased if necessary to 100 micrograms twice daily; reduced to 50 micrograms once daily, dose to be administered into each nostril, dose to be reduced when control achieved

**Nasal polyps**

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION USING NASAL DROPS
- Child 16–17 years: 200 micrograms 1–2 times a day, to be administered into each nostril, alternative treatment should be considered if no improvement after 4–6 weeks, (200 micrograms is equivalent to approximately 6 drops)

**AVAMYS® SPRAY****Prophylaxis and treatment of allergic rhinitis**

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- Child 6–11 years: 27.5 micrograms once daily, dose to be sprayed into each nostril, then increased if necessary to 55 micrograms once daily, dose to be sprayed into each nostril, reduced to 27.5 micrograms once daily, to be sprayed into each nostril, dose to be reduced once control achieved; use minimum effective dose
- Child 12–17 years: 55 micrograms once daily, dose to be sprayed into each nostril, reduced to 27.5 micrograms once daily, to be sprayed into each nostril, dose to be reduced once control achieved; use minimum effective dose

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- For *Avamys*® spray: 1 spray equivalent to 27.5 micrograms.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Nasal ulceration occurs commonly with nasal preparations containing fluticasone furoate.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Spray**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, polysorbates

► **Fluticasone (Non-proprietary)**

**Fluticasone propionate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Fluticasone propionate 50micrograms/dose nasal spray | 150 dose [PoM] £11.01 DT = £11.01

► **Avamys** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Fluticasone furoate 27.5 microgram per 1 dose** Avamys 27.5micrograms/dose nasal spray | 120 dose [PoM] £6.44 DT = £6.44

► **Flixonase** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare, GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Fluticasone propionate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Pirinase Hayfever 0.05% nasal spray | 60 dose [P] £5.05

**Flixonase 50micrograms/dose aqueous nasal spray** | 150 dose [PoM] £11.01 DT = £11.01

► **Nasofan** (Teva UK Ltd)

**Fluticasone propionate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Nasofan Allergy 50micrograms/dose nasal spray | 60 dose [P] £4.68

**Nasofan 50micrograms/dose aqueous nasal spray** | 150 dose [PoM] £8.04 DT = £11.01

► **Pirinase Hayfever** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

**Fluticasone propionate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Pirinase Hayfever Relief for Adults 0.05% nasal spray | 60 dose [GSL] £5.05

**Nasal drops**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Polysorbates

► **Flixonase** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Fluticasone propionate 400 microgram** Flixonase Nasale 400microgram/unit dose nasal drops | 28 unit dose [PoM] £12.99 DT = £12.99

**Fluticasone with azelastine**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, fluticasone above, azelastine hydrochloride p. 698.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Moderate to severe seasonal and perennial allergic rhinitis, if monotherapy with antihistamine or corticosteroid is inadequate**

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- Child 12–17 years: 1 spray twice daily, dose to be administered into each nostril

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antihistamines, non-sedating • corticosteroids

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Spray**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, polysorbates

► **Fluticasone with azelastine (Non-proprietary)**

**Fluticasone propionate 50 microgram per 1 actuation, Azelastine hydrochloride 137 microgram per 1 actuation** Fluticasone propionate 50micrograms/dose / Azelastine 137micrograms/dose nasal spray | 120 dose [PoM] £14.80 DT = £14.80

► **Dymista** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Fluticasone propionate 50 microgram per 1 actuation, Azelastine hydrochloride 137 microgram per 1 actuation** Dymista 137micrograms/dose / 50micrograms/dose nasal spray | 120 dose [PoM] £14.80 DT = £14.80

F 698

21-Dec-2017

**Mometasone furoate**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Prophylaxis and treatment of allergic rhinitis**

- BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- Child 6–11 years: 50 micrograms daily, dose to be sprayed into each nostril

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100 micrograms daily, increased if necessary up to 200 micrograms daily, dose to be sprayed into each nostril; reduced to 50 micrograms daily, dose to be reduced when control achieved, dose to be sprayed into each nostril

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Nasal ulceration occurs commonly with preparations containing mometasone furoate.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Spray**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, polysorbates

▶ **Mometasone furoate (Non-proprietary)**

**Mometasone furoate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Mometasone 50micrograms/dose nasal spray | 140 dose [PoM] £7.30 DT = £1.70

▶ **Nasonex** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Mometasone furoate 50 microgram per 1 dose** Nasonex 50micrograms/dose nasal spray | 140 dose [PoM] £7.68 DT = £1.70

£ 698

## Triamcinolone acetonide

21-Dec-2017

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Prophylaxis and treatment of allergic rhinitis**

▶ BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ Child 2–5 years: 55 micrograms once daily for maximum 3 months, dose to be sprayed into each nostril
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 55 micrograms once daily, dose to be sprayed into each nostril, increased if necessary to 110 micrograms once daily, dose to be sprayed into each nostril; reduced to 55 micrograms once daily, dose to be sprayed into each nostril, reduce dose when control achieved; maximum duration of treatment 3 months
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 110 micrograms once daily, dose to be sprayed into each nostril, reduced to 55 micrograms once daily, dose to be sprayed into each nostril, reduce dose when control achieved

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 6 years.

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Spray**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzalkonium chloride, disodium edetate, polysorbates

▶ **Nasacort** (Sanofi)

**Triamcinolone acetonide 55 microgram per 1 dose** Nasacort Allergy 55micrograms/dose nasal spray | 30 dose [P] £3.01  
Nasacort 55micrograms/dose nasal spray | 120 dose [PoM] £7.39 DT = £7.39

## MAST-CELL STABILISERS

### Sodium cromoglicate

(Sodium cromoglycate)

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Prophylaxis of allergic rhinitis**

▶ BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ Child: 1 spray 2–4 times a day, to be administered into each nostril

● **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturers).

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Bronchospasm (transient)
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Local reaction

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

No licensed medicines listed.

## Oropharynx

### 1 Dry mouth

#### Treatment of dry mouth

##### Overview

Dry mouth (xerostomia) may be caused by drugs with antimuscarinic (anticholinergic) side-effects (e.g. antispasmodics and sedating antihistamines), by irradiation of the head and neck region or by damage to or disease of the salivary glands. Children with a persistently dry mouth may develop a burning or scalded sensation and have poor oral hygiene; they may develop dental caries, periodontal disease, and oral infections (particularly candidiasis). Dry mouth may be relieved in many patients by simple measures such as frequent sips of cool drinks or sucking pieces of ice or sugar-free fruit pastilles. Sugar-free chewing gum stimulates salivation in patients with residual salivary function.

**Artificial saliva** can provide useful relief of dry mouth. A properly balanced artificial saliva should be of a neutral pH and contain electrolytes (including fluoride) to correspond approximately to the composition of saliva. The acidic pH of some artificial saliva products may be inappropriate.

#### Artificial saliva products

● **ARTIFICIAL SALIVA PRODUCTS**

**AS SALIVA ORTHANA® LOZENGES**

Mucin 65 mg, xylitol 59 mg, in a sorbitol basis, pH neutral

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Dry mouth as a result of having (or having undergone) radiotherapy (ACBS) | Dry mouth as a result of sicca syndrome (ACBS)**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child: 1 lozenge as required, allow to dissolve slowly in the mouth

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** *AS Saliva Orthana®* lozenges do not contain fluoride.

**AS Saliva Orthana lozenges** (A S Pharma Ltd)

30 lozenge(ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.50 • Drug Tariff (Part VIIIA Category C) price = £3.50

**AS SALIVA ORTHANA® SPRAY**

Gastric mucin (porcine) 3.5%, xylitol 2%, sodium fluoride 4.2 mg/litre, with preservatives and flavouring agents, pH neutral.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Symptomatic treatment of dry mouth**

▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child: Apply 2–3 sprays as required, spray onto oral and pharyngeal mucosa

● **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

Dental practitioners' formulary

*AS Saliva Orthana®* Oral Spray may be prescribed.



## 702 Dry mouth

### BIOXTRA<sup>®</sup> GEL

Lactoperoxidase, lactoferrin, lysozyme, whey colostrum, xylitol and other ingredients.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Dry mouth as a result of having (or having undergone) radiotherapy | Dry mouth as a result of sicca syndrome**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: Apply as required, apply to oral mucosa

#### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

Dental practitioners' formulary

*BioXtra<sup>®</sup>* Gel may be prescribed.

**BioXtra Dry Mouth oral gel** (R.I.S. Products Ltd)

40 ml • NHS indicative price = £3.94 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

### BIOTENE ORALBALANCE<sup>®</sup>

Lactoperoxidase, lactoferrin, lysozyme, glucose oxidase, xylitol in a gel basis

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic treatment of dry mouth**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: Apply as required, apply to gums and tongue

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Avoid use with toothpastes containing detergents (including foaming agents).

#### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

Dental practitioners' formulary

*Bioteene Oralbalance<sup>®</sup>* Saliva Replacement Gel may be prescribed as Artificial Saliva Gel.

**Bioteene Oralbalance dry mouth saliva replacement gel**

(GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare) Glucose oxidase 12000 unit, Lactoferrin 12 mg, Lactoperoxidase 12000 unit, Muramidase 12 mg 50 gram • NHS indicative price = £4.46 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

### GLANDOSANE<sup>®</sup>

Carmellose sodium 500 mg, sorbitol 1.5 g, potassium chloride 60 mg, sodium chloride 42.2 mg, magnesium chloride 2.6 mg, calcium chloride 7.3 mg, and dipotassium hydrogen phosphate 17.1 mg/50 g, pH 5.75.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Dry mouth as a result of having (or having undergone) radiotherapy (ACBS) | Dry mouth as a result of sicca syndrome (ACBS)**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: Apply as required, spray onto oral and pharyngeal mucosa

#### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

Dental practitioners' formulary

*Glandosane<sup>®</sup>* Aerosol Spray may be prescribed.

**Glandosane synthetic saliva spray lemon** (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)

50 ml • NHS indicative price = £5.68

**Glandosane synthetic saliva spray natural** (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)

50 ml • NHS indicative price = £5.68

**Glandosane synthetic saliva spray peppermint** (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)

50 ml • NHS indicative price = £5.68

### ORALIEVE GEL

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic treatment of dry mouth**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: Apply as required, particularly at night, to oral mucosa

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Contains traces of milk protein and egg white protein.

### SST<sup>®</sup>

Sugar-free, citric acid, malic acid and other ingredients in a sorbitol base.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic treatment of dry mouth in patients with impaired salivary gland function and patent salivary ducts**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: 1 tablet as required, allow tablet to dissolve slowly in the mouth

#### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

Dental practitioners' formulary

May be prescribed as Saliva Stimulating Tablets.

**SST saliva stimulating tablets** (Sinclair IS Pharma Plc)

100 tablet • NHS indicative price = £4.86 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

### SALIVEZE<sup>®</sup>

Carmellose sodium (sodium carboxymethylcellulose), calcium chloride, magnesium chloride, potassium chloride, sodium chloride, and dibasic sodium phosphate, pH neutral

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Dry mouth as a result of having (or having undergone) radiotherapy (ACBS) | Dry mouth as a result of sicca syndrome (ACBS)**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: Apply 1 spray as required, spray onto oral mucosa

#### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

Dental practitioners' formulary

*Saliveze<sup>®</sup>* Oral Spray may be prescribed.

**Saliveze mouth spray** (Wyvern Medical Ltd)

50 ml(ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.50

### SALIVIX<sup>®</sup>

Sugar-free, reddish-amber, acacia, malic acid and other ingredients.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic treatment of dry mouth**

- BY MOUTH USING PASTILLES
- Child: 1 unit as required, suck pastille

#### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

Dental practitioners' formulary

*Salivix<sup>®</sup>* Pastilles may be prescribed as Artificial Saliva Pastilles.

**Salivix pastilles** (Galen Ltd)

50 pastille • NHS indicative price = £3.55 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

### XEROTIN<sup>®</sup>

Sugar-free, water, sorbitol, carmellose (carboxymethylcellulose), potassium chloride, sodium chloride, potassium phosphate, magnesium chloride, calcium chloride and other ingredients, pH neutral.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Symptomatic treatment of dry mouth**

- BY MOUTH
- Child: 1 spray as required

#### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

Dental practitioners' formulary

*Xerotin<sup>®</sup>* Oral Spray may be prescribed as Artificial Saliva Oral Spray.

**Xerotin spray** (SpePharm UK Ltd)

100 ml • NHS indicative price = £6.86 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

## 2 Oral hygiene

### Mouthwashes and other preparations for oropharyngeal use

#### Lozenges and sprays

There is no convincing evidence that antiseptic lozenges and sprays have a beneficial action and they sometimes irritate and cause sore tongue and sore lips. Some of these preparations also contain local anaesthetics which relieve pain but may cause sensitisation.

#### Mouthwashes and gargles

Superficial infections of the mouth are often helped by warm mouthwashes which have a mechanical cleansing effect and cause some local hyperaemia. However, to be effective, they must be used frequently and vigorously. Mouthwashes may not be suitable for children under 7 years (risk of the solution being swallowed); the mouthwash or dental gel may be applied using a cotton bud.

A warm saline mouthwash is ideal and can be prepared either by dissolving half a teaspoonful of salt in a glassful of warm water or by diluting compound sodium chloride mouthwash p. 704 with an equal volume of warm water.

Mouthwashes containing an oxidising agent, such as hydrogen peroxide p. 704, may be useful in the treatment of acute ulcerative gingivitis (Vincent's infection) since the organisms involved are anaerobes. It also has a mechanical cleansing effect arising from frothing when in contact with oral debris. Concentrations greater than 1.5% in children may cause ulceration and tissue damage.

Chlorhexidine below is an effective antiseptic which has the advantage of inhibiting plaque formation on the teeth. It does not, however, completely control plaque deposition and is not a substitute for effective toothbrushing. Moreover, chlorhexidine preparations do not penetrate significantly into stagnation areas and are therefore of little value in the control of dental caries or of periodontal disease once pocketing has developed. Chlorhexidine preparations are of little value in the control of acute necrotising ulcerative gingivitis. With prolonged use, chlorhexidine causes reversible brown staining of teeth and tongue. Chlorhexidine may be incompatible with some ingredients in toothpaste, causing an unpleasant taste in the mouth; rinse the mouth thoroughly with water between using toothpaste and chlorhexidine-containing products.

Chlorhexidine can be used as a mouthwash, spray or gel for secondary infection in mucosal ulceration and for controlling gingivitis, as an adjunct to other oral hygiene measures. These preparations may also be used instead of toothbrushing where there is a painful periodontal condition (e.g. primary herpetic stomatitis) or if the patient has a haemorrhagic disorder, or is disabled. Chlorhexidine mouthwash is used in the prevention of oral candidiasis in immunocompromised patients. Chlorhexidine mouthwash reduces the incidence of alveolar osteitis following tooth extraction. Chlorhexidine mouthwash should not be used for the prevention of endocarditis in children undergoing dental procedures.

## ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS

### Chlorhexidine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Oral hygiene and plaque inhibition | Oral candidiasis | Gingivitis | Management of aphthous ulcers**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MOUTHWASH
- ▶ Child: Rinse or gargle 10 mL twice daily (rinse or gargle for about 1 minute)

**Oral hygiene and plaque inhibition and gingivitis**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING DENTAL GEL
- ▶ Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be brushed on the teeth

**Oral candidiasis | Management of aphthous ulcers**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING DENTAL GEL
- ▶ Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, to affected areas

**Oral hygiene and plaque inhibition | Oral candidiasis | Gingivitis | Management of aphthous ulcers**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING OROMUCOSAL SPRAY
- ▶ Child: Apply up to 12 sprays twice daily as required, to be applied tooth, gingival, or ulcer surfaces

**Bladder irrigation and catheter patency solutions**

- ▶ BY INTRAVESICAL INSTILLATION
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Corsodyl*® not licensed for use in children under 12 years (unless on the advice of a healthcare professional).

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common

- ▶ With buccal use Dry mouth · hypersensitivity · oral disorders · taste altered

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** If desquamation occurs with mucosal irritation, discontinue treatment.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Chlorhexidine gluconate may be incompatible with some ingredients in toothpaste; rinse the mouth thoroughly with water between using toothpaste and chlorhexidine-containing product.

#### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

**Dental practitioners' formulary**

*Corsodyl*® dental gel may be prescribed as Chlorhexidine Gluconate Gel; *Corsodyl*® mouthwash may be prescribed as Chlorhexidine Mouthwash; *Corsodyl*® oral spray may be prescribed as Chlorhexidine Oral Spray.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Dental gel

- ▶ *Corsodyl* (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)  
Chlorhexidine gluconate 10 mg per 1 gram *Corsodyl* 1% dental gel sugar-free | 50 gram **P** £1.56 DT = £1.56

##### Irrigation

- ▶ **Chlorhexidine (Non-proprietary)**  
Chlorhexidine acetate 200 microgram per 1 ml Chlorhexidine acetate 0.02% catheter maintenance solution | 100 ml **P** **£** 8
- ▶ **Uro-Tainer (chlorhexidine)** (B.Braun Medical Ltd)  
Chlorhexidine acetate 200 microgram per 1 ml Uro-Tainer chlorhexidine 1:5000 catheter maintenance solution | 100 ml **P** £2.70

##### Mouthwash

- ▶ **Chlorhexidine (Non-proprietary)**  
Chlorhexidine gluconate 2 mg per 1 ml Chlorhexidine gluconate 0.2% mouthwash aniseed | 300 ml **GSL** £2.09 DT = £4.09  
Chlorhexidine gluconate 0.2% mouthwash natural | 300 ml **GSL** £4.02 DT = £4.09  
Chlorhexidine gluconate 0.2% mouthwash plain | 300 ml **GSL** £4.09 DT = £4.09  
Chlorhexidine gluconate 0.2% mouthwash peppermint | 300 ml **GSL** £4.09 DT = £4.09  
Chlorhexidine gluconate 0.2% mouthwash original | 300 ml **GSL** £4.18 DT = £4.09

## 704 Oral hygiene

Chlorhexidine gluconate 0.2% mouthwash alcohol free | 300 ml [GSL] [S] DT = £4.09

### ► Corosdyl (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

**Chlorhexidine gluconate 2 mg per 1 ml** Corosdyl 0.2% mouthwash aniseed | 300 ml [GSL] £2.44 DT = £4.09

Corosdyl Mint 0.2% mouthwash | 300 ml [GSL] £2.44 DT = £4.09 | 600 ml [GSL] £4.50

Corosdyl 0.2% mouthwash alcohol free | 300 ml [GSL] £3.06 DT = £4.09

### ► Curasept (Curaprox (UK) Ltd)

**Chlorhexidine gluconate 2 mg per 1 ml** Curasept 0.2% oral rinse | 200 ml [S]

### Irrigation solution

#### ► Chlorhexidine (Non-proprietary)

**Chlorhexidine acetate 200 microgram per 1 ml** Chlorhexidine acetate 0.02% irrigation solution 1litre bottles | 1 bottle [P] [S]

**Chlorhexidine acetate 500 microgram per 1 ml** Chlorhexidine acetate 0.05% irrigation solution 1litre bottles | 1 bottle [P] [S]

## Hexetidine

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Oral hygiene

- BY MOUTH USING MOUTHWASH
- Child 6–17 years: Rinse or gargle 15 mL 2–3 times a day, to be used undiluted

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- Rare or very rare Anaesthesia • taste altered
- Frequency not known Cough • dry mouth • dysphagia • dyspnoea • nausea • salivary gland enlargement • vomiting

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Mouthwash

##### ► Oraldene (McNeil Products Ltd)

**Hexetidine 1 mg per 1 ml** Oraldene 0.1% mouthwash peppermint sugar-free | 200 ml [GSL] £2.92

## Hydrogen peroxide

- **DRUG ACTION** Hydrogen peroxide is an oxidising agent.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Oral hygiene (with hydrogen peroxide 6%)

- BY MOUTH USING MOUTHWASH
- Child: Rinse or gargle 15 mL 2–3 times a day for 2–3 minutes, to be diluted in half a tumblerful of warm water

#### PEROXYL®

#### Oral hygiene

- BY MOUTH USING MOUTHWASH
- Child 6–17 years: Rinse or gargle 10 mL 3 times a day for about 1 minute, for maximum 7 days, to be used after meals and at bedtime

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Tongue papilla hypertrophy (long term use)

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** When prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Hydrogen Peroxide Mouthwash, BP consists of hydrogen peroxide 6% solution (= approx. 20 volume) BP.

- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Hydrogen peroxide bleaches fabric.

### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

#### Dental practitioners' formulary

Hydrogen Peroxide Mouthwash may be prescribed.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Mouthwash

##### ► Peroxyl (Colgate-Palmolive (UK) Ltd)

**Hydrogen peroxide 15 mg per 1 ml** Peroxyl 1.5% mouthwash sugar-free | 300 ml [GSL] £2.94 DT = £2.94

## Sodium bicarbonate with sodium chloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Oral hygiene

- BY MOUTH USING MOUTHWASH
- Child: (consult product literature)

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For mouthwash, extemporaneous preparations should be prepared according to the following formula: sodium chloride 1.5 g, sodium bicarbonate 1 g, concentrated peppermint emulsion 2.5 mL, double-strength chloroform water 50 mL, water to 100 mL. To be diluted with an equal volume of warm water prior to administration.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of mouthwash may include peppermint.

### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

#### Dental practitioners' formulary

Compound sodium chloride mouthwash may be prescribed.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: mouthwash

## Sodium chloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Oral hygiene

- BY MOUTH USING MOUTHWASH
- Child: Rinse or gargle as required

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Extemporaneous mouthwash preparations should be prepared according to the following formula: sodium chloride 1.5 g, sodium bicarbonate 1 g, concentrated peppermint emulsion 2.5 mL, double-strength chloroform water 50 mL, water to 100 mL. To be diluted with an equal volume of warm water.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** No mouthwash preparations available—when prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Sodium Chloride Mouthwash, Compound, BP consists of sodium bicarbonate 1%, sodium chloride 1.5% in a suitable vehicle with peppermint flavour.

### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

#### Dental practitioners' formulary

Compound Sodium Chloride Mouthwash may be prescribed.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

## 2.1 Dental caries

### Fluoride

#### Fluoride

Availability of adequate fluoride confers significant resistance to dental caries. It is now considered that the topical action of fluoride on enamel and plaque is more important than the systemic effect.

When the fluoride content of drinking water is less than 700 micrograms per litre (0.7 parts per million), daily administration of fluoride tablets or drops provides suitable supplementation. Systemic fluoride supplements should not be prescribed without reference to the fluoride content of the local water supply. Infants need not receive fluoride supplements until the age of 6 months.

Dentifrices which incorporate sodium fluoride or monofluorophosphate are also a convenient source of fluoride.

Individuals who are either particularly caries prone or medically compromised may be given additional protection by use of fluoride rinses or by application of fluoride gels. Rinses may be used daily or weekly; daily use of a less concentrated rinse is more effective than weekly use of a more concentrated one. High-strength gels must be applied regularly under professional supervision; extreme caution is necessary to prevent children from swallowing any excess. Less concentrated gels are available for home use. Varnishes are also available and are particularly valuable for young or disabled children since they adhere to the teeth and set in the presence of moisture.

### VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS

#### Sodium fluoride

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Prophylaxis of dental caries for water content less than 300micrograms/litre (0.3 parts per million) of fluoride ion**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING TABLETS
- ▶ Child 6 months-2 years: 250 micrograms daily, doses expressed as fluoride ion (F<sup>-</sup>)
- ▶ Child 3-5 years: 500 micrograms daily, doses expressed as fluoride ion (F<sup>-</sup>)
- ▶ Child 6-17 years: 1 mg daily, doses expressed as fluoride ion (F<sup>-</sup>)

**Prophylaxis of dental caries for water content between 300 and 700micrograms/litre (0.3-0.7 parts per million) of fluoride ion**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING TABLETS
- ▶ Child 3-5 years: 250 micrograms daily, doses expressed as fluoride ion (F<sup>-</sup>)
- ▶ Child 6-17 years: 500 micrograms daily, doses expressed as fluoride ion (F<sup>-</sup>)

**Prophylaxis of dental caries for water content above 700micrograms/litre (0.7 parts per million) of fluoride ion**

- ▶ Child 6 months-17 years: Supplements not advised

**Prophylaxis of dental caries for individuals who are caries prone or medically compromised**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MOUTHWASH
- ▶ Child 6-17 years: Rinse or gargle 10 mL daily

##### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

- ▶ Sodium fluoride 2.2 mg provides approx. 1 mg fluoride ion.
- ▶ These doses reflect the recommendations of the British Dental Association, the British Society of Paediatric

Dentistry and the British Association for the Study of Community Dentistry (*Br Dent J* 1997; **182**: 6–7).

##### COLGATE DURAPHAT® 2800PPM FLUORIDE TOOTHPASTE

###### Prophylaxis of dental caries

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING PASTE
- ▶ Child 10-17 years: Apply 1 centimetre twice daily, to be applied using a toothbrush

##### COLGATE DURAPHAT® 5000PPM FLUORIDE TOOTHPASTE

###### Prophylaxis of dental caries

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING PASTE
- ▶ Child 16-17 years: Apply 2 centimetres 3 times a day, to be applied after meals using a toothbrush

##### EN-DE-KAY® FLUORINSE

###### Prophylaxis of dental caries for individuals who are caries prone or medically compromised

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING MOUTHWASH
- ▶ Child 8-17 years: 5 drops daily, dilute 5 drops to 10 mL of water, alternatively 20 drops once weekly, dilute 20 drops to 10 mL

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Not for areas where drinking water is fluoridated

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Dental fluorosis

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Tablets should be sucked or dissolved in the mouth and taken preferably in the evening. For mouthwash, rinse mouth for 1 minute and then spit out.

**COLGATE DURAPHAT® 2800PPM FLUORIDE TOOTHPASTE** Brush teeth for 1 minute before spitting out.

**COLGATE DURAPHAT® 5000PPM FLUORIDE TOOTHPASTE** Brush teeth for 3 minutes before spitting out.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral tablet formulations may include orange.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Mouthwash Avoid eating, drinking, or rinsing mouth for 15 minutes after use.

##### COLGATE DURAPHAT® 2800PPM FLUORIDE

**TOOTHPASTE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer sodium fluoride toothpaste. Avoid drinking or rinsing mouth for 30 minutes after use.

##### COLGATE DURAPHAT® 5000PPM FLUORIDE

**TOOTHPASTE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer Sodium fluoride toothpaste.

- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

###### Dental practitioners' formulary

Tablets may be prescribed as Sodium Fluoride Tablets.

Oral drops may be prescribed as Sodium Fluoride Oral Drops.

Mouthwashes may be prescribed as Sodium Fluoride Mouthwash 0.05% or Sodium Fluoride Mouthwash 2%.

**COLGATE DURAPHAT® 2800PPM FLUORIDE TOOTHPASTE** May be prescribed as Sodium Fluoride Toothpaste 0.619%.

**COLGATE DURAPHAT® 5000PPM FLUORIDE TOOTHPASTE** May be prescribed as Sodium Fluoride Toothpaste 1.1%.

###### Dental information

Fluoride mouthwash, oral drops, tablets and toothpaste are prescribable on form FP10D (GP14 in Scotland, WP10D in Wales).

There are also arrangements for health authorities to supply fluoride tablets in the course of pre-school dental schemes, and they may also be supplied in school dental schemes.

Fluoride gels are not prescribable on form FP10D (GP14 in Scotland, WP10D in Wales).

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

► **Endekay** (Manx Healthcare Ltd)

**Sodium fluoride 1.1 mg** Endekay Fluotabs 3-6 Years 1.1mg tablets | 200 tablet [P] £2.38 DT = £2.38

**Sodium fluoride 2.2 mg** Endekay Fluotabs 6+ Years 2.2mg tablets | 200 tablet [P] £2.38 DT = £2.38

#### Paste

► **Colgate Duraphat** (Colgate-Palmolive (UK) Ltd)

**Fluoride (as Sodium fluoride) 2.8 mg per 1 gram** Colgate Duraphat 2800ppm fluoride toothpaste sugar-free | 75 ml [PoM] £3.26 DT = £3.26

**Fluoride (as Sodium fluoride) 5 mg per 1 gram** Colgate Duraphat 5000ppm fluoride toothpaste sugar-free | 51 gram [PoM] £6.50 DT = £6.50

#### Mouthwash

► **Sodium fluoride (Non-proprietary)**

**Sodium fluoride 500 microgram per 1 ml** Sodium fluoride 0.05% mouthwash sugar free sugar-free | 250 ml [GSL] [N] DT = £1.51  
Oral-B Anti-Plaque Alcohol-Free 0.05% mouth rinse sugar-free | 500 ml [N]

► **Colgate FluoridGard** (Colgate-Palmolive (UK) Ltd)

**Sodium fluoride 500 microgram per 1 ml** Colgate FluoridGard 0.05% daily dental rinse alcohol free sugar-free | 400 ml £2.99  
Colgate FluoridGard 0.05% daily dental rinse sugar-free | 400 ml [GSL] £2.99

► **Endekay** (Manx Healthcare Ltd)

**Sodium fluoride 500 microgram per 1 ml** Endekay 0.05% daily fluoride mouthrinse sugar-free | 250 ml [GSL] £1.51 DT = £1.51  
sugar-free | 500 ml [GSL] £2.45

**Sodium fluoride 20 mg per 1 ml** Endekay Fluorinse 2% mouthwash sugar-free | 100 ml [PoM] £4.97

Hydrocortisone oromucosal tablets p. 440 are allowed to dissolve next to an ulcer and are useful in recurrent aphthae and erosive lichenoid lesions.

Beclomethasone dipropionate inhaler p. 160 sprayed on the oral mucosa is used to manage oral ulceration [unlicensed indication]. Alternatively, betamethasone soluble tablets p. 438 dissolved in water can be used as a mouthwash to treat oral ulceration [unlicensed indication].

Systemic corticosteroid therapy (see under Corticosteroids, inflammatory disorders p. 661) is reserved for severe conditions such as pemphigus vulgaris.

#### Local analgesics

Local analgesics have a limited role in the management of oral ulceration. When applied topically their action is of a relatively short duration so that analgesia cannot be maintained continuously throughout the day. When local anaesthetics are used in the mouth, care must be taken not to produce anaesthesia of the pharynx before meals as this might lead to choking.

Benzylamine hydrochloride p. 707 and flurbiprofen p. 654 are non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). Benzylamine hydrochloride mouthwash or spray may be useful in reducing the discomfort associated with a variety of ulcerative conditions. It has also been found to be effective in reducing the discomfort of tonsillectomy and post-irradiation mucositis. Some patients find the full-strength mouthwash causes some stinging and, for them, it should be diluted with an equal volume of water. Flurbiprofen lozenges are licensed for the relief of sore throat in adolescents.

Choline salicylate p. 708 is a derivative of salicylic acid and has some analgesic action. The dental gel may provide relief for recurrent aphthae, but excessive application or confinement under a denture irritates the mucosa and can itself cause ulceration in adults and children over 16 years of age.

#### Other preparations

Doxycycline p. 352 rinsed in the mouth may be of value for recurrent aphthous ulceration.

#### Periodontitis

Low-dose doxycycline (*Periostat*®) is licensed as an adjunct to scaling and root planing for the treatment of periodontitis; a low dose of doxycycline reduces collagenase activity without inhibiting bacteria associated with periodontitis.

For anti-infectives used in the treatment of destructive (refractory) forms of periodontal disease, see under Oropharyngeal infections, antibacterial therapy p. 709. See also Mouthwashes and other preparations for oropharyngeal use p. 703 for mouthwashes used for oral hygiene and plaque inhibition.

### ANAESTHETICS, LOCAL

#### Lidocaine hydrochloride

(Lignocaine hydrochloride)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Dental practice

► BY BUCCAL ADMINISTRATION USING OINTMENT

► Child: Rub gently into dry gum

##### LARYNGOJET®

**Anaesthesia of mucous membranes of oropharynx, trachea, or respiratory tract**

► TO MUCOUS MEMBRANES

► Child: Up to 3 mg/kg (max. per dose 200 mg), to be given as a single dose sprayed, instilled (if a cavity) or applied with a swab; reduce dose according to size, age, and condition of child

## 3 Oral ulceration and inflammation

### Oral ulceration and inflammation

#### Ulceration and inflammation

Ulceration of the oral mucosa may be caused by trauma (physical or chemical), recurrent aphthae, infections, carcinoma, dermatological disorders, nutritional deficiencies, gastro-intestinal disease, haematopoietic disorders, and drug therapy. It is important to establish the diagnosis in each case as the majority of these lesions require specific management in addition to local treatment. Local treatment aims to protect the ulcerated area, to relieve pain, to reduce inflammation, or to control secondary infection. Children with an unexplained mouth ulcer of more than 3 weeks' duration require urgent referral to hospital to exclude oral cancer in adults or secondary causes such as leukaemia.

#### Simple mouthwashes

A **saline** mouthwash may relieve the pain of traumatic ulceration. The mouthwash is made up with warm water and used at frequent intervals until the discomfort and swelling subsides.

#### Antiseptic mouthwashes

Secondary bacterial infection may be a feature of any mucosal ulceration; it can increase discomfort and delay healing. Use of chlorhexidine mouthwash p. 703 is often beneficial and may accelerate healing of recurrent aphthae.

#### Corticosteroids

Topical corticosteroid therapy may be used for some forms of oral ulceration. In the case of aphthous ulcers it is most effective if applied in the 'prodromal' phase. Thrush or other types of candidiasis are recognised complications of corticosteroid treatment.



**XYLOCAINE®****Bronchoscopy | Laryngoscopy | Oesophagoscopy | Endotracheal intubation**

- ▶ TO MUCOUS MEMBRANES
- ▶ Child: Up to 3 mg/kg

- **CAUTIONS** Can damage plastic cuffs of endotracheal tubes
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiarrhythmics
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Hypersensitivity reactions occur mainly with the ester-type local anaesthetics, such as tetracaine; reactions are less frequent with the amide types, such as articaine, bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaine, and ropivacaine. Cross-sensitivity reactions may be avoided by using the alternative chemical type.
- **PREGNANCY** Crosses the placenta but not known to be harmful in *animal* studies—use if benefit outweighs risk. When used as a local anaesthetic, large doses can cause fetal bradycardia; if given during delivery can also cause neonatal respiratory depression, hypotonia, or bradycardia after paracervical or epidural block.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but amount too small to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Caution—increased risk of side-effects.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Possible accumulation of lidocaine and active metabolite; caution in severe impairment.
- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**  
Dental practitioners' formulary  
Lidocaine ointment 5% may be prescribed.  
Spray may be prescribed as Lidocaine Spray 10%  
**XYLOCAINE®**  
May be prescribed as lidocaine spray 10%.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ointment

**Spray**

- ▶ **Xylocaine** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)  
Lidocaine 10 mg per 1 actuation Xylocaine 10mg/dose spray sugar-free | 50 ml [P] £6.29 DT = £6.29

**Ointment**

- ▶ **Lidocaine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Lidocaine hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 gram Lidocaine 5% ointment | 15 gram [P] £6.50 DT = £6.18

**ANALGESICS > NON-STEROIDAL ANTI-INFLAMMATORY DRUGS****Benzydamine hydrochloride**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Painful inflammatory conditions of oropharynx**

- ▶ TO THE LESION USING MOUTHWASH
  - ▶ Child 13–17 years: Rinse or gargle 15 mL every 1.5–3 hours as required usually for not more than 7 days, dilute with an equal volume of water if stinging occurs
- ▶ TO THE LESION USING OROMUCOSAL SPRAY
  - ▶ Child 1 month–5 years (body-weight 4–7 kg): 1 spray every 1.5–3 hours, to be administered onto the affected area
  - ▶ Child 1 month–5 years (body-weight 8–11 kg): 2 sprays every 1.5–3 hours, to be administered onto the affected area
  - ▶ Child 1 month–5 years (body-weight 12–15 kg): 3 sprays every 1.5–3 hours, to be administered onto the affected area

- ▶ Child 1 month–5 years (body-weight 16 kg and above): 4 sprays every 1.5–3 hours, to be administered onto the affected area
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 4 sprays every 1.5–3 hours, to be administered onto affected area
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 4–8 sprays every 1.5–3 hours, to be administered onto affected area

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Uncommon** Oral disorders
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Photosensitivity reaction · respiratory disorders · skin reactions
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema

● **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION****Dental practitioners' formulary**

Benzydamine Oromucosal Spray 0.15% may be prescribed.

Benzydamine mouthwash may be prescribed as Benzydamine Mouthwash 0.15%.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Spray**

- ▶ **Benzydamine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Benzydamine hydrochloride 1.5 mg per 1 mL Benzydamine 0.15% oromucosal spray sugar free sugar-free | 30 mL [P] £4.24 DT = £4.21
- ▶ **Diffiam** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Benzydamine hydrochloride 1.5 mg per 1 mL Diffiam 0.15% spray sugar-free | 30 mL [P] £4.24 DT = £4.21

**Mouthwash**

- ▶ **Benzydamine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Benzydamine hydrochloride 1.5 mg per 1 mL Benzydamine 0.15% mouthwash sugar free sugar-free | 300 mL [P] £6.53 DT = £6.53
- ▶ **Diffiam** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Benzydamine hydrochloride 1.5 mg per 1 mL Diffiam Oral Rinse 0.15% solution sugar-free | 300 mL [P] £6.50 DT = £6.53  
Diffiam 0.15% Sore Throat Rinse sugar-free | 200 mL [P] £4.64

**Flurbiprofen**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Relief of sore throat**

- ▶ BY MOUTH USING LOZENGES
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1 lozenge every 3–6 hours for maximum 3 days, allow lozenge to dissolve slowly in the mouth; maximum 5 lozenges per day

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Oral ulceration (move lozenge around mouth) · taste altered

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Lozenge**

- ▶ **Strefen** (Reckitt Benckiser Healthcare (UK) Ltd)  
Flurbiprofen 8.75 mg Strefen 8.75mg lozenges | 16 lozenge [P] £2.58 DT = £2.58

## CORTICOSTEROIDS

## Betamethasone

21-Dec-2017

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

## Oral ulceration

- ▶ TO THE LESION USING SOLUBLE TABLETS
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 micrograms 4 times a day, to be dissolved in 20 mL water and rinsed around the mouth; not to be swallowed

- **UNLICENSED USE** Betamethasone soluble tablets not licensed for use as mouthwash or in oral ulceration.

## IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Untreated local infection
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Increased risk of infection
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for betamethasone soluble tablets (administration).

## ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

**Dental practitioners' formulary** Betamethasone Soluble Tablets 500 micrograms may be prescribed for oral ulceration.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Soluble tablet**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 13, 21 (not for use as mouthwash for oral ulceration)

▶ **Betamethasone (Non-proprietary)**

**Betamethasone (as Betamethasone sodium phosphate)**

**500 microgram** Betamethasone 500microgram soluble tablets sugar free sugar-free | 100 tablet [PoM] £51.12 DT = £51.12

## Hydrocortisone

21-Dec-2017

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

## Oral and perioral lesions

- ▶ TO THE LESION USING BUCCAL TABLET
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Only on medical advice
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1 lozenge 4 times a day, allowed to dissolve slowly in the mouth in contact with the ulcer

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Hydrocortisone mucoadhesive buccal tablets* licensed for use in children (under 12 years—on medical advice only).

## IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

See Corticosteroids, general use p. 434.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Untreated local infection
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Diabetic control impaired · infection exacerbated

## ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

**Dental practitioners' formulary**

Mucoadhesive buccal tablets may be prescribed as Hydrocortisone Oromucosal Tablets.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Muco-adhesive buccal tablet**▶ **Hydrocortisone (Non-proprietary)**

**Hydrocortisone (as Hydrocortisone sodium succinate)**

**2.5 mg** Hydrocortisone 2.5mg muco-adhesive buccal tablets sugar free sugar-free | 20 tablet [P] £8.30 DT = £7.70

## SALICYLIC ACID AND DERIVATIVES

## Choline salicylate

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Mild oral and perioral lesions**

- ▶ TO THE LESION
- ▶ Child 16–17 years: Apply 0.5 inch, apply with gentle massage, not more often than every 3 hours

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Children under 16 years

**CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ **Reye's syndrome** The CHM has advised that topical oral pain relief products containing salicylate salts should not be used in children under 16 years, as a cautionary measure due to the theoretical risk of Reye's syndrome.

- **CAUTIONS** Frequent application, especially in children, may give rise to salicylate poisoning

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: choline salicylate

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Bronchospasm

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** When prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Choline Salicylate Dental Gel, BP consists of choline salicylate 8.7% in a flavoured gel basis.

## ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

**Dental practitioners' formulary**

Choline Salicylate Dental Gel may be prescribed.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oromucosal gel**▶ **Bonjela** (Reckitt Benckiser Healthcare (UK) Ltd)

**Choline salicylate 87 mg per 1 gram** Bonjela Cool Mint gel sugar-free | 15 gram [GSL] £3.55 DT = £2.58

Bonjela Original gel sugar-free | 15 gram [GSL] £2.58 DT = £2.58

## Salicylic acid with rhubarb extract

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Mild oral and perioral lesions**

- ▶ TO THE LESION
- ▶ Child 16–17 years: Apply 3–4 times a day maximum duration 7 days

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Children under 16 years

**CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ **Reye's syndrome** The CHM has advised that topical oral pain relief products containing salicylate salts should not be used in children under 16 years, as a cautionary measure due to the theoretical risk of Reye's syndrome.

- **CAUTIONS** Frequent application, especially in children, may give rise to salicylate poisoning

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

▶ **Common or very common** Oral disorders

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** May cause temporary discolouration of teeth and oral mucosa.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Paint

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Ethanol

► **Pyralvex** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Salicylic acid 10 mg per 1 mL, Rhubarb extract 50 mg per 1 mL Pyralvex solution | 10 mL P £3.25

## 4 Oropharyngeal bacterial infections

### Oropharyngeal infections, antibacterial therapy

#### Pericoronitis

Antibacterial required only in presence of systemic features of infection, or of trismus, or persistent swelling despite local treatment.

- Metronidazole p. 333, or *alternatively*, amoxicillin p. 339
- *Suggested duration of treatment* 3 days or until symptoms resolve.

#### Gingivitis (acute necrotising ulcerative)

Antibacterial required only if systemic features of infection.

- Metronidazole, or *alternatively*, amoxicillin
- *Suggested duration of treatment* 3 days or until symptoms resolve.

#### Abscess (periapical or periodontal)

Antibacterial required only in severe disease with cellulitis or if systemic features of infection.

- Amoxicillin, or *alternatively*, metronidazole
- *Suggested duration of treatment* 5 days.

#### Periodontitis

Antibacterial used as an adjunct to debridement in severe disease or disease unresponsive to local treatment alone.

- Metronidazole, or *alternatively in adults and children over 12 years*, doxycycline p. 352

#### Throat infections

Most throat infections are caused by viruses and many do not require antibacterial therapy. Consider antibacterial, if history of valvular heart disease, if marked systemic upset, if peritonsillar cellulitis or abscess, or if at increased risk from acute infection (e.g. in immunosuppression, cystic fibrosis); prescribe antibacterial for beta-haemolytic streptococcal pharyngitis.

- Phenoxymethylpenicillin p. 339
- In severe infection, initial parenteral therapy with benzylpenicillin sodium p. 338, then oral therapy with phenoxymethylpenicillin or amoxicillin (or ampicillin p. 341). **Avoid** amoxicillin if possibility of glandular fever.
- *Suggested duration of treatment* 10 days.
- If penicillin-allergic, clarithromycin p. 330 (or azithromycin p. 329 or erythromycin p. 331)
- *Suggested duration of treatment* 10 days

### ANTIBACTERIALS > TETRACYCLINES AND RELATED DRUGS

#### Doxycycline

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Treatment of recurrent aphthous ulceration

- **BY MOUTH USING SOLUBLE TABLETS**
- **Child 12–17 years:** 100 mg 4 times a day usually for 3 days, dispersible tablet can be stirred into a small amount of water then rinsed around the mouth for 2–3 minutes, it should preferably not be swallowed

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for severe recurrent aphthous ulceration.

- **CAUTIONS** Alcohol dependence

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tetracyclines

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Dyspnoea · hypotension · peripheral oedema · serum sickness · skin reactions · tachycardia
- **Uncommon** Gastritis · gastrointestinal discomfort
- **Rare or very rare** Antibiotic associated colitis · arthralgia · flushing · hepatic function abnormal · myalgia · photoonycholysis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · tinnitus · vision disorders

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution (avoid excessive doses).

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Counselling on administration advised. Photosensitivity Patients should be advised to avoid exposure to sunlight or sun lamps.

##### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

**Dental practitioners' formulary** Dispersible tablets may be prescribed as Dispersible Doxycycline Tablets.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Dispersible tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 6, 9, 11, 13

► **Vibramycin-D** (Pfizer Ltd)

**Doxycycline (as Doxycycline monohydrate) 100 mg** Vibramycin-D 100mg dispersible tablets sugar-free | 8 tablet P<sub>oM</sub> £4.91 DT = £4.91

## 5 Oropharyngeal fungal infections

### Oropharyngeal fungal infections

#### Overview

Fungal infections of the mouth are usually caused by *Candida* spp. (candidiasis or candidosis). Different types of oropharyngeal candidiasis are managed as follows:

#### Thrush

Acute pseudomembranous candidiasis (thrush), is usually an acute infection but it may persist for months in patients receiving inhaled corticosteroids, cytotoxics, or broad-spectrum antibacterials. Thrush also occurs in patients with serious systemic disease associated with reduced immunity such as leukaemia, other malignancies, and HIV infection. Any predisposing condition should be managed appropriately. When thrush is associated with corticosteroid inhalers, rinsing the mouth with water (or cleaning a child's teeth) immediately after using the inhaler may avoid the problem. Treatment with nystatin p. 710 or miconazole p. 710 may be needed. Fluconazole p. 374 is effective for

unresponsive infections or if a topical antifungal drug cannot be used. Topical therapy may not be adequate in immunocompromised children and an oral triazole antifungal is preferred.

### Acute erythematous candidiasis

Acute erythematous (atrophic) candidiasis is a relatively uncommon condition associated with corticosteroid and broad-spectrum antibacterial use and with HIV disease. It is usually treated with fluconazole.

### Angular cheilitis

Angular cheilitis (angular stomatitis) is characterised by soreness, erythema and fissuring at the angles of the mouth. It may represent a nutritional deficiency or it may be related to orofacial granulomatosis or HIV infection. Both yeasts (*Candida* spp.) and bacteria (*Staphylococcus aureus* and beta-haemolytic streptococci) are commonly involved as interacting, infective factors. While the underlying cause is being identified and treated, it is often helpful to apply miconazole cream p. 725 or fusidic acid ointment p. 357; if the angular cheilitis is unresponsive to treatment, hydrocortisone with miconazole cream or ointment p. 744 can be used.

### Immunocompromised patients

See advice on prevention of fungal infections under *Immunocompromised children* in Antifungals, systemic use p. 370.

Antiseptic mouthwashes can have a role in the prevention of oral candidiasis in immunocompromised children.

### Drugs used in oropharyngeal candidiasis

Nystatin is not absorbed from the gastro-intestinal tract and is applied locally (as a suspension) to the mouth for treating local fungal infections. Miconazole is used by local application (as an oral gel) in the mouth but it is also absorbed to the extent that potential interactions need to be considered. Miconazole also has some activity against Gram-positive bacteria including streptococci and staphylococci. In neonates, nystatin oral suspension or miconazole oral gel is used for the treatment of oropharyngeal candidiasis; to prevent re-infection it is important to ensure that the mother's breast nipples and the teats of feeding bottles are cleaned adequately.

Fluconazole given by mouth is reliably absorbed; it is used for infections that do not respond to topical therapy or when topical therapy cannot be used. Itraconazole p. 375 can be used for fluconazole-resistant infections.

If candidal infection fails to respond after 1 to 2 weeks of treatment with antifungal drugs the child should be sent for investigation to eliminate the possibility of underlying disease. Persistent infection may also be caused by re-infection from the genito-urinary or gastro-intestinal tract.

after meals, retain near oral lesions before swallowing (dental prostheses and orthodontic appliances should be removed at night and brushed with gel)

### Intestinal candidiasis

#### ► BY MOUTH USING ORAL GEL

- Child 4 months–17 years: 5 mg/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 250 mg) treatment should be continued for at least 7 days after lesions have healed or symptoms have cleared

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 4 months of age or during first 5–6 months of life of an infant born pre-term.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Infants with impaired swallowing reflex
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antifungals, azoles
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - Common or very common Dry mouth · nausea · oral disorders · regurgitation · skin reaction
  - Uncommon Taste altered
  - Frequency not known Angioedema · choking · diarrhoea · hepatitis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid if possible—toxicity at high doses in *animal* studies.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Oral gel should be held in mouth, after food.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Flavours of oral gel may include orange.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer miconazole oromucosal gel.
- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

Dental practitioners' formulary  
Miconazole Oromucosal Gel may be prescribed.
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** 15-g tube of oral gel can be sold to the public.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oromucosal gel

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

#### ► Daktarin (McNeil Products Ltd, Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

Miconazole 20 mg per 1 gram Daktarin 20mg/g oromucosal gel sugar-free | 15 gram [P] £3.78 DT = £3.48 sugar-free | 80 gram [PoM] £4.38 DT = £4.38

## ANTIFUNGALS > IMIDAZOLE ANTIFUNGALS

### Miconazole

11-Oct-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Oral candidiasis

#### ► BY MOUTH USING ORAL GEL

- Neonate: 1 mL 2–4 times a day treatment should be continued for at least 7 days after lesions have healed or symptoms have cleared, to be smeared around the inside of the mouth after feeds.
- Child 1 month–1 year: 1.25 mL 4 times a day treatment should be continued for at least 7 days after lesions have healed or symptoms have cleared, to be smeared around the inside of the mouth after feeds
- Child 2–17 years: 2.5 mL 4 times a day treatment should be continued for at least 7 days after lesions have healed or symptoms have cleared, to be administered

## ANTIFUNGALS > POLYENE ANTIFUNGALS

### Nystatin

08-Feb-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Oral candidiasis

#### ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 100 000 units 4 times a day usually for 7 days, and continued for 48 hours after lesions have resolved, to be given after feeds.
- Child: 100 000 units 4 times a day usually for 7 days, and continued for 48 hours after lesions have resolved

- **UNLICENSED USE** [EvGr] Not licensed for use in neonates.
- **CAUTIONS** Contact with eyes and mucous membranes should be avoided

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal distress · angioedema · diarrhoea · face oedema · nausea · sensitisation · skin reactions · Stevens–Johnson syndrome · vomiting
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Counselling advised with oral suspension (use of pipette, hold in mouth, after food). Medicines for Children leaflet: Nystatin for Candida infection [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/nystatin-for-candida-infection](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/nystatin-for-candida-infection)
- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**  
Dental practitioners' formulary  
Nystatin Oral Suspension may be prescribed.
- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension

#### Oral suspension

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Ethanol

#### ► Nystatin (Non-proprietary)

**Nystatin 100000 unit per 1 ml** Nystatin 100,000units/ml oral suspension | 30 ml [PoM] £2.22 DT = £2.22

## 6 Oropharyngeal viral infections

### Oropharyngeal viral infections

#### Management

Viral infections are the most common cause of a sore throat. It is usually a self-limiting condition which does not benefit from anti-infective treatment. Adequate analgesia may be all that is required.

Children with varicella–zoster infection often develop painful lesions in the mouth and throat. Benzydamine hydrochloride p. 707 may be used to provide local analgesia. Chlorhexidine mouthwash or gel p. 703 will control plaque accumulation if toothbrushing is painful and will also help to control secondary infection in general.

In severe herpetic stomatitis systemic aciclovir p. 404 or valaciclovir p. 406 may be used for oral lesions associated with herpes zoster. Aciclovir and valaciclovir are also used to prevent frequently recurring herpes simplex lesions of the mouth particularly when associated with the initiation of erythema multiforme. See the treatment of labial herpes simplex infections.



# Chapter 13

## Skin

### CONTENTS

<b>1 Dry and scaling skin disorders</b>	page 713
<b>2 Infections of the skin</b>	720
2.1 Bacterial skin infections	722
2.2 Fungal skin infections	724
2.3 Parasitic skin infections	728
2.4 Viral skin infections	729
<b>3 Inflammatory skin conditions</b>	730
3.1 Eczema and psoriasis	730
<b>4 Perspiration</b>	751
4.1 Hyperhidrosis	751
<b>5 Pruritus</b>	752

<b>6 Rosacea and acne</b>	page 753
6.1 Acne	754
<b>7 Scalp and hair conditions</b>	760
<b>8 Skin cleansers, antiseptics and desloughing agents</b>	760
8.1 Minor cuts and abrasions	764
<b>9 Skin disfigurement</b>	764
<b>10 Sun protection and photodamage</b>	765
<b>11 Superficial soft-tissue injuries and superficial thrombophlebitis</b>	766
<b>12 Warts and calluses</b>	766

## Skin conditions, management

### Topical preparations

When prescribing topical preparations for the treatment of skin conditions in children, the site of application, the condition being treated, and the child's (and carer's) preference for a particular vehicle all need to be taken into consideration.

### Vehicles

The British Association of Dermatologists list of preferred frictioned dermatological preparations (specials) is available at [www.bad.org.uk](http://www.bad.org.uk).

The vehicle in topical preparations for the skin affects the degree of hydration, has a mild anti-inflammatory effect, and aids the penetration of the active drug. Therefore, the vehicle, as well as the active drug, should be chosen on the basis of their suitability for the child's skin condition.

**Applications** are usually viscous solutions, emulsions, or suspensions for application to the skin (including the scalp) or nails.

**Collodions** are painted on the skin and allowed to dry to leave a flexible film over the site of application.

**Creams** are emulsions of oil and water and are generally well absorbed into the skin. They may contain an antimicrobial preservative unless the active ingredient or basis is intrinsically bactericidal and fungicidal. Generally, creams are cosmetically more acceptable than ointments because they are less greasy and easier to apply.

**Gels** consist of active ingredients in suitable hydrophilic or hydrophobic bases; they generally have a high water content. Gels are particularly suitable for application to the face and scalp.

**Lotions** have a cooling effect and may be preferred to ointments or creams for application over a hairy area. Lotions in alcoholic basis can sting if used on broken skin. *Shake lotions* (such as calamine lotion) contain insoluble powders which leave a deposit on the skin surface.

**Ointments** are greasy preparations which are normally anhydrous and insoluble in water, and are more occlusive than creams. They are particularly suitable for chronic, dry lesions. The most commonly used ointment bases consist of soft paraffin or a combination of soft, liquid, and hard paraffin. Some ointment bases have both *hydrophilic and lipophilic* properties; they may have occlusive properties on the skin surface, encourage hydration, and also be miscible with water.

they often have a mild anti-inflammatory effect. *Water-soluble ointments* contain macrogols which are freely soluble in water and are therefore readily washed off; they have a limited but useful role where ready removal is desirable.

**Pastes** are stiff preparations containing a high proportion of finely powdered solids such as zinc oxide and starch suspended in an ointment. They are used for circumscribed lesions such as those which occur in lichen simplex, chronic eczema, or psoriasis. They are less occlusive than ointments and can be used to protect inflamed, lichenified, or excoriated skin.

**Dusting powders** are used only rarely. They reduce friction between opposing skin surfaces. Dusting powders should not be applied to moist areas because they can cake and abrade the skin. Talc is a lubricant but it does not absorb moisture; it can cause respiratory irritation. Starch is less lubricant but absorbs water.

### Dilution

The BP directs that creams and ointments should **not** normally be diluted but that should dilution be necessary care should be taken, in particular, to prevent microbial contamination. The appropriate diluent should be used and heating should be avoided during mixing; excessive dilution may affect the stability of some creams. Diluted creams should normally be used within 2 weeks of preparation.

### Suitable quantities for prescribing

#### Suitable quantities of dermatological preparations to be prescribed for specific areas of the body

Area of body	Creams and Ointments	Lotions
Face	15–30 g	100 ml
Both hands	25–50 g	200 ml
Scalp	50–100 g	200 ml
Both arms or both legs	100–200 g	200 ml
Trunk	400 g	500 ml
Groins and genitalia	15–25 g	100 ml

These amounts are usually suitable for children 12–18 years for twice daily application for 1 week; smaller quantities will be required for children under 12 years. These recommendations **do not apply** to corticosteroid preparations.

## Excipients and sensitisation

Excipients in topical products rarely cause problems. If a patch test indicates allergy to an excipient, products containing the substance should be avoided (see also Anaphylaxis). The following excipients in topical preparations are associated, rarely, with sensitisation; the presence of these excipients is indicated in the entries for topical products. See also Excipients, under General Guidance.

- Beeswax
- Benzyl alcohol
- Butylated hydroxyanisole
- Butylated hydroxytoluene
- Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol)
- Chlorocresol
- Edetic acid (EDTA)
- Ethylenediamine
- Fragrances
- Hydroxybenzoates (parabens)
- Imidurea
- Isopropyl palmitate
- N-(3-Chloroallyl)hexammonium chloride (quaternium 15)
- Polysorbates
- Propylene glycol
- Sodium metabisulfite
- Sorbic acid
- Wool fat and related substances including lanolin (purified versions of wool fat have reduced the problem)

## Neonates

Caution is required when prescribing topical preparations for neonates—their large body surface area in relation to body mass increases susceptibility to toxicity from systemic absorption of substances applied to the skin. Topical preparations containing potentially sensitising substances such as corticosteroids, aminoglycosides, iodine, and parasiticide drugs should be avoided. Preparations containing alcohol should be avoided because they can dehydrate the skin, cause pain if applied to raw areas, and the alcohol can cause necrosis. In *preterm neonates*, the skin is more fragile and offers a poor barrier, especially in the first fortnight after birth. Preterm infants, especially if below 32 weeks corrected gestational age, may also require special measures to maintain skin hydration.

# 1 Dry and scaling skin disorders

## Emollient and barrier preparations

### Borderline substances

The preparations marked 'ACBS' are regarded as drugs when prescribed in accordance with the advice of the Advisory Committee on Borderline Substances for the clinical conditions listed. Prescriptions issued in accordance with this advice and endorsed 'ACBS' will normally not be investigated.

### Emollients

**Emollients** hydrate the skin, soften the skin, act as barrier to water and external irritants, and are indicated for all dry or scaling disorders. Their effects are short-lived and they should be applied frequently even after improvement occurs. They are useful in dry and eczematous disorders, and to a lesser extent in psoriasis; they should be applied immediately after washing or bathing to maximise the effect of skin hydration. The choice of an appropriate emollient will depend on the severity of the condition, the child's (or

carer's) preference, and the site of application. Ointments may exacerbate acne and folliculitis. Some ingredients rarely cause sensitisation and this should be suspected if an eczematous reaction occurs. The use of aqueous cream as a leave-on emollient may increase the risk of skin reactions, particularly in eczema.

Preparations such as **aqueous cream** and **emulsifying ointment** can be used as soap substitutes for handwashing and in the bath; the preparation is rubbed on the skin before rinsing off completely. The addition of a bath oil may also be helpful.

Urea is occasionally used with other topical agents such as corticosteroids to enhance penetration of the skin.

### Emollient bath and shower preparations

In dry skin conditions soap should be avoided.

The quantities of bath additives recommended for older children are suitable for an adult-size bath. Proportionately less should be used for a child-size bath or a washbasin; recommended bath additive quantities for younger children reflect this.

### MHRA/CHM update (April 2016): Fire risk with paraffin-based skin emollients on dressings and clothing

When patients are being treated with a paraffin-based emollient product that is covered by a dressing or clothing, there is a danger that smoking or using a naked flame could cause dressings or clothing to catch fire.

Patients should be advised not to smoke, use naked flames (or be near people who are smoking or using naked flames), or go near anything that may cause a fire while emollients are in contact with their medical dressings or clothing. Patients' clothing and bedding should be changed regularly—preferably daily—because emollients soak into fabric and can become a fire hazard.

### Barrier preparations

Barrier preparations often contain water-repellent substances such as dimeticone p. 728, natural oils, and paraffins, to help protect the skin from abrasion and irritation; they are used to protect intact skin around stomas and pressure sores, and as a barrier against nappy rash. In neonates, barrier preparations which do not contain potentially sensitising excipients are preferred. Where the skin has broken down, barrier preparations have a limited role in protecting adjacent skin. Barrier preparations with zinc oxide or titanium salts are used to aid healing of uninfected, excoriated skin.

### Nappy rash (Dermatitis)

The first line of treatment is to ensure that nappies are changed frequently and that tightly fitting water-proof pants are avoided. The rash may clear when left exposed to the air and a barrier preparation, applied with each nappy change, can be helpful. A mild corticosteroid such as hydrocortisone 0.5% or 1% p. 739 can be used if inflammation is causing discomfort, but it should be avoided in neonates. The barrier preparation should be applied after the corticosteroid preparation to prevent further damage. Preparations containing hydrocortisone should be applied for no more than a week; the hydrocortisone should be discontinued as soon as the inflammation subsides. The occlusive effect of nappies and waterproof pants may increase absorption of corticosteroids (see cautions). If the rash is associated with candidal infection, a topical antifungal such as clotrimazole cream p. 724 can be used. Topical antibacterial preparations can be used if bacterial infection is present; treatment with an oral antibacterial may occasionally be required in severe or recurrent infection. Hydrocortisone may be used in combination with antimicrobial preparations if there is considerable inflammation, erosion, and infection.

## Emollients

In the *neonate*, a preservative-free paraffin-based emollient hydrates the skin without affecting the normal skin flora; substances such as olive oil are also used. The development of blisters (epidermolysis bullosa) or ichthyosis may be alleviated by applying liquid and white soft paraffin ointment while awaiting dermatological investigation.

## DERMATOLOGICAL DRUGS > BARRIER PREPARATIONS

### Barrier creams and ointments

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### For use as a barrier preparation

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Ointment

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Woolfat and related substances (including lanolin)

##### ▶ Barrier creams and ointments (Non-proprietary)

Cetostearyl alcohol 20 mg per 1 gram, Zinc oxide 75 mg per 1 gram, Beeswax white 100 mg per 1 gram, Arachis oil 305 mg per 1 gram, Castor oil 500 mg per 1 gram | Zinc and Castor oil ointment | 100 gram [GSL] £1.46 | 500 gram [GSL] £4.99–£5.38 DT = £5.38

Zinc and Castor oil cream | 100 gram [GSL] £1.46

- ▶ Brands may include Metanium

##### Spray

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), woolfat and related substances (including lanolin)

##### ▶ Sprilon (J M Loveridge Ltd)

Dimeticone 10.4 mg per 1 gram, Zinc oxide 125 mg per 1 gram | Sprilon aerosol spray | 115 gram [GSL] £8.90 DT = £8.90

##### Cream

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Beeswax, butylated hydroxyanisole, butylated hydroxytoluene, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), chlorocresol, fragrances, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol, woolfat and related substances (including lanolin)

##### ▶ Conotrane (LEO Pharma)

Benzalkonium chloride 1 mg per 1 gram, Dimeticone 220 mg per 1 gram | Conotrane cream | 100 gram [GSL] £0.88 DT = £0.88 | 500 gram [GSL] £3.51

##### ▶ Drapolene (Supra Enterprises Ltd)

Benzalkonium chloride 100 microgram per 1 gram, Cetrimide 2 mg per 1 gram | Drapolene cream | 100 gram [GSL] £1.76 | 200 gram [GSL] £2.86 | 350 gram [GSL] £4.28

##### ▶ Siopel (Derma UK Ltd)

Dimeticone 3 mg per 1 gram, Dimeticone 1000 100 mg per 1 gram | Siopel cream | 50 gram [GSL] £4.65

##### ▶ Sudocrem (Teva UK Ltd)

Benzyl cinnamate 1.5 mg per 1 gram, Benzyl alcohol 3.9 mg per 1 gram, Benzyl benzoate 10.1 mg per 1 gram, Wool fat hydrous 40 mg per 1 gram, Zinc oxide 152.5 mg per 1 gram | Sudocrem antiseptic healing cream | 30 gram [GSL] £1.45 | 60 gram [GSL] £1.45 | 125 gram [GSL] £2.15 | 250 gram [GSL] £3.67 | 400 gram [GSL] £5.25

## DERMATOLOGICAL DRUGS > EMOLLIENTS

### Emollient bath and shower products, antimicrobial-containing

31-Aug-2016

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### DERMOL<sup>®</sup> 200 SHOWER EMOLLIENT

**Dry and pruritic skin conditions including eczema and dermatitis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: To be applied to the skin or used as a soap substitute

##### DERMOL<sup>®</sup> 600<sup>®</sup> BATH EMOLLIENT

**Dry and pruritic skin conditions including eczema and dermatitis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 1-23 months: 5–15 mL/bath, not to be used undiluted
- ▶ Child 2-17 years: 15–30 mL/bath, not to be used undiluted

##### DERMOL<sup>®</sup> WASH EMULSION

**Dry and pruritic skin conditions including eczema and dermatitis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: To be applied to the skin or used as a soap substitute

##### EMULSIDERM<sup>®</sup>

**Dry skin conditions including eczema and ichthyosis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 1-23 months: 5–10 mL/bath, alternatively, to be rubbed into dry skin until absorbed
- ▶ Child 2-17 years: 7–30 mL/bath, alternatively, to be rubbed into dry skin until absorbed

##### OLATUM<sup>®</sup> PLUS

**Topical treatment of eczema, including eczema at risk from infection**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 6-11 months: 1 mL/bath, not to be used undiluted
- ▶ Child 1-17 years: 1–2 capfuls/bath, not to be used undiluted

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

These preparations make skin and surfaces slippery—particular care is needed when bathing.

MHRA/CHM UPDATE (APRIL 2016): FIRE RISK WITH PARAFFIN-BASED SKIN EMOLLIENTS ON DRESSINGS OR CLOTHING  
See Emollient and barrier preparations p. 713.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Emollient bath additives should be added to bath water; hydration can be improved by soaking in the bath for 10–20 minutes. Some bath emollients can be applied to wet skin undiluted and rinsed off. Emollient preparations contained in tubs should be removed with a clean spoon or spatula to reduce bacterial contamination of the emollient. Emollients should be applied in the direction of hair growth to reduce the risk of folliculitis.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**  
Preparations containing an antibacterial should be avoided unless infection is present or is a frequent complication.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Bath additive

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Acetylated lanolin alcohols, isopropyl palmitate, polyacrylates

- ▶ **Dermol 600** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)  
Benzalkonium chloride 5 mg per 1 gram, Isopropyl myristate 250 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 250 mg per 1 gram Dermol 600 bath emollient | 600 ml [P] £7.55
- ▶ **Emulsiderm** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)  
Benzalkonium chloride 5 mg per 1 gram, Isopropyl myristate 250 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 250 mg per 1 gram Emulsiderm emollient | 300 ml [P] £3.85 | 1000 ml [P] £12.00
- ▶ **Oilatum Plus** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)  
Triclosan 20 mg per 1 gram, Benzalkonium chloride 60 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin light 525 mg per 1 gram Oilatum Plus bath additive | 500 ml [GSL] £7.22

**Liquid**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol)

- ▶ **Dermol 200** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)  
Benzalkonium chloride 1 mg per 1 gram, Chlorhexidine hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 gram, Isopropyl myristate 25 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 25 mg per 1 gram Dermol 200 shower emollient | 200 ml [P] £3.55
- ▶ **Dermol Wash** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)  
Benzalkonium chloride 1 mg per 1 gram, Chlorhexidine hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 gram, Isopropyl myristate 25 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 25 mg per 1 gram Dermol Wash cutaneous emulsion | 200 ml [P] £3.55

**Emollient bath and shower products, colloidal oatmeal-containing****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Endogenous and exogenous eczema | Xeroderma | Ichthyosis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 20–30 mL/bath, alternatively apply to wet skin and rinse

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

These preparations make skin and surfaces slippery—particular care is needed when bathing.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Emollient bath additives should be added to bath water; hydration can be improved by soaking in the bath for 10–20 minutes. Some bath emollients can be applied to wet skin undiluted and rinsed off. Emollient preparations contained in tubs should be removed with a clean spoon or spatula to reduce bacterial contamination of the emollient. Emollients should be applied in the direction of hair growth to reduce the risk of folliculitis.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

No licensed medicines listed.

**Emollient bath and shower products, paraffin-containing**

15-Aug-2016

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****AQUAMAX<sup>®</sup> WASH****Dry skin conditions**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: To be applied to wet or dry skin and rinse

**CETRABEN<sup>®</sup> BATH****Dry skin conditions, including eczema**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Neonate: 0.5 capful/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 0.5–1 capful/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1–2 capfuls/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse

**DERMALO<sup>®</sup>****Dermatitis | Dry skin conditions, including ichthyosis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Neonate: 5 mL/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 5–10 mL/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 15–20 mL/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse

**DOUBLEBASE<sup>®</sup> EMOLLIENT BATH ADDITIVE****Dry skin conditions including dermatitis and ichthyosis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Neonate: 5–10 mL/bath.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 5–10 mL/bath
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 15–20 mL/bath

**DOUBLEBASE<sup>®</sup> EMOLLIENT SHOWER GEL****Dry, chapped, or itchy skin conditions**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: To be applied to wet or dry skin and rinse, or apply to dry skin after showering

**E45<sup>®</sup> BATH OIL****Endogenous and exogenous eczema, xeroderma, and ichthyosis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Neonate: 5 mL/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 5–10 mL/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 15 mL/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse

**E45<sup>®</sup> WASH CREAM****Endogenous and exogenous eczema, xeroderma, and ichthyosis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: To be used as a soap substitute

**HYDOMOL<sup>®</sup> BATH AND SHOWER EMOLLIENT****Dry skin conditions | Eczema | Ichthyosis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Neonate: 0.5 capful/bath, alternatively apply to wet skin and rinse.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 0.5–2 capfuls/bath, alternatively apply to wet skin and rinse
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1–3 capfuls/bath, alternatively apply to wet skin and rinse

**LPL 63.4<sup>®</sup>****Dry skin conditions**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Neonate: 0.5 capful/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 0.5–2 capfuls/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1–3 capfuls/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse

**OILATUM<sup>®</sup> EMOLLIENT BATH ADDITIVE****Dry skin conditions including dermatitis and ichthyosis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Neonate: 0.5 capful/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse.

continued →

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Apply 0.5–2 capfuls/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1–3 capfuls/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse

**OILATUM® JUNIOR BATH ADDITIVE****Dry skin conditions including dermatitis and ichthyosis**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Neonate: 0.5 capful/bath, alternatively, apply to wet skin and rinse.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 0.5–2 capfuls/bath, alternatively, apply to wet skin and rinse
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1–3 capfuls/bath, alternatively, apply to wet skin and rinse

**QV® BATH OIL****Dry skin conditions including eczema, psoriasis, ichthyosis, and pruritus**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Neonate: 5 mL/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse.

- ▶ Child 1–11 months: 5 mL/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: 10 mL/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse

**QV® GENTLE WASH****Dry skin conditions including eczema, psoriasis, ichthyosis, and pruritus**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child: To be used as a soap substitute

**ZEROLATUM®****Dry skin conditions | Dermatitis | Ichthyosis**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 5–10 mL/bath
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 15–20 mL/bath

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

These preparations make the skin and surfaces slippery—particular care is needed when bathing.

MHRA/CHM UPDATE (APRIL 2016): FIRE RISK WITH PARAFFIN-BASED SKIN EMOLLIENTS ON DRESSINGS OR CLOTHING  
See Emollient and barrier preparations p. 713.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Emollient bath additives should be added to bath water; hydration can be improved by soaking in the bath for 10–20 minutes. Some bath emollients can be applied to wet skin undiluted and rinsed off. Emollient preparations contained in tubs should be removed with a clean spoon or spatula to reduce bacterial contamination of the emollient. Emollients should be applied in the direction of hair growth to reduce the risk of folliculitis.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Bath additive**

## CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Acetylated lanolin alcohols, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), fragrances, isopropyl palmitate

- ▶ **Cetraben** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

**Liquid paraffin light 828 mg per 1 gram** Cetraben emollient 82.8% bath additive | 500 ml [GSL] £5.75

- ▶ **Dermalo** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

**Acetylated wool alcohols 50 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 650 mg per 1 gram** Dermalo bath emollient | 500 ml [GSL] £3.44

- ▶ **Doublebase** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

**Liquid paraffin 650 mg per 1 gram** Doublebase emollient bath additive | 500 ml [GSL] £5.45

- ▶ **E45 emollient bath** (Forum Health Products Ltd)  
E45 emollient bath oil | 250 ml (ACBS) £3.30 | 500 ml (ACBS) £5.29
- ▶ **Hydromol** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Isopropyl myristate 130 mg per 1 ml, Liquid paraffin light 378 mg per 1 ml** Hydromol Bath & Shower emollient | 350 ml £3.91 | 500 ml £4.46 | 1000 ml £8.87
- ▶ **LPL** (Huxley Europe Ltd)  
**Liquid paraffin light 634 mg per 1 ml** LPL 63.4 bath additive and emollient | 500 ml £3.10 DT = £4.71
- ▶ **Oilatam** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)  
**Liquid paraffin light 634 mg per 1 ml** Oilatam Bath Formula | 150 ml [GSL] £2.95 DT = £2.95 | 300 ml [GSL] £5.02 DT = £5.02
- ▶ **Oilatam junior** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)  
**Liquid paraffin light 634 mg per 1 ml** Oilatam Junior bath additive | 150 ml [GSL] £2.95 DT = £2.95 | 250 ml [GSL] £4.44 DT = £2.75 | 300 ml [GSL] £5.02 DT = £5.02 | 600 ml [GSL] £6.67 DT = £6.67
- ▶ **QV** (Crawford Healthcare Ltd)  
**Liquid paraffin light 850.9 mg per 1 gram** QV 85.09% bath oil | 250 ml £2.93 | 500 ml £4.79
- ▶ **Zerolatum** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)  
**Acetylated wool alcohols 50 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 650 mg per 1 gram** Zerolatum Emollient bath additive | 500 ml £4.79

**Gel**

## CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol)

- ▶ **Doublebase** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

**Isopropyl myristate 150 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 150 mg per 1 gram** Doublebase emollient shower gel | 200 gram [P] £5.21

**Wash**

## CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), polysorbates

- ▶ **Aquamax** (Intrapharm Laboratories Ltd)

Aquamax wash | 250 gram £2.99

- ▶ **E45 emollient wash** (Forum Health Products Ltd)

E45 emollient wash cream | 250 ml (ACBS) £3.30

- ▶ **QV Gentle** (Crawford Healthcare Ltd)

QV Gentle wash | 250 ml £3.19 | 500 ml £5.32

## Emollient bath and shower products, soya-bean oil-containing

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****BALNEUM® BATH OIL****Dry skin conditions including those associated with dermatitis and eczema**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Neonate: 5–15 mL/bath, not to be used undiluted.

- ▶ Child 1–23 months: 5–15 mL/bath, not to be used undiluted
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 20–60 mL/bath, not to be used undiluted

**BALNEUM® PLUS BATH OIL****Dry skin conditions including those associated with dermatitis and eczema where pruritus also experienced**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Neonate: 5 mL/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse.

- ▶ Child 1–23 months: 5 mL/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse

- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 10–20 mL/bath, alternatively, to be applied to wet skin and rinse

**ZERONEUM®****Dry skin conditions including eczema**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 5 mL/bath
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 20 mL/bath



**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

These preparations make skin and surfaces slippery—particular care is needed when bathing.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Emollient bath additives should be added to bath water; hydration can be improved by soaking in the bath for 10–20 minutes. Some bath emollients can be applied to wet skin undiluted and rinsed off. Emollient preparations contained in tubs should be removed with a clean spoon or spatula to reduce bacterial contamination of the emollient. Emollients should be applied in the direction of hair growth to reduce the risk of folliculitis.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Bath additive**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxytoluene, fragrances, propylene glycol

- ▶ **Balneum** (Almirall Ltd)

Lauromacrogols 150 mg per 1 gram, Soya oil 829.5 mg per 1 gram Balneum Plus bath oil | 500 ml [GSL] £6.66

Soya oil 847.5 mg per 1 gram Balneum 84.75% bath oil |

500 ml [GSL] £5.38 DT = £5.38 | 1000 ml [GSL] £10.39 DT = £10.39

- ▶ **Zeroneum** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Soya oil 833.5 mg per 1 gram Zeroneum 83.35% bath additive | 500 ml £4.48

## Emollient bath and shower products, tar-containing

17-Aug-2016

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**POLYTAR EMOLLIENT®****Psoriasis, eczema, atopic and pruritic dermatoses**

- ▶ **TO THE SKIN**

- ▶ Child: 2–4 capfuls/bath, add 15–30 mL to an adult-size bath and proportionally less for a child's bath; soak for 20 minutes

**PSORIDERM® EMULSION****Psoriasis**

- ▶ **TO THE SKIN**

- ▶ Child: Up to 30 mL/bath, use 30mL in adult-size bath, and proportionately less for a child's bath, soak for 5 minutes

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

These preparations make skin and surfaces slippery—particular care is needed when bathing.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Emollient bath additives should be added to bath water; hydration can be improved by soaking in the bath for 10–20 minutes. Some bath emollients can be applied to wet skin undiluted and rinsed off. Emollient preparations contained in tubs should be removed with a clean spoon or spatula to reduce bacterial contamination of the emollient. Emollients should be applied in the direction of hair growth to reduce the risk of folliculitis.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Bath additive**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Isopropyl palmitate, polysorbates

- ▶ **Psoriderm** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

Coal tar distilled 400 mg per 1 ml Psoriderm Emulsion 40% bath additive | 200 ml [P] £2.74

## Emollient creams and ointments, antimicrobial-containing

17-Aug-2016

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Dry and pruritic skin conditions including eczema and dermatitis**

- ▶ **TO THE SKIN**

- ▶ Child: To be applied to the skin or used as a soap substitute

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

These preparations make skin and surfaces slippery—particular care is needed when bathing.

MHRA/CHM UPDATE (APRIL 2016): FIRE RISK WITH PARAFFIN-BASED SKIN EMOLLIENTS ON DRESSINGS OR CLOTHING

See Emollient and barrier preparations p. 713.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Emollients should be applied immediately after washing or bathing to maximise the effect of skin hydration. Emollient preparations contained in tubs should be removed with a clean spoon or spatula to reduce bacterial contamination of the emollient. Emollients should be applied in the direction of hair growth to reduce the risk of folliculitis.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Preparations containing an antibacterial should be avoided unless infection is present or is a frequent complication.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Cream**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol)

- ▶ **Dermol** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

Benzalkonium chloride 1 mg per 1 gram, Chlorhexidine hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 gram, Isopropyl myristate 100 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 100 mg per 1 gram Dermol cream | 100 gram [P] £2.86 | 500 gram [P] £6.63

**Liquid**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol)

- ▶ **Dermol 500** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

Benzalkonium chloride 1 mg per 1 gram, Chlorhexidine hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 gram, Isopropyl myristate 25 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 25 mg per 1 gram Dermol 500 lotion | 500 ml [P] £6.04

## Emollient creams and ointments, colloidal oatmeal-containing

01-Jun-2018

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Endogenous and exogenous eczema | Xeroderma | Ichthyosis**

- ▶ **TO THE SKIN**

- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

MHRA/CHM UPDATE (APRIL 2016): FIRE RISK WITH PARAFFIN-BASED SKIN EMOLLIENTS ON DRESSINGS OR CLOTHING

See Emollient and barrier preparations p. 713.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Emollients should be applied immediately after washing or bathing to maximise the effect of skin hydration. Emollient preparations contained in tubs should be removed with a clean spoon or spatula to reduce bacterial contamination of the emollient.

Emollients should be applied in the direction of hair growth to reduce the risk of folliculitis.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Form unstated

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, ceteostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), isopropyl palmitate

#### ► Aveeno (Johnson & Johnson Ltd)

Aveeno lotion | 500 ml (ACBS) £6.66

Aveeno cream | 100 ml (ACBS) £3.97 | 300 ml (ACBS) £6.80 | 500 ml (ACBS) £7.19

## Emollient creams and ointments, paraffin-containing

31-Aug-2016

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Dry skin conditions | Eczema | Psoriasis | Ichthyosis | Pruritus**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: (consult product literature)

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM UPDATE (APRIL 2016): FIRE RISK WITH PARAFFIN-BASED SKIN EMOLLIENTS ON DRESSINGS OR CLOTHING  
See Emollient and barrier preparations p. 713.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Emollients should be applied immediately after washing or bathing to maximise the effect of skin hydration. Emollient preparations contained in tubs should be removed with a clean spoon or spatula to reduce bacterial contamination of the emollient. Emollients should be applied in the direction of hair growth to reduce the risk of folliculitis.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Spray

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

#### ► Dermamist (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

White soft paraffin 100 mg per 1 gram Dermamist 10% spray | 250 ml [P] £5.97 DT = £5.97

#### ► Emollin (C D Medical Ltd)

Emollin aerosol spray | 150 ml £4.00 | 240 ml £6.39

#### Gel

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

#### ► AproDerm (Isopropyl myristate / liquid paraffin) (Fontus Health Ltd)

Isopropyl myristate 150 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 150 mg per 1 gram AproDerm gel | 100 gram £1.99 DT = £2.65 | 500 gram £3.99 DT = £5.83

#### ► Doublebase (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

Isopropyl myristate 150 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 150 mg per 1 gram Doublebase Dayleve gel | 100 gram [P] £2.65 DT = £2.65 | 500 gram [P] £6.29 DT = £5.83

Doublebase gel | 100 gram [P] £2.65 DT = £2.65 | 500 gram [P] £5.83 DT = £5.83 | 1000 gram [P] £10.98

Doublebase emollient wash gel | 200 gram [P] £5.21

Doublebase emollient shower gel | 200 gram [P] £5.21

#### ► Exmabase (Ascot Laboratories Ltd)

Isopropyl myristate 150 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 150 mg per 1 gram Exmabase gel | 500 gram £2.85 DT = £5.83

#### ► HypoBase (Aspire Pharma Ltd)

Isopropyl myristate 150 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 150 mg per 1 gram HypoBase gel | 500 gram £5.83 DT = £5.83

#### ► MyriBase (Penlan Healthcare Ltd)

Isopropyl myristate 150 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 150 mg per 1 gram MyriBase gel | 100 gram £2.12 DT = £2.65 | 500 gram £4.66 DT = £5.83

#### ► Zerodouble (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Isopropyl myristate 150 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 150 mg per 1 gram Zerodouble gel | 100 gram £2.25 DT = £2.65 | 475 gram £4.71 | 500 gram £4.90 DT = £5.83

#### ► Isomol (Dermato Logical Ltd)

Isopropyl myristate 150 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 150 mg per 1 gram isomol gel | 100 gram £1.99 DT = £2.65 | 500 gram £2.92 DT = £5.83

### Creem

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, ceteostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), chlorocresol, disodium edetate, fragrances, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), polysorbates, propylene glycol, sorbic acid, lanolin

#### ► Emollient creams and ointments, paraffin-containing (Non-proprietary)

Epimax cream | 100 gram £0.75 | 500 gram £2.49

#### ► Aquamol (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Aquamol cream | 50 gram £1.22 | 500 gram £6.40

#### ► CetraBen (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Liquid paraffin light 105 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 132 mg per 1 gram CetraBen cream | 50 gram £1.40 | 150 gram £3.98 | 500 gram £5.99 | 1050 gram £11.62

#### ► Diprobace (Bayer Plc)

Diprobace cream | 50 gram [GSL] £1.28 | 500 gram [GSL] £6.32

#### ► E45 (Forum Health Products Ltd)

Wool fat 10 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin light 126 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 145 mg per 1 gram E45 cream | 50 gram [GSL] £1.61 | 125 gram [GSL] £2.90 | 350 gram [GSL] £5.49 | 500 gram [GSL] £5.99

#### ► Enopen (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)

Liquid paraffin light 105 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 132 mg per 1 gram Enopen cream | 50 gram £1.40 | 150 gram £3.98 | 500 gram £5.99 | 1050 gram £11.62

#### ► Epaderm (Molnlycke Health Care Ltd)

Epaderm cream | 50 gram £1.70 | 150 gram £3.58 | 500 gram £6.95

#### ► ExCetra (Dermato Logical Ltd)

Liquid paraffin light 105 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 132 mg per 1 gram ExCetra cream | 100 gram £1.75 | 500 gram £2.95

#### ► ExmaQS (Ascot Laboratories Ltd)

Liquid paraffin light 60 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 150 mg per 1 gram ExmaQS cream | 500 gram £2.95

#### ► Exmaben (Ascot Laboratories Ltd)

Liquid paraffin light 105 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 132 mg per 1 gram Exmaben cream | 500 gram £4.25

#### ► Exmalatum (Ascot Laboratories Ltd)

Liquid paraffin light 60 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 150 mg per 1 gram Exmalatum cream | 500 gram £4.45

#### ► Lipobase (LEO Pharma)

Lipobase cream | 50 gram [P] £1.46

#### ► Oilatum (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

Liquid paraffin light 60 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 150 mg per 1 gram Oilatum cream | 150 gram [GSL] £3.06 DT = £3.06 | 500 ml [GSL] £5.28 DT = £5.28

#### ► Oilatum Junior (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

Liquid paraffin light 60 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 150 mg per 1 gram Oilatum Junior cream | 150 gram [GSL] £3.06 DT = £3.06 | 350 ml [GSL] £4.65 DT = £4.65 | 500 ml [GSL] £5.28 DT = £5.28

#### ► Soffen (Vitame Ltd)

Liquid paraffin light 105 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 132 mg per 1 gram Soffen cream | 500 gram £4.79

#### ► Unguentum M (Almirall Ltd)

Unguentum M cream | 100 gram [GSL] £2.78 | 500 gram [GSL] £8.48

#### ► ZeroAQ5 (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

ZeroAQ5 emollient cream | 500 gram £3.29

#### ► Zerobase (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Liquid paraffin 110 mg per 1 gram Zerobase 11% cream | 50 gram £1.04 | 500 gram £5.26

#### ► Zerocream (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Liquid paraffin 126 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 145 mg per 1 gram Zerocream | 50 gram £1.17 | 500 gram £4.08

#### ► Zeroguent (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

White soft paraffin 40 mg per 1 gram, Soya oil 50 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin light 80 mg per 1 gram Zeroguent cream | 100 gram £2.33 | 500 gram £6.99

**Ointment**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates

► **Emollient creams and ointments, paraffin-containing (Non-proprietary)**

Cetraben ointment | 125 gram £3.49 | 450 gram £5.39  
**Liquid paraffin 200 mg per 1 gram, Emulsifying wax 300 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 500 mg per 1 gram** Emulsifying ointment | 500 gram [GSL] £3.83 DT = £3.83 | 500 gram [S] DT = £3.83 | 500 gram [PoM] [S] DT = £3.83  
**Liquid paraffin 500 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 500 mg per 1 gram** AquaDerm Liquid Paraffin 50% in White Soft Paraffin ointment | 250 gram £1.75 | 500 gram £3.49 DT = £4.57  
 Bell's Emollient 50 ointment | 250 gram £2.06 | 500 gram £3.28 DT = £4.57  
 White soft paraffin 50% / Liquid paraffin 50% ointment | 250 gram £1.87–£1.92 | 500 gram £4.32 DT = £4.57 | 500 gram [P] £4.57 DT = £4.57

**Magnesium sulfate dried 5 mg per 1 gram, Phenoxyethanol 10 mg per 1 gram, Wool alcohols ointment 500 mg per 1 gram** AquaDerm Hydrous ointment | 500 gram £4.15  
 Hydrous ointment | 500 gram [GSL] [S]

**White soft paraffin 1 mg per 1 mg** White soft paraffin solid | 500 gram [GSL] £4.33 DT = £3.23 | 4500 gram [GSL] £19.17–£29.07  
**Yellow soft paraffin 1 mg per 1 mg** Yellow soft paraffin solid | 15 gram [GSL] £1.16–£1.21 | 500 gram [GSL] £18.40 DT = £18.40 | 4500 gram [GSL] £19.02

► **Diprobase** (Bayer Plc)

**Liquid paraffin 50 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 950 mg per 1 gram** Diprobase ointment | 50 gram [GSL] £1.28 DT = £1.28 | 500 gram [GSL] £5.99 DT = £5.99

► **Emelpin** (Vitame Ltd)

**Emulsifying wax 300 mg per 1 gram, Yellow soft paraffin 300 mg per 1 gram** Emelpin ointment | 125 gram £3.08 | 500 gram £5.22

► **Epaderm** (Molnlycke Health Care Ltd)

**Emulsifying wax 300 mg per 1 gram, Yellow soft paraffin 300 mg per 1 gram** Epaderm ointment | 125 gram £3.85 | 500 gram £6.53 | 1000 gram £12.12

► **Fifty:50** (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)

**Liquid paraffin 500 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 500 mg per 1 gram** Fifty:50 ointment | 250 gram £1.83 | 500 gram £3.66 DT = £4.57

► **Hydromol** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Emulsifying wax 300 mg per 1 gram, Yellow soft paraffin 300 mg per 1 gram** Hydromol ointment | 125 gram £2.92 | 500 gram £4.96 | 1000 gram £8.20

► **KreaMoint** (Essential-Healthcare Ltd)

**Liquid paraffin 500 mg per 1 gram, White soft paraffin 500 mg per 1 gram** KreaMoint 50:50 ointment | 500 gram £3.17 DT = £4.57

► **Thirty:30** (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)

**Emulsifying wax 300 mg per 1 gram, Yellow soft paraffin 300 mg per 1 gram** Thirty:30 ointment | 125 gram £3.81 | 250 gram £4.29 | 500 gram £6.47

► **Vaseline** (Unilever UK Home & Personal Care)

**White soft paraffin 1 mg per 1 mg** Vaseline Pure Petroleum jelly | 50 ml [GSL] [S]

**Liquid**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), isopropyl palmitate

► **E45** (Forum Health Products Ltd)

E45 lotion | 200 ml £2.45 | 500 ml £4.59

► **QV** (Crawford Healthcare Ltd)

**White soft paraffin 50 mg per 1 gram** QV 5% skin lotion | 250 ml £3.19 | 500 ml £5.32

**Emollients, urea-containing**

- **DRUG ACTION** Urea is a keratin softener and hydrating agent used in the treatment of dry, scaling conditions (including ichthyosis).

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****AQUADRATE**®**Dry, scaling, and itching skin**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply twice daily, to be applied thinly

**BALNEUM**® CREAM**Dry skin conditions**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply twice daily

**BALNEUM**® PLUS CREAM**Dry, scaling, and itching skin**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply twice daily

**CALMURID**®**Dry, scaling, and itching skin**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply twice daily, apply a thick layer for 3–5 minutes, massage into area, and remove excess. Can be diluted with aqueous cream (life of diluted cream is 14 days). Half-strength cream can be used for 1 week if stinging occurs

**DERMATONICS ONCE HEEL BALM**®**Dry skin on soles of feet**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child 12–17 years: Apply once daily

**E45**® ITCH RELIEF CREAM**Dry, scaling, and itching skin**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply twice daily

**EUCERIN**® INTENSIVE CREAM**Dry skin conditions including eczema, ichthyosis, xeroderma, and hyperkeratosis**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply twice daily, to be applied thinly and rubbed into area

**EUCERIN**® INTENSIVE LOTION**Dry skin conditions including eczema, ichthyosis, xeroderma, and hyperkeratosis**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply twice daily, to be applied sparingly and rubbed into area

**FLEXITOL**®**Dry skin on soles of feet and heels**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child 12–17 years: Apply 1–2 times a day

**HYDROMOL**® INTENSIVE**Dry, scaling, and itching skin**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply twice daily, to be applied thinly

**IMUDERM**® EMOLLIENT**Dry skin conditions including eczema, psoriasis or dermatitis**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply to skin or use as a soap substitute

**NUTRAPLUS**®**Dry, scaling, and itching skin**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply 2–3 times a day

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Emollients should be applied immediately after washing or bathing to maximise the effect of skin hydration. Emollient preparations contained in tubs should be removed with a clean spoon or spatula to reduce bacterial contamination of the emollient. Emollients should be applied in the direction of hair growth to reduce the risk of folliculitis.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Cream**

**EXCIPIENTS:** May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), isopropyl palmitate, polysorbates, propylene glycol, woolfat and related substances (including lanolin)

- **Aquadrate** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Urea 100 mg per 1 gram** Aquadrate 10% cream | 30 gram £1.64 | 100 gram £4.37

- **Balneum** (Almirall Ltd)

Balneum cream | 50 gram £2.85 | 500 gram £9.97

- **Balneum Plus** (Almirall Ltd)

**Lauroamagrols 30 mg per 1 gram, Urea 50 mg per**

**1 gram** Balneum Plus cream | 100 gram [GSL] £3.29 DT = £4.28 | 500 gram [GSL] £14.99 DT = £14.99

- **Calmurid** (Galderma (UK) Ltd)

**Lactic acid 50 mg per 1 gram, Urea 100 mg per 1 gram** Calmurid cream | 100 gram [P] £5.75 DT = £5.75 | 500 gram [P] £33.40 DT = £33.40

- **E45 Itch Relief** (Forum Health Products Ltd)

**Lauroamagrols 30 mg per 1 gram, Urea 50 mg per 1 gram** E45

Itch Relief cream | 50 gram [GSL] £2.81 DT = £2.81 | 100 gram [GSL] £4.28 DT = £4.28 | 500 gram [GSL] £14.99 DT = £14.99

- **Eucerin Intensive** (Beiersdorf UK Ltd)

**Urea 100 mg per 1 gram** Eucerin Intensive 10% cream | 100 ml [GSL] £7.59

- **Hydromol Intensive** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Urea 100 mg per 1 gram** Hydromol Intensive 10% cream | 30 gram £1.65 | 100 gram £4.41

- **imuDERM** (Clinisupplies)

imuDERM emollient | 500 gram £6.55

- **Nutraplus** (Galderma (UK) Ltd)

**Urea 100 mg per 1 gram** Nutraplus 10% cream | 100 gram [P] £4.37

##### **Liquid**

**EXCIPIENTS:** May contain Benzyl alcohol, isopropyl palmitate

- **Eucerin Intensive** (Beiersdorf UK Ltd)

**Urea 100 mg per 1 gram** Eucerin Intensive 10% lotion | 250 ml [GSL] £7.93 DT = £7.93

##### **Balms**

**EXCIPIENTS:** May contain Beeswax, benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), fragrances, lanolin

- **Dermatronics Once** (Dermatronics Ltd)

Dermatronics Once Heel Balm | 75 ml £3.60 | 200 ml £8.50

- **Flexitol** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Flexitol 25% Urea Heel Balm | 40 gram £2.75 | 75 gram £3.80 | 200 gram £9.40 | 500 gram £14.75

whenever possible swabs should be taken for bacteriological examination before beginning treatment.

Neomycin sulfate p. 722 applied topically may cause sensitisation and cross-sensitivity with other aminoglycoside antibacterials such as gentamicin p. 312 may occur. Topical antibacterials applied over large areas can cause systemic toxicity; ototoxicity with neomycin sulfate and with polymyxins p. 723 is a particular risk for neonates and children with renal impairment.

Superficial bacterial infection of the skin may be treated with a topical antiseptic such as povidone-iodine p. 679 which also softens crusts, or hydrogen peroxide 1% cream p. 704.

Bacterial infections such as *impetigo* and *folliculitis* can be treated with a short course of topical fusidic acid; mupirocin p. 724 should be used only to treat meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*.

For extensive or long-standing impetigo, an oral antibacterial such as flucloxacillin p. 345 (or clarithromycin p. 330 in children with penicillin-allergy), should be used. A mild antiseptic may help to soften crusts. Mild antiseptics may be useful in reducing the spread of infection, but there is little evidence to support the use of topical antiseptics alone in the treatment of impetigo.

*Cellulitis*, a rapidly spreading deeply seated inflammation of the skin and subcutaneous tissue, requires systemic antibacterial treatment. Lower leg infections or infections spreading around wounds are almost always cellulitis.

*Erysipelas*, a superficial infection with clearly defined edges (and often affecting the face), is also treated with a systemic antibacterial.

*Staphylococcal scalded-skin syndrome* requires urgent treatment with a systemic antibacterial, such as flucloxacillin.

Mupirocin is not related to any other antibacterial in use; it is effective for skin infections, particularly those due to Gram-positive organisms but it is not indicated for pseudomonal infection. Although *Staphylococcus aureus* strains with low-level resistance to mupirocin are emerging, it is generally useful in infections resistant to other antibacterials. To avoid the development of resistance, mupirocin or fusidic acid should not be used for longer than 10 days and local microbiology advice should be sought before using it in hospital. In the presence of mupirocin-resistant MRSA infection, a topical antiseptic, such as povidone-iodine, chlorhexidine p. 703, or alcohol, can be used; their use should be discussed with the local microbiologist.

Mupirocin ointment contains macrogols; extensive absorption of macrogols through the mucous membranes or through application to thin or damaged skin may result in renal toxicity, especially in neonates. Mupirocin nasal ointment is formulated in a paraffin base and may be more suitable for the treatment of MRSA-infected open wound in neonates.

Metronidazole gel p. 723 is used topically in children to reduce the odour associated with anaerobic infections and for the treatment of periorificial rosacea; oral metronidazole is used to treat wounds infected with anaerobic bacteria.

Retapamulin p. 724 can be used for impetigo and other superficial bacterial skin infections caused by *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Streptococcus pyogenes* that are resistant to first-line topical antibacterials. However, it is not effective against MRSA.

Silver sulfadiazine p. 723 is licensed for the prevention and treatment of infection in burns but the use of appropriate dressings may be more effective. Systemic effects may occur following extensive application of silver sulfadiazine; its use is not recommended in neonates.

## 2 Infections of the skin

### Skin infections

#### Antibacterial preparations for the skin

Topical antibacterial preparations are used to treat localised bacterial skin infections caused by Gram-positive organisms (particularly by staphylococci or streptococci). Systemic antibacterial treatment is more appropriate for deep-seated skin infections.

Problems associated with the use of topical antibacterials include bacterial resistance, contact sensitisation, and superinfection. In order to minimise the development of resistance, antibacterials used systemically (e.g. fusidic acid p. 357) should not generally be chosen for topical use. *Resistant organisms* are more common in hospitals, and

### Antibacterial preparations also used systemically

Fusidic acid is a narrow-spectrum antibacterial used for staphylococcal infections. Fusidic acid has a role in the treatment of impetigo.

An ointment containing fusidic acid is used in the fissures of angular cheilitis when associated with staphylococcal infection. See Oropharyngeal fungal infections p. 709 for further information on angular cheilitis.

Metronidazole is used topically to treat rosacea and to reduce the odour associated with anaerobic infections; oral metronidazole is used to treat wounds infected with anaerobic bacteria.

### Antifungal preparations for the skin

Most localised fungal infections are treated with topical preparations. To prevent relapse, local antifungal treatment should be continued for 1–2 weeks after the disappearance of all signs of infection. Systemic therapy is necessary for scalp infection or if the skin infection is widespread, disseminated or intractable; although topical therapy may be used to treat some nail infections, systemic therapy is more effective. Specimens of scale, nail or hair should be sent for mycological examination before starting treatment, unless the diagnosis is certain.

#### Dermatophytoses

Ringworm infection can affect the scalp (tinea capitis), body (tinea corporis), groin (tinea cruris), hand (tinea manuum), foot (tinea pedis, athlete's foot), or nail (tinea unguium, onychomycosis). Tinea capitis is a common childhood infection that requires systemic treatment with an oral antifungal; additional application of a topical antifungal, during the early stages of treatment, may reduce the risk of transmission. A topical antifungal can also be used to treat asymptomatic carriers of scalp ringworm.

Tinea corporis and tinea pedis infections in children respond to treatment with a topical **imidazole** (clotrimazole p. 724, econazole nitrate p. 725, or miconazole p. 725) or terbinafine cream p. 726. Nystatin p. 710 is less effective against tinea.

**Compound benzoic acid ointment** (Whitfield's ointment) has been used for ringworm infections but it is cosmetically less acceptable than proprietary preparations. Antifungal dusting powders are of little therapeutic value in the treatment of fungal skin infections and may cause skin irritation; they may have some role in preventing re-infection.

Antifungal treatment may not be necessary in asymptomatic children with tinea infection of the nails. If treatment is necessary, a systemic antifungal is more effective than topical therapy. However, topical application of tioconazole p. 726 may be useful for treating early onychomycosis when involvement is limited to mild distal disease, or for superficial white onychomycosis, or where there are contra-indications to systemic therapy. Chronic paronychia on the fingers (usually due to a candidal infection) should be treated with topical clotrimazole or nystatin, but these preparations should be used with caution in children who suck their fingers. Chronic paronychia of the toes (usually due to dermatophyte infection) can be treated with topical terbinafine.

#### Pityriasis versicolor

Pityriasis (tinea) versicolor can be treated with ketoconazole shampoo p. 725 or **selenium sulfide** shampoo. Topical imidazole antifungals such as clotrimazole, econazole nitrate and miconazole or topical terbinafine are alternatives, but large quantities may be required.

If topical therapy fails, or if the infection is widespread, pityriasis versicolor is treated systemically with an azole antifungal. Relapse is common, especially in the immunocompromised.

### Candidiasis

Candidal skin infections can be treated with topical imidazole antifungals clotrimazole p. 724, econazole nitrate p. 725, or miconazole p. 725; topical terbinafine p. 726 is an alternative. Topical application of nystatin p. 710 is also effective for candidiasis but it is ineffective against dermatophytosis. Refractory candidiasis requires systemic treatment generally with a triazole such as fluconazole p. 374; systemic treatment with griseofulvin p. 379 or terbinafine is **not appropriate** for refractory candidiasis. See the treatment of oral candidiasis and for the management of nappy rash.

#### Angular cheilitis

Miconazole cream is used in the fissures of angular cheilitis when associated with *Candida*.

### Compound topical preparations

Combination of an imidazole and a mild corticosteroid (such as hydrocortisone 1% p. 739) may be of value in the treatment of eczematous intertrigo and, in the first few days only, of a severely inflamed patch of ringworm. Combination of a mild corticosteroid with either an imidazole or nystatin may be of use in the treatment of *intertriginous eczema* associated with candida.

### Antiviral preparations for the skin

Aciclovir cream p. 729 is used for the treatment of initial and recurrent labial, cutaneous, and genital *herpes simplex infections* in children; treatment should begin as early as possible. Systemic treatment is necessary for buccal or vaginal infections or if cold sores recur frequently.

#### Herpes labialis

Aciclovir cream can be used for the treatment of initial and recurrent labial herpes simplex infections (cold sores). It is best applied at the earliest possible stage, usually when prodromal changes of sensation are felt in the lip and before vesicles appear.

Penciclovir cream is also licensed for the treatment of herpes labialis; it needs to be applied more frequently than aciclovir cream.

### Parasitocidal preparations for the skin

#### Suitable quantities of parasitocidal preparations

Area of body	Skin creams	Lotions	Cream rinses
Scalp (head lice)		50–100 mL	50–100 mL
Body (scabies)	30–60 g	100 mL	
Body (crab lice)	30–60 g	100 mL	
These amounts are usually suitable for a child 12–17 years for single application.			

#### Scabies

Permethrin p. 729 is used for the treatment of *scabies* (*Sarcoptes scabiei*); malathion p. 729 can be used if permethrin is inappropriate.

Benzyl benzoate is an irritant and should be avoided in children; it is less effective than malathion and permethrin.

Ivermectin p. 383 (available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) by mouth has been used, in combination with topical drugs, for the treatment of hyperkeratotic (crusted or 'Norwegian') scabies that does not respond to topical treatment alone.

#### Application

Although acaricides have traditionally been applied after a hot bath, this is **not** necessary and there is even evidence that a hot bath may increase absorption into the blood, removing them from their site of action on the skin.

All members of the affected household should be treated simultaneously. Treatment should be applied to the whole



body including the scalp, neck, face, and ears. Particular attention should be paid to the webs of the fingers and toes and lotion brushed under the ends of nails. It is now recommended that malathion and permethrin should be applied twice, one week apart; in the case of benzyl benzoate in adults, up to 3 applications on consecutive days may be needed. It is important to warn users to reapply treatment to the hands if they are washed. Patients with hyperkeratotic scabies may require 2 or 3 applications of acaricide on consecutive days to ensure that enough penetrates the skin crusts to kill all the mites.

#### Itching

The *itch* and *eczema* of scabies persists for some weeks after the infestation has been eliminated and treatment for pruritus and *eczema* may be required. Application of crotamiton p. 752 can be used to control itching after treatment with more effective acaricides. A topical corticosteroid may help to reduce itch and inflammation after scabies has been treated successfully; however, persistent symptoms suggest that scabies eradication was not successful. Oral administration of a **sedating antihistamine** at night may also be useful.

#### Head lice

Dimeticone p. 728 is effective against head lice (*Pediculus humanus capitis*) and acts on the surface of the organism. Malathion, an organophosphorus insecticide, is an alternative, but resistance has been reported. Benzyl benzoate is licensed for the treatment of head lice but it is not recommended for use in children.

Head lice infestation (pediculosis) should be treated using lotion or liquid formulations only if live lice are present. Shampoos are diluted too much in use to be effective. A contact time of 8–12 hours or overnight treatment is recommended for lotions and liquids; a 2-hour treatment is not sufficient to kill eggs.

In general, a course of treatment for head lice should be 2 applications of product 7 days apart to kill lice emerging from any eggs that survive the first application. All affected household members should be treated at the same time.

**MHRA/CHM advice:** *Head lice eradication products: risk of serious burns if treated hair is exposed to open flames or other sources of ignition (March 2018)*

Some products for the eradication of head lice infestations are combustible/flammable when on the hair and can ignite and cause serious harm in the presence of an open flame or other source of ignition such as when lighting cigarettes.

Patients and carers should be advised on the safe and correct use of head lice eradication treatments and if appropriate, should be advised that they should not smoke around treated hair and that it should be kept away from open flames or other sources of ignition, including in the morning after overnight application until hair is washed.

#### Wet combing methods

Head lice can be mechanically removed by combing wet hair meticulously with a plastic detection comb (probably for at least 30 minutes each time) over the whole scalp at 4-day intervals for a minimum of 2 weeks, and continued until no lice are found on 3 consecutive sessions; hair conditioner or vegetable oil can be used to facilitate the process.

Several devices for the removal of head lice such as combs and topical solutions, are available and some are prescribable on the NHS.

The Drug Tariffs can be accessed online at:

- National Health Service Drug Tariff for England and Wales: [www.ppa.org.uk/ppa/edt\\_intro.htm](http://www.ppa.org.uk/ppa/edt_intro.htm)
- Health and Personal Social Services for Northern Ireland Drug Tariff: [www.hscbusiness.hscni.net/services/2034.htm](http://www.hscbusiness.hscni.net/services/2034.htm)
- Scottish Drug Tariff: [www.isdscotland.org/Health-topics/Prescribing-and-Medicines/Scottish-Drug-Tariff/](http://www.isdscotland.org/Health-topics/Prescribing-and-Medicines/Scottish-Drug-Tariff/)

#### Crab lice

Permethrin p. 729 and malathion p. 729 are used to eliminate *crab lice* (*Phthirus pubis*); permethrin is not licensed for treatment of crab lice in children under 18 years. An aqueous preparation should be applied, allowed to dry naturally and washed off after 12 hours; a second treatment is needed after 7 days to kill lice emerging from surviving eggs. All surfaces of the body should be treated, including the scalp, neck, and face (paying particular attention to the eyebrows and other facial hair). A different insecticide should be used if a course of treatment fails.

#### Parasitidal preparations

Dimeticone p. 728 coats head lice and interferes with water balance in lice by preventing the excretion of water; it is less active against eggs and treatment should be repeated after 7 days.

Malathion is recommended for *scabies*, *head lice* and *crab lice*. The risk of systemic effects associated with 1–2 applications of malathion is considered to be very low; however, except in the treatment of hyperkeratotic scabies in children, applications of malathion liquid repeated at intervals of less than 1 week or application for more than 3 consecutive weeks should be **avoided** since the likelihood of eradication of lice is not increased.

Permethrin is effective for *scabies*. It is also active against *head lice* but the formulation and licensed methods of application of the current products make them unsuitable for the treatment of head lice. Permethrin is also effective against *crab lice* but it is not licensed for this purpose in children under 18 years.

## 2.1 Bacterial skin infections

### ANTIBACTERIALS > AMINOGLYCOSIDES

#### Neomycin sulfate

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Bacterial skin infections

##### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply up to 3 times a day, for short-term use only

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Neomycin Cream BPC*—no information available.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Neonates

##### • CAUTIONS

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** If large areas of skin are being treated ototoxicity may be a hazard in children, particularly in those with renal impairment.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: neomycin

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Sensitisation (cross sensitivity with other aminoglycosides may occur)

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Ototoxicity may be a hazard if large areas of skin are treated.

- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Neomycin sulfate cream is less suitable for prescribing.

##### • MEDICINAL FORMS

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: cream

## ANTIBACTERIALS > NITROIMIDAZOLE DERIVATIVES

### Metronidazole

- **DRUG ACTION** Metronidazole is an antimicrobial drug with high activity against anaerobic bacteria and protozoa.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### ACEA®

##### Acute inflammatory exacerbation of rosacea

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: Apply twice daily, to be applied thinly

##### ANABACT®

##### Malodorous fungating tumours and malodorous gravitational and decubitus ulcers

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied to clean wound and covered with non-adherent dressing

##### METROGEL®

##### Acute inflammatory exacerbation of rosacea

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: Apply twice daily, to be applied thinly

##### Malodorous fungating tumours

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied to clean wound and covered with non-adherent dressing

##### METROSA®

##### Acute exacerbation of rosacea

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: Apply twice daily, to be applied thinly

##### ROSICED®

##### Inflammatory papules and pustules of rosacea

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: Apply twice daily for 6 weeks (longer if necessary)

##### ROZEX® CREAM

##### Inflammatory papules, pustules and erythema of rosacea

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: Apply twice daily

##### ROZEX® GEL

##### Inflammatory papules, pustules and erythema of rosacea

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: Apply twice daily

##### ZYOMET®

##### Acute inflammatory exacerbation of rosacea

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: Apply twice daily, to be applied thinly

#### ● UNLICENSED USE

METROGEL®, METROSA®, ROSICED®, ROZEX® CREAM, ROZEX® GEL, ZYOMET® Not licensed for use in children.

ANABACT®, ACEA® Not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid exposure to strong sunlight or UV light

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: metronidazole

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Metronidazole for bacterial infections [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/metronidazole-bacterial-infections](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/metronidazole-bacterial-infections)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, suppository, cream, gel

##### Gel

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, disodium edetate, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

- ▶ **ACEA** (Ferndale Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Metronidazole 7.5 mg per 1 gram** Acea 0.75% gel | 40 gram [PoM] £9.95 DT = £22.63

- ▶ **Anabact** (Cambridge Healthcare Supplies Ltd)

**Metronidazole 7.5 mg per 1 gram** Anabact 0.75% gel | 15 gram [PoM] £4.47 DT = £4.47 | 30 gram [PoM] £7.89 | 40 gram [PoM] £15.89 DT = £22.63

- ▶ **Metrogel** (Galderma (UK) Ltd)

**Metronidazole 7.5 mg per 1 gram** Metrogel 0.75% gel | 40 gram [PoM] £22.63 DT = £22.63

- ▶ **Metrosa** (M & A Pharmachem Ltd)

**Metronidazole 7.5 mg per 1 gram** Metrosa 0.75% gel | 30 gram [PoM] £12.00 | 40 gram [PoM] £19.90 DT = £22.63

- ▶ **Rozex** (Galderma (UK) Ltd)

**Metronidazole 7.5 mg per 1 gram** Rozex 0.75% gel | 30 gram [PoM] £6.60 | 40 gram [PoM] £9.88 DT = £22.63

- ▶ **Zyomet** (AMCo)

**Metronidazole 7.5 mg per 1 gram** Zyomet 0.75% gel | 30 gram [PoM] £12.00

##### Cream

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, isopropyl palmitate, propylene glycol

- ▶ **Rosiced** (Pierre Fabre Dermo-Cosmetique)

**Metronidazole 7.5 mg per 1 gram** Rosiced 0.75% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £6.60 DT = £6.60

- ▶ **Rozex** (Galderma (UK) Ltd)

**Metronidazole 7.5 mg per 1 gram** Rozex 0.75% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £6.60 DT = £6.60 | 40 gram [PoM] £9.88 DT = £9.88

## ANTIBACTERIALS > POLYMYXINS

### Polymyxins

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Bacterial skin infections

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply twice daily, may be applied more frequently if required

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

#### ● CAUTIONS

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** If large areas of skin are being treated nephrotoxicity and neurotoxicity may be a hazard, particularly in children with renal impairment.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: polymyxins

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Sensitisation

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

## ANTIBACTERIALS > SULFONAMIDES

### Silver sulfadiazine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Prophylaxis and treatment of infection in burn wounds

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply daily, may be applied more frequently if very exudative

##### For conservative management of finger-tip injuries

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply every 2–3 days, consult product literature for details

continued →

**Adjunct to prophylaxis of infection in skin graft donor sites and extensive abrasions**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child: (consult product literature)

**Adjunct to short-term treatment of infection in pressure sores**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child: (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** No age range specified by manufacturer.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Not recommended for neonates

- **CAUTIONS** G6PD deficiency

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Plasma-sulfadiazine concentrations may approach therapeutic levels with *side-effects* and *interactions* as for sulfonamides if large areas of skin are treated.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: silver sulfadiazine

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Leucopenia · skin reactions
  - **Rare or very rare** Argyria (following treatment of large areas of skin or long term use) · renal failure
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Leucopenia developing 2–3 days after starting treatment of burns patients is reported usually to be self-limiting and silver sulfadiazine need not usually be discontinued provided blood counts are monitored carefully to ensure return to normality within a few days.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with sensitivity to sulfonamides.

- **PREGNANCY** Risk of neonatal haemolysis and methaemoglobinaemia in third trimester.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Small risk of kernicterus in jaundiced infants and of haemolysis in G6PD-deficient infants.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution if significant impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution if significant impairment.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor for leucopenia.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Apply with sterile applicator.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Cream**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates, propylene glycol

- **Flamazine** (Smith & Nephew Healthcare Ltd)  
**Sulfadiazine silver 10 mg per 1 gram** Flamazine 1% cream |  
20 gram [PoM] £2.91 | 50 gram [PoM] £3.85 DT = £3.85 |  
250 gram [PoM] £10.32 DT = £10.32 | 500 gram [PoM] £18.27 DT =  
£18.27

**ANTIBACTERIALS > OTHER****Mupirocin**

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Bacterial skin infections, particularly those caused by Gram-positive organisms (except pseudomonal infection)**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child: Apply up to 3 times a day for up to 10 days

- **UNLICENSED USE** Mupirocin ointment licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer). *Bactroban*® cream not recommended for use in children under 1 year.

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Skin reactions

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution when mupirocin ointment used in moderate or severe impairment because it contains macrogols (polyethylene glycol).

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Ointment**

- **Mupirocin (Non-proprietary)**

**Mupirocin 20 mg per 1 gram** Mupirocin 2% ointment |  
15 gram [PoM] £12.50 DT = £5.26

- **Bactroban** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Mupirocin 20 mg per 1 gram** Bactroban 2% ointment |  
15 gram [PoM] £5.26 DT = £5.26

**Cream**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol)

- **Bactroban** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Mupirocin (as Mupirocin calcium) 20 mg per 1 gram** Bactroban 2% cream | 15 gram [PoM] £5.26 DT = £5.26

**Retapamulin**

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Superficial bacterial skin infection caused by *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Streptococcus pyogenes* (if resistant to first line topical antibacterials)**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child 9 months–17 years: Apply twice daily for 5 days, to be applied thinly, maximum area of skin treated 2% of body surface area, review treatment if no response within 2–3 days

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Contact with eyes · contact with mucous membranes

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Uncommon** Contact dermatitis

- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (March 2008) that retapamulin (*Altargo*®) is **not** recommended for use within NHS Scotland for the treatment of superficial skin infections.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

No licensed medicines listed.

**2.2 Fungal skin infections**

**Other drugs used for Fungal skin infections** Griseofulvin, p. 379 · Hydrocortisone with clotrimazole, p. 743

**ANTIFUNGALS > IMIDAZOLE ANTIFUNGALS****Clotrimazole**

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Fungal skin infections**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child: Apply 2–3 times a day

- **CAUTIONS** Contact with eyes and mucous membranes should be avoided

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antifungals, azoles

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Oedema · pain · paraesthesia · skin reactions · syncope
- **PREGNANCY** Minimal absorption from skin; not known to be harmful.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Spray may be useful for application of clotrimazole to large or hairy areas of the skin.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: powder

#### Cream

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates

##### ► Clotrimazole (Non-proprietary)

Clotrimazole 10 mg per 1 gram Clotrimazole 1% cream | 20 gram [P] £2.06 DT = £0.72 | 50 gram [P] £5.45 DT = £1.80

##### ► Canesten (Bayer Plc)

Clotrimazole 10 mg per 1 gram Canesten 1% cream | 20 gram [P] £2.20 DT = £0.72 | 50 gram [P] £3.50 DT = £1.80  
Canesten Antifungal 1% cream | 20 gram [P] £1.85 DT = £0.72  
Canesten Dual Action 1% cream | 15 gram [GSL] £2.14 | 30 gram [GSL] £2.76

Clotrimazole 20 mg per 1 gram Canesten 2% thrush cream | 20 gram [P] £4.76 DT = £4.76

Clotrimazole 100 mg per 1 gram Canesten Internal 10% cream | 5 gram [P] £6.23 DT = £6.23  
Canesten 10% VC cream | 5 gram [PoM] £4.50 DT = £6.23

#### Liquid

##### ► Canesten (Bayer Plc)

Clotrimazole 10 mg per 1 ml Canesten 1% solution | 20 ml [P] £2.30 DT = £2.30

#### Spray

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

EXCIPIENTS: May contain propylene glycol

##### ► Canesten (Bayer Plc)

Clotrimazole 10 mg per 1 ml Canesten Dermatological 1% spray | 40 ml [P] £4.72 DT = £4.72

Combinations available: *Hydrocortisone with clotrimazole*, p. 743

## Econazole nitrate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Fungal skin infections

- TO THE SKIN
- Child: Apply twice daily

##### Fungal nail infections

- BY TRANSUNGUAL APPLICATION
- Child: Apply once daily, applied under occlusive dressing

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid contact with eyes and mucous membranes

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- Common or very common Pain · skin reactions
- Uncommon Swelling
- Frequency not known Angioedema

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Treatment should be discontinued if side-effects are severe.

- **PREGNANCY** Minimal absorption from skin; not known to be harmful.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Cream

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxyanisole, fragrances

##### ► Pevaryl (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

Econazole nitrate 10 mg per 1 gram Pevaryl 1% cream | 30 gram [P] £3.71

## Ketoconazole

20-Jul-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Treatment of seborrhoeic dermatitis and dandruff

###### ► TO THE SKIN USING SHAMPOO

- Child 12–17 years: Apply twice weekly for 2–4 weeks, leave preparation on for 3–5 minutes before rinsing

##### Prophylaxis of seborrhoeic dermatitis and dandruff

###### ► TO THE SKIN USING SHAMPOO

- Child 12–17 years: Apply every 1–2 weeks, leave preparation on for 3–5 minutes before rinsing

##### Treatment of pityriasis versicolor

###### ► TO THE SKIN USING SHAMPOO

- Child 12–17 years: Apply once daily for maximum 5 days, leave preparation on for 3–5 minutes before rinsing

##### Prophylaxis of pityriasis versicolor

###### ► TO THE SKIN USING SHAMPOO

- Child 12–17 years: Apply once daily for up to 3 days before sun exposure, leave preparation on for 3–5 minutes before rinsing

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid contact with eyes · avoid contact with mucous membranes

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antifungals, azoles

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- Uncommon Excessive tearing · folliculitis · hair changes · skin reactions
- Rare or very rare Eye irritation

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Can be sold to the public for the prevention and treatment of dandruff and seborrhoeic dermatitis of the scalp as a shampoo formulation containing ketoconazole maximum 2%, in a pack containing maximum 120 mL and labelled to show a maximum frequency of application of once every 3 days.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Shampoo

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Imidurea

##### ► Ketoconazole (Non-proprietary)

Ketoconazole 20 mg per 1 gram Ketoconazole 2% shampoo | 120 ml [PoM] £3.60 DT = £3.14

##### ► Dandrazol (Transdermal Ltd)

Ketoconazole 20 mg per 1 gram Dandrazol Anti-dandruff 2% shampoo | 60 ml [GSL] £3.42 | 100 ml [GSL] £5.28  
Dandrazol 2% shampoo | 120 ml [PoM] £3.39 DT = £3.14

##### ► Nizoral (Janssen-Cilag Ltd, McNeil Products Ltd)

Ketoconazole 20 mg per 1 gram Nizoral 2% shampoo | 120 ml [PoM] £3.59 DT = £3.14  
Nizoral anti-dandruff 2% shampoo | 60 ml [GSL] £4.08  
Nizoral Dandruff 2% shampoo | 100 ml [P] £6.28

## Miconazole

11-Oct-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Fungal skin infections

###### ► TO THE SKIN

- Neonate: Apply twice daily continuing for 10 days after lesions have healed.

- Child: Apply twice daily continuing for 10 days after lesions have healed

##### Fungal nail infections

###### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply 1–2 times a day

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 • contact with eyes and mucous membranes should be avoided
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antifungals, azoles
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Dry mouth • nausea • oral disorders • vomiting
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Skin reactions • taste altered
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema • choking • diarrhoea • hepatitis • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
- **PREGNANCY** Absorbed from the skin in small amounts; manufacturer advises caution.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises caution—no information available.
- **PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**  
Dental practitioners' formulary  
Miconazole cream may be prescribed.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Cream

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxyanisole

- ▶ **Daktarin** (McNeil Products Ltd, Janssen-Cilag Ltd)  
**Miconazole nitrate 20 mg per 1 gram** Daktarin 2% cream | 15 gram [P] £2.51 | 30 gram [P] £1.82 DT = £1.82

##### Powder

- ▶ **Daktarin** (McNeil Products Ltd)  
**Miconazole nitrate 20 mg per 1 gram** Daktarin 2% powder | 20 gram [P] £2.95 DT = £2.78

## Tioconazole

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Fungal nail infection

###### BY TRANSUNGUAL APPLICATION

- ▶ **Child:** Apply twice daily usually for up to 6 months (may be extended to 12 months), apply to nails and surrounding skin

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).
- **CAUTIONS** Contact with eyes and mucous membranes should be avoided • use with caution if child likely to suck affected digits
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Peripheral oedema
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Skin reactions
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Nail disorder • pain • paraesthesia • periorbital oedema
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Paint

- ▶ **Tioconazole (Non-proprietary)**  
**Tioconazole 283 mg per 1 ml** Tioconazole 283mg/ml medicated nail lacquer | 12 ml [PoM] £27.38-£28.74 DT = £28.74
- ▶ **Trosyl** (Pfizer Ltd)  
**Tioconazole 283 mg per 1 ml** Trosyl 283mg/ml nail solution | 12 ml [PoM] £27.38 DT = £28.74

## ANTIFUNGALS > OTHER

## Amorolfine

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Fungal nail infections

###### BY TRANSUNGUAL APPLICATION

- ▶ **Child 1 month–11 years:** Apply 1–2 times a week for 6 months to treat finger nails and for toe nails

9–12 months (review at intervals of 3 months), apply to infected nails after filing and cleansing, allow to dry for approximately 3 minutes

- ▶ **Child 12–17 years:** Apply 1–2 times a week for 6 months to treat finger nails and for toe nails 9–12 months (review at intervals of 3 months), apply to infected nails after filing and cleansing, allow to dry for approximately 3 minutes

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 12 years.
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid contact with ears • avoid contact with eyes and mucous membranes • use with caution in child likely to suck affected digits
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Nail discolouration • skin reactions
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Avoid nail varnish or artificial nails during treatment.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Medicated nail lacquer

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

###### Amorolfine (Non-proprietary)

- ▶ **Amorolfine (as Amorolfine hydrochloride) 50 mg per 1 ml** Amorolfine 5% medicated nail lacquer | 5 ml [PoM] £16.21 DT = £6.14

###### Loceryl (Galderma (UK) Ltd)

- ▶ **Amorolfine (as Amorolfine hydrochloride) 50 mg per 1 ml** Loceryl 5% medicated nail lacquer | 2.5 ml [PoM] £7.26 | 5 ml [PoM] £9.08 DT = £6.14

###### Omicur (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)

- ▶ **Amorolfine (as Amorolfine hydrochloride) 50 mg per 1 ml** Omicur 5% medicated nail lacquer | 2.5 ml [PoM] £9.09 | 5 ml [PoM] £9.09 DT = £6.14

## Terbinafine

23-Apr-2018

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Tinea pedis

###### TO THE SKIN USING CREAM

- ▶ **Child:** Apply 1–2 times a day for up to 1 week, to be applied thinly

###### BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

- ▶ **Child 1–17 years (body-weight 10–19 kg):** 62.5 mg once daily for 2–6 weeks
- ▶ **Child 1–17 years (body-weight 20–39 kg):** 125 mg once daily for 2–6 weeks
- ▶ **Child 1–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above):** 250 mg once daily for 2–6 weeks

##### Tinea corporis

###### TO THE SKIN USING CREAM

- ▶ **Child:** Apply 1–2 times a day for up to 1–2 weeks, to be applied thinly, review treatment after 2 weeks

###### BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

- ▶ **Child 1–17 years (body-weight 10–19 kg):** 62.5 mg once daily for 4 weeks
- ▶ **Child 1–17 years (body-weight 20–39 kg):** 125 mg once daily for 4 weeks
- ▶ **Child 1–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above):** 250 mg once daily for 4 weeks

##### Tinea cruris

###### TO THE SKIN USING CREAM

- ▶ **Child:** Apply 1–2 times a day for up to 1–2 weeks, to be applied thinly, review treatment after 2 weeks

###### BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

- ▶ **Child 1–17 years (body-weight 10–19 kg):** 62.5 mg once daily for 2–4 weeks
- ▶ **Child 1–17 years (body-weight 20–39 kg):** 125 mg once daily for 2–4 weeks



- ▶ Child 1–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 250 mg once daily for 2–4 weeks

### Tinea capitis

#### ▶ BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

- ▶ Child 1–17 years (body-weight 10–19 kg): 62.5 mg once daily for 4 weeks
- ▶ Child 1–17 years (body-weight 20–39 kg): 125 mg once daily for 4 weeks
- ▶ Child 1–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 250 mg once daily for 4 weeks

### Dermatophyte infections of the nails

#### ▶ BY MOUTH USING TABLETS

- ▶ Child 1–17 years (body-weight 10–19 kg): 62.5 mg once daily for 6 weeks–3 months (occasionally longer in toenail infections)
- ▶ Child 1–17 years (body-weight 20–39 kg): 125 mg once daily for 6 weeks–3 months (occasionally longer in toenail infections)
- ▶ Child 1–17 years (body-weight 40 kg and above): 250 mg once daily for 6 weeks–3 months (occasionally longer in toenail infections)

### Cutaneous candidiasis | Pityriasis versicolor

#### ▶ TO THE SKIN USING CREAM

- ▶ Child: Apply 1–2 times a day for 2 weeks, to be applied thinly, review treatment after 2 weeks

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.

### ● CAUTIONS

- ▶ With oral use autoimmune disease (risk of lupus-erythematosus-like effect) · psoriasis (risk of exacerbation)
- ▶ With topical use contact with eyes and mucous membranes should be avoided

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: terbinafine

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

#### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common Skin reactions

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common

- ▶ With oral use Appetite decreased · arthralgia · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorder · headache · myalgia · nausea

#### ▶ Uncommon

- ▶ With oral use Taste altered · weight decreased

#### ▶ Rare or very rare

- ▶ With oral use Agranulocytosis · alopecia · cutaneous lupus erythematosus · dizziness · hepatic disorders · malaise · neutropenia · photosensitivity reaction · sensation abnormal · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) · thrombocytopenia · vertigo

#### ▶ Frequency not known

- ▶ With oral use Anaemia · anxiety · depressive symptom · fatigue · fever · hearing impairment · influenza like illness · pancreatitis · pancytopenia · rhabdomyolysis · serum sickness-like reaction · smell altered · vasculitis · vision disorders

- ▶ With topical use Hypersensitivity

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Liver toxicity** With oral use; discontinue treatment if liver toxicity develops (including jaundice, cholestasis and hepatitis).

**Serious skin reactions** With oral use; discontinue treatment in progressive skin rash (including Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis).

### ● PREGNANCY

- ▶ With topical use Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—animal studies suggest no adverse effects.
- ▶ With oral use Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.

### ● BREAST FEEDING

- ▶ With topical use Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk. Less than 5% of the dose is absorbed after topical application of terbinafine; avoid application to mother's chest.
- ▶ With oral use Avoid—present in milk.

### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

- ▶ With oral use Manufacturer advises avoid—elimination reduced.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

- ▶ **Dose adjustments** ▶ With oral use Use half normal dose if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 50 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> and no suitable alternative available.

### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ With oral use Monitor hepatic function before treatment and then periodically after 4–6 weeks of treatment—discontinue if abnormalities in liver function tests.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

- ▶ With oral use Manufacturer advises that patients should immediately report any signs or symptoms suggestive of liver dysfunction such as pruritus, unexplained persistent nausea, decreased appetite, anorexia, jaundice, vomiting, fatigue, right upper abdominal pain, dark urine, or pale stools. Patients with these symptoms should discontinue taking terbinafine and the patient's liver function should be immediately evaluated.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Preparations of terbinafine hydrochloride (maximum 1%) can be sold to the public for use in those over 16 years for external use for the treatment of tinea pedis as a cream in a pack containing maximum 15 g, or for the treatment of tinea pedis and cruris as a cream in a pack containing maximum 15 g, or for the treatment of tinea pedis, cruris, and corporis as a spray in a pack containing maximum 30 mL spray or as a gel in a pack containing maximum 30 g gel.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Tablet

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 9

#### ▶ Terbinafine (Non-proprietary)

**Terbinafine (as Terbinafine hydrochloride) 250 mg** Terbinafine 250mg tablets | 14 tablet **[PoM]** £18.11 DT = £8.46 | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £5.00–£34.93

#### ▶ Lamisil (Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd)

**Terbinafine (as Terbinafine hydrochloride) 250 mg** Lamisil 250mg tablets | 14 tablet **[PoM]** £21.30 DT = £8.46 | 28 tablet **[PoM]** £41.09

#### Cream

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates

#### ▶ Terbinafine (Non-proprietary)

**Terbinafine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 gram** Terbinafine 1% cream | 7.5 gram **[PoM]** £1.06 | 15 gram **[PoM]** £3.17 DT = £0.98 | 30 gram **[PoM]** £6.33 DT = £1.96

#### ▶ Lamisil (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

**Terbinafine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 gram** Lamisil 1% cream | 30 gram **[PoM]** £8.76 DT = £1.96  
Lamisil AT 1% cream | 15 gram **[GSL]** £3.60 DT = £0.98

## ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS > UNDECENOATES

### Undecenoic acid with zinc undecenoate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Treatment of athletes foot

##### ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child: Apply twice daily, continue use for 7 days after lesions have healed

continued →

**Prevention of athletes foot**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply once daily

● **UNLICENSED USE** *Mycota*® licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid broken skin · contact with eyes should be avoided · contact with mucous membranes should be avoided

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ Rare or very rare Skin irritation

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Treatment should be discontinued if irritation is severe.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Cream**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), fragrances

- ▶ *Mycota* (zinc undecenoate / undecenoic acid) (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Undecenoic acid 50 mg per 1 gram, Zinc undecenoate 200 mg per 1 gram *Mycota* cream | 25 gram [GSL] £2.01

**Powder**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Fragrances

- ▶ *Mycota* (zinc undecenoate / undecenoic acid) (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

Undecenoic acid 20 mg per 1 gram, Zinc undecenoate 200 mg per 1 gram *Mycota* powder | 70 gram [GSL] £3.04

**ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS > OTHER****Chlorhexidine with nystatin**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Skin infections due to *Candida* spp.**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply 2–3 times a day, continuing for 7 days after lesions have healed

● **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid contact with eyes and mucous membranes

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Cream**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates

- ▶ Chlorhexidine with nystatin (Non-proprietary)

Chlorhexidine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 gram, Nystatin 100000 unit per 1 gram Nystatin 100,000units/g / Chlorhexidine hydrochloride 1% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £4.99 DT = £4.99

**BENZOATES****Benzoic acid with salicylic acid**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Ringworm (tinea)**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply twice daily

● **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid broken or inflamed skin · avoid contact with eyes · avoid contact with mucous membranes

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ Salicylate toxicity Salicylate toxicity may occur particularly if applied on large areas of skin.

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Hypersensitivity · skin burning sensation (mild) · skin reactions

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Treatment should be discontinued if side effects are severe.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Benzoic Acid Ointment, Compound, BP has also been referred to as Whitfield's ointment.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: cream, ointment

**SALICYLIC ACID AND DERIVATIVES****Boric acid with salicylic acid and tannic acid**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Fungal nail infection, particularly tinea**

- ▶ BY TRANSUNGUAL APPLICATION

- ▶ Child 5–17 years: Apply twice daily, and after washing

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid broken or inflamed skin · contact with eyes and mucous membranes should be avoided · use with caution in children likely to suck affected digits

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ Salicylate toxicity Salicylate toxicity can occur particularly if applied on large areas of skin.

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Stinging

● **PREGNANCY** Avoid.

● **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** *Phytex*® is less suitable for prescribing.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

No licensed medicines listed.

**2.3 Parasitic skin infections****PARASITICIDES****Dimeticone**

06-Apr-2018

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Head lice**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child: Apply once weekly for 2 doses, rub into dry hair and scalp, allow to dry naturally, shampoo after minimum 8 hours (or overnight)

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 6 months except under medical supervision.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: HEAD LICE ERADICATION PRODUCTS: RISK OF SERIOUS BURNS IF TREATED HAIR IS EXPOSED TO OPEN FLAMES OR OTHER SOURCES OF IGNITION (MARCH 2018)

See Skin infections p. 720.

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid contact with eyes · children under 6 months, medical supervision required

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Alopecia · dyspnoea · eye irritation · hypersensitivity · scalp changes · skin reactions

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Liquid**

- ▶ *Hedrin* (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

*Dimeticone* 40 mg per 1 gram Hedrin 4% lotion | 50 ml [P] £3.28 DT = £3.28 | 150 ml [P] £7.62 DT = £7.62

- ▶ **Lyclear (dimeticone)** (Omega Pharma Ltd)  
Dimeticone 40 mg per 1 gram Lyclear lotion | 100 ml
- Cutaneous spray solution**
- ▶ **Hedrin** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)  
Dimeticone 40 mg per 1 gram Hedrin 4% spray | 120 ml

## Malathion

06-Apr-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Head lice

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply once weekly for 2 doses, rub preparation into dry hair and scalp, allow to dry naturally, remove by washing after 12 hours

#### Crab lice

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply once weekly for 2 doses, apply preparation over whole body, allow to dry naturally, wash off after 12 hours or overnight

#### Scabies

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply once weekly for 2 doses, apply preparation over whole body, and wash off after 24 hours, if hands are washed with soap within 24 hours, they should be retreated

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 6 months except under medical supervision.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: HEAD LICE ERADICATION PRODUCTS: RISK OF SERIOUS BURNS IF TREATED HAIR IS EXPOSED TO OPEN FLAMES OR OTHER SOURCES OF IGNITION (MARCH 2018)  
See Skin infections p. 720.

- **CAUTIONS** Alcoholic lotions **not** recommended for head lice in children with severe eczema or asthma, or for scabies or crab lice · avoid contact with eyes · children under 6 months, medical supervision required · do not use lotion more than once a week for 3 consecutive weeks · do not use on broken or secondarily infected skin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Angioedema · eye swelling · hypersensitivity · skin reactions
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** For scabies, manufacturer recommends application to the body but not necessarily to the head and neck. However, application should be extended to the scalp, neck, face, and ears.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Liquid

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), fragrances, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

- ▶ **Derbac-M** (G.R. Lane Health Products Ltd)  
Malathion 5 mg per 1 gram Derbac-M 0.5% liquid | 50 ml £3.89  
DT = £3.89 | 200 ml £9.09 DT = £9.09

## Permethrin

12-Apr-2018

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Scabies

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply once weekly for 2 doses, apply 5% preparation over whole body including face, neck, scalp and ears then wash off after 8–12 hours. If hands are washed with soap within 8 hours of application, they should be treated again with cream

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Dermal Cream* (scabies), not licensed for use in children under 2 months; not licensed for treatment of crab lice in children under 18 years. *Crema Rinse* (head lice) not licensed for use in children under 6 months except under medical supervision.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: HEAD LICE ERADICATION PRODUCTS: RISK OF SERIOUS BURNS IF TREATED HAIR IS EXPOSED TO OPEN FLAMES OR OTHER SOURCES OF IGNITION (MARCH 2018)  
See Skin infections p. 720.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid contact with eyes · children aged 2 months–2 years, medical supervision required for dermal cream (scabies) · children under 6 months, medical supervision required for cream rinse (head lice) · do not use on broken or secondarily infected skin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Scalp irritation · skin reactions
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Manufacturer recommends application to the body but to exclude head and neck. However, application should be extended to the scalp, neck, face, and ears.  
Larger patients may require up to two 30-g packs for adequate treatment.
- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Lyclear® *Crema Rinse* is less suitable for prescribing.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10 (Dermal cream only)

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxytoluene, woolfat and related substances (including lanolin)

- ▶ **Permethrin (Non-proprietary)**  
Permethrin 50 mg per 1 gram Permethrin 5% cream | 30 gram £7.46 DT = £7.46

- ▶ **Lyclear** (Omega Pharma Ltd)  
Permethrin 50 mg per 1 gram Lyclear 5% dermal cream | 30 gram £5.71 DT = £7.46

#### Liquid

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol)

- ▶ **Lyclear** (Omega Pharma Ltd)  
Permethrin 10 mg per 1 gram Lyclear 1% creme rinse | 59 ml £4.20 DT = £4.20 | 118 ml £6.79 DT = £6.79

## 2.4 Viral skin infections

### ANTIVIRALS > NUCLEOSIDE ANALOGUES

## Aciclovir

### (Acyclovir)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Herpes simplex infection (local treatment)

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply 5 times a day for 5–10 days, to be applied to lesions approximately every 4 hours, starting at first sign of attack

- **UNLICENSED USE** Cream licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid cream coming in to contact with eyes and mucous membranes
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: aciclovir
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- ▶ **Uncommon** Skin reactions
- **PREGNANCY** Limited absorption from topical aciclovir preparations.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Aciclovir cream for herpes [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/aciclovir-cream-for-herpes](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/aciclovir-cream-for-herpes)

### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

#### Dental practitioners' formulary

Aciclovir Cream may be prescribed.

### ● EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY A 2-g tube and a pump pack are on sale to the public for the treatment of cold sores.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Cream

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), propylene glycol

#### ➤ Aciclovir (Non-proprietary)

**Aciclovir 50 mg per 1 gram** Aciclovir 5% cream | 2 gram [PoM] £1.09 DT = £1.09 | 10 gram [PoM] £5.45 DT = £5.45

#### ➤ Zovirax (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd, GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

**Aciclovir 50 mg per 1 gram** Zovirax 5% cream | 2 gram [PoM] £4.63 DT = £1.09 | 10 gram [PoM] £13.96 DT = £5.45

## 3 Inflammatory skin conditions

### 3.1 Eczema and psoriasis

#### Eczema

##### Types and management

The main types of eczema (dermatitis) in children are atopic, irritant and allergic contact; different types may co-exist. *Atopic eczema* is the most common type and it usually involves dry skin as well as infection and lichenification caused by scratching and rubbing. *Seborrhoeic dermatitis* is also common in infants.

Management of eczema involves the removal or treatment of contributory factors; known or suspected irritants and contact allergens should be avoided. Rarely, ingredients in topical medicinal products may sensitise the skin; *BNF for Children* lists active ingredients together with excipients that have been associated with skin sensitisation.

Skin dryness and the consequent irritant eczema requires **emollients** applied regularly (at least twice daily) and liberally to the affected area; this can be supplemented with bath or shower emollients. The use of emollients should continue even if the eczema improves or if other treatment is being used.

**Topical corticosteroids** are also required in the management of eczema; the potency of the corticosteroid should be appropriate to the severity and site of the condition, and the age of the child. Mild corticosteroids are generally used on the face and on flexures; the more potent corticosteroids are generally required for use on lichenified areas of eczema or for severe eczema on the scalp, limbs, and trunk. Treatment should be reviewed regularly, especially if a potent corticosteroid is required. In children with frequent flares (2–3 per month), a topical corticosteroid can be applied on 2 consecutive days each week to prevent further flares.

Bandages (including those containing ichthammol with zinc oxide p. 744) are sometimes applied over topical corticosteroids or emollients to treat eczema of the limbs. Dry-wrap dressings can be used to provide a physical barrier to help prevent scratching and improve retention of emollients. Wet elasticated viscose stockinette is used for

'wet-wrap' bandaging over topical corticosteroids or emollients to cool the skin and relieve itching, but there is an increased risk of infection and excessive absorption of the corticosteroid; 'wet-wrap' bandaging should be used under specialist supervision.

See *Wound management products and elasticated garments* for details of elasticated viscose stockinette tubular bandages and garments, and silk clothing.

See Eczema and psoriasis, drugs affecting the immune response p. 732 for the role of topical pimecrolimus p. 747 and tacrolimus p. 522 in atopic eczema.

#### Infection

Bacterial infection (commonly with *Staphylococcus aureus* and occasionally with *Streptococcus pyogenes*) can exacerbate eczema. A topical antibacterial may be used for small areas of mild infection; treatment should be limited to a short course (typically 1 week) to reduce the risk of drug resistance or skin sensitisation. Associated eczema is treated simultaneously with a topical corticosteroid which can be combined with a topical antimicrobial.

Eczema involving moderate to severe, widespread, or recurrent infection requires the use of a systemic antibacterial that is active against the infecting organism. Preparations that combine an antiseptic with an emollient application and with a bath emollient can also be used; antiseptic shampoos can be used on the scalp.

Intertriginous eczema commonly involves candida and bacteria; it is best treated with a mild or moderately potent topical corticosteroid combined with a suitable antimicrobial drug.

Widespread *herpes simplex infection* may complicate atopic eczema (eczema herpeticum) and treatment under specialist supervision with a systemic antiviral drug is indicated. Secondary bacterial infection often exacerbates eczema herpeticum.

#### Management of other features of eczema

*Lichenification*, which results from repeated scratching, is treated initially with a potent corticosteroid. Bandages containing ichthammol p. 744 (to reduce pruritus) and other substances such as **zinc oxide** can be applied over the corticosteroid or emollient. **Coal tar** and ichthammol can be useful in some cases of *chronic eczema*. *Discoid eczema*, with thickened plaques in chronic atopic eczema, is usually treated with a topical antiseptic preparation, a potent topical corticosteroid, and paste bandages containing ichthammol with zinc oxide.

A *non-sedating* antihistamine may be of some value in relieving severe itching or urticaria associated with eczema.

A *sedating* antihistamine can be used at night if itching causes sleep disturbance, but a large dose may be needed and drowsiness may persist on the following day.

*Exudative ('weeping') eczema* requires a potent corticosteroid initially; infection may also be present and require specific treatment. Potassium permanganate solution (1 in 10,000) p. 761 can be used as a soak in exudating eczema for its antiseptic and astringent effects; treatment should be stopped when exudation stops.

*Severe refractory eczema* is best managed under specialist supervision; it may require phototherapy or drugs that act on the immune system.

#### Seborrhoeic dermatitis

*Seborrhoeic dermatitis (seborrhoeic eczema)* is associated with species of the yeast *Malassezia*. *Infantile seborrhoeic dermatitis* affects particularly the body folds, nappy area and scalp; it is treated with emollients and mild topical corticosteroids with suitable antimicrobials. *Infantile seborrhoeic dermatitis* affecting the scalp (*cradle cap*) is treated by hydrating the scalp using natural oils and the use of mild shampoo.

In older children, seborrhoeic dermatitis affects the scalp, paranasal areas, and eyebrows. Shampoos active against the

yeast (including those containing ketoconazole p. 725 and coal tar) and combinations of mild topical corticosteroids with suitable antimicrobials are used to treat older children.

### Medicated bandages

Zinc paste bandages (see *Wound management products and elasticated garments*) are used with **coal tar** or ichthammol in chronic lichenified skin conditions such as chronic eczema (ichthammol often being preferred since its action is considered to be milder). They are also used with calamine in milder eczematous skin conditions.

## Psoriasis

### Management

Psoriasis is characterised by epidermal thickening and scaling. It commonly affects extensor surfaces and the scalp. For mild psoriasis, reassurance and treatment with an emollient may be all that is necessary. *Guttate psoriasis* is a distinctive form of psoriasis that characteristically occurs in children and young adults, often following a streptococcal throat infection or tonsillitis.

Occasionally psoriasis is provoked or exacerbated by drugs such as lithium, chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine, beta-blockers, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, and ACE inhibitors. Psoriasis may not occur until the drug has been taken for weeks or months.

**Emollients**, in addition to their effects on dryness, scaling and cracking, may have an antiproliferative effect in psoriasis. They are particularly useful in *inflammatory psoriasis* and in *chronic stable plaque psoriasis*.

For *chronic stable plaque psoriasis* on extensor surfaces of trunk and limbs preparations containing **coal tar** are moderately effective, but the smell is unacceptable to some children. **Vitamin D** and its analogues are effective and cosmetically acceptable alternatives to preparations containing coal tar or dithranol p. 745. Dithranol is an effective topical antipsoriatic agent but it irritates and stains the skin and it should be used only under specialist supervision. Adverse effects of dithranol are minimised by using a 'short-contact technique' and by starting with low concentration preparations. Tazarotene, a topical retinoid for the treatment of mild to moderate plaque psoriasis, is not recommended for use in children under 18 years. These medications can irritate the skin particularly in the flexures and they are not suitable for the more inflammatory forms of psoriasis; their use should be suspended during an inflammatory phase of psoriasis. The efficacy and the irritancy of each substance varies between patients. If a substance irritates significantly, it should be stopped or the concentration reduced; if it is tolerated, its effects should be assessed after 4 to 6 weeks and treatment continued if it is effective.

Widespread *unstable psoriasis* of erythrodermic or generalised pustular type requires urgent specialist assessment. Initial topical treatment should be limited to using emollients frequently and generously. More localised acute or subacute *inflammatory psoriasis* with hot, spreading or itchy lesions, should be treated topically with emollients or with a corticosteroid of moderate potency.

*Scalp psoriasis* is usually scaly, and the scale may be thick and adherent. This requires softening with an emollient ointment, cream, or oil and usually combined with salicylic acid p. 768 as a keratolytic.

Some preparations for psoriasis affecting the scalp combine salicylic acid with coal tar or **sulfur**. The preparation should be applied generously and left on for at least an hour, often more conveniently overnight, before washing it off. If a corticosteroid lotion or gel is required (e.g. for itch), it can be used in the morning.

*Flexural psoriasis* can be managed with short-term use of a mild potency topical corticosteroid. Calcitriol p. 631 or tacalcitol p. 751 can be used in the longer term; calcipotriol p. 750 is more likely to cause irritation in flexures and should be avoided. Low-strength tar preparations can also be used.

*Facial psoriasis* can be treated with short-term use of a mild topical corticosteroid; if this is ineffective, calcitriol, tacalcitol, or a low-strength tar preparation can be used.

Calcipotriol and tacalcitol are analogues of vitamin D that affect cell division and differentiation. Calcitriol is an active form of vitamin D. Vitamin D and its analogues are used as first-line treatment for plaque psoriasis; they do not smell or stain and they may be more acceptable than tar or dithranol products. Of the vitamin D analogues, tacalcitol and calcitriol are less likely to irritate.

Coal tar p. 745 has anti-inflammatory properties that are useful in chronic plaque psoriasis; it also has antiscaling properties. Contact of coal tar products with normal skin is not normally harmful and preparations containing coal tar can be used for widespread small lesions; however, irritation, contact allergy, and sterile folliculitis can occur. Leave-on preparations that remain in contact with the skin, such as creams or ointments, containing up to 6% coal tar may be used on children 1 month to 2 years; leave-on preparations containing coal tar 10% may be used on children over 2 years with more severe psoriasis. Tar baths and tar shampoos may also be helpful.

Dithranol is effective for chronic plaque psoriasis. Its major disadvantages are irritation (for which individual susceptibility varies) and staining of skin and of clothing. Dithranol is not generally suitable for widespread small lesions nor should it be used in the flexures or on the face. Proprietary preparations are more suitable for home use; they are usually washed off after 20–30 minutes ('short contact' technique). Specialist nurses may apply intensive treatment with dithranol paste which is covered by stockinette dressings and usually retained overnight. Dithranol should be discontinued if even a low concentration causes acute inflammation; continued use can result in the psoriasis becoming unstable.

A topical **corticosteroid** is not generally suitable for long-term use or as the sole treatment of extensive chronic plaque psoriasis; any early improvement is not usually maintained and there is a risk of the condition deteriorating or of precipitating an unstable form of psoriasis e.g. erythrodermic psoriasis or generalised pustular psoriasis on withdrawal. Topical use of potent corticosteroids on widespread psoriasis can also lead to systemic as well as local side-effects. However, topical corticosteroids used short-term may be appropriate to treat psoriasis in specific sites such as the face or flexures with a mild corticosteroid, and psoriasis of the scalp, palms, and soles with a potent corticosteroid. Very potent topical corticosteroids should only be used under specialist supervision.

Combining the use of a corticosteroid with another specific topical treatment may be beneficial in chronic plaque psoriasis; the drugs may be used separately at different times of the day or used together in a single formulation. *Eczema* co-existing with psoriasis may be treated with a corticosteroid, or coal tar, or both.

### Phototherapy

**Phototherapy** is available in specialist centres under the supervision of a dermatologist. Narrow band ultraviolet B (UVB) radiation is usually effective for *chronic stable psoriasis* and for *guttate psoriasis*. It can be considered for children with moderately severe psoriasis in whom topical treatment has failed, but it may irritate inflammatory psoriasis. The use of phototherapy and photochemotherapy in children is limited by concerns over carcinogenicity and premature ageing.



**Photochemotherapy** combining long-wave ultraviolet A radiation with a psoralen (PUVA) is available in specialist centres under the supervision of a dermatologist. The psoralen, which enhances the effect of irradiation, is administered either by mouth or topically. PUVA is effective in most forms of psoriasis, including the *localised palmoplantar pustular psoriasis*. Early adverse effects include phototoxicity and pruritus. Higher cumulative doses exaggerate skin ageing, increase the risk of dysplastic and neoplastic skin lesions especially squamous cancer, and pose a theoretical risk of cataracts.

Phototherapy combined with coal tar, dithranol, topical vitamin D or vitamin D analogues, or oral acitretin, allows reduction of the cumulative dose of phototherapy required to treat psoriasis.

### Systemic treatment

Systemic treatment is required for severe, resistant, unstable or complicated forms of psoriasis, and it should be initiated only under specialist supervision. Systemic drugs for psoriasis include acitretin and drugs that affect the immune response (see Eczema and psoriasis, drugs affecting the immune response below).

Acitretin p. 749, a metabolite of etretinate, is a retinoid (vitamin A derivative); it is prescribed by specialists. The main indication of acitretin is severe psoriasis resistant to other forms of therapy. It is also used in disorders of keratinisation such as severe *Darier's disease* (keratosis follicularis), and some forms of *ichthyosis*. Although a minority of cases of psoriasis respond well to acitretin alone, it is only moderately effective in many cases; adverse effects are a limiting factor. A therapeutic effect occurs after 2 to 4 weeks and the maximum benefit after 4 months. Consideration should be given to stopping acitretin if the response is inadequate after 4 months at the optimum dose. Continuous treatment for longer than 6 months is not usually necessary in psoriasis. However, some patients, particularly those with severe ichthyosis, may benefit from longer treatment, provided that the lowest effective dose is used, patients are monitored carefully for adverse effects, and the need for treatment is reviewed regularly. Topical preparations containing keratolytics should normally be stopped before administration of acitretin. Liberal use of emollients should be encouraged and topical corticosteroids can be continued if necessary.

Acitretin is teratogenic; in females of child-bearing age, the possibility of pregnancy must be excluded before treatment and effective contraception must be used during treatment and for at least 3 years afterwards (oral progestogen-only contraceptives not considered effective).

### Topical treatment

The vitamin D and analogues, calcipotriol p. 750, calcitriol p. 631, and tacalcitol p. 751 are used for the management of plaque psoriasis. They should be avoided by those with calcium metabolism disorders, and used with caution in generalised pustular or erythrodermic exfoliative psoriasis (enhanced risk of hypercalcaemia).

topical pimecrolimus or topical tacrolimus should be initiated only by prescribers experienced in treating atopic eczema.

Topical corticosteroids have a role in eczema and a limited role in psoriasis. A systemic corticosteroid such as prednisolone p. 442 may be used in severe refractory eczema.

Systemic drugs acting on the immune system are generally used by **specialists** in a hospital setting.

Ciclosporin p. 519 by mouth can be used for *severe psoriasis* and for *severe eczema*. Azathioprine p. 518 or mycophenolate mofetil p. 527 are also used for severe refractory eczema in children.

Methotrexate p. 543 can be used for *severe resistant psoriasis*; the dose is given **once weekly** and adjusted according to severity of the condition and haematological and biochemical measurements. Folic acid p. 574 should be given to reduce the possibility of methotrexate toxicity [unlicensed indication]. Folic acid can be given once weekly on a different day to the methotrexate; alternative regimens may be used in some settings.

Etanercept p. 643 (a cytokine modulator) is licensed in children over 6 years of age for the treatment of *severe plaque psoriasis* that is inadequately controlled by other systemic treatments and photochemotherapy, or when these other treatments cannot be used because of intolerance or contraindications.

Adalimumab p. 642 (a cytokine modulator) is licensed in children over 4 years for the treatment of *severe chronic plaque psoriasis* that is inadequately controlled by other topical treatments and phototherapies, or when these treatments are inappropriate.

## CORTICOSTEROIDS

### Topical corticosteroids

#### Overview

Topical corticosteroids are used for the treatment of inflammatory conditions of the skin (other than those arising from an infection), particularly eczema, contact dermatitis, insect stings, and eczema of scabies. Corticosteroids suppress the inflammatory reaction during use; they are not curative and on discontinuation a rebound exacerbation of the condition may occur. They are generally used to relieve symptoms and suppress signs of the disorder when other measures such as emollients are ineffective.

Children, especially infants, are particularly susceptible to side-effects. However, concern about the safety of topical corticosteroids in children should not result in the child being undertreated. The aim is to control the condition as well as possible; inadequate treatment will perpetuate the condition. Carers of young children should be advised that treatment should **not** necessarily be reserved to 'treat only the worst areas' and they may need to be advised that patient information leaflets may contain inappropriate advice for the child's condition.

In an acute flare-up of atopic eczema, it may be appropriate to use more potent formulations of topical corticosteroids for a short period to regain control of the condition.

Topical corticosteroids are not recommended in the routine treatment of urticaria; treatment should only be initiated and supervised by a specialist. Topical corticosteroids may worsen ulcerated or secondarily infected lesions. They should not be used indiscriminately in pruritus (where they will only benefit if inflammation is causing the itch) and are **not** recommended for acne vulgaris.

Systemic or very potent topical corticosteroids should be avoided or given only under specialist supervision in psoriasis because, although they may suppress the psoriasis in the short term, relapse or vigorous rebound occurs on

## Eczema and psoriasis, drugs affecting the immune response

### Overview

Drugs affecting the immune response are used for eczema or psoriasis. Pimecrolimus p. 747 by topical application is licensed for *mild to moderate atopic eczema*. Tacrolimus p. 522 is licensed for topical use in *moderate to severe atopic eczema*. Both are drugs whose long-term safety is still being evaluated and they should not usually be considered first-line treatment unless there is a specific reason to avoid or reduce the use of topical corticosteroids. Treatment with

withdrawal (sometimes precipitating severe pustular psoriasis). Topical use of potent corticosteroids on widespread psoriasis can lead to systemic as well as to local side-effects. It is reasonable, however, to prescribe a mild topical corticosteroid for a short period (2–4 weeks) for *flexural and facial psoriasis*, and to use a more potent corticosteroid such as betamethasone p. 735 or fluocinonide p. 738 for *psoriasis of the scalp, palms, or soles*.

In general, the most potent topical corticosteroids should be reserved for recalcitrant dermatoses such as *chronic discoid lupus erythematosus*, *lichen simplex chronicus*, *hypertrophic lichen planus*, and *palmoplantar pustulosis*. Potent corticosteroids should generally be avoided on the face and skin flexures, but specialists occasionally prescribe them for use on these areas in certain circumstances.

When topical treatment has failed, intralesional corticosteroid injections may be used. These are more effective than the very potent topical corticosteroid preparations and should be reserved for severe cases where there are localised lesions such as *keloid scars*, *hypertrophic lichen planus*, or *localised alopecia areata*.

### Perioral lesions

Hydrocortisone cream 1% p. 739 can be used for up to 7 days to treat uninfected inflammatory lesions on the lips. Hydrocortisone with miconazole cream or ointment p. 744 is useful where infection by susceptible organisms and inflammation co-exist, particularly for initial treatment (up to 7 days) e.g. in angular cheilitis. Organisms susceptible to miconazole include *Candida* spp. and many Gram-positive bacteria including streptococci and staphylococci.

### Choice

Water-miscible corticosteroid creams are suitable for moist or weeping lesions whereas ointments are generally chosen for dry, lichenified or scaly lesions or where a more occlusive effect is required. Lotions may be useful when minimal application to a large or hair-bearing area is required or for the treatment of exudative lesions. *Occlusive polythene or hydrocolloid dressings* increase absorption, but also increase the risk of side-effects; they are therefore used only under supervision on a short-term basis for areas of very thick skin (such as the palms and soles). Disposable nappies and tight fitting pants also increase the risk of side-effects by increasing absorption of the corticosteroid. The inclusion of urea or salicylic acid p. 768 also increases the penetration of the corticosteroid.

In the *BNF for Children*, topical corticosteroids for the skin are categorised as 'mild', 'moderately potent', 'potent' or 'very potent'; the least potent preparation which is effective should be chosen but dilution should be avoided whenever possible.

Topical hydrocortisone is usually used in children under 1 year of age. Moderately potent and potent topical corticosteroids should be used with great care in children and for short periods (1–2 weeks) only. A very potent corticosteroid should be initiated under the supervision of a specialist.

Appropriate topical corticosteroids for specific conditions are:

- *insect bites and stings*—mild corticosteroid such as hydrocortisone 1% cream;
- *inflamed nappy rash causing discomfort* in infant over 1 month—mild corticosteroid such as hydrocortisone 0.5% or 1% for up to 7 days (combined with antimicrobial if infected);
- *mild to moderate eczema, flexural and facial eczema or psoriasis*—mild corticosteroid such as hydrocortisone 1%;
- *severe eczema of the face and neck*—moderately potent corticosteroid for 3–5 days only, if not controlled by a mild corticosteroid;

- *severe eczema on the trunk and limbs*—moderately potent or potent corticosteroid for 1–2 weeks only, switching to a less potent preparation as the condition improves;
- *eczema affecting area with thickened skin (e.g. soles of feet)*—potent topical corticosteroid in combination with urea or salicylic acid (to increase penetration of corticosteroid).

### Absorption through the skin

*Mild and moderately potent* topical corticosteroids are associated with few side-effects but particular care is required when treating neonates and infants, and in the use of *potent and very potent* corticosteroids. Absorption through the skin can rarely cause adrenal suppression and even Cushing's syndrome, depending on the area of the body being treated and the duration of treatment. Absorption of corticosteroid is greatest from severely inflamed skin, thin skin (especially on the face or genital area), from flexural sites (e.g. axillae, groin), and in infants where skin surface area is higher in relation to body-weight; absorption is increased by occlusion.

### Compound preparations

The advantages of including other substances (such as antibacterials or antifungals) with corticosteroids in topical preparations are uncertain, but such combinations may have a place where inflammatory skin conditions are associated with bacterial or fungal infection, such as infected eczema. In these cases the antimicrobial drug should be chosen according to the sensitivity of the infecting organism and used regularly for a short period (typically twice daily for 1 week). Longer use increases the likelihood of resistance and of sensitisation.

The keratolytic effect of salicylic acid p. 768 facilitates the absorption of topical corticosteroids; however, excessive and prolonged use of topical preparations containing salicylic acid may cause salicylism.

### Topical corticosteroid preparation potencies

Potency of a topical corticosteroid preparation is a result of the formulation as well as the corticosteroid. Therefore, proprietary names are shown.

#### Mild

- Hydrocortisone 0.1–2.5%
- Dioderm
- Mildison
- Synalar 1 in 10 dilution

#### Mild with antimicrobials

- Canesten HC
- Daktacort
- Econacort
- Fucidin H
- Nystaform-HC
- Terra-Cortril
- Timodine

#### Moderate

- Betnovate-RD
- Eumovate
- Haelan
- Modrasone
- Synalar 1 in 4 Dilution
- Ultralanum Plain

#### Moderate with antimicrobials

- Trimovate

#### Moderate with urea:

- Alphaderm
- Potent
- Beclometasone dipropionate 0.025%
- Betamethasone valerate 0.1%
- Betacap
- Betesil

- Bettamousse
- Betnovate
- Cutivate
- Diprosone
- Elocon
- Hydrocortisone butyrate
- Locoid
- Locoid Crelo
- Metosyn
- Mometasone furoate 0.1%
- Nerisone
- Synalar

**Potent with antimicrobials**

- Aureocort
- Betamethasone and clioquinol
- Betamethasone and neomycin
- Fucibet
- Lotriderm
- Synalar C
- Synalar N

**Potent with salicylic acid**

- Diprosalic
- Very potent**
- Dermovate
- Nerisone Forte

**Very potent with antimicrobials**

- Clobetasol propionate 0.05% with neomycin and nystatin

## Corticosteroids (topical)

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: CORTICOSTEROIDS: RARE RISK OF CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY WITH LOCAL AS WELL AS SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION (AUGUST 2017)

Central serous chorioretinopathy is a retinal disorder that has been linked to the systemic use of corticosteroids. Recently, it has also been reported after local administration of corticosteroids via inhaled and intranasal, epidural, intra-articular, topical dermal, and periorcular routes. The MHRA recommends that patients should be advised to report any blurred vision or other visual disturbances with corticosteroid treatment given by any route; consider referral to an ophthalmologist for evaluation of possible causes if a patient presents with vision problems.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acne · perioral dermatitis · potent corticosteroids in widespread plaque psoriasis · untreated bacterial, fungal or viral skin lesions
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid prolonged use (particularly on the face) · cautions applicable to systemic corticosteroids may also apply if absorption occurs following topical and local use · dermatoses of infancy, including nappy rash (extreme caution required—treatment should be limited to 5–7 days) · infection · keep away from eyes · use potent or very potent topical corticosteroids under specialist supervision
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Uncommon** Adrenal suppression · skin reactions · telangiectasia
  - **Rare or very rare** Hypertrichosis · skin depigmentation (may be reversible)
  - **Frequency not known** Local reaction · telangiectasia · vasodilation

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Side-effects applicable to systemic corticosteroids may also apply if absorption occurs following topical and local use. In order to minimise the side-effects of a topical corticosteroid, it is important to apply it thinly to affected areas only, no more

frequently than twice daily, and to use the least potent formulation which is fully effective.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Topical corticosteroid preparations should be applied no more frequently than twice daily; once daily is often sufficient. Topical corticosteroids should be spread thinly on the skin but in sufficient quantity to cover the affected areas. The length of cream or ointment expelled from a tube may be used to specify the quantity to be applied to a given area of skin. This length can be measured in terms of a *fingertip unit* (the distance from the tip of the adult index finger to the first crease). One fingertip unit (approximately 500 mg from a tube with a standard 5 mm diameter nozzle) is sufficient to cover an area that is twice that of the flat adult handprint (palm and fingers). Mixing topical preparations on the skin should be avoided where possible; several minutes should elapse between application of different preparations.

'Wet-wrap bandaging' increases absorption into the skin, but should be initiated only by a dermatologist and application supervised by a healthcare professional trained in the technique.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The potency of each topical corticosteroid should be included on the label with the directions for use. The label should be attached to the container (for example, the tube) rather than the outer packaging.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer corticosteroid creams and ointments. If a patient is using topical corticosteroids of different potencies, the patient should be told when to use each corticosteroid. Patients and their carers should be reassured that side effects such as skin thinning and systemic effects rarely occur when topical corticosteroids are used appropriately.

## Alclometasone dipropionate

21-Dec-2017

**• INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas**➤ **TO THE SKIN**

- **Child:** Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly

**POTENCY**

- Alclometasone dipropionate cream 0.05%: moderate

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be counselled on the application of alclometasone dipropionate cream.

**• MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Cream****CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28**

**EXCIPIENTS:** May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), chlorocresol, propylene glycol

➤ **Alclometasone dipropionate (Non-proprietary)**

**Alclometasone dipropionate 500 microgram per 1 gram** Boots  
Derma Care Eczema & Dermatitis Flare-Up 0.05% cream |  
15 gram  

F 734

## Beclometasone dipropionate

04-Jan-2016

(Beclomethasone dipropionate)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly

### POTENCY

- ▶ Beclometasone dipropionate cream and ointment 0.025%: potent.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 1 year.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: cream, ointment

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

- ▶ **Beclometasone dipropionate (Non-proprietary)**

Beclometasone dipropionate 250 microgram per 1 gram Beclometasone 0.025% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £68.00 DT = £68.00

#### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

- ▶ **Beclometasone dipropionate (Non-proprietary)**

Beclometasone dipropionate 250 microgram per 1 gram Beclometasone 0.025% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £68.00 DT = £68.00

F 734

## Betamethasone

21-Dec-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly

### POTENCY

- ▶ Betamethasone valerate 0.025% cream and ointment: moderate. Betamethasone valerate 0.1% cream, lotion, ointment, and scalp application: potent. Betamethasone valerate 0.12% foam: potent. Betamethasone dipropionate 0.05% cream, lotion, and ointment: potent.

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Betacap*®, *Betnovate*® and *Betnovate-RD*® are not licensed for use in children under 1 year. *Bettamousse*® is not licensed for use in children under 6 years.

- **CAUTIONS** Use of more than 100 g per week of 0.1% preparation likely to cause adrenal suppression

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for betamethasone cream, ointment, scalp application and foam (application).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: cream, ointment

#### Foam

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15, 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates, propylene glycol

- ▶ **Bettamousse** (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per 1 gram Bettamousse 0.1% cutaneous foam | 100 gram [PoM] £9.75 DT = £9.75

### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), chlorocresol

- ▶ **Betamethasone (Non-proprietary)**

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per 1 gram Betamethasone valerate 0.1% cream | 15 gram [PoM] £3.00 | 30 gram [PoM] £5.99 DT = £2.57 | 100 gram [PoM] £11.99 DT = £8.57

- ▶ **Audavate** (Auden McKenzie (Pharma Division) Ltd)

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 250 microgram per 1 gram Audavate RD 0.025% cream | 100 gram [PoM] £2.52 DT = £3.15

- ▶ **Betnovate** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 250 microgram per 1 gram Betnovate RD 0.025% cream | 100 gram [PoM] £3.15 DT = £3.15

- ▶ **Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per**

1 gram Betnovate 0.1% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £1.43 DT = £2.57 | 100 gram [PoM] £4.05 DT = £8.57

- ▶ **Diprosone** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone dipropionate) 500 microgram per 1 gram Diprosone 0.05% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £2.16 DT = £2.16 | 100 gram [PoM] £6.12 DT = £6.12

### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

- ▶ **Betamethasone (Non-proprietary)**

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per 1 gram Betamethasone valerate 0.1% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £5.55 DT = £1.61 | 100 gram [PoM] £14.99 DT = £5.37

- ▶ **Audavate** (Auden McKenzie (Pharma Division) Ltd)

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 250 microgram per 1 gram Audavate RD 0.025% ointment | 100 gram [PoM] £2.52 DT = £3.15

- ▶ **Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per**

1 gram Audavate 0.1% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £1.14 DT = £1.61 | 100 gram [PoM] £3.24 DT = £5.37

- ▶ **Betnovate** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 250 microgram per 1 gram Betnovate RD 0.025% ointment | 100 gram [PoM] £3.15 DT = £3.15

- ▶ **Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per**

1 gram Betnovate 0.1% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £1.43 DT = £1.61 | 100 gram [PoM] £4.05 DT = £5.37

- ▶ **Diprosone** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone dipropionate) 500 microgram per 1 gram Diprosone 0.05% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £2.16 DT = £2.16 | 100 gram [PoM] £6.12 DT = £6.12

### Liquid

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15 (scalp lotion only), 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

- ▶ **Betacap** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per 1 gram Betacap 0.1% scalp application | 100 ml [PoM] £3.75 DT = £3.75

- ▶ **Betnovate** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per 1 gram Betnovate 0.1% scalp application | 100 ml [PoM] £4.99 DT = £3.75  
Betnovate 0.1% lotion | 100 ml [PoM] £4.58 DT = £4.58

- ▶ **Diprosone** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone dipropionate) 500 microgram per 1 ml Diprosone 0.05% lotion | 30 ml [PoM] £2.73 DT = £2.73 | 100 ml [PoM] £7.80 DT = £7.80

Combinations available: *Betamethasone with clioquinol*,

p. 740 · *Betamethasone with clotrimazole*, p. 740 ·

*Betamethasone with fusidic acid*, p. 741 · *Betamethasone with*

*neomycin*, p. 669 · *Betamethasone with salicylic acid*, p. 741

## Calcipotriol with betamethasone

30-May-2017

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, calcipotriol p. 750, betamethasone p. 735.

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### DOVOBET® GEL

##### Scalp psoriasis

###### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child 12–17 years (specialist use only): Apply 1–4 g once daily usual duration of therapy 4 weeks; if necessary, treatment may be continued beyond 4 weeks or repeated, on the advice of a specialist, shampoo off after leaving on scalp overnight or during day, when different preparations containing calcipotriol used together, maximum total calcipotriol 3.75 mg in any one week

##### Mild to moderate plaque psoriasis

###### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child 12–17 years (specialist use only): Apply once daily usual duration for up to 4 weeks; if necessary treatment should be continued beyond 4 weeks, or repeated, only on the advice of a specialist, apply to maximum 30% of body surface, when different preparations containing calcipotriol used together, max. total calcipotriol 3.75 mg in any one week; maximum 75 g per week

#### DOVOBET® OINTMENT

##### Stable plaque psoriasis

###### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child 12–17 years (specialist use only): Apply once daily for up to 4 weeks; if necessary, treatment may be continued beyond 4 weeks or repeated, on the advice of a specialist, apply to a maximum 30% of body surface, when different preparations containing calcipotriol used together, max. total calcipotriol 3.75 mg in any one week; maximum 75 g per week

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Dovobet*® not licensed for use in children.
- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS**
- **ENSTILAR**® Erythrodermic psoriasis · pustular psoriasis
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids · vitamin D substances

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxytoluene

##### ► *Dovobet* (LEO Pharma)

Calcipotriol (as Calcipotriol hydrate) 50 microgram per 1 gram, Betamethasone (as Betamethasone dipropionate) 500 microgram per 1 gram *Dovobet* ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £19.84 DT = £19.84 | 60 gram [PoM] £39.68 | 120 gram [PoM] £73.86

#### Gel

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxytoluene

##### ► *Dovobet* (LEO Pharma)

Calcipotriol (as Calcipotriol monohydrate) 50 microgram per 1 gram, Betamethasone (as Betamethasone dipropionate) 500 microgram per 1 gram *Dovobet* gel | 60 gram [PoM] £37.21 DT = £37.21 | 120 gram [PoM] £69.11

## Clobetasol propionate

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Short-term treatment only of severe resistant inflammatory skin disorders such as recalcitrant eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis**

#### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child 1–17 years: Apply 1–2 times a day for up to 4 weeks, to be applied thinly

### POTENCY

► Clobetasol propionate 0.05% cream, foam, ointment, scalp application, and shampoo: very potent.

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Dermovate*® not licensed for use in children under 1 year.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer clobetasol propionate foam, liquid (scalp application), cream, ointment and shampoo. Scalp application Patients or carers should be advised to apply foam directly to scalp lesions (foam begins to subside immediately on contact with skin).

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: cream, ointment, paste

#### Foam

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15, 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates, propylene glycol

##### ► *Clarelux* (Pierre Fabre Derma-Cosmetique)

Clobetasol propionate 500 microgram per 1 gram *Clarelux* 500micrograms/g foam | 100 gram [PoM] £11.06 DT = £11.06

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Beeswax, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), chlorocresol, propylene glycol

##### ► *Clobetasol propionate (Non-proprietary)*

Clobetasol propionate 500 microgram per 1 gram Clobetasol 0.05% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £5 DT = £2.69 | 100 gram [PoM] £7.90

##### ► *ClobaDerm* (Auden McKenzie (Pharma Division) Ltd)

Clobetasol propionate 500 microgram per 1 gram *ClobaDerm* 0.05% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £2.15 DT = £2.69 | 100 gram [PoM] £6.32 DT = £7.90

##### ► *Dermovate* (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Clobetasol propionate 500 microgram per 1 gram *Dermovate* 0.05% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £2.69 DT = £2.69 | 100 gram [PoM] £7.90 DT = £7.90

#### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

##### ► *Clobetasol propionate (Non-proprietary)*

Clobetasol propionate 500 microgram per 1 gram Clobetasol 0.05% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £5 DT = £2.69 | 100 gram [PoM] £7.90 DT = £7.90

##### ► *ClobaDerm* (Auden McKenzie (Pharma Division) Ltd)

Clobetasol propionate 500 microgram per 1 gram *ClobaDerm* 0.05% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £2.15 DT = £2.69 | 100 gram [PoM] £6.32 DT = £7.90

##### ► *Dermovate* (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Clobetasol propionate 500 microgram per 1 gram *Dermovate* 0.05% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £2.69 DT = £2.69 | 100 gram [PoM] £7.90 DT = £7.90

#### Liquid

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15, 28

##### ► *Dermovate* (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Clobetasol propionate 500 microgram per 1 gram *Dermovate* 0.05% scalp application | 30 ml [PoM] £3.07 DT = £3.07 | 100 ml [PoM] £10.42 DT = £10.42

Combinations available: *Clobetasol propionate with neomycin sulfate and nystatin*, p. 742



**F 734**

## Clobetasone butyrate

21-Dec-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Eczemas and dermatitis of all types | Maintenance between courses of more potent corticosteroids**

#### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly

### POTENCY

- Clobetasone butyrate 0.05% cream and ointment: moderate.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be advised on the application of clobetasone butyrate containing preparations.
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Cream can be sold to the public for short-term symptomatic treatment and control of patches of eczema and dermatitis (but not seborrhoeic dermatitis) in adults and children over 12 years provided pack does not contain more than 15 g.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: cream, ointment

#### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

#### ► Clobavate (Teva UK Ltd)

Clobetasone butyrate 500 microgram per 1 gram Clobavate 0.05% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £1.49 DT = £1.86 | 100 gram [PoM] £4.35 DT = £5.44

#### ► Eumovate (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Clobetasone butyrate 500 microgram per 1 gram Eumovate 0.05% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £1.86 DT = £1.86 | 100 gram [PoM] £5.44 DT = £5.44

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), chlorocresol

#### ► Eumovate (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare, GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Clobetasone butyrate 500 microgram per 1 gram Eumovate Eczema and Dermatitis 0.05% cream | 15 gram [P] £4.11 DT = £4.11 Eumovate 0.05% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £1.86 DT = £1.86 | 100 gram [PoM] £5.44 DT = £5.44

Combinations available: *Clobetasone butyrate with nystatin and oxytetracycline*, p. 742

**F 734**

## Diffucortolone valerate

21-Dec-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids (using 0.3% diflucortolone valerate) | Short-term treatment of severe exacerbations (using 0.3% diflucortolone valerate) | Psoriasis (using 0.3% diflucortolone valerate)**

#### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child 1 month–3 years: Apply 1–2 times a day for up to 2 weeks, reducing strength as condition responds, to be applied thinly
- Child 4–17 years: Apply 1–2 times a day for up to 2 weeks, reducing strength as condition responds, to be applied thinly; maximum 60 g per week

**Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids (using 0.1% diflucortolone valerate) | Psoriasis (using 0.1% diflucortolone valerate)**

#### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply 1–2 times a day for up to 4 weeks, to be applied thinly

### POTENCY

- Diflucortolone valerate 0.1% cream and ointment: potent.
- Diflucortolone valerate 0.3% cream and ointment: very potent.

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Nerisone*® licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer); *Nerisone Forte*® not licensed for use in children under 4 years.

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Pustular psoriasis

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Patients or carers should be advised on application of diflucortolone valerate containing preparations.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

#### ► Nerisone (Meadow Laboratories Ltd)

Diflucortolone valerate 1 mg per 1 gram Nerisone 0.1% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £3.98

Diflucortolone valerate 3 mg per 1 gram Nerisone Forte 0.3% ointment | 15 gram [PoM] £4.70

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Beeswax, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), disodium edetate, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

#### ► Nerisone (Meadow Laboratories Ltd)

Diflucortolone valerate 1 mg per 1 gram Nerisone 0.1% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £3.98

Nerisone 0.1% oily cream | 30 gram [PoM] £4.95 DT = £4.95

Diflucortolone valerate 3 mg per 1 gram Nerisone Forte 0.3% oily cream | 15 gram [PoM] £4.70 DT = £4.70

**F 734**

## Fludoxycortide

(Flurandrenolone)

21-Dec-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas**

#### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly

### POTENCY

- Fludoxycortide 0.0125% cream and ointment: moderate

### HAELAN® TAPE

**Chronic localised recalcitrant dermatoses (but not acute or weeping)**

#### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Cut tape to fit lesion, apply to clean, dry skin shorn of hair, usually for 12 hours daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be counselled on application of fludoxycortide cream and ointment.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Beeswax, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates

#### ► Fludoxycortide (Non-proprietary)

Fludoxycortide 125 microgram per 1 gram Fludoxycortide 0.0125% ointment | 60 gram [PoM] £5.99

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), propylene glycol

### ► Fludrocortide (Non-proprietary)

Fludrocortide 125 microgram per 1 gram Fludrocortide  
0.0125% cream | 60 gram [PoM] £5.99

### Impregnated dressing

### ► Fludrocortide (Non-proprietary)

Fludrocortide 4 microgram per 1 square cm Fludrocortide  
4micrograms/square cm tape 7.5cm | 20 cm [PoM] £12.49–£13.67 DT  
= £13.67

F 734

21-Dec-2017

## Fluocinolone acetonide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas | Psoriasis**

#### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child 1–17 years: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly, reduce strength as condition responds

### POTENCY

- Fluocinolone acetonide 0.025% cream, gel, and ointment: potent.
- Fluocinolone acetonide 0.00625% cream and ointment: moderate.
- Fluocinolone acetonide 0.0025% cream: mild.

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

Pustular psoriasis

### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Gel is useful for application to the scalp and other hairy areas.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Patient counselling is advised for fluocinolone acetonide cream, gel and ointment (application).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol, wool fat and related substances (including lanolin)

#### ► Synalar (Reig Jofre UK Ltd)

Fluocinolone acetonide 62.5 microgram per 1 gram Synalar 1 in 4  
Dilution 0.00625% ointment | 50 gram [PoM] £4.84 DT price = £4.84

Fluocinolone acetonide 250 microgram per 1 gram Synalar  
0.025% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £4.14 DT price = £4.14 |  
100 gram [PoM] £11.75 DT price = £11.75

### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates, propylene glycol

#### ► Synalar (Reig Jofre UK Ltd)

Fluocinolone acetonide 25 microgram per 1 gram Synalar 1 in 10  
Dilution 0.0025% cream | 50 gram [PoM] £4.58 DT price = £4.58

Fluocinolone acetonide 62.5 microgram per 1 gram Synalar 1 in 4  
Dilution 0.00625% cream | 50 gram [PoM] £4.84 DT price = £4.84

Fluocinolone acetonide 250 microgram per 1 gram Synalar  
0.025% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £4.14 DT price = £4.14 |  
100 gram [PoM] £11.75 DT price = £11.75

### Gel

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

#### ► Synalar (Reig Jofre UK Ltd)

Fluocinolone acetonide 250 microgram per 1 gram Synalar  
0.025% gel | 30 gram [PoM] £5.56 DT price = £5.56 | 60 gram [PoM]  
£10.02 DT price = £10.02

Combinations available: **Fluocinolone acetonide with cloquinol**, p. 742 · **Fluocinolone acetonide with neomycin**, p. 742

F 734

21-Dec-2017

## Fluocinonide

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis**

#### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly

### POTENCY

- Fluocinonide 0.05% cream and ointment: potent.

### ● UNLICENSED USE

Not licensed for use in children under 1 year.

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

Pustular psoriasis

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Patients or carers should be advised on the application of fluocinonide preparations.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ointment

### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol, woolfat and related substances (including lanolin)

#### ► Metosyn (Reig Jofre UK Ltd)

Fluocinonide 500 microgram per 1 gram Metosyn 0.05% ointment  
| 25 gram [PoM] £3.50 DT = £3.50 | 100 gram [PoM] £13.15 DT =  
£13.15

### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

#### ► Metosyn FAPG (Reig Jofre UK Ltd)

Fluocinonide 500 microgram per 1 gram Metosyn FAPG 0.05%  
cream | 25 gram [PoM] £3.96 DT = £3.96 | 100 gram [PoM] £13.34 DT  
= £13.34

F 734

21-Dec-2017

## Fluticasone

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as dermatitis and eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis**

#### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child 1–2 months: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly
- Child 3 months–17 years: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly

### POTENCY

- Fluticasone cream 0.05%: potent.
- Fluticasone ointment 0.005%: potent.

### ● UNLICENSED USE

Not licensed for use in children under 3 months.

### ● INTERACTIONS

→ Appendix 1: corticosteroids

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Patients or carers should be given advice on application of fluticasone creams and ointments.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), imidurea, propylene glycol

#### ► Cutivate (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Fluticasone propionate 500 microgram per 1 gram Cutivate  
0.05% cream | 15 gram [PoM] £2.27 DT = £2.27 | 30 gram [PoM]  
£4.24 DT = £4.24

**Ointment**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28  
EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

► **Cutivate** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Fluticasone propionate 50 microgram per 1 gram** Cutivate 0.005% ointment | 15 gram [PoM] £2.27 DT = £2.27 | 30 gram [PoM] £4.24 DT = £4.24

F 734

**Hydrocortisone**

21-Dec-2017

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Mild inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly

**Nappy rash**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: Apply 1–2 times a day for no longer than 1 week, discontinued as soon as the inflammation subsides

**POTENCY**

► Hydrocortisone cream and ointment 0.5 to 2.5%: mild

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** When hydrocortisone cream or ointment is prescribed and no strength is stated, the 1% strength should be supplied. Although *Dioderm*<sup>®</sup> contains only 0.1% hydrocortisone, the formulation is designed to provide a clinical activity comparable to that of Hydrocortisone Cream 1% BP.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for hydrocortisone cream and ointment (application).

**● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

**Dental practitioners' formulary**

Hydrocortisone Cream 1% 15 g may be prescribed.

● **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Skin creams and ointments containing hydrocortisone (alone or with other ingredients) can be sold to the public for the treatment of allergic contact dermatitis, irritant dermatitis, insect bite reactions and mild to moderate eczema in patients over 10 years, to be applied sparingly over the affected area 1–2 times daily for max. 1 week. Over-the-counter hydrocortisone preparations should not be sold without medical advice for children under 10 years or for pregnant women; they should **not** be sold for application to the face, anogenital region, broken or infected skin (including cold sores, acne, and athlete's foot).

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: cream, ointment

**Foam**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

► **Colifoam** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Hydrocortisone acetate 100 mg per 1 gram** Colifoam 10% aerosol | 14 dose [PoM] £9.33 DT = £9.33

**Cream**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

► **Hydrocortisone (Non-proprietary)**

**Hydrocortisone 5 mg per 1 gram** Hydrocortisone 0.5% cream | 15 gram [PoM] £3.00 DT = £0.79 | 30 gram [PoM] £2.18–£4.90

**Hydrocortisone 10 mg per 1 gram** Hydrocortisone 1% cream | 15 gram [PoM] £10.50 DT = £0.71 | 30 gram [PoM] £23.83 DT = £1.42 | 50 gram [PoM] £36.12 DT = £2.37

**Hydrocortisone 25 mg per 1 gram** Hydrocortisone 2.5% cream | 15 gram [PoM] £44.00 DT = £4.98 | 30 gram [PoM] £12.00–£88.00

► **Dioderm** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

**Hydrocortisone 1 mg per 1 gram** Dioderm 0.1% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £2.39 DT = £2.39

► **Mildison Lipocream** (LEO Pharma)

**Hydrocortisone 10 mg per 1 gram** Mildison Lipocream 1% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £1.71 DT = £1.42

**Ointment**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

► **Hydrocortisone (Non-proprietary)**

**Hydrocortisone 5 mg per 1 gram** Hydrocortisone 0.5% ointment | 15 gram [PoM] £5.67 DT = £5.67 | 30 gram [PoM] £12.00

**Hydrocortisone 10 mg per 1 gram** Hydrocortisone 1% ointment | 15 gram [PoM] £10.50 DT = £0.70 | 30 gram [PoM] £23.83 DT = £1.40 | 50 gram [PoM] £36.12 DT = £2.33

**Hydrocortisone 25 mg per 1 gram** Hydrocortisone 2.5% ointment | 15 gram [PoM] £44.00 DT = £25.08 | 30 gram [PoM] £50.16–£88.00

Combinations available: **Hydrocortisone with benzalkonium chloride, dimeticone and nystatin**, p. 743 • **Hydrocortisone with chlorhexidine hydrochloride and nystatin**, p. 743 • **Hydrocortisone with fusidic acid**, p. 743 • **Hydrocortisone with clotrimazole**, p. 743 • **Hydrocortisone with miconazole**, p. 744 • **Hydrocortisone with oxytetracycline**, p. 744

F 734

**Hydrocortisone butyrate**

21-Dec-2017

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child 1–17 years: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly

**POTENCY**

► Hydrocortisone butyrate 0.1% cream, liquid, and ointment: potent

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer hydrocortisone butyrate lotion, cream, ointment and scalp lotion.

Medicines for Children leaflet: Hydrocortisone (topical) for eczema [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/hydrocortisone-topical-for-eczema](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/hydrocortisone-topical-for-eczema)

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ointment

**Ointment**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

► **Locoid** (LEO Pharma)

**Hydrocortisone butyrate 1 mg per 1 gram** Locoid 0.1% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £1.60 DT = £1.60 | 100 gram [PoM] £4.93 DT = £4.93

**Cream**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

► **Locoid** (LEO Pharma)

**Hydrocortisone butyrate 1 mg per 1 gram** Locoid 0.1% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £1.60 DT = £1.60 | 100 gram [PoM] £4.93 DT = £4.93

► **Locoid Lipocream** (LEO Pharma)

**Hydrocortisone butyrate 1 mg per 1 gram** Locoid 0.1% Lipocream | 30 gram [PoM] £1.69 DT = £1.60 | 100 gram [PoM] £5.17 DT = £4.93

**Liquid**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15 (excluding Locoid Crelo topical emulsion), 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxytoluene, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

► **Locoid** (LEO Pharma)

**Hydrocortisone butyrate 1 mg per 1 ml** Locoid 0.1% scalp lotion | 100 ml [PoM] £6.83 DT = £6.83

► **Locoid Crelo** (LEO Pharma)

**Hydrocortisone butyrate 1 mg per 1 gram** Locoid Crelo 0.1% topical emulsion | 100 gram [PoM] £5.91

## Hydrocortisone with urea

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, hydrocortisone p. 739.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Mild inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: To be applied thinly (consult product literature)

#### POTENCY

- ▶ Hydrocortisone 1% with urea cream: moderate

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be advised on application of hydrocortisone with urea cream.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

- ▶ **Alphaderm** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Hydrocortisone 10 mg per 1 gram, Urea 100 mg per 1 gram  
Alphaderm 1%/10% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £2.38 DT = £2.38  
| 100 gram [PoM] £7.03 DT = £7.03

F 734

21-Dec-2017

## Mometasone furoate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 1 month–1 year: Apply once daily, to be applied thinly (to scalp in case of lotion)
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: Apply once daily, to be applied thinly (to scalp in case of lotion)

#### POTENCY

- ▶ Mometasone furoate 0.1% cream, ointment, and scalp lotion: potent.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 2 years.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: corticosteroids
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and carers should be advised on the application of topical mometasone.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ointment

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Beeswax

- ▶ **Mometasone furoate (Non-proprietary)**

Mometasone furoate 1 mg per 1 gram Mometasone 0.1% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £4.36 DT = £1.53 | 100 gram [PoM] £12.58 DT = £5.10

- ▶ **Elocon** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

Mometasone furoate 1 mg per 1 gram Elocon 0.1% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £4.80 DT = £1.53 | 100 gram [PoM] £15.10 DT = £5.10

#### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Beeswax, propylene glycol

- ▶ **Mometasone furoate (Non-proprietary)**

Mometasone furoate 1 mg per 1 gram Mometasone 0.1% ointment | 15 gram [PoM] £4.32 | 30 gram [PoM] £4.45 DT = £1.57 | 50 gram [PoM] £12.44 | 100 gram [PoM] £12.82 DT = £5.23

- ▶ **Elocon** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

Mometasone furoate 1 mg per 1 gram Elocon 0.1% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £4.32 DT = £1.57 | 100 gram [PoM] £12.44 DT = £5.23

### Liquid

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

- ▶ **Elocon** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

Mometasone furoate 1 mg per 1 gram Elocon 0.1% scalp lotion | 30 ml [PoM] £4.36 DT = £4.36

## CORTICOSTEROIDS > CORTICOSTEROID COMBINATIONS WITH ANTI-INFECTIVES

## Betamethasone with clioquinol

18-Nov-2015

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, betamethasone p. 735.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

#### POTENCY

- ▶ Betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1% with clioquinol cream and ointment: potent.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Betamethasone and clioquinol preparations is not licensed for use in children under 1 year.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Stains clothing. Patients or carers should be counselled on application of betamethasone with clioquinol preparations.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

- ▶ **Betamethasone with clioquinol (Non-proprietary)**

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per 1 gram, Clioquinol 30 mg per 1 gram Betamethasone valerate 0.1% / Clioquinol 3% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £38.88 DT = £38.88

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), chlorocresol

- ▶ **Betamethasone with clioquinol (Non-proprietary)**

Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per 1 gram, Clioquinol 30 mg per 1 gram Betamethasone valerate 0.1% / Clioquinol 3% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £38.88 DT = £38.88

## Betamethasone with clotrimazole

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, betamethasone p. 735, clotrimazole p. 724.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

#### POTENCY

- ▶ Betamethasone dipropionate 0.064% (=betamethasone 0.5%) with clotrimazole cream: potent.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Lotriderm® not licensed for use in children under 12 years.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer betamethasone with clotrimazole cream.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), propylene glycol

► **Lotiderm** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Betamethasone dipropionate 640 microgram per 1 gram, Clotrimazole 10 mg per 1 gram** Lotiderm cream | 30 gram [PoM]  
£6.34 DT = £6.34

## Betamethasone with fusidic acid

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, betamethasone p. 735, fusidic acid p. 357.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: (consult product literature)

#### POTENCY

► Betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1% with fusidic acid cream: potent.

● **UNLICENSED USE** *Fucibet® Lipid Cream* is not licensed for use in children under 6 years.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be counselled on application of betamethasone with fusidic acid preparations.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), chlorocresol, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

► **Betamethasone with fusidic acid (Non-proprietary)**

**Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per 1 gram, Fusidic acid 20 mg per 1 gram** Betamethasone valerate 0.1% / Fusidic acid 2% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £6.38 DT = £6.38 | 60 gram [PoM] £12.76 DT = £12.76

► **Fucibet** (LEO Pharma)

**Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per 1 gram, Fusidic acid 20 mg per 1 gram** Fucibet cream | 30 gram [PoM] £6.38 DT = £6.38 | 60 gram [PoM] £12.76 DT = £12.76  
Fucibet Lipid cream | 30 gram [PoM] £6.74 DT = £6.38

► **Xemacort** (Mylan)

**Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per 1 gram, Fusidic acid 20 mg per 1 gram** Xemacort cream | 30 gram [PoM] £6.05 DT = £6.38 | 60 gram [PoM] £12.45 DT = £12.76

## Betamethasone with neomycin

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, betamethasone p. 735, neomycin sulfate p. 722.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis**

► TO THE SKIN USING OINTMENT, OR TO THE SKIN USING CREAM

► Child 1–23 months: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly

► Child 2–17 years: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly

#### POTENCY

► Betamethasone (as valerate) 0.1% with neomycin cream and ointment: potent.

● **UNLICENSED USE** Betamethasone with neomycin preparations not licensed for use in children under 2 years.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for betamethasone with neomycin cream and ointment (application).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

► **Betamethasone with neomycin (Non-proprietary)**

**Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per 1 gram, Neomycin sulfate 5 mg per 1 gram** Betamethasone valerate 0.1% / Neomycin 0.5% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £38.88 DT = £31.36 | 100 gram [PoM] £97.00 DT = £104.52

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), chlorocresol

► **Betamethasone with neomycin (Non-proprietary)**

**Betamethasone (as Betamethasone valerate) 1 mg per 1 gram, Neomycin sulfate 5 mg per 1 gram** Betamethasone valerate 0.1% / Neomycin 0.5% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £38.88 DT = £31.36 | 100 gram [PoM] £97.00 DT = £104.52

## Betamethasone with salicylic acid

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, betamethasone p. 735, salicylic acid p. 768.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### DIPROSALIC® OINTMENT

**Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, max. 60 g per week

#### POTENCY

► For *Diprosalic*® ointment: betamethasone (as dipropionate) 0.05% with salicylic acid 3%: potent.

#### DIPROSALIC® SCALP APPLICATION

**Severe inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, apply a few drops

#### POTENCY

► For *Diprosalic*® scalp application: betamethasone (as dipropionate) 0.05% with salicylic acid 2%: potent.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**DIPROSALIC® OINTMENT** Patients or carers should be counselled on application of betamethasone and salicylic acid preparations.

**DIPROSALIC® SCALP APPLICATION** Patients or carers should be counselled on application of betamethasone and salicylic acid scalp application.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

► **Diprosalic** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Betamethasone (as Betamethasone dipropionate) 500 microgram per 1 gram, Salicylic acid 30 mg per 1 gram** Diprosalic 0.05%/3% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £3.18 DT = £3.18 | 100 gram [PoM] £9.14 DT = £9.14



**Liquid**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28  
EXCIPIENTS: May contain Disodium edetate

- **Diprosalic** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)  
Betamethasone (as Betamethasone dipropionate)  
500 microgram per 1 mL, Salicylic acid 20 mg per 1 mL Diprosalic  
0.05%/2% scalp application | 100 mL [PoM] £10.10 DT = £10.10

**Clobetasol propionate with neomycin sulfate and nystatin**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, clobetasol propionate p. 736, neomycin sulfate p. 722.

**• INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Short-term treatment only of severe resistant inflammatory skin disorders such as recalcitrant eczemas associated with infection and unresponsive to less potent corticosteroids | Psoriasis associated with infection**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child: (consult product literature)

**POTENCY**

- Clobetasol propionate 0.05% with neomycin sulfate and nystatin cream and ointment: very potent.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Clobetasol with neomycin and nystatin preparations not licensed for use in children under 2 years.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be advised on application of clobetasol propionate, neomycin sulfate and nystatin containing preparations.

**• MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Ointment**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

- **Clobetasol propionate with neomycin sulfate and nystatin (Non-proprietary)**  
Clobetasol propionate 500 microgram per 1 gram, Neomycin sulfate 5 mg per 1 gram, Nystatin 100000 unit per 1 gram Clobetasol 500microgram / Neomycin 5mg / Nystatin 100,000units/g ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £87.00 DT = £87.00

**Cream**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

- **Clobetasol propionate with neomycin sulfate and nystatin (Non-proprietary)**  
Clobetasol propionate 500 microgram per 1 gram, Neomycin sulfate 5 mg per 1 gram, Nystatin 100000 unit per 1 gram Clobetasol 500microgram / Neomycin 5mg / Nystatin 100,000units/g cream | 30 gram [PoM] £87.00 DT = £87.00

**Clobetasone butyrate with nystatin and oxytetracycline**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, clobetasone butyrate p. 737, oxytetracycline p. 354.

**• INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Steroid-responsive dermatoses where candidal or bacterial infection is present**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child: (consult product literature)

**POTENCY**

- Clobetasone butyrate 0.05% with nystatin and oxytetracycline cream: moderate.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Stains clothing.

**• MEDICINAL FORMS**

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: cream

**Fluocinolone acetonide with clioquinol**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, fluocinolone acetonide p. 738.

**• INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas associated with infection | Psoriasis associated with infection**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly, reducing strength as condition responds

**POTENCY**

- Clioquinol 3% with fluocinolone acetonide 0.025% cream and ointment: potent

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patient counselling is advised for clioquinol with fluocinolone acetonide cream and ointment (application). Ointment stains clothing.

**• MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Ointment**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol, woolfat and related substances (including lanolin)

- **Synalar C** (Reig Jofre UK Ltd)  
Fluocinolone acetonide 250 microgram per 1 gram, Clioquinol 30 mg per 1 gram Synalar C ointment | 15 gram [PoM] £2.66

**Cream**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), disodium edetate, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), polysorbates, propylene glycol

- **Synalar C** (Reig Jofre UK Ltd)  
Fluocinolone acetonide 250 microgram per 1 gram, Clioquinol 30 mg per 1 gram Synalar C cream | 15 gram [PoM] £2.66

**Fluocinolone acetoneide with neomycin**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, fluocinolone acetoneide p. 738, neomycin sulfate p. 722.

**• INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas associated with infection | Psoriasis associated with infection**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child 1–11 months: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly, reducing strength as condition responds
- Child 1–17 years: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly, reducing strength as condition responds

**POTENCY**

- Fluocinolone acetoneide 0.025% with neomycin 0.5% cream and ointment: potent.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be counselled on the application of fluocinolone acetoneide with neomycin preparations.

**• MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Ointment**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol, woolfat and related substances (including lanolin)

- **Synalar N** (Reig Jofre UK Ltd)  
Fluocinolone acetonide 250 microgram per 1 gram, Neomycin sulfate 5 mg per 1 gram Synalar N ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £4.36

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), polysorbates, propylene glycol

- **Synalar N** (Reig Jofre UK Ltd)  
Fluocinolone acetonide 250 microgram per 1 gram, Neomycin sulfate 5 mg per 1 gram Synalar N cream | 30 gram [PoM] £4.36

## Hydrocortisone with benzalkonium chloride, dimeticone and nystatin

15-Mar-2016

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, hydrocortisone p. 739, dimeticone p. 728.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Mild inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas associated with infection**

► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply 3 times a day until lesion has healed, to be applied thinly

### POTENCY

- Benzalkonium with dimeticone, hydrocortisone acetate 0.5%, and nystatin cream: mild.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be advised on application of benzalkonium with dimeticone and hydrocortisone and nystatin preparations.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxyanisole, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), sodium metabisulfite, sorbic acid

- **Timodine** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
Benzalkonium chloride 1 mg per 1 gram, Hydrocortisone 5 mg per 1 gram, Dimeticone 350 100 mg per 1 gram, Nystatin 100 000 unit per 1 gram Timodine cream | 30 gram [PoM] £3.37

## Hydrocortisone with chlorhexidine hydrochloride and nystatin

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, hydrocortisone p. 739, chlorhexidine p. 703.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Mild inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas**

► TO THE SKIN

- Child: To be applied thinly (consult product literature)

### POTENCY

- Hydrocortisone 0.5% with chlorhexidine hydrochloride 1% and nystatin cream: mild
- Hydrocortisone 1% with chlorhexidine hydrochloride 1% and nystatin ointment: mild

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on application of chlorhexidine hydrochloride with hydrocortisone and nystatin preparations.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Ointment

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

- **Hydrocortisone with chlorhexidine hydrochloride and nystatin (Non-proprietary)**

Chlorhexidine acetate 10 mg per 1 gram, Hydrocortisone 10 mg per 1 gram, Nystatin 100 000 unit per 1 gram Nystatin 100,000units/g / Chlorhexidine acetate 1% / Hydrocortisone 1% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £5.29 DT = £5.29

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates

- **Hydrocortisone with chlorhexidine hydrochloride and nystatin (Non-proprietary)**

Hydrocortisone 5 mg per 1 gram, Chlorhexidine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 gram, Nystatin 100 000 unit per 1 gram Nystatin 100,000units/g / Chlorhexidine hydrochloride 1% / Hydrocortisone 0.5% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £5.29 DT = £5.29

## Hydrocortisone with clotrimazole

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, hydrocortisone p. 739, clotrimazole p. 724.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Mild inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas (associated with fungal infection)**

► TO THE SKIN

- Child: (consult product literature)

### POTENCY

- Clotrimazole with hydrocortisone 1% cream: mild

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer clotrimazole with hydrocortisone cream.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** A 15-g tube is on sale to the public for the treatment of athlete's foot and fungal infection of skin folds with associated inflammation in patients 10 years and over.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol)

- **Canesten HC** (Bayer Plc)

Clotrimazole 10 mg per 1 gram, Hydrocortisone 10 mg per 1 gram Canesten HC cream | 30 gram [PoM] £2.42 DT = £2.42

## Hydrocortisone with fusidic acid

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, hydrocortisone p. 739, fusidic acid p. 357.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Mild inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas**

► TO THE SKIN

- Child: To be applied thinly (consult product literature)

### POTENCY

- Hydrocortisone with fusidic acid cream: mild

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on application of hydrocortisone with fusidic acid preparations.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Cream**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxyanisole, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), polysorbates, potassium sorbate

► **Fucidin H (Fusidic acid / Hydrocortisone)** (LEO Pharma)

Hydrocortisone acetate 10 mg per 1 gram, Fusidic acid 20 mg per 1 gram | Fucidin H cream | 30 gram [PoM] £6.02 DT = £6.02 | 60 gram [PoM] £12.05 DT = £12.05

## Hydrocortisone with miconazole

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, hydrocortisone p. 739, miconazole p. 725.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Mild inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas associated with infections**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child: (consult product literature)

#### **POTENCY**

- Hydrocortisone 1% with miconazole cream and ointment: mild

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be advised on application of hydrocortisone with miconazole preparations.

### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

**Dental practitioners' formulary**

May be prescribed as Miconazole and Hydrocortisone Cream or Ointment for max. 7 days.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** A 15-g tube of hydrocortisone with miconazole cream is on sale to the public for the treatment of athlete's foot and candidal intertrigo in children over 10 years.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Ointment**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

► **Daktacort** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

Hydrocortisone 10 mg per 1 gram, Miconazole nitrate 20 mg per 1 gram | Daktacort ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £2.50 DT = £2.50

#### **Cream**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxyanisole, disodium edetate

► **Daktacort** (McNeil Products Ltd, Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

Hydrocortisone 10 mg per 1 gram, Miconazole nitrate 20 mg per 1 gram | Daktacort Hydrocortisone cream | 15 gram [P] £3.42 DT = £3.17 | Daktacort 2%/1% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £2.49 DT = £2.49

## Hydrocortisone with oxytetracycline

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, hydrocortisone p. 739.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Mild inflammatory skin disorders such as eczemas**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child 12–17 years: (consult product literature)

#### **POTENCY**

- Hydrocortisone 1% with oxytetracycline ointment: mild.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Children under 12 years

- **PREGNANCY** Tetracyclines should not be given to pregnant women. Effects on skeletal development have been

documented when tetracyclines have been used in the first trimester in animal studies. Administration during the second or third trimester may cause discoloration of the child's teeth.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Tetracyclines should not be given to women who are breast-feeding (although absorption and therefore discoloration of teeth in the infant is probably usually prevented by chelation with calcium in milk).

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients should be given advice on the application of hydrocortisone with oxytetracycline ointment.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Ointment**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

► **Terra-Cortril** (Intrapharm Laboratories Ltd)

Hydrocortisone 10 mg per 1 gram, Oxytetracycline (as Oxytetracycline hydrochloride) 30 mg per 1 gram | Terra-Cortril ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £5.01 DT = £5.01

## DERMATOLOGICAL DRUGS > ANTI-INFECTIVES

### Ichthammol

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Chronic lichenified eczema**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child 1–17 years: Apply 1–3 times a day

- **UNLICENSED USE** No information available.

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Skin irritation

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ointment, paste

#### **Liquid**

► **Ichthammol (Non-proprietary)**

Ichthammol 1 mg per 1 mg | Ichthammol liquid | 100 gram [GSL] £11.42 DT = £11.42 | 500 gram [GSL] £34.27

## Ichthammol with zinc oxide

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, ichthammol above.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Chronic lichenified eczema**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child: (consult product literature)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: cream, ointment

#### **Impregnated dressing**

► **Ichthopaste** (Evolan Pharma AB)

Ichthopaste bandage 7.5cm × 6m | 1 bandage £3.75

## DERMATOLOGICAL DRUGS > ANTRACEN DERIVATIVES

### Dithranol

(Anthralin)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Subacute and chronic psoriasis

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

##### DITHROCREAM®

##### Subacute and chronic psoriasis

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: For application to skin or scalp, 0.1–0.5% cream suitable for overnight treatment, 1–2% cream for maximum 1 hour (consult product literature)

##### MICANOL®

##### Subacute and chronic psoriasis

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply once daily, for application to skin or scalp, to be applied for up to 30 minutes, apply 1% cream, if necessary 3% cream can be used under medical supervision

#### ● UNLICENSED USE

**MICANOL®** Micanol® licensed for use in children, but not recommended for infants or young children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

**DITHROCREAM®** Dithrocream® is licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute and pustular psoriasis · hypersensitivity
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid sensitive areas of skin · avoid use near eyes
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Skin reactions
- **PREGNANCY** No adverse effects reported.
- **BREAST FEEDING** No adverse effects reported.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** When applying dithranol, hands should be protected by gloves or they should be washed thoroughly afterwards. Dithranol should be applied to chronic extensor plaques only, carefully avoiding normal skin.
- **MICANOL®** At the end of contact time, use plenty of lukewarm (not hot) water to rinse off cream; soap may be used after the cream has been rinsed off; use shampoo before applying cream to scalp and if necessary after cream has been rinsed off.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Treatment should be started with a low concentration such as dithranol 0.1%, and the strength increased gradually every few days up to 3%, according to tolerance.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Dithranol can stain the skin, hair and fabrics.
- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Prescription only medicine if dithranol content more than 1%, otherwise may be sold to the public.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ointment

##### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), chlorocresol

- ▶ **Dithrocream** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

Dithranol 1 mg per 1 gram Dithrocream 0.1% cream | 50 gram | £3.77

Dithranol 2.5 mg per 1 gram Dithrocream 0.25% cream | 50 gram | £4.04

Dithranol 5 mg per 1 gram Dithrocream 0.5% cream | 50 gram | £4.66

Dithranol 10 mg per 1 gram Dithrocream HP 1% cream | 50 gram | £5.42

Dithranol 20 mg per 1 gram Dithrocream 2% cream | 50 gram | £6.79

Combinations available: *Coal tar with dithranol and salicylic acid*, p. 746

## Dithranol with salicylic acid and zinc oxide

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, dithranol above, salicylic acid p. 768.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Subacute and chronic psoriasis

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: (consult local protocol)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ointment, paste

## DERMATOLOGICAL DRUGS > TARS

### Coal tar

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Psoriasis | Chronic atopic eczema

- ▶ TO THE SKIN USING PASTE
- ▶ Child: Apply 1–3 times a day, start application with low-strength preparations
- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: 100 mL/bath, to be added to an adult sized bath; add proportionally less for a child's bath. Use Coal Tar Solution BP

##### ALPHOSYL 2 IN 1® SHAMPOO

##### Psoriasis | Seborrhoeic dermatitis | Scaling | Itching

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply every 2–3 days

##### Dandruff

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply 1–2 times a week as required

##### EXOREX® LOTION

##### Psoriasis

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply 2–3 times a day, to be applied to skin or scalp; can be diluted with a few drops of water before applying

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid broken or inflamed skin · avoid eye area · avoid genital area · avoid mucosal areas · avoid rectal area · infection · sore, acute, or pustular psoriasis
- **CAUTIONS** Application to face · application to skin flexures
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Photosensitivity reaction · skin reactions
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Coal Tar Solution BP contains coal tar 20%, Strong Coal Tar Solution BP contains coal tar 40%.
- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Use suitable chemical protection gloves for extemporaneous preparation. May stain skin, hair and fabric.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** May stain skin, hair and fabric.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: cream, ointment, paste

#### Bath additive

- ▶ **Psoriderm** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)  
Coal tar distilled 400 mg per 1 ml | Psoriderm Emulsion 40% bath additive | 200 ml [P] £2.74

#### Cutaneous emulsion

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

- ▶ **Exorex** (Teva UK Ltd)  
Coal tar solution 50 mg per 1 gram | Exorex lotion | 100 ml [GSL] £8.11 DT = £8.11 | 250 ml [GSL] £16.24 DT = £16.24

#### Shampoo

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Fragrances, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

- ▶ **Coal tar (Non-proprietary)**  
Coal tar extract 20 mg per 1 gram | Coal tar extract 2% shampoo | 125 ml [GSL] [S] DT = £3.90 | 250 ml [GSL] [S] DT = £5.86
- ▶ Brands may include Alphasyl 2 in 1, Neutrogena T/Gel Therapeutic, Polytar Scalp

## Coal tar with coconut oil and salicylic acid

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, coal tar p. 745, salicylic acid p. 768.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Scaly scalp disorders | Psoriasis | Seborrhoeic dermatitis | Dandruff | Cradle cap**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN USING SHAMPOO
- ▶ Child: Apply daily as required

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Shampoo

- ▶ **Capasal** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)  
Salicylic acid 5 mg per 1 gram, Coal tar distilled 10 mg per 1 gram, Coconut oil 10 mg per 1 gram | Capasal Therapeutic shampoo | 250 ml [P] £4.69

## Coal tar with dithranol and salicylic acid

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, coal tar p. 745, dithranol p. 745, salicylic acid p. 768.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Subacute and chronic psoriasis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply up to twice daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Psorin*® is licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ointment

## Coal tar with lecithin

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, coal tar p. 745.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**PSORIDERM® CREAM**

#### Psoriasis

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, cream to be applied to the skin or scalp

**PSORIDERM® SCALP LOTION**

#### Scalp psoriasis

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply as required

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Cream

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Isopropyl palmitate, propylene glycol

- ▶ **Psoriderm** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)  
Lecithin 4 mg per 1 gram, Coal tar distilled 60 mg per 1 gram | Psoriderm cream | 225 ml [P] £9.42

#### Shampoo

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Disodium edetate

- ▶ **Psoriderm** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)  
Lecithin 3 mg per 1 ml, Coal tar distilled 25 mg per 1 ml | Psoriderm scalp lotion | 250 ml [P] £4.74

## Coal tar with salicylic acid and precipitated sulfur

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, coal tar p. 745, salicylic acid p. 768.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**COCOIS® OINTMENT**

**Scaly scalp disorders including psoriasis, eczema, seborrhoeic dermatitis and dandruff**

- ▶ INITIALLY TO THE SKIN USING SCALP OINTMENT
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: Medical supervision required
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply once weekly as required, alternatively (to the skin) apply daily for the first 3–7 days (if severe), shampoo off after 1 hour

**SEBCO® OINTMENT**

**Scaly scalp disorders including psoriasis, eczema, seborrhoeic dermatitis and dandruff**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN USING SCALP OINTMENT
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: Medical supervision required
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply as required, alternatively apply daily for the first 3–7 days (if severe), shampoo off after 1 hour

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Ointment

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol)

- ▶ **Cocois** (RPH Pharmaceuticals AB)  
Salicylic acid 20 mg per 1 gram, Sulfur precipitated 40 mg per 1 gram, Coal tar solution 120 mg per 1 gram | Cocois ointment | 40 gram [GSL] £6.22 | 100 gram [GSL] £11.69
- ▶ **Sebco** (Derma UK Ltd)  
Salicylic acid 20 mg per 1 gram, Sulfur precipitated 40 mg per 1 gram, Coal tar solution 120 mg per 1 gram | Sebco ointment | 40 gram [GSL] £6.20 | 100 gram [GSL] £11.67



## Coal tar with zinc oxide

26-Aug-2016

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, coal tar p. 745.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Psoriasis | Chronic atopic eczema

- TO THE SKIN
- Child: Apply 1–2 times a day

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM UPDATE (APRIL 2016): FIRE RISK WITH PARAFFIN-BASED SKIN EMOLLIENTS ON DRESSINGS OR CLOTHING  
See Emollient and barrier preparations p. 713.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** No preparations available—when prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Zinc and Coal Tar Paste, BP consists of zinc oxide 6%, coal tar 6%, emulsifying wax 5%, starch 38%, yellow soft paraffin 45%.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ointment, paste

## IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > CALCINEURIN INHIBITORS AND RELATED DRUGS

## Pimecrolimus

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Short-term treatment of mild to moderate atopic eczema (including flares) when topical corticosteroids cannot be used (initiated by a specialist)**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child 2–17 years: Apply twice daily until symptoms resolve (stop treatment if eczema worsens or no response after 6 weeks)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Application to malignant or potentially malignant skin lesions · application under occlusion · congenital epidermal barrier defects · contact with eyes · contact with mucous membranes · generalised erythroderma · immunodeficiency · infection at treatment site

- **CAUTIONS** Alcohol consumption (risk of facial flushing and skin irritation) · avoid other topical treatments except emollients at treatment site · UV light (avoid excessive exposure to sunlight and sunlamps)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: pimecrolimus

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Increased risk of infection
- **Rare or very rare** Skin discolouration
- **Frequency not known** Skin papilloma

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid; toxicity in animal studies following systemic administration.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises caution; ensure infant does not come in contact with treated areas.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### NICE decisions

- **Tacrolimus and pimecrolimus for atopic eczema (August 2004) NICE TA82**  
Topical pimecrolimus is an option for atopic eczema not controlled by maximal topical corticosteroid treatment or if there is a risk of important corticosteroid side-effects (particularly skin atrophy).

Topical pimecrolimus is recommended for moderate atopic eczema on the face and neck of children aged

2–16 years. Pimecrolimus should be used within its licensed indications.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA82](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA82)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 4, 11, 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), propylene glycol

- **Elidel** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Pimecrolimus 10 mg per 1 gram** Elidel 1% cream | 30 gram [PoM]

£19.69 DT = £19.69 | 60 gram [PoM] £37.41 DT = £37.41 |

100 gram [PoM] £59.07 DT = £59.07

## Tacrolimus

19-Mar-2018

- **DRUG ACTION** Tacrolimus is a calcineurin inhibitor.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Short-term treatment of moderate to severe atopic eczema (including flares) in patients unresponsive to, or intolerant of conventional therapy (initiated by a specialist)**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child 2–15 years: Apply twice daily for up to 3 weeks (consider other treatment if eczema worsens or if no improvement after 2 weeks), 0.03% ointment to be applied thinly, then reduced to once daily until lesion clears
- Child 16–17 years: Apply twice daily until lesion clears (consider other treatment if eczema worsens or no improvement after 2 weeks), initially 0.1% ointment to be applied thinly, reduce frequency to once daily or strength of ointment to 0.03% if condition allows

**Prevention of flares in patients with moderate to severe atopic eczema and 4 or more flares a year who have responded to initial treatment with topical tacrolimus (initiated by a specialist)**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child 2–15 years: Apply twice weekly, 0.03% ointment to be applied thinly, with an interval of 2–3 days between applications, use short-term treatment regimen during an acute flare; review need for preventative therapy after 1 year
- Child 16–17 years: Apply twice weekly, 0.1% ointment to be applied thinly, with an interval of 2–3 days between applications, use short-term treatment regimen during an acute flare; review need for preventative therapy after 1 year

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Application to malignant or potentially malignant skin lesions · application under occlusion · avoid contact with eyes · avoid contact with mucous membranes · congenital epidermal barrier defects · generalised erythroderma · immunodeficiency · infection at treatment site

- **CAUTIONS** UV light (avoid excessive exposure to sunlight and sunlamps)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tacrolimus

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Increased risk of infection · sensation abnormal · skin reactions
- **Uncommon** Lymphadenopathy
- **Frequency not known** Neoplasms

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if history of hypersensitivity to macrolides.

- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless essential; toxicity in animal studies following systemic administration.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid—present in breast milk (following systemic administration).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Avoid excessive exposure to UV light including sunlight.  
Medicines for Children leaflet: Tacrolimus for prevention of transplant rejection [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tacrolimus-for-prevention-of-transplant-rejection](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tacrolimus-for-prevention-of-transplant-rejection)
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**NICE decisions**

- ▶ **Tacrolimus and pimecrolimus for atopic eczema (August 2004) NICE TA82**  
Topical tacrolimus is an option for atopic eczema not controlled by maximal topical corticosteroid treatment or if there is a risk of important corticosteroid side-effects (particularly skin atrophy).

Topical tacrolimus is recommended as an option for the second-line treatment for moderate to severe atopic eczema in adults and children over 2 years. Tacrolimus should be used within its licensed indications.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA82](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA82)

**Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (March 2010) that tacrolimus 0.03% ointment (*Protopic*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the prevention of flares in children aged 2 to 15 years with moderate-to-severe atopic eczema in accordance with the licensed indications; initiation of treatment is restricted to doctors (including general practitioners) with a specialist interest and experience in treating atopic eczema with immunomodulatory therapy.

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (April 2010) that tacrolimus 0.1% ointment (*Protopic*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the prevention of flares in patients aged 16 years and over with moderate-to-severe atopic eczema in accordance with the licensed indications; initiation of treatment is restricted to doctors (including general practitioners) with a specialist interest and experience in treating atopic eczema with immunomodulatory therapy.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Ointment**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 4, 11, 28

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Beeswax

- ▶ **Protopic** (LEO Pharma)

**Tacrolimus (as Tacrolimus monohydrate) 300 microgram per 1 gram** Protopic 0.03% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £23.33 DT = £23.33 | 60 gram [PoM] £42.55 DT = £42.55

**Tacrolimus (as Tacrolimus monohydrate) 1 mg per 1 gram** Protopic 0.1% ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £25.92 DT = £25.92 | 60 gram [PoM] £47.28 DT = £47.28

**IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS > INTERLEUKIN INHIBITORS****Ustekinumab**

03-Oct-2017

**INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Moderate-to-severe plaque psoriasis that has not responded to other systemic treatments or photochemotherapy, or when these treatments cannot be used because of intolerance or contra-indications (specialist use only)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 12-17 years (body-weight up to 60 kg): Initially 750 micrograms/kg, then 750 micrograms/kg after 4 weeks, then 750 micrograms/kg every 12 weeks, consider discontinuation if no response within 28 weeks, consult product literature for advice on calculating volume of injection to be given

- ▶ Child 12-17 years (body-weight 60-100 kg): Initially 45 mg, then 45 mg after 4 weeks, then 45 mg every 12 weeks, consider discontinuation if no response within 28 weeks
- ▶ Child 12-17 years (body-weight 100 kg and above): Initially 90 mg, then 90 mg after 4 weeks, then 90 mg every 12 weeks, consider discontinuation if no response within 28 weeks

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active infection

- **CAUTIONS** Development of malignancy · history of malignancy · predisposition to infection · start appropriate treatment if widespread erythema and skin exfoliation develop, and stop ustekinumab treatment if exfoliative dermatitis suspected

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ **Tuberculosis** Active tuberculosis should be treated with standard treatment for at least 2 months before starting ustekinumab. Patients who have previously received adequate treatment for tuberculosis can start ustekinumab but should be monitored every 3 months for possible recurrence. In patients without active tuberculosis but who were previously not treated adequately, chemoprophylaxis should ideally be completed before starting ustekinumab. In patients at high risk of tuberculosis who cannot be assessed by tuberculin skin test, chemoprophylaxis can be given concurrently with ustekinumab.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: monoclonal antibodies

**SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Arthralgia · asthenia · back pain · diarrhoea · dizziness · headache · increased risk of infection · myalgia · nausea · oropharyngeal pain · skin reactions · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Depression · facial paralysis · hypersensitivity (may be delayed) · nasal congestion

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Manufacturer advises effective contraception during treatment and for 15 weeks after stopping treatment.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid—present in milk in *animal* studies.

**PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING**

Tuberculosis Patients should be evaluated for tuberculosis before treatment.

**MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- ▶ Monitor for non-melanoma skin cancer, especially in patients with a history of PUVA treatment or prolonged immunosuppressant therapy, or those over 60 years of age.
- ▶ Monitor for signs and symptoms of exfoliative dermatitis or erythrodermic psoriasis.

**PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Exfoliative dermatitis Patients should be advised to seek prompt medical attention if symptoms suggestive of exfoliative dermatitis or erythrodermic psoriasis (such as increased redness and shedding of skin over a larger area of the body) develop.  
Tuberculosis Patients should be advised to seek medical attention if symptoms suggestive of tuberculosis (e.g. persistent cough, weight loss, and fever) develop.

**NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS****NICE decisions**

- ▶ **Adalimumab, etanercept and ustekinumab for treating plaque psoriasis in children and young people (July 2017) NICE TA455**  
Ustekinumab is recommended as an option for treating plaque psoriasis in children and young people aged 12 years or older, only if the disease:
  - is severe, as defined by a total PASI of 10 or more, and

- has not responded to standard systemic therapy, such as ciclosporin, methotrexate or phototherapy, or these options are contra-indicated or not tolerated.

If the psoriasis has not responded adequately, stop treatment at 16 weeks. An adequate response is defined as a 75% reduction in PASI score from the start of treatment.

Patients currently receiving ustekinumab who do not meet the above criteria and whose treatment was started within the NHS before this guidance was published, should have the option to continue treatment until they and their clinician consider it appropriate to stop.

[www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA455](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA455)

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

##### ▶ **Stelara** (Janssen-Cilag Ltd)

**Ustekinumab 90 mg per 1 ml** Stelara 90mg/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £2,147.00

Stelara 45mg/0.5ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £2,147.00

Stelara 45mg/0.5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £2,147.00

## RETINOID AND RELATED DRUGS

### Acitretin

- **DRUG ACTION** Acitretin is a metabolite of etretinate.

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Severe extensive psoriasis resistant to other forms of therapy (under expert supervision) | Palmoplantar pustular psoriasis (under expert supervision) | Severe congenital ichthyosis (under expert supervision)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 0.5 mg/kg once daily; increased if necessary to 1 mg/kg once daily, to be taken with food or milk, careful monitoring of musculoskeletal development required; maximum 35 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 25–30 mg daily for 2–4 weeks, then adjusted according to response to 25–50 mg daily, increased to up to 75 mg daily, dose only increased to 75 mg daily for short periods in psoriasis

**Severe Darier's disease (keratosis follicularis) (under expert supervision)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 0.5 mg/kg once daily; increased if necessary to 1 mg/kg once daily, to be taken with food or milk, careful monitoring of musculoskeletal development required; maximum 35 mg per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 10 mg daily for 2–4 weeks, then adjusted according to response to 25–50 mg daily

**Harlequin ichthyosis (under expert supervision)**

##### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Neonate: 0.5 mg/kg once daily; increased if necessary to 1 mg/kg once daily, to be taken with food or milk, careful monitoring of musculoskeletal development required.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Hyperlipidaemia

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid excessive exposure to sunlight and unsupervised use of sunlamps • diabetes (can alter glucose tolerance—initial frequent blood glucose checks) • do not donate blood during and for 2 years after stopping therapy (teratogenic risk) • in children use only in exceptional circumstances and monitor growth parameters and bone development (premature epiphyseal closure reported) • investigate atypical musculoskeletal symptoms

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: retinoids

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain • arthralgia • brittle nails • conjunctivitis • diarrhoea • dry mouth • gastrointestinal disorder • haemorrhage • hair texture abnormal • headache • increased risk of infection • mucosal abnormalities • myalgia • nausea • oral disorders • peripheral oedema • skin reactions • thirst • vomiting • xerophthalmia
- ▶ **Uncommon** Dizziness • hepatic disorders • photosensitivity reaction • vision disorders
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Bone pain • exostosis • idiopathic intracranial hypertension • peripheral neuropathy
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema • capillary leak syndrome • drowsiness • dysphonia • flushing • glucose tolerance impaired • granuloma • hearing impairment • hyperhidrosis • malaise • pyogenic granuloma • retinoic acid syndrome • taste altered

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Exostosis** Skeletal hyperostosis and extra-osseous calcification reported following long-term treatment with etretinate (of which acitretin is a metabolite) and premature epiphyseal closure in children.

**Benign intracranial hypertension** Discontinue if severe headache, nausea, vomiting, or visual disturbances occur.

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Effective contraception must be used.

Pregnancy prevention In females of child-bearing potential (including those with a history of infertility), exclude pregnancy up to 3 days before treatment, every month during treatment, and every 1–3 months for 3 years after stopping treatment. Treatment should be started on day 2 or 3 of menstrual cycle. Females of child-bearing age must practise effective contraception for at least 1 month before starting treatment, during treatment, and for at least 3 years after stopping treatment. Females should be advised to use at least 1 method of contraception, but ideally they should use 2 methods of contraception. Oral progestogen-only contraceptives are not considered effective. Barrier methods should not be used alone but can be used in conjunction with other contraceptive methods. Females should be advised to seek medical attention immediately if they become pregnant during treatment or within 3 years of stopping treatment. They should also be advised to avoid alcohol during treatment and for 2 months after stopping treatment.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid—teratogenic.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment—risk of further impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid in severe impairment; increased risk of toxicity.

#### • MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ Monitor serum-triglyceride and serum-cholesterol concentrations before treatment, 1 month after starting, then every 3 months.
- ▶ Check liver function at start, at least every 4 weeks for first 2 months and then every 3 months.

#### • PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Prescribing for women of child-bearing potential Each prescription for acitretin should be limited to a supply of up to 30 days' treatment and dispensed within 7 days of the date stated on the prescription.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Females of child-bearing potential must be advised on pregnancy prevention. A patient information leaflet should be provided.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

**Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 11, 21

▶ **Acitretin (Non-proprietary)**

**Acitretin 10 mg** Acitretin 10mg capsules | 60 capsule **[PoM]** £23.80  
DT = £23.80

**Acitretin 25 mg** Acitretin 25mg capsules | 60 capsule **[PoM]** £55.24  
DT = £55.24

▶ **Neotigason (Teva UK Ltd)**

**Acitretin 10 mg** Neotigason 10mg capsules | 60 capsule **[PoM]**  
£17.30 DT = £23.80

**Acitretin 25 mg** Neotigason 25mg capsules | 60 capsule **[PoM]**  
£43.00 DT = £55.24

**SALICYLIC ACID AND DERIVATIVES****Salicylic acid with zinc oxide****INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Hyperkeratotic skin disorders**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply twice daily

**CAUTIONS** Avoid broken skin · avoid inflamed skin**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ **Salicylate toxicity** Salicylate toxicity may occur particularly if applied on large areas of skin or neonatal skin.

**SIDE-EFFECTS** Skin reactions**PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Zinc and Salicylic Acid Paste BP is also referred to as Lassar's Paste. When prepared extemporaneously, the BP states Zinc and Salicylic Acid Paste, BP (Lassar's Paste) consists of zinc oxide 24%, salicylic acid 2%, starch 24%, white soft paraffin 50%.**MEDICINAL FORMS**

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: paste

**VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > VITAMIN D AND ANALOGUES****Calcipotriol****INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Plaque psoriasis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN USING OINTMENT
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: Apply twice daily, when preparations used together maximum total calcipotriol 2.5 mg in any one week (e.g. scalp solution 20 mL with ointment 30 g); maximum 50 g per week
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply twice daily, when preparations used together maximum total calcipotriol 3.75 mg in any one week (e.g. scalp solution 30 mL with ointment 45 g); maximum 75 g per week

**Scalp psoriasis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN USING SCALP LOTION
- ▶ Child 6–11 years (specialist use only): Apply twice daily, when preparations used together max. total calcipotriol 2.5 mg in any one week (e.g. scalp solution 20 mL with ointment 30 g); maximum 30 mL per week
- ▶ Child 12–17 years (specialist use only): Apply twice daily, when preparations used together maximum total calcipotriol 3.75 mg in any one week (e.g. scalp solution 30 mL with ointment 45 g); maximum 45 mL per week

**UNLICENSED USE** Calcipotriol ointment and scalp solution not licensed for use in children.**CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Calcium metabolism disorders

- ▶ **CAUTIONS** Avoid excessive exposure to sunlight and sunlamps · avoid use on face · erythrodermic exfoliative psoriasis (enhanced risk of hypercalcaemia) · generalised pustular psoriasis (enhanced risk of hypercalcaemia)

**INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: vitamin D substances**SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Skin reactions
- ▶ **Uncommon** Increased risk of infection
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Hypercalcaemia · hypercalciuria · photosensitivity reaction
- ▶ **PREGNANCY** Manufacturers advise avoid unless essential.
- ▶ **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.
- ▶ **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise avoid in severe impairment.

**RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise avoid in severe impairment.**PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Advice on application Patient information leaflet for *Dovonex*® ointment advises liberal application. However, patients should be advised of maximum recommended weekly dose.

Hands should be washed thoroughly after application to avoid inadvertent transfer to other body areas.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: ointment

**Ointment**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Disodium edetate, propylene glycol

▶ **Calcipotriol (Non-proprietary)**

**Calcipotriol 50 microgram per 1 gram** Calcipotriol 50micrograms/g ointment | 30 gram **[PoM]** £5.78 DT = £5.78 | 60 gram **[PoM]** £11.56-£13.86 | 120 gram **[PoM]** £23.12-£27.72

▶ **Dovonex (LEO Pharma)**

**Calcipotriol 50 microgram per 1 gram** Dovonex 50micrograms/g ointment | 30 gram **[PoM]** £5.78 DT = £5.78 | 60 gram **[PoM]** £11.56

**Liquid**▶ **Calcipotriol (Non-proprietary)**

**Calcipotriol (as Calcipotriol hydrate) 50 microgram per 1 mL** Calcipotriol 50micrograms/mL scalp solution | 60 mL **[PoM]** £56.94 DT = £56.94 | 120 mL **[PoM]** £113.88 DT = £113.88

Combinations available: *Calcipotriol with betamethasone*, p. 736

**Calcitriol****(1,25-Dihydroxycholecalciferol)****INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Mild to moderate plaque psoriasis**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply twice daily, not more than 35% of body surface to be treated daily; maximum 30 g per day

**CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Do not apply under occlusion · patients with calcium metabolism disorders

- ▶ **CAUTIONS** Erythrodermic exfoliative psoriasis (enhanced risk of hypercalcaemia) · generalised pustular psoriasis (enhanced risk of hypercalcaemia)

**INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: vitamin D substances**SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Skin reactions
- ▶ **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use in restricted amounts only if clearly necessary.
- ▶ **Monitoring** Monitor urine- and serum-calcium concentration in pregnancy.
- ▶ **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.
- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Hands should be washed thoroughly after application to avoid inadvertent transfer to other body areas.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Ointment

- ▶ **Silkis** (Galderma (UK) Ltd)  
Calcitriol 3 microgram per 1 gram Silkis ointment | 100 gram [PoM] £18.06 DT = £18.06

## Tacalcitol

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Plaque psoriasis

###### ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply once daily, preferably at bedtime, maximum 10 g ointment or 10 mL lotion daily, when lotion and ointment used together, maximum total tacalcitol 280 micrograms in any one week (e.g. lotion 30 mL with ointment 40 g)

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Calcium metabolism disorders
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid eyes · erythrodermic exfoliative psoriasis (enhanced risk of hypercalcaemia) · generalised pustular psoriasis (enhanced risk of hypercalcaemia) · if used in conjunction with UV treatment

##### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ UV treatment If tacalcitol is used in conjunction with UV treatment, UV radiation should be given in the morning and tacalcitol applied at bedtime.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: vitamin D substances

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Uncommon** Skin reactions
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Hypercalcaemia
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid unless no safer alternative—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid application to breast area; no information available on presence in milk.

##### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Monitoring** Monitor serum calcium concentration.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor serum calcium if risk of hypercalcaemia.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Hands should be washed thoroughly after application to avoid inadvertent transfer to other body areas.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Ointment

- ▶ **Curatoderm** (Almirall Ltd)  
Tacalcitol (as Tacalcitol monohydrate) 4 microgram per 1 gram Curatoderm 4micrograms/g ointment | 30 gram [PoM] £13.40 DT = £13.40 | 100 gram [PoM] £30.86 DT = £30.86

##### Liquid

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Disodium edetate, propylene glycol

- ▶ **Curatoderm** (Almirall Ltd)  
Tacalcitol (as Tacalcitol monohydrate) 4 microgram per 1 gram Curatoderm 4micrograms/g lotion | 30 mL [PoM] £12.73

## 4 Perspiration

### 4.1 Hyperhidrosis

## Hyperhidrosis

### Overview

Aluminium chloride hexahydrate p. 752 is a potent antiperspirant used in the treatment of axillary, palmar, and plantar hyperhidrosis. Aluminium salts are also incorporated in preparations used for minor fungal skin infections associated with hyperhidrosis.

In more severe cases specialists use tap water or glycopyrronium bromide below (as a 0.05% solution) in the iontophoretic treatment of hyperhidrosis of palms and soles.

**Botox**® contains botulinum toxin type A complex p. 258 and is available for use intradermally for severe hyperhidrosis of the axillae unresponsive to topical antiperspirant or other antihidrotic treatment; intradermal treatment is unlikely to be tolerated by most children and should be administered under hospital specialist supervision.

### ANTIMUSCARINICS

## Glycopyrronium bromide

(Glycopyrrolate)

13-Sep-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Iontophoretic treatment of hyperhidrosis

###### ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child: Only 1 site to be treated at a time, maximum 2 sites treated in any 24 hours, treatment not to be repeated within 7 days (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Infections affecting the treatment site

**CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Contra-indications applicable to systemic use should be considered; however, glycopyrronium is poorly absorbed and systemic effects unlikely with topical use.

#### ● CAUTIONS

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Cautions applicable to systemic use should be considered; however, glycopyrronium is poorly absorbed and systemic effects unlikely with topical use.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: glycopyrronium

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal discomfort · eating disorder · pain · paraesthesia · urinary disorder

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The possibility of systemic side-effects should be considered; however, glycopyrronium is poorly absorbed and systemic effects are unlikely with topical use.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Powder for solution for iontophoresis

- ▶ **Glycopyrronium bromide (Non-proprietary)**  
Glycopyrronium bromide 1 mg per 1 mg Glycopyrronium bromide powder for solution for iontophoresis | 3 gram [PoM] £327.00

13

Skin



## DERMATOLOGICAL DRUGS &gt; ASTRINGENTS

## Aluminium chloride hexahydrate

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Hyperhidrosis affecting axillae, hands or feet**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply once daily, apply liquid formulation at night to dry skin, wash off the following morning, reduce frequency as condition improves—do not bathe immediately before use

**Hyperhidrosis | Bromidrosis | Intertrigo | Prevention of tinea pedis and related conditions**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply powder to dry skin

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid contact with eyes · avoid contact with mucous membranes · avoid use on broken or irritated skin · do not shave axillae or use depilatories within 12 hours of application

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- Frequency not known Skin reactions

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Avoid contact with clothing.

- **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** A 30 mL pack of aluminium chloride hexahydrate 20% is on sale to the public.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Liquid**

## CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

- **Aluminium chloride hexahydrate (Non-proprietary)**

Aluminium chloride 200 mg per 1 ml Aluminium chloride 20% solution | 60 ml [P] £2.51 DT = £2.51

- **Anhydrol** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

Aluminium chloride 200 mg per 1 ml Anhydrol Forte 20% solution | 60 ml [P] £2.51 DT = £2.51

- **Driclor** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

Aluminium chloride 200 mg per 1 ml Driclor 20% solution | 75 ml [P] £3.01 DT = £3.01

## 5 Pruritus

## Topical local antipruritics

## Overview

Pruritus may be caused by systemic disease (such as obstructive jaundice, endocrine disease, chronic renal disease, iron deficiency, and certain malignant diseases), skin disease (such as eczema, psoriasis, urticaria, and scabies), drug hypersensitivity, or as a side-effect of opioid analgesics. Where possible, the underlying cause should be treated. Local antipruritics have a role in the treatment of pruritus in palliative care. Pruritus caused by cholestasis generally requires a bile acid sequestrant.

An **emollient** may be of value where the pruritus is associated with dry skin. Preparations containing calamine or crotamiton below are sometimes used but are of uncertain value.

A topical preparation containing doxepin 5% p. 753 is licensed for the relief of pruritus in eczema in children over 12 years; it can cause drowsiness and there may be a risk of sensitisation.

Topical antihistamines and local anaesthetics are only marginally effective and occasionally cause sensitisation. For insect stings and insect bites, a short course of a topical

corticosteroid is appropriate. Short-term treatment with a **sedating antihistamine** may help in insect stings and in intractable pruritus where sedation is desirable. Calamine preparations are of little value for the treatment of insect stings or bites.

In *pruritus ani*, the underlying cause such as faecal soiling, eczema, psoriasis, or helminth infection should be treated.

**Other drugs used for Pruritus** Alimemazine tartrate, p. 177 · Cetirizine hydrochloride, p. 174 · Chlorphenamine maleate, p. 178 · Hydroxyzine hydrochloride, p. 179 · Levocetirizine hydrochloride, p. 175

## ANTIPRURITICS

## Calamine with zinc oxide

31-Aug-2016

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Pruritus**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: (consult product literature)

● **IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

MHRA/CHM UPDATE (APRIL 2016): FIRE RISK WITH PARAFFIN-BASED SKIN EMOLLIENTS ON DRESSINGS OR CLOTHING  
See Emollient and barrier preparations p. 713.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Avoid application of preparations containing zinc oxide prior to x-ray (zinc oxide may affect outcome of x-ray)

- **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Less suitable for prescribing.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Cream**

## CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

- **Calamine with zinc oxide (Non-proprietary)**

Phenoxyethanol 5 mg per 1 gram, Zinc oxide 30 mg per 1 gram, Calamine 40 mg per 1 gram, Cetomacrogol emulsifying wax 50 mg per 1 gram, Self-emulsifying glyceryl monostearate 50 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 200 mg per 1 gram Aqueous calamine cream | 100 gram [GSL] £1.43 DT = £1.43

- **Cala Soothe** (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)

Phenoxyethanol 5 mg per 1 gram, Zinc oxide 30 mg per 1 gram, Calamine 40 mg per 1 gram, Cetomacrogol emulsifying wax 50 mg per 1 gram, Self-emulsifying glyceryl monostearate 50 mg per 1 gram, Liquid paraffin 200 mg per 1 gram Cala Soothe cream | 100 ml £18.80

**Liquid**

- **Calamine with zinc oxide (Non-proprietary)**

Phenol liquefied 5 mg per 1 ml, Sodium citrate 5 mg per 1 ml, Bentonite 30 mg per 1 ml, Glycerol 50 mg per 1 ml, Zinc oxide 50 mg per 1 ml, Calamine 150 mg per 1 ml Calamine lotion | 200 ml [GSL] £0.94-£1.09 DT = £1.09

- **Cala Soothe** (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)

Phenol liquefied 5 mg per 1 ml, Sodium citrate 5 mg per 1 ml, Bentonite 30 mg per 1 ml, Glycerol 50 mg per 1 ml, Zinc oxide 50 mg per 1 ml, Calamine 150 mg per 1 ml Cala Soothe lotion | 200 ml £19.50 DT = £1.09

## Crotamiton

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Pruritus (including pruritus after scabies)**

## ► TO THE SKIN

- Child 1 month–2 years (on doctor's advice only): Apply once daily
- Child 3–17 years: Apply 2–3 times a day

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute exudative dermatoses

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid use in buccal mucosa • avoid use near eyes • avoid use on broken skin • avoid use on very inflamed skin • use on doctor's advice for children under 3 years
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Rare or very rare** Angioedema • skin reactions
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises avoid, especially during the first trimester—no information available.
- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available; avoid application to nipple area.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Cream**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Beeswax, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), fragrances, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

► **Eurax** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

**Crotamiton 100 mg per 1 gram** Eurax 10% cream | 30 gram **GSL**  
 £2.50 DT = £2.50 | 100 gram **GSL** £4.35 DT = £4.35

## Doxepin

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Pruritus in eczema**

► **TO THE SKIN**

► **Child 12–17 years:** Apply up to 3 g 3–4 times a day, apply thinly; coverage should be less than 10% of body surface area; maximum 12 g per day

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid application to large areas • cardiac arrhythmias • mania • severe heart disease • susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma • urinary retention
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: tricyclic antidepressants
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Constipation • diarrhoea • dizziness • drowsiness • dry eye • dry mouth • dyspepsia • fever • headache • nausea • paraesthesia • skin reactions • suicidal tendencies • taste altered • urinary retention • vision blurred • vomiting
- **PREGNANCY** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises caution in severe liver disease.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** A patient information leaflet should be provided.  
**Driving and skilled tasks** Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving).  
 Effects of alcohol enhanced.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: capsule, oral suspension, oral solution

#### **Cream**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2, 10

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol

► **Xepin** (Cambridge Healthcare Supplies Ltd)

**Doxepin hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 gram** Xepin 5% cream | 30 gram **PoM** £11.70

## 6 Rosacea and acne

### Rosacea and Acne

#### **Acne vulgaris in children**

Acne vulgaris commonly affects children around puberty and occasionally affects infants. Treatment of acne should be commenced early to prevent scarring; lesions may worsen

before improving. The choice of treatment depends on age, severity, and whether the acne is predominantly inflammatory or comedonal.

*Mild to moderate acne* is generally treated with topical preparations, such as benzoyl peroxide p. 756, azelaic acid p. 756, and retinoids.

*For moderate to severe inflammatory acne* or where topical preparations are not tolerated or are ineffective or where application to the site is difficult, systemic treatment with oral antibacterials may be effective. Co-cyprindiol p. 754 (cyproterone acetate with ethinylestradiol) has anti-androgenic properties and may be useful in young women with acne refractory to other treatments.

*Severe acne*, acne unresponsive to prolonged courses of oral antibacterials, acne with scarring, or acne associated with psychological problems calls for early referral to a consultant dermatologist who may prescribe oral isotretinoin p. 757.

#### **Acne in neonates and infants**

Inflammatory papules, pustules, and occasionally comedones may develop at birth or within the first month; most neonates with acne do not require treatment. Acne developing at 3–6 months of age may be more severe and persistent; lesions are usually confined to the face. Topical preparations containing benzoyl peroxide (at the lowest strength possible to avoid irritation), adapalene p. 756, or tretinoin p. 554 may be used if treatment for infantile acne is necessary. In infants with inflammatory acne, oral erythromycin p. 331 is used because topical preparations for acne are not well tolerated. In cases of erythromycin-resistant acne, oral isotretinoin can be given on the advice of a consultant dermatologist.

#### **Acne: topical preparations**

In mild to moderate acne, comedones and inflamed lesions respond well to benzoyl peroxide or topical retinoids. Alternatively, topical application of an antibacterial such as erythromycin or clindamycin p. 755 may be effective for inflammatory acne. However, topical antibacterials are probably no more effective than benzoyl peroxide and may promote the emergence of resistant organisms. If topical preparations prove inadequate, oral preparations may be needed. The choice of product and formulation (gel, solution, lotion, or cream) is largely determined by skin type, patient preference, and previous usage of acne products.

#### **Benzoyl peroxide and azelaic acid**

Benzoyl peroxide is effective in mild to moderate acne. Both comedones and inflamed lesions respond well to benzoyl peroxide. The lower concentrations seem to be as effective as higher concentrations in reducing inflammation. It is usual to start with a lower strength and to increase the concentration of benzoyl peroxide gradually. The usefulness of benzoyl peroxide washes is limited by the short time the products are in contact with the skin. Adverse effects include local skin irritation, particularly when therapy is initiated, but the scaling and redness often subside with a reduction in benzoyl peroxide concentration, frequency, and area of application. If the acne does not respond after 2 months then use of a topical antibacterial should be considered.

Azelaic acid has antimicrobial and antimetabolic properties. It may be used as an alternative to benzoyl peroxide or to a topical retinoid for treating mild to moderate comedonal acne, particularly of the face; azelaic acid is less likely to cause local irritation than benzoyl peroxide.

#### **Topical antibacterials for acne**

In the treatment of mild to moderate inflammatory acne, topical antibacterials may be no more effective than topical benzoyl peroxide or tretinoin. Topical antibacterials are probably best reserved for children who wish to avoid oral antibacterials or who cannot tolerate them.

Topical preparations of erythromycin and clindamycin may be used to treat *inflamed lesions* in mild to moderate acne when topical benzoyl peroxide or tretinoin is ineffective or poorly tolerated. Topical benzoyl peroxide, azelaic acid, or retinoids used in combination with an antibacterial (topical or systemic) may be more effective than an antibacterial used alone. Topical antibacterials can produce mild irritation of the skin, and on rare occasions cause sensitisation; gastro-intestinal disturbances have been reported with topical clindamycin.

Antibacterial resistance of *Propionibacterium acnes* is increasing; there is cross-resistance between erythromycin and clindamycin. To avoid development of resistance:

- when possible use non-antibiotic antimicrobials (such as benzoyl peroxide or azelaic acid);
- avoid concomitant treatment with different oral and topical antibacterials;
- if a particular antibacterial is effective, use it for repeat courses if needed (short intervening courses of benzoyl peroxide or azelaic acid may eliminate any resistant propionibacteria);
- do not continue treatment for longer than necessary (but treatment with a topical preparation should be continued for at least 6 months).

#### Topical retinoids and related preparations for acne

Topical tretinoin, its isomer isotretinoin, and adapalene (a retinoid-like drug), are useful for treating comedones and inflammatory lesions in mild to moderate acne. Patients should be warned that some redness and skin peeling can occur initially but settles with time. If undue irritation occurs, the frequency of application should be reduced or treatment suspended until the reaction subsides; if irritation persists, discontinue treatment. Several months of treatment may be needed to achieve an optimal response and the treatment should be continued until no new lesions develop.

Tretinoin can be used under specialist supervision to treat infantile acne; adapalene can also be used.

#### Other topical preparations for acne

A topical preparation of nicotinamide p. 759 is available for inflammatory acne.

#### Acne: oral preparations

##### Oral antibacterials for acne

Oral antibacterials may be used in *moderate to severe inflammatory acne* when topical treatment is not adequately effective or is inappropriate. Concomitant anticomedonal treatment with topical benzoyl peroxide or azelaic acid may also be required.

Tetracyclines should not be given to children under 12 years. In children over 12 years, either oxytetracycline p. 354 or tetracycline p. 354 is usually given for acne. If there is no improvement after the first 3 months another oral antibacterial should be used. Maximum improvement usually occurs after 4 to 6 months but in more severe cases treatment may need to be continued for 2 years or longer. Doxycycline p. 352 and lymecycline p. 353 are alternatives to tetracycline in children over 12 years.

Although minocycline p. 353 is as effective as other tetracyclines for acne, it is associated with a greater risk of lupus erythematosus-like syndrome. Minocycline sometimes causes irreversible pigmentation.

Erythromycin is an alternative for the management of moderate to severe acne with inflamed lesions, but propionibacteria strains resistant to erythromycin are becoming widespread and this may explain poor response. In cases of erythromycin-resistant *P. acnes* in infants, oral isotretinoin may be used on the advice of a consultant dermatologist.

Concomitant use of different topical and systemic antibacterials is undesirable owing to the increased likelihood of the development of bacterial resistance.

#### Hormone treatment for acne

Co-cyprindiol below (cyproterone acetate with ethinylestradiol) contains an anti-androgen. It is no more effective than an oral broad-spectrum antibacterial but is useful in females of childbearing age who also wish to receive oral contraception.

Improvement of acne with co-cyprindiol probably occurs because of decreased sebum secretion which is under androgen control. Some females with moderately severe hirsutism may also benefit because hair growth is also androgen-dependent.

#### Oral retinoid for acne

The retinoid isotretinoin p. 757 reduces sebum secretion. It is used for the systemic treatment of nodulo-cystic and conglobate acne, severe acne, acne with scarring, or for acne which has not responded to an adequate course of a systemic antibacterial. Isotretinoin is used for the treatment of severe infantile acne resistant to erythromycin p. 331.

Isotretinoin is a toxic drug that should be prescribed **only** by, or under the supervision of, a consultant dermatologist. It is given for at least 16 weeks; repeat courses are not normally required. The drug is **teratogenic** and **must not** be given to females of child-bearing age unless they practise effective contraception (oral progestogen-only contraceptives not considered effective) and then only after detailed assessment and explanation by the physician. They must also be registered with a pregnancy prevention programme.

Although a causal link between isotretinoin use and psychiatric changes (including suicidal ideation) has not been established, the possibility should be considered before initiating treatment; if psychiatric changes occur during treatment, isotretinoin should be stopped, the prescriber informed, and specialist psychiatric advice should be sought.

#### Rosacea

The adult form of rosacea rarely occurs in children.

Persistent or repeated use of potent topical corticosteroids may cause periorificial rosacea (steroid acne). The pustules and papules of rosacea may be treated for at least 6 weeks with a topical metronidazole preparation p. 333, or a systemic antibacterial such as erythromycin, or for a child over 12 years, oxytetracycline p. 354. Tetracyclines are **contra-indicated** in children under 12 years of age.

## 6.1 Acne

### ANTI-ANDROGENS

#### Co-cyprindiol

02-Mar-2017

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Moderate to severe acne in females of child-bearing age refractory to topical therapy or oral antibacterials**

**Moderately severe hirsutism**

► BY MOUTH

► Females of childbearing potential: 1 tablet daily for 21 days, to be started on day 1 of menstrual cycle; subsequent courses repeated after a 7-day interval (during which withdrawal bleeding occurs), time to symptom remission, at least 3 months; review need for treatment regularly

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · gallstones · heart disease associated with pulmonary hypertension or risk of embolus · history during pregnancy of cholestatic jaundice · history during pregnancy of chorea · history during pregnancy of pemphigoid gestationis · history during pregnancy of pruritus · history of breast cancer but can be used after 5 years if no evidence of disease and non-

hormonal methods unacceptable · history of haemolytic uraemic syndrome · migraine with aura · personal history of venous or arterial thrombosis · presence or history of liver tumours · sclerosing treatment for varicose veins · severe or multiple risk factors for arterial disease or for venous thromboembolism · systemic lupus erythematosus with (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies · transient cerebral ischaemic attacks without headaches · undiagnosed vaginal bleeding

- **CAUTIONS** Active trophoblastic disease (until return to normal of urine- and plasma-gonadotrophin concentration)—seek specialist advice · arterial disease · gene mutations associated with breast cancer (e.g. BRCA 1) · history of severe depression especially if induced by hormonal contraceptive · hyperprolactinaemia—seek specialist advice · inflammatory bowel disease including Crohn's disease · migraine · personal or family history of hypertriglyceridaemia (increased risk of pancreatitis) · risk factors for venous thromboembolism · sickle-cell disease · undiagnosed breast mass

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ **Venous thromboembolism** There is an increased risk of venous thromboembolism in women taking co-cyprindiol, particularly during the first year of use. The incidence of venous thromboembolism is 1.5–2 times higher in women using co-cyprindiol than in women using combined oral contraceptives containing levonorgestrel, but the risk may be similar to that associated with use of combined oral contraceptives containing third generation progestogens (desogestrel and gestodene) or drospirenone. Women requiring co-cyprindiol may have an inherently increased risk of cardiovascular disease.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: combined hormonal contraceptives

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Cholelithiasis · photosensitivity reactions · systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Abdominal cramps · amenorrhoea (on discontinuation) · breast abnormalities · cervical erosion · chorea · contact lens intolerance · depression · fluid retention · headache · hepatic impairment · hepatic neoplasm · hypertension · irritability · leg cramps · libido disorder · lipid metabolism change · melasma · menstrual disorder · nausea · thrombosis (more common when factor V Leiden present or in blood groups A, B and AB) · vulvovaginal disorders · visual impairment · vomiting

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid—risk of feminisation of male fetus with cyproterone.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid; possibility of anti-androgen effects in neonate with cyproterone.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturer advises avoid in severe impairment (until liver function returns to normal.)

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** A mixture of cyproterone acetate and ethinylestradiol in the mass proportions 2000 parts to 35 parts, respectively.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Tablet

- ▶ **Co-cyprindiol (Non-proprietary)**

Ethinylestradiol 35 microgram, Cyproterone acetate 2 mg Co-cyprindiol 2000microgram/35microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £5.70 DT = £5.70

- ▶ **Clairette** (Stragen UK Ltd)

Ethinylestradiol 35 microgram, Cyproterone acetate 2 mg Clairette 2000/35 tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £5.13 DT = £5.70

- ▶ **Dianette** (Bayer Plc)

Ethinylestradiol 35 microgram, Cyproterone acetate 2 mg Dianette tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £7.71 DT = £5.70

- ▶ **Teragezza** (Morningside Healthcare Ltd)  
Ethinylestradiol 35 microgram, Cyproterone acetate 2 mg Teragezza 2000microgram/35microgram tablets | 63 tablet [PoM] £11.10 DT = £5.70

## ANTIBACTERIALS > LINCOSAMIDES

### Clindamycin

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### DALACIN T® LOTION

##### Acne vulgaris

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply twice daily, to be applied thinly

##### DALACIN T® SOLUTION

##### Acne vulgaris

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply twice daily, to be applied thinly

##### ZINDACLIN® GEL

##### Acne vulgaris

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 12-17 years: Apply once daily, to be applied thinly

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: clindamycin

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Gel

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

- ▶ **Zindaclin** (Crawford Healthcare Ltd)

Clindamycin (as Clindamycin phosphate) 10 mg per 1 gram Zindaclin 1% gel | 30 gram [PoM] £8.66 DT = £8.66

##### Liquid

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

- ▶ **Dalacin T** (Pfizer Ltd)

Clindamycin (as Clindamycin phosphate) 10 mg per 1 ml Dalacin T 1% topical lotion | 30 ml [PoM] £5.08 DT = £5.08 | 60 ml [PoM] £10.16

Dalacin T 1% topical solution | 30 ml [PoM] £4.34 DT = £4.34 | 50 ml [PoM] £7.23

Combinations available: **Benzoyl peroxide with clindamycin**, p. 756 · **Tretinoin with clindamycin**, p. 758

## ANTIBACTERIALS > MACROLIDES

### Erythromycin with zinc acetate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Acne vulgaris

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply twice daily

- **CAUTIONS** Some manufacturers advise preparations containing alcohol are not suitable for use with benzoyl peroxide

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Liquid

- ▶ **Zineryt** (LEO Pharma)

Zinc acetate 12 mg per 1 ml, Erythromycin 40 mg per 1 ml Zineryt lotion | 30 ml [PoM] £9.25 DT = £9.25 | 90 ml [PoM] £20.02 DT = £20.02

## ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS &gt; PEROXIDES

## Benzoyl peroxide

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acne vulgaris**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply 1–2 times a day, preferably apply after washing with soap and water, start treatment with lower-strength preparations

**Infantile acne**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child 1 month–1 year: Apply 1–2 times a day, start treatment with lower-strength preparations

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in treatment of infantile acne.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid contact with broken skin · avoid contact with eyes · avoid contact with mouth · avoid contact with mucous membranes · avoid excessive exposure to sunlight

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Skin reactions
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Facial swelling

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Reduce frequency or suspend use until skin irritation subsides and re-introduce at reduced frequency.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** May bleach fabrics and hair.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Cream**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), fragrances, isopropyl palmitate, propylene glycol

- ▶ **Brevoxyl** (GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare)

**Benzoyl peroxide 40 mg per 1 gram** Brevoxyl 4% cream | 50 gram [P] £4.13 DT = £4.13

**Gel**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Fragrances, propylene glycol

- ▶ **Acnecide** (Galderma (UK) Ltd)

**Benzoyl peroxide 50 mg per 1 gram** Acnecide 5% gel | 30 gram [P] £5.44 DT = £5.44 | 60 gram [P] £10.68 DT = £10.68  
Acnecide Wash 5% gel | 50 gram [P] £5.44 DT = £5.44

Combinations available: **Adapalene with benzoyl peroxide**, p. 757

## Benzoyl peroxide with clindamycin

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, Benzoyl peroxide above, clindamycin p. 327.

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Acne vulgaris**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply once daily, dose to be applied in the evening

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: clindamycin

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Gel**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Disodium edetate

- ▶ **Duac** (Stiefel Laboratories (UK) Ltd)

**Clindamycin (as Clindamycin phosphate) 10 mg per 1 gram, Benzoyl peroxide 30 mg per 1 gram** Duac Once Daily gel (3% and 1%) | 30 gram [PoM] £13.14 DT = £13.14 | 60 gram [PoM] £26.28  
**Clindamycin (as Clindamycin phosphate) 10 mg per 1 gram, Benzoyl peroxide 50 mg per 1 gram** Duac Once Daily gel (5% and 1%) | 30 gram [PoM] £13.14 DT = £13.14 | 60 gram [PoM] £26.28 DT = £26.28

## DERMATOLOGICAL DRUGS &gt; ANTICOMEDONALS

## Azelaic acid

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**FINACEA®****Facial acne vulgaris**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply twice daily, discontinue if no improvement after 1 month

**SKINOREN®****Acne vulgaris**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply twice daily

**Acne vulgaris in patients with sensitive skin**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply once daily for 1 week, then apply twice daily

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid contact with eyes · avoid contact with mouth · avoid contact with mucous membranes

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Application site irritation (reduce frequency or discontinue temporarily)
- ▶ **Uncommon** Skin reactions
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Asthma exacerbated · cheilitis
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · eye swelling

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Cream**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

- ▶ **Skinoren** (Bayer Plc)

**Azelaic acid 200 mg per 1 gram** Skinoren 20% cream | 30 gram [PoM] £4.49 DT = £4.49

**Gel**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Disodium edetate, polysorbates, propylene glycol

- ▶ **Finacea** (Bayer Plc)

**Azelaic acid 150 mg per 1 gram** Finacea 15% gel | 30 gram [PoM] £7.48 DT = £7.48

## RETINOID AND RELATED DRUGS

## Adapalene

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Mild to moderate acne vulgaris**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply once daily, apply thinly in the evening

**Infantile acne**

## ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child 1 month–1 year: Apply once daily, apply thinly in the evening

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in infantile acne.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid accumulation in angles of the nose · avoid contact with eyes, nostrils, mouth and mucous membranes, eczematous, broken or sunburned skin · avoid exposure to UV light (including sunlight, solariums) · avoid in severe acne involving large areas · caution in sensitive areas such as the neck

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: retinoids

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Skin reactions
- ▶ **Uncommon** Sunburn
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Eye discomfort · eye erythema · eye swelling



- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Females of child-bearing age must use effective contraception (oral progestogen-only contraceptives not considered effective).
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount of drug in milk probably too small to be harmful; ensure infant does not come in contact with treated areas.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** If sun exposure is unavoidable, an appropriate sunscreen or protective clothing should be used.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 11

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Disodium edetate, hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

#### ▶ Adapalene (Non-proprietary)

Adapalene 1 mg per 1 gram Adapalene 0.1% cream | 45 gram [PoM] £16.43 DT = £16.43

#### ▶ Differin (Galderma (UK) Ltd)

Adapalene 1 mg per 1 gram Differin 0.1% cream | 45 gram [PoM] £16.43 DT = £16.43

#### Gel

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 11

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Disodium edetate, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), propylene glycol

#### ▶ Adapalene (Non-proprietary)

Adapalene 1 mg per 1 gram Adapalene 0.1% gel | 45 gram [PoM] £16.43 DT = £16.43

#### ▶ Differin (Galderma (UK) Ltd)

Adapalene 1 mg per 1 gram Differin 0.1% gel | 45 gram [PoM] £16.43 DT = £16.43

## Adapalene with benzoyl peroxide

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, adapalene p. 756, benzoyl peroxide p. 756.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Acne vulgaris

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 9–17 years: Apply once daily, to be applied thinly in the evening

#### ● INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: retinoids

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Females of child-bearing age must use effective contraception (oral progestogen-only contraceptives not considered effective).

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Gel may bleach clothing and hair.

#### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

##### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The *Scottish Medicines Consortium* has advised (March 2014) that *Epiduo*® should be restricted for use in mild to moderate facial acne when monotherapy with benzoyl peroxide or adapalene is inappropriate.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Gel

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 11

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Disodium edetate, polysorbates, propylene glycol

#### ▶ Epiduo (Galderma (UK) Ltd)

Adapalene 1 mg per 1 gram, Benzoyl peroxide 25 mg per 1 gram Epiduo 0.1%/2.5% gel | 45 gram [PoM] £19.53 DT = £19.53

## Isotretinoin

03-Nov-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Topical treatment of mild to moderate acne

###### ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, to be applied thinly

**Severe acne (under expert supervision)** | Acne which is associated with psychological problems (under expert supervision) | Acne which has not responded to an adequate course of a systemic antibacterial (under expert supervision) | Acne with scarring (under expert supervision) | Systemic treatment of nodulo-cystic and conglobate acne (under expert supervision)

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 500 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, increased if necessary to 1 mg/kg daily for 16–24 weeks, repeat treatment course after a period of at least 8 weeks if relapse after first course; maximum 150 mg/kg per course

##### Severe infantile acne (under expert supervision)

###### ▶ BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–1 year: Initially 200 micrograms/kg daily in 1–2 divided doses, increased if necessary to 1 mg/kg daily for 16–24 weeks; maximum 150 mg/kg per course

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in infantile acne.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: ISOTRETINOIN (ROACCUTANE®): RARE REPORTS OF ERECTILE DYSFUNCTION AND DECREASED LIBIDO (OCTOBER 2017)

An EU-wide review has concluded that on rare occasions, oral isotretinoin, indicated for severe acne, may cause sexual side-effects, including erectile dysfunction and decreased libido.

#### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

- ▶ With oral use Hyperlipidaemia · hypervitaminosis A
- ▶ With topical use Perioral dermatitis · rosacea

#### ● CAUTIONS

- ▶ With oral use Avoid blood donation during treatment and for at least 1 month after treatment · diabetes · dry eye syndrome (associated with risk of keratitis) · history of depression · monitor for depression
- ▶ With topical use Allow peeling (resulting from other irritant treatments) to subside before using a topical retinoid · alternating a preparation that causes peeling with a topical retinoid may give rise to contact dermatitis (reduce frequency of retinoid application) · avoid accumulation in angles of the nose · avoid contact with eyes, nostrils, mouth and mucous membranes, eczematous, broken or sunburned skin · avoid exposure to UV light (including sunlight, solariums) · avoid in severe acne involving large areas · avoid use of topical retinoids with abrasive cleaners, comedogenic or astringent cosmetics · caution in sensitive areas such as the neck · personal or familial history of skin cancer

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: retinoids

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common Skin reactions
- ▶ Rare or very rare Photosensitivity reaction

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common
- ▶ With oral use Alopecia · anaemia · arthralgia · back pain · cheilitis · dry eye · eye discomfort · eye inflammation · haemorrhage · headache · increased risk of infection · myalgia · nasal dryness · neutropenia · proteinuria · skin fragility (trauma may cause blistering) · thrombocytopenia · thrombocytosis

13

Skin

- ▶ **Rare or very rare**
  - With oral use Anxiety · arthritis · behaviour abnormal · bone disorders · bronchospasm · cataract · corneal opacity · depression · diabetes mellitus · dizziness · drowsiness · dry throat · gastrointestinal disorders · glomerulonephritis · hair changes · hearing impairment · hepatitis · hoarseness · hyperhidrosis · hyperuricaemia · idiopathic intracranial hypertension · inflammatory bowel disease · lymphadenopathy · malaise · mood altered · nail dystrophy · nausea · pancreatitis · psychotic disorder · pyogenic granuloma · seizure · suicidal tendencies · tendinitis · vasculitis · vision disorders
- ▶ **Frequency not known**
  - With oral use Rhabdomyolysis · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Risk of pancreatitis if triglycerides above 9 mmol/litre—discontinue if uncontrolled hypertriglyceridaemia or pancreatitis.

Discontinue treatment if skin peeling severe or haemorrhagic diarrhoea develops.

Visual disturbances require expert referral and possible withdrawal.

Psychiatric side-effects could require expert referral.

### ● **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION**

Pregnancy prevention

- ▶ **With oral use** Effective contraception must be used. In women of child-bearing potential, exclude pregnancy up to 3 days before treatment (start treatment on day 2 or 3 of menstrual cycle), every month during treatment (unless there are compelling reasons to indicate that there is no risk of pregnancy), and 5 weeks after stopping treatment—perform pregnancy test in the first 3 days of the menstrual cycle. Women must practise effective contraception for at least 1 month before starting treatment, during treatment, and for at least 1 month after stopping treatment. Women should be advised to use at least 1 method of contraception, but ideally they should use 2 methods of contraception. Oral progestogen-only contraceptives are not considered effective. Barrier methods should not be used alone, but can be used in conjunction with other contraceptive methods. Each prescription for isotretinoin should be limited to a supply of up to 30 days' treatment and dispensed within 7 days of the date stated on the prescription; repeat prescriptions or faxed prescriptions are not acceptable. Women should be advised to discontinue treatment and to seek prompt medical attention if they become pregnant during treatment or within 1 month of stopping treatment.
- ▶ **With topical use** Females of child-bearing age must use effective contraception (oral progestogen-only contraceptives not considered effective).
- **PREGNANCY** Contra-indicated in pregnancy (teratogenic).
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
  - ▶ **With oral use** Avoid—further impairment may occur.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - ▶ **Dose adjustments** ▶ **With oral use** In severe impairment, reduce initial dose and increase gradually, if necessary, up to 1 mg/kg daily as tolerated.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**
  - ▶ **With oral use** Measure hepatic function and serum lipids before treatment, 1 month after starting and then every 3 months (reduce dose or discontinue if transaminase or serum lipids persistently raised).
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Isotretinoin is an isomer of tretinoin.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**
  - ▶ **With oral use** Warn patient to avoid wax epilation (risk of epidermal stripping), dermabrasion, and laser skin treatments (risk of scarring) during treatment and for at least 6 months after stopping treatment; patient should avoid

exposure to UV light (including sunlight) and use sunscreen and emollient (including lip balm) preparations from the start of treatment.

Patients and carers should be told how to recognise signs and symptoms of psychiatric disorders such as depression, anxiety, and rarely suicidal thoughts.

- ▶ **With topical use** Patients should be warned that some redness and skin peeling can occur initially but settles with time. If undue irritation occurs, the frequency of application should be reduced or treatment suspended until the reaction subsides; if irritation persists, discontinue treatment. Several months of treatment may be needed to achieve an optimal response and the treatment should be continued until no new lesions develop. If sun exposure is unavoidable, an appropriate sunscreen or protective clothing should be used.

### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10, 11, 21

#### ▶ **Isotretinoin (Non-proprietary)**

**Isotretinoin 5 mg** Isotretinoin 5mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£10.10–£10.15 | 56 capsule [PoM] £14.78 DT = £14.78

**Isotretinoin 10 mg** Isotretinoin 10mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£14.54 DT = £14.54

**Isotretinoin 20 mg** Isotretinoin 20mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£20.00 DT = £16.66 | 56 capsule [PoM] £31.01–£37.85

**Isotretinoin 40 mg** Isotretinoin 40mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£38.98 DT = £38.98

#### ▶ **Roaccutane (Roche Products Ltd)**

**Isotretinoin 10 mg** Roaccutane 10mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£14.54 DT = £14.54

**Isotretinoin 20 mg** Roaccutane 20mg capsules | 30 capsule [PoM]  
£20.02 DT = £16.66

## Isotretinoin with erythromycin

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, isotretinoin p. 757, erythromycin p. 331.

### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

#### **Topical treatment of mild to moderate acne**

- ▶ **TO THE SKIN**
- ▶ **Child:** (consult product literature)

### ● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: macrolides · retinoids

### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Gel**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 11

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxytoluene

#### ▶ **Isotrexin (Stiefel Laboratories (UK) Ltd)**

**Isotretinoin 500 microgram per 1 gram, Erythromycin 20 mg per 1 gram** Isotrexin gel | 30 gram [PoM] £7.47 DT = £7.47

## Tretinoin with clindamycin

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, tretinoin p. 554, clindamycin p. 327.

### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

#### **Facial acne**

- ▶ **TO THE SKIN**
- ▶ **Child 12-17 years:** Apply daily, (to be applied thinly at bedtime)

### ● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Perioral dermatitis · personal or familial history of skin cancer · rosacea

- **CAUTIONS** Allow peeling (resulting from other irritant treatments) to subside before using a topical retinoid · alternating a preparation that causes peeling with a topical retinoid may give rise to contact dermatitis (reduce frequency of retinoid application) · avoid accumulation in angles of the nose · avoid contact with eyes, nostrils, mouth and mucous membranes, eczematous, broken or sunburned skin · avoid exposure to UV light (including sunlight, solariums) · avoid in severe acne involving large areas · avoid use of topical retinoids with abrasive cleaners, comedogenic or astringent cosmetics · caution in sensitive areas such as the neck
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: clindamycin · retinoids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Dry skin (discontinue if severe) · eye irritation · oedema · photosensitivity reaction · skin pigment change (transient) · skin reactions
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Females of child-bearing age must use effective contraception (oral progestogen-only contraceptives not considered effective).
- **PREGNANCY** Contra-indicated in pregnancy.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount of drug in milk after topical application probably too small to be harmful; ensure infant does not come in contact with treated areas.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** If sun exposure is unavoidable, an appropriate sunscreen or protective clothing should be used.  
Patients and carers should be warned that some redness and skin peeling can occur initially but settles with time. If undue irritation occurs, the frequency of application should be reduced or treatment suspended until the reaction subsides; if irritation persists, discontinue treatment. Several months of treatment may be needed to achieve an optimal response and the treatment should be continued until no new lesions develop.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Gel

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 11

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxytoluene, hydroxybenzoates (parabens), polysorbates

► **Treclin** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Tretinoin 250 microgram per 1 gram, Clindamycin (as Clindamycin phosphate) 10 mg per 1 gram Treclin 1%/0.025% gel | 30 gram [PoM] £11.94

## Tretinoin with erythromycin

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, tretinoin p. 554, erythromycin p. 331.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Acne

- TO THE SKIN
- Child: Apply 1–2 times a day, apply thinly

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Perioral dermatitis · personal or familial history of skin cancer · rosacea
- **CAUTIONS** Allow peeling (resulting from other irritant treatments) to subside before using a topical retinoid · alternating a preparation that causes peeling with a topical retinoid may give rise to contact dermatitis (reduce frequency of retinoid application) · avoid accumulation in angles of the nose · avoid contact with eyes, nostrils, mouth and mucous membranes, eczematous, broken or sunburned skin · avoid exposure to UV light (including sunlight, solariums) · avoid in severe acne involving large areas · avoid use of topical retinoids with abrasive cleaners,

comedogenic or astringent cosmetics · caution in sensitive areas such as the neck

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: macrolides · retinoids
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Dry skin (discontinue if severe) · eye irritation · oedema · photosensitivity reaction · skin pigment change (transient) · skin reactions
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Females of child-bearing age must use effective contraception (oral progestogen-only contraceptives not considered effective).
- **PREGNANCY** Contra-indicated in pregnancy.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount of drug in milk after topical application probably too small to be harmful; ensure infant does not come in contact with treated areas.
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients and carers should be warned that some redness and skin peeling can occur initially but settles with time. If undue irritation occurs, the frequency of application should be reduced or treatment suspended until the reaction subsides; if irritation persists, discontinue treatment. Several months of treatment may be needed to achieve an optimal response and the treatment should be continued until no new lesions develop. If sun exposure is unavoidable, an appropriate sunscreen or protective clothing should be used.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Liquid

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 11

► **Aknemycin Plus** (Almirall Ltd)

Tretinoin 250 microgram per 1 gram, Erythromycin 40 mg per 1 gram Aknemycin Plus solution | 25 ml [PoM] £7.05 DT = £7.05

## VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > VITAMIN B GROUP

### Nicotinamide

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Inflammatory acne vulgaris

##### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply twice daily, reduced to once daily or on alternate days, dose reduced if irritation occurs

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid contact with eyes · avoid contact with mucous membranes (including nose and mouth) · reduce frequency of application if excessive dryness, irritation or peeling
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Paraesthesia · skin reactions

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Gel

► **Frederm** (Dendron Ltd)

Nicotinamide 40 mg per 1 gram Frederm Treatment 4% gel | 25 gram [P] £5.56

► **Nicam** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

Nicotinamide 40 mg per 1 gram Nicam 4% gel | 60 gram [P] £7.10

## 7 Scalp and hair conditions

### Scalp and hair conditions

#### Overview

The detergent action of shampoo removes grease (sebum) from hair. Prepubertal children produce very little grease and require shampoo less frequently than adults. Shampoos can be used as vehicles for medicinal products, but their usefulness is limited by the short time the product is in contact with the scalp and by their irritant nature.

Oils and ointments are very useful for scaly, dry scalp conditions; if a greasy appearance is cosmetically unacceptable, the preparation may be applied at night and washed out in the morning. Alcohol-based lotions are rarely used in children; alcohol causes painful stinging on broken skin and the fumes may exacerbate asthma.

Itchy, inflammatory, eczematous scalp conditions may be relieved by a simple emollient oil such as **olive oil** or **coconut oil** (arachis oil (ground nut oil, peanut oil) is best avoided in children under 5 years). In more severe cases a topical **corticosteroid** may be required. Preparations containing **coal tar** are used for the common scaly scalp conditions of childhood including seborrhoeic dermatitis, dandruff (a mild form of seborrhoeic dermatitis), and psoriasis; salicylic acid p. 768 is used as a keratolytic in some scalp preparations.

Shampoos containing antimicrobials such as selenium below or ketoconazole p. 725 are used for seborrhoeic dermatitis and dandruff in which yeast infection has been implicated, and for tinea capitis (ringworm of the scalp). Bacterial infection affecting the scalp (usually secondary to eczema, head lice, or ringworm) may be treated with shampoos containing antimicrobials such as **pyrithione zinc**, cetrimide, or povidone-iodine p. 679.

In neonates and infants, *cradle cap* (which is also a form of seborrhoeic eczema) can be treated by massaging **coconut oil** or **olive oil** into the scalp; a bland emollient such as **emulsifying ointment** can be rubbed onto the affected area once or twice daily before bathing and a mild shampoo used.

**Other drugs used for Scalp and hair conditions** Coal tar, p. 745 • Coal tar with lecithin, p. 746 • Coal tar with salicylic acid and precipitated sulfur, p. 746

### ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS > UNDECENOATES

#### Cetrimide with undecenoic acid

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Scalp psoriasis | Seborrhoeic dermatitis | Dandruff**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: Apply 3 times a week for 1 week, then apply twice weekly

##### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Shampoo

► **Ceanel** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Undecenoic acid 10 mg per 1 ml, Phenylethyl alcohol 75 mg per 1 ml, Cetrimide 100 mg per 1 ml Ceanel Concentrate shampoo | 150 ml [P] £3.40 | 500 ml [P] £9.80

### ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS > OTHER

#### Benzalkonium chloride

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Seborrhoeic scalp conditions associated with dandruff and scaling**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: Apply as required

##### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Shampoo

► **Dermax** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

Benzalkonium chloride 5 mg per 1 ml Dermax Therapeutic 0.5% shampoo | 250 ml [P] £5.69

### VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS

#### Selenium

##### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Seborrhoeic dermatitis | Dandruff**

► TO THE SKIN USING SHAMPOO

► Child 5–17 years: Apply twice weekly for 2 weeks, then apply once weekly for 2 weeks, then apply as required

**Pityriasis versicolor**

► TO THE SKIN USING SHAMPOO

► Child 5–17 years: Apply once daily for 7 days, apply to the affected area and leave on for 10 minutes before rinsing off. The course may be repeated if necessary. Diluting with a small amount of water prior to application can reduce irritation

• **UNLICENSED USE** The use of selenium sulfide shampoo as a lotion for the treatment of pityriasis (tinea) versicolor is an unlicensed indication.

• **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: selenium

• **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Avoid using 48 hours before or after applying hair colouring, straightening or waving preparations.

##### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Shampoo

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Fragrances

► **Selsun** (Chatterm (U.K.) Ltd)

Selenium sulfide 25 mg per 1 ml Selsun 2.5% shampoo | 50 ml [P] £1.61 DT = £1.61 | 100 ml [P] £2.15 DT = £2.15 | 150 ml [P] £3.06 DT = £3.06

## 8 Skin cleansers, antiseptics and desloughing agents

### Skin cleansers, antiseptics and desloughing agents

#### Skin cleansers and antiseptics

Soap or detergent is used with water to cleanse intact skin but they can irritate infantile skin; emollient preparations such as aqueous cream or emulsifying ointment can be used in place of soap or detergent for cleansing dry or irritated skin.

An antiseptic is used for skin that is infected or that is susceptible to recurrent infection. Detergent preparations containing chlorhexidine p. 762 or povidone-iodine p. 761,

which should be thoroughly rinsed off, are used. Emollients may also contain antiseptics.

Antiseptics such as chlorhexidine or povidone-iodine are used on intact skin before surgical procedures; their antiseptic effect is enhanced by an alcoholic solvent. Antiseptic solutions containing cetrimide can be used if a detergent effect is also required.

Preparations containing alcohol, and regular use of povidone-iodine, should be avoided on neonatal skin.

Hydrogen peroxide p. 763, an oxidising agent, is available as a cream and can be used for superficial bacterial skin infections.

For irrigating ulcers or wounds, lukewarm sterile sodium chloride p. 589 0.9% solution is used but tap water is often appropriate.

Potassium permanganate below solution 1 in 10 000, a mild antiseptic with astringent properties, can be used as a soak for exudative eczematous areas; treatment should be stopped when the skin becomes dry.

### Desloughing agents

Alginate, hydrogel, and hydrocolloid dressings are effective in wound debridement. Sterile larvae (maggots) (available from BioMonde) are also used for managing sloughing wounds and are prescribable on the NHS.

Desloughing solutions and creams are of little clinical value. Substances applied to an open area are easily absorbed and perilesional skin is easily sensitised.

## ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS

### Potassium permanganate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Cleansing and deodorising suppurating eczematous reactions and wounds**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: For wet dressings or baths, use approximately 0.01% (1 in 10 000) solution

● **CAUTIONS** Irritant to mucous membranes

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Potassium permanganate 0.1% solution to be diluted 1 in 10 to provide a 0.01% (1 in 10 000) solution. With potassium permanganate tablets for solution, 1 tablet dissolved in 4 litres of water provides a 0.01% (1 in 10 000) solution.

● **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Can stain clothing, skin and nails (especially with prolonged use).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: liquid

#### **Tablet for cutaneous solution**

► **Potassium permanganate (Non-proprietary)**

**Potassium permanganate 400 mg** Potassium permanganate 400mg tablets for cutaneous solution | 30 tablet DT = £19.25  
EN-Potab 400mg tablets for cutaneous solution | 30 tablet DT = £19.25

► **Permitabs** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Potassium permanganate 400 mg** Permitabs 400mg tablets for cutaneous solution | 30 tablet £19.25 DT = £19.25

## ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS > ALCOHOL DISINFECTANTS

### Alcohol

(Industrial methylated spirit)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Skin preparation before injection**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: Apply as required

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Neonates

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid broken skin · flammable · patients have suffered severe burns when diathermy has been preceded by application of alcoholic skin disinfectants

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Industrial methylated spirits defined by the BP as a mixture of 19 volumes of ethyl alcohol of an appropriate strength with 1 volume of approved wood naphtha.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Liquid**

► **Alcohol (Non-proprietary)**

Industrial methylated spirit 70% | 600 ml £6.30-£7.01

Wood naphtha 50 ml per 1 litre, Ethanol 950 ml per

1 litre Industrial methylated spirit 95% | 600 ml £5.04 | 1000 ml £4.46

## ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS > IODINE PRODUCTS

### Povidone-iodine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Skin disinfection**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: (consult product literature)

**BETADINE® DRY POWDER SPRAY**

**Skin disinfection, particularly minor wounds and infections**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child 2-17 years: Not for use in serous cavities (consult product literature)

**SAVLON® DRY**

**Skin disinfection of minor wounds**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: (consult product literature)

**VIDENE® SOLUTION**

**Skin disinfection**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: Apply undiluted in pre-operative skin disinfection and general antiseptics

**VIDENE® SURGICAL SCRUB®**

**Skin disinfection**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: Use as a pre-operative scrub for hand and skin disinfection

**VIDENE® TINCTURE**

**Skin disinfection**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child: Apply undiluted in pre-operative skin disinfection

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Concomitant use of lithium · corrected gestational age under 32 weeks · infants body-weight under 1.5 kg · regular use in neonates



**VIDENE® TINCTURE** Neonates

- **CAUTIONS** Broken skin · large open wounds

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The application of povidone–iodine to large wounds or severe burns may produce systemic adverse effects such as metabolic acidosis, hypernatraemia and impairment of renal function.

**VIDENE® TINCTURE** Procedures involving hot wire cautery and diathermy

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ Rare or very rare Eye erythema · punctate keratitis
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Cytotoxicity · eye discolouration · hypothyroidism (in neonates)
- **PREGNANCY** Sufficient iodine may be absorbed to affect the fetal thyroid in the second and third trimester.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid regular or excessive use.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid regular application to inflamed or broken skin or mucosa.
- **EFFECT ON LABORATORY TESTS** May interfere with thyroid function tests.

- **MEDICAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: liquid

**Spray**

- ▶ **Betadine** (Aspire Pharma Ltd)  
**Povidone-iodine 25 mg per 1 gram** Betadine 2.5% dry powder spray | 100 ml [GSL] £9.95 DT = £9.95

**Liquid**

**CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS** 15 (Only for use with alcoholic solutions)

- ▶ **Videne** (Ecolab Healthcare Division)  
**Povidone-iodine 75 mg per 1 ml** Videne 7.5% surgical scrub solution | 500 ml [P] £7.67
- ▶ **Povidone-iodine 100 mg per 1 ml** Videne 10% antiseptic solution | 500 ml [GSL] £7.67 Videne alcoholic tincture | 500 ml [P] £7.76

**ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS > OTHER****Chlorhexidine**

- **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**CEPTON® LOTION****For skin disinfection in acne**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

**CEPTON® SKIN WASH****For use as skin wash in acne**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

**HIBITANE® PLUS 5% CONCENTRATE SOLUTION****General and pre-operative skin disinfection**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

**HIBISCRUB®****Pre-operative hand and skin disinfection | General hand and skin disinfection**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Use as alternative to soap (consult product literature)

**HIBITANE OBSTETRIC®****For use in obstetrics and gynaecology as an antiseptic and lubricant**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: To be applied to skin around vulva and perineum and to hands of midwife or doctor

**HIBI® LIQUID HAND RUB+****Hand and skin disinfection**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: To be used undiluted (consult product literature)

**HYDREX® SOLUTION****For pre-operative skin disinfection**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

**HYDREX® SURGICAL SCRUB****For pre-operative hand and skin disinfection | General hand disinfection**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

**UNISEPT®****For cleansing and disinfecting wounds and burns and swabbing in obstetrics**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

In preterm neonates, use sparingly, monitor for skin reactions, and do not allow solution to pool—risk of severe chemical burns.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Alcoholic solutions not suitable before diathermy · alcoholic solutions not suitable for use on neonatal skin · not for use in body cavities
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid contact with brain · avoid contact with eyes · avoid contact with meninges · avoid contact with middle ear
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION**  
**HIBITANE® PLUS 5% CONCENTRATE SOLUTION** For pre-operative skin preparation, dilute 1 in 10 (0.5%) with alcohol 70%. For general skin disinfection, dilute 1 in 100 (0.05%) with water. Alcoholic solutions not suitable for use before diathermy or on neonatal skin.

- **MEDICAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: liquid, irrigation solution

**Cream**

- ▶ **Hibitane Obstetric** (Derma UK Ltd)  
**Chlorhexidine gluconate 10 mg per 1 gram** Hibitane Obstetric 1% cream | 250 ml [GSL] £16.95

**Liquid**

**CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS** 15 (For ethanolic solutions (e.g. Chloraprep® and Hydrex® only)

**EXCIPIENTS:** May contain Fragrances

- ▶ **Cepton** (Boston Healthcare Ltd)  
**Chlorhexidine gluconate 10 mg per 1 ml** Cepton 1% medicated skin wash | 150 ml [GSL] £33.34
- ▶ **HIBiTane Plus** (Molnlycke Health Care Ltd)  
**Chlorhexidine gluconate 50 mg per 1 ml** HIBiTane Plus 5% concentrate solution | 5000 ml [GSL] £14.50 DT = £14.50
- ▶ **Hibi** (Molnlycke Health Care Ltd)  
**Chlorhexidine gluconate 5 mg per 1 ml** Hibi Liquid Hand Rub+ 0.5% solution | 500 ml [GSL] £5.25 DT = £5.25
- ▶ **Hibiscrub** (Molnlycke Health Care Ltd)  
**Chlorhexidine gluconate 40 mg per 1 ml** Hibiscrub 4% solution | 250 ml [GSL] £4.25 DT = £4.25 | 500 ml [GSL] £5.25 DT = £5.25 | 5000 ml [GSL] £24.00 DT = £24.00
- ▶ **Hydrex** (Ecolab Healthcare Division)  
**Chlorhexidine gluconate 5 mg per 1 ml** Hydrex pink chlorhexidine gluconate 0.5% solution | 600 ml [GSL] £4.72 DT = £4.72  
**Hydrex clear chlorhexidine gluconate 0.5% solution** | 600 ml [GSL] £4.72 DT = £4.72
- ▶ **Chlorhexidine gluconate 40 mg per 1 ml** Hydrex 4% Surgical Scrub | 250 ml [GSL] £4.30 DT = £4.25 | 500 ml [GSL] £4.77 DT = £5.25 | 5000 ml [GSL] £39.75 DT = £24.00
- ▶ **Sterets Unisept** (Molnlycke Health Care Ltd)  
**Chlorhexidine gluconate 500 microgram per 1 ml** Sterets Unisept 0.05% solution 25ml sachets | 25 sachet [P] £5.54  
Sterets Unisept 0.05% solution 100ml sachets | 10 sachet [P] £6.83

## Chlorhexidine gluconate with isopropyl alcohol

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, chlorhexidine p. 762.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Skin disinfection before invasive procedures

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child 2 months–17 years: (consult product literature)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: liquid

#### Liquid

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

#### ▶ ChloraPrep (CareFusion U.K. Ltd)

**Chlorhexidine gluconate 20 mg per 1 ml, Isopropyl alcohol 700 ml per 1 litre** ChloraPrep with Tint solution 10.5ml applicators | 25 applicator [GSL] £76.65  
 ChloraPrep with Tint solution 26ml applicators | 25 applicator [GSL] £170.75  
 ChloraPrep solution 3ml applicators | 25 applicator [GSL] £21.25  
 ChloraPrep solution 1.5ml applicators | 20 applicator [GSL] £11.00  
 ChloraPrep with Tint solution 3ml applicators | 25 applicator [GSL] £22.31  
 ChloraPrep solution 0.67ml applicators | 200 applicator [GSL] £60.00  
 ChloraPrep solution 10.5ml applicators | 25 applicator [GSL] £73.00  
 ChloraPrep solution 26ml applicators | 25 applicator [GSL] £162.50

## Chlorhexidine with cetrimide

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, chlorhexidine p. 762.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Skin disinfection such as wound cleansing and obstetrics

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: To be used undiluted

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Cream

#### ▶ Chlorhexidine with cetrimide (Non-proprietary)

**Chlorhexidine gluconate 1 mg per 1 gram, Cetrimide 5 mg per 1 gram** Savlon antiseptic cream | 15 gram [GSL] £0.90 | 30 gram [GSL] £1.19 | 60 gram [GSL] £1.91 | 100 gram [GSL] £2.78

#### Irrigation solution

#### ▶ Chlorhexidine with cetrimide (Non-proprietary)

**Chlorhexidine acetate 150 microgram per 1 ml, Cetrimide 1.5 mg per 1 ml** Chlorhexidine acetate 0.015% / Cetrimide 0.15% irrigation solution 1litre bottles | 1 bottle [P] [S] £

#### Liquid

#### ▶ Sterets Tisept (Molnlycke Health Care Ltd)

**Chlorhexidine gluconate 150 microgram per 1 ml, Cetrimide 1.5 mg per 1 ml** Sterets Tisept solution 25ml sachets | 25 sachet [P] £5.33  
 Sterets Tisept solution 100ml sachets | 10 sachet [P] £6.85

## Diethyl phthalate with methyl salicylate

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Skin preparation before injection

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply to the area to be disinfected

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Liquid

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

#### ▶ Diethyl phthalate with methyl salicylate (Non-proprietary)

**Methyl salicylate 5 ml per 1 litre, Diethyl phthalate 20 ml per 1 litre, Castor oil 25 ml per 1 litre, Industrial methylated spirit 950 ml per 1 litre** Surgical spirit | 200 ml [GSL] £1.17 DT = £1.17 | 1000 ml [GSL] £3.62

## Hydrogen peroxide

### ● DRUG ACTION Hydrogen peroxide is an oxidising agent.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### CRYSTACIDE®

#### Superficial bacterial skin infection

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: Apply 2–3 times a day for up to 3 weeks

### ● UNLICENSED USE Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

### ● CAUTIONS Avoid on eyes · avoid on healthy skin · incompatible with products containing iodine or potassium permanganate

### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION The BP directs that when hydrogen peroxide is prescribed, hydrogen peroxide solution 6% (20 vols) should be dispensed.

Strong solutions of hydrogen peroxide which contain 27% (90 vols) and 30% (100 vols) are only for the preparation of weaker solutions.

### ● HANDLING AND STORAGE Hydrogen peroxide bleaches fabric.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Cream

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Edetic acid (edta), propylene glycol

#### ▶ Crystacide (Reig Jofre UK Ltd)

**Hydrogen peroxide 10 mg per 1 gram** Crystacide 1% cream | 25 gram [P] £8.07 DT = £8.07 | 40 gram [P] £11.62

## Proflavine

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Infected wounds | Infected burns

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE Stains clothing.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: liquid

## Irrigation solutions

### ● IRRIGATION SOLUTIONS

**Flowfusor sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution 120ml bottles** (Fresenius Kabi Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml** 1 bottle · NHS indicative price = £1.71 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Irriclen sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution aerosol spray** (ConvaTec Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml** 240 ml · NHS indicative price = £3.57 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Normasol sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution 100ml sachets** (Molnlycke Health Care Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml** 10 unit dose · NHS indicative price = £7.97 · Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Normasol sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution 25ml sachets** (Molnlycke Health Care Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml 25 unit dose** • NHS indicative price = £6.46 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution 20ml Clinipod unit dose** (Mayors Healthcare Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml 25 unit dose** • NHS indicative price = £4.80 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution 20ml ISO-POD unit dose** (St Georges Medical Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml 25 unit dose** • NHS indicative price = £4.95 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution 20ml Irripod unit dose** (C D Medical Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml 25 unit dose** • NHS indicative price = £5.84 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution 20ml Sal-e Pods unit dose** (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml 25 unit dose** • NHS indicative price = £4.80 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution 20ml Salipod unit dose** (Sai-Meds Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml 25 unit dose** • NHS indicative price = £4.99 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution 20ml Steripod unit dose** (Molnlycke Health Care Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml 25 unit dose** • NHS indicative price = £7.96 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution 20ml Sterowash unit dose** (Steroplast Healthcare Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml 25 unit dose** • NHS indicative price = £5.40 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution 20ml unit dose** (Alissa Healthcare Research Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml 25 unit dose** • NHS indicative price = £7.36 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution 20ml unit dose** (Crest Medical Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml 25 unit dose** • NHS indicative price = £4.99 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution 20ml unit dose** (Mylan) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml 25 unit dose** • NHS indicative price = £5.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Stericlen sodium chloride 0.9% irrigation solution aerosol spray** (C D Medical Ltd) **Sodium chloride 9 mg per 1 ml 100 ml • NHS indicative price = £2.07 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa) 240 ml • NHS indicative price = £3.15 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)**

## 8.1 Minor cuts and abrasions

### Minor cuts and abrasions

#### Management

Many preparations traditionally used to manage minor burns, and abrasions have fallen out of favour. Preparations containing camphor and sulfonamides should be avoided. Preparations such as magnesium sulfate paste are now rarely used to treat carbuncles and boils as these are best treated with antibiotics.

Cetrimide is used to treat minor cuts and abrasions and proflavine p. 763 may be used to treat infected wounds or burns, but its use has now been largely superseded by other antiseptics or suitable antibacterials. The effervescent effect of hydrogen peroxide p. 704 is used to clean minor cuts and abrasions.

Flexible collodion (see castor oil with collodion and colophony below) may be used to seal minor cuts and wounds that have partially healed; skin tissue adhesives are used similarly, and also for additional suture support.

## DERMATOLOGICAL DRUGS > COLLODIONS

### Castor oil with collodion and colophony

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Used to seal minor cuts and wounds that have partially healed**

- TO THE SKIN
- Child: (consult product literature)

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated if patient has an allergy to colophony in elastic adhesive plasters and tape.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Flexible collodion**

- **Castor oil with collodion and colophony (Non-proprietary)**
- Castor oil 25 mg per 1 ml, Colophony 25 mg per 1 ml, Collodion methylated 950 microlitre per 1 ml Flexible collodion methylated | 100 ml £13.54–£13.81 | 500 ml £27.79

## Skin adhesives

#### • SKIN ADHESIVES

**Derma+Flex skin adhesive** (Chemence Ltd)  
0.5 ml • NHS indicative price = £5.36 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Dermabond ProPen skin adhesive** (Ethicon Ltd)  
0.5 ml • NHS indicative price = £19.46 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Histoacryl L skin adhesive** (B.Braun Medical Ltd)  
0.5 ml • NHS indicative price = £6.72 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Histoacryl skin adhesive** (B.Braun Medical Ltd)  
0.5 ml • NHS indicative price = £6.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**Indermil skin adhesive** (Covidien (UK) Commercial Ltd)  
0.5 gram • NHS indicative price = £6.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**LiquiBand flow control tissue adhesive** (Advanced Medical Solutions Ltd)  
0.5 gram • NHS indicative price = £5.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

**LiquiBand tissue adhesive** (Advanced Medical Solutions Ltd)  
0.5 gram • NHS indicative price = £5.50 • Drug Tariff (Part IXa)

## 9 Skin disfigurement

### Camouflagers

#### Overview

Disfigurement of the skin can be very distressing to patients and may have a marked psychological effect. In skilled hands, or with experience, camouflage cosmetics can be very effective in concealing scars and birthmarks. The depigmented patches in vitiligo are also very disfiguring and camouflage creams are of great cosmetic value.

Opaque cover foundation or cream is used to mask skin pigment abnormalities; careful application using a combination of dark- and light-coloured cover creams set with powder helps to minimise the appearance of skin deformities.

#### Borderline substances

The preparations marked 'ACBS' can be prescribed on the NHS for postoperative scars and other deformities and as adjunctive therapy in the relief of emotional disturbances due to disfiguring skin disease, such as vitiligo.

Camouflages

CAMOUFLAGES

- Covermark classic foundation (Derma UK Ltd)  
15 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £11.86
- Covermark finishing powder (Derma UK Ltd)  
25 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £11.86
- Dermablend Dermasmooth Corrective Foundation (Vichy)  
30 ml • No NHS indicative price available
- Dermacolor body camouflage (Kryolan UK Ltd)  
50 ml • NHS indicative price = £8.94
- Dermacolor camouflage (Kryolan UK Ltd)  
30 gram • NHS indicative price = £11.00
- Dermacolor fixing powder (Kryolan UK Ltd)  
60 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £9.85
- Keromask finishing powder (Bellava Ltd)  
20 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.07
- Keromask masking cream (Bellava Ltd)  
15 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.07
- Veil cover cream (Thomas Blake Cosmetic Creams Ltd)  
19 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £22.42 44 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £33.3 570 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £42.10
- Veil finishing powder (Thomas Blake Cosmetic Creams Ltd)  
35 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £24.58

10 Sun protection and photodamage

Sunscreen

Sunscreen preparations

Solar ultraviolet irradiation can be harmful to the skin. It is responsible for disorders such as *polymorphic light eruption*, *solar urticaria*, and it provokes the various *cutaneous porphyrias*. It also provokes (or at least aggravates) skin lesions of *lupus erythematosus* and may aggravate some other *dermatoses*. Certain drugs, such as demeclocycline, phenothiazines, or amiodarone, can cause photosensitivity. All these conditions (as well as *sunburn*) may occur after relatively short periods of exposure to the sun. Solar ultraviolet irradiation may provoke attacks of recurrent herpes labialis (but it is not known whether the effect of sunlight exposure is local or systemic).

The effects of exposure over longer periods include *ageing changes* and more importantly the initiation of *skin cancer*.

Solar ultraviolet radiation is approximately 200–400 m in wavelength. The medium wavelengths (290–320 nm, known as UVB) cause sunburn. The long wavelengths (320–400 nm, known as UVA) are responsible for many *photosensitivity reactions* and *photodermatoses*. Both UVA and UVB contribute to long-term *photodamage* and to the changes responsible for *skin cancer* and ageing.

Sunscreen preparations contain substances that protect the skin against UVA and UVB radiation, but they are no substitute for covering the skin and avoiding sunlight. Protective clothing and sun avoidance (rather than the use of sunscreen preparations) are recommended for children under 6 months of age.

The sun protection factor (SPF, usually indicated in the preparation title) provides guidance on the degree of protection offered against UVB; it indicates the multiples of protection provided against burning, compared with unprotected skin; for example, an SPF of 8 should enable a child to remain 8 times longer in the sun without burning. However, in practice users do not apply sufficient sunscreen product and the protection is lower than that found in experimental studies. Some manufacturers use a star rating system to indicate the protection against UVA relative to

protection against UVB for sunscreen products. However, the usefulness of the star rating system remains controversial. The EU Commission (September 2006) has recommended that the UVA protection factor for a sunscreen should be at least one-third of the sun protection factor (SPF); products that achieve this requirement will be labelled with a UVA logo alongside the SPF classification. Preparations that also contain reflective substances, such as titanium dioxide, provide the most effective protection against UVA.

Sunscreen preparations may rarely cause allergic reactions.

For optimum photoprotection, sunscreen preparations should be applied **thickly** and **frequently** (approximately 2 hourly). In photodermatoses, they should be used from spring to autumn. As maximum protection from sunlight is desirable, preparations with the highest SPF should be prescribed.

Ingredient nomenclature in sunscreen preparations	
rINN	INCI
amiloxate	isoamyl <i>p</i> -methoxycinnamate
avobenzene	butyl methoxydibenzoylmethane
bemotrizinol	bis-ethylhexyloxyphenol methoxyphenyl triazine
bisotrizole	methylene bis-benzotriazolyl tetramethylbutylphenol
ecamsule	terephthalylidene dicamphor sulfonic acid
ensulizole	phenylbenzimidazole sulfonic acid
enzacamene	4-methylbenzylidene camphor
octinoxate	octyl (or ethylhexyl) methoxycinnamate
octocrilene	octocrylene
oxybenzone	benzophenone-3
The European Commission Cosmetic Products Regulation (EC) 1223/2009 requires the use of INCI (International Nomenclature of Cosmetic Ingredients) for cosmetics and sunscreens. This table includes the rINN and the INCI synonym for the active ingredients of sunscreen preparations in the BNFC	

Borderline substances

*Anthelios*® XL SPF 50+ Melt-in cream; *Sunsense*® Ultra; *Uvistat*® Lipscreen SPF 50; and *Uvistat*® Suncream SPF 30 and 50 (see *Borderline substances*) cannot be prescribed on the NHS except for skin protection against ultraviolet radiation in abnormal cutaneous photosensitivity resulting from genetic disorders or photodermatoses, including vitiligo and those resulting from radiotherapy; chronic or recurrent herpes simplex labialis. Preparations with SPF less than 30 should not normally be prescribed.

Photodamage

Overview

Actinic keratoses occur very rarely in healthy children; actinic cheilitis may occur on the lips of adolescents following excessive sun exposure.

Diclofenac gel (Solaraze®) and topical preparations of fluorouracil are licensed for the treatment of actinic keratoses but they are not licensed for use in children.

In children with photosensitivity disorders, such as erythropoietic protoporphyria, specialists may use

betacarotene below, mepacrine, chloroquine or hydroxychloroquine to reduce skin reactions.

## VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS > VITAMIN A

### Betacarotene

• **DRUG ACTION** Betacarotene is a precursor to vitamin A.

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Management of photosensitivity reactions in erythropoietic protoporphyria (specialist use only)**

► BY MOUTH

- Child 1–4 years: 60–90 mg daily, to be given as a single dose or in divided doses
- Child 5–8 years: 90–120 mg daily, to be given as a single dose or in divided doses
- Child 9–11 years: 120–150 mg daily, to be given as a single dose or in divided doses
- Child 12–15 years: 150–180 mg daily, to be given as a single dose or in divided doses
- Child 16–17 years: 180–300 mg daily, to be given as a single dose or in divided doses

• **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed.

• **CAUTIONS** Monitor vitamin A intake

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Protection not total—avoid strong sunlight and use sunscreen preparations; generally 2–6 weeks of treatment (resulting in yellow coloration of palms and soles) necessary before increasing exposure to sunlight; dose should be adjusted according to level of exposure to sunlight.

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare** Arthralgia · skin reactions
- **Frequency not known** Diarrhoea
- **PREGNANCY** Partially converted to vitamin A, but does not give rise to abnormally high serum concentration; manufacturer advises use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

• **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution—present in milk.

• **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid.

• **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: tablet, capsule

##### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 21

► **Betacarotene (Imported)**

**Betacarotene 25 mg** Carotaben 25mg capsules | 100 capsule [P] [X]

**Betacarotene 30 mg** Lumitene 30mg capsules | 100 capsule [PoM] [X]

► **Bio-Carotene** (Pharma Nord (UK) Ltd)

**Betacarotene 9 mg** Bio-Carotene 9mg capsules | 150 capsule £5.51

► **Super Betavit** (Health+Plus Ltd)

**Betacarotene 15 mg** Super Betavit 15mg capsules | 30 capsule £3.59

## 11 Superficial soft-tissue injuries and superficial thrombophlebitis

### Topical circulatory preparations

#### Overview

These preparations are used to improve circulation in conditions such as bruising and superficial thrombophlebitis but are of little value. First aid measures such as rest, ice,

compression, and elevation should be used. Chilblains are best managed by avoidance of exposure to cold; neither systemic nor topical vasodilator therapy is established as being effective.

## HEPARINOIDS

### Heparinoid

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Superficial thrombophlebitis | Bruising | Haematoma**

► TO THE SKIN

► Child 5–17 years: Apply up to 4 times a day

• **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Should not be used on large areas of skin, broken or sensitive skin, or mucous membranes

• **LESS SUITABLE FOR PRESCRIBING** Hirudoid® is less suitable for prescribing.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Cream

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

► **Hirudoid** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

**Heparinoid 3 mg per 1 gram** Hirudoid 0.3% cream | 50 gram [P] £3.99 DT = £3.99

##### Gel

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Fragrances, propylene glycol

► **Hirudoid** (Thornton & Ross Ltd)

**Heparinoid 3 mg per 1 gram** Hirudoid 0.3% gel | 50 gram [P] £3.99 DT = £3.99

## 12 Warts and calluses

### Warts and calluses

#### Overview

Warts (verruca vulgaris) are common, benign, self-limiting, and usually asymptomatic. They are caused by a human papillomavirus, which most frequently affects the hands, feet (plantar warts), and the anogenital region; treatment usually relies on local tissue destruction and is required only if the warts are painful, unsightly, persistent, or cause distress. In immunocompromised children, warts may be more difficult to eradicate.

Preparations of salicylic acid p. 768, formaldehyde p. 767, glutaraldehyde p. 767 or silver nitrate p. 767 are used for the removal of warts on hands and feet. Salicylic acid is a useful keratolytic which may be considered first-line in the treatment of warts; it is also suitable for the removal of *corns and calluses*. Preparations of salicylic acid in a collodion basis are available but some patients may develop an allergy to colophony in the formulation; collodion should be avoided in children allergic to elastic adhesive plaster. Cryotherapy causes pain, swelling, and blistering, and may be no more effective than topical salicylic acid in the treatment of warts.

#### Anogenital warts

Anogenital warts (condylomata acuminata) in children are often asymptomatic and require only a simple barrier preparation. If treatment is required it should be supervised by a hospital specialist. Persistent warts on genital skin may require treatment with cryotherapy or other forms of physical ablation under general anaesthesia.

Podophyllotoxin p. 767 (the major active ingredient of podophyllum), or imiquimod p. 768 are used to treat external anogenital warts; these preparations can cause considerable irritation of the treated area and are therefore suitable only for children who are able to co-operate with the treatment.



## ANTINEOPLASTIC DRUGS &gt; PLANT ALKALOIDS

## Podophyllotoxin

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

## CONDYLINE®

**Condylomata acuminata affecting the penis or the female external genitalia**

## ▶ TO THE LESION

- ▶ Child 2–17 years (initiated under specialist supervision): Apply twice daily for 3 consecutive days, treatment may be repeated at weekly intervals if necessary for a total of five 3-day treatment courses, direct medical supervision for lesions in the female and for lesions greater than 4 cm<sup>2</sup> in the male, maximum 50 single applications ('loops') per session (consult product literature)

## WARTICON® CREAM

**Condylomata acuminata affecting the penis or the female external genitalia**

## ▶ TO THE LESION

- ▶ Child 2–17 years (initiated under specialist supervision): Apply twice daily for 3 consecutive days, treatment may be repeated at weekly intervals if necessary for a total of four 3-day treatment courses, direct medical supervision for lesions greater than 4 cm<sup>2</sup>

## WARTICON® LIQUID

**Condylomata acuminata affecting the penis or the female external genitalia**

## ▶ TO THE LESION

- ▶ Child 2–17 years (initiated under specialist supervision): Apply twice daily for 3 consecutive days, treatment may be repeated at weekly intervals if necessary for a total of four 3-day treatment courses, direct medical supervision for lesions greater than 4 cm<sup>2</sup>, maximum 50 single applications ('loops') per session (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children.
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid normal skin · avoid open wounds · keep away from face · very irritant to eyes
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Balanoposthitis · skin irritation
- **PREGNANCY** Avoid.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Cream**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Butylated hydroxyanisole, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), sorbic acid

- ▶ **Warticon** (Stiefel Laboratories (UK) Ltd)

**Podophyllotoxin 1.5 mg per 1 gram** Warticon 0.15% cream | 5 gram [PoM] £17.83 DT = £17.83

**Liquid**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

- ▶ **Condyline** (Takeda UK Ltd)

**Podophyllotoxin 5 mg per 1 ml** Condyline 0.5% solution | 3.5 ml [PoM] £14.49 DT = £14.49

- ▶ **Warticon** (Stiefel Laboratories (UK) Ltd)

**Podophyllotoxin 5 mg per 1 ml** Warticon 0.5% solution | 3 ml [PoM] £14.86 DT = £14.86

## ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS &gt; ALDEHYDES AND DERIVATIVES

## Formaldehyde

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Warts, particularly plantar warts**

## ▶ TO THE LESION

- ▶ Child: Apply twice daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).
- **CAUTIONS** Impaired peripheral circulation · not suitable for application to anogenital region · not suitable for application to face · not suitable for application to large areas · patients with diabetes at risk of neuropathic ulcers · protect surrounding skin and avoid broken skin · significant peripheral neuropathy
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Asthma · cough · dysphagia · eye irritation · increased risk of infection · laryngospasm · skin reactions

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: liquid

**Form unsteady**

- ▶ **Formaldehyde (Non-proprietary)**

**Formaldehyde 350 mg per 1 gram** Formaldehyde solution | 500 ml £5.90 DT = £5.90 | 2000 ml £16.98

**Liquid**

- ▶ **Formaldehyde (Non-proprietary)**

**Formaldehyde 40 mg per 1 ml** Formaldehyde (Buffered) 4% solution | 1000 ml £3.90 DT = £3.90

## Glutaraldehyde

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Warts, particularly plantar warts**

## ▶ TO THE LESION

- ▶ Child: Apply twice daily

- **UNLICENSED USE** Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).
- **CAUTIONS** Not for application to anogenital areas · not for application to face · not for application to mucosa · protect surrounding skin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Rash · skin irritation (discontinue if severe)

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Paint**

- ▶ **Glutarol** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)

**Glutaraldehyde 100 mg per 1 ml** Glutarol 10% cutaneous solution | 10 ml [P] £2.07 DT = £2.07

## ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS &gt; OTHER

## Silver nitrate

## ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Common warts**

## ▶ TO THE LESION

- ▶ Child: Apply every 24 hours for up to 3 applications, apply moistened caustic pencil tip for 1–2 minutes. Instructions in proprietary packs generally incorporate advice to remove dead skin

continued →

before use by gentle filing and to cover with adhesive dressing after application

### Verrucas

#### ► TO THE LESION

- Child: Apply every 24 hours for up to 6 applications, apply moistened caustic pencil tip for 1–2 minutes. Instructions in proprietary packs generally incorporate advice to remove dead skin before use by gentle filing and to cover with adhesive dressing after application

### Umbilical granulomas

#### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child: Apply moistened caustic pencil tip (usually containing silver nitrate 40%) for 1–2 minutes, protect surrounding skin with soft paraffin

- **UNLICENSED USE** No age range specified by manufacturer.
- **CAUTIONS** Avoid broken skin · not suitable for application to ano-genital region · not suitable for application to face · not suitable for application to large areas · protect surrounding skin
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
- Rare or very rare Argryria · methaemoglobinaemia
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients should be advised that silver nitrate may stain fabric.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Stick

- **Avoca** (Bray Group Ltd)

**Silver nitrate 400 mg per 1 gram** Avoca 40% silver nitrate pencils | 1 applicator [P] £1.13

**Silver nitrate 750 mg per 1 gram** Avoca 75% silver nitrate applicators | 100 applicator [P] £47.82

Avoca 75% silver nitrate applicators with thick handles | 50 applicator [P] £47.19

**Silver nitrate 950 mg per 1 gram** Avoca 95% silver nitrate applicators | 100 applicator [P] £51.17

Avoca 95% silver nitrate pencils | 1 applicator [P] £2.56 DT = £3.00

Avoca wart and verruca treatment set | 1 applicator [P] £3.00 DT = £3.00

## ANTIVIRALS > IMMUNE RESPONSE MODIFIERS

### Imiquimod

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### ALDARA®

#### Warts (external genital and perianal)

##### ► TO THE LESION

- Child (initiated under specialist supervision): Apply 3 times a week until lesions resolve (maximum 16 weeks), to be applied thinly at night

#### ● UNLICENSED USE

**ALDARA®** Not licensed for use in children.

- **CAUTIONS** Autoimmune disease · avoid broken skin · avoid normal skin · avoid open wounds · immunosuppressed patients · not suitable for internal genital warts · uncircumcised males (risk of phimosis or stricture of foreskin)

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · arthralgia · asthenia · headaches · increased risk of infection · lymphadenopathy · myalgia · nausea · pain
- **Uncommon** Anorectal disorder · chills · conjunctival irritation · depression · diarrhoea · dizziness · drowsiness · dry mouth · dysuria · erectile dysfunction · eyelid oedema · face oedema · fever · flushing · gastrointestinal discomfort · genital pain · hyperhidrosis · inflammation · influenza like illness · insomnia · irritability · laryngeal pain · malaise · nasal congestion · painful sexual intercourse · paraesthesia

- penis disorder · skin reactions · skin ulcer · tinnitus · uterovaginal prolapse · vomiting · vulvovaginal disorders
- **Rare or very rare** Autoimmune disorder exacerbated
- **Frequency not known** Alopecia · cutaneous lupus erythematosus · severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs)

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** May damage latex condoms and diaphragms.

- **PREGNANCY** No evidence of teratogenicity or toxicity in animal studies; manufacturer advises caution.

- **BREAST FEEDING** No information available.

#### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

**ALDARA®** ► **Important** Should be rubbed in and allowed to stay on the treated area for 6–10 hours then washed off with mild soap and water (uncircumcised males treating warts under foreskin should wash the area daily). The cream should be washed off before sexual contact.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** A patient information leaflet should be provided.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Cream

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 10

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, cetostearyl alcohol (including cetyl and stearyl alcohol), hydroxybenzoates (parabens), polysorbates

- **Aldara** (Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Imiquimod 50 mg per 1 gram** Aldara 5% cream 250mg sachets | 12 sachet [POM] £48.60 DT = £48.60

## SALICYLIC ACID AND DERIVATIVES

### Salicylic acid

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### OCCLUSAL®

#### Common and plantar warts

##### ► TO THE LESION

- Child: Apply daily, treatment may need to be continued for up to 3 months

##### VERRUGON®

#### For plantar warts

##### ► TO THE LESION

- Child: Apply daily, treatment may need to be continued for up to 3 months

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 2 years.

- **CAUTIONS** Avoid broken skin · impaired peripheral circulation · not suitable for application to anogenital region · not suitable for application to face · not suitable for application to large areas · patients with diabetes at risk of neuropathic ulcers · significant peripheral neuropathy

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Skin irritation

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Advise patient to apply carefully to wart and to protect surrounding skin (e.g. with soft paraffin or specially designed plaster); rub wart surface gently with file or pumice stone once weekly.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: liquid, ointment

##### Ointment

- **Verrugon** (Optima Consumer Health Ltd)

**Salicylic acid 500 mg per 1 gram** Verrugon complete 50% ointment | 6 gram [P] £4.44 DT = £4.44

**Liquid**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

► **Occlusal** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)**Salicylic acid 260 mg per 1 ml** Occlusal 26% solution | 10 ml [P]  
£3.56 DT = £3.56**Salicylic acid with lactic acid**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, salicylic acid p. 768.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****CUPLEX®****Plantar and mosaic warts | Corns | Calluses**

► TO THE LESION

► Child 2-17 years: Apply once daily, treatment may need to be continued for up to 3 months

**DUOFILM®****Plantar and mosaic warts**

► TO THE LESION

► Child: Apply daily, treatment may need to be continued for up to 3 months

**SALACTOL®****Warts, particularly plantar warts | Verrucas | Corns | Calluses**

► TO THE LESION

► Child: Apply daily, treatment may need to be continued for up to 3 months

**SALATAC®****Warts | Verrucas | Corns | Calluses**

► TO THE LESION

► Child: Apply daily, treatment may need to be continued for up to 3 months

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**► **Common or very common** Skin reactions● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

Preparations of salicylic acid in a collodion basis (*Cuplex®* and *Salactol®*) are available but some patients may develop an allergy to colophony in the formulation.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Paint**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

► **Duofilm** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)**Lactic acid 150 mg per 1 gram, Salicylic acid 167 mg per 1 gram** Duofilm paint | 15 ml [P] £2.25 DT = £2.25► **Salactol** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)**Lactic acid 167 mg per 1 gram, Salicylic acid 167 mg per 1 gram** Salactol paint | 10 ml [P] £1.71 DT = £1.71**Gel**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 15

► **Cuplex** (Crawford Healthcare Ltd)**Lactic acid 40 mg per 1 gram, Salicylic acid 110 mg per 1 gram** Cuplex Verruca gel | 5 gram [GSL] £2.88 DT = £2.88► **Salatac** (Dermal Laboratories Ltd)**Lactic acid 40 mg per 1 gram, Salicylic acid 120 mg per 1 gram** Salatac gel | 8 gram [P] £2.98 DT = £2.98

# Chapter 14

## Vaccines

### CONTENTS

1 Immunoglobulin therapy	page 770
2 Post-exposure prophylaxis	776

3 Tuberculosis diagnostic test	page 776
4 Vaccination	777

## 1 Immunoglobulin therapy

### IMMUNE SERA AND IMMUNOGLOBULINS > IMMUNOGLOBULINS

#### Immunoglobulins

04-Oct-2017

##### Passive immunity

Immunity with immediate protection against certain infective organisms can be obtained by injecting preparations made from the plasma of immune individuals with adequate levels of antibody to the disease for which protection is sought. The duration of this passive immunity varies according to the dose and the type of immunoglobulin. Passive immunity may last only a few weeks; when necessary, passive immunisation can be repeated. Antibodies of human origin are usually termed immunoglobulins. The term antiserum is applied to material prepared in animals. Because of serum sickness and other allergic-type reactions that may follow injections of antisera, this therapy has been replaced wherever possible by the use of immunoglobulins. Reactions are theoretically possible after injection of human immunoglobulins but reports of such reactions are very rare.

Two types of human immunoglobulin preparation are available, normal immunoglobulin p. 773 and **disease-specific immunoglobulins**.

Human immunoglobulin is a sterile preparation of concentrated antibodies (immune globulins) recovered from pooled human plasma or serum obtained from outside the UK, tested and found non-reactive for hepatitis B surface antigen and for antibodies against hepatitis C virus and human immunodeficiency virus (types 1 and 2). A global shortage of human immunoglobulin and the rapidly increasing range of clinical indications for treatment with immunoglobulins has resulted in the need for a Demand Management programme in the UK, for further information consult [www.ivig.nhs.uk](http://www.ivig.nhs.uk) and *Clinical Guidelines for Immunoglobulin Use*, [www.gov.uk/dh](http://www.gov.uk/dh).

Further information on the use of immunoglobulins is included in Public Health England's *Immunoglobulin Handbook*, [www.gov.uk/phe](http://www.gov.uk/phe), and in the Department of Health's publication, *Immunisation against Infectious Disease*, [www.gov.uk/dh](http://www.gov.uk/dh).

##### Availability

Normal immunoglobulin for intramuscular administration is available from some regional Public Health laboratories for protection of contacts and the control of outbreaks of hepatitis A, measles, and rubella only. For other indications, subcutaneous or intravenous normal immunoglobulin should be purchased from the manufacturer.

Disease-specific immunoglobulins are available from some regional Public Health laboratories, with the exception of tetanus immunoglobulin p. 775 which is available from BPL,

hospital pharmacies, or blood transfusion departments. Rabies immunoglobulin p. 775 is available from the Specialist and Reference Microbiology Division, Public Health England, Colindale. Hepatitis B immunoglobulin p. 773 required by transplant centres should be obtained commercially.

In Scotland all immunoglobulins are available from the *Scottish National Blood Transfusion Service* (SNBTS).

In Wales all immunoglobulins are available from the *Welsh Blood Service* (WBS).

In Northern Ireland all immunoglobulins are available from the *Northern Ireland Blood Transfusion Service* (NIBTS).

##### Normal immunoglobulin

Human normal immunoglobulin ('HNIG') is prepared from pools of at least 1000 donations of human plasma; it contains immunoglobulin G (IgG) and antibodies to hepatitis A, measles, mumps, rubella, varicella, and other viruses that are currently prevalent in the general population.

##### Uses

Normal immunoglobulin (containing 10–18% protein) is administered by *intramuscular injection* for the protection of susceptible contacts against **hepatitis A virus** (infectious hepatitis), **measles** and, to a lesser extent, **rubella**. Injection of immunoglobulin produces immediate protection lasting for several weeks.

Normal immunoglobulin (containing 3–12% protein) for *intravenous administration* is used as *replacement therapy* for children with congenital agammaglobulinaemia and hypogammaglobulinaemia, and for the short-term treatment of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura and Kawasaki disease; it is also used for the prophylaxis of infection following bone-marrow transplantation and in children with symptomatic HIV infection who have recurrent bacterial infections. Normal immunoglobulin for replacement therapy may also be given intramuscularly or subcutaneously, but intravenous formulations are normally preferred. Intravenous immunoglobulin is also used in the treatment of Guillain-Barré syndrome as an alternative to plasma exchange.

The dose of normal immunoglobulin used as replacement therapy in patients with immunodeficiencies is **not the same** as the dose required for treatment of acute conditions. For Kawasaki disease a single dose by intravenous infusion should be given with concomitant aspirin p. 91 within 10 days of onset of symptoms (but children with a delayed diagnosis may also benefit).

For guidance on the use of intravenous normal immunoglobulin and alternative therapies for other conditions, consult *Clinical Guidelines for Immunoglobulin Use* ([www.gov.uk/dh](http://www.gov.uk/dh)).

##### Hepatitis A

Hepatitis A vaccine p. 795 is recommended for individuals at risk of infection including those visiting areas where the disease is highly endemic (all countries excluding Northern and Western Europe, North America, Japan, Australia, and

New Zealand). In unimmunised individuals, transmission of hepatitis A is reduced by good hygiene. Intramuscular normal immunoglobulin is no longer recommended for prophylaxis in travellers.

Public Health England recommends the use of normal immunoglobulin in addition to hepatitis A vaccine for prevention of infection in close contacts (of confirmed cases of hepatitis A) who have chronic liver disease (including chronic hepatitis B or C infection), or HIV infection (with a CD4 count < 200 cells per microlitre), or who are immunosuppressed; normal immunoglobulin should be given as soon as possible, preferably within 14 days of exposure to the primary case. However, normal immunoglobulin can still be given to contacts with chronic liver disease up to 28 days after exposure to the primary case. Hepatitis A vaccine can be given at the same time, but it should be given at a separate injection site.

### Measles

Intravenous or subcutaneous normal immunoglobulin may be given to prevent or attenuate an attack of measles in individuals who do not have adequate immunity. Children with compromised immunity who have come into contact with measles should receive intravenous or subcutaneous normal immunoglobulin as soon as possible after exposure. It is most effective if given within 72 hours but can be effective if given within 6 days.

Subcutaneous or intramuscular normal immunoglobulin should also be considered for the following individuals if they have been in contact with a confirmed case of measles or with a person associated with a local outbreak:

- non-immune pregnant women
- infants under 9 months

Further advice should be sought from the Centre for Infections, Public Health England (tel. (020) 8200 6868).

Individuals with normal immunity who are not in the above categories and who have not been fully immunised against measles, can be given measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live p. 799 for prophylaxis following exposure to measles.

### Rubella

Intramuscular immunoglobulin after exposure to rubella does **not** prevent infection in non-immune contacts and is **not** recommended for protection of pregnant women exposed to rubella. It may, however, reduce the likelihood of a clinical attack which may possibly reduce the risk to the fetus. Risk of intra-uterine transmission is greatest in the first 11 weeks of pregnancy, between 16 and 20 weeks there is minimal risk of deafness only, after 20 weeks there is no increased risk. Intramuscular normal immunoglobulin p. 773 should be used only if termination of pregnancy would be unacceptable to the pregnant woman—it should be given as soon as possible after exposure. Serological follow-up of recipients is essential to determine if the woman has become infected despite receiving immunoglobulin.

For routine prophylaxis against Rubella, see measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live p. 799.

### Disease-specific immunoglobulins

Specific immunoglobulins are prepared by pooling the plasma of selected human donors with high levels of the specific antibody required. For further information, see *Immunoglobulin Handbook* ([www.gov.uk/phe](http://www.gov.uk/phe)).

There are no specific immunoglobulins for hepatitis A, measles, or rubella—normal immunoglobulin is used in certain circumstances. There is no specific immunoglobulin for mumps; neither normal immunoglobulin nor measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live is effective as postexposure prophylaxis.

### Hepatitis B immunoglobulin

Disease-specific hepatitis B immunoglobulin ('HBIG') p. 773 is available for use in association with hepatitis B vaccine

p. 796 for the prevention of infection in infants born to mothers who have become infected with this virus in pregnancy or who are high-risk carriers (see hepatitis B vaccine). Hepatitis B immunoglobulin will not inhibit the antibody response when given at the same time as hepatitis B vaccine but should be given at different sites.

An intravenous and preparation of hepatitis B immunoglobulin is licensed for the prevention of hepatitis B recurrence in HBV-DNA negative patients who have undergone liver transplantation for liver failure caused by the virus.

### Rabies immunoglobulin

Following exposure of an unimmunised individual to an animal in or from a country where the risk of rabies is high the site of the bite should be washed with soapy water and specific rabies immunoglobulin p. 775 of human origin administered. All of the dose should be injected around the site of the wound; if this is difficult or the wound has completely healed it can be given in the anterolateral thigh (remote from the site used for vaccination).

Rabies vaccine p. 800 should also be given intramuscularly at a different site (for details see rabies vaccine). If there is delay in giving the rabies immunoglobulin, it should be given within 7 days of starting the course of rabies vaccine.

### Tetanus immunoglobulin

For the management of tetanus-prone wounds, tetanus immunoglobulin p. 775 should be used in addition to wound cleansing and, where appropriate, antibacterial prophylaxis and a tetanus-containing vaccine. Tetanus immunoglobulin, together with metronidazole p. 333 and wound cleansing, should also be used for the treatment of established cases of tetanus.

### Varicella-zoster immunoglobulin

Varicella-zoster immunoglobulin (VZIG) p. 775 is recommended for individuals who are at increased risk of severe varicella (neonates, pregnant women, and immunosuppressed individuals with varicella-zoster virus immunoglobulin G antibody less than 150 mIU/mL) and who have no antibodies to varicella-zoster virus and who have significant exposure to chickenpox (varicella) or shingles (herpes zoster) during the infectious period.

Immunosuppressed children receiving regular intravenous immunoglobulin replacement therapy only require varicella-zoster immunoglobulin if the most recent dose was administered more than 3 weeks before exposure.

Immunosuppressed children on long term aciclovir p. 404 or valaciclovir p. 406 prophylaxis will require a temporary increase in their dose following exposure; for children within 12 months of a stem cell transplant, varicella-zoster immunoglobulin should also be considered.

**Important:** for full details consult *Guidance for issuing varicella-zoster immunoglobulin (VZIG) and immunisation against infectious disease* from Public Health England ([www.gov.uk](http://www.gov.uk)).

## Anti-D (Rh<sub>0</sub>) immunoglobulin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**To rhesus-negative woman for prevention of Rh<sub>0</sub>(D) sensitisation, following birth of rhesus-positive infant**

► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 500 units, dose to be administered immediately or within 72 hours; for transplacental bleed of over 4 mL fetal red cells, extra 100–125 units per mL fetal red cells, subcutaneous route used for patients with bleeding disorders

continued →



**To rhesus-negative woman for prevention of Rh<sub>0</sub>(D) sensitisation, following any potentially sensitising episode (e.g. stillbirth, abortion, amniocentesis) up to 20 weeks' gestation**

► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 250 units per episode, dose to be administered immediately or within 72 hours, subcutaneous route used for patients with bleeding disorders

**To rhesus-negative woman for prevention of Rh<sub>0</sub>(D) sensitisation, following any potentially sensitising episode (e.g. stillbirth, abortion, amniocentesis) after 20 weeks' gestation**

► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 500 units per episode, dose to be administered immediately or within 72 hours, subcutaneous route used for patients with bleeding disorders

**To rhesus-negative woman for prevention of Rh<sub>0</sub>(D) sensitisation, antenatal prophylaxis**

► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 500 units, dose to be given at weeks 28 and 34 of pregnancy, if infant rhesus-positive, a further dose is still needed immediately or within 72 hours of delivery, subcutaneous route used for patients with bleeding disorders

**To rhesus-negative woman for prevention of Rh<sub>0</sub>(D) sensitisation, antenatal prophylaxis (alternative NICE recommendation)**

► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 1000–1650 units, dose to be given at weeks 28 and 34 of pregnancy, alternatively 1500 units for 1 dose, dose to be given between 28 and 30 weeks gestation

**To rhesus-negative woman for prevention of Rh<sub>0</sub>(D) sensitisation, following Rh<sub>0</sub>(D) incompatible blood transfusion**

► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 100–125 units per mL of transfused rhesus-positive red cells, subcutaneous route used for patients with bleeding disorders

#### RHOPHYLAC®

**To rhesus-negative woman for prevention of Rh<sub>0</sub>(D) sensitisation, following birth of rhesus-positive infant**

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 1000–1500 units, dose to be administered immediately or within 72 hours; for large transplacental bleed, extra 100 units per mL fetal red cells (preferably by intravenous injection), intravenous route recommended for patients with bleeding disorders

**To rhesus-negative woman for prevention of Rh<sub>0</sub>(D) sensitisation, following any potentially sensitising episode (e.g. abortion, amniocentesis, chorionic villous sampling) up to 12 weeks' gestation**

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 1000 units per episode, dose to be administered immediately or within 72 hours, intravenous route recommended for patients with bleeding disorders, higher doses may be required after 12 weeks gestation

**To rhesus-negative woman for prevention of Rh<sub>0</sub>(D) sensitisation, antenatal prophylaxis**

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 1500 units, dose to be given between weeks 28–30 of pregnancy; if infant rhesus-positive, a further dose is still needed

immediately or within 72 hours of delivery, intravenous route recommended for patients with bleeding disorders

**To rhesus-negative woman for prevention of Rh<sub>0</sub>(D) sensitisation, following Rh<sub>0</sub>(D) incompatible blood transfusion**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 50 units per mL of transfused rhesus-positive blood, alternatively 100 units per mL of erythrocyte concentrate, intravenous route recommended for patients with bleeding disorders

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Treatment of idiopathic thrombocytopenia purpura in rhesus negative patients · treatment of idiopathic thrombocytopenia purpura in splenectomised patients

- **CAUTIONS** Immunoglobulin A deficiency · possible interference with live virus vaccines

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **MMR vaccine** MMR vaccine may be given in the postpartum period with anti-D (Rh<sub>0</sub>) immunoglobulin injection provided that separate syringes are used and the products are administered into different limbs. If blood is transfused, the antibody response to the vaccine may be inhibited—measure rubella antibodies after 6–8 weeks and revaccinate if necessary.

- **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Uncommon** Chills · fever · headache · malaise · skin reactions

- **Rare or very rare** Arthralgia · dyspnoea · hypersensitivity · hypotension · nausea · tachycardia · vomiting

- **Frequency not known** Intravascular haemolysis

- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Care must be taken to store all immunological products under the conditions recommended in the product literature, otherwise the preparation may become ineffective. **Refrigerated storage** is usually necessary; many immunoglobulins need to be stored at 2–8°C and not allowed to freeze. Immunoglobulins should be protected from light. Opened multidose vials must be used within the period recommended in the product literature.

- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

#### NICE decisions

- **Routine antenatal anti-D prophylaxis for rhesus-negative women (August 2008)** NICE TA156  
Routine antenatal anti-D prophylaxis should be offered to all non-sensitised pregnant women who are rhesus negative.

[www.nice.org.uk/TA156](http://www.nice.org.uk/TA156)

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

- **D-Gam** (Bio Products Laboratory Ltd)

**Anti-D (RHO) immunoglobulin 500 unit** D-Gam Anti-D immunoglobulin 500unit solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £33.75

**Anti-D (RHO) immunoglobulin 1500 unit** D-Gam Anti-D immunoglobulin 1,500unit solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £58.00

- **Rhophylac** (CSL Behring UK Ltd)

**Anti-D (RHO) immunoglobulin 750 unit per 1 ml** Rhophylac 1,500units/2ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £46.50

## Hepatitis B immunoglobulin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Prophylaxis against hepatitis B infection

##### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Neonate: 200 units, dose to be administered as soon as possible after exposure; ideally within 12–48 hours, but no later than 7 days after exposure.
- Child 1 month–4 years: 200 units, dose to be administered as soon as possible after exposure; ideally within 12–48 hours, but no later than 7 days after exposure
- Child 5–9 years: 300 units, dose to be administered as soon as possible after exposure; ideally within 12–48 hours, but no later than 7 days after exposure
- Child 10–17 years: 500 units, dose to be administered as soon as possible after exposure; ideally within 12–48 hours, but no later than 7 days after exposure

#### Prevention of transmitted infection at birth

##### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Neonate: 200 units, dose to be administered as soon as possible after birth; for full details consult Immunisation against Infectious Disease ([www.dh.gov.uk](http://www.dh.gov.uk)).

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: (consult product literature).

#### Prophylaxis against hepatitis B infection, after exposure to hepatitis B virus-contaminated material

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: Dose to be administered as soon as possible after exposure, but no later than 72 hours (consult product literature)

#### Prophylaxis against re-infection of transplanted liver

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: (consult product literature)

- **CAUTIONS** IgA deficiency · interference with live virus vaccines

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Uncommon** Abdominal pain upper · headache
- **Rare or very rare** Cardiac discomfort · fatigue · hypersensitivity · hypertension · hypotension · muscle spasms · nasopharyngitis · oropharyngeal pain · palpitations · skin reactions

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Vials containing 200 units or 500 units (for intramuscular injection), available from selected Public Health England and NHS laboratories (except for Transplant Centres), also available from BPL.

- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Care must be taken to store all immunological products under the conditions recommended in the product literature, otherwise the preparation may become ineffective. **Refrigerated storage** is usually necessary; many immunoglobulins need to be stored at 2–8°C and not allowed to freeze. Immunoglobulins should be protected from light. Opened multidose vials must be used within the period recommended in the product literature.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

- **Hepatitis B immunoglobulin (Non-proprietary)**

**Hepatitis B immunoglobulin human 200 unit** Hepatitis B immunoglobulin human 200unit solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £150.00

**Hepatitis B immunoglobulin human 500 unit** Hepatitis B immunoglobulin human 500unit solution for injection vials |

1 vial [PoM] £300.00

- **Zutectra** (Biotest (UK) Ltd)

Zutectra 500units/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes |

5 syringe [PoM] £1,500.00

#### Solution for infusion

- **Hepatect CP** (Biotest (UK) Ltd)

**Hepatitis B immunoglobulin human 50 unit per 1 ml** Hepatect CP 100units/2ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £55.00

Hepatect CP 2000units/40ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,100.00

Hepatect CP 500units/10ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £275.00

Hepatect CP 5000units/100ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £2,750.00

- **Omri-Hep-B** (Imported (Israel))

**Hepatitis B immunoglobulin human 50 unit per 1 ml** Omri-Hep-B 5000units/100ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] Ⓢ

## Normal immunoglobulin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### To control outbreaks of hepatitis A

##### ► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child 1 month–9 years: 250 mg
- Child 10–17 years: 500 mg

#### Rubella in pregnancy, prevention of clinical attack

##### ► BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Females of childbearing potential: 750 mg

#### Antibody deficiency syndromes

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION

- Child: (consult product literature)

#### Kawasaki disease (with concomitant aspirin)

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: 2 g/kg daily for 1 dose, treatment should be given within 10 days of onset of symptom (but children with a delayed diagnosis may also benefit)

### SUBGAM<sup>®</sup>

#### Hepatitis A prophylaxis in outbreaks

##### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child 1 month–9 years: 500 mg
- Child 10–17 years: 750 mg

### ● UNLICENSED USE

**SUBGAM<sup>®</sup>** *Subgam<sup>®</sup>* is not licensed for prophylactic use, but due to difficulty in obtaining suitable immunoglobulin products, Public Health England recommends intramuscular use for prophylaxis against Hepatitis A or rubella.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Patients with selective IgA deficiency who have known antibody against IgA

**PRIVIGEN<sup>®</sup>** Hyperprolinaemia (contains -proline)

**FLEBOGAMMA<sup>®</sup> DIF** Hereditary fructose intolerance (contains sorbitol)

**HIZENTRA<sup>®</sup>** Hyperprolinaemia (contains -proline)

**GAMMAPLEX<sup>®</sup>** Hereditary fructose intolerance (contains sorbitol)

### ● CAUTIONS

**GENERAL CAUTIONS** Agammaglobulinaemia with or without IgA deficiency · hypogammaglobulinaemia with or without IgA deficiency · interference with live virus vaccines

#### SPECIFIC CAUTIONS

- With intravenous use Ensure adequate hydration · obesity · renal insufficiency · risk factors for arterial or venous thromboembolic events · thrombophilic disorders

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Interference with live virus vaccines Normal immunoglobulin may interfere with the immune response to live virus

**vaccines** which should therefore only be given at **least 3 weeks before or 3 months after** an injection of normal immunoglobulin (this does not apply to yellow fever vaccine since normal immunoglobulin does not contain antibody to this virus).

**OCTAGAM®** Falsely elevated results with blood glucose testing systems (contains maltose)

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Chills · diarrhoea · dizziness · fatigue · gastrointestinal discomfort · headache · hypotension · muscle complaints · nausea · pain · skin reactions
- ▶ **Uncommon** Paraesthesia
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Arthralgia
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Fever

##### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common**
  - ▶ With subcutaneous use Drowsiness
- ▶ **Uncommon**
  - ▶ With intramuscular use Feeling hot
- ▶ **Rare or very rare**
  - ▶ With intramuscular use Musculoskeletal stiffness · peripheral coldness · tremor
- ▶ **With intravenous use** Acute kidney injury · meningitis aseptic
- ▶ **Frequency not known**
  - ▶ With intramuscular use Chest discomfort · dyspnoea · facial swelling · flushing · hyperhidrosis · hypertension · malaise · oral paraesthesia · pallor · tachycardia · vomiting
- ▶ **With intravenous use** Embolism and thrombosis · haemolytic anaemia · myocardial infarction · stroke

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Adverse reactions are more likely to occur in patients receiving normal immunoglobulin for the first time, or following a prolonged period between treatments, or when a different brand of normal immunoglobulin is administered.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor for acute renal failure; consider discontinuation if renal function deteriorates. Intravenous preparations with added sucrose have been associated with cases of renal dysfunction and acute renal failure.

#### • DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

Preparations for subcutaneous use May be administered by intramuscular injection if subcutaneous route not possible; intramuscular route **not** for patients with thrombocytopenia or other bleeding disorders.

**GAMUNEX®** Use Glucose 5% intravenous infusion if dilution prior to infusion is required.

**KIOVIG®** Use Glucose 5% intravenous infusion if dilution prior to infusion is required.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Antibody titres can vary widely between normal immunoglobulin preparations from different manufacturers—formulations are **not interchangeable**; patients should be maintained on the same formulation throughout long-term treatment to avoid adverse effects.

- ▶ **With intramuscular use** Available from the Centre for Infections and other regional Public Health England offices (for contacts and control of outbreaks only).

- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Care must be taken to store all immunological products under the conditions recommended in the product literature, otherwise the preparation may become ineffective. **Refrigerated storage** is usually necessary; many immunoglobulins need to be stored at 2–8°C and not allowed to freeze. Immunoglobulins should be protected from light. Opened multidose vials must be used within the period recommended in the product literature.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Solution for injection**

**ELECTROLYTES:** May contain Sodium

- ▶ **Hizentra** (CSL Behring UK Ltd)

**Normal immunoglobulin human 200 mg per 1 ml** Hizentra 1g/5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £54.00

Hizentra 2g/10ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £108.00

- ▶ **Subgam** (Bio Products Laboratory Ltd)

**Normal immunoglobulin human 150 mg per 1 ml** Subgam

750mg/5ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £37.50

Subgam 1.5g/10ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £75.00

##### **Solution for infusion**

**EXCIPIENTS:** May contain Glucose, maltose, sorbitol, sucrose

- ▶ **(Normal immunoglobulin non-proprietary)** ▼

**Normal immunoglobulin human 100 mg per 1 ml** Normal immunoglobulin human 5g/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £

Normal immunoglobulin human 2.5g/25ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £

Normal immunoglobulin human 20g/200ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £

Normal immunoglobulin human 10g/100ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £

Normal immunoglobulin human 30g/300ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £

- ▶ **Flebogammadif** (Grifols UK Ltd)

**Normal immunoglobulin human 50 mg per 1 ml** Flebogamma DIF 10g/200ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £510.00

Flebogamma DIF 2.5g/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £127.50

Flebogamma DIF 5g/100ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £255.00

Flebogamma DIF 500mg/10ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £30.00

Flebogamma DIF 20g/400ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,020.00

- ▶ **Gammaplex** (Bio Products Laboratory Ltd)

**Normal immunoglobulin human 50 mg per 1 ml** Gammaplex 10g/200ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £418.00 (Hospital only)

Gammaplex 5g/100ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £209.00 (Hospital only)

Gammaplex 20g/400ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £836.00 (Hospital only)

- ▶ **Gamunex** (Grifols UK Ltd)

**Normal immunoglobulin human 100 mg per 1 ml** Gamunex 10% 1g/10ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £42.50

Gamunex 10% 10g/100ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £425.00

Gamunex 10% 20g/200ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £850.00

Gamunex 10% 5g/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £212.50

- ▶ **Hizentra** (CSL Behring UK Ltd)

**Normal immunoglobulin human 200 mg per 1 ml** Hizentra 2g/10ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £108.00

Hizentra 1g/5ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £54.00

Hizentra 4g/20ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £216.00

- ▶ **Kiovig** (Baxalta UK Ltd)

**Normal immunoglobulin human 100 mg per 1 ml** Kiovig 5g/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £245.00

Kiovig 20g/200ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £980.00

Kiovig 1g/100ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £490.00

Kiovig 30g/300ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,470.00

Kiovig 2.5g/25ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £122.50

Kiovig 1g/10ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £49.00

- ▶ **Octagam** (Octapharma Ltd)

**Normal immunoglobulin human 50 mg per 1 ml** Octagam 5% 10g/200ml solution for infusion bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £480.00 (Hospital only)

Octagam 5% 5g/100ml solution for infusion bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £240.00 (Hospital only)

Octagam 5% 2.5g/50ml solution for infusion bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £120.00 (Hospital only)

**Normal immunoglobulin human 100 mg per 1 ml** Octagam 10% 10g/100ml solution for infusion bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £690.00 (Hospital only)

Octagam 10% 20g/200ml solution for infusion bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £1,380.00 (Hospital only)  
 Octagam 10% 5g/50ml solution for infusion bottles | 1 bottle [PoM] £345.00 (Hospital only)  
 Octagam 10% 2g/20ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £138.00 (Hospital only)

► **Privigen** (CSL Behring UK Ltd)

Normal immunoglobulin human 100 mg per 1 ml Privigen 5g/50ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £270.00  
 Privigen 20g/200ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £1,080.00  
 Privigen 10g/100ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £540.00  
 Privigen 2.5g/25ml solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £135.00

## Rabies immunoglobulin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Post-exposure prophylaxis against rabies infection

- BY LOCAL INFILTRATION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child: 20 units/kg, dose administered by infiltration in and around the cleansed wound; if the wound not visible or healed or if infiltration of whole volume not possible, give remainder by intramuscular injection into anterolateral thigh (remote from vaccination site)

● **CAUTIONS** IgA deficiency · interference with live virus vaccines

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare** Arthralgia · chills · fatigue · fever · headache · hypersensitivity · hypotension · influenza like illness · malaise · nausea · skin reactions · tachycardia · vomiting

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The potency of individual batches of rabies immunoglobulin from the manufacturer may vary; potency may also be described differently by different manufacturers. It is therefore critical to know the potency of the batch to be used and the weight of the patient in order to calculate the specific volume required to provide the necessary dose.

Available from Specialist and Reference Microbiology Division, Public Health England (also from BPL).

● **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Care must be taken to store all immunological products under the conditions recommended in the product literature, otherwise the preparation may become ineffective. **Refrigerated storage** is usually necessary; many immunoglobulins need to be stored at 2–8°C and not allowed to freeze. Immunoglobulins should be protected from light. Opened multidose vials must be used within the period recommended in the product literature.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Rabies immunoglobulin (Non-proprietary)

Rabies immunoglobulin human 500 unit Rabies immunoglobulin human 500unit solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £600.00

## Tetanus immunoglobulin

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Post-exposure prophylaxis

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child: Initially 250 units, then increased to 500 units, dose is only increased if more than 24 hours have elapsed or there is risk of heavy contamination or following burns

#### Treatment of tetanus infection

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child: 150 units/kg, dose may be given over multiple sites

● **CAUTIONS** IgA deficiency · interference with live virus vaccines

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare** Anaphylactic reaction · hypotension
- **Frequency not known** Arthralgia · chest pain · dizziness · dyspnoea · face oedema · oral disorders · tremor

● **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Care must be taken to store all immunological products under the conditions recommended in the product literature, otherwise the preparation may become ineffective. **Refrigerated storage** is usually necessary; many immunoglobulins need to be stored at 2–8°C and not allowed to freeze. Immunoglobulins should be protected from light. Opened multidose vials must be used within the period recommended in the product literature.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Tetanus immunoglobulin (Non-proprietary)

Tetanus immunoglobulin human 250 unit Tetanus immunoglobulin human 250unit solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £125.00

## Varicella-zoster immunoglobulin

### (Antivaricella-zoster Immunoglobulin)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Prophylaxis against varicella infection

- BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Neonate: 250 mg, to be administered as soon as possible—not later than 10 days after exposure, second dose to be given if further exposure occurs more than 3 weeks after first dose, no evidence that effective in severe disease.

- Child 1 month–5 years: 250 mg, to be administered as soon as possible—not later than 10 days after exposure, second dose to be given if further exposure occurs more than 3 weeks after first dose, no evidence that effective in severe disease
- Child 6–10 years: 500 mg, to be administered as soon as possible—not later than 10 days after exposure, second dose to be given if further exposure occurs more than 3 weeks after first dose, no evidence that effective in severe disease
- Child 11–14 years: 750 mg, to be administered as soon as possible—not later than 10 days after exposure, second dose to be given if further exposure occurs more than 3 weeks after first dose, no evidence that effective in severe disease
- Child 15–17 years: 1 g, to be administered as soon as possible—not later than 10 days after exposure, second dose to be given if further exposure occurs more than 3 weeks after first dose, no evidence that effective in severe disease

● **CAUTIONS** IgA deficiency · interference with live virus vaccines

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Arthralgia · chills · fever · headache · hypersensitivity · hypotension · malaise · nausea · skin reactions · tachycardia · vomiting

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Normal immunoglobulin for intravenous use may be used in those unable to receive intramuscular injections.

● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Available from selected Public Health England and NHS laboratories (also from BPL).

● **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Care must be taken to store all immunological products under the conditions

recommended in the product literature, otherwise the preparation may become ineffective. **Refrigerated storage** is usually necessary; many immunoglobulins need to be stored at 2–8°C and not allowed to freeze. Immunoglobulins should be protected from light. Opened multidose vials must be used within the period recommended in the product literature.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Solution for injection**

▶ **Varicella-Zoster** (Bio Products Laboratory Ltd)

**Varicella-Zoster immunoglobulin human 250 mg** Varicella-Zoster immunoglobulin human 250mg solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £450.00

## 2 Post-exposure prophylaxis

### IMMUNE SERA AND IMMUNOGLOBULINS > ANTITOXINS

#### **Botulism antitoxin**

- **DRUG ACTION** A preparation containing the specific antitoxic globulins that have the power of neutralising the toxins formed by types A, B, and E of *Clostridium botulinum*.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Post exposure prophylaxis of botulism**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Hypersensitivity

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** It is essential to read the contra-indications, warnings, and details of sensitivity tests on the package insert. Prior to treatment checks should be made regarding previous administration of any antitoxin and history of any allergic condition, e.g. asthma, hay fever, etc.

- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** All patients should be tested for sensitivity (diluting the antitoxin if history of allergy).
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Available from local designated centres, for details see TOXBASE (requires registration) [www.toxbase.org](http://www.toxbase.org). For supplies outside working hours apply to other designated centres or to the Public Health England Colindale duty doctor (Tel (020) 8200 6868). For major incidents, obtain supplies from the local blood bank.

The BP title Botulinum Antitoxin is not used because the preparation currently in use may have a different specification.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

No licensed medicines listed.

#### **Diphtheria antitoxin**

(Dip/Ser)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Passive immunisation in suspected cases of diphtheria**

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: Dose should be given without waiting for bacteriological confirmation (consult product literature)

#### ● CAUTIONS

##### **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ **Hypersensitivity** Hypersensitivity is common after administration; resuscitation facilities should be available. Diphtheria antitoxin is no longer used for prophylaxis because of the risk of hypersensitivity; unimmunised contacts should be promptly investigated and given antibacterial prophylaxis and vaccine.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

Common or very common Hypersensitivity

- ▶ **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Diphtheria antitoxin is derived from horse serum and reactions are common; tests for hypersensitivity should be carried out before use.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Available from Centre for Infections (Tel (020) 8200 6868) or in Northern Ireland from Public Health Laboratory, Belfast City Hospital (Tel (028) 9032 9241).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Solution for injection**

▶ **Diphtheria antitoxin (Non-proprietary)**

**Diphtheria antitoxin 1000 unit per 1 ml** Antidiphtheria serum 10,000units/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 1 ampoule [PoM] £

## 3 Tuberculosis diagnostic test

### DIAGNOSTIC AGENTS

#### **Tuberculin purified protein derivative (Tuberculin PPD)**

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Mantoux test**

- ▶ BY INTRADERMAL INJECTION
- ▶ Child: 2 units for one dose

**Mantoux test (if first test is negative and a further test is considered appropriate)**

- ▶ BY INTRADERMAL INJECTION
- ▶ Child: 10 units for 1 dose

##### **DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- ▶ 2 units is equivalent to 0.1 mL of 20 units/mL strength.
- ▶ 10 units is equivalent to 0.1 mL of 100 units/mL strength.

#### ● CAUTIONS

##### **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ **Mantoux test** Response to tuberculin may be suppressed by viral infection, sarcoidosis, corticosteroid therapy, or immunosuppression due to disease or treatment and the MMR vaccine. If a tuberculin skin test has already been initiated, then the MMR should be delayed until the skin test has been read unless protection against measles is required urgently. If a child has had a recent MMR, and requires a tuberculin test, then a 4 week interval should be observed. Apart from tuberculin and MMR, all other live vaccines can be administered at any time before or after tuberculin.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Available from ImmForm (SSI brand).

The strength of tuberculin PPD in currently available products may be different to the strengths of products used previously for the Mantoux test; care is required to select the correct strength.



## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

### Solution for injection

#### ▶ Tuberculin purified protein derivative (Non-proprietary)

**Tuberculin purified protein derivative 20 tuberculin unit per 1 ml** Tuberculin PPD RT 23 SSi 20 tuberculin units/ml solution for injection 1.5ml vials | 1 vial [S]

**Tuberculin purified protein derivative 100 tuberculin unit per 1 ml** Tuberculin PPD RT 23 SSi 100 tuberculin units/ml solution for injection 1.5ml vials | 1 vial [S]

## 4 Vaccination

### Vaccines

16-Aug-2017

#### Active immunity

Active immunity can be acquired by natural disease or by vaccination. **Vaccines** stimulate production of antibodies and other components of the immune mechanism; they consist of either:

- a *live attenuated* form of a virus (e.g. measles, mumps and rubella vaccine) or bacteria (e.g. BCG vaccine), or
- *inactivated* preparations of the virus (e.g. influenza vaccine) or bacteria, or
- *detoxified exotoxins* produced by a micro-organism (e.g. tetanus vaccine), or
- *extracts* of a micro-organism, which may be derived from the organism (e.g. pneumococcal vaccine) or produced by recombinant DNA technology (e.g. hepatitis B vaccine).

**Live attenuated vaccines** usually produce a durable immunity, but not always as long-lasting as that resulting from natural infection.

**Inactivated vaccines** may require a primary series of injections of vaccine to produce an adequate antibody response, and in most cases booster (reinforcing) injections are required; the duration of immunity varies from months to many years. Some inactivated vaccines are adsorbed onto an adjuvant (such as aluminium hydroxide) to enhance the antibody response.

Advice reflects that in the handbook *Immunisation against Infectious Disease* (2013), which in turn reflects the guidance of the Joint Committee on Vaccination and Immunisation (JCVI).

Chapters from the handbook (including updates since 2013) are available at [www.gov.uk/government/collections/immunisation-against-infectious-disease-the-green-book](http://www.gov.uk/government/collections/immunisation-against-infectious-disease-the-green-book).

The advice also incorporates changes announced by the Chief Medical Officer and Health Department Updates.

#### Children with unknown or incomplete immunisation history

For children born in the UK who present with an inadequate or unknown immunisation history, investigation into immunisations received should be carried out. Outstanding doses should be administered where the routine childhood immunisation schedule has not been completed.

For advice on the immunisation of children coming to the UK, consult the handbook *Immunisation against Infectious Disease* (2006) (available at [www.dh.gov.uk](http://www.dh.gov.uk)).

#### Immunisation schedule

Vaccines for the childhood immunisation schedule should be obtained from **local health organisations** or from **ImmForm** ([www.immform.dh.gov.uk](http://www.immform.dh.gov.uk))—not to be prescribed on FP10 (HS21 in Northern Ireland; GP10 in Scotland; WP10 in Wales).

For the most up to date immunisation schedule consult 'The complete routine immunisation schedule', available at [www.gov.uk](http://www.gov.uk).

#### Preterm birth

Babies born preterm should receive all routine immunisations based on their actual date of birth. The risk of apnoea following vaccination is increased in preterm babies, particularly in those born at or before 28 weeks postmenstrual age. If babies at risk of apnoea are in hospital at the time of their first immunisation, they should be monitored for 48–72 hours after immunisation. If a baby develops apnoea, bradycardia, or desaturation after the first immunisation, the second immunisation should also be given in hospital with similar monitoring. Seroconversion may be unreliable in babies born earlier than 28 weeks' gestation or in babies treated with corticosteroids for chronic lung disease; consideration should be given to testing for antibodies against *Haemophilus influenzae* type b, meningococcal C, and hepatitis B after primary immunisation.

#### Vaccines and HIV infection

HIV-positive children with or without symptoms can receive the following live vaccines:

- MMR (but avoid if immunity significantly impaired), varicella-zoster vaccine against chickenpox (but avoid if immunity significantly impaired—consult product literature; use of normal immunoglobulin should be considered after exposure to measles and varicella-zoster immunoglobulin considered after exposure to chickenpox or herpes zoster), rotavirus;

and the following inactivated vaccines:

- anthrax, cholera (oral), diphtheria, *haemophilus influenzae* type b, hepatitis A, hepatitis B, human papillomavirus, influenza (injection), meningococcal, pertussis, pneumococcal, poliomyelitis (inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine is now used instead of oral poliomyelitis vaccine for routine immunisation of children), rabies, tetanus, tick-borne encephalitis, typhoid (injection).

HIV-positive children should **not** receive:

- BCG, influenza nasal spray (unless stable HIV infection and receiving antiretroviral therapy), typhoid (oral), yellow fever (if yellow fever risk is unavoidable, specialist advice should be sought).

The above advice differs from that for other immunocompromised patients; *Immunisation of HIV infected Children* issued by Children's HIV Association (CHIVA) are available at [www.chiva.org.uk](http://www.chiva.org.uk).

#### Vaccines and asplenia

The following vaccines are recommended for asplenic patients, those with splenic dysfunction or complement disorders, depending on the age at which their condition is diagnosed:

- *Haemophilus influenzae* type b with meningococcal group C vaccine p. 791;
- Influenza vaccine p. 798;
- Meningococcal groups A with C and W135 and Y vaccine p. 792 and meningococcal group B vaccine (rDNA, component, adsorbed) p. 792;
- pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine.

*Children first diagnosed under 1 year of age* should be vaccinated according to the Immunisation Schedule. Additionally, one dose of meningococcal groups A with C and W135 and Y vaccine should be given during infancy followed by a second dose at least one month apart. Two months following the routine 12 month booster vaccines, give a dose of meningococcal groups A with C and W135 and Y vaccine and an additional dose of 13-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine. An additional dose of *haemophilus influenzae* type b with meningococcal group C vaccine and

Routine immunisation schedule	
When to immunise (for preterm infants-see note above)	Vaccine given and dose schedule (for details of dose, see under individual vaccines)
Neonates at risk only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Bacillus Calmette-Guérin vaccine p. 790 (at birth, see <i>BCG vaccine</i>, below)</li> <li>▶ Hepatitis B vaccine p. 796 (at birth, see <i>Hepatitis B vaccine</i>, below)</li> </ul>
2 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Diphtheria with tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis B, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine p. 790 (<i>Infanrix hexa</i><sup>®</sup>). First dose</li> <li>▶ Meningococcal group B vaccine (rDNA, component, adsorbed) p. 792 First dose</li> <li>▶ Pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) p. 793 First dose</li> <li>▶ Rotavirus vaccine p. 801 First dose</li> </ul>
3 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Diphtheria with tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis B, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine p. 790 (<i>Infanrix hexa</i><sup>®</sup>). Second dose</li> <li>▶ Rotavirus vaccine p. 801 Second dose</li> </ul>
4 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Diphtheria with tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis B, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine p. 790 (<i>Infanrix hexa</i><sup>®</sup>). Third dose</li> <li>▶ Meningococcal group B vaccine (rDNA, component, adsorbed) p. 792 Second dose</li> <li>▶ Pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) p. 793 Second dose</li> </ul>
12–13 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live p. 799 First dose</li> <li>▶ Meningococcal group B vaccine (rDNA, component, adsorbed) p. 792 Single booster dose</li> <li>▶ Pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) p. 793 Single booster dose</li> <li>▶ Haemophilus influenzae type b with meningococcal group C vaccine p. 791 Single booster dose</li> </ul>
2–8 years (including children in school years 1, 2, 3 and 4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Influenza vaccine p. 798 Each year from September. <b>Note:</b> Flu nasal spray is recommended (<i>Fluenz Tetra</i><sup>®</sup>). If contra-indicated and child is in clinical risk group, use inactivated flu vaccine</li> </ul>
Between 3 years and 4 months, and 5 years	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Diphtheria with pertussis, poliomyelitis vaccine and tetanus p. 789 Single booster dose. <b>Note:</b> Preferably allow interval of at least 3 years after completing primary course</li> <li>▶ Measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live p. 799 Second dose</li> </ul>
11–14 years (females only). First dose of HPV vaccine will be offered to females aged 12–13 years of age in England, Wales, and Northern Ireland, and 11–13 years of age in Scotland.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Human papillomavirus vaccines p. 797 Two doses; second dose 6–24 months after first dose. If a 3-dose course of HPV vaccine has been started under the 2013/2014 programme, where possible, the course should be completed (2 doses less than 6 months apart does not provide long-term protection). The two human papillomavirus vaccines are not interchangeable and, ideally, one vaccine product should be used for the entire course. However, since 2012, only <i>Gardasil</i><sup>®</sup> is offered as part of the national immunisation programme; for those females who started the schedule with <i>Cervarix</i><sup>®</sup> under the national immunisation programme, but did not complete the vaccination course, the course can be completed with <i>Gardasil</i><sup>®</sup>.</li> </ul>
13–15 years	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Meningococcal groups A with C and W135 and Y vaccine p. 792 Single booster dose</li> </ul>
13–18 years	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Diphtheria with poliomyelitis and tetanus vaccine p. 790 Single booster dose. <b>Note:</b> Can be given at the same time as the booster dose of meningococcal group A with C and W135 and Y vaccine at 13–15 years of age</li> </ul>
During adult life, women of child-bearing age susceptible to rubella	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live p. 799 Women of child-bearing age who have not received 2 doses of a rubella-containing vaccine or who do not have a positive antibody test for rubella should be offered rubella immunisation (using the MMR vaccine)—exclude pregnancy before immunisation.</li> </ul>
Pregnant females	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Acellular pertussis-containing vaccine administered as diphtheria with pertussis, poliomyelitis vaccine and tetanus p. 789 (<i>Boostrix-IPV</i><sup>®</sup>) 1 dose from the 16th week of pregnancy, preferably after the fetal anomaly scan (weeks 18–20)</li> <li>▶ Influenza vaccine (inactivated) p. 798, Single dose administered from September, regardless of the stage of pregnancy</li> </ul>

23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine should be given after the second birthday. The influenza vaccine should be administered annually in children aged 6 months or older.

Children first diagnosed between 1 and 2 years of age should be vaccinated according to the Immunisation Schedule, including the 12 month boosters. Two months after the routine 12 month booster vaccines, give a dose of meningococcal groups A with C and W135 and Y vaccine and an additional dose of 13-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine. An additional dose of haemophilus influenzae type b with meningococcal group C vaccine and 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine should be given after the second birthday. The influenza vaccine should be administered annually.

Children first diagnosed over 2 years of age should be vaccinated according to the Immunisation schedule, including the 12 month boosters. The child should receive one additional booster dose of haemophilus influenzae type b with meningococcal group C vaccine along with the 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine, followed by one dose of meningococcal groups A with C and W135 and Y vaccine after 2 months. The influenza vaccine should be administered annually.

### Passive immunity

Immunity with immediate protection against certain infective organisms can be obtained by injecting preparations made from the plasma of immune individuals with adequate levels of antibody to the disease for which

protection is sought (see under Immunoglobulins). The duration of this passive immunity varies according to the dose and the type of immunoglobulin. Passive immunity may last only a few weeks; when necessary, passive immunisation can be repeated.

Antibodies of human origin are usually termed *immunoglobulins*. The term *antisera* is applied to material prepared in animals. Because of serum sickness and other allergic-type reactions that may follow injections of antisera, this therapy has been replaced whenever possible by the use of immunoglobulins. Reactions are theoretically possible after injection of human immunoglobulins, but reports of such reactions are very rare.

### Vaccines and antisera availability

Anthrax vaccine and yellow fever vaccine, live p. 802, botulism antitoxin p. 776, diphtheria antitoxin p. 776, and snake and spider venom antitoxins are available from local designated holding centres.

For antivenom, see Emergency Treatment of Poisoning.

Enquiries for vaccines not available commercially can also be made to:

Vaccines and Countermeasures Response Department  
Public Health England  
Wellington House  
133–155 Waterloo Road  
London  
SE1 8UG  
vaccinesupply@phe.gov.uk

In Scotland information about availability of vaccines can be obtained from a Specialist in Pharmaceutical Public Health.

In Wales enquiries for vaccines not available commercially should be directed to:

Welsh Medicines Information Centre  
University Hospital of Wales  
Cardiff  
CF14 4XW  
(029) 2074 2979

In Northern Ireland:

Pharmacy and Medicines Management Centre  
Northern Health and Social Care Trust  
Beech House  
Antrim Hospital Site  
Bush Road  
Antrim  
BT41 2RL  
rphs.admin@northerntrust.hscni.net

For further details of availability, see under individual vaccines.

### Anthrax vaccine

Anthrax vaccine is rarely required for children.

### BCG vaccine

BCG (Bacillus Calmette–Guérin vaccine p. 790) is a live attenuated strain derived from *Mycobacterium bovis* which stimulates the development of hypersensitivity to *M. tuberculosis*. Bacillus Calmette–Guérin vaccine should be given intradermally by operators skilled in the technique.

The expected reaction to successful Bacillus Calmette–Guérin vaccine is induration at the site of injection followed by a local lesion which starts as a papule 2 or more weeks after vaccination; the lesion may ulcerate then subside over several weeks or months, leaving a small flat scar. A dry dressing may be used if the ulcer discharges, but air should not be excluded.

All children of 6 years and over being considered for Bacillus Calmette–Guérin vaccine must first be given a skin test for hypersensitivity to tuberculin (see under Diagnostic agents). A skin test is not necessary for a child under 6 years, provided that the child has not stayed for

longer than 3 months in a country with an incidence of tuberculosis greater than 40 per 100 000 (a list of countries or primary care trusts where the incidence of tuberculosis is greater than 40 cases per 100 000 is available at [www.gov.uk/phe](http://www.gov.uk/phe)), the child has not had contact with a person with tuberculosis, and there is no family history of tuberculosis within the last 5 years.

Bacillus Calmette–Guérin vaccine is recommended for the following groups of children if BCG immunisation has not previously been carried out and they are negative for tuberculin hypersensitivity:

- neonates with a family history of tuberculosis in the last 5 years;
- all neonates and infants (0–12 months) born in areas where the incidence of tuberculosis is greater than 40 per 100 000;
- neonates, infants, and children under 16 years with a parent or grandparent born in a country with an incidence of tuberculosis greater than 40 per 100 000;
- new immigrants aged under 16 years who were born in, or lived for more than 3 months in a country with an incidence of tuberculosis greater than 40 per 100 000;
- new immigrants aged 16–18 years from Sub-Saharan Africa or a country with an incidence of tuberculosis greater than 500 per 100 000;
- contacts of those with active respiratory tuberculosis;
- children under 16 years intending to live with local people for more than 3 months in a country with an incidence of tuberculosis greater than 40 per 100 000.

Bacillus Calmette–Guérin vaccine can be given simultaneously with another live vaccine, but if they are not given at the same time, an interval of 4 weeks should normally be allowed between them. When Bacillus Calmette–Guérin vaccine is given to infants, there is no need to delay routine primary immunisations. No further vaccination should be given in the arm used for BCG vaccination for at least 3 months because of the risk of regional lymphadenitis.

For advice on chemoprophylaxis against tuberculosis; for treatment of infection following vaccination, seek expert advice.

### Tuberculosis Diagnostic Agents

The *Mantoux* test is recommended for tuberculin skin testing, but no licensed preparation is currently available. Guidance for healthcare professionals is available at [www.dh.gov.uk/immunisation](http://www.dh.gov.uk/immunisation).

In the Mantoux test, the diagnostic dose is administered by intradermal injection of Tuberculin Purified Protein Derivative (PPD).

The *Heaf* test (involving the use of multiple-puncture apparatus) is no longer available.

Two interferon gamma release assay (IGRA) tests are also available as an aid in the diagnosis of tuberculosis infection: *QuantiFERON® TB Gold* and *T-SPOT® TB*. Both tests measure T-cell mediated immune response to synthetic antigens. For further information on the use of interferon gamma release assay tests for tuberculosis, see [www.gov.uk/phe](http://www.gov.uk/phe).

### Botulism antitoxin

A polyvalent botulism antitoxin p. 776 is available for the post-exposure prophylaxis of botulism and for the treatment of persons thought to be suffering from botulism. It specifically neutralises the toxins produced by *Clostridium botulinum* types A, B, and E. It is not effective against infantile botulism as the toxin (type A) is seldom, if ever, found in the blood in this type of infection.

Hypersensitivity reactions are a problem. It is essential to read the contra-indications, warnings, and details of sensitivity tests on the package insert. Prior to treatment checks should be made regarding previous administration of any antitoxin and history of any allergic condition, e.g.

asthma, hay fever, etc. All patients should be tested for sensitivity (diluting the antitoxin if history of allergy).

### Cholera vaccine

Cholera vaccine (oral) p. 791 contains inactivated Inaba (including El-Tor biotype) and Ogawa strains of *Vibrio cholerae*, serotype O1 together with recombinant B-subunit of the cholera toxin produced in Inaba strains of *V. cholerae*, serotype O1.

Oral cholera vaccine is licensed for travellers to endemic or epidemic areas on the basis of current recommendations. Immunisation should be completed at least 1 week before potential exposure. However, there is no requirement for cholera vaccination for international travel.

Immunisation with cholera vaccine does not provide complete protection and all travellers to a country where cholera exists should be warned that scrupulous attention to food, water, and personal hygiene is **essential**.

*Injectable cholera vaccine* provides unreliable protection and is no longer available in the UK.

### Diphtheria vaccine

Diphtheria vaccines are prepared from the toxin of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* and adsorption on aluminium hydroxide or aluminium phosphate improves antigenicity. The vaccine stimulates the production of the protective antitoxin. The quantity of diphtheria toxoid in a preparation determines whether the vaccine is defined as 'high dose' or 'low dose'. Vaccines containing the higher dose of diphtheria toxoid are used for primary immunisation of children under 10 years of age. Vaccines containing the lower dose of diphtheria toxoid are used for primary immunisation in adults and children over 10 years. Single-antigen diphtheria vaccine is not available and adsorbed diphtheria vaccine is given as a combination product containing other vaccines.

For primary immunisation of children aged between 2 months and 10 years vaccination is recommended usually in the form of 3 doses (separated by 1-month intervals) of diphtheria with tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis B, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine p. 790 (*Infanrix hexa*<sup>®</sup>) (see Immunisation schedule). In unimmunised individuals aged over 10 years the primary course comprises of 3 doses of **adsorbed diphtheria** [low dose], **tetanus and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine**.

A booster dose should be given 3 years after the primary course (this interval can be reduced to a minimum of 1 year if the primary course was delayed). Children under 10 years should receive **either adsorbed diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis (acellular, component) and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine or adsorbed diphtheria** [low dose], **tetanus, pertussis (acellular, component) and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine**. Individuals aged over 10 years should receive **adsorbed diphtheria** [low dose], **tetanus, and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine**.

A second booster dose, of adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine, should be given 10 years after the previous booster dose (this interval can be reduced to a minimum of 5 years if previous doses were delayed). For children who have been vaccinated following a tetanus-prone wound, see tetanus vaccines.

### Travel

Those intending to travel to areas with a risk of diphtheria infection should be fully immunised according to the UK schedule. If more than 10 years have lapsed since completion of the UK schedule, a dose of **adsorbed diphtheria** [low dose], **tetanus and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine** should be administered.

### Contacts

Advice on the management of cases of diphtheria, carriers, contacts and outbreaks must be sought from health protection units. The immunisation history of infected children and their contacts should be determined; those who

have been incompletely immunised should complete their immunisation and fully immunised individuals should receive a reinforcing dose. Also see advice on antibacterial treatment to prevent a secondary case of diphtheria in a non-immune child.

### Haemophilus influenzae type b conjugate vaccine

**Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) vaccine** is made from capsular polysaccharide; it is conjugated with a protein such as tetanus toxoid to increase immunogenicity, especially in young children. *Haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine* immunisation is given in combination with diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis B and poliomyelitis vaccine (*Infanrix hexa*<sup>®</sup>), as a component of the primary course of childhood immunisation (see Immunisation schedule). For infants under 1 year, the course consists of 3 doses of a vaccine containing *Haemophilus influenzae type b* component with an interval of 1 month between doses. A booster dose of haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine (combined with meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine) should be given at 12–13 months of age.

Children 1–10 years who have not been immunised against *Haemophilus influenzae type b* need to receive only 1 dose of *Haemophilus influenzae type b* vaccine (combined with meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine). However, if a primary course of immunisation has not been completed, children born before August 2017 should be given 3 doses of the combined vaccine they were started on. The risk of infection falls sharply in older children and the vaccine is not normally required for children over 10 years.

*Haemophilus influenzae type b* vaccine may be given to those over 10 years who are considered to be at increased risk of invasive *H. influenzae type b* disease (such as those with sickle-cell disease or complement deficiency, or those receiving treatment for malignancy).

### Invasive Haemophilus influenzae type b disease

After recovery from infection, unimmunised and partially immunised index cases under 10 years of age should complete their age-specific course of immunisation. Previously vaccinated cases under 10 years of age should be given an additional dose of haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine (combined with meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine) if Hib antibody concentrations are low or if it is not possible to measure antibody concentrations. Index cases of any age with asplenia or splenic dysfunction should complete their immunisation according to the recommendations below; fully vaccinated cases with asplenia or splenic dysfunction should be given an additional dose of haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine (combined with meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine) if they received their previous dose over 1 year ago.

Also see use of rifampicin p. 364 in the prevention of secondary cases of *Haemophilus influenzae type b* disease.

### Hepatitis A vaccine

Hepatitis A vaccine p. 795 is prepared from formaldehyde-inactivated hepatitis A virus grown in human diploid cells. Immunisation is recommended for:

- residents of homes for those with severe learning difficulties;
- children with haemophilia or other conditions treated with plasma-derived clotting factors;
- children with severe liver disease;
- children travelling to high-risk areas;
- adolescents who are at risk due to their sexual behaviour;
- parenteral drug abusers.

Immunisation should be considered for:

- children with chronic liver disease including chronic hepatitis B or chronic hepatitis C;
- prevention of secondary cases in close contacts of confirmed cases of hepatitis A, within 14 days of exposure

to the primary case (within 8 weeks of exposure to the primary case where there is more than 1 contact in the household).

A booster dose of hepatitis A vaccine is usually given 6–12 months after the initial dose. A second booster dose can be given 20 years after the previous booster dose to those who continue to be at risk. Specialist advice should be sought on re-immunisation of immunocompromised individuals.

In children under 16 years, a single dose of the combined vaccine *Ambirix*® can be used to provide rapid protection against hepatitis A. Public Health England recommends the use of intramuscular normal immunoglobulin p. 773 in addition to hepatitis A vaccine for prevention of infection in close contacts (of confirmed cases of hepatitis A) who have chronic liver disease or HIV infection, or who are immunosuppressed. For further guidance, see Immunoglobulins p. 770.

Post-exposure prophylaxis is not required for healthy children under 1 year of age, so long as all those involved in nappy changing are vaccinated against hepatitis A. However, children 2–12 months of age can be given a dose of hepatitis A vaccine if it is not possible to vaccinate their carers, or if the child becomes a source of infection to others [unlicensed use]; in these cases, if the child goes on to require long-term protection against hepatitis A after the first birthday, the full course of 2 doses should be given.

### Hepatitis B vaccine

Hepatitis B vaccine p. 796 contains inactivated hepatitis B virus surface antigen (HBsAg) adsorbed onto an adjuvant. It is made biosynthetically using recombinant DNA technology.

From August 2017, vaccination against hepatitis B is recommended as part of the **routine immunisation schedule**. Primary immunisation (see *Routine immunisation schedule*) requires 3 doses, given at intervals of 1 month from the age of 2 months, to be given as part of the combined diphtheria with tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis B, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine p. 790 (*Infanrix hexa*®).

As part of the **selective neonatal immunisation programme**, immunisation is recommended for neonates whose mothers have had acute hepatitis B during pregnancy or are positive for hepatitis B surface antigen (regardless of e-antigen markers). Hepatitis B vaccination is started immediately after birth with a dose of the monovalent hepatitis B vaccine (no later than 24 hours after delivery), followed by a second dose at 4 weeks; the routine immunisation combination vaccine (*Infanrix hexa*®) at weeks 8, 12 and 16; and a further dose of the monovalent hepatitis B vaccine at one year of age.

Neonates born to highly infectious mothers should also receive hepatitis B immunoglobulin p. 773 at the same time as the first dose of monovalent hepatitis B vaccine, but administered at a different site—more detailed guidance is given in the handbook *Immunisation against Infectious Disease* [www.gov.uk/government/publications/hepatitis-b-the-green-book-chapter-18](http://www.gov.uk/government/publications/hepatitis-b-the-green-book-chapter-18).

Following **significant exposure to hepatitis B** (e.g. through needle-stick injury or unprotected sex) and for **pre-exposure prophylaxis in high-risk groups**, 'an accelerated schedule' using the single, monovalent hepatitis B vaccine is recommended immediately, with the second dose given 1 month after the initial dose, and the third dose given 2 months after the initial dose. For those at continued high risk following exposure, a fourth dose should be given 12 months after the first dose. More detailed guidance is given in the handbook *Immunisation against Infectious Disease*.

Specific hepatitis B immunoglobulin can also be indicated for use with the vaccine in those accidentally inoculated and in neonates at special risk of infection. If hepatitis B

immunoglobulin is indicated, it should be given as soon as possible, ideally at the same time or within 24 hours of the first dose of vaccine, but not after seven days have elapsed since exposure. See also *hepatitis B immunoglobulin* in Immunoglobulins p. 770.

In the UK, groups at high-risk of hepatitis B include:

- parenteral drug misusers, their sexual partners, and household contacts; other drug misusers who are likely to 'progress' to injecting;
- adolescents who are at risk from their sexual behaviour;
- close family contacts of an individual with chronic hepatitis B infection;
- children with haemophilia, those receiving regular blood transfusions or blood products, and carers responsible for the administration of such products;
- children with chronic renal failure including those on haemodialysis. Children receiving haemodialysis should be monitored for antibodies annually and re-immunised if necessary. Home carers (of dialysis patients) should be vaccinated;
- children with chronic liver disease
- patients of day-care or residential accommodation for those with severe learning difficulties;
- children in custodial institutions;
- children travelling to areas of high or intermediate prevalence who are at increased risk or who plan to remain there for lengthy periods;
- families adopting children from countries with a high or intermediate prevalence of hepatitis B;
- foster carers and their families.

Following a primary course of immunisation, most children do not require a reinforcing dose of a hepatitis B-containing vaccine. A single booster dose should be offered to healthcare workers around five years after primary immunisation, to patients on renal dialysis with anti-HBs levels below 10mIU/mL, and at the time of a subsequent significant exposure.

Immunisation does not eliminate the need for commonsense precautions for avoiding the risk of infection from known carriers by the routes of infection which have been clearly established, consult *Guidance for Clinical Health Care Workers: Protection against Infection with Blood-borne Viruses* (available at [www.dh.gov.uk](http://www.dh.gov.uk)). Accidental inoculation of hepatitis B virus-infected blood into a wound, incision, needle-prick, or abrasion may lead to infection, whereas it is unlikely that indirect exposure to a carrier will do so.

A combined hepatitis A and B vaccine p. 794 is also available.

### Human papillomavirus vaccine

Human papillomavirus vaccine is available as a bivalent vaccine (*Cervarix*®) or a quadrivalent vaccine (*Gardasil*®). Since 2012, only *Gardasil*® is offered as part of the national immunisation programme. *Cervarix*® is licensed for use in females for the prevention of cervical cancer and other pre-cancerous lesions caused by human papillomavirus types 16 and 18. *Gardasil*® is licensed for use in females for the prevention of cervical and anal cancers, genital warts and pre-cancerous genital (cervical, vulvar, and vaginal) and anal lesions caused by human papillomavirus types 6, 11, 16, and 18. The vaccines may also provide limited protection against disease caused by other types of human papillomavirus. The two vaccines are not interchangeable and one vaccine product should be used for an entire course.

Human papillomavirus vaccine will be most effective if given before sexual activity starts. From September 2014, a 2-dose schedule is recommended, as long as the first dose is received before the age of 15 years. The first dose is given to females aged 11 to 14 years, and the second dose is given 6–24 months after the first dose (for the purposes of planning the national immunisation programme, it is appropriate to give the second dose 12 months after the



first—see Immunisation schedule). If the course is interrupted, it should be resumed (using the same vaccine) but not repeated, even if more than 24 months have elapsed since the first dose or if the girl is then aged 15 years or more.

Females aged 15 years or older require a 3-dose schedule (see *Cervarix*® and *Gardasil*®), with the second and third doses given 1 and 4–6 months after the first dose; all 3 doses should be given within a 12-month period. If the course is interrupted, it should be resumed (using the same vaccine) but not repeated, allowing the appropriate interval between the remaining doses.

If a 3-dose course of vaccination had been started before September 2014 in a female aged under 15 years, then where possible this should be completed; the interrupted course should be resumed (using the same vaccine) but not repeated, allowing the appropriate interval between the remaining doses.

Under the national programme in England, females remain eligible to receive the vaccine up to the age of 18 years if they did not receive the vaccine when scheduled. Where appropriate, immunisation with human papillomavirus vaccine should be offered to females coming into the UK as they may not have been offered protection in their country of origin. The duration of protection has not been established, but current studies suggest that protection is maintained for at least 6 years after completion of the primary course.

### Influenza vaccine

While most viruses are antigenically stable, the influenza viruses A and B (especially A) are constantly altering their antigenic structure as indicated by changes in the haemagglutinins (H) and neuraminidases (N) on the surface of the viruses. It is essential that influenza vaccine p. 798 in use contain the H and N components of the prevalent strain or strains recommended each year by the World Health Organization.

The inactivated influenza vaccine is recommended for children aged 6 months–2 years in an at risk group (see below), those aged 18 years and over, in pregnancy and in children with a contra-indication to the live influenza vaccine.

Unless contra-indicated, the live influenza vaccine, administered as a nasal spray (*Fluenz Tetra*®), is preferred in children aged 2–17 years because it provides a higher level of protection than the inactivated influenza vaccine.

Immunisation is recommended for persons at high risk, and to reduce transmission of infection. Annual immunisation is strongly recommended for children (including infants that were preterm or low birth-weight) aged over 6 months with the following conditions:

- chronic respiratory disease (includes asthma treated with continuous or repeated use of inhaled or systemic corticosteroids or asthma with previous exacerbations requiring hospital admission);
- chronic heart disease;
- chronic liver disease;
- chronic renal disease at stage 3, 4 or 5;
- chronic neurological disease;
- complement disorders;
- diabetes mellitus;
- immunosuppression because of disease (including asplenia or splenic dysfunction) or treatment (including prolonged systemic corticosteroid treatment [for over 1 month at dose equivalents of prednisolone: *child under 20 kg*, 1 mg/kg or more daily; *child over 20 kg*, 20 mg or more daily] and chemotherapy);
- HIV infection (regardless of immune status).

Seasonal influenza vaccine is also recommended for all pregnant women, for children living in long-stay facilities, and for carers of children whose welfare may be at risk if the

carer falls ill. Influenza immunisation should also be considered for household contacts of immunocompromised individuals.

In the 2017/2018 national influenza immunisation programme, seasonal influenza vaccine will also be offered to all children who were aged 2–8 years on 31 August 2017 (including those in school years 1, 2, 3 and 4), and all primary school-aged children in former primary school pilot areas.

Further information on pandemic influenza, avian influenza, and swine influenza may be found at [www.dh.gov.uk/pandemicflu](http://www.dh.gov.uk/pandemicflu) and at [www.gov.uk/phe](http://www.gov.uk/phe).

### Japanese encephalitis vaccine

Japanese encephalitis vaccine p. 799 is indicated for travellers to areas in Asia and the Far East where infection is endemic and for laboratory staff at risk of exposure to the virus. The primary immunisation course of 2 doses should be completed at least one week before potential exposure to Japanese encephalitis virus.

Up-to-date information on the risk of Japanese encephalitis in specific countries can be obtained from the National Travel Health Network and Centre ([www.nathnac.org](http://www.nathnac.org)).

### Management of Measles, Mumps and Rubella

**Measles vaccine** has been replaced by a combined measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live (MMR vaccine) p. 799.

A combined measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live (MMR vaccine) aims to eliminate measles, mumps, and rubella (German measles) and congenital rubella syndrome. Every child should receive two doses of measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live p. 799 by entry to primary school, unless there is a valid contra-indication. Measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live should be given irrespective of previous measles, mumps, or rubella infection or vaccination.

The first dose of measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live is given to children aged 12–13 months. A second dose is given before starting school at 3 years and 4 months–5 years of age (see Immunisation Schedule).

Children presenting for pre-school booster who have not received the first dose of measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live should be given a dose of measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live followed 3 months later by a second dose.

At school-leaving age or at entry into further education, MMR immunisation should be offered to individuals of both sexes who have not received 2 doses during childhood. In those who have received only a single dose of MMR in childhood, a second dose is recommended to achieve full protection. If 2 doses of measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live are required, the second dose should be given one month after the initial dose.

Measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live should be used to protect against rubella in *seronegative women of child-bearing age* (see Immunisation Schedule); unimmunised healthcare workers who might put pregnant women and other vulnerable groups at risk of rubella or measles should be vaccinated. Measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live may also be offered to previously *unimmunised and seronegative post-partum women* (see measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live)—vaccination a few days after delivery is important because about 60% of congenital abnormalities from rubella infection occur in babies of women who have borne more than one child. Immigrants arriving after the age of school immunisation are particularly likely to require immunisation.

### Contacts

Measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live may also be used in the control of outbreaks of measles and should be offered to susceptible children aged over 6 months who are contacts of a case, within 3 days of exposure to infection. Children

immunised before 12 months of age should still receive two doses of measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live at the recommended ages. If one dose of measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live has already been given to a child, then the second dose may be brought forward to at least one month after the first, to ensure complete protection. If the child is under 18 months of age and the second dose is given within 3 months of the first, then the routine dose before starting school at 3 years and 4 months–5 years should still be given. Children aged under 9 months for whom avoidance of measles infection is particularly important (such as those with history of recent severe illness) can be given normal immunoglobulin p. 773 after exposure to measles; routine MMR immunisation should then be given after at least 3 months at the appropriate age.

Measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live is **not suitable** for prophylaxis following exposure to mumps or rubella since the antibody response to the mumps and rubella components is too slow for effective prophylaxis.

Children with impaired immune response should not receive live vaccines (for advice on HIV). If they have been exposed to measles infection they should be given normal immunoglobulin.

### Travel

Unimmunised travellers, including children over 6 months, to areas where measles is endemic or epidemic should receive measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live. Children immunised before 12 months of age should still receive two doses of measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live at the recommended ages. If one dose of measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live has already been given to a child, then the second dose should be brought forward to at least one month after the first, to ensure complete protection. If the child is under 18 months of age and the second dose is given within 3 months of the first, then the routine dose before starting school at 3 years and 4 months–5 years should still be given.

### Meningococcal vaccine

Almost all childhood meningococcal disease in the UK is caused by *Neisseria meningitidis* serogroups B and C.

**Meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine** protects only against infection by serogroup C and **meningococcal group B vaccine** protects only against infection by serogroup B. The risk of meningococcal disease declines with age—immunisation is not generally recommended after the age of 25 years.

Tetavalent meningococcal vaccines that cover serogroups A, C, W135, and Y are available. Although the duration of protection has not been established, the **meningococcal groups A, C, W135, and Y conjugate vaccine** is likely to provide longer-lasting protection than the unconjugated meningococcal polysaccharide vaccine. The antibody response to serogroup C in unconjugated meningococcal polysaccharide vaccines in young children may be suboptimal [not currently available in the UK].

A meningococcal group B vaccine (rDNA, component, adsorbed) p. 792, *Bexsero*®, is licensed in the UK against infection caused by *Neisseria meningitidis* serogroup B and is recommended in the Immunisation Schedule. *Bexsero*® contains 3 recombinant *Neisseria meningitidis* serogroup B proteins and the outer membrane vesicles from the NZ 98/254 strain, in order to achieve broad protection against *Neisseria meningitidis* serogroup B; the proteins are adsorbed onto an aluminium compound to stimulate an enhanced immune response.

### Childhood immunisation

**Meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine** provides long-term protection against infection by serogroup C of *Neisseria meningitidis*. Immunisation consists of 1 dose given at 12 months of age (as the haemophilus influenzae type b with meningococcal group C vaccine p. 791) and a second dose

given at 13–15 years of age (as the meningococcal groups A with C and W135 and Y vaccine p. 792) (see Immunisation Schedule).

**Meningococcal group B vaccine** provides protection against infection by serogroup B of *Neisseria meningitidis*. Immunisation consists of 1 dose given at 2 months of age, a second dose at 4 months of age, and a booster dose at 12 months of age (see *Immunisation Schedule* above).

Unimmunised children aged under 12 months should be given 1 dose of meningococcal group B vaccine (rDNA, component, adsorbed) followed by a second dose two months later. They should then be vaccinated according to the Immunisation Schedule (ensuring at least a two month interval between doses of meningococcal group B vaccines). Unimmunised children aged 12–23 months should be given 2 doses of meningococcal group B vaccine (rDNA, component, adsorbed) separated by an interval of two months if they have received less than 2 doses in the first year of life. Unimmunised children aged 2–9 years should be given a single dose of meningococcal group C vaccine (as the haemophilus influenzae type b with meningococcal group C vaccine), followed by a booster dose of meningococcal groups A with C and W135 and Y vaccine at 13–15 years of age.

From 2015, unimmunised individuals aged 10–25 years, including those aged under 25 years who are attending university for the first time, should be given a single dose of meningococcal groups A with C and W135 and Y vaccine; a booster dose is not required.

Children with confirmed serogroup C disease, who have previously been immunised with meningococcal group C vaccine, should be offered meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine before discharge from hospital.

### Travel

Individuals travelling to countries of risk should be immunised with meningococcal groups A, C, W135, and Y conjugate vaccine, even if they have previously received meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine. If an individual has recently received meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine, an interval of at least 4 weeks should be allowed before administration of the tetavalent (meningococcal groups A, C, W135, and Y) vaccine.

Vaccination is particularly important for those living or working with local people or visiting an area of risk during outbreaks.

Immunisation recommendations and requirements for visa entry for individual countries should be checked before travelling, particularly to countries in Sub-Saharan Africa, Asia, and the Indian sub-continent where epidemics of meningococcal outbreaks and infection are reported. Country-by-country information is available from the National Travel Health Network and Centre ([www.nathnac.org](http://www.nathnac.org)).

Proof of vaccination with the tetavalent (meningococcal groups A, C, W135, and Y) vaccine is required for those travelling to Saudi Arabia during the Hajj and Umrah pilgrimages (where outbreaks of the W135 strain have occurred).

### Contacts

For advice on the immunisation of *laboratory workers and close contacts* of cases of meningococcal disease in the UK and on the role of the vaccine in the control of *local outbreaks*, consult Guidelines for Public Health Management of Meningococcal Disease in the UK at [www.gov.uk/phe](http://www.gov.uk/phe). Also see antibacterial prophylaxis for prevention of secondary cases of meningococcal meningitis.

### Pertussis vaccine

**Pertussis vaccine** is given as a combination preparation containing other vaccines. Acellular vaccines are derived from highly purified components of *Bordetella pertussis*. Primary immunisation against pertussis (whooping cough)

requires 3 doses of an acellular pertussis-containing vaccine (see Immunisation schedule), given at intervals of 1 month from the age of 2 months.

All children up to the age of 10 years should receive primary immunisation with a combination vaccine of diphtheria with tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis B, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine p. 790 (*Infanrix hexa*®).

A booster dose of an acellular pertussis-containing vaccine should ideally be given 3 years after the primary course, although, the interval can be reduced to 1 year if the primary course was delayed.

Children aged 1–10 years who have not received a pertussis-containing vaccine as part of their primary immunisation should be offered 1 dose of a suitable pertussis-containing vaccine; after an interval of at least 1 year, a booster dose of a suitable pertussis-containing vaccine should be given. Immunisation against pertussis is not routinely recommended in individuals over 10 years of age.

#### Vaccination of pregnant women against pertussis

In response to the pertussis outbreak, the UK health departments introduced a temporary programme (October 2012) to vaccinate pregnant women against pertussis, and this programme will continue until further notice. The aim of the programme is to boost the levels of pertussis-specific antibodies that are transferred, through the placenta, from the mother to the fetus, so that the newborn is protected before routine immunisation begins at 2 months of age.

Pregnant women should be offered a single dose of acellular pertussis-containing vaccine (as adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus, pertussis [acellular, component] and poliomyelitis [inactivated] vaccine; *Boostrix-IPV*®) between 16 and 32 weeks of pregnancy. Public Health England has advised (2016) that the vaccine is probably best offered on or after the fetal anomaly scan at around 18–20 weeks. Pregnant women should be offered a single dose of acellular pertussis-containing vaccine up to the onset of labour if they missed the opportunity for vaccination at 16–32 weeks of pregnancy. A single dose of acellular pertussis-containing vaccine may also be offered to new mothers, who have never previously been vaccinated against pertussis, until the child receives the first vaccination.

While this programme is in place, women who become pregnant again should be offered vaccination during each pregnancy to maximise transplacental transfer of antibody.

#### Contacts

Vaccination against pertussis should be considered for close contacts of cases with pertussis who have been offered antibacterial prophylaxis. Unimmunised or partially immunised contacts under 10 years of age should complete their vaccination against pertussis. A booster dose of an acellular pertussis-containing vaccine is recommended for contacts aged over 10 years who have not received a pertussis-containing vaccine in the last 5 years and who have not received adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus, and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine in the last month.

#### Side-effects

Local reactions do not contra-indicate further doses.

The vaccine should not be withheld from children with a history to a preceding dose of:

- fever, irrespective of severity;
- persistent crying or screaming for more than 3 hours;
- severe local reaction, irrespective of extent.

#### Pneumococcal vaccine

The pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) p. 793 and the pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine p. 793 protect against infection with *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (pneumococcus). Both vaccines contain

polysaccharide from capsular pneumococci. The pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine contains purified polysaccharide from **23 capsular types** of pneumococci, whereas the pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) contains polysaccharide from either **10 capsular types** (*Synflorix*®) or **13 capsular types** (*Prevenar 13*®), with the polysaccharide being conjugated to protein.

*Prevenar 13*®, is the 13-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) used for childhood immunisation. The recommended schedule consists of 3 doses, the first at 2 months of age, the second at 4 months, and the third at 12–13 months (see *Immunisation Schedule*).

The 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine is recommended for children aged 2 years or over at increased risk of pneumococcal infection as follows:

- child under 5 years with a history of invasive pneumococcal disease;
- asplenia or splenic dysfunction (including homozygous sickle cell disease and coeliac disease which could lead to splenic dysfunction);
- chronic respiratory disease (includes asthma treated with continuous or frequent use of a systemic corticosteroid);
- chronic heart disease;
- chronic renal disease;
- chronic liver disease;
- chronic neurological conditions;
- complement disorders;
- diabetes mellitus;
- immune deficiency because of disease (e.g. HIV infection) or treatment (including prolonged systemic corticosteroid treatment for over 1 month at dose equivalents of prednisolone: *child under 20 kg*, 1 mg/kg or more daily; *child over 20 kg*, 20 mg or more daily);
- presence of cochlear implant;
- conditions where leakage of cerebrospinal fluid could occur.

Where possible, the vaccine should be given at least 2 weeks before splenectomy, cochlear implant surgery, chemotherapy, or radiotherapy; children and carers should be given advice about increased risk of pneumococcal infection. If it is not practical to vaccinate at least 2 weeks before splenectomy, chemotherapy, or radiotherapy, the vaccine should be given at least 2 weeks after the splenectomy or, where possible, at least 3 months after completion of chemotherapy or radiotherapy. Prophylactic antibacterial therapy against pneumococcal infection should not be stopped after immunisation. A patient card and information leaflet for patients with asplenia are available from the Department of Health or in Scotland from the Scottish Government, Health Protection Division (Tel (0131) 244 2879).

#### Choice of vaccine

Children under 2 years of age, at increased risk of pneumococcal infection (see list above), should receive the 13-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) p. 793 at the recommended ages, followed by a single dose of the 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine p. 793 after their second birthday. Children at increased risk of pneumococcal infection presenting late for vaccination should receive 2 doses (separated by at least 1 month) of the 13-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) before the age of 12 months, and a third dose at 12–13 months. Children over 12 months and under 5 years (who have not been vaccinated or not completed the primary course) should receive a single dose of 13-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed) (2 doses separated by an interval of 2 months in the immunocompromised or those with asplenia or splenic dysfunction). All children under 5 years at increased risk of pneumococcal infection should receive a single dose of the 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide

vaccine after their second birthday and at least 2 months after the final dose of the 13-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed).

Children over 5 years who are at increased risk of pneumococcal disease should receive a single dose of the 23-valent unconjugated pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine.

### Revaccination

In individuals with higher concentrations of antibodies to pneumococcal polysaccharides, revaccination with the 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine more commonly produces adverse reactions. Revaccination is therefore not recommended, except every 5 years in individuals in whom the antibody concentration is likely to decline rapidly (e.g. asplenia, splenic dysfunction and nephrotic syndrome). If there is doubt, the need for revaccination should be discussed with a haematologist, immunologist, or microbiologist.

### Poliomyelitis vaccine

Two types of poliomyelitis vaccines (containing strains of poliovirus types 1, 2, and 3) are available, inactivated poliomyelitis vaccines (for injection) and live (oral) poliomyelitis vaccines. **Inactivated** poliomyelitis vaccines, only available in combined preparation, is recommended for routine immunisation; it is given by injection and contains inactivated strains of human poliovirus types 1, 2 and 3.

A course of primary immunisation consists of 3 doses of a combined preparation containing inactivated poliomyelitis vaccines starting at 2 months of age with intervals of 1 month between doses (see Immunisation schedule). A course of 3 doses should also be given to all unimmunised children; no child should remain unimmunised against poliomyelitis.

Two booster doses of a preparation containing inactivated poliomyelitis vaccines are recommended, the first before school entry and the second before leaving school (see Immunisation schedule). Further booster doses should be given every 10 years only to individuals at special risk.

**Live (oral)** poliomyelitis vaccines is no longer available for routine use; its use may be considered during large outbreaks, but advice should be sought from Public Health England. The live (oral) vaccine poses a very rare risk of vaccine-associated paralytic polio because the attenuated strain of the virus can revert to a virulent form. For this reason the live (oral) vaccine must **not** be used for immunosuppressed individuals or their household contacts. The use of inactivated poliomyelitis vaccines removes the risk of vaccine-associated paralytic polio altogether.

### Travel

Unimmunised travellers to areas with a high incidence of poliomyelitis should receive a full 3-dose course of a preparation containing inactivated poliomyelitis vaccines. Those who have not been vaccinated in the last 10 years should receive a booster dose of **adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine**. Information about countries with a high incidence of poliomyelitis can be obtained from [www.travax.nhs.uk](http://www.travax.nhs.uk) or from the National Travel Health Network and Centre, ([www.nathnac.org](http://www.nathnac.org)).

### Rabies vaccine

Rabies vaccine p. 800 contains inactivated rabies virus cultivated in either human diploid cells or purified chick embryo cells; vaccines are used for pre- and postexposure prophylaxis.

### Pre-exposure prophylaxis

Immunisation should be offered to children at high risk of exposure to rabies—where there is limited access to prompt medical care for those living in areas where rabies is enzootic, for those travelling to such areas for longer than

1 month, and for those on shorter visits who may be exposed to unusual risk. Transmission of rabies by humans has not been recorded but it is advised that those caring for children with the disease should be vaccinated.

Up-to-date country-by-country information on the incidence of rabies can be obtained from the National Travel Health Network and Centre ([www.nathnac.org](http://www.nathnac.org)) and, in Scotland, from Health Protection Scotland ([www.hps.scot.nhs.uk](http://www.hps.scot.nhs.uk)).

Immunisation against rabies requires 3 doses of rabies vaccine, with further booster doses for those who remain at frequent risk.

### Post-exposure management

Following potential exposure to rabies, the wound or site of exposure (e.g. mucous membrane) should be cleansed under running water and washed for several minutes with soapy water as soon as possible after exposure. Disinfectant and a simple dressing can be applied, but suturing should be delayed because it may increase the risk of introducing rabies virus into the nerves.

Post-exposure prophylaxis against rabies depends on the level of risk in the country, the nature of exposure, and the individual's immunity. In each case, expert risk assessment and advice on appropriate management should be obtained from the local Public Health England Centre or Public Health England's Virus Reference Department, Colindale (tel. (020) 8200 4400) or the PHE Colindale Duty Doctor (tel. (020) 8200 6868), in Wales from the Public Health Wales local Health Protection Team or Public Health Wales Virus Reference Laboratory (tel. (029) 2074 7747), in Scotland from the local on-call infectious diseases consultant, and in Northern Ireland from the Public Health Agency Duty Room (tel. (028) 9055 3997/(028) 9063 2662) or the Regional Virology Service (tel. (028) 9024 0503).

There are no specific contra-indications to the use of rabies vaccine for post-exposure prophylaxis and its use should be considered whenever a child has been attacked by an animal in a country where rabies is enzootic, even if there is no direct evidence of rabies in the attacking animal. Because of the potential consequences of untreated rabies exposure and because rabies vaccination has not been associated with fetal abnormalities, pregnancy is not considered a contra-indication to post-exposure prophylaxis.

For post-exposure prophylaxis of *fully immunised* individuals (who have previously received pre-exposure or post-exposure prophylaxis with cell-derived rabies vaccine), 2 doses of cell-derived vaccine are likely to be sufficient; the first dose is given on day 0 and the second dose is given between day 3–7. Rabies immunoglobulin p. 775 is not necessary in such cases.

Post-exposure treatment for *unimmunised individuals* (or those whose prophylaxis is possibly incomplete) comprises 5 doses of rabies vaccine p. 800 given over 1 month (on days 0, 3, 7, 14, and the fifth dose is given between day 28–30); also, depending on the level of risk (determined by factors such as the nature of the bite and the country where it was sustained), rabies immunoglobulin is given to unimmunised individuals on day 0 or within 7 days of starting the course of rabies vaccine. The immunisation course can be discontinued if it is proved that the child was not at risk.

### Rotavirus vaccine

Rotavirus vaccine p. 801 is a live, oral vaccine that protects young children against gastro-enteritis caused by rotavirus infection. The recommended schedule consists of 2 doses, the first at 2 months of age, and the second at 3 months of age (see Immunisation schedule). The first dose of rotavirus vaccine must be given between 6–15 weeks of age and the second dose should be given after an interval of at least 4 weeks; the vaccine should not be started in children 15 weeks of age or older. Ideally, the full course should be

completed before 16 weeks of age to provide protection before the main burden of disease, and to avoid a temporal association between vaccination and intussusception; the course must be completed before 24 weeks of age.

The rotavirus vaccine virus is excreted in the stool and may be transmitted to close contacts; however, vaccination of those with *immunosuppressed* close contacts may protect the contacts from wild-type rotavirus disease and outweigh any risk from transmission of vaccine virus. Carers of a recently vaccinated baby should be advised of the need to wash their hands after changing the baby's nappies.

### Smallpox vaccine

Limited supplies of **smallpox vaccine** are held at the Specialist and Reference Microbiology Division, Public Health England Colindale (Tel. (020) 8200 4400) for the exclusive use of workers in laboratories where pox viruses (such as vaccinia) are handled.

If a wider use of the vaccine is being considered, *Guidelines for smallpox response and management in the post-eradication era* should be consulted at [www.gov.uk/phe](http://www.gov.uk/phe).

### Tetanus vaccine

**Tetanus vaccine** contains a cell-free purified toxin of *Clostridium tetani* adsorbed on aluminium hydroxide or aluminium phosphate to improve antigenicity.

Primary immunisation for children under 10 years consists of 3 doses of a combined preparation containing adsorbed tetanus vaccine, with an interval of 1 month between doses. Following routine childhood vaccination, 2 booster doses of a preparation containing adsorbed tetanus vaccine are recommended, the first before school entry and the second before leaving school (see Immunisation schedule).

The recommended schedule of tetanus vaccination not only gives protection against tetanus in childhood but also gives the basic immunity for subsequent booster doses. In most circumstances, a total of 5 doses of tetanus vaccine is considered sufficient for long term protection.

For primary immunisation of adults and children over 10 years previously unimmunised against tetanus, 3 doses of **adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine** are given with an interval of 1 month between doses.

When an individual presents for a booster dose but has been vaccinated following a tetanus-prone wound, the vaccine preparation administered at the time of injury should be determined. If this is not possible, the booster should still be given to ensure adequate protection against all antigens in the booster vaccine.

Very rarely, tetanus has developed after abdominal surgery; patients awaiting elective surgery should be asked about tetanus immunisation and immunised if necessary.

Parenteral drug abuse is also associated with tetanus; those abusing drugs by injection should be vaccinated if unimmunised—booster doses should be given if there is any doubt about their immunisation status.

All laboratory staff should be offered a primary course if unimmunised.

### Wounds

Wounds are considered to be tetanus-prone if they are sustained more than 6 hours before surgical treatment or at any interval after injury and are puncture-type (particularly if contaminated with soil or manure) or show much devitalised tissue or are septic or are compound fractures or contain foreign bodies. All wounds should receive thorough cleansing.

- For *clean wounds*: fully immunised individuals (those who have received a total of 5 doses of a tetanus-containing vaccine at appropriate intervals) and those whose primary immunisation is complete (with boosters up to date), do not require tetanus vaccine; individuals whose primary immunisation is incomplete or whose boosters are not up

to date require a reinforcing dose of a tetanus-containing vaccine (followed by further doses as required to complete the schedule); non-immunised individuals (or those whose immunisation status is not known or who have been fully immunised but are now immunocompromised) should be given a dose of the appropriate tetanus-containing vaccine immediately (followed by completion of the full course of the vaccine if records confirm the need)

- For *tetanus-prone wounds*: management is as for clean wounds with the addition of a dose of tetanus immunoglobulin given at a different site; in fully immunised individuals and those whose primary immunisation is complete (with boosters up to date) the immunoglobulin is needed only if the risk of infection is especially high (e.g. contamination with manure). Antibacterial prophylaxis (with benzylpenicillin, co-amoxiclav, or metronidazole) may also be required for tetanus-prone wounds.

### Tick-borne encephalitis vaccine

Tick-borne encephalitis vaccine, inactivated p. 801 contains inactivated tick-borne encephalitis virus cultivated in chick embryo cells. It is recommended for immunisation of those working in, or visiting, high-risk areas (see International Travel). Those working, walking or camping in warm forested areas of Central and Eastern Europe, Scandinavia, Northern and Eastern China, and some parts of Japan, particularly from April to November when ticks are most prevalent, are at greatest risk of tick-borne encephalitis. For full protection, 3 doses of the vaccine are required; booster doses are required every 3–5 years for those still at risk. Ideally, immunisation should be completed at least one month before travel.

### Typhoid vaccine

Typhoid vaccine p. 794 is available as Vi capsular polysaccharide (from *Salmonella typhi*) vaccine for injection and as live attenuated *Salmonella typhi* vaccine for oral use. Typhoid immunisation is advised for children travelling to:

- areas where typhoid is endemic, especially if staying with or visiting local people;
- endemic areas where frequent or prolonged exposure to poor sanitation and poor food hygiene is likely;

Typhoid vaccination is not a substitute for scrupulous personal hygiene.

Capsular **polysaccharide typhoid vaccine** is usually given by *intramuscular* injection. Children under 2 years may respond suboptimally to the vaccine, but children aged between 1–2 years should be immunised if the risk of typhoid fever is considered high (immunisation is not recommended for infants under 12 months). Revaccination is needed every 3 years on continued exposure.

**Oral typhoid vaccine** p. 794 is a **live attenuated** vaccine contained in an enteric-coated capsule. One capsule taken on alternate days for a total of 3 doses provides protection 7–10 days after the last dose. Protection may persist for up to 3 years in those constantly (or repeatedly) exposed to *Salmonella typhi*, but those who only occasionally travel to endemic areas require further courses at intervals of 1 year.

### Varicella-zoster vaccine

Varicella-zoster vaccine (live) p. 801 is licensed for immunisation against varicella (chickenpox) in seronegative individuals. It is not recommended for routine use in children but can be given to seronegative healthy children over 1 year who come into close contact with individuals at high risk of severe varicella infections.

Rarely, the varicella-zoster vaccine virus has been transmitted from the vaccinated individual to close contacts. Therefore, contact with the following should be avoided if a vaccine-related cutaneous rash develops within 4–6 weeks of the first or second dose:



- varicella-susceptible pregnant females;
- individuals at high risk of severe varicella, including those with immunodeficiency or those receiving immunosuppressive therapy.

Varicella-zoster immunoglobulin p. 775 is used to protect susceptible children at increased risk of severe varicella infection (see Immunoglobulins p. 770).

### Yellow fever vaccine

Live yellow fever vaccine, live p. 802 is indicated for those travelling to or living in areas where infection is endemic. Infants under 6 months of age should not be vaccinated because there is a small risk of encephalitis; infants aged 6–9 months should be vaccinated only if the risk of yellow fever is high and unavoidable (seek expert advice). The immunity which probably lasts for life is officially accepted for 10 years starting from 10 days after primary immunisation and for a further 10 years immediately after revaccination.

Very rarely vaccine-associated adverse effects have been reported, such as viscerotropic disease (yellow fever vaccine, live-associated viscerotropic disease, YEL–AVD), a syndrome which may include metabolic acidosis, muscle and liver cytotoxicity, and multi-organ failure. Neurological disorders (yellow fever vaccine, live-associated neurotropic disease, YEL–AND) such as encephalitis have also been reported. These *very rare* adverse effects have usually occurred after the first dose of yellow fever vaccine, live in those with no previous immunity.

## Vaccines for travel

### Immunisation for travel

See advice on Malaria, treatment p. 386.

No special immunisation is required for travellers to the United States, Europe, Australia, or New Zealand, although all travellers should have immunity to tetanus and poliomyelitis (and childhood immunisations should be up to date); Tick-borne encephalitis vaccine is recommended for immunisation of those working in, or visiting, high-risk areas. Certain special precautions are required in non-European areas surrounding the Mediterranean, in Africa, the Middle East, Asia, and South America.

Travellers to areas that have a high incidence of **poliomyelitis** or **tuberculosis** should be immunised with the appropriate vaccine; in the case of poliomyelitis previously immunised travellers may be given a booster dose of a preparation containing inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine. BCG immunisation is recommended for travellers aged under 16 years proposing to stay for longer than 3 months (or in close contact with the local population) in countries with an incidence of tuberculosis greater than 40 per 100 000 (list of countries where the incidence of tuberculosis is greater than 40 cases per 100 000 is available from [www.gov.uk/phe](http://www.gov.uk/phe)); it should preferably be given 3 months or more before departure.

**Yellow fever** immunisation is recommended for travel to the endemic zones of Africa and South America. Many countries require an International Certificate of Vaccination from individuals arriving from, or who have been travelling through, endemic areas; other countries require a certificate from all entering travellers (consult the Department of Health handbook, *Health Information for Overseas Travel*, [www.dh.gov.uk](http://www.dh.gov.uk)).

Immunisation against **meningococcal meningitis** is recommended for a number of areas of the world.

Protection against **hepatitis A** is recommended for travellers to high-risk areas outside Northern and Western Europe, North America, Japan, Australia and New Zealand. Hepatitis A vaccine is recommended and it is likely to be

effective even if given shortly before departure; Public Health England recommends travellers can be vaccinated with hepatitis A vaccine up to the day of travel, and no longer recommends the use of normal immunoglobulin for travel prophylaxis. Special care must also be taken with food hygiene.

**Hepatitis B** vaccine is recommended for those travelling to areas of high or intermediate prevalence who intend to seek employment as healthcare workers or who plan to remain there for lengthy periods and who may therefore be at increased risk of acquiring infection as the result of medical or dental procedures carried out in those countries. Short-term tourists or business travellers are not generally at increased risk of infection but may put themselves at risk by their sexual behaviour when abroad.

Prophylactic immunisation against **rabies** is recommended for travellers to enzootic areas on long journeys or to areas out of reach of immediate medical attention.

Travellers who have not had a **tetanus** booster in the last 10 years and are visiting areas where medical attention may not be accessible should receive a booster dose of adsorbed diphtheria [low dose], tetanus and poliomyelitis (inactivated) vaccine, even if they have received 5 doses of a tetanus-containing vaccine previously.

**Typhoid vaccine** is indicated for travellers to countries where typhoid is endemic, but the vaccine is no substitute for personal precautions.

There is no requirement for cholera vaccination as a condition for entry into any country, but **oral cholera vaccine** should be considered for backpackers and those travelling to situations where the risk is greatest (e.g. refugee camps). Regardless of vaccination, travellers to areas where cholera is endemic should take special care with food hygiene.

Advice on **diphtheria**, on **Japanese encephalitis**, and on **tick-borne encephalitis** is included in *Health Information for Overseas Travel*.

### Food hygiene

In areas where sanitation is poor, good food hygiene is important to help prevent hepatitis A, typhoid, cholera, and other diarrhoeal diseases (including travellers' diarrhoea). Food should be freshly prepared and hot, and uncooked vegetables (including green salads) should be avoided; only fruits which can be peeled should be eaten. Only suitable bottled water, or tap water that has been boiled or treated with sterilising tablets, should be used for drinking.

### Information on health advice for travellers

Health professionals and travellers can find the latest information on immunisation requirements and precautions for avoiding disease while travelling from: [www.nathnac.org](http://www.nathnac.org).

The handbook, *Health Information for Overseas Travel* (2010), which draws together essential information for *healthcare professionals* regarding health advice for travellers, can also be obtained from this website.

Immunisation requirements change from time to time, and information on the current requirements for any particular country may be obtained from the embassy or legation of the appropriate country or from:

### National Travel Health Network and Centre

UCLH NHS Foundation Trust  
3rd Floor Central,  
250 Euston Road,  
London, NW1 2PG  
Tel: 0845 602 6712

(Monday and Friday: 9–11 a.m. and 1–2 p.m., Tuesday to Thursday: 9–11 a.m. and 1–3:30 p.m. For healthcare professionals only) [www.travelhealthpro.org.uk/](http://www.travelhealthpro.org.uk/)

### Travel Medicine Team

Health Protection Scotland

Meridian Court,  
5 Cadogan Street,  
Glasgow, G2 6QE  
Tel: (0141) 300 1130  
(2–4 p.m. Monday to Wednesday, 9:30–11:30 a.m. Friday; for registered TRAVAX users only) [www.travax.nhs.uk](http://www.travax.nhs.uk)  
(TRAVAX is free for NHS Scotland users (registration required); subscription fee may be payable for users outside NHS Scotland)

#### Welsh Assembly Government

Tel (029) 2082 5397  
(9 a.m.–5:30 p.m. weekdays)

#### Department of Health, Social Services and Public Safety

Castle Buildings,  
Stormont,  
Belfast, BT4 3SQ  
Tel: (028) 9052 2118  
(9 a.m.–5 p.m. weekdays) [www.dhsspsni.gov.uk](http://www.dhsspsni.gov.uk)

## VACCINES

### Vaccines

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### MHRA/CHM ADVICE (UPDATED NOVEMBER 2017)

Following reports of death in neonates who received a live attenuated vaccine after exposure to a tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF- $\alpha$ ) inhibitor in utero, the MHRA has issued the following advice:

- any infant who has been exposed to immunosuppressive treatment from the mother either in utero during pregnancy or via breastfeeding should have any live attenuated vaccination deferred for as long as a postnatal influence on the immune status of the infant remains possible;
- in the case of infants who have been exposed to TNF- $\alpha$  inhibitors and other immunosuppressive biological medicines in utero, PHE advise that any live attenuated vaccination (e.g. BCG vaccine) should be deferred until the infant is age 6 months;
- PHE advise if there is any doubt as to whether an infant due to receive a live attenuated vaccine may be immunosuppressed due to the mother's therapy, including exposure through breast-feeding, specialist advice should be sought.

#### • CONTRA-INDICATIONS

##### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ Impaired immune response Severely immunosuppressed patients should not be given live vaccines (including those with severe primary immunodeficiency).

#### • CAUTIONS Acute illness - minor illnesses

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Vaccination may be postponed if the individual is suffering from an acute illness; however, it is not necessary to postpone immunisation in patients with minor illnesses without fever or systemic upset.

- ▶ Impaired immune response and drugs affecting immune response Immune response to vaccines may be reduced in immunosuppressed patients and there is also a risk of generalised infection with live vaccines.

Specialist advice should be sought for those being treated with high doses of corticosteroids (dose equivalents of prednisolone: **adults**, at least 40 mg daily for more than 1 week; **children**, 2 mg/kg (or more than 40 mg) daily for at least 1 week or 1 mg/kg daily for 1 month), or other immunosuppressive drugs, and those being treated for malignant conditions with chemotherapy or generalised radiotherapy. Live vaccines should be postponed until at least 3 months after stopping high-dose

systemic corticosteroids and at least 6 months after stopping other immunosuppressive drugs or generalised radiotherapy (at least 12 months after discontinuing immunosuppressants following bone-marrow transplantation).

The Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health has produced a statement, *Immunisation of the Immunocompromised Child* (2002) (available at [www.rcpch.ac.uk](http://www.rcpch.ac.uk)).

- ▶ Predisposition to neurological problems When there is a personal or family history of febrile convulsions, there is an increased risk of these occurring during fever from any cause including immunisation, but this is not a contra-indication to immunisation. In children who have had a seizure associated with fever without neurological deterioration, immunisation is *recommended*; advice on the *management of fever* (see Post-immunisation Pyrexia in Infants) should be given before immunisation. When a child has had a convulsion not associated with fever, and the neurological condition is not deteriorating, immunisation is *recommended*.

Children with stable neurological disorders (e.g. spina bifida, congenital brain abnormality, and peri-natal hypoxic-ischaemic encephalopathy) should be immunised according to the recommended schedule.

When there is a *still evolving neurological problem*, including poorly controlled epilepsy, immunisation should be deferred and the child referred to a specialist. Immunisation is recommended if a cause for the neurological disorder is identified. If a cause is not identified, immunisation should be deferred until the condition is stable.

#### • SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Appetite decreased · arthralgia · diarrhoea · dizziness · fatigue · fever · headache · irritability · lymphadenopathy · malaise · myalgia · nausea · skin reactions · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Hypersensitivity
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a confirmed anaphylactic reaction to a preceding dose of a vaccine containing the same antigens or vaccine component (such as antibacterials in viral vaccines).

- **PREGNANCY** Live vaccines should not be administered routinely to pregnant women because of the theoretical risk of fetal infection but where there is a significant risk of exposure to disease, the need for vaccination usually outweighs any possible risk to the fetus. Termination of pregnancy following inadvertent immunisation is not recommended. There is no evidence of risk from vaccinating pregnant women with inactivated viral or bacterial vaccines or toxoids.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Although there is a theoretical risk of live vaccine being present in breast milk, vaccination is not contra-indicated for women who are breast-feeding when there is significant risk of exposure to disease. There is no evidence of risk from vaccinating women who are breast-feeding, with inactivated viral or bacterial vaccines or toxoids.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** If alcohol or disinfectant is used for cleansing the skin it should be allowed to evaporate before vaccination to prevent possible inactivation of live vaccines.

When 2 or more live vaccines are required (and are not available as a combined preparation), they can be administered at any time before or after each other at different sites, preferably in a different limb; if more than one injection is to be given in the same limb, they should be administered at least 2.5 cm apart. See also Bacillus Calmette-Guérin vaccine p. 790, and Cautions, further

information in measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live p. 799.

Vaccines should not be given intravenously. Most vaccines are given by the intramuscular route, although some are given by either the intradermal, deep subcutaneous, or oral route. The intramuscular route should not be used in patients with **bleeding disorders** such as haemophilia or thrombocytopenia, vaccines usually given by the intramuscular route should be given by deep subcutaneous injection instead.

The Department of Health has advised *against the use of jet guns* for vaccination owing to the risk of transmitting blood borne infections, such as HIV.

Particular attention must be paid to instructions on the use of diluents. Vaccines which are liquid suspensions or are reconstituted before use should be adequately mixed to ensure uniformity of the material to be injected.

- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Care must be taken to store all vaccines under the conditions recommended in the product literature, otherwise the preparation may become ineffective. **Refrigerated storage** is usually necessary; many vaccines need to be stored at 2–8°C and not allowed to freeze. Vaccines should be protected from light. Reconstituted vaccines and opened multidose vials must be used within the period recommended in the product literature. Unused vaccines should be disposed of by incineration at a registered disposal contractor.

## VACCINES > BACTERIAL AND VIRAL VACCINES, COMBINED

**F 788**

### Diphtheria with haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, pertussis, poliomyelitis and tetanus

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Primary immunisation

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 2 months–9 years: 0.5 mL every month for 3 doses

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Infanrix-IPV+ Hib*® not licensed for use in children over 36 months; *Pediacel*® not licensed in children over 4 years. However, the Department of Health recommends that these be used for children up to 10 years.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Crying abnormal · drowsiness · restlessness
  - **Uncommon** Cough · extensive swelling of vaccinated limb · increased risk of infection · rhinorrhoea
  - **Frequency not known** Anaphylactoid reaction · angioedema · apnoea · hypotonic-hyporesponsiveness episode · seizure
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The incidence of local and systemic reactions is lower with acellular pertussis vaccines than with whole-cell pertussis vaccines used previously.

Compared with primary vaccination, injection site reactions are more common with booster doses of vaccines containing acellular pertussis.

Public Health England has advised (2016) that the vaccine should not be withheld from children with a history to a preceding dose of: fever, irrespective of severity; hypotonic-hyporesponsive episodes; persistent crying or screaming for more than 3 hours; severe local reaction, irrespective of extent.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Available as part of childhood schedule from health organisations or ImmForm.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Powder and suspension for suspension for injection**

- **Infanrix-IPV + Hib** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
Infanrix-IPV + Hib vaccine powder and suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection **[PoM]** £27.86

**F 788**

### Diphtheria with pertussis, poliomyelitis vaccine and tetanus

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### First booster dose

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 3–9 years: 0.5 mL, to be given 3 years after primary immunisation

##### Vaccination of pregnant women against pertussis (using low dose vaccines)

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Females of childbearing potential: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Abdominal pain
- **Uncommon** Apathy · asthma · chills · drowsiness · dry throat · extensive swelling of vaccinated limb · oral herpes · pain · paraesthesia · sleep disorder
- **Frequency not known** Anaphylactoid reaction · angioedema · asthenia · hypotonic-hyporesponsiveness episode · seizure

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The incidence of local and systemic reactions is lower with acellular pertussis vaccines than with whole-cell pertussis vaccines used previously.

Compared with primary vaccination, injection site reactions are more common with booster doses of vaccines containing acellular pertussis.

Public Health England has advised (2016) that the vaccine should not be withheld from children with a history to a preceding dose of: fever, irrespective of severity; hypotonic-hyporesponsive episodes; persistent crying or screaming for more than 3 hours; severe local reaction, irrespective of extent.

- **PREGNANCY** Contra-indicated in pregnant women with a history of encephalopathy of unknown origin within 7 days of previous immunisation with a pertussis-containing vaccine. Contra-indicated in pregnant women with a history of transient thrombocytopenia or neurological complications following previous immunisation against diphtheria or tetanus.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Pregnant women should be vaccinated using low dose vaccines (brands may include *Boostrix-IPV*® or *Repevax*®).

Available as part of childhood immunisation schedule from health organisations or ImmForm.

Available for vaccination of pregnant women from ImmForm.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Suspension for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Neomycin, polymyxin b, streptomycin

- **Boostrix-IPV** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
Boostrix-IPV suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection **[PoM]** £22.74
- **Repevax** (Sanofi Pasteur)  
Repevax vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection **[PoM]** £20.00

F 788

## Diphtheria with poliomyelitis and tetanus vaccine

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Primary immunisation

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 10–17 years: 0.5 mL every month for 3 doses

#### Booster doses

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 10–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, first booster dose—should be given 3 years after primary course (this interval can be reduced to a minimum of 1 year if the primary course was delayed), then 0.5 mL for 1 dose, second booster dose—should be given 10 years after first booster dose (this interval can be reduced to a minimum of 5 years if previous doses were delayed), second booster dose may also be used as first booster dose in those over 10 years who have received only 3 previous doses of a diphtheria-containing vaccine

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Vertigo
- **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain · asthenia · chills · face oedema · influenza like illness · nerve disorders · pallor · seizure · shock · syncope · vaccination reactions

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Available as part of childhood schedule from health organisations or ImmForm.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Suspension for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Neomycin, polymyxin b, streptomycin

- **Revaxis** (Sanofi Pasteur)  
Revaxis vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £7.80 DT = £7.80

F 788

## Diphtheria with tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis B, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine

12-Oct-2017

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Primary immunisation (first dose)

- BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 2 months: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

#### Primary immunisation (second dose)

- BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 3 months: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, preferably administer at a different injection site to that of first dose

#### Primary immunisation (third dose)

- BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 4 months: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, preferably administer at a different injection site to that of second dose

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anxiety · crying abnormal
- **Uncommon** Cough · drowsiness · extensive swelling of vaccinated limb · increased risk of infection
- **Rare or very rare** Anaphylactoid reaction · angioedema · apnoea · dermatitis · hypotonic-hyporesponsiveness episode · seizure · swelling · thrombocytopenia

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Available as part of childhood schedule from health organisations or ImmForm.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder and suspension for suspension for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Neomycin, polymyxin b

- **Infanrix Hexa** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Infanrix Hexa vaccine powder and suspension for suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] [S]

## VACCINES > BACTERIAL VACCINES

F 788

### Bacillus Calmette-Guérin vaccine (BCG Vaccine)

- **DRUG ACTION** BCG (Bacillus Calmette-Guérin) is a live attenuated strain derived from *Mycobacterium bovis* which stimulates the development of immunity to *M. tuberculosis*.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Immunisation against tuberculosis

- BY INTRADERMAL INJECTION

- **Neonate:** 0.05 mL, to be injected at insertion of deltoid muscle onto humerus (keloid formation more likely with sites higher on arm); tip of shoulder should be **avoided**.

- **Child 1–11 months:** 0.05 mL, to be injected at insertion of deltoid muscle onto humerus (keloid formation more likely with sites higher on arm); tip of shoulder should be **avoided**

- **Child 1–17 years:** 0.1 mL, to be injected at insertion of deltoid muscle onto humerus (keloid formation more likely with sites higher on arm); tip of shoulder should be **avoided**

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Generalised septic skin conditions · neonate in household contact with known or suspected case of active tuberculosis

#### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

A lesion-free site should be used to administer BCG vaccine to patients with eczema.

### ● CAUTIONS

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** BCG vaccine can be given simultaneously with another live vaccine, but if they are not given at the same time an interval of 4 weeks should normally be allowed. When BCG is given to infants, there is no need to delay routine primary immunisations. No further vaccination should be given in the arm used for BCG vaccination for at least 3 months because of the risk of regional lymphadenitis.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: live vaccines

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare** Increased risk of infection · osteitis
- **PRE-TREATMENT SCREENING** Apart from children under 6 years, any person being considered for BCG immunisation must first be given a skin test for hypersensitivity to tuberculin (see tuberculin purified protein derivative p. 776). A skin test is not necessary for a child under 6 years provided that the child has not stayed for longer than 3 months in a country with an incidence of tuberculosis greater than 40 per 100 000, the child has not had contact with a person with tuberculosis, and there is no family history of tuberculosis within the last 5 years.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

Intradermal injection technique Skin is stretched between thumb and forefinger and needle (size 25G or 26G) inserted (bevel upwards) for about 3 mm into superficial layers of dermis (almost parallel with surface). Needle should be short with short bevel (can usually be seen


through epidermis during insertion). Tense raised blanched bleb showing tips of hair follicles is sign of correct injection; 7 mm bleb  $\equiv$  0.1 mL injection, 3 mm bleb  $\equiv$  0.05 mL injection; if considerable resistance not felt, needle too deep and should be removed and reinserted before giving more vaccine.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Available from health organisations or direct from ImmForm [www.immform.dh.gov.uk](http://www.immform.dh.gov.uk) (SSI brand, multidose vial with diluent).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Powder and solvent for suspension for injection**

- ▶ **Bacillus calmette-guérin vaccine (Non-proprietary)**  
Bacillus Calmette-Guérin vaccine powder and solvent for suspension for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] 

F 788

## Cholera vaccine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Immunisation against cholera (for travellers to endemic or epidemic areas on the basis of current recommendations)**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 2–5 years: 1 dose every 1–6 weeks for 3 doses, if more than 6 weeks have elapsed between doses, the primary course should be restarted, immunisation should be completed at least one week before potential exposure
- ▶ Child 6–17 years: 1 dose every 1–6 weeks for 2 doses, if more than 6 weeks have elapsed between doses, the primary course should be restarted, immunisation should be completed at least one week before potential exposure

##### **Booster**

- ▶ **BY MOUTH**
- ▶ Child 2–5 years: A single booster dose can be given within 6 months after primary course, if more than 6 months have elapsed since the last vaccination, the primary course should be repeated
- ▶ Child 6–17 years: A single booster dose can be given within 2 years after primary course, if more than 2 years have elapsed since the last vaccination, the primary course should be repeated

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute gastro-intestinal illness

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: cholera vaccine

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Uncommon** Gastrointestinal discomfort · gastrointestinal disorders
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Chills · cough · dehydration · drowsiness · hyperhidrosis · increased risk of infection · insomnia · pulmonary reaction · syncope · taste altered · throat pain
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Angioedema · asthma · dyspnoea · hypertension · influenza like illness · lymphadenitis · pain · paraesthesia · sputum increased

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Dissolve effervescent sodium bicarbonate granules in a glassful of water or chlorinated water (approximately 150 mL). For children over 6 years, add vaccine suspension to make one dose. For child 2–5 years, discard half (approximately 75 mL) of the solution, then add vaccine suspension to make one dose. Drink within 2 hours. Food, drink, and other oral medicines should be avoided for 1 hour before and after vaccination.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Counselling on administration advised. Immunisation with cholera vaccine does not provide complete protection and all travellers to a country where cholera exists should be

warned that scrupulous attention to food, water, and personal hygiene is **essential**.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Oral suspension**

- ▶ **Dukoral** (Valneva UK Ltd)  
Dukoral cholera vaccine oral suspension | 2 dose [PoM] £26.35 DT = £26.35

F 788

## Haemophilus influenzae type b with meningococcal group C vaccine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Booster dose (for infants who have received primary immunisation with a vaccine containing *Haemophilus influenzae* type b component) and primary immunisation against *Neisseria meningitidis***

- ▶ **BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION**
- ▶ Child 12–13 months: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

**Immunisation against *Neisseria meningitidis* in an unimmunised patient**

- ▶ **BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION**
- ▶ Child 1–9 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

**Booster dose (for children who have not been immunised against *Haemophilus influenzae* type b) | Booster dose after recovery from *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease (for index cases previously vaccinated, with low Hib antibody concentration or if it is not possible to measure antibody concentration)**

- ▶ **BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION**
- ▶ Child 1–9 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

**Booster dose after recovery from *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease (for fully vaccinated index cases with asplenia or splenic dysfunction, if previous dose received over 1 year ago)**

- ▶ **BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION**
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

**Booster dose (for patients diagnosed with asplenia, splenic dysfunction or complement deficiency at under 2 years of age)**

- ▶ **BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION**
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, this booster dose should be given after the second birthday, this is the second dose of haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine combined with meningococcal group C conjugate vaccine (the first dose is given during the routine immunisation schedule)

**Booster dose (for patients diagnosed with asplenia, splenic dysfunction or complement deficiency at over 2 years of age)**

- ▶ **BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION**
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, this booster dose should be followed 2 months later by one dose of meningococcal A, C, W135, and Y conjugate vaccine (in patients from 11 years of age, this interval can be reduced to one month)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in patients over 2 years.

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Drowsiness
- ▶ **Uncommon** Crying
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Abdominal pain · insomnia
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Anaphylactoid reaction · apnoea (in neonates) · febrile seizure · meningism (but no evidence that vaccine causes meningococcal C meningitis) · muscle tone decreased



- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Available as part of the childhood immunisation schedule from ImmForm.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder and solvent for solution for injection

- **Menitorix** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
Menitorix vaccine powder and solvent for solution for injection 0.5ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £37.76

F 788

## Meningococcal group B vaccine (rDNA, component, adsorbed)

19-Oct-2017

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### BEXSERO®

#### Immunisation against *Neisseria meningitidis*, primary immunisation

- BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 2 months: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, injected preferably into deltoid region (or anterolateral thigh in infants), for information about the use of paracetamol for prophylaxis of post-immunisation pyrexia, see paracetamol p. 271.
- Child 4 months: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, injected preferably into deltoid region (or anterolateral thigh in infants), for information about the use of paracetamol for prophylaxis of post-immunisation pyrexia, see paracetamol p. 271.

#### Immunisation against *Neisseria meningitidis*, primary immunisation booster dose

- BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 12–23 months: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, injected preferably into deltoid region (or anterolateral thigh in infants)

#### Immunisation against *Neisseria meningitidis*, primary immunisation (in unimmunised patients)

- BY DEEP INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 6–11 months: 0.5 mL for 2 doses, separated by an interval of at least 2 months; booster dose of 0.5 mL given between 1–2 years of age and at least 2 months after completion of primary immunisation, injected preferably into deltoid region (or anterolateral thigh in infants)
- Child 12–23 months: 0.5 mL for 2 doses, separated by an interval of at least 2 months; booster dose of 0.5 mL given 12–24 months after completion of primary immunisation, injected preferably into deltoid region (or anterolateral thigh in infants)
- Child 2–10 years: 0.5 mL for 2 doses, separated by an interval of at least 2 months. Injected preferably into deltoid region (or anterolateral thigh in infants)
- Child 11–17 years: 0.5 mL for 2 doses, separated by an interval of at least 1 month. Injected preferably into deltoid region

##### TRUMENBA®

#### Immunisation against *Neisseria meningitidis*, primary immunisation

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 10–17 years: 0.5 mL for 2 doses, separated by an interval of 6 months, alternatively 0.5 mL for 2 doses, separated by an interval of at least 1 month, followed by 0.5 mL as a third dose, given at least 4 months after the second dose, injected preferably into deltoid region, a booster dose should be considered for individuals at continued risk—consult product literature

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Crying abnormal · drowsiness · eating disorder
- **Uncommon** Eczema · seizures · vascular disorders
- **Frequency not known** Extensive swelling of vaccinated limb · hypotonic-hyporesponsiveness episode

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Suspension for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Kanamycin

- **Bexsero** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd) ▼  
Bexsero vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £75.00
- **Trumenba** (Pfizer Ltd) ▼  
Trumenba vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £75.00

F 788

## Meningococcal group C vaccine

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Patients with confirmed serogroup C disease (who have previously been immunised)

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 1–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, dose to be given before discharge from hospital

#### SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anxiety · cough · crying · drowsiness · gastrointestinal discomfort · hyperhidrosis · increased risk of infection
- **Uncommon** Chills · eyelid oedema · flushing · joint stiffness
- **Rare or very rare** Circulatory collapse · influenza like illness
- **Frequency not known** Angioedema · apnoea · asthenia · dyspnoea · hypotonic-hyporesponsiveness episode · immune thrombocytopenic purpura · meningism (but no evidence that vaccine causes meningococcal C meningitis) · musculoskeletal stiffness · nasal congestion · oedema · pain · respiratory disorders · seizures · sensation abnormal · sleep disorders · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · syncope

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Available as part of childhood immunisation schedule from [www.immform.dh.gov.uk](http://www.immform.dh.gov.uk).

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Suspension for injection

- **NeisVac-C** (Pfizer Ltd)  
NeisVac-C vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £187.50

F 788

## Meningococcal groups A with C and W135 and Y vaccine

#### INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### MENVEO®

#### Primary immunisation against *Neisseria meningitidis*

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 13–15 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, dose preferably injected into deltoid region

#### Immunisation against *Neisseria meningitidis* in an unimmunised patient

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 10–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, booster dose is not required

**Immunisation against *Neisseria meningitidis* in those at risk of exposure to prevent invasive disease**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 3–11 months: 0.5 mL every month for 2 doses, dose preferably injected into deltoid region
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, dose preferably injected into deltoid region

**Patients attending university for the first time (who have not received the routine meningococcal A, C, W135, and Y conjugate vaccine over the age of 10 years)**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 16–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

**NIMENRIX®****Primary immunisation against *Neisseria meningitidis***

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 13–15 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, to be injected preferably into deltoid region

**Immunisation against *Neisseria meningitidis* in an unimmunised patient**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, booster dose is not required

**Immunisation against *Neisseria meningitidis* in those at risk of exposure**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, to be injected preferably into deltoid region (or anterolateral thigh in child 12–23 months), then 0.5 mL after 1 year if required for 1 dose, second dose should be considered in those who continue to be at risk of *Neisseria meningitidis* serogroup A infection

**Patients attending university for the first time (who have not received the routine meningococcal A, C, W135, and Y conjugate vaccine over the age of 10 years)**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 16–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

**● UNLICENSED USE**

**MENVEO®** Menveo® is not licensed for use in children under 2 years.

**● SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ Common or very common Drowsiness
- ▶ Uncommon Crying · insomnia · numbness · pain in extremity
- ▶ Frequency not known Extensive swelling of vaccinated limb

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

- ▶ **Menveo** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
Menveo vaccine powder and solvent for solution for injection 0.5ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £30.00
- ▶ **Nimenrix** (Pfizer Ltd)  
Nimenrix vaccine powder and solvent for solution for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £30.00

F 788

**Pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed)****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****PREVENAR 13®****Primary immunisation against pneumococcal infection (first dose)**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 2 months: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, anterolateral thigh is preferred site of injection in infants

**Primary immunisation against pneumococcal infection (second dose)**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 4 months: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, anterolateral thigh is preferred site of injection in infants

**Primary immunisation against pneumococcal infection (booster dose)**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 12–13 months: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, anterolateral thigh is preferred site of injection in infants

**Immunisation against pneumococcal infection (in patients who have not been vaccinated or not completed the primary course)**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 12 months–4 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in young children; anterolateral thigh is preferred site in infants

**Immunisation against pneumococcal infection, in immunocompromised or asplenic patients or patients with splenic dysfunction (who have not been vaccinated or not completed the primary course)**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 12 months–4 years: 0.5 mL every 2 months for 2 doses, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in young children; anterolateral thigh is preferred site in infants

**SYNFLORIX®****Immunisation against pneumococcal infection**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 6 weeks–4 years: Deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in young children; anterolateral thigh is preferred site in infants (consult product literature)

**● UNLICENSED USE**

**PREVENAR 13®** The dose in BNF publications may differ from that in product literature.

**● SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ Common or very common Drowsiness
- ▶ Uncommon Apnoea · crying abnormal · extensive swelling of vaccinated limb
- ▶ Rare or very rare Angioedema · hypotonic-hyporesponsiveness episode · Kawasaki disease · seizure

**● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

**PREVENAR 13®** Available as part of childhood immunisation schedule from ImmForm [www.immform.dh.gov.uk](http://www.immform.dh.gov.uk).

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Suspension for injection**

- ▶ **Prevenar** (Pfizer Ltd)  
Prevenar 13 vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £49.10 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £491.00
- ▶ **Synflorix** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
Synflorix vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £27.60

F 788

**Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Immunisation against pneumococcal infection**

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

continued →

**Immunisation in patients at increased risk of pneumococcal disease**

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Child 2–4 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, dose should be administered after the second birthday or at least 2 months after the final dose of the 13-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed)
- Child 5–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Angioedema · arthritis · asthenia · chills · febrile seizure · haemolytic anaemia · hypersensitivity · leucocytosis · lymphadenitis · nerve disorders · paraesthesia · peripheral oedema · thrombocytopenia

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for injection**

- **Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine (Non-proprietary)**  
Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine solution for injection 0.5mL vials  
| 1 vial [PoM] £8.32

F 788

**Typhoid vaccine**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Immunisation against typhoid fever in children at high risk of typhoid fever**

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 12–23 months: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, dose should be given at least 2 weeks before potential exposure to typhoid infection, response may be suboptimal

**Immunisation against typhoid fever**

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 2–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, dose should be given at least 2 weeks before potential exposure to typhoid infection
- BY MOUTH
- Child 6–17 years: 1 capsule every 2 days for 3 doses (on days 1, 3, and 5)

● **UNLICENSED USE**

- With intramuscular use Not licensed for use in children under 2 years.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS**

- With oral use Acute gastro-intestinal illness

● **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: live vaccines● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common**
- With oral use Gastrointestinal discomfort · influenza like illness
- **Rare or very rare**
- With oral use Asthenia · back pain · chills · flatulence · paraesthesia
- **Frequency not known**
- With parenteral use Abdominal pain · asthma · serum sickness · shock · syncope

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Capsule should be taken one hour before a meal. Swallow as soon as possible after placing in mouth with a cold or lukewarm drink.

- **HANDLING AND STORAGE** It is important to store capsules in a refrigerator.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** Patients or carers should be given advice on how to administer and store typhoid vaccine capsules.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for injection**

- **Typhim Vi** (Sanofi Pasteur)  
Salmonella typhi Vi capsular polysaccharide 50 microgram per 1 mL Typhim Vi 25micrograms/0.5mL vaccine solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £11.16 DT = £11.16 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £93.00 DT = £93.00

**Gastro-resistant capsule**

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 25

► **Vivotif** (PaxVax Ltd)

Vivotif vaccine gastro-resistant capsules | 3 capsule [PoM] £14.77

Combinations available: **Hepatitis A with typhoid vaccine**, p. 795

**VACCINES > VIRAL VACCINES****Hepatitis A and B vaccine**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, hepatitis A vaccine p. 795, hepatitis B vaccine p. 796.

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****AMBIRIX®****Immunisation against hepatitis A and hepatitis B infection (primary course)**

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 1–15 years: Initially 1 mL for 1 dose, then 1 mL after 6–12 months for 1 dose, the deltoid region is the preferred site of injection in older children; anterolateral thigh is the preferred site in infants; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced), subcutaneous route used for patients with bleeding disorders (but immune response may be reduced)

**TWINRIX® ADULT****Immunisation against hepatitis A and hepatitis B infection (primary course)**

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 16–17 years: Initially 1 mL every month for 2 doses, then 1 mL after 5 months for 1 dose, the deltoid region is the preferred site of injection; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced), subcutaneous route used for patients with bleeding disorders (but immune response may be reduced)

**Immunisation against hepatitis A and hepatitis B infection—accelerated schedule for travellers departing within 1 month**

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 16–17 years: Initially 1 mL for 1 dose, then 1 mL after 7 days for 1 dose, then 1 mL after 14 days for 1 dose, then 1 mL for 1 dose given 12 months after the first dose, the deltoid region is the preferred site of injection; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced), subcutaneous route used for patients with bleeding disorders (but immune response may be reduced)

**TWINRIX® PAEDIATRIC****Immunisation against hepatitis A and hepatitis B infection (primary course)**

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- Child 1–15 years: Initially 0.5 mL every month for 2 doses, then 0.5 mL after 5 months for 1 dose, the deltoid region is the preferred site of injection in older children; anterolateral thigh is the preferred site in infants; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced), subcutaneous route used for patients

with bleeding disorders (but immune response may be reduced)

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

*Ambirix*® and *Twinrix*® are not recommended for post-exposure prophylaxis following percutaneous (needle-stick), ocular, or mucous membrane exposure to hepatitis B virus.

#### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

**AMBIRIX**® Primary course should be completed with *Ambirix*® (single component vaccines given at appropriate intervals may be used for booster dose).

**TWINRIX**® **ADULT** Primary course should be completed with *Twinrix*® (single component vaccines given at appropriate intervals may be used for booster dose).

**TWINRIX**® **PAEDIATRIC** Primary course should be completed with *Twinrix*® (single component vaccines given at appropriate intervals may be used for booster dose).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Suspension for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Neomycin

- ▶ **Ambirix** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
Ambirix vaccine suspension for injection 1ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £31.18 DT = £31.18
- ▶ **Twinrix** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
Twinrix Paediatric vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £20.79  
Twinrix Adult vaccine suspension for injection 1ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £33.31 DT = £31.18 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £333.13

F 788

## Hepatitis A vaccine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### AVAXIM®

##### Immunisation against hepatitis A infection

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 16–17 years: Initially 0.5 mL for 1 dose, then 0.5 mL after 6–12 months, dose given as booster; booster dose may be delayed by up to 3 years if not given after recommended interval following primary dose, the deltoid region is the preferred site of injection. The subcutaneous route may be used for patients with bleeding disorders; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

##### HAVRIX MONODOSE®

##### Immunisation against hepatitis A infection

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1–15 years: Initially 0.5 mL for 1 dose, then 0.5 mL after 6–12 months, dose given as booster; booster dose may be delayed by up to 3 years if not given after recommended interval following primary dose, the deltoid region is the preferred site of injection. The subcutaneous route may be used for patients with bleeding disorders
- ▶ Child 16–17 years: Initially 1 mL for 1 dose, then 1 mL after 6–12 months, dose given as booster; booster dose may be delayed by up to 3 years if not given after recommended interval following primary dose, the deltoid region is the preferred site of injection. The subcutaneous route may be used for patients with bleeding disorders

#### VAQTA® PAEDIATRIC

##### Immunisation against hepatitis A infection

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1–17 years: Initially 0.5 mL for 1 dose, then 0.5 mL after 6–18 months, dose given as booster, the deltoid region is the preferred site of injection. The subcutaneous route may be used for patients with bleeding disorders (but immune response may be reduced)

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Uncommon** Anxiety · asthenia · cough · crying · drowsiness · gastrointestinal discomfort · nasal complaints · pain · skin reactions · sleep disorders
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Allergic rhinitis · asthma · ataxia · burping · chest pain · constipation · dehydration · ear pain · eyelid crusting · feeling hot · flushing · gait abnormal · gastrointestinal disorders · infantile spitting up · influenza like illness · musculoskeletal stiffness · oropharyngeal pain · paraesthesia · respiratory tract congestion · screaming · sensation of tightness · sweat changes · synovitis
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Guillain-Barre syndrome · thrombocytopenia

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Suspension for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Neomycin

- ▶ **Avaxim** (Sanofi Pasteur)  
Avaxim vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £21.72 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £181.00
- ▶ **Havrix** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
Havrix Monodose vaccine suspension for injection 1ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £22.14 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £221.43  
Havrix Junior Monodose vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £16.77 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £167.68
- ▶ **VAQTA** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)  
VAQTA Paediatric vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £14.74

## Hepatitis A with typhoid vaccine

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, hepatitis A vaccine above, typhoid vaccine p. 794.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### HEPATYRIX®

##### Immunisation against hepatitis A and typhoid infection (primary course)

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 15–17 years: 1 mL for 1 dose, the deltoid region is the preferred site of injection; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced). The subcutaneous route may be used for patients with bleeding disorders, booster dose given using single component vaccines

##### VIATIM®

##### Immunisation against hepatitis A and typhoid infection (primary course)

- ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 16–17 years: 1 mL for 1 dose, the deltoid region is the preferred site of injection; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced). The subcutaneous route may be used for patients with bleeding disorders, booster dose given using single component vaccines

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Suspension for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Neomycin

▶ **VIATIM** (Sanofi Pasteur)

VIATIM vaccine suspension for injection 1ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £35.76

£ 788

## Hepatitis B vaccine

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### ENGERIX B®

##### **Immunisation against hepatitis B infection**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

▶ Neonate: 10 micrograms for 1 dose, then 10 micrograms after 1 month for 1 dose, followed by 10 micrograms after 5 months for 1 dose, anterolateral thigh is preferred site in neonates; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced), this dose should not be given to neonates born to hepatitis B surface antigen positive mother.

▶ Child 1 month–15 years: 10 micrograms for 1 dose, then 10 micrograms after 1 month for 1 dose, followed by 10 micrograms after 5 months for 1 dose, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in older children; anterolateral thigh is preferred site in infants and young children; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

▶ Child 16–17 years: 20 micrograms for 1 dose, then 20 micrograms after 1 month for 1 dose, followed by 20 micrograms after 5 months for 1 dose, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

##### **Immunisation against hepatitis B infection (accelerated schedule)**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

▶ Neonate: 10 micrograms every month for 3 doses, followed by 10 micrograms after 10 months for 1 dose, anterolateral thigh is preferred site in neonates; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced), this dose should not be given to neonates born to hepatitis B surface antigen positive mother.

▶ Child 1 month–15 years: 10 micrograms every month for 3 doses, followed by 10 micrograms after 10 months for 1 dose, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in older children; anterolateral thigh is preferred site in infants and young children; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

▶ Child 16–17 years: 20 micrograms every month for 3 doses, followed by 20 micrograms after 10 months for 1 dose, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

##### **Immunisation against hepatitis B infection, alternative accelerated schedule**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

▶ Child 11–15 years: 20 micrograms for 1 dose, followed by 20 micrograms after 6 months, this schedule is not suitable if high risk of infection between doses or if compliance with second dose uncertain, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

##### **Immunisation against hepatitis B infection (for neonates born to hepatitis B surface antigen positive mother)**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

▶ Neonate: 10 micrograms once a month for 3 doses, first dose to be given at birth with hepatitis B

immunoglobulin injection (separate site), followed by 10 micrograms after 10 months for 1 dose, anterolateral thigh is preferred site in neonates; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced).

##### **Immunisation against hepatitis B infection (in renal insufficiency, including haemodialysis patients)**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

▶ Neonate: 10 micrograms every month for 2 doses, followed by 10 micrograms after 5 months for 1 dose, immunisation schedule and booster doses may need to be adjusted in those with low antibody concentration, anterolateral thigh is preferred site in neonates; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced), this dose should not be given to neonates born to hepatitis B surface antigen positive mother.

▶ Child 1 month–15 years: 10 micrograms every month for 2 doses, followed by 10 micrograms after 5 months for 1 dose, immunisation schedule and booster doses may need to be adjusted in those with low antibody concentration, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in older children; anterolateral thigh is preferred site in infants and young children; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

▶ Child 16–17 years: 40 micrograms every month for 3 doses, followed by 40 micrograms after 4 months for 1 dose, immunisation schedule and booster doses may need to be adjusted in those with low antibody concentration, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

##### **Immunisation against hepatitis B infection (in renal insufficiency, including haemodialysis patients (accelerated schedule))**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

▶ Neonate: 10 micrograms every month for 3 doses, followed by 10 micrograms after 10 months for 1 dose, immunisation schedule and booster doses may need to be adjusted in those with low antibody concentration, anterolateral thigh is preferred site in neonates; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced), this dose should not be given to neonates born to hepatitis B surface antigen positive mother.

▶ Child 1 month–15 years: 10 micrograms every month for 3 doses, followed by 10 micrograms after 10 months for 1 dose, immunisation schedule and booster doses may need to be adjusted in those with low antibody concentration, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in older children; anterolateral thigh is preferred site in infants and young children; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

#### FENDRIX®

##### **Immunisation against hepatitis B infection in renal insufficiency (including pre-haemodialysis and haemodialysis patients)**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

▶ Child 15–17 years: 20 micrograms every month for 3 doses, followed by 20 micrograms after 4 months for 1 dose, immunisation schedule and booster doses may need to be adjusted in those with low antibody concentration, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

#### HBVAXPRO®

##### **Immunisation against hepatitis B infection**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

▶ Neonate: 5 micrograms for 1 dose, followed by 5 micrograms after 1 month for 1 dose, then



5 micrograms after 5 months for 1 dose, booster doses may be required in immunocompromised patients with low antibody concentration, anterolateral thigh is preferred site in neonates; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced), dose not to be used for neonate born to hepatitis B surface antigen positive mother.

- ▶ Child 1 month–15 years: 5 micrograms for 1 dose, followed by 5 micrograms after 1 month for 1 dose, then 5 micrograms after 5 months for 1 dose, booster doses may be required in immunocompromised patients with low antibody concentration, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in adults and older children; anterolateral thigh is preferred site in infants; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)
- ▶ Child 16–17 years: 10 micrograms for 1 dose, followed by 10 micrograms after 1 month for 1 dose, followed by 10 micrograms after 5 months for 1 dose, booster doses may be required in immunocompromised patients with low antibody concentration, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in adults and older children; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

#### Immunisation against hepatitis B infection (accelerated schedule)

##### ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: 5 micrograms every month for 3 doses, followed by 5 micrograms after 10 months for 1 dose, booster doses may be required in immunocompromised patients with low antibody concentration, anterolateral thigh is preferred site in neonates; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced), dose not to be used for neonate born to hepatitis B surface antigen positive mother.

- ▶ Child 1 month–15 years: 5 micrograms every month for 3 doses, followed by 5 micrograms after 10 months for 1 dose, booster doses may be required in immunocompromised patients with low antibody concentration, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in older children; anterolateral thigh is preferred site in infants; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)
- ▶ Child 16–17 years: 10 micrograms every month for 3 doses, followed by 10 micrograms after 10 months for 1 dose, booster doses may be required in immunocompromised patients with low antibody concentration, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in older children; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

#### Neonate born to hepatitis B surface antigen-positive mother

##### ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: 5 micrograms every month for 3 doses, first dose given at birth with hepatitis B immunoglobulin injection (separate site), followed by 5 micrograms after 10 months for 1 dose, anterolateral thigh is preferred site in neonates; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced).

#### Chronic haemodialysis patients

##### ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 16–17 years: 40 micrograms every month for 2 doses, followed by 40 micrograms after 5 months for 1 dose, booster doses may be required in those with low antibody concentration, deltoid muscle is preferred site of injection in older children; not to be injected into the buttock (vaccine efficacy reduced)

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Drowsiness · gastrointestinal disorder
- ▶ **Uncommon** Influenza like illness
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Sensation abnormal
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Anaphylactoid reaction · angioedema · apnoea · arthritis · encephalitis · encephalopathy · hypotension · meningitis · multiple sclerosis · muscle weakness · nerve disorders · paralysis · seizure · skin reactions · thrombocytopenia · vasculitis

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Suspension for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Thiomersal

##### ▶ **Engerix B** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Hepatitis B virus surface antigen 20 microgram per 1 ml** Engerix B 10micrograms/0.5ml vaccine suspension for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £9.67

Engerix B 20micrograms/1ml vaccine suspension for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £12.99 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £129.92

##### ▶ **Fendrix** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

**Hepatitis B virus surface antigen 40 microgram per 1 ml** Fendrix 20micrograms/0.5ml vaccine suspension for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £38.10

##### ▶ **HBVAXPRO** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Hepatitis B virus surface antigen 10 microgram per 1 ml** HBVAXPRO 10micrograms/1ml vaccine suspension for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £12.20  
HBVAXPRO 5micrograms/0.5ml vaccine suspension for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £8.95

**Hepatitis B virus surface antigen 40 microgram per**

**1 ml** HBVAXPRO 40micrograms/1ml vaccine suspension for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £27.60

£ 788

## Human papillomavirus vaccines

02-Mar-2017

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### CERVARIX®

#### Prevention of premalignant genital lesions and cervical cancer

##### ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 9–14 years (female): 0.5 mL for 1 dose, followed by 0.5 mL after 5–7 months for 1 dose, if second dose administered earlier than 5 months after the first, a third dose should be administered, dose to be administered into deltoid region, if the course is interrupted, it should be resumed (using the same vaccine) but not repeated, even if more than 24 months have elapsed since the first dose or if the girl is then aged 15 years or more.
- ▶ Child 15–17 years (female): 0.5 mL for 1 dose, followed by 0.5 mL after 1–2.5 months for 1 dose, then 0.5 mL after 5–12 months from the first dose for 1 dose, dose to be administered into deltoid region, if the course is interrupted, it should be resumed (using the same vaccine) but not repeated, allowing the appropriate interval between the remaining doses.

##### GARDASIL®

#### Prevention of premalignant genital (cervical, vulvar and vaginal) and anal lesions, cervical and anal cancers, and genital warts

##### ▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 9–14 years (female): 0.5 mL for 1 dose, followed by 0.5 mL after 6 months for 1 dose, if the second dose is administered earlier than 6 months after the first dose, a third dose should be administered, dose to be administered preferably into deltoid region or higher anterolateral thigh, if the course is continued →

interrupted, it should be resumed (using the same vaccine) but not repeated, even if more than 24 months have elapsed since the first dose or if the girl is then aged 15 years or more.

- ▶ Child 15–17 years (female): 0.5 mL for 1 dose, followed by 0.5 mL for 1 dose, second dose to be given at least 1 month after the first dose, then 0.5 mL for 1 dose, third dose to be given at least 3 months after the second dose, schedule should be completed within 12 months of the first dose, dose to be administered preferably into deltoid region or higher anterolateral thigh, if the course is interrupted, it should be resumed (using the same vaccine) but not repeated, allowing the appropriate interval between the remaining doses.

**Prevention of premalignant genital (cervical, vulvar, and vaginal) and anal lesions, cervical and anal cancers, and genital warts (alternative schedule)**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 9–14 years (female): 0.5 mL for 1 dose, followed by 0.5 mL for 1 dose, second dose to be given at least 1 month after the first dose, then 0.5 mL for 1 dose, third dose to be given at least 3 months after the second dose, schedule should be completed within 12 months of the first dose, dose to be administered preferably into deltoid region or higher anterolateral thigh, if the course is interrupted, it should be resumed (using the same vaccine) but not repeated, allowing the appropriate interval between the remaining doses.

● **UNLICENSED USE**

**GARDASIL®** Two dose schedule not licensed for use in girls aged 14 years.

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Pain in extremity
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Bronchospasm
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Acute disseminated encephalomyelitis · anaphylactoid reaction · asthenia · chills · Guillain-Barre syndrome · immune thrombocytopenic purpura · syncope

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful, but vaccination should be postponed until completion of pregnancy.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** To avoid confusion, prescribers should specify the brand to be dispensed.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Suspension for injection**

- ▶ **Cervarix** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
Cervarix vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £80.50
- ▶ **Gardasil** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)  
Gardasil vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £86.50

▶ BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ Child 2–9 years: 0.1 mL for 1 dose, followed by 0.1 mL for 1 dose, after at least 4 weeks. 0.1 mL dose to be administered to each nostril

- **UNLICENSED USE** Some products containing inactivated influenza vaccine (surface antigen) are not licensed for use in children under 4 years—check product literature.

**OPTAFLU®** Not licensed for use in children and adolescents under 18 years.

**FLUVIRIN®** Not licensed for use in children under 4 years.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Preparations marketed by Pfizer, or CSL Biotherapies in child under 5 years—increased risk of febrile convulsions

**FLUENZ TETRA®** Active wheezing · concomitant use with antiviral therapy for influenza · concomitant use with salicylates · severe asthma

**CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ Concomitant use with antiviral therapy for influenza Avoid influenza antiviral agents for at least 2 weeks after immunisation; avoid immunisation for at least 48 hours after stopping the influenza antiviral agent.

**ENZIRA®** Child under 5 years—increased risk of febrile convulsions

- **CAUTIONS** Increased risk of fever in child 5–9 years with preparations marketed by Pfizer or CSL Biotherapies—use alternative influenza vaccine if available

**ENZIRA®** Child 5–9 years (increased risk of fever)—use alternative influenza vaccine if available

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: live vaccines

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common**
- ▶ With intramuscular use Chills · hyperhidrosis · local reactions · pain
- ▶ With intranasal use Nasal complaints
- ▶ **Uncommon**
- ▶ With intranasal use Epistaxis · face oedema
- ▶ **Frequency not known**
- ▶ With intramuscular use Angioedema · encephalomyelitis · extensive swelling of vaccinated limb · febrile seizure · nerve disorders · nervous system disorder · paraesthesia · presyncope · shock · skin eruption generalised · syncope · thrombocytopenia · vasculitis
- ▶ With intranasal use Guillain-Barre syndrome

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Individuals with a history of egg allergy can be immunised with either an egg free influenza vaccine, if available, or an influenza vaccine with an ovalbumin content less than 120 nanograms/mL (facilities should be available to treat anaphylaxis). Vaccines with an ovalbumin content more than 120 nanograms/mL or where content is not stated should not be used in individuals with egg allergy. If an influenza vaccine containing ovalbumin is being considered in those with a history of anaphylaxis to egg or egg allergy with uncontrolled asthma, these individuals should be referred to a specialist in hospital.

- **PREGNANCY** Inactivated vaccines not known to be harmful.

**FLUENZ TETRA®** Avoid in pregnancy.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Inactivated vaccines not known to be harmful.

**FLUENZ TETRA®** Avoid in breast-feeding.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION**

**FLUARIX TETRA®** Ovalbumin content less than 100 nanograms/mL.

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

**FLUENZ TETRA®** Avoid close contact with severely immunocompromised patients for 1–2 weeks after vaccination

## Influenza vaccine

● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Annual immunisation against seasonal influenza**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 6 months–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

▶ BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION

- ▶ Child 2–17 years: 0.1 mL for 1 dose, dose to be administered into each nostril

**Annual immunisation against seasonal influenza (for children who have not received seasonal influenza vaccine previously)**

▶ BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 6 months–9 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, followed by 0.5 mL for 1 dose, after at least 4 weeks

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Spray

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Gelatin, gentamicin

#### ► **Fluenz Tetra** (AstraZeneca UK Ltd) ▼

Fluenz Tetra vaccine nasal suspension 0.2ml unit dose | 10 unit dose [PoM] £180.00

### Suspension for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Gentamicin, kanamycin, neomycin penicillins, polymyxin b

#### ► **Influenza vaccine (Non-proprietary)**

Influenza vaccine (split virion, inactivated) suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £5.22–£6.59 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £52.20–£65.90  
Quadrivalent vaccine (split virion, inactivated) suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £8.00 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £80.00

#### ► **Agrippal** (Seqirus Vaccines Ltd)

Agrippal vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £6.59 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £65.90

#### ► **Enzira** (Pfizer Ltd)

Enzira vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £5.25 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £52.50

#### ► **Fluarix Tetra** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd) ▼

Fluarix Tetra vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £9.94 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £99.40

#### ► **Imuvac** (Mylan)

Imuvac vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £6.59 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £65.90

#### ► **Influvac Sub-unit** (Mylan)

Influvac Sub-unit vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £5.22 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £52.20

F 788

## Japanese encephalitis vaccine

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Immunisation against Japanese encephalitis

##### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child 2 months–2 years: 0.25 mL every 28 days for 2 doses, anterolateral thigh is preferred site of injection in infants, the subcutaneous route may be used for patients with bleeding disorders
- Child 3–17 years: 0.5 mL every 28 days for 2 doses, deltoid muscle is preferred site in older children; anterolateral thigh is preferred in infants, the subcutaneous route may be used for patients with bleeding disorders

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

Abdominal pain • cough • influenza like illness

### ● PREGNANCY

Although manufacturer advises avoid because of limited information, miscarriage has been associated with Japanese encephalitis virus infection acquired during the first 2 trimesters of pregnancy.

## ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Solution for injection

#### ► **Japanese encephalitis vaccine (Non-proprietary)**

Japanese encephalitis GCVC vaccine solution for injection 1ml vials | 1 vial [S]  
Japanese encephalitis GCVC vaccine solution for injection 20ml vials | 1 vial [S]  
Japanese encephalitis GCVC vaccine solution for injection 10ml vials | 1 vial [S]

### Suspension for injection

#### ► **Ixiaro** (Valneva UK Ltd)

Ixiaro vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £59.50

## Measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live

F 788

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Primary immunisation against measles, mumps, and rubella (first dose)

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY DEEP SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Child 12–13 months: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

#### Primary immunisation against measles, mumps, and rubella (second dose)

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY DEEP SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Child 40 months–5 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

#### Rubella immunisation (in seronegative women, susceptible to rubella and in unimmunised, seronegative women, post-partum)

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY DEEP SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Females of childbearing potential: (consult product literature or local protocols)

**Children presenting for pre-school booster, who have not received the primary immunisation (first dose) | Immunisation for patients at school-leaving age or at entry into further education, who have not completed the primary immunisation course | Control of measles outbreak | Immunisation for patients travelling to areas where measles is endemic or epidemic, who have not completed the primary immunisation**

- BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY DEEP SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- Child 6 months–17 years: (consult product literature or local protocols)

### ● UNLICENSED USE

Not licensed for use in children under 9 months.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

#### MMR VACCINATION AND BOWEL DISEASE OR AUTISM

Reviews undertaken on behalf of the CSM, the Medical Research Council, and the Cochrane Collaboration, have not found any evidence of a link between MMR vaccination and bowel disease or autism. The Chief Medical Officers have advised that the MMR vaccine is the safest and best way to protect children against measles, mumps, and rubella. Information (including fact sheets and a list of references) may be obtained from [www.dh.gov.uk/immunisation](http://www.dh.gov.uk/immunisation).

### ● CAUTIONS

Antibody response to measles component may be reduced after immunoglobulin administration or blood transfusion—leave an interval of at least 3 months before MMR immunisation

### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Administration with other vaccines MMR vaccine should not be administered on the same day as yellow fever vaccine; there should be a 4-week minimum interval between the vaccines. When protection is rapidly required, the vaccines can be given at any interval and an additional dose of MMR may be considered.

MMR and varicella-zoster vaccine can be given on the same day or separated by a 4-week minimum interval. When protection is rapidly required, the vaccines can be given at any interval and an additional dose of the vaccine given second may be considered.

### ● INTERACTIONS

→ Appendix 1: live vaccines

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Uncommon** Increased risk of infection • rhinorrhoea

- **Frequency not known** Anaphylactoid reaction · angioedema · arthritis · ataxia · cough · encephalopathy · eye inflammation · meningitis asepti · nerve deafness · nerve disorders · oculomotor nerve paralysis · oedema · panniculitis · papillitis · paraesthesia · regional lymphadenopathy · respiratory disorders · seizures · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · subacute sclerosing panencephalitis · syncope · throat pain · thrombocytopenia · vasculitis

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Malaise, fever, or a rash can occur after the first dose of MMR vaccine—most commonly about a week after vaccination and lasting about 2 to 3 days. Febrile seizures occur rarely 6 to 11 days after MMR vaccination (the incidence is lower than that following measles infection).

**Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura** Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura has occurred rarely following MMR vaccination, usually within 6 weeks of the first dose. The risk of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura after MMR vaccine is much less than the risk after infection with wild measles or rubella virus. Children who develop idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura within 6 weeks of the first dose of MMR should undergo serological testing before the second dose is due; if the results suggest incomplete immunity against measles, mumps or rubella then a second dose of MMR is recommended. Samples should be sent to the Virus Reference Laboratory of the Health Protection Agency.

**Frequency of side effects** Adverse reactions are considerably less frequent after the second dose of MMR vaccine than after the first.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** MMR vaccine can be given safely even when the child has had an anaphylactic reaction to food containing egg. Dislike of eggs, refusal to eat egg, or confirmed anaphylactic reactions to egg-containing food is not a contra-indication to MMR vaccination. Children with a confirmed anaphylactic reaction to the MMR vaccine should be assessed by a specialist.
- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Exclude pregnancy before immunisation. Avoid pregnancy for at least 1 month after vaccination.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Available as part of childhood immunisation schedule from health organisations or ImmForm [www.immform.dh.gov.uk](http://www.immform.dh.gov.uk).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder and solvent for suspension for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Gelatin, neomycin

##### ► **M-M-RVAXPRO** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

M-M-RVAXPRO vaccine powder and solvent for suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £11.00

#### **Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Neomycin

##### ► **Priorix** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Priorix vaccine powder and solvent for solution for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £7.64

788

## Rabies vaccine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Pre-exposure prophylaxis**

##### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child: 1 mL for 2 doses (on days 0 and 7), followed by 1 mL for 1 dose (on day 28), to be administered in deltoid region or anterolateral thigh in infants, for those at continuous risk, measure plasma-concentration of antirabies antibodies every 6 months

and give a booster dose if the titre is less than 0.5 units/mL, final dose may be given from day 21, if insufficient time before travel

#### **Pre-exposure prophylaxis booster dose (for patients at frequent risk of exposure)**

##### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child: 1 mL after 1 year for 1 dose, to be given 1 year after primary course is completed, then 1 mL every 3–5 years, to be administered in deltoid region or anterolateral thigh in infants, the frequency of booster doses may alternatively be determined according to plasma-concentration of antirabies antibodies

#### **Pre-exposure prophylaxis booster dose (for patients at infrequent risk of exposure)**

##### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child: 1 mL for 1 dose, to be given 10 years after primary course is completed, administered in deltoid region or anterolateral thigh in infants

#### **Post-exposure prophylaxis of fully immunised individuals (who have previously received pre-exposure or post-exposure prophylaxis with cell-derived rabies vaccine)**

##### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child (administered on expert advice): 1 mL for 1 dose, followed by 1 mL after 3–7 days for 1 dose, to be administered in deltoid region or anterolateral thigh in infants, rabies immunoglobulin is not necessary

#### **Post-exposure treatment for unimmunised individuals (or those whose prophylaxis is possibly incomplete)**

##### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child (administered on expert advice): 1 mL 5 times a month for 1 month, doses should be given on days 0, 3, 7, 14, and the fifth dose is given between day 28–30, to be administered in deltoid region or anterolateral thigh in infants, depending on the level of risk (determined by factors such as the nature of the bite and the country where it was sustained), rabies immunoglobulin is given to unimmunised individuals on day 0 or within 7 days of starting the course of rabies vaccine, the immunisation course can be discontinued if it is proved that the individual was not at risk

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: rabies vaccine

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- **Common or very common** Asthenia · gastrointestinal discomfort
- **Rare or very rare** Anaphylactic shock · angioedema · chills · encephalitis · Guillain-Barre syndrome · hyperhidrosis · paraesthesia · presyncope · syncope · vertigo
- **PREGNANCY** Because of the potential consequences of untreated rabies exposure and because rabies vaccination has not been associated with fetal abnormalities, pregnancy is not considered a contra-indication to post-exposure prophylaxis. Immunisation against rabies is indicated during pregnancy if there is substantial risk of exposure to rabies and rapid access to post-exposure prophylaxis is likely to be limited.

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Neomycin

##### ► **Rabipur** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)

Rabipur vaccine powder and solvent for solution for injection 1ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £34.56

Rabipur vaccine powder and solvent for solution for injection 1ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £34.56

## Rotavirus vaccine

11-Dec-2017

- **DRUG ACTION** Rotavirus vaccine is a live, oral vaccine that protects young children against gastro-enteritis caused by rotavirus infection.

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Immunisation against gastro-enteritis caused by rotavirus

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 6–23 weeks: 1.5 mL for 2 doses separated by an interval of at least 4 weeks, first dose must be given between 6–14 weeks of age; course should be completed before 24 weeks of age (preferably before 16 weeks)

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

#### PUBLIC HEALTH ENGLAND: UPDATE TO GREEN BOOK (OCTOBER 2017)

Public Health England advises that immunisation with live vaccines should be delayed until 6 months of age in children born to mothers who received immunosuppressive biological therapy during pregnancy. In practice, this means that children born to mothers who were on immunosuppressive biological therapy during pregnancy will not be eligible to receive rotavirus vaccine.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** History of intussusception · predisposition to intussusception · severe combined immunosuppression

#### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Immunosuppression** With the exception of severe combined immunodeficiency (and children born to mothers who received immunosuppressive biological therapy during pregnancy, see *Important safety information*), rotavirus vaccine is not contra-indicated in immunosuppressed patients—benefit from vaccination is likely to outweigh the risk, if there is any doubt, seek specialist advice.

- **CAUTIONS** Diarrhoea (postpone vaccination) · immunosuppressed close contacts · vomiting (postpone vaccination)

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The rotavirus vaccine virus is excreted in the stool and may be transmitted to close contacts; however, vaccination of those with immunosuppressed close contacts may protect the contacts from wild-type rotavirus disease and outweigh any risk from transmission of vaccine virus.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: live vaccines

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Uncommon** Abdominal pain · dermatitis · gastrointestinal disorders
- **Frequency not known** Apnoea · gastroenteritis · haematochezia

- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE** The rotavirus vaccine virus is excreted in the stool and may be transmitted to close contacts; carers of a recently vaccinated baby should be advised of the need to wash their hands after changing the baby's nappies.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral suspension

- **Rotarix** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
Rotarix vaccine live oral suspension 1.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 unit dose [PoM] £34.76  
Rotarix vaccine live oral suspension 1.5ml tube | 1 tube [PoM] £34.76

## Tick-borne encephalitis vaccine, inactivated

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Initial immunisation against tick-borne encephalitis

##### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child 1–15 years: 0.25 mL for 1 dose, followed by 0.25 mL after 1–3 months for 1 dose, then 0.25 mL after further 5–12 months for 1 dose, to achieve more rapid protection, second dose may be given 14 days after first dose, dose to be administered in deltoid region or anterolateral thigh in infants, in immunocompromised patients (including those receiving immunosuppressants), antibody concentration may be measured 4 weeks after second dose and dose repeated if protective levels not achieved
- Child 16–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose, followed by 0.5 mL after 1–3 months for 1 dose, then 0.5 mL after further 5–12 months for 1 dose, to achieve more rapid protection, second dose may be given 14 days after first dose, dose to be administered in deltoid region, in immunocompromised patients (including those receiving immunosuppressants), antibody concentration may be measured 4 weeks after second dose and dose repeated if protective levels not achieved

#### Immunisation against tick-borne encephalitis, booster doses

##### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Child 1–17 years: First dose to be given within 3 years after initial course completed and then every 3–5 years, dose to be administered in deltoid region or anterolateral thigh in infants (consult product literature)

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Restlessness · sleep disorder
- **Uncommon** Chills · gastrointestinal discomfort
- **Rare or very rare** Asthenia · dyspnoea · encephalitis · erythema · eye pain · gait abnormal · hyperhidrosis · influenza like illness · meningism · motor dysfunction · musculoskeletal stiffness · nerve disorders · oedema · pain · seizures · sensory disorder · tinnitus · vertigo · vision disorders
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Individuals with evidence of previous anaphylactic reaction to egg should not be given tick-borne encephalitis vaccine.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Suspension for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Gentamicin, neomycin

##### ► TicoVac (Pfizer Ltd)

TicoVac Junior vaccine suspension for injection 0.25ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £28.00  
TicoVac vaccine suspension for injection 0.5ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £32.00

## Varicella-zoster vaccine

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### VARILRIX®

#### Prevention of varicella infection (chickenpox)

##### ► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

- Child 1–17 years: 0.5 mL every 4–6 weeks for 2 doses, to be administered into the deltoid region or anterolateral thigh

continued →



## VARIVAX®

**Prevention of varicella infection (chickenpox)**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1–12 years: 0.5 mL for 2 doses, interval of at least 4 weeks between each dose, to be administered into the deltoid region (or higher anterolateral thigh in young children)
- ▶ Child 13–17 years: 0.5 mL every 4–8 weeks for 2 doses, to be administered preferably into the deltoid region

**Prevention of varicella infection (chickenpox) in children with asymptomatic HIV infection**

- ▶ BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1–12 years: 0.5 mL every 12 weeks for 2 doses, to be administered into the deltoid region (or higher anterolateral thigh in young children)

- **CAUTIONS** Post-vaccination close contact with susceptible individuals

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Rarely, the varicella–zoster vaccine virus has been transmitted from the vaccinated individual to close contacts. Therefore, contact with the following should be avoided if a vaccine-related cutaneous rash develops within 4–6 weeks of the first or second dose:

- varicella-susceptible pregnant women;
- individuals at high risk of severe varicella, including those with immunodeficiency or those receiving immunosuppressive therapy.

Healthcare workers who develop a generalised papular or vesicular rash on vaccination should avoid contact with patients until the lesions have crusted. Those who develop a localised rash after vaccination should cover the lesions and be allowed to continue working unless in contact with patients at high risk of severe varicella.

- ▶ Administration with MMR vaccine Varicella–zoster and MMR vaccines can be given on the same day or separated by a 4-week minimum interval. When protection is rapidly required, the vaccines can be given at any interval and an additional dose of the vaccine given second may be considered.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: live vaccines

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Uncommon** Cough · drowsiness · increased risk of infection
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Abdominal pain · conjunctivitis · Kawasaki disease · seizure · stroke · thrombocytopenia · vasculitis

- **CONCEPTION AND CONTRACEPTION** Avoid pregnancy for 3 months after vaccination.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder and solvent for suspension for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Gelatin, neomycin

- ▶ **Varivax** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)  
Varivax vaccine powder and solvent for suspension for injection 0.5ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £30.28

**Powder and solvent for solution for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Neomycin

- ▶ **Varilrix** (GlaxoSmithKline UK Ltd)  
Varilrix vaccine powder and solvent for solution for injection 0.5ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £27.31

**Yellow fever vaccine, live**● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Immunisation against yellow fever**

- ▶ BY DEEP SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 6–8 months (administered on expert advice): Infants under 9 months should be vaccinated only if the risk of yellow fever is high and unavoidable (consult product literature or local protocols)
- ▶ Child 9 months–17 years: 0.5 mL for 1 dose

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Children under 6 months · history of thymus dysfunction

● **CAUTIONS****CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ Administration with MMR vaccine Yellow fever and MMR vaccines should not be administered on the same day; there should be a 4-week minimum interval between the vaccines. When protection is rapidly required, the vaccines can be given at any interval and an additional dose of MMR may be considered.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: live vaccines

● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Asthenia · crying · drowsiness
- ▶ **Uncommon** Abdominal pain
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Rhinitis · yellow fever vaccine-associated neurotropic disease · yellow fever vaccine-associated viscerotropic disease
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Anaphylactoid reaction · angioedema · influenza like illness · paraesthesia

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Very rare vaccine-associated adverse effects may occur, such as viscerotropic disease (yellow-fever vaccine-associated viscerotropic disease, YEL-AVD), a syndrome which may include metabolic acidosis, muscle and liver cirrhosis, and multi-organ failure. Neurological disorders (yellow fever vaccine-associated neurotropic disease, YEL-AND) such as encephalitis have also been reported. These very rare adverse effects usually occur after the first dose of yellow fever vaccine in those with no previous immunity.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Yellow fever vaccine should only be considered under the guidance of a specialist in individuals with evidence of previous anaphylactic reaction to egg.
- **PREGNANCY** Live yellow fever vaccine should not be given during pregnancy because there is a theoretical risk of fetal infection. Pregnant women should be advised not to travel to areas at high risk of yellow fever. If exposure cannot be avoided during pregnancy, then the vaccine should be given if the risk from disease in the mother outweighs the risk to the fetus from vaccination.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid; seek specialist advice if exposure to virus cannot be avoided.

● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder and solvent for suspension for injection**

- ▶ **Stamaril** (Sanofi Pasteur)  
Stamaril vaccine powder and solvent for suspension for injection 0.5ml vials | 1 vial [PoM] £33.10

# Chapter 15

## Anaesthesia

CONTENTS

<b>General anaesthesia</b>	page 803
<b>1 Anaesthesia adjuvants</b>	809
1.1 Neuromuscular blockade	812
1.2 Neuromuscular blockade reversal	816
1.3 Peri-operative analgesia	817

1.4 Peri-operative sedation	page 820
<b>2 Malignant hyperthermia</b>	821
<b>Local anaesthesia</b>	822

## General anaesthesia

### Anaesthesia (general)

Overview

Several different types of drug are given together during general anaesthesia. Anaesthesia is induced with either a volatile drug given by inhalation or with an intravenously administered drug; anaesthesia is maintained with an intravenous or inhalational anaesthetic. Analgesics, usually short-acting opioids, are also used. The use of neuromuscular blocking drugs necessitates intermittent positive-pressure ventilation. Following surgery, anticholinesterases can be given to reverse the effects of neuromuscular blocking drugs; specific antagonists can be used to reverse central and respiratory depression caused by some drugs used in surgery. A local topical anaesthetic can be used to reduce pain at the injection site.

Individual requirements vary considerably and the recommended doses are only a guide. Smaller doses are indicated in ill, shocked, or debilitated children and in significant hepatic impairment, while robust individuals may require larger doses. The required dose of induction agent may be less if the patient has been premedicated with a sedative agent or if an opioid analgesic has been used.

Intravenous anaesthetics

Intravenous anaesthetics may be used either to induce anaesthesia or for maintenance of anaesthesia throughout surgery. Intravenous anaesthetics nearly all produce their effect in one arm-brain circulation time. Extreme care is required in surgery of the mouth, pharynx, or larynx where the airway may be difficult to maintain (e.g. in the presence of a tumour in the pharynx or larynx).

To facilitate tracheal intubation, induction is usually followed by a neuromuscular blocking drug or a short-acting opioid.

The doses of all intravenous anaesthetic drugs should be titrated to effect (except when using 'rapid sequence induction').

Total intravenous anaesthesia

This is a technique in which major surgery is carried out with all drugs given intravenously. Respiration can be spontaneous, or controlled with oxygen-enriched air. Neuromuscular blocking drugs can be used to provide relaxation and prevent reflex muscle movements. The main problem to be overcome is the assessment of depth of anaesthesia. Target Controlled Infusion (TCI) systems can be used to titrate intravenous anaesthetic infusions to predicted plasma-drug concentrations; specific models with paediatric pharmacokinetic data should be used for children.

Drugs used for intravenous anaesthesia

Propofol p. 805, the most widely used intravenous anaesthetic, can be used for induction or maintenance of anaesthesia in children, but it is not commonly used in neonates. Propofol is associated with rapid recovery and less hangover effect than other intravenous anaesthetics. Propofol can also be used for sedation during diagnostic procedures.

Thiopental sodium p. 221 is a barbiturate that is used for induction of anaesthesia, but has no analgesic properties. Induction is generally smooth and rapid, but dose-related cardiovascular and respiratory depression can occur. Awakening from a moderate dose of thiopental sodium is rapid because the drug redistributes into other tissues, particularly fat. However, metabolism is slow and sedative effects can persist for 24 hours. Repeated doses have a cumulative effect particularly in neonates and recovery is much slower.

Etomidate p. 804 is an intravenous agent associated with rapid recovery without a hangover effect. Etomidate causes less hypotension than thiopental sodium and propofol during induction. It produces a high incidence of extraneous muscle movements, which can be minimised by an opioid analgesic or a short-acting benzodiazepine given just before induction.

Ketamine p. 820 causes less hypotension than thiopental sodium and propofol during induction. It is sometimes used in children requiring repeat anaesthesia (such as for serial burns dressings), however recovery is relatively slow and there is a high incidence of extraneous muscle movements. Ketamine can cause hallucinations, nightmares, and other transient psychotic effects; these can be reduced by a benzodiazepine such as diazepam p. 220 or midazolam p. 223.

Inhalational anaesthetics

Inhalational anaesthetics include gases and volatile liquids. *Gaseous anaesthetics* require suitable equipment for storage and administration. *Volatile liquid anaesthetics* are administered using calibrated vaporisers, using air, oxygen, or nitrous oxide-oxygen mixtures as the carrier gas. To prevent hypoxia, the inspired gas mixture should contain a minimum of 25% oxygen at all times. Higher concentrations of oxygen (greater than 30%) are usually required during inhalational anaesthesia when nitrous oxide p. 808 is being administered.

Volatile liquid anaesthetics

Volatile liquid anaesthetics can be used for induction and maintenance of anaesthesia, and following induction with an intravenous anaesthetic.

Isflurane p. 807 is a volatile liquid anaesthetic. Heart rhythm is generally stable during isflurane anaesthesia, but heart-rate can rise. Systemic arterial pressure and cardiac

output can fall, owing to a decrease in systemic vascular resistance. Muscle relaxation occurs and the effects of muscle relaxant drugs are potentiated. Isoflurane is not recommended for induction of anaesthesia in infants and children of all ages because of the occurrence of cough, breath-holding, desaturation, increased secretions, and laryngospasm. Isoflurane is the preferred inhalational anaesthetic for use in obstetrics.

Desflurane p. 807 is a rapid acting volatile liquid anaesthetic; it is reported to have about one-fifth the potency of isoflurane. Emergence and recovery from anaesthesia are particularly rapid because of its low solubility. Desflurane is not recommended for induction of anaesthesia as it is irritant to the upper respiratory tract.

Sevoflurane p. 808 is a rapid acting volatile liquid anaesthetic and is more potent than desflurane. Emergence and recovery are particularly rapid, but slower than desflurane. Sevoflurane is non-irritant and is therefore often used for inhalational induction of anaesthesia.

### Nitrous oxide

Nitrous oxide is used for maintenance of anaesthesia and, in sub-anaesthetic concentrations, for analgesia. For anaesthesia, it is commonly used in a concentration of 50 to 66% in oxygen as part of a balanced technique in association with other inhalational or intravenous agents. Nitrous oxide is unsatisfactory as a sole anaesthetic owing to lack of potency, but is useful as part of a combination of drugs since it allows a significant reduction in dosage.

For analgesia (without loss of consciousness), a mixture of nitrous oxide and oxygen containing 50% of each gas (*Entonox*<sup>®</sup>, *Equanox*<sup>®</sup>) is used. Self-administration using a demand valve may be used in children who are able to self-regulate their intake (usually over 5 years of age) for painful dressing changes, as an aid to postoperative physiotherapy, for wound debridement and in emergency ambulances.

Nitrous oxide may have a deleterious effect if used in children with an air-containing closed space since nitrous oxide diffuses into such a space with a resulting increase in pressure. This effect may be dangerous in conditions such as pneumothorax, which may enlarge to compromise respiration, or in the presence of intracranial air after head injury, entrapped air following recent underwater dive, or recent intra-ocular gas injection.

### Malignant hyperthermia

Malignant hyperthermia is a rare but potentially lethal complication of anaesthesia. It is characterised by a rapid rise in temperature, increased muscle rigidity, tachycardia, and acidosis. The most common triggers of malignant hyperthermia are the volatile anaesthetics. Suxamethonium chloride p. 813 has also been implicated, but malignant hyperthermia is more likely if it is given following a volatile anaesthetic. Volatile anaesthetics and suxamethonium chloride should be avoided during anaesthesia in children at high risk of malignant hyperthermia.

Dantrolene sodium p. 821 is used in the treatment of malignant hyperthermia.

## Sedation, anaesthesia, and resuscitation in dental practice

### Overview

Sedation for dental procedures should be limited to conscious sedation whenever possible. Nitrous oxide p. 808 alone and midazolam p. 223 are effective for many children.

For details of anaesthesia, sedation, and resuscitation in dental practice see *A Conscious Decision: A review of the use of general anaesthesia and conscious sedation in primary dental care*; report by a group chaired by the Chief Medical Officer and Chief Dental Officer, July 2000 and associated

documents. Further details can also be found in *Standards for Conscious Sedation in the Provision of Dental Care*; report of an Intercollegiate Advisory Committee for Sedation in Dentistry, 2015 [www.rcseng.ac.uk/fds/Documents/dental-sedation-report-2015-web-v2.pdf](http://www.rcseng.ac.uk/fds/Documents/dental-sedation-report-2015-web-v2.pdf).

## Surgery and long-term medication

### Overview

The risk of losing disease control on stopping long-term medication before surgery is often greater than the risk posed by continuing it during surgery. It is vital that the anaesthetist knows about **all** drugs that a patient is (or has been) taking.

Patients with adrenal atrophy resulting from long-term corticosteroid use may suffer a precipitous fall in blood pressure unless corticosteroid cover is provided during anaesthesia and in the immediate postoperative period. Anaesthetists must therefore know whether a patient is, or has been, receiving corticosteroids (including high-dose inhaled corticosteroids).

Other drugs that should normally not be stopped before surgery include drugs for epilepsy, asthma, immunosuppression, and metabolic, endocrine and cardiovascular disorders (but see potassium sparing diuretics). Expert advice is required for children receiving antivirals for HIV infection. See general advice on surgery in children with diabetes in Diabetes, surgery and medical illness p. 450.

Children taking antiplatelet medication or an oral anticoagulant present an increased risk for surgery. In these circumstances, the anaesthetist and surgeon should assess the relative risks and decide jointly whether the antiplatelet or the anticoagulant drug should be stopped or replaced with heparin (unfractionated) p. 95 or low molecular weight heparin therapy.

Drugs that should be stopped before surgery include combined oral contraceptives, see Contraceptives, hormonal p. 493. If antidepressants need to be stopped, they should be withdrawn gradually to avoid withdrawal symptoms. Tricyclic antidepressants need not be stopped, but there may be an increased risk of arrhythmias and hypotension (and dangerous interactions with vasopressor drugs); therefore, the anaesthetist should be informed if they are not stopped. Lithium should be stopped 24 hours before major surgery but the normal dose can be continued for minor surgery (with careful monitoring of fluids and electrolytes). Potassium-sparing diuretics may need to be withheld on the morning of surgery because hyperkalaemia may develop if renal perfusion is impaired or if there is tissue damage. Herbal medicines may be associated with adverse effects when given with anaesthetic drugs and consideration should be given to stopping them before surgery.

## ANAESTHETICS, GENERAL > INTRAVENOUS

### Etomidate

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Induction of anaesthesia

##### ► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child 1 month–14 years: 150–300 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 60 mg), to be administered over 30–60 seconds (60 seconds for children in whom hypotension might be hazardous), increased if necessary to 400 micrograms/kg
- Child 15–17 years: 150–300 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 60 mg), to be administered over 30–60 seconds (60 seconds for children in whom hypotension might be hazardous)

- **UNLICENSED USE** *Hypnomidate*® licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer). *Etomidate-Lipuro*® not licensed for children under 6 months except for imperative indications during inpatient treatment. Doses in *BNF for Children* may differ from those in the product literature.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Etomidate should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in its use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management, and when resuscitation equipment is available.

- **CAUTIONS** Acute circulatory failure (shock) · adrenal insufficiency · Avoid in Acute porphyrias p. 603 · cardiovascular disease · fixed cardiac output · hypovolaemia
- **CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - Adrenal insufficiency Etomidate suppresses adrenocortical function, particularly during continuous administration, and it should not be used for maintenance of anaesthesia. It should be used with caution in patients with underlying adrenal insufficiency, for example, those with sepsis.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: etomidate
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Apnoea · hypotension · movement disorders · nausea · respiratory disorders · skin reactions · vascular disorders · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Arrhythmias · cough · hiccups · hypersalivation · hypertension · muscle rigidity · neuromuscular dysfunction · nystagmus
  - **Frequency not known** Adrenal insufficiency · atrioventricular block · cardiac arrest · embolism and thrombosis · seizures · shock · Stevens-Johnson syndrome · trismus
- **SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION**
  - **Pain on injection** Can be reduced by injecting into a larger vein or by giving an opioid analgesic just before induction.
  - **Extraneous muscle movements** Extraneous muscle movements can be minimised by an opioid analgesic or a short-acting benzodiazepine given just before induction.
- **PREGNANCY** May depress neonatal respiration if used during delivery.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
  - **Dose adjustments** Reduce dose in liver cirrhosis.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** To be administered over 30–60 seconds (60 seconds in patients in whom hypotension might be hazardous).
- **PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**
  - **Driving and skilled tasks** Patients given sedatives and analgesics during minor outpatient procedures should be very carefully warned about the risk of driving or undertaking skilled tasks afterwards. For a short general anaesthetic the risk extends to **at least 24 hours** after administration. Responsible persons should be available to take patients home. The dangers of taking **alcohol** should also be emphasised.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Propylene glycol

- **Hypnomidate** (Piramal Critical Care Ltd)  
Etomidate 2 mg per 1 ml Hypnomidate 20mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule (PoM) £6.90

#### Emulsion for injection

- **Etomidate-Lipuro** (B.Braun Medical Ltd)  
Etomidate 2 mg per 1 ml Etomidate-Lipuro 20mg/10ml emulsion for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule (PoM) £16.09

## Propofol

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Induction of anaesthesia using 0.5% or 1% injection

- **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- Child 1 month–16 years: Usual dose 2.5–4 mg/kg, dose adjusted according to age, body-weight and response
- Child 17 years: Usual dose 1.5–2.5 mg/kg, to be administered at a rate of 20–40 mg every 10 seconds until response

##### Induction of anaesthesia using 2% injection

- **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- Child 3–16 years: Usual dose 2.5–4 mg/kg, dose adjusted according to age, body-weight and response
- Child 17 years: Usual dose 1.5–2.5 mg/kg, to be administered at a rate of 20–40 mg every 10 seconds until response

##### Maintenance of anaesthesia using 1% injection

- **BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- Child 1 month–16 years: Usual dose 9–15 mg/kg/hour, dose adjusted according to age, body-weight and response
- Child 17 years: Usual dose 4–12 mg/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

##### Maintenance of anaesthesia using 2% injection

- **BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- Child 3–16 years: Usual dose 9–15 mg/kg/hour, dose adjusted according to age, body-weight and response
- Child 17 years: Usual dose 4–12 mg/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

##### Sedation of ventilated patients in intensive care using 1% or 2% injection

- **BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- Child 16–17 years: Usual dose 0.3–4 mg/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

##### Induction of sedation for surgical and diagnostic procedures using 0.5% or 1% injection

- **BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**
- Child 1 month–16 years: Initially 1–2 mg/kg, dose and rate of administration adjusted according to desired level of sedation and response
- Child 17 years: Initially 0.5–1 mg/kg, to be administered over 1–5 minutes, dose and rate of administration adjusted according to desired level of sedation and response

##### Maintenance of sedation for surgical and diagnostic procedures using 0.5% injection

- **INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- Child 17 years: Initially 1.5–4.5 mg/kg/hour, dose and rate of administration adjusted according to desired level of sedation and response, followed by (by slow intravenous injection) 10–20 mg, (if rapid increase in sedation required)

##### Maintenance of sedation for surgical and diagnostic procedures using 1% injection

- **INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**
- Child 1 month–16 years: Usual dose 1.5–9 mg/kg/hour, dose and rate of administration adjusted according to desired level of sedation and response, followed by (by slow intravenous injection) up to 1 mg/kg, (if rapid increase in sedation required)
- Child 17 years: Initially 1.5–4.5 mg/kg/hour, dose and rate of administration adjusted according to desired level of sedation and response, followed by continued →

(by slow intravenous injection) 10–20 mg, (if rapid increase in sedation required)

#### Maintenance of sedation for surgical and diagnostic procedures using 2% injection

##### ► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child 3–16 years: Usual dose 1.5–9 mg/kg/hour, dose and rate of administration adjusted according to desired level of sedation and response
- Child 17 years: Initially 1.5–4.5 mg/kg/hour, dose and rate of administration adjusted according to desired level of sedation and response, followed by (by slow intravenous injection) 10–20 mg, using 0.5% or 1% injection (if rapid increase in sedation required)

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Propofol should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in its use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management, and when resuscitation equipment is available.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Children under 16 years receiving intensive care

#### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

Use in intensive care associated with a risk of propofol infusion syndrome (potentially fatal effects, including metabolic acidosis, arrhythmias, cardiac failure, rhabdomyolysis, hyperlipidaemia, hyperkalaemia, hepatomegaly, and renal failure).

- **CAUTIONS** Acute circulatory failure (shock) · cardiac impairment · cardiovascular disease · epilepsy · fixed cardiac output · hypotension · hypovolaemia · raised intracranial pressure · respiratory impairment
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: propofol
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Apnoea · arrhythmias · headache · hypotension · pain · nausea · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Thrombosis
  - **Rare or very rare** Epileptiform seizure (may be delayed) · pancreatitis · post procedural complications · pulmonary oedema · sexual disinhibition · urine discolouration
  - **Frequency not known** Drug use disorders · dyskinesia · euphoric mood · heart failure · hepatomegaly · hyperkalaemia · hyperlipidaemia · metabolic acidosis · renal failure · respiratory depression · rhabdomyolysis

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Bradycardia** Bradycardia may be profound and may be treated with intravenous administration of an antimuscarinic drug.

**Pain on injection** Pain on injection can be reduced by intravenous lidocaine.

**Propofol infusion syndrome** Prolonged infusion of propofol doses exceeding 4mg/kg/hour may result in potentially fatal effects, including metabolic acidosis, arrhythmias, cardiac failure, rhabdomyolysis, hyperlipidaemia, hyperkalaemia, hepatomegaly, and renal failure.

- **PREGNANCY** May depress neonatal respiration if used during delivery.  
**Dose adjustments** Max. dose for maintenance of anaesthesia 6 mg/kg/hour.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor blood-lipid concentration if risk of fat overload or if sedation longer than 3 days.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Shake before use; microbiological filter not recommended; may be administered via a Y-piece close to injection site co-administered with Glucose 5% or Sodium chloride 0.9%. 0.5% **emulsion** for injection or intermittent infusion; may be administered undiluted, or diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium chloride 0.9%; dilute to a concentration not less than 1 mg/mL. 1% **emulsion** for injection or infusion; may be administered undiluted, or diluted with Glucose 5% (*Diprivan*®) or (*Propofol-Lipuro*®) or Sodium chloride 0.9% (*Propofol-Lipuro*® only); dilute to a concentration not less than 2 mg/mL; use within 6 hours of preparation. 2% **emulsion** for infusion; do not dilute.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Patients given sedatives and analgesics during minor outpatient procedures should be very carefully warned about the risk of driving or undertaking skilled tasks afterwards. For a short general anaesthetic the risk extends to **at least 24 hours** after administration. Responsible persons should be available to take patients home. The dangers of taking **alcohol** should also be emphasised.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Emulsion for infusion

##### ► Propofol (Non-proprietary)

**Propofol 10 mg per 1 ml** Propofol 500mg/50ml emulsion for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £3.00 (Hospital only)  
Propofol-Lipuro 1% emulsion for infusion 50ml vials | 10 vial [PoM] £97.56 (Hospital only)

Propofol 1g/100ml emulsion for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £4.00 (Hospital only)

**Propofol 20 mg per 1 ml** Propofol 1g/50ml emulsion for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £3.50 (Hospital only)

##### ► Diprivan (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)

**Propofol 10 mg per 1 ml** Diprivan 1% emulsion for infusion 50ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £10.68

**Propofol 20 mg per 1 ml** Diprivan 2% emulsion for infusion 50ml pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £15.16

#### Emulsion for injection

##### ► Propofol (Non-proprietary)

**Propofol 10 mg per 1 ml** Propofol 200mg/20ml emulsion for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £4.00 (Hospital only)

##### ► Diprivan (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)

**Propofol 10 mg per 1 ml** Diprivan 1% emulsion for injection 20ml ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £15.36 (Hospital only)

##### ► Propofol-Lipuro (B.Braun Melsungen AG)

**Propofol 5 mg per 1 ml** Propofol-Lipuro 0.5% emulsion for injection 20ml ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £15.15

## ANAESTHETICS, GENERAL > VOLATILE LIQUID

### Volatile halogenated anaesthetics

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management, and when resuscitation equipment is available.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Susceptibility to malignant hyperthermia
- **CAUTIONS** Can trigger malignant hyperthermia · neuromuscular disease (inhalational anaesthetics are very rarely associated with hyperkalaemia, resulting in cardiac arrhythmias and death) · raised intracranial pressure (can increase cerebrospinal pressure)



### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Agitation · apnoea · arrhythmias · chills · coagulation disorder · conjunctivitis · cough · dizziness · drowsiness · fever · headache · hepatic disorders · hypersalivation · hypertension · hypotension · nausea · respiratory disorders · temperature regulation disorders · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Asthma · atrioventricular block · confusion · hypoxia · muscle complaints · myocardial infarction · myocardial ischaemia · vasodilation
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Abdominal pain · asthenia · breath holding · carboxyhaemoglobinemia · cardiac arrest · chest discomfort · cognitive impairment · delirium · dyspnoea · dystonia · electrolyte imbalance · haemorrhage · heart failure · ileus · intracranial pressure increased · malaise · metabolic acidosis · mood altered (that can last several days) · myoglobinuria · nephritis tubulointerstitial · oedema · pancreatitis · QT interval prolongation · rhabdomyolysis · seizure · shock · skin reactions · ventricular dysfunction · visual acuity decreased

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Can cause hepatotoxicity in those sensitised to halogenated anaesthetics.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Volatile liquid anaesthetics are administered using calibrated vaporisers, using air, oxygen, or nitrous oxide-oxygen mixtures as the carrier gas. To prevent hypoxia, the inspired gas mixture should contain a minimum of 25% oxygen at all times.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Patients given sedatives and analgesics during minor outpatient procedures should be very carefully warned about the risks of driving or undertaking skilled tasks afterwards. For a short general anaesthetic, the risk extends to **at least 24 hours** after administration. Responsible persons should be available to take patients home. The dangers of taking **alcohol** should also be emphasised.

## Desflurane

F 806

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Induction of anaesthesia (but not recommended)

##### ▶ BY INHALATION

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 4–11 %, to be inhaled through specifically calibrated vaporiser

#### Maintenance of anaesthesia (in nitrous oxide-oxygen)

##### ▶ BY INHALATION

- ▶ Neonate: 2–6 %, to be inhaled through a specifically calibrated vaporiser.
- ▶ Child: 2–6 %, to be inhaled through a specifically calibrated vaporiser

#### Maintenance of anaesthesia (in oxygen or oxygen-enriched air)

##### ▶ BY INHALATION

- ▶ Neonate: 2.5–8.5 %, to be inhaled through a specifically calibrated vaporiser.
- ▶ Child: 2.5–8.5 %, to be inhaled through a specifically calibrated vaporiser

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: volatile halogenated anaesthetics
- **PREGNANCY** May depress neonatal respiration if used during delivery.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Inhalation vapour

##### ▶ Desflurane (Non-proprietary)

Desflurane 1 ml per 1 ml Desflurane volatile liquid | 240 ml [PoM] [X]  
(Hospital only)

F 806

## Isoflurane

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Induction of anaesthesia (in oxygen or nitrous oxide-oxygen) (but indication not recommended in infants and children of all ages)

##### ▶ BY INHALATION

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 0.5 %, increased to 3 %, adjusted according to response, administered using specifically calibrated vaporiser.

- ▶ Child: Initially 0.5 %, increased to 3 %, adjusted according to response, administered using specifically calibrated vaporiser

#### Maintenance of anaesthesia (in nitrous oxide-oxygen)

##### ▶ BY INHALATION

- ▶ Neonate: 1–2.5 %, to be administered using specifically calibrated vaporiser; an additional 0.5–1 % may be required when given with oxygen alone.

- ▶ Child: 1–2.5 %, to be administered using specifically calibrated vaporiser; an additional 0.5–1 % may be required when given with oxygen alone

#### Maintenance of anaesthesia in caesarean section (in nitrous oxide-oxygen)

##### ▶ BY INHALATION

- ▶ Child: 0.5–0.75 %, to be administered using specifically calibrated vaporiser

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Isoflurane is not recommended for induction of anaesthesia in infants and children of all ages because of the occurrence of cough, breath-holding, desaturation, increased secretions, and laryngospasm.

- **CAUTIONS** Children under 2 years—limited experience
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: volatile halogenated anaesthetics
- **PREGNANCY** May depress neonatal respiration if used during delivery.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Inhalation vapour

##### ▶ Isoflurane (Non-proprietary)

Isoflurane 1 ml per 1 ml Isoflurane inhalation vapour | 250 ml [PoM] £35.29 (Hospital only)  
Isoflurane volatile liquid | 250 ml [P] £47.50 (Hospital only)

##### ▶ AErrane (Baxter Healthcare Ltd)

Isoflurane 1 ml per 1 ml AErrane volatile liquid | 250 ml [P] [X]  
(Hospital only)

## Nitrous oxide

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Maintenance of anaesthesia in conjunction with other anaesthetic agents

##### ► BY INHALATION

► Neonate: 50–66 %, to be administered using suitable anaesthetic apparatus in oxygen.

► Child: 50–66 %, to be administered using suitable anaesthetic apparatus in oxygen

#### Analgesia

##### ► BY INHALATION

► Neonate: Up to 50 %, to be administered using suitable anaesthetic apparatus in oxygen, adjusted according to the patient's needs.

► Child: Up to 50 %, to be administered using suitable anaesthetic apparatus in oxygen, adjusted according to the patient's needs

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Nitrous oxide should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in its use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management, and when resuscitation equipment is available.

• **CAUTIONS** Entrapped air following recent underwater dive • pneumothorax • presence of intracranial air after head injury • recent intra-ocular gas injection

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Nitrous oxide may have a deleterious effect if used in patients with an air-containing closed space since nitrous oxide diffuses into such a space with a resulting increase in pressure. This effect may be dangerous in conditions such as pneumothorax, which may enlarge to compromise respiration, or in the presence of intracranial air after head injury, entrapped air following recent underwater dive, or recent intra-ocular gas injection.

• **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: nitrous oxide

• **SIDE-EFFECTS** Abdominal distension • addiction • agranulocytosis • disorientation • dizziness • euphoric mood • megaloblastic anaemia • middle ear damage • myeloneuropathy • nausea • paraesthesia • sedation • subacute combined cord degeneration • tympanic membrane perforation • vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Exposure of patients to nitrous oxide for prolonged periods, either by continuous or by intermittent administration, may result in megaloblastic anaemia owing to interference with the action of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>; neurological toxic effects can occur without preceding overt haematological changes. Depression of white cell formation may also occur.

• **PREGNANCY** May depress neonatal respiration if used during delivery.

• **BREAST FEEDING** Breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia.

### • MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

► Assessment of plasma-vitamin B<sub>12</sub> concentration should be considered in those at risk of deficiency, those who have a poor, vegetarian, or vegan diet, and those with a history of anaemia.

► Nitrous oxide should **not** be given continuously for longer than 24 hours or more frequently than every 4 days without close supervision and haematological monitoring.

• **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For analgesia (without loss of consciousness), a mixture of nitrous oxide and oxygen containing 50% of each gas (*Entonox*®, *Equanox*®) is used.

• **HANDLING AND STORAGE** Exposure of theatre staff to nitrous oxide should be minimised (risk of serious side-effects).

### • PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Nitrous oxide for pain [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/nitrous-oxide-for-pain](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/nitrous-oxide-for-pain)

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Inhalation gas

##### ► Nitrous oxide (Non-proprietary)

**Nitrous oxide 1 ml per 1 ml** Nitrous oxide cylinders size E |

1800 litre [P] [S]

Medical Nitrous Oxide cylinders size D | 900 litre [P] [S]

Medical Nitrous Oxide cylinders size G | 9000 litre [P] [S]

Nitrous oxide cylinders size F | 3600 litre [P] [S]

Nitrous oxide cylinders size J | 18000 litre [P] [S]

Nitrous oxide cylinders size G | 9000 litre [P] [S]

Nitrous oxide cylinders size C | 450 litre [P] [S]

Medical Nitrous Oxide cylinders size F | 3600 litre [P] [S]

Nitrous oxide cylinders size D | 900 litre [P] [S]

Medical Nitrous Oxide cylinders size E | 1800 litre [P] [S]

F 806

## Sevoflurane

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Induction of anaesthesia (in oxygen or nitrous oxide-oxygen)

##### ► BY INHALATION

► Neonate: Up to 4 %, adjusted according to response, to be administered using specifically calibrated vaporiser.

► Child: Initially 0.5–1 %, then increased to up to 8 %, increased gradually, according to response, to be administered using specifically calibrated vaporiser

#### Maintenance of anaesthesia (in oxygen or nitrous oxide-oxygen)

##### ► BY INHALATION

► Neonate: 0.5–2 %, adjusted according to response, to be administered using specifically calibrated vaporiser.

► Child: 0.5–3 %, adjusted according to response, to be administered using specifically calibrated vaporiser

• **CAUTIONS** Susceptibility to QT-interval prolongation

• **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: volatile halogenated anaesthetics

• **PREGNANCY** May depress neonatal respiration if used during delivery.

• **BREAST FEEDING** Breast-feeding can be resumed as soon as mother has recovered sufficiently from anaesthesia.

• **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Inhalation vapour

##### ► Sevoflurane (Non-proprietary)

**Sevoflurane 1 ml per 1 ml** Sevoflurane volatile liquid | 250 ml [PoM]

£123.00 (Hospital only)

# 1 Anaesthesia adjuvants

## Pre-medication and peri-operative drugs

### Drugs that affect gastric pH

Regurgitation and aspiration of gastric contents (Mendelson's syndrome) can be a complication of general anaesthesia, particularly in obstetrics and in gastro-oesophageal reflux disease; prophylaxis against acid aspiration is not routinely used in children but may be required in high-risk cases.

An **H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonist** can be used before surgery to increase the pH and reduce the volume of gastric fluid. It does not affect the pH of fluid already in the stomach and this limits its value in emergency procedures; an oral H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonist can be given 1–2 hours before the procedure.

### Antimuscarinic drugs

Antimuscarinic drugs are used (less commonly nowadays) as premedicants to dry bronchial and salivary secretions which are increased by intubation, upper airway surgery, or some inhalational anaesthetics. They are also used before or with neostigmine p. 648 to prevent bradycardia, excessive salivation, and other muscarinic actions of neostigmine. They also prevent bradycardia and hypotension associated with drugs such as propofol p. 805 and suxamethonium chloride p. 813.

Atropine sulfate p. 810 is now rarely used for premedication but still has an emergency role in the treatment of vagotonic side-effects. Atropine sulfate may have a role in cardiopulmonary resuscitation.

Hyoscine hydrobromide p. 266 reduces secretions and also provides a degree of amnesia, sedation, and anti-emesis. Unlike atropine sulfate it may produce bradycardia rather than tachycardia.

Glycopyrronium bromide p. 811 reduces salivary secretions. When given intravenously it produces less tachycardia than atropine sulfate. It is widely used with neostigmine for reversal of non-depolarising muscle relaxants.

Glycopyrronium bromide or hyoscine hydrobromide are also used to control excessive secretions in upper airways or hypersalivation in palliative care and in children unable to control posture or with abnormal swallowing reflex; effective dose varies and tolerance may develop. The intramuscular route should be avoided if possible. Hyoscine hydrobromide transdermal patches may also be used.

### Sedative drugs

#### Premedication

Fear and anxiety before a procedure (including the night before) can be minimised by using a sedative drug, usually a **benzodiazepine**. Premedication may also augment the action of anaesthetics and provide some degree of pre-operative amnesia. The choice of drug depends on the individual, the nature of the procedure, the anaesthetic to be used, and other prevailing circumstances such as outpatients, obstetrics, and availability of recovery facilities. The choice also varies between elective and emergency procedures. Oral administration is preferred if possible; the rectal route should only be used in exceptional circumstances.

Premedicants can be given the night before major surgery; a further, smaller dose may be required before surgery. Alternatively, the first dose may be given on the day of the procedure.

Oral midazolam p. 223 is the most common premedicant for children; temazepam p. 821 may be used in older children. The antihistamine alimemazine tartrate p. 177 is occasionally used orally, but when given alone it may cause postoperative restlessness in the presence of pain.

#### Benzodiazepines

Benzodiazepines possess useful properties for premedication including relief of anxiety, sedation, and amnesia; short-acting benzodiazepines taken by mouth are the most common premedicants. Benzodiazepines are also used for sedation prior to clinical procedures and for sedation in intensive care.

Benzodiazepines may occasionally cause marked respiratory depression and facilities for its treatment are essential; flumazenil p. 840 is used to antagonise the effects of benzodiazepines.

Midazolam, a water-soluble benzodiazepine, is the preferred benzodiazepine for premedication and for sedation for clinical procedures in children. It has a fast onset of action, and recovery is faster than for other benzodiazepines. Recovery may be longer in children with a low cardiac output, or after repeated dosing.

Midazolam can be given by mouth [unlicensed], but its bitter acidic taste may need to be disguised. It can also be given buccally [unlicensed indication] or intranasally [unlicensed]. Midazolam is associated with profound sedation when high doses are given or when it is used with certain other drugs. It can cause severe disinhibition and restlessness in some children. Midazolam is not recommended for prolonged sedation in neonates; drug accumulation is likely to occur.

Temazepam is given by mouth for premedication in older children and has a short duration of action. Anxiolytic and sedative effects last about 90 minutes, although there may be residual drowsiness. Temazepam is rarely used for dental procedures in children.

Lorazepam p. 222 produces more prolonged sedation than temazepam and it has marked amnesic effects.

Peri-operative use of diazepam p. 220 is not recommended in children; onset and magnitude of response are unreliable, and paradoxical effects may occur. Diazepam is not used for dental procedures in children.

### Antagonists for central and respiratory depression

Respiratory depression is a major concern with opioid analgesics and it may be treated by artificial ventilation or be reversed by an opioid antagonist. Naloxone hydrochloride p. 842 given intravenously immediately reverses opioid-induced respiratory depression but the dose may have to be repeated because of its **short duration of action**.

Intramuscular injection of naloxone hydrochloride produces a more gradual and prolonged effect but absorption may be erratic. Care is required in children requiring pain relief because naloxone hydrochloride also antagonises the analgesic effect of opioids.

Flumazenil is a benzodiazepine antagonist for the reversal of the central sedative effects of benzodiazepines after anaesthetic and similar procedures. Flumazenil has a shorter half-life and duration of action than diazepam or midazolam so patients may become resedated.

#### Neonates

Naloxone hydrochloride is used in newborn infants to reverse respiratory depression and sedation resulting from the use of opioids by the mother, usually for pain during labour. In neonates the effects of opioids may persist for up to 48 hours and in such cases naloxone hydrochloride is often given by intramuscular injection for its prolonged effect. In severe respiratory depression after birth, breathing should first be established (using artificial means if necessary) and naloxone hydrochloride administered only if use of opioids by the mother is thought to cause the respiratory depression; the infant should be monitored

closely and further doses of naloxone hydrochloride administered as necessary.

## ANTIMUSCARINICS

F 489

### Atropine sulfate

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Bradycardia due to acute massive overdosage of beta-blockers**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child: 40 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 3 mg)

**Treatment of poisoning by organophosphorus insecticide or nerve agent (in combination with pralidoxime chloride)**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child: 20 micrograms/kg every 5–10 minutes (max. per dose 2 mg) until the skin becomes flushed and dry, the pupils dilate, and bradycardia is abolished, frequency of administration dependent on the severity of poisoning

#### **Premedication**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 10 micrograms/kg, to be administered immediately before induction of anaesthesia.

► Child 1 month–11 years: 20 micrograms/kg, to be administered immediately before induction of anaesthesia (minimum 100 micrograms, max. 600 micrograms)

► Child 12–17 years: 300–600 micrograms, to be administered immediately before induction of anaesthesia

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Neonate: 10 micrograms/kg, to be administered 30–60 minutes before induction of anaesthesia.

► Child 1 month–11 years: 10–30 micrograms/kg, to be administered 30–60 minutes before induction of anaesthesia (minimum 100 micrograms, max. 600 micrograms)

► Child 12–17 years: 300–600 micrograms, to be administered 30–60 minutes before induction of anaesthesia

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 20–40 micrograms/kg, to be administered 1–2 hours before induction of anaesthesia.

► Child: 20–40 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 900 micrograms), to be administered 1–2 hours before induction of anaesthesia

#### **Intra-operative bradycardia**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 10–20 micrograms/kg.

► Child 1 month–11 years: 10–20 micrograms/kg

► Child 12–17 years: 300–600 micrograms, larger doses may be used in emergencies

**Control of muscarinic side-effects of neostigmine in reversal of competitive neuromuscular block**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 20 micrograms/kg.

► Child 1 month–11 years: 20 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 1.2 mg)

► Child 12–17 years: 0.6–1.2 mg

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 12 years for intra-operative bradycardia or by intravenous route for premedication. Not licensed for use by oral route.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Antimuscarinic drugs used for premedication to general anaesthesia should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: atropine

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

► **Common or very common**

► With intravenous use Anhidrosis · anxiety · bronchial secretion decreased · dysphagia · gastrointestinal disorders · hallucination · hyperthermia · movement disorders · speech disorder · taste loss · thirst · urticaria · visual impairment

► **Rare or very rare**

► With intravenous use Angina pectoris · arrhythmias · hypertensive crisis · seizure

► **Frequency not known**

► With intravenous use Insomnia

► With oral use Angle closure glaucoma · bronchial secretion altered · chest pain · dysphagia · fever · increased gastric reflux · thirst

- **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful; manufacturer advises caution.

- **BREAST FEEDING** May suppress lactation; small amount present in milk—manufacturer advises caution.

#### ● **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

► Control of muscarinic side-effects of neostigmine in reversal of competitive neuromuscular block Since atropine has a shorter duration of action than neostigmine, late unopposed bradycardia may result; close monitoring of the patient is necessary.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For administration by mouth, injection solution may be given orally.

#### ● **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY**

► With intramuscular use or intravenous use or subcutaneous use Prescription only medicine restriction does not apply where administration is for saving life in emergency.

#### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution, solution for injection, solution for infusion

#### **Tablet**

##### ► **Atropine sulfate (Non-proprietary)**

**Atropine sulfate 600 microgram** Atropine 600microgram tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £52.92 DT = £52.92

#### **Solution for injection**

##### ► **Atropine sulfate (Non-proprietary)**

**Atropine sulfate 100 microgram per 1 ml** Atropine 500micrograms/5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £13.00 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £130.00

**Atropine sulfate 200 microgram per 1 ml** Atropine 1mg/5ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £7.08–£13.00 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £130.00

**Atropine sulfate 300 microgram per 1 ml** Atropine 3mg/10ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £7.08–£13.00 DT = £7.11 | 10 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £130.00

**Atropine sulfate 400 microgram per 1 ml** Atropine 400micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £90.30 DT = £90.30

**Atropine sulfate 600 microgram per 1 ml** Atropine 600micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £11.71 DT = £11.71

Atropine 600micrograms/1ml solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection [PoM] £7.08

Atropine sulfate 1 mg per 1 ml Atropine 1mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £83.61 DT = £83.61

489

## Glycopyrronium bromide

13-Sep-2017

(Glycopyrrolate)

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Premedication at induction

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 5 micrograms/kg.

- Child 1 month–11 years: 4–8 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 200 micrograms)
- Child 12–17 years: 200–400 micrograms, alternatively 4–5 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 400 micrograms)

#### Intra-operative bradycardia

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 10 micrograms/kg, repeated if necessary.

- Child: 4–8 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 200 micrograms), repeated if necessary

#### Control of muscarinic side-effects of neostigmine in reversal of non-depolarising neuromuscular block

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 10 micrograms/kg.

- Child 1 month–11 years: 10 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 500 micrograms)
- Child 12–17 years: 10–15 micrograms/kg, alternatively, 200 micrograms per 1 mg of neostigmine to be administered

#### Control of upper airways secretion | Hypersalivation

► BY MOUTH

- Child: 40–100 micrograms/kg 3–4 times a day (max. per dose 2 mg), adjusted according to response, dose to be administered using tablets or injection solution, see *Directions for administration*

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INFUSION

- Child 1 month–11 years: 12–40 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 1.2 mg) over 24 hours

► Child 12–17 years: 0.6–1.2 mg/24 hours

► BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child 1 month–11 years: 4–10 micrograms/kg 4 times a day (max. per dose 200 micrograms) as required
- Child 12–17 years: 200 micrograms every 4 hours as required

### SIALANAR® ORAL SOLUTION

#### Severe sialorrhoea (chronic pathological drooling)

► BY MOUTH

- Child 3–17 years: (consult product literature)

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in control of upper airways secretion and hypersalivation.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Antimuscarinic drugs used for premedication to general anaesthesia should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use.

### ● CAUTIONS

**SIALANAR® ORAL SOLUTION** Compromised blood-brain barrier—monitor for behavioural changes

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: glycopyrronium

### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

With oral use Angle closure glaucoma · anhidrosis · arrhythmias · bronchial secretion decreased · dysphagia ·

gastrointestinal hypomotility · mydriasis · photophobia · speech disorder · thirst · urinary urgency

- With parenteral use Angle closure glaucoma · anhidrosis · bradycardia · bronchial secretion decreased · mydriasis · photophobia · urinary urgency

### ● PREGNANCY

**SIALANAR® ORAL SOLUTION** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

### ● BREAST FEEDING

**SIALANAR® ORAL SOLUTION** Manufacturer advises avoid—no information available.

### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**SIALANAR® ORAL SOLUTION** Manufacturer advises avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate is less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Dose adjustments** Manufacturer advises reduce dose by 30% if estimated glomerular filtration rate is 30–89 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>—consult product literature.

### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- With oral use for Control of upper airways secretion or Hypersalivation For administration *by mouth*, injection solution may be given or crushed tablets suspended in water.

**SIALANAR® ORAL SOLUTION** Doses should be given at least 1 hour before or 2 hours after food, or at consistent times with respect to food if co-administration with food is required—high-fat food should be avoided; for administration by a nasogastric or feeding tube, flush with 10 mL of water immediately after dosing.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Tablets may be available on a named-patient basis from specialist importing companies.

### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**SIALANAR® ORAL SOLUTION** Manufacturer advises patients and their carers should be informed to stop treatment and seek medical advice if constipation, urinary retention, pneumonia, allergic reaction, pyrexia, or changes in behaviour occur; treatment should also be stopped and medical advice sought in very hot weather.

### ● NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS

#### Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions

The Scottish Medicines Consortium has advised (July 2017) that glycopyrronium bromide (*Sialanar*®) is accepted for use within NHS Scotland for the symptomatic treatment of severe sialorrhoea (chronic pathological drooling) in children and adolescents aged 3 years and older with chronic neurological disorders.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral solution

#### Tablet

- **Glycopyrronium bromide (Non-proprietary)**

**Glycopyrronium bromide 1 mg** Glycopyrronium bromide 1mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £180.00–£230.77 DT = £230.54

**Glycopyrronium bromide 2 mg** Glycopyrronium bromide 2mg tablets | 30 tablet [PoM] £198.00–£254.24 DT = £254.23

#### Solution for injection

- **Glycopyrronium bromide (Non-proprietary)**

**Glycopyrronium bromide 200 microgram per 1 ml** Glycopyrronium bromide 200micrograms/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £5.72–£14.00 DT = £12.22  
**Glycopyrronium bromide 600micrograms/3ml solution for injection ampoules** | 3 ampoule [PoM] £8.00 | 10 ampoule [PoM] £9.61–£13.97

#### Oral solution

- **Glycopyrronium bromide (Non-proprietary)**

**Glycopyrronium bromide 200 microgram per 1 ml** Glycopyrronium bromide 1mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 150 ml [PoM] £91.00 DT = £91.00

15

Anaesthesia



► **Sialanar** (Proveca Ltd)

Glycopyrronium bromide 400 microgram per 1 ml Sialanar  
320micrograms/ml oral solution sugar-free | 250 ml [PoM] £320.00  
DT = £320.00

## 1.1 Neuromuscular blockade

### Neuromuscular blockade

#### Neuromuscular blocking drugs

Neuromuscular blocking drugs used in anaesthesia are also known as **muscle relaxants**. By specific blockade of the neuromuscular junction they enable light anaesthesia to be used with adequate relaxation of the muscles of the abdomen and diaphragm. They also relax the vocal cords and allow the passage of a tracheal tube. Their action differs from the muscle relaxants used in musculoskeletal disorders that act on the spinal cord or brain.

Children who have received a neuromuscular blocking drug should **always** have their respiration assisted or controlled until the drug has been inactivated or antagonised. They should also receive sufficient concomitant inhalational or intravenous anaesthetic or sedative drugs to prevent awareness.

#### Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs

Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs (also known as competitive muscle relaxants) compete with acetylcholine for receptor sites at the neuromuscular junction and their action can be reversed with anticholinesterases such as neostigmine p. 648. Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs can be divided into the **aminosteroid** group, comprising pancuronium bromide p. 815, rocuronium bromide p. 815, and vecuronium bromide p. 816, and the **benzylisoquinolinium** group, comprising atracurium besilate p. 813, cisatracurium p. 814, and mivacurium p. 814.

Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs have a slower onset of action than suxamethonium chloride p. 813. These drugs can be classified by their duration of action as short-acting (15–30 minutes), intermediate-acting (30–40 minutes), and long-acting (60–120 minutes), although duration of action is dose-dependent. Drugs with a shorter or intermediate duration of action, such as atracurium besilate and vecuronium bromide, are more widely used than those with a longer duration of action, such as pancuronium bromide.

Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs have no sedative or analgesic effects and are not considered to trigger malignant hyperthermia.

For patients receiving intensive care and who require tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation, a non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drug is chosen according to its onset of effect, duration of action, and side-effects. Rocuronium bromide, with a rapid onset of effect, may facilitate intubation. Atracurium besilate or cisatracurium may be suitable for long-term neuromuscular blockade since their duration of action is not dependent on elimination by the liver or the kidneys.

Atracurium besilate, a mixture of 10 isomers, is a benzylisoquinolinium neuromuscular blocking drug with an intermediate duration of action. It undergoes non-enzymatic metabolism which is independent of liver and kidney function, thus allowing its use in children with hepatic or renal impairment. Cardiovascular effects are associated with significant histamine release; histamine release can be minimised by administering slowly or in divided doses over at least 1 minute. Neonates may be more sensitive to the effects of atracurium besilate and lower doses may be required.

Cisatracurium is a single isomer of atracurium besilate. It is more potent and has a slightly longer duration of action than atracurium besilate and provides greater cardiovascular stability because cisatracurium lacks histamine-releasing effects. In children aged 1 month to 12 years, cisatracurium has a shorter duration of action and produces faster spontaneous recovery.

Mivacurium, a benzylisoquinolinium neuromuscular blocking drug, has a short duration of action. It is metabolised by plasma cholinesterase and muscle paralysis is prolonged in individuals deficient in this enzyme. It is not associated with vagolytic activity or ganglionic blockade although histamine release can occur, particularly with rapid injection. In children under 12 years mivacurium has a faster onset, shorter duration of action, and produces more rapid spontaneous recovery.

Pancuronium bromide, an aminosteroid neuromuscular blocking drug, has a long duration of action and is often used in children receiving long-term mechanical ventilation in intensive care units. It lacks a histamine-releasing effect, but vagolytic and sympathomimetic effects can cause tachycardia and hypertension. The half-life of pancuronium bromide is prolonged in neonates; neonates should receive postoperative intermittent positive pressure ventilation.

Rocuronium bromide exerts an effect within 2 minutes and has the most rapid onset of any of the non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs. It is an aminosteroid neuromuscular blocking drug with an intermediate duration of action. It is reported to have minimal cardiovascular effects; high doses produce mild vagolytic activity. In most children, the duration of action of rocuronium bromide may be shorter than in adults; however, in neonates and children under 2 years, usual doses may produce a more prolonged action.

Vecuronium bromide, an aminosteroid neuromuscular blocking drug, has an intermediate duration of action. It does not generally produce histamine release and lacks cardiovascular effects. In most children, the duration of action of vecuronium bromide may be shorter than in adults; however, in neonates and children under 2 years, usual doses may produce a more prolonged action.

#### Depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs

Suxamethonium chloride has the most rapid onset of action of any of the neuromuscular blocking drugs and is ideal if fast onset and brief duration of action are required e.g. with tracheal intubation. Neonates and young children are less sensitive to suxamethonium chloride and a higher dose may be required. Unlike the non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs, its action cannot be reversed and recovery is spontaneous; anticholinesterases such as neostigmine potentiate the neuromuscular block.

Suxamethonium chloride should be given after anaesthetic induction because paralysis is usually preceded by painful muscle fasciculations. Bradycardia may occur; premedication with atropine sulfate p. 810 reduces bradycardia as well as the excessive salivation associated with suxamethonium chloride use.

Prolonged paralysis may occur in dual block, which occurs with high or repeated doses of suxamethonium chloride and is caused by the development of a non-depolarising block following the initial depolarising block. Children with myasthenia gravis are resistant to suxamethonium chloride but can develop dual block resulting in delayed recovery. Prolonged paralysis may also occur in those with low or atypical plasma cholinesterase. Assisted ventilation should be continued until muscle function is restored.

## NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKING DRUGS > DEPOLARISING

### Suxamethonium chloride

#### (Succinylcholine chloride)

- **DRUG ACTION** Suxamethonium acts by mimicking acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction but hydrolysis is much slower than for acetylcholine; depolarisation is therefore prolonged, resulting in neuromuscular blockade.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Neuromuscular blockade (short duration) during surgery

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: 2 mg/kg, produces 5–10 minutes neuromuscular blockade.

- Child 1–11 months: 2 mg/kg

- Child 1–17 years: 1 mg/kg

###### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Neonate: Up to 4 mg/kg, produces 10–30 minutes neuromuscular blockade.

- Child 1–11 months: Up to 5 mg/kg

- Child 1–11 years: Up to 4 mg/kg (max. per dose 150 mg)

#### PHARMACOKINETICS

- Intramuscular injection has a duration of onset of 2–3 minutes.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in its use.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Duchenne muscular dystrophy · family history of malignant hyperthermia · hyperkalaemia · low plasma-cholinesterase activity (including severe liver disease) · major trauma · neurological disease involving acute wasting of major muscle · personal or family history of congenital myotonic disease · prolonged immobilisation (risk of hyperkalaemia) · severe burns

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiac disease · neuromuscular disease · raised intra-ocular pressure (avoid in penetrating eye injury) · respiratory disease · severe sepsis (risk of hyperkalaemia)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: suxamethonium

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · flushing · muscle contractions involuntary · myoglobinaemia · myoglobinuria · rash

- **Rare or very rare** Apnoea · cardiac arrest · hypersensitivity · malignant hyperthermia · respiratory disorders · trismus

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Premedication with atropine reduces bradycardia associated with suxamethonium use.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Allergic cross-reactivity between neuromuscular blocking drugs has been reported; caution is advised in cases of hypersensitivity to these drugs.

- **PREGNANCY** Mildly prolonged maternal neuromuscular blockade may occur.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Unlikely to be present in breast milk in significant amounts (ionised at physiological pH). Breast-feeding may be resumed once the mother recovered from neuromuscular block.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Prolonged apnoea may occur in severe liver disease because of reduced hepatic synthesis of pseudocholinesterase.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous injection*, give undiluted or dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

##### Solution for injection

- **Suxamethonium chloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Suxamethonium chloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Suxamethonium chloride 100mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule **[PoM]** £28.80–£50.00

- **Anectine** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)

**Suxamethonium chloride 50 mg per 1 ml** Anectine 100mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule **[PoM]** £3.57

## NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKING DRUGS > NON-DEPOLARISING

### Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs should only be administered by, or under direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management.

- **CAUTIONS** Burns (resistance can develop, increased doses may be required) · cardiovascular disease (reduce rate of administration) · electrolyte disturbances (response unpredictable) · fluid disturbances (response unpredictable) · hypothermia (activity prolonged, lower doses required) · myasthenia gravis (activity prolonged, lower doses required) · neuromuscular disorders (response unpredictable)

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Flushing · hypotension

- **Uncommon** Bronchospasm · hypersensitivity · skin reactions · tachycardia

- **Rare or very rare** Circulatory collapse · muscle weakness · myopathy (after prolonged use in intensive care) · shock

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Allergic cross-reactivity between neuromuscular blocking drugs has been reported; caution is advised in cases of hypersensitivity to these drugs.

- **PREGNANCY** Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs are highly ionised at physiological pH and are therefore unlikely to cross the placenta in significant amounts.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs are ionised at physiological pH and are unlikely to be present in milk in significant amounts. Breast-feeding may be resumed once the mother has recovered from neuromuscular block.

► above

### Atracurium besilate

#### (Atracurium besylate)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Neuromuscular blockade (short to intermediate duration) for surgery

###### ► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Initially 300–500 micrograms/kg, followed by (by intravenous injection) 100–200 micrograms/kg, repeated if necessary, alternatively (by intravenous infusion) 300–400 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response.

continued →

- ▶ Child: Initially 300–600 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous injection) 100–200 micrograms/kg, repeated if necessary, alternatively (by intravenous injection) initially 300–600 micrograms/kg, followed by (by intravenous infusion) 300–600 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

#### Neuromuscular blockade during intensive care

- ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Neonate: Initially 300–500 micrograms/kg, followed by (by intravenous injection) 100–200 micrograms/kg, repeated if necessary, alternatively (by intravenous infusion) 300–400 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response, higher doses may be necessary.
- ▶ Child: Initially 300–600 micrograms/kg, initial dose is optional, then (by intravenous infusion) 270–1770 micrograms/kg/hour; (by intravenous infusion) usual dose 650–780 micrograms/kg/hour

#### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- ▶ To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal body-weight.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in neonates.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Rare or very rare Cardiac arrest
- ▶ Frequency not known Seizure

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Hypotension, skin flushing, and bronchospasm is associated with histamine release. Manufacturer advises minimising effects of histamine release by administering over 1 minute in patients with cardiovascular disease or sensitivity to hypotension. Neonates may be more sensitive to the effects of atracurium and lower doses may be required.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 0.5–5 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; stability varies with diluent.

*Neonatal intensive care*, dilute 60 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; minimum concentration of 500 micrograms/mL, maximum concentration of 5 mg/mL; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.1 mL/hour provides a dose of 120 micrograms/kg/hour.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Atracurium besilate (Non-proprietary)**

**Atracurium besilate 10 mg per 1 mL** Atracurium besilate 250mg/25mL solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £16.50 (Hospital only)

Atracurium besilate 25mg/2.5mL solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £9.25 (Hospital only) | 5 ampoule [PoM] £9.25 Atracurium besilate 50mg/5mL solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £17.50 (Hospital only) | 5 ampoule [PoM] £17.50

- ▶ **Tracrium** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)

**Atracurium besilate 10 mg per 1 mL** Tracrium 250mg/25mL solution for injection vials | 2 vial [PoM] £25.81 Tracrium 25mg/2.5mL solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £8.28 Tracrium 50mg/5mL solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £15.02

## Cisatracurium

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Neuromuscular blockade (intermediate duration) during surgery

- ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 1 month–1 year: Initially 150 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous injection) 30 micrograms/kg every 20 minutes as required
- ▶ Child 2–11 years: Initially 150 micrograms/kg, 80–100 micrograms/kg if not for intubation, then (by intravenous injection) 20 micrograms/kg every 10 minutes as required, alternatively (by intravenous injection) initially 150 micrograms/kg, followed by (by intravenous infusion) 180 micrograms/kg/hour, (by intravenous infusion) reduced to 60–120 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 150 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous injection) 30 micrograms/kg every 20 minutes as required, alternatively (by intravenous injection) initially 150 micrograms/kg, followed by (by intravenous infusion) 180 micrograms/kg/hour, (by intravenous infusion) reduced to 60–120 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

#### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- ▶ To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal body-weight.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ Common or very common Bradycardia

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 0.1–2 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; solutions of 2 mg/mL and 5 mg/mL may be infused undiluted.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Cisatracurium (Non-proprietary)**

**Cisatracurium (as Cisatracurium besilate) 2 mg per**

**1 mL** Cisatracurium besilate 20mg/10mL solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £32.09

Cisatracurium besilate 20mg/10mL solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £37.75 (Hospital only)

**Cisatracurium (as Cisatracurium besilate) 5 mg per**

**1 mL** Cisatracurium besilate 150mg/30mL solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £45.00 (Hospital only) | 1 vial [PoM] £26.43–£29.54

- ▶ **Nimbex** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)

**Cisatracurium (as Cisatracurium besilate) 2 mg per 1 mL** Nimbex 20mg/10mL solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £37.75 **Cisatracurium (as Cisatracurium besilate) 5 mg per 1 mL** Nimbex Forte 150mg/30mL solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £31.09

## Mivacurium

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Neuromuscular blockade (short duration) during surgery

- ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION
- ▶ Child 2–5 months: Initially 150 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous injection) 100 micrograms/kg every 6–9 minutes as required, alternatively (by intravenous infusion) 8–10 micrograms/kg/minute, (by intravenous infusion) adjusted in steps of 1 microgram/kg/minute every 3 minutes if required; (by intravenous infusion) usual dose 11–14 micrograms/kg/minute

- ▶ Child 6 months–11 years: Initially 200 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous injection) 100 micrograms/kg every 6–9 minutes as required, alternatively (by intravenous infusion) 8–10 micrograms/kg/minute, (by intravenous infusion) adjusted in steps of 1 microgram/kg/minute every 3 minutes if required; (by intravenous infusion) usual dose 11–14 micrograms/kg/minute
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 70–250 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous injection) 100 micrograms/kg every 15 minutes as required, alternatively (by intravenous infusion) 8–10 micrograms/kg/minute, (by intravenous infusion) adjusted in steps of 1 microgram/kg/minute every 3 minutes if required; (by intravenous infusion) usual dose 6–7 micrograms/kg/minute

#### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- ▶ To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal bodyweight.

- **CAUTIONS** Burns (low plasma cholinesterase activity; dose initiation required)
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Uncommon** Erythema
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments Reduce dose in severe impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments Clinical effect prolonged in renal failure—reduce dose according to response.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous injection*, give undiluted or dilute in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. Doses up to 150 micrograms/kg may be given over 5–15 seconds, higher doses should be given over 30 seconds. In asthma, cardiovascular disease or in those sensitive to reduced arterial blood pressure, give over 60 seconds.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

- ▶ **Mivacron** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)  
Mivacurium (as Mivacurium chloride) 2 mg per 1 ml Mivacron 10mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £13.95  
Mivacron 20mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £22.57

F 813

## Pancuronium bromide

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Neuromuscular blockade (long duration) during surgery

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 100 micrograms/kg, then 50 micrograms/kg, repeated if necessary.

- ▶ Child: Initially 100 micrograms/kg, then 20 micrograms/kg, repeated if necessary

#### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- ▶ To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal bodyweight.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising
- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Apnoea · arrhythmia · hypersalivation · increased cardiac output · miosis

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Pancuronium lacks histamine-releasing effect, but vagolytic and sympathomimetic effects can cause tachycardia.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Possibly slower onset, higher dose requirement, and prolonged recovery time

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; prolonged duration of block.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous injection*, give undiluted or dilute in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

##### ▶ Pancuronium bromide (Non-proprietary)

Pancuronium bromide 2 mg per 1 ml Pancuronium bromide 4mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £50.00 (Hospital only)

F 813

## Rocuronium bromide

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Neuromuscular blockade (intermediate duration) during surgery

##### ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Neonate: Initially 600 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous injection) 150 micrograms/kg, repeated if necessary, alternatively (by intravenous infusion) 300–600 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response.

- ▶ Child: Initially 600 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous injection) 150 micrograms/kg, repeated if necessary, alternatively (by intravenous infusion) 300–600 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response

#### Assisted ventilation in intensive care

##### ▶ INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child: Initially 600 micrograms/kg, initial dose is optional, then (by intravenous infusion) 300–600 micrograms/kg/hour for first hour, then (by intravenous infusion), adjusted according to response

#### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- ▶ To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal bodyweight.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children for assisted ventilation in intensive care.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · face oedema · hypersensitivity · malignant hyperthermia · paralysis · rash erythematous
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments Reduce dose.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**
  - Dose adjustments Reduce maintenance dose; prolonged paralysis.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *continuous intravenous infusion* or via drip tubing, may be diluted with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

##### ▶ Rocuronium bromide (Non-proprietary)

Rocuronium bromide 10 mg per 1 ml Rocuronium bromide 50mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £24.00  
Rocuronium bromide 50mg/5ml solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £28.00–£30.00  
Rocuronium bromide 100mg/10ml solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £57.00–£57.90

- **Esmeron** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)  
**Rocuronium bromide 10 mg per 1 mL** Esmeron 50mg/5mL solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £28.92 (Hospital only)  
 Esmeron 100mg/10mL solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £57.85 (Hospital only)

F 813

## Vecuronium bromide

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### **Neuromuscular blockade (intermediate duration) during surgery**

##### ► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- **Neonate:** Initially 80 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous injection) 30–50 micrograms/kg, adjusted according to response.

- **Child:** Initially 80–100 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous injection) 20–30 micrograms/kg, repeated if necessary, alternatively (by intravenous infusion) 0.8–1.4 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response

#### **Assisted ventilation in intensive care**

##### ► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- **Neonate:** Initially 80 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous injection) 30–50 micrograms/kg, adjusted according to response, alternatively (by intravenous injection) initially 80 micrograms/kg, then (by intravenous infusion) 0.8–1.4 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response, risk of accumulation—consider interruption of infusion.

- **Child:** Initially 80–100 micrograms/kg, initial dose is optional, then (by intravenous infusion) 0.8–1.4 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response, (by intravenous infusion) increased if necessary up to 3 micrograms/kg/minute

#### **DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT**

- To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal bodyweight.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for assisted ventilation in intensive care.
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Rare or very rare** Angioedema · face oedema · hypersensitivity · paralysis · rash erythematous
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in significant impairment.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Reconstitute each vial with 5 mL Water for Injections to give 2 mg/mL solution; alternatively reconstitute with up to 10 mL Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% or Water for Injections—unsuitable for further dilution if not reconstituted with Water for Injections. For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute reconstituted solution to a concentration up to 40 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; reconstituted solution can also be given via drip tubing.
 

*Neonatal intensive care*, reconstitute each vial with 5 mL Water for Injections to give a 2 mg/mL solution. Dilute 5 mg/kg body-weight to a final volume of 50 mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; an intravenous infusion rate of 0.5 mL/hour provides a dose of 50 micrograms/kg/hour; minimum concentration of 40 micrograms/mL.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**  
 No licensed medicines listed.

## 1.2 Neuromuscular blockade reversal

## Neuromuscular blockade reversal

### Neuromuscular blockade reversal

#### Anticholinesterases

Anticholinesterases reverse the effects of the non-depolarising (competitive) neuromuscular blocking drugs such as pancuronium bromide but they prolong the action of the depolarising neuromuscular blocking drug suxamethonium chloride.

Neostigmine is used specifically for reversal of non-depolarising (competitive) blockade. It acts within one minute of intravenous injection and its effects last for 20 to 30 minutes; a second dose may then be necessary. Glycopyrronium bromide p. 811 or alternatively atropine sulfate, given before or with neostigmine, prevent bradycardia, excessive salivation, and other muscarinic effects of neostigmine.

#### Other drugs for reversal of neuromuscular blockade

Sugammadex p. 817 is a modified gamma cyclodextrin that can be used in children for the routine reversal of neuromuscular blockade induced by rocuronium bromide.

### ANTICHOLINESTERASES

## Neostigmine with glycopyrronium bromide

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, neostigmine p. 648, glycopyrronium bromide p. 811.

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### **Reversal of non-depolarising neuromuscular blockade**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- **Child:** 0.02 mL/kg, repeated if necessary, alternatively dilute to 1 in 10 solution and give 0.2 mL/kg; maximum 2 mL per course

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: glycopyrronium · neostigmine
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous injection*, may be diluted with Sodium Chloride 0.9%, give over 10–30 seconds

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

- **Neostigmine with glycopyrronium bromide (Non-proprietary)**  
 Glycopyrronium bromide 500 microgram per 1 mL, Neostigmine metilsulfate 2.5 mg per 1 mL Neostigmine 2.5mg/1mL / Glycopyrronium bromide 500micrograms/1mL solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £11.50



**ANTIDOTES AND CHELATORS****Sugammadex****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Routine reversal of neuromuscular blockade induced by rocuronium**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 2–17 years: 2 mg/kg (consult product literature)

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

Should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in its use.

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease (recovery may be delayed) · pre-existing coagulation disorders · recurrence of neuromuscular blockade— monitor respiratory function until fully recovered · use of anticoagulants (unrelated to surgery) · wait 24 hours before re-administering rocuronium
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: sugammadex
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · arrhythmias · cough · dizziness · headache · nausea · skin reactions · taste altered · vomiting
  - **Uncommon** Hypersensitivity
  - **Frequency not known** Bronchospasm
- **PREGNANCY** Use with caution—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if estimated glomerular filtration rate less than 30 mL/minute/1.73 m<sup>2</sup>.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intravenous injection dose may be diluted to a concentration of 10 mg/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%.
- **NATIONAL FUNDING/ACCESS DECISIONS**

**Scottish Medicines Consortium (SMC) Decisions**  
The *Scottish Medicines Consortium*, has advised (February 2013) that sugammadex (*Bridion*®) is accepted for restricted use within NHS Scotland for the routine reversal of neuromuscular blockade in high-risk patients only, or where prompt reversal of neuromuscular block is required.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Solution for injection**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

► **Bridion** (Merck Sharp & Dohme Ltd)

**Sugammadex (as Sugammadex sodium) 100 mg per 1 mL** Bridion 500mg/5mL solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £1,491.00 (Hospital only)

Bridion 200mg/2mL solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £596.40 (Hospital only)

**1.3 Peri-operative analgesia****Peri-operative analgesia****Non-opioid analgesics**

Since non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) do not depress respiration, do not impair gastro-intestinal motility, and do not cause dependence, they may be useful alternatives or adjuncts to opioids for the relief of postoperative pain. NSAIDs may be inadequate for the relief of severe pain.

Diclofenac sodium p. 652, diclofenac potassium p. 651, ibuprofen p. 655, paracetamol p. 271, and ketorolac trometamol below, are used to relieve postoperative pain in children; diclofenac sodium and paracetamol can be given

parenterally and rectally as well as by mouth. Ketorolac trometamol is given by intravenous injection.

**Opioid analgesics**

Opioid analgesics are now rarely used as premedicants; they are more likely to be administered at induction. Pre-operative use of opioid analgesics is generally limited to children who require control of existing pain. The main side-effects of opioid analgesics are respiratory depression, cardiovascular depression, nausea, and vomiting; see general notes on opioid analgesics and their use in postoperative pain.

See the management of opioid-induced respiratory depression in Pre-medication and peri-operative drugs p. 809.

**Intra-operative analgesia**

Opioid analgesics given in small doses before or with induction reduce the dose requirement of some drugs used during anaesthesia.

Alfentanil p. 818, fentanyl p. 279, and remifentanyl p. 819 are particularly useful because they act within 1–2 minutes and have short durations of action. The initial doses of alfentanil or fentanyl are followed either by successive intravenous injections or by an intravenous infusion; prolonged infusions increase the duration of effect.

In contrast to other opioids which are metabolised in the liver, remifentanyl undergoes rapid metabolism by nonspecific blood and tissue esterases; its short duration of action allows prolonged administration at high dosage, without accumulation, and with little risk of residual postoperative respiratory depression. Remifentanyl should not be given by intravenous injection intraoperatively, but it is well suited to continuous infusion; a supplementary analgesic is given before stopping the infusion of remifentanyl.

**ANALGESICS > NON-STEROIDAL ANTI-INFLAMMATORY DRUGS****Ketorolac trometamol****● INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Short-term management of moderate to severe acute postoperative pain only**

► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 16–17 years (body-weight up to 50 kg): Initially 10 mg, then 10–30 mg every 4–6 hours as required for maximum duration of treatment 2 days, frequency may be increased to up to every 2 hours during initial postoperative period; maximum 60 mg per day

► Child 16–17 years (body-weight 50 kg and above): Initially 10 mg, then 10–30 mg every 4–6 hours as required for maximum duration of treatment 2 days, frequency may be increased to up to every 2 hours during initial postoperative period; maximum 90 mg per day

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child 6 months–15 years: Initially 0.5–1 mg/kg (max. per dose 15 mg), then 500 micrograms/kg every 6 hours (max. per dose 15 mg) as required for maximum duration of treatment 2 days; maximum 60 mg per day

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 16 years.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Active or history of gastro-intestinal bleeding · active or history of gastro-intestinal ulceration · coagulation disorders · complete or partial syndrome of nasal polyps · confirmed or suspected cerebrovascular bleeding · dehydration · following operations with high risk of haemorrhage or incomplete

haemostasis • haemorrhagic diatheses • history of gastro-intestinal perforation • hypovolaemia • severe heart failure

- **CAUTIONS** Allergic disorders • cardiac impairment (NSAIDs may impair renal function) • cerebrovascular disease • coagulation defects • connective-tissue disorders • Crohn's disease (may be exacerbated) • heart failure • ischaemic heart disease • peripheral arterial disease • risk factors for cardiovascular events • ulcerative colitis (may be exacerbated) • uncontrolled hypertension

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: NSAIDs

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Agranulocytosis • angioedema • anxiety • aplastic anaemia • appetite decreased • asthenia • asthma • azotaemia • bradycardia • burping • chest pain • concentration impaired • confusion • constipation • Crohn's disease aggravated • depression • diarrhoea • dizziness • drowsiness • dry mouth • dyspnoea • electrolyte imbalance • embolism and thrombosis • euphoric mood • fever • flank pain • fluid retention • flushing • gastrointestinal discomfort • gastrointestinal disorders • haemolytic anaemia • haemorrhage • hallucination • headache • hearing impairment • heart failure • hepatic disorders • hyperhidrosis • hyperkinesia • hypersensitivity • hypertension • hypotension • infertility female • malaise • meningitis aseptic (patients with connective-tissue disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus may be especially susceptible) • musculoskeletal disorder • myalgia • myocardial infarction • nausea • nephritis • tubulointerstitial • nephropathy • neutropenia • oedema • optic neuritis • oral disorders • pallor • palpitations • pancreatitis • paraesthesia • perforation • photosensitivity reaction • platelet aggregation inhibition • psychotic disorder • pulmonary oedema • renal impairment • respiratory disorders • seizure • severe cutaneous adverse reactions (SCARs) • skin reactions • sleep disorders • stroke • taste altered • thinking abnormal • thirst • thrombocytopenia • ulcer • urinary disorders • vertigo • visual impairment • vomiting • weight increased • wound haemorrhage

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** For information about cardiovascular and gastrointestinal side-effects, and a possible exacerbation of symptoms in asthma, see Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs p. 650.

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Contra-indicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or any other NSAID—which includes those in whom attacks of asthma, angioedema, urticaria or rhinitis have been precipitated by aspirin or any other NSAID.

- **PREGNANCY** Avoid unless the potential benefit outweighs the risk. Avoid during the third trimester (risk of closure of fetal ductus arteriosus *in utero* and possibly persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn); onset of labour may be delayed and duration may be increased.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; there is an increased risk of gastro-intestinal bleeding and fluid retention. Avoid in severe liver disease.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid if possible or use with caution. Avoid if serum creatinine greater than 160 micromol/litre. **Dose adjustments** The lowest effective dose should be used for the shortest possible duration. Max. 60 mg daily by intramuscular injection or intravenous injection.

**Monitoring** In renal impairment monitor renal function; sodium and water retention may occur and renal function may deteriorate, possibly leading to renal failure.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For intravenous injection, give over at least 15 seconds.

## MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

### Solution for injection

#### ► Ketorolac trometamol (Non-proprietary)

**Ketorolac trometamol 30 mg per 1 ml** Ketorolac 30mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule **[PoM]** £4.00 (Hospital only) | 5 ampoule **[PoM]** £4.00 | 6 ampoule **[PoM]** £6.56

#### ► Toradol (Atrahs Pharma UK Ltd)

**Ketorolac trometamol 30 mg per 1 ml** Toradol 30mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule **[PoM]** £5.36

## ANALGESICS > OPIOIDS

F 273

### Alfentanil

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Assisted ventilation: analgesia and enhancement of anaesthesia for short procedures**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- **Neonate:** Initially 5–20 micrograms/kg, dose to be administered over 30 seconds; supplemental doses up to 10 micrograms/kg.

- **Child:** Initially 10–20 micrograms/kg, dose to be administered over 30 seconds; supplemental doses up to 10 micrograms/kg

**Assisted ventilation: analgesia and enhancement of anaesthesia during maintenance of anaesthesia for longer procedures**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- **Neonate:** Initially 10–50 micrograms/kg, dose to be administered over 10 minutes, followed by 30–60 micrograms/kg/hour.

- **Child:** Initially 50–100 micrograms/kg, dose to be administered over 10 minutes, followed by 30–120 micrograms/kg/hour, usual dose with intravenous anaesthetic, 60 micrograms/kg/hour

#### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal body-weight.

#### PHARMACOKINETICS

- Half-life is prolonged in neonates and accumulation is likely with prolonged use. Clearance may be increased in children 1 month–12 years and higher infusion doses might be needed.

#### ● CAUTIONS

##### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- **Repeated intra-operative doses** Repeated intra-operative doses of alfentanil should be given with care since the resulting respiratory depression can persist postoperatively and occasionally it may become apparent for the first time postoperatively when monitoring of the patient might be less intensive.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Apnoea • chills • fatigue • hypertension • movement disorders • muscle rigidity
- **Uncommon** Arrhythmia • coma • hiccups • hypercapnia • pain • post procedural complications • respiratory disorders • skin reactions
- **Rare or very rare** Agitation • crying • epistaxis • vascular pain
- **Frequency not known** Cardiac arrest • cough • disorientation • fever • loss of consciousness • seizure

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Alfentanil can cause muscle rigidity, particularly of the chest wall or jaw; this can be managed by the use of neuromuscular blocking drugs.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk—withhold breast-feeding for 24 hours.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Avoid use or reduce dose; opioid effects increased and prolonged and increased cerebral sensitivity occurs.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** 5 mg/mL injection to be diluted before use. For *continuous or intermittent intravenous infusion* dilute in Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

#### Solution for injection

##### ▶ Alfentanil (Non-proprietary)

**Alfentanil (as Alfentanil hydrochloride) 500 microgram per**

1 ml Alfentanil 1mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules |

10 ampoule [PoM] £5.95 [CD2]

Alfentanil 25mg/50ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £14.90 [CD2]

Alfentanil 5mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules |

5 ampoule [PoM] £13.90 [CD2]

**Alfentanil (as Alfentanil hydrochloride) 5 mg per 1 ml** Alfentanil 5mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £21.95 DT = £23.19 [CD2]

##### ▶ Rapifen (Piramal Critical Care Ltd)

**Alfentanil (as Alfentanil hydrochloride) 500 microgram per**

1 ml Rapifen 5mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules |

5 ampoule [PoM] £14.50 [CD2]

Rapifen 1mg/2ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £6.34 [CD2]

**Alfentanil (as Alfentanil hydrochloride) 5 mg per 1 ml** Rapifen

Intensive Care 5mg/1ml solution for injection ampoules |

10 ampoule [PoM] £23.19 DT = £23.19 (Hospital only) [CD2]

F 273

## Remifentanil

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Analgesia and enhancement of anaesthesia at induction (initial bolus injection)

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 0.25–1 microgram/kg, dose to be administered over at least 30 seconds, if child is to be intubated more than 8 minutes after start of intravenous infusion, initial bolus intravenous injection dose is not necessary

##### Analgesia and enhancement of anaesthesia at induction with or without initial bolus dose

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 30–60 micrograms/kg/hour, if child is to be intubated more than 8 minutes after start of intravenous infusion, initial bolus intravenous injection dose is not necessary

##### Assisted ventilation: analgesia and enhancement of anaesthesia during maintenance of anaesthesia (initial bolus injection)

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 0.1–1 microgram/kg, dose to be administered over at least 30 seconds (omitted if not required)
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 0.1–1 microgram/kg, dose to be administered over at least 30 seconds (omitted if not required)

##### Assisted ventilation: analgesia and enhancement of anaesthesia during maintenance of anaesthesia with or without initial bolus dose

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Neonate: 24–60 micrograms/kg/hour, additional doses of 1 microgram/kg can be given by *intravenous injection* during the intravenous infusion.

- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 3–78 micrograms/kg/hour, dose to be administered according to anaesthetic technique and adjusted according to response, additional doses can be given by *intravenous injection* during the intravenous infusion
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 3–120 micrograms/kg/hour, dose to be administered according to anaesthetic technique and adjusted according to response, additional doses can be given by *intravenous injection* during the intravenous infusion

##### Spontaneous respiration: analgesia and enhancement of anaesthesia during maintenance of anaesthesia

##### ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Initially 2.4 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response; usual dose 1.5–6 micrograms/kg/hour

##### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- ▶ To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal body-weight.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 1 year.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Analgesia in conscious patients

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: opioids

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Apnoea · muscle rigidity · post procedural complications

- ▶ **Uncommon** Hypoxia

- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Cardiac arrest

- ▶ **Frequency not known** Agitation · atrioventricular block · hypertension · seizure

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** In contrast to other opioids which are metabolised in the liver, remifentanil undergoes rapid metabolism by plasma esterases; it has short duration of action which is independent of dose and duration of infusion.

**Muscle rigidity** Remifentanil can cause muscle rigidity that can be managed by the use of neuromuscular blocking drugs.

- **PREGNANCY** No information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid breast-feeding for 24 hours after administration—present in milk in *animal* studies.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** No dose adjustment necessary in renal impairment.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous injection*, reconstitute to a concentration of 1 mg/mL; for *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute further with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9% to a concentration of 20–25 micrograms/mL for child 1–12 years or 20–250 micrograms/mL (usually 50 micrograms/mL) for child 12–18 years.

#### ● PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION

Remifentanil should not be given by intravenous injection intra-operatively, but it is well suited to continuous infusion; a supplementary analgesic is given before stopping the infusion of remifentanil.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### Power for solution for injection

##### ▶ Remifentanil (Non-proprietary)

**Remifentanil (as Remifentanil hydrochloride) 1 mg** Remifentanil

1mg powder for concentrate for solution for injection vials |

5 vial [PoM] £25.60 (Hospital only) [CD2]

**Remifentanil (as Remifentanil hydrochloride) 2 mg** Remifentanil

2mg powder for concentrate for solution for injection vials |

5 vial [PoM] £51.13 (Hospital only) [CD2]

**Remifentanil (as Remifentanil hydrochloride) 5 mg** Remifentanil

5mg powder for concentrate for solution for injection vials |

5 vial [PoM] £117.90 (Hospital only) [CD2]

► **Ultiva** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)

**Remifentanyl (as Remifentanyl hydrochloride) 1 mg** Ultiva 1mg powder for solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £25.58 (Hospital only) [CD2]

**Remifentanyl (as Remifentanyl hydrochloride) 2 mg** Ultiva 2mg powder for solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £51.15 (Hospital only) [CD2]

**Remifentanyl (as Remifentanyl hydrochloride) 5 mg** Ultiva 5mg powder for solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £127.88 (Hospital only) [CD2]

## 1.4 Peri-operative sedation

### Conscious sedation for clinical procedures

#### Overview

Sedation of children during diagnostic and therapeutic procedures is used to reduce fear and anxiety, to control pain, and to minimise excessive movement. The choice of sedative drug will depend upon the intended procedure and whether the child is cooperative; some procedures are safer and more successful under anaesthesia.

Midazolam p. 223 and chloral hydrate p. 294 are suitable for sedating children for painless procedures, such as imaging. For painful procedures, alternative choices include nitrous oxide p. 808, local anaesthesia, ketamine below, or concomitant use of sedation with **opioid** or **non-opioid analgesia**.

#### ANAESTHETICS, GENERAL ► NMDA RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS

### Ketamine

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Induction and maintenance of anaesthesia for short procedures

###### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- Neonate: 4 mg/kg, adjusted according to response, a dose of 4 mg/kg usually produces 15 minutes of surgical anaesthesia.

- Child: 4–13 mg/kg, adjusted according to response, a dose of 4 mg/kg sufficient for some diagnostic procedures, a dose of 10 mg/kg usually produces 12–25 minutes of surgical anaesthesia

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: 1–2 mg/kg, adjusted according to response, to be given over at least 60 seconds, a dose of 1–2 mg/kg produces 5–10 minutes of surgical anaesthesia.

- Child 1 month–11 years: 1–2 mg/kg, adjusted according to response, to be given over at least 60 seconds, a dose of 1–2 mg/kg produces 5–10 minutes of surgical anaesthesia

- Child 12–17 years: 1–4.5 mg/kg, adjusted according to response, to be given over at least 60 seconds, a dose of 2 mg/kg usually produces 5–10 minutes of surgical anaesthesia

##### Induction and maintenance of anaesthesia for long procedures

###### ► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Initially 0.5–2 mg/kg, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 8 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response, doses up to 30 micrograms/kg/minute may be used to produce deep anaesthesia.

- Child: Initially 0.5–2 mg/kg, followed by (by continuous intravenous infusion) 10–45 micrograms/kg/minute, adjusted according to response

##### Sedation prior to invasive or painful procedures

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: 1–2 mg/kg for 1 dose

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Ketamine should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in its use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management, and when resuscitation equipment is available.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 • eclampsia • head trauma • hypertension • pre-eclampsia • raised intracranial pressure • severe cardiac disease • stroke

- **CAUTIONS** Acute circulatory failure (shock) • cardiovascular disease • dehydration • fixed cardiac output • hallucinations • head injury • hypertension • hypovolaemia • increased cerebrospinal fluid pressure • intracranial mass lesions • nightmares • predisposition to seizures • psychotic disorders • raised intra-ocular pressure • respiratory tract infection • thyroid dysfunction

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: ketamine

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Anxiety • behaviour abnormal • confusion • diplopia • hallucination • muscle tone increased • nausea • nystagmus • skin reactions • sleep disorders • tonic clonic movements • vomiting
- **Uncommon** Appetite decreased • arrhythmias • hypotension • respiratory disorders
- **Rare or very rare** Apnoea • cystitis • cystitis haemorrhagic • delirium • dysphoria • flashback • hypersalivation
- **Frequency not known** Drug-induced liver injury

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Incidence of hallucinations can be reduced by premedication with a benzodiazepine (such as midazolam).

- **PREGNANCY** May depress neonatal respiration if used during delivery.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid for at least 12 hours after last dose.

#### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

**Dose adjustments** Consider dose reduction.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous injection*, dilute 100 mg/mL strength to a concentration of not more than 50 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%. For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of 1 mg/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%; use microdrip infusion for maintenance of anaesthesia.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** Patients given sedatives and analgesics during minor outpatient procedures should be very carefully warned about the risk of driving or undertaking skilled tasks afterwards. For a short general anaesthetic the risk extends to **at least 24 hours** after administration. Responsible persons should be available to take patients home. The dangers of taking **alcohol** should also be emphasised.

For information on 2015 legislation regarding driving whilst taking certain controlled drugs, including ketamine, see *Drugs and driving* under Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Ketamine (Non-proprietary)

**Ketamine (as Ketamine hydrochloride) 50 mg per 1 ml** Ketamine 500mg/10ml solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £70.00 [CD2]

##### ► Ketalar (Pfizer Ltd)

**Ketamine (as Ketamine hydrochloride) 10 mg per 1 ml** Ketalar 200mg/20ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £5.06 (Hospital only) [CD2]

**Ketamine (as Ketamine hydrochloride) 50 mg per 1 ml** Ketalar 500mg/10ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £8.77 (Hospital only) [CD2]

## HYPNOTICS, SEDATIVES AND ANXIOLYTICS > BENZODIAZEPINES

F 218

### Temazepam

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Premedication before surgery or investigatory procedures

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 12–17 years: 10–20 mg, to be taken 1 hour before procedure

#### ● UNLICENSED USE

Tablets not licensed for use in children.

#### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

CNS depression · compromised airway · hyperkinesia · obsessional state · phobic states · respiratory depression

#### ● CAUTIONS

Hypalbuminaemia · muscle weakness · organic brain changes

##### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Paradoxical effects A paradoxical increase in hostility and aggression may be reported by patients taking benzodiazepines. The effects range from talkativeness and excitement to aggressive and antisocial acts. Adjustment of the dose (up or down) sometimes attenuates the impulses. Increased anxiety and perceptual disorders are other paradoxical effects.

#### ● INTERACTIONS

→ Appendix 1: temazepam

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

Dreaming excessive · drug abuse · dry mouth · hypersalivation · speech slurred

#### ● BREAST FEEDING

Benzodiazepines are present in milk, and should be avoided if possible during breast-feeding.

#### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

Can precipitate coma. Avoid in severe impairment.

##### Dose adjustments

Start with smaller initial doses or reduce dose.

#### ● RENAL IMPAIRMENT

##### Dose adjustments

Start with small doses in severe impairment.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

**Driving and skilled tasks** May impair judgement and increase reaction time, and so affect ability to drive or operate machinery; they increase the effects of alcohol. Moreover the hangover effects of a night dose may impair driving on the following day.

Patients given sedatives and analgesics during minor outpatient procedures should be very carefully warned about the risks of undertaking skilled tasks (e.g. driving) afterwards. Responsible persons should be available to take patients home afterwards. The dangers of taking alcohol should be emphasised.

#### ● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION

##### Dental practitioners' formulary

Temazepam Tablets and Oral Solution may be prescribed.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Oral solution

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 19

##### ► Temazepam (Non-proprietary)

**Temazepam 2 mg per 1 ml** Temazepam 10mg/5ml oral solution sugar free sugar-free | 300 ml [PoM] £184.50 DT = £169.44 [CD3]

#### Tablet

##### CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 19

##### ► Temazepam (Non-proprietary)

**Temazepam 10 mg** Temazepam 10mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £35.00 DT = £1.36 [CD3] | 500 tablet [PoM] £24.29–£624.82 [CD3]

**Temazepam 20 mg** Temazepam 20mg tablets | 28 tablet [PoM] £35.00 DT = £1.43 [CD3] | 250 tablet [PoM] £12.77–£307.94 [CD3]

## 2 Malignant hyperthermia

### MUSCLE RELAXANTS > DIRECTLY ACTING

#### Dantrolene sodium

- DRUG ACTION** Acts on skeletal muscle cells by interfering with calcium efflux, thereby stopping the contractile process.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Malignant hyperthermia

##### ► BY RAPID INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: Initially 2–3 mg/kg, then 1 mg/kg, repeated if necessary; maximum 10 mg/kg per course

##### Chronic severe spasticity of voluntary muscle

##### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 5–11 years: Initially 500 micrograms/kg once daily for 7 days, then increased to 500 micrograms/kg/dose 3 times a day, then increased in steps of 500 micrograms/kg/dose every 7 days (max. per dose 2 mg/kg 3–4 times a day) until satisfactory response; maximum 400 mg per day
- Child 12–17 years: Initially 25 mg once daily for 7 days, then increased to 25 mg 3 times a day, then increased in steps of 500 micrograms/kg/dose every 7 days (max. per dose 2 mg/kg 3–4 times a day) until satisfactory response; maximum 400 mg per day

#### ● UNLICENSED USE

Not licensed for use in children.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in the use of dantrolene when used for malignant hyperthermia.

#### ● CONTRA-INDICATIONS

- With oral use Acute muscle spasm · avoid when spasticity is useful, for example, locomotion

#### ● CAUTIONS

- With intravenous use Avoid extravasation (risk of tissue necrosis)
- With oral use Females (hepatotoxicity) · history of liver disorders (hepatotoxicity) · if doses greater than 400 mg daily (hepatotoxicity) · impaired cardiac function · impaired pulmonary function · therapeutic effect may take a few weeks to develop—discontinue if no response within 6–8 weeks

#### ● INTERACTIONS

→ Appendix 1: dantrolene

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

##### GENERAL SIDE-EFFECTS

- Common or very common** Abdominal pain · hepatic disorders · nausea · respiratory disorders · skin reactions · speech disorder · vomiting



- ▶ **Uncommon** Crystalluria · hyperhidrosis
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Arrhythmias · dizziness · drowsiness

#### SPECIFIC SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common**
  - ▶ With oral use Appetite decreased · chills · confusion · depression · eosinophilia · fever · headache · insomnia · nervousness · pericarditis · visual impairment
- ▶ **Uncommon**
  - ▶ With oral use Constipation · dysphagia · haemorrhage · heart failure aggravated · urinary disorders
- ▶ **Frequency not known**
  - ▶ With intravenous use Gastrointestinal haemorrhage · heart failure · pulmonary oedema · seizure
  - ▶ With oral use Asthenia · diarrhoea · dyspnoea · hypertension · malaise

#### ● PREGNANCY

- ▶ With intravenous use Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- ▶ With oral use Avoid use in chronic spasticity—embryotoxic in animal studies.

#### ● BREAST FEEDING

- ▶ With intravenous use Present in milk—use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.
- ▶ With oral use Present in milk—manufacturer advises avoid use in chronic spasticity.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Avoid—may cause severe liver damage (injection may be used in an emergency for malignant hyperthermia).

#### ● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

- ▶ With oral use Test liver function before and at intervals during therapy.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

- ▶ Hepatotoxicity
- ▶ With oral use Patients should be told how to recognise signs of liver disorder and advised to seek prompt medical attention if symptoms such as anorexia, nausea, vomiting, fatigue, abdominal pain, dark urine, or pruritus develop.
- ▶ **Driving and skilled tasks** ▶ With oral use Drowsiness may affect performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving); effects of alcohol enhanced.

#### ● MEDICAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: oral suspension, oral solution

#### Powder for solution for injection

- ▶ **Dantrium** (Norgine Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Dantrolene sodium 20 mg** Dantrium Intravenous 20mg powder for solution for injection vials | 12 vial (PoM) £612.00 (Hospital only) | 36 vial (PoM) £1,836.00 (Hospital only)

#### Capsule

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 2

- ▶ **Dantrium** (Norgine Pharmaceuticals Ltd)  
**Dantrolene sodium 25 mg** Dantrium 25mg capsules | 100 capsule (PoM) £16.87 DT = £16.87  
**Dantrolene sodium 100 mg** Dantrium 100mg capsules | 100 capsule (PoM) £43.07 DT = £43.07

factors determine their application, e.g. topical (surface), infiltration, peripheral nerve block, intravenous regional anaesthesia (Bier's block), plexus, epidural (extradural), or spinal (intrathecal or subarachnoid) block. Local anaesthetics may also be used for postoperative pain relief, thereby reducing the need for analgesics such as opioids.

Bupivacaine hydrochloride p. 824 has a longer duration of action than other local anaesthetics. It has a slow onset of action, taking up to 30 minutes for full effect. It is often used in lumbar epidural blockade and is particularly suitable for continuous epidural analgesia in labour, or for postoperative pain relief. It is the principal drug used for spinal anaesthesia. Hyperbaric solutions containing glucose may be used for spinal block.

Levobupivacaine p. 825, an isomer of bupivacaine hydrochloride, has anaesthetic and analgesic properties similar to bupivacaine hydrochloride, but is thought to have fewer adverse effects.

Lidocaine hydrochloride p. 826 is effectively absorbed from mucous membranes and is a useful surface anaesthetic in concentrations up to 10%. Except for surface anaesthesia and dental anaesthesia, solutions should **not** usually exceed 1% in strength. The duration of the block (with adrenaline/epinephrine p. 136) is about 90 minutes.

Application of a mixture of lidocaine and prilocaine (EMLA<sup>®</sup>) under an occlusive dressing provides surface anaesthesia for 1–2 hours. EMLA<sup>®</sup> does not appear to be effective in providing local anaesthesia for heel lancing in neonates.

Prilocaine hydrochloride p. 829 is a local anaesthetic of low toxicity which is similar to lidocaine hydrochloride.

Ropivacaine hydrochloride p. 830 is an amide-type local anaesthetic agent similar to bupivacaine hydrochloride. It is less cardiotoxic than bupivacaine hydrochloride, but also less potent.

Tetracaine p. 831, a para-aminobenzoic acid ester, is an effective local anaesthetic for topical application; a 4% gel is indicated for anaesthesia before venepuncture or venous cannulation. Tetracaine is effective for 4–6 hours after a single application in most children. It is not recommended prior to neonatal heel lancing.

Tetracaine is rapidly absorbed from mucous membranes and should never be applied to inflamed, traumatised, or highly vascular surfaces. It should never be used to provide anaesthesia for bronchoscopy or cystoscopy because lidocaine hydrochloride is a safer alternative.

#### Administration by injection

The dose of local anaesthetic depends on the injection site and the procedure used. In determining the safe dosage, it is important to take account of the rate of absorption and excretion, and of the potency. The child's age, weight, physique, and clinical condition, and the vascularity of the administration site and the duration of administration, must also be considered.

Uptake of local anaesthetics into the systemic circulation determines their duration of action and produces toxicity.

NHS Improvement has advised (September 2016) that, prior to administration, all injectable medicines must be drawn directly from their original ampoule or container into a syringe and should **never** be decanted into gallipots or open containers. This is to avoid the risk of medicines being confused with other substances, e.g. skin disinfectants, and to reduce the risk of contamination.

Great care must be taken to avoid accidental intravascular injection; local anaesthetic injections should be given slowly in order to detect inadvertent intravascular administration. When prolonged analgesia is required, a long-acting local anaesthetic is preferred to minimise the likelihood of cumulative systemic toxicity. Local anaesthesia around the oral cavity may impair swallowing and therefore increases the risk of aspiration.

## Local anaesthesia

### Anaesthesia (local)

#### Local anaesthetic drugs

The use of local anaesthetics by injection or by application to mucous membranes to produce local analgesia is discussed in this section.

Local anaesthetic drugs act by causing a reversible block to conduction along nerve fibres. They vary widely in their potency, toxicity, duration of action, stability, solubility in water, and ability to penetrate mucous membranes. These

Epidural anaesthesia is combined with general anaesthesia for certain surgical procedures in children.

### Vasoconstrictors in combination with local anaesthetics

Local anaesthetics cause dilatation of blood vessels. The addition of a vasoconstrictor such as adrenaline/epinephrine to the local anaesthetic preparation diminishes local blood flow, slowing the rate of absorption and thereby prolonging the anaesthetic effect. Great care should be taken to avoid inadvertent intravenous administration of a preparation containing adrenaline/epinephrine, and it is not advisable to give adrenaline/epinephrine with a local anaesthetic injection in digits or appendages because of the risk of ischaemic necrosis.

Adrenaline/epinephrine must be used in a low concentration when administered with a local anaesthetic. Care must also be taken to calculate a safe maximum dose of local anaesthetic when using combination products.

In children with severe hypertension or unstable cardiac rhythm, the use of adrenaline/epinephrine with a local anaesthetic may be hazardous. For these children an anaesthetic without adrenaline/epinephrine should be used.

### Dental anaesthesia

Lidocaine hydrochloride is widely used in dental procedures; it is most often used in combination with adrenaline/epinephrine. Lidocaine hydrochloride 2% combined with adrenaline/epinephrine 1 in 80 000 (12.5 micrograms/mL) is a safe and effective preparation; there is no justification for using higher concentrations of adrenaline/epinephrine. The amide-type local anaesthetics articaine and mepivacaine hydrochloride p. 829 are also used in dentistry; they are available in cartridges suitable for dental use. Mepivacaine hydrochloride is available with or without adrenaline/epinephrine, and articaine is available with adrenaline/epinephrine. In children with severe hypertension or unstable cardiac rhythm, mepivacaine hydrochloride without adrenaline/epinephrine may be used. Alternatively, prilocaine hydrochloride with or without felypressin can be used but there is no evidence that it is any safer. Felypressin can cause coronary vasoconstriction when used at high doses; limit dose in children with coronary artery disease.

### Toxicity induced by local anaesthesia

For management of toxicity see Severe local anaesthetic-induced cardiovascular toxicity below.

## Severe local anaesthetic-induced cardiovascular toxicity

### Overview

After injection of a bolus of local anaesthetic, toxicity may develop at any time in the following hour. In the event of signs of toxicity during injection, the administration of the local anaesthetic must be stopped immediately.

Cardiovascular status must be assessed and cardiopulmonary resuscitation procedures must be followed.

In the event of local anaesthetic-induced cardiac arrest, standard cardiopulmonary resuscitation should be initiated immediately. Lidocaine must not be used as anti-arrhythmic therapy.

If the patient does not respond rapidly to standard procedures, 20% lipid emulsion such as *Intralipid*® [unlicensed indication] should be given intravenously at an initial bolus dose of 1.5 mL/kg over 1 minute, followed by an infusion of 15 mL/kg/hour. After 5 minutes, if cardiovascular stability has not been restored or circulation deteriorates, give a maximum of two further bolus doses of 1.5 mL/kg over

1 minute, 5 minutes apart, and increase the infusion rate to 30 mL/kg/hour. Continue infusion until cardiovascular stability and adequate circulation are restored or maximum cumulative dose of 12 mL/kg is given.

Standard cardiopulmonary resuscitation must be maintained throughout lipid emulsion treatment.

Propofol is not a suitable alternative to lipid emulsion.

Further advice on ongoing treatment should be obtained from the National Poisons Information Service.

Detailed treatment algorithms and accompanying notes are available at [www.toxbase.org](http://www.toxbase.org) or can be found in the Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland safety guideline, Management of Severe Local Anaesthetic Toxicity and Management of Severe Local Anaesthetic Toxicity – Accompanying notes.

## ANAESTHETICS, LOCAL

### Adrenaline with articaine hydrochloride

(Carticaine hydrochloride with epinephrine)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Infiltration anaesthesia in dentistry

- ▶ BY REGIONAL ADMINISTRATION
- ▶ Child 4–17 years: Consult expert dental sources

##### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- ▶ To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal body-weight.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management, and should not be administered parenterally unless adequate resuscitation equipment is available.

Adrenaline/epinephrine must be used in a low concentration when administered with a local anaesthetic. The total dose of adrenaline should not exceed 5 micrograms/kg (1 mL/kg of a 1 in 200 000 solution) and it is essential not to exceed a concentration of 1 in 200 000 (5 micrograms/mL) if more than 50 mL of the mixture is to be injected.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Application to damaged skin · application to the middle ear (may cause ototoxicity) · complete heart block · injection into infected tissues · injection into inflamed tissues · preparations containing preservatives should not be used for caudal, epidural, or spinal block, or for intravenous regional anaesthesia (Bier's block)

#### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ Injection site Local anaesthetics should not be injected into inflamed or infected tissues nor should they be applied to damaged skin. Increased absorption into the blood increases the possibility of systemic side-effects, and the local anaesthetic effect may also be reduced by altered local pH.
- **CAUTIONS** Arrhythmias · cardiovascular disease · cerebrovascular disease · children (consider dose reduction) · cor pulmonale · debilitated patients (consider dose reduction) · diabetes mellitus · epilepsy · hypercalcaemia · hyperreflexia · hypertension · hyperthyroidism · hypokalaemia · hypovolaemia · impaired cardiac conduction · impaired respiratory function · ischaemic heart disease · myasthenia gravis · obstructive cardiomyopathy · occlusive vascular disease · organic brain damage · pheochromocytoma · prostate disorders ·

psychoneurosis · severe angina · shock · susceptibility to angle-closure glaucoma

#### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Use of vasoconstrictors In patients with severe hypertension or unstable cardiac rhythm, the use of adrenaline with a local anaesthetic may be hazardous. For these patients an anaesthetic without adrenaline should be used.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: articaine · sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Face oedema · gingivitis · headache · nausea · sensation abnormal

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Toxic effects after administration of local anaesthetics are a result of excessively high plasma concentrations; severe toxicity usually results from inadvertent intravascular injection. The toxicity mainly involves the central nervous and cardiovascular systems. The onset of toxicity can be unpredictable and delayed. Monitor as per local protocol for at least 30 minutes after administration.

#### ● ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY

- Hypersensitivity and cross-sensitivity Hypersensitivity reactions occur mainly with the ester-type local anaesthetics, such as tetracaine; reactions are less frequent with the amide types, such as articaine, bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaine, and ropivacaine. Cross-sensitivity reactions may be avoided by using the alternative chemical type.

- **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk—no information available.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid breast-feeding for 48 hours after administration.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; increased risk of side-effects in severe impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Manufacturers advise use with caution in severe impairment.

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Consider monitoring blood pressure and ECG (advised with systemic adrenaline/epinephrine).

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sulfites

- **Septanest** (Septodont Ltd)

Adrenaline (as Adrenaline acid tartrate) 10 microgram per 1 ml, Articaine hydrochloride 40 mg per 1 ml Septanest 1 in 100,000 solution for injection cartridges | 50 cartridge [PoM] £24.95

Adrenaline (as Adrenaline acid tartrate) 5 microgram per 1 ml, Articaine hydrochloride 40 mg per 1 ml Septanest 1 in 200,000 solution for injection cartridges | 50 cartridge [PoM] £24.95

## Bupivacaine hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Surgical anaesthesia | Acute pain

- BY REGIONAL ADMINISTRATION

- Child: Doses adjusted according to child's physical status and nature of procedure, seek expert advice (consult product literature or local protocols)

#### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal body-weight.

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

The licensed doses stated may not be appropriate in some settings and expert advice should be sought.

Should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway

management, and should not be administered parenterally unless adequate resuscitation equipment is available.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Application to the middle ear (can cause ototoxicity) · avoid injection into infected tissues · avoid injection into inflamed tissues · complete heart block · preparations containing preservatives should not be used for caudal, epidural, or spinal block, or for intravenous regional anaesthesia (Bier's block) · should not be applied to damaged skin

#### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- Injection site Local anaesthetics should not be injected into inflamed or infected tissues nor should they be applied to damaged skin. Increased absorption into the blood increases the possibility of systemic side-effects, and the local anaesthetic effect may also be reduced by altered local pH.

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease · cerebral atheroma · children (consider dose reduction) · debilitated patients (consider dose reduction) · epilepsy · hypertension · hypotension · hypovolaemia · impaired cardiac conduction · impaired respiratory function · myasthenia gravis · myocardial depression may be more severe and more resistant to treatment · shock

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anaesthetics, local

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · dizziness · hypertension · hypotension · nausea · paraesthesia · urinary retention · vomiting

- **Uncommon** Neurotoxicity

- **Rare or very rare** Arachnoiditis · cardiac arrest · diplopia · nerve disorders · paraplegia · paresis · respiratory depression

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Toxic effects after administration of local anaesthetics are a result of excessively high plasma concentrations; severe toxicity usually results from inadvertent intravascular injection. The systemic toxicity of local anaesthetics mainly involves the central nervous and cardiovascular systems. The onset of toxicity can be unpredictable and delayed. Monitor as per local protocol for at least 30 minutes after administration.

#### ● ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY

- Hypersensitivity and cross-sensitivity Hypersensitivity reactions occur mainly with the ester-type local anaesthetics, such as tetracaine; reactions are less frequent with the amide types, such as articaine, bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaine, and ropivacaine. Cross-sensitivity reactions may be avoided by using the alternative chemical type.

- **PREGNANCY** Large doses during delivery can cause neonatal respiratory depression, hypotonia, and bradycardia after epidural block.

**Dose adjustments** Use lower doses for intrathecal use during late pregnancy.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in severe impairment.


- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in severe impairment.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection, infusion, solution for infusion

#### Solution for injection

- **Bupivacaine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

Bupivacaine hydrochloride 2.5 mg per 1 ml Bupivacaine 25mg/10ml (0.25%) solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] 

Bupivacaine 0.25% solution for injection 10ml Sure-Amp ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £17.50

**Bupivacaine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml** Bupivacaine 0.5% solution for injection 10ml Sure-Amp ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £18.30

Bupivacaine 100mg/20ml (0.5%) solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] [S]

Bupivacaine 50mg/10ml (0.5%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £17.58

**Bupivacaine hydrochloride anhydrous 40 mg per 1 ml** Bupivacain Sintetica 40mg/ml (4%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] [S]

► **Marcaïn** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)

**Bupivacaine hydrochloride 2.5 mg per 1 ml** Marcaïn 0.25% solution for injection 10ml Polyamp Steripack ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £7.92

**Bupivacaine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml** Marcaïn 0.5% solution for injection 10ml Polyamp Steripack ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £9.25

### Infusion

► **Bupivacaine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Bupivacaine hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 ml** Bupivacaine

100mg/100ml (0.1%) infusion bags | 20 bag [PoM] [S]

Bupivacaine 250mg/250ml (0.1%) infusion bags | 20 bag [PoM] £211.72

**Bupivacaine hydrochloride 1.25 mg per 1 ml** Bupivacaine 312.5mg/250ml (0.125%) infusion bags | 20 bag [PoM] £216.06

## Bupivacaine with adrenaline

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, bupivacaine hydrochloride p. 824, adrenaline/epinephrine p. 136.

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Surgical anaesthesia

► BY LUMBAR EPIDURAL, OR BY LOCAL INFILTRATION, OR BY CAUDAL EPIDURAL

► Child 12–17 years: (consult product literature)

#### Acute pain management

► BY LUMBAR EPIDURAL, OR BY LOCAL INFILTRATION

► Child 1–17 years: (consult product literature)

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Adrenaline/epinephrine must be used in a low concentration when administered with a local anaesthetic. The total dose of adrenaline should not exceed 5 micrograms/kg (1 mL/kg of a 1 in 200 000 solution) and it is essential not to exceed a concentration of 1 in 200 000 (5 micrograms/mL) if more than 50 mL of the mixture is to be injected.

### • CAUTIONS

**CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION** In patients with severe hypertension or unstable cardiac rhythm, the use of adrenaline with a local anaesthetic may be hazardous. For these patients an anaesthetic without adrenaline should be used.

• **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anaesthetics, local - sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

► **Bupivacaine with adrenaline (Non-proprietary)**

**Adrenaline (as Adrenaline acid tartrate) 5 microgram per 1 ml, Bupivacaine hydrochloride 2.5 mg per 1 ml** Bupivacaine 25mg/10ml (0.25%) / Adrenaline (base) 50micrograms/10ml (1 in 200,000) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £40.00

**Adrenaline (as Adrenaline acid tartrate) 5 microgram per 1 ml, Bupivacaine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml** Bupivacaine 50mg/10ml (0.5%) / Adrenaline (base) 50micrograms/10ml (1 in 200,000) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £45.00

## Levobupivacaine

### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### Surgical anaesthesia | Acute pain

► BY REGIONAL ADMINISTRATION

► Child: Doses adjusted according to child's physical status and nature of procedure, seek expert advice (consult product literature or local protocols)

### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

► To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal body-weight.

• **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children except for analgesia by ilioinguinal or iliohypogastric block.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

The licensed doses stated may not be appropriate in some settings and expert advice should be sought.

Should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management, and should not be administered parenterally unless adequate resuscitation equipment is available.

• **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Application to the middle ear (can cause ototoxicity) - avoid injection into infected tissues - avoid injection into inflamed tissues - complete heart block - preparations containing preservatives should not be used for caudal, epidural, or spinal block, or for intravenous regional anaesthesia (Bier's block) - should not be applied to damaged skin

### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

► Injection site Local anaesthetics should not be injected into inflamed or infected tissues nor should they be applied to damaged skin. Increased absorption into the blood increases the possibility of systemic side-effects, and the local anaesthetic effect may also be reduced by altered local pH.

• **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease - children (consider dose reduction) - debilitated patients (consider dose reduction) - epilepsy - hypovolaemia - impaired cardiac conduction - impaired respiratory function - myasthenia gravis - shock

• **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anaesthetics, local

### • SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Anaemia - back pain - dizziness - fever - headache - hypotension - nausea - vomiting

► **Frequency not known** Angioedema - apnoea - arrhythmias - asthenia - atrioventricular block - bladder disorder - cardiac arrest - drowsiness - eye disorders - faecal incontinence - flushing - loss of consciousness - muscle twitching - muscle weakness - nerve disorders - neurological injury - oral hypoaesthesia - paralysis - priapism - respiratory disorders - seizure - sensation abnormal - skin reactions - sneezing - sweat changes - syncope - vision blurred

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The systemic toxicity of local anaesthetics mainly involves the central nervous and cardiovascular systems. Systemic toxicity can occur due to inadvertent intravascular injection. The onset of toxicity can be unpredictable and delayed. Monitor as per local protocol for at least 30 minutes after administration.

### • ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY

► Hypersensitivity and cross-sensitivity Hypersensitivity reactions occur mainly with the ester-type local anaesthetics, such as tetracaine; reactions are less frequent with the amide types, such as articaine, bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaine, and ropivacaine. Cross-sensitivity reactions may be avoided by using the alternative chemical type.

- **PREGNANCY** Large doses during delivery can cause neonatal respiratory depression, hypotonia, and bradycardia after epidural block. Avoid if possible in the first trimester—toxicity in *animal* studies. May cause fetal distress syndrome. Do not use for paracervical block in obstetrics. Do not use 7.5 mg/mL strength in obstetrics.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Amount too small to be harmful.
- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For 1.25 mg/mL concentration dilute standard solutions with sodium chloride 0.9%.
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Levobupivacaine is an isomer of bupivacaine.

#### MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

##### Chirocaine (AbbVie Ltd)

**Levobupivacaine (as Levobupivacaine hydrochloride) 2.5 mg per**

1 mL Chirocaine 25mg/10mL solution for injection ampoules |

10 ampoule [PoM] £14.11 (Hospital only)

**Levobupivacaine (as Levobupivacaine hydrochloride) 5 mg per**

1 mL Chirocaine 50mg/10mL solution for injection ampoules |

10 ampoule [PoM] £16.15 (Hospital only)

**Levobupivacaine (as Levobupivacaine hydrochloride) 7.5 mg per**

1 mL Chirocaine 75mg/10mL solution for injection ampoules |

10 ampoule [PoM] £24.23 (Hospital only)

#### Infusion

##### Chirocaine (AbbVie Ltd)

**Levobupivacaine (as Levobupivacaine hydrochloride) 1.25 mg per**

1 mL Chirocaine 125mg/100mL infusion bags | 24 bag [PoM] £174.22

Chirocaine 250mg/200mL infusion bags | 12 bag [PoM] £

#### LMX 4<sup>®</sup>

#### Anaesthesia before venous cannulation or venepuncture

##### ► TO THE SKIN

- Child 1–2 months: Apply up to 1 g, apply thick layer to small area (2.5 cm × 2.5 cm) of non-irritated skin at least 30 minutes before procedure; may be applied under an occlusive dressing; max. application time 60 minutes, remove cream with gauze and perform procedure after approximately 5 minutes
- Child 3–11 months: Apply up to 1 g, apply thick layer to small area (2.5 cm × 2.5 cm) of non-irritated skin at least 30 minutes before procedure; may be applied under an occlusive dressing; max. application time 4 hours, remove cream with gauze and perform procedure after approximately 5 minutes
- Child 1–17 years: Apply 1–2.5 g, apply thick layer to small area (2.5 cm × 2.5 cm) of non-irritated skin at least 30 minutes before procedure; may be applied under an occlusive dressing; max. application time 5 hours, remove cream with gauze and perform procedure after approximately 5 minutes

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

##### ► When used by local infiltration

The licensed doses stated may not be appropriate in some settings and expert advice should be sought. Should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management, and should not be administered parenterally unless adequate resuscitation equipment is available.

## Lidocaine hydrochloride

(Lignocaine hydrochloride)

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Infiltration anaesthesia

##### ► BY LOCAL INFILTRATION

- Neonate: Up to 3 mg/kg, dose to be given according to patient's weight and nature of procedure, dose may be repeated not more often than every 4 hours, 3 mg/kg equivalent to 0.3 mL/kg of 1% solution.
- Child 1 month–11 years: Up to 3 mg/kg, dose to be given according to patient's weight and nature of procedure, dose may be repeated not more often than every 4 hours, 3 mg/kg equivalent to 0.3 mL/kg of 1% solution
- Child 12–17 years: (max. per dose 200 mg), dose to be given according to child's weight and nature of procedure, dose may be repeated not more often than every 4 hours

##### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- When used by local infiltration To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, weight-based doses for non-emergency indications may need to be calculated on the basis of ideal body-weight.

##### Intravenous regional anaesthesia and nerve block

##### ► BY REGIONAL ADMINISTRATION

- Child: Seek expert advice

##### Dental anaesthesia

##### ► BY REGIONAL ADMINISTRATION

- Child: Seek expert advice

**Pain relief (in anal fissures, haemorrhoids, pruritus ani, pruritus vulvae, herpes zoster, or herpes labialis) |**

**Lubricant in cystoscopy | Lubricant in proctoscopy**

##### ► TO THE SKIN USING OINTMENT

- Child: Apply 1–2 mL as required, avoid long-term use

#### • CONTRA-INDICATIONS

- When used by regional administration Application to the middle ear (can cause ototoxicity) • avoid injection into infected tissues • avoid injection into inflamed tissues • preparations containing preservatives should not be used for caudal, epidural, or spinal block, or for intravenous regional anaesthesia (Bier's block) • should not be applied to damaged skin

#### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- When used by regional administration Local anaesthetics should not be injected into inflamed or infected tissues nor should they be applied to damaged skin. Increased absorption into the blood increases the possibility of systemic side-effects, and the local anaesthetic effect may also be reduced by altered local pH.

#### • CAUTIONS

- When used by regional administration Children (consider dose reduction) • debilitated patients (consider dose reduction) • epilepsy • hypovolaemia • impaired cardiac conduction • impaired respiratory function • myasthenia gravis • shock

#### • INTERACTIONS → Appendix 1: antiarrhythmics

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Anxiety • arrhythmias • atrioventricular block • cardiac arrest • circulatory collapse • confusion • dizziness • drowsiness • euphoric mood • headache • hypotension (may lead to cardiac arrest) • loss of consciousness • methaemoglobinaemia • muscle twitching • myocardial contractility decreased • nausea • neurological effects • nystagmus • pain • psychosis • respiratory disorders • seizure • sensation abnormal • temperature sensation altered • tinnitus • tremor • vision blurred • vomiting

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Toxic effects** The systemic toxicity of local anaesthetics mainly involves the central nervous and cardiovascular systems.

**Methaemoglobinaemia** Methylthionium chloride can be used for the treatment of drug-induced methaemoglobinaemia.



**● ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY**

- **Hypersensitivity and cross-sensitivity** Hypersensitivity reactions occur mainly with the ester-type local anaesthetics, such as tetracaine; reactions are less frequent with the amide types, such as articaine, bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaine, and ropivacaine. Cross-sensitivity reactions may be avoided by using the alternative chemical type.

- **PREGNANCY** Crosses the placenta but not known to be harmful in *animal* studies—use if benefit outweighs risk. When used as a local anaesthetic, large doses can cause fetal bradycardia; if given during delivery can also cause neonatal respiratory depression, hypotonia, or bradycardia after paracervical or epidural block.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but amount too small to be harmful.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Caution—increased risk of side-effects.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Possible accumulation of lidocaine and active metabolite; caution in severe impairment.

**● MONITORING REQUIREMENTS**

- With systemic use Monitor ECG and have resuscitation facilities available.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection, ointment

**Solution for injection**► **Lidocaine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Lidocaine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml** Lidocaine 50mg/10ml (0.5%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £7.00

**Lidocaine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Lidocaine 100mg/10ml (1%) solution for injection Mini-Plasco ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £11.21

Lidocaine 100mg/10ml (1%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £4.40 DT = £4.40

Lidocaine 100mg/10ml (1%) solution for injection Sure-Amp ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £8.80

Lidocaine 200mg/20ml (1%) solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £19.00

Lidocaine 200mg/20ml (1%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £7.00–£9.63 DT = £9.63

Lidocaine 50mg/5ml (1%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £2.59–£3.10 DT = £2.59

Lidocaine 20mg/2ml (1%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £3.50 DT = £2.20

Lidocaine 50mg/5ml (1%) solution for injection Sure-Amp ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £6.00

**Lidocaine hydrochloride 20 mg per 1 ml** Lidocaine 100mg/5ml (2%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £2.70–£3.80 DT = £2.70

Lidocaine 400mg/20ml (2%) solution for injection vials | 10 vial [PoM] £19.50

Lidocaine 200mg/10ml (2%) solution for injection Mini-Plasco ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £14.95

Lidocaine 40mg/2ml (2%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £4.00 DT = £2.37

Lidocaine 100mg/5ml (2%) solution for injection Sure-Amp ampoules | 20 ampoule [PoM] £6.00

Lidocaine 400mg/20ml (2%) solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £8.00–£9.90 DT = £9.90

**Cream**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Benzyl alcohol, propylene glycol

► **LMX 4** (Ferndale Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Lidocaine 40 mg per 1 gram** LMX 4 cream | 5 gram [P] £2.98 DT = £2.98 | 30 gram [P] £14.90 DT = £14.90

**Ointment**► **Lidocaine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**

**Lidocaine hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 gram** Lidocaine 5% ointment | 15 gram [P] £6.50 DT = £6.18

**Lidocaine with adrenaline**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, lidocaine hydrochloride p. 826, adrenaline/epinephrine p. 136.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Local anaesthesia**► **BY LOCAL INFILTRATION**

- Child 12–17 years: Dosed according to the type of nerve block required (consult product literature)

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

Adrenaline/epinephrine must be used in a low concentration when administered with a local anaesthetic. The total dose of adrenaline should not exceed 5 micrograms/kg (1 mL/kg of a 1 in 200 000 solution) and it is essential not to exceed a concentration of 1 in 200 000 (5 micrograms/mL) if more than 50 mL of the mixture is to be injected.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiarrhythmics - sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

**● PROFESSION SPECIFIC INFORMATION****Dental information**

A variety of lidocaine injections with adrenaline is available in dental cartridges.

Consult expert dental sources for specific advice in relation to dose of lidocaine for dental anaesthesia.

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

**Solution for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sulfites

► **Lignospan Special** (Septodont Ltd)

**Adrenaline (as Adrenaline acid tartrate) 12.5 microgram per 1 ml,**

**Lidocaine hydrochloride 20 mg per 1 ml** Lignospan Special 2%

injection 2.2ml cartridges | 50 cartridge [PoM] £21.95

Lignospan Special 2% injection 1.8ml cartridges | 50 cartridge [PoM] £21.95

► **Rexocaine** (Henry Schein Ltd)

**Adrenaline (as Adrenaline acid tartrate) 12.5 microgram per 1 ml,**

**Lidocaine hydrochloride 20 mg per 1 ml** Rexocaine 2% injection

2.2ml cartridges | 50 cartridge [PoM] £23.29

► **Xylocaine with Adrenaline** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)

**Adrenaline (as Adrenaline acid tartrate) 5 microgram per 1 ml,**

**Lidocaine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Xylocaine 1% with

Adrenaline 100micrograms/20ml (1 in 200,000) solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £9.66 DT = £9.66

**Adrenaline (as Adrenaline acid tartrate) 5 microgram per 1 ml,**

**Lidocaine hydrochloride 20 mg per 1 ml** Xylocaine 2% with

Adrenaline 100micrograms/20ml (1 in 200,000) solution for injection vials | 5 vial [PoM] £8.85 DT = £8.85

**Lidocaine with cetrimide**

27-Apr-2018

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, lidocaine hydrochloride p. 826.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Anaesthesia and disinfection in dental practice**► **TO MUCOUS MEMBRANES USING OROMUCOSAL SPRAY**

- Child 4–17 years: 10–20 mg, no more than 30 mg should be applied to the same quadrant of the buccal cavity—consult product literature, dose expressed as lidocaine

continued →

**Anaesthesia in dental practice**

- ▶ TO MUCOUS MEMBRANES USING DENTAL GEL
- ▶ Child 4–17 years: Apply 100–500 mg, use cotton pellet for application to dried mucosa, dose expressed as weight of gel

**DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION**

- ▶ 1 metered dose of Xylonor® spray is equivalent to 10 mg of lidocaine.
- ▶ 2 millimetres of Xylonor® gel is approximately equivalent to 100 mg of gel (approximately equivalent to 5 mg of lidocaine).

- **CAUTIONS** Sepsis (risk of rapid systemic absorption) • traumatised mucosa (risk of rapid systemic absorption)

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiarrhythmics

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Oromucosal gel**

- ▶ **Xylonor** (Septodont Ltd)  
Cetrimide 1.5 mg per 1 gram, Lidocaine 50 mg per 1 gram Xylonor 5% gel sugar-free | 15 gram [PoM] £4.00

**Spray**

- ▶ **Xylonor** (Septodont Ltd)  
Cetrimide 100 microgram per 1 gram, Lidocaine 10 mg per 1 gram Xylonor 10% spray sugar-free | 36 gram [PoM] £20.15

**Lidocaine with phenylephrine**

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, lidocaine hydrochloride p. 826, phenylephrine hydrochloride p. 125.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Anaesthesia before nasal surgery, endoscopy, laryngoscopy, or removal of foreign bodies from the nose**

- ▶ BY INTRANASAL ADMINISTRATION
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Up to 8 sprays

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: antiarrhythmics • sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Spray**

- ▶ **Lidocaine with phenylephrine (Non-proprietary)**  
Phenylephrine hydrochloride 5 mg per 1 ml, Lidocaine hydrochloride 50 mg per 1 ml Lidocaine 5% / Phenylephrine 0.5% nasal spray | 2.5 ml [PoM] £12.90 DT = £12.90

**Lidocaine with prilocaine**

14-Jun-2017

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, lidocaine hydrochloride p. 826, prilocaine hydrochloride p. 829.

**● INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Anaesthesia before minor skin procedures including venepuncture**

- ▶ TO THE SKIN
- ▶ Neonate: Apply up to 1 g for maximum 1 hour before procedure, to be applied under occlusive dressing, shorter application time of 15–30 minutes is recommended for children with atopic dermatitis (30 minutes before removal of mollusca); maximum 1 dose per day.

- ▶ Child 1–2 months: Apply up to 1 g for maximum 1 hour before procedure, to be applied under occlusive dressing, shorter application time of 15–30 minutes is recommended for children with atopic dermatitis (30 minutes before removal of mollusca); maximum 1 dose per day
- ▶ Child 3–11 months: Apply up to 2 g for maximum 1 hour before procedure, to be applied under occlusive dressing, shorter application time of 15–30 minutes is recommended for children with atopic dermatitis (30 minutes before removal of mollusca); maximum 2 doses per day
- ▶ Child 1–11 years: Apply 1–5 hours before procedure, a thick layer should be applied under occlusive dressing, shorter application time of 15–30 minutes is recommended for children with atopic dermatitis (30 minutes before removal of mollusca); maximum 2 doses per day
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply 1–5 hours before procedure (2–5 hours before procedures on large areas e.g. split skin grafting), a thick layer should be applied under occlusive dressing, shorter application time of 15–30 minutes is recommended for children with atopic dermatitis (30 minutes before removal of mollusca)

**Anaesthesia on genital skin before injection of local anaesthetics****▶ TO THE SKIN**

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply under occlusive dressing for 15 minutes (males) or 60 minutes (females) before procedure

**Anaesthesia before surgical treatment of lesions on genital mucosa****▶ TO THE SKIN**

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply up to 10 g, to be applied 5–10 minutes before procedure, maximum dose should be proportionally reduced in adolescents with body-weight less than 20 kg

**Anaesthesia before cervical curettage****▶ TO THE SKIN**

- ▶ Child 12–17 years: Apply 10 g in lateral vaginal fornices for 10 minutes

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Use in child less than 37 weeks corrected gestational age

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anaesthetics, local • antiarrhythmics

**● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE**

Medicines for Children leaflet: EMLA cream for local anaesthesia [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/emla-cream-for-local-anaesthesia](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/emla-cream-for-local-anaesthesia)

**● MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Cream**

- ▶ **Lidocaine with prilocaine (Non-proprietary)**  
Lidocaine 25 mg per 1 gram, Prilocaine 25 mg per 1 gram Lidocaine 2.5% / Prilocaine 2.5% cream | 5 gram [P] £
- ▶ **Denela** (Teva UK Ltd)  
Lidocaine 25 mg per 1 gram, Prilocaine 25 mg per 1 gram Denela 5% cream | 5 gram [P] £2.84–£3.29 | 25 gram [P] £12.99 | 30 gram [P] £14.75 DT = £12.30
- ▶ **Emla** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)  
Lidocaine 25 mg per 1 gram, Prilocaine 25 mg per 1 gram Emla 5% cream | 5 gram [P] £2.25–£2.99 | 25 gram [P] £11.70 | 30 gram [P] £12.30 DT = £12.30
- ▶ **Nulbia** (Glenmark Pharmaceuticals Europe Ltd)  
Lidocaine 25 mg per 1 gram, Prilocaine 25 mg per 1 gram Nulbia 5% cream | 5 gram [P] £1.58 | 25 gram [P] £7.88 | 30 gram [P] £8.61 DT = £12.30

## Mepivacaine hydrochloride

### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

#### **Infiltration anaesthesia and nerve block in dentistry**

- ▶ Child 3–17 years: Consult expert dental sources

#### **DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT**

- ▶ To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal body-weight.

### **IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

Should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management, and should not be administered parenterally unless adequate resuscitation equipment is available.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Application to the middle ear (can cause ototoxicity) · avoid injection into infected tissues · avoid injection into inflamed tissues · complete heart block · preparations containing preservatives should not be used for caudal, epidural, or spinal block, or for intravenous regional anaesthesia (Bier's block) · should not be applied to damaged skin

#### **CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION**

- ▶ Injection site Local anaesthetics should not be injected into inflamed or infected tissues nor should they be applied to damaged skin. Increased absorption into the blood increases the possibility of systemic side-effects, and the local anaesthetic effect may also be reduced by altered local pH.

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease · children (consider dose reduction) · debilitated patients (consider dose reduction) · epilepsy · hypovolaemia · impaired cardiac conduction · impaired respiratory function · myasthenia gravis · shock

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anaesthetics, local

#### ● **SIDE-EFFECTS**

- ▶ **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · dizziness · hypertension · hypotension · nausea · paraesthesia · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Neurotoxicity
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Arachnoiditis · cardiac arrest · diplopia · nerve disorders · respiratory depression

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Toxic effects after administration of local anaesthetics are a result of excessively high plasma concentrations; severe toxicity usually results from inadvertent intravascular injection or too rapid injection. The systemic toxicity of local anaesthetics mainly involves the central nervous and cardiovascular systems. The onset of toxicity can be unpredictable and delayed. Monitor as per local protocol for at least 30 minutes after administration.

#### ● **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY**

- ▶ Hypersensitivity and cross-sensitivity Hypersensitivity reactions occur mainly with the ester-type local anaesthetics, such as tetracaine; reactions are less frequent with the amide types, such as articaine, bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaïne, and ropivacaine. Cross-sensitivity reactions may be avoided by using the alternative chemical type.

- **PREGNANCY** Use with caution in early pregnancy.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Use with caution.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; increased risk of side-effects in severe impairment.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution; increased risk of side-effects.

### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

- ▶ **Scandonest plain** (Septodont Ltd)

**Mepivacaine hydrochloride 30 mg per 1 mL** Scandonest plain 3% solution for injection 2.2mL cartridges | 50 cartridge [PoM] £21.95

## Mepivacaine with adrenaline

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, mepivacaine hydrochloride above, adrenaline/epinephrine p. 136.

### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

#### **Infiltration anaesthesia and nerve block in dentistry**

- ▶ **BY LOCAL INFILTRATION**
- ▶ Child: (consult product literature)

### **IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

Adrenaline/epinephrine must be used in a low concentration when administered with a local anaesthetic. The total dose of adrenaline should not exceed 5 micrograms/kg (1 mL/kg of a 1 in 200 000 solution) and it is essential not to exceed a concentration of 1 in 200 000 (5 micrograms/mL) if more than 50 mL of the mixture is to be injected.

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anaesthetics, local · sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

### ● **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Sulfites

- ▶ **Scandonest special** (Septodont Ltd)

**Adrenaline 10 microgram per 1 mL, Mepivacaine hydrochloride 20 mg per 1 mL** Scandonest special 2% solution for injection 2.2mL cartridges | 50 cartridge [PoM] £21.95

## Prilocaïne hydrochloride

### ● **INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**CITANEST 1%®**

#### **Infiltration anaesthesia | Nerve block**

- ▶ **BY REGIONAL ADMINISTRATION**

- ▶ Child 6 months–11 years: Up to 5 mg/kg, dose adjusted according to site of administration and response; maximum 400 mg per course
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 100–200 mg/minute, alternatively, may be given in incremental doses; dose adjusted according to site of administration and response; maximum 400 mg per course

#### **DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT**

- ▶ To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose should be calculated on the basis of ideal body-weight.

### **IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

Should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management, and should not be administered parenterally unless adequate resuscitation equipment is available.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Acquired methaemoglobinaemia · anaemia · application to the middle ear (can cause ototoxicity) · avoid injection into infected tissues · avoid

injection into inflamed tissues · complete heart block · congenital methaemoglobinemia · preparations containing preservatives should not be used for caudal, epidural, or spinal block, or for intravenous regional anaesthesia (Bier's block) · should not be applied to damaged skin

#### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ **Injection site** Local anaesthetics should not be injected into inflamed or infected tissues nor should they be applied to damaged skin. Increased absorption into the blood increases the possibility of systemic side-effects, and the local anaesthetic effect may also be reduced by altered local pH.

- **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease · children (consider dose reduction) · debilitated patients (consider dose reduction) · epilepsy · hypovolaemia · impaired cardiac conduction · impaired respiratory function · myasthenia gravis · neonates and infants under 6 months are particularly susceptible to methaemoglobinemia · severe or untreated hypertension · shock

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anaesthetics, local

#### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- ▶ **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · dizziness · hypertension · hypotension · nausea · paraesthesia · vomiting
- ▶ **Uncommon** Neurotoxicity
- ▶ **Rare or very rare** Cardiac arrest · methaemoglobinemia · nerve disorders
- ▶ **Frequency not known** Diplopia · respiratory depression

#### SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION

**Toxic effects** Toxic effects after administration of local anaesthetics are a result of excessively high plasma concentrations; severe toxicity usually results from inadvertent intravascular injection or too rapid injection. The systemic toxicity of local anaesthetics mainly involves the central nervous and cardiovascular systems. The onset of toxicity can be unpredictable and delayed. Monitor as per local protocol for at least 30 minutes after administration.

**Methaemoglobinemia** Methaemoglobinemia can be treated with an intravenous injection of methylthioninium chloride.

#### ● ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY

- ▶ **Hypersensitivity and cross-sensitivity** Hypersensitivity reactions occur mainly with the ester-type local anaesthetics, such as tetracaine; reactions are less frequent with the amide types, such as articaine, bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaine, and ropivacaine. Cross-sensitivity reactions may be avoided by using the alternative chemical type.

- **PREGNANCY** Large doses during delivery can cause neonatal respiratory depression, hypotonia, and bradycardia after epidural block. Avoid paracervical or pudendal block in obstetrics (neonatal methaemoglobinemia reported).

**Dose adjustments** Use lower doses for intrathecal use during late pregnancy.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Present in milk but not known to be harmful.

- **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

**Dose adjustments** Lower doses may be required for intrathecal anaesthesia.

- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

**Dose adjustments** Lower doses may be required for intrathecal anaesthesia.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

- ▶ **Citanest** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)

**Prilocaine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Citanest 1% solution for injection 50ml vials | 1 vial **[PoM]** £5.06

## Prilocaine with felypressin

The properties listed below are those particular to the combination only. For the properties of the components please consider, prilocaine hydrochloride p. 829.

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Dental anaesthesia**

- ▶ **BY REGIONAL ADMINISTRATION**
- ▶ **Child:** Consult expert dental sources for specific advice

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anaesthetics, local

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Bradycardia · cardiac arrest · dizziness · drowsiness · hypotension · loss of consciousness · methaemoglobinemia · myocardial contractility decreased · nervousness · respiratory arrest · seizure · tremor · vision blurred

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### **Solution for injection**

- ▶ **Citanest with Octapressin** (Dentsply Ltd)

**Prilocaine hydrochloride 30 mg per 1 ml, Felypressin.03 unit per 1 ml** Citanest 3% with Octapressin Dental 0.066units/2.2ml solution for injection self aspirating cartridges | 50 cartridge **[PoM]** £

## Ropivacaine hydrochloride

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Acute pain | Surgical anaesthesia**

- ▶ **BY REGIONAL ADMINISTRATION**
- ▶ **Child:** Adjust according to child's physical status and nature of procedure, seek expert advice

#### **DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT**

- ▶ To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, dose may need to be calculated on the basis of ideal bodyweight.

- **UNLICENSED USE** 2 mg/mL strength not licensed for use in children under 12 years except for acute pain management by caudal epidural block and continuous epidural infusion. 7.5 mg/mL and 10 mg/mL strengths not licensed for use in children under 12 years.

#### **IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

Should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in their use, with adequate training in anaesthesia and airway management, and should not be administered parenterally unless adequate resuscitation equipment is available.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Application to the middle ear (can cause ototoxicity) · avoid injection into infected tissues · avoid injection into inflamed tissues · complete heart block · preparations containing preservatives should not be used for caudal, epidural, or spinal block, or for intravenous regional anaesthesia (Bier's block) · should not be applied to damaged skin

#### CONTRA-INDICATIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

- ▶ **Injection site** Local anaesthetics should not be injected into inflamed or infected tissues nor should they be applied to damaged skin. Increased absorption into the blood increases the possibility of systemic side-effects, and the

local anaesthetic effect may also be reduced by altered local pH.

- **CAUTIONS** Acute porphyrias p. 603 · cardiovascular disease · children (consider dose reduction) · debilitated patients (consider dose reduction) · epilepsy · hypovolaemia · impaired cardiac conduction · impaired respiratory function · myasthenia gravis · shock
  - **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anaesthetics, local
  - **SIDE-EFFECTS**
    - ▶ **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · back pain · chills · dizziness · headache · hypertension · hypotension · nausea · sensation abnormal · urinary retention · vomiting
    - ▶ **Uncommon** Anxiety · dyspnoea · hypothermia · neurotoxicity · syncope
    - ▶ **Rare or very rare** Cardiac arrest
    - ▶ **Frequency not known** Dyskinesia
- SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Toxic effects after administration of local anaesthetics are a result of excessively high plasma concentrations; severe toxicity usually results from inadvertent intravascular injection. The systemic toxicity of local anaesthetics mainly involves the central nervous and cardiovascular systems. The onset of toxicity can be unpredictable and delayed. Monitor as per local protocol for at least 30 minutes after administration.
- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY**
    - ▶ Hypersensitivity and cross-sensitivity Hypersensitivity reactions occur mainly with the ester-type local anaesthetics, such as tetracaine; reactions are less frequent with the amide types, such as articaine, bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaine, and ropivacaine. Cross-sensitivity reactions may be avoided by using the alternative chemical type.
  - **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful. Do not use for paracervical block in obstetrics.
  - **BREAST FEEDING** Not known to be harmful.
  - **HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution in severe impairment.
  - **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Caution in severe impairment. Increased risk of systemic toxicity in chronic renal failure.

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Solution for injection**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- ▶ **Ropivacaine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**
  - Ropivacaine hydrochloride 2 mg per 1 ml** Ropivacaine 20mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £16.50 (Hospital only)
  - Ropivacaine hydrochloride 7.5 mg per 1 ml** Ropivacaine 75mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £25.00 (Hospital only)
  - Ropivacaine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Ropivacaine 100mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule [PoM] £30.00 (Hospital only)
- ▶ **Naropin** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)
  - Ropivacaine hydrochloride 2 mg per 1 ml** Naropin 20mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £12.79
  - Ropivacaine hydrochloride 7.5 mg per 1 ml** Naropin 75mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £15.90
  - Ropivacaine hydrochloride 10 mg per 1 ml** Naropin 100mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] £19.22

##### **Infusion**

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- ▶ **Ropivacaine hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)**
  - Ropivacaine hydrochloride 2 mg per 1 ml** Ropivacaine 400mg/200ml infusion bags | 10 bag [PoM] £137.00 (Hospital only)
- ▶ **Naropin** (Aspen Pharma Trading Ltd)
  - Ropivacaine hydrochloride 2 mg per 1 ml** Naropin 400mg/200ml infusion Polybags | 5 bag [PoM] £86.70

## Tetracaine

### (Amethocaine)

#### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### **Anaesthesia before venepuncture or venous cannulation**

###### ▶ TO THE SKIN

- ▶ **Neonate:** Apply contents of tube (or appropriate proportion) to site of venepuncture or venous cannulation and cover with occlusive dressing; remove gel and dressing after 30 minutes for venepuncture and after 45 minutes for venous cannulation.
- ▶ **Child 1 month–4 years:** Apply contents of up to 1 tube (applied at separate sites at a single time or appropriate proportion) to site of venepuncture or venous cannulation and cover with occlusive dressing; remove gel and dressing after 30 minutes for venepuncture and after 45 minutes for venous cannulation
- ▶ **Child 5–17 years:** Apply contents of up to 5 tubes (applied at separate sites at a single time or appropriate proportion) to site of venepuncture or venous cannulation and cover with occlusive dressing; remove gel and dressing after 30 minutes for venepuncture and after 45 minutes for venous cannulation

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in neonates.

- **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Should not be applied to damaged skin

- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: anaesthetics, local

- **SIDE-EFFECTS** Oedema · skin reactions

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** The systemic toxicity of local anaesthetics mainly involves the central nervous system; systemic side effects unlikely as minimal absorption following topical application.

#### ● ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY

- ▶ Hypersensitivity and cross-sensitivity Hypersensitivity reactions occur mainly with the ester-type local anaesthetics, such as tetracaine; reactions are less frequent with the amide types, such as articaine, bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaine, and ropivacaine. Cross-sensitivity reactions may be avoided by using the alternative chemical type.

- **BREAST FEEDING** Not known to be harmful.

#### ● PATIENT AND CARER ADVICE

Medicines for Children leaflet: Tetracaine gel for local anaesthesia [www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tetracaine-gel-for-local-anaesthesia](http://www.medicinesforchildren.org.uk/tetracaine-gel-for-local-anaesthesia)

#### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

##### **Gel**

EXCIPIENTS: May contain Hydroxybenzoates (parabens)

- ▶ **Ametop** (Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

**Tetracaine 40 mg per 1 gram** Ametop 4% gel | 1.5 gram [P] £1.08



# Chapter 16

## Emergency treatment of poisoning

### CONTENTS

<b>1 Active elimination from the gastrointestinal tract</b>	page 839	3.2 Digoxin toxicity	page 841
<b>2 Chemical toxicity</b>	839	3.3 Heparin toxicity	841
2.1 Cyanide toxicity	839	3.4 Opioid toxicity	842
2.2 Organophosphorus toxicity	840	3.5 Paracetamol toxicity	843
<b>3 Drug toxicity</b>	840	<b>4 Methaemoglobinemia</b>	843
3.1 Benzodiazepine toxicity	840	<b>5 Snake bites</b>	844

## 16

## Poisoning, emergency treatment

### Overview

These notes provide only an overview of the treatment of poisoning, and it is strongly recommended that either **TOXBASE** or the **UK National Poisons Information Service** be consulted when there is doubt about the degree of risk or about management.

Most childhood poisoning is accidental. Other causes include intentional overdose, drug abuse, iatrogenic and deliberate poisoning. The drugs most commonly involved in childhood poisoning are paracetamol p. 271, ibuprofen p. 655, orally ingested creams, aspirin p. 91, iron preparations, cough medicines, and the contraceptive pill.

### Hospital admission

Children who have features of poisoning should generally be admitted to hospital. Children who have taken poisons with delayed actions should also be admitted, even if they appear well. Delayed-action poisons include aspirin, iron, paracetamol, tricyclic antidepressants, and co-phenotrope (diphenoxylate with atropine, *Lomotil*®) p. 48; the effects of modified-release preparations are also delayed. A note of all relevant information, including what treatment has been given, should accompany the patient to hospital.

### Further information

**TOXBASE**, the primary clinical toxicology database of the National Poisons Information Service, is available on the internet to registered users at [www.toxbase.org](http://www.toxbase.org) (a backup site is available at [www.toxbasebackup.org](http://www.toxbasebackup.org) if the main site cannot be accessed). It provides information about routine diagnosis, treatment, and management of patients exposed to drugs, household products, and industrial and agricultural chemicals.

Specialist information and advice on the treatment of poisoning is available day and night from the **UK National Poisons Information Service** on the following number: Tel: 0344 892 0111.

Advice on laboratory analytical services can be obtained from **TOXBASE** or from the National Poisons Information Service. Help with identifying capsules or tablets may be available from a regional medicines information centre or from the National Poisons Information Service (out of hours).

### General care

It is often impossible to establish with certainty the identity of the poison and the size of the dose. This is not usually important because only a few poisons (such as opioids, paracetamol, and iron) have specific antidotes; few patients

require active removal of the poison. In most patients, treatment is directed at managing symptoms as they arise. Nevertheless, knowledge of the type and timing of poisoning can help in anticipating the course of events. All relevant information should be sought from the poisoned individual and from carers or parents. However, such information should be interpreted with care because it may not be complete or entirely reliable. Sometimes symptoms arise from other illnesses and patients should be assessed carefully. Accidents may involve domestic and industrial products (the contents of which are not generally known). The **National Poisons Information Service** should be consulted when there is doubt about any aspect of suspected poisoning.

### Respiration

Respiration is often impaired in unconscious patients. An obstructed airway requires immediate attention. In the absence of trauma, the airway should be opened with simple measures such as chin lift or jaw thrust. An oropharyngeal or nasopharyngeal airway may be useful in patients with reduced consciousness to prevent obstruction, provided ventilation is adequate. Intubation and ventilation should be considered in patients whose airway cannot be protected or who have respiratory acidosis because of inadequate ventilation; such patients should be monitored in a critical care area.

Most poisons that impair consciousness also depress respiration. Assisted ventilation (either mouth-to-mouth or using a bag-valve-mask device) may be needed. Oxygen is not a substitute for adequate ventilation, although it should be given in the highest concentration possible in poisoning with carbon monoxide and irritant gases.

The potential for pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents should be considered.

### Blood pressure

Hypotension is common in severe poisoning with central nervous system depressants; if severe, this may lead to irreversible brain damage or renal tubular necrosis. Hypotension should be corrected initially by raising the foot of the bed and administration of an infusion of either sodium chloride p. 589 or a colloid. Vasoconstrictor sympathomimetics are rarely required and their use may be discussed with the National Poisons Information Service or a paediatric intensive care unit.

Fluid depletion without hypotension is common after prolonged coma and after aspirin poisoning due to vomiting, sweating, and hyperpnoea.

Hypertension, often transient, occurs less frequently than hypotension in poisoning; it may be associated with

sympathomimetic drugs such as amfetamines, phencyclidine, and cocaine.

## Heart

Cardiac conduction defects and arrhythmias can occur in acute poisoning, notably with tricyclic antidepressants, some antipsychotics, and some antihistamines. Arrhythmias often respond to correction of underlying hypoxia, acidosis, or other biochemical abnormalities, but ventricular arrhythmias that cause serious hypotension require treatment. If the QT interval is prolonged, specialist advice should be sought because the use of some anti-arrhythmic drugs may be inappropriate. Supraventricular arrhythmias are seldom life-threatening and drug treatment is best withheld until the patient reaches hospital.

## Body temperature

Hypothermia may develop in patients of any age who have been deeply unconscious for some hours, particularly following overdose with barbiturates or phenothiazines. It may be missed unless core temperature is measured using a low-reading rectal thermometer or by some other means. Hypothermia should be managed by prevention of further heat loss and appropriate rewarming as clinically indicated.

Hyperthermia can develop in patients taking CNS stimulants; children and the elderly are also at risk when taking therapeutic doses of drugs with antimuscarinic properties. Hyperthermia is initially managed by removing all unnecessary clothing and using a fan. Sponging with **tepid** water will promote evaporation. Advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service on the management of severe hyperthermia resulting from conditions such as the serotonin syndrome.

Both hypothermia and hyperthermia require **urgent** hospitalisation for assessment and supportive treatment.

## Convulsions during poisoning

Single short-lived convulsions (lasting less than 5 minutes) do not require treatment. If convulsions are protracted or recur frequently, lorazepam p. 222 or diazepam p. 220 (preferably as emulsion) should be given by slow intravenous injection into a large vein. Benzodiazepines should not be given by the intramuscular route for convulsions. If the intravenous route is not readily available, midazolam oromucosal solution p. 223 can be given by the buccal route or diazepam can be administered as a rectal solution.

## Methaemoglobinaemia

Drug- or chemical-induced methaemoglobinaemia should be treated with **methylthioninium chloride** p. 843 if the methaemoglobin concentration is 30% or higher, or if symptoms of tissue hypoxia are present despite oxygen therapy. Methylthioninium chloride reduces the ferric iron of methaemoglobin back to the ferrous iron of haemoglobin; in high doses, methylthioninium chloride can itself cause methaemoglobinaemia.

## Poison removal and elimination

### Prevention of absorption

Given by mouth, **charcoal, activated** p. 839 can adsorb many poisons in the gastro-intestinal system, thereby reducing their absorption. The **sooner** it is given the **more effective** it is, but it may still be effective up to 1 hour after ingestion of the poison—longer in the case of modified-release preparations or of drugs with antimuscarinic (anticholinergic) properties. It is particularly useful for the prevention of absorption of poisons that are toxic in small amounts, such as antidepressants.

A second dose may occasionally be required when blood-drug concentration continues to rise suggesting delayed drug release or delayed gastric emptying.

### Active elimination techniques

Repeated doses of **charcoal, activated** by mouth may *enhance the elimination* of some drugs after they have been absorbed; repeated doses are given after overdosage with:

- Carbamazepine
- Dapsone
- Phenobarbital
- Quinine
- Theophylline

If vomiting occurs after dosing, it should be treated (e.g. with an antiemetic drug) since it may reduce the efficacy of charcoal treatment. In cases of intolerance, the dose may be reduced and the frequency increased but this may compromise efficacy.

Charcoal, activated should **not** be used for poisoning with petroleum distillates, corrosive substances, alcohols, malathion, cyanides and metal salts including iron and lithium salts.

Other techniques intended to enhance the elimination of poisons after absorption are only practicable in hospital and are only suitable for a small number of severely poisoned patients. Moreover, they only apply to a limited number of poisons. Examples include:

- haemodialysis for ethylene glycol, lithium, methanol, phenobarbital, salicylates, and sodium valproate;
- alkalinisation of the urine for salicylates.

### Removal from the gastro-intestinal tract

Gastric lavage is rarely required as benefit rarely outweighs risk; advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service if a significant quantity of iron or lithium has been ingested within the previous hour.

**Whole bowel irrigation** (by means of a bowel cleansing preparation) has been used in poisoning with certain modified-release or enteric-coated formulations, in severe poisoning with lithium salts, and if illicit drugs are carried in the gastro-intestinal tract ('body-packing'). However, it is not clear that the procedure improves outcome and advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service.

The administration of **laxatives** alone has no role in the management of the poisoned child and is not a recommended method of gut decontamination. The routine use of a laxative in combination with charcoal, activated has mostly been abandoned. Laxatives should not be administered to young children because of the likelihood of fluid and electrolyte imbalance.

## Alcohol, acute intoxication

Acute intoxication with **alcohol** (ethanol) is common in adults but also occurs in children. The features include ataxia, dysarthria, nystagmus, and drowsiness, which may progress to coma, with hypotension and acidosis. Aspiration of vomit is a special hazard and hypoglycaemia may occur. Patients are managed supportively, with particular attention to maintaining a clear airway and measures to reduce the risk of aspiration of gastric contents. The blood glucose is measured and glucose given if indicated.

## Aspirin poisoning

The main features of salicylate poisoning are hyperventilation, tinnitus, deafness, vasodilatation, and sweating. Coma is uncommon but indicates very severe poisoning. The associated acid-base disturbances are complex.

Treatment must be in hospital, where plasma salicylate, pH, and electrolytes can be measured; absorption of aspirin may be slow and the plasma-salicylate concentration may continue to rise for several hours, requiring repeated measurement. Plasma-salicylate concentration may not correlate with clinical severity in the young, and clinical and biochemical assessment is necessary. Generally, the clinical

severity of poisoning is less below a plasma-salicylate concentration of 500 mg/litre (3.6 mmol/litre), unless there is evidence of metabolic acidosis. Activated charcoal can be given within 1 hour of ingesting more than 125 mg/kg of aspirin. Fluid losses should be replaced and intravenous sodium bicarbonate may be given (ensuring plasma-potassium concentration is within the reference range) to enhance urinary salicylate excretion (optimum urinary pH 7.5–8.5).

Plasma-potassium concentration should be corrected before giving sodium bicarbonate as hypokalaemia may complicate alkalinisation of the urine.

Haemodialysis is the treatment of choice for severe salicylate poisoning and should be considered when the plasma-salicylate concentration exceeds 700 mg/litre (5.1 mmol/litre) or in the presence of severe metabolic acidosis, convulsions, respiratory failure, pulmonary oedema or persistently high plasma-salicylate concentrations unresponsive to urinary alkalinisation.

## Opioid poisoning

Opioids (narcotic analgesics) cause varying degrees of coma, respiratory depression, and pinpoint pupils. The specific antidote naloxone hydrochloride p. 842 is indicated if there is coma or bradypnoea. Since naloxone has a shorter duration of action than many opioids, close monitoring and repeated injections are necessary according to the respiratory rate and depth of coma. When repeated administration of naloxone is required, it can be given by continuous intravenous infusion instead and the rate of infusion adjusted according to vital signs. All children should be observed for at least 6 hours after the last dose of naloxone. The effects of some opioids, such as buprenorphine, are only partially reversed by naloxone. Dextropropoxyphene and methadone have very long durations of action; patients may need to be monitored for long periods following large overdoses.

Naloxone reverses the opioid effects of dextropropoxyphene. The long duration of action of dextropropoxyphene calls for prolonged monitoring and further doses of naloxone may be required. Norpropoxyphene, a metabolite of dextropropoxyphene, also has cardiotoxic effects which may require treatment with sodium bicarbonate p. 586 or magnesium sulfate p. 597, or both. Arrhythmias may occur for up to 12 hours.

## Paracetamol poisoning

In cases of intravenous paracetamol poisoning contact the National Poisons Information Service for advice on risk assessment and management.

Toxic doses of paracetamol may cause severe hepatocellular necrosis and, much less frequently, renal tubular necrosis. Nausea and vomiting, the only early features of poisoning, usually settle within 24 hours. Persistence beyond this time, often associated with the onset of right subcostal pain and tenderness, usually indicates development of hepatic necrosis. Liver damage is maximal 3–4 days after paracetamol overdose and may lead to encephalopathy, haemorrhage, hypoglycaemia, cerebral oedema, and death. Therefore, despite a lack of significant early symptoms, children who have taken an overdose of paracetamol should be transferred to hospital urgently.

To avoid underestimating the potentially toxic paracetamol dose ingested by obese children who weigh more than 110 kg, use a body-weight of 110 kg (rather than their actual body-weight) when calculating the total dose of paracetamol ingested (in mg/kg).

**Acetylcysteine p. 843** protects the liver if infused up to, and possibly beyond, 24 hours of ingesting paracetamol. It is most effective if given within 8 hours of ingestion, after which effectiveness declines. Very rarely, giving acetylcysteine by mouth [unlicensed route] is an alternative

if intravenous access is not possible—contact the National Poisons Information Service for advice.

Neonates less than 45 weeks corrected gestational age may be more susceptible to paracetamol-induced liver toxicity, therefore, treatment with acetylcysteine should be considered in all paracetamol overdoses, and advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service.

### Acute overdose

Hepatotoxicity may occur after a single ingestion of more than 150 mg/kg paracetamol taken in less than 1 hour. Rarely, hepatotoxicity may develop with single ingestions as low as 75 mg/kg of paracetamol taken in less than 1 hour.

Children who have ingested 75 mg/kg or more of paracetamol in less than 1 hour should be referred to hospital. Administration of charcoal, activated p. 839 should be considered if paracetamol in excess of 150 mg/kg is thought to have been ingested within the previous hour.

Children at risk of liver damage and, therefore, requiring acetylcysteine, can be identified from a single measurement of the plasma-paracetamol concentration, related to the time from ingestion, provided this time interval is not less than 4 hours; earlier samples may be misleading. The concentration is plotted on a paracetamol treatment graph, with a reference line ('treatment line') joining plots of 100 mg/litre (0.66 mmol/litre) at 4 hours and 3.13 mg/litre (0.02 mmol/litre) at 24 hours. Acetylcysteine treatment should commence immediately in children:

- whose plasma-paracetamol concentration falls on or above the *treatment line* on the paracetamol treatment graph;
- who present 8–24 hours after taking an acute overdose of more than 150 mg/kg of paracetamol, even if the plasma-paracetamol concentration is not yet available; acetylcysteine can be discontinued if the plasma-paracetamol concentration is later reported to be below the *treatment line* on the paracetamol treatment graph, provided that the child is asymptomatic and liver function tests, serum creatinine and INR are normal.

The prognostic accuracy of a plasma-paracetamol concentration taken after 15 hours is uncertain, but a concentration on or above the *treatment line* on the paracetamol treatment graph should be regarded as carrying a serious risk of liver damage. If more than 15 hours have elapsed since ingestion, or there is doubt about appropriate management, advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service.

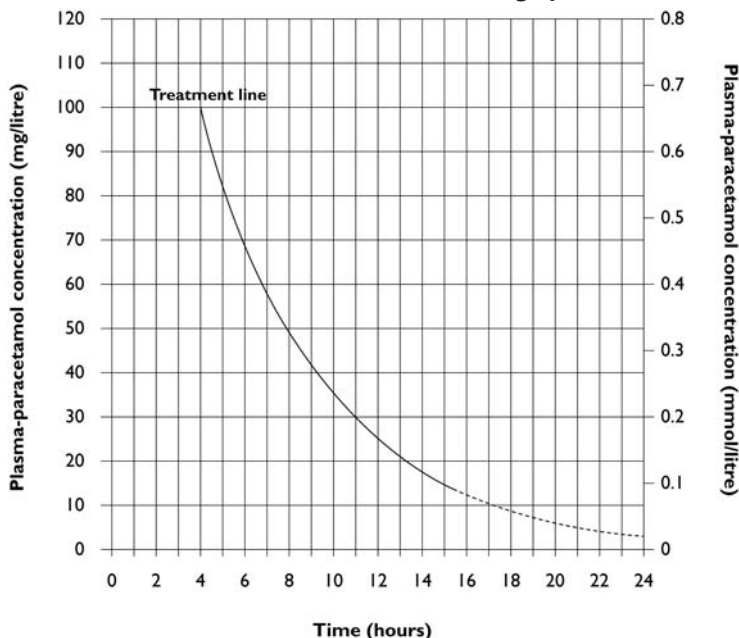
### 'Staggered' overdose, uncertain time of overdose, or therapeutic excess

A 'staggered' overdose involves ingestion of a potentially toxic dose of paracetamol over more than one hour, with the possible intention of causing self-harm. Therapeutic excess is the inadvertent ingestion of a potentially toxic dose of paracetamol during its clinical use. The paracetamol treatment graph is unreliable if a 'staggered' overdose is taken, if there is uncertainty about the time of the overdose, or if there is therapeutic excess. In these cases, children who have taken more than 150 mg/kg of paracetamol in any 24-hour period are at risk of toxicity and should be commenced on acetylcysteine immediately, unless it is more than 24 hours since the last ingestion, the patient is asymptomatic, the plasma-paracetamol concentration is undetectable, and liver function tests, serum creatinine and INR are normal.

Rarely, toxicity can occur with paracetamol doses between 75–150 mg/kg in any 24-hour period; for some children this may be within the licensed dose, but ingestion of a licensed dose of paracetamol is not considered an overdose. Clinical judgement of the individual case is necessary to determine whether to treat those who have ingested this amount of paracetamol.

Although there is some evidence suggesting that factors such as the use of liver enzyme-inducing drugs (e.g.

## Paracetamol overdose treatment graph



Patients whose plasma-paracetamol concentrations are on or above the **treatment line** should be treated with acetylcysteine by intravenous infusion.

The prognostic accuracy after 15 hours is uncertain, but a plasma-paracetamol concentration on or above the treatment line should be regarded as carrying a serious risk of liver damage.

Graph reproduced courtesy of Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency

carbamazepine p. 196, efavirenz p. 413, nevirapine p. 414, phenobarbital p. 216, phenytoin p. 205, primidone p. 217, rifabutin p. 364, rifampicin p. 364, St John's wort), chronic alcoholism, and starvation may increase the risk of hepatotoxicity, the CHM has advised that these should no longer be used in the assessment of paracetamol toxicity.

Significant toxicity is unlikely if, 24 hours or longer after the last paracetamol ingestion, the patient is asymptomatic, the plasma-paracetamol concentration is undetectable, and liver function tests, serum creatinine and INR are normal. Children with clinical features of hepatic injury such as jaundice or hepatic tenderness should be treated urgently with acetylcysteine. If there is uncertainty about a patient's risk of toxicity after paracetamol overdose, treatment with acetylcysteine should be commenced. Advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service whenever necessary.

### Antidepressant poisoning

#### Tricyclic and related antidepressants

Tricyclic and related antidepressants cause dry mouth, coma of varying degree, hypotension, hypothermia, hyperreflexia, extensor plantar responses, convulsions, respiratory failure, cardiac conduction defects, and arrhythmias. Dilated pupils and urinary retention also occur. Metabolic acidosis may complicate severe poisoning; delirium with confusion, agitation, and visual and auditory hallucinations are common during recovery.

Assessment in hospital is strongly advised in case of poisoning by tricyclic and related antidepressants but symptomatic treatment can be given before transfer.

Supportive measures to ensure a clear airway and adequate ventilation during transfer are mandatory. Intravenous lorazepam or intravenous diazepam (preferably in emulsion form) may be required to treat convulsions. Activated charcoal given within 1 hour of the overdose reduces absorption of the drug. Although arrhythmias are worrying, some will respond to correction of hypoxia and acidosis. The use of anti-arrhythmic drugs is best avoided, but intravenous infusion of sodium bicarbonate can arrest arrhythmias or prevent them in those with an extended QRS duration. Diazepam p. 220 given by mouth is usually adequate to sedate delirious patients but large doses may be required.

#### Selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors (SSRIs)

Symptoms of poisoning by selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors include nausea, vomiting, agitation, tremor, nystagmus, drowsiness, and sinus tachycardia; convulsions may occur. Rarely, severe poisoning results in the serotonin syndrome, with marked neuropsychiatric effects, neuromuscular hyperactivity, and autonomic instability; hyperthermia, rhabdomyolysis, renal failure, and coagulopathies may develop.

Management of SSRI poisoning is supportive. Activated charcoal given within 1 hour of the overdose reduces absorption of the drug. Convulsions can be treated with lorazepam p. 222, diazepam p. 220, or buccal midazolam p. 223 (see *Convulsions*). Contact the National Poisons Information Service for the management of hyperthermia or the serotonin syndrome.

## Antimalarial poisoning

Overdosage with quinine, chloroquine, or hydroxychloroquine is extremely hazardous and difficult to treat. Urgent advice from the National Poisons Information Service is essential. Life-threatening features include arrhythmias (which can have a very rapid onset) and convulsions (which can be intractable).

## Antipsychotic poisoning

### Phenothiazines and related drugs

Phenothiazines cause less depression of consciousness and respiration than other sedatives. Hypotension, hypothermia, sinus tachycardia, and arrhythmias may complicate poisoning. Dystonic reactions can occur with therapeutic doses (particularly with prochlorperazine and trifluoperazine), and convulsions may occur in severe cases. Arrhythmias may respond to correction of hypoxia, acidosis, and other biochemical abnormalities, but specialist advice should be sought if arrhythmias result from a prolonged QT interval; the use of some anti-arrhythmic drugs can worsen such arrhythmias. Dystonic reactions are rapidly abolished by injection of drugs such as procyclidine hydrochloride p. 256 or diazepam (emulsion preferred).

### Second-generation antipsychotic drugs

Features of poisoning by second-generation antipsychotic drugs include drowsiness, convulsions, extrapyramidal symptoms, hypotension, and ECG abnormalities (including prolongation of the QT interval). Management is supportive. Charcoal, activated p. 839 can be given within 1 hour of ingesting a significant quantity of a second-generation antipsychotic drug.

## Benzodiazepine poisoning

Benzodiazepines taken alone cause drowsiness, ataxia, dysarthria, nystagmus, and occasionally respiratory depression, and coma. Charcoal, activated can be given within 1 hour of ingesting a significant quantity of benzodiazepine, provided the patient is awake and the airway is protected. Benzodiazepines potentiate the effects of other central nervous system depressants taken concomitantly. Use of the benzodiazepine antagonist flumazenil p. 840 [unlicensed indication] can be hazardous, particularly in mixed overdoses involving tricyclic antidepressants or in benzodiazepine-dependent patients. Flumazenil may prevent the need for ventilation, particularly in patients with severe respiratory disorders; it should be used on expert advice only and not as a diagnostic test in children with a reduced level of consciousness.

## Beta blockers poisoning

Therapeutic overdoses with beta-blockers may cause lightheadedness, dizziness, and possibly syncope as a result of bradycardia and hypotension; heart failure may be precipitated or exacerbated. These complications are most likely in children with conduction system disorders or impaired myocardial function. Bradycardia is the most common arrhythmia caused by beta-blockers, but sotalol may induce ventricular tachyarrhythmias (sometimes of the torsade de pointes type). The effects of massive overdosage can vary from one beta-blocker to another; propranolol overdosage in particular may cause coma and convulsions.

Acute massive overdosage must be managed in hospital and expert advice should be obtained. Maintenance of a clear airway and adequate ventilation is mandatory. An intravenous injection of atropine sulfate p. 810 is required to treat bradycardia. Cardiogenic shock unresponsive to atropine sulfate is probably best treated with an intravenous injection of glucagon p. 465 [unlicensed] in glucose 5% (with precautions to protect the airway in case of vomiting) followed by an intravenous infusion. If glucagon is not available, intravenous isoprenaline (available from 'special-

order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) is an alternative. A cardiac pacemaker can be used to increase the heart rate.

## Calcium-channel blockers poisoning

Features of calcium-channel blocker poisoning include nausea, vomiting, dizziness, agitation, confusion, and coma in severe poisoning. Metabolic acidosis and hyperglycaemia may occur. Verapamil and diltiazem have a profound cardiac depressant effect causing hypotension and arrhythmias, including complete heart block and asystole. The dihydropyridine calcium-channel blockers cause severe hypotension secondary to profound peripheral vasodilatation.

Charcoal, activated should be considered if the patient presents within 1 hour of overdosage with a calcium-channel blocker; repeated doses of activated charcoal are considered if a modified-release preparation is involved. In patients with significant features of poisoning, calcium chloride p. 593 or calcium gluconate p. 594 is given by injection; atropine sulfate is given to correct symptomatic bradycardia. In severe cases, an insulin and glucose infusion may be required in the management of hypotension and myocardial failure. For the management of hypotension, the choice of inotropic sympathomimetic depends on whether hypotension is secondary to vasodilatation or to myocardial depression—advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service.

## Iron salts poisoning

Iron poisoning in childhood is usually accidental. The symptoms are nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, haematemesis, and rectal bleeding. Hypotension and hepatocellular necrosis can occur later. Coma, shock, and metabolic acidosis indicate severe poisoning.

Advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service if a significant quantity of iron has been ingested within the previous hour.

Mortality is reduced by intensive and specific therapy with desferrioxamine mesilate p. 578, which chelates iron. The serum-iron concentration is measured as an emergency and intravenous desferrioxamine mesilate given to chelate absorbed iron in excess of the expected iron binding capacity. In severe toxicity intravenous desferrioxamine mesilate should be given immediately without waiting for the result of the serum-iron measurement.

## Lithium poisoning

Most cases of lithium intoxication occur as a complication of long-term therapy and are caused by reduced excretion of the drug because of a variety of factors including dehydration, deterioration of renal function, infections, and co-administration of diuretics or NSAIDs (or other drugs that interact). Acute deliberate overdoses may also occur with delayed onset of symptoms (12 hours or more) owing to slow entry of lithium into the tissues and continuing absorption from modified-release formulations.

The early clinical features are non-specific and may include apathy and restlessness which could be confused with mental changes arising from the child's depressive illness. Vomiting, diarrhoea, ataxia, weakness, dysarthria, muscle twitching, and tremor may follow. Severe poisoning is associated with convulsions, coma, renal failure, electrolyte imbalance, dehydration, and hypotension.

Therapeutic serum-lithium concentrations are within the range of 0.4–1 mmol/litre; concentrations in excess of 2 mmol/litre are usually associated with serious toxicity and such cases may need treatment with haemodialysis if neurological symptoms or renal failure are present. In acute overdosage much higher serum-lithium concentrations may be present without features of toxicity and all that is usually necessary is to take measures to increase urine output (e.g.



by increasing fluid intake but avoiding diuretics). Otherwise, treatment is supportive with special regard to electrolyte balance, renal function, and control of convulsions. Whole-bowel irrigation should be considered for significant ingestion, but advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service.

### Stimulant-drug poisoning

#### Amfetamines

Amfetamines cause wakefulness, excessive activity, paranoia, hallucinations, and hypertension followed by exhaustion, convulsions, hyperthermia, and coma. The early stages can be controlled by diazepam p. 220 or lorazepam p. 222; advice should be sought from the National Poisons Information Service on the management of hypertension. Later, tepid sponging, anticonvulsants, and artificial respiration may be needed.

#### Cocaine

Cocaine stimulates the central nervous system, causing agitation, dilated pupils, tachycardia, hypertension, hallucinations, hyperthermia, hypertonia, and hyperreflexia; cardiac effects include chest pain, myocardial infarction, and arrhythmias.

Initial treatment of cocaine poisoning involves cooling measures for hyperthermia (see Body temperature); agitation, hypertension and cardiac effects require specific treatment and expert advice should be sought.

#### Ecstasy

Ecstasy (methylenedioxymethamphetamine, MDMA) may cause severe reactions, even at doses that were previously tolerated. The most serious effects are delirium, coma, convulsions, ventricular arrhythmias, hyperthermia, rhabdomyolysis, acute renal failure, acute hepatitis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, adult respiratory distress syndrome, hyperreflexia, hypotension and intracerebral haemorrhage; hyponatraemia has also been associated with ecstasy use and syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion (SIADH) can occur.

Treatment of methylenedioxymethamphetamine poisoning is supportive, with diazepam to control persistent convulsions and close monitoring including ECG. For the management of agitation, seek specialist advice. Self-induced water intoxication should be considered in patients with ecstasy poisoning.

'Liquid ecstasy' is a term used for sodium oxybate (gamma-hydroxybutyrate, GHB), which is a sedative.

### Theophylline poisoning

Theophylline and related drugs are often prescribed as modified-release formulations and toxicity can therefore be delayed. They cause vomiting (which may be severe and intractable), agitation, restlessness, dilated pupils, sinus tachycardia, and hyperglycaemia. More serious effects are haematemesis, convulsions, and supraventricular and ventricular arrhythmias. Severe hypokalaemia may develop rapidly.

Repeated doses of charcoal, activated p. 839 can be used to eliminate theophylline even if more than 1 hour has elapsed after ingestion and especially if a modified-release preparation has been taken (see also under Active Elimination Techniques). Ondansetron p. 264 may be effective for severe vomiting that is resistant to other antiemetics. Hypokalaemia is corrected by intravenous infusion of potassium chloride p. 601 and may be so severe as to require high doses under ECG monitoring. Convulsions should be controlled by intravenous administration of lorazepam or diazepam (see Convulsions). For the management of agitation associated with theophylline overdosage, seek specialist advice.

Provided the child does **not** suffer from asthma, a short-acting beta-blocker can be administered intravenously to

reverse severe tachycardia, hypokalaemia, and hyperglycaemia.

### Cyanide poisoning

**Oxygen** should be administered to children with cyanide poisoning. The choice of antidote depends on the severity of poisoning, certainty of diagnosis, and the cause. Dicobalt edetate p. 839 is the antidote of choice when there is a strong clinical suspicion of severe cyanide poisoning, but it should **not** be used as a precautionary measure. Dicobalt edetate itself is toxic, associated with anaphylactoid reactions, and is potentially fatal if administered in the absence of cyanide poisoning. A regimen of sodium nitrite p. 839 followed by sodium thiosulfate p. 839 is an alternative if dicobalt edetate is not available.

Hydroxocobalamin (Cyanokit®—no other preparation of hydroxocobalamin is suitable) p. 575 can be considered for use in victims of smoke inhalation who show signs of significant cyanide poisoning.

### Ethylene glycol and methanol poisoning

**Fomepizole** (available from 'special-order' manufacturers or specialist importing companies) is the treatment of choice for ethylene glycol and methanol (methyl alcohol) poisoning. If necessary, **ethanol** (by mouth or by intravenous infusion) can be used, but with caution. Advice on the treatment of ethylene glycol and methanol poisoning should be obtained from the National Poisons Information Service. It is important to start antidote treatment promptly in cases of suspected poisoning with these agents.

### Heavy metal poisoning

Heavy metal antidotes include succimer (DMSA) [unlicensed], unithiol (DMPS) [unlicensed], sodium calcium edetate [unlicensed], and dimercaprol. Dimercaprol in the management of heavy metal poisoning has been superseded by other chelating agents. In all cases of heavy metal poisoning, the advice of the National Poisons Information Service should be sought.

### Noxious gases poisoning

#### Carbon monoxide

Carbon monoxide poisoning is usually due to inhalation of smoke, car exhaust, or fumes caused by blocked flues or incomplete combustion of fuel gases in confined spaces.

Immediate treatment of carbon monoxide poisoning is essential. The patient should be moved to fresh air, the airway cleared, and high-flow **oxygen** 100% administered as soon as available. Artificial respiration should be given as necessary and continued until adequate spontaneous breathing starts, or stopped only after persistent and efficient treatment of cardiac arrest has failed. The child should be admitted to hospital because complications may arise after a delay of hours or days. Cerebral oedema may occur in severe poisoning and is treated with an intravenous infusion of mannitol p. 141. Referral for hyperbaric oxygen treatment should be discussed with the National Poisons Information Service if the patient is pregnant or in cases of severe poisoning such as if the patient is or has been unconscious, or has psychiatric or neurological features other than a headache or has myocardial ischaemia or an arrhythmia, or has a blood carboxyhaemoglobin concentration of more than 20%.

#### Sulfur dioxide, chlorine, phosgene, and ammonia

All of these gases can cause upper respiratory tract and conjunctival irritation. Pulmonary oedema, with severe breathlessness and cyanosis may develop suddenly up to 36 hours after exposure. Death may occur. Patients are kept under observation and those who develop pulmonary oedema are given oxygen. Assisted ventilation may be necessary in the most serious cases.

## CS spray poisoning

CS spray, which is used for riot control, irritates the eyes (hence 'tear gas') and the respiratory tract; symptoms normally settle spontaneously within 15 minutes. If symptoms persist, the patient should be removed to a well-ventilated area, and the exposed skin washed with soap and water after removal of contaminated clothing. Contact lenses should be removed and rigid ones washed (soft ones should be discarded). Eye symptoms should be treated by irrigating the eyes with physiological saline (or water if saline is not available) and advice sought from an ophthalmologist. Patients with features of severe poisoning, particularly respiratory complications, should be admitted to hospital for symptomatic treatment.

## Nerve agents poisoning

Treatment of nerve agent poisoning is similar to organophosphorus insecticide poisoning, but advice must be sought from the National Poisons Information Service. The risk of cross-contamination is significant; adequate decontamination and protective clothing for healthcare personnel are essential. In emergencies involving the release of **nerve agents**, kits ('NAAS pods') containing **pralidoxime chloride p. 840** can be obtained through the Ambulance Service from the National Blood Service (or the Welsh Blood Service in South Wales or designated hospital pharmacies in Northern Ireland and Scotland—see TOXBASE for list of designated centres).

## Pesticide poisoning

### Organophosphorus insecticides

Organophosphorus insecticides are usually supplied as powders or dissolved in organic solvents. All are absorbed through the bronchi and intact skin as well as through the gut and inhibit cholinesterase activity, thereby prolonging and intensifying the effects of acetylcholine. Toxicity between different compounds varies considerably, and onset may be delayed after skin exposure.

Anxiety, restlessness, dizziness, headache, miosis, nausea, hypersalivation, vomiting, abdominal colic, diarrhoea, bradycardia, and sweating are common features of organophosphorus poisoning. Muscle weakness and fasciculation may develop and progress to generalised flaccid paralysis, including the ocular and respiratory muscles. Convulsions, coma, pulmonary oedema with copious bronchial secretions, hypoxia, and arrhythmias occur in severe cases. Hyperglycaemia and glycosuria without ketonuria may also be present.

Further absorption of the organophosphorus insecticide should be prevented by moving the child to fresh air, removing soiled clothing, and washing contaminated skin. In severe poisoning it is vital to ensure a clear airway, frequent removal of bronchial secretions, and adequate ventilation and oxygenation; gastric lavage may be considered provided that the airway is protected. Atropine sulfate p. 810 will reverse the muscarinic effects of acetylcholine and is given by intravenous injection until the skin becomes flushed and dry, the pupils dilate, and bradycardia is abolished.

Pralidoxime chloride, a cholinesterase reactivator, is used as an adjunct to atropine sulfate in moderate or severe poisoning. It improves muscle tone within 30 minutes of administration. Pralidoxime chloride is continued until the patient has not required atropine sulfate for 12 hours. Pralidoxime chloride can be obtained from designated centres, the names of which are held by the National Poisons Information Service.

## Snake bites and animal stings

### Snake bites

Envenoming from snake bite is uncommon in the UK. Many exotic snakes are kept, some illegally, but the only indigenous venomous snake is the adder (*Vipera berus*). The

bite may cause local and systemic effects. Local effects include pain, swelling, bruising, and tender enlargement of regional lymph nodes. Systemic effects include early anaphylactic symptoms (transient hypotension with syncope, angioedema, urticaria, abdominal colic, diarrhoea, and vomiting), with later persistent or recurrent hypotension, ECG abnormalities, spontaneous systemic bleeding, coagulopathy, adult respiratory distress syndrome, and acute renal failure. Fatal envenoming is rare but the potential for severe envenoming must not be underestimated.

Early anaphylactic symptoms should be treated with adrenaline/epinephrine p. 136. Indications for European viper snake venom antiserum treatment p. 844 include **systemic envenoming**, especially hypotension, ECG abnormalities, vomiting, haemostatic abnormalities, and marked local envenoming such that after bites on the hand or foot, swelling extends beyond the wrist or ankle within 4 hours of the bite. For those children who present with clinical features of **severe envenoming** (e.g. shock, ECG abnormalities, or local swelling that has advanced from the foot to above the knee or from the hand to above the elbow within 2 hours of the bite), a higher initial dose of the European viper snake venom antiserum is recommended; if symptoms of **systemic envenoming** persist contact the National Poisons Information Service.

Adrenaline/epinephrine injection must be immediately to hand for treatment of anaphylactic reactions to the European viper snake venom antiserum.

European viper snake venom antiserum is available for bites by certain foreign snakes and spiders, stings by scorpions and fish. For information on identification, management, and for supply in an emergency, telephone the National Poisons Information Service. Whenever possible the TOXBASE entry should be read, and relevant information collected, before telephoning the National Poisons Information Service.

### Insect stings

Stings from ants, wasps, hornets, and bees cause local pain and swelling but seldom cause severe direct toxicity unless many stings are inflicted at the same time. If the sting is in the mouth or on the tongue local swelling may threaten the upper airway. The stings from these insects are usually treated by cleaning the area with a topical antiseptic. Bee stings should be removed as quickly as possible.

Anaphylactic reactions require immediate treatment with intramuscular **adrenaline/epinephrine**; self-administered (or administered by a carer) intramuscular adrenaline/epinephrine (e.g. *EpiPen*®) is the best first-aid treatment for patients with severe hypersensitivity. An inhaled bronchodilator should be used for asthmatic reactions, see also the management of anaphylaxis. A short course of an **oral antihistamine** or a **topical corticosteroid** may help to reduce inflammation and relieve itching. A vaccine containing extracts of bee and wasp venom can be used to reduce the risk of anaphylaxis and systemic reactions in patients with systemic hypersensitivity to bee or wasp stings.

### Marine stings

The severe pain of weeverfish (*Trachinus vipera*) and Portuguese man-o'-war stings can be relieved by immersing the stung area immediately in uncomfortably hot, but not scalding, water (not more than 45°C). People stung by jellyfish and Portuguese man-o'-war around the UK coast should be removed from the sea as soon as possible. Adherent tentacles should be lifted off carefully (wearing gloves or using tweezers) or washed off with seawater. Alcoholic solutions, including suntan lotions, should **not** be applied because they can cause further discharge of stinging hairs. Ice packs can be used to reduce pain.

## Other poisons

Consult either the National Poisons Information Service day and night or TOXBASE.

The **National Poisons Information Service** (Tel: 0344 892 0111) will provide specialist advice on all aspects of poisoning day and night.

# 1 Active elimination from the gastro-intestinal tract

## ANTIDOTES AND CHELATORS > INTESTINAL ADSORBENTS

### Charcoal, activated

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Reduction of absorption of poisons in the gastro-intestinal system**

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 1 g/kg.

► Child 1 month–11 years: 1 g/kg (max. per dose 50 g)

► Child 12–17 years: 50 g

#### Active elimination of poisons

► BY MOUTH

► Neonate: 1 g/kg every 4 hours, dose may be reduced and the frequency increased if not tolerated, reduced dose may compromise efficacy.

► Child 1 month–11 years: 1 g/kg every 4 hours (max. per dose 50 g), dose may be reduced and the frequency increased if not tolerated, reduced dose may compromise efficacy

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 50 g, then 50 g every 4 hours, reduced if not tolerated to 25 g every 2 hours, alternatively 12.5 g every 1 hour, reduced dose may compromise efficacy

• **CAUTIONS** Comatose patient (risk of aspiration—ensure airway is protected) · drowsy patient (risk of aspiration—ensure airway protected) · reduced gastrointestinal motility (risk of obstruction)

• **SIDE-EFFECTS** Bezoar · constipation · diarrhoea · gastrointestinal disorders

• **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** Suspension or reconstituted powder may be mixed with soft drinks (e.g. caffeine-free diet cola) or fruit juices to mask the taste.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Oral suspension

► **Charcodote** (Teva UK Ltd)

Activated charcoal 200 mg per 1 ml Charcodote 200mg/ml oral suspension sugar-free | 250 ml [P] £11.88

#### Granules

► **Carbomix** (Kent Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

Activated charcoal 813 mg per 1 gram Carbomix 81.3% granules sugar-free | 50 gram [P] £11.90

## 2 Chemical toxicity

### 2.1 Cyanide toxicity

#### ANTIDOTES AND CHELATORS

### Dicobalt edetate

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Severe poisoning with cyanides**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child: Consult the National Poisons Information Service

• **CAUTIONS** Owing to toxicity to be used only for definite cyanide poisoning when patient tending to lose, or has lost, consciousness

• **SIDE-EFFECTS** Reflex tachycardia · vomiting

• **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Prescription only medicine restriction does not apply where administration is for saving life in emergency.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

► **Dicobalt edetate (Non-proprietary)**

Dicobalt edetate 15 mg per 1 ml Dicobalt edetate 300mg/20ml solution for injection ampoules | 6 ampoule [PoM] £117.20

### Sodium nitrite

16-Mar-2018

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Poisoning with cyanides (used in conjunction with sodium thiosulfate)**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child: Consult the National Poisons Information Service

• **SIDE-EFFECTS** Arrhythmias · dizziness · headache · hypotension · palpitations

• **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Prescription only medicine restriction does not apply where administration is for saving life in emergency.

#### • MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

► **Sodium nitrite (Non-proprietary)**

Sodium nitrite 30 mg per 1 ml Sodium nitrite 300mg/10ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial [PoM] £

### Sodium thiosulfate

16-Mar-2018

#### • INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Poisoning with cyanides**

► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Child: Consult the National Poisons Information Service

#### DOSE EQUIVALENCE AND CONVERSION

► 12.5 g equates to 50 mL of a 25% solution or 25 mL of a 50% solution.


• **SIDE-EFFECTS** Disorientation · feeling hot · headache · hypotension · nausea · taste salty · vomiting

• **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Prescription only medicine restriction does not apply where administration is for saving life in emergency.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

**Solution for injection**▶ **Sodium thiosulfate (Non-proprietary)**

**Sodium thiosulfate 250 mg/kg, per 1 ml** Sodium thiosulfate 12.5g/50ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial **[PoM]** 

**2.2 Organophosphorus toxicity**

**Other drugs used for Organophosphorus toxicity** Atropine sulfate, p. 810

**ANTIDOTES AND CHELATORS****Pralidoxime chloride****INDICATIONS AND DOSE**

**Adjunct to atropine in the treatment of poisoning by organophosphorus insecticide or nerve agent**

▶ **BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION**

▶ **Child:** Initially 30 mg/kg, to be given over 20 minutes, followed by 8 mg/kg/hour; maximum 12 g per day

● **UNLICENSED USE** Pralidoxime chloride doses may differ from those in product literature.

Licensed for use in children (age range not specified by manufacturer).

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Poisoning with carbamates • poisoning with organophosphorus compounds without anticholinesterase activity

● **CAUTIONS** Myasthenia gravis

● **SIDE-EFFECTS** Dizziness • drowsiness • headache • hyperventilation • muscle weakness • nausea • tachycardia • visual impairment

● **RENAL IMPAIRMENT** Use with caution.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** The loading dose may be administered by intravenous injection (diluted to a concentration of 50 mg/mL with water for injections) over at least 5 minutes if pulmonary oedema is present or if it is not practical to administer an intravenous infusion.

For intravenous infusion, reconstitute each vial with 20 mL Water for Injections, then dilute to a concentration of 10–20 mg/mL with Sodium Chloride 0.9%.


● **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** Available from designated centres for organophosphorus insecticide poisoning or from the National Blood Service (or Welsh Ambulance Services for Mid West and South East Wales)—see TOXBASE for list of designated centres).

● **EXCEPTIONS TO LEGAL CATEGORY** Prescription only medicine restriction does not apply where administration is for saving life in emergency.

**MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

**Powder for solution for injection**▶ **Protopam Chloride (Imported (United States))**

**Pralidoxime chloride 1 gram** Protopam Chloride 1g powder for solution for injection vials | 6 vial **[PoM]** 

**3 Drug toxicity****3.1 Benzodiazepine toxicity****ANTIDOTES AND CHELATORS > BENZODIAZEPINE ANTAGONISTS****Flumazenil****INDICATIONS AND DOSE****Reversal of sedative effects of benzodiazepines**▶ **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

▶ **Neonate:** 10 micrograms/kg every 1 minute if required, dose to be administered over 15 seconds.

▶ **Child:** 10 micrograms/kg every 1 minute (max. per dose 200 micrograms) if required, dose to be administered over 15 seconds; maximum 1 mg per course; maximum 50 micrograms/kg per course

**Reversal of sedative effects of benzodiazepines (if drowsiness recurs after injection)**▶ **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

▶ **Neonate:** 2–10 micrograms/kg/hour, adjusted according to response.

▶ **Child:** 2–10 micrograms/kg/hour (max. per dose 400 micrograms/hour), adjusted according to response

**Reversal of sedative effects of benzodiazepines in intensive care**▶ **BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION**

▶ **Child:** 10 micrograms/kg every 1 minute (max. per dose 200 micrograms) if required, dose to be administered over 15 seconds; maximum 2 mg per course; maximum 50 micrograms/kg per course

● **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in children under 1 year. Not licensed for use by intravenous infusion in children. Not licensed for use in children in intensive care.

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION**

Flumazenil should only be administered by, or under the direct supervision of, personnel experienced in its use.

● **CONTRA-INDICATIONS** Life-threatening condition (e.g. raised intracranial pressure, status epilepticus) controlled by benzodiazepines

● **CAUTIONS** Avoid rapid injection following major surgery • avoid rapid injection in high-risk or anxious patients • benzodiazepine dependence (may precipitate withdrawal symptoms) • children • ensure neuromuscular blockade cleared before giving • head injury (rapid reversal of benzodiazepine sedation may cause convulsions) • history of panic disorders (risk of recurrence) • prolonged benzodiazepine therapy for epilepsy (risk of convulsions) • short-acting (repeat doses may be necessary—benzodiazepine effects may persist for at least 24 hours)

**SIDE-EFFECTS**

▶ **Common or very common** Anxiety • diplopia • dry mouth • eye disorders • flushing • headache • hiccups • hyperhidrosis • hyperventilation • hypotension • insomnia • nausea • palpitations • paraesthesia • speech disorder • tremor • vertigo • vomiting

▶ **Uncommon** Abnormal hearing • arrhythmias • chest pain • chills • cough • dyspnoea • nasal congestion • seizure (more common in patients with epilepsy)

▶ **Frequency not known** Withdrawal syndrome

● **PREGNANCY** Not known to be harmful.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Avoid breast-feeding for 24 hours.

### ● HEPATIC IMPAIRMENT

Dose adjustments Carefully titrate dose.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Flumazenil (Non-proprietary)

Flumazenil 100 microgram per 1 ml Flumazenil  
500micrograms/5ml solution for injection ampoules |  
5 ampoule [PoM] £65.50–£70.00

## 3.2 Digoxin toxicity

### ANTIDOTES AND CHELATORS > ANTIBODIES

#### Digoxin-specific antibody

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Treatment of known or strongly suspected life-threatening digoxin toxicity associated with ventricular arrhythmias or bradyarrhythmias unresponsive to atropine and when measures beyond the withdrawal of digoxin and correction of any electrolyte abnormalities are considered necessary**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: Serious cases of digoxin toxicity should be discussed with the National Poisons Information Service (consult product literature)

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Powder for solution for infusion

##### ► DigiFab (BTG International Ltd)

Digoxin-specific antibody fragments 40 mg DigiFab 40mg powder  
for solution for infusion vials | 1 vial [PoM] £750.00 (Hospital only)

## 3.3 Heparin toxicity

### ANTIDOTES AND CHELATORS

#### Protamine sulfate

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

**Overdosage with intravenous injection or intravenous infusion of unfractionated heparin (less than 30 minutes lapsed since overdosage)**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: 1 mg (max. per dose 50 mg), to be administered at a rate not exceeding 5 mg/minute, to neutralise each 100 units of unfractionated heparin

**Overdosage with intravenous injection or intravenous infusion of unfractionated heparin (if 30–60 minutes lapsed since overdosage)**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: 500–750 micrograms (max. per dose 50 mg), to be administered at a rate not exceeding 5 mg/minute, to neutralise each 100 units of unfractionated heparin

**Overdosage with intravenous injection or intravenous infusion of unfractionated heparin (if 60–120 minutes lapsed since overdosage)**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: 375–500 micrograms (max. per dose 50 mg), to be administered at a rate not exceeding 5 mg/minute, to neutralise each 100 units of unfractionated heparin

**Overdosage with intravenous injection or intravenous infusion of unfractionated heparin (if over 120 minutes lapsed since overdosage)**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child: 250–375 micrograms (max. per dose 50 mg), to be administered at a rate not exceeding 5 mg/minute, to neutralise each 100 units of unfractionated heparin

**Overdosage with subcutaneous injection of unfractionated heparin**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: (max. per dose 50 mg), 50–100% of the total dose to be given by intravenous injection (rate not exceeding 5 mg/minute), then give any remainder of dose by intravenous infusion over 8–16 hours, 1 mg neutralises approx. 100 units of unfractionated heparin

**Overdosage with subcutaneous injection of low molecular weight heparin**

##### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Child: (max. per dose 50 mg), to be administered by intermittent intravenous injection at a rate not exceeding 5 mg/minute or by continuous intravenous infusion, 1 mg neutralises approx. 100 units of low molecular weight heparin, consult product literature of low molecular weight heparin for details

- **CAUTIONS** Excessive doses can have an anticoagulant effect

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- **Rare or very rare** Hypertension · pulmonary oedema non-cardiogenic
- **Frequency not known** Acute pulmonary vasoconstriction · back pain · bradycardia · circulatory collapse · dyspnoea · fatigue · feeling hot · flushing · nausea · pulmonary hypertension · vomiting

- **ALLERGY AND CROSS-SENSITIVITY** Caution if increased risk of allergic reaction to protamine (includes previous treatment with protamine or protamine insulin, allergy to fish, men who are infertile or who have had a vasectomy and who may have antibodies to protamine).

- **MONITORING REQUIREMENTS** Monitor activated partial thromboplastin time or other appropriate blood clotting parameters.

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** May be diluted if necessary with Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** The long half-life of low molecular weight heparins should be taken into consideration when determining the dose of protamine sulfate; the effects of low molecular weight heparins can persist for up to 24 hours after administration.

### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

##### ► Protamine sulfate (Non-proprietary)

Protamine sulfate 10 mg per 1 ml Protamine sulfate 100mg/10ml  
solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule [PoM] [S]  
Protamine sulfate 50mg/5ml solution for injection ampoules |  
10 ampoule [PoM] £49.55



## 3.4 Opioid toxicity

### OPIOID RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS

#### Naloxone hydrochloride

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Overdosage with opioids

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: Initially 100 micrograms/kg, if no response, repeat at intervals of 1 minute to a max. of 2 mg, then review diagnosis; further doses may be required if respiratory function deteriorates, doses can be given by subcutaneous or intramuscular routes but only if intravenous route is not feasible; intravenous administration has more rapid onset of action.

► Child 1 month–11 years: Initially 100 micrograms/kg (max. per dose 2 mg), if no response, repeat at intervals of 1 minute to a max. of 2 mg, then review diagnosis; further doses may be required if respiratory function deteriorates, doses can be given by subcutaneous or intramuscular routes but only if intravenous route is not feasible; intravenous administration has more rapid onset of action

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 400 micrograms, then 800 micrograms for up to 2 doses at 1 minute intervals if no response to preceding dose, then increased to 2 mg for 1 dose if still no response (4 mg dose may be required in seriously poisoned patients), then review diagnosis; further doses may be required if respiratory function deteriorates, doses can be given by subcutaneous or intramuscular routes but only if intravenous route is not feasible; intravenous administration has more rapid onset of action

###### ► BY CONTINUOUS INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

► Neonate: Using an infusion pump, adjust rate according to response (initially, rate may be set at 60% of the initial resuscitative intravenous injection dose per hour). The initial resuscitative *intravenous injection* dose is that which maintained satisfactory ventilation for at least 15 minutes.

► Child: Using an infusion pump, adjust rate according to response (initially, rate may be set at 60% of the initial resuscitative intravenous injection dose per hour). The initial resuscitative *intravenous injection* dose is that which maintained satisfactory ventilation for at least 15 minutes

##### Reversal of postoperative respiratory depression

###### ► INITIALLY BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 1 microgram/kg, repeated every 2–3 minutes if required.

► Child 1 month–11 years: 1 microgram/kg, repeated every 2–3 minutes if required

► Child 12–17 years: Initially 100–200 micrograms, alternatively (by intravenous injection) initially 1.5–3 micrograms/kg, if response inadequate, give subsequent doses, (by intravenous injection) 100 micrograms every 2 minutes, alternatively (by intramuscular injection) 100 micrograms every 1–2 hours

##### Reversal of respiratory and CNS depression resulting from opioid administration to mother during labour

###### ► BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

► Neonate: 200 micrograms, alternatively 60 micrograms/kg, to be given as a single dose at birth.

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY SUBCUTANEOUS INJECTION

► Neonate: 10 micrograms/kg, repeated every 2–3 minutes if required.

##### PHARMACOKINETICS

► Naloxone has a short duration of action; repeated doses or infusion may be necessary to reverse effects of opioids with longer duration of action.

● **UNLICENSED USE** Naloxone doses in BNF may differ from those in product literature.

##### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

###### SAFE PRACTICE

Doses used in acute opioid overdosage may not be appropriate for the management of opioid-induced respiratory depression and sedation in those receiving palliative care and in chronic opioid use.

● **CAUTIONS** Cardiovascular disease or those receiving cardiotoxic drugs (serious adverse cardiovascular effects reported) · maternal physical dependence on opioids (may precipitate withdrawal in newborn) · pain · physical dependence on opioids (precipitates withdrawal)

###### CAUTIONS, FURTHER INFORMATION

► Titration of dose In postoperative use, the dose should be titrated for each patient in order to obtain sufficient respiratory response; however, naloxone antagonises analgesia.

###### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

► **Common or very common** Arrhythmias · dizziness · headache · hypertension · hypotension · nausea · vomiting  
 ► **Uncommon** Diarrhoea · dry mouth · hyperhidrosis · hyperventilation · pain · tremor  
 ► **Rare or very rare** Anxiety · cardiac arrest · erythema multiforme · pulmonary oedema · seizure  
 ► **Frequency not known** Analgesia reversed · asthenia · chills · death · dyspnoea · fever · irritability · nasal complaints · piloerection · withdrawal syndrome · yawning

● **PREGNANCY** Use only if potential benefit outweighs risk.

● **BREAST FEEDING** Not orally bioavailable.

● **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *continuous intravenous infusion*, dilute to a concentration of up to 200 micrograms/mL with Glucose 5% or Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

###### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

###### Solution for injection

###### ► Naloxone hydrochloride (Non-proprietary)

**Naloxone hydrochloride 20 microgram per 1 mL** Naloxone 40micrograms/2mL solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule (PoM) £55.00

**Naloxone hydrochloride 400 microgram per 1 mL** Naloxone 400micrograms/1mL solution for injection ampoules | 10 ampoule (PoM) £41.00–£53.70

**Naloxone hydrochloride 1 mg per 1 mL** Naloxone 2mg/2mL solution for injection pre-filled syringes | 1 pre-filled disposable injection (PoM) £16.80

## 3.5 Paracetamol toxicity

### ANTIDOTES AND CHELATORS

#### Acetylcysteine

03-Apr-2018

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Paracetamol overdose

###### ► BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

- Neonate: Initially 150 mg/kg over 1 hour, dose to be administered in 3 mL/kg glucose 5%, followed by 50 mg/kg over 4 hours, dose to be administered in 7 mL/kg glucose 5%, then 100 mg/kg over 16 hours, dose to be administered in 14 mL/kg glucose 5%.
- Child (body-weight up to 20 kg): Initially 150 mg/kg over 1 hour, dose to be administered in 3 mL/kg glucose 5%, followed by 50 mg/kg over 4 hours, dose to be administered in 7 mL/kg glucose 5%, then 100 mg/kg over 16 hours, dose to be administered in 14 mL/kg glucose 5%
- Child (body-weight 20–39 kg): Initially 150 mg/kg over 1 hour, dose to be administered in 100 mL glucose 5%, followed by 50 mg/kg over 4 hours, dose to be administered in 250 mL glucose 5%, then 100 mg/kg over 16 hours, dose to be administered in 500 mL glucose 5%
- Child (body-weight 40 kg and above): 150 mg/kg over 1 hour, dose to be administered in 200 mL Glucose Intravenous Infusion 5%, then 50 mg/kg over 4 hours, to be started immediately after completion of first infusion, dose to be administered in 500 mL Glucose Intravenous Infusion 5%, then 100 mg/kg over 16 hours, to be started immediately after completion of second infusion, dose to be administered in 1 litre Glucose Intravenous Infusion 5%

##### Meconium ileus

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Neonate: 200–400 mg up to 3 times a day if required.

##### Treatment of distal intestinal obstructive syndrome

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–1 year: 0.4–3 g as a single dose
- Child 2–6 years: 2–3 g as a single dose
- Child 7–17 years: 4–6 g as a single dose

##### Prevention of distal intestinal obstruction syndrome

###### ► BY MOUTH

- Child 1 month–1 year: 100–200 mg 3 times a day
- Child 2–11 years: 200 mg 3 times a day
- Child 12–17 years: 200–400 mg 3 times a day

##### DOSES AT EXTREMES OF BODY-WEIGHT

- To avoid excessive dosage in obese patients, a ceiling weight of 110 kg should be used when calculating the dose for paracetamol overdose.

- **UNLICENSED USE** Not licensed for use in meconium ileus or for distal intestinal obstructive syndrome in children with cystic fibrosis.

##### IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

MHRA/CHM ADVICE: INTRAVENOUS ACETYL-CYSTEINE FOR PARACETAMOL OVERDOSE: REMINDER OF AUTHORISED DOSE REGIMEN; POSSIBLE NEED FOR CONTINUED TREATMENT (JANUARY 2017)

The authorised dose regimen for acetylcysteine in paracetamol overdose is 3 consecutive intravenous infusions given over a total of 21 hours.

Continued treatment (given at the dose and rate as used in the third infusion) may be necessary depending on the clinical evaluation of the individual patient.

##### ● CAUTIONS

- With intravenous use Asthma (see Side-effects for management of asthma but do not delay acetylcysteine treatment) · atopy · may slightly increase INR · may slightly increase prothrombin time
- With oral use Asthma · history of peptic ulceration

##### ● SIDE-EFFECTS

- With parenteral use Acidosis · anaphylactoid reaction · angioedema · anxiety · arrhythmias · cardiac arrest · chest discomfort · cough · cyanosis · eye pain · eye swelling · generalised seizure · hyperhidrosis · hypertension · hypotension · joint disorders · malaise · nausea · pain facial · respiratory disorders · skin reactions · syncope · thrombocytopenia · vasodilation · vision blurred · vomiting

**SIDE-EFFECTS, FURTHER INFORMATION** Anaphylactoid reactions (with intravenous use) can be managed by suspending treatment and initiating appropriate management. Treatment may then be restarted at lower rate.

##### ● DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION

- With oral use For oral administration, use oral granules, or dilute injection solution (200 mg/mL) to a concentration of 50 mg/mL; orange or blackcurrant juice or cola drink may be used as a diluent to mask the bitter taste.
- With intravenous use Glucose 5% is preferred fluid; Sodium Chloride 0.9% is an alternative if Glucose 5% unsuitable.

##### ● MEDICINAL FORMS

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: effervescent tablet, granules

##### Granules

CAUTIONARY AND ADVISORY LABELS 13

- **A-CYS** (Ennogen Healthcare Ltd)

**Acetylcysteine 200 mg** A-CYS 200mg granules sachets | 20 sachet £75.00

##### Solution for infusion

ELECTROLYTES: May contain Sodium

- **Acetylcysteine (Non-proprietary)**

**Acetylcysteine 200 mg per 1 mL** Acetylcysteine 2g/10mL solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule **[PoM]** £21.26–£24.99 DT = £21.26

- **Parvolex** (Phoenix Labs Ltd)

**Acetylcysteine 200 mg per 1 mL** Parvolex 2g/10mL concentrate for solution for infusion ampoules | 10 ampoule **[PoM]** £22.50 DT = £21.26

## 4 Methaemoglobinaemia

### ANTIDOTES AND CHELATORS

#### Methylthioninium chloride

(Methylene blue)

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Drug- or chemical-induced methaemoglobinaemia

###### ► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Neonate: Seek advice from National Poisons Information Service.

- Child 1–2 months: Seek advice from National Poisons Information Service
- Child 3 months–17 years: Initially 1–2 mg/kg, then 1–2 mg/kg after 30–60 minutes if required, to be given over 5 minutes, seek advice from National Poisons Information Service if further repeat doses are required; maximum 7 mg/kg per course

##### Aniline- or dapsone-induced methaemoglobinaemia

###### ► BY SLOW INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- Child 3 months–17 years: Initially 1–2 mg/kg, then 1–2 mg/kg after 30–60 minutes if required, continued →

to be given over 5 minutes, seek advice from National Poisons Information Service if further repeat doses are required; maximum 4 mg/kg per course

- **CAUTIONS** Children under 3 months (more susceptible to methaemoglobinaemia from high doses of methylthioninium) · chlorate poisoning (reduces efficacy of methylthioninium) · G6PD deficiency (seek advice from National Poisons Information Service) · methaemoglobinaemia due to treatment of cyanide poisoning with sodium nitrite (seek advice from National Poisons Information Service) · pulse oximetry may give false estimation of oxygen saturation
- **INTERACTIONS** → Appendix 1: methylthioninium chloride
- **SIDE-EFFECTS**
  - ▶ **Common or very common** Abdominal pain · anxiety · chest pain · dizziness · headache · hyperhidrosis · nausea · pain in extremity · paraesthesia · skin reactions · taste altered · urine discolouration · vomiting
  - ▶ **Frequency not known** Aphasia · arrhythmias · confusion · faeces discoloured · fever · haemolytic anaemia · hyperbilirubinaemia (in infants) · hypertension · hypotension · mydriasis · tremor
- **PREGNANCY** No information available, but risk to fetus of untreated methaemoglobinaemia likely to be significantly higher than risk of treatment.
- **BREAST FEEDING** Manufacturer advises avoid breastfeeding for up to 6 days after administration—no information available.
- **RENAL IMPAIRMENT**

**Dose adjustments** Use with caution in severe impairment; dose reduction may be required.
- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** For *intravenous injection*, may be diluted with Glucose 5% to minimise injection-site pain; not compatible with Sodium Chloride 0.9%.

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug. Forms available from special-order manufacturers include: solution for injection

**Solution for injection**

  - ▶ **Methylthioninium chloride (Non-proprietary)**  
Methylthioninium chloride Proveblue 50mg/10ml solution for injection ampoules | 5 ampoule (PoM) £196.89

#### Severe systemic envenoming from snake bites in patients presenting with clinical features

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: Initially 20 mL for 1 dose, if symptoms of systemic envenoming persist contact the National Poisons Information Service

- **DIRECTIONS FOR ADMINISTRATION** By *intravenous injection* given over 10–15 minutes or by *intravenous infusion* over 30 minutes after diluting in sodium chloride 0.9% (use 5 mL diluent/kg body-weight).
- **PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING INFORMATION** To order, email [immform@dh.gsi.gov.uk](mailto:immform@dh.gsi.gov.uk).

- **MEDICINAL FORMS**

There can be variation in the licensing of different medicines containing the same drug.

#### Solution for injection

- ▶ **European viper snake venom antiserum (Non-proprietary)**  
European viper snake venom antiserum 100 mg per 1 mL Viper venom antiserum, European (equine) 1g/10ml solution for injection vials | 1 vial (PoM) £

## 5 Snake bites

### IMMUNE SERA AND IMMUNOGLOBULINS > ANTITOXINS

#### European viper snake venom antiserum

##### ● INDICATIONS AND DOSE

##### Systemic envenoming from snake bites | Marked local envenoming

- ▶ BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION, OR BY INTRAVENOUS INFUSION
- ▶ Child: Initially 10 mL for 1 dose, then 10 mL after 1–2 hours if required, the second dose should only be given if symptoms of systemic envenoming persist after the first dose, if symptoms of systemic envenoming persist contact the National Poisons Information Service

# Appendix 1

## Interactions

Changes have been made to the interactions content in BNF publications. For more information, see [www.bnf.org/new-bnf-interactions/](http://www.bnf.org/new-bnf-interactions/).

Two or more drugs given at the same time can exert their effects independently or they can interact. Interactions may be beneficial and exploited therapeutically; this type of interaction is not within the scope of this appendix. Many interactions are harmless, and even those that are potentially harmful can often be managed, allowing the drugs to be used safely together. Nevertheless, adverse drug interactions should be reported to the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA), through the Yellow Card Scheme (see Adverse reactions to drugs p. 13), as for other adverse drug reactions.

Potentially harmful drug interactions may occur in only a small number of patients, but the true incidence is often hard to establish. Furthermore the severity of a harmful interaction is likely to vary from one patient to another. Patients at increased risk from drug interactions include the elderly and those with impaired renal or hepatic function.

Interactions can result in the potentiation or antagonism of one drug by another, or result in another effect, such as renal impairment. Drug interactions may develop either through pharmacokinetic or pharmacodynamic mechanisms.

### Pharmacodynamic interactions

These are interactions between drugs which have similar or antagonistic pharmacological effects or side-effects. They might be due to competition at receptor sites, or occur between drugs acting on the same physiological system. They are usually predictable from a knowledge of the pharmacology of the interacting drugs; in general, those demonstrated with one drug are likely to occur with related drugs.

### Pharmacokinetic interactions

These occur when one drug alters the absorption, distribution, metabolism, or excretion of another, thus increasing or decreasing the amount of drug available to produce its pharmacological effects. Pharmacokinetic interactions occurring with one drug do not necessarily occur uniformly across a group of related drugs.

**Affecting absorption** The rate of absorption and the total amount absorbed can both be altered by drug interactions. Delayed absorption is rarely of clinical importance unless a rapid effect is required (e.g. when giving an analgesic). Reduction in the total amount absorbed, however, can result in ineffective therapy.

**Affecting distribution** *Due to changes in protein binding:* To a variable extent most drugs are loosely bound to plasma proteins. Protein-binding sites are non-specific and one drug can displace another thereby increasing the proportion free to diffuse from plasma to its site of action. This only produces a detectable increase in effect if it is an extensively bound drug (more than 90%) that is not widely distributed throughout the body. Even so displacement rarely produces

more than transient potentiation because this increased concentration of free drug will usually be eliminated.

Displacement from protein binding plays a part in the potentiation of warfarin by sulfonamides but these interactions become clinically relevant mainly because warfarin metabolism is also inhibited.

**Induction or inhibition of drug transporter proteins:** Drug transporter proteins, such as P-glycoprotein, actively transport drugs across biological membranes. Transporters can be induced or inhibited, resulting in changes in the concentrations of drugs that are substrates for the transporter. For example, rifampicin induces P-glycoprotein, particularly in the gut wall, resulting in decreased plasma concentrations of digoxin, a P-glycoprotein substrate.

**Affecting metabolism** Many drugs are metabolised in the liver. Drugs are either metabolised by phase I reactions (oxidation, reduction, or hydrolysis) or by phase II reactions (e.g. glucuronidation).

Phase I reactions are mainly carried out by the cytochrome P450 family of isoenzymes, of which CYP3A4 is the most important isoenzyme involved in the metabolism of drugs. Induction of cytochrome P450 isoenzymes by one drug can increase the rate of metabolism of another, resulting in lower plasma concentrations and a reduced effect. On withdrawal of the inducing drug, plasma concentrations increase and toxicity can occur.

Conversely when one drug inhibits cytochrome P450 isoenzymes, it can decrease the metabolism of another, leading to higher plasma concentrations, resulting in an increased effect with a risk of toxicity.

Isoenzymes of the hepatic cytochrome P450 system interact with a wide range of drugs. With knowledge of which isoenzymes are involved in a drug's metabolism, it is possible to predict whether certain pharmacokinetic interactions will occur. For example, carbamazepine is a potent inducer of CYP3A4, ketoconazole is potent inhibitor of CYP3A4, and midazolam is a substrate of CYP3A4. Carbamazepine reduces midazolam concentrations, and it is therefore likely that other drugs that are potent inducers of CYP3A4 will interact similarly with midazolam. Ketoconazole, however, increases midazolam concentrations, and it can be predicted that other drugs that are potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 will interact similarly.

Less is known about the enzymes involved in phase II reactions. These include UDP-glucuronyltransferases which, for example, might be induced by rifampicin, resulting in decreased metabolism of mycophenolate (a substrate for this enzyme) to its active form, mycophenolic acid.

**Affecting renal excretion** Drugs are eliminated through the kidney both by glomerular filtration and by active tubular secretion. Competition occurs between those which share active transport mechanisms in the proximal tubule. For example, salicylates and some other NSAIDs delay the excretion of methotrexate; serious methotrexate toxicity is possible. Changes in urinary pH can also affect the reabsorption of a small number of drugs, including methenamine.

**A1**Interactions | **Appendix 1**

**Relative importance of interactions**

**Levels of severity:** Most interactions have been assigned a severity; this describes the likely effect of an unmanaged interaction on the patient.

**Severe**—the result may be a life-threatening event or have a permanent detrimental effect.

**Moderate**—the result could cause considerable distress or partially incapacitate a patient; they are unlikely to be life-threatening or result in long-term effects.

**Mild**—the result is unlikely to cause concern or incapacitate the majority of patients.

**Unknown**—used for those interactions that are predicted, but there is insufficient evidence to hazard a guess at the outcome.

**Levels of evidence:** Most interactions have been assigned a rating to indicate the weight of evidence behind the interaction.

**Study**—for interactions where the information is based on formal study including those for other drugs with same

mechanism (e.g. known inducers, inhibitors, or substrates of cytochrome P450 isoenzymes or P-glycoprotein).

**Anecdotal**—interactions based on either a single case report or a limited number of case reports.

**Theoretical**—interactions that are predicted based on sound theoretical considerations. The information may have been derived from *in vitro* studies or based on the way other members in the same class act.

**Action messages:** Each interaction describes the effect that occurs, and the action to be taken, either based on manufacturer's advice from the relevant Summary of Product Characteristics or advice from a relevant authority (e.g. MHRA). An action message is only included where the combination is to be avoided, where a dose adjustment is required, or where specific administration requirements (e.g. timing of doses) are recommended. **Pharmacodynamic interactions**, with the exception of interactions with drugs that may prolong the QT interval, do not have an action message included as these will depend on individual patient circumstances.

## Appendix 1 structure

A1

Interactions | Appendix 1

**1 Drugs**

Drugs are listed alphabetically. If a drug is a member of a drug class, all interactions for that drug will be listed under the drug class entry; in this case the drug entry provides direction to the relevant drug class where its interactions can be found.

Within a drug or drug class entry, interactions are listed alphabetically by the interacting drug or drug class. The interactions describe the effect that occurs, and the action to be taken, either based on manufacturer's advice from the relevant Summary of Product Characteristics or advice from a relevant authority (e.g. MHRA). An action message is only included where the combination is to be avoided, where a dose adjustment is required, or where specific administration requirements (e.g. timing of doses) are recommended. If two drugs have a pharmacodynamic effect in addition to a pharmacokinetic interaction, a cross-reference to the relevant pharmacodynamic effect table is included at the end of the pharmacokinetic message.

**2 Drug classes**

The drugs that are members of a drug class are listed underneath the drug class entry in a blue box. Interactions for the class are then listed alphabetically by the interacting drug or drug class. If the interaction only applies to certain drugs in the class, these drugs will be shown in brackets after the drug class name.

**3 Supplementary information**

If a drug has additional important information to be considered, this is shown in a blue box underneath the drug or drug class entry. This information might be food and lifestyle advice (including smoking and alcohol consumption), relate to the pharmacology of the drug or applicability of interactions to certain routes of administration, or it might be advice about separating administration times.

**1 Drug entry**

- ▶ Details of interaction between **drug entry** and another **drug** or **drug class**. Action statement. [Severity] Evidence
- ▶ Details of interaction between **drug entry** and another **drug** or **drug class**. Action statement. [Severity] Evidence

→ Also see TABLE 1

**Drug entry** → see Drug class entry

**2 Drug class entry**

Drug A - Drug B - Drug C - Drug D

- ▶ Details of interaction between **drug class entry** and another **drug** or **drug class**. Action statement. [Severity] Evidence

**3 Drug entry or Drug class entry**

Supplementary information

**4 Drug entry or Drug class entry** → see TABLE 1

**TABLE 1**

**Name of pharmacodynamic effect**

Explanation of the effect

Drug	Drug	Drug
Drug	Drug	Drug

**4 Pharmacodynamic effects**

Tables at the beginning of Appendix 1 cover pharmacodynamic effects. If a drug is included in one or more of these tables, this will be indicated at the top of the list of interactions for the drug or drug class. In addition to the list of interactions for a drug or drug class, these tables should always be consulted.

Each table describes the relevant pharmacodynamic effect and lists those drugs that are commonly associated with the effect. Concurrent use of two or more drugs from the same table is expected to increase the risk of the pharmacodynamic effect occurring. Please note these tables are not exhaustive.



**TABLE 1****Drugs that cause hepatotoxicity**

The following is a list of some drugs that cause hepatotoxicity (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from the list might increase this risk.

alcohol (beverage)	dantrolene	itraconazole	minocycline	tetracycline
alectinib	demeclocycline	leflunomide	oxytetracycline	tigecycline
asparaginase	didanosine	lenalidomide	paracetamol	trabectedin
atorvastatin	doxycycline	lomitapide	pegaspargase	valproate
carbamazepine	flucloxacillin	lymecycline	pravastatin	vincristine
clavulanic acid	fluconazole	mercaptopurine	rosuvastatin	
crisantaspase	fluvastatin	methotrexate	simvastatin	
dactinomycin	isoniazid	micalfugin	sulfasalazine	

**TABLE 2****Drugs that cause nephrotoxicity**

The following is a list of some drugs that cause nephrotoxicity (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from the list might increase this risk.

aceclofenac	ceftazidime	etodolac	methotrexate	telavancin
acemetacin	ceftriaxone	etoricoxib	nabumetone	tenofovir disoproxil
aciclovir	cefuroxime	fenoprofen	naproxen	tenoxicam
amikacin	ceftiofur	flurbiprofen	neomycin	tiaprofenic acid
amphotericin	ceftriaxone	foscarnet	oxaliplatin	tobramycin
bacitracin	cefuroxime	ganciclovir	parecoxib	tolfenamic acid
capreomycin	celecoxib	gentamicin	pemetrexed	trimethoprim
carboplatin	ciclosporin	ibuprofen	penicillamine	valaciclovir
cefaclor	cisplatin	ifosfamide	pentamidine	valganciclovir
cefadroxil	colistimethate (particularly intravenous)	indometacin	piroxicam	vancomycin
cefalexin	dexibuprofen	ketoprofen	polymyxins	zidovudine
cefixime	dexketoprofen	ketorolac	streptomycin	zoledronic acid
cefotaxime	diclofenac	mefenamic acid	sulindac	
cefradine		meloxicam	tacrolimus	

**TABLE 3****Drugs with anticoagulant effects**

The following is a list of drugs that have anticoagulant effects. Concurrent use of two or more drugs from this list might increase the risk of bleeding; concurrent use of drugs with antiplatelet effects (see table of drugs with antiplatelet effects) might also increase this risk.

acenocoumarol	dabigatran	fondaparinux	phenindione	urokinase
alteplase	dalteparin	glucose	rivaroxaban	warfarin
apixaban	danaparoid	heparin (unfractionated)	streptokinase	
argatroban	edoxaban	nicotinic acid	tenecteplase	
bivalirudin	enoxaparin	omega-3-acid ethyl esters	tinzaparin	

**TABLE 4****Drugs with antiplatelet effects**

The following is a list of drugs that have antiplatelet effects (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from this list might increase the risk of bleeding; concurrent use of drugs with anticoagulant effects (see table of drugs with anticoagulant effects) might also increase this risk.

abciximab	dapoxetine	etoricoxib	mefenamic acid	sulindac
aceclofenac	dasatinib	fenoprofen	meloxicam	tenoxicam
acemetacin	dexibuprofen	flouxetine	nabumetone	tiaprofenic acid
anagrelide	dexketoprofen	flurbiprofen	naproxen	ticagrelor
aspirin	diclofenac	fluvoxamine	parecoxib	tirofiban
bevacizumab	dipyridamole	ibuprofen	parecoxib	tolfenamic acid
cangrelor	duloxetine	iloprost	piroxicam	trastuzumab
celecoxib	epoprostenol	indometacin	prasugrel	trastuzumab emtansine
cilostazol	efitibatide	ketoprofen	regorafenib	venlafaxine
citalopram	escitalopram	ketorolac	sertraline	vortioxetine
clopidogrel	etodolac		sulfapyrazone	

**TABLE 5****Drugs that cause thromboembolism**

The following is a list of some drugs that cause thromboembolism (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from the list might increase this risk.

bleomycin	epoetin zeta	pentostatin	toremifene	vinflunine
cyclophosphamide	flutauracil	pomalidomide	tranexamic acid	vinorelbine
darbepoetin alfa	fulvestrant	raloxifene	tretinoin	
doxorubicin	lenalidomide	tamoxifen	vinblastine	
epoetin alfa	methotrexate	thalidomide	vincristine	
epoetin beta				

**TABLE 6****Drugs that cause bradycardia**

The following is a list of drugs that cause bradycardia (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from the list might increase this risk.

acebutolol	carvedilol	fentanyl	nadolol	rivastigmine
alectinib	celiprolol	fingolimod	neбиволol	selegiline
alfentanil	cisatracurium	flecainide	neostigmine	sotalol
amiodarone	clonidine	galantamine	oxprenolol	sufentanil
apraclonidine	crizotinib	ivabradine	pasireotide	thalidomide
atenolol	digoxin	labetalol	pindolol	timolol
betaxolol	diltiazem	levobunolol	propranolol	tizanidine
bisoprolol	donepezil	methadone	pyridostigmine	verapamil
brimonidine	esmolol	metoprolol	remifentanyl	

**TABLE 7****Drugs that cause first dose hypotension**

The following is a list of some drugs that can cause first-dose hypotension (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from the list might increase this risk.

alfuzosin	eprosartan	isosorbide dinitrate	prazosin	trandolapril
azilsartan	fosinopril	isosorbide mononitrate	quinapril	valsartan
candesartan	glyceryl trinitrate	lisinopril	ramipril	
captopril	imidapril	losartan	tamsulosin	
doxazosin	indoramin	olmesartan	telmisartan	
enalapril	irbesartan	perindopril	terazosin	

**TABLE 8****Drugs that cause hypotension**

The following is a list of some drugs that cause hypotension (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from the list might increase this risk.

acebutolol	chlorpromazine	haloperidol	moxisylyte	riociguat
alcohol (beverage)	chlorthalidone	hydralazine	moxonidine	risperidone
alfuzosin	clevidipine	hydrochlorothiazide	nadolol	ropinirole
aliskiren	clomipramine	hydroflumethiazide	neбиволol	rotigotine
alprostadil	clonidine	imidapril	nicardipine	sacubitril
amantadine	clozapine	imipramine	nicorandil	sapropterin
amitriptyline	clozapine	indapamide	nifedipine	selegiline
amlodipine	cyclopenthiiazide	indoramin	nimodipine	sevoflurane
apomorphine	dapagliflozin	irbesartan	nitrous oxide	sildenafil
apraclonidine	desflurane	isocarboxazid	nortriptyline	sodium nitroprusside
aripiprazole	diazoxide	isoflurane	olanzapine	sodium oxybate
asenapine	diltiazem	isosorbide dinitrate	olmesartan	sotalol
atenolol	dipyridamole	isosorbide mononitrate	oxprenolol	spironolactone
avanafil	dosulepin	ketamine	paliperidone	sulpiride
azilsartan	doxazosin	labetalol	pergolide	tadalafil
baclofen	doxepin	lacidipine	pericyazine	tamsulosin
bendroflumethiazide	droperidol	lercanidipine	perindopril	telmisartan
benperidol	empagliflozin	levobunolol	perphenazine	terazosin
betaxolol	enalapril	levodopa	phenelzine	thiopental
bisoprolol	eplerenone	levomepromazine	pimozide	timolol
bortezomib	eprosartan	lisinopril	pindolol	tizanidine
brimonidine	esmolol	lofepamine	pramipexole	torasemide
bromocriptine	etomidate	lofexidine	prazosin	trandolapril
bumetanide	felodipine	losartan	prochlorperazine	tranylcypromine
cabergoline	flupentixol	loxapine	promazine	trifluoperazine
canagliflozin	fluphenazine	lurasidone	propofol	trimipramine
candesartan	fosinopril	methoxyflurane	propofol	valsartan
captopril	furosemide	methylodopa	quetiapine	varidenafil
carvedilol	glyceryl trinitrate	metolazone	quinagolide	verapamil
celiprolol	guanethidine	metoprolol	quinapril	xipamide
chlorthiazide	guanfacine	minoxidil	ramipril	zuclopenthixol

**TABLE 9**

**Drugs that prolong the QT interval**

The following is a list of some drugs that prolong the QT-interval (note that this list is not exhaustive). In general, manufacturers advise that the use of two or more drugs that are associated with QT prolongation should be avoided. Increasing age, female sex, cardiac disease, and some metabolic disturbances (notably hypokalaemia) predispose to QT prolongation—concurrent use of drugs that reduce serum potassium might further increase this risk (see table of drugs that reduce serum potassium).

Drugs that are not known to prolong the QT interval but are predicted (by the manufacturer) to increase the risk of QT prolongation include: domperidone, fingolimod, granisetron, ivabradine, mefloquine, mizolastine, palonosetron, and intravenous pentamidine. Most manufacturers advise avoiding concurrent use with drugs that prolong the QT interval.

amifampridine	clarithromycin	fluphenazine	panobinostat	telavancin
amiodarone	clomipramine	haloperidol	pasireotide	tetrabenazine
amisulpride	crizotinib	hydroxyzine	pazopanib	tizanidine
anagrelide	dasatinib	inotuzumab ozogamicin	pimozide	tolterodine
apomorphine	delamanid	lapatinib	quinine	toremifene
arsenic trioxide	disopyramide	levomepromazine	ranolazine	vandetanib
artemether	dronedarone	lithium	ribociclib	varidenafil
artemimol	droperidol	lofexidine	risperidone	vemurafenib
bedaquiline	efavirenz	methadone	saquinavir	venlafaxine
bosutinib	eribulin	moxifloxacin	sildenafil	vinflunine
cabozantinib	erythromycin	nilotinib	sorafenib	voriconazole
ceritinib	escitalopram	ondansetron	sotalol	zuclopenthixol
chlormpromazine	flecainide	osimertinib	sulpiride	
citalopram	fluconazole	paliperidone	sunitinib	

**TABLE 10**

**Drugs with antimuscarinic effects**

The following is a list of some drugs that have antimuscarinic effects (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from this list might increase the risk of these effects occurring.

acridinium	cyclopentolate	haloperidol	orphenadrine	tiotropium
amantadine	cyproheptadine	homatropine	oxybutynin	tolterodine
amitriptyline	darifenacin	hydroxyzine	perphenazine	trifluoperazine
atropine	dicycloverine	hyoscine	pimozide	trihexyphenidyl
baclofen	dimenhydrinate	imipramine	prochlorperazine	trimipramine
chlorphenamine	disopyramide	ipratropium	procyclidine	tropicamide
chlormpromazine	dosulepin	levomepromazine	promethazine	trospium
clemastine	doxepin	lofepramine	propafenone	umeclidinium
clomipramine	fesoterodine	loxapine	propantheline	
clozapine	flavoxate	nefopam	propiverine	
cyclizine	glycopyrronium	nortriptyline	solifenacin	

**TABLE 11**

**Drugs with CNS depressant effects**

The following is a list of some drugs with CNS depressant effects (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from this list might increase the risk of CNS depressant effects, such as drowsiness, which might affect the ability to perform skilled tasks (see 'Drugs and Driving' in Guidance on Prescribing p. 1).

agomelatine	clomethiazole	isoflurane	moxonidine	quetiapine
alcohol (beverage)	clonazepam	ketamine	nabilone	remifentanyl
alfentanil	clonidine	ketotifen	nitrazepam	risperidone
alimemazine	clzapine	lamotrigine	nitrous oxide	ropivacaine
alprazolam	codeine	levetiracetam	olanzapine	sevoflurane
amisulpride	cyclizine	levomepromazine	oxazepam	sodium oxybate
apraclonidine	cyproheptadine	lidocaine	oxycodone	sufentanil
aripiprazole	desflurane	lofexidine	paliperidone	sulpiride
articaïne	dexmedetomidine	loperazolam	papaveretum	tapentadol
asenapine	diamorphine	lorazepam	pentazocine	temazepam
baclofen	diazepam	lormetazepam	perampanel	tetracaine
benperidol	dihydrocodeine	loxapine	pericyazine	thalidomide
brimonidine	dipipanone	lurasidone	perphenazine	thiopental
bucizine	droperidol	melatonin	perthidine	tizanidine
bupivacaine	etomidate	mepivacaine	phenobarbital	tramadol
buprenorphine	fentanyl	meprobamate	pimozide	trazodone
cannabis extract	flupentixol	mepizatinol	piptifen	trifluoperazine
chloral hydrate	fluphenazine	methadone	pregabalin	venlafaxine
chlordiazepoxide	flurazepam	methocarbamol	zaleplon	
chlorphenamine	gabapentin	methoxyflurane	zolpidem	
chlormpromazine	guanfacine	mianserin	zopiclone	
cinnarizine	haloperidol	midazolam	promazine	
clemastine	hydromorphone	mirtazapine	promethazine	
clobazam	hydroxyzine	morphine	propofol	

**TABLE 12****Drugs that cause peripheral neuropathy**

The following is a list of some drugs that cause peripheral neuropathy (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from the list might increase this risk.

amiodarone	didanosine	isoniazid	phenytoin	vindesine
bortezomib	disulfiram	lamivudine	stavudine	vinflunine
brentuximab vedotin	docetaxel	metronidazole	thalidomide	vinorelbine
cabazitaxel	eribulin	nitrofurantoin	vinblastine	
cisplatin	fosphenytoin	paclitaxel	vincristine	

**TABLE 13****Drugs that cause serotonin syndrome**

The following is a list of some drugs that cause serotonin syndrome (note that this list is not exhaustive). See 'Serotonin Syndrome' and 'Monoamine-Oxidase Inhibitors' under Antidepressant drugs p. 235 for more information and for specific advice on avoiding monoamine-oxidase inhibitors during and after administration of other serotonergic drugs.

almotriptan	fentanyl	methadone	pethidine	tapentadol
bupropion	fluoxetine	methylthionium chloride	phenelzine	tramadol
buspirone	fluvoxamine	mianserin	procarbazine	tranylcypromine
citalopram	frovatriptan	mirtazapine	rasagiline	trazodone
clomipramine	granisetron	moclobemide	rizatriptan	tryptophan
dapoxetine	imipramine	naratriptan	safinamide	venlafaxine
dexamfetamine	isocarboxazid	ondansetron	selegiline	vortioxetine
duloxetine	linezolid	palonosetron	sertraline	zolmitriptan
eletriptan	lisdexamfetamine	paroxetine	St John's Wort	
escitalopram	lithium	pentazocine	sumatriptan	

**TABLE 14****Antidiabetic drugs**

The following is a list of antidiabetic drugs (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from the list might increase the risk of hypoglycaemia.

acarbose	dulaglutide	glimepiride	lixisenatide	saxagliptin
albiglutide	empagliflozin	glipizide	metformin	sitagliptin
alogliptin	exenatide	insulins	metglinide	tolbutamide
canagliflozin	glibenclamide	linagliptin	pioglitazone	vildagliptin
dapagliflozin	glucicazide	liraglutide	repaglinide	

**TABLE 15****Drugs that cause myelosuppression**

The following is a list of some drugs that cause myelosuppression (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from the list might increase this risk.

afatinib	carmustine	everolimus	nilotinib	rituximab
aflibercept	ceritinib	fludarabine	nivolumab	ruixolitinib
alemtuzumab	cetuximab	flourouracil	obinutuzumab	siltuximab
amsacrine	chlorambucil	ganciclovir	ofatumumab	sorafenib
anakinra	cisplatin	gefitinib	olanzapine	sulfadiazine
arsenic trioxide	cladribine	gemcitabine	olaparib	sulfasalazine
asparaginase	clofarabine	hydroxycarbamide	olsalazine	sunitinib
axitinib	clozapine	ibrutinib	oxaliplatin	temozolomide
azacitidine	co-trimoxazole	idarubicin	paclitaxel	temsirolimus
azathioprine	crisantaspase	idelalisib	panitumumab	thalidomide
balsalazide	crizotinib	ifosfamide	panobinostat	thiotepa
belimumab	cyclophosphamide	imatinib	pazopanib	tioguanine
bendamustine	cytarabine	interferon alfa	pegaspargase	topotecan
bevacizumab	dabrafenib	interferon beta	peginterferon alfa	trabectedin
bleomycin	dacarbazine	irinotecan	peginterferon beta-1a	trastuzumab emtansine
blinatumomab	dactinomycin	leflunomide	pemetrexed	treosulfan
bortezomib	dasatinib	lenalidomide	pentamidine	valganciclovir
bosutinib	daunorubicin	linezolid	pentostatin	vinblastine
brentuximab vedotin	decitabine	lomustine	pixantrone	vincristine
busulfan	deferiprone	melfalan	pomalidomide	vindesine
cabazitaxel	docetaxel	mercaptopurine	primaquine	vinflunine
cabozantinib	doxorubicin	methotrexate	procarbazine	vinorelbine
canakinumab	epirubicin	mitomycin	propylthiouracil	vismodegib
capecitabine	eribulin	mitotane	pyrimethamine	zidovudine
carbimazole	estramustine	mitoxantrone	raltitrexed	
carboplatin	ethosuximide	mycophenolate	ramucirumab	
carfilzomib	etoposide	nelarabine	regorafenib	

**TABLE 16**

**Drugs that increase serum potassium**

The following is a list of some drugs that increase serum potassium concentrations (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from this list might increase the risk of hyperkalaemia (hyperkalaemia is particularly notable when ACE inhibitors or angiotensin-II receptor antagonists are given with spironolactone or eplerenone).

aceclofenac	dexketoprofen	fenoprofen	meloxicam	sulindac
acemetacin	diclofenac	flurbiprofen	nabumetone	tacrolimus
aliskiren	drospirenone	heparin (unfractionated)	naproxen	telmisartan
amiloride	enalapril	ibuprofen	olmesartan	tenoxicam
azilsartan	enoxaparin	imidapril	parecoxib	tiaprofenic acid
candesartan	eplerenone	indometacin	perindopril	tinzaparin
captopril	epoetin alfa	irbesartan	piroxicam	tolfenamic acid
celecoxib	epoetin beta	ketoprofen	potassium canrenoate	tolvaptan
ciclosporin	epoetin zeta	ketorolac	potassium chloride	trandolapril
dalteparin	eprosartan	lisinopril	quinapril	triamterene
darbepoetin alfa	etodolac	losartan	ramipril	trimethoprim
dexibuprofen	etoricoxib	mefenamic acid	spironolactone	valsartan

**TABLE 17**

**Drugs that reduce serum potassium**

The following is a list of some drugs that reduce serum potassium concentrations (note that this list is not exhaustive and that other drugs can cause hypokalaemia in overdose). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from this list might increase the risk of hypokalaemia. Hypokalaemia can increase the risk of torsade de pointes, which might be additive with the effects of drugs that prolong the QT interval (see table of drugs that prolong the QT interval).

aminophylline	bumetanide	fludrocortisone	indapamide	salmeterol
amphotericin	chlorothiazide	formoterol	methylprednisolone	terbutaline
bambuterol	chlorthalidone	furosemide	metolazone	theophylline
beclomethasone	clopamide	hydrochlorothiazide	olodaterol	torasemide
bendroflumethiazide	cyclopenthiiazide	hydrocortisone	prednisolone	triamcinolone
betamethasone	deflazacort	hydroflumethiazide	prednisone	vilanterol
budesonide	dexamethasone	indacaterol	salbutamol	xipamide

**TABLE 18**

**Drugs that cause hyponatraemia**

The following is a list of some drugs that reduce sodium concentrations (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from this list might increase the risk of hyponatraemia.

aceclofenac	clopamide	etodolac	indometacin	sertraline
acemetacin	cyclopenthiiazide	etoricoxib	ketoprofen	sodium picosulfate
amiloride	dapoxetine	fenoprofen	ketorolac	spironolactone
amitriptyline	desmopressin	fluoxetine	mefenamic acid	sulindac
bendroflumethiazide	dexibuprofen	flurbiprofen	metolazone	tenoxicam
bumetanide	dexketoprofen	fluvoxamine	metolazone	tiaprofenic acid
carbamazepine	diclofenac	furosemide	nabumetone	tolfenamic acid
celecoxib	dosulepin	hydrochlorothiazide	naproxen	torasemide
chlorothiazide	doxepin	hydroflumethiazide	nortriptyline	triamterene
chlorthalidone	duloxetine	ibuprofen	parecoxib	trimethoprim
citalopram	eplerenone	imipramine	paroxetine	trimipramine
clomipramine	escitalopram	indapamide	piroxicam	xipamide

**TABLE 19**

**Drugs that cause ototoxicity**

The following is a list of some drugs that cause ototoxicity (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from the list might increase this risk.

amikacin	cisplatin	oxaliplatin	torasemide	vindesine
bumetanide	furosemide	streptomycin	vancomycin	vinflunine
capreomycin	gentamicin	telavancin	vinblastine	vinorelbine
carboplatin	neomycin	tobramycin	vincristine	

**TABLE 20**

**Drugs with neuromuscular blocking effects**

The following is a list of some drugs with neuromuscular blocking effects (note that this list is not exhaustive). Concurrent use of two or more drugs from the list might increase this risk.

amikacin	cisatracurium	neomycin	pyridostigmine	tobramycin
atracurium	colistimethate	neostigmine	rocuronium	vecuronium
botulinum toxin type A	gentamicin	pancuronium	streptomycin	
botulinum toxin type B	mivacurium	polymyxins	suxamethonium	



## List of drug interactions

The following is an alphabetical list of drugs and their interactions; to avoid excessive cross-referencing each drug or group is listed twice: in the alphabetical list and also against the drug or group with which it interacts.

**Abacavir**

- Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **abacavir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- HIV-protease inhibitors (**tipranavir**) slightly decrease the exposure to **abacavir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

**Abatacept**

- Live vaccines are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **abatacept**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical

**Abciximab** → see TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)

**Abiraterone**

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Caution with concurrent chemotherapy—safety and efficacy not established.

- Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **abiraterone**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **abiraterone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Abiraterone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers**, selective (**metoprolol**). [Moderate] Study
- Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **abiraterone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Abiraterone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **abiraterone**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- HIV-protease inhibitors are predicted to increase the exposure to **abiraterone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **abiraterone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Macrolides (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **abiraterone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **abiraterone**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Abiraterone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **abiraterone**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Abiraterone** potentially increases the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Acarbose** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)

- Acarbose** decreases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- Pancreatin** is predicted to decrease the effects of **acarbose**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

**ACE inhibitors** → see TABLE 7 p. 848 (first-dose hypotension), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)

- captopril • enalapril • fosinopril • imidapril • lisinopril • perindopril • quinapril • ramipril • trandolapril
- ACE inhibitors** increase the risk of renal impairment when given with **aliskiren**. Use with caution or avoid **aliskiren** in selected patients. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 16 p. 851
- ACE inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of hypersensitivity and haematological reactions when given with **allopurinol**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ACE inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of anaemia and/or leucopenia when given with **azathioprine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ACE inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **icatibant** and **icatibant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **ACE inhibitors**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ACE inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of **lithium**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal

- ACE inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of hypersensitivity when given with **sodium aurothiomalate**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Quinapril** (tablet) decreases the absorption of oral **tetracyclines** (**tetracycline**). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- Acetabulol** → see beta blockers, selective
- Acetofenac** → see NSAIDs
- Acemetacin** → see NSAIDs
- Acenocoumarol** → see coumarins
- Acetazolamide**
  - Acetazolamide** potentially increases the risk of toxicity when given with **antiepileptics** (**valproate**). [Severe] Study
  - Acetazolamide** potentially increases the risk of overheating and dehydration when given with **antiepileptics** (**zonisamide**). Avoid in children. [Severe] Theoretical
  - Acetazolamide** increases the risk of severe toxic reaction when given with **aspirin** (high-dose). [Severe] Study
  - Acetazolamide** alters the concentration of **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - Acetazolamide** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **methenamine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Acetazolamide** increases the urinary excretion of **methotrexate**. [Moderate] Study
- Aciclovir** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity)

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- Aciclovir** increases the exposure to **aminophylline**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Mycophenolate** is predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **aciclovir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Aciclovir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **theophylline**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- Acitretin** → see retinoids
- Acridinium** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)
- Acrivastine** → see antihistamines, non-sedating
- Adalimumab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Adapalene** → see retinoids
- Adefovir**
  - Ataluren** increases the exposure to **adefovir**. [Moderate] Study
- Adenosine** → see antiarrhythmics
- Adrenaline/epinephrine** → see sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor
- Afatinib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- Antiarhythmics (**amiodarone**, **dronedarone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **afatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- HIV-protease inhibitors (**lopinavir**, **ritonavir**, **saquinavir**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- Macrolides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **afatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **afatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- Vemurafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study

**Aflibercept** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

**Agalsidase**

- **Aminoglycosides** are predicted to decrease the effects of **agalsidase**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to decrease the effects of **agalsidase**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Antimalarials (chloroquine)** are predicted to decrease the effects of **agalsidase**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Hydroxychloroquine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **agalsidase**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Agomelatine** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- Dose adjustment might be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment.
- Caution with concomitant use of drugs associated with hepatic injury.

- **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Study
- **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Study
- **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** very markedly increase the exposure to **agomelatine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Albendazole**

- **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** decrease the concentration of **albendazole**. [Moderate] Study
- **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** decrease the clearance of **albendazole**. [Moderate] Study
- **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** decrease the exposure to **albendazole**. [Moderate] Study
- **Albendazole** slightly decreases the exposure to **levamisole** and **levamisole** moderately decreases the exposure to **albendazole**. [Moderate] Study

**Albiglutide** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)

**Alcohol (beverage)** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially increases the risk of visual disturbances when given with **antiepileptics (retigabine)**. [Moderate] Study
- **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially causes a disulfiram-like reaction when given with **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- **Alcohol (beverage)** causes serious, potentially fatal, CNS depression when given with **clomethiazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- **Alcohol (beverage)** (in those who drink heavily) potentially decreases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Study
- **Alcohol (beverage)** (excessive consumption) potentially increases the risk of gastrointestinal side-effects when given with **dimethyl fumarate**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Alcohol (beverage)** causes an extremely unpleasant systemic reaction when given with **disulfiram**. Avoid for at least 24 hours before and up to 14 days after stopping treatment. [Severe] Study
- **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially causes a disulfiram-like reaction when given with **griseofulvin**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially causes a disulfiram-like reaction when given with **levamisole**. [Moderate] Study
- **Alcohol (beverage)** (excessive consumption) potentially increases the risk of lactic acidosis when given with **metformin**. Avoid excessive alcohol consumption. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially causes a disulfiram-like reaction when given with **metronidazole**. Avoid for at least 48 hours stopping treatment. [Moderate] Study
- **Alcohol (beverage)** causes rapid release of **opioids (hydromorphone, morphine)** (from extended-release preparations). Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- **Alcohol (beverage)** (in those who drink heavily) causes severe liver damage when given with **paracetamol**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- **Alcohol (beverage)** increases the risk of facial flushing and skin irritation when given with topical **pimecrolimus**. [Moderate] Study
- **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially causes a disulfiram-like reaction when given with **procarbazine**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially increases the concentration of **retinoids (acitretin)**. Avoid and for 2 months after stopping **acitretin**. [Moderate] Study
- **Alcohol (beverage)** increases the risk of facial flushing and skin irritation when given with topical **tacrolimus**. [Moderate] Study
- **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially causes a disulfiram-like reaction when given with **tinidazole**. Avoid for 72 hours stopping treatment. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Aldosterone antagonists** → see TABLE 18 p. 851 (hyponatraemia), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)

**eplerenone • spironolactone**

- **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study
- **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **eplerenone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851
- **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study
- **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Appetitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study
- **Eplerenone** very slightly increases the exposure to **digoxin**. [Mild] Study
- **Spironolactone** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eplerenone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study
- **Eplerenone** potentially increases the concentration of **lithium**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Spironolactone** potentially increases the concentration of **lithium**. [Moderate] Study
- **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study
- **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eplerenone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Spironolactone** is predicted to decrease the effects of **mitotane**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study
- **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eplerenone**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study

**Aldosterone antagonists** (continued)

- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eplerenone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **eplerenone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

**Alectinib** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity)

**Alemtuzumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

**Alendronic acid** → see bisphosphonates

**Alfacalcidol** → see vitamin D substances

**Alfentanil** → see opioids

**Alfuzosin** → see alpha blockers

**Alimemazine** → see antihistamines, sedating

**Aliskiren** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Avoid apple juice and orange juice as they greatly decrease aliskiren concentrations and plasma renin activity.

- ▶ **ACE inhibitors** increase the risk of renal impairment when given with **aliskiren**. Use with caution or avoid **aliskiren** in selected patients. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 16 p. 851

- ▶ **Angiotensin-II receptor antagonists** increase the risk of renal impairment when given with **aliskiren**. Use with caution or avoid **aliskiren** in selected patients. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 16 p. 851

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** decrease the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)** markedly increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)** moderately increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** moderately increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Ciclosporin** markedly increases the exposure to **aliskiren**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 16 p. 851

- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** moderately decreases the exposure to **aliskiren**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Aliskiren** slightly decreases the exposure to **loop diuretics (furosemide)**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

- ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Mild] Theoretical

- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **St John's Wort** decreases the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Statins (atorvastatin)** slightly to moderately increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Velpatasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Vemurafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Alitretonin** → see retinoids

**Alkylating agents** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)

bendamustine • busulfan • carmustine • chlorambucil • cyclophosphamide • dacarbazine • estramustine • ifosfamide • lomustine • melphalan • temozolomide • thiopeta • treosulfan

- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **estramustine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **cyclophosphamide**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)** increase the risk of busulfan toxicity when given with **busulfan**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **busulfan**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Oral calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **estramustine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **alkylating agents**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Metronidazole** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **busulfan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Paracetamol** is predicted to decrease the clearance of **busulfan**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cyclophosphamide** (high-dose) increases the risk of toxicity when given with **pentostatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 5 p. 847
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bendamustine**. Avoid or monitor. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cyclophosphamide** increases the risk of prolonged neuromuscular blockade when given with **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Study

**Allopurinol**

- ▶ **ACE inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of hypersensitivity and haematological reactions when given with **allopurinol**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Allopurinol** potentially increases the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **azathioprine**. Adjust **azathioprine** dose, p. 518. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Allopurinol** is predicted to decrease the effects of **capecitabine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Allopurinol** moderately increases the exposure to **didanosine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Allopurinol** potentially increases the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **mercaptopurine**. Adjust **mercaptopurine** dose, p. 543. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Allopurinol** increases the risk of skin rash when given with **penicillins (amoxicillin, ampicillin)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Allopurinol** is predicted to increase the risk of hyperuricaemia when given with **pyrazinamide**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Thiazide diuretics** are predicted to increase the risk of hypersensitivity reactions when given with **allopurinol**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Almotriptan** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)

- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** increase the exposure to **almotriptan**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** increases the exposure to **almotriptan**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Almotriptan** is predicted to increase the risk of vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. Ergotamine should be taken at least 24 hours before or 6 hours after **almotriptan**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** increase the exposure to **almotriptan**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** increases the exposure to **almotriptan**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** increase the exposure to **almotriptan**. [Mild] Study

**Alogliptin** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)

**Alpha blockers** → see TABLE 7 p. 848 (first-dose hypotension), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)

alfuzosin • doxazosin • indoramin • prazosin • tamsulosin • terazosin

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tamsulosin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tamsulosin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **doxazosin**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to alpha blockers (**alfuzosin, tamsulosin**). Use with caution or avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tamsulosin**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tamsulosin**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to alpha blockers (**alfuzosin, tamsulosin**). Use with caution or avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **doxazosin**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tamsulosin**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to alpha blockers (**alfuzosin, tamsulosin**). Use with caution or avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **doxazosin**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to alpha blockers (**alfuzosin, tamsulosin**). Use with caution or avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **doxazosin**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tamsulosin**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **doxazosin**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tamsulosin**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to alpha blockers (**alfuzosin, tamsulosin**). Use with caution or avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the effects of **indoramin**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tamsulosin**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tamsulosin**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Alpha blockers** cause significant hypotensive effects when given with **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors**. Patient should be stabilised on first drug then second drug should be added at the lowest recommended dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Ribociclib** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the exposure to **alfuzosin**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Alpha tocopherol** → see vitamin E substances  
**Alpha tocopheryl acetate** → see vitamin E substances  
**Alprazolam** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **alprazolam**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** moderately increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** moderately increases the exposure to **alprazolam**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **alprazolam**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** moderately increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** moderately increases the exposure to **alprazolam**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Alprazolam** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** moderately increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **alprazolam**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (tocilizumab)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **alprazolam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **alprazolam**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** moderately increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** moderately decreases the exposure to **alprazolam**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Alprostadil** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)  
**Alteplase** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)  
**Aluminium hydroxide** → see antacids  
**Amantadine** → see dopamine receptor agonists  
**Ambrisentan**
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **ambrisentan**. Adjust **ambrisentan** dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** transiently increases the exposure to **ambrisentan**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Amfetamines** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)  
 dexamfetamine • lisdexamfetamine
- ▶ **Amfetamines** are predicted to decrease the effects of **apraclonidine**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Amfetamines** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **atomoxetine**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Dexamfetamine** decreases the effects of **guanethidine**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir, tipranavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **amfetamines**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Moclobemide** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **amfetamines**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **amfetamines**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline, selegiline)** are predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **amfetamines**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (safinamide)** are predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **amfetamines**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Nabilone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **amfetamines**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Phenothiazines** are predicted to decrease the effects of **amfetamines**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Amfetamines** are predicted to decrease the effects of **phenothiazines (chlorpromazine)**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **amfetamines**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- Amifampridine** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)  
**Amikacin** → see aminoglycosides  
**Amiloride** → see potassium-sparing diuretics



**Aminoglycosides** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 19 p. 851 (ototoxicity), TABLE 20 p. 851 (neuromuscular blocking effects)

amikacin • gentamicin • streptomycin • tobramycin

- ▶ **Aminoglycosides** are predicted to decrease the effects of **agalsidase**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** potentially decrease the exposure to tobramycin. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ataluren** is predicted to increase the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with intravenous aminoglycosides. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aminoglycosides** increase the risk of hypocalcaemia when given with **bisphosphonates**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847
- ▶ **Aminoglycosides** potentially increase the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Loop diuretics** increase the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with aminoglycosides. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 19 p. 851
- ▶ **Aminoglycosides** are predicted to decrease the effects of **neostigmine**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 20 p. 851
- ▶ **Aminoglycosides** are predicted to decrease the effects of **pyridostigmine**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 20 p. 851

**Aminophylline** → see TABLE 17 p. 851 (reduced serum potassium)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Smoking can increase aminophylline clearance and increased doses of aminophylline are therefore required; dose adjustments are likely to be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment.

- ▶ **Aciclovir** increases the exposure to aminophylline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Aminophylline** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of antiarrhythmics (**adenosine**). Separate administration by 24 hours. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to aminophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to aminophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenytoin)** decrease the exposure to aminophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (primidone)** are predicted to increase the clearance of aminophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (stiripentol)** are predicted to increase the exposure to aminophylline. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective** are predicted to increase the risk of bronchospasm when given with aminophylline. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** are predicted to increase the risk of bronchospasm when given with aminophylline. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to aminophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aminophylline** increases the risk of agitation when given with **doxapram**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** increase the concentration of aminophylline. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** decrease the exposure to aminophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Interferons** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to aminophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Iron chelators (deferasirox)** are predicted to increase the exposure to aminophylline. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Isoniazid** is predicted to affect the clearance of aminophylline. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** decreases the exposure to aminophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aminophylline** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **lithium**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to aminophylline. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to aminophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aminophylline** is predicted to decrease the exposure to macrolides (**erythromycin**). Adjust dose. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Methotrexate** is predicted to decrease the clearance of aminophylline. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (blinatumomab)** are predicted to transiently increase the exposure to aminophylline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (sarilumab)** potentially affect the exposure to aminophylline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (tocilizumab)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to aminophylline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pentoxifylline** is predicted to increase the concentration of aminophylline. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin, norfloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to aminophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to aminophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aminophylline** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **roflumilast**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** moderately to markedly increase the exposure to aminophylline. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the concentration of aminophylline. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (ephedrine)** increase the risk of side-effects when given with aminophylline. Avoid in children. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** decreases the exposure to aminophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Valaciclovir** is predicted to increase the exposure to aminophylline. [Severe] Anecdotal

#### Aminosalicilic acid

- ▶ **Aminosalicilic acid** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical anaesthetics, local (**prilocaine**). Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aminosalicilic acid** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Amiodarone** → see antiarrhythmics

**Amisulpride** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Amisulpride** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Amisulpride** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Amitriptyline** → see tricyclic antidepressants

**Amiodipine** → see calcium channel blockers

**Amoxicillin** → see penicillins

**Amphotericin** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 17 p. 851 (reduced serum potassium)

- ▶ **Amphotericin** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **flucytosine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Micafungin** slightly increases the exposure to amphotericin. Avoid or monitor toxicity. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Sodium stibogluconate** increases the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with amphotericin. Separate administration by 14 days. [Severe] Study

**Ampicillin** → see penicillins

**Amsacrine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with amsacrine. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical

**Anaesthetics, local** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

bupivacaine • levobupivacaine • mepivacaine • oxybuprocaine • prilocaine • proxymetacaine • ropivacaine • tetracaine

- ▶ **Aminosalicilic acid** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **prilocaine**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Anaesthetics, local** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with **antiarrhythmics**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to increase the risk of



methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **prilocaine**.

Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ropivacaine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antimalarials (chloroquine, primaquine)** are predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **prilocaine**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dapsone** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **prilocaine**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ropivacaine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ropivacaine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Metoclopramide** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **prilocaine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nitratres** are predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **prilocaine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nitrofurantoin** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **prilocaine**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Paracetamol** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **prilocaine**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ropivacaine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sodium nitroprusside** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **prilocaine**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** decrease the clearance of **ropivacaine**. Avoid prolonged use. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Sulfonamides** potentially increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **prilocaine**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Terflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ropivacaine**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Anagrelide** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)

- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to **anagrelide**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **anagrelide**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **anagrelide**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
- ▶ **Anakinra** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **anakinra**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical

**Angiotensin-II receptor antagonists** → see TABLE 7 p. 848 (first-dose hypotension), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)

azilsartan · candesartan · eprosartan · irbesartan · losartan · olmesartan · telmisartan · valsartan

- ▶ **Angiotensin-II receptor antagonists** increase the risk of renal impairment when given with **aliskiren**. Use with caution or avoid **aliskiren** in selected patients. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 16 p. 851
- ▶ **Angiotensin-II receptor antagonists** potentially increase the concentration of **lithium**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal

## Antacids

aluminium hydroxide · magnesium carbonate · magnesium trisilicate

**SEPARATION OF ADMINISTRATION** Antacids should preferably not be taken at the same time as other drugs since they might impair absorption. Antacids might damage enteric coatings designed to prevent dissolution in the stomach.

- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **alkylating agents (estramustine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **antiepileptics (gabapentin)**. **Gabapentin** should be taken 2 hours after **antacids**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)** (capsule). **Antacids** should be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after **itraconazole**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **antihistamines, non-sedating (fexofenadine)**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **antimalarials (chloroquine)**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **antimalarials (proguanil)**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **aspirin** (high-dose). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **bisphosphonates (alendronic acid)**. **Alendronic acid** should be taken at least 30 minutes before **antacids**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **bisphosphonates (ibandronic acid)**. Avoid **antacids** for at least 6 hours before or 1 hour after **ibandronic acid**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **bisphosphonates (risedronate)**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **bisphosphonates (sodium clodronate)**. Avoid **antacids** for 2 hours before or 1 hour after **sodium clodronate**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **bosutinib**. **Bosutinib** should be taken at least 12 hours before **antacids**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **ceritinib**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Oral aluminium hydroxide** decreases the absorption of **chenodeoxycholic acid**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **cholic acid**. Separate administration by 5 hours. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **corticosteroids (deflazacort)**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **corticosteroids (dexamethasone)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **dasatinib**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aluminium hydroxide** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **deferiprone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **digoxin**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **dipyridamole** (immediate release tablets). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** moderately decrease the exposure to **dolutegravir**. **Dolutegravir** should be taken 2 hours before or 6 hours after **antacids**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **eltrombopag**. **Eltrombopag** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **antacids**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** moderately decrease the exposure to **elvitegravir**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aluminium hydroxide** increases the risk of blocked enteral or nasogastric tubes when given with **enteral feeds**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **erlotinib**. **Antacids** should be taken 4 hours before or 2 hours after **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** slightly to moderately decrease the exposure to **fibrates (gemfibrozil)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **gefatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir)**. **Atazanavir** should be taken 2 hours before or 1 hour after **antacids**. [Severe] Theoretical

## Antacids (continued)

- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **HIV-protease inhibitors (tipranavir)**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **hydroxychloroquine**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **iron (oral)**. **Iron (oral)** should be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after antacids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aluminium hydroxide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **iron chelators (deferasirox)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Separate administration by 4 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the exposure to **mycophenolate**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **nilotinib**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Magnesium trisilicate** decreases the absorption of **nitrofurantoin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **pazopanib**. **Pazopanib** should be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after antacids. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **penicillamine**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **phenothiazines**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antacids** increase the risk of metabolic alkalosis when given with **polystyrene sulfonate**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **quinolones**. **Quinolones** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after antacids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** slightly decrease the exposure to **raltegravir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **rifampicin**. **Rifampicin** should be taken 1 hour before antacids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. **Antacids** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after rilpivirine. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** slightly decrease the exposure to **riociguat**. **Antacids** should be taken 2 hours before or 1 hour after riociguat. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** moderately decrease the absorption of **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **sulpiride**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **tetracyclines**. Separate administration by 2 to 3 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **thyroid hormones (levothyroxine)**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **ursodeoxycholic acid**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **velpatasvir**. Separate administration by 4 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Antazoline** → see antihistamines, sedating

**Anthracyclines** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)

daunorubicin · doxorubicin · epirubicin · idarubicin · mitoxantrone · pixantrone

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Caution is necessary with concurrent use of cardiotoxic drugs, or drugs that reduce cardiac contractility.

- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** moderately increase the exposure to **doxorubicin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the concentration of anthracyclines (daunorubicin, doxorubicin, epirubicin, idarubicin, mitoxantrone). [Severe] Study

- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** slightly increase the exposure to **epirubicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **anthracyclines**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Anthracyclines** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiotoxicity when given with **monoclonal antibodies (trastuzumab, trastuzumab emtansine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to anthracyclines (**doxorubicin**, **mitoxantrone**). Avoid or monitor. [Moderate] Study

**Antiarrhythmics** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects), TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

adenosine · amiodarone · disopyramide · dronedarone · flecainide · lidocaine · propafenone

- ▶ Amiodarone has a long half-life; there is potential for drug interactions to occur for several weeks (or even months) after treatment with it has been stopped.
- ▶ Since systemic absorption can follow topical application of **lidocaine**, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**amiodarone**, **dronedarone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to decrease the effects of **agalsidase**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**amiodarone**, **dronedarone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (tamsulosin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aminophylline** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **adenosine**. Separate administration by 24 hours. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Anaesthetics, local** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with antiarrhythmics. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**propafenone**) are predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with antiarrhythmics (**amiodarone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**amiodarone**) increase the concentration of antiarrhythmics (**flecainide**). Adjust **flecainide** dose and monitor side effects. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**propafenone**) are predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with antiarrhythmics (**lidocaine**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**dronedarone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to antiarrhythmics (**propafenone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** increases the risk of bradycardia when given with **anticholinesterases, centrally acting**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **propafenone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **lidocaine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to antiarrhythmics (**disopyramide**, **dronedarone**). Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to slightly increase the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dronedarone**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **disopyramide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** very markedly increase the exposure to **dronedarone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **disopyramide**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to antiarrhythmics (**disopyramide, dronedarone**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (fexofenadine, mizolastine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (rupatadine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **apixaban**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** increases the exposure to **dronedarone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, disopyramide, dronedarone, flecainide, lidocaine)** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, non-selective**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Propafenone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, non-selective (labetalol, levobunolol, nadolol, oxprenolol, pindolol, sotalol)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Propafenone** increases the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, non-selective (propranolol)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Propafenone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, non-selective (timolol)** and **beta blockers, non-selective (timolol)** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with **propafenone**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, disopyramide, dronedarone, flecainide, lidocaine)** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, selective**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Propafenone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, selective (acebutolol, atenolol, betaxolol, bisoprolol, celiprolol, esmolol)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Propafenone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (metoprolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Propafenone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (nebivolol)** and **beta blockers, selective (nebivolol)** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with **propafenone**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dronedarone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Caffeine citrate** decreases the efficacy of **adenosine**. Separate administration by 24 hours. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** increase the exposure to **dronedarone** and **dronedarone** increases the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with **flecainide**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Disopyramide** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with **calcium channel blockers (verapamil)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Amiodarone** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dronedarone** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the exposure to **dronedarone**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** very markedly increases the exposure to **dronedarone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust colchicine dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (methylprednisolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Propafenone** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** increases the exposure to **dabigatran**. Adjust dabigatran dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedarone** slightly increases the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Daclatasvir** is predicted to increase the risk of severe bradycardia or heart block when given with **amiodarone**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Darifenacin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **flecainide**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, dronedarone)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust digoxin dose, p. 81. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848

## Antiarrhythmics (continued)

- ▶ **Propafenone** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dipyridamole** increases the exposure to **adenosine**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domeperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the concentration of **dopamine receptor agonists (cabergoline)**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Amiodaron** slightly increases the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** slightly increases the exposure to **edoxaban**. Adjust **edoxaban** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dronedaron**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**dronedaron**, **propafenone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to antiarrhythmics (**disopyramide**, **dronedaron**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **propafenone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**amiodaron**, **dronedaron**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**amiodaron**, **dronedaron**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **gefatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** potentially increases the exposure to **glecaprevir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **amiodaron**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** moderately increases the exposure to **dronedaron**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** increase the exposure to **amiodaron**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** slightly increase the exposure to **flecainide**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** increase the exposure to **lidocaine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **amiodaron**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **disopyramide**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** very markedly increase the exposure to **dronedaron**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lidocaine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Amiodaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Adjust **ibrutinib** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Adjust **ibrutinib** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **amiodaron**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** very markedly increases the exposure to **dronedaron**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dronedaron**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ledipasvir** increases the risk of severe bradycardia or heart block when given with **amiodaron**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Amiodaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **loperamide**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** very markedly increase the exposure to **dronedaron**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lidocaine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dronedaron**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to antiarrhythmics (**disopyramide**, **dronedaron**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **propafenone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** increases the risk of neutropenia when given with **monoclonal antibodies (brentuximab vedotin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dronedaron**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**amiodaron**, **dronedaron**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs (celecoxib)** are predicted to increase the exposure to antiarrhythmics (**flecainide**, **propafenone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical



- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids** (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the concentration of **opioids** (**fentanyl**). [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids** (**methadone**, **sufentanil**). [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**amiodarone**, **dronedaron**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **panobinostat**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Propafenone** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**avanafil**). Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**sildenafil**). Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**tadalafil**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**ildenafil**). Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Dronedaron** potentially increases the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Propafenone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Quinolones** (**ciprofloxacin**) slightly increase the exposure to **lidocaine**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **retinoids** (**alitretinoin**). Adjust **alitretinoin** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ribociclib** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the exposure to **amiodarone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to antiarrhythmics (**disopyramide**, **dronedaron**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **propafenone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **riparoxaban**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Simeprevir** is predicted to increase the concentration of **amiodarone**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Dronedaron** increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Sofosbuvir** is predicted to increase the risk of severe bradycardia or heart block when given with **amiodarone**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **SSRIs** (**fluvoxamine**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **propafenone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs** (**citalopram**, **escitalopram**, **fluoxetine**, **fluvoxamine**, **paroxetine**, **sertraline**). [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs** (**dapoxetine**). Adjust **dapoxetine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dronedaron**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins** (**atorvastatin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**atorvastatin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**fluvastatin**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** slightly increases the exposure to **statins** (**rosuvastatin**). Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins** (**simvastatin**). Adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**simvastatin**). Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sulfonylureas**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Lidocaine** is predicted to increase the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes** (**cabazitaxel**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes** (**paclitaxel**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Theophylline** decreases the efficacy of **adenosine**. Separate administration by 24 hours. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the risk of thyroid dysfunction when given with **thyroid hormones**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**amiodarone**, **dronedaron**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**amiodarone**, **dronedaron**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Propafenone** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the concentration of **velpatasvir**. Avoid or monitor. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Amiodarone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dronedaron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study



## Antiarrhythmics (continued)

- ▶ **Dronedrone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Dronedrone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

**Anticholinesterases, centrally acting** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia)

donepezil · galantamine · rivastigmine

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **anticholinesterases, centrally acting**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **donepezil**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **galantamine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Anticholinesterases, centrally acting** are predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **beta blockers, non-selective**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Anticholinesterases, centrally acting** are predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **beta blockers, selective**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the exposure to **galantamine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **anticholinesterases, centrally acting**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to increase the exposure to **galantamine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **galantamine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **donepezil**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **galantamine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **galantamine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **galantamine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **donepezil**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Anticholinesterases, centrally acting** are predicted to decrease the effects of **neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **donepezil**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **galantamine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Anticholinesterases, centrally acting** increase the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **galantamine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

**Antiepileptics** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 18 p. 851 (hyponatraemia), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

brivaracetam · carbamazepine · eslicarbazepine · ethosuximide · fosphenytoin · gabapentin · lacosamide · lamotrigine · levetiracetam · oxcarbazepine · paraldehyde · perampanel · phenobarbital · phenytoin · pregabalin · primidone · retigabine · rufinamide · stiripentol · tiagabine · topiramate · valproate · vigabatrin · zonisamide

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Avoiding milk or dairy products, carbonated drinks, and fruit juices at the same time as stiripentol.

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **abacavir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **abiraterone**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Acetazolamide** potentially increases the risk of toxicity when given with **valproate**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Acetazolamide** potentially increases the risk of overheating and dehydration when given with **zonisamide**. Avoid in children. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Carbamazepine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **afatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** decrease the concentration of **albendazole**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially increases the risk of visual disturbances when given with **retigabine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851
- ▶ **Carbamazepine** decreases the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **alprazolam**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Fosphenytoin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **aminophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Phenobarbital** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **aminophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Phenytoin** decreases the exposure to **aminophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Primidone** is predicted to increase the clearance of **aminophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Stiripentol** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aminophylline**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinemia when given with topical **anaesthetics, local (prilocaine)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Phenytoin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **anaesthetics, local (ropivacaine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **gabapentin**. **Gabapentin** should be taken 2 hours after **antacids**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (disopyramide, dronedarone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to slightly increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin, phenytoin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (lidocaine)**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **anticholinesterases, centrally acting (donepezil)**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**brivaracetam**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**brivaracetam**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (lamotrigine)** potentially increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**) and antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**) decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**lamotrigine**). Adjust **lamotrigine** dose and monitor **carbamazepine** concentration, p. 202, p. 196. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital)** affect the concentration of antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**) and antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**) increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ Antiepileptics (**topiramate**) increase the risk of carbamazepine toxicity when given with antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**stiripentol**) increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **phenobarbital**). Avoid in Dravet syndrome. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**) slightly decrease the exposure to antiepileptics (**eslicarbazepine**, **oxcarbazepine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**oxcarbazepine**) are predicted to increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**stiripentol**) are predicted to increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**). [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**) affect the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) and antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**eslicarbazepine**) increase the exposure to antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) and antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) decrease the exposure to antiepileptics (**eslicarbazepine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**valproate**) affect the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) and antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**valproate**). [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**vigabatrin**) decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). [Mild] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**) decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**lamotrigine**). Monitor and adjust **lamotrigine** dose, p. 202. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**lamotrigine**). Monitor and adjust **lamotrigine** dose, p. 202. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**valproate**) increase the exposure to antiepileptics (**lamotrigine**). Adjust **lamotrigine** dose and monitor rash, p. 202. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**lamotrigine**) are predicted to increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**oxcarbazepine**) and antiepileptics (**oxcarbazepine**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**lamotrigine**). Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to antiepileptics (**perampanel**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**oxcarbazepine**) decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**perampanel**) and antiepileptics (**perampanel**) increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**oxcarbazepine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to antiepileptics (**perampanel**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenytoin**) increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**) and antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**) affect the concentration of antiepileptics (**phenytoin**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**) increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**, **primidone**) and antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**, **primidone**) affect the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**oxcarbazepine**) are predicted to increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**phenytoin**). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**stiripentol**) are predicted to increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**phenytoin**). Avoid in Dravet syndrome. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**) potentially decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**primidone**) and antiepileptics (**primidone**) potentially decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenytoin**) increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**primidone**) and antiepileptics (**primidone**) affect the concentration of antiepileptics (**phenytoin**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**stiripentol**) are predicted to increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**phenytoin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**valproate**) increase the exposure to antiepileptics (**primidone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**) slightly increase the clearance of antiepileptics (**retigabine**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) are predicted to slightly increase the clearance of antiepileptics (**retigabine**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**valproate**) increase the exposure to antiepileptics (**rufinamide**). Adjust **rufinamide** dose, p. 207. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) decrease the exposure to antiepileptics (**tiagabine**). Monitor and adjust **tiagabine** dose, p. 211. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**topiramate**) and antiepileptics (**topiramate**) increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**topiramate**). [Mild] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**) decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**valproate**) and antiepileptics (**valproate**) increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**topiramate**) increase the risk of toxicity when given with antiepileptics (**valproate**). [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**) slightly to moderately decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**zonisamide**) and antiepileptics (**zonisamide**) affect the concentration of antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) slightly to moderately decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**zonisamide**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**zonisamide**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**topiramate**) potentially increase the risk of overheating and dehydration when given with antiepileptics (**zonisamide**). Avoid in children. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to very slightly increase the exposure to **perampanel**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**miconazole**) increase the risk of carbamazepine toxicity when given with **carbamazepine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**miconazole**) increase the risk of phenytoin toxicity when given with **fosphenytoin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**miconazole**) increase the risk of phenytoin toxicity when given with **phenytoin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Carbamazepine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**) and antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**) increase the concentration of **carbamazepine**. Avoid or monitor **carbamazepine** concentration and adjust dose accordingly, p. 196. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**) increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**isavuconazole**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fosphenytoin** very markedly decreases the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**). Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **fosphenytoin**, p. 199. [Moderate] Study

## Antiepileptics (continued)

- ▶ **Phenobarbital** decreases the concentration of **antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **phenobarbital**, p. 216. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Phenytoin** very markedly decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **phenytoin**, p. 205. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Primidone** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Carbamazepine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, voriconazole)** and **antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, voriconazole)** increase the concentration of **carbamazepine**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Carbamazepine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)** and **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)** slightly increase the concentration of **carbamazepine**. Avoid or monitor **carbamazepine** concentration and adjust dose accordingly, p. 196. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Phenobarbital** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin, phenytoin**) decrease the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Primidone** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole, posaconazole)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Carbamazepine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)** and **antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)** increase the concentration of **carbamazepine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Phenobarbital** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin, phenytoin**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Fosphenytoin** decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** and **antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** increase the exposure to **fosphenytoin**. Avoid or adjust **voriconazole** dose and monitor **phenytoin** concentration, p. 377. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Phenytoin** decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** and **antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** increase the exposure to **phenytoin**. Avoid or adjust **voriconazole** dose and monitor **phenytoin** concentration, p. 377, p. 205. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antihistamines, sedating (hydroxyzine)** potentially increase the risk of overheating and dehydration when given with **zonisamide**. Avoid in children. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **antimalarials (artemether)** (with lumefantrine). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antimalarials (pyrimethamine)** increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin, phenytoin**). [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antimalarials (pyrimethamine)** are predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with antiepileptics (**phenobarbital, primidone**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, phenobarbital, primidone**) potentially increase the risk of toxicity when given with **antimalarials (quinine)**. [Unknown] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **apixaban**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) moderately decrease the exposure to **apremilast**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **aprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **bazedoxifene**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) decrease the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **beta blockers, non-selective (carvedilol, labetalol)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **beta blockers, non-selective (propranolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (acebutolol, bisoprolol, metoprolol, nebivolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) slightly decrease the exposure to **bortezomib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) affect the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to very markedly decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **bupropion**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Valproate** increases the exposure to **bupropion**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) moderately decrease the exposure to **cabozantinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin, phenytoin**) are predicted to moderately increase the clearance of **caffeine citrate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem)** increase the concentration of **carbamazepine** and **carbamazepine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem)**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** increase the concentration of **carbamazepine** and **carbamazepine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (verapamil)**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** potentially increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin, phenytoin**) and antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin, phenytoin**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849

- ▶ **Capecitabine** increases the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Carbapenems** decrease the concentration of valproate. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenytoin) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **caspofungin**. Adjust caspofungin dose, p. 372. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone) are predicted to affect the efficacy of **chenodeoxycholic acid**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone) decrease the concentration of **chloramphenicol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Intravenous **chloramphenicol** increases the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) and antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) affect the concentration of intravenous **chloramphenicol**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Chlordiazepoxide** affects the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). [Severe] Study
- ▶ Phenobarbital decreases the effects of **cholic acid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) decrease the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Oxcarbazepine decreases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to alter the effects of **cilostazol**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Carbamazepine is predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with oral **cladribine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clobazam** potentially affects the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Stiripentol** increases the concentration of **clobazam**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) decrease the exposure to **clomethiazole**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Clonazepam** potentially affects the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **clozapine**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ Carbamazepine is predicted to increase the risk of myelosuppression when given with **clozapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Oxcarbazepine is predicted to decrease the concentration of **cobicistat**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to very slightly increase the exposure to **perampanel**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, eslicarbazepine, fosphenytoin, oxcarbazepine, perampanel, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone, rufinamide, topiramate) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** alter the exposure to lamotrigine. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to corticosteroids (budesonide, deflazacort, dexamethasone, fludrocortisone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to corticosteroids (**fluticasone**). [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) are predicted to alter the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone) decrease the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Carbamazepine decreases the effects of **coumarins**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Carbamazepine is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Oxcarbazepine is predicted to decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Danazol** moderately increases the concentration of carbamazepine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasabuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **delamanid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Lamotrigine is predicted to increase the risk of hyponatraemia when given with **desmopressin**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, eslicarbazepine, fosphenytoin, oxcarbazepine, perampanel, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone, rufinamide, topiramate) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Desogestrel** is predicted to increase the exposure to lamotrigine. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Diazepam** potentially affects the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Diazoxide** decreases the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) and antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) are predicted to decrease the effects of **diazoxide**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Disulfiram** increases the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) decrease the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Oxcarbazepine is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Phenytoin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **duloxetine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Carbamazepine is predicted to decrease the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Moderate] Study



## Antiepileptics (continued)

- ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) slightly decrease the exposure to **efavirenz** and **efavirenz** affects the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Carbamazepine slightly decreases the exposure to **efavirenz** and **efavirenz** slightly decreases the exposure to carbamazepine. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Phenobarbital is predicted to decrease the exposure to **efavirenz** and **efavirenz** affects the concentration of phenobarbital. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to affect the efficacy of **primidone** and **primidone** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **efavirenz**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enteral feeds** decrease the absorption of **phenytoin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **brivaracetam**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **perampanel**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. Avoid or adjust erlotinib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **eslicarbazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **oxcarbazepine**, **perampanel**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**, **rufinamide**, **topiramate**) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etoposide**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) moderately decrease the exposure to **exemestane**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **fosfoterodine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to  **fingolimod**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Fluorouracil** increases the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Folates** are predicted to decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **fospaprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **gefitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**eslicarbazepine**, **oxcarbazepine**) potentially decrease the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Valproate** potentially opposes the effects of **glycerol phenylbutyrate**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** slightly increases the exposure to carbamazepine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**, **primidone**) decrease the effects of **griseofulvin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust guanfacine dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Oxcarbazepine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Monitor and adjust guanfacine dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Guanfacine** increases the concentration of **valproate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** transiently increase the concentration of carbamazepine. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) decrease the concentration of **haloperidol**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Haloperidol** potentially increases the risk of overheating and dehydration when given with **zonisamide**. Avoid in children. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** slightly decrease the exposure to **lamotrigine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to affect the exposure to antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) and antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) decrease the concentration of **HIV-protease inhibitors**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to affect the concentration of antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**, **primidone**) and antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **HIV-protease inhibitors**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to carbamazepine and carbamazepine is predicted to decrease the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to very slightly increase the exposure to **perampanel**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **valproate**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **eslicarbazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **oxcarbazepine**, **perampanel**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**, **rufinamide**, **topiramate**) are predicted to decrease the effects of **hormone replacement therapy**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Hormone replacement therapy** is predicted to alter the exposure to **lamotrigine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Avoid or adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **idelalisib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to very slightly increase the exposure to **perampanel**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Oxcarbazepine** decreases the exposure to **imatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure



- to iron chelators (**deferasirox**). Monitor serum ferritin and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Isoniazid** increases the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
  - ▶ **Isoniazid** markedly increases the concentration of **carbamazepine** and **carbamazepine** increases the risk of hepatotoxicity when given with **isoniazid**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ixazomib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Carbamazepine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **eslicarbazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **oxcarbazepine**, **perampanel**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**, **rufinamide**, **topiramate**) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **linagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **oxcarbazepine**) are predicted to increase the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **lomitapide**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) decrease the effects of loop diuretics (**furosemide**). [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the exposure to antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **lurasidone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **macitentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) slightly increase the concentration of **carbamazepine**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to very slightly increase the exposure to **perampanel**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides** (**erythromycin**) markedly increase the concentration of **carbamazepine**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Phenytoin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Levetiracetam** decreases the clearance of **methotrexate**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **metronidazole**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the effects of **metyrapone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **mianserin**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - ▶ **Carbamazepine** markedly decreases the exposure to **mianserin**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **mirtazapine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **perampanel**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **phenobarbital**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **modafinil**. [Mild] Theoretical
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **modafinil** and **modafinil** is predicted to increase the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**, **primidone**) are predicted to increase the effects of **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors**, **irreversible**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Carbamazepine** is predicted to increase the risk of severe toxic reaction when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors**, **irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Carbamazepine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **monoclonal antibodies** (**brentuximab vedotin**). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies** (**tocilizumab**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **montelukast**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **nateglinide**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Carbamazepine** is predicted to decrease the effects of (but acute use increases the effects of) **neuromuscular blocking drugs**, **non-depolarising** (**atracurium**, **cisatracurium**, **pancuronium**, **rocuronium**, **vecuronium**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) decrease the effects of (but acute use increases the effects of) **neuromuscular blocking drugs**, **non-depolarising** (**atracurium**, **cisatracurium**, **pancuronium**, **rocuronium**, **vecuronium**). [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) and antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **nevirapine**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Carbamazepine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **nitisnone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **eslicarbazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **oxcarbazepine**, **perampanel**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**, **rufinamide**, **topiramate**) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal

## Antiepileptics (continued)

- ▶ Carbamazepine potentially decreases the exposure to **olanzapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Phenytoin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olanzapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Carbamazepine is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ombitasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ondansetron**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, fentanyl)**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (buprenorphine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) decrease the exposure to **opioids (methadone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (oxycodone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ Carbamazepine decreases the concentration of **opioids (tramadol)**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **osimertinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Oxybutynin** potentially increases the risk of overheating and dehydration when given with **zonisamide**. Avoid in children. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **palbociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **paliperidone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ Valproate slightly increases the exposure to **paliperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **panobinostat**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) decrease the exposure to **paracetamol**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Valproate increases the risk of side-effects when given with **penicillins (pivmecillinam)**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Phenothiazines (**chlorpromazine**) decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone) and antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone) decrease the concentration of **phenothiazines (chlorpromazine)**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil, tadalafil)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil, vardenafil)**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (eslicarbazepine, oxcarbazepine) potentially decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **pirfenidone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **pitolisant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ponatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **praziquantel**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to increase the risk of hypersensitivity reactions when given with **procarbazine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Fosphenytoin** is predicted to increase the risk of hypersensitivity when given with **procarbazine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Valproate potentially increases the concentration of **propofol**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ Valproate potentially increases the risk of neutropenia when given with **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** affect the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to affect the exposure to **raltegravir**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Carbamazepine is predicted to affect the exposure to **raltegravir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ranolazine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **reboxetine**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **regorafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **repaglinide**. Monitor blood glucose and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **rifampicin** and **rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone). Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to **brivaracetam**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly increases the clearance of **lamotrigine**. Adjust **lamotrigine** dose, p. 202. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **perampanel**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) markedly decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Oxcarbazepine is predicted to decrease the concentration of **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure

- to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **rivaroxaban**. Avoid unless patient can be monitored for signs of thrombosis. [Severe] Study
  - Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **roflumilast**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **rolapitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
  - Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenytoin) are predicted to decrease the exposure to the active metabolite of **selexipag**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - Valproate** is predicted to increase the exposure to **selexipag**. [Unknown] Theoretical
  - Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Oxcarbazepine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Valproate** increases the exposure to **sodium oxybate**. Adjust sodium oxybate dose. [Moderate] Study
  - Valproate** potentially decreases the effects of **sodium phenylbutyrate**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, oxcarbazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **sofosbuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - Carbamazepine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sofosbuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **solifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **sorafenib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - SSRIs** (fluoxetine, fluvoxamine) are predicted to increase the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - SSRIs** (sertraline) potentially increase the risk of toxicity when given with antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) decrease the concentration of **SSRIs** (paroxetine). [Moderate] Study
  - St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **brivaracetam**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **carbamazepine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **perampanel**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tiagabine**. Avoid. [Mild] Theoretical
  - Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, eslicarbazepine) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **statins** (atorvastatin). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
  - Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) potentially decrease the exposure to **statins** (atorvastatin, simvastatin). [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - Carbamazepine** moderately decreases the exposure to **statins** (simvastatin). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847

- Eslicarbazepine** moderately decreases the exposure to **statins** (simvastatin). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Sulfapyrazone** increases the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). [Moderate] Study
- Sulfonamides** (sulfadiazine) are predicted to increase the concentration of **fosphenytoin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Sulfonamides** (sulfadiazine) increase the concentration of **phenytoin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust sunitinib dose. [Moderate] Study
- Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) increase the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Study
- Carbamazepine** increases the risk of prolonged neuromuscular blockade when given with **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Study
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) decrease the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes** (cabazitaxel, paclitaxel). Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes** (docetaxel). [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- Tegافر** potentially increases the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, oxcarbazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **tenofovir alafenamide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) decrease the exposure to **tetracyclines** (doxycycline). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **theophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone) are predicted to increase the clearance of **theophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Carbamazepine** potentially increases the clearance of **theophylline** and **theophylline** decreases the exposure to **carbamazepine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- Stiripentol** is predicted to increase the exposure to **theophylline**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenytoin) are predicted to increase the risk of hypothyroidism when given with **thyroid hormones**. [Moderate] Study
- Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone) are predicted to decrease the effects of **thyroid hormones**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **tivozanib**. [Severe] Study
- Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) moderately decrease the exposure to **tizanidine**. [Mild] Study
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) increase the clearance of **topotecan**. [Moderate] Study

## Antiepileptics (continued)

- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **torsemide**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- Carbamazepine decreases the concentration of **trazodone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Moderate] Study
- Carbamazepine decreases the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851
- Tricyclic antidepressants (clomipramine, imipramine)** potentially increase the risk of overheating and dehydration when given with **zonisamide**. Avoid in children. [Severe] Theoretical
- Trimethoprim** increases the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). [Moderate] Study
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, eslicarbazepine, fosphenytoin, oxcarbazepine, perampanel, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone, rufinamide, topiramate) decrease the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **vandetanib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **velpatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Oxcarbazepine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **velpatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **venumafenib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinca alkaloids (vinblastine, vincristine, vindesine)**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinca alkaloids (vinflunine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinca alkaloids (vinorelbine)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **vismodegib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) decrease the effects of **vitamin D substances**. [Moderate] Study
- Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone) are predicted to decrease the effects of **vitamin D substances**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Carbamazepine is predicted to decrease the effects of **vitamin D substances**. [Moderate] Study
- Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone) potentially increase the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with **volatile halogenated anaesthetics (methoxyflurane)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **vortioxetine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Oxcarbazepine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Valproate** slightly increases the exposure to **zidovudine**. [Moderate] Study

- Carbamazepine moderately decreases the exposure to **zolidem**. [Moderate] Study
- Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849

**Antifungals, azoles** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

clotrimazole • fluconazole • isavuconazole • itraconazole • ketoconazole • miconazole • posaconazole • voriconazole

- In general, **fluconazole** interactions relate to multiple-dose treatment.
- The use of carbonated drinks, such as cola, improves **itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, and **posaconazole** bioavailability.
- Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions with topical **ketoconazole** should be borne in mind.
- Interactions of **miconazole** apply to the oral gel formulation, as a sufficient quantity can be absorbed to cause systemic effects. Systemic absorption from intravaginal and topical formulations might also occur.

- Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole) are predicted to increase the exposure to **abiraterone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole) are predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- Alcohol (beverage)** potentially causes a disulfiram-like reaction when given with **ketoconazole**. Avoid. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole) are predicted to increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Adjust eplerenone dose. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Itraconazole** markedly increases the exposure to **aliskiren**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Ketoconazole** moderately increases the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study
- Itraconazole** increases the risk of busulfan toxicity when given with **alkylating agents (busulfan)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Miconazole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **alkylating agents (busulfan)**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Isavuconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alkylating agents (cyclophosphamide)**. [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole) increase the exposure to **almotriptan**. [Mild] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (alfuzosin, tamsulosin)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole) are predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (doxazosin)**. [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole) are predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (tamsulosin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole) are predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole) moderately increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- Miconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Miconazole** potentially decreases the exposure to **aminoglycosides (tobramycin)**. [Moderate] Anecdotal



- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **itraconazole** (capsule). Antacids should be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after **itraconazole**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **ketoconazole**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Miconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (disopyramide)**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (disopyramide)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Posaconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (disopyramide, dronedarone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fluconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) very markedly increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **anticholinesterases, centrally acting (galantamine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **fluconazole** and **fluconazole** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)**. Avoid or monitor **carbamazepine** concentration and adjust dose accordingly. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **ketoconazole** and **ketoconazole** slightly increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)**. Avoid or monitor **carbamazepine** concentration and adjust dose accordingly. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **posaconazole** and **posaconazole** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin)** very markedly decrease the exposure to **itraconazole**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **fosphenytoin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin)** decrease the exposure to **voriconazole** and **voriconazole** increases the exposure to **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin)**. Avoid or adjust **voriconazole** dose p. 377 and monitor phenytoin concentration. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** decrease the exposure to **ketoconazole**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **posaconazole**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital)** decrease the concentration of **itraconazole**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **phenobarbital**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **ketoconazole**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **posaconazole**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **voriconazole**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenytoin)** very markedly decrease the exposure to **itraconazole**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **phenytoin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenytoin)** decrease the exposure to **voriconazole** and **voriconazole** increases the exposure to **antiepileptics (phenytoin)**. Avoid or adjust **voriconazole** dose p. 377 and monitor **phenytoin** concentration. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (primidone)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **itraconazole**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Miconazole** increases the risk of carbamazepine toxicity when given with **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Miconazole** increases the risk of phenytoin toxicity when given with **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Fluconazole** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **voriconazole**) and antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**) increase the concentration of **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (primidone)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of antifungals, azoles (**ketoconazole**, **posaconazole**). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to very slightly increase the exposure to **antiepileptics (perampamil)**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Miconazole** increases the risk of phenytoin toxicity when given with **antiepileptics (phenytoin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**isavuconazole**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**isavuconazole**). Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**isavuconazole**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Miconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **posaconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ketoconazole** increases the exposure to **antimalarials (mefloquine)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **itraconazole**, **posaconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **antimalarials (mefloquine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **posaconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Itraconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **apixaban**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ketoconazole** slightly to moderately increases the exposure to **apixaban**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **aprepitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **isavuconazole**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study



## Antifungals, azoles (continued)

- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, non-selective (nadolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **beta<sub>2</sub> agonists (salmeteterol)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) slightly increase the exposure to **bortezomib**. [Moderate] Study
- Fluconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Itraconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosentan**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Ketoconazole** moderately increases the exposure to **bosentan**. [Moderate] Study
- Voriconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Isavuconazole** slightly increases the exposure to **bupropion**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Adjust **bupirone** dose. [Severe] Study
- Miconazole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) slightly increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **isavuconazole**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Miconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, clevindipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine, verapamil)**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Fluconazole** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Posaconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (lercanidipine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid or adjust **ceritinib** dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **posaconazole**, **voriconazole**) increase the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- Miconazole** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **cilostazol**. Adjust **cilostazol** dose. [Moderate] Study
- Fluconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cilostazol**. Adjust **cilostazol** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Miconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cilostazol**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **voriconazole**) potentially increase the exposure to **clobazam**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Fluconazole** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **clodigrel**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Voriconazole** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **clodigrel**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **posaconazole**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- Cobicistat** is predicted to affect the exposure to **voriconazole**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **miconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Study
- Corticosteroids (prednisone)** potentially decrease the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (beclometasone)** (risk with beclometasone is likely to be lower than with other corticosteroids). [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (betamethasone, budesonide, ciclesonide, deflazacort, dexamethasone, fludrocortisone, fluticasone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, mometasone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone)**. Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- Miconazole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **corticosteroids (methylprednisolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (methylprednisolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Fluconazole** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Itraconazole** potentially increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ketoconazole** potentially increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins (warfarin)**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Miconazole** greatly increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. MHRA advises avoid unless INR can be monitored closely; monitor for signs of bleeding. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Itraconazole** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Isavuconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Adjust **daclatasvir** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole**) are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) very slightly increase the exposure to **delamanid**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole, voriconazole**) moderately increase the exposure to **diazepam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Didanosine** (buffered) decreases the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole**). Separate administration by 2 hours. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Isavuconazole** slightly increases the exposure to **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Itraconazole** is predicted to markedly increase the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ketoconazole** is predicted to markedly increase the concentration of **digoxin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Posaconazole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **digoxin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole, isavuconazole, itraconazole, ketoconazole, posaconazole, voriconazole**) increase the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) increase the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole, isavuconazole, itraconazole, ketoconazole, posaconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **dopamine receptor agonists (cabergoline)**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ketoconazole** moderately increases the exposure to **drosiprenone**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Itraconazole** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ketoconazole** slightly increases the exposure to **edoxaban**. Adjust **edoxaban** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** slightly decreases the exposure to **itraconazole**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **efavirenz**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** moderately decreases the exposure to **ketoconazole**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** slightly decreases the exposure to **posaconazole**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** moderately decreases the exposure to **voriconazole** and **voriconazole** slightly increases the exposure to **efavirenz**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) slightly to moderately increase the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eletriptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole, isavuconazole, itraconazole, ketoconazole, posaconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Miconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergometrine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Miconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **foseterodine**. Adjust **foseterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **foseterodine**. Adjust **foseterodine** dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **fosaprepitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **gefitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **gefitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole**) potentially increase the exposure to **glecaprevir**. [Moderate] Theoretical

## Antifungals, azoles (continued)

- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to moderately to markedly increase the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **itraconazole**. Administer **itraconazole** capsules with an acidic beverage. [Moderate] Study
- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **ketoconazole**. Administer **ketoconazole** with an acidic beverage. [Moderate] Study
- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **posaconazole**. Avoid use of **posaconazole** oral suspension. [Moderate] Study
- Itraconazole** increases the concentration of **haloperidol**. [Moderate] Study
- Fluconazole** slightly increases the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors** (**tipranavir**). Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **itraconazole**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ketoconazole**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Miconazole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **HIV-protease inhibitors**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Posaconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors**. [Moderate] Study
- HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to affect the exposure to **voriconazole** and **voriconazole** potentially affects the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Adjust **ibrutinib** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **ibrutinib** dose. [Severe] Study
- Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- Imatinib** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **isavuconazole**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** p. 186 or **lumacaftor** with **ivacaftor** p. 187 dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- Lanthanum** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **ketoconazole**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical

- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- Clotrimazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **posaconazole**, **voriconazole**). Avoid or monitor efficacy. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fluconazole**. Adjust dose. [Mild] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **macitentan**. [Moderate] Study
- Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- Macrolides** (**erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **isavuconazole**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- Metoclopramide** potentially decreases the absorption of **posaconazole** (oral suspension). [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- Miconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to intravenous **midazolam**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Miconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to oral **midazolam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **mirabegron**. Adjust **mirabegron** dose in hepatic and renal impairment. [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **mirtazapine**. [Moderate] Study
- Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **modafinil**. [Mild] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**) increase the risk of neutropenia when given with **monoclonal antibodies** (**brentuximab vedotin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **monoclonal antibodies** (**trastuzumab emtansine**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Isavuconazole** increases the exposure to **mycophenolate**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **isavuconazole**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fluconazole** slightly to moderately increases the exposure to **nevirapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** moderately decreases the exposure to **itraconazole**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **nevirapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** moderately decreases the exposure to **ketoconazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **voriconazole** and **voriconazole** increases the exposure to **nevirapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **nitisone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fluconazole** moderately increases the exposure to **NSAIDs** (**celecoxib**). Adjust **celecoxib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Voriconazole** slightly increases the exposure to **NSAIDs** (**diclofenac**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Voriconazole** moderately increases the exposure to **NSAIDs** (**ibuprofen**). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Fluconazole** increases the exposure to **NSAIDs** (**parecoxib**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Miconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids** (**alfentanil**). Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids** (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids** (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**, **sufentanil**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids** (**methadone**). Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids** (**methadone**, **sufentanil**). [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **palbociclib**. Avoid or adjust **palbociclib** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **panobinostat**. Adjust **panobinostat** dose; in hepatic impairment avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Posaconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **panobinostat**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Posaconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) and **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) is predicted to increase the exposure to **posaconazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid or adjust **pazopanib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Miconazole** greatly increases the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**avanafil**). Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**avanafil**, **ildenafil**). Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Miconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**sildenafil**). Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**sildenafil**). Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**sildenafil**). Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **sildenafil** dose, p. 120. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**tadalafil**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**tadalafil**). Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**ildenafil**). Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**) potentially increase the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Miconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pioglitazone** potentially decreases the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **ponatinib**. Monitor and adjust **ponatinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **praziquantel**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** decrease the absorption of **itraconazole**. Administer **itraconazole** capsules with an acidic beverage. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** decrease the absorption of **ketoconazole**. Administer **ketoconazole** with an acidic beverage. [Moderate] Study



## Antifungals, azoles (continued)

- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** decrease the absorption of **posaconazole** (oral suspension). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Voriconazole** increases the exposure to **proton pump inhibitors** (**esomeprazole**, **omeprazole**). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **reboxetine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Miconazole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **reboxetine**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **regorafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **repaglinide**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **miconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **retinoids** (**alitretinoin**). Adjust alitretinoin dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the risk of tretinoin toxicity when given with **retinoids** (**tretinoin**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid or adjust **ribociclib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **posaconazole**) increase the concentration of **rifabutin** and **rifabutin** decreases the concentration of antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **posaconazole**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fluconazole** increases the risk of uveitis when given with **rifabutin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ketoconazole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **rifabutin** and **rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **ketoconazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Miconazole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **rifabutin**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifabutin** decreases the concentration of **voriconazole** and **voriconazole** increases the concentration of **rifabutin**. Avoid or adjust **voriconazole** dose, p. 377. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to **fluconazole**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly decreases the exposure to **itraconazole**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **rifampicin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly decreases the exposure to **ketoconazole** and **ketoconazole** potentially decreases the exposure to **rifampicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Posaconazole** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **posaconazole**. Avoid. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifampicin** very markedly decreases the exposure to **voriconazole**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Itraconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **riociguat**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Ketoconazole** moderately increases the exposure to **riociguat**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **rivaroxaban**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ruixolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ruixolitinib**. Adjust dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Fluconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **selexipag**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **posaconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Miconazole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Oral **sodium bicarbonate** decreases the absorption of **ketoconazole**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **solifenacin**. Adjust **solifenacin** or **tamsulosin** with **solifenacin** dose; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Voriconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs** (**citalopram**). [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs** (**dapoxetine**). Adjust **dapoxetine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **SSRIs** (**dapoxetine**). Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **dapoxetine** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **isavuconazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** moderately decreases the exposure to **voriconazole**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Miconazole** potentially increases the exposure to **statins** (**atorvastatin**). [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**atorvastatin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**atorvastatin**). Avoid or adjust dose and monitor rhabdomyolysis. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **miconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**fluvastatin**). [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Miconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**simvastatin**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**simvastatin**). Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**simvastatin**). Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847



- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **miconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **sulfonyleureas**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - Voriconazole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **sulfonyleureas**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - Miconazole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Miconazole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **taxanes (docetaxel)**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **taxanes (docetaxel)**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (paclitaxel)**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Adjust **tofacitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
  - Isavuconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
  - Posaconazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **toremifene**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **trazodone**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Severe] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **vemurafenib**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **posaconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - Miconazole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **vinca alkaloids**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**clotrimazole**, **ketoconazole**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **vitamin D substances (colecalciferol)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **vitamin D substances (paricalcitol)**. [Moderate] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antihistamines, non-sedating** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- acrivastine • azelastine • bilastine • cetirizine • desloratadine • fexofenadine • levocetirizine • loratadine • mizolastine • rupatadine
- FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Apple juice and orange juice decrease the exposure to fexofenadine.
- Antacids** decrease the absorption of **fexofenadine**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Mild] Study
  - Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **rupatadine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to antihistamines, non-sedating (**fexofenadine**, **mizolastine**). [Severe] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **posaconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **rupatadine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**miconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **rupatadine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - Antihistamines, non-sedating** are predicted to decrease the effects of **betahistine**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Antihistamines, non-sedating** (continued)

- **Calcium channel blockers** (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Calcium channel blockers** (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **rupatadine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fexofenadine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **rupatadine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **rupatadine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **Mizolastine** is predicted to increase the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **drugs that prolong the QT interval**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fexofenadine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - **Grapefruit juice** slightly decreases the exposure to **bilastine**. **Bilastine** should be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after **grapefruit juice**. [Moderate] Study
  - **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **rupatadine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **rupatadine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **rupatadine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **rupatadine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fexofenadine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**, **erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **rupatadine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **Macrolides** (**erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fexofenadine**. [Mild] Theoretical
  - **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when given with **antihistamines, non-sedating**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **rupatadine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mizolastine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **rupatadine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bilastine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - **Rifampicin** increases the clearance of **fexofenadine**. [Moderate] Study
  - **Velpatasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fexofenadine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Antihistamines, sedating** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects), TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

alimemazine • antazoline • buclizine • chlorphenamine • cinnarizine • clemastine • cyclizine • cyproheptadine • hydroxyzine • ketotifen • pizotifen • promethazine

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application of **ketotifen**, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- **Hydroxyzine** potentially increases the risk of overheating and dehydration when given with **antiepileptics** (**zonisamide**). Avoid in children. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Antihistamines, sedating** are predicted to decrease the effects of **betahistine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Cyproheptadine** decreases the effects of **metypapone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when given with **antihistamines, sedating**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Antihistamines, sedating** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **pitolisant**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- **Cyproheptadine** potentially decreases the effects of **SSRIs**. [Moderate] Anecdotal

**Antimalarials** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

artemether • arteminol • atovaquone • chloroquine • lumefantrine • mefloquine • piperaquine • primaquine • proguanil • pyrimethamine • quinine

**PHARMACOLOGY** Piperaquine has a long half-life; there is a potential for drug interactions to occur for up to 3 months after treatment has been stopped.

- **Chloroquine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **agalsidase**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antimalarials (**chloroquine**, **primaquine**) are predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **anaesthetics, local** (**prilocaine**). Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **chloroquine**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Study
- **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **proguanil**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- **Antiarrhythmics** (**dronedaron**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **piperaquine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Antiepileptics** (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **artemether** (with lumefantrine). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Antiepileptics** (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **piperaquine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Antiepileptics** (**carbamazepine**, **phenobarbital**, **primidone**) potentially increase the risk of toxicity when given with **quinine**. [Unknown] Study
- **Pyrimethamine** increases the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **antiepileptics** (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). [Severe] Study
- **Pyrimethamine** is predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **antiepileptics** (**phenobarbital**, **primidone**). [Severe] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **posaconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **piperaquine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **itraconazole**, **posaconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **mefloquine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**ketoconazole**) increase the exposure to **mefloquine**. [Moderate] Study
- Antimalarials (**proguanil**) are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with antimalarials (**pyrimethamine**). [Severe] Theoretical
- **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **piperaquine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Mefloquine** is predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **beta blockers, non-selective**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Mefloquine** is predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **beta blockers, selective**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Mefloquine** is predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **calcium channel blockers**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Calcium channel blockers** (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **piperaquine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Calcium salts** (**calcium carbonate**) decrease the absorption of **chloroquine**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Calcium salts (calcium carbonate)** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **proguanil**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Chloroquine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of oral **cholera vaccine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the concentration of **piperazine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **piperazine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antimalarials (**chloroquine**, **primaquine**) are predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mefloquine** is predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **digoxin**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Quinine** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust **digoxin** dose, p. 81. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Mefloquine** is predicted to increase the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **drugs that prolong the QT interval**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** decreases the concentration of **artemether**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Efavirenz** moderately decreases the exposure to **atovaquone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** affects the exposure to **proguanil**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **artemether** (with lumefantrine). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **piperazine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Etravirine** decreases the exposure to **artemether**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **artemether**. [Unknown] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the concentration of **piperazine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** decrease the clearance of **chloroquine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** slightly increase the exposure to **quinine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** decrease the exposure to **atovaquone**. Avoid if boosted with ritonavir. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of **piperazine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **proguanil**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to affect the exposure to **quinine**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **piperazine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **piperazine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lanthanum** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **chloroquine**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Chloroquine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **laronidase**. Avoid simultaneous administration. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **piperazine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mepacrine** is predicted to increase the concentration of **primaquine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pyrimethamine** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **methotrexate**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Metoclopramide** decreases the concentration of **atovaquone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **artemether** (with lumefantrine). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **piperazine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **piperazine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **piperazine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pyrimethamine** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **pemetrexed**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Chloroquine** is predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **penicillamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Chloroquine** moderately decreases the exposure to **praziquantel**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Chloroquine** decreases the efficacy of **rabies vaccine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifabutin** slightly decreases the exposure to **atovaquone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **artemether** (with lumefantrine). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **atovaquone** and **atovaquone** slightly increases the exposure to **rifampicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **mefloquine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **piperazine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **quinine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **piperazine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pyrimethamine** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **sulfonamides**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Tetracyclines (tetracycline)** decrease the concentration of **atovaquone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pyrimethamine** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **trimethoprim**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Pyrimethamine** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **zidovudine**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- Apixaban** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **apixaban**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **apixaban**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **apixaban**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)** slightly to moderately increase the exposure to **apixaban**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **apixaban**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **apixaban**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **apixaban**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **apixaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **apixaban**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **apixaban**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **apixaban**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **apixaban**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Apomorphine** → see dopamine receptor agonists
- Apraclonidine** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Amfetamines** are predicted to decrease the effects of **apraclonidine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Methyphenidate** is predicted to decrease the effects of **apraclonidine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sympathomimetics, inotropic** are predicted to decrease the effects of **apraclonidine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor** are predicted to decrease the effects of **apraclonidine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Apremilast**
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** moderately decrease the exposure to **apremilast**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

## Apremilast (continued)

- ▶ **Enzalutamide** moderately decreases the exposure to **apremilast**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** moderately decreases the exposure to **apremilast**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **apremilast**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **apremilast**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

## Aprepitant

- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (tamsulosin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** increases the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (dronedrone)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **aprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **aprepitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (rupatadine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **buspirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **aprepitant** and **aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **aprepitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** moderately increases the exposure to **corticosteroids (dexamethasone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (methylprednisolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** decreases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **dopamine receptor agonists (cabergoline)**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **aprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **gefitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **aprepitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to decrease the effects of **hormone replacement therapy**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Adjust **ibrutinib** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **aprepitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **aprepitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **aprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical



- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids** (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids** (**methadone**, **sufentanil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**avanafil**). Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**sildenafil**). Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**tadalafil**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** (**ildenafil**). Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **aprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs** (**dapoxetine**). Adjust **dapoxetine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **aprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**atorvastatin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**simvastatin**). Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes** (**cabazitaxel**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Argatroban** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)
- ▶ **Ranibizumab** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **argatroban**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Aripiprazole** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics** (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to increase the risk of bleeding the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - ▶ **Antifungals**, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Bupropion** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Aripiprazole** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Aripiprazole** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **SSRIs** (**fluoxetine**, **paroxetine**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
- Arsenic trioxide** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- Artemether** → see antimalarials
- Artemimol** → see antimalarials
- Articaine** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- Ascorbic acid**
  - ▶ **Ascorbic acid** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **deferiprone**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ascorbic acid** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **iron chelators** (**desferrioxamine**). [Severe] Theoretical
- Asenapine** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
  - ▶ **Asenapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Asenapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **SSRIs** (**fluvoxamine**) increase the exposure to **asenapine**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **SSRIs** (**paroxetine**) moderately increase the exposure to **asenapine**. [Moderate] Study
- Asparaginase** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)



**Asparaginase (continued)**

- ▶ **Asparaginase** is predicted to increase the risk of hepatotoxicity when given with **imatinib**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Asparaginase** affects the efficacy of **methotrexate**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Asparaginase** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **vinca alkaloids (vincristine)**. Vincristine should be taken 3 to 24 hours before **asparaginase**, p. 550. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- Aspirin** → see TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)
- ▶ **Acetazolamide** increases the risk of severe toxic reaction when given with **aspirin** (high-dose). [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Acids** decrease the absorption of **aspirin** (high-dose). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aspirin** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal irritation when given with **bisphosphonates (alendronic acid, ibandronic acid)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aspirin** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the risk of renal impairment when given with **bisphosphonates (sodium clodronate)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **aspirin** (high-dose) and **aspirin** (high-dose) increases the risk of gastrointestinal bleeding when given with **corticosteroids**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aspirin** (high-dose) increases the risk of renal impairment when given with **daptomycin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Erlotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal perforation when given with **aspirin** (high-dose). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aspirin** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal bleeds when given with **iron chelators (deferasirox)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aspirin** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **methotrexate**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aspirin** is predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal perforation when given with **nicorandil**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aspirin** (high-dose) potentially increases the exposure to **pemetrexed**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aspirin** decreases the effects of **sulfinpyrazone**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
- ▶ **Aspirin** (high-dose) increases the risk of acute renal failure when given with **thiazide diuretics**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Zidovudine** increases the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **aspirin** (high-dose). [Severe] Study

**Ataluren**

- ▶ **Ataluren** increases the exposure to **adefovir**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ataluren** is predicted to increase the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with intravenous **aminoglycosides**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **ataluren**. [Moderate] Study
- Atazanavir** → see HIV-protease inhibitors
- Atenolol** → see beta blockers, selective
- Atezolizumab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Atomoxetine**

- ▶ **Amfetamines** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **atomoxetine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Atomoxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta<sub>2</sub> agonists** (high-dose). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bupropion** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **atomoxetine**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **atomoxetine**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **atomoxetine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **atomoxetine**. Avoid and for 2 weeks after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Panobinostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **atomoxetine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **atomoxetine**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **atomoxetine**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- Atorvastatin** → see statins
- Atovaquone** → see antimalarials
- Atracurium** → see neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising
- Atropine** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)
- ▶ **Atropine** increases the risk of severe hypertension when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (phenylephrine)**. [Severe] Study
- Avanafil** → see phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors
- Avelumab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Axitinib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Axitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Axitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Azacitidine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

**Azathioprine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- ▶ **ACE inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of anaemia and/or leucopenia when given with **azathioprine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Allopurinol** potentially increases the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **azathioprine**. Adjust **azathioprine** dose, p. 518. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Azathioprine** decreases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Study

- **Febuxostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to azathioprine. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with azathioprine (high-dose). Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- Azelastine** → see antihistamines, non-sedating
- Azilsartan** → see angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Azithromycin** → see macrolides
- Bacillus Calmette-Guérin vaccine** → see live vaccines
- Bacitracin** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity)
- Baclofen** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects), TABLE 10 p. 849 (antismuscarinics)
- **Baclofen** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **levodopa**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- Balsalazide** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- **Balsalazide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Bambuterol** → see beta<sub>2</sub> agonists
- Baricitinib**
  - **Leflunomide** potentially increases the exposure to baricitinib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with baricitinib. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Teriflunomide** potentially increases the exposure to baricitinib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Basiliximab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Bazedoxifene**
  - Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to bazedoxifene. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to bazedoxifene. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Beclomethasone** → see corticosteroids
- Bedaquiline** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) decrease the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical
- **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical
- **Clofazimine** potentially increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with bedaquiline. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Study
- **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Enzalutamide** decreases the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Study
- **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical

- **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Mitotane** decreases the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical
- **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to bedaquiline. Avoid. [Severe] Study

#### Bee venom extract

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Desensitising vaccines should be avoided in patients taking beta-blockers (adrenaline might be ineffective in case of a hypersensitivity reaction) or ACE inhibitors (risk of severe anaphylactoid reactions).

#### Belatacept

- **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with belatacept. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- Belimumab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Bendamustine** → see alkylating agents
- Bendroflumethiazide** → see thiazide diuretics
- Benperidol** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- **Benperidol** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- **Benperidol** is predicted to decrease the effects of **guanethidine**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- **Benperidol** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- Benralizumab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Benzydamine** → see NSAIDs
- Benzylenicillin** → see penicillins

**Beta blockers, non-selective** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

carvedilol · labetalol · levobunolol · nadolol · oxprenolol · pindolol · propranolol · sotalol · timolol

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application of **levobunolol** and **timolol**, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- **Beta blockers, non-selective** are predicted to increase the risk of bronchospasm when given with **aminophylline**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, disopyramide, dronedarone, flecainide, lidocaine)** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, non-selective**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Antiarrhythmics (propafenone)** increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **propranolol**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Antiarrhythmics (propafenone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **timolol** and **timolol** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- **Antiarrhythmics (propafenone)** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, non-selective (labetalol, levobunolol, nadolol, oxprenolol, pindolol, sotalol)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Anticholinesterases, centrally acting** are predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **beta blockers, non-selective**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848

**Beta blockers, non-selective** (continued)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **propranolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to beta blockers, non-selective (**carvedilol, labetalol**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nadolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antimalarials (mefloquine)** are predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **beta blockers, non-selective**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem)** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with **beta blockers, non-selective**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ Intravenous **calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, non-selective**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ Oral **calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, non-selective**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nadolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **propranolol**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective** are predicted to increase the risk of peripheral vasoconstriction when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective** are predicted to increase the risk of peripheral vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nadolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective** are predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **lanreotide**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nadolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nadolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nadolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **carvedilol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **propranolol**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Propranolol** slightly to moderately increases the exposure to **rizatriptan**. Adjust rizatriptan dose and separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** moderately increase the concentration of **propranolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective** increase the risk of hypertension and bradycardia when given with **sympathomimetics, inotropic (dobutamine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective** are predicted to increase the risk of hypertension and bradycardia when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (adrenaline/epinephrine, noradrenaline/norepinephrine)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective** are predicted to increase the risk of bronchospasm when given with **theophylline**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Vemurafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nadolol**. [Moderate] Study

**Beta blockers, selective** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)

acebutolol • atenolol • betaxolol • bisoprolol • celiprolol • esmolol • metoprolol • nebivolol

- ▶ Since systemic absorption can follow topical application of **betaxolol**, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.
- ▶ Orange juice greatly decreases the exposure to **celiprolol**.
- ▶ **Abiraterone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **metoprolol**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** are predicted to increase the risk of bronchospasm when given with **aminophylline**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, disopyramide, dronedarone, flecainide, lidocaine)** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, selective**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (propafenone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **metoprolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (propafenone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nebivolol** and **nebivolol** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (propafenone)** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, selective (acebutolol, atenolol, betaxolol, bisoprolol, celiprolol, esmolol)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Anticholinesterases, centrally acting** are predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **beta blockers, selective**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (acebutolol, bisoprolol, metoprolol, nebivolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antimalarials (mefloquine)** are predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **beta blockers, selective**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (metoprolol, nebivolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem)** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with **beta blockers, selective**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ Intravenous **calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, selective**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ Oral **calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, selective**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (metoprolol, nebivolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Duloxetine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **metoprolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **metoprolol**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** are predicted to increase the risk of peripheral vasoconstriction when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** are predicted to increase the risk of peripheral vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** greatly decreases the exposure to **celiprolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **metoprolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** are predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **lanreotide**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **metoprolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Panobinostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **metoprolol**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Panobinostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nebivolol**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (bisoprolol, metoprolol)**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **celiprolol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **metoprolol**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (metoprolol, nebivolol)**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** increase the risk of hypertension and bradycardia when given with **sympathomimetics, inotropic (dobutamine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** are predicted to increase the risk of hypertension and bradycardia when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (adrenaline/epinephrine, noradrenaline/norepinephrine)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to beta blockers, selective (**metoprolol, nebivolol**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** are predicted to increase the risk of bronchospasm when given with **theophylline**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Beta<sub>2</sub> agonists** → see TABLE 17 p. 851 (reduced serum potassium)

bambuterol • formoterol • indacaterol • olodaterol • salbutamol • salmeterol • terbutaline • vilanterol

- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **salmeterol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Atomoxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta<sub>2</sub> agonists** (high-dose). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **salmeterol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **salmeterol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **salmeterol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Beta<sub>2</sub> agonists** are predicted to increase the risk of glaucoma when given with **ipratropium**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Beta<sub>2</sub> agonists** are predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **salmeterol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta<sub>2</sub> agonists**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline, selegiline)** are predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **beta<sub>2</sub> agonists**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (safinamide)** are predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **beta<sub>2</sub> agonists**. [Severe] Theoretical

#### Betahistine

- ▶ **Antihistamines, non-sedating** are predicted to decrease the effects of **betahistine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antihistamines, sedating** are predicted to decrease the effects of **betahistine**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Betamethasone** → see corticosteroids

**Betaxolol** → see beta blockers, selective

**Bevacizumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

**Bexarotene** → see retinoids

**Bezafibrate** → see fibrates

#### Bicalutamide

- ▶ **Bicalutamide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Bilastine** → see antihistamines, non-sedating

**Bisoprolol** → see beta blockers, selective

**Bisphosphonates** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity)

alendronic acid • ibandronic acid • pamidronate • risedronate • sodium clodronate • zoledronic acid

- ▶ **Aminoglycosides** increase the risk of hypocalcaemia when given with **bisphosphonates**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **alendronic acid**. **Alendronic acid** should be taken at least 30 minutes before antacids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **ibandronic acid**. Avoid antacids for at least 6 hours before or 1 hour after **ibandronic acid**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **risedronate**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **sodium clodronate**. Avoid antacids for 2 hours before or 1 hour after **sodium clodronate**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aspirin** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal irritation when given with **bisphosphonates (alendronic acid, ibandronic acid)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aspirin** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the risk of renal impairment when given with **sodium clodronate**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Oral **calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **alendronic acid**. **Alendronic acid** should be taken at least 30 minutes before **calcium salts**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Oral **calcium salts** are predicted to decrease the absorption of oral **ibandronic acid**. Avoid **calcium salts** for at least 6 hours before or 1 hour after **ibandronic acid**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Oral **calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **risedronate**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Oral **calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **sodium clodronate**. Avoid **calcium salts** for 2 hours before or 1 hour after **sodium clodronate**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** is predicted to decrease the absorption of oral **ibandronic acid**. Avoid **iron (oral)** for at least 6 hours before or 1 hour after **ibandronic acid**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the absorption of **risedronate**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the absorption of **sodium clodronate**. Avoid **iron (oral)** for 2 hours before or 1 hour after **sodium clodronate**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bisphosphonates** are predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal bleeding when given with **iron chelators (deferasirox)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Oral **magnesium** decreases the absorption of **alendronic acid**. **Alendronic acid** should be taken at least 30 minutes before **magnesium**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Oral **magnesium** is predicted to decrease the absorption of oral **ibandronic acid**. Avoid **magnesium** for at least 6 hours before or 1 hour after **ibandronic acid**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Oral **magnesium** decreases the absorption of **risedronate**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Oral **magnesium** decreases the absorption of **sodium clodronate**. Avoid **magnesium** for 2 hours before or 1 hour after **sodium clodronate**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs** are predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal irritation when given with **bisphosphonates (alendronic acid, ibandronic acid)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs** are predicted to increase the risk of renal impairment when given with **sodium clodronate**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bisphosphonates** are predicted to decrease the effects of **parathyroid hormone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Oral **zinc** decreases the absorption of oral **alendronic acid**. **Zinc** should be taken at least 30 minutes before **alendronic acid**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Oral **zinc** is predicted to decrease the absorption of oral **ibandronic acid**. Avoid **zinc** for at least 6 hours before or 1 hour after **ibandronic acid**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Oral **zinc** decreases the absorption of oral **risedronate**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Oral **zinc** decreases the absorption of oral **sodium clodronate**. Avoid **zinc** for 2 hours before or 1 hour after **sodium clodronate**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bivalirudin** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)
- ▶ **Ranibizumab** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **bivalirudin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bleomycin** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **bleomycin**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (brentuximab vedotin)** increase the risk of pulmonary toxicity when given with **bleomycin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Platinum compounds (cisplatin)** increase the risk of pulmonary toxicity when given with **bleomycin**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850



**Blinatumomab** → see monoclonal antibodies

**Bortezomib** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy)

- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) slightly decrease the exposure to **bortezomib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) slightly increase the exposure to **bortezomib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** slightly increases the exposure to **bortezomib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** slightly decreases the exposure to **bortezomib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** slightly increase the exposure to **bortezomib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** slightly increases the exposure to **bortezomib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) slightly increase the exposure to **bortezomib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** slightly decreases the exposure to **bortezomib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to **bortezomib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

## Bosentan

- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to antiarrhythmics (**dronedaron**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) affect the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bosentan**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**ketoconazole**) moderately increase the exposure to **bosentan**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**isavuconazole**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine**, **felodipine**, **lacidipine**, **lercanidipine**, **nicardipine**, **nifedipine**, **nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Cephalosporins (**ceftibiprole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bosentan**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** moderately decreases the exposure to **ciclosporin** and **ciclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of combined hormonal contraceptives. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** decreases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Adjust **daclatasvir** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** affects the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **gefitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **bosentan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the effects of hormone replacement therapy. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **idelalisib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lurasidone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bosentan**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **maraviroc**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **midazolam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** affects the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** decreases the exposure to opioids (**methadone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **osimertinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with **ritonavir** and **ombitasvir**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** decreases the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study



- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**.  
[Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** affects the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**.  
Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rolapitant**.  
Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**.  
Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**.  
Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus** and **sirolimus** potentially increases the concentration of **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** slightly decreases the exposure to **statins** (**atorvastatin**). [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** moderately decreases the exposure to **statins** (**simvastatin**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** increases the risk of hepatotoxicity when given with **sulfonylureas** (**glibenclamide**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **tacrolimus** and **tacrolimus** potentially increases the concentration of **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes** (**cabazitaxel**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**.  
[Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacinib**.  
[Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**.  
[Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **velpatasvir**.  
Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**.  
Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Bosutinib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **bosutinib**.  
**Bosutinib** should be taken at least 12 hours before antacids.  
[Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics** (**dronedarone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics** (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to very markedly decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals**, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals**, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **bosutinib**.  
Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**.  
Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**.  
Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers** (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose.  
[Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosutinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**.  
Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**.  
Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to very markedly decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**.  
Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **bosutinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**.  
Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides** (**erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to very markedly decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**.  
Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**.  
Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**.  
Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**.  
Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Bosutinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**.  
Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **bosutinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to very markedly decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**.  
Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Botulinum toxin type A** → see TABLE 20 p. 851 (neuromuscular blocking effects)
- Botulinum toxin type B** → see TABLE 20 p. 851 (neuromuscular blocking effects)
- Bowel cleansing preparations**

**SEPARATION OF ADMINISTRATION** Other oral drugs should not be taken 1 hour before, or after, administration of bowel cleansing preparations because absorption may be impaired. Consider withholding ACE inhibitors, angiotensin-II receptor antagonists, and NSAIDs on the day that bowel cleansing preparations are given and for up to 72 hours after the procedure. Also consider withholding diuretics on the day that bowel cleansing preparations are given.

**Brentuximab vedotin** → see monoclonal antibodies

**Brimonidine** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

**Brinzolamide**

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

**Brivaracetam** → see antiepileptics

**Brodalumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

**Bromfenac** → see NSAIDs

**Bromocriptine** → see dopamine receptor agonists

**Bucazine** → see antihistamines, sedating

**Budesonide** → see corticosteroids

**Bumetanide** → see loop diuretics

**Bupivacaine** → see anaesthetics, local

**Buprenorphine** → see opioids

**Bupropion** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)

► **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the exposure to anticholinesterases, centrally acting (**galantamine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

► Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **bupropion**. [Severe] Study

► Antiepileptics (**valproate**) increase the exposure to **bupropion**. [Severe] Study

► Antifungals, azoles (**isavuconazole**) slightly increase the exposure to **bupropion**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

► **Bupropion** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study

► **Bupropion** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **atomoxetine**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study

► **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers**, selective (**metoprolol**, **nebivolol**). [Moderate] Study

► **Bupropion** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Mild] Study

► **Bupropion** increases the risk of side-effects when given with dopamine receptor agonists (**amantadine**). [Moderate] Study

► **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bupropion**. [Moderate] Study

► **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study

► HIV-protease inhibitors (**ritonavir**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **bupropion**. [Moderate] Study

► **Bupropion** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **levodopa**. [Moderate] Study

► **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the risk of intraoperative hypertension when given with **linezolid**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

► **Methylthionium chloride** is predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **bupropion**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

► **Moclobemide** is predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **bupropion**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

► Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible are predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **bupropion**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

► Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors are predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **bupropion**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

► **Bupropion** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of opioids (**codeine**). [Moderate] Theoretical

► **Bupropion** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of opioids (**tramadol**). [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

► **Bupropion** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

► **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bupropion**. [Moderate] Study

► **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

► **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the exposure to SSRIs (**dapoxetine**). [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

► **Bupropion** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **tamoxifen**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

► **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. Monitor for toxicity and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

► **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vortioxetine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

**Buspiron** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)

► Antiarrhythmics (**dronedarone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

► Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

► Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

► Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Adjust **bupirone** dose. [Severe] Study

► Antifungals, azoles (**miconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

► **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

► Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

► **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Adjust **bupirone** dose. [Severe] Study

► **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

► **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

► **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **bupirone**. Avoid. [Mild] Study

► HIV-protease inhibitors are predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Adjust **bupirone** dose. [Severe] Study

► **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Adjust **bupirone** dose. [Severe] Study

► **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

► **Bupirone** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

► Macrolides (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Adjust **bupirone** dose. [Severe] Study

► Macrolides (**erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

► **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

► **Bupirone** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors**, irreversible. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

► **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

► **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

► **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bupirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

**Busulfan** → see alkylating agents

**Cabazitaxel** → see taxanes

**Cabergoline** → see dopamine receptor agonists

**Cabozantinib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

► Antiarrhythmics (**dronedarone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

► Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) moderately decrease the exposure to **cabozantinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

► Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

► Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) slightly increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

► **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical

► **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical

► Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- **Cobicistat** slightly increases the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Study
- **Cabozantinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Enzalutamide** moderately decreases the exposure to **cabozantinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** slightly increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Idelalisib** slightly increases the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** slightly increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Mitotane** moderately decreases the exposure to **cabozantinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Cabozantinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **cabozantinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical

#### Caffeine citrate

- **Caffeine citrate** decreases the efficacy of **antiarrhythmics (adenosine)**. Separate administration by 24 hours. [Mild] Study
- **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to moderately increase the clearance of **caffeine citrate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to moderately increase the clearance of **caffeine citrate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Leflunomide** is predicted to moderately increase the clearance of **caffeine citrate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately increase the clearance of **caffeine citrate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** markedly decrease the clearance of **caffeine citrate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Teriflunomide** is predicted to moderately increase the clearance of **caffeine citrate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Caffeine citrate** decreases the clearance of **theophylline**. [Moderate] Study

**Calcipotriol** → see vitamin D substances

#### Calcitonin (salmon)

- **Calcitonin (salmon)** decreases the concentration of **lithium**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

**Calcitriol** → see vitamin D substances

**Calcium acetate** → see calcium salts

**Calcium carbonate** → see calcium salts

**Calcium channel blockers** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)

amlodipine • clevidipine • diltiazem • felodipine • lacidipine • lercanidipine • nicardipine • nifedipine • nimodipine • verapamil

- **Verapamil** is predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Adjust eplerenone dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

- **Verapamil** moderately increases the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (tamsulosin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [Severe] Study
- **Verapamil** moderately increases the exposure to **anthracyclines (doxorubicin)**. [Moderate] Study
- **Antiarrhythmics (disopyramide)** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with **verapamil**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** and **antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil). [Moderate] Study
- **Verapamil** increases the risk of cardiodepression when given with **antiarrhythmics (flecainide)**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **anticholinesterases, centrally acting**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Diltiazem** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** and **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **diltiazem**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- **Verapamil** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** and **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **verapamil**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil). [Severe] Study
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** potentially increase the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** and **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil). [Severe] Study
- **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lercanidipine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, clevidipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine, verapamil). Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole)** (high-dose) are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil). [Moderate] Theoretical

## Calcium channel blockers (continued)

- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (rupatadine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antimalarials (mefloquine)** are predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with calcium channel blockers. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **antimalarials (piperazine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Verapamil** is predicted to increase the exposure to **apixaban**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **aprepitant** and **aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Diltiazem** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with **beta blockers, non-selective**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ Intravenous **verapamil** increases the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, non-selective**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ Oral **verapamil** increases the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, non-selective**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Diltiazem** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiodepression when given with **beta blockers, selective**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ Intravenous **verapamil** increases the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, selective**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ Oral **verapamil** increases the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta blockers, selective**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **buprione**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem**) are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine,**

- felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem**) are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, nifedipine, verapamil**) increase the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **lercanidipine**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lercanidipine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust colchicine dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (methylprednisolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Verapamil** increases the exposure to **dabigatran**. Adjust dabigatran dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Intravenous **dantrolene** potentially increases the risk of acute hyperkalaemia and cardiovascular collapse when given with calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) increase the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) increase the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **dopamine receptor agonists (cabergoline)**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Verapamil** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [Severe] Study



- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [\[Mild\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Verapamil** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **figulimod**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 6](#) p. 848
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **gefinitib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** very slightly increases the exposure to **amlodipine**. Avoid. [\[Mild\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**nifedipine, verapamil**). Avoid. [\[Mild\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **felodipine**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lercanidipine**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **nicardipine**. [\[Mild\]](#) Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 8](#) p. 848
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** (high-dose) are predicted to increase the exposure to **lercanidipine**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** moderately increase the exposure to **nifedipine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** increase the exposure to **verapamil**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** slightly increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lercanidipine**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Adjust **ibrutinib** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lercanidipine**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinitib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study → Also see [TABLE 6](#) p. 848
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, lacidipine**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study → Also see [TABLE 8](#) p. 848
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lercanidipine**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **diltiazem**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **verapamil**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- ▶ Intravenous **magnesium** potentially increases the risk of hypotension when given with calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, clevidipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine, verapamil**) (in pregnant women). [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (tocilizumab)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ **Verapamil** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil, buprenorphine, fentanyl, oxycodone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study → Also see [TABLE 6](#) p. 848



**Calcium channel blockers** (continued)

- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (methadone, sufentanil)**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 6](#) p. 848
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [\[Mild\]](#) Theoretical
- Verapamil** is predicted to increase the exposure to **panobinostat**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil)**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 8](#) p. 848
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil)**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study → Also see [TABLE 8](#) p. 848
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (tadalafil)**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 8](#) p. 848
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (vardenafil)**. Adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 8](#) p. 848
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 8](#) p. 848
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study → Also see [TABLE 8](#) p. 848
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Rifampicin** greatly decreases the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **nifedipine**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **roxolitinib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [\[Mild\]](#) Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs (dapoxetine)**. Adjust **dapoxetine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Amlodipine** slightly increases the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [\[Mild\]](#) Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Sulfapyrazone** decreases the exposure to **verapamil**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical

- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Nicardipine** potentially increases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [\[Mild\]](#) Theoretical
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Verapamil** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Verapamil** is predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

**Calcium chloride** → see calcium salts

**Calcium gluconate** → see calcium salts

**Calcium lactate** → see calcium salts

**Calcium phosphate** → see calcium salts

**Calcium salts**

calcium acetate • calcium carbonate • calcium chloride • calcium gluconate • calcium lactate • calcium phosphate

**SEPARATION OF ADMINISTRATION** Calcium carbonate-containing antacids should preferably not be taken at the same time as other drugs since they might impair absorption. Antacids might damage enteric coatings designed to prevent dissolution in the stomach.

- Oral **calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **alkylating agents (estramustine)**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Calcium carbonate** decreases the absorption of **antimalarials (chloroquine)**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Calcium carbonate** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **antimalarials (proguanil)**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Oral **calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **bisphosphonates (alendronic acid)**. **Alendronic acid** should be taken at least 30 minutes before calcium salts. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Oral **calcium salts** are predicted to decrease the absorption of oral **bisphosphonates (ibandronic acid)**. Avoid calcium salts for at least 6 hours before or 1 hour after **ibandronic acid**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Oral **calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **bisphosphonates (risedronate)**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Oral **calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **bisphosphonates (sodium clodronate)**. Avoid calcium salts for 2 hours before or 1 hour after **sodium clodronate**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Cephalosporins (ceftriaxone)** increase the risk of cardio-respiratory arrest when given with **calcium chloride**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal
- Cephalosporins (ceftriaxone)** increase the risk of cardio-respiratory arrest when given with intravenous **calcium gluconate**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal

- ▶ Intravenous **calcium salts** increase the concentration of **digoxin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - ▶ Oral **calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **dolutegravir**. **Dolutegravir** should be taken 2 hours before or 6 hours after **calcium salts**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Oral **calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **eltrombopag**. **Eltrombopag** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **calcium salts**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Calcium carbonate** decreases the absorption of **hydroxychloroquine**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Calcium carbonate** decreases the absorption of **iron (oral)**. **Calcium carbonate** should be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after **iron (oral)**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Calcium carbonate** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Separate administration by 4 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Calcium carbonate** decreases the absorption of **quinolones (ciprofloxacin)**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Calcium carbonate** decreases the absorption of **quinolones (norfloxacin)**. **Norfloxacin** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **calcium carbonate**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Calcium carbonate** greatly decreases the exposure to **raltegravir** (high-dose). Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Calcium carbonate** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. **Calcium carbonate** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **rilpivirine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Calcium carbonate** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **tetracyclines**. Separate administration by 2 to 3 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Thiazide diuretics** increase the risk of hypercalcaemia when given with **calcium salts**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ Oral **calcium salts** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **thyroid hormones (levothyroxine)**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Calcium carbonate** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **velpatasvir**. Separate administration by 4 hours. [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - ▶ Oral **calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **zinc**. [Moderate] Study
- Canagliflozin** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **canagliflozin**. Adjust **canagliflozin** dose. [Moderate] Study
- Canakinumab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Candesartan** → see angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Cangrelor** → see TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)
- Cannabis extract** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Capecitabine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Allopurinol** is predicted to decrease the effects of **capecitabine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Capecitabine** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Capecitabine** increases the effects of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Folates** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **capecitabine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **capecitabine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **capecitabine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Metronidazole** is predicted to increase the risk of **capecitabine** toxicity when given with **capecitabine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Capreomycin** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 19 p. 851 (ototoxicity)
- Captopril** → see ACE inhibitors
- Carbamazepine** → see antiepileptics
- Carbapenems**
- ertapenem • imipenem • meropenem
- ▶ **Carbapenems** decrease the concentration of **antiepileptics (valproate)**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Ganciclovir** is predicted to increase the risk of seizures when given with **imipenem**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Valganciclovir** is predicted to increase the risk of seizures when given with **imipenem**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Carbidopa**
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **carbidopa**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Carbimazole** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Carbimazole** affects the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Carbimazole** decreases the effects of **metypapone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Carboplatin** → see platinum compounds
- Carfilzomib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- Carmustine** → see alkylating agents
- Carvedilol** → see beta blockers, non-selective
- Caspofungin**
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **caspofungin**. Adjust **caspofungin** dose, p. 372. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** slightly increases the exposure to **caspofungin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Corticosteroids (dexamethasone)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **caspofungin**. Adjust **caspofungin** dose, p. 372. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **caspofungin**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **caspofungin**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **caspofungin**. Adjust **caspofungin** dose, p. 372. [Moderate] Study
- Cefaclor** → see cephalosporins
- Cefadroxil** → see cephalosporins
- Cefalexin** → see cephalosporins
- Cefixime** → see cephalosporins
- Cefotaxime** → see cephalosporins
- Cefradine** → see cephalosporins
- Ceftaroline** → see cephalosporins
- Ceftazidime** → see cephalosporins
- Ceftobiprole** → see cephalosporins
- Ceftolozane** → see cephalosporins
- Ceftriaxone** → see cephalosporins
- Cefuroxime** → see cephalosporins
- Celecoxib** → see NSAIDs
- Celiprolol** → see beta blockers, selective
- Cephalosporins** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity)
- cefaclor • cefadroxil • cefalexin • cefixime • cefotaxime • cefradine • ceftaroline • ceftazidime • ceftobiprole • ceftolozane • ceftriaxone • cefuroxime
- ▶ **Ceftobiprole** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosentan**. [Moderate] Theoretical

## Cephalosporins (continued)

- ▶ **Ceftriaxone** increases the risk of cardio-respiratory arrest when given with **calcium salts (calcium chloride)**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ceftriaxone** increases the risk of cardio-respiratory arrest when given with intravenous **calcium salts (calcium gluconate)**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ceftriaxone** potentially increases the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ceftriaxone** potentially increases the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ceftobiprole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **statins**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceftobiprole** is predicted to increase the concentration of **sulfonylureas (glibenclamide)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Ceritinib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **ceritinib**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid or adjust **ceritinib** dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (fexofenadine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ciclosporin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid or adjust **ceritinib** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **coumarins (warfarin)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **digoxin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid or adjust **ceritinib** dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid or adjust **ceritinib** dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **loperamide**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid or adjust **ceritinib** dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **NSAIDs (celecoxib, diclofenac)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, fentanyl)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sulfonylureas (glimepiride)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tacrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (paclitaxel)**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- Certolizumab pegol** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Cetirizine** → see antihistamines, non-sedating
- Cetuximab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Chenodeoxycholic acid**
- ▶ Oral **antacids (aluminium hydroxide)** decrease the absorption of **chenodeoxycholic acid**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to affect the efficacy of **chenodeoxycholic acid**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to affect the efficacy of **chenodeoxycholic acid**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Oral **combined hormonal contraceptives** potentially decrease the efficacy of **chenodeoxycholic acid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sirolimus** is predicted to affect the efficacy of **chenodeoxycholic acid**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Chloral hydrate** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ Intravenous **loop diuretics (furosemide)** potentially increase the risk of sweating, variable blood pressure, and tachycardia when given after **chloral hydrate**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- Chlorambucil** → see alkylating agents
- Chloramphenicol**

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** decrease the concentration of **chloramphenicol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Intravenous **chloramphenicol** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** and **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** affect the concentration of intravenous **chloramphenicol**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Chloramphenicol** potentially increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Chloramphenicol** is predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Chloramphenicol** decreases the efficacy of intravenous **iron (injectable)**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Chloramphenicol** decreases the efficacy of oral **iron (oral)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **chloramphenicol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Chloramphenicol** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sulfonyleureas**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Chloramphenicol** increases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- Chlordiazepoxide** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Chlordiazepoxide** affects the concentration of **antiepileptics (phenytoin, phenytoin)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **chlordiazepoxide**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Chloroquine** → see antimalarials
- Chlorothiazide** → see TABLE 18 p. 851 (hyponatraemia), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 17 p. 851 (reduced serum potassium)
- Chlorphenamine** → see antihistamines, sedating
- Chlorpromazine** → see phenothiazines
- Chlortalidone** → see thiazide diuretics
- Cholera vaccine**
  - ▶ **Antimalarials (chloroquine)** decrease the efficacy of oral **cholera vaccine**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Hydroxychloroquine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of oral **cholera vaccine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Cholic acid**
  - ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **cholic acid**. Separate administration by 5 hours. [Mild] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital)** decrease the effects of **cholic acid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** affects the concentration of **cholic acid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- Choline salicylate**
  - ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **choline salicylate**. [Moderate] Study
- Ciclesonide** → see corticosteroids
- Ciclosporin** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)
 

- ▶ Pomelo juice is predicted to increase ciclosporin exposure, and purple grape juice is predicted to decrease ciclosporin exposure.
  - ▶ Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** markedly increases the exposure to **aliskiren**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 16 p. 851
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **ambrisentan**. Adjust **ambrisentan** dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the concentration of **anthracyclines (daunorubicin, doxorubicin, epirubicin, idarubicin, mitoxantrone)**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** increase the concentration of **ciclosporin**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** increase the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** decrease the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (oxcarbazepine)** decrease the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, itraconazole, ketoconazole, posaconazole, voriconazole)** increase the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** increase the concentration of **ciclosporin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Aprepitant** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, non-selective (nadolol)**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Bosentan** moderately decreases the exposure to **ciclosporin** and **ciclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, nifedipine, verapamil)** increase the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (lercanidipine)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** slightly increases the exposure to **caspofungin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ciclosporin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to affect the efficacy of **chenodeoxycholic acid**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** affects the concentration of **cholic acid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Danazol** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **daptomycin**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** slightly increases the exposure to **edoxaban**. Adjust **edoxaban** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** decreases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the exposure to **eluxadoline**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** decreases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the exposure to **etoposide**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **ezetimibe** and **ezetimibe** slightly increases the exposure to **ciclosporin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Fibrates (bezafibrate)** are predicted to increase the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Fibrates (fenofibrate)** increase the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid or monitor. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** greatly increases the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** increase the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** increase the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study



## Cyclosporin (continued)

- ▶ **Lanreotide** is predicted to decrease the absorption of oral cyclosporin. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with cyclosporin. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the exposure to cyclosporin. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** increase the concentration of cyclosporin. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **mifamurtide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** decreases the concentration of cyclosporin. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (blinatumomab)** are predicted to transiently increase the exposure to cyclosporin. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (sarilumab)** potentially affect the exposure to cyclosporin. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (tocilizumab)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to cyclosporin. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** increases the concentration of cyclosporin. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of cyclosporin. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** increases the concentration of cyclosporin. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** increases the concentration of **NSAIDs (diclofenac)**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 16 p. 851
- ▶ **Octreotide** decreases the absorption of oral cyclosporin. Adjust cyclosporin dose, p. 519. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to cyclosporin. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **panobinostat**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pasireotide** is predicted to decrease the absorption of oral cyclosporin. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** increases the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid or monitor. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to cyclosporin. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **ranolazine** and **ranolazine** is predicted to increase the concentration of cyclosporin. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **repaglinide**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ribociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to cyclosporin. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of cyclosporin. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** very markedly increases the exposure to **rifaximin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **riociguat**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **sirolimus**. Separate administration by 4 hours. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** decreases the concentration of cyclosporin. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** very markedly increases the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. Avoid or adjust atorvastatin dose, p. 132. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **statins (fluvastatin)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** markedly to very markedly increases the exposure to **statins (pravastatin)**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** markedly increases the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin, simvastatin)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Sulfinpyrazole** decreases the concentration of cyclosporin. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** increases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 16 p. 851
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** increases the exposure to **tofacinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ursodeoxycholic acid** affects the concentration of cyclosporin. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Vitamin E substances** affect the exposure to cyclosporin. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cyclosporin** increases the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

**Cilostazol** → see TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Concurrent use with 2 or more antiplatelets or anticoagulants is contra-indicated.

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to alter the effects of cilostazol. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to cilostazol. Adjust cilostazol dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to cilostazol. Adjust cilostazol dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to cilostazol. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to cilostazol. Adjust cilostazol dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to alter the effects of cilostazol. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to cilostazol. Adjust cilostazol dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to cilostazol. Adjust cilostazol dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cilostazol** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to cilostazol. Adjust cilostazol dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** slightly increase the exposure to cilostazol. Adjust cilostazol dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to alter the effects of cilostazol. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Moclobemide** is predicted to increase the exposure to cilostazol. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors (esomeprazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to cilostazol. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors (omeprazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to cilostazol. Adjust cilostazol dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to alter the effects of cilostazol. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, fluvoxamine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to cilostazol. Adjust cilostazol dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to alter the effects of cilostazol. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Cimetidine** → see H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists**Cinacalcet**

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Dose adjustment might be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment.

- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to increase the exposure to **anticholinesterases, centrally acting (galantamine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study



- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust aripiprazole dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **atomoxetine**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers**, selective (**metoprolol**, **nebivolol**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** increases the risk of hypocalcaemia when given with **etelcalcetide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **opioids** (**codeine**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **opioids** (**tramadol**). [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to increase the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs** (**fluvoxamine**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs** (**dapoxetine**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **tamoxifen**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. Monitor for toxicity and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vortioxetine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

**Cinnarizine** → see antihistamines, sedating

**Ciprofibrate** → see fibrates

**Ciprofloxacin** → see quinolones

**Cisatracurium** → see neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising

**Cisplatin** → see platinum compounds

**Citalopram** → see SSRIs

**Cladribine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

**SEPARATION OF ADMINISTRATION** Oral cladribine might affect the absorption of concurrently administered drugs—consider separating administration by at least 3 hours.

▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**) are predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with oral **cladribine**. [Moderate] Theoretical

▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **cladribine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical

**Clarithromycin** → see macrolides

**Clavulanic acid** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity)

**Clemastine** → see antihistamines, sedating

**Clevidipine** → see calcium channel blockers

## Clindamycin

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- ▶ **Clindamycin** increases the effects of **neuromuscular blocking drugs**, non-depolarising. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Clindamycin** increases the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Clobazam** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**stiripentol**) increase the concentration of **clobazam**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clobazam** potentially affects the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **voriconazole**) potentially increase the exposure to **clobazam**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Moclobemide** potentially increases the exposure to **clobazam**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** (**esomeprazole**, **omeprazole**) potentially increase the exposure to **clobazam**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs** (**fluoxetine**, **fluvoxamine**) potentially increase the exposure to **clobazam**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clofarabine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **clofarabine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clofazimine**
- ▶ **Clofazimine** potentially increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **bedaquiline**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clomethiazole** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Alcohol** (**beverage**) causes serious, potentially fatal, CNS depression when given with **clomethiazole**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) decrease the exposure to **clomethiazole**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** decreases the exposure to **clomethiazole**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** decreases the exposure to **clomethiazole**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **clomethiazole**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clomipramine** → see tricyclic antidepressants
- ▶ **Clonazepam** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Clonazepam** potentially affects the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Clonidine** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** decrease the antihypertensive effects of **clonidine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Clopamide** → see thiazide diuretics
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** → see TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **clopidogrel**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**voriconazole**) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **clopidogrel**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** moderately increases the exposure to **enzalutamide**. Avoid or adjust **enzalutamide** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** markedly decreases the exposure to **clopidogrel**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Moclobemide** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **clopidogrel**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **montelukast**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** increases the exposure to **pioglitazone**. Monitor blood glucose and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** (**esomeprazole**, **omeprazole**) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **clopidogrel**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

# Clopidogrel (continued)

- ▶ **Clopidogrel** increases the exposure to **repaglinide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** is predicted to increase the exposure to **retinoids (alitretinoin)**. Adjust alitretinoin dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** is predicted to increase the exposure to **selexipag**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, fluvoxamine)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of clopidogrel. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** increases the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Adjust rosuvastatin dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** is predicted to increase the concentration of **taxanes (paclitaxel)**. [Severe] Anecdotal

**Clotrimazole** → see antifungals, azoles

**Clozapine** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects), TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

- ▶ Dose adjustment might be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment.
- ▶ Avoid concomitant use of clozapine with drugs that have a substantial potential for causing agranulocytosis.

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to increase the risk of myelosuppression when given with **clozapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **clozapine**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** increase the concentration of **clozapine**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clozapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **clozapine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to affect the exposure to **clozapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Iron chelators (deferasirox)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **clozapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **clozapine**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Clozapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** potentially increase the risk of toxicity when given with **clozapine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** increase the concentration of **clozapine**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **clozapine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** increase the concentration of **clozapine**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **clozapine**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Co-trimoxazole** → see sulfonamides

## Cobicistat

- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **abiraterone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** increases the exposure to **almotriptan**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (alfuzosin, tamsulosin)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (doxazosin)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** moderately increases the exposure to **alprazolam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** very markedly increases the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **anticholinesterases, centrally acting (galantamine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (oxcarbazepine)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **cobicistat**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to very slightly increase the exposure to **antiepileptics (perampanel)**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, posaconazole)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to affect the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (rupatadine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **aprepitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust aripiprazole dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta<sub>2</sub> agonists (salmetrol)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** slightly increases the exposure to **bortezomib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **buspirone**. Adjust buspirone dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** slightly increases the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (ercanidipine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid or adjust ceritinib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **cilostazol**. Adjust cilostazol dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust colchicine dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (beclometasone)** (risk with beclometasone is likely to be lower than with other corticosteroids). [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to corticosteroids (**betamethasone**, **budesonide**, **ciclesonide**, **deflazacort**, **dexamethasone**, **fludrocortisone**, **fluticasone**, **hydrocortisone**, **methylprednisolone**, **mometasone**, **prednisolone**, **prednisone**, **triamcinolone**). Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Adjust **daclatasvir** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** very slightly increases the exposure to **delamanid**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** increases the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the concentration of **dopamine receptor agonists (cabergoline)**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** slightly to moderately increases the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eletriptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fosaprepitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **gefitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** potentially increases the exposure to **glecaprevir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately to markedly increase the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **ibrutinib** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** p. 186 or **lumacaftor** with **ivacaftor** p. 187 dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **macitentan**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** markedly increases the exposure to **maraviroc**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mirabegron**. Adjust **mirabegron** dose in hepatic and renal impairment. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mirtazapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **modafinil**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **monoclonal antibodies (trastuzumab emtansine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nitisinone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, buprenorphine, fentanyl, oxycodone, sufentanil)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **palbociclib**. Avoid or adjust **palbociclib** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **panobinostat**. Adjust **panobinostat** dose; in hepatic impairment avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid or adjust **pazopanib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil, vardenafil)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil)**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **sildenafil** dose, p. 120. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (tadalafil)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **ponatinib**. Monitor and adjust **ponatinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **praziquantel**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **reboxetine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **regorafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **repaglinide**. [Moderate] Study

**Cobicistat** (continued)

- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **retinoids** (**alitretinoin**). Adjust **alitretinoin** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid or adjust **ribociclib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Rifabutin** decreases the concentration of **cobicistat** and **cobicistat** increases the exposure to **rifabutin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **roxlutinib**. Adjust dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **solifenacin**. Adjust **solifenacin** or **tamsulosin** with **solifenacin** dose; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **SSRIs** (**dapoxetine**). Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **dapoxetine** dose. [Severe] Study
- **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**atorvastatin**). Avoid or adjust dose and monitor rhabdomyolysis. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**simvastatin**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes** (**cabazitaxel**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **taxanes** (**docetaxel**). Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes** (**paclitaxel**). [Severe] Theoretical
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Adjust **tofacitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **toremifene**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **trazodone**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Mild] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vemurafenib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Moderate] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vitamin D substances** (**paricalcitol**). [Moderate] Study

- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Cobimetinib**

- **Antiarhythmics** (**dronedarone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Antiepileptics** (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Antifungals**, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **miconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Antifungals**, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Calcium channel blockers** (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- **Macrolides** (**erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Codeine** → see opioids

**Colchicine**

- **Antiarhythmics** (**dronedarone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- **Antifungals**, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- **Antifungals**, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Study
- **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- **Calcium channel blockers** (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. [Moderate] Theoretical



- ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Colchicine** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **fibrates**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. [Mild] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Colchicine** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Velpatasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Vemurafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- Colcalciferol** → see vitamin D substances
- Colesevelam**

**SEPARATION OF ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises take 4 hours before, or after, other drugs.

#### Colestipol

**SEPARATION OF ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises take other drugs at least 1 hour before, or 4 hours after, colestipol.

#### Colestyramine

**SEPARATION OF ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises take other drugs at least 1 hour before, or 4–6 hours after, colestyramine.

**Colistimethate** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 20 p. 851 (neuromuscular blocking effects)

#### Combined hormonal contraceptives

- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives are predicted to increase the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives are predicted to increase the exposure to **aminophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives are predicted to increase the exposure to **anagrelide**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **eslicarbazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **oxcarbazepine**, **perampanel**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**,

- primidone**, **rufinamide**, **topiramate**) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of combined hormonal contraceptives. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives alter the exposure to antiepileptics (**lamotrigine**). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of combined hormonal contraceptives. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of combined hormonal contraceptives. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Oral combined hormonal contraceptives potentially decrease the efficacy of **chenodeoxycholic acid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives increase the concentration of **clozapine**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of combined hormonal contraceptives. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives increase the risk of raised liver function tests when given with **dasabuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives are predicted to increase the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (ropinirole)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of combined hormonal contraceptives. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives slightly increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of combined hormonal contraceptives. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Griseofulvin** potentially decreases the efficacy of combined hormonal contraceptives. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir)** (unboosted) increase the exposure to combined hormonal contraceptives. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of combined hormonal contraceptives. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives are predicted to increase the risk of venous thromboembolism when given with **lenalidomide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Oral combined hormonal contraceptives slightly increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives are predicted to increase the exposure to **loxapine**. Avoid. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of combined hormonal contraceptives. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives are predicted to increase the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives decrease the effects of **metrapone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of combined hormonal contraceptives. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives slightly increase the exposure to **monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Combined hormonal contraceptives increase the exposure to **monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (selegiline)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (sarilumab)** potentially decrease the exposure to combined hormonal contraceptives. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of combined hormonal contraceptives. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs (etoricoxib)** slightly increase the exposure to combined hormonal contraceptives. [Moderate] Study



## Combined hormonal contraceptives (continued)

- ▶ **Paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) increases the risk of raised liver function tests when given with **combined hormonal contraceptives**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pirfenidone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the risk of venous thromboembolism when given with **pomalidomide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to **roflumilast**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** decreases the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. MHRA advises avoid. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Sugammadex** is predicted to decrease the exposure to oral **combined hormonal contraceptives**. Refer to patient information leaflet for missed pill advice. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the risk of venous thromboembolism when given with **thalidomide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to **theophylline**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** increase the exposure to **tizanidine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ulipristal** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zolmitriptan**. Adjust zolmitriptan dose, p. 292. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Corticosteroids** → see TABLE 17 p. 851 (reduced serum potassium)

beclomethasone • betamethasone • budesonide • ciclesonide • deflazacort • dexamethasone • fludrocortisone • fluticasone • hydrocortisone • methylprednisolone • mometasone • prednisolone • prednisone • triamcinolone

- ▶ Interactions do not generally apply to corticosteroids used for topical action (including inhalation) unless specified.
- ▶ With intravitreal use of **dexamethasone** in adults: caution with concurrent administration of anticoagulant or antiplatelet drugs—increased risk of haemorrhagic events.

- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **deflazacort**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **dexamethasone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiarhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **methylprednisolone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **fluticasone**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to corticosteroids (**budesonide, deflazacort, dexamethasone, fludrocortisone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **methylprednisolone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **beclomethasone** (risk with beclomethasone is likely to be lower than with other corticosteroids). [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **methylprednisolone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to corticosteroids (**betamethasone, budesonide, ciclesonide, deflazacort, dexamethasone, fludrocortisone, fluticasone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, mometasone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone**). Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Prednisone** potentially decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** moderately increases the exposure to **dexamethasone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methylprednisolone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **aspirin** (high-dose) and **aspirin** (high-dose) increases the risk of gastrointestinal bleeding when given with corticosteroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **methylprednisolone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dexamethasone** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **caspofungin**. Adjust caspofungin dose, p. 372. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **choline salicylate**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beclomethasone** (risk with beclomethasone is likely to be lower than with other corticosteroids). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to corticosteroids (**betamethasone, budesonide, ciclesonide, deflazacort, dexamethasone, fludrocortisone, fluticasone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, mometasone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone**). Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to increase the effects of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methylprednisolone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to corticosteroids (**budesonide, deflazacort, dexamethasone, fludrocortisone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fluticasone**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** increase the risk of gastrointestinal perforation when given with **erlotinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to corticosteroids (**dexamethasone, methylprednisolone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** potentially oppose the effects of **glycerol phenylbutyrate**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** moderately increases the exposure to oral **budesonide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **beclomethasone** (risk with beclomethasone is likely to be lower than with other corticosteroids). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to corticosteroids (**betamethasone, budesonide, ciclesonide, deflazacort, dexamethasone, fludrocortisone, fluticasone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, mometasone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone**). Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beclomethasone** (risk with beclomethasone is likely to be lower than with other corticosteroids). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to corticosteroids (**betamethasone, budesonide, ciclesonide, deflazacort, dexamethasone, fludrocortisone, fluticasone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, mometasone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone**). Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methylprednisolone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal bleeding when given with **iron chelators (deferriroxi)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **corticosteroids** (high-dose). Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the exposure to corticosteroids (**methylprednisolone**, **prednisone**). Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **beclomethasone** (risk with beclomethasone is likely to be lower than with other corticosteroids). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to corticosteroids (**betamethasone**, **budesonide**, **ciclesonide**, **deflazacort**, **dexamethasone**, **fludrocortisone**, **fluticasone**, **hydrocortisone**, **methylprednisolone**, **mometasone**, **prednisolone**, **prednisone**, **triamcinolone**). Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **methylprednisolone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **mifamurtide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mifepristone** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of corticosteroids. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to corticosteroids (**budesonide**, **deflazacort**, **dexamethasone**, **fludrocortisone**, **hydrocortisone**, **methylprednisolone**, **prednisolone**, **prednisone**, **triamcinolone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fluticasone**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ Corticosteroids (**betamethasone**, **deflazacort**, **dexamethasone**, **hydrocortisone**, **methylprednisolone**, **prednisolone**, **prednisone**) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **monoclonal antibodies (atezolizumab, ipilimumab, nivolumab, pembrolizumab)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (tocilizumab)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to corticosteroids (**dexamethasone**, **methylprednisolone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dexamethasone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methylprednisolone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to decrease the effects of **neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** increase the risk of gastrointestinal perforation when given with **nicorandil**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methylprednisolone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs** increase the risk of gastrointestinal bleeding when given with **corticosteroids**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to increase the effects of **phenindione**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Dexamethasone** decreases the exposure to **praziquantel**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to corticosteroids (**budesonide**, **deflazacort**, **dexamethasone**, **fludrocortisone**, **hydrocortisone**, **methylprednisolone**, **prednisolone**, **prednisone**, **triamcinolone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fluticasone**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** potentially decrease the effects of **sodium phenylbutyrate**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to decrease the effects of **somatropin**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to decrease the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Severe] Anecdotal

**Coumarins** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)

acenocoumarol · warfarin

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** The effects of coumarins can be reduced or abolished by vitamin K, including that found in health foods, food supplements, enteral feeds, or large amounts of some green vegetables or green tea. Major changes in diet (especially involving salads and vegetables) and in alcohol consumption can affect anticoagulant control. Pomegranate increases the INR in response to **warfarin** and is predicted to increase the INR in response to **acenocoumarol**.

- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** (in those who drink heavily) potentially decreases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (propafenone)** increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** decrease the effects of **coumarins**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to alter the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** decrease the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole)** increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)** potentially increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)** potentially increase the anticoagulant effect of **warfarin**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** greatly increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. MHRA advises avoid unless INR can be monitored closely; monitor for signs of bleeding. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** decreases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Axitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Azathioprine** decreases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** decreases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosutinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cabozantinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Capecitabine** increases the effects of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Cephalosporins (ceftriaxone)** potentially increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **warfarin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Chloramphenicol** potentially increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to increase the effects of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cranberry juice** potentially increases the anticoagulant effect of **warfarin**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dabrafenib** is predicted to decrease the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Danazol** potentially increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Dasatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical

## Coumarins (continued)

- ▶ **Disulfiram** increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to affect the concentration of coumarins. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Elvitegravir** is predicted to decrease the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enteral feeds** (vitamin-K containing) potentially decrease the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** potentially decreases the exposure to coumarins. Avoid or adjust dose and monitor INR. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erlotinib** increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Etravirine** increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fibrates** are predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fluorouracil** increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to decrease the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Gefitinib** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Glucagon** increases the anticoagulant effect of warfarin. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Glucosamine** increases the anticoagulant effect of warfarin. Avoid. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Griseofulvin** potentially decreases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** increase the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to affect the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with coumarins. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ivacaftor** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of warfarin. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ivermectin** potentially increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with coumarins. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Lomitapide** increases the exposure to warfarin. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** increase the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Mercaptopurine** decreases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Metronidazole** increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (blinatumomab)** are predicted to transiently increase the exposure to warfarin. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (sarilumab)** potentially affect the exposure to warfarin. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (tocilizumab)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to warfarin. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nandrolone** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** potentially alters the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with coumarins. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Obeticholic acid** decreases the anticoagulant effect of warfarin. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Oxymetholone** increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Paracetamol** increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pazopanib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with coumarins. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Penicillins** potentially alter the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to warfarin. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ponatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with coumarins. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Quinolones** increase the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ranibizumab** increases the risk of bleeding events when given with coumarins. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Regorafenib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with coumarins. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ruxolitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with coumarins. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sorafenib** increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **St John's Wort** decreases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Statins (fluvastatin, rosuvastatin)** increase the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Sucralfate** potentially decreases the effects of warfarin. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Sulfinpyrazone** increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Sulfonamides (sulfadiazine)** are predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sulfonamides (sulfamethoxazole)** increase the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Sunitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with coumarins. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tamoxifen** increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tegafur** increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** affects the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tetracyclines** increase the risk of bleeding events when given with coumarins. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Tinidazole** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Toremifene** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Trimethoprim** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of coumarins. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Vandetanib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with coumarins. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Venetoclax** slightly increases the exposure to warfarin. [Moderate] Study

## Cranberry juice

- ▶ **Cranberry juice** potentially increases the anticoagulant effect of coumarins (warfarin). Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal

**Crisantaspace** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- ▶ **Crisantaspace** is predicted to increase the risk of hepatotoxicity when given with **imatinib**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Crisantaspace** affects the efficacy of **methotrexate**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Crisantaspace** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **vinca alkaloids (vincristine)**. Vincristine should be taken 3 to 24 hours before **crisantaspace**, p. 551. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

**Crizotinib** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Caution with concurrent use of drugs that cause gastrointestinal perforation—discontinue treatment if gastrointestinal perforation occurs.

- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Adjust eplerenone dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (tamsulosin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (rupatadine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **buspirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Crizotinib** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (methylprednisolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Crizotinib** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domeperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **dopamine receptor agonists (cabergoline)**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fosetorodine**. Adjust **fosetorodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **gefitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Crizotinib** potentially decreases the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Adjust **ibrutinib** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, buprenorphine, fentanyl, oxycodone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (methadone, sufentanil)**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil)**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil)**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (tadalafil)**. [Severe] Theoretical



**Crizotinib** (continued)

- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (vardenafil)**. Adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 9 p. 849](#)
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** potentially decreases the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 9 p. 849](#)
  - ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to crizotinib. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study → Also see [TABLE 9 p. 849](#)
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study → Also see [TABLE 9 p. 849](#)
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to crizotinib. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 15 p. 850](#)
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [\[Mild\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs (dapoxetine)**. Adjust **dapoxetine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to crizotinib. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 15 p. 850](#) → Also see [TABLE 9 p. 849](#)
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 15 p. 850](#)
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 15 p. 850](#)
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [\[Mild\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 9 p. 849](#)
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see [TABLE 15 p. 850](#) → Also see [TABLE 9 p. 849](#)
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Cyclizine** → see antihistamines, sedating
- Cyclophenthiadiazide** → see thiazide diuretics
- Cyclopentolate** → see [TABLE 10 p. 849](#) (antimuscarinics)
- Cyclophosphamide** → see alkylating agents
- Cycloserine**
- ▶ **Cycloserine** increases the risk of CNS toxicity when given with **isoniazid**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Cyproheptadine** → see antihistamines, sedating
- Cytarabine** → see [TABLE 15 p. 850](#) (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Cytarabine** decreases the concentration of **flucytosine**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study

- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **cytarabine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- Dabigatran** → see [TABLE 3 p. 847](#) (anticoagulant effects)
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. Adjust **dabigatran** dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** slightly increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. Adjust **dabigatran** dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Elbasvir** is predicted to increase the concentration of **dabigatran**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Glecaprevir** (with pibrentasvir) increases the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Pibrentasvir** (with glecaprevir) increases the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabigatran**. [\[Unknown\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Velpatasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Vemurafenib** increases the exposure to **dabigatran**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Voxilaprevir** is predicted to increase the concentration of **dabigatran**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Dabrafenib** → see [TABLE 15 p. 850](#) (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Use with caution or avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Clopidogrel** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Use with caution or avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
  - ▶ **Dabrafenib** is predicted to decrease the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **Fibrates (gemfibrozil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Use with caution or avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study



- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **Dabrafenib** decreases the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Dacarbazine** → see alkylating agents
- Daclatasvir**
- **Daclatasvir** is predicted to increase the risk of severe bradycardia or heart block when given with **antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - **Antiepileptics (oxcarbazepine)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Adjust **daclatasvir** dose. [Moderate] Study
  - **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Adjust **daclatasvir** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Adjust **daclatasvir** dose. [Moderate] Study
  - **Daclatasvir** slightly increases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Severe] Study
  - **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - **Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Adjust **daclatasvir** dose. [Moderate] Study
  - **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Adjust **daclatasvir** dose. [Moderate] Study
  - **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Adjust **daclatasvir** dose. [Moderate] Study
  - **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Dactinomycin** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **dactinomycin**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- Dairy products**
- **Dairy products** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **eltrombopag**. **Eltrombopag** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **dairy products**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Dairy products** decrease the exposure to **tetracyclines (demeclocycline, oxytetracycline, tetracycline)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- Dalteparin** → see low molecular-weight heparins
- Danaparoid** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)
- **Ranibizumab** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **danaparoid**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Danazol**
- **Danazol** moderately increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

- **Danazol** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - **Danazol** potentially increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - **Danazol** is predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins (atorvastatin)**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Danazol** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins (simvastatin)**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - **Danazol** potentially increases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Dantrolene** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity)
- Intravenous **dantrolene** potentially increases the risk of acute hyperkalaemia and cardiovascular collapse when given with **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Dapagliflozin** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)
- Dapoxetine** → see SSRIs
- Dapsone**
- **Aminosalicylic acid** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Dapsone** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **anaesthetics, local (prilocaine)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Antimalarials (chloroquine, primaquine)** are predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Nitrates** are predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Nitrofurantoin** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Paracetamol** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Rifabutin** decreases the exposure to **dapsone**. [Moderate] Study
  - **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **dapsone**. [Moderate] Study
  - **Sodium nitroprusside** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Sulfonamides** are predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Dapsone** increases the exposure to **trimethoprim** and **trimethoprim** increases the exposure to **dapsone**. [Severe] Study
- Daptomycin**
- **Aspirin** (high-dose) increases the risk of renal impairment when given with **daptomycin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **daptomycin**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Fibrates** are predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **daptomycin**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **NSAIDs** increase the risk of renal impairment when given with **daptomycin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - **Statins** are predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **daptomycin**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Daratumumab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Darbepoetin alfa** → see TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism), TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)
- Darifenacin** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)
- **Antiarrhythmics (dronedrone)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
  - **Darifenacin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **antiarrhythmics (flecainide)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical

## Darifenacin (continued)

- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bupropion** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Darifenacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849

**Darunavir** → see HIV-protease inhibitors

## Dasabuvir

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasabuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** increase the risk of raised liver function tests when given with **dasabuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasabuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fibrates (gemfibrozil)** very markedly increase the exposure to **dasabuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dasabuvir** (with ombitasvir, paritaprevir and ritonavir) increases the concentration of **loop diuretics (furosemide)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasabuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasabuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dasabuvir** increases the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study

**Dasatinib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)

- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **dasatinib**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dasatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Dasatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to slightly to moderately decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dasatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Daunorubicin** → see anthracyclines

**Decitabine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

**Deferasirox** → see iron chelators

**Deferiprone** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- ▶ **Antacids (aluminium hydroxide)** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **deferiprone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Ascorbic acid** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **deferiprone**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Deflazacort** → see corticosteroids

**Delamanid** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **delamanid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** very slightly increase the exposure to **delamanid**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Cobicistat** very slightly increases the exposure to **delamanid**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **delamanid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** very slightly increase the exposure to **delamanid**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** very slightly increases the exposure to **delamanid**. [Severe] Study

▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** very slightly increase the exposure to **delamanid**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **delamanid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **delamanid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

**Demeclocycline** → see tetracyclines

**Desferrioxamine** → see iron chelators

**Desflurane** → see volatile halogenated anaesthetics

**Desloratadine** → see antihistamines, non-sedating

**Desmopressin** → see TABLE 18 p. 851 (hyponatraemia)

▶ **Antiepileptics (lamotrigine)** are predicted to increase the risk of hyponatraemia when given with **desmopressin**. [Severe] Theoretical

▶ **Loperamide** greatly increases the absorption of oral **desmopressin** (and possibly sublingual). [Moderate] Study

▶ **Phenothiazines (chlorpromazine)** are predicted to increase the risk of hyponatraemia when given with **desmopressin**. [Severe] Theoretical

## Desogestrel

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, eslicarbazepine, fosphenytoin, oxcarbazepine, perampamil, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone, rufinamide, topiramate)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Desogestrel** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiepileptics (lamotrigine)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Griseofulvin** potentially decreases the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. MHRA advises avoid. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sugammadex** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **desogestrel**. Refer to patient information leaflet for missed pill advice. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ulipristal** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Dexamethasone** → see corticosteroids

**Dexamfetamine** → see amfetamines

**Dexibuprofen** → see NSAIDs

**Dextketoprofen** → see NSAIDs

**Dexmedetomidine** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

**Dextrazoxane** → see iron chelators

**Diamorphine** → see opioids

**Diazepam** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

▶ **Diazepam** potentially affects the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, voriconazole)** moderately increase the exposure to **diazepam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **diazepam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (tocilizumab)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **diazepam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **diazepam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** moderately increase the exposure to **diazepam**. [Moderate] Study

**Diazoxide** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)

▶ **Diazoxide** decreases the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** and **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the effects of **diazoxide**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal

▶ **Diazoxide** increases the risk of severe hypotension when given with **hydralazine**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

**Diclofenac** → see NSAIDs

**Dicycloverine** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

**Didanosine** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy)

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Antacids in tablet formulation might affect absorption of other drugs—give at least 2 hours apart.

- ▶ **Allopurinol** moderately increases the exposure to **didanosine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Didanosine** (buffered) decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole)**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Febuxostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **didanosine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ganciclovir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **didanosine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (tipranavir)** decrease the exposure to **didanosine**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Didanosine** (buffered) decreases the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir)**. **Didanosine** should be taken 2 hours after **atazanavir**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Didanosine** (buffered) is predicted to decrease the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors (darunavir)** boosted with **ritonavir**. **Didanosine** should be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after **darunavir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Hydroxycarbamide** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **didanosine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Isoniazid** is predicted to increase the risk of peripheral neuropathy when given with **didanosine**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ **Didanosine** is predicted to increase the risk of pancreatitis when given with **pentamidine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Didanosine** (buffered) is predicted to greatly decrease the exposure to oral **quinolones**. **Didanosine** should be taken 2 hours after **quinolones**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ribavirin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **didanosine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

## Didanosine (continued)

- ▶ **Didanosine** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **stavudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ **Tenofovir disoproxil** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **didanosine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Valganciclovir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **didanosine**. [Moderate] Study

**Digoxin** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia)

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Drugs that reduce serum potassium are predicted to increase the risk of digoxin toxicity, see TABLE 17 p. 851.

- ▶ **Acarbose** decreases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)** very slightly increase the exposure to **digoxin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Aldosterone antagonists (spironolactone)** increase the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aminoglycosides** potentially increase the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **digoxin**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, dronedarone)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust **digoxin** dose, p. 81. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (propafenone)** increase the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)** slightly increase the exposure to **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)** are predicted to markedly increase the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)** are predicted to markedly increase the concentration of **digoxin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **digoxin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antimalarials (mefloquine)** are predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **digoxin**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antimalarials (quinine)** increase the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust **digoxin** dose, p. 81. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Balsalazide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** increase the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Intravenous calcium salts** increase the concentration of **digoxin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Carbamazole** affects the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with **digoxin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dactacavir** slightly increases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** increases the exposure to **digoxin**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Glecaprevir** (with pibrentasvir) increases the exposure to **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** increase the concentration of **digoxin**. Adjust dose and monitor concentration. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ivacaftor** slightly increases the exposure to **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **digoxin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides** increase the concentration of **digoxin**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Mirabegron** slightly increases the exposure to **digoxin**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Neomycin** decreases the absorption of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising (pancuronium)** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **digoxin**. [Severe] Anecdotal

- ▶ **NSAIDs (indometacin)** increase the concentration of **digoxin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Penicillamine** potentially decreases the concentration of **digoxin**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Pibrentasvir** (with glecaprevir) increases the exposure to **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **digoxin**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranolazine** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** slightly increases the exposure to **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** decreases the concentration of **digoxin**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Sucralfate** decreases the absorption of **digoxin**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Sulfasalazine** decreases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Suxamethonium** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **digoxin**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Thyroid hormones** are predicted to affect the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ticagrelor** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Tolvaptan** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Trimethoprim** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Vandetanib** slightly increases the exposure to **digoxin**. Monitor ECG and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Velpatasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **digoxin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Vitamin D substances** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **digoxin**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Dihydrocodeine** → see opioids

**Dihydratachysterol** → see vitamin D substances

**Diltiazem** → see calcium channel blockers

**Dimenhydrinate** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

**Dimethyl fumarate**

- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** (excessive consumption) potentially increases the risk of gastrointestinal side-effects when given with **dimethyl fumarate**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **dimethyl fumarate**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical

**Diphenoxylate** → see opioids

**Dipipanone** → see opioids

**Dipyridamole** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)

- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **dipyridamole** (immediate release tablets). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dipyridamole** increases the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (adenosine)**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study

▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **dipyridamole** (immediate release tablets). [Moderate] Theoretical

▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **dipyridamole** (immediate release tablets). [Moderate] Theoretical

**Disopyramide** → see antiarrhythmics

**Disulfiram** → see TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy)

- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** causes an extremely unpleasant systemic reaction when given with **disulfiram**. Avoid for at least 24 hours before and up to 14 days after stopping treatment. [Severe] Study

▶ **Disulfiram** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850

▶ **Disulfiram** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

▶ **Disulfiram** increases the risk of acute psychoses when given with **metronidazole**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850



- **Disulfiram** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Dobutamine** → see sympathomimetics, inotropic

**Docetaxel** → see taxanes

#### Dolutegravir

- **Antacids** moderately decrease the exposure to **dolutegravir**. **Dolutegravir** should be taken 2 hours before or 6 hours after **antacids**. [Moderate] Study
- **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** decrease the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Antiepileptics (oxcarbazepine)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Bosentan** decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Oral calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **dolutegravir**. **Dolutegravir** should be taken 2 hours before or 6 hours after **calcium salts**. [Moderate] Study
- **Efavirenz** decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Enzalutamide** decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Etravirine** moderately decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Avoid unless given with atazanavir, darunavir, or lopinavir (all boosted with ritonavir). [Severe] Study
- **HIV-protease inhibitors (fosamprenavir)** boosted with ritonavir slightly decrease the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Avoid if resistant to HIV-integrase inhibitors. [Severe] Study
- **HIV-protease inhibitors (tipranavir)** moderately decrease the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study
- **Iron (oral)** decreases the absorption of **dolutegravir**. **Dolutegravir** should be taken 2 hours before or 6 hours after **iron (oral)**. [Moderate] Study
- **Dolutegravir** slightly to moderately increases the exposure to **metformin**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Mitotane** decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Nevirapine** decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **St John's Wort** decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Sucralfate** decreases the absorption of **dolutegravir**. [Moderate] Study

**Domperidone** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

- **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** increase the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, itraconazole, ketoconazole, posaconazole, voriconazole)** increase the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Aprepitant** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** increase the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Crizotinib** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Domperidone** is predicted to decrease the prolactin-lowering effect of dopamine receptor agonists (**bromocriptine, cabergoline**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** increase the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Idelalisib** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Imatinib** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** increase the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- **Netupitant** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Nilotinib** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

**Donepezil** → see anticholinesterases, centrally acting

**Dopamine** → see sympathomimetics, inotropic

**Dopamine receptor agonists** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

amantadine · apomorphine · bromocriptine · cabergoline · pergolide · pramipexole · quinagolide · ropinirole · rotigotine

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Dose adjustment might be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment with **ropinirole**.

- **Amisulpride** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **bromocriptine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **cabergoline**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, itraconazole, ketoconazole, posaconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **cabergoline**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **bromocriptine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** increase the exposure to **bromocriptine**. [Severe] Study
- **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bromocriptine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **cabergoline**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- **Aripiprazole** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- **Asenapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- **Benperidol** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- **Bupropion** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **amantadine**. [Moderate] Study
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **bromocriptine**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **cabergoline**. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- **Clozapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849
- **Cobicistat** increases the exposure to **bromocriptine**. [Severe] Study
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the concentration of **cabergoline**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ropinirole**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bromocriptine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **cabergoline**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- **Domperidone** is predicted to decrease the prolactin-lowering effect of dopamine receptor agonists (**bromocriptine, cabergoline**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- Dopamine receptor agonists (**cabergoline**) are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with dopamine receptor agonists (**bromocriptine**). Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- Dopamine receptor agonists (**bromocriptine, cabergoline**) are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with dopamine receptor agonists (**pergolide**). Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- Dopamine receptor agonists (**amantadine**) are predicted to increase the exposure to dopamine receptor agonists



## Dopamine receptor agonists (continued)

(pramipexole). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

- ▶ **Droperidol** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ergometrine** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with dopamine receptor agonists (cabergoline, pergolide). Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ergotamine** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine, cabergoline). Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ergotamine** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with pergolide. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Flupentixol** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Apomorphine** is predicted to increase the risk of severe hypotension when given with **granisetron**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** slightly increase the exposure to pramipexole. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Haloperidol** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849 → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** increase the exposure to bromocriptine. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of cabergoline. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Hormone replacement therapy** decreases the clearance of ropinirole. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** increases the exposure to bromocriptine. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the concentration of cabergoline. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to bromocriptine. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of cabergoline. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Loxapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** increase the exposure to bromocriptine. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the concentration of cabergoline. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to bromocriptine. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Amantadine** increases the risk of CNS toxicity when given with memantine. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Memantine** is predicted to increase the effects of dopamine receptor agonists (apomorphine, bromocriptine, cabergoline, pergolide, pramipexole, quinagolide, ropinirole, rotigotine). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Metoclopramide** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists (apomorphine, bromocriptine, cabergoline, pergolide, pramipexole, quinagolide, ropinirole, rotigotine). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to bromocriptine. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of cabergoline. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to bromocriptine. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of cabergoline. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Olanzapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Apomorphine** increases the risk of severe hypotension when given with **ondansetron**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Paliperidone** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Apomorphine** is predicted to increase the risk of severe hypotension when given with **palonosetron**. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Phenothiazines** are predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849 → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849
- ▶ **Pimozide** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849 → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849
- ▶ **Quetiapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ropinirole. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Risperidone** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ropinirole. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Sulpiride** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (isometheptene)** potentially increase the risk of side-effects when given with bromocriptine. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Zuclopenthixol** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

## Dorzolamide

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

**Dosulepin** → see tricyclic antidepressants

## Doxapram

- ▶ **Aminophylline** increases the risk of agitation when given with doxapram. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the effects of doxapram. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Theophylline** increases the risk of agitation when given with doxapram. [Moderate] Study

**Doxazosin** → see alpha blockers

**Doxepin** → see tricyclic antidepressants

**Doxorubicin** → see anthracyclines

**Doxycycline** → see tetracyclines

**Dronedarone** → see antiarrhythmics

**Droperidol** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Droperidol** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

▶ **Droperidol** is predicted to decrease the effects of **guanethidine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

▶ **Droperidol** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

▶ **Drosiprenone** → see TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)

▶ **Antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)** moderately increase the exposure to drosiprenone. [Severe] Study

**Dulaglutide** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)

**Duloxetine** → see TABLE 18 p. 851 (hyponatraemia), TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome), TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)

▶ **Antiepileptics (phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to duloxetine. [Moderate] Theoretical

▶ **Duloxetine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (metoprolol)**. [Moderate] Study

▶ **Duloxetine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study

▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to duloxetine. [Moderate] Theoretical

▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to duloxetine. [Moderate] Theoretical

▶ **Duloxetine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to duloxetine. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **duloxetine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** markedly increase the exposure to **duloxetine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **duloxetine**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Dupilumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

#### Dutasteride

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Appetitant** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idealisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study

**Eculizumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

**Edoxaban** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. Adjust **edoxaban** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)** slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. Adjust **edoxaban** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** slightly increases the exposure to **edoxaban**. Adjust **edoxaban** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin, clarithromycin)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. Adjust **edoxaban** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Mild] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Velpatasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Vemurafenib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Voxilaprevir** is predicted to increase the concentration of **edoxaban**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Efavirenz** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** slightly decrease the exposure to **efavirenz** and **efavirenz** slightly decreases the exposure to **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** slightly decrease the exposure to **efavirenz** and **efavirenz** affects the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **efavirenz** and **efavirenz** affects the concentration of **antiepileptics (phenobarbital)**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to affect the efficacy of **antiepileptics (primidone)** and **antiepileptics (primidone)** are predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **efavirenz**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** slightly decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **efavirenz**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** moderately decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** slightly decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** moderately decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** and **antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** slightly increase the exposure to **efavirenz**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** decreases the concentration of **antimalarials (artemether)**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** moderately decreases the exposure to **antimalarials (atovaquone)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** affects the exposure to **antimalarials (proguanil)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bupropion**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **caspofungin**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** decreases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to affect the concentration of **coumarins**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

# Efavirenz (continued)

- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- Efavirenz decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- Efavirenz is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **gefitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Efavirenz is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Efavirenz decreases the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the effects of **hormone replacement therapy**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **idelalisib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lurasidone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Efavirenz decreases the exposure to **macrolides (clarithromycin)**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Efavirenz decreases the exposure to **maraviroc**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Theoretical
- Efavirenz is predicted to alter the effects of **midazolam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Nevirapine** decreases the concentration of **efavirenz**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Efavirenz decreases the exposure to **opioids (methadone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **osimertinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **efavirenz**. [Unknown] Theoretical
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - Efavirenz slightly decreases the exposure to **rifabutin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to **efavirenz**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rolapitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **efavirenz**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - Efavirenz slightly decreases the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. [Mild] Study
  - Efavirenz moderately decreases the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. [Moderate] Study
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Efavirenz decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **velpatasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Efavirenz is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ## Elbasvir
- Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) slightly to moderately increase the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **Bosentan** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - **Cobicistat** slightly to moderately increases the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **Elbasvir** is predicted to increase the concentration of **dabigatran**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Efavirenz is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - **Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Unknown] Theoretical

- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** slightly to moderately increase the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** slightly to moderately increases the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** slightly to moderately increase the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Elbasvir** potentially increases the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. Adjust **atorvastatin** dose, p. 132. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Elbasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (fluvastatin)**. Adjust **fluvastatin** dose, p. 132. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Elbasvir** increases the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Elbasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Elbasvir** is predicted to increase the concentration of **sunitinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Eletriptan** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eletriptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eletriptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eletriptan** increases the risk of vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. Separate administration by 24 hours. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eletriptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eletriptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eletriptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** moderately increase the exposure to **eletriptan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- Eliglustat**
- ▶ **Abraterone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone, propafenone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, itraconazole, ketoconazole, posaconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (fexofenadine)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **atomoxetine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, non-selective (propranolol)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (metoprolol)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** increases the exposure to **digoxin**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Duloxetine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **loperamide**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Moclobemide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phenothiazines (perphenazine)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sirolimus**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **SRRs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (paclitaxel)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study



# Eliglustat (continued)

- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants (nortriptyline)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Elotuzumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

## Eltrombopag

- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **eltrombopag**. **Eltrombopag** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **antacids**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Oral **calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **eltrombopag**. **Eltrombopag** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **calcium salts**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dairy products** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **eltrombopag**. **Eltrombopag** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **dairy products**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **eltrombopag**. **Eltrombopag** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **iron (oral)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Selenium** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **eltrombopag**. **Eltrombopag** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **selenium**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Eltrombopag** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Zinc** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **eltrombopag**. **Eltrombopag** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **zinc**. [Severe] Theoretical

## Eluxadolone

- ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the exposure to **eluxadolone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Fibrates (gemfibrozil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eluxadolone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir, tipranavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eluxadolone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eluxadolone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Eluxadolone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins**. [Moderate] Study

## Elvitegravir

- ▶ **Antacids** moderately decrease the exposure to **elvitegravir**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Elvitegravir** is predicted to decrease the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, lopinavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) increase the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Refer to specialist literature. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Empagliflozin** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)

**Enalapril** → see ACE inhibitors

**Enoxaparin** → see low molecular-weight heparins

## Entacapone

- ▶ **Iron (oral)** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **entacapone**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Entacapone** increases the exposure to **levodopa**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Entacapone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methyl dopa**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Entacapone** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Entacapone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **sympathomimetics, inotropic**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Entacapone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (adrenaline/epinephrine, noradrenaline/norepinephrine)**. [Moderate] Study

## Enteral feeds

- ▶ **Antacids (aluminium hydroxide)** increase the risk of blocked enteral or nasogastric tubes when given with **enteral feeds**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enteral feeds** decrease the absorption of **antiepileptics (phenytoin)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enteral feeds** (vitamin-K containing) potentially decrease the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Enteral feeds** (vitamin-K containing) potentially decrease the effects of **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enteral feeds** decrease the exposure to **quinolones (ciprofloxacin)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Sucralfate** increases the risk of blocked enteral or nasogastric tubes when given with **enteral feeds**. Separate administration by 1 hour. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enteral feeds** decrease the exposure to **theophylline**. [Moderate] Study

## Enzalutamide

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Caution with concurrent chemotherapy—safety and efficacy not established.

- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **abiraterone**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **alprazolam**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (disopyramide, dronedarone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **anticholinesterases, centrally acting (donepezil)**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **antiepileptics (brivaracetam)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antiepileptics (perampanel)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antimalarials (artemether)** (with lumefantrine). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **apixaban**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** moderately decreases the exposure to **apremiast**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **aprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust aripiprazole dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** decreases the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** slightly decreases the exposure to **bortezomib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** affects the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to very markedly decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study



- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **buprisone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** moderately decreases the exposure to **cabozantinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** decreases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to alter the effects of **cilostazol**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** decreases the exposure to **clomethiazole**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** moderately increases the exposure to **enzalutamide**. Avoid or adjust **enzalutamide** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **clozapine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **corticosteroids (budesonide, deflazacort, dexamethasone, fludrocortisone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **corticosteroids (fluticasone)**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** potentially decreases the exposure to **coumarins**. Avoid or adjust dose and monitor INR. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasabuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **delamanid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. Avoid or adjust **erlotinib** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** moderately decreases the exposure to **exemestane**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Fibrates (gemfibrozil)** moderately increase the exposure to **enzalutamide**. Avoid or adjust **enzalutamide** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **finigolimid**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fosaprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **gefitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** decreases the concentration of **haloperidol**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Avoid or adjust **ibrutinib** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **idelalisib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ixazomib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **linagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lomitapide**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lurasidone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **macitentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **mirtazapine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **montelukast**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **nateglinide**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nitisone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ondansetron**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, fentanyl)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (buprenorphine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** decreases the exposure to **opioids (methadone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (oxycodone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **osimertinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **palbociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paliperidone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

## Enzalutamide (continued)

- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **panobinostat**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil, tadalafil)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil, vardenafil)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **pitolisant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ponatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **praziquantel**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ranolazine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **reboxetine**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **regorafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **repaglinide**. Monitor blood glucose and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide markedly decreases the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **rivaroxaban**. Avoid unless patient can be monitored for signs of thrombosis. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **roflumilast**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **rolapitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **solifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sorafenib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide decreases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel, paclitaxel)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes (docetaxel)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide decreases the exposure to **tetracyclines (doxycycline)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tivozanib**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **torsemide**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid and for 4 weeks after stopping **ulipristal**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vandetanib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **velpatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vemurafenib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinca alkaloids (vinblastine, vincristine, vindesine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinca alkaloids (vinflunine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinca alkaloids (vinorelbine)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vismodegib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vortioxetine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Enzalutamide is predicted to decrease the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Ephedrine** → see sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor
- Epirubicin** → see anthracyclines
- Eplerenone** → see aldosterone antagonists
- Epoetin alfa** → see TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism), TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)
- Epoetin beta** → see TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism), TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)
- Epoetin zeta** → see TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism), TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)
- Epoprostenol** → see TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)
- Eprosartan** → see angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Eptifibatide** → see TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)
- Ergocalciferol** → see vitamin D substances
- Ergometrine**
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ergometrine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective** are predicted to increase the risk of peripheral vasoconstriction when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** are predicted to increase the risk of peripheral vasoconstriction when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ergometrine** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **dopamine receptor agonists (cabergoline, pergolide)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ergometrine** potentially increases the risk of peripheral vasoconstriction when given with **sympathomimetics, inotropic (dopamine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Ergometrine** is predicted to increase the risk of peripheral vasoconstriction when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (noradrenaline/norepinephrine)**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Ergotamine**

- ▶ **Almotriptan** is predicted to increase the risk of vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. **Ergotamine** should be taken at least 24 hours before or 6 hours after **almotriptan**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective** are predicted to increase the risk of peripheral vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** are predicted to increase the risk of peripheral vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ergotamine** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine, cabergoline)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ergotamine** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **dopamine receptor agonists (pergolide)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Eletriptan** increases the risk of vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. Separate administration by 24 hours. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Naratriptan** is predicted to increase the risk of vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. Separate administration by 24 hours. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergotamine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ribociclib (high-dose)** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rizatriptan** is predicted to increase the risk of vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. **Ergotamine** should be taken at least 24 hours before or 6 hours after **rizatriptan**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sumatriptan** increases the risk of vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. **Ergotamine** should be taken at least 24 hours before or 6 hours after **sumatriptan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ticagrelor** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Eribulin** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

## Eritelinib

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Dose adjustment may be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment.

- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **erlotinib**. **Antacids** should be taken 4 hours before or 2 hours after **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. Avoid or adjust **erlotinib** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Erlotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal perforation when given with **aspirin** (high-dose). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical

## Erlotinib (continued)

- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** slightly increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Corticosteroids** increase the risk of gastrointestinal perforation when given with **erlotinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Erlotinib** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. Avoid or adjust **erlotinib** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. **Erlotinib** should be taken 2 hours before or 10 hours after **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. Avoid or adjust **erlotinib** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Erlotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal perforation when given with **NSAIDs**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Erlotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** slightly increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. Avoid or adjust **erlotinib** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Vemurafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Ertapenem** → see carbapenems
- Erythromycin** → see macrolides
- Escitalopram** → see SSRIs
- Eslicarbazepine** → see antiepileptics
- Esmolol** → see beta blockers, selective
- Esomeprazole** → see proton pump inhibitors
- Estramustine** → see alkylating agents
- Etanercept**
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **etanercept**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical

## Etelcalcetide

- ▶ **Cinacalcet** increases the risk of hypocalcaemia when given with **etelcalcetide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

## Ethambutol

- ▶ **Isoniazid** increases the risk of optic neuropathy when given with **ethambutol**. [Severe] Anecdotal

## Ethosuximide → see antiepileptics

## Etodolac → see NSAIDs

- ▶ **Etomidate** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

## Etonogestrel

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, eslicarbazepine, fosphenytoin, oxcarbazepine, perampanel, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone, rufinamide, topiramate)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Apripitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Griseofulvin** decreases the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. MHRA advises avoid. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Sugammadex** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ulipristal** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Etoposide** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etoposide**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the exposure to **etoposide**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **etoposide**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- Etoricoxib** → see NSAIDs
- Etravirine**
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Etravirine** decreases the exposure to **antimalarials (artemether)**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study



- ▶ **Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Etravirine** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Etravirine** moderately decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Avoid unless given with atazanavir, darunavir, or lopinavir (all boosted with ritonavir). [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Unknown] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Mid] Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (tipranavir)** decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Etravirine** increases the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors (fosamprenavir)** (boosted with ritonavir). Refer to specialist literature. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Etravirine** decreases the exposure to **macrolides (clarithromycin)**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Etravirine** (with a boosted protease inhibitor) increases the exposure to **maraviroc**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Etravirine** moderately decreases the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Rifabutin** decreases the exposure to **etravirine**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Everolimus** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Appetizant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Certinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **everolimus**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Everolimus** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. [Mid] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ribociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Velpatasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Exemestane**
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** moderately decrease the exposure to **exemestane**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** moderately decreases the exposure to **exemestane**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Mitotane** moderately decreases the exposure to **exemestane**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **exemestane**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **exemestane**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Exenatide** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)
- SEPARATION OF ADMINISTRATION** With standard-release exenatide: some orally administered drugs should be taken at least 1 hour before, or 4 hours after, exenatide injection.
- Ezetimibe**
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **ezetimibe** and **ezetimibe** slightly increases the exposure to **ciclosporin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Fibrates** are predicted to increase the risk of gallstones when given with **ezetimibe**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ezetimibe** potentially increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins**. [Antagonist] Anecdotal
- Famotidine** → see H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists



**Fampridine**

- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** increase the concentration of fampridine. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Febuxostat**

- ▶ **Febuxostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **azathioprine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Febuxostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **didanosine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Febuxostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mercaptopurine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Felbinac** → see NSAIDs

**Felodipine** → see calcium channel blockers

**Fenofibrate** → see fibrates

**Fenoprofen** → see NSAIDs

**Fentanyl** → see opioids

**Ferric carboxymaltose** → see iron (injectable)

**Ferric maltol** → see iron (oral)

**Ferrous fumarate** → see iron (oral)

**Ferrous gluconate** → see iron (oral)

**Ferrous sulfate** → see iron (oral)

**Fesoterodine** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Fexofenadine** → see antihistamines, non-sedating

**Fibrates**

bezafibrate · ciprofibrate · fenofibrate · gemfibrozil

- ▶ **Antacids** slightly to moderately decrease the exposure to **gemfibrozil**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bezafibrate** is predicted to increase the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fenofibrate** increases the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Colchicine** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with fibrates. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Fibrates** are predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Gemfibrozil** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fibrates** are predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **daptomycin**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Gemfibrozil** very markedly increases the exposure to **dasabuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Gemfibrozil** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eluxadoline**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Gemfibrozil** moderately increases the exposure to **enzalutamide**. Avoid or adjust **enzalutamide** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fibrates** are predicted to increase the risk of gallstones when given with **ezetimibe**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fibrates** are predicted to increase the risk of hypoglycaemia when given with **insulins**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Gemfibrozil** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **montelukast**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Fibrates** are predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Gemfibrozil** increases the exposure to **pioglitazone**. Monitor blood glucose and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Gemfibrozil** increases the exposure to **repaglinide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Gemfibrozil** is predicted to increase the exposure to **retinoids (alitretinoin)**. Adjust **alitretinoin** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Gemfibrozil** increases the concentration of **retinoids (bexarotene)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Gemfibrozil** increases the exposure to **selexipag**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ciprofibrate** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins (atorvastatin)**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bezafibrate** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins (atorvastatin, fluvastatin)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fenofibrate** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins (atorvastatin, simvastatin)**. Adjust **fenofibrate** dose, p. 131. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ciprofibrate** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins (fluvastatin)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fenofibrate** is predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins (fluvastatin)**. Adjust **fenofibrate** dose, p. 131. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fenofibrate** is predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins (pravastatin)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fibrates (bezafibrate, ciprofibrate)** increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins (pravastatin)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fenofibrate** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Adjust **fenofibrate** and **rosuvastatin** doses, p. 131, p. 133. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Fibrates (bezafibrate, ciprofibrate)** increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Severe] Study

- Fibrates (**bezafibrate**, **ciprofibrate**) increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins** (**simvastatin**). Adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- **Gemfibrozil** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Fibrates are predicted to increase the risk of hypoglycaemia when given with **sulfonylureas**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Gemfibrozil** is predicted to increase the concentration of **taxanes** (**paclitaxel**). [Severe] Anecdotal
- Fibrates are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **ursodeoxycholic acid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

#### Fidaxomicin

- Antiarrhythmics (**amiodarone**, **dronedaron**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- HIV-protease inhibitors (**lopinavir**, **ritonavir**, **saquinavir**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- **Macrolides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- **Vemurafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

**Fingolimod** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

- Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **fingolimod**. [Moderate] Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **fingolimod**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fingolimod**. [Moderate] Study
- **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **fingolimod**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fingolimod**. [Moderate] Study
- **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fingolimod**. [Moderate] Study
- **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fingolimod**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Flavoxate** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

**Flecainide** → see antiarrhythmics

**Flucoxacinillin** → see penicillins

**Fluconazole** → see antifungals, azoles

#### Flucytosine

- **Amphotericin** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **flucytosine**. [Severe] Study
- **Cytarabine** decreases the concentration of **flucytosine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

**Fludarabine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **fludarabine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical

- **Fludarabine** increases the risk of pulmonary toxicity when given with **pentostatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

**Fludrocortisone** → see corticosteroids

#### Fluocinolone

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** With intravitreal use in adults: caution with concurrent administration of anticoagulant or antiplatelet drugs (higher incidence of conjunctival haemorrhage).

**Fluorouracil** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- **Fluorouracil** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics** (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - **Fluorouracil** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - **Folates** (**folic acid**) are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **fluorouracil**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Folates** (**folic acid**) are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **fluorouracil**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** (**cimetidine**) slightly increase the exposure to **fluorouracil**. [Severe] Study
  - **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **fluorouracil**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Metronidazole** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **fluorouracil**. [Severe] Study
- Fluoxetine** → see SSRIs
- Flupentixol** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- **Flupentixol** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - **Flupentixol** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid or monitor worsening parkinsonian symptoms. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

**Fluphenazine** → see phenothiazines

**Flurazepam** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- HIV-protease inhibitors (**ritonavir**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **flurazepam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Flurbiprofen** → see NSAIDs

**Fluticasone** → see corticosteroids

**Fluvastatin** → see statins

**Fluvoxamine** → see SSRIs

#### Folates

folic acid · folinic acid · levofolinic acid

- **Folates** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **antiepileptics** (**fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - **Folates** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **capecitabine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - **Folic acid** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **fluorouracil**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Folinic acid** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **fluorouracil**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Folates** are predicted to alter the effects of **ralitrexed**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - **Sulfasalazine** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **folates**. [Moderate] Study
  - **Folates** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **tegafur**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Folic acid** → see folates
- Folinic acid** → see folates
- Fondaparinux** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)
- Formoterol** → see beta<sub>2</sub> agonists
- Fosamprenavir** → see HIV-protease inhibitors
- Fosaprepitant**
- **Antiepileptics** (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **fosaprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **fosaprepitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. [Severe] Theoretical

## Fosaprepitant (continued)

- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to fosaprepitant. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Fosaprepitant is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- Fosaprepitant is predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (dexamethasone, methylprednisolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Fosaprepitant is predicted to decrease the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Fosaprepitant is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to fosaprepitant. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Fosaprepitant is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- Fosaprepitant is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to fosaprepitant. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Fosaprepitant is predicted to decrease the effects of **hormone replacement therapy**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- Fosaprepitant is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to fosaprepitant. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Fosaprepitant is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- Fosaprepitant is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to fosaprepitant. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Fosaprepitant slightly increases the exposure to **midazolam**. [Moderate] Study
- **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to fosaprepitant. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Fosaprepitant is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Fosaprepitant is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to fosaprepitant. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to fosaprepitant. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Fosaprepitant decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- **Foscarnet** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity)
- Foscarnet increases the risk of hypocalcaemia when given with **pentamidine**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847
- **Fosinopril** → see ACE inhibitors
- **Fosphenytoin** → see antiepileptics
- **Frovatriptan** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)
- **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** increase the concentration of **froatriptan**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- **Fulvestrant** → see TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)
- **Furosemide** → see loop diuretics
- **Fusidic acid**
- Fusidic acid increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- **Gabapentin** → see antiepileptics
- **Galantamine** → see anticholinesterases, centrally acting
- **Ganciclovir** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity)

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- **Ganciclovir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **didanosine**. [Moderate] Study
- **Mycophenolate** is predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **ganciclovir**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Gefitinib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- **Antacids** are predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to gefitinib. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Study
- **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to gefitinib. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Study
- **Gefitinib** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to gefitinib. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to gefitinib. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to slightly to moderately decrease the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Study
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Study
- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Study
- **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to gefitinib. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to gefitinib. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to gefitinib. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Gefitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the exposure to gefitinib. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to gefitinib. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to gefitinib. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Gemcitabine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **gemcitabine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- **Gemfibrozil** → see fibrates
- **Gentamicin** → see aminoglycosides
- **Glecaprevir**
- **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** potentially increase the exposure to glecaprevir. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to glecaprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ Antiepileptics (**eslicarbazepine**, **oxcarbazepine**) potentially decrease the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**) potentially increase the exposure to **glecaprevir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid or monitor. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** potentially increases the exposure to **glecaprevir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** potentially decreases the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Glecaprevir** (with **pibrentasvir**) increases the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Glecaprevir** (with **pibrentasvir**) increases the exposure to **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ HIV-protease inhibitors (**atazanavir**, **darunavir**, **lopinavir**) (boosted with **ritonavir**) increase the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ HIV-protease inhibitors (**ritonavir**) potentially increase the exposure to **glecaprevir**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lumacaftor** potentially decreases the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly affects the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Glecaprevir** (with **pibrentasvir**) increases the exposure to **statins** (**atorvastatin**, **simvastatin**). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Glecaprevir** (with **pibrentasvir**) is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**fluvastatin**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Glecaprevir** (with **pibrentasvir**) increases the exposure to **statins** (**pravastatin**). Use with caution and adjust **pravastatin** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Glecaprevir** (with **pibrentasvir**) increases the exposure to **statins** (**rosuvastatin**). Use with caution and adjust **rosuvastatin** dose. p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- Glibenclamide** → see sulfonylureas
- Glliclazide** → see sulfonylureas
- Glimepiride** → see sulfonylureas
- Glipizide** → see sulfonylureas
- Glucagon**
- ▶ **Glucagon** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins** (**warfarin**). [Severe] Study
- Glucosamine**
- ▶ **Glucosamine** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins** (**warfarin**). Avoid. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- Glucose** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)
- Glycerol phenylbutyrate**
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**valproate**) potentially oppose the effects of **glycerol phenylbutyrate**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** potentially oppose the effects of **glycerol phenylbutyrate**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Haloperidol** potentially opposes the effects of **glycerol phenylbutyrate**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Glyceryl trinitrate** → see nitrates
- Glycopyrronium** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)
- Golimimab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Granisetron** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- ▶ **Dopamine receptor agonists** (**apomorphine**) are predicted to increase the risk of severe hypotension when given with **granisetron**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Grapefruit juice**
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** moderately decreases the exposure to **aliskiren**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **antiarrhythmics** (**amiodarone**). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** moderately increases the exposure to **antiarrhythmics** (**dronedrone**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **antiarrhythmics** (**propafenone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** slightly increases the exposure to **antiepileptics** (**carbamazepine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** slightly decreases the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating** (**bilastine**). **Bilastine** should be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after **grapefruit juice**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating** (**rupatadine**). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **antimalarials** (**artemether**). [Unknown] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the concentration of **antimalarials** (**piperaquine**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** greatly decreases the exposure to **beta blockers, selective** (**celiprolol**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **buspirone**. Avoid. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** very slightly increases the exposure to **calcium channel blockers** (**amlodipine**). Avoid. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **calcium channel blockers** (**felodipine**). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers** (**lercanidipine**). Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **calcium channel blockers** (**nifedipine**). [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **calcium channel blockers** (**nifedipine**, **verapamil**). Avoid. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** markedly decreases the exposure to **clopidogrel**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** moderately increases the exposure to oral **corticosteroids** (**budesonide**). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical



## Grapefruit juice (continued)

- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **palbociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Grapefruit juice increases the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **ponatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **praziquantel**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the concentration of **ranolazine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **regorafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Grapefruit juice moderately increases the exposure to **SSRIs (sertraline)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Grapefruit juice increases the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ Grapefruit juice increases the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice increases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice moderately increases the exposure to **ticagrelor**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Grapefruit juice increases the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Grapefruit juice is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

## Grass pollen extract

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Desensitising vaccines should be avoided in patients taking beta-blockers (adrenaline might be ineffective in case of a hypersensitivity reaction) or ACE inhibitors (risk of severe anaphylactoid reactions).

## Grazoprevir

- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to moderately to markedly increase the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** greatly increases the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately to markedly increase the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately to markedly increase the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately to markedly increase the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to moderately to markedly increase the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to grazoprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grazoprevir** increases the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. Adjust atorvastatin dose, p. 132. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grazoprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (fluvastatin)**. Adjust fluvastatin dose, p. 132. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grazoprevir** increases the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Adjust rosuvastatin dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grazoprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Adjust simvastatin dose, p. 134. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grazoprevir** is predicted to increase the concentration of **sunitinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grazoprevir** increases the exposure to **tacrolimus**. [Moderate] Study

## Griseofulvin

- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially causes a disulfiram-like reaction when given with griseofulvin. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**phenobarbital**, **primidone**) decrease the effects of griseofulvin. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Griseofulvin** potentially decreases the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Griseofulvin** potentially decreases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Griseofulvin** potentially decreases the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Griseofulvin** decreases the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Griseofulvin** potentially decreases the efficacy of oral **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Griseofulvin** potentially decreases the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Griseofulvin** potentially decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal

## Guanethidine → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)

- ▶ **Amfetamines (dexamfetamine)** decrease the effects of guanethidine. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Benperidol** is predicted to decrease the effects of guanethidine. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Droperidol** is predicted to decrease the effects of guanethidine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Haloperidol** is predicted to decrease the antihypertensive effects of guanethidine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848



- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to decrease the antihypertensive effects of **guanethidine**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Phenothiazines** are predicted to decrease the antihypertensive effects of **guanethidine**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Guanethidine** is predicted to increase the effects of sympathomimetics, inotropic (**dopamine**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Guanethidine** is predicted to increase the effects of sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (**adrenaline/epinephrine, noradrenaline/norepinephrine**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Guanethidine** increases the effects of sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (**metaraminol**). [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Guanethidine** increases the effects of sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (**phenylephrine**). [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** are predicted to decrease the antihypertensive effects of **guanethidine**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- Guanfacine** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (oxcarbazepine)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Monitor and adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Guanfacine** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (valproate)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Chloramphenicol** is predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Guselkumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

## H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists

cimetidine · famotidine · nizatidine · ranitidine

- ▶ **Cimetidine** decreases the clearance of **albendazole**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cimetidine** increases the concentration of **aminophylline**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cimetidine** slightly increases the exposure to **anthracyclines (epirubicin)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cimetidine** increases the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cimetidine** slightly increases the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (flecainide)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Cimetidine** increases the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (lidocaine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cimetidine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cimetidine** transiently increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cimetidine** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)**. Administer **itraconazole** capsules with an acidic beverage. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)**. Administer **ketoconazole** with an acidic beverage. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)**. Avoid use of **posaconazole** oral suspension. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cimetidine** decreases the clearance of **antimalarials (chloroquine)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cimetidine** slightly increases the exposure to **antimalarials (quinine)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **bosutinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cimetidine** slightly increases the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cimetidine (high-dose)** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (lercanidipine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cimetidine** moderately increases the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (nifedipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cimetidine** increases the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (verapamil)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cimetidine** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **capecitabine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cimetidine** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Cimetidine** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **dipyridamole** (immediate release tablets). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cimetidine** slightly increases the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (pramipexole)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (continued)

- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists are predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. Erlotinib should be taken 2 hours before or 10 hours after H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists. [Moderate] Study
- Cimetidine increases the concentration of **fampridine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Cimetidine slightly increases the exposure to **fluorouracil**. [Severe] Study
- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists are predicted to slightly to moderately decrease the exposure to **gefitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists decrease the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Cimetidine is predicted to decrease the clearance of **hydroxychloroquine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists are predicted to decrease the absorption of **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Adjust dose, see ledipasvir with sofosbuvir p. 401. [Moderate] Study
- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (**cimetidine**, **ranitidine**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Cimetidine slightly increases the exposure to **macrolides (erythromycin)**. [Moderate] Study
- Cimetidine increases the concentration of **mebendazole**. [Moderate] Study
- Cimetidine slightly increases the exposure to **metformin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Cimetidine slightly increases the exposure to **mirtazapine**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Cimetidine increases the exposure to **moclobemide**. Adjust moclobemide dose. [Mild] Study
- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists are predicted to decrease the absorption of **nilotinib**. H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists should be taken 10 hours before or 2 hours after nilotinib. p. 560. [Mild] Theoretical
- Cimetidine increases the concentration of **opioids (alfentanil)**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- Cimetidine increases the exposure to **opioids (fentanyl)**. [Moderate] Study
- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists are predicted to decrease the exposure to **pazopanib**. H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists should be taken 10 hours before or 2 hours after pazopanib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Cimetidine increases the exposure to **phenindione**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Cimetidine moderately increases the exposure to **praziquantel**. [Moderate] Study
- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists are predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists should be taken 12 hours before or 4 hours after rilpivirine. [Severe] Study
- Cimetidine slightly increases the exposure to **roflumilast**. [Moderate] Study
- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists potentially decrease the exposure to **sofosbuvir**. Adjust dose, see ledipasvir with sofosbuvir p. 401, sofosbuvir with velpatasvir, and sofosbuvir with velpatasvir and voxilaprevir. [Moderate] Study
- Cimetidine slightly increases the exposure to **SSRIs (citalopram, escitalopram)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Cimetidine slightly increases the exposure to **SSRIs (paroxetine, sertraline)**. [Moderate] Study
- Cimetidine is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **tegafur**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Cimetidine increases the concentration of **theophylline**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- Cimetidine increases the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Moderate] Study
- H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists are predicted to decrease the concentration of **velpatasvir**. Adjust dose, see sofosbuvir with velpatasvir. [Moderate] Study
- Cimetidine slightly increases the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Mild] Study
- Cimetidine slightly increases the exposure to **zolmitriptan**. Adjust zolmitriptan dose, p. 292. [Mild] Study

**Haloperidol** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects), TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Dose adjustment might be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment.

- Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) decrease the concentration of **haloperidol**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - **Haloperidol** potentially increases the risk of overheating and dehydration when given with **antiepileptics (zonisamide)**. Avoid in children. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)** increase the concentration of **haloperidol**. [Moderate] Study
  - **Haloperidol** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849 → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849
  - **Enzalutamide** decreases the concentration of **haloperidol**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - **Haloperidol** potentially opposes the effects of **glycerol phenylbutyrate**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - **Haloperidol** is predicted to decrease the antihypertensive effects of **guanethidine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **haloperidol**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - **Haloperidol** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - **Mitotane** decreases the concentration of **haloperidol**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **haloperidol**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - **Haloperidol** potentially decreases the effects of **sodium phenylbutyrate**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - **SSRIs (fluoxetine)** increase the concentration of **haloperidol**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** increase the concentration of **haloperidol**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - **Venlafaxine** slightly increases the exposure to **haloperidol**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849 → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- Heparin (unfractionated)** → see TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium), TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)
- **Ranibizumab** increases the risk of bleeding events when given with **heparin (unfractionated)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- HIV-protease inhibitors** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

atazanavir • darunavir • fosamprenavir • lopinavir • ritonavir • saquinavir • tipranavir

- Caution on concurrent use of **atazanavir**, **lopinavir** with **ritonavir**, or **ritonavir** with drugs that prolong the PR interval.
- Concurrent use of **saquinavir** with drugs that prolong the PR interval is contra-indicated.
- Caution with concurrent use of **tipranavir** with drugs that increase risk of bleeding.

- **Tipranavir** slightly decreases the exposure to **abacavir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **abiraterone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Ritonavir** decreases the exposure to **albendazole**. [Moderate] Study
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** increase the exposure to **almotriptan**. [Mild] Study
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (alfuzosin, tamsulosin)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (doxazosin)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** moderately increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir, tipranavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **amfetamines**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ritonavir** decreases the exposure to **aminophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **anaesthetics, local (ropivacaine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **atazanavir**. Atazanavir should be taken 2 hours before or 1 hour after antacids. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **tipranavir**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (disopyramide)**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** very markedly increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (dronedrone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (lidocaine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **anticholinesterases, centrally acting (galantamine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** and **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to affect the exposure to **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** and **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** decrease the concentration of **HIV-protease inhibitors**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ritonavir** slightly decreases the exposure to **antiepileptics (lamotrigine)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to very slightly increase the exposure to **antiepileptics (perampanel)**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to affect the concentration of **antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** and **antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **HIV-protease inhibitors**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **antiepileptics (valproate)**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole)** slightly increase the exposure to **tipranavir**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **HIV-protease inhibitors**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to affect the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** and **antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** potentially affect the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (rupatadine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** decrease the exposure to **antimalarials (atovaquone)**. Avoid if boosted with ritonavir. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **antimalarials (proguanil)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to affect the exposure to **antimalarials (quinine)**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **apixaban**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **aprepitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust aripiprazole dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, non-selective (nadolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (metoprolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **beta<sub>2</sub> agonists (salmeterol)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** slightly increase the exposure to **bortezomib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **bosentan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bupropion**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **buprion**. Adjust buprion dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** slightly increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to moderately increase the clearance of **caffeine citrate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (lercanidipine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid or adjust ceritinib dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** increase the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **cilostazol**. Adjust cilostazol dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to affect the exposure to **clozapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust colchicine dose. [Severe] Study

## HIV-protease inhibitors (continued)

- ▶ **Atazanavir** (unboosted) increases the exposure to **combined hormonal contraceptives**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (beclomethasone)** (risk with beclomethasone is likely to be lower than with other corticosteroids). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (betamethasone, budesonide, ciclesonide, deflazacort, dexamethasone, fludrocortisone, fluticasone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, mometasone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone)**. Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to affect the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Adjust daclatasvir dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** very slightly increase the exposure to **delamanid**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **diazepam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Didanosine** (buffered) decreases the exposure to **atazanavir**. **Didanosine** should be taken 2 hours after **atazanavir**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Didanosine** (buffered) is predicted to decrease the exposure to **darunavir** (boosted with ritonavir). **Didanosine** should be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after **darunavir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tipranavir** decreases the exposure to **didanosine**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. Adjust dose and monitor concentration. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fosamprenavir** (boosted with ritonavir) slightly decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Avoid if resistant to HIV-integrase inhibitors. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tipranavir** moderately decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** increase the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** increase the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of **dopamine receptor agonists (cabergoline)**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **duloxetine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** decreases the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** slightly to moderately increase the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eletriptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir, tipranavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **eluxadoline**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, lopinavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) increase the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Refer to specialist literature. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Etravirine** increases the exposure to **fosamprenavir** (boosted with ritonavir). Refer to specialist literature. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Tipranavir** decreases the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust fesoterodine dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **flurazepam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **fosaprepitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **gefitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, darunavir, lopinavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) increase the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** potentially increases the exposure to **glecaprevir**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately to markedly increase the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Adjust guanfacine dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** decrease the exposure to **atazanavir**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **haloperidol**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the effects of **hormone replacement therapy**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinitib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **iron chelators (deferasirox)**. Monitor serum ferritin and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust ivacaftor p. 186 or lumacaftor with ivacaftor p. 187 dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study



- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **macitentan**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** increase the exposure to **saquinavir** and **saquinavir** increases the exposure to **macrolides (clarithromycin)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **saquinavir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Atazanavir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **macrolides (clarithromycin)**. Adjust dose in renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** increases the exposure to **macrolides (clarithromycin)**. Adjust dose in renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tipranavir** (boosted with ritonavir) increases the exposure to **macrolides (clarithromycin)** and **macrolides (clarithromycin)** increase the exposure to **tipranavir** (boosted with ritonavir). Monitor; adjust dose in renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (darunavir, fosamprenavir, lopinavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) are predicted to increase the exposure to **macrolides (clarithromycin)**. Adjust dose in renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, darunavir, fosamprenavir, lopinavir, ritonavir, tipranavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **macrolides (erythromycin)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Darunavir** (boosted with ritonavir) markedly increases the exposure to **maraviroc**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Maraviroc** potentially decreases the exposure to **fosamprenavir** and **fosamprenavir** potentially decreases the exposure to **maraviroc**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, saquinavir)** moderately to markedly increase the exposure to **maraviroc**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Lopinavir** (boosted with ritonavir) moderately increases the exposure to **maraviroc**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** markedly increases the exposure to **maraviroc**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **mirabegron**. Adjust mirabegron dose in hepatic and renal impairment. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **mirtazapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **modafinil**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the risk of neutropenia when given with **monoclonal antibodies (brentuximab vedotin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **monoclonal antibodies (trastuzumab emtansine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** decreases the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors**. Refer to specialist literature. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nitisnone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olanzapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, buprenorphine, fentanyl, oxycodone, sufentanil)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** (boosted with ritonavir) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (methadone)**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **opioids (morphine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ritonavir** increases the risk of CNS toxicity when given with **opioids (pethidine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **palbociclib**. Avoid or adjust **palbociclib** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **panobinostat**. Adjust **panobinostat** dose; in hepatic impairment avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid or adjust **pazopanib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil, vardenafil)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil)**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **sildenafil** dose, p. 120. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (tadalafil)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, lopinavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) increase the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** potentially increases the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pirfenidone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **ponatinib**. Monitor and adjust **ponatinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **praziquantel**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** decrease the exposure to **atazanavir**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** increase the exposure to **saquinavir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tipranavir** decreases the exposure to **proton pump inhibitors**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Atazanavir** increases the exposure to **raltegravir** (high-dose). Avoid. [Moderate] Study



## HIV-protease inhibitors (continued)

- ▶ **Darunavir** increases the risk of rash when given with **raltegravir**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Fosamprenavir** (boosted with ritonavir) decreases the exposure to **raltegravir** and **raltegravir** decreases the exposure to **fosamprenavir** (boosted with ritonavir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tipranavir** (boosted with ritonavir) is predicted to decrease the exposure to **raltegravir** (high-dose). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **rebexetine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **regorafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **repaglinide**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **retinoids (alitretinoin)**. Adjust alitretinoin dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid or adjust ribociclib dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, darunavir, fosamprenavir, lopinavir, saquinavir, tipranavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) increase the exposure to **rifabutin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** markedly increases the exposure to **rifabutin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to HIV-protease inhibitors (**atazanavir, darunavir, fosamprenavir, lopinavir, saquinavir**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to **ritonavir**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tipranavir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **riociguat**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ritonavir** moderately increases the exposure to **rivaroxaban**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **roxolitinib**. Adjust dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tipranavir** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sofosbuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **solifenacin**. Adjust solifenacin or tamsulosin with solifenacin dose; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **SSRIs (dapoxetine)**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust dapoxetine dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. Avoid or adjust dose and monitor rhabdomyolysis. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** slightly to moderately increase the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust sunitinib dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **taxanes (docetaxel)**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (paclitaxel)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, darunavir)** increase the exposure to **tenofovir alafenamide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Tipranavir** is predicted to affect the exposure to **tenofovir alafenamide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ritonavir** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **theophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** moderately decreases the exposure to **tizanidine**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacinib**. Adjust tofacitinib dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **toremifene**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **trazodone**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir, tipranavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, darunavir, fosamprenavir, lopinavir, saquinavir, tipranavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ritonavir** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **vemurafenib**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust venetoclax dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **vitamin D substances (paricalcitol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Atazanavir** (boosted with ritonavir) increases the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Lopinavir** is predicted to increase the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tipranavir** slightly decreases the exposure to **zidovudine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Homatropine** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

## Hormone replacement therapy

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, eslicarbazepine, fosphenytoin, oxcarbazepine, perampanel, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone, rufinamide, topiramate)** are predicted to decrease the effects of hormone replacement therapy. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Hormone replacement therapy** is predicted to alter the exposure to **antiepileptics (lamotrigine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to decrease the effects of hormone replacement therapy. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the effects of hormone replacement therapy. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Hormone replacement therapy** decreases the clearance of dopamine receptor agonists (**ropinirole**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the effects of hormone replacement therapy. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to decrease the effects of hormone replacement therapy. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the effects of hormone replacement therapy. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Hormone replacement therapy** is predicted to increase the risk of venous thromboembolism when given with **lenalidomide**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the effects of hormone replacement therapy. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Hormone replacement therapy** is predicted to increase the exposure to monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (**selegiline**). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of hormone replacement therapy. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **NSAIDs (etoricoxib)** slightly increase the exposure to hormone replacement therapy. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Hormone replacement therapy** is predicted to increase the risk of venous thromboembolism when given with **pomalidomide**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the effects of hormone replacement therapy. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the effects of hormone replacement therapy. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of hormone replacement therapy. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Hormone replacement therapy** is predicted to increase the risk of venous thromboembolism when given with **thalidomide**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Oral hormone replacement therapy** is predicted to decrease the effects of **thyroid hormones**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Hydralazine** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)

- ▶ **Diazoxide** increases the risk of severe hypotension when given with hydralazine. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

**Hydrochlorothiazide** → see thiazide diuretics

**Hydrocortisone** → see corticosteroids

**Hydroflumethiazide** → see thiazide diuretics

**Hydromorphone** → see opioids

**Hydroxycarbamide** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- ▶ **Hydroxycarbamide** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **didanosine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with hydroxycarbamide. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Hydroxycarbamide** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **stavudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

### Hydroxychloroquine

- ▶ **Hydroxychloroquine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **agalsidase**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **hydroxychloroquine**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium salts (calcium carbonate)** decrease the absorption of **hydroxychloroquine**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Hydroxychloroquine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of oral **cholera vaccine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** are predicted to decrease the clearance of **hydroxychloroquine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lanthanum** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **hydroxychloroquine**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Hydroxychloroquine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **larotidase**. Avoid simultaneous administration. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Hydroxychloroquine** is predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **penicillamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Hydroxychloroquine** is predicted to decrease efficacy **rabies vaccine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Hydroxyzine** → see antihistamines, sedating
- Hyoscine** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)
- Ibandronic acid** → see bisphosphonates
- Ibrutinib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Avoid food or drink containing bitter (Seville) oranges as they are predicted to increase the exposure to ibrutinib.

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Adjust ibrutinib dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to ibrutinib. Avoid or adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Adjust ibrutinib dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Adjust ibrutinib dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Adjust ibrutinib dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Adjust ibrutinib dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to ibrutinib. Avoid or adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to ibrutinib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Adjust ibrutinib dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Adjust ibrutinib dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to ibrutinib. Avoid or adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Adjust ibrutinib dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Adjust ibrutinib dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ibrutinib. Adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to ibrutinib. Avoid or adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Study

A1

Interactions | Appendix 1

## Ibrutinib (continued)

- **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to ibrutinib. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

## Ibuprofen → see NSAIDs

## Icatibant

- **ACE inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of icatibant and icatibant is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **ACE inhibitors**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

## Idarubicin → see anthracyclines

## Idelalisib → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **abiraterone**. [Severe] Theoretical

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to

- aldosterone antagonists (**eplerenone**). Avoid. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** increases the exposure to **almotriptan**. [Mild] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **alpha blockers** (**alfuzosin**, **tamsulosin**). Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers** (**doxazosin**). [Moderate] Study

- **Idelalisib** moderately increases the exposure to **alprazolam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to

- antiarrhythmics (**amiodarone**). Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

- **Idelalisib** very markedly increases the exposure to

- antiarrhythmics (**dronedarone**). Avoid. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to
- antiarrhythmics (**propafenone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to
- anticholinesterases, centrally acting (**galantamine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

- **Antiepileptics** (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to

- idelalisib. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to very slightly increase the exposure to
- antiepileptics (**perampanel**). [Mild] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antifungals**, **azoles** (**isavuconazole**). Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to
- antihistamines, non-sedating (**mizolastine**). Avoid. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to
- antihistamines, non-sedating (**rupatadine**). Avoid. [Moderate] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the concentration of

- antimalarials (**piperaquine**). [Severe] Theoretical

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to
- aprepitant. [Moderate] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to
- aripiprazole. Adjust aripiprazole dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta<sub>2</sub> agonists** (**salmeterol**). Avoid. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** slightly increases the exposure to **bortezomib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

- **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to idelalisib. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to
- bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **buspirone**. Adjust buspirone dose. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** slightly increases the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium**

- channel blockers (**amlodipine**, **felodipine**, **lacidipine**, **nicardipine**, **nifedipine**, **nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium**

- channel blockers (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**). [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to
- calcium channel blockers (**lercanidipine**). Avoid. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cannabis** extract. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid or adjust **ceritinib** dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

- **Idelalisib** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to
- cilostazol**. Adjust **cilostazol** dose. [Moderate] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to
- cinacalcet**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to
- cobimetinib**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to
- corticosteroids (**beclometasone**) (risk with beclometasone is likely to be lower than with other corticosteroids). [Moderate] Theoretical

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to
- corticosteroids (**betamethasone**, **budesonide**, **ciclesonide**, **deflazacort**, **dexamethasone**, **fludrocortisone**, **fluticasone**, **hydrocortisone**, **methylprednisolone**, **mometasone**, **prednisolone**, **prednisone**, **triamcinolone**). Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to
- crizotinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to
- daclatasvir**. Adjust **daclatasvir** dose. [Moderate] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to
- dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

- **Idelalisib** very slightly increases the exposure to **delamanid**. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** increases the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists** (**bromocriptine**). [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the concentration of
- dopamine receptor agonists (**cabergoline**). [Moderate] Anecdotal

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

- **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to idelalisib. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

- **Idelalisib** slightly to moderately increases the exposure to
- elbasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to
- elotriptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study

- **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to idelalisib. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to
- erlotinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the concentration of
- everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to
- fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to
- fosaprepitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **gefitinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to
- grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **ibrutinib** dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** p. 186 or **lumacaftor with ivacaftor** p. 187 dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **macitentan**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** markedly increases the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mirabegron**. Adjust **mirabegron** dose in hepatic and renal impairment. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mirtazapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **idelalisib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **modafinil**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **monoclonal antibodies (trastuzumab emtansine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **idelalisib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nitisnone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, buprenorphine, fentanyl, oxycodone, sufentanil)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (methadone)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **palbociclib**. Avoid or adjust **palbociclib** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **panobinostat**. Adjust **panobinostat** dose; in hepatic impairment avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid or adjust **pazopanib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil, vardenafil)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil)**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **sildenafil** dose, p. 120. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (tadalafil)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **ponatinib**. Monitor and adjust **ponatinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **praziquantel**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **reboxetine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **regorafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **repaglinide**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **retinoids (alitretinoin)**. Adjust **alitretinoin** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid or adjust **ribociclib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **idelalisib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **roxolitinib**. Adjust dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **solifenacin**. Adjust **solifenacin** or **tamsulosin** with **solifenacin** dose; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **SSRIs (dapoxetine)**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **dapoxetine** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **idelalisib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. Avoid or adjust dose and monitor rhabdomyolysis. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **taxanes (docetaxel)**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (paclitaxel)**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacinib**. Adjust **tofacinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study



## Idelalisib (continued)

- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **toremifene**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **trazodone**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vemurafenib**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vitamin D substances (paricalcitol)**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Ilofamide** → see alkylating agents
- Iloprost** → see TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)
- Imatinib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (tamsulosin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (dronedrone)**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (oxcarbazepine)** decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (rupatadine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Asparaginase** is predicted to increase the risk of hepatotoxicity when given with **imatinib**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **buspiron**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine,**

**lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (methylprednisolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crisantaspase** is predicted to increase the risk of hepatotoxicity when given with **imatinib**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **dopamine receptor agonists (cabergoline)**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **gefitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Adjust **ibrutinib** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. [Moderate] Study



- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, buprenorphine, fentanyl, oxycodone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (methadone, sufentanil)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** increases the risk of hepatotoxicity when given with **paracetamol**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Pegaspargase** is predicted to increase the risk of hepatotoxicity when given with **imatinib**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil)**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil)**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (tadalafil)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (vardenafil)**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **roxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs (dapoxetine)**. Adjust **dapoxetine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Tedizolid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Imidapril** → see ACE inhibitors
- Imipenem** → see carbapenems
- Imipramine** → see tricyclic antidepressants
- Indacaterol** → see beta<sub>2</sub> agonists
- Indapamide** → see thiazide diuretics
- Indometacin** → see NSAIDs
- Indoramin** → see alpha blockers
- Infliximab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Influenza vaccine (live)** → see live vaccines
- Inotuzumab ozogamicin** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Insulins** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)
- ▶ **Fibrates** are predicted to increase the risk of hypoglycaemia when given with **insulins**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Interferon alfa** → see interferons
- Interferon beta** → see interferons
- Interferons** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

#### interferon alfa • interferon beta • peginterferon alfa

- ▶ **Interferons** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **aminophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Interferon alfa** is predicted to increase the risk of peripheral neuropathy when given with **telbivudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Peginterferon alfa** increases the risk of peripheral neuropathy when given with **telbivudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Interferons** slightly increase the exposure to **theophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Ipilimumab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Ipratropium** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)
- ▶ **Beta<sub>2</sub> agonists** are predicted to increase the risk of glaucoma when given with **ipratropium**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- Irbesartan** → see angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Irinotecan** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

## Irinotecan (continued)

- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **irinotecan**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Irinotecan** is predicted to decrease the effects of **neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **irinotecan**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **irinotecan**. Avoid or monitor. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** slightly decreases the exposure to **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Irinotecan** is predicted to increase the risk of prolonged neuromuscular blockade when given with **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Theoretical

## Iron (injectable)

ferric carboxymaltose · iron dextran · iron isomaltoside 1000 · iron sucrose

- ▶ **Chloramphenicol** decreases the efficacy of intravenous iron (injectable). [Moderate] Anecdotal

## Iron (oral)

ferric maltol · ferrous fumarate · ferrous gluconate · ferrous sulfate · polysaccharide-iron complex · sodium feredetate

- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **iron (oral)**. **Iron (oral)** should be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after antacids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** is predicted to decrease the absorption of oral **bisphosphonates (ibandronic acid)**. Avoid **iron (oral)** for at least 6 hours before or 1 hour after **ibandronic acid**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the absorption of **bisphosphonates (risedronate)**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the absorption of **bisphosphonates (sodium clodronate)**. Avoid **iron (oral)** for 2 hours before or 1 hour after **sodium clodronate**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium salts (calcium carbonate)** decrease the absorption of **iron (oral)**. **Calcium carbonate** should be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after **iron (oral)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **carbidopa**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Chloramphenicol** decreases the efficacy of oral **iron (oral)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the absorption of **dolutegravir**. **Dolutegravir** should be taken 2 hours before or 6 hours after **iron (oral)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **eltrombopag**. **Eltrombopag** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **iron (oral)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **entacapone**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the absorption of **levodopa**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the effects of **methyldopa**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **penicillamine**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the exposure to **quinolones**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the absorption of **tetracyclines**. **Tetracyclines** should be taken 2 to 3 hours after **iron (oral)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the absorption of **thyroid hormones (levothyroxine)**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Trientine** potentially decreases the absorption of **iron (oral)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Zinc** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **iron (oral)** and **iron (oral)** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **zinc**. [Moderate] Study

## Iron chelators

deferasirox · desferrioxamine · dextrazoxane

- ▶ **Deferasirox** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aminophylline**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids (aluminium hydroxide)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **deferasirox**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **deferasirox**. Monitor serum ferritin and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ascorbic acid** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **desferrioxamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aspirin** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal bleeds when given with **deferasirox**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bisphosphonates** are predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal bleeding when given with **deferasirox**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Deferasirox** is predicted to increase the exposure to **clozapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal bleeding when given with **deferasirox**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **deferasirox**. Monitor serum ferritin and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **dextrazoxane**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **NSAIDs** are predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal bleeding when given with **deferasirox**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Deferasirox** moderately increases the exposure to **repaglinide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **deferasirox**. Monitor serum ferritin and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Deferasirox** is predicted to increase the exposure to **selexipag**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Deferasirox** increases the exposure to **theophylline**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Deferasirox** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tizanidine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Iron dextran** → see iron (injectable)

**Iron isomaltoside 1000** → see iron (injectable)

**Iron sucrose** → see iron (injectable)

**Isavuconazole** → see antifungals, azoles

**Isocarboxazid** → see monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible

**Isoflurane** → see volatile halogenated anaesthetics

**Isometheptene** → see sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

**Isoniazid** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Avoid tyramine or histamine rich foods, as tachycardia, palpitation, hypotension, flushing, headache, dizziness, and sweating reported.

- ▶ **Isoniazid** is predicted to affect the clearance of **aminophylline**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Isoniazid** markedly increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** and **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** increase the risk of hepatotoxicity when given with **isoniazid**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Isoniazid** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ **Cycloserine** increases the risk of CNS toxicity when given with **isoniazid**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Isoniazid** is predicted to increase the risk of peripheral neuropathy when given with **didanosine**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ **Isoniazid** increases the risk of optic neuropathy when given with **ethambutol**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Isoniazid** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Isoniazid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Unknown] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Isoniazid** is predicted to increase the risk of peripheral neuropathy when given with **stavudine**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ **Isoniazid** is predicted to affect the clearance of **theophylline**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Isoniazid** potentially increases the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with **volatile halogenated anaesthetics (methoxyflurane)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Isoorbide dinitrate** → see nitrates
- Isoorbide mononitrate** → see nitrates
- Isotretinoin** → see retinoids
- Itraconazole** → see antifungals, azoles
- Ivabradine** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedrone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Appetitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** decreases the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

#### Ivacaftor

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Avoid bitter (Seville) oranges as they are predicted to increase the exposure to ivacaftor.

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedrone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** p. 186 or **lumacaftor with ivacaftor** p. 187 dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Appetitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** p. 186 or **lumacaftor with ivacaftor** p. 187 dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ivacaftor** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins (warfarin)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ivacaftor** slightly increases the exposure to **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** p. 186 or **lumacaftor with ivacaftor** p. 187 dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** p. 186 or **lumacaftor with ivacaftor** p. 187 dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ivacaftor** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** p. 186 or **lumacaftor with ivacaftor** p. 187 dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. [Severe] Theoretical

#### Ivermectin

- ▶ **Ivermectin** potentially increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Levamisole** increases the exposure to **ivermectin**. [Moderate] Study

**Ixazomib**

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to ixazomib. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to ixazomib. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to ixazomib. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to ixazomib. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to ixazomib. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Ixekizumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

**Kaolin**

- ▶ **Kaolin** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **tetracyclines**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Ketamine** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Memantine** is predicted to increase the risk of CNS side-effects when given with ketamine. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Ketoconazole** → see antifungals, azoles

**Ketoprofen** → see NSAIDs

**Ketorolac** → see NSAIDs

**Ketotifen** → see antihistamines, sedating

**Labetalol** → see beta blockers, non-selective

**Lacidipine** → see calcium channel blockers

**Lacosamide** → see antiepileptics

**Lamivudine** → see TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy)

- ▶ **Trimethoprim** slightly increases the exposure to lamivudine. [Moderate] Study

**Lamotrigine** → see antiepileptics

**Laureotide**

- ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective** are predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with laureotide. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** are predicted to increase the risk of bradycardia when given with laureotide. [Moderate] Theoretical

▶ **Laureotide** is predicted to decrease the absorption of oral **ciclosporin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical

**Lansoprazole** → see proton pump inhibitors

**Lanthanum**

- ▶ **Lanthanum** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Lanthanum** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **antimalarials (chloroquine)**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Lanthanum** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **hydroxychloroquine**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Lanthanum** moderately decreases the exposure to **quinolones**. Quinolones should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after lanthanum. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Lanthanum** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **tetracyclines**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Lanthanum** decreases the absorption of **thyroid hormones**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study

**Lapatinib** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid.

[Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to

- antihistamines, non-sedating (fexofenadine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, non-selective (nadolol)**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid or adjust colchicine dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **digoxin**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **loperamide**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **panobinostat**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sirolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical



- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Lapatinib** slightly increases the exposure to **taxanes** (**paclitaxel**). [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tedizolid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Theoretical

#### Larotidase

- ▶ **Antimalarials** (**chloroquine**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **larotidase**. Avoid simultaneous administration. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Hydroxychloroquine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **larotidase**. Avoid simultaneous administration. [Severe] Theoretical

#### Ledipasvir

- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Separate administration by 4 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ledipasvir** increases the risk of severe bradycardia or heart block when given with **antiarrhythmics** (**amiodarone**). Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antiepileptics** (**carbamazepine**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium salts** (**calcium carbonate**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Separate administration by 4 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Adjust dose, see **ledipasvir** with **sofosbuvir** p. 401. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Adjust dose, see **ledipasvir** with **sofosbuvir** p. 401. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ledipasvir** moderately increases the exposure to **simeprevir** and **simeprevir** slightly increases the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ledipasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**atorvastatin**, **fluvastatin**, **pravastatin**, **simvastatin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ledipasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**rosuvastatin**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ledipasvir** (with **sofosbuvir**) slightly increases the exposure to **tenofovir disoproxil**. [Moderate] Study

**Leflunomide** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

**PHARMACOLOGY** Leflunomide has a long half-life; washout procedure recommended before switching to other DMARDs (consult product literature).

- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** decreases the exposure to **aminophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **anaesthetics, local** (**ropivacaine**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** potentially increases the exposure to **baricitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to moderately increase the clearance of **caffeine citrate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **clozapine**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Leflunomide** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **duloxetine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **leflunomide**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **montelukast**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olanzapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pioglitazone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pirfenidone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **repaglinide**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **selexipag**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**rosuvastatin**). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to increase the concentration of **taxanes** (**paclitaxel**). [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **theophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Leflunomide** moderately decreases the exposure to **tizanidine**. [Mild] Study

**Lenalidomide** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)

- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the risk of venous thromboembolism when given with **lenalidomide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Hormone replacement therapy** is predicted to increase the risk of venous thromboembolism when given with **lenalidomide**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Lercanidipine** → see calcium channel blockers

#### Levamisole

- ▶ **Albendazole** slightly decreases the exposure to **levamisole** and **levamisole** moderately decreases the exposure to **albendazole**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially causes a disulfiram-like reaction when given with **levamisole**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Levamisole** increases the exposure to **ivermectin**. [Moderate] Study

**Levetiracetam** → see antiepileptics

**Levobunolol** → see beta blockers, non-selective

**Levobupivacaine** → see anaesthetics, local

**Levocetirizine** → see antihistamines, non-sedating

**Levodopa** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Drugs with antimuscarinic effects might reduce the absorption of **levodopa**.

- ▶ **Amisulpride** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics** (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aripiprazole** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Asenapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Baclofen** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **levodopa**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Benperidol** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Bupropion** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **levodopa**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clozapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Droperidol** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Entacapone** increases the exposure to **levodopa**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Flupentixol** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid or monitor worsening parkinsonian symptoms. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Haloperidol** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the absorption of **levodopa**. [Moderate] Study



## Levodopa (continued)

- ▶ **Isoniazid** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Levodopa** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Loxapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Lurasidone** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Memantine** is predicted to increase the effects of **levodopa**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Metoclopramide** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Levodopa** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **moclobemide**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Levodopa** increases the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors** are predicted to increase the effects of **levodopa**. Adjust dose. [Mild] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Olanzapine** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid or monitor worsening parkinsonian symptoms. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Opicapone** increases the exposure to **levodopa**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Paliperidone** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Phenothiazines** decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid or monitor worsening parkinsonian symptoms. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Pimozide** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Quetiapine** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Risperidone** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Sulpiride** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Tetrabenazine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tolcapone** increases the exposure to **levodopa**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Tryptophan** greatly decreases the concentration of **levodopa**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Zuclopenthixol** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid or monitor worsening parkinsonian symptoms. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

**Levofloxacin** → see quinolones**Levofolinic acid** → see folates**Levomopromazine** → see phenothiazines**Levonorgestrel**

- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, eslicarbazepine, fosphenytoin, oxcarbazepine, perampanel, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone, rufinamide, topiramate**) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Griseofulvin** potentially decreases the efficacy of oral **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. MHRA advises avoid. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sugammadex** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **levonorgestrel**. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ulipristal** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Levothyroxine** → see thyroid hormones**Lidocaine** → see antiarrhythmics**Linagliptin** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)

- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **linagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **linagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Linagliptin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **linagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **linagliptin**. [Moderate] Study

**Linezolid** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Patients taking linezolid should avoid consuming large amounts of tyramine-rich foods (such as mature cheese, salami, pickled herring, *Bovril*®, *Oxo*®, *Marmite*® or any similar meat or yeast extract or fermented soya bean extract, and some beers, lagers or wines).

- ▶ **Beta<sub>2</sub> agonists** are predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the risk of intraoperative hypertension when given with **linezolid**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Buspirone** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Levodopa** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** increase the exposure to **linezolid**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Methylenedinitrate** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Moclobemide** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **linezolid**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **moclobemide**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **linezolid**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline, selegiline)** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **linezolid**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (safinamide)** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **linezolid**.

Avoid and for 1 week after stopping **safinamide**. [Severe]

Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

- ▶ **Reboxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to **linezolid**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Sympathomimetics, inotropic** are predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (**adrenaline/epinephrine, ephedrine, isometheptene, noradrenaline/norepinephrine, phenylephrine**) are predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (**pseudoephedrine**) increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Liothyronine** → see thyroid hormones
- Liraglutide** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)
- Lisdexamfetamine** → see amfetamines
- Lisinopril** → see ACE inhibitors
- Lithium** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- ▶ **ACE inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of **lithium**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Acetazolamide** alters the concentration of **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)** potentially increase the concentration of **lithium**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aldosterone antagonists (spironolactone)** potentially increase the concentration of **lithium**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aminophylline** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **lithium**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Angiotensin-II receptor antagonists** potentially increase the concentration of **lithium**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, oxcarbazepine)** are predicted to increase the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Calcitonin (salmon)** decreases the concentration of **lithium**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Loop diuretics** increase the concentration of **lithium**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Methyldopa** increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **NSAIDs** increase the concentration of **lithium**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Phenothiazines** potentially increase the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Potassium-sparing diuretics (triamterene)** potentially increase the clearance of **lithium**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Quetiapine** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Risperidone** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Sodium bicarbonate** decreases the concentration of **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Sulpiride** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Theophylline** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **lithium**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Thiazide diuretics** increase the concentration of **lithium**. Avoid or adjust dose and monitor concentration. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** potentially increase the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Zuclopenthixol** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

## Live vaccines

**Bacillus Calmette-Guérin vaccine** · influenza vaccine (live) · measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live · rotavirus vaccine · typhoid vaccine, oral · varicella-zoster vaccine · yellow fever vaccine, live

**GENERAL INFORMATION** **Oral typhoid vaccine** is inactivated by concurrent administration of antibacterials or antimalarials: antibacterials should be avoided for 3 days before and after oral typhoid vaccination; **mefloquine** should be avoided for at least 12 hours before or after oral typhoid vaccination; for other antimalarials oral typhoid vaccine vaccination should be completed at least 3 days before the first dose of the antimalarial (except proguanil hydrochloride with atovaquone, which can be given concurrently).

- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **abatacept**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **alkylating agents**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **amsacrine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **anakinra**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **anthracyclines**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **azathioprine** (high-dose). Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **baricitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **belatacept**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **bleomycin**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **capecitabine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **ciclosporin**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **cladribine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **corticosteroids** (high-dose). Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **cytarabine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical

A1

Interactions | Appendix 1

## Live vaccines (continued)

- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **dactinomycin**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **dimethyl fumarate**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **etanercept**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **etoposide**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **everolimus**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with  **fingolimod**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **fludarabine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **fluorouracil**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **gemcitabine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **hydroxycarbamide**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **irinotecan**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **iron chelators (dextrazoxane)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **leflunomide**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **mercaptopurine** (high-dose). Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **methotrexate** (high-dose). Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **mitomycin**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **monoclonal antibodies**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **mycophenolate**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **pemetrexed**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **platinum compounds**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **procarbazine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **raltitrexed**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **sirolimus**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **tacrolimus**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **taxanes (docetaxel, paclitaxel)**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **tegafur**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **temsirolimus**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **teriflunomide**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **tioguanine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** potentially increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **tofacitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **topotecan**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **trabectedin**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Venetoclax** potentially decreases the efficacy of **live vaccines**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **vinca alkaloids**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- Lixisenatide** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)
- SEPARATION OF ADMINISTRATION** Some orally administered drugs should be taken at least 1 hour before, or 4 hours after, lixisenatide injection.
- Lofepamine** → see tricyclic antidepressants
- Lofexidine** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- Lomitapide** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity)
- FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Bitter (Seville) orange is predicted to increase the exposure to lomitapide; separate administration by 12 hours.
- ▶ **Alprazolam** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **lomitapide**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (clotrimazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
  - ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Bicalutamide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, lacidipine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Cilostazol** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Oral combined hormonal contraceptives** slightly increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Lomitapide** increases the exposure to **coumarins (warfarin)**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lomitapide**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Everolimus** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine, ranitidine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Isoniazid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Unknown] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
  - ▶ **Ivacaftor** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Linagliptin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lomitapide**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Pazopanib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Peppermint oil** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Propiverine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lomitapide**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Unknown] Theoretical
  - ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Lomitapide** increases the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. Adjust **lomitapide** dose or separate administration by 12 hours. [Mid] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
  - ▶ **Lomitapide** increases the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Monitor and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
  - ▶ **Tacrolimus** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Ticagrelor** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Tolvaptan** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Lomustine** → see alkylating agents
  - Loop diuretics** → see TABLE 18 p. 851 (hyponatraemia), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 19 p. 851 (ototoxicity), TABLE 17 p. 851 (reduced serum potassium)
- bumetanide · furosemide · torasemide
- ▶ **Aliskiren** slightly decreases the exposure to **furosemide**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Loop diuretics** increase the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with **aminoglycosides**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 19 p. 851
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** decrease the effects of **furosemide**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Intravenous furosemide** potentially increases the risk of sweating, variable blood pressure, and tachycardia when given after **chloral hydrate**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Dasabuvir** (with ombitasvir, paritaprevir and ritonavir) increases the concentration of **furosemide**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Loop diuretics** increase the concentration of **lithium**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) is predicted to increase the exposure to **furosemide**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Reboxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of hypokalaemia when given with **loop diuretics**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Loperamide**
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **loperamide**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Certinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **loperamide**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Loperamide** greatly increases the absorption of oral **desmopressin** (and possibly sublingual). [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **loperamide**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **loperamide**. [Moderate] Theoretical



## Loperamide (continued)

- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to loperamide. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the exposure to loperamide. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Velpatasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to loperamide. [Severe] Theoretical

**Lopinavir** → see HIV-protease inhibitors**Loprazolam** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)**Loratadine** → see antihistamines, non-sedating**Lorazepam** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Rifampicin** increases the clearance of **lorazepam**. [Moderate] Study

**Lormetazepam** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)**Losartan** → see angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
**Low molecular-weight heparins** → see TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium), TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)

dalteparin · enoxaparin · tinzaparin

- ▶ **Ranibizumab** increases the risk of bleeding events when given with low molecular-weight heparins. [Severe] Theoretical

**Loxapine** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects), TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to loxapine. Avoid. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ Loxapine is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849

- ▶ Loxapine is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to loxapine. Avoid. [Unknown] Theoretical

- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to loxapine. Avoid. [Unknown] Theoretical

**Lumacaftor**

- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the exposure to antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**). Adjust dose. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **posaconazole**, **voriconazole**). Avoid or monitor efficacy. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ciclosporin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the exposure to **corticosteroids (methylprednisolone, prednisone)**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the exposure to **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor potentially decreases the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the exposure to **macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the exposure to **midazolam**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor potentially decreases the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rifabutin**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tacrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the exposure to **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Lumacaftor is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **ulipristal**. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical

**Lumefantrine** → see antimalarials**Lurasidone** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to lurasidone. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to lurasidone. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to lurasidone. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to lurasidone. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Lurasidone** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to lurasidone. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to lurasidone. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to lurasidone. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to lurasidone. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to lurasidone. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Lymecycline** → see tetracyclines**Macitentan**

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to macitentan. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to macitentan. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to macitentan. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to macitentan. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to macitentan. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to macitentan. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to macitentan. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to macitentan. Avoid. [Severe] Study



- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **macitentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **macitentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Macrolides** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

azithromycin · clarithromycin · erythromycin

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **abiraterone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Azithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** increases the exposure to **almotriptan**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (alfuzosin, tamsulosin)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (doxazosin)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (tamsulosin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** moderately increases the exposure to **alprazolam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Azithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aminophylline**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aminophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aminophylline** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erythromycin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** very markedly increases the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (lidocaine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **anticholinesterases, centrally acting (galantamine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** slightly increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** markedly increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (carbamazepine)**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to very slightly increase the exposure to **antiepileptics (perampamel)**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (rupatadine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **apixaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **apixaban**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **aprepitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, non-selective (nadolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta<sub>2</sub> agonists (salmeterol)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** slightly increases the exposure to **bortezomib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosentan**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **buspirone**. Adjust **buspirone** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **buspirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** slightly increases the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (lercanidipine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (verapamil)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid or adjust **ceritinib** dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** increase the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study

## Macrolides (continued)

- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **cilostazol**. Adjust **cilostazol** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** slightly increases the exposure to **cilostazol**. Adjust **cilostazol** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** potentially increases the risk of toxicity when given with **clozapine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Azithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **colchicine** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (beclomethasone)** (risk with beclomethasone is likely to be lower than with other corticosteroids). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (betamethasone, budesonide, ciclesonide, deflazacort, dexamethasone, fludrocortisone, fluticasone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, mometasone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone)**. Avoid or monitor side effects. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (methylprednisolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Macrolides (**clarithromycin, erythromycin**) increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Adjust **daclatasvir** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** very slightly increases the exposure to **delamanid**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides** increase the concentration of **digoxin**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Macrolides (**clarithromycin, erythromycin**) increase the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domeperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** increases the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Macrolides (**clarithromycin, erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **dopamine receptor agonists (cabergoline)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** slightly increases the exposure to **edoxaban**. Adjust **edoxaban** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Macrolides (**azithromycin, clarithromycin**) are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** decreases the exposure to **clarithromycin**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** slightly to moderately increases the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **eletriptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** moderately increases the exposure to **eletriptan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Macrolides (**clarithromycin, erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Macrolides (**azithromycin, erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Etravirine** decreases the exposure to **clarithromycin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fosaprepitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **gefitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **gefitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to moderately to markedly increase the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** slightly increase the exposure to **erythromycin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **clarithromycin**. Adjust dose in renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, darunavir, fosamprenavir, lopinavir, ritonavir, tipranavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **erythromycin**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (darunavir, fosamprenavir, lopinavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) are predicted to increase the exposure to **clarithromycin**. Adjust dose in renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** increase the exposure to **clarithromycin**. Adjust dose in renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (tipranavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) increase the exposure to **clarithromycin** and **clarithromycin** increases the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors (tipranavir)** (boosted with ritonavir). Monitor; adjust dose in renal impairment. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Clarithromycin** increases the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors (saquinavir)** and **HIV-protease inhibitors (saquinavir)** increase the exposure to **clarithromycin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors (saquinavir)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **ibrutinib** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Adjust **ibrutinib** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** p. 186 or **lumacaftor with ivacaftor** p. 187 dose with potent inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** increases the exposure to **linezolid**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Azithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the exposure to macrolides (**clarithromycin, erythromycin**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **macitentan**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mirabegron**. Adjust **mirabegron** dose in hepatic and renal impairment. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mirtazapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **modafinil**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** increases the risk of neutropenia when given with **monoclonal antibodies (brentuximab vedotin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **monoclonal antibodies (trastuzumab emtansine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** decreases the exposure to **clarithromycin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nitisone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, buprenorphine, fentanyl, oxycodone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, buprenorphine, fentanyl, oxycodone, sufentanil)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **opioids (methadone)**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (methadone, sufentanil)**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **palbociclib**. Avoid or adjust **palbociclib** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **panobinostat**. Adjust **panobinostat** dose; in hepatic impairment avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **panobinostat**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid or adjust **pazopanib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil)**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil, vardenafil)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil)**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **sildenafil** dose, p. 120. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil)**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (tadalafil)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (tadalafil)**. [Severe] Theoretical

## Macrolides (continued)

- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (vardenafil)**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **ponatinib**. Monitor and adjust **ponatinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **praziquantel**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **reboxetine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **regorafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **repaglinide**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **retinoids (alitretinoin)**. Adjust **alitretinoin** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribiciclib**. Avoid or adjust **ribiciclib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribiciclib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Azithromycin** increases the risk of neutropenia when given with **rifabutin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** increases the risk of uveitis when given with **rifabutin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the risk of uveitis when given with **rifabutin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **clarithromycin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **roxolitinib**. Adjust dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **roxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **solifenacin**. Adjust **solifenacin** or **tamsulosin** with **solifenacin** dose; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **SSRIs (dapoxetine)**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **dapoxetine** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs (dapoxetine)**. Adjust **dapoxetine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. Avoid or adjust dose and monitor rhabdomyolysis. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** moderately increases the exposure to **statins (pravastatin)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (pravastatin)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **sulfonylureas**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **taxanes (docetaxel)**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (paclitaxel)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Erythromycin** decreases the clearance of **theophylline** and **theophylline** potentially decreases the clearance of **erythromycin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin, clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **theophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Azithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacinib**. Adjust **tofacinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **toremifene**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides** are predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **trazodone**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vemurafenib**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Azithromycin** decreases the exposure to **venetoclax**. [Mild] Study



- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Macrolides (**clarithromycin**, **erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vitamin D substances (paricalcitol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** decreases the absorption of **zidovudine**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clarithromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Erythromycin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

### Magnesium

- ▶ Oral **magnesium** decreases the absorption of **bisphosphonates (alendronic acid)**. Alendronic acid should be taken at least 30 minutes before **magnesium**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Oral **magnesium** is predicted to decrease the absorption of oral **bisphosphonates (ibandronic acid)**. Avoid **magnesium** for at least 6 hours before or 1 hour after **ibandronic acid**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Oral **magnesium** decreases the absorption of **bisphosphonates (risedronate)**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Oral **magnesium** decreases the absorption of **bisphosphonates (sodium clodronate)**. Avoid **magnesium** for 2 hours before or 1 hour after **sodium clodronate**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Intravenous **magnesium** potentially increases the risk of hypotension when given with **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, cleveldipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nifedipine, nimodipine, verapamil)** (in pregnant women). [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Intravenous **magnesium** increases the effects of **neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Intravenous **magnesium** is predicted to increase the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Study

**Magnesium carbonate** → see antacids

**Magnesium trisilicate** → see antacids

### Maraviroc

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **maraviroc**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** markedly increases the exposure to **maraviroc**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** decreases the exposure to **maraviroc**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Etravirine** (with a boosted protease inhibitor) increases the exposure to **maraviroc**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, saquinavir)** moderately to markedly increase the exposure to **maraviroc**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (darunavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) markedly increase the exposure to **maraviroc**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) moderately increase the exposure to **maraviroc**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** markedly increase the exposure to **maraviroc**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Maraviroc** potentially decreases the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors (fosamprenavir)** and **HIV-protease inhibitors**

(**fosamprenavir**) potentially decrease the exposure to **maraviroc**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Idelalisib** markedly increases the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **maraviroc**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live** → see live vaccines
- ▶ **Mebendazole**
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** increase the concentration of **mebendazole**. [Moderate] Study

### Medroxyprogesterone

- ▶ **Sugammadex** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **medroxyprogesterone**. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical

**Mefenamic acid** → see NSAIDs

**Mefloquine** → see antimalarials

**Melatonin** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** very markedly increase the exposure to **melatonin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Meloxicam** → see NSAIDs

**Melphalan** → see alkylating agents

### Memantine

- ▶ **Dopamine receptor agonists (amantadine)** increase the risk of CNS toxicity when given with **memantine**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Memantine** is predicted to increase the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists (apomorphine, bromocriptine, cabergoline, pergolide, pramipexole, quinagolide, ropinirole, rotigotine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Memantine** is predicted to increase the risk of CNS side-effects when given with **ketamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Memantine** is predicted to increase the effects of **levodopa**. [Moderate] Theoretical

### Mepacrine

- ▶ **Mepacrine** is predicted to increase the concentration of **antimalarials (primaquine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Mepivacaine** → see anaesthetics, local

**Meprobamate** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

**Meptazinol** → see opioids

**Mercaptopurine** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- ▶ **Allopurinol** potentially increases the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **mercaptopurine**. Adjust **mercaptopurine** dose, p. 543. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mercaptopurine** decreases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Febuxostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mercaptopurine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **mercaptopurine** (high-dose). Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical

**Meropenem** → see carbapenems



**Mesalazine**

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** The manufacturers of some mesalazine gastro-resistant and modified-release medicines (Asacol MR tablets, Ipocol, Salofalk granules) suggest that preparations that lower stool pH (e.g. lactulose) might prevent the release of mesalazine.

**Metaraminol** → see sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

**Metformin** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)

- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** (excessive consumption) potentially increases the risk of lactic acidosis when given with **metformin**. Avoid excessive alcohol consumption. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dolutegravir** slightly to moderately increases the exposure to **metformin**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** slightly increase the exposure to **metformin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **metformin**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Vandetanib** slightly increases the exposure to **metformin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

**Methadone** → see opioids

**Methenamine**

- ▶ **Acetazolamide** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **methenamine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Potassium citrate** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **methenamine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sodium bicarbonate** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **methenamine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sodium citrate** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **methenamine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Methocarbamol** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

**Methotrexate** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)

- ▶ **Acetazolamide** increases the urinary excretion of **methotrexate**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Methotrexate** is predicted to decrease the clearance of **aminophylline**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (levetiracetam)** decrease the clearance of **methotrexate**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antimalarials (pyrimethamine)** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **methotrexate**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Asparaginase** affects the efficacy of **methotrexate**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Aspirin** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **methotrexate**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crisantaspase** affects the efficacy of **methotrexate**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **methotrexate** (high-dose). Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **NSAIDs** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **methotrexate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847
- ▶ **Pegaspargase** affects the efficacy of **methotrexate**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Penicillins** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **methotrexate**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** decrease the clearance of **methotrexate** (high-dose). Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** potentially increase the risk of toxicity when given with **methotrexate**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Regorafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methotrexate**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Retinoids (acitretin)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **methotrexate**. Avoid. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methotrexate**. Avoid or monitor. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Methotrexate** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **sapropterin**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Sulfonamides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **methotrexate**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Tedizolid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methotrexate**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Methotrexate** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **tegafur**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Methotrexate** decreases the clearance of **theophylline**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Trimethoprim** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **methotrexate**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847

**Methoxyflurane** → see volatile halogenated anaesthetics

**Methyldopa** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)

- ▶ **Entacapone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methyldopa**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the effects of **methyldopa**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Methyldopa** increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to alter the antihypertensive effects of **methyldopa**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

**Methylphenidate**

- ▶ **Methylphenidate** is predicted to decrease the effects of **apraclonidine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Methylphenidate** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Methylphenidate** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **moclobemide**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Methylphenidate** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline, selegiline)** are predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **methylphenidate**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Risperidone** increases the risk of dyskinesias when given with **methylphenidate**. [Severe] Anecdotal

**Methylprednisolone** → see corticosteroids

**Methylthioninium chloride** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)

- ▶ **Methylthioninium chloride** is predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **bupropion**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

**Metoclopramide**

- ▶ **Metoclopramide** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinemia when given with topical **anaesthetics, local (prilocaine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Metoclopramide** potentially decreases the absorption of antifungals, azoles (**posaconazole**) (oral suspension). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Metoclopramide** decreases the concentration of **antimalarials (atovaquone)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Metoclopramide** is predicted to decrease the effects of dopamine receptor agonists (**apomorphine, bromocriptine, cabergoline, pergolide, pramipexole, quinagolide, ropinirole, rotigotine**). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Metoclopramide** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Metoclopramide** is predicted to increase the effects of **neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Metoclopramide** increases the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Study

**Metolazone** → see thiazide diuretics

**Metoprolol** → see beta blockers, selective

**Metronidazole** → see TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy)

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially causes a disulfiram-like reaction when given with **metronidazole**. Avoid for at least 48 hours stopping treatment. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Metronidazole** increases the risk of toxicity when given with alkylating agents (**busulfan**). [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **metronidazole**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Metronidazole** is predicted to increase the risk of capecitabine toxicity when given with **capecitabine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Metronidazole** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Disulfiram** increases the risk of acute psychoses when given with **metronidazole**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ **Metronidazole** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **fluorouracil**. [Severe] Study
- Metyrapone**
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the effects of metyrapone. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antihistamines, sedating (cyproheptadine)** decrease the effects of metyrapone. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Carbamazole** decreases the effects of metyrapone. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** decrease the effects of metyrapone. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Phenothiazines (chlorpromazine)** decrease the effects of metyrapone. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Propylthiouracil** is predicted to decrease the effects of metyrapone. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants (amitriptyline)** decrease the effects of metyrapone. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Mianserin** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** markedly decrease the exposure to mianserin. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to mianserin. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - ▶ **Mianserin** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **moclobemide**. Avoid and for 1 week after stopping mianserin. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Mianserin** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Mianserin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **pitolisant**. [Unknown] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Mianserin** decreases the effects of **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (ephedrine)**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Micafungin** → see TABLE 11 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity)
  - ▶ **Micafungin** slightly increases the exposure to **amphotericin**. Avoid or monitor toxicity. [Moderate] Study
- Miconazole** → see antifungals, azoles
- Midazolam** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
  - ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to midazolam. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to midazolam. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to midazolam. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to midazolam. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to intravenous midazolam. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to oral midazolam. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to midazolam. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of midazolam. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to midazolam. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to midazolam. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to midazolam. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Dabrafenib** decreases the exposure to midazolam. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to alter the effects of midazolam. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to midazolam. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Fosaprepitant** slightly increases the exposure to midazolam. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to midazolam. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to midazolam. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to midazolam. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the exposure to midazolam. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to markedly to very markedly increase the exposure to midazolam. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to midazolam. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to midazolam. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (tocilizumab)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to midazolam. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to midazolam. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** decreases the concentration of midazolam. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to midazolam. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Palbociclib** increases the exposure to midazolam. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Ribociclib** moderately increases the exposure to midazolam. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to midazolam. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** moderately decreases the exposure to midazolam. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Telotristat ethyl** decreases the exposure to midazolam. [Moderate] Study
- Midodrine** → see sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor
- Midostaurin**
  - ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to midostaurin. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to midostaurin. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to midostaurin. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to midostaurin. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to midostaurin. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to midostaurin. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to midostaurin. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to midostaurin. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to midostaurin. Avoid. [Severe] Study

## Midostaurin (continued)

- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to very markedly increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

## Mifamurtide

- ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **mifamurtide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **mifamurtide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **NSAIDs** (high-dose) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **mifamurtide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pimecrolimus** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **mifamurtide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sirolimus** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **mifamurtide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tacrolimus** is predicted to affect the efficacy of **mifamurtide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

## Mifepristone

- ▶ **Mifepristone** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **corticosteroids**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

## Minocycline → see tetracyclines

## Minoxidil → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)

## Mirabegron

- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **mirabegron**. Adjust **mirabegron** dose in hepatic and renal impairment. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (fexofenadine)**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (metoprolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mirabegron**. Adjust **mirabegron** dose in hepatic and renal impairment. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mirabegron** slightly increases the exposure to **digoxin**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **mirabegron**. Adjust **mirabegron** dose in hepatic and renal impairment. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mirabegron**. Adjust **mirabegron** dose in hepatic and renal impairment. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **loperamide**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **mirabegron**. Adjust **mirabegron** dose in hepatic and renal impairment. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sirolimus**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (paclitaxel)**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Mild] Theoretical

**Mirtazapine** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **mirtazapine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **mirtazapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mirtazapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **mirtazapine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** slightly increase the exposure to **mirtazapine**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **mirtazapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mirtazapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **mirtazapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **mirtazapine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mirtazapine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **pitolisant**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **mirtazapine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

**Mitomycin** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)

- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **mitomycin**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **abiraterone**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aldosterone antagonists (spironolactone)** are predicted to decrease the effects of **mitotane**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **alprazolam**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (disopyramide, dronedarone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **anticholinesterases, centrally acting (donepezil)**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antiepileptics (perampanel)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antimalarials (artemether)** (with lumefantrine). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **apixaban**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** moderately decreases the exposure to **apremilast**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **aprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust aripiprazole dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** decreases the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** slightly decreases the exposure to **bortezomib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** affects the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to very markedly decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **buspirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** moderately decreases the exposure to **cabozantinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nicardipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** decreases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to alter the effects of **cilostazol**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** decreases the exposure to **clomethiazole**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **corticosteroids (budesonide, deflazacort, dexamethasone, fludrocortisone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **corticosteroids (fluticasone)**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **delamanid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. Avoid or adjust erlotinib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etavirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** moderately decreases the exposure to **exemestane**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to  **fingolimod**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fosaprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **gefitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust guanfacine dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** decreases the concentration of **haloperidol**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Avoid or adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **idelalisib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ixazomib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **linagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lomitapide**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lurasidone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **macitentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **mirtazapine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **montelukast**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **nateglinide**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nitisinone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ondansetron**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, fentanyl)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (buprenorphine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** decreases the exposure to **opioids (methadone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (oxycodone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **osimertinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **palbociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study



**Mitotane** (continued)

- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paliperidone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **panobinostat**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil, tadalafil)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil, vardenafil)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **pitolisant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ponatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **praziquantel**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ranolazine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **reboxetine**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **regorafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **repaglinide**. Monitor blood glucose and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Mitotane markedly decreases the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **rivaroxaban**. Avoid unless patient can be monitored for signs of thrombosis. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **roflumilast**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **rolapitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **roxatitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **solifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sorafenib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ Mitotane decreases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel, paclitaxel)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes (docetaxel)**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

- ▶ Mitotane decreases the exposure to **tetracyclines (doxycycline)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tivozanib**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **toremifene**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vandetanib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **velpatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vemurafenib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinca alkaloids (vinblastine, vincristine, vindesine)**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinca alkaloids (vinflunine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinca alkaloids (vinorelbine)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vismodegib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vortioxetine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Mitotane is predicted to decrease the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Mitoxantrone** → see anthracyclines
- Mivacurium** → see neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising
- Mizolastine** → see antihistamines, non-sedating
- Moclobemide** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Moclobemide is claimed to cause less potentiation of the pressor effect of tyramine than the traditional (irreversible) MAOIs, but patients should avoid consuming large amounts of tyramine-rich foods (such as mature cheese, salami, pickled herring, *Bovril*®, *Oxo*®, *Marmite*® or any similar meat or yeast extract or fermented soya bean extract, and some beers, lagers or wines).

- ▶ Moclobemide is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **amfetamines**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ Moclobemide is predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **bupropion**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ Moclobemide is predicted to increase the exposure to **cilostazol**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Moclobemide potentially increases the exposure to **clobazam**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Moclobemide is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **clopidogrel**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Moclobemide is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (**cimetidine**) increase the exposure to moclobemide. Adjust moclobemide dose. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Levodopa** increases the risk of side-effects when given with moclobemide. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Moclobemide is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **linezolid**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping moclobemide. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850



- ▶ **Methylphenidate** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **moclobemide**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Mianserin** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **moclobemide**. Avoid and for 1 week after stopping **mianserin**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Moclobemide** is predicted to increase the effects of **monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline, selegiline)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Moclobemide** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (safinamide)**. Avoid and for 1 week after stopping **safranamide**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **moclobemide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Moclobemide** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **phenothiazines (levomepromazine)**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Reboxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **moclobemide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Moclobemide** moderately increases the exposure to **rizatriptan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Moclobemide** moderately increases the exposure to **sumatriptan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Moclobemide** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (ephedrine, isometheptene, phenylephrine, pseudoephedrine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** are predicted to increase the risk of severe toxic reaction when given with **moclobemide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Moclobemide** slightly increases the exposure to **zolmitriptan**. Adjust **zolmitriptan** dose, p. 292. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- Modafinil**
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **modafinil**. [Mild] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **modafinil** and **modafinil** is predicted to increase the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **modafinil**. [Mild] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **modafinil**. [Mild] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Unknown] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Unknown] Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **modafinil**. [Mild] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the effects of **hormone replacement therapy**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **modafinil**. [Mild] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **modafinil**. [Mild] Theoretical

- ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **modafinil**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Modafinil** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Mometasone** → see corticosteroids

**Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)

isocarboxazid • phenelzine • tranylcypromine

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Potentially life-threatening hypertensive crisis can develop in those taking MAOIs who eat tyramine-rich food (such as mature cheese, salami, pickled herring, Bovril®, Oxo®, Marmite® or any similar meat or yeast extract or fermented soya bean extract, and some beers, lagers or wines) or foods containing dopa (such as broad bean pods). Avoid tyramine-rich or dopa-rich food or drinks with, or for 2 to 3 weeks after stopping, the MAOI.

- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the effects of **alpha blockers (indoramin)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **amfetamines**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to increase the risk of severe toxic reaction when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to increase the effects of **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when given with **antihistamines, non-sedating**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of antimuscarinic side-effects when given with **antihistamines, sedating**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **atomoxetine**. Avoid and for 2 weeks after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **beta<sub>2</sub> agonists**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **bupropion**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Buspirone** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the effects of **doxapram**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Entacapone** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to decrease the antihypertensive effects of **guanethidine**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Levodopa** increases the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

A1

Interactions | Appendix 1

**Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible (continued)**

- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **linezolid**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to alter the antihypertensive effects of **methyldopa**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Methyphenidate** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mianserin** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline, selegiline)** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (safinamide)** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 1 week after stopping safinamide. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Nefopam** is predicted to increase the risk of serious elevations in blood pressure when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Opioids** are predicted to increase the risk of CNS excitation or depression when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of neuroleptic malignant syndrome when given with **phenothiazines**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Pholcodine** is predicted to increase the risk of CNS excitation or depression when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Reboxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the exposure to **rizatriptan**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sumatriptan**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **sympathomimetics, inotropic**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tetrabenazine** is predicted to increase the risk of CNS toxicity when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tolcapone** is predicted to increase the effects of **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** are predicted to increase the risk of severe toxic reaction when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

- ▶ **Tryptophan** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zolmitriptan**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

**Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)

rasagiline · safinamide · selegiline ·

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Hypertension is predicted to occur when high-dose **selegiline** is taken with tyramine-rich foods (such as mature cheese, salami, pickled herring, Bovril®, Oxo®, Marmite® or any similar meat or yeast extract or fermented soya bean extract, and some beers, lagers or wines).

- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline, selegiline)** are predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **amfetamines**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Safinamide** is predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **amfetamines**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline, selegiline)** are predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **beta<sub>2</sub> agonists**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Safinamide** is predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **beta<sub>2</sub> agonists**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of severe hypertension when given with **bupropion**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** slightly increase the exposure to **rasagiline**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** increase the exposure to **selegiline**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Hormone replacement therapy** is predicted to increase the exposure to **selegiline**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors** are predicted to increase the effects of **levodopa**. Adjust dose. [Mild] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline, selegiline)** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **linezolid**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Safinamide** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **linezolid**. Avoid and for 1 week after stopping safinamide. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline, selegiline)** are predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **methyphenidate**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Moclobemide** is predicted to increase the effects of monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (**rasagiline, selegiline**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Moclobemide** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **safinamide**. Avoid and for 1 week after stopping safinamide. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline, selegiline)** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Safinamide** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 1 week after stopping safinamide. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Rasagiline** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **opioids (pethidine)**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping rasagiline. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Safinamide** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **opioids (pethidine)**. Avoid and for 1 week after stopping safinamide. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Selegiline** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **opioids (pethidine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** slightly increase the exposure to **rasagiline**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Reboxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (**rasagiline**, **selegiline**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **sympathomimetics**, **inotropic**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **sympathomimetics**, **vasoconstrictor**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Monoclonal antibodies** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)
- adalimumab • alemtuzumab • atezolizumab • avelumab • basiliximab • belimumab • benralizumab • bevacizumab • blinatumomab • brentuximab vedotin • brodalumab • canakinumab • certolizumab pegol • cetuximab • daratumumab • dupilumab • eculizumab • elotuzumab • golimumab • guselkumab • infliximab • inotuzumab • ozogamicin • ipilimumab • ixekizumab • natalizumab • necitumumab • nivolumab • obinutuzumab • ocrelizumab • ofatumumab • olaratumab • panitumumab • pembrolizumab • pertuzumab • ramucirumab • rituximab • sarilumab • secukinumab • siltuximab • tocilizumab • trastuzumab • trastuzumab emtansine • ustekinumab • vedolizumab
- ▶ **Tocilizumab** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **alprazolam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Blinatumomab** is predicted to transiently increase the exposure to **aminophylline**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Sarilumab** potentially affects the exposure to **aminophylline**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Tocilizumab** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **aminophylline**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Anthracyclines** are predicted to increase the risk of cardiotoxicity when given with monoclonal antibodies (**trastuzumab**, **trastuzumab emtansine**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** increase the risk of neutropenia when given with **brentuximab vedotin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the effects of **brentuximab vedotin**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Tocilizumab** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole)** increase the risk of neutropenia when given with **brentuximab vedotin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **trastuzumab emtansine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Brentuximab vedotin** increases the risk of pulmonary toxicity when given with **bleomycin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Tocilizumab** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **calcium channel blockers**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Blinatumomab** is predicted to transiently increase the exposure to **ciclosporin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Sarilumab** potentially affects the exposure to **ciclosporin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Tocilizumab** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ciclosporin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trastuzumab emtansine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Sarilumab** potentially decreases the exposure to **combined hormonal contraceptives**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Corticosteroids (betamethasone, deflazacort, dexamethasone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, prednisolone, prednisone)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of monoclonal antibodies (**atezolizumab**, **ipilimumab**, **nivolumab**, **pembrolizumab**). Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Tocilizumab** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **corticosteroids (dexamethasone, methylprednisolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Blinatumomab** is predicted to transiently increase the exposure to **coumarins (warfarin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sarilumab** potentially affects the exposure to **coumarins (warfarin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tocilizumab** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **coumarins (warfarin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tocilizumab** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **diazepam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the risk of neutropenia when given with **brentuximab vedotin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **trastuzumab emtansine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trastuzumab emtansine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **monoclonal antibodies**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** increase the risk of neutropenia when given with **brentuximab vedotin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **trastuzumab emtansine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tocilizumab** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the effects of **brentuximab vedotin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Sarilumab** potentially affects the exposure to **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sarilumab** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin, simvastatin)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Tocilizumab** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin, simvastatin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sarilumab** potentially affects the exposure to **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Blinatumomab** is predicted to transiently increase the exposure to **theophylline**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sarilumab** potentially affects the exposure to **theophylline**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tocilizumab** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **theophylline**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

#### Montelukast

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **montelukast**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Clopidogrel** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **montelukast**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **montelukast**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Fibrates (gemfibrozil)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **montelukast**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **montelukast**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **montelukast**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **montelukast**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **montelukast**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **montelukast**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Morphine** → see opioids
- Moxifloxacin** → see quinolones
- Moxisylyte** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)
- Moxonidine** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

**Moxonidine** (continued)

- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** are predicted to decrease the effects of **moxonidine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

**Mycophenolate** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- ▶ **Mycophenolate** is predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **aciclovir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antacids** decrease the exposure to **mycophenolate**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)** increase the exposure to **mycophenolate**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Mycophenolate** is predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **ganciclovir**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **mycophenolate**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **mycophenolate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Mycophenolate** is predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **valaciclovir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Mycophenolate** is predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **valganciclovir**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- Nabilone** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Nabilone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **amfetamines**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Nabumetone** → see NSAIDs
- Nadolol** → see beta blockers, non-selective
- Nalmefene**

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Discontinue treatment 1 week before anticipated use of opioids; if emergency analgesia is required during treatment, an increased dose of opioid analgesic might be necessary (monitor for opioid intoxication).

- ▶ **Nalmefene** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **opioids**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Naloxegol**

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Naltrexone**

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Avoid concurrent use of opioids.

**Nandrolone**

- ▶ **Nandrolone** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nandrolone** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical

**Naproxen** → see NSAIDs**Naratriptan** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)

- ▶ **Naratriptan** is predicted to increase the risk of vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. Separate administration by 24 hours. [Severe] Theoretical

**Natalizumab** → see monoclonal antibodies**Nateglinide** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **nateglinide**. [Mid] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **nateglinide**. [Mid] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **nateglinide**. [Mid] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **nateglinide**. [Mid] Study
- ▶ **Sulfinpyrazone** slightly increases the exposure to **nateglinide**. [Mid] Study

**Nebivolol** → see beta blockers, selective**Necitumumab** → see monoclonal antibodies**Nefopam** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

- ▶ **Nefopam** is predicted to increase the risk of serious elevations in blood pressure when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Nelarabine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)**Neomycin** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 19 p. 851 (ototoxicity), TABLE 20 p. 851 (neuromuscular blocking effects)

- ▶ **Neomycin** decreases the absorption of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study

**Neomycin** moderately decreases the exposure to **sorafenib**. [Moderate] Study**Neostigmine** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 20 p. 851 (neuromuscular blocking effects)

- ▶ **Aminoglycosides** are predicted to decrease the effects of **neostigmine**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 20 p. 851

**Nepafenac** → see NSAIDs**Netupitant**

- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (tamsulosin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. [Severe] Theoretical



- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (rupatadine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **buspirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust colchicine dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (dexamethasone)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (methylprednisolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domeperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **dopamine receptor agonists (cabergoline)**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fosoterodine**. Adjust **fosoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **gefitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Adjust **ibrutinib** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, buprenorphine, fentanyl, oxycodone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (methadone, sufentanil)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil)**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil)**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (tadalafil)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (vardenafil)**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs (dapoxetine)**. Adjust **dapoxetine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical



## Netupitant (continued)

- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

**Neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 20 p. 851 (neuromuscular blocking effects)

atracurium • cisatracurium • mivacurium • pancuronium • rocuronium • vecuronium

- ▶ **Anticholinesterases, centrally acting** are predicted to decrease the effects of neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the effects of (but acute use increases the effects of) neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising (**atracurium, cisatracurium, pancuronium, rocuronium, vecuronium**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** decrease the effects of (but acute use increases the effects of) neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising (**atracurium, cisatracurium, pancuronium, rocuronium, vecuronium**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clindamycin** increases the effects of neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to decrease the effects of neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Pancuronium** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **digoxin**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Irinotecan** is predicted to decrease the effects of neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Intravenous **magnesium** increases the effects of neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Metoclopramide** is predicted to increase the effects of neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Penicillins (piperacillin)** increase the effects of neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs** potentially increase the risk of prolonged neuromuscular blockade when given with mivacurium. [Unknown] Theoretical

**Nevirapine**

- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to antiarrhythmics (**dronedarone**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) and antiepileptics (**carbamazepine,**

**fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **nevirapine**. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole)** slightly to moderately increase the exposure to **nevirapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**isavuconazole**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** moderately decreases the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**). Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **nevirapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** moderately decreases the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**ketconazole**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**voriconazole**) and antifungals, azoles (**voriconazole**) increase the exposure to **nevirapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nifedipine, nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem, verapamil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **casopfungin**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** potentially alters the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** decreases the concentration of **efavirenz**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **gefitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** decreases the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors**. Refer to specialist literature. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **hormone replacement therapy**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **idelalisib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lurasidone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** decreases the exposure to **macrolides (clarithromycin)**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** decreases the concentration of **midazolam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** decreases the exposure to **opioids (methadone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **osimertinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **nevirapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rolapitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **nevirapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** slightly decreases the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** moderately decreases the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **velpatasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **zidovudine**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Theoretical
- Nicardipine** → see calcium channel blockers
- Nicorandil** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)
- ▶ **Aspirin** is predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal perforation when given with **nicorandil**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Corticosteroids** increase the risk of gastrointestinal perforation when given with **nicorandil**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Nicorandil** is predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal perforation when given with **NSAIDs**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nicorandil** is predicted to increase the risk of hypotension when given with **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- Nicotinic acid** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)
- ▶ **Nicotinic acid** is predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Nifedipine** → see calcium channel blockers
- Nilotinib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Adjust **eplerenone** dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (tamsulosin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alprazolam**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **nilotinib**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (mizolastine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (rupatadine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid prolonged use. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **buspirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

## Nilotinib (continued)

- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** increases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cobimetinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Adjust **colchicine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **corticosteroids (methylprednisolone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **domperidone**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **dopamine receptor agonists (cabergoline)**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **dutasteride**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergometrine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of ergotism when given with **ergotamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Adjust **fesoterodine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 in hepatic and renal impairment. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **gefitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust **guanfacine** dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **nilotinib**. **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** should be taken 10 hours before or 2 hours after **nilotinib**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Adjust **ibrutinib** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust **ivabradine** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Adjust **ivacaftor** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 186. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lurasidone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **midostaurin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **naloxegol**. Adjust **naloxegol** dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nilotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, buprenorphine, fentanyl, oxycodone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (methadone, sufentanil)**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **oxybutynin**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil)**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil)**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (tadalafil)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (vardenafil)**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ranolazine**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs (dapoxetine)**. Adjust **dapoxetine** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temsirolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

**Nimodipine** → see calcium channel blockers

#### Nintedanib

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Vemurafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study

#### Nitisinone

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **nitisinone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nitisinone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nitisinone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nitisinone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nitisinone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nitisinone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **nitisinone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nitisinone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nitisinone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Nitrates** → see TABLE 7 p. 848 (first-dose hypotension), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)

glyceryl trinitrate · isosorbide dinitrate · isosorbide mononitrate

**PHARMACOLOGY** Drugs with antimuscarinic effects can cause dry mouth, which can reduce the effectiveness of sublingual glyceryl trinitrate tablets.

- ▶ **Nitrates** are predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **anaesthetics, local (prilocaine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nitrates** are predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nitrates** potentially increase the risk of hypotension when given with **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

**Nitrazepam** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Rifampicin** increases the clearance of **nitrazepam**. [Moderate] Study

**Nitrofurantoin** → see TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy)

- ▶ **Nitrofurantoin** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **anaesthetics, local (prilocaine)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids (magnesium trisilicate)** decrease the absorption of **nitrofurantoin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nitrofurantoin** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Nitrous oxide** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

**Nivolumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

**Nizatidine** → see H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists

**Noradrenaline/norepinephrine** → see sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

#### Norethisterone

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, eslicarbazepine, fosphenytoin, oxcarbazepine, perampanel, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone, rufinamide, topiramate)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Griseofulvin** potentially decreases the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal



## Norethisterone (continued)

- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. MHRA advises avoid. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Sugamadex** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **norethisterone**. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ulipristal** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Norfloracin** → see quinolones**Nortriptyline** → see tricyclic antidepressants

- NSAIDs** → see TABLE 18 p. 851 (hyponatraemia), TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium), TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)

aceclofenac · acemetacin · benzydamine · bromfenac · celecoxib · dexibuprofen · dextketoprofen · diclofenac · etodolac · etoricoxib · felbinac · fenoprofen · flurbiprofen · ibuprofen · indometacin · ketoprofen · ketorolac · mefenamic acid · meloxicam · nabumetone · naproxen · nepafenac · parecoxib · piroxicam · sulindac · tenoxicam · tiaprofenic acid · tolfenamic acid

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- ▶ **Celecoxib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (flecainide, propafenone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole)** moderately increase the exposure to **celecoxib**. Adjust **celecoxib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole)** increase the exposure to **parecoxib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** slightly increase the exposure to **diclofenac**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** moderately increase the exposure to **ibuprofen**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs** are predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal irritation when given with **bisphosphonates (alendronic acid, ibandronic acid)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs** are predicted to increase the risk of renal impairment when given with **bisphosphonates (sodium clodronate)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to NSAIDs (celecoxib, diclofenac). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the concentration of **diclofenac**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 16 p. 851
- ▶ **Etoricoxib** slightly increases the exposure to **combined hormonal contraceptives**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs** increase the risk of gastrointestinal bleeding when given with **corticosteroids**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs** increase the risk of renal impairment when given with **daptomycin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Indometacin** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Erlotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal perforation when given with **NSAIDs**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Etoricoxib** slightly increases the exposure to **hormone replacement therapy**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs** are predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal bleeding when given with **iron chelators (deferisirox)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **NSAIDs** increase the concentration of **lithium**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **methotrexate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847
- ▶ **NSAIDs** (high-dose) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **mifamurtide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nicorandil** is predicted to increase the risk of gastrointestinal perforation when given with **NSAIDs**. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **NSAIDs** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pemetrexed**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847
- ▶ **NSAIDs** potentially increase the risk of seizures when given with **quinolones**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Regorafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **mefenamic acid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to NSAIDs (celecoxib, diclofenac, etoricoxib). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs** increase the risk of acute renal failure when given with **thiazide diuretics**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851
- ▶ **Zidovudine** increases the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **NSAIDs**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847

**Obeticholic acid**

- ▶ **Obeticholic acid** decreases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins (warfarin)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Obeticholic acid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **theophylline**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Obeticholic acid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tizanidine**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Obinutuzumab** → see monoclonal antibodies**Ocrelizumab** → see monoclonal antibodies**Ocreotide**

- ▶ **Ocreotide** decreases the absorption of oral **ciclosporin**. Adjust ciclosporin dose, p. 519. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ocreotide** (short-acting) decreases the exposure to **telotristat ethyl**. **Telotristat ethyl** should be taken at least 30 minutes before **ocreotide**. [Moderate] Study

**Ofatumumab** → see monoclonal antibodies**Oflaxacin** → see quinolones

- Olanzapine** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Dose adjustment might be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment.

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** potentially decrease the exposure to **olanzapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **olanzapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Olanzapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **olanzapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olanzapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Olanzapine** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid or monitor worsening parkinsonian symptoms. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olanzapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** moderately increase the exposure to **olanzapine**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olanzapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

**Olaparib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Bitter (Seville) orange is predicted to increase the exposure to olaparib.

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical



- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idealisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **olaparib** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Olaratumab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Omesartan** → see angiotensin-II receptor antagonists
- Olodaterol** → see  $\beta_2$  agonists
- Olisalazine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- Ombitasvir**
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ombitasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ombitasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ombitasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Omega-3-acid ethyl esters** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)
- Omeprazole** → see proton pump inhibitors
- Ondansetron** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ondansetron**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Dopamine receptor agonists (apomorphine)** increase the risk of severe hypotension when given with **ondansetron**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ondansetron**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ondansetron**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ondansetron**. [Moderate] Study

#### Opicapone

- ▶ **Opicapone** increases the exposure to **levodopa**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **loperamide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **moclobemide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **montelukast**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pioglitazone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **repaglinide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **sympathomimetics, inotropic**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (adrenaline/epinephrine, noradrenaline/norepinephrine)**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Opioids** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

alfentanil • buprenorphine • codeine • diamorphine • dihydrocodeine • diphenoxylate • dipipanone • fentanyl • hydromorphone • meptazinol • methadone • morphine • oxycodone • papaveretum • pentazocine • pethidine • remifentanyl • sufentanyl • tapentadol • tramadol

- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** causes rapid release of opioids (**hydromorphone, morphine**) (from extended-release preparations). Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **fentanyl**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil, buprenorphine, fentanyl, oxycodone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**methadone, sufentanyl**). [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** decrease the concentration of **tramadol**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **buprenorphine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** decrease the exposure to **methadone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **oxycodone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil, fentanyl**). [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **methadone**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **alfentanil**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil,**

## Opioids (continued)

- buprenorphine, fentanyl, oxycodone). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**, **sufentanil**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**methadone**, **sufentanil**). [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**methadone**, **sufentanil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Bosentan** decreases the exposure to **methadone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Bupropion** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **codeine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Bupropion** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **tramadol**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers** (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers** (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**methadone**, **sufentanil**). [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
  - ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **fentanyl**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **codeine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **tramadol**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**, **sufentanil**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**methadone**, **sufentanil**). [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 6 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** decreases the exposure to **methadone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **buprenorphine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** decreases the exposure to **methadone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **fentanyl**). [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **oxycodone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** (**cimetidine**) increase the concentration of **alfentanil**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** (**cimetidine**) increase the exposure to **fentanyl**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** (boosted with **ritonavir**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **methadone**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** (**ritonavir**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **morphine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** (**ritonavir**) increase the risk of CNS toxicity when given with **pethidine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**, **sufentanil**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methadone**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**, **sufentanil**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**methadone**, **sufentanil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **methadone**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Macrolides** (**erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**, **sufentanil**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides** (**erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**methadone**, **sufentanil**). [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **buprenorphine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Mitotane** decreases the exposure to **methadone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **fentanyl**). [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **oxycodone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Opioids** are predicted to increase the risk of CNS excitation or depression when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors**, **irreversible**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors** (**rasagiline**) are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **pethidine**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **rasagiline**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors** (**safinamide**) are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **pethidine**. Avoid and for 1 week after stopping **safinamide**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors** (**selegiline**) increase the risk of side-effects when given with **pethidine**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Nalmefene** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **opioids**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**methadone**, **sufentanil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** decreases the exposure to **methadone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**alfentanil**, **buprenorphine**, **fentanyl**, **oxycodone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (**methadone**, **sufentanil**). [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Opioids** (**buprenorphine**) are predicted to increase the risk of opiate withdrawal when given with opioids (**alfentanil**). [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - ▶ **Opioids** (**pentazocine**) are predicted to increase the risk of opiate withdrawal when given with opioids (**alfentanil**, **codeine**, **diamorphine**, **dihydrocodeine**, **dipipanone**, **fentanyl**, **hydromorphone**, **meptazinol**, **methadone**, **morphine**, **oxycodone**, **papaveretum**). [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - ▶ **Opioids** (**buprenorphine**) are predicted to increase the risk of opiate withdrawal when given with opioids (**codeine**, **diamorphine**, **dihydrocodeine**, **dipipanone**, **fentanyl**, **hydromorphone**, **meptazinol**, **methadone**, **morphine**, **oxycodone**, **papaveretum**, **pentazocine**, **pethidine**, **remifentanil**, **sufentanil**, **tapentadol**, **tramadol**). [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Opioids** (**pentazocine**) are predicted to increase the risk of opiate withdrawal when given with opioids (**pethidine**, **remifentanil**, **tapentadol**, **tramadol**). [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - ▶ **Opioids** (**pentazocine**) are predicted to increase the risk of opiate withdrawal when given with opioids (**sufentanil**). [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849

- ▶ **Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (alfentanil, fentanyl). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to morphine. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ribociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to opioids (alfentanil, fentanyl). Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to buprenorphine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to methadone. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to opioids (alfentanil, fentanyl). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to opioids (codeine, morphine). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to oxycodone. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of codeine. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of tramadol. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **St John's Wort** decreases the exposure to methadone. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **St John's Wort** moderately decreases the exposure to oxycodone. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of codeine. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of tramadol. [Severe] Study

#### Orlistat

**SEPARATION OF ADMINISTRATION** Orlistat might affect the absorption of concurrently administered drugs—consider separating administration. Particular care should be taken with antiepileptics, antiretrovirals, and drugs that have a narrow therapeutic index.

**Orphenadrine** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

**Osimertinib** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to osimertinib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to osimertinib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to osimertinib. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to osimertinib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to osimertinib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to osimertinib. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to osimertinib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to osimertinib. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Osimertinib** slightly increases the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. [Moderate] Study

**Oxaliplatin** → see platinum compounds

**Oxazepam** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

**Oxcarbazepine** → see antiepileptics

**Oxprenolol** → see beta blockers, non-selective

**Oxybuprocaine** → see anaesthetics, local

**Oxybutynin** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Oxybutynin** potentially increases the risk of overheating and dehydration when given with **antiepileptics (zonisamide)**. Avoid in children. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Theoretical

- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to oxybutynin. [Mild] Theoretical

**Oxycodone** → see opioids

#### Oxymetholone

- ▶ **Oxymetholone** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Oxymetholone** increases the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. [Severe] Anecdotal

**Oxytetracycline** → see tetracyclines

**Paclitaxel** → see taxanes

#### Palbociclib

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to palbociclib. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to palbociclib. Avoid or adjust palbociclib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ciclosporin**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to palbociclib. Avoid or adjust palbociclib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to palbociclib. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergotamine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to palbociclib. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to palbociclib. Avoid or adjust palbociclib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to palbociclib. Avoid or adjust palbociclib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to palbociclib. Avoid or adjust palbociclib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Palbociclib** increases the exposure to **midazolam**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to palbociclib. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, fentanyl)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to palbociclib. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sirolimus**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to palbociclib. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tacrolimus**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Paliperidone** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to paliperidone. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849

## Paliperidone (continued)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (valproate)** slightly increase the exposure to paliperidone. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Paliperidone** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to paliperidone. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Paliperidone** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to paliperidone. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to paliperidone. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to paliperidone. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Palonosetron** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- ▶ **Dopamine receptor agonists (apomorphine)** are predicted to increase the risk of severe hypotension when given with palonosetron. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pamidronate** → see bisphosphonates

## Pancreatin

- ▶ **Pancreatin** is predicted to decrease the effects of **acarbose**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Pancuronium** → see neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising

**Panitumumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

**Panobinostat** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Avoid pomegranate, pomegranate juice, and star fruit as they are predicted to increase panobinostat exposure.

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to panobinostat. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to panobinostat. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to panobinostat. Adjust panobinostat dose; in hepatic impairment avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to panobinostat. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Panobinostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **atomoxetine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Panobinostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (metoprolol)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Panobinostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (nebivolol)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to panobinostat. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to panobinostat. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to panobinostat. Adjust panobinostat dose; in hepatic impairment avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to panobinostat. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to panobinostat. Adjust panobinostat dose; in hepatic impairment avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to panobinostat. Adjust panobinostat dose; in hepatic impairment avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to panobinostat. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to panobinostat. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to panobinostat. Adjust panobinostat dose; in hepatic impairment avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to panobinostat. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Panobinostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phenothiazines (perphenazine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Panobinostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to panobinostat. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to panobinostat. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to panobinostat. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Vemurafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to panobinostat. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

**Pantoprazole** → see proton pump inhibitors

**Papaveretum** → see opioids

**Paracetamol** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity)

- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** (in those who drink heavily) causes severe liver damage when given with paracetamol. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847

- ▶ **Paracetamol** is predicted to decrease the clearance of **alkylating agents (busulfan)**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Paracetamol** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **anaesthetics, local (prilocaine)**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** decrease the exposure to paracetamol. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847

- ▶ **Paracetamol** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Paracetamol** is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Imatinib** increases the risk of hepatotoxicity when given with paracetamol. [Severe] Anecdotal

- ▶ **Paracetamol** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to paracetamol. [Unknown] Theoretical

- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to paracetamol. [Moderate] Study

**Paraldehyde** → see antiepileptics

## Parathyroid hormone

- ▶ **Bisphosphonates** are predicted to decrease the effects of parathyroid hormone. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

**Paracetamol** → see NSAIDs

**Paricalcitol** → see vitamin D substances

## Paritaprevir

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to paritaprevir (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to paritaprevir (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to paritaprevir (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) and paritaprevir (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) is predicted to increase the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to paritaprevir (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to paritaprevir (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) increases the risk of raised liver function tests when given with **combined hormonal contraceptives**. Avoid. [Severe] Study



- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) is predicted to increase the exposure to **loop diuretics (furosemide)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (fluvastatin)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) increases the exposure to **statins (pravastatin)**. Adjust pravastatin dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) increases the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Adjust rosuvastatin dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Paroxetine** → see SSRIs
- ▶ **Pasireotide** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- ▶ **Pasireotide** is predicted to decrease the absorption of oral **ciclosporin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Patiromer**

**SEPARATION OF ADMINISTRATION** Manufacturer advises take 3 hours before, or after, other drugs.
- ▶ **Pazopanib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **pazopanib**. **Pazopanib** should be taken 1 hour before or 2 hours after antacids. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid or adjust **pazopanib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid or adjust **pazopanib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pazopanib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **pazopanib**. **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** should be taken 10 hours before or 2 hours after **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid or adjust **pazopanib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid or adjust **pazopanib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Pazopanib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitinipide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid or adjust **pazopanib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Neutropatin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pazopanib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Pazopanib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid or administer concurrently without food. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pegaspargase** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Pegaspargase** is predicted to increase the risk of hepatotoxicity when given with **imatinib**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Pegaspargase** affects the efficacy of **methotrexate**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Pegaspargase** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **vinca alkaloids (vincristine)**. Vincristine should be taken 3 to 24 hours before **pegaspargase**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Peginterferon alfa** → see interferons
- ▶ **Peginterferon beta-1a** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Pembrolizumab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- ▶ **Pemetrexed** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 2 p. 847 (neurotoxicity)
- ▶ **Antimalarials (pyrimethamine)** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **pemetrexed**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Aspirin** (high-dose) potentially increases the exposure to **pemetrexed**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **pemetrexed**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **NSAIDs** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pemetrexed**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847
- ▶ **Penicillamine** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity)
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **penicillamine**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antimalarials (chloroquine)** are predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **penicillamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Penicillamine** potentially decreases the concentration of **digoxin**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Hydroxychloroquine** is predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **penicillamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical



**Penicillamine** (continued)

- **Iron (oral)** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **penicillamine**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [\[Mild\]](#) Study
- **Sodium aurothiomalate** potentially increases the risk of side-effects when given with **penicillamine** (in those who have had previous adverse reactions to gold). Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- **Zinc** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **penicillamine**. [\[Mild\]](#) Theoretical

**Penicillins** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity)

amoxicillin · ampicillin · benzylpenicillin · flucloxacillin · phenoxymethylpenicillin · piperacillin · pivmecillinam · temocillin · ticarcillin

- **Allopurinol** increases the risk of skin rash when given with penicillins (**amoxicillin, ampicillin**). [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- **Antiepileptics (valproate)** increase the risk of side-effects when given with **pivmecillinam**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal
- **Penicillins** potentially alter the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal
- **Penicillins** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **methotrexate**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- **Piperacillin** increases the effects of **neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- **Penicillins** are predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Piperacillin** increases the effects of **suxamethonium**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

**Pentamidine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

- **Didanosine** is predicted to increase the risk of pancreatitis when given with **pentamidine**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Intravenous **pentamidine** potentially increases the risk of QT-prolongation when given with **drugs that prolong the QT interval**. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal
- **Foscarnet** increases the risk of hypocalcaemia when given with **pentamidine**. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847

**Pentazocine** → see opioids**Pentostatin** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)

- **Alkylating agents (cyclophosphamide)** (high-dose) increase the risk of toxicity when given with **pentostatin**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 5 p. 847
- **Fludarabine** increases the risk of pulmonary toxicity when given with **pentostatin**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850

**Pentoxifylline**

- **Pentoxifylline** is predicted to increase the concentration of **aminophylline**. Use with caution or avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** very slightly increase the exposure to **pentoxifylline**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pentoxifylline**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- **Pentoxifylline** increases the concentration of **theophylline**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Study

**Peppermint oil**

- **Peppermint oil** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical

**Perampanel** → see antiepileptics**Pergolide** → see dopamine receptor agonists**Pericyazine** → see phenothiazines**Perindopril** → see ACE inhibitors**Perphenazine** → see phenothiazines**Pertuzumab** → see monoclonal antibodies**Pethidine** → see opioids**Phenelzine** → see monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**Phenindione** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** The effects of phenindione can be reduced or abolished by vitamin K, including that found in health foods, food supplements, enteral feeds, or large amounts of some green vegetables or green tea. Major changes in diet (especially involving salads and vegetables) and in alcohol consumption can affect anticoagulant control.

- **Antiarrhythmics (propafenone)** are predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** greatly increase the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Axitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Bosutinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Cabozantinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Cephalosporins (ceftriaxone)** potentially increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal
- **Corticosteroids** are predicted to increase the effects of **phenindione**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Anecdotal
- **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Dasatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Disulfiram** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Enteral feeds** (vitamin-K containing) potentially decrease the effects of **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Erlotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Fibrates** are predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- **Gefitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** increase the exposure to **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal
- **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Nandrolone** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Oxymetholone** increases the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal
- **Paracetamol** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Pazopanib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Penicillins** are predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Ponatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Ranibizumab** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Regorafenib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Ruxolitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Sorafenib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Statins (rosuvastatin)** are predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Sunitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- **Vandetanib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical

**Phenobarbital** → see antiepileptics**Phenothiazines** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects), TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

chlorpromazine · fluphenazine · levomepromazine · pericyazine · perphenazine · prochlorperazine · promazine · trifluoperazine

- **Chlorpromazine** dose adjustment might be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment.
- **Fluphenazine** dose adjustment might be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment.

- ▶ **Amfetamines** are predicted to decrease the effects of **chlorpromazine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Phenothiazines** are predicted to decrease the effects of **amfetamines**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **phenothiazines**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Chlorpromazine** decreases the concentration of **antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** and **antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** decrease the concentration of **chlorpromazine**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Chlorpromazine** is predicted to increase the risk of hypotatraemia when given with **desmopressin**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Phenothiazines** are predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849 → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **perphenazine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Phenothiazines** are predicted to decrease the antihypertensive effects of **guanethidine**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Phenothiazines** decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid or monitor worsening parkinsonian symptoms. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Phenothiazines** potentially increase the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Chlorpromazine** decreases the effects of **metyrapone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Moclobemide** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **levomepromazine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of neuroleptic malignant syndrome when given with **phenothiazines**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Panobinostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **perphenazine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (paroxetine)** markedly increase the exposure to **perphenazine**. [Severe] Study
- Phenoxymethylpenicillin** → see penicillins
- Phenylephrine** → see sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor
- Phenytoin** → see antiepileptics
- Pholcodine**
- ▶ **Pholcodine** is predicted to increase the risk of CNS excitation or depression when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical
- Phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- avanafil • sildenafil • tadalafil • vardenafil
- ▶ **Alpha blockers** cause significant hypotensive effects when given with **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors**. Patient should be stabilised on first drug then second drug should be added at the lowest recommended dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **avanafil**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **vardenafil**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (**avanafil, tadalafil**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (**sildenafil, vardenafil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **avanafil**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **vardenafil**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **sildenafil** dose, p. 120. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (**avanafil, vardenafil**). Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **avanafil**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vardenafil**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** decreases the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **avanafil**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **vardenafil**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (**avanafil, vardenafil**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **sildenafil** dose, p. 120. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **avanafil**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vardenafil**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (**avanafil, tadalafil**). Avoid. [Severe] Study

## Phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (continued)

- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (**sildenafil**, **varденаfil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Etravirine** moderately decreases the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (**avanafil**, **varденаfil**). Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **sildenafil** dose, p. 120. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (**avanafil**, **varденаfil**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **sildenafil** dose, p. 120. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **avanafil**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **varденаfil**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **sildenafil** dose, p. 120. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **avanafil**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **varденаfil**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (**avanafil**, **varденаfil**). Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (**avanafil**, **tadalafil**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (**sildenafil**, **varденаfil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **avanafil**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **varденаfil**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nicorandil** is predicted to increase the risk of hypotension when given with phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **avanafil**. Adjust **avanafil** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Monitor or adjust **sildenafil** dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4, p. 120. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tadalafil**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **varденаfil**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Nitrates** potentially increase the risk of hypotension when given with phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Ribociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sildenafil**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (**avanafil**, **tadalafil**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (**sildenafil**, **varденаfil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Riociguat** is predicted to increase the risk of hypotension when given with phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of hypotension when given with **sapropterin**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Pibrentasvir**
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaronе)** potentially increase the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (eslicarbazepine, oxcarbazepine)** potentially decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole)** potentially increase the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid or monitor. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** potentially decreases the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Pibrentasvir** (with glecaprevir) increases the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Pibrentasvir** (with glecaprevir) increases the exposure to **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, lopinavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) increase the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** potentially increase the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Lumacaftor** potentially decreases the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Pibrentasvir** (with glecaprevir) increases the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin, simvastatin)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Pibrentasvir** (with glecaprevir) is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (fluvastatin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Pibrentasvir** (with glecaprevir) increases the exposure to **statins (pravastatin)**. Use with caution and adjust **pravastatin** dose. [Moderate] Study

- **Pibrentasvir** (with glecaprevir) increases the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Use with caution and adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

### Pilocarpine

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

### Pimecrolimus

- **Alcohol (beverage)** increases the risk of facial flushing and skin irritation when given with topical **pimecrolimus**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- **Pimecrolimus** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **mifamurtide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical

**Pimozide** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects), TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

- **Antiarrhythmics (dronedrone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- **Appetitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical

- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

- **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study

- **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- **Pimozide** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849 → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849

- **Fosaprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical

- **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical

- **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study

- **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical

- **Pimozide** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

- **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical

- **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- **Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical

- **Panobinostat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical

- **Ribociclib** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. [\[Severe\]](#) Study

**Pindolol** → see beta blockers, non-selective

**Pioglitazone** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)

- **Pioglitazone** potentially decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. Use with caution or avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical

- **Clopidogrel** increases the exposure to **pioglitazone**. Monitor blood glucose and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Study

- **Fibrates (gemfibrozil)** increase the exposure to **pioglitazone**. Monitor blood glucose and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Study

- **Leflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pioglitazone**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

- **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pioglitazone**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

- **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **pioglitazone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

- **St John's Wort** slightly decreases the exposure to **pioglitazone**. [\[Mild\]](#) Study

- **Teriflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pioglitazone**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

**Piperacillin** → see penicillins

**Piperaquine** → see antimalarials

### Pirfenidone

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Smoking increases pirfenidone clearance; patients should be encouraged to stop smoking before and during treatment with pirfenidone.

- **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **pirfenidone**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical

- **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pirfenidone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

- **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **pirfenidone**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical

- **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pirfenidone**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical

- **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pirfenidone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

- **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pirfenidone**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical

- **SRRs (fluvoxamine)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **pirfenidone**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

- **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pirfenidone**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical

**Piroxicam** → see NSAIDs

### Pitolisant

- **Abiraterone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

- **Antiarrhythmics (propafenone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

- **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **pitolisant**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

- **Antihistamines, sedating** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **pitolisant**. [\[Unknown\]](#) Theoretical

- **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical

- **Bupropion** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

- **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ciclosporin**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical

- **Cinacalcet** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

- **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical

- **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **coumarins (warfarin)**. [\[Unknown\]](#) Theoretical

- **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical

- **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabigatran**. [\[Unknown\]](#) Theoretical

- **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical

- **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **digoxin**. [\[Unknown\]](#) Theoretical

- **Duloxetine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study



## Pitolisant (continued)

- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **efavirenz**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **pitolisant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **everolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **irinotecan**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **metformin**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mianserin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **pitolisant**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mirtazapine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **pitolisant**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **pitolisant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (morphine)**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paracetamol**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **repaglinide**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **pitolisant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pitolisant**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tacrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes (docetaxel)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **pitolisant**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pivmecillinam** → see penicillins
- ▶ **Pixantrone** → see anthracyclines
- ▶ **Pizotifen** → see antihistamines, sedating
- ▶ **Platinum compounds** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 19 p. 851 (ototoxicity), TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy)
- ▶ carboplatin • cisplatin • oxaliplatin
- ▶ **Cisplatin** increases the risk of pulmonary toxicity when given with **bleomycin**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **platinum compounds**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Polymyxins** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 20 p. 851 (neuromuscular blocking effects)
- ▶ **Polysaccharide-iron complex** → see iron (oral)
- ▶ **Polystyrene sulfonate**
- ▶ **Antacids** increase the risk of metabolic alkalosis when given with **polystyrene sulfonate**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Polystyrene sulfonate** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **thyroid hormones (levothyroxine)**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pomalidomide** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)

- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the risk of venous thromboembolism when given with **pomalidomide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Hormone replacement therapy** is predicted to increase the risk of venous thromboembolism when given with **pomalidomide**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pomalidomide**. Adjust **pomalidomide** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** moderately increase the exposure to **pomalidomide**. Adjust **pomalidomide** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ponatinib**
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ponatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **ponatinib**. Monitor and adjust **ponatinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **ponatinib**. Monitor and adjust **ponatinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ponatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ponatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ponatinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **ponatinib**. Monitor and adjust **ponatinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **ponatinib**. Monitor and adjust **ponatinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **ponatinib**. Monitor and adjust **ponatinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ponatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ponatinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ponatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ponatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Posaconazole** → see antifungals, azoles
- ▶ **Potassium canrenoate** → see TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)
- ▶ **Potassium chloride** → see TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)
- ▶ **Potassium citrate**
- ▶ **Potassium citrate** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **methenamine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Potassium citrate** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **sucralfate**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Potassium-sparing diuretics** → see TABLE 18 p. 851 (hyponatraemia), TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)
- ▶ amiloride • triamterene
- ▶ **Triamterene** potentially increases the clearance of **lithium**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pramipexole** → see dopamine receptor agonists
- ▶ **Prasugrel** → see TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)
- ▶ **Pravastatin** → see statins
- ▶ **Praziquantel**
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **praziquantel**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **praziquantel**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antimalarials (chloroquine)** moderately decrease the exposure to **praziquantel**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **praziquantel**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Corticosteroids (dexamethasone)** decrease the exposure to **praziquantel**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **praziquantel**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study



- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to praziquantel. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** moderately increase the exposure to praziquantel. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to praziquantel. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to praziquantel. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to praziquantel. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to praziquantel. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to praziquantel. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

**Prazosin** → see alpha blockers

**Prednisolone** → see corticosteroids

**Prednisone** → see corticosteroids

**Pregabalin** → see antiepileptics

**Prilocaine** → see anaesthetics, local

**Primaquine** → see antimalarials

**Primidone** → see antiepileptics

**Procarbazine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Procarbazine is a mild monoamine-oxidase inhibitor and might rarely interact with tyramine-rich foods (such as mature cheese, salami, pickled herring, Bovril®, Oxo®, Marmite® or any similar meat or yeast extract or fermented soya bean extract, and some beers, lagers or wines).

- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially causes a disulfiram-like reaction when given with procarbazine. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to increase the risk of hypersensitivity reactions when given with procarbazine. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin)** are predicted to increase the risk of hypersensitivity when given with procarbazine. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with procarbazine. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical

**Prochlorperazine** → see phenothiazines

**Procyclidine** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

- ▶ **SSRIs (paroxetine)** slightly increase the exposure to procyclidine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

**Proguanil** → see antimalarials

**Promazine** → see phenothiazines

**Promethazine** → see antihistamines, sedating

**Propafenone** → see antiarrhythmics

**Propantheline** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

**Propiverine** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

- ▶ **Propiverine** is predicted to increase the exposure to lomitapide. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Propofol** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (valproate)** potentially increase the concentration of propofol. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical

**Propranolol** → see beta blockers, non-selective

**Propylthiouracil** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- ▶ **Propylthiouracil** is predicted to decrease the effects of metyrapone. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

#### Proton pump inhibitors

esomeprazole • lansoprazole • omeprazole • pantoprazole • rabeprazole

- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** increase the exposure to proton pump inhibitors (esomeprazole, omeprazole). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** decrease the absorption of antifungals, azoles (itraconazole). Administer itraconazole capsules with an acidic beverage. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** decrease the absorption of antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole). Administer ketoconazole with an acidic beverage. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** decrease the absorption of antifungals, azoles (posaconazole) (oral suspension). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the absorption of bosutinib. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the absorption of ceritinib. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Esomeprazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to cilostazol. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Omeprazole** is predicted to increase the exposure to cilostazol. Adjust cilostazol dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors (esomeprazole, omeprazole)** potentially increase the exposure to clobazam. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors (esomeprazole, omeprazole)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of clopidogrel. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to slightly to moderately decrease the exposure to dasatinib. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the absorption of dipyridamole (immediate release tablets). [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to erlotinib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the exposure to gefitinib. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (tipranavir)** decrease the exposure to proton pump inhibitors. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** decrease the exposure to HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir). Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** increase the exposure to HIV-protease inhibitors (saquinavir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the exposure to ledipasvir. Adjust dose, see ledipasvir with sofosbuvir p. 401. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** decrease the clearance of methotrexate (high-dose). Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the exposure to pazopanib. Avoid or administer concurrently without food. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the exposure to rilpivirine. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** potentially decrease the exposure to sofosbuvir. Adjust dose, see ledipasvir with sofosbuvir p. 401, sofosbuvir with velpatasvir, and sofosbuvir with velpatasvir and voxilaprevir. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Esomeprazole** is predicted to slightly to moderately increase the exposure to SSRIs (citalopram, escitalopram). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Omeprazole** slightly to moderately increases the exposure to SSRIs (citalopram, escitalopram). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the concentration of velpatasvir. Adjust dose, see sofosbuvir with velpatasvir. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the exposure to voxilaprevir. Adjust dose, see sofosbuvir with velpatasvir and voxilaprevir. [Moderate] Study
- Proxymetacaine** → see anaesthetics, local
- Pseudoephedrine** → see sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor
- Pyrazinamide**
- ▶ **Allopurinol** is predicted to increase the risk of hyperuricaemia when given with pyrazinamide. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Pyrazinamide** is predicted to decrease the effects of sulfapyrazone. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Pyridostigmine** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 20 p. 851 (neuromuscular blocking effects)
- ▶ **Aminoglycosides** are predicted to decrease the effects of pyridostigmine. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 20 p. 851
- Pyrimethamine** → see antimalarials
- Quetiapine** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

## Quetiapine (continued)

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedrone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (valproate)** potentially increase the risk of neutropenia when given with **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Appetitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Quetiapine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Quetiapine** decreases the effects of **levodopa**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Quetiapine** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Ribociclib** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
- Quinagolid** → see dopamine receptor agonists
- Quinapril** → see ACE inhibitors
- Quinine** → see antimalarials
- Quinolones** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

ciprofloxacin · levofloxacin · moxifloxacin · norfloxacin · ofloxacin

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin, norfloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **aminophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **anagrelide**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **quinolones**. **Quinolones** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **antacids**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** slightly increases the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (lidocaine)**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** affects the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Calcium salts (calcium carbonate)** decrease the absorption of **ciprofloxacin**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium salts (calcium carbonate)** decrease the absorption of **norfloxacin**. **Norfloxacin** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **calcium carbonate**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** increases the concentration of **clozapine**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Quinolones** increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Didanosine** (buffered) is predicted to greatly decrease the exposure to oral **quinolones**. **Didanosine** should be taken 2 hours after **quinolones**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dopamine receptor agonists (ropinirole)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **duloxetine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Quetiapine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enteral feeds** decrease the exposure to **ciprofloxacin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** slightly increases the exposure to **erlotinib**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Adjust **ibrutinib** dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the exposure to **quinolones**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Lanthanum** moderately decreases the exposure to **quinolones**. **Quinolones** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **lanthanum**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **loxapine**. Avoid. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** potentially increases the risk of toxicity when given with **methotrexate**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** slightly increases the exposure to **monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs** potentially increase the risk of seizures when given with **quinolones**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** very slightly increases the exposure to **pentoxifylline**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pirfenidone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pomalidomide**. Adjust **pomalidomide** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **roflumilast**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sucralfate** decreases the exposure to **quinolones**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **theophylline**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Norfloxacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **theophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** increases the exposure to **tizanidine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Zinc** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quinolones**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciprofloxacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zolmitriptan**. Adjust **zolmitriptan** dose, p. 292. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Rabeprazole** → see proton pump inhibitors

### Rabies vaccine

- ▶ **Antimalarials (chloroquine)** decrease the efficacy of rabies vaccine. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Hydroxychloroquine** is predicted to decrease efficacy rabies vaccine. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Raloxifene** → see TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)

### Raltegravir

- ▶ **Antacids** slightly decrease the exposure to raltegravir. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to affect the exposure to raltegravir. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to affect the exposure to raltegravir. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium salts (calcium carbonate)** greatly decrease the exposure to raltegravir (high-dose). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir)** increase the exposure to raltegravir (high-dose). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (darunavir)** increase the risk of rash when given with raltegravir. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (fosamprenavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) decrease the exposure to raltegravir and raltegravir decreases the exposure to HIV-protease inhibitors (fosamprenavir) (boosted with ritonavir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (tipranavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) are predicted to decrease the exposure to raltegravir (high-dose). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to raltegravir. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Moderate] Study

**Raltitrexed** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- ▶ **Folates** are predicted to alter the effects of raltitrexed. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with raltitrexed. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical

**Ramipril** → see ACE inhibitors

**Ramucirumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

### Ranibizumab

- ▶ **Ranibizumab** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **argatroban**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranibizumab** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **bivalirudin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranibizumab** increases the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranibizumab** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **danaparoid**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranibizumab** increases the risk of bleeding events when given with **heparin (unfractionated)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranibizumab** increases the risk of bleeding events when given with **low molecular-weight heparins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranibizumab** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Ranitidine** → see H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists

**Ranolazine** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to ranolazine. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, non-selective (nadolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ceritinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the concentration of ranolazine and ranolazine is predicted to increase the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid or adjust colchicine dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranolazine** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to ranolazine. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the concentration of ranolazine. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to ranolazine. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to ranolazine. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **panobinostat**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to ranolazine. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to ranolazine. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranolazine** slightly increases the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Adjust simvastatin dose, p. 134. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** increases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Theoretical

**Rasagiline** → see monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors

**Reboxetine**

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to reboxetine. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to reboxetine. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of reboxetine. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to reboxetine. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to reboxetine. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to reboxetine. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to reboxetine. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Reboxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Reboxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of hypokalaemia when given with **loop diuretics**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to reboxetine. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to reboxetine. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Reboxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **moclobemide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Reboxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Reboxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors (rasagiline, selegiline)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to reboxetine. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Reboxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of hypokalaemia when given with **thiazide diuretics**. [Moderate] Anecdotal

**Regorafenib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to regorafenib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to regorafenib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to regorafenib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Regorafenib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to regorafenib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to regorafenib. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to regorafenib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to regorafenib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to regorafenib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Regorafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methotrexate**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to regorafenib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Regorafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **NSAIDs (mefenamic acid)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
- ▶ **Regorafenib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to regorafenib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Regorafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin, fluvastatin, rosuvastatin)**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Remifentanyl** → see opioids

**Repaglinide** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to repaglinide. Monitor blood glucose and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to repaglinide. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to repaglinide. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** increases the exposure to repaglinide. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to repaglinide. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to repaglinide. Monitor blood glucose and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Fibrates (gemfibrozil)** increase the exposure to repaglinide. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to repaglinide. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to repaglinide. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Iron chelators (deferasirox)** moderately increase the exposure to repaglinide. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to repaglinide. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to repaglinide. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to repaglinide. Monitor blood glucose and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the exposure to repaglinide. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to repaglinide. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to repaglinide. Monitor blood glucose and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to repaglinide. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Trimethoprim** slightly increases the exposure to repaglinide. Avoid or monitor blood glucose. [Moderate] Study

**Retigabine** → see antiepileptics

**Retinoids** → see TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)

acitretin · adapalene · alitretinoin · bexarotene · isotretinoin · tazarotene · tretinoin

- ▶ Avoid concomitant use of keratolytics in patients taking **acitretin** and **isotretinoin**.
- ▶ Since systemic absorption can follow topical application of **isotretinoin**, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially increases the concentration of **acitretin**. Avoid and for 2 months after stopping **acitretin**, p. 749. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to alitretinoin. Adjust alitretinoin dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, itraconazole, ketoconazole, miconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to alitretinoin. Adjust alitretinoin dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the risk of tretinoin toxicity when given with **tretinoin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** is predicted to increase the exposure to alitretinoin. Adjust alitretinoin dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to alitretinoin. Adjust alitretinoin dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fibrates (gemfibrozil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to alitretinoin. Adjust alitretinoin dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fibrates (gemfibrozil)** increase the concentration of **bexarotene**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to alitretinoin. Adjust alitretinoin dose. [Moderate] Theoretical



- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alitretinoin**. Adjust **alitretinoin** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **alitretinoin**. Adjust **alitretinoin** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Acitretin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **methotrexate**. Avoid. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- **Sulfapyrazone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **alitretinoin**. Adjust **alitretinoin** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Retinoids (**acitretin**, **alitretinoin**, **isotretinoin**, **tretinoin**) increase the risk of benign intracranial hypertension when given with **tetracyclines**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- **Bexarotene** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **vitamin A**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Retinoids (**acitretin**, **alitretinoin**, **isotretinoin**) are predicted to increase the risk of vitamin A toxicity when given with **vitamin A**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Tretinoin** is predicted to increase the risk of vitamin A toxicity when given with **vitamin A**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

#### Ribavirin

- **Ribavirin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **didanosine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Ribavirin** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **stavudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Ribavirin** increases the risk of anaemia and/or leucopenia when given with **zidovudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

**Ribociclib** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Avoid concomitant use of pomegranate or pomegranate juice as it is predicted to increase **ribociclib** exposure.

- **Ribociclib** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the exposure to **alpha blockers (alfuzosin)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Ribociclib** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid or adjust **ribociclib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Appetitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study
- **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study
- **Ribociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ciclosporin**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid or adjust **ribociclib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Enzalutamide** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Ribociclib** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Ribociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid or adjust **ribociclib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid or adjust **ribociclib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study

- **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid or adjust **ribociclib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Ribociclib** moderately increases the exposure to **midazolam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- **Mitotane** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study
- **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study
- **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ribociclib**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Ribociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, fentanyl)**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Ribociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Ribociclib** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- **Ribociclib** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the exposure to **quetiapine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Rifampicin** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Ribociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sirolimus**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Ribociclib** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Ribociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tacrolimus**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

#### Rifabutin

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Although some manufacturers class rifabutin as a potent inducer of CYP3A4, clinical data suggests it is potentially a weak inducer, and therefore the BNf does not extrapolate the interactions of potent CYP3A4 inducers to rifabutin. For those who wish to err on the side of caution, see the interactions of rifampicin but bear in mind other mechanisms might be involved.

- **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole)** increase the risk of uveitis when given with **rifabutin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, posaconazole)** increase the concentration of **rifabutin** and **rifabutin** decreases the concentration of **antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, posaconazole)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **rifabutin** and **rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **rifabutin**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Rifabutin** decreases the concentration of **antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** and **antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** increase the concentration of **rifabutin**. Avoid or adjust **voriconazole** dose, p. 377. [Severe] Study
- **Rifabutin** slightly decreases the exposure to **antimalarials (atovaquone)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- **Rifabutin** decreases the concentration of **cobicistat** and **cobicistat** increases the exposure to **rifabutin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- **Rifabutin** decreases the exposure to **dapsone**. [Moderate] Study
- **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical



## Rifabutin (continued)

- ▶ **Efavirenz** slightly decreases the exposure to **rifabutin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifabutin** decreases the exposure to **etravirine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, darunavir, fosamprenavir, lopinavir, saquinavir, tipranavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) increase the exposure to **rifabutin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** markedly increase the exposure to **rifabutin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the effects of **hormone replacement therapy**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rifabutin**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin)** increase the risk of neutropenia when given with **rifabutin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** increase the risk of uveitis when given with **rifabutin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the risk of uveitis when given with **rifabutin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifabutin** slightly decreases the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rolapitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tenofovir alafenamide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifabutin** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

## Rifampicin

- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **abiraterone**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **afatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **aldosterone antagonists (eplerenone)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **alprazolam**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** transiently increases the exposure to **ambrisentan**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **aminophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **anaesthetics, local (ropivacaine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **rifampicin**. **Rifampicin** should be taken 1 hour before **antacids**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antiarrhythmics (disopyramide, dronedarone)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **antiarrhythmics (propafenone)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **anticholinesterases, centrally acting (donepezil)**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **rifampicin** and **rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to **antiepileptics (brivaracetam)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly increases the clearance of **antiepileptics (lamotrigine)**. Adjust **lamotrigine** dose, p. 202. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antiepileptics (perampanel)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (fluconazole)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (isavuconazole)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (itraconazole)**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping **rifampicin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)** and **antifungals, azoles (ketoconazole)** potentially decrease the exposure to **rifampicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (posaconazole)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifampicin** very markedly decreases the exposure to **antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antihistamines, non-sedating (bilastine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** increases the clearance of **antihistamines, non-sedating (fexofenadine)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **antimalarials (artemether)** (with lumefantrine). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **antimalarials (atovaquone)** and **antimalarials (atovaquone)** slightly increase the exposure to **rifampicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **antimalarials (mefloquine)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **antimalarials (piperaquine)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **antimalarials (quinine)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **apixaban**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **apremilast**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **aprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust **aripiprazole** dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **ataluren**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bazedoxifene**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **beta blockers, non-selective (carvedilol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **beta blockers, non-selective (propranolol)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (bisoprolol, metoprolol)**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (celiprolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to **bortezomib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** affects the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to very markedly decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bupropion**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **buspirone**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **cabozantinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately increase the clearance of **caffeine citrate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (amlodipine, felodipine, lacidipine, lercanidipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** greatly decreases the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **calcium channel blockers (nifedipine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **canagliflozin**. Adjust canagliflozin dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cannabis extract**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **caspofungin**. Adjust caspofungin dose, p. 372. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ceritinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **chloramphenicol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **chlorthalopexide**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to alter the effects of **cilostazol**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cinacalcet**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **clomethiazole**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **clozapine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to corticosteroids (**budesonide, deflazacort, dexamethasone, fludrocortisone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to corticosteroids (**fluticasone**). [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabrafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **dapsone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasabuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **delamanid**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **diazepam**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **duloxetine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to **efavirenz**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eluxadoline**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. Avoid or adjust erlotinib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **exemestane**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fosoterodine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to  **fingolimod**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fosaprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **gefitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly affects the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust guanfacine dose, p. 231. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **haloperidol**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to HIV-protease inhibitors (**atazanavir, darunavir, fosamprenavir, lopinavir, saquinavir**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** slightly decreases the exposure to HIV-protease inhibitors (**ritonavir**). [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to HIV-protease inhibitors (**tipranavir**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the effects of **hormone replacement therapy**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Avoid or adjust ibrutinib dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **idelalisib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **iron chelators (deferasirox)**. Monitor serum ferritin and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivabradine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ixazomib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

## Rifampicin (continued)

- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **linagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin slightly decreases the exposure to **linezolid**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lomitapide**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Rifampicin increases the clearance of **lorazepam**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lurasidone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **macitentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin decreases the concentration of **macrolides (clarithromycin)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **maraviroc**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **mirtazapine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **modafinil**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Rifampicin decreases the effects of **monoclonal antibodies (brentuximab vedotin)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **montelukast**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin decreases the concentration of **mycophenolate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **natelginide**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin decreases the concentration of **nevirapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nitisinone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Rifampicin increases the clearance of **nitrazepam**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Rifampicin moderately decreases the exposure to **NSAIDs (celecoxib, diclofenac, etoricoxib)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olanzapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ombitasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ondansetron**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (alfentanil, fentanyl)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (buprenorphine)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Rifampicin decreases the exposure to **opioids (codeine, morphine)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin decreases the exposure to **opioids (methadone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **opioids (oxycodone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **osimertinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **palbociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paliperidone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **panobinostat**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Rifampicin decreases the exposure to **paracetamol**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pazopanib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (avanafil, tadalafil)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors (sildenafil, vardenafil)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to moderately to markedly decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin moderately decreases the exposure to **pioglitazone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pirfenidone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **pitolisant**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ponatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **praziquantel**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin slightly decreases the exposure to **raltegravir**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ranolazine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **reboxetine**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **regorafenib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **repaglinide**. Monitor blood glucose and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin markedly decreases the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **rivaroxaban**. Avoid unless patient can be monitored for signs of thrombosis. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **roflumilast**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **rolapitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **roxatitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin moderately decreases the exposure to the active metabolite of **selezipag**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sofosbuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Rifampicin is predicted to decrease the exposure to **solifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sorafenib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly decreases the exposure to **statins** (**atorvastatin**). **Atorvastatin** should be taken at the same time as **rifampicin**, p. 132, p. 364. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **statins** (**fluvastatin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** very markedly decreases the exposure to **statins** (**simvastatin**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sulfonylureas**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly decreases the exposure to **tamoxifen**. [Unknown] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes** (**cabazitaxel**, **paclitaxel**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes** (**docetaxel**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tenofovir alafenamide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **terbinafine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **tetracyclines** (**doxycycline**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **theophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tivozanib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **tizanidine**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **toremifene**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **trimethoprim**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vandetanib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **velpatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinca alkaloids** (**vinblastine**, **vincristine**, **vindesine**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinca alkaloids** (**vinflunine**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinca alkaloids** (**vinorelbine**). Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vismodegib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** potentially increases the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with **volatile halogenated anaesthetics** (**methoxyflurane**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vortioxetine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly decreases the exposure to **zaleplon**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **zolidem**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Rifaximin**
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** very markedly increases the exposure to **rifaximin**. [Severe] Study
- Rilpivirine**
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. **Antacids** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **rilpivirine**, p. 415. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics** (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) markedly decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics** (**oxcarbazepine**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Calcium salts** (**calcium carbonate**) are predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. **Calcium carbonate** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **rilpivirine**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** markedly decreases the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** should be taken 12 hours before or 4 hours after **rilpivirine**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Mitotane** markedly decreases the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Rifabutin** slightly decreases the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly decreases the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

## Riluzole

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Charcoal-grilled foods are predicted to decrease the exposure to **riluzole**.

- ▶ **SSRIs** (**fluvoxamine**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **riluzole**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Riociguat** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)
- ▶ **Antacids** slightly decrease the exposure to **riociguat**. **Antacids** should be taken 2 hours before or 1 hour after **riociguat**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals**, azoles (**itraconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **riociguat**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals**, azoles (**ketoconazole**) moderately increase the exposure to **riociguat**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **riociguat**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** (**ritonavir**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **riociguat**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Riociguat** is predicted to increase the risk of hypotension when given with **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

**Risedronate** → see bisphosphonates

- Risperidone** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Antiepileptics** (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
  - ▶ **Antifungals**, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849



## Risperidone (continued)

- ▶ **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the exposure to risperidone. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to increase the exposure to risperidone. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to risperidone. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Risperidone** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to risperidone. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to risperidone. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to risperidone. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Risperidone** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Risperidone** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to risperidone. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Risperidone** increases the risk of dyskinesias when given with **methylphenidate**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to risperidone. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to risperidone. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to risperidone. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to risperidone. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Ritonavir** → see HIV-protease inhibitors
- Rituximab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Rivaroxaban** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to rivaroxaban. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to rivaroxaban. Avoid unless patient can be monitored for signs of thrombosis. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to rivaroxaban. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to rivaroxaban. Avoid unless patient can be monitored for signs of thrombosis. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** moderately increase the exposure to rivaroxaban. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to rivaroxaban. Avoid unless patient can be monitored for signs of thrombosis. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to rivaroxaban. Avoid unless patient can be monitored for signs of thrombosis. [Severe] Study
- Rivastigmine** → see anticholinesterases, centrally acting
- Rizatriptan** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)
- ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective (propranolol)** slightly to moderately increase the exposure to rizatriptan. Adjust rizatriptan dose and separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rizatriptan** is predicted to increase the risk of vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. Ergotamine should be taken at least 24 hours before or 6 hours after rizatriptan. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Moclobemide** moderately increases the exposure to rizatriptan. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the exposure to rizatriptan. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- Rocuronium** → see neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising

## Roflumilast

- ▶ **Aminophylline** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to roflumilast. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to roflumilast. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to roflumilast. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to roflumilast. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** slightly increase the exposure to roflumilast. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to roflumilast. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to roflumilast. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to roflumilast. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to roflumilast. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Theophylline** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to roflumilast. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

## Rolapitant

- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to alkylating agents (**bendamustine**). Avoid or monitor. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to anthracyclines (**doxorubicin, mitoxantrone**). Avoid or monitor. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to antiarrhythmics (**propafenone**). [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to rolapitant. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to beta blockers, selective (**metoprolol**). [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to rolapitant. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** slightly increases the exposure to **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to rolapitant. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to rolapitant. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **irinotecan**. Avoid or monitor. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methotrexate**. Avoid or monitor. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to rolapitant. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to rolapitant. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pimozide**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to rolapitant. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to rolapitant. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to rolapitant. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** increases the exposure to **sulfasalazine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tamoxifen**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. Avoid or monitor. [Moderate] Study
- Ropinirole** → see dopamine receptor agonists
- Ropivacaine** → see anaesthetics, local
- Rosuvastatin** → see statins
- Rotavirus vaccine** → see live vaccines
- Rotigotine** → see dopamine receptor agonists



**Rufinamide** → see antiepileptics

**Rupatadine** → see antihistamines, non-sedating

**Ruxolitinib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Adjust dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Adjust dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Ruxolitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Adjust dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Adjust dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Adjust dose and monitor side effects. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
  - ▶ **Ruxolitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Sacubitril** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)
- Sacubitril** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins**. [Severe] Study
- Safinamide** → see monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors
- Salbutamol** → see beta<sub>2</sub> agonists
- Salmeterol** → see beta<sub>2</sub> agonists
- Sapropterin** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)
- ▶ **Methotrexate** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **sapropterin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of hypotension when given with **sapropterin**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
  - ▶ **Trimethoprim** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **sapropterin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Saquinavir** → see HIV-protease inhibitors

**Sarilumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

**Saxagliptin** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedaron)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Theoretical
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **saxagliptin**. [Moderate] Study
- Secukinumab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Selegiline** → see monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors
- Selenium**
- ▶ **Selenium** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **eltrombopag**. **Eltrombopag** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **selenium**, p. 582. [Severe] Theoretical
- Selexipag**
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to the active metabolite of **selexipag**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Antiepileptics (valproate)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **selexipag**. [Unknown] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **selexipag**. [Unknown] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Clopidogrel** is predicted to increase the exposure to **selexipag**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Fibrates (gemfibrozil)** increase the exposure to **selexipag**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Iron chelators (deferasirox)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **selexipag**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **selexipag**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to the active metabolite of **selexipag**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **selexipag**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Sertraline** → see SSRIs
- Sevoflurane** → see volatile halogenated anaesthetics
- Sildenafil** → see phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors
- Siltuximab** → see monoclonal antibodies

**Silver sulfadiazine**

**PHARMACOLOGY** Silver might inactivate enzymatic debriding agents—concurrent use might not be appropriate.

**Simeprevir**

- Antiarhythmics (**dronedarone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Simeprevir** is predicted to increase the concentration of antiarrhythmics (**amiodarone**). Refer to specialist literature. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal
- Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Antiepileptics (**oxcarbazepine**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **posaconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Etravirine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Ledipasvir** moderately increases the exposure to **simeprevir** and **simeprevir** slightly increases the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Macrolides (**clarithromycin**, **erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Simeprevir** moderately increases the exposure to **statins** (**atorvastatin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Simeprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**pravastatin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- Simeprevir** moderately increases the exposure to **statins** (**rosuvastatin**). Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Simeprevir** slightly increases the exposure to **statins** (**simvastatin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study

**Simvastatin** → see statins

**Sirolimus**

- Antiarhythmics (**amiodarone**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. [\[Severe\]](#) Anecdotal
- Antiarhythmics (**dronedarone**) increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Antifungals, azoles (**miconazole**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Aprepitant** increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus** and **sirolimus** potentially increases the concentration of **bosentan**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sirolimus**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- Sirolimus** is predicted to affect the efficacy of **chenodeoxycholic acid**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Ciclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **sirolimus**. Separate administration by 4 hours. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Crizotinib** increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sirolimus**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Grapefruit juice** increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Imatinib** increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sirolimus**. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **sirolimus**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sirolimus**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- Macrolides (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Macrolides (**erythromycin**) increase the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Sirolimus** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **mifamurtide**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sirolimus**. [\[Mild\]](#) Theoretical
- Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Study
- Monoclonal antibodies (**sarilumab**) potentially affect the exposure to **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Netupitant** increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Nilotinib** increases the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Study
- Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sirolimus**. Adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical
- Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sirolimus**. Avoid. [\[Severe\]](#) Theoretical
- Ribociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sirolimus**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [\[Moderate\]](#) Theoretical

- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of sirolimus. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the concentration of sirolimus. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Sirolimus is predicted to decrease the concentration of **tacrolimus** and **tacrolimus** increases the exposure to sirolimus. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Velpatasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to sirolimus. [Severe] Theoretical

**Sitagliptin** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)

#### Sodium aurothiomalate

- ▶ **ACE inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of hypersensitivity when given with sodium aurothiomalate. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Sodium aurothiomalate potentially increases the risk of side-effects when given with **penicillamine** (in those who have had previous adverse reactions to gold). Avoid. [Severe] Study

#### Sodium bicarbonate

- ▶ Oral sodium bicarbonate decreases the absorption of antifungals, azoles (**ketoconazole**). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Sodium bicarbonate decreases the concentration of **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ Sodium bicarbonate is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **methenamine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

#### Sodium citrate

- ▶ Sodium citrate is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **methenamine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Sodium citrate is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **sucralfate**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Sodium clodronate** → see bisphosphonates

**Sodium feredetate** → see iron (oral)

**Sodium nitroprusside** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension)

- ▶ Sodium nitroprusside is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinemia when given with topical **anaesthetics**, local (**prilocaine**). Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Sodium nitroprusside is predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Sodium oxybate** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (valproate)** increase the exposure to sodium oxybate. Adjust sodium oxybate dose. [Moderate] Study

#### Sodium phenylbutyrate

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (valproate)** potentially decrease the effects of sodium phenylbutyrate. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** potentially decrease the effects of sodium phenylbutyrate. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Haloperidol** potentially decreases the effects of sodium phenylbutyrate. [Moderate] Anecdotal

**Sodium picosulfate** → see TABLE 18 p. 851 (hyponatraemia)

#### Sodium stibogluconate

- ▶ Sodium stibogluconate increases the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **amphotericin**. Separate administration by 14 days. [Severe] Study

#### Sofosbuvir

- ▶ Sofosbuvir is predicted to increase the risk of severe bradycardia or heart block when given with **antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to sofosbuvir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, oxcarbazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to sofosbuvir. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** potentially decrease the exposure to sofosbuvir. Adjust dose, see ledipasvir with sofosbuvir p. 401, sofosbuvir with velpatasvir, and sofosbuvir with velpatasvir and voxilaprevir. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (tipranavir)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to sofosbuvir. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** potentially decrease the exposure to sofosbuvir. Adjust dose, see ledipasvir with sofosbuvir p. 401, sofosbuvir with velpatasvir, and sofosbuvir with velpatasvir and voxilaprevir. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to sofosbuvir. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to sofosbuvir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Solifenacin** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to solifenacin. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to solifenacin. Adjust solifenacin or tamsulosin with solifenacin dose; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to solifenacin. Adjust solifenacin or tamsulosin with solifenacin dose; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to solifenacin. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to solifenacin. Adjust solifenacin or tamsulosin with solifenacin dose; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to solifenacin. Adjust solifenacin or tamsulosin with solifenacin dose; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to solifenacin. Adjust solifenacin or tamsulosin with solifenacin dose; avoid in hepatic and renal impairment. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to solifenacin. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to solifenacin. [Moderate] Theoretical

#### Somatropin

- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to decrease the effects of somatropin. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Sorafenib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to sorafenib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Sorafenib increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to sorafenib. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to sorafenib. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Neomycin** moderately decreases the exposure to sorafenib. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Sorafenib is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to sorafenib. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Sotalol** → see beta blockers, non-selective

**Spirololactone** → see aldosterone antagonists

**SSRIs** → see TABLE 18 p. 851 (hyponatraemia), TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)

citalopram • dapoxetine • escitalopram • fluoxetine • fluvoxamine • paroxetine • sertraline

- ▶ **Fluvoxamine** very markedly increases the exposure to **agomelatine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fluvoxamine** moderately increases the exposure to **alprazolam**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **amfetamines**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Fluvoxamine** moderately to markedly increases the exposure to **aminophylline**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fluvoxamine** decreases the clearance of **anaesthetics, local (ropivacaine)**. Avoid prolonged use. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Fluvoxamine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **anagrelide**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **dapoxetine**. Adjust dapoxetine dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to SSRIs (citalopram, escitalopram, fluoxetine,

## SSRIs (continued)

- fluvoxamine, paroxetine, sertraline). [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- Fluvoxamine is predicted to increase the exposure to antiarrhythmics (propafenone). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to increase the exposure to anticholinesterases, centrally acting (galantamine). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin) decrease the concentration of paroxetine. [Moderate] Study
  - Sertraline potentially increases the risk of toxicity when given with antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - SSRIs (fluoxetine, fluvoxamine) are predicted to increase the concentration of antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole) are predicted to increase the exposure to dapoxetine. Adjust dapoxetine dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to dapoxetine. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust dapoxetine dose. [Severe] Study
  - Antifungals, azoles (voriconazole) are predicted to increase the exposure to citalopram. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - Antihistamines, sedating (cyproheptadine) potentially decrease the effects of SSRIs. [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - Aprepitant is predicted to increase the exposure to dapoxetine. Adjust dapoxetine dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to aripiprazole. Adjust aripiprazole dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
  - Fluvoxamine increases the exposure to asenapine. [Moderate] Study
  - Paroxetine moderately increases the exposure to asenapine. [Moderate] Study
  - SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to atomoxetine. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - Fluvoxamine moderately increases the concentration of beta blockers, non-selective (propranolol). [Moderate] Study
  - SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to increase the exposure to beta blockers, selective (metoprolol, nebivolol). [Moderate] Study
  - Bupropion is predicted to increase the exposure to dapoxetine. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - Fluvoxamine markedly decreases the clearance of caffeine citrate. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil) are predicted to increase the exposure to dapoxetine. Adjust dapoxetine dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - SSRIs (fluoxetine, fluvoxamine) are predicted to increase the exposure to clobazam. Adjust clobazam dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
  - Cinacalcet is predicted to increase the exposure to dapoxetine. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Fluvoxamine is predicted to increase the exposure to cinacalcet. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - SSRIs (fluoxetine, fluvoxamine) potentially increase the exposure to clobazam. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - SSRIs (fluoxetine, fluvoxamine) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of clopidogrel. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
  - Fluvoxamine increases the concentration of clozapine. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - Cobicistat is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to dapoxetine. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust dapoxetine dose. [Severe] Study
  - Crizotinib is predicted to increase the exposure to dapoxetine. Adjust dapoxetine dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to darifenacin. [Mild] Study
  - Fluvoxamine moderately increases the exposure to diazepam. [Moderate] Study
  - Fluvoxamine is predicted to increase the exposure to dopamine receptor agonists (ropinirole). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - Fluvoxamine markedly increases the exposure to duloxetine. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
  - SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to increase the exposure to eliglustat. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study
  - Fluvoxamine is predicted to increase the exposure to erlotinib. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Fluvoxamine increases the concentration of frovatriptan. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - Grapefruit juice moderately increases the exposure to sertraline. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine) slightly increase the exposure to SSRIs (citalopram, escitalopram). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine) slightly increase the exposure to SSRIs (paroxetine, sertraline). [Moderate] Study
  - Fluoxetine increases the concentration of haloperidol. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - Fluvoxamine increases the concentration of haloperidol. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - HIV-protease inhibitors are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to dapoxetine. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust dapoxetine dose. [Severe] Study
  - Idelalisib is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to dapoxetine. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust dapoxetine dose. [Severe] Study
  - Imatinib is predicted to increase the exposure to dapoxetine. Adjust dapoxetine dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Fluoxetine is predicted to increase the exposure to lomitapide. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Unknown] Theoretical
  - Fluvoxamine is predicted to increase the exposure to lomitapide. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Fluvoxamine is predicted to increase the exposure to loxapine. Avoid. [Unknown] Theoretical
  - Macrolides (clarithromycin) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to dapoxetine. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust dapoxetine dose. [Severe] Study
  - Macrolides (erythromycin) are predicted to increase the exposure to dapoxetine. Adjust dapoxetine dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Fluvoxamine very markedly increases the exposure to melatonin. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - Netupitant is predicted to increase the exposure to dapoxetine. Adjust dapoxetine dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - SSRIs potentially increase the risk of prolonged neuromuscular blockade when given with neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising (mivacurium). [Unknown] Theoretical
  - Nilotinib is predicted to increase the exposure to dapoxetine. Adjust dapoxetine dose with moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Fluvoxamine moderately increases the exposure to olanzapine. Adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of opioids (codeine). [Moderate] Theoretical
  - SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of opioids (tramadol). [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
  - Fluvoxamine is predicted to increase the exposure to pentoxifylline. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - Paroxetine markedly increases the exposure to phenothiazines (perphenazine). [Severe] Study
  - Fluvoxamine is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to pirfenidone. Avoid. [Moderate] Study



- ▶ SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Fluvoxamine moderately increases the exposure to **pomalidomide**. Adjust pomalidomide dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Paroxetine slightly increases the exposure to **procyclidine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Proton pump inhibitors (esomeprazole) are predicted to slightly to moderately increase the exposure to SSRIs (citalopram, escitalopram). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Proton pump inhibitors (omeprazole) slightly to moderately increase the exposure to SSRIs (citalopram, escitalopram). Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Fluvoxamine is predicted to increase the exposure to **riluzole**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to increase the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Fluvoxamine is predicted to increase the exposure to **roflumilast**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to increase the exposure to SSRIs (dapoxetine). [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
- ▶ SSRIs potentially increase the risk of prolonged neuromuscular blockade when given with **suxamethonium**. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **tamoxifen**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Terbinafine is predicted to increase the exposure to fluoxetine. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Terbinafine moderately increases the exposure to paroxetine. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Terbinafine is predicted to increase the exposure to SSRIs (citalopram, dapoxetine, escitalopram, fluvoxamine, sertraline). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Fluvoxamine moderately to markedly increases the exposure to **theophylline**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Fluvoxamine very markedly increases the exposure to **tizanidine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. Monitor for toxicity and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ Fluvoxamine increases the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants** (amitriptyline, imipramine). Adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ Fluvoxamine markedly increases the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants** (**clomipramine**). Adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine) are predicted to increase the exposure to **vortioxetine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
- ▶ Fluvoxamine is predicted to increase the exposure to **zolmitriptan**. Adjust zolmitriptan dose, p. 292. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- St John's Wort** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **afatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to slightly decrease the exposure to aldosterone antagonists (**eplerenone**). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort decreases the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort moderately decreases the exposure to **alprazolam**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the concentration of **aminophylline**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to antiarrhythmics (**dronedaron**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to antiepileptics (**brivaracetam**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the concentration of antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to antiepileptics (**perampamel**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to antiepileptics (**tiagabine**). Avoid. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**isavuconazole**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort moderately decreases the exposure to antifungals, azoles (**voriconazole**). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the concentration of antimalarials (**piperaquine**). Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **apixaban**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **apremilast**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **aprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **axitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bedaquiline**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosentan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **bosutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cabozantinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**amlodipine**, **felodipine**, **lacidipine**, **lercanidipine**, **nicardipine**, **nifedipine**, **nimodipine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**). [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **certinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort decreases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to alter the effects of **cilostazol**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobicistat**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cobimetinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort decreases the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. MHRA advises avoid. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ St John's Wort decreases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **crizotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dabigatran**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **daclatasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasabuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **dasatinib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. MHRA advises avoid. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort decreases the concentration of **digoxin**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ St John's Wort decreases the exposure to **dolutegravir**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the concentration of **efavirenz**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to **elbasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid. [Severe] Study



## St John's Wort (continued)

- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the concentration of **elvitegravir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the effects of **ergotamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. MHRA advises avoid. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **etravirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the concentration of **everolimus**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **exemestane**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fesoterodine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to  **fingolimod**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **fosaprepitant**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **gefitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **glecaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **grazoprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the concentration of **guanfacine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **HIV-protease inhibitors**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **hormone replacement therapy**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ibrutinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **idelalisib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **imatinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort slightly decreases the exposure to **irinotecan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort decreases the exposure to **ivabradine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ivacaftor**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ixazomib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ledipasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. MHRA advises avoid. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **lurasidone**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **macitentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **maraviroc**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort moderately decreases the exposure to **midazolam**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **midostaurin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **naloxegol**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **netupitant**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the concentration of **nevirapine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nilotinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. MHRA advises avoid. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olaparib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ombitasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort decreases the exposure to **opioids (methadone)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ St John's Wort moderately decreases the exposure to **opioids (oxycodone)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **osimertinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **palbociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paliperidone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **panobinostat**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pibrentasvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort slightly decreases the exposure to **pioglitazone**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pitolisant**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ponatinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quetiapine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ranolazine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ribociclib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rilpivirine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rolapitant**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ruxolitinib**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simeprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the concentration of **sirolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sofosbuvir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort slightly decreases the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin)**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort moderately decreases the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort decreases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the concentration of **temsirolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tenofovir alafenamide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort potentially decreases the exposure to **theophylline**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tivozanib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ St John's Wort is predicted to decrease the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **velpatasvir**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **vismodegib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Statins** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity)

atorvastatin · fluvastatin · pravastatin · rosuvastatin · simvastatin

- ▶ **Atorvastatin** slightly to moderately increases the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Atorvastatin** moderately decrease the absorption of **rosuvastatin**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **atorvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **fluvastatin**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **simvastatin**. Adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** slightly increase the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** moderately decrease the exposure to **simvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, eslicarbazepine)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (eslicarbazepine)** moderately decrease the exposure to **simvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** potentially decrease the exposure to statins (**atorvastatin, simvastatin**). [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **fluvastatin**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Avoid or adjust dose and monitor rhabdomyolysis. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** potentially increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** slightly decreases the exposure to **atorvastatin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** moderately decreases the exposure to **simvastatin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (amlodipine)** slightly increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Mild] Study

- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cephalosporins (ceftriaxone)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **statins**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** very markedly increases the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Avoid or adjust **atorvastatin** dose, p. 132. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** moderately increases the exposure to **fluvastatin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** markedly to very markedly increases the exposure to **pravastatin**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** markedly increases the exposure to statins (**rosuvastatin, simvastatin**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** increases the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Avoid or adjust dose and monitor rhabdomyolysis. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Colchicine** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Statins (fluvastatin, rosuvastatin)** increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Danazol** is predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **atorvastatin**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Danazol** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **simvastatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Statins** are predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **daptomycin**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Dasabuvir** increases the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Dasatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** slightly decreases the exposure to **atorvastatin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** moderately decreases the exposure to **simvastatin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Elbasvir** potentially increases the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Adjust **atorvastatin** dose, p. 132. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Elbasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fluvastatin**. Adjust **fluvastatin** dose, p. 132. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Elbasvir** increases the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Elbasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Eltrombopag** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Eluxadoline** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simvastatin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ezetimibe** potentially increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Fibrates (bezafibrate, ciprofibrate)** increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **pravastatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fibrates (bezafibrate, ciprofibrate)** increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **rosuvastatin**. Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fibrates (bezafibrate, ciprofibrate)** increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **simvastatin**. Adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fibrates (ciprofibrate)** increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **atorvastatin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study

## Statins (continued)

- ▶ **Fibrates (ciprofibrate)** increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **fluvastatin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fibrates (fenofibrate)** are predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **fluvastatin**. Adjust **fenofibrate** dose, p. 131. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fibrates (fenofibrate)** are predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **pravastatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fibrates (fenofibrate)** increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **rosuvastatin**. Adjust **fenofibrate** and **rosuvastatin** doses, p. 131, p. 133. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Fibrates (gemfibrozil)** increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Fibrates (bezafibrate)** increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins (atorvastatin, fluvastatin)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fibrates (fenofibrate)** increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins (atorvastatin, simvastatin)**. Adjust **fenofibrate** dose, p. 131. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Fusidic acid** increases the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Glecaprevir** (with pibrentasvir) is predicted to increase the exposure to **fluvastatin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Glecaprevir** (with pibrentasvir) increases the exposure to **pravastatin**. Use with caution and adjust **pravastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Glecaprevir** (with pibrentasvir) increases the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Use with caution and adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Glecaprevir** (with pibrentasvir) increases the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin, simvastatin)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **atorvastatin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **simvastatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grazoprevir** increases the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Adjust **atorvastatin** dose, p. 132. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grazoprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fluvastatin**. Adjust **fluvastatin** dose, p. 132. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grazoprevir** increases the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grazoprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Unknown] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Avoid or adjust dose and monitor rhabdomyolysis. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** slightly to moderately increase the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Avoid or adjust dose and monitor rhabdomyolysis. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ledipasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ledipasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin, fluvastatin, pravastatin, simvastatin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Lomitapide** increases the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Adjust **lomitapide** dose or separate administration by 12 hours. [Mild] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Lomitapide** increases the exposure to **simvastatin**. Monitor and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Avoid or adjust dose and monitor rhabdomyolysis. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** moderately increase the exposure to **pravastatin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **pravastatin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **simvastatin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (sarilumab)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin, simvastatin)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (tocilizumab)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin, simvastatin)**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** slightly decreases the exposure to **atorvastatin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** moderately decreases the exposure to **simvastatin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nicotinic acid** is predicted to increase the risk of rhabdomyolysis when given with **statins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Use with caution and adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Osimertinib** slightly increases the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) is predicted to increase the exposure to **fluvastatin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) increases the exposure to **pravastatin**. Adjust **pravastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Paritaprevir** (with ritonavir and ombitasvir) increases the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rosuvastatin** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **phenindione**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pibrentasvir** (with glecaprevir) is predicted to increase the exposure to **fluvastatin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pibrentasvir** (with glecaprevir) increases the exposure to **pravastatin**. Use with caution and adjust **pravastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pibrentasvir** (with glecaprevir) increases the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Use with caution and adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pibrentasvir** (with glecaprevir) increases the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin, simvastatin)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **atorvastatin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranolazine** slightly increases the exposure to **simvastatin**. Adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Regorafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin, fluvastatin, rosuvastatin)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ribociclib** (high-dose) is predicted to increase the exposure to **simvastatin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly decreases the exposure to **atorvastatin**. **Atorvastatin** should be taken at the same time as **rifampicin**, p. 132, p. 364. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **fluvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Rifampicin** very markedly decreases the exposure to **simvastatin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Sacubitril** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Simeprevir** moderately increases the exposure to **atorvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Simeprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pravastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Simeprevir** moderately increases the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Simeprevir** slightly increases the exposure to **simvastatin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** slightly decreases the exposure to **atorvastatin**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **St John's Wort** moderately decreases the exposure to **simvastatin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Sulfinpyrazone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **fluvastatin**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Fluvastatin** slightly increases the exposure to **sulfonylureas** (**glibenclamide**). [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Tedizolid** increases the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Teriflunomide** moderately increases the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Ticagrelor** slightly increases the exposure to **simvastatin**. Adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Tivozanib** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Velpatasvir** increases the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose and monitor side effects, p. 133. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Velpatasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**atorvastatin**, **simvastatin**). Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Voxilaprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pravastatin**. Monitor and adjust **pravastatin** dose, p. 133. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Voxilaprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **rosuvastatin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Voxilaprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**atorvastatin**, **fluvastatin**, **simvastatin**). Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Stavudine** → see TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy)
- ▶ **Didanosine** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **stavudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
  - ▶ **Hydroxycarbamide** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **stavudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Isoniazid** is predicted to increase the risk of peripheral neuropathy when given with **stavudine**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
  - ▶ **Ribavirin** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **stavudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Zidovudine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **stavudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Stiripentol** → see antiepileptics
- Streptokinase** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)
- Streptomycin** → see aminoglycosides
- Sucralfate**
- ▶ **Sucralfate** potentially decreases the effects of **coumarins** (**warfarin**). Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Sucralfate** decreases the absorption of **digoxin**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Sucralfate** decreases the absorption of **dolutegravir**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Sucralfate** increases the risk of blocked enteral or nasogastric tubes when given with **enteral feeds**. Separate administration by 1 hour. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Potassium citrate** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **sucralfate**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Sucralfate** decreases the exposure to **quinolones**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Sodium citrate** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **sucralfate**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sucralfate** decreases the absorption of **sulpiride**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Sucralfate** potentially decreases the absorption of **theophylline**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Sucralfate** decreases the absorption of **thyroid hormones** (**levothyroxine**). Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Sucralfate** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Moderate] Study
- Sufentanil** → see opioids
- Sugammadex**
- ▶ **Sugammadex** is predicted to decrease the exposure to oral **combined hormonal contraceptives**. Refer to patient information leaflet for missed pill advice. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Sugammadex** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **desogestrel**. Refer to patient information leaflet for missed pill advice. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Sugammadex** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Sugammadex** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **levonorgestrel**. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Sugammadex** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **medroxyprogesterone**. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Sugammadex** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **norethisterone**. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical
- Sulfadiazine** → see sulfonamides
- Sulfadoxine** → see sulfonamides
- Sulfamethoxazole** → see sulfonamides
- Sulfasalazine** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Sulfasalazine** decreases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Sulfasalazine** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **folates**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Rolapitant** increases the exposure to **sulfasalazine**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Tedizolid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sulfasalazine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Sulfinpyrazone** → see TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)
- ▶ **Sulfinpyrazone** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics** (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**). [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Aspirin** decreases the effects of **sulfinpyrazone**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
  - ▶ **Sulfinpyrazone** decreases the exposure to **calcium channel blockers** (**verapamil**). [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Sulfinpyrazone** decreases the concentration of **ciclosporin**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Sulfinpyrazone** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ **Sulfinpyrazone** slightly increases the exposure to **nateglinide**. [Mild] Study
  - ▶ **Pyrazinamide** is predicted to decrease the effects of **sulfinpyrazone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Sulfinpyrazone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **retinoids** (**alitretinoin**). Adjust **alitretinoin** dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Sulfinpyrazone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins** (**fluvastatin**). [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Sulfinpyrazone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sulfonylureas**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Sulfonamides** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- co-trimoxazole • sulfadiazine • sulfadoxine • sulfamethoxazole
- ▶ **Sulfonamides** potentially increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with topical **anaesthetics**, **local** (**prilocaine**). Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
  - ▶ **Sulfadiazine** is predicted to increase the concentration of **antiepileptics** (**fosphenytoin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Sulfadiazine** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics** (**phenytoin**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study



## Sulfonamides (continued)

- ▶ **Antimalarials (pyrimethamine)** increase the risk of side-effects when given with **sulfonamides**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Sulfadiazine** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sulfamethoxazole** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Sulfonamides** are predicted to increase the risk of methaemoglobinaemia when given with **dapsone**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sulfonamides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **methotrexate**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Sulfonamides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sulfonyleureas**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Sulfonamides** are predicted to increase the effects of **thiopental**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Sulfonyleureas** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)

glibenclamide · gliclazide · glimepiride · glipizide · tolbutamide

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sulfonyleureas**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, miconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sulfonyleureas**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **sulfonyleureas**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** increases the risk of hepatotoxicity when given with **glibenclamide**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cephalosporins (ceftibiprole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **glibenclamide**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **glimepiride**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Chloramphenicol** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sulfonyleureas**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Fibrates** are predicted to increase the risk of hypoglycaemia when given with **sulfonyleureas**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **sulfonyleureas**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sulfonyleureas**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Statins (fluvastatin)** slightly increase the exposure to **glibenclamide**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Sulfinpyrazone** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sulfonyleureas**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Sulfonamides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sulfonyleureas**. [Moderate] Study

**Sulindac** → see NSAIDs

- ▶ **Sulpiride** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of **sulpiride**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Sulpiride** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Sulpiride** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Sulpiride** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Sucralfate** decreases the absorption of **sulpiride**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study

**Sumatriptan** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)

- ▶ **Sumatriptan** increases the risk of vasoconstriction when given with **ergotamine**. Ergotamine should be taken at least 24 hours before or 6 hours after **sumatriptan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Moclobemide** moderately increases the exposure to **sumatriptan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sumatriptan**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

**Sunitinib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Sunitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Elbasvir** is predicted to increase the concentration of **sunitinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grazoprevir** is predicted to increase the concentration of **sunitinib**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sunitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Sunitinib** is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **sunitinib**. Avoid or adjust **sunitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study

**Suxamethonium** → see TABLE 20 p. 851 (neuromuscular blocking effects)

- ▶ **Alkylating agents (cyclophosphamide)** increase the risk of prolonged neuromuscular blockade when given with **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (lidocaine)** are predicted to increase the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Anticholinesterases, centrally acting** increase the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** increase the risk of prolonged neuromuscular blockade when given with **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** increase the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Study



- ▶ **Clindamycin** increases the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Corticosteroids** are predicted to decrease the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Suxamethonium** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **digoxin**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Irinotecan** is predicted to increase the risk of prolonged neuromuscular blockade when given with **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Intravenous **magnesium** is predicted to increase the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Metoclopramide** increases the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Penicillins (**piperacillin**) increase the effects of **suxamethonium**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs** potentially increase the risk of prolonged neuromuscular blockade when given with **suxamethonium**. [Unknown] Theoretical

### Sympathomimetics, inotropic

dobutamine · dopamine

- ▶ **Sympathomimetics, inotropic** are predicted to decrease the effects of **apraclonidine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective** increase the risk of hypertension and bradycardia when given with **dobutamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** increase the risk of hypertension and bradycardia when given with **dobutamine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Entacapone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **sympathomimetics, inotropic**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ergometrine** potentially increases the risk of peripheral vasoconstriction when given with **dopamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Guanethidine** is predicted to increase the effects of **dopamine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sympathomimetics, inotropic** are predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **sympathomimetics, inotropic**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **sympathomimetics, inotropic**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **sympathomimetics, inotropic**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tolcapone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **sympathomimetics, inotropic**. [Moderate] Theoretical

### Sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

adrenaline/epinephrine · ephedrine · isometheptene · metaraminol · midodrine · noradrenaline/norepinephrine · phenylephrine · pseudoephedrine · xylometazoline

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- ▶ **Ephedrine** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **aminoxylamine**. Avoid in children. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor** are predicted to decrease the effects of **apraclonidine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Atropine** increases the risk of severe hypertension when given with **phenylephrine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective** are predicted to increase the risk of hypertension and bradycardia when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (adrenaline/epinephrine, noradrenaline/norepinephrine)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** are predicted to increase the risk of hypertension and bradycardia when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (adrenaline/epinephrine, noradrenaline/norepinephrine)**. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Isometheptene** potentially increases the risk of side-effects when given with **dopamine receptor agonists (bromocriptine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Entacapone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (adrenaline/epinephrine, noradrenaline/norepinephrine)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ergometrine** is predicted to increase the risk of peripheral vasoconstriction when given with **noradrenaline/norepinephrine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Guanethidine** increases the effects of **metaraminol**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Guanethidine** increases the effects of **phenylephrine**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Guanethidine** is predicted to increase the effects of **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (adrenaline/epinephrine, noradrenaline/norepinephrine)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Pseudoephedrine** increases the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (adrenaline/epinephrine, ephedrine, isometheptene, noradrenaline/norepinephrine, phenylephrine)** are predicted to increase the risk of elevated blood pressure when given with **linezolid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mianserin** decreases the effects of **ephedrine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Moclobemide** is predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (ephedrine, isometheptene, phenylephrine, pseudoephedrine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible** are predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase B inhibitors** are predicted to increase the risk of a hypertensive crisis when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Opicapone** is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (adrenaline/epinephrine, noradrenaline/norepinephrine)**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ephedrine** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **theophylline**. Avoid in children. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Tolcapone** is predicted to increase the effects of **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (adrenaline/epinephrine, noradrenaline/norepinephrine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** are predicted to decrease the effects of **ephedrine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** increase the effects of **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (adrenaline/epinephrine, noradrenaline/norepinephrine, phenylephrine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

**Tacalcitol** → see vitamin D substances

**Tacrolimus** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)

- ▶ Pomelo might greatly increase the concentration of tacrolimus.
- ▶ Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.
- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** increases the risk of facial flushing and skin irritation when given with topical **tacrolimus**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** decrease the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study

## Tacrolimus (continued)

- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **tacrolimus** and **tacrolimus** potentially increases the concentration of **bosentan**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (nifedipine)** potentially increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tacrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Chloramphenicol** increases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 16 p. 851
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Danazol** potentially increases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** decreases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grazoprevir** increases the exposure to **tacrolimus**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **tacrolimus**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tacrolimus** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tacrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tacrolimus** is predicted to affect the efficacy of **mifamurtide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** decreases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (sarilumab)** potentially affect the exposure to **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tacrolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Palbociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tacrolimus**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tacrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranolazine** increases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Ribociclib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tacrolimus**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Sirolimus** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **tacrolimus** and **tacrolimus** increases the exposure to **sirolimus**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** decreases the concentration of **tacrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tacrolimus** increases the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tacrolimus** potentially increases the risk of serotonin syndrome when given with **venlafaxine**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- Tadalafil** → see phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors
- Tamoxifen** → see TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)
- ▶ **Bupropion** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **tamoxifen**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **tamoxifen**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tamoxifen** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly decreases the exposure to **tamoxifen**. [Unknown] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tamoxifen**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **tamoxifen**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **tamoxifen**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Tamsulosin** → see alpha blockers
- Tapentadol** → see opioids
- Taxanes** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy)

cabazitaxel · docetaxel · paclitaxel

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **paclitaxel**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **docetaxel**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **taxanes (cabazitaxel, paclitaxel)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **docetaxel**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **paclitaxel**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **docetaxel**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **paclitaxel**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Clopidogrel** is predicted to increase the concentration of **paclitaxel**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **docetaxel**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **paclitaxel**. [Severe] Theoretical

- **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **paclitaxel**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **docetaxel**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to taxanes (**cabazitaxel**, **paclitaxel**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Fibrates (gemfibrozil)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **paclitaxel**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **docetaxel**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **paclitaxel**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **docetaxel**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **paclitaxel**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Lapatinib** slightly increases the exposure to **paclitaxel**. [Severe] Study
- **Leflunomide** is predicted to increase the concentration of **paclitaxel**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with taxanes (**docetaxel**, **paclitaxel**). Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **docetaxel**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **paclitaxel**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **paclitaxel**. [Mild] Theoretical
- **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **docetaxel**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to taxanes (**cabazitaxel**, **paclitaxel**). Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **docetaxel**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **docetaxel**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to taxanes (**cabazitaxel**, **paclitaxel**). Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **cabazitaxel**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Teriflunomide** is predicted to increase the concentration of **paclitaxel**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- **Velpatasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **paclitaxel**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Tazarotene** → see retinoids

#### Tedizolid

- **Tedizolid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **imatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Tedizolid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lapatinib**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

- **Tedizolid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **methotrexate**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Tedizolid** increases the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- **Tedizolid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **sulfasalazine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Tedizolid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

#### Tegafur

- **Tegafur** potentially increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- **Tegafur** increases the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Folates** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **tegafur**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **tegafur**. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **tegafur**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- **Methotrexate** is predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with **tegafur**. [Severe] Theoretical

#### Telcicoplanin

**GENERAL INFORMATION** If other nephrotoxic or neurotoxic drugs are given, monitor renal and auditory function on prolonged administration.

**Telavancin** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 19 p. 851 (ototoxicity), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

#### Telbivudine

- **Interferons (interferon alfa)** are predicted to increase the risk of peripheral neuropathy when given with **telbivudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Interferons (peginterferon alfa)** increase the risk of peripheral neuropathy when given with **telbivudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

**Telmisartan** → see angiotensin-II receptor antagonists

#### Telotristat ethyl

- **Telotristat ethyl** decreases the exposure to **midazolam**. [Moderate] Study
- **Octreotide** (short-acting) decreases the exposure to **telotristat ethyl**. **Telotristat ethyl** should be taken at least 30 minutes before **octreotide**, p. 467. [Moderate] Study

**Temazepam** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

**Temocillin** → see penicillins

**Temozolomide** → see alkylating agents

**Temeisrolimus** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- **Antiarrhythmics (dronedronarone)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **temeisrolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of **temeisrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **temeisrolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **temeisrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temeisrolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **temeisrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **temeisrolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temeisrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temeisrolimus**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **temeisrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **temeisrolimus**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the concentration of **temeisrolimus**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

## Tamsulosin (continued)

- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tamsulosin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tamsulosin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tamsulosin**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **tamsulosin**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tamsulosin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tamsulosin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tamsulosin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **tamsulosin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tamsulosin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **tamsulosin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **tamsulosin**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Pitolisant** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tamsulosin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **tamsulosin**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **tamsulosin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Tenecteplase** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)

## Tenofovir alafenamide

- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **oxcarbazepine**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **tenofovir alafenamide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, darunavir)** increase the exposure to **tenofovir alafenamide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (tipranavir)** are predicted to affect the exposure to **tenofovir alafenamide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tenofovir alafenamide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tenofovir alafenamide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tenofovir alafenamide**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Tenofovir disoproxil** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity)

- ▶ **Tenofovir disoproxil** increases the risk of toxicity when given with **didanosine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ledipasvir** (with sofosbuvir) slightly increases the exposure to **tenofovir disoproxil**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Velpatasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tenofovir disoproxil**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Voxilaprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tenofovir disoproxil**. [Severe] Study

**Tenoxicam** → see NSAIDs

**Terazosin** → see alpha blockers

## Terbinafine

**ROUTE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION** Since systemic absorption can follow topical application, the possibility of interactions should be borne in mind.

- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to anticholinesterases, centrally acting (**galantamine**). Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **aripiprazole**. Adjust aripiprazole dose, p. 249. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **atomoxetine**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, selective (metoprolol, nebivolol)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **darifenacin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **eliglustat**. Avoid or adjust dose—consult product literature. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **opioids (codeine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **opioids (tramadol)**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **pitolisant**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **terbinafine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **risperidone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs (citalopram, dapoxetine, escitalopram, fluvoxamine, sertraline)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **SSRIs (fluoxetine)**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Terbinafine** moderately increases the exposure to **SSRIs (paroxetine)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **tamoxifen**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. Monitor for toxicity and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vortioxetine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

**Terbutaline** → see beta<sub>2</sub> agonists

## Teriflunomide

- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **agomelatine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** decreases the exposure to **aminophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **anaesthetics, local (ropivacaine)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** potentially increases the exposure to **baricitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to moderately increase the clearance of **caffeine citrate**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **clozapine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** affects the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **duloxetine**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **teriflunomide**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **melatonin**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **montelukast**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **olanzapine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **pioglitazone**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **pirfenidone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **repaglinide**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to increase the exposure to **selexipag**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** moderately increases the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Adjust **rosuvastatin** dose, p. 133. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **taxanes (paclitaxel)**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **theophylline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** moderately decreases the exposure to **tizanidine**. [Mild] Study

**Tetrabenazine** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

- ▶ **Tetrabenazine** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Use with caution or avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tetrabenazine** is predicted to increase the risk of CNS toxicity when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors**,



**irreversible.** Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI.

[Severe] Theoretical

**Tetracaine** → see anaesthetics, local

**Tetracycline** → see tetracyclines

**Tetracyclines** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity)

demeclocycline • doxycycline • lymecycline • minocycline • oxytetracycline • tetracycline • tigecycline

- ▶ **ACE inhibitors (quinapril)** (tablet) decrease the absorption of oral tetracycline. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antacids** decrease the absorption of tetracyclines. Separate administration by 2 to 3 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** decrease the exposure to doxycycline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Tetracycline** decreases the concentration of antimalarials (atovaquone). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium salts (calcium carbonate)** are predicted to decrease the absorption of tetracyclines. Separate administration by 2 to 3 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tetracyclines** increase the risk of bleeding events when given with coumarins. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Dairy products** decrease the exposure to tetracyclines (demeclocycline, oxytetracycline, tetracycline). Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** decreases the exposure to doxycycline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the absorption of tetracyclines. Tetracyclines should be taken 2 to 3 hours after iron (oral). [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Kaolin** is predicted to decrease the absorption of tetracyclines. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lanthanum** is predicted to decrease the absorption of tetracyclines. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** decreases the exposure to doxycycline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Retinoids (acitretin, alitretinoin, isotretinoin, tretinoin)** increase the risk of benign intracranial hypertension when given with tetracyclines. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to doxycycline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Oral zinc** is predicted to decrease the absorption of tetracyclines. Separate administration by 2 to 3 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Thalidomide** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy), TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the risk of venous thromboembolism when given with thalidomide. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Hormone replacement therapy** is predicted to increase the risk of venous thromboembolism when given with thalidomide. [Severe] Theoretical

**Theophylline** → see TABLE 17 p. 851 (reduced serum potassium)

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Smoking can increase theophylline clearance and increased doses of theophylline are therefore required; dose adjustments are likely to be necessary if smoking started or stopped during treatment.

- ▶ **Aciclovir** is predicted to increase the exposure to theophylline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Theophylline** decreases the efficacy of **antiarrhythmics (adenosine)**. Separate administration by 24 hours. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** potentially increase the clearance of theophylline and theophylline decreases the exposure to antiepileptics (carbamazepine). Adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to theophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to increase the clearance of theophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (stiripentol)** are predicted to increase the exposure to theophylline. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Beta blockers, non-selective** are predicted to increase the risk of bronchospasm when given with theophylline. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Beta blockers, selective** are predicted to increase the risk of bronchospasm when given with theophylline. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Caffeine citrate** decreases the clearance of theophylline. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to theophylline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Theophylline** increases the risk of agitation when given with **doxapram**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enteral feeds** decrease the exposure to theophylline. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** increase the concentration of theophylline. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to theophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Interferons** slightly increase the exposure to theophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Iron chelators (deferasirox)** increase the exposure to theophylline. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Isoniazid** is predicted to affect the clearance of theophylline. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Leflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to theophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Theophylline** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **lithium**. Monitor concentration and adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin, clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to theophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** decrease the clearance of theophylline and theophylline potentially decreases the clearance of macrolides (erythromycin). Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Methotrexate** decreases the clearance of theophylline. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (blinatumomab)** are predicted to transiently increase the exposure to theophylline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (sarilumab)** potentially affect the exposure to theophylline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Monoclonal antibodies (tocilizumab)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to theophylline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Obeticholic acid** is predicted to increase the exposure to theophylline. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Pentoxifylline** increases the concentration of theophylline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to theophylline. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Quinolones (norfloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to theophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to theophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Theophylline** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **roflumilast**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** moderately to markedly increase the exposure to theophylline. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** potentially decreases the exposure to theophylline. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Sucralfate** potentially decreases the absorption of theophylline. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (ephedrine)** increase the risk of side-effects when given with theophylline. Avoid in children. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to theophylline. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study



**Theophylline** (continued)

- ▶ **Valaciclovir** is predicted to increase the exposure to theophylline. [Severe] Theoretical

**Thiazide diuretics** → see TABLE 18 p. 851 (hyponatraemia), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 17 p. 851 (reduced serum potassium)

bendroflumethiazide • chlortalidone • clopamide • cyclopenthiazide • hydrochlorothiazide • hydroflumethiazide • indapamide • metolazone • xipamide

- ▶ **Thiazide diuretics** are predicted to increase the risk of hypersensitivity reactions when given with **allopurinol**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aspirin** (high-dose) increases the risk of acute renal failure when given with **thiazide diuretics**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Thiazide diuretics** increase the risk of hypercalcaemia when given with **calcium salts**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Thiazide diuretics** increase the concentration of **lithium**. Avoid or adjust dose and monitor concentration. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **NSAIDs** increase the risk of acute renal failure when given with **thiazide diuretics**. [Severe] theoretical → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851
- ▶ **Reboxetine** is predicted to increase the risk of hypokalaemia when given with **thiazide diuretics**. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Thiazide diuretics** are predicted to increase the risk of hypercalcaemia when given with **toremifene**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Thiazide diuretics** increase the risk of hypercalcaemia when given with **vitamin D substances**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- Thiopental** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Sulfonamides** are predicted to increase the effects of thiopental. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** increase the risk of cardiac arrhythmias and hypotension when given with thiopental. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

**Thiotepa** → see alkylating agents

**Thyroid hormones**

levothyroxine • liothyronine

- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **levothyroxine**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the risk of thyroid dysfunction when given with **thyroid hormones**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** are predicted to increase the risk of hypothyroidism when given with **thyroid hormones**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the effects of **thyroid hormones**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Oral calcium salts** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **levothyroxine**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Thyroid hormones** are predicted to affect the concentration of **digoxin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Oral hormone replacement therapy** is predicted to decrease the effects of **thyroid hormones**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Iron (oral)** decreases the absorption of **levothyroxine**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Lanthanum** decreases the absorption of **thyroid hormones**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Polystyrene sulfonate** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **levothyroxine**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Sucralfate** decreases the absorption of **levothyroxine**. Separate administration by at least 4 hours. [Moderate] Study

**Tiagabine** → see antiepileptics

**Tiaprofenic acid** → see NSAIDs

**Tibolone** → see TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)

**Ticagrelor** → see TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ticagrelor** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ticagrelor** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ergotamine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** moderately increases the exposure to **ticagrelor**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ticagrelor** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to markedly increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **ticagrelor**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ticagrelor** slightly increases the exposure to **statins (simvastatin)**. Adjust **simvastatin** dose, p. 134. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Vemurafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study

**Ticarcillin** → see penicillins

**Tigecycline** → see tetracyclines

**Timolol** → see beta blockers, non-selective

**Tinidazole**

- ▶ **Alcohol (beverage)** potentially causes a disulfiram-like reaction when given with **tinidazole**. Avoid for 72 hours stopping treatment. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tinidazole** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. Monitor INR and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- Tinzaparin** → see low molecular-weight heparins
- Tioguanine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **tioguanine**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical

**Tiotropium** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

**Tipranavir** → see HIV-protease inhibitors

**Tirofiban** → see TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)

**Tivozanib**

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **tivozanib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tivozanib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tivozanib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tivozanib**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tivozanib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tivozanib** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Tizanidine** → see TABLE 6 p. 848 (bradycardia), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ Antiepileptics (**fosphenytoin**, **phenytoin**) moderately decrease the exposure to **tizanidine**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** increase the exposure to **tizanidine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ HIV-protease inhibitors (**ritonavir**) moderately decrease the exposure to **tizanidine**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Iron chelators** (**deferasirox**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tizanidine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Leflunomide** moderately decreases the exposure to **tizanidine**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Obeticholic acid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tizanidine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Quinolones** (**ciprofloxacin**) increase the exposure to **tizanidine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **tizanidine**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs** (**fluvoxamine**) very markedly increase the exposure to **tizanidine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Teriflunomide** moderately decreases the exposure to **tizanidine**. [Mild] Study

**Tobramycin** → see aminoglycosides

**Tocilizumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

### Tofacitinib

- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**dronedarone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Adjust **tofacitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**isavuconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Adjust **tofacitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Adjust **tofacitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Adjust **tofacitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Live vaccines** potentially increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **tofacitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Adjust **tofacitinib** dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides** (**erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study

- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tofacitinib**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Tacrolimus** increases the exposure to **tofacitinib**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- Tolbutamide** → see sulfonylureas
- Tolcapone**
  - ▶ Tolcapone increases the exposure to **levodopa**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Tolcapone is predicted to increase the effects of **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors**, irreversible. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Tolcapone is predicted to increase the risk of cardiovascular side-effects when given with **sympathomimetics**, **inotropic**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Tolcapone is predicted to increase the effects of **sympathomimetics**, vasoconstrictor (**adrenaline/epinephrine**, **noradrenaline/norepinephrine**). [Moderate] Theoretical

**Tolfenamic acid** → see NSAIDs

**Tolterodine** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**dronedarone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides** (**clarithromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Macrolides** (**erythromycin**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolterodine**. [Mild] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

**Tolvaptan** → see TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Avoid concurrent use of drugs that increase serum-sodium concentrations.

- ▶ Antiarrhythmics (**dronedarone**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine**, **fosphenytoin**, **phenobarbital**, **phenytoin**, **primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**fluconazole**, **isavuconazole**, **posaconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole**, **ketoconazole**, **voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium channel blockers (**diltiazem**, **verapamil**) are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study

## Tolvaptan (continued)

- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Tolvaptan** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** increases the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Tolvaptan** is predicted to increase the exposure to **lomitapide**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tolvaptan**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Topiramate** → see antiepileptics**Topotecan** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** increase the clearance of **topotecan**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ceritinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **topotecan**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides** are predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mirabegron** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Rolapitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. Avoid or monitor. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tedizolid** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Velpatasvir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Vemurafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study

**Torsemide** → see loop diuretics**Toremifene** → see TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **tothemifene**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tothemifene**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tothemifene**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Toremifene** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tothemifene**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tothemifene**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tothemifene**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tothemifene**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tothemifene**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **tothemifene**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Thiazide diuretics** are predicted to increase the risk of hypercalcaemia when given with **tothemifene**. [Severe] Theoretical

**Trabectedin** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with **trabectedin**. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **trabectedin**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

**Tramadol** → see opioids**Trametinib**

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone, dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (verapamil)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir, ritonavir, saquinavir)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides** are predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Vemurafenib** is predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Trandolapril** → see ACE inhibitors

**Tranexamic acid** → see TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism)

**Tranylcypromine** → see monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible

**Trastuzumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

**Trastuzumab emtansine** → see monoclonal antibodies

**Trazodone** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** decrease the concentration of **trazodone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **trazodone**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **trazodone**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **trazodone**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **trazodone**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to moderately increase the exposure to **trazodone**. Avoid or adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **trazodone**. [Moderate] Theoretical

#### Tree pollen extract

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Desensitising vaccines should be avoided in patients taking beta-blockers (adrenaline might be ineffective in case of a hypersensitivity reaction) or ACE inhibitors (risk of severe anaphylactoid reactions).

**Treosulfan** → see alkylating agents

**Tretinoin** → see retinoids

**Triamcinolone** → see corticosteroids

**Triamterene** → see potassium-sparing diuretics

**Tricyclic antidepressants** → see TABLE 18 p. 851 (hyponatraemia), TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

amitriptyline • clomipramine • dosulepin • doxepin • imipramine • lofepramine • nortriptyline • trimipramine

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (propafenone)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** decrease the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants (clomipramine, imipramine)** potentially increase the risk of overheating and dehydration when given with **antiepileptics (zonisamide)**. Avoid in children. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. Monitor for toxicity and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. Monitor for toxicity and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** decrease the antihypertensive effects of **clonidine**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Darifenacin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 10 p. 849
- ▶ **Eliglustat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **nortriptyline**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** are predicted to decrease the antihypertensive effects of **guanethidine**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir, tipranavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** potentially increase the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Amitriptyline** decreases the effects of **metyrapone**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** are predicted to increase the risk of severe toxic reaction when given with **moclobemide**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** are predicted to increase the risk of severe toxic reaction when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. Avoid and for 14 days after stopping the MAOI. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** are predicted to decrease the effects of **moxonidine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **pitolisant**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. Monitor for toxicity and adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** markedly increase the exposure to **clomipramine**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants (amitriptyline, imipramine)**. Adjust dose. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 18 p. 851 → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Sucralfate** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **tricyclic antidepressants**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** increase the effects of **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (adrenaline/epinephrine, noradrenaline/norepinephrine, phenylephrine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** are predicted to decrease the effects of **sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor (ephedrine)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tricyclic antidepressants**. Monitor for toxicity and adjust dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Tricyclic antidepressants** increase the risk of cardiac arrhythmias and hypotension when given with **thiopental**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848

#### Trientine

- ▶ **Trientine** potentially decreases the absorption of **iron (oral)**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Trientine** potentially decreases the absorption of **zinc**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Trifluoperazine** → see phenothiazines

**Trihexyphenidyl** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

**Trimethoprim** → see TABLE 18 p. 851 (hyponatraemia), TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 16 p. 851 (increased serum potassium)



## Trimethoprim (continued)

- ▶ **Trimethoprim** increases the concentration of **antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antimalarials (pyrimethamine)** increase the risk of side-effects when given with **trimethoprim**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Trimethoprim** is predicted to increase the anticoagulant effect of **coumarins**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Dapson** increases the exposure to **trimethoprim** and **trimethoprim** increases the exposure to **dapsone**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Trimethoprim** increases the concentration of **digoxin**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Trimethoprim** slightly increases the exposure to **lamivudine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Trimethoprim** is predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **methotrexate**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847
- ▶ **Trimethoprim** slightly increases the exposure to **repaglinide**. Avoid or monitor blood glucose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the exposure to **trimethoprim**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Trimethoprim** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **sapropterin**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Trimipramine** → see tricyclic antidepressants

**Tropicamide** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

**Trospium** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

**Tryptophan** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)

▶ **Tryptophan** greatly decreases the concentration of **levodopa**. [Moderate] Study

▶ **Tryptophan** increases the risk of side-effects when given with **monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversible**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850

**Typhoid vaccine, oral** → see live vaccines

**Ulipristal**

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, eslicarbazepine, fosphenytoin, oxcarbazepine, perampanel, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone, rufinamide, topiramate)** decrease the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Bosentan** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ulipristal** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **combined hormonal contraceptives**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ulipristal** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **desogestrel**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to markedly decrease the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid and for 4 weeks after stopping **ulipristal**, p. 507. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ulipristal** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **etonogestrel**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Fosaprepitant** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Griseofulvin** potentially decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir, darunavir, fosamprenavir, lopinavir, saquinavir, tipranavir)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (ritonavir)** decrease the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ulipristal** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **levonorgestrel**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Lumacaftor** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **ulipristal**. Use additional contraceptive precautions. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Modafinil** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **ulipristal**. Avoid if used for uterine fibroids. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Ulipristal** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **norethisterone**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifabutin** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Rifampicin** decreases the efficacy of **ulipristal**. For FSRH guidance, see Contraceptives, interactions p. 497. [Severe] Anecdotal

**Umeclidinium** → see TABLE 10 p. 849 (antimuscarinics)

**Urokinase** → see TABLE 3 p. 847 (anticoagulant effects)

**Ursodeoxycholic acid**

- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the absorption of **ursodeoxycholic acid**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ursodeoxycholic acid** affects the concentration of **ciclosporin**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Fibrates** are predicted to decrease the efficacy of **ursodeoxycholic acid**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Ustekinumab** → see monoclonal antibodies
- Valaciclovir** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity)
- ▶ **Valaciclovir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **aminophylline**. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Mycophenolate** is predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **valaciclovir**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Valaciclovir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **theophylline**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Valganciclovir** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity)
- ▶ **Valganciclovir** is predicted to increase the risk of seizures when given with **carbamapenems (imipenem)**. Avoid. [Severe] Anecdotal
- ▶ **Valganciclovir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **didanosine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mycophenolate** is predicted to increase the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **valganciclovir**. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- Valproate** → see antiepileptics
- Valsartan** → see angiotensin-II receptor antagonists



**Vancomycin** → see TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity), TABLE 19 p. 851 (ototoxicity)

**Vandetanib** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to vandetanib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Vandetanib is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **coumarins**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Vandetanib slightly increases the exposure to **digoxin**. Monitor ECG and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vandetanib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Vandetanib slightly increases the exposure to **metformin**. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vandetanib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Vandetanib is predicted to increase the risk of bleeding events when given with **phenindione**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vandetanib. Avoid. [Moderate] Study

**Vardenafil** → see phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors

**Varicella-zoster vaccine** → see live vaccines

**Vecuronium** → see neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising

**Vedolizumab** → see monoclonal antibodies

#### Velpatasvir

- ▶ Velpatasvir is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antacids** are predicted to decrease the concentration of velpatasvir. Separate administration by 4 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the concentration of velpatasvir. Avoid or monitor. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to velpatasvir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Antiepileptics (**oxcarbazepine**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to velpatasvir. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Velpatasvir is predicted to increase the exposure to antihistamines, non-sedating (**fexofenadine**). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to velpatasvir. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Calcium salts (**calcium carbonate**) are predicted to decrease the concentration of velpatasvir. Separate administration by 4 hours. [Moderate] Anecdotal
- ▶ Velpatasvir is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Velpatasvir is predicted to increase the exposure to **dabigatran**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ Velpatasvir is predicted to increase the exposure to **digoxin**. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Velpatasvir is predicted to increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to velpatasvir. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to velpatasvir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Velpatasvir is predicted to increase the exposure to **everolimus**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists** are predicted to decrease the concentration of velpatasvir. Adjust dose, see sofosbuvir with velpatasvir. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Velpatasvir is predicted to increase the exposure to **loperamide**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to velpatasvir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to velpatasvir. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the concentration of velpatasvir. Adjust dose, see sofosbuvir with velpatasvir. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to moderately decrease the exposure to velpatasvir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ Velpatasvir is predicted to increase the exposure to **sirolimus**. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to velpatasvir. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ Velpatasvir is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin, simvastatin)**. Monitor side effects and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Velpatasvir increases the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Adjust rosuvastatin dose and monitor side effects, p. 133. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Velpatasvir is predicted to increase the exposure to **taxanes (paclitaxel)**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Velpatasvir is predicted to increase the exposure to **tenofovir disoproxil**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Velpatasvir is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Theoretical
- Vemurafenib** → see TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)
- ▶ Vemurafenib is predicted to increase the exposure to **afatinib**. Separate administration by 12 hours. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Vemurafenib is predicted to increase the exposure to **aliskiren**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ Antiepileptics (**carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone**) are predicted to decrease the exposure to vemurafenib. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Antifungals, azoles (**itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole**) are predicted to increase the exposure to vemurafenib. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ Vemurafenib is predicted to increase the exposure to **beta blockers, non-selective (nadolol)**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to vemurafenib. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Vemurafenib is predicted to increase the exposure to **colchicine**. Avoid or adjust colchicine dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Vemurafenib increases the exposure to **dabigatran**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Vemurafenib is predicted to slightly increase the exposure to **edoxaban**. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vemurafenib. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Vemurafenib is predicted to increase the exposure to **erlotinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ Vemurafenib is predicted to increase the exposure to **fidaxomicin**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to vemurafenib. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to vemurafenib. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to vemurafenib. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vemurafenib. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Vemurafenib is predicted to increase the exposure to **nintedanib**. [Moderate] Study
  - ▶ Vemurafenib is predicted to increase the exposure to **panobinostat**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
  - ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vemurafenib. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
  - ▶ Vemurafenib is predicted to increase the exposure to **ticagrelor**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Vemurafenib is predicted to increase the exposure to **topotecan**. [Severe] Study
  - ▶ Vemurafenib is predicted to increase the concentration of **trametinib**. [Moderate] Theoretical
  - ▶ Vemurafenib is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Theoretical

#### Venetoclax

**FOOD AND LIFESTYLE** Avoid Seville (bitter orange) and star fruit as they might increase the exposure to venetoclax.

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to venetoclax. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to venetoclax. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust venetoclax dose. [Severe] Study

## Venetoclax (continued)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Venetoclax** slightly increases the exposure to **coumarins (warfarin)**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Grapefruit juice** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Lapatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Venetoclax** potentially decreases the efficacy of **live vaccines**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (azithromycin)** decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid potent inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid moderate inhibitors of CYP3A4 or adjust **venetoclax** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Ranolazine** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Vemurafenib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venetoclax**. Avoid or monitor for toxicity. [Severe] Theoretical

- ▶ **Venlafaxine** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects), TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)
- ▶ **Abiraterone** potentially increases the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** slightly increase the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Venlafaxine** slightly increases the exposure to **haloperidol**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849 → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **venlafaxine**. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Tacrolimus** potentially increases the risk of serotonin syndrome when given with **venlafaxine**. [Severe] Anecdotal

**Verapamil** → see calcium channel blockers

## Verteporfin

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Caution on concurrent use with other photosensitising drugs.

**Vigabatrin** → see antiepileptics

**Vilanterol** → see beta<sub>2</sub> agonists

**Vildagliptin** → see TABLE 14 p. 850 (antidiabetic drugs)

**Vinblastine** → see vinca alkaloids

**Vinca alkaloids** → see TABLE 1 p. 847 (hepatotoxicity), TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 19 p. 851 (ototoxicity), TABLE 12 p. 850 (peripheral neuropathy), TABLE 5 p. 847 (thromboembolism), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation)

vinblastine · vincristine · vindesine · vinflunine · vinorelbine

- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedarone)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinflunine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinorelbine**. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **vinca alkaloids (vinblastine, vincristine, vindesine)**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 12 p. 850
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, itraconazole, ketoconazole, posaconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (miconazole)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **vinca alkaloids**. Use with caution and adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Asparaginase** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **vincristine**. Vincristine should be taken 3 to 24 hours before **asparaginase**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crisantaspase** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **vincristine**. Vincristine should be taken 3 to 24 hours before **crisantaspase**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **vinca alkaloids**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849

- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vinca alkaloids (vinblastine, vincristine, vindesine). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vinflunine. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vinorelbine. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to vinca alkaloids. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to vinca alkaloids. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to vinca alkaloids. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Live vaccines** are predicted to increase the risk of generalised infection (possibly life-threatening) when given with vinca alkaloids. Public Health England advises avoid (refer to Green Book). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin, erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to vinca alkaloids. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vinca alkaloids (vinblastine, vincristine, vindesine). [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vinflunine. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vinorelbine. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to vinca alkaloids. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to vinca alkaloids. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Pegaspargase** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with vincristine. Vincristine should be taken 3 to 24 hours before pegaspargase. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 1 p. 847 → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vinca alkaloids (vinblastine, vincristine, vindesine). [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vinflunine. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vinorelbine. Use with caution or avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Vincristine** → see vinca alkaloids
- Vindesine** → see vinca alkaloids
- Vinflunine** → see vinca alkaloids
- Vinorelbine** → see vinca alkaloids
- Vismodegib** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression)
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to vismodegib. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vismodegib. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vismodegib. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vismodegib. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vismodegib. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical

#### Vitamin A

- ▶ **Retinoids (acitretin, alitretinoin, isotretinoin)** are predicted to increase the risk of vitamin A toxicity when given with vitamin A. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Retinoids (bexarotene)** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with vitamin A. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Retinoids (tretinoin)** are predicted to increase the risk of vitamin A toxicity when given with vitamin A. Avoid. [Severe] Study

#### Vitamin D substances

- alfacalcidol · calcipotriol · calcitriol · colecalciferol · dihydrotachysterol · ergocalciferol · paricalcitol · tacalcitol
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** are predicted to decrease the effects of vitamin D substances. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (fosphenytoin, phenytoin)** decrease the effects of vitamin D substances. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the effects of vitamin D substances. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (clotrimazole, ketoconazole)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to colecalciferol. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to paricalcitol. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to paricalcitol. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Vitamin D substances** are predicted to increase the risk of toxicity when given with digoxin. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to paricalcitol. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to paricalcitol. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to paricalcitol. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Thiazide diuretics** increase the risk of hypercalcaemia when given with vitamin D substances. [Moderate] Theoretical

#### Vitamin E substances

- alpha tocopherol · alpha tocopheryl acetate
- ▶ **Vitamin E substances** affect the exposure to ciclosporin. [Moderate] Study
- Volatile halogenated anaesthetics** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- desflurane · isoflurane · methoxyflurane · sevoflurane
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (phenobarbital, primidone)** potentially increase the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with methoxyflurane. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Isoniazid** potentially increases the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with methoxyflurane. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** potentially increases the risk of nephrotoxicity when given with methoxyflurane. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- Voriconazole** → see antifungals, azoles

- Vortioxetine** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome), TABLE 4 p. 847 (antiplatelet effects)
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to vortioxetine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Bupropion** is predicted to increase the exposure to vortioxetine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Cinacalcet** is predicted to increase the exposure to vortioxetine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vortioxetine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vortioxetine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to vortioxetine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluoxetine, paroxetine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to vortioxetine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850 → Also see TABLE 4 p. 847
- ▶ **Terbinafine** is predicted to increase the exposure to vortioxetine. Monitor and adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

#### Voxelaprevir

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of voxelaprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (oxcarbazepine)** are predicted to decrease the concentration of voxelaprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Bosentan** is predicted to decrease the concentration of voxelaprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Ciclosporin** increases the concentration of voxelaprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Voxelaprevir** is predicted to increase the concentration of dabigatran. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Voxelaprevir** is predicted to increase the concentration of edoxaban. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Efavirenz** is predicted to decrease the concentration of voxelaprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the concentration of voxelaprevir. Avoid. [Severe] Study

## Voxilaprevir (continued)

- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (atazanavir)** (boosted with ritonavir) increase the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (lopinavir)** are predicted to increase the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Modafinil** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Proton pump inhibitors** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **voxilaprevir**. Adjust dose, see sofosbuvir with velpatasvir and voxilaprevir. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifabutin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **St John's Wort** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **voxilaprevir**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Voxilaprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (atorvastatin, fluvastatin, simvastatin)**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Voxilaprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (pravastatin)**. Monitor and adjust **pravastatin** dose. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Voxilaprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **statins (rosuvastatin)**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Voxilaprevir** is predicted to increase the exposure to **tenofovir disoproxil**. [Severe] Study

**Warfarin** → see coumarins

## Wasp venom extract

**GENERAL INFORMATION** Desensitising vaccines should be avoided in patients taking beta-blockers (adrenaline might be ineffective in case of a hypersensitivity reaction) or ACE inhibitors (risk of severe anaphylactoid reactions).

**Xipamide** → see thiazide diuretics

**Xylometazoline** → see sympathomimetics, vasoconstrictor

**Yellow fever vaccine, live** → see live vaccines

**Zaleplon** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)

- ▶ **Rifampicin** markedly decreases the exposure to **zaleplon**. [Moderate] Study

**Zidovudine** → see TABLE 15 p. 850 (myelosuppression), TABLE 2 p. 847 (nephrotoxicity)

- ▶ **Antiepileptics (valproate)** slightly increase the exposure to **zidovudine**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antimalarials (pyrimethamine)** are predicted to increase the risk of side-effects when given with **zidovudine**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 15 p. 850
- ▶ **Zidovudine** increases the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **aspirin** (high-dose). [Severe] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors (tipranavir)** slightly decrease the exposure to **zidovudine**. Avoid. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** decrease the absorption of **zidovudine**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nevirapine** is predicted to decrease the concentration of **zidovudine**. Refer to specialist literature. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Zidovudine** increases the risk of haematological toxicity when given with **NSAIDs**. [Severe] Study → Also see TABLE 2 p. 847
- ▶ **Ribavirin** increases the risk of anaemia and/or leucopenia when given with **zidovudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Study
- ▶ **Zidovudine** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **stavudine**. Avoid. [Severe] Theoretical

## Zinc

- ▶ Oral **zinc** decreases the absorption of oral **bisphosphonates (alendronic acid)**. **Zinc** should be taken at least 30 minutes before **alendronic acid**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Oral **zinc** is predicted to decrease the absorption of oral **bisphosphonates (ibandronic acid)**. Avoid **zinc** for at least 6 hours before or 1 hour after **ibandronic acid**. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ Oral **zinc** decreases the absorption of oral **bisphosphonates (risedronate)**. Separate administration by at least 2 hours. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ Oral **zinc** decreases the absorption of oral **bisphosphonates (sodium clodronate)**. Avoid **zinc** for 2 hours before or 1 hour after **sodium clodronate**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Oral **calcium salts** decrease the absorption of **zinc**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Zinc** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **eltrombopag**. **Eltrombopag** should be taken 2 hours before or 4 hours after **zinc**. [Severe] Theoretical
- ▶ **Zinc** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **iron (oral)** and **iron (oral)** is predicted to decrease the efficacy of **zinc**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Zinc** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **penicillamine**. [Mild] Theoretical
- ▶ **Zinc** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **quinolones**. Separate administration by 2 hours. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ Oral **zinc** is predicted to decrease the absorption of **tetracyclines**. Separate administration by 2 to 3 hours. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Trientine** potentially decreases the absorption of **zinc**. [Moderate] Theoretical

**Zoledronic acid** → see bisphosphonates

**Zolmitriptan** → see TABLE 13 p. 850 (serotonin syndrome)

- ▶ **Combined hormonal contraceptives** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zolmitriptan**. Adjust **zolmitriptan** dose, p. 292. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists (cimetidine)** slightly increase the exposure to **zolmitriptan**. Adjust **zolmitriptan** dose, p. 292. [Mild] Study
- ▶ **Moclobemide** slightly increases the exposure to **zolmitriptan**. Adjust **zolmitriptan** dose, p. 292. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Monoamine-oxidase A and B inhibitors, irreversibly** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zolmitriptan**. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Quinolones (ciprofloxacin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zolmitriptan**. Adjust **zolmitriptan** dose, p. 292. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **SSRIs (fluvoxamine)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zolmitriptan**. Adjust **zolmitriptan** dose, p. 292. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 13 p. 850
- ▶ **Zolpidem** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine)** moderately decrease the exposure to **zolpidem**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** moderately decreases the exposure to **zolpidem**. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Zonisamide** → see antiepileptics
- ▶ **Zopiclone** → see TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Antiarrhythmics (dronedronate)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antiepileptics (carbamazepine, fosphenytoin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)** are predicted to decrease the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study → Also see TABLE 11 p. 849
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Antifungals, azoles (itraconazole, ketoconazole, voriconazole)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Aprepitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Cobicistat** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Crizotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Enzalutamide** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **HIV-protease inhibitors** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Idelalisib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Imatinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study

- ▶ **Macrolides (clarithromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Theoretical
- ▶ **Macrolides (erythromycin)** are predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Mitotane** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Netupitant** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Nilotinib** is predicted to increase the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- ▶ **Rifampicin** is predicted to decrease the exposure to **zopiclone**. Adjust dose. [Moderate] Study
- Zuclopenthixol** → see TABLE 8 p. 848 (hypotension), TABLE 9 p. 849 (QT-interval prolongation), TABLE 11 p. 849 (CNS depressant effects)
- ▶ **Zuclopenthixol** is predicted to decrease the effects of **dopamine receptor agonists**. Avoid. [Moderate] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848 → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849
- ▶ **Zuclopenthixol** is predicted to decrease the effects of **levodopa**. Avoid or monitor worsening parkinsonian symptoms. [Severe] Theoretical → Also see TABLE 8 p. 848
- ▶ **Zuclopenthixol** potentially increases the risk of neurotoxicity when given with **lithium**. [Severe] Anecdotal → Also see TABLE 9 p. 849



# Appendix 2

## Borderline substances

### CONTENTS

<b>Enteral feeds (non-disease specific)</b>	page 1014
Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): less than 5 g protein/100 mL	1014
Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL	1016
Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): Child under 12 years	1018
<b>Nutritional supplements (non-disease specific)</b>	1022
Nutritional supplements: less than 5 g protein/100 mL	1022
Nutritional supplements: 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL	1023
<b>Specialised formulas</b>	1027
Specialised formulas: Infant and child	1027
Specialised formulas for specific clinical conditions	1032
<b>Feed supplements</b>	1034
High-energy supplements	1034
Fibre, vitamin, and mineral supplements	1038
<b>Feed additives</b>	1039
Special additives for conditions of intolerance	1039

Feed thickeners and pre-thickened drinks	page 1039
Flavouring preparations	1040
<b>Foods for special diets</b>	1040
Gluten-free foods	1040
Low-protein foods	1043
<b>Nutritional supplements for metabolic diseases</b>	1046
Glutaric aciduria (type 1)	1046
Glycogen storage disease	1046
Homocystinuria or hypermethioninaemia	1046
Hyperlysinaemia	1047
Isovaleric acidemia	1047
Maple syrup urine disease	1047
Methylmalonic or propionic acidemia	1048
Other inborn errors of metabolism	1048
Phenylketonuria	1049
Tyrosinaemia	1051

In certain conditions some foods (and toilet preparations) have characteristics of drugs and the Advisory Committee on Borderline Substances (ACBS) advises as to the circumstances in which such substances may be regarded as drugs. Prescriptions issued in accordance with the Committee's advice and endorsed 'ACBS' will normally not be investigated.

### Information

General Practitioners are reminded that the ACBS recommends products on the basis that they may be regarded as drugs for the management of specified conditions. Doctors should satisfy themselves that the products can safely be prescribed, that patients are adequately monitored and that, where necessary, expert hospital supervision is available.

### Foods which may be prescribed on FP10, GP10 (Scotland), or WP10 (Wales)

All the food products listed in this appendix have ACBS approval. The clinical condition for which the product has been approved is included with each entry.

**Note** Foods included in this appendix may contain cariogenic sugars and patients should be advised to take appropriate oral hygiene measures.

### Enteral feeds and supplements

For most enteral feeds and nutritional supplements, the main source of **carbohydrate** is either maltodextrin or glucose syrup; other carbohydrate sources are listed in the relevant table, below. Feeds containing residual lactose (less than 1 g lactose/100 mL formula) are described as 'clinically lactose-free' or 'lactose-free' by some manufacturers. The presence of lactose (including residual lactose) in feeds is indicated in the relevant table, below. The primary sources of **protein** or **amino acids** are included with each product entry. The **fat** or **oil** content is derived from a variety of sources such as vegetables, soya bean, corn, palm nuts, and seeds; where the fat content is derived from animal or fish sources, this information is included in the relevant table,

below. The presence of medium chain triglycerides (MCT) is also noted where the quantity exceeds 30% of the fat content.

Enteral feeds and nutritional supplements can contain varying amounts of **vitamins, minerals, and trace elements**—the manufacturer's product literature should be consulted for more detailed information. Feeds containing vitamin K may affect the INR in patients receiving warfarin; see **Interactions**: Appendix 1: enteral feeds.

The suitability of food products for patients requiring a vegan, kosher, halal, or other compliant diet should be confirmed with individual manufacturers.

**Note** Feeds containing more than 6 g/100 mL protein or 2 g/100 mL fibre should be avoided in children unless recommended by an appropriate specialist or dietician.

### Nutritional values

Nutritional values of products vary with flavour and pack size—consult product literature.

**Paediatric ACBS indications:** Disease-related malnutrition, intractable malabsorption, growth failure, pre-operative preparation of malnourished patients, dysphagia, short-bowel syndrome, bowel fistula

**Standard ACBS indications:** Disease-related malnutrition, intractable malabsorption, pre-operative preparation of malnourished patients, dysphagia, proven inflammatory bowel disease, following total gastrectomy, short-bowel syndrome, bowel fistula

### Other conditions for which ACBS products can be prescribed

This is a list of clinical conditions for which the ACBS has approved toilet preparations. For details of preparations see Chapter 13.

#### Dermatitis, eczema and pruritus

*Aveeno*<sup>®</sup> Bath Oil; *Aveeno*<sup>®</sup> Cream; *Aveeno*<sup>®</sup> Lotion; *E45*<sup>®</sup> Emollient Bath Oil; *E45*<sup>®</sup> Emollient Wash Cream; *E45*<sup>®</sup> Lotion

#### Dermatitis herpetiformis

Disfiguring skin lesions (birthmarks, mutilating lesions, scars, vitiligo)

*Covermark*® classic foundation and finishing powder;  
*Dermablend*® Ultra corrective foundation; *Dermacolor*®  
 Camouflage cream and fixing powder; *Keromask*® masking  
 cream and finishing powder; *Veil*® Cover cream and  
 Finishing Powder. (Cleansing Creams, Cleansing Milks,  
 and Cleansing Lotions are excluded).

#### **Disinfectants (antiseptics)**

May be prescribed on an FP10 only when ordered in such quantities and with such directions as are appropriate for the treatment of patients, but not for general hygienic purposes.

#### **Dry mouth (xerostomia)**

For patients suffering from dry mouth as a result of having (or having undergone) radiotherapy, or sicca syndrome.  
*AS Saliva Orthana*®; *Biotène Oralbalance*®; *Glandosane*®;  
*Saliveze*®

#### **Photodermatoses (skin protection in)**

*Anthelios*® XL SPF 50+ Melt-in cream; *Sunsense*® Ultra;  
*Uvistat*® Lipscreen SPF 50, *Uvistat*® Suncream SPF 30 and 50

Prices quoted in Appendix 2 are basic NHS net prices; for further information see Prices in BNFC.

**Table 1 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific)**

Less than 5 g protein/100 mL

**Enteral feeds: 1 kcal/mL and less than 5 g protein/100 mL**

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated; not recommended for child 1-6 years

Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Fresubin® 1500 Complete (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	3.8 g cows' milk soya	13 g (sugars 0.9 g)	3.4 g	1.5 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 except bowel fistula and pre-operative preparation of malnourished patients. Not suitable for child under 2 years	Fresubin 1500 Complete liquid: 1.5 litre = £14.05
Fresubin® Original (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	3.8 g cows' milk soya	13.8 g (sugars 3.5 g)	3.4 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish gelatin Feed in flexible pack contains fish oil and fish gelatin	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Fresubin Original drink: blackcurrant, chocolate, nut, peach, vanilla 200 ml = £2.28; Fresubin Original tube feed liquid: 1000 ml = £8.74; 1500 ml = £13.10; 500 ml = £4.41
Fresubin® Original Fibre (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	3.8 g cows' milk soya	13 g (sugars 0.9 g)	3.4 g	1.5 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 except bowel fistula and pre-operative preparation of malnourished patients. Not suitable for child under 2 years	Fresubin Original Fibre liquid: 500 ml = £4.99; 1000 ml = £9.96
Jevity® (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	449 kJ (107 kcal)	4 g caseinates	14.1 g (sugars 470 mg)	3.47 g	1.76 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 except bowel fistula. Not suitable for child under 2 years	Jevity liquid: 1000 ml = £10.59; 1500 ml = £15.85; 500 ml = £5.62
Nutrison® (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	4 g cows' milk	12.3 g (sugars 1 g)	3.9 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Nutrison liquid: 500 ml = £5.20; 500 ml = £4.68; 1000 ml = £9.12; 1500 ml = £13.68
Nutrison® Multi Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	4 g cows' milk	12.3 g (sugars 1 g)	3.9 g	1.5 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 except bowel fistula	Nutrison Multi Fibre liquid: 1500 ml = £15.83; 500 ml = £5.62; 500 ml = £5.27; 1000 ml = £10.57
Osmolite® (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	424 kJ (100 kcal)	4 g caseinates soy isolate	13.6 g (sugars 630 mg)	3.4 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Osmolite liquid: 500 ml = £5.21; 1000 ml = £9.14; 1500 ml = £13.71

SOYA PROTEIN FORMULA									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Fresubin® Soya Fibre (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	3.8 g soya protein	13.3 g (sugars 4.1 g)	3.6 g	2 g	Gluten-free Lactose-free Contains fish oil	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also cows' milk protein intolerance, lactose intolerance	Fresubin Soya Fibre liquid: 500 ml = £5.16
Nutrison® Soya (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	4 g soy isolate	12.3 g (sugars 1 g)	3.9 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Milk protein-free	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also cows' milk protein and lactose intolerance	Nutrison Soya liquid: 500 ml = £5.61; 1000 ml = £11.23
Nutrison® Soya Multi Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	4 g soy isolate	12.3 g (sugars 700 mg)	3.9 g	1.5 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Milk protein-free	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 except bowel fistula; also cows' milk protein and lactose intolerance	Nutrison Soya Multi Fibre liquid: 1.5 litre = £18.68
PEPTIDE-BASED FORMULA									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Nutrison Peptisorb® (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	425 kJ (100 kcal)	4 g whey protein hydrolysate	17.6 g (sugars 1.7 g)	1.7 g (MCT 47 %)	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Short bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, bowel fistula	Nutrison Peptisorb liquid: 500 ml = £7.44; 1000 ml = £14.74; 500 ml = £8.18
Peptamen® (Nestle Health Science)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	4 g whey peptides	12.7 g (sugars 480 mg)	3.7 g (MCT 70 %)	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Short bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, bowel fistula	Peptamen liquid: vanilla 800 ml = £12.56; unflavoured 500 ml = £7.06; 1000 ml = £13.25
Survimed® OPD (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	4.5 g whey protein hydrolysate	14.3 g (sugars 1.1 g)	2.8 g (MCT 51 %)	0.1 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also growth failure	Survimed OPD: liquid 500 ml = £7.36; 800 ml = £13.60; 1000 ml = £14.72; HN liquid 500 ml = £7.09
Enteral feeds: Less than 1 kcal/mL and less than 5 g protein/100 mL									
AMINO ACID FORMULA (ESSENTIAL AND NON-ESSENTIAL AMINO ACIDS)									
Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated; not recommended for child 1-6 years									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Elemental 028® Extra (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	360 kJ (86 kcal)	2.5 g (protein equivalent)	11 g (sugars 4.7 g)	3.5 g (MCT 35 %)	Nil		Short bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, bowel fistula	Elemental 028 Extra liquid: orange & pineapple, grapefruit, summer fruits 250 ml = £3.86
	Standard dilution (20%) of powder (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	374 kJ (89 kcal)	2.5 g (protein equivalent)	11.8 g (sugars 1.8 g)	3.5 g (MCT 35 %)	Nil		Short bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, bowel fistula.	Elemental 028 Extra powder: plain, orange, banana 100 gram = £7.49
Powder provides protein equivalent 12.5 g, carbohydrate 59 g, fat 17.45 g, energy 1871 kJ (443 kcal)/100 g.									

## Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL

**Enteral feeds: 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL**

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated; not recommended for child 1-6 years

Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Fresubin® 2250 Complete (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	5.6 g cows' milk	18.8 g (sugars 1.5 g)	5.8 g	2 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil and fish gelatin	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Fresubin 2250 Complete liquid: 1.5 litre = £15.68
Fresubin® Energy (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	5.6 g cows' milk	18.8 g (sugars)	5.8 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish gelatin Strawberry flavour may contain traces of wheat starch and egg.	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Fresubin Energy liquid: banana, blackcurrant, cappuccino, chocolate, lemon, strawberry, tropical fruits, vanilla 200 ml = £1.40; unflavoured 200 ml = £1.40; 500 ml = £5.40
	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	5.6 g cows' milk	18.8 g (sugars 1.4 g)	5.8 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil and fish gelatin	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Fresubin Energy liquid: 1000 ml = £10.61; 1500 ml = £14.23
Fresubin® Energy Fibre (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	5.6 g cows' milk	18.8 g (sugars)	5.8 g	2 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish gelatin	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Fresubin Energy Fibre liquid: banana, caramel, cherry, chocolate, strawberry 200 ml = £2.17
	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	5.6 g cows' milk	18.8 g (sugars 1.5 g)	5.8 g	2 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil and fish gelatin	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Fresubin Energy Fibre liquid unflavoured: 500 ml = £5.92; 1000 ml = £11.30
Fresubin® HP Energy (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	7.5 g cows' milk	17 g (sugars 1 g)	5.8 g (MCT 57 %)	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil and fish gelatin	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also CAPD and haemodialysis	Fresubin HP Energy liquid: 500 ml = £5.50; 1000 ml = £11.00
Jevity® 1.5 kcal (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	649 kJ (154 kcal)	6.38 g caseinates and soy isolate	20.1 g (sugars 1.47 g)	4.9 g	2.2 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 2 years; not recommended for child 2-10 years	Jevity 1.5kcal liquid: 1500 ml = £19.55; 500 ml = £6.73; 1000 ml = £12.67
Nutrison® Energy (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	6 g cows' milk	18.5 g (sugars 1.5 g)	5.8 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Nutrison Energy liquid: 1000 ml = £11.39; 500 ml = £6.05; 1500 ml = £17.03; 500 ml = £5.66 (bottle)
Nutrison® Energy Multi Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	6 g cows' milk	18.5 g (sugars 1.5 g)	5.8 g	1.5 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Nutrison Energy Multi Fibre liquid: 500 ml = £6.33 (bottle); 1000 ml = £12.64; 500 ml = £6.72; 1500 ml = £19.51
Osmolite® 1.5 kcal (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	632 kJ (150 kcal)	6.25 g cows' milk soya protein isolate	20 g (sugars 4.9 g)	5 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Osmolite 1.5kcal tube feed liquid: 1000 ml = £11.41; 500 ml = £6.06; 1500 ml = £17.07
Resource® Energy (Nestle Health Science)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	5.6 g cows' milk	21 g (sugars 5.2 g)	5 g	less than 0.5 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for use in child under 3 years	Resource Energy liquid: apricot, banana, chocolate, coffee, strawberry & raspberry, vanilla 800 ml = £7.93



<b>Enteral feeds: Less than 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL</b> Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated; not recommended for child 1-6 years									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Fresubin® 1000 Complete (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	5.5 g cows' milk	12.5 g (sugars 1.1 g)	3.1 g	2 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Fresubin 1000 Complete liquid: 1 litre = £11.30
Fresubin® 1200 Complete (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	500 kJ (120 kcal)	6 g cows' milk	15 g (sugars 1.22 g)	4.1 g	2 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Fresubin 1200 Complete liquid: 1 litre = £14.38
Fresubin® 1800 Complete (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	500 kJ (120 kcal)	6 g cows' milk	15 g (sugars 1.22 g)	4.1 g	2 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Fresubin 1800 Complete liquid: 1.5 litre = £14.38
Jevity® Plus (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	514 kJ (122 kcal)	5.5 g caseinates soy isolates	15.1 g (sugars 890 mg)	3.93 g	2.2 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 2 years; not recommended for child 2-10 years	Jevity Plus liquid: 1500 ml = £18.34; 1000 ml = £12.27; 500 ml = £6.74
Jevity® Plus HP (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	551 kJ (131 kcal)	8.13 g cows' milk soy isolates	14.2 g (sugars 950 mg)	4.33 g	1.5 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also CAPD, haemodialysis Not suitable for child under 2 years; not recommended for child 2-10 years	Jevity Plus HP gluten free liquid: 500 ml = £6.60
Jevity® Promote (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	434 kJ (103 kcal)	5.55 g caseinates soy isolates	12 g (sugars 670 mg)	3.32 g	1.7 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 2 years; not recommended for child 2-10 years	Jevity Promote liquid: 1 litre = £11.74
Nutrison® 800 Complete Multi Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	345 kJ (83 kcal)	5.5 g cows' milk pea protein soya protein	8.8 g (sugars 600 mg)	2.5 g	1.5 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 except bowel fistula Not suitable for child under 6 years; not recommended for child 6-12 years	Nutrison 800 Complete Multi Fibre liquid: 1 litre = £11.05
Nutrison® 1000 Complete Multi Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	5.5 g cows' milk	11.3 g (sugars 700 mg)	3.7 g	2 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Disease related malnutrition in patients with low energy and/or low fluid requirements	Nutrison 1000 Complete Multi Fibre liquid: 1 litre = £11.72
Nutrison® 1200 Complete Multi Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	505 kJ (120 kcal)	5.5 g cows' milk	15 g (sugars 1.2 g)	4.3 g	2 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 except bowel fistula	Nutrison 1200 Complete Multi Fibre liquid: 1500 ml = £18.62; 1000 ml = £12.40

<b>Enteral feeds: Less than 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL (product list continued)</b>									
Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated; not recommended for child 1-6 years									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Nutrison <sup>®</sup> MCT (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	5 g cows' milk	12.6 g (sugars 1 g)	3.3 g (MCT 61%)	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Nutrison MCT liquid: 1000 ml = £10.56
Nutrison <sup>®</sup> Protein Plus (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	525 kJ (125 kcal)	6.3 g cows' milk	14.2 g (sugars 1.1 g)	4.9 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Nutrison Protein Plus liquid: 1 litre = £10.84
Nutrison <sup>®</sup> Protein Plus Multi Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	535 kJ (128 kcal)	6.3 g cow's milk	14.1 g (sugars 1.0 g)	4.9 g	1.5 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Disease related malnutrition	Nutrison Protein Plus Multifibre liquid: 1 litre = £12.08
Osmolite <sup>®</sup> Plus (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	508 kJ (121 kcal)	5.55 g caseinates	15.8 g (sugars 730 mg)	3.93 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 10 years	Osmolite Plus liquid: 1000 ml = £10.29; 500 ml = £5.66; 1500 ml = £15.39
Peptamen <sup>®</sup> HN (Nestle Health Science)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	556 kJ (133 kcal)	6.6 g whey protein hydrolysates	15.6 g (sugars 1.4 g)	4.9 g (MCT 70%)	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Hydrolysed with pork trypsin	Short bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, bowel fistula Not suitable for child under 3 years	Peptamen HN liquid: 500 ml = £7.60
Perative <sup>®</sup> (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	552 kJ (131 kcal)	6.7 g caseinate whey protein hydrolysates	17.7 g (sugars 660 mg)	3.7 g (MCT 42%)	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 5 years	Perative liquid: 1000 ml = £14.77; 500 ml = £8.00
<b>Enteral feeds: More than 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL</b>									
Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated; not recommended for child 1-6 years									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Ensure <sup>®</sup> TwoCal (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	838 kJ (200 kcal)	8.4 g cows' milk	21 g (sugars 4.5 g)	8.9 g	1 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also haemodialysis and CAPD	Ensure TwoCal liquid: banana, neutral, strawberry, vanilla 200 ml = £2.22
<b>Enteral feeds (non-disease specific): Child under 12 years</b>									
<b>Enteral feeds, Child: Less than 1 kcal/mL and less than 4 g protein/100 mL</b>									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Nutrini <sup>®</sup> Low Energy Multi Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	315 kJ (75 kcal)	2.1 g whey protein and caseinate	9.3 g (sugars 600 mg)	3.3 g	800 mg	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances paediatric ACBS indications p. 1012 except bowel fistula, in child 1-6 years, body-weight 8-20 kg	Nutrini Low Energy Multifibre liquid: 200 ml = £2.79; 500 ml = £7.08
Nutriprem <sup>®</sup> 1 (Cow & Gate Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	335 kJ (80 kcal)	2.5 g whey protein and casein	7.6 g (lactose 6.3 g)	4.4 g	800 mg	Contains soya, fish oil and egg lipid	Low birth-weight formula	Nutriprem 1 liquid: 70 ml = Hospital supply only
Nutriprem <sup>®</sup> 2 (Cow & Gate Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	310 kJ (75 kcal)	2 g whey protein and casein	7.4 g (lactose 5.8 g)	4 g	600 mg	Contains soya, fish oil and egg lipid	Catch-up growth in pre-term infants (less than 35 weeks at birth) and small for gestational-age infants up to 6 months corrected age.	Nutriprem 2 liquid: 200 ml = £1.74

	Standard dilution (15.3%) of powder (sip feed) per 100 mL	315 kJ (75 kcal)	2 g whey protein and casein	7.4 g (lactose 5.9 g)	4 g (including MCT oil)	600 mg			Nutriprem 2 powder: 800 gram = £10.37
Powder provides: protein 13 g, carbohydrate 48.3 g, fat 26.7 g, fibre 5.2 g, energy 2030 kJ (485 kcal)/100 g.									
<b>AMINO ACID FORMULA (ESSENTIAL AND NON-ESSENTIAL AMINO ACIDS)</b>									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Emsogen® (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (20%) of powder (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	368 kJ (88 kcal)	2.5 g protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids)	12 g (sugars 1.6 g)	3.3 g (MCT 83%)	Nil	Lactose-free	Short-bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, bowel fistula Not suitable for child under 1 year or as sole source of nutrition in child 1-5 years	Emsogen powder unflavoured: 100 gram = £7.71
Powder provides: protein equivalent 12.5 g, carbohydrate 60 g, fat 16.4 g, energy 1839 kJ (438 kcal)/100 g. Additional source of alpha linolenic acid needed if used as sole source of nutrition.									
<b>Enteral feeds, Child: 1 kcal/mL and less than 4 g protein/100 mL</b> Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Fortini® 1.0 Multi Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	2.4 g cows' milk	11.8 g (sugars 4.7 g)	4.5 g	1.5 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Disease-related malnutrition and growth failure in child 1-6 years, body-weight 8-20 kg	Fortini 1.0 Multi Fibre liquid: banana, chocolate, strawberry, vanilla 200 ml = £2.67
Frebini® Original (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	2.5 g cows' milk	12.5 g (sugars 700 mg)	4.4 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oils and fish gelatin	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 and growth failure in child 1-10 years, body-weight 8-30 kg	Frebini Original liquid: 500 ml = £6.52
Frebini® Original Fibre (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	2.5 g cows' milk	12.5 g (sugars 700 mg)	4.4 g	750 mg	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oils and fish gelatin	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 and growth failure in child 1-10 years, body-weight 8-30 kg	Frebini Original Fibre liquid: 500 ml = £7.25
Infatrin® (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	415 kJ (100 kcal)	2.6 g cows' milk	10.3 g (lactose 5.2 g)	5.4 g	800 mg	Gluten-free Contains fish oil	Failure to thrive, disease-related malnutrition and malabsorption, in child from birth up to body-weight 8 kg	Infatrin liquid: 200 ml = £2.40; 500 ml = £6.52; 125 ml = £1.51
Nutrini® (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	2.8 g cows' milk	12.3 g (sugars 1 g)	4.4 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 and growth failure in child 1-6 years, body-weight 8-20 kg	Nutrini liquid: 200 ml = £2.91; 500 ml = £7.22
Nutrini® Multi Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	2.8 g whey protein and caseinate	12.3 g (sugars 800 mg)	4.4 g	800 mg	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 and growth failure in child 1-6 years, body-weight 8-20 kg	Nutrini Multifibre liquid: 200 ml = £3.22; 500 ml = £8.01

<b>Enteral feeds, Child: 1 kcal/mL and less than 4 g protein/100 mL (product list continued)</b>									
Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Paediasure® (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	422 kJ (100 kcal)	2.8 g cows' milk	11.2 g (sugars 3.92 g)	4.98 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances paediatric ACBS indications p. 1012 in child 1–10 years, body-weight 8–30 kg	PaediaSure liquid: banana, chocolate, strawberry 200 ml = £2.62; vanilla 200 ml = £2.62; 500 ml = £7.24. Nutritional values may vary with flavour—consult product literature
Paediasure® Fibre (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	424 kJ (101 kcal)	2.8 g caseinates and whey protein	10.9 g (sugars 3.84 g)	4.98 g	730 mg	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances paediatric ACBS indications p. 1012 in child 1–10 years, body-weight 8–30 kg	PaediaSure fibre liquid: banana, strawberry 200 ml = £2.77; vanilla 200 ml = £8.03. Nutritional values may vary with flavour—consult product literature
Paediasure® Peptide (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	3 g whey protein and caseinate	13 g (sugars 2.98 g)	4 (MCT 50%) g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 and growth failure in child 1–10 years, body-weight 8–30 kg	PaediaSure Peptide liquid: 500 ml = £11.29; 200 ml = £4.07
Similac® High Energy (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	419 kJ (100 kcal)	2.6 g cows' milk and whey protein	10.1 g (sugars 5.6 g)	5.2 g	400 mg	Gluten-free Contains lactose and soy oil	Increased energy requirements, faltering growth, and/or need for fluid restriction, in child body-weight up to 8 kg	Similac High Energy liquid: 60 ml = £0.71; 200 ml = £2.38
Tentrini® (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	3.3 g whey protein and caseinate	12.3 g (sugars 800 mg)	4.2 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 and growth failure in child 7–12 years, body-weight 21–45 kg	Tentrini liquid: 500 ml = £6.36
Tentrini® Multi Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	3.3 g whey protein and caseinate	12.3 g (sugars 800 mg)	4.2 g	1.1 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 except bowel fistula, and growth failure in child 7–12 years body-weight 21–45 kg	Tentrini Multifibre liquid: 500 ml = £7.00
HYDROLYSATE FORMULA									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Nutrini® Peptisorb (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	2.8 g whey protein hydrolysate	13.7 g (sugars 800 mg)	3.9 g (MCT 46%)	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 and growth failure in child 1–6 years, body-weight 8–20 kg	Nutrini Peptisorb liquid: 500 ml = £11.27
Peptamen® Junior (Nestlé Health Science)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	3 g whey protein hydrolysate	13.2 g	4 g (MCT 60%)	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Hydrolysed with pork trypsin	Short bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, bowel fistula, in child 1–10 years	Peptamen Junior gluten free liquid: 500 ml = £7.05
	Standard dilution (22%) of powder (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	3 g whey protein hydrolysate	13.8 g	3.85 g (MCT 60%)	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Hydrolysed with bacterial trypsin		Peptamen Junior powder: 400 gram = £18.49
Powder provides: protein 13.7 g, carbohydrate 62.9 g, fat 17.5 g, energy 1910 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g.									

<b>Enteral feeds, Child: More than 1 kcal/mL and less than 4 g protein/100 mL</b> Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Fortini® (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	3.4 g cows' milk	18.8 g (sugars 7.4 g)	6.8 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Disease-related malnutrition and growth failure in child 1-6 years, body-weight 8-20 kg	Fortini liquid: strawberry, vanilla 200 ml = £3.46
Fortini® Multifibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	3.4 g cows' milk	18.8 g (sugars 7.4 g)	6.8 g	1.5 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Disease-related malnutrition and growth failure in child 1-6 years, body-weight 8-20 kg	Fortini Multi Fibre liquid: banana, chocolate, strawberry, unflavoured, vanilla 200 ml = £3.63
Fortini® Smoothie (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	625 kJ (150 kcal)	3.4 g cows' milk	19 g (sugars 11.5 g)	6.4 g	1.4 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Disease-related malnutrition and growth failure in child 1-6 years, body-weight 8-20 kg	Fortini Smoothie Multi Fibre liquid: berry fruit, summer fruit 200 ml = £3.63
Frebini® Energy (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	3.75 g cows' milk	18.75 g (sugars 830 mg)	6.7 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil and fish gelatin	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 and growth failure in child 1-10 years, body-weight 8-30 kg	Frebini Energy: 500 ml = £8.17
Frebini® Energy Drink (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	3.8 g cows' milk	18.7 g (sugars 4.5 g)	6.7 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Disease-related malnutrition and growth failure in child 1-10 years, body-weight 8-30 kg	Frebini Energy Drink: banana, strawberry 200 ml = £3.09
Frebini® Energy Fibre (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	3.75 g cows' milk	18.75 g (sugars 830 mg)	6.7 g	1.13 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oils and fish gelatin	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 and growth failure in child 1-10 years, body-weight 8-30 kg	Frebini Energy Fibre liquid unflavoured: 500 ml = £8.75
Frebini® Energy Fibre Drink (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	3.8 g cows' milk	18.75 g (sugars 4.5 g)	6.7 g	1.1 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Disease-related malnutrition and growth failure in child 1-10 years, body-weight 8-30 kg	Frebini Energy Fibre liquid: chocolate, vanilla 200 ml = £3.15
Resource® Junior (Nestle Health Science)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	3 g cows' milk	20.6 g (sugars 4.9 g)	6.2 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 in child 1-10 years. Not suitable for use in child under 1 year	Resource Junior complete sip feed: chocolate, strawberry, vanilla 200 ml = £2.21
<b>Enteral feeds, Child: 1.5 kcal/mL and more than 4 g protein/100 mL</b> Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Nutrini® Energy (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	4.1 g caseinate whey protein	18.5 g (sugars 1.1 g)	6.7 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 and growth failure in child 1-6 years, body-weight 8-20 kg	Nutrini Energy liquid: 500 ml = £9.06; 200 ml = £3.54
Nutrini® Energy Multi Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	4.1 g caseinate whey protein	18.5 g (sugars 1.1 g)	6.7 g	800 mg	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances paediatric ACBS indications p. 1012 except bowel fistula; also total gastrectomy, in child 1-6 years, body-weight 8-20 kg	Nutrini Energy Multifibre liquid: 200 ml = £3.74; 500 ml = £9.36



**Enteral feeds, Child: 1.5 kcal/mL and more than 4 g protein/100 mL (product list continued)**

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year unless otherwise stated

Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Paediasure® Plus (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	632 kJ (151 kcal)	4.2 g caseinates whey protein	16.7 g	7.47 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances paediatric ACBS indications p. 1012 in child 1–10 years, body-weight 8–30 kg	PaediaSure Plus liquid: banana, strawberry, unflavoured 200 ml = £3.38; vanilla 200 ml = £3.38; 500 ml = £9.08. Sugar content varies with presentation
Paediasure® Plus Fibre (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	635 kJ (152 kcal)	4.2 g caseinates whey protein	16.4 g (sugars 5.3 g)	7.47 g	1.1 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances paediatric ACBS indications p. 1012 in child 1–10 years, body-weight 8–30 kg. Not suitable for use in child under 1 year.	PaediaSure Plus fibre liquid: banana, strawberry 200 ml = £3.64; vanilla 200 ml = £3.64; 500 ml = £9.38. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature. Sugar content varies with presentation
Peptamen® Junior Advance (Nestle Health Science)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	4.5 g whey protein	18 g (sugars 2.1 g)	6.6 g (MCT 61%)	540 mg	Gluten-free Residual lactose Hydrolysed with pork trypsin Contains fish oil	Intractable malabsorption, short-bowel syndrome, bowel fistula, and proven inflammatory bowel disease in child 1–10 years	Peptamen Junior Advance gluten free liquid: 500 ml = £8.05
Tentrini® Energy (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	4.9 g whey protein and caseinate	18.5 g (sugars 1.1 g)	6.3 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 and growth failure, in child 7–12 years, body-weight 21–45 kg	Tentrini Energy liquid: 500 ml = £7.86
Tentrini® Energy Multi Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (tube feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	4.9 g whey protein and caseinate	18.5 g (sugars 1.1 g)	6.3 g	1.1 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Borderline substances paediatric ACBS indications p. 1012 and proven inflammatory bowel disease, in child 7–12 years, body-weight 21–45 kg	Tentrini Energy Multifibre liquid: 500 ml = £8.66

**Table 2 Nutritional supplements (non-disease specific)**

Less than 5 g protein/100 mL

**Nutritional supplements: 1 kcal/mL and less than 5 g protein/100 mL**

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1–5 years unless otherwise stated

Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Ensure® (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	423 kJ (100 kcal)	4 g caseinates soy isolate	13.6 g (sugars 3.93 g)	3.36 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Ensure liquid: vanilla, chocolate, coffee 250 ml = £2.31

**Nutritional supplements: More than 1 kcal/mL and less than 5 g protein/100 mL**

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1–5 years unless otherwise stated

Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
AYMES® Shake (Aymes International Ltd)	Standard dilution of powder (57 g in 200 mL water) (sip feed) per 100 mL	530.5 kJ (126 kcal)	4.5 g cows' milk	17.5 g (sugars 8.4 g)	4.2 g	Nil	Gluten-free Contains lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012. Use with caution in child 1–6 years. Not suitable for child under 1 year	Aymes Shake Sample Pack powder: 285 gram = £4.78; Aymes Shake powder: chocolate, vanilla 399 gram = £4.20; banana, neutral, strawberry 399 gram = £4.20

Powder 57 g reconstituted with 200 mL whole milk provides: protein 15.8 g, carbohydrate 44.1 g, fat 16.4 g, energy 1625 kJ (388 kcal)

Ensure® Plus Juice (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	638 kJ (150 kcal)	4.8 g whey protein isolate	32.7 g (sugars 9.4 g)	Nil	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Non-milk taste	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Ensure Plus Juice liquid: assorted 880 ml = no price available; apple, fruit punch, lemon & lime, orange, peach, strawberry 220 ml = £1.97
Fortijuce® (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	640 kJ (150 kcal)	4.0 g cows' milk	33.5 g (sugars 13.1 g)	Nil	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Non-milk taste	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 3 years	Fortijuce Starter Pack liquid: assorted 800 ml = £8.08; Fortijuce liquid: apple, blackcurrant, forest fruits, lemon, orange, strawberry, tropical 200 ml = £2.02. Sugar content varies with flavour
Fresubin® Jucy Drink (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	4 g whey protein	33.5 g (sugars 8 g)	Nil	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also CAPD, haemodialysis	Fresubin Jucy drink: blackcurrant, cherry, pineapple 200 ml =; 800 ml = £8.04; orange 200 ml =; 800 ml = £8.04; apple 400 ml =; 800 ml = £8.04
Paediasure® Plus Juice (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	638 kJ (150 kcal)	4.2 g cows' milk	33.3 g (sugars 9.4 g)	Nil	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Non-milk taste	Nutritional supplement in child 1-10 years, body-weight 8-30 kg with disease-related malnutrition and, or growth failure	PaediaSure Plus Juice liquid: apple, very berry 200 ml = £3.36

### Nutritional supplements: 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL

#### Nutritional supplements: 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL

Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1-5 years unless otherwise stated.

Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Altraplen® Protein (Nutra Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	632 kJ (150 kcal)	10 g cows' milk soya protein	15 g (sugars 4.6 g)	5.6 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-6 years	Altraplen Protein liquid: strawberry 200 ml =; 800 ml = £6.36; vanilla 200 ml =; 800 ml = £6.36
Ensure® Plus Commence (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Starter pack (5-10 days supply), contains: Ensure® Plus Commence (various flavours), 1 pack (10 × 220 mL) = £11.10								
Ensure® Plus Fibre (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	652 kJ (155 kcal)	6.25 g cows' milk soya protein isolate	20.2 g (sugars 5.5 g)	4.92 g	2.5 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also CAPD, haemodialysis.	Ensure Plus Fibre liquid: banana, chocolate, raspberry, strawberry, vanilla 200 ml = £2.07. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
Ensure® Plus Milkshake style (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	632 kJ (150 kcal)	6.25 g cows' milk soya protein isolate	20.2 g (sugars 6.89 g)	4.92 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also CAPD, haemodialysis	Ensure Plus milkshake style liquid: banana, chocolate, coffee, fruits of the forest, neutral, peach, raspberry, strawberry, vanilla 200 ml = £1.11. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
Ensure® Plus Savoury (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	632 kJ (150 kcal)	6.25 g cows' milk soy protein isolate	20.2 g (sugars 1.13 g)	4.92 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also CAPD, haemodialysis.	Ensure Plus savoury liquid: chicken, 200 ml = £1.11

<b>Nutritional supplements: 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL (product list continued)</b>									
Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1-5 years unless otherwise stated.									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Ensure® Plus Yoghurt style (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	632 kJ (150 kcal)	6.25 g cows' milk	20.2 g (sugars 11.7 g)	4.92 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also CAPD, haemodialysis	Ensure Plus yoghurt style liquid: orchard peach, strawberry swirl 200 ml = £1.11
Fortisip® Bottle (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	6 g cows' milk	18.4 g	5.8 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-5 years.	Fortisip Bottle: banana, caramel, chocolate, neutral, orange, strawberry, tropical fruit, vanilla 200 ml = £1.12. Sugar content varies with flavour
Fortisip® Range (Nutricia Ltd)	Starter pack contains 4×Fortisip® Bottle, 4×Fortijuce®, 2×Fortisip® Yoghurt Style, 1 pack (10×200 ml) = £20.20								
Fortisip® Yoghurt Style (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	6 g cows' milk	18.7 g (sugars 10.8 g)	5.8 g	200 mg	Gluten-free Contains lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 3 years	Fortisip Yogurt Style liquid: vanilla & lemon, raspberry 200 ml = £2.14
Fresubin® Protein Energy Drink (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	10 g cows' milk	12.4 g (sugars 6.4 g)	6.7 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish gelatin	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also CAPD, haemodialysis.	Fresubin Protein Energy drink: cappuccino, chocolate, tropical fruits, vanilla, wild strawberry 200 ml = £2.10. Sugar content varies with flavour. Fibre content varies with flavour
Fresubin® Thickened (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	630 kJ (150 kcal)	10 g cows' milk	12.2 g (sugars 7.1 g)	6.7 g	480 mg	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Dysphagia or disease-related malnutrition. Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-5 years.	Fresubin Thickened Stage 1 syrup: vanilla, wild strawberry 800 ml = £9.40; Fresubin Thickened Stage 2 custard: vanilla, wild strawberry 800 ml = £9.40. Sugar content varies with consistency. Fibre content varies with consistency
Fresubin® YOcrème (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Semi-solid per 100 g	630 kJ (150 kcal)	7.5 g whey protein	19.5 g (sugars 16.8 g)	4.7 g	Nil	Gluten-free Contains lactose	Dysphagia, or presence or risk of malnutrition Not suitable for child under 3 years	Fresubin YOcrème dessert: apricot-peach, biscuit, lemon, raspberry 500 gram = £8.16
<b>Nutritional supplements: Less than 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL</b>									
Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1-5 years unless otherwise stated.									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Ensure® Plus Crème (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Semi-solid per 100 g	574 kJ (137 kcal)	5.68 g cow's milk soy protein isolates	18.4 g (sugars 12.4 g)	4.47 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains soya	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also CAPD, haemodialysis. Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-5 years.	Ensure Plus Creme: banana, chocolate, neutral, vanilla 500 gram = £7.72. Nutritional values vary with flavour – consult product literature
Nutrilis® Fruit Stage 3 (Nutricia Ltd)	Semi-Solid per 100 g	560 kJ (133 kcal)	7 g whey isolate	16.7 g (sugars 11.3 g)	4 g	2.6 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 except bowel fistula; also CAPD, haemodialysis. Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-5 years.	Nutrilis Fruit Stage 3: apple, strawberry 450 gram = £7.35

Oral Impact® (Nestle Health Science)	Standard dilution of powder (74 g in 250 mL water) (sip feed) per 100 mL	425 kJ (101 kcal)	5.6 g cows' milk	13.4 g (sugars 7.4 g)	2.8 g	1 g	Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Pre-operative nutritional supplement for malnourished patients or patients at risk of malnourishment Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-5 years.	Oral Impact oral powder 74g sachets: citrus, tropical 5 sachet = £17.62
Powder provides: protein 16.8 g, carbohydrate 40.2 g, fat 8.3 g, fibre 3 g, energy 1276 kJ (303 kcal)/74 g.									
<b>Nutritional supplements: More than 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL</b> Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1-5 years unless otherwise stated.									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Altraplen Compact® (Nualtra Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	1008 kJ (240 kcal)	9.6 g cows' milk soya protein	28.8 g (sugars 11.6 g)	9.6 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-6 years.	Altraplen Compact liquid: strawberry, vanilla 500 mL = £5.32
Complan® Shake (Nutricia Ltd)	Powder per 57 g	1057 kJ (251 kcal)	8.8 g cows' milk	35.2 g (sugars 22.7 g)	8.4 g	Trace	Gluten-free Contains lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Complan Shake Starter Pack sachets: 5 sachet = £4.39; Complan Shake oral powder 57g sachets: strawberry, vanilla, banana, chocolate, milk 4 sachet = £2.80
Powder 57 g reconstituted with 200 mL whole milk provides: protein 15.6 g, carbohydrate 44.5 g, fat 16.4 g, energy 1621 kJ (387 kcal).									
Foodlink® Complete (Nualtra Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	1842 kJ (437 kcal)	20.3 g cows' milk soya protein	58.7 g (sugars 42.7 g)	13.5 g	Nil	Contains lactose Gluten-free	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Foodlink Complete powder: banana, chocolate, natural, strawberry, vanilla 399 gram = £4.20
Recommended serving = the contents of a 57-g sachet in 200 mL full cream milk provides: protein 18.4 g, carbohydrate 43 g, fat 15.7 g, energy 1614 kJ (385kcal).									
Foodlink® Complete with Fibre (Nualtra Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	1899 kJ (452 kcal)	20.3 g cows' milk soya protein	58.6 g (sugars 42.6 g)	13.5 g	7.2 g	Contains lactose Gluten-free	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012	Foodlink Complete powder with fibre: vanilla 441 gram = £4.97. Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature.
Recommended serving = the contents of a 63-g sachet in 200 mL full cream milk provides: protein 19.6 g, carbohydrate 46.4 g, fat 16.5 g, fibre 4.5 g, energy 1760 kJ (421 kcal).									
Forticreme® Complete (Nutricia Ltd)	Semi-solid per 100 g	675 kJ (160 kcal)	9.5 g cows' milk	19.2 g (sugars 10.6 g)	5 g	0.1 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also CAPD, haemodialysis. Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-5 years.	Forticreme Complete dessert: banana, chocolate, forest fruits, vanilla 500 gram = £7.84
Fortisip® Compact (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	1010 kJ (240 kcal)	9.6 g cows' milk	29.7 g (sugars 15 g)	9.3 g	Nil	Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-5 years.	Fortisip Compact liquid: apricot, banana, chocolate, forest fruit, mocha, strawberry, vanilla 500 mL = £5.80
Fortisip® Compact Fibre (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	1000 kJ (240 kcal)	9.4 g cows' milk	25.2 g (sugars 13.9 g)	10.4 g	3.6 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-5 years.	Fortisip Compact Fibre Starter Pack liquid: 500 mL = £8.36; Fortisip Compact Fibre liquid: mocha, strawberry, vanilla 500 mL = £8.36

<b>Nutritional supplements: More than 1.5 kcal/mL and 5 g (or more) protein/100 mL (product list continued)</b>									
Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1-5 years unless otherwise stated.									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Fortisip® Compact Protein (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	1010 kJ (240 kcal)	14.4 g cows' milk	24.4 g (sugars 13.3 g)	9.4 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-5 years.	Fortisip Compact Protein Starter Pack liquid: 750 ml = £12.00; Fortisip Compact Protein liquid: banana, mocha, strawberry, vanilla 500 ml = £8.00
Fortisip® Extra (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	675 kJ (160 kcal)	10 g cows' milk	18.1 g (sugars 9 g)	5.3 g	Nil	Gluten-free Contains lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-5 years.	Fortisip Extra liquid: strawberry, vanilla 200 ml = £2.30
Fresubin® 2 kcal Drink (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	840 kJ (200 kcal)	10 g cows' milk	22.5 g (sugars 5.8 g)	7.8 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also CAPD, haemodialysis. Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1-5 years.	Fresubin 2kcal drink: apricot-peach, cappuccino, fruits of the forest, neutral, toffee, vanilla 200 ml = £2.10
Fresubin® 2 kcal Fibre Drink (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	840 kJ (200 kcal)	10 g cows' milk	22.5 g (sugars 5.8 g)	7.8 g	1.6 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012; also CAPD, haemodialysis. Not suitable for use in child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1-5 years.	Fresubin 2kcal Fibre drink: apricot-peach, cappuccino, chocolate, lemon, neutral 200 ml = £2.10 Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
Fresubin® Powder Extra (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	1764 kJ (420 kcal)	17.5 g cows' milk whey protein	63 g (sugars 24.7 g)	10.9 g	Nil	Gluten-free Contains lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1-5 years.	Fresubin Powder Extra oral powder 62g sachets: neutral, strawberry 2 sachet =; 7 sachet = £4.90; chocolate, vanilla 2 sachet =; 7 sachet = £4.90 Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
Powder 62 g reconstituted with 200 ml whole milk provides: protein 17.7 g, carbohydrate 48.5 g, fat 14.8 g, energy 1658 kJ (397 kcal).									
Nutrilis® Complete Stage 1 (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (pre-thickened) per 100 mL	1010 kJ (240 kcal)	9.6 g cows' milk	29.1 g (sugars 5.4 g)	9.3 g	3.2 g	Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-5 years.	Nutrilis Complete Stage 1 liquid: strawberry, vanilla 500 ml = £8.84
Nutrilis® Complete Stage 2 (Nutricia Ltd)	Semi-solid per 100 g	1030 kJ (245 kcal)	9.6 g cows' milk	29.1 g (sugars 11.8 g)	9.4 g	3.2 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-6 years.	Nutrilis Complete Stage 2 custard: chocolate, strawberry, vanilla 500 gram = £8.84 Nutritional values vary with flavour—consult product literature
Nutricrem® (Nualtra Ltd)	Semi-solid per 100 g	756 kJ (180 kcal)	10 g cows' milk soya protein	18.8 g (sugars 9.7 g)	7.2 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-6 years.	Nutricrem dessert: strawberry, vanilla 500 gram = £6.36



Renilon® 7.5 (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	840 kJ (200 kcal)	7.5 g cows' milk	20 g (sugars 4.8 g)	10 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-5 years.	Renilon 7.5 liquid: apricot, caramel 500 ml = £9.12
Resource® 2.0 Fibre (Nestle Health Science)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	836 kJ (200 kcal)	9 g cows' milk	21.4 g (sugars 5.5 g)	8.7 g	2.5 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 Not suitable for child under 6 years; caution in child 6-10 years.	Resource Fibre 2.0 liquid: apricot, coffee, neutral, strawberry, summer fruit, vanilla 200 ml = £1.95

### Table 3 Specialised formulas

#### Specialised formulas: Infant and child

##### Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Amino acid-based formula

Specialised formulas are suitable for infants from birth unless otherwise indicated.

Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Alfamino® (Nestle Health Science)	Standard dilution (13.8%) of powder per 100 mL	291 kJ (69 kcal)	1.8 g protein equivalent (essential and non- essential amino acids)	7.9 g (sugars 2.2 g)	3.4 g	Nil		Severe cows' milk allergy and or multiple food allergies	SMA Alfamino powder: 400 gram = £23.81
Powder provides protein equivalent 13.3 g, carbohydrate 57 g, fat 24.6 g, energy 2105 kJ (503 kcal)/100 g.									
Neocate® Active (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (21%) of powder per 300 mL serving (63-g sachet made up to 300 mL with water)	1255 kJ (300 kcal)	8.3 g protein equivalent (essential and non- essential amino acids)	34 g (sugars 3.1 g)	14.5 g	Nil	Milk protein-free	Proven whole protein intolerance, short bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, or other gastro- intestinal disorders where an elemental diet is indicated. Nutritional supplement only. Not suitable for child under 1 year.	Neocate Active powder: blackcurrant, unflavoured 945 gram = £69.75
Powder provides: protein equivalent 13.1 g, carbohydrate 54 g, fat 23 g, energy 1992 kJ (475 kcal)/100 g.									
Neocate® Advance (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (25%) of powder per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	2.5 g protein equivalent (essential and non- essential amino acids)	14.6 g (sugars 1.3 g)	3.5 g (MCT 35%)	Nil	Milk protein-free	Proven whole protein intolerance, short bowel syndrome, intractable malabsorption, or other gastro- intestinal disorders where an elemental diet is indicated. Not suitable for child under 1 year	Neocate Advance powder: banana & vanilla 750 gram = £48.60; unflavoured 1000 gram = £61.40
Powder provides: protein equivalent 10 g, carbohydrate 58.5 g, fat 14 g, energy 1683 kJ (400 kcal)/100 g.									
Neocate® LCP (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (13.8%) of powder per 100 mL	279 kJ (67 kcal)	1.8 g protein equivalent (essential and non- essential amino acids)	7.2 g (sugars 650 mg)	3.4 g	Nil	Milk protein-free	Cows' milk allergy, multiple food protein intolerance, and conditions requiring an elemental diet	Neocate LCP powder: 400 gram = £29.56
Powder provides: protein equivalent 13 g, carbohydrate 52.5 g, fat 24.5 g, energy 2020 kJ (483 kcal)/100 g.									

**Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Amino acid-based formula** (product list continued)

Specialised formulas are suitable for infants from birth unless otherwise indicated.

Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Neocate <sup>®</sup> Spoon (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (38%) of powder per 97 g serving (37-g sachet diluted with 60 mL water)	733 kJ (175 kcal)	3 g protein equivalent (essential and non- essential amino acids)	24.9 g (sugars 4.6 g)	7 g	Nil	Milk protein-free	Cows' milk allergy, multiple food protein intolerance, and conditions requiring an elemental diet. Not suitable for child under 6 months.	Neocate Spoon powder: 555 gram = £41.25
Powder provides protein equivalent 8.2 g, carbohydrate 67.4 g, fat 18.8 g, energy 1981 kJ (472 kcal)/100 g.									
Nutramigen <sup>®</sup> Puramino (Mead Johnson Nutrition (UK) Ltd)	Standard dilution (13.6%) of powder per 100 mL	290 kJ (68 kcal)	1.89 g essential and non-essential amino acids	7.2 g	3.6 g	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free	For use in the management of severe protein intolerance, multiple food intolerance and other gastro-intestinal disorders where an amino acid based diet is specifically indicated for infants and young children.	Nutramigen PurAmino powder: 400 gram = £27.63
Powder provides: protein 13.9 g, carbohydrate 53 g, fat 26 g, energy 2100 kJ (500 kcal)/100 g.									
Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Hydrolysate formula									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
SMA Althéra <sup>®</sup> (Nestle Health Science)	Standard dilution (13.2%) of powder per 100 mL	280 kJ (67 kcal)	1.7 g whey hydrolysed	7.3 g (sugars 4 g)	3.4 g	Nil	Contains lactose	Complete nutritional support from birth to 3 years or supplementary feeding from 6 months to 3 years, in cow's milk protein allergy or multiple food protein allergies	SMA Althera powder: 450 gram = £10.68
Powder provides: protein 12.5 g, carbohydrate 55.5 g, fat 26 g, energy 2119 kJ (506 kcal)/100 g.									
Aptamil Pepti <sup>®</sup> 1 (Allergy) (Milupa Ltd)	Standard dilution (13.6%) of powder per 100 mL	280 kJ (67 kcal)	1.6 g whey hydrolysed	7.1 g (sugars 3.5 g)	3.5 g	600 mg	Contains lactose and fish oil	Established cows' milk protein intolerance, with or without secondary lactose intolerance	Aptamil Pepti 1 (Allergy) powder: 800 gram = £19.73; 400 gram = £9.87
Powder provides: protein 11.6 g, carbohydrate 52 g, fat 25.6 g, energy 2025 kJ (484 kcal)/100 g.									
Aptamil Pepti <sup>®</sup> 2 (Allergy) (Milupa Ltd)	Standard dilution (14.3%) of powder per 100 mL	285 kJ (68 kcal)	1.6 g whey hydrolysed	8 g (sugars 3.6 g)	3.1 g	600 mg	Contains lactose and fish oil	Established cows' milk protein allergy or intolerance. Not suitable for child under 6 months.	Aptamil Pepti 2 (Allergy) powder: 400 gram = £9.41; 800 gram = £18.82
Powder provides: protein 11.2 g, carbohydrate 56.1 g, fat 21.8 g, energy 1985 kJ (473 kcal)/100 g.									
Aptamil Pepti-Junior <sup>®</sup> (Nutricia Early Life Nutrition Ltd)	Standard dilution (12.8%) of powder per 100 mL	275 kJ (66 kcal)	1.8 g whey hydrolysed	6.8 g (sugars 1.1 g)	3.5 g	Nil	Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Disaccharide and/or whole protein intolerance, or where amino acids and peptides are indicated in conjunction with medium chain triglycerides.	Aptamil Pepti-Junior powder: 450 gram = £13.36
Powder provides: protein 14 g, carbohydrate 53.4 g, fat 27.3 g, energy 2155 kJ (515 kcal)/100 g.									

Infatrin® Peptisorb (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	2.6 g whey protein hydrolysate	10.3 g (sugars 2.7 g)	5.4 g (MCT 50%)	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Disease-related malnutrition, intractable malabsorption, proven inflammatory bowel disease, short bowel syndrome, bowel fistula, and intolerance to whole protein feeds in child from birth to 18 months or body-weight up to 9 kg	Infatrin Peptisorb liquid: 200 ml = £3.67
Nutramigen® 1 with LGG (Mead Johnson Nutrition (UK) Ltd)	Standard dilution (13.5%) of powder per 100 mL	280 kJ (68 kcal)	1.9 g casein hydrolysed	7.5 g	3.4 g	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free	For the dietary management of cow's milk allergy with/without lactose intolerance.	Nutramigen 1 with LGG powder: 400 gram = £11.21
Powder provides: protein 14 g, carbohydrate 55 g, fat 25 g, energy 2100 kJ (500 kcal)/100 g.									
Nutramigen® 2 with LGG (Mead Johnson Nutrition (UK) Ltd)	Standard dilution (14.6%) of powder per 100 mL	285 kJ (68 kcal)	1.7 g casein hydrolysed	8.6 g	2.9 g	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free	For the dietary management of cow's milk allergy with/without lactose intolerance. Not suitable for child under 6 months.	Nutramigen 2 with LGG powder: 400 gram = £11.21
Powder provides: protein 12 g, carbohydrate 62 g, fat 20 g, energy 2000 kJ (480 kcal)/100 g.									
Pepdite® (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (15%) of powder per 100 mL	297 kJ (71 kcal)	2.1 g protein equivalent (non-milk hydrolysate)	7.8 g (sugars 700 mg)	3.5 g	Nil	Lactose-free Contains meat (pork) and soya derivatives	Disaccharide and/or whole protein intolerance	Pepdite powder: 400 gram = £19.69
Powder provides: protein equivalent 13.8 g, carbohydrate 52 g, fat 23.2 g, energy 1977 kJ (472 kcal)/100 g.									
Pepdite® 1+ (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (22.8%) of powder per 100 mL	423 kJ (100 kcal)	3.1 g protein equivalent (non-milk hydrolysate, essential amino acids)	13 g (sugars 1.2 g)	3.9 g (MCT 35%)	Nil	Lactose-free Contains meat (pork) and soya derivatives	Disaccharide and/or whole protein intolerance, or where amino acids or peptides are indicated in conjunction with medium chain triglycerides. Not suitable for child under 1 year.	Pepdite 1+ powder: 400 gram = £20.67
Powder provides: protein equivalent 13.8 g, carbohydrate 57 g, fat 17.3 g, energy 1844 kJ (439 kcal)/100 g.									
Pregestimil® Lipil (Mead Johnson Nutrition (UK) Ltd)	Standard dilution (13.5%) of powder per 100 mL	280 kJ (68 kcal)	1.89 g casein hydrolysed	6.9 g	3.8 g (MCT 54%)	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free	Disaccharide and/or whole protein intolerance, or where amino acids or peptides are indicated in conjunction with medium chain triglycerides.	Pregestimil LIPIL powder: 400 gram = £12.43
Powder provides: protein 14 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat 28 g, energy 2100 kJ (500 kcal)/100 g.									
Similac® Alimentum (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Standard dilution (14%) of powder per 100 mL	283 kJ (67.6 kcal)	1.86 g casein hydrolysed	6.62 g (sugars 1.5 g)	3.75 g (MCT 33%)	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free Contains meat derivatives	Cows' milk protein allergy and other conditions where an extensively hydrolysed formula is indicated.	Similac Alimentum powder: 400 gram = £9.10
Powder provides: protein equivalent 14.4 g, carbohydrate 51.4 g, fat 29.1 g, energy 2196 kJ (525 kcal)/100 g.									

Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Residual lactose formula									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Enfamil® O-Lac (Mead Johnson Nutrition (UK) Ltd)	Standard dilution (13%) of powder per 100 mL	280 kJ (68 kcal)	1.42 g cows' milk	7.2 g	3.7 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Proven lactose intolerance	Enfamil O-Lac powder: 400 gram = £5.28
Powder provides: protein 10.9 g, carbohydrate 55 g, fat 28 g, energy 2200 kJ (524 kcal)/100 g.									
Galactomin 17® (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (13.6%) of powder per 100 mL	295 kJ (70 kcal)	1.7 g protein equivalent (cows' milk)	7.5 g (sugars 1.4 g)	3.7 g	Nil	Residual lactose	Proven lactose intolerance in pre-school children, galactosaemia, and galactokinase deficiency.	Galactomin 17 powder: 400 gram = £17.62
Powder provides: protein equivalent 12.3 g, carbohydrate 55.3 g, fat 27.2 g, energy 2155 kJ (515 kcal)/100 g.									
SMA® LF (SMA Nutrition)	Standard dilution (13%) of powder per 100 mL	281 kJ (67 kcal)	1.5 g casein, whey	7.2 g (sugars 2.6 g)	3.6 g	Nil	Residual lactose	Proven lactose intolerance	SMA LF powder: 430 gram = £5.34
Powder provides: protein 12 g, carbohydrate 55.6 g, fat 28 g, energy 2185 kJ (522 kcal)/100 g.									
Specialised formulas: Infant and child: MCT-enhanced formula									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Lipistart® (Vitaflo International Ltd)	Standard dilution (15%) of powder per 100 mL	282 kJ (68 kcal)	2.1 g protein equivalent (whey, soya)	8.3 g (sugars 700 mg)	3.1 g (MCT 81%)	Nil	Residual lactose	Dietary management of fat malabsorption, long-chain fatty acid oxidation disorders, and other disorders requiring a high MCT, low LCT formula.	Lipistart powder: 400 gram = £20.51
Powder provides: protein equivalent 13.7 g, carbohydrate 55.3 g, fat 20.6 g, energy 1883 kJ (450 kcal)/100 g.									
MCT Peptide® (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (15%) of powder per 100 mL	286 kJ (68 kcal)	2 g protein equivalent (non-milk peptides, essential amino acids)	8.8 g (sugars 1.2 g)	2.7 g (MCT 75%)	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free Contains meat (pork) and soya derivatives	Disorders in which a high intake of MCT is beneficial	MCT Peptide powder: 400 gram = £21.42
Powder provides: protein equivalent 13.8 g, carbohydrate 59 g, fat 18 g, energy 1903 kJ (453 kcal)/100 g.									
MCT Peptide® +1 (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (20%) of powder per 100 mL	381 kJ (91 kcal)	2.8 g protein equivalent (non-milk peptides, essential amino acids)	11.8 g (sugars 1.6 g)	3.6 g (MCT 75%)	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free Contains meat (pork) and soya derivatives	Disorders in which a high intake of MCT is beneficial Not suitable for child under 1 year.	MCT Peptide 1+ powder: 400 gram = £21.42
Powder provides: protein equivalent 13.8 g, carbohydrate 59 g, fat 18 g, energy 1903 kJ (453 kcal)/100 g.									

Monogen <sup>®</sup> (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (17.5%) of powder per 100 mL	310 kJ (74 kcal)	2.2 g protein equivalent (whey)	12 g (sugars 1.2 g)	1.9 g (MCT 80 %)	Nil	Residual lactose Supplementation with essential fatty acids may be needed	Long-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency (LCAD), carnitine palmitoyl transferase deficiency (CPTD), primary and secondary lipoprotein lipase deficiency, chylothorax, and lymphangiectasia	Monogen powder: 400 gram = £21.29
Powder provides: protein equivalent 12.5 g, carbohydrate 68 g, fat 11 g, energy 1769 kJ (420 kcal)/100 g.									
<b>Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Soya-based formula</b>									
Wysoy <sup>®</sup> (SMA Nutrition)	Standard dilution (13.2%) of powder per 100 mL	280 kJ (67 kcal)	1.8 g soya protein isolate	6.9 g (sugars 2.5 g)	3.6 g	Nil	Lactose-free	Proven lactose and associated sucrose intolerance in pre-school children, galactokinase deficiency, galactosaemia, and proven whole cows' milk sensitivity.	SMA Wysoy powder: 860 gram = £10.54
Powder provides: protein 14 g, carbohydrate 54 g, fat 27 g, energy 2155 kJ (515 kcal)/100 g.									
<b>Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Low calcium formula</b>									
Locasol <sup>®</sup> (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (13.1%) of powder per 100 mL	278 kJ (66 kcal)	1.9 g cows' milk	7 g (sugars 6.9 g)	3.4 g	Nil	Contains lactose Calcium less than 7 mg/100 mL No added vitamin D	Conditions of calcium intolerance requiring restriction of calcium and vitamin D intake	Locasol powder: 400 gram = £24.50
Powder provides: protein 14.6 g, carbohydrate 53.7 g, fat 26.1 g, energy 2125 kJ (508 kcal)/100 g.									
<b>Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Fructose-based formula</b>									
Galactomin 19 <sup>®</sup> (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (12.9%) of powder per 100 mL	288 kJ (69 kcal)	1.9 g protein equivalent (cows' milk)	6.4 g (fructose 6.3 g)	4 g	Nil	Residual lactose, galactose and glucose	Conditions of glucose plus galactose intolerance	Galactomin 19 powder: 400 gram = £46.37
Powder provides: protein equivalent 14.6 g, carbohydrate 49.7 g, fat 30.8 g, energy 2233 kJ (534 kcal)/100 g.									
<b>Specialised formulas: Infant and child: Pre-thickened infant feeds</b>									
Not to be used for a period of more than 6 months; not to be used in conjunction with any other feed thickener or antacid products.									
Enfamil <sup>®</sup> AR (Mead Johnson Nutrition (UK) Ltd)	Standard dilution (13.5%) of powder per 100 mL	285 kJ (68 kcal)	1.7 g cows' milk	7.6 g (lactose 4.6 g)	3.5 g	Nil	Contains lactose, pregelatinised rice starch	Significant gastro-oesophageal reflux	Enfamil AR powder: 400 gram = £3.95
Powder provides: protein 12.5 g, carbohydrate 56 g, fat 26 g, energy 2093 kJ (500 kcal)/100 g.									



## Specialised formulas for specific clinical conditions

Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Alicalm® (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (30%) of powder per 100 mL	567 kJ (135 kcal)	4.5 g caseinate whey	17.4 g (sugars 3.2 g)	5.3 g	Nil	Residual lactose	Crohn's disease Not suitable for child under 1 year; use as nutritional supplement only in children 1–6 years.	Alicalm oral powder: 400 gram = £22.53
Powder provides: protein 15 g, carbohydrate 58 g, fat 17.5 g, energy 1889 kJ (450 kcal)/100 g.									
Forticare® (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip feed) per 100 mL	675 kJ (160 kcal)	9 g cows' milk	19.1 g (sugars 13.6 g)	5.3 g	2.1 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Nutritional supplement in patients with lung cancer undergoing chemotherapy, or with pancreatic cancer Not suitable in child under 3 years	Forticare liquid: cappuccino, orange & lemon, peach & ginger 500 ml = £9.40
Heparon® Junior (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (18%) of powder per 100 mL	363 kJ (86 kcal)	2 g cows' milk	11.6 g (sugars 2.9 g)	3.6 g	Nil	Contains lactose Electrolytes/100 mL: Na <sup>+</sup> 0.56 mmol K <sup>+</sup> 1.9 mmol Ca <sup>2+</sup> 2.3 mmol P <sup>+</sup> 1.6 mmol	Enteral feed or nutritional supplement for children with acute or chronic liver failure	Heparon Junior powder: 400 gram = £22.70
Powder provides: protein 11.1 g, carbohydrate 64.2 g, fat 19.9 g, energy 2016 kJ (480 kcal)/100 g.									
KetoCal® (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (20%) of powder per 100 mL	602 kJ (146 kcal)	3.1 g cows' milk with additional amino acids	600 mg (sugars 120 mg)	14.6 g (LCT 100 %)	Nil	Electrolytes/100 mL: Na <sup>+</sup> 4.3 mmol K <sup>+</sup> 4.1 mmol Ca <sup>2+</sup> 2.15 mmol P <sup>+</sup> 2.77 mmol	Enteral feed or nutritional supplement as part of ketogenic diet in management of epilepsy resistant to drug therapy, in children over 1 year, only on the advice of secondary care physician with experience of ketogenic diet.	KetoCal 4:1 powder: unflavoured, vanilla 300 gram = £31.96
Powder provides: protein 15.25 g, carbohydrate 3 g, fat 73 g, energy 3011 kJ (730 kcal)/100 g.									
KetoCal® 3:1 (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (9.5%) of powder per 100 mL	276 kJ (66 kcal)	1.5 g	680 mg (sugars 570 mg)	6.4 g	Nil	Electrolytes/100 mL: Na <sup>+</sup> 1.3 mmol K <sup>+</sup> 2.4 mmol Ca <sup>2+</sup> 2 mmol P <sup>+</sup> 1.7 mmol	Enteral feed or nutritional supplement as part of ketogenic diet in management of drug resistant epilepsy or other conditions for which a ketogenic diet is indicated in children from birth to 6 years; as a nutritional supplement in children over 6 years.	KetoCal 3:1 powder: 300 gram = £30.93
Powder provides: protein 15.3 g, carbohydrate 7.2 g, fat 67.7 g, energy 2927 kJ (699 kcal)/100 g.									
KetoCal® 4:1 LQ (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	620 kJ (150 kcal)	3.09 g casein and whey with additional amino acids	610 mg (sugars 230 mg)	14.8 g (LCT 100 %)	1.12 g	Residual lactose Electrolytes/100 mL: Na <sup>+</sup> 4.9 mmol K <sup>+</sup> 4.7 mmol Ca <sup>2+</sup> 2.4 mmol P <sup>+</sup> 3.1 mmol	Enteral feed or nutritional supplement as part of ketogenic diet in management of drug resistant epilepsy or other conditions for which a ketogenic diet is indicated in children 1–10 years; as a nutritional supplement in children over 10 years.	KetoCal 4:1LQ liquid: unflavoured, vanilla 200 ml = £4.56

Kindergen® (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (20%) of powder per 100 mL	421 kJ (101 kcal)	1.5 g whey protein	11.8 g (sugars 1.2 g)	5.3 g (LCT 93 %)	Nil	Electrolytes/100 mL: Na <sup>+</sup> 2 mmol K <sup>+</sup> 0.6 mmol Ca <sup>2+</sup> 2.8 mmol P <sup>-</sup> 3 mmol Low Vitamin A	Enteral feed or nutritional supplement for children with chronic renal failure receiving peritoneal rapid overnight dialysis.	Kindergen powder: 400 gram = £30.47
Powder provides: protein 7.5 g, carbohydrate 59 g, fat 26.3 g, energy 2104 kJ (504 kcal)/100 g.									
Modulen IBD® (Nestle Health Science)	Standard dilution (20%) of powder (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	3.6 g casein	11 g (sugars 3.98 g)	4.7 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose	Crohn's disease active phase, and in remission if malnourished	Modulen IBD powder: 400 gram = £15.59
Powder provides: protein 18 g, carbohydrate 54 g, fat 23 g, energy 2070 kJ (500 kcal)/100 g.									
ProSure® (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Liquid (sip or tube feed) per 100 mL	536 kJ (127 kcal)	6.65 g cows' milk	18.3 g (sugars 2.95 g)	2.56 g	2.07 g	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains fish oil	Nutritional supplement for patients with pancreatic cancer. Not suitable for child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1-4 years.	ProSure liquid: 220 ml = £3.47
Renamil® (Stanningley Pharma Ltd)	Powder (sip or tube feed when reconstituted) per 100 g	2003 kJ (477 kcal)	4.6 g cows' milk	70.8 g	19.3 g	Nil	Contains lactose Gluten-free Electrolytes/100 g: Na <sup>+</sup> 1.04 mmol K <sup>+</sup> 0.13 mmol Ca <sup>2+</sup> 10.22 mmol P <sup>-</sup> 1.06 mmol Contains no vitamin A or vitamin D	Enteral feed or nutritional supplement for adults and children over 1 year with chronic renal failure.	Renamil powder: 1000 gram = £25.40
Renapro® (Stanningley Pharma Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	1580 kJ (372 kcal)	90 g whey protein	800 mg	1 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Electrolytes/100 g: Na <sup>+</sup> 23 mmol K <sup>+</sup> 2 mmol Ca <sup>2+</sup> 4.99 mmol P <sup>-</sup> 4.84 mmol	Nutritional supplement for biochemically proven hypoproteinaemia and patients undergoing dialysis. Not suitable for child under 1 year.	Renapro powder: 600 gram = £69.60
Powder provides: protein 18 g, energy 316 kJ (74 kcal)/20-g sachet.									
Renastart® (Vitafo International Ltd)	Standard dilution (20%) of powder per 100 mL	414 kJ (99 kcal)	1.5 g cows' milk soya	12.5 g (sugars 1.3 g)	4.8 g	Nil	Contains lactose Electrolytes/100 mL: Na <sup>+</sup> 2.1 mmol K <sup>+</sup> 0.6 mmol Ca <sup>2+</sup> 0.6 mmol P <sup>-</sup> 0.6 mmol	Dietary management of renal failure in child from birth to 10 years.	Renastart powder: 400 gram = £27.92
Powder provides: protein 7.5 g, carbohydrate 62.5 g, fat 23.8 g, energy 2071 kJ (494 kcal)/100 g.									

**Table 4 Feed supplements****High-energy supplements****High-energy supplements: carbohydrate**

Flavoured carbohydrate supplements are not suitable for child under 1 year; liquid supplements should be diluted before use in child under 5 years.

Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Maxijul® Super Soluble (Nutricia Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	1615 kJ (380 kcal)	Nil	95 g Glucose polymer (sugars 8.6 g)	Nil	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high or readily available carbohydrate supplement.	Maxijul Super Soluble powder: 528 gram = £6.80; 25000 gram = £163.10; 200 gram = £2.73
Polycal® (Nutricia Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	1630 kJ (384 kcal)	Nil	96 g Maltodextrin (sugars 6 g)	Nil	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high or readily available carbohydrate supplement.	Polycal powder: 400 gram = £4.53
	Liquid per 100 mL	1050 kJ (247 kcal)	Nil	61.9 g Maltodextrin (sugars 12.2 g)	Nil	Nil		Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high or readily available carbohydrate supplement. Not suitable for child under 3 years.	Polycal liquid: neutral, orange 200 ml = £1.81
S.O.S.® (Vitaflor International Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	1590 kJ (380 kcal)	Nil	95 g (sugars 9 g)	Nil	Nil		For use as an emergency regimen in the dietary management of inborn errors of metabolism in adults and children from birth.	S.O.S. 10 oral powder 21g sachets 30 sachet = £7.74; S.O.S. 20 oral powder 42g sachets 30 sachet = £15.48; S.O.S. 25 oral powder 52g sachets 30 sachet = £19.15; S.O.S. 15 oral powder 31g sachets 30 sachet = £11.43
Contents of each sachet should be reconstituted with water to a total volume of 200 ml									
Vitajoule® (Vitaflor International Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	1590 kJ (380 kcal)	Nil	95 g Dried glucose syrup (sugars 9 g)	Nil	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high or readily available carbohydrate supplement. Flavoured carbohydrate supplements are not suitable for child under 1 year; liquid supplements should be diluted before use in child under 5 years.	Vitajoule powder: 500 gram = £4.63

**High-energy supplements: fat**

Liquid supplements should be diluted before use in child under 5 years

Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Calogen® (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (emulsion) per 100 mL	1850 kJ (450 kcal)	Nil	100 mg	50 g (LCT 100 %)	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat (or fat and carbohydrate) supplement. Liquid supplements should be diluted before use in child under 5 years.	Calogen emulsion: banana 500 ml = £11.33; neutral 200 ml = £4.61; 500 ml = £11.33; strawberry 200 ml = £4.61; 500 ml = £11.33
Fresubin® 5 kcal Shot (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Liquid (emulsion) per 100 mL	2100 kJ (500 kcal)	Nil	4.0 g (sucrose)	53.8 g	400 mg	Gluten-free Lactose-free	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat (or fat and carbohydrate) supplement. Liquid supplements should be diluted before use in child under 5 years. Not suitable for child under 3 years.	Fresubin 5kcal shot drink: lemon, neutral 480 ml = £11.84
Liquigen® (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid (emulsion) per 100 mL	1850 kJ (450 kcal)	Nil	Nil	50 g (MCT 97 %) Fractionated coconut oil	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free	Steatorrhoea associated with cystic fibrosis of the pancreas, intestinal lymphangiectasia, intestinal surgery, chronic liver disease, liver cirrhosis, other proven malabsorption syndromes, ketogenic diet in epilepsy, and in type 1 lipoproteinaemia Not suitable for child under 1 year	Liquigen emulsion: 250 ml = £9.71
Medium-chain Triglyceride (MCT) Oil (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid per 100 mL	3515 kJ (855 kcal)	Nil	Nil	MCT 100 %	Nil		Nutritional supplement for steatorrhoea associated with cystic fibrosis of the pancreas, intestinal lymphangiectasia, intestinal surgery, chronic liver disease and liver cirrhosis, other proven malabsorption syndromes, ketogenic diet in management of epilepsy, type 1 hyperlipoproteinaemia	MCT oil: 500 ml = £15.40
FAT AND CARBOHYDRATE									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Duocal® Super Soluble (Nutricia Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	2061 kJ (492 kcal)	Nil	72.7 g (sugars 6.5 g)	22.3 g (MCT 35 %)	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat (or fat and carbohydrate) supplement.	Duocal Super Soluble powder: 400 gram = £18.96
Energivit® (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (15%) of powder per 100 mL	309 kJ (74 kcal)	Nil	10 g (sugars 900 mg)	3.75 g	Nil	Lactose-free With vitamins, minerals, and trace elements	For children requiring additional energy, vitamins, minerals, and trace elements following a protein-restricted diet	Energivit powder: 400 gram = £23.06
Powder provides: carbohydrate 66.7 g, fat 25 g, energy 2059 kJ (492 kcal)/100 g.									

High-energy supplements: protein									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
ProSource® Jelly (Nutrinovo Ltd)	Semi-solid per 100 mL	315 kJ (75 kcal)	16.9 g collagen protein hydrolysate whey protein isolate	Less than 1 g	Nil	Less than 1 g	Gluten-free Lactose-free Contains porcine derivatives	Hypoproteinaemia Not recommended for child under 3 years	ProSource jelly: fruit punch, orange 118 ml = £1.87
Protifar® (Nutricia Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	1580 kJ (373 kcal)	88.5 g cows' milk	less than 1.5 g	1.6 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Electrolytes/100 mL: Na <sup>+</sup> 1.3 mmol K <sup>+</sup> 1.28 mmol Ca <sup>2+</sup> 33.75 mmol P <sup>-</sup> 22.58 mmol	Nutritional supplement for use in biochemically proven hypoproteinaemia.	Protifar powder: 225 gram = £9.20
Powder provides: protein 2.2 g per 2.5 g scoopful.									
PROTEIN AND CARBOHYDRATE									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Dialamine® (Nutricia Ltd)	Standard dilution (20%) of powder per 100 mL	264 kJ (62 kcal)	4.3 g protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids)	11.2 g (sugars 10.2 g)	Nil	Nil	Contains vitamin C	Hypoproteinaemia, chronic renal failure, wound fistula leakage with excessive protein loss, conditions requiring a controlled nitrogen intake, and haemodialysis. Not suitable for child under 6 months.	Dialamine powder: 400 gram = £77.02
Powder provides: protein equivalent 25 g, carbohydrate 65 g, vitamin C 125 mg, energy 1530 kJ (360 kcal)/100 g.									
ProSource® Liquid (Nutrinovo Ltd)	Liquid per 30 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	10 g collagen protein whey protein isolate	15 g (sugars 8 g)	Nil	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free May contain porcine derivatives	Biochemically proven hypoproteinaemia Not recommended for child under 3 years.	ProSource liquid 30ml sachets: citrus berry, lemon, orange creme, neutral 100 sachet = £101.16
ProSource® Plus (Nutrinovo Ltd)	Liquid per 30 mL	420 kJ (100 kcal)	15 g collagen protein whey protein isolate	11 g (sugars 10 g)	Nil	Nil	Gluten-free Lactose-free May contain porcine derivatives	Hypoproteinaemia Not recommended for child under 3 years	ProSource Plus liquid 30ml sachets neutral: 100 sachet = £143.90



PROTEIN, FAT, AND CARBOHYDRATE									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Calogen <sup>®</sup> Extra (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid per 100 mL	1650 kJ (400 kcal)	5 g cows' milk	4.5 g (sugars 3.5 g)	40.3 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose Contains vitamins and minerals	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat or carbohydrate (with protein) supplement. Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-6 years. May require dilution for child 3-5 years.	Calogen Extra emulsion: neutral, strawberry 200 ml = £4.98
Calogen <sup>®</sup> Extra Shots (Nutricia Ltd)	Liquid per 100 mL	1650 kJ (400 kcal)	5 g cows' milk	4.5 g (sugars 3.5 g)	40.3 g	Nil	Gluten-free Residual lactose With vitamins and minerals	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat or carbohydrate (with protein) supplement. Not suitable for child under 3 years; use with caution in child 3-6 years. May require dilution for child 3-5 years.	Calogen Extra Shots emulsion: neutral, strawberry 240 ml = £5.75
Calshake <sup>®</sup> (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)	Powder per 87 g	1841 kJ (439 kcal)	4.1 g cows' milk	56.4 g (sugars 20 g)	22 g	Nil	Contains lactose Gluten-free	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat or carbohydrate (with protein) supplement. Not suitable for child under 1 year.	Calshake powder: banana, neutral, strawberry, vanilla 609 gram = £17.71; chocolate 630 gram = £17.71
Powder: one sachet reconstituted with 240 mL whole milk provides approx. 2 kcal/mL and protein 12 g.									
Enshake <sup>®</sup> (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	1893 kJ (450 kcal)	8.4 g cows' milk, soy protein isolate	69 g (sugars 14.5 g)	15.6 g	Nil	Residual lactose Contains vitamins and minerals	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat or carbohydrate (with protein) supplement. Not suitable for child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1-6 years.	Enshake oral powder 96.5g sachets: banana, chocolate, strawberry, vanilla 6 sachet = £14.68
Powder: 96.5 g reconstituted with 240 mL whole milk provides approx. 2 kcal/mL and protein 16 g.									
MCT Procal <sup>®</sup> (Vitaflor International Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	2742 kJ (657 kcal)	12.5 g cows' milk	20.6 g (sugars 3.1 g)	63.1 g (MCT 99%)	Nil	Contains lactose	Dietary management of disorders of long-chain fatty acid oxidation, fat malabsorption, and other disorders requiring a low LCT, high MCT supplement. Not suitable for child under 1 year.	MCT procal oral powder 16g sachets: 30 sachet = £25.15
Powder 16 g provides: protein 2 g, carbohydrate 3.3 g, fat 10.1 g, energy 439 kJ (105 kcal).									

High-energy supplements: protein (product list continued)									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Pro-Cal® (Vitafo International Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	2787 kJ (667 kcal)	13.6 g cows' milk	28.2 g (sugars 16 g)	55.5 g	Nil	Contains lactose Gluten-free	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat or carbohydrate (with protein) supplement. Not suitable for child under 1 year; use with caution in child 1-5 years.	Pro-Cal powder: 12500 gram = £224.84; 375 gram = £16.76; 510 gram = £15.53; 1500 gram = £31.64; 3000 gram = £74.68
Powder 15 g provides: protein 2 g, carbohydrate 4.2 g, fat 8.3 g, energy 418 kJ (100 kcal).									
Pro-Cal® Shot (Vitafo International Ltd)	Liquid per 100 mL	1385 kJ (334 kcal)	6.7 g cows' milk	13.4 g (sugars 13.3 g)	28.2 g	Nil	Contains lactose Gluten-free Contains soya	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat or carbohydrate (with protein) supplement. Not suitable for child under 3 years.	Pro-Cal: shot starter pack 360 ml = £7.37; shot banana, shot neutral, shot strawberry 720 ml = £14.71
Scandishake® Mix (Nutricia Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	2099 kJ (500 kcal)	4.7 g cows' milk	65 g (sugars 14.3 g)	24.7 g	Nil	Gluten-free Contains lactose	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat or carbohydrate (with protein) supplement. Not suitable for child under 3 years.	Scandishake Mix oral powder 85g sachets: banana, caramel, chocolate, strawberry, unflavoured, vanilla 6 sachet = £15.54
Powder: 85 g reconstituted with 240 mL whole milk provides: protein 11.7 g, carbohydrate 66.8 g, fat 30.4 g, energy 2457 kJ (588 kcal).									
Vitasavoury® (Vitafo International Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	2562 kJ (619 kcal)	12 g cows' milk	22.5 g (sugars 1.4 g)	52 g	6.4 g	Contains lactose Contains soya (chicken flavour)	Disease-related malnutrition, malabsorption states, or other conditions requiring fortification with a high fat or carbohydrate (with protein) supplement. Not suitable for child under 3 years.	Vitasavoury powder: chicken, golden vegetable, leek & potato, mushroom 500 g = £20.08
Fibre, vitamin, and mineral supplements									
High-fibre supplements									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
Resource® Optifibre® (Nestle Health Science)	Powder per 100 g	323 kJ (76 kcal)	Nil	19 g guar gum, partially hydrolysed	Nil	78 g	Gluten-free Lactose-free	Borderline substances standard ACBS indications p. 1012 except dysphagia Not suitable for child under 5 years	Resource Optifibre powder: 80 gram = £4.33; 250 gram = £10.64
Vitamin and Mineral supplements									
Product	Formulation	Energy	Protein	Carbohydrate	Fat	Fibre	Special Characteristics	ACBS Indications	Presentation & Flavour
FruitiVits® (Vitafo International Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	133 kJ (33 kcal)	Nil	8.3 g (sugars 400 mg)	Less than 100 mg	3.3 g		Vitamin, mineral, and trace element supplement in children 3-10 years with restrictive therapeutic diets	FruitiVits oral powder 6g sachets: 30 sachet = £68.00
Paediatric Seravit® (Nutricia Ltd)	Powder per 100 g	1275 kJ (300 kcal)	Nil	75 g (sugars 6.75 g)	Nil	Nil	Pineapple flavour not suitable for child under 6 months	Vitamin, mineral, and trace element supplement in infants and children with restrictive therapeutic diets.	Seravit Paediatric powder: unflavoured 200 gram = £18.78; pineapple 200 gram = £20.01

## Feed additives

### Special additives for conditions of intolerance

#### Colief®

- ▶ For the relief of symptoms associated with lactose intolerance in infants, provided that lactose intolerance is confirmed by the presence of reducing substances and/or excessive acid in stools, a low concentration of the corresponding disaccharide enzyme on intestinal biopsy or by breath hydrogen test or lactose intolerance test. For dosage and administration details, consult product literature.

LIQUID, lactase 50 000 units/g

**Colief 50,000units/g infant drops** (Forum Health Products Ltd)  
7 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.40

#### Fructose

- ▶ (Laevulose) For proven glucose/galactose intolerance

#### Glucose

- ▶ (Dextrose monohydrate) For use as an energy supplement in sucrose-isomaltase deficiency

#### VSL#3®

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for use under the supervision of a physician, for the maintenance of remission of ileoanal pouchitis induced by antibacterials in adults. For dosage and administration details, consult product literature.
- POWDER, containing 8 strains of live, freeze-dried, lactic acid bacteria. Contains traces of soya, gluten, and lactose.

**VSL#3 Probiotic Food Supplement oral powder 4.4g sachets** (Ferring Pharmaceuticals Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £34.36

### Feed thickeners and pre-thickened drinks

#### Carobel, Instant®

- ▶ For thickening feeds in the treatment of vomiting.

POWDER, carob seed flour.

**Instant Carobel powder** (Cow & Gate Ltd)

135 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.91

#### Multi-thick®

- ▶ For thickening of liquids and foods in dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 1 year except in cases of failure to thrive.

POWDER, modified maize starch, gluten- and lactose-free.

**Multi-thick powder** (Abbott Laboratories Ltd)

250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.83

#### Nutilis® Clear

- ▶ For thickening of liquids or foods in dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 3 years.

POWDER, maltodextrin, xanthan gum, guar gum, gluten- and lactose-free.

**Nutilis Clear powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

72 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £11.04 | 175 gram

(ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.46

#### Nutilis® Powder

- ▶ For thickening of foods in dysphagia. Not suitable for child under 3 years.

POWDER, carbohydrate 86 g, energy 1520 kJ (358 kcal)/100 g, modified maize starch, gluten- and lactose-free.

**Nutilis powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

240 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.00 | 300 gram

(ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.30

#### Resource® Thickened Drink

- ▶ For dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 1 year.

LIQUID, carbohydrate 22 g, energy: orange 382 kJ (90 kcal); apple 376 kJ (89 kcal)/100 mL. Gluten- and lactose-free.

**Resource Thickened Drink custard apple** (Nestle Health Science)

114 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £0.75

**Resource Thickened Drink custard orange** (Nestle Health Science)

114 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £0.75

**Resource Thickened Drink syrup apple** (Nestle Health Science)

114 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £0.75

**Resource Thickened Drink syrup orange** (Nestle Health Science)

114 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £0.75

#### Resource® ThickenUp®

- ▶ For thickening of foods in dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 1 year.

POWDER, modified maize starch. Gluten- and lactose-free.

**Resource ThickenUp powder** (Nestle Health Science)

227 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.66 | 337.5 gram

(ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £18.49

#### Resource® ThickenUp Clear

- ▶ For thickening of liquids or foods in dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 3 years.

POWDER, maltodextrin, xanthum gum, gluten- and lactose-free.

**Resource ThickenUp Clear powder** (Nestle Health Science)

28.8 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.28 | 127 gram

(ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.46

#### SLO Drinks®

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for patient hydration in the dietary management of dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 3 years.

POWDER, carbohydrate content varies with flavour and chosen consistency (3 consistencies available), see product literature.

**SLO Drink 1 oral powder blackcurrant** (SLO Drinks Ltd)

25 cup (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.50

**SLO Drink 1 oral powder orange** (SLO Drinks Ltd)

25 cup (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.50

**SLO Drink 2 oral powder blackcurrant** (SLO Drinks Ltd)

25 cup (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.50

**SLO Drink 2 oral powder orange** (SLO Drinks Ltd)

25 cup (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.50

#### SLO Milkshakes®

- ▶ Nutritional supplement in the dietary management of dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 3 years.
- POWDER, carbohydrate content varies with flavour and chosen consistency (2 consistencies available), see product literature.

**SLO Milkshake+ 1 oral powder chocolate** (SLO Drinks Ltd)

7 × 50 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.88

**SLO Milkshake+ 1 oral powder strawberry** (SLO Drinks Ltd)

7 × 50 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.88

**SLO Milkshake+ 2 oral powder chocolate** (SLO Drinks Ltd)

7 × 50 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.88

**SLO Milkshake+ 2 oral powder strawberry** (SLO Drinks Ltd)

7 × 50 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.88

#### Thick and Easy®

- ▶ For thickening of foods in dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 1 year except in cases of failure to thrive.

POWDER Modified maize starch

**Thick & Easy powder** (Fresenius Kabi Ltd)

225 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.21 | 900 gram

(ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £33.00 | 4540 gram (ACBS) •

NHS indicative price = £90.58

#### Thicken Aid®

- ▶ For thickening of foods in dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 1 year.

POWDER, modified maize starch, maltodextrin, gluten- and lactose-free.

**Thicken Aid powder** (M & A Pharmachem Ltd)

225 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.71 | 900 gram

(ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £22.40

#### Thixo-D®

- ▶ For thickening of foods in dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 1 year except in cases of failure to thrive.

POWDER, modified maize starch, gluten-free.

**Thixo-D powder** (Sutherland Health Ltd)

375 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.10

**Thixo-D Cal-Free powder** (Sutherland Health Ltd)

30 gram • NHS indicative price = £3.00

**Vitaquick®**

- For thickening of foods in dysphagia. Not suitable for children under 1 year except in cases of failure to thrive. POWDER. Modified maize starch.

**Vitaquick powder** (Vitaflo International Ltd)

300 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.55

## Flavouring preparations

**FlavourPac®**

- For use with Vitaflo's range of unflavoured protein substitutes for metabolic diseases; not suitable for child under 3 years. POWDER

**FlavourPac oral powder 4g sachets blackcurrant** (Vitaflo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £14.60

**FlavourPac oral powder 4g sachets lemon** (Vitaflo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £14.60

**FlavourPac oral powder 4g sachets orange** (Vitaflo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £14.60

**FlavourPac oral powder 4g sachets raspberry** (Vitaflo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £14.60

**FlavourPac oral powder 4g sachets tropical** (Vitaflo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £14.60

## Foods for special diets

## Gluten-free foods

- **ACBS indications:** established gluten-sensitive enteropathies including steatorrhoea due to gluten sensitivity, coeliac disease, and dermatitis herpetiformis.

**Bread****LOAVES****Barkat® Loaf**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Barkat gluten free brown rice bread** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.84

**Barkat gluten free par baked white bread sliced** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

300 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.21

**Barkat gluten free home fresh country loaf** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.43

**Barkat gluten free wheat free multigrain bread** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.84

**Barkat gluten free wholemeal bread sliced** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.05

**Barkat gluten free white rice bread** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.84

**Ener-G® Loaves**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Ener-G gluten free brown rice bread** (General Dietary Ltd)

474 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.47

**Ener-G gluten free tapioca bread** (General Dietary Ltd)

480 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.47

**Ener-G gluten free rice loaf** (General Dietary Ltd)

612 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.47

**Ener-G gluten free Seattle brown loaf** (General Dietary Ltd)

454 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.22

**Ener-G gluten free white rice bread** (General Dietary Ltd)

456 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.47

**Genius Gluten Free® Loaf**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Genius gluten free brown sandwich bread sliced** (Genius Foods Ltd)

535 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.80

**Genius gluten free white sandwich bread sliced** (Genius Foods Ltd)

535 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.80

**Glutafin® Loaves**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Glutafin gluten free fibre loaf sliced** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

300 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.89

**Glutafin gluten free white loaf sliced** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

300 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.89

**Glutafin® Select Loaves**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Glutafin gluten free Select fibre loaf sliced** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.43

**Glutafin gluten free Select fresh brown loaf sliced** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.43

**Glutafin gluten free Select fresh white loaf sliced** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.43

**Glutafin gluten free Select seeded loaf sliced** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.72

**Glutafin gluten free Select white loaf sliced** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.43

**Juvela® Loaf**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Juvela gluten free fresh fibre loaf sliced** (Hero UK Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.39

**Juvela gluten free fresh white loaf sliced** (Hero UK Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.69

**Juvela gluten free fibre loaf sliced** (Hero UK Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.54

**Juvela gluten free part baked loaf** (Hero UK Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.95

**Juvela gluten free part baked fibre loaf** (Hero UK Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.80

**Juvela gluten free loaf unsliced** (Hero UK Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.54

**Juvela gluten free fibre loaf unsliced** (Hero UK Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.54

**Lifestyle® Loaf**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Lifestyle gluten free brown bread sliced** (Ultraparm Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.82

**Lifestyle gluten free high fibre bread sliced** (Ultraparm Ltd)

400 gram • NHS indicative price = £2.82

**Lifestyle gluten free white bread sliced** (Ultraparm Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.82

**Warburtons® Loaf**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Warburtons gluten free brown bread sliced** (Warburtons Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.06

**Warburtons gluten free white bread sliced** (Warburtons Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.06

**Wellfoods® Loaf**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Wellfoods gluten free loaf sliced** (Wellfoods Ltd)

600 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.05

**Wellfoods gluten free loaf unsliced** (Wellfoods Ltd)

600 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.95

**BAGUETTES, BUNS AND ROLLS****Barkat® Baguettes and rolls**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Barkat gluten free par baked rolls** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.05

**Barkat gluten free par baked baguettes** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.05

**Ener-G® Rolls**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Ener-G gluten free dinner rolls** (General Dietary Ltd)

280 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.71

**Ener-G gluten free white round rolls** (General Dietary Ltd)

220 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.98

**Ener-G gluten free white long rolls** (General Dietary Ltd)

220 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.98

**Glutafin® Baguettes and rolls**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Glutafin gluten free baguettes** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

350 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.51

**Glutafin gluten free 4 white rolls** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.68

**Glutafin gluten free part baked 4 fibre rolls** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.68

**Glutafin® Select Rolls**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Glutafin gluten free part baked 4 white rolls** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.68

**Glutafin gluten free part baked 2 long white rolls** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.81

**Juvela® Rolls**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Juvela gluten free fresh fibre rolls** (Hero UK Ltd)

425 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.42

**Juvela gluten free fresh white rolls** (Hero UK Ltd)

425 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.42

**Juvela gluten free fibre bread rolls** (Hero UK Ltd)

425 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.77

**Juvela gluten free bread rolls** (Hero UK Ltd)

425 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.77

**Juvela gluten free part baked fibre bread rolls** (Hero UK Ltd)

375 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.94

**Juvela gluten free part baked white bread rolls** (Hero UK Ltd)

375 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.94

**Lifestyle® Rolls**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Lifestyle gluten free brown bread rolls** (Ultraparm Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.82

**Lifestyle gluten free high fibre bread rolls** (Ultraparm Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.82

**Lifestyle gluten free white bread rolls** (Ultraparm Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.82

**Proceli® Baguettes, buns and rolls**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Proceli gluten free part baked baguettes** (Ambe Ltd)

250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.24

**Warburtons® Baguettes and rolls**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Warburtons gluten free brown rolls** (Warburtons Ltd)

220 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.55

**Warburtons gluten free white rolls** (Warburtons Ltd)

220 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.55

**Wellfoods® Buns and rolls**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Wellfoods gluten free burger buns** (Wellfoods Ltd)

380 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.03

**Wellfoods gluten free rolls** (Wellfoods Ltd)

360 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.73

**Cereals****Juvela® Fibre flakes and oats**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Juvela gluten free fibre flakes** (Hero UK Ltd)

300 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.78

**Juvela gluten free flakes** (Hero UK Ltd)

300 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.78

**Juvela gluten free pure oats** (Hero UK Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.78

**Nairns® Porridge**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Nairn's gluten free oat porridge** (Nairn's Oatcakes Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.05

**Cookies and biscuits****Barkat® Biscuits**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Barkat gluten free digestive biscuits** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

175 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.66

**Barkat gluten free coffee biscuits** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.44

**Ener-G® Cookies**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Ener-G gluten free vanilla cookies** (General Dietary Ltd)

435 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.23

**Glutafin® Cookies and biscuits**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Glutafin gluten free tea biscuits** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.09

**Glutafin gluten free digestive biscuits** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.13

**Glutafin gluten free shortbread biscuits** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

100 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £1.73

**Juvela® Biscuits**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Juvela gluten free digestive biscuits** (Hero UK Ltd)

150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.05

**Juvela gluten free savoury biscuits** (Hero UK Ltd)

150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.82

**Juvela gluten free sweet biscuits** (Hero UK Ltd)

150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.88

**Juvela gluten free tea biscuits** (Hero UK Ltd)

150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.05

**Crackers, crispbreads, and breadsticks****Barkat® Crackers**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Barkat gluten free matzo crackers** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.59

**Glutafin® Crackers**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Glutafin gluten free crackers** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.46

**Glutafin gluten free mini crackers** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

175 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.96

**Juvela® Crispbread**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Juvela gluten free crispbread** (Hero UK Ltd)

200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.64

**Warburtons® Crackers**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Warburtons gluten free bran crackers** (Warburtons Ltd)

150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.34

**Flour mixes and xanthan gum****FLOUR MIXES****Barkat® Flour mix**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Barkat gluten free bread mix** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.94

**Barkat gluten free high fibre bread mix** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £9.13

**Barkat gluten free all purpose flour mix** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.74

**Finax® Flour mix**

GLUTEN-FREE



**Finax gluten free coarse flour mix** (Drossa Ltd)

900 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.85

**Finax gluten free fibre bread mix** (Drossa Ltd)

1000 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £10.14

**Finax gluten free flour mix** (Drossa Ltd)

900 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.85

**Glutafin Select® Flour mix**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Glutafin gluten free Select bread mix** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.66

**Glutafin gluten free Select fibre bread mix** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.66

**Glutafin gluten free Select multipurpose fibre mix** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.66

**Glutafin gluten free Select multipurpose white mix** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.66

**Glutafin® Flour mix**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Glutafin gluten free multipurpose white mix** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.66

**Heron Foods® Flour mix**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Heron Hi-Fibre gluten free organic bread mix** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £9.13

**Juvela® Flour mix**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Juvela gluten free fibre mix** (Hero UK Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.35

**Juvela gluten free harvest mix** (Hero UK Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.35

**Juvela gluten free mix** (Hero UK Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.35

**Mrs Crimbles® Flour mixes**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Mrs Crimbles' gluten free bread mix** (Stiletto Foods (UK) Ltd)

275 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £1.09

**Mrs Crimbles' gluten free pastry mix** (Stiletto Foods (UK) Ltd)

200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £1.09

**Orgran® Flour mix**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Orgran gluten free pizza & pastry mix** (Naturally Good Food Ltd)

375 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.80

**Orgran gluten free self-raising flour** (Naturally Good Food Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.10

**Orgran gluten free all purpose plain flour** (Naturally Good Food Ltd)

500 gram • NHS indicative price = £3.10

**Proceli® Flour mix**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Proceli gluten free white plain flour** (Ambe Ltd)

1000 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £9.95

**Pure® Flour mix**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Innovative Solutions Pure gluten free blended flour** (Innovative Solutions (UK) Ltd)

1000 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.52

**Innovative Solutions Pure gluten free brown rice flour** (Innovative Solutions (UK) Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £1.69

**Innovative Solutions Pure gluten free white rice flour** (Innovative Solutions (UK) Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £1.73

**Innovative Solutions Pure gluten free potato flour** (Innovative Solutions (UK) Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £1.73

**Innovative Solutions Pure gluten free tapioca flour** (Innovative Solutions (UK) Ltd)

500gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.42

**Innovative Solutions Pure gluten free brown teff flour** (Innovative Solutions (UK) Ltd)

1000 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.10

**Innovative Solutions Pure gluten free white teff flour** (Innovative Solutions (UK) Ltd)

1000 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.10

**Tobia® Flour mix**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Tobia Teff gluten free brown teff flour** (Tobia Teff UK Ltd)

1000 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.60

**Tobia Teff gluten free white teff flour** (Tobia Teff UK Ltd)

1000 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.60

**Tritamyl® Flour mix**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Tritamyl gluten free brown bread mix** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

1000 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.24

**Tritamyl gluten free flour mix** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

2000 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £14.54

**Tritamyl gluten free white bread mix** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

2000 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £14.54

**Wellfoods® Flour mix**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Wellfoods gluten free flour alternative** (Wellfoods Ltd)

1000 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.80

**XANTHAN GUM****Ener-G® Xanthan gum**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Ener-G xanthan gum** (General Dietary Ltd)

170 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.63

**Pure® Xanthan gum**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Innovative Solutions Pure xanthan gum** (Innovative Solutions (UK) Ltd)

100 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.85

**Pasta****Barkat® Pasta**

GLUTEN-FREE

**Barkat gluten free pasta animal shapes** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.99

**Barkat gluten free pasta macaroni** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.99

**Barkat gluten free pasta spaghetti** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.99

**Barkat gluten free pasta spirals** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.99

**Barkat gluten free pasta tagliatelle** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.99

**Barkat gluten free pasta buckwheat penne** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.98

**Barkat gluten free pasta buckwheat spirals** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)

250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.98

**BiAlimenta® Pasta**

GLUTEN-FREE

**BiAlimenta gluten free pasta formati misti** (Drossa Ltd)

3000 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £36.63

**BiAlimenta gluten free pasta** (Drossa Ltd)

Spirals, sagnette 500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.11

**Ener-G® Pasta**

GLUTEN-FREE

**General Dietary gluten free macaroni** (General Dietary Ltd)

454 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.03

**General Dietary gluten free spaghetti** (General Dietary Ltd)

454 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.03

**General Dietary gluten free vermicelli** (General Dietary Ltd)  
300 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.03

**Glutafin® Pasta**  
GLUTEN-FREE

**Glutafin gluten free pasta macaroni penne** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.73

**Glutafin gluten free pasta shells** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.73

**Glutafin gluten free pasta spirals** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.73

**Glutafin gluten free pasta long-cut spaghetti** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.73

**Juvela® Pasta**  
GLUTEN-FREE

**Juvela gluten free fibre penne** (Hero UK Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.61

**Juvela gluten free pasta fusilli** (Hero UK Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.21

**Juvela gluten free pasta lasagne** (Hero UK Ltd)  
250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.68

**Juvela gluten free pasta macaroni** (Hero UK Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.21

**Juvela gluten free pasta spaghetti** (Hero UK Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.21

**Juvela gluten free pasta tagliatelle** (Hero UK Ltd)  
250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.47

**Orgran® Pasta**  
GLUTEN-FREE

**Orgran gluten free pasta rice & corn lasagne** (Naturally Good Food Ltd)  
200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.13

**Orgran gluten free pasta rice & corn macaroni** (Naturally Good Food Ltd)  
250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.42

**Orgran gluten free pasta buckwheat spirals** (Naturally Good Food Ltd)  
250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.42

**Orgran gluten free pasta corn spirals** (Naturally Good Food Ltd)  
250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.42

**Orgran gluten free pasta brown rice spirals** (Naturally Good Food Ltd)  
250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.42

**Orgran gluten free pasta rice & corn spirals** (Naturally Good Food Ltd)  
250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.42

**Orgran gluten free pasta rice & millet spirals** (Naturally Good Food Ltd)  
250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.42

**Rizopia® Pasta**  
GLUTEN-FREE

**Rizopia gluten free organic brown rice pasta fusilli** (PGR Health Foods Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.72

**Rizopia gluten free organic brown rice pasta lasagne** (PGR Health Foods Ltd)  
375 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.72

**Rizopia gluten free organic brown rice pasta penne** (PGR Health Foods Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.72

**Rizopia gluten free organic brown rice pasta spaghetti** (PGR Health Foods Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.72

**Pizza bases**

**Barkat®, Pizza crust**  
GLUTEN-FREE

**Barkat gluten free brown rice pizza crust** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.10

**Barkat gluten free white rice pizza crust** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.10

**Glutafin® Pizza base**  
GLUTEN-FREE

**Glutafin gluten free pizza base** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)  
300 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.56

**Juvela® Pizza base**  
GLUTEN-FREE

**Juvela gluten free pizza base** (Hero UK Ltd)  
360 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.78

**Proceli® Pizza base**  
GLUTEN-FREE

**Proceli gluten free pizza base** (Ambe Ltd)  
250 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.90

**Wellfoods® Pizza base**  
GLUTEN-FREE

**Wellfoods gluten free pizza base** (Wellfoods Ltd)  
600 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £9.13

**Gluten- and wheat-free foods**

► **ACBS indications:** established gluten-sensitive enteropathies with coexisting established wheat sensitivity only.

**Ener-G® Bread loaves, rolls and pizza bases**  
GLUTEN-FREE, WHEAT-FREE

**Ener-G gluten free Seattle brown hamburger rolls** (General Dietary Ltd)  
320 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.08

**Ener-G gluten free Seattle brown hot dog rolls** (General Dietary Ltd)  
320 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.08

**Glutafin® Flour mix, fibre and crispbread**  
GLUTEN-FREE, WHEAT-FREE

**Glutafin gluten free crispbread** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)  
150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.25

**Glutafin gluten free bread mix** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.66

**Glutafin gluten free fibre bread mix** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.66

**Glutafin gluten free wheat free fibre mix** (Dr Schar UK Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.66

**Heron Foods® Flour mixes**  
GLUTEN-FREE, WHEAT-FREE

**Barkat gluten free bread and cake mix** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £9.13

**Heron gluten free organic bread mix** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £9.13

**Low-protein foods**

► **ACBS indications:** inherited metabolic disorders, renal or liver failure, requiring a low-protein diet.

**Bread**

**Ener-G® Rice bread**  
LOW PROTEIN

**Ener-G low protein rice bread** (General Dietary Ltd)  
600 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.60

**Juvela® Loaf and rolls**  
LOW PROTEIN

**Juvela gluten free loaf sliced** (Hero UK Ltd)  
400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.54

**Juvela low protein bread rolls** (Hero UK Ltd)  
350 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.52

**Juvela low protein loaf sliced** (Hero UK Ltd)  
400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.64

**Loprofin® Bread**  
LOW-PROTEIN

**Loprofin low protein part baked bread rolls** (Nutricia Ltd)  
260 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.34

**Loprofin low protein part baked loaf sliced** (Nutricia Ltd)  
400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £4.12

**PK Foods® Loaf**

LOW PROTEIN

**PK Foods low protein white bread sliced** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
300 gram • NHS indicative price = £4.84

**Cake, biscuits, and snacks**

- ▶ Not recommended for any child under 1 year.

**Juvela® Cookies**

LOW-PROTEIN

**Juvela low protein cinnamon cookies** (Hero UK Ltd)  
125 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.62

**Juvela low protein chocolate chip cookies** (Hero UK Ltd)  
110 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.62

**Juvela low protein orange cookies** (Hero UK Ltd)  
125 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.62

**Loprofin® Wafers**

LOW-PROTEIN

**Loprofin low protein crackers** (Nutricia Ltd)  
150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.79

**Loprofin low protein herb crackers** (Nutricia Ltd)  
150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £3.79

**PK Foods® Biscuits**

LOW-PROTEIN

**PK Foods Aminex low protein biscuits** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.14

**PK Foods Aminex low protein cookies** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.14

**PK Foods Aminex low protein rusks** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.14

**PK Foods low protein chocolate chip cookies** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.14

**PK Foods low protein cinnamon cookies** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.14

**PK Foods low protein crispbread** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
75 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £2.46

**PK Foods low protein orange cookies** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
150 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.14

**Promin® Cooked and flavoured pasta snack**

LOW-PROTEIN

**Promin low protein Snax salt & vinegar 25g sachets** (Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd)  
3 sachet • No NHS indicative price available | 12 sachet (ACBS)  
• NHS indicative price = £10.58

**Promin low protein Snax ready salted 25g sachets** (Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd)  
3 sachet • No NHS indicative price available | 12 sachet (ACBS)  
• NHS indicative price = £10.58

**Promin low protein Snax jalapeno 25g sachets** (Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd)  
3 sachet • No NHS indicative price available | 12 sachet (ACBS)  
• NHS indicative price = £10.58

**Promin low protein Snax cheese & onion 25g sachets** (Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd)  
3 sachet • No NHS indicative price available | 12 sachet (ACBS)  
• NHS indicative price = £10.58

**Taranis® Cake bars**

LOW-PROTEIN

**Taranis low protein apricot cake** (Lactalis Nutrition Sante)  
240 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.08

**Taranis low protein lemon cake** (Lactalis Nutrition Sante)  
240 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.08

**Taranis low protein pear cake** (Lactalis Nutrition Sante)  
240 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.08

**Vita Bite®**

- ▶ Not recommended for any child under 1 year.
- LOW PROTEIN.

Bar, protein 30 mg (less than 2.5 mg phenylalanine), carbohydrate 15.35 g, fat 8.4 g, energy 572 kJ (137 kcal)/25 g.

**VitaBite bar** (Vitaflo International Ltd)

175 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £9.11

**Vitaflo Choices® Mini crackers**

LOW-PROTEIN

**Vitaflo Choices mini crackers** (Vitaflo International Ltd)  
40 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £0.90

**Cereals**

**Loprofin® Breakfast cereal**

LOW-PROTEIN

**Loprofin low protein breakfast cereal flakes apple** (Nutricia Ltd)  
375 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.37

**Loprofin low protein breakfast cereal flakes chocolate** (Nutricia Ltd)  
375 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.37

**Loprofin low protein breakfast cereal flakes strawberry** (Nutricia Ltd)  
375 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.37

**Loprofin low protein breakfast cereal loops** (Nutricia Ltd)  
375 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.68

**Promin® Hot breakfast**

LOW-PROTEIN

**Promin low protein hot breakfast powder sachets apple & cinnamon** (Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd)  
342 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.09

**Promin low protein hot breakfast powder sachets banana** (Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd)  
342 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.09

**Promin low protein hot breakfast powder sachets chocolate** (Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd)  
342 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.09

**Promin low protein hot breakfast powder sachets original** (Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd)  
336 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.09

**Desserts**

**PK Foods® Jelly**

LOW-PROTEIN

**PK Foods low protein jelly mix dessert cherry** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
320 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.19

**PK Foods low protein jelly mix dessert orange** (Gluten Free Foods Ltd)  
320 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £8.19

**Promin® Desserts**

LOW-PROTEIN

**Promin low protein imitation rice pudding apple** (Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd)  
276 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.33

**Promin low protein imitation rice pudding banana** (Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd)  
276 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.33

**Promin low protein imitation rice pudding original** (Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd)  
276 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.33

**Promin low protein imitation rice pudding strawberry** (Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd)  
276 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.33

**Flour mixes and egg substitutes**

**Ener-G® Egg replacer**

LOW-PROTEIN

**Ener-G low protein egg replacer** (General Dietary Ltd)  
454 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.17

**Fate® Flour mix**

LOW PROTEIN

**Fate low protein all purpose mix** (Fate Special Foods)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.97



**Taranis low protein hazelnut spread** (Lactalis Nutrition Sante)  
230 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.87

## Nutritional supplements for metabolic diseases

### Glutaric aciduria (type 1)

#### **GA1 Anamix® Infant**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven glutaric aciduria (type 1) in children from birth to 3 years.  
POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except lysine, and low tryptophan) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL.

#### **GA1 Anamix Infant powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £40.79

#### **GA Gel®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for dietary management of type 1 glutaric aciduria in children 6 months–10 years.  
GEL, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except lysine, and low tryptophan) 10 g, carbohydrate 10.3 g, fat trace, energy 339 kJ (81 kcal)/24 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. To flavour unflavoured products, see FlavourPac p. 1040.

#### **GA gel oral powder 24g sachets** (Vitaflor International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £224.92

#### **GA1 Maxamaid®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of type 1 glutaric aciduria.  
POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except lysine, and low tryptophan) 25 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1311 kJ (309 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.  
Maxamaid products are generally intended for use in children 1–8 years.

#### **GA1 Maxamaid powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £103.00

#### **XLVS, TRY Glutaridon®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of type 1 glutaric aciduria in children and adults; requires additional source of vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.  
POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except lysine and tryptophan) 79 g, carbohydrate 4 g, energy 1411 kJ (332 kcal)/100 g.

#### **XLVS TRY Glutaridon powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £195.11

### Glycogen storage disease

#### **Corn flour and corn starch**

- ▶ For glycogen storage disease

#### **Glycosade®**

- ▶ A nutritional supplement for use in the dietary management of glycogen storage disease and other metabolic conditions where a constant supply of glucose is essential. Not suitable for use in children under 2 years.  
POWDER, protein 200 mg, carbohydrate (maize starch) 47.6 g, fat 100 mg, fibre less than 600 mg, energy 803 kJ (192 kcal)/60 g.

#### **Glycosade oral powder 60g sachets** (Vitaflor International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £118.21

### Homocystinuria or hypermethioninaemia

#### **HCU Anamix® Infant**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven vitamin B6 non-responsive homocystinuria or hypermethioninaemia in children from birth to 3 years.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL.

#### **HCU Anamix Infant powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £40.79

#### **HCU cooler® 15**

- ▶ A methionine-free protein substitute for use as a nutritional supplement in children over 3 years with homocystinuria.  
LIQUID, protein (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine) 15 g, carbohydrate 7 g, fat 500 mg, energy 393 kJ (92 kcal)/130 mL, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

#### **HCU orange cooler 15 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)

130 mL (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £11.87

#### **HCU Express® 15**

- ▶ A methionine-free protein substitute for use as a nutritional supplement in children over 8 years with homocystinuria.  
POWDER, protein (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine) 15 g, carbohydrate 3.8 g, fat 50 mg, energy 315 kJ (75.3 kcal)/25 g with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. To flavour unflavoured products, see FlavourPac p. 1040.

#### **HCU express 15 oral powder 25g sachets** (Vitaflor International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £349.27

#### **HCU Express® 20**

- ▶ A methionine-free protein substitute for use as a nutritional supplement in children over 8 years with homocystinuria.  
POWDER, protein (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine) 20 g, carbohydrate 4.7 g, fat 70 mg, energy 416 kJ (99 kcal)/34 g with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. To flavour unflavoured products, see FlavourPac p. 1040

#### **HCU express 20 oral powder 34g sachets** (Vitaflor International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £451.25

#### **HCU gel®**

- ▶ A methionine-free protein substitute for use as a nutritional supplement for the dietary management of children 1–10 years with homocystinuria.  
POWDER, protein (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine) 10 g, carbohydrate 10.3 g, fat 20 mg, energy 339 kJ (81 kcal)/24 g with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. To flavour unflavoured products, see FlavourPac p. 1040.

#### **HCU gel oral powder 24g sachets** (Vitaflor International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £224.86

#### **HCU Lophlex® LQ 20**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of homocystinuria in children over 3 years.  
LIQUID, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine) 20 g, carbohydrate 8.8 g, fat 440 mg, energy 509 kJ (120 kcal)/125 mL, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

#### **HCU Lophlex LQ 20 liquid** (Nutricia Ltd)

125 mL (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £16.82

#### **HCU LV®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of hypermethioninaemia or vitamin B6 non-responsive homocystinuria in children over 8 years.  
POWDER, protein (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine) 20 g, carbohydrate 2.5 g, fat 190 mg, energy 390 kJ (92 kcal)/27.8 g sachet, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

#### **HCU-LV oral powder 27.8g sachets tropical** (Nutricia Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £517.20

#### **HCU-LV oral powder 27.8g sachets unflavoured** (Nutricia Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £517.20



**XMET Homidon®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of hypermethioninaemia or homocystinuria in children and adults.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids, except methionine) 77 g, carbohydrate 4.5 g, fat nil, energy 1386 kJ (326 kcal)/100 g.

**XMET Homidon powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £195.11

**HCU Maxamum®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of hypermethioninaemia or homocystinuria.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine) 39 g, carbohydrate 34 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1260 kJ (297 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Maxamum products are generally intended for use in children over 8 years.

**HCU Maxamum powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £165.09

**Hyperlysinaemia****HYPER LYS Anamix® Infant**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven hyperlysinaemia in children from birth to 3 years.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except lysine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL.

**HYPER LYS Anamix Infant powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £40.79

**HYPER LYS Maxamaid®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of hyperlysinaemia.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except lysine) 25 g, carbohydrate 51 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1311 kJ (309 kcal)/100 g with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Maxamaid products are generally intended for use in children 1–8 years.

**HYPER LYS Maxamaid powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £103.00

**Isovaleric acidemia****IVA Anamix® Infant**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven isovaleric acidemia or other proven disorders of leucine metabolism in children from birth to 3 years.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except leucine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL.

**IVA Anamix Infant powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £40.79

**Maple syrup urine disease****MSUD Aid III®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease and related conditions in children and adults where it is necessary to limit the intake of branched chain amino acids.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 77 g, carbohydrate 4.5 g, fat nil, energy 1386 kJ (326 kcal)/100 g.

**MSUD Aid 111 powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £195.11

**MSUD Anamix® Infant**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven maple syrup urine disease in children from birth to 3 years.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL.

**MSUD Anamix Infant powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £40.79

**MSUD Anamix® Junior**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease in children 1–10 years.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 8.4 g, carbohydrate 11 g, fat 3.9 g, energy 474 kJ (113 kcal)/29-g sachet, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**MSUD Anamix Junior oral powder 36g sachets** (Nutricia Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £218.10

**MSUD Anamix® Junior LQ**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease in children 1–10 years.

LIQUID, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 10 g, carbohydrate 8.8 g, fat 4.8 g, fibre 310 mg, energy 497 kJ (118 kcal)/125 mL, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Lactose-free.

**MSUD Anamix Junior LQ liquid** (Nutricia Ltd)

125 mL (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £9.46

**MSUD cooler® 15**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease in children over 3 years and adults.

LIQUID, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except leucine, isoleucine, and valine) 15 g, carbohydrate 7 g, fat 500 mg, energy 393 kJ (92 kcal)/130-mL pouch, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**MSUD orange cooler 15 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)

130 mL (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £11.87

**MSUD red cooler 15 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)

130 mL (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £11.87

**MSUD express® 15**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease in children over 8 years and adults.
- POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except leucine, isoleucine, and valine) 15 g, carbohydrate 3.8 g, fat less than 100 mg, energy 315 kJ (75 kcal)/25 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. To flavour unflavoured products, see FlavourPac p. 1040.

**MSUD express 15 oral powder 25g sachets** (Vitaflor International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £349.27

**MSUD express® 20**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease in children over 8 years and adults.
- POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except leucine, isoleucine, and valine) 20 g, carbohydrate 4.7 g, fat less than 100 mg, energy 416 kJ (99 kcal)/34 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. To flavour unflavoured products, see FlavourPac p. 1040.

**MSUD express 20 oral powder 34g sachets** (Vitaflor International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £451.25

**MSUD Gel®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease in children 1–10 years.
- POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except leucine, isoleucine, and valine) 10 g, carbohydrate 10.3 g, fat less than 100 mg, energy 339 kJ (81 kcal)/24 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. To flavour unflavoured products, see FlavourPac p. 1040.

**MSUD gel 24g sachets** (Vitafo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £227.50

**MSUD Lophlex® LQ 20**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease in children over 5 years.

Liquid, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 20 g, carbohydrate 8.8 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 509 kJ (120 kcal)/125 mL, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**MSUD Lophlex LQ 20 liquid** (Nutricia Ltd)

125 mL (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £16.82

**MSUD Maxamum®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of maple syrup urine disease.
- POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except isoleucine, leucine, and valine) 39 g, carbohydrate 34 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1260 kJ (297 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Maxamum products are generally intended for use in children over 8 years.

**MSUD Maxamum powder orange** (Nutricia Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £165.09

**MSUD Maxamum powder unflavoured** (Nutricia Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £165.09

**Methylmalonic or propionic acidemia****MMA/PA Anamix® Infant**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven methylmalonic acidemia or propionic acidemia in children from birth to 3 years.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine, threonine, and valine, and low isoleucine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL.

**MMA / PA Anamix Infant powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £40.79

**XMTVI Asadon®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of methylmalonic acidemia or propionic acidemia in children and adults.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine, threonine, and valine, and low isoleucine) 77 g, carbohydrate 4.5 g, fat nil, energy 1386 kJ (326 kcal)/100 g.

**XMTVI Asadon powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

200 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £78.04

**MMA/PA Maxamum®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of methylmalonic acidemia or propionic acidemia.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine, threonine, and valine, and low isoleucine) 39 g, carbohydrate 34 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1260 kJ (297 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Maxamum products are generally intended for use in children over 8 years.

**MMA/PA Maxamum powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £165.09

**Other inborn errors of metabolism****Cystine500®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of amino acid metabolism in adults and children from birth.

POWDER, cystine 500 mg, carbohydrate 3.3 g, fat nil, energy 63 kJ (15 kcal)/4 g

**Cystine500 oral powder sachets** (Vitafo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £57.14

**DocOmega®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of metabolism for adults and children from birth.
- POWDER, protein (cows' milk, soya) 100 mg, carbohydrate 3.2 g, fat 500 mg (of which docosahexaenoic acid 200 mg), fibre nil, energy 74 kJ (18 kcal)/4 g, with minerals

**DocOmega oral powder 4g sachets** (Vitafo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £41.35

**EAA® Supplement**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of disorders of protein metabolism including urea cycle disorders in children over 3 years.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential amino acids) 5 g, carbohydrate 4 g, fat nil, energy 151 kJ (36 kcal)/12.5 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**EAA Supplement oral powder 12.5g sachets** (Vitafo International Ltd)

50 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £215.60

**Isoleucine50®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for use in the dietary management of inborn errors of amino acid metabolism in adults and children from birth.

POWDER, isoleucine 50 mg, carbohydrate 3.8 g, fat nil, energy 63 kJ (15 kcal)/4 g

**Isoleucine50 oral powder 4g sachets** (Vitafo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £57.14

**KeyOmega®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of metabolism.

POWDER, protein (cows' milk, soya) 170 mg, carbohydrate 2.8 g, fat 800 mg (of which arachidonic acid 200 mg, docosahexaenoic acid 100 mg), energy 80 kJ (19 kcal)/4 g.

**KeyOmega oral powder 4g sachets** (Vitafo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £42.29

**Leucine100®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of amino acid metabolism in adults and children from birth.

POWDER, leucine 100 mg, carbohydrate 3.7 g, fat nil, energy 63 kJ (15 kcal)/4 g

**Leucine100 oral powder sachets** (Vitafo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £57.14

**Low protein drink**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of amino acid metabolism in adults and children over 1 year.

POWDER, protein (cows' milk) 4.5 g (phenylalanine 100 mg), carbohydrate 59.5 g, fat 29.9 g, fibre nil, energy 2194 kJ (528 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Contains lactose.

Termed *Milupa® lp-drink* by manufacturer.

**Milupa LP drink** (Nutricia Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £9.68

**Phenylalanine50®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for use in the dietary management of inborn errors of metabolism in adults and children from birth.

POWDER, phenylalanine 50 mg, carbohydrate 3.8 g, fat nil, energy 63 kJ (15 kcal)/4 g

**Phenylalanine50 oral powder sachets** (Vitafo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £55.48

**ProZero®**

- ▶ A protein-free nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of metabolism in children over 6 months and adults.

Liquid, carbohydrate 8.1 g (of which sugars 3.5 g), fat 3.8 g, energy 278 kJ (66 kcal)/100 mL. Contains lactose.

**ProZero liquid** (Vitafo International Ltd)

250 mL (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £1.52 | 1000 mL (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £6.09

**Tyrosine1000®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of amino acid metabolism in adults and children from birth.

POWDER, tyrosine 1 g, carbohydrate 2.9 g, fat nil, energy 63 kJ (15 kcal)/4-g sachet.

**Tyrosine1000 oral powder 4g sachets** (Vitalfo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £5.23

**Valine50®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of inborn errors of amino acid metabolism in adults and children from birth.

POWDER, valine 50 mg, carbohydrate 3.8 g, fat nil, energy 63 kJ (15 kcal)/4 g

**Valine50 oral powder 4g sachets** (Vitalfo International Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £57.14

**Phenylketonuria****Add-Ins®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven phenylketonuria in children over 4 years.
- POWDER, protein equivalent (containing essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 10 g, carbohydrate nil, fat 5.1 g, energy 359 kJ (86 kcal)/18.2-g sachet, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**Add Ins oral powder 18.2g sachets** (Nutricia Ltd)

60 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £394.20

**Easiphen®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven phenylketonuria in children over 8 years.
- LIQUID, protein equivalent (containing essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 6.7 g, carbohydrate 5.1 g, fat 2 g, energy 275 kJ (65 kcal)/100 mL with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**Easiphen liquid** (Nutricia Ltd)

250 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £10.12

**L-Tyrosine**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in pregnant women with low plasma tyrosine concentrations.

POWDER, L-tyrosine 20 g, carbohydrate 76.8 g, fat nil, energy 1612 kJ (379 kcal)/100 g.

**L-Tyrosine powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

100 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £22.98

**Lophlex®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven phenylketonuria in children over 8 years and adults including pregnant women.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 20 g, carbohydrate 2.5 g, fat 60 mg, fibre 220 mg, energy 385 kJ (91 kcal)/27.8-g sachet, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**Lophlex powder 27.8g sachets berry** (Nutricia Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £303.90

**Lophlex powder 27.8g sachets orange** (Nutricia Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £303.90

**Lophlex powder 27.8g sachets unflavoured** (Nutricia Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £303.90

**Loprofin® PKU Drink**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children over 1 year and adults.
- LIQUID, protein (cows' milk) 400 mg (phenylalanine 10 mg), lactose 9.4 g, fat 2 g, energy 165 kJ (40 kcal)/100 mL.

**Loprofin PKU drink** (Nutricia Ltd)

200 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £0.79

**Loprofin® Sno-Pro**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria, chronic renal failure and other inborn errors of amino acid metabolism.

LIQUID, protein (cows' milk) 220 mg (phenylalanine 12.5 mg), carbohydrate 8 g, fat 3.8 g, energy 273 kJ (65 kcal)/100 mL. Contains lactose.

**Loprofin SNO-PRO drink** (Nutricia Ltd)

200 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £1.31

**Phlexy-10® Exchange System**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria.

CAPSULES, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 416.5 mg/capsule.

**Phlexy-10 500mg capsules** (Nutricia Ltd)

200 capsule (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £45.49

TABLETS, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 833 mg tablet.

**Phlexy-10 tablets** (Nutricia Ltd)

75 tablet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £29.25

DRINK MIX, powder, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 8.33 g, carbohydrate 8.8 g/20-g sachet.

**Phlexy-10 drink mix apple & blackcurrant** (Nutricia Ltd)

600 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £134.70

**Phlexy-10 drink mix citrus burst** (Nutricia Ltd)

600 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £134.70

**Phlexy-10 drink mix tropical surprise** (Nutricia Ltd)

600 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £134.70

**Phlexy-Vits®**

- ▶ For use as a vitamin and mineral component of restricted therapeutic diets in children over 11 years and adults with phenylketonuria and similar amino acid abnormalities.
- POWDER, vitamins, minerals, and trace elements

**Phlexy-Vits powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

210 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £74.70

TABLETS, vitamins, minerals, and trace elements

**Phlexy-Vits tablets** (Nutricia Ltd)

180 tablet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £85.60

**PK Aid 4®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children and adults.
- POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 79 g, carbohydrate 4.5 g, fat nil, energy 1420 kJ (334 kcal)/100 g.

**PK Aid 4 powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £149.97

**PKU Anamix® First Spoon**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven phenylketonuria in children from 6 months to 5 years.
- POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 5 g, carbohydrate 4.8 g, fat 150 mg, fibre nil, energy 168 kJ (41 kcal)/12.5-g sachet, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements

**PKU Anamix First Spoon oral powder 12.5g sachets** (Nutricia Ltd)

30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £96.30

**PKU Anamix® Infant**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven phenylketonuria in children from birth to 3 years.
- POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL.

**PKU Anamix Infant powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £37.08

**PKU Anamix® Junior**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children 1–10 years.
- POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 8.4 g, carbohydrate 9.9 g, fat 3.9 g,

energy 455 kJ (108 kcal)/29-g sachet, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements

**PKU Anamix Junior powder chocolate** (Nutricia Ltd)  
1080 gram (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £132.60

**PKU Anamix Junior powder neutral** (Nutricia Ltd)  
1080 gram (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £132.60

#### **PKU Anamix® Junior LQ**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children 1–10 years.  
LIQUID, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 10 g, carbohydrate 8.8 g, fat 4.8 g, fibre 510 mg, energy 497 kJ (118 kcal)/125 mL, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. Lactose-free.

**PKU Anamix Junior LQ liquid berry** (Nutricia Ltd)  
125 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £5.88

**PKU Anamix Junior LQ liquid orange** (Nutricia Ltd)  
125 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £5.88

#### **PKU cooler10®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children over 3 years.  
LIQUID, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 10 g, carbohydrate 5.1 g, energy 258 kJ (62 kcal)/87-mL pouch, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**PKU orange cooler 10 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
87 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £4.83

**PKU purple cooler 10 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
87 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £4.83

**PKU red cooler 10 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
87 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £4.83

**PKU white cooler 10 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
87 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £4.83

#### **PKU cooler15®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children over 3 years.  
LIQUID, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 15 g, carbohydrate 7.8 g, energy 386 kJ (92 kcal)/130-mL pouch, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**PKU orange cooler 15 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
130 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £7.19

**PKU purple cooler 15 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
130 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £7.19

**PKU red cooler 15 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
130 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £7.19

**PKU white cooler 15 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
130 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £7.19

#### **PKU cooler20®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children over 3 years.  
LIQUID, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 20 g, carbohydrate 10.2 g, energy 517 kJ (124 kcal)/174-mL pouch, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**PKU orange cooler 20 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
174 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £9.66

**PKU purple cooler 20 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
174 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £9.66

**PKU red cooler 20 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
174 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £9.66

**PKU white cooler 20 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
174 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £9.66

#### **PKU express15®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria. Not recommended for children under 3 years.  
POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 15 g, carbohydrate 2.4 g, energy 295 kJ (70 kcal)/25 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace

elements. To flavour unflavoured products, see FlavourPac p. 1040.

**PKU express 15 powder lemon** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
750 gram (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £211.75

**PKU express 15 powder orange** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
750 gram (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £211.75

**PKU express 15 powder tropical** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
750 gram (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £211.75

**PKU express 15 powder unflavoured** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
750 gram (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £211.75

#### **PKU express20®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria. Not recommended for children under 3 years.  
POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 20 g, carbohydrate 3.3 g, energy 389 kJ (93 kcal)/34 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. To flavour unflavoured products, see FlavourPac p. 1040.

**PKU express 20 powder lemon** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
1020 gram (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £273.57

**PKU express 20 powder orange** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
1020 gram (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £273.57

**PKU express 20 powder tropical** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
1020 gram (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £273.57

**PKU express 20 powder unflavoured** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
1020 gram (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £273.57

#### **PKU gel®**

- ▶ For use as part of the low-protein dietary management of phenylketonuria in children 1–10 years  
POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 10 g, carbohydrate 8.9 g, fat less than 100 mg, energy 318 kJ (76 kcal)/24 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. To flavour unflavoured products, see FlavourPac p. 1040.

**PKU gel powder orange** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
720 gram (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £146.49

**PKU gel powder raspberry** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
720 gram (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £146.49

**PKU gel powder unflavoured** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
720 gram (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £146.49

#### **PKU Lophlex® LQ 10**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children over 4 years and adults including pregnant women.

LIQUID, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 10 g, carbohydrate 4.4 g, fibre 250 mg, energy 245 kJ (58 kcal)/62.5 mL, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**PKU Lophlex LQ 10 liquid berry** (Nutricia Ltd)  
62.5 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £5.43

**PKU Lophlex LQ 10 liquid juicy berries** (Nutricia Ltd)  
62.5 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £5.43

**PKU Lophlex LQ 10 liquid juicy orange** (Nutricia Ltd)  
62.5 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £5.43

#### **PKU Lophlex® LQ 20**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children over 4 years and adults including pregnant women.

LIQUID, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 20 g, carbohydrate 8.8 g, fibre 340 mg, energy 490 kJ (115 kcal)/125 mL, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**PKU Lophlex LQ 20 liquid berry** (Nutricia Ltd)  
125 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £10.83

**PKU Lophlex LQ 20 liquid juicy berries** (Nutricia Ltd)  
125 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £10.83

**PKU Lophlex LQ 20 liquid juicy orange** (Nutricia Ltd)  
125 mL (ACBS) · NHS indicative price = £10.83

**PKU Lophlex LQ 20 liquid orange** (Nutricia Ltd)  
125 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £10.83

#### **PKU Lophlex® Sensation 20**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children over 4 years and adults including pregnant women.

SEMI-SOLID, protein equivalent (containing essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 20 g, carbohydrate 20.2 g, fibre 1 g, energy 706 kJ (166 kcal)/109 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**PKU Lophlex Sensation 20 berries** (Nutricia Ltd)  
327 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £34.59

#### **PKU squeeze®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children from 6 months to 10 years. LIQUID, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 10 g, carbohydrate 22.5 g, fat 500 mg, energy 565 kJ (135 kcal)/85 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**PKU squeeze liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
2550 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £140.04

#### **PKU Maxamum®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of phenylketonuria in children over 8 years and adults. POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine) 39 g, carbohydrate 34 g, fat less than 500 mg, energy 1260 kJ (297 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**PKU Maxamum oral powder 50g sachets orange** (Nutricia Ltd)  
30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £282.60

**PKU Maxamum oral powder 50g sachets unflavoured** (Nutricia Ltd)  
30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £282.60

**PKU Maxamum powder orange** (Nutricia Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £94.24

**PKU Maxamum powder unflavoured** (Nutricia Ltd)  
500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £94.24

## Tyrosinaemia

### **Methionine-free TYR Anamix® Infant**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven tyrosinaemia type 1 in children from birth to 3 years. POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine, phenylalanine, and tyrosine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL.

**TYR Anamix Infant methionine free powder** (Nutricia Ltd)  
400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £40.79

#### **TYR Anamix® Infant**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven tyrosinaemia where plasma-methionine concentrations are normal in children from birth to 3 years. POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine and tyrosine) 13.1 g, carbohydrate 49.5 g, fat 23 g, fibre 5.3 g, energy 1915 kJ (457 kcal)/100 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements; standard dilution (15%) provides protein equivalent 2 g, carbohydrate 7.4 g, fat 3.5 g, fibre 800 mg, energy 287 kJ (69 kcal)/100 mL.

**TYR Anamix Infant methionine free powder** (Nutricia Ltd)  
400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £40.79

**TYR Anamix Infant powder** (Nutricia Ltd)  
400 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £40.79

#### **TYR Anamix® Junior**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of proven tyrosinaemia in children 1–10 years. POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine and tyrosine) 8.4 g, carbohydrate

11 g, fat 3.9 g, energy 475 kJ (113 kcal)/29-g sachet, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**TYR Anamix Junior oral powder 29g sachets** (Nutricia Ltd)  
30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £206.40

#### **TYR Anamix® Junior LQ**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of tyrosinaemia type 1 (when nitisinone (NTBC) is used, see nitisinone p. 612), type II, and type III, in children over 1 year. LIQUID, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine and tyrosine) 10 g, carbohydrate 8.8 g, fat 4.8 g, fibre 310 mg, energy 500 kJ (119 kcal)/125 mL, with vitamins, minerals and trace elements.

**TYR Anamix Junior LQ liquid** (Nutricia Ltd)  
125 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £9.46

#### **TYR cooler® 15**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of tyrosinaemia in children over 3 years and adults. LIQUID, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except tyrosine and phenylalanine) 15 g, carbohydrate 7 g, fat 500 mg, energy 393 kJ (92 kcal)/130 mL, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**TYR orange cooler 15 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
130 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £11.87

**TYR red cooler 10 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
87 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £7.60

**TYR red cooler 15 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
130 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £11.87

**TYR red cooler 20 liquid** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
174 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £15.89

#### **TYR express15®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of tyrosinaemia in children over 8 years and adults. POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except tyrosine and phenylalanine) 15 g, carbohydrate 3.4 g, fat less than 100 mg, energy 310 kJ (74 kcal)/25 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. To flavour unflavoured products, see FlavourPac p. 1040.

**TYR express 15 oral powder 25g sachets** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £349.27

#### **TYR express20®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of tyrosinaemia in children over 8 years. POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except tyrosine and phenylalanine) 20 g, carbohydrate 4.7 g, fat less than 100 mg, energy 416 kJ (99 kcal)/34 g, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements. To flavour unflavoured products, see FlavourPac p. 1040.

**TYR express 20 oral powder 34g sachets** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £451.25

#### **TYR Gel®**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of tyrosinaemia in children 1–10 years. GEL, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except tyrosine and phenylalanine) 10 g, carbohydrate 10.3 g, fat less than 100 mg, energy 339 kJ (81 kcal)/24 g, with vitamins, minerals and trace elements. To flavour unflavoured products, see FlavourPac p. 1040.

**TYR gel oral powder 24g sachets** (Vitaflor International Ltd)  
30 sachet (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £224.86

#### **TYR Lophlex® LQ 20**

- ▶ Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of tyrosinaemia in children over 3 years and adults. LIQUID, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine and tyrosine) 20 g, carbohydrate 8.8 g, fat less than 500 mg, fibre 500 mg, energy 509 kJ (120 kcal)/125 mL, with vitamins, minerals, and trace elements.

**TYR Lophlex LQ 20 liquid** (Nutricia Ltd)  
125 ml (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £16.82



**XPHEN TYR Tyrosidon®**

- Nutritional supplement for the management of tyrosinaemia in children and adults where plasma-methionine concentrations are normal.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except phenylalanine and tyrosine) 77 g, carbohydrate 4.5 g, fat nil, energy 1386 kJ (326 kcal)/100 g.

**XPHEN TYR Tyrosidon Free AA Mix powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

500 gram (ACBS) • NHS indicative price = £195.11

**XPTM Tyrosidon®**

- Nutritional supplement for the dietary management of tyrosinaemia type I in children and adults where plasma-methionine concentrations are above normal.

POWDER, protein equivalent (essential and non-essential amino acids except methionine, phenylalanine, and tyrosine) 77 g, carbohydrate 4.5 g, fat nil, energy 1386 kJ (326 kcal)/100 g.

**XPTM Tyrosidon powder** (Nutricia Ltd)

500 gram • NHS indicative price = £91.31

# Appendix 3

## Cautionary and advisory labels for dispensed medicines

### Guidance for cautionary and advisory labels

Medicinal forms within BNF publications include code numbers of the cautionary labels that pharmacists are recommended to add when dispensing. It is also expected that pharmacists will counsel patients and carers when necessary.

Counselling needs to be related to the age, experience, background, and understanding of the individual patient or carer. The pharmacist should ensure understanding of how to take or use the medicine and how to follow the correct dosage schedule. Any effects of the medicine on co-ordination, performance of skilled tasks (e.g. driving or work), any foods or medicines to be avoided, and what to do if a dose is missed should also be explained. Other matters, such as the possibility of staining of the clothes or skin, or discolouration of urine or stools by a medicine should also be mentioned.

For some medicines there is a special need for counselling, such as an unusual method or time of administration or a potential interaction with a common food or domestic remedy, and this should be mentioned where necessary.

### Original packs

Most preparations are dispensed in unbroken original packs that include further advice for the patient in the form of patient information leaflets. The advice in patient information leaflets may be less appropriate when the medicine is for a child, particularly for unlicensed medicines or indications. Pharmacists should explain discrepancies to carers, if necessary. The patient information leaflet should only be withheld in exceptional circumstances because it contains other information that should be provided. Label 10 may be of value where appropriate. More general leaflets advising on the administration of preparations such as eye drops, eye ointments, inhalers, and suppositories are also available.

### Scope of labels

In general no label recommendations have been made for injections on the assumption that they will be administered by a healthcare professional or a well-instructed patient. The labelling is not exhaustive and pharmacists are recommended to use their professional discretion in labelling new preparations and those for which no labels are shown.

Individual labelling advice is not given on the administration of the large variety of antacids. In the absence of instructions from the prescriber, and if on enquiry the patient has had no verbal instructions, the directions given under 'Dose' should be used on the label.

It is recognised that there may be occasions when pharmacists will use their knowledge and professional discretion and decide to omit one or more of the recommended labels for a particular patient. In this case counselling is of the utmost importance. There may also be an occasion when a prescriber does not wish additional cautionary labels to be used, in which case the prescription should be endorsed 'NCL' (no cautionary labels). The exact wording that is required instead should then be specified on the prescription.

Pharmacists label medicines with various wordings in addition to those directions specified on the prescription. Such labels include 'Shake the bottle', 'For external use only', and 'Store in a cool place', as well as 'Discard.... days after opening' and 'Do not use after....', which apply particularly to antibiotic mixtures, diluted liquid and topical preparations, and to eye-drops. Although not listed in the *BNF for Children* these labels should continue to be used when appropriate; indeed, 'For external use only' is a legal requirement on external liquid

preparations, while 'Keep out of the reach of children' is a legal requirement on all dispensed medicines. Care should be taken not to obscure other relevant information with adhesive labelling.

It is the usual practice for patients to take standard tablets with water or other liquid and for this reason no separate label has been recommended.

The label wordings recommended by the *BNF for Children* apply to medicines dispensed against a prescription. Children and carers should be aware that a dispensed medicine should never be taken by, or shared with, anyone other than for whom the prescriber intended it. Therefore, the *BNF for Children* does not include warnings against the use of a dispensed medicine by persons other than for whom it was specifically prescribed.

The label or labels for each preparation are recommended after careful consideration of the information available. However, it is recognised that in some cases this information may be either incomplete or open to a different interpretation. The *BNF for Children* will therefore be grateful to receive any constructive comments on the labelling suggested for any preparation.

### Recommended label wordings

For *BNF for Children* 2011–2012, a revised set of cautionary and advisory labels were introduced. All of the existing labels were user-tested, and the revised wording selected reflects terminology that is better understood by patients.

Wordings which can be given as separate warnings are labels 1–19, 29–30, and 32. Wordings which can be incorporated in an appropriate position in the directions for dosage or administration are labels 21–28. A label has been omitted for number 20; labels 31 and 33 no longer apply to any medicines in the *BNF for Children* and have therefore been deleted.

If separate labels are used it is recommended that the wordings be used without modification. If changes are made to suit computer requirements, care should be taken to retain the sense of the original.

### Welsh labels

Comprehensive Welsh translations are available for each cautionary and advisory label.

### Labels

#### 1 Warning: This medicine may make you sleepy

**Rhybudd:** Gall y feddyginiath hon eich gwneud yn gysglyd  
To be used on *preparations for children* containing antihistamines, or other preparations given to children where the warnings of label 2 on driving or alcohol would not be appropriate.

#### 2 Warning: This medicine may make you sleepy. If this happens, do not drive or use tools or machines. Do not drink alcohol

**Rhybudd:** Gall y feddyginiath hon eich gwneud yn gysglyd.  
**Peidiwch â gyyrru, defnyddio offer llaw neu beirannau os yw hyn yn digwydd. Peidiwch ag yfed alcohol**  
To be used on *preparations for adults that can cause drowsiness*, thereby affecting coordination and the ability to drive and operate hazardous machinery; label 1 is more appropriate for children. *It is an offence to drive while under the influence of drink or drugs.*

Some of these preparations only cause drowsiness in the first few days of treatment and some only cause drowsiness in higher doses.

In such cases the patient should be told that the advice applies until the effects have worn off. However many of these preparations can produce a slowing of reaction time and a loss of mental concentration that can have the same effects as drowsiness.

Avoidance of alcoholic drink is recommended because the effects of CNS depressants are enhanced by alcohol. Strict prohibition however could lead to some patients not taking the medicine. Pharmacists should therefore explain the risk and encourage compliance, particularly in patients who may think they already tolerate the effects of alcohol (see also label 3). Queries from patients with epilepsy regarding fitness to drive should be referred back to the patient's doctor.

Side-effects unrelated to drowsiness that may affect a patient's ability to drive or operate machinery safely include blurred vision, dizziness, or nausea. In general, no label has been recommended to cover these cases, but the patient should be suitably counselled.

- 3 Warning: This medicine may make you sleepy. If this happens, do not drive or use tools or machines**

**Rhybudd:** Gall y feddyginiaeth hon eich gwneud yn gysglyd. Peidiwch â gyrnu, defnyddio offer llaw neu beirniannau os ydych chi hysbysu

To be used on preparations containing monoamine-oxidase inhibitors; the warning to avoid alcohol and dealcoholised (low alcohol) drink is covered by the patient information leaflet.

Also to be used as for label 2 but where alcohol is not an issue.

- 4 Warning: Do not drink alcohol**

**Rhybudd:** Peidiwch ag yfed alcohol

To be used on preparations where a reaction such as flushing may occur if alcohol is taken (e.g. metronidazole). Alcohol may also enhance the hypoglycaemia produced by some oral antidiabetic drugs but routine application of a warning label is not considered necessary.

Patients should be advised not to drink alcohol as long as they are receiving/using a course of medication, and in some cases for a period of time after the course is finished.

- 5 Do not take indigestion remedies 2 hours before or after you take this medicine**

**Peidiwch â chymryd meddyginiaethau camdreuiliad 2 awr cyn neu ar ôl y feddyginiaeth hon**

To be used with label 25 on preparations coated to resist gastric acid (e.g. enteric-coated tablets). This is to avoid the possibility of premature dissolution of the coating in the presence of an alkaline pH.

Label 5 also applies to drugs such as gabapentin where the absorption is significantly affected by antacids. Pharmacists will be aware (from a knowledge of physiology) that the usual time during which indigestion remedies should be avoided is at least 2 hours before and after the majority of medicines have been taken; when a manufacturer advises a different time period, this can be followed, and should be explained to the patient.

- 6 Do not take indigestion remedies, or medicines containing iron or zinc, 2 hours before or after you take this medicine**

**Peidiwch â chymryd meddyginiaethau camdreuiliad neu feddyginiaethau sy'n cynnwys haearn neu sinc, 2 awr cyn neu ar ôl y feddyginiaeth hon**

To be used on preparations containing ofloxacin and some other quinolones, doxycycline, lymecycline, minocycline, and penicillamine. These drugs chelate calcium, iron, and zinc and are less well absorbed when taken with calcium-containing antacids or preparations containing iron or zinc. Pharmacists will be aware (from a knowledge of physiology) that these incompatible preparations should be taken at least 2 hours apart for the majority of medicines; when a manufacturer advises a different time period, this can be followed, and should be explained to the patient.

- 7 Do not take milk, indigestion remedies, or medicines containing iron or zinc, 2 hours before or after you take this medicine**

**Peidiwch â chymryd llaeth, meddyginiaethau camdreuiliad, neu feddyginiaeth sy'n cynnwys haearn neu sinc, 2 awr cyn neu ar ôl cymryd y feddyginiaeth hon**

To be used on preparations containing ciprofloxacin, norfloxacin, or tetracyclines that chelate calcium, iron, magnesium, and zinc, and are thus less available for absorption. Pharmacists will be aware (from a knowledge of physiology) that these incompatible preparations should be taken at least 2 hours apart for the majority of medicines; when a manufacturer advises a different time period, this can be followed, and should be explained to the patient. Doxycycline, lymecycline, and minocycline are less liable to form chelates and therefore only require label 6 (see above).

- 8 Warning: Do not stop taking this medicine unless your doctor tells you to stop**

**Rhybudd:** Peidiwch â stopio cymryd y feddyginiaeth hon, oni bai fod eich meddyg yn dweud wrthydd am stopio

To be used on preparations that contain a drug which is required to be taken over long periods without the patient necessarily perceiving any benefit (e.g. antituberculous drugs).

Also to be used on preparations that contain a drug whose withdrawal is likely to be a particular hazard (e.g. clonidine for hypertension). Label 10 (see below) is more appropriate for corticosteroids.

- 9 Space the doses evenly throughout the day. Keep taking this medicine until the course is finished, unless you are told to stop**

**Gadewch yr un faint o amser rhwng pob dŵs yn ystod y dydd. Parhewch i gymryd y feddyginiaeth nes bod y cyfan wedi'i orffen, oni bai eich bod yn cael cyngor i stopio**

To be used on preparations where a course of treatment should be completed to reduce the incidence of relapse or failure of treatment.

The preparations are antimicrobial drugs given by mouth. Very occasionally, some may have severe side-effects (e.g. diarrhoea in patients receiving clindamycin) and in such cases the patient may need to be advised of reasons for stopping treatment quickly and returning to the doctor.

- 10 Warning: Read the additional information given with this medicine**

**Rhybudd:** Darllenwch y wybodaeth ychwanegol gyda'r feddyginiaeth hon

To be used particularly on preparations containing anticoagulants, lithium, and oral corticosteroids. The appropriate treatment card should be given to the patient and any necessary explanations given.

This label may also be used on other preparations to remind the patient of the instructions that have been given.

- 11 Protect your skin from sunlight—even on a bright but cloudy day. Do not use sunbeds**

**Diogelwch eich croen rhag golau'r haul, hyd yn oed ar ddiwrnod braf o cymlog. Peidiwch â defnyddio gwely haul**

To be used on preparations that may cause phototoxic or photoallergic reactions if the patient is exposed to ultraviolet radiation. Exposure to high intensity ultraviolet radiation from sunray lamps and sunbeds is particularly likely to cause reactions.

- 12 Do not take anything containing aspirin while taking this medicine**

**Peidiwch â chymryd unrhyw beth sy'n cynnwys aspirin gyda'r feddyginiaeth hon**

To be used on preparations containing sulfapyrazone whose activity is reduced by aspirin.

Label 12 should not be used for anticoagulants since label 10 is more appropriate.

- 13 Dissolve or mix with water before taking**

**Gadewch i ddiwedd mewn dŵr cyn ei gymryd**

To be used on preparations that are intended to be dissolved in water (e.g. soluble tablets) or mixed with water (e.g. powders, granules) before use. In a few cases other liquids such as fruit juice or milk may be used.

- 14** This medicine may colour your urine. This is harmless  
 Gall y feddyginiaeth hon lliwio eich dŵr. Nid yw hyn yn arwydd o ddrwg  
 To be used on *preparations that may cause the patient's urine to turn an unusual colour*. These include triamterene (blue under some lights), levodopa (dark reddish), and rifampicin (red).
- 15** Caution: flammable. Keep your body away from fire or flames after you have put on the medicine  
 Rhybudd: Fflamadwy. Ar ôl rhoi'r feddyginiaeth ymlaen, cadwch yn glir o dân neu fflamau  
 To be used on *preparations containing sufficient flammable solvent to render them flammable if exposed to a naked flame*.
- 16** Dissolve the tablet under your tongue—do not swallow. Store the tablets in this bottle with the cap tightly closed. Get a new supply 8 weeks after opening  
 Rhochwch y dabled i doddî dan eich tafod - peidiwch â'i lyncu. Cadwch y tabledi yn y botel yma gyda'r caead wedi'i gau yn dynn. Gofynnwch am dabledi newydd 8 wythnos ar ôl ei hagog  
 To be used on *glyceryl trinitrate tablets* to remind the patient not to transfer the tablets to plastic or less suitable containers.
- 17** Do not take more than... in 24 hours  
 Peidiwch â chymryd mwy na... mewn 24 awr  
 To be used on *preparations for the treatment of acute migraine* except those containing ergotamine, for which label 18 is used. The dose form should be specified, e.g. tablets or capsules.  
 It may also be used on preparations for which no dose has been specified by the prescriber.
- 18** Do not take more than... in 24 hours. Also, do not take more than... in any one week  
 Peidiwch â chymryd mwy na... mewn 24 awr. Hefyd, peidiwch â chymryd mwy na... mewn wythnos  
 To be used on preparations containing ergotamine. The dose form should be specified, e.g. tablets or suppositories.
- 19** Warning: This medicine makes you sleepy. If you still feel sleepy the next day, do not drive or use tools or machines. Do not drink alcohol  
 Rhybudd: Bydd y feddyginiaeth hon yn eich gwneud yn gysglyd. Os ydych yn dal i deimlo'n gysglyd drannoeth, peidiwch â gyrru, defnyddio offer llaw neu beiriannau. Peidiwch ag yfed alcohol  
 To be used on *preparations containing hypnotics (or some other drugs with sedative effects) prescribed to be taken at night*. On the rare occasions when hypnotics are prescribed for daytime administration (e.g. nitrazepam in epilepsy), this label would clearly not be appropriate. Also to be used as an *alternative to the label 2 wording* (the choice being at the discretion of the pharmacist) for *anxiolytics prescribed to be taken at night*.  
 It is hoped that this wording will convey adequately the problem of residual morning sedation after taking 'sleeping tablets'.
- 21** Take with or just after food, or a meal  
 Cymerwch gyda neu ar ôl bwyd  
 To be used on *preparations that are liable to cause gastric irritation, or those that are better absorbed with food*.  
 Patients should be advised that a *small amount of food is sufficient*.
- 22** Take 30 to 60 minutes before food  
 Cymerwch 30 i 60 munud cyn bwyd  
 To be used on some preparations *whose absorption is thereby improved*.  
 Most oral antibacterials require label 23 instead (see below).
- 23** Take this medicine when your stomach is empty. This means an hour before food or 2 hours after food  
 Cymerwch y feddyginiaeth hon ar stumog wag. Mae hyn yn golygu awr cyn, neu 2 awr ar ôl bwyd  
 To be used on *oral antibacterials whose absorption may be reduced by the presence of food and acid in the stomach*.
- 24** Suck or chew this medicine  
 Bydd angen cnoi neu sugno'r feddyginiaeth hon  
 To be used on *preparations that should be sucked or chewed*.  
 The pharmacist should use discretion as to which of these words is appropriate.
- 25** Swallow this medicine whole. Do not chew or crush  
 Llyncwch yn gyfan. Peidiwch â chnoi neu falu'n fân  
 To be used on *preparations that are enteric-coated or designed for modified-release*.  
 Also to be used on *preparations that taste very unpleasant or may damage the mouth if not swallowed whole*.  
 Patients should be advised (where relevant) that some modified-release preparations can be broken in half, but that the halved tablet should still be swallowed whole, and not chewed or crushed.
- 26** Dissolve this medicine under your tongue  
 Gadewch i'r feddyginiaeth hon doddî o dan y tafod  
 To be used on *preparations designed for sublingual use*.  
 Patients should be advised to hold under the tongue and avoid swallowing until dissolved. The buccal mucosa between the gum and cheek is occasionally specified by the prescriber.
- 27** Take with a full glass of water  
 Cymerwch gyda llond gwyrdr o ddŵr  
 To be used on *preparations that should be well diluted* (e.g. chloral hydrate), *where a high fluid intake is required* (e.g. sulfonamides), *or where water is required to aid the action* (e.g. methylcellulose). The patient should be advised that 'a full glass' means at least 150 mL. In most cases fruit juice, tea, or coffee may be used.
- 28** Spread thinly on the affected skin only  
 Taenwch yn denau ar y croen sydd wedi'i effeithio yn unig  
 To be used on *external preparations* that should be applied sparingly (e.g. corticosteroids, dithranol).
- 29** Do not take more than 2 at any one time. Do not take more than 8 in 24 hours  
 Peidiwch â chymryd mwy na 2 ar unrhyw un adeg. Peidiwch â chymryd mwy nag 8 mewn 24 awr  
 To be used on containers of dispensed *solid dose preparations containing paracetamol for adults when the instruction on the label indicates that the dose can be taken on an 'as required' basis*. The dose form should be specified, e.g. tablets or capsules.  
 This label has been introduced because of the serious consequences of overdosage with paracetamol.
- 30** Contains paracetamol. Do not take anything else containing paracetamol while taking this medicine. Talk to a doctor at once if you take too much of this medicine, even if you feel well  
 Yn cynnwys paracetamol. Peidiwch â chymryd unrhyw beth arall sy'n cynnwys paracetamol tra'n cymryd y feddyginiaeth hon. Siaradwch gyda'ch meddyg ar unwaith os ydych yn cymryd gormod, hyd yn oed os ydych yn teimlo'n iawn  
 To be used on containers of dispensed *preparations containing paracetamol*.
- 32** Contains aspirin. Do not take anything else containing aspirin while taking this medicine  
 Yn cynnwys aspirin. Peidiwch â chymryd unrhyw beth arall sy'n cynnwys aspirin tra'n cymryd y feddyginiaeth hon  
 To be used on containers of dispensed *preparations containing aspirin when the name on the label does not include the word 'aspirin'*.

# Dental Practitioners' Formulary

## List of Dental Preparations

The following list has been approved by the appropriate Secretaries of State, and the preparations therein may be prescribed by dental practitioners on form FP10D (GP14 in Scotland, WP10D in Wales).

Licensed **sugar-free** versions, where available, are preferred.

Licensed **alcohol-free** mouthwashes, where available, are preferred.

Aciclovir Cream, BP  
 Aciclovir Oral Suspension, BP, 200 mg/5 mL  
 Aciclovir Tablets, BP, 200 mg  
 Aciclovir Tablets, BP, 800 mg  
 Amoxicillin Capsules, BP  
 Amoxicillin Oral Powder, DPF  
 Amoxicillin Oral Suspension, BP  
 Artificial Saliva Gel, DPF  
 Artificial Saliva Oral Spray, DPF  
 Artificial Saliva Pastilles, DPF  
 Artificial Saliva Protective Spray, DPF  
 Artificial Saliva Substitutes as listed below (to be prescribed only for indications approved by ACBS (patients suffering from dry mouth as a result of having or, having undergone, radiotherapy or sicca syndrome):  
*BioXtra*® Gel Mouthspray  
*BioXtra*® Moisturising Gel  
*Glandosane*®  
*Saliveze*®  
 Artificial Saliva Substitute Spray, DPF  
 Aspirin Tablets, Dispersible, BP  
 Azithromycin Capsules, 250 mg, DPF  
 Azithromycin Oral Suspension, 200 mg/5 mL, DPF  
 Azithromycin Tablets, 250 mg, DPF  
 Azithromycin Tablets, 500 mg, DPF  
 Beclometasone Pressurised Inhalation, BP,  
 50 micrograms/metered inhalation, CFC-free, as:  
*Clenil Modulate*®  
 Benzydamine Mouthwash, BP 0.15%  
 Benzydamine Oromucosal Spray, BP 0.15%  
 Betamethasone Soluble Tablets, 500 micrograms, DPF  
 Carbamazepine Tablets, BP  
 Cefalexin Capsules, BP  
 Cefalexin Oral Suspension, BP  
 Cefalexin Tablets, BP  
 Cefradine Capsules, BP  
 Cetirizine Oral Solution, BP, 5 mg/5 mL  
 Cetirizine Tablets, BP, 10 mg  
 Chlorhexidine Gluconate Gel, BP  
 Chlorhexidine Mouthwash, BP  
 Chlorhexidine Oral Spray, DPF  
 Chlorphenamine Oral Solution, BP  
 Chlorphenamine Tablets, BP  
 Choline Salicylate Dental Gel, BP  
 Clarithromycin Oral Suspension, 125 mg/5 mL, DPF  
 Clarithromycin Oral Suspension, 250 mg/5 mL, DPF  
 Clarithromycin Tablets, BP  
 Clindamycin Capsules, BP  
 Co-amoxiclav Tablets, BP, 250/125 (amoxicillin 250 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 125 mg as potassium salt)  
 Co-amoxiclav Oral Suspension, BP, 125/31 (amoxicillin 125 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 31.25 mg as potassium salt)/5 mL  
 Co-amoxiclav Oral Suspension, BP, 250/62 (amoxicillin 250 mg as trihydrate, clavulanic acid 62.5 mg as potassium salt)/5 mL  
 Diazepam Oral Solution, BP, 2 mg/5 mL

Diazepam Tablets, BP  
 Diclofenac Sodium Tablets, Gastro-resistant, BP  
 Dihydrocodeine Tablets, BP, 30 mg  
 Doxycycline Tablets, Dispersible, BP  
 Doxycycline Capsules, BP, 100 mg  
 Doxycycline Tablets, 20 mg, DPF  
 Ephedrine Nasal Drops, BP  
 Erythromycin Ethyl Succinate Oral Suspension, BP  
 Erythromycin Ethyl Succinate Tablets, BP  
 Erythromycin Stearate Tablets, BP  
 Erythromycin Tablets, Gastro-resistant, BP  
 Fluconazole Capsules, 50 mg, DPF  
 Fluconazole Oral Suspension, 50 mg/5 mL, DPF  
 Hydrocortisone Cream, BP, 1%  
 Hydrocortisone Oromucosal Tablets, BP  
 Hydrogen Peroxide Mouthwash, BP, 6%  
 Ibuprofen Oral Suspension, BP, sugar-free  
 Ibuprofen Tablets, BP  
 Lansoprazole Capsules, Gastro-resistant, BP  
 Lidocaine Ointment, BP, 5%  
 Lidocaine Spray 10%, DPF  
 Loratadine Syrup, 5 mg/5 mL, DPF  
 Loratadine Tablets, BP, 10 mg  
 Menthol and Eucalyptus Inhalation, BP 1980  
 Metronidazole Oral Suspension, BP  
 Metronidazole Tablets, BP  
 Miconazole Cream, BP  
 Miconazole Oromucosal Gel, BP  
 Miconazole and Hydrocortisone Cream, BP  
 Miconazole and Hydrocortisone Ointment, BP  
 Nystatin Oral Suspension, BP  
 Omeprazole Capsules, Gastro-resistant, BP  
 Oxytetracycline Tablets, BP  
 Paracetamol Oral Suspension, BP  
 Paracetamol Tablets, BP  
 Paracetamol Tablets, Soluble, BP  
 Phenoxymethylpenicillin Oral Solution, BP  
 Phenoxymethylpenicillin Tablets, BP  
 Promethazine Hydrochloride Tablets, BP  
 Promethazine Oral Solution, BP  
 Saliva Stimulating Tablets, DPF  
 Sodium Chloride Mouthwash, Compound, BP  
 Sodium Fluoride Mouthwash, BP  
 Sodium Fluoride Oral Drops, BP  
 Sodium Fluoride Tablets, BP  
 Sodium Fluoride Toothpaste 0.619%, DPF  
 Sodium Fluoride Toothpaste 1.1%, DPF  
 Sodium Fusidate Ointment, BP  
 Temazepam Oral Solution, BP  
 Temazepam Tablets, BP  
 Tetracycline Tablets, BP



# Nurse Prescribers' Formulary

## Nurse Prescribers' Formulary for Community Practitioners

List of preparations approved by the Secretary of State which may be prescribed on form FP10P (form HS21(N) in Northern Ireland, form GP10(N) in Scotland, forms WP10CN and WP10PN in Wales) by Nurses for National Health Service patients.

Community practitioners who have completed the necessary training may only prescribe items appearing in the nurse prescribers' list set out below. Community Practitioner Nurse Prescribers are recommended to prescribe generically, except where this would not be clinically appropriate or where there is no approved generic name.

## Medicinal Preparations

Preparations on this list which are not included in the BP or BPC are described under Details of NPF preparations.

Almond Oil Ear Drops, BP  
 Arachis Oil Enema, NPF  
 Aspirin Tablets, Dispersible, 300 mg, BP (max. 96 tablets; max. pack size 32 tablets)  
 Bisacodyl Suppositories, BP (includes 5-mg and 10-mg strengths)  
 Bisacodyl Tablets, BP  
 Catheter Maintenance Solution, Sodium Chloride, NPF  
 Catheter Maintenance Solution, 'Solution G', NPF  
 Catheter Maintenance Solution, 'Solution R', NPF  
 Chlorhexidine Gluconate Alcoholic Solutions containing at least 0.05%  
 Chlorhexidine Gluconate Aqueous Solutions containing at least 0.05%  
 Choline Salicylate Dental Gel, BP  
 Clotrimazole Cream 1%, BP  
 Co-danthramer Capsules, NPF  
 Co-danthramer Capsules, Strong, NPF  
 Co-danthramer Oral Suspension, NPF  
 Co-danthramer Oral Suspension, Strong, NPF  
 Co-danthrusate Capsules, BP  
 Co-danthrusate Oral Suspension, NPF  
 Crotamiton Cream, BP  
 Crotamiton Lotion, BP  
 Dimeticone barrier creams containing at least 10%  
 Dimeticone Lotion, NPF  
 Docusate Capsules, BP  
 Docusate Enema, NPF  
 Docusate Oral Solution, BP  
 Docusate Oral Solution, Paediatric, BP  
 Econazole Cream 1%, BP  
 Emollients as listed below:  
   Aquadrate<sup>®</sup> 10% w/w Cream  
   Arachis Oil, BP  
   Balneum<sup>®</sup> Plus Cream  
   Cetaben<sup>®</sup> Emollient Cream  
   Dermamist<sup>®</sup>  
   Diprobace<sup>®</sup> Cream  
   Diprobace<sup>®</sup> Ointment  
   Doublebase<sup>®</sup>  
   Doublebase<sup>®</sup> Dayleve Gel  
   E45<sup>®</sup> Cream  
   E45<sup>®</sup> Itch Relief Cream  
   Emulsifying Ointment, BP  
   Eucerin<sup>®</sup> Intensive 10% w/w Urea Treatment Cream  
   Eucerin<sup>®</sup> Intensive 10% w/w Urea Treatment Lotion  
   Hydromol<sup>®</sup> Cream

Hydromol<sup>®</sup> Intensive  
 Hydrour Ointment, BP  
 Lipobase<sup>®</sup>  
 Liquid and White Soft Paraffin Ointment, NPF  
 Neutrogena<sup>®</sup> Norwegian Formula Dermatological Cream  
 Nutraplus<sup>®</sup> Cream  
 Oilatum<sup>®</sup> Cream  
 Oilatum<sup>®</sup> Junior Cream  
 Paraffin, White Soft, BP  
 Paraffin, Yellow Soft, BP  
 Ultrabase<sup>®</sup>  
 Unguentum M<sup>®</sup>  
 Emollient Bath and Shower Preparations as listed below:  
   Aqueous Cream, BP  
   Balneum<sup>®</sup> (except pack sizes that are not to be prescribed under the NHS (see Part XVIII of the Drug Tariff, Part XI of the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff))  
   Balneum Plus<sup>®</sup> Bath Oil (except pack sizes that are not to be prescribed under the NHS (see Part XVIII of the Drug Tariff, Part XI of the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff))  
   Cetaben<sup>®</sup> Emollient Bath Additive  
   Dermalmo<sup>®</sup> Bath Emollient  
   Doublebase<sup>®</sup> Emollient Bath Additive  
   Doublebase<sup>®</sup> Emollient Shower Gel  
   Doublebase<sup>®</sup> Emollient Wash Gel  
   Hydromol<sup>®</sup> Bath and Shower Emollient  
   Oilatum<sup>®</sup> Emollient  
   Oilatum<sup>®</sup> Gel  
   Oilatum<sup>®</sup> Junior Bath Additive  
   Zerolatum<sup>®</sup> Emollient Medicinal Bath Oil  
 Folic Acid Tablets 400 micrograms, BP  
 Glycerol Suppositories, BP  
 Ibuprofen Oral Suspension, BP (except for indications and doses that are prescription-only)  
 Ibuprofen Tablets, BP (except for indications and doses that are prescription-only)  
 Ispaghula Husk Granules, BP  
 Ispaghula Husk Granules, Effervescent, BP  
 Ispaghula Husk Oral Powder, BP  
 Lactulose Solution, BP  
 Lidocaine Ointment, BP  
 Lidocaine and Chlorhexidine Gel, BP  
 Macrogol Oral Liquid, Compound, NPF  
 Macrogol Oral Powder, Compound, NPF  
 Macrogol Oral Powder, Compound, Half-strength, NPF  
 Magnesium Hydroxide Mixture, BP  
 Magnesium Sulfate Paste, BP  
 Malathion aqueous lotions containing at least 0.5%  
 Mebendazole Oral Suspension, NPF  
 Mebendazole Tablets, NPF  
 Methylcellulose Tablets, BP  
 Miconazole Cream 2%, BP  
 Miconazole Oromucosal Gel, BP  
 Mouthwash Solution-tablets, NPF  
 Nicotine Inhalation Cartridge for Oromucosal Use, NPF  
 Nicotine Lozenge, NPF  
 Nicotine Medicated Chewing Gum, NPF  
 Nicotine Nasal Spray, NPF  
 Nicotine Oral Spray, NPF  
 Nicotine Sublingual Tablets, NPF  
 Nicotine Transdermal Patches, NPF  
 Nystatin Oral Suspension, BP  
 Olive Oil Ear Drops, BP  
 Paracetamol Oral Suspension, BP (includes 120 mg/5 mL and 250 mg/5 mL strengths—both of which are available as sugar-free formulations)

Paracetamol Tablets, BP (max. 96 tablets; max. pack size 32 tablets)  
 Paracetamol Tablets, Soluble, BP (includes 120-mg and 500-mg tablets; max. 96 tablets; max. pack size 32 tablets)  
 Permethrin Cream, NPF  
 Phosphates Enema, BP  
 Povidone–Iodine Solution, BP  
 Senna Oral Solution, NPF  
 Senna Tablets, BP  
 Senna and Ispaghula Granules, NPF  
 Sodium Chloride Solution, Sterile, BP  
 Sodium Citrate Compound Enema, NPF  
 Sodium Picosulfate Capsules, NPF  
 Sodium Picosulfate Elixir, NPF  
 Spermicidal contraceptives as listed below:  
   Gygel® Contraceptive Jelly  
 Sterculia Granules, NPF  
 Sterculia and Frangula Granules, NPF  
 Titanium Ointment, BP  
 Water for Injections, BP  
 Zinc and Castor Oil Ointment, BP  
 Zinc Oxide and Dimeticone Spray, NPF  
 Zinc Oxide Impregnated Medicated Bandage, NPF  
 Zinc Oxide Impregnated Medicated Stocking, NPF  
 Zinc Paste Bandage, BP 1993  
 Zinc Paste and Ichthammol Bandage, BP 1993

## Appliances and Reagents (including Wound Management Products)

Community Practitioner Nurse Prescribers in England, Wales and Northern Ireland can prescribe any appliance or reagent in the relevant Drug Tariff. In the Scottish Drug Tariff, Appliances and Reagents which may **not** be prescribed by Nurses are annotated Nx.

**Appliances** (including Contraceptive Devices) as listed in Part IXA of the Drug Tariff (Part III of the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff, Part 3 (Appliances) and Part 2 (Dressings) of the Scottish Drug Tariff). (Where it is not appropriate for nurse prescribers in family planning clinics to prescribe contraceptive devices using form FP10(P) (forms WP10CN and WP10PN in Wales), they may prescribe using the same system as doctors in the clinic.)

**Incontinence Appliances** as listed in Part IXB of the Drug Tariff (Part III of the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff, Part 5 of the Scottish Drug Tariff).

**Stoma Appliances and Associated Products** as listed in Part IXC of the Drug Tariff (Part III of the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff, Part 6 of the Scottish Drug Tariff).

**Chemical Reagents** as listed in Part IXR of the Drug Tariff (Part II of the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff, Part 9 of the Scottish Drug Tariff).

The Drug Tariffs can be accessed online at:  
 National Health Service Drug Tariff for England and Wales:  
[www.ppa.org.uk/ppa/edt\\_intro.htm](http://www.ppa.org.uk/ppa/edt_intro.htm)  
 Health and Personal Social Services for Northern Ireland  
 Drug Tariff: [www.hscbusiness.hscni.net/services/2034.htm](http://www.hscbusiness.hscni.net/services/2034.htm)  
 Scottish Drug Tariff: [www.isdscotland.org/Health-topics/Prescribing-and-Medicines/Scottish-Drug-Tariff/](http://www.isdscotland.org/Health-topics/Prescribing-and-Medicines/Scottish-Drug-Tariff/)

## Details of NPF preparations

Preparations on the Nurse Prescribers' Formulary which are not included in the BP or BPC are described as follows in the Nurse Prescribers' Formulary. Although brand names have sometimes been included for identification purposes, it is recommended that non-proprietary names should be used for prescribing medicinal preparations in the NPF except where a non-proprietary name is not available.

### Arachis Oil Enema

arachis oil 100%

### Catheter Maintenance Solution, Sodium Chloride

(proprietary products: *OptiFlo S*; *Uro-Tainer Sodium Chloride*; *Urilflex-S*), sodium chloride 0.9%

### Catheter Maintenance Solution, 'Solution G'

(proprietary products: *OptiFlo G*; *Uro-Tainer Suby G*; *Urilflex G*), citric acid 3.23%, magnesium oxide 0.38%, sodium bicarbonate 0.7%, disodium edetate 0.01%

### Catheter Maintenance Solution, 'Solution R'

(proprietary products: *OptiFlo R*; *Uro-Tainer Solution R*; *Urilflex R*), citric acid 6%, gluconolactone 0.6%, magnesium carbonate 2.8%, disodium edetate 0.01%

### Chlorhexidine gluconate alcoholic solutions

(proprietary products: *ChloraPrep*; *Hydrex Solution*; *Hydrex spray*), chlorhexidine gluconate in alcoholic solution

### Chlorhexidine gluconate aqueous solutions

(proprietary product: *Unisept*), chlorhexidine gluconate in aqueous solution

### Co-danthramer Capsules [PoM]

co-danthramer 25/200 (dantron 25 mg, poloxamer '188' 200 mg)

### Co-danthramer Capsules, Strong [PoM]

co-danthramer 37.5/500 (dantron 37.5 mg, poloxamer '188' 500 mg)

### Co-danthramer Oral Suspension [PoM]

(proprietary product: *Codalax*), co-danthramer 25/200 in 5 mL (dantron 25 mg, poloxamer '188' 200 mg/5 mL)

### Co-danthramer Oral Suspension, Strong [PoM]

(proprietary product: *Codalax Forte*), co-danthramer 75/1000 in 5 mL (dantron 75 mg, poloxamer '188' 1 g/5 mL)

### Co-danthrusate Oral Suspension [PoM]

(proprietary product: *Normax*), co-danthrusate 50/60 (dantron 50 mg, docusate sodium 60 mg/5 mL)

### Dimeticone barrier creams

(proprietary products *Conotrane Cream*, dimeticone '350' 22%; *Siopel Barrier Cream*, dimeticone '1000' 10%), dimeticone 10–22%

### Dimeticone Lotion

(proprietary product: *Hedrin*), dimeticone 4%

### Docusate Enema

(proprietary product: *Norgalax Micro-enema*), docusate sodium 120 mg in 10 g

### Liquid and White Soft Paraffin Ointment

liquid paraffin 50%, white soft paraffin 50%

### Macrogol Oral Liquid, Compound

(proprietary product: *Movicol Liquid*), macrogol '3350' (polyethylene glycol '3350') 13.125 g, sodium bicarbonate 178.5 mg, sodium chloride 350.7 mg, potassium chloride 46.6 mg/25 mL

### Macrogol Oral Powder, Compound

(proprietary products: *Laxido Orange*, *Molaxole*, *Movicol*), macrogol '3350' (polyethylene glycol '3350') 13.125 g, sodium bicarbonate 178.5 mg, sodium chloride 350.7 mg, potassium chloride 46.6 mg/sachet; (amount of potassium chloride varies according to flavour of *Movicol*® as follows: plain-flavour (sugar-free) = 50.2 mg/sachet; lime and lemon flavour = 46.6 mg/sachet; chocolate flavour = 31.7 mg/sachet. 1 sachet when reconstituted with 125 mL water provides K<sup>+</sup> 5.4 mmol/litre)

### Macrogol Oral Powder, Compound, Half-strength

(proprietary product: *Movicol-Half*), macrogol '3350' (polyethylene glycol '3350') 6.563 g, sodium bicarbonate 89.3 g, sodium chloride 175.4 mg, potassium chloride 23.3 mg/sachet

### Malathion aqueous lotions

(proprietary products: *Derbac-M Liquid*), malathion 0.5% in an aqueous basis

### Mebendazole Oral Suspension [PoM]

(proprietary product: *Vermox*), mebendazole 100 mg/5 mL

### Mebendazole Tablets [PoM]

(proprietary products: *Ovex*, *Vermox*), mebendazole 100 mg (can be supplied for oral use in the treatment of enterobiasis in adults and children over 2 years provided its container or package is labelled to show a max. single dose of 100 mg and it is supplied in a container or package containing not more than 800 mg)

#### **Mouthwash Solution-tablets**

consist of tablets which may contain antimicrobial, colouring and flavouring agents in a suitable soluble effervescent basis to make a mouthwash

#### **Nicotine Inhalation Cartridge for Oromucosal Use**

(proprietary products: *NicAssist Inhalator*, *Nicorette Inhalator*), nicotine 15 mg (for use with inhalation mouthpiece; to be prescribed as either a starter pack (6 cartridges with inhalator device and holder) or refill pack (42 cartridges with inhalator device))

#### **Nicotine Lozenge**

nicotine (as bitartrate) 1 mg or 2 mg (proprietary product: *Nicorette Mint Lozenge*, *Nicotinell Mint Lozenge*), or nicotine (as resinate) 1.5 mg, 2 mg, or 4 mg (proprietary product: *NiQuitin Lozenges*, *NiQuitin Minis*, *NiQuitin Pre-quit*)

#### **Nicotine Medicated Chewing Gum**

(proprietary products: *NicAssist Gum*, *Nicorette Gum*, *Nicotinell Gum*, *NiQuitin Gum*), nicotine 2 mg or 4 mg

#### **Nicotine Nasal Spray**

(proprietary product: *NicAssist Nasal Spray*, *Nicorette Nasal Spray*), nicotine 500 micrograms/metered spray

#### **Nicotine Oral Spray**

(proprietary product: *Nicorette Quickmist*), nicotine 1 mg/metered spray

#### **Nicotine Sublingual Tablets**

(proprietary product: *NicAssist Microtab*, *Nicorette Microtab*), nicotine (as a cyclodextrin complex) 2 mg (to be prescribed as either a starter pack (2 × 15-tablet discs with dispenser) or refill pack (7 × 15-tablet discs))

#### **Nicotine Transdermal Patches**

releasing in each 16 hours, nicotine approx. 5 mg, 10 mg, or 15 mg (proprietary products: *Boots NicAssist Patch*, *Nicorette Patch*), or releasing in each 16 hours approx. 10 mg, 15 mg, or 25 mg (proprietary products: *NicAssist Translucent Patch*, *Nicorette Invisi Patch*), or releasing in each 24 hours nicotine approx. 7 mg, 14 mg, or 21 mg (proprietary products: *Nicopatch*, *Nicotinell TTS*, *NiQuitin*, *NiQuitin Clear*) (prescriber should specify the brand to be dispensed)

#### **Permethrin Cream**

(proprietary product: *Lyclear Dermal Cream*), permethrin 5%

#### **Senna Oral Solution**

(proprietary product: *Senokot Syrup*), sennosides 7.5 mg/5 mL

#### **Senna and Ispaghula Granules**

(proprietary product: *Manevac Granules*), senna fruit 12.4%, ispaghula 54.2%

#### **Sodium Citrate Compound Enema**

(proprietary products: *Micolette Micro-enema*; *Micalax Micro-enema*; *Relaxit Micro-enema*), sodium citrate 450 mg with glycerol, sorbitol and an anionic surfactant

#### **Sodium Picosulfate Capsules**

(proprietary products: *Dulcolax Perles*), sodium picosulfate 2.5 mg

#### **Sodium Picosulfate Elixir**

(proprietary product: *Dulcolax Liquid*), sodium picosulfate 5 mg/5 mL

#### **Sterculia Granules**

(proprietary product: *Normacol Granules*), sterculia 62%

#### **Sterculia and Frangula Granules**

(proprietary product: *Normacol Plus Granules*), sterculia 62%, frangula (standardised) 8%

#### **Zinc Oxide and Dimeticone Spray**

(proprietary product: *Sprilon*), dimeticone 1.04%, zinc oxide 12.5% in a pressurised aerosol unit

#### **Zinc Oxide Impregnated Medicated Bandage**

(proprietary product: *Steripaste*), sterile cotton bandage impregnated with paste containing zinc oxide 15%

#### **Zinc Oxide Impregnated Medicated Stocking**

(proprietary product: *Ziproc*), sterile rayon stocking impregnated with ointment containing zinc oxide 20%

# Non-medical prescribing

## Overview

A range of non-medical healthcare professionals can prescribe medicines for patients as either Independent or Supplementary Prescribers.

Independent prescribers are practitioners responsible and accountable for the assessment of patients with previously undiagnosed or diagnosed conditions and for decisions about the clinical management required, including prescribing. They are recommended to prescribe generically, except where this would not be clinically appropriate or where there is no approved non-proprietary name.

Supplementary prescribing is a partnership between an independent prescriber (a doctor or a dentist) and a supplementary prescriber to implement an agreed Clinical Management Plan for an individual patient with that patient's agreement.

Independent and Supplementary Prescribers are identified by an annotation next to their name in the relevant professional register.

Information and guidance on non-medical prescribing is available on the Department of Health website at [www.dh.gov.uk/health/2012/04/prescribing-change](http://www.dh.gov.uk/health/2012/04/prescribing-change).

For information on the mixing of medicines by Independent and Supplementary Prescribers, see *Mixing of medicines prior to administration in clinical practice: medical and non-medical prescribing*, National Prescribing Centre, May 2010 (available at [www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment\\_data/file/213885/dh\\_116360.pdf](http://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/213885/dh_116360.pdf)).

For information on the supply and administration of medicines to groups of patients using Patient Group Directions see Guidance on prescribing p. 1.

In order to protect patient safety, the initial prescribing and supply of medicines prescribed should normally remain separate functions performed by separate healthcare professionals.

## Nurses

Nurse Independent Prescribers (formerly known as Extended Formulary Nurse Prescribers) are able to prescribe any medicine for any medical condition. Unlicensed medicines are excluded from the Nurse Prescribing Formulary in Scotland.

Nurse Independent Prescribers are able to prescribe, administer, and give directions for the administration of Schedule 2, 3, 4, and 5 Controlled Drugs. This extends to diamorphine hydrochloride p. 277, dipipanone, or cocaine for treating organic disease or injury, but not for treating addiction.

Nurse Independent Prescribers must work within their own level of professional competence and expertise.

The Nurse Prescribers' Formulary p. 1057 for Community Practitioners provides information on prescribing.

## Pharmacists

Pharmacist Independent Prescribers can prescribe any medicine for any medical condition. This includes unlicensed medicines, subject to accepted clinical good practice.

They are also able to prescribe, administer, and give directions for the administration of Schedule 2, 3, 4, and 5 Controlled Drugs. This extends to diamorphine hydrochloride p. 277, dipipanone, or cocaine for treating organic disease or injury, but not for treating addiction.

Pharmacist Independent Prescribers must work within their own level of professional competence and expertise.

## Physiotherapists

Physiotherapist Independent Prescribers can prescribe any medicine for any medical condition. This includes "off-label" medicines subject to accepted clinical good practice. They are also allowed to prescribe the following Controlled Drugs: oral or injectable morphine p. 282, transdermal fentanyl p. 279 and oral diazepam p. 220, dihydrocodeine tartrate p. 278, lorazepam p. 222, oxycodone hydrochloride p. 284 or temazepam p. 821.

Physiotherapist Independent Prescribers must work within their own level of professional competence and expertise.

## Therapeutic radiographers

Therapeutic Radiographer Independent Prescribers can prescribe any medicine for any medical condition. This includes "off-label" medicines subject to accepted clinical good practice. Therapeutic Radiographer Independent Prescribers must work within their own level of professional competence and expertise.

## Optometrists

Optometrist Independent Prescribers can prescribe any licensed medicine for ocular conditions affecting the eye and the tissues surrounding the eye, except Controlled Drugs or medicines for parenteral administration. Optometrist Independent Prescribers must work within their own level of professional competence and expertise.

## Podiatrists

Podiatrist Independent Prescribers can prescribe any medicine for any medical condition. This includes "off-label" medicines subject to accepted clinical good practice. They are also allowed to prescribe the following Controlled Drugs for oral administration: diazepam p. 220, dihydrocodeine tartrate p. 278, lorazepam p. 222 and temazepam p. 821.

Podiatrist Independent Prescribers must work within their own level of professional competence and expertise.

## Further Information

For further details about the different types of prescribers, see *Medicines, Ethics and Practice*, London, Pharmaceutical Press (always consult latest edition).

# Index of proprietary manufacturers

The following is an alphabetical list of manufacturers and other companies referenced in the BNF, with their medicines information or general contact details. For information on 'special-order' manufacturers and specialist importing companies see 'Special-order manufacturers'.

**3M Health Care Ltd**, Tel: (01509) 611 611

**A1 Pharmaceuticals Plc**, Tel: (01708) 528 900, sales@a1plc.co.uk

**Abbott Medical Optics**, Tel: 0800 376 7950

**Abbott**, Tel: (01628) 773 355

**Abbott Healthcare Products Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 773 355, medinfo.shl@abbott.com

**AbbVie Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 561 090, ukmedinfo@abbvie.com

**Abraxis BioScience Ltd**, Tel: (020) 7081 0850, abraxismedical@dispharma.com

**Acorus Therapeutics Ltd**, Tel: (01244) 625 152

**Actavis UK Ltd, a subsidiary of Accord Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (01271) 385 257, medinfo@accord-healthcare.com

**Actelion Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8987 3333, medinfo.uk@actelion.com

**Activa Healthcare**, Tel: 0845 060 6707, advice@activahealthcare.co.uk

**Adienne Pharma and Biotech**, Tel: 0039 (0) 335 873 8731

**ADI Medical UK**, Tel: (01628) 485159, info@adimedical.co.uk

**Advanced Medical Solutions Group Plc**, Tel: (01606) 863 500

**Advancis Medical Ltd**, Tel: (01623) 751 500, info@advancis.co.uk

**Advantech Surgical Ltd**, Tel: 0845 130 5866, customerservice@newgel.co.uk

**Aegerion Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: 00800 2343 7466, medinfo.emea@aegerion.com

**AgaMatrix Europe Ltd**, Tel: (01235) 838 639, info@wavesense.co.uk

**Agepha GmbH**, Tel: (020) 3239 6241, uk@agepha.com

**Aguettant Ltd**, Tel: (01275) 463 691, info@aguettant.co.uk

**Air Products plc**, Tel: 0800 373 580

**Alan Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (020) 7284 2887, info@alanpharmaceuticals.com

**Alcon Laboratories (UK) Ltd**, Tel: 0345 266 9363, gbmedicaldepartment@alcon.com

**Alexion Pharma UK Ltd**, Tel: (01932) 359 220, alexion.uk@alxn.com

**Alimera Sciences Limited**, Tel: 0800 019 1253, medicalinformation@alimerasciences.com

**Alissa Healthcare**, Tel: (01489) 80 759, enquiries@alissahealthcare.com

**ALK-Abelló (UK) Ltd**, Tel: (0118) 903 7940, info@uk.alk-abello.com

**Alkopharma Srl**, Tel: (0041) 277 206 969, regulatory@alkopharma.com

**Allen & Hanburys Ltd**, Tel: 0800 221 441, customercontactuk@gsk.com

**Allergan Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 494 026

**Allergy Therapeutics Ltd**, Tel: (01903) 844 702

**Alliance Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01249) 466 966, info@alliancepharma.co.uk

**Almirall Ltd**, Tel: 0800 008 7399, medinfouk@almirall.com

**Altacor Ltd**, Tel: (01223) 421 411, info@altacor-pharma.com

**Amdipharm Mercury Company Ltd**, Tel: 08700 70 30 33, medicalinformation@amcolimited.com

**Amgen Ltd**, Tel: (01223) 420 305, gbinfo@amgen.com

**Amred Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (0330) 333 0079, info@amredhealthcare.com

**Amryt Pharma**, Tel: 00800 234 37466, medinfo@amrytpharma.com

**Apollo Medical Technologies Ltd**, Tel: (01636) 831 201, supercheck2@btinternet.com

**Archimed**, Tel: 0800 756 9951, enquiries@archimed.co.uk

**Archimedes Pharma UK Ltd**, Tel: (0118) 931 5094, medicalinformationuk@archimedespharma.com

**Arctic Medical Ltd**, Tel: (01303) 277 751, sales@arcticmedical.co.uk

**Ardana Bioscience Ltd**, Tel: (0131) 226 8550

**ARIAD Pharma UK Ltd**, Tel: 0800 0002 7423, eumedinfo@ariad.com

**Ark Therapeutics Group Plc**, Tel: (020) 7388 7722, info@arktherapeutics.com

**Aspen**, Tel: 0800 008 7392, aspenmedinfo@professionalinformation.co.uk

**Aspen Medical Europe Ltd**, Tel: (01527) 587 728, customers@aspenmedicaleurope.com

**AS Pharma Ltd**, Tel: 0870 066 4117, info@aspharma.co.uk

**Aspire Pharma Ltd**, Tel: (01730) 231 148, info@aspirepharma.co.uk

**Astellas Pharma Ltd**, Tel: (020) 3379 8000, medinfo.gb@astellas.com

**AstraZeneca UK Ltd**, Tel: 0800 783 0033, medical.informationuk@astrazeneca.com

**Auden Mckenzie (Pharma Division) Ltd**, Tel: (01895) 627 420

**Auxilium**, Tel: 0845 017 2315, auxilium@pilglobal.com

**Axcan Pharma SA**, Tel: (0033) 130 461 900

**AYMES International Ltd**, Tel: 0845 6805 496, info@aymes.com

**Ayrton Saunders Ltd**, Tel: (0151) 709 2074, info@ayrtons.com

**BAP Medical UK Ltd**, Tel: 0844 879 7689

**Bard Ltd**, Tel: (01293) 527 888

**Basilea Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01483) 790 023, ukmedinfo@basilea.com

**Bausch & Lomb UK Ltd**, Tel: (01748) 828 864, medicalinformationuk@bausch.com

**Baxalta UK Limited**, Tel: (01635) 798 777, medinfo.emea@baxalta.com

**Baxter Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (01635) 206 345, surecall@baxter.com

**Bayer**, Tel: (01635) 563 000, medical.information@bayer.co.uk

**Bayer Consumer care**, Tel: (01635) 563 000, medical.information@bayer.co.uk

**Bayer Diabetes care**, Tel: (01635) 563 000, medical.information@bayer.co.uk

**Bayer Diagnostics**, Tel: (01635) 563 000, medical.information@bayer.co.uk

**BBI Healthcare**, Tel: (01792) 229 333, info@bbihealthcare.com

**B. Braun Medical Ltd**, Tel: (0114) 225 9000, info.bbmuk@bbraun.com

**Beacon Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01892) 600 930, info@beaconpharma.co.uk

**Beiersdorf UK Ltd**, Tel: (0121) 329 8800

**Besins Healthcare (UK) Ltd**, Tel: (01748) 828 789, information@besins-healthcare.com

**BGP Products Ltd**, Tel: (01707) 853 000, medinfo.shl@mylan.com

**BHR Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (024) 7637 7210, info@bhr.co.uk

**Bial Pharma UK Ltd**, Tel: 01753 916 010, medinfo.uk@bial.com

**Biogen Idec Ltd**, Tel: 0800 008 7401

**Biolitec Pharma UK Ltd**, Tel: (00353) 1463 7415

**BioMarin Europe Ltd**, Tel: (020) 7420 0800, biomarin-europe@bmrn.com

**BioMonde**, Tel: 0845 230 1810, info@biomonde.com

**Bio Products Laboratory Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8957 2255, medinfo@bpl.co.uk

**Biotech (UK) Ltd**, Tel: (0121) 733 3393, medicinesinformation@biotestuk.com

**Blackwell Supplies Ltd**, Tel: (01634) 877 620

**BOC Medical**, Tel: 0800 111 333

**Boehringer Ingelheim Ltd**, Tel: (01344) 424 600, medinfo@bra.boehringer-ingelheim.com

**The Boots Company PLC**, Tel: (0115) 959 5165

**BPC 100 Ltd**, Tel: 01942 852085

**Brancaster Pharma Ltd**, Tel: (01737) 243 407, enquiries@brancasterpharma.com

**Bray Healthcare**, Tel: (01367) 240 736, info@bray-healthcare.com

**Bristol Laboratories Ltd**, Tel: (0) 1442 200 922, info@bristol-labs.co.uk

**Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01895) 523 000, medical.information@bms.com

**Britannia Pharmaceuticals**, Tel: 0870 851 0207, enquiries@medinformation.co.uk

**BSN Medical Ltd**, Tel: 0845 122 3600

**BTG International Ltd**, Tel: (0207) 575 0000, medical.services@btgplc.com

**Bullen Healthcare**, Tel: 0800 269 327

**Cambridge Healthcare Supplies Ltd**, Tel: (01953) 607 856, customerservices@cambridge-healthcare.co.uk

**Cambridge Medical Aesthetics Ltd**, Tel: (01733) 396171, info@cambridgemedicalaesthetics.com

**Cambridge Sensors Ltd**, Tel: (01480) 482 920, sales-orders@cs-limited.co.uk



**CareFusion UK 244 Ltd**, Tel: 0800 043 7546, enquiries@chloraprep.co.uk

**Casen-Fleet**, Tel: (0034) 913 518 800

**C D Medical Ltd**, Tel: (01942) 816 184

**Celgene Ltd**, Tel: 0844 801 0045, medinfo.uk.ire@celgene.com

**Chanelle Medical UK Ltd**, Tel: (01233) 822 297

**Chatterm UK Ltd**, Tel: (01256) 844 144

**Chefaro UK Ltd**, Tel: (01748) 828 860, info@omegapharma.co.uk

**Chemidex Pharma Ltd**, Tel: (01784) 477 167, info@chemidex.co.uk

**Chiesi Ltd**, Tel: (0161) 488 5555, medinfo.uk@chiesi.com

**Chugai Pharma UK Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8987 5680

**Clement Clarke International Ltd**, Tel: (01279) 414 969, resp@clement-clarke.com

**Clinigen Group Plc**, Tel: (01748) 828 375, clinigeneu@professionalinformation.co.uk

**CliniMed Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 535 250

**Clinisupplies Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8863 4168, info@clinisupplies.co.uk

**Colgate-Palmolive Ltd**, Tel: (01483) 302 222

**Coloplast Ltd**, Tel: (01733) 392 000

**Community Foods Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8450 9411, email@communityfoods.co.uk

**Complan Foods Ltd**, Tel: (020) 7395 7565

**Consilient Health UK Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8956 2310, drugsafety@consilienthealth.com

**ConvaTec Ltd**, Tel: 01244 584 300

**Co Pharma Ltd**, Tel: 0870 851 0207

**Correvio GmbH**, Tel: (020) 3002 8114, info@correvio.com

**Covidien UK Commercial Ltd**, Tel: (01329) 224 226

**Cow & Gate**, Tel: 0845 762 3624

**Crantage Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (01477) 549 392, db@crantagehealth.com

**Crawford Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (01565) 654 920

**Crescent Pharma**, Tel: (01256) 772 730, info@crescentpharma.com

**Crucell (UK) Ltd**, Tel: 0844 800 3907, info@crucell.co.uk

**CSL Behring UK Ltd**, Tel: (01444) 447 400, medinfo@cslbehring.com

**CTI Life Sciences Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 643 974

**Laboratoires CTRS**, ctrs@pi-arm.co.uk

**Daiichi Sankyo UK Ltd**, Tel: (01753) 482 771, medinfo@daiichi-sankyo.co.uk

**Danetre Health Products Ltd**, Tel: (01327) 310 909, enquiries@danetrehealthproducts.com

**DDD Ltd**, Tel: (01923) 229 251

**Dee Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01978) 661993, enquiries@deepharmaceuticals.co.uk

**Dental Health Products Ltd**, Tel: (01622) 749 222

**Dentsply Ltd**, Tel: (01932) 837 279

**Dermal Laboratories Ltd**, Tel: (01462) 458 866

**Dermato Logical Ltd**, Tel: (0208) 449 2931, enquiries@aqua-max.co.uk

**Dermatronics Ltd**, Tel: (01480) 462 910, sales@dermatronics.co.uk

**Derma Sciences Europe Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 625 916, cs@dermasciences.com

**Derma UK Ltd**, Tel: (01462) 733 500, info@dermauk.co.uk

**Desitin Pharma Ltd**, Tel: (01908) 488 817, medinfo@desitin.co.uk

**DeVilbiss Healthcare UK Ltd**, Tel: (01384) 446 688

**Dexcel-Pharma Ltd**, Tel: (01327) 312 266, office@dexcelpharma.co.uk

**DHP Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (01622) 749 222, sales@dhphealthcare.co.uk

**DiME**, Tel: (01483) 715 008, info@dime-med.com

**Dreamskin Health Ltd**, Tel: (01707) 228 688

**Dr Falk Pharma UK Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 536 600

**Drossa Ltd**, Tel: (020) 3393 0859, info@drossa.co.uk

**Durbin plc**, Tel: (020) 8869 6500, info@durbin.co.uk

**T G Eakin**, Tel: (028) 9187 1000, mail@eakin.co.uk

**Easigrip Ltd**, Tel: (01926) 497 108, enquiry@easigrip.co.uk

**Ecolab UK**, Tel: (0113) 232 0066, info.healthcare@ecolab.co.uk

**Egis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd**, Tel: (020) 7266 2669, enquiries@medimpexuk.com

**Eisai Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8600 1400, eumedinfo@eisai.net

**Eli Lilly & Co Ltd**, Tel: (01256) 315 000, ukmedinfo@lilly.com

**Encysive (UK) Ltd**, Tel: (01895) 876 168

**Entra Health Systems**, Tel: (0113) 815 5108

**Espere Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (01462) 346 100, info@esperhealth.co.uk

**Essential Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01784) 477 167, info@essentialpharmaceuticals.com

**Ethicon Ltd**, Tel: (01506) 594 500

**Eumedica S.A.**, Tel: (020) 8444 3377, enquiries@eumedica.com

**Eurocept**, Tel: +31 (0) 35 528 83 77, info@eurocept.nl

**European Pharma Group**, Tel: 0031 (0) 20 316 0140, info@insujet.com

**EUSA Pharma (Europe) Ltd**, Tel: (01438) 740 720, medinfo-uk@eusapharma.com

**Pierre Fabre Ltd**, Tel: (01962) 874 435, medicalinformation@pierre-fabre.co.uk

**Fannin (UK) Ltd**, Tel: (0) 1233 506 574, medical@athlone-laboratories.com

**Fate Special Foods**, Tel: (01215) 254 433

**Fenton Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (020) 7224 1388, mail@fent-pharm.co.uk

**Ferndale Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01937) 541 122, info@ferndalepharma.co.uk

**Ferring Pharmaceuticals (UK)**, Tel: 0844 931 0050, medical@ferring.com

**Finox Biotech AG**, Tel: 00 800 3466 9246, finoxEY@piglobal.cpm

**Firstplay Dietary Foods Ltd**, Tel: (0161) 474 7576

**Flynn Pharma Ltd**, Tel: (01438) 727 822, medinfo@flynnpharma.com

**Focus Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01283) 495 280, medinfo@focuspharma.co.uk

**Foodlink (UK) Ltd**, Tel: (01752) 344 544, info@foodlinkltd.co.uk

**Ford Medical Associates Ltd**, Tel: (01233) 633 224, enquiries@fordmedical.co.uk

**Forest Laboratories UK Ltd**, Tel: (01322) 421 800, medinfo@forest-labs.co.uk

**Forum Health Products Ltd**, Tel: (01737) 857 700, enquiries@forumgroup.co.uk

**C. H. Fox Ltd**, Tel: (020) 7240 3111

**Fresenius Biotech GmbH**, Tel: 0049 (0) 893 065 9311, med.info@fresenius-biotech.com

**Fresenius Kabi Ltd**, Tel: (01928) 533 533, med.info-uk@fresenius-kabi.com

**Fresenius Medical Care UK Ltd**, Tel: (01623) 445 171, medinfo-uk@fmc-ag.com

**Frontier Multigate**, Tel: (01495) 233 050, multigate@frontier-group.co.uk

**Fyne Dynamics Ltd**, Tel: (01279) 423 423, info@fyne-dynamics.com

**Galderma (UK) Ltd**, Tel: (01923) 208 950, medinfo.uk@galderma.com

**Galen Ltd**, Tel: (028) 3833 4974, customer.services@galen.co.uk

**Gedeon Richter UK Ltd**, Tel: (020) 7604 8806, drugsafety.uk@gedeonrichter.eu

**GE Healthcare**, Tel: (01494) 544 000

**Geistlich Pharma**, Tel: (01244) 347 534

**General Dietary Ltd**, Tel: (0203) 044 2933, info@generaldietary.com

**Genius Foods Ltd**, Tel: 0845 874 4000, info@geniusglutenfree.com

**Laboratoires Genopharm**, Tel: (0808) 234 2664, info@genopharm.eu

**Genus Pharmaceuticals**, Tel: (01635) 568 400, info@genuspharma.com

**Genzyme Therapeutics**, Tel: (01865) 405 200, ukmedinfo@genzyme.com

**GF Foods Ltd**, Tel: (01757) 289 207, admin@gffdirect.co.uk

**Gilead Sciences Ltd**, Tel: 0800 011 3700, ukmedinfo@gilead.com

**GlaxoSmithKline**, Tel: 0800 221 441, customercontactuk@gsk.com

**GlaxoSmithKline Consumer Healthcare**, Tel: 0800 783 8881, customer.relations@gsk.com

**Glenwood GmbH**, Tel: (0049) 815 199 8790, info@glenwood.de

**Glucorx Ltd**, Tel: (01483) 755 133, info@glucorx.co.uk

**Gluten Free Foods Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8953 4444, info@glutenfree-foods.co.uk

**Grifols UK Ltd**, Tel: (01223) 395 700, medinfo.uk@grifols.com

**Grünenthal Ltd**, Tel: 0870 351 8960, medicalinformationuk@grunenthal.com

**H&R Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (01482) 631 606, info@hrhealthcare.co.uk

**Hameln Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01452) 621 661, drugsafety@hameln.co.uk

**Paul Hartmann Ltd**, Tel: (01706) 363 200, info@uk.hartmann.info

**Henleys Medical Supplies Ltd**, Tel: (01707) 333 164

**Hennig Arzneimittel GmbH & Co.**, Tel: 0844 504 0866

**HFA Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: 0844 335 8270

**HK Pharma Ltd**, Tel: 0845 519 1609

**Hollister Ltd**, Tel: (0118) 989 5000

**Horizon Pharma**, medicalinformation@horizonpharma.com

**Hospira UK Ltd**, Tel: 0800 088 5133, hospiram@pi-arm.co.uk

**HRA Pharma UK & Ireland Ltd**, Tel: 0800 917 9548, med.info.uk@hra-pharma.com

**Huntleigh Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (01582) 413 104

**Huxley Europe Ltd**, Tel: (0161) 773 0485

**Idis Ltd**, Tel: (01932) 824 000, mi@idispharma.com

**iMed Systems Ltd**, Tel: (0203) 397 8020, emerald@imed-systems.com

**INCA-Pharm UK**, Tel: (01748) 828 812, info@inca-pharm.com

**Infai UK Ltd**, Tel: (01904) 435 228, info@infai.co.uk

**Injex UK Ltd**, Tel: 0845 126 8900, enquiries@injexuk.com

**Innovative Solutions UK Ltd**, Tel: (01706) 746 713, enquiries@innovative-solutions.org.uk

**Insight Medical Products Ltd**, Tel: (01666) 500 055, info@insightmedical.ne

**InterMune**, Tel: (03308) 080 960, med-info@intermune.co.uk

**Internis Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: 0870 851 0207, enquiries@medinformation.co.uk

**Intrapharm Laboratories Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 771 800, sales@intrapharmlabs.com

**Ipsen Ltd**, Tel: (01753) 627 777, medical.information.uk@ipsen.com

**Iroko Cardio GmbH**, Tel: (020) 3002 8114, info@irokocardio.com

**Janssen-Cilag Ltd**, Tel: 0800 731 8450, medinfo@its.jnj.com

**Jobskin Ltd**, Tel: (0115) 973 4300, dw@jobskin.co.uk

**Johnson & Johnson Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 822 222, medinfo@congb.jnj.com

**Juvela (Hero UK) Ltd**, Tel: (0151) 432 5300, info@juvela.co.uk

**KCI Medical Ltd**, Tel: (01865) 840 600

**Kestrel Ophthalmics Ltd**, Tel: (01202) 658 444, info@kestrelophthalmics.co.uk

**King Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01438) 356 924

**K/L Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01294) 215 951

**KoRa Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: 0845 303 8631, info@kora.ie

**Kyowa Kirin Ltd**, Tel: (01896) 664 000, medinfo@kyowakirin.com

**Labopharm Europe Ltd**, Tel: 0800 028 0037, medinfo@paladin-labs.com

**LaCorium Health (UK) Ltd**, Tel: 0800 158 8233, ukinfo@flexitol.com

**Lantor UK Ltd**, Tel: (01204) 855 000, help@lantor.co.uk

**LEO Laboratories Ltd**, Tel: (01844) 347 333, medical.info.uk@leo-pharma.com

**LifeScan**, Tel: 0800 001 210

**Lincoln Medical Ltd**, Tel: (01722) 742 900, info@lincolnmcd.co.uk

**Linderma Ltd**, Tel: (01942) 816 184, linderma@virgin.ne

**Lipomed GmbH**, Tel: (0041) 6170 20200, save@lipomed.com

**Livwell Ltd**, Tel: 0845 120 0038, info@livwell.eu

**LogixX Pharma Solutions Ltd**, Tel: (01189) 011 747, medinfo@logixxpharma.com

**L'Oréal Active Cosmetics UK**, Tel: 0800 055 6822

**Lornamead UK Ltd**, Tel: (01276) 674000, lornamead@dhl.com

**LPC Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01582) 560 393, info@lpcpharma.com

**Lucane Pharma**, Tel: 0033 (0) 153 868 750, info@lucanepharma.com

**Lundbeck Ltd**, Tel: (01908) 649 966, ukmedicalinformation@lundbeck.com

**M & A Pharmachem Ltd**, Tel: (01942) 816 184

**Manuka Medical Ltd**, Tel: (01623) 600 669

**Manx Healthcare**, Tel: (01926) 482 511, info@manxhealthcare.com

**Marlborough Pharmaceuticals**, Tel: (01279) 406 759, info@marlborough-pharma.co.uk

**Martindale Pharma**, Tel: (01277) 266 600, medinfo@martindalepharma.co.uk

**MASTA**, Tel: (0113) 238 7500, medical@masta.org

**McNeil Products Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 822 222

**Medical Diagnostics Europe Ltd**, Tel: 0845 370 8077, info@mdidiagnostic.co.uk

**Mead Johnson Nutrition**, Tel: (01895) 230 575

**Meadow Laboratories Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8597 1203

**Meda Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01748) 828 810, meda@professionalinformation.co.uk

**Medac (UK)**, Tel: (01786) 458 086, info@medac-uk.co.uk

**Medical Developments UK Ltd**, Tel: 0870 850 1234, enquiries@ashfieldinfocus.com

**Medicare Plus International Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8810 8811, info@medicare-plus.com

**The Medicines Company**, Tel: 00800 8436 3326, medical.information@themedco.com

**Medicom Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (01489) 574 119, info@medicomhealthcare.com

**Medihoney (Europe) Ltd**, Tel: 0800 071 3912

**Medisana**, Tel: +49 (0) 2131/36 68 0

**Medlock Medical Ltd**, Tel: (0161) 621 2100

**MedLogic Global Ltd**, Tel: (01752) 209 955, enquiries@mgl.co.uk

**A. Menarini Farmaceutica Internazionale SRL**, Tel: (01628) 856 400, menarini@medinformation.co.uk

**A. Menarini Diagnostics**, Tel: (0118) 944 4100

**Merck Serono Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8818 7200, medinfo.uk@merckserono.net

**Merus Labs**, Tel: 00352 (0) 2637 5878, qchs.mi@quintiles.com

**Merz Pharma UK Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8236 0000, info@merzpharma.co.uk

**Micro Medical Ltd**, Tel: (01634) 893 500

**Milupa Aptamil**, Tel: 0845 762 3676, careline@aptamil4hcps.co.uk

**Mitsubishi Pharma**, Tel: (0207) 382 9000, medinfo@mitsubishi-pharma.eu

**Mölnlycke Health Care Ltd**, Tel: (0161) 777 2628, info.uk@molnlycke.net

**Moorfields Pharmaceuticals**, Tel: (020) 7684 9090

**Morningside Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (0116) 204 5950

**Movianto UK**, Tel: (01234) 248 500, movianto.uk@movianto.com

**Mylan**, Tel: (01707) 853 000, info@mylan.co.uk

**Nagor Ltd**, Tel: (01624) 625 556, enquiries@nagor.com

**Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01223) 424 444

**Napp Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01223) 424 444

**Neoceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01748) 828 865

**Neolab Ltd**, Tel: (01256) 704 110, info@neolab.co.uk

**Neomedic Ltd**, Tel: (01923) 836 379, marketing@neomedic.co.uk

**Neon Diagnostics Ltd**, Tel: (01376) 500 720

**Nestlé Nutrition**, Tel: 00800 6887 4846, nestlehealthcarenutrition@uk.nestle.com

**Newport Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (00353) 1890 3011

**Nicox Pharma**, Tel: (01483) 549 211, ukmedicalinformation@nicox.com

**Nipro Diagnostics (UK) Ltd**, Tel: 0800 08 588 08, info@homediagnostics-uk.com

**Nordic Pharma UK Ltd**, Tel: (0118) 929 8233, info@nordicpharma.co.uk

**Norgine Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01895) 826 600, medinfo@norgine.com

**Northern Ireland Blood Transfusion Service**, Tel: (028) 9032 1414, inet@nibts.hscni.net

**Nova Laboratories Ltd**, Tel: 08707 120 655, xaluprine@aptivsolutions.com

**Novartis Pharmaceuticals UK Ltd**, Tel: (01276) 692 255, medinfo.uk@novartis.com

**Novartis Consumer Health**, Tel: (01276) 687 202, medicalaffairs.uk@novartis.com

**Novartis Vaccines Ltd**, Tel: 0845 745 1500, service.uk@novartis.com

**Novo Nordisk Ltd**, Tel: (01293) 613 555

**nSPIRE Health Ltd**, Tel: (01992) 526 300, info@nspirehealth.com

**Nualtra Ltd**, Tel: 0808 101 0926, support@nualtra.co.uk

**Nutricia**, Tel: (01225) 751 098, resourcecentre@nutricia.com

**Nutrinovo Ltd**, Tel: (01304) 829 068, info@nutrinovo.com

**Nutrition Point Ltd**, Tel: (07041) 544 044, info@nutritionpoint.co.uk

**Nycomed UK Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 646 4397, medinfo@nycomed.com

**OakMed Ltd**, Tel: 0800 592 786, orders@oakmed.co.uk

**Octapharma Ltd**, Tel: (0161) 837 3770, octapharma@octapharma.co.uk

**Omega Pharma**, Tel: (01748) 828 860, omega@professionalinformation.co.uk

**Omron Healthcare (UK) Ltd**, Tel: 0870 750 2771, info.omronhealthcare.uk@eu.omron.com

**Organon**, Tel: (01992) 467 272, medicalinformationuk@merck.com

**Orion Pharma (UK) Ltd**, Tel: (01635) 520 300, medicalinformation@orionpharma.com

**Orphan Europe (UK) Ltd**, Tel: (01491) 414 333, info@orphan-europe.com

**Otsuka Novel Products GmbH**, Tel: (0049) 892 0602 0500, medical@otsuka-onpg.com

**Otsuka Pharmaceuticals (UK) Ltd**, Tel: (020) 3747 5300, ukmedinfo@otsuka.co.uk

**Ovation Healthcare International Ltd**, Tel: (00353) 1613 9707

**Owen Mumford Ltd**, Tel: (01993) 812 021, customerservices@owenmumford.co.uk

**Oxbridge Pharma Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8335 4110, enquiries@oxbridgepharma.com

**Oxford Nutrition Ltd**, Tel: (01626) 832 067, info@nutriprox.com

**PARI Medical Ltd**, Tel: (01932) 341 122, info@pari.de

**Parkside Healthcare**, Tel: (0161) 795 2792

**PaxVax**, Tel: 0800 088 5449, medicalinformation@paxvax.com

**Peckforton Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01270) 582 255, info@peckforton.com

**Penn Pharmaceuticals Services Ltd**, Tel: (01495) 711 222, penn@pennpharm.co.uk

**Pfizer Ltd**, Tel: (01304) 616 161, eumedinfo@pfizer.com

**PGR Health Foods Ltd**, Tel: (01992) 581 715, info@pgrhealthfoods.co.uk

**Pharmacia**, Tel: (01304) 616 161, eumedinfo@pfizer.com

**Pharmacosmos UK Ltd**, Tel: (01844) 269 007, info@vitalineuk.co.uk

**Pharma Mar**, Tel: (01932) 824 000, mi@idishpharma.com

**Pharma Nord (UK) Ltd**, Tel: (01670) 519 989, uksales@pharmanord.co.uk

**Pharmasure Ltd**, Tel: (01923) 233 466, info@pharmasure.co.uk

**Pharmaxis Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 902 053, med.info@pharmaxis.com.au

**PharSafer Associates Ltd**, Tel: 01483 212151, medinfoenquiries@pharsafer.com

**Phoenix Labs**, Tel: (00353) 1468 8917, medicalinformation@phoenixlabs.ie

**Pinewood Healthcare**, Tel: (00353) 523 6253, info@pinewood.ie

**Pinnacle Biologics Inc.**, Tel: 1-866-248-2039, pinnaclemedinfo@optum.com

**Potters Herbal Medicines**, Tel: (01942) 219 960

**Proceli**, Tel: (01226) 713 044, admin@proceli.co.uk

**Procter & Gamble (Health and Beauty Care) Ltd**, Tel: (0191) 297 5000

**Profile Pharma Ltd**, Tel: 0800 0288 942, info.profilepharma@zambongroup.com

**Protex Healthcare (UK) Ltd**, Tel: 0870 011 4112, orders@protexhealthcare.co.uk

**PTC Therapeutics Ltd**, Tel: (01483) 246 865, medinfo@ptcbio.com

**Qdem**, Tel: (01223) 426 929, medicalinformationuk@qdem.co.uk

**Ranbaxy UK Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8280 1986, medinfo@ranbaxy.co.uk

**Ransom Consumer Healthcare**, Tel: (01462) 437 615, info@williamransom.com

**Ratiopharm UK Ltd**, Tel: (023) 9231 3592, info@ratiopharm.co.uk

**Reckitt Benckiser Healthcare**, Tel: (01482) 326 151, info.mi@reckittbenckiser.com

**Recordati Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01491) 576 336, medinfo@recordati.co.uk

**ReSource Medical UK Ltd**, Tel: (01484) 531 489, info@resource-medical.co.uk

**Philips Respironics (UK) Ltd**, Tel: 0800 130 0840, rukmarketing@respironics.com

**RF Medical Supplies Ltd**, Tel: (0151) 493 1473, enquiries@rfmedicalsupplies.co.uk

**Richardson Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: 0800 170 1126, info@richardsonhealthcare.com

**Riemser Arzneimittel AG**, Tel: (0049) 383 517 6679, info@riemser.de

**RIS Products Ltd**, Tel: (01438) 840 135

**Robinson Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (01909) 735 064, enquiry@robinsonhealthcare.com

**Roche Diagnostics Ltd**, Tel: (01444) 256 000

**Roche Products Ltd**, Tel: 0800 328 1629, medinfo.uk@roche.com

**Rosemont Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: 0800 919 312, rosemont.infodesk@perrigouk.com

**Rowa Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (00353) 275 0077, rowa@rowa-pharma.ie

**RPH Pharmaceuticals**, Tel: (01483) 212 151, medinfoenquiries@pharsafer.com

**Sallis Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (0115) 978 7841

**Sandoz Ltd**, Tel: (01276) 698 020, sandoz@professionalinformation.co.uk

**Sanochemia Diagnostics UK Ltd**, Tel: (0117) 906 3562

**Sanofi-Aventis Ltd**, Tel: 0845 372 7101, uk-medicalinformation@sanofi-aventis.com

**Sanofi Pasteur MSD Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 785 291

**Sanomed Manufacturing bv**, Tel: +32 503 93627, info@sanomed.nl

**Santen UK Limited**, Tel: (0345) 075 4863, medinfo@santen.co.uk

**Santhera (UK) Ltd**, Tel: (0)203 434 5740, santhera@pi-arm.co.uk

**Schering-Plough**, Tel: (01992) 467 272, medicalinformationuk@merck.com

**Schuco International Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8368 1642, sales@schuco.co.uk

**Schülke UK**, Tel: (0114) 254 3500, mail.uk@schuelke.com

**Scope Ophthalmics Ltd**, Tel: (01293) 897 209, info@scopeophthalmics.com

**Scottish National Blood Transfusion Service**, Tel: (0131) 536 5700, contact.pfc@snbts.csa.scot.nhs.uk

**SD Biosensor, Inc.**, Tel: 0082 31 300 0475, sales@sdbiosensor.com

**SD Healthcare**, Tel: (0161) 776 7626, sales@sdhealthcare.com

**Seahorse Laboratories Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8257 8412, info@seahorse-labs.com

**Septodont Ltd**, Tel: (01622) 695 520

**Servier Laboratories Ltd**, Tel: (01753) 666 409, medical.information-uk@servier.com

**Seven Seas Ltd**, Tel: (01482) 375 234

**Shermond**, Tel: 0870 242 7701, sales@shermond.com

**Shield TX**, Tel: (01915) 118500, medinfo@shieldtx.com

**Shire Human Genetic Therapies**, Tel: (01256) 894 000, hgtmedcomm@shire.com

**Shire Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: 0800 055 6614, medinfo@shire.com

**SHS International Ltd**, Tel: (0151) 228 8161

**Siemens Healthcare Diagnostics Ltd**, Tel: 0845 600 1966, dx-diag\_sales-uk.med@siemens.com

**Sigma-Tau Pharma Ltd (UK)**, Tel: 0800 043 1268, medical.information@sigma-tau.co.uk

**SilDerm Ltd**, Tel: (01260) 271 666

**Sinclair IS Pharma**, Tel: (01244) 625 152, enquiries@ispharma.plc.uk

**The Skin Camouflage Company Ltd**, Tel: (01507) 343 091, smjcovermark@aol.com

**Skinnies UK**, Tel: (01562) 546 123, info@skinniesuk.com

**SLO Drinks Ltd**, Tel: 0345 222 205, info@slodrinks.com

**SMA Nutrition**, Tel: (01628) 604 377, eumedinfo@pfizer.com

**Smith & Nephew Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: (01482) 222 200, advice@smith-nephew.com

**Sound Opinion**, Tel: 0870 192 3283, enquiries@medinformation.co.uk

**Speciality European Pharma Ltd**, Tel: (020) 7421 7400, info@sepharma.com

**SpePharm UK Ltd**, Tel: 0844 800 7579, medinfo.uk@sepharma.com

**Spirit Healthcare Ltd**, Tel: 0800 881 5423, cs@spirit-healthcare.co.uk

**Squibb Pharmaceuticals Ltd**, Tel: (01895) 523 000, medical.information@bms.com

**SSL International plc**, Tel: 0870 122 2690

**Stanningley Pharma Ltd**, Tel: (01159) 124 253, medical@stanningleypharma.co.uk

**STD Pharmaceutical Products Ltd**, Tel: (01432) 373 555, enquiries@stdpharm.co.uk

**Steraid (Gainsborough) Ltd**, Tel: (01427) 677 559

**St George's Medical**, Tel: (020) 7582 1015

**Stiefel (a GSK company)**, Tel: 0800 221 441

**Stilleto Foods UK Ltd**, Tel: 0845 130 0869

**Stragen UK Ltd**, Tel: 0870 351 8744, info@stragenuk.com

**Sucampo Pharma**, Tel: 0800 756 3416, infoeu@sucampo.com

**Su-Med International UK Ltd**, Tel: (01457) 890 980, sales@sumed.co.uk

**Sunovion Pharmaceuticals Europe Ltd**, Tel: (020) 7821 2840, medinfo@sunovion.eu

**Sutherland Health Ltd**, Tel: (01635) 874 488

**Swedish Orphan Biovitrum Ltd**, Tel: (01638) 722 380, medical.info@sobi.com

**Synergy Healthcare (UK) Ltd**, Tel: (0161) 624 5641, healthcaresolutions@synergyhealthplc.com

**Syner-Med (Pharmaceutical Products) Ltd**, Tel: 0845 634 2100, mail@syner-med.com

**Systagenix Wound Management**, Tel: (01293) 842 000

**Takeda UK Ltd**, Tel: (01628) 537 900, medinfo@takeda.co.uk

**Talley Group Ltd**, Tel: (01794) 503 500

**Taro Pharmaceuticals (UK) Ltd**, Tel: 0870 736 9544, customerservice@taropharma.co.uk

**Teofarma S.r.l.**, servizioclienti@teofarma.it

**TEVA UK Ltd**, Tel: 0870 502 0304, (020) 7540 7117, medinfo@tevauk.com

**Thea Pharmaceuticals**, Tel: 0870 192 3283, thea-pharma@medinformation.co.uk

**Therabel Pharma UK Ltd**, Tel: 0800 066 5446, info@therabel.co.uk

**Thomas Blake Cosmetic Creams Ltd**, Tel: (01207) 272 311, sales@veilcover.com

**Thornton & Ross Ltd**, Tel: (01484) 842 217

**Tillomed Laboratories Ltd**, Tel: (01480) 402 400, info@tillomed.co.uk

**Tillotts Pharma UK Ltd**, Tel: 01522 813 500, ukmedinfo@tillotts.com

**TMC Pharma Services Ltd**, Tel: (01252) 842 255, info@tmcpharma.com

**Tobia Teff UK Ltd**, Tel: (020) 7328 2045, info@tobiategg.co.uk

**Torbet Laboratories Ltd**, Tel: (01953) 607 856, customerservices@cambridge-healthcare.co.uk

**Transdermal Ltd**, Tel: (020) 8654 2251, info@transdermal.co.uk

**TRB Chemedica (UK) Ltd**, Tel: 0845 330 7556

**Typharm Ltd**, Tel: (01603) 722 480, customerservices@typharm.com

**UCB Pharma Ltd**, Tel: (01753) 534 655, medicalinformationuk@ucb.com

**Ultraparm Ltd**, Tel: (01491) 578 016

**Univar Ltd**, Tel: (01908) 362 200, trientine@univareurope.com

**Unomedical Ltd**, Tel: (01527) 587 700

**Urgo Ltd**, Tel: (01509) 502 051, woundcare@uk.urgo.com

**The Urology Company Ltd**, Tel: (020) 3077 5411, info@theurologyco.com

**Vegenat**, Tel: 0870 803 2484

**Vertex Pharmaceuticals (UK) Ltd**, Tel: 0800 028 2616, eumedicalinfo@vrtx.com

**Vifor Pharma UK Ltd**, Tel: (01276) 853 633, medicalinfo\_uk@viforpharma.com

**ViiV Healthcare UK Ltd**, Tel: 0800221441, customercontactuk@gsk.com

**Viridian Pharma Ltd**, Tel: (01633) 400 335, info@viridianpharma.co.uk

**ViroPharma Ltd**, Tel: (020) 7572 1222

**Vitaflo International Ltd**, Tel: (0151) 709 9020, vitaflo@vitaflo.co.uk

**Vitalograph Ltd**, Tel: (01280) 827 110, sales@vitalograph.co.uk

**Wallace Cameron Ltd**, Tel: (01698) 354 600, sales@wallacecameron.com

**Wallace Manufacturing Chemists Ltd**, Tel: (01235) 538 700, info@alinter.co.uk

**Warburtons**, Tel: (01204) 513 004

**Warner Chilcott UK Ltd**, Tel: (01932) 824 700

**Wellfoods Ltd**, Tel: (01226) 381 712, wellfoods@wellfoods.co.uk

**Welsh Blood Service**, Tel: (01443) 622 000, donor.care@wales.nhs.uk

**Williams Medical Supplies Ltd**, Tel: (01685) 844 739

**Wockhardt UK Ltd**, Tel: (01978) 661 261

**Wyeth Pharmaceuticals**, Tel: (01628) 604 377, eumedinfo@pfizer.com

**Wynlit Laboratories**, Tel: (07903) 370 130

**Wyvern Medical Ltd**, Tel: (01531) 631 105

**Zentiva**, Tel: (01483) 554 101, gb-zentivamedicalinformation@sanofi.com

**Zeroderma Ltd**, Tel: (01858) 525 643

# Special-order manufacturers

Unlicensed medicines are available from 'special-order' manufacturers and specialist-importing companies; the MHRA maintains a register of these companies at [tinyurl.com/cdslike](http://tinyurl.com/cdslike).

Licensed **hospital manufacturing units** also manufacture 'special-order' products as unlicensed medicines, the principal NHS units are listed below. A database (*Pro-File*; [www.pro-file.nhs.uk](http://www.pro-file.nhs.uk)) provides information on medicines manufactured in the NHS; access is restricted to NHS pharmacy staff.

The Association of Pharmaceutical Specials Manufacturers may also be able to provide further information about commercial companies ([www.apsm-uk.com](http://www.apsm-uk.com)).

The MHRA recommends that an unlicensed medicine should only be used when a patient has special requirements that cannot be met by use of a licensed medicine.

As well as being available direct from the hospital manufacturer(s) concerned, many NHS-manufactured Specials may be bought from the Oxford Pharmacy Store, owned and operated by Oxford Health NHS Foundation Trust.

## England

### London

#### Barts and the London NHS Trust

Mr J. A. Rickard, Head of Barts Health Pharmaceuticals  
Barts Health NHS Trust  
The Royal London Hospital  
Pathology and Pharmacy Building  
80 Newark St  
Whitechapel  
London  
E1 2ES  
(020) 3246 0394 (order/enquiry)  
[barts.pharmaceuticals@bartshealth.nhs.uk](mailto:barts.pharmaceuticals@bartshealth.nhs.uk)

#### Guy's and St. Thomas' NHS Foundation Trust

Mr P. Forsey, Associate Chief Pharmacist  
Guy's and St. Thomas' NHS Foundation Trust  
Guy's Hospital  
Pharmacy Department  
Great Maze Pond  
London  
SE1 9RT  
(020) 7188 4992 (order)  
(020) 7188 5003 (enquiry)  
Fax: (020) 7188 5013  
[paul.forsey@gstt.nhs.uk](mailto:paul.forsey@gstt.nhs.uk)

#### Moorfields Pharmaceuticals

Mr. T. Record, Technical Director  
Moorfields Pharmaceuticals  
25 Provost St  
London  
N1 7NH  
(020) 7684 9090 (order/enquiry)  
Fax: (020) 7502 2332

#### London North West Healthcare NHS Trust

Mr K. Wong,  
London North West Healthcare NHS Trust  
Northwick Park Hospital  
Watford Rd  
Harrow  
Middlesex  
HA1 3UJ  
(020) 8869 2295 (order)  
(020) 8869 2204/2223 (enquiry)  
[kwong@nhs.net](mailto:kwong@nhs.net)

#### Royal Free Hampstead NHS Trust

Ms C. Trehane, Production Manager  
Royal Free Hampstead NHS Trust  
Pond St  
London  
NW3 2QG  
(020) 7830 2424 (order)  
(020) 7830 2282 (enquiry)  
Fax: (020) 7794 1875  
[christine.trehane@nhs.net](mailto:christine.trehane@nhs.net)

#### St George's Healthcare NHS Trust

Mr V. Kumar, Assistant Chief Pharmacist  
St George's Hospital  
Technical Services  
Blackshaw Rd  
Tooting  
London  
SW17 0QT  
(020) 8725 1770/1768  
Fax: (020) 8725 3947  
[vinodh.kumar@stgeorges.nhs.uk](mailto:vinodh.kumar@stgeorges.nhs.uk)

#### University College Hospital NHS Foundation Trust

Mr T. Murphy, Production Manager  
University College Hospital  
235 Euston Rd  
London  
NW1 2BU  
(020) 7380 9723 (order)  
(020) 7380 9472 (enquiry)  
Fax: (020) 7380 9726  
[tony.murphy@uclh.nhs.uk](mailto:tony.murphy@uclh.nhs.uk)

### Midlands and Eastern

#### Barking, Havering and Redbridge University Trust

Mr N. Fisher, Senior Principal Pharmacist  
Queen's Hospital  
Pharmacy Department  
Romford  
Essex  
RM7 0AG  
(01708) 435 463 (order)  
(01708) 435 042 (enquiry)  
[neil.fisher@bhrhospitals.nhs.uk](mailto:neil.fisher@bhrhospitals.nhs.uk)

#### Burton Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust

Mr D. Raynor, Head of Pharmacy Manufacturing Unit  
Queens Hospital  
Burton Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust  
Pharmacy Manufacturing Unit  
Belvedere Rd  
Burton-on-Trent  
DE13 0RB  
(01283) 511 511 ext: 5275 (order/enquiry)  
Fax: (01283) 593 036  
[david.raynor@burtonft.nhs.uk](mailto:david.raynor@burtonft.nhs.uk)

#### Colchester Hospital University NHS Foundation Trust

Mr S. Pullen, Pharmacy Production Manager  
Colchester General Hospital  
Main Pharmacy  
Turner Rd  
Colchester  
Essex  
C04 5JL  
(01206) 742 007 (order)  
(01206) 744 208 (enquiry)  
Fax: (01206) 841 249  
[pharmacy.stores@colchesterhospital.nhs.uk](mailto:pharmacy.stores@colchesterhospital.nhs.uk)  
(order)  
[psu.enquiries@colchesterhospital.nhs.uk](mailto:psu.enquiries@colchesterhospital.nhs.uk)  
(enquiry)

#### Ipswich Hospital NHS Trust

Dr J. Harwood, Production Manager  
Ipswich Hospital NHS Trust  
Pharmacy Manufacturing Unit  
Heath Rd  
Ipswich,  
IP4 5PD  
(01473) 703 440 (order)  
(01473) 703 603 (enquiry)  
Fax: (01473) 703 609  
[john.harwood@ipswichhospital.nhs.uk](mailto:john.harwood@ipswichhospital.nhs.uk)

#### Nottingham University Hospitals NHS Trust

Mr J. Graham, Senior Pharmacist, Production  
Nottingham University Hospitals NHS Trust  
Pharmacy Production Units  
Queens Medical Centre Campus  
Nottingham  
NG7 2UH  
(0115) 924 9924 ext: 66521 (enquiry/order)  
Fax: (0115) 970 9780  
[jeff.graham@nuh.nhs.uk](mailto:jeff.graham@nuh.nhs.uk)

#### University Hospital of North Staffordshire NHS Trust

Ms K. Ferguson, Chief Technician  
University Hospital of North Staffordshire NHS Trust  
Pharmacy Technical Services  
City General Site  
Stoke-on-Trent  
ST4 6QG  
(01782) 674 568 (order)  
(01782) 674 568 (enquiry)  
Fax: (01782) 674 575  
[caroline.ferguson@uhns.nhs.uk](mailto:caroline.ferguson@uhns.nhs.uk)

### North East

#### The Newcastle upon Tyne Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust

Mr Y. Hunter-Blair, Production Manager  
Royal Victoria Infirmary  
Newcastle Specials  
Pharmacy Production Unit  
Queen Victoria Rd  
Newcastle-upon-Tyne  
NE1 4LP  
(0191) 282 0395 (order)  
(0191) 282 0389 (enquiry)  
Fax: (0191) 282 0469  
[yan.hunter-blair@nuth.nhs.uk](mailto:yan.hunter-blair@nuth.nhs.uk)



**North West****Preston Pharmaceuticals**

Ms A. Bolch, Deputy Chief Pharmacist (PMU)  
 Preston Pharmaceuticals  
 Royal Preston Hospital  
 Fulwood  
 Preston  
 PR2 9HT  
 (01772) 523 617 (order)  
 (01772) 522 593 (enquiry)  
 Fax: (01772) 523 645  
 angela.bolch@lthtr.nhs.uk

**Stockport Pharmaceuticals**

Mr A. Singleton, Head of Production  
 Stepping Hill Hospital  
 Stockport NHS Foundation Trust  
 Stockport Pharmaceuticals  
 Stockport  
 SK2 7JE  
 (0161) 419 5666 (order)  
 (0161) 419 5657 (enquiry)  
 Fax: (0161) 419 5426  
 andrew.singleton@stockport.nhs.uk

**South****Portsmouth Hospitals NHS Trust**

Mr R. Lucas, Product Development Manager  
 Portsmouth Hospitals NHS Trust  
 Pharmacy Manufacturing Unit  
 Unit D2, Railway Triangle Industrial Estate  
 Walton Road  
 Farlington  
 Portsmouth  
 PO6 1TF  
 (02392) 389 078 (order)  
 (02392) 316 312 (enquiry)  
 Fax: (02392) 316 316  
 robert.lucas@porthosp.nhs.uk

**South East****East Sussex Healthcare NHS Trust**

Mr P. Keen, Business Manager  
 Eastbourne District General Hospital  
 East Sussex Hospitals NHS Trust  
 Eastbourne Pharmaceuticals  
 Kings Drive  
 Eastbourne  
 BN21 2UD  
 (01323) 414 906 (order)  
 (01323) 417 400 ext: 3076 (enquiry)  
 Fax: (01323) 414 931  
 paul.keen@esht.nhs.uk

**South West****Torbay Pharmaceuticals**

Ms J. Bamby, Pharmacy Manufacturing Services  
 Manager  
 South Devon Healthcare NHS Foundation Trust  
 Torbay Pharmaceuticals  
 Kemmings Close, Long Rd  
 Paignton  
 TQ4 7TW  
 (01803) 664 707  
 Fax: (01803) 664 354  
 jane.bamby@nhs.net

**Yorkshire****Calderdale and Huddersfield NHS Foundation Trust**

Dr B. Grewal, Managing Director  
 Calderdale and Huddersfield NHS Foundation  
 Trust  
 Huddersfield Pharmacy Specials  
 Gate 2 - Acre Mills, School St West  
 Huddersfield  
 HD3 3ET  
 (01484) 355 388 (order/enquiry)  
 info.hps@cht.nhs.uk

**Northern Ireland****Victoria Pharmaceuticals**

Mr S. Cameron, Production Manager -  
 Pharmacy  
 Victoria Pharmaceuticals  
 Royal Hospitals  
 Plenum Building  
 Grosvenor Road  
 Belfast  
 BT12 6BA  
 (028) 9063 0070 (order/enquiry)  
 Fax: (028) 9063 5282 (order/enquiry)  
 samuel.cameron@belfasttrust.hscni.net

**Scotland****NHS Greater Glasgow and Clyde**

Ms K. Pollock, Acting Production Manager  
 Pharmacy Production Unit  
 University Place  
 Glasgow  
 G12 8TA  
 (0141) 451 5820 (order)  
 (0141) 451 5822 (enquiry)  
 Fax: (0141) 334 9137  
 pharmacyproductionunit@ggc.scot.nhs.uk

**Tayside Pharmaceuticals**

Mr S. Bath, Production Manager  
 Ninewells Hospital  
 Tayside Pharmaceuticals  
 Dundee  
 DD1 9SY  
 (01382) 632 052 (order)  
 (01382) 632 273 (enquiry)  
 Fax: (01382) 632 060  
 sbath@nhs.net

**Wales****Cardiff and Vale University Health Board**

Mr P. Spark, Principal Pharmacist (Production)  
 Cardiff and Vale University Health Board  
 20 Fieldway  
 Cardiff  
 CF14 4HY  
 (029) 2074 8120  
 Fax: (029) 2074 8130  
 paul.spark@wales.nhs.uk

# Index

## A

- A2A Spacer, 171
- Abacavir, **416**
- with dolutegravir and lamivudine, **416**
  - with lamivudine, **416**
  - with lamivudine and zidovudine, **417**
- Abasaglar preparations, 459
- Abatacept, **641**
- Abbreviations and Symbols, inside back cover
- Abelcet, 374
- Abidec Multivitamin, 626
- Abilify preparations, 250
- Able Spacer, 171
- Abrasions, 764
- Abscess (periapical or periodontal), 709
- Abtard, 285
- Accofil, 580
- Accrete D3 preparations, 633
- Acea, 723
- ACE inhibitors, 100, 111
- Acetaminophen, see Paracetamol
- Acetazolamide, **683**
- Acetic acids, 614
- Acetylcholine chloride, **679**
- Acetylcysteine
- Emergency treatment of poisoning, **843**
  - Eye, **671**
- Acetylsalicylic Acid, see Aspirin
- Aciclovir
- Eye, **678**
  - Infection, **404**
  - Skin, **729**
- Acid-base imbalance, 583
- Acidex preparations, 51
- Aciferol D3, 631, 632
- Acitretin, **749**
- Acknowledgements, v
- Acnamino MR, 354
- Acne, 753, 754
- Acnecide, 756
- Acrivastine, **173**
- Acthrel, 474
- Actilyse, 88
- Actinomycin D, see Dactinomycin
- Actiq, 282
- Activated dimeticone, see Simeticone
- Active, 460
- Active elimination from the gastrointestinal tract, 839
- Active immunity, 777
- Actonel preparations, 470
- Actrapid preparations, 455
- Acular, 681
- Acute porphyrias, 603
- Drugs unsafe for use in acute porphyrias, 603
- Acyclovir, see Aciclovir
- A-CYS, 843
- Adalat preparations, 110
- Adalimumab, **642**
- Adapalene, **756**
- with benzoyl peroxide, **757**
- Adcal preparations, 593, 633
- Adcortyl preparations, 662
- Add Ins, 1049
- Additrac, 620
- Adenocor, 80
- Adenoscan, 80
- Adenosine, **79**
- Administration of medicines to children, 2
- Adoport, 525
- Adrenaline/epinephrine, **136**
- with articaine hydrochloride, **823**
  - with bupivacaine, see Bupivacaine with adrenaline
  - with lidocaine, see Lidocaine with adrenaline
- Adrenaline (epinephrine): emergency treatment of anaphylaxis dose table, 173
- Adrenergic neurone blocking drugs, 100
- Adrenoceptor agonists (sympathomimetics), 151
- Adrenocortical function testing, 473
- Advate, 85
- Adverse reactions, 13
- Adverse reactions to medical devices, 14
- Advocate Redi-Code+, 460
- AeroChamber Plus, 171
- AErrane, 807
- Agalsidase alfa, **606**
- Agalsidase beta, **606**
- Agrippal, 799
- Aidulan, 502
- Airomir preparations, 157
- Airways disease, obstructive, 146
- Airways disease, use of corticosteroids, 158
- Asthma, 158
- AirZone, 170
- Aizea, 508
- Aknemin, 354
- Aknemycin Plus, 759
- Albendazole, **383**
- Albumin solution, **595**
- Albunorm, 595
- Alburex, 595
- Albustix, 464
- Albuterol, see Salbutamol
- Alclometasone dipropionate, **734**
- Alcohol, **761**
- Alcohol, acute intoxication, 833
- Alcohol disinfectants, 761
- Aldactone, 126, 127
- Aldara, 768
- Aldehydes and derivatives, 767
- Aldosterone antagonists, 126, 139
- Aldurazyme, 611
- Alendronate, see Alendronic acid
- Alendronic acid, **468**
- Alenvona, 501
- Alfalcaldol, **630**
- Alfentanil, **818**
- Alginates, 50
- Alginic acid, **50**
- Alglucosidase alfa, **612**
- Alicalm, 1032
- Alimemazine tartrate, **177**
- Alkalinisation of urine, 492
- Alkalisating drugs, other, 583
- Alkalisating drugs, urinary, 492
- Alkylating agents, 533
- Allergen immunotherapy, 172
- Allergen-type vaccines, 181
- Allergic and inflammatory eye conditions, 666
- Allergic conditions, 171
- Allergic conjunctivitis, 666
- Allergic emergencies, 171
- Allerief, 178
- Alli, 68
- Allopurinol, **556**
- Almond oil, **693**
- Alomide, 668
- Alopecia, 533
- Alpha-adrenoceptor blockers, 100, 101, 491
- Alpha- and beta-adrenoceptor blockers, 104, 125
- Alphaderm, 740
- AlphaNine, 86
- Alpha<sub>2</sub>-adrenoceptor agonists, 231, 686
- Alpha tocopherol, **635**
- Alpha tocopheryl acetate, **635**
- Alprostadil, **143**
- Altacite Plus, 52
- Alteplase, **88**
- Althera, 1028
- Alu-Cap, 599
- Aluminium, 598
- Aluminium acetate, **693**
- Aluminium chloride hexahydrate, **752**
- Aluminium hydroxide, **598**
- with dicycloverine hydrochloride, magnesium oxide and simeticone, see Dicycloverine hydrochloride with aluminium hydroxide, magnesium oxide and simeticone

- with magnesium hydroxide, *see* Co-magaldrox
- with magnesium hydroxide and simeticone, *see* Simeticone with aluminium hydroxide and magnesium hydroxide
- Alvedon*, 273
- Alverine citrate, **63**
- Alvesco*, 162
- Ambirix*, 795
- Ambisome*, 374
- Amethocaine, *see* Tetracaine
- Ametop*, 831
- Amfetamines, 229
- Amfexa*, 230
- Amias*, 115
- Amikacin, **311**
- Amikin*, 312
- Amiloride hydrochloride, **142**
- Amino acid formula (essential and non-essential amino acids), 1015, 1019
- Amino acids and derivatives, 36, 604, 605, 613
- Aminoglycosides, 310, 675, 689, 697, 722
  - Cystic fibrosis, 310
  - Neonates, 311
- Aminohydroxypropylidene-diphosphonate disodium (APD), *see* Pamidronate disodium
- Aminophylline, **167**
- Aminosalicylates, **28**
- Amiodarone hydrochloride, **78**
- Amisulpride, **248**
- Amitriptyline hydrochloride, **238**
- Amlodipine, **108**
- Ammonaps*, 616
- Ammonia lowering drugs, 615
- Amoebicides, 384
- Amoebic infection, 300
- Amorolfine, **726**
- Amoxicillin, **339**
  - with clavulanic acid, *see* Co-amoxiclav
- Amoxil*, 341
- Amoxycillin, *see* Amoxicillin
- Amphotericin, **373**
- Amphotericin B, *see* Amphotericin
- Ampicillin, **341**
  - with flucloxacillin, *see* Co-fluampicil
- Anabact*, 723
- Anabolic steroids, 480
- Anaemia, iron deficiency, 569
- Anaemia, megaloblastic, 574
- Anaemias, 562
  - G6PD deficiency, 562
  - Hypoplastic, haemolytic, and renal anaemias, 563
  - Sick cell anaemia, 562
- Anaesthesia adjuvants, 809
- Anaesthesia (general), 803
  - Inhalational anaesthetics, 803
  - Intravenous anaesthetics, 803
  - Malignant hyperthermia, 804
- Anaesthesia (local), 822
  - Dental anaesthesia, 823
  - Toxicity, 823
  - Vasoconstrictors in combination with local anaesthetics, 823
- Anaesthetics, anxiolytics and hypnotics in dental practice, 24
- Anaesthetics, local, 680, 706, 823
- Anagrelide, **581**
- Anal fissure, 68
- Analgesics, 73, 269
  - Non-opioid analgesics and compound analgesic preparations, 270
  - Opioid analgesics, 270
- Analgesics, non-opioid, 271
- Anamix preparations*, 1046–1051
- Anaphylaxis and allergic emergencies, 172
- Anaphylaxis, emergency treatment with adrenaline (epinephrine) dosing table, 173
- Ancolil*, 379
- Androcur*, 482
- Androgens, **481**
- Androgens, anti-androgens and anabolic steroids, 480
- Androstan derivatives, 481, 563
- Anectine*, 813
- Angioedema, 183
- Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, 100
  - Neonates, 101
- Angiotensin-II receptor antagonists, 101, 115
- Angular cheilitis, 710, 721
- Anhydrol*, 752
- Animal and human bites, 302, 310
- Antacids, 50, 73
- Antagonists for central and respiratory depression, 809
- Antazoline with xylometazoline, **666**
- Anterior pituitary hormones, 473
- Anterior uveitis, 670
- Anthelmintics, 383
- Anthracycines and related drugs, 538
- Anthralin, *see* Dithranol
- Anthrax, 360
- Anthrax vaccine, 779
- Anti-androgens, 482, 754
- Anti-androgens and precocious puberty, 480
- Anti-arrhythmic drugs, 75
  - Class Ib, 76
  - Class Ic, 77
  - Class III, 78
  - Other, 79
- Antibacterial drug choice, 300
- Antibacterial preparations for the skin, 720
- Antibacterials, considerations before starting therapy, 300
- Antibacterials for eye infections, 675
- Antibacterials for eye infections in neonates, 675
- Antibacterials for prophylaxis, 301
- Antibacterials, other, 354, 369, 677, 690, 697, 724
- Antibacterials, principles of therapy, 300
  - Notifiable diseases, 301
  - Sepsis, early management, 301
  - Superinfection, 301
  - Switching from parenteral to oral treatment, 301
- Antibacterials, use for prophylaxis, 302
  - Animal and human bites, 302
  - Diphtheria in non-immune patients, 302
  - Gastro-intestinal procedures, 303
  - Immunosuppression and indwelling intraperitoneal catheters, 304
  - Infective endocarditis, 303
  - Invasive group A streptococcal infection, 302
  - Joint prostheses and dental treatment, 304
  - Meningococcal meningitis, 302
  - Obstetric surgery, 303
  - *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease, 302
  - *Staphylococcus aureus* lung infection in cystic fibrosis, 302
  - Orthopaedic surgery, 303
  - Pertussis, 302
  - Pneumococcal infection in asplenia or in patients with sickle-cell disease, 302
  - Rheumatic fever, 302
  - Tuberculosis, 302
  - Urinary-tract infection, 302
- Antibacterial therapy, 301
- Antibodies, 841
- Antibody responsive malignancy, 528
- Anticholinesterases, other, 648, 816
- Anticoagulants, oral, 90
  - Haemorrhage, 90
  - Target INR, 90
- Anticoagulants, parenteral, 91
  - Epoprostenol, 91
  - Heparin, 91
  - Heparin flushes, 91
  - Heparinoids, 91
  - Low molecular weight heparins, 91
- Anticomodonals, 756
- Antidepressant drugs, 235
- Antidepressant poisoning, 835
- Antidiabetic drugs, 448
- Antidiarrhoeal drugs, 73
- Antidiuretic hormone disorders, 432
- Anti-doping, 24
- Antidotes and chelators, other, 817, 839, 840, 841, 843
- Anti-D (Rh<sub>0</sub>) immunoglobulin, **771**
- Antiemetics, 290

- Antiepileptics, 195, 221
  - Barbiturates, 216, 221
- Antifibrinolytic drugs and haemostatics, 82
- Antifibrinolytics, 82
- Antifoaming drugs, 52
- Antifungal preparations for the skin, 721
- Antifungals for eye infections, 675
- Antifungals, other, 378, 726
- Antifungals, 370
  - Aspergillosis, 370
  - Candidiasis, 370
  - Cryptococcosis, 370
  - Echinocandin antifungals, 371
  - Histoplasmosis, 371
  - Imidazole antifungals, 371
  - Polyene antifungals, 371
  - Triazole antifungals, 371
- Antigardial drugs, 385
- Antihistamines, 171, 260
- Antihypertensives, 100
  - Adrenergic neurone blockers, 100
  - Alpha-adrenoceptor blockers, 100
  - Central, 100
  - Vasodilators, 100
- Antihypertensives, centrally acting, 102
- Anti-infectives, 744
- Antimalarial poisoning, 836
- Antimalarials, 386, 393, 638
  - Artemether with lumefantrine, 386
  - Chloroquine, 386
  - Mefloquine, 386
  - Piperaquine with artemimol, 386
  - Primaquine, 386
  - Proguanil, 386
  - Pyrimethamine, 386
  - Quinine, 386
  - Tetracyclines, 386
- Antimetabolites, 518, 533, 541
- Antimotility drugs, 35
- Antimuscarinics, 61, 151, 809
  - Anaesthesia, 810
  - Ear, nose and oropharynx, 698
  - Eye, 670, 678
  - Gastro-intestinal system, 61
  - Genito-urinary system, 489
  - Nervous system, 256, 266
  - Respiratory system, 152
  - Skin, 751
- Antimycobacterials, other, 366
- Antineoplastics, other, 550
- Antioxidants, 687
- Antiplatelet drugs, 91
- Antiproliferative immunosuppressants, 517
- Antipropulsives, 48
- Antiprotozoal drugs, 384
  - Amoebicides, 384
  - Antigardial drugs, 385
  - Leishmaniacides, 385
  - Toxoplasmosis, 385
  - Trichomonacides, 385
  - Trypanocides, 385
- Antiprotozoals, other, 300, 380, 385, 399, 678
- Antipruritics, 752
- Antipsychotic poisoning, 836
- Antipsychotics, 232, 241, **244**
  - Antipsychotics, first-generation, 244, 268
  - Antipsychotics, second-generation, 248
- Antipsychotics dose equivalence table, 243
- Antisecretory drugs, 73
- Antiseptics, 760
- Antiseptics and disinfectants, 761
  - Alcohol disinfectants, 761
  - Antiseptics and disinfectants, other, 762
  - Iodine products, 761
- Antispasmodics, 34, 61, 63
- Antithymocyte immunoglobulin (rabbit), **518**
- Antithyroid drugs, 483
  - In neonates, 483
  - In pregnancy, 483
- Antitoxins, 776, 844
- Antituberculosis drugs, 363
- Antivaricella-zoster immunoglobulin, *see* Varicella-zoster immunoglobulin
- Antiviral preparations for the skin, 721
- Antivirals for eye infections, 675
- Antivirals, other, 408, 427
- Antracen derivatives, 745
- Anusol-Hc, 69
- Anxiety, 21, 235
- Anxiolytics, 294
- Apidra preparations*, 456
- Apraclonidine, **686**
- Aprepitant, **263**
- Apresoline*, 117
- Aproxin*, 111
- AproDerm preparations*, 718
- Aptamil preparations*, 1028
- Aptivus*, 427
- Aquadrate*, 720
- Aquamax*, 716
- Aquamol*, 718
- Arachis oil, **44**
  - with chlorobutanol, **693**
- Aranesp preparations*, 565
- Arcoxia*, 654
- Arginine, **613**
- Aripiprazole, **249**
- Arjun*, 694
- Aromatase inhibitors, 482
- Aromatic inhalations, 187
- Arovit*, 627
- Arrhythmias, 75, 103
  - Bradycardia, 75
  - Supraventricular tachycardia, 75
  - Ventricular tachycardia and ventricular fibrillation, 75
- Artelac preparations*, 672, 674
- Artemether with lumefantrine, 386, **393**
- Artemimol with piperaquine phosphate, **393**
- Arthritis, 638
- Articaine hydrochloride with adrenaline, *see* Adrenaline with articaine hydrochloride
- Artificial saliva products, 701
- Artificial tears*, 672
- Asacol preparations*, 30, 31
- Ascaricides (common roundworm infections), 382
- Ascorbic acid, **629**
- Ascur*, 630
- Asfotase alfa, **608**
- Asmanex Twisthaler*, 164
- Asparaginase, **550**
- Aspergillosis, 370
- Aspirin, **91**
- Aspirin poisoning, 833
- AS Saliva Orthana*, 701
- Assessment of pituitary function, 474
- Asthma, 651
- Asthma, acute, 150
- Asthma, chronic, 146
  - Exercise-induced asthma, 149
- Asthma, use of corticosteroids, 158
- Astringents, 693, 752
- Ataluren, **647**
- Atarax*, 179
- Atazanavir, **423**
- Atenolol, **106**
- Atimos Module*, 155
- Ativan*, 223
- Atomoxetine, **226**
- Atorvastatin, **132**
- Atovaquone, **380**
  - with proguanil hydrochloride, **394**
- Atracurium besilate, **813**
- Atracurium besylate, *see* Atracurium besilate
- Atriance*, 546
- Atrolak XL*, 253
- Atropine sulfate
  - Anaesthesia, **810**
  - Eye, **670**
  - with diphenoxylate hydrochloride, *see* Co-phenotrope
- Atrovent preparations*, 153
- Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, 225
- Atypical haemolytic uraemic syndrome and paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria, 568
- Audavate*, 735
- Audmonal*, 63
- Augmentin preparations*, 344
- Auroberine MR*, 63
- Autopen 24*, 464
- Autopen Classic*, 464
- AutoSense*, 460
- Avamys*, 700

- Avaxim, 795  
 Aveeno, 718  
 Aviticol, 632  
 Aviva, 460  
 Avloclor, 395  
 Avoca, 768  
 Avomine, 266  
 Ayendi, 278  
 Aymes preparations, 1022  
 Azactam, 333  
 Azapress, 519  
 Azathioprine, **518**  
 Azelaic acid, **756**  
 Azelastine hydrochloride
  - ▶ Eye, **667**
  - ▶ Nose, **698**
  - ▶ with fluticasone, *see* Fluticasone with azelastine
 Azidothymidine, *see* Zidovudine  
 Azithromycin
  - ▶ Infection, **329**
 Azopt, 684  
 Aztreonam, **332**  
 AZT, *see* Zidovudine  
 Azyter, 676  
 Azzalure, 259
- B**
- B-2-50, 628  
 Baby formulas (specialised), *see* Specialised formulas  
 Babyhaler, 171  
 Bacillus Calmette–Guérin vaccine, **790**  
 Baclofen, **649**  
 Bacterial and viral vaccines, combined, 789  
 Bacterial eye infection, 675  
 Bacterial infection, 300  
 Bacterial skin infections, 722  
 Bacterial vaccines, 790  
 Bactroban, 697, 724  
 Balance Activ, 515  
 Balneum, 717, 720  
 Balneum Plus, 720  
 Balsalazide sodium, **29**  
 Barbiturates, 216, 221  
 Barkat products, 1040–1043  
 Barrier creams and ointments, **714**  
 Barrier preparations, 713, 714  
 Basiliximab, **526**  
 BCG vaccine, 779  
 BCG Vaccine, *see* Bacillus Calmette–Guérin vaccine  
 Becaita, 68  
 Beclomethasone dipropionate
  - ▶ Respiratory system, **160**
  - ▶ Nose, **699**
  - ▶ Skin, **735**
 Beclomethasone dipropionate, *see* Beclomethasone dipropionate  
 Beconase, 699  
 Bedranol SR, 105  
 Bee Venom, 181  
 Bee venom extract, **181**  
 Benadryl preparations, 173, 174  
 Bendrofluazide, *see* Bendroflumethiazide  
 Bendroflumethiazide  
 Bendroflumethiazide, **111**  
 BeneFIX, 86  
 Benepali, 645  
 Benerva, 628  
 Benoxinate hydrochloride, *see* Oxybuprocaine hydrochloride  
 Benzalkonium chloride, **760**  
 Benzhexol hydrochloride, *see* Trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride  
 Benzoates, 614, 728  
 Benzodiazepine antagonists, 840  
 Benzodiazepine poisoning, 836  
 Benzodiazepines, 218, 222, 232, 809  
 Benzodiazepine toxicity, 840  
 Benzoic acid with salicylic acid, **728**  
 Benzoin tincture, **189**  
 Benzoyl peroxide, **756**
  - ▶ with adapalene, *see* Adapalene with benzoyl peroxide
  - ▶ with clindamycin, **756**
 Benzylamine hydrochloride, **707**  
 Benzyl benzoate with bismuth oxide, bismuth subgallate, hydrocortisone acetate, peru balsam and zinc oxide, **69**  
 Benzylpenicillin sodium, **338**  
 Beractant, **189**  
 Berinert P, 184  
 Beta<sub>2</sub>-adrenoceptor agonists, selective, **154**
  - ▶ Selective beta<sub>2</sub>-agonists (long-acting), 154
  - ▶ Selective beta<sub>2</sub>-agonists (short-acting), 156
 Beta-adrenoceptor blockers, 102, **103**
  - ▶ Alpha- and beta-adrenoceptor blockers, 104, 125
  - ▶ Beta blocking agents, non-selective, 104
  - ▶ Beta blocking agents, selective, 106
 Beta-adrenoceptor blocking drugs, 102
  - ▶ Arrhythmias, 103
  - ▶ Heart failure, 103
  - ▶ Hypertension, 102
  - ▶ Thyrotoxicosis, 103
 Beta-blockers for glaucoma, 682  
 Beta blockers poisoning, 836  
 Betacap, 735  
 Beta-Cardone, 81  
 Betacarotene, **766**  
 Betachek C50, 460  
 Betachek G5, 460  
 Betachek Visual, 460  
 Betadine preparations, 762  
 Betagan preparations, 683  
 Betaine, **608**  
 Betaloc preparations, 107  
 Betamethasone
  - ▶ Ear, **691**
  - ▶ Endocrine system, **438**
  - ▶ Eye, **668**
  - ▶ Nose, **699**
  - ▶ Oropharynx, **708**
  - ▶ Skin, **735**
  - ▶ with calcipotriol, *see* Calcipotriol with betamethasone
  - ▶ with clioquinol, **740**
  - ▶ with clotrimazole, **740**
  - ▶ with fusidic acid, **741**
  - ▶ with salicylic acid, **741**
 Betamethasone with neomycin
  - ▶ Ear, **692**
  - ▶ Eye, **669**
  - ▶ Nose, **698**
  - ▶ Skin, **741**
 Beta-Prograne preparations, 106  
 Betaxolol, **682**  
 Betnesol preparations, 668, 670, 691, 692, 698, 699  
 Betnovate preparations, 735  
 Betoptic, 682  
 Bettamousse, 735  
 Bexsero, 792  
 Bezafibrate, **130**  
 Bezalip preparations, 130  
 BGStar, 460  
 Bicarbonate, 586, 693  
 Biguanides, 452  
 Bilastine, **173**  
 Bile acids, 64  
 Bile acid sequestrants, 129  
 Biliary disorders, 64  
 Biltricide, 384  
 Bimizza, 501  
 Binosto, 469  
 BioActive Q10 Uniquinol, 609  
 Bio-Carotene, 766  
 Biodermatin, 627  
 Biological medicines, 2  
 Biosimilar medicines, 2  
 Biotene Oralbalance, 702  
 Biotest, 595  
 Biotin, **627**  
 Bio-Vitamin D3 - brand name, 632  
 BioXtra, 702  
 Biphasic insulin aspart, **458**  
 Biphasic insulin lispro, **458**  
 Biphasic isophane insulin, **457**  
 Biphasic Isophane Insulin
  - Injection—intermediate acting, *see* Biphasic isophane insulin
 Bipolar disorder and mania, 232  
 Biquelle XL, 253  
 Bisacodyl, **45**  
 Bisphosphonates, 467, **468**  
 Bladder and urinary disorders, 488  
 Bladder infection, 493  
 Bladder instillations and urological surgery, 493
  - ▶ Bladder infection, 493
  - ▶ Dissolution of blood clots, 493
  - ▶ Maintenance of indwelling urinary catheters, 493
 Bleeding disorders, 82  
 Bleo-Kyowa, 547  
 Bleomycin, **547**



- Blephagel*, 672  
*Blerone XL*, 490  
*Blink preparations*, 674  
Blocked catheters and lines, 88  
Blood and blood-forming organs, 562  
Blood clots, 88  
Blood clots dissolution, 493  
Blood glucose monitoring, 460  
Blood glucose testing strips, 460  
Blood infections, antibacterial therapy, 304  
  > Septicaemia in neonates, 304  
Blood ketones testing strips, 464  
Blood pressure conditions, 98  
*BNFC only*, 1027, 1030, 1031  
BNF Staff, vi  
*Bocouture*, 259  
Body surface area in children (tables), 1110  
*Bonefos*, 470  
Bone metabolism, 467  
  > Bisphosphonates, 467  
  > Calcitonin, 467  
  > Osteoporosis, 467  
Bone resorption inhibitors, 471  
*Bonjela preparations*, 708  
*Boostrix-IPV*, 789  
Borderline substances, 713, 765, 1012  
Boric acid with salicylic acid and tannic acid, **728**  
Bosentan, **120**  
*Botox*, 259  
Botulinum toxin type A, **258**  
Botulism antitoxin, **776**, 779  
Bowel cleansing, 36  
Bowel colic and excessive respiratory secretions, 23  
Bradycardia, 75  
*Bramitob*, 314  
*Brancico XL*, 253  
Breast-feeding (prescribing), 19  
*Breeze 2*, 460  
*Brevibloc*, 107  
*Brevinor*, 504  
*Brevoxyl*, 756  
*Bricanyl preparations*, 158  
*Bridion*, 817  
*Brimisol PR*, 288  
Brinzolamide, **684**  
Brivacetam, **195**  
*Briviact*, 196  
*Brolene preparations*, 678  
Bronchodilators, 151  
*Brufen preparations*, 656  
*Buccastem*, 269  
*Buccolam*, 225  
Buclizine hydrochloride with codeine phosphate with paracetamol, see Paracetamol with buclizine hydrochloride and codeine phosphate  
*Budelin Novolizer*, 161  
*Budenofalk*, 32  
Budesonide  
  > Gastro-intestinal system, **32**  
  > Nose, **699**  
  > Respiratory system, **160**  
  > with formoterol, **161**  
Bulk-forming laxatives, 40  
Bumetanide, **140**  
Bupivacaine hydrochloride, **824**  
  > with adrenaline, **825**  
Buprenorphine, **274**  
Buprenorphine patches and 24-hour oral morphine equivalence table, 21  
*Buscopan*, 62  
*Busilvex*, 534  
Busulfan, **533**  
Busulphan, see Busulfan  
**C**  
*Cacit preparations*, 593, 633  
*Caelyx*, 539  
Caffeine citrate, **190**  
Calamine with zinc oxide, **752**  
*Cala Soothe*, 752  
*Calceos*, 633  
*Calcichew preparations*, 593, 633, 634  
*Calci-D*, 633  
Calciferol, see Ergocalciferol  
Calcineurin inhibitors and related drugs, 519, 747  
Calcipotriol, **750**  
  > with betamethasone, **736**  
Calcitonin, 467  
Calcitonin (salmon), **471**  
Calcitriol  
  > Blood and nutrition, **631**  
  > Skin, **750**  
Calcium, 592, 599  
Calcium acetate, **599**  
Calcium and vitamin D, see Ergocalciferol with calcium lactate and calcium phosphate  
Calcium carbonate, **592**  
  > with calcium lactate gluconate, **593**  
  > with colecalciferol, see Colecalciferol with calcium carbonate  
  > with sodium alginate and sodium bicarbonate, see Sodium alginate with calcium carbonate and sodium bicarbonate  
Calcium-channel blockers, 87, 107, **108**, 144  
Calcium-channel blockers poisoning, 836  
Calcium chloride, **593**  
  > with potassium chloride, sodium chloride and sodium lactate, see Potassium chloride with calcium chloride and sodium chloride and sodium lactate  
Calcium gluconate, **594**  
Calcium imbalance, 592  
Calcium lactate, **594**  
  > with calcium phosphate and ergocalciferol, see Ergocalciferol with calcium lactate and calcium phosphate  
Calcium lactate gluconate with calcium carbonate, see Calcium carbonate with calcium lactate gluconate  
Calcium phosphate, **594**  
  > with calcium lactate and ergocalciferol, see Ergocalciferol with calcium lactate and calcium phosphate  
  > with colecalciferol, see Colecalciferol with calcium phosphate  
Calcium polystyrene sulfonate, **600**  
*Calcort*, 438  
*Calfovit D3*, 634  
Calluses, 766  
*Calmurid preparations*, 720  
*Calogen preparations*, 1035, 1037  
*Calpol preparations*, 273  
*Calprofen*, 656  
*Calshake*, 1037  
*Camcolit*, 234  
Camouflagers, 764  
Camouflages, 765  
Campylobacter enteritis, 306  
Canakinumab, **526**  
*Candidas*, 372  
Candesartan cilexetil, **115**  
Candidiasis, 370, 721  
*Canesten preparations*, 515, 691, 725, 743  
Cannabinoids, 261  
*Capasal*, 746  
*Capexion*, 525  
*Capimune*, 521  
*Capsorin*, 521  
Captopril, **112**  
*Caramet CR*, 258  
*Carbagen preparations*, 198  
*Carbaglu*, 614  
Carbamazepine, **196**  
Carbapenems, 314  
Carbidopa with levodopa, see Co-careldopa  
Carbimazole, **483**  
Carbocysteine, **184**  
Carbomers, **671**  
*Carbomix*, 839  
Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors, 683  
Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors and systemic drugs for glaucoma, 682  
Carbon monoxide poisoning, 837  
Carboplatin, **548**  
Carboxylic acids, 515  
Cardiac arrest, 136  
Cardiac glycosides, 81  
Cardiopulmonary resuscitation, 136  
Cardiovascular disease risk factors, 128  
Cardiovascular risk reduction, 98

- Cardiovascular system infections, antibacterial therapy, 304
- Endocarditis, 305
- Cardura preparations*, 491
- CareSens N*, 460
- Carexil*, 285
- Carglumic acid, **613**
- Carmellose*, 672
- Carmellose sodium, **672**
- Carnitine deficiency, 604
- Carnitine, *see* Levocarnitine
- Carnitor*, 605
- Carticaine hydrochloride with epinephrine, *see* Adrenaline with articaine hydrochloride
- Carvedilol, **125**
- Caspofungin, **372**
- Castor oil with collodion and colophony, **764**
- Catapres preparations*, 102
- Catheter maintenance solutions, 493
- Cation exchange resins, 600
- Cautionary and advisory labels for dispensed medicines, 1053
- Cayston*, 333
- Ceanel*, 760
- Cefaclor, **318**
- Cefadroxil, **317**
- Cefalexin, **317**
- Cefixime, **320**
- Cefotaxime, **320**
- Cefradine, **318**
- Ceftazidime, **321**
- Ceftriaxone, **322**
- Cefuroxime, **319**
- Celevac*, 40
- CellCept*, 528
- Cellulitis, 310
- Celluvisc*, 672
- Celsenti*, 427
- Centrally acting sympathomimetics, 226
- Central nervous system infections, antibacterial therapy, 305
- Meningitis, 305
- Cephalexin, *see* Cefalexin
- Cephalosporins, 308, 316
- Cephalosporins, first-generation, 317
- Cephalosporins, second-generation, 318
- Cephalosporins, third-generation, 320
- Cephradine, *see* Cefradine
- Ceprofin*, 86
- Cepton*, 762
- Cerazette*, 508
- Cerebral palsy and spasticity, 255
- Cerelle*, 508
- Cerezyme*, 607
- Cernevite*, 620
- Cerumol preparations*, 693, 694
- Cervarix*, 798
- Cesol*, 384
- C1-esterase inhibitor, **183**
- Cetirizine hydrochloride, **174**
- Cetaben*, 716, 718
- Cetaxal*, 690
- Cetrimide
- with chlorhexidine, *see* Chlorhexidine with cetrimide
  - with lidocaine, *see* Lidocaine with cetrimide
  - with undecenoic acid, **760**
- Changes to BNFC since last edition, xix
- Charcoal, activated, **839**
- Charcodote*, 839
- Chelates and complexes, 54
- Chemical toxicity, 839
- Chenodeoxycholic acid, **64**
- Children with unknown or incomplete immunisation history, 777
- Chirocaine*, 826
- Chloral hydrate, **294**
- Chlorambucil, **534**
- Chloramphenicol
- Ear, **690**
  - Eye, **677**
  - Infection, **354**
- ChloraPrep*, 763
- Chlorhexidine
- Oropharynx, **703**
  - Skin, **762**
  - with cetrimide, **763**
  - with hydrocortisone and nystatin, *see* Hydrocortisone with chlorhexidine hydrochloride and nystatin
  - with isopropyl alcohol, **763**
  - with neomycin, **697**
  - with nystatin, **728**
- Chlorobutanol and arachis oil, *see* Arachis oil with chlorobutanol
- Chloromycetin*, 677
- Chloroquine, 386, **395**
- with proguanil, **395**
- Chlorothiazide, **111**
- Chlorphenamine maleate, **178**
- Chlorpheniramine maleate, *see* Chlorphenamine maleate
- Chlorpromazine hydrochloride, **244**
- Chlortalidone, **142**
- Chlortalidone, *see* Chlortalidone
- Cholecalciferol, *see* Colecalciferol
- Cholera vaccine, 780, **791**
- Cholestasis, 64
- Cholesterol, **66**
- Cholesterol absorption inhibitors, 130
- Cholestyramine, *see* Colestyramine
- Cholic acid, **65**
- Choline salicylate, **708**
- Cholurso*, 66
- Chorionic gonadotrophin, **474**
- Chronic bowel disorders, 25
- Chronic hypoglycaemia, 465, 466
- Ciclesonide, **162**
- Ciclosporin, **519**
- Cidomycin preparations*, 313
- Cilastatin with imipenem, *see* Imipenem with cilastatin
- Cilest*, 505
- Cilique*, 505
- Cilodex*, 692
- Ciloxan*, 676
- Cimzix*, 501
- Cinchocaine hydrochloride
- with fluocortolone caproate and fluocortolone pivalate, **69**
  - with hydrocortisone, **70**
  - with prednisolone, **70**
- Cinnarizine, **265**
- Cinryze*, 184
- Cipramil*, 236, 237
- Ciprofloxacin
- Ear, **690**
  - Eye, **676**
  - Infection, **348**
  - with dexamethasone, *see* Dexamethasone with ciprofloxacin
- Ciproxin preparations*, 349
- Circadin*, 295
- Cisatracurium, **814**
- Cisplatin, **548**
- Citalopram, **236**
- Citanest preparations*, 830
- Citramag*, 37
- Citric acid, **188**
- with magnesium carbonate, **37**
  - with potassium citrate, **492**
- Citrulline, **614**
- Clairette*, 755
- Clarelux*, 736
- Clarie XL*, 330
- Clarithromycin, **330**
- Clarityn preparations*, 176
- Clasteon*, 470
- Clavulanic acid
- with amoxicillin, *see* Co-amoxiclav
  - with ticarcillin, *see* Ticarcillin with clavulanic acid
- Clenil preparations*, 160
- Clexane*, 95
- Clindamycin, 309
- Genito-urinary system, **514**
  - Infection, **327**
  - Skin, **755**
  - with benzoyl peroxide, *see* Benzoyl peroxide with clindamycin
  - with tretinoin, *see* Tretinoin with clindamycin
- Clinipod*, 764
- Clinitas preparations*, 672, 674
- Clioquinol
- with betamethasone, *see* Betamethasone with clioquinol
  - with fluocinolone acetonide, *see* Fluocinolone acetonide with clioquinol
  - with flumetasone pivalate, *see* Flumetasone pivalate with clioquinol

- ClobaDerm*, 736  
*Clobavate*, 737  
*Clobazam*, **218**  
*Clobetasol propionate*, **736**  
 ▶ with neomycin sulfate and nystatin, **742**  
*Clobetasone butyrate*, **737**  
 ▶ with nystatin and oxytetracycline, **742**  
*Clofarabine*, **541**  
*Clonazepam*, **219**  
*Clonidine hydrochloride*, **102**  
*Clostridium difficile* infection, 306  
*Clotrimazole*  
 ▶ Ear, **691**  
 ▶ Genito-urinary, **515**  
 ▶ Skin, **724**  
 ▶ with betamethasone, *see* Betamethasone with clotrimazole  
 ▶ with hydrocortisone, *see* Hydrocortisone with clotrimazole  
*Clozapine*, **250**  
*Clozaril*, 251  
 Cluster headache and the trigeminal autonomic cephalalgias, 290  
 Coagulation factor deficiencies, 84  
 Coagulation proteins, 84  
 Coal tar, **745**  
 ▶ with coconut oil and salicylic acid, **746**  
 ▶ with dithranol and salicylic acid, **746**  
 ▶ with lecithin, **746**  
 ▶ with salicylic acid and precipitated sulfur, **746**  
 ▶ with zinc oxide, **747**  
*Co-amoxiclav*, **343**  
*Cobalamin*, 576  
*Cobicistat*  
 ▶ with darunavir, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide, *see* Darunavir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide  
 ▶ with elvitegravir, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide, *see* Elvitegravir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide  
*Co-careldopa*, **257**  
*Co-codamol*, **275**  
*Cocoids*, 746  
*Co-cyprindiol*, **754**  
*Co-danthramer*, **45**  
*Co-danthrusate*, **46**  
*Codeine phosphate*, **276**  
 ▶ with buclizine hydrochloride and paracetamol, *see* Paracetamol with buclizine hydrochloride and codeine phosphate  
 ▶ with paracetamol, *see* Co-codamol  
*Codipar*, 275, 276  
 Co-dydramol, *see* Dihydrocodeine with paracetamol  
 Coeliac disease, 25, 622  
 Co-enzyme Q10, *see* Ubidecarenone  
 Co-fluampicil, **342**  
*Colazide*, 29  
*Calciferol*, **631**  
 ▶ with calcium carbonate, **633**  
 ▶ with calcium phosphate, **634**  
*Colectid*, 129  
*Coolestipol hydrochloride*, **129**  
*Colestyramine*, **129**  
*Colgate preparations*, 706  
*Colief*, 1039  
*ColiFin*, 348  
*Colifoam*, 441, 739  
*Colistimethate sodium*, **346**  
*Colistin sulfomethate sodium*, *see* Colistimethate sodium  
*Collodions*, 764  
*Collodion with castor oil and colohony*, *see* Castor oil with collodion and colophony  
*Colobreathe*, 348  
*Colofac preparations*, 63  
*Colomycin*, 347  
*Colpermin*, 35  
*Co-magaldrox*, **51**  
 Combined Hormonal Contraception and Risk of Venous Thromboembolism, 498  
 Combined hormonal contraceptives, 493, **498**  
 Combined Oral Contraceptives  
 Monophasic 21-day preparations, 494  
 Combined Oral Contraceptives  
 Monophasic 28-day preparations, 494  
 Combined Oral Contraceptives  
 Phasic 21-day preparations, 494  
 Combined Oral Contraceptives  
 Phasic 28-day preparations, 494  
*Combivir*, 423  
*Compact*, 460  
*Complan Shake*, 1025  
 Complementary and alternative medicine, 3  
 Complement regulatory proteins, 183  
 Compound, Hartmann's Solution for Injection, *see* Potassium chloride with calcium chloride and sodium chloride and sodium lactate  
*Concerta XL*, 228  
 Conditions affecting sputum viscosity, 184  
*Condylone*, 767  
 Confusion and restlessness, 23  
 Conjunctivitis, 306  
 Conjunctivitis (purulent), 306  
*Conotrane*, 714  
 Conscious sedation for clinical procedures, 820  
 Constipation, 21, 39  
 Constipation and bowel cleansing, 36  
 Contact lenses, 666  
*Contiflo XL*, 492  
 Continuous subcutaneous infusions, 22  
*Contour*, 460  
*Contour Next*, 460  
*Contour TS*, 460  
 Contraception, 493  
 ▶ Combined, 498  
 ▶ Devices, 505  
 ▶ Emergency, 507  
 ▶ Oral progestogen-only, 507  
 ▶ Parenteral progestogen-only, 511  
 ▶ Spermicidal, 513  
 Contraceptives, hormonal, 493  
 Contraceptives, interactions, 497  
 Contraceptives, non-hormonal, 496  
 Controlled drugs and drug dependence, 9  
 Conversions of units, 1114  
*Convulex*, 214  
 Convulsions during poisoning, 833  
 Convulsions in palliative care, 21, 23  
 Co-phenotrope, **48**  
 Copper absorption inhibitors, 616  
 Copper chelators, 616  
*Cordarone X preparations*, 79  
*Corsodyl preparations*, 703, 704  
*Corticorelin*, **474**  
 Corticosteroid combinations with anti-infectives  
 ▶ Ear, 692  
 ▶ Eye, 669  
 ▶ Nose, 698  
 ▶ Skin, 740  
 Corticosteroids  
 ▶ Ear, 691  
 ▶ Endocrine system, 434  
 ▶ Eye, 666, 668  
 ▶ Gastro-intestinal system, 32, 69  
 ▶ Immune system disorders and transplantation, 517  
 ▶ Inhaled, **159**  
 ▶ Intranasal, **698**  
 ▶ Local injections, 661  
 ▶ Replacement therapy, 436  
 ▶ Systemic, **436**  
 ▶ Oropharynx, 708  
 ▶ Respiratory system, 158  
 ▶ Soft tissue and joint disorders, 661  
 ▶ Topical, 732, **734**  
 Corticosteroids, anti-inflammatory dose equivalence table, 436  
 Corticotrophin-releasing hormone, *see* Corticorelin  
 Corticotrophins, 473  
*Co-simalcite*, **51**  
*Cositam XL*, 492  
*Cosmegen*, 547  
*CosmoCol*, 43  
*CosmoFer*, 571  
*Cosopt*, 685  
 Co-trimoxazole, **350**

- Cough and congestion, 187  
 Cough preparations, 187  
 Cough suppressants, 188  
*Covermark preparations*, 765, 1013  
*Covonia preparations*, 188  
 Cow's milk allergy, 61  
*Cozaar preparations*, 116  
 Crab lice, 722  
 Crackers, crispbreads, and breadsticks, 1041  
*Creon*, 73  
*Crestor*, 134  
 CRH, *see* Corticorelin  
 Crisantaspase, **551**  
 Crohn's disease, 25  
 Cromoglicate and related therapy, 166  
 Crotamiton, **752**  
 Croup, 152  
 Cryptococcosis, 370  
*Crystacide*, 763  
 CS spray poisoning, 838  
*Cubicin*, 356  
*Cubicle D3*, 631, 632  
*Cuplex*, 769  
*Curasept*, 704  
*Curatoderm*, 751  
*Curosulf*, 190  
 Cushing's syndrome and disease, 443  
 Cutaneous larva migrans, 382  
*Cutivate*, 738, 739  
 Cyanide poisoning, 837  
 Cyanide toxicity, 839  
 Cyanocobalamin, **575**  
*Cyanokit*, 576  
 Cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase III inhibitors, 581  
*Cyclimorph*, 284  
 Cyclizine, **260**  
   ▶ with morphine, *see* Morphine with cyclizine  
 Cyclopentolate hydrochloride, **671**  
 Cyclophosphamide, **535**  
 Cycloplegics, 678  
 Cycloserine, **366**  
 Cyclosporin, *see* Ciclosporin  
*Cyklokapron*, 83  
*Cymevene*, 407  
*Cyprostat*, 482  
 Cyproterone acetate, **482**  
   ▶ with ethinylestradiol, *see* Co-cyprindiol  
*Cystadane*, 608  
*Cystadrops*, 606  
*Cystagon*, 606  
 Cysteamine, *see* Mercaptamine  
 Cystic fibrosis, 184  
*Cysticide*, 384  
 Cystinosis, 605  
*Cystrin*, 489  
 Cytarabine, **541**  
 Cytokine modulators, 638  
 Cytomegalovirus infections, 404, 407  
*Cytomel*, 487  
 Cytotoxic antibiotics, 533  
 Cytotoxic antibiotics and related substances, 547  
 Cytotoxic drug-induced side effects, 555  
 Cytotoxic drugs, 531  
   ▶ Antimetabolites, 533  
   ▶ Cytotoxic antibiotics, 533  
   ▶ Effect on pregnancy and reproductive function, 532  
   ▶ Handling guidelines, 531  
   ▶ Intrathecal chemotherapy, 531  
   ▶ Other antineoplastic drugs, 533  
   ▶ Safety information, 531  
   ▶ Safe systems for cytotoxic medicines, 531  
   ▶ Side-effects, 532  
   ▶ Vinca alkaloids, 533  
 Cytotoxic responsive malignancy, 531  
*Cytoxan*, 535
- D**
- Dacarbazine, **536**  
 Dactinomycin, **547**  
*Daktacort*, 744  
*Daktarin preparations*, 516, 710, 726  
*Dalacin preparations*, 328, 514, 755  
*Dalivit*, 626  
 Dalteparin sodium, **94**  
*Danamep*, 92  
 Danaparoid sodium, **93**  
*Dandrazol*, 725  
*Dantrium preparations*, 522  
 Dantrolene sodium, **821**  
 Dantron  
   ▶ with docusate sodium, *see* Co-danthrusate  
   ▶ with poloxamer 188, *see* Co-danthramer  
 Dapsone, **380**  
 Daptomycin, **355**  
*Daraprim*, 399  
 Darbepoetin alfa, **564**  
*Dario*, 460  
*Dario Lite*, 460  
 Darunavir, **423**  
   ▶ with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide, **424**  
 Daunorubicin, **538**  
*DaunoXome*, 539  
*Daylette*, 501  
*DDAVP*, 434  
*DDAVP Melt*, 434  
 Ddi, *see* Didanosine  
*Decapeptyl SR*, 472  
 Defective medicines, 15  
 Deferasirox, **576**  
 Deferiprone, **577**  
 Deferoxamine Mesilate, *see* Desferrioxamine mesilate  
*Deflazacort*, **438**  
*Delmosart*, 228  
*Deltacortril Enteric*, 443  
*Deltastab*, 443  
 Demeclocycline hydrochloride, **352**  
*Denela*, 828
- Dental Advisory Group, vii  
 Dental anaesthesia, 823  
 Dental and orofacial pain, *see* Analgesics  
 Dental caries, 705  
 Dental Practitioners' Formulary, 1056  
*Dentinex preparations*, 53  
*Denzapine*, 251  
*DepoCyte*, 542  
 Deprescribing, 1  
 Depression, 235  
*Derbac-M*, 729  
*Dermablend preparations*, 765  
*Dermabond*, 764  
*Dermacolor preparations*, 765, 1013  
*Derma+Flex*, 764  
*Dermalo*, 716  
*Dermamist*, 718  
 Dermatological preparations for specific areas of the body, 712  
*Dermatronics Once*, 720  
 Dermatophytoses, 721  
*Dermax*, 760  
*Dermol preparations*, 715, 717  
*Dermovate preparations*, 736  
*Descovy*, 419  
*Desferal*, 578  
 Desferrioxamine mesilate, **578**  
*Desflurane*, **807**  
*Desitrend*, 204  
 Desloratadine, **174**  
 Desloughing agents, 761  
*DesmoMelt*, 434  
 Desmopressin, **432**  
*Desmospray*, 434  
*Desmotabs*, 434  
 Desogestrel, **507**  
   ▶ with ethinylestradiol, *see* Ethinylestradiol with desogestrel  
*Desomono*, 508  
*Desorex*, 508  
*Destolit*, 66  
*Desunin*, 631  
*Detrusitol preparations*, 490  
*Dexafree*, 669  
 Dexamethasone  
   ▶ Endocrine system, **439**  
   ▶ Eye, **668**  
   ▶ with ciprofloxacin, **692**  
   ▶ with glacial acetic acid and neomycin sulfate, **692**  
   ▶ with hypromellose, neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate, **670**  
 Dexamethasone with framycetin sulfate and gramicidin  
   ▶ Ear, **692**  
   ▶ Eye, **670**  
 Dexamfetamine sulfate, **229**  
 Dexamphetamine sulfate, *see* Dexamfetamine sulfate  
*Dexedrine preparations*, 229  
*Deximmune*, 521  
*Dexsol*, 439  
 Dextran 70 with hypromellose, *see* Hypromellose with dextran 70

- Dextrogel*, 591  
 Dextrose Monohydrate, *see* Glucose  
*DF 118*, 278  
*D-Gam*, 772  
*DHC Continus*, 278  
*Diabact UBT*, 60  
 Diabetes, diagnosis and monitoring, 460  
 Diabetes insipidus, 432  
 Diabetes mellitus, 445
  - ▶ Blood glucose monitoring, 460
  - ▶ Hypoglycaemia, 445
  - ▶ Urinalysis, 460
 Diabetes mellitus (type 1), 445
  - ▶ Alcohol, 445
  - ▶ Driving, 445
  - ▶ HbA1c measurement, 445
  - ▶ Hypodermic equipment, 447
  - ▶ Management of type 1 diabetes with insulin, 446
  - ▶ Oral glucose tolerance tests, 445
 Diabetes mellitus (type 2), 448
  - ▶ Antidiabetic drugs, 448
  - ▶ Treatment of type 2 diabetes, 449
 Diabetes, pregnancy and breast-feeding, 451
  - ▶ Gestational diabetes, 451
 Diabetes, surgery and medical illness, 450  
 Diabetic complications, 449
  - ▶ Cardiovascular disease, 449
  - ▶ Nephropathy, 449
  - ▶ Neuropathy, 449
 Diabetic ketoacidosis, 449  
*Diacomit*, 211  
*Dialamine*, 1036  
 Dialysis, 18  
*Diamcron preparations*, 453  
 Diamorphine hydrochloride, **277**  
 Diamorphine hydrochloride and morphine sulfate equivalence table, 23  
*Diamox preparations*, 684  
*Dianette*, 755  
 Diarrhoea, 47  
*Diastix*, 460, 464  
 Diatrizoates, *see* Meglumine amidotrizoate with sodium amidotrizoate  
*Diazemuls*, 221  
*Diazepam*, **220**  
 Diazoxide, **466**  
 Diclofenac potassium, **651**  
 Diclofenac sodium
  - ▶ Eye, **681**
  - ▶ Musculoskeletal system, **652***Dicloflex preparations*, 653  
*Diclomax preparations*, 653  
 Dicobalt edetate, **839**  
 Dicyclomine hydrochloride, *see* Dicycloverine hydrochloride  
 Dicycloverine hydrochloride, **61**
  - ▶ with aluminium hydroxide, magnesium oxide and simeticone, **62**
 Didanosine, **417**  
 Dienogest with estradiol valerate, **500**  
 Diethylcarbamazepine, **383**  
 Diethyl phthalate with methyl salicylate, **763**  
*Differin*, 757  
*Diffiam*, 707  
*Diffundox XL*, 492  
*Diffucan*, 375  
 Diflucortolone valerate, **737**  
*DigiFab*, 841  
 Digoxin, 73, **81**  
 Digoxin-specific antibody, 81, **841**  
 Digoxin toxicity, 841  
 Dihydrocodeine tartrate, **278**
  - ▶ with paracetamol, **278**
 1,25-Dihydroxycholecalciferol, *see* Calcitriol  
*Dilacort*, 443  
*Dilcardia SR*, 144  
 Diloxanide furoate, **300**  
 Diltiazem hydrochloride, **144**  
 Dimeticone, **728**  
 Dinoprostone, **143**  
*Diocyl*, 45  
 Diocyl sodium sulphosuccinate, *see* Docusate sodium  
*Dioderm*, 739  
*Dioralyte preparations*, 591, 592  
*Diovan preparations*, 116  
*Dipeptiven*, 620  
 Diphenoxylate hydrochloride with atropine sulfate, *see* Co-phenotrope  
 Diphtheria antitoxin, **776**  
 Diphtheria in non-immune patients, 302  
 Diphtheria vaccine, 780
  - ▶ with haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, pertussis, poliomyelitis and tetanus, **789**
  - ▶ with pertussis, poliomyelitis vaccine and tetanus, **789**
  - ▶ with poliomyelitis and tetanus vaccine, **790**
  - ▶ with tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis b, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, **790***Diprivan*, 806  
*Diprobace*, 718, 719  
*Diprosalic*, 741, 742  
*Diprosone*, 735  
 Dip/Ser, *see* Diphtheria antitoxin  
 Dipyrindamole, **92**  
 Disease-modifying anti-rheumatic drugs, 639  
 Disodium hydrogen citrate with glucose, potassium chloride and sodium chloride, **591**  
 Disorders of gastric acid and ulceration, 50  
*Distaclor preparations*, 319  
 Dithranol, **745**
  - ▶ with coal tar and salicylic acid, *see* Coal tar with dithranol and salicylic acid
  - ▶ with salicylic acid and zinc oxide, **745***Dithrocream*, 745  
*Ditropan preparations*, 489  
*Diuresal*, 141  
 Diuretics, 73, 138
  - ▶ Diuretics with potassium, 139
  - ▶ Loop diuretics, 139
  - ▶ Potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists, 139
  - ▶ Thiazides and related diuretics, 139*D-Max*, 632  
 Dobutamine, **122**  
*DocOmega*, 1048  
 Docusate sodium
  - ▶ Ear, **694**
  - ▶ Gastro-intestinal system, **44**
  - ▶ with dantron, *see* Co-danthrusate*Docusol*, 45  
*Dolmatil*, 248  
 Dolutegravir, **411**
  - ▶ with abacavir and lamivudine, *see* Abacavir with dolutegravir and lamivudine
 Domperidone, **261**  
 Dopamine hydrochloride, **123**  
 Dopamine precursors, 257  
 Dopamine receptor antagonists, 261  
 Dopaminergic drugs used in dystonias, 256  
*Dorisin XL*, 133  
 Dornase alfa, **186**  
 Dorzolamide, **684**
  - ▶ with timolol, **685***Doublebase preparations*, 716, 718  
*Dovobet*, 736  
*Dovonex*, 750  
*Doxadura preparations*, 491  
 Doxazosin, **491**  
 Doxepin
  - ▶ Nervous system, **239**
  - ▶ Skin, **753**
 Doxorubicin hydrochloride, **539**  
*Doxorubin*, 540  
 Doxycycline
  - ▶ Infection, **352**
  - ▶ Oropharynx, **709***Drapolene*, 714  
*Dretine*, 501  
*Driclor*, 752  
 Dried prothrombin complex, **84**  
 Droperidol, **268**  
*Dropodex*, 669  
 Drospirenone with ethinylestradiol, *see* Ethinylestradiol with drospirenone  
 Drug allergy (suspected or confirmed), 14  
 Drug-resistant tuberculosis, 363  
 Drugs and skilled tasks, 3  
 Drugs and sport, 24  
 Drug toxicity, 840  
 Dry and scaling skin disorders, 713  
 Dry eye, 671



Dry mouth, 21, 701  
*Drytec preparations*, 589  
 D4T, *see* Stavudine  
*Duac*, 756  
 Ductus arteriosus, drugs affecting, 143  
   > Closure of the ductus arteriosus, 143  
   > Maintenance of patency, 143  
*Dukoral*, 791  
*DulcoEase*, 45  
*Dulco-Lax preparations*, 45  
*Duocal preparations*, 1035  
*Duofilm*, 769  
*Duphalac*, 41  
*Durogesic preparations*, 281  
 Dyes, 679  
*Dymista*, 700  
 Dysmenorrhoea, 269  
 Dyspepsia, 50  
 Dysphagia, 22  
 Dyspnoea, 22  
*Dysport*, 259  
 Dystonias and related disorders, 256  
   > Antimuscarinic drugs used in dystonias, 256  
   > Dopaminergic drugs used in dystonias, 256  
   > Drugs used in essential tremor, chorea, tics, and related disorders, 256

## E

*EAA*, 1048  
 Ear, 688  
   > Otitis externa, 688  
   > Otitis media, 688  
   > Removal of ear wax, 689, 693  
 Ear infections, antibacterial therapy, 306  
*Earol*, 694  
*Easiphen*, 1049  
*Easylhaler preparations*, 155, 157, 160, 161  
*E-B2*, 628  
*EBchek*, 464  
*E-Caps*, 636  
 Echinocandin antifungals, 371, 372  
*Eciferol*, 634  
*Econac preparations*, 653  
 Econazole nitrate  
   > Genito-urinary system, **515**  
   > Skin, **725**  
*Ecopace*, 113  
*Eculizumab*, **568**  
*Eczema*, 730  
 Eczema and psoriasis, 730  
 Eczema and psoriasis, drugs affecting the immune response, 732  
*E-D3*, 631, 632  
*Edurant*, 415  
 EEA and Swiss prescriptions, 4  
*Efavirenz*, **413**  
*Efflosomyl XL*, 490

Eformoterol fumarate, *see* Formoterol fumarate  
*Efracea*, 355  
*Elaprase*, 611  
 Electrolyte replacement therapy, 583  
 Electrolytes, 583  
*Element*, 460  
*Elemental preparations*, 1015  
*Elevin*, 503  
*Elidel*, 747  
*Ellaone*, 507  
*Elocon*, 740  
*Elocta*, 85  
*ELOINE*, 501  
 Elosulfase alfa, **610**  
*Eltrombopag*, **582**  
*Eltroxin*, 486  
*Elvanse*, 230  
 Elvitegravir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide, **418**  
*Emelpin*, 719  
*Emend*, 264  
*Emerade*, 138  
 Emergency contraception, 496  
 Emergency supply of medicines, 8  
*Emerres*, 511  
 Emicizumab, **83**  
*Emila*, 828  
 Emollient and barrier preparations, 713  
 Emollient bath and shower products  
   > Antimicrobial-containing, **714**  
   > Colloidal oatmeal-containing, **715**  
   > Paraffin-containing, **715**  
   > Soya-bean oil-containing, **716**  
   > Tar-containing, **717**  
 Emollient creams and ointments  
   > Antimicrobial-containing, **717**  
   > Colloidal oatmeal-containing, **717**  
   > Paraffin-containing, **718**  
 Emollients, 714  
 Emollients, urea-containing, **719**  
*Emollin*, 718  
*Emozul*, 57  
*Emsogen*, 1019  
 Emtricitabine, **418**  
   > with darunavir, cobicistat and tenofovir alafenamide, *see* Darunavir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide  
   > with elvitegravir, cobicistat and tenofovir alafenamide, *see* Elvitegravir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide  
   > with rilpivirine and tenofovir alafenamide, **419**  
   > with tenofovir alafenamide, **419**  
   > with tenofovir disoproxil, **420**  
*Emtriva*, 418  
*Emulsiderm*, 715

*Emustil*, 674  
*Enalapril maleate*, **113**  
*Enbrel preparations*, 645  
*Endekay*, 706  
 Endocarditis, 304  
 Endothelin receptor antagonists, 120  
*Energivit*, 1035  
*Ener-G products*, 1040–1044  
*Enfamil preparations*, 1030, 1031  
 Enfuvirtide, **410**  
*Engerix B*, 797  
 Enkephalinase inhibitors, 49  
*Enopen*, 718  
 Enoxaparin sodium, **94**  
 Enoximone, **127**  
*Enshake*, 1037  
*Ensure preparations*, 1018, 1022–1024  
 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific), 1014  
 Enteral feeds (non-disease specific):  
   Child under 12 years, 1018  
 Enteral nutrition, 621  
*Entocort preparations*, 32  
*Entrocalm preparations*, 60  
 E numbers, inside back cover  
 Enuresis, 488  
*Enzira*, 799  
 Enzyme inhibitors, 444  
 Enzymes, 606–608, 610, 612, 663  
 Enzyme stabiliser, 607  
 Enzymes used in soft-tissue disorders, 663  
*Epaderm*, 718, 719  
*Epanutin*, 207  
 Ephedrine hydrochloride  
   > Cardiovascular system, **123**  
   > Nose, **695**  
*Epihyal*, 636  
*Epiduo*, 757  
 Epiglottitis, 309  
 Epilepsy, 191  
   > Epilepsy syndromes, 194  
   > Febrile convulsions, 195  
   > Focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation, 193  
   > Generalised seizures, 193  
   > Status epilepticus, 195  
 Epilepsy and other seizure disorders, 191  
*Epilim preparations*, 210  
 Epinastine hydrochloride, **667**  
*EpiPen*, 138  
 Epirubicin hydrochloride, **540**  
*Episenta*, 210  
*Epistatus*, 225  
*Epivir*, 421  
 Epoetin alfa, **565**  
 Epoetin beta, **566**  
 Epoetins, **563**  
 Epoetin zeta, **567**  
 Epoprostenol, 91, **118**  
*E45 preparations*, 716, 718–720  
*Eprex*, 566  
 Eptacog alfa (activated), *see* Factor VIIa (recombinant)

- Equasym preparations*, 229
- Equivalent anti-inflammatory doses of corticosteroids, 436
- Equivalent doses of opioid analgesics table, 21
- Ergamisol*, 384
- Ergocalciferol*, **634**
- with calcium lactate and calcium phosphate, **634**
- Ergoral*, 634
- Erlibelle*, 503
- Eroset*, 279
- Ertapenem*, **315**
- Erwinase*, 552
- Erysipelas*, 310
- Erythrocine preparations*, 332
- Erythrolar*, 332
- Erythromycin*, **331**
- with isotretinoin, *see* Isotretinoin with erythromycin
  - with tretinoin, *see* Tretinoin with erythromycin
  - with zinc acetate, **755**
- Erythroped preparations*, 332
- Eskazole*, 383
- Esmeron*, 816
- Esmolol hydrochloride*, **106**
- Esmya*, 507
- Esomeprazole*, **56**
- Essential thrombocythaemia, 581
- Essential tremor, chorea, tics, and related disorders, 256
- Estradiol valerate with dienogest, *see* Dienogest with estradiol valerate
- Estradiol with norgestrel, **500**
- E-Tabs*, 635
- Etanercept*, **643**
- Ethambutol hydrochloride*, **367**
- Ethinylestradiol*, **478**
- with cyproterone acetate, *see* Cyproprindiol
  - with desogestrel, **500**
  - with drospirenone, **501**
  - with etonogestrel, **501**
  - with gestodene, **502**
  - with levonorgestrel, **503**
  - with norelgestromin, **503**
  - with norethisterone, **504**
  - with norgestimate, **504**
- Ethinylestradiol*, *see* Ethinylestradiol
- Ethosuximide*, **198**
- Ethylene glycol and methanol poisoning, 837
- Etomidate*, **804**
- Etomidate-Lipuro*, 805
- Etonogestrel*, **511**
- with ethinylestradiol, *see* Ethinylestradiol with etonogestrel
- Etropophos*, 549
- Etoposide*, **549**
- Etoricoxib*, **653**
- Etravirine*, **413**
- Eucalyptus* with menthol, **189**
- Eucerin Intensive*, 720
- Eudemine*, 466
- Eumovate*, 737
- Eurartesim*, 394
- Eurax preparations*, 753
- European viper snake venom antiserum, **844**
- Evacal D3*, 634
- Everolimus*, **559**
- EveryDay-D*, 632
- E-Vicotrat*, 635
- Evolocumab*, **134**
- Evoltra*, 541
- Evolve preparations*, 674
- Evra*, 504
- Excessive respiratory secretion, 22
- ExCetra*, 718
- Excipients, 3
- Exercise-induced asthma, 149
- Exjade*, 577
- Exmabase*, 718
- Exmaben*, 718
- Exmalatum*, 718
- ExmaQS*, 718
- Exocin*, 677
- Exocrine pancreatic insufficiency, 71
- Exorex preparations*, 746
- Extemporaneous preparations, 7
- Exterol*, 694
- Extracorporeal circuits, 90
- Extrapulmonary tuberculosis, 362
- Extravasation, 663
- Eydelto*, 685
- Eye, 665
- Contact lenses, 666
  - Eye preparations: control of microbial contamination, 665
- Eye, allergy and inflammation, 666
- Corticosteroids, 666
- Eye, infections, 674
- Antibacterials, 675
  - Antibacterials for eye infections in neonates, 675
  - Antifungals, 675
  - Antivirals, 675
- Eye infections, antibacterial therapy, 306
- Congenital chlamydial conjunctivitis, 306
  - Congenital gonococcal conjunctivitis, 306
  - Conjunctivitis (purulent), 306
- Eye procedures, 678
- Eye, surgical and peri-operative drug use, 680
- Eykappo*, 677
- Eylamdo*, 685
- Eysano*, 683
- Eytazox*, 684
- Ezetimibe*, **130**
- with simvastatin, *see* Simvastatin with ezetimibe
- Ezetrol*, 130
- Ezinelle*, 511
- F**
- Fabrazyme*, 607
- Fabry's disease, 606
- Factor VIIa (recombinant), **84**
- Factor VIII fraction, dried, **85**
- Factor VIII inhibitor bypassing fraction, **86**
- Factor IX fraction, dried, **85**
- Factor XIII fraction, dried, **86**
- Fanndi*, 85
- Faramsil*, 492
- Fasigyn*, 335
- Fasturtec*, 556
- Fate*, 1044
- Faverin*, 237
- Feanolla*, 508
- Febrile convulsions, 195
- Feed additives, 1039
- Feed supplements, 1034
- Feed thickeners and pre-thickened drinks, 1039
- FEIBA Imuno*, 87
- Feldene preparations*, 661
- Felypressin with prilocaine, *see* Prilocaine with felypressin
- Female sex hormone responsive conditions, 478
- FemCap*, 507
- Femodene preparations*, 502
- Femodette*, 502
- Fenactol preparations*, 653
- Fencino*, 281
- Fendrix*, 797
- Fenofibrate*, **131**
- Fentalis*, 281
- Fentanyl*, **279**
- Fentanyl patches and oral morphine dose equivalence table, 21
- Fenticonazole nitrate, **516**
- Feospan Spansules*, 573
- Ferinject*, 570
- Ferric carboxymaltose, **570**
- Ferriprox*, 578
- Ferrograd preparations*, 573
- Ferrous fumarate, **571**
- Ferrous gluconate, **572**
- Ferrous sulfate, **572**
- with folic acid, **573**
- Fexofenadine hydrochloride, **175**
- Fibrates, 130
- Fibrinogen, dried, **86**
- Fibrinolytic drugs, 88
- Fibrogammin P*, 86
- Fifty:50*, 719
- Filaricides, 382
- Filgrastim*, **579**
- Finacea*, 756
- Finax products*, 1041
- Flagyl preparations*, 335
- Flamazine*, 724
- Flarin*, 656
- Flavouring preparations, 1040
- FlavourPac*, 1040
- Flebogammadif*, 774
- Flecainide acetate, **77**
- Flectone XL*, 492

- Fleet preparations*, 44  
*Flexbumin*, 595  
*Flexitol*, 720  
*Flixabi*, 34  
*Flixonase*, 700  
*Flixotide preparations*, 162, 163  
*Flolan*, 119  
*Flomax MR*, 492  
*Flomaxtra XL*, 492  
*Flotros*, 490  
*Flowfusor*, 763  
*Fluarix preparations*, 799  
*Flucloxacillin*, **345**  
   ▶ with ampicillin, *see* Co-fluampicil  
*Fluconazole*, **374**  
*Flucytosine*, **378**  
*Fludara*, 542  
*Fludarabine phosphate*, **542**  
*Fludrocortisone acetate*, **440**  
*Fludroxycortide*, **737**  
*Fluenz preparations*, 799  
 Fluid requirements for children over 1 month, 584  
 Fluids and electrolyte imbalance, 583  
   ▶ Electrolyte replacement therapy, 583  
   ▶ Oral preparations, 583  
   ▶ Oral rehydration therapy, 584  
   ▶ Parenteral preparations, 586  
*Flumazenil*, **840**  
*Flumetasone pivalate* with clioquinol, **691**  
*Fluocinolone acetate*, **738**  
   ▶ with clioquinol, **742**  
   ▶ with neomycin, **742**  
*Fluocinonide*, **738**  
*Fluocortolone caproate* with cinchocaine hydrochloride and fluocortolone pivalate, *see* Cinchocaine hydrochloride with fluocortolone caproate and fluocortolone pivalate  
*Fluorescein sodium*, **679**  
*Fluorescein* with lidocaine, **680**  
*Fluoride*, 705  
*Fluorometholone*, **669**  
*Fluoxetine*, **237**  
*Flurandrenolone*, *see* Fludroxycortide  
*Flurbiprofen*  
   ▶ Eye, **681**  
   ▶ Musculoskeletal system, **654**  
   ▶ Oropharynx, **707**  
*Fluticasone*  
   ▶ Nose, **700**  
   ▶ Respiratory, **162**  
   ▶ Skin, **738**  
   ▶ with azelastine, **700**  
   ▶ with formoterol, **163**  
   ▶ with salmeterol, **163**  
   ▶ with vilanterol, **163**  
*Flutiform*, 163  
*Fluvastatin*, **132**  
*Fluvoxamine maleate*, **237**  
*FML Liquifilm*, 669  
 Focal seizures with or without secondary generalisation, 193  
 Folates, 555, 574  
 Folic acid, **574**  
   ▶ with ferrous sulphate, *see* Ferrous sulfate with folic acid  
 Folinic acid, **555**  
*Fomicyt*, 357  
 Food allergy, 60  
   ▶ Cow's milk allergy, 61  
 Foods for special diets, 1040  
*Foradil*, 155  
*Forceval preparations*, 629  
 Formaldehyde, **767**  
*Formoterol fumarate*, **154**  
   ▶ with budesonide, *see* Budesonide with formoterol  
   ▶ with fluticasone, *see* Fluticasone with formoterol  
 Formulas (specialised, infant and child), *see* Specialised formulas  
*Forticare*, 1032  
*Forticreme preparations*, 1025  
*Fortijuice*, 1023  
*Fortini preparations*, 1019, 1021  
*Fortisip preparations*, 1024–1026  
*Fortum*, 322  
*Fosamax preparations*, 469  
*Fosamprenavir*, **425**  
*Foscarnet sodium*, **408**  
*Foscavir*, 409  
*Fosfomycin*, **356**  
*Fosphenytoin sodium*, **199**  
*Fragmin*, 94  
*Framycetin sulfate*, **689**  
   ▶ with dexamethasone and gramicidin, *see* Dexamethasone with framycetin sulfate and gramicidin  
 Frangula with sterculia, *see* Sterculia with frangula  
*Frebini preparations*, 1019, 1021  
*Freederm*, 759  
*FreeStyle*, 463  
*FreeStyle Lite*, 460  
*FreeStyle Optium*, 460, 464  
 Fresh frozen plasma, **87**  
*Fresubin preparations*, 1014–1017, 1023, 1024, 1026, 1035  
 Friars' Balsam, *see* Benzoin tincture  
*Frisium*, 219  
*FruitiVits*, 1038  
*Frusamide*, *see* Furosemide  
*Frusol*, 141  
 FTC, *see* Emtricitabine  
*Fucibet*, 741  
*Fucidin preparations*, 358, 744  
*Fulium preparations*, 632  
 Fungal infection, 370  
 Fungal skin infections, 724  
 Fungating tumours, 22  
*Fungizone*, 374  
*Furosemide*, **140**  
 Fusidic acid  
   ▶ Eye, **677**  
   ▶ Infection, **357**  
   ▶ with betamethasone, *see* Betamethasone with fusidic acid  
   ▶ with hydrocortisone, *see* Hydrocortisone with fusidic acid  
*Fuzeon*, 410  
*Fybogel preparations*, 35  
*Fycompa*, 205  
*Fyne Dynamics Pinnacle*, 170

## G

- Gabapentin*, **200**  
*Gabitril*, 211  
*GA gel*, 1046  
*Galactamin preparations*, 1030, 1031  
*Galafold*, 607  
*Galcodine*, 277  
*Galenphol*, 188  
*Galfer preparations*, 572  
*Galpseud preparations*, 696  
*Galsulfase*, **610**  
*Gammacplex*, 774  
*Gamunex*, 774  
*Ganciclovir*, **407**  
*Gardasil preparations*, 798  
 Gastric and duodenal ulceration, 53  
 Gastro-enteritis, 306  
*Gastrografin*, 37  
 Gastro-intestinal pain, 22  
 Gastro-intestinal procedures, antibacterial prophylaxis, 303  
 Gastro-intestinal smooth muscle spasm, 61  
 Gastro-intestinal system infections, antibacterial therapy, 306  
 Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease, 59  
 Gastroprotective complexes and chelators, 54  
 Gaucher's disease, 607  
*Gavilast*, 55  
*Gaviscon preparations*, 51  
 G-CSF, *see* Filgrastim  
*Gedarel*, 501  
*Gelaspan*, 596  
*Gelatin*, **595**  
*Gelofusine*, 596  
*Geloplasma*, 596  
*GelTears*, 672  
 Gemtuzumab ozogamicin, **528**  
 General anaesthesia, 803  
 Generalised seizures, 193  
*Genfura*, 370  
 Genital chlamydial infection (uncomplicated), non-gonococcal urethritis, and non-specific genital infection, 307  
 Genital infections, antibacterial therapy, 307  
*Genius products*, 1040  
*Genotropin preparations*, 476  
*Gentamicin*  
   ▶ Ear, **689**  
   ▶ Eye, **675**  
   ▶ Infection, **312**  
   ▶ with hydrocortisone, **690**

- Genvoya*, 418  
*Germoloids preparations*, 71  
 Gestational diabetes, 451  
 Gestodene with ethinylestradiol, *see*  
   Ethinylestradiol with gestodene  
*Gielism*, 63  
 Gingivitis (acute necrotising  
   ulcerative), 709  
*Glandosane*, 702  
*Glaucoma*, 681
  - Beta-blockers, 682
  - Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors  
   and systemic drugs, 682
  - Miotics, 682
  - Prostaglandin analogues, 682
  - Sympathomimetics, 682*Glaucoma and ocular hypertension*,  
 681  
*Glensoludex*, 439  
 Glibenclamide, **453**  
 Glliclazide, **453**  
*Glivec*, 560  
*Glucagen Hypokit*, 466  
*Glucagon*, **465**  
*Glucoboost*, 591  
 Glucocorticoid therapy, 436  
*Glucodock*, 463  
*Glucosflex-R*, 463  
*Glucogel*, 591  
*Glucolab*, 463  
*Glucomen products*, 463, 464  
*Glucophage preparations*, 452  
*Glucorx products*, 463–464  
 Glucose, **590**
  - with disodium hydrogen citrate  
   with potassium chloride and  
   sodium chloride, *see* Disodium  
   hydrogen citrate with glucose,  
   potassium chloride and sodium  
   chloride
  - with sodium chloride, *see* Sodium  
   chloride with glucose*Glucosylceramide synthase*  
   inhibitors, 611  
*GlucZen.auto*, 463  
*GluNEO*, 463  
*Glutafin products*, 1040–1043  
 Glutaraldehyde, **767**  
 Glutaric aciduria (type 1), 1046  
*Glutarol*, 767  
 Gluten-free foods, 1040  
 Glycerin, *see* Glycerol  
 Glycerol, **46**  
 Glycerol phenylbutyrate, **615**  
 Glyceryl trinitrate, **135**  
 Glycogenolytic hormones, 465, 466  
 Glycogen storage disease, 1046  
 Glycopeptide antibacterials, 325  
 Glycopyrrolate, *see* Glycopyrronium  
   bromide  
 Glycopyrronium bromide
  - Anaesthesia, **811**
  - Skin, **751**
  - with neostigmine, *see*  
   Neostigmine with  
   glycopyrronium bromide*Glycosade*, 1046  
*Glypressin*, 66  
 GnRH, *see* Gonadorelin  
*Golden Eye preparations*, 678  
 Golimumab, **645**  
 Gonadorelin, **474**  
 Gonadotrophin-releasing hormone,  
   *see* Gonadorelin  
 Gonadotrophin-releasing  
   hormones, 471  
 Gonadotrophin replacement  
   therapy, 474  
 Gonadotrophin responsive  
   conditions, 471  
 Gonadotrophins, 474  
*Gonapeptyl Depot*, 472  
 Gonorrhoea: uncomplicated, 307  
 Goserelin, **471**  
 G6PD deficiency, 562  
 Granisetron, **264**  
*Granocyte*, 580  
*Granpidam*, 121  
 Granulocyte-colony stimulating  
   factors, 579  
 Grass pollen extract, **181**  
*Grazax*, 182  
*Grifols*, 595  
 Griseofulvin, **379**  
 Growth hormone disorders, 475  
 Guanfacine, **231**  
 Guidance on intravenous infusions,  
   16  
 Guidance on prescribing, 1  
*Gygel*, 513  
*Gyno-Daktarin*, 516  
*Gyno-Pevaryl*, 516  
*Gynoxin*, 516
- H**  
 Haem arginate, **604**  
 Haem derivatives, 604  
*Haemoclin*, 85  
*Haemonine*, 86  
*Haemophilus influenzae* type B  
   conjugate vaccine, 780  
*Haemophilus influenzae* type b  
   disease: prevention of secondary  
   cases, 302  
*Haemophilus influenzae* type b with  
   diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis,  
   hepatitis B and poliomyelitis  
   vaccine, *see* Diphtheria with  
   tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis b,  
   poliomyelitis and haemophilus  
   influenzae type b vaccine  
*Haemophilus influenzae* type B with  
   meningococcal group C vaccine,  
   **791**  
*Haemophilus influenza* with  
   diphtheria with pertussis with  
   poliomyelitis and tetanus, *see*  
   Diphtheria with haemophilus  
   influenzae type b vaccine,  
   pertussis, poliomyelitis and  
   tetanus  
*Haemorrhage*, 90  
 Haemorrhoids, 68  
 Haemostatic products, 86  
 Haemostatics, 83  
*Haldol preparations*, 246  
*Haleraid products*, 171  
 Haloperidol, **245**  
*Harvoni*, 402  
*Havrix*, 795  
*Hayleve*, 178  
 HbA1c measurement, 445  
*HBVAXPRO*, 797  
 HCG, *see* Chorionic gonadotrophin  
*HCU preparations*, 1046  
 Headache *see* Migraine  
*Healthy Start Children's Vitamin*, 626  
 Heart failure, 103, 125  
 Heavy metal poisoning, 837  
*Hedrin preparations*, 728, 729  
*Helicobacter pylori* diagnosis, 60  
*Helicobacter pylori* eradication,  
   recommended regimens table, 53  
*Helicobacter pylori* infection, 53  
*Helicobacter Test INFAI*, 60  
*Helixate NexGen*, 85  
 Helminth infections, 382
  - Ascaricides (common  
   roundworm infections), 382
  - Cutaneous larva migrans, 382
  - Filaricides, 382
  - Hookworms, 382
  - Hydatid disease, 382
  - Schistosomicides (bilharziasis),  
   382
  - Specialist centres, 382
  - Strongyloidiasis, 383
  - Taenicides, 382
  - Tapeworm infections, 382
  - Threadworms, 382*Hemlibra*, 84  
 Heparin, 91  
 Heparin flushes, 91  
 Heparinoid, **766**  
 Heparinoids, 91, 93, 766  
 Heparins, 93  
 Heparin toxicity, 841  
 Heparin (unfractionated), **95**  
*Heparon Junior*, 1032  
*Hepatect CP*, 773  
 Hepatitis, 399
  - Hepatitis B, 399
  - Hepatitis C, 399
 Hepatitis A and B vaccine, **794**  
 Hepatitis A and normal  
   immunoglobulin, 770  
 Hepatitis A vaccine, 780, **795**  
 Hepatitis A with typhoid vaccine,  
   **795**  
 Hepatitis B and A vaccine, *see*  
   Hepatitis A and B vaccine  
 Hepatitis B and B vaccine  
 Hepatitis B immunoglobulin, 771,  
   **773**  
 Hepatitis B vaccine, **796**, 781  
 Hepatitis B with diphtheria, tetanus,  
   pertussis, poliomyelitis and  
   haemophilus influenzae type b  
   vaccine, *see* Diphtheria with

- tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis b, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine
- Hepatitis infections, 400
- Heroin hydrochloride, *see* Diamorphine hydrochloride
- Heron Foods*, 1042, 1043
- Herpes labialis, 721
- Herpes simplex and varicella–zoster infection, 403
- Herpesvirus infections, 403
- ▶ Cytomegalovirus infection, 404
  - ▶ Herpes simplex and varicella–zoster infection, 403
- Hexetidine, **704**
- Hibi*, 762
- Hibiscrub*, 762
- Hibitane preparations*, 762
- Hiccup, 22
- Hidrasec*, 50
- High-energy supplements, 1034
- High-fibre supplements, 1038
- Hirudoid*, 766
- Histoacryl preparations*, 764
- Histoplasmosis, 371
- HIV-fusion inhibitors, 410
- HIV infection, 409
- ▶ and breast-feeding, 409
  - ▶ Immune reconstitution syndrome, 410
  - ▶ in neonates, 410
  - ▶ in pregnancy, 409
  - ▶ Osteonecrosis, 410
  - ▶ Post-exposure prophylaxis, 409
  - ▶ Switching therapy, 409
- HIV-integrase inhibitors, 411
- Hizentra*, 774
- H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonists, 54
- Homatropine hydrobromide, **671**
- Homocystinuria, 608, 1046
- Hookworms, 382
- Hormone replacement therapy, 477
- Hospital-acquired pneumonia, 309
- How BNF Publications are constructed, ix
- How to use BNF Publications in print, xii
- H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonists, **54**
- Humalog preparations*, 457, 458
- Human Albumin Solution, *see* Albumin solution
- Human chorionic gonadotrophin, *see* Chorionic gonadotrophin
- Human coagulation factor VIII, dried, *see* Factor VIII fraction, dried
- Human fibrinogen, *see* Fibrinogen, dried
- Human fibrin-stabilising factor, dried, *see* Factor XIII fraction, dried
- Human growth hormones, 475
- Human hemin, *see* Haem arginate
- Human papillomavirus vaccine, 781
- Human papillomavirus vaccines, **797**
- Human prothrombin complex, *see* Dried prothrombin complex
- HumaPen Luxura HD*, 464
- Humatrope*, 476
- Humira*, 643
- Humulin preparations*, 455, 457, 458
- Hyabak*, 674
- Hyaluronidase, **663**
- Hycosan preparations*, 674
- Hydralazine hydrochloride, **116**
- HydraMed preparations*, 674
- Hydrex*, 762
- Hydrocortisone
- ▶ Endocrine system, **440**
  - ▶ Musculoskeletal system, **662**
  - ▶ Oropharynx, **708**
  - ▶ Skin, **739**
  - ▶ with benzalkonium chloride, dimeticone and nystatin, **743**
  - ▶ with chlorhexidine hydrochloride and nystatin, **743**
  - ▶ with cinchocaine, *see* Cinchocaine with hydrocortisone
  - ▶ with clotrimazole, **743**
  - ▶ with fusidic acid, **743**
  - ▶ with gentamicin, *see* Gentamicin with hydrocortisone
  - ▶ with lidocaine, **70**
  - ▶ with miconazole, **744**
  - ▶ with neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate, **693**
  - ▶ with oxytetracycline, **744**
  - ▶ with pramocaine, **71**
  - ▶ with urea, **740**
- Hydrocortisone acetate with benzyl benzoate, bismuth oxide, bismuth subgallate, peru balsam and zinc oxide, *see* Benzyl benzoate with bismuth oxide, bismuth subgallate, hydrocortisone acetate, peru balsam and zinc oxide
- Hydrocortisone butyrate, **739**
- Hydrocortistab*, 662
- Hydrogen peroxide
- ▶ Oropharynx, **704**
  - ▶ Skin, **763**
- Hydrolysate Formula, 1020
- Hydromol preparations*, 716, 719, 720
- Hydromorphone hydrochloride, **282**
- Hydrotalcite with simeticone, *see* Co-simalcite
- Hydroxocobalamin, **575**
- Hydroxycarbamide, **552**
- Hydroxychloroquine sulfate, **639**
- 1 $\alpha$ -Hydroxycholecalciferol, *see* Alfacalcidol
- Hydroxyethylcellulose, **672**
- 4-Hydroxyphenylpyruvate dioxygenase inhibitors, 612
- Hydroxypropyl guar with polyethylene glycol and propylene glycol, **672**
- Hydroxyurea, *see* Hydroxycarbamide
- Hydroxyzine hydrochloride, **179**
- Hylo-Comod*, 674
- Hylo-fresh*, 674
- Hy-Opti*, 674
- Hyoscine butylbromide, **62**
- Hyoscine hydrobromide, **266**
- Hypercalcaemia, 592
- Hypercalciuria, 592
- Hyperhidrosis, 751
- Hyperkalaemia, 600
- Hyperlipidaemia, 128
- Hyperlysinaemia, 1047
- Hypermethioninaemia, 1046
- Hyperparathyroidism, 592
- Hyperphosphataemia, 598
- Hypersal*, 674
- Hypertension, 98, 102
- ▶ in diabetes, 99
  - ▶ in pregnancy, 99
  - ▶ in renal disease, 99
  - ▶ Phaeochromocytoma, 99
  - ▶ Pulmonary hypertension, 99
- Hypertension associated with phaeochromocytoma, 117
- Hypertensive crises, 118
- Hypertensive emergencies, 99
- Hyperthyroidism, 483
- Hyperuricaemia, 533
- Hyperuricaemia associated with cytotoxic drugs, 556
- Hypnomidate*, 805
- Hypnotics and anxiolytics, 293
- Hypnovel*, 225
- HypoBase*, 718
- Hypocalcaemia, 592
- Hypodermic equipment in type 1 diabetes mellitus, 447
- Hypodermic insulin injection pens, 464
- Hypoglycaemia, 465
- ▶ Chronic hypoglycaemia, 465
  - ▶ Neonatal hypoglycaemia, 465
- Hypokalaemia, 601
- Hypomagnesaemia, 596
- Hypomania, 232
- Hypophosphataemia, 600
- Hypophosphatase, 608
- Hypoplastic, haemolytic, and renal anaemias, 563
- Hypotension and shock, 121
- Hypothalamic and anterior pituitary hormone related disorders, 473
- Hypothalamic hormones, 473
- Hypothyroidism, 485
- Hypovase*, 101
- Hypromellose, **672**
- ▶ with dexamethasone, neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate, *see* Dexamethasone with hypromellose, neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate
  - ▶ with dextran 70, **673**
- Hypurin preparations*, 455, 457, 458, 460
- I**
- Ibucalm*, 656
- Ibuprofen, **655**



- ICare Advanced*, 464  
*ICare Advanced Solo*, 464  
 Ichthammol, **744**  
   ▶ with zinc oxide, **744**  
*Ichthopaste*, 744  
 Idebenone, **687**  
 Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, 581, 582  
 Idursulfase, **610**  
 Ifosfamide, **536**  
*IHealth*, 464  
*Ilaris*, 526  
*Ilaxten*, 174  
 Iloprost, **119**  
*Ilube*, 671  
 Imatinib, **560**  
*IME-DC*, 463  
 Imidazole antifungals, 371, 515, 691, 710, 724  
 Imiglucerase, **607**  
*Imigran preparations*, 292  
 Imipenem with cilastatin, **315**  
 Imipramine hydrochloride, **240**  
 Imiquimod, **768**  
*Immukin*, 558  
 Immune interferon, *see* Interferon gamma-1b  
 Immune reconstitution syndrome, 410  
 Immune response, 517  
   ▶ Antiproliferative immunosuppressants, 517  
   ▶ Corticosteroids and other immunosuppressants, 517  
   ▶ Immunosuppressant therapy, 517  
   ▶ Inflammatory bowel disease, 517  
 Immune response modifiers, 768  
 Immune system, 517  
 Immune system disorders and transplantation, 517  
 Immunisation for travel, 787  
 Immunisation schedule, 777  
 Immunoglobulins, 518, 770  
   ▶ Disease-specific immunoglobulins, 771  
   ▶ Hepatitis A and normal immunoglobulin, 770  
   ▶ Hepatitis B, 771  
   ▶ Measles and normal immunoglobulin, 771  
   ▶ Normal immunoglobulin, 770  
   ▶ Passive immunity, 770  
   ▶ Rabies, 771  
   ▶ Rubella and normal immunoglobulin, 771  
   ▶ Tetanus, 771  
   ▶ Varicella-zoster, 771  
 Immunoglobulin therapy, 770  
 Immunostimulants, other, 558  
 Immunosuppressant therapy, 517  
 Immunosuppression and indwelling intraperitoneal catheters, 304  
 Immunotherapy responsive malignancy, 557  
*Imodium preparations*, 49  
*Impact preparations*, 1025  
 Impetigo, 309  
*ImuDERM*, 720  
*Imuran*, 519  
*Imuvac*, 799  
 Inborn errors of primary bile acid synthesis, 64  
*Inconex XL*, 490  
 Incontinence, 488  
*Increlex*, 477  
*Indermil*, 764  
 Index of proprietary manufacturers, 1061  
 Indometacin, **657**  
 Indomethacin, *see* Indometacin  
 Industrial methylated spirit, *see* Alcohol  
*Inegy*, 134  
*Infacol*, 53  
*Infanrix preparations*, 789, 790  
 Infant formulas (specialised), *see* Specialised formulas  
*Infatrin preparations*, 1019, 1029  
 Infections of the skin, 720  
 Infective endocarditis, antibacterial prophylaxis, 303  
 Inflammatory bowel disease, 25, 517  
 Inflammatory eye conditions, 668  
 Inflammatory skin conditions, 730  
*Inflectra*, 34  
 Infliximab, **33**  
 Influenza, 427  
   ▶ Oseltamivir in children under 1 year of age, 427  
 Influenza vaccine, 782, **798**  
*Influvac Sub-unit*, 799  
 Inhalational anaesthetics, 803  
 Inhaler devices for children, 146  
 Inhalers, spacers and nebulisers, 145  
*Inhalvent*, 153  
*Inhixa*, 95  
*Innohep*, 96  
*Innovace*, 114  
 Inotropic sympathomimetics, 121  
*Inovelon*, 208  
 Insomnia, 22, 293  
*Instant Carobel*, 1039  
*Insulet*, 464  
*Insulatard preparations*, 458  
 Insulin, 447, **454**  
 Insulin aspart, **455**  
 Insulin degludec, **458**  
 Insulin detemir, **459**  
 Insulin glargine, **459**  
 Insulin glulisine, **456**  
 Insulin Injection, *see* Insulin  
 Insulin-like growth factor-1 deficiency, 477  
 Insulin lispro, **456**  
 Insulins, **454**  
   ▶ Insulins, intermediate-acting, 457  
   ▶ Insulins, intermediate-acting combined with rapid-acting, 458  
   ▶ Insulins, long-acting, 458  
   ▶ Insulins, rapid-acting, 454  
 Insulin zinc suspension, **459**  
 Insulin zinc suspension (mixed)—long acting, *see* Insulin zinc suspension  
*Insuman Infusate*, 455  
*Insuman preparations*, 455, 457, 458  
*Intal preparations*, 167  
*Intelence*, 414  
 Interactions, 852  
 Interferon alfa, **557**  
 Interferon gamma-1b, **558**  
 Interferons, 402, 557  
 Interleukin inhibitors, 640  
 Intermediate-acting insulin, *see* Biphasic insulin aspart  
 Intermediate-acting insulin, *see* Biphasic insulin lispro  
 Intestinal adsorbents, 839  
 Intractable cough, 22  
 Intrathecal chemotherapy, 531  
*Intra-uterine contraceptive devices*, 506  
 Intra-uterine contraceptive devices (copper), **505**  
 Intravenous anaesthetics, 803, 804  
 Intravenous infusions for neonatal intensive care, 16  
 Intravenous nutrition, 618  
 Intravenous policy, 16  
*IntronA*, 558  
*Intuniv*, 231  
*Invanz*, 315  
 Invasive group A streptococcal infection, 302  
*InVita D3*, 632, 633  
*Invodol SR*, 288  
 Iodide with iodine, **485**  
 Iodine products, 679, 761  
*Iopidine*, 687  
 Ipilimumab, **529**  
 Ipratropium bromide  
   ▶ Nose, **698**  
   ▶ Respiratory system, **153**  
*Iraksin*, 487  
 Iron chelators, 576  
 Iron content of different iron salts table, 569  
 Iron deficiency anaemia, 569  
 Iron dextran, **570**  
 Iron, injectable, 570  
 Iron, oral, 571  
*Ironorm*, 573  
 Iron overload, 576  
 Iron preparations, 74  
 Iron salts poisoning, 836  
 Iron sucrose, **571**  
*Irriclen*, 704, 763  
 Irrigation solutions, 763  
*Irripod*, 764  
 Irritable bowel syndrome, 34  
*Istentress*, 412  
*Iso D3*, 632  
 Isoflurane, **807**  
*Isoleucine50*, 1048  
*Isomol*, 718

- Isoniazid, **367**
- with pyrazinamide and rifampicin, *see* Rifampicin with isoniazid and pyrazinamide
  - with rifampicin, *see* Rifampicin with isoniazid
- Isothane insulin, **457**
- Isothane Insulin Injection, *see* Isothane insulin
- Isothane Insulin (NPH)—intermediate acting, *see* Isothane insulin
- Isothane Protamine Insulin Injection, *see* Isothane insulin
- Isoplex, 596
- ISO-POD, 764
- Isopropyl alcohol with chlorhexidine gluconate, *see* Chlorhexidine gluconate with isopropyl alcohol
- Isotretinoin, **757**
- with erythromycin, **758**
- Isotrexin, 758
- Isovaleric acidemia, 1047
- Isovorin, 556
- Ispaghula husk, **40**
- with mebeverine, *see* Mebeverine with ispaghula husk
  - with senna, *see* Senna with ispaghula husk
- Istin, 108
- Itraconazole, **375**
- Ivacaftor, **186**
- with lumacaftor, *see* Lumacaftor with ivacaftor
- Ivermectin, **383**
- Ixiaro, 799
- J**
- Japanese encephalitis vaccine, 782, **799**
- Jaydess, 511
- Jevity preparations, 1014, 1016, 1017
- Jext, 138
- Joint prostheses and dental treatment, antibacterial prophylaxis, 304
- Joy-Rides, 267
- Juliperla, 502
- Juvela products, 1040–1045
- Juvenile idiopathic arthritis, 638
- Jylamo, 546
- K**
- Kalcipos-D, 633, 634
- Kaletra, 426
- Kalydeco, 186
- Kapake preparations, 275, 276
- Katya, 502
- Kay-Cee-L, 602
- Keflex, 318
- Keftid, 319
- Kemadrin, 257
- Kenalog, 662
- Kenzem SR, 144
- Keppra, 204
- Ketalar, 821
- Ketamine, **820**
- KetoCal, 1032
- Ketoconazole
- Endocrine system, **444**
  - Skin, **725**
- Ketofall, 667
- Ketorolac trometamol
- Anaesthesia, **817**
  - Eye, **681**
- Ketostix, 464
- Ketotifen
- Eye, **667**
  - Respiratory system, **180**
- Ketovite, 629
- KeyOmega, 1048
- Kindergen, 1033
- Kiovig, 774
- Kivexa, 416
- Klaricid preparations, 330, 331
- Klean-Prep, 38
- KliarVax, 694
- Kogenate, 85
- Kogenate Bayer, 85
- Kolanticon, 62
- Konakion preparations, 637
- KreaMoint, 719
- Kuvan, 623
- Kwells, 267
- Kyleena, 511
- Kytril, 264
- L**
- Labelling of prescribed medicines, 7
- Labetalol hydrochloride, **104**
- Labyrinth disorders, 259
- Lacosamide, **201**
- Lacri-Lube, 673
- Lactic acid, **515**
- with salicylic acid, *see* Salicylic acid with lactic acid
- Lactugal, 41
- Lactulose, **41**
- Lamictal, 203
- Lamisil, 727
- Lamivudine, **420**
- with abacavir, *see* Abacavir with lamivudine
  - with abacavir and dolutegravir, *see* Abacavir with dolutegravir and lamivudine
  - with abacavir and zidovudine, *see* Abacavir with lamivudine and zidovudine
  - with zidovudine, *see* Zidovudine with lamivudine
- Lamotrigine, **202**
- Lanoxin preparations, 82
- Lansoprazole, **57**
- Lantus preparations, 459
- Largactil, 245
- Lariam, 396
- Laronidase, **611**
- Latanoprost, **686**
- Latent tuberculosis, 362
- Latin abbreviations, inside back cover
- Laxatives, 74
- Laxido, 43
- Laxoberal, 47
- Leandra, 503
- Lecado, 258
- Ledipasvir with sofosbuvir, **401**
- Leishmaniacides, 385
- Leishmaniasis, 385
- Lenograstim, **580**
- Lescol preparations, 133
- Leucine 100, 1048
- Leukotriene receptor antagonists, 165
- Leuprorelin acetate, **472**
- Levamisole, **383**
- Levels of evidence, 846
- Levemir preparations, 459
- Leveraxo, 285
- Levest, 503
- Levetiracetam, **203**
- Levobunolol hydrochloride, **682**
- Levobupivacaine, **825**
- Levocarnitine, **604**
- Levocetirizine hydrochloride, **175**
- Levodopa with carbidopa, *see* Co-careldopa
- Levofloxacin, **676**
- Levofolinic acid, **556**
- Levomepromazine, **268**
- Levonelle preparations, 511
- Levonorgestrel, **508**
- with ethinylestradiol, *see* Ethinylestradiol with levonorgestrel
- Levosert, 511
- Levothyroxine sodium, **485**
- Lexpec preparations, 575
- LH–RH, *see* Gonadorelin
- Lidocaine and Fluorescein, 680
- Lidocaine hydrochloride
- Anaesthesia, **826**
  - Oropharynx, **706**
  - with adrenaline, **827**
  - with cetrimide, **827**
  - with fluorescein, *see* Fluorescein with lidocaine
  - with hydrocortisone, *see* Hydrocortisone with lidocaine
  - with phenylephrine, **828**
  - with prilocaïne, **828**
- Lifestyle Products, 1040, 1041
- Life support algorithm (image), 1107
- Lignocaine hydrochloride, *see* Lidocaine hydrochloride
- Lignospan Special, 827
- Li-Liquid, 234
- Lincosamides, 327, 514, 755
- Linezolid, **358**
- Lioresal preparations, 650
- Liothyronine sodium, **486**
- Lipantil Micro, 131
- Lipase inhibitors, 68
- Lipid modifying drugs, other, 134
- Lipid-regulating drugs, 128

- Lipistart*, 1030  
*Lipitor*, 132  
*Lipobase*, 718  
*LiquaMag GP*, 597  
*LiquiBand*, 764  
 Liquid paraffin
  - ▶ with retinol palmitate with white soft paraffin with light liquid paraffin and wool, *see* Retinol palmitate with white soft paraffin and light liquid paraffin and liquid paraffin and wool fat
  - ▶ with white soft paraffin and wool alcohols, **673***Liquifilm Tears*, 673  
*Liquigen*, 1035  
*Liquivisc*, 672  
 Lisdexamfetamine mesilate, **230**  
 Lisinopril, **114**  
*Liskonum*, 234  
 Lithium, 232  
 Lithium carbonate, **233**  
 Lithium citrate, **234**  
 Lithium poisoning, 836  
 Lithium salts, 232  
 Liver disorders and related conditions, 64  
*Lizinna*, 505  
*LMX 4*, 827  
 Local anaesthesia, 822  
 Local anaesthesia, toxicity, 823  
 Local corticosteroid injections, 661  
 Local inflammation of joints and soft tissue, 661  
*Locasol*, 1031  
*Loceryl*, 726  
*Locoid preparations*, 739  
 Lodoxamide, **667**  
*Loestrin 20*, 504  
*Loestrin 30*, 504  
*Longtec*, 285  
*Loniten*, 117  
 Loop diuretics, 139  
 Loperamide hydrochloride, **49**
  - ▶ with simeticone, **49***Lophlex preparations*, 1049–1051  
 Lopinavir with ritonavir, **425**  
*Loprofin products*, 1043–1045, 1049  
 Loratadine, **126**  
*Lorazepam*, **222**  
*Loron preparations*, 470  
 Losartan potassium, **115**  
*Losac preparations*, 59  
*Lotriderm*, 741  
 Low blood volume, 595  
 Low molecular weight heparins, 91  
 Low-protein foods, 1043  
 Lozenges and sprays, 703  
*LPL*, 716  
 L-Tri-iodothyronine sodium, *see* Liothyronine sodium  
*L-Tyrosine*, 1049  
*Lubristil*, 674  
*Lucette*, 501  
 Lumacaftor with ivacaftor, **187**  
*Lumecare preparations*, 672  
 Lumefantrine with artemether, *see* Artemether with lumefantrine  
 Lung infection in cystic fibrosis, 309  
*Lustral*, 238  
*Lyclear (dimeticone)*, 729  
*Lyclear preparations*, 729  
*Lyflex*, 650  
 Lymecycline, **353**  
 Lyme disease, 360  
*Lymlor*, 286  
*Lyrinel XL*, 489  
*Lysodren*, 553
- M**  
*Maalox preparations*, 51, 52  
*Mabron*, 288  
*MabThera*, 531  
*Macrobid*, 370  
 Macrogol 3350
  - ▶ with anhydrous sodium sulfate, potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride, **37**
  - ▶ with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride, **42**
 Macrolides, 309, 328, 399, 676, 755  
*Maexeni*, 503  
*MagnaPhate*, 597  
*MagnaPhos*, 597  
*Magnaspartate*, 596  
 Magnesium, 596  
 Magnesium aspartate, **596**  
 Magnesium carbonate
  - ▶ with citric acid, *see* Citric acid with magnesium carbonate
  - ▶ with magnesium trisilicate and sodium bicarbonate, *see* Magnesium trisilicate with magnesium carbonate and sodium bicarbonate
 Magnesium citrate with sodium picosulfate, **38**  
 Magnesium glycerophosphate, **596**  
 Magnesium hydroxide, **43**
  - ▶ with aluminium hydroxide, *see* Co-magaldrox
  - ▶ with aluminium hydroxide and simeticone, *see* Simeticone with aluminium hydroxide and magnesium hydroxide
 Magnesium imbalance, 596  
 Magnesium oxide with aluminium hydroxide, dicycloverine hydrochloride and simeticone, *see* Dicycloverine hydrochloride with aluminium hydroxide, magnesium oxide and simeticone  
 Magnesium sulfate, **597**  
 Magnesium trisilicate with magnesium carbonate and sodium bicarbonate, **52**  
 Malaria, 386  
 Malaria, prophylaxis, 386  
 Malaria prophylaxis, recommended regimens table, 387  
 Malaria, treatment, 392
  - ▶ Advice for travellers, 392*Malarivon*, 395  
*Malarone*, 394  
 Malathion, **729**  
 Male sex hormone responsive conditions, 480  
 Malignant disease, 528  
 Malignant hyperthermia, 821, 804  
*Mandanol preparations*, 272  
*Maneo*, 288  
*Manevac*, 47  
 Mania and Hypomania, 232
  - ▶ Antipsychotic drugs, 232
  - ▶ Benzodiazepines, 232
  - ▶ Carbamazepine, 232
  - ▶ Lithium, 232
  - ▶ Valproate, 232
 Mannitol, **141**  
 Mantoux test, *see* Tuberculin purified protein derivative  
 Maple syrup urine disease, 1047  
*Maraviroc*, **427**  
*Marcain preparations*, 825  
*Mariosea XL*, 491  
*Marol*, 288  
*Martapan*, 440  
*Marvelon*, 501  
 Mast-cell stabilisers, 166, 667, 701  
*Matrifen*, 281  
*Maxamaid preparations*, 1046, 1047  
*Maxamum preparations*, 1047, 1048, 1051  
*Maxidex*, 669  
*Maxijul preparations*, 1034  
*Maxitram SR*, 289  
*Maxitrol*, 670  
*Maxolon preparations*, 263  
*Maxtrex*, 545  
*MCT*, 1035  
*MCT preparations*, 1030, 1037  
 Measles and normal immunoglobulin, 771  
 Measles, Mumps and Rubella, 782  
 Measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, live, **799**  
 Mebendazole, **384**  
 Mebeverine hydrochloride, **63**
  - ▶ with ispaghula husk, **34**
 Mecasermin, **477**  
*Medi*, 170  
 Medical emergencies in the community, 1112  
 Medication errors, 14  
 Medicines Information Services, inside front cover  
*Medikinet preparations*, 228, 229  
*MediSense SoftSense*, 463  
*Medi-Test Glucose*, 463, 464  
*Medi-Test Protein 2*, 464  
*MediTouch*, 463  
*Medizol*, 686  
*Medrone preparations*, 441, 442, 662  
 Medroxyprogesterone acetate, **512**  
 Mefenamic acid, **658**  
 Mefloquine, **396**, 386

- Megaloblastic anaemia, 574  
 Meglumine amidotrizoate with sodium amidotrizoate, **36**  
 Melatonin, **295**  
 Meloxicam, **658**  
 Melphalan, **537**  
 Menadiol sodium phosphate, **636**  
 Mendor *Discreet*, 463  
 Meningitis, 305  
 Meningococcal group B vaccine (rDNA, component, adsorbed), **792**  
 Meningococcal group C vaccine, **792**
  - with haemophilus influenzae type B, see Haemophilus influenzae type B with meningococcal group C vaccine
 Meningococcal groups A with C and W135 and Y vaccine, **792**  
 Meningococcal meningitis, 302  
 Meningococcal septicaemia, 304  
 Meningococcal vaccine, 783  
 Menitorix, 792  
 Mental health disorders, 225  
 Menthol and derivatives, 189  
 Menthol with eucalyptus, see Eucalyptus with menthol  
 Menveo, 793  
 Mepact, 559  
 Meperidine, see Pethidine hydrochloride  
 Mepivacaine hydrochloride, **829**
  - with adrenaline, **829**
 Mepradec, 59  
 Mercaptamine, **605**  
 Mercaptopurine, **543**  
 6-Mercaptopurine, see Mercaptopurine  
 Mercilon, 501  
 Meronem, 316  
 Meropenem, **316**  
 Mesalazine, **29**  
 Mesna, **555**  
 Mestinon *preparations*, 649  
 Mestranol with norethisterone, see Norethisterone with mestranol  
 Metabolic acidosis, 583  
 Metabolic diseases, see Nutritional supplements for metabolic diseases  
 Metabolic disorders, 602
  - Emergency management, 603
  - Urea cycle disorders, 603
 Metaraminol, **124**  
 Meters and test strips, 461  
 Metformin hydrochloride, **452**  
 Methadone hydrochloride, **299**  
 Methadose *preparations*, 299  
 Methaemoglobinemia, 833, 843  
 Metharose, 299  
 Methicillin-resistant staphylococcus aureus, 360  
 Methofill, 545  
 Methotrexate, **543**  
 Methotrimeprazine, see Levomepromazine  
 Methylcellulose, **40**  
 Methyl donors, 608  
 Methylene blue, see Methylthioninium chloride  
 Methylthioninium chloride  
 Methylmalonic or propionic acidemia, 1048  
 Methylphenidate hydrochloride, **227**  
 Methylprednisolone
  - Endocrine, **441**
  - Musculoskeletal, **662**
 Methylthioninium chloride, **843**  
 Metoclopramide hydrochloride, **262**  
 Metoject *preparations*, 545  
 Metolazone, **142**  
 Metopirone, 445  
 Metoprolol tartrate, **107**  
 Metosyn *preparations*, 738  
 Metrogel, 723  
 Metronidazole
  - Genito-urinary system, **514**
  - Infection, **333**
  - Skin, **723**
 Metronidazole and tinidazole, 309  
 Metrosa, 723  
 Metyrapone, **444**  
 Mezolar Matrix, 281  
 Mezzopram, 59  
 Micafungin, **372**  
 Micolette Micro-enema, 44  
 Miconazole
  - Genito-urinary system, **516**
  - Oropharynx, **710**
  - Skin, **725**
  - with hydrocortisone, see Hydrocortisone with miconazole
 Micalax Micro-enema, 44  
 Microdot+, 463  
 Microgynon *preparations*, 503  
 MicroPeak, 170  
 Micropirin, 92  
 Midazolam, **223**  
 Mifamurtide, **558**  
 Migalastat, **607**  
 Miglustat, **611**  
 Migraine, 290
  - Cluster headache and the trigeminal autonomic cephalalgias, 290
  - Prophylaxis, 290
  - Treatment, 290
 Migrantan, 292  
 Migravele *preparations*, 275, 291  
 Mildison Lipocream, 739  
 Miley, 506, 507  
 Millinette, 502  
 Milrinone, **127**  
 Milupa *preparations*, 1048  
 Mineral and trace elements deficiencies, 617  
 Minerals, 592
  - Calcium, 592
  - Fluoride, 705
  - Magnesium, 596
  - Neonates, 592, 598
  - Phosphorus, 598
  - with vitamins and trace elements, see Vitamins with minerals and trace elements
  - Zinc, 617
 Minipress, 101  
 Mini-Wright, 170  
 Minocin *preparations*, 354  
 Minocycline, **353**  
 Minor cuts and abrasions, 764  
 Minoxidil, **117**  
 Mintreleq XL, 253  
 Miochol-E, 679  
 Miotics for glaucoma, 682  
 Miphtel, 679  
 Mirena, 511  
 Mitochondrial disorders, 609  
 Mitotane, **552**  
 Mitoxantrone, **540**  
 Mitozantrone, see Mitoxantrone  
 Mivacron, 815  
 Mivacurium, **814**  
 Mizolastine, **176**  
 Mizollen, 176  
 M-M-RVAXPRO, 800  
 Mobile, 463  
 Modigraf, 525  
 Modulen IBD, 1033  
 MODZ, 463  
 Molative, 43  
 Molaxole, 43  
 Molcer, 694  
 Mometasone furoate
  - Nose, **700**
  - Respiratory system, **164**
  - Skin, **740**
 Monobactams, 332  
 Monoclonal antibodies, 164, 430, 526, 528, 568  
 Monoclonal antibodies, anti-lymphocyte, 530, 526  
 Monogen, 1031  
 Monopost, 686  
 Monotrim, 360  
 Montelukast, **165**  
 Monuril, 357  
 Morphesic SR, 284  
 Morphine, **282**
  - with cyclizine, **284**
 Morphine sulfate and diamorphine hydrochloride equivalence table, 23  
 Motifene, 653  
 Motility stimulants, 61  
 Motilium *preparations*, 262  
 Motion sickness, 260  
 Mouthwashes and gargles, 703  
 Movement disorders, 255  
 Movicol *preparations*, 43  
 Moxifloxacin, **677**  
 Moxivig, 677  
 MRSA, 360  
 Mrs Crimbles *products*, 1042  
 MST Continus, 283, 284  
 MSUD *products*, 1047, 1048  
 MucoClear, 170  
 Mucodyne, 184

- Mucogel*, 51  
 Mucolytics, 184, 186  
 Mucopolysaccharidosis, 610  
 Mucosal bleeding, 22  
 Multimorbidity, 1  
*Multi-thick*, 1039  
*Munalea*, 501  
 Mupirocin  
   ▸ Nose, **697**  
   ▸ Skin, **724**  
 Muscle relaxants, centrally acting, 649  
 Muscle relaxants, directly acting, 821  
 Muscle spasm, 22  
 Muscular dystrophy, 647  
 Musculoskeletal system infections, antibacterial therapy, 307  
   ▸ Osteomyelitis, 307  
   ▸ Septic arthritis, 307  
*MXL*, 284  
 Myasthenia gravis and Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome, 648  
*Mycamine*, 373  
*Mycobutin*, 364  
 Mycophenolate mofetil, **527**  
*Mycota preparations*, 728  
*Mydriacyl*, 678  
 Mydriatics and cycloplegics, 678  
*Mydrilate*, 671  
*Myfenax*, 528  
*Myglucohealth*, 463  
*Mylife Pura*, 463  
*Mylife Unio*, 463  
*Mylotarg*, 529  
 Myocardial ischaemia, 135  
*Myocet*, 540  
*Myozyme*, 612  
*MyriBase*, 718
- N**  
 Nabilone, **261**  
*Naglazyme*, 610  
*Nairns products*, 1041  
*Nalcrom*, 167  
 Naloxone hydrochloride, **842**  
*Nandovar XL*, 133  
 Nappy rash, 713  
*Naprosyn preparations*, 660  
 Naproxen, **659**  
*Naropin*, 831  
*Nasacort*, 701  
 Nasal allergy, 694  
 Nasal congestion, 695  
 Nasal decongestants, 695  
 Nasal decongestants, systemic, 188  
 Nasal infection, 697  
 Nasal inflammation, nasal polyps and rhinitis, 698  
 Nasal preparations for infection, 695  
 Nasal polyps, 695  
 Nasal staphylococci, 695  
*Naseptin*, 697  
*Nasobec*, 699  
*Nasofan*, 700  
*Nasonex*, 701
- Natecal*, 634  
*Natzon*, 274  
 Nausea and labyrinth disorders, 259  
   ▸ Motion sickness, 260  
   ▸ Nausea caused by cytotoxic chemotherapy, palliative care, and migraine, 260  
   ▸ Opioid-induced nausea and vomiting, 260  
   ▸ Postoperative nausea and vomiting, 260  
   ▸ Vomiting during pregnancy, 260  
 Nausea and vomiting in palliative care, 22, 23  
 Navigating the *BNF for Children*, xii  
*Nebcin*, 314  
 Nebuliser solutions, **170**  
*Nebusal*, 170  
 Necrotising enterocolitis in neonates, 307  
*Neditol XL*, 491  
 Nedocromil sodium  
   ▸ Eye, **668**  
   ▸ Respiratory system, **167**  
 Needle free insulin delivery systems, **464**  
*NeisVac-C*, 792  
 Nelarabine, **546**  
*Neocate LCP*, 1027  
*Neocate preparations*, 1027, 1028  
*Neoclarityn*, 175  
*Neo-Cytamen*, 576  
*Neofordex*, 439  
*Neokay*, 637  
*Neomag*, 597  
 Neomycin sulfate  
   ▸ Ear, **690**  
   ▸ Skin, **722**  
   ▸ with betamethasone, *see* Betamethasone with neomycin  
   ▸ with chlorhexidine, *see* Chlorhexidine with neomycin  
   ▸ with clobetasol propionate and nystatin, *see* Clobetasol propionate with neomycin sulfate and nystatin  
   ▸ with dexamethasone and glacial acetic acid, *see* Dexamethasone with glacial acetic acid and neomycin sulfate  
   ▸ with dexamethasone, hypromellose and polymyxin B sulfate, *see* Dexamethasone with hypromellose, neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate  
   ▸ with fluocinolone, *see* Fluocinolone acetate with neomycin  
   ▸ with polymyxin B sulfate and hydrocortisone, *see* Hydrocortisone with neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate  
*Neo-Naclex preparations*, 111  
 Neonatal abstinence syndrome, 296  
 Neonatal apnoea, 190  
 Neonatal congenital syphilis, 307
- Neonatal hypoglycaemia, 465  
 Neonatal neutropenia, 579  
*Neoral*, 521  
*NeoRecormon*, 567  
 Neostigmine, **648**  
   ▸ with glycopyrronium bromide, **816**  
 Neostigmine methylsulfate, *see* Neostigmine  
*Neotigason*, 750  
*Neovo*, 155  
 Nephropathic cystinosis, 605  
*Nerisone*, 737  
 Nerve agents poisoning, 838  
*Neupogen preparations*, 580  
 Neural tube defects (prevention in pregnancy), 637  
 Neuraminidase inhibitors, 428  
 Neurokinin receptor antagonists, 263  
 Neuromuscular blockade, 812  
   ▸ Reversal of neuromuscular blockade, 816  
 Neuromuscular blocking drugs, depolarising, 813  
 Neuromuscular blocking drugs, non-depolarising, 813  
 Neuromuscular disorders, 646  
   ▸ Drugs that enhance neuromuscular transmission, 646  
   ▸ Skeletal muscle relaxants, 647  
*Neurontin*, 200  
 Neuropathic pain, 293  
 Neuropathic pain in palliative care, 20  
 Neurotoxins (botulinum toxins), 258  
 Neutral Insulin, *see* Insulin  
 Neutropenia, 578  
   ▸ Neonatal neutropenia, 579  
 Neutropenia and stem cell mobilisation, 578  
*Nevirapine*, **414**  
*Nexium preparations*, 57  
*Nexplanon*, 512  
*Nicam*, 759  
 Nicardipine hydrochloride, **108**  
*Nicef*, 318  
*Nicorette preparations*, 298  
 Nicotinamide, **759**  
 Nicotine, **296**  
 Nicotine dependence, 295, 296  
*Nicotinell preparations*, 298  
 Nicotinic receptor agonists, 296  
 Niemann-Pick type C disease, 611  
 Nifedipine, **109**  
*Niferex*, 573  
 Nilotinib, **560**  
*Nimbex*, 814  
*Nimenrix*, 793  
 Nimodipine, **87**  
*Nimotop*, 88  
*NiQuitin preparations*, 298  
 Nitisone, **612**  
 Nitrates, **135**  
*Nitrocline*, 136  
 Nitrofurantoin, **369**



- Nitroimidazole derivatives, 333, 514, 723
- Nitronal*, 136
- Nitrous oxide, **808**
- Nivestim*, 580
- Nizoral*, 725
- NMDA receptor antagonists, 820
- Nocturnal enuresis in children, 488
- Nomegestrol with estradiol, *see* Estradiol with nomegestrol
- Non-benzodiazepine hypnotics and sedatives, 294
- Non-medical prescribing, 1060
- Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, 413
- Non-opioid analgesics, 817
- Non-opioid analgesics and compound analgesic preparations, 270
- Nonoxinol, **513**
- Non-sedating antihistamines, 173, 698
- Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 650, 651, 681, 707, 817
- and asthma, 651
  - and cardiovascular events, 651
  - and gastro-intestinal events, 651
- Noqdinna*, 434
- Noradrenaline/norepinephrine, **124**
- Nordimet*, 546
- Norditropin preparations*, 476
- Norelgestromin with ethinylestradiol, *see* Ethinylestradiol with norelgestromin
- Norethisterone, **479**
- with ethinylestradiol, *see* Ethinylestradiol with norethisterone
  - with mestranol, **505**
- Norgalax*, 45
- Norgestimate with ethinylestradiol, *see* Ethinylestradiol with norgestimate
- Norgeston*, 511
- Noriday*, 480
- Norimin*, 504
- Norimode*, 49
- Norinyl-1*, 505
- Noristerat*, 480
- Normacol*, 41
- Normacol Plus*, 41
- Normal immunoglobulin, **773**
- Normasol*, 763, 764
- Normosang*, 604
- Nortriptyline, **241**
- Norvir*, 426
- Nose, 694
- Nasal allergy, 694
  - Nasal decongestants, 695
  - Nasal preparations for infection, 695
  - Rhinitis, 694
- Nose infections, antibacterial therapy, 308
- Sinusitis (acute), 308
- Notifiable diseases, 301
- NovoMix preparations*, 458
- NovoPen 4*, 464
- NovoRapid preparations*, 456
- NovoSeven*, 84
- Noxious gases poisoning, 837
- Noyada*, 113
- Nozinan*, 268
- NSAID-associated ulcers, 53
- NSAIDs and cardiovascular events, 651
- NSAIDs and gastro-intestinal events, 651
- NSpire PiKo-1*, 170
- NSpire Pocket Peak*, 170
- NTBC, *see* Nitisinone
- Nucleoside analogues
- Eye, 678
  - Infection, 400, 404, 407
  - Skin, 729
- Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, 400, 415
- Nucleotide analogues, 401
- Nuelin preparations*, 169
- Nulbia*, 828
- Nurofen preparations*, 656
- Nurse Prescribers' Advisory Group, viii
- Nurse Prescribers' Formulary, 1057
- Nu-Seals*, 92
- Nusinersen, **647**
- Nutilus preparations*, 1026, 1039
- Nutilus products*, 1039
- Nutramigen preparations*, 1028, 1029
- Nutraplus*, 720
- Nutricrem*, 1026
- Nutrimin preparations*, 1018–1021
- Nutriprem preparations*, 1018
- Nutrison preparations*, 1014–1018
- Nutritional supplements for metabolic diseases, 1046
- Nutritional supplements (non-disease specific), 1022
- Nutrition and metabolic disorders, 583
- Nutrition in special diets, 622
- Products for metabolic diseases, 623
- Nutrition (intravenous), 618
- Nutrition (oral), 621
- Nutrizym preparations*, 73
- NutropinAq*, 476
- NuvaRing*, 502
- Nuwiq*, 85
- Nystatin, **710**
- with benzalkonium chloride, dimeticone and hydrocortisone, *see* Hydrocortisone with benzalkonium chloride, dimeticone and nystatin
  - with chlorhexidine, *see* Chlorhexidine with nystatin
- with chlorhexidine hydrochloride and hydrocortisone, *see* Hydrocortisone with chlorhexidine hydrochloride and nystatin
  - with clobetasol propionate and neomycin sulfate, *see* Clobetasol propionate with neomycin sulfate and nystatin
  - with clobetasone butyrate and oxytetracycline, *see* Clobetasone butyrate with nystatin and oxytetracycline

**O**

- Obesity, 67
- Obstetric surgery, antibacterial prophylaxis, 303
- Occlusal*, 769
- Octagam*, 774
- Octanate*, 85
- OctaplasLG*, 87
- Octasa MR*, 30
- Octim*, 434
- Octreotide*, **467**
- Ocufen*, 681
- Ocular local anaesthetics, 680
- Ocular lubricants, 671
- Ocular peri-operative drugs, 680
- Ocusan*, 674
- Odefsey*, 419
- ODM5, 674
- Oedema, 138
- Oesophageal varices, 66
- Oestrogens, 478
- Oestrogens combined with progestogens, 498
- Ofloxacin, **677**
- Oftaquix*, 677
- Oilatam preparations*, 715, 716, 718
- Olanzapine, **251**
- Oleax*, 694
- Olena*, 237
- Olive oil, **694**
- Olopatadine, **667**
- Olsalazine sodium, **31**
- Omalizumab, **164**
- Omeprazole, **58**
- Omicur*, 726
- Omnitest 3*, 463
- Omnitrope preparations*, 476
- Omri-Hep-B*, 773
- On-Call Advanced*, 463
- Oncaspar*, 554
- Ondansetron, **264**
- Ondemet*, 265
- One-Alpha*, 630, 631
- OneTouch Select Plus*, 463
- OneTouch Ultra*, 463
- OneTouch Verio*, 463
- OneTouch Vita*, 463
- Onexila XL*, 286
- Onkotrone*, 541
- Opatanol*, 667
- Ophthalmic herpes simplex, 678
- Opiodur*, 281

- Opioid analgesics, 817
- Opioid analgesics and dependence, 270
- Opioid analgesics dose equivalence table, 21
- Opioid dependence, 299
- Opioid-induced nausea and vomiting, 260
- Opioid poisoning, 834
- Opioid receptor antagonists, 842
- Opioids, 273, 299, 818
- Opioid toxicity, 842
- OptiChamber*, 171
- OptiChamber Diamond*, 171
- Optic neuropathy, 687
- Opticrom*, 668
- OptiFlo preparations*, 493
- Optilast*, 667
- Optive preparations*, 674
- Oral bacterial infections, 308
- Cephalosporins, 308
  - Clindamycin, 309
  - Macrolides, 309
  - Metronidazole and tinidazole, 309
  - Penicillins, 308
  - Tetracyclines, 308
- Oraldene*, 704
- Oral glucose tolerance tests, 445
- Oral hygiene, 703
- Oral infections, prescribing in dental practice, 24
- Oral rehydration salts, 591
- Oral rehydration therapy, 584
- Oral ulceration and inflammation, 706
- Oramorph*, 284
- Orap*, 247
- Orencia preparations*, 641
- Orfadin*, 612
- Organophosphorus toxicity, 840
- Orgran products*, 1042, 1043
- Orkambi*, 187
- Orlistat, **68**
- Orlos*, 68
- OroB7*, 627
- Oropharyngeal bacterial infections, 709
- Oropharyngeal fungal infections, 709
- Angular cheilitis, 710
  - Oropharyngeal candidiasis, 710
  - Thrush, 709
- Oropharyngeal infections, antibacterial therapy, 709
- Abscess (periapical or periodontal), 709
  - Gingivitis (acute necrotising ulcerative), 709
  - Pericoronitis, 709
  - Periodontitis, 709
  - Throat infections, 709
- Oropharyngeal viral infections, 711
- Oropharynx, 701
- Orphacol*, 65
- Orthopaedic surgery, antibacterial prophylaxis, 303
- Oseltamivir, **428**
- Oseltamivir in children under 1 year of age, 427
- Osmanil*, 281
- Osmolite preparations*, 1014, 1018
- Osmotic diuretics, 141
- Osmotic laxatives, 37, 41
- Osteomyelitis, 307
- Osteonecrosis, 410
- Osteoporosis, 467
- Otex*, 694
- Other antineoplastic drugs, 533
- Otitis externa, 306, 688, 689
- Otitis media, 306, 688
- Otomize*, 693
- Otosporin*, 693
- Otrivine preparations*, 667, 696, 697
- Ovex*, 384
- Ovranette*, 503
- Oxactin*, 237
- Oxandrin*, 481
- Oxandrolone, **481**
- Oxcarbazepine, **204**
- Oxeltra*, 286
- Oxyl*, 674
- Oxybuprocaine hydrochloride, **680**
- Oxybutynin hydrochloride, **489**
- Oxycodone hydrochloride, **284**
- OxyContin*, 286
- Oxygen, 151
- Arrangements for supplying oxygen, 152
  - Oxygen therapy, 151
- Oxylan*, 286
- Oxymetholone, **563**
- OxyNorm*, 286
- Oxytetracycline, **354**
- with clobetasone butyrate and nystatin, *see* Clobetasone butyrate with nystatin and oxytetracycline
  - with hydrocortisone, *see* Hydrocortisone with oxytetracycline
- P**
- Paediasure preparations*, 1020, 1022, 1023
- Paediatric Formulary Committee, vii
- Pain, 20, 269
- Pain and inflammation in musculoskeletal disorders, 650
- Pain control in palliative care, 23
- Pain management with opioids, 20
- Pain relief, 269
- Palivizumab, **430**
- Palladone preparations*, 282
- Paludrine*, 397
- Paludrine/Avloclor*, 396
- Pamidronate disodium, **469**
- Pamsvax XL*, 492
- Panadol preparations*, 275
- Pancrease*, 73
- Pancreatic enzymes, 72
- Pancreatin, **72**
- Pancreatin preparations, 71
- Pancrex*, 73
- Pancuronium bromide, **815**
- Papaveretum, **287**
- Paracetamol, **271**
- with buclizine hydrochloride and codeine phosphate, **291**
  - with codeine phosphate, *see* Cocodamol
  - with dihydrocodeine, *see* Dihydrocodeine with paracetamol
  - with tramadol, *see* Tramadol with paracetamol
- Paracetamol overdose treatment graph, 835
- Paracetamol poisoning, 834
- Paracetamol toxicity, 843
- Paraffin, yellow, soft, **673**
- Paraldehyde, **221**
- Parasiticide preparations, 721, 722
- Parasiticide preparations for the skin, 721
- Parasiticides, 728
- Parasitic skin infections, 728
- Parasympathomimetics, 679, 685
- Paravict*, 272
- Parenteral nutrition, 619
- Parenteral nutrition supplements, **619**
- Paronychia or ‘septic spots’ in neonate, 310
- Parvolex*, 843
- Passive immunity, 778
- Patent ductus arteriosus, 143
- Patient group direction (PGD), 4
- Patient information leaflets, 2
- Pavacol-D*, 188
- Peak flow meters, 146
- Peak flow meters: low range, 170
- Peak flow meters: standard range, 170
- Pedea*, 656
- Peditrace*, 620
- Pegaspargase, **553**
- Pegasys*, 403
- Peginterferon alfa, **402**
- Pelvic inflammatory disease, 307
- Penicillamine, **616**
- Penicillin G, *see* Benzylpenicillin sodium
- Penicillins, 308, 335
- Penicillins, antipseudomonal with beta-lactamase inhibitor, 337
- Penicillins, beta-lactamase sensitive, 338
- Penicillins, broad-spectrum, 339
- Penicillins, broad-spectrum with beta-lactamase inhibitor, 343
- Penicillins, mecillinam-type, 344
- Penicillins, penicillinase-resistant, 345
- Penicillin V, *see* Phenoxymethylpenicillin

- Pentacarinat*, 382  
 Pentamidine isetionate, **381**  
*Pentasa*, 30, 31  
*Pentostam*, 386  
*Pepdite preparations*, 1029  
 Peppermint oil, **35**  
*Peptamen preparations*, 1015, 1018, 1020, 1022  
 Peptic ulceration, 53  
 Peptide-based formula, 1015  
*Pepti preparations*, 1028  
*Peptisorb*, 1015  
 Perampanel, **205**  
*Perative*, 1018  
*Perfalgan*, 273  
*Perfan*, 127  
*Performa*, 463  
 Pericardial tuberculosis, 362  
 Periciazine, *see* Pericyazine  
 Pericoronitis, 709  
 Pericyazine, **246**  
*Perinal*, 71  
 Periodontitis, 709  
 Peri-operative analgesia, 817
  - Non-opioid analgesics, 817
  - Opioid analgesics, 817
 Peri-operative drugs, 809  
 Peri-operative sedation, 820  
 Perioral lesions, 733  
*Periostat*, 353  
 Peripheral vascular disease, 144  
 Peripheral vasodilators, 117, 121  
 Peritonitis, 307  
 Peritonitis: peritoneal dialysis-associated, 307  
*Perizam*, 219  
*Permethrin*, **729**  
*Permitabs*, 761  
 Peroxides, 756  
*Peroxyl*, 704  
 Perphenazine, **246**  
*Persantin preparations*, 93  
 Perspiration, 751  
 Pertussis, antibacterial prophylaxis, 302  
 Pertussis vaccine, 783
  - with diphtheria, tetanus, hepatitis B, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, *see* Diphtheria with tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis b, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine
  - with diphtheria with haemophilus influenza with poliomyelitis and tetanus, *see* Diphtheria with haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, pertussis, poliomyelitis and tetanus
  - with diphtheria with poliomyelitis and tetanus, *see* Diphtheria with pertussis, poliomyelitis vaccine and tetanus
 Pesticide poisoning, 838  
 Pethidine hydrochloride, **287**  
*Petyme MR*, 492  
*Pevanti*, 443  
*Pevaryl preparations*, 725  
*Peyona*, 190  
 Phaeochromocytoma, 99  
*Pharmorubicin*, 540  
*Pheburane*, 616  
*Phenergan*, 181  
 Phenobarbital, **216**  
 Phenobarbitone, *see* Phenobarbital  
 Phenoxybenzamine hydrochloride, **117**  
 Phenoxymethylpenicillin, **339**  
*Phenylalanine50*, 1048  
 Phenylephrine hydrochloride, 680
  - Cardiovascular System, **125**
  - Eye, **679**
  - with lidocaine, *see* Lidocaine with phenylephrine
 Phenylketonuria, 623, 1049  
 Phenytoin, **205**  
*Phlexy-10*, 1049  
*Phlexy-Vits products*, 1049  
 Pholcodine, **188**  
*Phosex*, 599  
 Phosphate, **600**  
 Phosphate binders, 599  
 Phosphate imbalance, 598  
*Phosphate Sandoz*, 600  
 Phosphodiesterase type-3 inhibitors, 127  
 Phosphodiesterase type-5 inhibitors, 120  
 Phosphorus, 598  
 Phosphorylated glycosylated recombinant human deoxyribonuclease 1 (rhDNase), *see* Dornase alfa  
 Photodamage, 765  
 Phototherapy, 731  
*Phyllocontin Continus*, 168  
*Physeptone*, 299  
 Phytomenadione, **636**  
*Picolax*, 39  
 Pilocarpine, **685**  
*Pilocarpine nitrate*, 686  
 Pimecrolimus, **747**  
 Pimozide, **247**  
*Pinexel PR*, 492  
 Piperacillin with tazobactam, **337**  
 Piperazine phosphate with arteminol, *see* Arteminol with piperazine phosphate  
 Piperazine tetraphosphate with dihydroartemisinin, *see* Arteminol with piperazine phosphate  
 Piperazine with arteminol, 386  
*Pirinase Hayfever*, 700  
*Piriton*, 178  
 Piroxicam, **660**  
 Pityriasis versicolor, 721  
 Pivmecillinam hydrochloride, **344**  
 Pizotifen, **291**  
*PK Aid 4*, 1049  
*PK Foods products*, 1044, 1045  
*PKU cooler*, 1050  
*PKU express*, 1050  
*PKU products*, 1050, 1051  
 Plant alkaloids, 767  
 Plasma products, 87, 595  
 Plasma substitutes, 595  
 Platelet disorders, 581
  - Essential thrombocythaemia, 581
  - Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, 581
 Platinum compounds, 548  
*Plenachol*, 633  
 Pneumococcal infection in asplenia or in patients with sickle-cell disease, antibacterial prophylaxis, 302  
 Pneumococcal polysaccharide conjugate vaccine (adsorbed), **793**  
 Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine, **793**  
 Pneumococcal vaccine, 784  
 Pneumocystis pneumonia, 379  
 Pneumonia possibly caused by atypical pathogens, 309  
 Pneumonia, 309  
*Pocket Chamber*, 171  
 Podophyllotoxin, **767**  
 Podophyllotoxin derivatives, 549  
 Poisoning, emergency treatment, 832
  - Alcohol, acute intoxication, 833
  - Antidepressant, 835
  - Antimalarial, 836
  - Antipsychotic, 836
  - Aspirin, 833
  - Benzodiazepine, 836
  - Beta blockers, 836
  - Blood pressure, 832
  - Body temperature, 833
  - Calcium-channel blockers, 836
  - Convulsions during, 833
  - CS spray, 838
  - Cyanide, 837
  - Ethylene glycol and methanol, 837
  - Heart, 833
  - Heavy metal, 837
  - Iron salts, 836
  - Lithium, 836
  - Methaemoglobinemia, 833
  - Nerve agents, 838
  - Noxious gases, 837
  - Opioid, 834
  - Paracetamol, 834
  - Pesticide, 838
  - Poison removal and elimination, 833
  - Respiration, 832
  - Snake bites and animal stings, 838
  - Stimulant-drug, 837
  - Theophylline, 837
 Poliomyelitis vaccine, 785
  - with diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis B and haemophilus influenzae type b

- vaccine, *see* Diphtheria with tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis b, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine
- with diphtheria with haemophilus influenza with pertussis and tetanus, *see* Diphtheria with haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, pertussis, poliomyelitis and tetanus
  - with diphtheria with pertussis and tetanus, *see* Diphtheria with pertussis, poliomyelitis vaccine and tetanus
  - with diphtheria and tetanus, *see* Diphtheria with poliomyelitis and tetanus vaccine
- Pollenase preparations*, 179
- Pollinex preparations*, 182
- Polyacrylic acid, *see* Carbomers
- Polycal*, 1034
- Polyene antifungals, 371, 373, 710
- Polyethylene glycol with hydroxypropyl guar and propylene glycol, *see* Hydroxypropyl guar with polyethylene glycol and propylene glycol
- Polymyxin B sulfate
- with dexamethasone, hypromellose and neomycin, *see* Dexamethasone with hypromellose, neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate
  - with neomycin and hydrocortisone, *see* Hydrocortisone with neomycin and polymyxin B sulfate
- Polymyxins, 346, **723**
- Polysaccharide-iron complex, **573**
- Polyvinyl alcohol, **673**
- Pompe disease, 612
- Ponstan*, 658
- Poractant alfa, **190**
- Porphyrias, *see* Acute porphyrias
- Posterior pituitary hormones and antagonists, 432
- Posterior pituitary hormones, 432
- Post-exposure prophylaxis, 776
- Postoperative nausea and vomiting, 260
- Post-operative pain and inflammation, 680
- Potassium, 587, 601
- Potassium bicarbonate
- with potassium acid tartrate, **601**
  - with potassium chloride, *see* Potassium chloride with potassium bicarbonate
  - with sodium alginate, *see* Sodium alginate with potassium bicarbonate
- Potassium canrenoate, **126**
- Potassium chloride, **601**
- with calcium chloride and sodium chloride and sodium lactate, **587**
  - with calcium chloride dihydrate and sodium chloride, **587**
  - with disodium hydrogen citrate with glucose and sodium chloride, *see* Disodium hydrogen citrate with glucose, potassium chloride and sodium chloride
  - with glucose, **588**
  - with glucose and sodium chloride, **588**
  - with potassium bicarbonate, **588**
  - with rice powder, sodium chloride and sodium citrate, **591**
  - with sodium bicarbonate, sodium chloride and macrogol 3350, *see* Macrogol 3350 with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride
  - with sodium chloride, **588**
- Potassium citrate with citric acid, *see* Citric acid with potassium citrate
- Potassium imbalance, 600
- Potassium permanganate, **761**
- Potassium-sparing diuretics and aldosterone antagonists, 139
- Potassium-sparing diuretics, other, 142
- Povidone iodine*, 679
- Povidone-iodine
- Eye, **679**
  - skin, **761**
- Pralidoxime chloride, **840**
- Pramocaine with hydrocortisone, *see* Hydrocortisone with pramocaine
- Pravastatin sodium, **133**
- Praziquantel, **384**
- Prazosin, **101**
- Preblacon XL*, 491
- Preconceive*, 575
- Pred Forte*, 669
- Prednisolone
- Ear, **691**
  - Endocrine system, **442**
  - Eye, **669**
  - with cinchocaine, *see* Cinchocaine with prednisolone
- Predsol preparations*, 443, 669, 691
- Prefibin*, 274
- Pregestimil*, 1029
- Pregnyl*, 475
- Pre-medication and peri-operative drugs, 809
- Antagonists for central and respiratory depression, 809
  - Antimuscarinic drugs, 809
  - Drugs that affect gastric pH, 809
  - Sedative drugs, 809
- Prescribing competency framework, 1
- Prescribing for children: weight, height, and gender, 1114
- Prescribing in breast-feeding, 19
- Prescribing in dental practice, 24
- Prescribing in hepatic impairment, 17
- Prescribing in palliative care, 20
- Prescribing in pregnancy, 19
- Prescribing in renal impairment, 17
- Prescription-event monitoring, 13
- Prevenar*, 793
- Prezista*, 424
- Priadel preparations*, 234
- Prilocaine hydrochloride, **829**
- with felypressin, **830**
  - with lidocaine, *see* Lidocaine with prilocaine
- Primaxin*, 128
- Primaquine, 386, **396**
- Primary biliary cholangitis, 64
- Primaxin preparations*, 315
- Primidone, **217**
- Primolut N*, 480
- Principles of dose adjustment in renal impairment, 17
- Priorix*, 800
- Privigen*, 775
- Pro-Banthine*, 63
- Pro-Cal preparations*, 1038
- Pro-cal products*, 1038
- Procabazine, **554**
- Proceli products*, 1041–1043
- Prochlorperazine, **268**
- Proctofoam HC*, 71
- Proctosedyl*, 70
- Procyclidine hydrochloride, **256**
- Procyshi*, 606
- Pro D3 preparations*, 632, 633
- Products for metabolic diseases, 623
- Pro-Epanutin*, 199
- Proflavine, **763**
- Progesterone receptor modulators, 507
- Progestogen-only contraceptives, 495
- Progestogens, 479, 507, 511
- Prograf*, 525
- Proguanil, 386
- Proguanil hydrochloride, **397**
- with atovaquone, *see* Atovaquone with proguanil hydrochloride
  - with chloroquine, *see* Chloroquine with proguanil
- Promethazine hydrochloride, **180**
- Promethazine teoclate, **266**
- Prominproducts*, 1044, 1045
- Promixin*, 348
- Propamide isetionate, **678**
- Propantheline bromide, **63**
- Propionic acidemia, 1048
- Propofol, **805**
- Propofol-Lipuro*, 806
- Propranolol hydrochloride, **104**
- Proprietary Infusion Fluids for Parenteral Feeding, 619

Propylene glycol with  
hydroxypropyl guar and  
polyethylene glycol, *see*  
Hydroxypropyl guar with  
polyethylene glycol and propylene  
glycol

Propylthiouracil, **484**

*ProSource preparations*, 1036

Prostacyclin, *see* Epoprostenol

Prostaglandin analogues and  
prostamides, 143, 686

Prostaglandin analogues for  
glaucoma, 682

Prostaglandins, cardiovascular, 118

*Prostap preparations*, 472

*Prostin preparations*, 143, 144

*ProSure*, 1033

*Prosurin XL*, 492

Protamine sulfate, **841**

Protamine zinc insulin, **460**

Protamine zinc insulin injection—  
long acting, *see* Protamine zinc  
insulin

Protease inhibitors, HIV, 423

Protein C concentrate, **86**

Protein kinase inhibitors, 559

*Protifar*, 1036

Proton pump inhibitors, **56**

*Protopam Chloride*, 840

*Protopic*, 748

Protozoal infection, 384

*Provera preparations*, 513

*Proxymetacaine*, 680

Proxymetacaine hydrochloride, **680**

*Prozac*, 237

*Prozep*, 237

*ProZero*, 1048

Pruritus, 22, 752

Pseudoephedrine hydrochloride,  
**696**

Psoriasis, 731

▸ Phototherapy, 731

*Psoriderm*, 717, 746

Psychoses and related disorders, 241

Psychoses and schizophrenia, 241

*Pulmicort preparations*, 161

Pulmonary hypertension, 99, 118

Pulmonary surfactants, 189

*Pulmozyme*, 186

*Pure*, 1042

Purine synthesis inhibitors, 527

*Pylobactell*, 60

*Pyralvex*, 709

Pyrazinamide, **368**

▸ with rifampicin and isoniazid, *see*  
Rifampicin with isoniazid and  
pyrazinamide

Pyridostigmine bromide, **649**

Pyridoxine hydrochloride, **627**

Pyrimethamine, 386, **399**

## Q

*Qlaira*, 500

*Questran preparations*, 130

Quetiapine, **252**

Quinine, 386, **397**

Quinolones, 348, 676, 690

*Quinoric*, 639

*QV*, 716, 719

*Qvar preparations*, 160

*QV Gentle*, 716

## R

Rabies immunoglobulin, **775**

Rabies vaccine, 785, **800**

*Rabipur*, 800

*Racecadotril*, **49**

Radiographic contrast media, 36

Raised intracranial pressure, 22

*Raltegravir*, **411**

*Ranicalm*, 55

*Ranitidine*, **54**

*Ranitol*, 55

*Rapamune*, 522

*Rapifen*, 819

*Rapilose preparations*, 591

*Rasburicase*, **556**

*Ravicti*, 615

*Raxone*, 687

*Rebetol*, 401

Recombinant human granulocyte-  
colony stimulating factor, *see*  
*Filgrastim*

Recombinant human granulocyte-  
colony stimulating factor, *see*  
*Lenograstim*

Recombinant Human Growth

Hormone, *see* Somatropin

Recombinant human insulin  
analogue—long acting, *see* Insulin  
degludec

Recombinant human insulin  
analogue—long acting, *see* Insulin  
detemir

Recombinant human insulin  
analogue—long acting, *see* Insulin  
glargine

Recombinant human insulin  
analogue—short acting, *see* Insulin  
aspart

Recombinant human insulin  
analogue—short acting, *see* Insulin  
glulisine

Recombinant human insulin  
analogue—short acting, *see* Insulin  
lispro

Recombinant human insulin-like  
growth factor-I, *see* Mecasermin

Rectal and anal disorders, 68

Reduced exocrine secretions, 71

*Refolinon*, 555

*Refresh preparations*, 673

*Regurin preparations*, 490

*Relaxit*, 44

*Relenza*, 430

*Relestat*, 667

*Reltebon*, 286

*Relvar Ellipta*, 164

*Remedeine preparations*, 279

*Remegel preparations*, 593

*Remicade*, 34

*Remifentanyl*, **819**

*Remsima*, 34

*Renagel*, 599

Renal function in adults definition  
table, 18

*Renamil*, 1033

*Renapro preparations*, 1033

*Renastart*, 1033

*Renilon*, 1027

*Rennie*, 593

*Renvela*, 599

*Repatha preparations*, 135

*Repevax*, 789

*Replagal*, 606

*Replenine-VF*, 86

Resins, 189

*Resonium preparations*, 601

*Resource preparations*, 1016, 1021,

1027, 1038, 1039, 1040

Respiratory depression, respiratory  
distress syndrome and apnoea, 189

Respiratory stimulants, 189

Respiratory syncytial virus, 430

Respiratory system, drug delivery,  
145

▸ Inhalers, spacers and nebulisers,  
145

▸ Peak flow meters, 146

Respiratory system infections,

antibacterial therapy, 309

▸ Community-acquired

pneumonia: low-severity, 309

▸ Epiglottitis (*Haemophilus*  
*influenzae*), 309

▸ Hospital-acquired pneumonia,  
309

▸ Lung infection in cystic fibrosis,  
309

*Restandol*, 482

Restlessness and confusion, 22

Resuscitation in dental practice, 804

*Retacrit*, 567

*Retalzem*, 144

*Retapamulin*, **724**

Retinal disorders, 687

Retinoid and related drugs, 554, 749,  
756

Retinol palmitate with white soft  
paraffin and light liquid paraffin  
and liquid paraffin and wool fat,  
**673**

Retinol, *see* Vitamin A

*Retrovir preparations*, 423

*Revatio*, 121

*Revaxis*, 790

*Revestive*, 36

*Revolade*, 582

*Rexocaine*, 827

*Reyataz*, 423

Rheumatic disease, suppressing  
drugs, 638

▸ Antimalarials, 638

▸ Cytokine modulators, 638

▸ Drugs affecting the immune  
response, 638

▸ Sulfasalazine, 639

Rheumatic fever, 302



- RhIGF-I, *see* Mecasermin
- Rhinitis, 694
- Rhinocort, 700
- Rhinolast, 698
- Rhophylac, 772
- Rhubarb extract with salicylic acid, *see* Salicylic acid with rhubarb extract
- RHuG-CSF, *see* Lenograstim
- Riamet, 393
- Riastap, 86
- Ribavirin, **400**
- Riboflavin, **628**
- Riboflavine, *see* Riboflavin
- Rifabutin, **364**
- Rifadin, 365, 366
- Rifampicin, **364**
- ▶ with isoniazid, **366**
  - ▶ with isoniazid and pyrazinamide, **366**
- Rifamycins, 364, 379
- Rifater, 366
- Rifinah, 366
- Rigevidon, 503
- Rilpivirine, **415**
- ▶ with emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide, *see* Emtricitabine with rilpivirine and tenofovir alafenamide
- Rimactane, 366
- Rinatec, 698
- Ringer-Lactate Solution for Injection, *see* Potassium chloride with calcium chloride and sodium chloride and sodium lactate
- Ringer's solution, *see* Potassium chloride with calcium chloride dihydrate and sodium chloride
- Risedronate sodium, **469**
- Risperdal preparations, 254
- Risperidone, **253**
- Ritalin preparations, 228
- Ritonavir, **426**
- ▶ with lopinavir, *see* Lopinavir with ritonavir
- Rituximab, **530**
- Rixathon, 531
- Rizopia products, 1043
- Roacutane, 758
- RoActemra, 641
- Rocaltrol, 631
- Rocephin, 324
- Rocuronium bromide, **815**
- Roferon-A, 558
- Ropivacaine hydrochloride, **830**
- Rosacea, 754
- Rosiced, 723
- Rosuvastatin, **133**
- Rotarix, 801
- Rotavirus vaccine, 785, **801**
- Routine immunisation schedule, 778
- Rovamycine, 399
- Rozex, 723
- Rt-PA, *see* Alteplase
- Rubella and normal immunoglobulin, 771
- Rufinamide, **207**
- Rupatadine, **177**
- S**
- Sabril, 215
- Saizen, 476, 477
- Salactol, 769
- Salamol preparations, 157
- Salatac, 769
- Salazopyrin preparations, 32
- Salbulin preparations, 157
- Salbutamol, **156**
- Salcatonin, *see* Calcitonin (salmon)
- Sal-e Pods, 764
- Salicylic acid, **768**
- ▶ with benzoic acid, *see* Benzoic acid with salicylic acid
  - ▶ with betamethasone, *see* Betamethasone with salicylic acid
  - ▶ with boric acid and tannic acid, *see* Boric acid with salicylic acid and tannic acid
  - ▶ with coal tar and coconut oil, *see* Coal tar with coconut oil and salicylic acid
  - ▶ with coal tar and dithranol, *see* Coal tar with dithranol and salicylic acid
  - ▶ with coal tar and precipitated sulfur, *see* Coal tar with salicylic acid and precipitated sulfur
  - ▶ with derivatives, 708, 728, 750, 768
  - ▶ with dithranol and zinc oxide, *see* Dithranol with salicylic acid and zinc oxide
  - ▶ with lactic acid, **769**
  - ▶ with rhubarb extract, **708**
  - ▶ with zinc oxide, **750**
- Saline, 674
- Saliveze, 702
- Salivix preparations, 702
- Salmeterol, **155**
- ▶ with fluticasone, *see* Fluticasone with salmeterol
- Salmonella (non-typhoid), 306
- Salofalk, 30, 31
- Sample prescription, 5
- Sandimmun, 521
- Sandocal preparations, 593
- Sando-K, 588
- Sandostatin preparations, 467
- Santizor XL, 491
- Sapropterin dihydrochloride, **623**
- Sapvit-D3, 632
- Sayana Press, 513
- Scabies, 721
- Scalp and hair conditions, 760
- Scandishake, 1038
- Scandonest preparations, 829
- Scheriproct, 70
- Schistosomicides (bilharziasis), 382
- School, managing medicines in, 2
- Scopoderm, 267
- Scopolamine hydrobromide, *see* Hyoscine hydrobromide
- SD CodeFree, 463
- Sebco, 746
- Seborrhoeic dermatitis, 730
- Securon preparations, 110
- Sedating antihistamines, 177, 265, 291
- Sedation, anaesthesia, and resuscitation in dental practice, 804
- Sedative drugs, 809
- Seizures, 193
- Selective beta<sub>2</sub>-agonists (long-acting), 154
- Selective beta<sub>2</sub>-agonists (short-acting), 156
- Selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors, 236
- Selenium, **760**
- Selexid, 345
- Selsun preparations, 760
- Senna, **46**
- ▶ with ispaghula husk, **47**
- Senokot preparations, 47
- Sensocard, 462, 463
- Sepsis, early management, 301
- Septanest, 824
- Septicaemia (community-acquired), 304
- Septicaemia (hospital-acquired), 304
- Septicaemia in neonates, 304
- Septicaemia related to vascular catheter, 304
- Septic arthritis, 307
- Seprin, 351
- Seravit, 1038
- Serenace, 246
- Seretid preparations, 163
- Serevent preparations, 155
- Seroquel preparations, 253
- Serotonin (5HT<sub>3</sub>) receptor antagonists, 264
- Sertraline, **238**
- Setlers preparations, 593
- Setofil, 265
- Sevelamer, **599**
- Severe local anaesthetic-induced cardiovascular toxicity, 823
- Sevoflurane, **808**
- Sevredol, 284
- Sex hormone responsive conditions, 477
- Sex hormones, 477
- ▶ Female sex hormones, 477
  - ▶ Hormone replacement therapy, 477
- Shigellosis, 306
- Shock, 121
- Short bowel syndrome, 35
- Shortec, 286
- Sialanar, 812
- Sickle-cell anaemia, 562
- Side-effect frequencies table, 14
- Side-effects in the BNF for Children, 14

- Siklos*, 552  
 Sildenafil, **120**  
 Silicone contraceptive diaphragms, 506  
 Silicone contraceptive pessaries, 507  
*Silkis*, 751  
 Silver nitrate, **767**  
 Silver sulfadiazine, **723**  
 Simeticone, 50, **52**  
   ▶ with aluminium hydroxide and magnesium hydroxide, **52**  
   ▶ with aluminium hydroxide, dicycloverine hydrochloride and magnesium oxide, *see* Dicycloverine hydrochloride with aluminium hydroxide, magnesium oxide and simeticone  
   ▶ with hydrotalcite, *see* Co-simalcite  
   ▶ with loperamide, *see* Loperamide with simeticone  
*Similac preparations*, 1020, 1029  
 Simple Linctus, *see* Citric acid  
*Simponi*, 646  
*Simulect*, 527  
*Simvador*, 134  
 Simvastatin, **134**  
   ▶ with ezetimibe, **134**  
*Sinemet preparations*, 258  
*Singulair*, 166  
 Sinusitis (acute), 697  
 Sinusitis, antibacterial therapy, 308  
*Siopel*, 714  
 Sirolimus, **521**  
 Skeletal muscle relaxants, 647  
 Skin adhesives, 764  
 Skin cleansers, antiseptics and desloughing agents, 760  
 Skin conditions, management, 712  
   ▶ Excipients and sensitisation, 713  
   ▶ Neonates, 713  
 Skin disfigurement, 764  
 Skin infections, 720  
   ▶ Angular cheilitis, 721  
   ▶ Antibacterials, 720  
   ▶ Antifungals, 721  
   ▶ Antivirals, 721  
   ▶ Candidiasis, 721  
   ▶ Crab lice, 722  
   ▶ Dermatophytoses, 721  
   ▶ Head lice, 722  
   ▶ Herpes labialis, 721  
   ▶ Parasiticidals, 721  
   ▶ Pityriasis versicolor, 721  
   ▶ Scabies, 721  
 Skin infections, antibacterial therapy, 309  
   ▶ Animal and human bites, 310  
   ▶ Cellulitis, 310  
   ▶ Erysipelas, 310  
   ▶ Impetigo, 309, 310  
   ▶ Paronychia or 'septic spots' in neonate, 310  
   ▶ Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome, 310  
   ▶ Surgical wound infection, 310  
*Skinoren*, 756  
 Sleep disorders, 293  
*SLO Drink preparations*, 1039  
*Slo-Phyllin*, 170  
*Slow Sodium*, 589  
 Smallpox vaccine, 786  
 Smith–Lemli–Opitz syndrome, 64  
 Snake bites, 844  
 Snake bites and animal stings, 838  
*Sno-Pro*, 1049  
*Sno Tears*, 673  
*Sodiofolin*, 556  
 Sodium acid phosphate with sodium phosphate, **43**  
 Sodium alginate  
   ▶ with calcium carbonate and sodium bicarbonate, **60**  
   ▶ with potassium bicarbonate, **51**  
 Sodium benzoate, **614**  
 Sodium bicarbonate  
   ▶ Blood and nutrition, **586**  
   ▶ Ear, **693**  
   ▶ with calcium carbonate and sodium alginate, *see* Sodium alginate with calcium carbonate and sodium bicarbonate  
   ▶ with magnesium carbonate and magnesium trisilicate, *see* Magnesium trisilicate with magnesium carbonate and sodium bicarbonate  
   ▶ with potassium chloride, sodium chloride and macrogol 3350, *see* Macrogol 3350 with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride  
   ▶ with sodium chloride, **704**  
 Sodium chloride  
   ▶ Blood and nutrition, **589**  
   ▶ Eye, **673**  
   ▶ Oropharynx, **704**  
   ▶ with calcium chloride dihydrate and potassium chloride, *see* Potassium chloride with calcium chloride dihydrate and sodium chloride  
   ▶ with glucose, **590**  
   ▶ with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and macrogol 3350, *see* Macrogol 3350 with potassium chloride, sodium bicarbonate and sodium chloride  
   ▶ with sodium bicarbonate, *see* Sodium bicarbonate with sodium chloride  
 Sodium citrate, **44**  
   ▶ with potassium chloride, rice powder and sodium chloride, *see* Potassium chloride with rice powder, sodium chloride and sodium citrate  
 Sodium clodronate, **470**  
 Sodium cromoglicate  
   ▶ Eye, **668**  
   ▶ Nose, **701**  
   ▶ Respiratory system, **167**  
 Sodium cromoglycate, *see* Sodium cromoglicate  
 Sodium dichloroacetate, **614**  
 Sodium feredetate, **573**  
 Sodium fluoride, **705**  
 Sodium hyaluronate, **674**  
 Sodium hyaluronate and trehalose, **674**  
 Sodium ironedetate, *see* Sodium feredetate  
 Sodium Lactate Intravenous Infusion, Compound, *see* Potassium chloride with calcium chloride and sodium chloride and sodium lactate  
 Sodium lactate with calcium chloride, potassium chloride and sodium chloride, *see* Potassium chloride with calcium chloride and sodium chloride and sodium lactate  
 Sodium lactate with calcium chloride, potassium chloride and sodium chloride, *see* Potassium chloride with calcium chloride and sodium chloride and sodium lactate  
 Sodium nitrite, **839**  
 Sodium nitroprusside, **118**  
 Sodium phenylbutyrate, **615**  
 Sodium phosphate with sodium acid phosphate, *see* Sodium acid phosphate with sodium phosphate  
 Sodium picosulfate, **47**  
   ▶ with magnesium citrate, *see* Magnesium citrate with sodium picosulfate  
 Sodium picosulphate, *see* Sodium picosulfate  
 Sodium polystyrene sulfonate, **601**  
 Sodium stibogluconate, **385**  
 Sodium thiosulfate, **839**  
 Sodium valproate, **208**  
*Soffen*, 718  
*Sofiperla*, 502  
 Sofosbuvir, **402**  
   ▶ with ledipasvir, *see* Ledipasvir with sofosbuvir  
*Sofradex*, 670  
 Softening drugs (earwax removal), 693  
 Softening laxatives, 44  
 Soft tissue and joint disorders, 661  
 Soft-tissue and musculoskeletal disorders, 663  
   ▶ Enzymes used in soft-tissue disorders, 663  
   ▶ Extravasation, 663  
*Solian*, 249  
*Soliris*, 569  
*Solivio N*, 620  
*Solpadeine preparations*, 275  
*Solpadol*, 276  
*Soltel*, 156  
 Soluble Insulin—short acting, *see* Insulin  
*Solu-Cortef*, 441  
*Solvazinc*, 618  
 Somatomedins, 477  
 Somatostatin analogues, 466  
 Somatropin, **475**  
*Somnifex preparations*, 181

- Sondate XL*, 253  
*S.O.S.*, 1034  
*Sotacor*, 81  
*Sotalol hydrochloride*, **80**  
*Sovaldi*, 402  
 Soya protein formula, 1015  
 Soybean oil, **674**  
*Space Chamber Plus*, 171  
 Spacers, 171  
*Spasmonal preparations*, 63  
 Spasticity, 649  
 Special diets, 622  
 Specialised formulas: Infant and child, 1027
  - ▶ Amino acid-based formula, 1027
  - ▶ Fructose-based formula, 1031
  - ▶ Hydrolysate formula, 1028
  - ▶ Low calcium formula, 1031
  - ▶ MCT-enhanced formula, 1030
  - ▶ Pre-thickened infant feeds, 1031
  - ▶ Residual lactose formula, 1030
  - ▶ Soya-based formula, 1031
- Special-order manufacturers, 1066  
*Spectrila*, 551  
 Spermicidal contraceptives, 496  
 Spermicidals, 513  
*Spinraza*, 648  
 Spiramycin, **399**  
*Spiriva preparations*, 154  
 Spironolactone, **126**  
*Sporanox preparations*, 377  
*Sprilon*, 714  
*SST – brand name*, 702  
*Stamaril*, 802  
 Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome, 310  
*Staphylococcus aureus* lung infection in cystic fibrosis, antibacterial prophylaxis, 302  
 Statins, 131  
 Status epilepticus, 195, 221  
 Stavudine, **421**  
*Stayveer*, 120  
*Stelara*, 749  
*Stemetil*, 269  
 Sterculia, **41**
  - ▶ with frangula, **41***Sterets preparations*, 762  
*Stericlens*, 764  
*Steripod*, 764  
 Sterols, 66  
*Sterowash*, 764  
*Stesolid*, 221  
*Stexerol-D3*, 632  
*St George's*, 694  
 Stimulant-drug poisoning, 837  
 Stimulant laxatives, 38, 45  
 Stiripentol, **210**  
*Stirlescent*, 660  
 Stoma care, 73
  - ▶ Analgesics, 73
  - ▶ Antacids, 73
  - ▶ Antidiarrhoeal drugs, 73
  - ▶ Antisecretory drugs, 73
  - ▶ Digoxin, 73
  - ▶ Diuretics, 73
  - ▶ Iron preparations, 74
  - ▶ Laxatives, 74
- Strattera*, 227  
*Strefen*, 707  
*Strensiq*, 609  
 Streptokinase, **89**  
 Streptomycin, **313**  
*Strivit-D3*, 633  
*Stromectol*, 383  
 Strongyloidiasis, 383  
*Stugeron*, 266  
 Subarachnoid haemorrhage, 87  
*Subgam*, 774  
*Sublimaze*, 281  
 Substance dependence, 295  
*Subutex*, 274  
 Succinylcholine chloride, see Suxamethonium chloride  
 Sucralfate, **54**  
*Sudafed preparations*, 696, 697  
*Sudocrem*, 714  
 Sugammadex, **817**  
 Sugars, 590  
*Sulazine EC*, 32  
 Sulfadiazine, **351**  
 Sulfamethoxazole with trimethoprim, see Co-trimoxazole  
 Sulfasalazine, **31**, 639  
 Sulfonamides, 350, 723  
 Sulfonyleureas, 452  
 Sulfur-containing imidazoles, 483  
 Sulphadiazine, see Sulfadiazine  
 Sulphasalazine, see Sulfasalazine  
 Sulpiride, **247**  
 Sumatriptan, **291**  
 Sun protection and photodamage, 765  
 Sunscreen, 765  
 Sunscreen preparations ingredient nomenclature table, 765  
*SunVit-D3 preparations*, 632, 633  
*Sunya*, 502  
*Super Betavit*, 766  
*Super Bio-Quinone*, 609  
 Superficial soft-tissue injuries and superficial thrombophlebitis, 766  
 Superinfection, 301  
 Supplements, see
  - ▶ Feed supplements, 1034
  - ▶ Nutritional supplements (non-disease specific), 1022
  - ▶ Nutritional supplements for metabolic diseases, 1046
- Supply of medicines, 7  
 Supraventricular tachycardia, 75  
*Suprax*, 320  
*SURESIGN Resure*, 463  
 Surgery and long-term medication, 804  
 Surgical wound infection, 310  
*Survanta*, 190  
*Survived OPD*, 1015  
*Sustiva*, 413  
 Suxamethonium chloride, **813**  
*Symbicort preparations*, 162  
 Sympathomimetics, 121
  - ▶ Inotropics, 121, 122
  - ▶ Vasoconstrictors, 122, 123, 136, 679, 695
- Sympathomimetics for glaucoma, 682  
 Symptom control in palliative care, 21  
*Symtuza*, 424  
*Synacthen preparations*, 474  
*Synagis*, 431  
*Synalar preparations*, 742, 743  
*Syner-KINASE*, 89  
*Synflorix*, 793  
 Syphilis, 307  
*Systane*, 672  
*Sytron*, 574
- T**  
*Tabphyn MR*, 492  
 Tacalcitol, **751**  
*Tacni*, 525  
 Tacrolimus
  - ▶ Immune system and malignant disease, **522**
  - ▶ Skin, **747**
- Taenicides, 382  
*Tambocor preparations*, 78  
*Tamfrex XL*, 492  
*Tamiflu*, 429  
 Tamsulosin hydrochloride, **492**  
*Tamurex*, 492  
*Tapclob*, 219  
 Tapeworm infections, 382  
*Taranis products*, 1044, 1045  
 Targeted therapy responsive malignancy, 559  
*Targocid*, 325  
 Tars, 745  
*Tasigna*, 561  
 Tazobactam with piperacillin, see Piperacillin with tazobactam  
*Tazocin*, 337  
 T-cell activation inhibitors, 641  
 3TC, see Lamivudine  
 Tear deficiency, ocular lubricants, and astringents, 671  
*Tears Naturelle*, 673  
*Teduglutide*, **36**  
*TEE2*, 464  
*Tegretol preparations*, 198  
 Teicoplanin, **325**  
*Telfast*, 175  
*Telzir*, 425  
 Temazepam, **821**  
*Temgesic*, 274  
*Temodal*, 538  
*Temomedac*, 538  
 Temozolomide, **537**  
 Tenofovir alafenamide, **400**
  - ▶ with darunavir, cobicistat and emtricitabine, see Darunavir with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide
  - ▶ with elvitegravir, cobicistat and emtricitabine, see Elvitegravir

- with cobicistat, emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide
- with emtricitabine, *see* Emtricitabine with tenofovir alafenamide
- with emtricitabine and rilpivirine, *see* Emtricitabine with rilpivirine and tenofovir alafenamide
- Tenofovir disoproxil, **421**
  - with emtricitabine, *see* Emtricitabine with tenofovir disoproxil
- Tenormin, 106
- Tentrin preparations, 1020, 1022
- Tepadina, 538
- Tephine, 275
- Teragezza, 755
- Terbinafine, **726**
- Terbutaline sulfate, **158**
- Terlipressin acetate, **66**
- Terra-Cortril preparations, 744
- Teslac, 483
- Testolactone, **482**
- Testosterone enantate, **481**
- Testosterone propionate, **482**
- Testosterone undecanoate, **482**
- Tetanus and diphtheria with poliomyelitis, *see* Diphtheria with poliomyelitis and tetanus vaccine
- Tetanus immunoglobulin, **775**
- Tetanus vaccine, 786
  - with diphtheria, pertussis, hepatitis B, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, *see* Diphtheria with tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis b, poliomyelitis and haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine
  - with diphtheria with haemophilus influenza with pertussis and poliomyelitis, *see* Diphtheria with haemophilus influenzae type b vaccine, pertussis, poliomyelitis and tetanus
  - with diphtheria with pertussis and diphtheria, *see* Diphtheria with pertussis, poliomyelitis vaccine and tetanus
- Tetracaine
  - Anaesthesia, **831**
  - Eye, **680**
- Tetracosactide, **473**
- Tetracosactrin, *see* Tetracosactide
- Tetracycline, **354**
- Tetracyclines, 308, 351, 386, 709
- Tetrahydrobiopterin and derivatives, **623**
- Tetralysal, 353
- Thamicarb, 587
- Thealoz preparations, 674
- TheiCal-D3, 634
- Theophylline, 151, **169**
- Theophylline poisoning, 837
- Thiamine, **628**
- Thiazides and related diuretics, 110, 139, 142
- Thick & Easy preparations, 1039
- Thicken Aid, 1039
- Thioguanine, *see* Tioguanine
- Thiopental sodium, **221**
- Thiopentone sodium, *see* Thiopental sodium
- Thiotepa, **538**
- Thiouracils, 484
- Thirty:30, 719
- Thixo-D preparations, 1039
- Thorens, 632
- Threadworms, 382
- Throat infections, 709
- Thromboembolism, 89
- Thrombopoietin receptor agonists, 582
- Thrush, 709
- Thymoglobulin, 518
- Thyroid disorders, 483
- Thyroid hormones, 485
- Thyrotoxicosis, 103
- Thyroxine sodium, *see* Levothyroxine sodium
- Tiagabine, **211**
- Ticarcillin with clavulanic acid, **337**
- Tick-borne encephalitis vaccine, inactivated, 786, **801**
- TicoVac, 801
- Tilade preparations, 167
- Tildiem preparations, 144
- Tilodol SR, 289
- Tilofyl, 281
- Timentin, 338
- Timodine, 743
- Timolol with dorzolamide, *see* Dorzolamide with timolol
- Timolol maleate, **683**
- Timoptol preparations, 683
- Tinidazole, **335**
- Tinzaparin sodium, **96**
- Tioconazole, **726**
- Tioguanine, **546**
- Tiopex, 683
- Tiotropium, **153**
- Tipranavir, **426**
- Tissue plasminogen activators, 88
- Tissue-type plasminogen activator, *see* Alteplase
- Tivicay, 411
- TOBI, 314
- Tobia products, 1042
- Tobi Podhaler, 314
- Tobramycin
  - Eye, **676**
  - Infection, **313**
- Tocilizumab, **640**
- Tocopherol, *see* Alpha tocopherol
- Tocopherol, *see* Alpha tocopheryl acetate
- Tolazoline, **121**
- Tolbutamide, **453**
- Tolterodine tartrate, **490**
- Topamax, 213
- Topical circulatory preparations, 766
- Topical corticosteroids, 732
  - Compound preparations, 733
  - Preparation potencies, 733
- Topical local antipruritics, 752
- Topiramate, **212**
- Toradol, 818
- Torsade de pointes, 75
- Toujeo, 459
- Toxoplasmosis, 385, 399
- Trace elements with vitamins and minerals, *see* Vitamins with minerals and trace elements
- Tracleer, 120
- Tracrium, 814
- Tracutl, 620
- Tradorec XL, 289
- Tramacet, 290
- Tramadol hydrochloride, **287**
  - with paracetamol, **290**
- Tramquel SR, 289
- Tramulief SR, 289
- Trandate, 104
- Tranexamic acid, **82**
- Tranquilyn, 228
- Transitional services for chronic conditions, 1
- Translarna, 647
- Travel Calm, 267
- Travel health advice, *see* Vaccines for Travel
- Treatment of dry mouth, 701
- Treclin, 759
- Tree pollen extract, **182**
- Trehalose and sodium hyaluronate, *see* Sodium hyaluronate and trehalose
- Tresiba preparations, 459
- Tretinoin, **554**
  - with clindamycin, **758**
  - with erythromycin, **759**
- Triamcinolone acetonide
  - Musculoskeletal system, **662**
  - Nose, **701**
- Triamcinolone hexacetonide, **662**
- Triazole antifungals, 371, 374
- Tribavirin, *see* Ribavirin
- Trichomonacides, 385
- Tricyclic antidepressants, 238
- Trientine dihydrochloride, **617**
- Trifluoperazine, **248**
- Trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride, **257**
- Trileptal, 205
- Trimeprazine tartrate, *see* Alimemazine tartrate
- Trimethoprim, **359**
  - with sulfamethoxazole, *see* Co-trimoxazole
- Triptans, 291
- Triptorelin, **472**
- Tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane, THAM, *see* Trometamol
- Tritamyl products, 1042
- Trimeq, 416
- Trizivir, 417

- Trometamol, **583**  
 Tropicamide, **678**  
 Trospium chloride, **490**  
 Trosyl, 726  
 TRUEresult, 464  
 TrueTrack System, 464  
 TRUEyou, 464  
 Trumenba, 792  
 Trusopt, 685  
 Truvada, 420  
 Truxima, 531  
 Trypanocides, 385  
 Tuberculin PPD, *see* Tuberculin purified protein derivative  
 Tuberculin purified protein derivative, **776**  
 Tuberculosis, 361
  - Continuation phase, 361
  - Drug-resistant tuberculosis, 363
  - Extrapulmonary tuberculosis, 362
  - Immunocompromised patients, 361
  - Initial phase, 361
  - Latent tuberculosis, 362
  - Neonates, 361
  - Pericardial tuberculosis, 362
  - Supervised treatment, 361
  - Treatment failure, 363
  - Unsupervised treatment, 361
 Tuberculosis antibacterial prophylaxis, 302  
 Tuberculosis diagnostic agents, 779  
 Tuberculosis diagnostic test, 776  
 Tumour lysis syndrome, 533  
 Tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF- $\alpha$ ) inhibitors, 642  
 TUMS, 593  
 Twinrix, 795  
 Tylenol, 276  
 Tymbrineb, 314  
 Typhim Vi, 794  
 Typhoid fever, 306  
 Typhoid vaccine, 786, **794**
  - with hepatitis A vaccine, *see* Hepatitis A with typhoid vaccine
 Tyrosinaemia, 612, 1051  
 Tyrosine 1000, 1049  
 TYR preparations, 1051  
 Tyvera, 628
- U**  
 Ubidecarenone, **609**  
 Ubiquinone, *see* Ubidecarenone  
 Ucedane, 614  
 Ulceration and inflammation, oral, 706  
 Ulcerative colitis, 27  
 Ulipristal acetate, **507**  
 Ultiva, 820  
 Ultraproct, 69  
 Undecenoates, 727, 760  
 Undecenoic acid
  - with cetrimide, *see* Cetrimide with undecenoic acid
  - with zinc undecenoate, **727**
 Unguentum M, 718  
 Uniphyllin Continus, 169  
 Uniroid HC, 70, 70  
 Unlicensed medicines, 7  
 Upostelle, 511  
 Uraplex, 490  
 Urate oxidases, 556  
 Urea (13C), **60**  
 Urea cycle disorders, 603, 613  
 Urea hydrogen peroxide, **694**  
 Urea with hydrocortisone, *see* Hydrocortisone with urea  
 Urgent-D, 632  
 Uricto, 557  
 Urinary frequency, enuresis and incontinence, 488  
 Urinary retention, 491  
 Urinary-tract infection, antibacterial prophylaxis, 302  
 Urinary-tract infections, 369  
 Urine glucose testing strips, 464  
 Urine ketone testing strips, 464  
 Urine protein testing strips, 464  
 Urokinase, **89**  
 Urological pain, 492
  - Alkalinisation of urine, 492
 Uroprotective drugs, 555  
 Uro-Tainer preparations, 493, 703  
 Ursodeoxycholic acid, **65**  
 Ursofalk, 66  
 Ustekinumab, **748**  
 Utovlan, 480
- V**  
 Vaccination, 777  
 Vaccines, 777, **788**
  - Active immunity, 777
  - Anthrax vaccine, 779
  - Bacterial and viral vaccines, combined, 789
  - Bacterial vaccines, 790
  - BCG vaccine, 779
  - Botulism antitoxin, 779
  - Children with unknown or incomplete immunisation history, 777
  - Cholera vaccine, 780
  - Diphtheria vaccine, 780
  - Haemophilus influenzae type b conjugate vaccine, 780
  - Hepatitis A vaccine, 780
  - Hepatitis B vaccine, 781
  - Human papillomavirus vaccine, 781
  - Immunisation schedule, 777
  - Influenza vaccine, 782
  - Japanese encephalitis vaccine, 782
  - Management of Measles, Mumps and Rubella, 782
  - Meningococcal vaccine, 783
  - Passive immunity, 778
  - Pertussis vaccine, 783
  - Pneumococcal vaccine, 784
  - Polio myelitis vaccine, 785
  - Rabies vaccine, 785
  - Rotavirus vaccine, 785
  - Smallpox vaccine, 786
  - Tetanus vaccine, 786
  - Tick-borne encephalitis vaccine, 786
  - Tuberculosis Diagnostic Agents, 779
  - Typhoid vaccine, 786
  - Vaccines and antisera availability, 779
  - Varicella-zoster vaccine, 786
  - Viral vaccines, 794
  - Yellow fever vaccine, 787
 Vaccines and antisera availability, 779  
 Vaccines for travel, 787
  - Food hygiene, 787
  - Information on health advice for travellers, 787
 Vaginal and vulval bacterial infections, 514  
 Vaginal and vulval conditions, 513  
 Vaginal and vulval fungal infections, 515  
 Valaciclovir, **406**  
 Valcyte, 408  
 Valganciclovir, **408**  
 Valine 50, 1049  
 Valproate, 232  
 Valproic acid, **213**  
 Valsartan, **116**  
 Valtrex, 407  
 Vancocin preparations, 327  
 Vancomycin, **325**  
 Vanquoral, 521  
 Vantobra, 314  
 VAQTA, 795  
 Varicella-zoster immunoglobulin, **775**  
 Varicella-zoster vaccine, 786, **801**  
 Varilrix, 802  
 Variquel, 67  
 Varivax, 802  
 Vascular disease, 144  
 Vaseline, 719  
 Vasoconstrictors in combination with local anaesthetics, 823  
 Vasoconstrictor sympathomimetics, 122  
 Vasodilator antihypertensives, 100, 116, 118  
 Vasopressin, **67**  
 Vasopressin and analogues, 66, 432  
 Vecuronium bromide, **816**  
 Vedrop, 635  
 Velaglucerase alfa, **608**  
 Veletri, 119  
 Vemlidy, 400  
 Venofer, 571  
 Venous thromboembolism, 89  
 Ventavis, 120  
 Ventolin preparations, 157  
 Ventr, 57  
 Ventricular tachycardia and ventricular fibrillation, 75  
 Vepesid, 549



- Verapamil hydrochloride, **110**  
 Vermox, 384  
 Verrugon, 768  
 Vertine, 156  
 Vestibular disorders, 260  
 VFEND, 378  
 ViATIM, 796  
 Vibramycin preparations, 353, 709  
 Victanyl, 281  
 Videne preparations, 762  
 Vindex preparations, 417  
 Vigabatrin, **214**  
 Vigranon-B, 629  
 Vilanterol with fluticasone, *see*  
 Fluticasone with vilanterol  
 Vimizim, 610  
 Vimpat, 201  
 Vinblastine sulfate, **549**  
 Vinca alkaloids, 533, 549  
 Vincristine sulfate, **550**  
 ViraferonPeg, 403  
 Viral eye infection, 678  
 Viral infection, 399  
 Viral skin infections, 729  
 Viral vaccines, 794  
 Viramune, 415  
 Virazole, 401  
 Viread, 422  
 Viscotears, 672  
 Vismed, 674  
 Vistamethasone preparations, 668,  
 691, 699  
 VistaPrep, 43  
 VitaBite, 1044  
 Vita-E, 636  
 Vitaflo Choices, 1044  
 Vitajoule, 1034  
 Vitalograph, 171  
 Vitamin A, 624, **626**, 766  
 Vitamin and Mineral supplements,  
 1038  
 Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, *see* Thiamine  
 Vitamin B<sub>2</sub>, *see* Riboflavin  
 Vitamin B<sub>6</sub>, *see* Pyridoxine  
 hydrochloride  
 Vitamin B complex, **629**  
 Vitamin B group, 575, 624, 627, 759  
 Vitamin C, *see* Ascorbic acid  
 Vitamin D and analogues, 630, 750  
 Vitamin deficiency, 623  
 Vitamin D<sub>2</sub>, *see* Ergocalciferol  
 Vitamin D<sub>3</sub>, *see* Colecalciferol  
 Vitamin E, 635  
 Vitamin H, *see* Biotin  
 Vitamin K<sub>1</sub>, *see* Phytomenadione  
 Vitamin K antagonists, 97  
 Vitamins, 623  
 ▶ Multivitamins, 625  
 ▶ Vitamin A, 624  
 ▶ Vitamin C, 624  
 ▶ Vitamin D, 624  
 ▶ Vitamin E, 625  
 ▶ Vitamin K, 625  
 Vitamins A and D, **625**  
 Vitamins A, B group, C and D, **625**  
 Vitamins A, C and D, **626**  
 Vitamins and trace elements, 485,  
 705, 760  
 Vitamins with minerals and trace  
 elements, **629**  
 VitA-POS, 673  
 Vitaquick, 1040  
 Vitasavoury, 1038  
 Vitlipid N preparations, 620  
 Vividrin, 668  
 Vivotif, 794  
 Vizulize preparations, 674  
 Volatile liquid anaesthetics, 803  
 Volplex, 596  
 Voltarol preparations, 653, 681  
 Volumatic, 171  
 Vomiting during pregnancy, 260  
 Voriconazole, **377**  
 Vortex, 171  
 Vortex Spacer, 171  
 Votubia, 559, 560  
 VPRIV, 608  
 VSL#3, 1039  
 Vulval conditions, 513
- W**  
 Warburtons products, 1040, 1041  
 Warfarin sodium, **97**  
 Warticon, 767  
 Warts and calluses, 766  
 Wasp Venom, 183  
 Wasp venom extract, **182**  
 WaveSense JAZZ, 464  
 WaveSense JAZZ Duo, 464  
 Waxesol, 694  
 Wellfoods products, 1040–1043  
 Wellvone, 380  
 White soft paraffin  
 ▶ with liquid paraffin and wool  
 alcohols, *see* Liquid paraffin with  
 white soft paraffin and wool  
 alcohols  
 ▶ with retinol palmitate with light  
 liquid with liquid paraffin and  
 wool, *see* Retinol palmitate with  
 white soft paraffin and light  
 liquid paraffin and liquid paraffin  
 and wool fat  
 Wilson's disease, 616  
 Wilzin, 616
- X**  
 Xaggitin XL, 228  
 Xagrid, 581  
 Xailin preparations, 672, 674  
 Xalatan, 686  
 Xanthine oxidase inhibitors, 556  
 Xanthines, 167, 190  
 Xemacort, 741  
 Xenical, 68  
 Xeomin, 259  
 Xepin, 753  
 Xerotin, 702  
 Xetinin XL, 330  
 XLYS TRY Glutaridon, 1046  
 XMET preparations, 1047  
 XMTVL preparations, 1048
- Xolair, 165  
 Xomolix, 268  
 XPHEN TYR preparations, 1052  
 XPTM preparations, 1052  
 Xylocaine preparations, 707, 827  
 Xylometazoline hydrochloride, **696**  
 ▶ with antazoline, *see* Antazoline  
 with xylometazoline  
 Xylonor, 828  
 Xyloproct, 71  
 Xyzal, 176
- Y**  
 Yacella, 501  
 Yasmin, 501  
 Yellow card scheme, 13  
 Yellow fever vaccine, 787  
 Yellow fever vaccine, live, **802**  
 Yemex, 281  
 Yervoy, 530  
 Yiznell, 501
- Z**  
 Zacco, 219  
 Zaditen, 180, 667  
 Zafirlukast, **166**  
 Zalasta, 252  
 Zaluron XL, 253  
 Zamadol preparations, 289  
 Zanamivir, **429**  
 Zantac, 55  
 Zapain, 276  
 Zaponex, 251  
 Zarzio, 580  
 Zavesca, 612  
 Zedbac, 329  
 Zeffix, 421  
 Zellesta, 508  
 Zenalb, 595  
 Zentel, 383  
 Zeridame SR, 289  
 Zerit, 421  
 ZeroAQS, 718  
 Zerobase, 718  
 Zerocream, 718  
 Zerodouble, 718  
 Zeroguent, 718  
 Zerolatum preparations, 716  
 Zeroneum, 717  
 Zestril, 115  
 Ziagen, 416  
 Zicron preparations, 453  
 Zidoval, 515  
 Zidovudine, **422**  
 ▶ with abacavir and lamivudine,  
*see* Abacavir with lamivudine and  
 zidovudine  
 ▶ with lamivudine, **423**  
 Zinacef, 320  
 Zinamide, 369  
 Zinc, 617  
 Zinc acetate, **616**  
 ▶ with erythromycin, *see*  
 Erythromycin with zinc acetate  
 Zinc deficiency, 617

## Zinc oxide

- with benzyl benzoate, bismuth oxide, bismuth subgallate, hydrocortisone acetate and peru balsam, *see* Benzyl benzoate with bismuth oxide, bismuth subgallate, hydrocortisone acetate, peru balsam and zinc oxide
- with calamine, *see* Calamine with zinc oxide
- with coal tar, *see* Coal tar with zinc oxide
- with dithranol and salicylic acid, *see* Dithranol with salicylic acid and zinc oxide
- with ichthammol, *see* Ichthammol with zinc oxide
- with salicylic acid, *see* Salicylic acid with zinc oxide

Zinc sulfate, **617**

Zinc undecenoate with undecenoic acid, *see* Undecenoic acid with zinc undecenoate

Zindaclin, 755

Zineryt, 755

Zinnat, 320

Zithromax, 329, 330

Zlatal, 546

Zocor, 134

Zoely, 500

Zofran preparations, 265

Zoladex preparations, 471

Zolmitriptan, **292**

Zomacton, 477

Zomestine, 286

Zomig preparations, 293

Zomorph, 284

Zonegran, 216

Zonisamide, **215**

Zoton preparations, 58

Zovirax I.V., 406

Zovirax preparations, 406, 678, 730

Zutectra, 773

Zydol preparations, 289

Zyloric, 557

Zyomet, 723

Zyprexa preparations, 252

Zytram SR, 289

Zyvox, 359

**YellowCard**

COMMISSION ON HUMAN MEDICINES (CHM)

It's easy to report online at:  
[www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard)**REPORT OF SUSPECTED ADVERSE DRUG REACTIONS**

If you suspect an adverse reaction may be related to one or more drugs/vaccines/complementary remedies, please complete this Yellow Card. See 'Adverse reactions to drugs' section in BNFC or [www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard) for guidance. Do not be put off reporting because some details are not known.

**PATIENT DETAILS** Patient Initials: \_\_\_\_\_ Sex: M / F Is the patient pregnant? Y / N Ethnicity: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Age (at time of reaction): \_\_\_\_\_ Weight (kg): \_\_\_\_\_ Identification number (e.g. Practice or Hospital Ref): \_\_\_\_\_

**SUSPECTED DRUG(S)/VACCINE(S)**

Drug/Vaccine (Brand if known)	Batch	Route	Dosage	Date started	Date stopped	Prescribed for
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

**SUSPECTED REACTION(S)** Please describe the reaction(s) and any treatment given. (Please attach additional pages if necessary):**Outcome**

Recovered ☐  
 Recovering ☐  
 Continuing ☐  
 Other ☐

Date reaction(s) started: \_\_\_\_\_ Date reaction(s) stopped: \_\_\_\_\_

Do you consider the reactions to be serious? Yes / No

If yes, please indicate why the reaction is considered to be serious (please tick all that apply):

☐ Patient died due to reaction      ☐ Involved or prolonged inpatient hospitalisation  
☐ Life threatening      ☐ Involved persistent or significant disability or incapacity  
☐ Congenital abnormality      Medically significant; please give details: \_\_\_\_\_

If the reactions were not serious according to the categories above, how bad was the suspected reaction?

☐ Mild      ☐ Unpleasant, but did not affect everyday activities      ☐ Bad enough to affect everyday activities

It's easy to report online: [www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard)

**OTHER DRUG(S) (including self-medication and complementary remedies)**

Did the patient take any other medicines/vaccines/complementary remedies in the last 3 months prior to the reaction? Yes / No

If yes, please give the following information if known:

Drug/Vaccine (Brand if known)	Batch	Route	Dosage	Date started	Date stopped	Prescribed for
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

**Additional relevant information** e.g. medical history, test results, known allergies, rechallenge (if performed). For reactions relating to use of a medicine during pregnancy please state all other drugs taken during pregnancy, the last menstrual period, information on previous pregnancies, ultrasound scans, any delivery complications, birth defects or developmental concerns.

Please list any medicines obtained from the internet:

**REPORTER DETAILS**

Name and Professional Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Postcode: \_\_\_\_\_ Tel No: \_\_\_\_\_

Email: \_\_\_\_\_

Speciality: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**CLINICIAN (if not the reporter)**

Name and Professional Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Postcode: \_\_\_\_\_ Tel No: \_\_\_\_\_

Email: \_\_\_\_\_

Speciality: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Information on adverse drug reactions received by the MHRA can be downloaded at [www.mhra.gov.uk/daps](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/daps)

Stay up-to-date on the latest advice for the safe use of medicines with our monthly bulletin *Drug Safety Update* at: [www.mhra.gov.uk/drugsafetyupdate](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/drugsafetyupdate)

Please attach additional pages if necessary. Send to: FREEPOST YELLOW CARD (no other address details required)

**YellowCard**

COMMISSION ON HUMAN MEDICINES (CHM)

It's easy to report online at:  
[www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard)**REPORT OF SUSPECTED ADVERSE DRUG REACTIONS**

If you suspect an adverse reaction may be related to one or more drugs/vaccines/complementary remedies, please complete this Yellow Card. See 'Adverse reactions to drugs' section in BNFC or [www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard) for guidance. Do not be put off reporting because some details are not known.

**PATIENT DETAILS** Patient Initials: \_\_\_\_\_ Sex: M / F Is the patient pregnant? Y / N Ethnicity: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Age (at time of reaction): \_\_\_\_\_ Weight (kg): \_\_\_\_\_ Identification number (e.g. Practice or Hospital Ref): \_\_\_\_\_

**SUSPECTED DRUG(S)/VACCINE(S)**

Drug/Vaccine (Brand if known)	Batch	Route	Dosage	Date started	Date stopped	Prescribed for
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

**SUSPECTED REACTION(S)** Please describe the reaction(s) and any treatment given. (Please attach additional pages if necessary):**Outcome**

Recovered ☐  
 Recovering ☐  
 Continuing ☐  
 Other ☐

Date reaction(s) started: \_\_\_\_\_ Date reaction(s) stopped: \_\_\_\_\_

Do you consider the reactions to be serious? Yes / No

If yes, please indicate why the reaction is considered to be serious (please tick all that apply):

☐ Patient died due to reaction      ☐ Involved or prolonged inpatient hospitalisation  
☐ Life threatening      ☐ Involved persistent or significant disability or incapacity  
☐ Congenital abnormality      Medically significant; please give details: \_\_\_\_\_

If the reactions were not serious according to the categories above, how bad was the suspected reaction?

☐ Mild      ☐ Unpleasant, but did not affect everyday activities      ☐ Bad enough to affect everyday activities



It's easy to report online: [www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard)

**OTHER DRUG(S) (including self-medication and complementary remedies)**

Did the patient take any other medicines/vaccines/complementary remedies in the last 3 months prior to the reaction? Yes / No

If yes, please give the following information if known:

Drug/Vaccine (Brand if known)	Batch	Route	Dosage	Date started	Date stopped	Prescribed for
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

**Additional relevant information** e.g. medical history, test results, known allergies, rechallenge (if performed). For reactions relating to use of a medicine during pregnancy please state all other drugs taken during pregnancy, the last menstrual period, information on previous pregnancies, ultrasound scans, any delivery complications, birth defects or developmental concerns.

Please list any medicines obtained from the internet:

**REPORTER DETAILS**

Name and Professional Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Postcode: \_\_\_\_\_ Tel No: \_\_\_\_\_

Email: \_\_\_\_\_

Speciality: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**CLINICIAN (if not the reporter)**

Name and Professional Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Postcode: \_\_\_\_\_ Tel No: \_\_\_\_\_

Email: \_\_\_\_\_

Speciality: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Information on adverse drug reactions received by the MHRA can be downloaded at [www.mhra.gov.uk/daps](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/daps)

Stay up-to-date on the latest advice for the safe use of medicines with our monthly bulletin *Drug Safety Update* at: [www.mhra.gov.uk/drugsafetyupdate](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/drugsafetyupdate)

Please attach additional pages if necessary. Send to: FREEPOST YELLOW CARD (no other address details required)

**YellowCard**

COMMISSION ON HUMAN MEDICINES (CHM)

It's easy to report online at:  
[www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard)**REPORT OF SUSPECTED ADVERSE DRUG REACTIONS**

If you suspect an adverse reaction may be related to one or more drugs/vaccines/complementary remedies, please complete this Yellow Card. See 'Adverse reactions to drugs' section in BNFC or [www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard) for guidance. Do not be put off reporting because some details are not known.

**PATIENT DETAILS** Patient Initials: \_\_\_\_\_ Sex: M / F Is the patient pregnant? Y / N Ethnicity: \_\_\_\_\_  
Age (at time of reaction): \_\_\_\_\_ Weight (kg): \_\_\_\_\_ Identification number (e.g. Practice or Hospital Ref): \_\_\_\_\_

**SUSPECTED DRUG(S)/VACCINE(S)**

Drug/Vaccine (Brand if known)	Batch	Route	Dosage	Date started	Date stopped	Prescribed for
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

**SUSPECTED REACTION(S)** Please describe the reaction(s) and any treatment given. (Please attach additional pages if necessary):**Outcome**

Recovered ☐  
Recovering ☐  
Continuing ☐  
Other ☐

Date reaction(s) started: \_\_\_\_\_ Date reaction(s) stopped: \_\_\_\_\_

Do you consider the reactions to be serious? Yes / No

If yes, please indicate why the reaction is considered to be serious (please tick all that apply):

<input type="checkbox"/> Patient died due to reaction	<input type="checkbox"/> Involved or prolonged inpatient hospitalisation
<input type="checkbox"/> Life threatening	<input type="checkbox"/> Involved persistent or significant disability or incapacity
<input type="checkbox"/> Congenital abnormality	Medically significant; please give details: _____

If the reactions were not serious according to the categories above, how bad was the suspected reaction?

☐ Mild ☐ Unpleasant, but did not affect everyday activities ☐ Bad enough to affect everyday activities

It's easy to report online: [www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard)

**OTHER DRUG(S) (including self-medication and complementary remedies)**

Did the patient take any other medicines/vaccines/complementary remedies in the last 3 months prior to the reaction? Yes / No

If yes, please give the following information if known:

Drug/Vaccine (Brand if known)	Batch	Route	Dosage	Date started	Date stopped	Prescribed for
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

**Additional relevant information** e.g. medical history, test results, known allergies, rechallenge (if performed). For reactions relating to use of a medicine during pregnancy please state all other drugs taken during pregnancy, the last menstrual period, information on previous pregnancies, ultrasound scans, any delivery complications, birth defects or developmental concerns.

Please list any medicines obtained from the internet:

**REPORTER DETAILS**

Name and Professional Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Postcode: \_\_\_\_\_ Tel No: \_\_\_\_\_

Email: \_\_\_\_\_

Speciality: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**CLINICIAN (if not the reporter)**

Name and Professional Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Postcode: \_\_\_\_\_ Tel No: \_\_\_\_\_

Email: \_\_\_\_\_

Speciality: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Information on adverse drug reactions received by the MHRA can be downloaded at [www.mhra.gov.uk/daps](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/daps)

Stay up-to-date on the latest advice for the safe use of medicines with our monthly bulletin *Drug Safety Update* at: [www.mhra.gov.uk/drugsafetyupdate](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/drugsafetyupdate)

Please attach additional pages if necessary. Send to: FREEPOST YELLOW CARD (no other address details required)

**YellowCard**

COMMISSION ON HUMAN MEDICINES (CHM)

It's easy to report online at:  
[www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard)

**REPORT OF SUSPECTED ADVERSE DRUG REACTIONS**

If you suspect an adverse reaction may be related to one or more drugs/vaccines/complementary remedies, please complete this Yellow Card. See 'Adverse reactions to drugs' section in BNFC or [www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard) for guidance. Do not be put off reporting because some details are not known.

**PATIENT DETAILS** Patient Initials: \_\_\_\_\_ Sex: M / F Is the patient pregnant? Y / N Ethnicity: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Age (at time of reaction): \_\_\_\_\_ Weight (kg): \_\_\_\_\_ Identification number (e.g. Practice or Hospital Ref): \_\_\_\_\_

**SUSPECTED DRUG(S)/VACCINE(S)**

Drug/Vaccine (Brand if known)	Batch	Route	Dosage	Date started	Date stopped	Prescribed for
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

**SUSPECTED REACTION(S)** Please describe the reaction(s) and any treatment given. (Please attach additional pages if necessary):**Outcome**

Recovered ☐  
 Recovering ☐  
 Continuing ☐  
 Other ☐

Date reaction(s) started: \_\_\_\_\_ Date reaction(s) stopped: \_\_\_\_\_

Do you consider the reactions to be serious? Yes / No

If yes, please indicate why the reaction is considered to be serious (please tick all that apply):

<input type="checkbox"/> Patient died due to reaction	<input type="checkbox"/> Involved or prolonged inpatient hospitalisation
<input type="checkbox"/> Life threatening	<input type="checkbox"/> Involved persistent or significant disability or incapacity
<input type="checkbox"/> Congenital abnormality	Medically significant; please give details: _____

If the reactions were not serious according to the categories above, how bad was the suspected reaction?

☐ Mild ☐ Unpleasant, but did not affect everyday activities ☐ Bad enough to affect everyday activities

It's easy to report online: [www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/yellowcard)

**OTHER DRUG(S) (including self-medication and complementary remedies)**

Did the patient take any other medicines/vaccines/complementary remedies in the last 3 months prior to the reaction? Yes / No

If yes, please give the following information if known:

Drug/Vaccine (Brand if known)	Batch	Route	Dosage	Date started	Date stopped	Prescribed for
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

**Additional relevant information** e.g. medical history, test results, known allergies, rechallenge (if performed). For reactions relating to use of a medicine during pregnancy please state all other drugs taken during pregnancy, the last menstrual period, information on previous pregnancies, ultrasound scans, any delivery complications, birth defects or developmental concerns.

Please list any medicines obtained from the internet:

**REPORTER DETAILS**

Name and Professional Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Postcode: \_\_\_\_\_ Tel No: \_\_\_\_\_

Email: \_\_\_\_\_

Speciality: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**CLINICIAN (if not the reporter)**

Name and Professional Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Postcode: \_\_\_\_\_ Tel No: \_\_\_\_\_

Email: \_\_\_\_\_

Speciality: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Information on adverse drug reactions received by the MHRA can be downloaded at [www.mhra.gov.uk/daps](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/daps)

Stay up-to-date on the latest advice for the safe use of medicines with our monthly bulletin *Drug Safety Update* at: [www.mhra.gov.uk/drugsafetyupdate](http://www.mhra.gov.uk/drugsafetyupdate)

Please attach additional pages if necessary. Send to: FREEPOST YELLOW CARD (no other address details required)



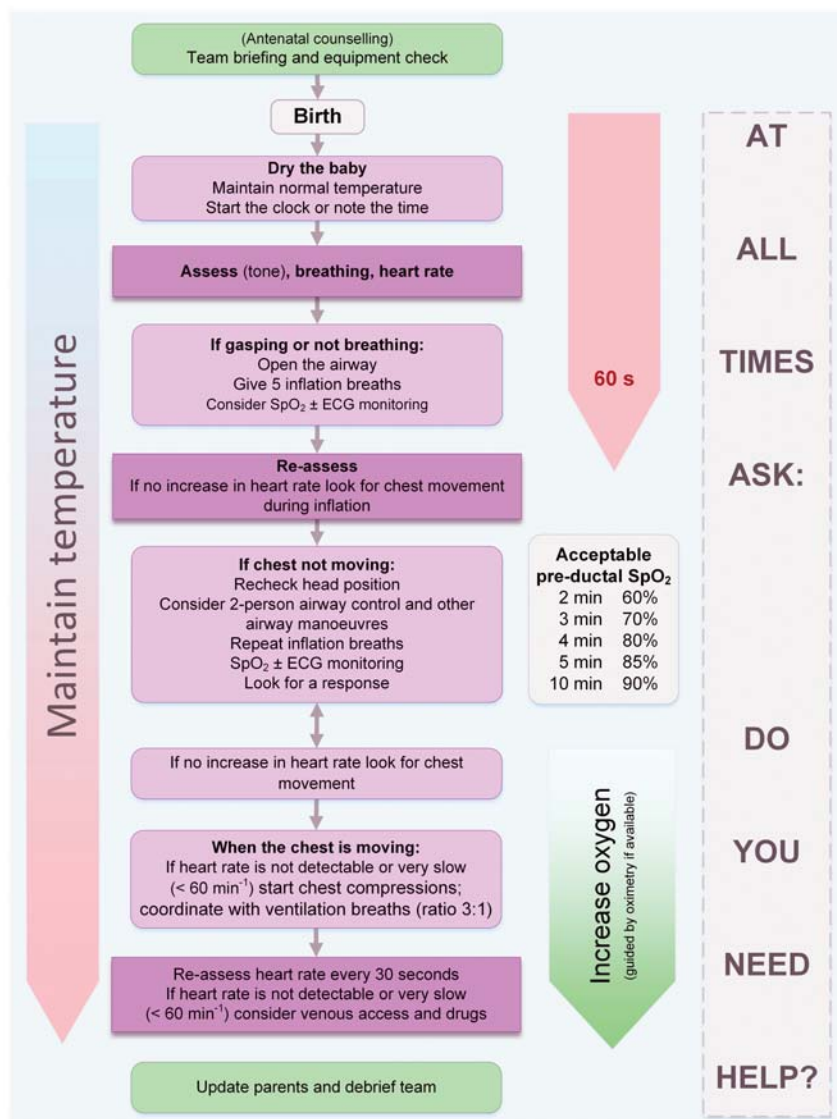
# Newborn Life Support



Resuscitation Council (UK)



Newborn Life Support



# Paediatric Basic Life Support

(Healthcare professionals with a duty to respond)

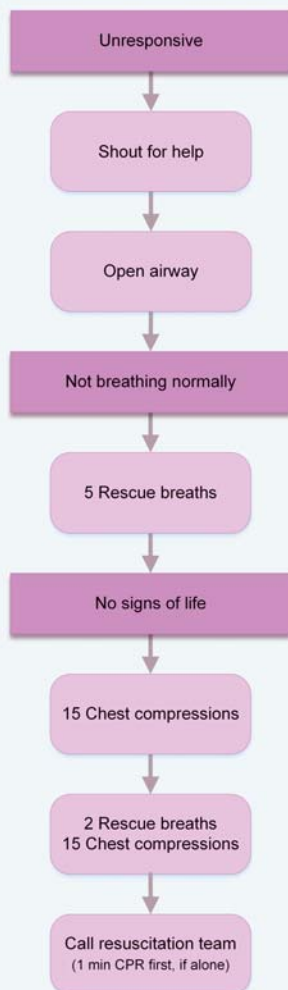


Resuscitation Council (UK)



Paediatric Basic Life Support

(Healthcare professionals with a duty to respond)



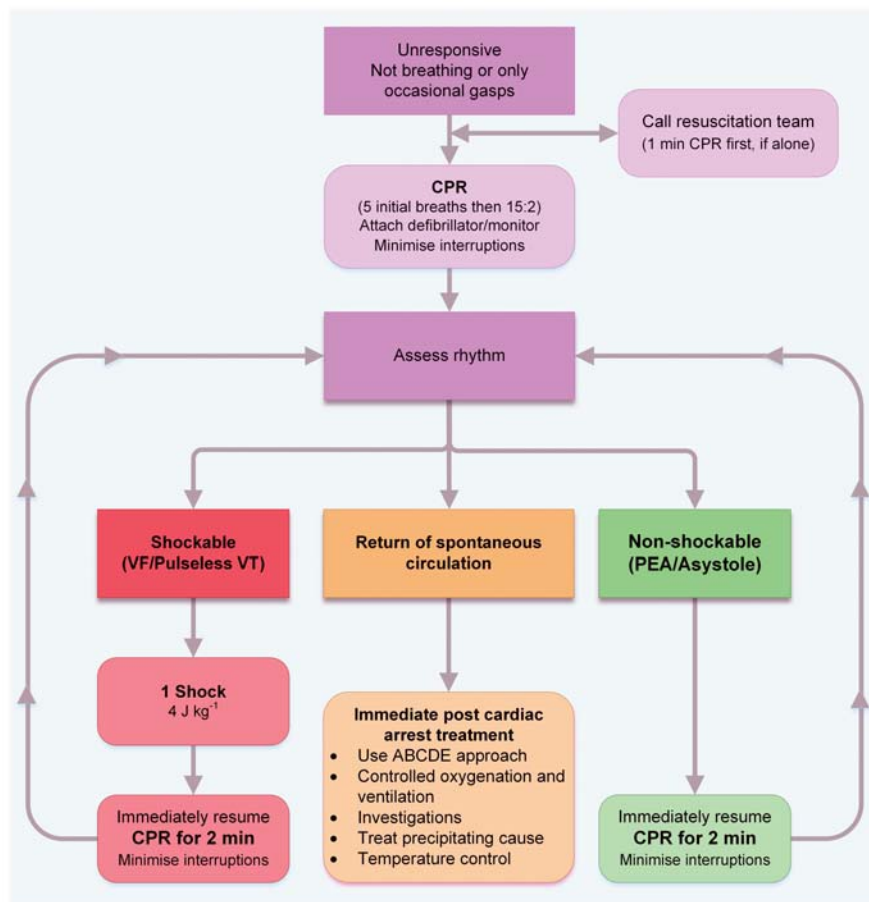
# Paediatric Advanced Life Support



Resuscitation Council (UK)



Paediatric Advanced Life Support



## During CPR

- Ensure high-quality CPR: rate, depth, recoil
- Plan actions before interrupting CPR
- Give oxygen
- Vascular access (intravenous, intraosseous)
- Give adrenaline every 3-5 min
- Consider advanced airway and capnography
- Continuous chest compressions when advanced airway in place
- Correct reversible causes
- Consider amiodarone after 3 and 5 shocks

## Reversible Causes

- Hypoxia
- Hypovolaemia
- Hyper/hypokalaemia, metabolic
- Hypothermia
- Thrombosis (coronary or pulmonary)
- Tension pneumothorax
- Tamponade (cardiac)
- Toxic/therapeutic disturbances

# Body Surface Area in Children

## Body-weight under 40 kg

Body-weight (kg)	Surface area (m <sup>2</sup> )
1	0.10
1.5	0.13
2	0.16
2.5	0.19
3	0.21
3.5	0.24
4	0.26
4.5	0.28
5	0.30
5.5	0.32
6	0.34
6.5	0.36
7	0.38
7.5	0.40
8	0.42
8.5	0.44
9	0.46
9.5	0.47
10	0.49
11	0.53
12	0.56
13	0.59
14	0.62
15	0.65
16	0.68

Body-weight (kg)	Surface area (m <sup>2</sup> )
17	0.71
18	0.74
19	0.77
20	0.79
21	0.82
22	0.85
23	0.87
24	0.90
25	0.92
26	0.95
27	0.97
28	1.0
29	1.0
30	1.1
31	1.1
32	1.1
33	1.1
34	1.1
35	1.2
36	1.2
37	1.2
38	1.2
39	1.3
40	1.3

Values are calculated using the Boyd equation

**Note** Height is not required to estimate body surface using these tables

# Body Surface Area in Children

## Body-weight over 40 kg

Body-weight (kg)	Surface area (m <sup>2</sup> )	Body-weight (kg)	Surface area (m <sup>2</sup> )
41	1.3	66	1.8
42	1.3	67	1.8
43	1.3	68	1.8
44	1.4	69	1.8
45	1.4	70	1.9
46	1.4	71	1.9
47	1.4	72	1.9
48	1.4	73	1.9
49	1.5	74	1.9
50	1.5	75	1.9
51	1.5	76	2.0
52	1.5	77	2.0
53	1.5	78	2.0
54	1.6	79	2.0
55	1.6	80	2.0
56	1.6	81	2.0
57	1.6	82	2.1
58	1.6	83	2.1
59	1.7	84	2.1
60	1.7	85	2.1
61	1.7	86	2.1
62	1.7	87	2.1
63	1.7	88	2.2
64	1.7	89	2.2
65	1.8	90	2.2

Values are calculated using the Boyd equation

**Note** Height is not required to estimate body surface using these tables



# Medical emergencies in the community

## Overview

Drug treatment outlined below is intended for use by appropriately qualified healthcare professionals. Only drugs that are used for immediate relief are shown; advice on supporting care is not given. Where the child's condition requires investigation and further treatment, the child should be transferred to hospital promptly.

## Airways disease, obstructive

### ▶ **ASTHMA: ACUTE**

Regard each emergency consultation as being for **severe acute asthma** until shown otherwise; failure to respond adequately **at any time** requires immediate transfer to hospital

### ▶ **EITHER Salbutamol aerosol inhaler p. 156**

(100 micrograms/metered inhalation)

BY AEROSOL INHALATION VIA LARGE-VOLUME SPACER (AND A CLOSE-FITTING FACE MASK IF CHILD UNDER 3 YEARS)

- ▶ Child: 2–10 puffs each inhaled separately, repeated every 10–20 minutes or as necessary

### ▶ **OR Salbutamol nebuliser solution (1 mg/mL, 2 mg/mL)**

BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION (VIA OXYGEN-DRIVEN NEBULISER IF AVAILABLE)

▶ Child 4 years and below: 2.5 mg every 20–30 minutes or as necessary

▶ Child 5–11 years: 2.5–5 mg every 20–30 minutes or as necessary

▶ Child 12–17 years: 5 mg every 20–30 minutes or as necessary

### ▶ **OR Terbutaline sulfate nebuliser solution p. 158 (2.5 mg/mL)**

BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION (VIA OXYGEN-DRIVEN NEBULISER IF AVAILABLE)

▶ Child 4 years and below: 5 mg every 20–30 minutes or as necessary

▶ Child 5–11 years: 5–10 mg every 20–30 minutes or as necessary

▶ Child 12–17 years: 10 mg every 20–30 minutes or as necessary

### ▶ **PLUS (in all cases)**

### ▶ **EITHER Prednisolone tablets p. 442 (or prednisolone soluble tablets) (5 mg)**

BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 11 years and below: 1–2 mg/kg (max. 40 mg) once daily for up to 3 days or longer if necessary; if child has been taking an oral corticosteroid for more than a few days, give prednisolone 2 mg/kg (max. 60 mg) once daily
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 40–50 mg once daily for at least 5 days

### ▶ **OR Hydrocortisone p. 440 (preferably as sodium succinate)**

BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 17 years and below: 4 mg/kg (max. 100 mg) every 6 hours until conversion to oral prednisolone is possible; alternative dose if weight unavailable:

▶ Child 1 year and below: 25 mg

▶ Child 2–4 years: 50 mg

▶ Child 5–17 years: 100 mg

High-flow **oxygen** should be given if available (via face mask in children)

Monitor response 15 to 30 minutes after nebulisation; if any signs of acute asthma persist, arrange hospital admission. While awaiting ambulance, repeat **nebulised beta<sub>2</sub> agonist** (as above) and give with

### **Ipratropium bromide nebuliser solution p. 153**

(250 micrograms/mL)

BY INHALATION OF NEBULISED SOLUTION (VIA OXYGEN-DRIVEN NEBULISER IF AVAILABLE)

- ▶ Child 11 years and below: 250 micrograms, repeated every 20–30 minutes for the first 2 hours, then every 4–6 hours as necessary
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 micrograms every 4–6 hours as necessary

### ▶ **CROUP**

### **Dexamethasone oral solution p. 439 (2 mg/5 mL)**

BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child 1 month–2 years: 150 micrograms/kg as a single dose

## Anaphylaxis

### ▶ **ANAPHYLAXIS**

### **Adrenaline/epinephrine injection p. 136 (1 mg/mL (1 in 1000))**

BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child 5 years and below: 150 micrograms (0.15 mL), repeated every 5 minutes if necessary
- ▶ Child 6–11 years: 300 micrograms (0.3 mL), repeated every 5 minutes if necessary
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 500 micrograms (0.5 mL), repeated every 5 minutes if necessary; 300 micrograms (0.3 mL) should be given if child is small or prepubertal

High-flow **oxygen** and **intravenous fluids** should be given as soon as available.

### **Chlorphenamine maleate injection p. 178**

BY INTRAMUSCULAR OR INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

May help counter histamine-mediated vasodilation and bronchoconstriction.

### **Hydrocortisone (preferably as sodium succinate)**

BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

Has delayed action but should be given to severely affected patients to prevent further deterioration.

## Bacterial disease

### ▶ **MENINGOCOCCAL DISEASE**

### **Benzylicillin sodium injection p. 338 (600 mg, 1.2 g)**

BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION (OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION IF VENOUS ACCESS NOT AVAILABLE)

- ▶ Neonate: 300 mg
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 months: 300 mg
- ▶ Child 1–9 years: 600 mg
- ▶ Child 10–17 years: 1.2 g

**NOTE** A single dose should be given before urgent transfer to hospital, so long as this does not delay the transfer.

### ▶ **OR if history of allergy to penicillin**

### **Cefotaxime injection p. 320 (1 g)**

BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION (OR BY INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION IF VENOUS ACCESS NOT AVAILABLE)

- ▶ Neonate: 50 mg/kg
- ▶ Child 1 month–11 years: 50 mg/kg (max. 1 g)
- ▶ Child 12–17 years: 1 g

**NOTE** A single dose can be given before urgent transfer to hospital, so long as this does not delay the transfer.

- ▶ **OR if history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction (including anaphylaxis, angioedema, urticaria, or rash immediately after administration) to penicillin or to cephalosporins**

**Chloramphenicol injection p. 354** (1 g)

BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION

- ▶ Child 1 month-17 years: 12.5–25 mg/kg

**NOTE** A single dose can be given before urgent transfer to hospital, so long as this does not delay the transfer.

See also Central nervous system infections, antibacterial therapy p. 305.

---

## Hypoglycaemia

- ▶ **DIABETIC HYPOGLYCAEMIA**

**Glucose or sucrose**

BY MOUTH

- ▶ Child over 2 years: approx. 10–20 g (110–220 mL *Lucozade® Energy Original* or 100–200 mL *Coca-Cola®*—both non-diet versions or 2–4 teaspoonfuls of sugar or 3–6 sugar lumps) repeated after 10–15 minutes if necessary

- ▶ **OR if hypoglycaemia unresponsive or if oral route cannot be used**

**Glucagon injection p. 465** (1 mg/mL)

BY SUBCUTANEOUS OR INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

- ▶ Child body-weight up to 25 kg: 500 micrograms (0.5 mL)
- ▶ Child body-weight 25 kg and over: 1 mg (1 mL)

- ▶ **OR if hypoglycaemia prolonged or unresponsive to glucagon after 10 minutes**

**Glucose intravenous infusion p. 590** (10%)

BY INTRAVENOUS INJECTION INTO LARGE VEIN

- ▶ Child 1 month-17 years: 5 mL/kg (glucose 500 mg/kg)

---

## Seizures

- ▶ **CONVULSIVE (INCLUDING FEBRILE) SEIZURES LASTING LONGER THAN 5 MINUTES**

- ▶ **EITHER Diazepam rectal solution p. 220** (2 mg/mL, 4 mg/mL)

BY RECTUM

- ▶ Neonate: 1.25–2.5 mg, repeated once after 10–15 minutes if necessary
- ▶ Child 1 month-1 year: 5 mg, repeated once after 10–15 minutes if necessary
- ▶ Child 2-11 years: 5–10 mg, repeated once after 10–15 minutes if necessary
- ▶ Child 12-17 years: 10–20 mg, repeated once after 10–15 minutes if necessary

- ▶ **OR Midazolam oromucosal solution p. 223**

BY BUCCAL ADMINISTRATION, REPEATED ONCE AFTER 10 MINUTES IF NECESSARY

- ▶ Neonate: 300 micrograms/kg [unlicensed]
- ▶ Child 1-2 months: 300 micrograms/kg (max. 2.5 mg) [unlicensed]
- ▶ Child 3 months-11 months: 2.5 mg
- ▶ Child 1-4 years: 5 mg
- ▶ Child 5-9 years: 7.5 mg
- ▶ Child 10-17 years: 10 mg

# Approximate Conversions and Units

## Conversion of pounds to kilograms

lb	kg
1	0.45
2	0.91
3	1.36
4	1.81
5	2.27
6	2.72
7	3.18
8	3.63
9	4.08
10	4.54
11	4.99
12	5.44
13	5.90
14	6.35

## Conversion of stones to kilograms

stones	kg
1	6.35
2	12.70
3	19.05
4	25.40
5	31.75
6	38.10
7	44.45
8	50.80
9	57.15
10	63.50
11	69.85
12	76.20
13	82.55
14	88.90
15	95.25

## Conversion from millilitres to fluid ounces

mL	fl oz
50	1.8
100	3.5
150	5.3
200	7.0
500	17.6
1000	35.2

## Length

1 metre (m) = 1000 millimetres (mm)  
1 centimetre (cm) = 10 mm  
1 inch (in) = 25.4 mm  
1 foot (ft) = 12 inches  
12 inches = 304.8 mm

## Mass

1 kilogram (kg) = 1000 grams (g)  
1 gram (g) = 1000 milligrams (mg)  
1 milligram (mg) = 1000 micrograms  
1 microgram = 1000 nanograms  
1 nanogram = 1000 picograms

## Volume

1 litre = 1000 millilitres (mL)  
1 millilitre (1 mL) = 1000 microlitres  
1 pint ≈ 568 mL

## Other units

1 kilocalorie (kcal) = 4186.8 joules (J)  
1000 kilocalories (kcal) = 4.1868 megajoules (MJ)  
1 megajoule (MJ) = 238.8 kilocalories (kcal)  
1 millimetre of mercury (mmHg) = 133.3 pascals (Pa)  
1 kilopascal (kPa) = 7.5 mmHg (pressure)

## Plasma-drug concentrations

Plasma-drug concentrations in BNF publications are expressed in mass units per litre (e.g. mg/litre). The approximate equivalent in terms of amount of substance units (e.g. micromol/litre) is given in brackets.

## Prescribing for children: weight, height, and gender

The table below shows the **mean values** for weight, height and gender by age; these values have been derived from the UK-WHO growth charts 2009 and UK1990 standard centile charts, by extrapolating the 50th centile, and may be used to calculate doses in the absence of actual measurements. However, the child's actual weight and height might vary considerably from the values in the table and it is important to see the child to ensure that the value chosen is appropriate. In most cases the child's actual measurement should be obtained as soon as possible and the dose re-calculated.

Age	Weight (kg)	Height (cm)
Full-term neonate	3.5	51
1 month	4.3	55
2 months	5.4	58
3 months	6.1	61
4 months	6.7	63
6 months	7.6	67
1 year	9	75
3 years	14	96
5 years	18	109
7 years	23	122
10 years	32	138
12 years	39	149
14 year old boy	49	163
14 year old girl	50	159
Adult male	68	176
Adult female	58	164

# Recommended wording of cautionary and advisory labels

For details including Welsh language translation, please see Appendix 3

- 1 Warning: This medicine may make you sleepy
- 2 Warning: This medicine may make you sleepy. If this happens, do not drive or use tools or machines. Do not drink alcohol
- 3 Warning: This medicine may make you sleepy. If this happens, do not drive or use tools or machines
- 4 Warning: Do not drink alcohol
- 5 Do not take indigestion remedies 2 hours before or after you take this medicine
- 6 Do not take indigestion remedies, or medicines containing iron or zinc, 2 hours before or after you take this medicine
- 7 Do not take milk, indigestion remedies, or medicines containing iron or zinc, 2 hours before or after you take this medicine
- 8 Warning: Do not stop taking this medicine unless your doctor tells you to stop
- 9 Space the doses evenly throughout the day. Keep taking this medicine until the course is finished, unless you are told to stop
- 10 Warning: Read the additional information given with this medicine
- 11 Protect your skin from sunlight—even on a bright but cloudy day. Do not use sunbeds
- 12 Do not take anything containing aspirin while taking this medicine
- 13 Dissolve or mix with water before taking
- 14 This medicine may colour your urine. This is harmless
- 15 Caution: flammable. Keep your body away from fire or flames after you have put on the medicine
- 16 Dissolve the tablet under your tongue—do not swallow. Store the tablets in this bottle with the cap tightly closed. Get a new supply 8 weeks after opening
- 17 Do not take more than... in 24 hours
- 18 Do not take more than... in 24 hours. Also, do not take more than... in any one week
- 19 Warning: This medicine makes you sleepy. If you still feel sleepy the next day, do not drive or use tools or machines. Do not drink alcohol
- 21 Take with or just after food, or a meal
- 22 Take 30 to 60 minutes before food
- 23 Take this medicine when your stomach is empty. This means an hour before food or 2 hours after food
- 24 Suck or chew this medicine
- 25 Swallow this medicine whole. Do not chew or crush
- 26 Dissolve this medicine under your tongue
- 27 Take with a full glass of water
- 28 Spread thinly on the affected skin only
- 29 Do not take more than 2 at any one time. Do not take more than 8 in 24 hours
- 30 Contains paracetamol. Do not take anything else containing paracetamol while taking this medicine. Talk to a doctor at once if you take too much of this medicine, even if you feel well
- 32 Contains aspirin. Do not take anything else containing aspirin while taking this medicine





Abbreviations and Symbols

Internationally recognised units and symbols are used in the BNF publications where possible.

ACBS	Advisory Committee on Borderline Substances, see Borderline Substances
ACE	Angiotensin-converting enzyme
ADHD	Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
AIDS	Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
approx.	approximately
AV	atrioventricular
AWMSG	All Wales Medicines Strategy Group
BAN	British Approved Name
BMI	body mass index
BP	British Pharmacopoeia 2013, unless otherwise stated
BPC	British Pharmaceutical Codex 1973 and Supplement 1976, unless otherwise stated
BRCA	breast cancer gene
CAPD	Continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis
CD1	preparation in Schedule 1 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 (and subsequent amendments). For regulations see Controlled drugs and drug dependence p. 9.
CD2	preparation in Schedule 2 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 (and subsequent amendments). For regulations see Controlled drugs and drug dependence p. 9.
CD3	preparation in Schedule 3 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 (and subsequent amendments). For regulations see Controlled drugs and drug dependence p. 9.
CD4-1	preparation in Schedule 4 (Part I) of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 (and subsequent amendments). For regulations see Controlled drugs and drug dependence p. 9.
CD4-2	preparation in Schedule 4 (Part II) of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 (and subsequent amendments). For regulations see Controlled drugs and drug dependence p. 9.
CD5	preparation in Schedule 5 of the Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001 (and subsequent amendments). For regulations see Controlled drugs and drug dependence p. 9.
CHM	Commission on Human Medicines
CHMP	Committee for Medicinal Products for Human Use
CNS	central nervous system
CSM	Committee on Safety of Medicines (now subsumed under Commission on Human Medicines)
d. c.	direct current
DMARD	Disease-modifying antirheumatic drug
DPF	Dental Practitioners' Formulary
DT	Drug Tariff price
e/c	enteric-coated (termed gastro-resistant in BP)
ECG	electrocardiogram
EEG	electro-encephalogram
eGFR	estimated glomerular filtration rate, see Prescribing in renal impairment p. 17
f/c	film-coated
G6PD	glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase
GSL	general sales list
HDL-cholesterol	high-density lipoprotein cholesterol
HIV	Human immunodeficiency virus
HRT	Hormone replacement therapy
i/m	intramuscular
i/v	intravenous
INR	international normalised ratio
LDL-cholesterol	low-density lipoprotein cholesterol
MAOI	Monoamine-oxidase inhibitor
max.	maximum
MHRA	Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency
m/r	modified-release
NCL	no cautionary labels (prescription endorsement made by prescriber when recommended cautionary labels are not required)
NHS	National Health Service
NICE	National Institute for Health and Care Excellence
NPF	Nurse Prescribers' Formulary
NSAID	Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug
NSTEMI	non-ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction
P	pharmacy only medicine
PARP	poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase
PGD	patient group direction
PHE	Public Health England (formerly Health Protection Agency (HPA))
PoM	prescription-only medicine, see Fig. 1 How to use BNF publications
®	trade mark
rINN	Recommended International Non-proprietary Name
RSV	respiratory syncytial virus
s/c	sugar-coated

SLS	Selected List Scheme
SMC	Scottish Medicines Consortium
SPC	Summary of Product Characteristics
spp.	species
SSRI	Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
STEMI	ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction
UK	United Kingdom
Units	for SI units see Prescription writing p. 5
WHO	World Health Organization
▼	limited experience of the use of this product and the MHRA requests that all suspected adverse reactions should be reported, see Adverse reactions to drugs p. 13
Ⓜ	drug-class monograph, see How to use BNF Publications, p xii
1234	drug monograph has a corresponding drug-class monograph; the page number of the class monograph is indicated within the tab, see How to use BNF Publications, p xii
EvGr	precedes evidence graded content, see How BNF Publications are constructed p. ix
A to E	symbols will be displayed - grades reflect the strengths of recommendations in evidence graded content, see How BNF Publications are constructed p. ix
ⓧ	no price available

Latin abbreviations

Directions should be in English without abbreviation. However, Latin abbreviations have been used when prescribing. The following is a list of appropriate abbreviations. It should be noted that the English version is not always an exact translation.

a. c.	= ante cibum (before food)
b. d.	= bis die (twice daily)
o. d.	= omni die (every day)
o. m.	= omni mane (every morning)
o. n.	= omni nocte (every night)
p. c.	= post cibum (after food)
p. r. n.	= pro re nata (when required)
q. d. s.	= quater die sumendum (to be taken four times daily)
q. q. h.	= quarta quaque hora (every four hours)
stat	= immediately
t. d. s.	= ter die sumendum (to be taken three times daily)
t. i. d.	= ter in die (three times daily)

E numbers

The following is a list of common E numbers and the inactive ingredients to which they correspond.

E102	Tartrazine
E211	Sodium Benzoate
E104	Quinoline Yellow
E223	Sodium Metabisulfite
E110	Sunset Yellow FCF
E320	Butylated Hydroxyanisole
E123	Amaranth
E321	Butylated Hydroxytoluene
E124	Ponceau 4R
E322	Lecithins
E127	Erythrosine BS
E420	Sorbitol
E132	Indigo Carmine
E421	Mannitol
E142	Green S
E422	Glycerol
E171	Titanium Dioxide
E901	Beeswax (white and yellow)
E172	Iron oxides, iron hydroxides
E1520	Propylene Glycol
E200	Sorbic Acid